HP Color LaserJet Managed MFP E87640 Series
HP Color LaserJet Managed MFP E87650 Series
HP Color LaserJet Managed MFP E87660 Series

Service Manual

www.hp.com/videos/laserjet
www.hp.com/support/colorlje87600mfp
www.hp.com/support/colorljE87640mfp

HP Color LaserJet Managed MFP E87640 Series HP Color LaserJet Managed MFP E87650 Series HP Color LaserJet Managed MFP E87660 Series Service Manual

SUMMARY

Learn about theory of operation, remove and replace, troubleshooting on the printer. Parts are either customer-self repair (CSR) replaceable, or field replaceable units (FRUs) which require installation by a trained field-service technician. Use the provided parts diagrams and tables to identify the required part.

Copyright and License

© Copyright 2020 HP Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 12, 5/2020

Revision History

View a list of document revisions.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice. The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Table -1 Revision History

Revision Number	Revision Date	Revision Notes
12.0	May, 2020	Part number updates and general edits.
11.0	April, 2020	SRM migration to SDL Tridion Docs. Part number updates and general edits. Updated SSBM sections to current HPPK content. See Stapler/stacker and booklet maker (SSBM) on page 1273.
10.0	January, 2020	Updated Setting standard tone in image quality problems and solutions. See Setting standard tone on page 1194. Added Red/Magenta hue printouts to image quality problems and solutions. See Red/Magenta hue printouts on page 1196. Added electrical-mechanical diagrams content. See Electrical-mechanical relationships diagrams on page 1213
9.0	June, 2019	Updated all inner finisher content. See Inner finisher on page 2559. Updated developer unit remove and replace procedure. See Removal and replacement: Developer unit on page 186. Added right door dampner kit remove and replace. See Removal and replacement: Right door dampener and lever kit on page 441. Added high-voltage rail remove and replace procedure. See Removal and replacement: High-voltage rail assembly on page 458.

Table -1 Revision History (continued)

Revision Number	Revision Date	Revision Notes
6.0	December, 2018	Added/updated E87640du/E87650du/ E87660du series content. Added or updated repair topics for the E87640du/E87650du/E87660du series: • Removal and replacement: ADF whole unit (LX) on page 710 • Removal and replacement: Document feeder (ADF) jam access cover (LX) on page 715 • Removal and replacement: Document feeder (ADF) input tray (LX) on page 721 • Removal and replacement: Contact image sensor (CIS) on page 727 • Removal and replacement: Document feeder (ADF) main motor (LX) on page 738 • Removal and replacement: Document feeder (ADF) pick/feed roller assembly (LX) on page 747 • Removal and replacement: PCA-Scanner (LX) on page 753 • Removal and replacement: Document feeder separation roller assembly (LX) on page 760 • Removal and replacement: Document feeder feed motor (LX) on page 767 • Removal and replacement: ADF white backing (LX) on page 221 • Removal and replacement: Accelerator board (GX ADF only) on page 269 • Removal and replacement: Island of data (IOD; du models) on page 272 • Removal and replacement: Formatter hard disk drive (HDD; du models) on page 278 • Removal and replacement: Formatter (du models) on page 284
5.0	September, 2018	Added E87640du/E87650du/E87660du series content.
4.0	July, 2018	Updated parts numbers throughout document to remove "SAM-" prefix and updated new part numbers as identified. Minor content edits (including graphics)

Table -1 Revision History (continued)

Revision Number	Revision Date	Revision Notes
3.0	November, 2017	Added formatter cabling content Added Scan in Low remove and replace procedure Updated code data for Diagnostics and Service Functions Replaced Product Overview with the UG-style Printer Views and removed the previous “Machine external view” section. Updated R&R TOC level to 1. Replaced references to SAW with WISE and removed QR codes. Replaced Samsung Paper Jam content with the UG content Moved specifications out of the appendix to the Product Specifications chapter Added additional specification content to the Product Specifications chapter from the UG Removed the lists of tables and figures and the alphabetical and numerical lists of parts Replaced the glossary with the updated glossary from Topaz Placed ESD cautions at the beginning of the R&R sections for the main printer and both finishers. Removed the Samsung precaution sections Updated variable list items to refer only to Diamond Updated part numbers, part descriptions, diagrams, and photos Reorganized remove and replace chapter (blended into parts and diagrams) Integrated over 250 new edits into existing content, including updated video links and part numbers. Reformatted tables and resource pages, added xrefs, and changed critical terminology.

Table -1 Revision History (continued)

Revision Number	Revision Date	Revision Notes
2.0	July, 2017	Updated TOC to only consist of 3 levels Add error code and CPMD overview Added “How to search for documentation” section. Updated toner average yield data Remove all occurrences of ITB Changed all occurrences of #2 Phillips to #2 JIS
1.0	April, 2017	Service manual initial release

Conventions used in this guide

Learn about the conventions used in this publication.

TIP: Tips provide helpful hints or shortcuts.

NOTE: Notes provide important information to explain a concept or to complete a task.

CAUTION: Cautions indicate procedures that you should follow to avoid losing data or damaging the product.

WARNING! Warnings alert you to specific procedures that you should follow to avoid personal injury, catastrophic loss of data, or extensive damage to the product.

Table of contents

1 Product specifications and description 1
Printer views 2
Printer front view 2
Printer back view 3
Interface ports 3
Control-panel view 4
Inner finisher view 6
Stapler/stacker finisher view 6
Booklet finisher view 6
Specifications 8
Technical specifications 8
Supported operating systems 12
Mobile printing solutions 14
Printer dimensions 15
Power consumption, electrical specifications, and acoustic emissions 16
Operating-environment range 16
General specifications 16
Print specifications 19
Scan specifications 21
Copy specifications 23
Supplies 25
Maintenance parts 26
Paper handling specifications 27
Network and software specifications 34
Options 37
Feeding system 45
Feeding system overview 45
Main components and functions 46
Cassette 50
Pickup unit 51
Registration unit 51
Tray 1 feed assembly 52

Fuser unit 54
Fuser unit overview 54
Fuser unit drive 55
Fuser unit temperature control 55
Loop control 56
Image creation 58
Printing process overview 58
Imaging unit 59
Toner cartridge 62
Dynamic security 63
Intermediate transfer belt unit 64
Toner reservoir unit 66
Laser scanner assembly 68
Laser scanner assembly overview 68
Laser scanning optical path 69
Laser synchronizing detectors 70
Automatic CPR adjustment 71
Drive system 75
Pickup and cassette lift drive 75
Feed drive 75
Registration drive 76
Fuser release/exit drive 77
Drive motors 78
Main drive unit motors 80
Toner supply/reservoir drive 81
Engage transfer roller drive 81
Toner collection unit (TCU) drive 82
Flatbed Scanner System 83
Flatbed scanner system overview 84
Scanning system components 86
Caution for moving the scanner 92
Document feeder LX (du models) 94
Document feeder LX overview 94
Document feeder LX electrical parts 94
Document feeder LX registration 95
Document feeder LX drive system 96
Document feeder LX scanning position 98
Document feeder LX specifications 99
Flow document feeder dn/z models (GX and sGX) 100
Flow document feeder overview 100
Flow document feeder sensors 100

Flow document feeder ultra sonic multi-feed (USM) sensor 102
Flow document feeder drive system 103
Flow document feeder specifications 105
Flow document feeder registration 105
Flow document feeder scanning position 106
Flow document feeder mixed size original (MSO) sensor 106
Flow document feeder dual sensor cleaning method 108
Flow ADF z bundles (GX) 108
Hardware configuration 110
Main controller 113
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 5H) 123
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 3R) for GX/sGX only 125
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 4) 127
Fuser drive assembly 129
High voltage power supply (HVPS) board 130
Eraser PCA 133
Fuser PCA 134
Waste Sensor PCA 134
Paper Size sensor PCA 135
Flow document feeder PCA 135
Scan joint PCA 136
CCDM PCA 137
WLED IF PCA 138
WLED PCA 138
Dual cassette feeder (DCF) 138
High capacity input tray (HCI) 142
Side high capacity input tray (sHCI) 146

2 Parts, diagrams, removal and replacement 151
HP service and support 151
Order parts by authorized service providers 153
Ordering 153
Orderable parts 153
How to use parts lists and diagrams 153
ESD precautions 153
Service approach 155
Precautions when replacing parts 155
Before performing service 156
After performing service 156
Post-service test 157
Maintenance (printer cleaning) 158

Cleaning the paper dust stick 158
Cleaning the document feeder white bar and CIS (LX) 160
Cleaning the flow document feeder white bar and CIS (GX) 161
Cleaning the scanner glass 162
Main parts 164
Main assemblies 165
Exit assemblies 404
Cassettes tray 2/3 425
Main frame assembly 427
Main frame registration 475
Drive system 491
Drive system 493
Rear frame assembly 504
Drive system 508
Main frame pickup 1 and 2 565
Main (sub) frame pickup 599
Covers 605
Right door 641
Tray 1 685
Right door guide 702
Right door exit and takeaway 704
Drive system 706
ADF (LX models) 708
ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX models) 745
ADF main frame assembly (LX models) 758
Flow ADF (GX/sGX) 773
Flow ADF open cover (GX/sGX) 791
Flow ADF upper pickup (GX/sGX) 801
Flow ADF stacker (GX/sGX) 807
Flow ADF main frame (GX/sGX) 817
Image scanner 878
Image scanner, lower 893
Dual cassette feeder (DCF) 906
DCF main 907
DCF frame 932
DCF rear frame 937
Opt feed drive 942
DCF second pickup 944
2000-sheet HCI (department) 946
2K HCI main 946
2K HCI drive 948

2K HCI cassette 964
2K HCI frame 966
2K HCI main pickup 972
3000-sheet sHCI (department; E82540/50/60 and E87640/50/60 only) 974
3K sHCI main 1 975
3K sHCI main 3 984
3K sHCI main 5 998
3K sHCI main 6 1000
Pickup cover unit 1002
3K sHCI frame 1004

3 Problem solving 1007
Control panel messages (CPMD) 1008
Error codes 1008
How to search for printer documentation 1010
Troubleshooting process 1014
Determine the problem source 1015
Tools for troubleshooting 1034
Problem-solving checklist 1035
Print menu map 1037
Print current settings pages 1037
Print event log 1038
Pre-boot menu options 1039
Control panel menus 1057
Clear paper jams 1123
Paper jam locations 1123
13.A1 tray 1 paper jam 1123
13.A2, 13.A3 tray 2, tray 3 paper jam 1124
Clear paper jams in the Bottom HCI 1127
Service mode (tech mode; du models) 1129
Entering service mode 1129
Service mode menu tree 1129
Information 1134
Maintenance counts 1136
Diagnostics 1137
Service functions 1174
Print quality troubleshooting guide 1177
Image quality problems and solutions 1178
Adjusting the ADF/ADF skew (LX du models) 1197
Adjusting the Flow ADF skew 1199

4 Electrical-mechanical diagrams 1205
Connection diagrams 1206
Connection Diagram (FUSER/EXIT/DUPLEX/TONER) 1206
Connection Diagram (Scanner) 1207
Connection Diagram (Laser Scanner Assembly/OPE/USB) 1208
Connection Diagram (Side/MP/Feed/Registration/Pickup) 1208
Connection Diagram (OPC/WTB/CST Lock) 1210
Connection Diagram (HVPS/LVPS/FDB) 1212
Electrical-mechanical relationships diagrams 1213
Main drive (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific) 1213
T1 drive (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific) 1215
WTB drive (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific) 1217
Pickup drive (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific) 1219
Registration unit (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific) 1221
Pickup unit (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific) 1221
ACR unit (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific) 1223
Exit unit (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared) 1223
Fuser exit drive (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared) 1225
Registration drive (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared) 1226
Feed drive (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared) 1226
Pickup drive (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared) 1227
MP unit (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared) 1228
Side unit (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared) 1230
Right door guide (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared) 1232
Right door output takeaway (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared) 1234
Front unit (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared) 1236
Pickup lift motors, feed motor, and cover open sensor (DCF/HCI) 1238
Paper empty and limit-2 sensors (DCF/HCI) 1240
Paper empty, path, limit-1, and path sensors (DCF/HCI) 1241
Paper size sensors (DCF/HCI) 1242
HCI PCA and HCI sup PCA (HCI) 1244
Cover open sensor, cassette installation sensor, feed motor, pickup/lift-1 and lift-2 motors, and shift motor (DCF/HCI) 1245
Limit switch, prefeed sensor, feed sensor, main limit and empty sensors (DCF/HCI) 1247
Level-1/2 front/rear sensors, solenoid home sensor, and solenoid (DCF/HCI) 1248
Home-1/2 sensors, end sensor, and empty sensor (DCF/HCI) 1249
Limit switch, paper limit-1 sensor, prefeed sensor, and paper empty-1 sensor (DCF/HCI) 1250
Pick/lift-1 motor, lift-2 motor, and feed motor (DCF/HCI) 1250
Upper/lower paper low sensors (DCF/HCI) 1251
Front/rear home sensors and tray open sensor (DCF/HCI) 1252
Main PCAs (SSBM) 1253

Paper detection sensor (SSBM) 1254
Entrance motors A/B, end fence motor, buffer motor and sensor, and diverter close sensor (SSBM) 1255
Top-beam out sensor, stack motor, and SKU motor (SSBM) 1256
Curl pawl motor, fold motor, divert home sensor, and guide home sensor (SSBM) 1257
Feed entrance sensor (SSBM) 1258
Press home sensor, tamper home sensor, paper detect sensor, tamper motor, press motor, and feed motor (SSBM) 1260
Top-exit path and compile-exit path sensors (SSBM) 1262
Knife motor, stopper home sensor, and stopper solenoid and motor (SSBM) 1263
Top door sensor, fold motor, and knife home position sensor (SSBM) 1264
Operational panel button PCA and entrance path sensor (SSBM) 1265
Exit cam home sensor, main paddle home sensor, paddle motor, and exit motor (SSBM) 1266
Front/rear tamper motors, front/rear tamper home sensors, and end-fence home sensor (SSBM) 1267
Tray upper front/rear sensors, SCU home detect sensor, and stack beam in/out sensors (SSBM) 1269
Bridge motor, bridge middle sensor, and bridge guide sensor (SSBM) 1270
Bridge entrance path sensor (SSBM) 1270

5 Stapler/stacker and booklet maker (SSBM) 1273
Product specification and description 1274
Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher view 1274
Specification 1276
Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher system 1283
Service approach 1353
Precautions when replacing parts 1354
Before performing service 1356
ESD precautions 1356
After performing service 1356
Post-service test 1357
Order parts by authorized service providers 1358
Parts, diagrams, removal and replacement (stapler/ stacker and booklet finishers) 1359
Parts, diagrams (stapler/stacker) 1360
Parts, diagrams (Booklet finisher) 1406
Bridge unit 1432
Covers 1456
Entrance unit 1526
Punch unit 1532
Tray diverter unit 1539
Top exit unit 1568
Top output tray unit 1595

Main exit unit 1609
Paddle unit 1636
End fence unit 1669
Tamper unit 1704
Stapler unit 1861
Ejector unit 1942
Main output tray unit 2098
Paper holding unit 2159
Buffer unit 2217
Booklet maker 2231
Booklet entrance unit 2242
Booklet paddle unit 2260
Booklet end fence unit 2273
Booklet presser unit 2295
Booklet tamper unit 2318
Booklet stapler unit 2375
Booklet fold unit 2394
Booklet diverter unit 2478
Booklet exit unit 2502
Booklet output tray unit 2521
PCA 2525
Problem solving 2543
Control panel message document (CPMD) 2543
Clear paper jams 2544
Finisher system diagram 2557

6 Inner finisher 2559
Product specification and description 2560
Inner finisher view 2560
Specification 2561
Inner finisher system 2566
Service approach 2604
Precautions when replacing parts 2605
Before performing service 2607
ESD precautions 2607
After performing service 2607
Post-service test 2608
Order parts by authorized service providers 2609
Parts, diagrams, removal and replacement (inner finisher) 2610
Parts and diagrams (inner finisher) 2611
Covers 2628

Entrance unit 2655
Exit unit 2672
Paper support unit 2694
Paddle unit 2780
Tamper unit 2805
Stapler unit 2916
Ejector unit 2945
End fence unit 3011
Output tray unit 3023
Paper holding unit 3086
Punch unit 3133
Problem solving 3148
Control panel message document (CPMD) 3148
Electrical Mechanical Diagrams (Inner finisher) 3149
Punch waste full sensor 3149
Punch waste box sensor and finisher docking sensor 3150
Entrance motor 3151
Exit sensor 3152
Exit motor, main paddle motor & home sensor, output tray lower limit switch, and paper holding solenoid 3153
Paper support motor & home sensor 3154
Front tamper motor and home sensor 3155
Rear tamper motor and home sensor 3156
End fence sensor 3157
Stapler position motor and sensor 3158
Ejector 1 motor and home sensor, ejector 2 motor, motor sensor, and home sensor 3159
Output tray motor and sensor 3160
Output tray top of stack sensor 3161
Top cover switch 3162
Front cover switch 3163

Appendix A Certificate of Volatility 3165
Certificate of Volatility 3165

Glossary of terms 3169

Index 3177

1 Product specifications and description

You will learn more about the following sub sections:

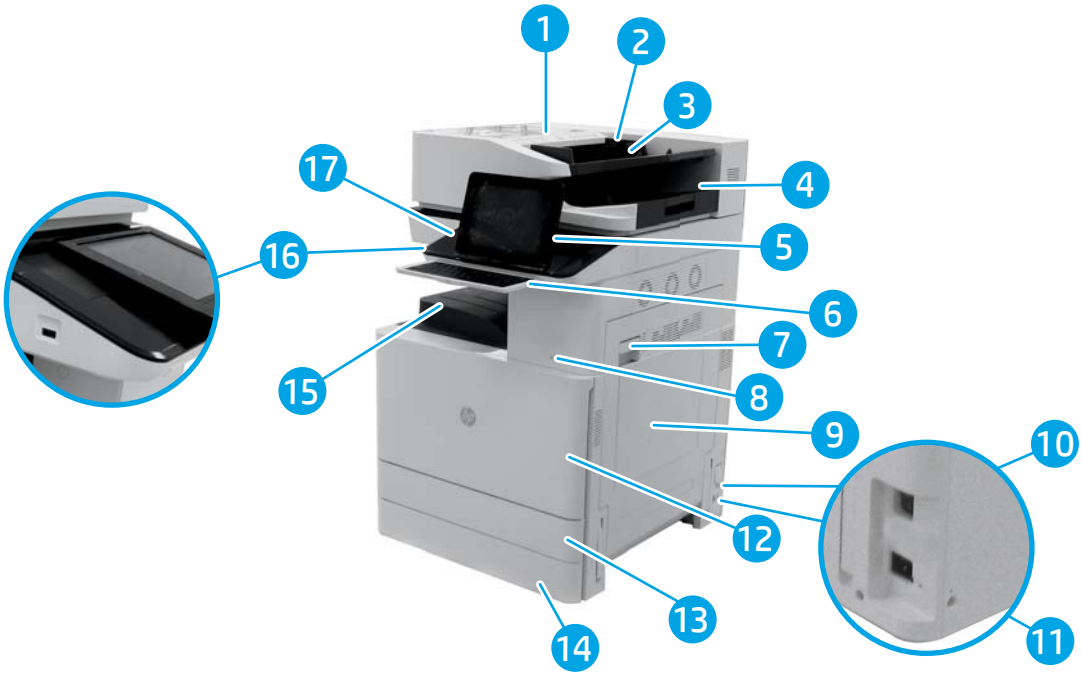
Printer views

Learn more specifically about the different views of the printer.

Printer front view

Learn about the printer components (front view).

Figure 1-1 Printer front view



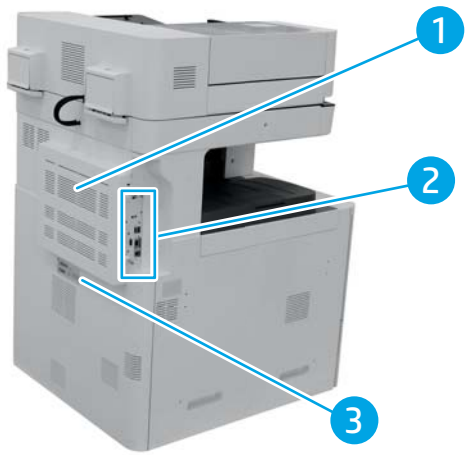
Item	Description
1	Automatic document feeder cover (access for clearing jams)
2	Automatic document feeder width guides
3	Automatic document feeder input tray
4	Automatic document feeder output tray
5	Control panel with color touchscreen display (tilts up for easier viewing)
6	Physical keyboard (Flow models only). Pull the keyboard straight out to use it. (NOTE: Close the keyboard when it is not in use.)
7	Right door (access for clearing jams)
8	On/off button
9	Tray 1
10	Power switch

Item	Description
11	Power connection
12	Front door (access to the toner cartridges)
13	Tray 2
14	Tray 3
15	Output bin
16	Easy-access USB port. Insert a USB flash drive for printing or scanning without a computer, or to update the printer firmware. (NOTE: An administrator must enable this port before use.)
17	Hardware integration pocket (for connecting accessory and third-party devices)

Printer back view

Learn about the printer components (back view).

Figure 1-2 Printer rear view

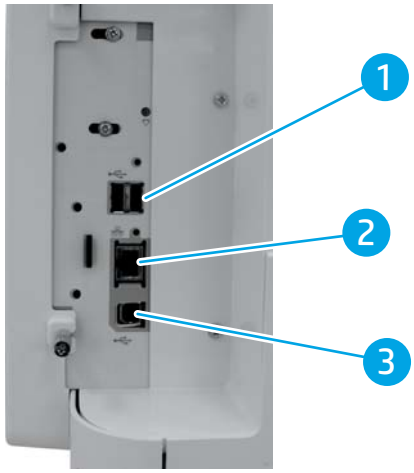


Item	Description
1	Formatter cover
2	Interface ports
3	Serial number and product number label

Interface ports

Learn about the printer components (interface ports).

Figure 1-3 Interface ports



Item	Description
1	USB port for connecting external USB devices (NOTE: For easy-access USB printing, use the USB port near the control panel.)
2	Local area network (LAN) Ethernet network port
3	Hi-Speed USB 2.0 printing port

Control-panel view

Learn about the printer components (control-panel).

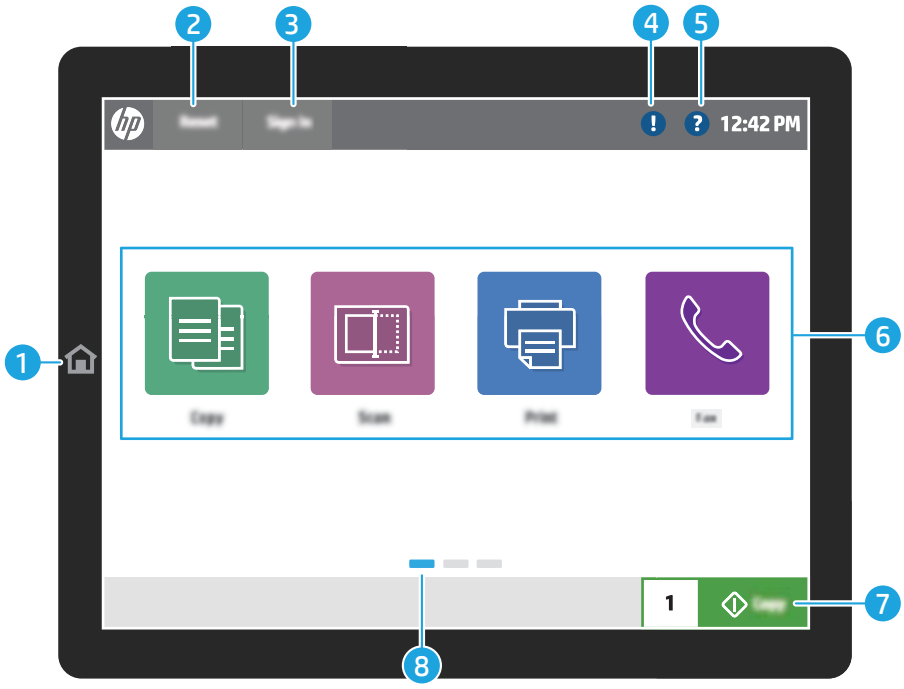
NOTE: Tilt the control panel for easier viewing.

The Home screen provides access to the printer features and indicates the current status of the printer.

Return to the Home screen at any time by touching the Home button on the printer control panel.

NOTE: The features that appear on the Home screen can vary, depending on the printer configuration.

Figure 1-4 Printer control panel



Item	Button	Description
1	Home button	Touch the Home button to return to the Home screen.
2	Reset button	The Reset button returns the printer to default settings and is always present if users are not logged in. The Reset button is not present when the Sign Out button is present. Touch the Reset button to resume and release jobs from the previous pause state and interrupt mode, reset the quick copy count in the copy count field, exit special modes, reset the display language and the keyboard layout.
3	Sign In or Sign Out button	Touch the Sign In button to access secured features. Touch the Sign Out button to sign out of the printer. The printer restores all options to the default settings. NOTE: This button displays only if the administrator has configured the printer to require permission for access to features.
4	Information button	Touch the information button to access a screen that provides access to several types of printer information. Touch the buttons at the bottom of the screen for the following information: • Display Language: Change the language setting for the current user session. • Sleep Mode: Place the printer into sleep mode. • Wi-Fi Direct: View information for how to connect directly to the printer using a phone, tablet, or other device with Wi-Fi. • Wireless: View or change wireless connection settings (only when an optional wireless accessory is installed). • Ethernet: View or change Ethernet connection settings. • HP Web Services: View information to connect and print to the printer using HP Web Services (ePrint).

Item	Button	Description
5	Help button	Touch the Help button to open the embedded help system. The status line provides information about the overall printer status.
6	Applications area	Touch any of the icons to open the application. Swipe the screen sideways to access more applications. NOTE: The available applications vary by printer. The administrator can configure which applications appear and the order in which they appear.
7	Start Copy button	Touch the Start Copy button to start a copy job.
8	Home-screen page indicator	Indicates the number of pages on the Home screen or in an application. The current page is highlighted. Swipe the screen sideways to scroll between pages.

Inner finisher view

Learn about the printer components (inner finisher).

Stapler/stacker finisher view

Learn about the printer components (stapler/stacker finisher).

Booklet finisher view

Learn about the printer components (booklet finisher).

Specifications

Learn about the specifications.

Technical specifications

Learn technical specifications for model bundles.

NOTE: Hole punch accessories are optional for the stapler/stacker, inner finisher, and booklet maker accessories.

Table 1-1 E87640dn, E87640z, E87650dn, E87650z, E87650z, E87660dn, E87660z

Model number		E87640dn	E87640z	E87650dn	E87650z	E87660dn	E87660z
Product number	Item	X3A87A	X3A86A	X3A90A	X3A89A	X3A93A	X3A92A
Paper handling	Tray 1 (100-sheet capacity)	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported
	Tray 2 (520-sheet capacity)	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported
	Tray 3 (520-sheet capacity)	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported
	2 x 520-sheet dual cassette feeder	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	2,000-sheet high-capacity input tray	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	3,000-sheet side-mount high-capacity input tray	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	Printer cabinet	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	Stapler/stacker finishing accessory (hole punch accessories are optional)	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	Booklet maker finishing accessory (hole punch accessories are optional)	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	Inner finisher accessory (hole punch accessories are optional)	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	2/3 hole punch accessory (hole punch accessories are optional)	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	2/4 hole punch accessory (hole punch accessories are optional)	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional

Table 1-1 E87640dn, E87640z, E87650dn, E87650z, E87650z, E87660dn, E87660z (continued)

Model number		E87640dn	E87640z	E87650dn	E87650z	E87660dn	E87660z
Product number	Item	X3A87A	X3A86A	X3A90A	X3A89A	X3A93A	X3A92A
	Swedish hole punch accessory (hole punch accessories are optional)	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP Job separator	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
	Automatic duplex printing	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported
Connectivity	10/100/1000 Ethernet LAN connection with IPv4 and IPv6	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported
	Hi-Speed USB 2.0	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported
	Easy-access USB port for printing without a computer and upgrading the firmware	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported
	Hardware Integration Pocket for connecting accessory and third-party devices	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported
Memory	7 GB base memory	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported
Mass storage	2 x 320 GB HP Secure High-Performance Hard Disk	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported
Security	HP Trusted Platform Module	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported
Control-panel display	Color touchscreen control panel	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported
	Retractable keyboard	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported
Print	Prints 40 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and on letter-size paper.	Supported	Supported	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported
	Prints 50 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and on letter-size paper	Not supported	Not supported	Supported	Supported	Not supported	Not supported
	Prints 60 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and on letter-size paper	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	Supported	Supported
	Easy-access USB printing (no computer required)	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported
Fax		Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional

Table 1-1 E87640dn, E87640z, E87650dn, E87650z, E87650z, E87660dn, E87660z (continued)

Model number		E87640dn	E87640z	E87650dn	E87650z	E87660dn	E87660z
Product number	Item	X3A87A	X3A86A	X3A90A	X3A89A	X3A93A	X3A92A
Copy and Scan	Scans 90 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and letter-size paper	Supported	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported	Not supported
	Scans 120 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and letter-size paper	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported
	250-page document feeder with dual-head scanning for single-pass duplex copying and scanning	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported
	HP EveryPage Technologies including ultrasonic multi-feed detection	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported
	Embedded optical character recognition (OCR) provides the ability to convert printed pages into text that can be edited or searched using a computer	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported
	SMART Label feature provides paper-edge detection for automatic page cropping	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported
	Automatic page orientation for pages that have at least 100 characters of text	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported
	Automatic tone adjustment sets contrast, brightness, and background removal for each page	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported
Digital Send	Send documents to E-mail, USB, and shared folders on a network	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported
	Send documents to SharePoint®	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported

Table 1-2 E87640du, E87650du, , E87660du

Model number		E87640du	E87650du	E87660du
Product number	Item	5CM64A	5CM65A	5CM66A
Paper handling	Tray 1 (100-sheet capacity)	Supported	Supported	Supported

Table 1-2 E87640du, E87650du, , E87660du (continued)

Model number		E87640du	E87650du	E87660du
Product number	Item	5CM64A	5CM65A	5CM66A
	Tray 2 (520-sheet capacity)	Supported	Supported	Supported
	Tray 3 (520-sheet capacity)	Supported	Supported	Supported
	2 x 520-sheet dual cassette feeder	Optional	Optional	Optional
	2,000-sheet high-capacity input tray	Optional	Optional	Optional
	3,000-sheet side-mount high-capacity input tray	Optional	Optional	Optional
	Printer cabinet	Optional	Optional	Optional
	Stapler/stacker finishing accessory (hole punch accessories are optional)	Optional	Optional	Optional
	Booklet maker finishing accessory (hole punch accessories are optional)	Optional	Optional	Optional
	Inner finisher accessory (hole punch accessories are optional)	Optional	Optional	Optional
	2/3 hole punch accessory (hole punch accessories are optional)	Optional	Optional	Optional
	2/4 hole punch accessory (hole punch accessories are optional)	Optional	Optional	Optional
	Swedish hole punch accessory (hole punch accessories are optional)	Optional	Optional	Optional
	HP Job separator	Optional	Optional	Optional
	Automatic duplex printing	Supported	Supported	Supported
Connectivity	10/100/1000 Ethernet LAN connection with IPv4 and IPv6	Supported	Supported	Supported
	Hi-Speed USB 2.0	Supported	Supported	Supported
	Easy-access USB port for printing without a computer and upgrading the firmware	Supported	Supported	Supported
	Hardware Integration Pocket for connecting accessory and third-party devices	Supported	Supported	Supported
Memory	7 GB base memory	Supported	Supported	Supported
Mass storage	2 x 320 GB HP Secure High-Performance Hard Disk	Supported	Supported	Supported
Security	HP Trusted Platform Module	Supported	Supported	Supported
Control-panel display	Color touchscreen control panel	Supported	Supported	Supported
	Retractable keyboard	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported

Table 1-2 E87640du, E87650du, , E87660du (continued)

Model number		E87640du	E87650du	E87660du
Product number	Item	5CM64A	5CM65A	5CM66A
Print	Prints 40 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and on letter-size paper.	Supported	Not supported	Not supported
	Prints 50 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and on letter-size paper	Not supported	Supported	Not supported
	Prints 60 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and on letter-size paper	Not supported	Not supported	Supported
	Easy-access USB printing (no computer required)	Supported	Supported	Supported
Fax		Optional	Optional	Optional
Copy and Scan	Scans 90 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and letter-size paper	Supported	Supported	Supported
	Scans 80-simplex/160-duplex images per minute (ipm) on A4 and letter-size paper (LX du models only)	Supported	Supported	Supported
	100-page document feeder with dual-head scanning for single-pass duplex copying and scanning	Supported	Supported	Supported
	HP EveryPage Technologies including ultrasonic multi-feed detection	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported
	Embedded optical character recognition (OCR) provides the ability to convert printed pages into text that can be edited or searched using a computer	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported
	SMART Label feature provides paper-edge detection for automatic page cropping	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported
	Automatic page orientation for pages that have at least 100 characters of text	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported
	Automatic tone adjustment sets contrast, brightness, and background removal for each page	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported
Digital Send	Send documents to E-mail, USB, and shared folders on a network	Supported	Supported	Supported
	Send documents to SharePoint®	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported

Supported operating systems

Learn about supported operating systems.

The following information applies to the Printer-Specific Windows PCL 6 and HP print drivers for OS X and to the software installer.

Windows: The HP Software Installer can be downloaded from the printer support website for this printer and installs the “HP PCL.6” version 3 print driver, the “HP PCL 6” version 3 print driver, or the “HP PCL-6” version 4 print driver, depending on the Windows operating system, along with optional software when using the software installer. Download the "HP PCL.6" version 3 print driver, the "HP PCL 6" version 3 print driver, and the "HP PCL-6" version 4 print driver from the printer-support website for this printer: www.hp.com/support/ljE87600mfp, or www.hp.com/support/ljE87640mfp.

OS X: Mac computers are supported with this printer. Download HP Easy Start either from 123.hp.com/LaserJet or from the Printer Support page, and then use HP Easy Start to install the HP print driver. HP Easy Start is not included in the HP Software Installer.

1. Go to 123.hp.com/LaserJet.
2. Follow the steps provided to download the printer software.

Linux: For information and print drivers for Linux, go to www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting.

UNIX: For information and print drivers for UNIX®, go to www.hp.com/go/unixmodelscripts.

Table 1-3 Supported operating systems and print drivers

Operating system	Print driver installed (from the software on the web)	Notes
Windows® XP SP3, 32-bit	The “HP PCL.6” printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.	Microsoft retired mainstream support for Windows XP in April 2009. HP will continue to provide best effort support for the discontinued XP operating system. Some features and page sizes in the print driver are not supported.
Windows Vista®, 32-bit	The “HP PCL.6” printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.	Microsoft retired mainstream support for Windows Vista in April 2012. HP will continue to provide best effort support for the discontinued Vista operating system. Some features and page sizes in the print driver are not supported.
Windows Server 2003 SP2, 32-bit	The “HP PCL.6” printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.	Microsoft retired mainstream support for Windows Server 2003 in July 2010. HP will continue to provide best effort support for the discontinued Server 2003 operating system. Some features and page sizes in the print driver are not supported.
Windows 7 SP1, 32-bit and 64-bit	The “HP PCL 6” printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.	
Windows 8, 32-bit and 64-bit	The “HP PCL 6” printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.	Windows 8 RT support is provided through Microsoft IN OS Version 4, 32- bit driver.
Windows 8.1, 32-bit and 64-bit	The “HP PCL-6” V4 printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.	Windows 8.1 RT support is provided through Microsoft IN OS Version 4, 32- bit driver.
Windows 10, 32-bit and 64-bit	The “HP PCL-6” V4 printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.	

Table 1-3 Supported operating systems and print drivers (continued)

Operating system	Print driver installed (from the software on the web)	Notes
Windows Server 2008 SP2, 32-bit	The “HP PCL.6” printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.	Microsoft retired mainstream support for Windows Server 2008 in January 2015. HP will continue to provide best effort support for the discontinued Server 2008 operating system. Some features and page sizes in the print driver are not supported.
Windows Server 2008 SP2, 64-bit	The “HP PCL 6” printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.	
Windows Server 2008 R2, SP 1, 64-bit	The “HP PCL 6” printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.	
Windows Server 2012, 64-bit	The PCL 6 printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.	
Windows Server 2012 R2, 64-bit	The PCL 6 printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.	
OS X 10.10 Yosemite, OS X 10.11 El Capitan, and OS X 10.12 Sierra	To install the print driver, download HP Easy Start from 123.hp.com/LaserJet. Follow the steps provided to install the printer software and print driver.	

NOTE: Supported operating systems can change. For a current list of supported operating systems, go to www.hp.com/support/ljE87600mfp, or www.hp.com/support/ljE87640mfp for HP's all-inclusive help for the printer.

NOTE: For details on client and server operating systems and for HP UPD driver support for this printer, go to www.hp.com/go/upd. Under **Additional information**, click the links.

Table 1-4 Minimum system requirements

Windows	OS X
• An Internet connection • Dedicated USB 1.1 or 2.0 connection or a network connection • 2 GB of available hard-disk space	• Internet connection • 1 GB of available hard-disk space

Mobile printing solutions

Learn what HP offers for mobile printing solutions.

HP offers multiple mobile and ePrint solutions to enable easy printing to an HP printer from a laptop, tablet, smartphone, or other mobile device. To see the full list and to determine the best choice, go to HP Customer Support - Knowledge Base.

- Wi-Fi Direct
- HP ePrint via email (Requires HP Web Services to be enabled and the printer to be registered with HP Connected)
- HP ePrint app (Available for Android, iOS, and Blackberry)
- HP All-in-One Remote app for iOS and Android devices
- HP ePrint software
- Google Cloud Print
- AirPrint
- Android Printing

Printer dimensions

Learn about printer dimensions.

NOTE: A color printer model is shown in the figure below. However, the dimension information applies to mono and color printers.

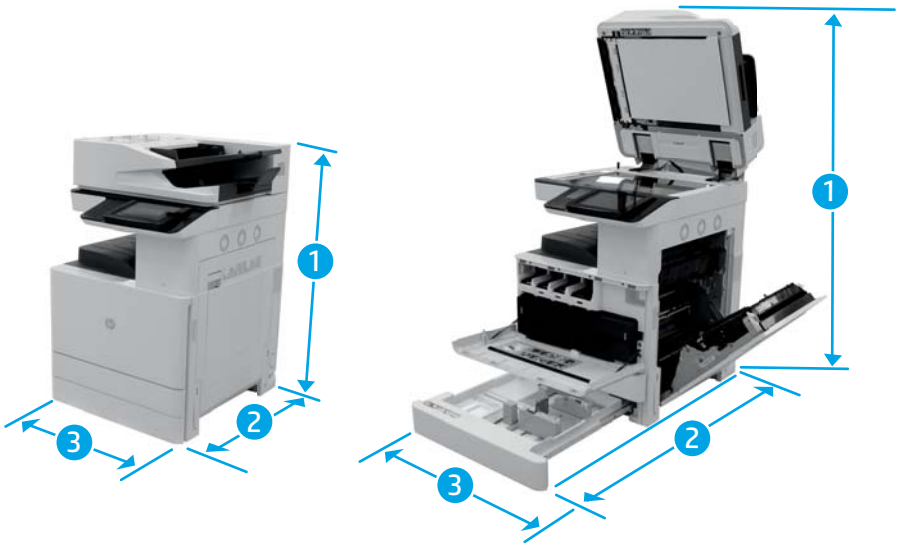


Table 1-5 Printer dimensions

Item	Normal operating dimensions	Maximum operating dimensions
Height	932.2 mm (36.7 in)	1389.4 mm (54.7 in)
Depth	771.1 mm (30.3 in)	1676 mm (66 in)

Table 1-5 Printer dimensions (continued)

Item	Normal operating dimensions	Maximum operating dimensions
Width	585 mm (23 in)	1134 mm (47 in)
Weight	Mono models (82XXX series): 95.6 kg (210.8 lb) Color models (87XXX series): 113.1 kg (249.3 lb)	

NOTE: HP recommends that 30 mm (1.81 in) be added to the printer dimensions provided in this chapter to make sure there is sufficient space to open doors and covers, and to provide proper ventilation.

Power consumption, electrical specifications, and acoustic emissions

In order to operate properly, the printer must be in an environment that meets certain power specifications.

See www.hp.com/support/ljE87600mfp, or www.hp.com/support/ljE87640mfp for current information.

CAUTION: Power requirements are based on the country/region where the printer is sold. Do not convert operating voltages. This will damage the printer and void the printer warranty.

Operating-environment range

In order to operate properly, the printer must be in an environment that meets certain specifications.

Table 1-6 Operating-environment specifications

Environment	Recommended	Allowed
Temperature	15° to 30°C (59° to 86°F)	Not available
Relative humidity	20% to 80% relative humidity (RH)	Not available

General specifications

Learn about the general specifications.

Table 1-7 General specifications

Item	Description	Specification
Processor	CPU	1.5 GHz (Quad Core)
User Interface	Operational Panel	8 inch touch screen
	LED	2 (Power/Status)
	Key/Button	1 (Power)
Memory	Total	7 GB (3 GB Formatter + 4 GB)
Storage	Standard	320 GB HDD
Interface	USB (Host)	Yes (Hi-Speed USB 3.0, 2.0)
	USB (Device)	Yes (Hi-Speed USB 3.0, 2.0)

Table 1-7 General specifications (continued)

Item	Description	Specification
	USB (EDI)	N/A
	Wired LAN	Standard (Ethernet 10/100/1G Base TX)
	Additional Wired LAN Support	Yes (optional)
	Wireless LAN/NFC	• Optional (IEEE 802.11b/g/n + NFC Active Type) • Optional (IEEE 802.11b/g/n/ac + BLE + NFC Active Type)
Warmup Time	From Power off (power on to ready)	23 sec
	From Sleep	12 sec
Power Consumption	Ready	Less than 30 W
	Normal operation	Less than 900 W
	Max/Peak	Less than 1300 W
	Sleep/Low Power Mode	Less than 2.0 W
	TEC (Default Mode)	• E87640: 2.1 kWh • E87650: 2.717 kWh • E87660: 3.05 kWh
Power Requirement	• Input voltage (Europe): AC 220–240 V (±6%) • Input voltage (USA): AC 110–127 V (±10%) • Input voltage (AP): AC 220–240 V (±6%) • Rated frequency: 50/60 Hz (±2Hz)	
Acoustic Noise Level (Sound Power/ Pressure)	Printing Mode	**Simplex** • E87640, E87650 – Tray 2: Less than 54 dBA – Tray 1/Optional trays: Less than 56 dBA • E87660 – Tray 2: Less than 57 dBA – Tray 1/Optional trays: Less than 59 dBA **Duplex** • E87640, E87650

Table 1-7 General specifications (continued)

Item	Description	Specification
		– Tray 2: Less than 57 dBA – Tray 1/Optional trays: Less than 59 dBA • E87660 – Tray 2: Less than 59 dBA – Tray 1/Optional trays: Less than 61 dBA
	Copying Mode	**Simplex** • E87640 – Tray 2: Less than 58 dBA – Tray 1 (MP)/Optional trays: Less than 60 dBA • E87650, E87660 – Tray 2: Less than 59 dBA – Tray 1 (MP)/Optional trays: Less than 61 dBA **Duplex** • E87640 – Tray 2: Less than 60 dBA – Tray 1/Optional trays: Less than 62 dBA • E87650 – Tray 2: Less than 61 dBA – Tray 1/Optional trays: Less than 63 dBA • E87660 – Tray 2: Less than 61 dBA – Tray 1/Optional trays: Less than 64 dBA
	Ready Mode	30 dBA
Dimensions (W x D x H)	Set (without stand)	• 585 x 771.1 x 932.2 mm (23 x 30.3 x 36.7 in)
Weight	Set (with supplies)	• 113.1 kg (249.3 lb)

Table 1-7 General specifications (continued)

Item	Description	Specification
Recommended Monthly Print Volume	• E87640: 40,000 pages • E87650: 45,000 pages • E87660: 50,000 pages	
Max Monthly Duty Cycle	• E87640: 200,000 pages • E87650: 250,000 pages • E87660: 330,000 pages	

Print specifications

Learn about the print specifications.

Table 1-8 Print specifications

Item		Specification
Print speed	Simplex	• E87640 – Up to 40 ppm in A4 (40 ppm in Letter) – Up to 21 ppm in A3 (21 ppm in 11x17) • E87650 – Up to 50 ppm in A4 (50 ppm in Letter) – Up to 26 ppm in A3 (26 ppm in 11x17) • E87660 – Up to 60 ppm in A4 (50 ppm in Letter) – Up to 31 ppm in A3 (31 ppm in 11x17)
	Duplex (Simplex to Duplex)	• E87640 – Up to 40 ipm in A4 (40 ipm in Letter) – Up to 21 ipm in A3 (21 ipm in 11x17) • E87650 – Up to 50 ipm in A4 (50 ipm in Letter) – Up to 26 ipm in A3 (26 ipm in 11x17) • E87660

Table 1-8 Print specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
		– Up to 60 ipm in A4 (50 ipm in Letter) – Up to 31 ipm in A3 (31 ipm in 11x17)
FPOT	From Ready	• E87640: as fast as 9.9 s • E87650: as fast as 8.9 s • E87660: as fast as 8.3 s
	From Sleep	• E87640: as fast as 21.9 s • E87650: as fast as 20.9 s • E87660: as fast as 20.3 s
Resolution		1200 x 1200 dpi (Full Speed)
Printer Language		PCL5/PCL6(XL)/PostScript Level 3/PDF v1.7
Font	PCL	95 scalable fonts (including OCR-A/OCR-B)/1 Bitmap
	PostScript 3	136 scalable fonts
Supporting Operating Systems	Windows	• Windows XP (32-bit, 64-bit) • Windows 2003 Server (32-bit, 64-bit) • Windows Vista (32-bit, 64-bit) • Windows 2008 Server (32-bit, 64-bit) • Windows 7 (32-bit, 64-bit) • Windows 2008 Server R2 (64-bit) • Windows 8 (32-bit, 64-bit) • Windows 8.1 (32-bit, 64-bit) • Windows Server 2012 (64-bit) • Windows Server 2012 R2 (64-bit)

Table 1-8 Print specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Linux	• Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5, 6 (32-bit, 64-bit) • Fedora 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 (32-bit, 64-bit) • OpenSuSE 11.2, 11.3, 11.4, 12.1, 12.2, 12.3, 13.1 (32-bit, 64-bit) • Ubuntu 10.04, 11.04, 11.10, 12.04, 12.10, 13.04, 13.10, 14.04 (32-bit, 64-bit) • SuSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10, 11 (32-bit, 64-bit) • Debian 6, 7 (32-bit, 64-bit) • Mint 13, 14, 15, 16 (32-bit, 64-bit)
	Mac OS	Mac OS X 10.6-10.10
Direct Print	PRN/PDF/TIFF/JPEG/XPS	
Print Features	• WSD print • Secure print • Stored print • Booklet • N-up • Cover page • Barcode • Eco • Poster • Glossy • Watermark • Tray priority setting • Auto tray setting • Tray protection • USB print • Secure PDF print • Google Cloud print	

Scan specifications

Learn about the scan specifications.

Table 1-9 Scan specifications

Item			Specification
Scan Speed		Scan to folder speeds (hardware)	DN bundles (black and white, gray scale, and color) • Simplex: 90 ipm @ 300 DPI • 80/160 ipm (du models only) • Duplex: 180 ipm @ 300 DPI Z bundles (black and white, gray scale, and color) • Simplex: 120 ipm @ 300 DPI • Duplex: 240 ipm @ 300 DPI
Color Mode			Mono/Gray/Color
Compatibility			Network TWAIN/Network SANE
Scan Method			MMT
File Formats			• PDF • Searchable PDF • Compact PDF • PDF Encryption • Digital Signature in PDF • PDF/A • Single-Page PDF • Multi-page PDF • TIFF • Single-Page TIFF • Multi-page TIFF • XPS • Single-Page XPS • Multi-page XPS • JPEG
Resolution	Optical (ADF)		Up to 600 x 600 dpi
	Optical (Image Scanner)		Up to 600 x 600 dpi
	Enhanced (ADF)		Up to 4800 x 4800 dpi

Table 1-9 Scan specifications (continued)

Item			Specification
		Enhanced (Image Scanner)	Up to 4800 x 4800 dpi
Scan Destinations			• Email • FTP • SMB • HDD • USB • WSD • PC • Internet FAX
Multi-destinations			Yes
Communication Protocol			• SMTP (IPv4, IPv6, SSL/TLS) • POP3 (IPv4, IPv6, SSL/TLS) • FTP (IPv4, IPv6) • SMB (IPv4, IPv6) • WSD • T4Net
Scan Size		ADF	• Min. A6 SEF 105 mm x 148 mm (4.13 in x 5.83) • Max. 297 mm x 437 mm (11.7 in x 17.2 in)
		Image Scanner	Max. 297 mm x 437 mm (11.7 in x 17.2 in)
Scan Original Types			Text/Text & Photo/Photo

Copy specifications

Learn about the copy specifications.

Table 1-10 Copy specifications

Item		Specification
Copy Speed	Single Document Multiple Copy (SDMC)	• E87640 – Up to 40 cpm in A4 • E87650

Table 1-10 Copy specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
		– Up to 50 cpm in A4 • E87660 – Up to 60 cpm in A4
	Multiple Document Multiple Copy (MDMC)	• E87640 – Simplex to Simplex: Up to 40 cpm in A4/Letter – Duplex to Simplex: Up to 40 ipm in A4/Letter • E87650 – Simplex to Simplex: Up to 50 cpm in A4/Letter – Duplex to Simplex: Up to 50 ipm in A4/Letter • E87660 – Simplex to Simplex: Up to 60 cpm in A4/Letter – Duplex to Simplex: Up to 60 ipm in A4/Letter
FCOT	From Ready	• E87640: 6.1 s • E87650: 5.1 s • E87660: 4.5 s
Resolution	Flow ADF	• Scan: 600 x 600 dpi • Printing: 600 x 600 dpi
	Image Scanner	• Scan: 600 x 600 dpi • Printing: 600 x 600 dpi
Reduce/Enlarge	Flow ADF	25–400% in 1% increments
	Image Scanner	25–400% in 1% increments
	Preset	25% / 50% A3→A5 / 61% A3→B5 / 64% Ledger→Letter / 70% A3→A4 | B4→B5 | A4→A5 / 77% Ledger→Legal / 78% Legal→Letter / 81% B4→A4 | B5→A5 / 86% A3→B4 | A4→B5 / 104% Executive→Letter / 115% B4→A3 / 121% Legal→Ledger / 122% A4→B4 / 129% Letter→Ledger / 141% A4→A3 | A5→A4 / 150% / 200% A5→A3 / 400%
Darkness Control	11 levels	
Contrast Control	11 levels	
Multi Copy	1–9,999	

Table 1-10 Copy specifications (continued)

Item	Specification
Duplex Copy	Built-in
Copy Original Type	• Text • Text and Printed Photo • Text and Glossy Photo • Newspaper • Printed Photo • Glossy Photo • Copied Original • Map • Light Original
Copy Features	• ID Copy • N-up • Booklet • Image Repeat • Auto Fit • Book Copy • Watermark • Image Overlay • Stamp • Covers • Job Build • Preview • Erase Edge • Image Shift • Image Adjustment • Background Adjustment

Supplies

Learn about the required toner cartridges and TCU.

Table 1-11 Supplies

Item	Product number	Service part number	Average yield
Black toner cartridge[1] Standard	W9050MC	X3A92-67904 HP Black Managed LJ Toner Cartridge	Approx. 54,400 pages
Black toner cartridge[2] Introductory	W9050MS	Not applicable	Approx. 12,000 pages
Cyan toner cartridge[1] Standard	W9051MC	X3A92-67901 HP Cyan Managed LJ Toner Cartridge	Approx. 52,000 pages
Cyan toner cartridge[2] Introductory	W9051MS	Not applicable	Approx. 10,000 pages
Magenta toner cartridge[1] Standard	W9053MC	X3A92-67902 HP Magenta Managed LJ Toner Cartridge	Approx. 52,000 pages
Magenta toner cartridge[2] Introductory	W9053MS	Not applicable	Approx. 10,000 pages
Yellow toner cartridge[1] Standard	W9052MC	X3A92-67903 HP Yellow Managed LJ Toner Cartridge	Approx. 52,000 pages
Yellow toner cartridge[2] Introductory	W9052MS	Not applicable	Approx. 10,000 pages
YMCK kit Introductory	W5059MS		
TCU	W9058MC		Approx. 71,000 pages

[1]Print cartridge life is approximate, based on average A4 /Letter-size page count with ISO coverage. Declared cartridge yield value in accordance with ISO/IEC 19798. Actual yields vary considerably based on images printed and other factors. For more information, visit www.hp.com/go/learnaboutsupplies.

[2]Available in APJ countries/regions only.

NOTE: Depending on the print pattern and job mode used, the lifespan of the consumable can vary.

IMPORTANT: Toner cartridges or other supplies must be purchased in the same country/region as the printer being used. Otherwise, new toner cartridges or other supplies will be incompatible with the printer. This is due to differing configurations of toner cartridges and other supplies according to the conditions of a specific country/region.

Maintenance parts

Learn about the printer maintenance parts.

HP recommends replacing the following maintenance parts at specific intervals to make sure the printer produces quality copies and to extend the service life of the printer.

Some of the printer parts have a shorter lifespan than the life of the printer.

Table 1-12 Maintenance parts

Item	Product number	Life	Remark
Developer unit cyan	Z7Y69A	720,000 pages	
Developer unit magenta	Z7Y72A	720,000 pages	
Developer unit yellow	Z7Y73A	720,000 pages	
Developer unit black	Z7Y68A	720,000 pages	
OPC drum unit cyan	W9055MC	Approx. 140,000pages	
OPC drum unit magenta			
OPC drum unit yellow			
OPC drum unit black	W9054MC	Approx. 160,000pages	
Fuser unit (220V)	Z7Y76A	360,000 pages	
Fuser unit (1100V)	Z7Y75A	360,000 pages	
Intermediate transfer belt (ITB)	Z7Y78A	430,000 pages	Clean the CPR sensor after replacing
ITB cleaner	Z7Y80A	180,000 pages	
Transfer roller assembly	Z7Y90A	360,000 pages	
Pick/Feed/Reverse (separation) roller (for Tray 2-X)	Z9M01A	360,000 pages	
Tray 1 (MP) Pick/Feed/Reverse (separation) Roller	Z7Y88A	200,000 pages	
Flow ADF pick roller assembly (GX and sGX z/dn models)	Z8W50A	200,000 pages	
Flow ADF reverse (separation) roller assembly (GX and sGX z/dn models)	Z8W51A	100,000 pages	
ADF pick roller assy (LX du models)	Z7Y64A	200,000	
ADF reverse (separation) roller assy (LX du models)	Z7Y65A	100,000	

NOTE: Depending on print patterns and the job mode used, maintenance part lifespans vary. See *Replacing the maintenance part* for further instructions.

Paper handling specifications

Learn about the paper handling specifications.

Table 1-13 Paper handling specifications

Item		Specification
Input Capacity	Standard	1040 sheets
	Multipurpose	100 sheets
	Maximum	6140 sheets NOTE: Tray 1 (MP) (100) + 2 Tray (1040) + HCI bottom (2000) + sHCI (3000)
Standard Cassette Tray	Capacity	• 520 sheets x 2 (Based on Xerox Premier 80g/m^2) • Envelope: 50 sheets (only Tray 2 support) NOTE: Supported Envelopes: Monarch, DL, C4, C5, C6, No.10, No. 9
	Media Sizes	• Cassette 1: 98 mm x 139.7 mm — 297 mm x 390 mm (3.9 in x 5.5 in — 11.7 in x 15.4 in) • Cassette 2: 148.5 mm x 182 mm — 320 mm x 457 mm (5.8 in x 7.2 in — 12.6 in x 18 in)

Table 1-13 Paper handling specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Media Types	• Plain • Thin • Bond • Hole Punched • Pre-Printed • Recycled • Thin Cardstock • Thick Cardstock • Heavy Cardstock • Extra Heavy Cardstock 1 • Letterhead • Thick • Cotton • Colored • Archive • Thin Glossy • Thick Glossy • Heavy Glossy • Heavy Weight • Extra Heavy Weight 1 ,2 ,3 4 • Label • Transparency • Envelope (Cassette 1 Only)

Table 1-13 Paper handling specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Media Weight	• Plain Paper: 70-90 g/m² (18.5-24 lb/ Duplex) • Thick Paper: 91-105 g/m² (25-28 lb/ Duplex) • Heavy Weight Paper : 106-176 g/m² (Duplex) • Extra Heavy Weight 1 Paper : 177-220 g/m² • Extra Heavy Weight 2: 221–256 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Extra Heavy Weight 3: 257–300 g/m^2 • Thick Cardstock: 164–216 g/m2 (Duplex) • Heavy Cardstock: 217–256 g/m2 (Duplex) • Extra Heavy Cardstock: 257–300 g/m^2 • Thick Glossy: 164–216 g/m^2 • Heavy Glossy: 217–256 g/m^2 • Transparency: 138–146 g/m^2 • Label: 120–150 g/m^2 • Envelope: 75–90 g/m^2 (Only Tray 2 support) • Thick Envelope: 91–120 g/m^2 (Only Tray 2 support) • Thin Paper: 60-69 g/m² (16-19 lb/ Duplex) • Cotton paper : 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Colored : 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Pre-Printed : 71-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Recycled : 60-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Bond Paper: 105-120 g/m² (Duplex) • Letterhead : 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Hole Punched Paper: 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Thin Cardstock : 105-163 g/m² (Duplex) • Thin Glossy : 106-163 g/m² (Duplex)
	Sensing	• H/W Install Detect: Yes • Paper Empty and Low Level Detect: Yes • Paper Type Detect: No • Paper Size Detect: Yes

Table 1-13 Paper handling specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
Tray 1	Capacity	• Plain Paper: 100 sheets at 80 g/m^2 • Envelopes: 10 sheets at 75 g/m^2 NOTE: Supported Envelopes: Monarch, DL, C4, C5, C6, No. 10, No. 9 • Labels: 20 sheets at 120–159 g/m^2 • Thick Paper: 10 sheets at 176 g/m^2
	Media Sizes	98 mm x 139.7 mm — 320 mm x 1200 mm (3.8 in x 5.5 in — 12.6 in x 47.2 in)
	Media Types	• Plain • Thin • Bond • Hole Punched • Pre-Printed • Recycled • Thin Cardstock • Letterhead • Thick • Cotton • Colored • Archive • Thin Glossy • Thick Glossy • Heavy Glossy • Heavy Weight • Extra Heavy Weight 1, 2 ,3 ,4 • Envelope • Transparency • Label
	Media Weight	• 60 to 256 g/m^2: Simplex, Duplex • 257 to 325 g/m^2: Simplex • Envelope: 75–90 g/m^2, Simplex • Label: 120–150 g/m^2, Simplex
	Sensing	Paper Empty Detect: Yes Paper Size Detect: Yes

Table 1-13 Paper handling specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
ADF	Capacity	250 sheets (GX/sGX) 100 sheets (LX)
	Document Size	• Width: 105 mm — 297 mm (5 in — 11.7 in) • Length: 140 mm — 432 mm (5.5in — 17 in)
	Document Weight	• Simplex: 60–163 g/m^2 (11.25–43.24 lb) (Guarantee) 42–60 g/m^2 and 163–220 g/m^2 (Support) • Duplex: 60–163 g/m^2 (13.25–43.25 lb) (Guarantee) 50–60 g/m^2 and 163–220 g/m^2 (Support)
	Auto Detected Size	A3/A4/A5/A6 SEF/B4/B5/Letter/Legal/Statement/Folio/Executive
Image Scanner	Document Size	• Width: 140 mm — 297 mm (5.5 in — 11.7 in) • Length: 140 mm — 432 mm (5.5 in — 17 in)
Output Capacity	Standard	500 sheets, face down
	Maximum	615 sheets [500 sheets (Standard) + 125 sheets (Job Separator)]
Printing Size	Maximum Size	320 mm x 457 mm (12.6 in x 18 in)
	Minimum Size	98 mm x 139.7 mm (3.8 in x 5.5 in)
Maximum Printing Area	Simplex	Top: 4.2 +/- 1.5 mm / Left: 4.2 +/- 1.5 mm
	Duplex	Top: 4.2 +/- 2 mm / Left: 4.2 +/- 2 mm
Duplex Printing	Support	Built-in
	Media Sizes	139.7 mm x 182 mm — 320 mm x 457 mm (5.5 in x 7.2 in — 12.6 in x 18 in)

Table 1-13 Paper handling specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Media Types	• Plain • Thin • Bond • Hole Punched • Pre-Printed • Recycled • Thin Cardstock • Letterhead • Thick • Cotton • Colored • Archive • Thin Glossy • Thick Glossy • Heavy Glossy • Heavy Weight • Extra Heavy Weight 1, 2
	Media weight	16–17 lb (60 to 256 g/m^2)

Network and software specifications

Learn about the network and software specifications.

Network interface

Learn about the network interface.

Table 1-14 Network interface

Item		Specifications
Network OS		**Windows** • XP (32/64 bit) • 2003 (32/64 bit) • Vista (32/64 bit) • Windows 7 • Windows 8 **Mac** • Mac OS 10.5 –10.8 **Linux** • RedHat 8–9 • Fedora Core 1–4 • Mandrake 9.2–10.1 • SuSE 8.2–9.2 **Novell** • Netware 5.x, 6.x (TCP/IP Only) **Others** • Unix (HP-UX, Solaris, SumOS, SCO)
Network Protocols	TCP/IP	TCP/IPv4, HTTP, SNMPv1/v2c/v3, LDAP, SMTP, SSL/TLS, IPSec, DNS, WINS, SLP, Bonjour, SSDP, DDNS, DHCP/BOOTP, IPv6
	IPX/SPX	No
	Ether Talk	No
	NetBIOS over TCP/IP	Yes
	Others	HTTPS, IPSec, 802.1x
IP Addressing	Static IP	Yes
	Auto IP	Yes
	BOOTP	Yes

Table 1-14 Network interface (continued)

Item		Specifications
	DHCP	Yes
SNMP/MIB Access	MIB-2 (RFC 1213)	Yes
	Host Resource MIB (RFC 2790)	Yes
	Printer MIB (RFC 3805)	Yes
	Finisher MIB (RFC 3806)	Yes
	Private MIB	Yes
	HP Compatibility	Yes — Partially
	SNMP Trap	Yes
Printing Protocols	Windows Printing (SMB)	No
	LPR/LPD	Yes
	IPP	Yes
	Netware I-Print	No
	Netware NDPS	No
	Ether Talk	No
	Port 9100	Yes
Device Discovery	DNS	Yes
	Dynamic DNS	Yes
	Multicast DNS (Bonjoure)	Yes
	WSD (including Print and Scan)	Yes (Print and Scan)
	SLP	Yes
	uPNP (SSDP)	Yes

Software and solutions

Learn about the software and solutions.

Table 1-15 Software and solutions

Item		Specifications
Application	Anyweb Print	N/A
	Easy Printer Manager	Windows/Mac
	Easy Color Manager	Windows/Mac
	Easy Document Creator	Windows
	Net PC Fax	Windows/Mac
	Direct Printing Utility	Windows
	Easy Deployment Manager	Windows

Table 1-15 Software and solutions (continued)

Item		Specifications
	Easy Eco Driver	Windows
	Universal Printer Driver	Windows
	Universal Scan Driver	Windows
Mobile Printing	Google Cloud Print (GCP)	Yes
	Airprint	Yes
Smart App	Smart Workspace	Yes
	Workbook Composer	Yes
	Smart Color Manager	Yes
	Smart Service App	Yes
	Hancom Office	Yes
Solution	Device Management	Fleet Admin Pro (UniThru)
	Output Management	CounThru Enterprise/Pro
	Document Management and Distribution	SmarThru Workflow 3.0
	Security	SecuThur Pro 1.0
	Mobility	SCP 1.0 (14.09)
Security	Authentication (Local)	Yes
	Authentication (Network)	Yes (SMB/Kerberos/LDAP/IPSec/EAP)
	IP Address Filtering	Yes (IPv4 Filtering/IPv6 Filtering/MAC Filtering)
	HDD Overwrite (Standard)	9
	HDD Overwrite (Maximum Overwrites)	Yes
	Secure Print	Yes
	Encrypted Secure Print	Yes
	Encrypted PDF Mode (Encrypted Scanning)	Yes
	IP Sec	Yes
	Smart Card Authentication	Yes

Options

Learn about printer options and accessories.

Optional configurations

Learn about optional configurations.

Figure 1-5 Options

Table 1-16 Printer options and configurations

Item	Description	Product number
1	HP Color LaserJet Managed MFP E87640, E87650, E87660	E87640 • dn model: X3A87A • du model: 5CM64A • z model: X3A86A E87650 • dn model: X3A90A • du model: 5CM65A • z model: X3A89A E87660 • dn model: X3A93A • du model: 5CM66A • z model: X3A92A
2	HP LaserJet Department Cabinet	Y1G16A
3	HP LaserJet 2000 Sheet High Capacity Tray Department	Y1G21A
4	HP LaserJet Dual Cassette Department Feeder	Y1F98A
5	HP High Capacity Input Tray Side (sHCI)	Y1G20A

Table 1-16 Printer options and configurations (continued)

Item	Description	Product number
6	HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher	Y1G18A The following punch kits are available: • Y1G10A — HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/3 accessory • Y1G11A — HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/4 accessory • Y1G12A — HP LaserJet Hole Punch Swedish accessory
7	HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher	Y1G07A The following punch kits are available: • Y1G10A — HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/3 accessory • Y1G11A — HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/4 accessory • Y1G12A — HP LaserJet Hole Punch Swedish accessory
8	HP LaserJet Inner Finisher	Y1G00A The following punch kits are available: • Y1G02A — HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/3 punch • Y1G03A — HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/4 Punch • Y1G04A — HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Swedish Punch
9	HP LaserJet Department Job Separator	Y1G15A
	HP LaserJet Paper Tray Heaters Department	Y1G22A NOTE: Not shown in configuration. The following accessories are also available: • Y1G22A#BGJ — HP LaserJet Paper Tray Heaters Accessory Department (110V) • Y1G22A#B19 — HP LaserJet Paper Tray Heaters Accessory Department (220V)

Options list

Learn about the options list.

Table 1-17 Options list

Item	Product numbers	Remark
HP LaserJet Department Cabinet	Y1G168	
HP LaserJet Dual Cassette Department Feeder	Y1F98A	
HP LaserJet 2000 Sheet High Capacity Tray Department	Y1F21A	
HP High Capacity Input Tray Side (sHCI)	Y1F20A	
Fax Kit		
Fax Multiline Kit		
Foreign interface harness (FIH) Kit	B5L31A	Service part: B5L31-67902
HP LaserJet Job Separator Department	Y1G01A	
HP LaserJet Paper Tray Heaters Department	Y1G22A	For dual cassette feeder (DCF) For HCI/sHCI
HP LaserJet Paper Tray Heaters Accessory Department (110V)	Y1G22A#BGJ	For dual cassette feeder (DCF) For HCI/sHCI
HP LaserJet Paper Tray Heaters Accessory Department (220V)	Y1G22A#B19	For dual cassette feeder (DCF) For HCI/sHCI
Wireless/NFC Kit	3JN69A	HP JetDirect 3100w BLE/NFC/Wireless accessory
Wireless/NFC/BLE Kit		
Additional Network Kit (Dual Network Kit)		
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher	Y1G00A	
HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher	Y1G18A	
HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher	Y1G07A	
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/3 Punch	Y1G02A	Two and three hole punch (for America, Asia, and Africa)
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/4 Punch	Y1G03A	Two and four hole punch (for Europe)
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Swedish Punch	Y1G04A	Swedish four hole punch (for Sweden)
HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/3 Accessory	Y1G10A	Two and three hole punch (for America, Asia, and Africa)
HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/4 Accessory	Y1G11A	Two and four hole punch (for Europe)
HP LaserJet Hole Punch Swedish Accessory	Y1G12A	Swedish four hole punch (for Sweden)

Table 1-17 Options list (continued)

Item	Product numbers	Remark
HP LaserJet Inner/Booklet Finisher Staples NOTE: The HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher and HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher have two staple slots.	Y1G13A	• Regular staples for the HP LaserJet Inner Finisher • Regular saddle staples for the HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher
HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher Staples NOTE: The HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher and HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher have two staple slots.	Y1G14A	• Regular staples for HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher

Option specifications

Learn about option specifications.

Table 1-18 Option specifications

Item		Specification
HP LaserJet Dual Cassette Department Feeder	Part number	Y1F98A
	Capacity	520 x 2 sheets
	Media Sizes	• Cassette 1: 148.5 mm x 210 mm — 297 mm x 432 mm (5.8 in x 8.2 in — 12 in x 18 in) • Cassette 2: 148.5 mm x 210 mm — 297 mm x 432 mm (5.8 in x 8.2 in — 12 in x 18 in)
	Media Types	Plain/Thin/Bond/Hole Punched/Preprinted/ Recycled/Thin Cardstock/Letterhead/Thick/ Cotton/Colored/Archive/Thin Glossy/Heavy Weight/Extra Heavy Weight

Table 1-18 Option specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Media Weight	• Plain Paper: 71–90 g/m² (18.5–24 lb/ Duplex) • Thick Paper: 91–105 g/m² (25–28 lb/ Duplex) • Heavy Weight Paper: 106–176 g/m² (Duplex) • Heavy Weight Paper 1: 177–216 g/m² (Duplex) • Heavy Weight Paper 2: 217–256 g/m² (Duplex) • Heavy Weight Paper 3: 257–300 g/m² • Thin Paper: 60–69 g/m² (16–19 lb/ Duplex) • Cotton Paper: 75–90 g/m² (Duplex) • Colored: 75–90 g/m² (Duplex) • Preprinted: 71–90 g/m² (Duplex) • Recycled: 60–90 g/m² (Duplex) • Bond Paper: 105–120 g/m² (Duplex) • Letterhead: 75–90 g/m² (Duplex) • Hole Punched Paper: 75–90 g/m² (Duplex) • Thin Cardstock: 105–163 g/m² (Duplex) • Thin Glossy: 106–163 g/m² (Duplex)
	Sensing	• H/W Install Detect: Yes • Paper Empty and Low Level Detect: Yes • Paper Type Detect: No • Paper Size Detect: Yes
	Dimensions	556 mm x 610 mm x 265 mm (22.3 in x 24 in x 10 in)
	Weight	Net 20 kg, Packing 23.5 kg
HP LaserJet 2000 Sheet High Capacity Tray Department	Part number	Y1G21A
	Capacity	2000 sheets at 20 lb (80 g/m²)
	Media Sizes	A4, Letter
	Media Types	Plain Paper, Thin Paper, Thick Paper, Punched Paper

Table 1-18 Option specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Media Weight	60 to 300 gsm
	Sensing	• H/W Install Detect: Yes • Paper Empty and Low Level Detect: Yes • Paper Type Detect: No • Paper Size Detect: No
HP High Capacity Input Tray Side (sHCI)	Part number	Y1F20A
	Capacity	3000 sheets at 20 lb (80 g/m^2)
	Media Sizes	A4, Letter
	Media Types	Plain Paper, Thin Paper, Thick Paper, Punched Paper
	Media weight	60 to 300 gsm
	Sensing	• H/W Install Detect: Yes • Paper Empty and Low Level Detect: Yes • Paper Type Detect: No • Paper Size Detect: No
HP LaserJet Department Cabinet	Part number	Y1G16A
	Dimensions	585 mm x 670 mm x 257 mm
	Weight (Net)	18 kg
HP LaserJet Job Separator Department	Part number	Y1G01A
	Capacity	125 sheets at (80 g/m^2)
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher	Part number	Y1G00A
	Capacity	500 sheets stacking, internal
	Staple Cartridge Capacity	5000 staples/cartridge
	Stacking	• Top Tray: 50 sheets (A4/LT at 80 gsm) • Finishing Tray: 500 sheets (A4/LT at 80 gsm)
	Stapling	• Maximum Number of Sheets: 50 sheets stapling with 90 g/m^2 sheet • Stapling Positions: Front flat and corner (45), Dual, Rear flat and corner (45)
	Saddle Stapling	N/A
	Offline Stapling	N/A
	Offset at Non-Staple Job	Yes

Table 1-18 Option specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Offset at Staple Job	N/A
	Output Stacking	Face Down
HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher	Part number	Y1G18A
	Capacity	65 sheets stapling, 3,250 sheets stacking
	Staple Cartridge Capacity	5000 staples/cartridge
	Stacking	• Top Tray: 250 sheets (A4/LT at 80 gsm) • Finishing Tray: 3000 sheets (A4/LT at 80 gsm)
	Stapling	• Maximum Number of Sheets: 65 sheets stapling with 90 g/m^2 sheet • Stapling Positions: 2 Corners (Single , 45 degree), Center (Double)
	Offline Stapling	Yes
	Offset at Non-Staple Job	Yes
	Offset at Staple Job	Yes
	Output Stacking	Face Down
HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher	Part number	Y1G07A
	Capacity	65 sheets stapling, 2000 sheets stacking
	Staple Cartridge Capacity	5000 staples/cartridge
	Stacking	• Top Tray: 250 sheets (A4/LT at 80 gsm) • Finishing Tray: 2000 sheets (A4/LT at 80 gsm)
	Stapling	• Maximum Number of Sheets: 65 sheets stapling with 90 g/m^2 sheet • Stapling Positions: 2 Corners (Single), Center (Double)
	Saddle Stapling	Maximum Number of Sheets: 25 sheets stapling with 80 g/m^2 sheet
	Offline Stapling	Yes
	Offset at Non-Staple Job	Yes
	Offset at Staple Job	Yes
	Output Stacking	Face Down
1. HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/3 Accessory 2. HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/4 Accessory 3. HP LaserJet Hole Punch Swedish Accessory	Part numbers	1. Y1G10A 2. Y1G11A 3. Y1G12A

Table 1-18 Option specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Available Unit	Auto change 2/3 hole or auto change 2/4 hole, Swedish 4
	Paper Wight	52–300 g/m^2
1. HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/3 Punch 2. P LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/4 Punch 3. HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Swedish Punch	Part numbers	1. Y1G02A 2. Y1G03A 3. Y1G04A
	Available Unit	Auto change 2/3 hole or auto change 2/4 hole, Swedish 4
	Paper Wight	52–256 g/m^2

Feeding system

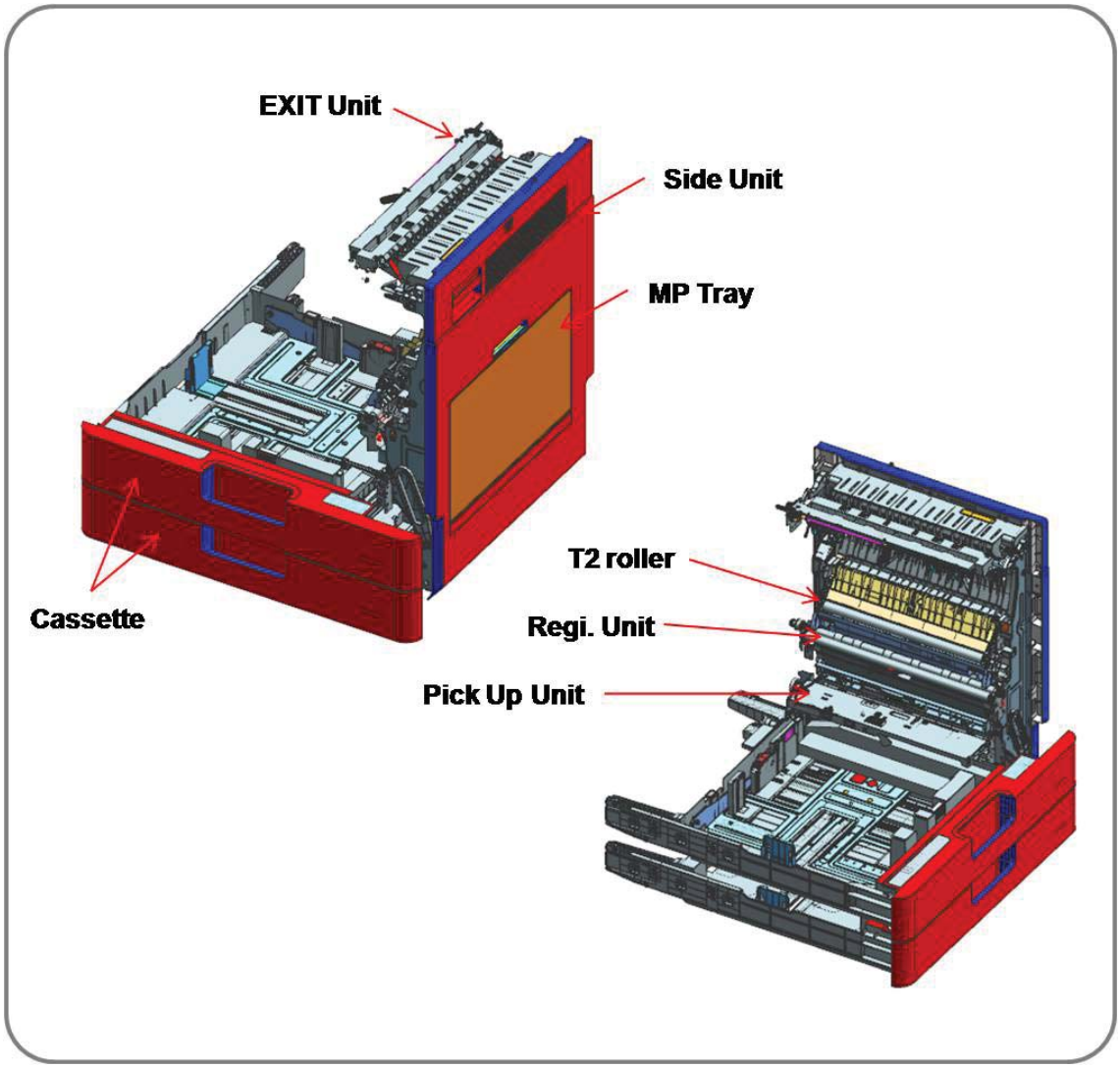
Learn about the feeding system.

Feeding system overview

Learn about the feeding system overview.

The feeding system picks up paper from the cassette or Tray 1 and moves it to the printing mechanism inside the printer. The feeding system consists of the pickup unit, registration unit, transfer roller assembly, and exit unit.

Figure 1-6 Feeding system overview



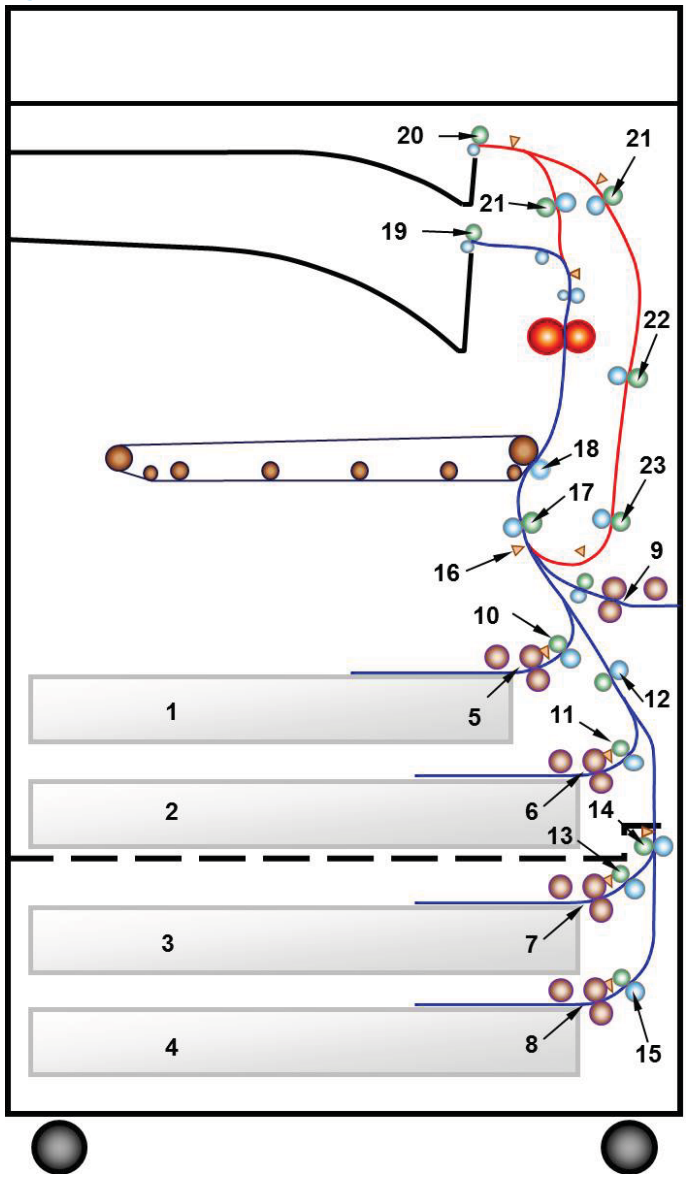
Main components and functions

Learn about main components and their functions.

Rollers

Learn about the rollers.

Figure 1-7 Rollers



1	Tray 2	13	Tray 4 feed roller (optional)
2	Tray 3	14	Tray 4 trans roller (optional)
3	Tray 4 (optional)	15	Tray 5 feed roller (optional)
4	Tray 5 (optional)	16	Registration sensor
5	Tray 2 pickup/reverse/feed rollers	17	Registration roller

6	Tray 3 pickup/reverse/feed rollers	18	Transfer roller
7	Tray 4 pickup/reverse/feed rollers (optional)	19	Exit roller (1st)
8	Tray 5 pickup/reverse/feed rollers (optional)	20	Exit roller (2nd)
9	Tray 1 pickup/reverse/feed rollers	21	Exit roller (trans)
10	Tray 2 feed roller	22	Duplex 1 roller
11	Tray 3 feed roller	23	Duplex 2 roller
12	Tray 3 trans roller	23	Duplex 3 roller

- Pickup roller (Tray 1, 2, 3, 4, 5)
  - This roller picks up the paper from the tray.
- Feed roller (Tray 1, 2, 3, 4, 5)
  - This roller is placed against the reverse roller. It transfers the paper from the pickup roller to the feed roller.
- Reverse roller (Tray 1, 2, 3, 4, 5)
  - This roller is placed against the feed roller and transfers only one sheet of paper to the feed roller. When two or more sheets of paper are being transferred from the pickup roller, the load of the torque limiter of the reverse roller is heavier than the frictional force between the sheets of paper. As a result, the reverse roller is stopped and the lower sheet of paper is not transferred.
- Feed roller
  - This roller transfers the paper sent from the feed/reverse roller to the registration roller.
- Registration roller
  - This roller aligns the leading edge of the paper and transfers the paper to the transfer roller assembly.

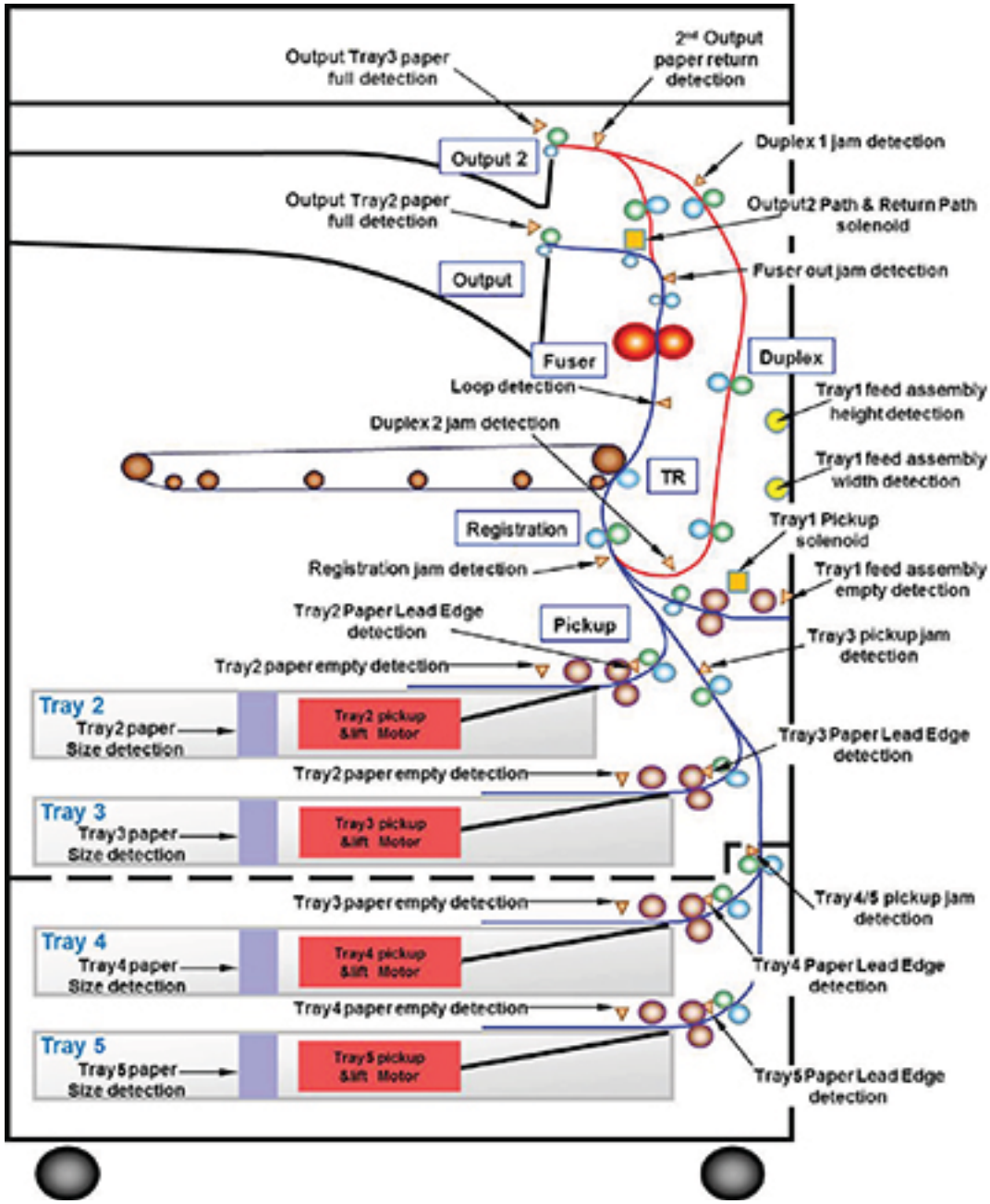
Table 1-19 **Roller period table**

Roller	Periodic
OPC/Drum	94.5 mm (3.7 in)
Charge Roller (CR)	37.7 mm (1.5 in)
Magnetic roller (MR)	32.3 mm (1.3 in)
Transfer roller	44.0 mm (1.7 in)
Transfer roller (T2)	75.4 mm (3.0 in)
Fuser Belt (HR)	110 mm (4.3 in)
Fuser Pressure Roller (PR)	114.7 mm (4.5 in)

Sensor, motor, and solenoid

Learn about the sensor, motor, and solenoid.

Figure 1-8 Sensor, motor, solenoid



Item	Function
Tray 2 paper size detection sensor	Detects Tray 2 paper size
Tray 2 paper empty detection sensor	Detects Tray 2 paper empty
Tray 2 upper limit detection sensor	Detects Tray 2 upper limit
Tray 2 paper Lead Edge detection sensor	Detects Tray 2 paper Lead Edge

Item	Function
Tray 3 paper size detection sensor	Detects Tray 3 paper size
Tray 3 paper empty detection sensor	Detects Tray 3 paper empty
Tray 3 upper limit detection sensor	Detects Tray 3 upper limit
Tray 3 paper Lead Edge detection sensor	Detects Tray 3 paper Lead Edge
Tray 3 paper feed jam detection sensor	Detects Tray 3 paper feed jam
Tray 4 paper size detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 4 paper size
Tray 4 paper empty detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 4 paper empty
Tray 4 upper limit detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 4 upper limit
Tray 4 paper Lead Edge detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 4 paper Lead Edge
Tray 4/4 paper feed jam detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 4/4 paper feed jam
Tray 5 paper size detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 5 paper size detection
Tray 5 paper empty detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 5 paper empty
Tray 5 upper limit detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 5 upper limit
Tray 5 paper Lead Edge detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 5 paper Lead Edge
Paper registration jam detection sensor	Detects Paper registration jam
Paper fuser-out jam detection sensor	Detects Paper fuser-out jam
Output Tray 2 paper full detection sensor	Detects output Tray 2 paper full
Output 2 tray path and Return path solenoid	Changes paper path
Return motor	Controls 2nd output tray and duplex printing
Output Tray 3 paper full detection sensor	Detects output Tray 3 paper full
Output 2 paper return detection sensor	Detects Duplex Return position
1st Duplex motor	Controls duplex printing
2nd Duplex motor	Controls duplex printing
Duplex 1 jam detection sensor	Detects Duplex 1 jam
Duplex 2 jam detection sensor	Detects Duplex 2 jam
Tray 1 (MP) feed assembly paper empty detection sensor	Detects Tray 1 (MP) feed assembly: paper empty NOTE: If paper is loaded in Tray 1, that tray takes priority over trays 2,3,4, or 5.

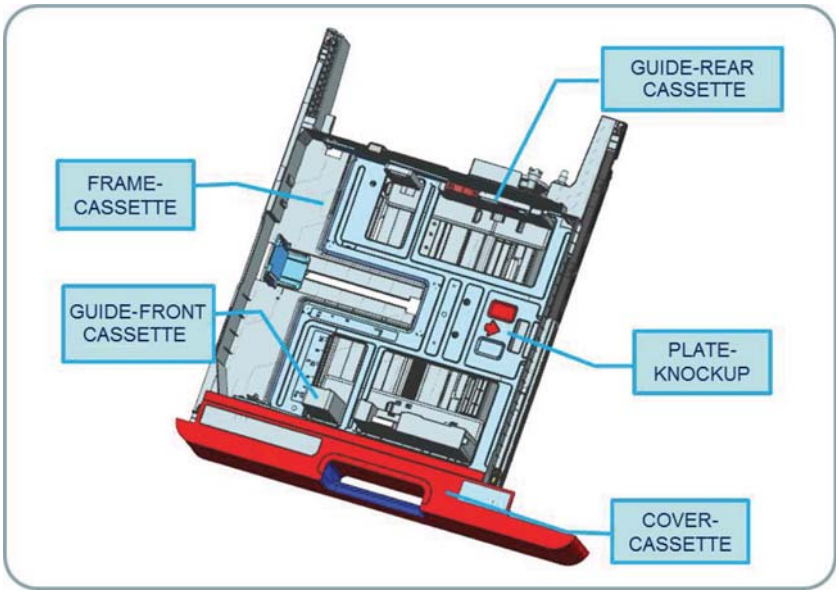
Item	Function
Tray 1 (MP) feed assembly	Controls Tray 1 (MP) feed assembly pickup roller
Tray 1 (MP) feed assembly paper width detection sensor	Detects Tray 1 (MP) feed assembly paper width
Tray 2 Pickup and Lift motor	Drives the pickup roller and the knock up plate
Tray 3 Pickup and Lift motor	Drives the pickup roller and the knock up plate
Tray 4 Pickup and Lift motor	Drives the pickup roller and the knock up plate
Tray 5 Pickup and Lift motor	Drives the pickup roller and the knock up plate
Paper Loop Detection sensor	Detects paper loop between transfer Nip and fusing Nip At warm-up, Detects the fuser jam

Cassette

Learn about the cassette.

The cassette stores paper. The paper size is set using the guides in each tray.

Figure 1-9 Basic cassette



Item	Description
1	Structure: Drawer Type
2	Capacity: 520 sheets (80 g/m² paper standard)
3	Paper type • Plain paper: A5, A4, A3, B5, B4, Letter, 11 in x 17 in (Ledger), Statement, Legal • Special Paper: Envelope (Tray 2 Only), Label, Transparency

Item	Description
4	Paper weight • Plain paper: 60–300 g/m²
5	Plate knock up lift type: Lift Motor + Up Limit Sensor

Pickup unit

Learn about the pickup units.

When paper pickup occurs, the pickup roller moves down in order to come in contact with the surface of the paper. If the cassette is installed, the LEVER-INPUT CST is pushed and the pickup roller moves down. The feed and separation rollers make sure that a single sheet of paper is moved into the paper path, and that the feed roller moves the paper as far as the registration (REGI) roller.

NOTE: The pickup unit 1 and pickup unit 2 are not interchangeable.

Figure 1-10 Pickup unit 1

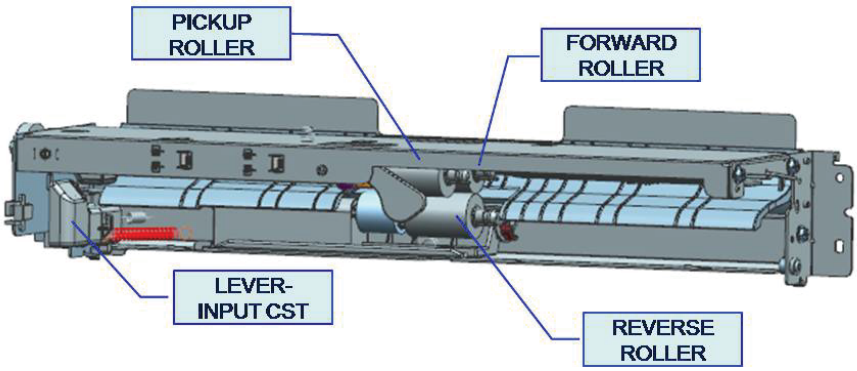
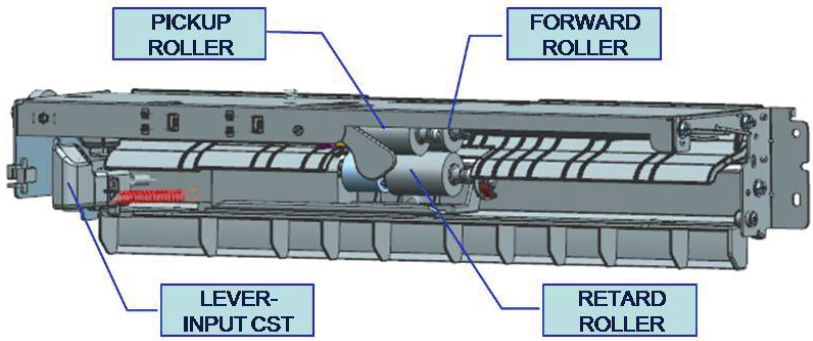


Figure 1-11 Pickup unit 2



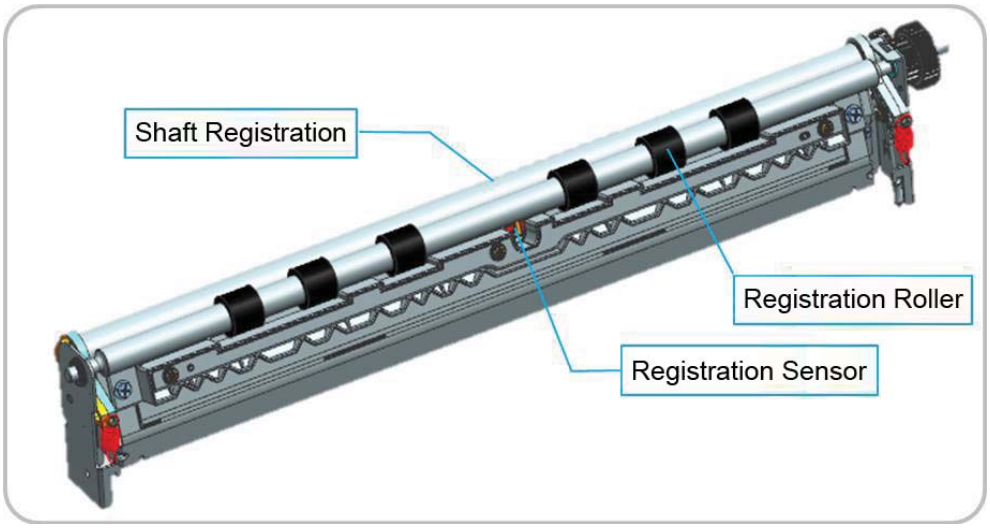
Registration unit

Learn about the registration unit.

The registration roller is driven by the registration/multipurpose motor.

The registration roller clutch is located between the registration/Tray 1 motor and registration roller, or on the transfer belt (for color), and it controls power to the registration roller in order to match paper and an image on the drum at the predetermined registration point.

Figure 1-12 Registration roller

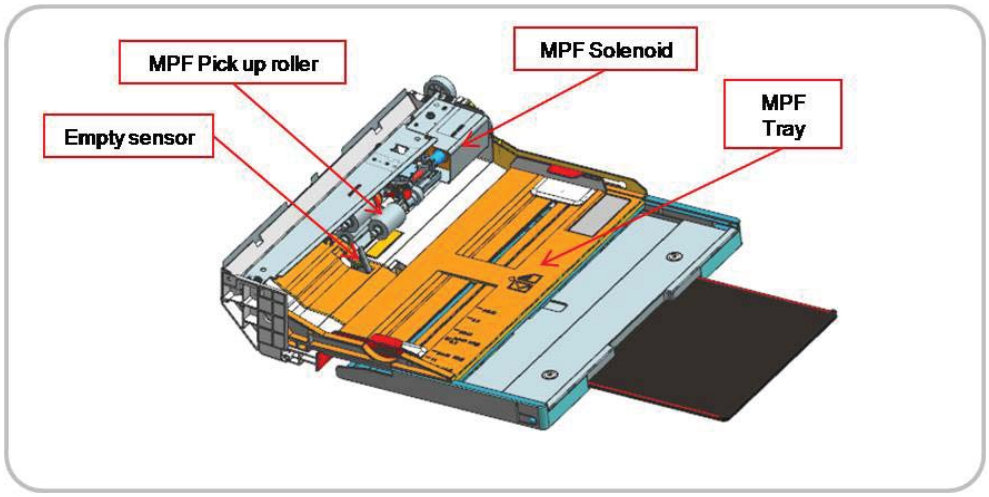


Tray 1 feed assembly

Learn about the Tray 1 feed assembly.

The Tray 1 feed assembly allows feeding of special media cardstock and custom size paper.

Figure 1-13 Tray 1 (MP) feeder assembly

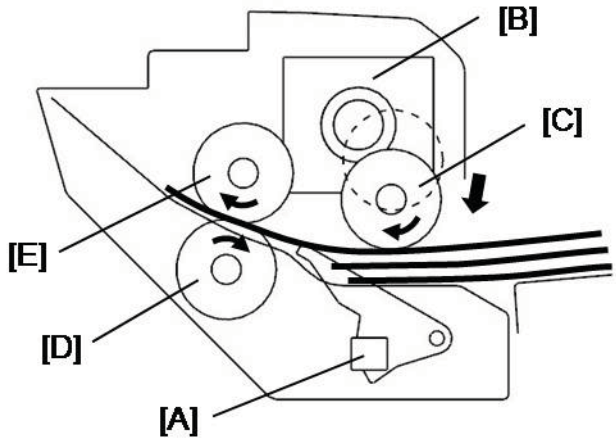


Specification

- Capacity: 100 sheets (80g/m² / 21 lb paper standard)
- Media size: 98 mm x 148 mm – 320 mm x 1200 mm (3.87 in x 5.8 in – 12.6 in x 47.2 in)
- Media weight: Plain paper 60 – 320 g/m²
- Feeding speed: 32 ppm, 40 ppm, 48 ppm Letter/A4 LEF (Long Edge Feeding)

Paper separation

Figure 1-14 Paper separation



When the Tray 1 (MP) paper detection [A] sensor detects paper and the machine gets a Tray 1 (MP) printing job, the Tray 1 (MP) solenoid [B] drops the pickup roller [C] onto the top of the paper stack in Tray 1.

This machine uses a Feed and Reverse Roller (FRR) system for feeding paper. The friction between the reverse roller [D] and feed roller [E] separates the top sheet of paper from the stack.

Fuser unit

Learn about the fuser unit.

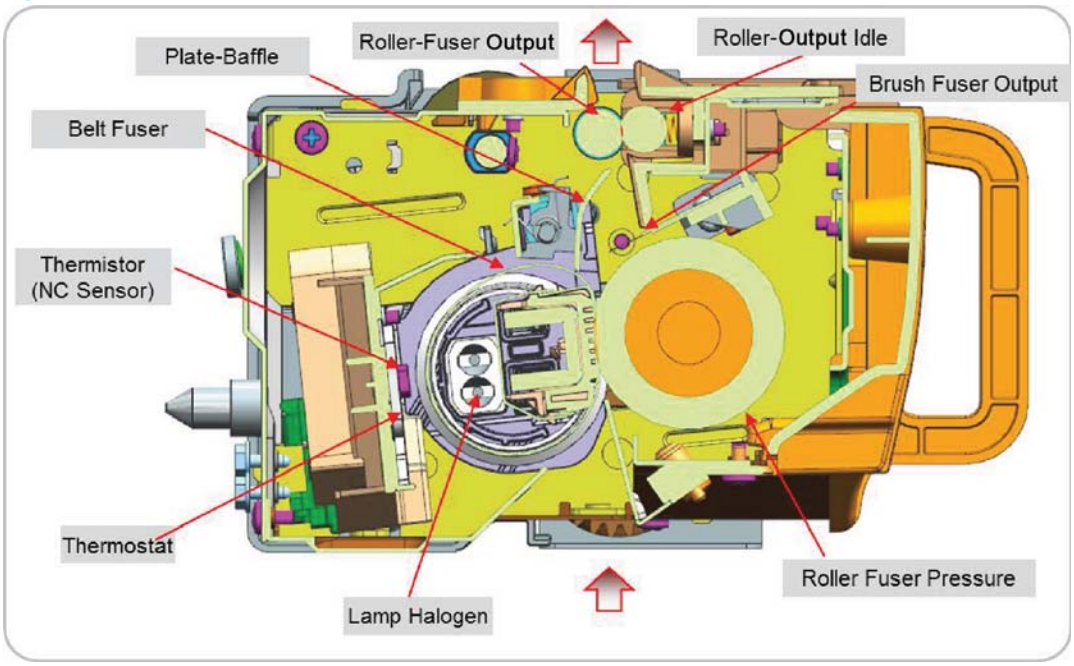
Fuser unit overview

Learn about the fuser unit.

This section describes the image fusing process used by the printer.

This unit fuses the toner that was transferred by the transfer roller onto the paper, by applying a combination of heat and pressure to complete the fusing process. This printer uses an instant fusing system (NIF type). The fuser unit design for this model has improved. The fuser belt has been changed to require less heat capacity and still fuse the toner properly. Additionally, the life has been improved by incorporating a sub-bush system with a lubricant storage design.

Figure 1-15 Fuser unit



- **Lamp halogen**

  The fuser unit has two halogen lamps. One heats the center of the fusing belt, the other heats the end of axial direction. These halogen lamps are lit alternately to heat the fusing belt. Each lamp has its coil in a different location. The coil of the center heater lamp is in the center, the coils on the side heater lamp are on both sides. The lamps are fixed inside of the fusing belt. When the fusing belt rotates, the lamps do not rotate.

- **Belt fuser**

  The belt fuser gets heat from the halogen lamp and transfers it to the toner and paper. The belt fuser consists of three thin-layers. The thin fusing belt reduces warm up and mode changing time. To prevent the fusing belt from adhering to the toner, the surface of the fuser belt is fluorinated. There is a nip inside the fusing belt. Tension springs are used to keep a constant nip area where the fusing belt contacts the pressure roller.

- **Roller fuser pressure**

The pressure roller makes sure there is a proper nip width between the pressure roller and fusing belt. It is made up of the soft silicone sponge rubber. The pressure roller is driven by the driving system and drives the fusing belt.

- **Thermistor (NC sensor)**

  The temperature of the fusing belt is maintained by NC sensors (non-contact type thermistors) located near the center and the end of the fusing belt.

- **Thermostats**

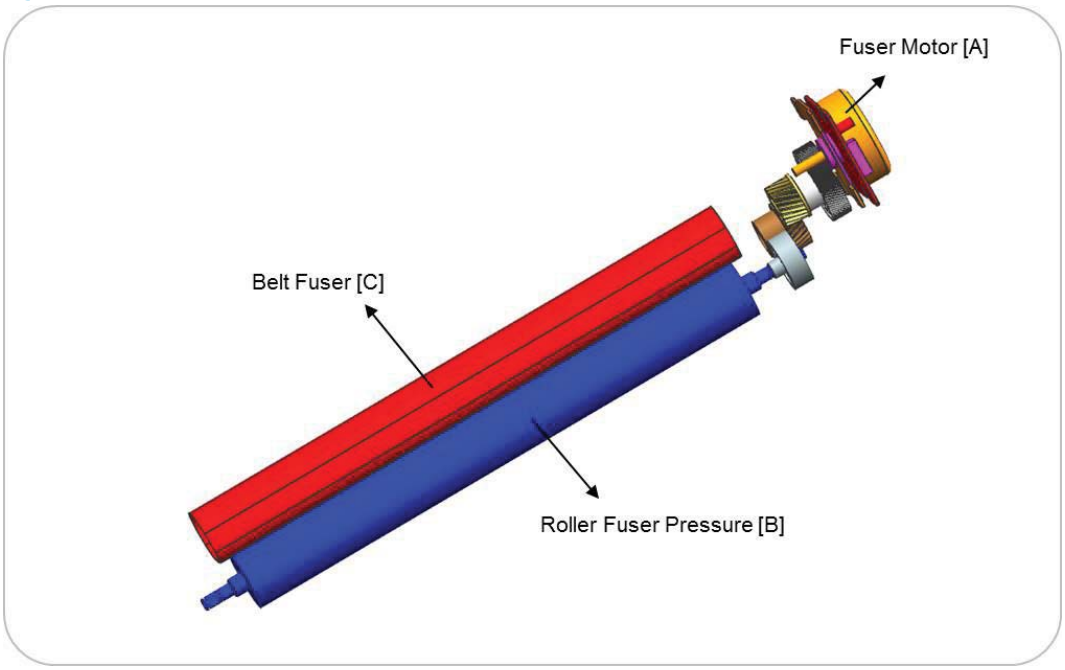
  The thermostat cuts off the power supply to the halogen lamp by opening the circuit when the fusing belt becomes abnormally hot as a result of a problem, such as a NC sensor malfunction. The thermostat is used to prevent abnormal operation. When a thermostat is triggered, it must be replaced as well as the other damaged parts in the fuser unit.

Fuser unit drive

Learn about the fuser unit drive.

The fuser motor (A) drives the pressure roller (B) through the gear train. The fuser belt is driven by the pressure roller.

Figure 1-16 Fuser drive

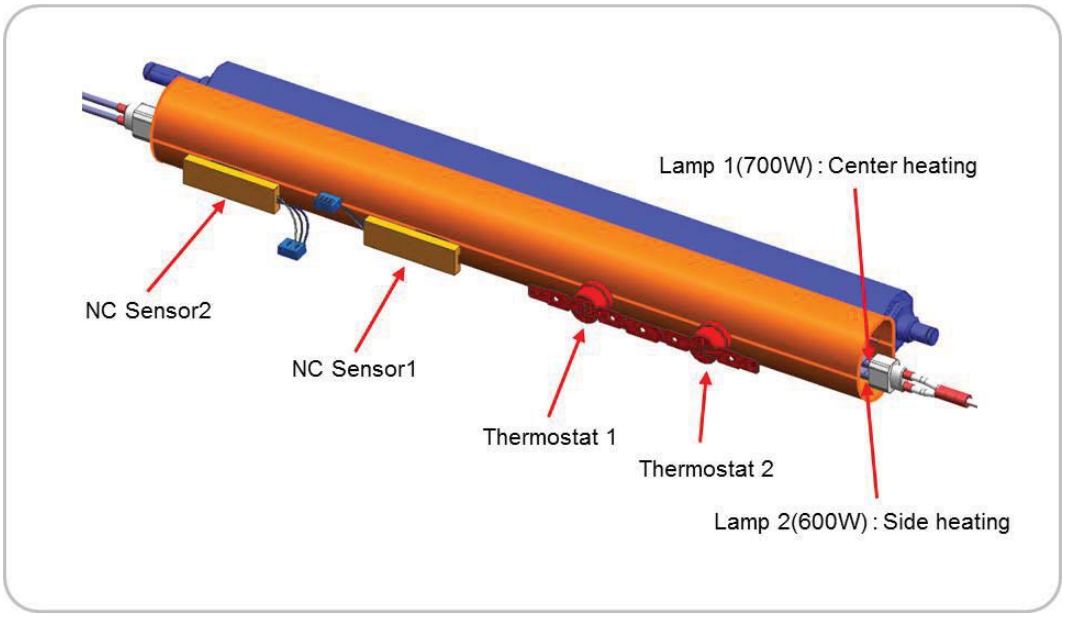


Fuser unit temperature control

Learn about fuser temperature control.

When the main switch turns on, the CPU turns on the fusing lamp. The lamp stays on until the NC sensors detect the standby temperature. The CPU then raises the temperature up to the printing temperature.

Figure 1-17 Fuser unit temperature control



Overheat protection

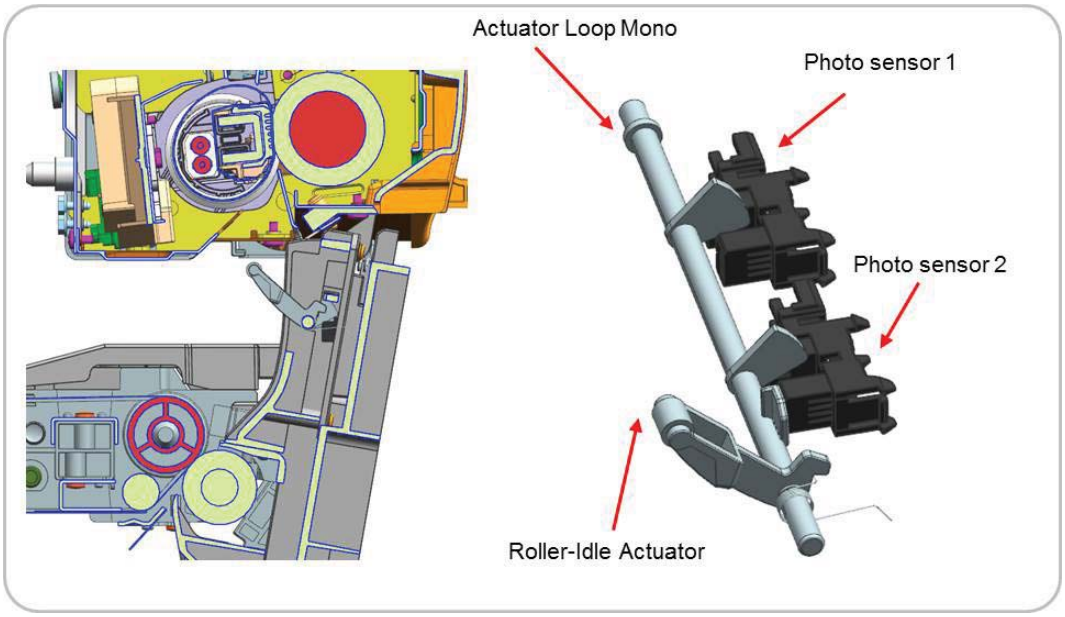
- The CPU cuts power to the fusing lamp in the following cases:
  - The belt temperature detected by the NC sensors keeps higher than 220°C for 20 seconds.
  - The belt temperature detected by the NC sensors keeps higher than 230°C for 3 seconds.
  - The relay off works when the belt temperature detected by the NC sensors is higher than 230°C.
- The following components are used when thermistor overheat protection fails:
  - Two thermostats get into line with the common ground wire of the fusing lamp.
  - If one of the thermostat temperatures becomes higher than 195°C, it opens and cuts power to the fusing lamp. If the other thermostat temperature becomes higher than 195°C, it also opens and cuts power to the fusing lamp.

Loop control

Learn about fuser loop control.

The tension of the paper between the OPC nip and the fuser nip is known as the paper loop level.

Figure 1-18 Loop control



The paper loop level is controlled by monitoring photo sensors 1 and 2. The fuser unit controls the motor speed for the paper loop level.

Image creation

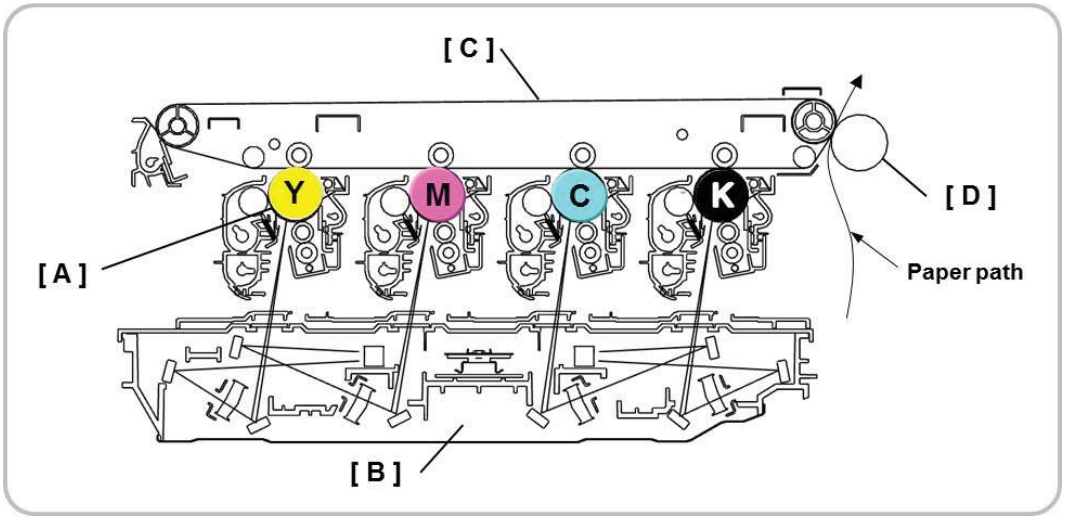
Learn about image creation.

Printing process overview

Learn about the printing process overview.

This printer uses four drum units, four development units, and four laser beams for color printing. Each drum unit consists of a drum, charge roller, and cleaning blade. Each development unit consists of a magnetic roller and mixing auger.

Figure 1-19 Printing process overview



The light produced by the laser creates a latent image by discharging on the surface of the OPC drum. The negatively charged toner is attracted to the latent drum image due to an electric field. The toner (real image) on each OPC drum is moved to the ITB (C) by the positive bias applied to the first transfer roller. All four toners (color image) are transferred to the paper by a positive charge applied to the second transfer roller (D).

1. OPC drum charge: The charge roller gives the drum a negative charge.
2. Laser exposure: Light produced by a laser diode hits the charged OPC through the lens and mirrors.
3. Development: The developing roller carries negatively charged toner to the latent image on the drum surface. This printer uses four independent drum and development units (one for each color).
4. Transfer:
   - *Image transfer*: The first transfer roller opposite the OPC drums transfer toner from the drums to the ITB. Four toner images are super-imposed onto the belt.
   - *Paper transfer*: The second transfer roller transfers the toner from the ITB to the media.
5. Cleaning the OPC drum: The cleaning brush and blade remove remaining toner on the drum surface after image transfer to the paper.
6. Quenching for OPC drum: Quenching is done by illuminating the whole area of the drum with the laser at the end of every job.

Imaging unit

Learn about the imaging unit.

Imaging unit overview

Learn about the imaging unit.

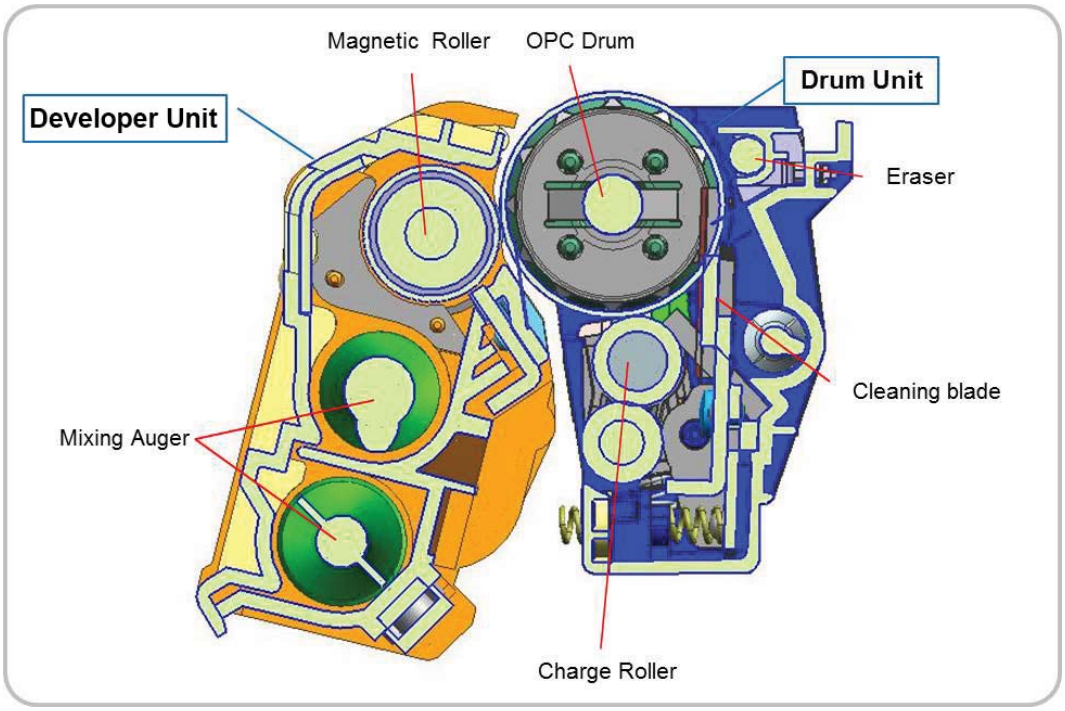
This printer uses a tandem type drum and development units. It uses four color developing during one paper path to increase color printing productivity.

The development units are not interchangeable, but the drum units for Y, M, and C color are interchangeable. The black drum unit is independent. The diameter of the drum is 30 mm with a circumference of about 94.2 mm (3.7 in).

The drum unit has the charge roller to charge the drum surface and cleaning roller to clean the charge roller.

The e-label is the sub part of the drum unit. It stores the count information and other data. If the drum unit is replaced, the count information stored by the discarded drum unit is lost.

Figure 1-20 Imaging unit



Drum drive

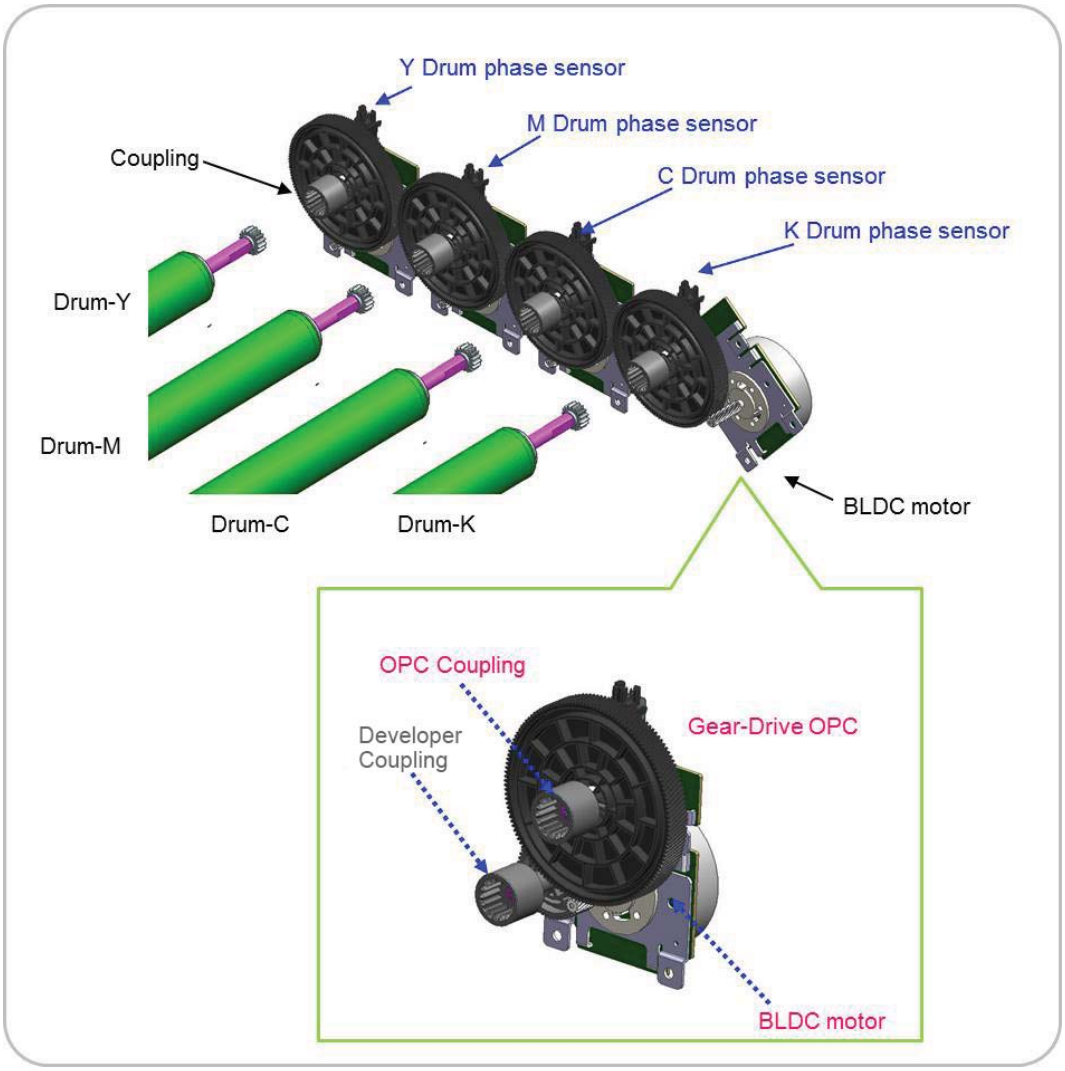
Learn about the drum drive unit.

The color OPCs and magnetic roller are driven by each color motor. The OPC drum and magnetic roller are powered by the coupling.

The Brushless Direct Current (BLDC) motor maintains constant speed. The speed sync for each color depends on the BLDC motor.

Phase sync for each OPC job prints the pattern on the Intermediate Transfer Belt (ITB) and is adjusted automatically.

Figure 1-21 Drum drive



Developer unit

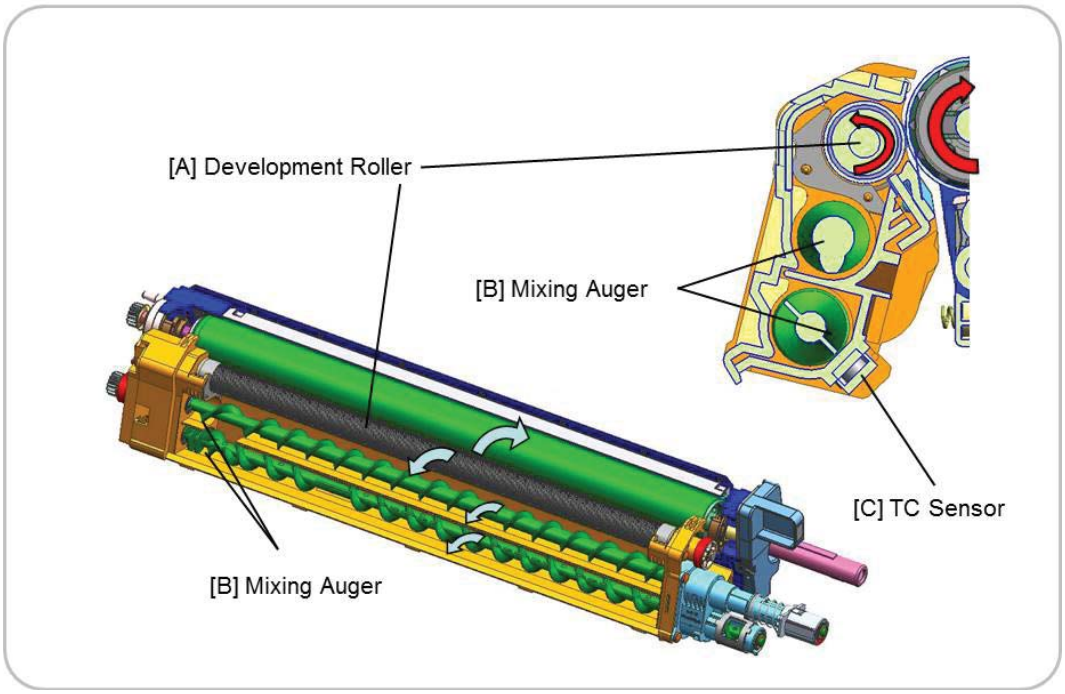
Learn about the developer unit.

This printer uses a dual-component development system that has four development units. Each unit contains 245 g (8.6 oz) of magnetic toner carrier (developer powder).

The developer powder is supplied to the magnetic (development) roller [A] by the two mixing augers [B]. The diameter of the magnetic roller is 18 mm (0.71 in).

Each development unit has a toner carrier (TC) sensor [C]. It is used for controlling the operating range of the toner density.

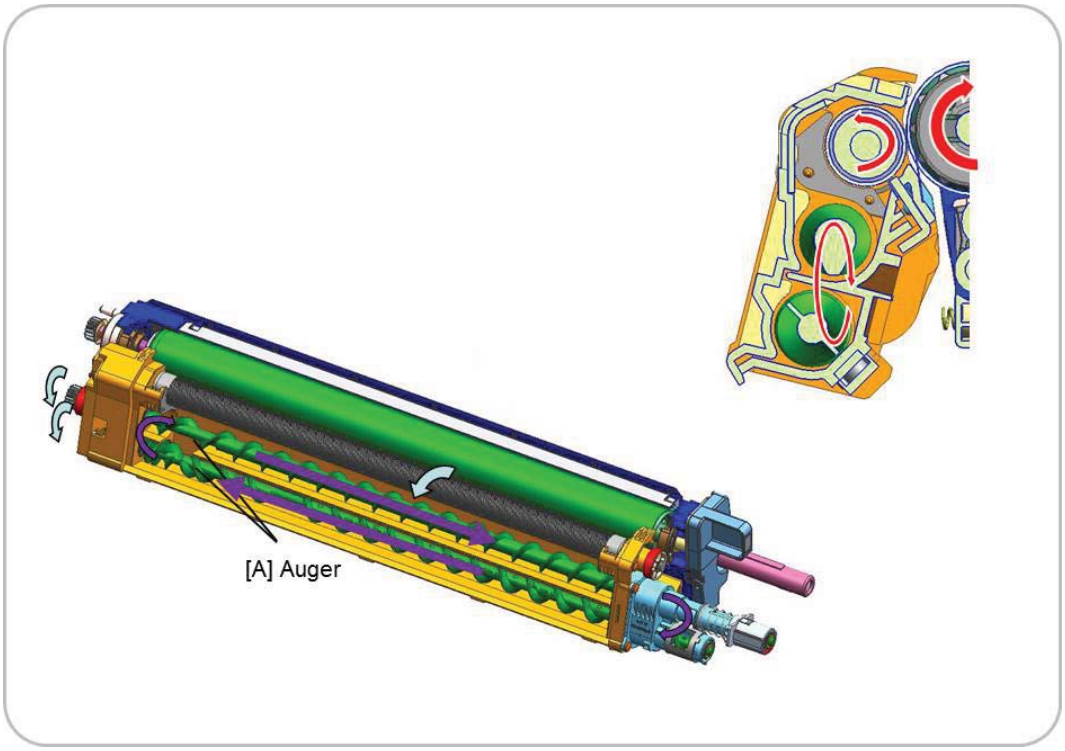
Figure 1-22 Developer unit



Developer agitation

Two mixing augers (A) circulate the developer forward and backward to agitate the developer in order to sufficiently mix the toner and developer.

Figure 1-23 Developer auger



Agitation occurs at the following times:

- During the process control self-checking (warm up)
- During toner supply job
- During development job

If the developer unit is stored above 45°C (113°F), the toner might harden and will not work properly. If the toner in the development unit has hardened, an installation error occurs.

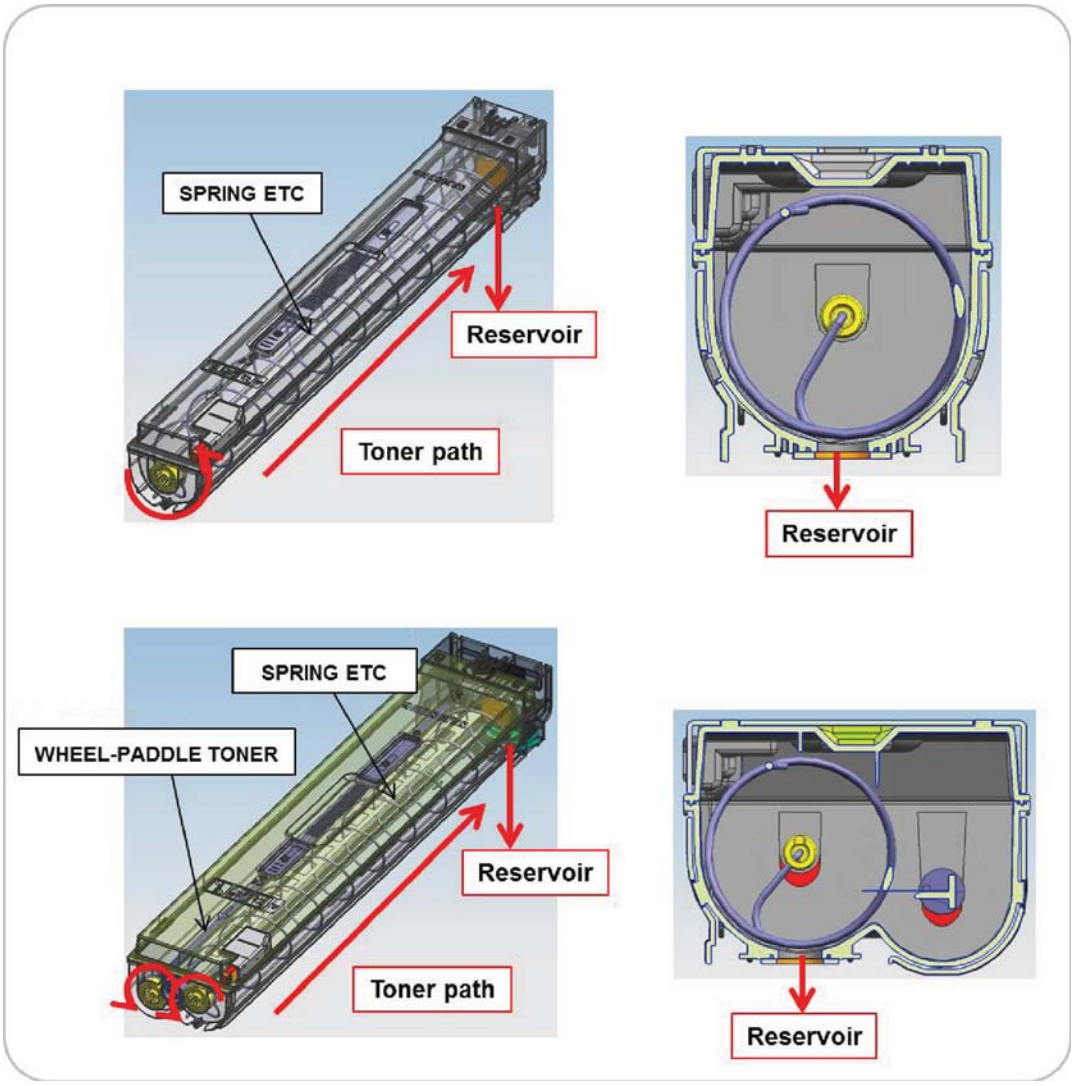
Toner cartridge

Learn about the toner cartridges.

When the toner and carrier in the toner cartridge is mixing:

- The YMC cartridge contains 570 g (20.1 oz) of toner and the K cartridge contains 840 g (29.6 oz) of toner. Additionally, the YMC cartridge contains 55 g (1.9 oz) of carrier and K cartridge contains 80 g (2.8 oz) of carrier
- The toner in the YMC cartridge is transferred to the reservoir by the spring-ETC.
- The toner in the K cartridge is transferred to the Spring-ETC by the Wheel-Paddle Toner and transferred to the reservoir by Spring-ETC.

Figure 1-24 Toner cartridge



Dynamic security

Learn about dynamic-security-enabled printers.

Certain HP printers use cartridges that have security chips or electronic circuitry. Cartridges using a non-HP chip or modified or non-HP circuitry* might not work. And, those that work today might not work in the future.

As is standard in the printing business, HP has a process for authenticating cartridges. HP continues to use security measures to protect the quality of our customer experience, maintain the integrity of our printing systems, and protect our intellectual property. These measures include authentication methods that change periodically and might prevent some third-party supplies from working now or in the future. HP printers and original HP cartridges deliver the best quality, security and reliability. When cartridges are cloned or counterfeited, the customer is exposed to quality and potential security risks, compromising the printing experience.

*Non-HP Chips and modified or non-HP electronic circuitry are not produced or validated by HP. HP cannot guarantee that these chips or circuitry will work in your printer now or in the future. If you are using a non-original HP cartridge, please check with your supplier to ensure your cartridge has an original HP security chip or unmodified HP electronic circuitry.

Intermediate transfer belt unit

Learn about the intermediate transfer belt unit.

Intermediate transfer belt overview

Learn about the intermediate transfer belt (ITB).

The toner on the four drums is transferred to the intermediate transfer belt (ITB) by the first transfer roller

The image overlapped by four colors is transferred to the paper by the second transfer roller. The remaining toners are removed by the cleaning blade and transferred to the toner collection unit.

This process is completed with one rotation of the ITB. The arrow above the C and M drums on the following diagram shows the direction of the ITB rotation. The ITB is rotated by friction between the drive roller and the ITB. The tension roller provides tension to prevent slipping.

There are three color plane registration (CPR) sensors and one photo sensor. Two CPR sensors are for line position adjustment and one is for process control. The photo sensor monitors the position of the first transfer rollers.

Figure 1-25 Intermediate transfer belt

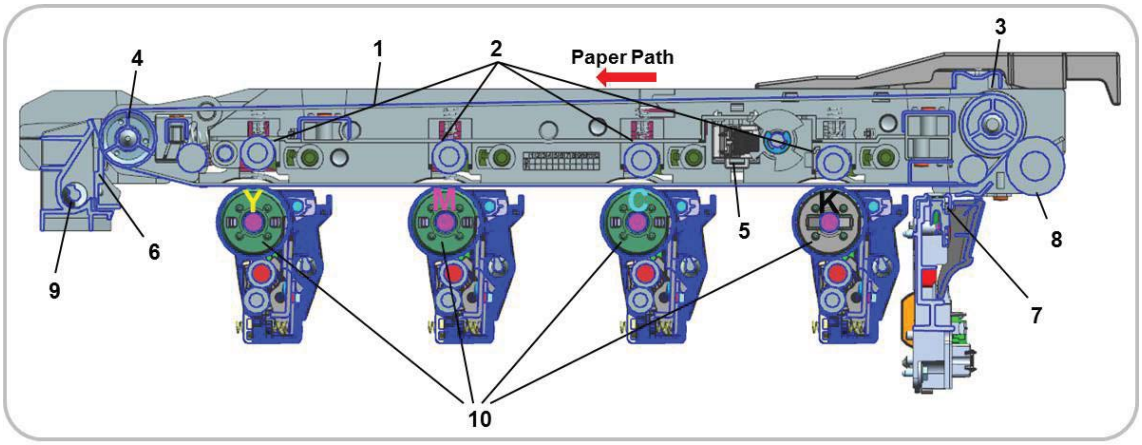


Table 1-20 Intermediate transfer belt components

Item	Description
1	Intermediate transfer belt (ITB)
2	First transfer roller
3	ITB drive roller
4	Tension roller
5	Photo sensor
6	Cleaning blade
7	Color plane registration (CPR) sensor
8	Second transfer roller
9	Toner collection auger
10	Drum unit

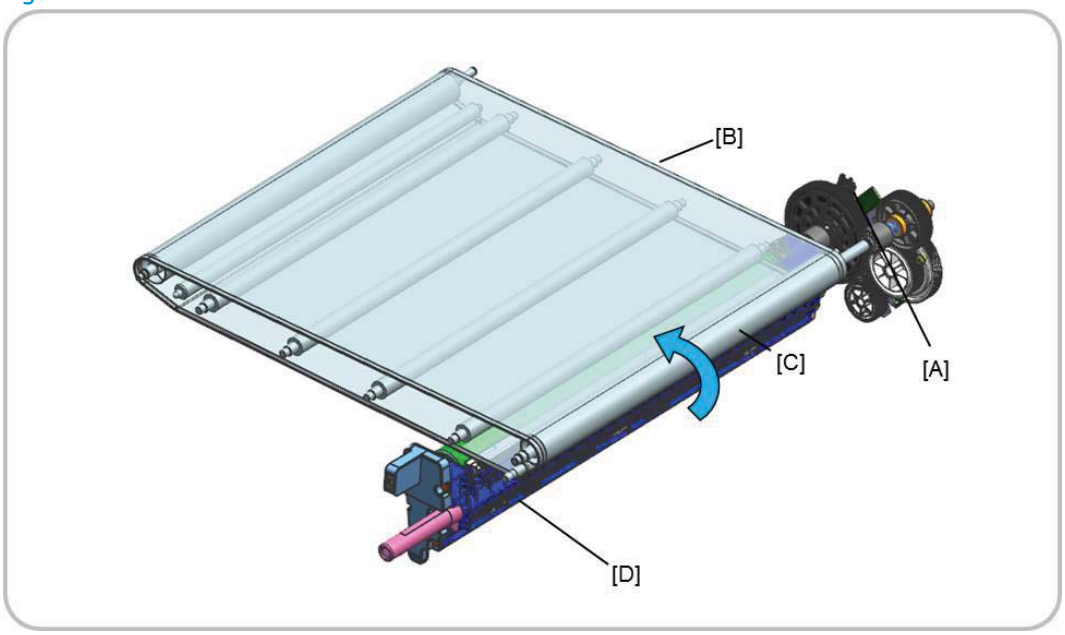
Transfer belt drive

Learn about the transfer belt drive.

The drive motor (A) drives the ITB (B) by using gears and the ITB drive roller (C).

The ITB (B) and black OPC (D) is synchronized by the drive motor (A).

Figure 1-26 Transfer belt drive



Cleaning blade

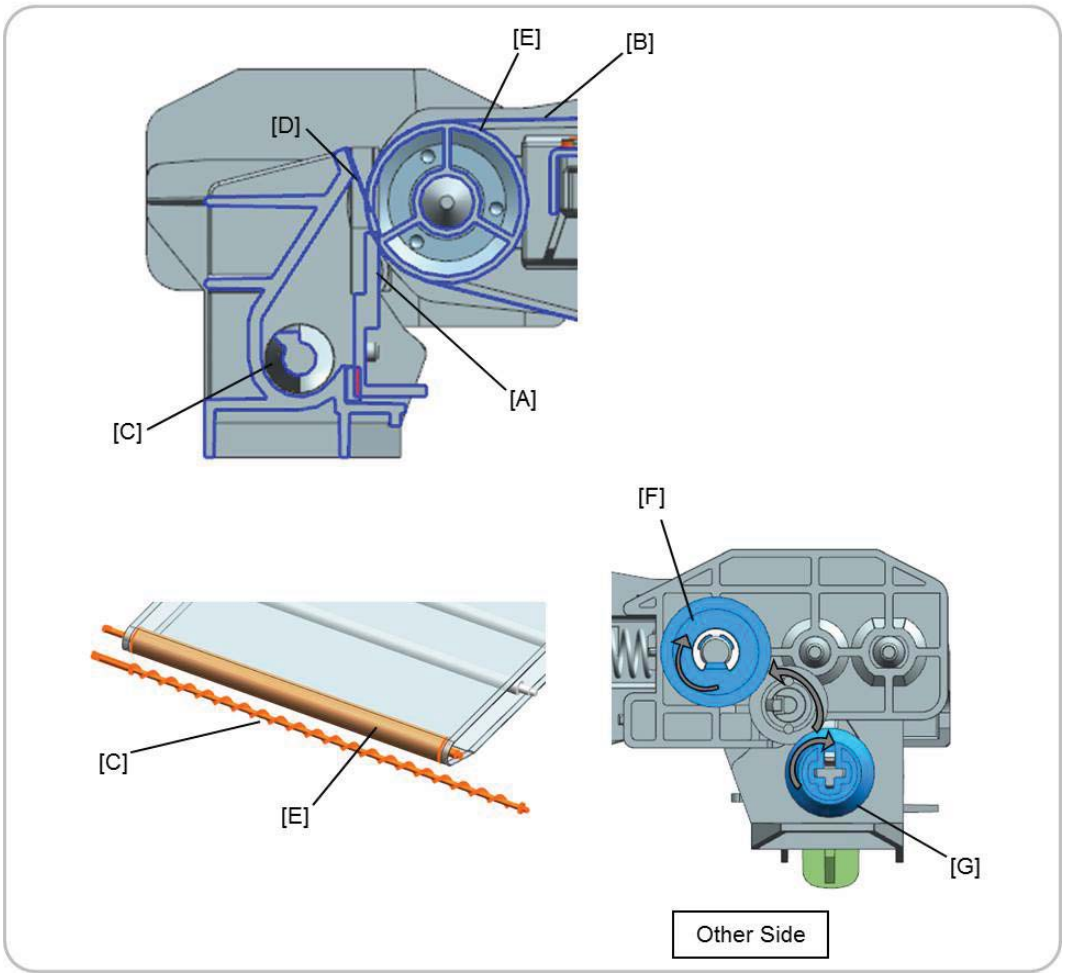
Learn about the transfer belt cleaning blade.

The intermediate transfer belt (ITB) cleaner removes toner during printing. Belt cleaning is completed while the ITB makes one rotation. The ITB drive motor drives the ITB cleaning motor.

The cleaning blade (A) in the ITB cleaner always contacts the ITB (B). The cleaning blade removes the used toner from the ITB. The toner collection auger (C) transfers the waste toner to the toner collection unit.

The seal (D) on the ITB cleaner protects against toner contamination. The driving power by the driver roller is transferred to the tension roller (E). The toner collection auger gear (F) drives the gear (G) and collects the toner

Figure 1-27 Cleaning blade



Toner reservoir unit

Learn about the toner reservoir unit.

Main functions

- Toner Buffer Space (about 0.6 K page volume) which allows users to continue printing until a new toner cartridge is delivered from purchase.
- A toner supply unit that is more accurate from the toner full sensing algorithm.
  - Minimizes the remaining toner in toner cartridge.
  - A uniform toner supply volume per second prevents an abnormal case of toner-density control error in the development unit.

Working mechanism

- Toner level sensing method in the Reservoir unit:
  - The toner level is checked by time with a floating actuator shuttering light sensor (toner full sensor).
- Toner supply to Reservoir unit:

– As the toner level (high, middle, and low) in the reservoir unit decreases so does the toner bottle supply motor 1500 ms, 900 ms, and 600 ms.

Troubleshooting

1. Enter service mode and execute the toner dispense motor.

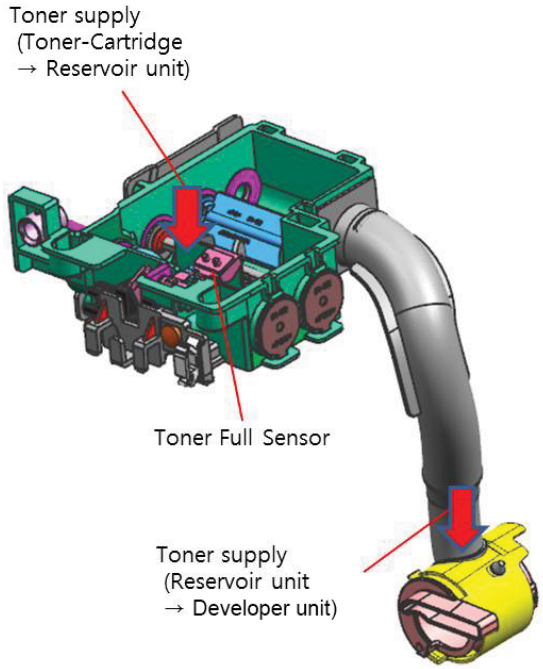
   Service Mode► Diagnostics Engine Diagnostics Engine Test Routines► Toner Dispense Motor (Y,M,C,BK)

   NOTE: There is no test routine for the toner full sensor in the reservoir unit.

2. Check the gear noise and motor operation.

   If the reservoir driving gear is working without abnormal noise, then each reservoir unit does not have a mechanical problem.

   Figure 1-28 Toner reservoir unit



Laser scanner assembly

Learn about the laser scanner assembly.

Laser scanner assembly overview

Learn about the laser scanner assembly.

The laser scanner assembly consists of one polygon motor and four laser diodes (LD) units. The Laser scanner assembly forms a latent image on the surface of four OPC drums. For this process, the laser scanner assembly has a collimator lens, cylindrical lens, two F-Theta lenses, and two reflective mirrors on an optical path for each color.

This laser scanner assembly uses the cross scan type scanning. K Color and C Color scan the laser from the rear to the front. M Color and Y Color scan the laser from the front to the rear.

The laser scanner assembly has a skew adjustment function which adjusts the scanning line. An automatic shutter is used to clean and protect the glass on the laser scanner assembly.

Figure 1-29 Laser scanner assembly overview

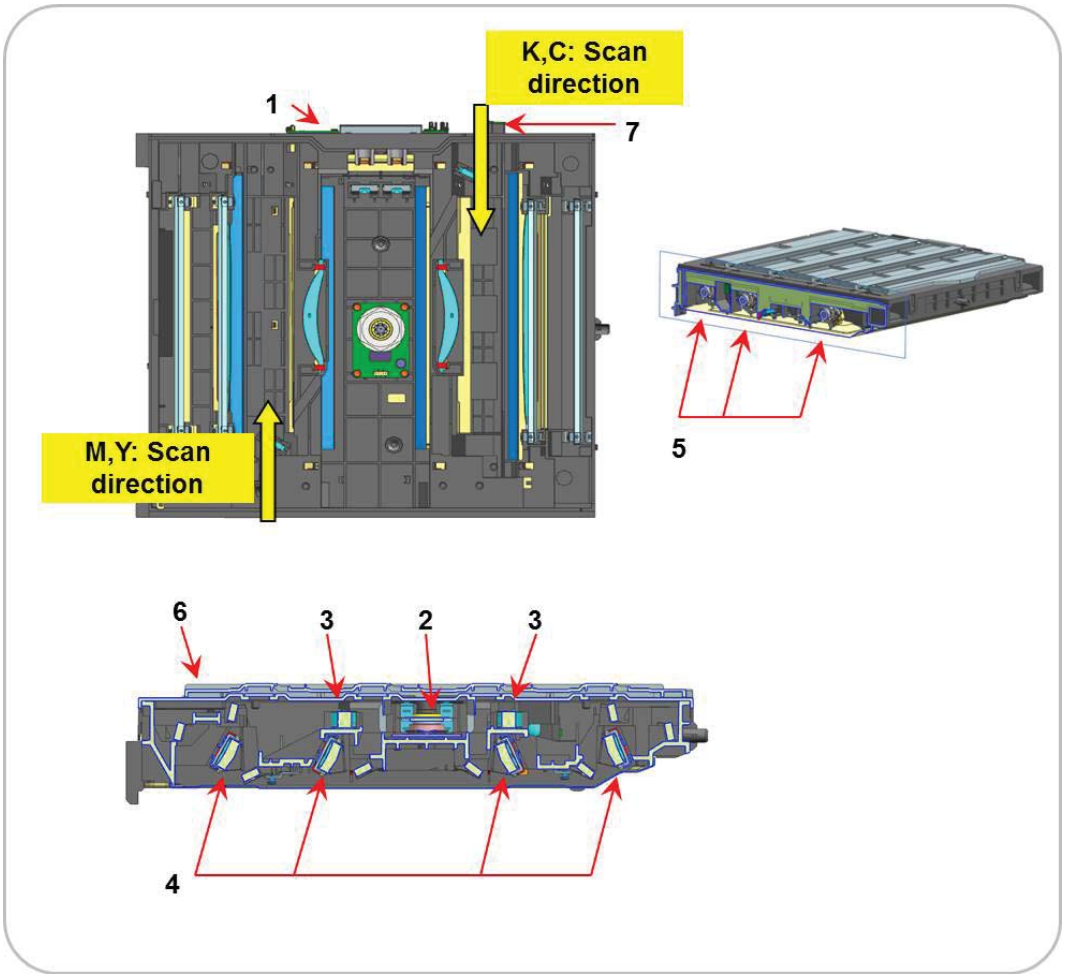


Table 1-21 Laser scanner assembly overview

Item	Description
1	LD PCA

Table 1-21 Laser scanner assembly overview (continued)

Item	Description
2	P/Mirror Motor
3	F1 Lens
4	F2 Lens
5	Skew adjust assembly
6	Shutter
7	PD PCA

Laser scanning optical path

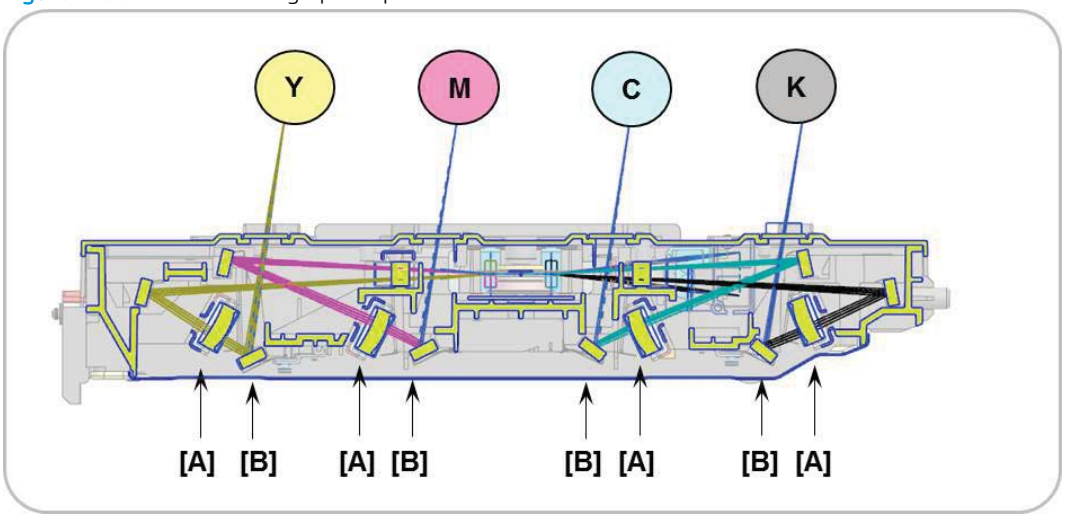
Learn about the laser scanning optical path.

The laser from the laser scanner assembly is placed at intervals of 78 mm for each color. All colors use the same polygon motor for oblique incidence.

The F2 lens (A) determines the slope of the primary scanning line and the image position of the secondary scanning direction. This setting is adjusted by the manufacturer. The primary scanning line slope difference is adjusted by the skew adjustment in the laser scanner assembly.

Reflective mirrors (B) on each color path adjust the curvature of primary scanning. This setting is adjusted by the manufacturer.

Figure 1-30 Laser scanning optical path



Item	Specification	Remark
LD Unit	Laser Diode: Quad Beam Driving IC: Dual LD X 8	LD x 4 (for each color)
P/Motor Speed	• E87640: 22,087 rpm • E87650: 27,520 rpm • E87660: 33,071 rpm	

Item	Specification	Remark
Speed	• E87640: 187 mm/s • E87650: 233 mm/s • E87660: 280 mm/s	
H/W interface	Interface with printer: 50 pin + 60 pin + 8 pin	FFC + FFC + Wire

Laser synchronizing detectors

Learn about laser synchronizing detectors.

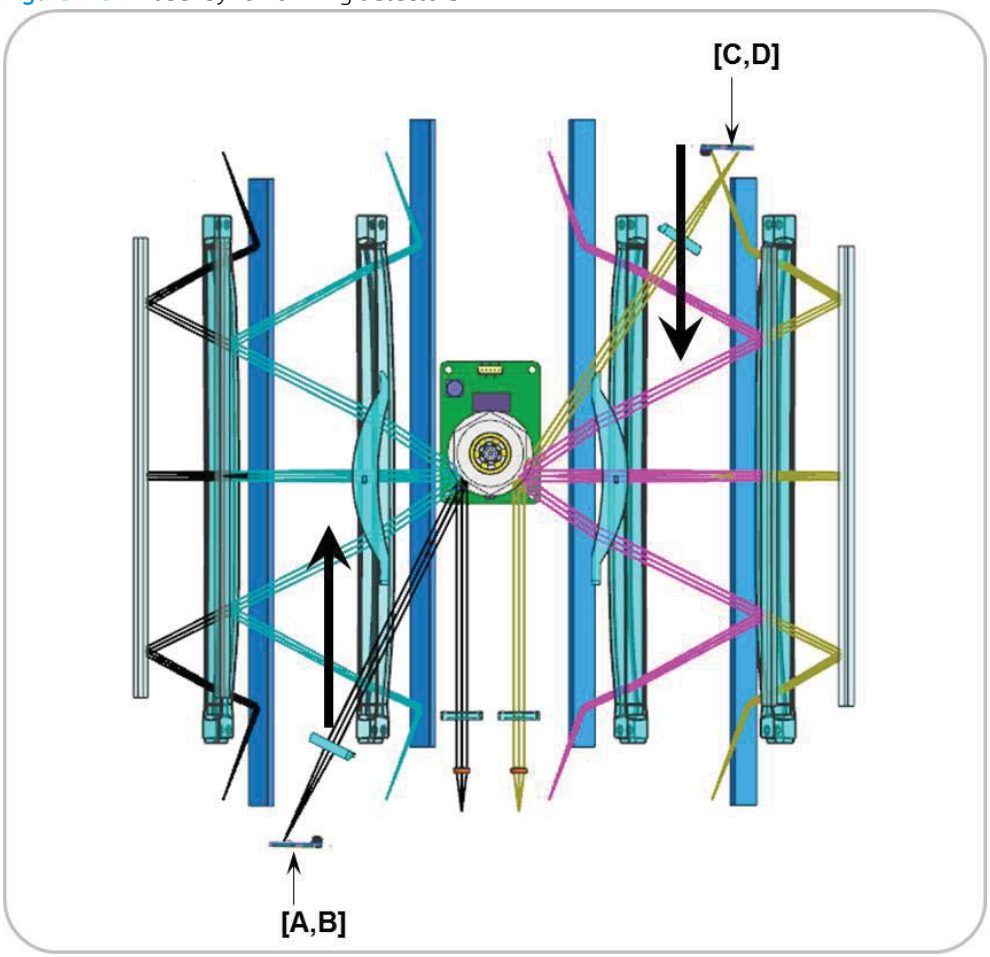
The laser scanner assembly has two beam detector sensor boards (PD PBA includes four sensors). The PD PBAs are located at each corner of the laser optics housing unit.

The beam is detected by the PD PCA at the scanning start point and creates the horizontal sync signal (Hsync).

The two PD PBAs detect the following:

- (A, B): Scanning start position for K, C
- (C, D): Scanning start position for M, Y

Figure 1-31 Laser synchronizing detectors



Main scan start detection

The PD PBAs detect four beams at the scanning start point and create the horizontal sync (Hsync) signal. Data is scanned by Hsync.

The arrow in the previous diagram shows the data scanning direction for each color. Black/Cyan and Yellow/Magenta use the same polygon motor scanning in opposite directions.

Automatic CPR adjustment

Learn about automatic CPR adjustment.

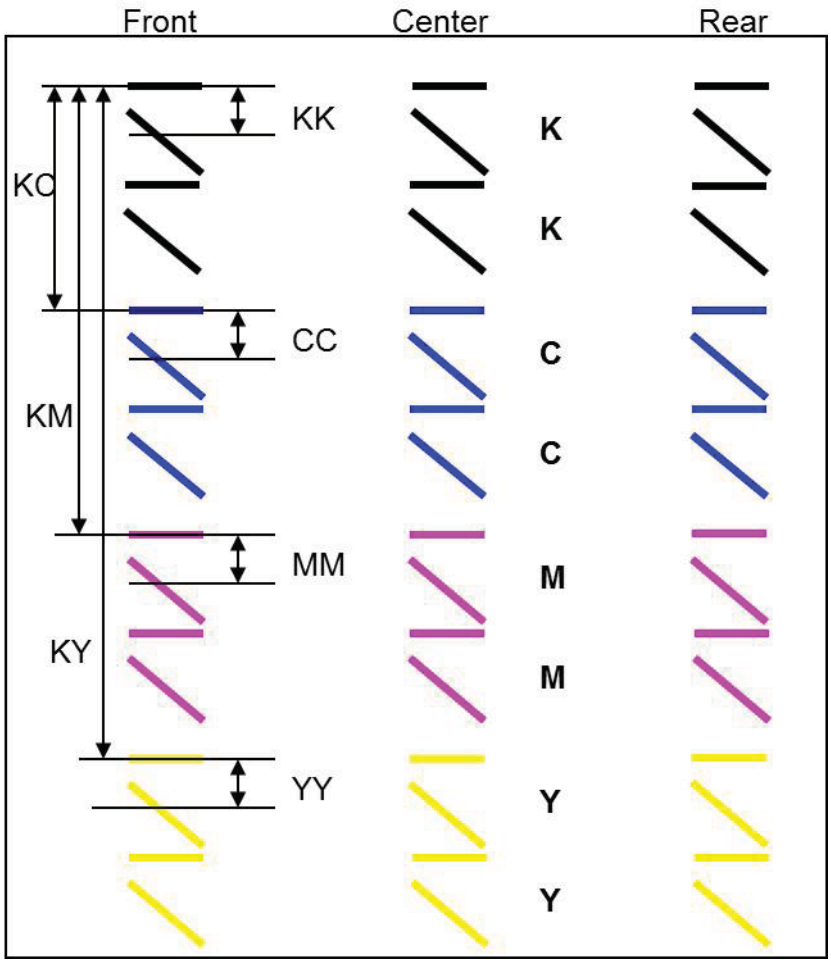
During automatic CPR adjustment, the line patterns below are created eight times on the intermediate transfer belt (ITB). The spaces between the lines (KK, CC, MM, YY, KC, KM, KY) are measured by the front, center, and rear CPR sensors.

The controller takes the average of the spaces and then adjusts the following positions and magnification:

- Sub scan line position for CMY
- Main scan line position for CMY
- Magnification ratio for CMY
- Skew for CMY
- KK, CC, MM, YY: Spaces between two lines of the same color.
- KC, KM, KY: Spaces between a black line and each color line.

NOTE: The ITB cleaning unit cleans the ITB after the patterns are measured.

Figure 1-32 Automatic CPR adjustment



Adjustment

- **Sub Scan line position for CMY**

  The adjustment of the sub scan line position for CMY is based on the line position for K (black). The printer measures the gaps between the lines of each color in the pattern on the ITB. When the gaps for a color are incorrect, the printer moves the image of the color up or down the sub scan axis. To do this, it changes the laser write timing for that color.

- **Main Scan line position for CMY**

  When the printer detects that the image is out of position in the main scan direction, it changes the laser write start timing for each scan line.

- **Magnification Adjustment for CMY**

  When the printer detects that magnification adjustment is necessary, it changes the LD clock frequency for the required color.

- **Skew for CMY**

  The adjustment of the skew for CMY is based on the line position for K (black).

Adjustment Conditions

Line position adjustment can be turned on or off. However, it is normally recommended to turn on this function.

Line position adjustment timing depends on several settings. These settings include the following:

- ΔT = Temperature change of the laser scanner assembly between the temperature of the previous line position adjustment and the current temperature.
- Pages = Total printed pages after previous line position adjustment.

Interval during print job

Line position adjustment interrupts printing and then starts automatically when one of these conditions occurs when the printer checks at the sheet interval:

- ΔT > Temperature threshold (laser scanner assembly temperature: default 3°C (37.4°F)
- Pages > Output threshold for all outputs (default: 500 pages)

Toner collection unit not-installed/installed

- Line position adjustment starts automatically when toner collection unit is removed and reinstalled.

Drum unit or developer unit replaced

- When the printer detects a new drum unit or developer unit, line position adjustment is automatically performed.

ITB replaced

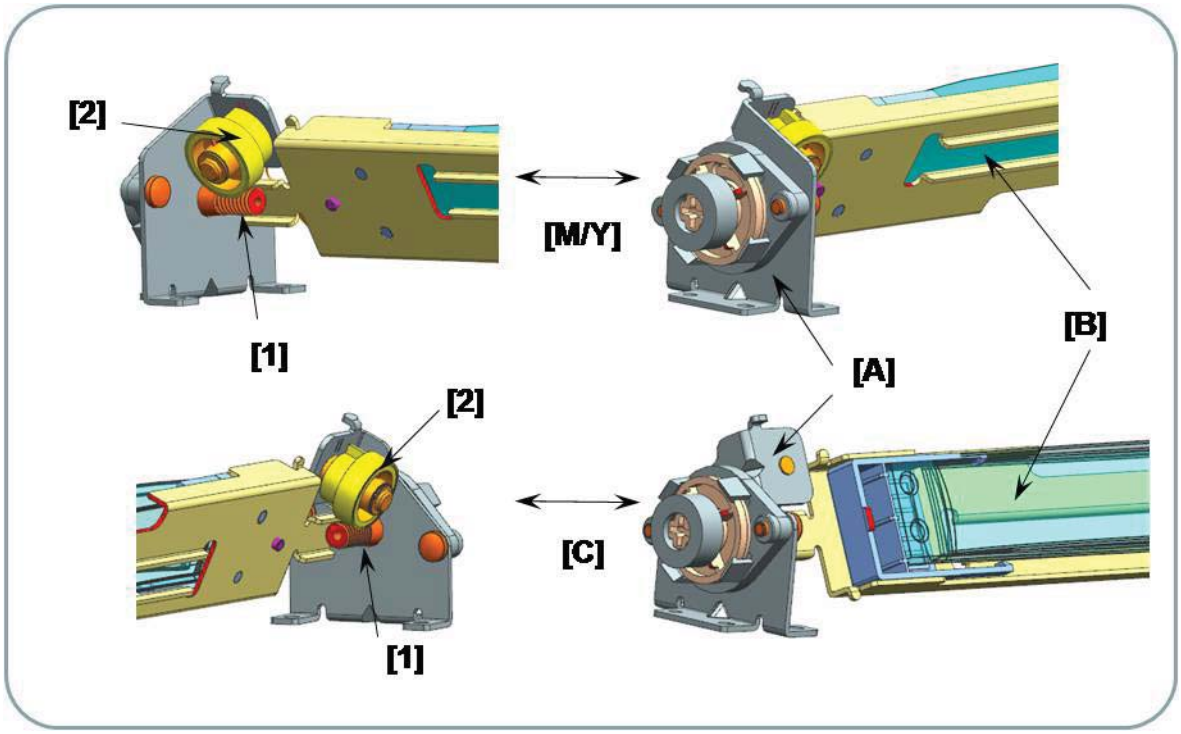
- When the printer detects a new ITB or other ITB, field technicians have to execute the adjustment manually.

Main scan skew adjustment

The skew adjustment assembly (A) consists of the worm gear (1) for adjustment and worm gear (2). When Color Plane Registration (CPR) executes, it detects and adjusts the scanning line slope manually.

The skew adjustment assembly (A) for magenta, cyan, and yellow adjusts the skew angle of the F2 lens (B). This mechanism corrects main scan skew.

Figure 1-33 Main scan skew adjustment



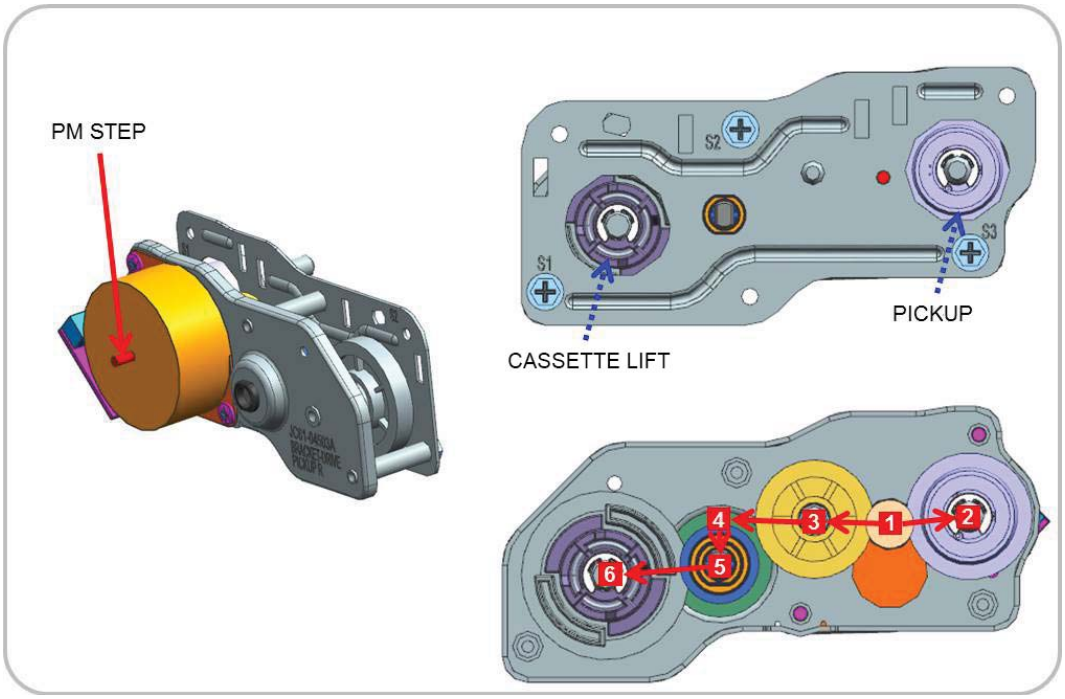
Drive system

Learn about the drive system.

Pickup and cassette lift drive

Learn about the pickup and cassette lift drive.

Figure 1-34 Pickup and cassette lift drive



Power train

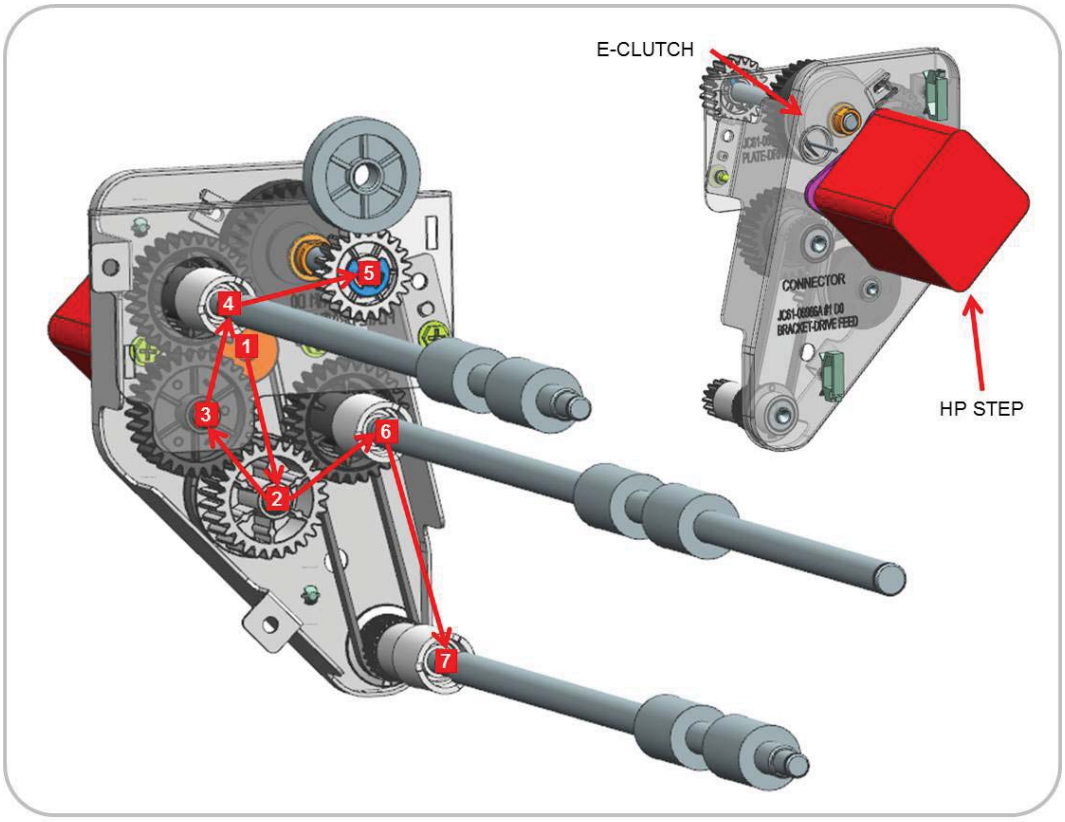
Pickup: normal rotation (pickup input) counter rotation (cassette lift input)

- 1 PM STEP ⟶ normal rotation ⟶ 2 Gear (pickup driving)
- 1 PM STEP ⟶ counter rotation ⟶ 3 Gear ⟶ 4 5 Gear ⟶ 6 Gear & Coupler (cassette lift driving)

Feed drive

Learn about the feed drive.

Figure 1-35 Feed drive



Power Train

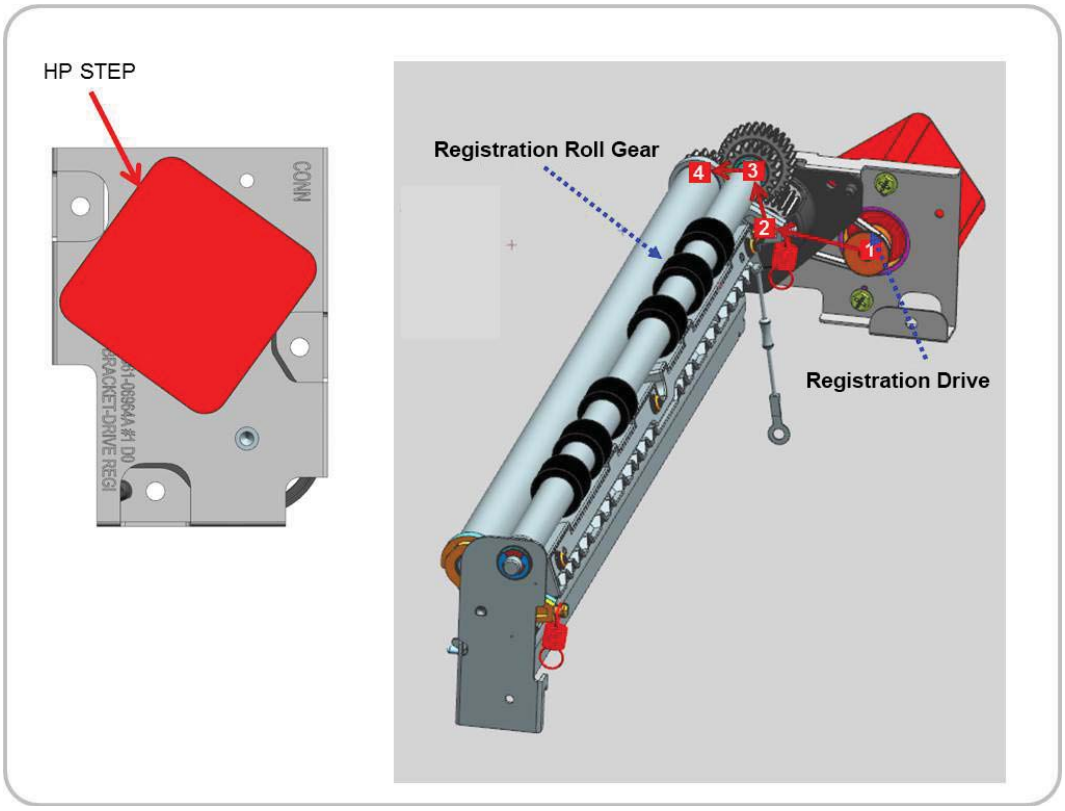
HP STEP → Feed & Tray 1 drive

- 1 HP STEP → 2 Pulley & Coupler → 3 Gear → 4 Gear & Coupler (Feed Roller driving) → 5 E-Clutch & Gear (Tray 1 driving)
- 1 HP STEP → 2 Pulley & Coupler → 6 Gear & Coupler (Feed Roller driving) → 7 Pulley & Coupler (Feed Roller driving)

Registration drive

Learn about the registration drive.

Figure 1-36 Registration drive



Power Train

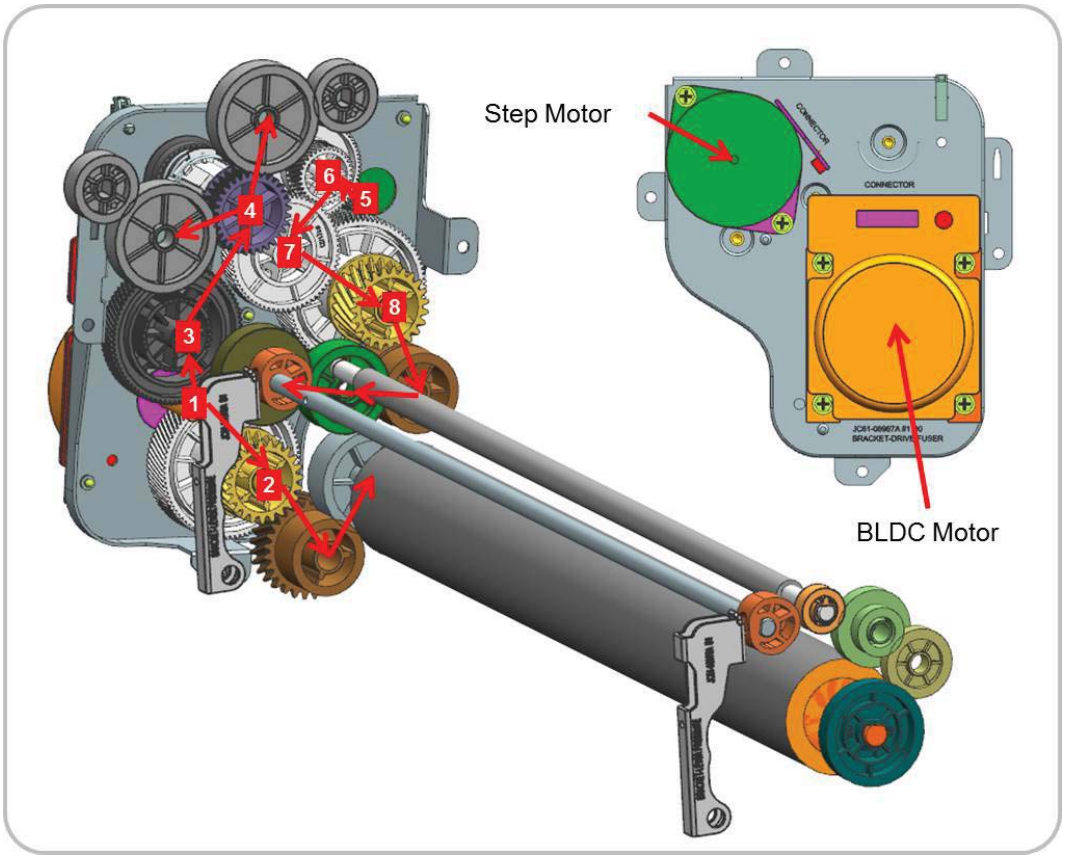
HP STEP ⟶ Registration driving

- 1 HP STEP ⟶ 2 Gear ⟶ 3 Gear (Registration Roller driving)

Fuser release/exit drive

Learn about the fuser release/exit drive.

Figure 1-37 Fuser release/exit drive



Power Train

PM Step ⟶ Fuser release driving

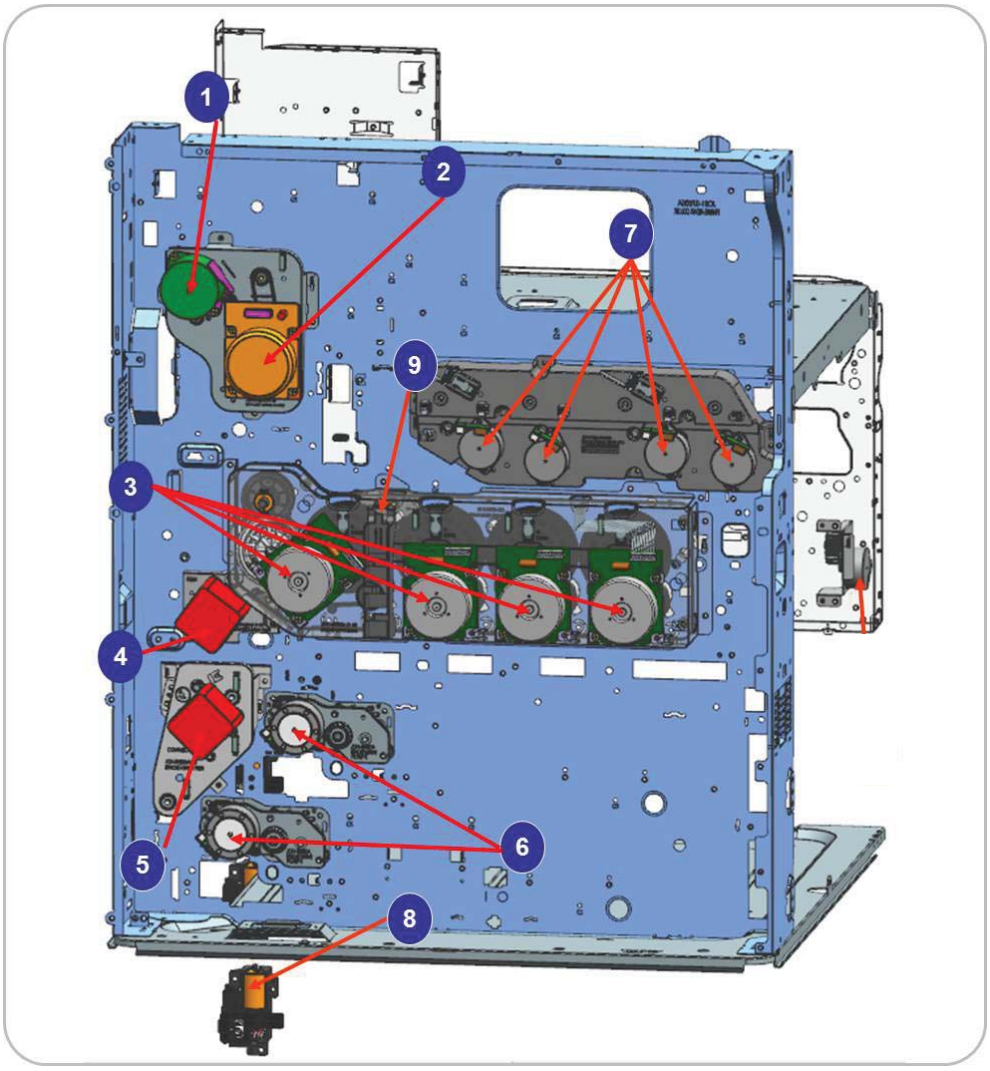
- 1 BLDC ⟶ 2 Gear (Fuser P/R driving)
- 1 BLDC ⟶ 3 Gear & Pulley ⟶ 4 Gear (exit driving)
- 5 PM Step ⟶ 6 Gear ⟶ 7 Gear ⟶ 8 Gear (Fuser Release driving)

Drive motors

Learn about the drive motors.

The following diagram shows the location of the printer drive motors.

Figure 1-38 Drive motor



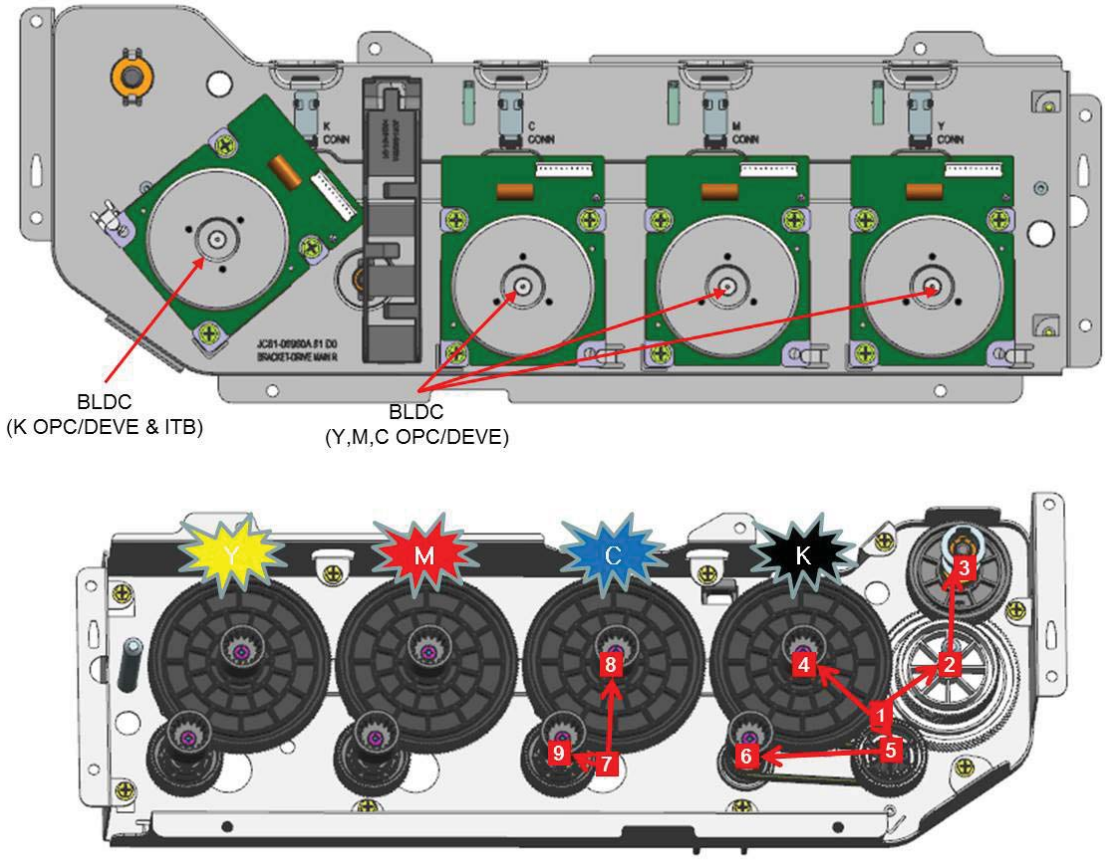
Number	Motor	Motor type	Qty	Function
1	Fuser Release	PM-STEP	1	Fuser Release driving
2	Fuser and output	BLDC	1	Fuser and output driving
3	Main OPC, development, and ITB	BLDC	4	OPC and ITB Belt driving
4	Registration assembly	HP-STEP	1	Registration assembly driving
5	Feed/Tray 1 (MP)	HP-STEP	1	Feed roller 1, 2, 3 driving
		E-CLT	1	Feed/Tray 1 (MP) driving control
6	Pickup	PM-STEP	2	Pickup roller/Cassette lift driving (reverse driving at cassette lift driving)
7	Toner supply amd toner reservoir	PM-STEP	4	Toner transfer (reservoir to development unit)

Number	Motor	Motor type	Qty	Function
8	Engage transfer assembly	PM-STEP	1	T1 engage/disengage driving
9	Toner collection unit	PM-STEP	1	TCU driving

Main drive unit motors

Learn about the main drive unit motors.

Figure 1-39 Main drive unit motors



Power Train

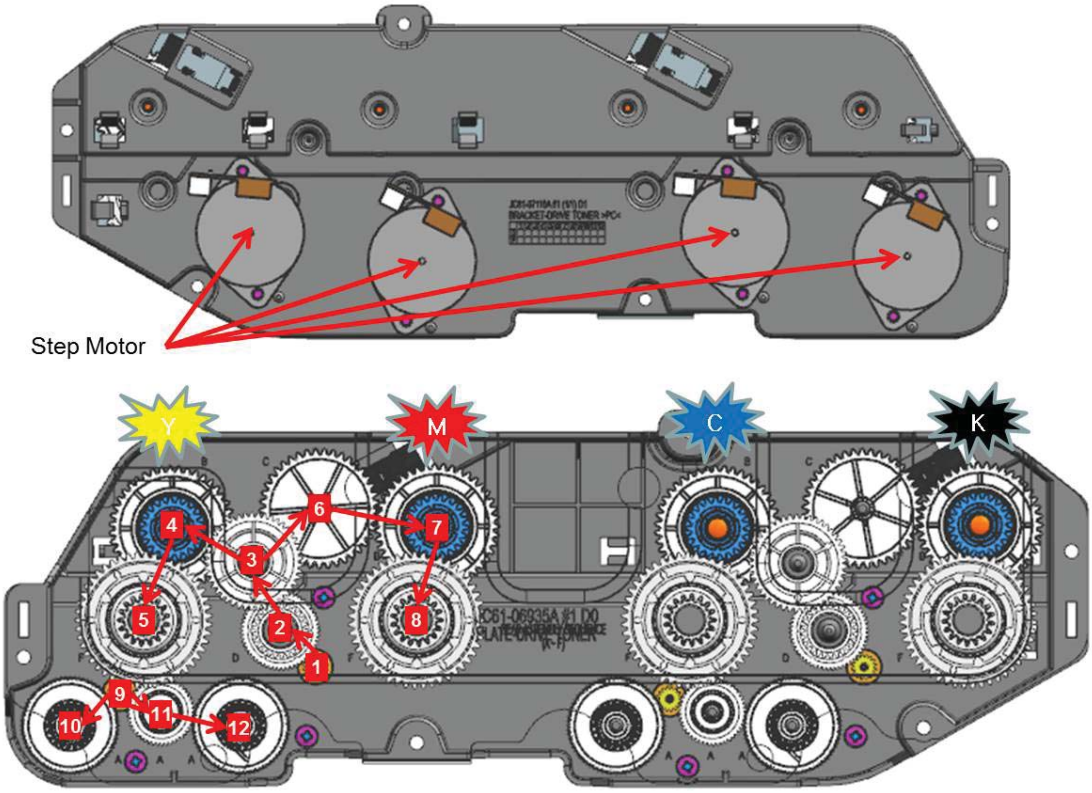
BLDC ⟶ OPC, Development and PTB driving

- 1 BLDC ⟶ 2 Gear & Coupler ⟶ 3 Gear & Coupler (ITB driving)
- 1 BLDC ⟶ 4 Gear & Coupler (K OPC driving)
- 1 BLDC ⟶ 5 Gear & Pulley ⟶ 5 Gear & Coupler (K Development driving)
- 7 BLDC ⟶ 8 Gear & Coupler (Y, M, C OPC driving)
- 7 BLDC ⟶ 9 Gear & Coupler (Y, M, C Development driving)

Toner supply/reservoir drive

Learn about the toner supply/reservoir drive.

Figure 1-40 Toner supply/reservoir drive



Power Train

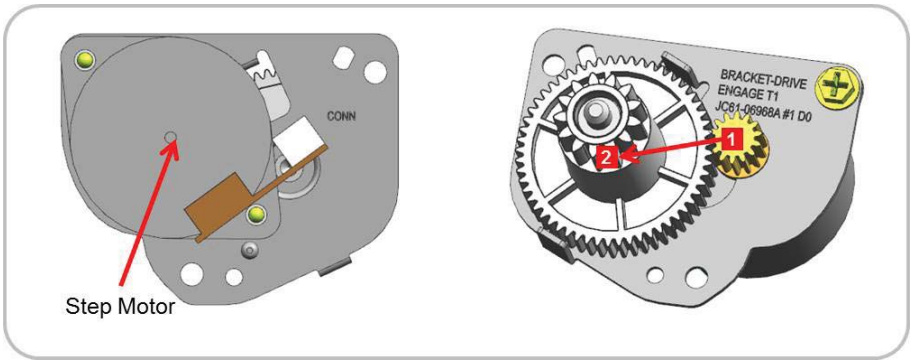
BLDC → Toner Supply, Reservoir driving

- 1 PM Step → 2 Gear → 3 Gear → 4 Gear & Latch → 5 Gear (Y, C Toner Supply driving)
- 1 PM Step → 2 Gear → 6 Gear (Photo Interrupt) → 7 Gear & Latch → 8 Gear (M, K Toner Supply driving)
- 9 PM Step → 10 Gear (Y, C Toner Reservoir driving)
- 9 PM Step → 11 Gear → 12 Gear (M, K Toner Reservoir driving)

Engage transfer roller drive

Learn about the engage transfer roller drive.

Figure 1-41 Engage transfer roller drive



Power Train

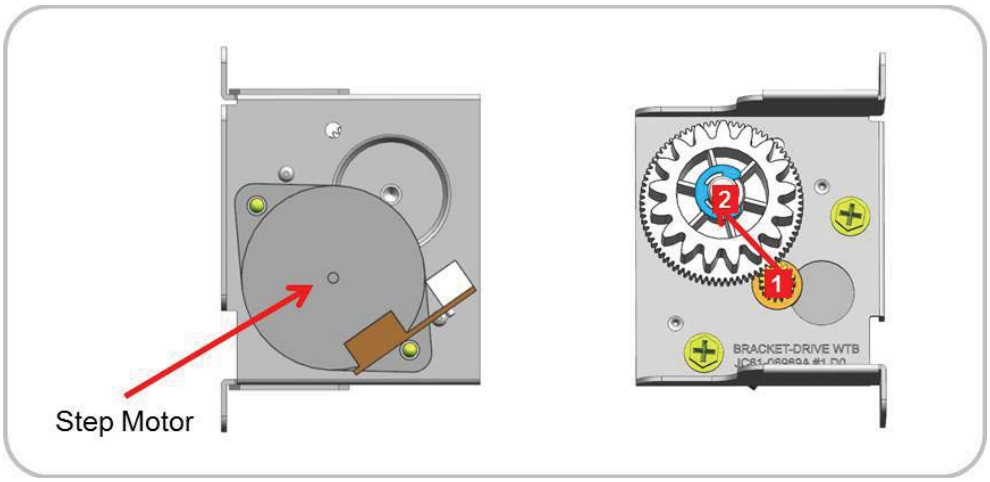
PM STEP Motor ⟶ Engage transfer roller driving

- 1 PM STEP Motor ⟶ 2 Gear (Engage transfer roller driving)

Toner collection unit (TCU) drive

Learn about the engage transfer roller drive.

Figure 1-42 Toner collection unit (TCU) drive



Power Train

PM STEP Motor ⟶ TCU driving

- 1 PM STEP Motor ⟶ 2 Gear (TCU driving)

Flatbed Scanner System

Learn about the flatbed scanner system.

Flatbed scanner system overview

Learn about the flatbed scanner system.

The scanner converts a hardcopy original into data. To scan an original, the scanner uses the lens and Charge Coupled Device (CCD). The scanner stores and transfers the converted image to the storage space or transfers the scanned data to the printer engine for copy.

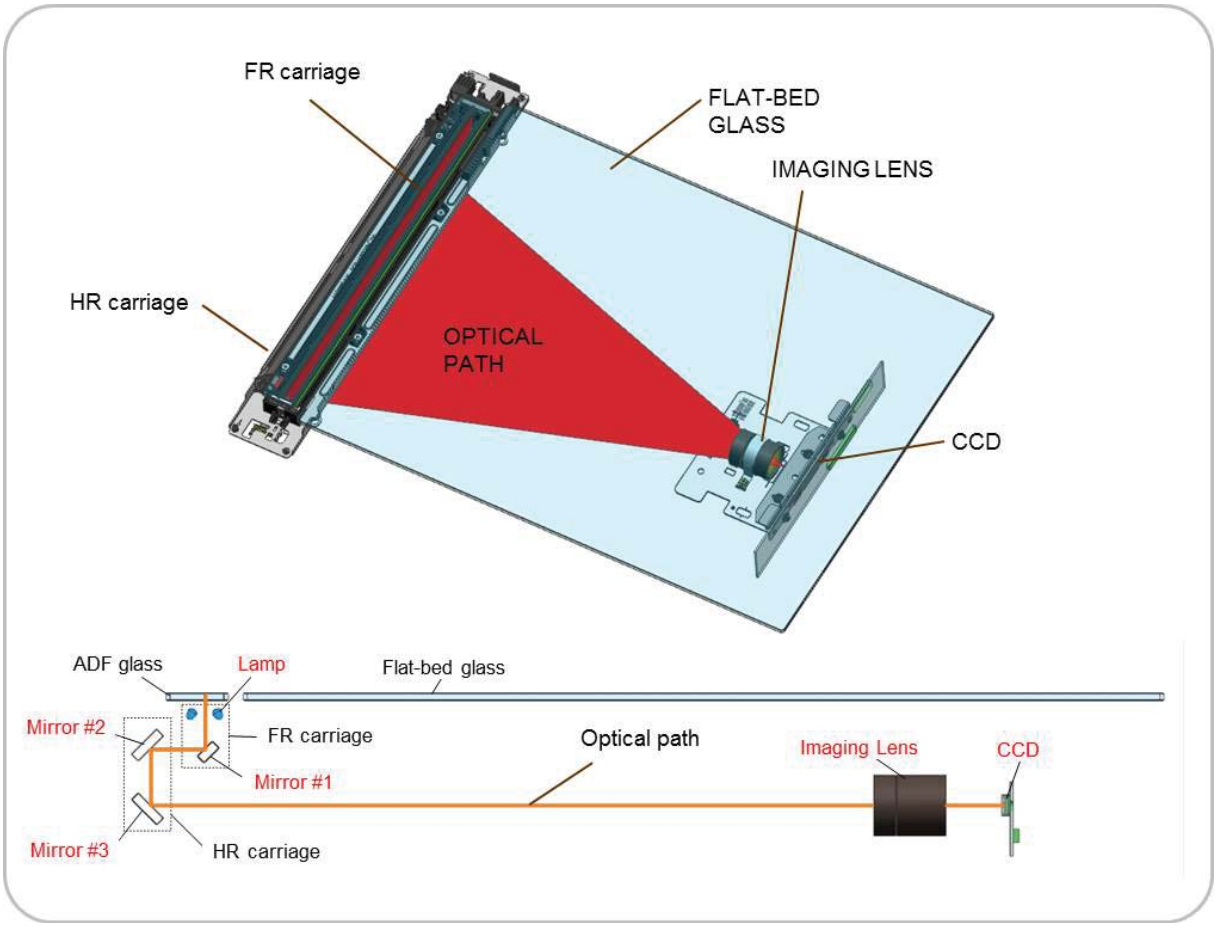
For scan operation, the scanner uses a full rate (FR) carriage and a half rate (HR) carriage that is moved by a wire. It scans the original document on the scanner glass or from the ADF.

The scanner system consists of the three following modules:

- **Full Rate (FR) carriage**: Illuminates the original and reflects the light at a 90 degree angle.
- **Half Rate (HR) carriage**: Transfers the reflected light from the FR carriage to the lens.
- **Imaging module**: Makes an image on the CCD.

The HR carriage moves half the distance at half the speed of the FR carriage. This keeps a regular gap between the original and the imaging lens.

Figure 1-43 Scanner system overview



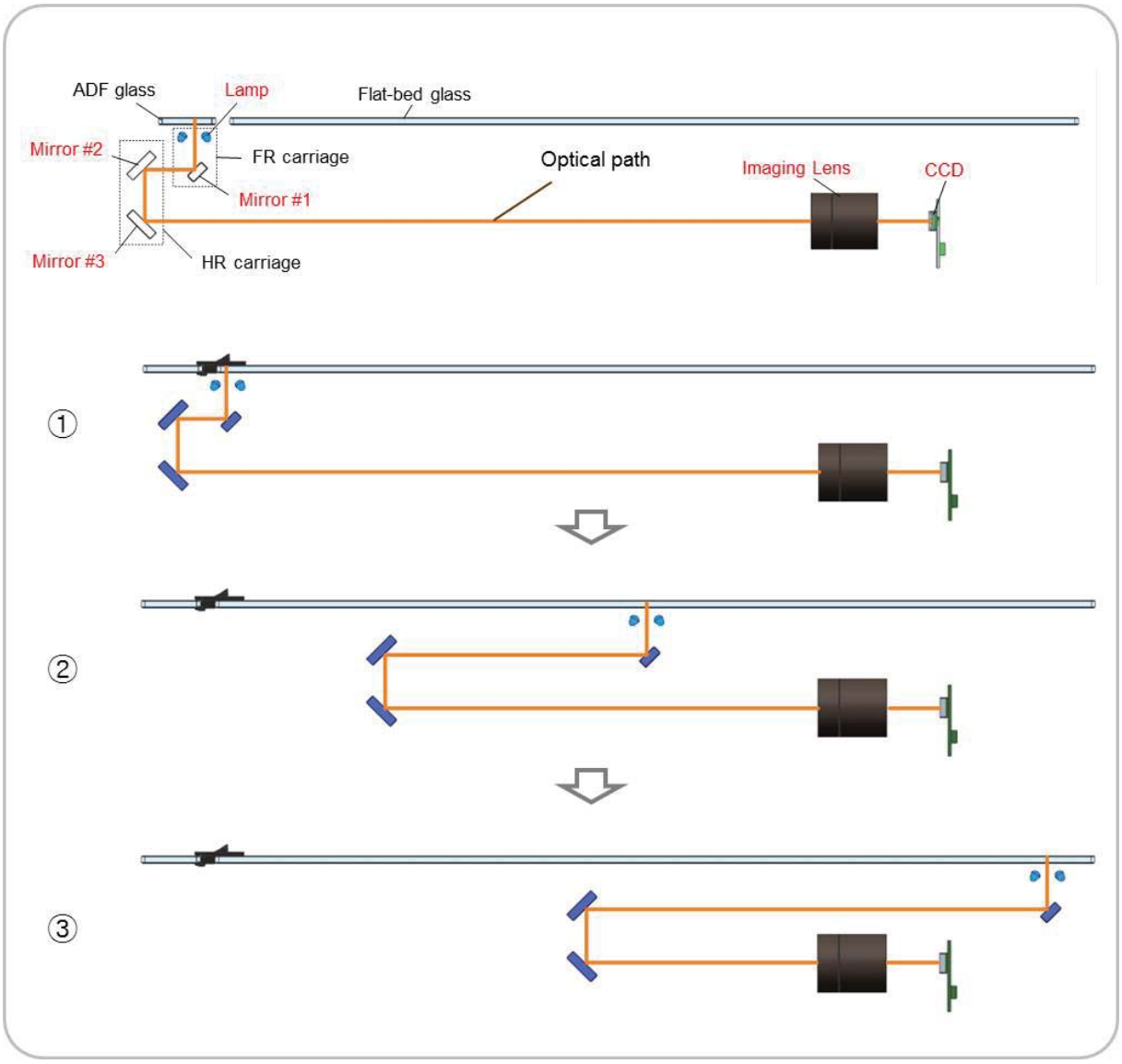
Scan process description

Learn about the scan process description.

1. The FR carriage lamp illuminates the original. The reflected light is moved to Mirror #1.
2. The reflected light from Mirror #1 is sent to the imaging lens through Mirror #2 and #3.
3. The light becomes smaller and makes an optical image.
4. The optical image is generated to the electrical signal by the CCD sensor.

To make a stable image, a gap must be maintained between the original and the lens. To maintain this gap, the HR carriage moves half the distance and half the speed of the FR carriage.

Figure 1-44 Scan process



The optical image made by the CCD sensor is changed to an electrical-analog signal.

Each color element signal in the optical image is separated by the CCD sensor into red, green, and blue.

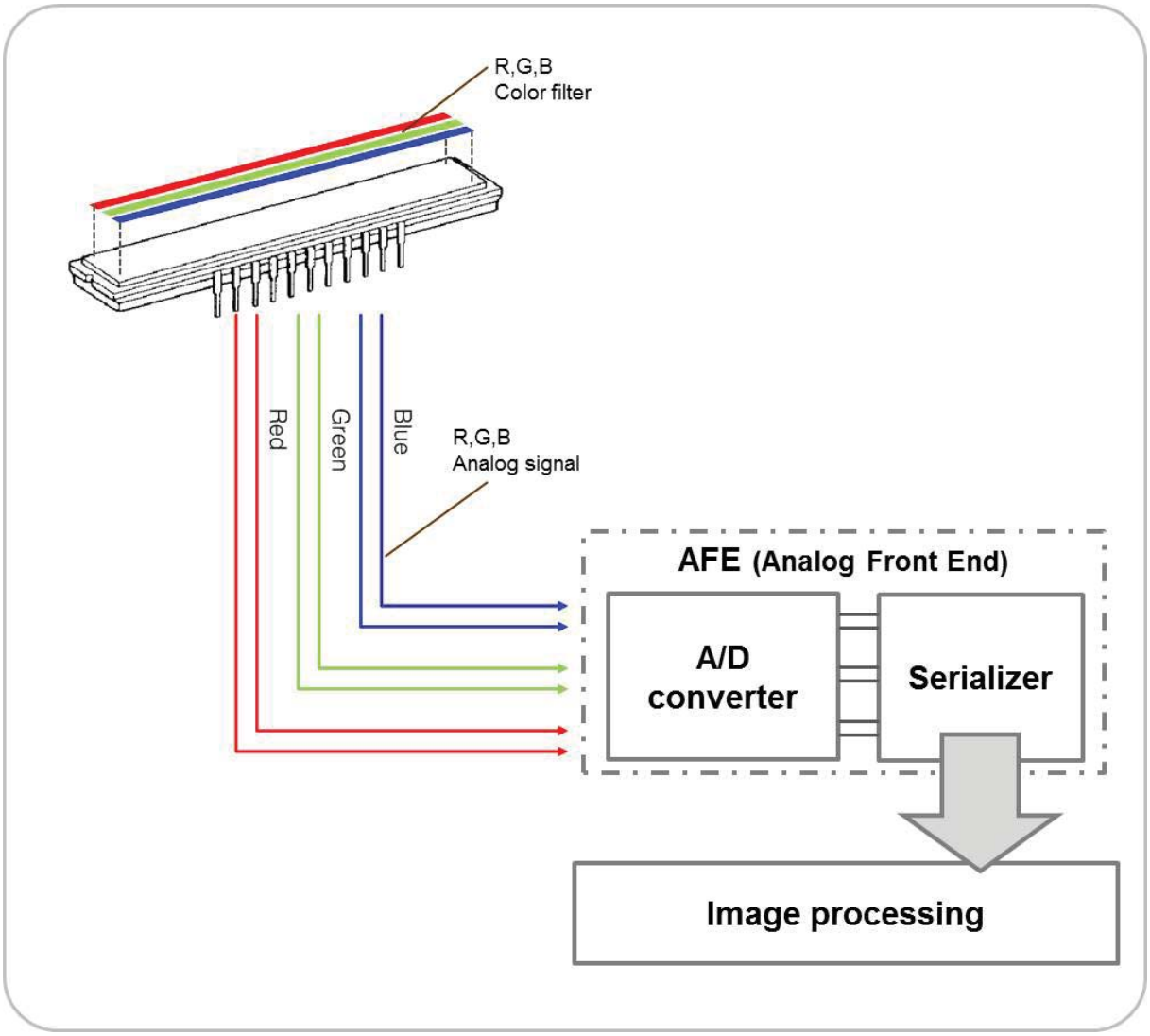
The red CCD sensor extracts the red color from the optical image, the green CCD sensor extracts the green color from the optical image, and the blue CCD sensor extracts the blue color from the optical image.

The analog image signal is changed to a digital image signal by the A/D converter and is transferred to the processor.

The image scan of the main scanning direction is performed by the CCD sensor. The CCD sensor consists of approximately 7500 pixels. The image scan of the sub scanning direction is performed by the FR carriage and HR carriage. The carriage is moved by a wire driven by the scan motor.

Scan resolution is 600 dpi.

Figure 1-45 Image processing



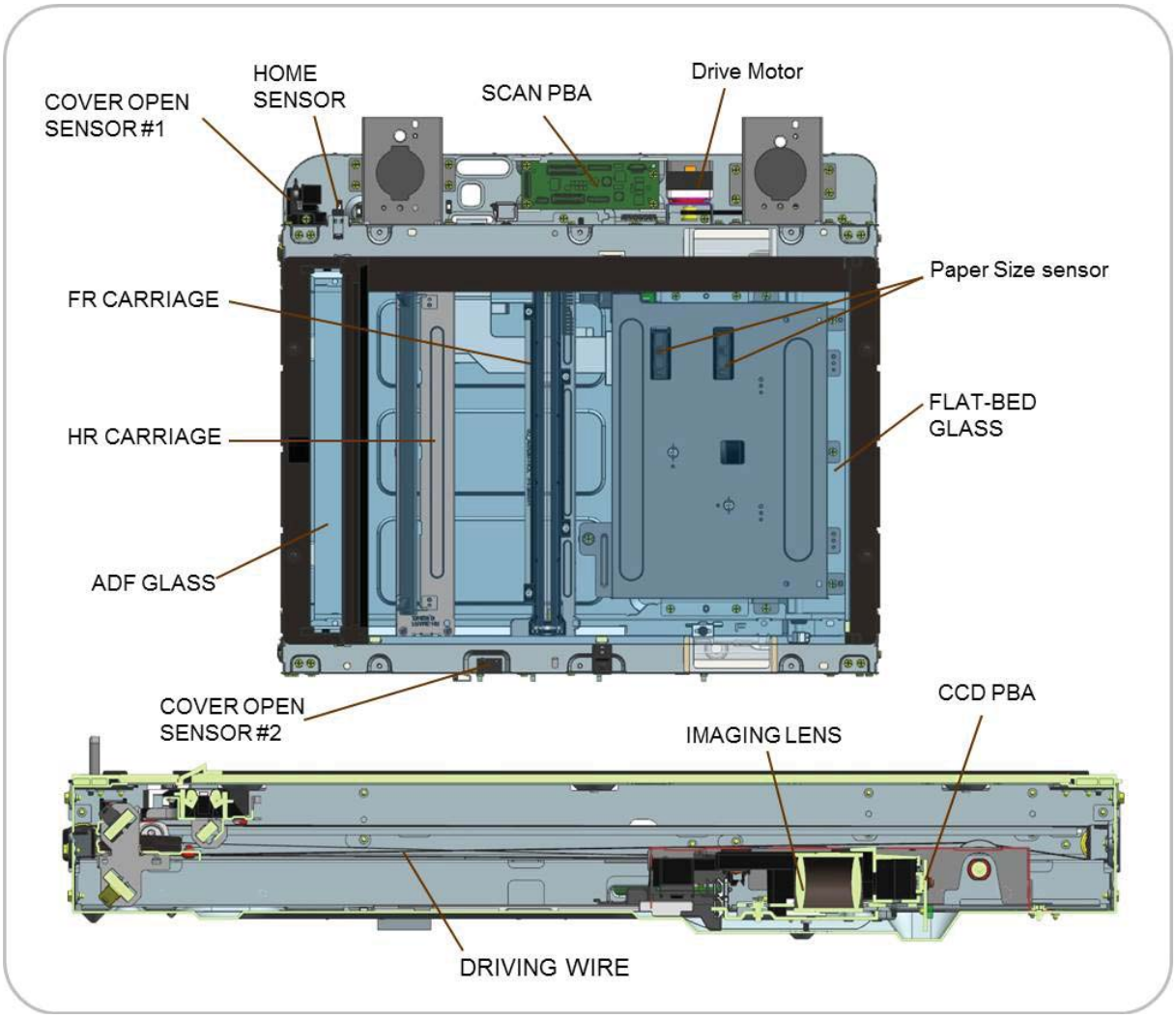
Scanning system components

The following shows the construction and purpose of the scanning system.

To scan the original on the scanner glass, two carriages driven by the motor move at a regular speed. The motor drives the timing belt, pulley, and wire. The wire pulley rolls and releases the wire to move the carriage.

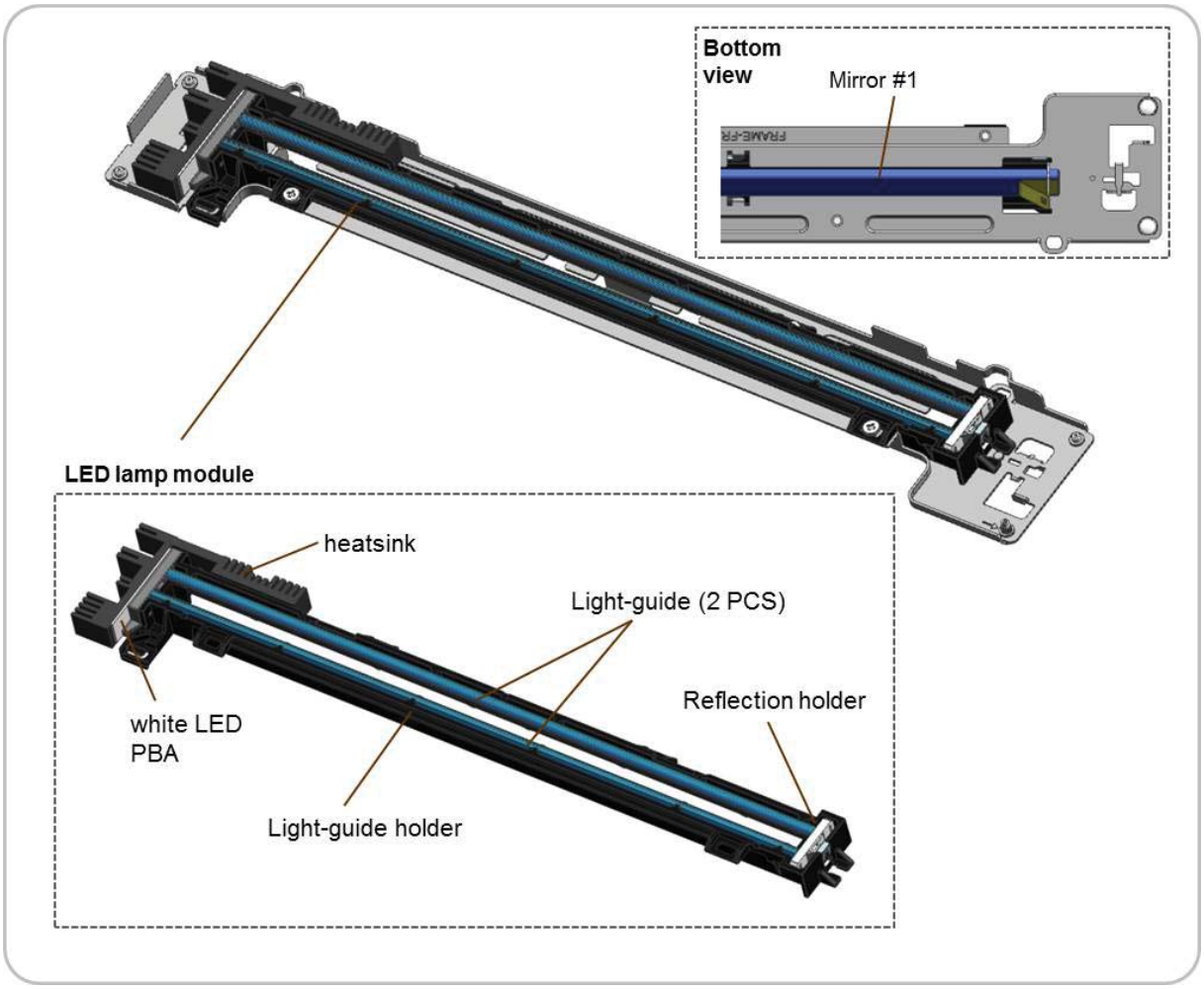
The scanner consists of the scanner glass, FR carriage, HR carriage, imaging unit, and driving unit.

Figure 1-46 Scanning system components



- FR Carriage

Figure 1-47 FR carriage



– LED lamp module

  This module illuminates the original. Two white LEDs are assembled on the side of the module. The original is illuminated by the light-guide. The heat sink is attached to the LED PCB. When the heat sink is broken or expired, an engineer needs to replace it.

  ○ Light-guide

    The light-guide changes the light from point type to line type. The light-guide is made by transparent resin and controls the amount of light in the scan area uniformly.

  ○ White LED

    The white LED emits white light. The heat sink attached to the PCA prevents heat deterioration.

  ○ Reflection holder

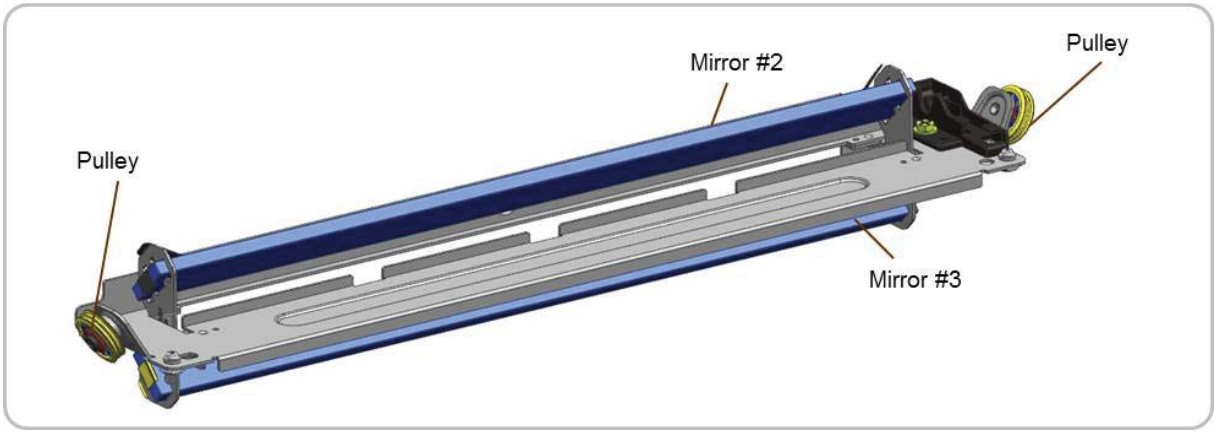
    The reflection holder reflects the light that has passed through the light-guide.

– Mirror #1

  Mirror #1 reflects light at a 90 degree angle.

HR Carriage (mirror unit)

Figure 1-48 HR carriage



- Mirror #2 and #3

  Mirrors #2 and #3 are positioned at a 45 degree angle in order to change the direction of the light. The reflected light from mirror #1 is sent to the imaging lens through mirrors #2 and #3.

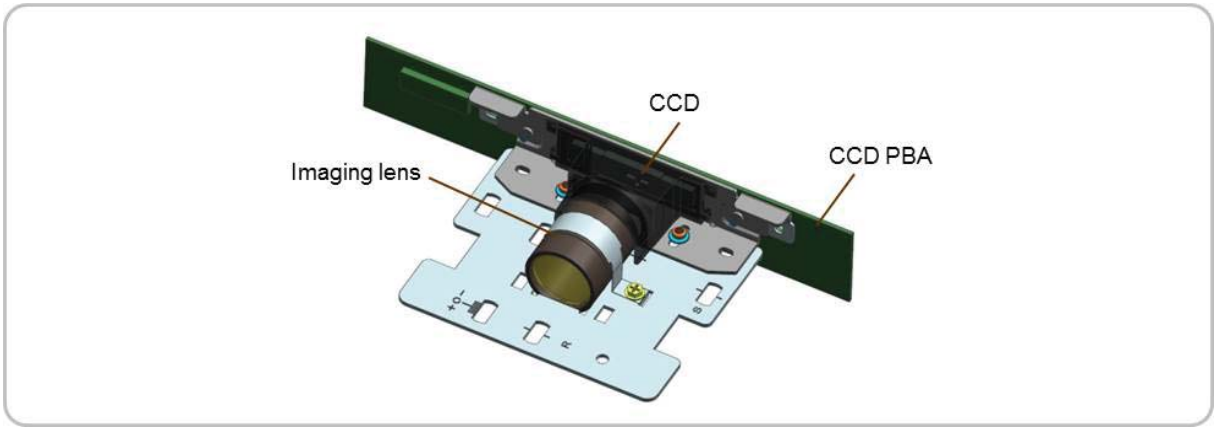
- Pulley

  The pulley is a ball bearing type. The pulley rolls and releases the wire which makes the HR carriage move. The HR carriage moves half the distance at half the speed of the FR carriage.

Imaging unit

The imaging unit changes the optical image to an electrical signal.

Figure 1-49 Imaging unit



- Imaging lens

  The reflected light from the imaging lens is focused on the CCD. The image is reduced to the fixed CCD sensor and pixel size.

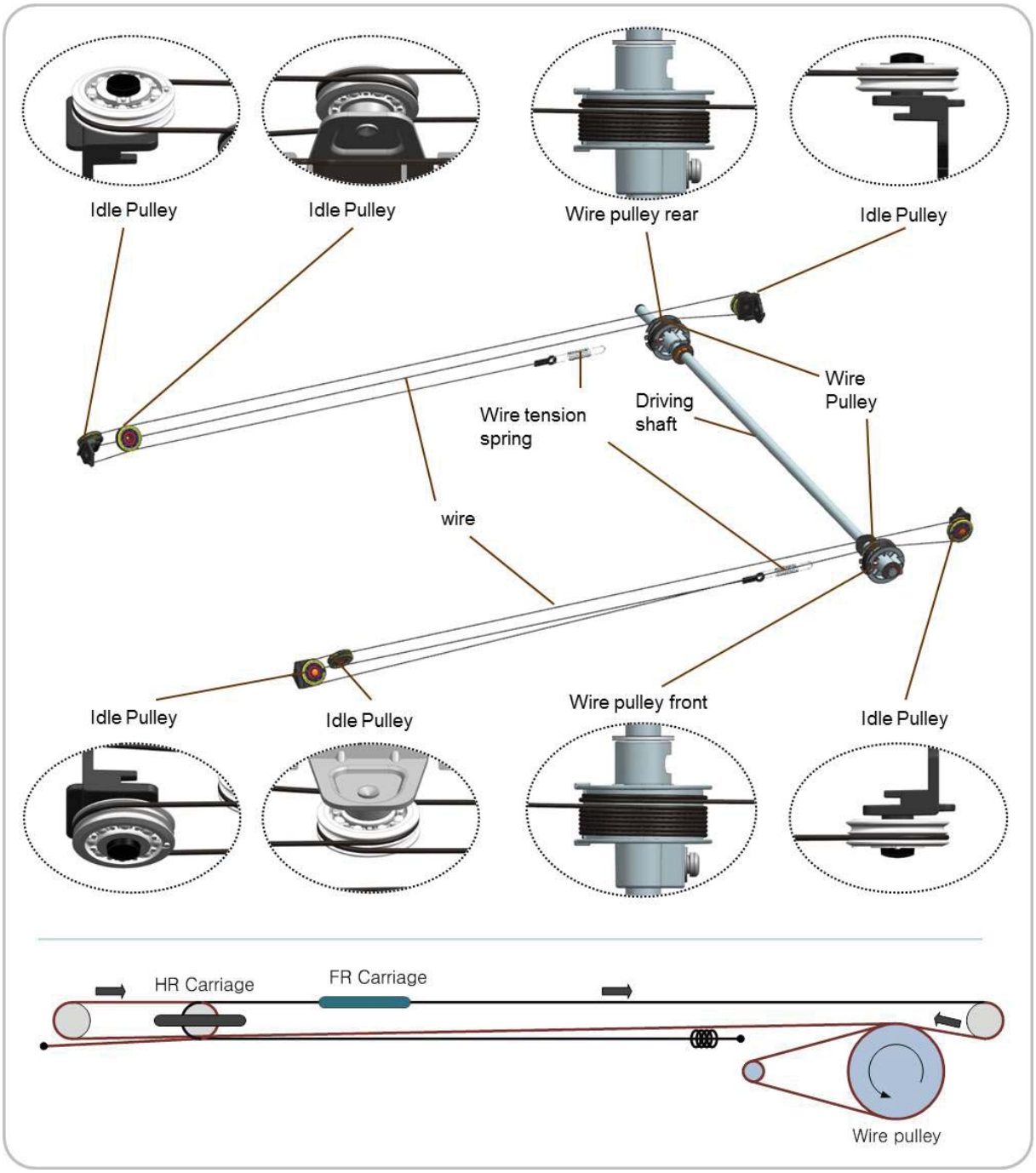
- CCD PCA

  The image made by the imaging lens is changed to an electrical signal by the CCD. The CCD consists of three channel line sensors for image creation. The brightness and darkness of the image depends on the voltage level from the CCD. The output voltage is changed to a digital signal. The digital signal makes the scanned image.

Wire driving

To move the carriages, the wire is assembled in the front and rear of the scanner. The pulley rolls and releases the wire which moves the FR carriage and the HR carriage.

Figure 1-50 Wire driving



Scanner glass (flatbed glass)

The original is placed on the scanner glass for scan or copy jobs. The scanner glass is made of tempered glass and is held in place by the frame to prevent distortion.

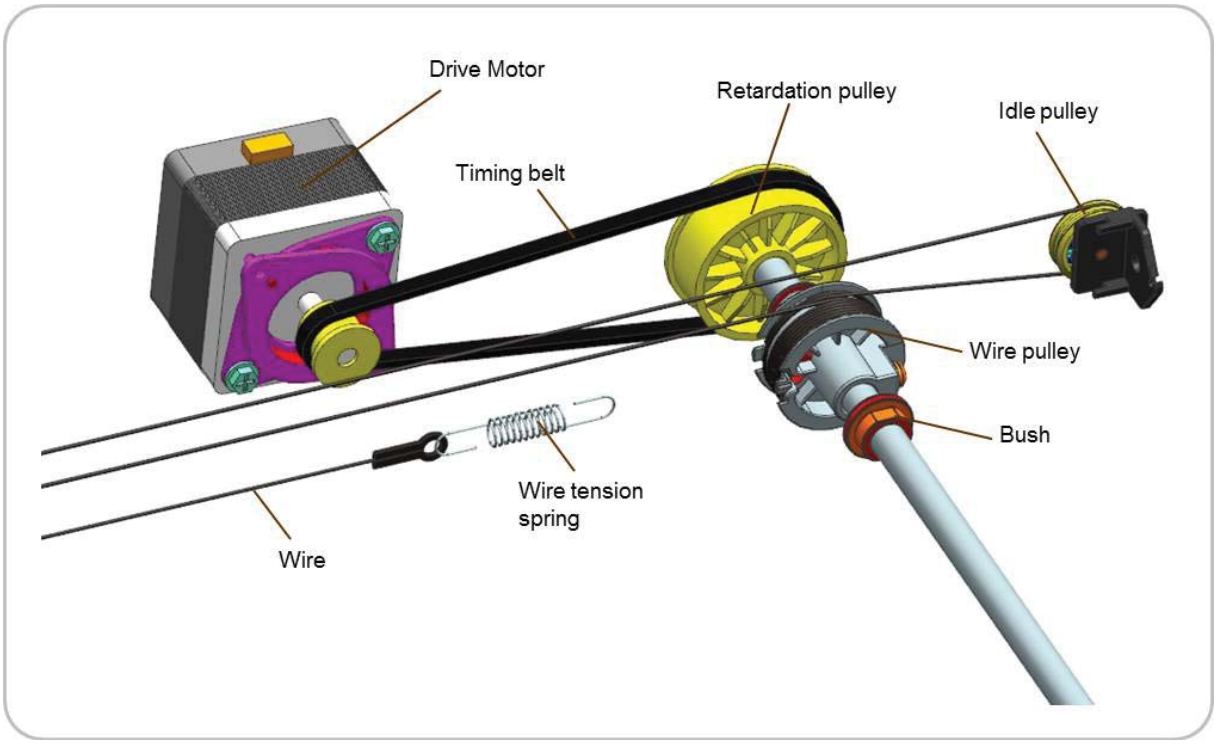
Drive motor

The scanner drive system uses the step motor to move the carriage. The step motor controls the position and maintains constant speed. The motor power is transferred to the wire through the timing belt and pulley.

Timing belt

The timing belt has a regular saw tooth gear and transfers the motor power to the pulley.

Figure 1-51 Timing belt



Paper size sensor

The paper size sensor automatically detects the size of the original on the scanner glass. The paper size sensor uses two sensors. An infrared LED is used to detect the dark original.

Home sensor

The home sensor detects the FR carriage position. The home sensor is a transmission photo sensor.

Cover open sensor #1

When the ADF unit opens and closes, a function is triggered which detects whether the paper size sensor is on or off.

Cover open sensor #2

The cover open sensor #2 detects when the ADF unit is closed using magnetic force.

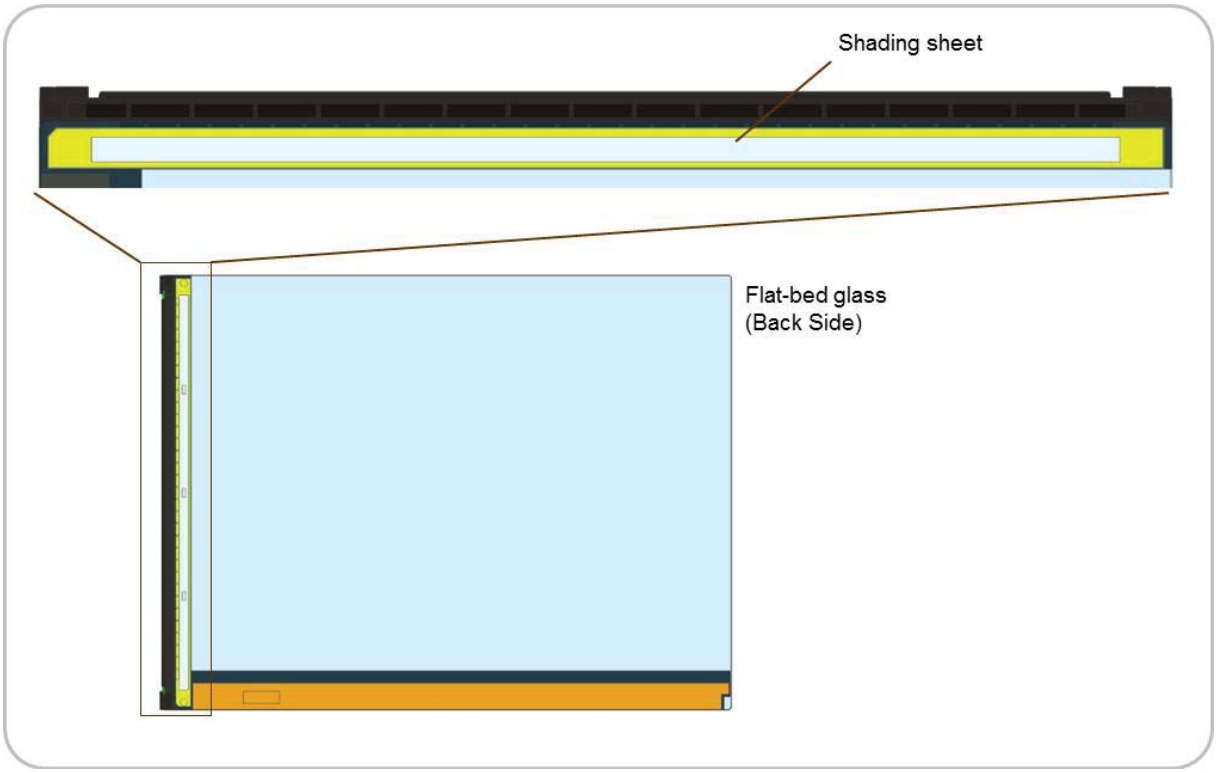
ADF glass

ADF glass scans the original through the ADF unit. The FR carriage reads the original as it passes. If the original is contaminated, a horizontal black or white line might appear.

Shading sheet

The shading sheet detects white color in the base. Before every scan job, the scan module reads the shading sheet to scan the image with the same color and brightness. If the original is contaminated, a vertical image might occur.

Figure 1-52 Shading sheet



Caution for moving the scanner

Learn about cautions when moving the scanner.

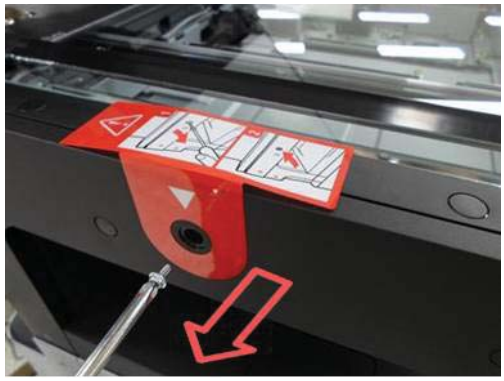
Lock the FR and HR carriages to prevent damage when shipping or moving the printer.

When installing

After unpacking, before turning on the printer, the scan locking screw must be removed. If the locking screw is not removed scanner failure will occur.

1. When installing the printer, remove the scan locking screw.
2. After removing the screw, assemble the screw cap from the accessory package.

Figure 1-53 Remove scan locking screw

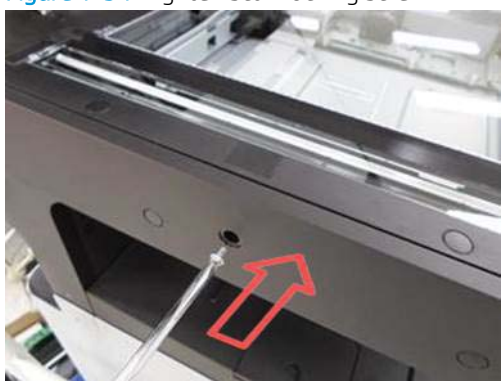


When moving the printer

When moving the printer, tighten the scan locking screw to prevent damage to the carriages.

1. Make sure the FR carriage is located in the home position.
2. Remove the screw cap.
3. Tighten the M3x8 screw to secure the FR carriage.

Figure 1-54 Tighten scan locking screw



Document feeder LX (du models)

Learn about the document feeder LX (du models).

Document feeder LX overview

Learn about the document feeder LX.

Figure 1-55 Document feeder LX overview

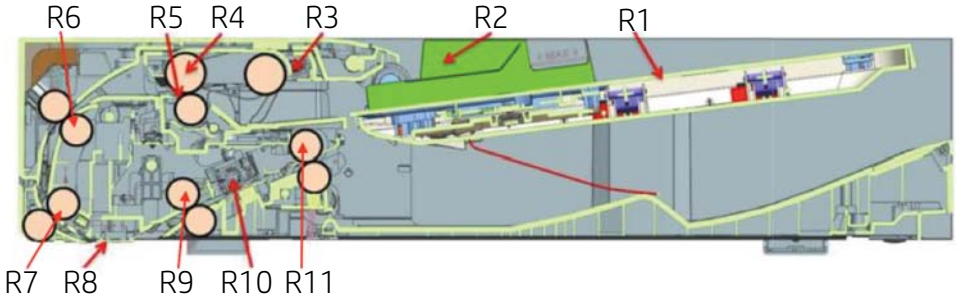


Table 1-22 Document feeder LX overview

Part	Description	Function
R1	STACKER ASSY	Original paper input tray
R2	GUIDE-DOC F&R	Original paper guide (front/rear)
R3	PICK ROLLER	Pick up original paper from the input tray
R4	ADF ROLLER	Original paper feed roller
R5	SEPARATION ROLLER	Original paper separation roller
R6	REGISTRATION (REGI) ROLLER	Original paper alignment roller
R7	SCAN IN ROLLER	Feeds an original paper before scanning
R8	SIMPLEX WHITE-BAR	Support of scanning unit
R9	SCAN OUT ROLLER	Transfer a scanned original paper to the exit roller
R10	D-CIS MODULE	Back side image scan unit
R11	EXIT ROLLER	Sends an original paper to the exit tray

Document feeder LX electrical parts

Learn about the document feeder LX electrical parts.

Figure 1-56 Document feeder LX electrical parts electrical parts locations

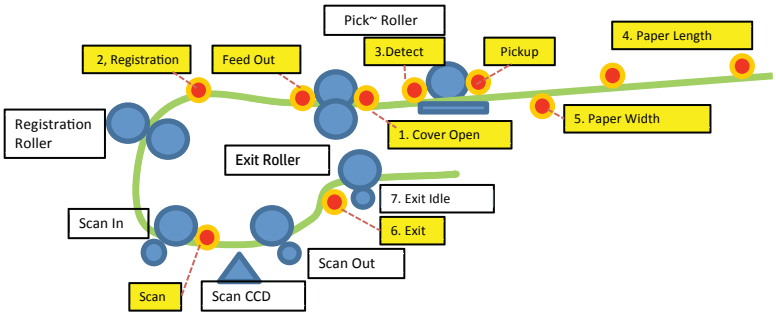


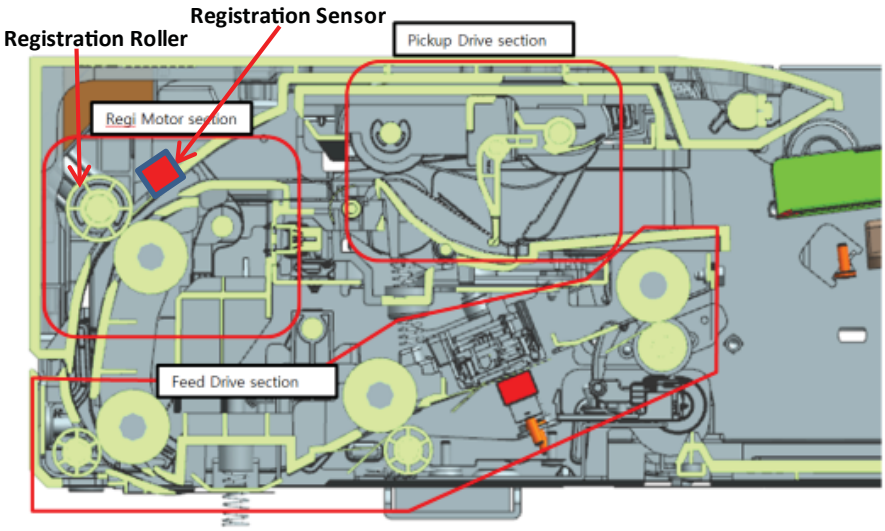
Table 1-23 Document feeder LX electrical parts

Callout	Item	Function
1	Cover Open	Detects if cover is open or closed
2	Registration (Regi) Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the registration path
3	Detect Sensor	Detects if tray is empty
4	Paper Length Sensor	Detects paper length
5	Paper Width Sensor	Detects paper width
6	Exit Sensor	Paper Exit Sensing
7	Exit Idle Sensor	Sensing 'Exit Roller' rotation

Document feeder LX registration

Learn about the document feeder LX registration.

Figure 1-57 Document feeder LX registration



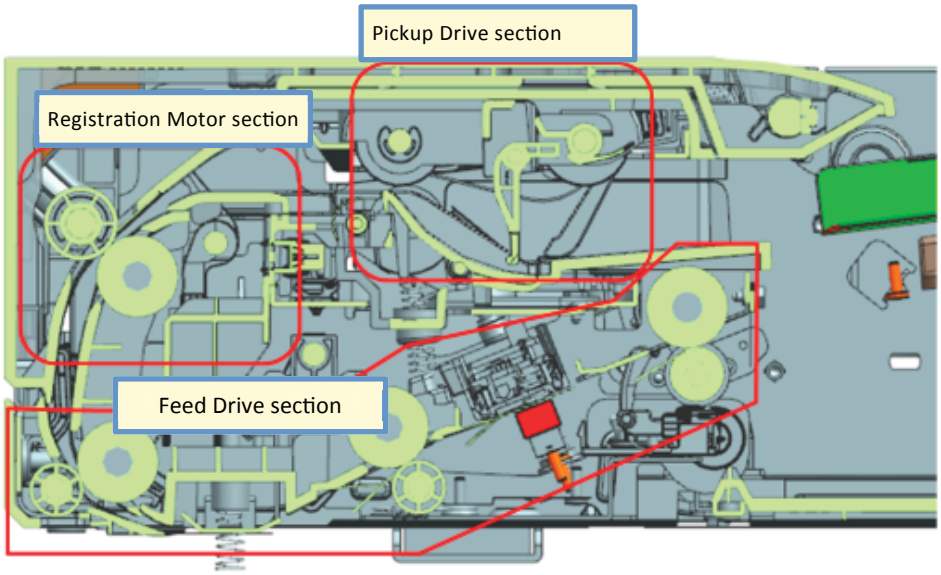
Item	Document feeder LX
Registration	1 times registration

Document feeder LX drive system

Learn about the document feeder LX drive system.

The drive system consists of one motor and two clutches to transfer the paper.

Figure 1-58 Document feeder LX drive system



The document feeder LX drive system consists of two motors (BLDC and STEP) and one clutch that moves the paper.

- BLDC Motor > Feed and pickup
- STEP Motor > Regi
- Clutch > Pickup

There are three sections: pickup drive section, registration (regi) motor section, and feed drive section.

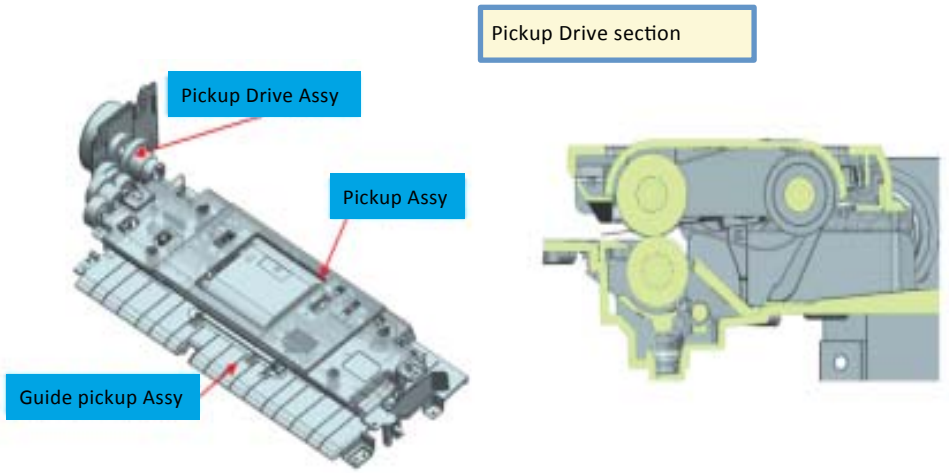
The pickup drive section has three assemblies: pickup drive assembly, pickup assembly, and guide pickup assembly.

The registration motor section has the regi motor, trans gear, regi roller, regi-idle roller, regi sensor, and actuator.

LX ADF original pickup assembly

Learn about the LX ADF original pickup assembly.

Figure 1-59 LX ADF pickup assembly



After detecting the paper, one motor controls the drive system.

The CLUTCH-ELECTRIC provides the power to pick up the paper.

The CLUTCH cannot rotate inversely. The spring that is included in the ADF GUIDE PICKUP ASSEMBLY is connected to COVER-OPEN. When the CLUTCH does not drive, stand-by status occurs and stops the operation.

The ADF roller and pick roller are connected by the belt.

The ADF roller is provided with power while the paper is picked up and transferred to the registration roller. When the pickup drive is stopped and the registration roller is driven, the ADF roller becomes idle.

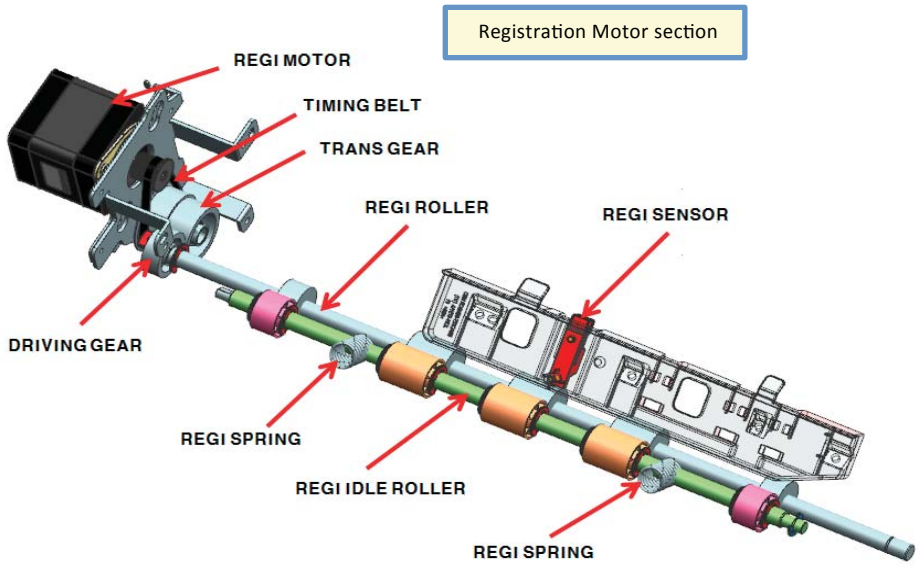
The normal process is:

- When the original is setting up, the detect-sensor is activated and the printing job starts. The motor and pickup clutch begin working. The pick roller then moves down and contacts the original in the tray.
- When the registration sensor detects paper, the pickup clutch stops.
- When the detect-sensor detects that the tray is empty, the motor stops and the printer enters stand-by status.

LX ADF registration (regi) drive assembly

Learn about the LX ADF registration (regi) drive assembly.

Figure 1-60 LX ADF registration (regi) drive assembly



The registration drive uses the CLUTCH-ELECTRIC to drive the registration roller and transfer the paper to the ROLLER FEED.

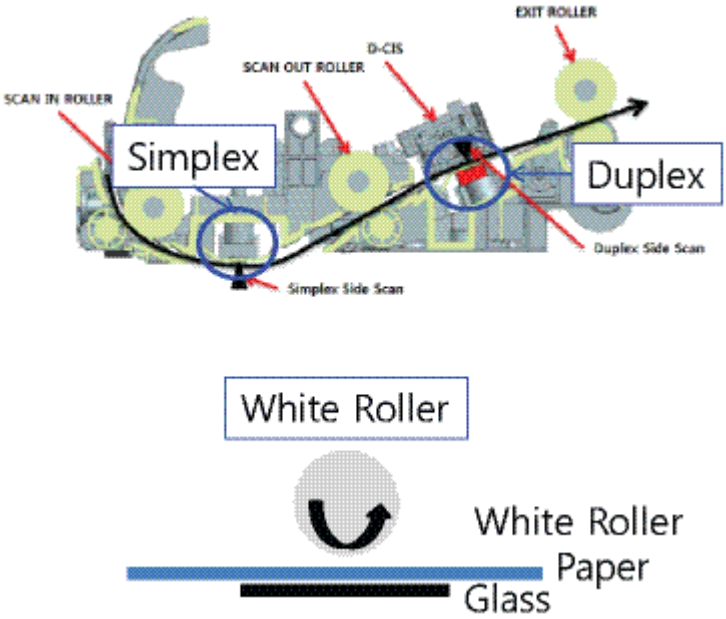
The registration roller aligns the leading edge of the original. When the original is placed in the nip, the roller is rotated for alignment.

The CLUTCH-ELECTRIC repeats on/off to align each original.

Document feeder LX scanning position

Learn about the document feeder LX scanning position.

Figure 1-61 Document feeder LX scanning position



Item	Simplex	Duplex
Scanning	White Bar	White Bar

Document feeder LX specifications

Learn about the document feeder LX specifications.

Table 1-24 Document feeder LX specification

Item	Specification
Capacity	100 pages
Scan Speed	80/160 ipm
Pickup	Semi-Retard
Registration	1 times registration
Motor	2 each
Stacker	Not applicable
Scanning	White Bar
MSO	Not applicable

Flow document feeder dn/z models (GX and sGX)

Learn about the flow document feeder dn/z models (GX and sGX).

Flow document feeder overview

Learn about the flow document feeder.

Figure 1-62 Flow document feeder overview

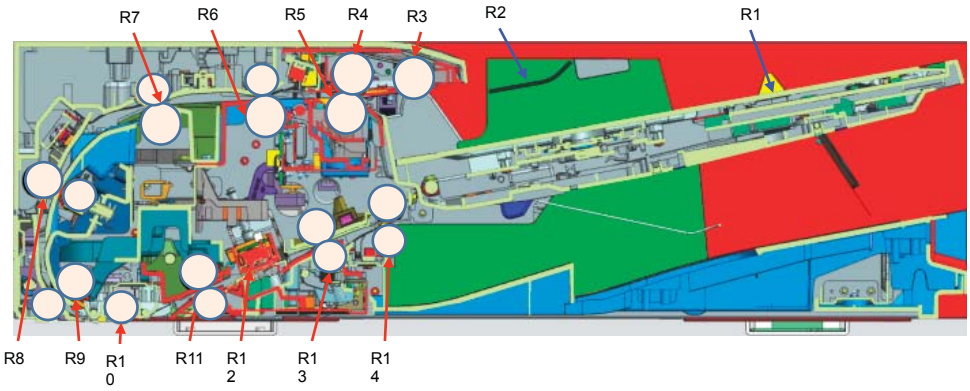


Table 1-25 Flow document feeder overview

Part	Description	Function
R1	STACKER ASSY	Original paper input tray
R2	GUIDE-DOC F&R	Original paper guide (front/rear)
R3	PICK ROLLER	Pick up original paper from the input tray
R4	ADF ROLLER	Original paper feed roller
R5	SEPARATION ROLLER	Original paper separation roller
R6	FEED ROLLER	Original paper transfer roller (A6 size)
R7	PRE REGI ROLLER	Original paper alignment roller (1 round)
R8	REGI ROLLER	Original paper alignment roller (2 round)
R9	SCAN IN ROLLER	Feeds an original paper before scanning
R10	SIMPLEX WHITE-ROLLER	Support of simplex scanning unit
R11	SIMPLEX SCAN OUT ROLLER	Transfer a scanned original paper to the duplex white-roller
R12	D-CIS MODULE	Back side image scan unit
R13	DUPLEX SCAN OUT ROLLER	Transfer a scanned original paper to the exit roller
R14	EXIT ROLLER	Sends an original paper to the exit tray

Flow document feeder sensors

Learn about the flow document feeder sensors.

Figure 1-63 Flow document feeder sensors

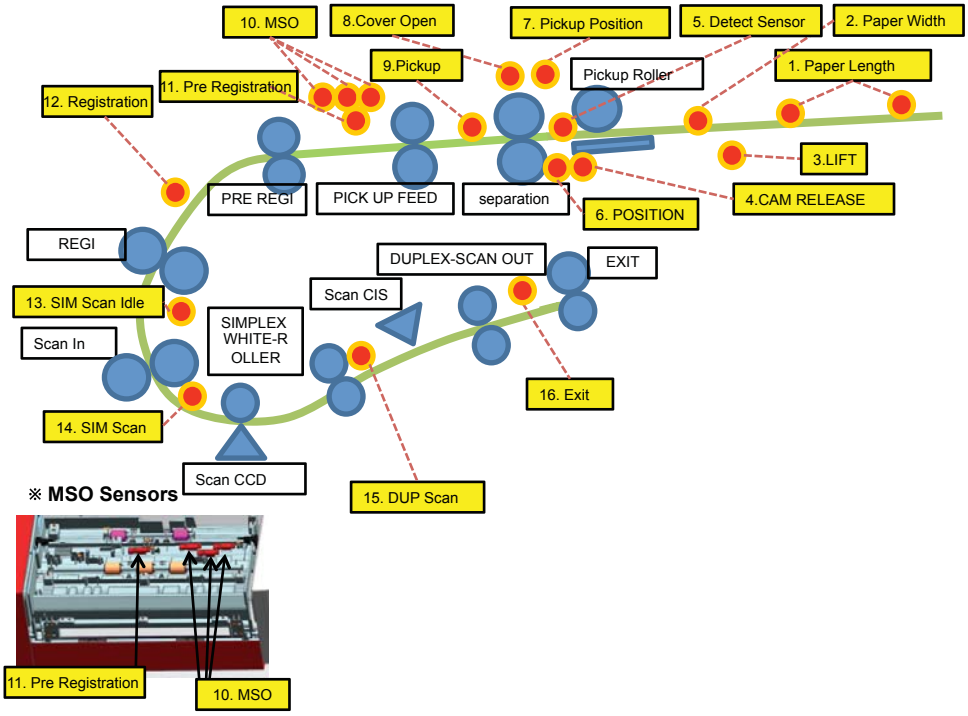


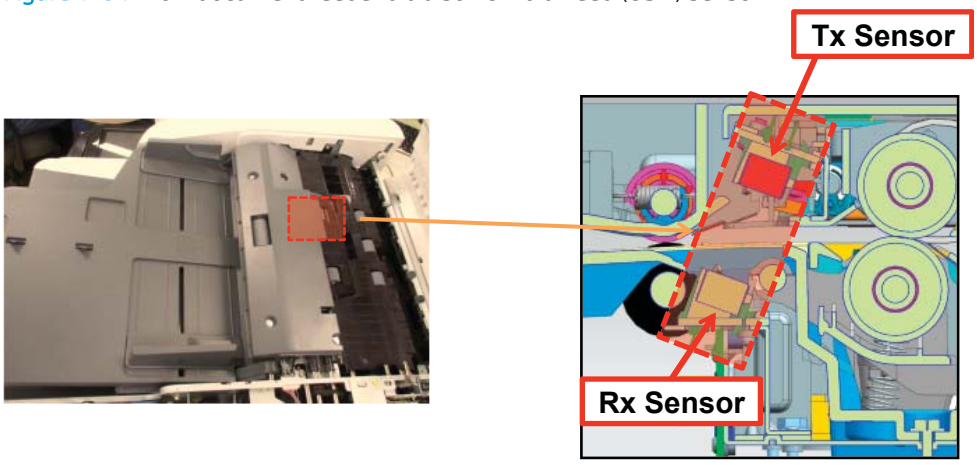
Table 1-26 Flow document feeder sensors

Callout	Item	Function
1	Paper Length Sensor	Detects paper length
2	Paper Width Sensor	Detects paper width
3	Stacker Lift Sensor	Detects Stacker Position
4	Cam Release Sensor	Sensing 'Separation Roller' rotation
5	Detect Sensor	Detects if tray is empty
6	Position Sensor	Detects Stacker Position
7	Pickup Position Sensor	Sensing 'Pickup Roller' rotation
8	Cover Open Sensor	Detects if cover is open or closed
9	Pickup Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the feed path
10	MSO Sensor	Detects mix size
11	Pre-Regi Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the pre-regi path
12	Regi Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the Regi path
13	SIM Scan Idle Sensor	Sensing 'Scan In Roller' rotation
14	SIM Scan Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the Scan In path
15	DUP Scan Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the Scan Out path
16	Exit Sensor	Paper Exit Sensing

Flow document feeder ultra sonic multi-feed (USM) sensor

Learn about the flow document feeder ultra sonic multi-feed (USM) sensor.

Figure 1-64 Flow document feeder ultra sonic multi-feed (USM) sensor



This sensor detects multi-feeds.

- Component: Ultrasonic Sensor Tx Board, Rx Board , HIC Board (Amp and Filter)
- The Rx Sensor has a different level on each paper status: no paper, one paper, multiple papers.
- Detect the multi-feeding through the level change of Rx Sensor.
- Transmit and receive operation of 300 khz frequency.

Flow document feeder drive system

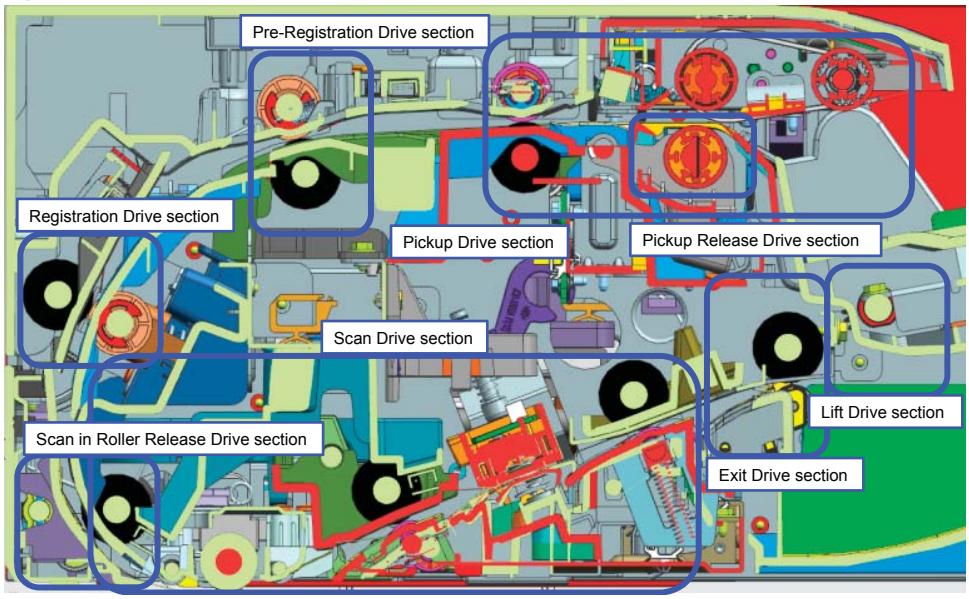
Learn about the flow document feeder drive system.

The flow document feeder drive system drive system includes eight motors.

The Flow ADF drive system consists for the following sections:

- Pickup release drive
- Pickup drive
- Pre-regi drive
- Regi drive
- Scan-in roller release drive
- Scan drive
- Exit drive
- Lift drive

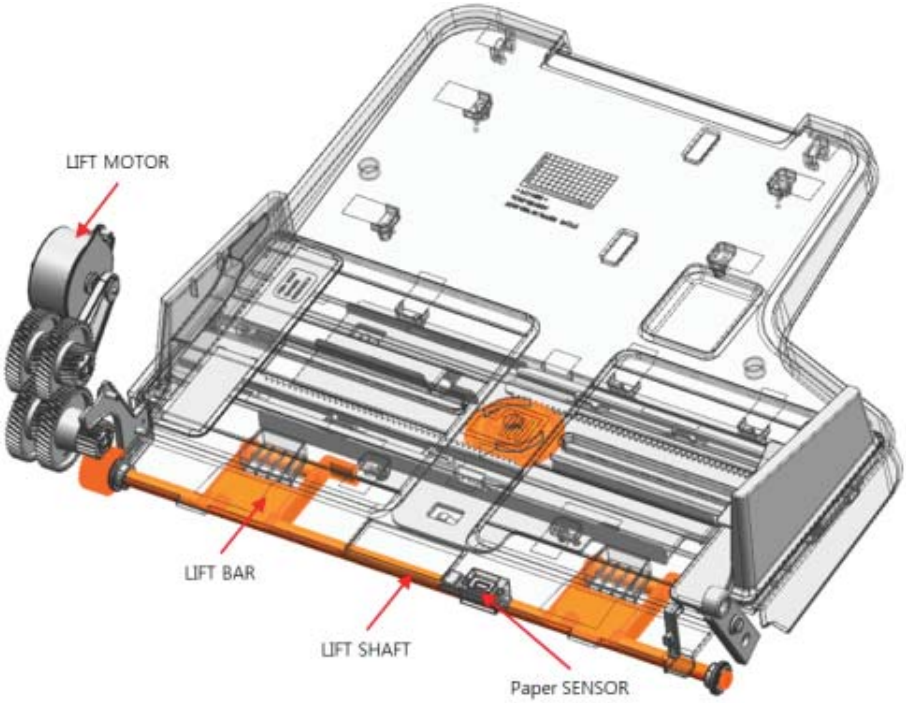
Figure 1-65 Flow document feeder drive system



Flow document feeder lifting drive system

Learn about the flow document feeder lifting drive system.

Figure 1-66 Flow document feeder lifting drive system

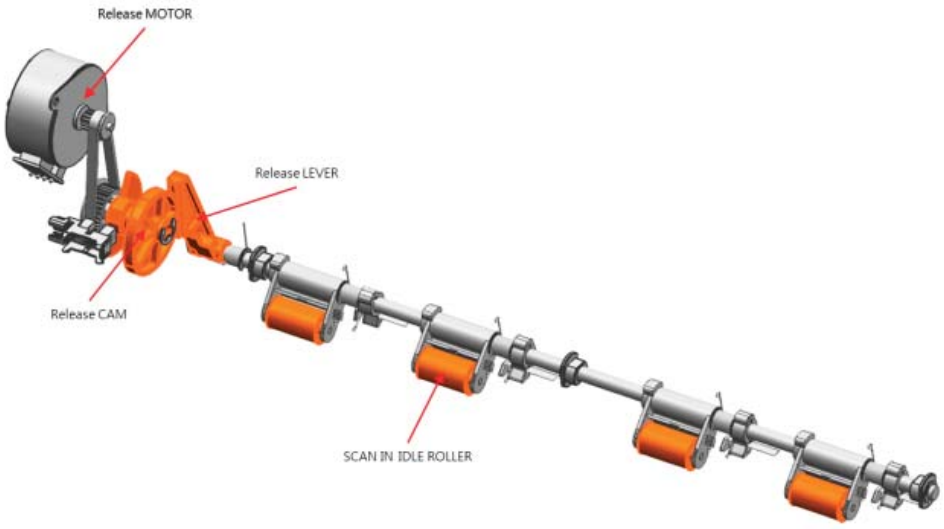


- Component: LIFT MOTOR, LIFT SHAFT, LIFT BAR, PAPER SENSOR
- LIFT MOTOR Starts > LIFT SHAFT and LIFT BAR lift Tray
- PAPER SENSOR detects paper in the Tray
- Paper contacts PICKUP ROLLER and stops movement
- Document is passed through SCAN OUT SENSOR. Duplex scanning starts.

Flow document feeder scan-in roller release drive system

Learn about the flow document feeder scan-in roller release drive system.

Figure 1-67 Flow document feeder scan-in roller release drive system



- Holds the rear of the paper using cam motion for improved scan quality
- Component: RELEASE MOTOR, RELEASE CAM, SCAN-IN IDLE ROLLER
- Motor and cam operation repeats for every piece of paper

Flow document feeder specifications

Learn about the flow document feeder specifications.

Table 1-27 Flow document feeder specification

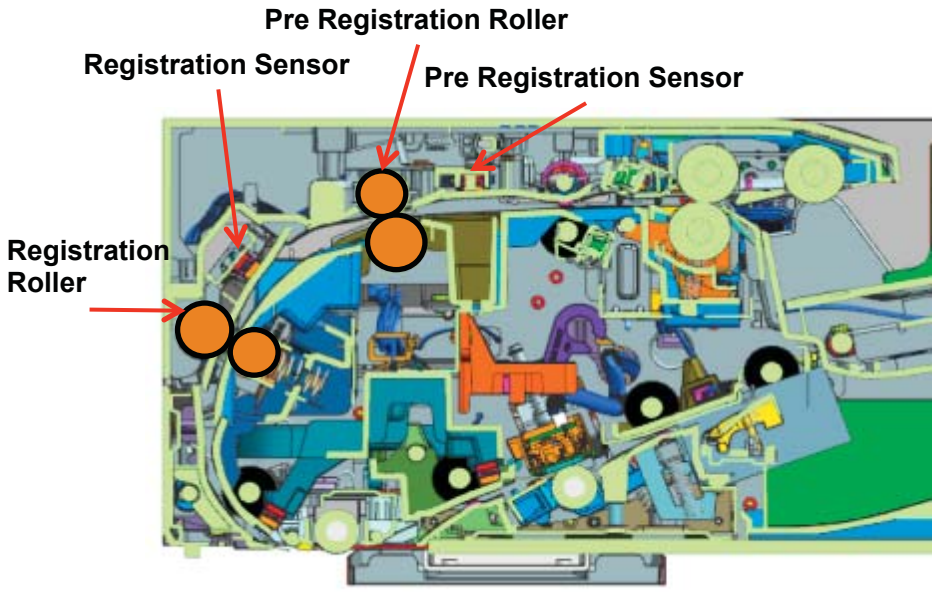
Item	Specification
Capacity	250 pages (stacker lifting)
Scan Speed	120/240 ipm
Pickup	Semi-Retard
Registration	2 times registration
Motor	8 each
Stacker	Lifting
Scanning	White Roller/White Bar
MSO	Support

Flow document feeder registration

Learn about the flow document feeder registration.

The flow document feeder registration uses a two-times registration process.

Figure 1-68 Flow document feeder registration



Flow document feeder scanning position

Learn about the flow document feeder scanning position.

Figure 1-69 Flow document feeder scanning position

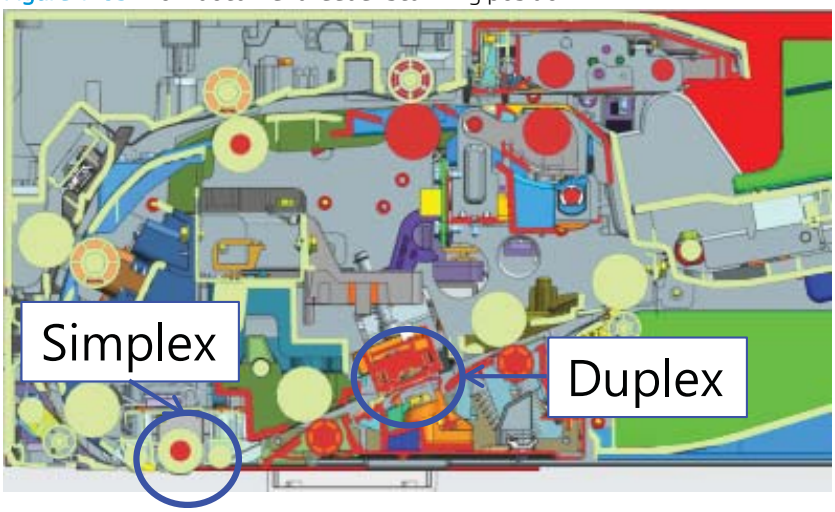


Table 1-28 Flow document feeder scanning position

Item	Simplex	Duplex
Scanning	White Roller	White Bar

Flow document feeder mixed size original (MSO) sensor

Learn about the flow document feeder mixed size original (MSO) sensor.

The MSO sensor detects the size of mixed size papers and sets the alignment of the papers to the rear.

Figure 1-70 Flow document feeder MSO 1

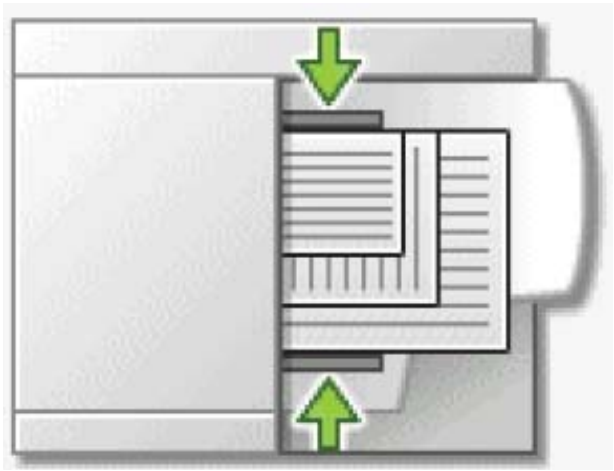


Figure 1-71 Flow document feeder MSO 2

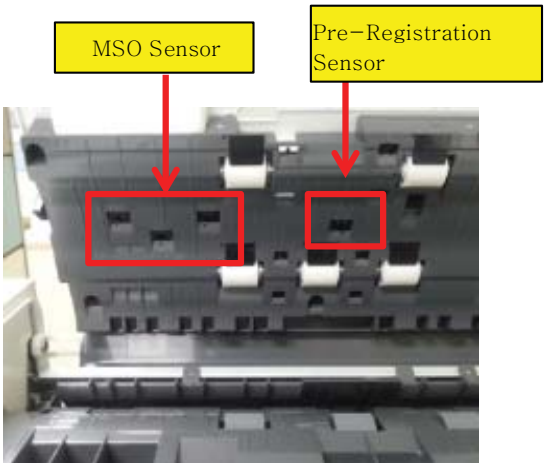


Table 1-29 Flow document feeder MSO3 (length x max width)

Length	A3 SEF (297 mm) (11.7 in)	A4 LEF (297 mm) (11.7 in)	B4 SEF (257 mm) (10.1 in)	B5 LEF (257 mm) (10.1 in)	A4 SEF (210 mm) (8.3 in)	A5 LEF (210 mm) (8.3 in)	A5 LEF (182 mm) (7.2 in)	A5 SEF (148 mm) (5.8 in)
A3 SEF (420 mm) (16.5 in)		X						
A4 LEF (210 mm) (8.3 in)	X							
B4 SEF (363 mm) (14.3 in)	X	X		X				
B5 LEF (182 mm) (7.2 in)	X	X	X					
A4 SEF (297 mm) (11.7 in)	X	X	X	X		X		
A5 LEF (148 mm) (5.8 in)	X	X	X	X	X			
B5 SEF (257 mm) (10.1 in)			X	X	X	X		
A5 SEF (210 mm) (8.3 in)					X	X		

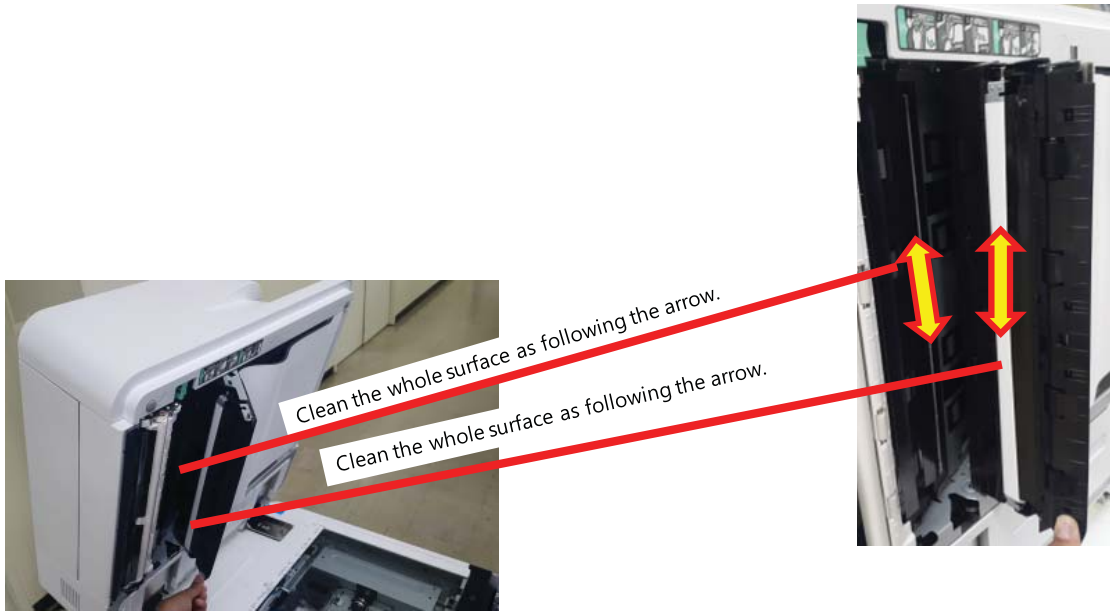
Flow document feeder dual sensor cleaning method

Learn about the flow document feeder dual sensor cleaning method.

- Component: LEVER GUIDE EXIT F, GUIDE-EXIT UPPER ASSEMBLY.
- Open LEVER GUIDE EXIT F.
- Cleans with a D-CIS GLASS in the direction indicated.
- Cleans the GUIDE EXIT UPPER ASSEMBLY in the direction indicated.

Figure 1-72 Flow document feeder dual sensor cleaning method (1 of 2)

Figure 1-73 Flow document feeder dual sensor cleaning method (2 of 2)



Flow ADF z bundles (GX)

Learn about the flow ADF z bundles (GX).

Model	Engine	Scanner		
Platen			DN-sGX	Z-GX

Model	Engine	Scanner						
Color	40 ppm	Same at whole model	Scan Speed	USM	Capacity	Scan Speed	USM	Capacity
	50 ppm		90/180 ipm	X	250 sheet	120/240 ipm	0	250 sheet
	60 ppm							
Mono	40 ppm							
	50 ppm							
	60 ppm							

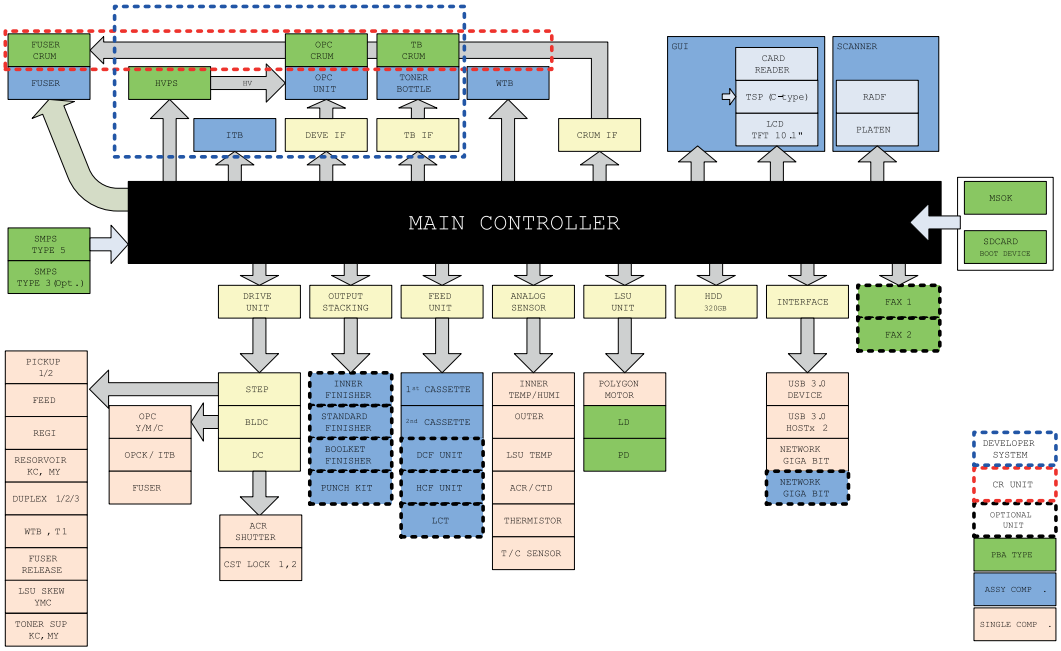
Hardware configuration

Learn the functions and specifications of the hardware configuration.

The electronic circuit system consists of the following:

- Main controller (main board)
- OPE unit
- Document feeder (Flow/LX) controller
- HVPS board
- LVPS board
- Fuser drive assembly

Figure 1-74 Electronic circuit diagram



The main controller handles the video controller, engine controller, and scan controller.

The main controller receives print data from the host through the network or USB port and receives copy data from the scan controller. The main controller uses this information to generate printable video bitmap data. It controls all modulesrequired to print, including the laser scanner assembly, HVPS, FAN, fuser, and so on.

The main controller communicates with the drive system and other devices through Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (UART). The main controller communicates with and checks the life of the toner cartridge, drum, and developer units through I2C.

The main controller uses Quad Core CPU 1.5 GHz, DDR3 4 GB memory, Micro SD 4 GB, and a 320 GB SATA HDD to control the engine driving, video signal processing, and user interface.

A MICOM controls power to the fuser lamp and power to the system according to an optimized energy saving algorithm. The MICOM communicates with the OPE controller through the USB 3.0 protocol to display the system information on the control panel.

The OPE unit displays the status of the system using the control panel TFT LCD in response to user actions or the main controller.

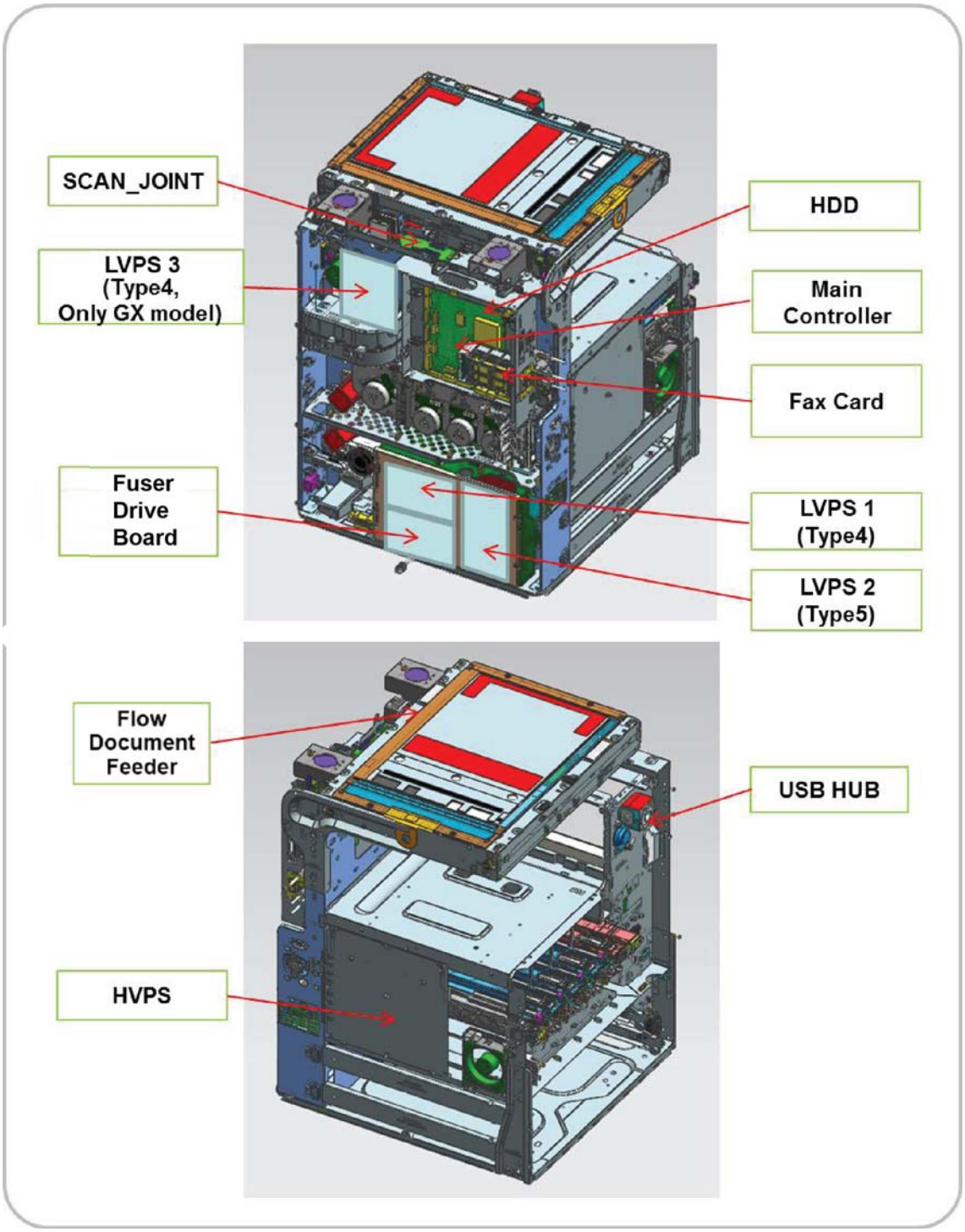
The soft power switch in the OPE unit is used to safely shut down the system.

The ADF controller controls some mechanisms required to scan continuously from the ADF. The ADF controller communicates with the main controller to synchronize scan timing.

The HVPS board generates and controls high-voltage channels. The fuser drive assembly controls power to the fuser lamp. The LVPS board generates 5 V and 24 V power for the system.

The following diagrams show the locations of the printer circuit boards:

Figure 1-75 Circuit board locations



Main controller

Learn about the main controller.

⚠ CAUTION: The main controller for the previous model is not compatible with the new model (IR/UI). Do not use the previous model main controller during replacement.

Main controller (previous model)

Learn about the main controller (previous model).

The main controller consists of the main processor (A3000), memory (DDR3 4 GB), Micro SD (4 GB), 1 G Ethernet PHY, USB 3.0 HUB, and Micom (Power/Fuser control). It can control Video/UI/FAX signal interface connection, motor driving IC, engine signal interface connection, and power interface.

The main processor (Quad Core 1.5 GHz CPU) controls video, engine, UI display, and communicates with the various devices. The HDD is connected to the main controller by a SATA cable and connected to the other device (such as ADF, dual cassette feeder (DCF), Finisher, Modem) by UART.

Figure 1-76 Main controller block diagram

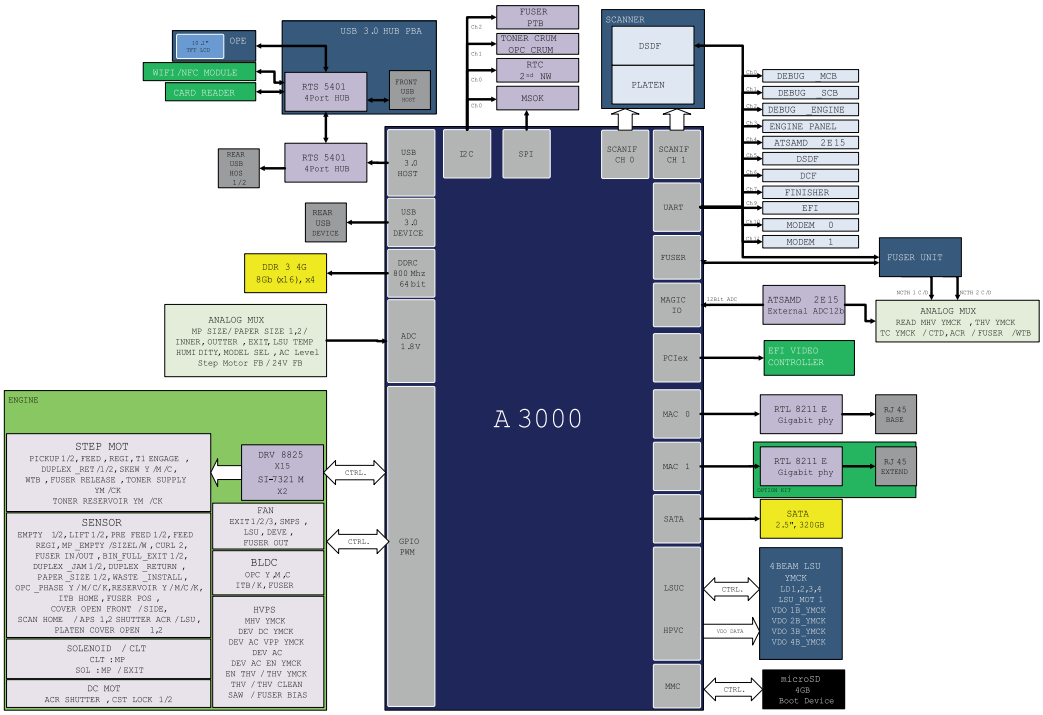


Figure 1-77 Main controller clock diagram

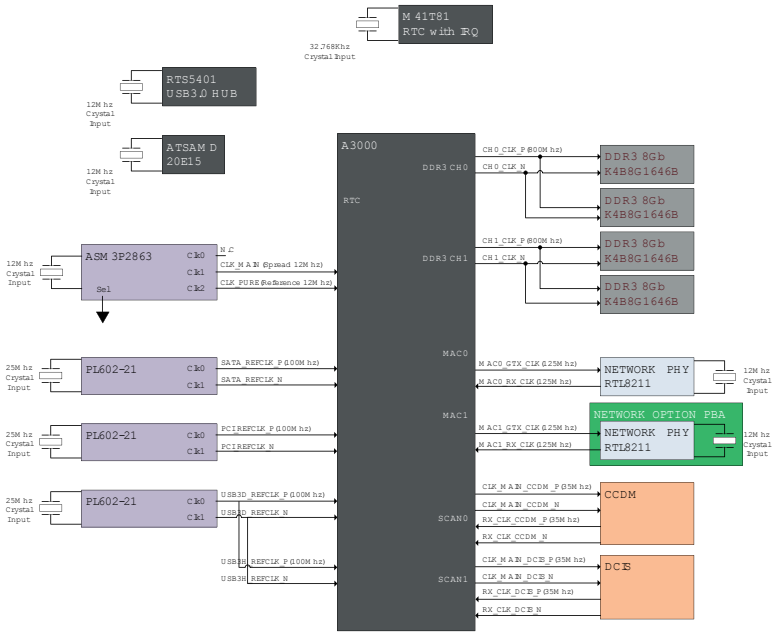


Figure 1-78 Main controller connection information

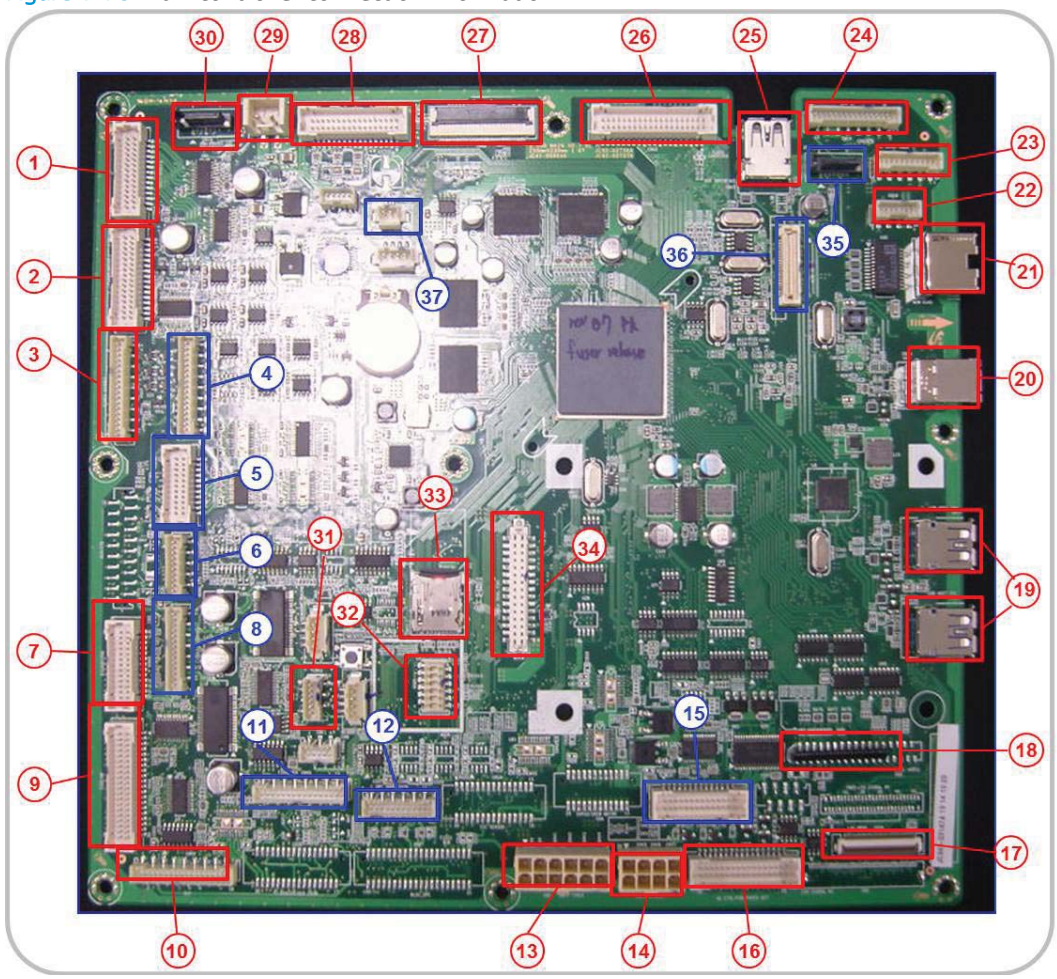


Table 1-30 Main controller connections

Item	Description	Item	Description	Item	Description	Item	Description
1	OUTPUT	12	OPC BLDC MONO	23	FIH JOINT	34	FAX JOINT
2	FUSER DRIVE	13	LVPS TYPE5	24	UI IF	35	2ND NETWORK
3	FUSER DRAWER	14	LVPS TYPE3R	25	USB HOST/HUB	36	EFI SIGNAL
4	TB/DEVE/E-Label	15	FRONT IF MONO	26	DCIS	37	CPU FAN
5	TONER SUP/RES	16	Fuser drive assembly IF	27	CCDM		
6	CTD/ Registration assembly SENS	17	Laser scanner assembly MONO	28	Flow ADF		
7	PICKUP 1/2	18	HVPS MONO	29	HDD POWER		
8	FEED/ Registration assembly MOT	19	USB HOST 1/2	30	HDD SIGNAL		
9	SIDE	20	USB DEVICE	31	SIDE FAN		
10	dual cassette feeder (DCF) IF	21	NETWORK	32	MSOK		
11	FINISHER	22	EFI POWER	33	SD CARD		

⚠ CAUTION: The main controller for the previous model is not compatible with the new model (IR/UI). Do not use the previous model main controller during replacement.

Information

- Part Number:
- Part Name: PBA-MAIN

NOTE: This main board is for all models of the HP LaserJet MFP E82540, E82550, E82560.

Main controller

Learn about the printer main controller.

The main controller consists of the main processor (A3000), memory (DDR3 6 GB), eMMC (4 GB)1 G Ethernet PHY, USB 3.0 HUB, and Micom (Power/Fuser control). It can control Video/UI/FAX signal interface connection, motor driving IC, engine signal interface connection, and power interface.

The main processor (Quad Core 1.5 GHz CPU) controls video, engine, UI display, and communicates with the various devices. The HDD is connected to the main controller by a SATA cable and connected to the other device (such as ADF, dual cassette feeder (DCF), Finisher, and Modem) by UART.

Figure 1-79 Main controller block diagram

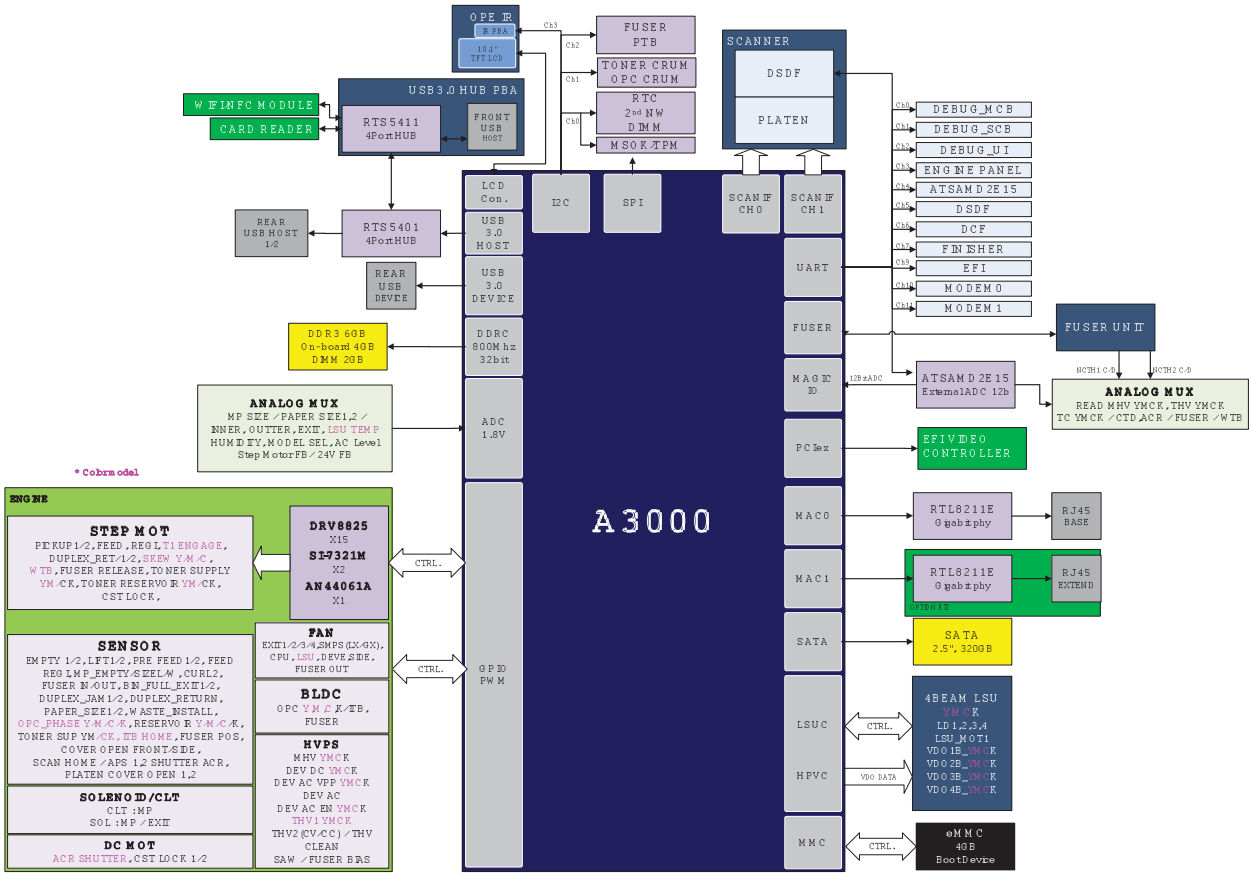


Figure 1-80 Main controller clock diagram

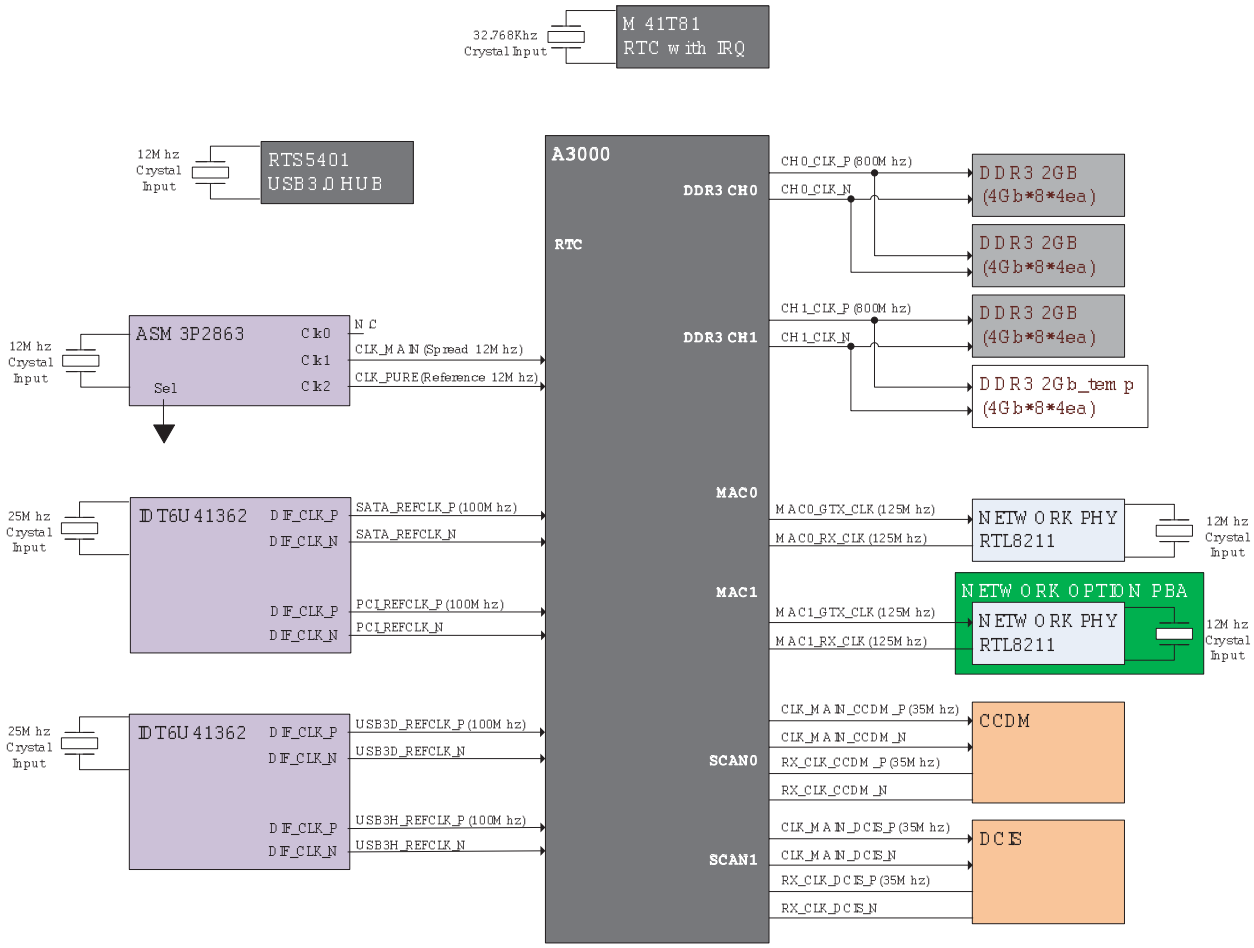


Figure 1-81 Main controller connection information

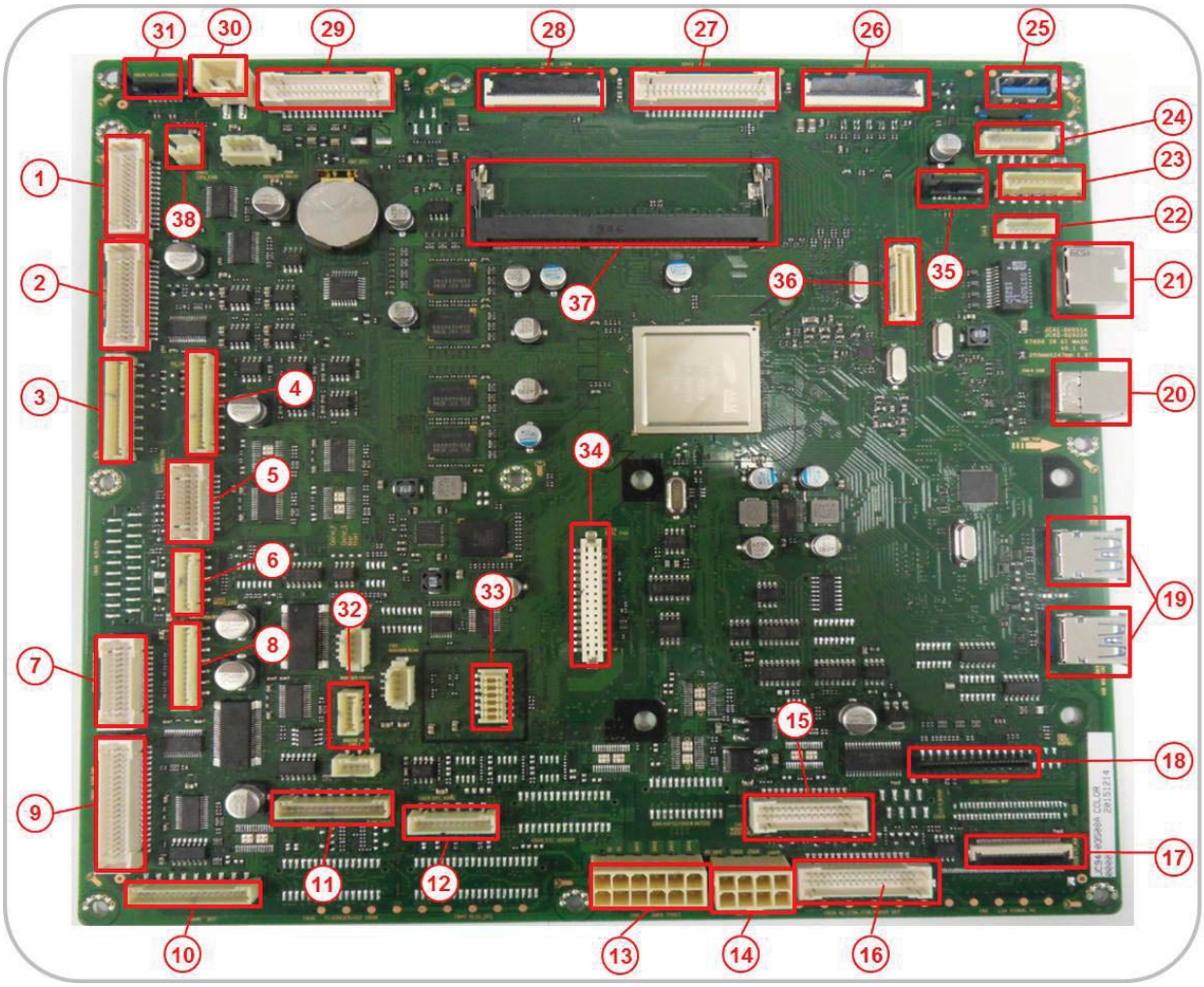


Table 1-31 Main controller connections

Item	Description	Item	Description	Item	Description	Item	Description
1	OUTPUT	12	FINISHER	23	Laser scanner assembly 1 COLOR	34	DCIS
2	FUSER DRIVE	13	OPC E-Label/T1	24	Laser scanner assembly 2 COLOR	35	CCDM
3	FUSER DRAWER	14	OPC HOME SENS	25	HVPS COLOR	36	Flow ADF
4	TB/DEVE/E-Label	15	OPC BLDC COLOR	26	USB HOST 1/2	37	HDD POWER
5	TONER SUP_/RES	16	TC SENS/RES FULL	27	USB DEVICE	38	HDD SIGNAL
6	CPR_CTD COLOR	17	LVPS TYPE5	28	NETWORK	39	CPU FAN

Table 1-31 Main controller connections (continued)

Item	Description	Item	Description	Item	Description	Item	Description
7	Registration assembly/T1 POS SENS	18	HVPS POWER/ Laser scanner assembly SKEW	29	EFI POWER	40	SIDE FAN
8	PICKUP 1/2	19	LVPS TYPE4	30	FIH JOINT	41	MSOK
9	FEED/ Registration assembly MOT	20	FRONT IF COLOR	31	HUB IF	42	FAX JOINT
10	SIDE	21	Fuser drive assembly IF	32	USB HOST/HUB	43	EFI SIGNAL
11	dual cassette feeder (DCF) IF	22	Laser scanner assembly PD	33	UI IF	44 45	2ND NETWORK DDR3 DIMM

Information

- Part Number: JC92-02958A
- Part Name: PBA-MAIN

NOTE: This main board is for all HP LaserJet MFP E87640, E87650, E87660 models.

Master system operation key (MSOK)

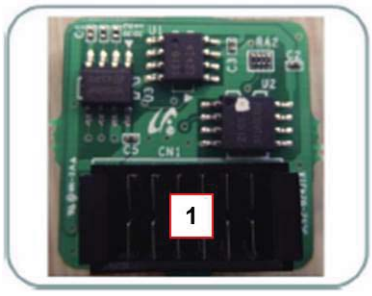
Learn about the master system operation key (MSOK).

MSOK PCA is used to store all system information and consists of serial flash memory, an EEPROM, and a X-E-Label. The flash memory (4 MB), EEPROM (256 KB) and X-E-Label are used for all system operations such as system parameter, device status, tech information, and service information.

NOTE: When a main board needs to be exchanged, reinstall the MSOK PCA to the new main board to retain the system information.

IMPORTANT: Do not lose or damage the MSOK chip. It must be installed on the replacement main board in the same orientation as when it was removed in order for the printer to function.

Figure 1-82 MSOK



1	Main PCA I/F connector

Formatter cabling

Learn about the formatter cabling.

Figure 1-83 Formatter cabling (sGX/GX)

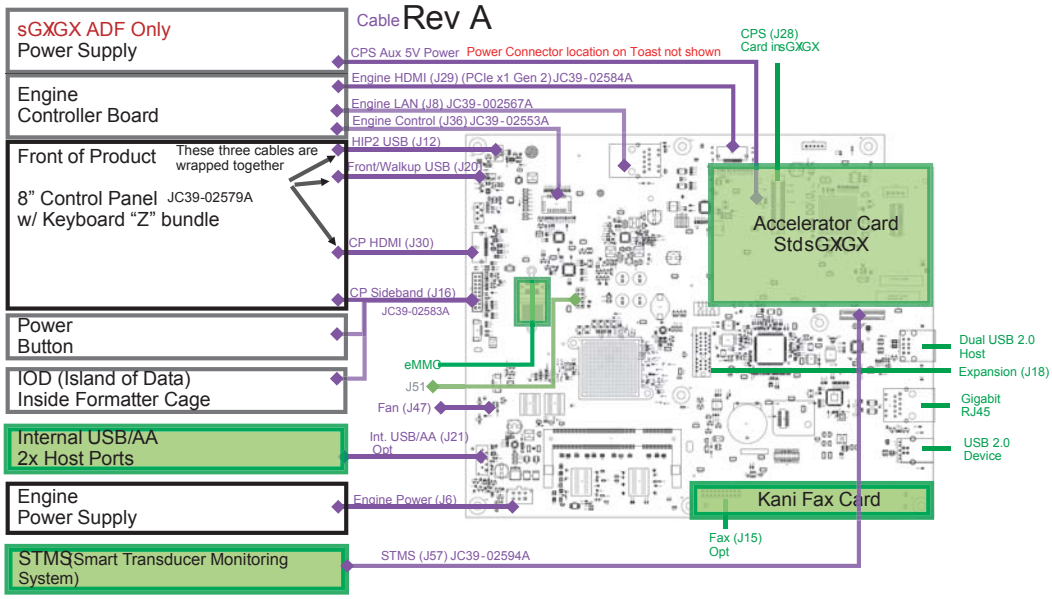


Figure 1-84 Formatter cabling (LX)

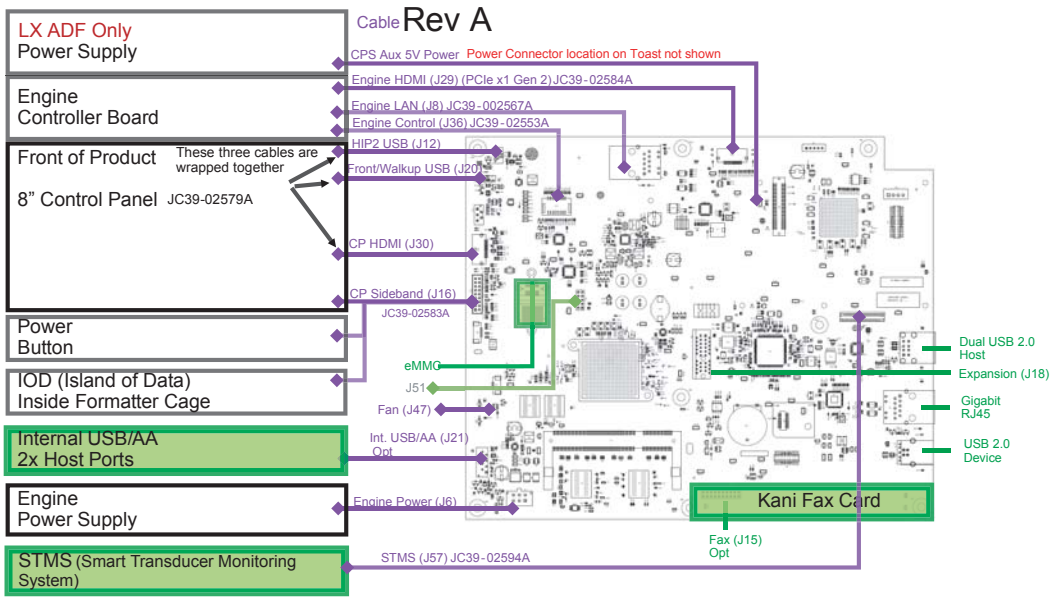


Figure 1-85 Formatter cabling (sGX/GX)

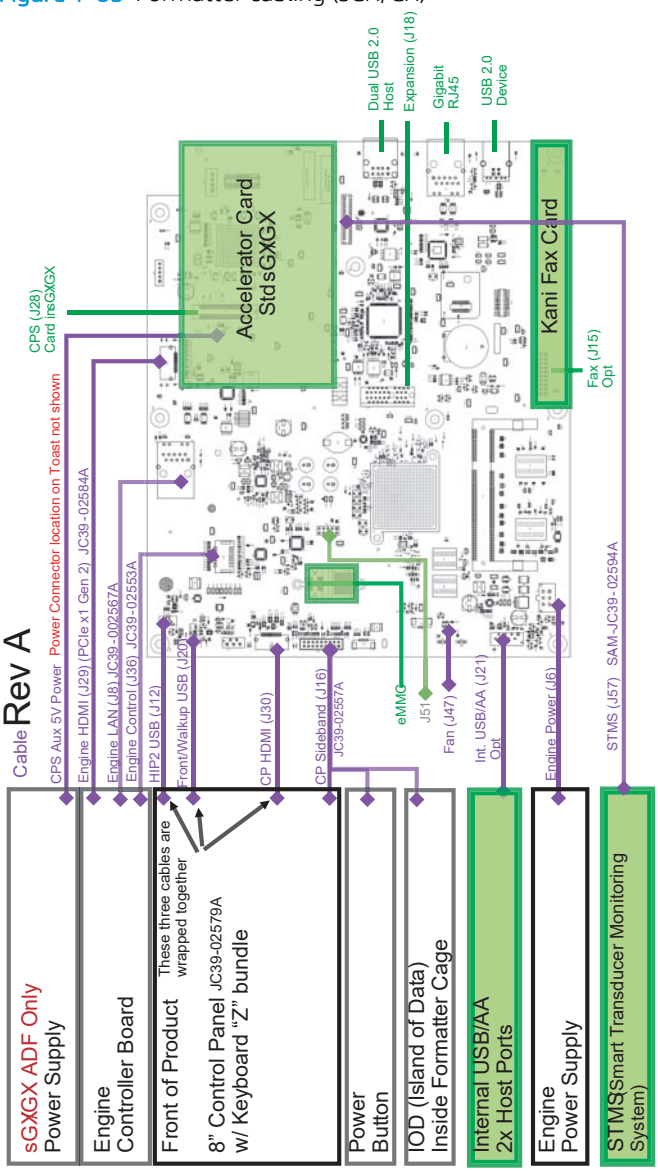


Figure 1-86 Formatter cabling (LX)

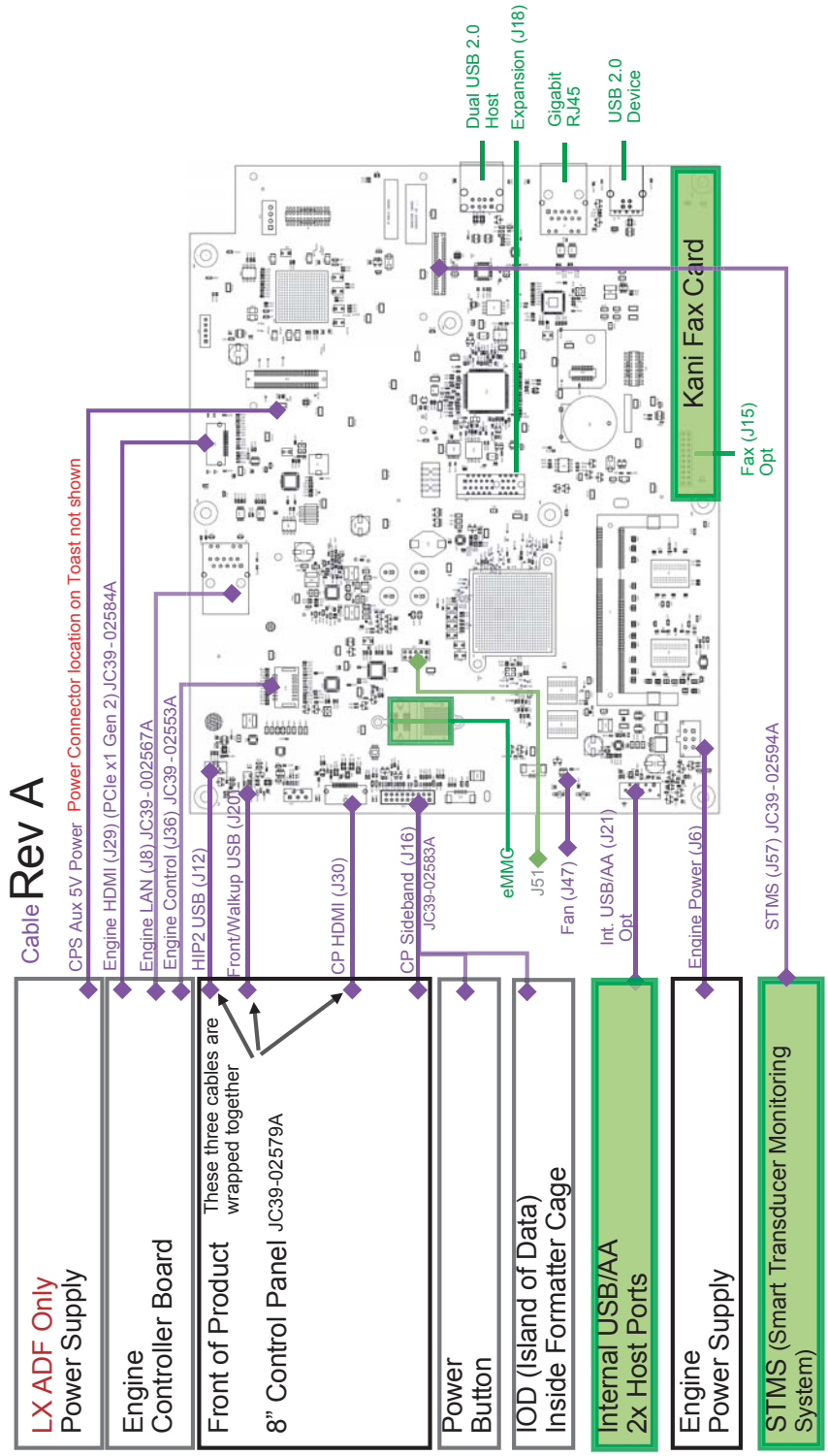


Table 1-32 Formatter cabling

Cable	Jxx	From	To	Purpose
Formatter cabling	NA	LVPS	Accelerator	Power for accelerator
Engine HDMI	J29	Main board	Formatter	High speed print data (JC39-02584A)

Table 1-32 Formatter cabling (continued)

Cable	Jxx	From	To	Purpose
Engine LAN	J8	Main board	Formatter	High speed print data (JC39-02584A)
Engine control	J36	Main board	Formatter	Low level engine control (JC39-02553A)
HIP2 USB	J12	Formatter	HIP	USB for HIP NOTE: Cable bundled.
Front walk-up USB	J20	Formatter	Front of printer	USB for walk u NOTE: Cable bundled.
CP HDMI	J30	Formatter	CP	Data to CP NOTE: Cable bundled.
CP side band	J16	Formatter	CP	Power, reset, wake lines, display power, keyboard (JC39-02557A)
Power button	J16	Formatter	Power button	Power ON/OFF
IOD	J16	Formatter	IOD	Data to/from Island of Data
Internal USB/AA	J21	Formatter	Accessory	Accessory
Engine power	J6	LVPS	Formatter	5V supply to formatter

Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 5H)

Learn about the low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 5H).

NOTE: Some models have three LVPS boards. (Type5 x 1 each, Type4 x 2 each)

The low voltage power supply (LVPS) board supplies electric power to the main board and other boards. The voltage provided includes +5 V, and +24 V from a 110 V/220 V power input. It has safety protection modes for over current and overload.

Figure 1-87 LVPS PCA (Type 5H)

1	INPUT_AC
2	OUTPUT_DC +24 V 1/2/3/4 (to Main PCA)
3	24 V on/off
4	OUTPUT_DC +5 V 1/2 (to Main PCA)

Specification

- General input/output voltage
  - AC 110 V (110 V — 127 V)
  - AC 220 V (220 V — 240 V)
  - Input current: 8.0 A (110 V)/5.0 A (220 V)
  - Output power: 275 W
    - DC 5 V: 35 W
    - DC 24 V: 240 W

Information

	110 V	220 V
Part number	JC44-00249A	JC44-00250A
Part name	LVPS 110V Type 5H	LVPS 220V Type 5H

Input/output connector

- AC input connector (CN1)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	AC_L	AC input
2	AC_N	

- DC output connector (CN2)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	+5V1	Power
2	GND	5 V ground
3	+5V2	Power
4	GND	5 V ground

- DC output connector (CN3)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	+24V1	Power
2	GND	24 V ground
3	+24V2	Power
4	GND	24 V ground
5	+24V3	Power
6	GND	24 V ground
7	+24V4	Power
8	GND	24 V ground

- Signal Connector (CN4)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	GND	Active Low
2	24 V On/Off	
3	GND	

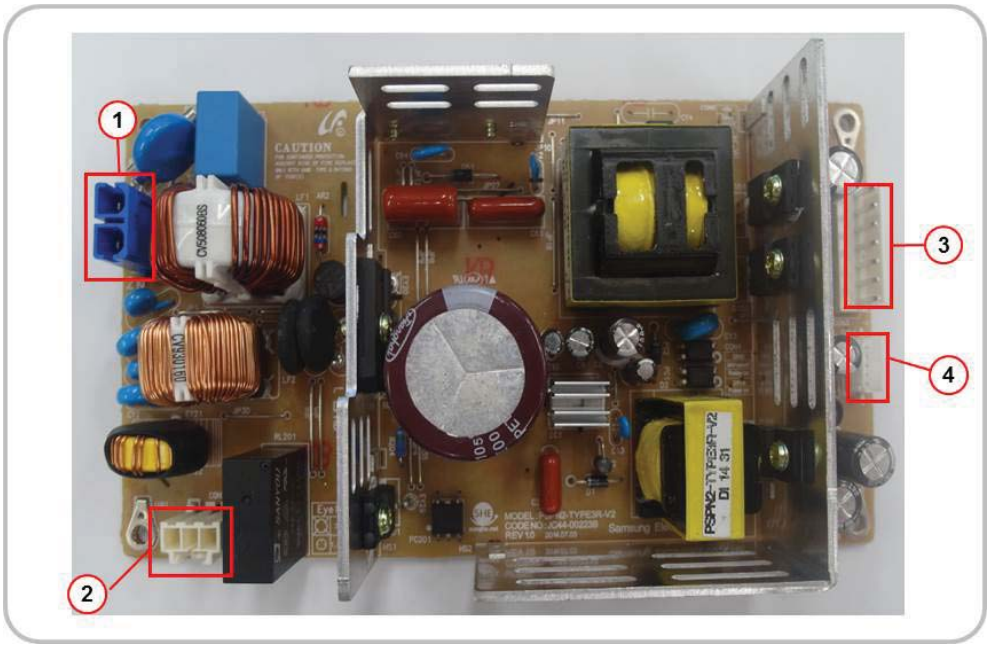
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 3R) for GX/sGX only

Learn about the low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 3R) for GX/sGX only.

NOTE: Some models have three LVPS boards. (Type5 x 1 each, Type4 x 1 each, Type3 x 1 each)

The low voltage power supply (LVPS) board supplies electric power to the main board and other boards. The voltage provided includes +5 V, and +24 V from a 110 V/220 V power input. It has safety protection modes for over current and overload.

Figure 1-88 LVPS PCA (Type 3R)



1	INPUT_AC Power (CON1)
2	Fuser AC Power (CON2)
3	OUTPUT_DC +24 V 1/2/3 and +5V1 (CON3)
4	Signal_24 V on/off, Relay on, Fuser on (CON4)

Specification

- General input/output voltage
  - AC 110 V (110 V — 127 V)
  - AC 220 V (220 V — 240 V)
  - Input current: 10.0 A (110 V)/8.0 A (220 V)
  - Output power: 164 W
    - DC 5 V: 20 W
    - DC 24 V: 144 W

Information

	110 V	220 V
Part number	JC44-00222E	JC39-01202A
Part name	LVPS 110V Type 3R	LVPS 220V Type 3R

Input/output connector

- AC input connector (CN1)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	AC_L	AC input
2	AC_N	

- Fuser AC Power Connector (CN2)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	AC_L	AC input for fuser
2	AC_N	

- DC output connector (CN3)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	+5V1	DC 5 V
2	GND	Ground
3	+24V1	DC 24 V
4	GND	Ground
5	+24V2	DC 24 V
6	GND	Ground
7	+24V3	DC 24 V

- Signal Connector (CN4)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	GND	Ground
2	24 V On/Off	Active Low
3	Relay on	Active High
4	24 V	Bias for photo triac, relay
5	Fuser on	Active High

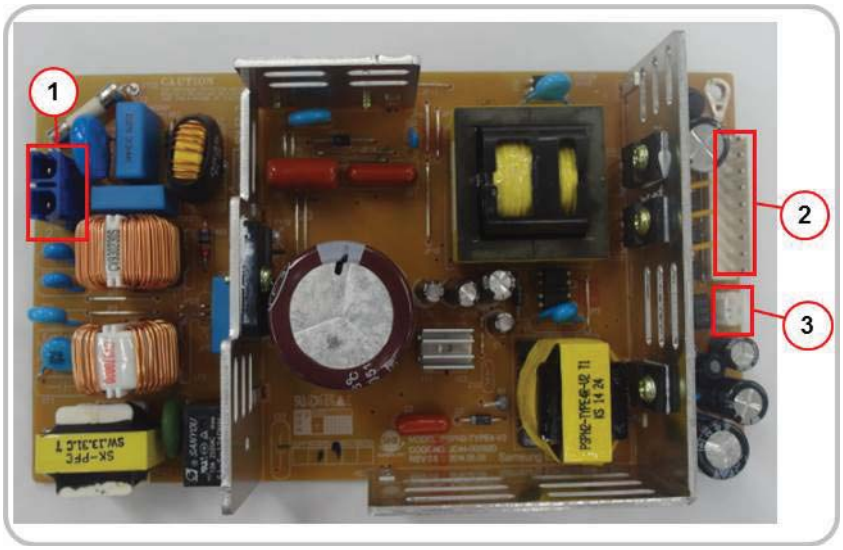
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 4)

Learn about the low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 4).

NOTE: Some models have three LVPS boards. (Type5 x 1 each, Type4 x 2 each)

The low voltage power supply (LVPS) board supplies electric power to the main board and other boards. The voltage provided includes +5 V, and +24 V from a 110 V/220 V power input. It has safety protection modes for over current and overload.

Figure 1-89 LVPS PCA (Type 4)



1	INPUT_AC
2	OUTPUT_DC +24 V1/2/3 and DC +5 V 1/2 (to Main PCA)
3	24 V on/off

Specification

- General input/output voltage
  - AC 110 V (110 V — 127 V)
  - AC 220 V (220 V — 240 V)
  - Input current: 6.3 A (110 V)/5 A (220 V)
  - Output power: 205 W
    - DC 5 V: 25 W
    - DC 24 V: 180 W

Information

	110 V	220 V
Part number	JC44-00091D	JC44-00092D
Part name	LVPS 110V Type 4	LVPS 220V Type 4

Input/output connector

- AC input connector (CN1)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	AC_L	AC input
2	AC_N	

- DC output connector (CN4)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	+5V1	Power
2	GND	5 V ground
3	+5V2	Power
4	GND	5 V ground
5	+24V1	Power
6	GND	24 V ground
7	+24V2	Power
8	GND	24 V ground
9	+24V3	Power

- Signal Connector (CN3)

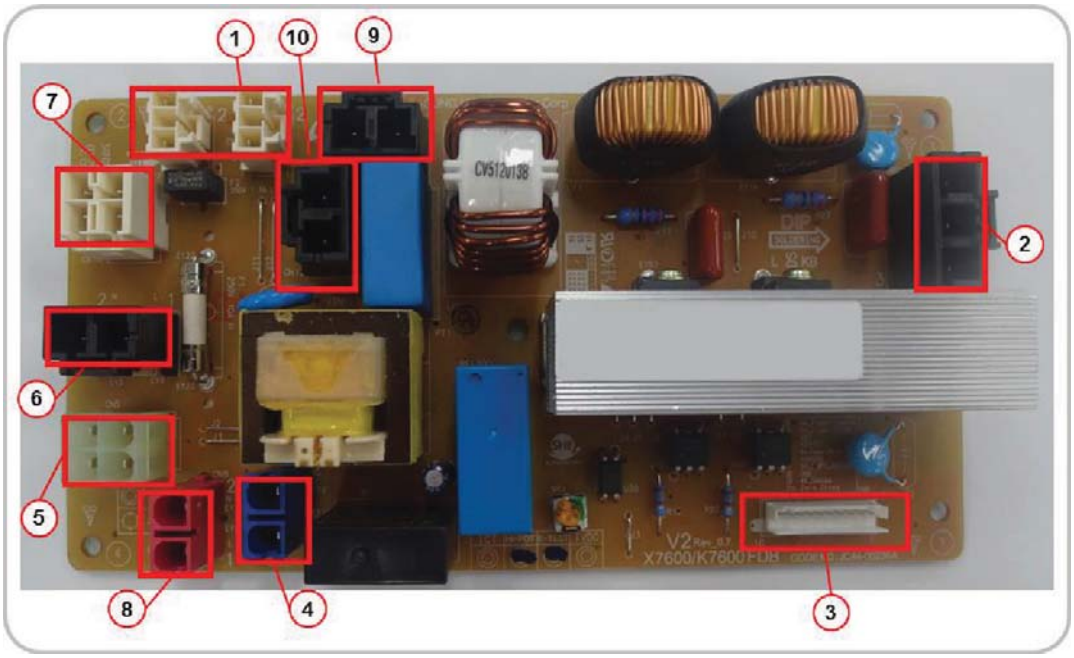
PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	GND	Active Low
2	24 V On/Off	
3	GND	

Fuser drive assembly

Learn about the fuser drive assembly.

This board supplies voltage to the fuser AC, heater, and main board.

Figure 1-90 Fuser drive board



1	Option Heater
2	Fuser Lamp
3	Fuser drive assembly I/F
4	LVPS (Type 5H)
5	Main Switch
6	AC Inlet
7	Option Heater Switch
8	LVPS (Type 4)
9/10	Reactor

Information

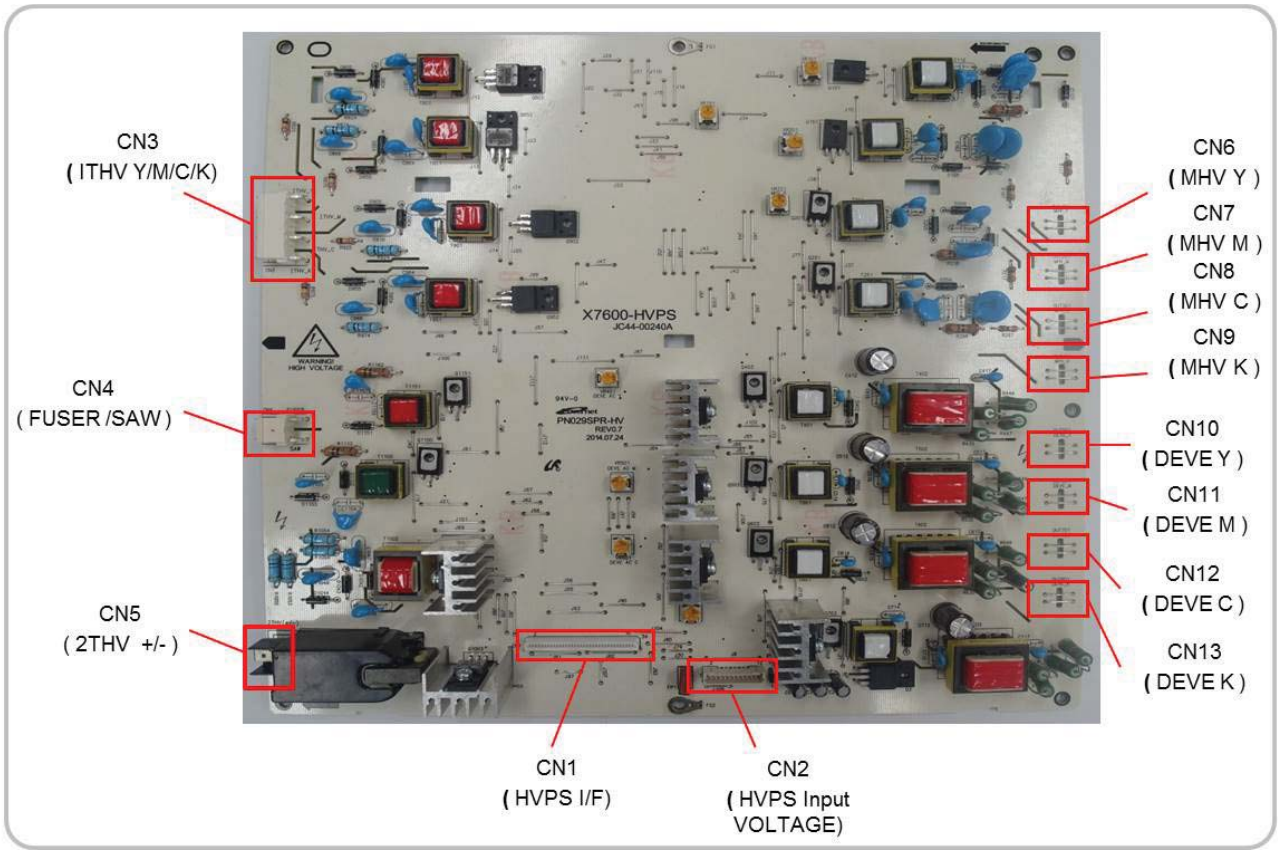
	110 V	220 V
Part number	JC44-00235B	JC44-00236B
Part name	Fuser Drive Board 110V	Fuser Drive Board 220V

High voltage power supply (HVPS) board

Learn about the high-voltage power supply (HVPS).

The HVPS board generates 15 high-voltage channels, including ITHV (4), MHV (4), DEV (4), FUSER, SAW, and 2THV(+/-).

Figure 1-91 HVPS PCA



PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	DETECT	
2	PWM_ITHV_C	PWM signal
3	PWM_ITHV_K	PWM signal
4	PWM_ITHV_M	PWM signal
5	READ_ITHV_C	Output voltage
6	PWM_ITHV_Y	PWM signal
7	READ_ITHV_K	Output voltage
8	READ_ITHV_M	Output voltage
9	PWM_FUSEBIAS	PWM signal
10	READ_ITHV_Y	Output voltage
11	PWM_SAW	PWM signal
12	READ_MHV_Y	Output voltage
13	PWM_THV2_MINUS	PWM signal
14	READ_MHV_M	Output voltage
15	PWM_THV2_P_CV	PWM signal
16	READ_MHV_C	Output voltage

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
17	READ_THV2	Output voltage
18	PWM_MHV_Y	PWM signal
19	PWM_DEVE_DC_K	PWM signal
20	PWM_MHV_M	PWM signal
21	PWM_DEVE_AC_VPP_K	PWM signal
22	PWM_MHV_C	PWM signal
23	PWM_DEVE_DC_C	PWM signal
24	PWM_MHV_K	PWM signal
25	PWM_DEVE_AC_VPP_C	PWM signal
26	PWM_THV2_P_CC	PWM signal
27	PWM_DEVE_DC_M	PWM signal
28	THV2_CV_SELECT	PWM signal
29	PWM_DEVE_AC_VPP_M	PWM signal
30	NC	
31	PWM_DEVE_DC_Y	PWM signal
32	READ_MHV_K	Output voltage
33	PWM_DEVE_AC_VPP_Y	PWM signal
34	PWM_DEVE_AC_VFREQ	PWM signal
35	DETECT	
CN2		
1	24 V	Input voltage
2	24 V	Input voltage
3	24 V	Input voltage
4	3.3 V	Input voltage
5	GND	GND
6	GND	GND
7	GND	GND
8	READ_HVPS_24	Output voltage
9	nEN_DEVE_AC_Y	nEN signal
10	nEN_DEVE_AC_M	nEN signal
11	nEN_DEVE_AC_C	nEN signal
12	nEN_DEVE_AC_K	nEN signal
Connections		
CN3	ITHV Y/M/C/K	Output voltage

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
CN5	2THV ±	Output voltage
CN6	MHV Y	Output voltage
CN7	MHV M	Output voltage
CN8	MHV C	Output voltage
CN9	MHV K	Output voltage
CN10	DEVE Y	Output voltage
CN11	DEVE M	Output voltage
CN12	DEVE C	Output voltage
CN13	DEVE K	Output voltage
CN4		
1	FUSER_BIAS	Output voltage
2	SAW_PLATE	Output voltage

Specification

- Input voltage: DC 24 V, 3.3 V
- Output voltage:
  - MHV Y/M/C/K: -1395 V
  - DEVE DC Y/M/C/K: -606 V
  - DEV AC Y/M/C/K: Vpp 920 V
  - THV1 Y/M/C/K: 45.5 uA
  - THV2+(CV): 2020 V
  - THV2+(CC): 25.5 uA
  - THV2–: –1310 V
  - FUSER: 998 V
  - SAW: -998 V

Information

- Part number: JC44-00240B
- Part name: HVPS

Eraser PCA

Learn about the eraser PCA.

The eraser PCA has one LED. The LED is used for erasing the negative charges on the surface of the drum after printing.

Figure 1-92 Eraser PCA

Information

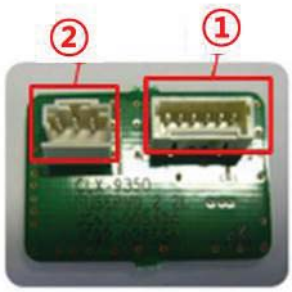
- Part name: PCA-ERASER

Fuser PCA

Learn about the fuser PCA.

The Fuser PCA includes a CRU memory for Fuser Unit Life Cycle counting. The Fuser PCA provides a connection interface for the pressure sensor.

Figure 1-93 Fuser PCA



1	Fuser EEPROM, Pressure Sensor I/F
2	Pressure Sensor (Not used)

Information

- Part number:
- Part name: PBA-FUSER

Waste Sensor PCA

Learn about the waste sensor PCA.

The waste sensor PCA detects the waste toner level inside the toner collection unit.

Figure 1-94 Waste sensor PCA

Information

- Part name: WASTE SENSOR RX

Paper Size sensor PCA

The paper size sensor PCA is used for detecting the size of the paper in the tray.

Figure 1-95 Paper size sensor PCA

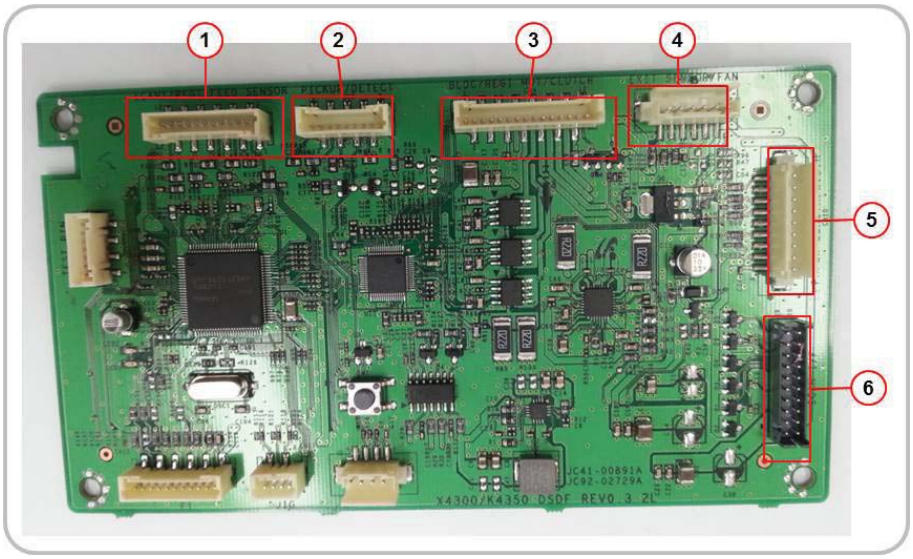
Flow document feeder PCA

Learn about the flow document feeder PCA.

The flow document feeder PCA uses the R5F562TAEDFP (100 MHz Main Clock) for controlling the flow document feeder and interfaces with the main board through UART.

The flow document feeder PCA has three motor driver ICs to control the BLDC/step motor and controls one BLDC motor, two step motors, one clutch, one fan, and 11 sensors.

Figure 1-96 Flow document feeder PCA



1	Scan Position 1/2, Registration, Feed Sensor
2	Pickup, Paper Detect, Cover Open Sensor
3	BLDC Motor, Registration Motor, Pickup Clutch
4	Output Sensor, Fan
5	Paper Length 1/2, Width Sensor
6	Scan Joint PCA

Information

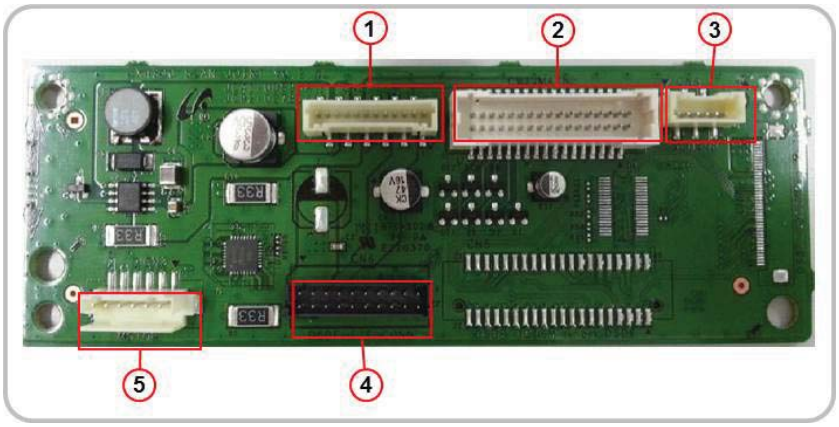
- Part number: JC92-02964A
- Part name: Flow PCA - ADF HIC (GX only)
- Part number: JC92-02964B
- Part name: Flow ADF-PCA (sGX)
- Part number: JC92-02962A
- Part name: LX (du models) ADF PCA

Scan joint PCA

The scan joint PCA has a Bipolar Step Motor driving IC and interfaces with the WLED, APS sensor (1, 2), cover open sensor (1, 2), home position sensor, and main board.

The scan joint PCA also functions as the relay board to interface with the ADF I/F and power board.

Figure 1-97 Scan joint PCA



1	WLED IF PCA
2	MAIN PCA
3	Cover Open 2, Home Sensor
4	ADF/flow ADF PCA
5	Image Scanner Motor

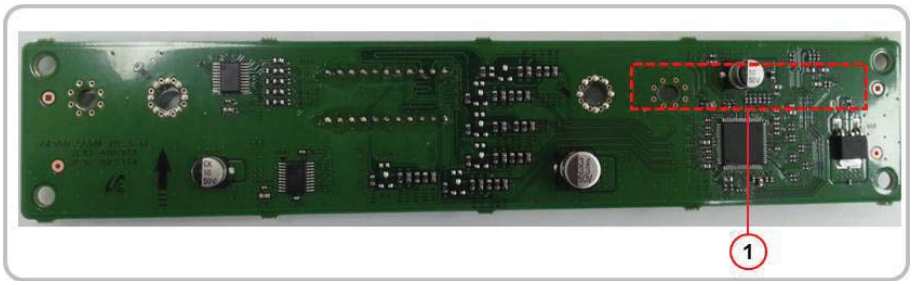
Information

- Part number: JC92-02781A
- Part name: PCA-SCAN JOINT

CCDM PCA

The CCDM PCA is used in the scanner unit and converts the reflected light from an original document to electrical signals. The reflected light from an original document is converted to three-color analog signals: red, green, and blue. The ADC converts each analog signal to digital. For a high speed data transmission, the digital data signal is converted to a LVDS format with serialization. The CCDM PCA includes the CCD, ADC, Logic IC, and so on.

Figure 1-98 CCDM PCA



1	MAIN PCA

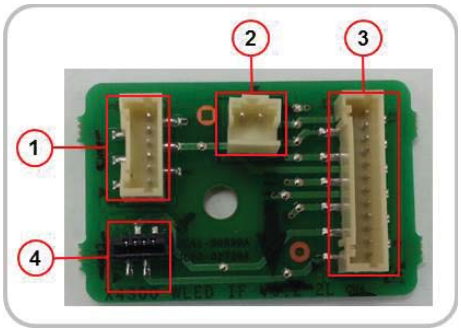
Information

- Part number:
- Part name: PBA-CCDM

WLED IF PCA

The WLED IF PCA interfaces with the WLED and sensors inside the Image Scanner unit.

Figure 1-99 WLED IF PCA



1	APS1, APS2 Sensor
2	Cover Open1 Sensor
3	SCAN JOINT PCA
4	WLED PCA

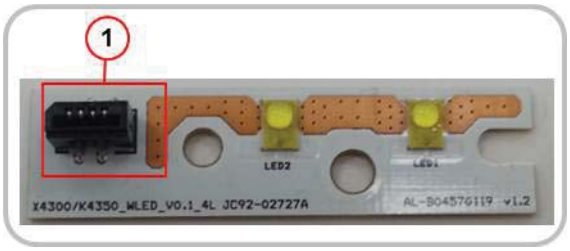
Information

- Part number:
- Part name: PBA-WLED IF

WLED PCA

The WLED PCA consists of two WLEDs used as scanner light.

Figure 1-100 WLED PCA



1	WLED PCA

Information

- Part number:
- Part name: PBA-WLED

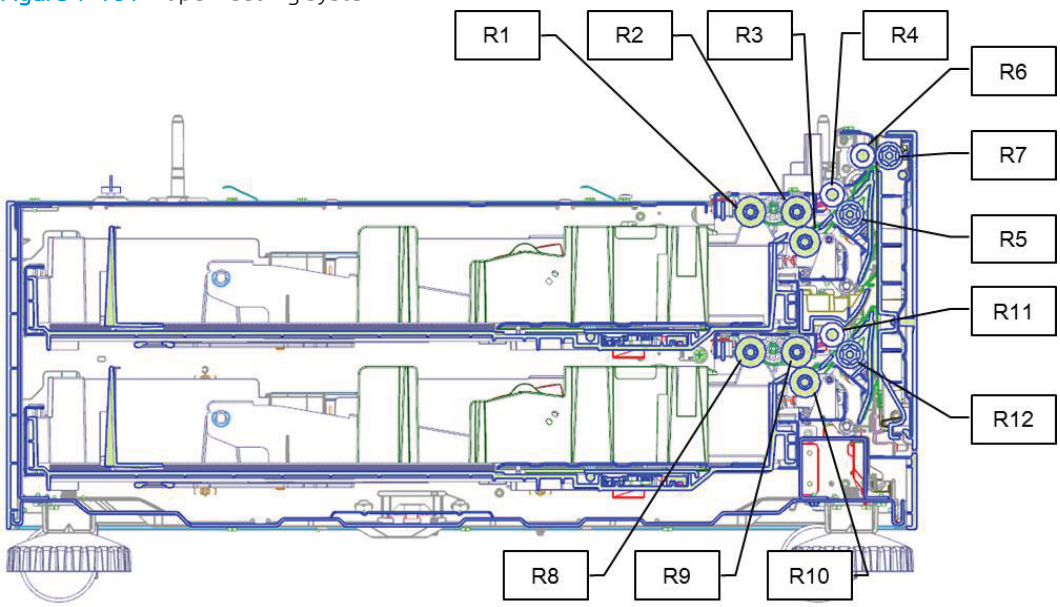
Dual cassette feeder (DCF)

Learn about the dual cassette feeder.

The DCF is an optional device that stores additional paper.

Paper feeding system (rollers and functions)

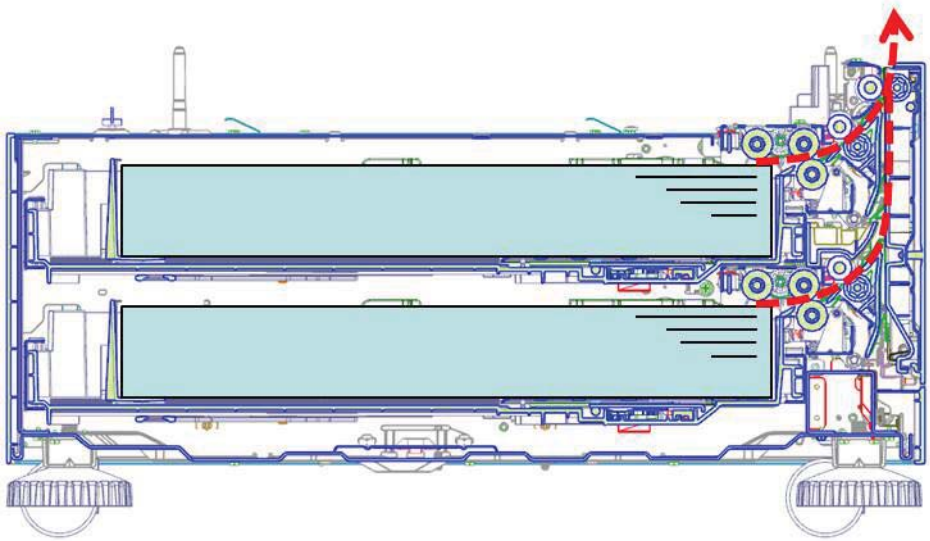
Figure 1-101 Paper feeding system



Tray number	Roller number	Roller name	Function
4	R1	Pickup roller	Transports paper from the paper stack.
4	R2	Feed roller	Transports one sheet of paper to the prefeed roller.
4	R3	Reverse (separation) roller	Makes sure paper is moved one at a time.
4	R4	Prefeed roller	Transports paper to the feed roller.
4	R5	Idle roller	Makes paper transportation smooth.
4/5	R6	Feed roller	Transports one sheet of paper to the basic machine.
4/5	R7	Idle roller	Makes paper transportation smooth.
5	R8	Pickup roller	Transports paper from the paper stack.
5	R9	Feed roller	Transports one sheet of paper to the prefeed roller.
5	R10	Reverse (separation) roller	Makes sure paper is moved one at a time.
5	R11	Prefeed roller	Transports paper to the feed roller.
5	R12	Idle roller	Makes paper transportation smooth.

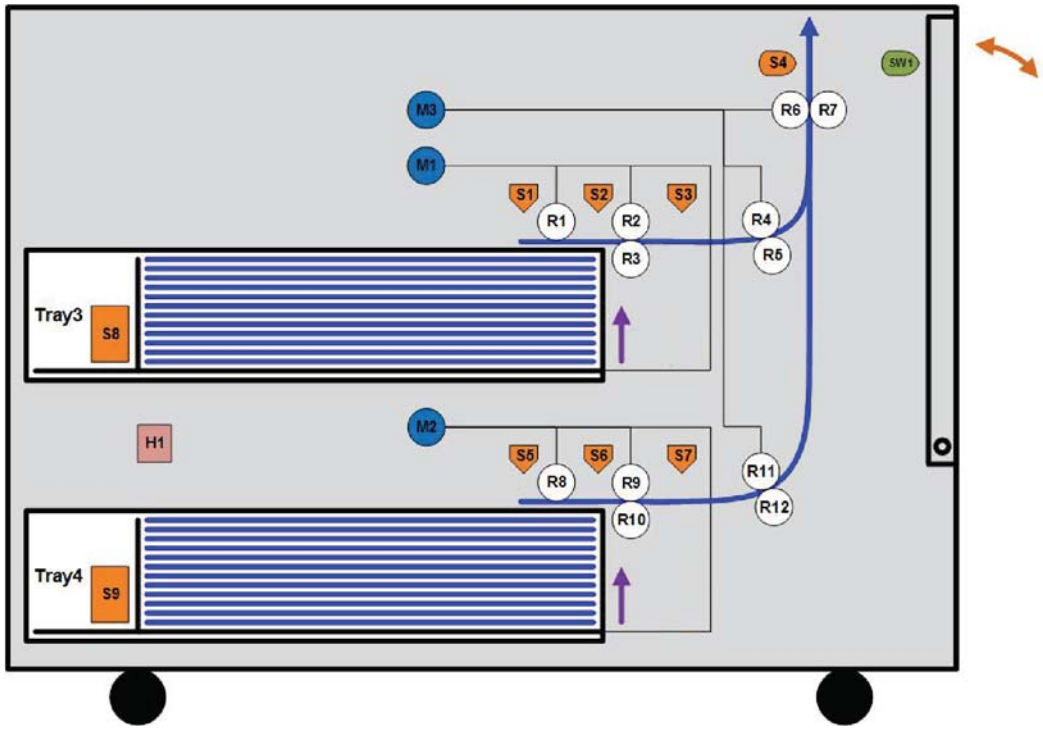
Paper path

Figure 1-102 Paper path



Electrical parts locations, descriptions, and functions

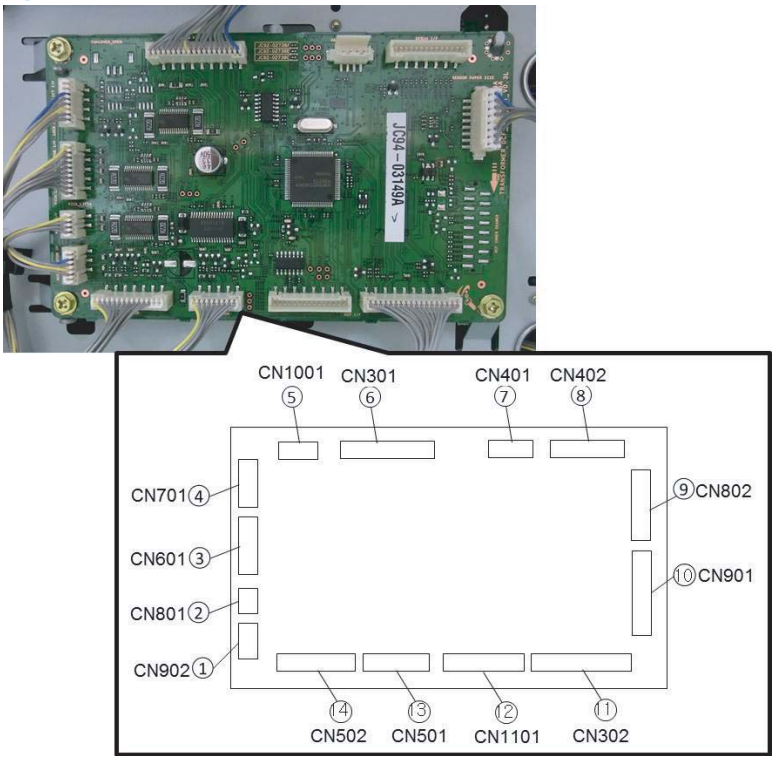
Figure 1-103 Electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions



Tray number	Callouts	Description	Function
4	S1	Pickup no paper sensor	Detects paper empty in Tray 3.
4	S2	Pickup level sensor	Detects upper limit of lifting-up of Tray 3.
4	S3	Prefeed sensor	Detects paper between R2-R3 and R4-5.
4/5	S4	Path sensor	Detects paper passing through R6-R7.
5	S5	Pickup no paper sensor	Detects paper empty in Tray 4.
5	S6	Pickup level sensor	Detects upper limit of lifting-up of Tray 4.
5	S7	Prefeed sensor	Detects paper between R9-R10 and R11-12.
4	S8	Paper size sensor	Detects tray insertion and paper size in Tray 3.
5	S9	Paper size sensor	Detects tray insertion and paper size in Tray 4.
4/5	SW1	Side door open switch	Detects opening of right cover.
4	M1	Tray 3 pickup motor	
5	M2	Tray 4 pickup motor	
4/5	M3	Tray feed motor	

PCA connection

Figure 1-104 PCA connection and DCF



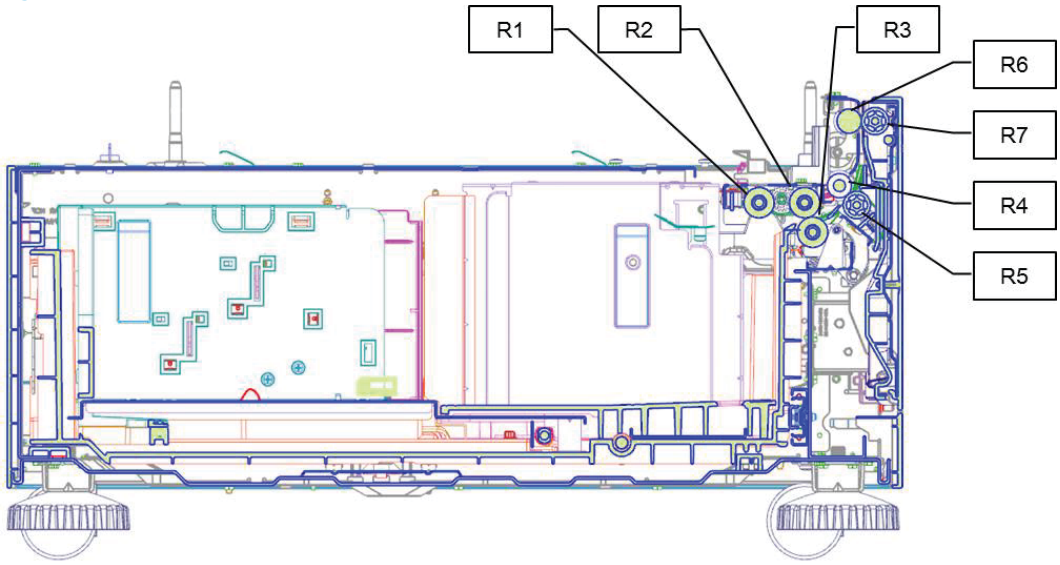
Connector number	Item number	Connection
CN902	1	DC MOTOR I/F
CN801	2	PICK/LIFT4 MOTOR I/F
CN601	3	PICK/LIFT3 & FEED MOTOR I/F
CN701	4	LOCKMOT/MOT LIFT/LCT HOME I/F
CN1001	5	TOPCOVER/OPEN INTERLOCK
CN301	6	MAIN I/F
CN401	7	UART DEBUG I/F
CN402	8	E1 JTAG DEBUG I/F
CN802	9	SENSOR PAPER SIZE
CN901	10	HCI INNER DRAWER
CN302	11	SUB I/F
CN1101	12	BBP I/F
CN501	13	T4 SENSOR
CN502	14	T3 SENSOR

High capacity input tray (HCI)

Learn the functions and specifications of the high capacity input tray.

Paper feeding system (rollers and functions)

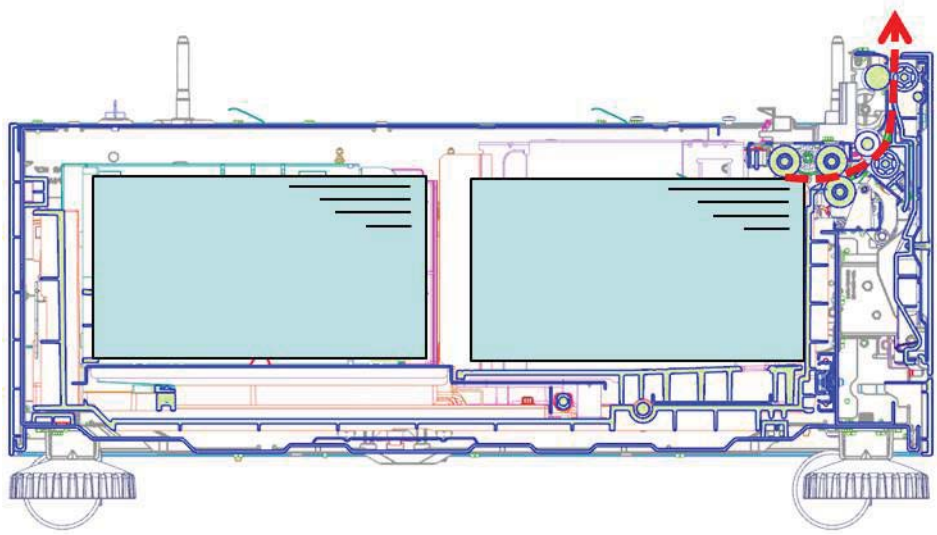
Figure 1-105 Paper feeding system



Tray number	Roller number	Roller name	Function
4	R1	Pickup roller	Transports paper from the paper stack.
4	R2	Feed roller	Transports one sheet of paper to the prefeed roller.
4	R3	Reverse (separation) roller	Makes sure paper is moved one at a time.
4	R4	Prefeed roller	Transports paper to the feed roller.
4	R5	Idle roller	Makes paper transportation smooth.
4	R6	Feed roller	Transports one sheet of paper to the basic machine.
4	R7	Idle roller	Makes paper transportation smooth.

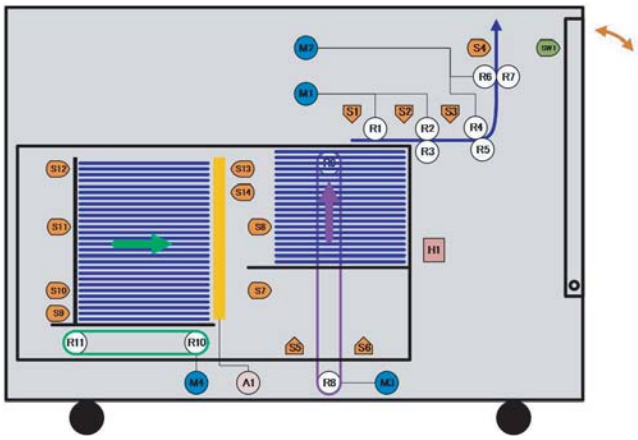
Paper path

Figure 1-106 HCI paper path



Electrical parts locations, descriptions, and functions

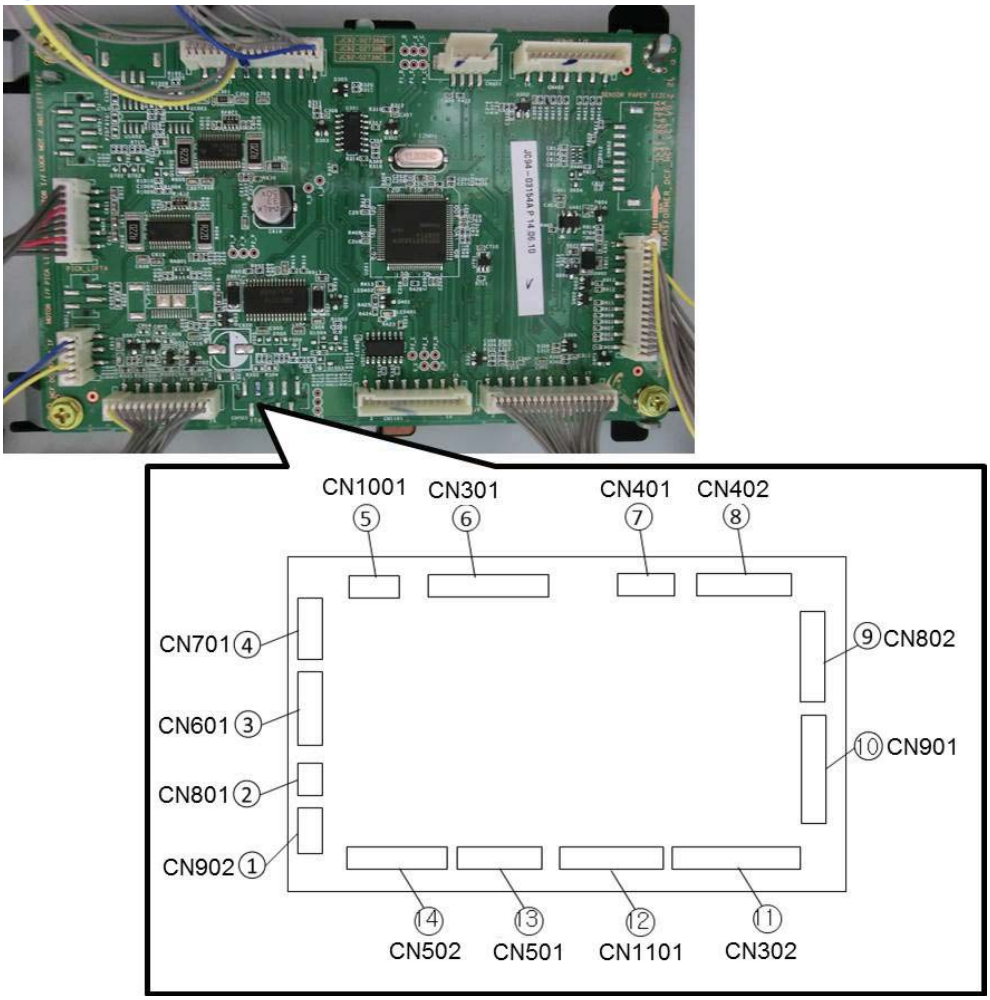
Figure 1-107 Electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions



Tray number	Callouts	Description	Function
3/4	S1	Pickup no paper sensor	Detects paper empty in main tray.
3/4	S2	Pickup level sensor	Detects upper limit of lifting up of main tray.
3/4	S3	Prefeed sensor	Detects paper between R2-R3 and R4-5.
3/4	S4	Path sensor	Detects paper passing through R6-R7.
3/4	S5	Tray insertion sensor	Detects tray insertion.
3/4	S6	Knockup home sensor	Detects home position of knock-plate.
3/4	S7	Main tray level sensor 1	Detects paper residual paper quantity in main tray.
3/4	S8	Main tray level sensor 2	Detects paper residual paper quantity in main tray.
3/4	S9	Shift tray no paper sensor	Detects paper empty in sub tray.
3/4	S10	Shift tray level sensor 1	Detects paper residual quantity in sub tray.
3/4	S11	Shift tray level sensor 2	Detects paper residual quantity in sub tray.
3/4	S12	Shift plate home sensor	Detects home position of shift plate.
3/4	S13	Shift plate end sensor	Detects end position of shift plate.
3/4	S14	Solenoid home sensor	Detects home position of solenoid.
3/4	SW1	Side door open switch	Detects opening of solenoid.
3	M1	Tray pickup motor	
3	M2	Tray feed motor	
3	M3	Tray lift up motor	
3	M4	Paper shift motor	
3	A1	Solenoid	

PCA connection

Figure 1-108 HCI PCA connection



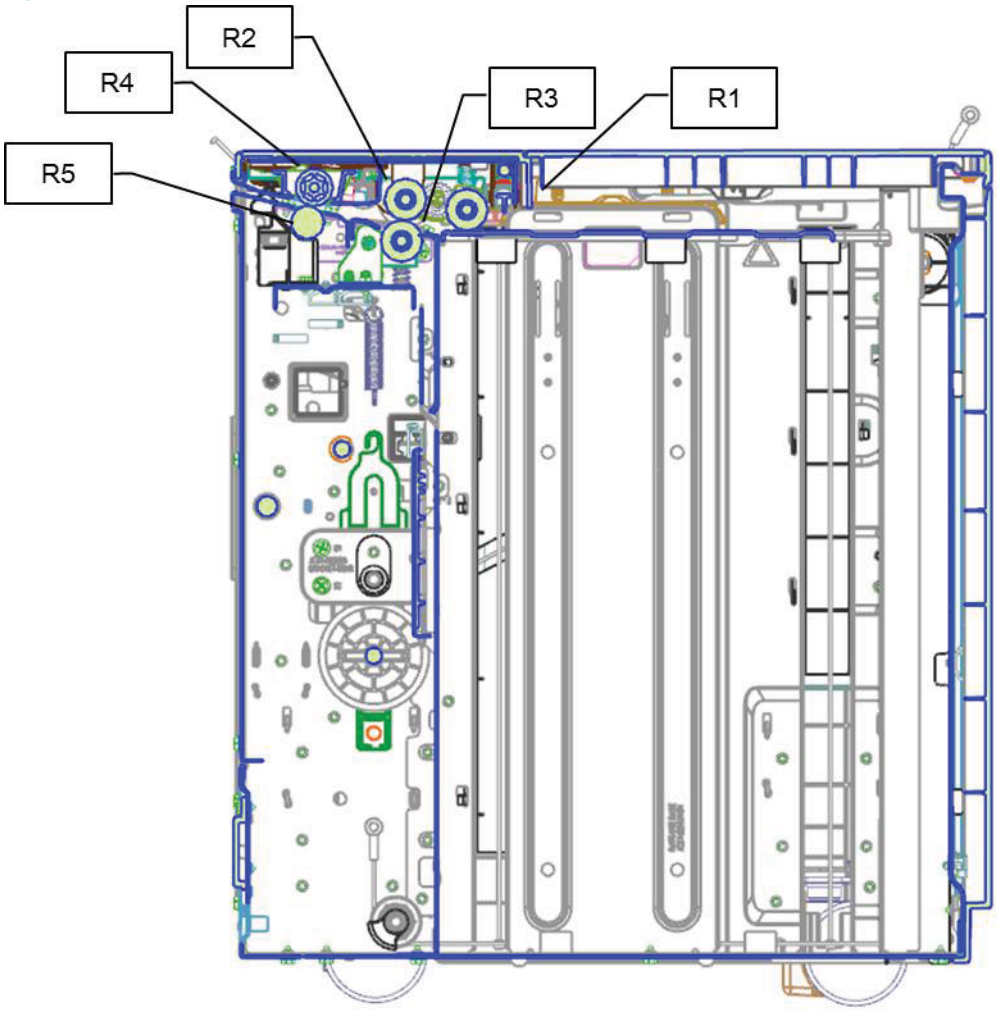
Connector number	Item number	Connection
CN902	1	DC MOTOR I/F
CN601	3	PICK/LIFT3 & FEED MOTOR I/F
CN301	6	MAIN I/F
CN401	7	UART DEBUG I/F
CN402	8	E1 JTAG DEBUG I/F
CN901	10	HCI INNER DRAWER
CN302	11	SUB I/F
CN1101	12	BBP I/F
CN502	14	T3 SENSOR

Side high capacity input tray (sHCI)

Learn the functions and specifications of the side high capacity input tray.

Paper feeding system (rollers and functions)

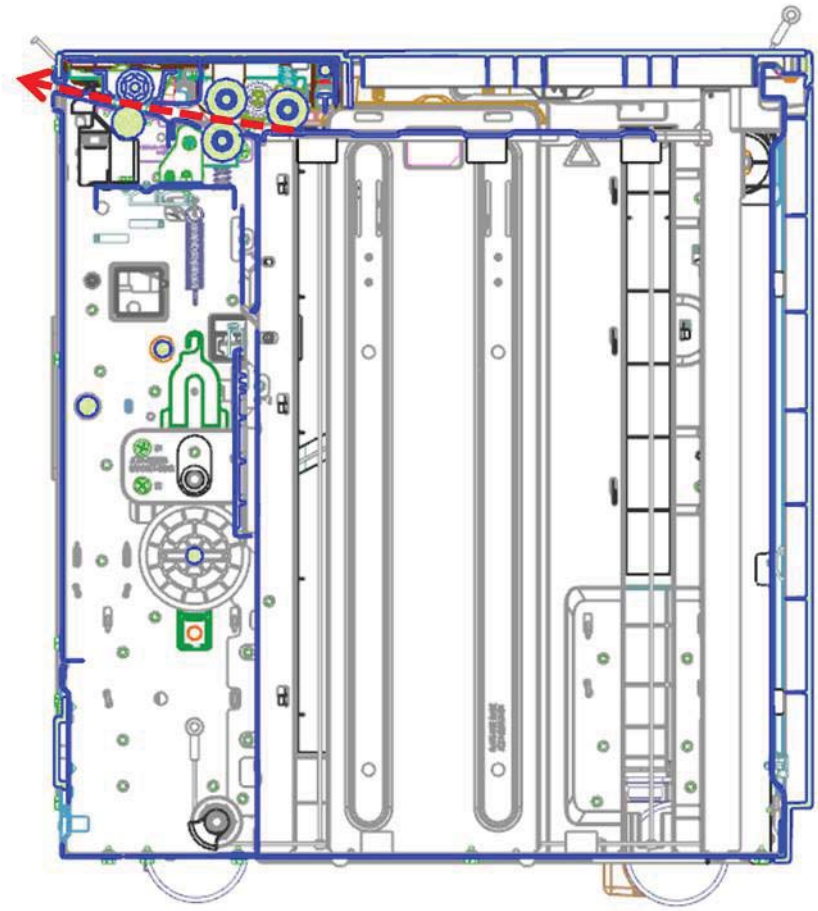
Figure 1-109 Paper feeding system



Roller number	Roller name	Function
R1	Pickup roller	Transports paper from the paper stack.
R2	Feed roller	Transports one sheet of paper to the prefeed roller.
R3	Reverse (separation) roller	Makes sure paper is moved one at a time.
R4	Idle roller	Transports paper to the feed roller.
R5	Feed roller	Makes paper transportation smooth.

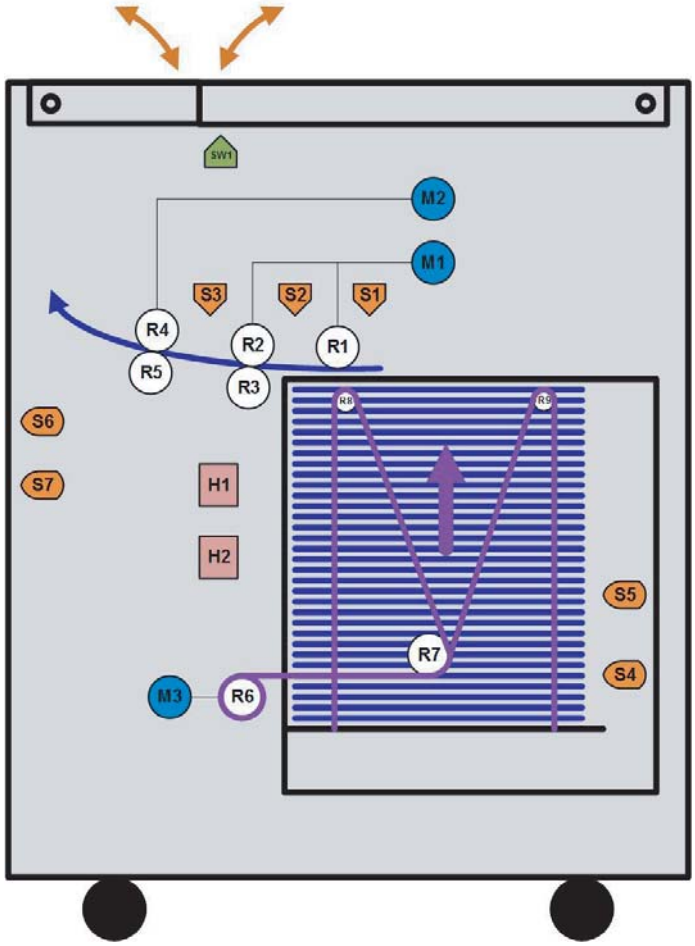
Paper path

Figure 1-110 sHCI paper path



Electrical parts locations, descriptions, and functions

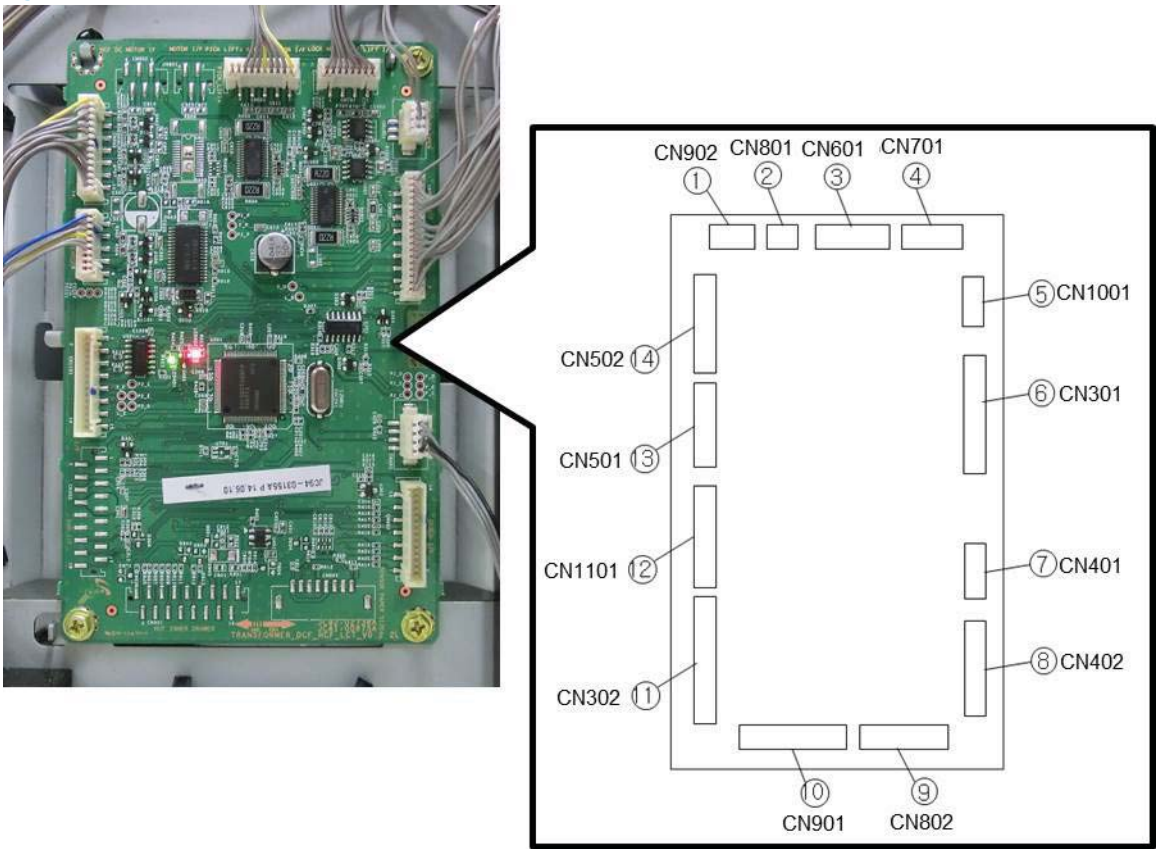
Figure 1-111 sHCI electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions



Callouts	Description	Function
S1	Pickup no paper sensor	Detects paper empty in tray.
S2	Pickup level sensor	Detects upper limit of lifting up of main tray.
S3	Prefeed sensor	Detects paper between R2-R3 and R4-5.
S4	Paper level sensor 1	Detects paper residual paper quantity in tray.
S5	Paper level sensor 2	Detects paper residual paper quantity in tray.
S6	Install sensor 1	Detects installation of SL-sHCI501S to the basic machine.
S7	Install sensor 2	Detects installation of SL-sHCI501S to the basic machine.
SW1	Top door open switch	Detects opening of the top door.
M1	Tray pickup motor	Drives the pickup roller.
M2	Tray feed motor	Drives the feed roller
M3	Tray lift up motor	Lifts up the tray.

PCA connection

Figure 1-112 sHCI PCA connection



Connector number	Item number	Connection
CN601	3	PICK/LIFT3 & FEED MOTOR I/F
CN701	4	LOCKMOT/MOT LIFT/sHCI HOME I/F
CN1001	5	TOPCOVER/OPEN INTERLOCK
CN301	6	MAIN I/F
CN401	7	UART DEBUG I/F
CN402	8	E1 JTAG DEBUG I/F
CN1101	12	BBP I/F
CN501	13	T4 SENSOR
CN502	14	T3 SENSOR

2 Parts, diagrams, removal and replacement

Learn about parts, diagrams, removal and replacement.

HP service and support

Learn about HP access to additional service and support information.

Additional service and support for channel partners

Channel partners go to partner.hp.com, and then use the steps below to access the HP Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE).

Access WISE for Channel partners

1. Select Services & Support (near the top of the screen).
2. Under Services Delivery, select Technical Support.
3. Select Technical Documentation.

Find information about the following topics

- Service manuals
- Service advisories
- Up-to-date control panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for printer issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Install and configure
- Printer specifications
- Warranty and regulatory information

Additional service and support for HP internal personnel

HP internal personnel, go to one of the following Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE) sites:

Americas (AMS)

- WISE - English
- WISE - Spanish
- WISE - Portuguese
- WISE - French

Asia Pacific / Japan (APJ)

- WISE - English
- WISE - Japanese
- WISE - Korean
- WISE - Chinese (simplified)
- WISE - Chinese (traditional)
- WISE - Thai

Europe / Middle East / Africa (EMEA)

- WISE - English

Order parts by authorized service providers

Find information about ordering parts and supplies for the printer.

Ordering

Order parts by authorized service providers.

Table 2-1 Ordering

Item or provider	Description
Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order parts from authorized service providers	www.hp.com/buy/parts or partsurfer.hp.com
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	To access, in a supported web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP SureSupply web site, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies.

Orderable parts

Not all of the parts shown in the exploded assembly diagrams are orderable parts.

Refer to the tables following the diagrams or the alphabetical/numerical parts lists to determine if a part is orderable.

How to use parts lists and diagrams

Learn how to use the parts lists and diagrams.

The figures in this chapter show the major sub-assemblies in the printer and their component parts. A parts list table follows each exploded view assembly diagram. The table lists the item number, the associated part number, and the description of each part. If a part is not listed in the table, then it is not a field replacement unit (FRU).

NOTE: Be sure to order the correct part. When looking for part numbers for electrical parts, pay careful attention to the voltage that is listed in the part description. Doing so will make sure that the selected part number is for the correct printer model.

NOTE: The abbreviation “PCA” stands for “printed circuit-board assembly.” Components described as a PCA might consist of a single circuit board or a circuit board plus other parts, such as cables and sensors.

ESD precautions

Learn the importance of electrostatic discharge.

⚠ CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

Service approach

Learn more about the service approach.

Precautions when replacing parts

Learn about precautions when replacing parts.

Precautions when assembling and disassembling

- Use only HP approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, product name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct. Failure to do so might result in damage to the machine, circuit overload, fire, or electric shock.
- Do not make unauthorized changes or additions to the printer. Unauthorized changes might cause the printer to malfunction and create electric shock or fire hazards.
- Use caution when dismantling the unit. Take note of the location of each screw or other part. This printer contains different kinds of screws. Using the wrong screw might lead to system failure, short circuit or electric shock.
- Do not disassemble the laser scanner assembly. Once the laser scanner assembly is disassembled, dust might enter the mirror chamber and will seriously degrade print quality. There are no serviceable parts inside the laser scanner assembly.
- Regularly check the condition of the power cable, plug and socket. Bad contacts might lead to overheating and fire. Damaged cables might lead to electric shock or unit malfunction.

Precautions when handling PCAs

Static electricity might damage a PCA. Use approved, anti-static precautions when handling or storing a PCA. Service personnel should use grounded ESD straps and/or mats when handling PCAs.

- Precautions when moving and storing a PCA
  - Keep PCA in a conductive case, anti-static bag, or wrapped in aluminum foil.
  - Do not store a PCA where it is exposed to direct sunlight.
- Precautions when replacing a PCA
  - Disconnect power cables before disconnecting other cables.
  - Do not touch any soldered connections, connector terminals, or other electronic parts when handling insulated parts.
- Precautions when checking a PCA
  - Touch a grounded area of the printer chassis to discharge static electric charge before touching a PCA.
  - Do not touch a PCA with bare hands or metal objects. Doing so might create a short circuit or cause electric shock. Use caution when handling a PCA with moving parts such as sensors, motors, or lamps, as they might become very hot.

- Use caution when fitting and removing screws. Watch for hidden screens. Make sure that the correct screw is used and make sure that when toothed washers are removed, they are refitted in their original positions.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Releasing plastic latches

Many of the parts are held in place with plastic latches. The latches might easily break. Be careful when releasing them . To remove such parts, press the hook end of the latch away from the part to which it is latched.

Before performing service

Learn what to do before performing service.

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- Unplug the power cable and interface cable or cables.
- Remove any finishing devices and the side HCI, if they are installed.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.
- Remove the toner cartridges, if needed.

After performing service

Learn what to do after performing service.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post-service test

Perform the following tests to verify that the repair or replacement was successful:

Print-quality test

Learn about the print-quality test.

1. Verify that you have completed the necessary reassembly steps.
2. Make sure that the tray contains clean, unmarked paper.
3. Attach the power cord and interface cable or interface cables, and then turn on the product.
4. Print a configuration page.
5. Print a print quality page, and then verify that there are no lines, streaks, banding, or other print quality defects.
6. Send a print job from the host computer, and then verify that the output meets expectations.

Copy-quality test

Learn about the copy-quality test.

1. Place the configuration page in the document feeder, print a copy job, and then verify the results.
2. Place the configuration page on the flatbed glass, print a copy job, and then verify the results

Fax-quality test

Learn about the fax-quality test.

1. Place the configuration page in the document feeder.
2. Type a valid fax number, and send the fax job.
3. Verify that the send quality and the receive quality meet expectations.

Parts removal order

For procedures and/or steps that require identifying the right, left, or rear side of the printer, face the front of the printer for correct orientation.

Maintenance (printer cleaning)

Learn about printer cleaning for maintenance.

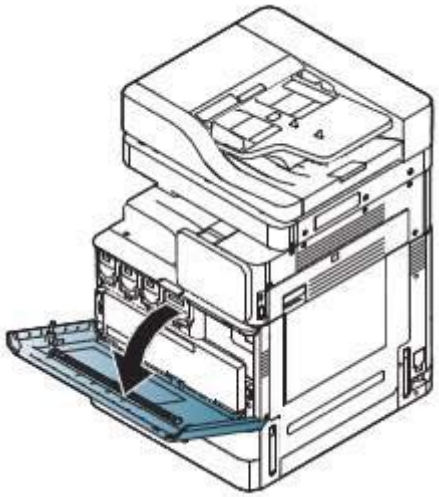
Cleaning the paper dust stick

Learn about cleaning the paper dust stick.

The paper dust stick needs to be cleaned after a specified number of pages are printed. A clean the paper dust stick message will appear. This is when the paper dust stick must be cleaned. Use the following procedure to complete this task.

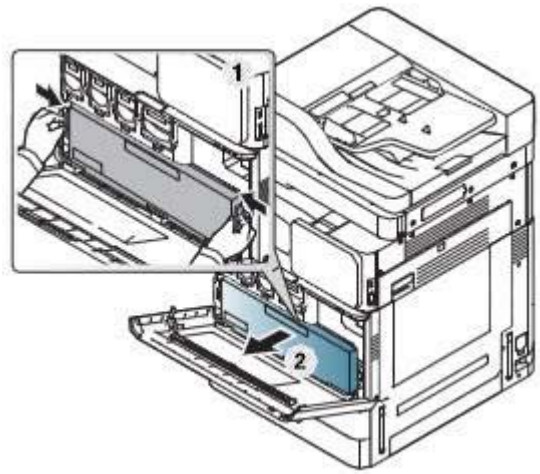
1. Open the front door.

   Figure 2-1 Open the front door

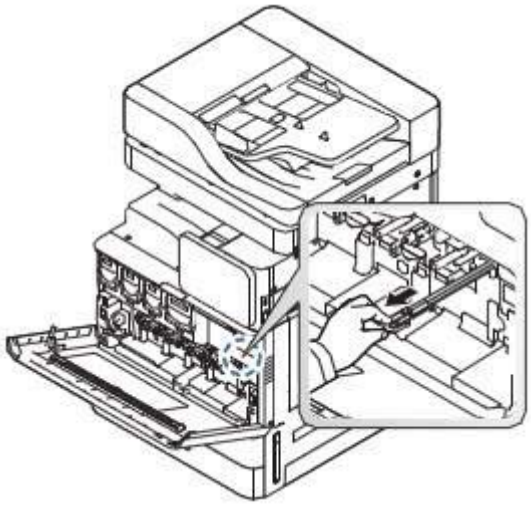
2. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

   Figure 2-2 Remove the TCU

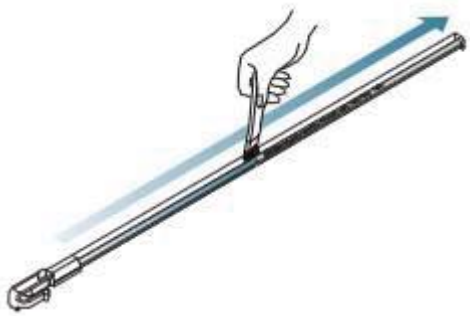
3. Pull out the paper dust stick.

Figure 2-3 Remove paper dust stick



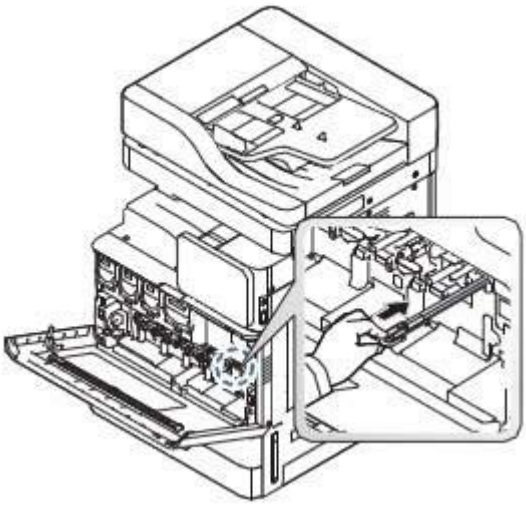
4. Remove the paper dust.

Figure 2-4 Remove the paper dust



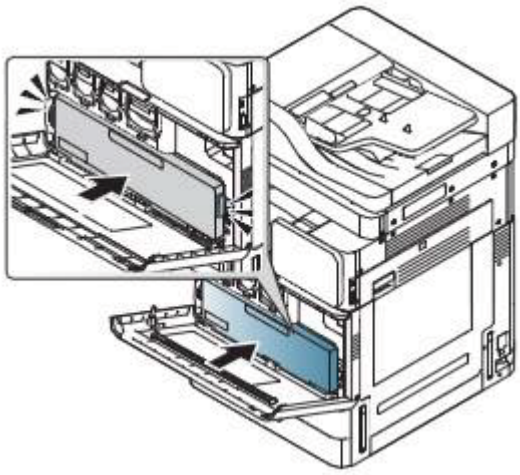
5. Insert the paper dust stick back into the slot.

Figure 2-5 Install the paper dust stick



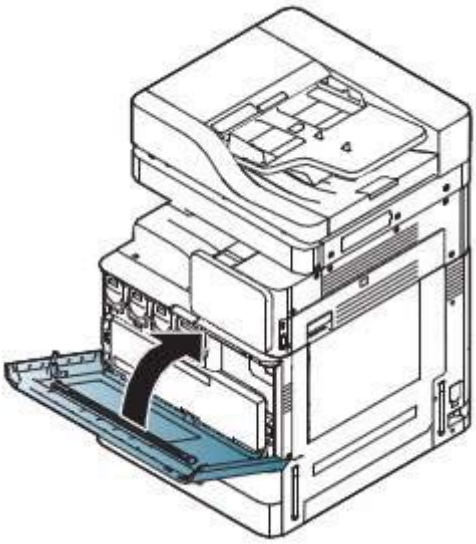
6. Insert the toner collection unit (TCU) until it locks in place on each side.

Figure 2-6 Install the TCU



7. Close the front door. Make sure the cover is securely closed. If the message still appears, repeat Steps 3 and 4.

Figure 2-7 Close the front door



Cleaning the document feeder white bar and CIS (LX)

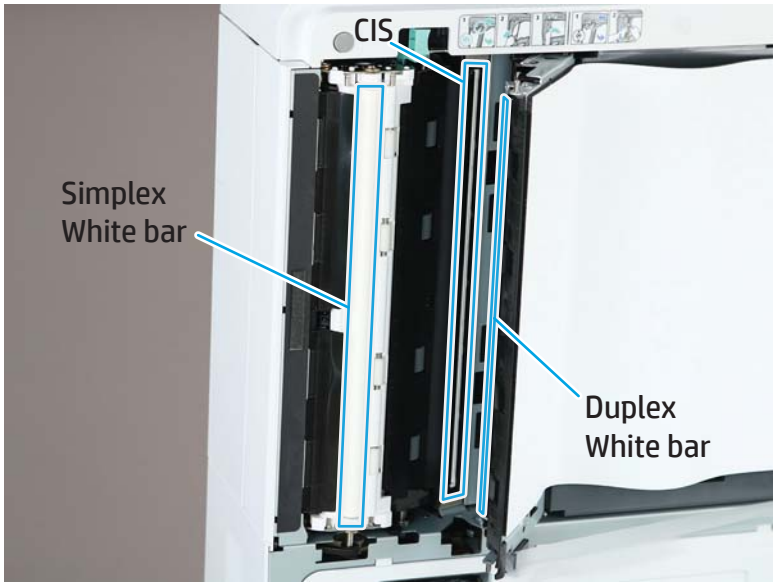
Learn about cleaning the document feeder white bar and CIS (LX).

1. Open the document feeder unit.

Figure 2-8 Open document feeder unit

2. Clean the document feeder white bar and CIS using a lint-free cloth.

Figure 2-9 Clean document feeder white bar

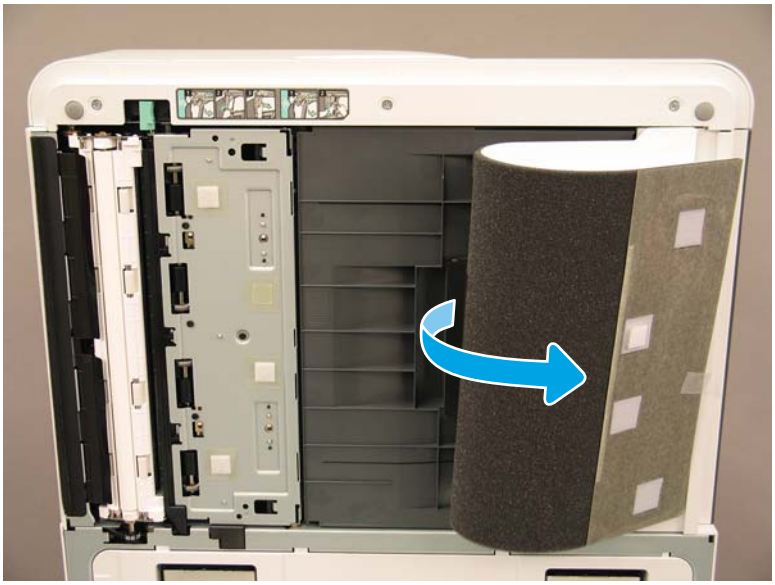


Cleaning the flow document feeder white bar and CIS (GX)

Learn about cleaning the flow document feeder white bar and CIS (GX).

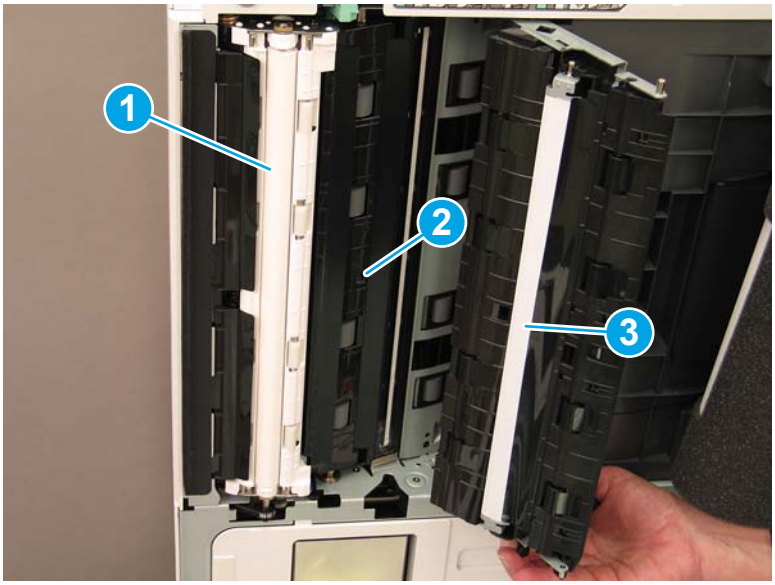
1. Open the document feeder, peel back the white backing , and then release the green tab.

Figure 2-10 Peel back the white backing and release one tab



2. Open the access door. Clean the simplex white bar (callout 1), the CIS (callout 2), and the duplex white bar (callout 3) using a soft, lint-free, clean cloth.

Figure 2-11 Clean flow document feeder white bar

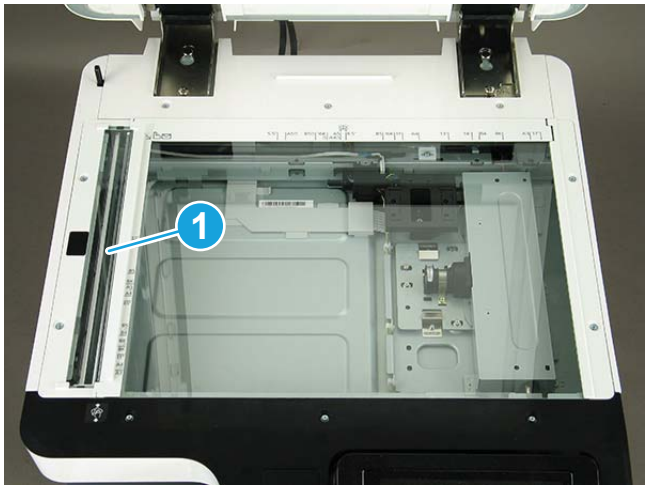


Cleaning the scanner glass

Learn about cleaning the scan glass.

- Open the document feeder. Clean the scanner glass (callout 1) using a soft, lint-free, clean cloth.

Figure 2-12 Clean the scanner glass



Main parts

Learn about the printer main parts.

Main assemblies

View the main assemblies exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Main assembly

Parts diagram and parts list for the main assembly.

Figure 2-13 Main assembly

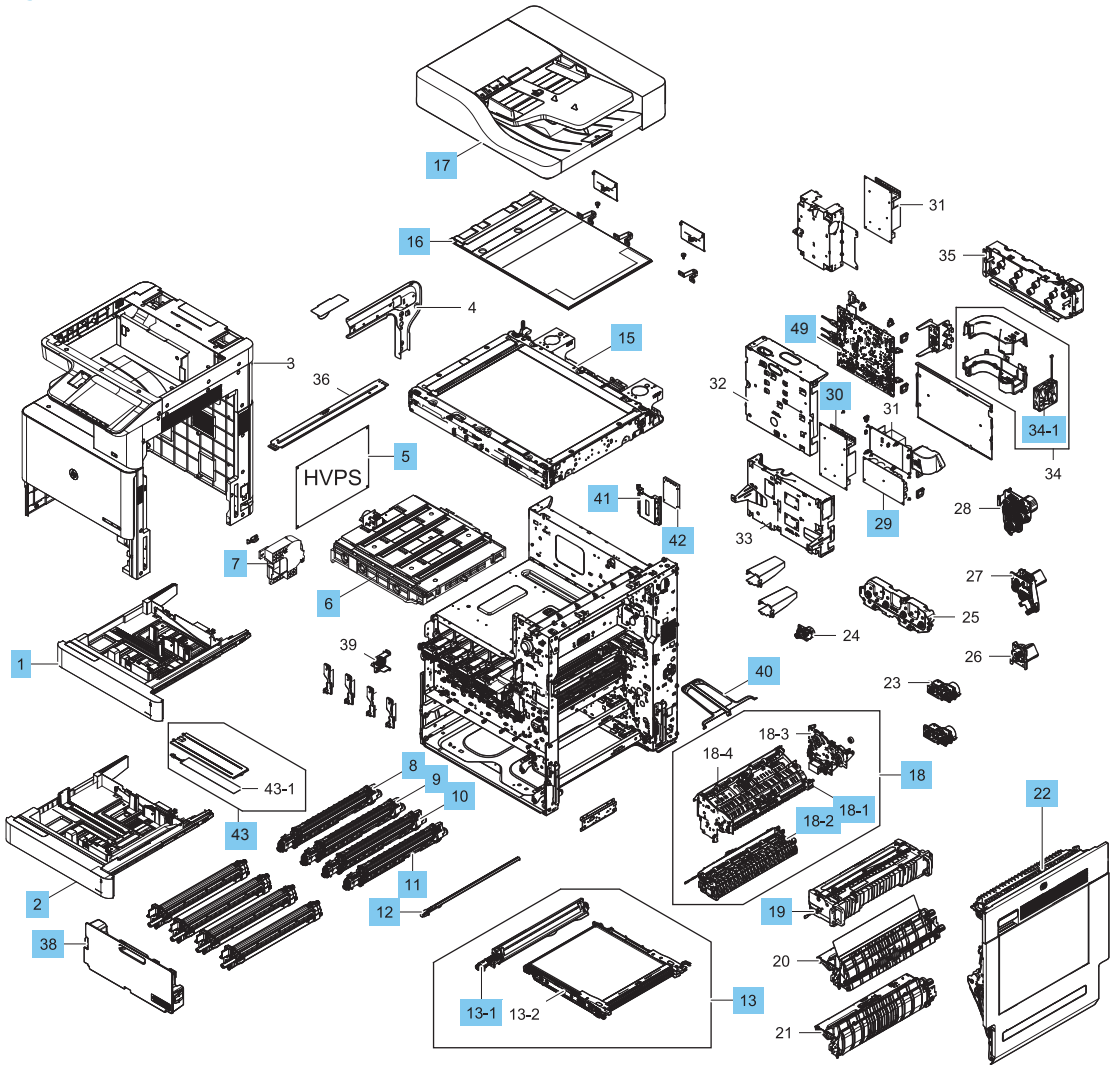


Table 2-2 Main assembly

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1	JC90-01610A	Cassette tray 2	1	Not applicable
2	JC90-01611A	Cassette tray 3	1	Not applicable
5	JC44-00240B	HVPS 24V	1	Removal and replacement: High voltage power supply (HVPS) board on page 173
6	JC97-04863A	Laser scanner unit	1	Removal and replacement: Laser scanner assembly on page 177
7	JC93-01414A	Fan type 8	2	Removal and replacement: Laser scanner fan assembly on page 183
8	JC96-11639A	HP LaserJet yellow developer unit	1	Removal and replacement: Developer unit on page 186
9	JC96-11640A	HP LaserJet magenta developer unit	1	Removal and replacement: Developer unit on page 186
10	JC96-11641A	HP LaserJet cyan developer unit	1	Removal and replacement: Developer unit on page 186
11	JC96-11642A	HP LaserJet blk developer unit	1	Removal and replacement: Developer unit on page 186
12	JC93-01026B	Paper dust brush	1	Removal and replacement: Paper dust brush on page 192
13	JC98-05425A	Image transfer belt assembly	1	Removal and replacement: Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) unit on page 200
13-1	JC93-01377A	ITB cleaner blade	1	Removal and replacement: Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) cleaner on page 196
15	JC97-04907A	Image scanner assembly (flat bed)	1	Removal and replacement: Image scanner assembly (flatbed) on page 207
16	JC63-05410A	White backing (LX)	1	Removal and replacement: ADF white backing (LX) on page 221
16	JC63-05795A	White backing (GX)	1	Removal and replacement: ADF white backing (GX) on page 224
17	JC97-05074A	ADF LX whole unit	1	Removal and replacement: ADF whole unit (LX) on page 710
17	JC97-04955A	Flow ADF-GX	1	Not applicable
17	JC97-04956A	Non-Flow ADF-sGX	1	Not applicable
18	JC90-01369A	Exit assembly	1	Removal and replacement: Exit unit on page 232
18-1	C90-01374A	Exit assembly, second	1	Not applicable
18-2	JC90-01370A	Exit assembly, first	1	Not applicable

Table 2-2 Main assembly (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
19	JC82-00483A	220V fuser assembly	1	Removal and replacement: Fuser unit on page 241
19	JC82-00477A	110V fuser assembly	1	Removal and replacement: Fuser unit on page 241
22	JC95-02092A	Right door assembly	1	Removal and replacement: Right door on page 227
29	JC44-00236B	Fuser drive board, 220V	1	Removal and replacement: Fuser drive board on page 244
29	JC44-00235B	Fuser drive board, 110V	1	Removal and replacement: Fuser drive board on page 244
30	JC44-00250A	LVPS 220V Type 5H	1	Removal and replacement: Low voltage power supply (LVPS) type 5H on page 248
30	JC44-00249A	LVPS 110V Type 5H	1	Removal and replacement: Low voltage power supply (LVPS) type 5H on page 248
34-1	JC31-00161A	Fan type 7	1	Removal and replacement: Fuser fan on page 252
38	X3A92-67926	Toner collection unit	1	Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU) on page 170
40	JC61-07088A	Return guide	1	Not applicable
41	JC93-01239B	HDD bracket	1	Not applicable
42	5851-6712	HDD 320GB - Main PCA HDD	1	Removal and replacement: Internal hard disk drive (HDD) on page 258
43	Y1G22-67901	Tray Heater (110v)	1	Not applicable
43	Y1G22-67902	Tray Heater (220v)	1	Not applicable
49	JC82-00543A	PCA-Main Board w/heat sink	1	Removal and replacement: Main board on page 262
49	5CM63-67001	PCA-Main Board w/heat sink (du only)	1	Removal and replacement: Main board on page 262
Not shown	B5L47-60101	Pulsar Control Panel	1	Removal and replacement: Control panel on page 293
Not shown	X3A92-60003	Formatter (du models)	1	Removal and replacement: Formatter (du models) on page 284
Not shown	X3A92-60001	Formatter	1	Removal and replacement: Formatter on page 288
Not shown	X3A62-60001	Accelerator PCA - Toast (GX ADF only)	1	Removal and replacement: Accelerator board (GX ADF only) on page 269

Table 2-2 Main assembly (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
Not shown	JC92-02971A	Island of Data board (du models)	1	Removal and replacement: Island of data (IOD; du models) on page 272
Not shown	JC92-02971A	Island of Data board	1	Removal and replacement: Island of data (IOD) on page 275
Not shown	5851-6712	Formatter HDD (du models)	1	Removal and replacement: Formatter hard disk drive (HDD; du models) on page 278
Not shown	5851-6712	Formatter HDD	1	Removal and replacement: Formatter hard disk drive (HDD) on page 281
Not shown	B5L47-60102	US English Keyboard Assy	1	Removal and replacement: Keyboard (z bundles) on page 297
Not shown	B5L47-60103	UK English Keyboard Assy	1	Removal and replacement: Keyboard (z bundles) on page 297
Not shown	X3A92-67905	HP LaserJet Black Imaging Drum Unit	1	Removal and replacement: Imaging drum unit on page 302
Not shown	X3A92-67906	HP LaserJet CMY Imaging Drum Unit	1	Removal and replacement: Imaging drum unit on page 302
Not shown	B5L31-67902	Foreign interface harness	1	Install accessory: HP Foreign interface harness (FIH) solution on page 305
Not shown	J8030-61001	Jetdirect Wireless Print Server with NFC Kit	1	Removal and replacement: NFC Kit Installation on page 307
Not shown	JC92-02969A	PCA, front power switch	1	Removal and replacement: Front power switch on page 315
Not shown	JC31-00161A	Low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans (Type 7)	1	Removal and replacement: Low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans on page 319
Not shown	JC44-00091D	LVPS 110V Type 4	1	Removal and replacement: Low voltage power supply (LVPS) Type 4 on page 323
Not shown	JC44-00092D	LVPS 220V Type 4	1	Removal and replacement: Low voltage power supply (LVPS) Type 4 on page 323
Not shown	JC39-02187A	Lower tray connector	1	Removal and replacement: Lower tray connector on page 327
Not shown	JC31-00130A	Developer fan	1	Removal and replacement: Developer fan on page 331
Not shown	JC90-01401B	Finisher sub-bridge unit	1	Removal and replacement: Bridge unit on page 336
Not shown	JC27-00012A	Inductor unit 110V	1	Removal and replacement: Inductor unit on page 339

Table 2-2 Main assembly (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
Not shown	JC27-00009A	Inductor unit 220V	1	Removal and replacement: Inductor unit on page 339
Not shown	JC93-01467A	Switch Assy - Right Door	1	Removal and replacement: Right door switch assembly on page 343
Not shown	JC93-01063C	Drive, pickup	1	Removal and replacement: Pickup drive unit 1 (Tray 2) on page 350
Not shown	JC93-00492A	TCU sensor	1	Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU) sensors on page 354
Not shown	JC93-01277A	Assy- Engine Side Crum Connector	1	Removal and replacement: CRUM connector on page 361
Not shown	0604-001393	Duplex 1 sensor (photo interrupter)	1	Removal and replacement: Duplex 1 sensor (on the exit unit) on page 368
Not shown	0604-001393	Exit 1 bin full sensor (photo interrupter)	1	Removal and replacement: Exit 1 bin full sensor (on the exit unit) on page 377
Not shown	0604-001381	Prefeed sensor 2 (pickup unit 2)	1	Removal and replacement: Prefeed sensor 2 (pickup unit 2) on page 388
Not shown	0604-001490	Prefeed sensor 1 (pickup unit 1)	1	Removal and replacement: Prefeed sensor 1 (pickup unit 1) on page 395
Not shown	JC39-02253A	FFC cable, laser scanner unit	1	Not applicable
Not shown	JC39-01202A	Cable, SATA main HDD	1	Not applicable
Not shown	JC39-01943A	Cable, PWR main HDD	1	Not applicable
Not shown	JC31-00154A	Fan-type 3 24V LVPS/FDB	1	Not applicable
Not shown	X3A92-60003	Formatter PCA-Obsidian Blue Angel	1	Not applicable
Not shown	X3A62-60002	Accelerator PCA-toast Blue Angel	1	Not applicable
Not shown	JC39-02194A	Wiring harness (output device)	1	Not applicable
Not shown	JC39-02252A	HVPS FFC cable	1	Not applicable

Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU)

Learn how to remove and replace the toner collection unit (TCU).

View a video of how to remove and replace the TCU.

Mean time to repair: 1 minute

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-3 Part information

Part number	Part description
X3A92-67926	HP Managed LJ Toner Collection Unit

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-14 Remove the TCU

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: High voltage power supply (HVPS) board

Learn how to remove and replace the high voltage power supply (HVPS) board.

View a video of how to remove and replace the HVPS.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-4 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC44-00240B	HVPS 24V

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the left cover

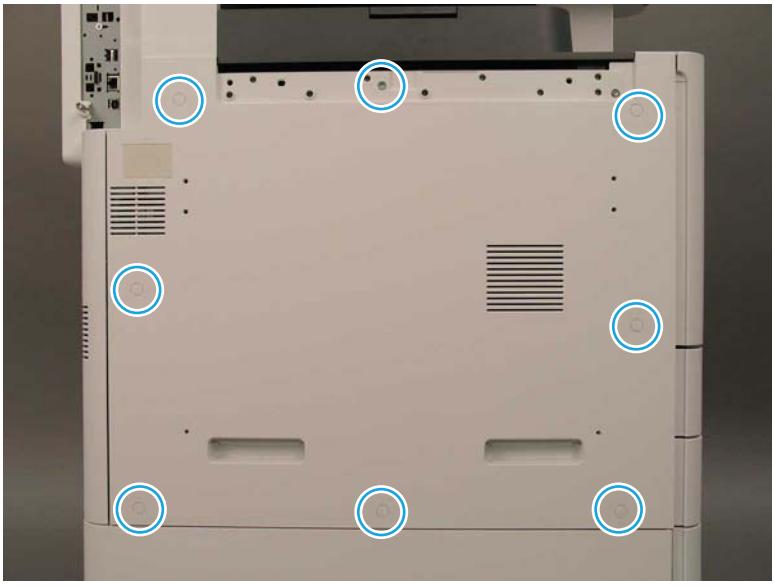
Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

1. Remove the top left cover.

Figure 2-15 Top left cover

2. Remove seven screw-caps and eight screws, and lift the left cover off of the printer.

Figure 2-16 Remove the left cover

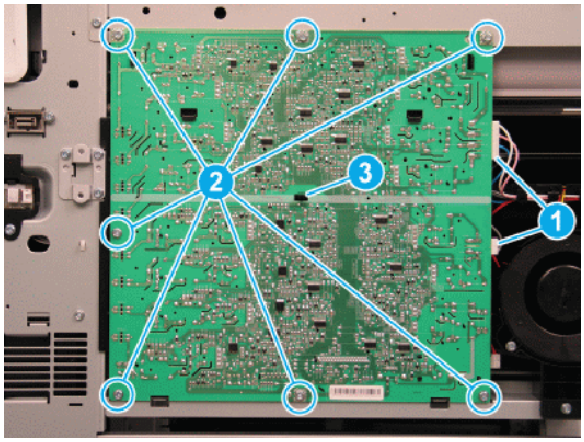


Remove the HVPS

Follow these steps to remove the HVPS.

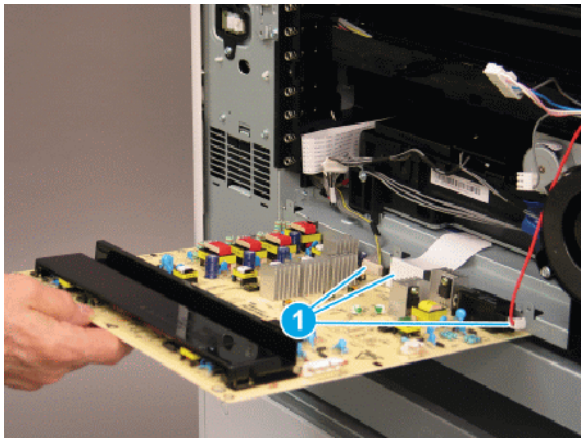
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove seven screws (callout 2), and then release one retainer in the center of the board (callout 3).

Figure 2-17 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



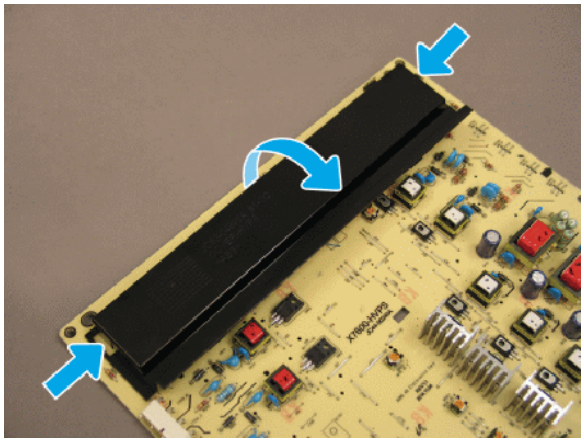
2. Tilt the board away from the printer, and then disconnect three connectors (callout 1).

Figure 2-18 Disconnect three connectors



3. If you are replacing the HVPS board, release two tabs and rotate the cover off of the board. Attach the cover to the replacement part before installing.

Figure 2-19 Remove the HVPS cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Laser scanner assembly

Learn how to remove and replace the laser scanner assembly.

View a video of how to remove and replace the laser scanner assembly.

Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Advanced

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-5 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-04863A	Laser Scanner Unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the left cover

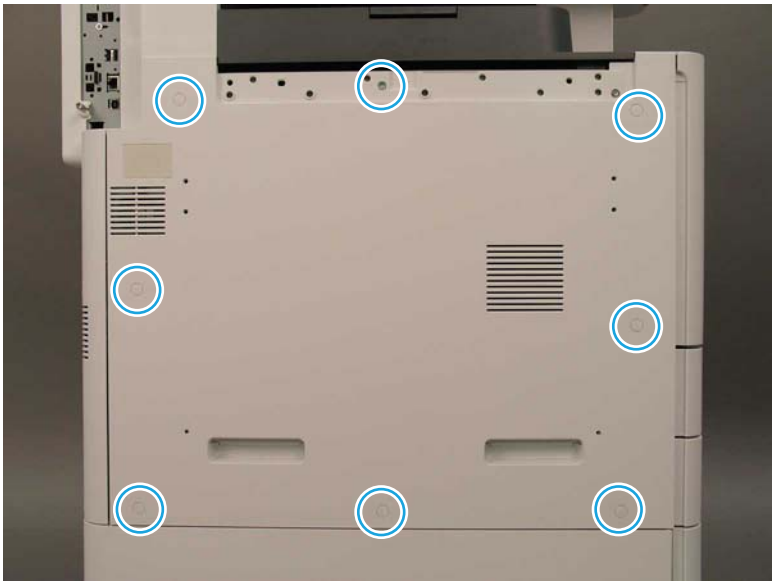
Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

1. Remove the top left cover.

Figure 2-20 Top left cover

2. Remove seven screw-caps and eight screws, and lift the left cover off of the printer.

Figure 2-21 Remove the left cover

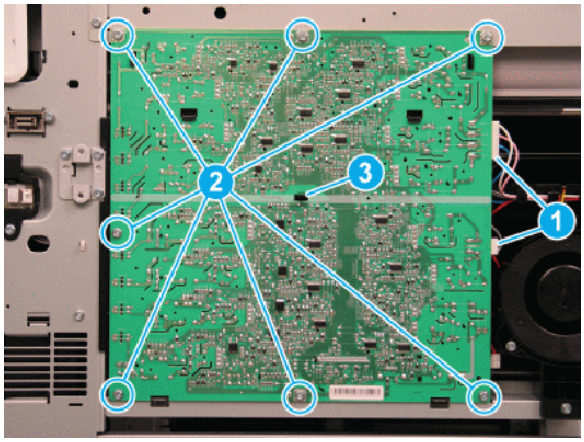


Remove the high voltage power supply (HVPS) board

Follow these steps to remove the high voltage power supply (HVPS) board.

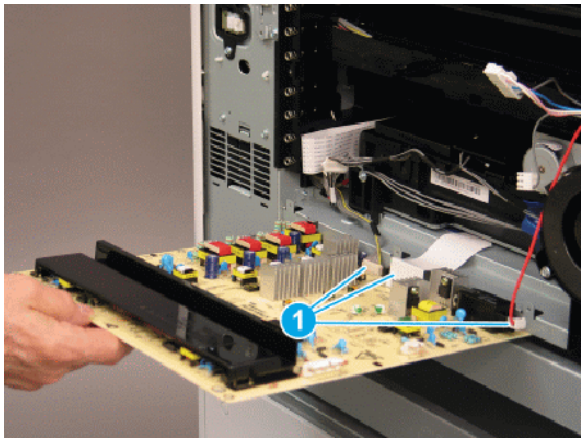
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove seven screws (callout 2), and then release one retainer in the center of the board (callout 3).

Figure 2-22 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Tilt the board away from the printer, and then disconnect three connectors (callout 1).

Figure 2-23 Disconnect three connectors

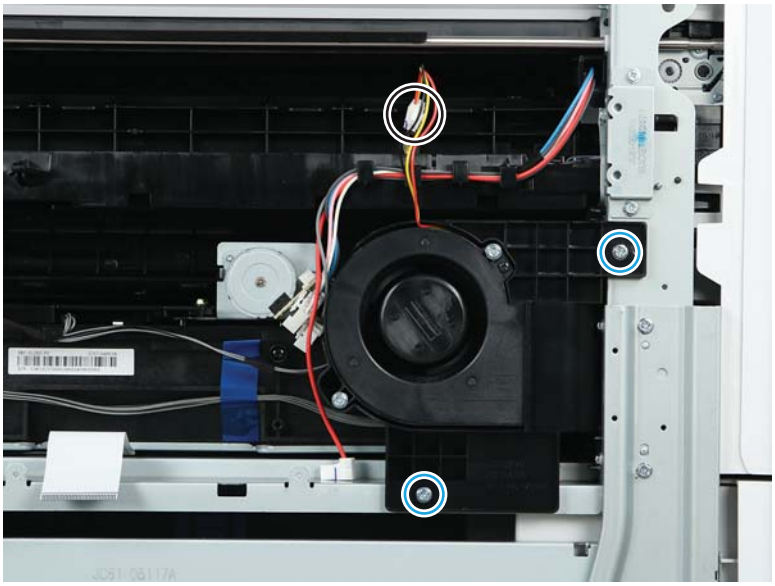


Remove the laser scanner assembly

Follow these steps to remove the laser scanner assembly.

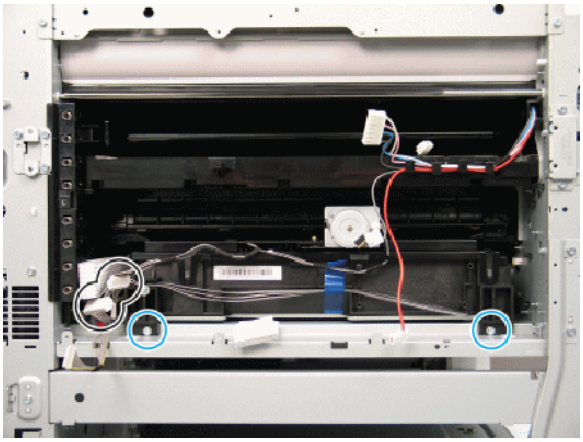
1. To remove the laser scanner fan and holder, disconnect one connector, and then remove two screws on the fan holder.

Figure 2-24 Remove the laser scanner fan and holder



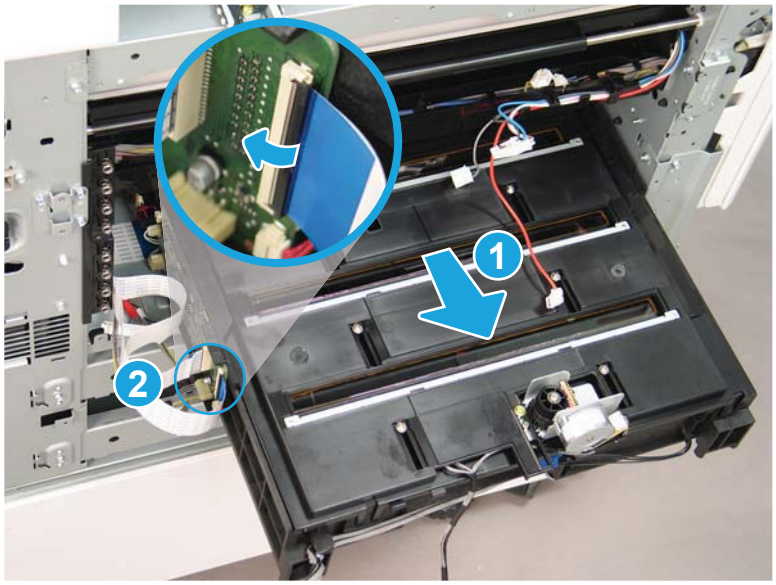
2. Remove two screws, and then disconnect two in-line connectors on the left.

Figure 2-25 Remove two screws and disconnect two connectors



3. Slide the laser scanner partially out of the printer (callout 1), and then disconnect two flat cables and one connector on the left. One of the flat cable connectors is a zero insertion force (ZIF) connector. Open the latch on the connector before removing the flat cable. After disconnecting the connectors, remove the laser scanner assembly from the printer.

Figure 2-26 Laser scanner assembly



TIP: Align the locator pin on the back of the assembly with the opening in the printer sheet metal frame to guide the assembly into place. The screw holes on the front of the assembly will line up with the screw holes in the sheet metal when the assembly is correctly installed.

When reinstalling the laser scanner assembly, make sure that the flat cable that routes over the top of the assembly does not become trapped under the assembly.

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Laser scanner fan assembly

Learn how to remove and replace the laser scanner assembly fan.

View a video of how to remove and replace the laser scanner assembly fan.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-6 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01414A	Fan Type 8

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the left cover

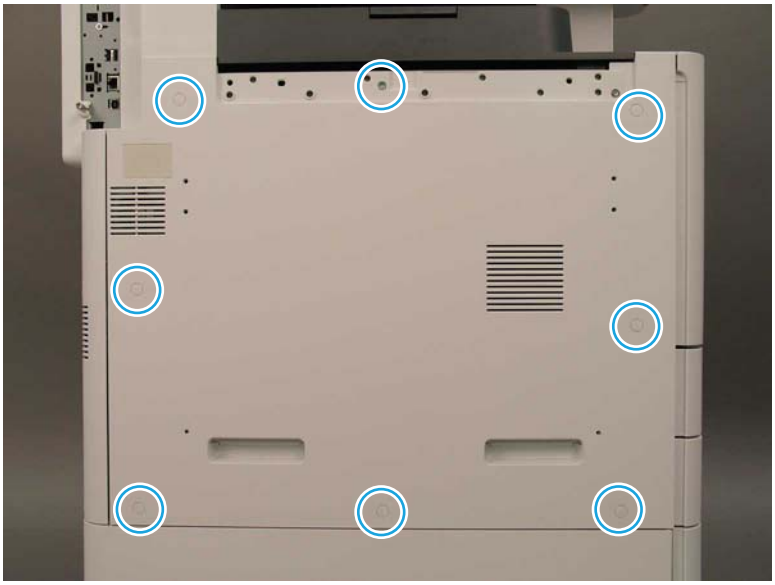
Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

1. Remove the top left cover.

Figure 2-27 Top left cover

2. Remove seven screw-caps and eight screws, and lift the left cover off of the printer.

Figure 2-28 Remove the left cover

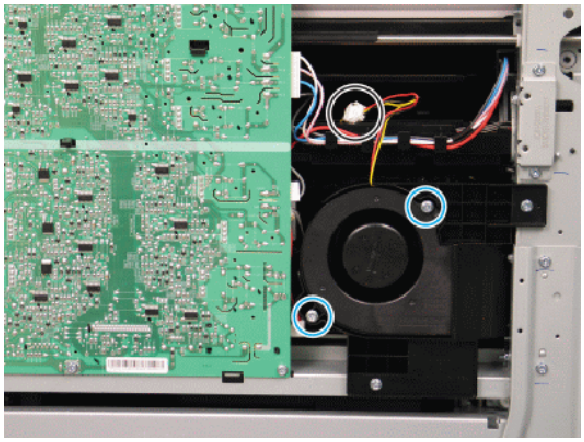


Remove the laser scanner assembly fan

Follow these steps to remove the laser scanner assembly fan.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the laser scanner assembly fan.

Figure 2-29 Remove the laser scanner assembly fan



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Developer unit

Learn how to remove and replace the developer unit.

View a video of how to remove and replace the developer unit.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-7 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC96-11642A	HP LaserJet Blk Developer Unit
JC96-11641A	HP LaserJet Cyan Developer Unit
JC96-11640A	HP LaserJet Magenta Developer Unit
JC96-11639A	HP LaserJet Yellow Developer Unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.

- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the developer unit

Follow these steps to remove the developer unit.

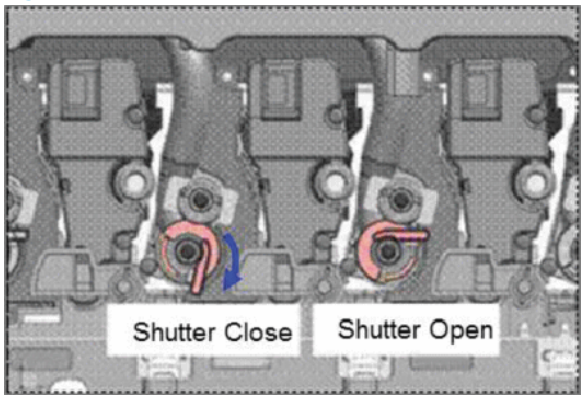
IMPORTANT: Update the firmware to the latest version before replacing the developer unit.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)
2. Remove the drum unit to the right of the developer to be replaced..

TIP: Also remove the adjacent drum unit to allow better access to the toner supply pipe.

3. Rotate the reservoir shutter lever down to ensure it is closed..

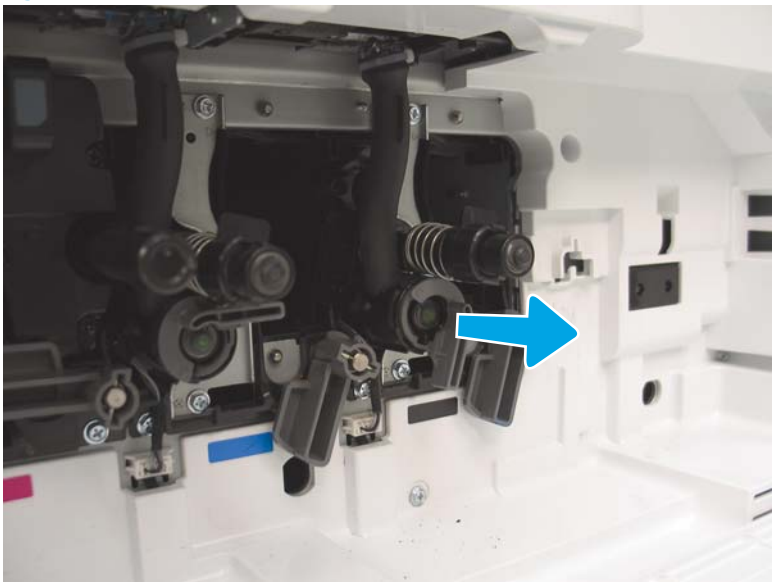
Figure 2-30 Shutter open/close



4. Release the valve from the developer by rotating the valve side-to-side while pulling it firmly away from the printer.

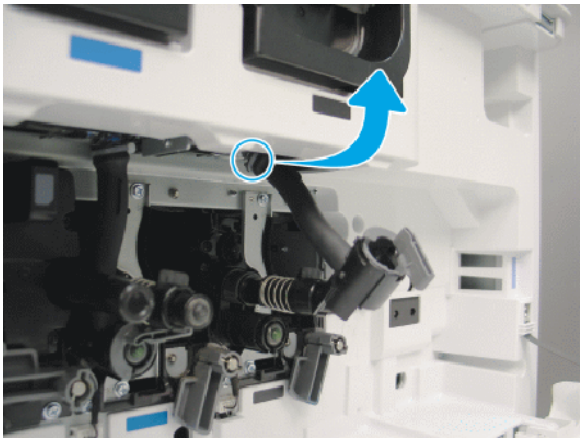
TIP: Make sure that the valve is fully installed on the developer before rotating it to the open position.

Figure 2-31 Release the toner collection valve



5. Reach to the top of the toner supply pipe, and then rotate it up.

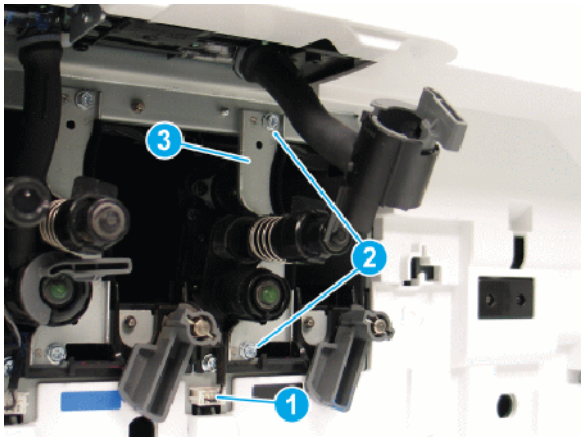
Figure 2-32 Tilt toner supply pipe up



6. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the metal bracket (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the bracket when reinstalling it.

Figure 2-33 Remove the metal bracket

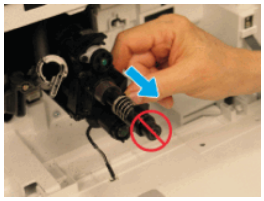


Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the bottom of the bracket first.

7. Hold the grip point of the developer unit and slide it away from the printer to remove it.

NOTE: Do not grip the toner collection unit connection when removing the developer unit.

Figure 2-34 Developer unit removal



TIP: Hold the toner supply pipe up and out of the way when reinstalling the developer unit.

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions (Developer unit)

Also use the following **special installation instructions**.

1. **Fill the empty replacement developer unit with developer powder prior to installation.**

IMPORTANT: During filling, place the developer unit on sheets of paper or a disposable cover to catch any spilled developer powder.

a. Unpack the developer unit and silver packet of developer powder from the kit box.

b. Open the developer unit cover.

CAUTION: Do not touch the silver roller.

c. Carefully open the developer packet, and then distribute the developer powder evenly into the developer unit.

IMPORTANT: Before opening the packet, shake it three or four times. This prevents the developer powder from scattering.

d. Close the developer unit cover.

e. Install the developer unit in the printer.

2. **Reset the firmware counter and initialize the toner concentration.**

IMPORTANT: The front door must be open at the beginning of this procedure. Do not close the door until instructed.

a. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.

b. Select the Service menu.

c. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the service access code.

d. Select the Service Tools menu.

e. On the Information tab, select the Supply Status menu.

f. Select Field Replacement Unit.

g. Select Development Unit (Developer) (CMYK).

h. Select the check box on the right side of the screen for the replaced developer unit.

i. Select Reset, to clear the counter and begin the toner concentration initialization.

j. Close the front door, wait for the toner concentration initialization process to complete, and then exit service mode (touch the Home button).

Removal and replacement: Paper dust brush

Learn how to remove and replace the paper dust brush.

View a video of how to remove and replace the paper dust brush.

Mean time to repair: 1 minute

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-8 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01026B	Paper dust brush

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the toner collection unit

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit.

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-35 Remove the TCU

Remove the paper dust brush

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) cleaner

Learn how to remove and replace the ITB cleaner blade.

View a video of how to remove and replace the ITB cleaner blade.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-9 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01377A	ITB cleaner blade

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the toner collection unit

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit.

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-36 Remove the TCU

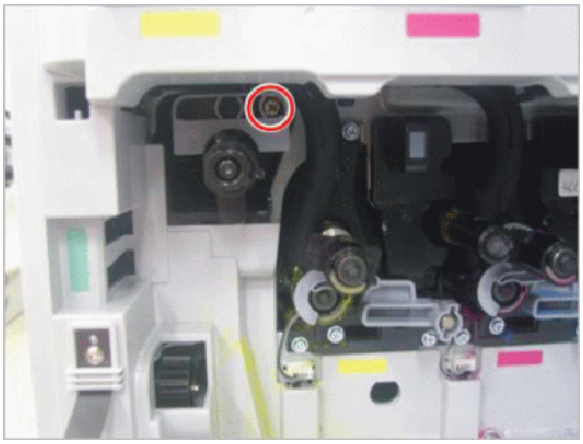
Remove the ITB cleaner

Follow these steps to remove the ITB cleaner.

1. Loosen the screw securing the ITB cleaner.

NOTE: The screw is captive and cannot be completely removed.

Figure 2-37 ITB screw location

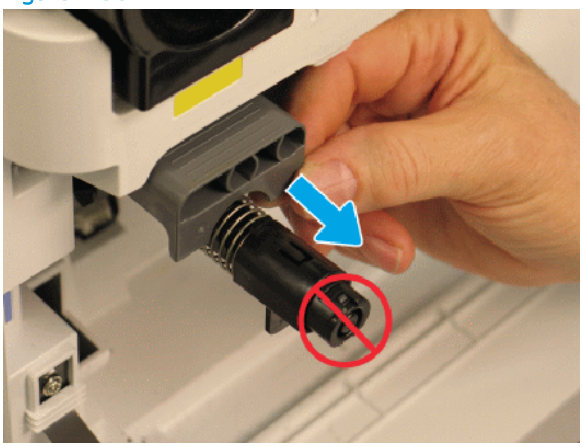


2. Grasp the ITB cleaner housing, and pull it out of the printer.

CAUTION: Do not grasp the waste toner connector.

Use care when removing the ITB cleaner as loose toner might be present on the metal shelf along the side of the cleaner.

Figure 2-38 ITB cleaner removal



3. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: ITB cleaner

After the replacement cleaner is installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:

Removal and replacement: Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) unit

Learn how to remove and replace the intermediate transfer belt (ITB) unit.

View a video of how to remove and replace the ITB.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-10 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC98-05425A	HP Laserjet Image Transfer Belt Assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-39 Remove the TCU

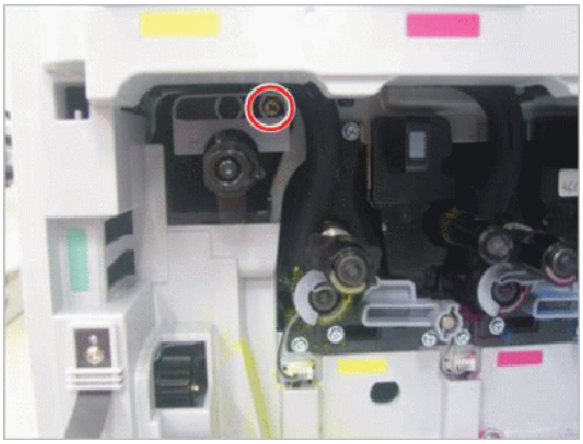
Remove the ITB cleaner

Follow these steps to remove the ITB cleaner.

1. Loosen the screw securing the ITB cleaner.

NOTE: The screw is captive and cannot be completely removed.

Figure 2-40 ITB screw location

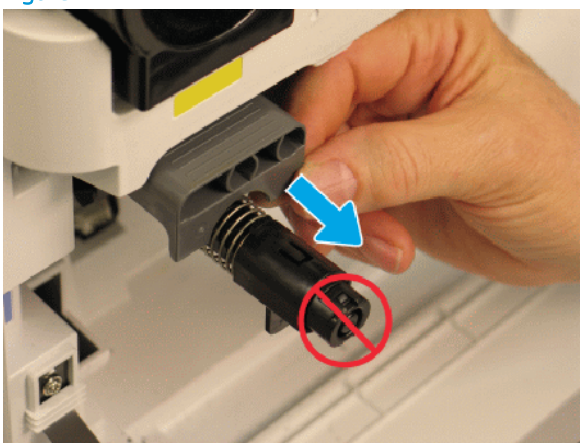


2. Grasp the ITB cleaner housing, and pull it out of the printer.

CAUTION: Do not grasp the waste toner connector.

Use care when removing the ITB cleaner as loose toner might be present on the metal shelf along the side of the cleaner.

Figure 2-41 ITB cleaner removal



3. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

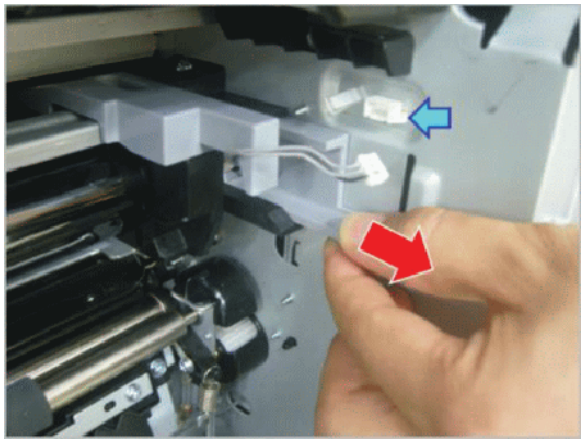
Remove the ITB

Follow these steps to remove the ITB.

1. Open the right door.

2. Remove the cable from the retainer, and then disconnect one connector. Slide the ITB latch toward the front of the printer to release the coupled drive.

Figure 2-42 Disconnect one connector and slide the latch



3. Remove two screws securing the ITB unit.

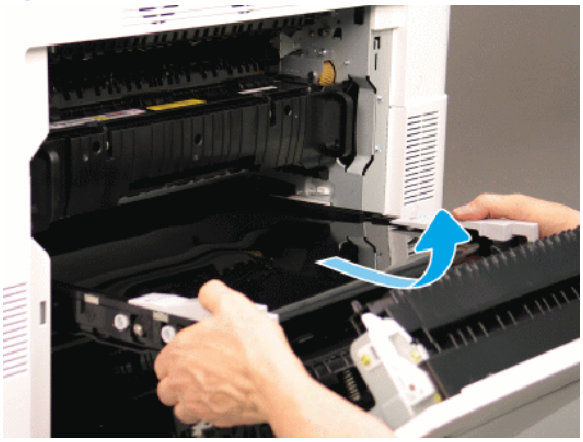
TIP: Use a magnetized screwdriver to prevent the screws from falling into the printer..

Figure 2-43 Remove two screws

4. Pull the ITB unit partially out of the printer, and then lift it up and out of the printer.

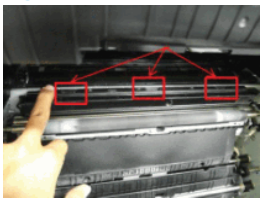
⚠ CAUTION: Do not touch the ITB belt and be careful not to damage the it by hitting it on the door during removal.

Figure 2-44 Remove the ITB



5. While pushing the color plane registration (CPR) shutter toward the rear of the printer, clean the three CPR sensors with a damp, lint-free cloth.

Figure 2-45 Clean the CPR sensors



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

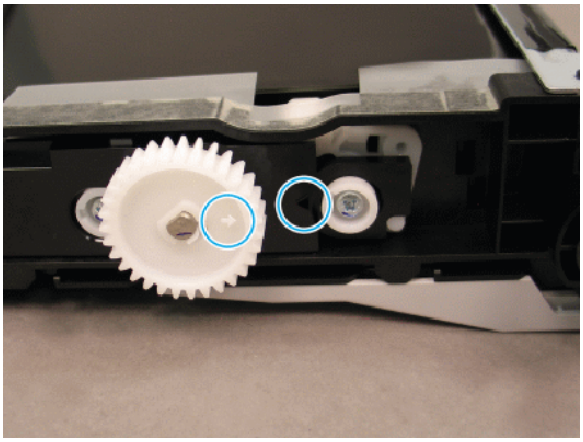
Also use the following**special installation instructions**.

ITB firmware reset

1. Before reinstalling the ITB, align the arrow on the gear with the arrowhead on the ITB frame.
2. After the replacement ITB is installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:
    1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.
    2. Select the Service menu.
    3. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the access code (04087617).
    4. Select the Service Tools menu.
    5. Select the Supply Status menu.
    6. Select Field Replacement Unit.
    7. Select ITB (Image Transfer Belt).
    8. Select Transfer Belt.
    9. Select Reset.

▲ Before reinstalling the ITB, align the arrow on the gear with the arrowhead on the ITB frame.

Figure 2-46 Align arrows



Removal and replacement: Image scanner assembly (flatbed)

Learn how to remove and replace the image scanner assembly.

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the image scanner assembly.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-11 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-04907A	Scanner whole unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

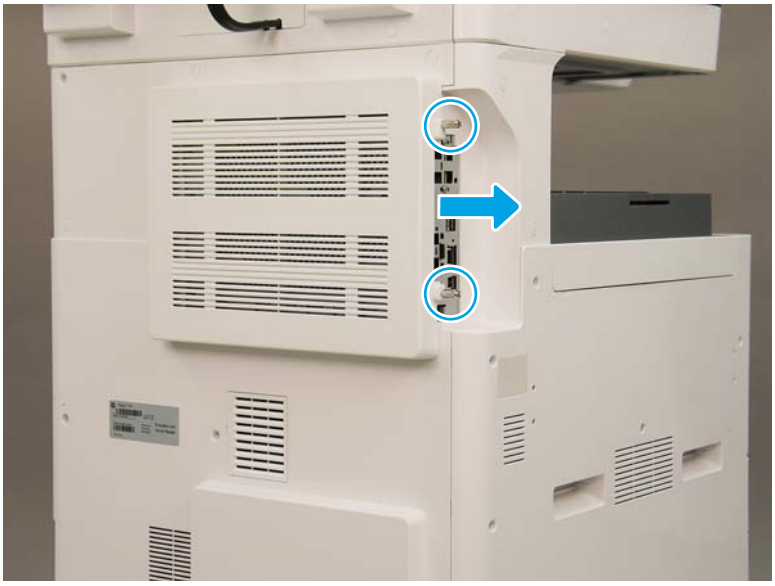
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-47 Remove the formatter cover

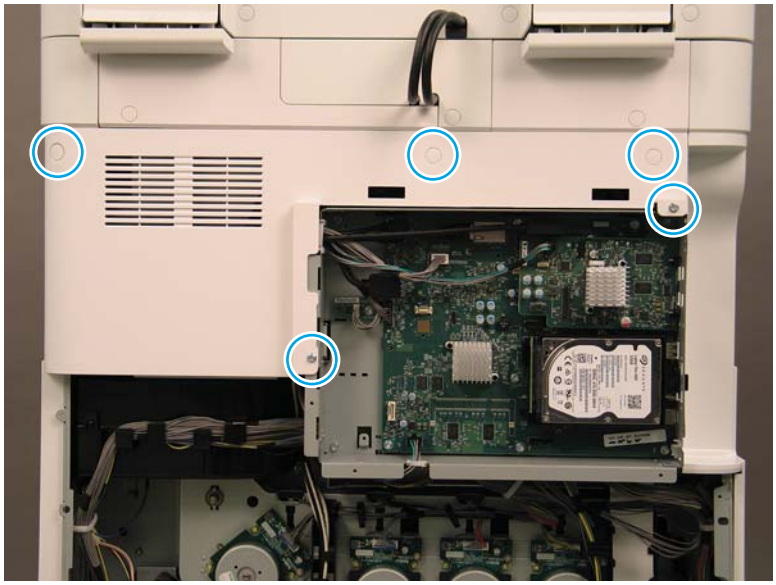


Remove the upper rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the upper rear cover.

- Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-48 Remove the upper rear cover

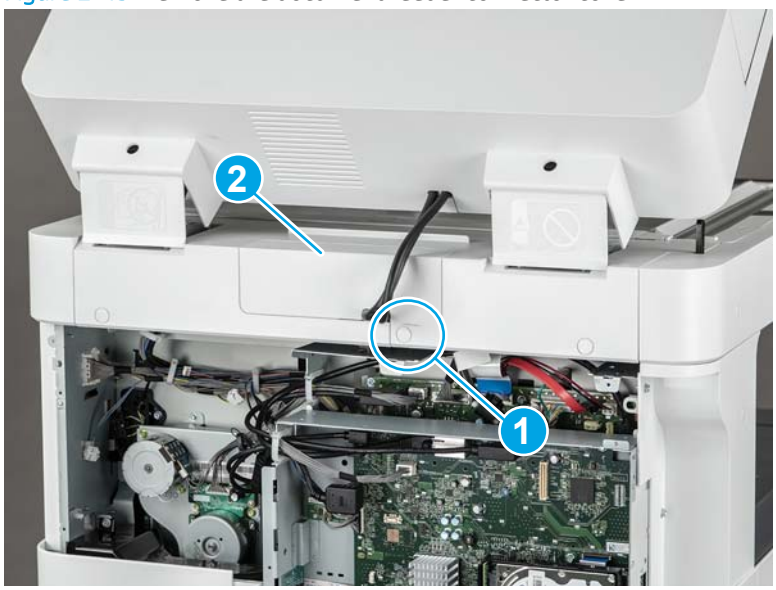


Remove the document feeder whole unit (LX)

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder whole unit (LX).

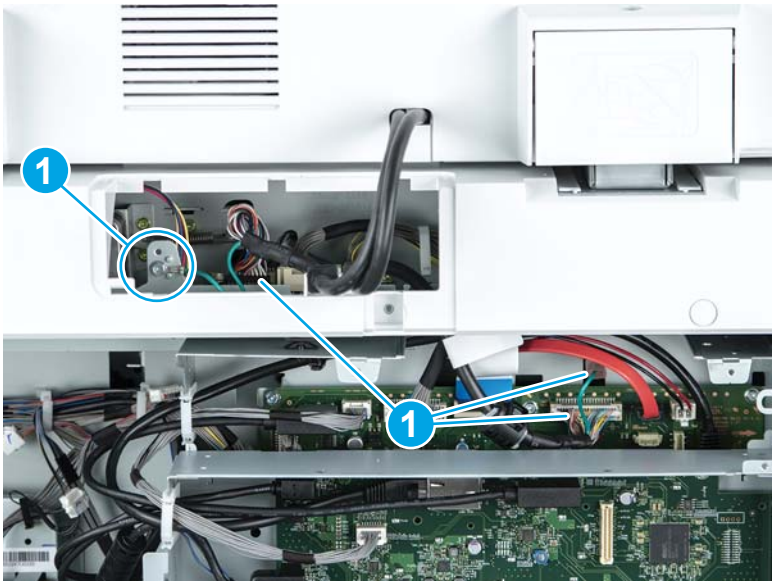
1. Remover one screw cap and screw (callout 1), and then remove the document feeder connector cover (callout 2).

Figure 2-49 Remove the document feeder connector cover



2. Remove one screw to release the ground wire (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

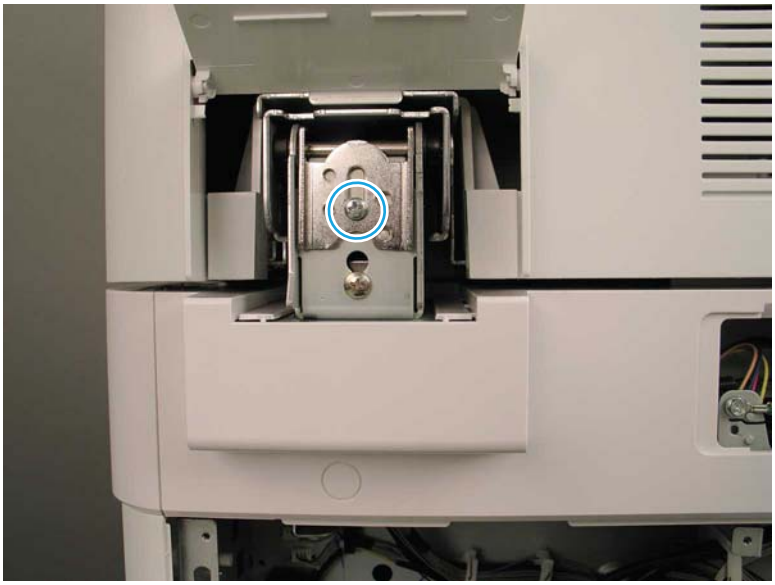
Figure 2-50 Remove the document feeder harness and ground wire



3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the PCA - ADF HIC. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

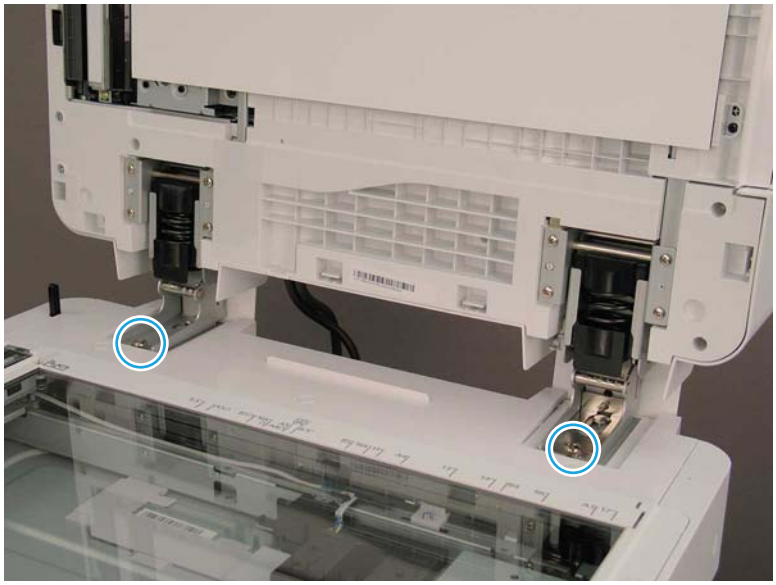
4. Release one screw on each hinge stop on the back of the document feeder.

Figure 2-51 Release the document feeder hinge screws



5. Remove two screws. Slide the assembly back, and then lift the document feeder to remove.

Figure 2-52 Lift and remove the document feeder



NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

Remove the document feeder whole unit (GX)

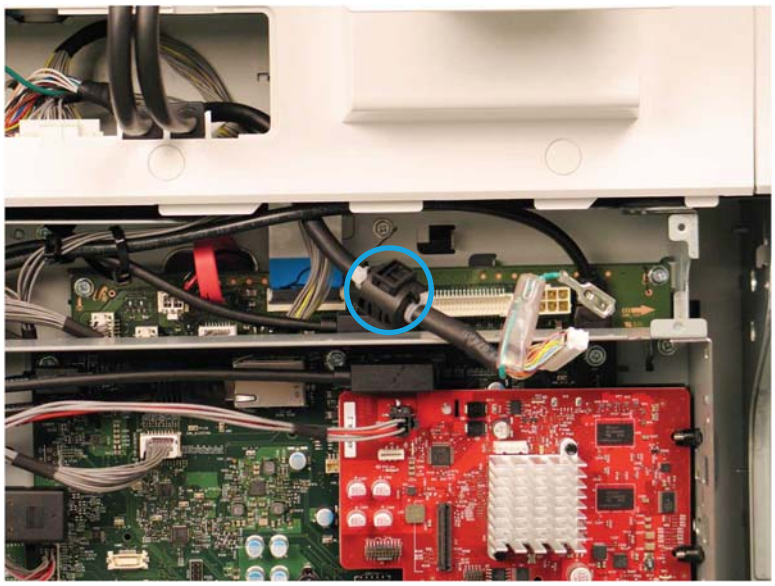
Follow these steps to remove the document feeder whole unit (GX).

1. Open the document feeder cover, and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

Figure 2-53 Remove document feeder connector cover

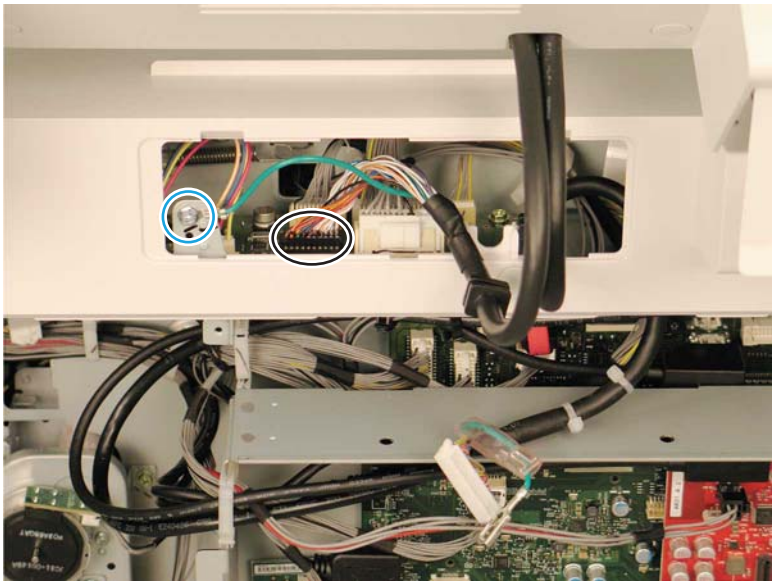
2. Remove the plastic cable choke from the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

Figure 2-54 Remove the cable choke



3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the scanner PCA. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

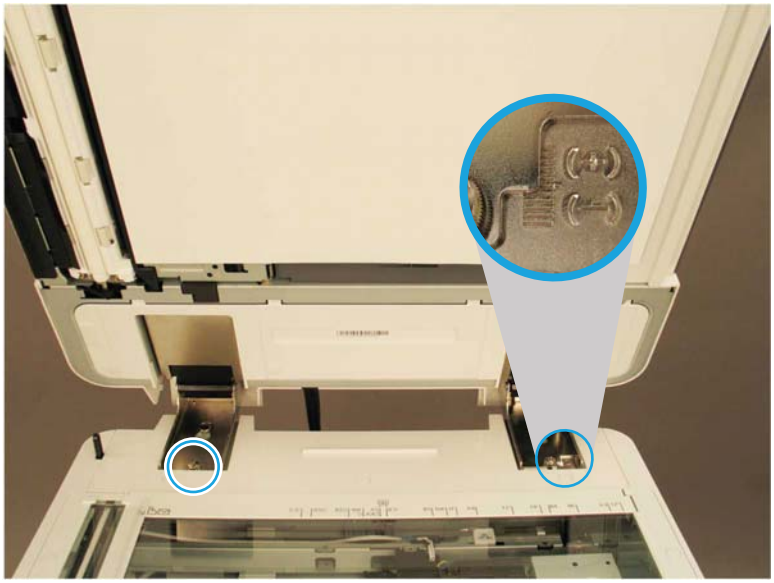
Figure 2-55 Disconnect document feeder harness



4. Release two hinge stops on the back of the document feeder to allow the document feeder to open to a full 90°.

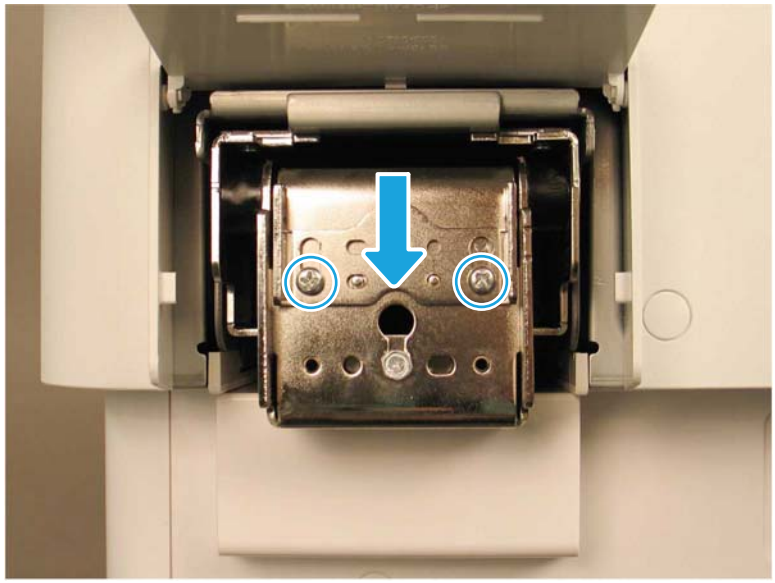
IMPORTANT: Note the alignment marks on the hinge stops. Any new document feeder must be reinstalled with the same alignment.

Figure 2-56 Alignment marks



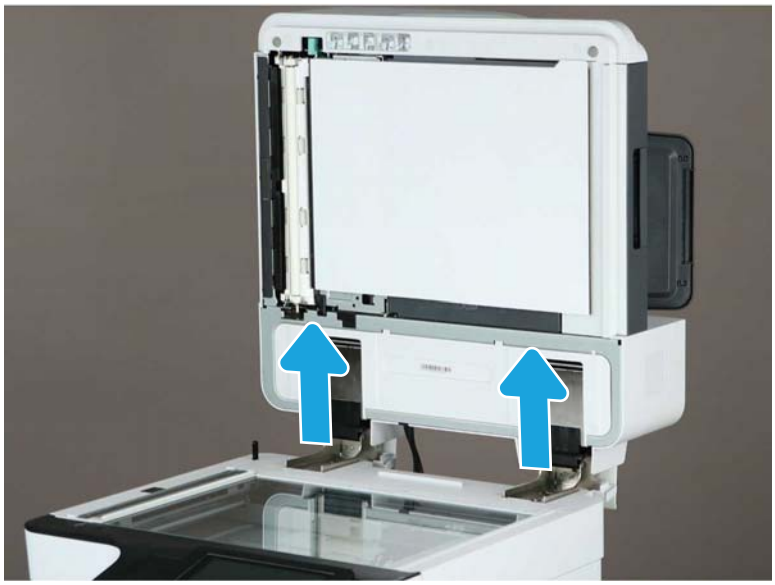
5. Remove two screws on each hinge stop.

Figure 2-57 Remove screws



6. Pull back and then lift up to release the document feeder unit.

Figure 2-58 Release the document feeder



NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

Remove the control panel bezel

Follow these steps to remove the control panel bezel.

1. Open the document feeder, and then remove three screws.

Figure 2-59 Remove the control panel bezel.

2. Place the control panel in the upright position.
3. Gently pry the control-panel bezel from the center screw hole, and then pry from the center of the control-panel bezel to the edges to release.

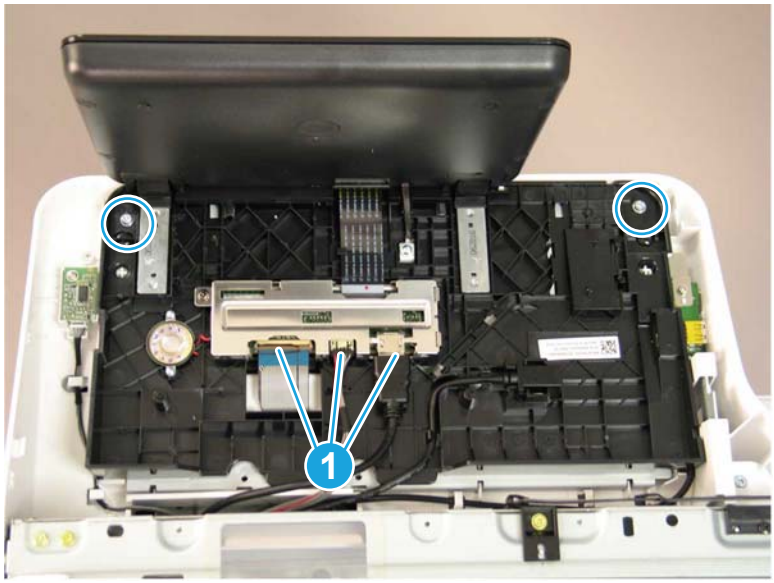
CAUTION: Do not pry against the scanner glass when removing the control-panel bezel.

Remove the control panel

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

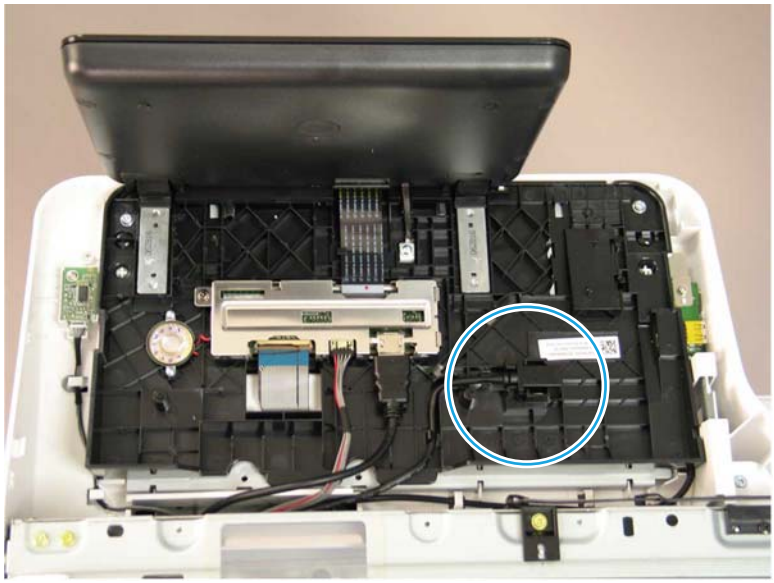
1. Place the control panel in the upright position.
2. Disconnect one FFC, one connector, and one HDMI connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws on the control-panel frame.

Figure 2-60 Remove the control panel screws and disconnect connectors



3. Remove the USB interconnect cable from its retainer and reroute out of the way.

Figure 2-61 Remove the USB interconnect cable



4. Lift the control panel up from the front to release the tabs at the rear, and then remove the control panel.

Reinstallation tip: Align the four tabs at the rear or control panel, and then snap in the control panel.

Remove the keyboard (z bundles)

Follow these steps to remove the keyboard (z bundles).

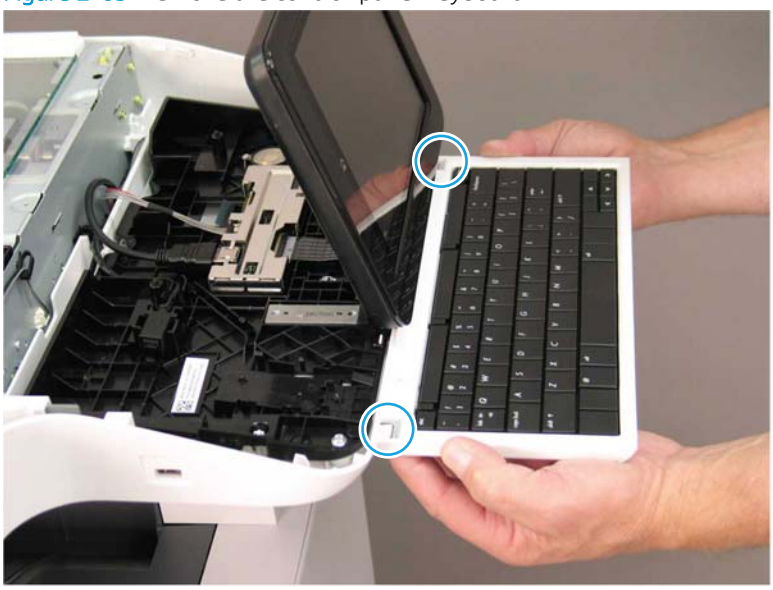
Keyboard bundles only. For all other models, skip this step.

1. Disconnect one FFC.

Figure 2-62 Disconnect one FFC

2. Slide the keyboard out, and then depress two latches to remove the keyboard.

Figure 2-63 Remove the control-panel keyboard

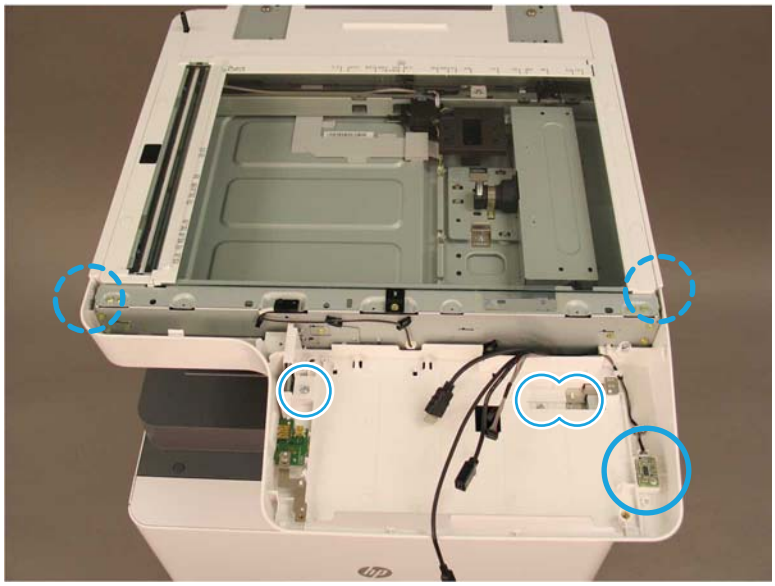


Remove the Image scanner assembly (flat bed)

Follow these steps to remove the Image scanner assembly (flat bed).

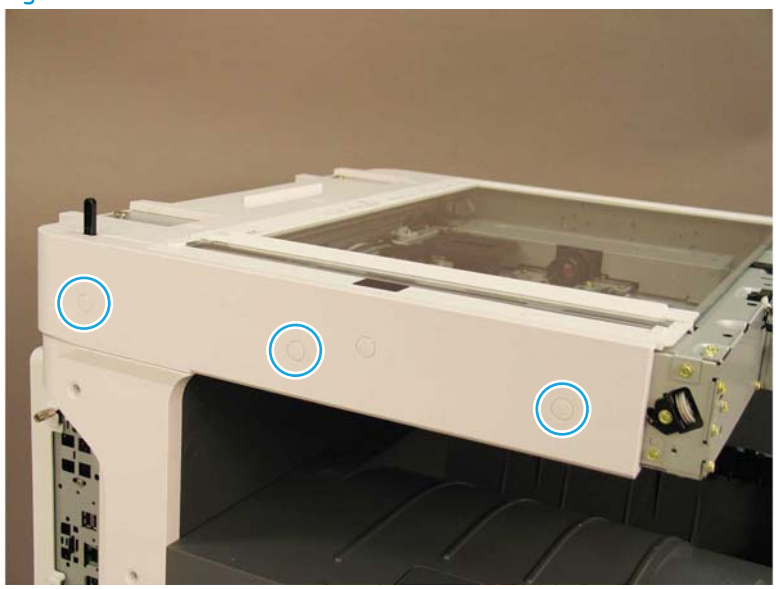
1. Remove six screw-caps and six screws. It might be necessary to use leverage near the left hinge and then pull the cover toward the back.

Figure 2-64 Remove screw-caps and screws and release scan-front cover



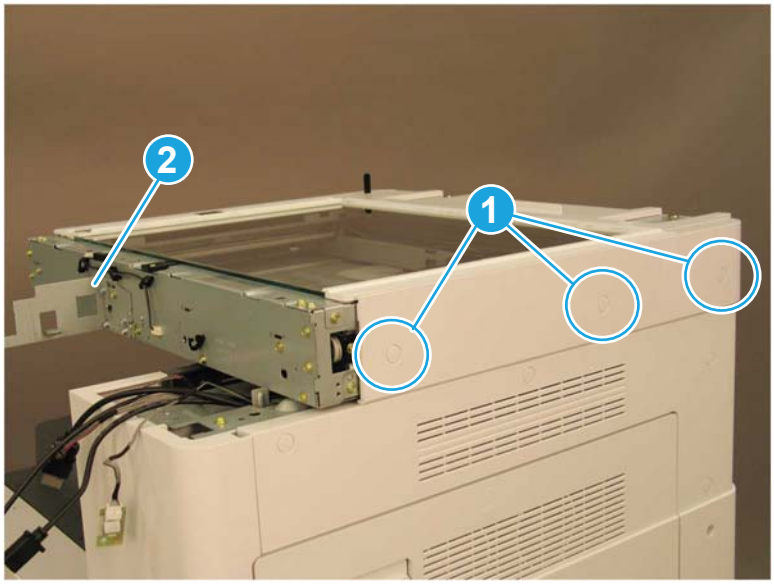
2. Remove three screw-caps and three screws. Release the scan-left cover.

Figure 2-65 Release scan-left cover



3. Remove three screw-caps and three screws (callout 1). Release the scan-right cover.

Figure 2-66 Remove scan-right cover



NOTE: At the front of the scanner, remove the bracket (callout 2) and install it on the replacement scanner whole unit.

4. Disconnect the two scan cables and one FFC at the top of the main board.

Figure 2-67 Disconnect scan cables

5. Remove three screws from the left.

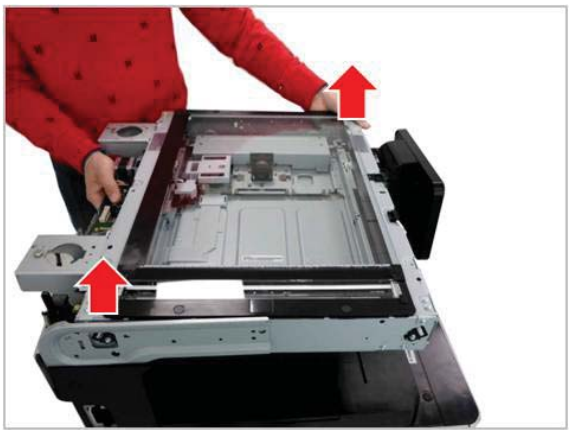
Figure 2-68 Remove screws

6. Remove two screws from the right.

Figure 2-69 Remove screws

7. Lift up and release the image scanner unit.

Figure 2-70 Lift up and release image scanner unit



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF white backing (LX)

Learn how to remove and replace the ADF white backing (LX).

This document provides the procedures to remove the white backing assembly.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder white backing (LX).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-12 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC63-05410A	ADF white backing (LX)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the document feeder white backing

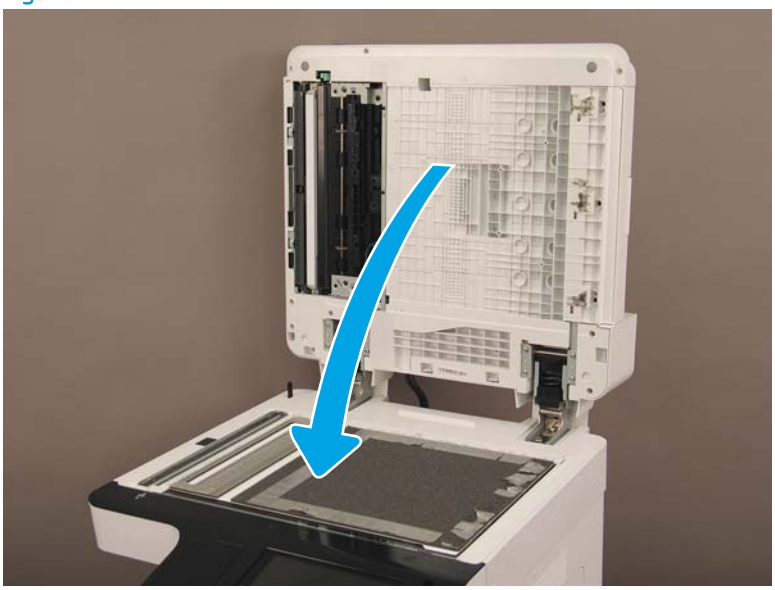
Follow these steps to remove the document feeder white backing.

1. Open the document feeder cover.
2. Peel the white backing away to remove.

IMPORTANT: Remove all the tape and foam from the bottom of the document feeder.

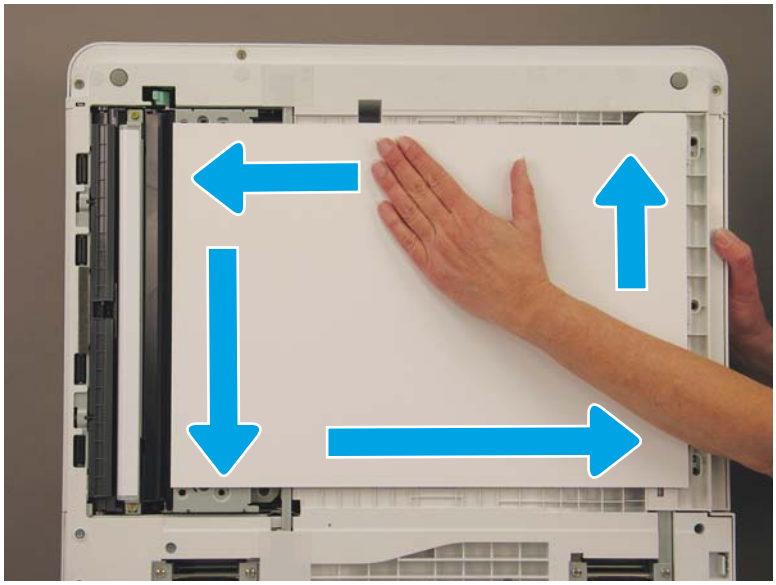
3. Position the new white backing on the scanner glass.
4. Peel the adhesive tape backing off the new white backing.
5. Close the document feeder cover to attach the white backing.

Figure 2-71 Close the document feeder cover



6. Open the cover again and smooth the white backing.

Figure 2-72 Smooth the white backing



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF white backing (GX)

Learn how to remove and replace the ADF white backing (GX ADF).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder white backing (GX ADF).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-13 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC63-05795A	ADF white backing (GX ADF)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

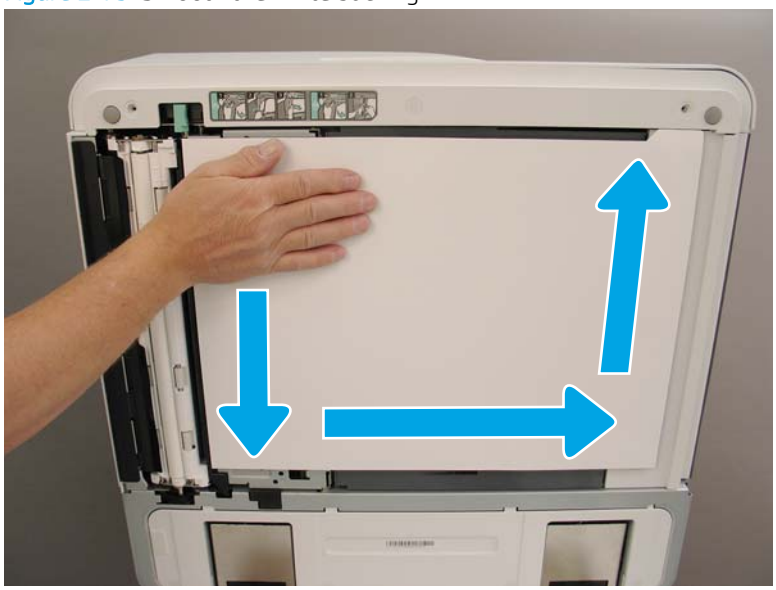
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the white backing

Follow these steps to remove the white backing.

1. Open the document feeder cover.
2. Peel the white backing away to remove.
3. Position the new white backing on the scanner glass.
4. Replace any damaged or missing hook-and-loop fasteners by positioning them on the new white backing.
5. Close the document feeder cover to attach the white backing.
6. Open the cover again and smooth the white backing.

Figure 2-73 Smooth the white backing



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right door

Learn how to remove and replace the right door.

View a video of how to remove and replace the right door.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-14 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC95-02092A	Right door assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

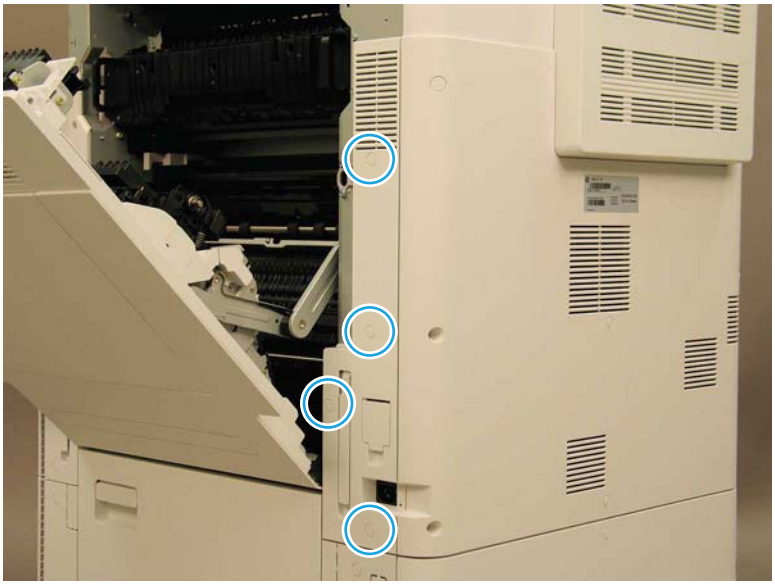
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

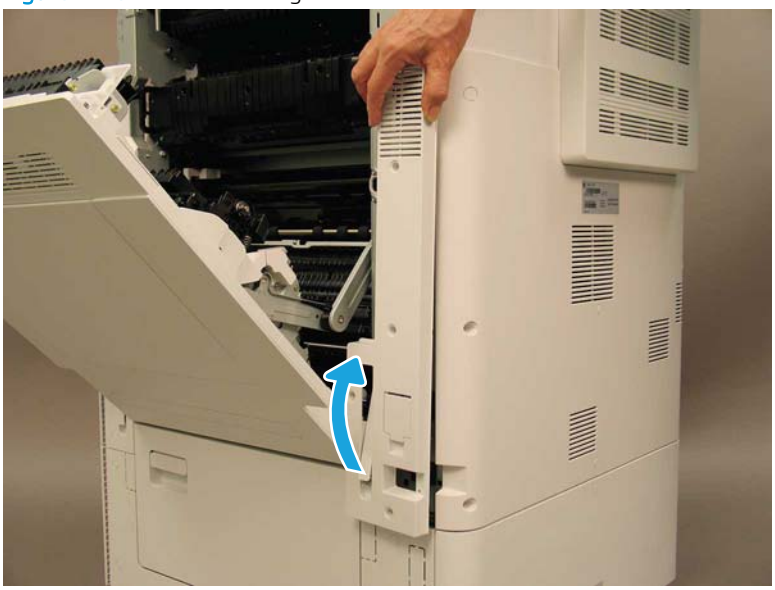
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-74 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-75 Remove the right rear cover

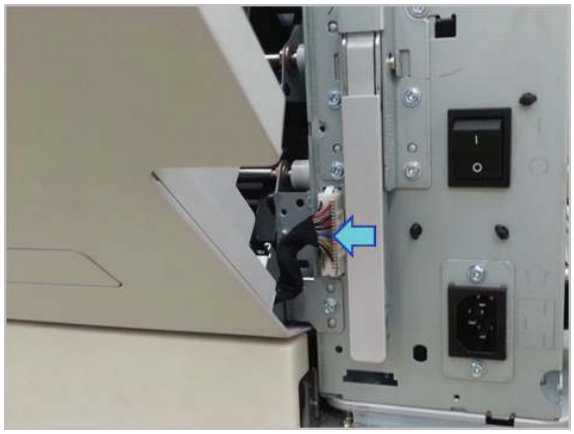


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

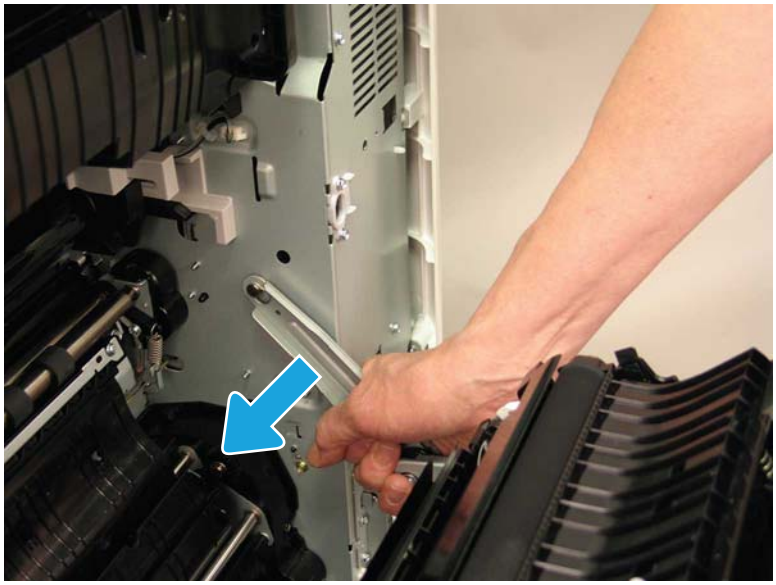
Figure 2-76 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

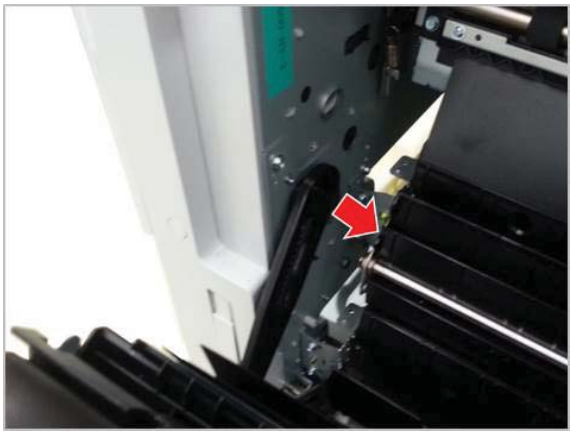
CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-77 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

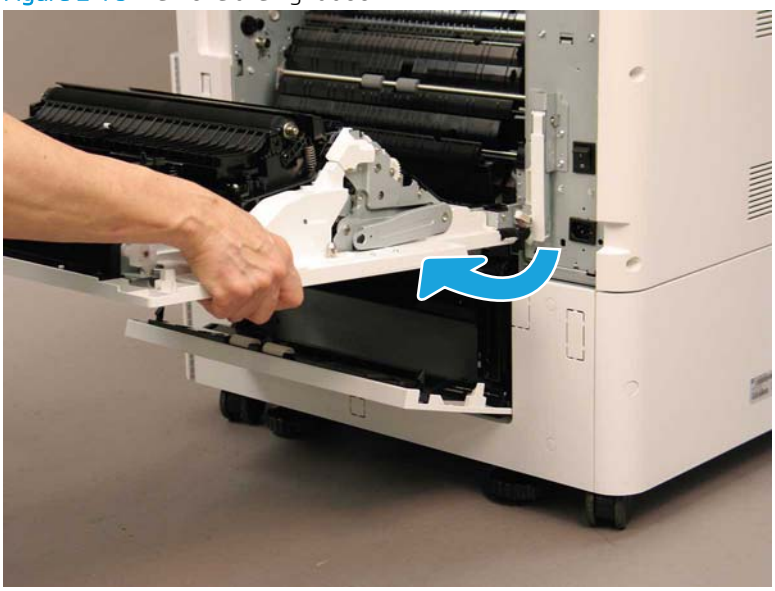
Figure 2-78 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-79 Remove the right door



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit unit

Learn how to remove and replace the exit unit.

View a video of how to remove and replace the exit unit.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-15 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01369A	Exit unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

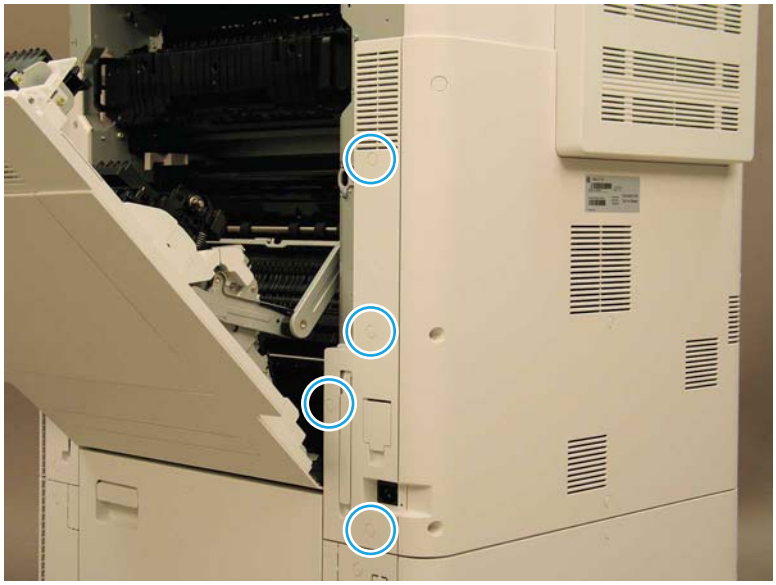
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

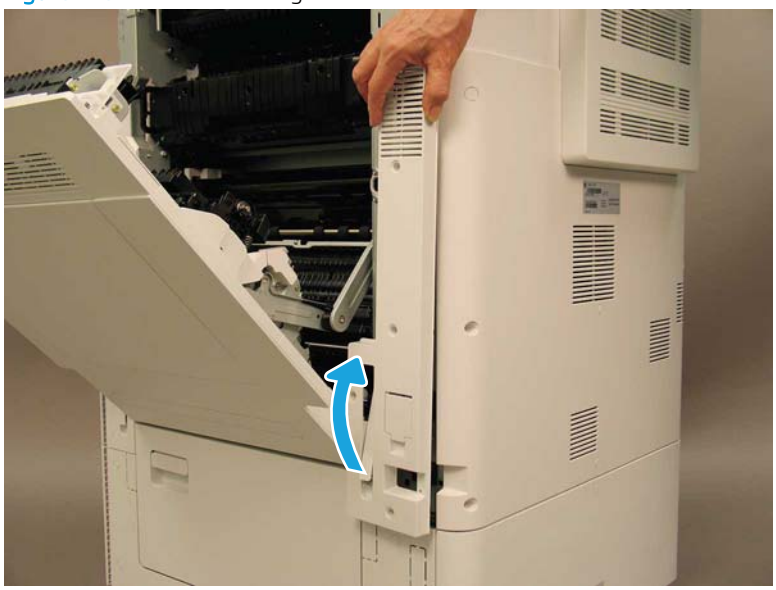
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-80 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-81 Remove the right rear cover

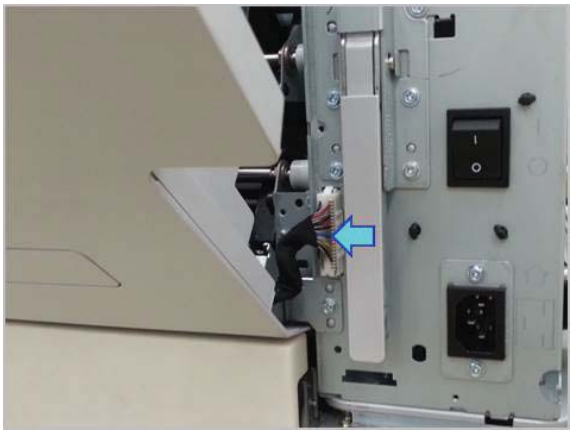


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

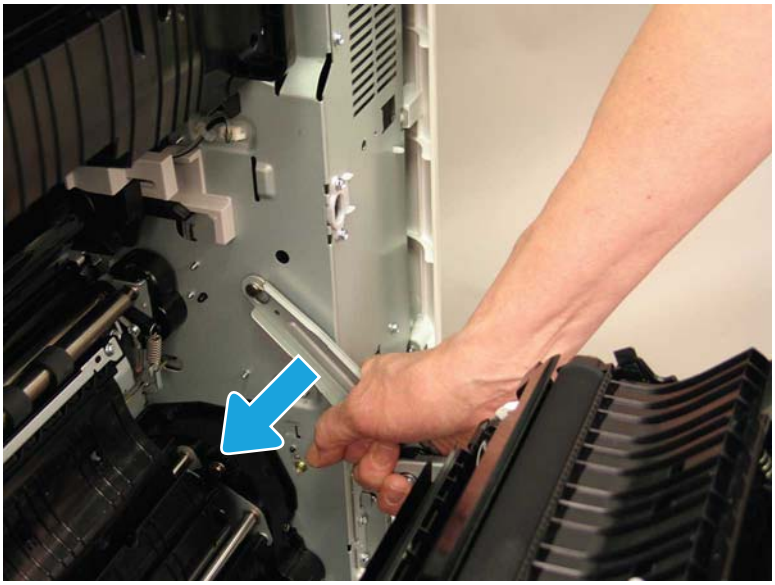
Figure 2-82 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

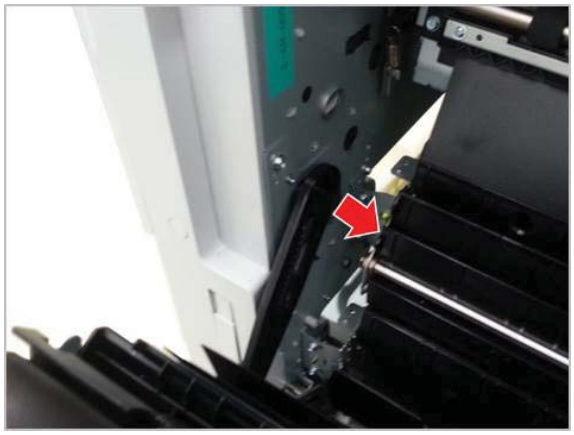
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-83 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

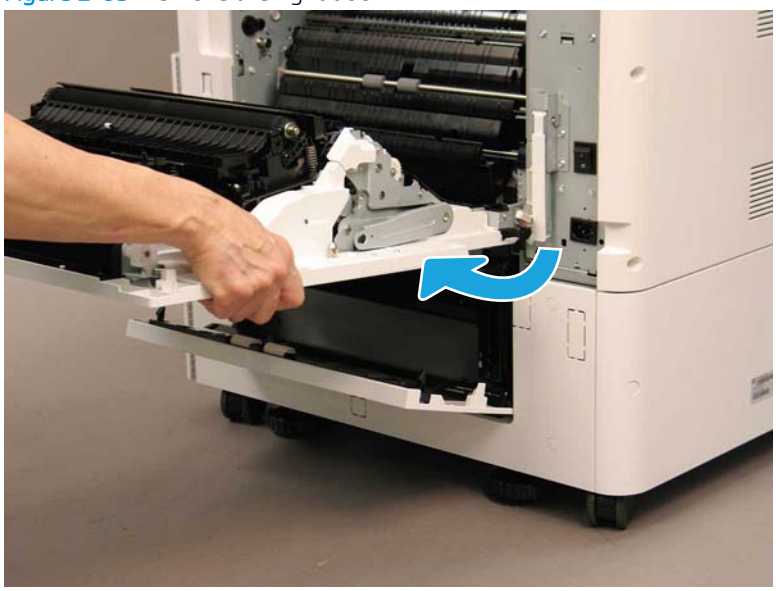
Figure 2-84 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-85 Remove the right door



Remove the front top inner cover

Follow these steps to remove the front top inner cover.

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-86 Remove the front top inner cover

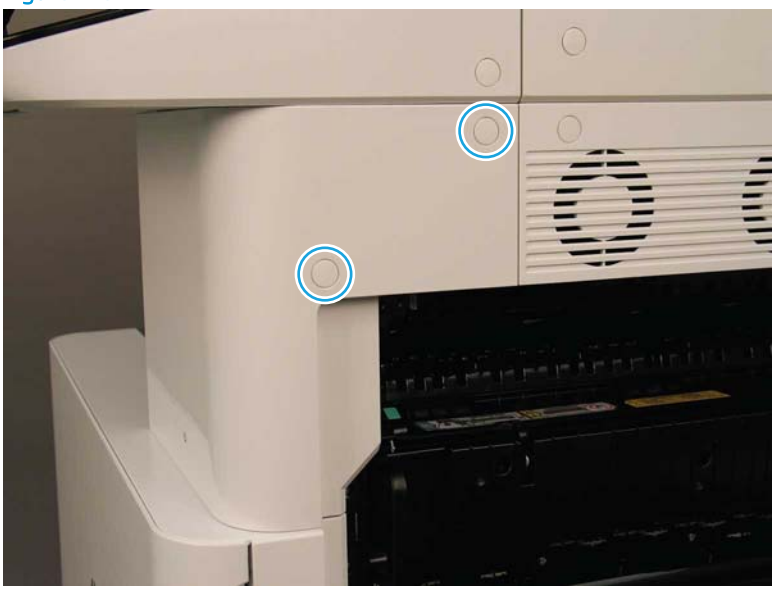
Remove the front power cover

Follow these steps to remove the front power cover.

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

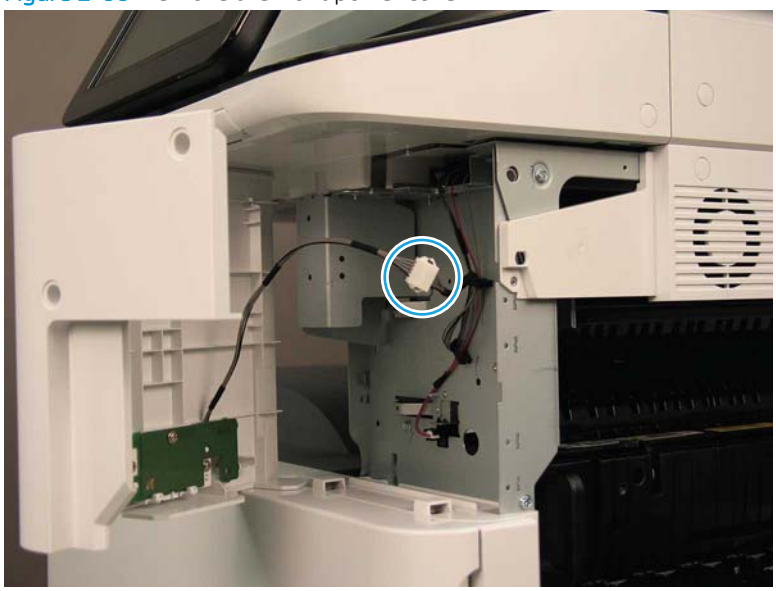
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 2-87 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-88 Remove the front power cover

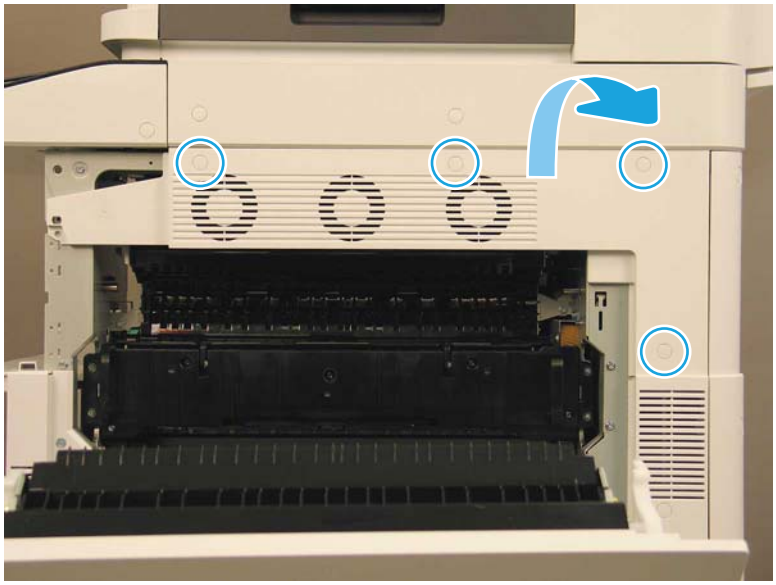


Remove the top right cover

Follow these steps to remove the top right cover.

▲ Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then rotate the upper right door cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-89 Remove the top right cover



Remove the fuser unit

Follow these steps to remove the fuser unit.

1. Open the right door.

NOTE: If the fuser is removed to access another part, the right door might already be removed.

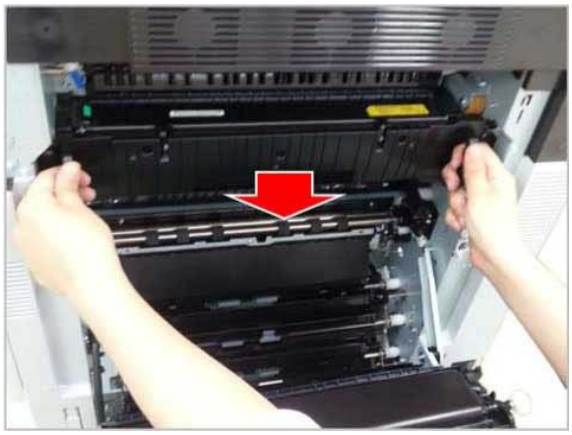
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 2-90 Fuser unit screw locations

3. Pull out the fuser unit.

CAUTION: The temperature in the vicinity of the fuser becomes heated. To prevent the potential of getting burned, make sure the fuser unit has cooled before replacing it.

Figure 2-91 Fuser unit removal

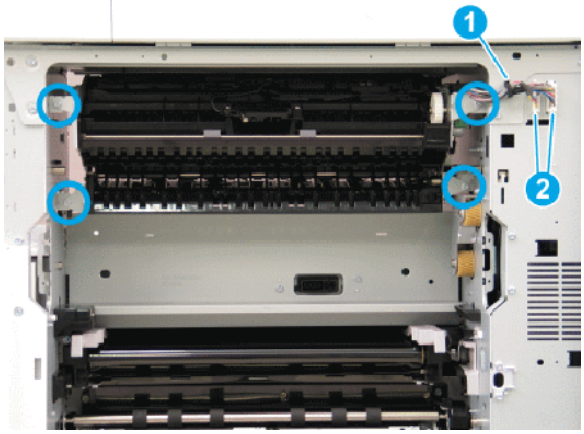


Remove the exit unit

Follow these steps to remove the exit unit.

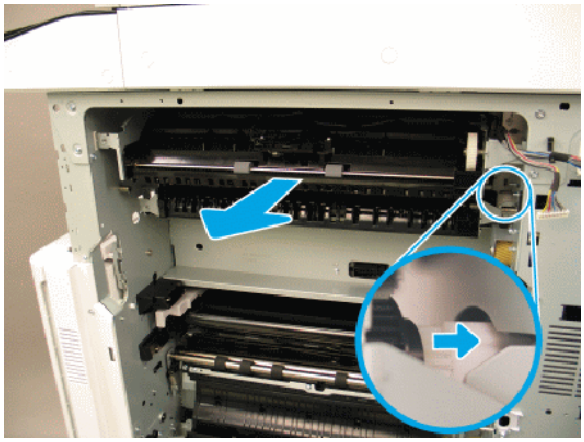
1. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove four screws (callout 3).

Figure 2-92 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws



2. Remove the exit unit while pushing the coupler to the right.

Figure 2-93 Remove the exit unit



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fuser unit

Learn how to remove and replace the fuser unit.

View a video of how to remove and replace the fuser unit.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-16 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00477C	HP LaserJet 110V fuser assembly
JC82-00483C	HP LaserJet 220V fuser assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the fuser unit

Follow these steps to remove the fuser unit.

1. Open the right door.

NOTE: If the fuser is removed to access another part, the right door might already be removed.

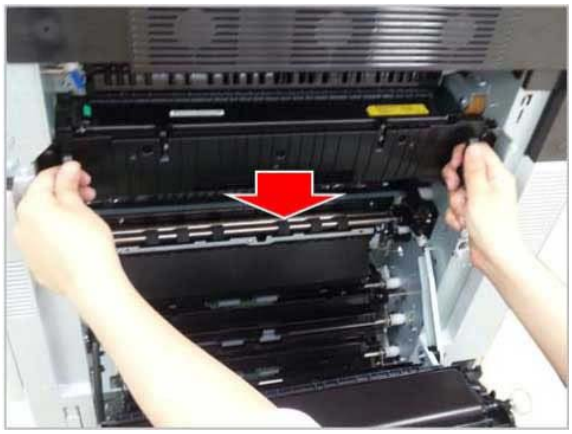
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 2-94 Fuser unit screw locations

3. Pull out the fuser unit.

CAUTION: The temperature in the vicinity of the fuser becomes heated. To prevent the potential of getting burned, make sure the fuser unit has cooled before replacing it.

Figure 2-95 Fuser unit removal



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fuser drive board

Learn how to remove and replace the fuser drive board.

View a video of how to remove and replace the fuser drive board.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-17 Part information

Part number	part description
JC44-00235B	Fuser drive board 110V
JC44-00236B	Fuser drive board 220V

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

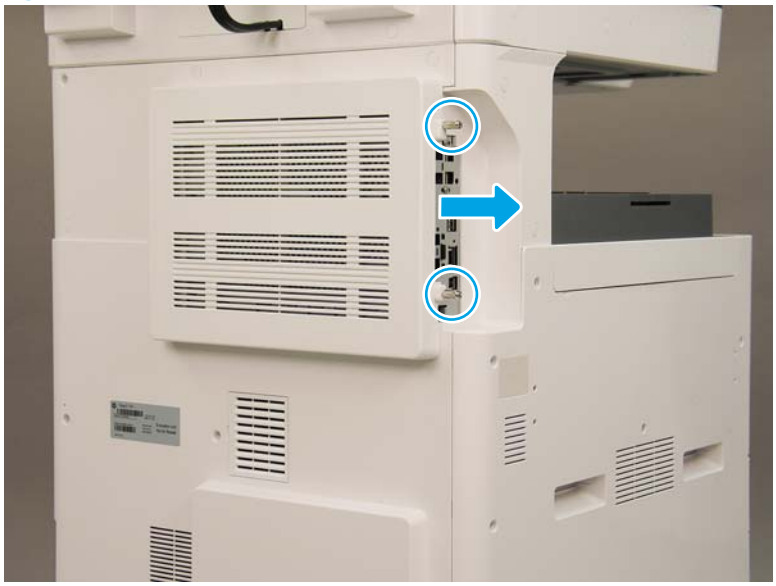
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-96 Remove the formatter cover

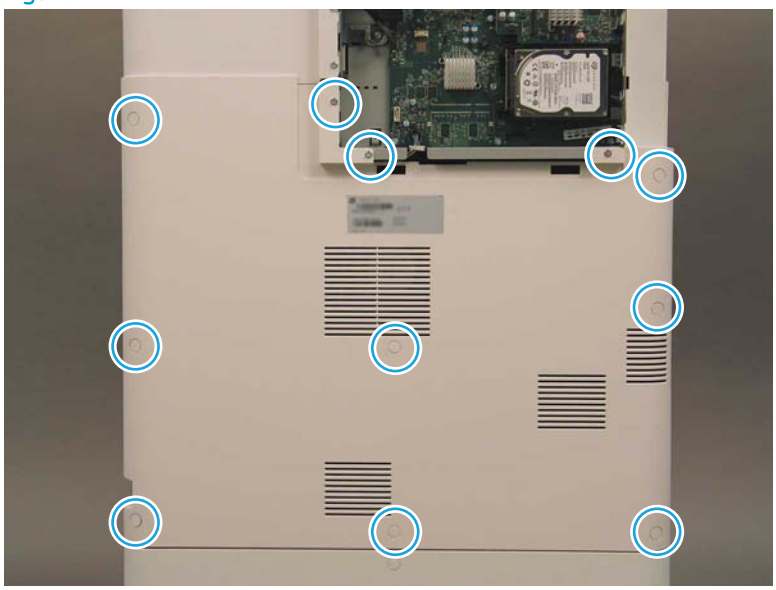


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-97 Remove the lower rear cover

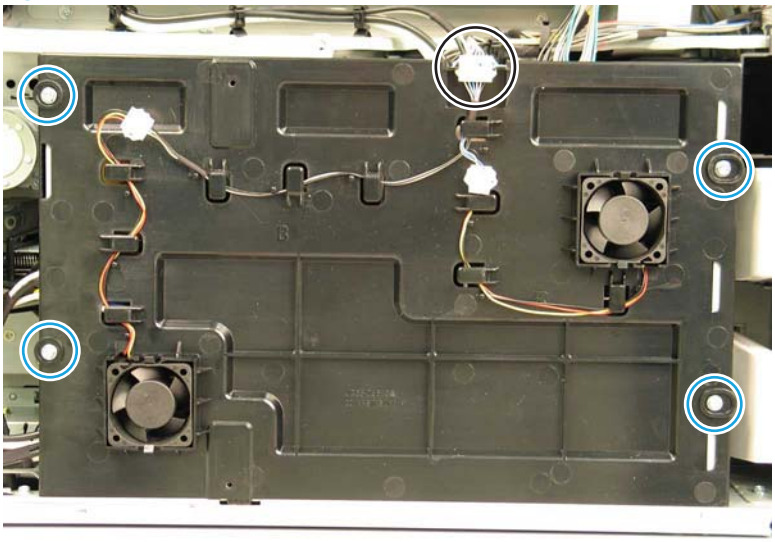


Remove the LVPS cover

Follow these steps to remove the LVPS cover.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-98 Remove the LVPS cover



Remove the fuser drive board

Follow these steps to remove the fuser drive board.

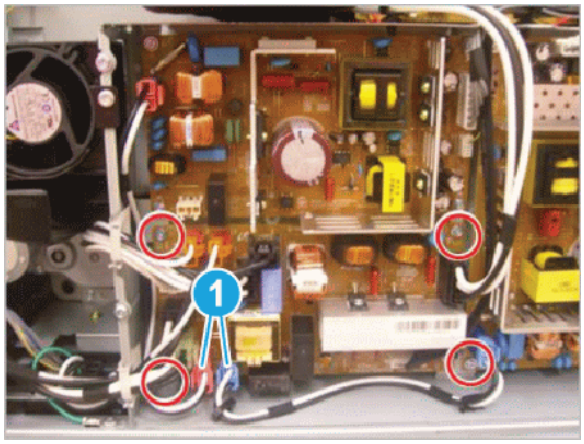
WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

NOTE: Many of the connectors on this board have retainers attached. Be sure to release the retainer before attempting to disconnect the connector.

- Disconnect twelve connectors and release one retainer on the lower left. Remove four screws, and then remove the fuser drive board.

TIP: Two of the connectors (callout 1) can be mistakenly switched and connected to the wrong connector on the fuser drive board. If this happens, the printer will not power on. Make sure that the cables are installed in the correct positions.

Figure 2-99 Fuser drive board



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Low voltage power supply (LVPS) type 5H

Learn how to remove and replace the low voltage power supply (LVPS) Type 5.

View a video of how to remove and replace the LVPS Type 5.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-18 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC44-00250A	LVPS 220V Type 5H
JC44-00249A	LVPS 110V Type 5H

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

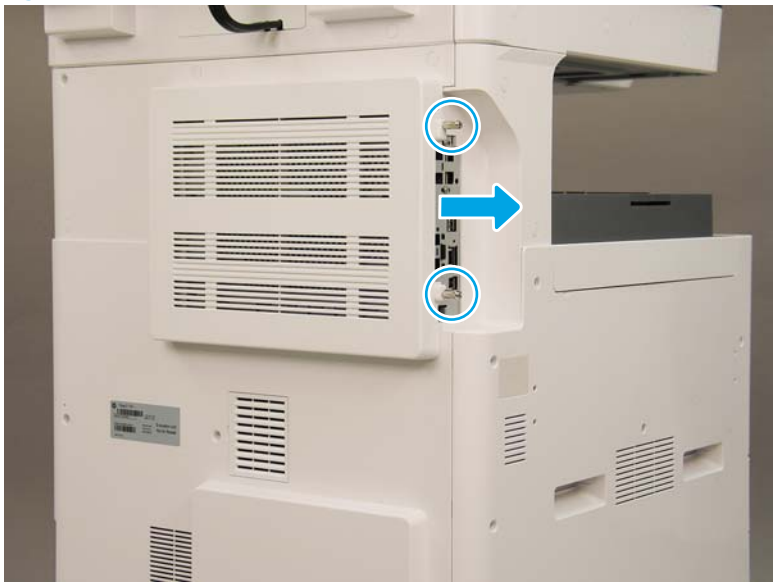
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-100 Remove the formatter cover

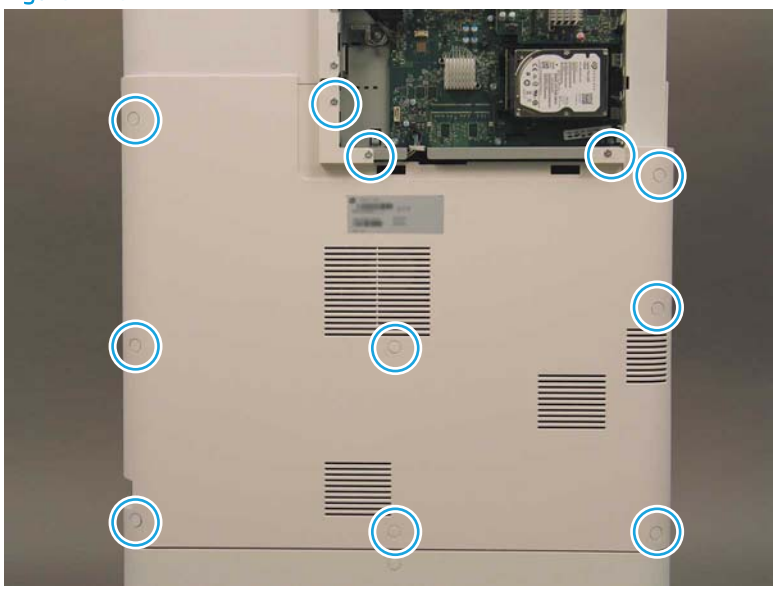


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-101 Remove the lower rear cover

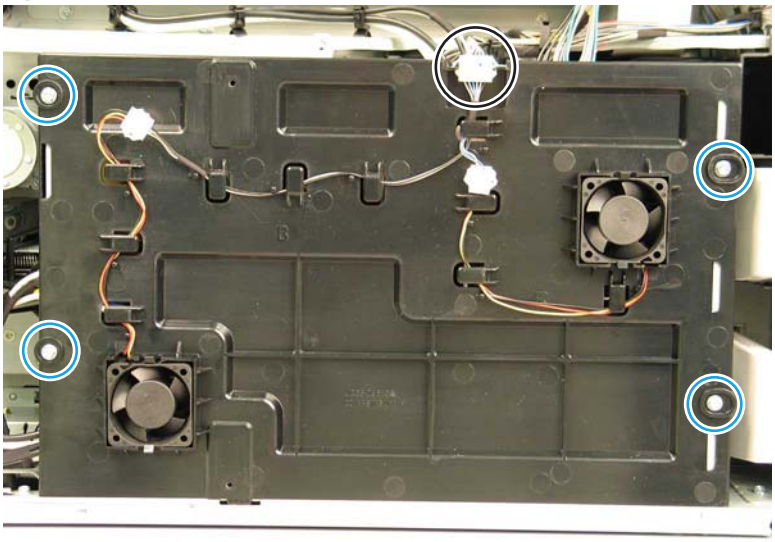


Remove the LVPS cover

Follow these steps to remove the LVPS cover.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-102 Remove the LVPS cover



Remove the LVPS type 5H

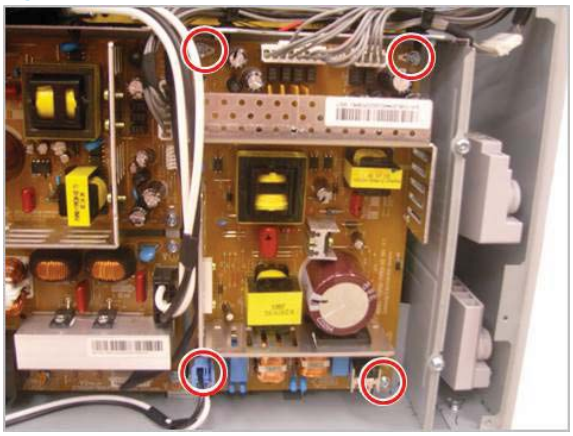
Follow these steps to remove the LVPS type 5H.

WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

NOTE: Many of the connectors on this board use retainers. Be sure to release the retainer before attempting to disconnect the connector.

- Disconnect all connectors. Remove four screws, and then remove the LVPS type 5H.

Figure 2-103 LVPS type 5H



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fuser fan

Learn how to remove and replace the fuser fan.

View a video of how to remove and replace the fuse fan.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-19 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00161A	Fan, type 7

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

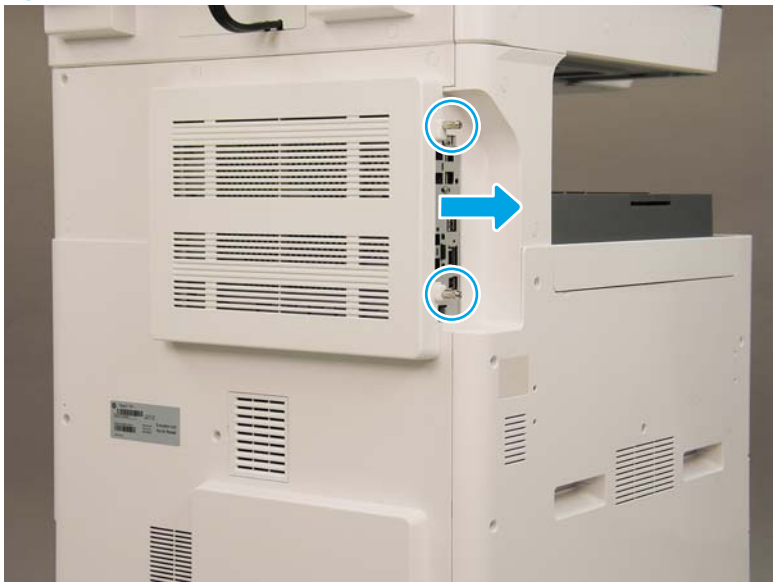
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-104 Remove the formatter cover

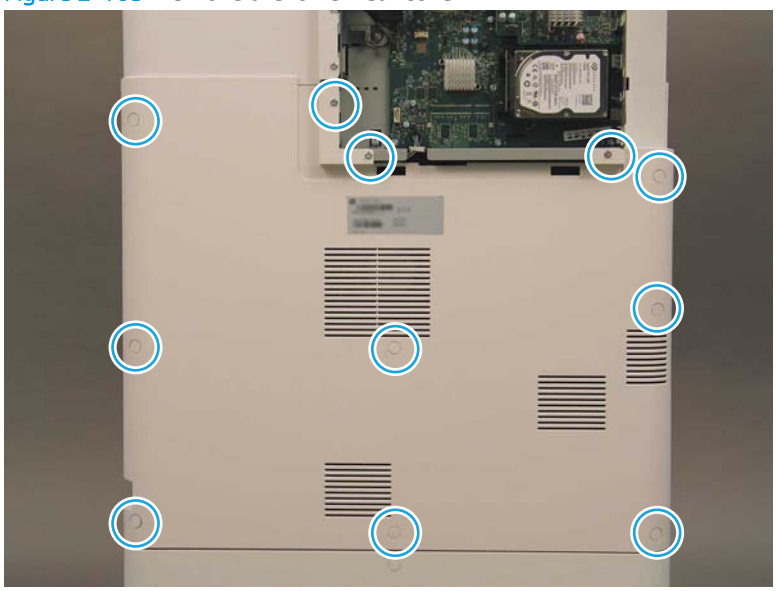


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-105 Remove the lower rear cover

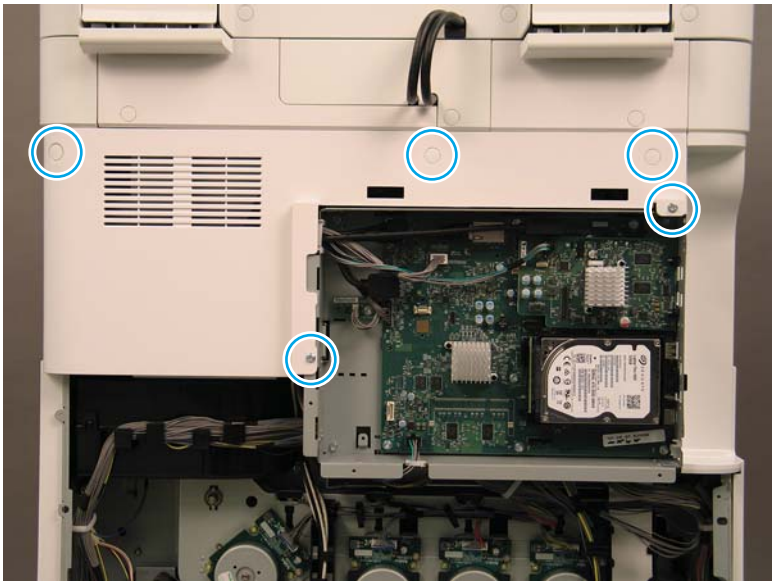


Remove the upper rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the upper rear cover.

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-106 Remove the upper rear cover



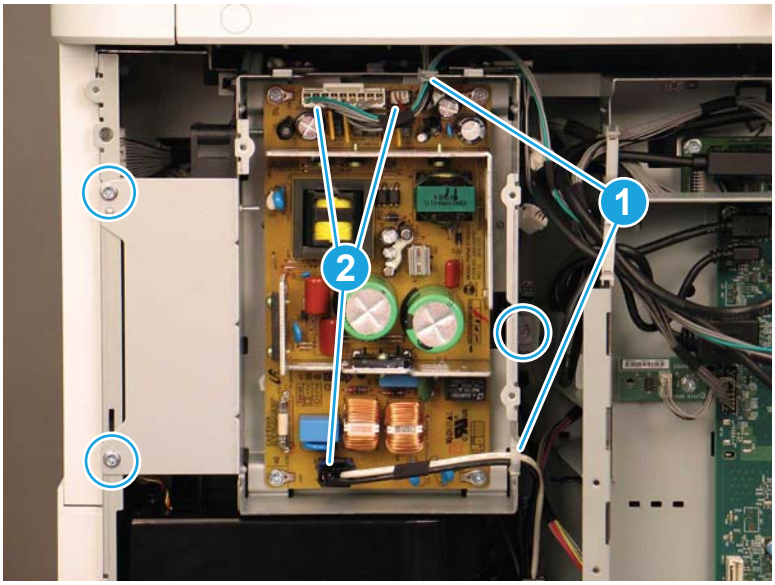
Remove the LVPS Type 4 and cage

Follow these steps to remove the LVPS Type 4 and cage.

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

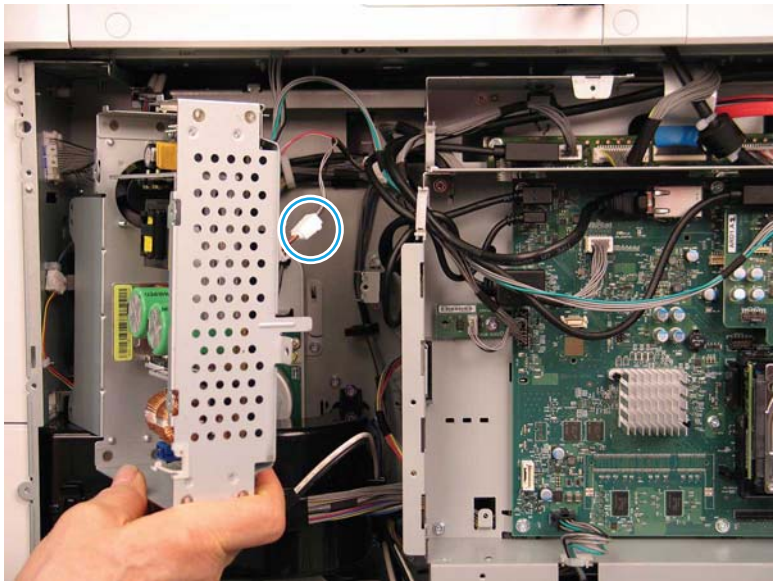
1. Release the cables from two retainers (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 2-107 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Lift the LVPS board and cage slightly away from the printer, and disconnect one connector behind the cage. Remove the LVPS board and cage.

Figure 2-108 Disconnect one connector

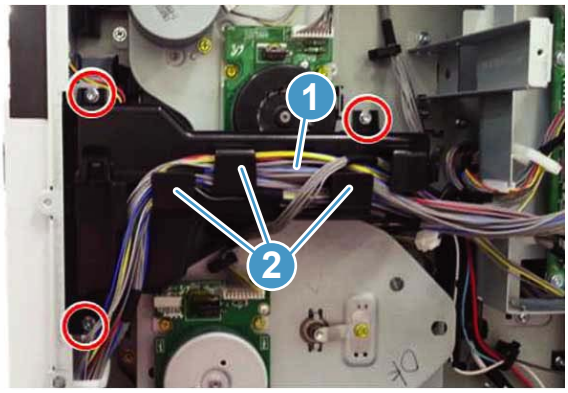


Remove the fuser fan

Follow these steps to remove the fuser fan.

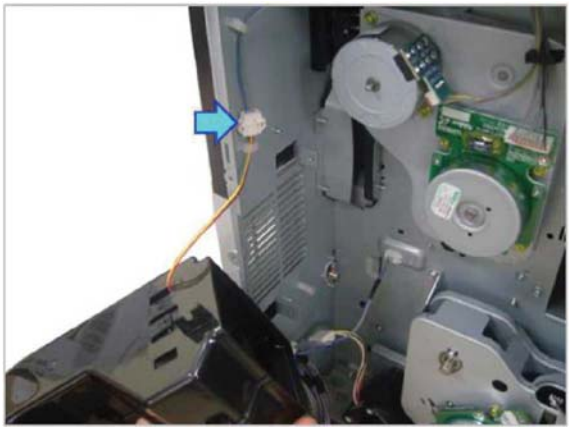
1. Release the cables (callout 1) from the cable guides (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 2-109 Release the harness and remove three screws



2. Pull the fuser fan housing slightly away from the printer, and then disconnect one connector.

Figure 2-110 Disconnect one connector



3. **Optional step**: For a replacement fan, release five tabs along the edges of the fan housing. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

Figure 2-111 Release five tabs

4. **Optional step**:For a replacement fan, separate the fan housing, and then remove the fuser fan. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the fan in the housing and install the replacement fan in the same orientation.

Figure 2-112 Remove the fuser fan

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Internal hard disk drive (HDD)

Learn how to remove and replace the 320 GB hard-disk drive (installed beneath the rear-exit cover).

View a video of how to remove and replace the 320 GB hard-disk drive.

Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Advanced

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-20 Part information

Part number	Part description
5851-6712	HDD 320GB - main PCA HDD

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

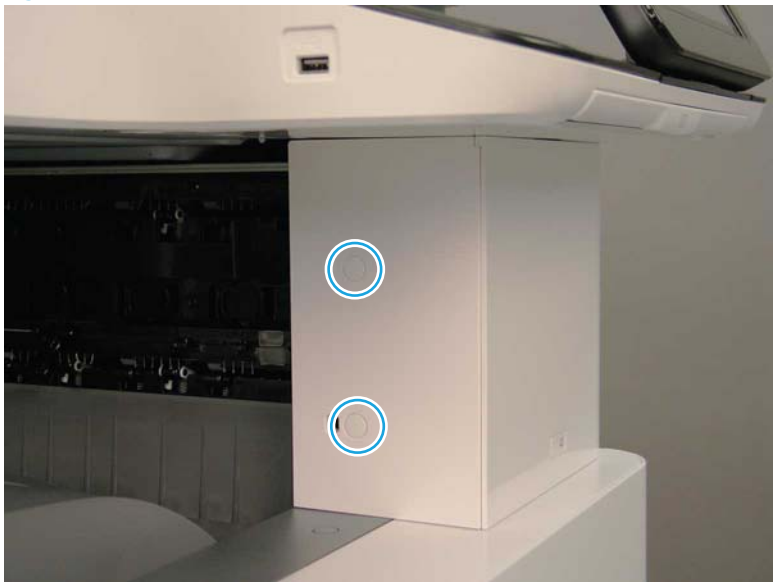
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front top inner cover

Follow these steps to remove the front top inner cover.

- ▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-113 Remove the front top inner cover



Remove the exit cover

Follow these steps to remove the exit cover.

- ▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the exit cover away from the printer to remove it.

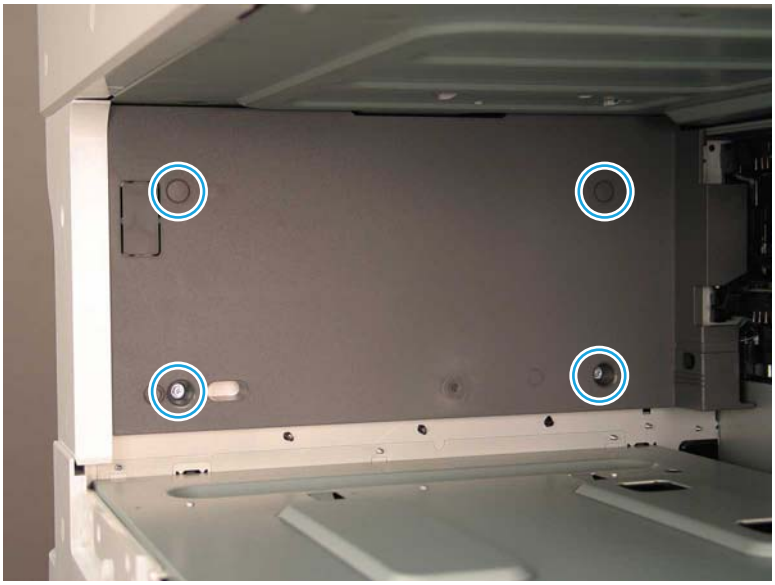
Figure 2-114 Remove the exit cover

Remove the HDD

Follow these steps to remove the HDD.

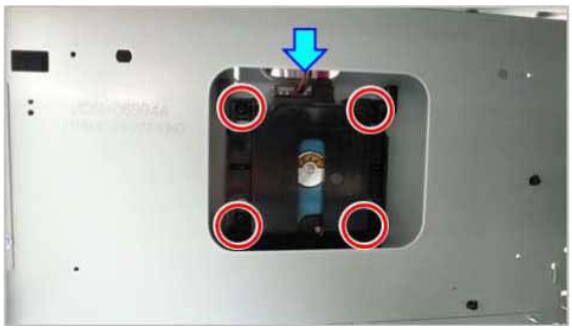
1. Remove four screws, and then release the HDD cover.

Figure 2-115 Remove the HDD cover



2. Remove four screws, disconnect the HDD cable, and then remove the HDD with its holder.

Figure 2-116 Remove the HDD



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main board

Learn how to remove and replace the main board.

View a video of how to remove and replace the main board.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-21 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00543A	Main PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

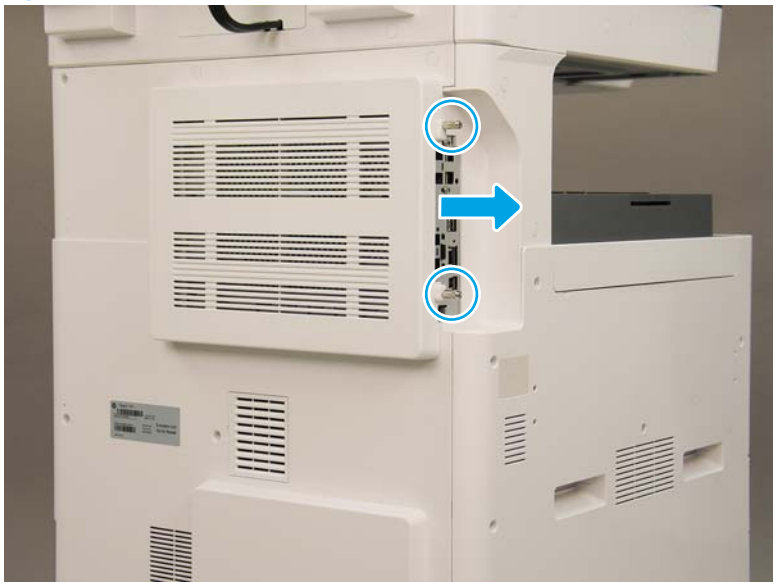
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-117 Remove the formatter cover

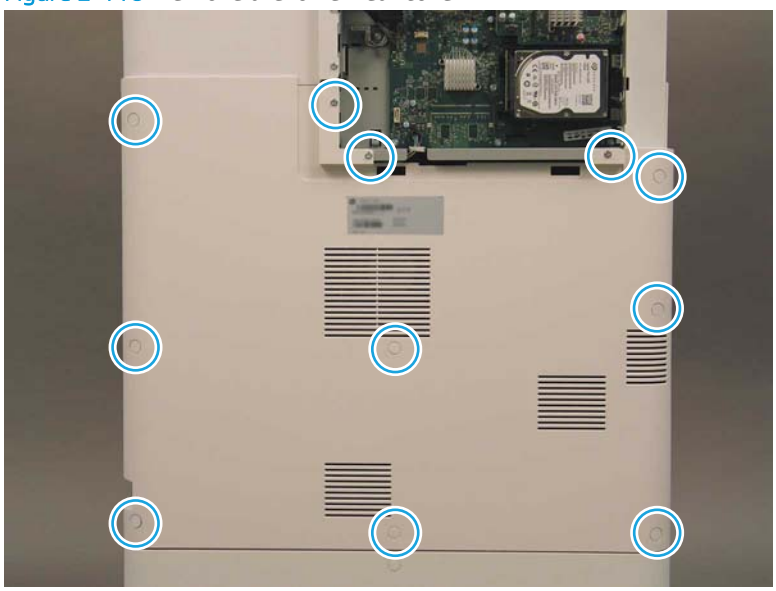


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-118 Remove the lower rear cover

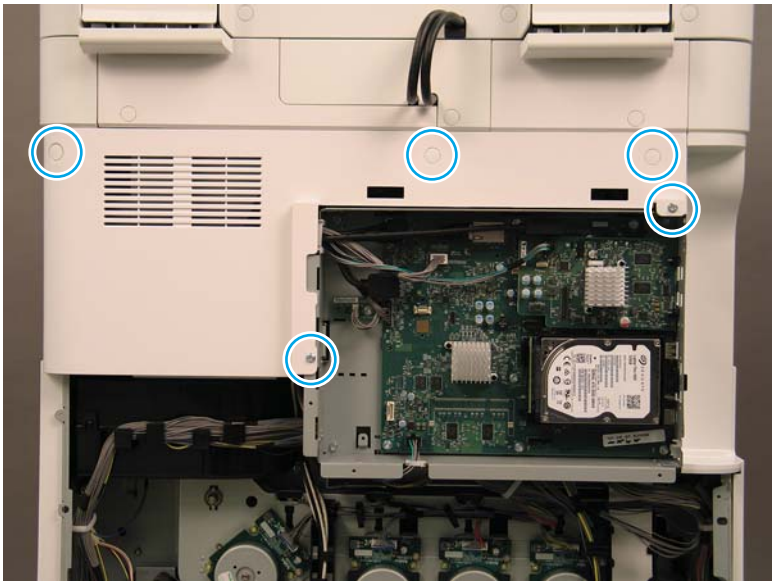


Remove the upper rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the upper rear cover.

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-119 Remove the upper rear cover

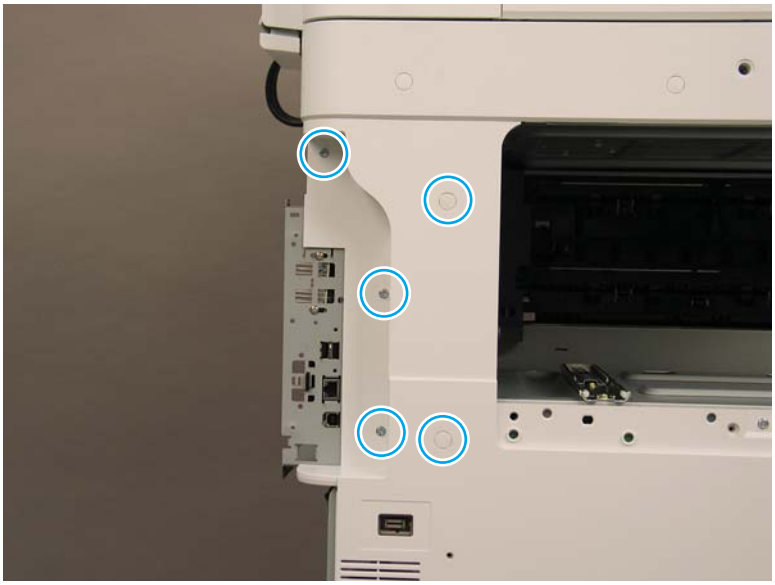


Remove the left rear corner cover

Follow these steps to remove the left rear corner cover.

▲ Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-120 Remove the left rear corner cover

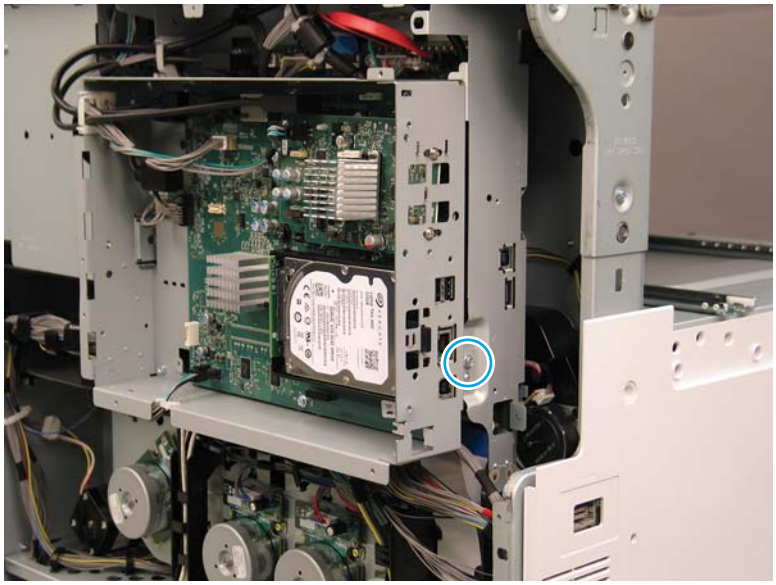


Remove the formatter and cage

Follow these steps to remove the formatter and cage.

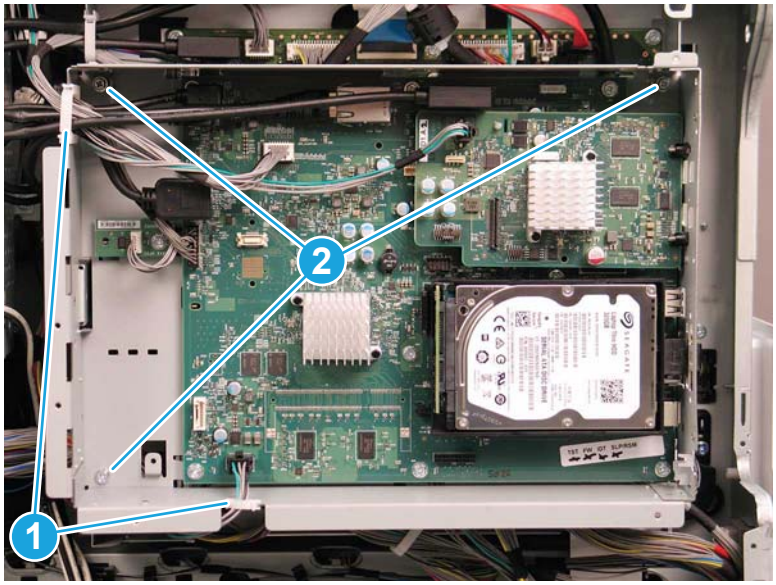
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 2-121 Remove one screw



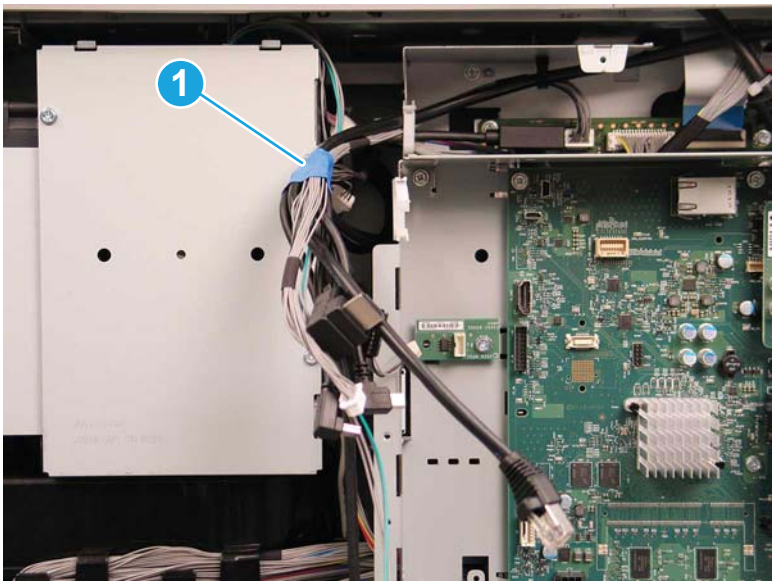
2. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter. Release the cables from two retainers on the sheet metal cage (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 2-122 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws



3. Before removing the formatter cage, place a piece of tape or a wire tie (callout 1) around the cables disconnected from the formatter on the left side. This will identify the cables that will be connected to the formatter during reassembly.

Figure 2-123 Identify the formatter cables



4. Lift the formatter cage up, push it to the right to clear the boss on the right side, and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

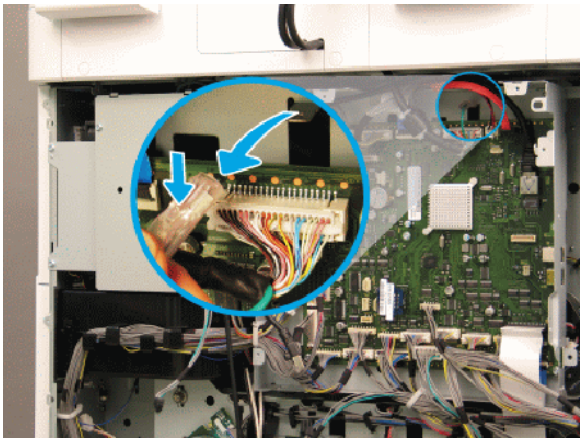
Remove the main board

Follow these steps to remove the main board.

1. One of the connectors that must be released above the main board is a spade connector.

IMPORTANT: Press in on the center part of the cable connector to release the latch, and then pull the cable away from the printer to disconnect it. Do not pull on connector without depressing the center latch.

Figure 2-124 Disconnect one connector

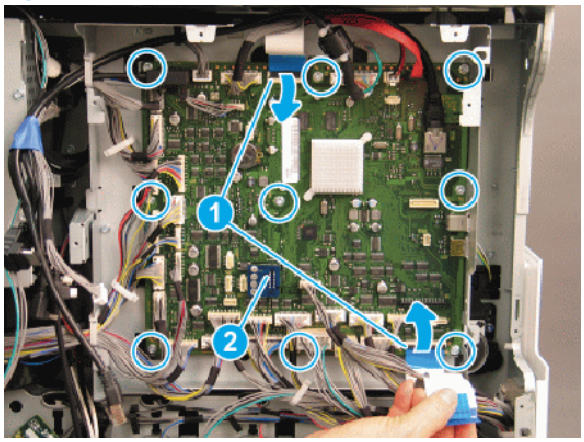


2. Disconnect all of the remaining connectors. Two of the flat cable connectors (callout 1) are zero insertion force (ZIF) connectors. Open the latch on the connectors before removing the flat cables. Remove the MSOK board (callout 2) and install it on the replacement main board. Remove nine screws, and then remove the main board.

IMPORTANT: Do not lose or damage the MSOK chip. It must be installed on the replacement main board in the correct orientation in order for the printer to function. The MSOK chip is extremely difficult to replace if it is lost or damaged.

IMPORTANT: A shade Test for the ADF must be completed after replacing the ADF unit or the Main board.

Figure 2-125 Remove the main board



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following**special installation instructions**.

Removal and replacement: Accelerator board (GX ADF only)

Learn how to remove and replace the accelerator board.

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the accelerator board.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-22 Part information

Part number	Part description
X3A62-60001	Accelerator PCA

NOTE: An accelerator PCA is only installed on some early models during original release. This has been removed from all new models.

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

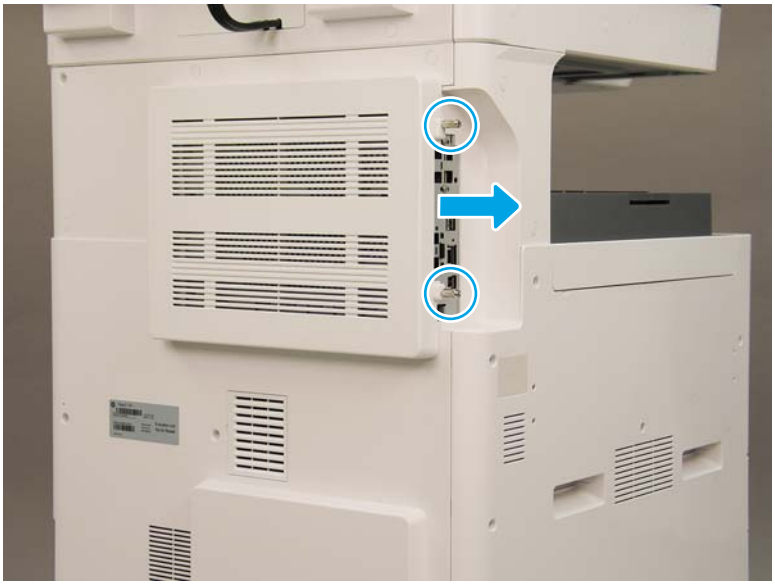
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

▲ Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-126 Remove the formatter cover



Remove the accelerator board

Follow these steps to remove the accelerator board.

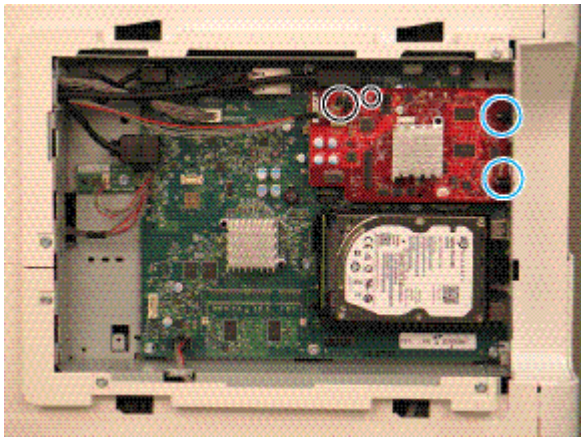
CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

▲ Loosen two screws, retained in plastic clips, on the outside of the formatter cage. Disconnect one connector, release the plastic locator pin, and then gently lift the accelerator board away from the formatter by the edges.

NOTE: A connector on the back of the accelerator board holds the board on the formatter.

IMPORTANT: Do not lift the accelerator board by the heat sink.

Figure 2-127 Remove the accelerator PCA



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Island of data (IOD; du models)

Learn how to remove and replace the IOD (du bundles).

View a video of how to remove and replace the IOD (du models).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-23 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC92-02971A	Island of Data board (du models)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver withs a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

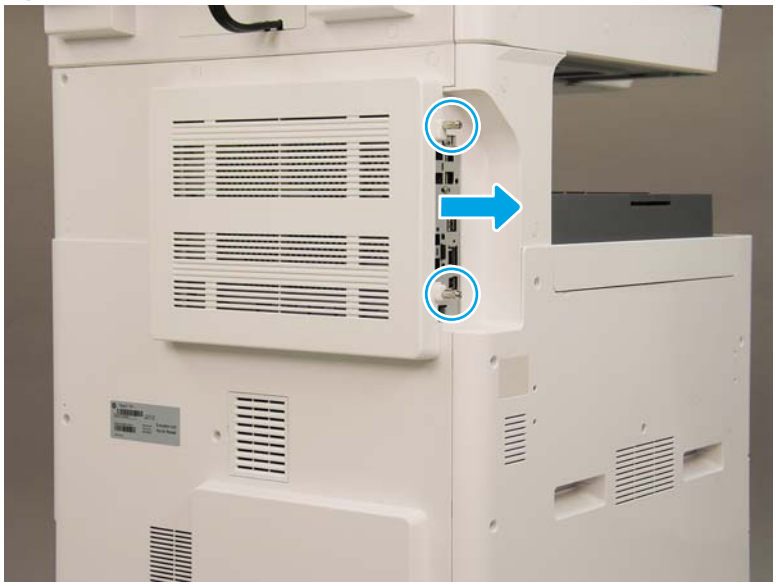
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-128 Remove the formatter cover



Remove the island of data (IOD; du models)

Follow these steps to remove the island of data (IOD; du models).

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

- Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then remove the IOD.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the HDD and the island of data (IOD) at the same time. Replace one component, turn the printer on and off, and then replace the second component.

Figure 2-129 Remove the IOD (du models)

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Island of data (IOD)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the Island of Data (IOD).

View a video of how to remove and replace the Island of Data (IOD).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-24 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC92-02971A	Island of Data board

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

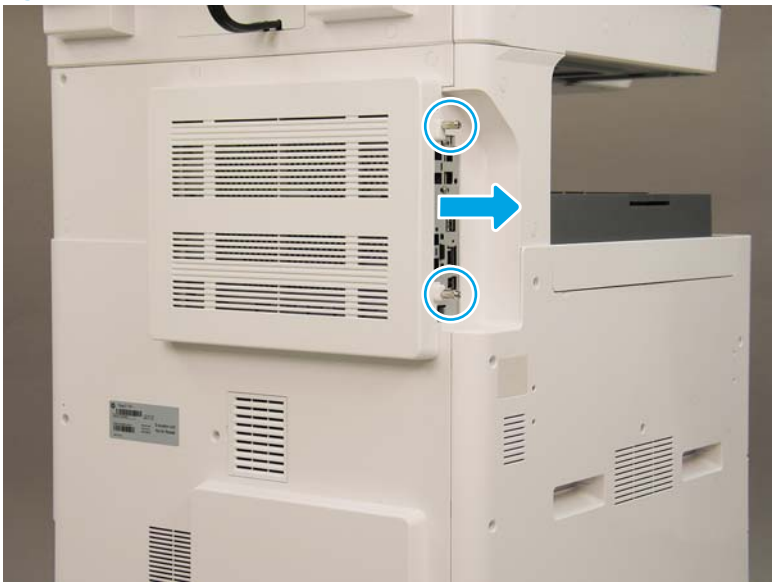
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-130 Remove the formatter cover



Remove the island of data (IOD)

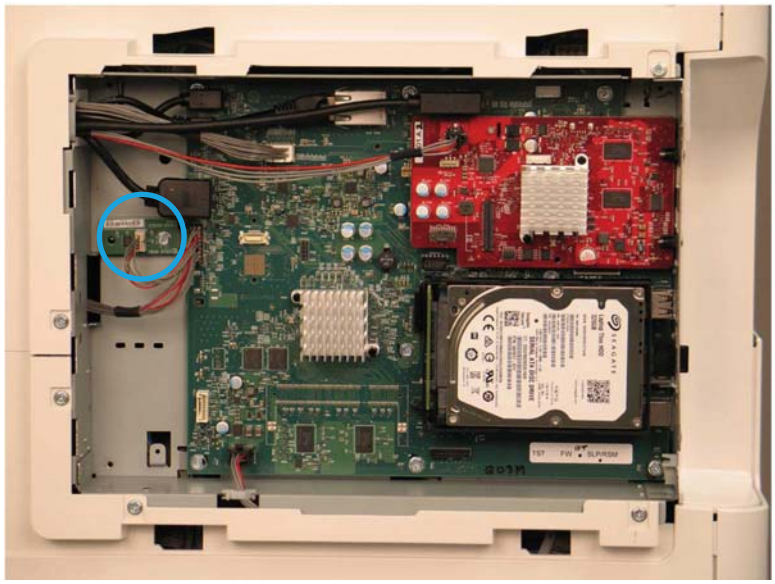
Follow these steps to remove the island of data (IOD).

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

- Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then remove the IOD.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the HDD and the island of data (IOD) at the same time. Replace one component, turn the printer on and off, and then replace the second component.

Figure 2-131 Remove the IOD



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Formatter hard disk drive (HDD; du models)

Learn how to remove and replace the HDD (du models).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the HDD (du models).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-25 Part information

Part number	Part description
5851-6712	Formatter HDD - 320 GB SED (du models)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

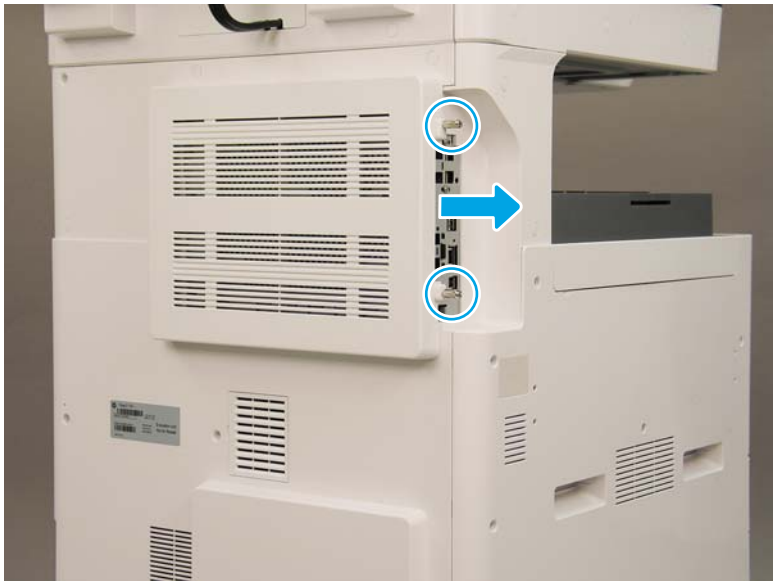
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

▲ Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-132 Remove the formatter cover



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD; du models)

Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD; du models).

▲ Release one retainer, and then rotate the HDD away from the formatter to remove it.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the HDD and the island of data (IOD) at the same time. Replace one component, turn the printer on and off, and then replace the second component.

Figure 2-133 Remove the HDD (du models)

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Formatter hard disk drive (HDD)

Learn how to remove and replace the HDD.

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the HDD.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-26 Part information

Part number	Part description
5851-6712	Formatter HDD - 320 GB SED

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

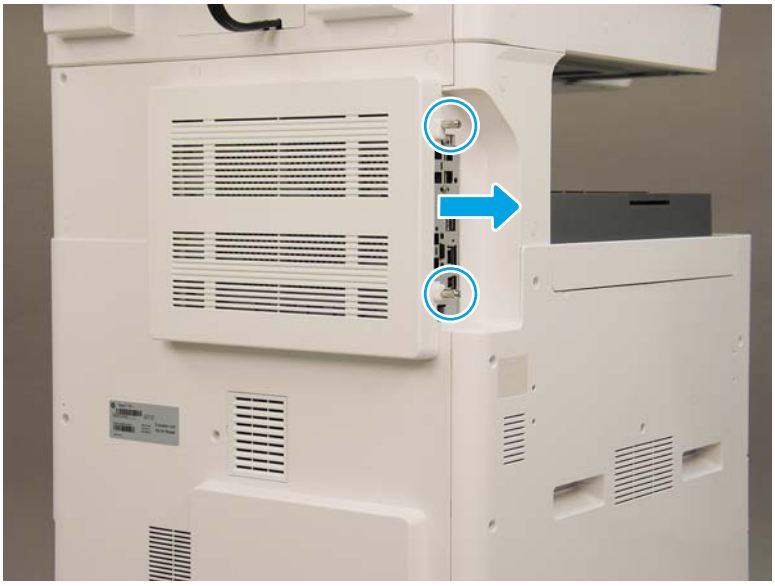
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

▲ Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-134 Remove the formatter cover



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

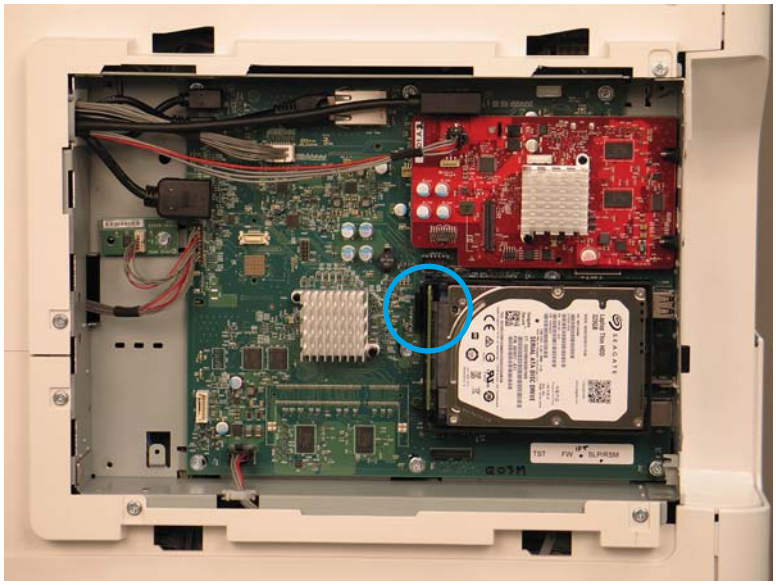
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

▲ Release one retainer, and then rotate the HDD away from the formatter to remove it.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the HDD and the island of data (IOD) at the same time. Replace one component, turn the printer on and off, and then replace the second component.

Figure 2-135 Remove the HDD



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Formatter (du models)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the formatter (du models).

View a video of how to remove and replace the formatter (du models).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-27 Part information

Part number	Part description
X3A92-60003	Formatter PCA (du models)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver withs a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

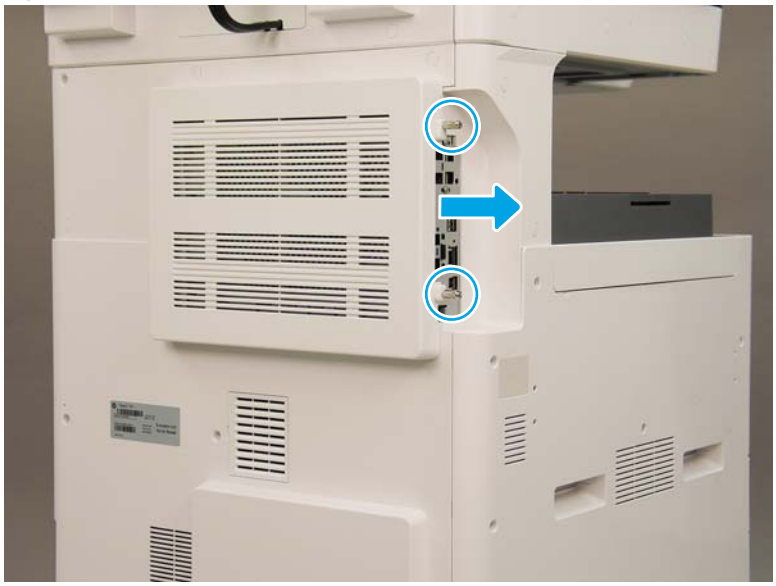
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-136 Remove the formatter cover



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD; du models)

Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD; du models).

- Release one retainer, and then rotate the HDD away from the formatter to remove it.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the HDD and the island of data (IOD) at the same time. Replace one component, turn the printer on and off, and then replace the second component.

Figure 2-137 Remove the HDD (du models)

Remove the formatter PCA (du models)

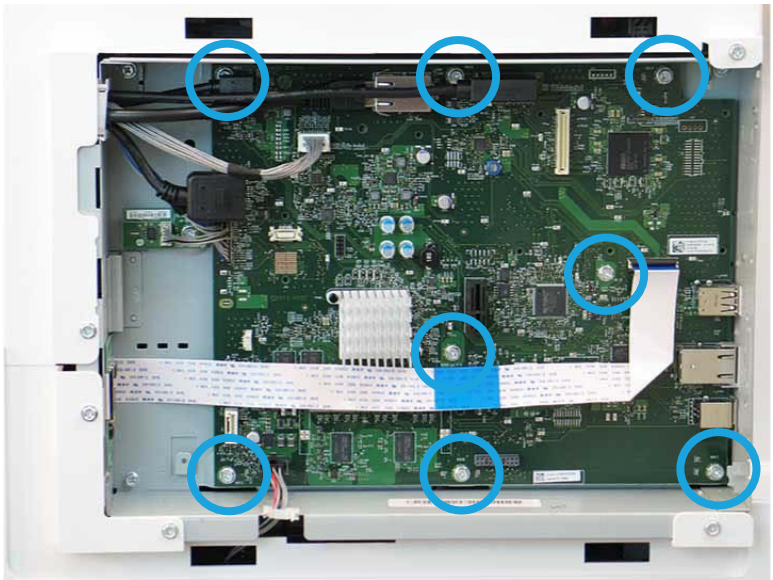
Follow these steps to remove the formatter PCA (du models).

▲ Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter board, remove seven screws, and then remove the formatter PCA.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the formatter and the main PCA at the same time. Replace one component, turn the printer on and off, and then replace the second component.

Figure 2-138 Remove the formatter PCA (du models)



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Formatter

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the formatter.

View a video of how to remove and replace the formatter.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-28 Part information

Part number	Part description
X3A92-60001	Formatter PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

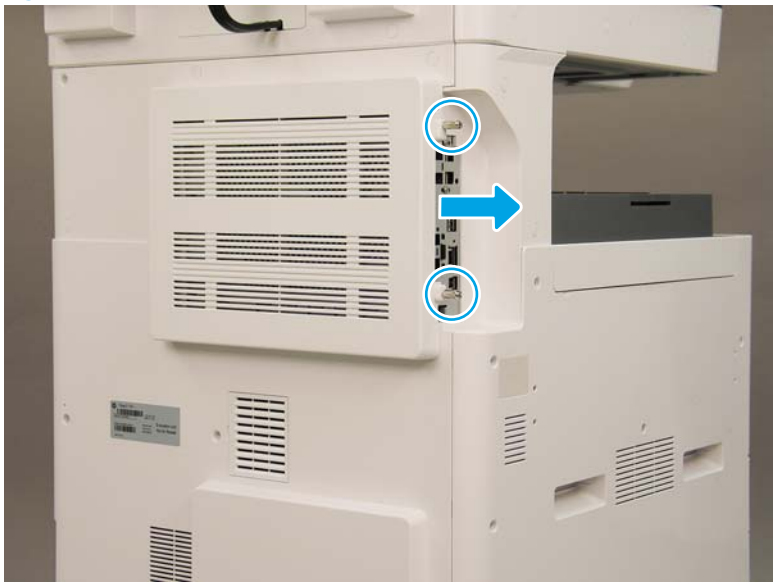
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-139 Remove the formatter cover



Remove the accelerator board

Follow these steps to remove the accelerator board.

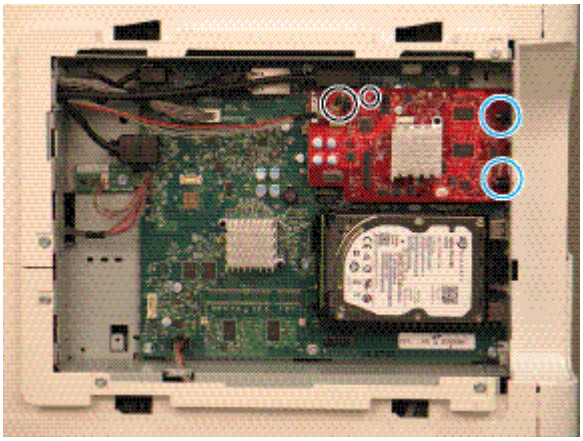
CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

- Loosen two screws, retained in plastic clips, on the outside of the formatter cage. Disconnect one connector, release the plastic locator pin, and then gently lift the accelerator board away from the formatter by the edges.

NOTE: A connector on the back of the accelerator board holds the board on the formatter.

IMPORTANT: Do not lift the accelerator board by the heat sink.

Figure 2-140 Remove the accelerator PCA



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

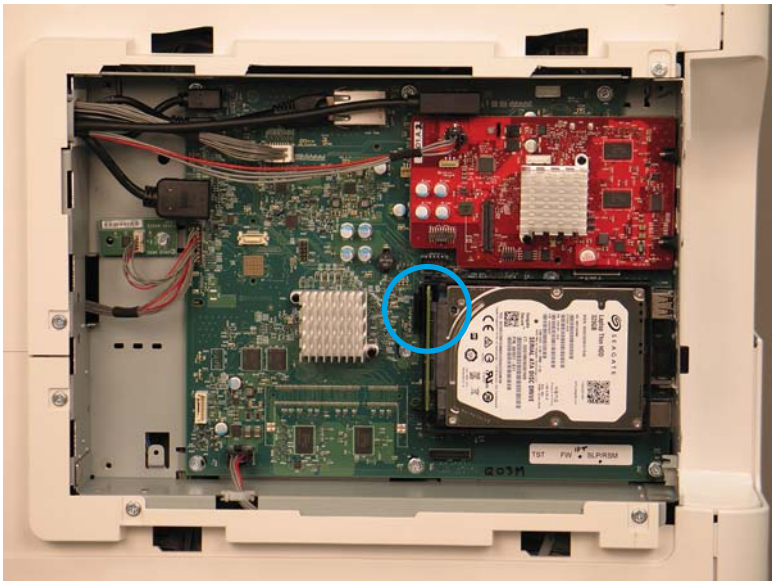
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

- Release one retainer, and then rotate the HDD away from the formatter to remove it.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the HDD and the island of data (IOD) at the same time. Replace one component, turn the printer on and off, and then replace the second component.

Figure 2-141 Remove the HDD



Remove the formatter PCA

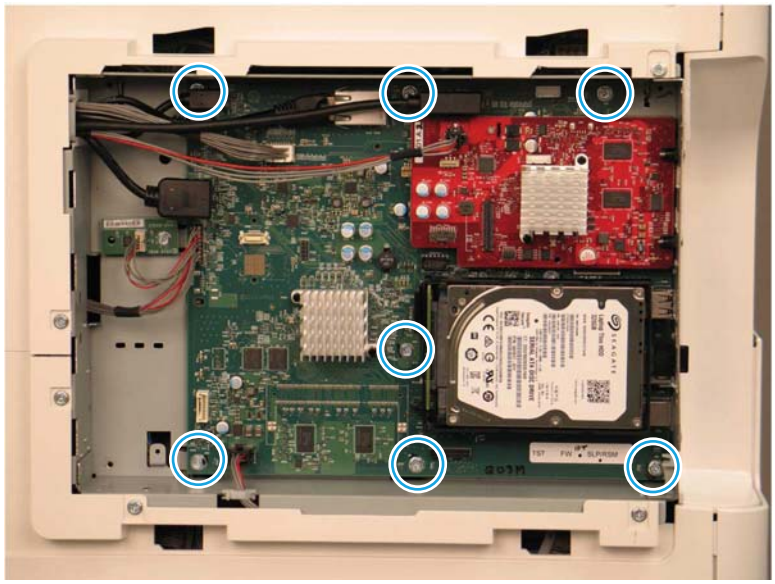
Follow these steps to remove the formatter PCA.

- Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter board, remove seven screws, and then remove the formatter PCA.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the formatter and the main PCA at the same time. Replace one component, turn the printer on and off, and then replace the second component.

Figure 2-142 Remove the formatter PCA



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Control panel

Learn how to remove and replace the control panel.

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the control panel.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-29 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L47-60101	Control panel

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Verify that the control panel illuminates and displays information while the printer is initializing. Verify control panel functionality after initialization.

Remove the control panel bezel

Follow these steps to remove the control panel bezel.

1. Open the document feeder, and then remove three screws.

   Figure 2-143 Remove the control panel bezel.

2. Place the control panel in the upright position.
3. Gently pry the control-panel bezel from the center screw hole, and then pry from the center of the control-panel bezel to the edges to release.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not pry against the scanner glass when removing the control-panel bezel.

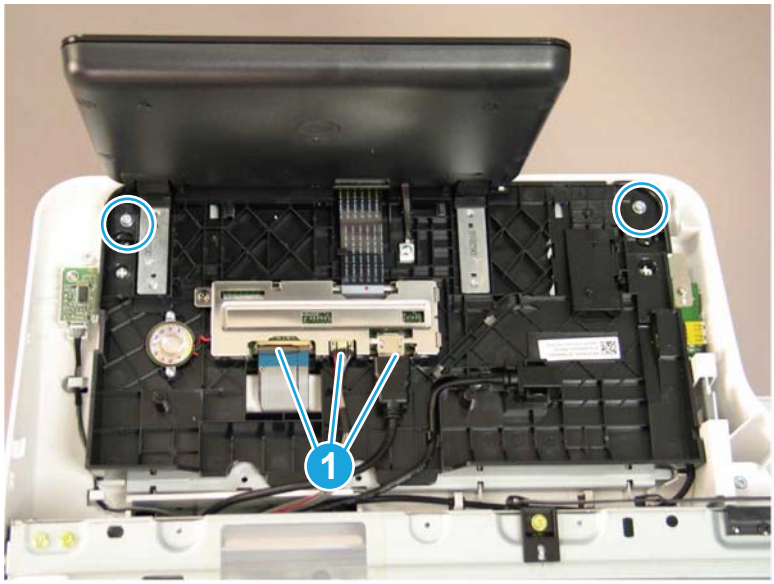
Remove the control panel

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

1. Place the control panel in the upright position.

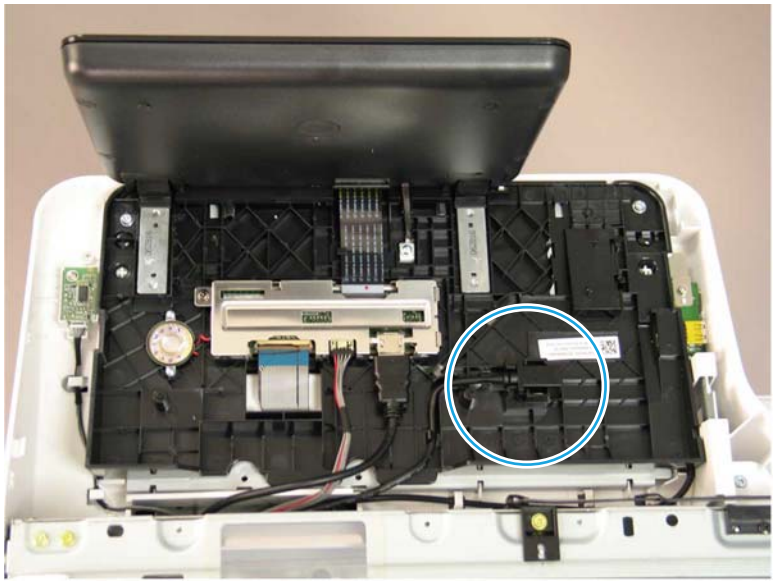
2. Disconnect one FFC, one connector, and one HDMI connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws on the control-panel frame.

Figure 2-144 Remove the control panel screws and disconnect connectors



3. Remove the USB interconnect cable from its retainer and reroute out of the way.

Figure 2-145 Remove the USB interconnect cable



4. Lift the control panel up from the front to release the tabs at the rear, and then remove the control panel.

Reinstallation tip: Align the four tabs at the rear or control panel, and then snap in the control panel.

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Keyboard (z bundles)

Learn how to remove and replace the keyboard.

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the keyboard.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-30 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L47-60102	US English keyboard assembly
B5L47-60103	UK English keyboard assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Type on the keyboard and verify that it is recognized by the control panel.

Remove the control panel bezel

Follow these steps to remove the control panel bezel.

1. Open the document feeder, and then remove three screws.

   Figure 2-146 Remove the control panel bezel.

2. Place the control panel in the upright position.
3. Gently pry the control-panel bezel from the center screw hole, and then pry from the center of the control-panel bezel to the edges to release.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not pry against the scanner glass when removing the control-panel bezel.

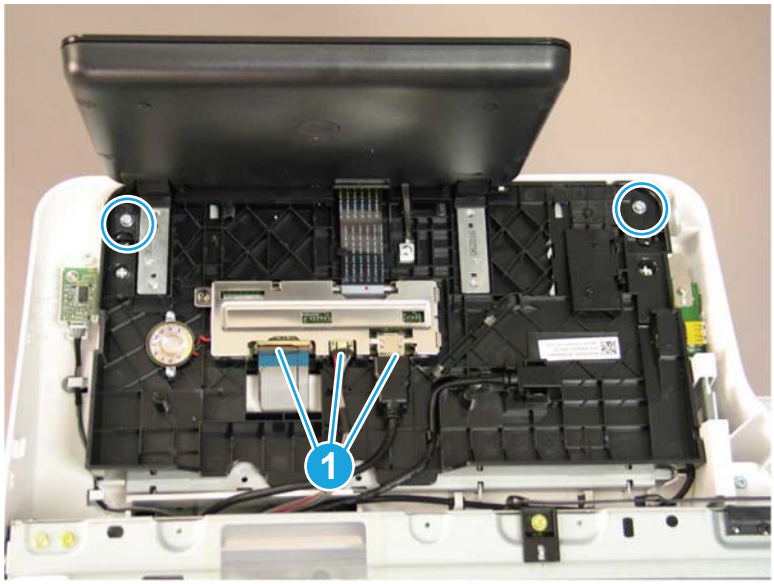
Remove the control panel

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

1. Place the control panel in the upright position.

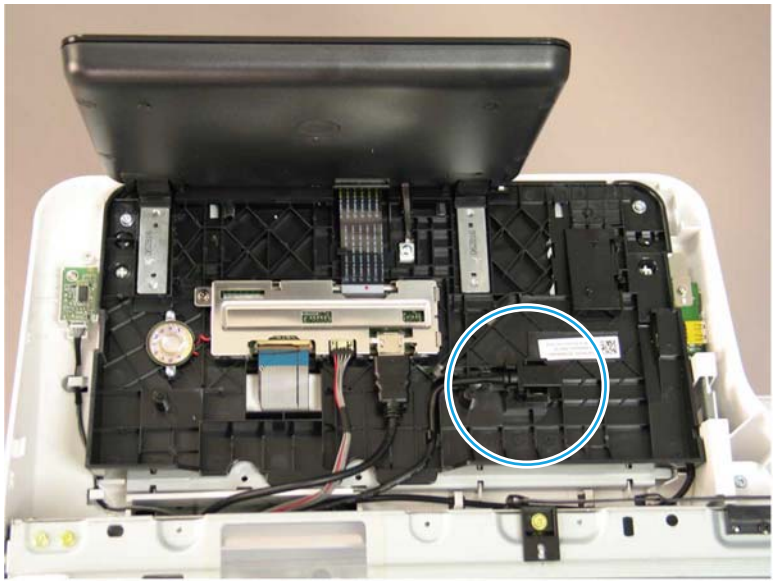
2. Disconnect one FFC, one connector, and one HDMI connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws on the control-panel frame.

Figure 2-147 Remove the control panel screws and disconnect connectors



3. Remove the USB interconnect cable from its retainer and reroute out of the way.

Figure 2-148 Remove the USB interconnect cable



4. Lift the control panel up from the front to release the tabs at the rear, and then remove the control panel.

Reinstallation tip: Align the four tabs at the rear or control panel, and then snap in the control panel.

Remove the keyboard (z bundles)

Follow these steps to remove the keyboard (z bundles).

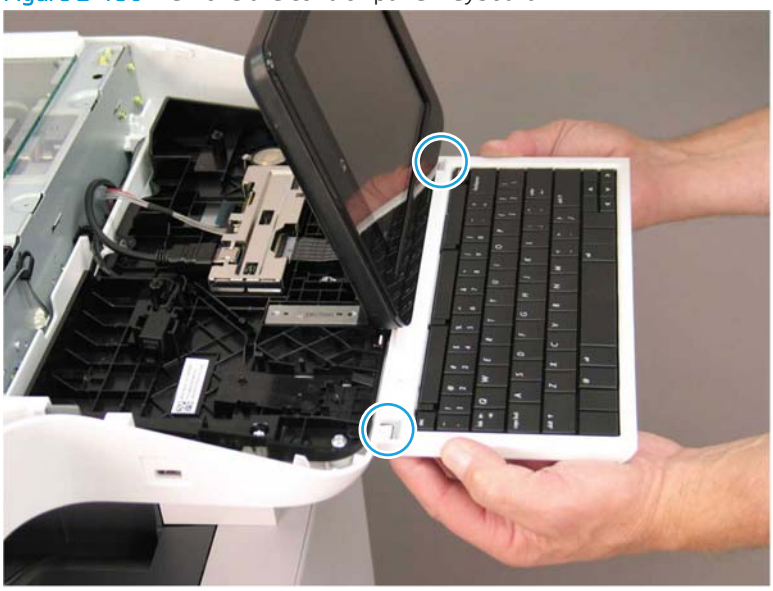
Keyboard bundles only. For all other models, skip this step.

1. Disconnect one FFC.

Figure 2-149 Disconnect one FFC

2. Slide the keyboard out, and then depress two latches to remove the keyboard.

Figure 2-150 Remove the control-panel keyboard



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Imaging drum unit

Learn how to remove and replace the imaging drum unit.

View a video of how to remove and replace the imaging drum unit.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-31 Part information

Part number	Part description
X3A92-67905	HP LaserJet Black Imaging Drum Unit
X3A92-67906	HP LaserJet CMY Imaging Drum Unit

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the imaging drum

Follow these steps to remove the imaging drum.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).
2. There are four locking levers, one for each color. Pull down on the locking lever for the color drum unit that is being replaced.

   Figure 2-151 Release locking lever

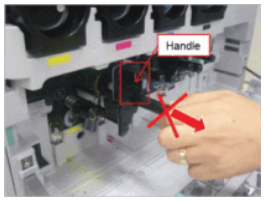
3. Grip the handle and remove the drum unit.

NOTE: Open the right door to remove the black drum.

CAUTION: Do not grip the waste toner connection when removing the drum unit.

Do not touch the shiny surface on the imaging drum. Cover the drum with a sheet of paper while it is out of the printer to limit light exposure.

Figure 2-152 Remove the drum unit



TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install accessory: HP Foreign interface harness (FIH) solution

Lear how to install the Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) accessory.

View a video of how to remove and replace the Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) accessory.

Mean time to repair: 1 minute

Service level: Basic

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-32 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L31-67902	Foreign interface harness

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove this part.

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Make sure that the printer initializes to a **Ready** state.

Connect a third party solution to the FIH, and then verify it correctly functions.

Unpack the FIH accessory

Follow these steps to unpack the FIH accessory.

- Unpack the accessory from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

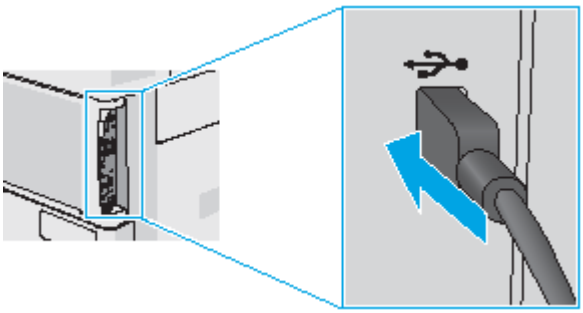
IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

Install the FIH accessory

Follow these steps to install the FIH accessory.

- Locate the USB connector on the printer formatter. Connect the FIH to this connector

Figure 2-153 Connect the FIH



Removal and replacement: NFC Kit Installation

Learn how to install the NFC kit.

View a video of how to install the NFC kit.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-33 **Part information**

Part number	Part description
J8030-61001	Jetdirect Wireless Print Server with NFC Kit

Required tools

- Small, flat-blade screwdriver.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Make sure that the printer initializes to a **Ready** state.

Verify that the light on the NFC accessory illuminates to confirm the installation is correct.

Verify that a wireless network icon appears on the control panel.

Unpack the NFC kit

Follow these steps to unpack the NFC kit.

▲ Unpack the kit from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

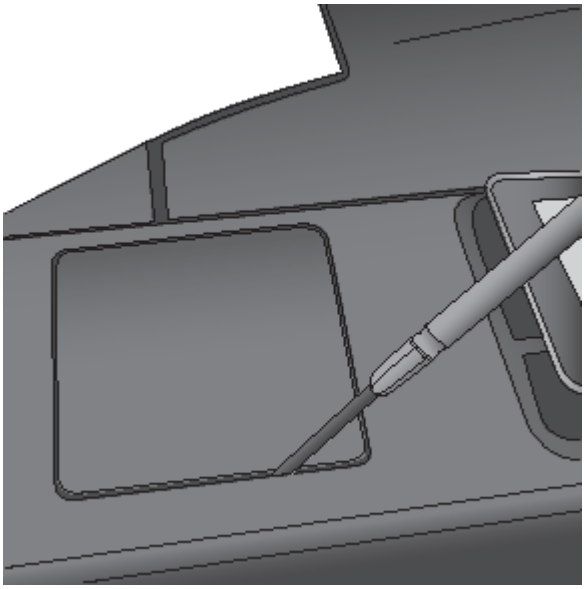
IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the part prior to installation.

Install the NFC kit

Follow these steps to install the NFC kit.

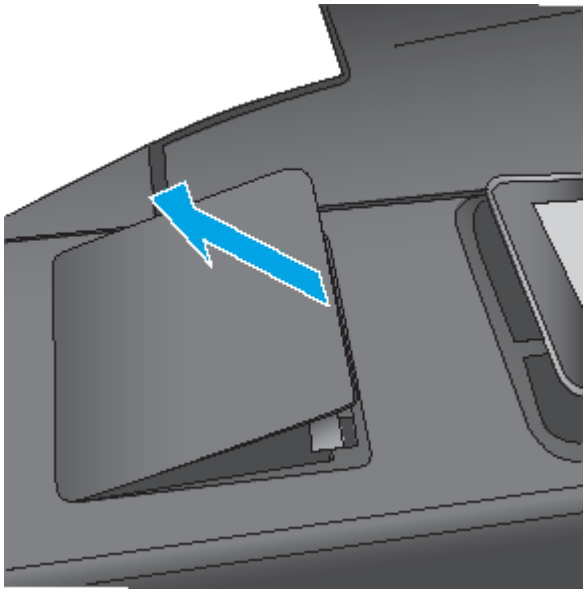
1. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the HIP cover.

Figure 2-154 Release the HIP cover



2. Remove the HIP cover.

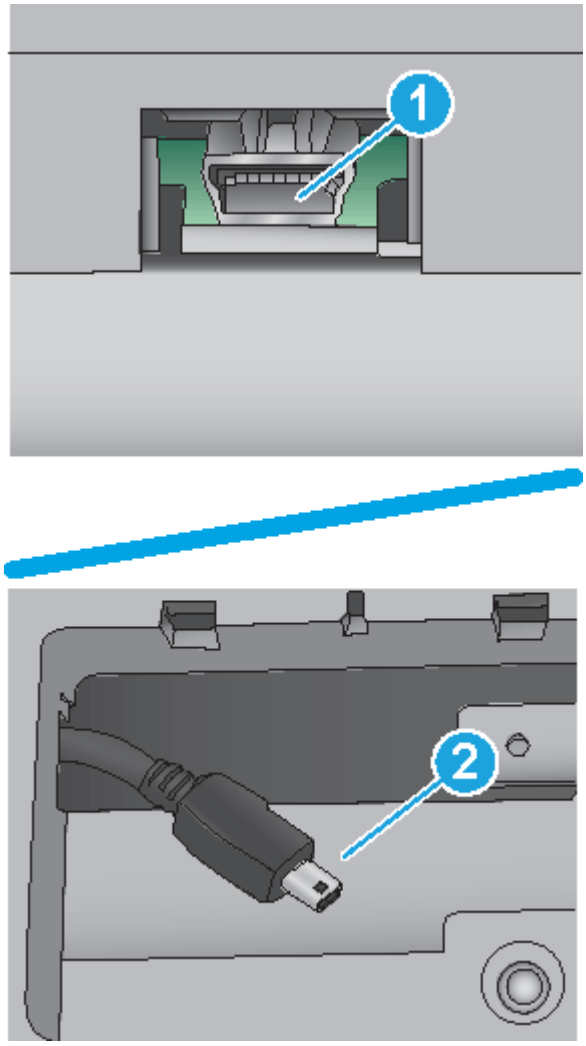
Figure 2-155 Remove the HIP cover



3. Identify the USB connector in the HIP, and then attach the appropriate USB cable:

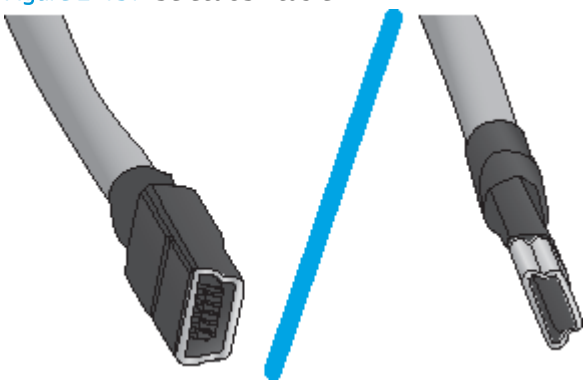
   a. Locate the USB connector that is along one of the short edges. A USB Mini B receptacle (callout 1) is the most common. However, on some models, a USB Mini B plug (callout 2) is used.

Figure 2-156 Identify USB connector



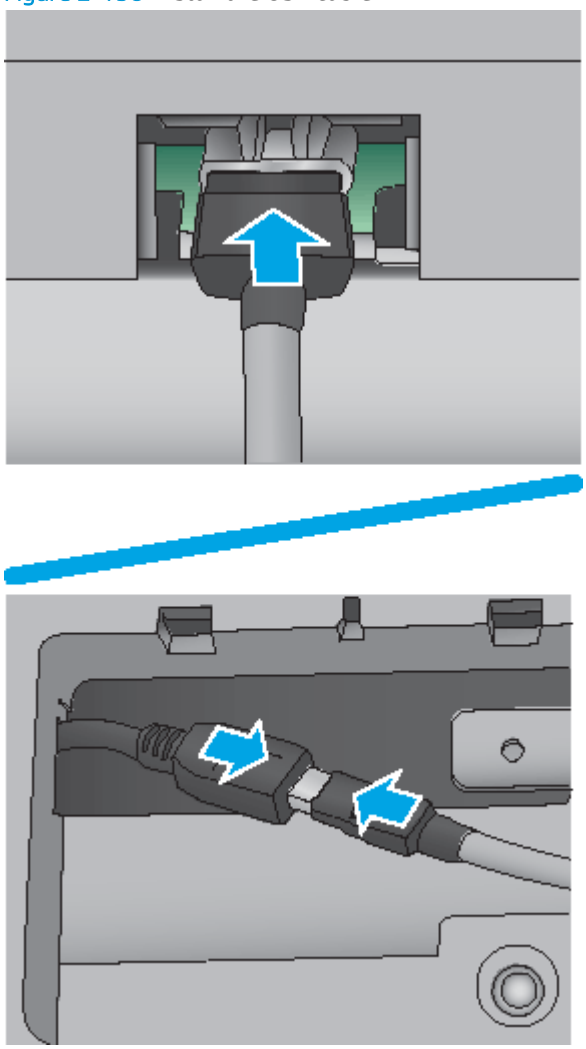
b. Select the appropriate cable from the two that are provided.

Figure 2-157 Select USB cable



c. Install the USB cable in the socket in the HIP. Note that the USB logo on the connector may face down on some models.

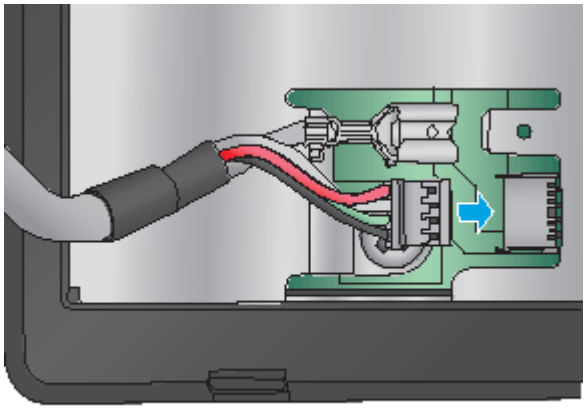
Figure 2-158 Install the USB cable



4. Attach the power and grounding ends of the USB cable:

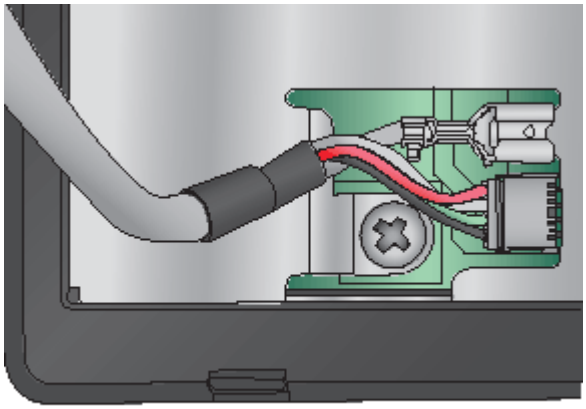
a. Attach the white power connector of the cable into the corresponding receptacle on the NFC accessory.

Figure 2-159 Install the white power connector



b. Attach the metal ground connector of the cable to the grounding tab on the NFC accessory.

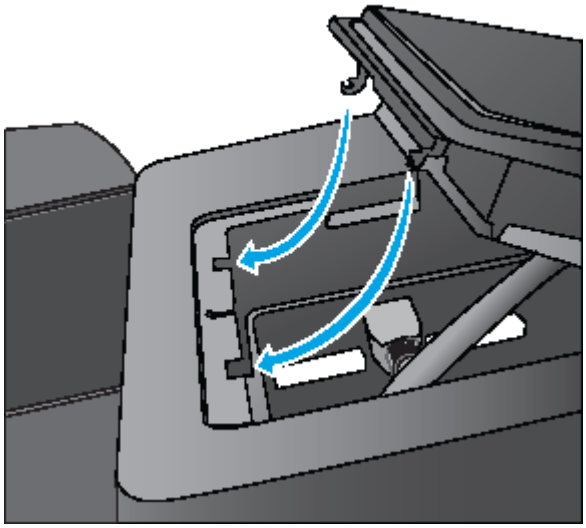
Figure 2-160 Attach the metal ground connector



5. Install the NFC accessory into the HIP recess.

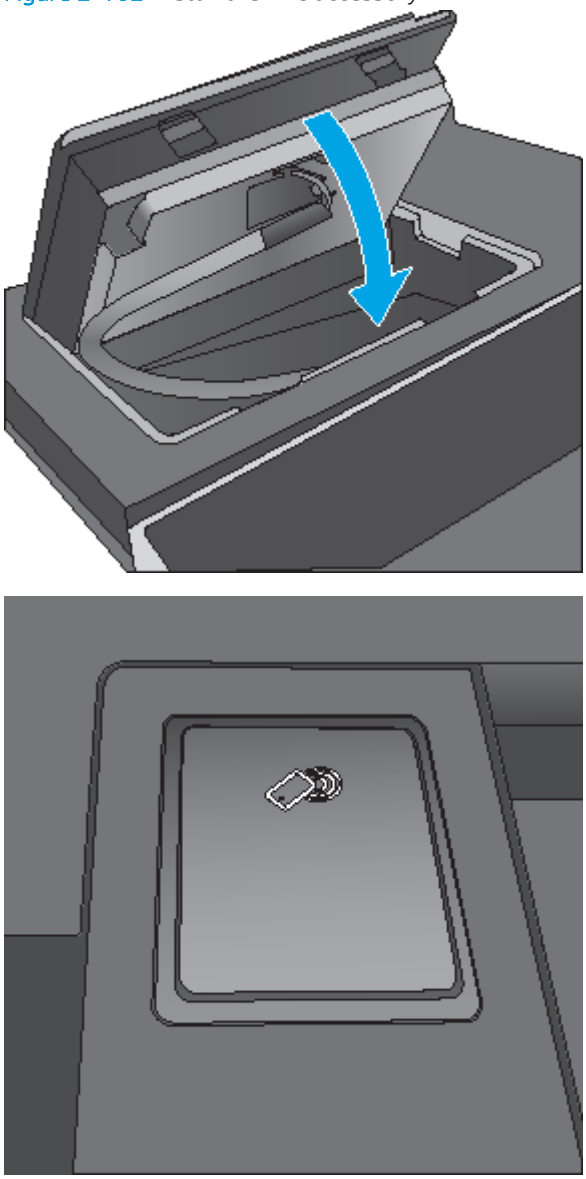
   a. Install the hook-shaped clips on the NFC accessory into the HIP recess.

Figure 2-161 Position the NFC accessory in the HIP recess



b. Gently push the NFC accessory onto the rounded clips so that it is held securely in place within the recess.

Figure 2-162 Install the NFC accessory



Removal and replacement: Front power switch

Learn how to remove and replace the front power switch.

View a video of how to remove and replace the front power switch.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-34 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC92-02969A	Front power switch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Press the power switch and verify that the printer turns on.

Remove the front top inner cover

Follow these steps to remove the front top inner cover.

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-163 Remove the front top inner cover

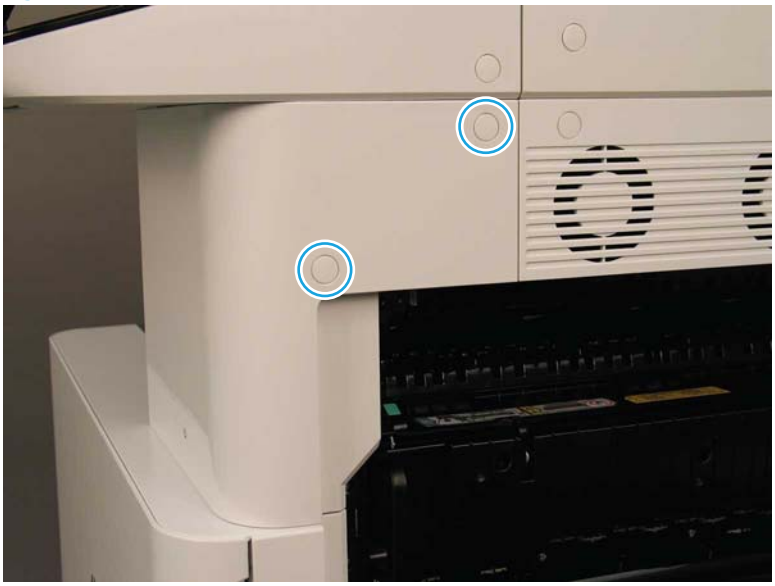
Remove the front power cover

Follow these steps to remove the front power cover.

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

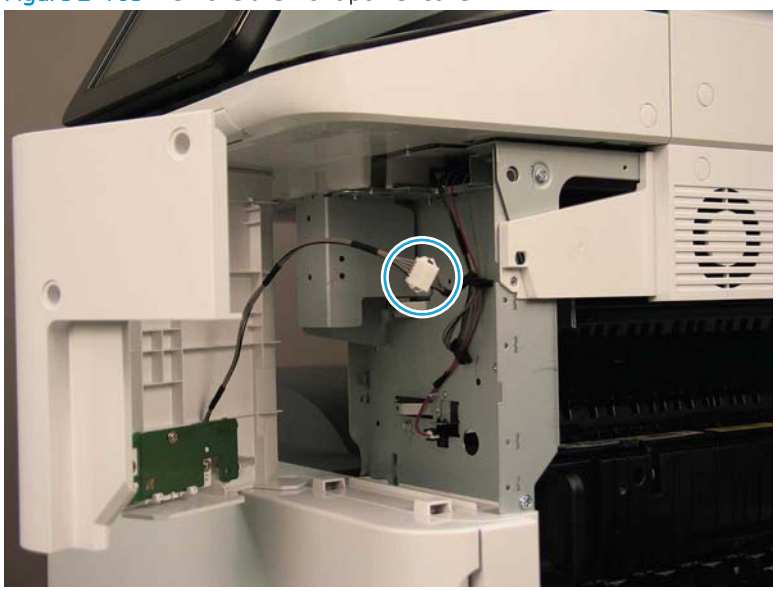
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 2-164 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-165 Remove the front power cover



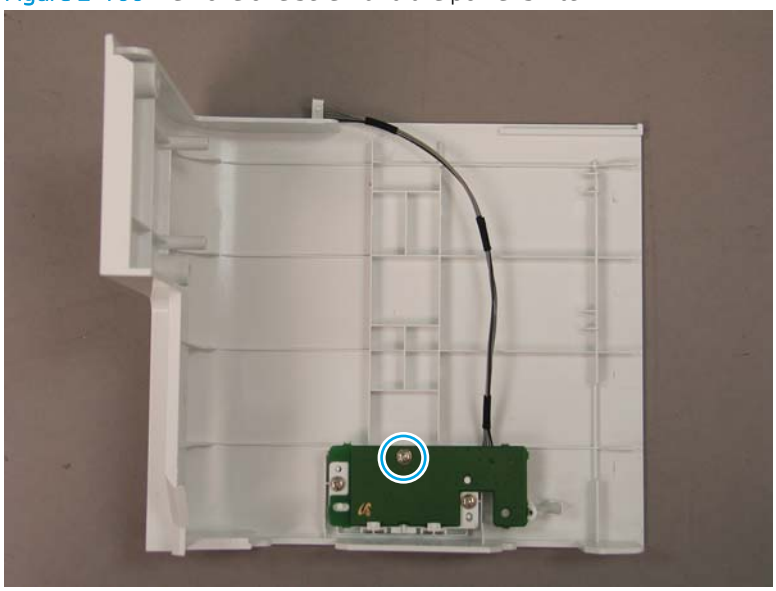
Remove the front power switch

Follow these steps to remove the front power switch.

▲ Remove one screw, and then remove the power switch board.

NOTE: If necessary, remove the power switch button assembly after removing the PCA.

Figure 2-166 Remove one screw and the power switch



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans

Learn how to remove and replace the low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans.

View a video of how to remove and replace the LVPS fans.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-35 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00161A	Low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans (Type 7)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

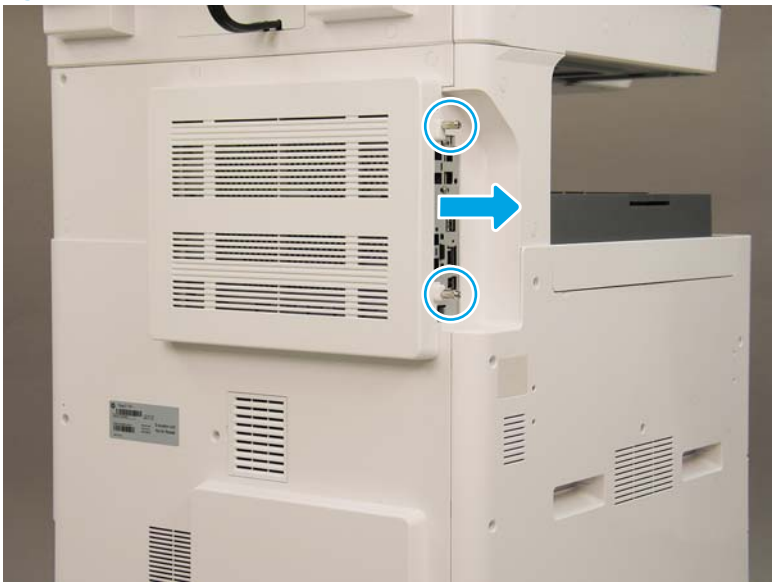
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-167 Remove the formatter cover

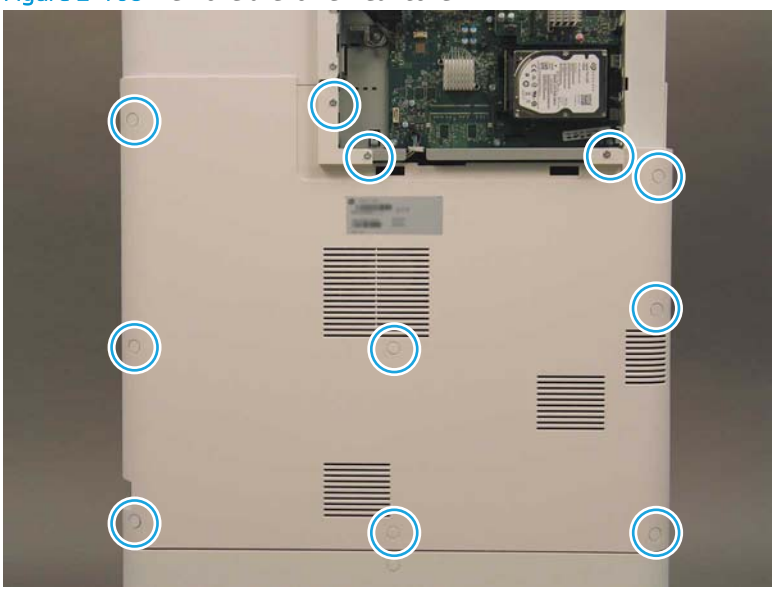


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-168 Remove the lower rear cover



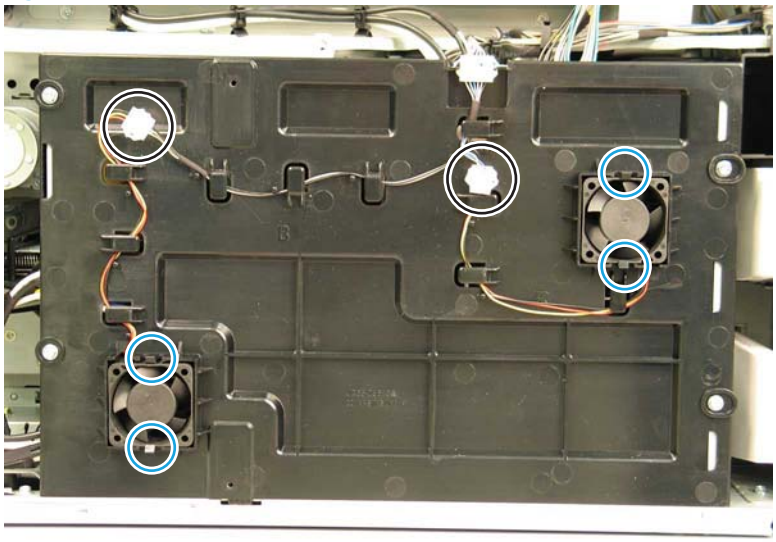
Remove the LVPS fans

Follow these steps to remove the LVPS fans.

▲ Disconnect two connectors, release four tabs, and then remove the LVPS fans.

Reinstallation tip: When installing replacement fans, make sure that the arrow embossed on the fans points into the printer.

Figure 2-169 Remove the LVPS fans



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following s**Special installation instructions**.

Removal and replacement: Low voltage power supply (LVPS) Type 4

Learn how to remove and replace the low voltage power supply (LVPS) type 4.

View a video of how to remove and replace the LVPS type 4.

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-36 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC44-00091D	LVPS 110V Type 4
JC44-00092D	LVPS 220V Type 4

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

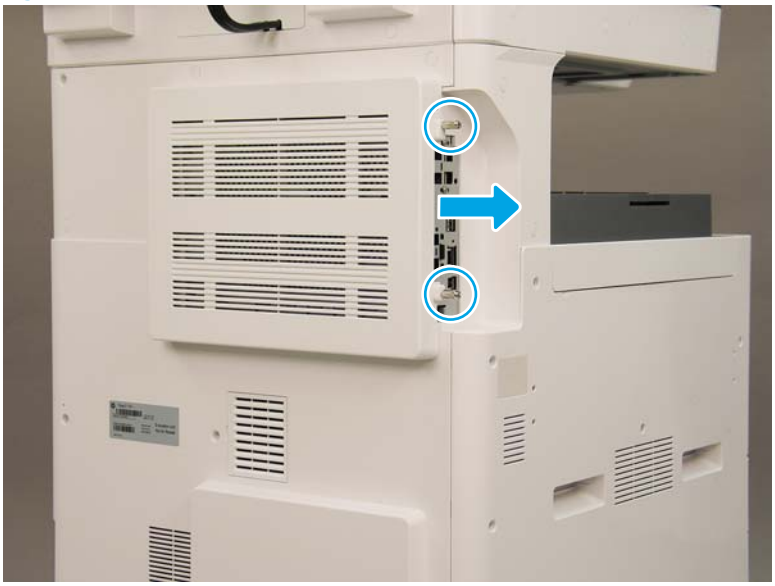
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-170 Remove the formatter cover

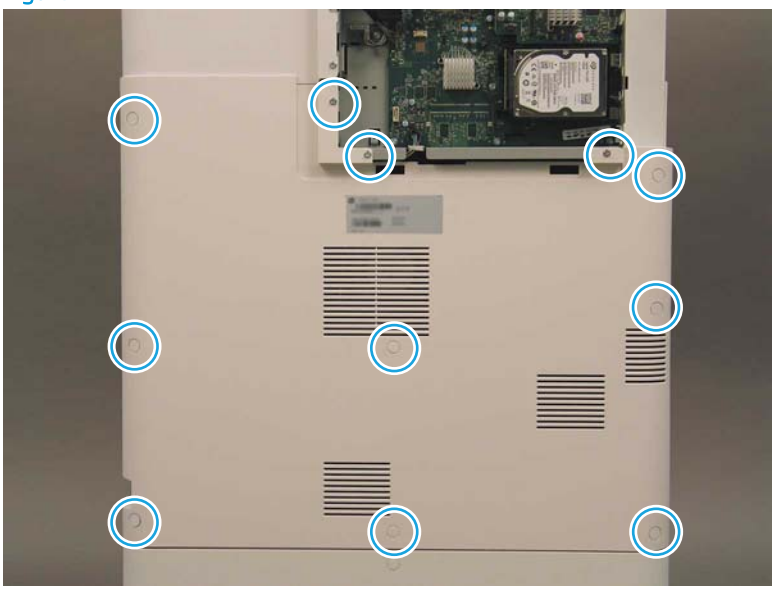


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-171 Remove the lower rear cover

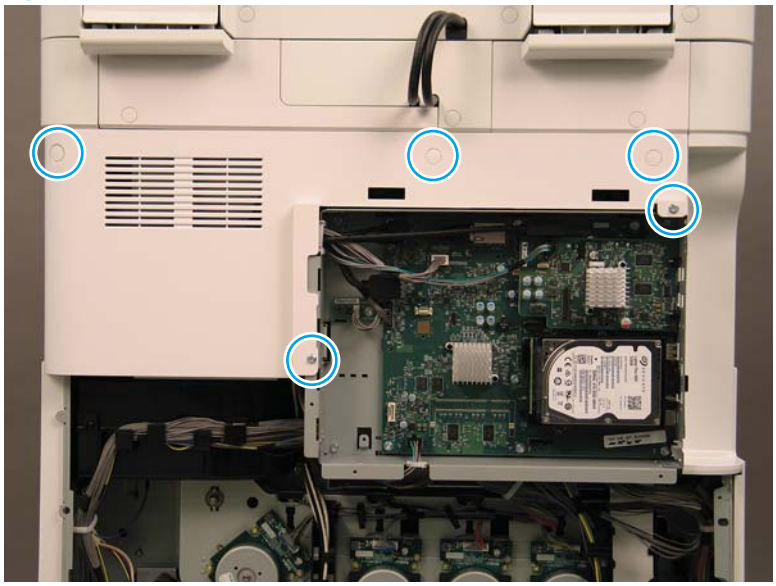


Remove the upper rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the upper rear cover.

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-172 Remove the upper rear cover



Remove the LVPS type 4

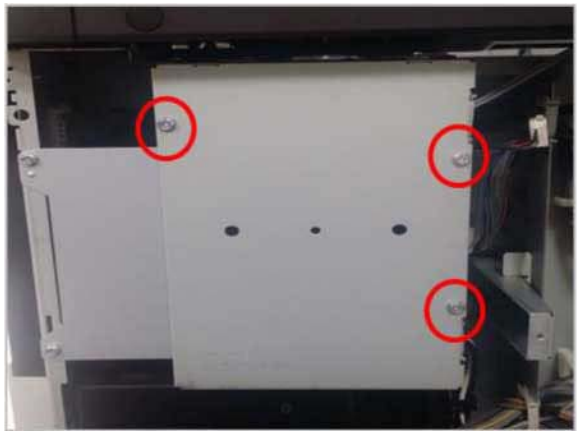
Follow these steps to remove the LVPS type 4.

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

NOTE: Many of the connectors on this board have retainers attached. Be sure to release the retainer before attempting to disconnect the connector.

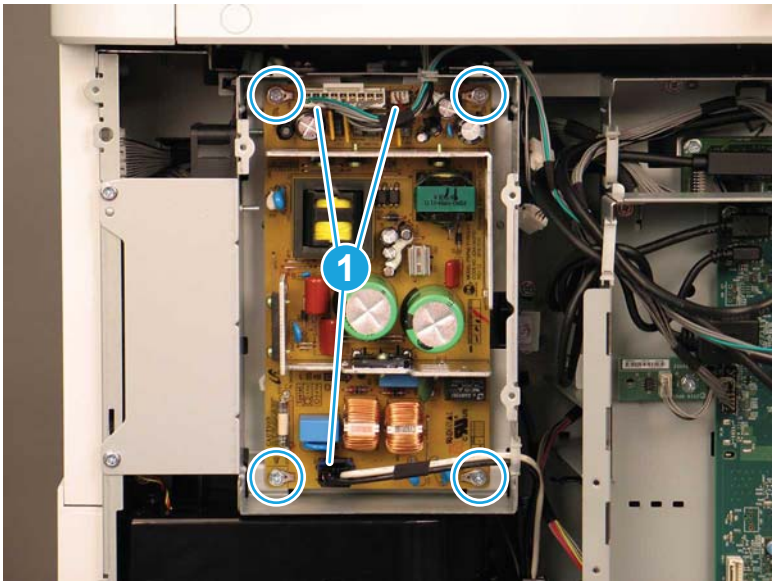
1. Remove three screws, then remove the shield-LVPS sub upper.

Figure 2-173 Remove the shield-LVPS sub upper



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), remove four screws, and then remove the LVPS type 4.

Figure 2-174 LVPS Type 4



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Lower tray connector

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the lower tray connector.

https://players.brightcove.net/1160438706001/SyKVJeRXx_default/index.html?videoId=ref:REFIDPH0000000170

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-37 Part information

Lower tray connector part number	
JC39-02187A	Lower tray connector

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

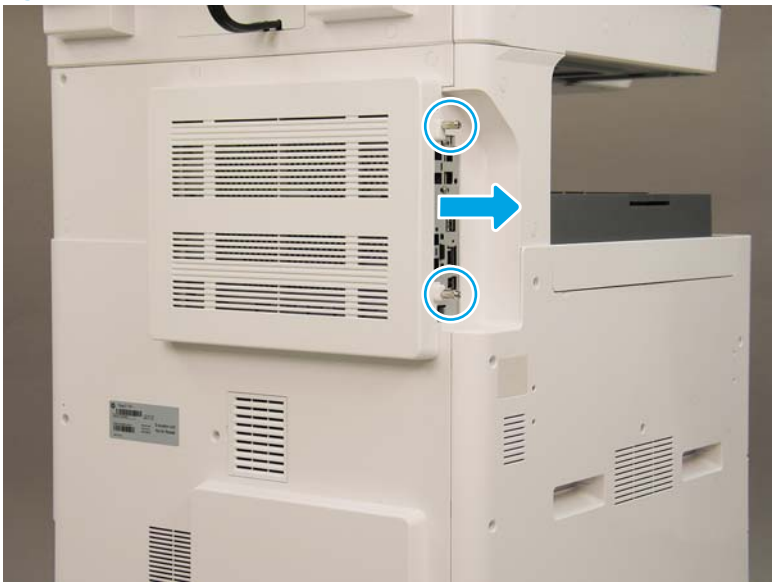
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-175 Remove the formatter cover

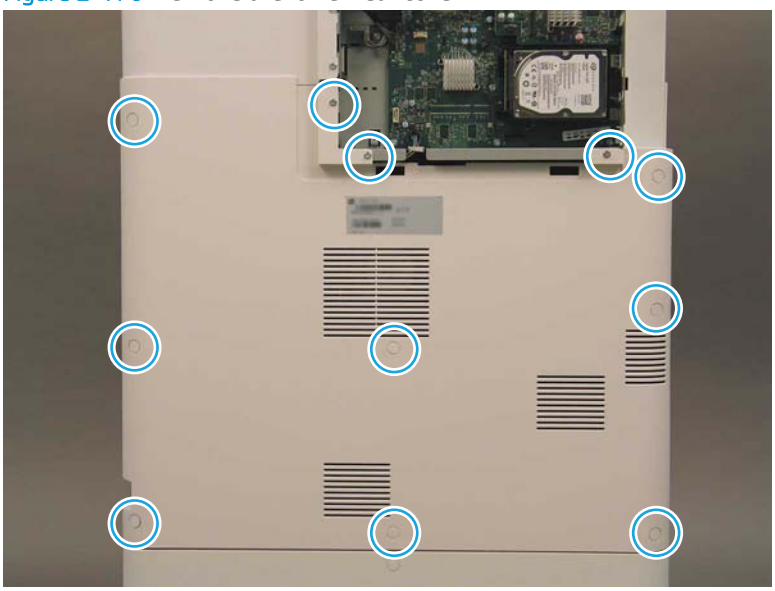


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-176 Remove the lower rear cover

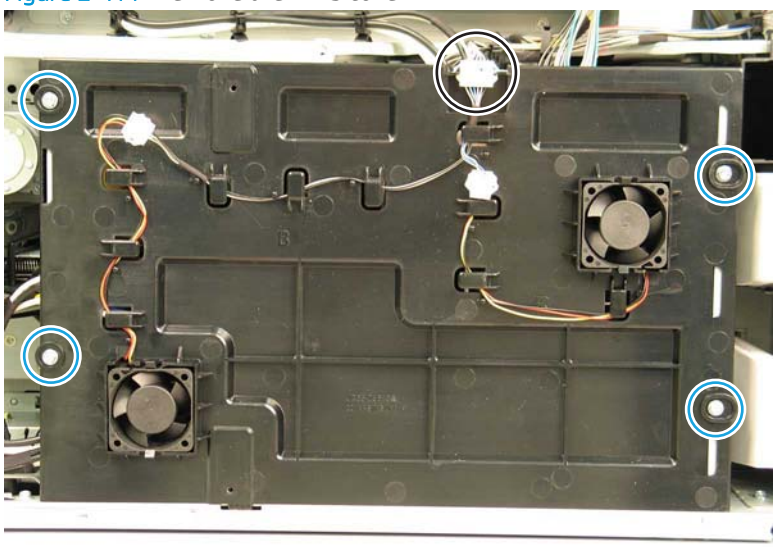


Remove the LVPS cover

Follow these steps to remove the LVPS cover.

▲ Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-177 Remove the LVPS cover

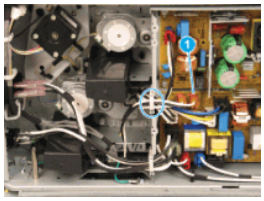


Remove the lower tray connector

Follow these steps to remove the lower tray connector.

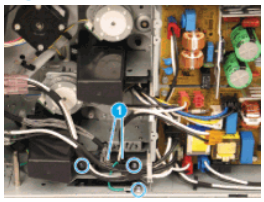
1. Release one retainer, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 2-178 Disconnect one connector



2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove three screws, and then remove the lower tray connector.

Figure 2-179 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Developer fan

Learn how to remove and replace the developer fan.

View a video of how to remove and replace the developer fan.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-38 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00130A	Developer fan

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

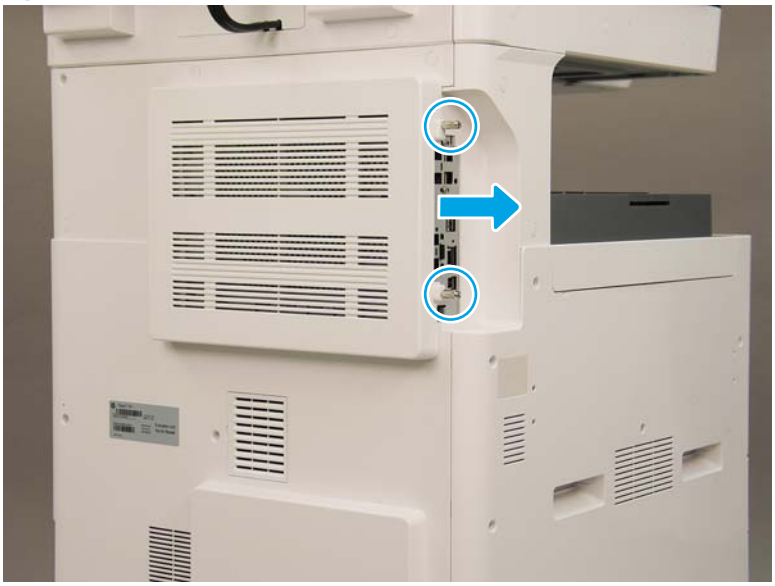
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-180 Remove the formatter cover

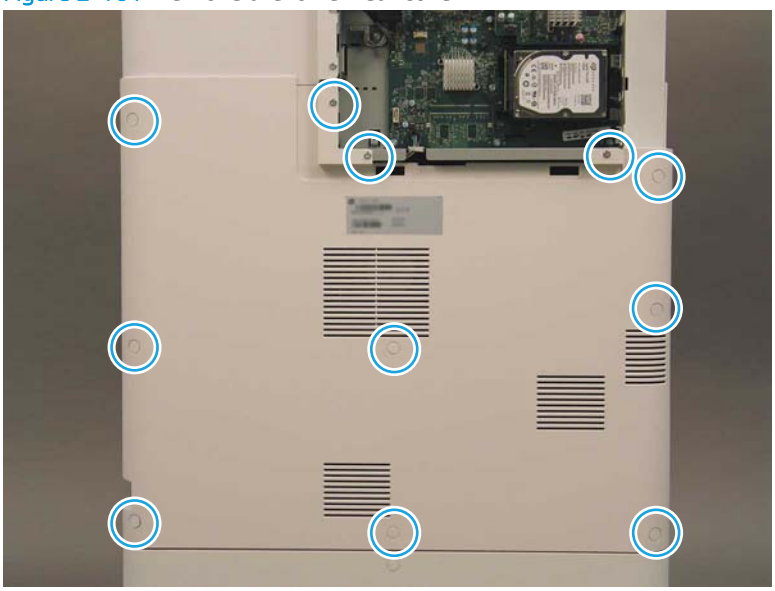


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-181 Remove the lower rear cover

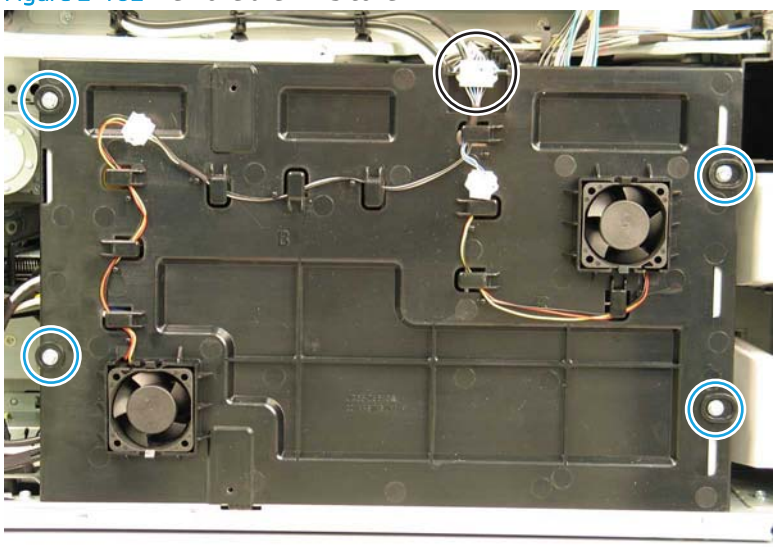


Remove the LVPS cover

Follow these steps to remove the LVPS cover.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-182 Remove the LVPS cover



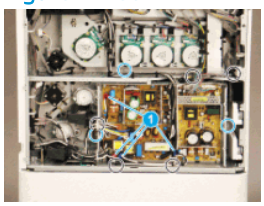
Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage

Follow these steps to remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage.

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

- Before removing the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage, note the location of four connectors (callout 1) that do not have to be disconnected. Disconnect the remaining connectors on the LVPS and fuser drive boards, and then release the cables from five retainers. Remove three screws, and then tilt the top of the cage out to remove it.

Figure 2-183 Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage



Remove the developer fan

Follow these steps to remove the developer fan.

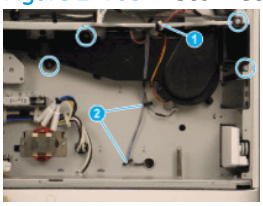
1. Remove Tray 2.

2. Inside the Tray 2 opening, disconnect one connector.

Figure 2-184 Disconnect one connector

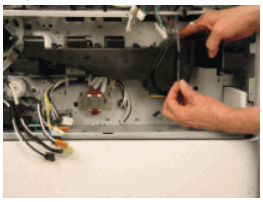
3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release two retainers (callout 2), and then remove four screws (callout 3).

Figure 2-185 Disconnect one connector and remove four screws



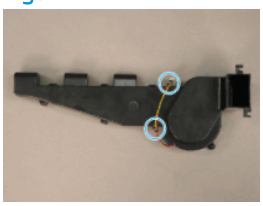
4. Remove the fan shroud under the cables.

Figure 2-186 Remove the fan shroud



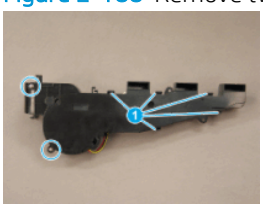
5. Release the cables from two retainers.

Figure 2-187 Release the cables



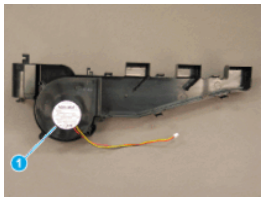
6. Turn the fan shroud over to the other side. Remove two screws, and then release five tabs (callout 1) to remove the fan cover.

Figure 2-188 Remove two screws and release five tabs



7. Remove the developer fan (callout 1).

Figure 2-189 Remove the developer fan



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Bridge unit

Learn how to remove and replace the bridge unit.

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the bridge unit.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-39 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01401B	Finisher sub-bridge unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

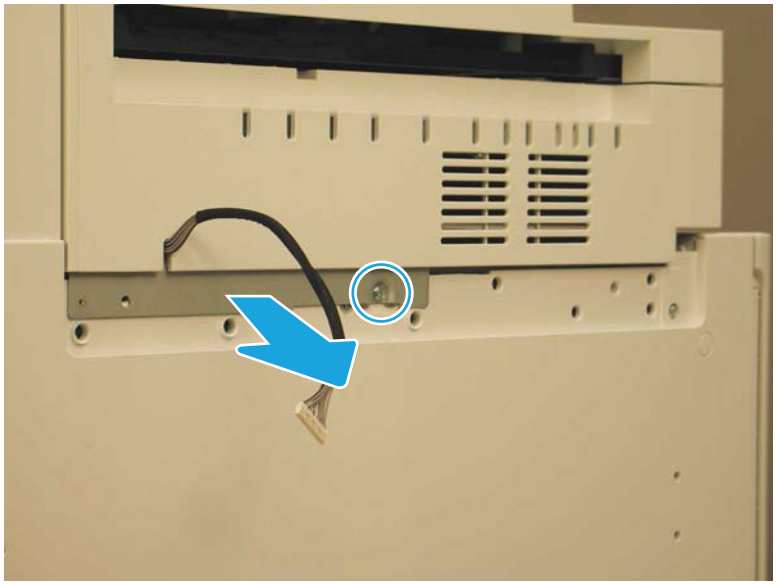
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the bridge unit

Follow these steps to remove the bridge unit.

▲ Remove one screw, and then slightly lift and slide the bridge unit away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-190 Remove the bridge unit



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Inductor unit

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the inductor unit.

https://players.brightcove.net/1160438706001/SyKVJeRXx_default/index.html?videoId=ref:REFIDPH0000000172

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-40 Part information

Inductor unit part number	
JC27-00012A	Inductor unit - 110v
JC27-00009A	Inductor unit - 220v

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

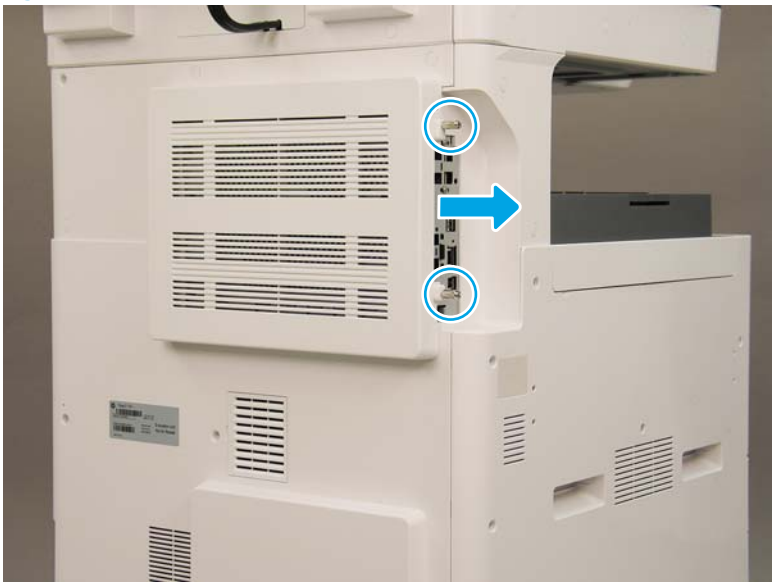
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-191 Remove the formatter cover

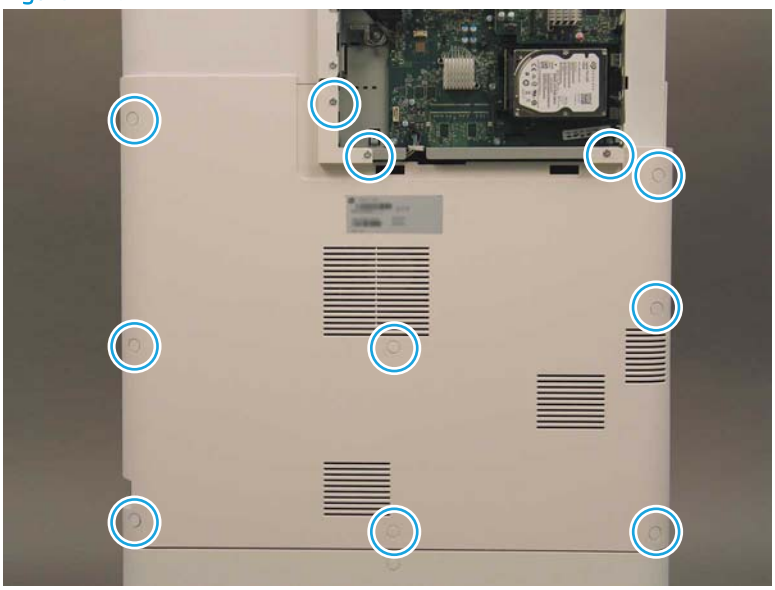


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-192 Remove the lower rear cover

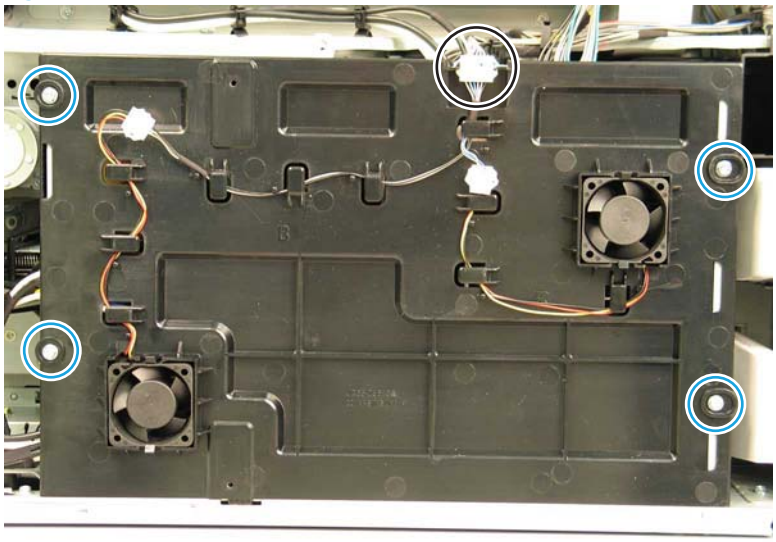


Remove the LVPS cover

Follow these steps to remove the LVPS cover.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-193 Remove the LVPS cover



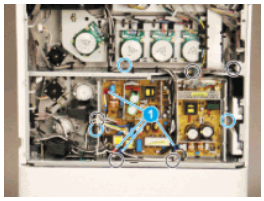
Remove the fuser drive and low-voltage power supply (LVPS) boards and cage

Follow these steps to remove the fuser drive and low-voltage power supply (LVPS) boards and cage.

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

- Before removing the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage, note the location of four connectors (callout 1) that do not have to be disconnected. Disconnect the remaining connectors on the LVPS and fuser drive boards, and then release the cables from five retainers. Remove three screws, and then tilt the top of the cage out to remove it.

Figure 2-194 Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage

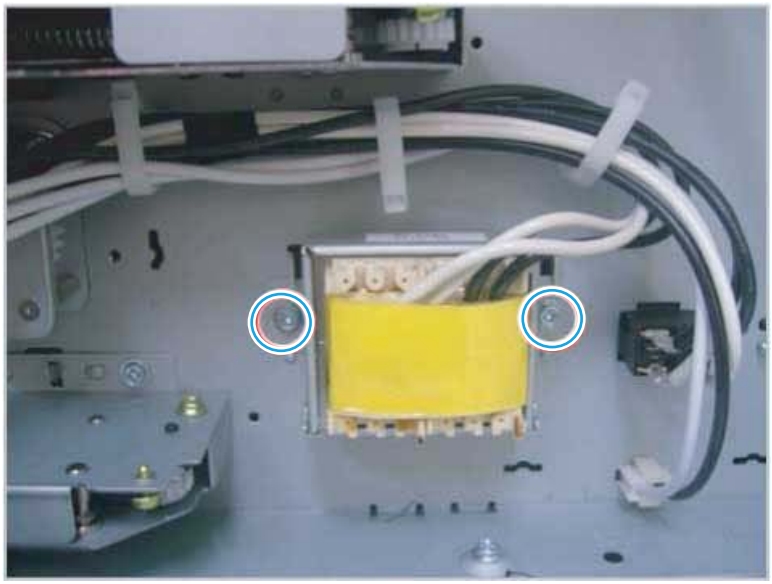


Remove the inductor unit

Follow these steps to remove the inductor unit.

- Disconnect the wire harness, remove two screws, and then remove the inductor unit.

Figure 2-195 Remove the inductor unit



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right door switch assembly

Learn how to remove the right door open switch.

View a video of how to remove and replace the right door open switch.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-41 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01467A	Switch assembly, right door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

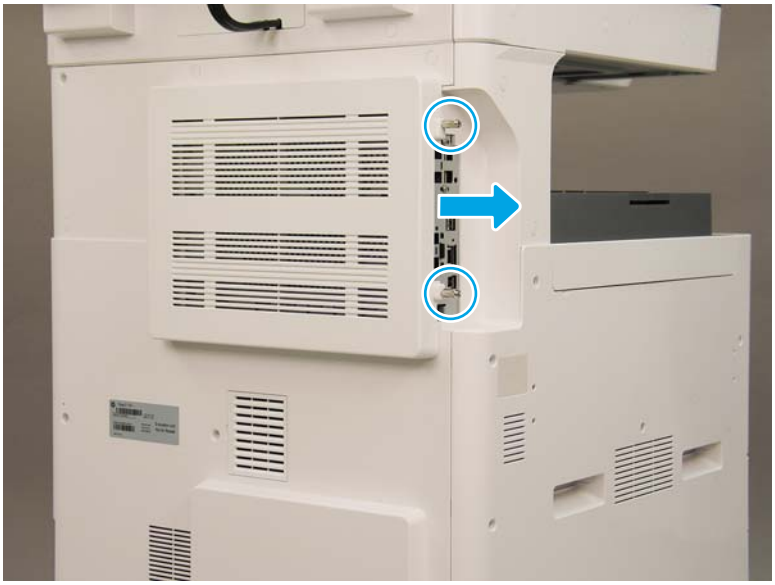
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-196 Remove the formatter cover

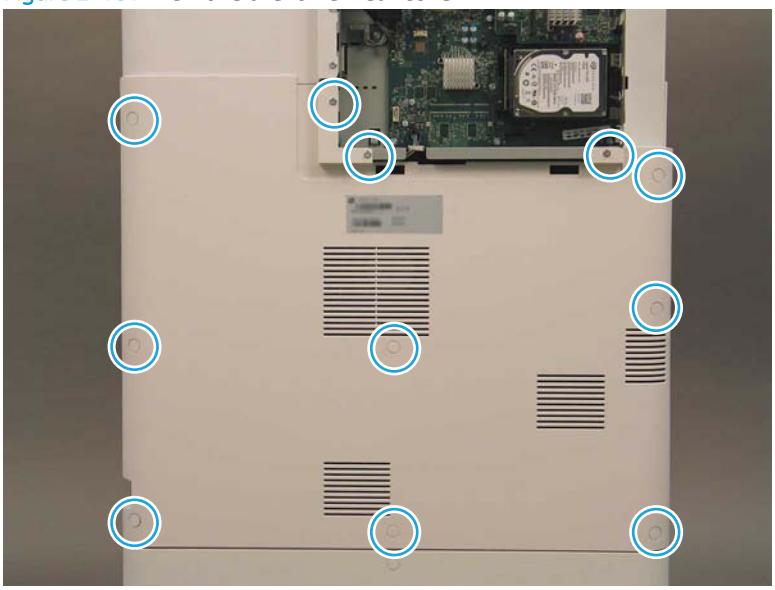


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- ▲ Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-197 Remove the lower rear cover

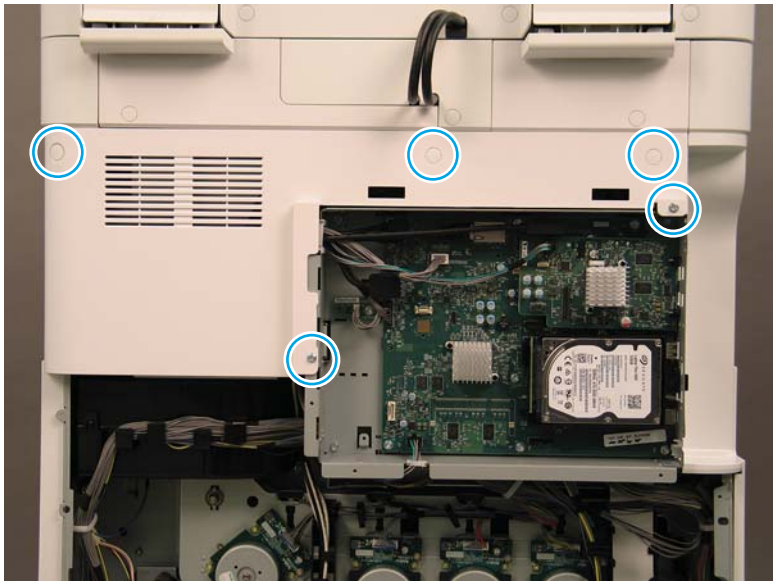


Remove the upper rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the upper rear cover.

- ▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-198 Remove the upper rear cover



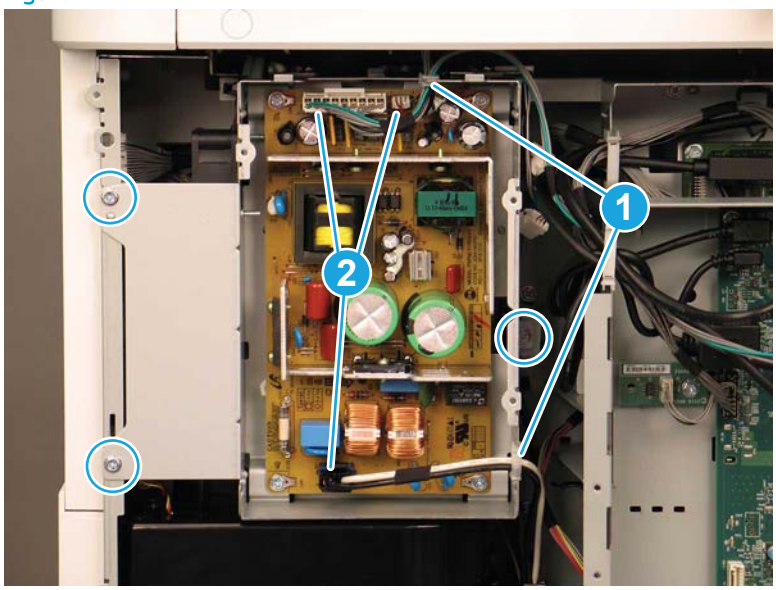
Remove the LVPS Type 4 and cage

Follow these steps to remove the LVPS Type 4 and cage.

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

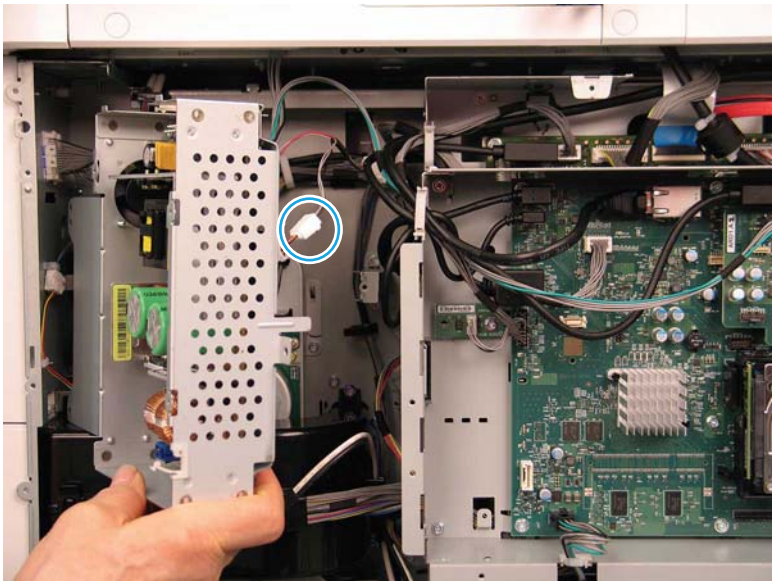
1. Release the cables from two retainers (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 2-199 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Lift the LVPS board and cage slightly away from the printer, and disconnect one connector behind the cage. Remove the LVPS board and cage.

Figure 2-200 Disconnect one connector

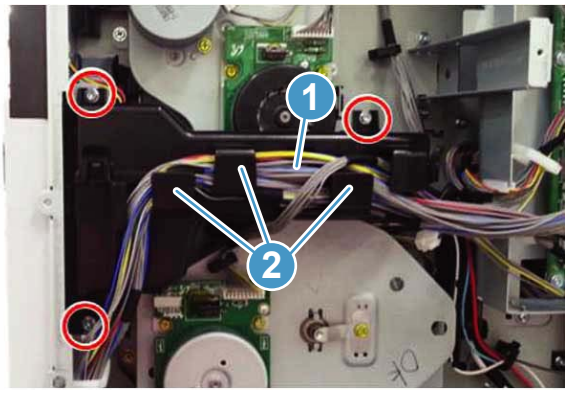


Remove the fuser fan

Follow these steps to remove the fuser fan.

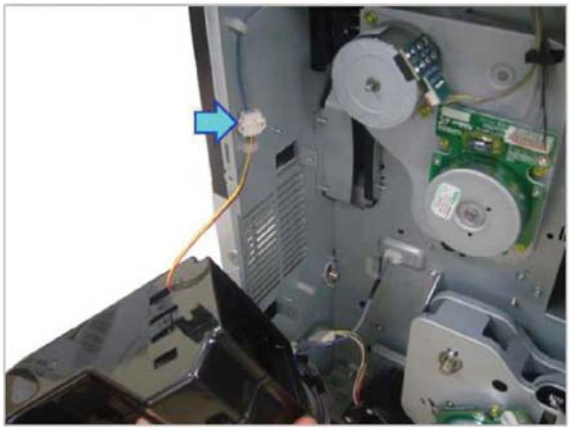
1. Release the cables (callout 1) from the cable guides (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 2-201 Release the harness and remove three screws



2. Pull the fuser fan housing slightly away from the printer, and then disconnect one connector.

Figure 2-202 Disconnect one connector



3. **Optional step**: For a replacement fan, release five tabs along the edges of the fan housing. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

Figure 2-203 Release five tabs

4. **Optional step**:For a replacement fan, separate the fan housing, and then remove the fuser fan. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the fan in the housing and install the replacement fan in the same orientation.

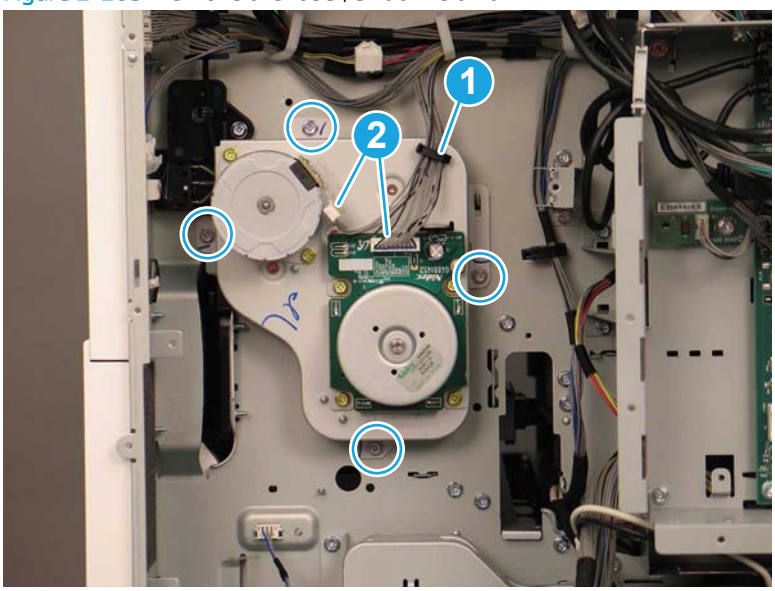
Figure 2-204 Remove the fuser fan

Remove the fuser/exit drive unit

Follow these steps to remove the fuser/exit drive unit.

- Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2). Remove four screws, and then remove the fuser/exit drive unit.

Figure 2-205 Remove the fuser/exit drive unit

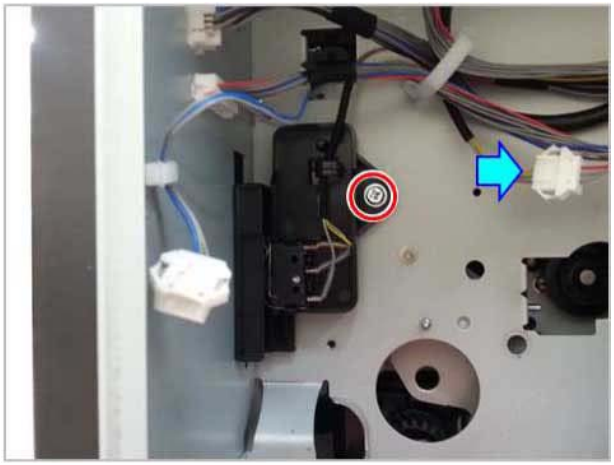


Remove the right door switch assembly

Follow these steps to remove the right door switch assembly.

- Disconnect one connector. Remove one screw, and then remove the right door switch assembly.

Figure 2-206 Remove the side door open sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following **special installation instructions**.

Removal and replacement: Pickup drive unit 1 (Tray 2)

Learn how to remove and replace the pickup drive (Tray 2).

View a video of how to remove and replace the pickup drive (Tray 2).

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-42 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01063C	Pickup drive (Tray 2)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

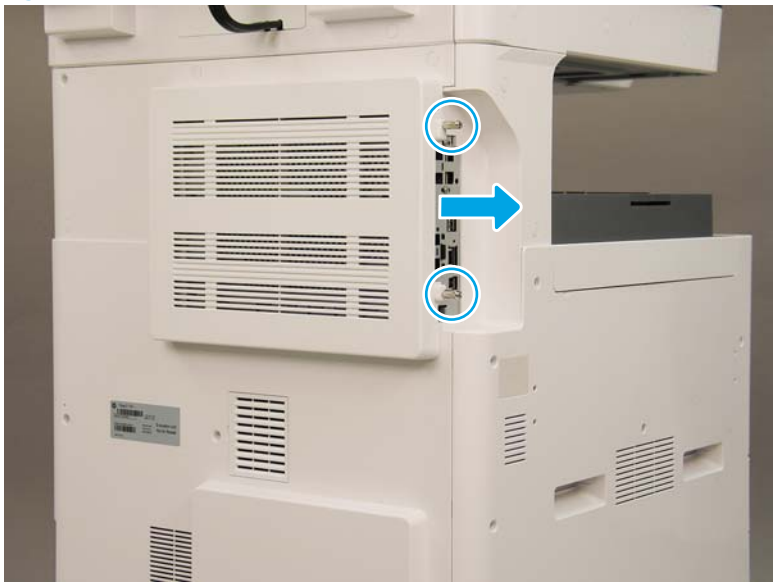
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-207 Remove the formatter cover

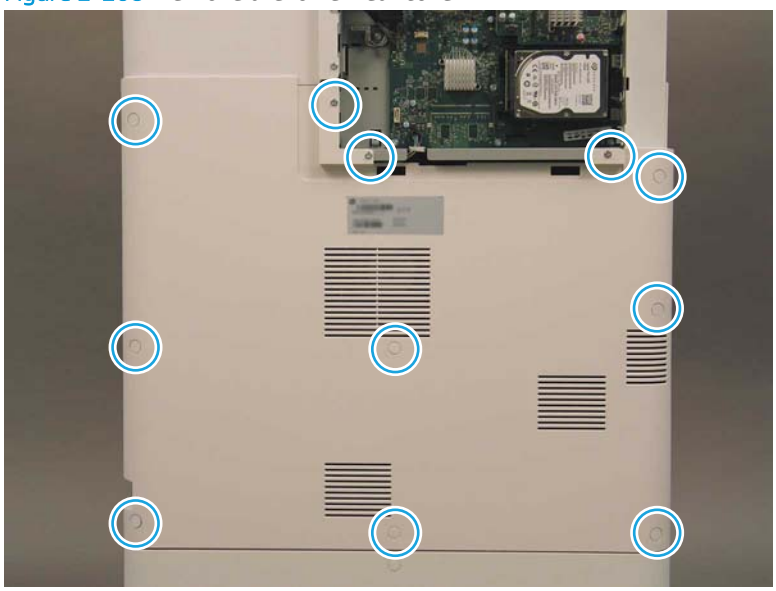


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-208 Remove the lower rear cover

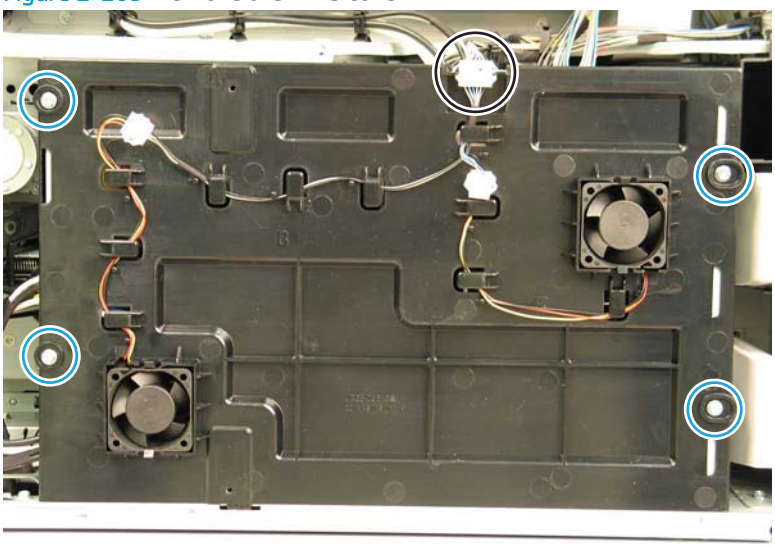


Remove the LVPS cover

Follow these steps to remove the LVPS cover.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-209 Remove the LVPS cover



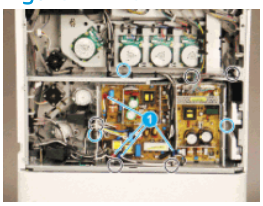
Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage

Follow these steps to remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage.

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

- Before removing the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage, note the location of four connectors (callout 1) that do not have to be disconnected. Disconnect the remaining connectors on the LVPS and fuser drive boards, and then release the cables from five retainers. Remove three screws, and then tilt the top of the cage out to remove it.

Figure 2-210 Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage

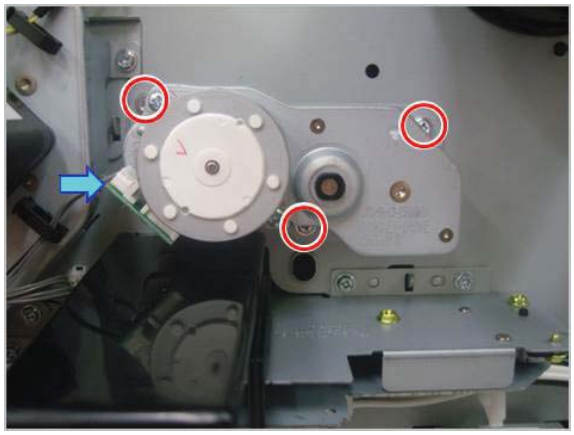


Remove the pickup drive unit 1

Follow these steps to remove the pickup drive unit 1.

- Disconnect the motor connector. Remove three screws, and then remove the pickup drive (Tray 2).

Figure 2-211 Remove pickup drive (Tray 2)



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU) sensors

Learn how to remove and replace the toner collection unit (TCU) level sensor and the toner collection unit (TCU) detect sensor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the toner collection unit level sensor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the toner collection unit detect sensor.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-43 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00492A	TCU sensors
0604-001393	Photo Interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the TCU

Follow these steps to remove the TCU.

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-212 Remove the TCU

Remove the paper dust brush

Follow these steps to remove the paper dust brush.

- Remove the paper dust brush.

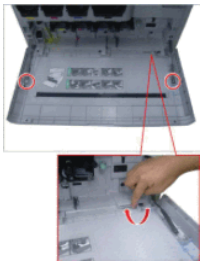
Figure 2-213 Remove the paper dust brush

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

- Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

Figure 2-214 Remove the front cover

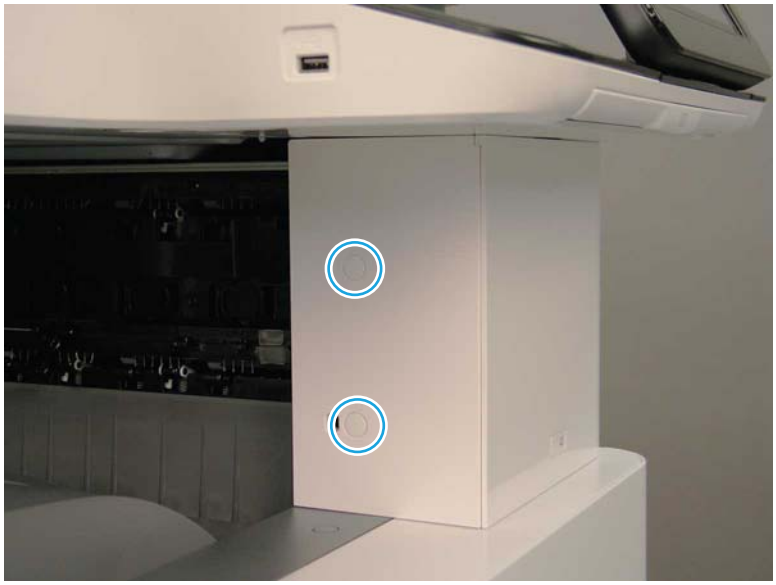


Remove the front top inner cover

Follow these steps to remove the front top inner cover.

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-215 Remove the front top inner cover



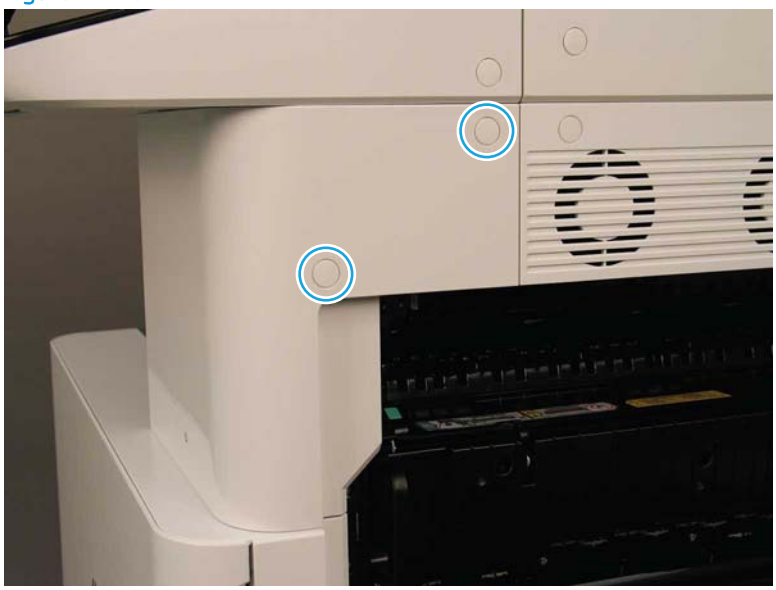
Remove the front power cover

Follow these steps to remove the front power cover.

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

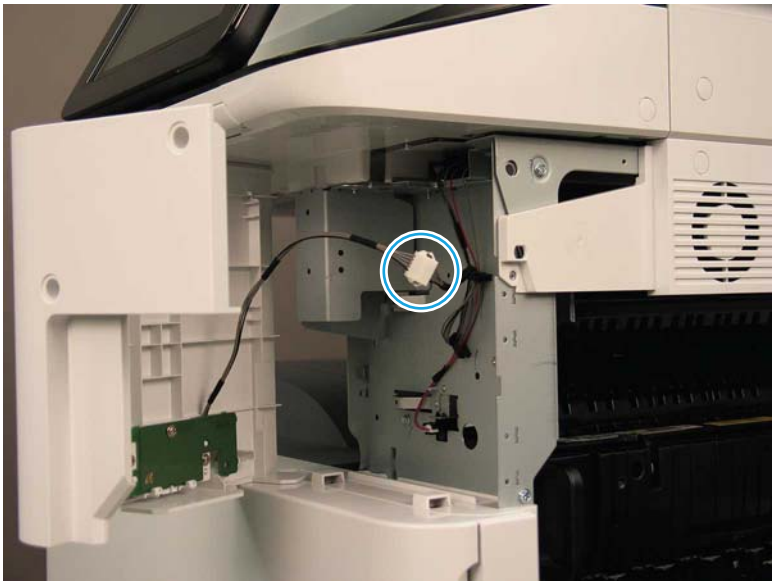
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 2-216 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-217 Remove the front power cover



Remove the exit cover

Follow these steps to remove the exit cover.

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the exit cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-218 Remove the exit cover

Remove the inner front cover

Follow these steps to remove the inner front cover.

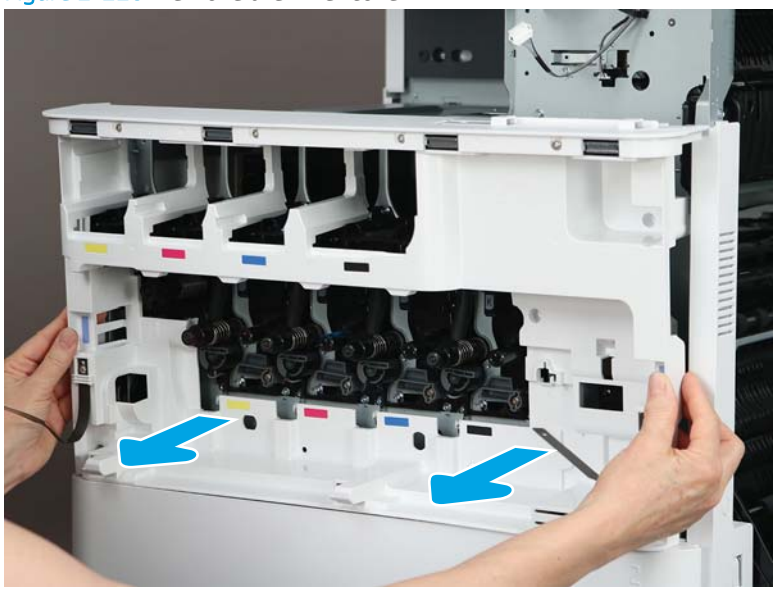
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove the all of the toner cartridges.

3. Remove seven screws.

Figure 2-219 Remove seven screws

4. Lift the inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-220 Remove the inner cover



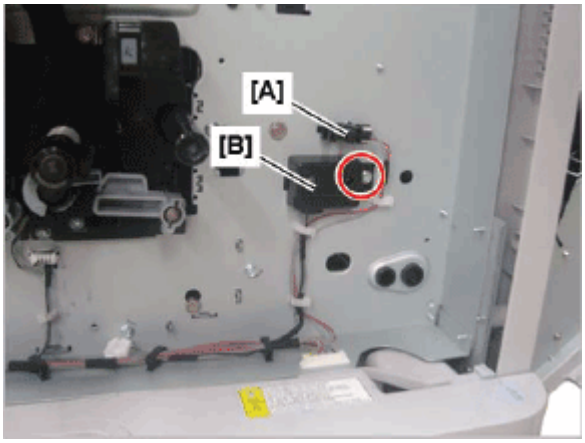
Remove the TCU sensors

Follow these steps to remove the TCU sensors.

▲ Release the corresponding sensor.

- [A]: Toner collection unit level sensor.
- [B]: Toner collection unit detect sensor.

Figure 2-221 Remove the TCU unit detect sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: CRUM connector

Learn how to remove and replace the CRUM connector.

View a video of how to remove and replace the CRUM connector.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-44 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01277A	CRUM connector

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

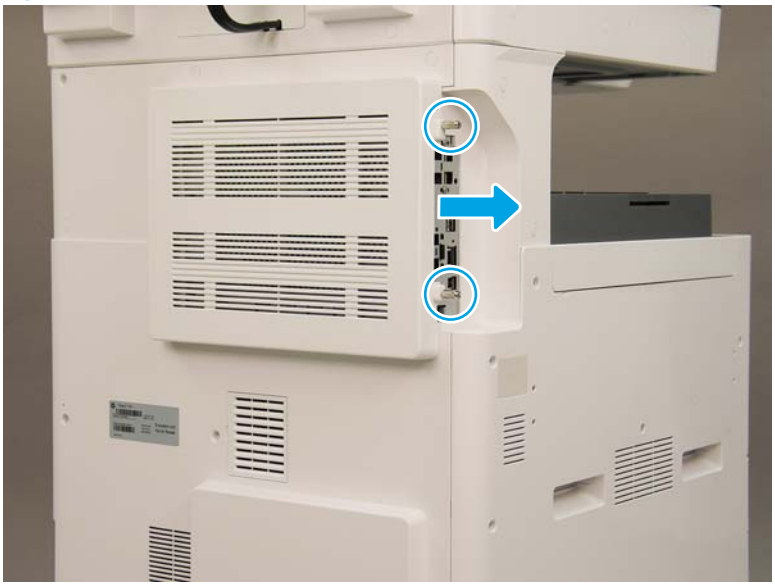
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-222 Remove the formatter cover

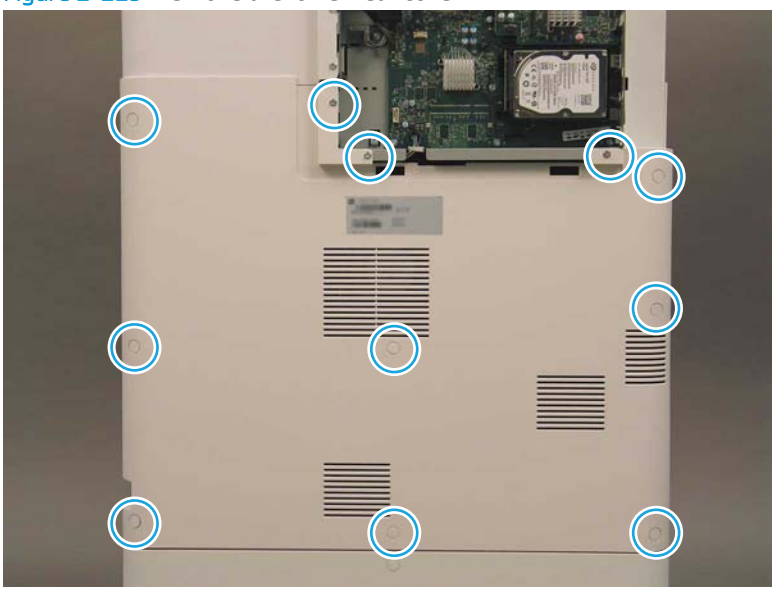


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-223 Remove the lower rear cover

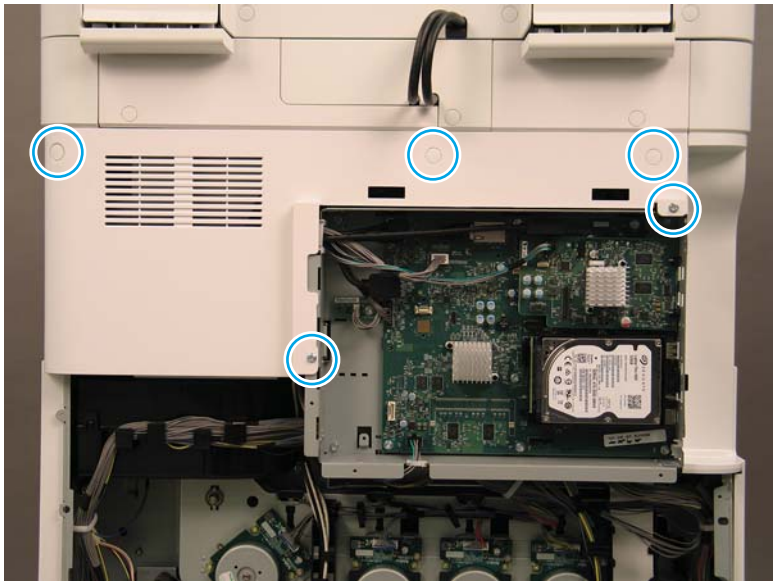


Remove the upper rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the upper rear cover.

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-224 Remove the upper rear cover

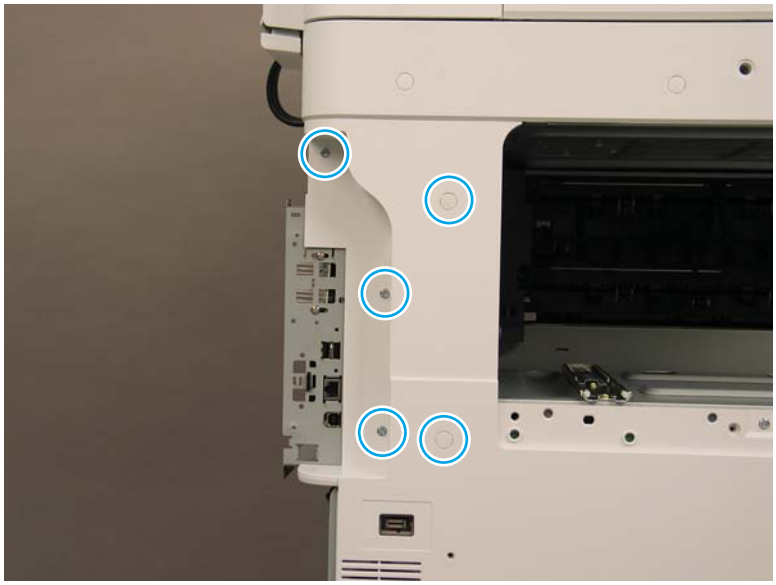


Remove the left rear corner cover

Follow these steps to remove the left rear corner cover.

▲ Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-225 Remove the left rear corner cover

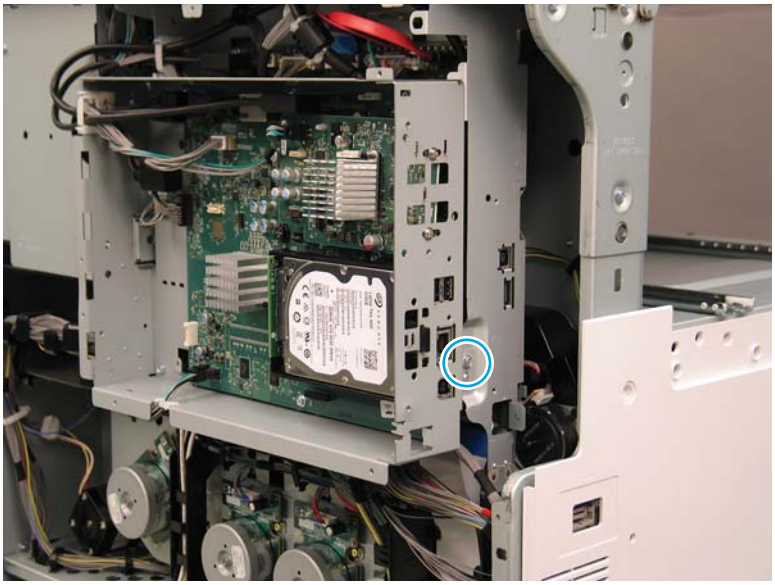


Remove the formatter and cage

Follow these steps to remove the formatter and cage.

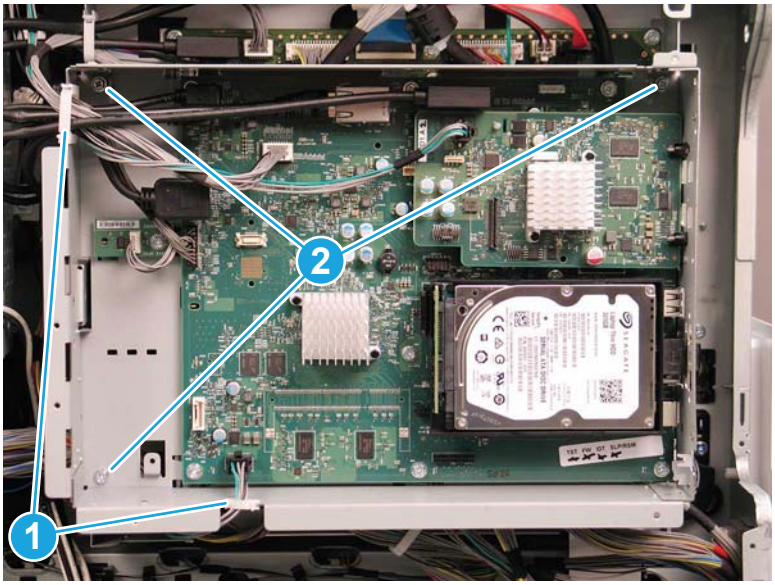
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 2-226 Remove one screw



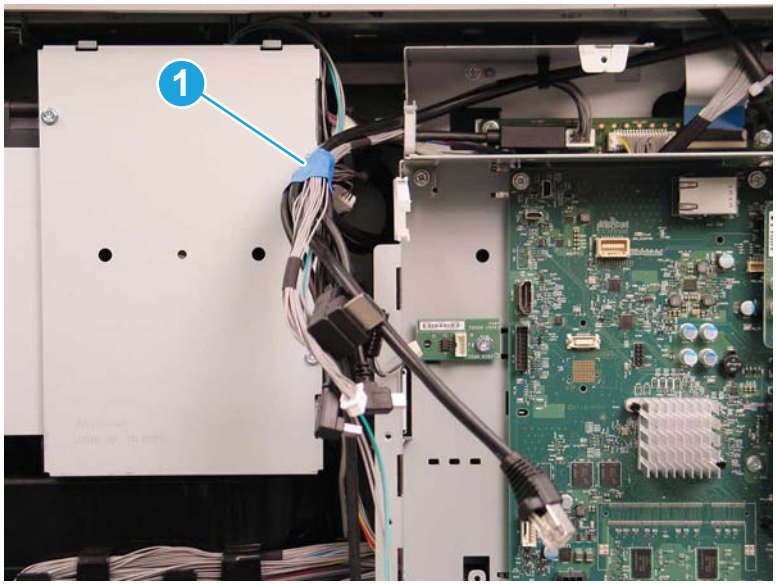
2. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter. Release the cables from two retainers on the sheet metal cage (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 2-227 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws



3. Before removing the formatter cage, place a piece of tape or a wire tie (callout 1) around the cables disconnected from the formatter on the left side. This will identify the cables that will be connected to the formatter during reassembly.

Figure 2-228 Identify the formatter cables



4. Lift the formatter cage up, push it to the right to clear the boss on the right side, and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

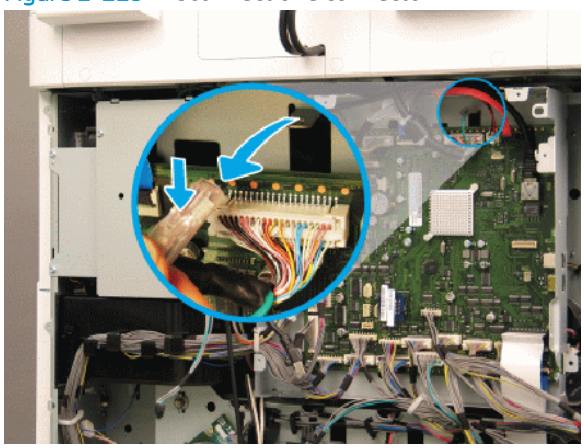
Remove the main board and cage

Follow these steps to remove the main board and cage.

1. One of the connectors that must be released above the main board is a spade connector.

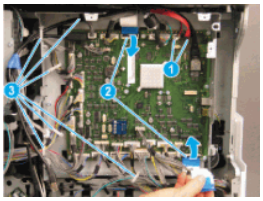
IMPORTANT: Press in on the center part of the cable connector to release the latch, and then pull the cable away from the printer to disconnect it. Do not pull on connector without depressing the center latch.

Figure 2-229 Disconnect one connector



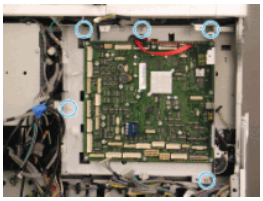
2. Do not disconnect the two hard disk drive (HDD) connectors at the top of the main board (callout 1). Disconnect all of the remaining connectors. Two of the flat cable connectors (callout 2) are zero insertion force (ZIF) connectors. Open the latch on the connectors before removing the flat cables. Release the cables from six retainers (callout 3).

Figure 2-230 Remove one screw



3. Remove five screws.

Figure 2-231 Remove five screws



4. Lift the main board cage up, and then rotate the lower edge of the cage away from the printer to remove it.

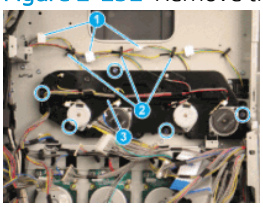
Remove the toner supply drive unit

Follow these steps to remove the toner supply drive unit.

- Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then release cables from three retainers (callout 2). Release the cables from the guides (callout 3). Remove five screws and then remove the toner supply drive unit.

TIP: Transfer the cables from the toner supply drive unit to the replacement part.

Figure 2-232 Remove the toner supply drive unit

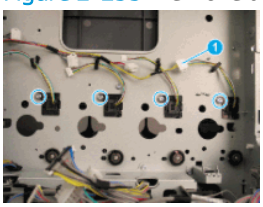


Remove the CRUM connector

Follow these steps to remove the CRUM connector.

- If replacing the yellow CRUM connector, disconnect one connector (callout 1). Remove the screw next to the defective CRUM connector. Release one tab on the right, and then remove the CRUM connector.

Figure 2-233 Remove the CRUM connector



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following **special installation instructions**.

Removal and replacement: Duplex 1 sensor (on the exit unit)

Learn how to remove and replace the duplex 1 sensor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the duplex 1 sensor.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-45 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

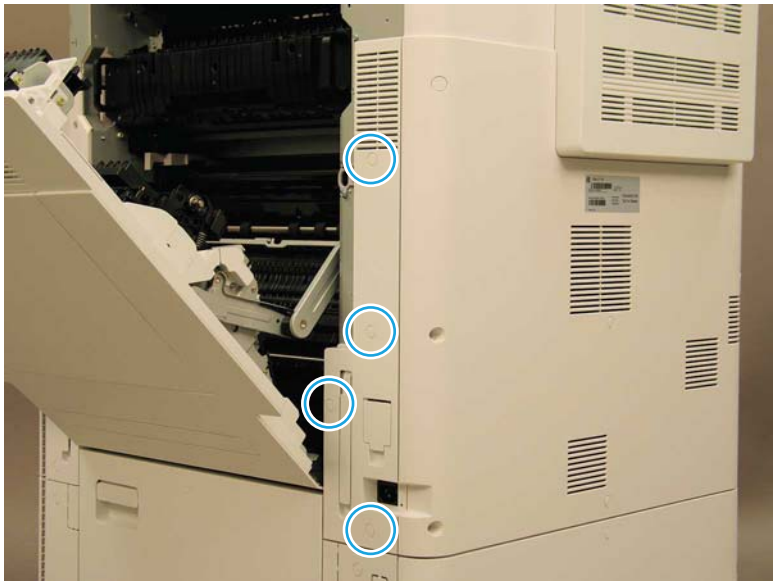
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

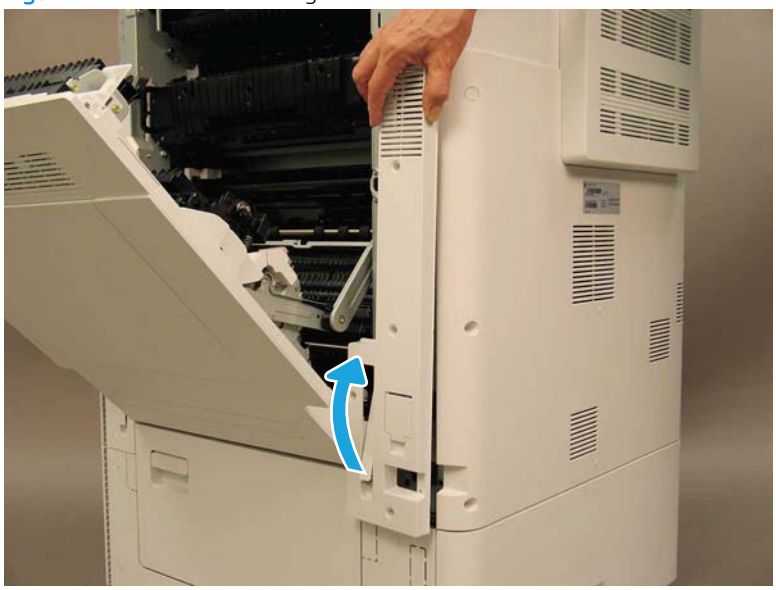
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-234 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-235 Remove the right rear cover

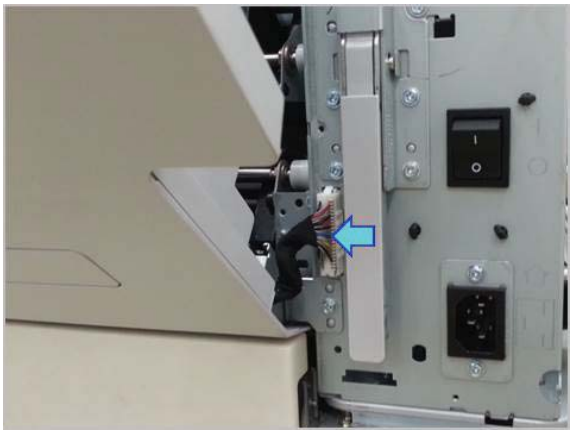


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

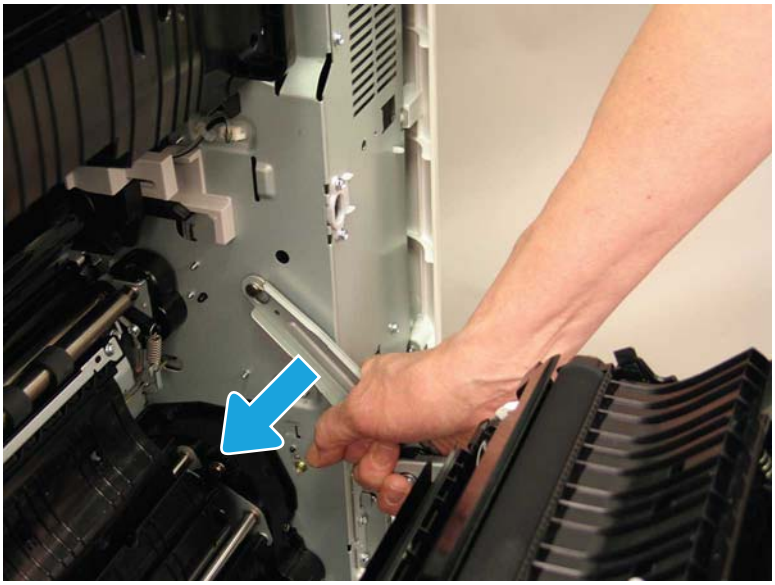
Figure 2-236 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

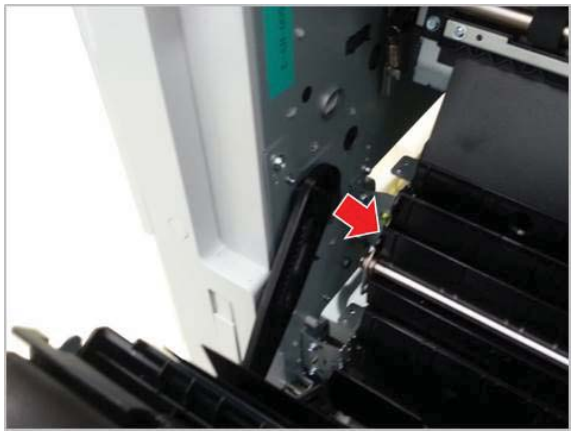
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-237 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

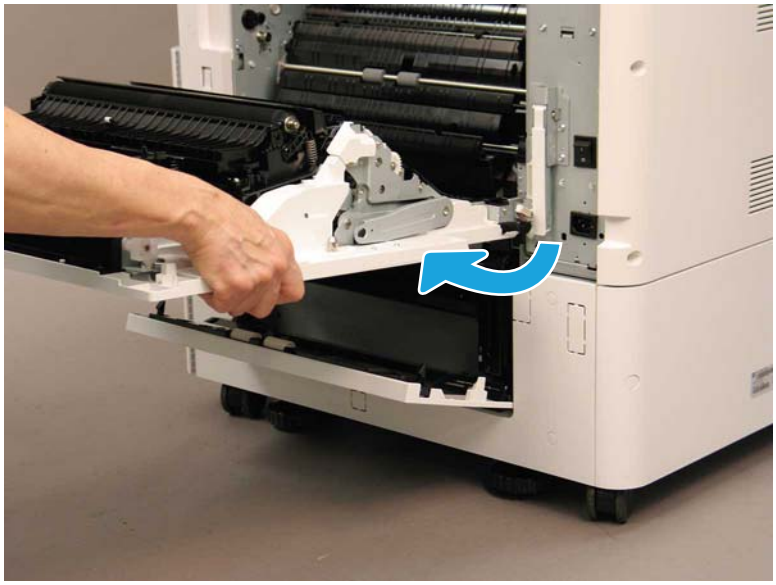
Figure 2-238 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-239 Remove the right door



Remove the front top inner cover

Follow these steps to remove the front top inner cover.

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-240 Remove the front top inner cover

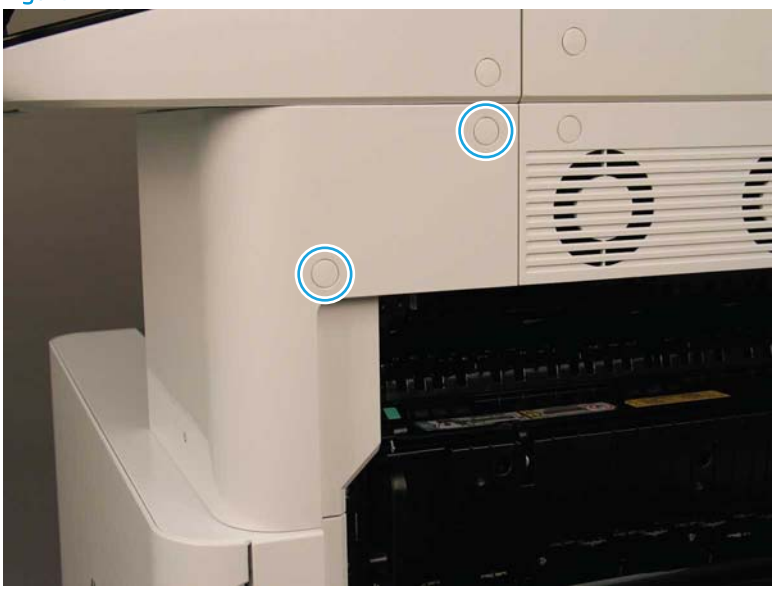
Remove the front power cover

Follow these steps to remove the front power cover.

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

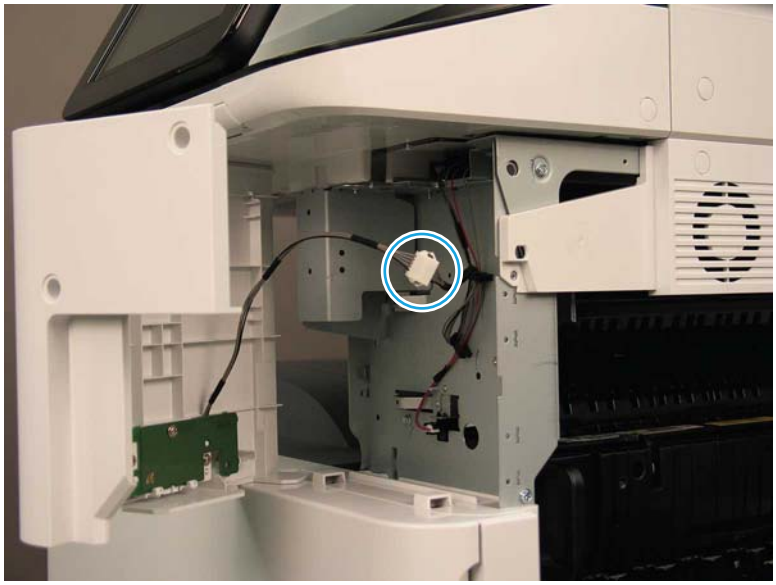
CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 2-241 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-242 Remove the front power cover

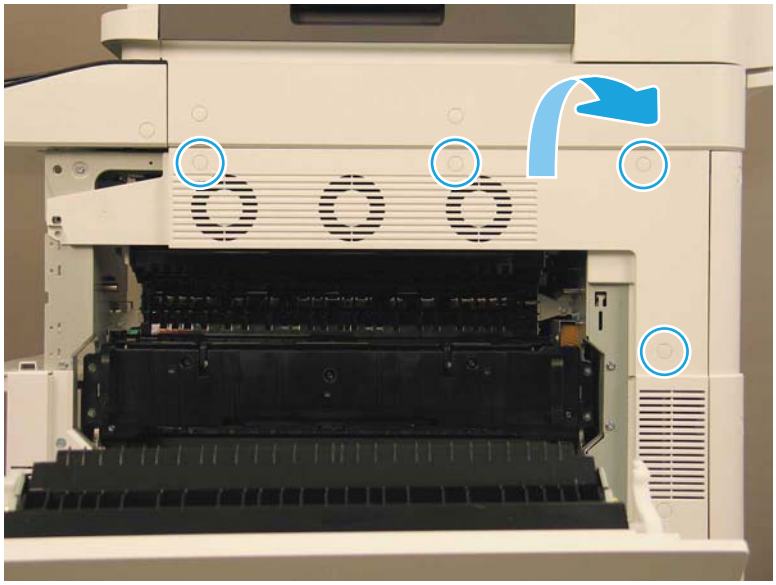


Remove the top right cover

Follow these steps to remove the top right cover.

▲ Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then rotate the upper right door cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-243 Remove the top right cover



Remove the fuser unit

Follow these steps to remove the fuser unit.

1. Open the right door.

NOTE: If the fuser is removed to access another part, the right door might already be removed.

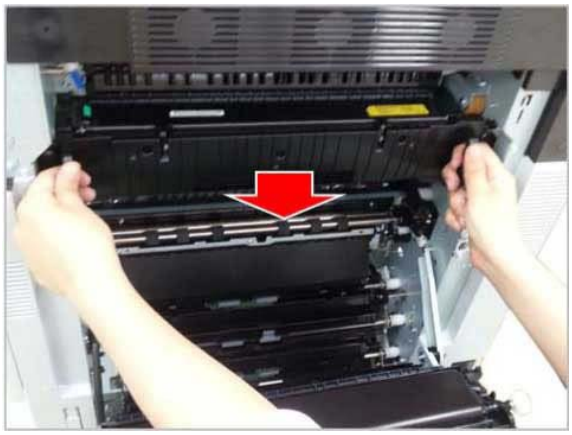
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 2-244 Fuser unit screw locations

3. Pull out the fuser unit.

CAUTION: The temperature in the vicinity of the fuser becomes heated. To prevent the potential of getting burned, make sure the fuser unit has cooled before replacing it.

Figure 2-245 Fuser unit removal

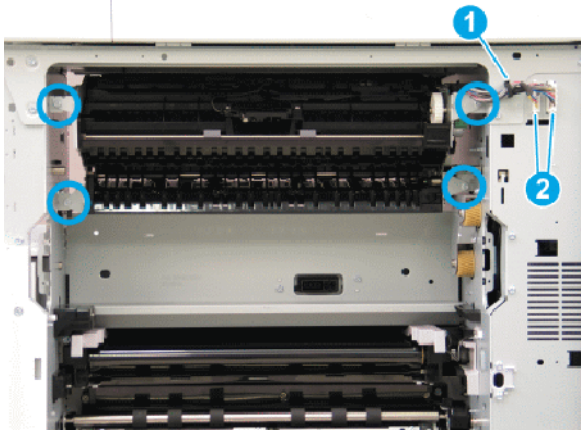


Remove the exit unit

Follow these steps to remove the exit unit.

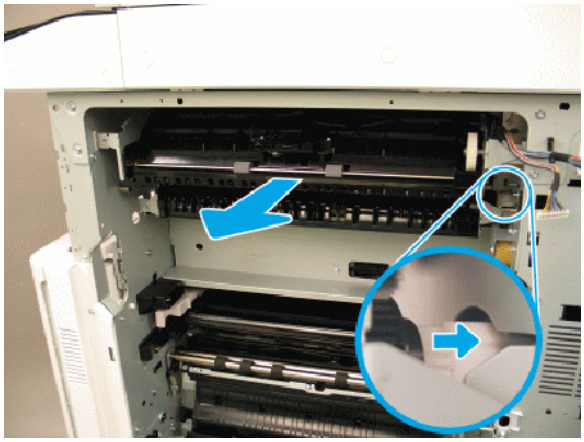
1. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove four screws (callout 3).

Figure 2-246 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws



2. Remove the exit unit while pushing the coupler to the right.

Figure 2-247 Remove the exit unit

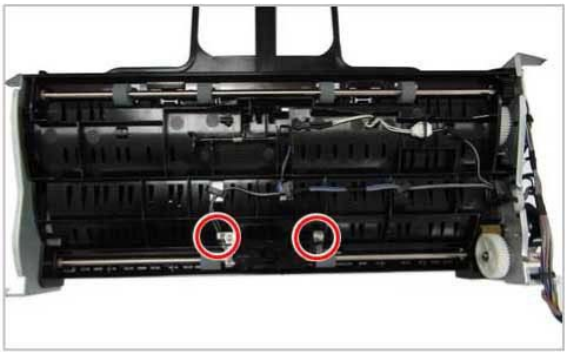


Remove the duplex 1 sensor

Follow these steps to remove the duplex 1 sensor.

1. Locate the sensor on the exit unit. Remove two screws, and then lift the sensor holder up.

Figure 2-248 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect the connector, and then remove the duplex 1 sensor.

Figure 2-249 Remove the duplex 1 sensor

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit 1 bin full sensor (on the exit unit)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the exit 1 bin full sensor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the exit 1 bin full sensor.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-46 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo Interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

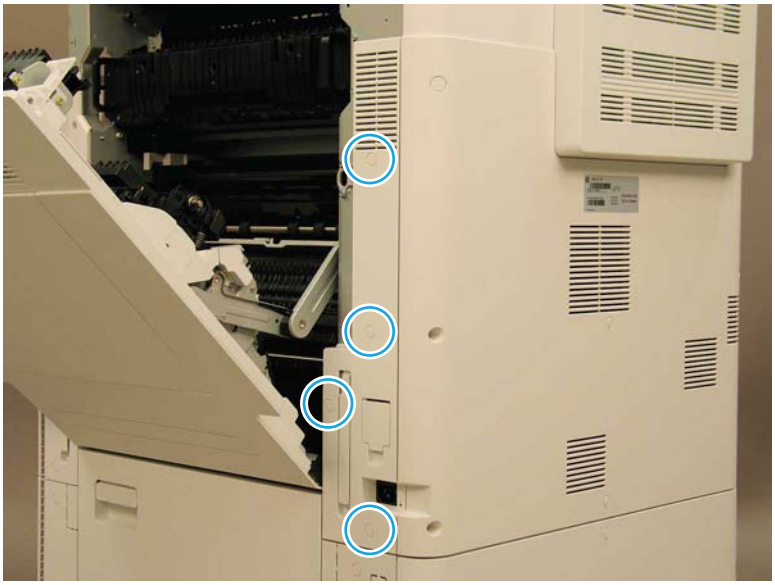
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

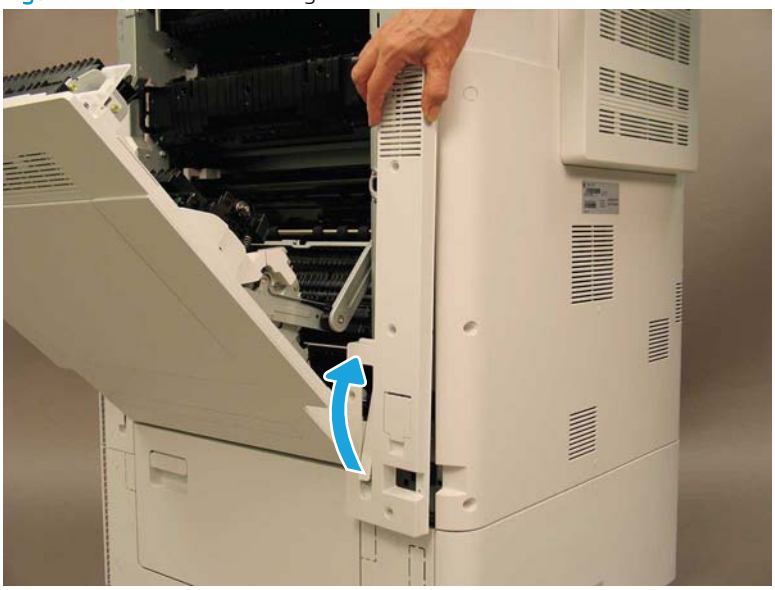
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-250 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-251 Remove the right rear cover

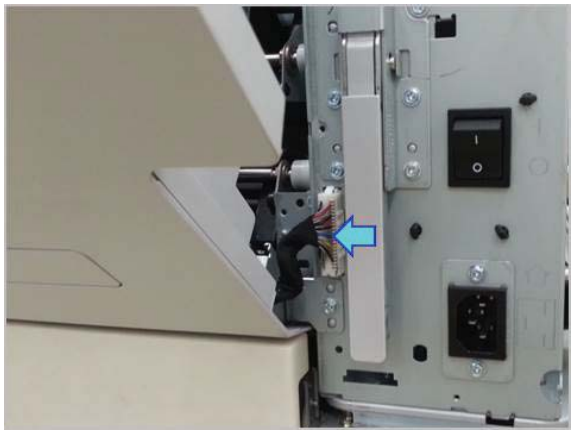


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

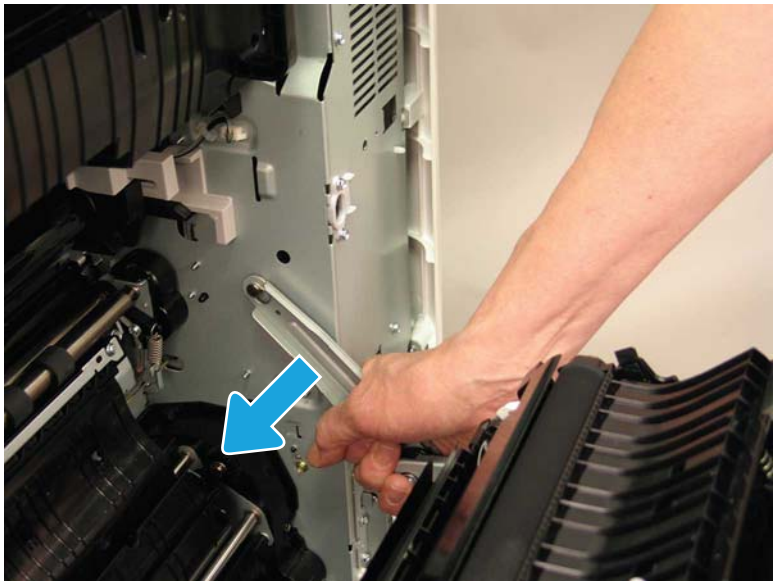
Figure 2-252 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

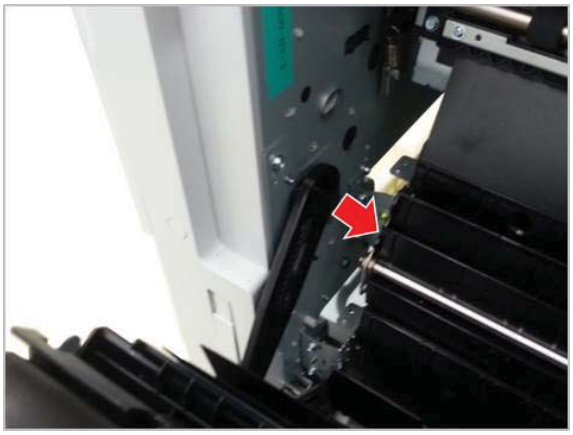
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-253 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

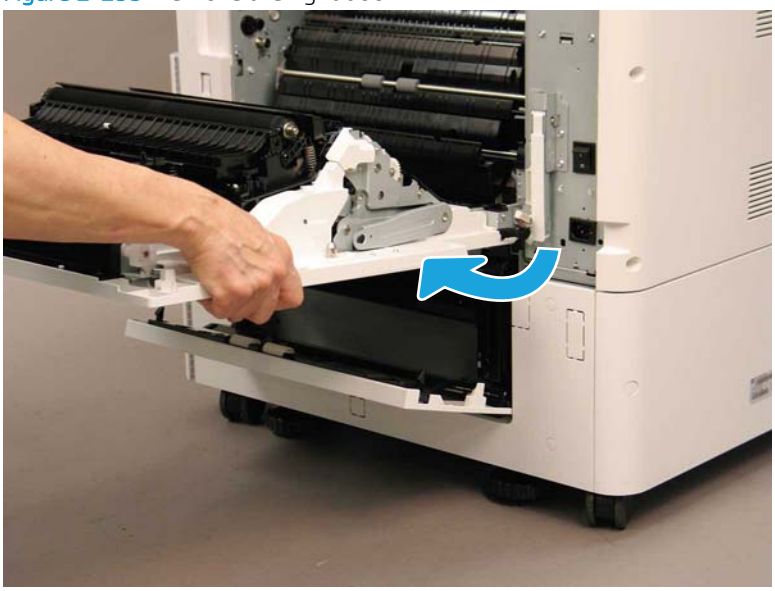
Figure 2-254 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-255 Remove the right door

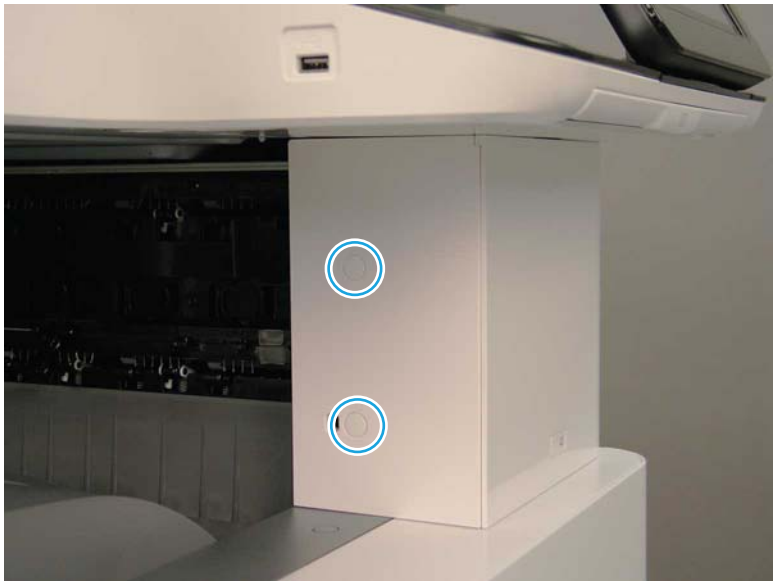


Remove the front top inner cover

Follow these steps to remove the front top inner cover.

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-256 Remove the front top inner cover



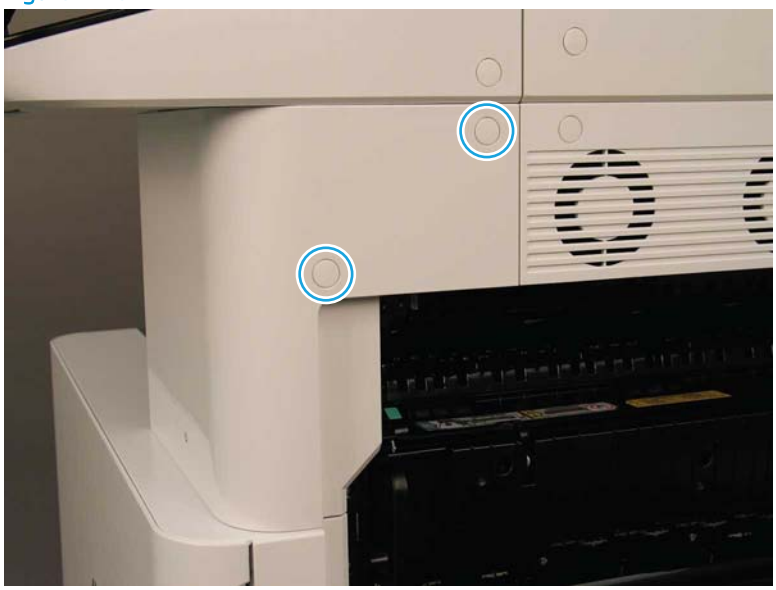
Remove the front power cover

Follow these steps to remove the front power cover.

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

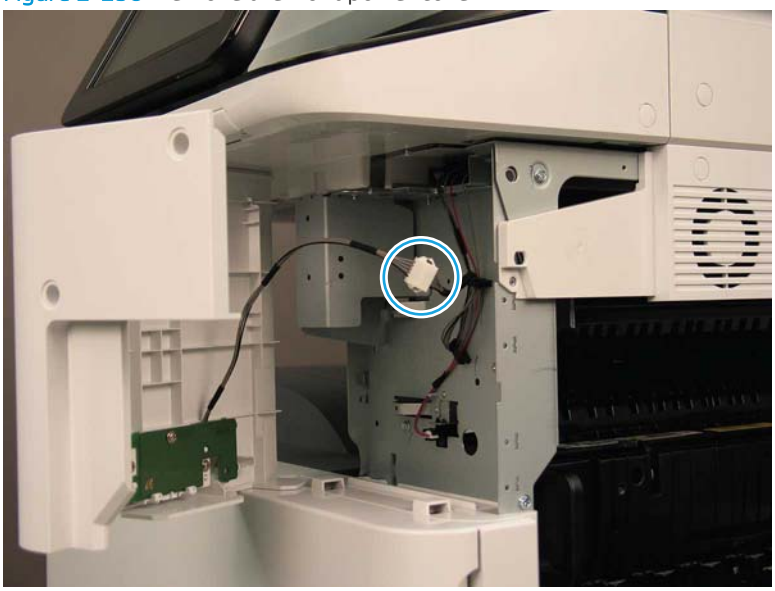
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 2-257 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-258 Remove the front power cover

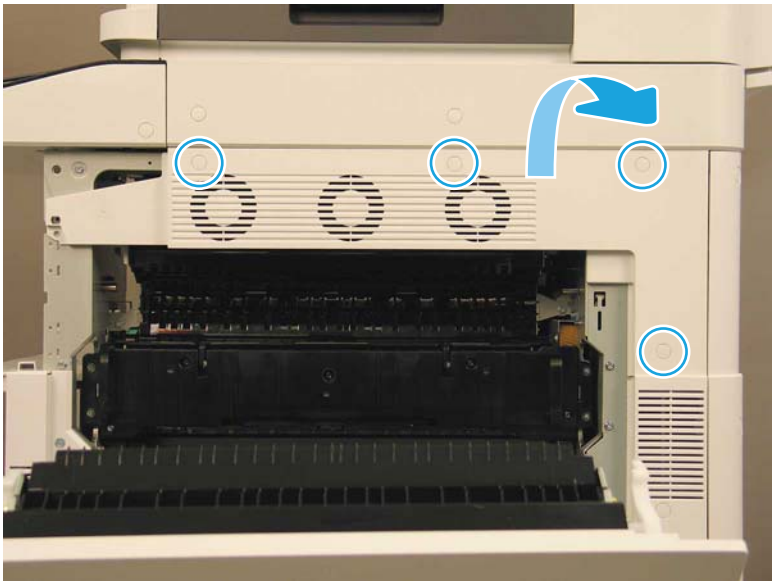


Remove the top right cover

Follow these steps to remove the top right cover.

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then rotate the upper right door cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-259 Remove the top right cover



Remove the fuser unit

Follow these steps to remove the fuser unit.

1. Open the right door.

NOTE: If the fuser is removed to access another part, the right door might already be removed.

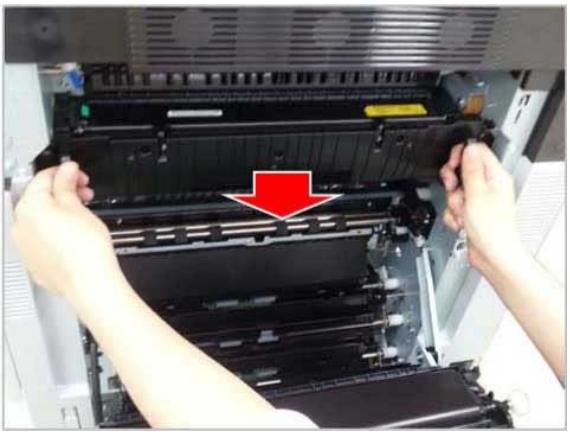
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 2-260 Fuser unit screw locations

3. Pull out the fuser unit.

CAUTION: The temperature in the vicinity of the fuser becomes heated. To prevent the potential of getting burned, make sure the fuser unit has cooled before replacing it.

Figure 2-261 Fuser unit removal

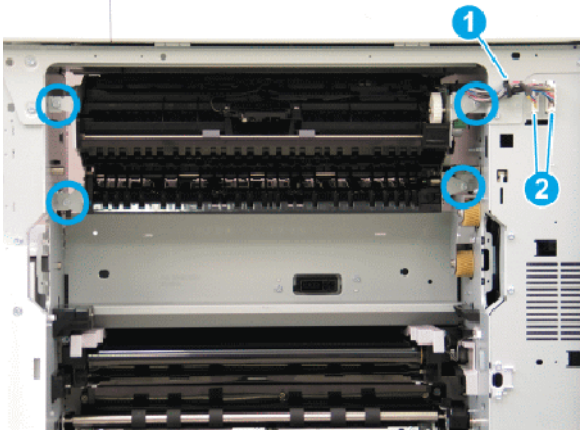


Remove the exit unit

Follow these steps to remove the exit unit.

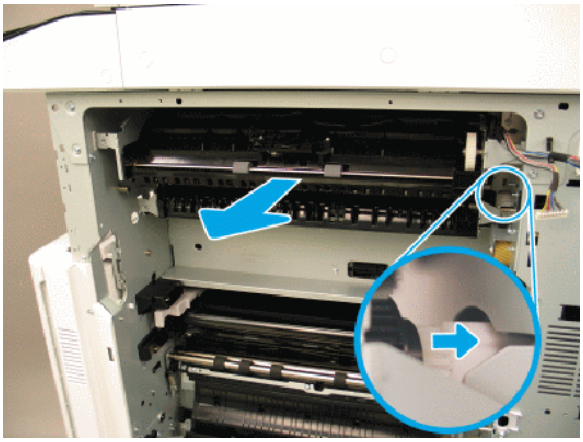
1. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove four screws (callout 3).

Figure 2-262 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws



2. Remove the exit unit while pushing the coupler to the right.

Figure 2-263 Remove the exit unit

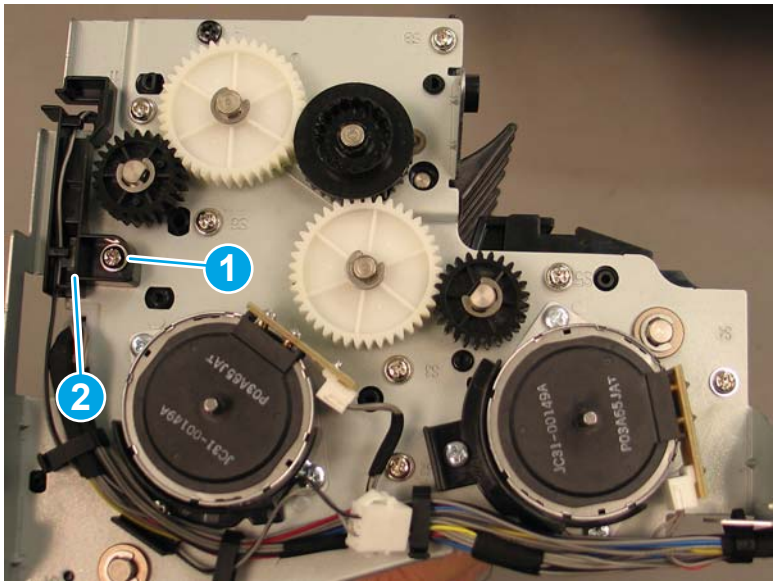


Remove the output 1 bin full sensor

Follow these steps to remove the output 1 bin full sensor.

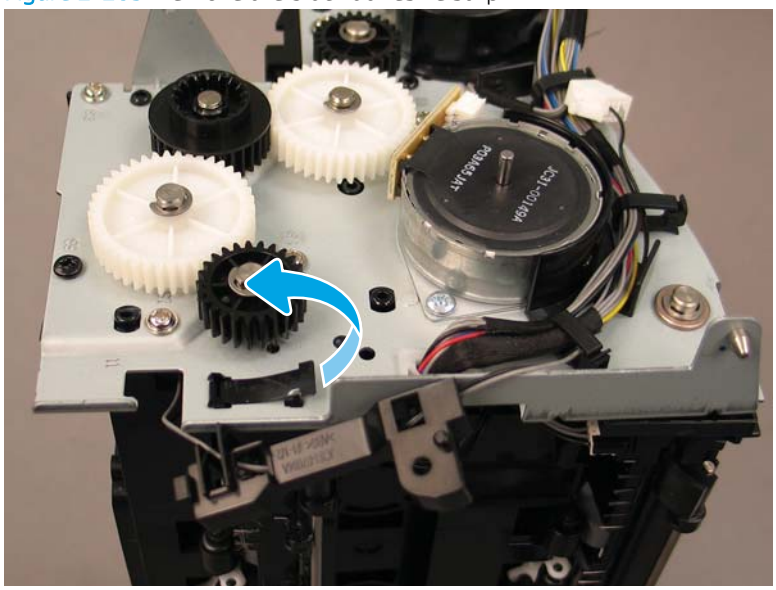
1. On the exit unit, remove one self-tapping screw (callout 1), and then remove the guide (callout 2).

Figure 2-264 Remove one screw and the guide



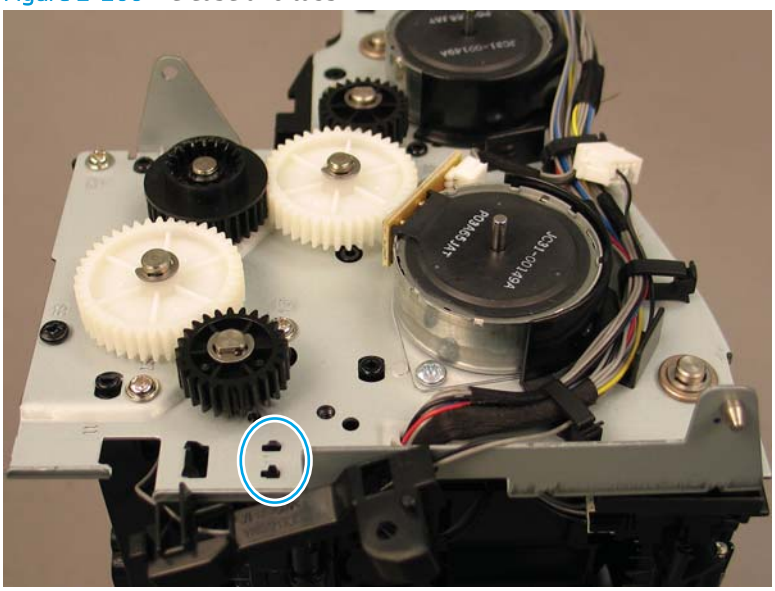
2. Remove the black adhesive strip from the exit unit.

Figure 2-265 Remove the black adhesive strip



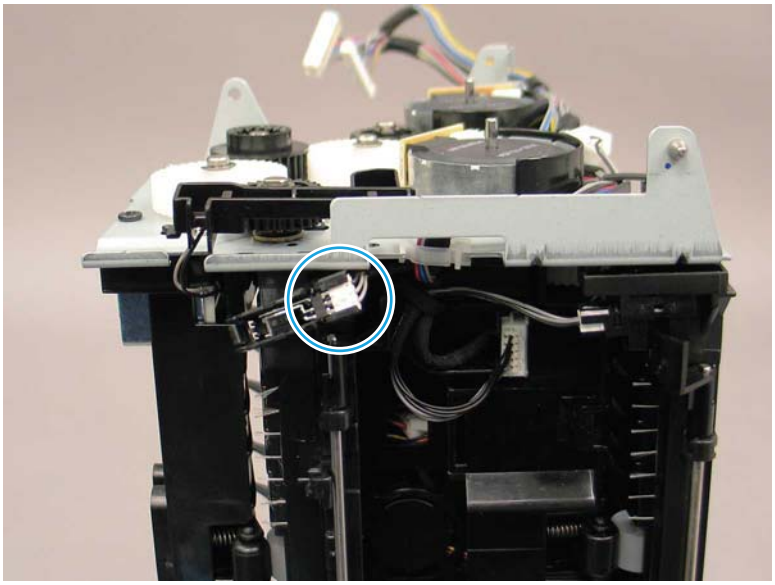
3. Release two tabs, and then unhook the sensor from the sheet metal.

Figure 2-266 Release two tabs



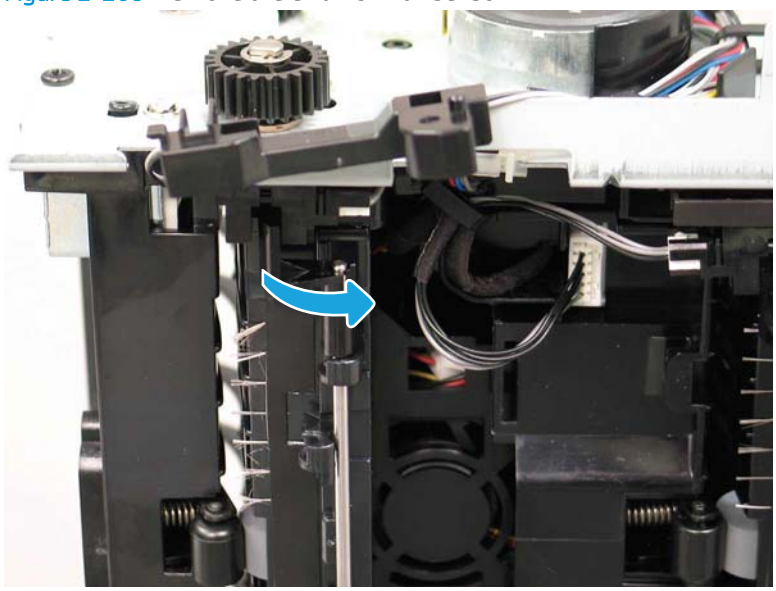
4. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 2-267 Disconnect one connector



5. Rotate the shaft to release the sensor, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 2-268 Remove the exit 1 bin full sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Prefeed sensor 2 (pickup unit 2)

Learn how to remove and replace the prefeed sensor 2 for pickup unit 2.

View a video of how to remove and replace the prefeed sensor 2 for pickup unit 2.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-47 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	Photo interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

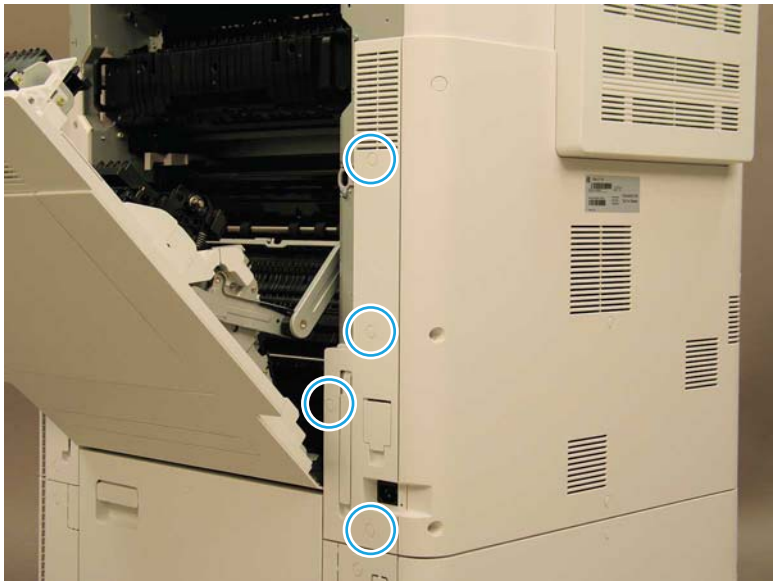
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

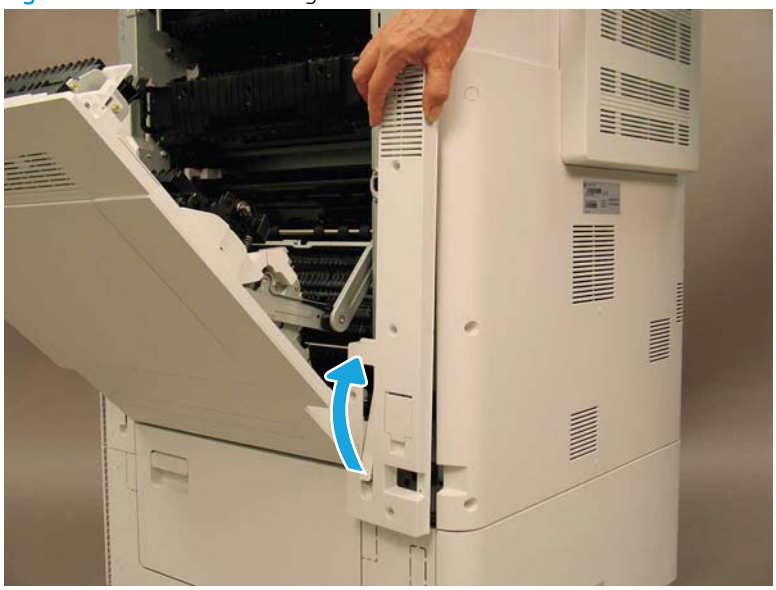
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-269 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-270 Remove the right rear cover

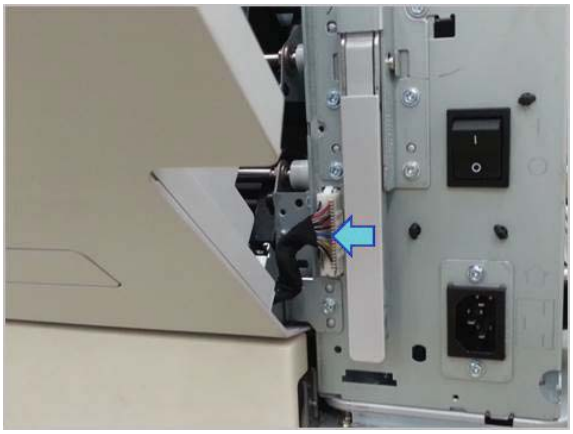


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

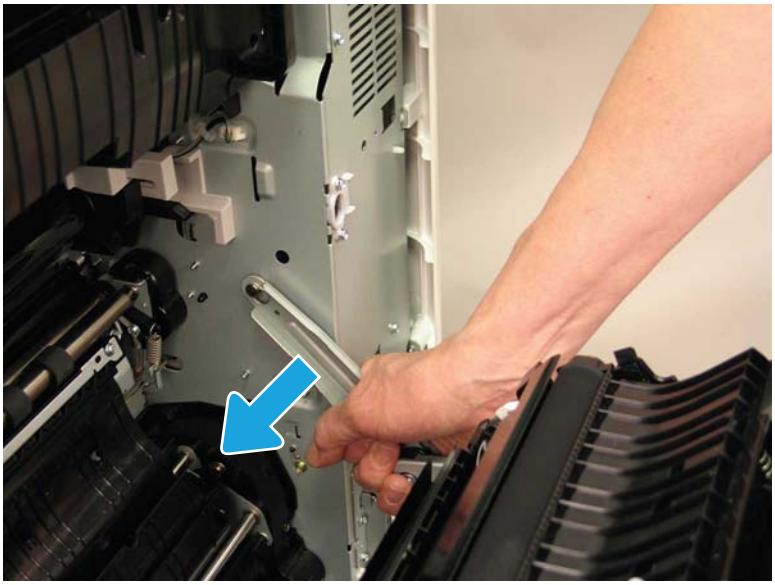
Figure 2-271 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

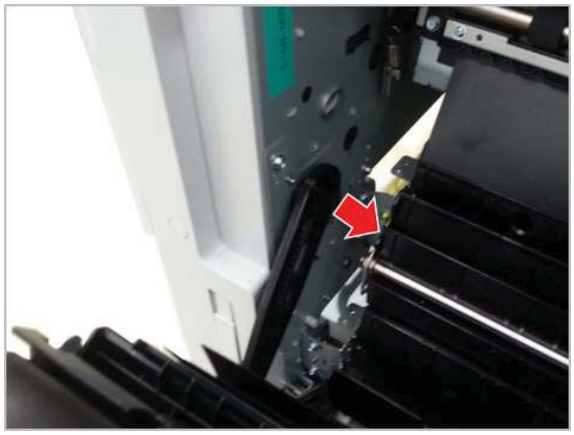
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-272 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

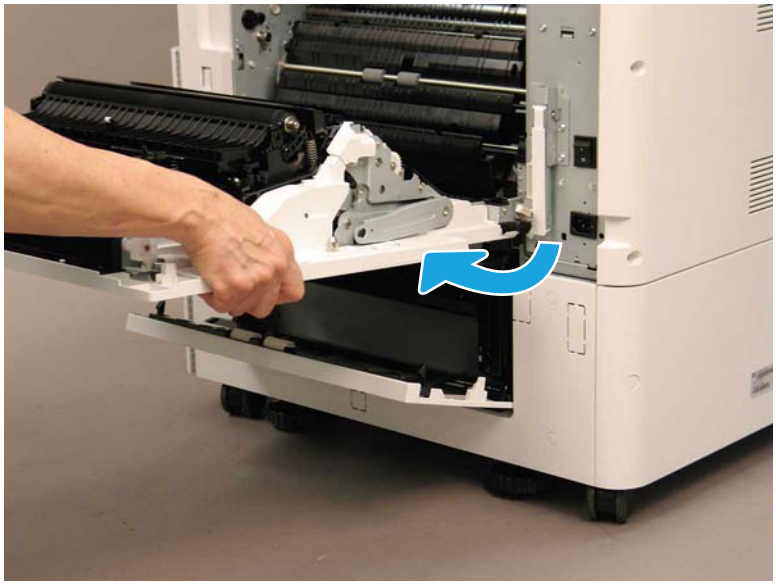
Figure 2-273 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-274 Remove the right door



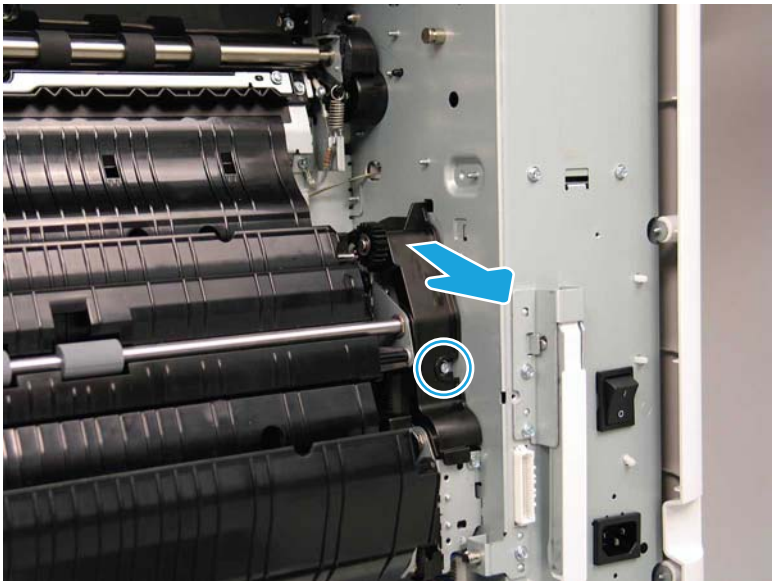
Remove pickup unit 2

Follow these steps to remove pickup unit 2.

1. Remove the paper trays.

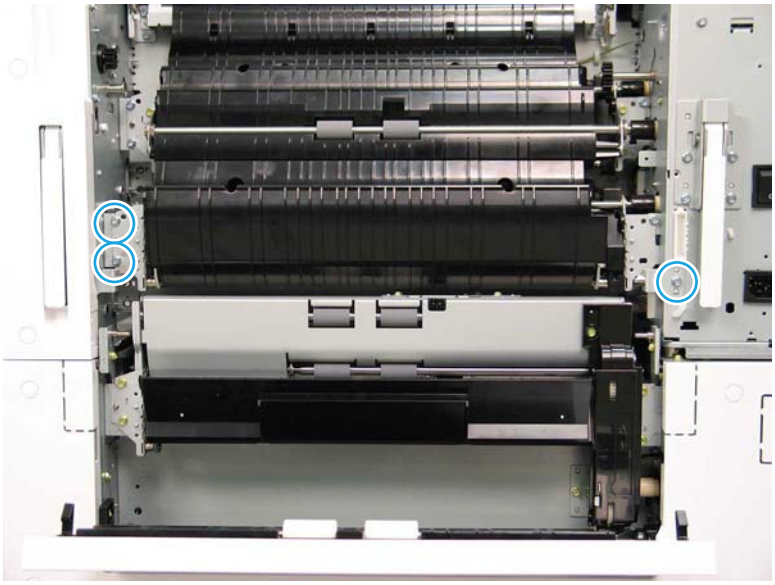
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-275 Remove one screw and the cover



3. Remove three screws.

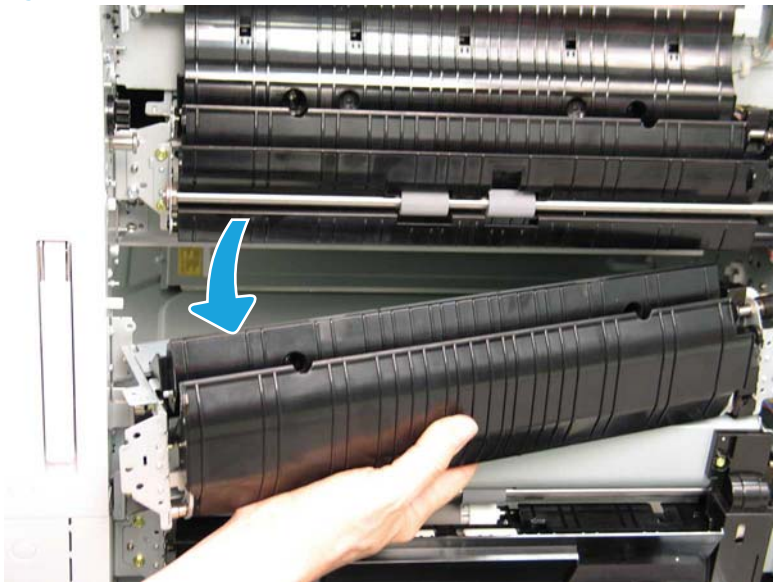
Figure 2-276 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 2 away from the printer.

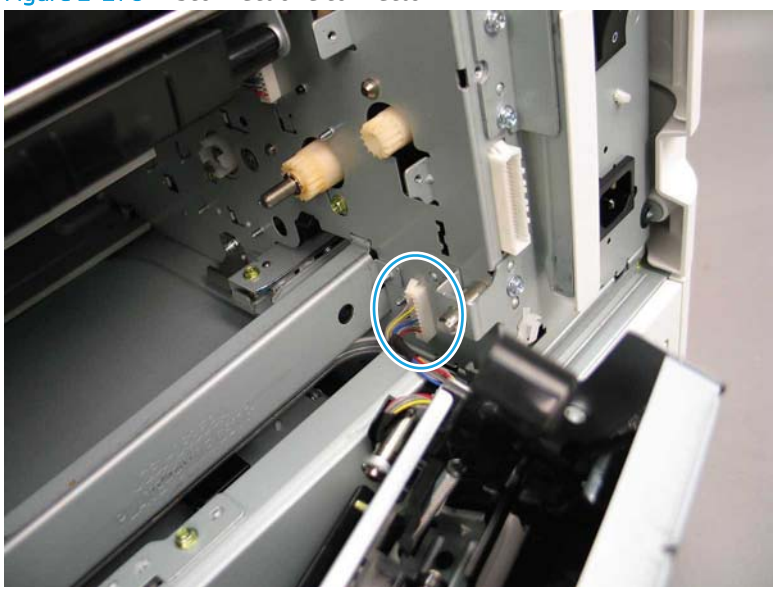
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely.

Figure 2-277 Rotate pickup unit 2



5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 2-278 Disconnect one connector



Remove the prefeed sensor 2

Follow these steps to remove the prefeed sensor 2.

- Open the guide-pickup, and then remove the prefeed sensor 2.

Figure 2-279 Remove prefeed sensor 2

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following**special installation instructions**.

Removal and replacement: Prefeed sensor 1 (pickup unit 1)

Learn how to remove and replace the prefeed sensor 1 for pickup unit 1.

View a video of how to remove and replace the prefeed sensor 1 for pickup unit 1

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-48 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001490	Photo interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

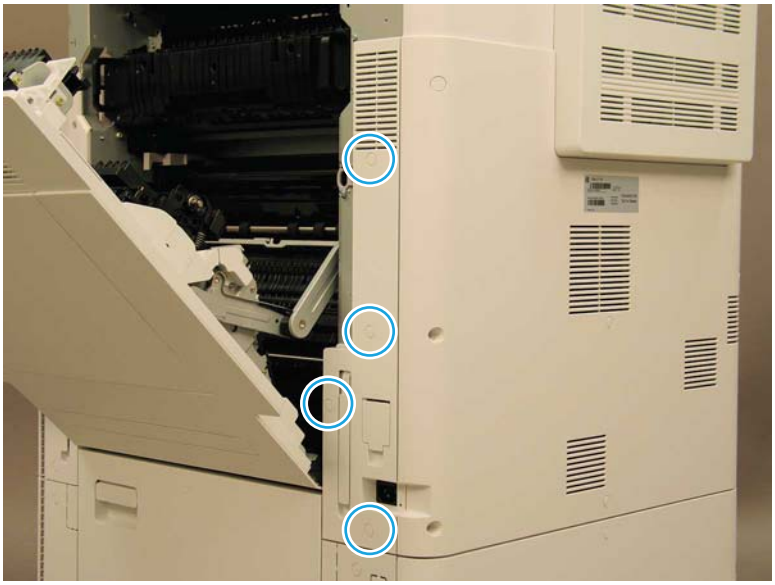
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

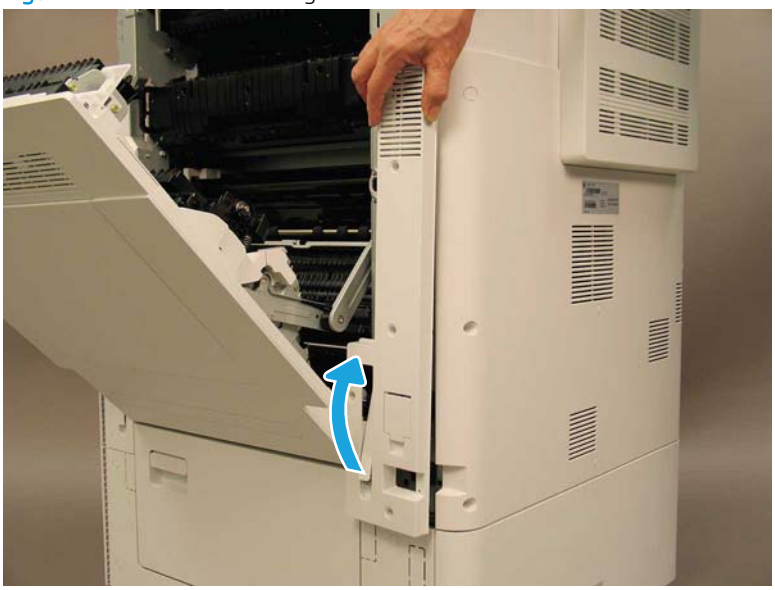
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-280 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-281 Remove the right rear cover

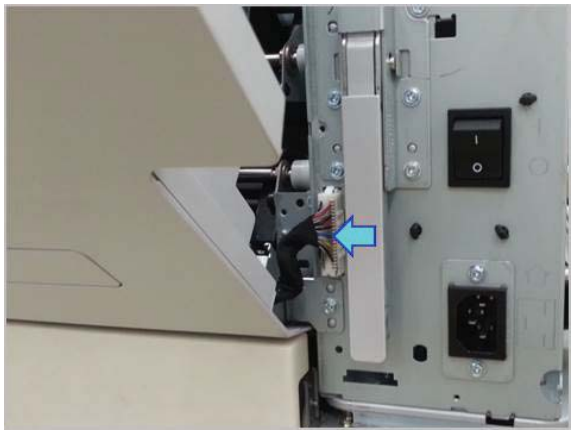


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

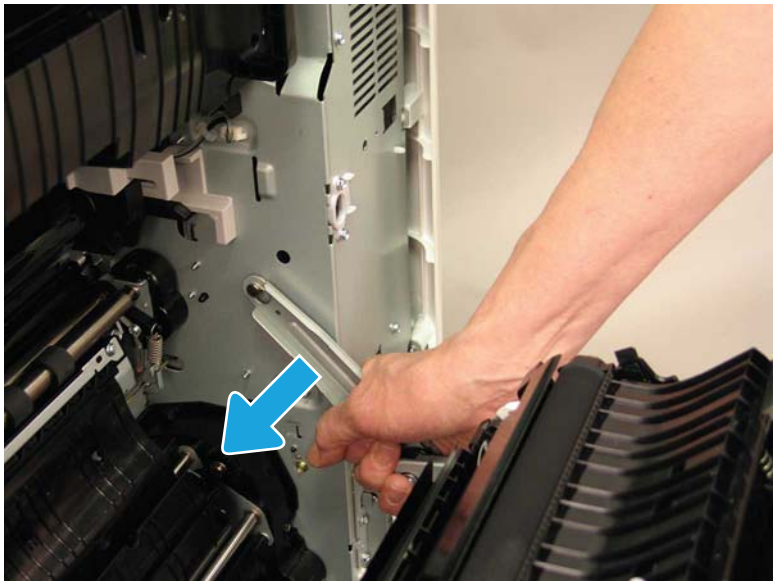
Figure 2-282 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

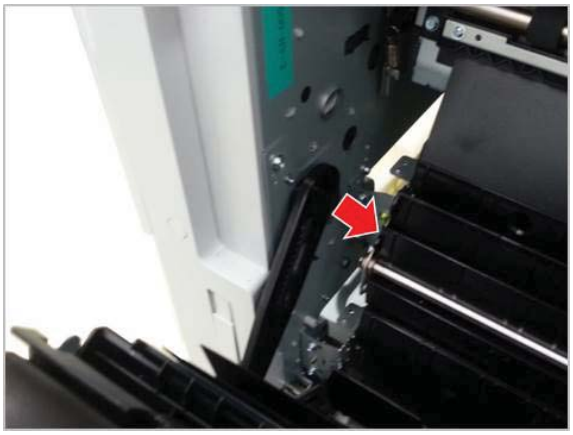
CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-283 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

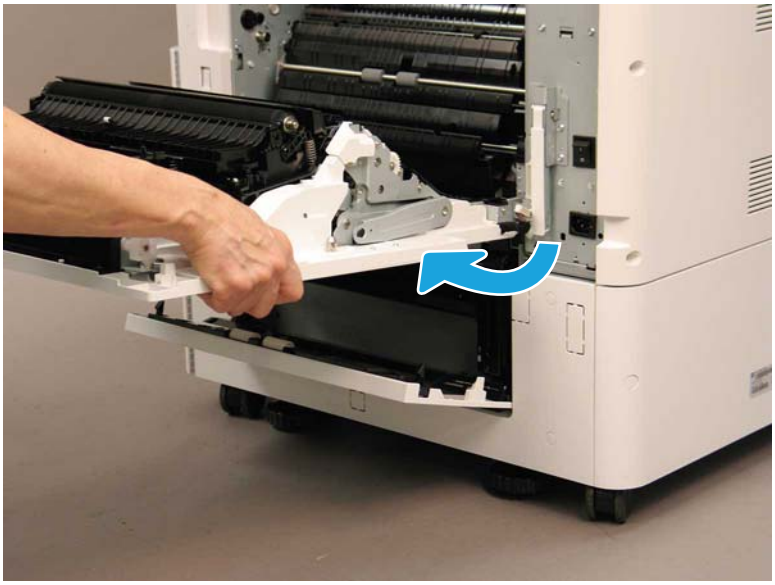
Figure 2-284 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-285 Remove the right door



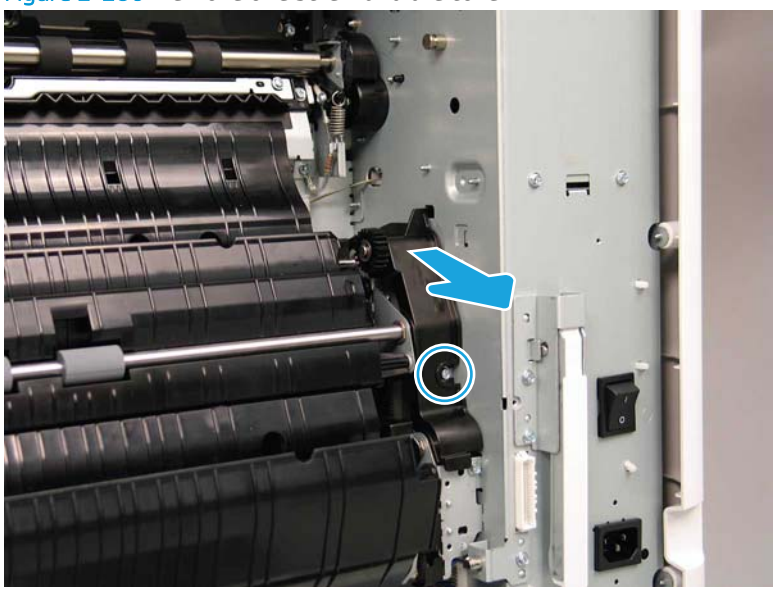
Remove pickup unit 2

Follow these steps to remove pickup unit 2.

1. Remove the paper trays.

2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-286 Remove one screw and the cover



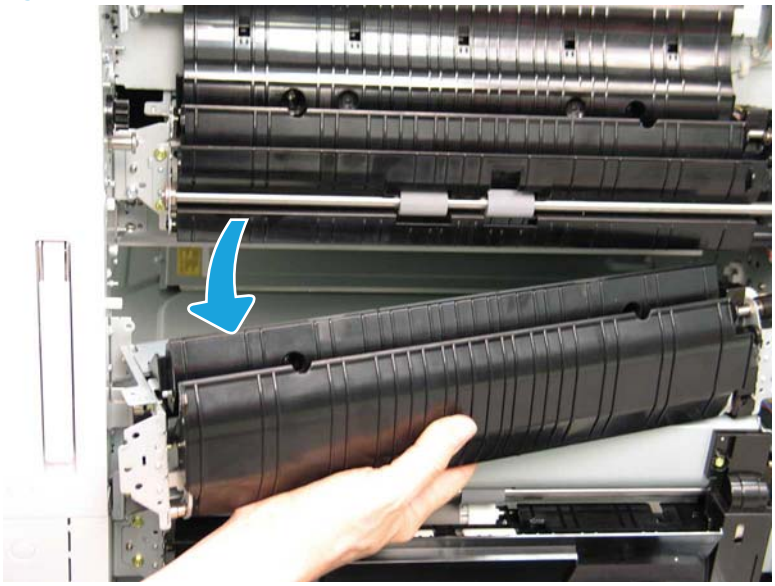
3. Remove three screws.

Figure 2-287 Remove three screws

4. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 2 away from the printer.

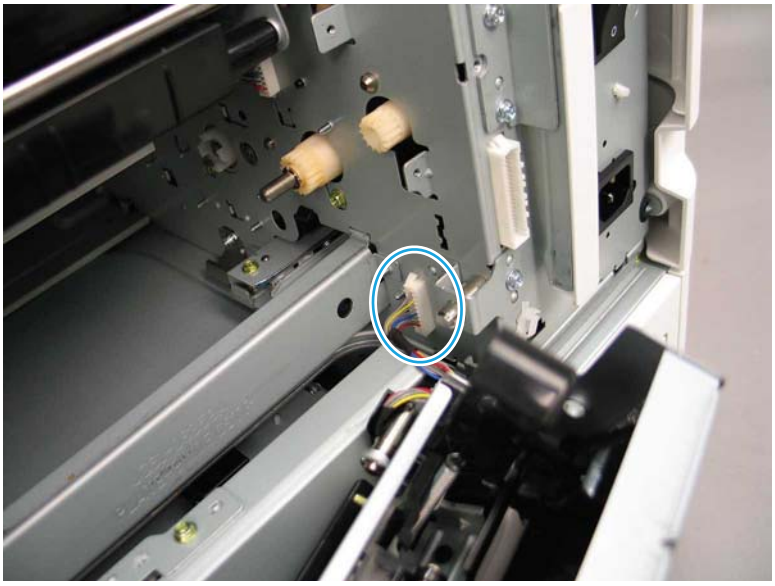
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely.

Figure 2-288 Rotate pickup unit 2



5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 2-289 Disconnect one connector



Remove pickup unit 1

Follow these steps to remove pickup unit 1.

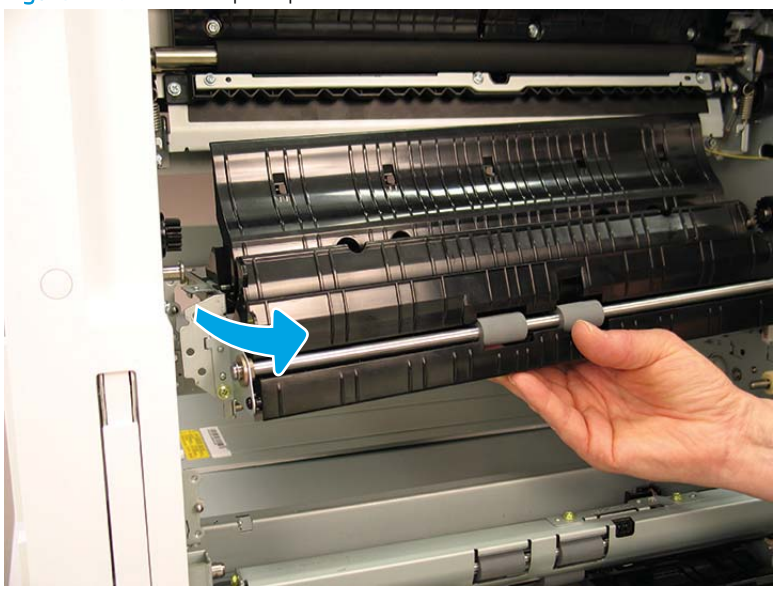
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 2-290 Remove three screws

2. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 1 away from the printer.

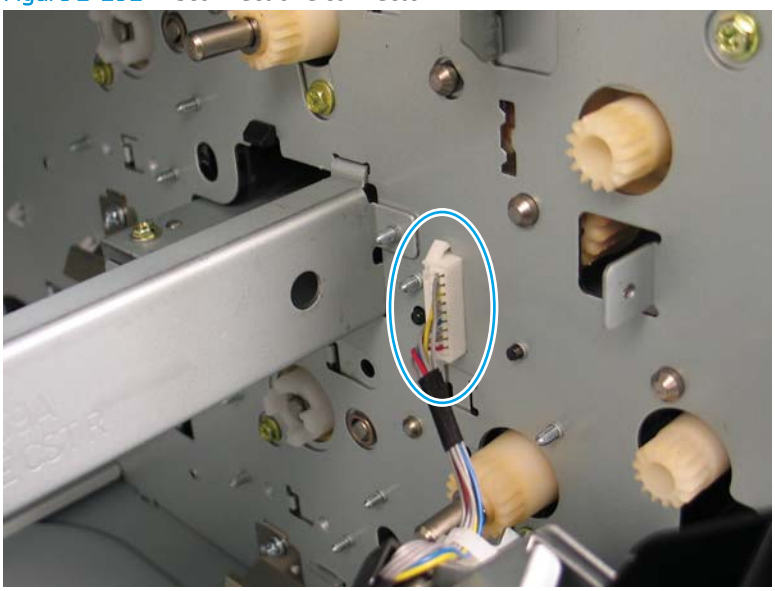
CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely.

Figure 2-291 Rotate pickup unit 1



3. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 2-292 Disconnect one connector

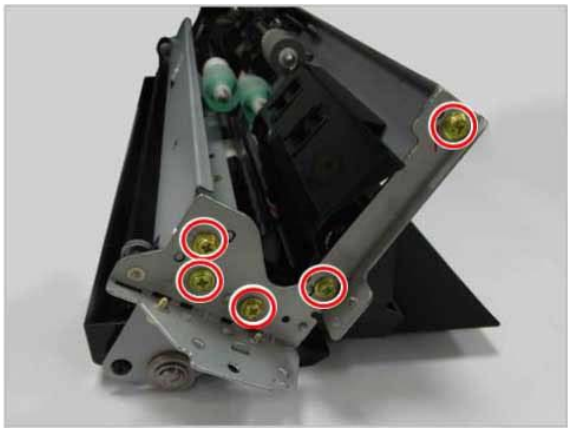


Remove the prefeed sensor 1

Follow these steps to remove the prefeed sensor 1.

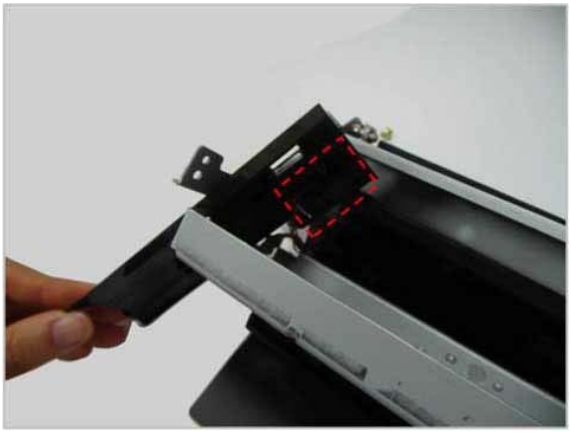
1. Remove five screws, and then remove the bracket.

Figure 2-293 Remove five screws and the bracket.



2. Remove the sensor from its holder.

Figure 2-294 Remove the sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following **special installation instructions**.

Exit assemblies

View the exit assemblies exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Exit assemblies

Parts diagram and parts list for the exit assemblies.

Figure 2-295 Exit assemblies

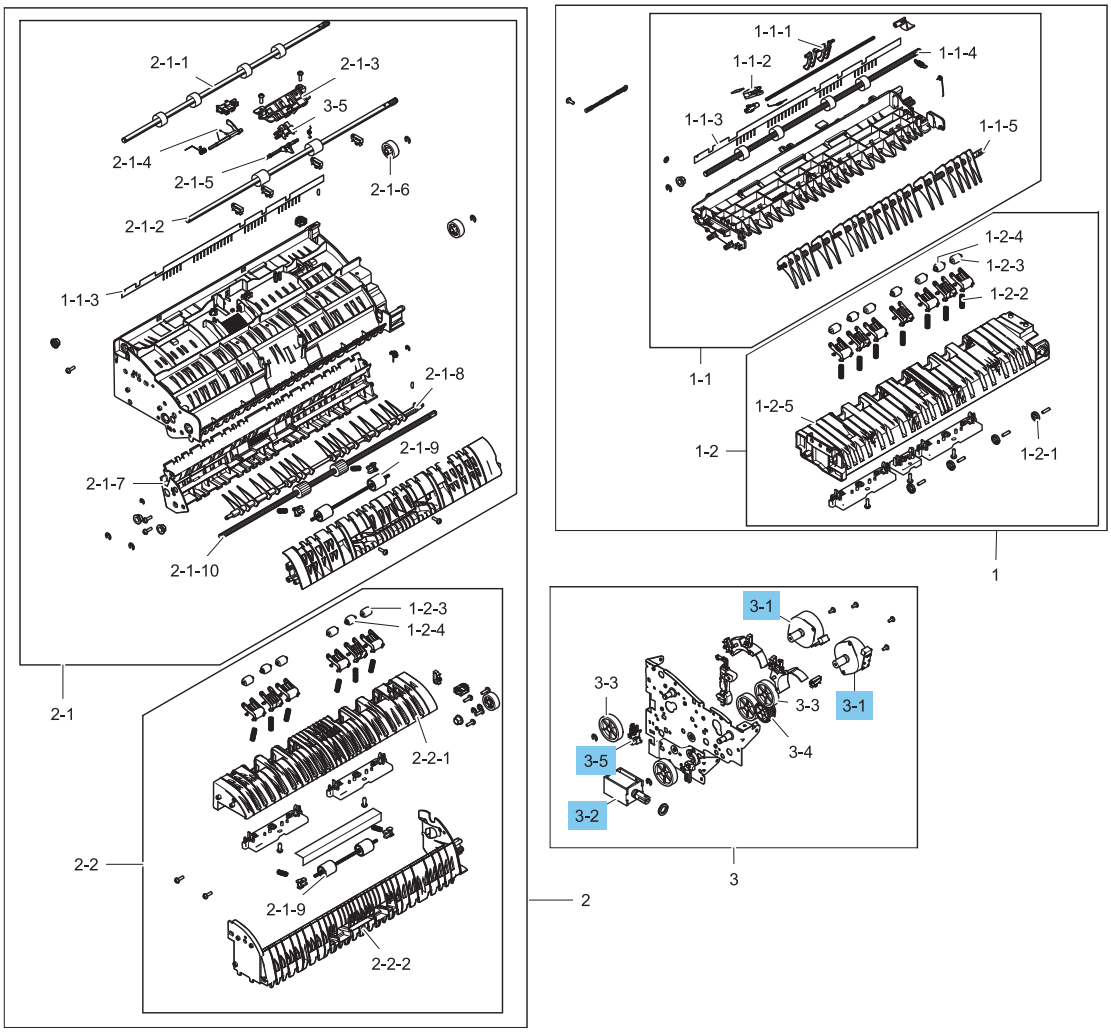


Table 2-49 Exit assemblies

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
3-1	JC93-00802A	Drive, motor step	2	Removal and replacement: Exit gate solenoid/motors/sensor (on the exit unit) on page 406
3-2	JC33-00031B	Solenoid, lifting	1	Removal and replacement: Exit gate solenoid/motors/sensor (on the exit unit) on page 406
3-5	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	1	Removal and replacement: Exit gate solenoid/motors/sensor (on the exit unit) on page 406
3-5	0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	1	Removal and replacement: Return sensor (on the exit unit) on page 416

Removal and replacement: Exit gate solenoid/motors/sensor (on the exit unit)

Learn how to remove and replace the exit gate solenoid/motors/sensor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the exit gate solenoid/motors/sensor.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-50 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC33-00031B	Solenoid , lifting
JC93-00802A	Drive, motor step (qty 2)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

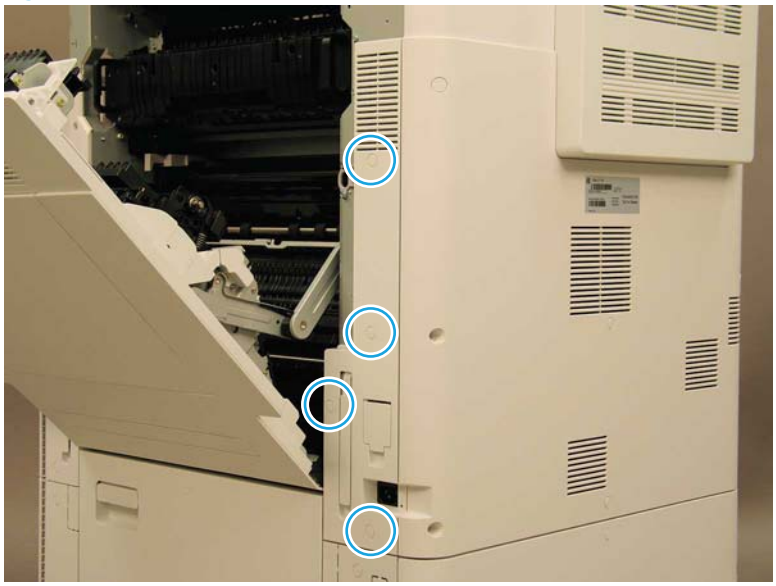
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

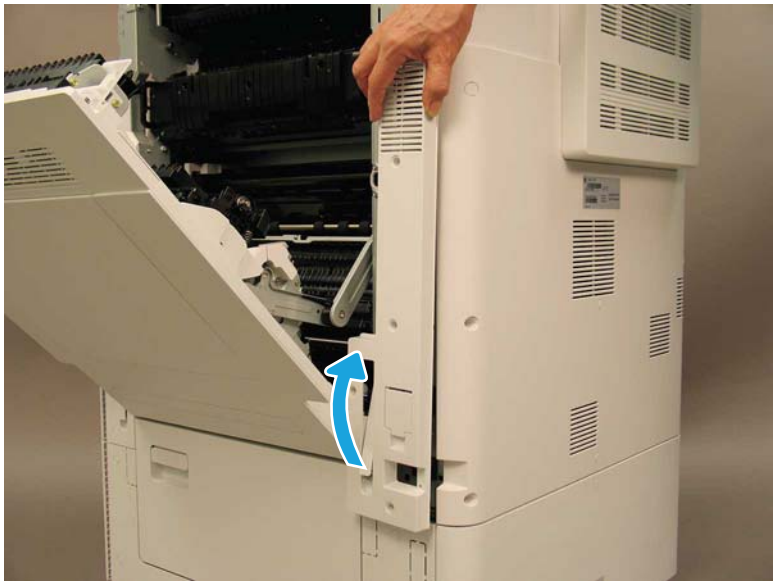
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-296 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-297 Remove the right rear cover

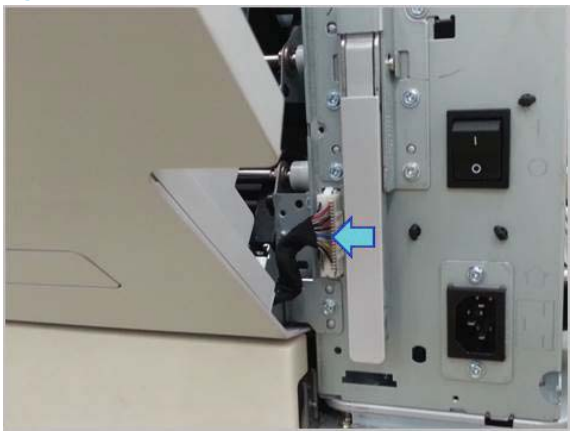


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

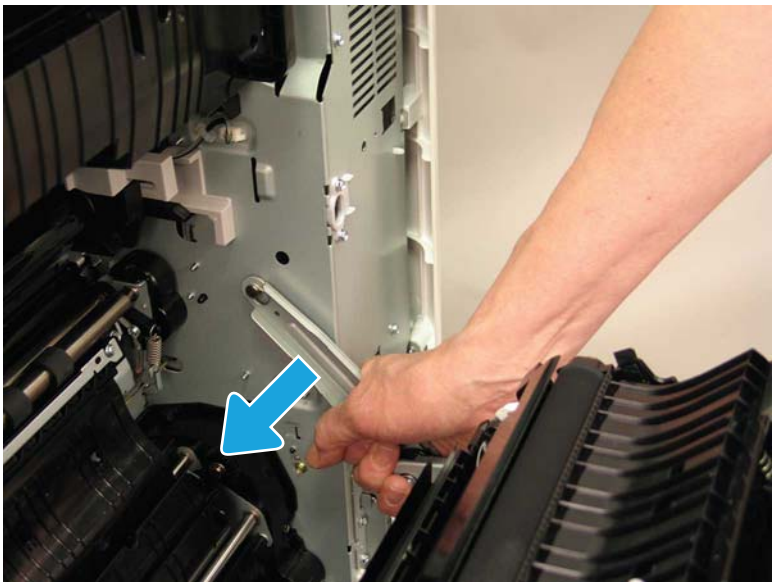
Figure 2-298 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

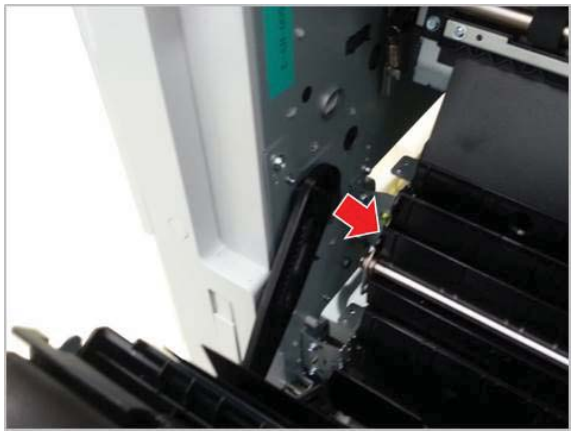
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-299 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

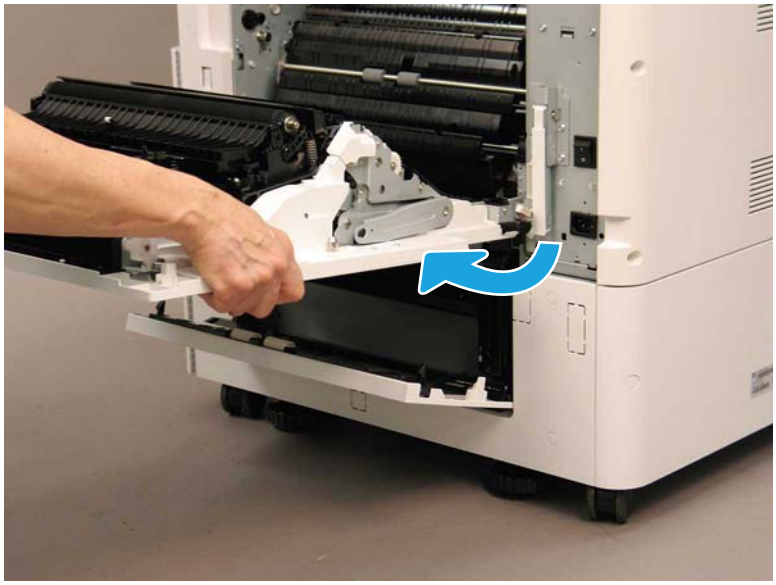
Figure 2-300 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-301 Remove the right door



Remove the front top inner cover

Follow these steps to remove the front top inner cover.

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-302 Remove the front top inner cover

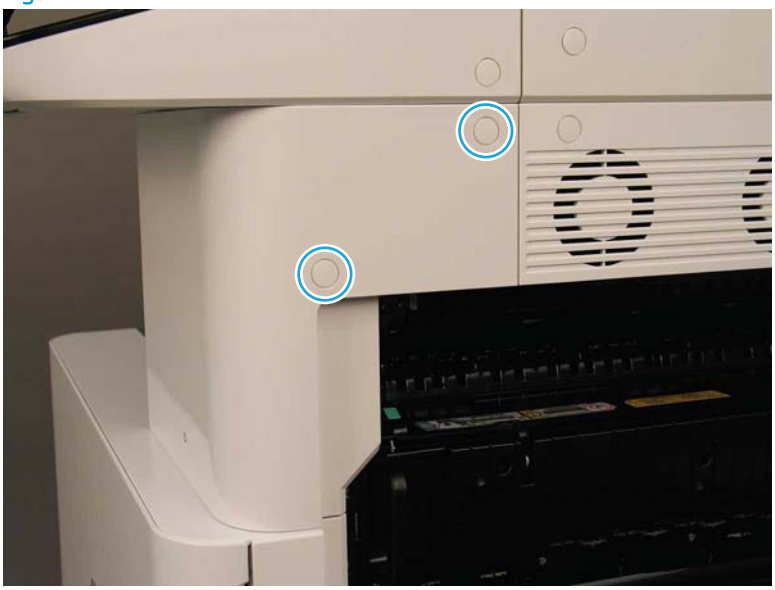
Remove the front power cover

Follow these steps to remove the front power cover.

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

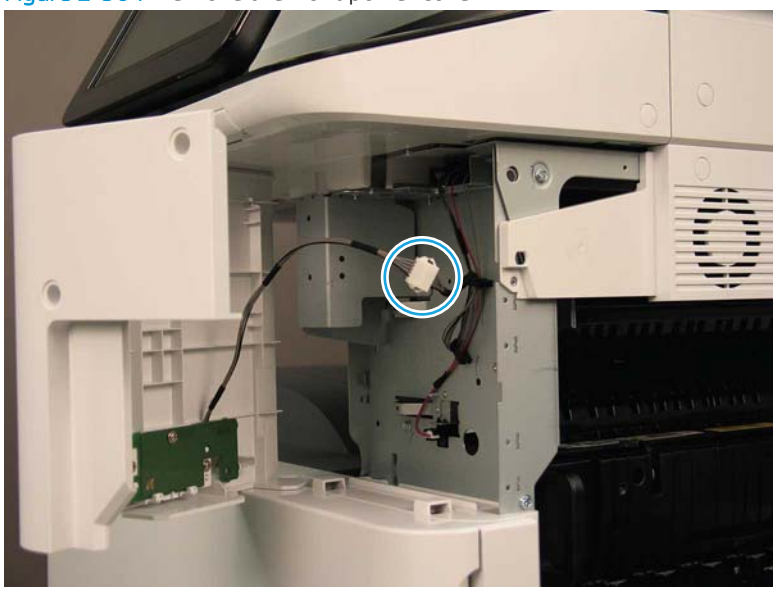
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 2-303 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-304 Remove the front power cover

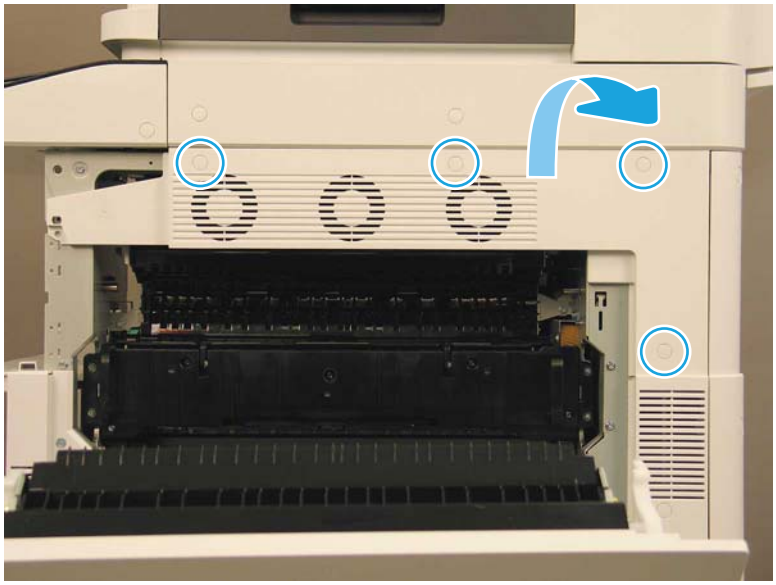


Remove the top right cover

Follow these steps to remove the top right cover.

▲ Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then rotate the upper right door cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-305 Remove the top right cover



Remove the fuser unit

Follow these steps to remove the fuser unit.

1. Open the right door.

NOTE: If the fuser is removed to access another part, the right door might already be removed.

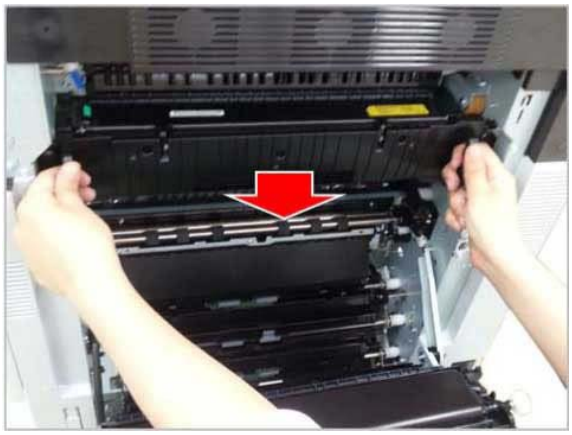
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 2-306 Fuser unit screw locations

3. Pull out the fuser unit.

CAUTION: The temperature in the vicinity of the fuser becomes heated. To prevent the potential of getting burned, make sure the fuser unit has cooled before replacing it.

Figure 2-307 Fuser unit removal

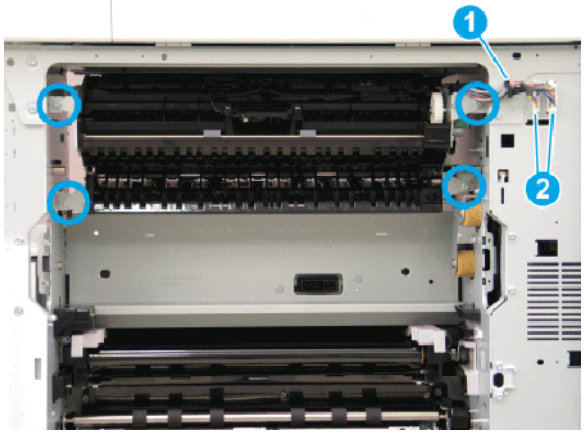


Remove the exit unit

Follow these steps to remove the exit unit.

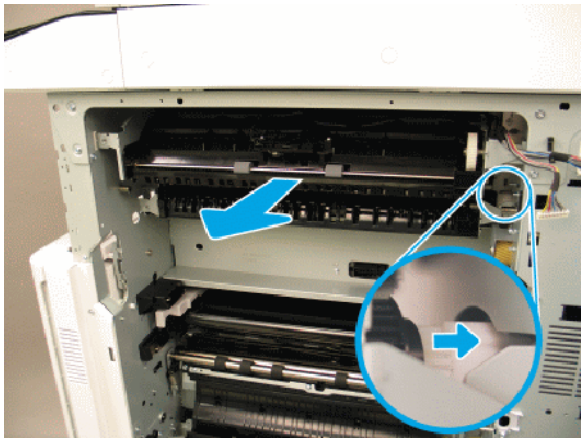
1. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove four screws (callout 3).

Figure 2-308 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws



2. Remove the exit unit while pushing the coupler to the right.

Figure 2-309 Remove the exit unit



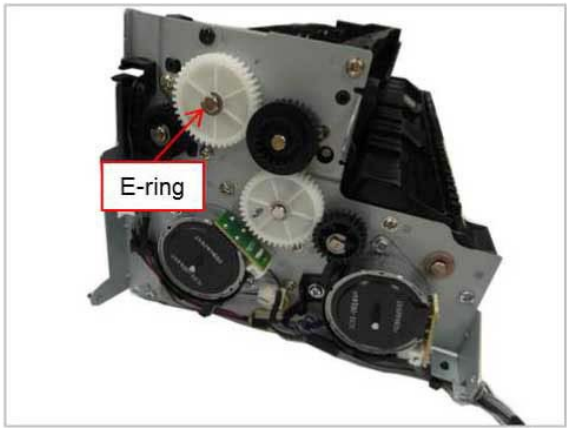
Remove the exit gate solenoid/motors/sensor

Follow these steps to remove the exit gate solenoid/motors/sensor.

1. Disconnect one connector. Gently pry the black gear from behind to remove it. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the white gear.

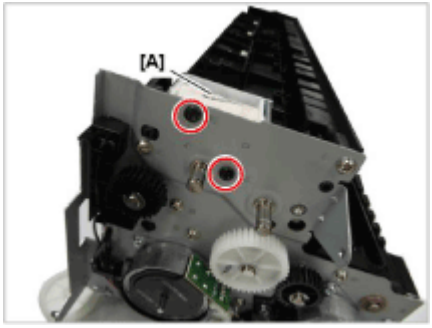
NOTE: If necessary, remove two motors, and then remove one sensor.

Figure 2-310 On the exit unit, disconnect one connector and remove two gears



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the exit gate solenoid (callout A).

Figure 2-311 Exit gate solenoid



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Return sensor (on the exit unit)

Learn how to remove and replace the return sensor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the return sensor.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-51 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo Interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

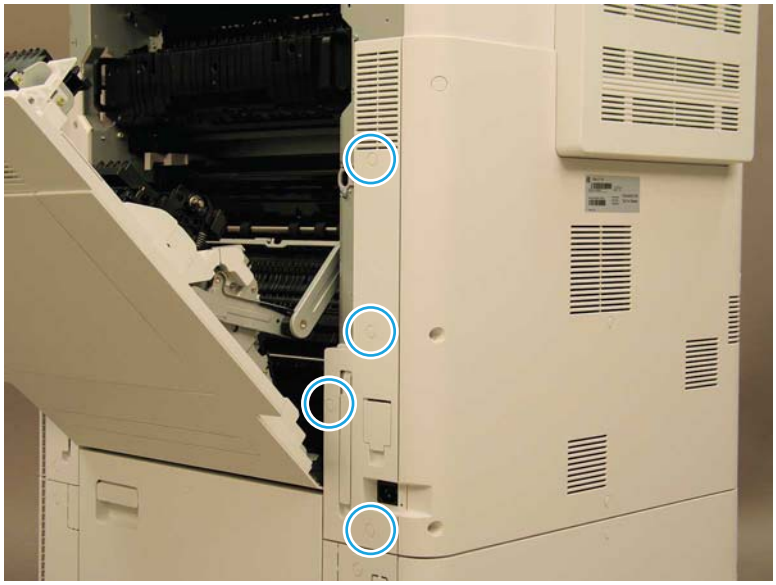
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

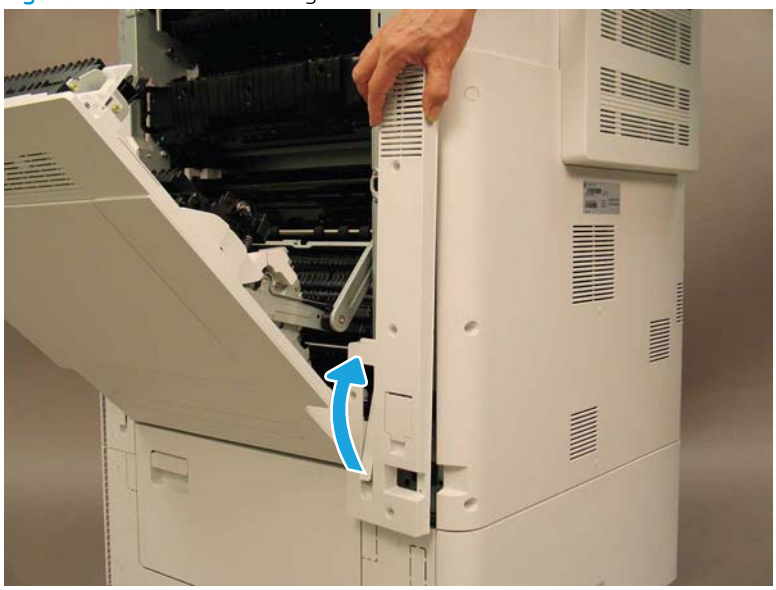
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-312 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-313 Remove the right rear cover

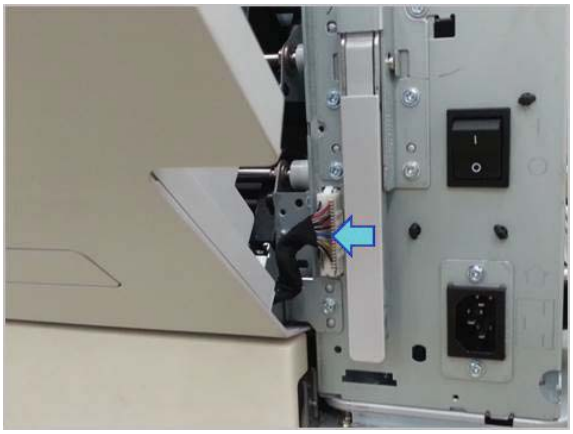


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

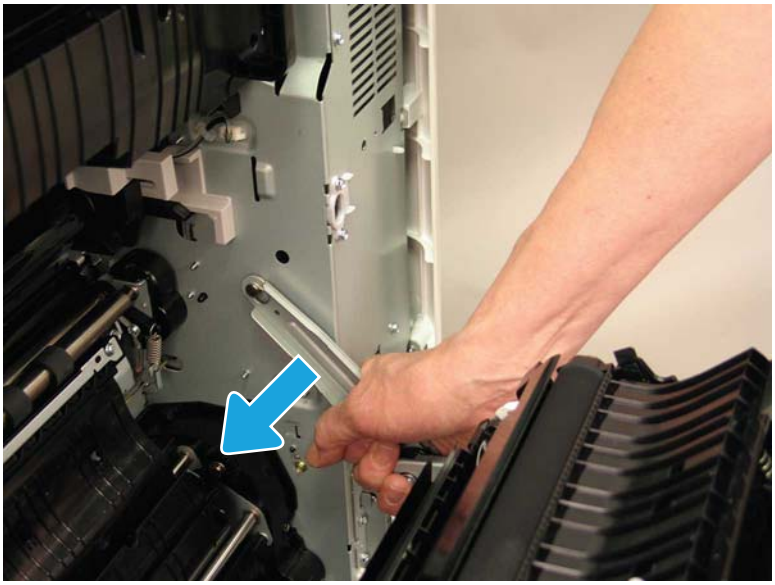
Figure 2-314 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

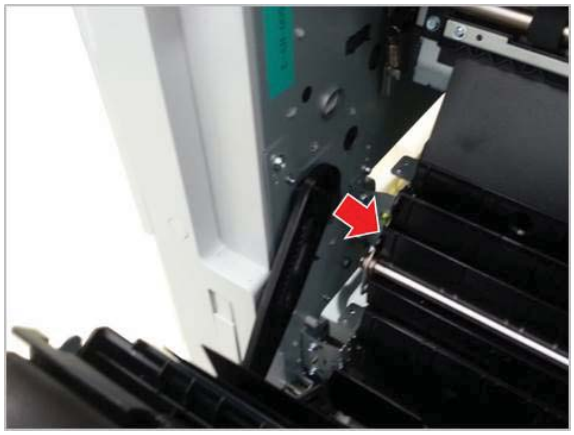
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-315 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

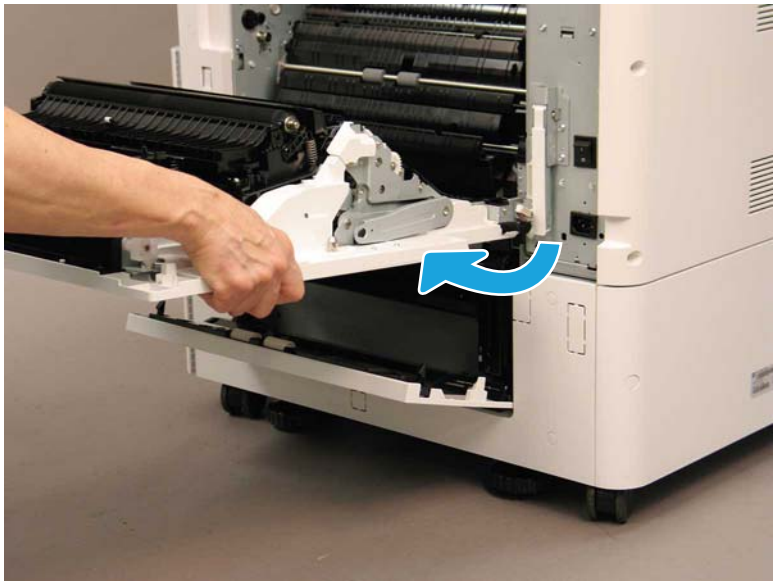
Figure 2-316 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-317 Remove the right door



Remove the front top inner cover

Follow these steps to remove the front top inner cover.

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-318 Remove the front top inner cover

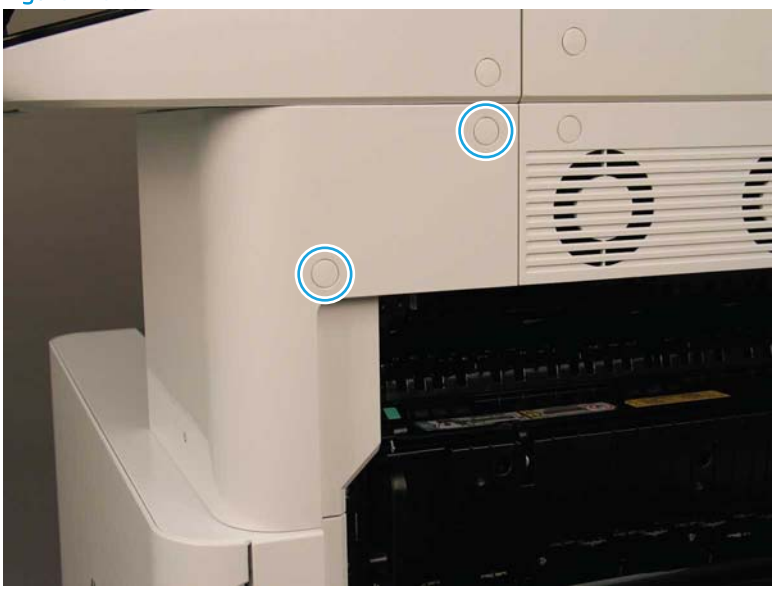
Remove the front power cover

Follow these steps to remove the front power cover.

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

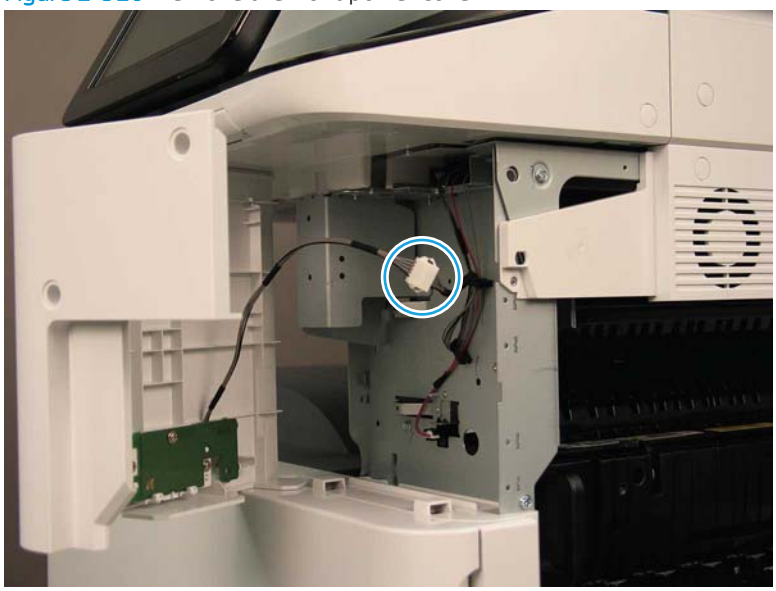
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 2-319 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-320 Remove the front power cover

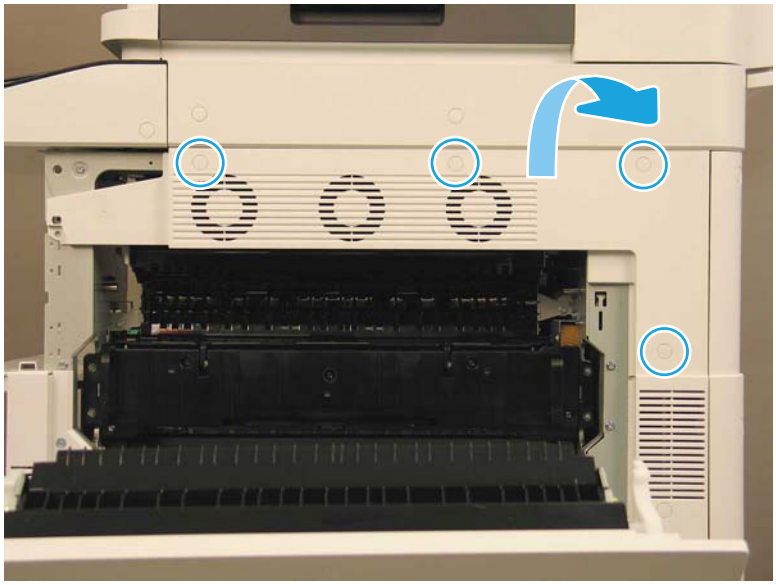


Remove the top right cover

Follow these steps to remove the top right cover.

▲ Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then rotate the upper right door cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-321 Remove the top right cover



Remove the fuser unit

Follow these steps to remove the fuser unit.

1. Open the right door.

NOTE: If the fuser is removed to access another part, the right door might already be removed.

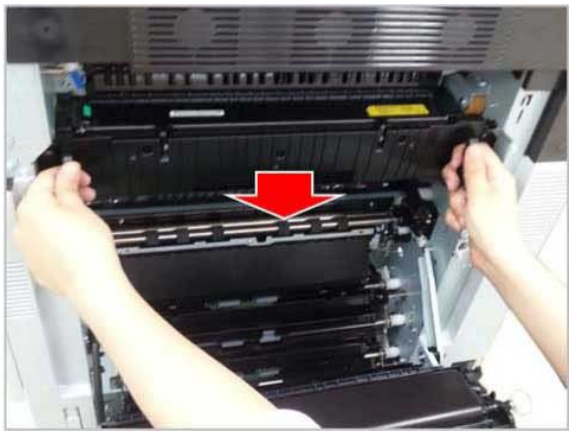
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 2-322 Fuser unit screw locations

3. Pull out the fuser unit.

CAUTION: The temperature in the vicinity of the fuser becomes heated. To prevent the potential of getting burned, make sure the fuser unit has cooled before replacing it.

Figure 2-323 Fuser unit removal

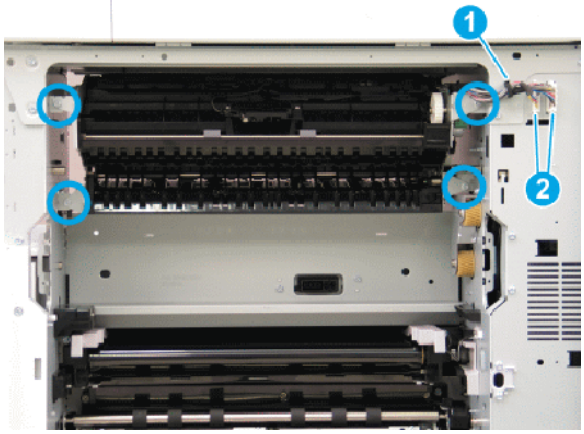


Remove the exit unit

Follow these steps to remove the exit unit.

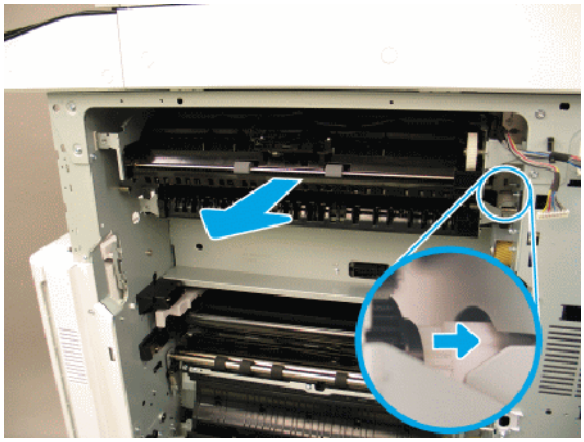
1. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove four screws (callout 3).

Figure 2-324 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws



2. Remove the exit unit while pushing the coupler to the right.

Figure 2-325 Remove the exit unit

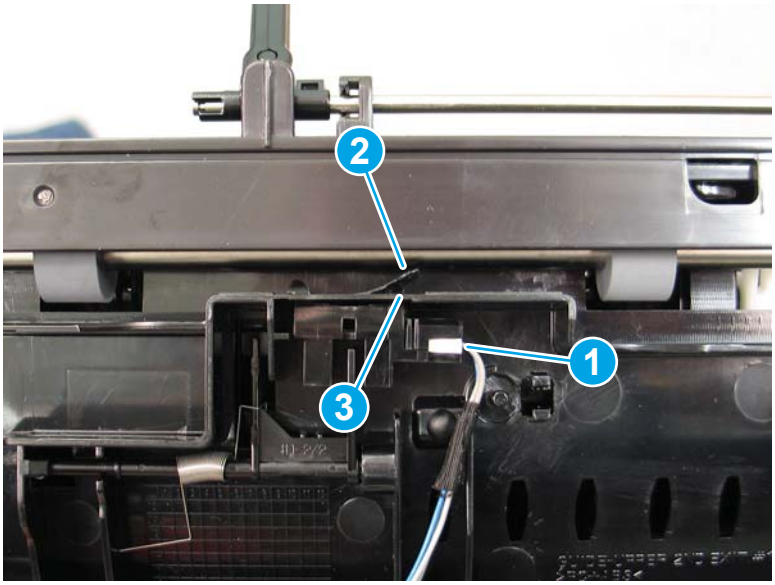


Remove the return sensor

Follow these steps to Remove the return sensor.

- Locate the sensor on the exit unit. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then peel the black adhesive strip (callout 2) away from the top of the sensor. Release two small tabs (callout 3), and then remove the sensor.

Figure 2-326 Return sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Cassettes tray 2/3

View the cassettes tray 2/3 exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Cassettes Tray 2/3

Parts diagram and parts list for the cassettes tray 2/3.

Figure 2-327 Cassettes Tray 2/3

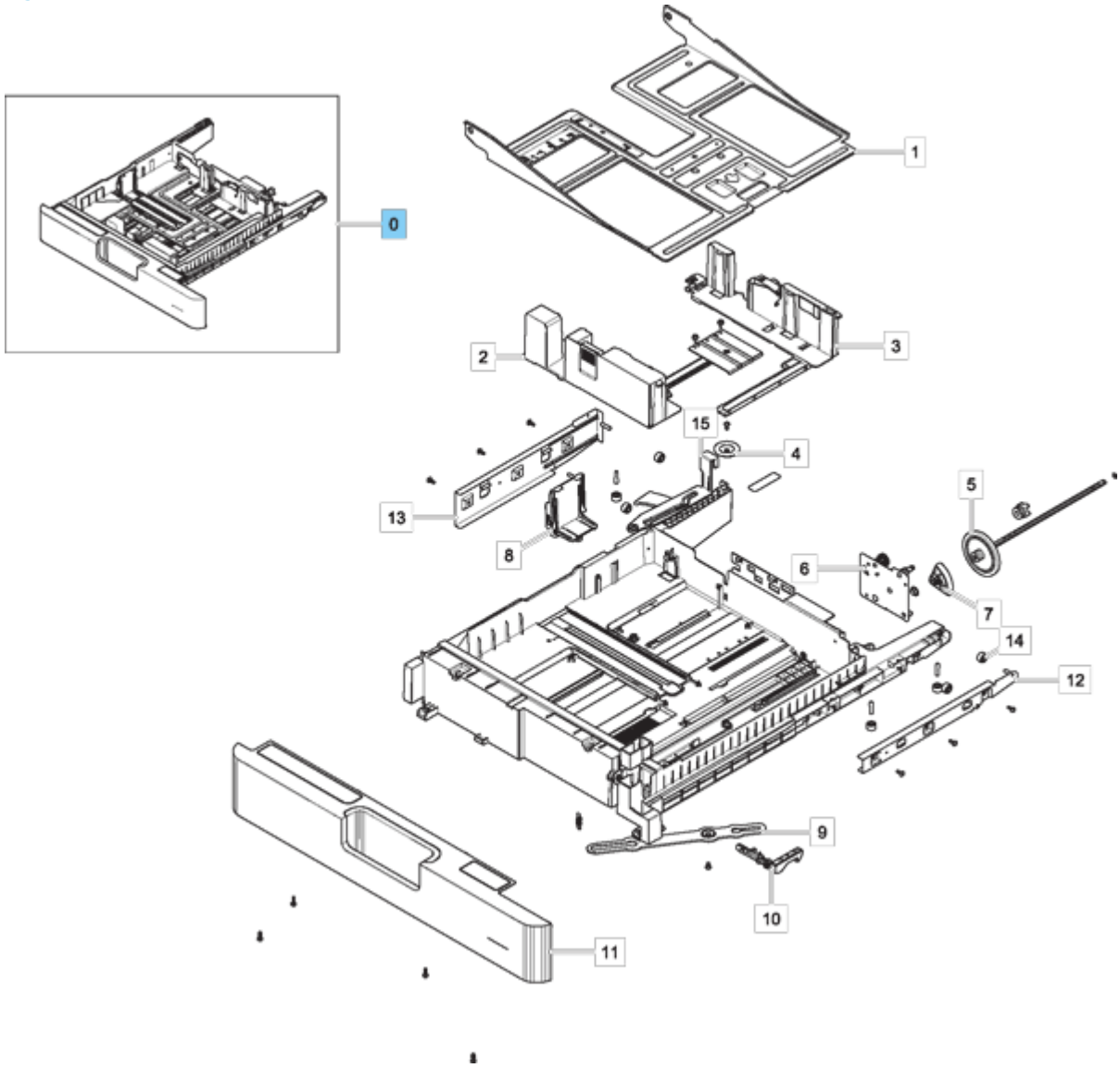


Table 2-52 Cassettes Tray 2/3

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
0	JC90-01610A	Cassette, Tray 2	1	Not applicable
0	JC90-01611A	Cassette, Tray 3	1	Not applicable

Main frame assembly

View the main frame assembly exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Main frame assembly

Parts diagram and parts list for the main frame assembly.

Figure 2-328 Main assembly frame

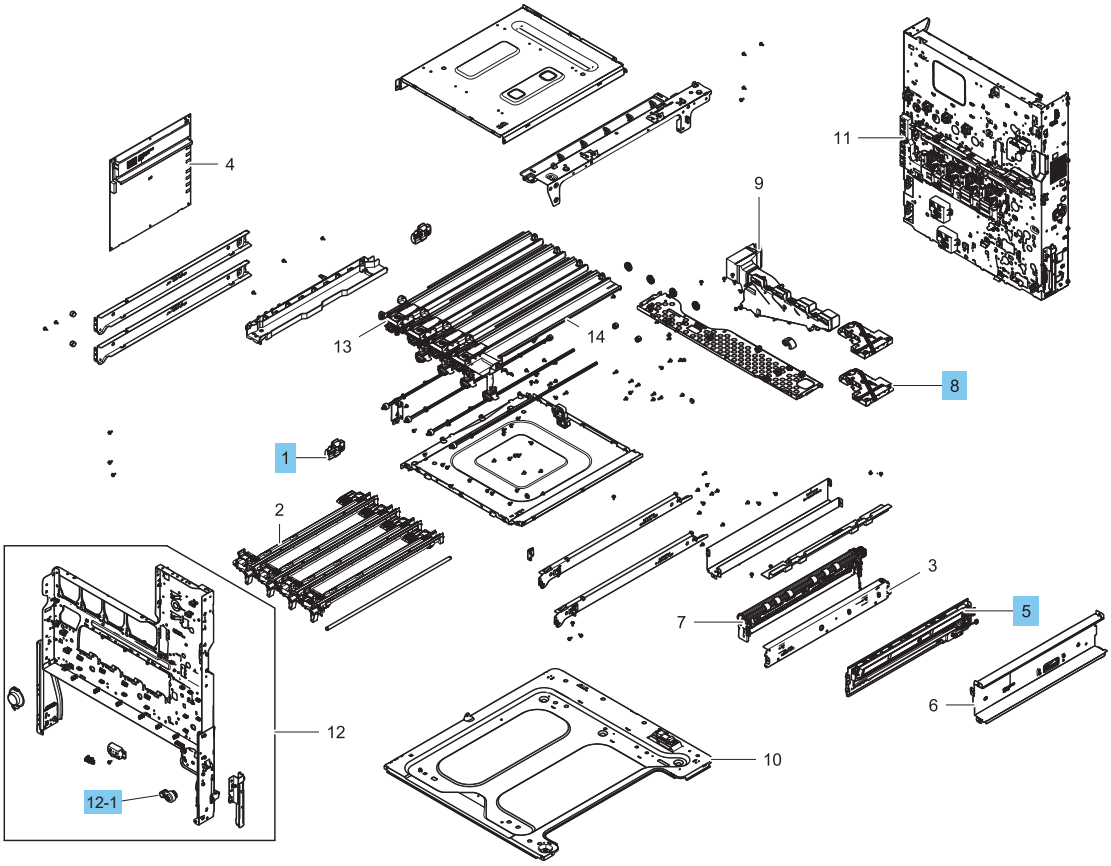


Table 2-53 Main assembly frame

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1	JC93-00466A	Front Door Switch Open	1	Removal and replacement: Front cover open sensor on page 429
5	JC93-01039A	ACR assembly	1	Not applicable
8	JC93-01370A	Tray closing assembly	2	Removal and replacement: Tray closing unit on page 436
12-1	5CM63-67901	Right door damper and lever kit	1	Removal and replacement: Right door dampener and lever kit on page 441
Not shown	JC39-02217A	Harness, fuser connector	1	Not applicable
Not shown	JC39-02187A	Harness, engine side for DCF + connector	1	Not applicable
Not shown	JC93-01023A	High-voltage rail assembly	1	Removal and replacement: High-voltage rail assembly on page 458

Removal and replacement: Front cover open sensor

Learn how to remove the front cover open sensor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the front cover open sensor.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-54 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00466A	Front door switch open

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the TCU

Follow these steps to remove the TCU.

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-329 Remove the TCU

Remove the paper dust brush

Follow these steps to remove the paper dust brush.

▲ Remove the paper dust brush.

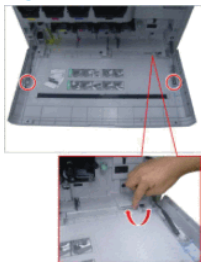
Figure 2-330 Remove the paper dust brush

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

- Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

Figure 2-331 Remove the front cover

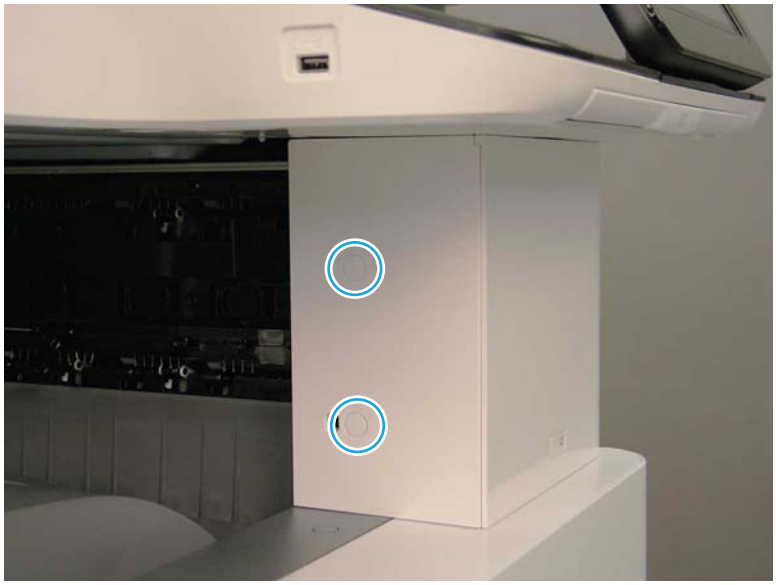


Remove the front top inner cover

Follow these steps to remove the front top inner cover.

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-332 Remove the front top inner cover



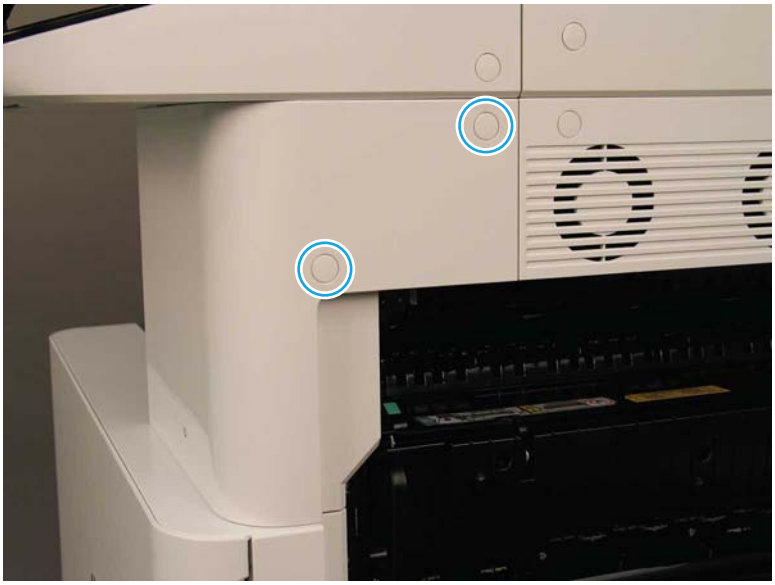
Remove the front power cover

Follow these steps to remove the front power cover.

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

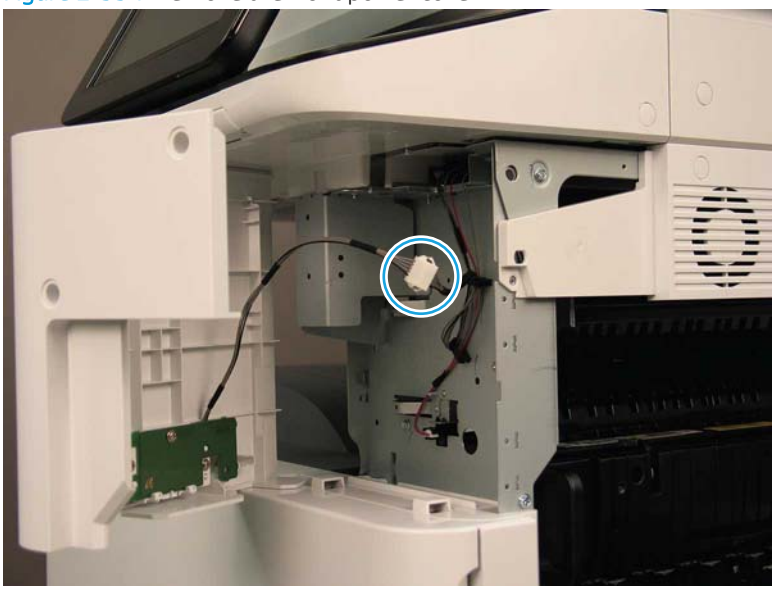
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 2-333 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-334 Remove the front power cover



Remove the exit cover

Follow these steps to remove the exit cover.

- ▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the exit cover away from the printer to remove it.

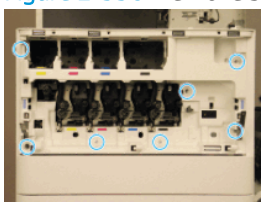
Figure 2-335 Remove the exit cover

Remove the inner front cover

Follow these steps to remove the inner front cover.

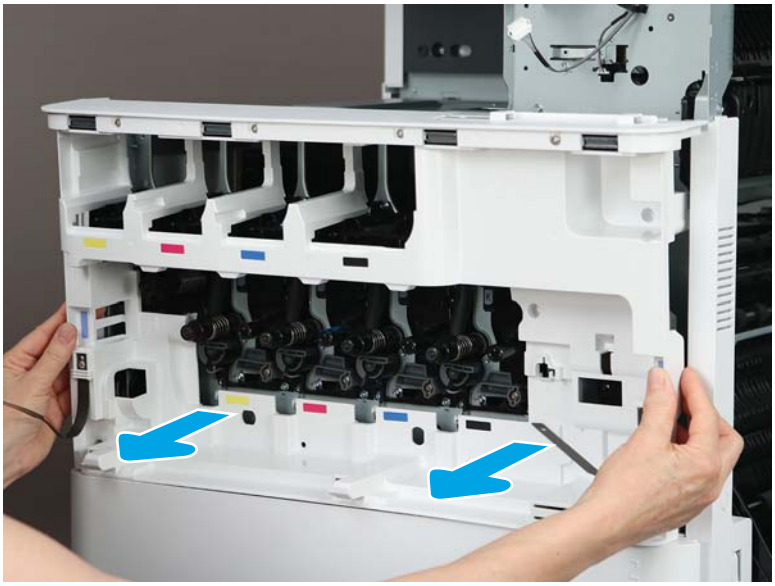
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove the all of the toner cartridges.
3. Remove seven screws.

Figure 2-336 Remove seven screws



4. Lift the inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-337 Remove the inner cover

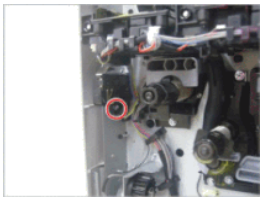


Remove the front cover open sensor

Follow these steps to remove the front cover open sensor.

1. Remove the toner cartridges.
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the front cover open sensor.

Figure 2-338 Remove one screw and the cover open sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray closing unit

Learn how to remove and replace the tray closing unit.

View a video of how to remove and replace the tray closing unit.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-55 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01370A	Tray closing unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

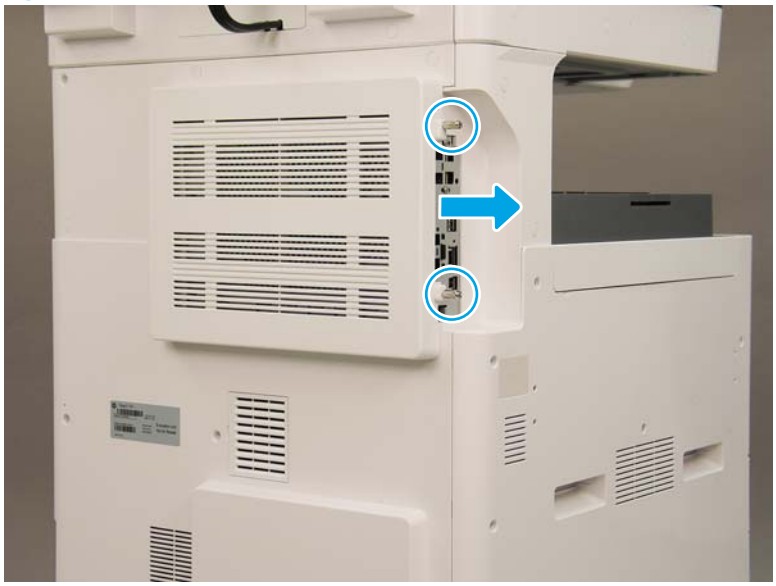
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-339 Remove the formatter cover

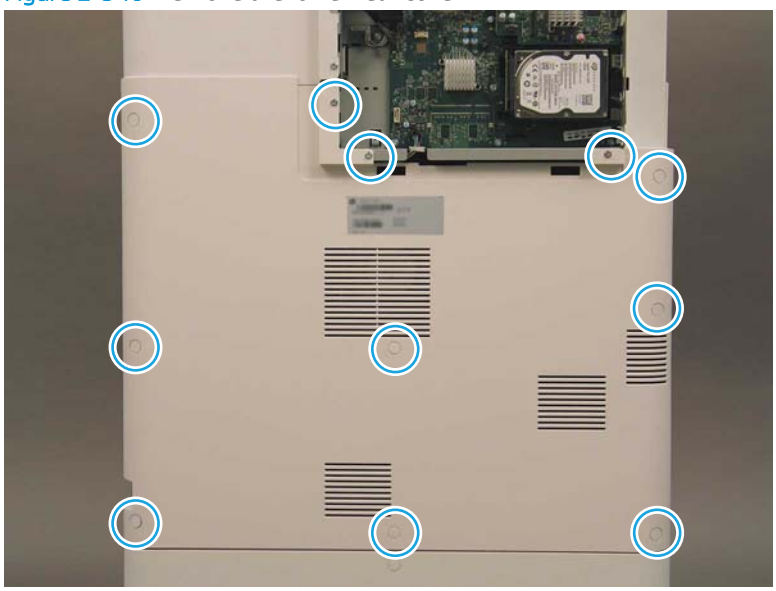


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-340 Remove the lower rear cover

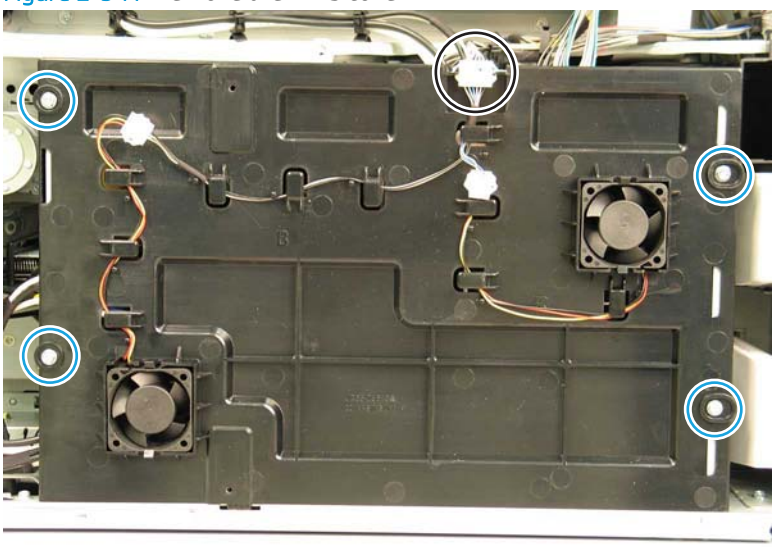


Remove the LVPS cover

Follow these steps to remove the LVPS cover.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-341 Remove the LVPS cover



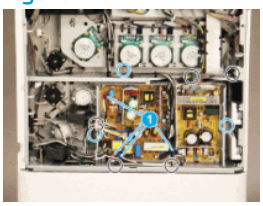
Remove the fuser drive and low-voltage power supply (LVPS) boards and cage

Follow these steps to remove the fuser drive and low-voltage power supply (LVPS) boards and cage.

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

- Before removing the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage, note the location of four connectors (callout 1) that do not have to be disconnected. Disconnect the remaining connectors on the LVPS and fuser drive boards, and then release the cables from five retainers. Remove three screws, and then tilt the top of the cage out to remove it.

Figure 2-342 Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage



Remove the tray closing unit

Follow these steps to remove the tray closing unit.

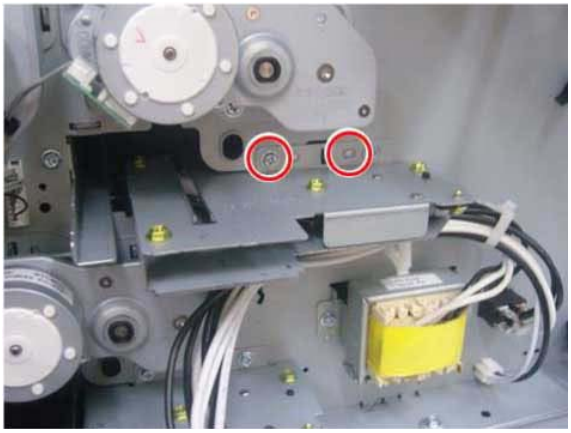
1. Remove Tray 2.

2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cassette rail cover.

Figure 2-343 Remove the CST rail cover

3. Remove two screws, and then remove the tray closing unit.

Figure 2-344 Remove the tray closing unit



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right door dampener and lever kit

Learn how to remove and replace the right door dampener.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

> ⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-56 Part information

Part number	Part description
5CM63-67901	Right door dampener and lever kit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front top inner cover

Follow these steps to remove the front top inner cover.

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-345 Remove the front top inner cover

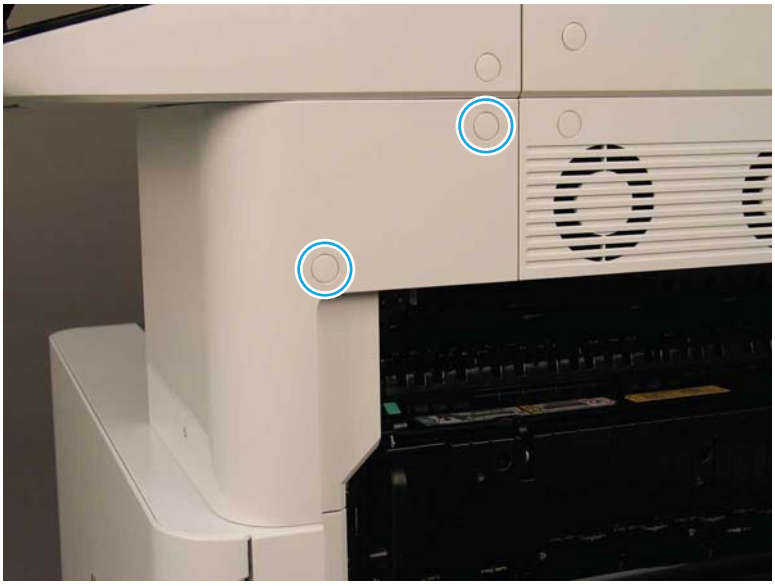
Remove the front power cover

Follow these steps to remove the front power cover.

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

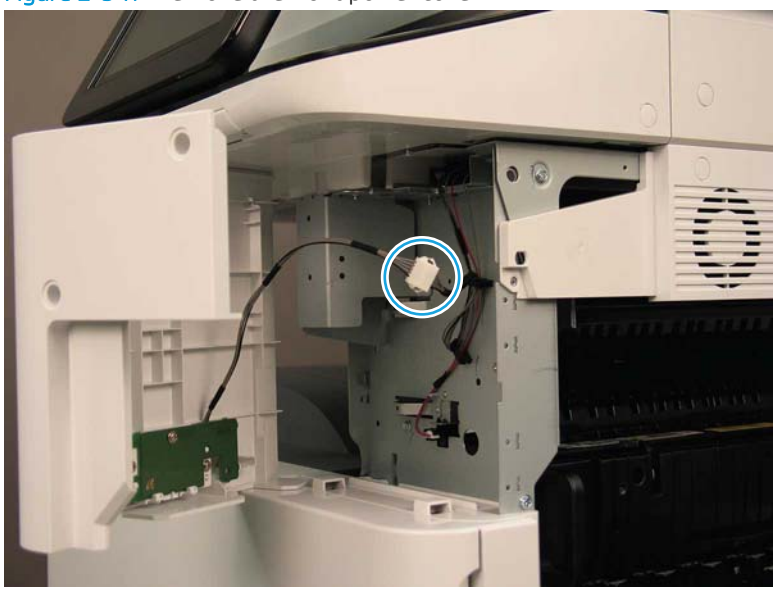
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 2-346 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-347 Remove the front power cover



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-348 Remove the TCU

Remove the paper dust brush

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Remove the exit cover

Follow these steps to remove the exit cover.

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the exit cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-349 Remove the exit cover

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

- ▲ Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

Figure 2-350 Remove the front cover

Remove the inner front cover

Follow these steps to remove the inner front cover.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove the all of the toner cartridges.
3. Remove seven screws.

Figure 2-351 Remove seven screws

4. Lift the inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

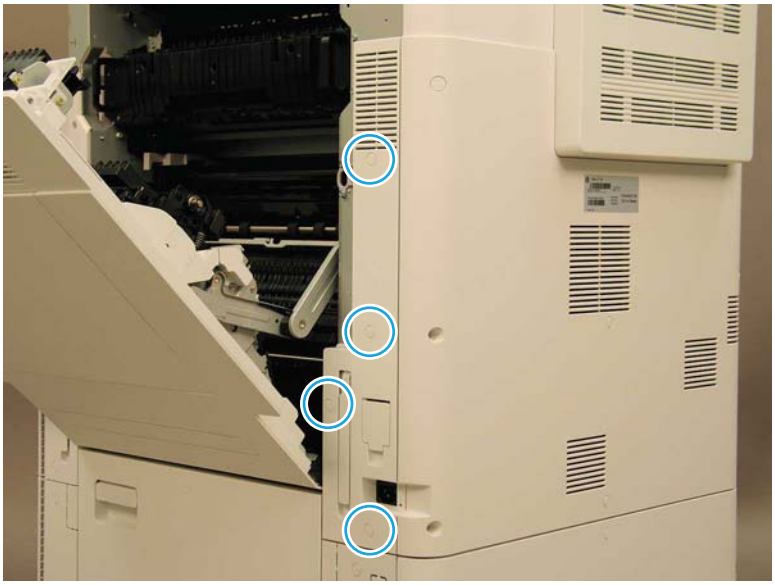
Figure 2-352 Remove the inner cover

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

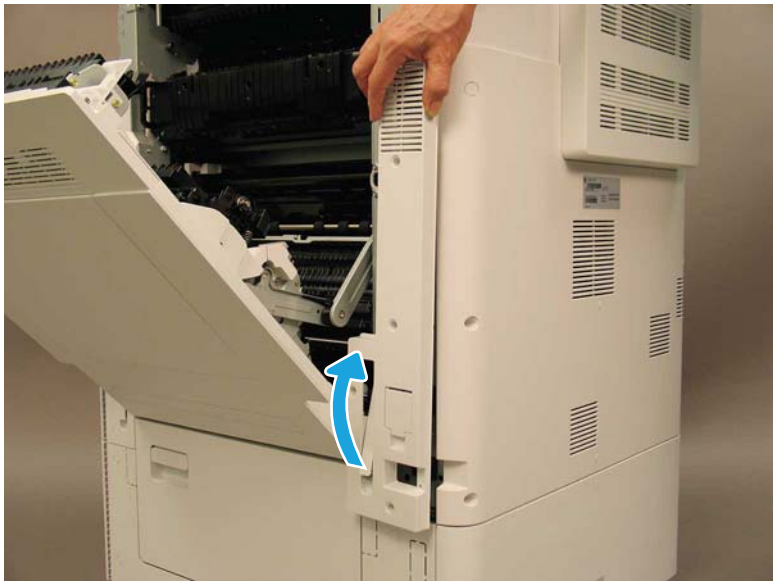
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-353 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-354 Remove the right rear cover

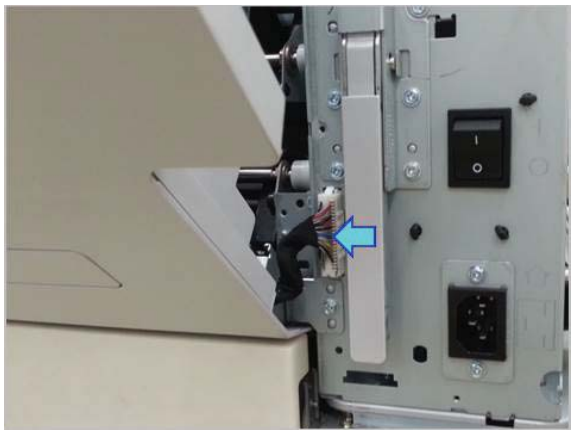


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

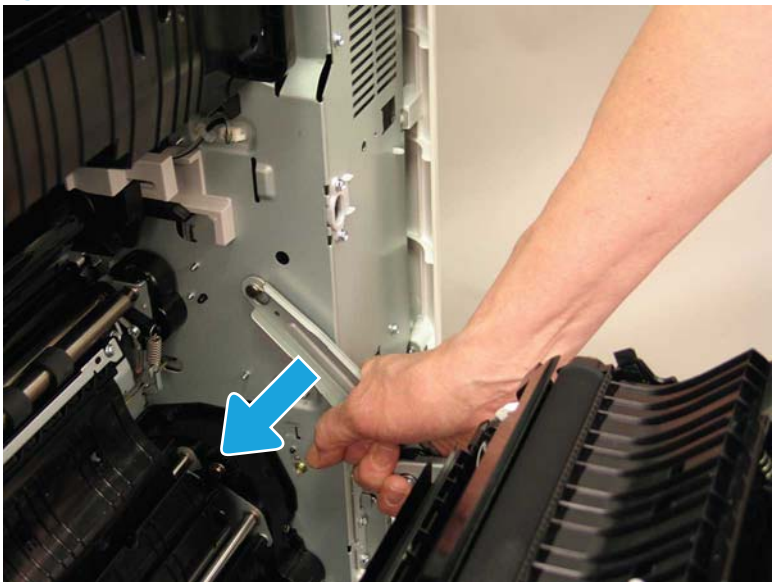
Figure 2-355 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

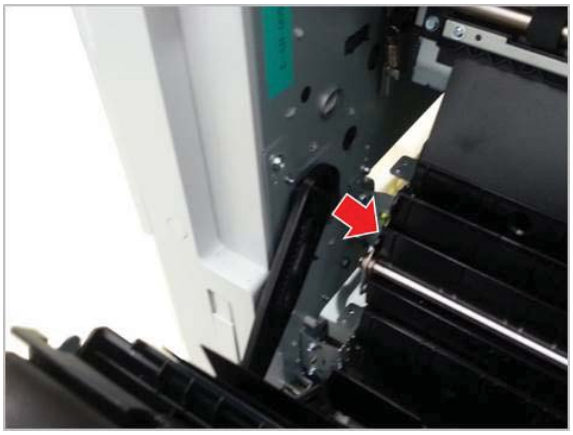
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-356 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

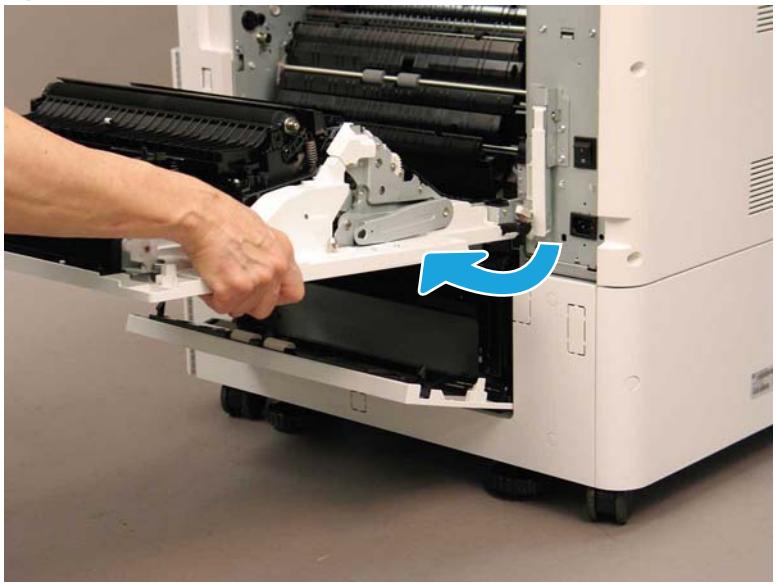
Figure 2-357 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-358 Remove the right door

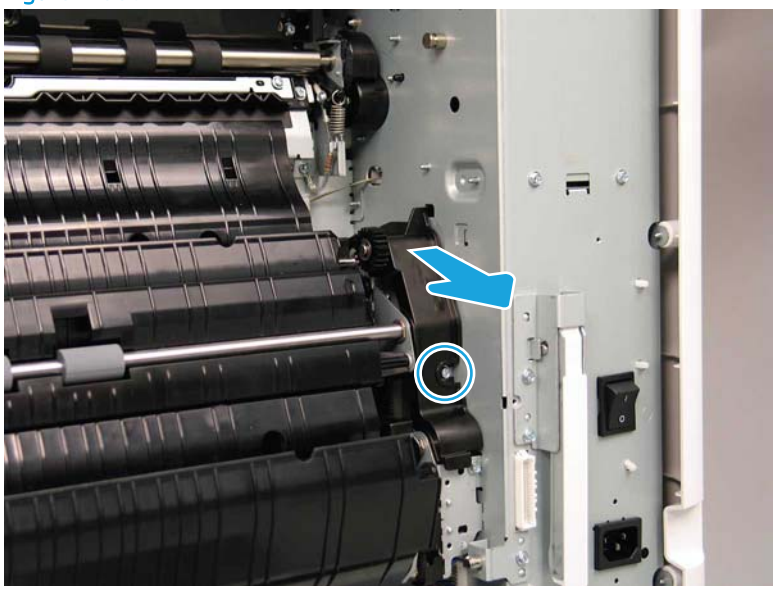


Remove pickup unit 2

Follow these steps to remove pickup unit 2.

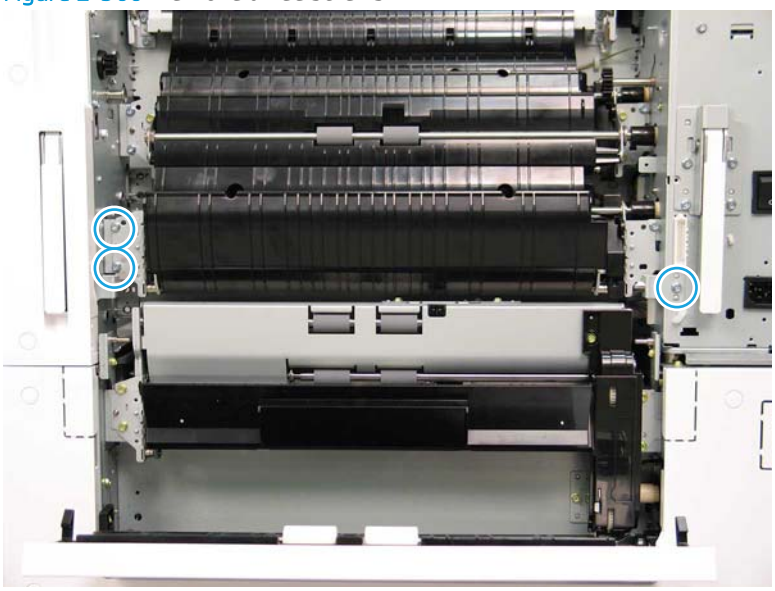
1. Remove the paper trays.
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-359 Remove one screw and the cover



3. Remove three screws.

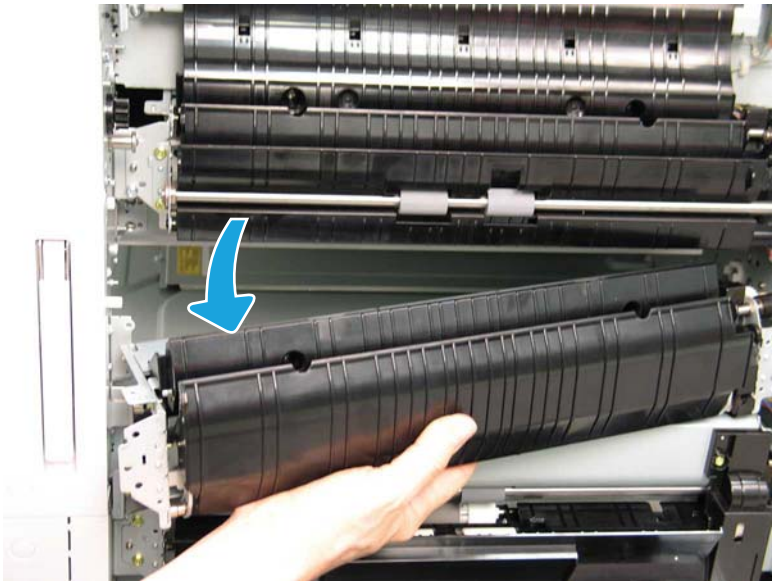
Figure 2-360 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 2 away from the printer.

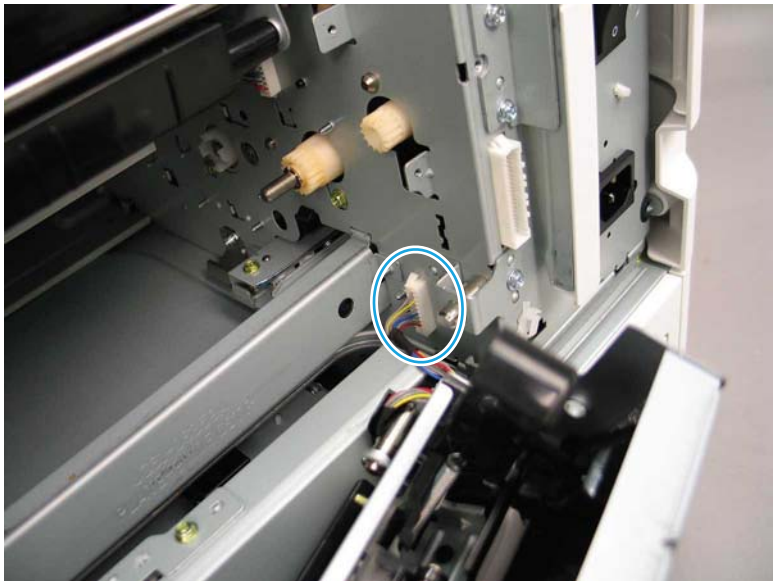
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely.

Figure 2-361 Rotate pickup unit 2



5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 2-362 Disconnect one connector



Remove pickup unit 1

Follow these steps to remove pickup unit 1.

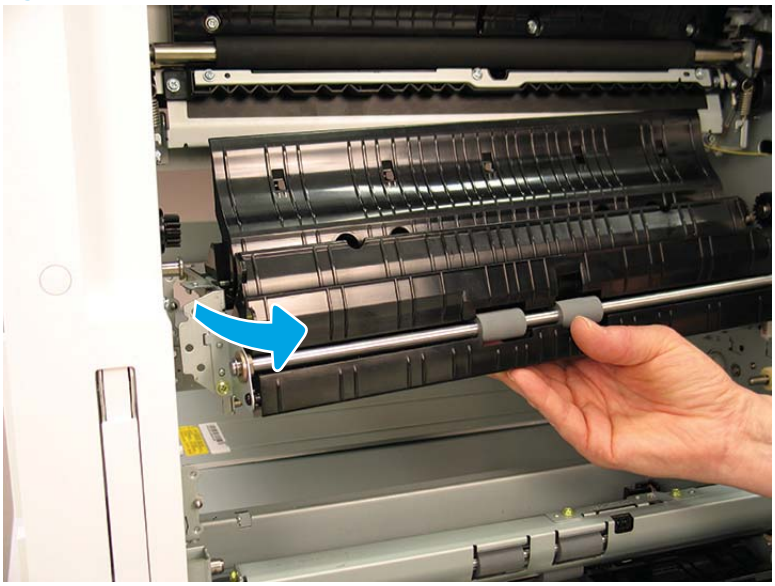
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 2-363 Remove three screws

2. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 1 away from the printer.

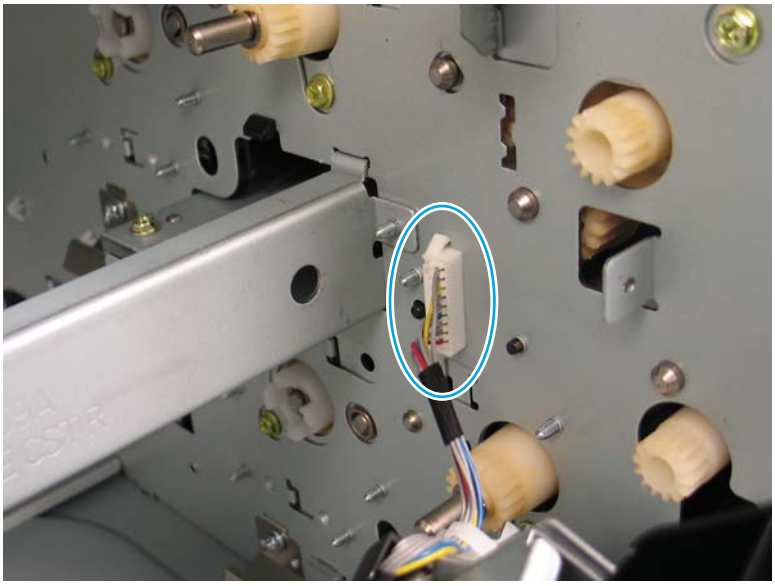
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely.

Figure 2-364 Rotate pickup unit 1



3. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 2-365 Disconnect one connector

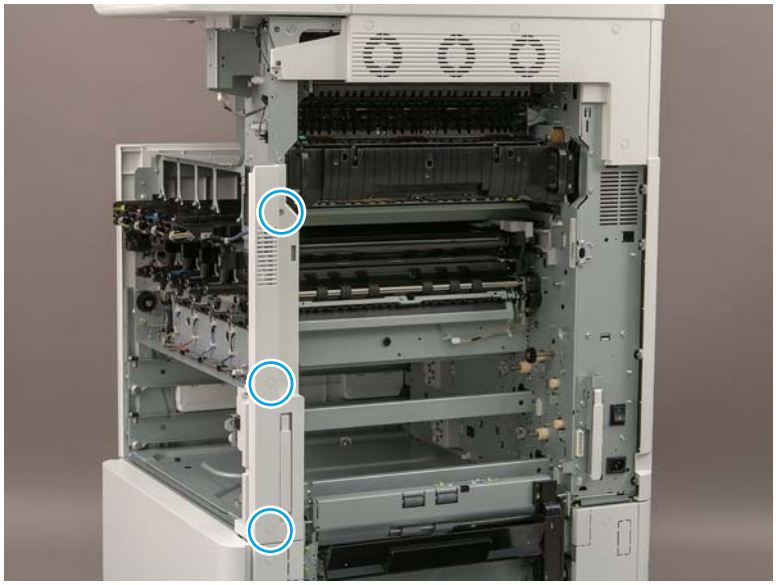


Remove the right door dampener

Follow these steps to remove the right door dampener.

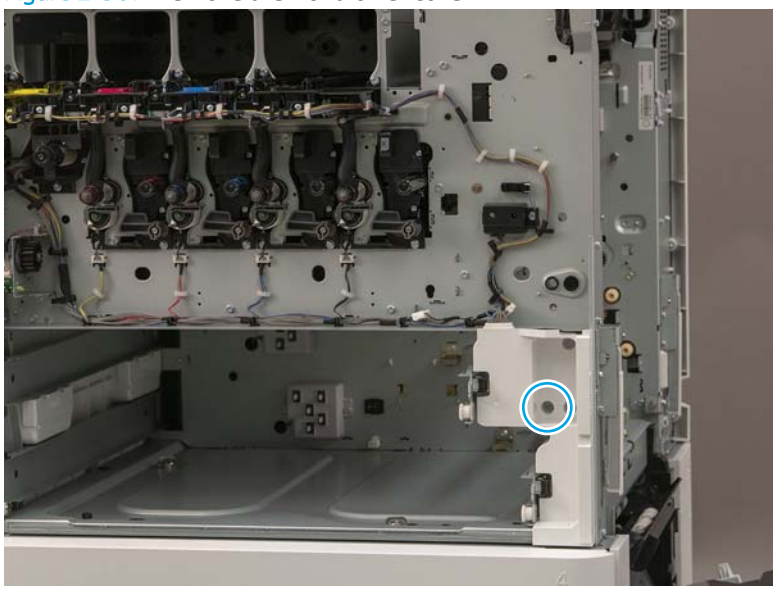
1. Remove two screw caps and three screws, and then remove the right front cover.

Figure 2-366 Remove the right front cover



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the front lower cover.

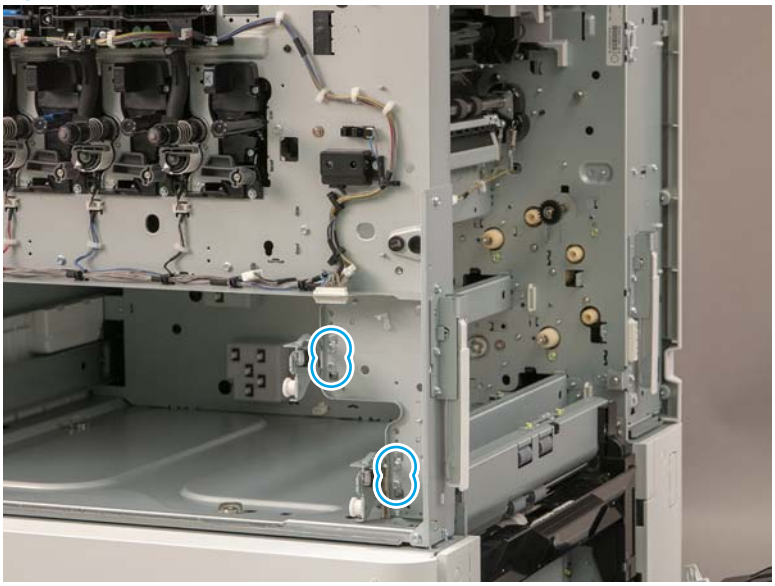
Figure 2-367 Remove the front lower cover



3. Remove four screws to detach the front end of the tray rails.

⚠ CAUTION: The rails can be easily damaged when they are detached.

Figure 2-368 Detach the tray rails



4. Before proceeding, use paper reams to support the printer chassis.

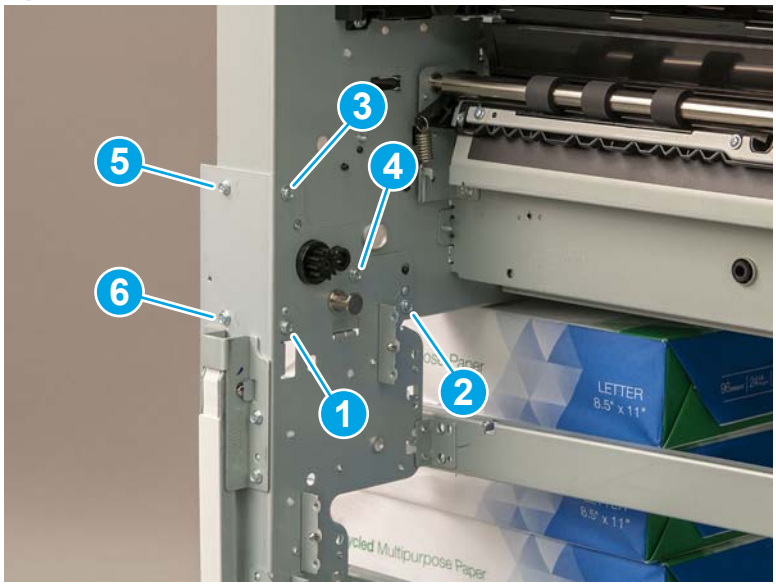
⚠ CAUTION: When the sheet-metal corner bracket is removed the chassis will become misaligned if it is not supported.

Figure 2-369 Support the chassis

5. Remove six screws (callouts 1-6).

Reinstallation tip: These screws are labeled 1 to 6. When the bracket is reinstalled, make sure that the screws are installed in order (1 to 6).

Figure 2-370 Remove six screws

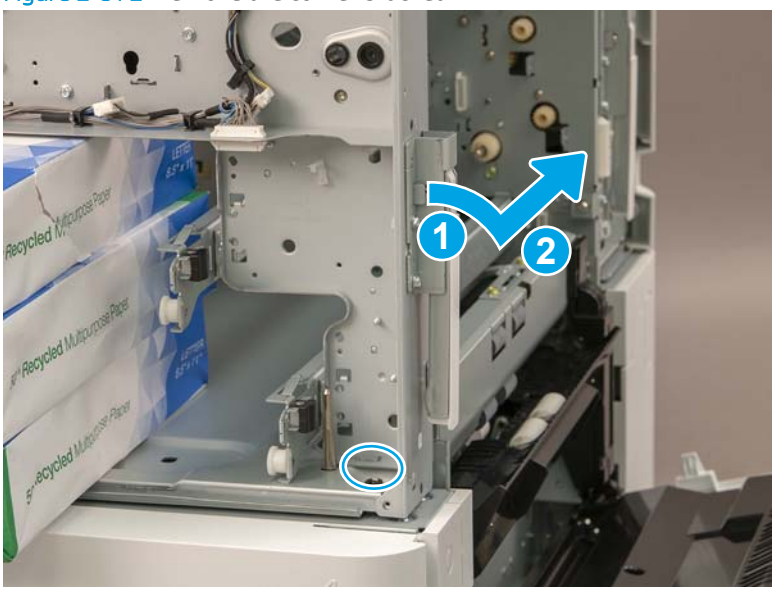


6. Remove three screws.

Figure 2-371 Remove three screws

7. Rotate the top of the bracket away from the printer (callout 1), and then lift it up (callout 2) to release the tab (callout 3) at the bottom of the bracket.

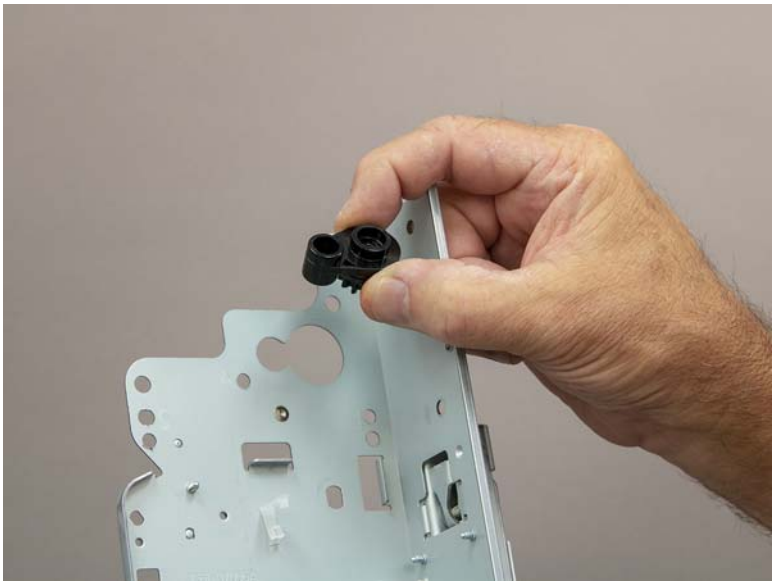
Figure 2-372 Remove the corner bracket



8. Remove the dampener gear assembly from the bracket.

IMPORTANT: Do not discard the failed dampener. Return the assembly to HP for failure analysis.

Figure 2-373 Remove the dampener



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following **special installation instructions**.

Removal and replacement: High-voltage rail assembly

Learn how to remove and replace the high-voltage rail assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-57 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01023A	High-voltage rail assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the left cover

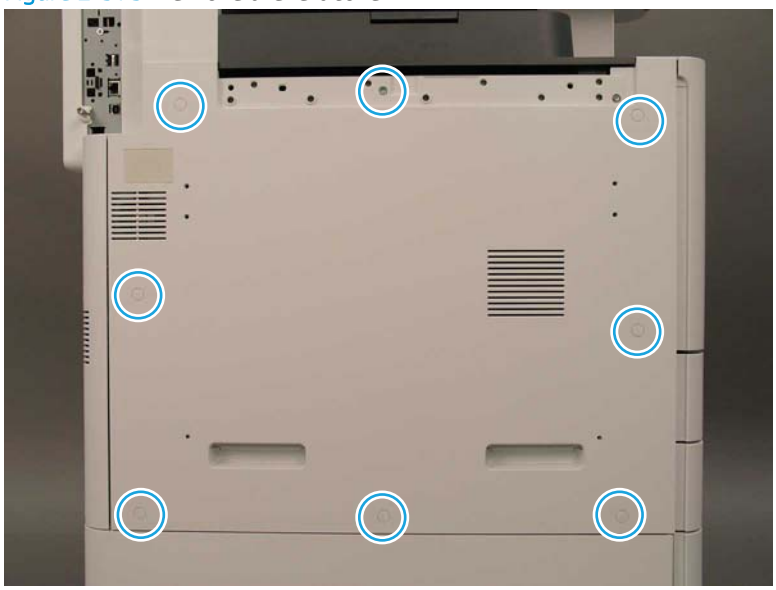
Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

1. Remove the top left cover.

Figure 2-374 Top left cover

2. Remove seven screw-caps and eight screws, and lift the left cover off of the printer.

Figure 2-375 Remove the left cover

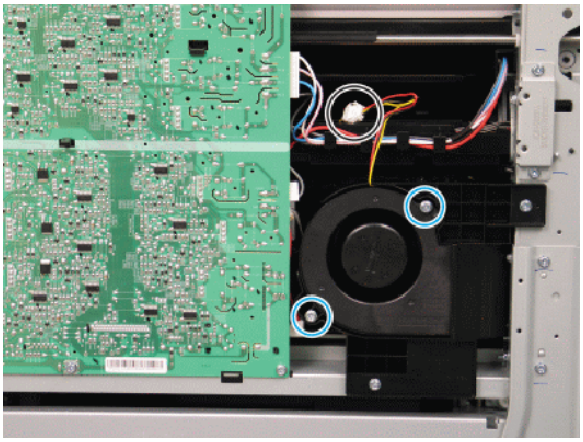


Remove the laser scanner assembly fan

Follow these steps to remove the laser scanner assembly fan.

- ▲ Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the laser scanner assembly fan.

Figure 2-376 Remove the laser scanner assembly fan

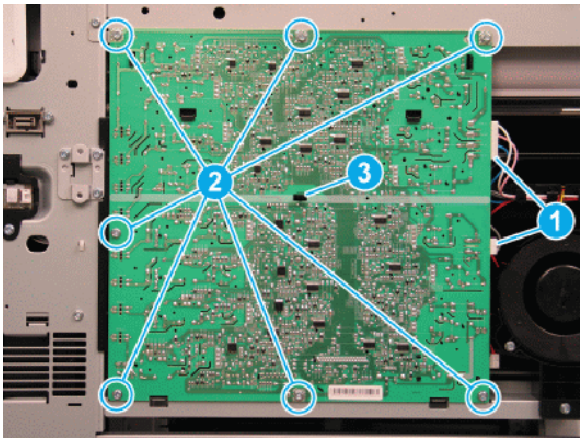


Remove the HVPS

Follow these steps to remove the HVPS.

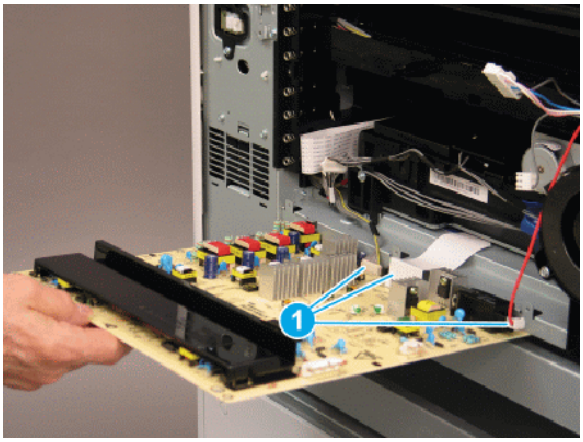
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove seven screws (callout 2), and then release one retainer in the center of the board (callout 3).

Figure 2-377 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



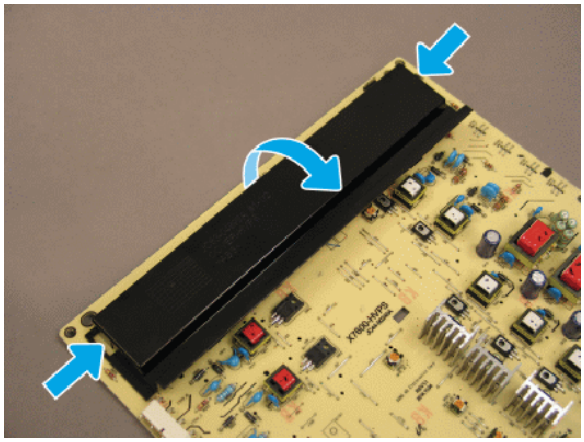
2. Tilt the board away from the printer, and then disconnect three connectors (callout 1).

Figure 2-378 Disconnect three connectors



3. If you are replacing the HVPS board, release two tabs and rotate the cover off of the board. Attach the cover to the replacement part before installing.

Figure 2-379 Remove the HVPS cover



Remove the front top inner cover

Follow these steps to remove the front top inner cover.

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-380 Remove the front top inner cover

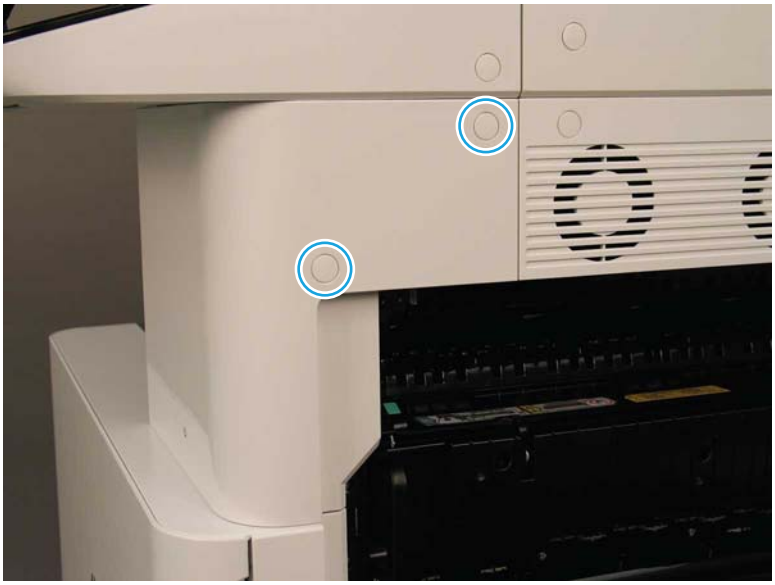
Remove the front power cover

Follow these steps to remove the front power cover.

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

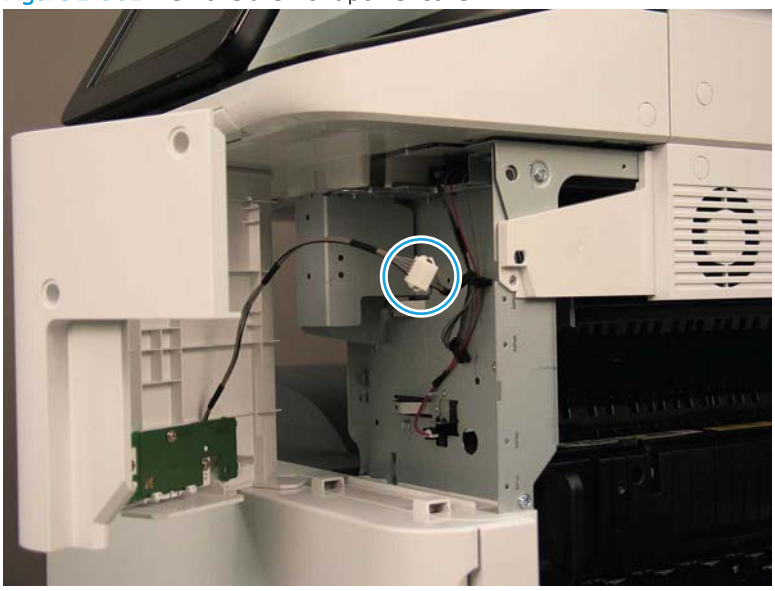
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 2-381 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-382 Remove the front power cover



Remove the exit cover

Follow these steps to remove the exit cover.

- ▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the exit cover away from the printer to remove it.

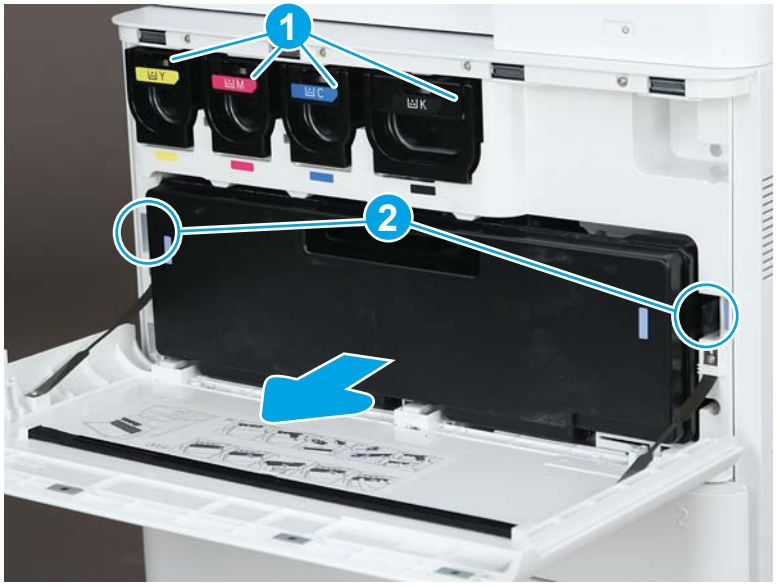
Figure 2-383 Remove the exit cover

Remove the toner cartridges and toner collection unit

Follow these steps to remove the toner cartridges and toner collection unit (TCU).

1. Open the front cover.
2. Remove the toner cartridges (callout 1), and then push both hooks (callout 2) to release and remove the TCU.

Figure 2-384 Remove the toner cartridges and TCU



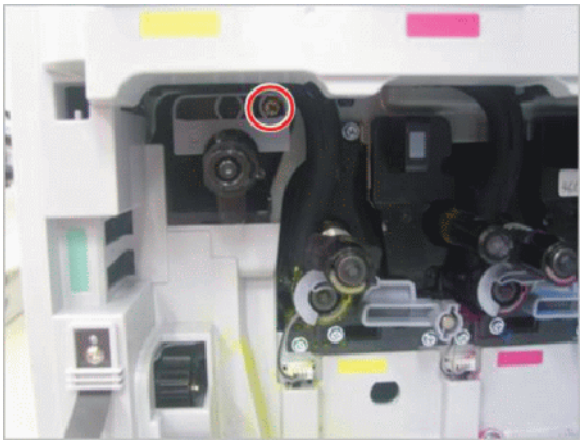
Remove the ITB cleaner

Follow these steps to remove the ITB cleaner.

1. Loosen the screw securing the ITB cleaner.

NOTE: The screw is captive and cannot be completely removed.

Figure 2-385 ITB screw location

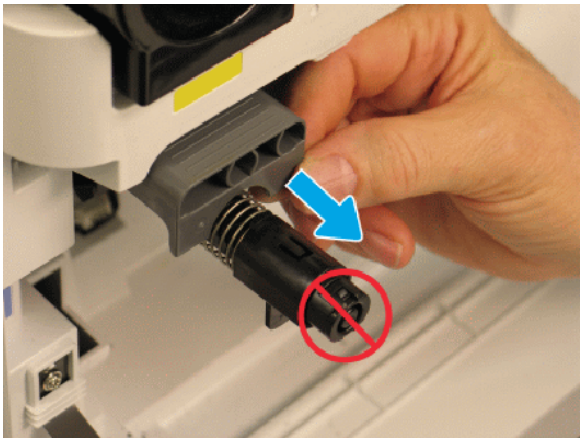


2. Grasp the ITB cleaner housing, and pull it out of the printer.

CAUTION: Do not grasp the waste toner connector.

Use care when removing the ITB cleaner as loose toner might be present on the metal shelf along the side of the cleaner.

Figure 2-386 ITB cleaner removal



3. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

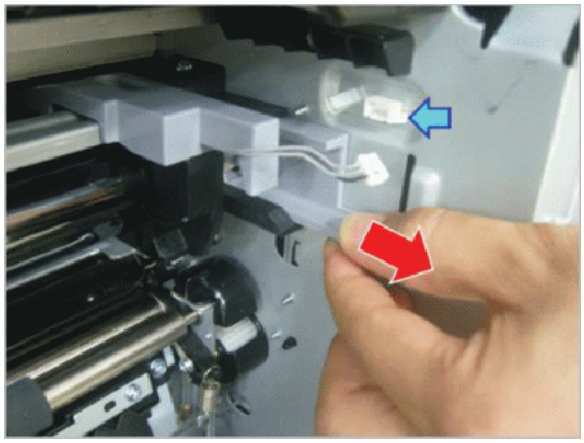
Remove the ITB

Follow these steps to remove the ITB.

1. Open the right door.

2. Remove the cable from the retainer, and then disconnect one connector. Slide the ITB latch toward the front of the printer to release the coupled drive.

Figure 2-387 Disconnect one connector and slide the latch



3. Remove two screws securing the ITB unit.

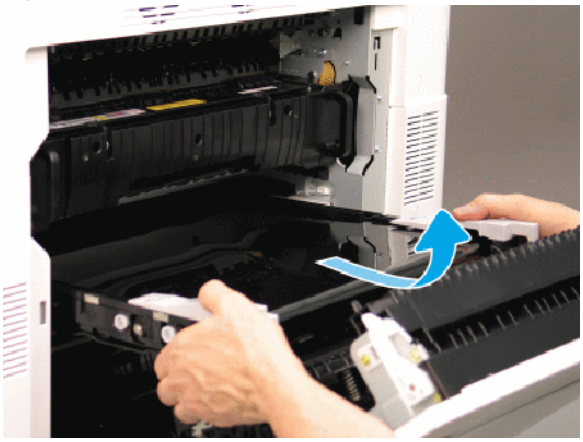
TIP: Use a magnetized screwdriver to prevent the screws from falling into the printer..

Figure 2-388 Remove two screws

4. Pull the ITB unit partially out of the printer, and then lift it up and out of the printer.

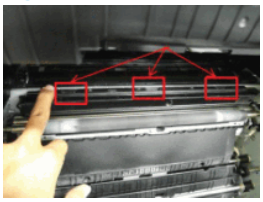
⚠ CAUTION: Do not touch the ITB belt and be careful not to damage the it by hitting it on the door during removal.

Figure 2-389 Remove the ITB



5. While pushing the color plane registration (CPR) shutter toward the rear of the printer, clean the three CPR sensors with a damp, lint-free cloth.

Figure 2-390 Clean the CPR sensors

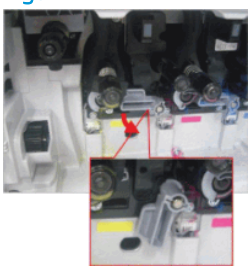


Remove the imaging drum

Follow these steps to remove the imaging drum.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).
2. There are four locking levers, one for each color. Pull down on the locking lever for the color drum unit that is being replaced.

Figure 2-391 Release locking lever



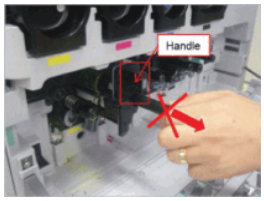
3. Grip the handle and remove the drum unit.

NOTE: Open the right door to remove the black drum.

CAUTION: Do not grip the waste toner connection when removing the drum unit.

Do not touch the shiny surface on the imaging drum. Cover the drum with a sheet of paper while it is out of the printer to limit light exposure.

Figure 2-392 Remove the drum unit



TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Remove the developer unit

Follow these steps to remove the developer unit.

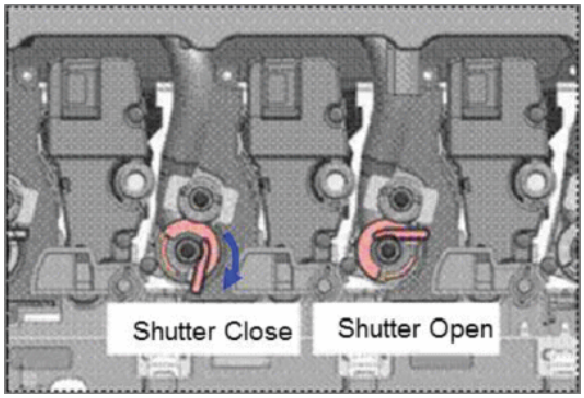
IMPORTANT: Update the firmware to the latest version before replacing the developer unit.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)
2. Remove the drum unit to the right of the developer to be replaced..

TIP: Also remove the adjacent drum unit to allow better access to the toner supply pipe.

3. Rotate the reservoir shutter lever down to ensure it is closed..

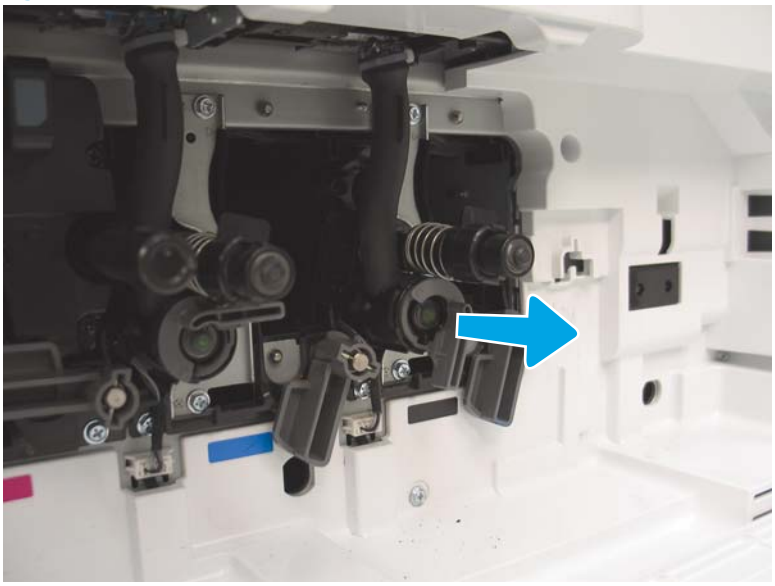
Figure 2-393 Shutter open/close



4. Release the valve from the developer by rotating the valve side-to-side while pulling it firmly away from the printer.

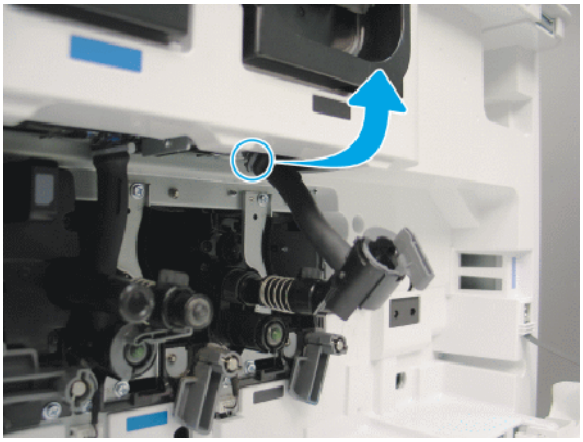
TIP: Make sure that the valve is fully installed on the developer before rotating it to the open position.

Figure 2-394 Release the toner collection valve



5. Reach to the top of the toner supply pipe, and then rotate it up.

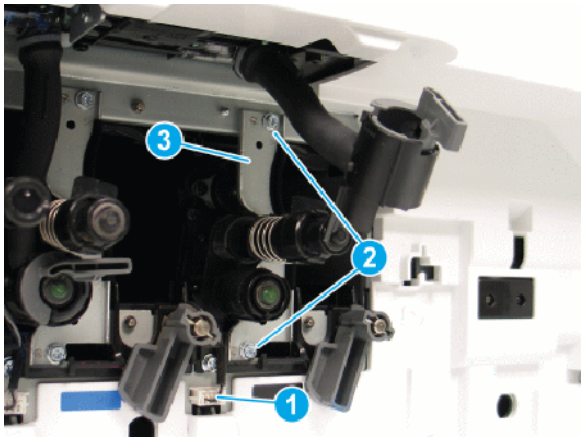
Figure 2-395 Tilt toner supply pipe up



6. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the metal bracket (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the bracket when reinstalling it.

Figure 2-396 Remove the metal bracket

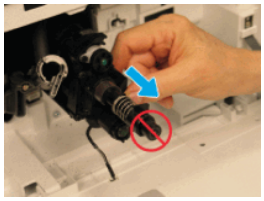


Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the bottom of the bracket first.

7. Hold the grip point of the developer unit and slide it away from the printer to remove it.

NOTE: Do not grip the toner collection unit connection when removing the developer unit.

Figure 2-397 Developer unit removal



TIP: Hold the toner supply pipe up and out of the way when reinstalling the developer unit.

Remove the paper dust brush

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

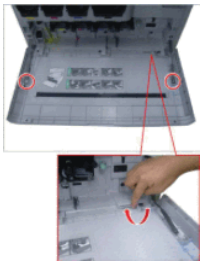
NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

▲ Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

Figure 2-398 Remove the front cover



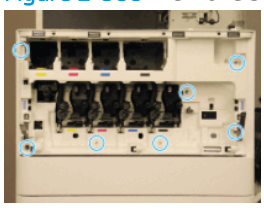
Remove the inner front cover

Follow these steps to remove the inner front cover.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove the all of the toner cartridges.

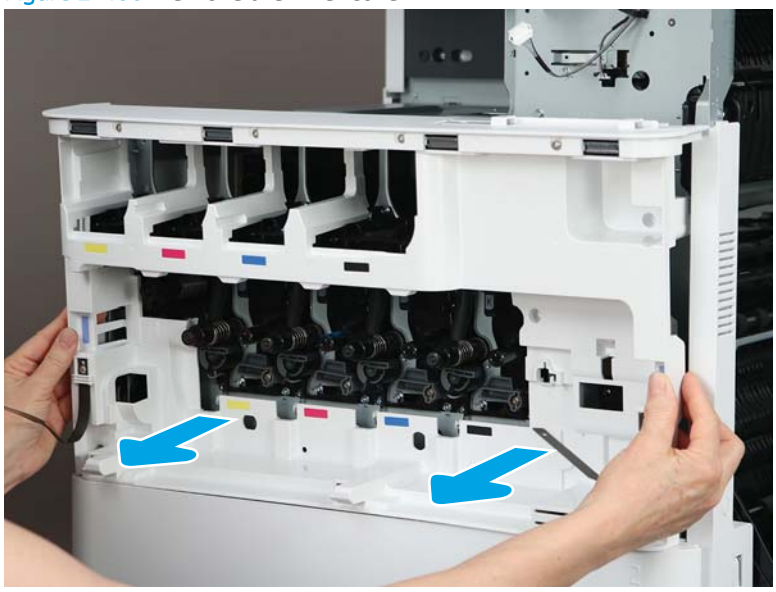
3. Remove seven screws.

Figure 2-399 Remove seven screws



4. Lift the inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-400 Remove the inner cover



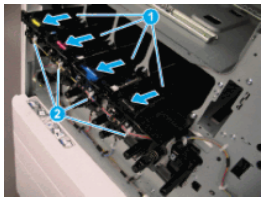
Remove the reservoir unit

Follow these steps to remove the reservoir unit.

NOTE: The toner reservoirs must be removed in this order: black, cyan, magenta, and yellow. If you are replacing the yellow reservoir, the black, cyan, and magenta reservoirs must all be removed first. Follow the instructions below to remove only those reservoirs required to reach the target reservoir.

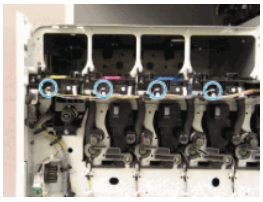
1. Close the toner reservoir shutters (callout 1), and then release the cables from the retainers (callout 2).

Figure 2-401 Close the shutters and release the cables



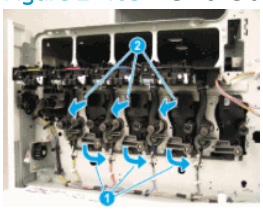
2. Disconnect four connectors.

Figure 2-402 Disconnect four connectors



3. Lower the release levers (callout 1), and then remove the yellow, magenta, and cyan drum units (callout 2).

Figure 2-403 Remove drum units



4. Lower and close the release levers for all of the developer units. This stops the flow of toner from the toner reservoirs to the developer units.

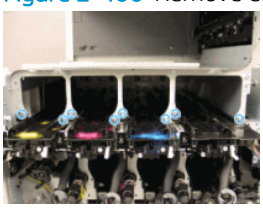
Figure 2-404 Lower the developer release levers

5. Release the valves from the toner connections by rotating the valves side-to-side while pulling them firmly away from the printer.

Figure 2-405 Release the toner supply pipes

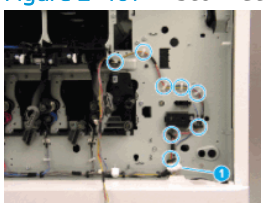
6. Remove eight screws.

Figure 2-406 Remove eight screws



7. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cables from eight retainers.

Figure 2-407 Disconnect one connector and release the cables

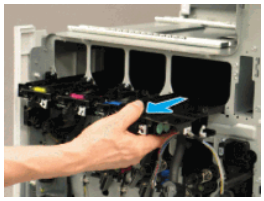


8. Remove the toner reservoir by sliding it out of the printer. The figure below shows the black toner reservoir. The procedure is the same for all of the toner reservoirs.

NOTE: The toner reservoirs must be removed in this order: black, cyan, magenta, and yellow. If you are replacing the yellow reservoir, the black, cyan, and magenta reservoirs must all be removed first.

NOTE: Removing the yellow toner reservoir requires removing the high voltage power supply.

Figure 2-408 Remove the black toner reservoir

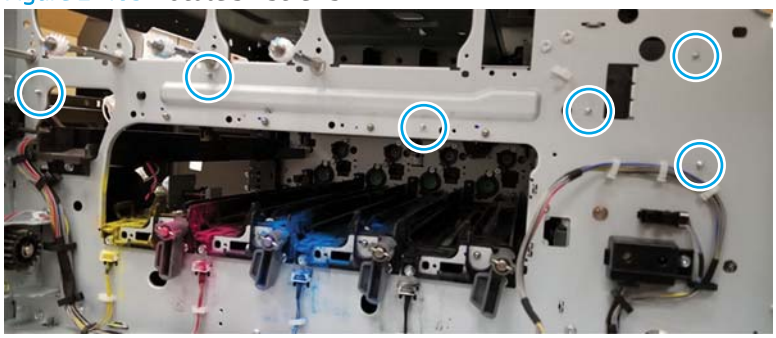


Remove the high-voltage rail assembly

Follow these steps to remove the high-voltage rail assembly.

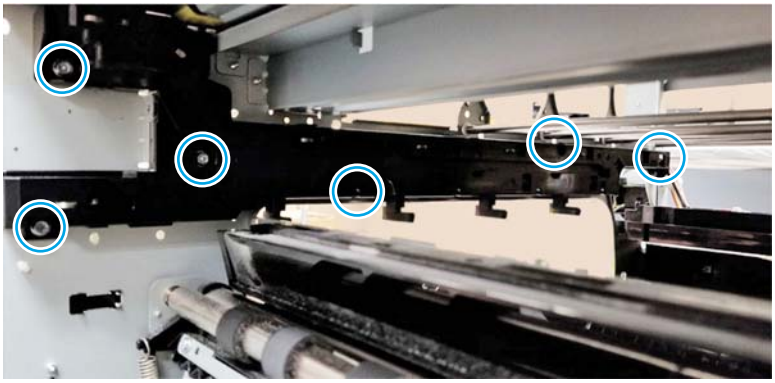
1. Before proceeding, take note from the front of the printer where the six high-voltage rail screws are located.

Figure 2-409 Locate six screws



2. From inside the printer remove six screws, and then remove the high-voltage rail assembly.

Figure 2-410 Remove the high-voltage rail assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main frame registration

View the main frame registration exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Registration assembly (main frame)

Parts diagram and parts list for the main frame registration assembly.

Figure 2-411 Main frame registration assembly

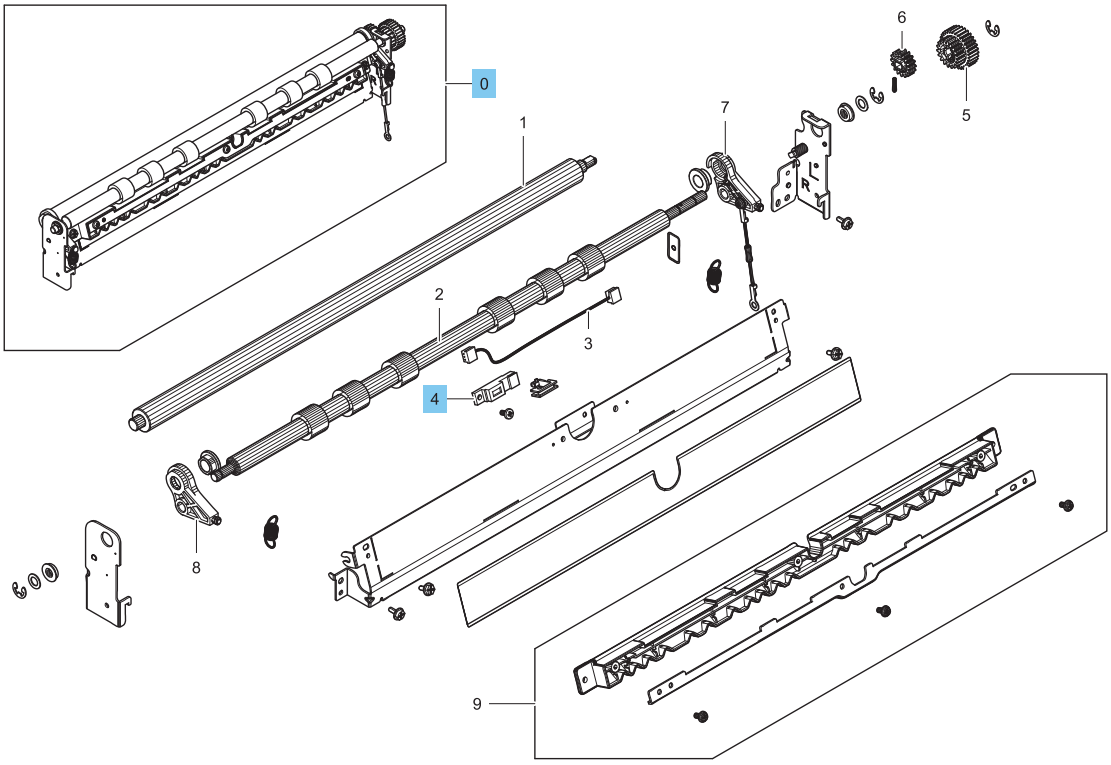


Table 2-58 Main frame registration assembly

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
0	JC93-01116A	Registration Assembly	1	Removal and replacement: Registration assembly on page 477
4	0604-001381	Photo interrupter	1	Removal and replacement: Registration sensor assembly on page 484

Removal and replacement: Registration assembly

Learn how to remove and replace the registration assembly.

View a video of how to remove and replace the registration assembly.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-59 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01116A	Registration assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-412 Remove the TCU

Remove the paper dust brush

Follow these steps to remove the paper dust brush.

▲ Remove the paper dust brush.

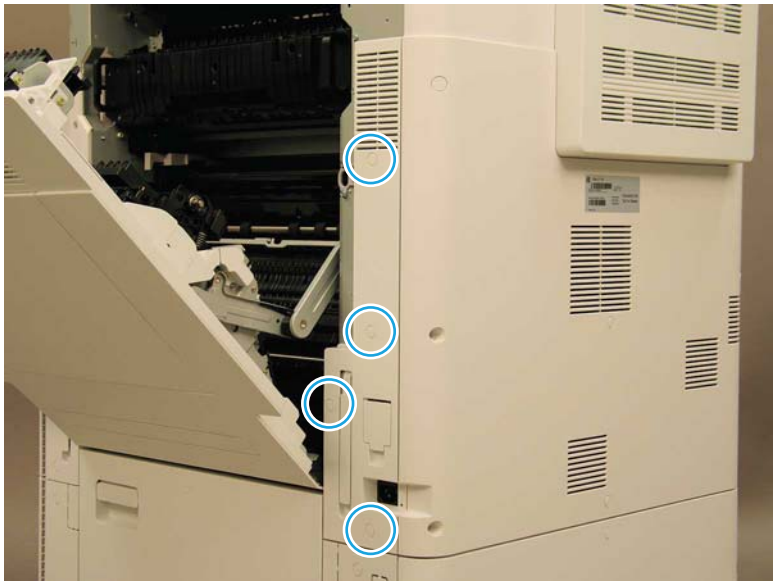
Figure 2-413 Remove the paper dust brush

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

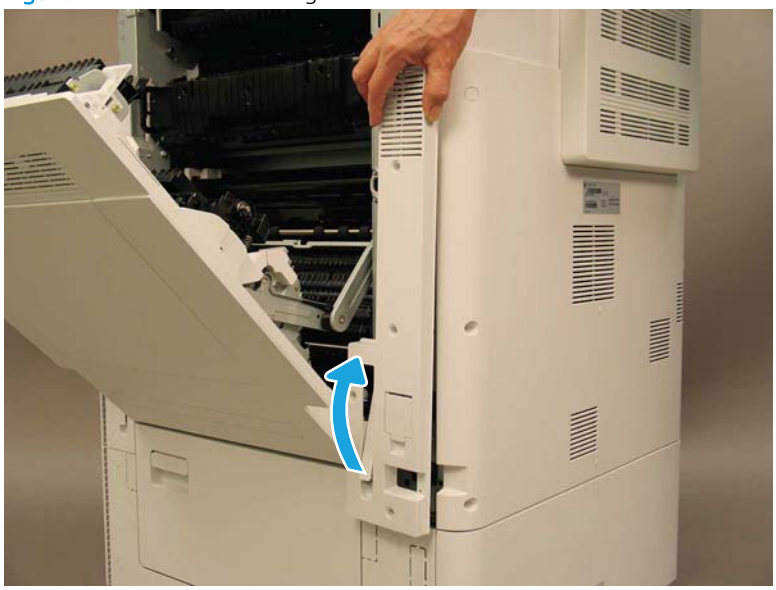
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-414 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-415 Remove the right rear cover

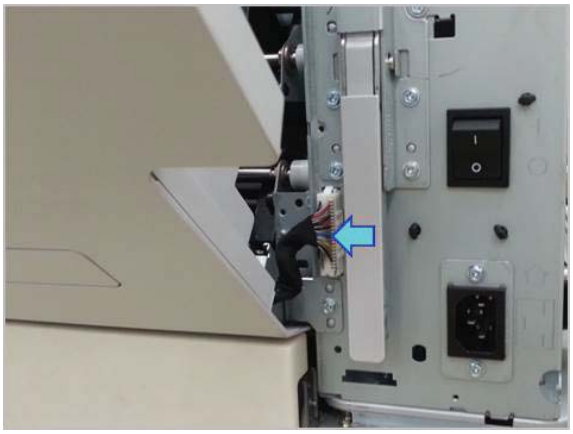


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

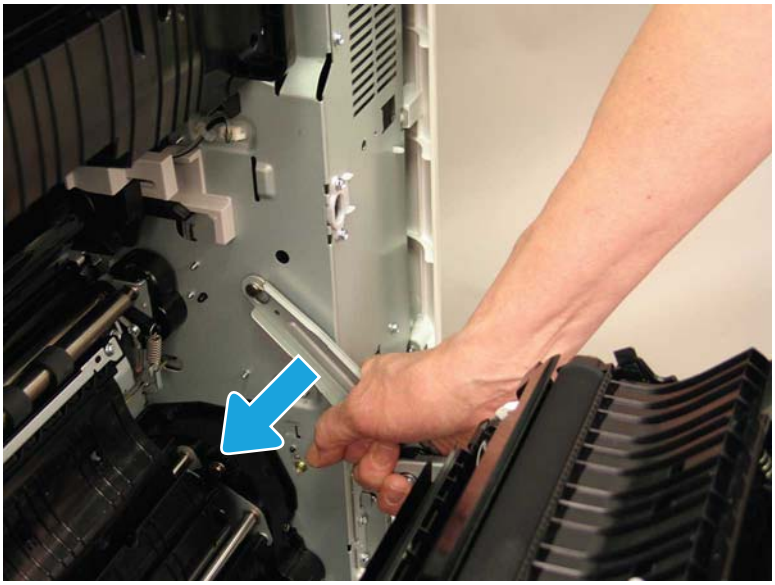
Figure 2-416 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

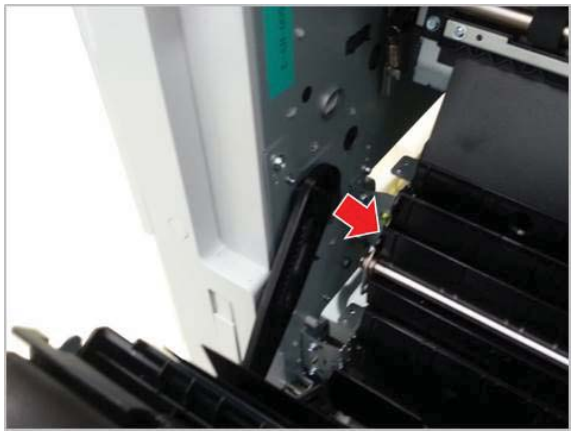
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-417 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

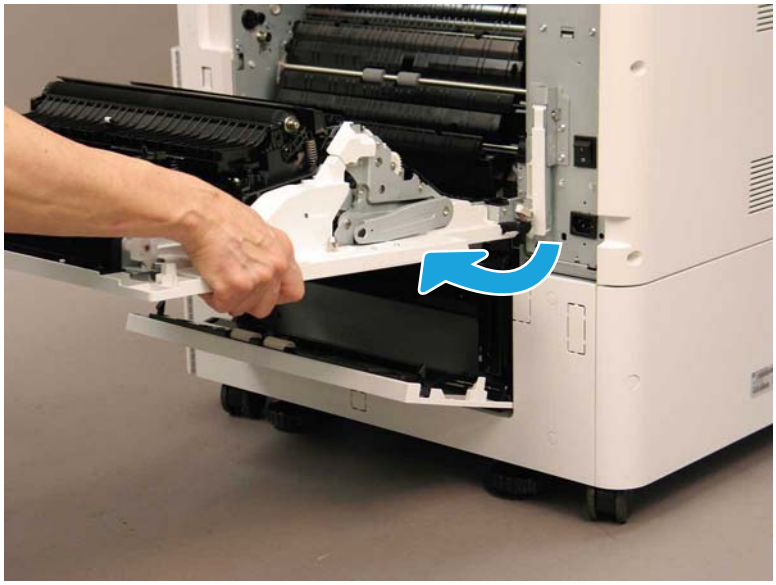
Figure 2-418 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-419 Remove the right door



Remove the registration assembly

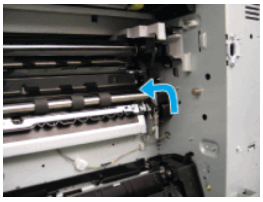
Follow these steps to remove the registration assembly.

1. Remove two screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-420 Remove two screws

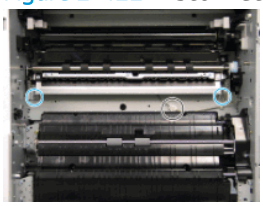
2. Remove the gear cover.

Figure 2-421 Remove the gear cover



3. Disconnect one in-line connector, and then remove two screws.

Figure 2-422 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws



4. Rotate the left side of the registration assembly away from the printer, and then remove it.

Figure 2-423 Remove the registration assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Registration sensor assembly

Learn how to remove and replace the registration sensor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the registration sensor.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-60 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	Photo interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the TCU

Follow these steps to remove the TCU.

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-424 Remove the TCU

Remove the paper dust brush

Follow these steps to remove the paper dust brush.

- Remove the paper dust brush.

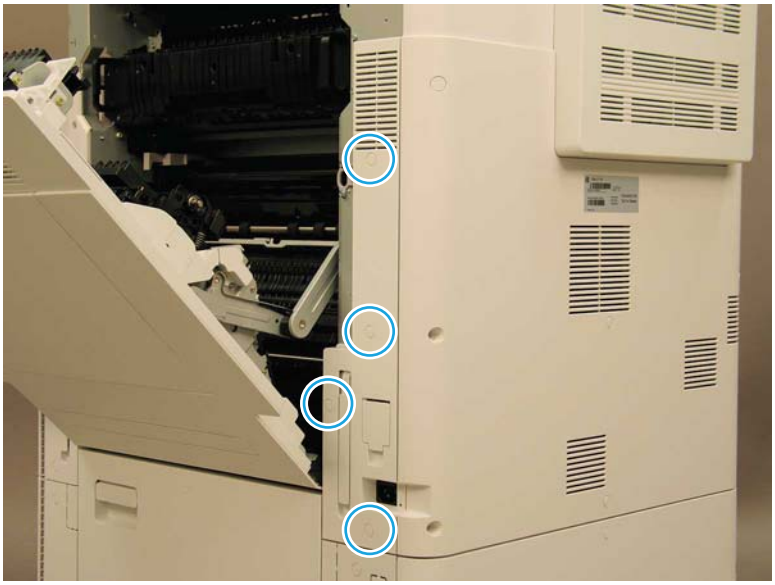
Figure 2-425 Remove the paper dust brush

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

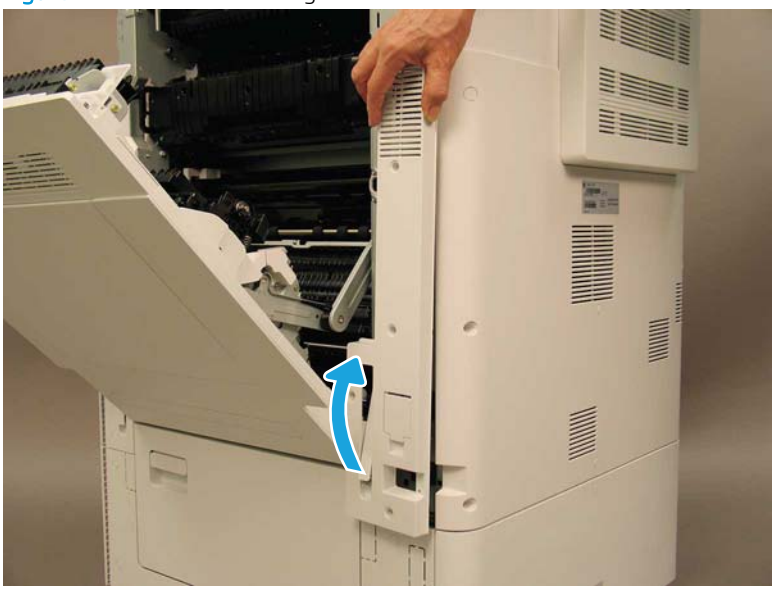
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-426 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-427 Remove the right rear cover

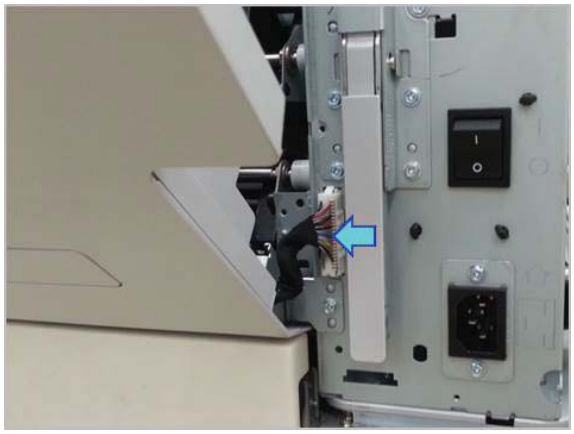


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

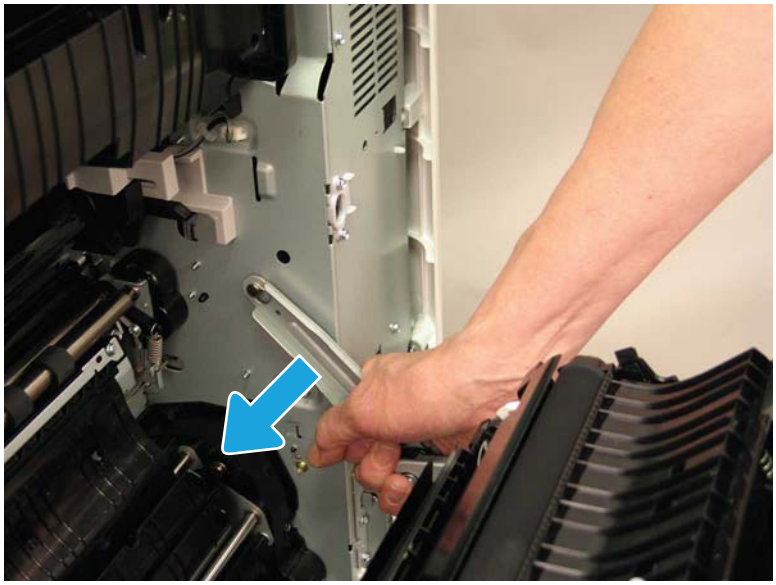
Figure 2-428 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

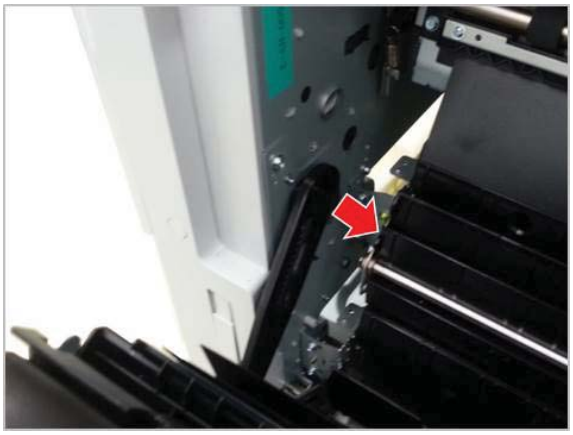
CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-429 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

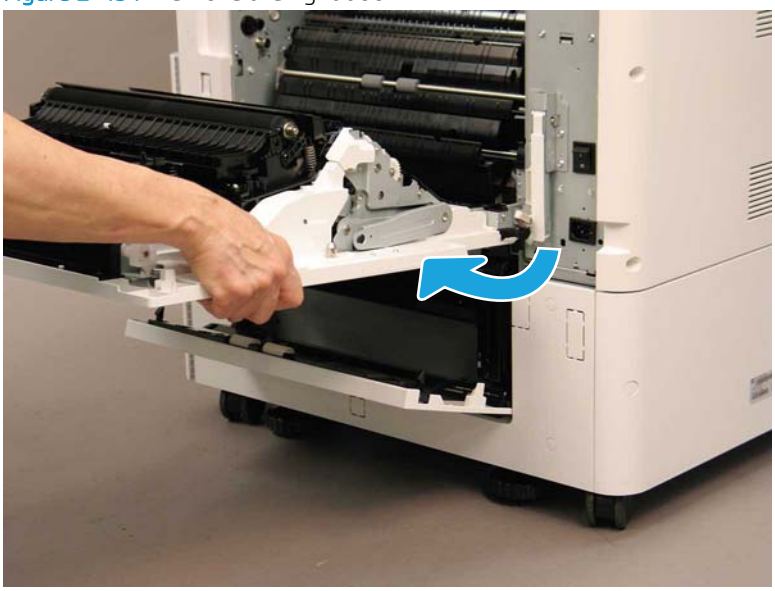
Figure 2-430 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-431 Remove the right door



Remove the registration assembly

Follow these steps to remove the registration assembly.

1. Remove two screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-432 Remove two screws

2. Remove the gear cover.

Figure 2-433 Remove the gear cover

3. Disconnect one in-line connector, and then remove two screws.

Figure 2-434 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws

4. Rotate the left side of the registration assembly away from the printer, and then remove it.

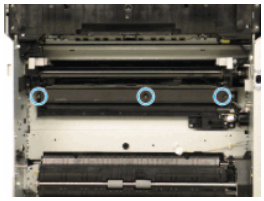
Figure 2-435 Remove the registration assembly

Remove the registration sensor

Follow these steps to remove the registration sensor.

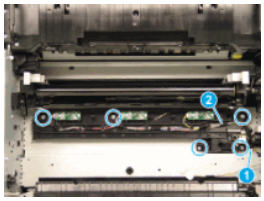
1. Remove three self-tapping screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-436 Remove three screws and the cover



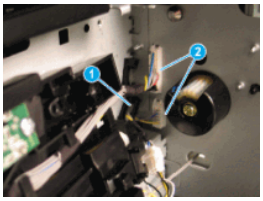
2. Release the cables from one lower retainer (callout 1) and one upper retainer (callout 2). Remove five screws.

Figure 2-437 Release retainers and remove five screws



3. Carefully lift the registration sensor assembly slightly away from the printer. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

Figure 2-438 Release one retainer and disconnect two connectors



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following **special installation instructions**.

Drive system

View the drive system exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

ACR frame assembly

Parts diagram and parts list for the ACR frame assembly.

Figure 2-439 ACR frame assembly

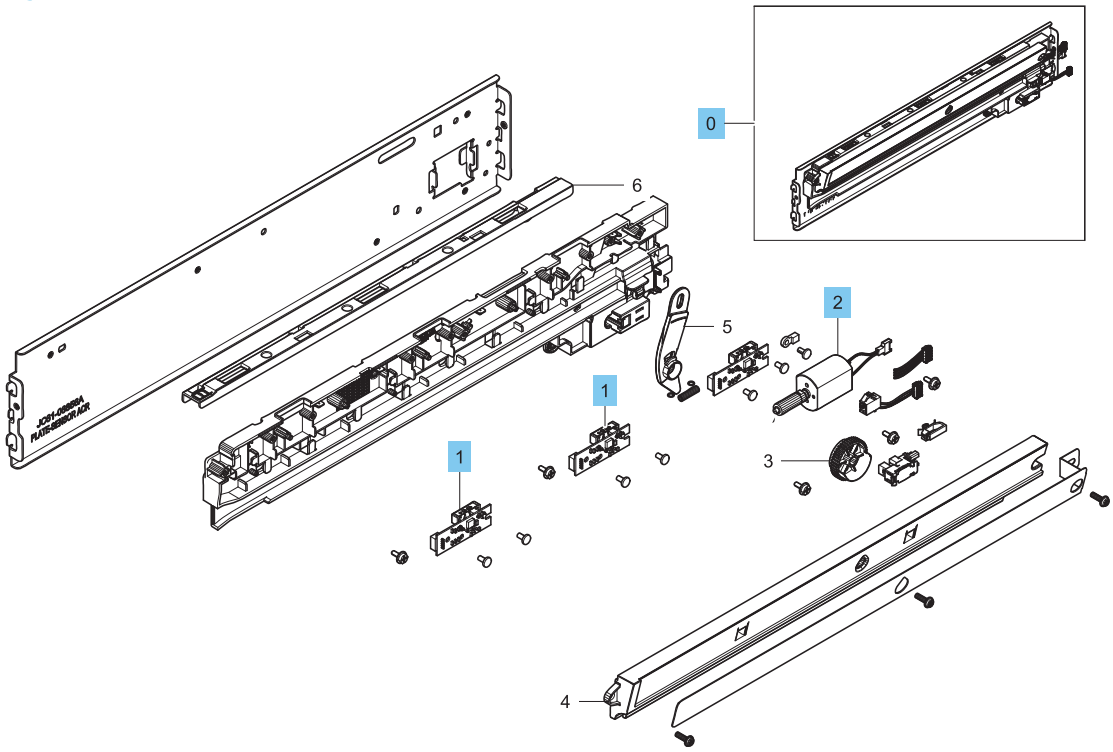


Table 2-61 ACR frame assembly

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
0	JC93-01039A	ACR Assembly	1	Not applicable
1	JC32-00014A	CTD sensor	3	Not applicable
2	JC31–00078A	Motor, dc	1	Not applicable

Drive system

View the drive system exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Toner reservoir (CMYK)

Parts diagram and parts list for the toner reservoir (CMYK).

Figure 2-440 Toner reservoir (CMYK)

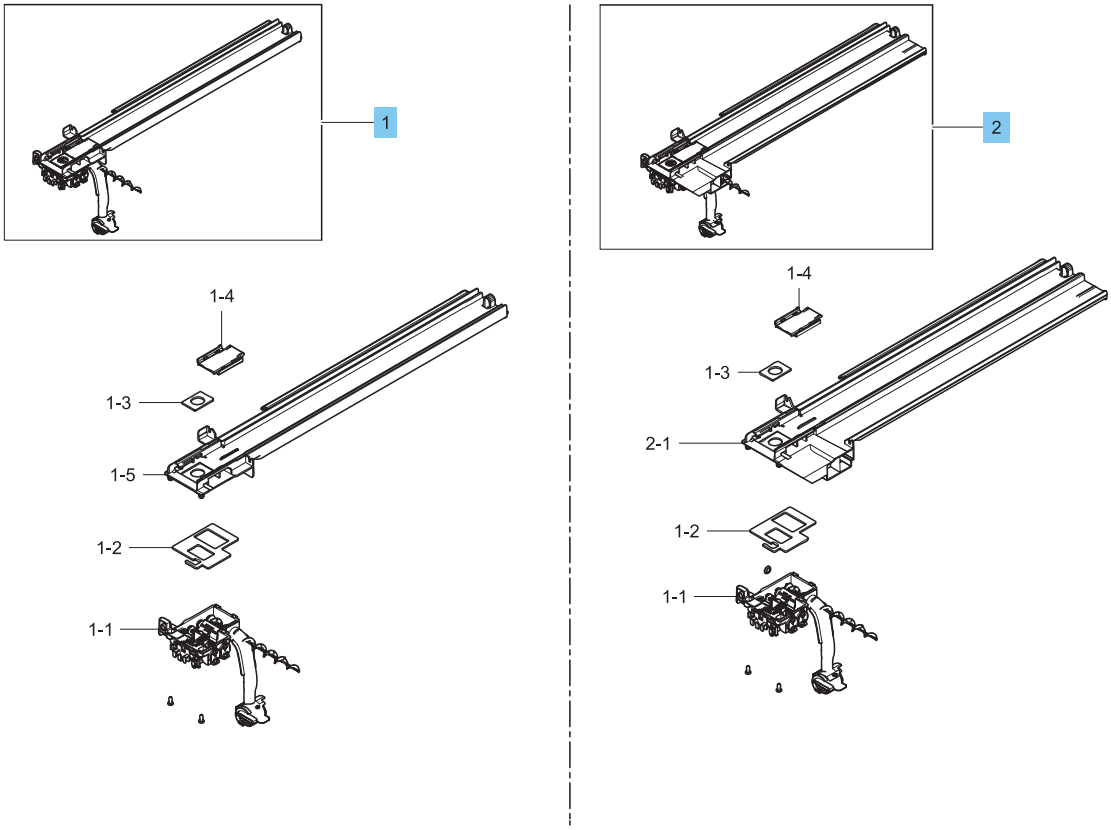


Table 2-62 Toner reservoir (CMYK)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1	JC93-01089B	Toner Reservoir Assy C/M/Y	3	Removal and replacement: Reservoir unit on page 495
2	JC93-01088B	Toner Reservoir Assy K	1	Removal and replacement: Reservoir unit on page 495

Removal and replacement: Reservoir unit

Learn how to remove and replace the reservoir unit.

View a video of how to remove and replace the reservoir unit.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-63 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01089B	Toner reservoir assembly C/M/Y
JC93-01088B	Toner reservoir assembly K

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the TCU

Follow these steps to remove the TCU.

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-441 Remove the TCU

Remove the paper dust brush

Follow these steps to remove the paper dust brush.

- Remove the paper dust brush.

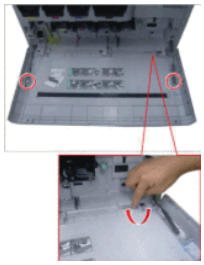
Figure 2-442 Remove the paper dust brush

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

- ▲ Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

Figure 2-443 Remove the front cover



Remove the front top inner cover

Follow these steps to remove the front top inner cover.

- ▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-444 Remove the front top inner cover

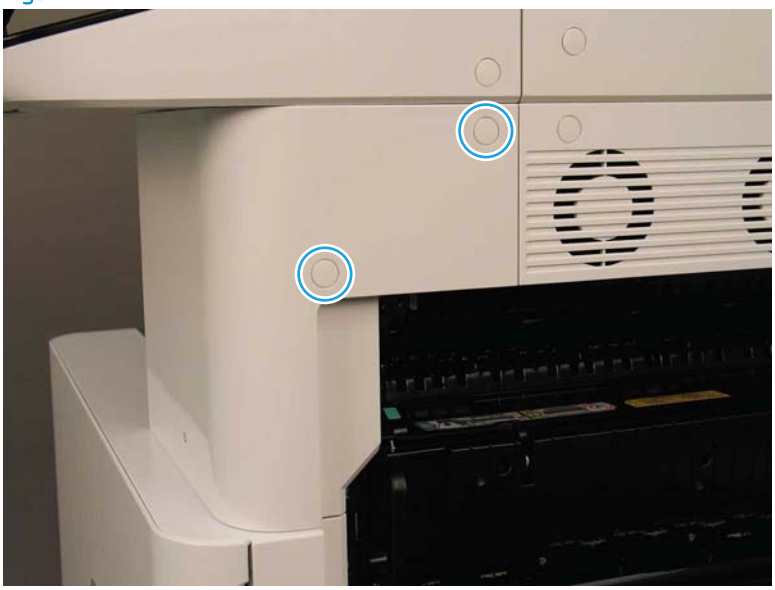
Remove the front power cover

Follow these steps to remove the front power cover.

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

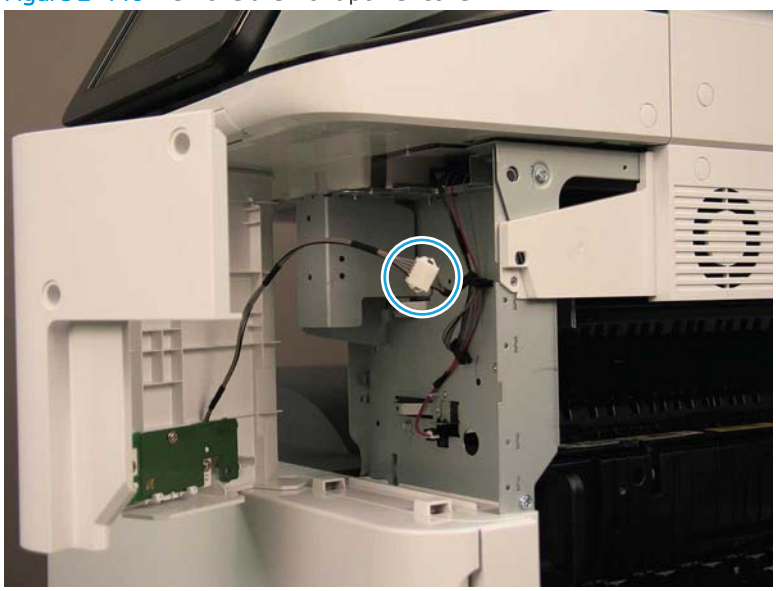
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 2-445 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-446 Remove the front power cover



Remove the exit cover

Follow these steps to remove the exit cover.

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the exit cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-447 Remove the exit cover

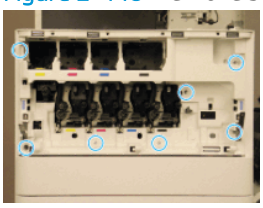
Remove the inner front cover

Follow these steps to remove the inner front cover.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove the all of the toner cartridges.

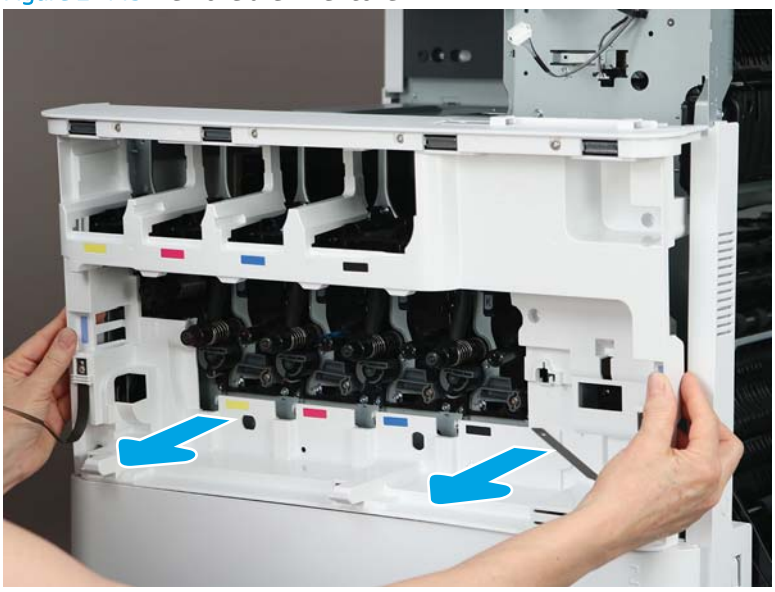
3. Remove seven screws.

Figure 2-448 Remove seven screws



4. Lift the inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-449 Remove the inner cover



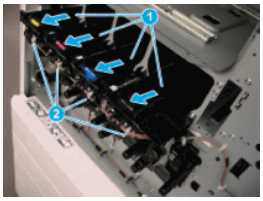
Remove the reservoir unit

Follow these steps to remove the reservoir unit.

NOTE: The toner reservoirs must be removed in this order: black, cyan, magenta, and yellow. If you are replacing the yellow reservoir, the black, cyan, and magenta reservoirs must all be removed first. Follow the instructions below to remove only those reservoirs required to reach the target reservoir.

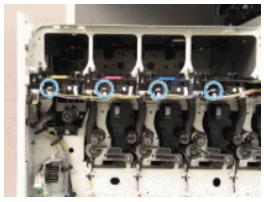
1. Close the toner reservoir shutters (callout 1), and then release the cables from the retainers (callout 2).

Figure 2-450 Close the shutters and release the cables



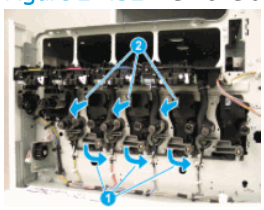
2. Disconnect four connectors.

Figure 2-451 Disconnect four connectors



3. Lower the release levers (callout 1), and then remove the yellow, magenta, and cyan drum units (callout 2).

Figure 2-452 Remove drum units



4. Lower and close the release levers for all of the developer units. This stops the flow of toner from the toner reservoirs to the developer units.

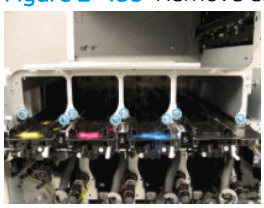
Figure 2-453 Lower the developer release levers

5. Release the valves from the toner connections by rotating the valves side-to-side while pulling them firmly away from the printer.

Figure 2-454 Release the toner supply pipes

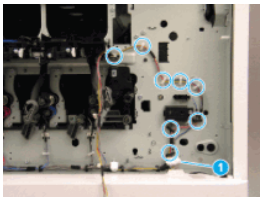
6. Remove eight screws.

Figure 2-455 Remove eight screws



7. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cables from eight retainers.

Figure 2-456 Disconnect one connector and release the cables

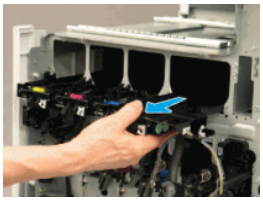


8. Remove the toner reservoir by sliding it out of the printer. The figure below shows the black toner reservoir. The procedure is the same for all of the toner reservoirs.

NOTE: The toner reservoirs must be removed in this order: black, cyan, magenta, and yellow. If you are replacing the yellow reservoir, the black, cyan, and magenta reservoirs must all be removed first.

NOTE: Removing the yellow toner reservoir requires removing the high voltage power supply.

Figure 2-457 Remove the black toner reservoir



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following**special installation instructions**.

Rear frame assembly

View the rear frame assembly exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Rear frame assembly

Parts diagram and parts list for the rear frame assembly.

Figure 2-458 Rear frame assembly

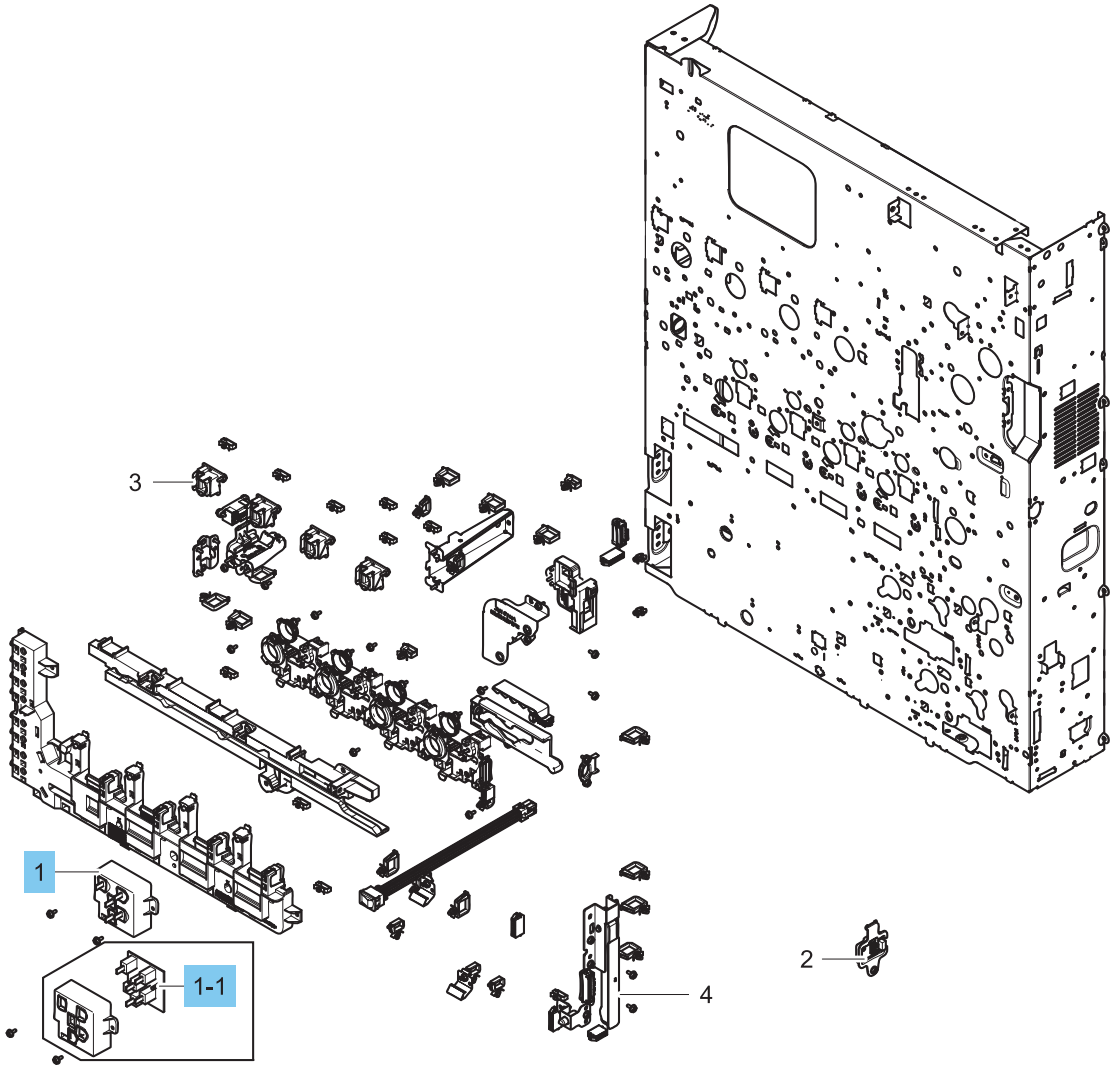


Table 2-64 Rear frame assembly

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1	JC93-00018A	Rear holder autosize	3	Not applicable
1-1	JC92-02622A	PCA, paper size sensor	1	Removal and replacement: Paper size sensor on page 506
Not shown	JC93-00486A	Humidity sensor		Not applicable

Removal and replacement: Paper size sensor

Learn how to remove the paper size sensor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the paper size sensor.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-65 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC92-02622A	Paper size sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

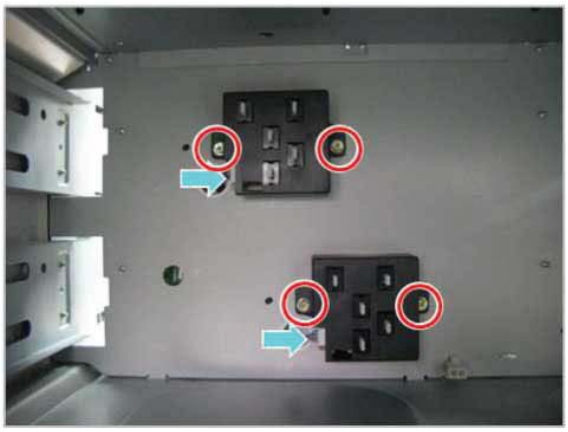
Remove the paper size sensor

Follow these steps to remove the paper size sensor.

▲ Do the following:

- Remove all trays to access the inside of the printer.
- Disconnect the connector. Remove two screws, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 2-459 Remove the paper size sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Drive system

View the drive system exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Drive system

Parts diagram and parts list for the drive system.

Figure 2-460 Drive system

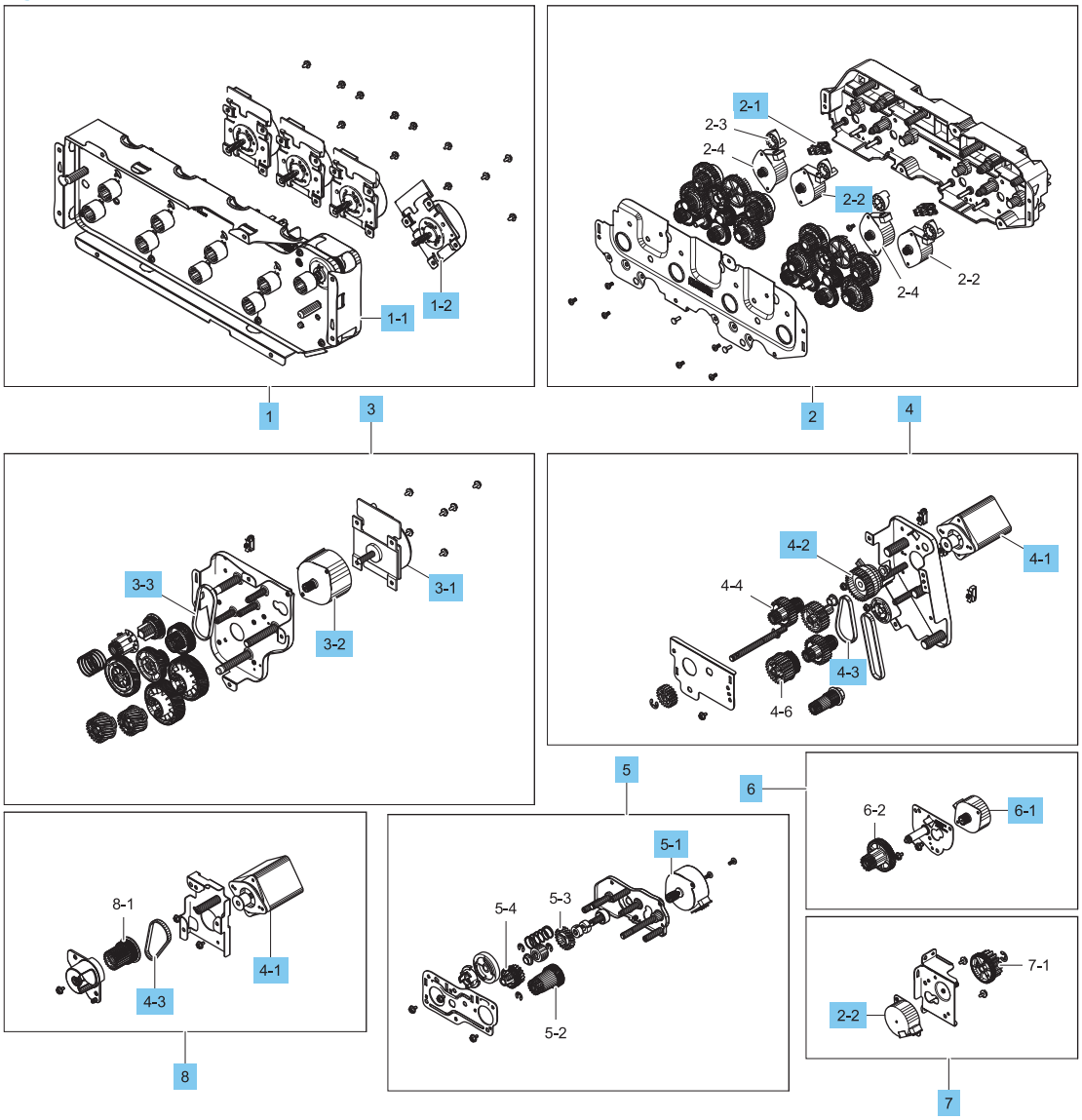


Table 2-66 Drive system

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1	JC93-01059C	Main drive assembly	1	Removal and replacement: Main drive unit on page 510
1-1	JC93-01048B	Main drive	1	Not applicable
1-2	JC31-00123D	Motor, bldc	4	Not applicable
2	JC93-01065B	Toner drive	1	Removal and replacement: Toner supply drive on page 517
2-1	0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	2	Not applicable
2-2	JC31-00110A	Step motor, circuit	2	Removal and replacement: Toner supply and toner reservoir motors on page 524
3	JC93-01064A	Fuser/exit drive	1	Removal and replacement: Fuser/exit drive unit on page 531
3-1	JC31-00123B	Motor, bldc	1	Not applicable
3-2	JC93-01084A	Drive motor, step alienation	1	Not applicable
3-3	6602-001581	Timing belt	1	Not applicable
4	JC93-01062A	Feed drive	1	Removal and replacement: Feed/Tray 1 drive unit or motor on page 545
4-1	JC31-00132A	Step motor, ip	1	Removal and replacement: Feed/Tray 1 drive unit or motor on page 545
4-2	JC47-00037A	Electric clutch	1	Not applicable
4-3	6602-001730	Timing gear belt	1	Not applicable
5	JC93-01063C	Pickup drive (Tray 3)	2	Removal and replacement: Pickup drive (Tray 3) or motor on page 548
5-1	JC93-01083A	Drive motor, step	2	Removal and replacement: Pickup drive (Tray 3) or motor on page 548
6	JC93-01068A	Engage T1	1	
6-1	JC31-00110B	Step motor, circuit	1	Removal and replacement: Alienation drive unit or motor on page 538
7	JC93-01070A	Drive, toner collection unit	1	
8	JC93-01061A	Registration drive	1	

Removal and replacement: Main drive unit

Learn how to remove and replace the main drive unit.

View a video of how to remove and replace the main drive unit.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-67 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01059C	Main drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

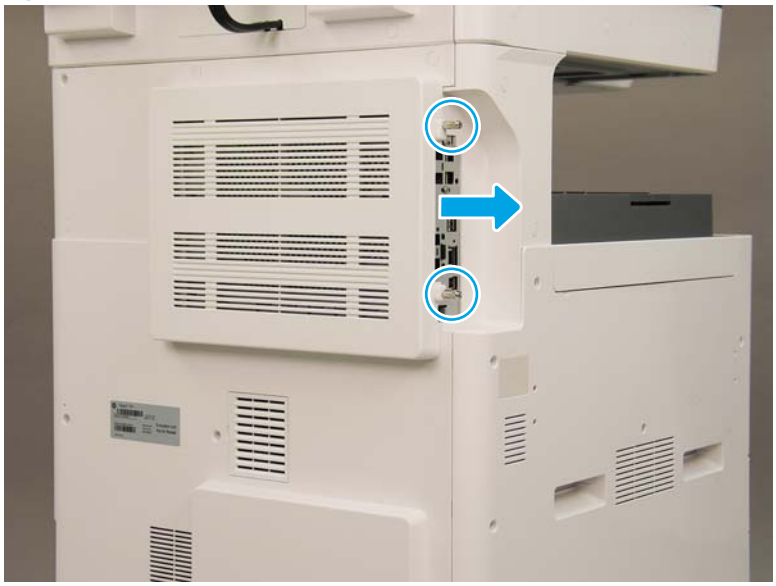
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-461 Remove the formatter cover

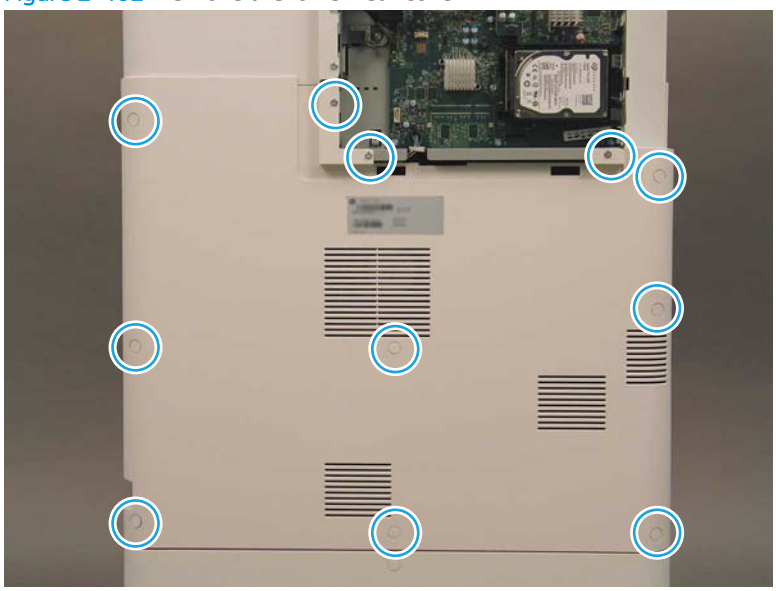


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-462 Remove the lower rear cover

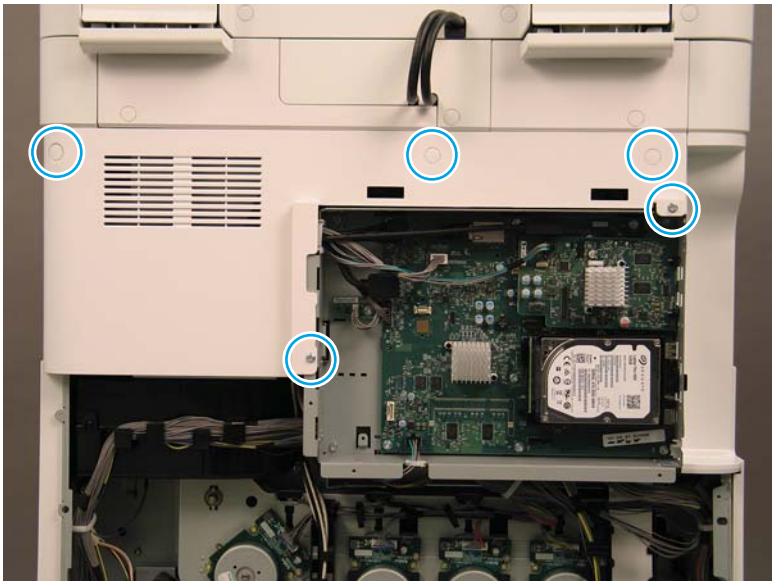


Remove the upper rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the upper rear cover.

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-463 Remove the upper rear cover

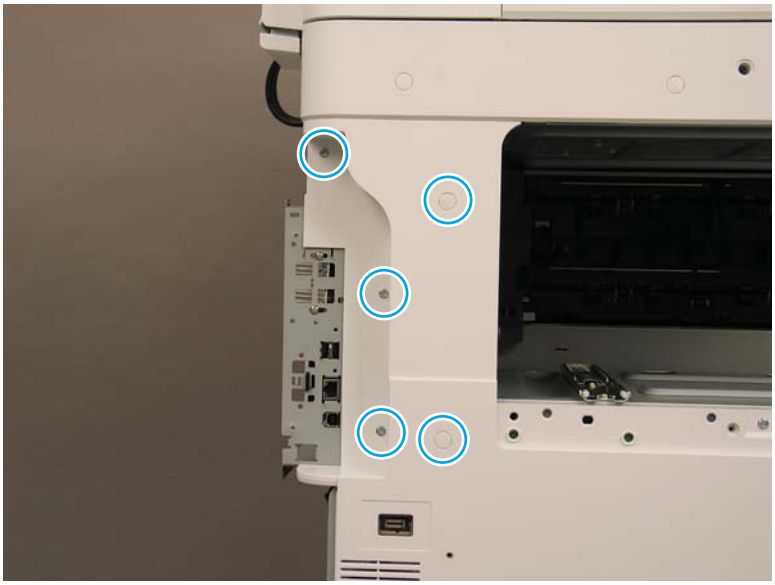


Remove the left rear corner cover

Follow these steps to remove the left rear corner cover.

▲ Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-464 Remove the left rear corner cover

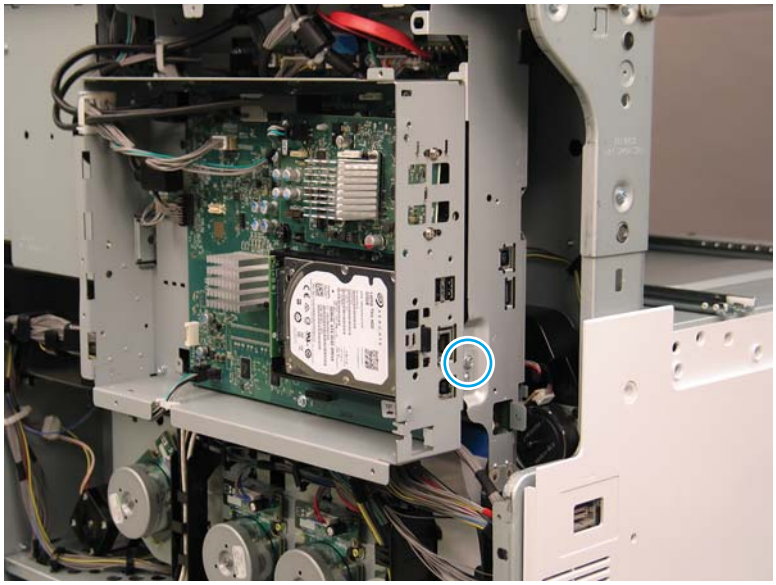


Remove the formatter and cage

Follow these steps to remove the formatter and cage.

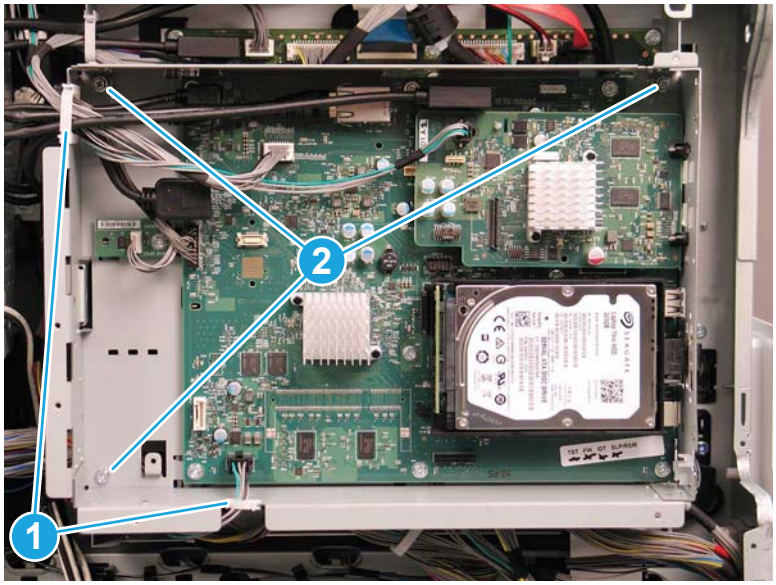
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 2-465 Remove one screw



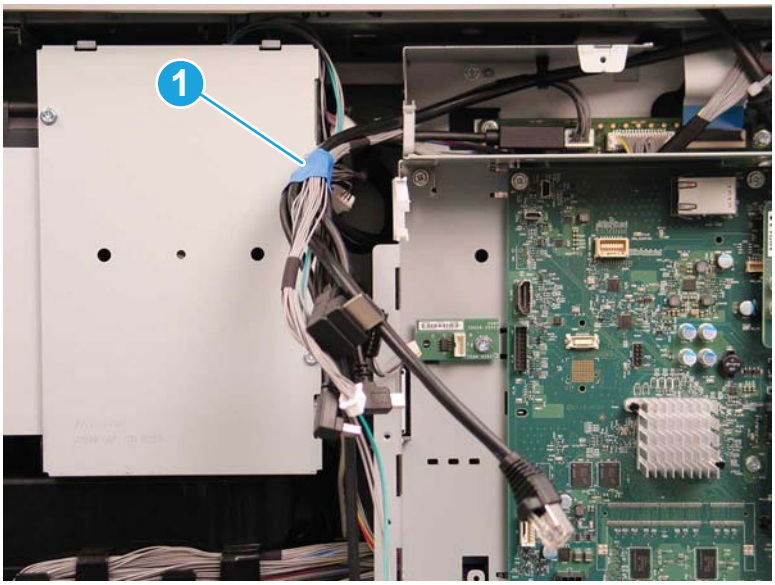
2. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter. Release the cables from two retainers on the sheet metal cage (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 2-466 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws



3. Before removing the formatter cage, place a piece of tape or a wire tie (callout 1) around the cables disconnected from the formatter on the left side. This will identify the cables that will be connected to the formatter during reassembly.

Figure 2-467 Identify the formatter cables



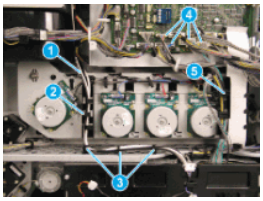
4. Lift the formatter cage up, push it to the right to clear the boss on the right side, and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

Remove the main drive unit

Follow these steps to remove the main drive unit.

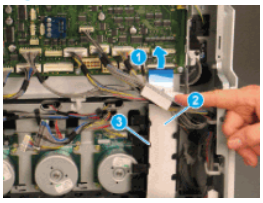
1. Remove the cables (callout 1) from the cable guide (callout 2), and then release three retainers (callout 3). Disconnect four connectors (callout 4), and then release the cables from the cable guide (callout 5).

Figure 2-468 Disconnect and release cables



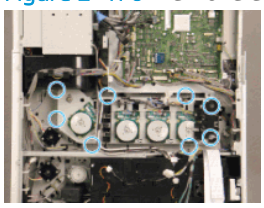
2. Disconnect three flat cables from the main board (callout 1). One of the flat cable connectors is a zero insertion force (ZIF) connector. Open the latch on the connector before removing the flat cable. Remove the flat cables (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Figure 2-469 Disconnect flat cables



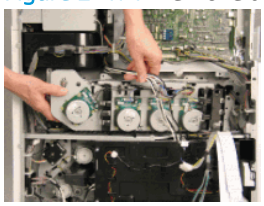
3. Remove eight screws.

Figure 2-470 Remove eight screws



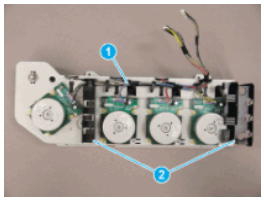
4. Lift the main drive unit up to release the hooks in the sheet metal, rotate it to the right, and then remove it from under the cables.

Figure 2-471 Remove the main drive unit



5. **Optional step**: Move all the cables (callout 1) and cable guides (callout 2) from the old main drive unit and transfer them to the replacement unit.

Figure 2-472 Remove cables and guides



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner supply drive

Learn how to remove and replace the toner supply drive unit.

View a video of how to remove and replace the toner supply drive unit.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-68 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01065B	Drive, toner

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

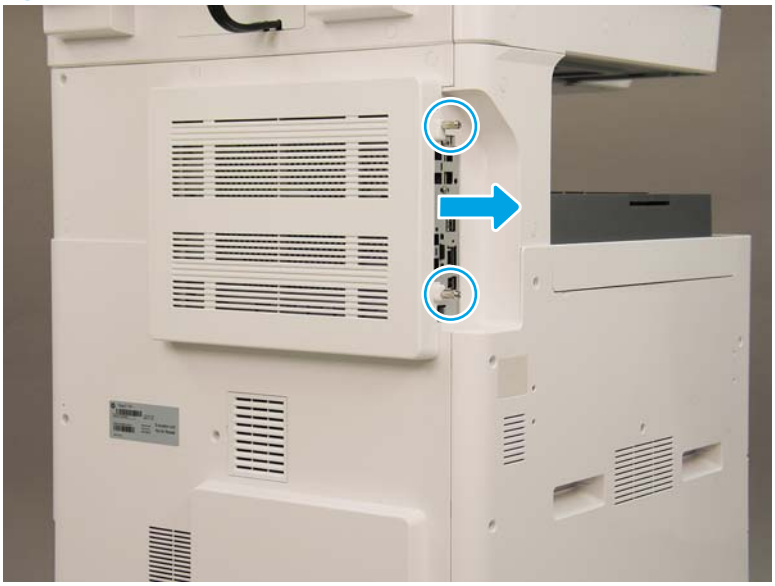
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-473 Remove the formatter cover

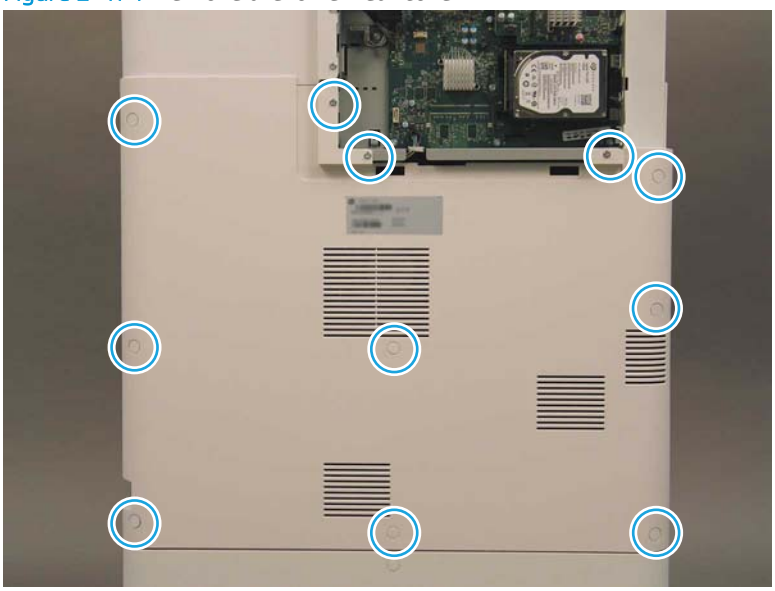


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-474 Remove the lower rear cover

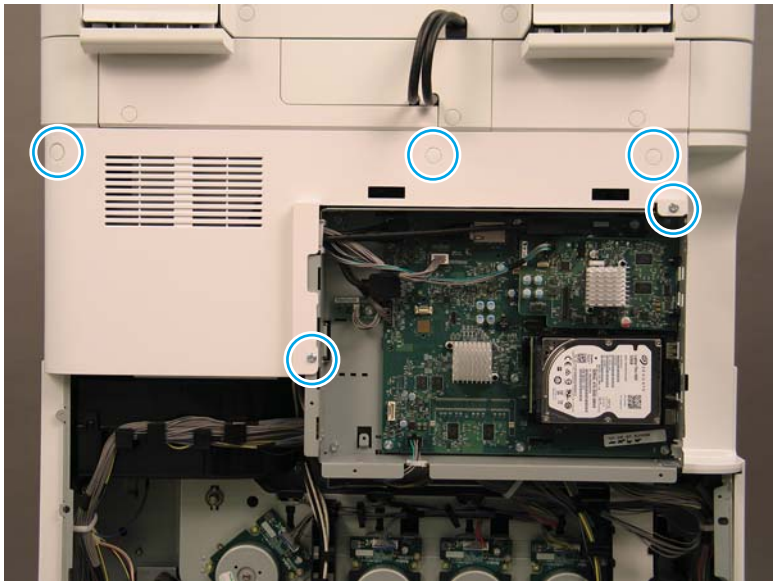


Remove the upper rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the upper rear cover.

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-475 Remove the upper rear cover

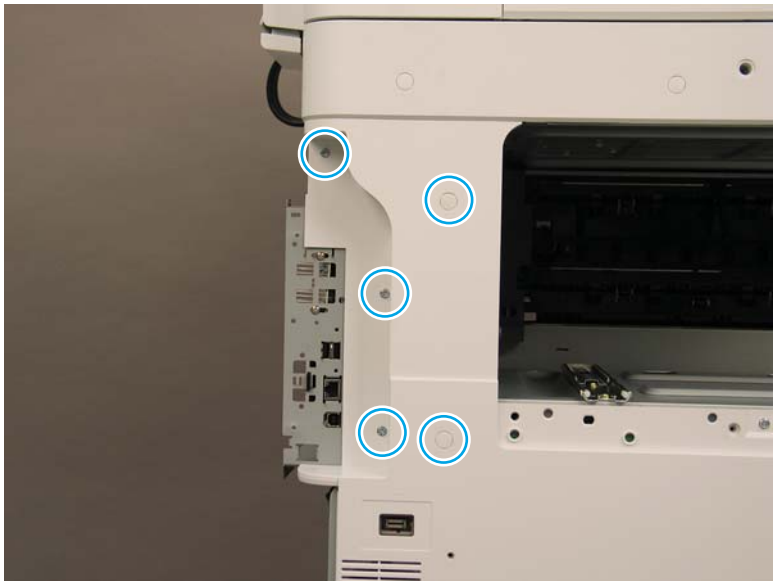


Remove the left rear corner cover

Follow these steps to remove the left rear corner cover.

▲ Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-476 Remove the left rear corner cover

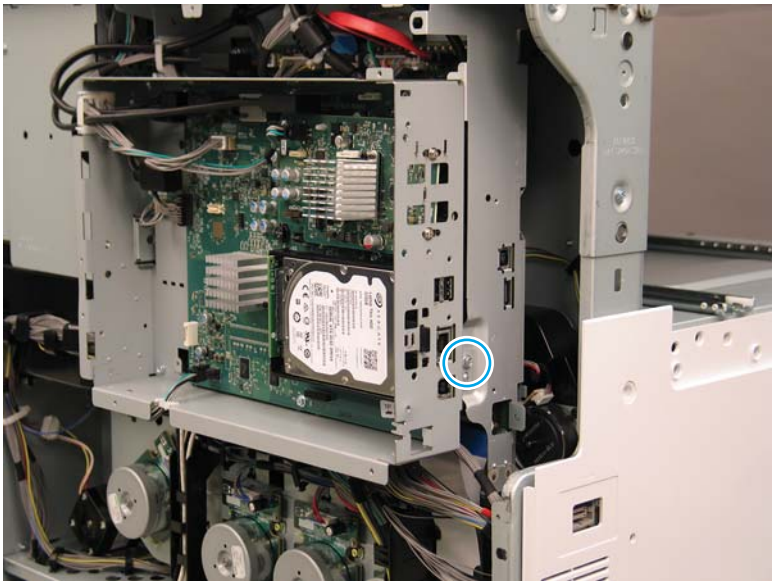


Remove the formatter and cage

Follow these steps to remove the formatter and cage.

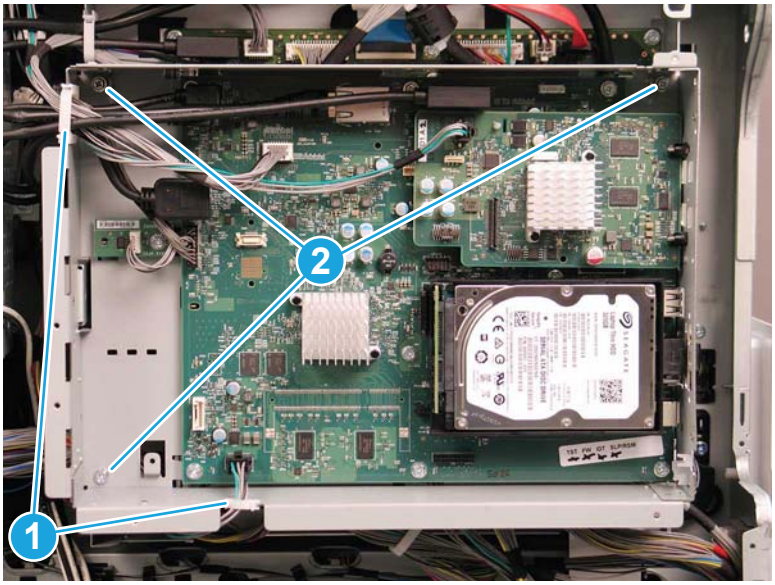
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 2-477 Remove one screw



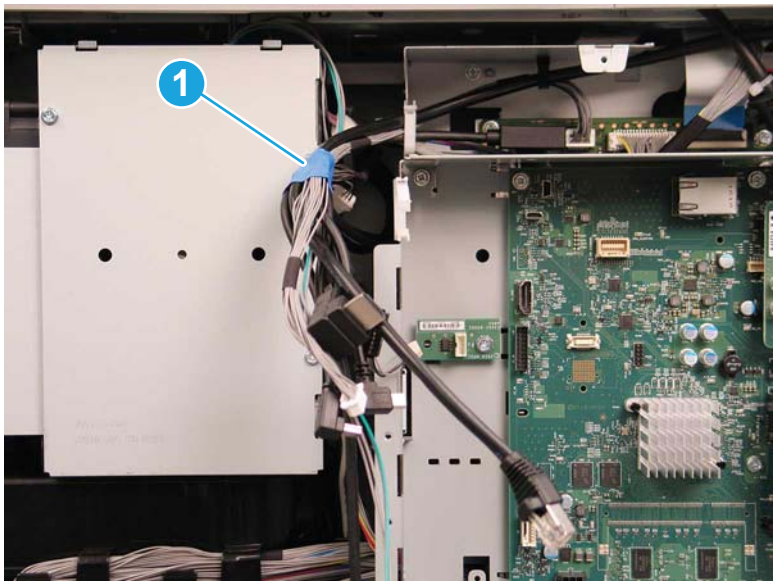
2. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter. Release the cables from two retainers on the sheet metal cage (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 2-478 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws



3. Before removing the formatter cage, place a piece of tape or a wire tie (callout 1) around the cables disconnected from the formatter on the left side. This will identify the cables that will be connected to the formatter during reassembly.

Figure 2-479 Identify the formatter cables



4. Lift the formatter cage up, push it to the right to clear the boss on the right side, and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

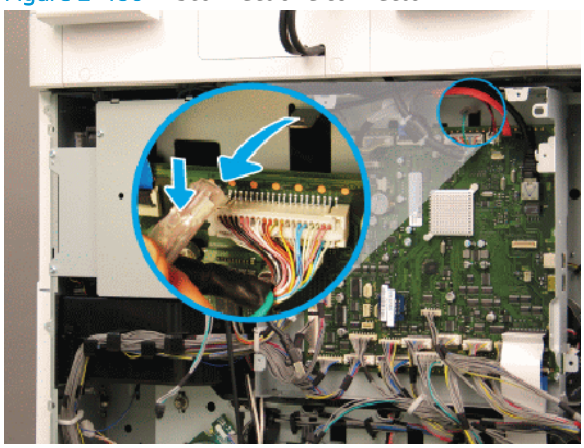
Remove the main board and cage

Follow these steps to remove the main board and cage.

1. One of the connectors that must be released above the main board is a spade connector.

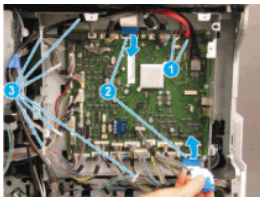
IMPORTANT: Press in on the center part of the cable connector to release the latch, and then pull the cable away from the printer to disconnect it. Do not pull on connector without depressing the center latch.

Figure 2-480 Disconnect one connector



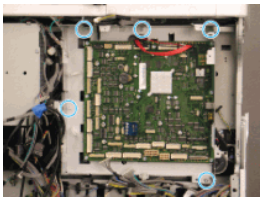
2. Do not disconnect the two hard disk drive (HDD) connectors at the top of the main board (callout 1). Disconnect all of the remaining connectors. Two of the flat cable connectors (callout 2) are zero insertion force (ZIF) connectors. Open the latch on the connectors before removing the flat cables. Release the cables from six retainers (callout 3).

Figure 2-481 Remove one screw



3. Remove five screws.

Figure 2-482 Remove five screws



4. Lift the main board cage up, and then rotate the lower edge of the cage away from the printer to remove it.

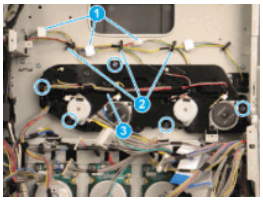
Remove the toner supply drive unit

Follow these steps to remove the toner supply drive unit.

▲ Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then release cables from three retainers (callout 2). Release the cables from the guides (callout 3). Remove five screws and then remove the toner supply drive unit.

TIP: Transfer the cables from the toner supply drive unit to the replacement part.

Figure 2-483 Remove the toner supply drive unit



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following**special installation instructions**.

Removal and replacement: Toner supply and toner reservoir motors

Learn how to remove and replace the toner supply and toner reservoir motors.

View a video of how to remove and replace the toner supply and toner reservoir motors.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-69 Part information

Part numbers	Part description
JC31-00110A	Motor - step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

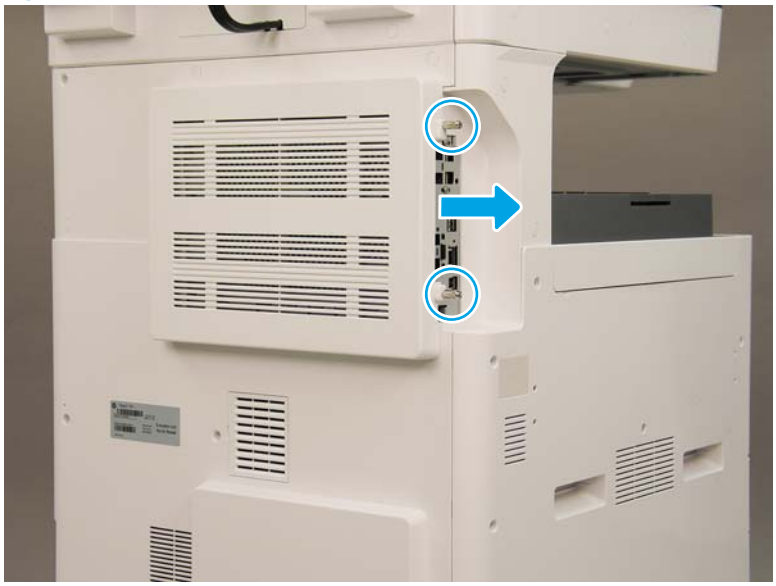
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-484 Remove the formatter cover

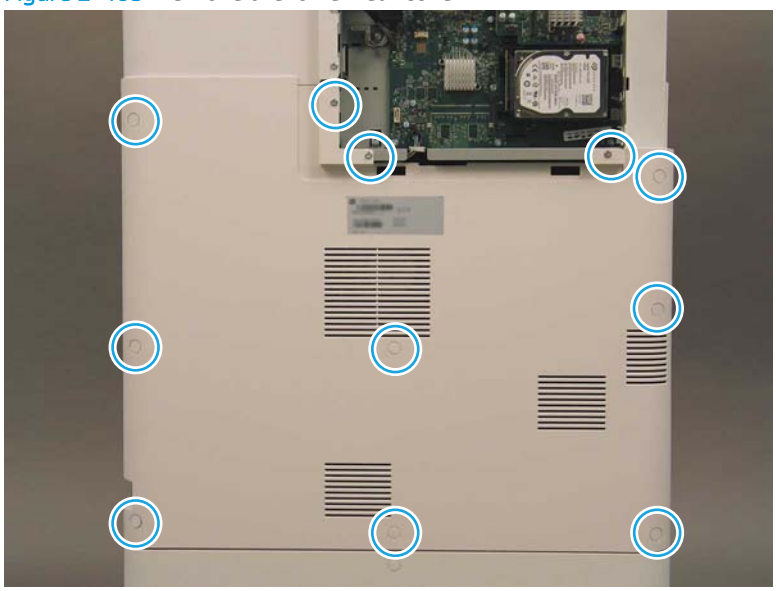


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-485 Remove the lower rear cover

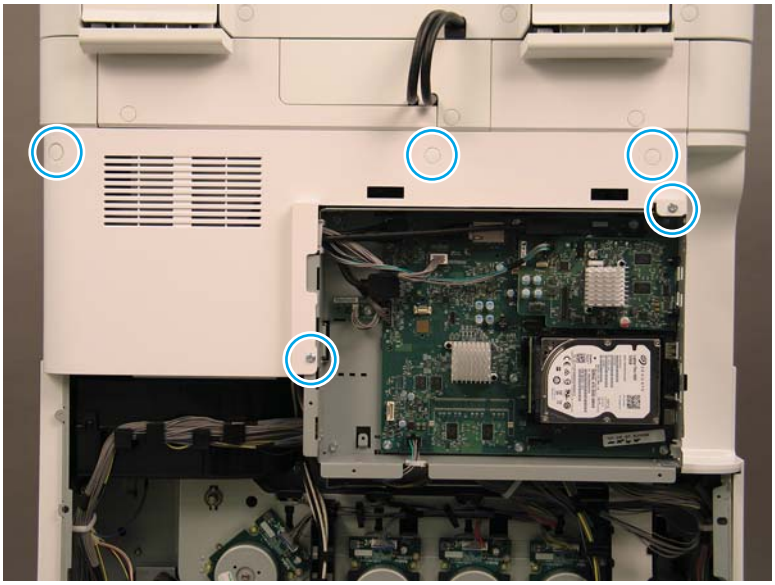


Remove the upper rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the upper rear cover.

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-486 Remove the upper rear cover

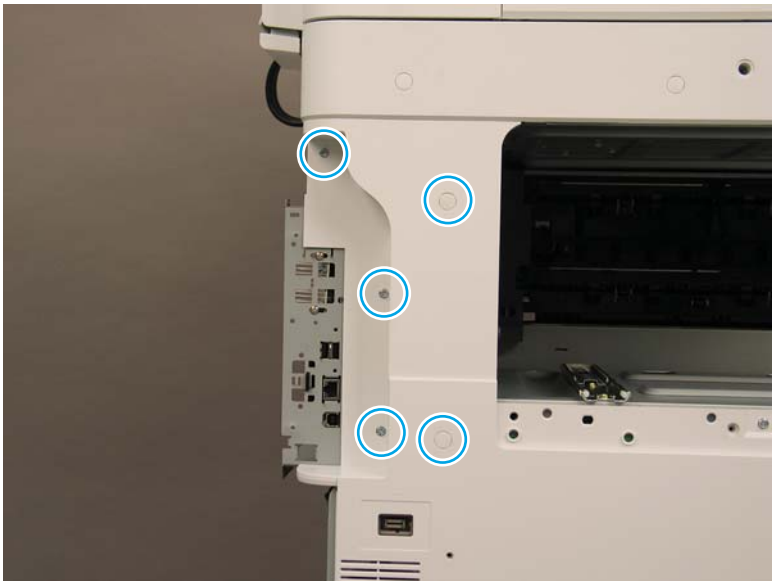


Remove the left rear corner cover

Follow these steps to remove the left rear corner cover.

▲ Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-487 Remove the left rear corner cover

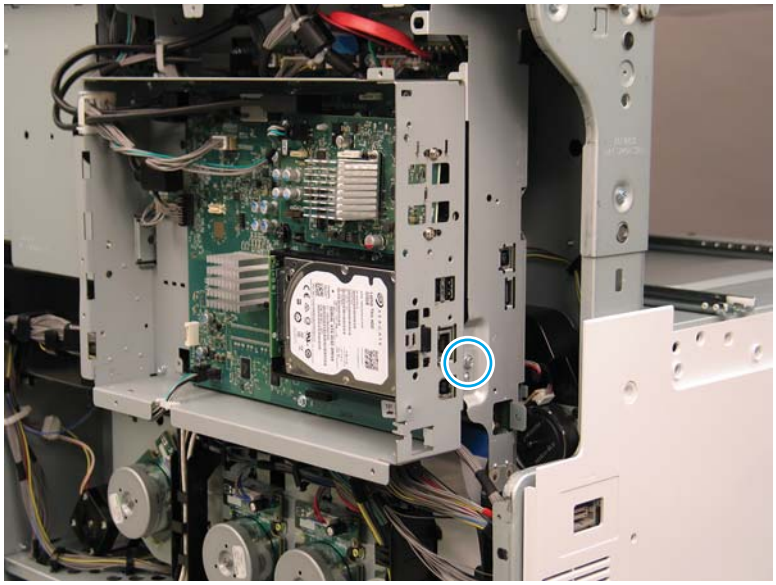


Remove the formatter and cage

Follow these steps to remove the formatter and cage.

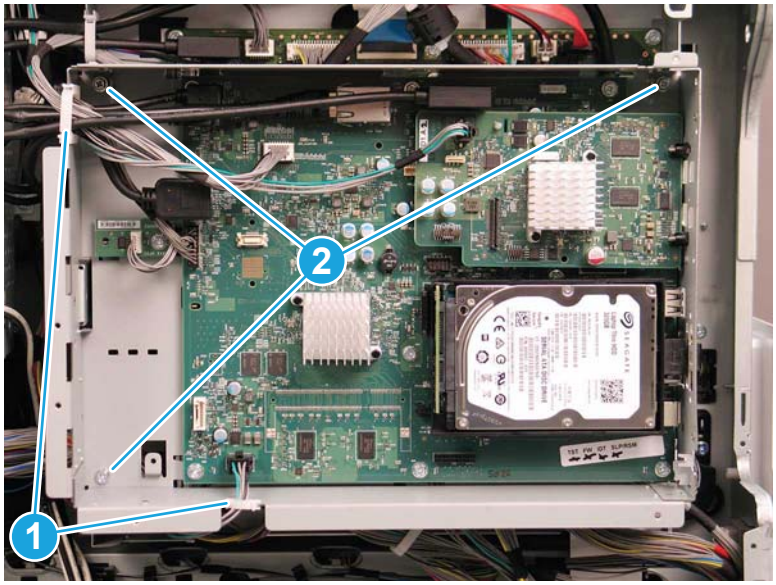
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 2-488 Remove one screw



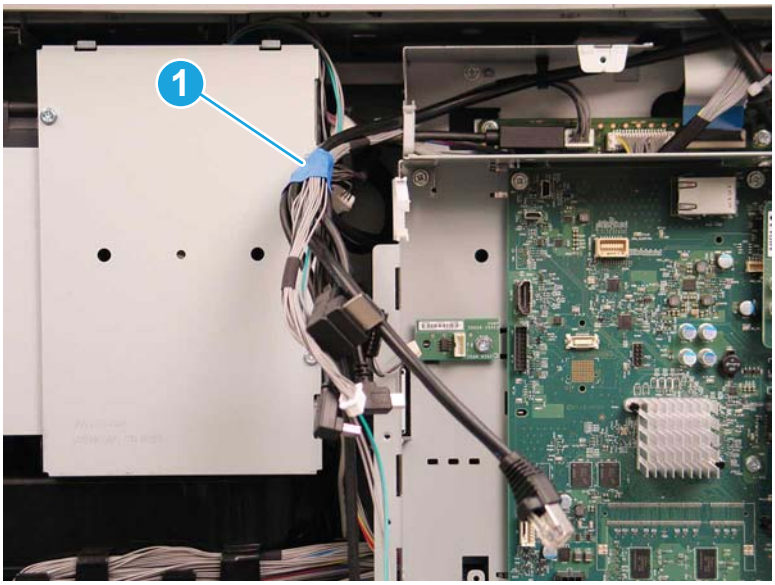
2. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter. Release the cables from two retainers on the sheet metal cage (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 2-489 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws



3. Before removing the formatter cage, place a piece of tape or a wire tie (callout 1) around the cables disconnected from the formatter on the left side. This will identify the cables that will be connected to the formatter during reassembly.

Figure 2-490 Identify the formatter cables



4. Lift the formatter cage up, push it to the right to clear the boss on the right side, and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

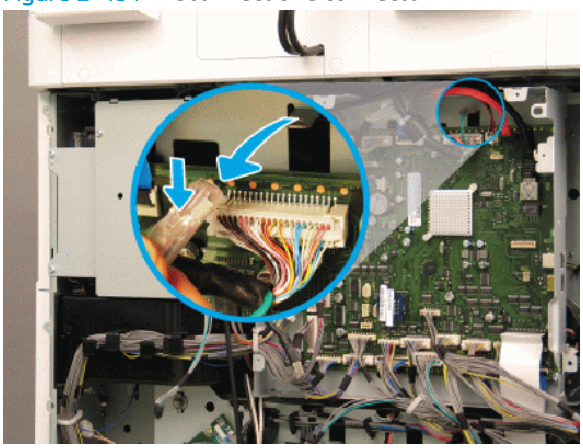
Remove the main board and cage

Follow these steps to remove the main board and cage.

1. One of the connectors that must be released above the main board is a spade connector.

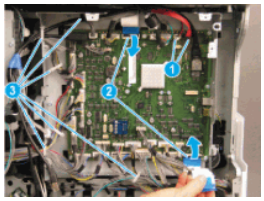
IMPORTANT: Press in on the center part of the cable connector to release the latch, and then pull the cable away from the printer to disconnect it. Do not pull on connector without depressing the center latch.

Figure 2-491 Disconnect one connector



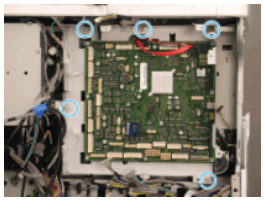
2. Do not disconnect the two hard disk drive (HDD) connectors at the top of the main board (callout 1). Disconnect all of the remaining connectors. Two of the flat cable connectors (callout 2) are zero insertion force (ZIF) connectors. Open the latch on the connectors before removing the flat cables. Release the cables from six retainers (callout 3).

Figure 2-492 Remove one screw



3. Remove five screws.

Figure 2-493 Remove five screws



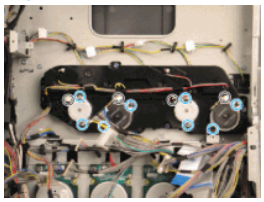
4. Lift the main board cage up, and then rotate the lower edge of the cage away from the printer to remove it.

Remove the toner supply and toner reservoir motors

Follow these steps to remove the toner supply and toner reservoir motors.

▲ Disconnect one connector and remove two screws for each motor that is replaced.

Figure 2-494 Remove the toner supply and toner reservoir motors



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following **special installation instructions**.

Removal and replacement: Fuser/exit drive unit

Learn how to remove and replace the fuser/exit drive unit.

View a video of how to remove and replace the fuser/exit drive unit.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-70 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01064A	Drive, fuser exit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

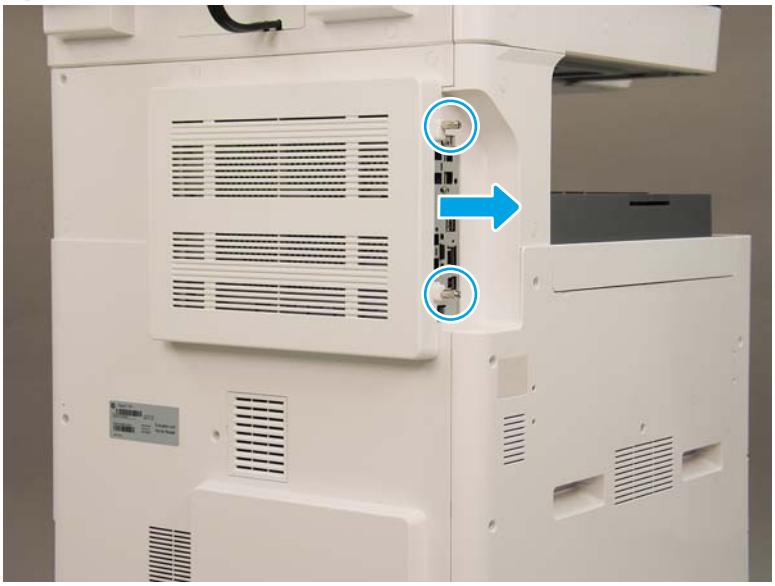
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-495 Remove the formatter cover

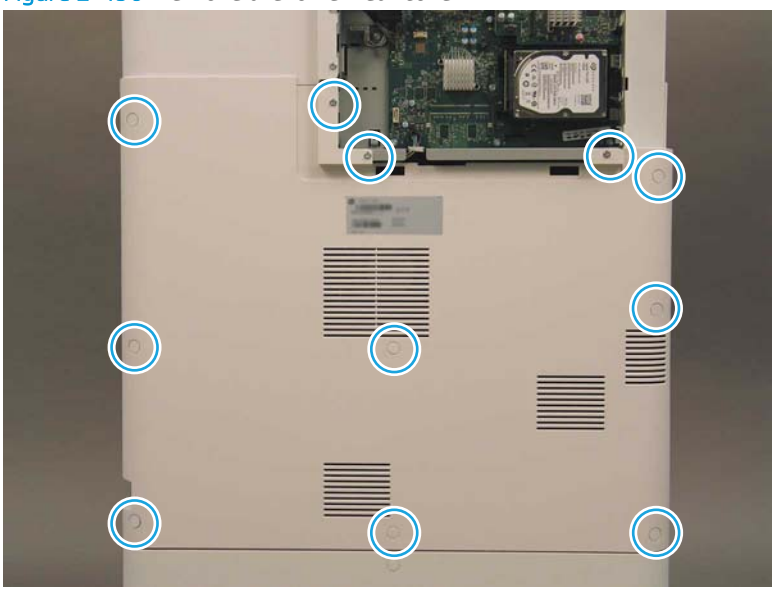


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-496 Remove the lower rear cover

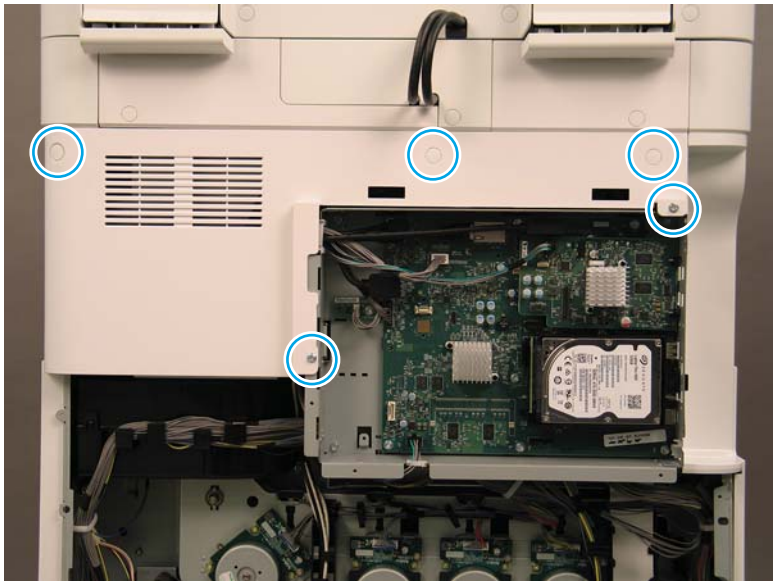


Remove the upper rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the upper rear cover.

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-497 Remove the upper rear cover



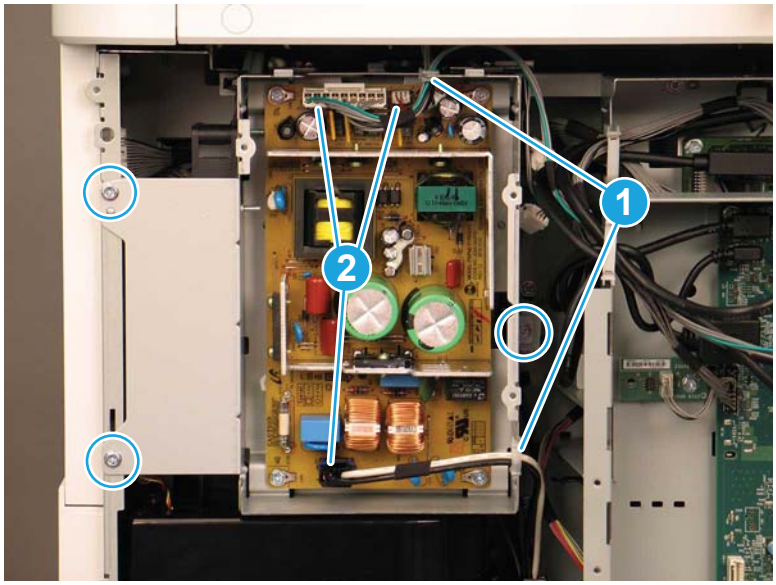
Remove the LVPS Type 4 and cage

Follow these steps to remove the LVPS Type 4 and cage.

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

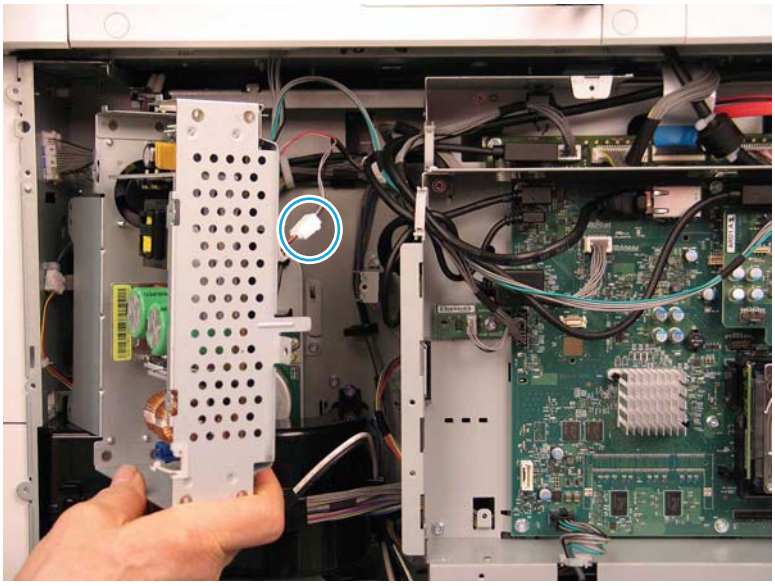
1. Release the cables from two retainers (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 2-498 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Lift the LVPS board and cage slightly away from the printer, and disconnect one connector behind the cage. Remove the LVPS board and cage.

Figure 2-499 Disconnect one connector

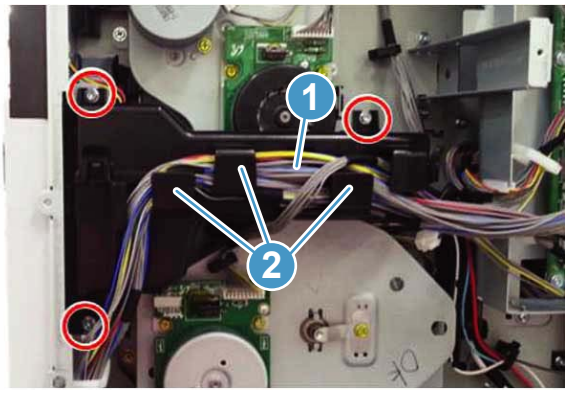


Remove the fuser fan

Follow these steps to remove the fuser fan.

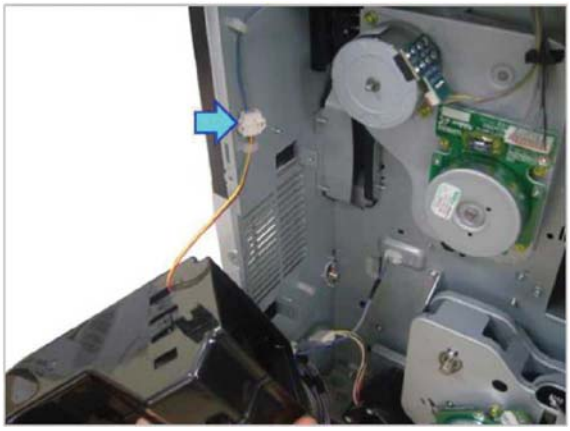
1. Release the cables (callout 1) from the cable guides (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 2-500 Release the harness and remove three screws



2. Pull the fuser fan housing slightly away from the printer, and then disconnect one connector.

Figure 2-501 Disconnect one connector



3. **Optional step**: For a replacement fan, release five tabs along the edges of the fan housing. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

Figure 2-502 Release five tabs

4. **Optional step**:For a replacement fan, separate the fan housing, and then remove the fuser fan. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the fan in the housing and install the replacement fan in the same orientation.

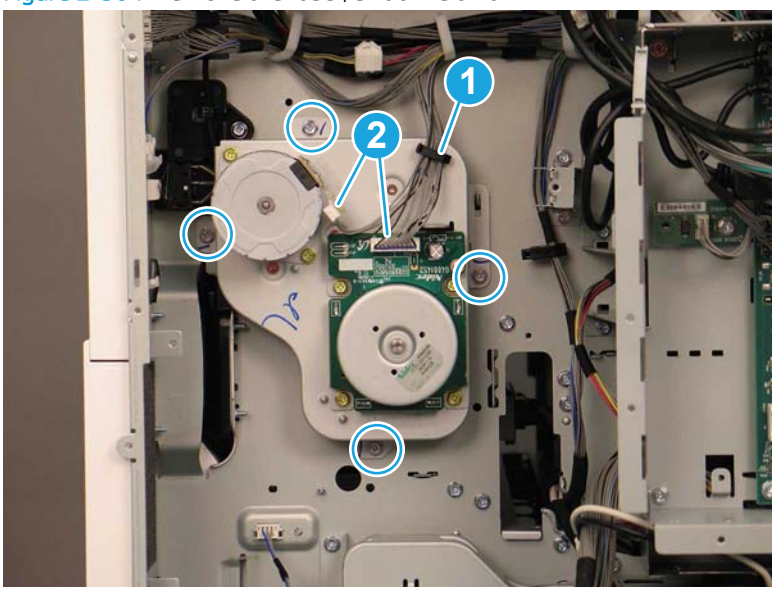
Figure 2-503 Remove the fuser fan

Remove the fuser/exit drive unit

Follow these steps to remove the fuser/exit drive unit.

- Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2). Remove four screws, and then remove the fuser/exit drive unit.

Figure 2-504 Remove the fuser/exit drive unit



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following**special installation instructions**.

Removal and replacement: Alienation drive unit or motor

Learn how to remove and replace the alienation motor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the alienation motor.

Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Advanced

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-71 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01068A	Assembly (drive, engage T1)
JC31-00110B	Motor circuit step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

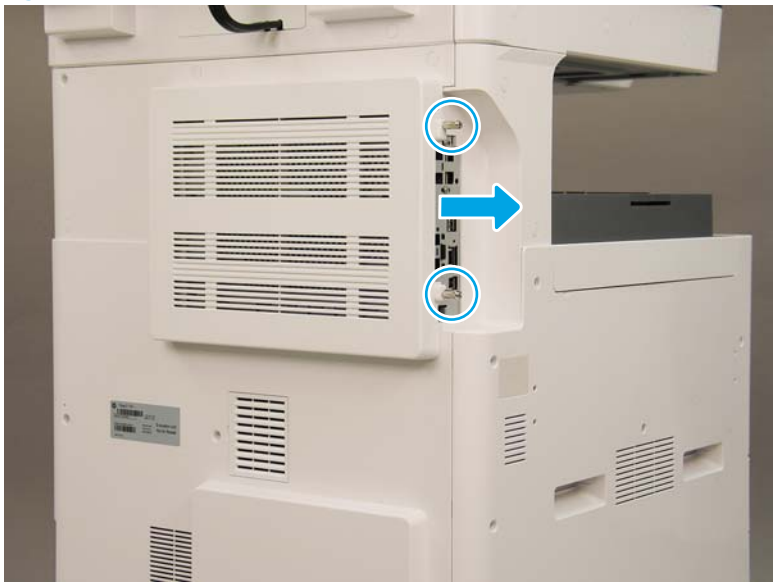
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-505 Remove the formatter cover

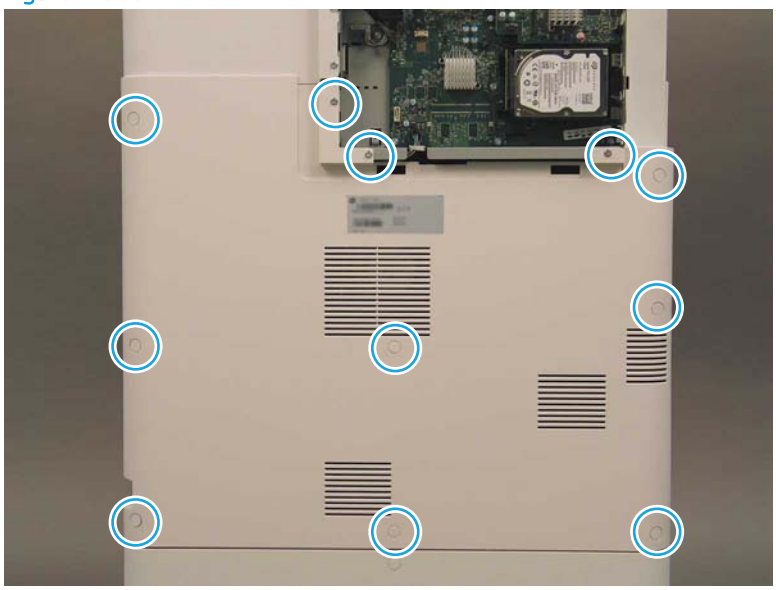


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-506 Remove the lower rear cover

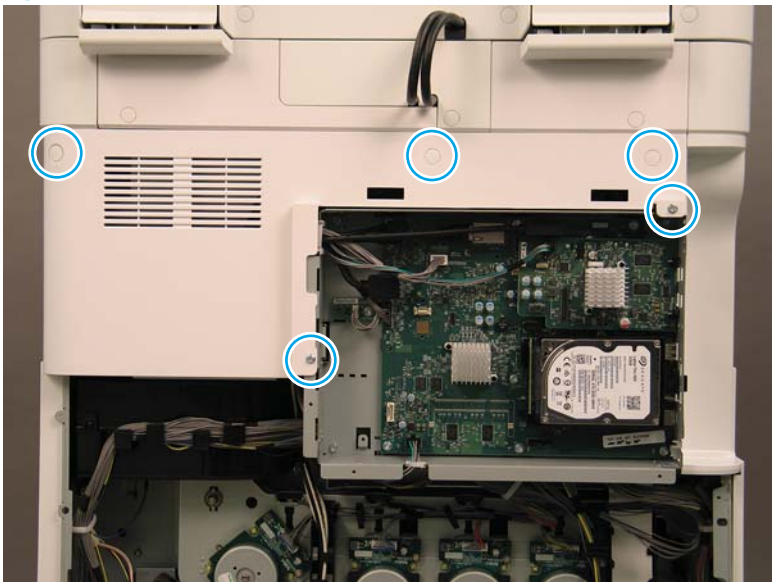


Remove the upper rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the upper rear cover.

- ▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-507 Remove the upper rear cover

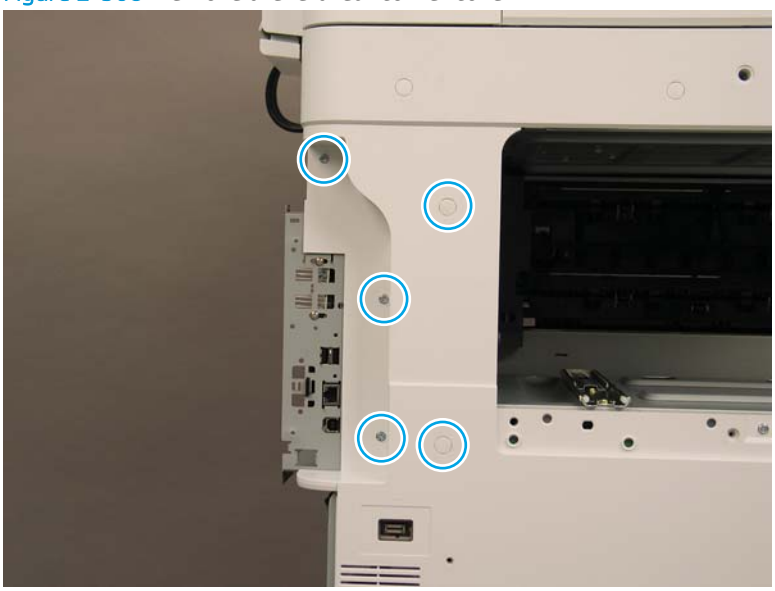


Remove the left rear corner cover

Follow these steps to remove the left rear corner cover.

- ▲ Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-508 Remove the left rear corner cover

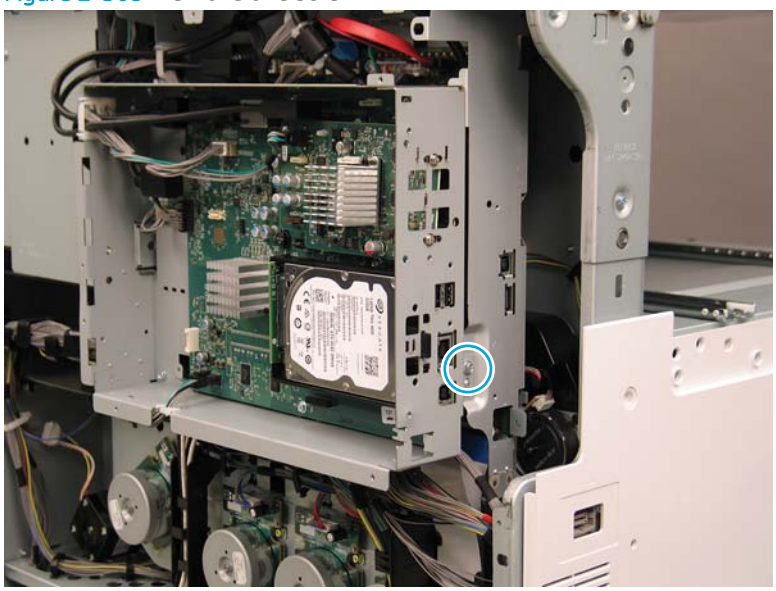


Remove the formatter and cage

Follow these steps to remove the formatter and cage.

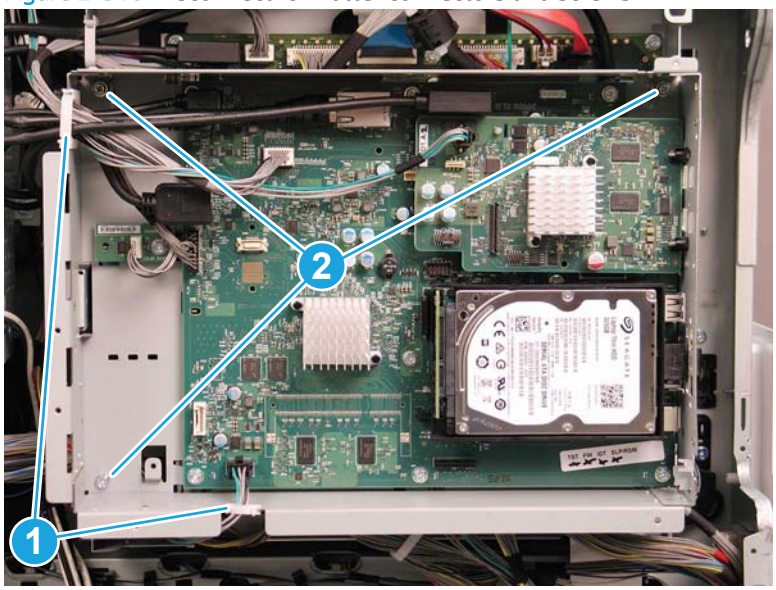
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 2-509 Remove one screw



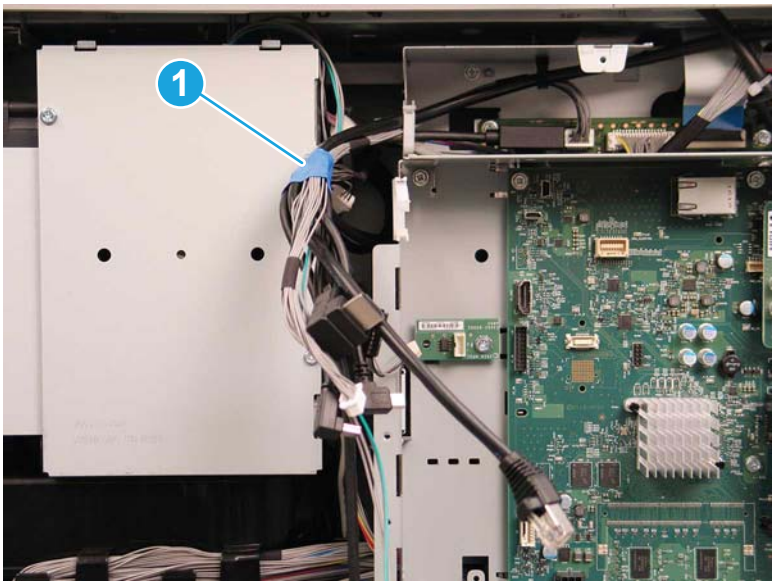
2. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter. Release the cables from two retainers on the sheet metal cage (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 2-510 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws



3. Before removing the formatter cage, place a piece of tape or a wire tie (callout 1) around the cables disconnected from the formatter on the left side. This will identify the cables that will be connected to the formatter during reassembly.

Figure 2-511 Identify the formatter cables



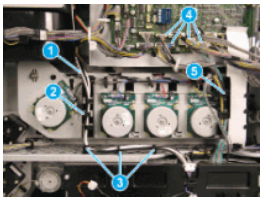
4. Lift the formatter cage up, push it to the right to clear the boss on the right side, and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

Remove the main drive unit

Follow these steps to remove the main drive unit.

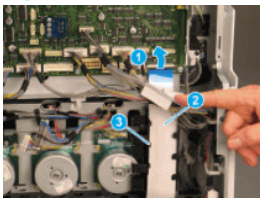
1. Remove the cables (callout 1) from the cable guide (callout 2), and then release three retainers (callout 3). Disconnect four connectors (callout 4), and then release the cables from the cable guide (callout 5).

Figure 2-512 Disconnect and release cables



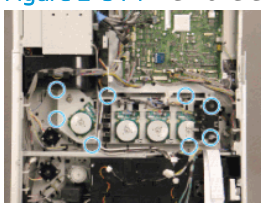
2. Disconnect three flat cables from the main board (callout 1). One of the flat cable connectors is a zero insertion force (ZIF) connector. Open the latch on the connector before removing the flat cable. Remove the flat cables (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Figure 2-513 Disconnect flat cables



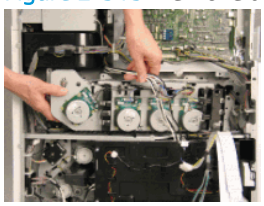
3. Remove eight screws.

Figure 2-514 Remove eight screws



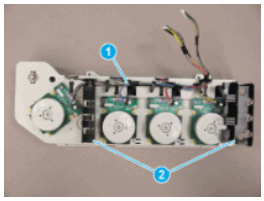
4. Lift the main drive unit up to release the hooks in the sheet metal, rotate it to the right, and then remove it from under the cables.

Figure 2-515 Remove the main drive unit



5. **Optional step**: Move all the cables (callout 1) and cable guides (callout 2) from the old main drive unit and transfer them to the replacement unit.

Figure 2-516 Remove cables and guides

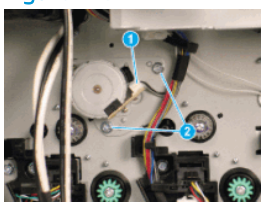


Remove the alienation motor

Follow these steps to remove the alienation motor.

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the alienation motor.

Figure 2-517 Remove the alienation motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Feed/Tray 1 drive unit or motor

Learn how to remove and replace the feed/Tray 1 drive unit.

View a video of how to remove and replace the feed/Tray 1 drive unit.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-72 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01062A	Drive, Feed
JC31-00132A	Step motor, ip

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

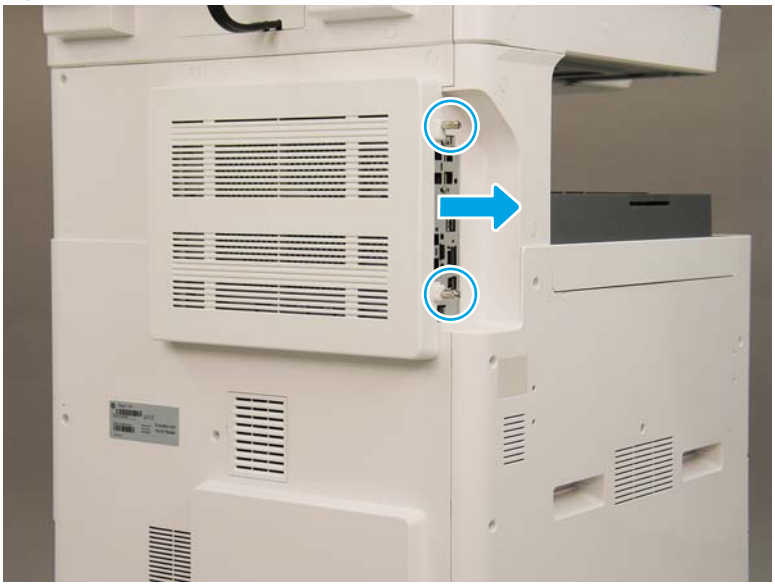
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-518 Remove the formatter cover

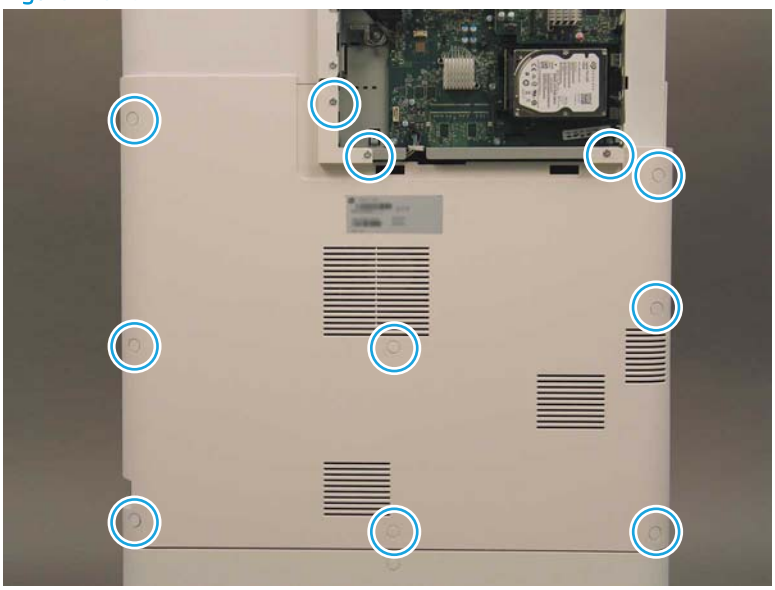


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-519 Remove the lower rear cover



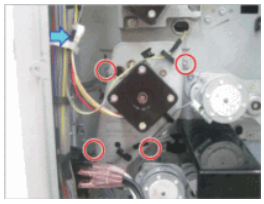
Remove the feed/Tray 1 drive unit

Follow these steps to remove the feed/Tray 1 drive unit.

▲ Disconnect the motor connector. Remove four screws, and then remove the feed/Tray 1 drive unit.

NOTE: If replacing only the motor, remove the drive unit from the printer and then remove the motor from the drive unit.

Figure 2-520 Remove the feed/Tray 1 drive unit



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Pickup drive (Tray 3) or motor

Learn how to remove and replace the pickup drive (Tray 3) or motor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the pickup drive (Tray 3) or motor.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-73 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01063C	Pickup drive (Tray 3)
JC93-01083A	Drive motor, step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

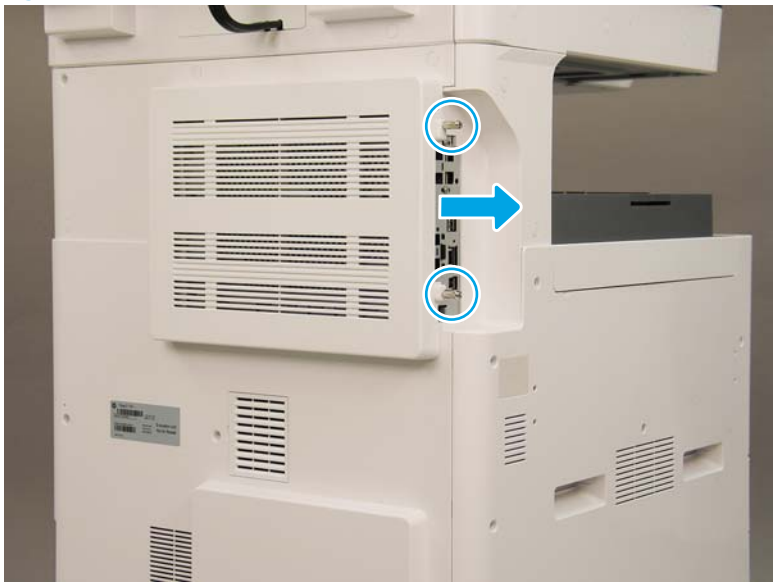
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-521 Remove the formatter cover

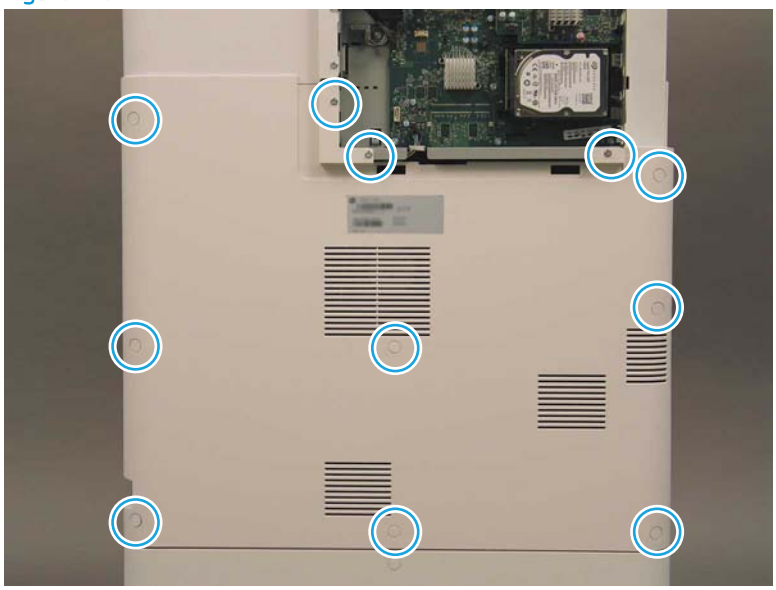


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-522 Remove the lower rear cover



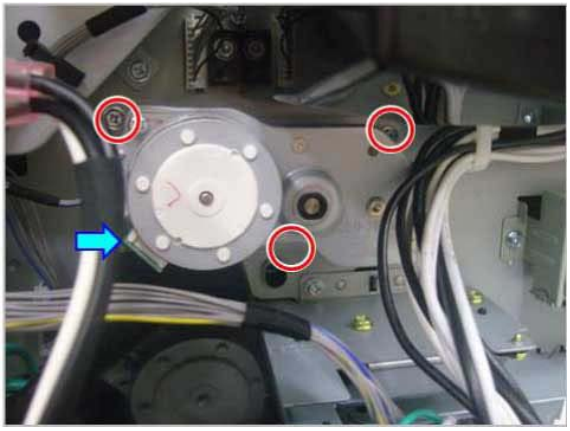
Remove the pickup drive unit 2

Follow these steps to remove the pickup drive unit 2.

▲ Disconnect the motor connector. Remove three screws, and then remove the pickup drive (Tray 3).

NOTE: If replacing only the motor, remove the drive unit from the printer and then remove the motor from the drive unit.

Figure 2-523 Remove pickup drive unit 2



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU) drive and motor

Learn how to remove and replace the toner collection unit (TCU) drive.

View a video of how to remove and replace the TCU drive.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-74 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01070A	Drive, Toner Collection Unit
JC31-00110A	Step motor, circuit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the TCU

Follow these steps to remove the TCU.

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-524 Remove the TCU

Remove the paper dust brush

Follow these steps to remove the paper dust brush.

- Remove the paper dust brush.

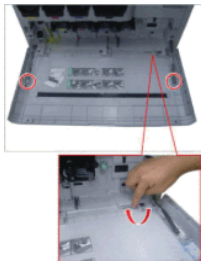
Figure 2-525 Remove the paper dust brush

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

- ▲ Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

Figure 2-526 Remove the front cover



Remove the front top inner cover

Follow these steps to remove the front top inner cover.

- ▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-527 Remove the front top inner cover

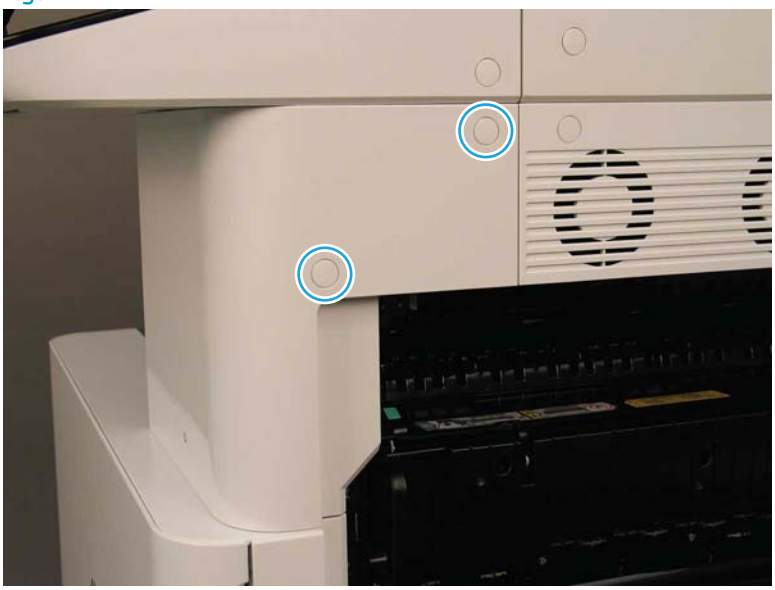
Remove the front power cover

Follow these steps to remove the front power cover.

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

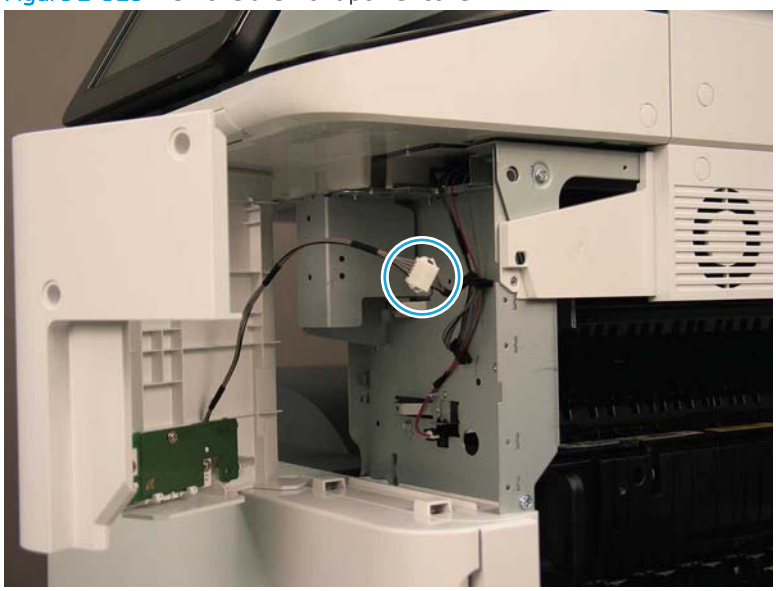
CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 2-528 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-529 Remove the front power cover



Remove the exit cover

Follow these steps to remove the exit cover.

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the exit cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-530 Remove the exit cover

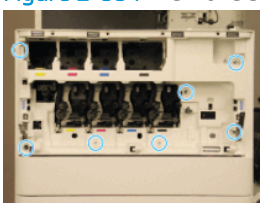
Remove the inner front cover

Follow these steps to remove the inner front cover.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove the all of the toner cartridges.

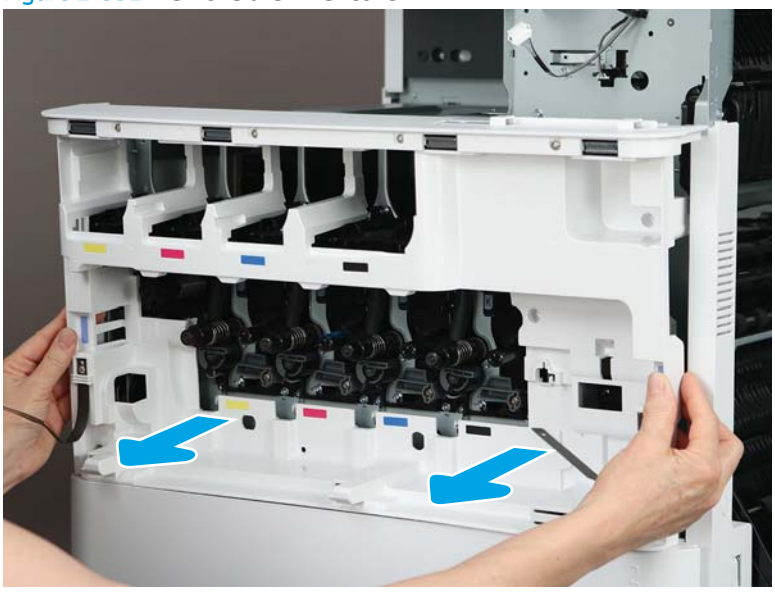
3. Remove seven screws.

Figure 2-531 Remove seven screws



4. Lift the inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-532 Remove the inner cover



Remove the TCU drive

Follow these steps to remove the TCU drive.

▲ Disconnect the connector. Remove two screws, and then remove the TCU drive.

NOTE: To replace the motor, remove the drive unit from the printer and then remove the motor from the drive unit.

Figure 2-533 Remove the TCU drive

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Registration drive assembly

Learn how to remove and replace the registration drive assembly.

View a video of how to remove and replace the registration drive assembly.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-75 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01061A	Drive, registration
JC31-00132A	Step motor, ip

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

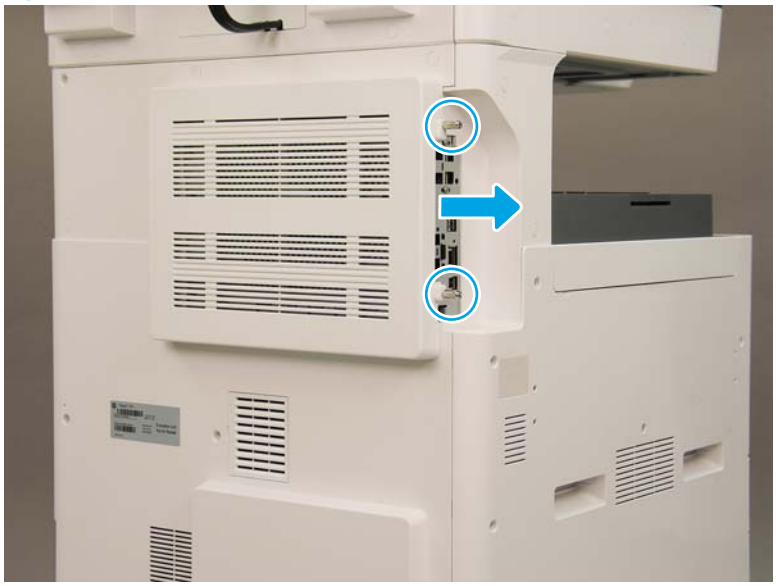
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-534 Remove the formatter cover

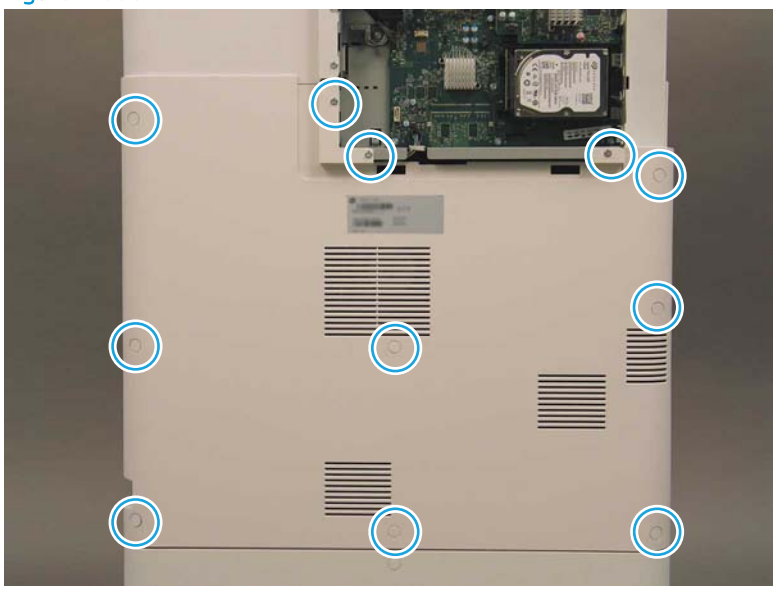


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-535 Remove the lower rear cover

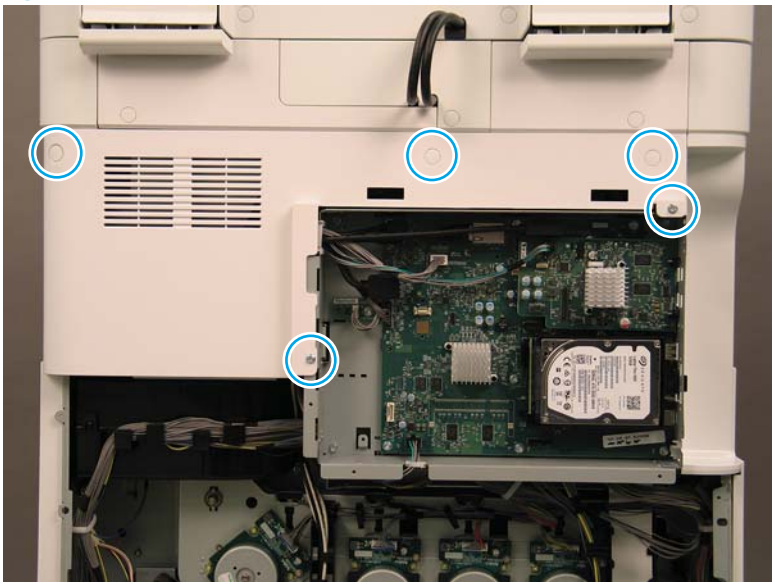


Remove the upper rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the upper rear cover.

- ▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-536 Remove the upper rear cover

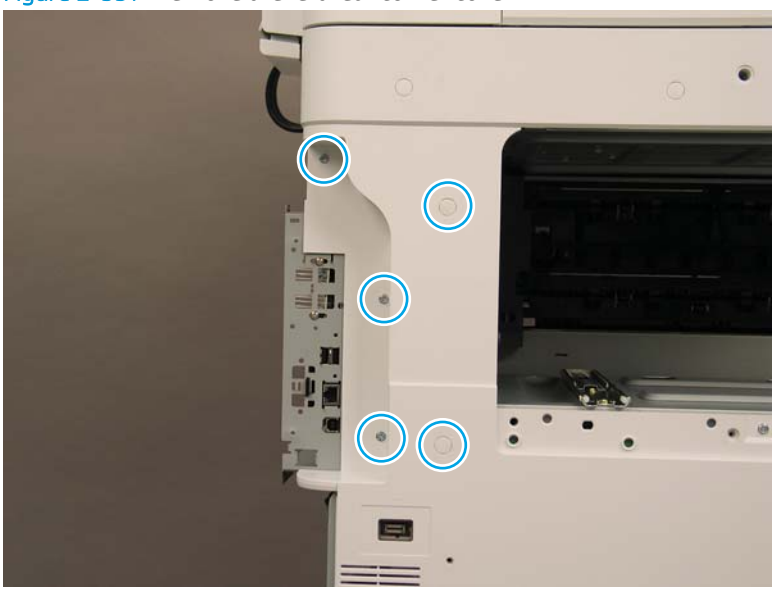


Remove the left rear corner cover

Follow these steps to remove the left rear corner cover.

- ▲ Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-537 Remove the left rear corner cover

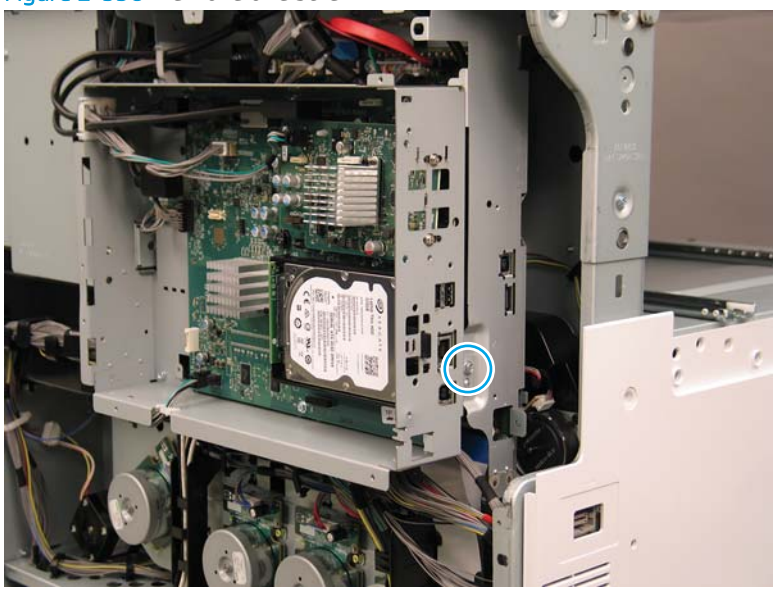


Remove the formatter and cage

Follow these steps to remove the formatter and cage.

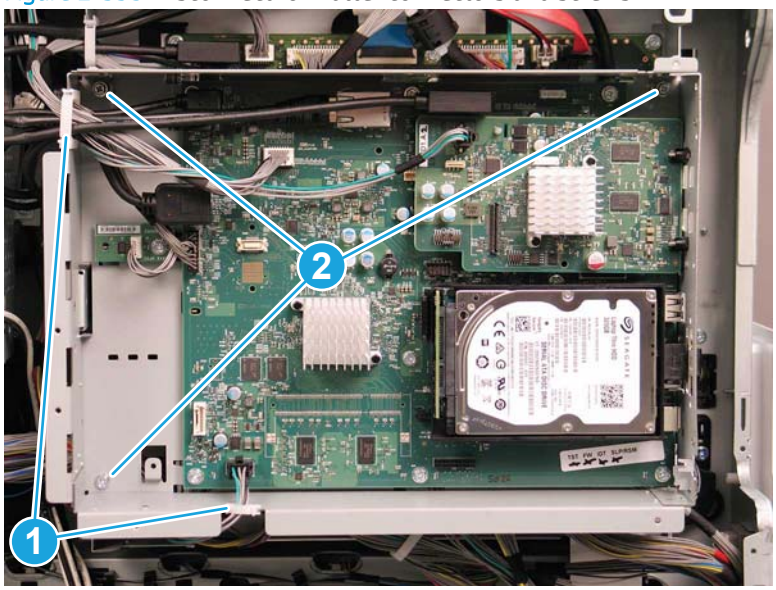
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 2-538 Remove one screw



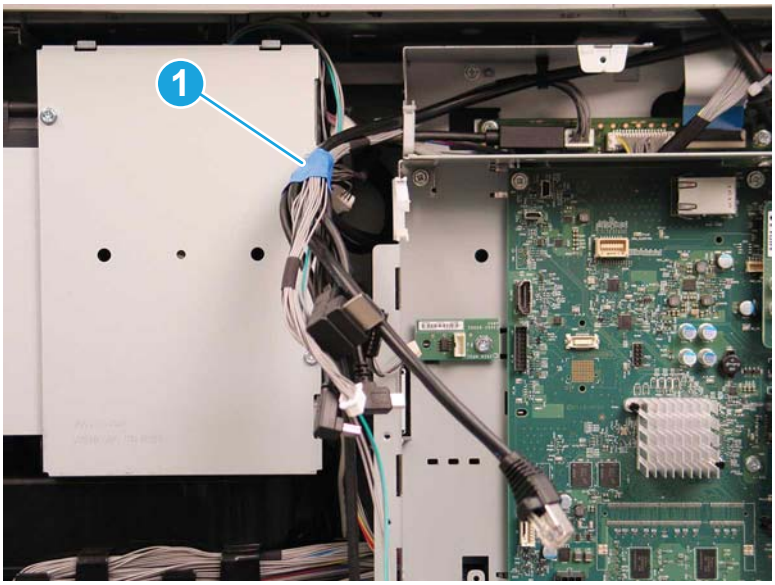
2. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter. Release the cables from two retainers on the sheet metal cage (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 2-539 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws



3. Before removing the formatter cage, place a piece of tape or a wire tie (callout 1) around the cables disconnected from the formatter on the left side. This will identify the cables that will be connected to the formatter during reassembly.

Figure 2-540 Identify the formatter cables



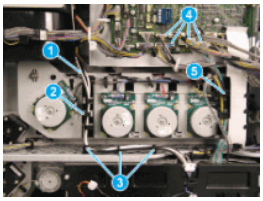
4. Lift the formatter cage up, push it to the right to clear the boss on the right side, and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

Remove the main drive unit

Follow these steps to remove the main drive unit.

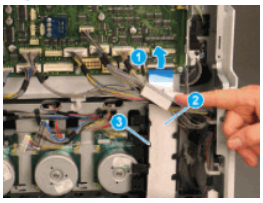
1. Remove the cables (callout 1) from the cable guide (callout 2), and then release three retainers (callout 3). Disconnect four connectors (callout 4), and then release the cables from the cable guide (callout 5).

Figure 2-541 Disconnect and release cables



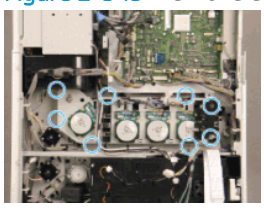
2. Disconnect three flat cables from the main board (callout 1). One of the flat cable connectors is a zero insertion force (ZIF) connector. Open the latch on the connector before removing the flat cable. Remove the flat cables (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Figure 2-542 Disconnect flat cables



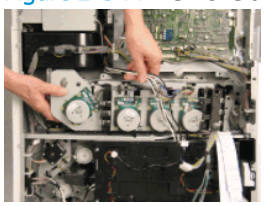
3. Remove eight screws.

Figure 2-543 Remove eight screws



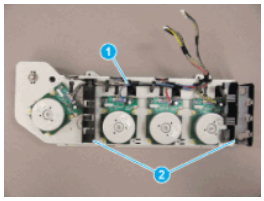
4. Lift the main drive unit up to release the hooks in the sheet metal, rotate it to the right, and then remove it from under the cables.

Figure 2-544 Remove the main drive unit



5. **Optional step**: Move all the cables (callout 1) and cable guides (callout 2) from the old main drive unit and transfer them to the replacement unit.

Figure 2-545 Remove cables and guides



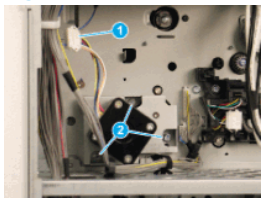
Remove the registration drive assembly

Follow these steps to remove the registration drive assembly.

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1). Remove three screws (callout 2), then remove the registration drive assembly.

NOTE: To replace the motor, remove the drive assembly from the printer and then remove the motor from the drive assembly.

Figure 2-546 Remove the registration drive assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main frame pickup 1 and 2

View the main frame pickup 1 and 2 exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Main frame pickup 1 and 2

Parts diagram and parts list for the main frame pickup 1 and 2.

Figure 2-547 Main frame pickup 1 and 2

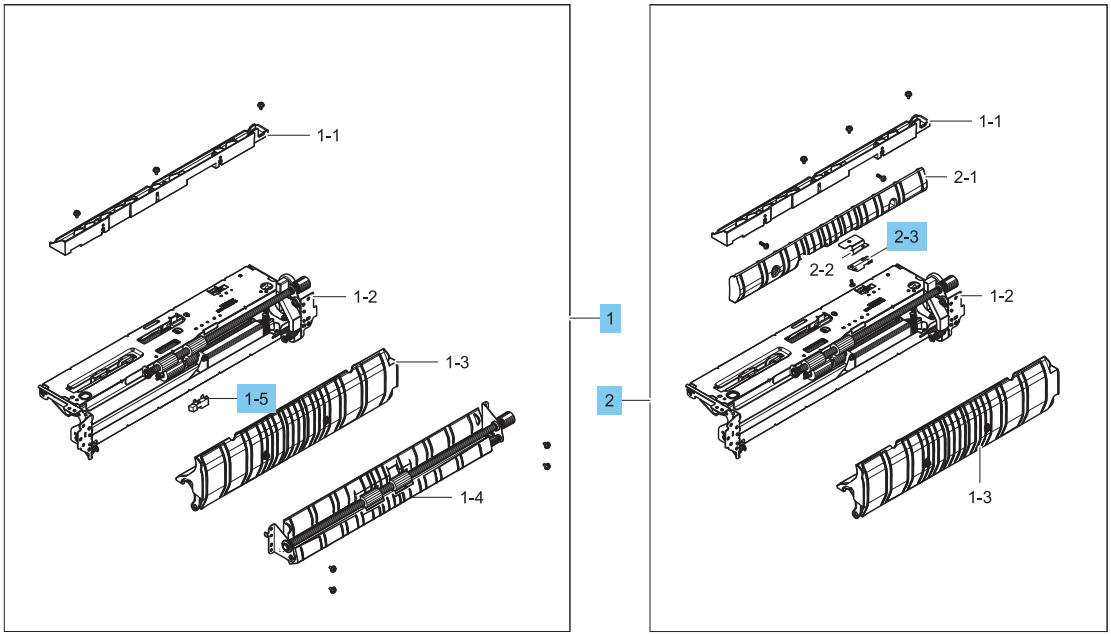


Table 2-76 Main frame pickup 1 and 2

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1	JC93-01364A	Main Pick Up 1st	1	Removal and replacement: Pickup unit 1 on page 567
1-5	0604-001490	Photo interrupter	1	Removal and replacement: Pickup lifting and empty sensor (pickup unit 1) on page 576
2	JC93-01365A	Main Pick Up 2nd		Removal and replacement: Pickup unit 2 on page 585
2-3	0604-001381	Photo interrupter		Removal and replacement: Pickup lifting and empty sensor (pickup unit 2) on page 592

Removal and replacement: Pickup unit 1

Learn how to remove and replace pickup unit 1.

View a video of how to remove and replace pickup unit 1.

Mean time to repair: 12 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-77 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01364A	Main pick up 1st

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

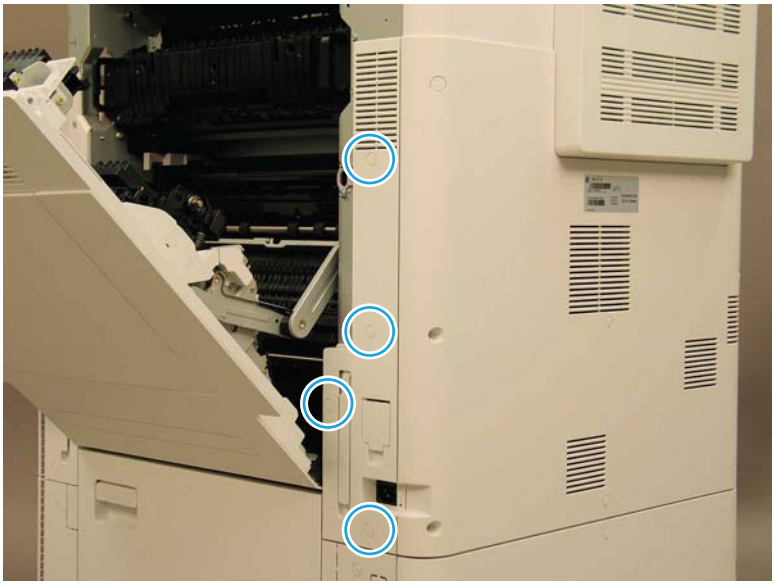
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

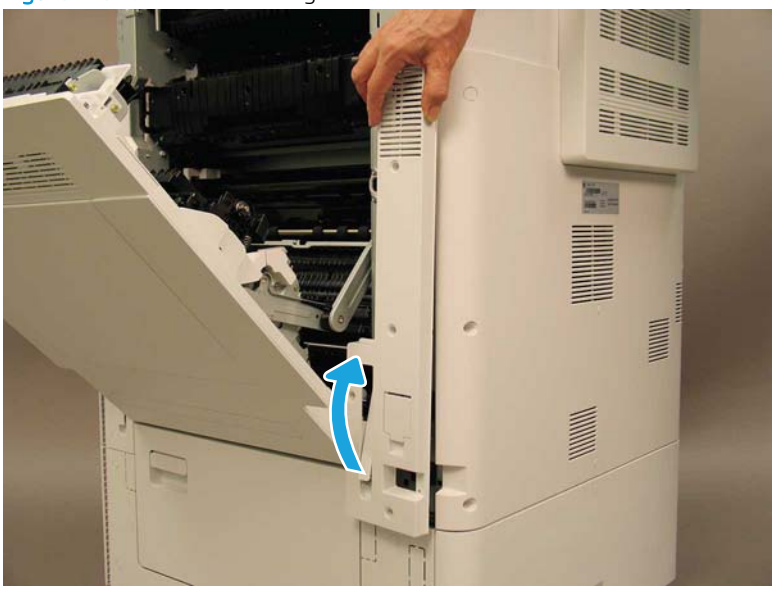
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-548 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-549 Remove the right rear cover

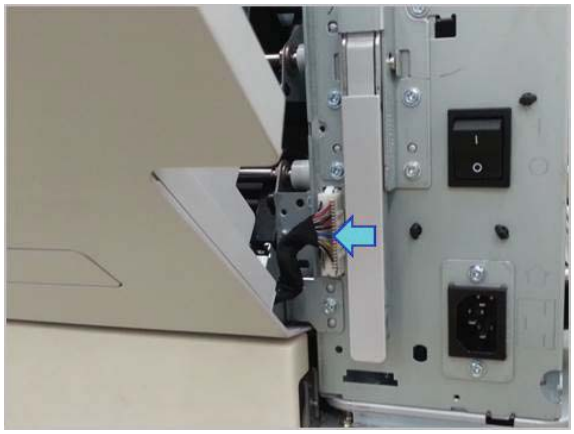


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

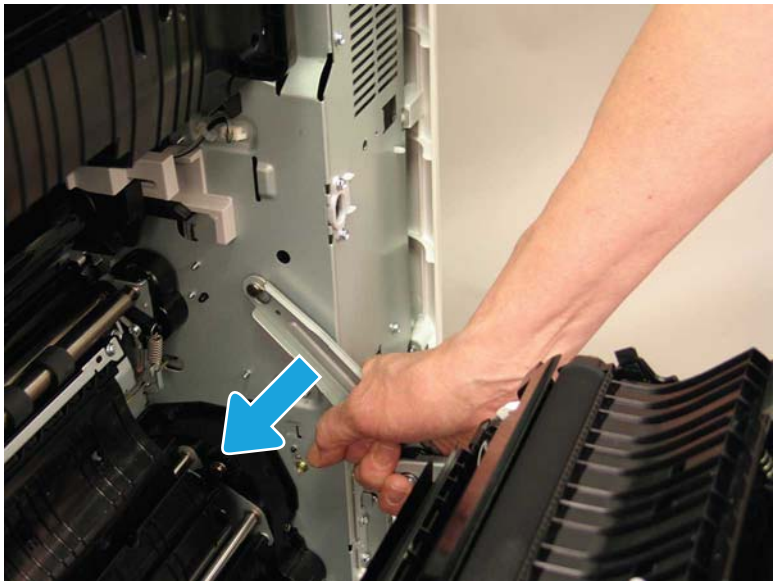
Figure 2-550 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

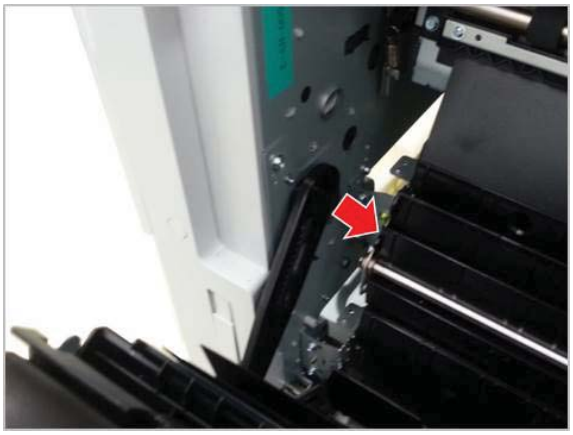
CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-551 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

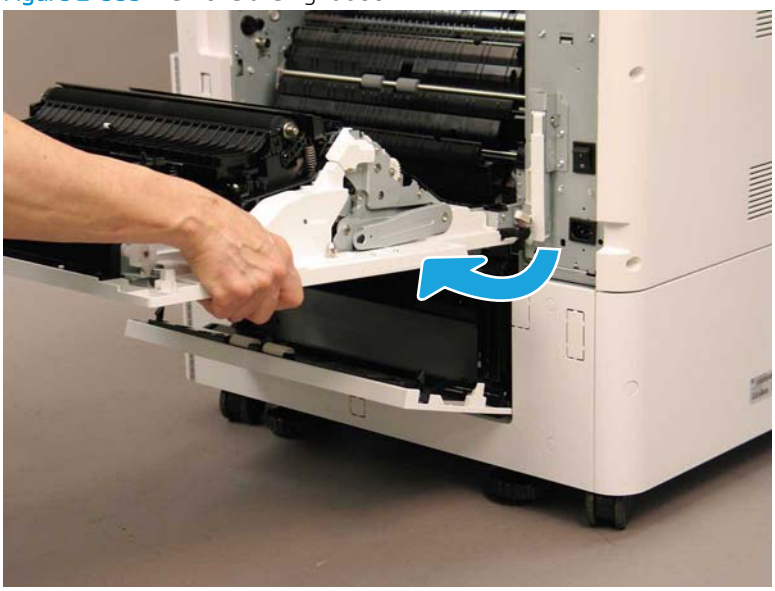
Figure 2-552 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-553 Remove the right door



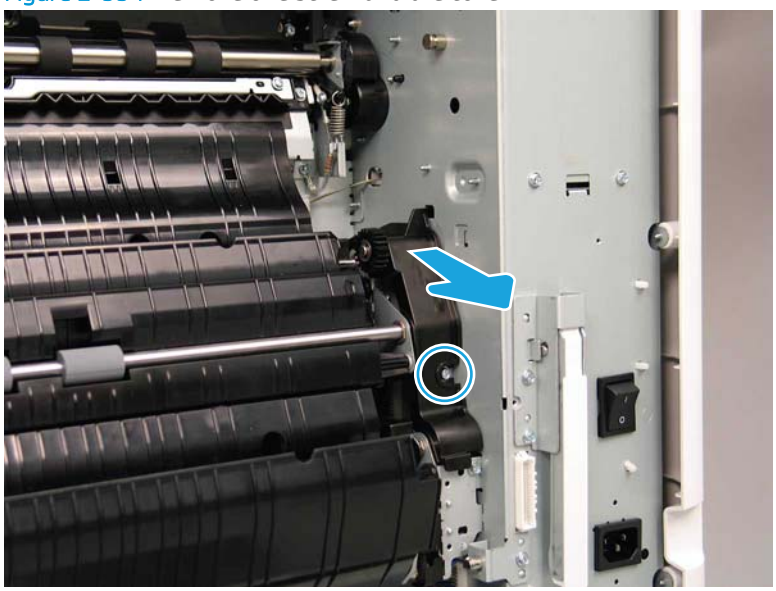
Remove pickup unit 2

Follow these steps to remove pickup unit 2.

1. Remove the paper trays.

2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-554 Remove one screw and the cover



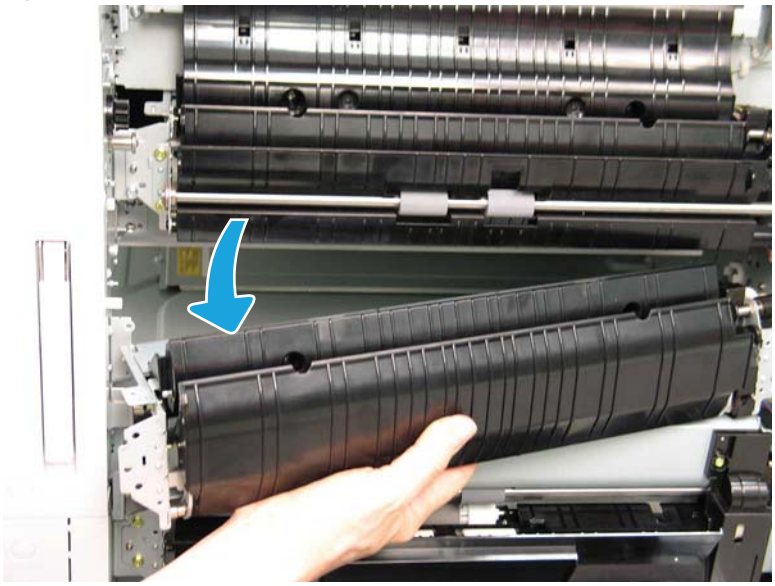
3. Remove three screws.

Figure 2-555 Remove three screws

4. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 2 away from the printer.

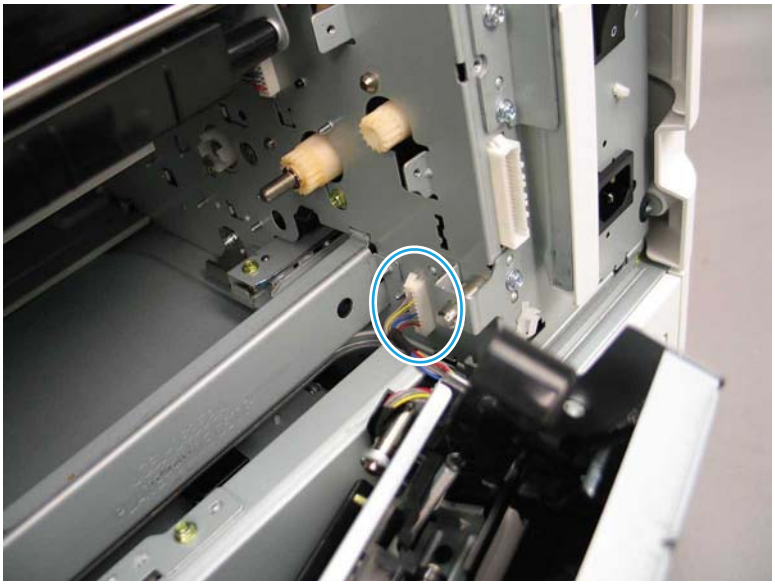
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely.

Figure 2-556 Rotate pickup unit 2



5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 2-557 Disconnect one connector



Remove pickup unit 1

Follow these steps to remove pickup unit 1.

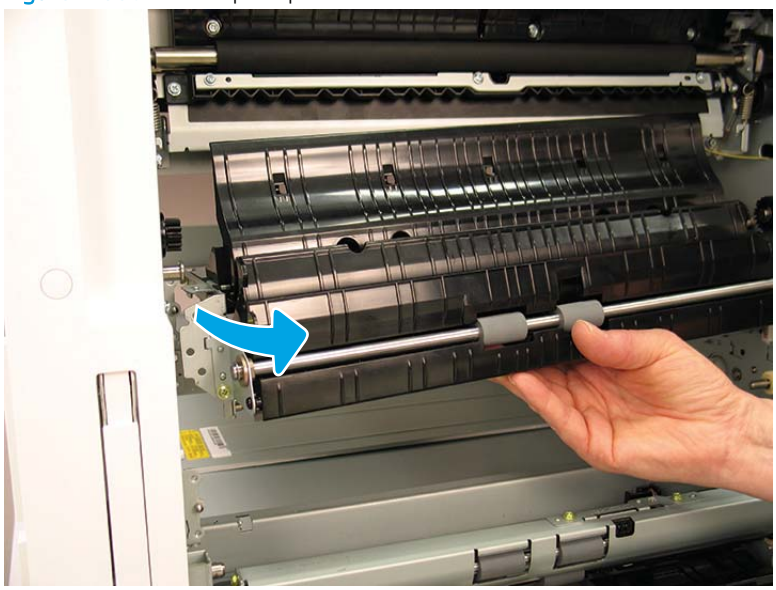
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 2-558 Remove three screws

2. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 1 away from the printer.

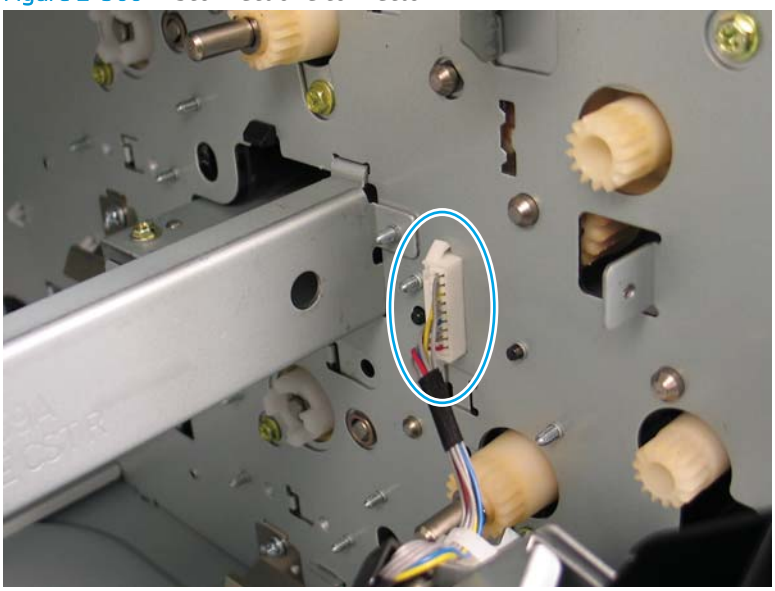
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely.

Figure 2-559 Rotate pickup unit 1



3. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 2-560 Disconnect one connector



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following **special installation instructions**.

Removal and replacement: Pickup lifting and empty sensor (pickup unit 1)

Learn how to remove and replace the pickup lifting and empty sensor for pickup unit 1.

View a video of how to remove and replace the pickup lifting and empty sensor for pickup unit 1.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-78 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001490	Photo interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

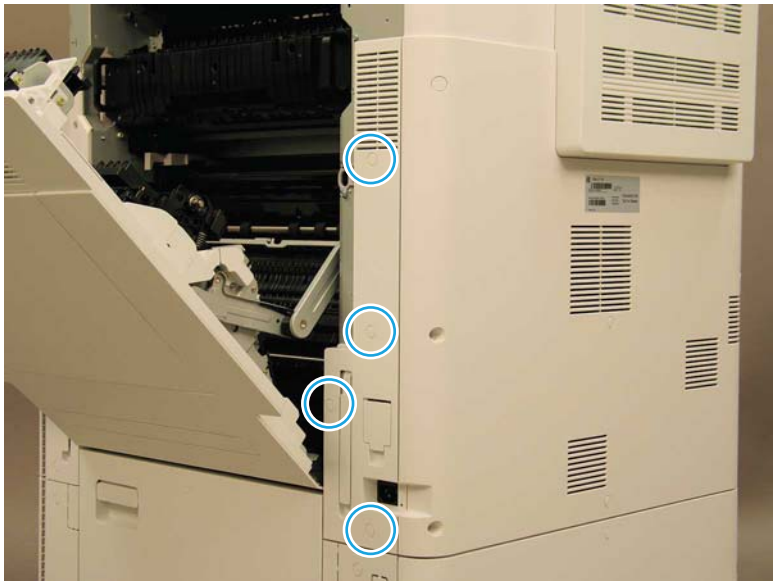
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

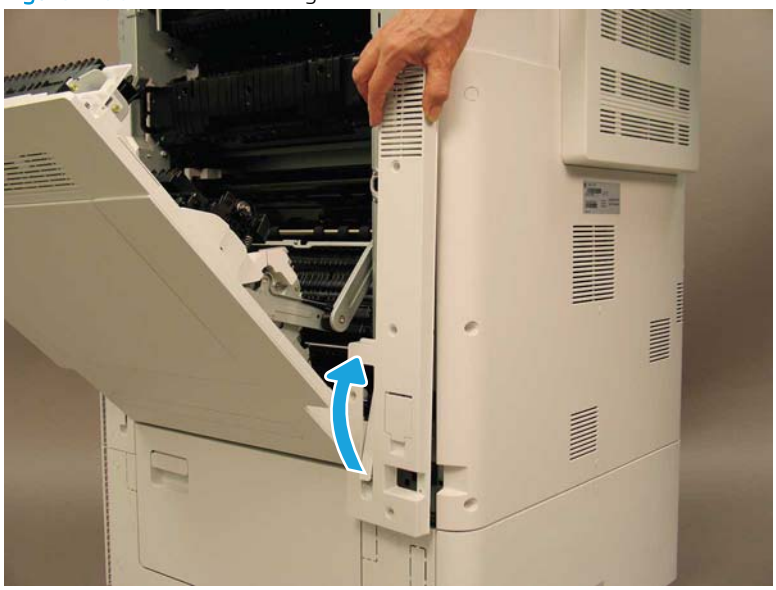
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-561 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-562 Remove the right rear cover

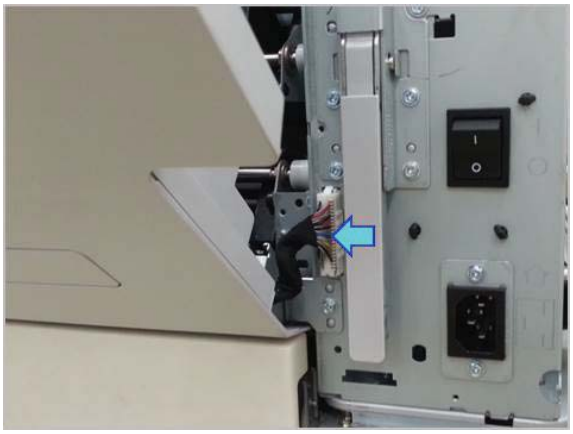


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

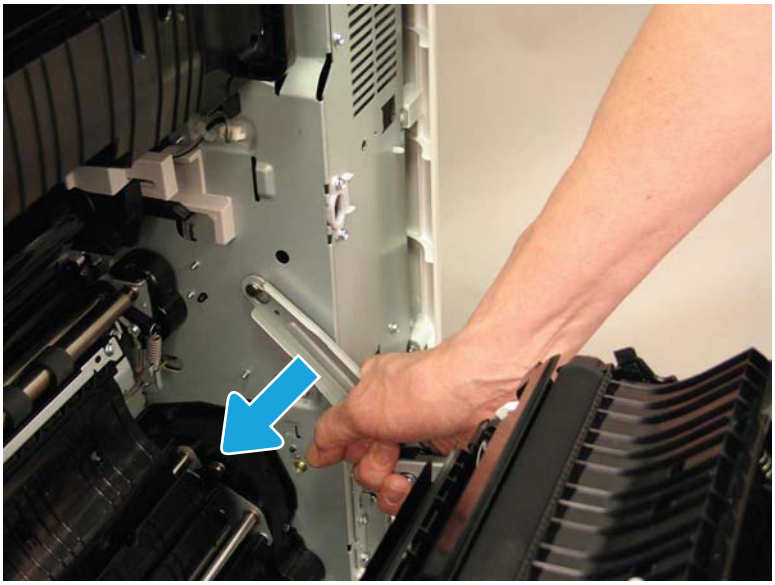
Figure 2-563 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

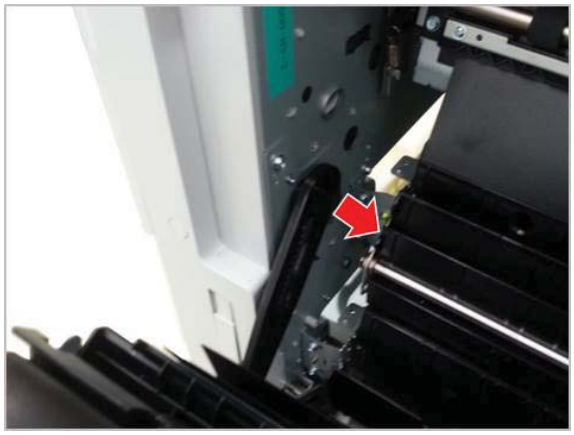
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-564 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

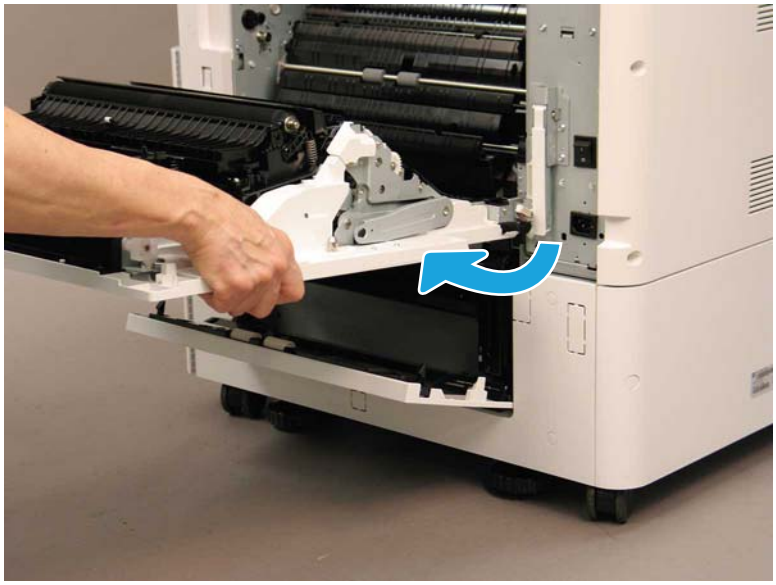
Figure 2-565 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-566 Remove the right door



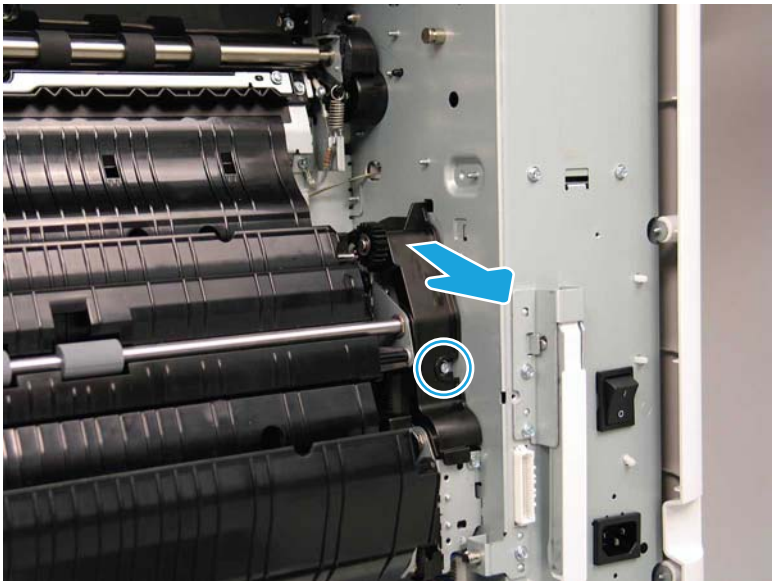
Remove pickup unit 2

Follow these steps to remove pickup unit 2.

1. Remove the paper trays.

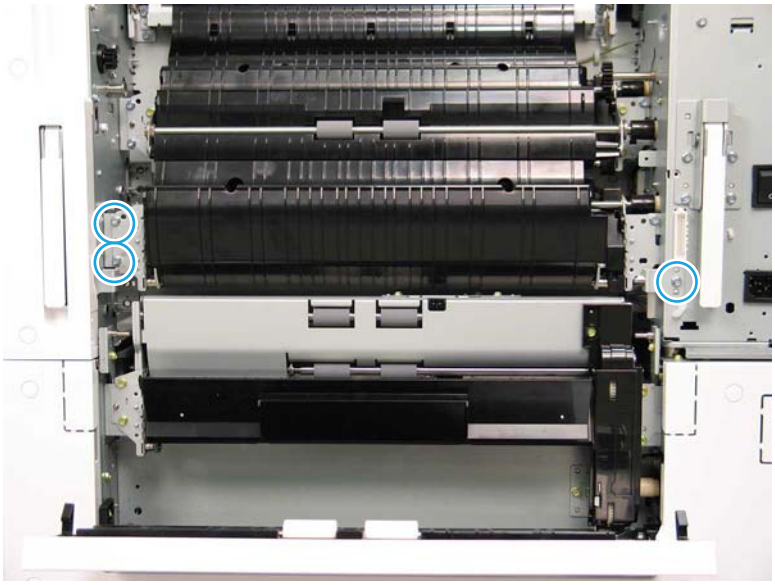
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-567 Remove one screw and the cover



3. Remove three screws.

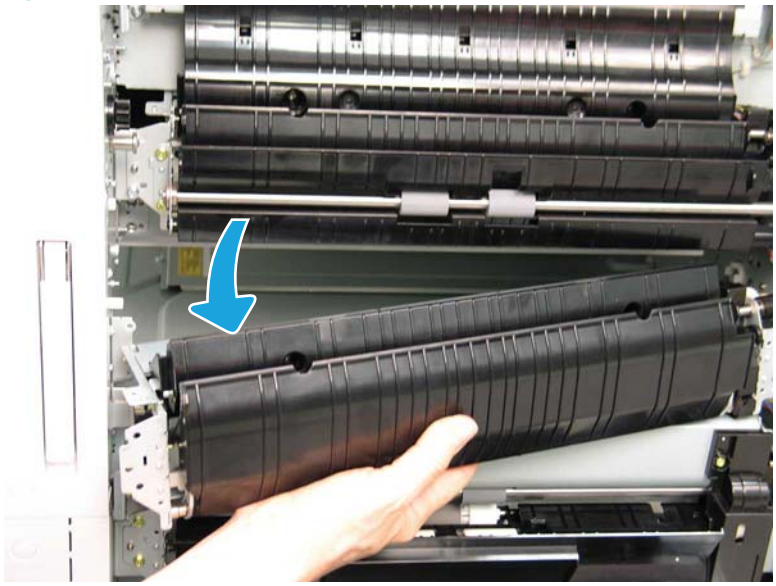
Figure 2-568 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 2 away from the printer.

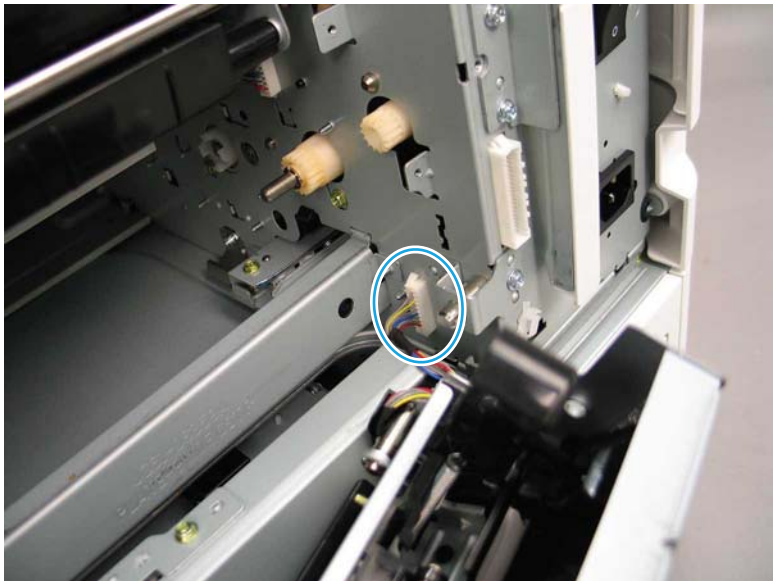
CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely.

Figure 2-569 Rotate pickup unit 2



5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 2-570 Disconnect one connector



Remove pickup unit 1

Follow these steps to remove pickup unit 1.

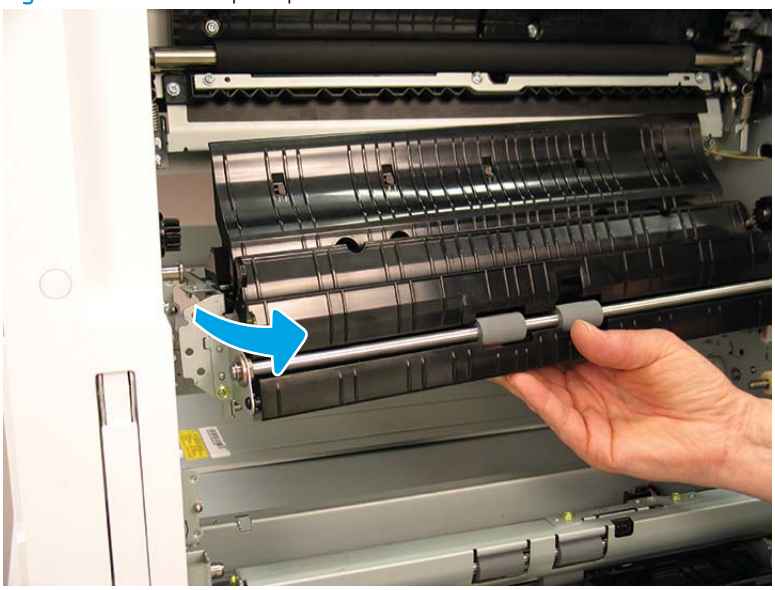
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 2-571 Remove three screws

2. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 1 away from the printer.

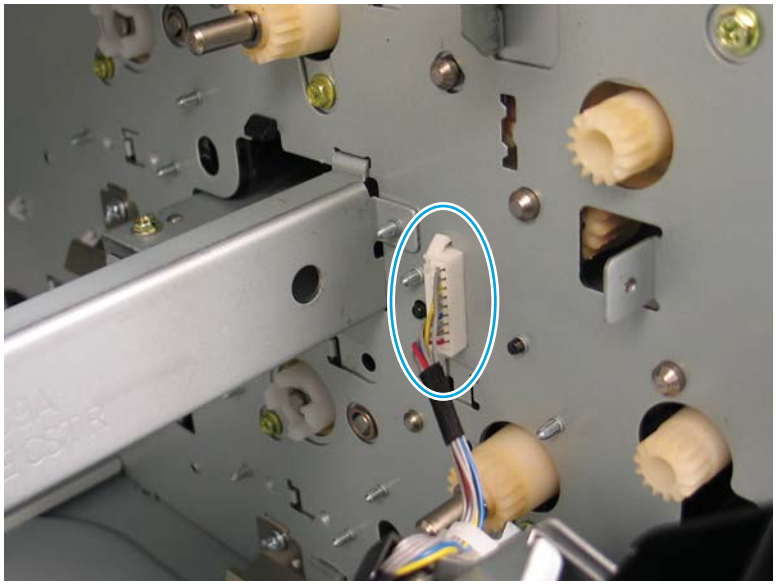
CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely.

Figure 2-572 Rotate pickup unit 1



3. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 2-573 Disconnect one connector



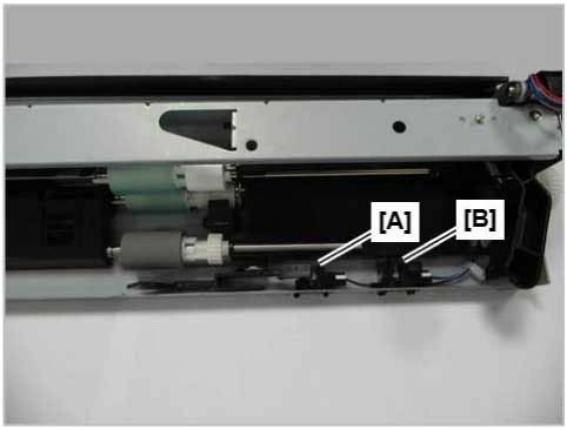
Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor

Follow these steps to remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor.

▲ Disconnect the corresponding sensor connector, and then remove the sensor.

- Empty sensor (callout A)
- Pickup lifting sensor (callout B)

Figure 2-574 Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following **special installation instructions**.

Removal and replacement: Pickup unit 2

Learn how to remove and replace pickup unit 2.

View a video of how to remove and replace pickup unit 2.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-79 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01365A	Main pick up 2nd

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

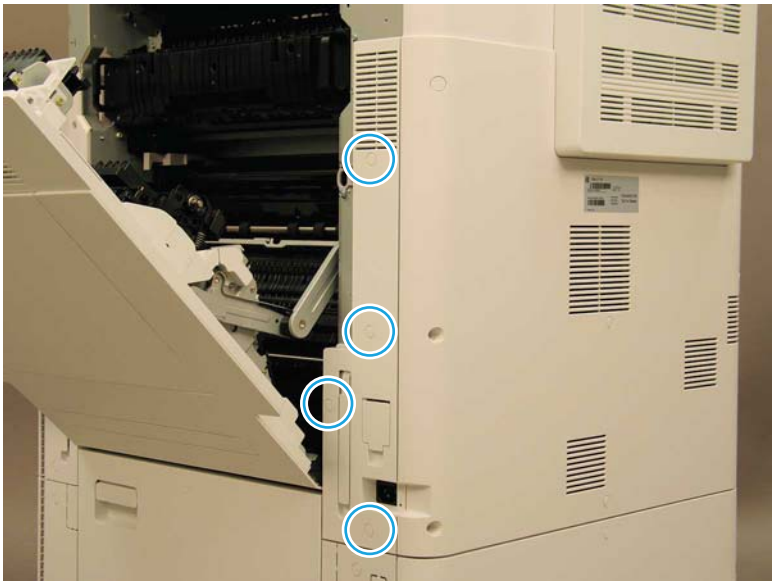
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

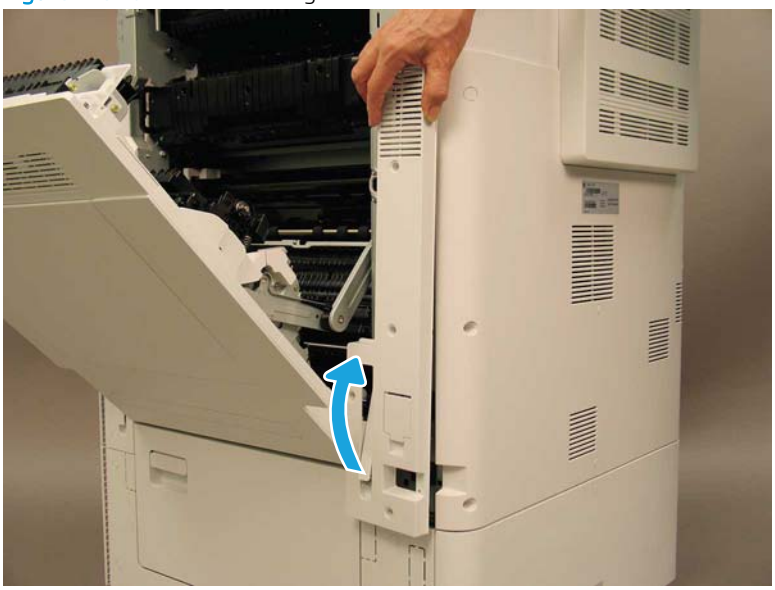
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-575 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-576 Remove the right rear cover

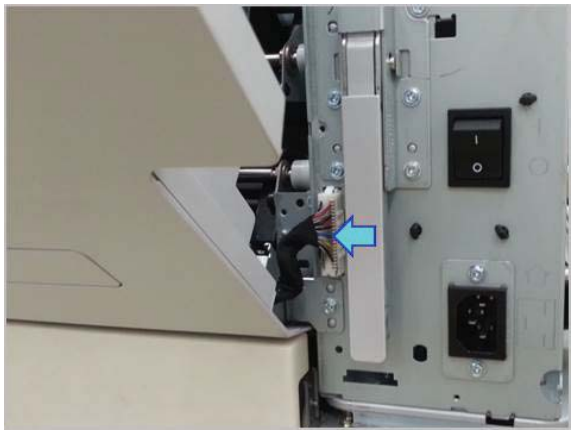


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

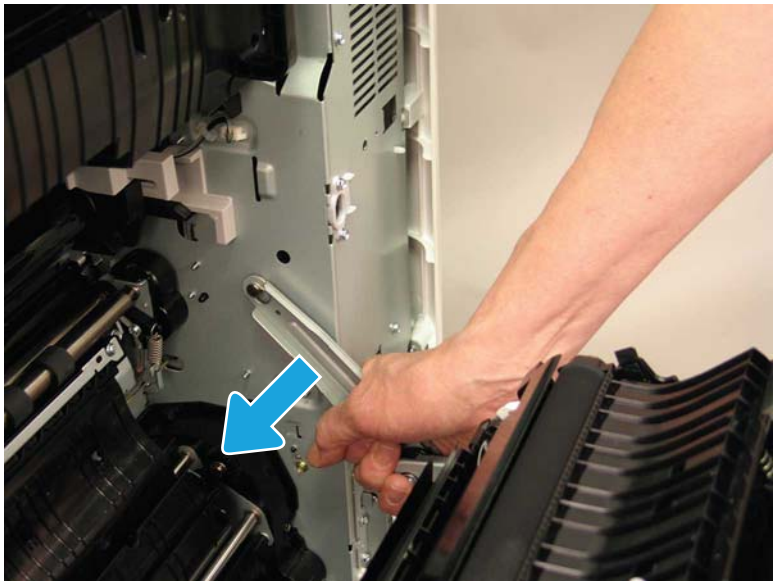
Figure 2-577 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

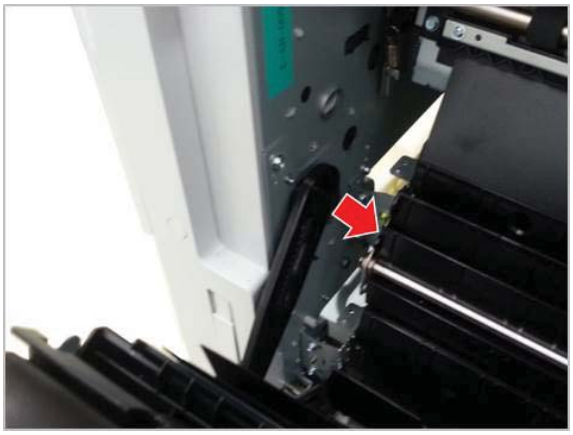
CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-578 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

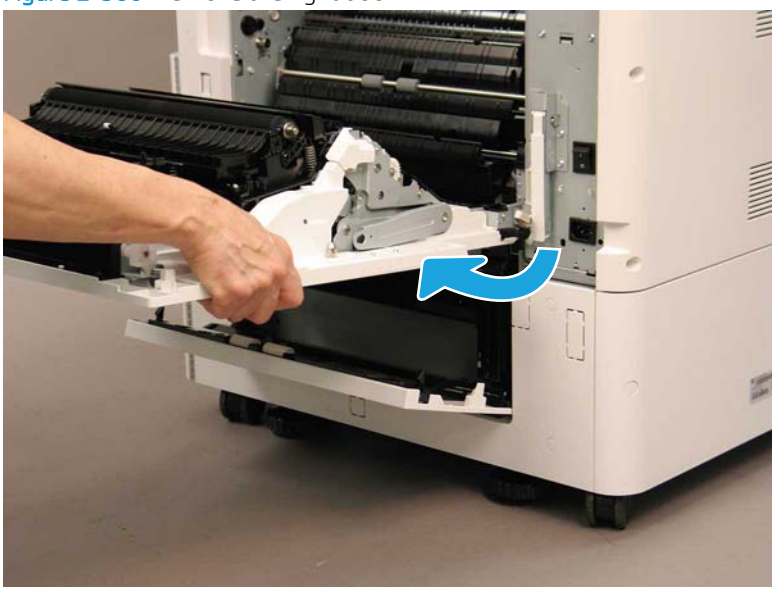
Figure 2-579 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-580 Remove the right door



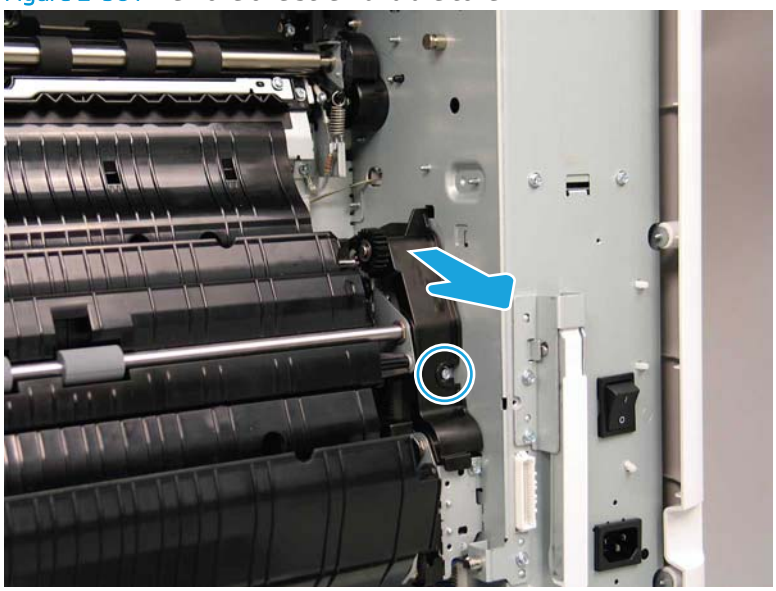
Remove pickup unit 2

Follow these steps to remove pickup unit 2.

1. Remove the paper trays.

2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-581 Remove one screw and the cover



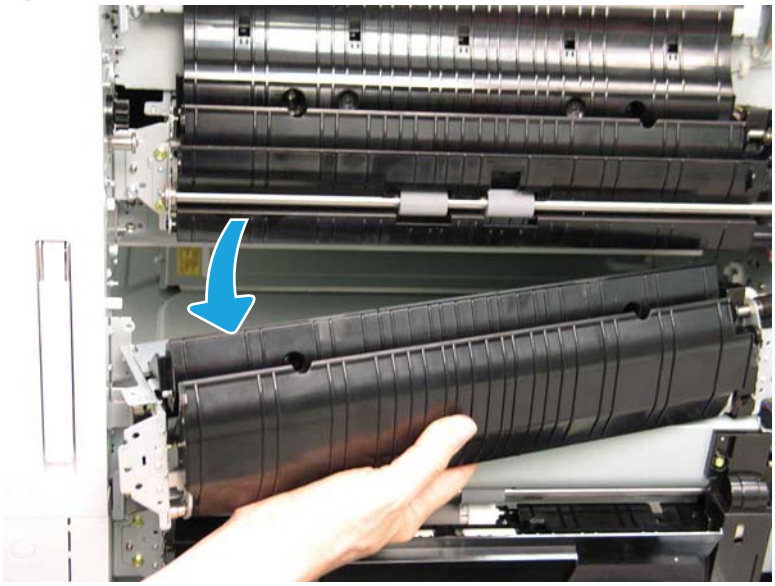
3. Remove three screws.

Figure 2-582 Remove three screws

4. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 2 away from the printer.

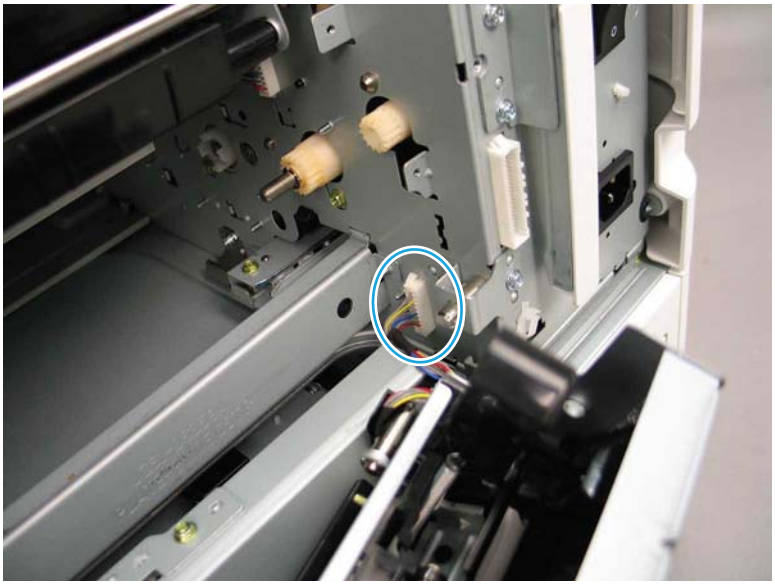
CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely.

Figure 2-583 Rotate pickup unit 2



5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 2-584 Disconnect one connector



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following **special installation instructions**.

Removal and replacement: Pickup lifting and empty sensor (pickup unit 2)

Learn how to remove and replace the pickup lifting and empty sensor for pickup unit 2.

View a video of how to remove and replace the pickup lifting and empty sensor for pickup unit 2.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-80 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	Photo Interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

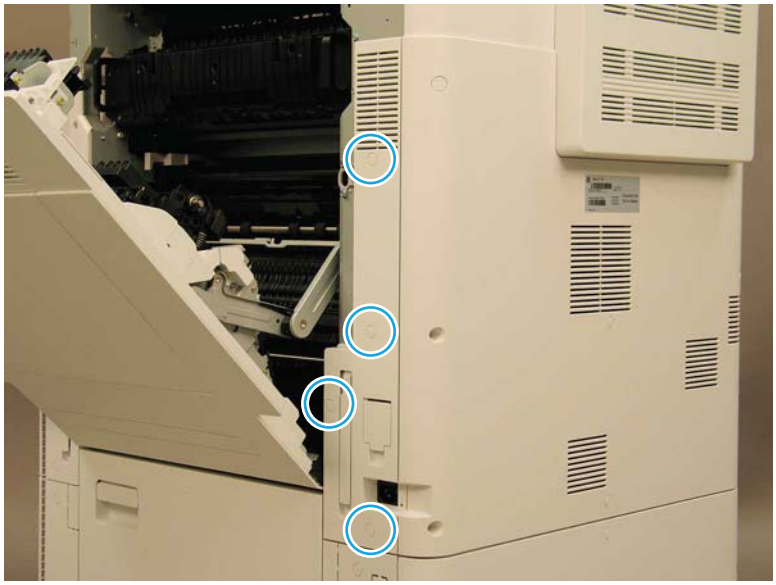
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

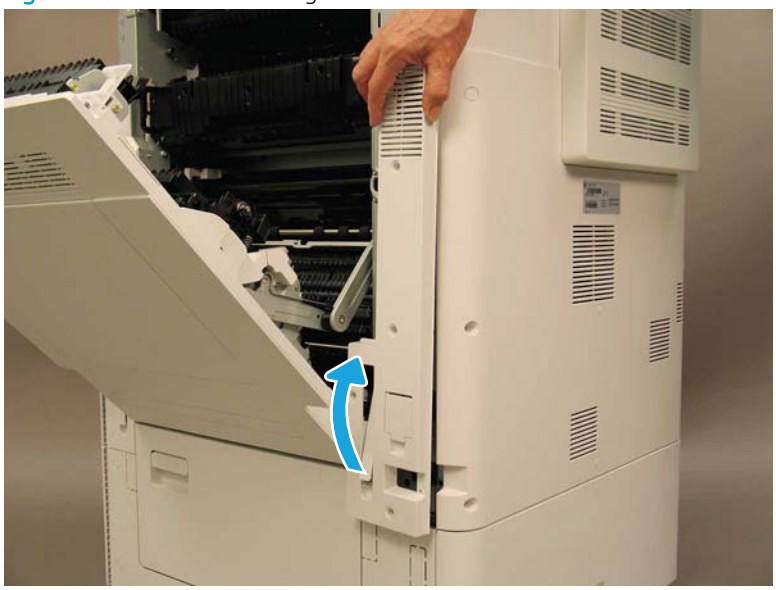
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-585 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-586 Remove the right rear cover

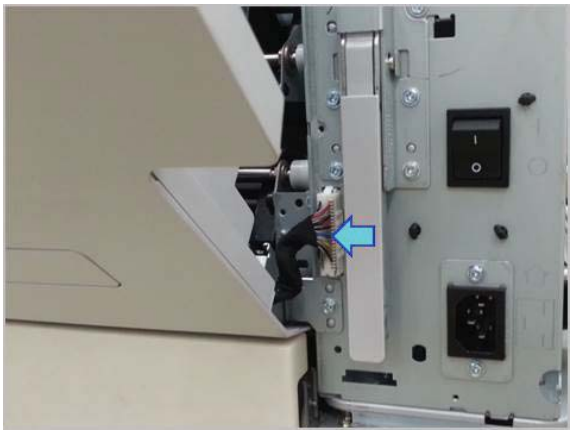


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

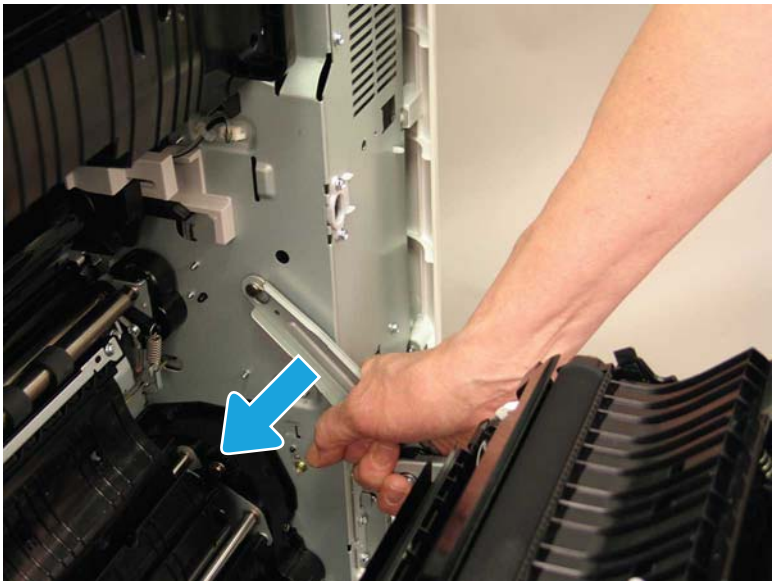
Figure 2-587 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

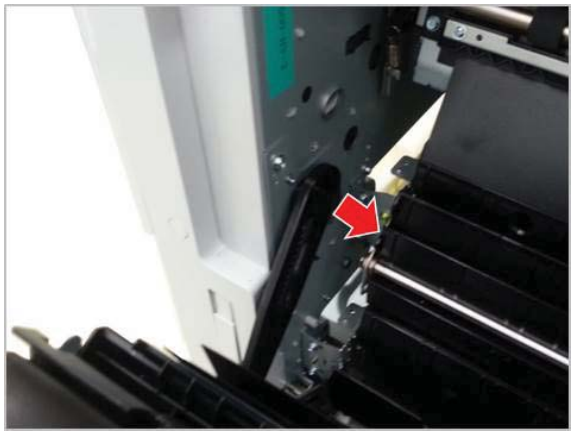
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-588 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

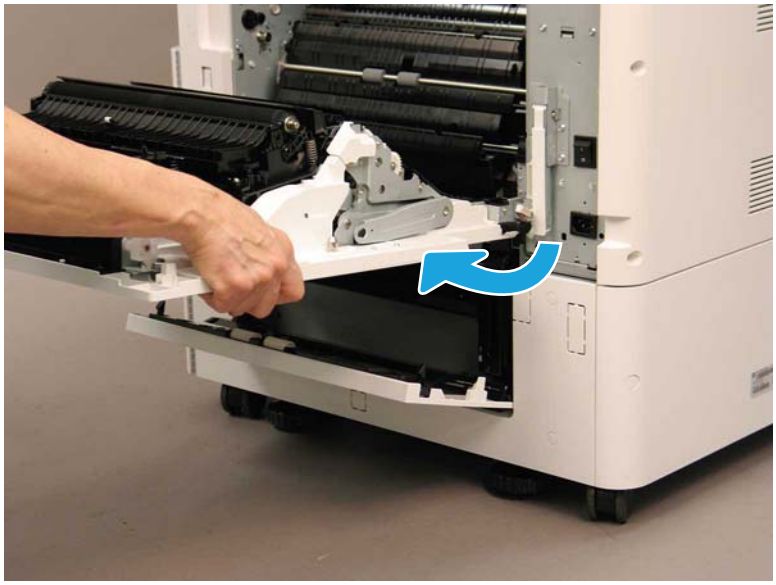
Figure 2-589 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-590 Remove the right door



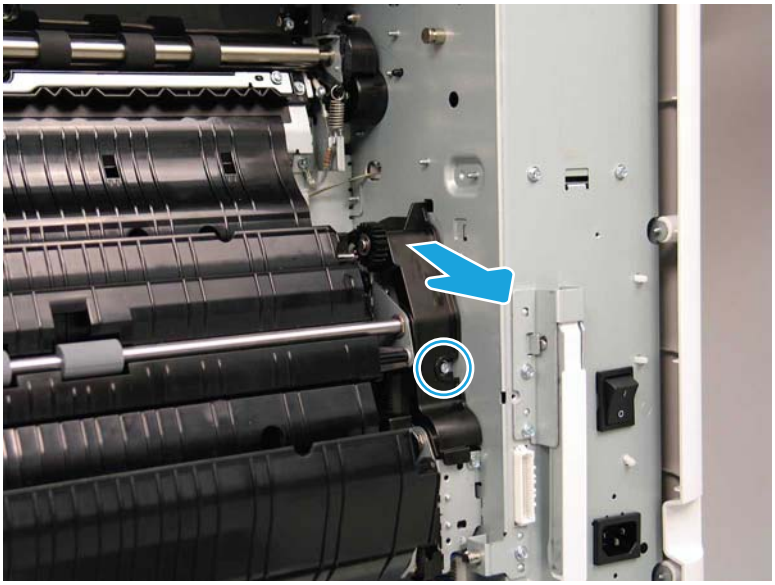
Remove pickup unit 2

Follow these steps to remove pickup unit 2.

1. Remove the paper trays.

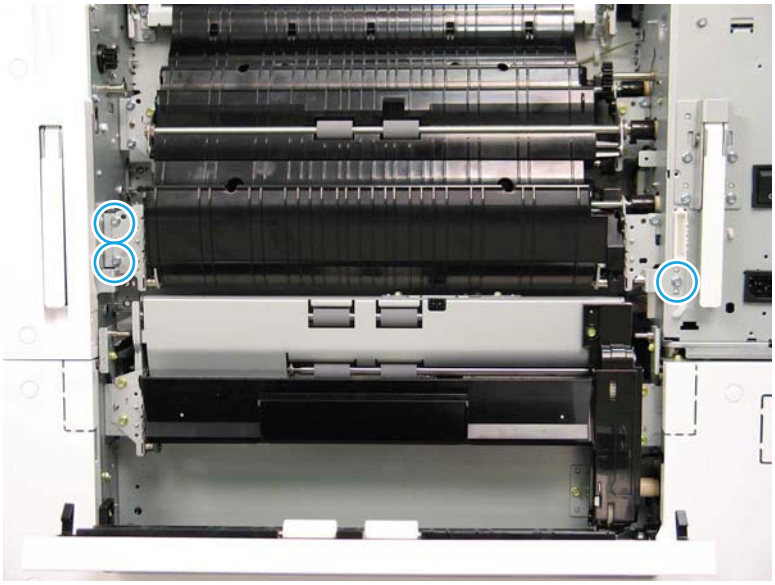
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-591 Remove one screw and the cover



3. Remove three screws.

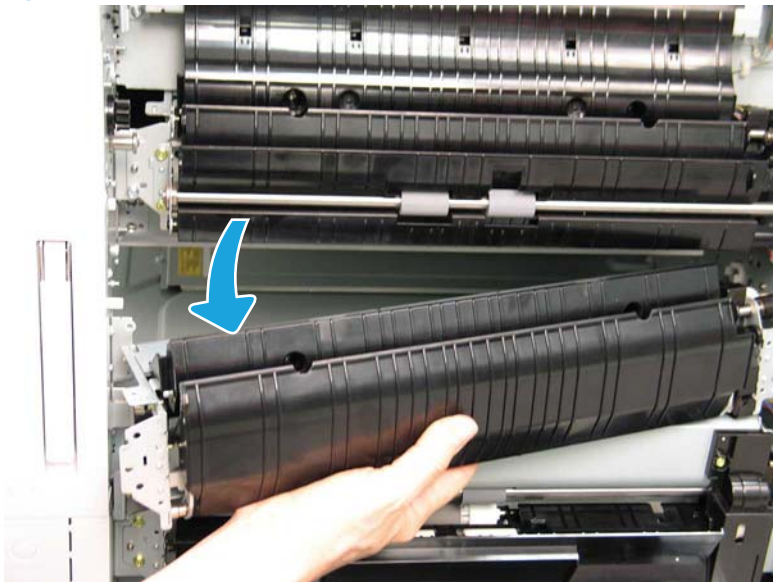
Figure 2-592 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 2 away from the printer.

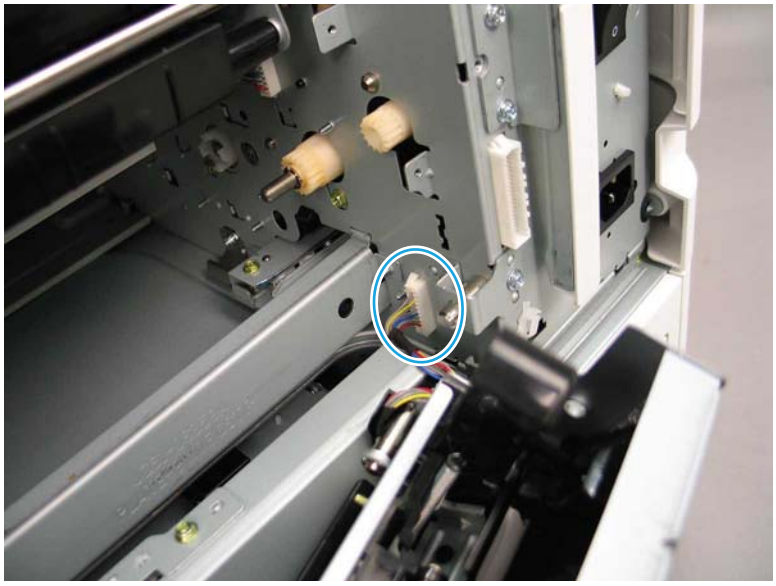
CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely.

Figure 2-593 Rotate pickup unit 2



5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 2-594 Disconnect one connector



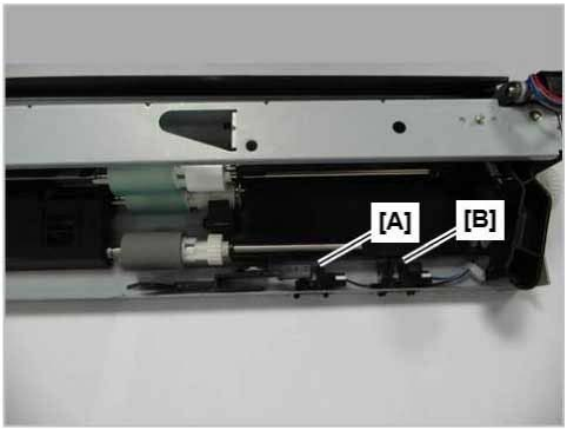
Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor

Follow these steps to remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor.

▲ Disconnect the corresponding sensor connector, and then remove the sensor.

- Empty sensor (callout A)
- Pickup lifting sensor (callout B)

Figure 2-595 Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following **special installation instructions**.

Main (sub) frame pickup

View the main (sub) frame pickup exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Main frame pickup

Parts diagram and parts list for the main frame pickup

Figure 2-596 Frame main pickup

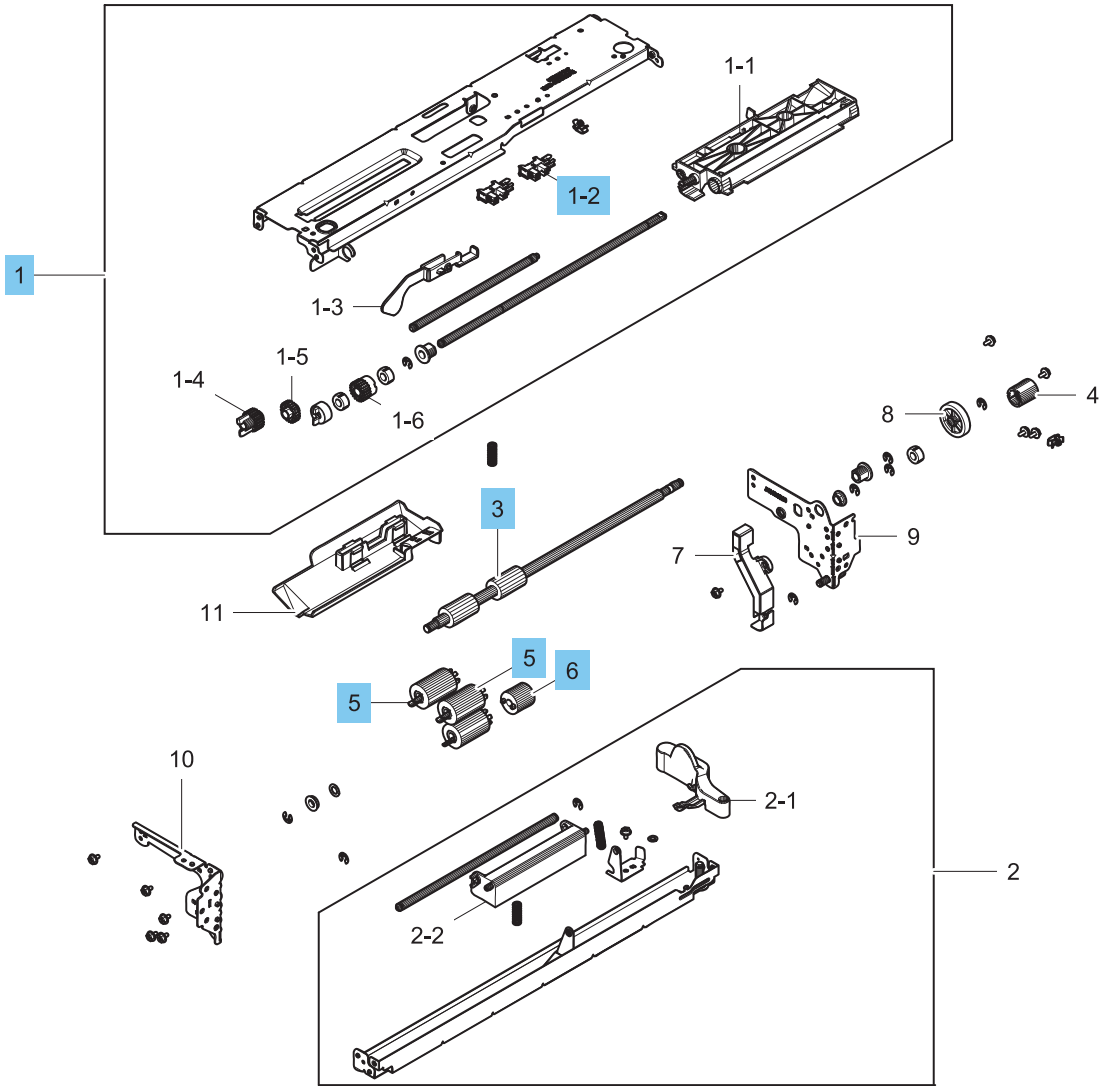


Table 2-81 Frame main pickup

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1	JC93-01421A	Sub Pick Up Upper	1	Not applicable
1-2	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	2	Not applicable
3	JC66-04625A	Feed roller, first exit	1	Not applicable
5	JC93-01092A	HP LaserJet Trays 2-x rollers	3	Removal and replacement: Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers on page 601
6	JC67-00455A	Coupler, torque limiter	1	Not applicable

Removal and replacement: Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers

Learn how to remove and replace the Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers.

View a video of how to remove and replace the Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-82 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01092A	Tray 2,3 main pick, feed, sep rollers

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

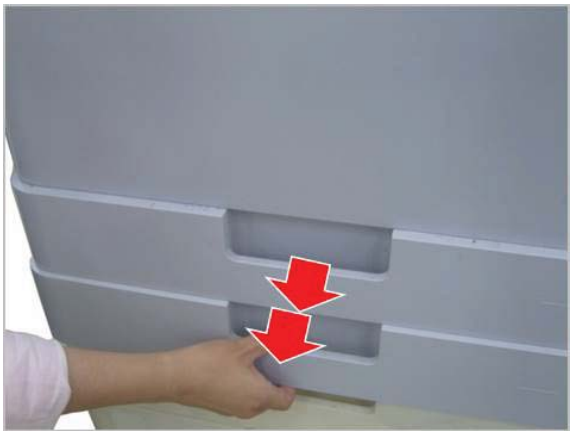
Remove the Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers

Follow these steps to remove the Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers.

NOTE: HP recommends replacing all three rollers at the same time.

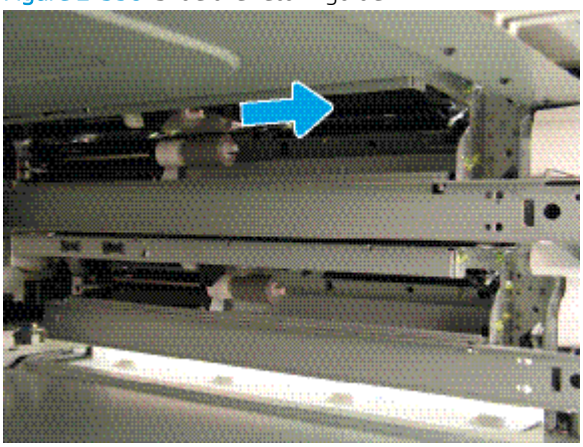
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove the two cassettes.

Figure 2-597 Remove the two cassettes



3. Inside the tray opening, slide the return guide toward the front of the printer until it stops.

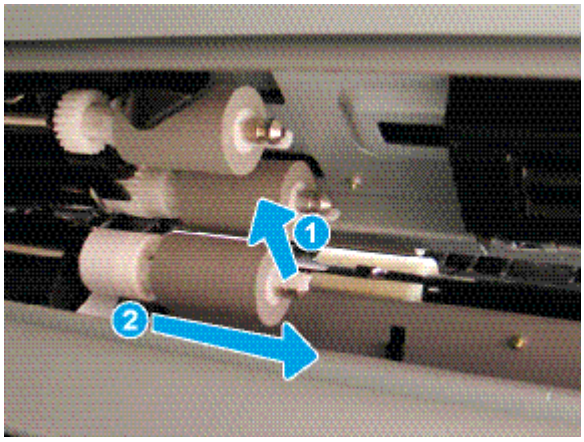
Figure 2-598 Slide the return guide



Reinstallation tip: After installing the new rollers, slide the return guide toward the rear of the printer to prevent paper jams.

4. Release the latch at the end of the rollers (callout 1) by pulling the latch tab away from the shaft, and then slide the pick, feed, and separation rollers off of the shaft (callout 2) to remove them.

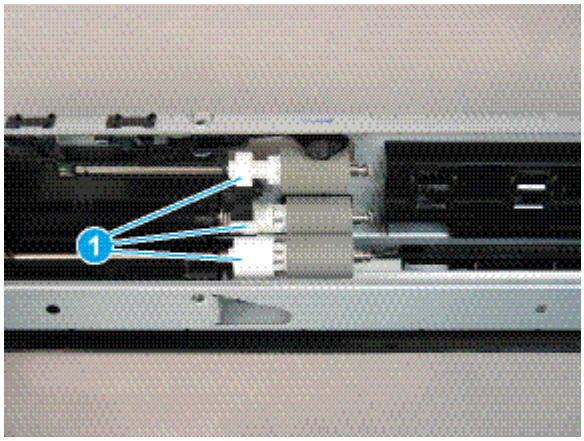
Figure 2-599 Remove rollers



5. When removing the rollers, make sure to leave the white couplers (callout 1) in place. If the couplers become dislodged, reinstall them as shown in the figure below.

NOTE: The figure shows the pickup assembly removed from the printer to more clearly show the positions of the couplers and rollers.

Figure 2-600 Coupler locations



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following**special installation instructions**.

Covers

View covers exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Covers

Parts diagram and parts list for the covers.

Figure 2-601 Covers

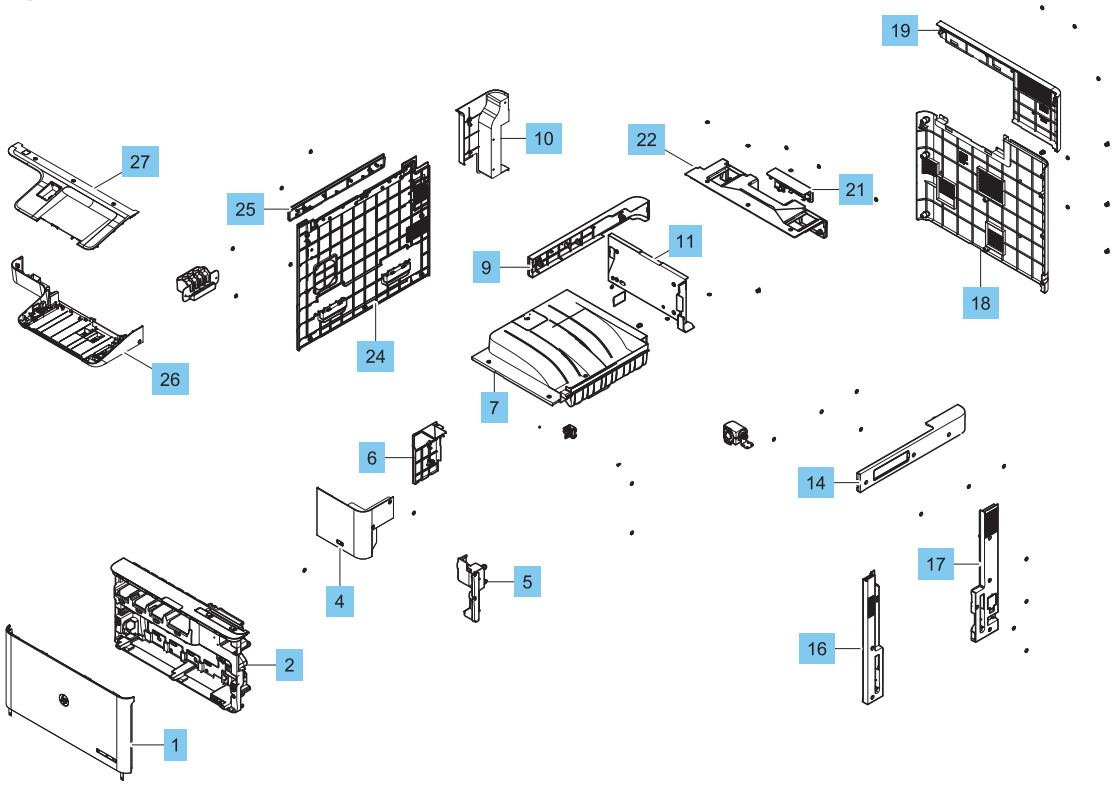


Table 2-83 Covers

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair Procedure
1	JC95-02109A	Front cover	1	Removal and replacement: Front cover on page 607
2	JC95-02110A	Inner cover front	1	Removal and replacement: Front inner cover on page 609
4	JC63-02105A	Right middle cover	1	Removal and replacement: Front power cover on page 615
5	JC63-04861B	Front cover, lower	1	Not applicable
6	JC63-05635A	Middle left cover	1	Removal and replacement: Front top inner cover on page 618
7	JC95-02101A	Cover, exit	1	Removal and replacement: Exit cover on page 620
9	JC63-05587A	Scan left cover	1	Not applicable
10	JC63-05638A	Left cover, upper	1	Removal and replacement: Upper left cover on page 623
11	JC63-04840B	Cover, exit rear	1	Not applicable
14	JC63-05571A	Scan right cover	1	Not applicable
16	JC63-04847C	Right cover, front	1	Not applicable
17	JC95-02102A	Right cover, rear	1	Removal and replacement: Right rear cover on page 626
18	JC95-02117A	Cover, lower rear	1	Removal and replacement: Lower rear cover on page 629
19	JC63-05633A	Rear cover, upper	1	Removal and replacement: Upper rear cover on page 632
21	JC63-04863B	Rear cover, dummy	1	Not applicable
22	JC63-04859C	Rear scan cover	1	Not applicable
22	JC63-04859D	Rear scan cover (du model)	1	Not applicable
24	JC95-02100A	Left cover	1	Removal and replacement: Left cover on page 635
25	JC63-04862B	Left cover, top	1	Not applicable
26	JC63-05639A	Cover, control panel bottom	1	Not applicable
27	JC63-05640A	Cover, control panel top	1	Not applicable
Not shown	JC63-04916B	Cover, upper right door	1	Removal and replacement: Upper right door cover on page 638
Not shown	JC61-04626A	Strap, front cover		Not applicable
Not shown	JC41-00964A	PCA, sub USB Host		Not applicable
Not shown	JC92-02969A	PCA, front power switch		Not applicable

Removal and replacement: Front cover

Learn how to remove and replace the front cover.

View a video of how to remove and replace the front cover.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-84 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC95-02109A	Cover, front

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

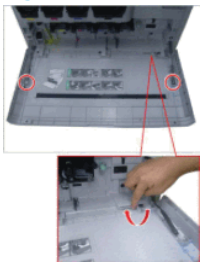
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

▲ Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

Figure 2-602 Remove the front cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front inner cover

Learn how to remove and replace the inner front cover.

View a video of how to remove and replace the inner front cover.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Advanced

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-85 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC95-02110A	Cover, inner front

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the toner collection unit

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit.

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 2-603 Remove the TCU

Remove the paper dust brush

Follow these steps to remove the paper dust brush.

▲ Remove the paper dust brush.

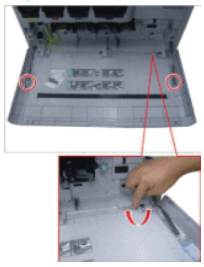
Figure 2-604 Remove the paper dust brush

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

- Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

Figure 2-605 Remove the front cover

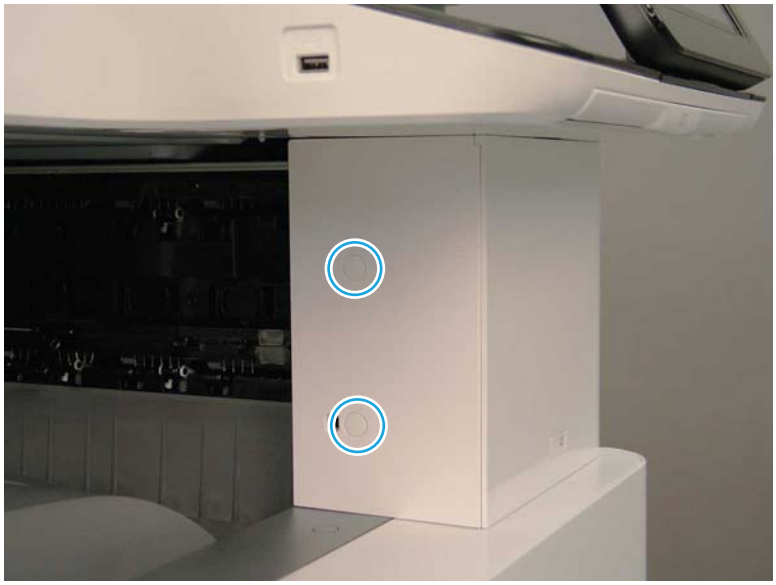


Remove the front top inner cover

Follow these steps to remove the front top inner cover.

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-606 Remove the front top inner cover



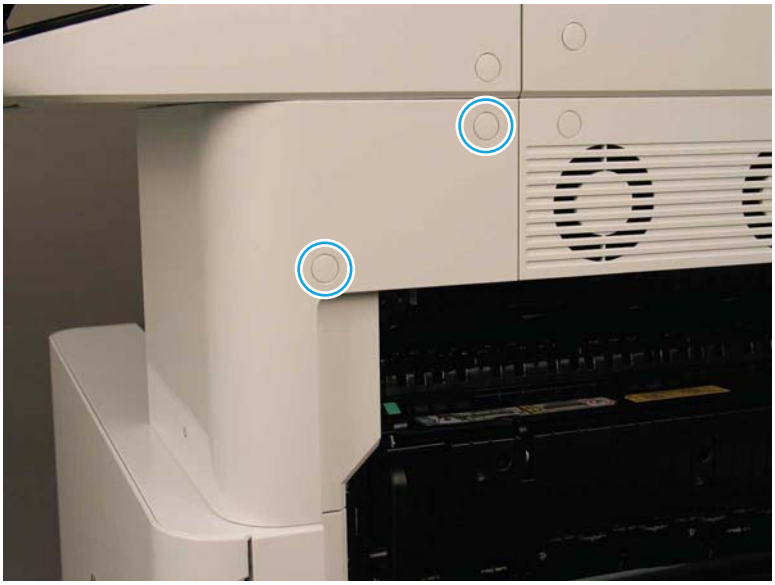
Remove the front power cover

Follow these steps to remove the front power cover.

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

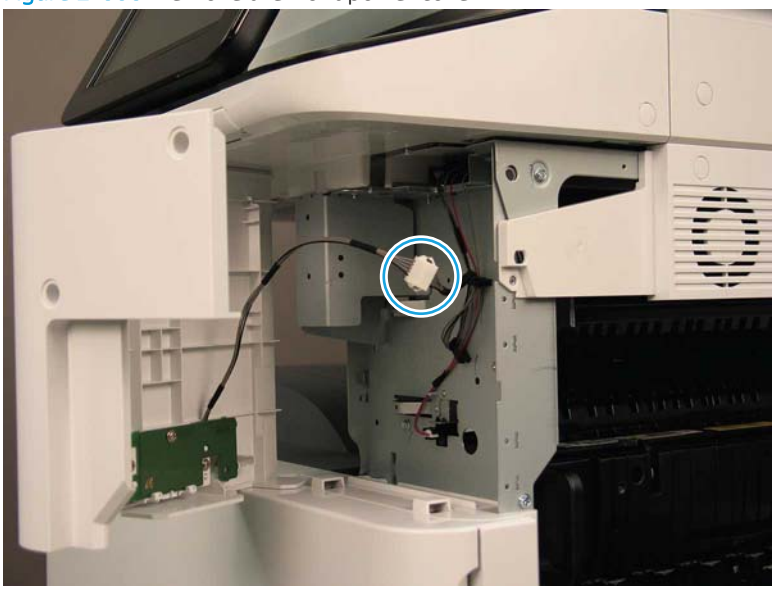
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 2-607 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-608 Remove the front power cover



Remove the exit cover

Follow these steps to remove the exit cover.

- ▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the exit cover away from the printer to remove it.

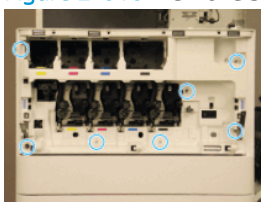
Figure 2-609 Remove the exit cover

Remove the inner front cover

Follow these steps to remove the inner front cover.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove the all of the toner cartridges.
3. Remove seven screws.

Figure 2-610 Remove seven screws



4. Lift the inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-611 Remove the inner cover

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front power cover

Learn how to remove and replace the front power cover.

View a video of how to remove and replace the front cover.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-86 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC63-02105A	Cover, middle right

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the front top inner cover

Follow these steps to remove the front top inner cover.

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-612 Remove the front top inner cover

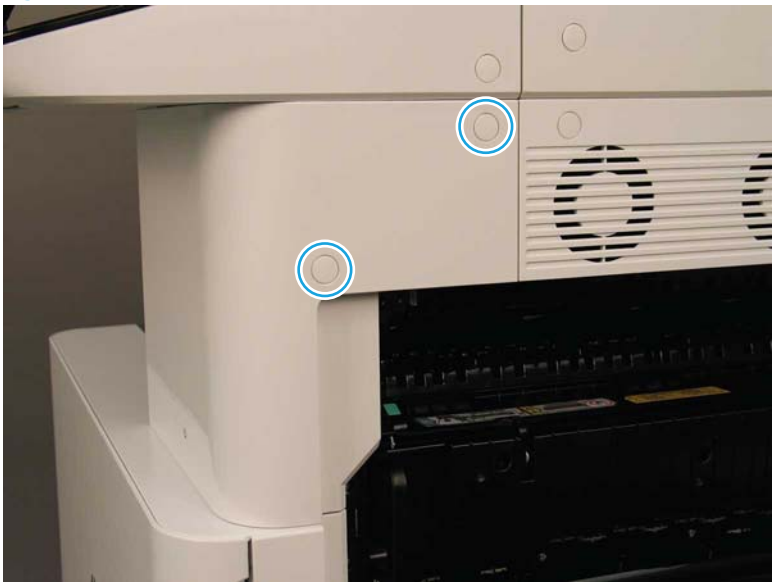
Remove the front power cover

Follow these steps to remove the front power cover.

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

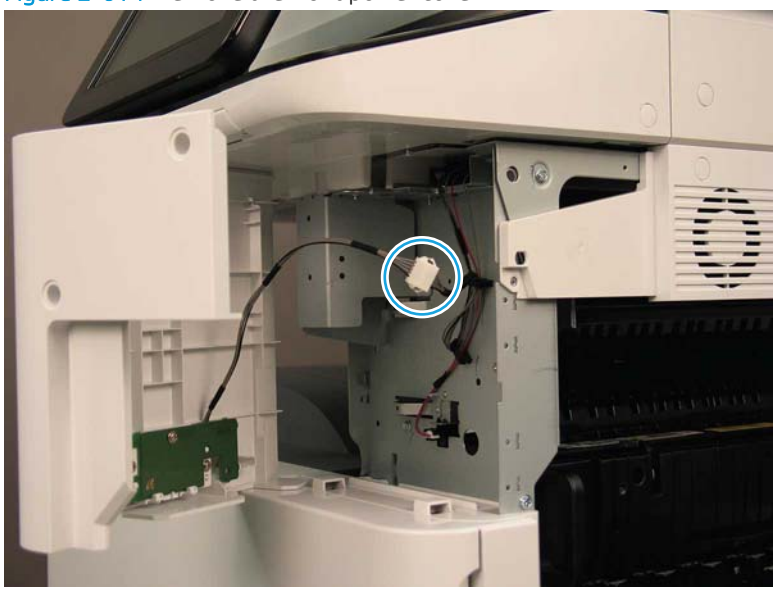
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 2-613 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-614 Remove the front power cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front top inner cover

Learn how to remove and replace the front top inner cover.

View a video of how to remove and replace the front top inner cover.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-87 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC63-05635A	Cover, middle left

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

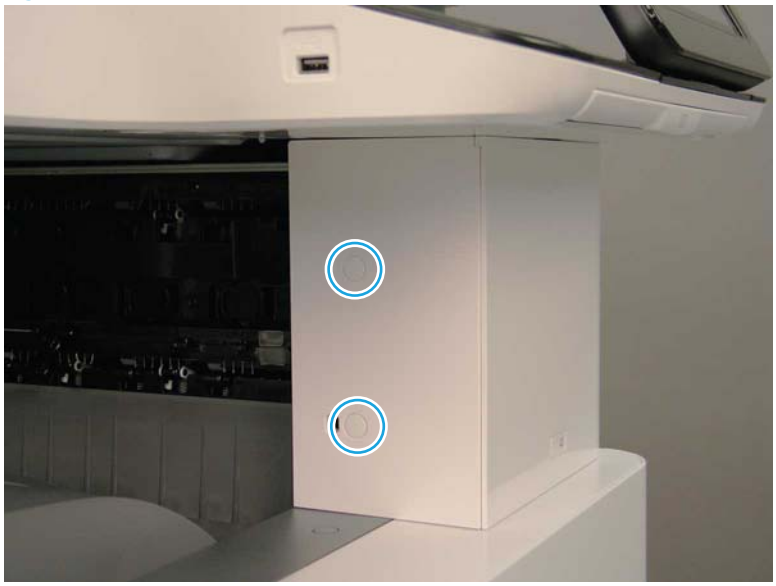
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the front top inner cover

Follow these steps to remove the front top inner cover.

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-615 Remove the front top inner cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit cover

Learn how to remove and replace the exit cover.

View a video of how to remove and replace the exit cover.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-88 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC95-02101A	Cover, exit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

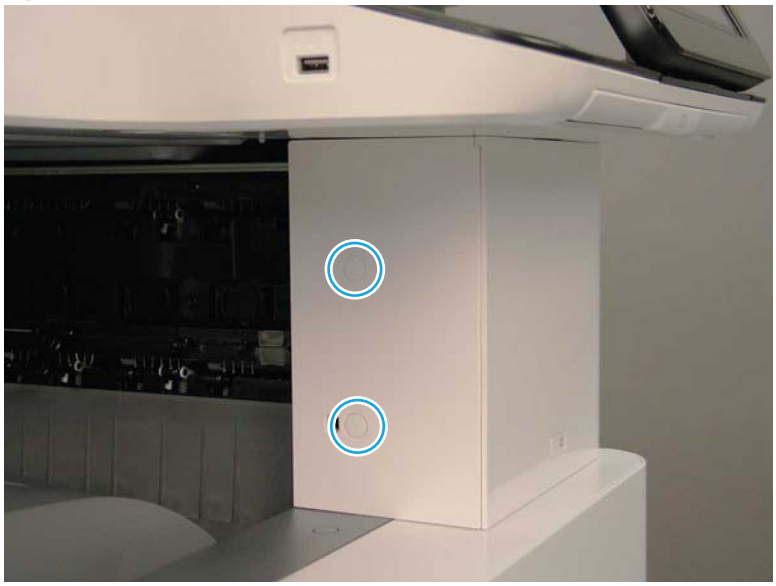
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the front top inner cover

Follow these steps to remove the front top inner cover.

- ▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-616 Remove the front top inner cover



Remove the exit cover

Follow these steps to remove the exit cover.

- ▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the exit cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-617 Remove the exit cover

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Upper left cover

Learn how to remove and replace the left rear corner cover.

View a video of how to remove and replace the left rear corner cover.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-89 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC63-05638A	Cover, upper left

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

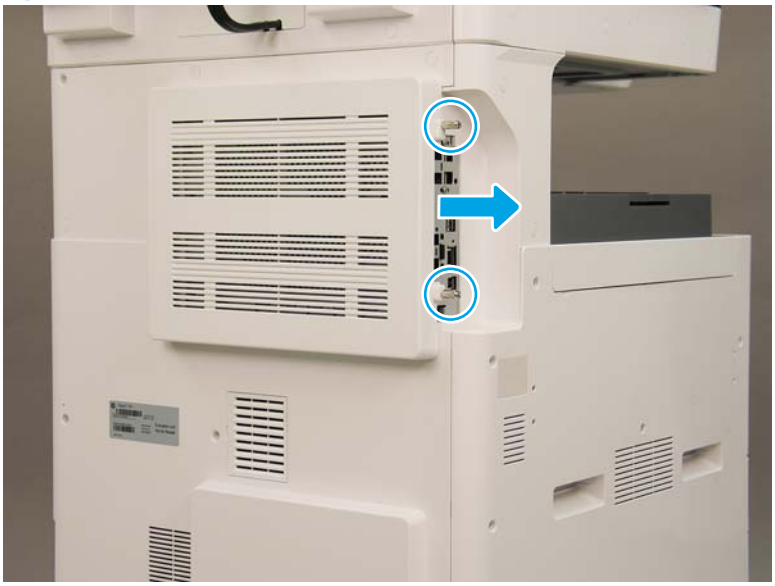
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-618 Remove the formatter cover

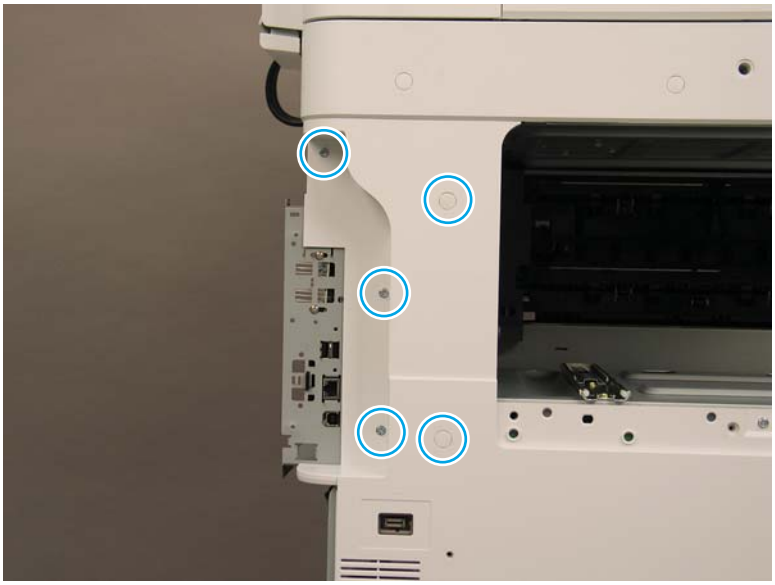


Remove the left rear corner cover

Follow these steps to remove the left rear corner cover.

- Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-619 Remove the left rear corner cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right rear cover

Learn how to remove and replace the right rear cover.

View a video of how to remove and replace the right rear cover.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-90 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC95-02102A	Cover, right rear

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

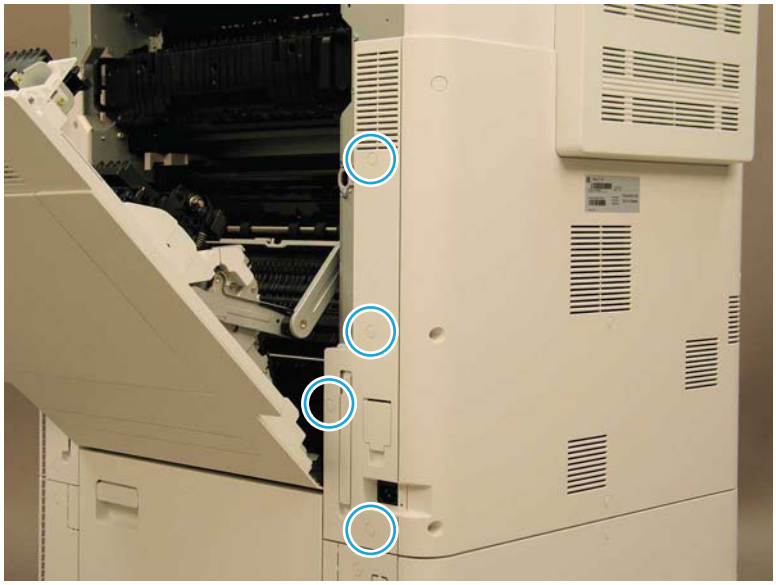
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

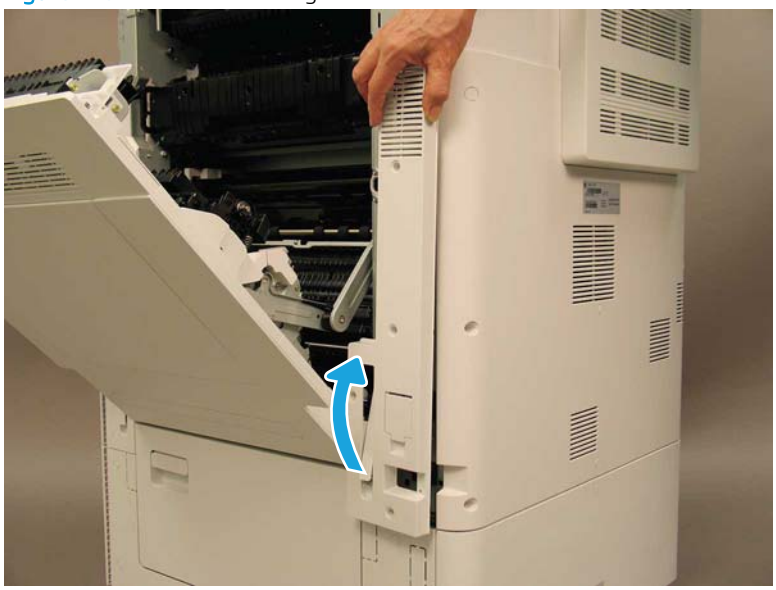
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-620 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-621 Remove the right rear cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Lower rear cover

Learn how to remove and replace the lower rear cover.

View a video of how to remove and replace the lower rear cover.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-91 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC95-02117A	Cover, lower rear

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

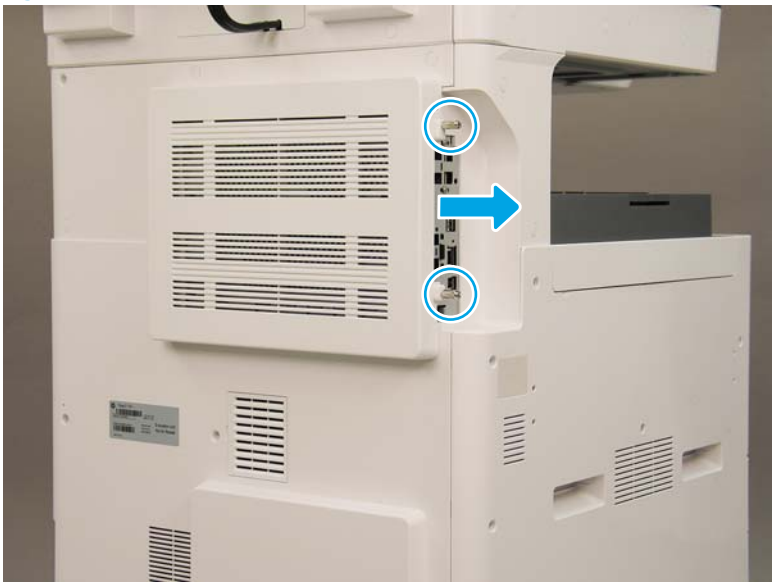
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-622 Remove the formatter cover

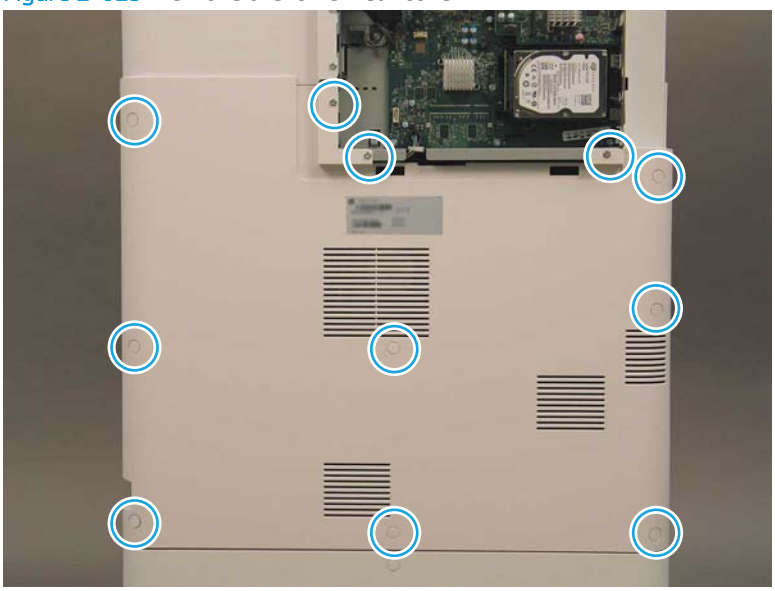


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-623 Remove the lower rear cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Upper rear cover

Learn how to remove and replace the upper rear cover.

View a video of how to remove and replace the upper rear cover.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-92 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC63-05633A	Cover, rear upper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

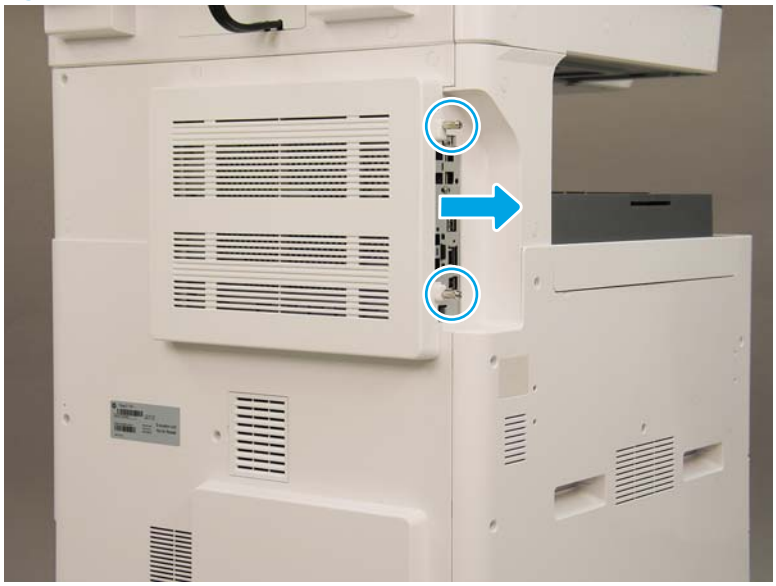
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-624 Remove the formatter cover

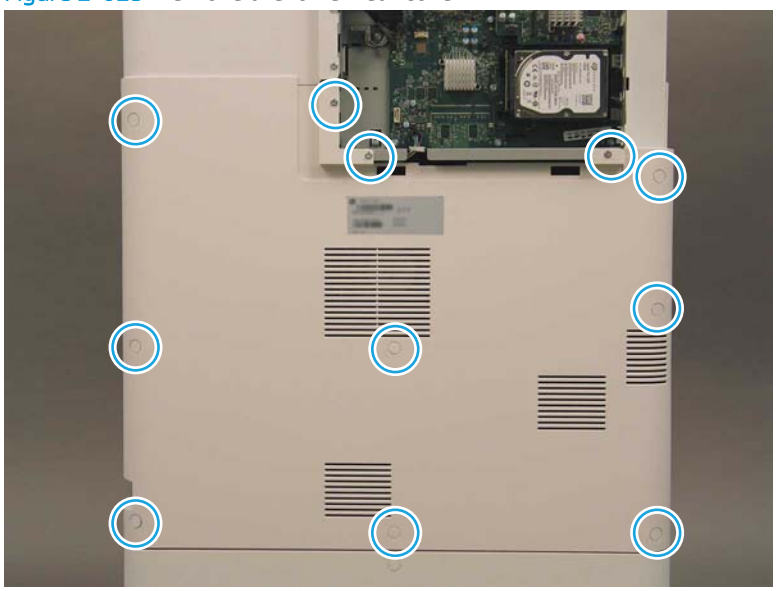


Remove the lower rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the lower rear cover.

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 2-625 Remove the lower rear cover

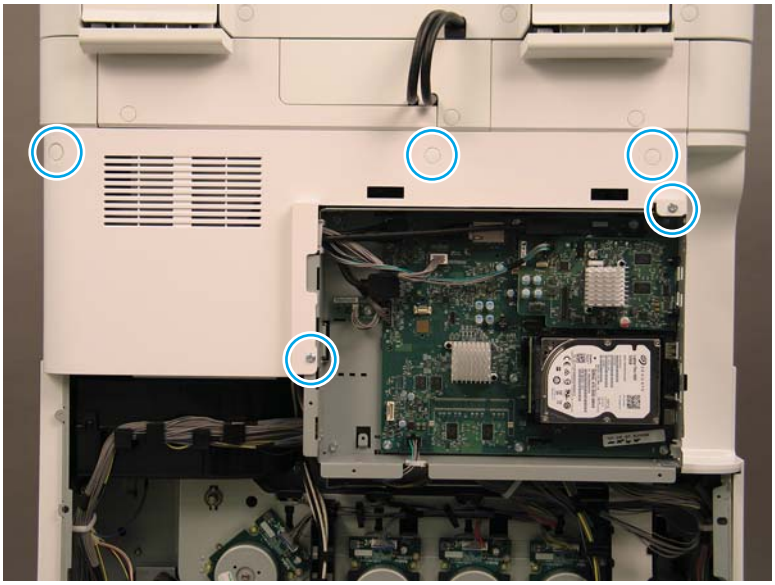


Remove the upper rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the upper rear cover.

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-626 Remove the upper rear cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left cover

Learn how to remove and replace the left cover.

View a video of how to remove and replace the left cover.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-93 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC95-02100A	Cover, left

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the left cover

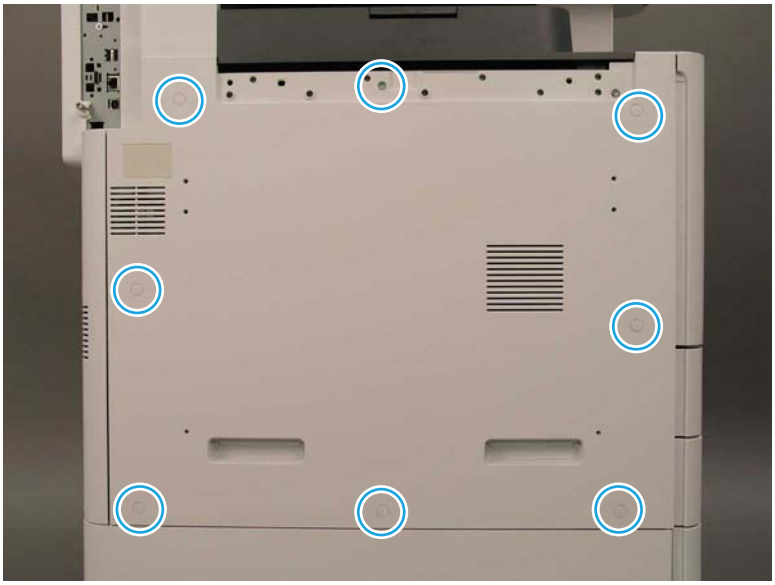
Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

1. Remove the top left cover.

Figure 2-627 Top left cover

2. Remove seven screw-caps and eight screws, and lift the left cover off of the printer.

Figure 2-628 Remove the left cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Upper right door cover

Learn how to remove and replace the top right cover.

View a video of how to remove and replace the top right cover.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-94 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC63-04916B	Cover, right upper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

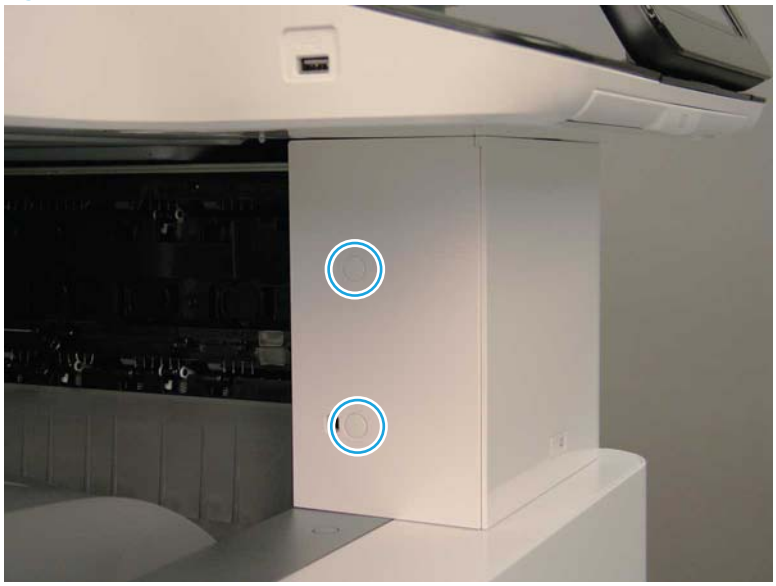
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the front top inner cover

Follow these steps to remove the front top inner cover.

- ▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-629 Remove the front top inner cover

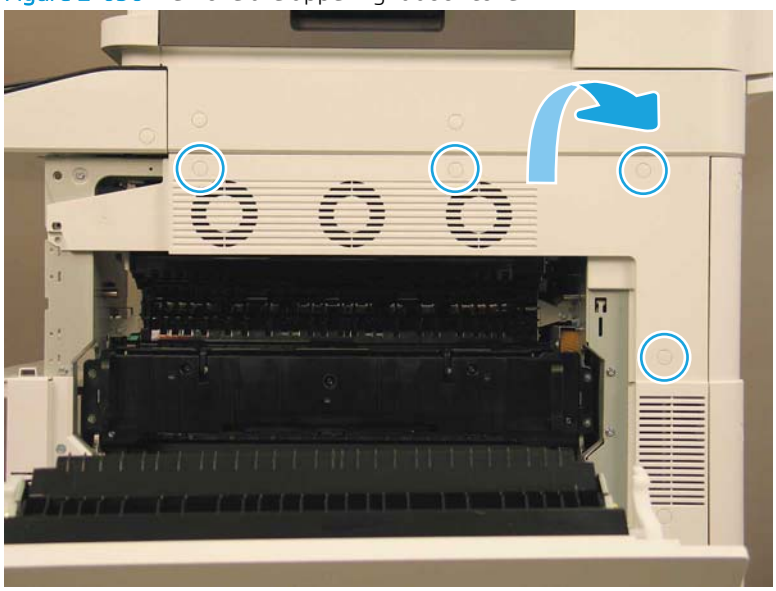


Remove the upper right door cover

Follow these steps to Remove the upper right door cover.

- ▲ Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then rotate the upper right door cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-630 Remove the upper right door cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Right door

View the right door exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Right door

Parts diagram and parts list for the right door

Figure 2-631 Right door

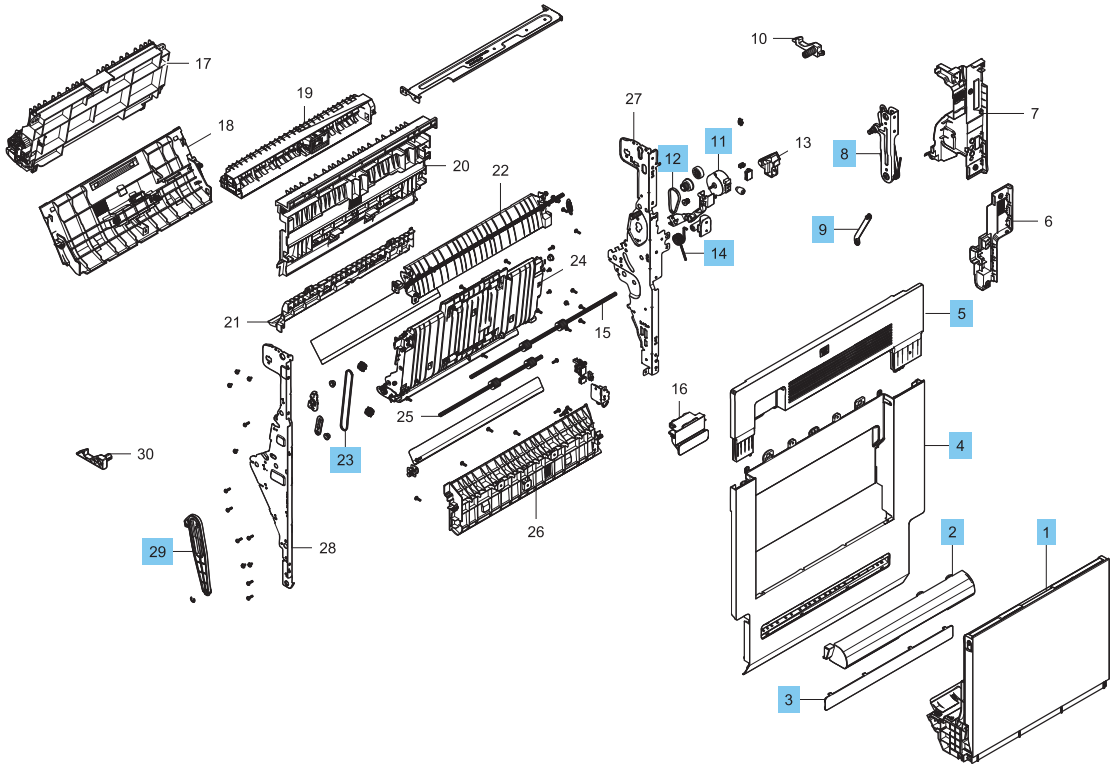


Table 2-95 Right door

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1	JC90-01352B	Tray 1 door	1	Removal and replacement: Tray 1 unit (on the right door) on page 643
2	JC63-04910B	Cover, right door front	1	Not applicable
3	JC63-04918B	Cover, dummy LCT	1	Not applicable
4	JC63-04920B	Cover, right	1	Not applicable
5	JC63-04916B	Cover, upper right door	1	Not applicable
8	JC95-01970A	Right door, link	1	Not applicable
9	JC66-04400A	Right door, side hinge	1	Not applicable
11	JC93-01085A	Motor - step	1	Not applicable
12	6602-001730	Timing belt, gear	1	Not applicable
14	JC61-07372A	Spring, ts	1	Not applicable
23	6602-003183	Timing belt	1	Not applicable
29	JC66-04398A	Right door damper	1	Not applicable
Not shown	0604-001393	Tray 1 empty sensor	1	Removal and replacement: Tray 1 empty sensor on page 653
Not shown	0604-001393	Tray 1 paper length sensor	1	Removal and replacement: Tray 1 paper length sensor on page 663
Not shown	0604-001393	Fuser out sensor	1	Removal and replacement: Fuser out sensor (on the right door) on page 673
Not shown	0604-001490	Feed 2 sensor	1	Removal and replacement: Feed 2 sensor (on the right door) on page 679

Removal and replacement: Tray 1 unit (on the right door)

Learn how to remove and replace the Tray 1 unit on the right door.

View a video of how to remove and replace the Tray 1 unit on the right door.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-96 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01352B	Tray 1, door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

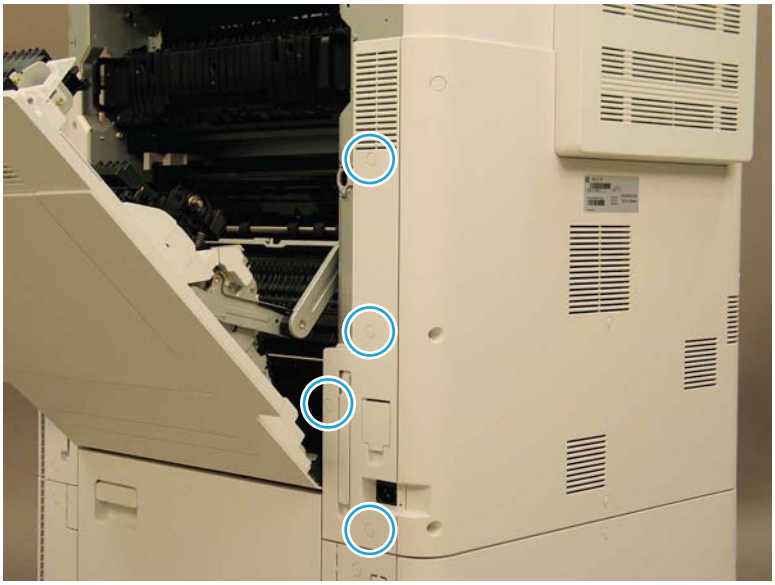
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

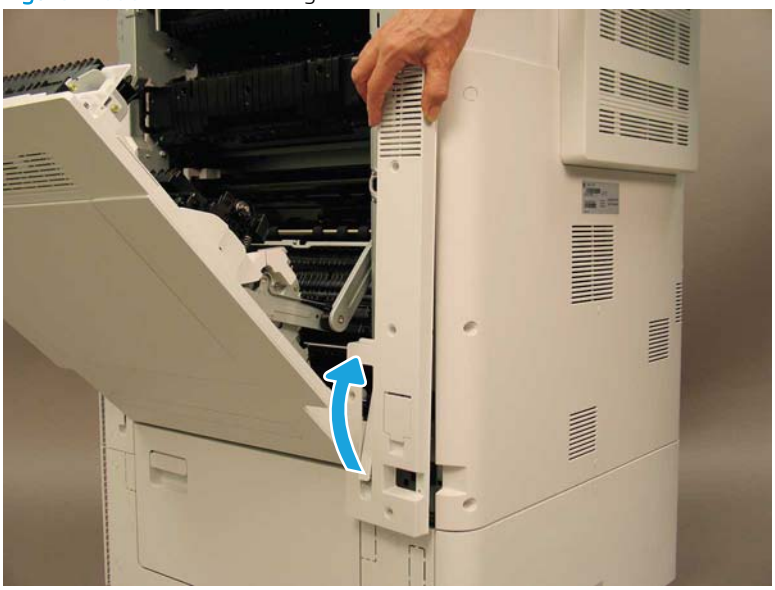
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-632 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-633 Remove the right rear cover

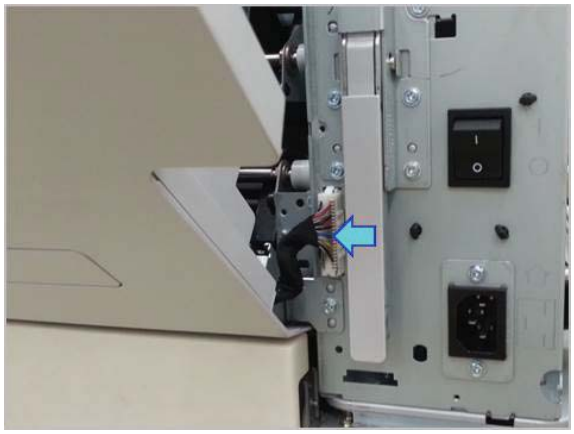


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

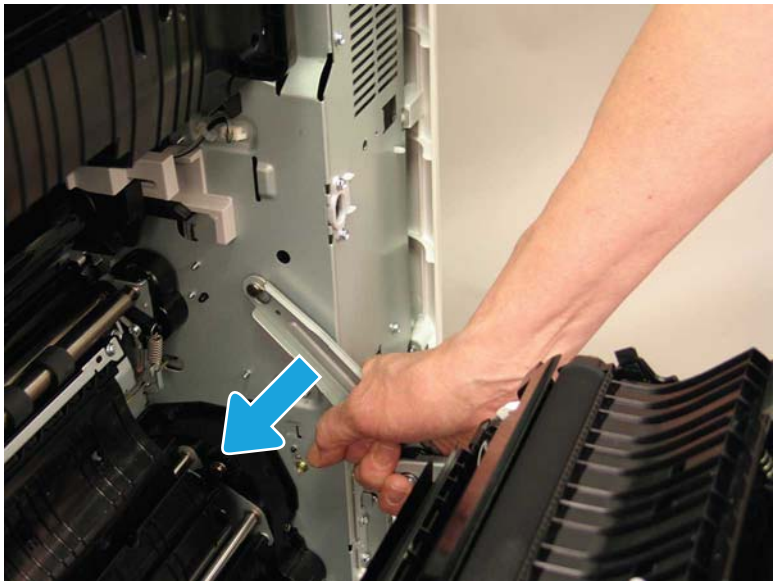
Figure 2-634 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

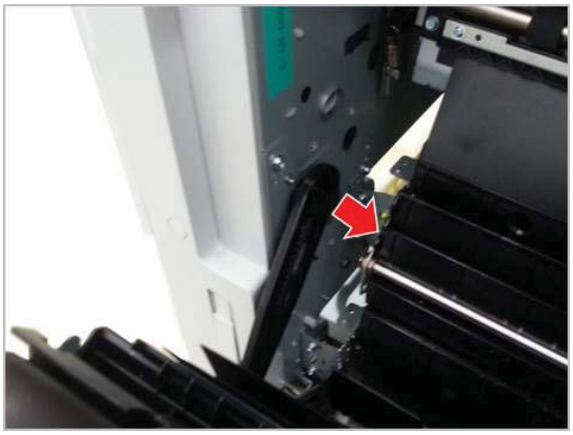
CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-635 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

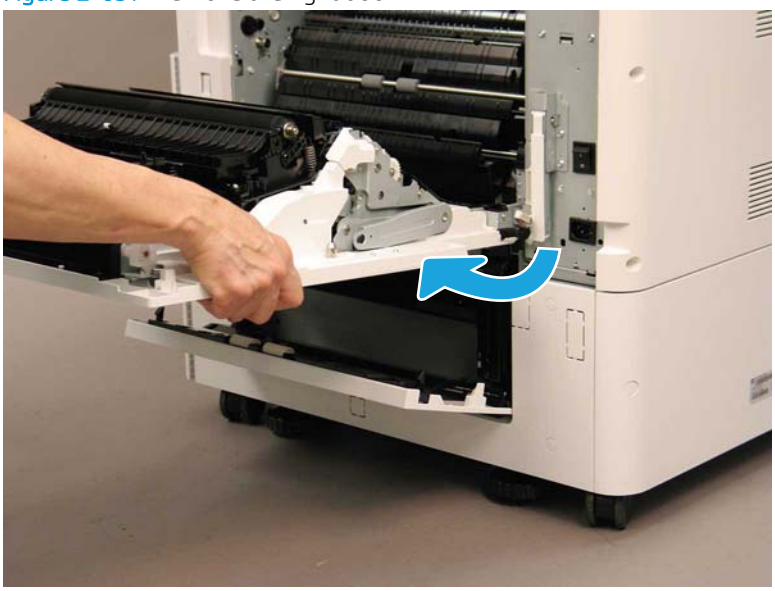
Figure 2-636 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-637 Remove the right door

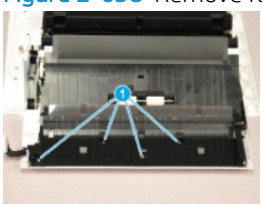


Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper

Follow these steps to remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper.

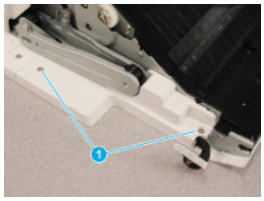
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 2-638 Remove four screws



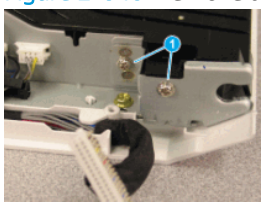
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the lower cable cover.

Figure 2-639 Remove two screws and the lower cable cover



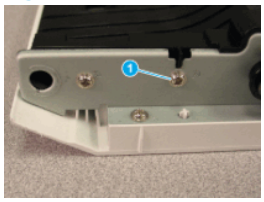
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 2-640 Remove two screws



4. Remove one screw.

Figure 2-641 Remove one screw

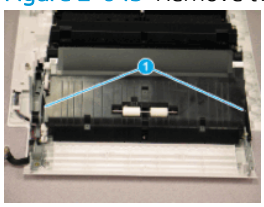


5. Remove the feed guide take away lower.

Figure 2-642 Remove the feed guide take away lower

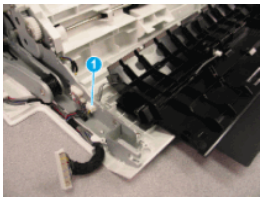
6. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 2-643 Remove two screws



7. Lift the feed guide take away upper slightly away from the right door, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 2-644 Remove the feed guide take away upper

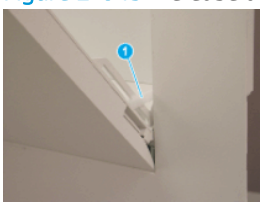


Remove the Tray 1 unit

Follow these steps to remove the Tray 1 unit.

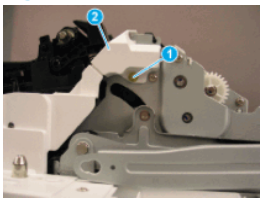
1. Hold the right door upright, open Tray 1, and then release the hinge arm (callout 1).

Figure 2-645 Release the hinge arm



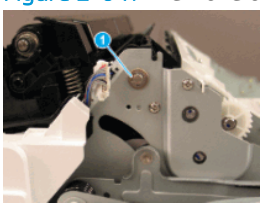
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the bushing cover (callout 2).

Figure 2-646 Remove one screw and bushing cover



3. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1).

Figure 2-647 Remove one e-ring and bushing

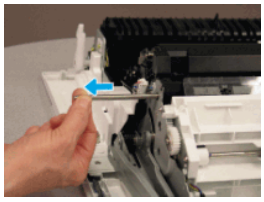


4. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1).

Figure 2-648 Remove one e-ring and bushing

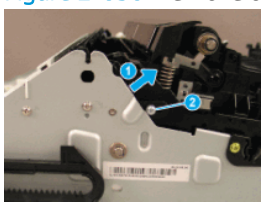
5. Remove the shaft.

Figure 2-649 Remove the shaft



6. Pull the hinge arm up (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 2-650 Remove one screw

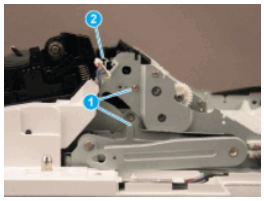


7. Release the hinge.

Figure 2-651 Release the hinge

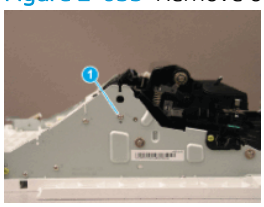
8. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Figure 2-652 Remove one screw



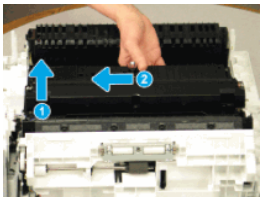
9. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 2-653 Remove one screw



10. Lift up on the feed roller assembly (callout 1), and then slide it to the left (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 2-654 Release the feed roller assembly



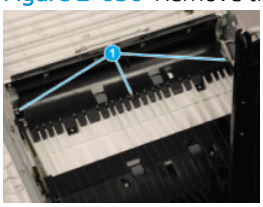
11. Rotate the feed roller assembly to the side.

⚠ CAUTION: The feed roller assembly is still attached to the right door. Do not attempt to remove it completely.

Figure 2-655 Rotate the feed roller assembly

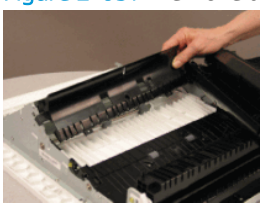
12. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 2-656 Remove three screws



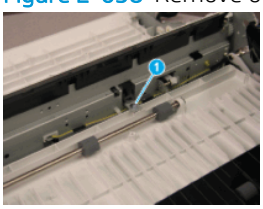
13. Remove the duplex lower guide.

Figure 2-657 Remove the duplex lower guide



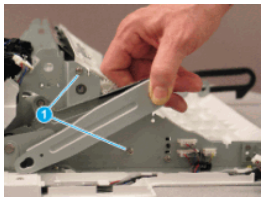
14. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 2-658 Remove one screw



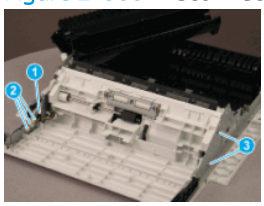
15. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 2-659 Remove two screws



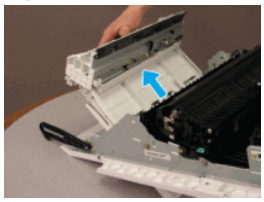
16. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 2-660 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws



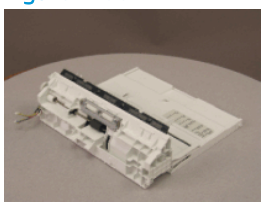
17. Release the Tray 1 unit from the right door.

Figure 2-661 Release the Tray 1 unit



18. Remove the Tray 1 unit.

Figure 2-662 Remove the Tray 1 unit



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 1 empty sensor

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the Tray 1 empty sensor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the Tray 1 empty sensor.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-97 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo Interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

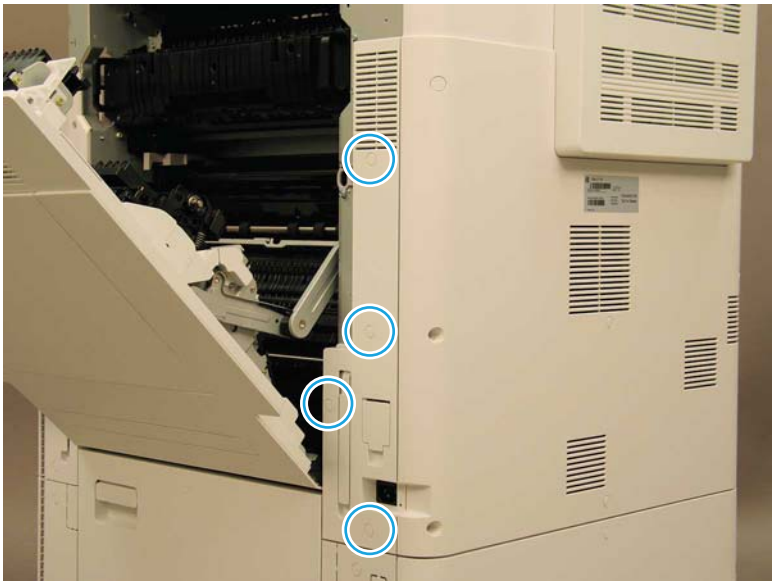
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

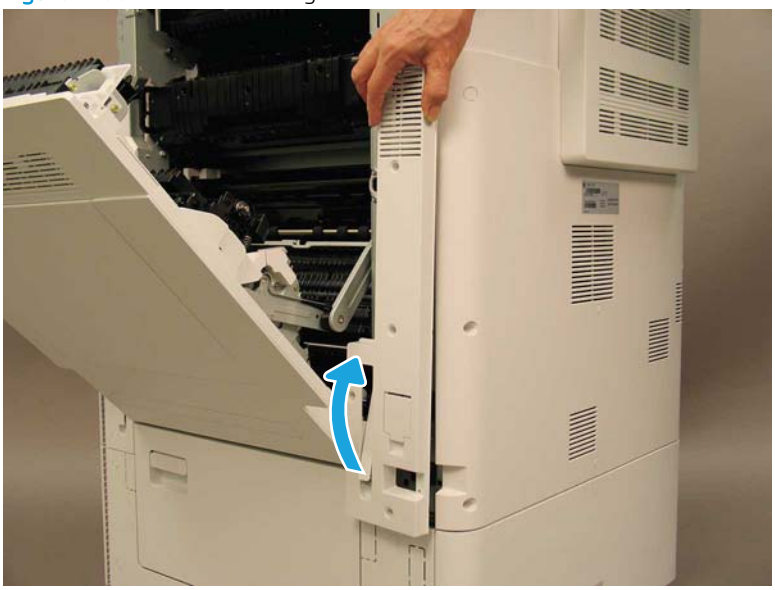
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-663 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-664 Remove the right rear cover

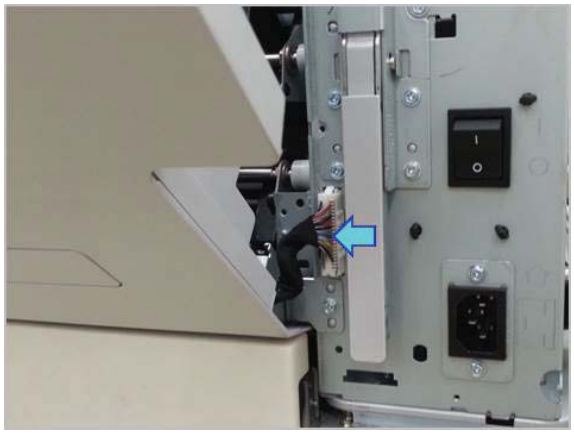


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

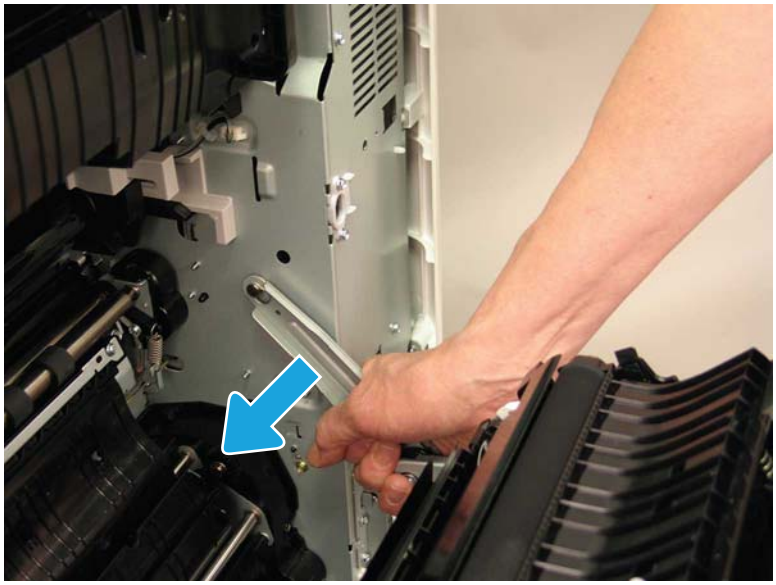
Figure 2-665 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

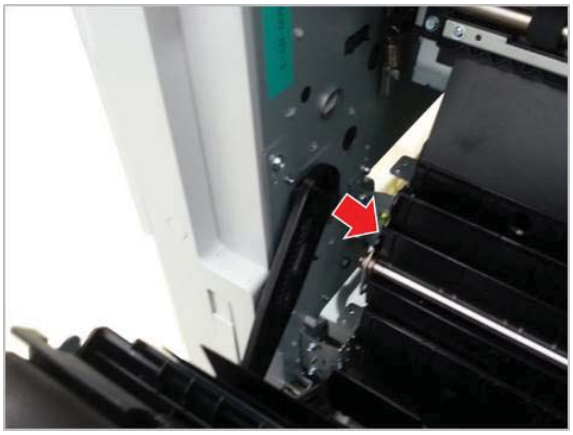
CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-666 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

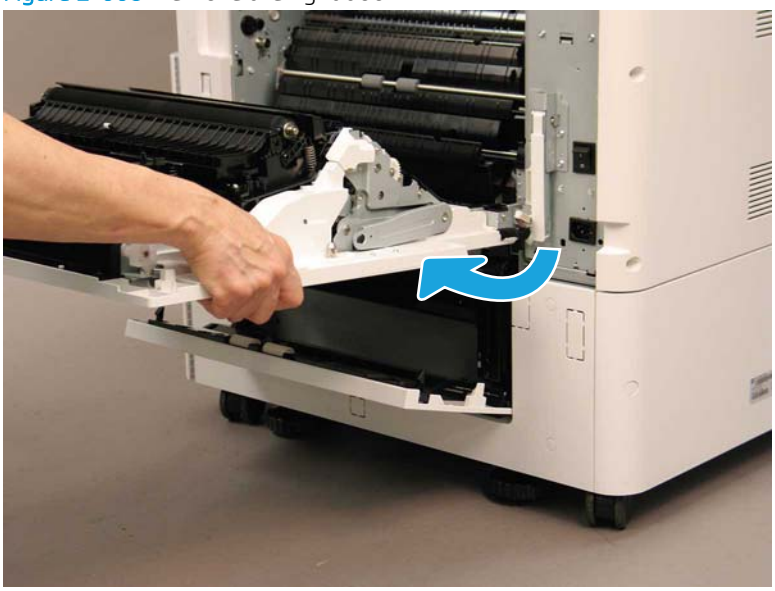
Figure 2-667 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-668 Remove the right door

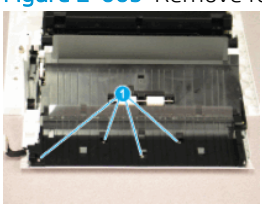


Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper

Follow these steps to remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper.

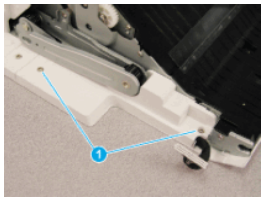
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 2-669 Remove four screws



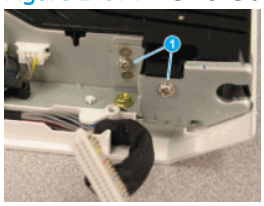
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the lower cable cover.

Figure 2-670 Remove two screws and the lower cable cover



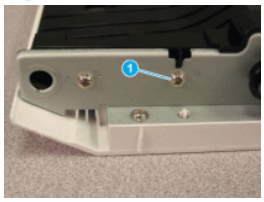
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 2-671 Remove two screws



4. Remove one screw.

Figure 2-672 Remove one screw

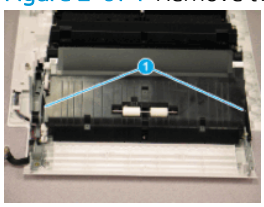


5. Remove the feed guide take away lower.

Figure 2-673 Remove the feed guide take away lower

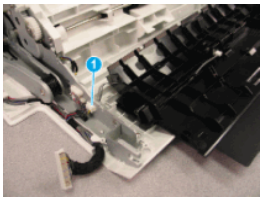
6. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 2-674 Remove two screws



7. Lift the feed guide take away upper slightly away from the right door, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 2-675 Remove the feed guide take away upper

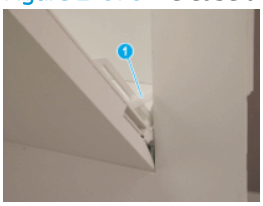


Remove the Tray 1 unit

Follow these steps to remove the Tray 1 unit.

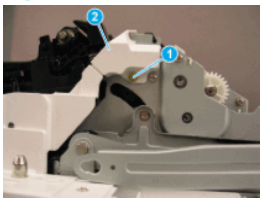
1. Hold the right door upright, open Tray 1, and then release the hinge arm (callout 1).

Figure 2-676 Release the hinge arm



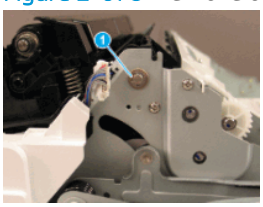
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the bushing cover (callout 2).

Figure 2-677 Remove one screw and bushing cover



3. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1).

Figure 2-678 Remove one e-ring and bushing

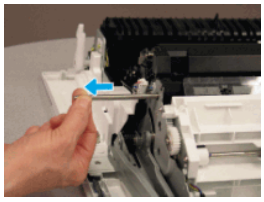


4. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1).

Figure 2-679 Remove one e-ring and bushing

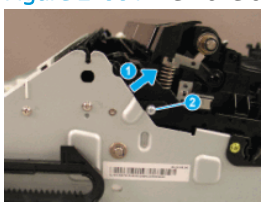
5. Remove the shaft.

Figure 2-680 Remove the shaft



6. Pull the hinge arm up (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 2-681 Remove one screw

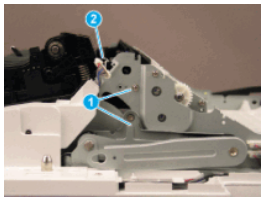


7. Release the hinge.

Figure 2-682 Release the hinge

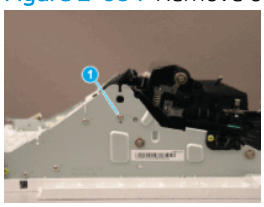
8. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Figure 2-683 Remove one screw



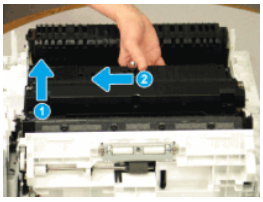
9. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 2-684 Remove one screw



10. Lift up on the feed roller assembly (callout 1), and then slide it to the left (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 2-685 Release the feed roller assembly



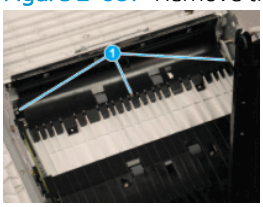
11. Rotate the feed roller assembly to the side.

⚠ CAUTION: The feed roller assembly is still attached to the right door. Do not attempt to remove it completely.

Figure 2-686 Rotate the feed roller assembly

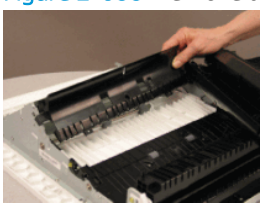
12. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 2-687 Remove three screws



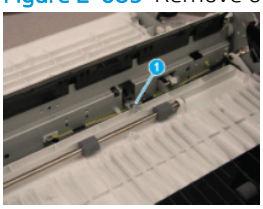
13. Remove the duplex lower guide.

Figure 2-688 Remove the duplex lower guide



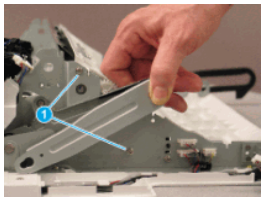
14. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 2-689 Remove one screw



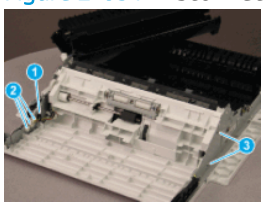
15. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 2-690 Remove two screws



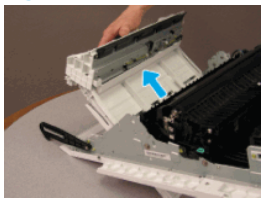
16. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 2-691 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws



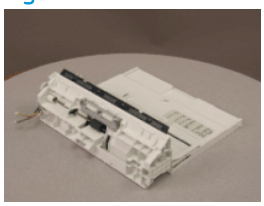
17. Release the Tray 1 unit from the right door.

Figure 2-692 Release the Tray 1 unit



18. Remove the Tray 1 unit.

Figure 2-693 Remove the Tray 1 unit

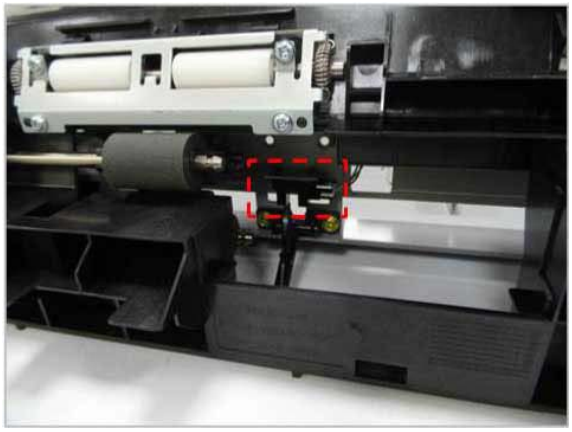


Remove the Tray 1 empty sensor

Follow these steps to remove the Tray 1 empty sensor.

- ▲ Disconnect the connector, and then remove the Tray 1 empty sensor.

Figure 2-694 Remove the Tray 1 empty sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 1 paper length sensor

Learn how to remove and replace the Tray 1 paper length sensor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the Tray 1 paper length sensor.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-98 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

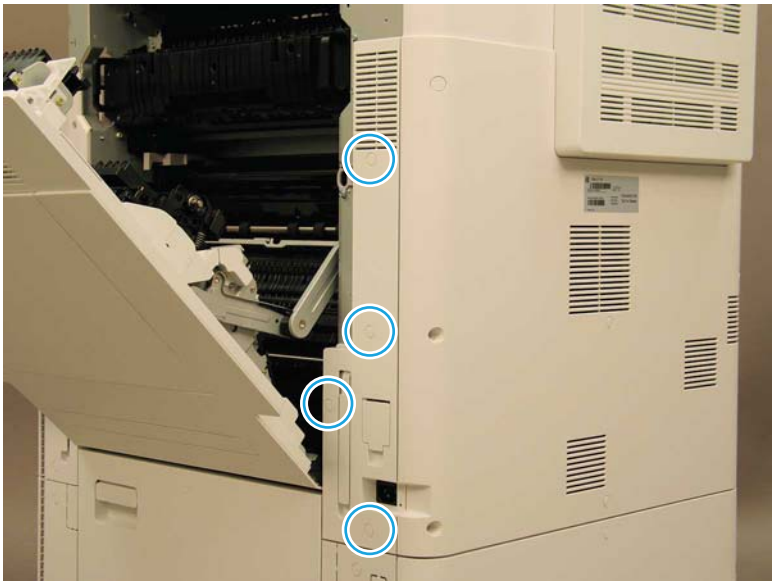
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

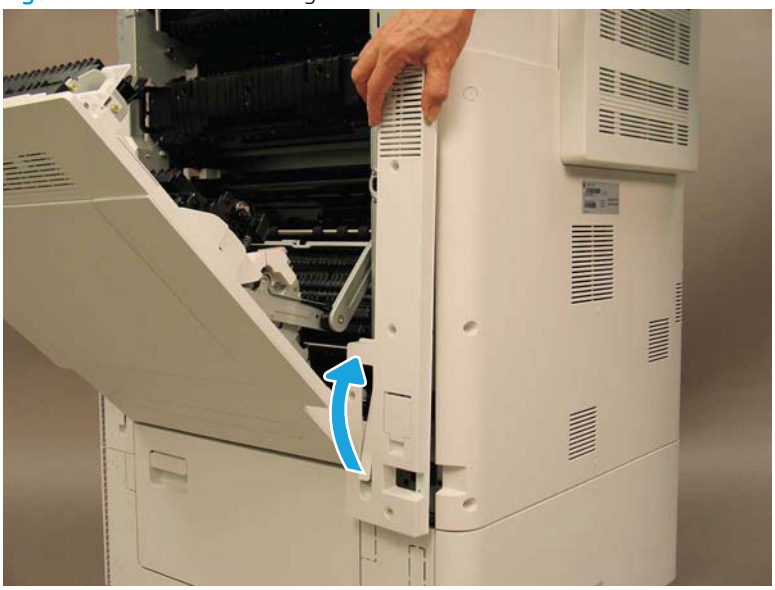
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-695 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-696 Remove the right rear cover

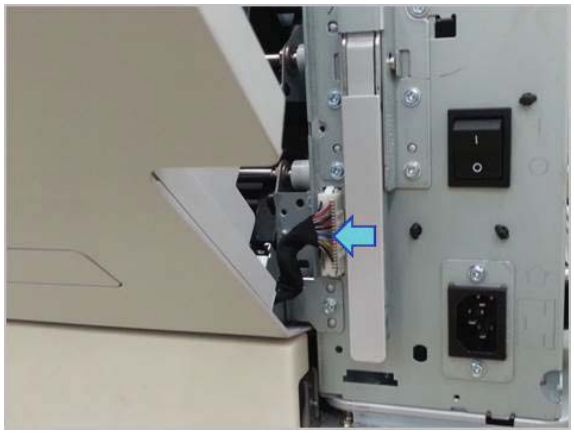


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

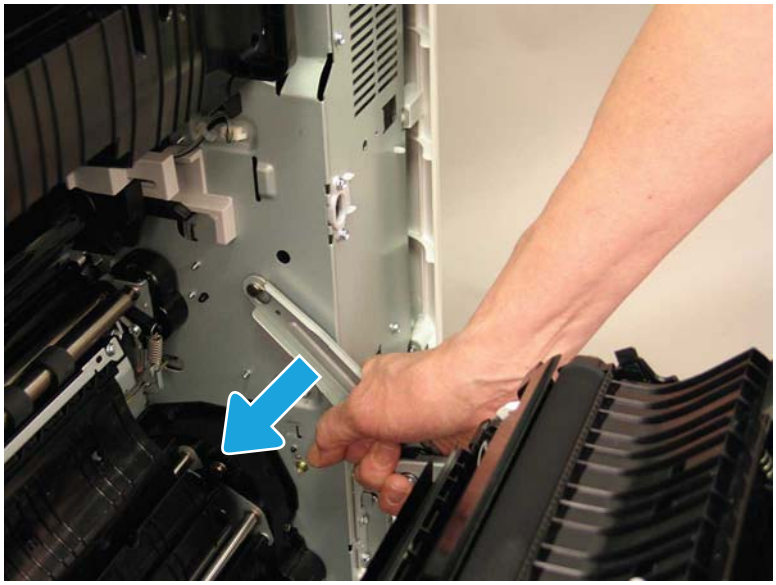
Figure 2-697 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

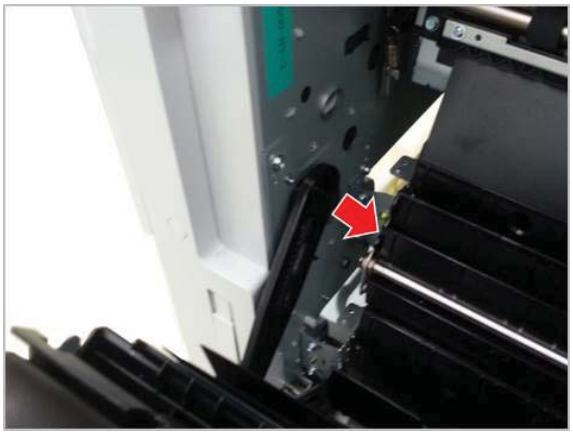
CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-698 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

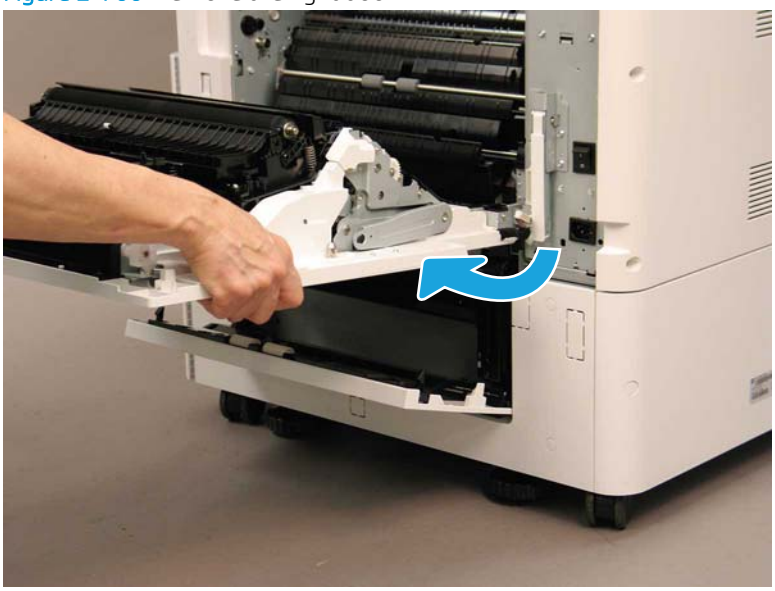
Figure 2-699 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-700 Remove the right door

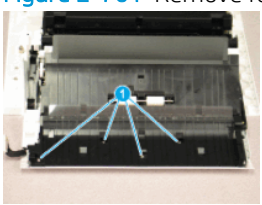


Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper

Follow these steps to remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper.

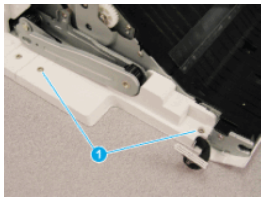
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 2-701 Remove four screws



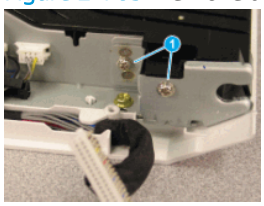
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the lower cable cover.

Figure 2-702 Remove two screws and the lower cable cover



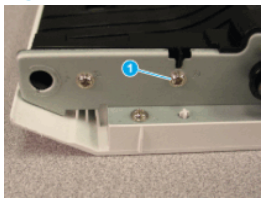
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 2-703 Remove two screws



4. Remove one screw.

Figure 2-704 Remove one screw

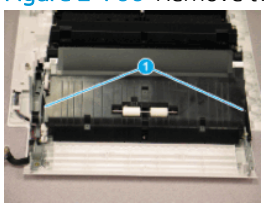


5. Remove the feed guide take away lower.

Figure 2-705 Remove the feed guide take away lower

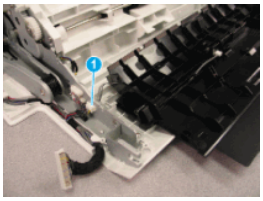
6. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 2-706 Remove two screws



7. Lift the feed guide take away upper slightly away from the right door, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 2-707 Remove the feed guide take away upper

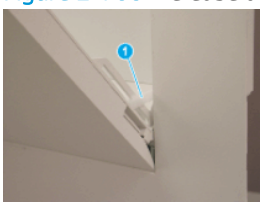


Remove the MP unit

Follow these steps to remove the MP unit.

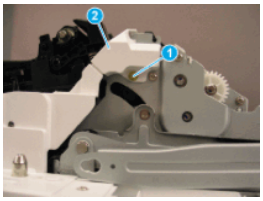
1. Hold the right door upright, open the MP tray, and then release the hinge arm (callout 1).

Figure 2-708 Release the hinge arm



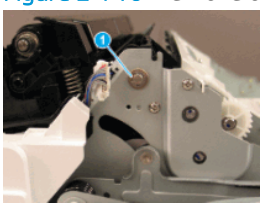
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the bushing cover (callout 2).

Figure 2-709 Remove one screw and bushing cover



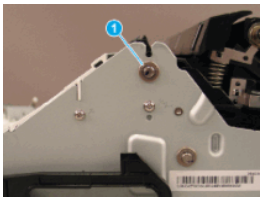
3. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1).

Figure 2-710 Remove one e-ring and bushing



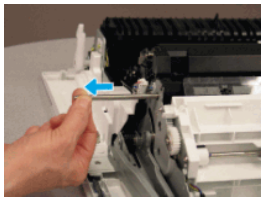
4. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1).

Figure 2-711 Remove one e-ring and bushing



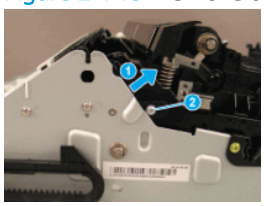
5. Remove the shaft.

Figure 2-712 Remove the shaft



6. Pull the hinge arm up (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 2-713 Remove one screw

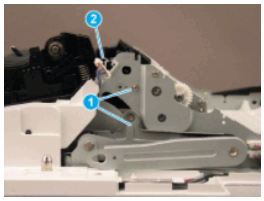


7. Release the hinge.

Figure 2-714 Release the hinge

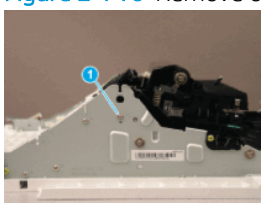
8. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Figure 2-715 Remove one screw



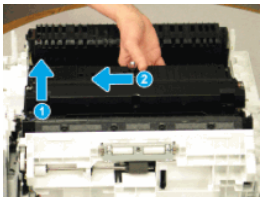
9. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 2-716 Remove one screw



10. Lift up on the feed roller assembly (callout 1), and then slide it to the left (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 2-717 Release the feed roller assembly



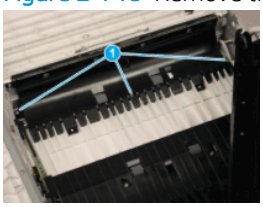
11. Rotate the feed roller assembly to the side.

⚠ CAUTION: The feed roller assembly is still attached to the right door. Do not attempt to remove it completely.

Figure 2-718 Rotate the feed roller assembly

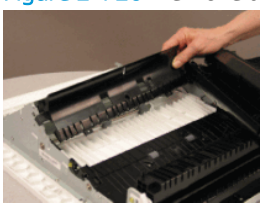
12. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 2-719 Remove three screws



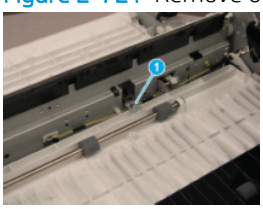
13. Remove the duplex lower guide.

Figure 2-720 Remove the duplex lower guide



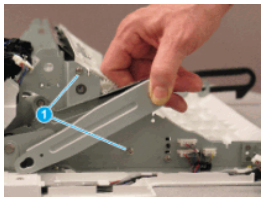
14. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 2-721 Remove one screw



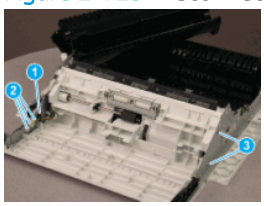
15. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 2-722 Remove two screws



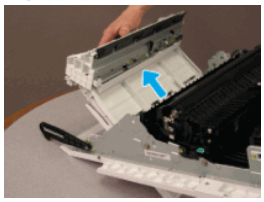
16. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 2-723 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws



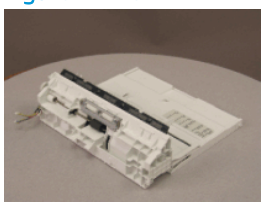
17. Release the Tray 1 unit from the right door.

Figure 2-724 Release the Tray 1 unit



18. Remove the MP unit.

Figure 2-725 Remove the Tray 1 unit



Remove the Tray 1 paper length sensor

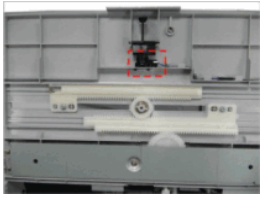
Follow these steps to remove the Tray 1 paper length sensor.

1. Remove the Tray 1 Tray upper.

Figure 2-726 Remove the Tray 1 Tray upper

2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the Tray 1 paper length sensor.

Figure 2-727 Remove the Tray 1 paper length sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fuser out sensor (on the right door)

Learn how to remove and replace the fuser out sensor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the fuser out sensor.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-99 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Fuser out sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

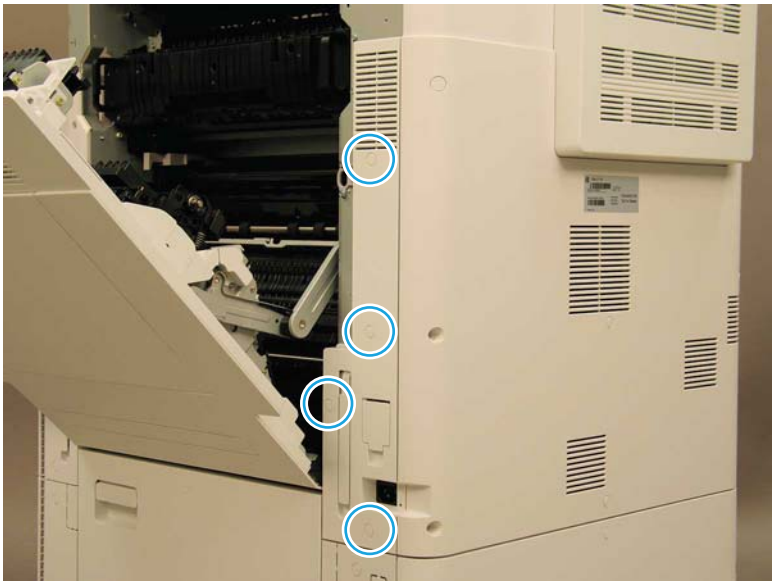
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

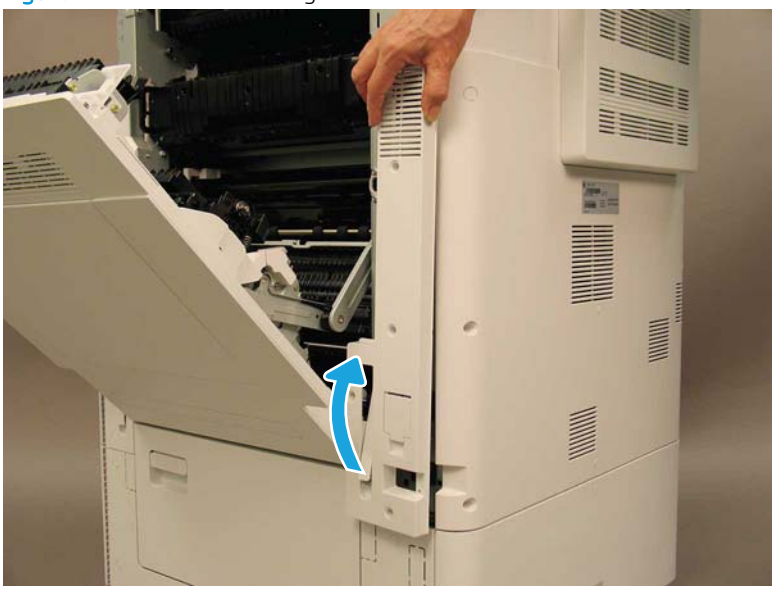
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-728 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-729 Remove the right rear cover

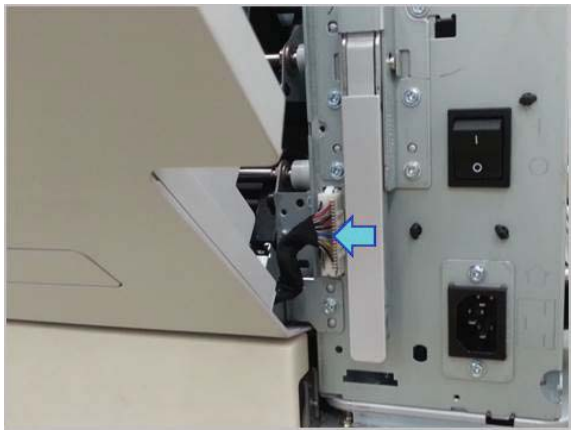


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

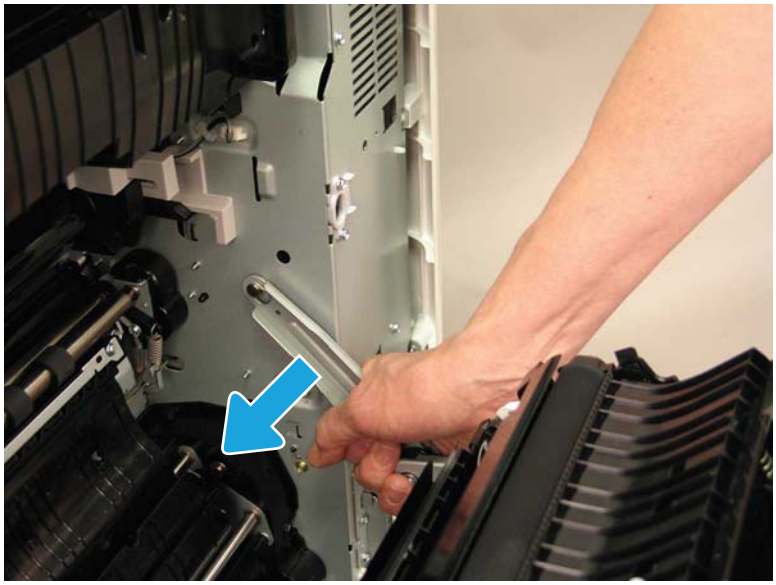
Figure 2-730 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

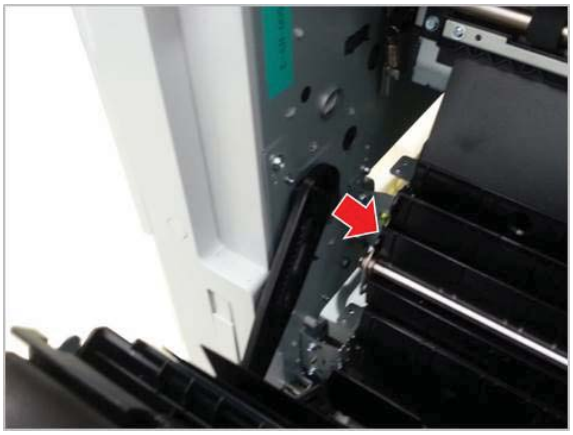
CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-731 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

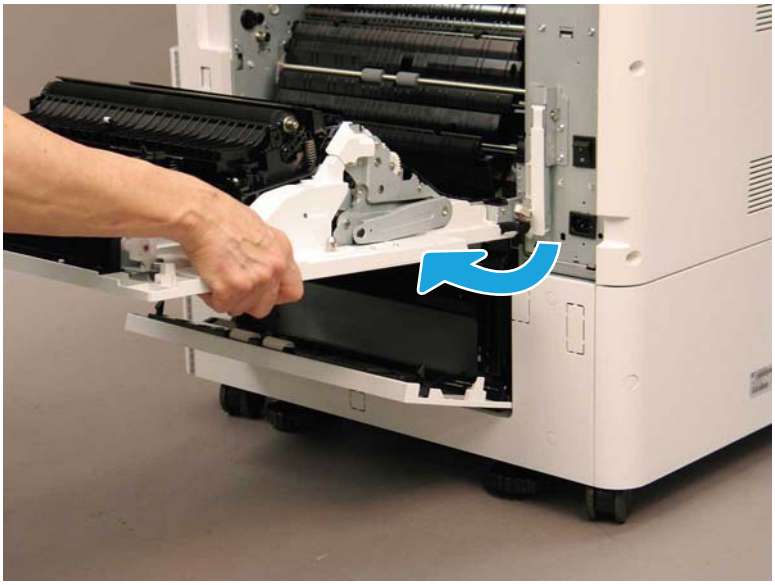
Figure 2-732 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-733 Remove the right door

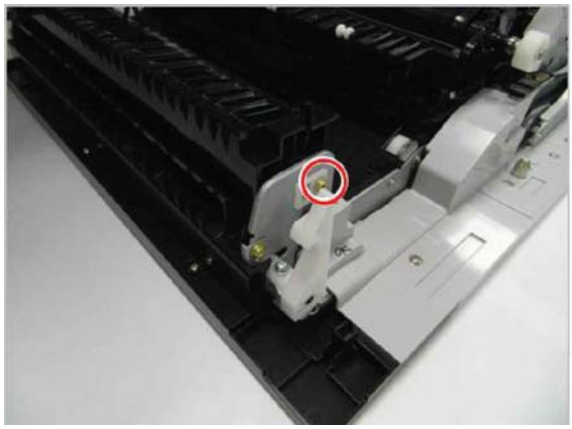


Remove the fuser out sensor

Follow these steps to remove the fuser out sensor.

1. Remove one screw on the back, top corner of the door.

Figure 2-734 Remove one screw



2. Remove one screw on the front, top corner of the door, and then open the cover-side exit.

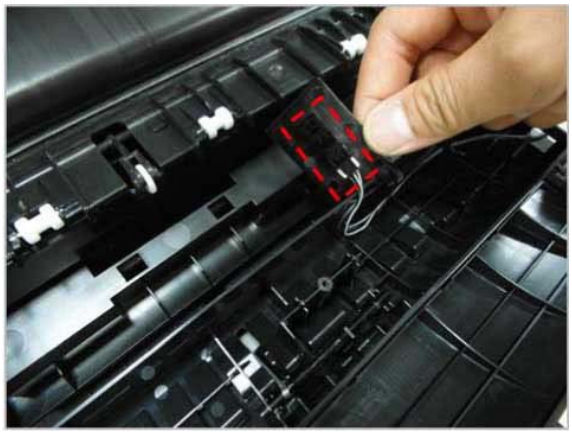
Figure 2-735 Remove one screw

3. Remove one screw, and then rotate the sensor holder up.

Figure 2-736 Remove one screw

4. Disconnect the sensor connector, and then remove the fuser-out sensor from its holder.

Figure 2-737 Disconnect one connector



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Feed 2 sensor (on the right door)

Learn how to remove and replace the feed 2 sensor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the feed 2 sensor.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-100 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001490	Feed sensor 2

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

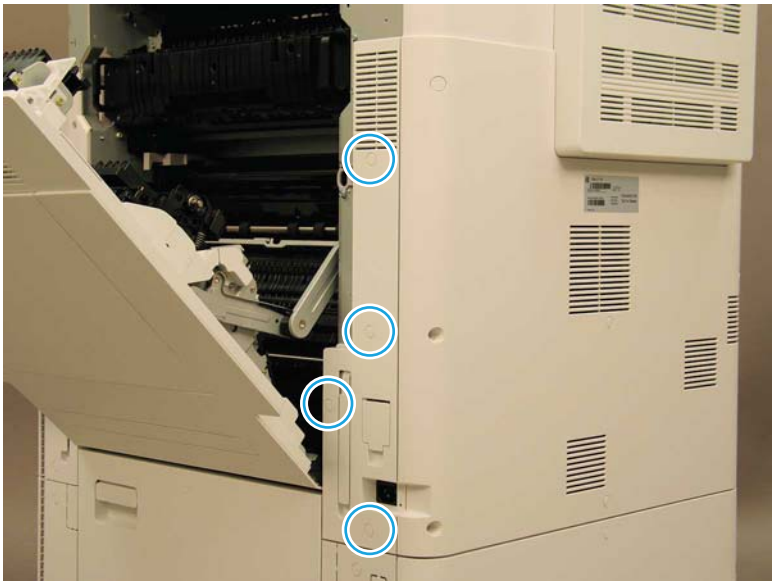
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

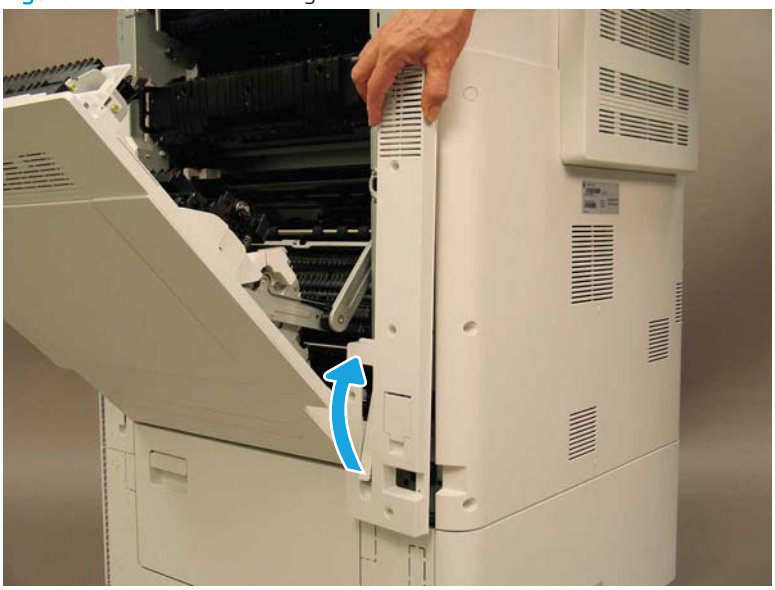
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-738 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-739 Remove the right rear cover

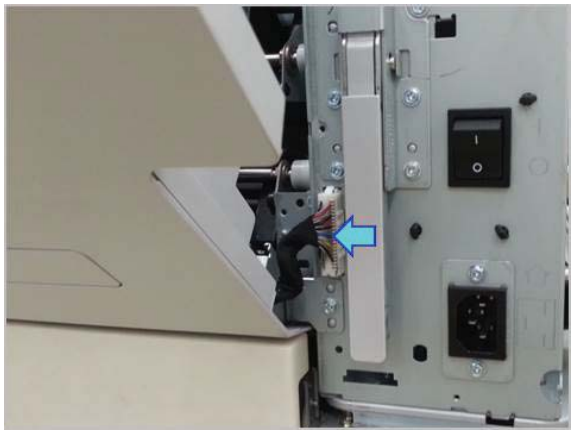


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

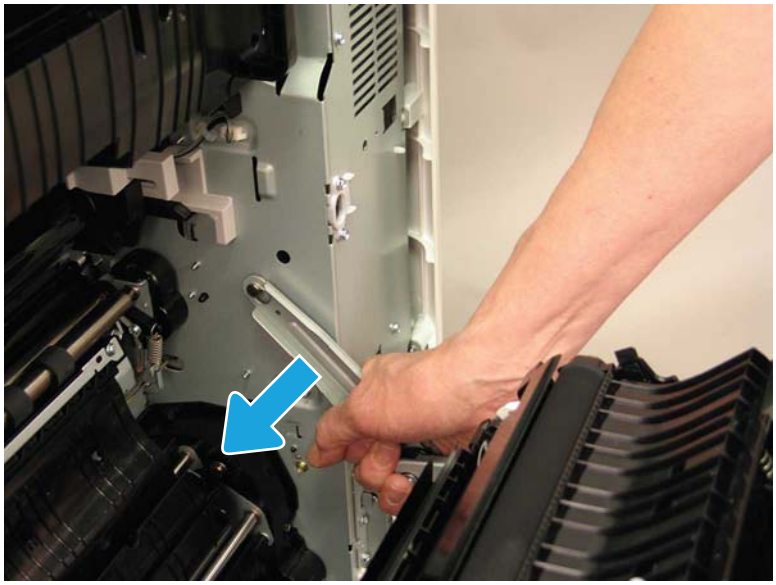
Figure 2-740 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

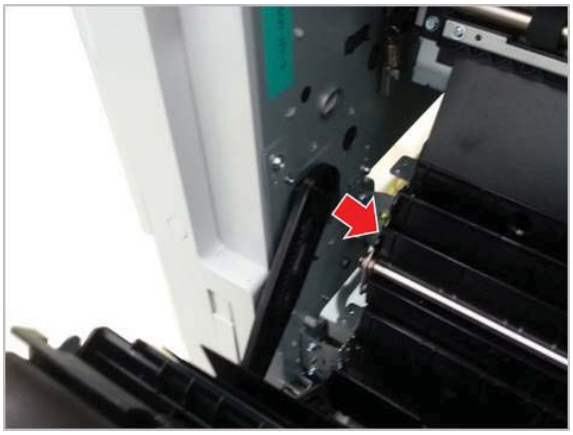
CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-741 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

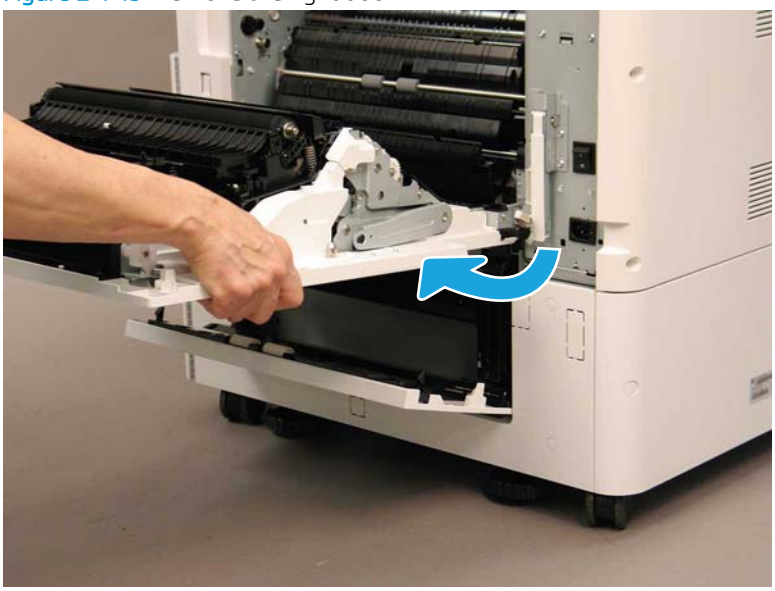
Figure 2-742 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-743 Remove the right door

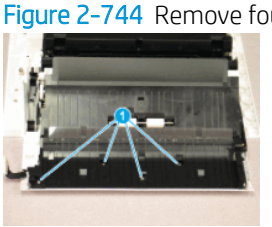


Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper

Follow these steps to remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper.

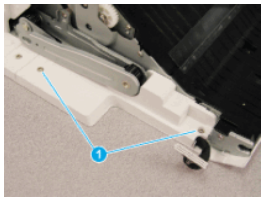
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 2-744 Remove four screws



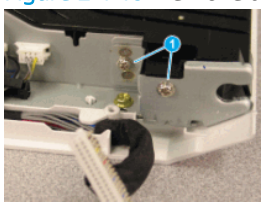
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the lower cable cover.

Figure 2-745 Remove two screws and the lower cable cover



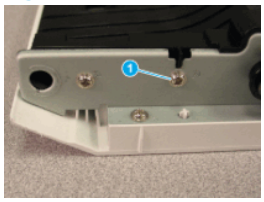
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 2-746 Remove two screws



4. Remove one screw.

Figure 2-747 Remove one screw

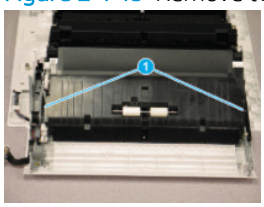


5. Remove the feed guide take away lower.

Figure 2-748 Remove the feed guide take away lower

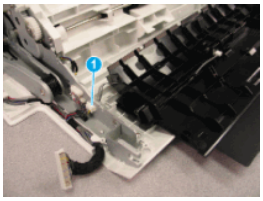
6. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 2-749 Remove two screws



7. Lift the feed guide take away upper slightly away from the right door, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 2-750 Remove the feed guide take away upper

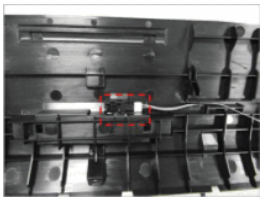


Remove the feed 2 sensor

Follow these steps to remove the feed 2 sensor.

▲ Disconnect the sensor connector, and then remove the feed 2 sensor located on the feed guide take away upper.

Figure 2-751 Disconnect one connector and remove the feed 2 sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Tray 1

View the tray 1 exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Tray 1

Parts diagram and parts list for tray 1.

Figure 2-752 Tray 1

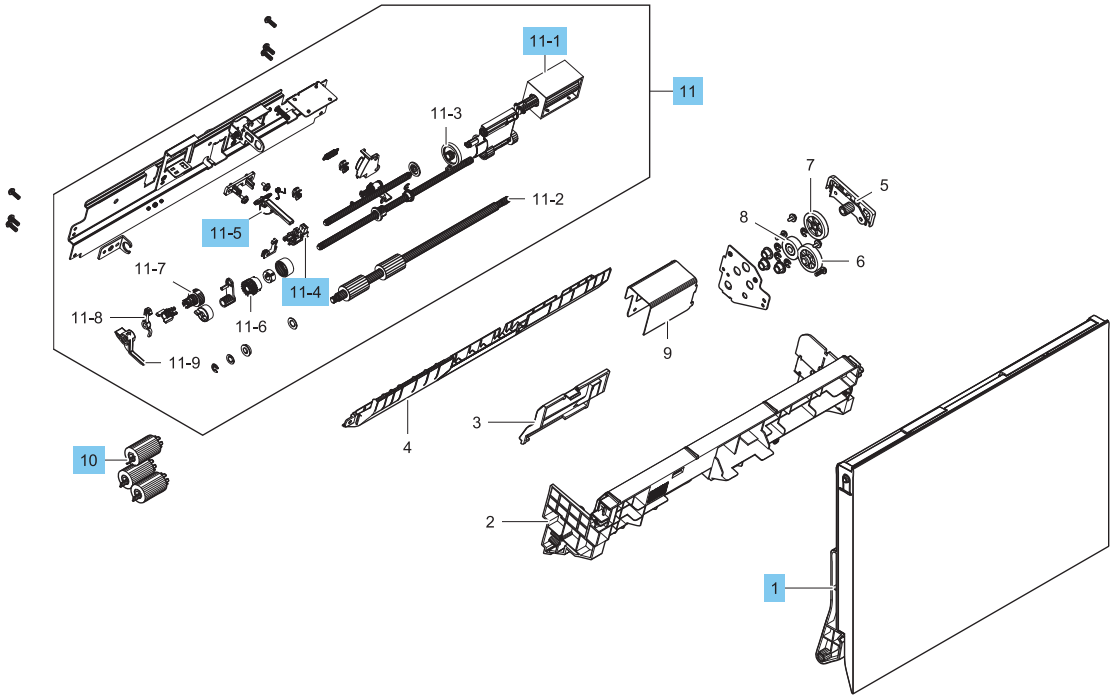


Table 2-101 Tray 1

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1	JC90-01357B	Tray 1, main pickup	1	Not applicable
10	JC93-00540B	Tray 1, main rollers	3	Removal and replacement: Tray 1 pickup/reverse/feed roller on page 687
11	JC90-01355A	Tray 1, bracket pickup	1	Not applicable
11-1	JC33-00029B	Solenoid, tray 1	1	Removal and replacement: Tray 1 solenoid on page 691
11-4	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	1	Not applicable
11-5	JC66-04459A	Actuator lever, empty	1	Not applicable

Removal and replacement: Tray 1 pickup/reverse/feed roller

Learn how to remove and replace the Tray 1 pickup/reverse/feed roller.

View a video of how to remove and replace the Tray 1 pickup/reverse/feed roller.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-102 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00540B	Tray 1 (MP) roller

Required tools

- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the Tray 1 pick/reverse/feed roller

Follow these steps to remove the Tray 1 pick/reverse/feed roller.

1. Open Tray 1. Use a small flat blade screwdriver to release the tab on the right side of the cover.

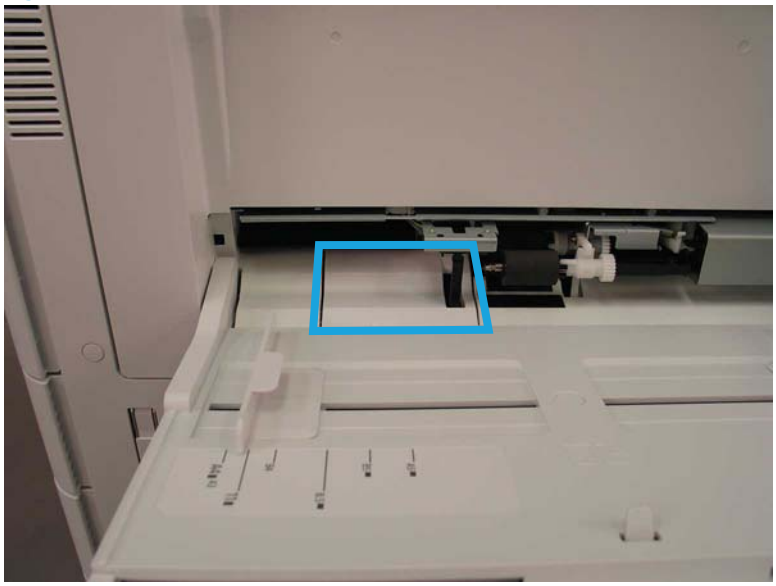
NOTE: The plastic tabs on the edges of the cover might require extra pressure to remove.

Figure 2-753 Remove the cover

2. Remove the cover shown using a small flat blade screwdriver to release the tab on the right side of the cover.

NOTE: The flag, it will need to be moved out of the way to remove cover.

Figure 2-754 Remove cover

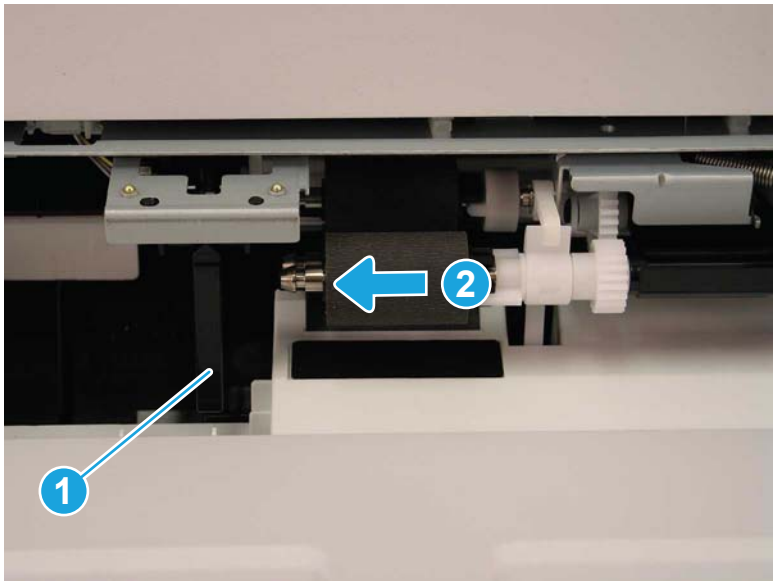


Note the orientation of the flag.

3. Release the small tab and remove the Tray 1 pick/reverse/feed roller (callout 2). The flag (callout 1) will need to be moved out of the way to release rollers. Use caution and remove slowly to avoid loosening the parts behind the rollers. If these parts come loose, they might fall into the printer and will be difficult to retrieve. Note the location of all components.

NOTE: It is recommended to replace all three rollers at the same time.

Figure 2-755 Remove the Tray 1 pick/reverse/feed roller



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following **special installation instructions**.

Removal and replacement: Tray 1 solenoid

Learn how to remove and replace the Tray 1 solenoid.

View a video of how to remove and replace the Tray 1 solenoid.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 2-103 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC33-00029B	Solenoid, Tray 1

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

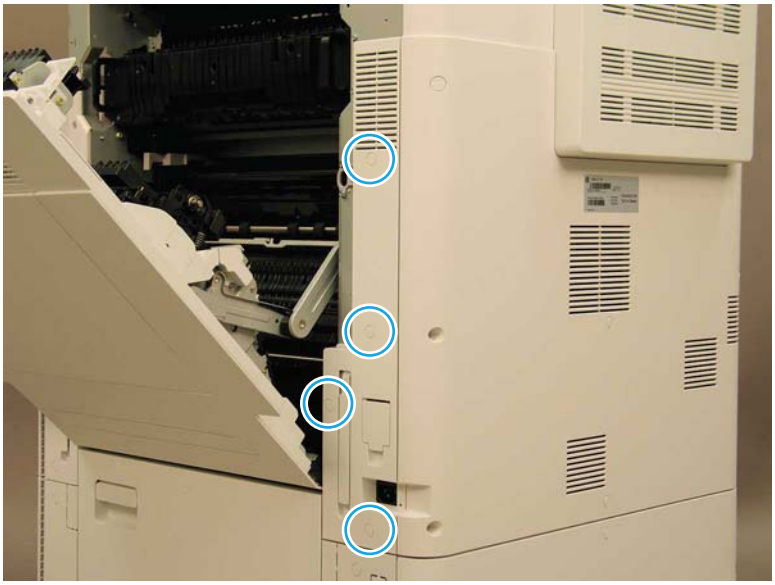
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

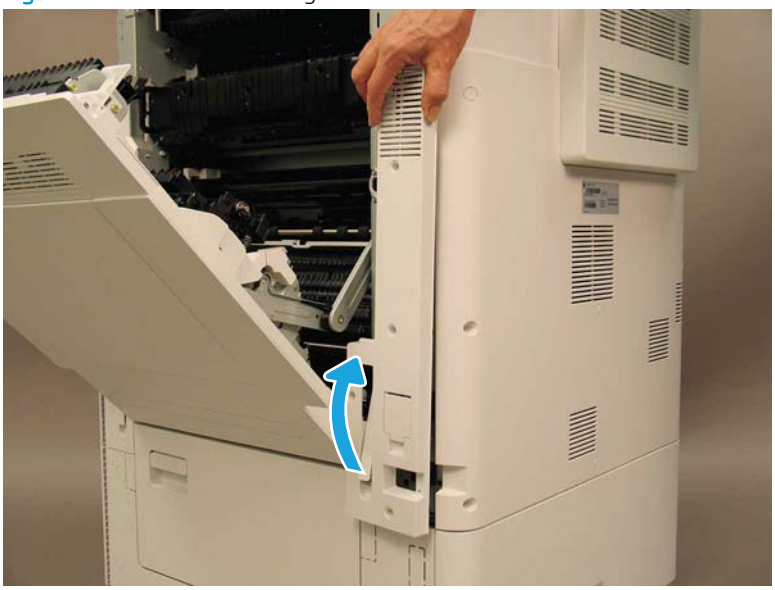
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-756 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-757 Remove the right rear cover

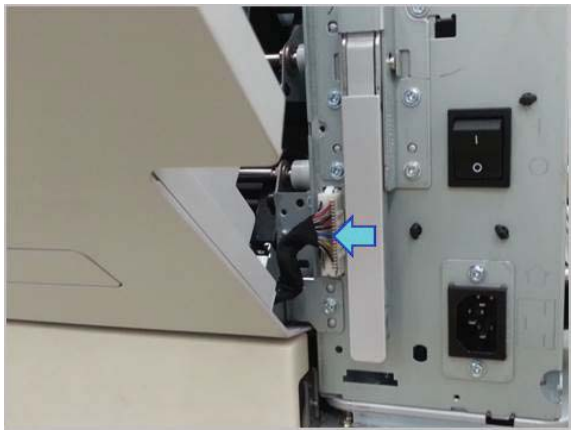


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

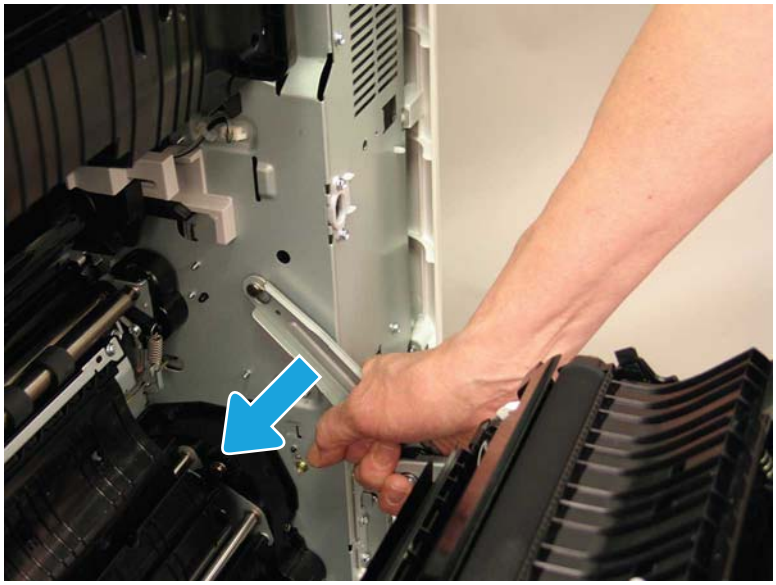
Figure 2-758 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

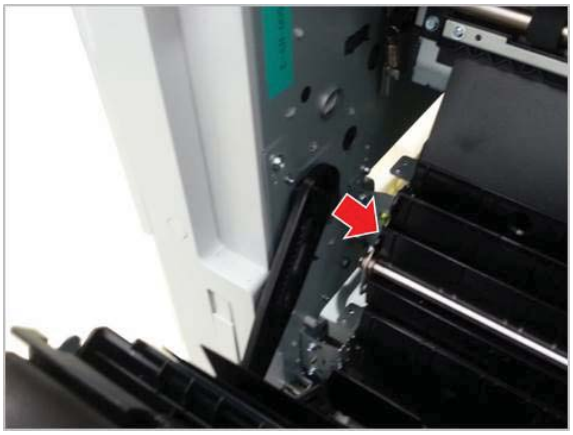
CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-759 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

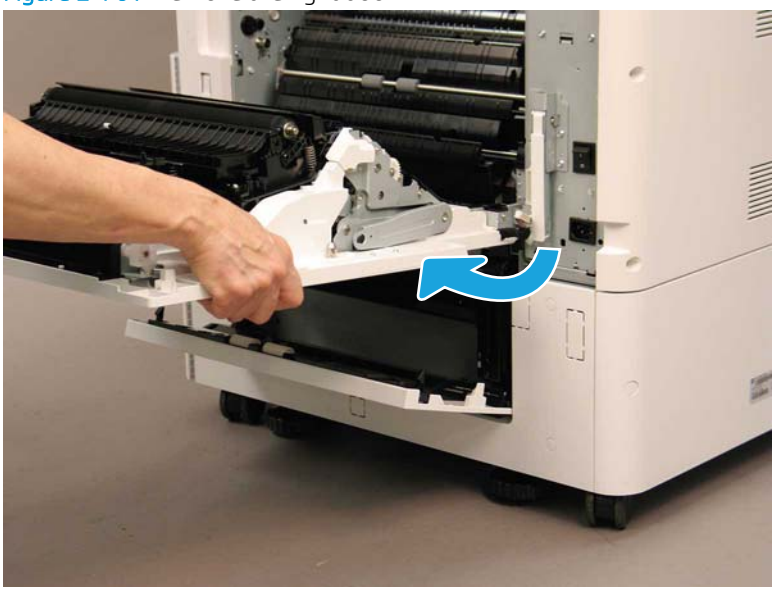
Figure 2-760 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-761 Remove the right door

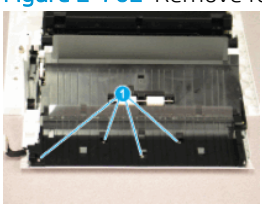


Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper

Follow these steps to remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper.

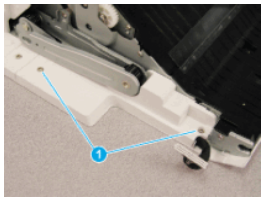
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 2-762 Remove four screws



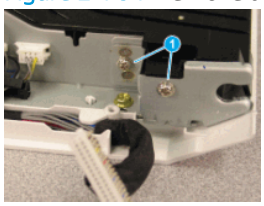
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the lower cable cover.

Figure 2-763 Remove two screws and the lower cable cover



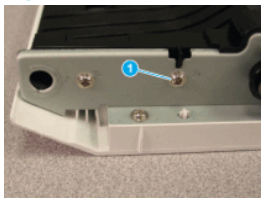
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 2-764 Remove two screws



4. Remove one screw.

Figure 2-765 Remove one screw

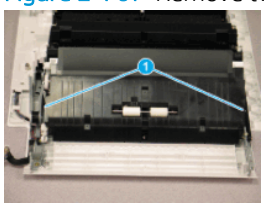


5. Remove the feed guide take away lower.

Figure 2-766 Remove the feed guide take away lower

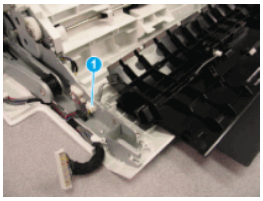
6. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 2-767 Remove two screws



7. Lift the feed guide take away upper slightly away from the right door, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 2-768 Remove the feed guide take away upper

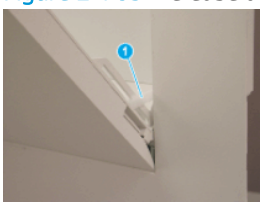


Remove the MP unit

Follow these steps to remove the MP unit.

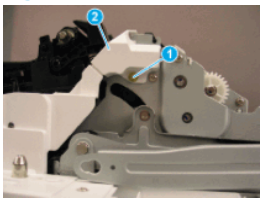
1. Hold the right door upright, open the MP tray, and then release the hinge arm (callout 1).

Figure 2-769 Release the hinge arm



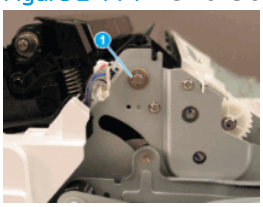
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the bushing cover (callout 2).

Figure 2-770 Remove one screw and bushing cover



3. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1).

Figure 2-771 Remove one e-ring and bushing

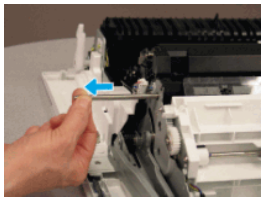


4. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1).

Figure 2-772 Remove one e-ring and bushing

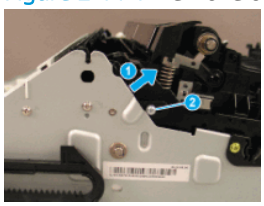
5. Remove the shaft.

Figure 2-773 Remove the shaft



6. Pull the hinge arm up (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 2-774 Remove one screw

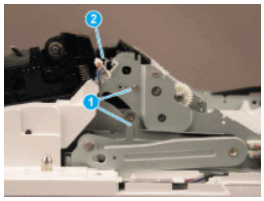


7. Release the hinge.

Figure 2-775 Release the hinge

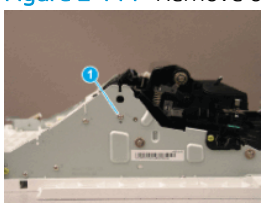
8. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Figure 2-776 Remove one screw



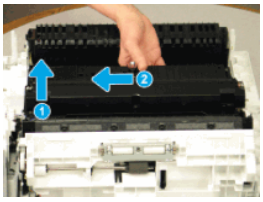
9. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 2-777 Remove one screw



10. Lift up on the feed roller assembly (callout 1), and then slide it to the left (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 2-778 Release the feed roller assembly



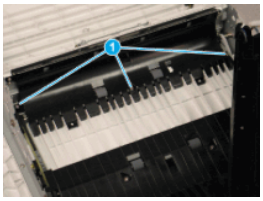
11. Rotate the feed roller assembly to the side.

⚠ CAUTION: The feed roller assembly is still attached to the right door. Do not attempt to remove it completely.

Figure 2-779 Rotate the feed roller assembly

12. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 2-780 Remove three screws

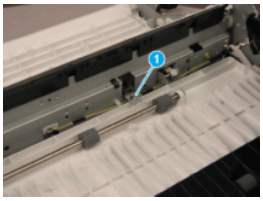


13. Remove the duplex lower guide.

Figure 2-781 Remove the duplex lower guide

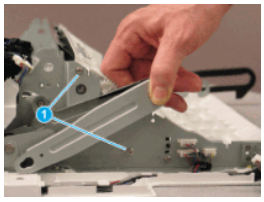
14. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 2-782 Remove one screw



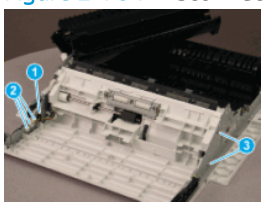
15. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 2-783 Remove two screws



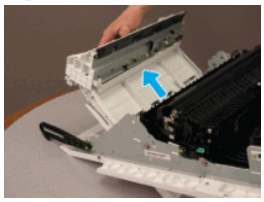
16. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 2-784 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws



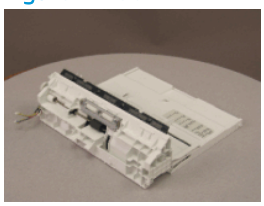
17. Release the Tray 1 unit from the right door.

Figure 2-785 Release the Tray 1 unit



18. Remove the MP unit.

Figure 2-786 Remove the Tray 1 unit

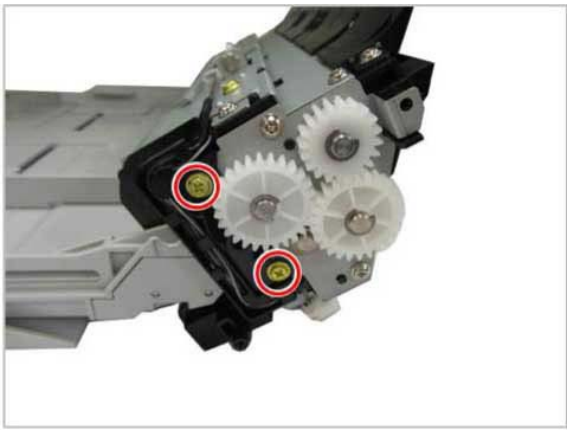


Remove the Tray 1 solenoid

Follow these steps to remove the Tray 1 solenoid.

1. Remove two screws, remove three gears, and then release Tray 1.

Figure 2-787 Remove two screws and three gears



2. Remove two screws, three e-rings, and three bushings. Remove the bracket-rear.

Figure 2-788 Remove the bracket-rear

3. Remove seven screws, and then remove the frame-base.

Figure 2-789 Remove seven screws

4. Remove two screws, and then remove the Tray 1 solenoid.

Figure 2-790 Remove two screws

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Right door guide

View the right door guide exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Right door guide

Parts diagram and parts list for the right door guide.

Figure 2-791 Right door guide

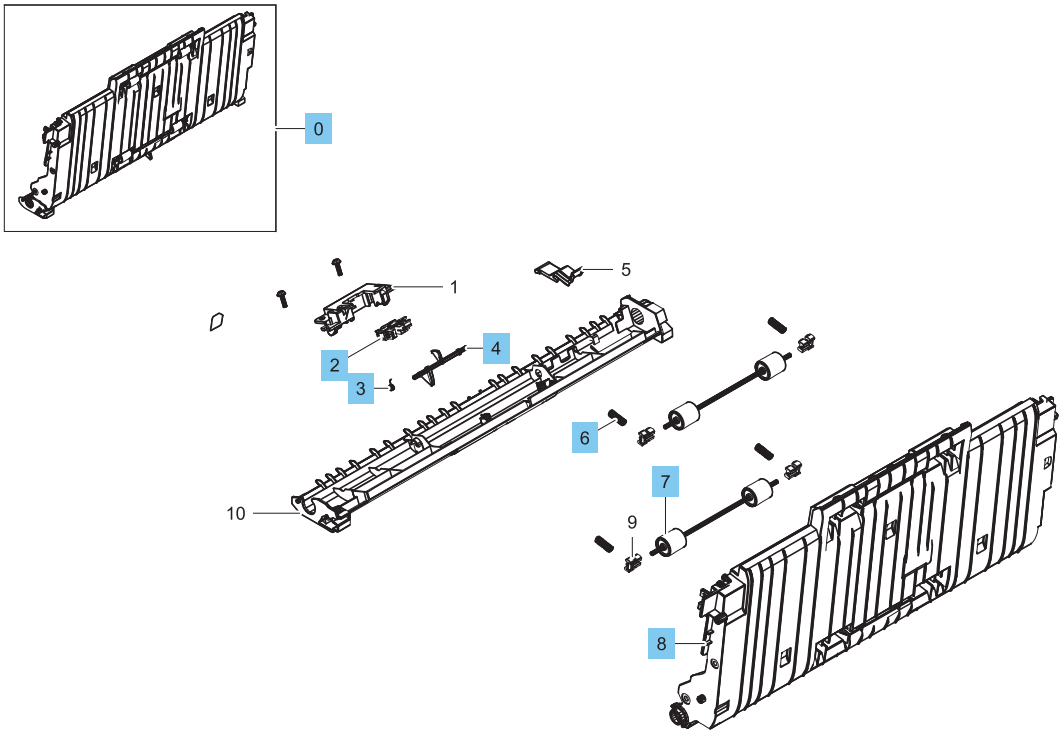


Table 2-104 Right door guide

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
0	JC95-01969A	Side cover guide	1	Not applicable
2	0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	1	Not applicable
3	6107-001737	Spring, ts	1	Not applicable
4	JC66-04405A	Actuator lever, dup	1	Not applicable
6	6107-001731	Spring, cs	4	Not applicable
7	JC66-02289B	Idle roller, rubber	4	Not applicable
8	JC61-06988A	Feed guide	1	Not applicable

Right door exit and takeaway

View the right door exit and takeaway exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Right door exit and takeaway

Parts diagram and parts list for the right door exit and takeaway.

Figure 2-792 Right door exit and takeaway

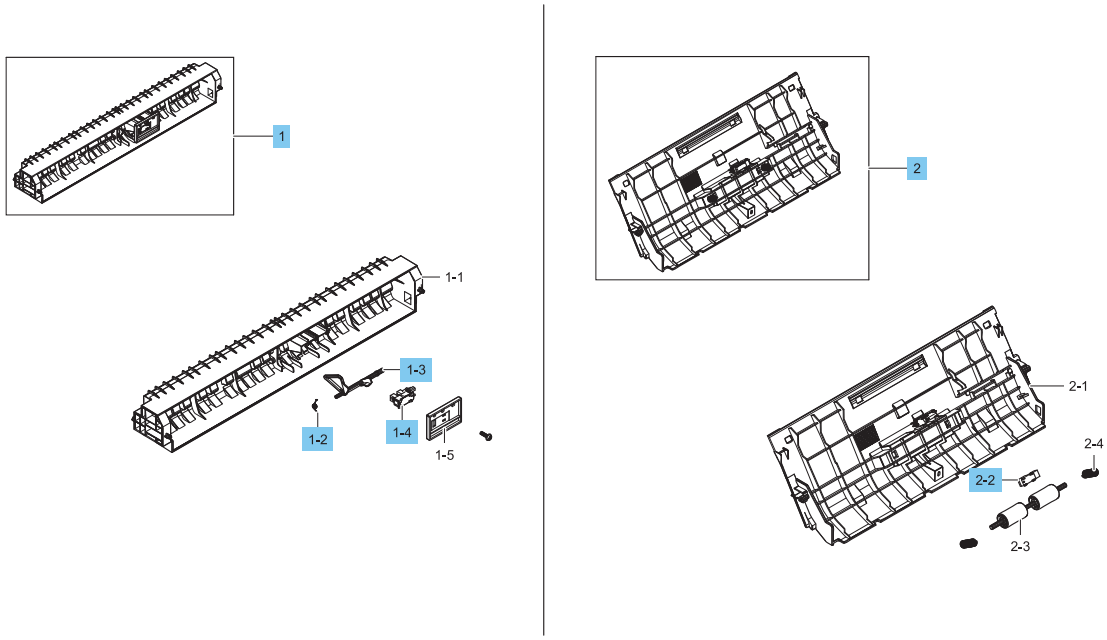


Table 2-105 Right door exit and takeaway

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1	JC95-01968A	Right door side exit	1	Not applicable
1-2	6107-001737	Spring, ts	1	Not applicable
1-3	JC66-04406A	Actuator lever, fuser out	1	Not applicable
1-4	0604–001393	Photo-interrupter	1	Not applicable
2	JC95-01972A	Side cover, takeaway	1	Not applicable
2-2	0604-001490	Photo interrupter	1	Not applicable
Not shown	JC93-01467A	Switch assembly - right door	1	Not applicable

Drive system

View the drive system exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

T2 transfer assembly

Parts diagram and parts list for the T2 transfer assembly.

Figure 2-793 T2 transfer assembly

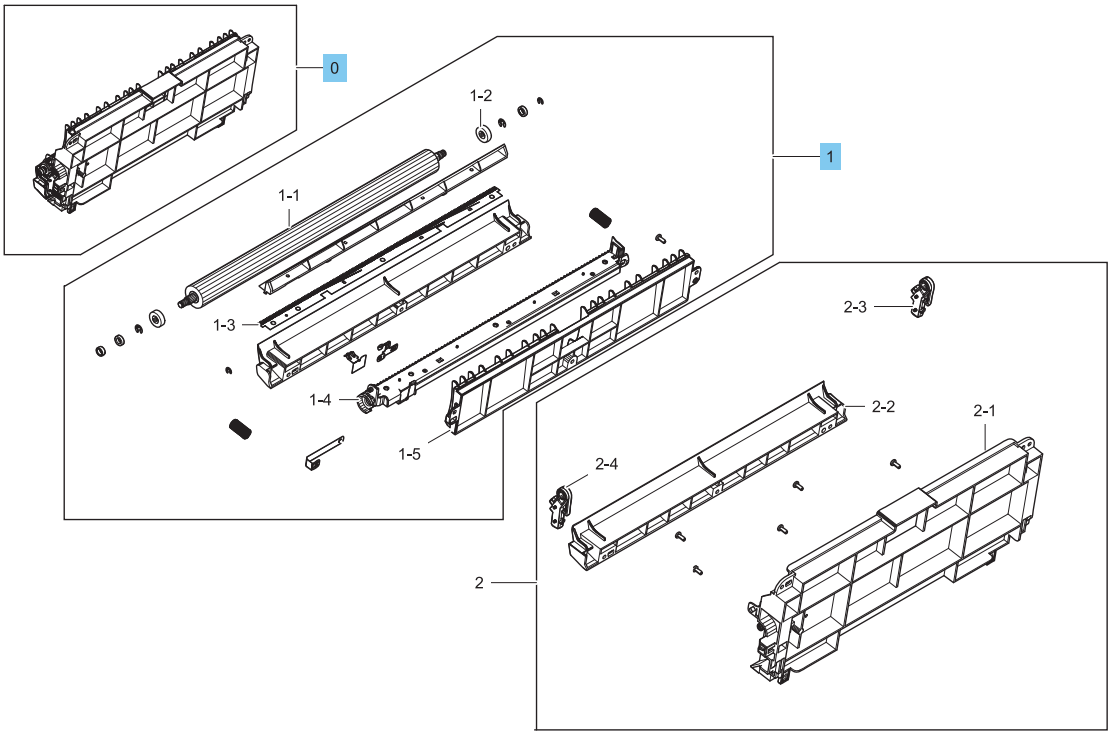


Table 2-106 T2 transfer assembly

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
0	JC93-01078A	T2 transfer	1	Not applicable
1	JC93-01080A	T2 transfer roller assembly	1	Not applicable

ADF (LX models)

View the ADF (LX models) exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

ADF (LX models)

Parts diagram and parts list for the ADF (LX models).

Figure 2-794 ADF (LX models)

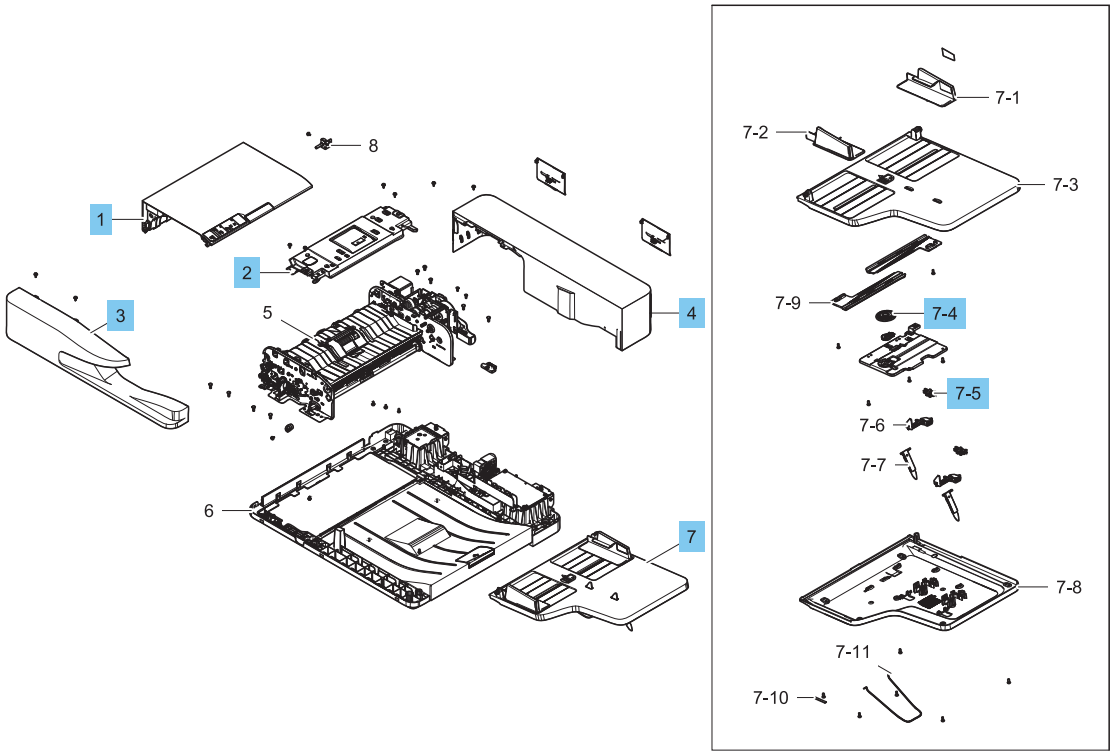


Table 2-107 ADF (LX models)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1	JC97-04853A	ADF cover open (LX)	1	Removal and replacement: Document feeder (ADF) jam access cover (LX) on page 715
2	JC97-04856B	ADF pickup (LX)	1	Not applicable
3	JC63-05563A	ADF, front cover (LX)	1	Not applicable
4	JC63-05561A	ADF, cover rear (LX)	1	Not applicable
7	JC97-04859A	ADF stacker (LX)	1	Removal and replacement: Document feeder (ADF) input tray (LX) on page 721
7-4	JC66-04079A	ADF pinion gear (LX)	1	Not applicable
7-5	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	1	Not applicable

Removal and replacement: ADF whole unit (LX)

Learn how to remove and replace the ADF whole unit (LX bundles).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the ADF whole unit (LX/du bundles).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-108 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-05074A	Document feeder whole unit assembly (LX models)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

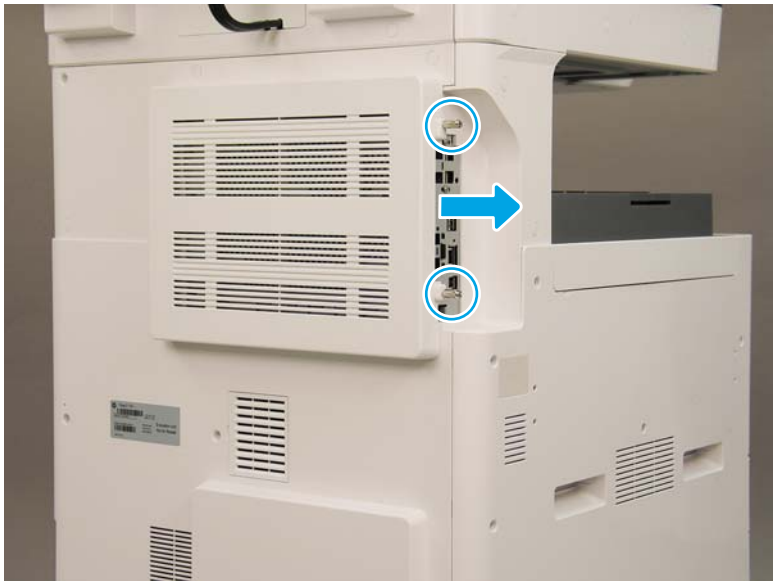
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-795 Remove the formatter cover

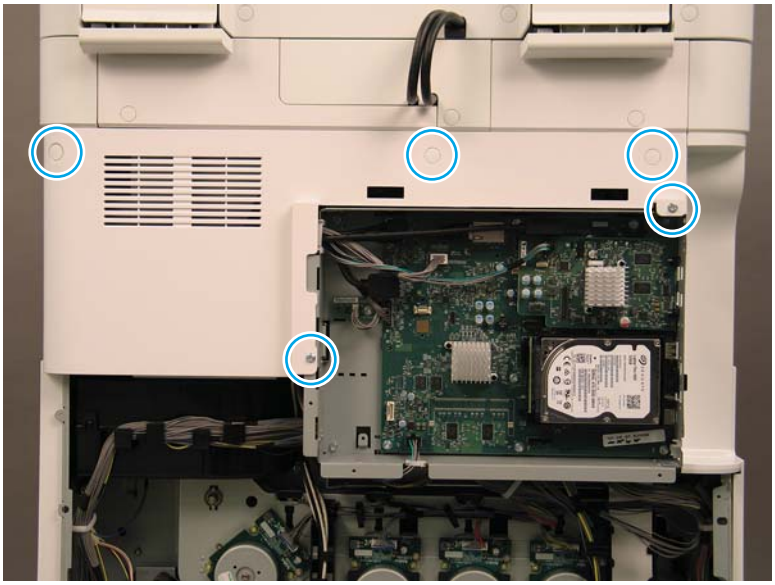


Remove the upper rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the upper rear cover.

- Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-796 Remove the upper rear cover

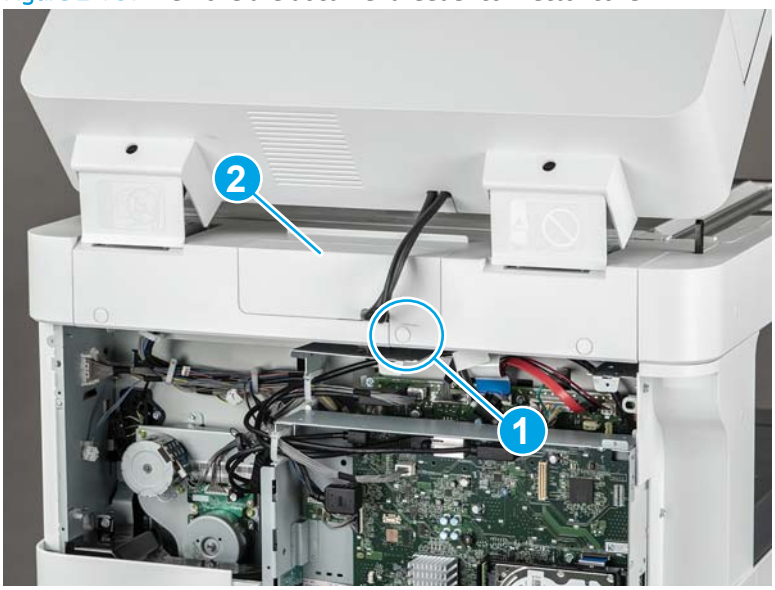


Remove the document feeder whole unit (LX)

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder whole unit (LX).

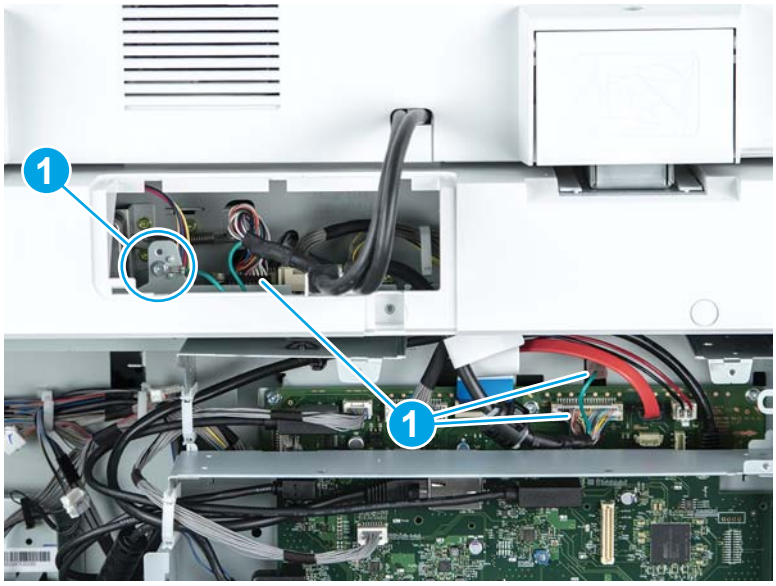
1. Remover one screw cap and screw (callout 1), and then remove the document feeder connector cover (callout 2).

Figure 2-797 Remove the document feeder connector cover



2. Remove one screw to release the ground wire (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

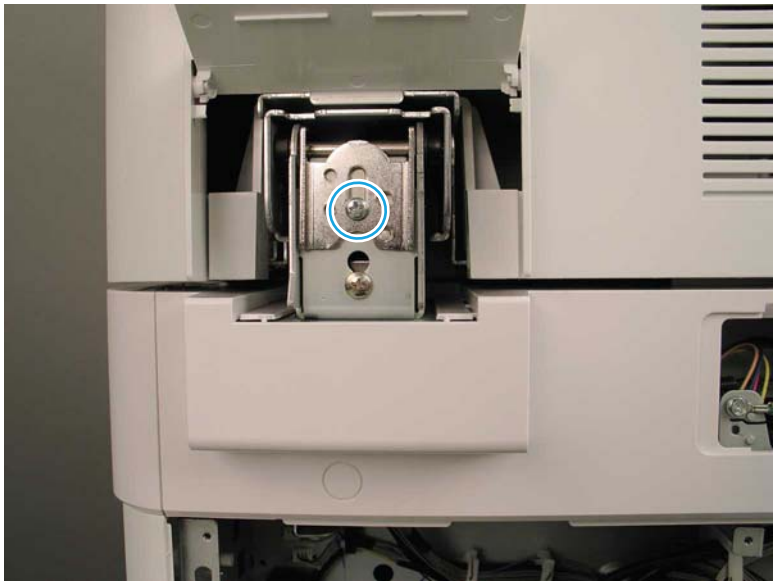
Figure 2-798 Remove the document feeder harness and ground wire



3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the PCA - ADF HIC. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

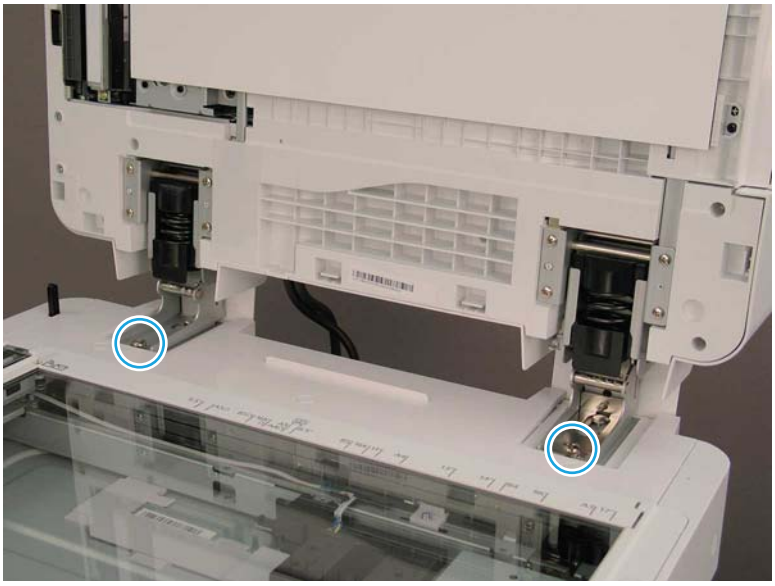
4. Release one screw on each hinge stop on the back of the document feeder.

Figure 2-799 Release the document feeder hinge screws



5. Remove two screws. Slide the assembly back, and then lift the document feeder to remove.

Figure 2-800 Lift and remove the document feeder



NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Document feeder (ADF) jam access cover (LX)

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder jam access cover (LX).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder jam access cover (LX).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-109 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-04853A	Jam access cover (LX)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

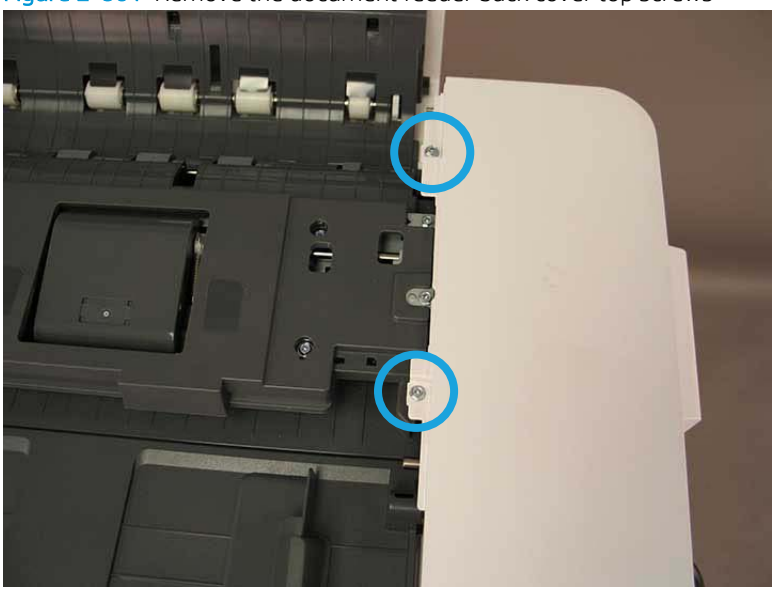
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover.

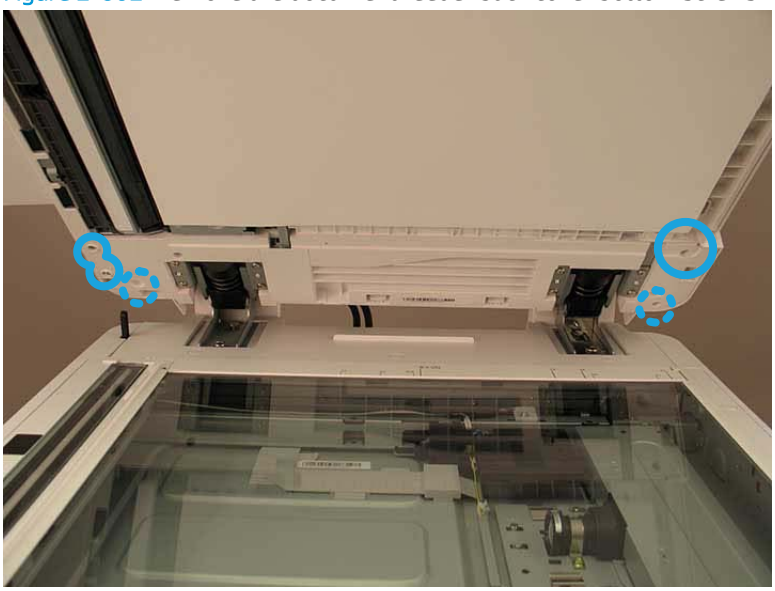
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

   Figure 2-801 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws

2. Using a JIS #2 short-shaft screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

   Figure 2-802 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

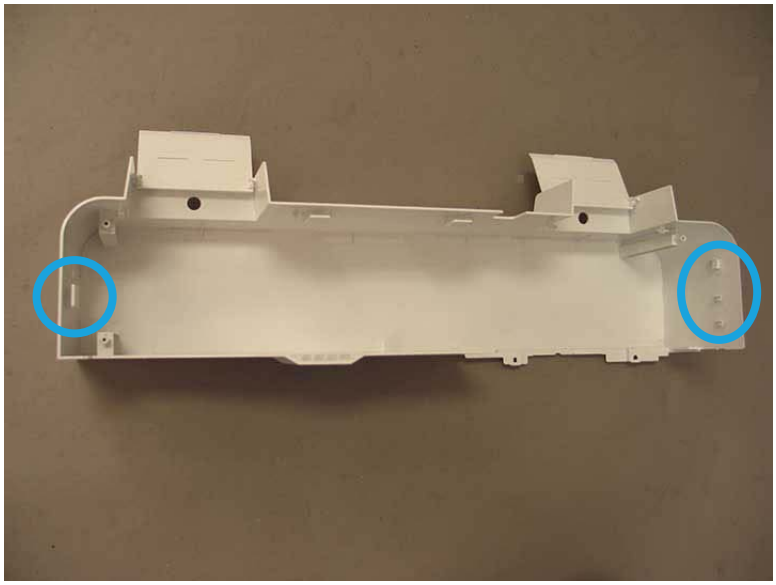
   

3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-803 Release one tab on the right side of back cover

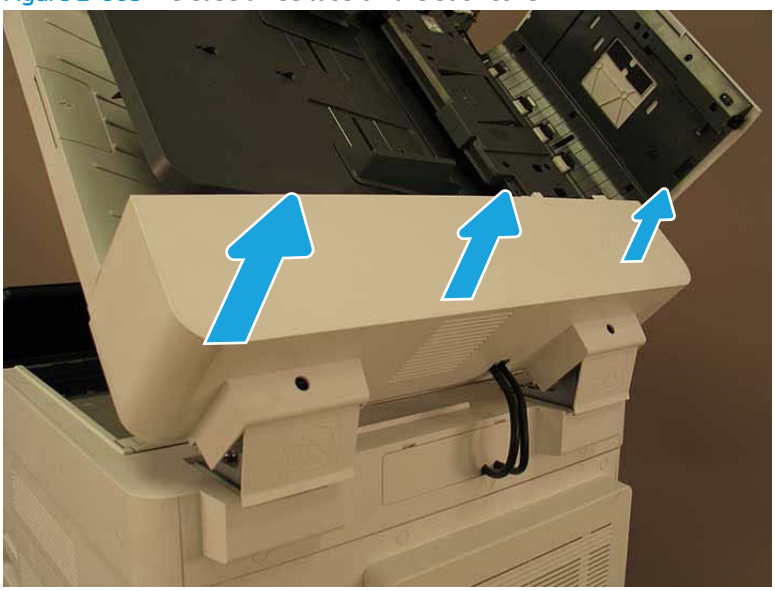
4. Before proceeding, take note of the tabs on the underside of the cover.

Figure 2-804 Note of the tabs on the underside of the cover



5. Release three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

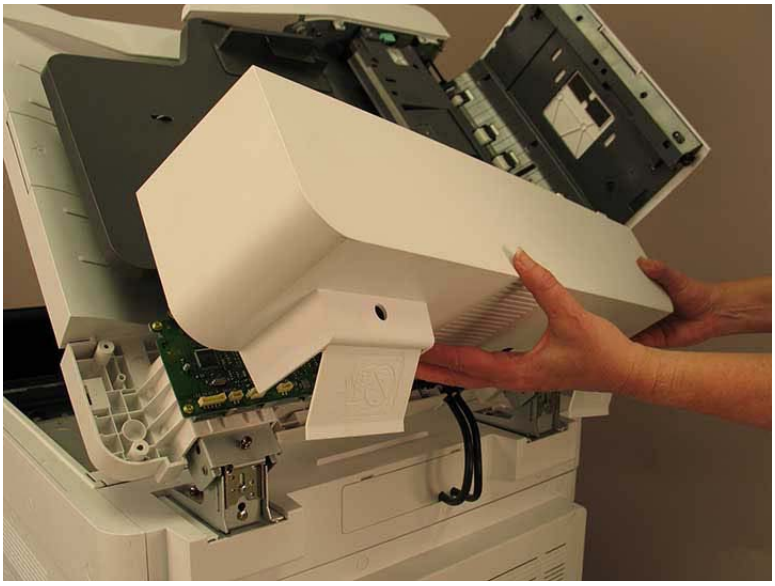
Figure 2-805 Release three tabs on the back cover



6. Remove the back cover from left to right as shown.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the cover from the right to left.

Figure 2-806 Remove the ADF back cover

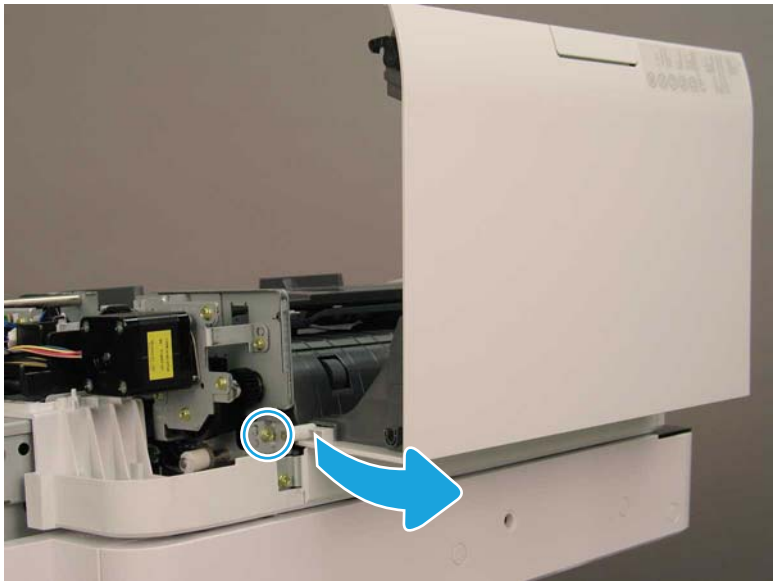


Remove the document feeder jam access cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder jam access cover.

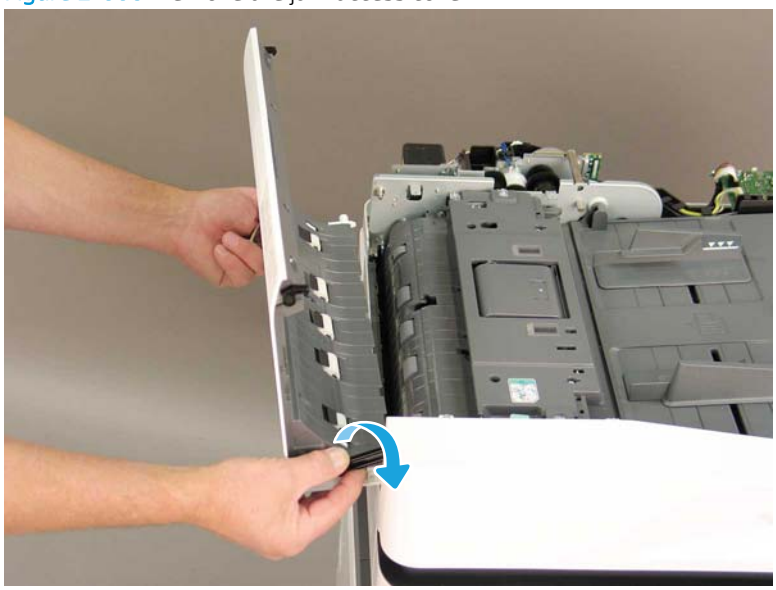
1. Open the jam access cover, and then remove one screw.

Figure 2-807 Remove the jam access cover screw



2. Remove the pivot pin, and then pivot the cover and release the hinge to remove the jam access cover.

Figure 2-808 Remove the jam access cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Document feeder (ADF) input tray (LX)

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder input tray (LX).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder input tray (LX).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-110 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-04859A	ADF stacker (LX)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

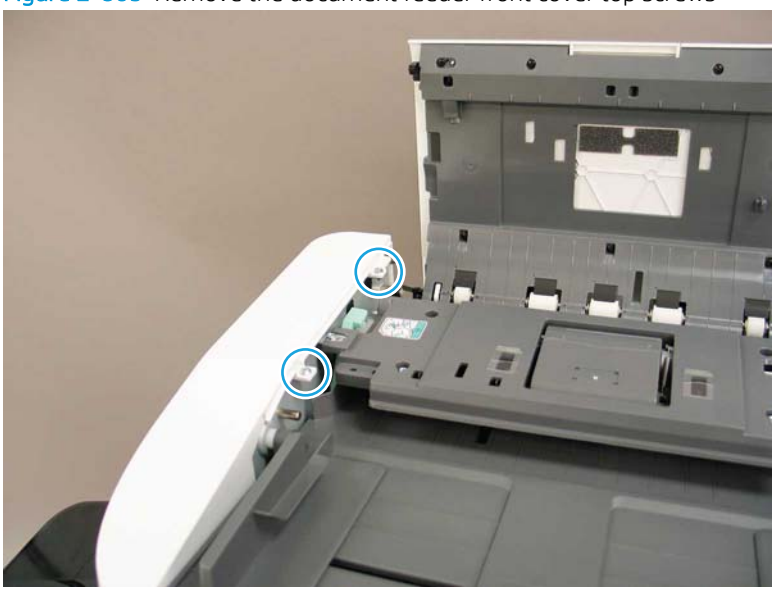
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover.

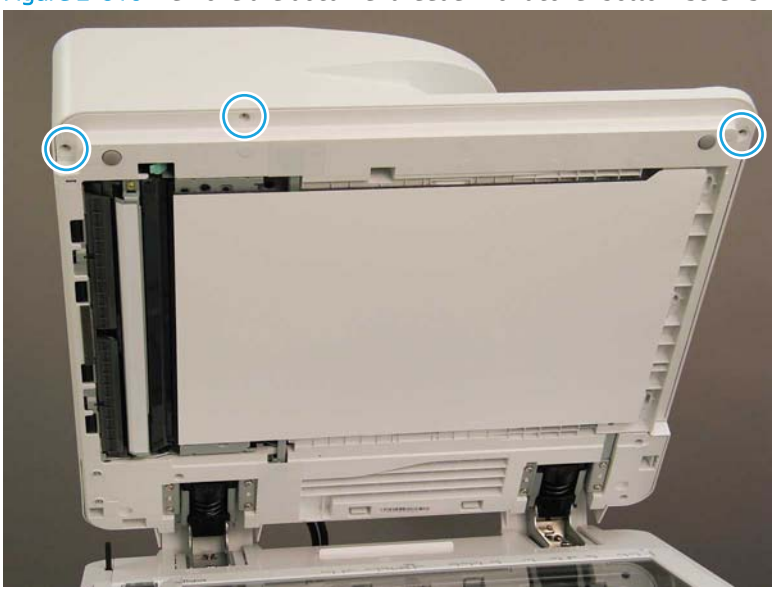
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

   Figure 2-809 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws

2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

   Figure 2-810 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws

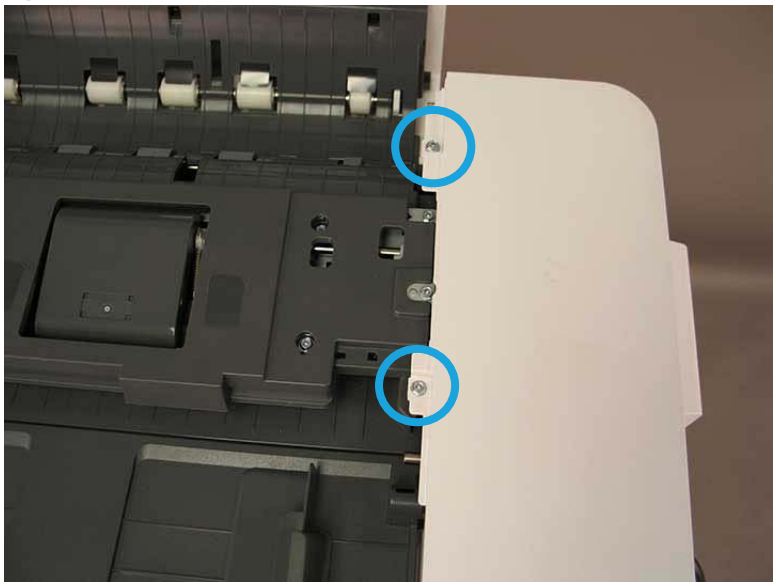
   

Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover.

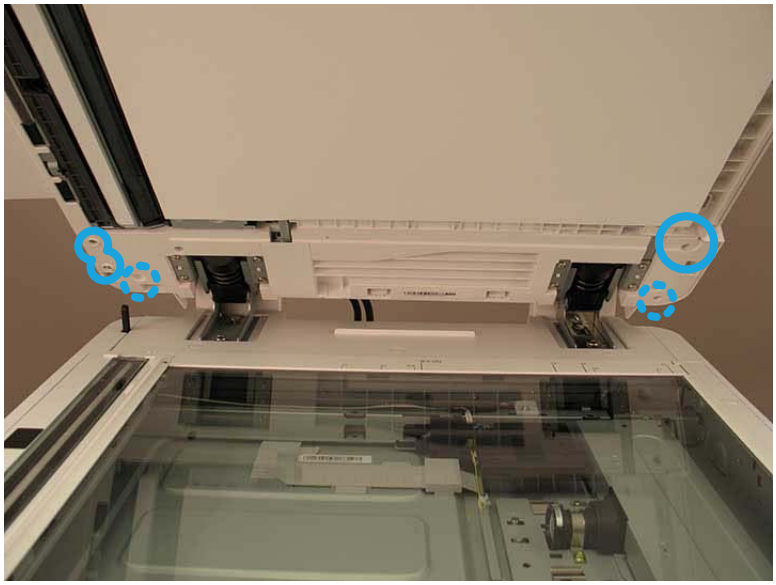
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-811 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Using a JIS #2 short-shaft screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-812 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

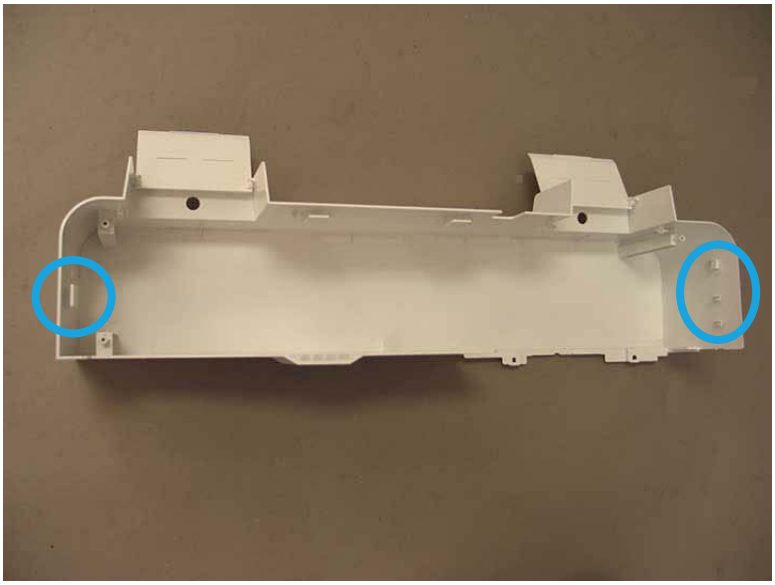


3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-813 Release one tab on the right side of back cover

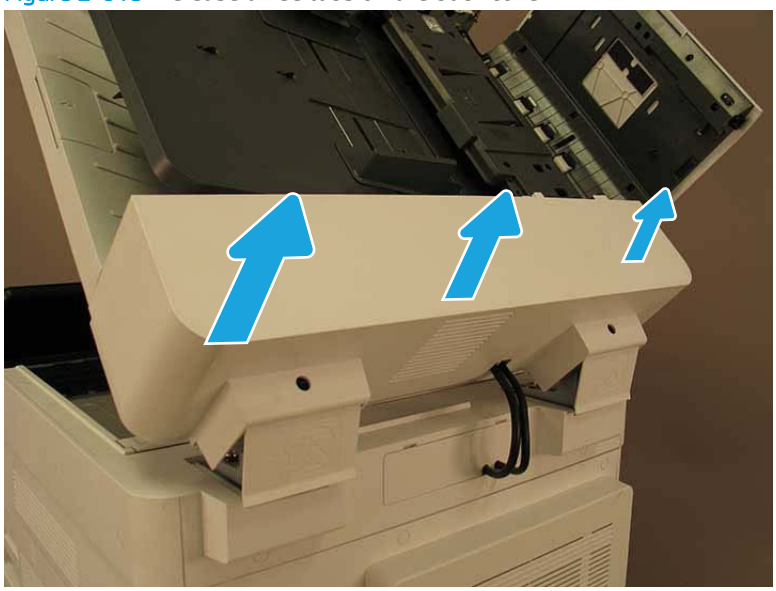
4. Before proceeding, take note of the tabs on the underside of the cover.

Figure 2-814 Note of the tabs on the underside of the cover



5. Release three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

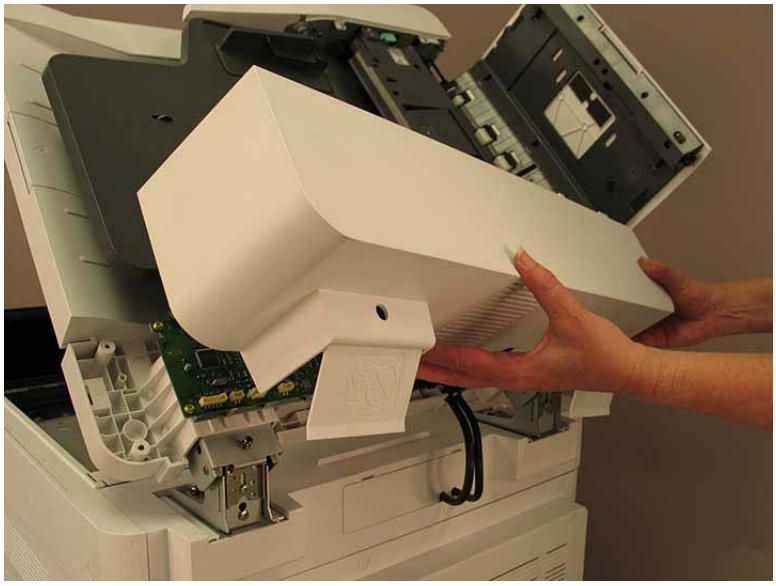
Figure 2-815 Release three tabs on the back cover



6. Remove the back cover from left to right as shown.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the cover from the right to left.

Figure 2-816 Remove the ADF back cover



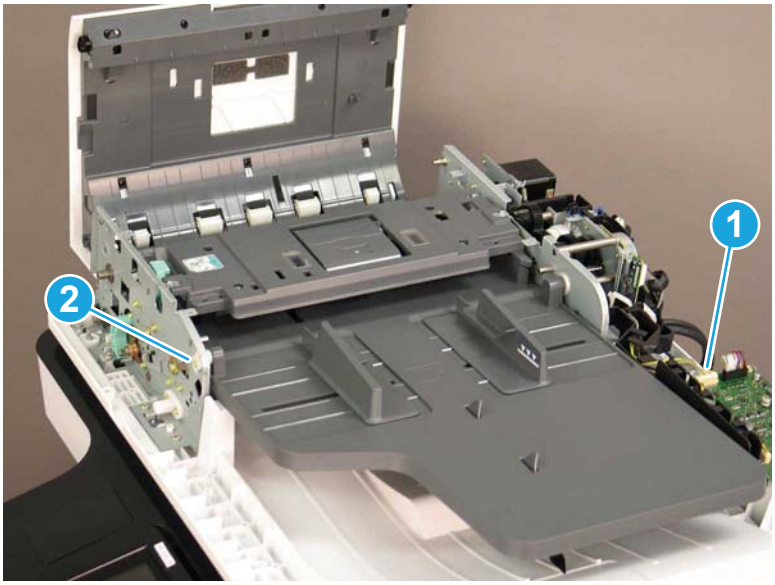
Remove the document feeder (ADF) input tray

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) input tray.

▲ Disconnect one connector on document feeder board (callout 1), remove one screw and hinge pin (callout 2), and then remove the input tray.

NOTE: Carefully guide the cable out of the chassis while removing the tray.

Figure 2-817 Remove the input tray connector, screw, and hinge pin



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Contact image sensor (CIS)

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder CIS (LX).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder CIS (LX).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-111 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-04920A	Contact image sensor (CIS)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

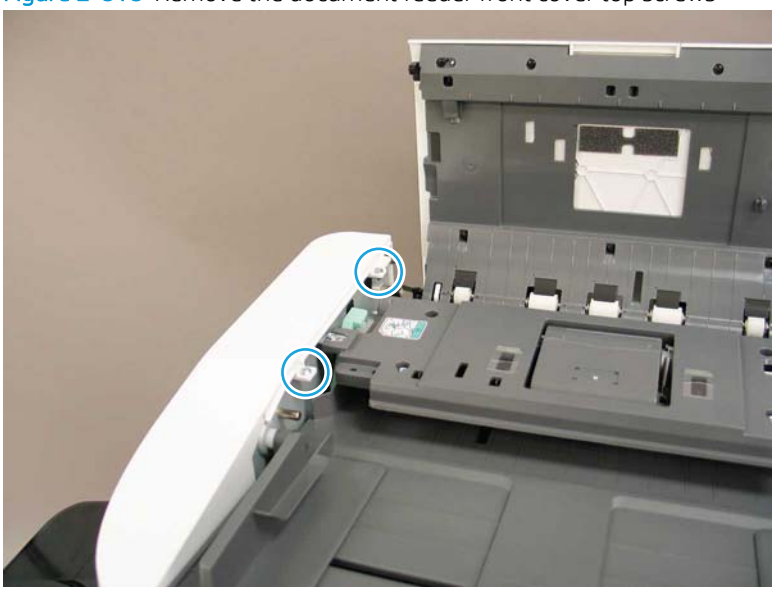
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover.

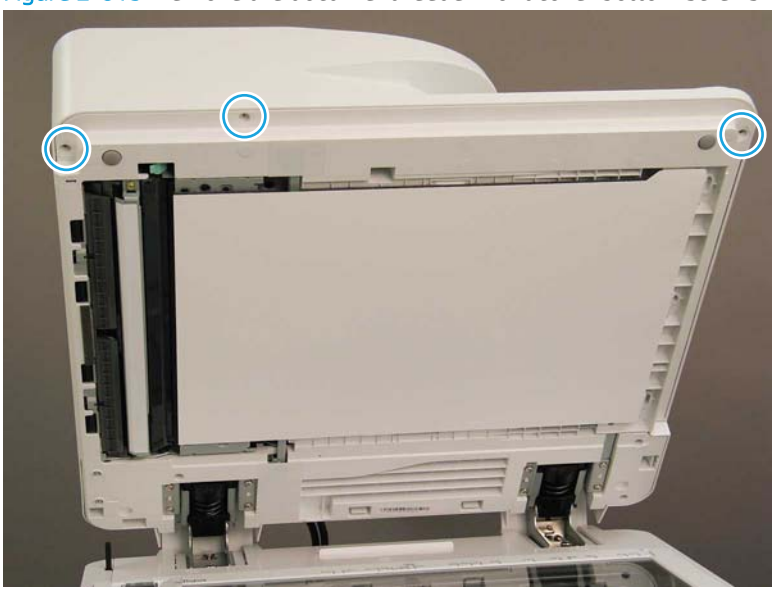
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

   Figure 2-818 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws

2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

   Figure 2-819 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws

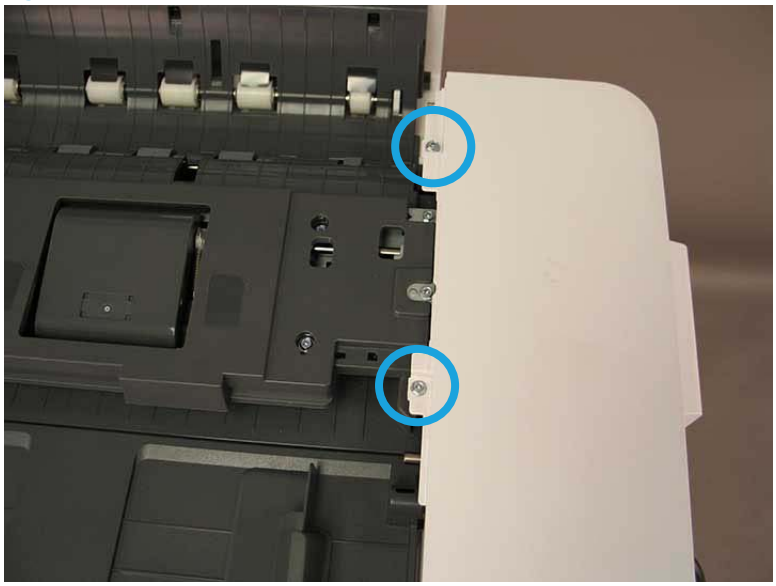
   

Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover.

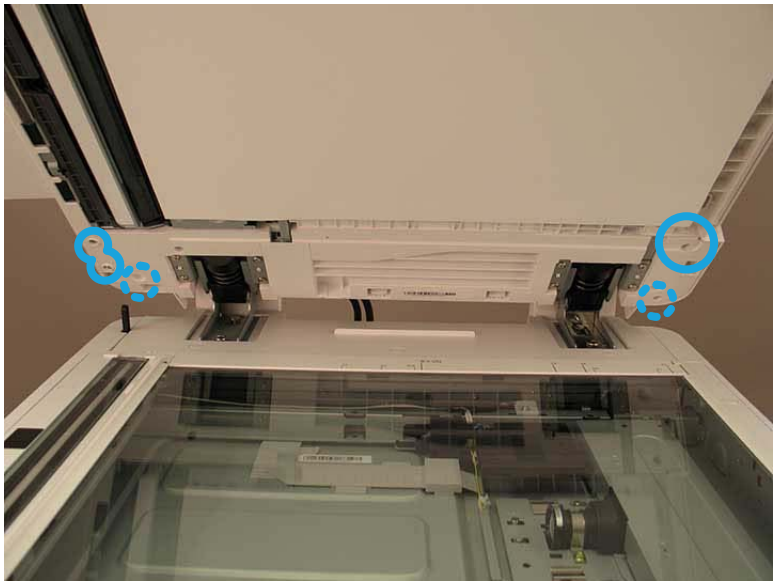
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-820 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Using a JIS #2 short-shaft screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-821 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

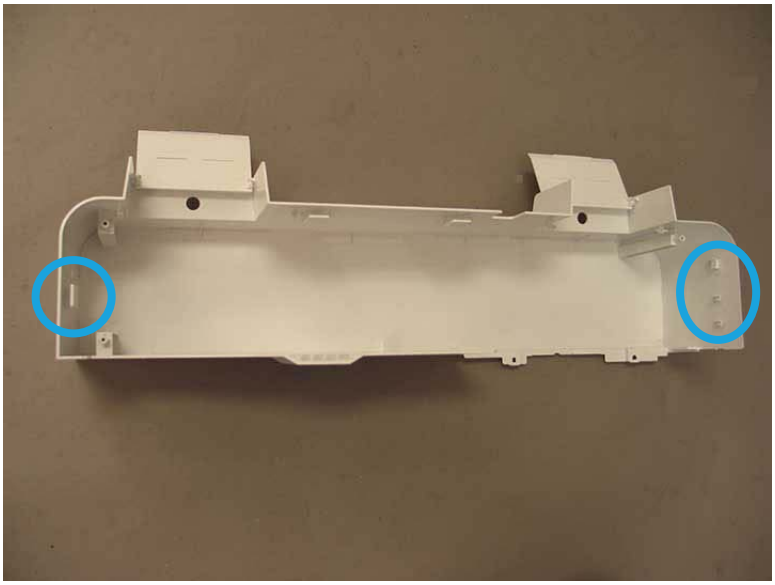


3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-822 Release one tab on the right side of back cover

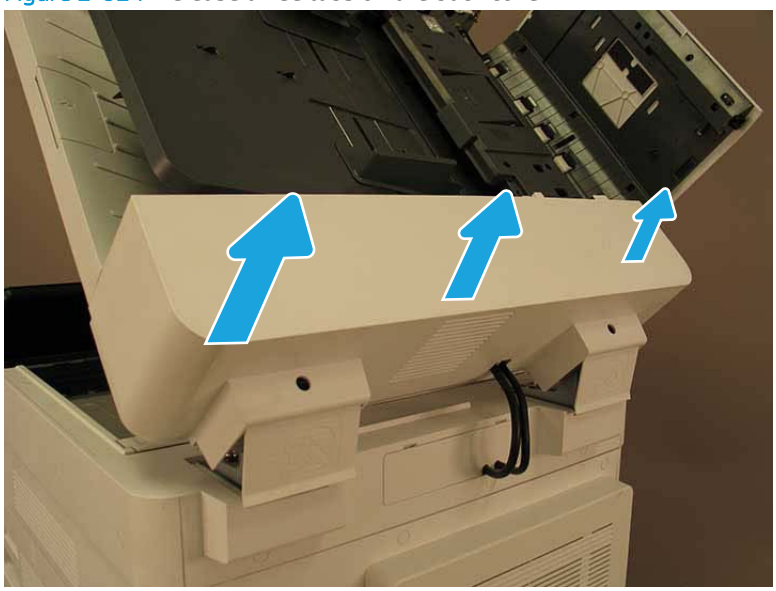
4. Before proceeding, take note of the tabs on the underside of the cover.

Figure 2-823 Note of the tabs on the underside of the cover



5. Release three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

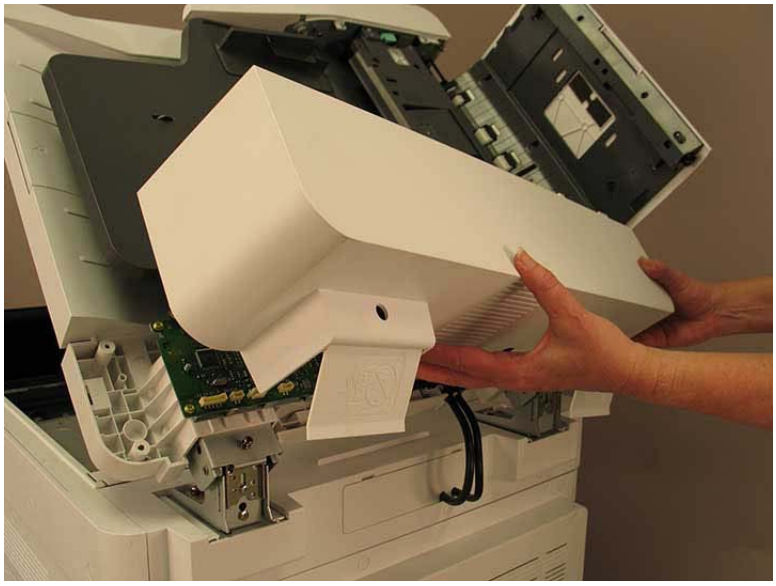
Figure 2-824 Release three tabs on the back cover



6. Remove the back cover from left to right as shown.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the cover from the right to left.

Figure 2-825 Remove the ADF back cover



Remove the pick and feed roller assembly

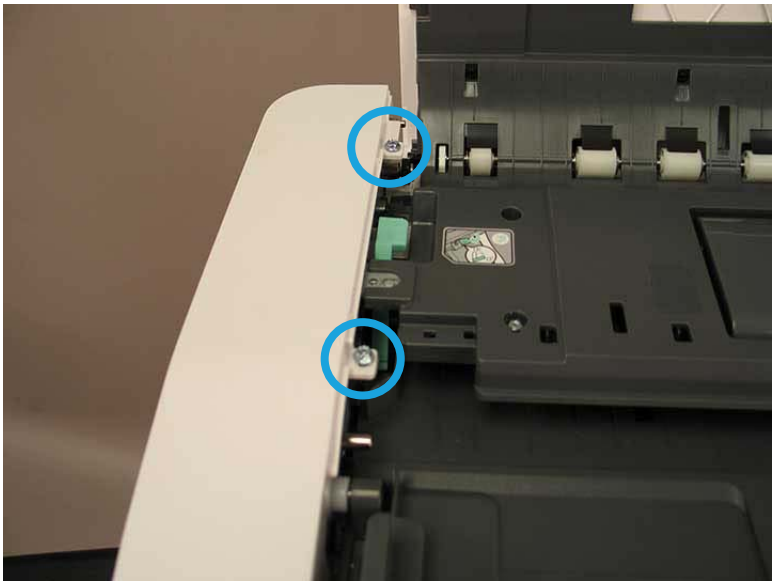
Follow these steps to remove the pick and feed roller assembly.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 2-826 Remove four screws

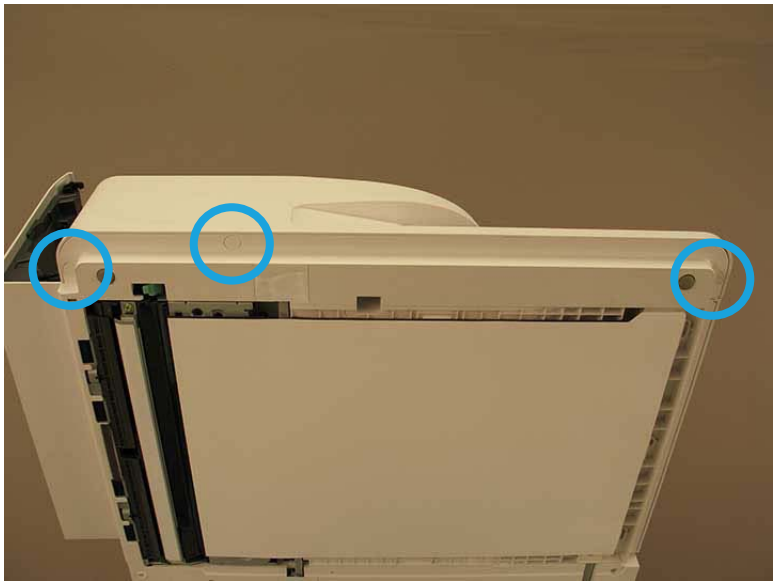
2. Remove two screws on the front cover.

Figure 2-827 Remove two screws on front cover



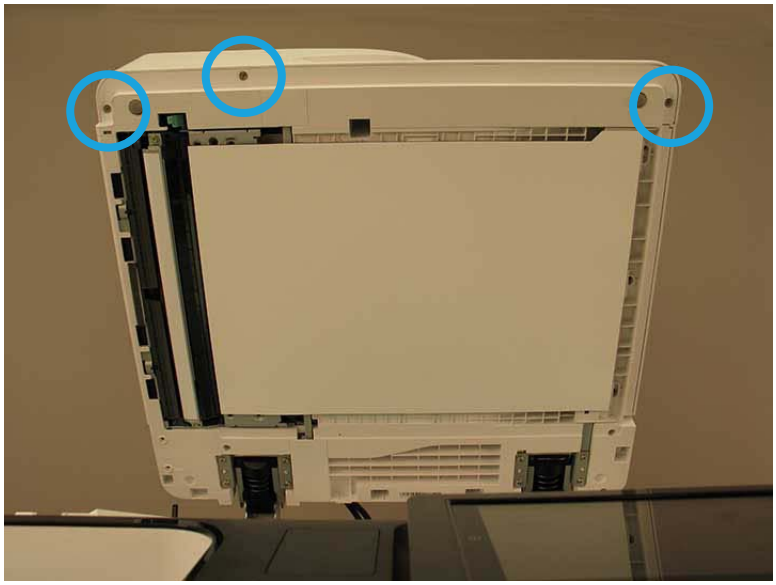
3. Open the ADF and then remove three screw caps.

Figure 2-828 Remove three screw caps



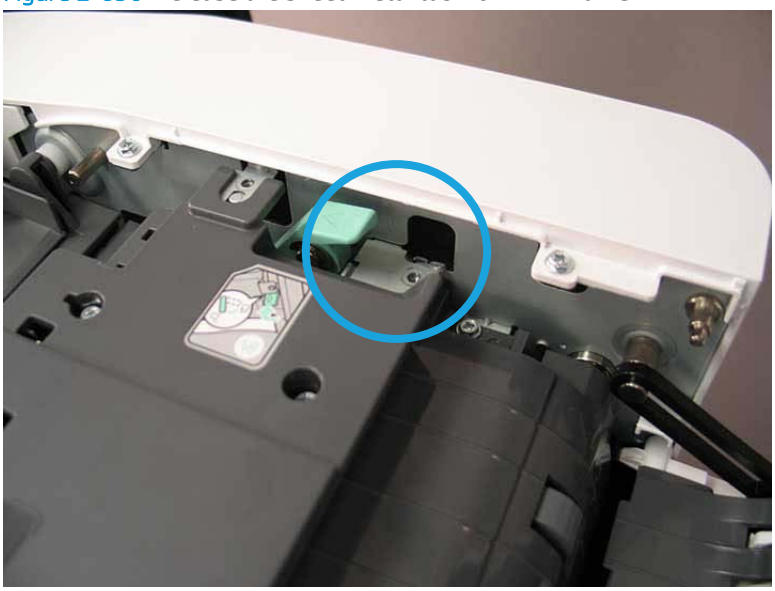
4. Remove three screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 2-829 Remove three screws and front cover



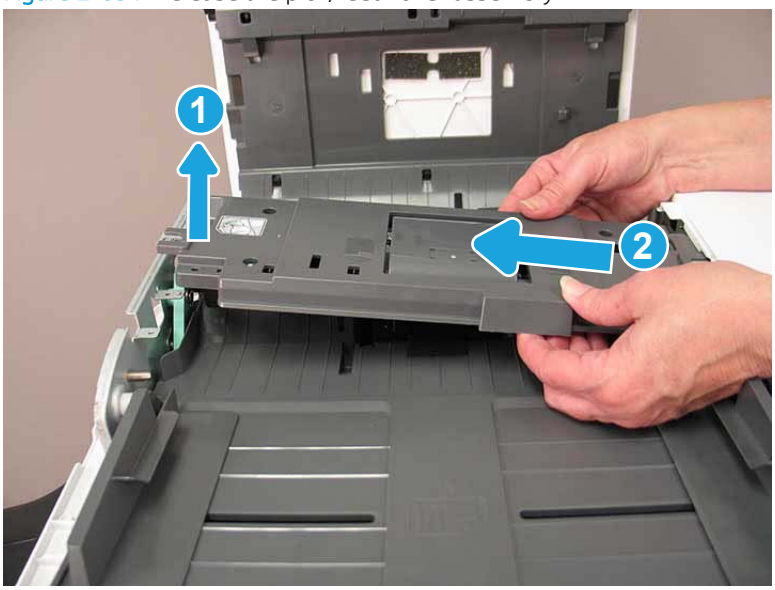
5. Rotate the pick/feed roller assembly to release the sheet metal tab from ADF frame.

Figure 2-830 Release the sheet metal tab from ADF frame



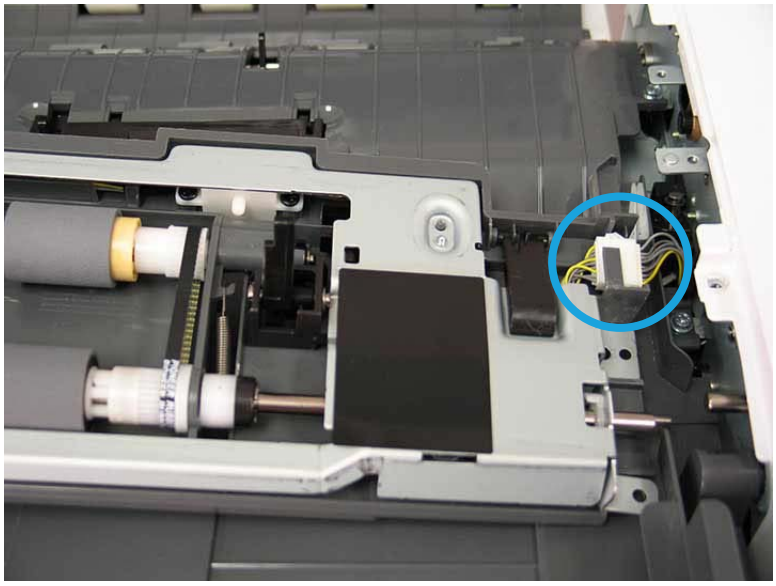
6. To remove the pick/feed roller assembly lift up on the front side (callout 1) and, then slide towards the front (callout 2) to release the pick/feed roller assembly.

Figure 2-831 Release the pick/feed roller assembly



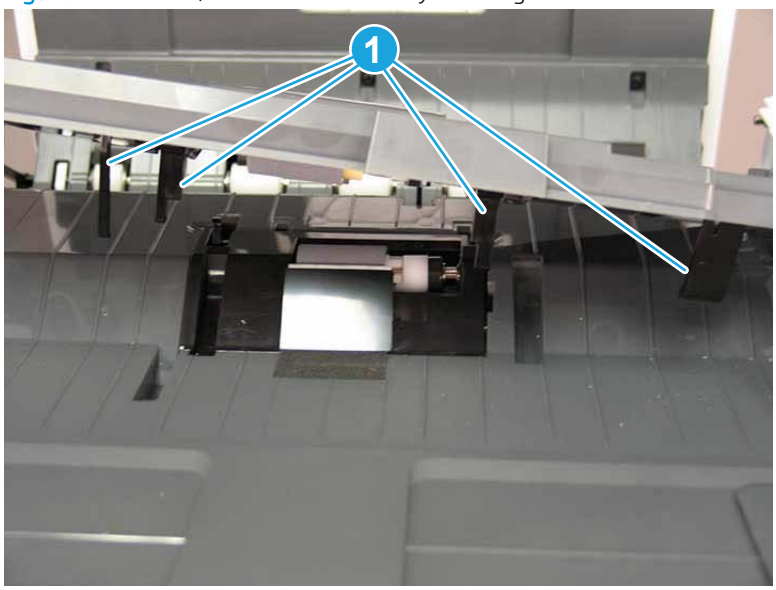
7. Rotate the roller assembly over, and then disconnect one connectors. Remove the document feeder pick roller assembly.

Figure 2-832 Remove the document feeder pick roller assembly



Reinstallation tip: Note the four flags (callout 1) on the bottom of the pick/feed roller assembly. When reinstalling, hold up the flags while reinstall to allow for proper installation.

Figure 2-833 Pick/Feed roller assembly four flags



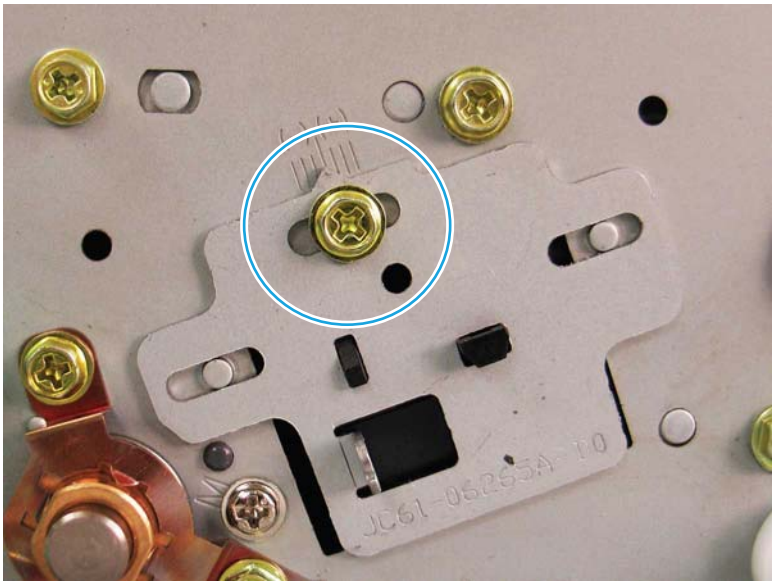
Remove the CIS assembly

Follow these steps to remove the CIS assembly.

1. Remove one screw, and then remove the CIS front alignment cover.

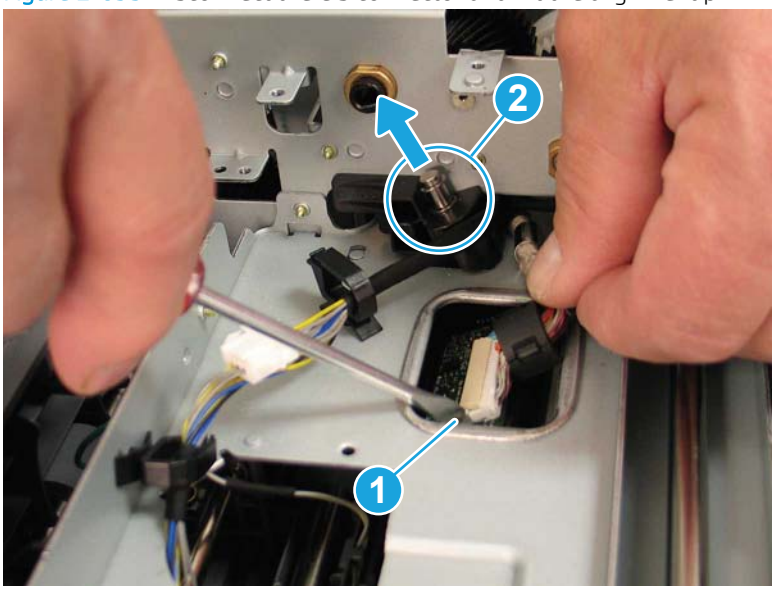
Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the CIS front alignment cover. The cover must be reinstalled in the same orientation.

Figure 2-834 Remove the CIS front alignment cover screws



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then lift the alignment pin to release the CIS assembly (callout 2).

Figure 2-835 Disconnect the CIS connector and lift the alignment pin



3. Remove the CIS assembly from the chassis.

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Document feeder (ADF) main motor (LX)

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder main motor (LX).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of this procedure for HP Color LaserJet MFP.

View a video of this procedure for HP LaserJet MFP

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-112 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00163A	Main motor assembly (LX)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

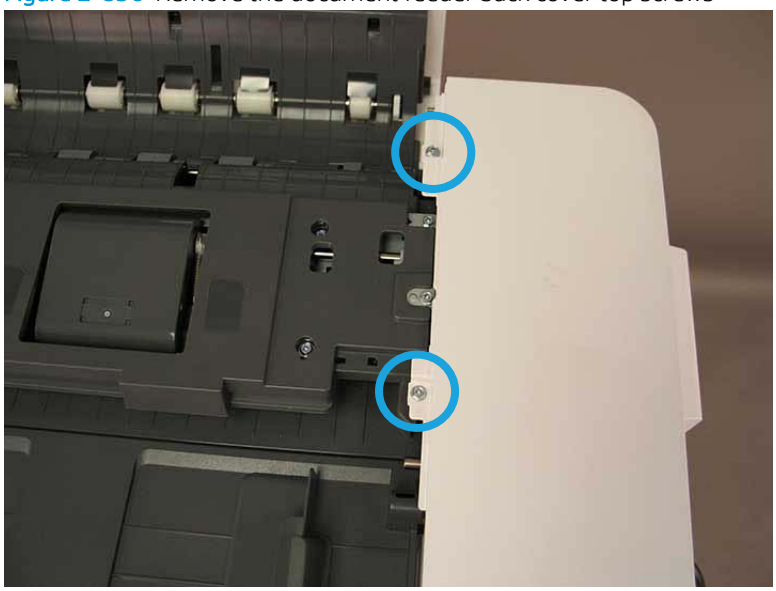
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover.

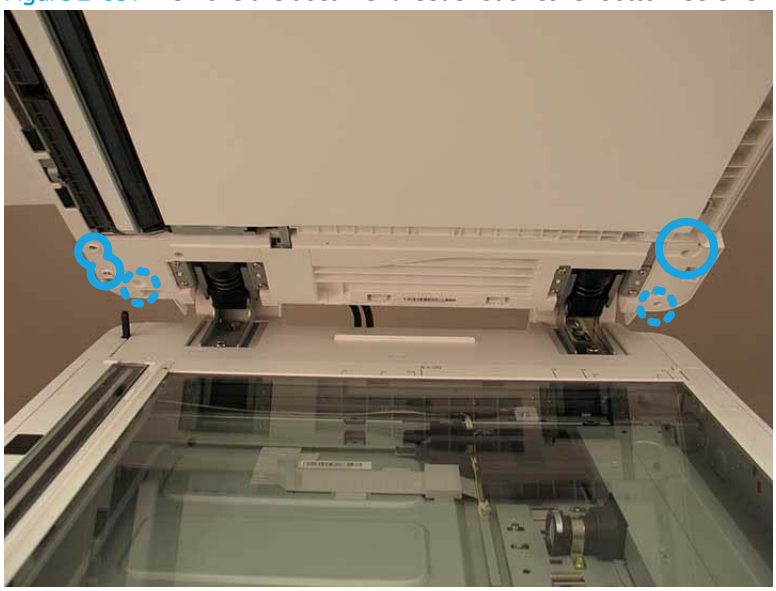
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

   Figure 2-836 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws

2. Using a JIS #2 short-shaft screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

   Figure 2-837 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

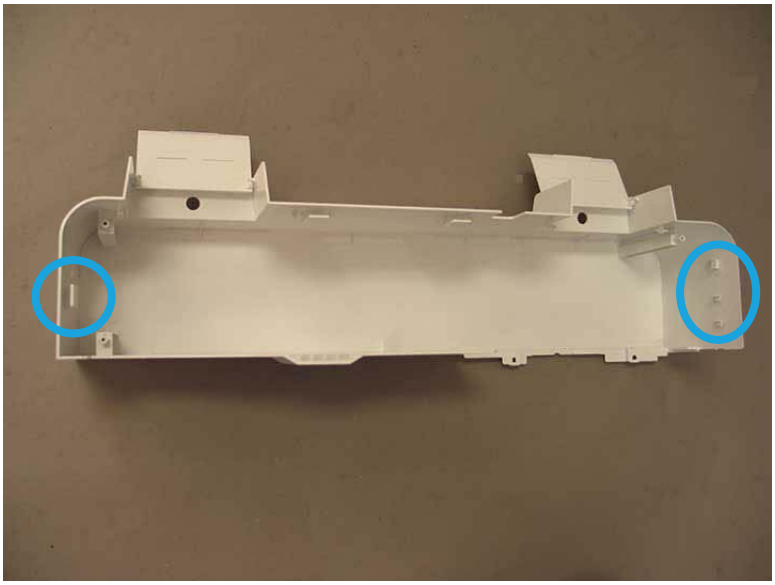
   

3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-838 Release one tab on the right side of back cover

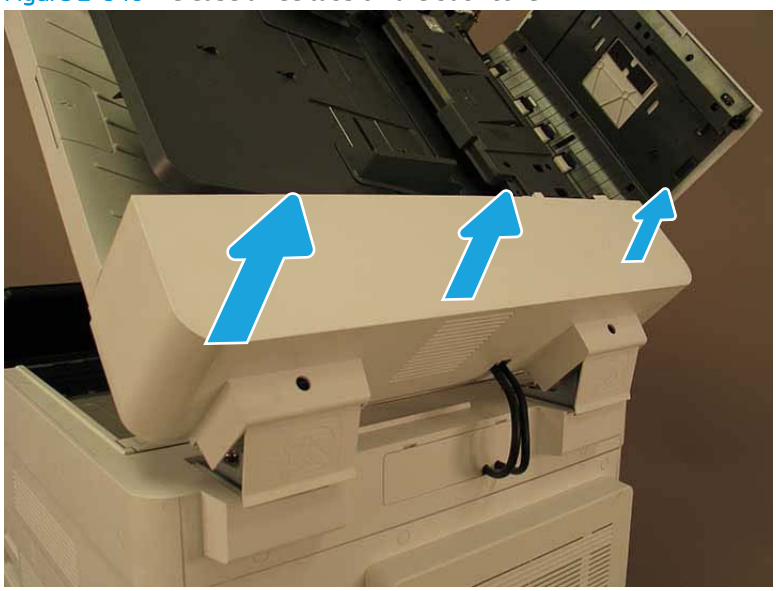
4. Before proceeding, take note of the tabs on the underside of the cover.

Figure 2-839 Note of the tabs on the underside of the cover



5. Release three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

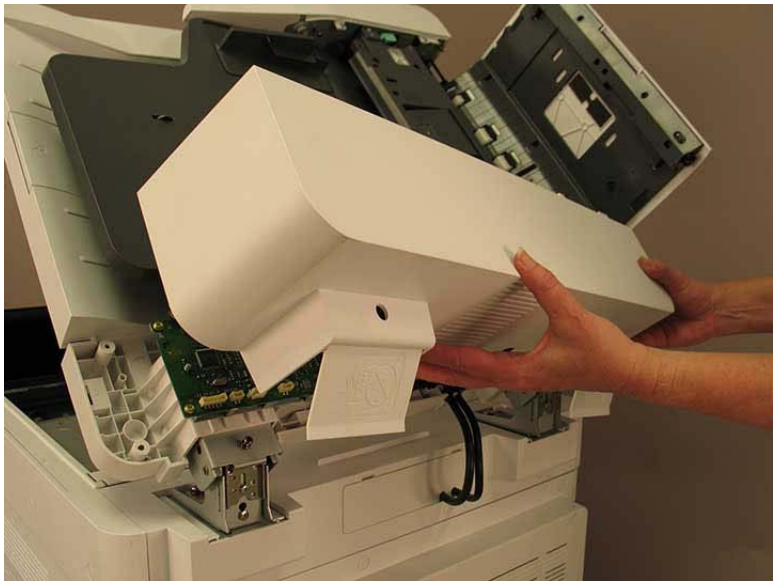
Figure 2-840 Release three tabs on the back cover



6. Remove the back cover from left to right as shown.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the cover from the right to left.

Figure 2-841 Remove the ADF back cover

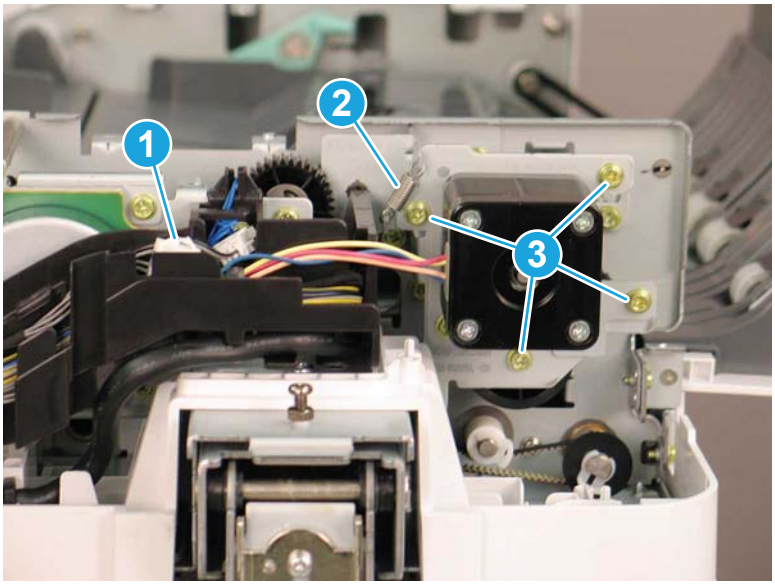


Remove the main motor

Follow these steps to remove the main motor.

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove the tension spring (callout 2), and then remove four screws (callout 3).

Figure 2-842 Remove the main motor connector, spring, and screws



2. Carefully lift the motor out while releasing the gear belt.

Reinstallation tip:

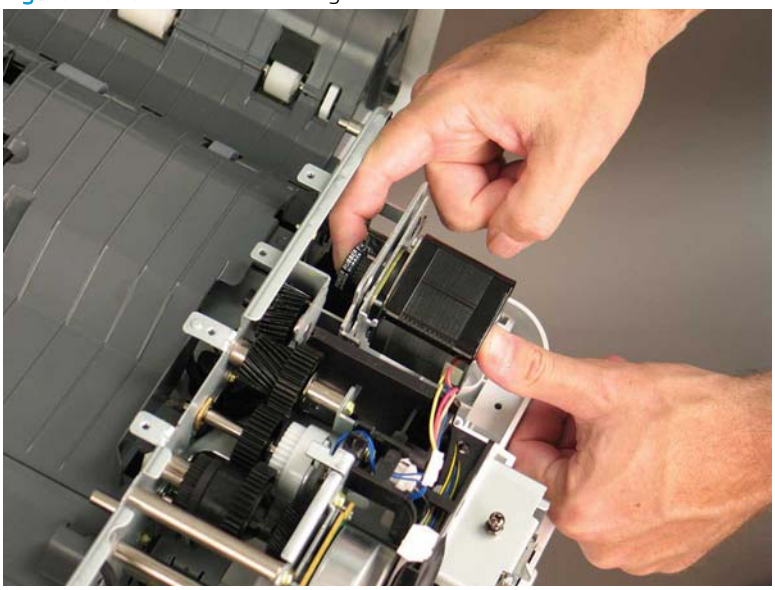
a. Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

b. Loosely install the motor mount screws.

c. Install the tension spring.

d. Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

Figure 2-843 Main motor and gear belt



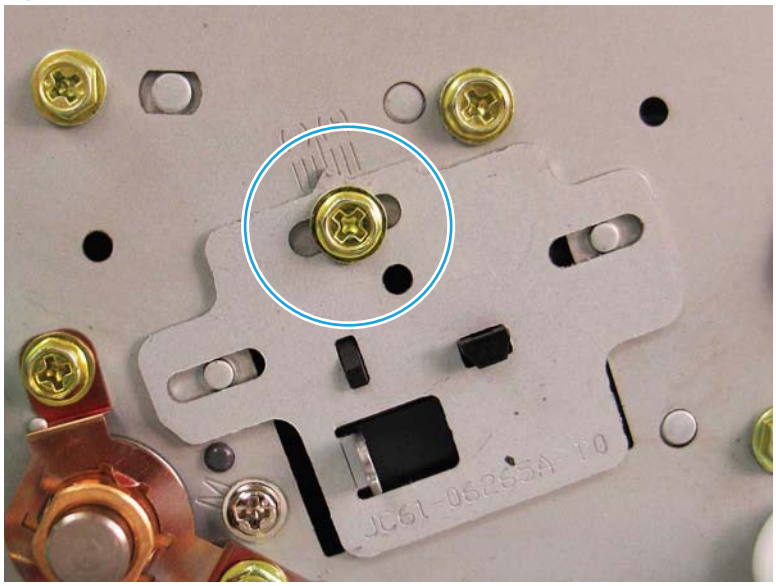
Remove the CIS assembly

Follow these steps to remove the CIS assembly.

1. Remove one screw, and then remove the CIS front alignment cover.

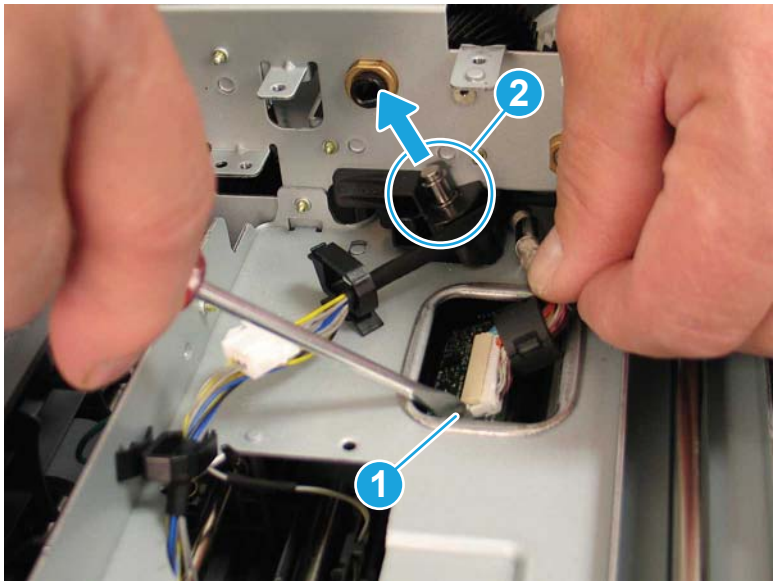
Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the CIS front alignment cover. The cover must be reinstalled in the same orientation.

Figure 2-844 Remove the CIS front alignment cover screws



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then lift the alignment pin to release the CIS assembly (callout 2).

Figure 2-845 Disconnect the CIS connector and lift the alignment pin



3. Remove the CIS assembly from the chassis.

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX models)

View the ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX models) exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX)

Parts diagram and parts list for the ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX models).

Figure 2-846 ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX models)

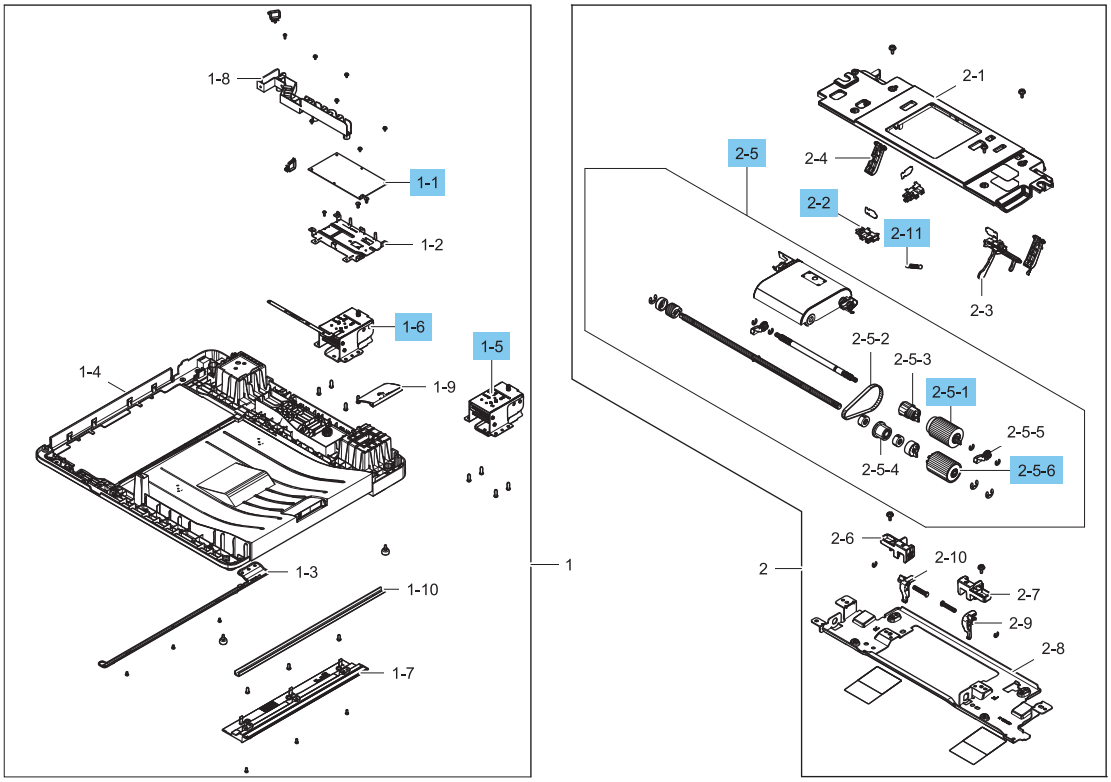


Table 2-113 ADF exterior and ADF pickup (LX models)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1-1	JC92-02962A	LX PCA	1	Removal and replacement: PCA-Scanner (LX) on page 753
1-5	JC97-04528A	LX, hinge r	1	Not applicable
1-6	JC97-04527A	LX, hinge l	1	Not applicable
2-2	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	1	Not applicable
2-5	JC97-04857A	Pick Roller Assy - LX	1	Removal and replacement: Document feeder (ADF) pick/feed roller assembly (LX) on page 747
2-5-1	JC97-04099A	LX pick roller	1	Not applicable
2-5-6	JC97-04860A	LX feed roller	1	Not applicable
2-11	6107-003581	LX - Spring	1	Not applicable

Removal and replacement: Document feeder (ADF) pick/feed roller assembly (LX)

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder pickup/feed roller assembly (LX/du models).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder pickup/feed roller assembly (LX).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-114 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-04857A	Pick feed roller assembly (LX)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

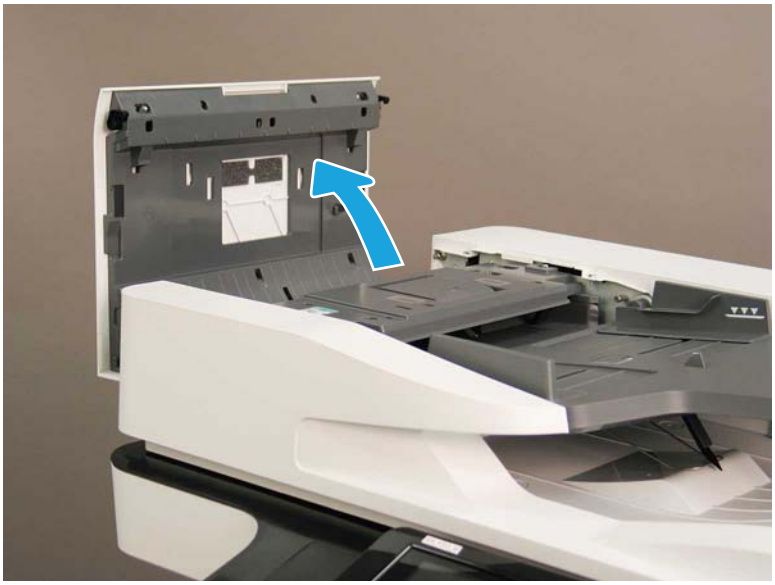
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the document feeder (ADF) (LX/du models) pick and feed roller assembly

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) (LX/du models) pick and feed roller assembly.

1. Open the document feeder cover.

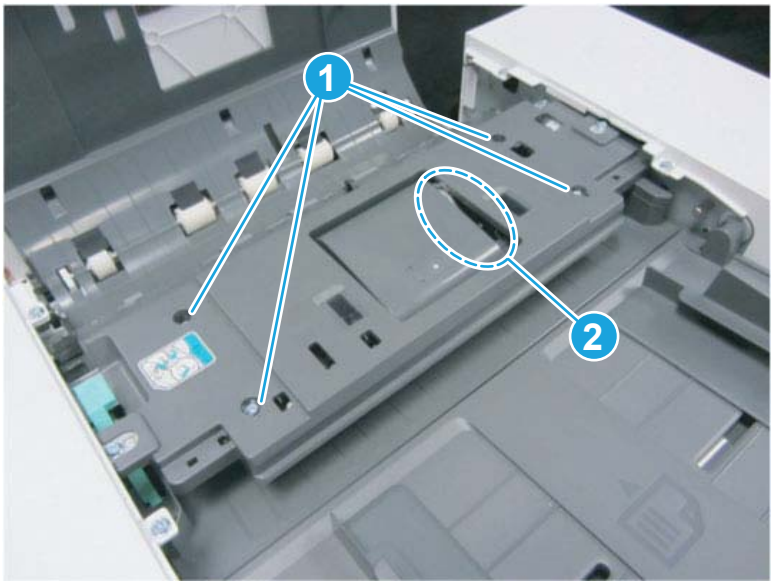
Figure 2-847 Open the document feeder cover



2. Remove four screws in the document feeder pick roller assembly cover.

NOTE: Remove one spring (callout 2; not shown)

Figure 2-848 Remove the document feeder cover screws

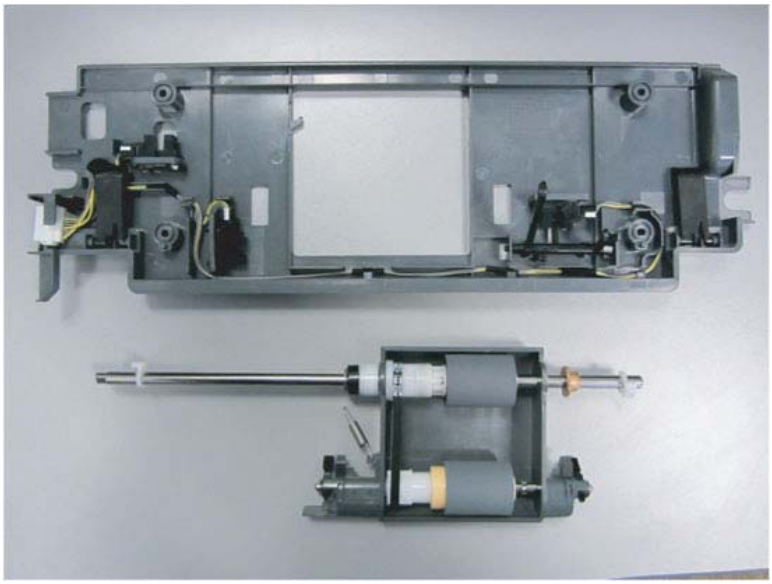


3. Rotate the document feeder pickup cover up, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 2-849 Turn the cover over and disconnect connector

4. Before proceeding, take note of the removed roller cover and the roller assembly.

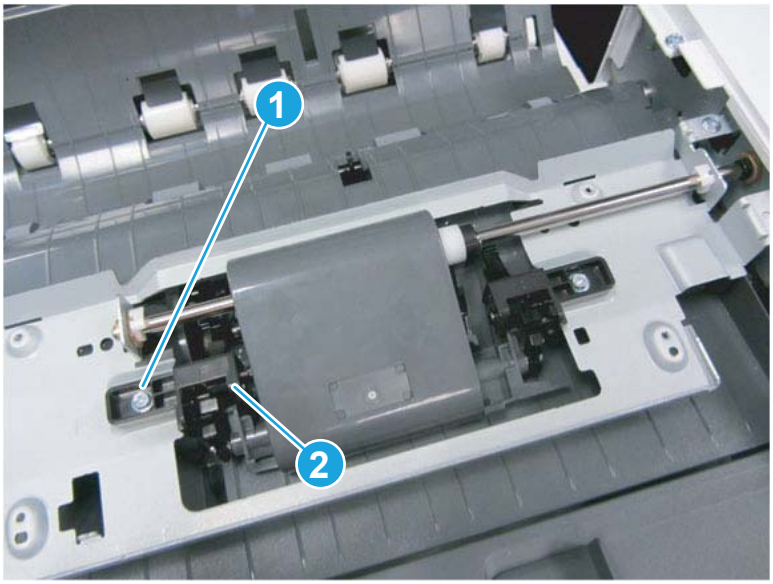
Figure 2-850 Document feeder pick roller cover and roller assembly



5. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sensor flag bracket (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: When the roller assembly is reinstalled, make sure that the sensor flags (on both sides of the assembly) are correctly installed and move freely.

Figure 2-851 Remove one screw and the sensor flag bracket

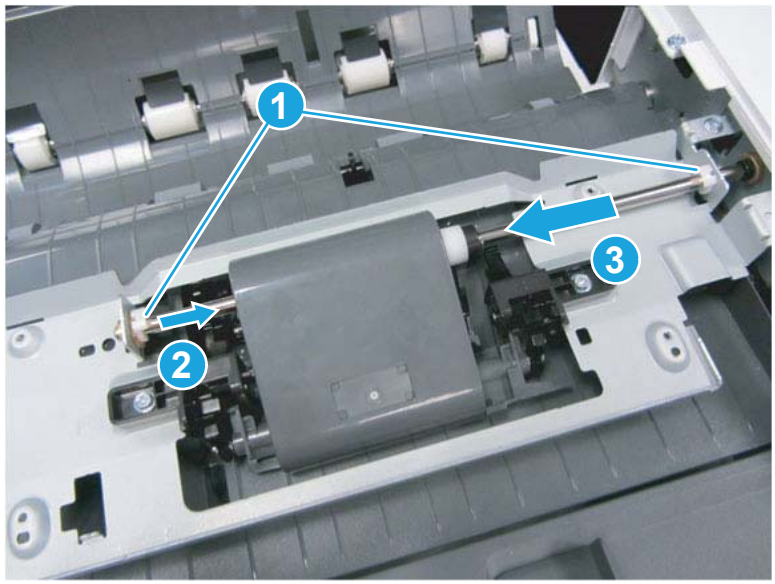


6. Release two plastic clips (callout 1), slide bushing toward roller assembly (callout 2), and then slide the shaft towards front of printer to release it (callout 3). Remove the roller assembly.

CAUTION: Do not damage the sensor flags when handling the roller assembly.

NOTE: The bushing is not captive. Do not lose it when handling the roller assembly.

Figure 2-852 Remove the document feeder pick roller assembly clips



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: PCA-Scanner (LX)

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder PCA (LX).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder PCA (LX).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-115 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC92-02962A	Document feeder PCA assembly (LX)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

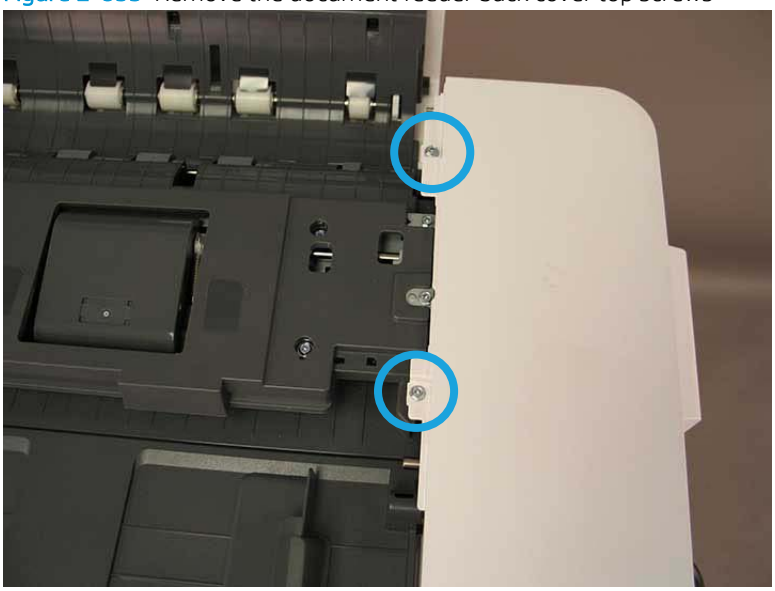
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover.

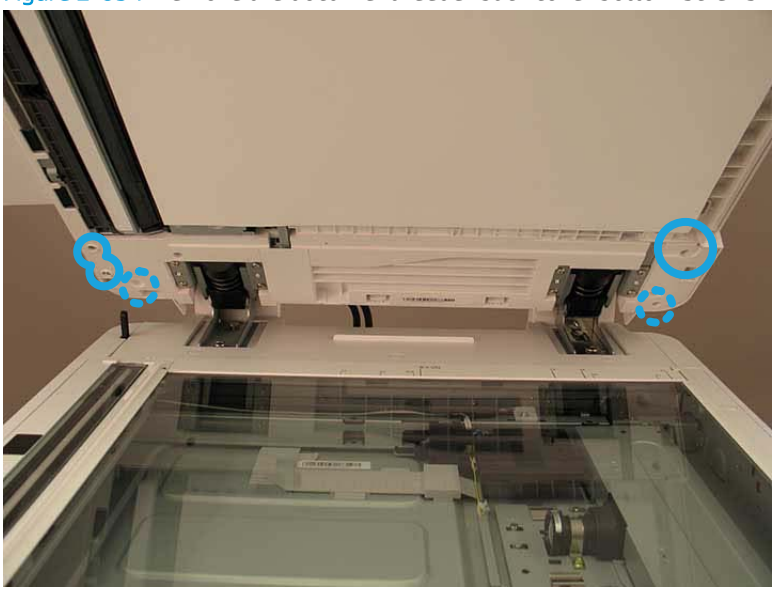
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

   Figure 2-853 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws

2. Using a JIS #2 short-shaft screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

   Figure 2-854 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

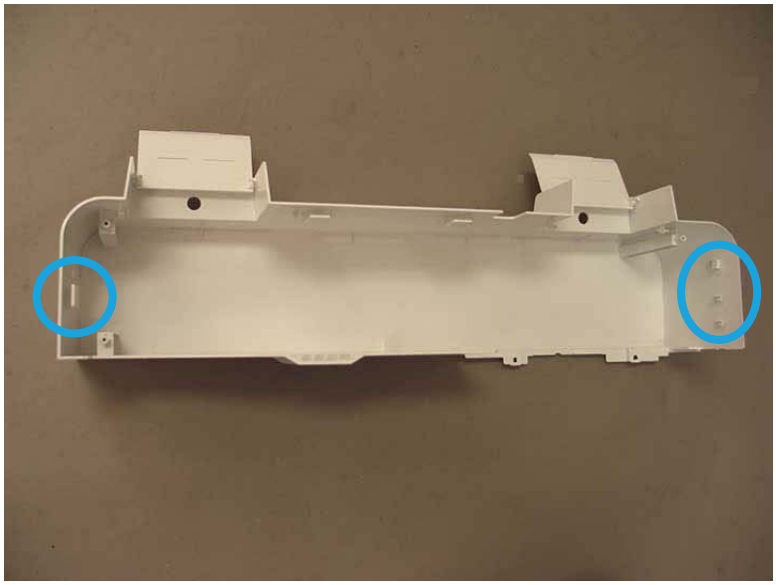
   

3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-855 Release one tab on the right side of back cover

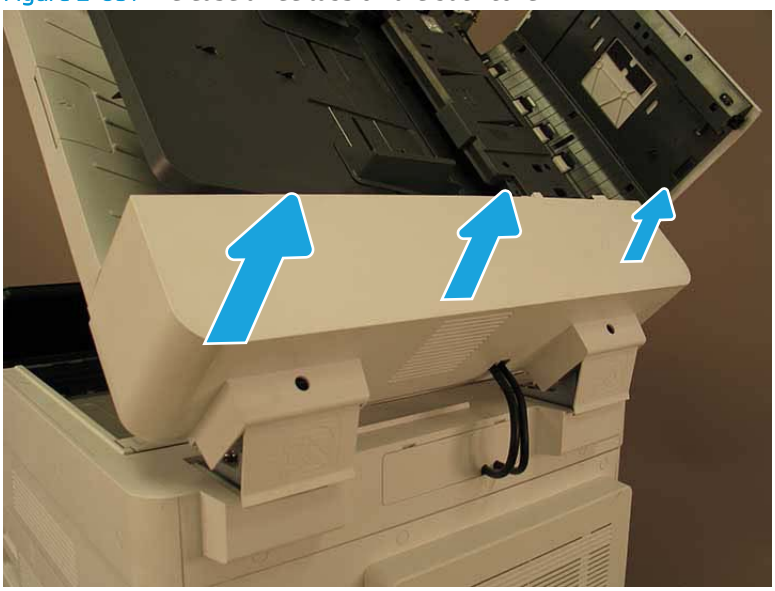
4. Before proceeding, take note of the tabs on the underside of the cover.

Figure 2-856 Note of the tabs on the underside of the cover



5. Release three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

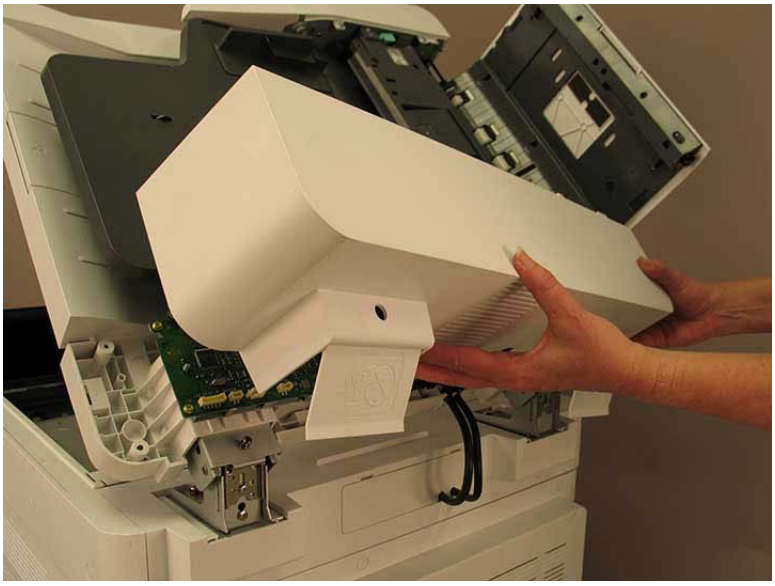
Figure 2-857 Release three tabs on the back cover



6. Remove the back cover from left to right as shown.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the cover from the right to left.

Figure 2-858 Remove the ADF back cover

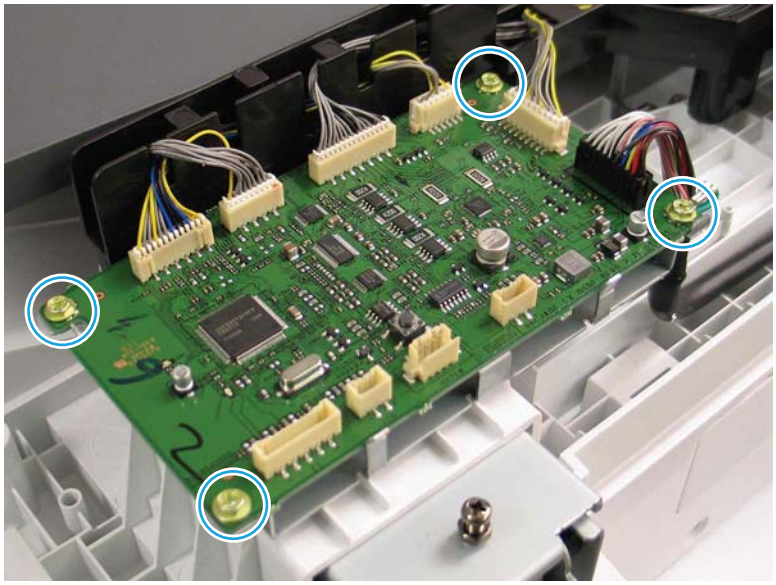


Remove the document feeder (ADF) PCA

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) PCA.

- Disconnect six connectors and the ground wire from PCA, remove four screws, and then remove the document feeder PCA (LX).

Figure 2-859 Document feeder PCA (LX)



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

ADF main frame assembly (LX models)

View the ADF main frame assembly (LX models) exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

ADF main frame assembly (LX/du models)

Parts diagram and parts list for the ADF main frame assembly (LX models).

Figure 2-860 ADF main frame (LX models)

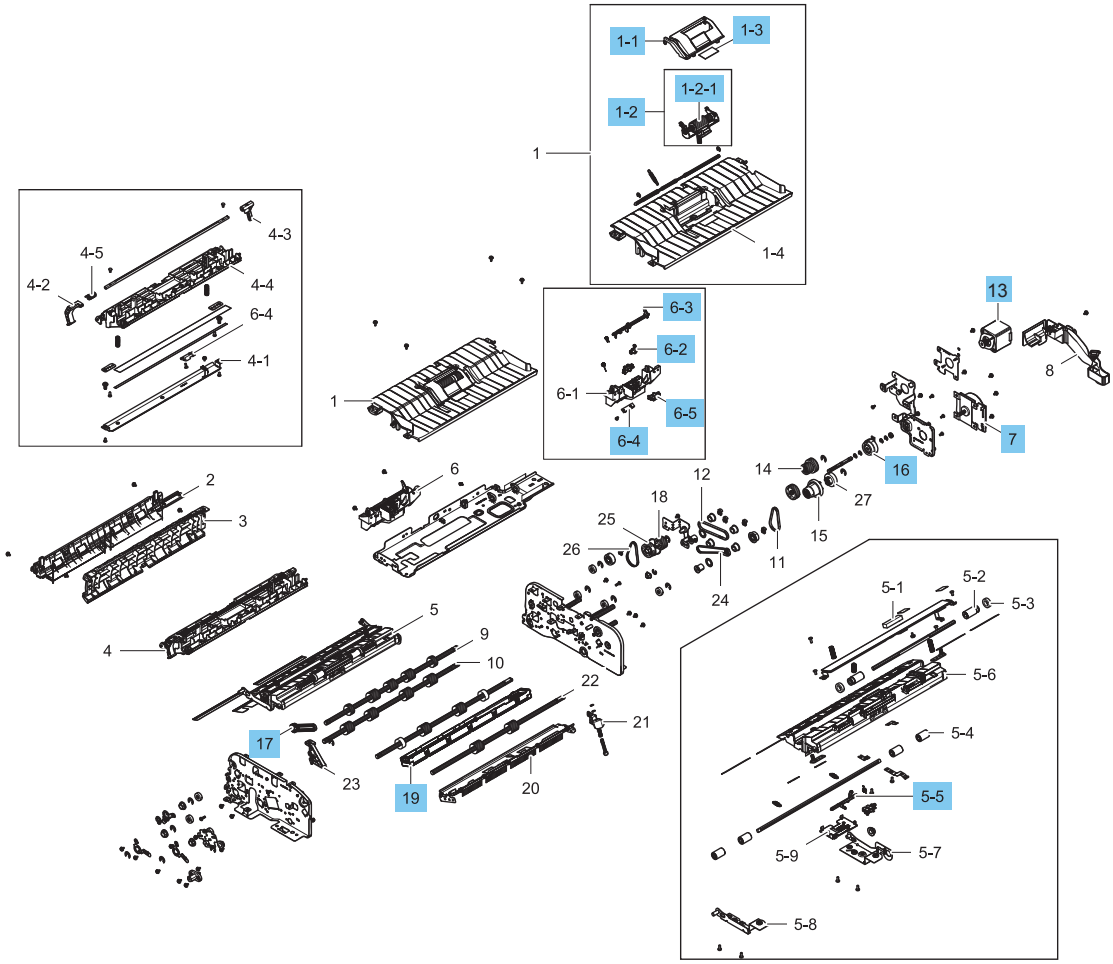


Table 2-116 ADF main frame assembly (LX models)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1-1	JC97-04586A	LX separation housing	1	Not applicable
1-2	JC97-04852A	ADF LX separation roller	1	Removal and replacement: Document feeder separation roller assembly (LX) on page 760
1-2-1	JC97-04861A	ADF LX separation sub roller		Not applicable
1-3	JC69-01326A	Friction pad	1	Not applicable
5-5	JC66-04104A	Actuator, output[1]	1	Not applicable
6-2	JC66-04105A	Actuator, feed out	1	Not applicable
6-3	JC66-04103A	Actuator, registration	1	Not applicable
6-4	0604-001381	Photo interrupter	1	Not applicable
6-5	0604–001393	Photo interrupter	1	Not applicable
7	JC31-00156A	Feed motor assembly (Motor, bldc type 1)	1	Removal and replacement: Document feeder feed motor (LX) on page 767
13	JC31-00163A	Motor - Step main	1	Not applicable
16	JC47-00038A	LX - Motor feed DC	1	Not applicable
17	JC66-04100A	LX - Link Cover Open	1	Not applicable
19	JC97-04920A	Contact Image Sensor (CIS)	1	Not applicable

[1]Early models only during original release. This part removed from newer models.

Removal and replacement: Document feeder separation roller assembly (LX)

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder separation roller assembly (LX).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder separation roller assembly (LX).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-117 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-04852A	ADF separation roller assembly (LX)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

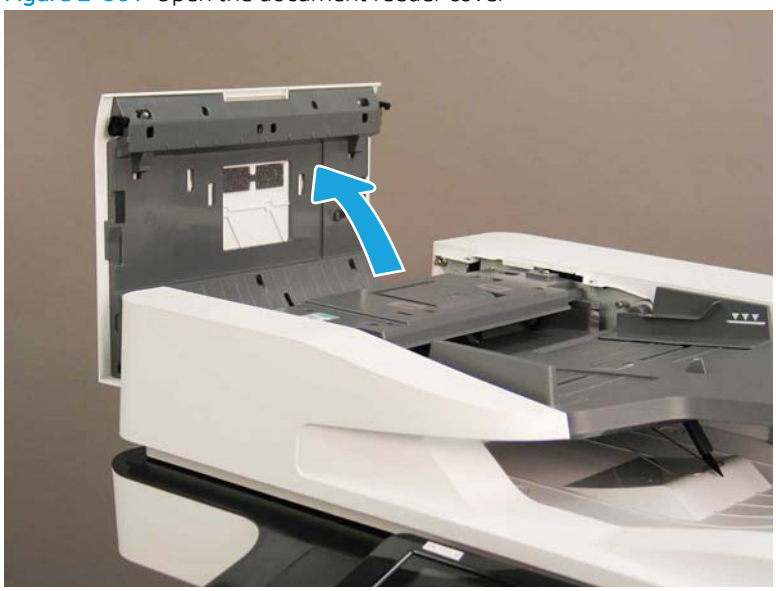
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the document feeder (ADF) (LX/du models) pick and feed roller assembly

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) (LX/du models) pick and feed roller assembly.

1. Open the document feeder cover.

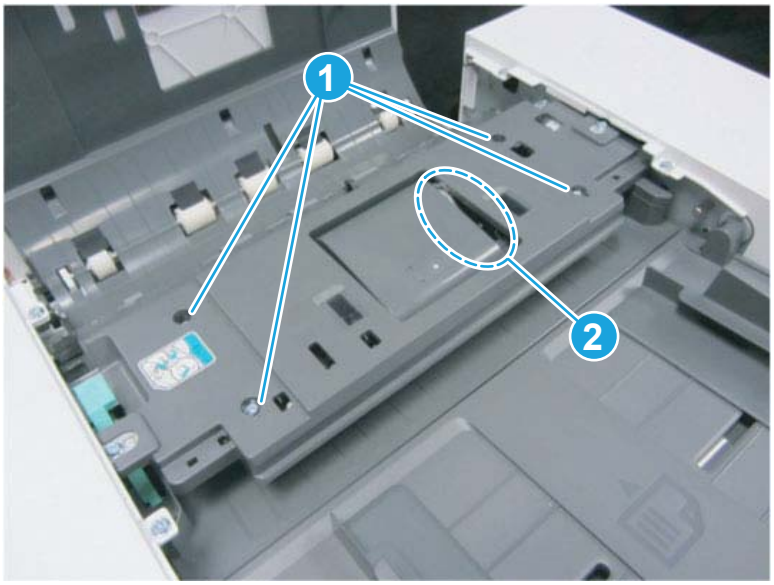
Figure 2-861 Open the document feeder cover



2. Remove four screws in the document feeder pick roller assembly cover.

NOTE: Remove one spring (callout 2; not shown)

Figure 2-862 Remove the document feeder cover screws

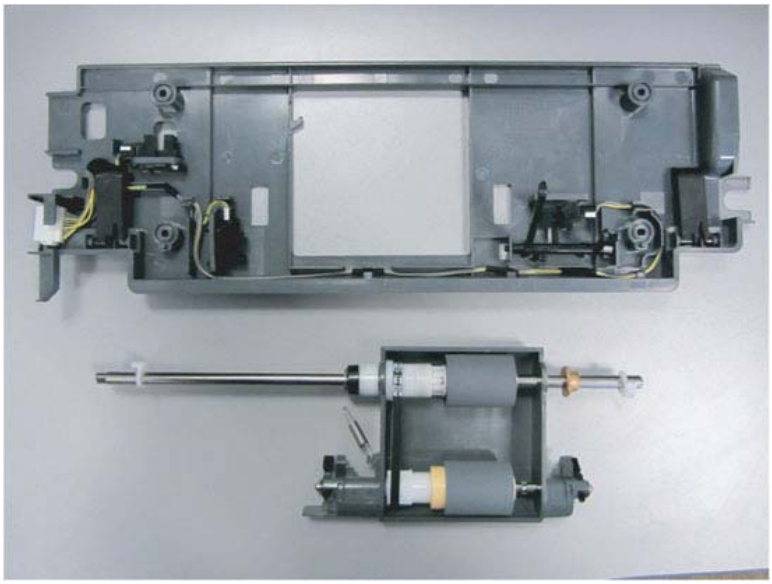


3. Rotate the document feeder pickup cover up, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 2-863 Turn the cover over and disconnect connector

4. Before proceeding, take note of the removed roller cover and the roller assembly.

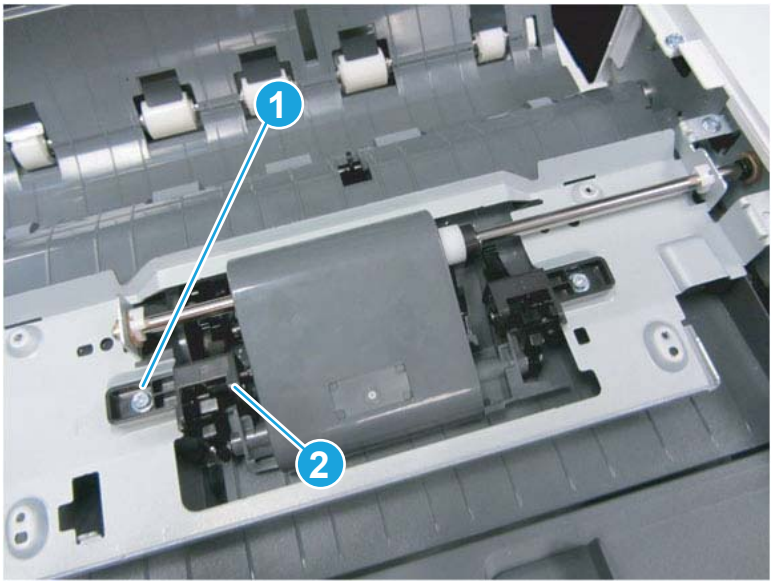
Figure 2-864 Document feeder pick roller cover and roller assembly



5. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sensor flag bracket (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: When the roller assembly is reinstalled, make sure that the sensor flags (on both sides of the assembly) are correctly installed and move freely.

Figure 2-865 Remove one screw and the sensor flag bracket

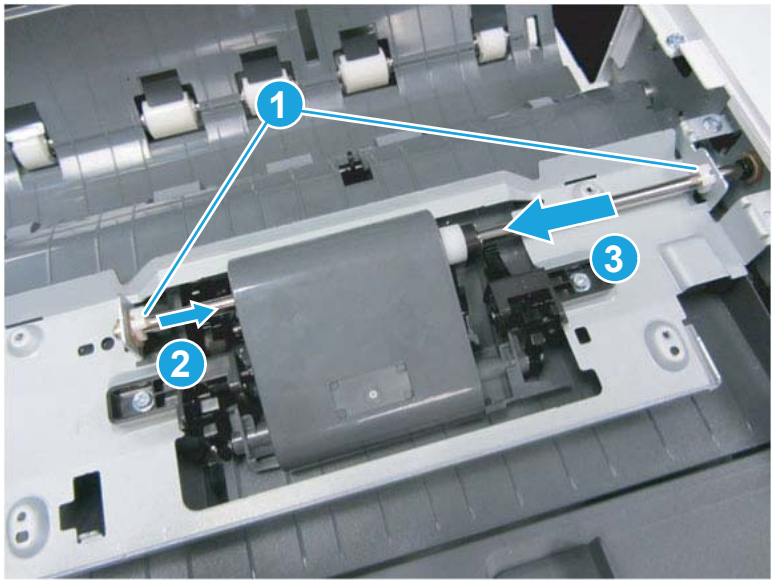


6. Release two plastic clips (callout 1), slide bushing toward roller assembly (callout 2), and then slide the shaft towards front of printer to release it (callout 3). Remove the roller assembly.

CAUTION: Do not damage the sensor flags when handling the roller assembly.

NOTE: The bushing is not captive. Do not lose it when handling the roller assembly.

Figure 2-866 Remove the document feeder pick roller assembly clips

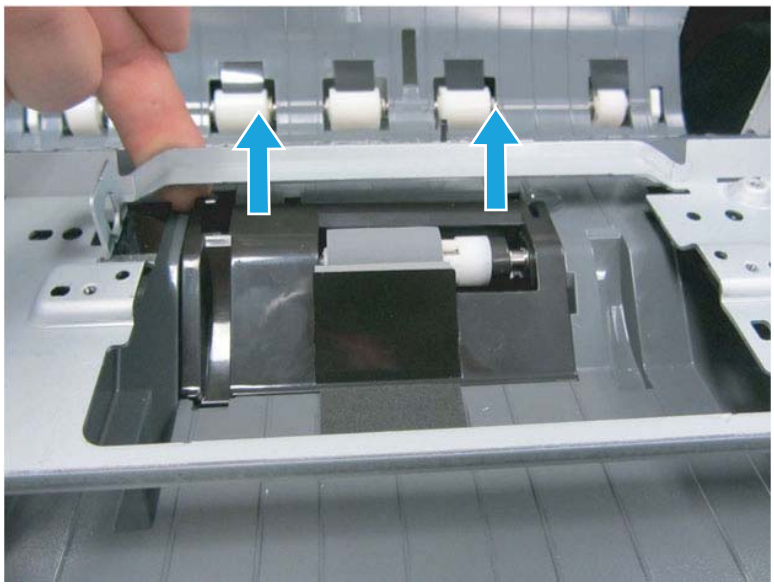


Remove the LX document feeder separation roller

Follow these steps to remove the LX document feeder separation roller.

1. Rotate the separation roller cover up to release it, and then remove the cover.

Figure 2-867 Remove the separation roller cover



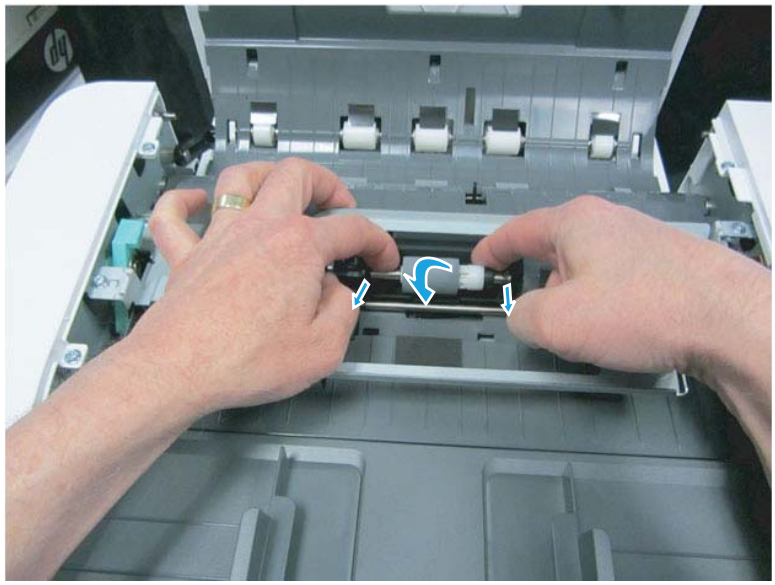
2. Before proceeding, take note of the removed roller cover and the roller assembly.

Figure 2-868 Document feeder separation roller cover and roller assembly

3. Release two claws, and then remove the separation roller assembly.

NOTE: The separation roller assembly spring under the roller is not captive.

Figure 2-869 Remove the separation roller assembly



4. When the assembly is reinstalled, make sure that the spring is correctly seated in the holder.

Figure 2-870 Separation roller assembly spring

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Document feeder feed motor (LX)

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder feed motor (LX).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder feed motor (LX).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-118 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00156C	Feed motor assembly (LX) (bldc type 1)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

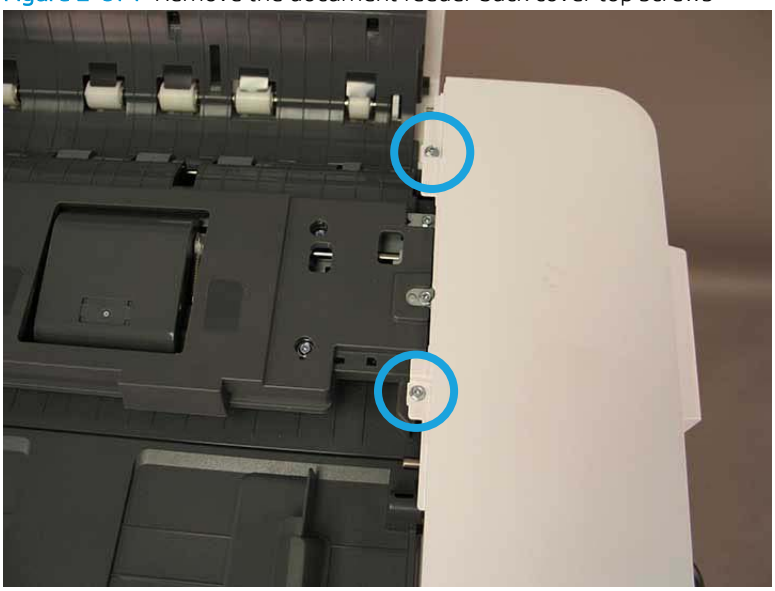
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover.

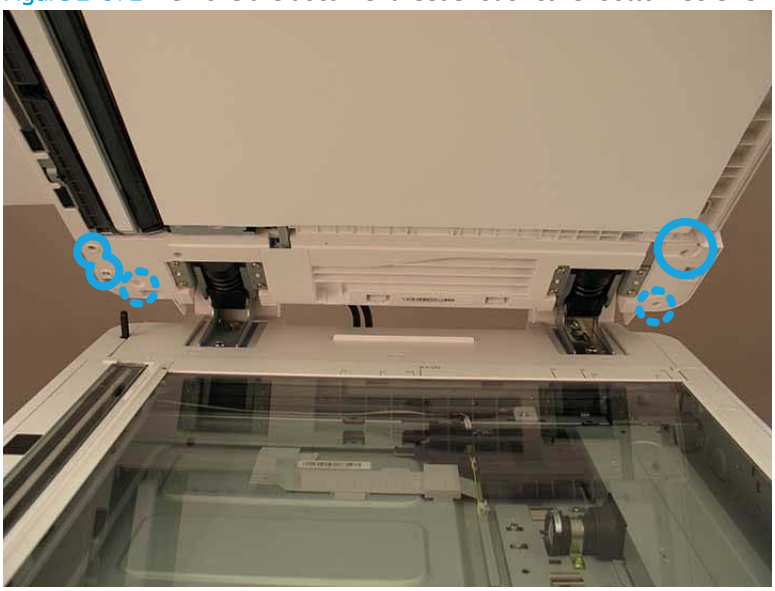
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

   Figure 2-871 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws

2. Using a JIS #2 short-shaft screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

   Figure 2-872 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

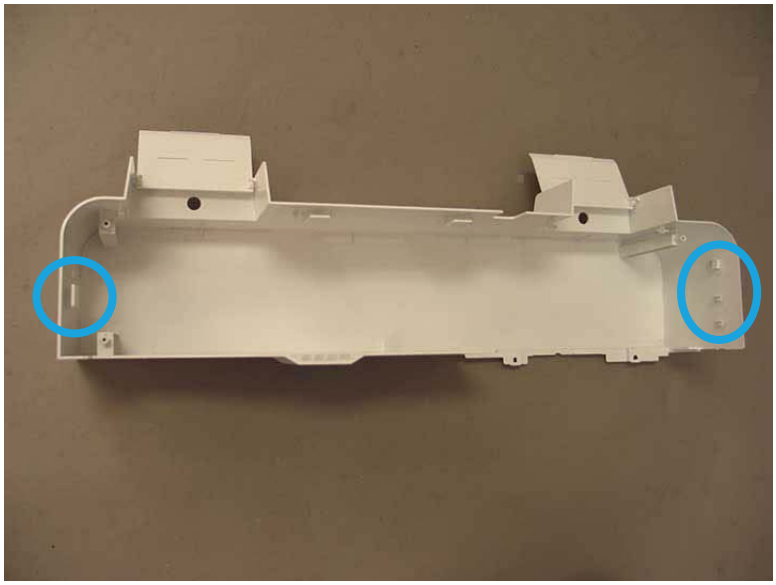
   

3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-873 Release one tab on the right side of back cover

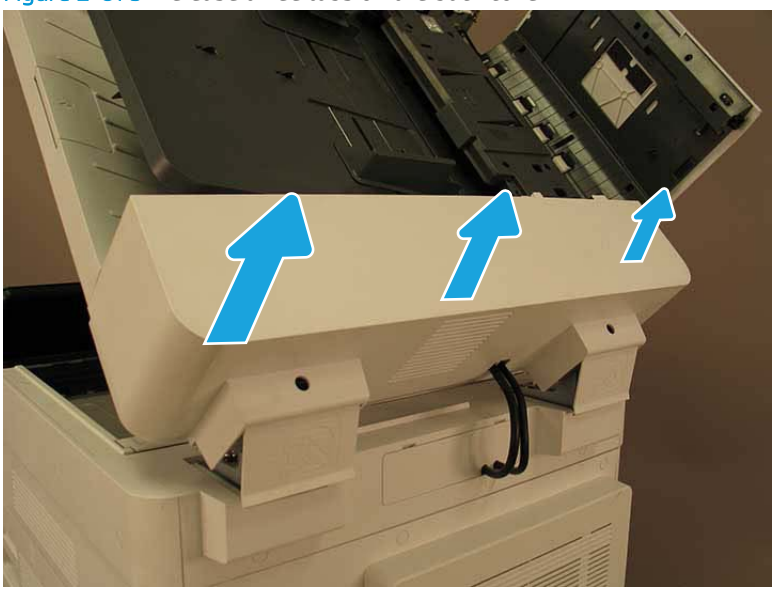
4. Before proceeding, take note of the tabs on the underside of the cover.

Figure 2-874 Note of the tabs on the underside of the cover



5. Release three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

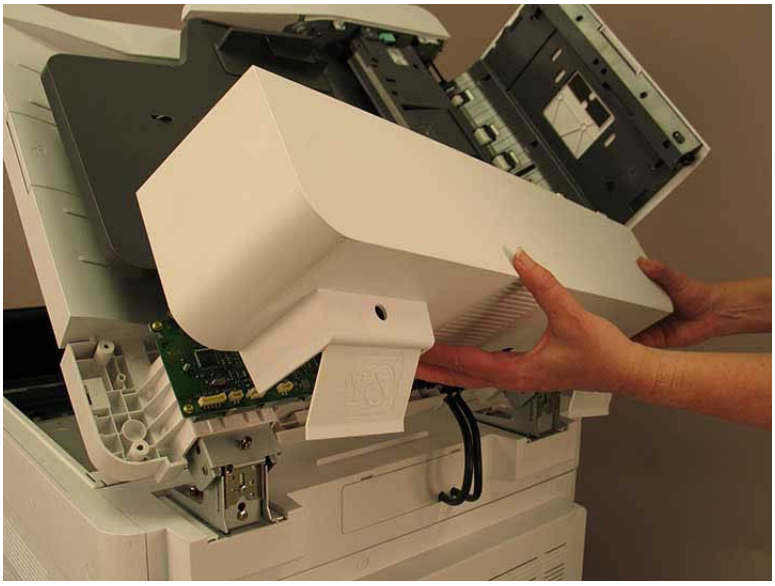
Figure 2-875 Release three tabs on the back cover



6. Remove the back cover from left to right as shown.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the cover from the right to left.

Figure 2-876 Remove the ADF back cover

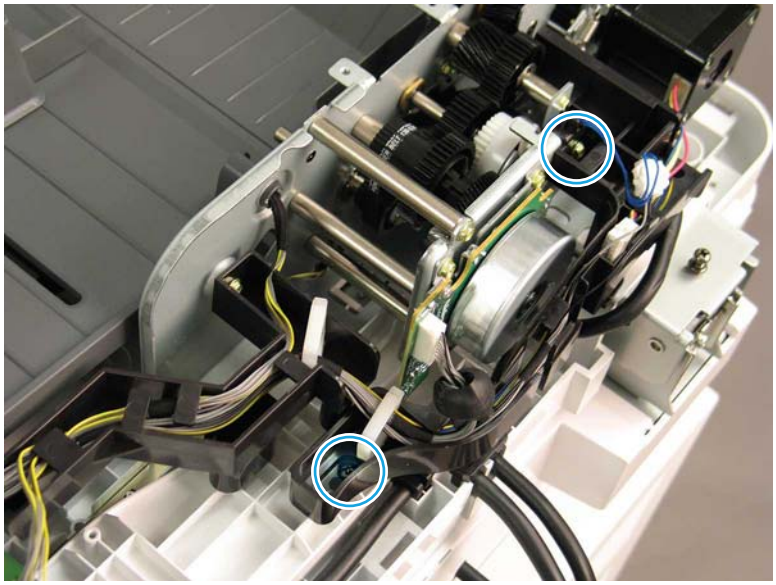


Remove the feed motor

Follow these steps to remove the feed motor.

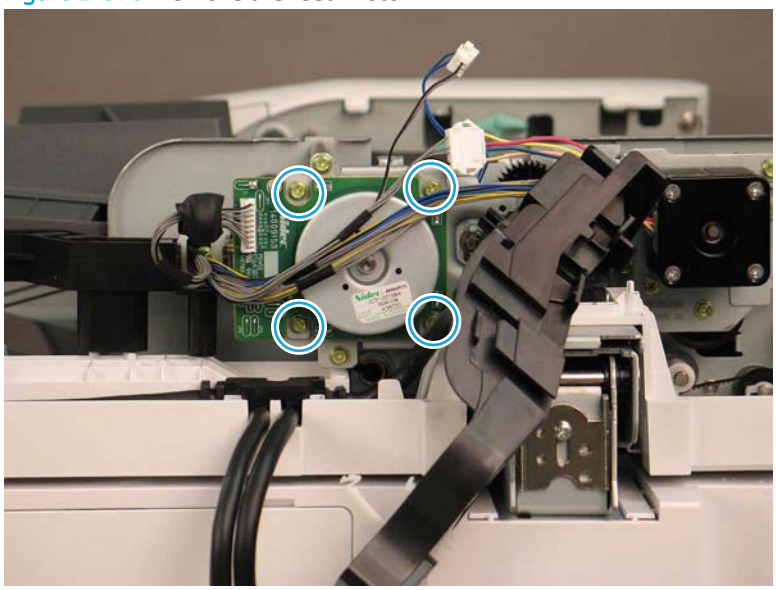
1. Loosen the cables in the cable guide, remove two screws and then move the cable guide out of the way.

Figure 2-877 Feed motor cable guide



2. Disconnect one connector, remove four screws, and then carefully lift the motor out to remove.

Figure 2-878 Remove the feed motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF (GX/sGX)

View the flow ADF (GX/sGX) exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Flow ADF (GX/sGX)

Parts diagram and parts list for the flow ADF (GX/sGX).

Figure 2-879 Flow ADF (GX/sGX)

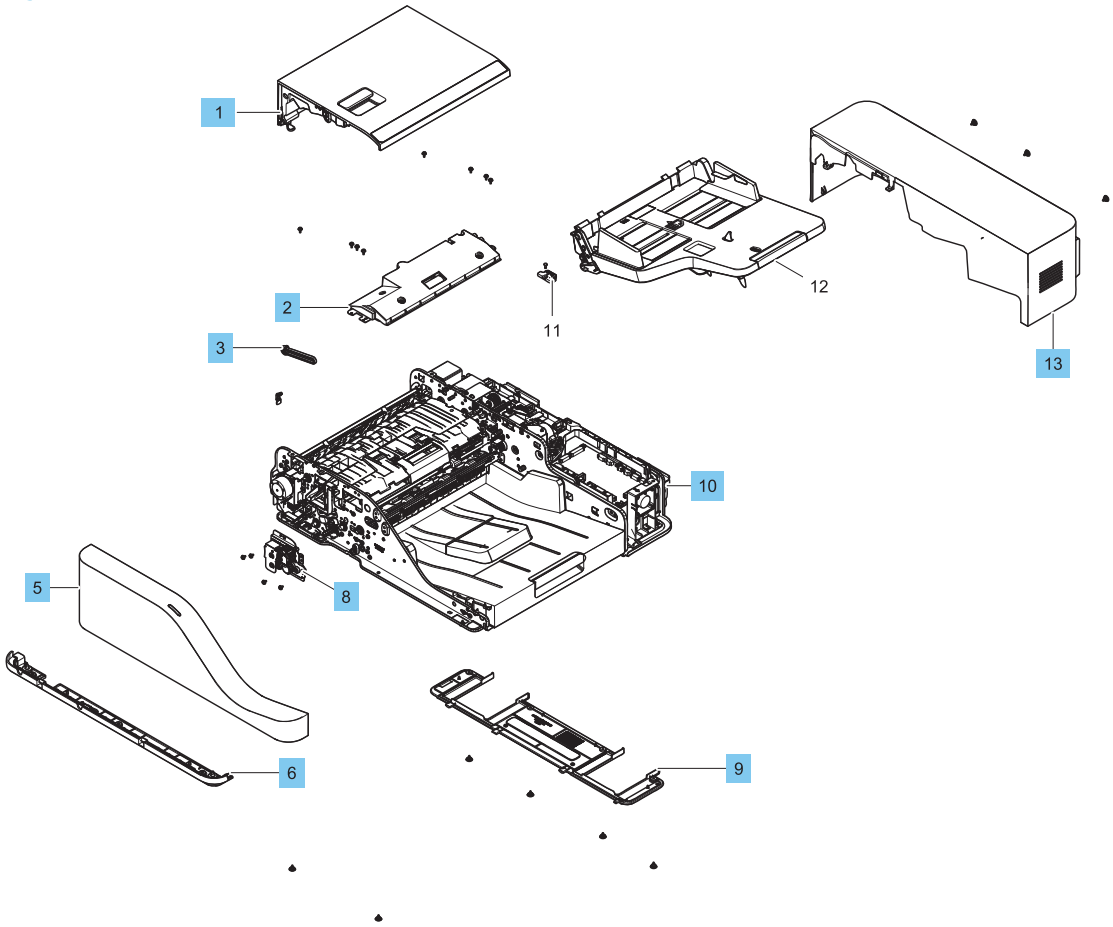


Table 2-119 ADF/ Scanner sGX/GX

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1	JC97-04869A	ADF Cover open	1	Not applicable
2	JC97-04872A	Pickup, upper - GX	1	Not applicable
2	JC97-04646B	Pickup, upper - sGX	1	Not applicable
3	JC66-02270A	Cover, hinge - GX/sGX	1	Not applicable
5	JC97-04881A	Cover, front - GX/sGX	1	Not applicable
6	JC97-04879A	Dummy, front - GX/sGX	1	Not applicable
8	JC97-04692A	Damper - GX/sGX	1	Not applicable
9	JC97-04880A	Cover, bottom - GX/sGX	1	Not applicable
10	JC97-04883A	Main frame - GX	1	Not applicable
10	JC97-04882A	Main frame sGX	1	Not applicable
13	JC63-05566A	Cover, rear - GX/sGX	1	Not applicable
Not shown	JC92-02967A	PCA - ADF receiver (ultrasonic) (GX only)	1	Removal and replacement: Flow ADF ultrasonic sensor with PCA (GX/sGX) on page 782
Not shown	JC92-02966A	PCA - ADF transmitter (ultrasonic) (GX only)	1	Removal and replacement: Flow ADF ultrasonic sensor with PCA (GX/sGX) on page 782
Complete	JC97-04955A	Flow ADF - GX	1	Removal and replacement: Flow ADF whole unit (GX/sGX) on page 775
Complete	JC97-04956A	Non Flow ADF - sGX	1	Removal and replacement: Flow ADF whole unit (GX/sGX) on page 775

Removal and replacement: Flow ADF whole unit (GX/sGX)

Learn how to remove and replace the ADF whole unit (GX/sGX bundles).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the flow ADF whole unit (GX/sGX bundles).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-120 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-04955A	Flow ADF - GX
JC97-04956A	Non Flow ADF - sGX

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

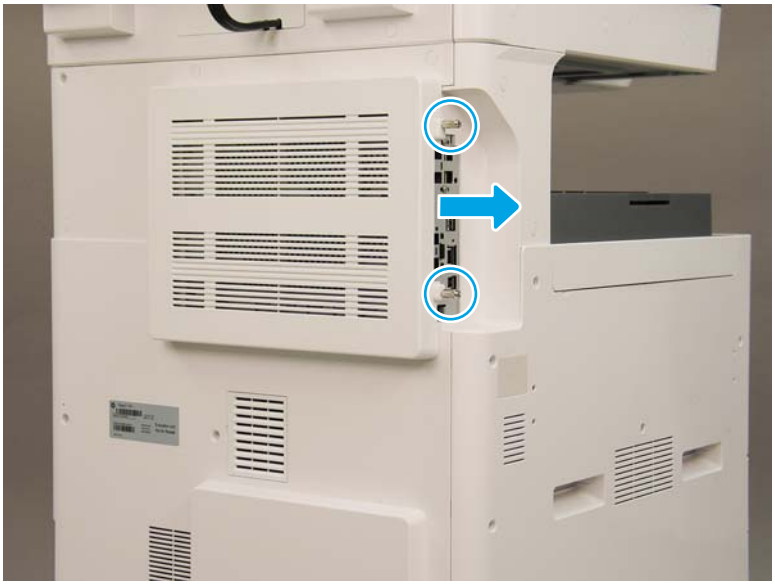
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-880 Remove the formatter cover

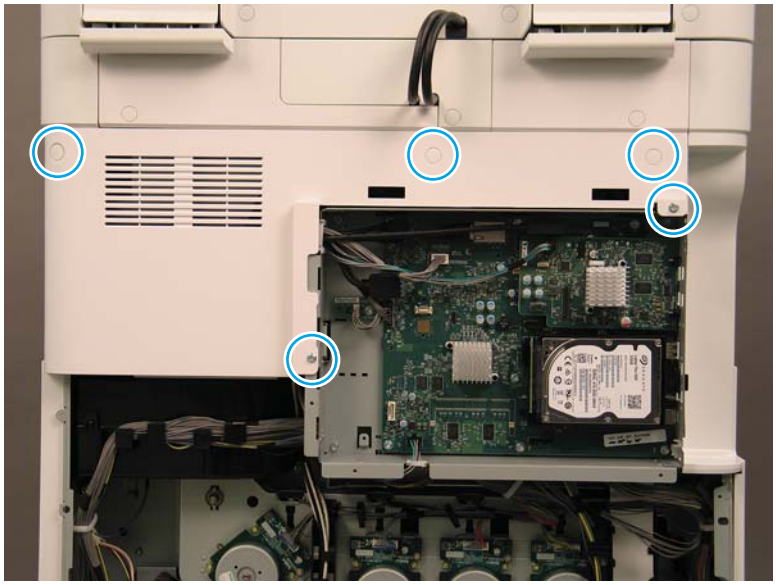


Remove the upper rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the upper rear cover.

- Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-881 Remove the upper rear cover



Remove the document feeder whole unit (GX)

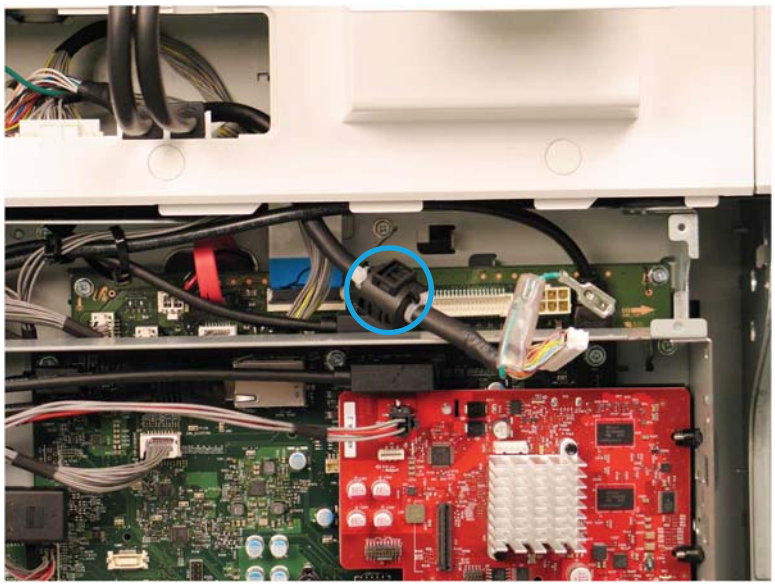
Follow these steps to remove the document feeder whole unit (GX).

1. Open the document feeder cover, and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

Figure 2-882 Remove document feeder connector cover

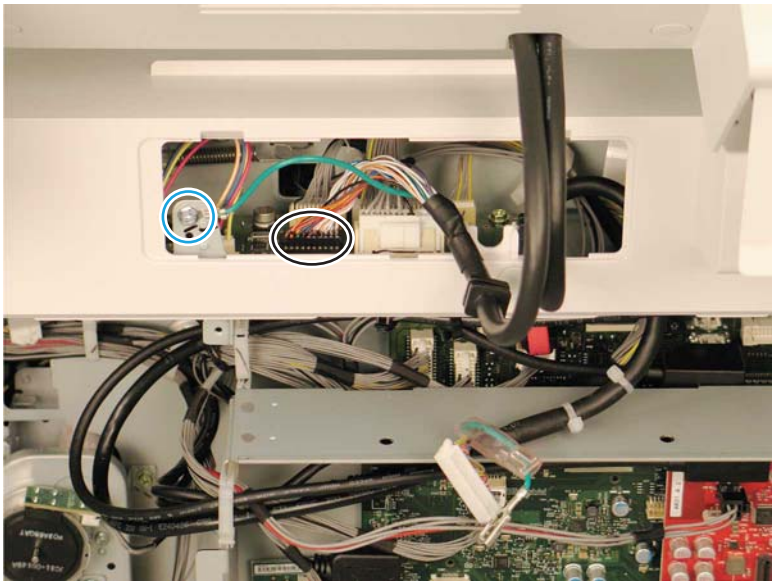
2. Remove the plastic cable choke from the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

Figure 2-883 Remove the cable choke



3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the scanner PCA. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

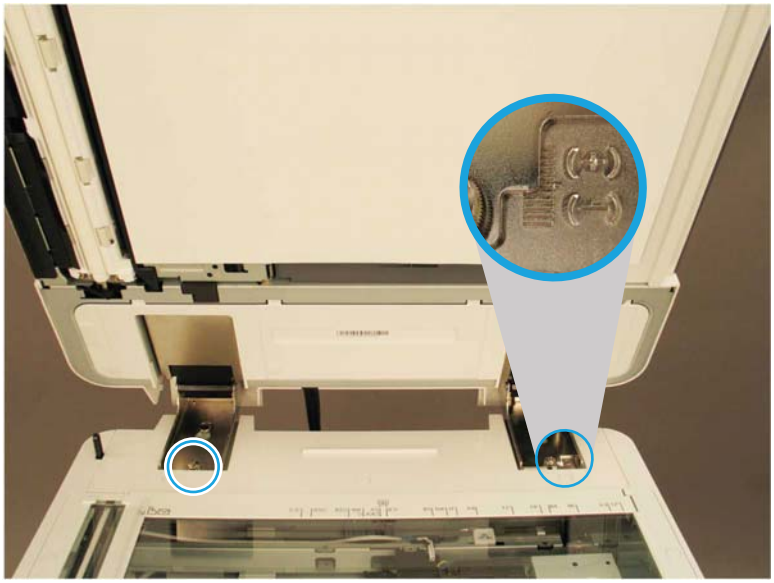
Figure 2-884 Disconnect document feeder harness



4. Release two hinge stops on the back of the document feeder to allow the document feeder to open to a full 90°.

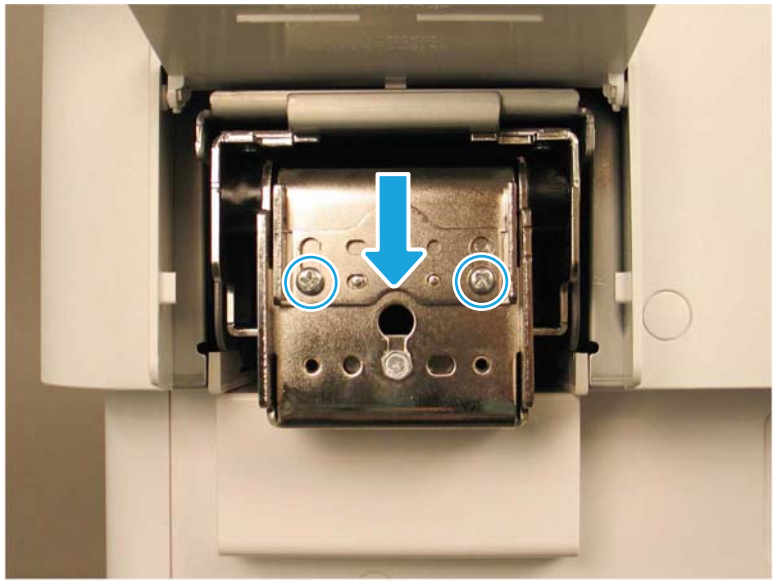
IMPORTANT: Note the alignment marks on the hinge stops. Any new document feeder must be reinstalled with the same alignment.

Figure 2-885 Alignment marks



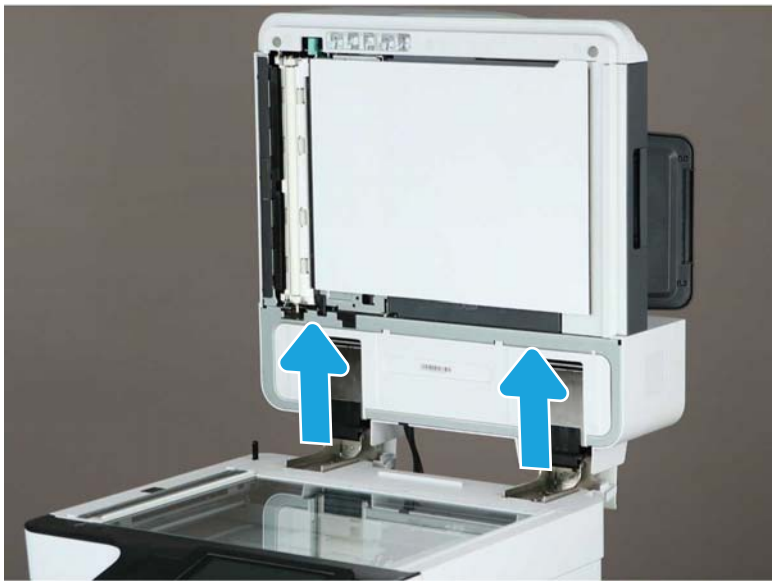
5. Remove two screws on each hinge stop.

Figure 2-886 Remove screws



6. Pull back and then lift up to release the document feeder unit.

Figure 2-887 Release the document feeder



NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

1. Unpack the replacement assembly.

   a. Dispose of the defective part.

   NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

   http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

   b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

   CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

   If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

   IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

   c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

   When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Removal and replacement: Flow ADF ultrasonic sensor with PCA (GX/sGX)

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder ultrasonic sensor (GX/sGX).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder feed ultrasonic sensor (GX/sGX).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-121 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC92-02967A	PCA - ADF receiver (GX only)
JC92-02966A	PCA - ADF transmitter (GX only)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

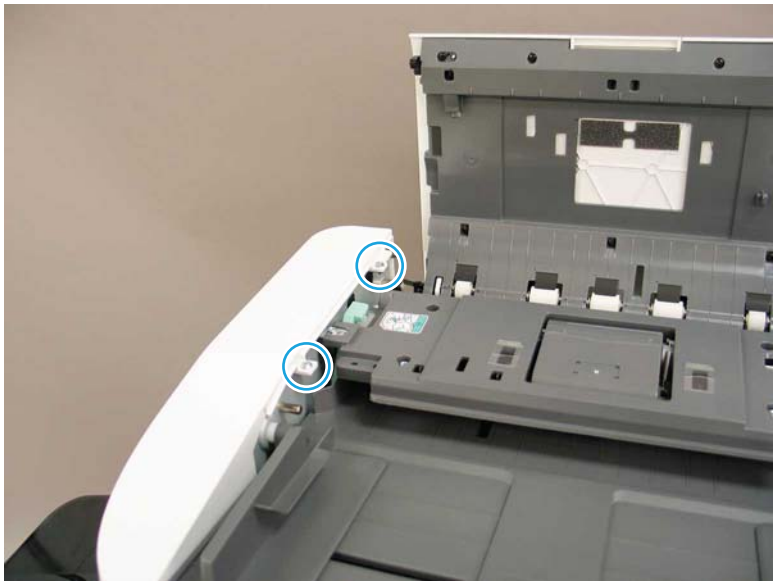
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover.

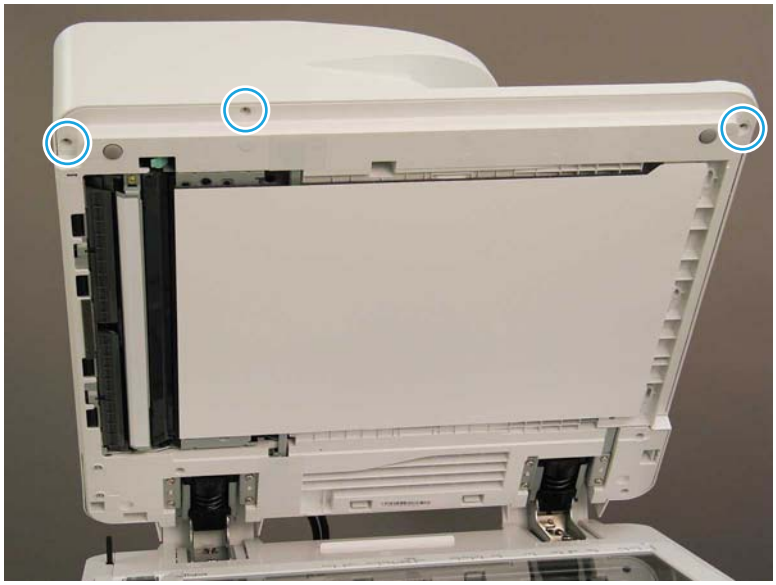
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

   Figure 2-888 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws

2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

   Figure 2-889 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws

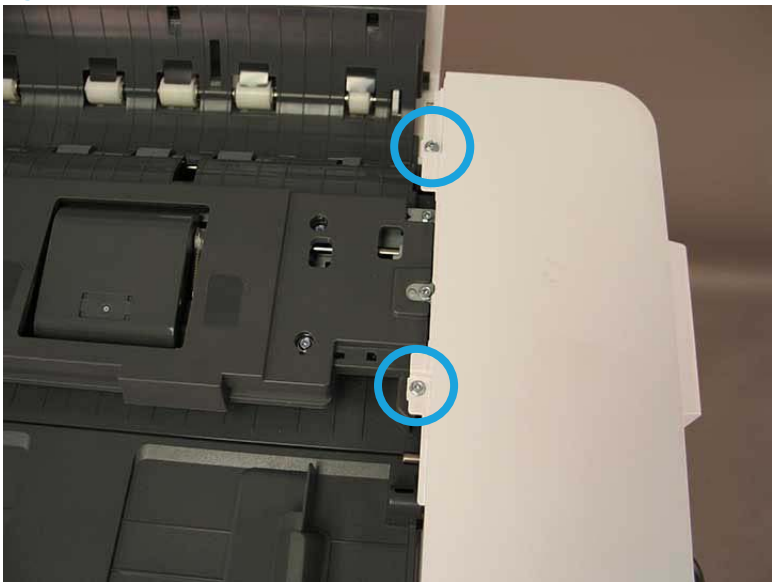
   

Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover.

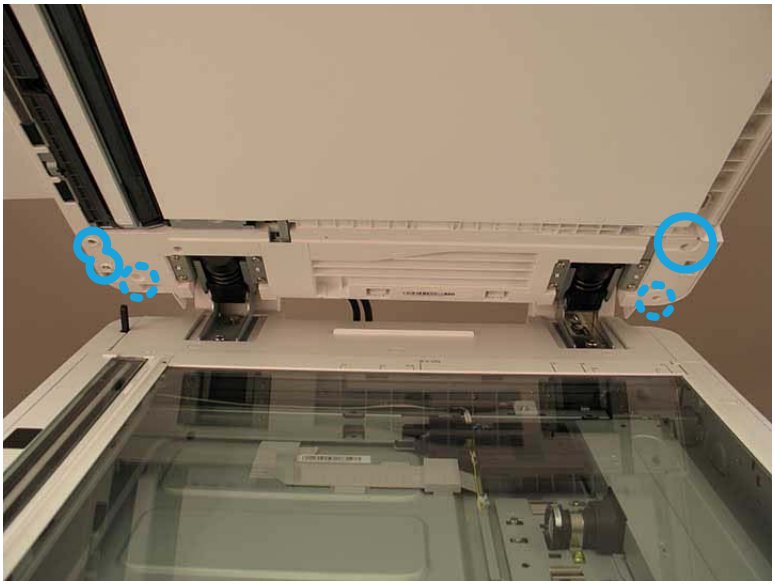
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-890 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Using a JIS #2 short-shaft screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-891 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

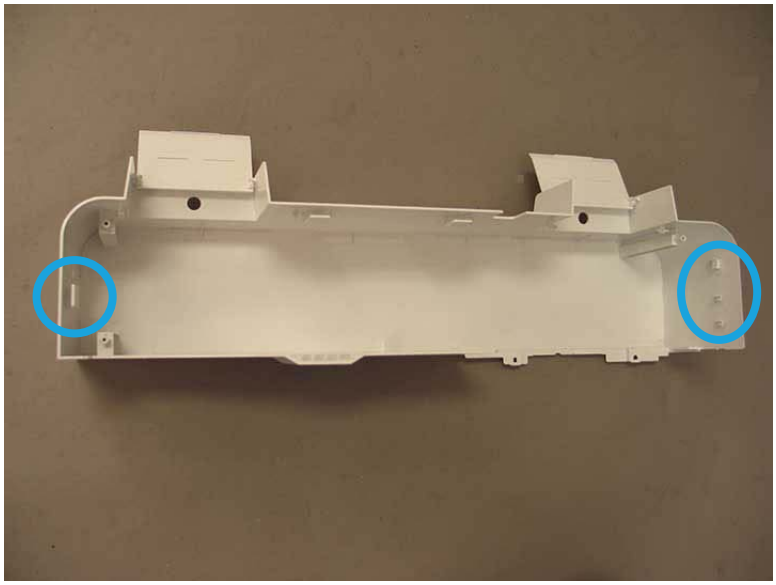


3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-892 Release one tab on the right side of back cover

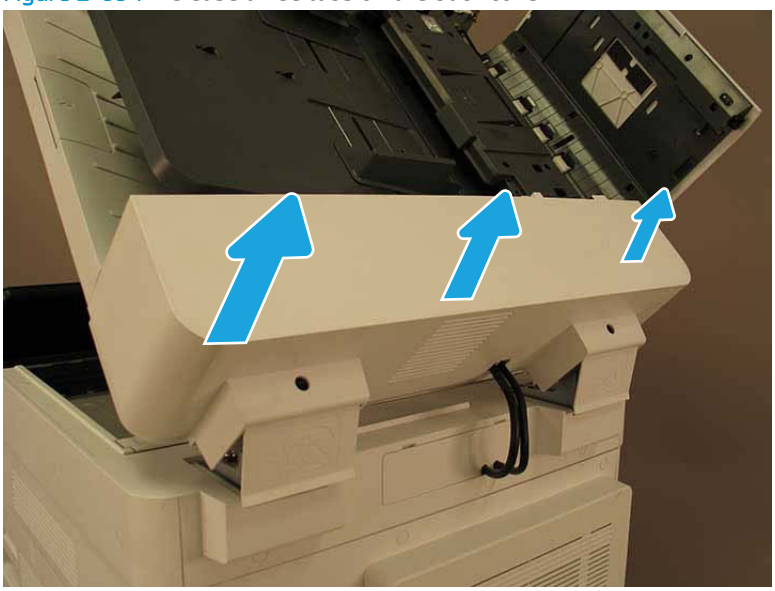
4. Before proceeding, take note of the tabs on the underside of the cover.

Figure 2-893 Note of the tabs on the underside of the cover



5. Release three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

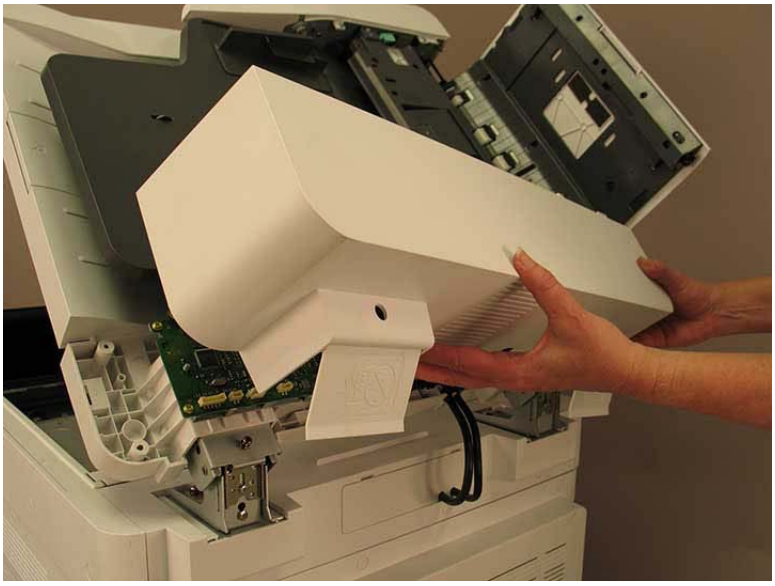
Figure 2-894 Release three tabs on the back cover



6. Remove the back cover from left to right as shown.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the cover from the right to left.

Figure 2-895 Remove the ADF back cover

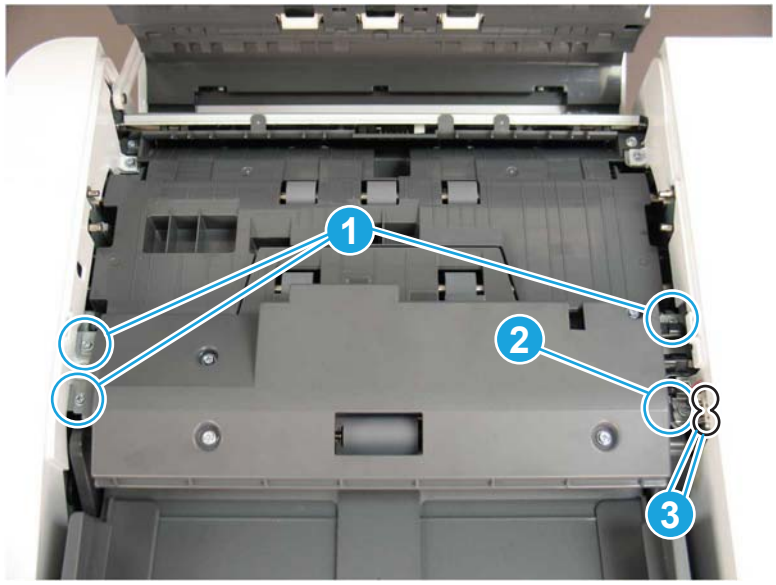


Remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly.

- Disconnect three screws (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and one ground wire (callout 3)), and then remove the pickup roller assembly.

Figure 2-896 Remove the pickup roller assembly

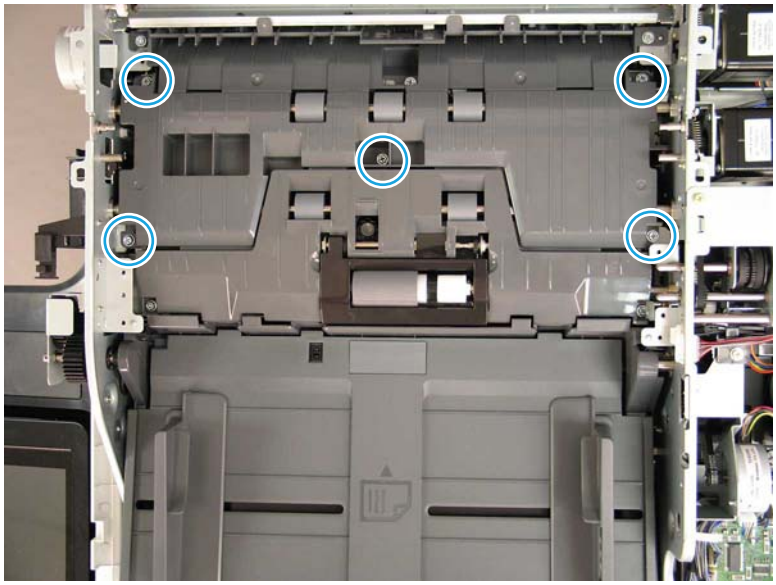


Remove the paper path cover

Follow these steps to remove the paper path cover.

- ▲ Remove five screws, and then remove the paper path cover.

Figure 2-897 Remove the document feeder paper path cover

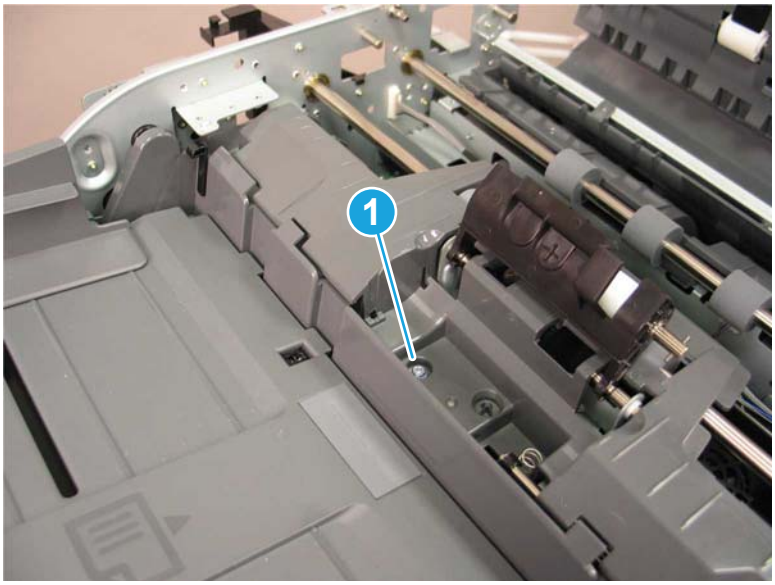


Remove the ultrasonic sensor with PCA

Follow these steps to remove the ultrasonic sensor with PCA.

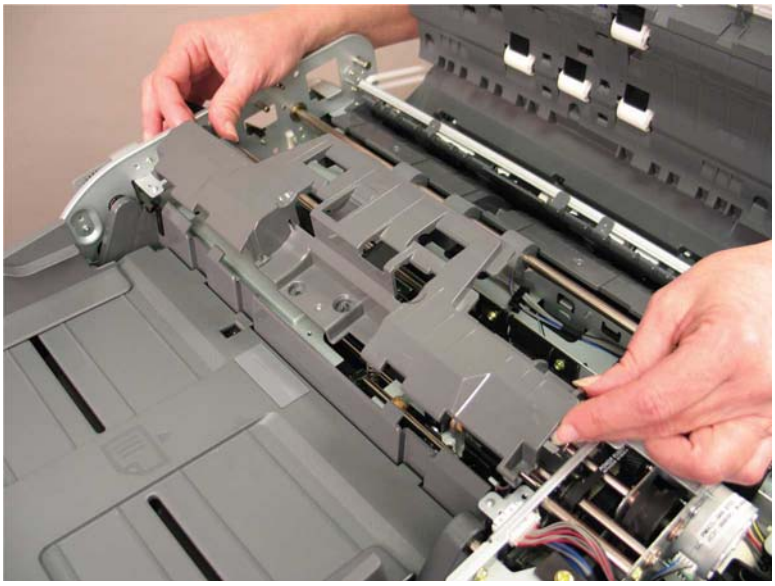
1. Remove the separation roller, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 2-898 Remove one screw



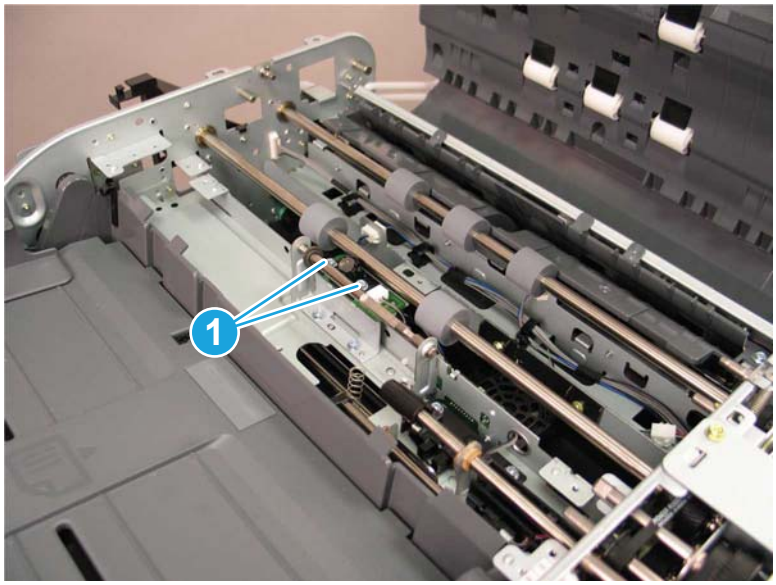
2. Remove the pick/feed cover.

Figure 2-899 Remove the pick/feed cover



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the ultrasonic sensor.

Figure 2-900 Remove the ultrasonic sensor



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.

   a. Dispose of the defective part.

   NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

   http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

   b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

   CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

   If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

   IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

   c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

   When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Flow ADF open cover (GX/sGX)

View the flow ADF open cover (GX/sGX) exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Flow ADF open cover (GX/sGX)

Parts diagram and parts list for the ADF open cover (GX/sGX).

Figure 2-901 ADF open cover (GX/sGX)

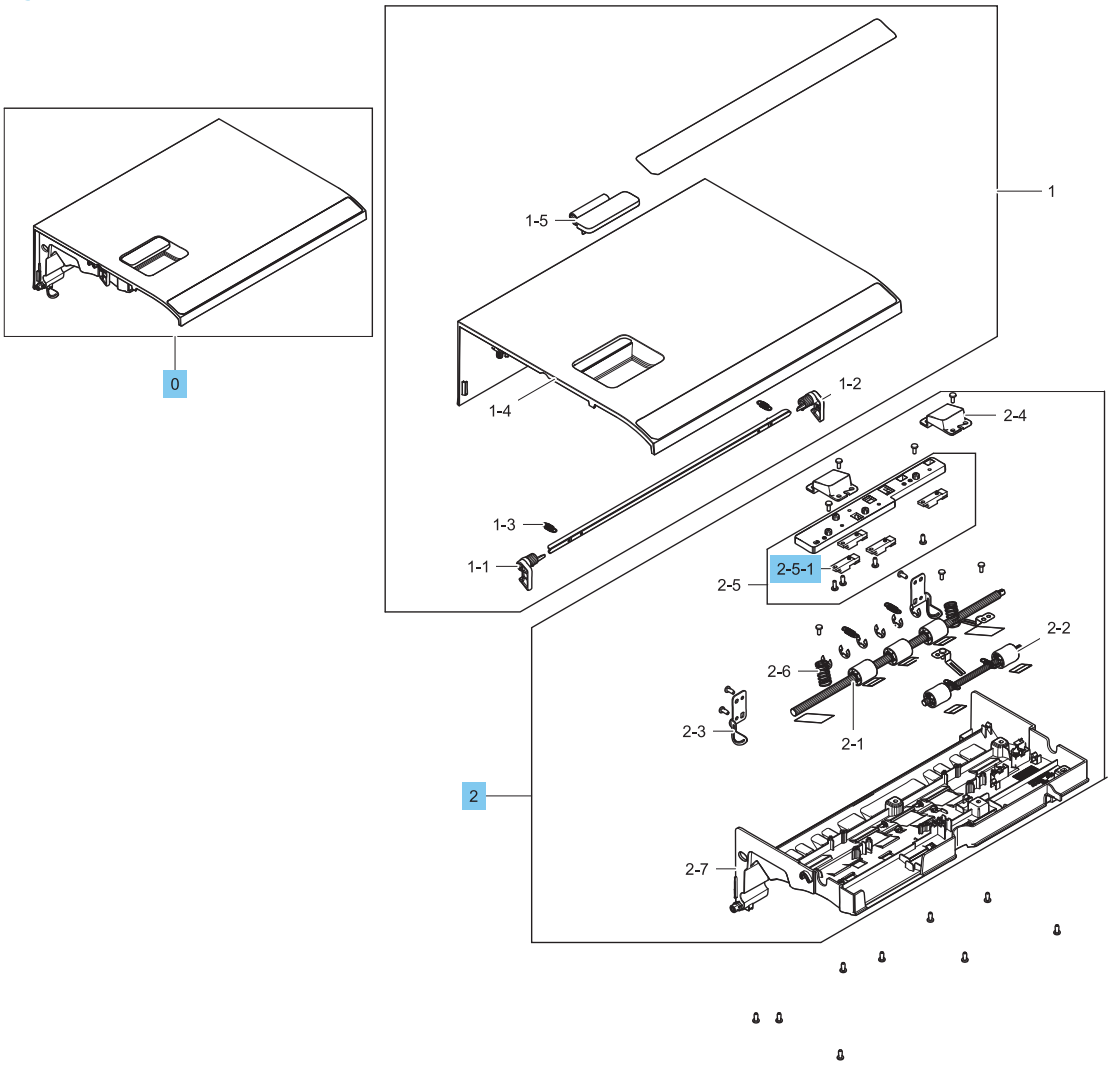


Table 2-122 Flow ADF open cover

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
0	JC97-04869A	Cover, open (GX/sGX)	1	Removal and replacement: Flow ADF jam access cover (GX/sGX) on page 793
2	JC97-04696B	Cover, open lower (GX/sGX)	1	Not applicable
2-5-1	0604-001381	Photo-interrupter	4	Not applicable

Removal and replacement: Flow ADF jam access cover (GX/sGX)

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder jam access cover (GX/sGX).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder jam access cover (GX/sGX).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-123 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-04869A	Open cover - GX

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

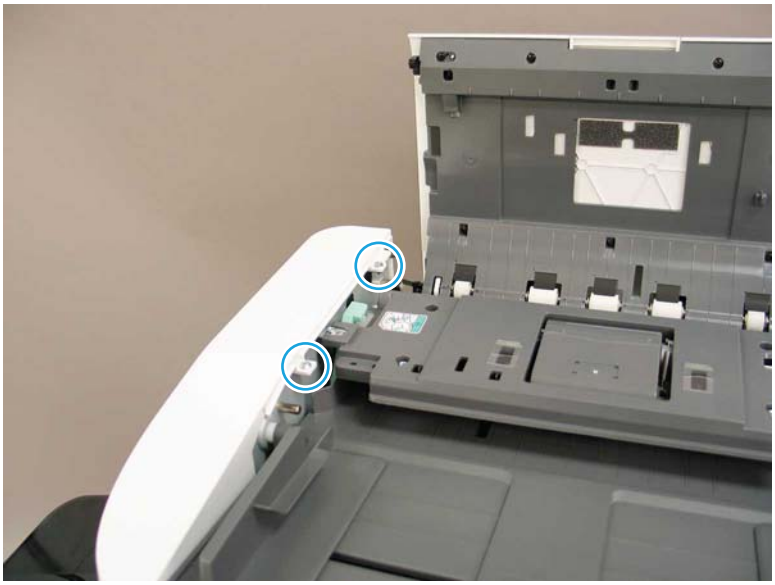
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover.

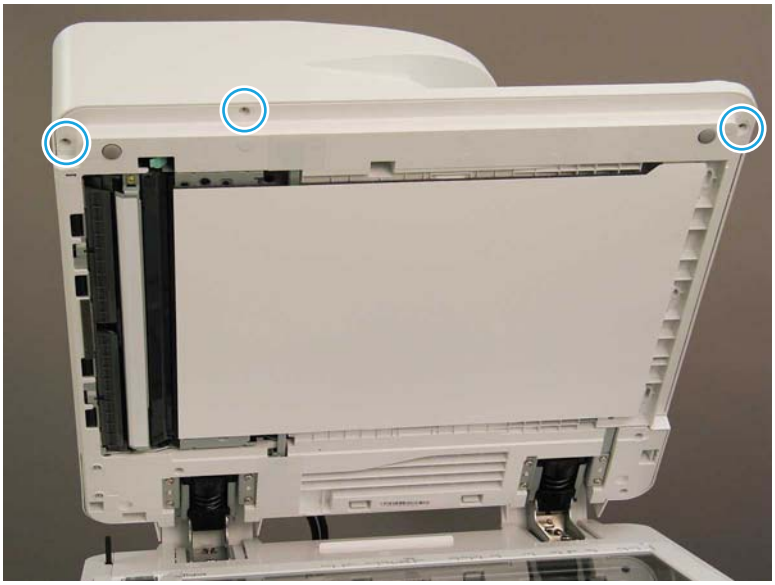
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

   Figure 2-902 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws

2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

   Figure 2-903 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws

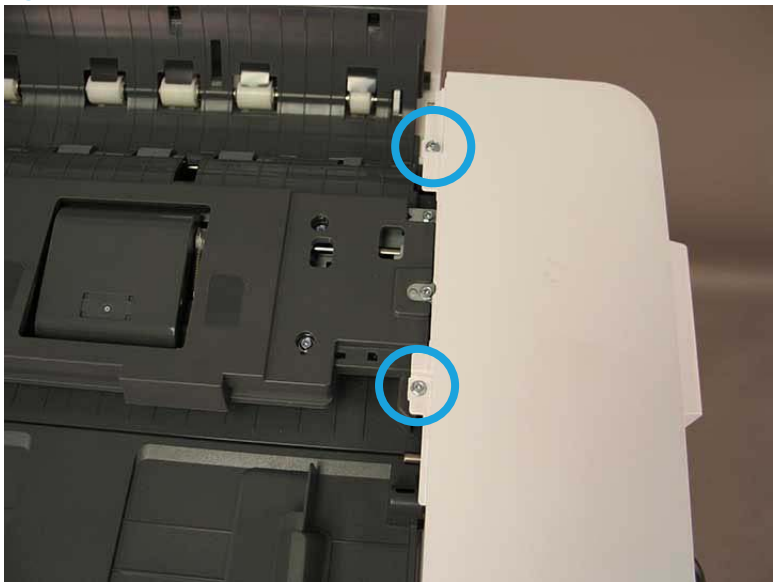
   

Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover.

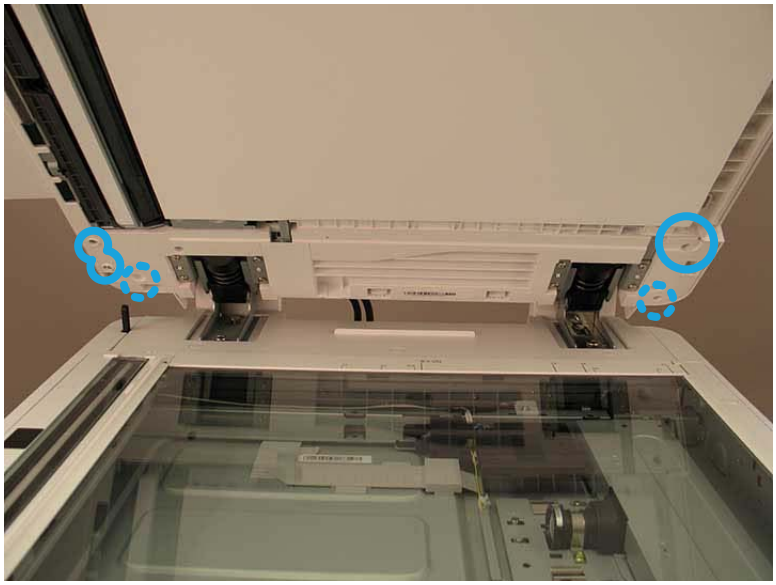
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-904 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Using a JIS #2 short-shaft screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-905 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

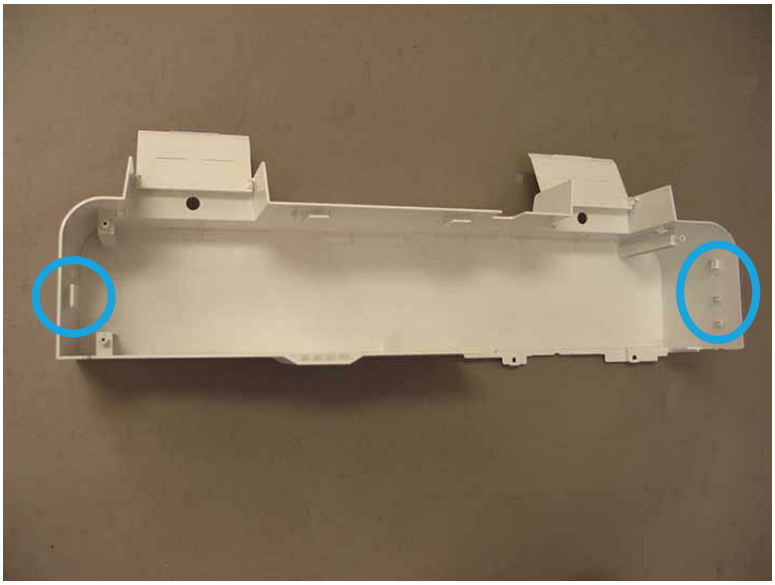


3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-906 Release one tab on the right side of back cover

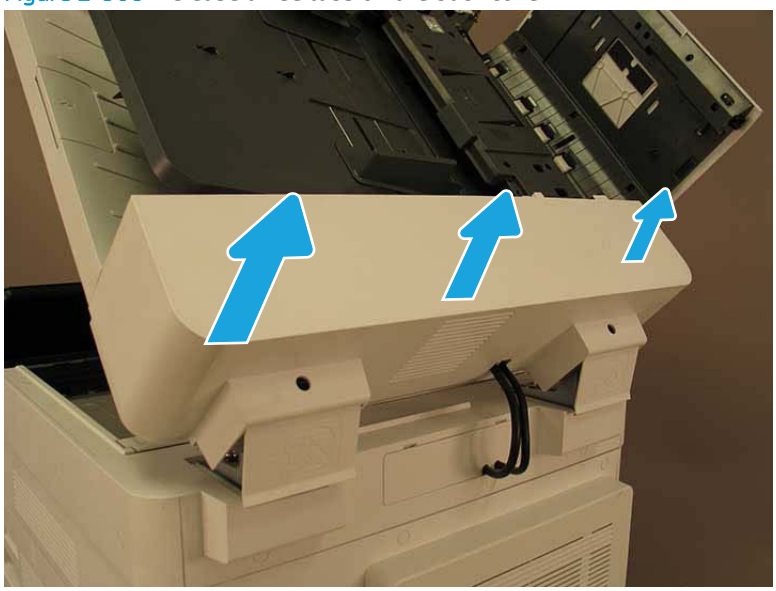
4. Before proceeding, take note of the tabs on the underside of the cover.

Figure 2-907 Note of the tabs on the underside of the cover



5. Release three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

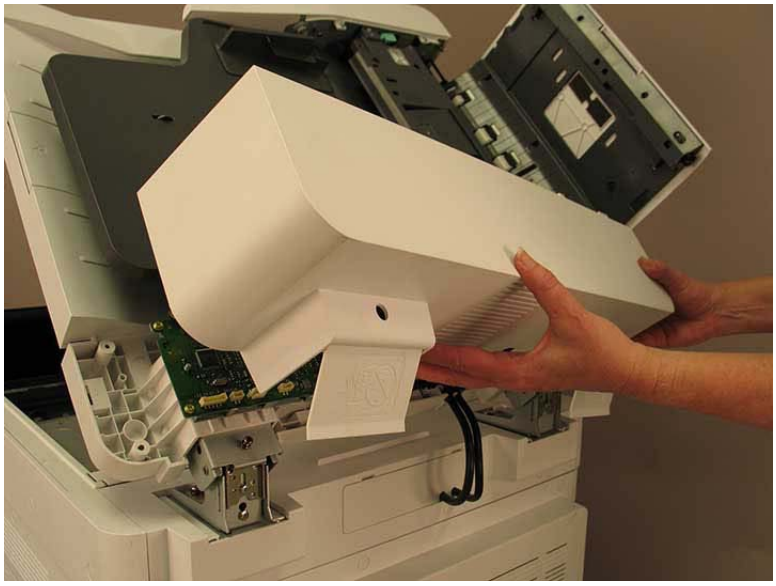
Figure 2-908 Release three tabs on the back cover



6. Remove the back cover from left to right as shown.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the cover from the right to left.

Figure 2-909 Remove the ADF back cover

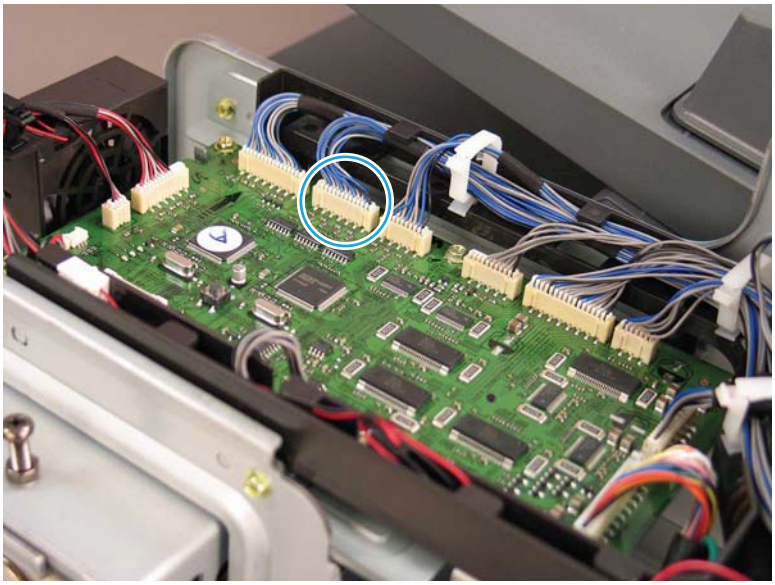


Remove the document feeder jam access cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder jam access cover.

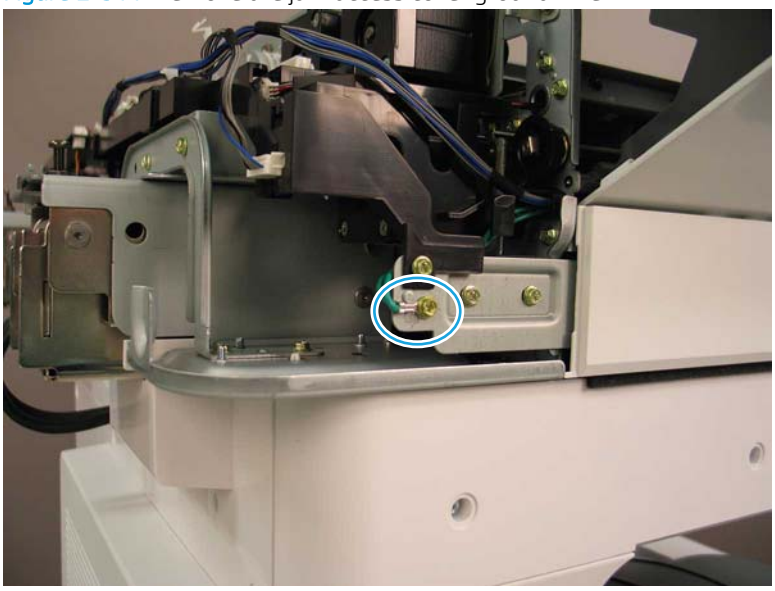
1. Disconnect connector at document feeder PCA and route cable out.

Figure 2-910 Disconnect one connector



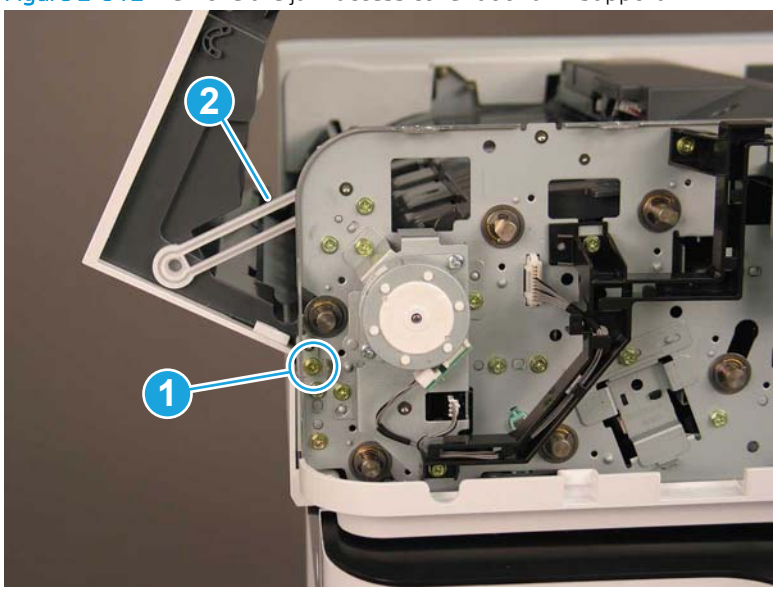
2. Disconnect the ground wire.

Figure 2-911 Remove the jam access cover ground wire



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), remove hinge (pivot) pin, and then remove door arm support (callout 2)

Figure 2-912 Remove the jam access cover door arm support



4. Remove the jam access cover.

1. Unpack the replacement assembly.

a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Flow ADF upper pickup (GX/sGX)

View the flow ADF upper pickup (GX/sGX) exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Flow ADF upper pickup (GX/sGX)

Parts diagram and parts list for the flow ADF upper pickup (GX/sGX).

Figure 2-913 Flow ADF upper pickup (GX/sGX)

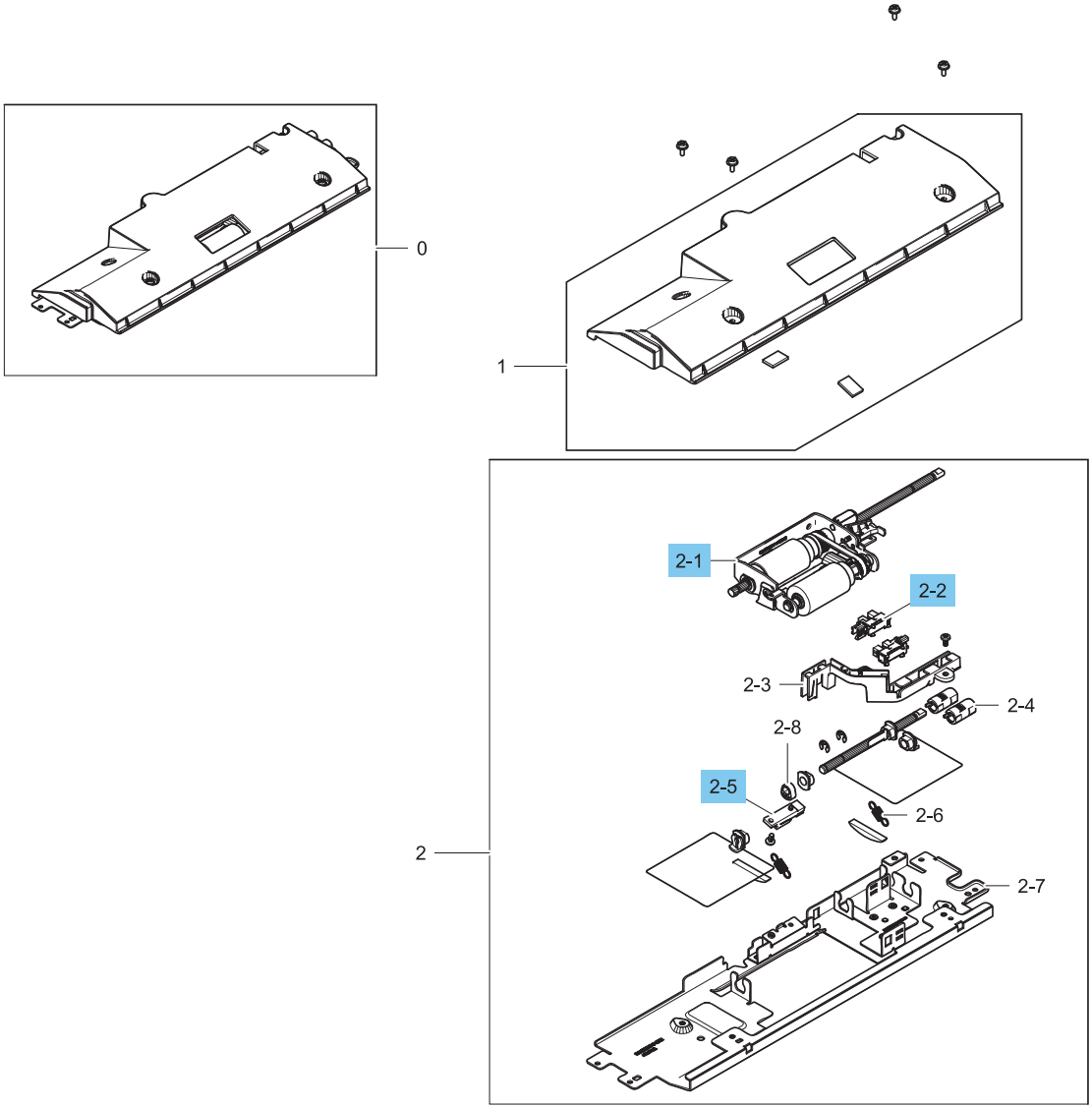


Table 2-124 Flow ADF upper pickup (GX/sGX)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
2-1	JC97-04650A	Pick feed roller assembly (GX/sGX)	1	Removal and replacement: Flow ADF pickup roller assembly (GX/sGX) on page 803
2-2	0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	1	Not applicable
2-5	0604-001381	Photo-interrupter	1	Not applicable

Removal and replacement: Flow ADF pickup roller assembly (GX/sGX)

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder pickup roller assembly (GX/sGX).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder pickup roller assembly (GX/sGX).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-125 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-04650A	Pick feed roller assembly - GX/sGX

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

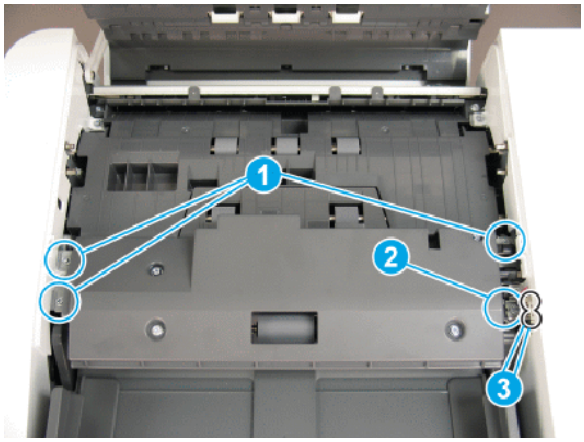
Remove the flow ADF pickup roller assembly

Follow these steps to remove the flow ADF pickup roller assembly.

1. Open the document feeder top cover.
2. Remove the pickup roller assembly:

   ▲ Remove four screws (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and one ground wire (callout 3), and then remove the pickup roller assembly.

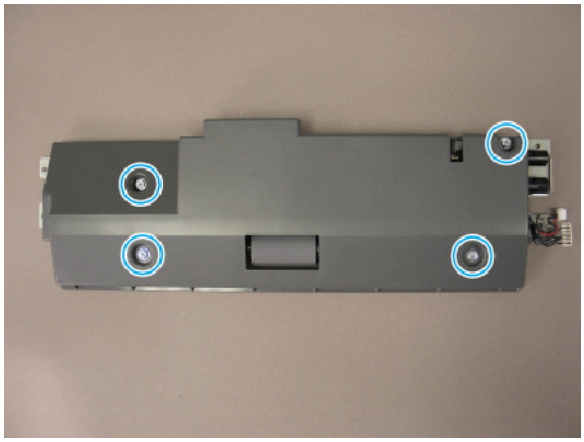
   Figure 2-914 Remove the pickup roller assembly

3. Remove the pickup rollers:

   a. Remove four screws and then remove the cover.

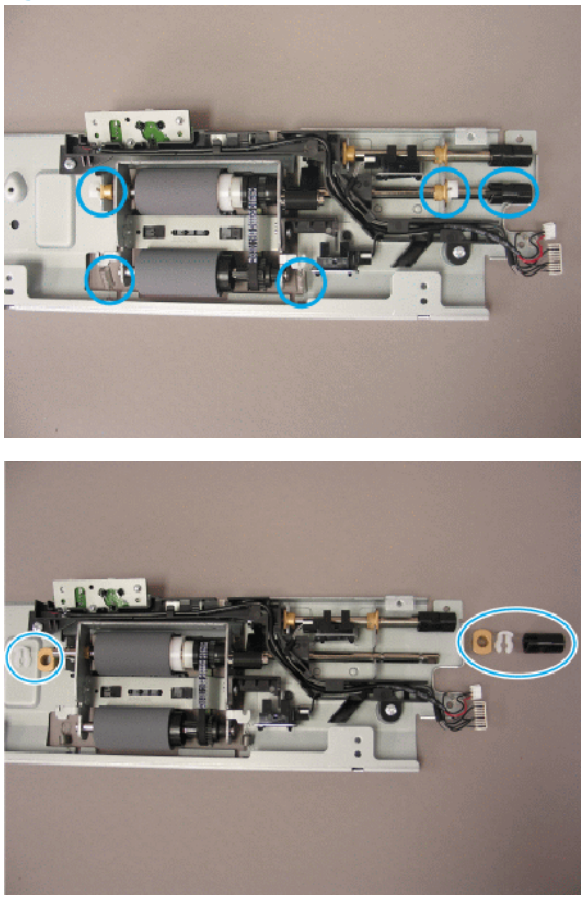
   Figure 2-915 Remove the pickup roller assembly cover

b. Remove two plastic clips and two bushings, disconnect two springs, and then remove the shaft coupler.

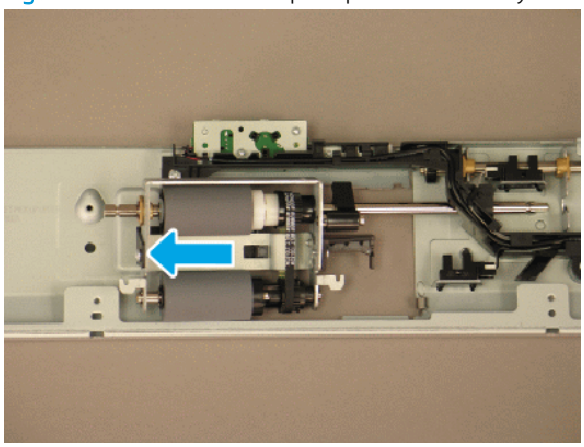
NOTE: The shaft is engaged in the coupler.

Figure 2-916 Remove the pickup roller components



c. Slide the roller shaft and then remove the pickup roller assembly.

Figure 2-917 Remove the pickup roller assembly



4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Unpack the replacement assembly.

   a. Dispose of the defective part.

   NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

   http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

   b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

   CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

   If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

   IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

   c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

   When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

   a. Save all packaging for recycling.

   b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following **special installation instructions**.

Flow ADF stacker (GX/sGX)

View the flow ADF stacker (GX/sGX) exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Flow ADF stacker (GX/sGX)

Parts diagram and parts list for the flow ADF stacker (GX/sGX).

Figure 2-918 Flow ADF stacker (GX/sGX)

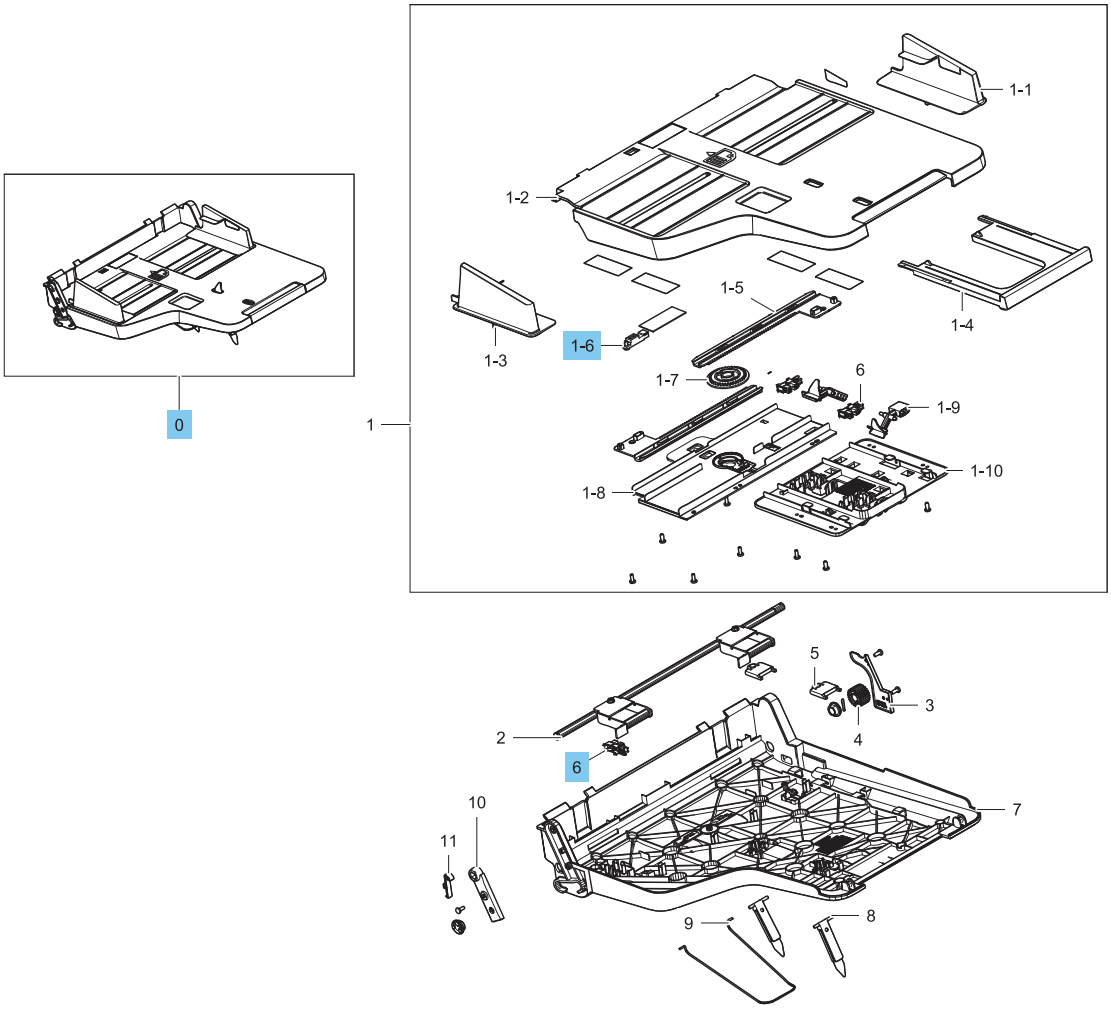


Table 2-126 Flow ADF stacker

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
0	JC97-04658B	Stacker -GX/sGX	1	Removal and replacement: Flow ADF input tray (GX/sGX) on page 809
1-6	0604-001381	Photo-interrupter	1	Not applicable
6	0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	1	Not applicable
Not shown	JC82-00693A	Flow ADF - stacker upper CM	1	Not applicable

Removal and replacement: Flow ADF input tray (GX/sGX)

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder input tray (GX/sGX).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder input tray (GX/sGX).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-127 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-04658B	Stacker - Gx/sGX

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

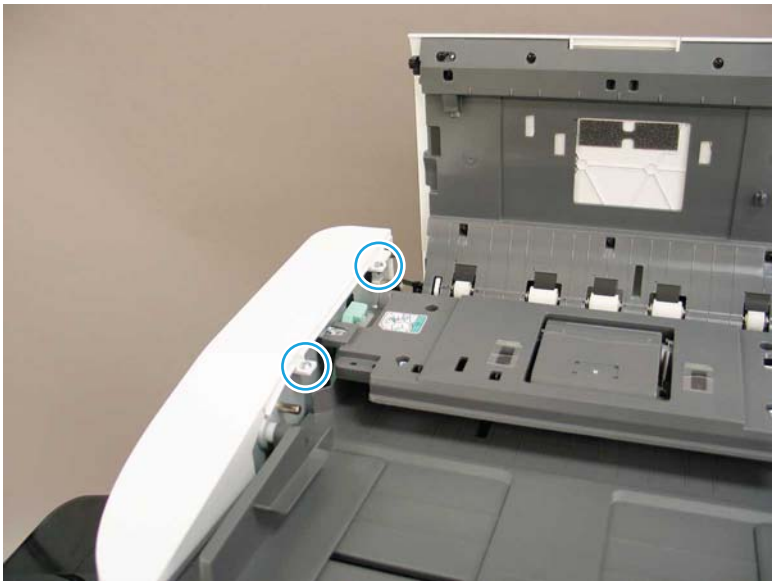
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover.

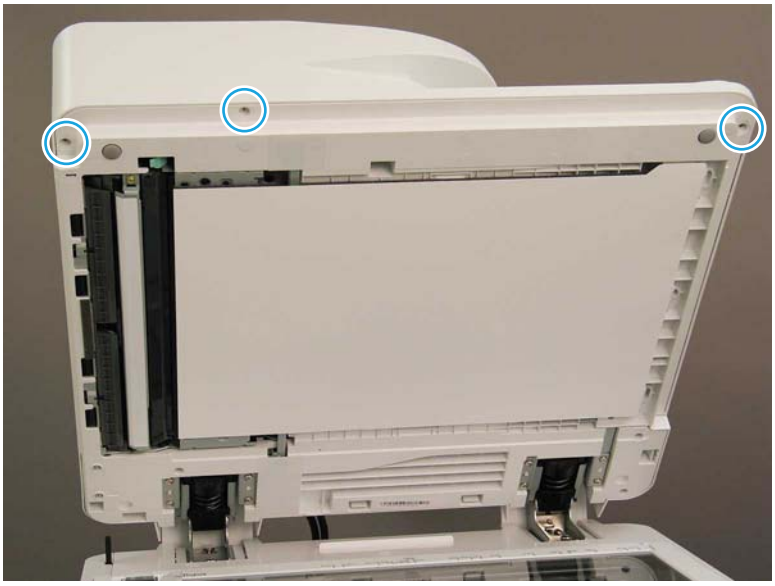
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

   Figure 2-919 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws

2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

   Figure 2-920 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws

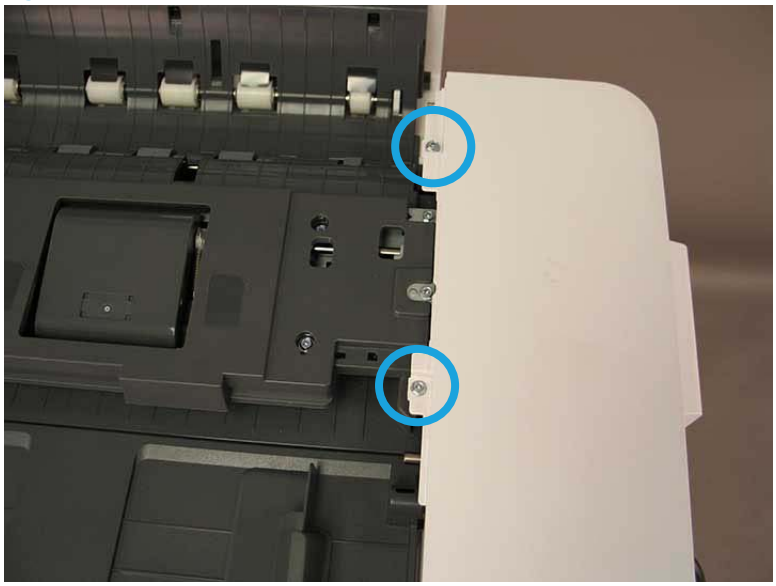
   

Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover.

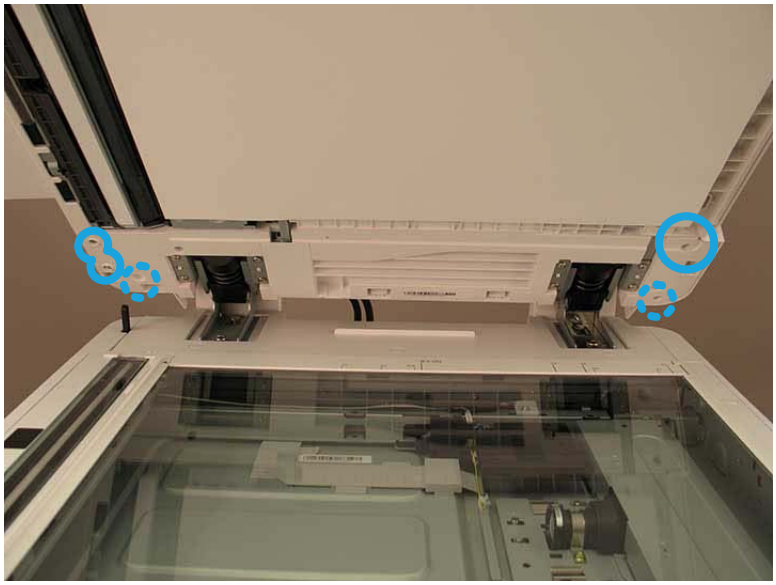
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-921 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Using a JIS #2 short-shaft screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-922 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

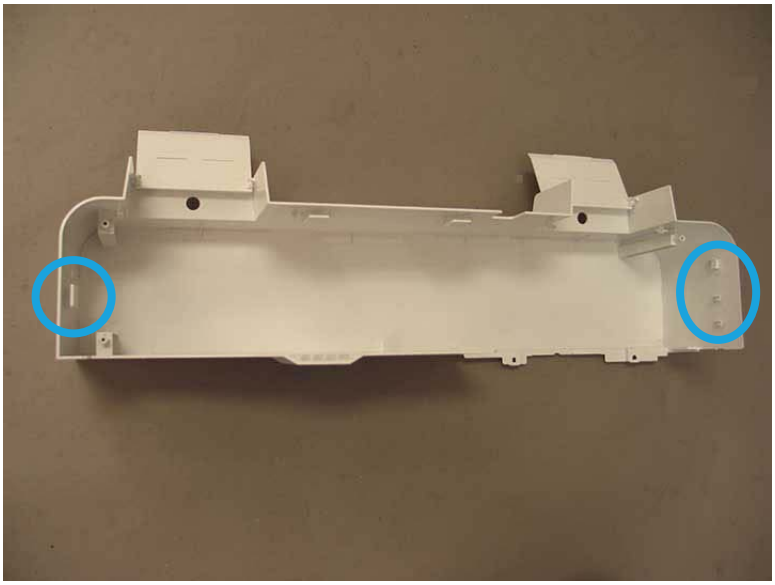


3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-923 Release one tab on the right side of back cover

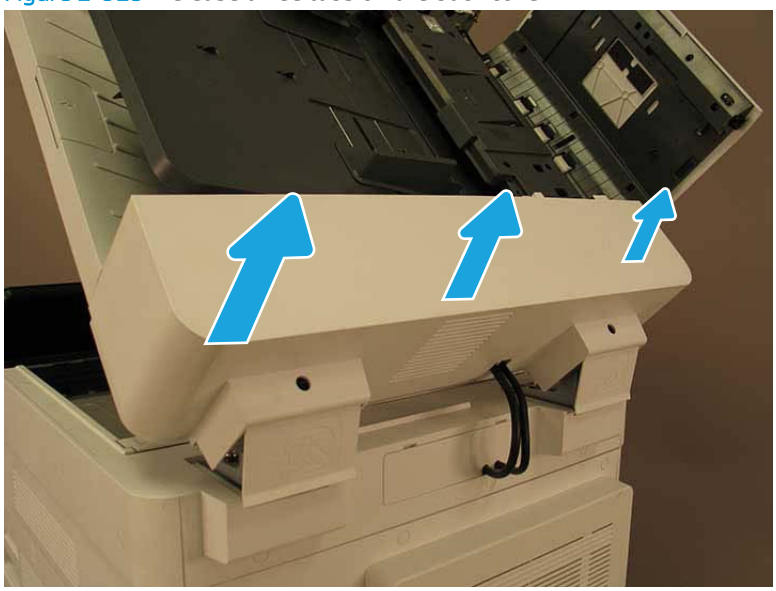
4. Before proceeding, take note of the tabs on the underside of the cover.

Figure 2-924 Note of the tabs on the underside of the cover



5. Release three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

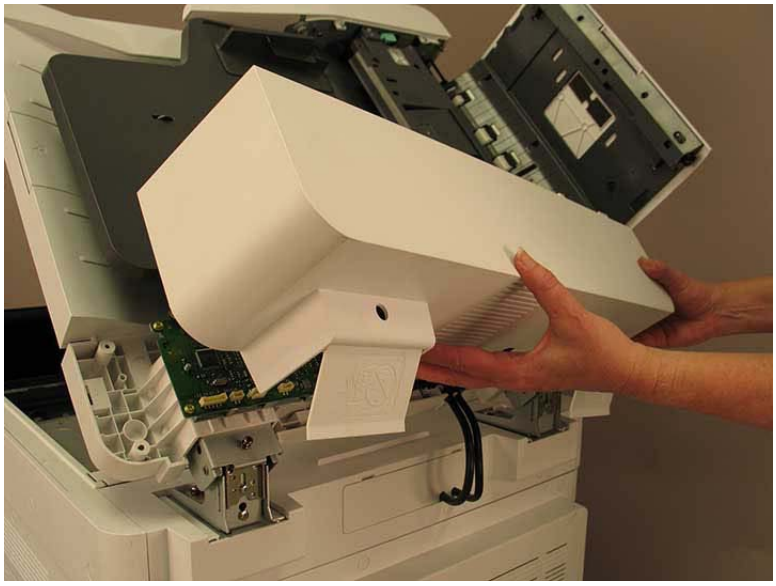
Figure 2-925 Release three tabs on the back cover



6. Remove the back cover from left to right as shown.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the cover from the right to left.

Figure 2-926 Remove the ADF back cover

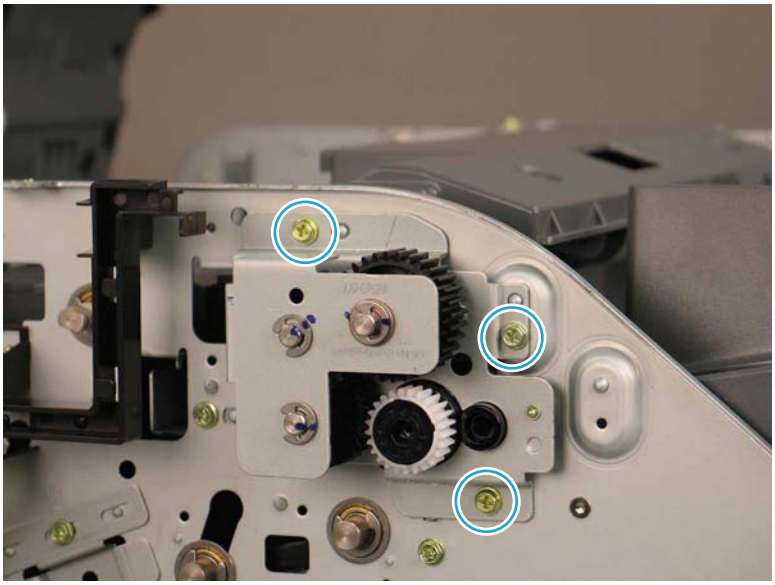


Remove the dampening unit

Follow these steps to remove the dampening unit.

- Remove three screws, and then remove the damping unit.

Figure 2-927 Remove the document feeder dampening unit

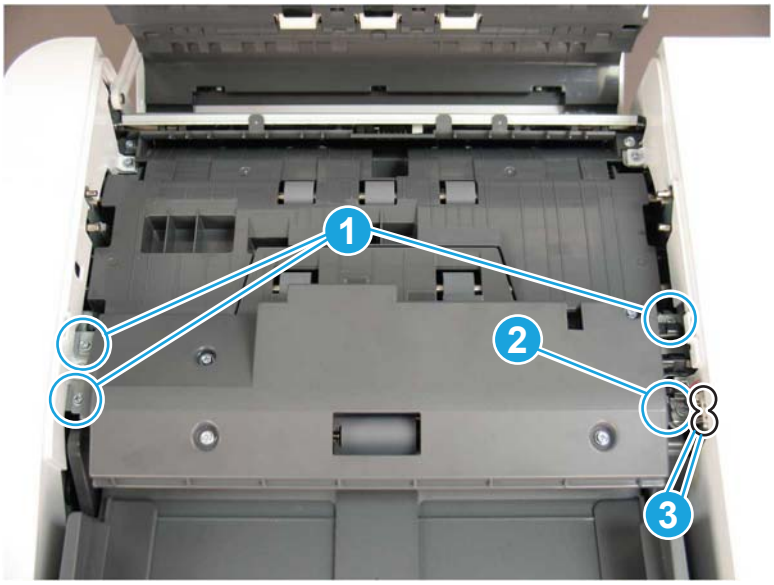


Remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly.

- ▲ Disconnect three screws (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and one ground wire (callout 3)), and then remove the pickup roller assembly.

Figure 2-928 Remove the pickup roller assembly

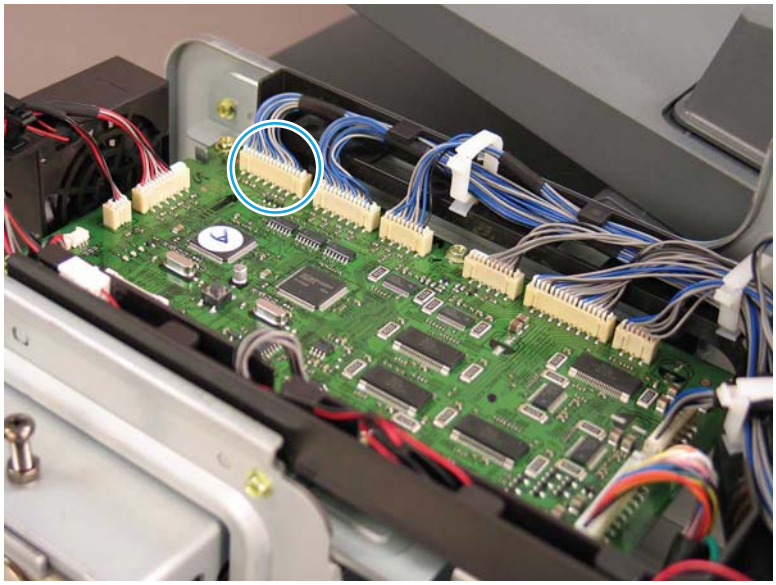


Remove the input tray

Follow these steps to remove the input tray.

1. Disconnect the document feeder PCA connector, and then remove cable from guide.

Figure 2-929 Disconnect the document feeder PCA connector



2. Lift the tray from the front, and pivot the tray outward to remove.

1. Unpack the replacement assembly.

   a. Dispose of the defective part.

   NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

   http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

   b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

   CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

   If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

   IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

   c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

   When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Flow ADF main frame (GX/sGX)

View the flow ADF main frame (GX/sGX) exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Flow ADF main frame (GX/sGX)

Parts diagram and parts list for the flow ADF main frame (GX/sGX)

Figure 2-930 Flow ADF main frame (GX/sGX)

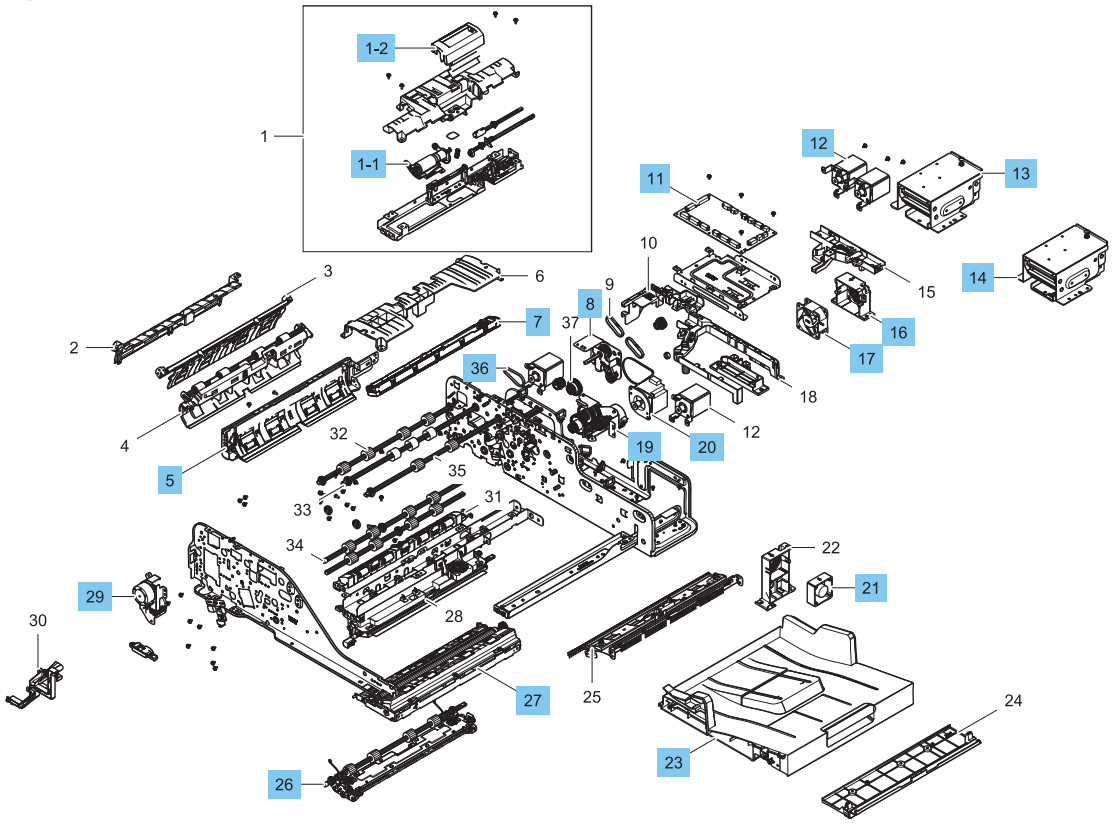


Table 2-128 Flow ADF main

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1-1	JC97-04915A	Separation roller assembly - GX/sGX	1	Removal and replacement: Flow ADF separation roller assembly on page 820
1-2	JC97-04652A	Cover, separation roller - GX/sGX	1	Not applicable
5	JC97-04656B	Scan in lower assembly - GX/sGX	1	Removal and replacement: Flow ADF scan in lower assembly (GX/sGX) on page 861
7	0609-001558	Contact image sensor - GX/sGX	1	Removal and replacement: Flow ADF contact image sensor (CIS) (GX/sGX) on page 825
8	JC97-04681A	Drive release pickup - GX/sGX	1	Removal and replacement: Flow ADF rear motors (GX/sGX) on page 833
11	JC92-02964A	PCA - AF HIC (GX only)	1	Removal and replacement: Flow ADF PCA fan (GX/sGX) on page 844
11	JC92-02964B	PCA - sGX	1	Removal and replacement: PCA-Scanner sGX (dn models only) on page 869
12	JC97-04680A	Motor, feed drive - GX/sGX	4	Removal and replacement: Flow ADF front motor (GX/sGX) on page 850
13	JC97-04640A	Hinge L - GX/sGX	1	Not applicable
14	JC97-04641A	Hinge R - GX/sGX	1	Not applicable
16	JC61-07694A	Motor, ADF fan	1	Not applicable
17	JC31-00168A	Fan - GX/sGX (CIS)	1	Removal and replacement: Contact image sensor (CIS) fan (GX/sGX) on page 856
19	JC97-04679A	Drive - GX/sGX	1	Removal and replacement: Flow ADF rear motors (GX/sGX) on page 833
20	JC31-00177A	Step motor, ip	1	Removal and replacement: Flow ADF rear motors (GX/sGX) on page 833
21	JC31-00146A	Fan type 4 ADF GX/sGX	1	Removal and replacement: Flow ADF PCA fan (GX/sGX) on page 844
23	JC97-04668B	Input tray - GX/sGX	1	Not applicable
26	JC97-04687A	White roller - GX/sGX	1	Not applicable
27	JC97-04830A	Scan out - GX/sGX	1	Not applicable
29	JC97-04682A	Motor, drive release scan	1	Not applicable
36	6602-001730	Timing belt gear - GX/sGX	3	Not applicable

Table 2-128 Flow ADF main (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
Not shown	JC92-02967A	PCA - ADF receiver (GX only)	1	Not applicable
Not shown	JC92-02966A	PCA - ADF transmitter (GX only)	1	Not applicable

Removal and replacement: Flow ADF separation roller assembly

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder separation roller assembly (GX/sGX).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder separation roller assembly (GX/sGX).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-129 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-04915A	Separation roller assembly - GX\sGX

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

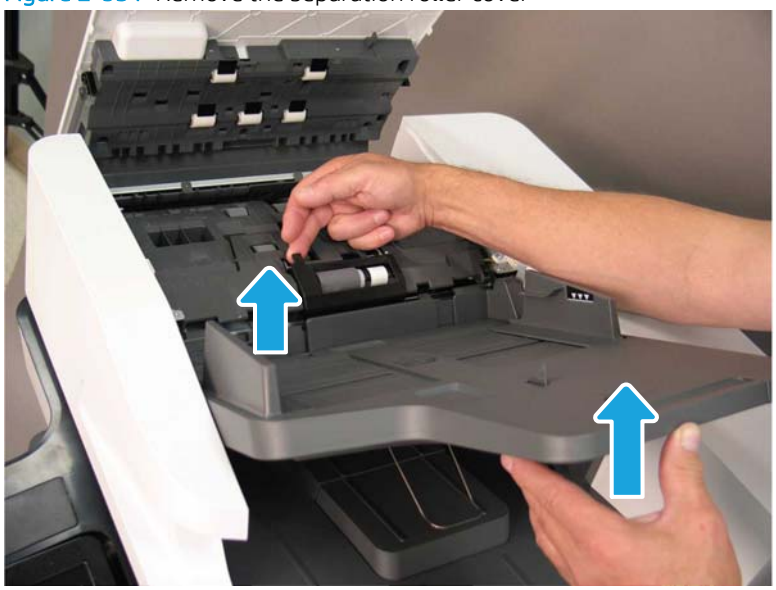
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the flow ADF separation roller assembly

Follow these steps to remove the flow ADF separation roller assembly.

1. Slightly lift the input tray, and then remove the separation roller cover.

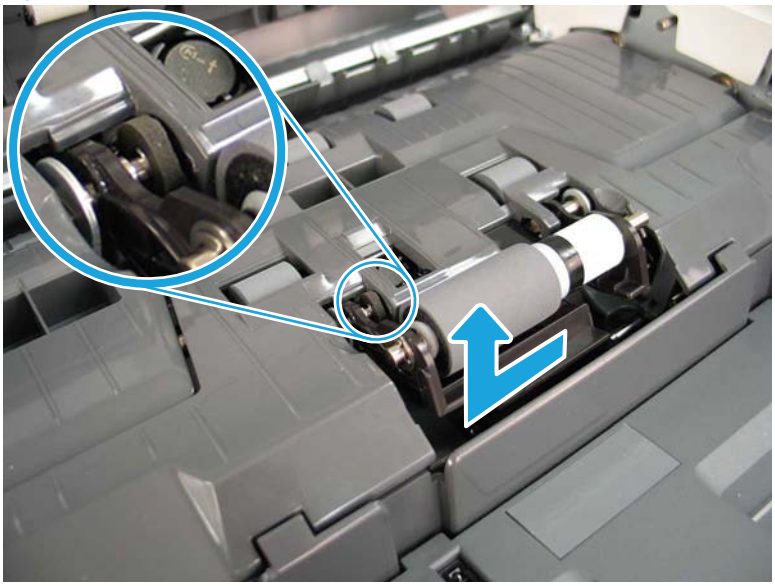
Figure 2-931 Remove the separation roller cover



2. Remove one plastic clip.

NOTE: The shaft is engaged in the coupler.

Figure 2-932 Remove one plastic clip



3. Slide the roller assembly to the front, and then pull up to release the claws from the shaft.

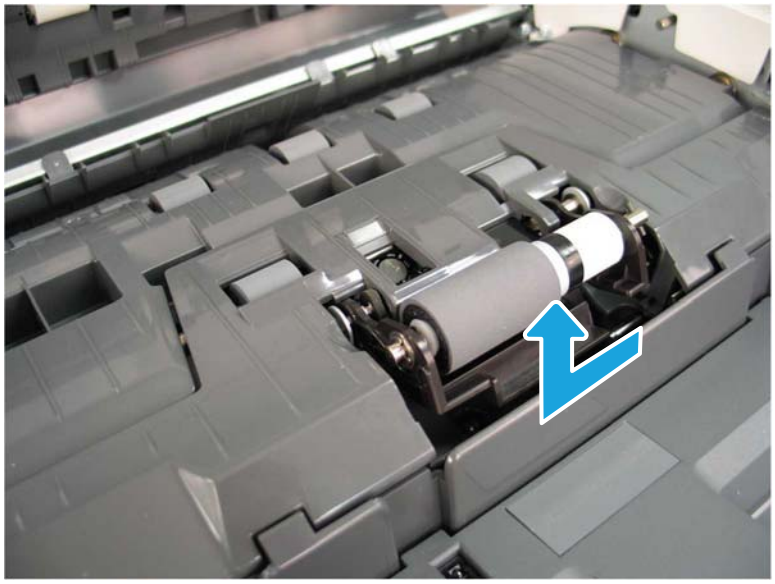
Reinstallation tip: Position the spring and shaft before attaching the claws to the shaft.

Figure 2-933 Release the separation roller

4. Remove the separation roller.

NOTE: Make sure that the sponge washer (circled in a previous step) is retained during the removal of the roller assembly–it might fall off.

Figure 2-934 Remove the separation roller



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Also use the following **special installation instructions**.

Removal and replacement: Flow ADF contact image sensor (CIS) (GX/sGX)

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder CIS (GX/sGX).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder CIS (GX/sGX).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-130 Part information

Part number	Part description
0609-001558	Contact image sensor - GX/sGX

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

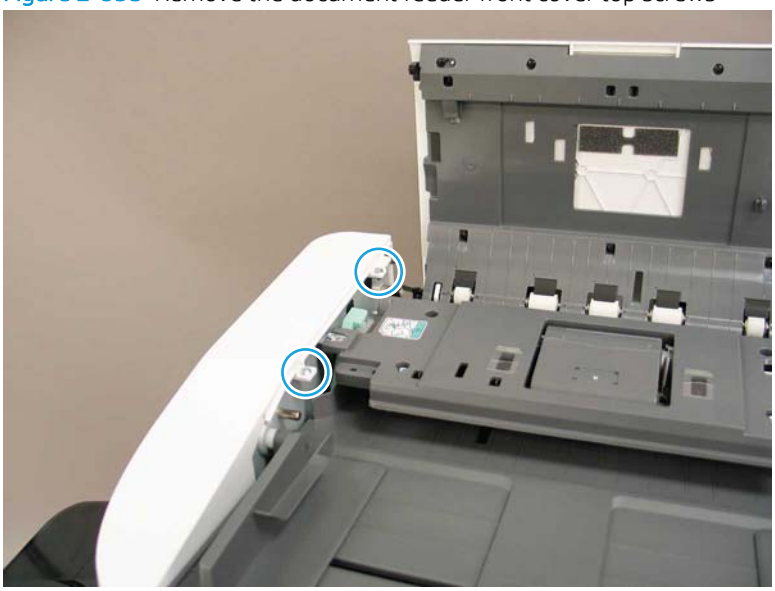
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover.

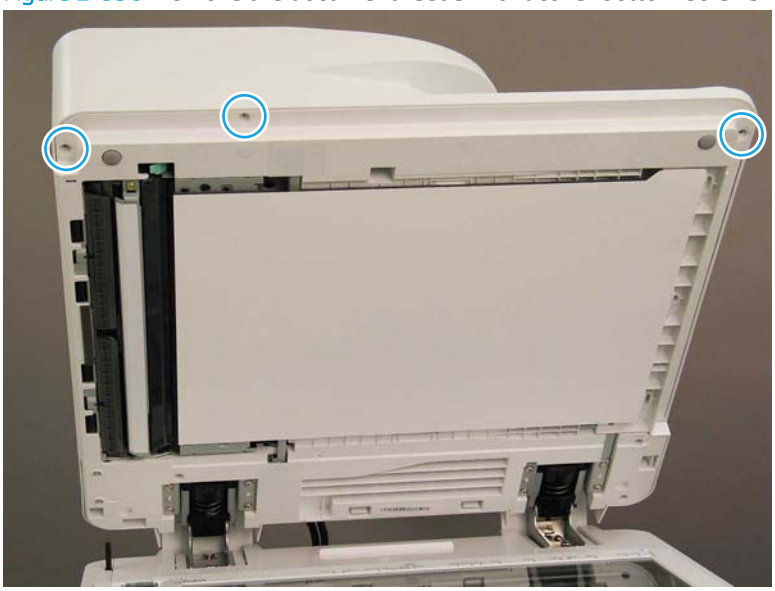
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

   Figure 2-935 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws

2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

   Figure 2-936 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws

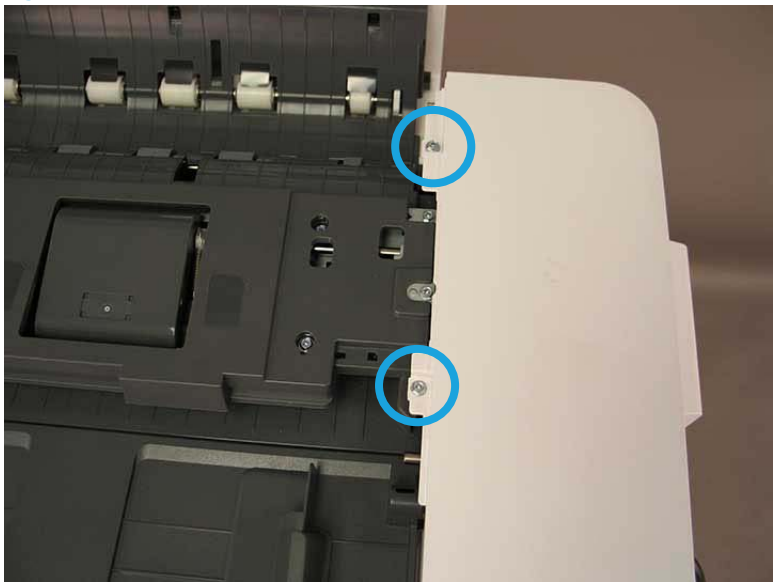
   

Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover.

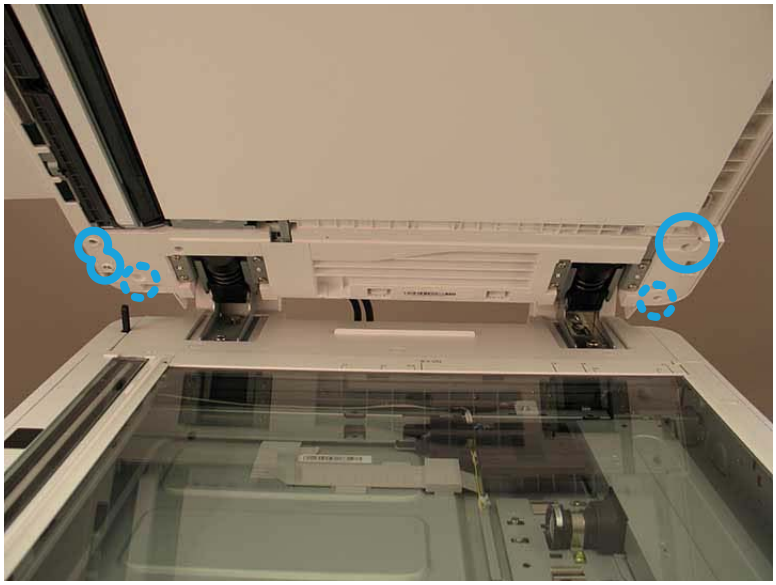
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-937 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Using a JIS #2 short-shaft screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-938 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

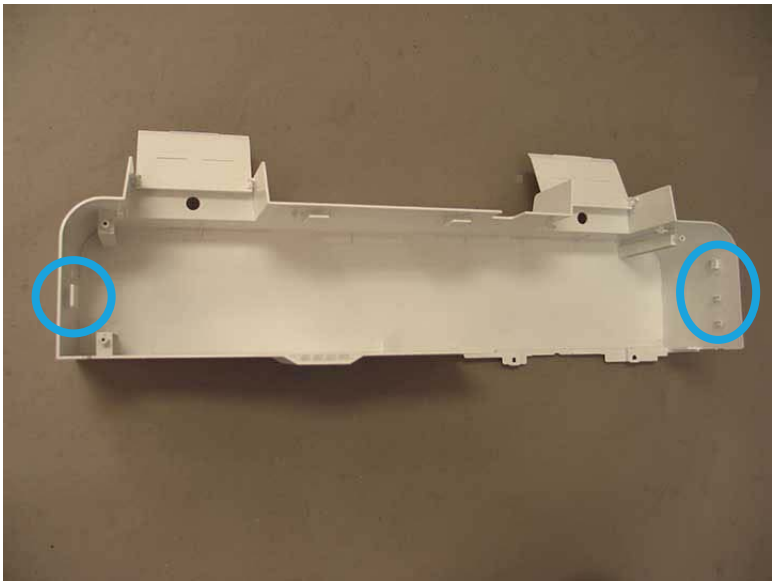


3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-939 Release one tab on the right side of back cover

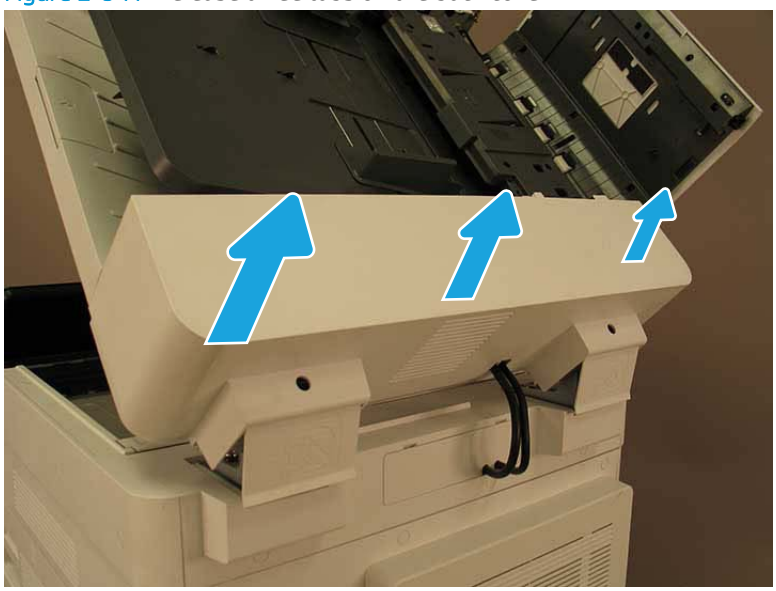
4. Before proceeding, take note of the tabs on the underside of the cover.

Figure 2-940 Note of the tabs on the underside of the cover



5. Release three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

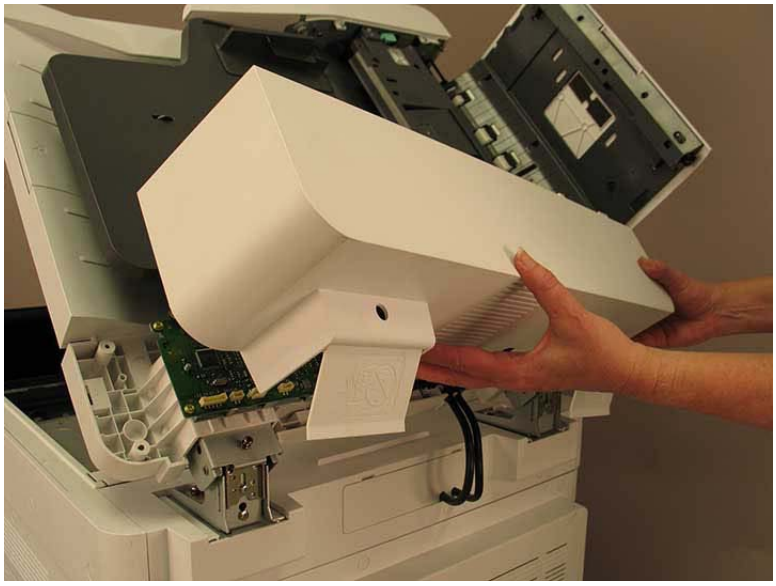
Figure 2-941 Release three tabs on the back cover



6. Remove the back cover from left to right as shown.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the cover from the right to left.

Figure 2-942 Remove the ADF back cover

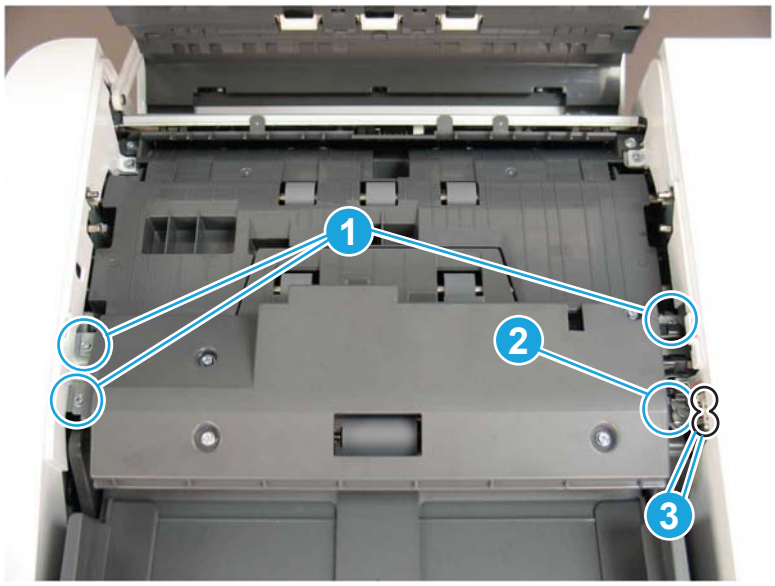


Remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly.

- Disconnect three screws (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and one ground wire (callout 3)), and then remove the pickup roller assembly.

Figure 2-943 Remove the pickup roller assembly

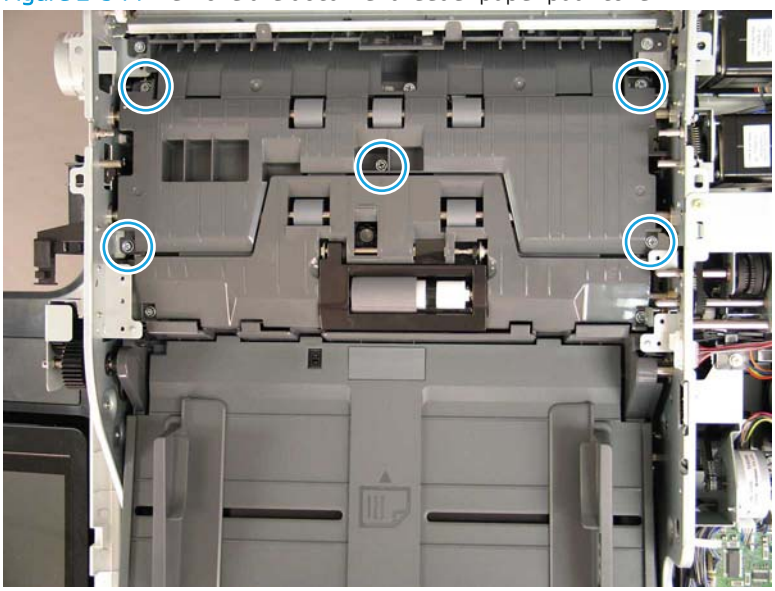


Remove the paper path cover

Follow these steps to remove the paper path cover.

▲ Remove five screws, and then remove the paper path cover.

Figure 2-944 Remove the document feeder paper path cover



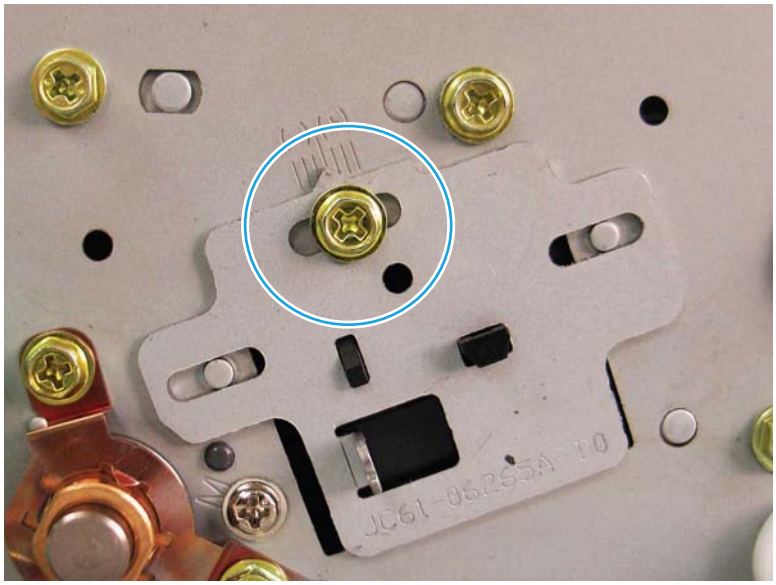
Remove the CIS assembly

Follow these steps to remove the CIS assembly.

1. Remove one screw, and then remove the CIS front alignment cover.

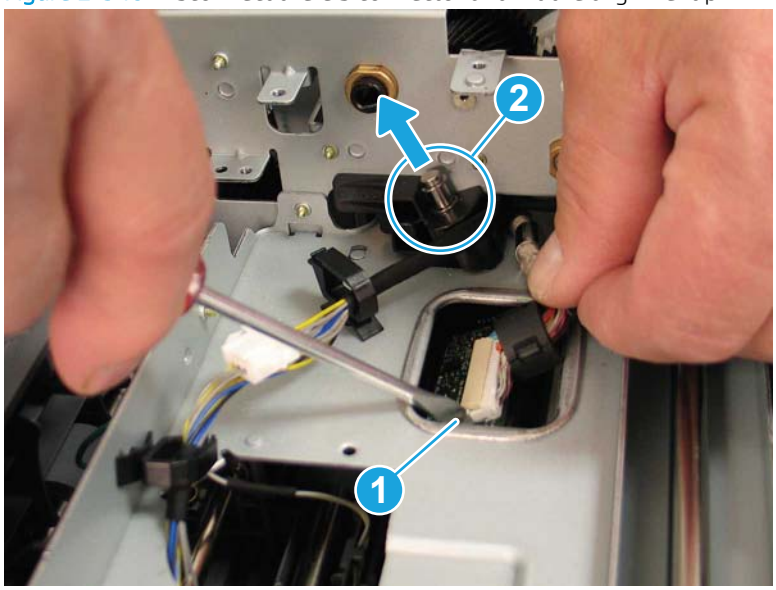
Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the CIS front alignment cover. The cover must be reinstalled in the same orientation.

Figure 2-945 Remove the CIS front alignment cover screws



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then lift the alignment pin to release the CIS assembly (callout 2).

Figure 2-946 Disconnect the CIS connector and lift the alignment pin



3. Remove the CIS assembly from the chassis.

1. Unpack the replacement assembly.

   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Removal and replacement: Flow ADF rear motors (GX/sGX)

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder rear motors (GX/sGX).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder rear motors (GX/sGX).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-131 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-04679A	Drive - GX/sGX
JC97-04681A	Drive release pickup - GX/sGX
JC97-04680A	Pickup motor
JC97-04680A	Pre-REGI motor
JC97-04680A	Exit motor
JC97-04680A	Feed motor
JC31-00177A	REGI motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

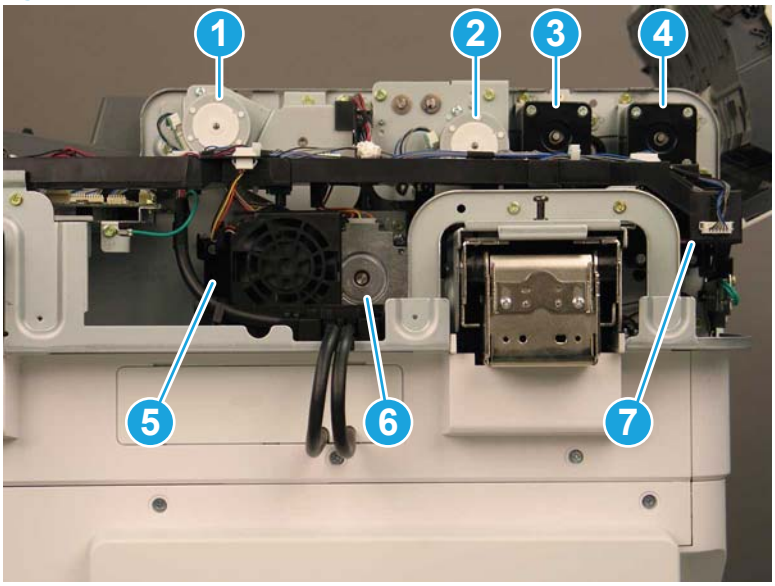
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Identify the document feeder motors

Follow these steps to identify the document feeder motors.

▲ Use the figure below to locate the motor.

Figure 2-947 Document feeder motors identification



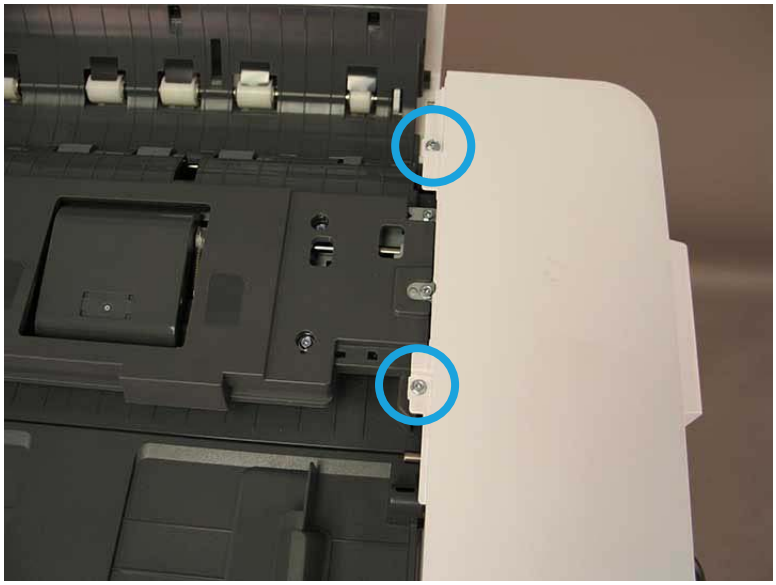
Callout	Description
1	Motor 1
2	Motor 2
3	Pickup motor
4	Pre-REGI motor
5	Exit motor
6	Feed motor
7	REGI motor

Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover.

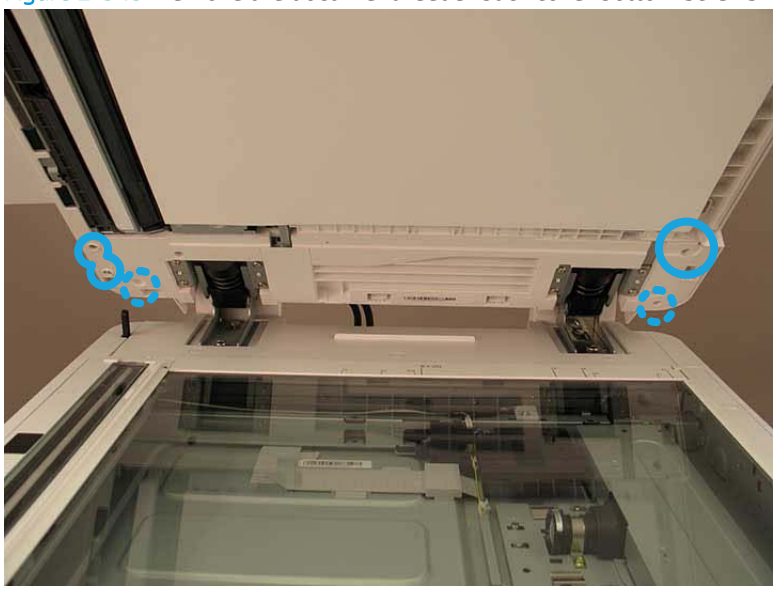
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-948 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Using a JIS #2 short-shaft screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-949 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

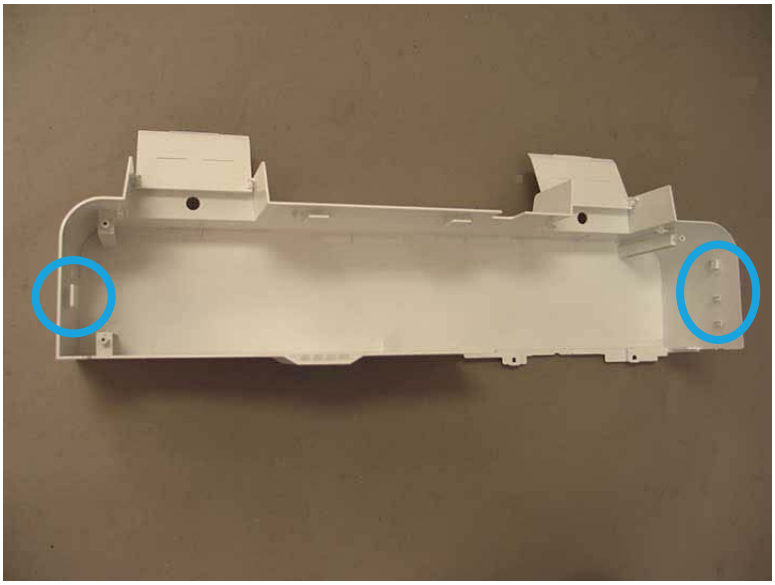


3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-950 Release one tab on the right side of back cover

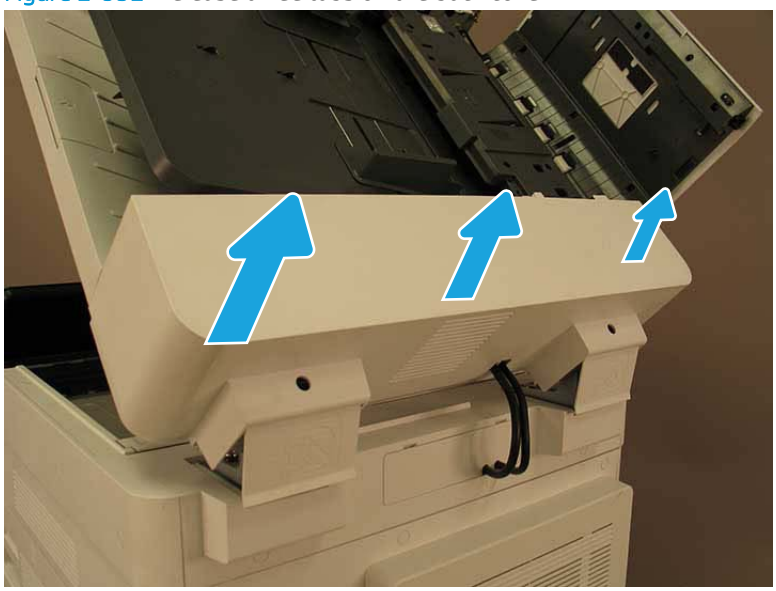
4. Before proceeding, take note of the tabs on the underside of the cover.

Figure 2-951 Note of the tabs on the underside of the cover



5. Release three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

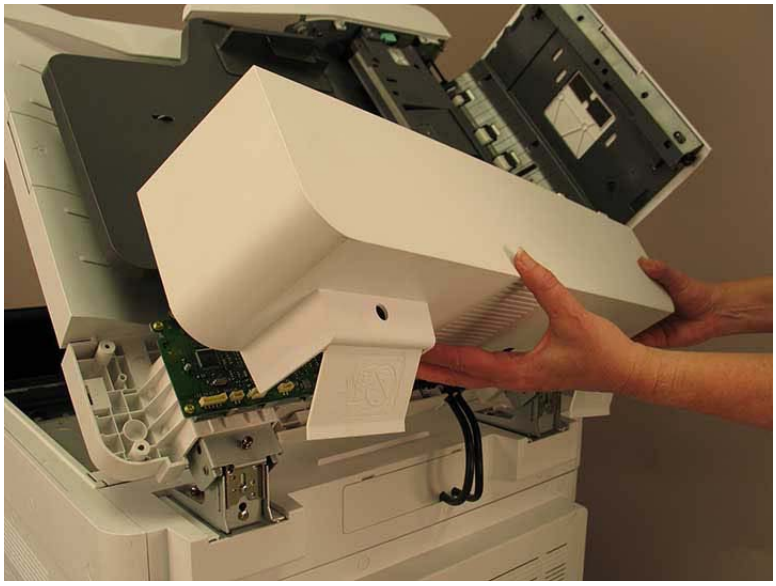
Figure 2-952 Release three tabs on the back cover



6. Remove the back cover from left to right as shown.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the cover from the right to left.

Figure 2-953 Remove the ADF back cover



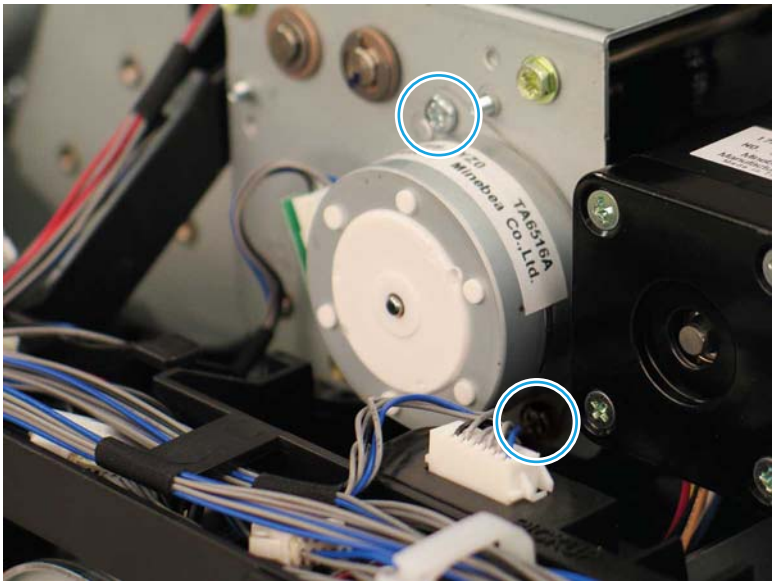
Remove motors 1 and 2

Follow these steps to remove motors 1 and 2.

▲ Remove two screws and one connector, and then remove the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

Figure 2-954 Remove the motor



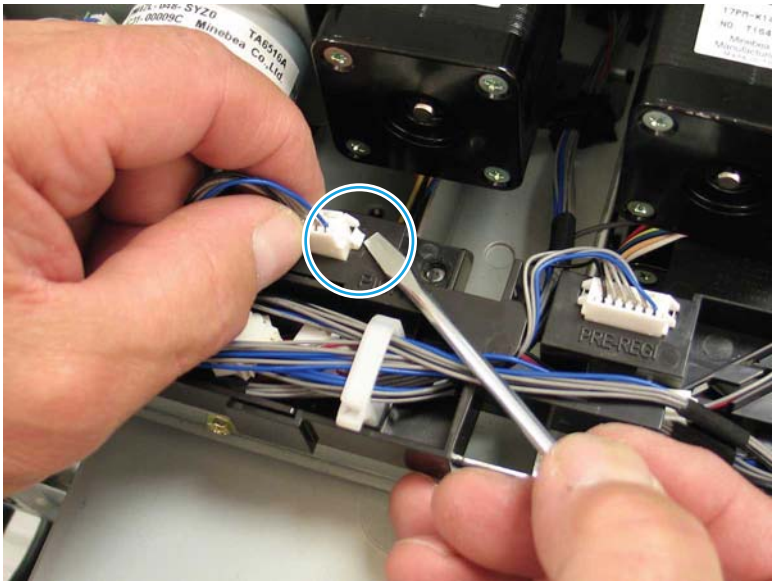
Remove the pickup and pre-REGI motors

Follow these steps to remove the pickup and pre-REGI motors.

1. Loosen the cable retainer, and then disconnect one connector from the motor.

TIP: Remove the connector harness from the retainer, and then disconnect the connector.

Figure 2-955 Disconnect one connector

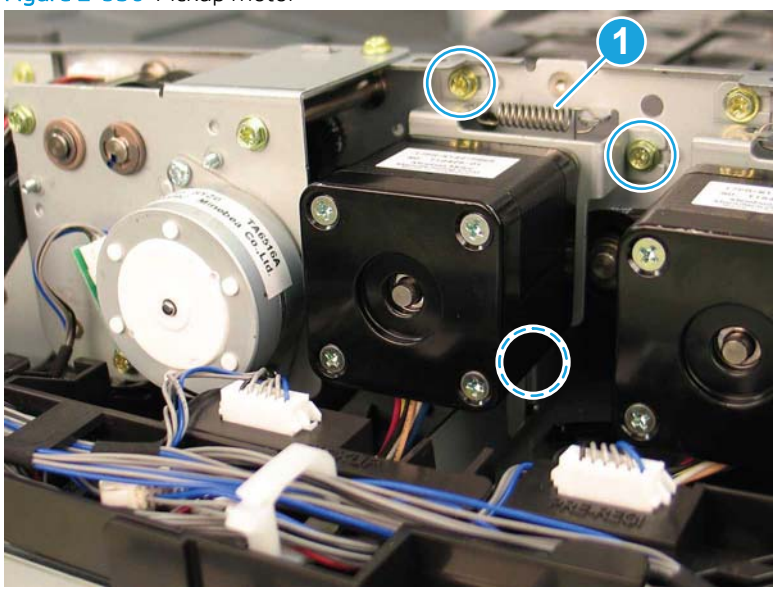


2. Remove one spring (callout 1), and then loosen (but do not remove) three screws. Slide the pickup motor off the screws to remove it.

NOTE:

- Reinstall the motor on the motor mounting screws, and then lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.
- Install the tension spring.
- Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

Figure 2-956 Pickup motor

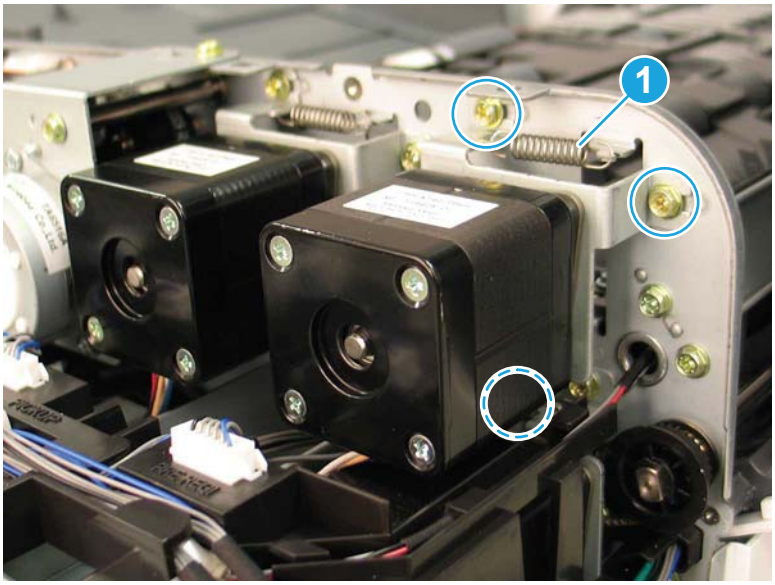


3. Remove one spring (callout 1), and then loosen (but do not remove) three screws. Slide the pre-REGI motor off the screws to remove it.

NOTE:

- Reinstall the motor on the motor mounting screws, and then lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.
- Install the tension spring.
- Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

Figure 2-957 Pre-REGI motor

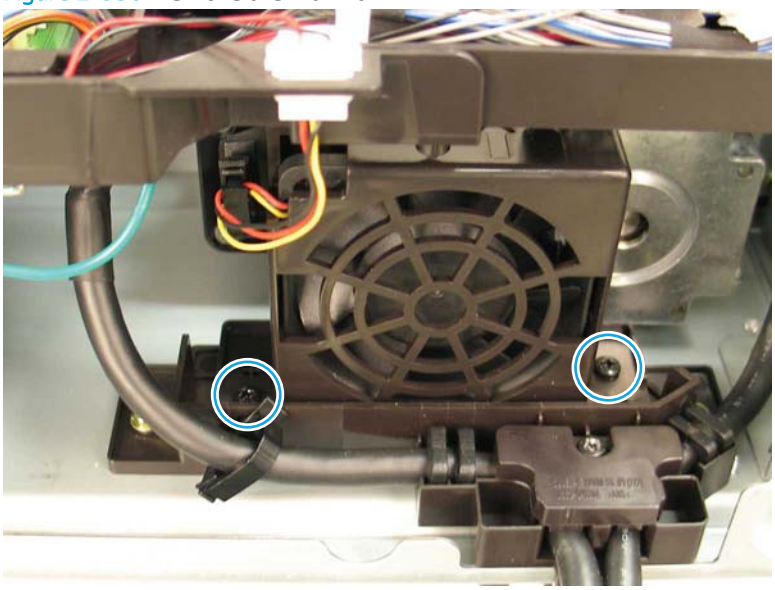


Remove the exit motor

Follow these steps to remove the exit motor.

1. Remove two screws and one connector, and then remove the CIS fan.

Figure 2-958 Remove the main fan



2. Remove the spring (callout 1), disconnect one connector (callout 2), loosen three screws, and then remove the exit motor.

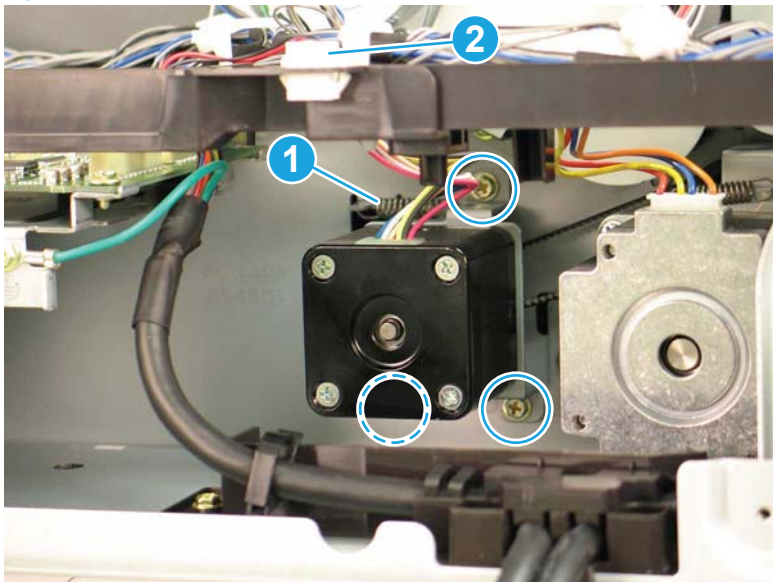
Reinstallation tip:

a. Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

b. Install the tension spring.

c. Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

Figure 2-959 Remove the motor

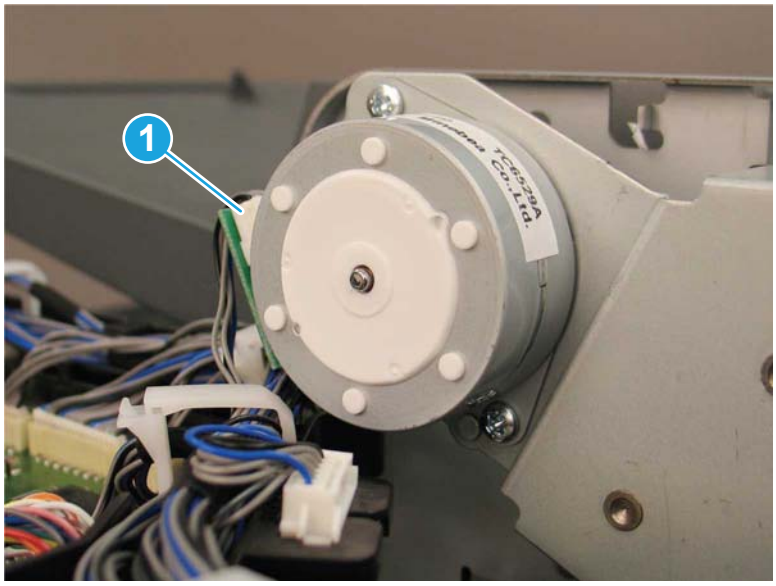


Remove the feed motor

Follow these steps to remove the feed motor.

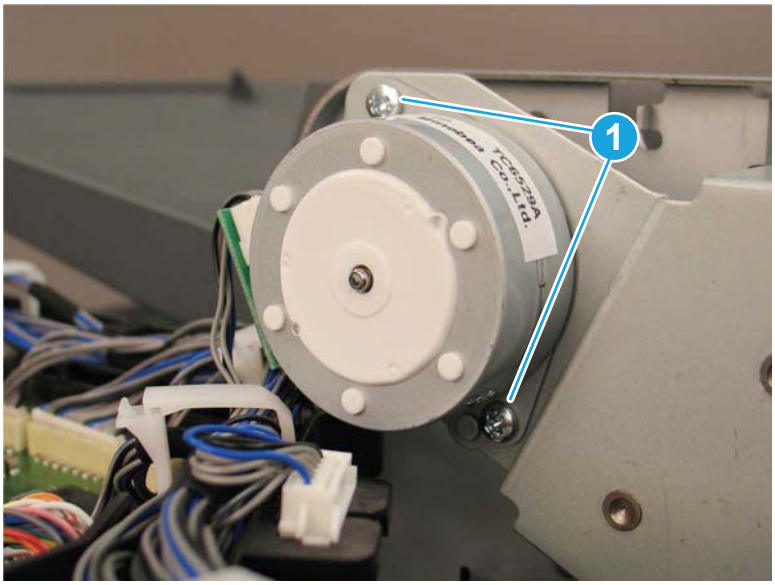
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 2-960 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove two screws, and then remove motor.

Figure 2-961 Remove the motor



Remove the REGI motor

Follow these steps to remove the REGI motor.

1. Remove the rear cover.
2. Remove the Pre-REGI motor.
3. Disconnect one connector from the motor.

TIP: Remove the connector harness from the cable retainer, and then disconnect the connector.

4. Remove one spring, loosen (do not remove) 3 screws, and then slide the motor off the screws to remove it.

Reinstallation tip:

a. Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

b. Install the tension spring.

c. Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

1. Unpack the replacement assembly.

a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Removal and replacement: Flow ADF PCA fan (GX/sGX)

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder PCA fan (GX/sGX).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder PCA fan (GX/sGX).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-132 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00146A	Document feeder PCA fan assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

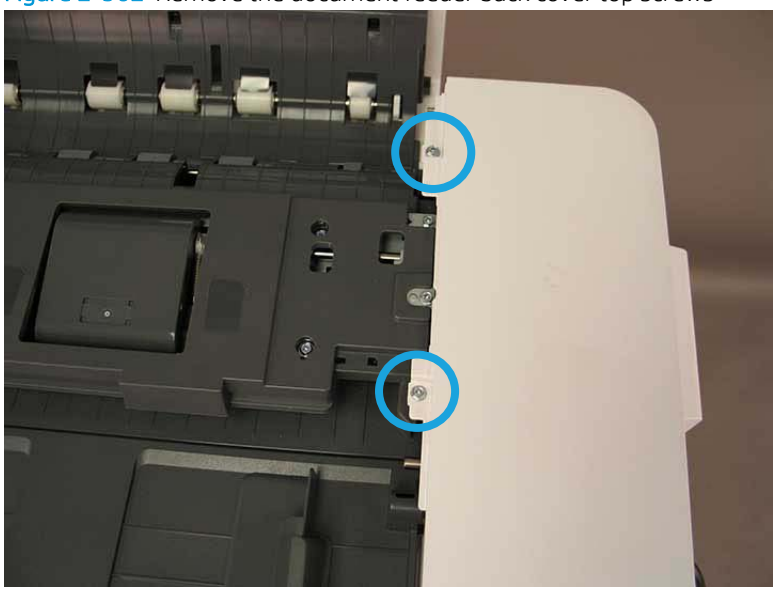
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover.

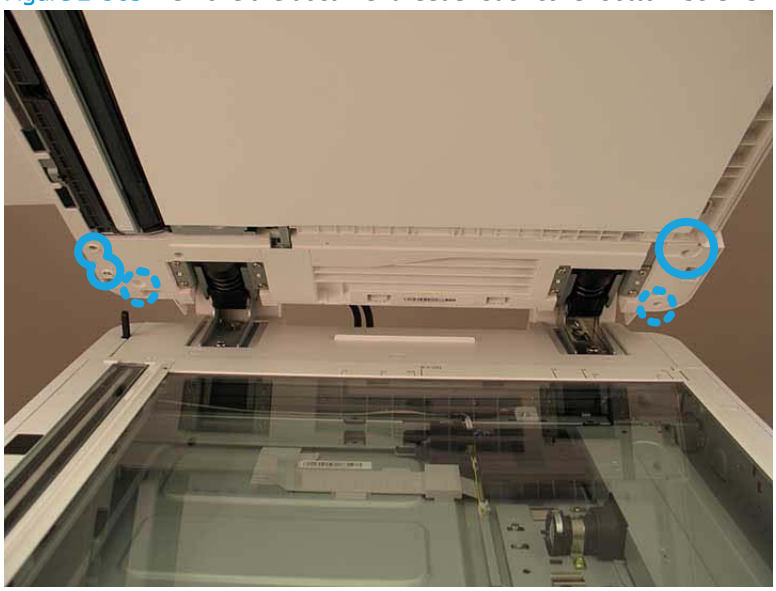
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

   Figure 2-962 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws

2. Using a JIS #2 short-shaft screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

   Figure 2-963 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

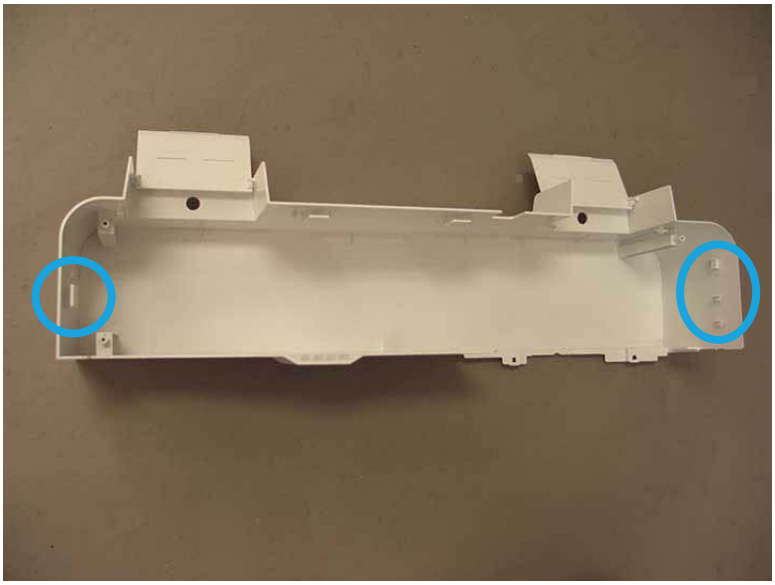
   

3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-964 Release one tab on the right side of back cover

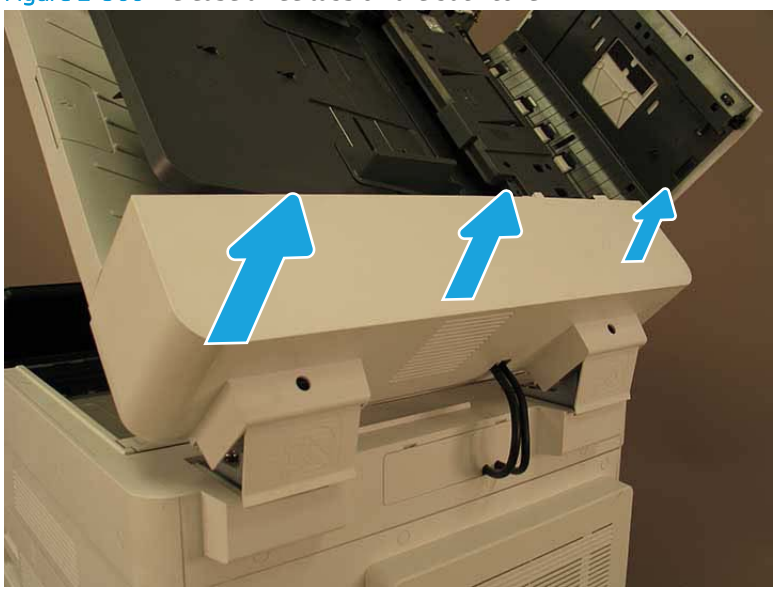
4. Before proceeding, take note of the tabs on the underside of the cover.

Figure 2-965 Note of the tabs on the underside of the cover



5. Release three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

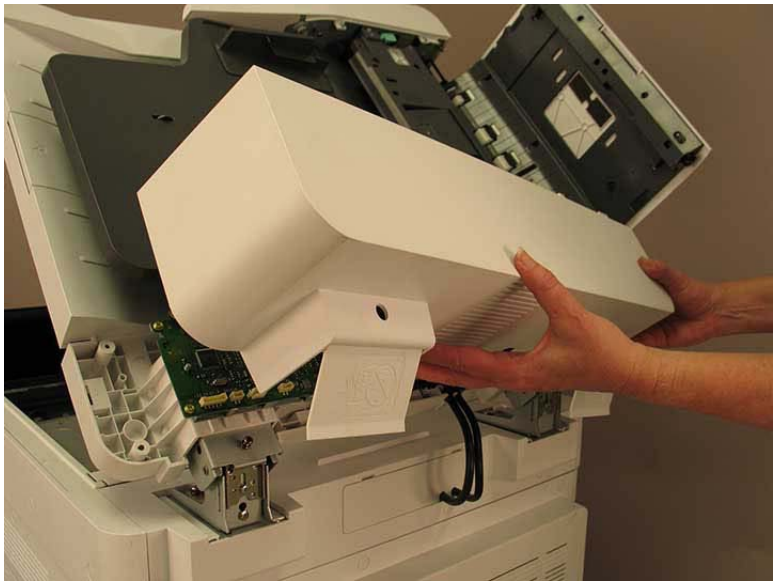
Figure 2-966 Release three tabs on the back cover



6. Remove the back cover from left to right as shown.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the cover from the right to left.

Figure 2-967 Remove the ADF back cover



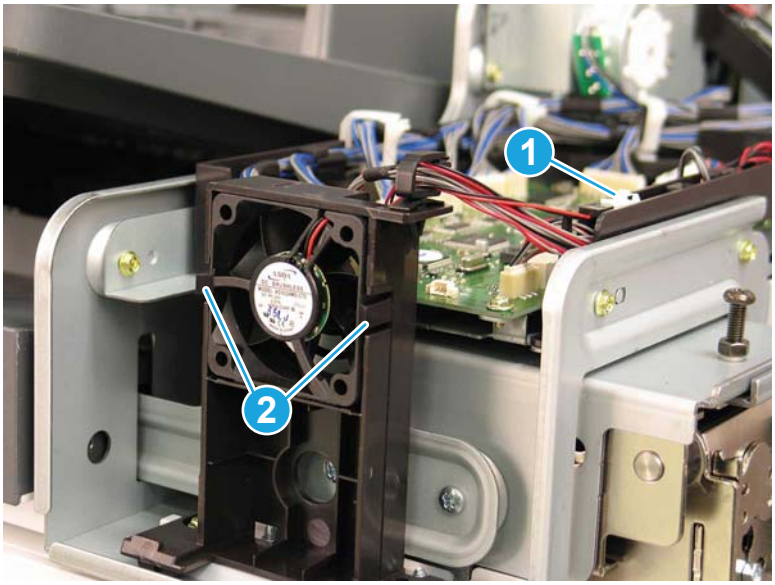
Remove the document feeder PCA fan

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder PCA fan.

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1) and then release two tabs (callout 2) to remove the fan.

Reinstallation tip: Install the fan with the correct orientation when reinstalling.

Figure 2-968 Remove the document feeder PCA fan connector



Remove the REGI motor

Follow these steps to remove the REGI motor.

1. Remove the rear cover.
2. Remove the Pre-REGI motor.
3. Disconnect one connector from the motor.

TIP: Remove the connector harness from the cable retainer, and then disconnect the connector.

4. Remove one spring, loosen (do not remove) 3 screws, and then slide the motor off the screws to remove it.

Reinstallation tip:

a. Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

b. Install the tension spring.

c. Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

1. Unpack the replacement assembly.

a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Removal and replacement: Flow ADF front motor (GX/sGX)

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder front motor (GX/sGX).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder front motor (GX/sGX).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-133 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00177A	Motor, step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

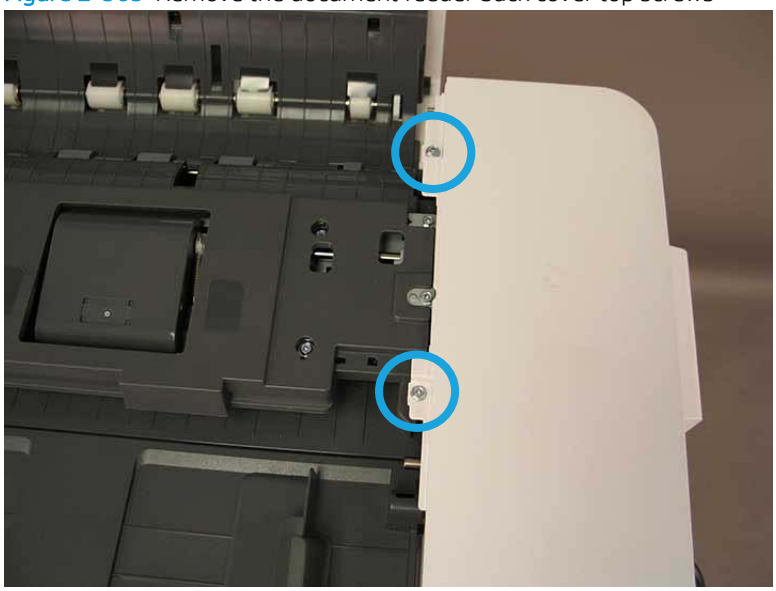
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover.

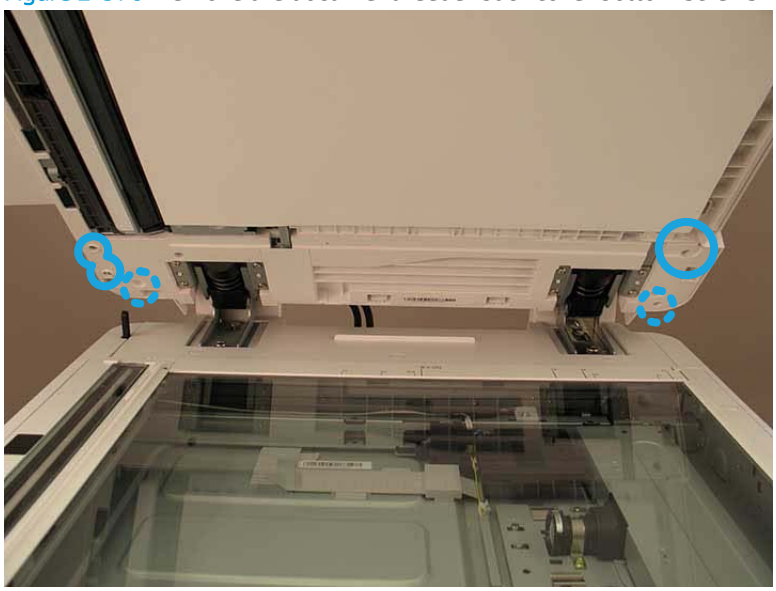
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

   Figure 2-969 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws

2. Using a JIS #2 short-shaft screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

   Figure 2-970 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

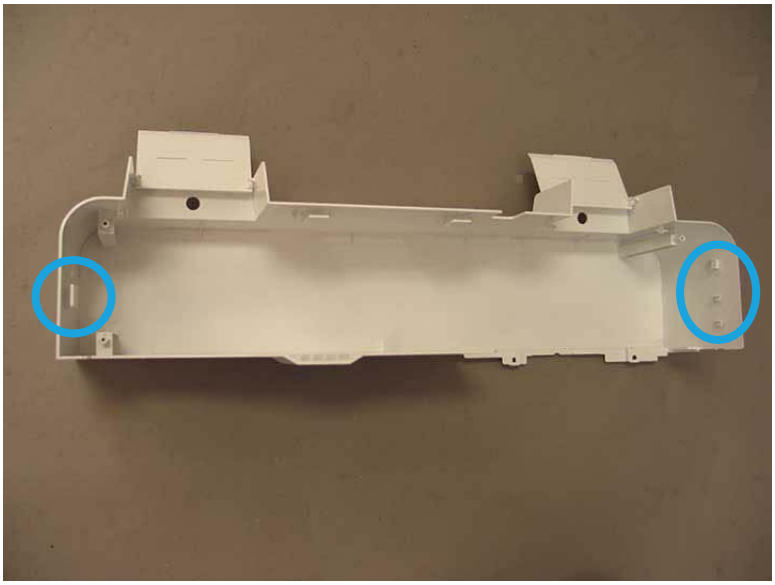
   

3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-971 Release one tab on the right side of back cover

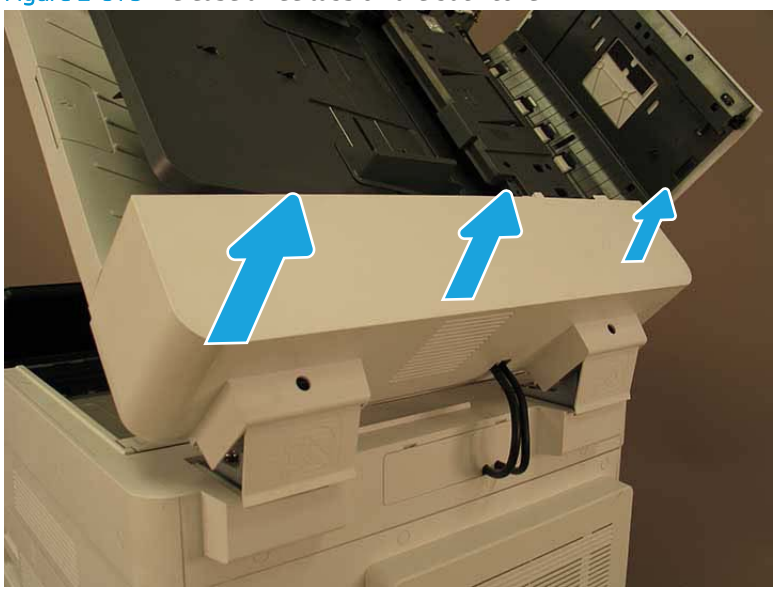
4. Before proceeding, take note of the tabs on the underside of the cover.

Figure 2-972 Note of the tabs on the underside of the cover



5. Release three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

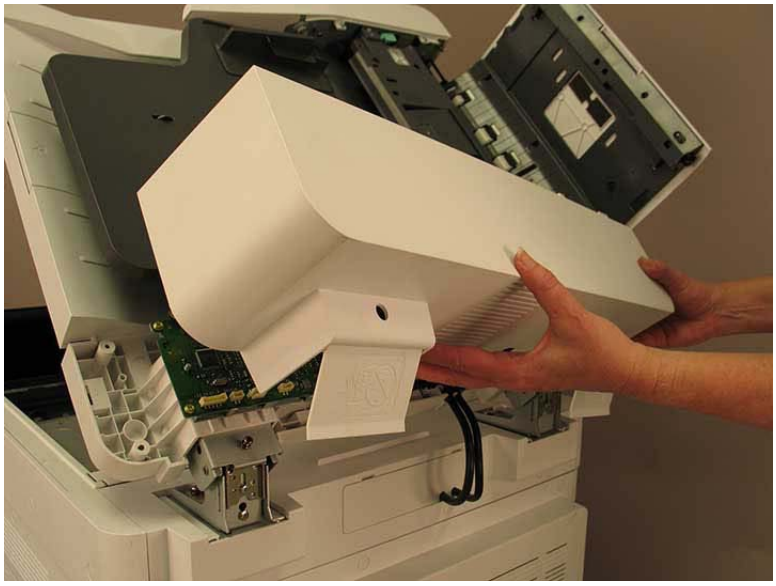
Figure 2-973 Release three tabs on the back cover



6. Remove the back cover from left to right as shown.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the cover from the right to left.

Figure 2-974 Remove the ADF back cover



Remove the front motor

Follow these steps to remove the front motor.

- Remove two screws and disconnect one connector, and then remove the motor.

Reinstallation tip:

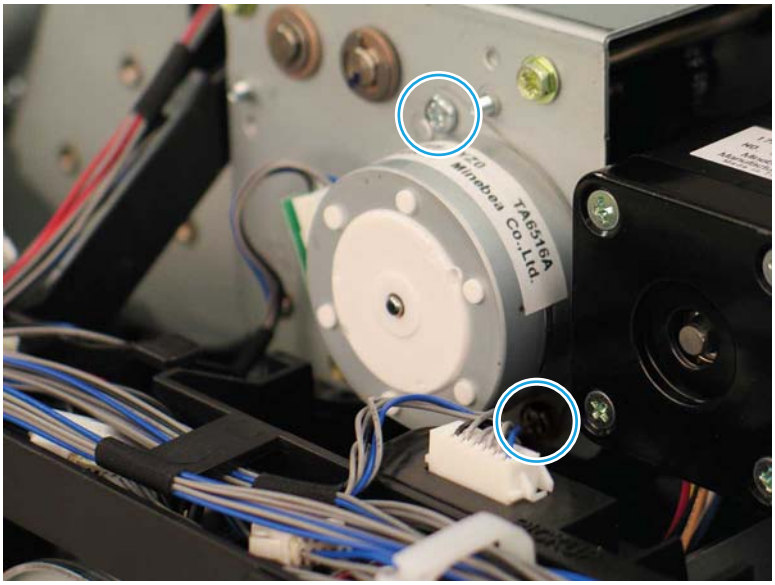
a. Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

b. Loosely install the motor mount screws.

c. Install the tension spring.

d. Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

Figure 2-975 Remove the document feeder front motor



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.

   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Removal and replacement: Contact image sensor (CIS) fan (GX/sGX)

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder CIS fan (GX/sGX).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder CIS fan (GX/sGX).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-134 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00168A	CIS fan

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

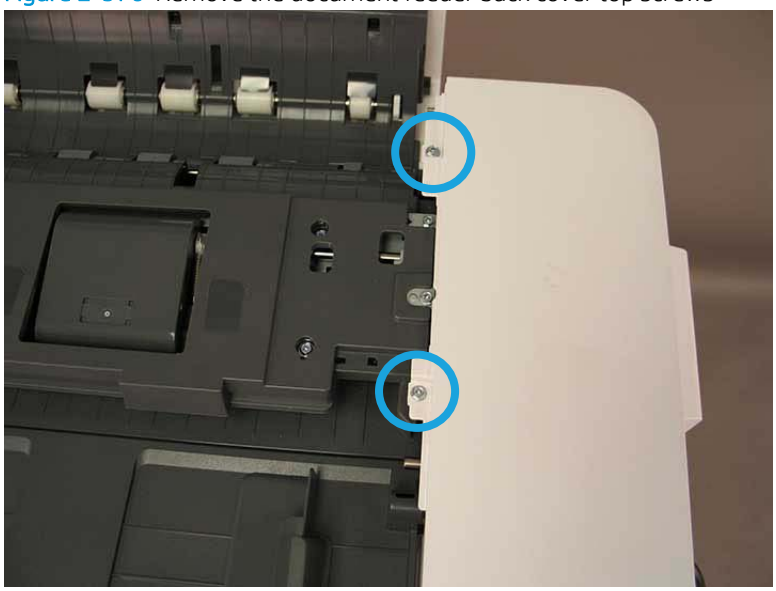
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover.

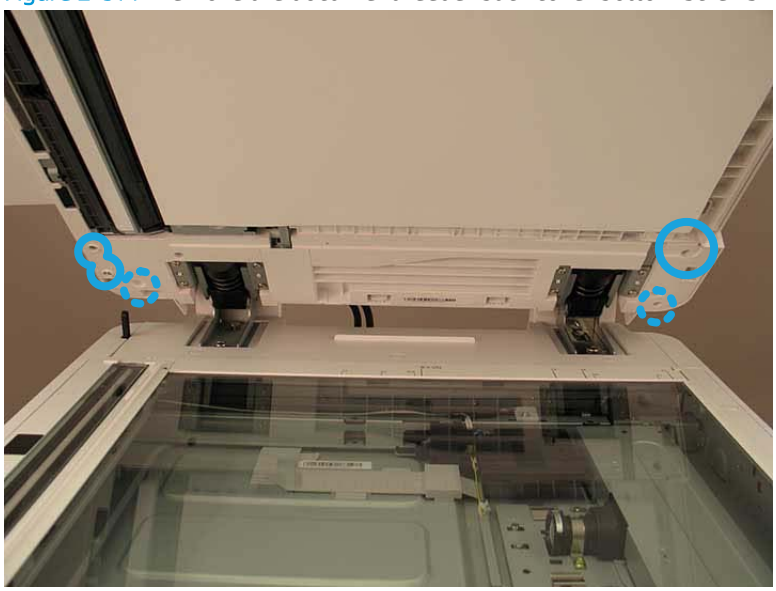
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

   Figure 2-976 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws

2. Using a JIS #2 short-shaft screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

   Figure 2-977 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

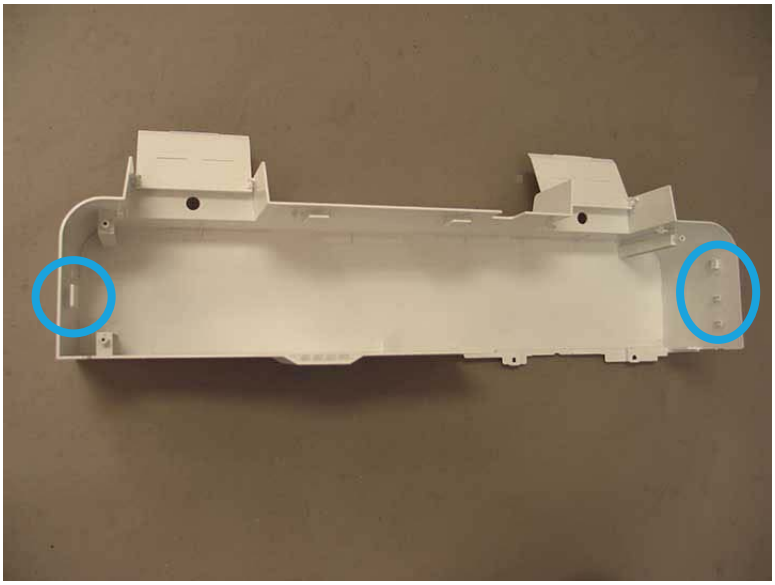
   

3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-978 Release one tab on the right side of back cover

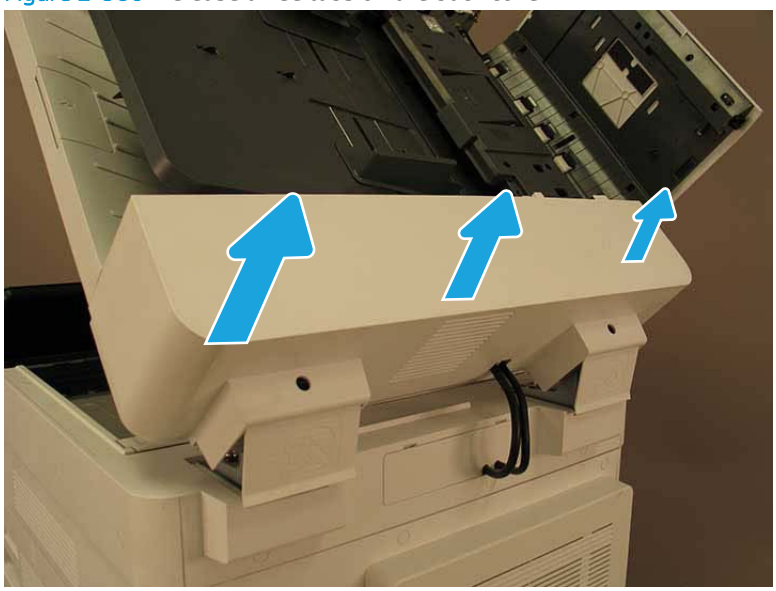
4. Before proceeding, take note of the tabs on the underside of the cover.

Figure 2-979 Note of the tabs on the underside of the cover



5. Release three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

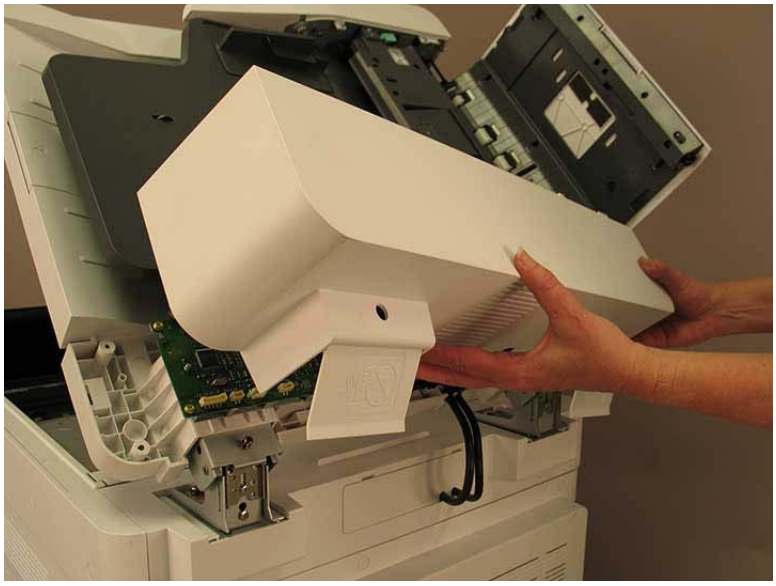
Figure 2-980 Release three tabs on the back cover



6. Remove the back cover from left to right as shown.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the cover from the right to left.

Figure 2-981 Remove the ADF back cover

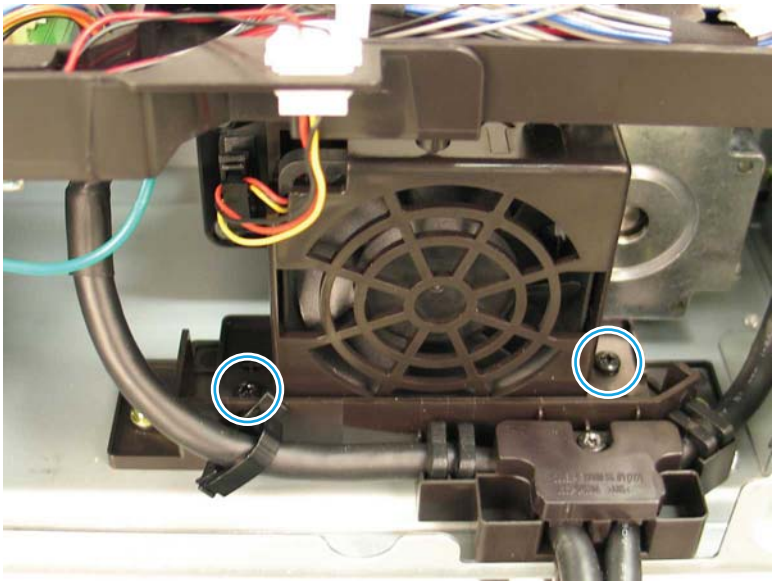


Remove the document feeder CIS fan

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder CIS fan.

- Remove one connector, and then remove two mounting screws to remove the fan.

Figure 2-982 Remove the document feeder CIS fan



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.

   a. Dispose of the defective part.

   NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

   http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

   b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

   CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

   If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

   IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

   c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

   When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

   a. Save all packaging for recycling.

   b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Removal and replacement: Flow ADF scan in lower assembly (GX/sGX)

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder scan in lower assembly (GX/sGX).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder scan in lower assembly (GX/sGX).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-135 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-04656B	Scan in lower assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

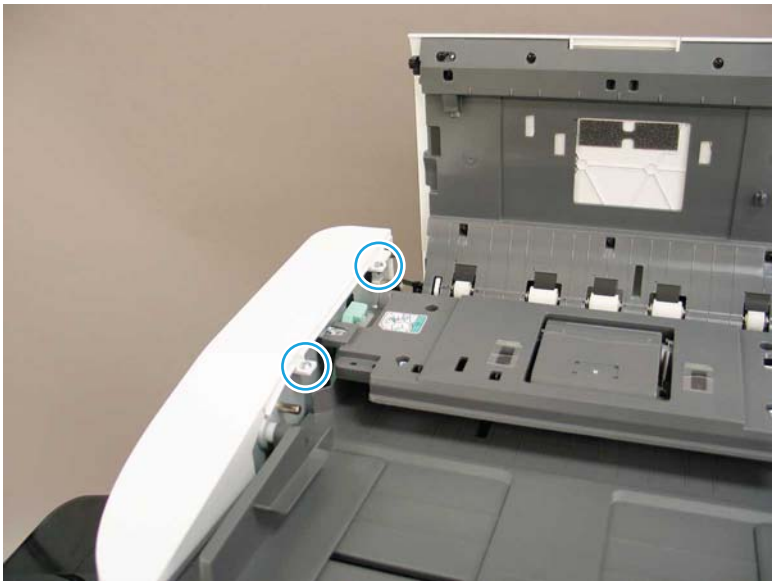
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) front cover.

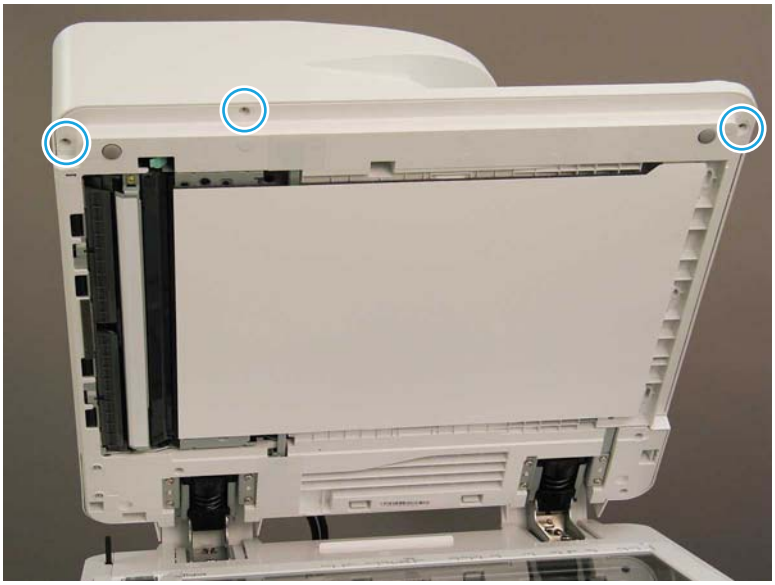
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

   Figure 2-983 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws

2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

   Figure 2-984 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws

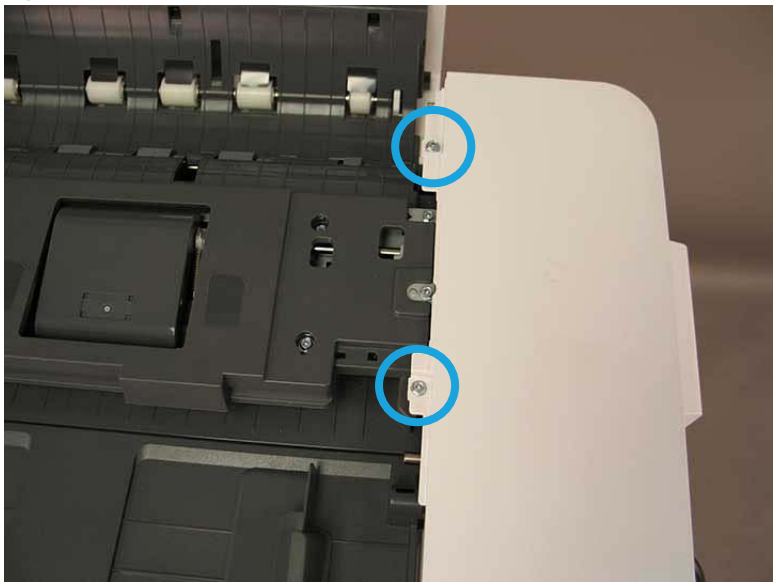
   

Remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (ADF) back cover.

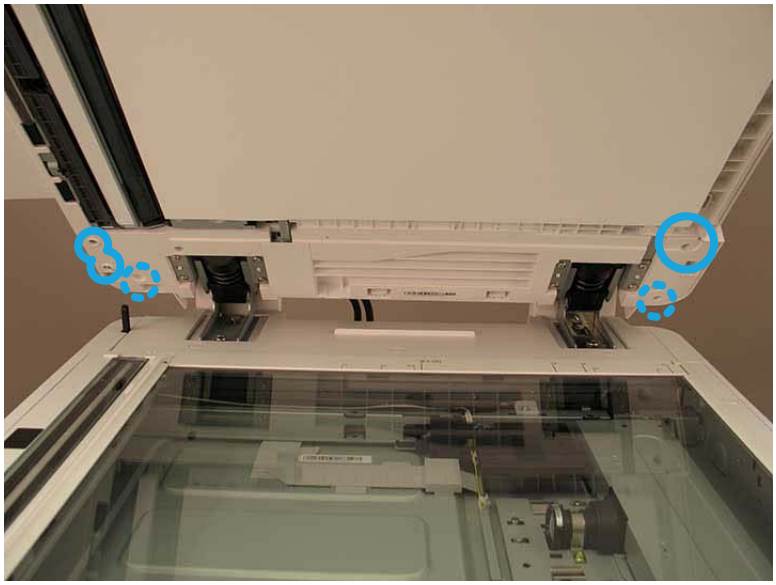
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-985 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Using a JIS #2 short-shaft screwdriver, remove five screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover.

Figure 2-986 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

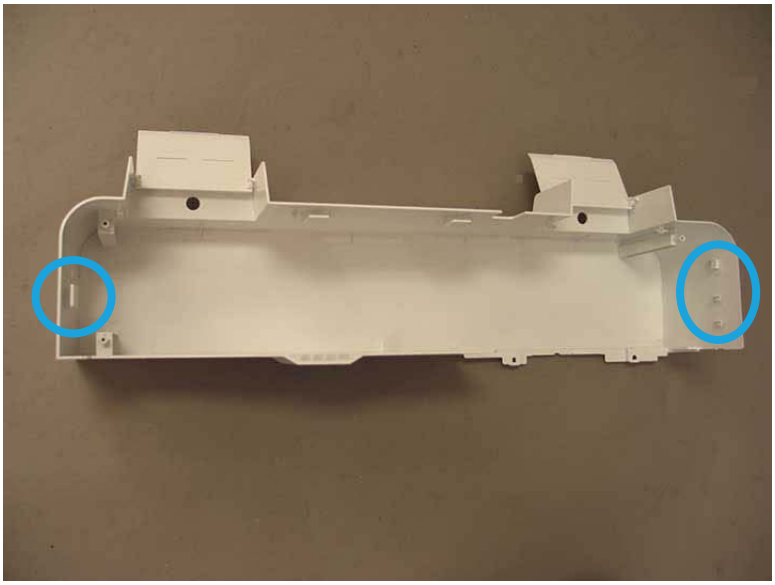


3. Release the tab on the right side of the back cover.

Figure 2-987 Release one tab on the right side of back cover

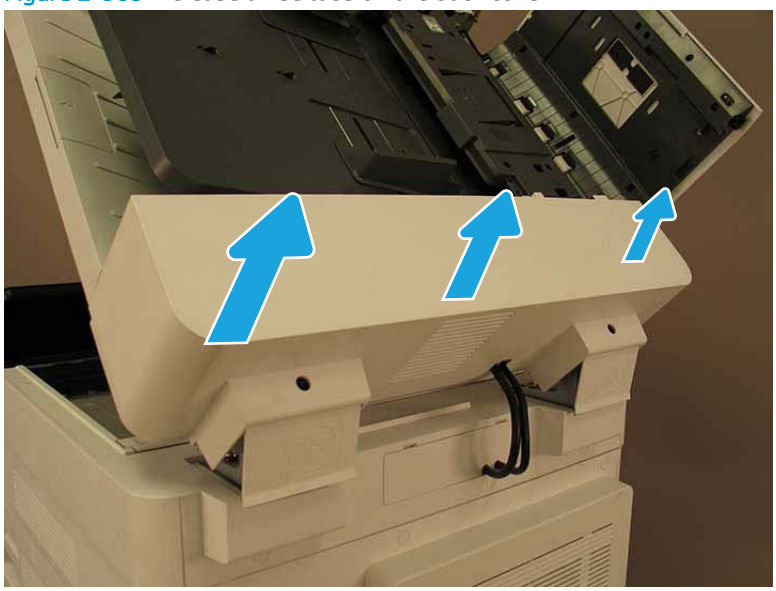
4. Before proceeding, take note of the tabs on the underside of the cover.

Figure 2-988 Note of the tabs on the underside of the cover



5. Release three tabs on back cover to remove the back cover.

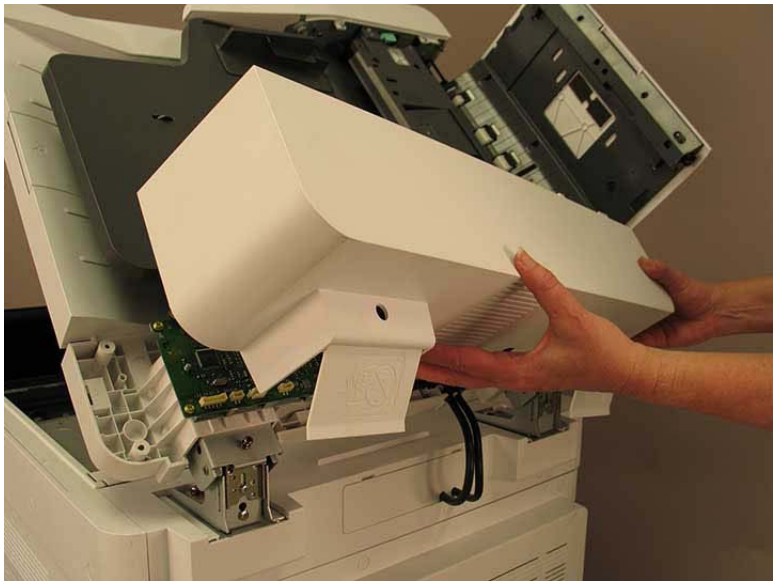
Figure 2-989 Release three tabs on the back cover



6. Remove the back cover from left to right as shown.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the cover from the right to left.

Figure 2-990 Remove the ADF back cover



Remove the scan in lower assembly

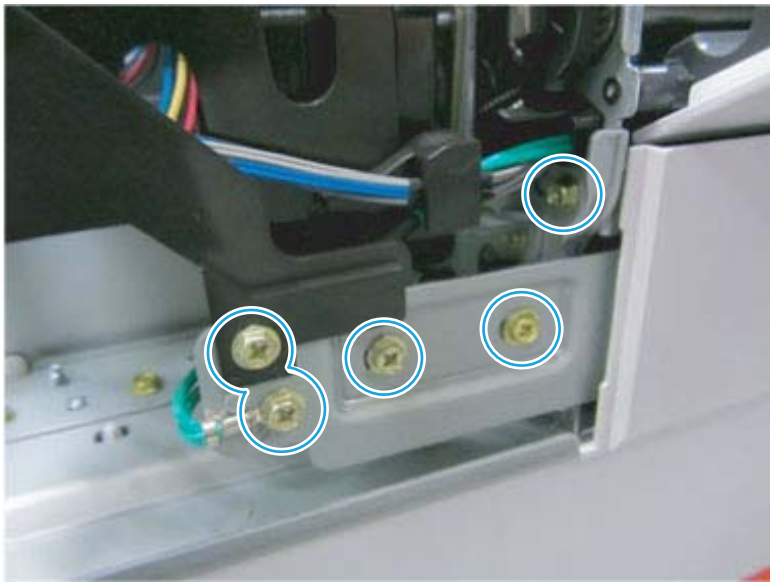
Follow these steps to remove the scan in lower assembly.

1. Remove two screws (ADF front).

Figure 2-991 Remove two screws

2. Remove five screws (ADF back; four sheet-metal and one ground).

Figure 2-992 Remove five screws



3. Remove one screw (ADF back).

Figure 2-993 Remove one screw

4. At the front corner, carefully pry the scan in lower assembly away from the ADF frame.

IMPORTANT: Locate the dimples in the scan in lower assembly. Separate the dimples from the ADF frame.

NOTE: When installing a replacement scan in lower assembly, do not crease or wrinkle the attached Mylar.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 2-994 Pry the scan in lower assembly away from the ADF

1. Unpack the replacement assembly.
   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Removal and replacement: PCA-Scanner sGX (dn models only)

Learn how to remove and replace the document feeder PCA-scanner (sGX dn models).

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the document feeder PCA-scanner (sGX dn models).

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-136 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC92-02964A	PCA-scanner (sGX dn models)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

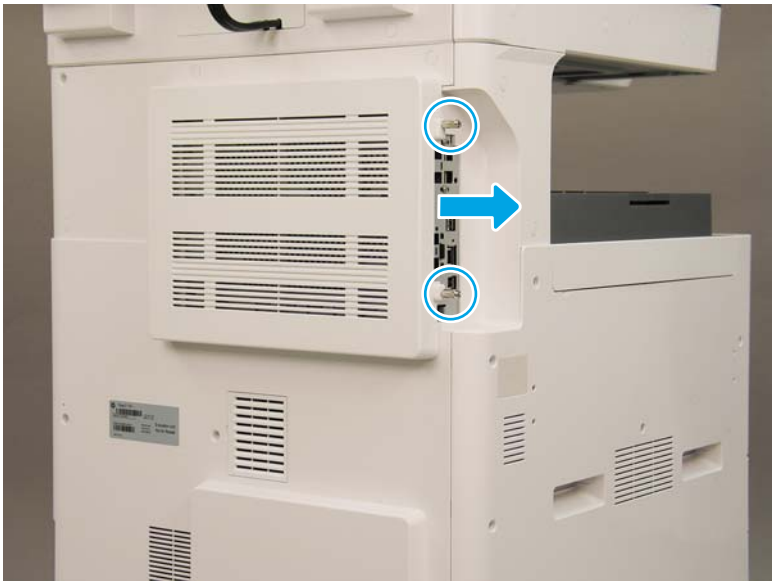
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-995 Remove the formatter cover

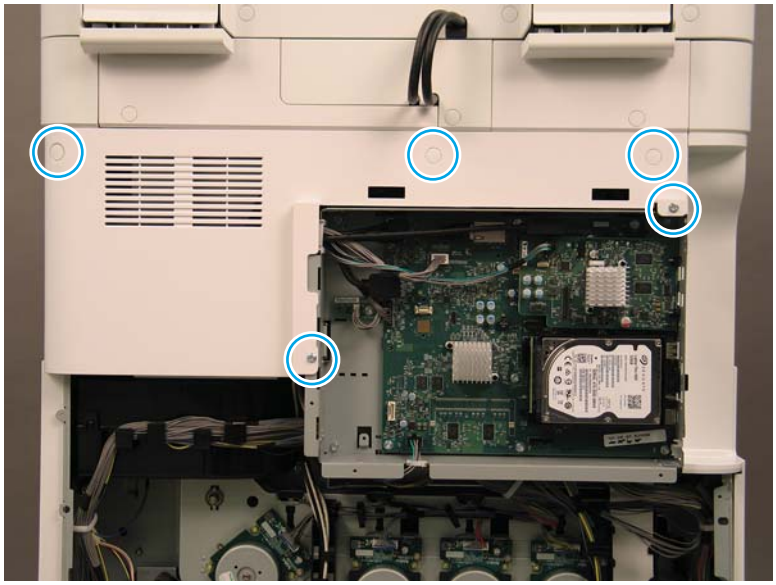


Remove the upper rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the upper rear cover.

- Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-996 Remove the upper rear cover



Remove the document feeder whole unit (GX)

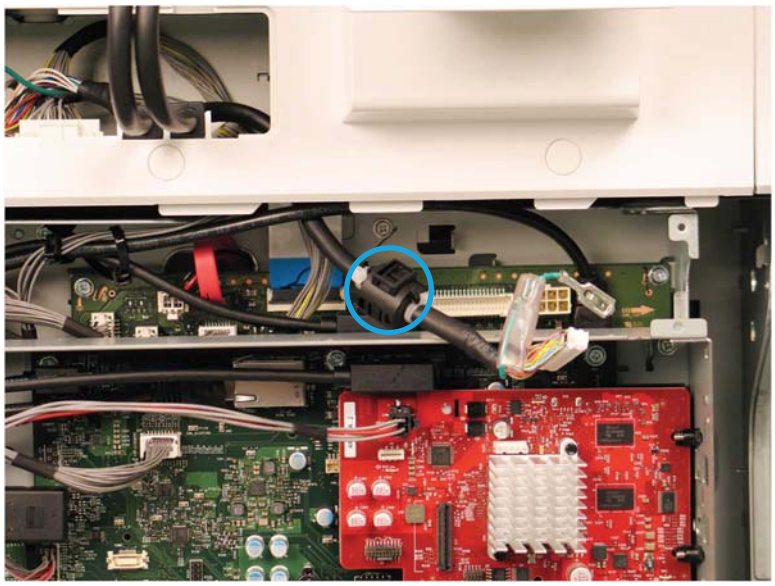
Follow these steps to remove the document feeder whole unit (GX).

1. Open the document feeder cover, and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

Figure 2-997 Remove document feeder connector cover

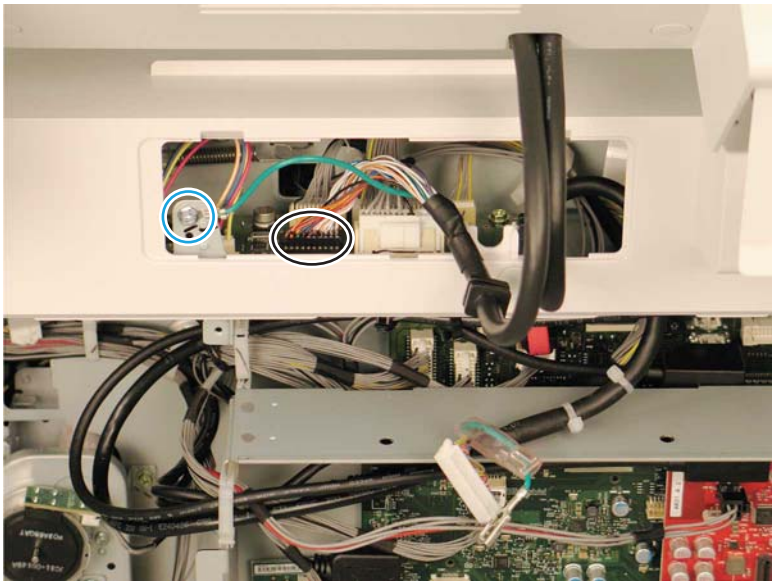
2. Remove the plastic cable choke from the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

Figure 2-998 Remove the cable choke



3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the scanner PCA. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

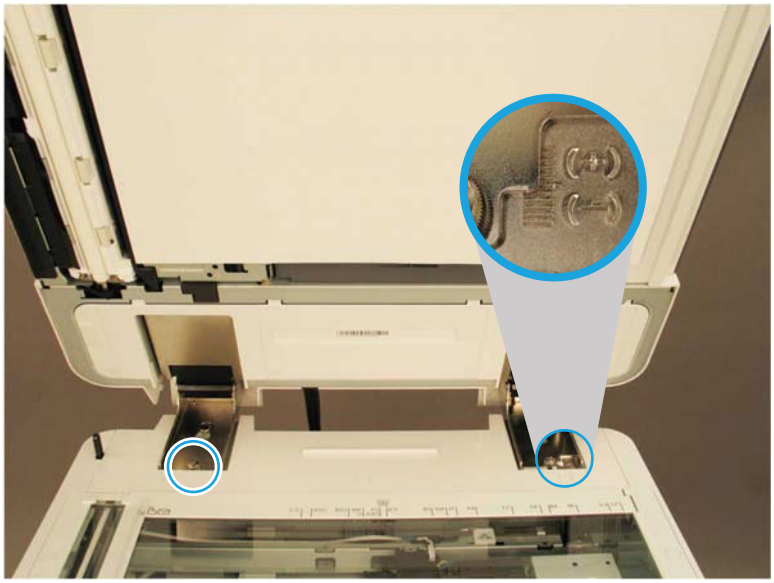
Figure 2-999 Disconnect document feeder harness



4. Release two hinge stops on the back of the document feeder to allow the document feeder to open to a full 90°.

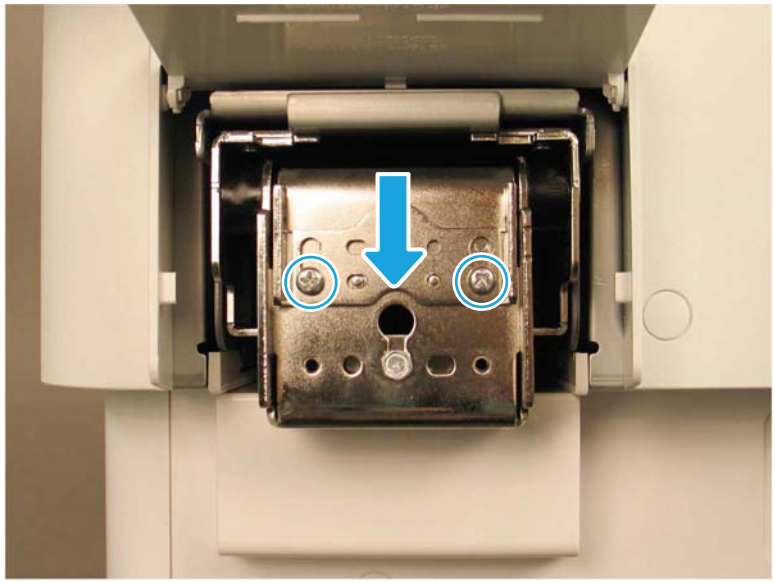
IMPORTANT: Note the alignment marks on the hinge stops. Any new document feeder must be reinstalled with the same alignment.

Figure 2-1000 Alignment marks



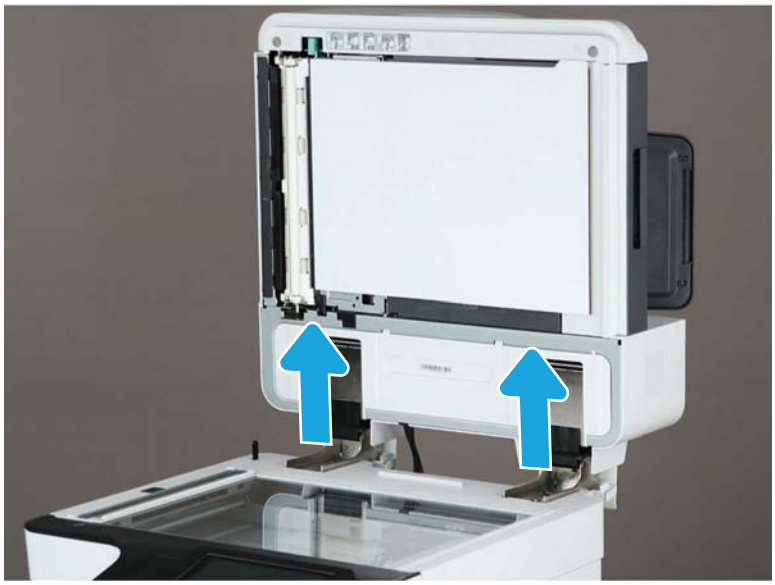
5. Remove two screws on each hinge stop.

Figure 2-1001 Remove screws



6. Pull back and then lift up to release the document feeder unit.

Figure 2-1002 Release the document feeder



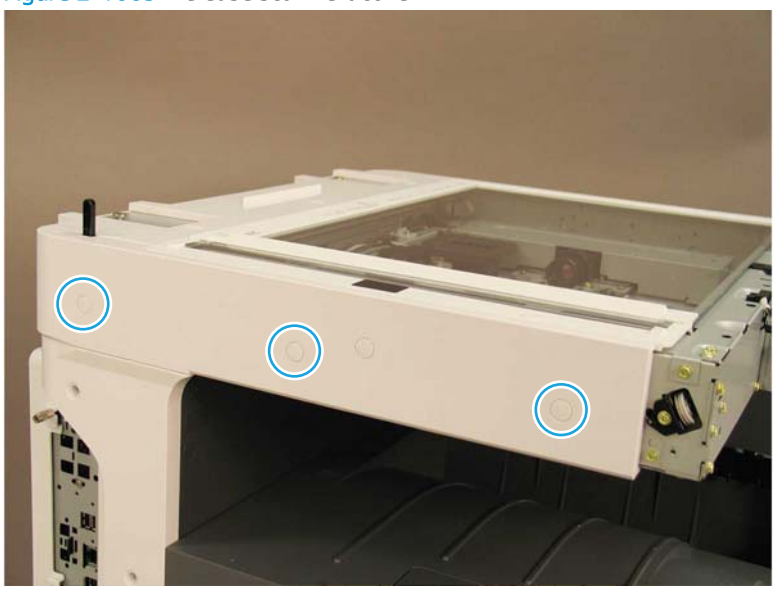
NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

Remove the scan joint board

Follow these steps to remove the scan joint board.

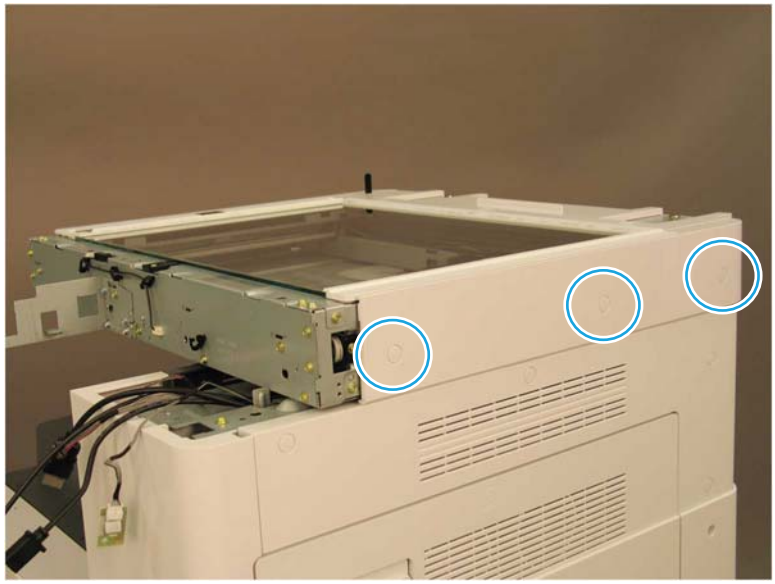
1. Remove three screw-caps and three screws. Release the scan-left cover.

Figure 2-1003 Release scan-left cover



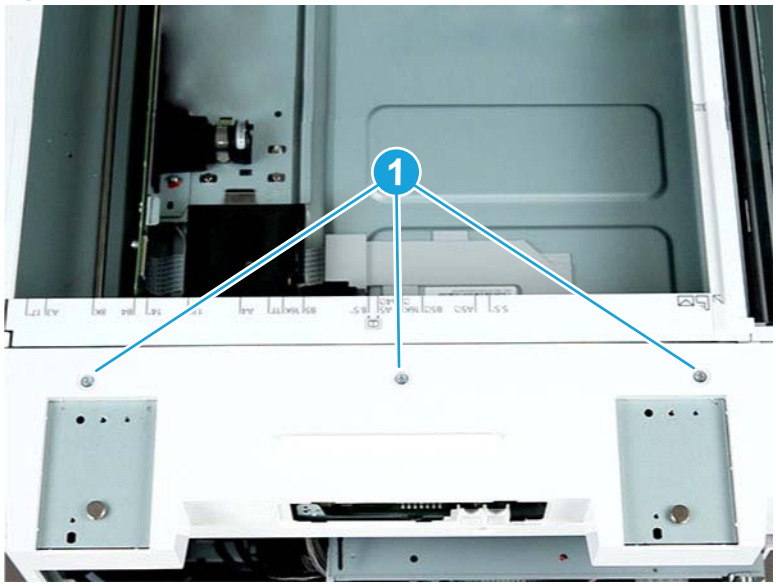
2. Remove three screw-caps and three screws, and then remove the scan-right cover.

Figure 2-1004 Remove scan-right cover



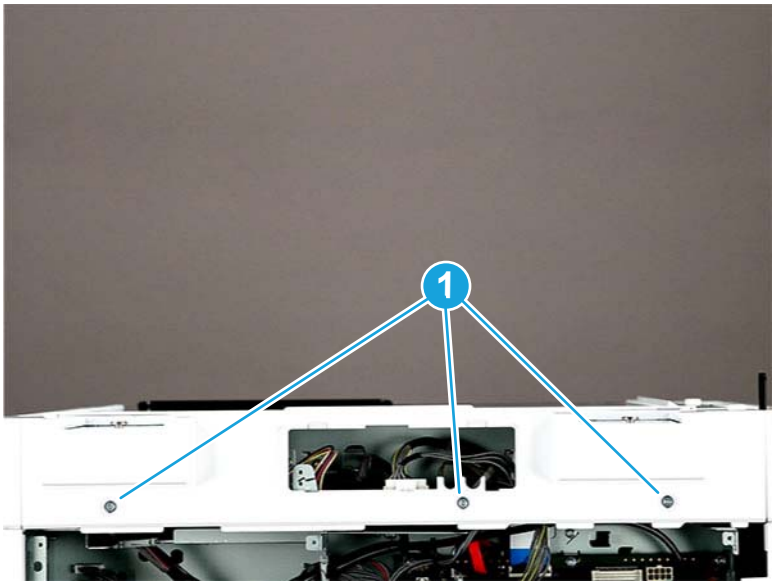
3. At the top of the scanner, remove three screw caps and three screws.

Figure 2-1005 Remove three screws



4. At the back of the scanner, remove three screw caps and three screws, and then remove the scan-rear cover.

Figure 2-1006 Remove three screws and the scanner rear cover



5. Disconnect all harnesses. Remove four screws, and then release the scanner PCA.

NOTE: There are two empty connectors.

Figure 2-1007 Remove screws and release scanner PCA

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Image scanner

View the image scanner exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Image scanner

Parts diagram and parts list for the image scanner.

Figure 2-1008 Image scanner

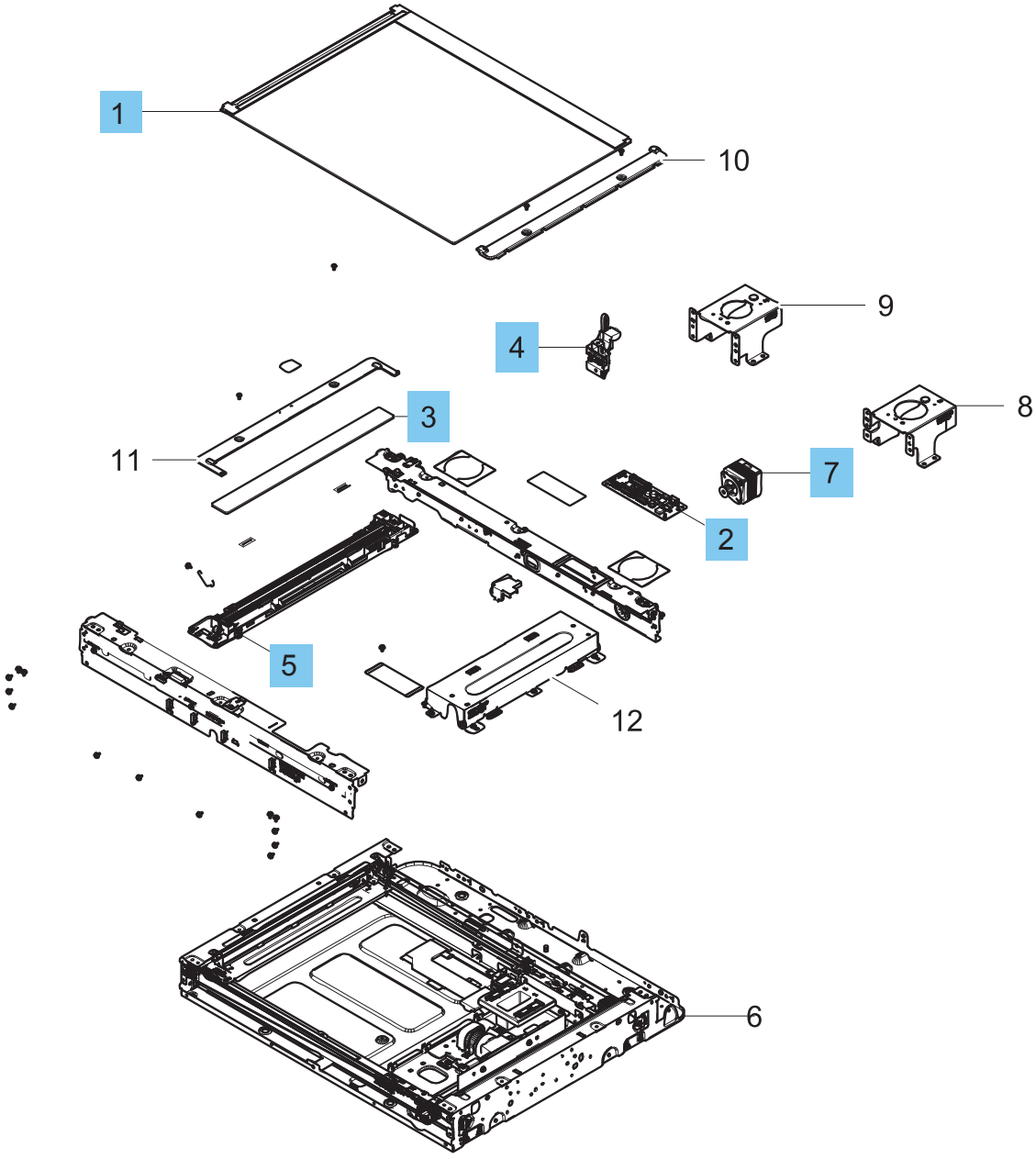


Table 2-137 Image scanner

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1	JC97-04522B	Scanner glass	1	Removal and replacement: Scanner glass on page 880
2	JC92-02781A	PCA scanner	1	Not applicable
3	JC01-00101A	Tempered scan glass	1	Not applicable
4	JC97-04516A	Scanner open sensor	1	Not applicable
5	JC97-04521A	Scanner - front lamp	1	Removal and replacement: LED lamp module on page 883
7	JC31-00158A	Motor, step	1	Not applicable
Not shown	JC39-02128A	Harness - Scanjoint to main	1	Not applicable
Not shown	JC39-02129A	Harness - Home open sensor	1	Not applicable

Removal and replacement: Scanner glass

Learn how to remove and replace the scanner glass.

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the scanner glass.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-138 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-04522B	Scanner glass

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

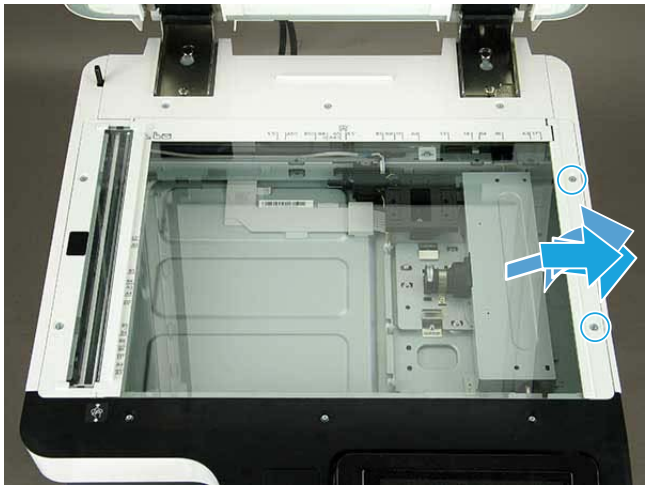
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the scanner glass

Follow these steps to remove the scanner glass.

- Open the document-feeder cover, remove two screws, and then slide the scanner glass to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-1009 Remove scanner glass



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.
   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Removal and replacement: LED lamp module

Learn how to remove and replace the LED lamp module.

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the LED lamp module.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-139 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-04521A	Scanner - front lamp

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

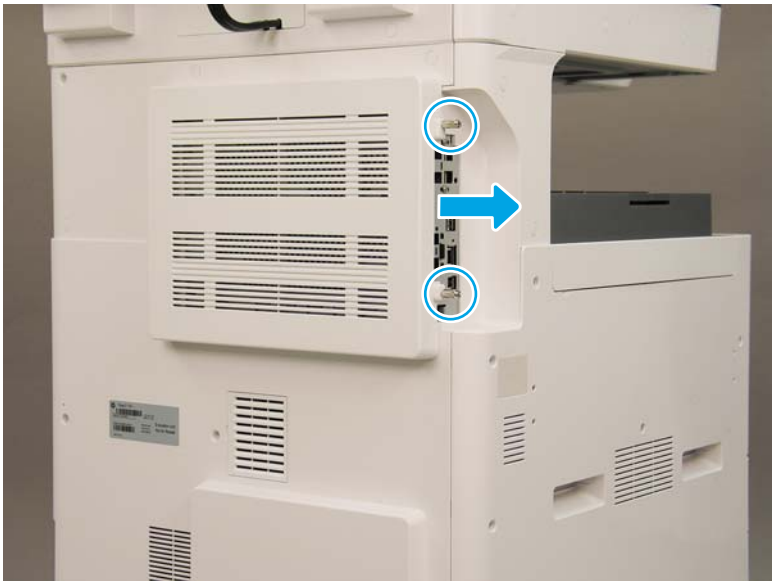
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-1010 Remove the formatter cover

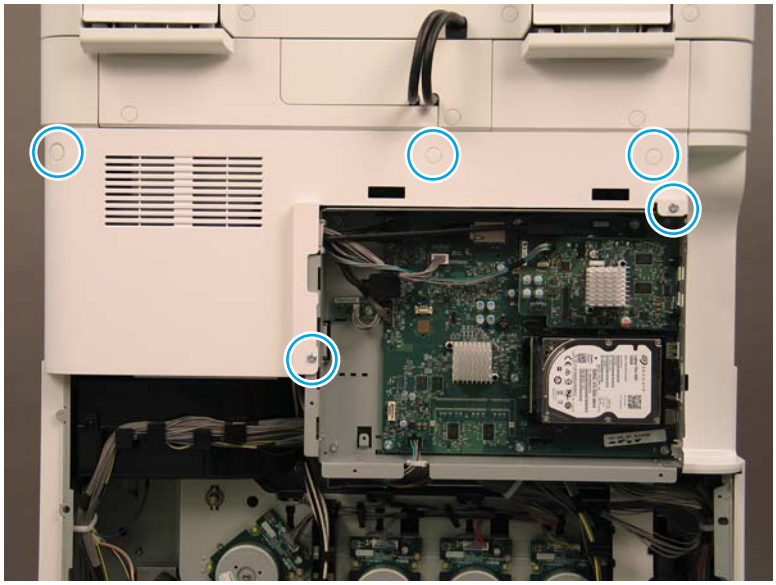


Remove the upper rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the upper rear cover.

- Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-1011 Remove the upper rear cover



Remove the document feeder whole unit (GX)

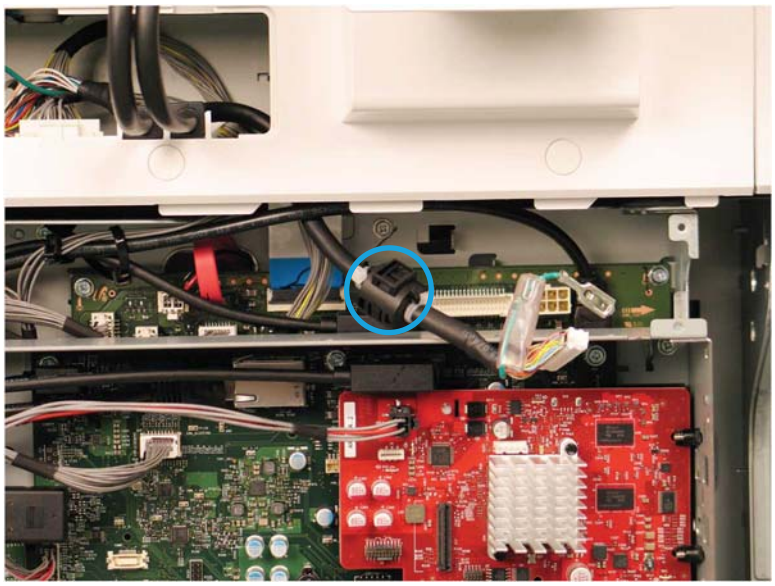
Follow these steps to remove the document feeder whole unit (GX).

1. Open the document feeder cover, and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

Figure 2-1012 Remove document feeder connector cover

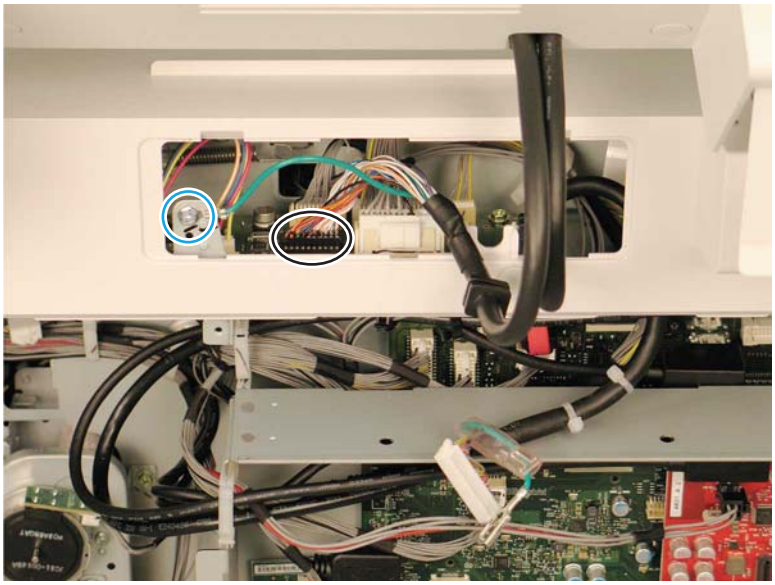
2. Remove the plastic cable choke from the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

Figure 2-1013 Remove the cable choke



3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the scanner PCA. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

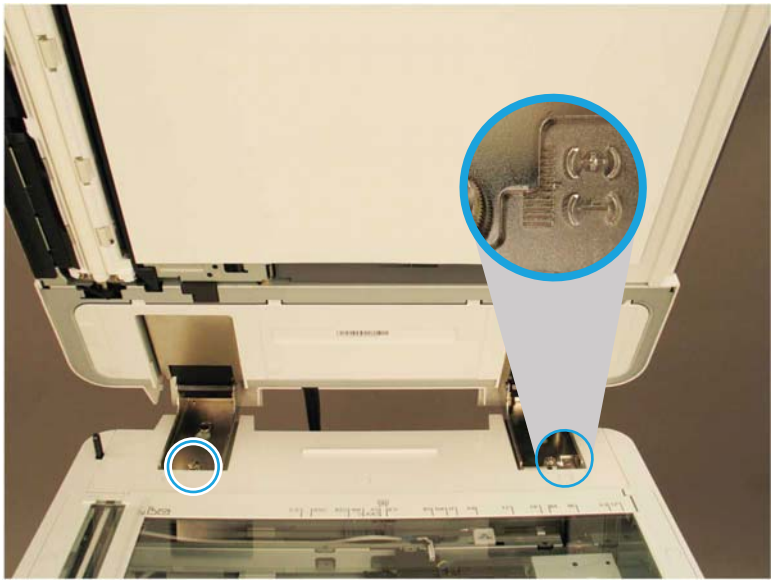
Figure 2-1014 Disconnect document feeder harness



4. Release two hinge stops on the back of the document feeder to allow the document feeder to open to a full 90°.

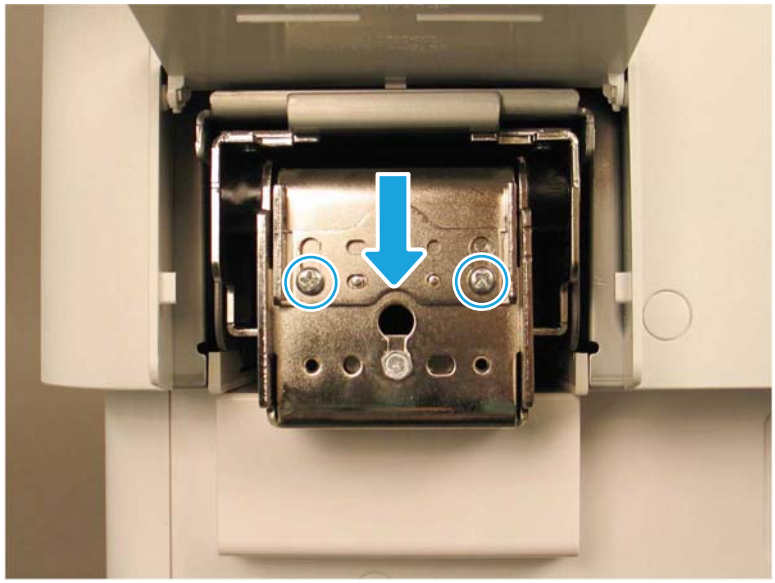
IMPORTANT: Note the alignment marks on the hinge stops. Any new document feeder must be reinstalled with the same alignment.

Figure 2-1015 Alignment marks



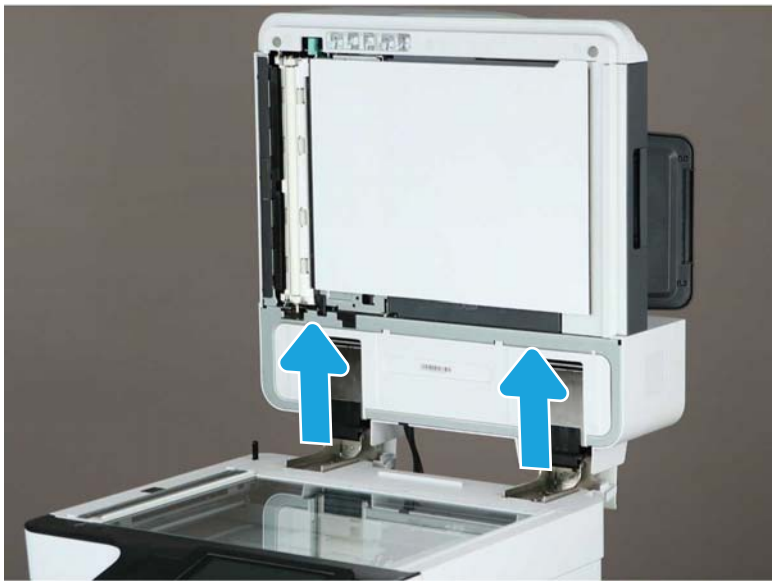
5. Remove two screws on each hinge stop.

Figure 2-1016 Remove screws



6. Pull back and then lift up to release the document feeder unit.

Figure 2-1017 Release the document feeder



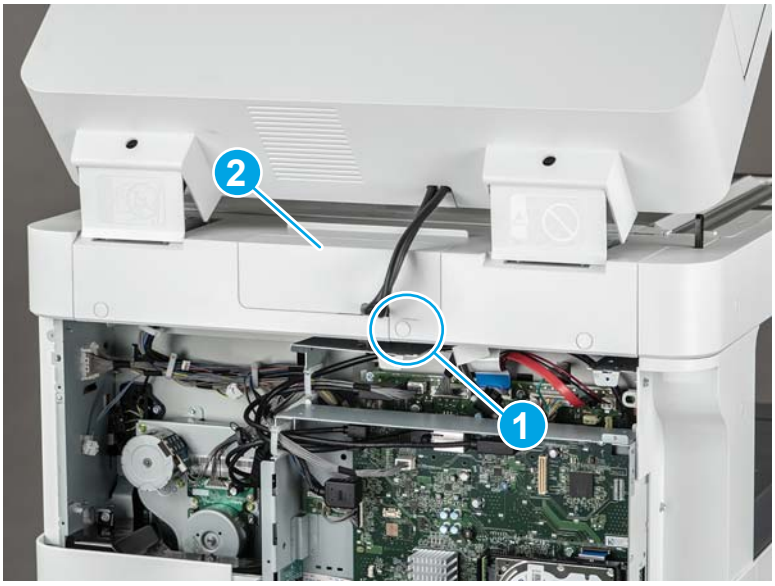
NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

Remove the document feeder whole unit (LX)

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder whole unit (LX).

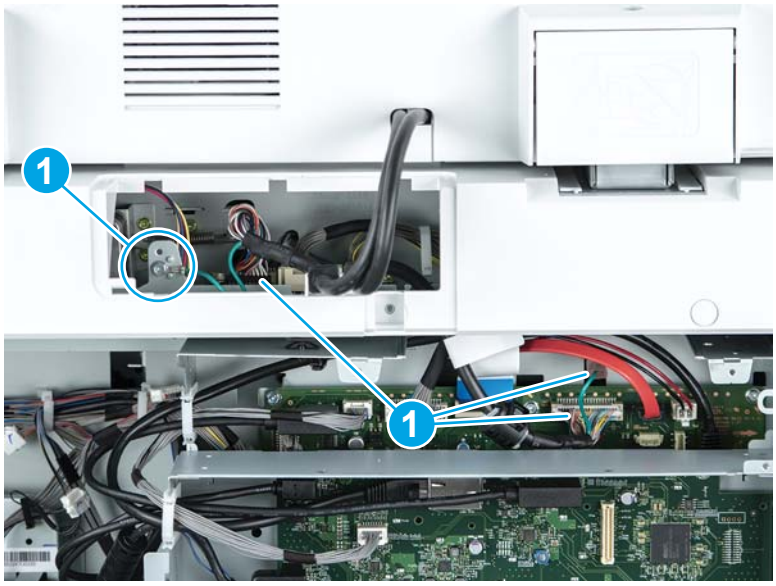
1. Remover one screw cap and screw (callout 1), and then remove the document feeder connector cover (callout 2).

Figure 2-1018 Remove the document feeder connector cover



2. Remove one screw to release the ground wire (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

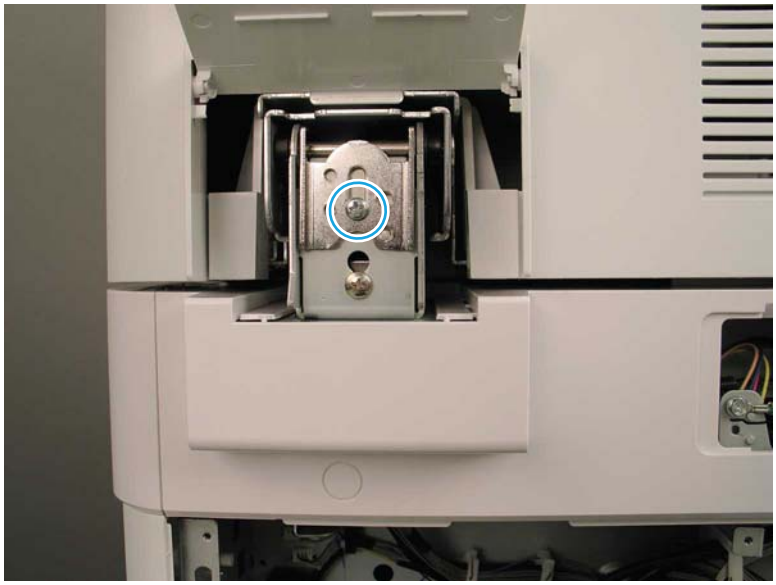
Figure 2-1019 Remove the document feeder harness and ground wire



3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the PCA - ADF HIC. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

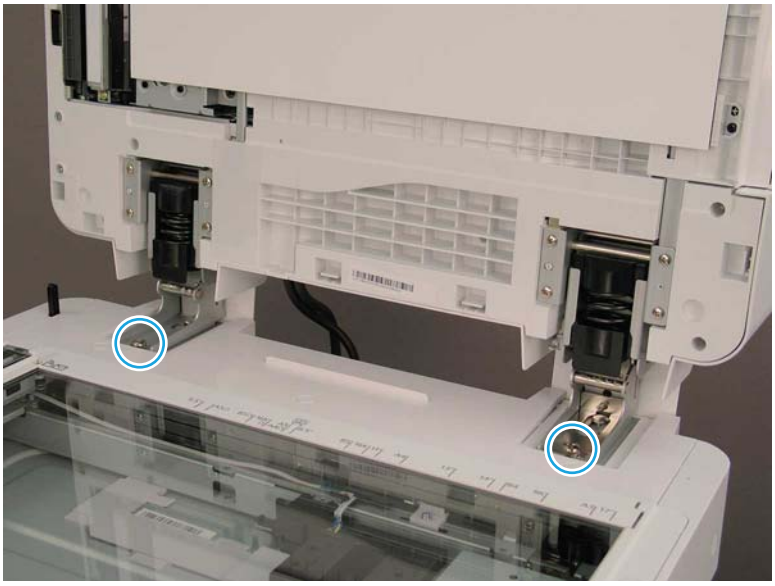
4. Release one screw on each hinge stop on the back of the document feeder.

Figure 2-1020 Release the document feeder hinge screws



5. Remove two screws. Slide the assembly back, and then lift the document feeder to remove.

Figure 2-1021 Lift and remove the document feeder



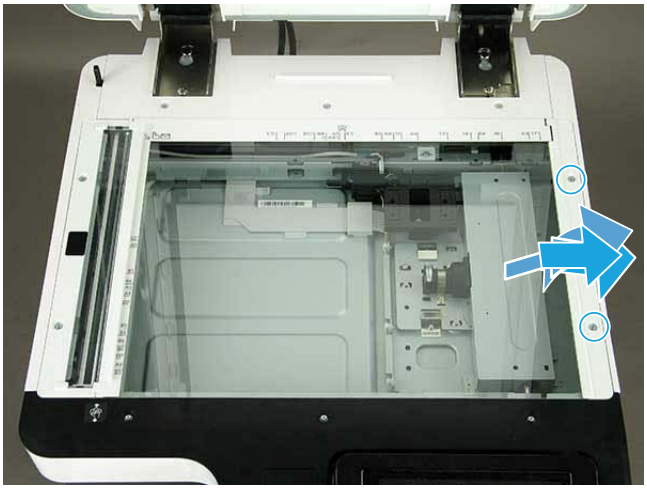
NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

Remove the scanner glass

Follow these steps to remove the scanner glass.

- Open the document-feeder cover, remove two screws, and then slide the scanner glass to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-1022 Remove scanner glass

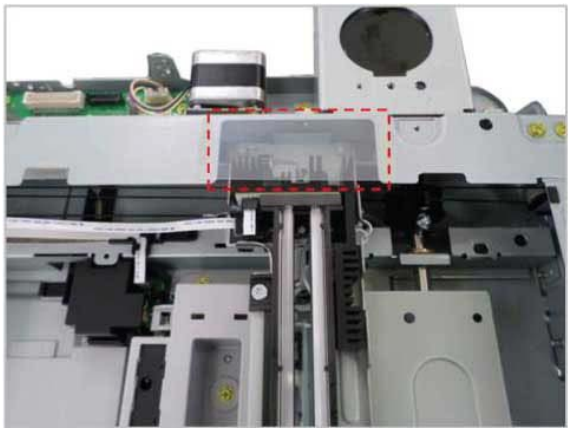


Remove the LED lamp module

Follow these steps to remove the LED lamp module.

1. Remove the transparent tape.

Figure 2-1023 Remove transparent tape

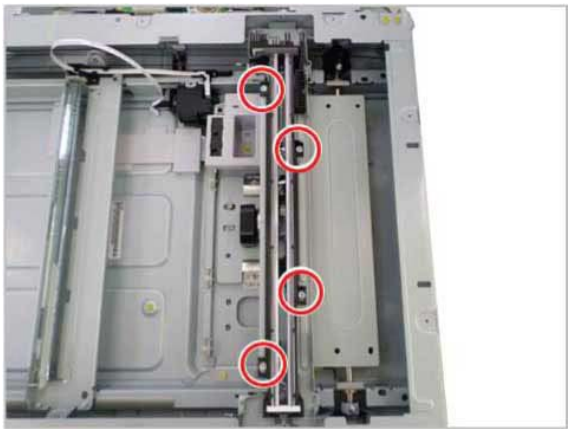


2. Disconnect the flat cable.

Figure 2-1024 Disconnect cable

3. Remove four screws. Remove the LED lamp module.

Figure 2-1025 Remove screws and release LED lamp module



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.

   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Image scanner, lower

View the image scanner, lower exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

Image scanner, lower

Parts diagram and parts list for the lower image scanner.

Figure 2-1026 Image scanner, lower

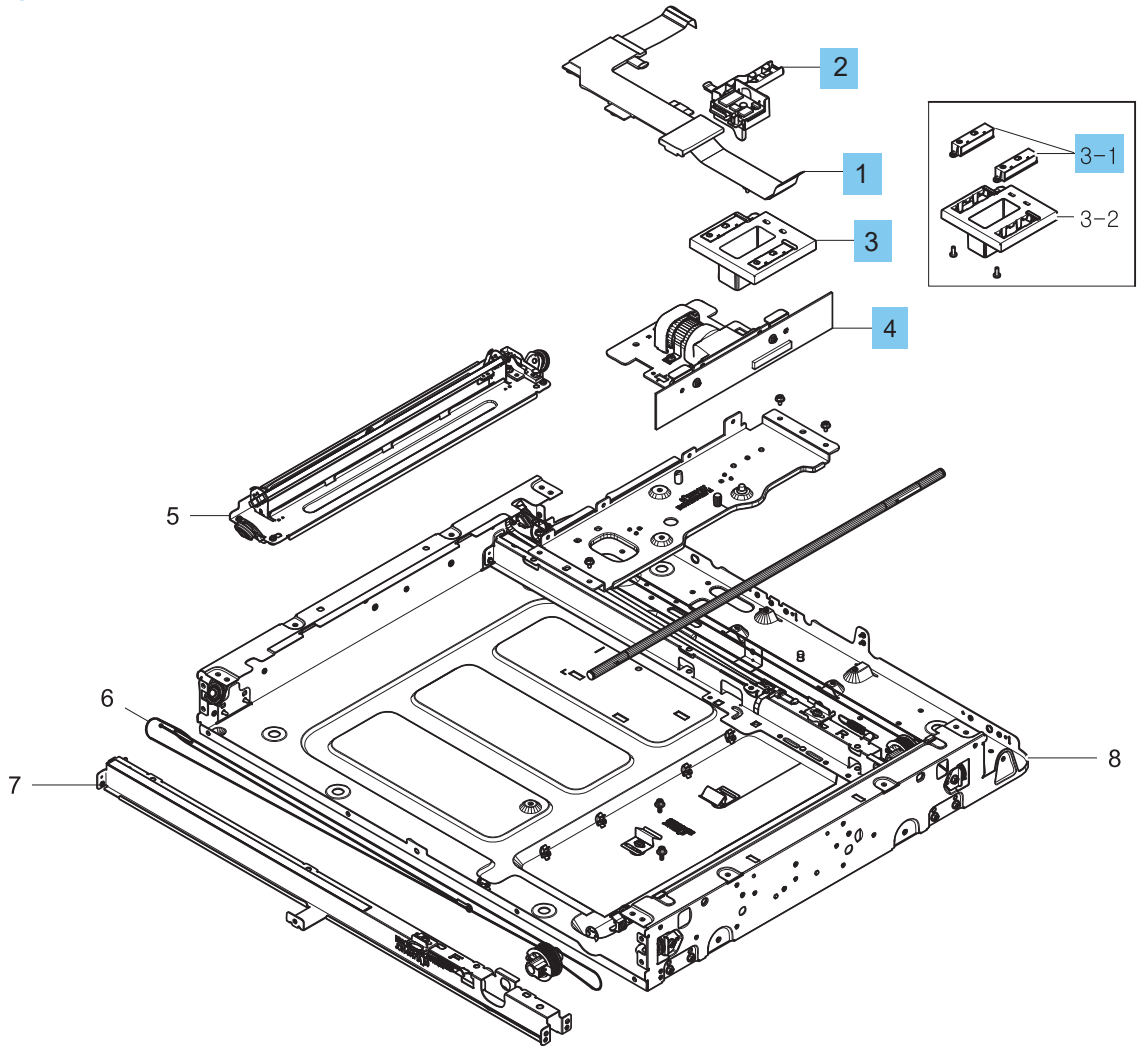


Table 2-140 Image scanner, lower

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1	JC97-04509A	Scanner - FFC CCD	1	Not applicable
2	JC97-04512A	Scanner - guide harness	1	Not applicable
3	JC97-04507A	Scanner - APS	1	Removal and replacement: APS sensor on page 896
3-1	604-001453	Photo interrupter	2	Not applicable
4	JC97-04523B	Scanner assembly - CDD and lens	1	Removal and replacement: Scanner assembly - CDD and lens on page 894
Not shown	JC81-09891A	Auto adjustment chart A3 Ver. 1.0	1	Not applicable

Removal and replacement: Scanner assembly - CDD and lens

Learn how to remove and replace the scanner CDD and lens.

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the scanner CDD and lens.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-141 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-04523B	Scanner assembly -CDD and lens

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Removal and replacement: APS sensor

Learn how to remove and replace the APS sensor.

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the APS sensor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-142 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC97-04507A	APS sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

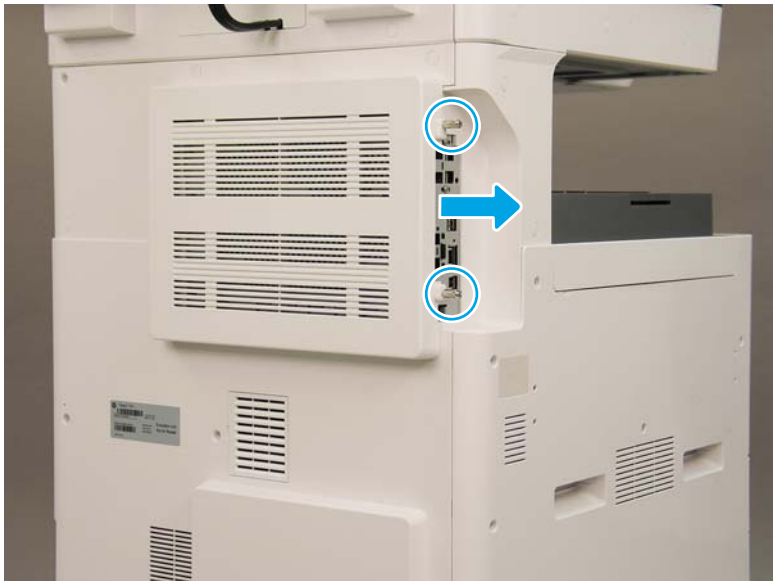
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-1027 Remove the formatter cover

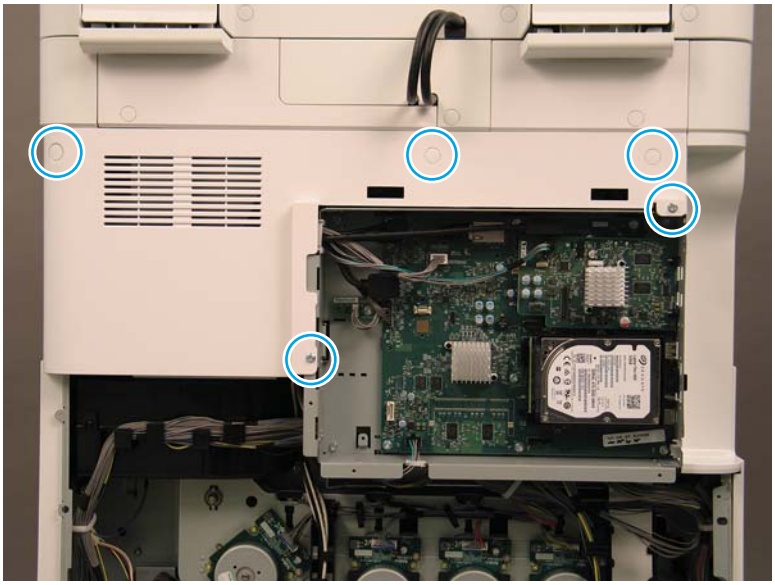


Remove the upper rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the upper rear cover.

- Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-1028 Remove the upper rear cover



Remove the document feeder whole unit (GX)

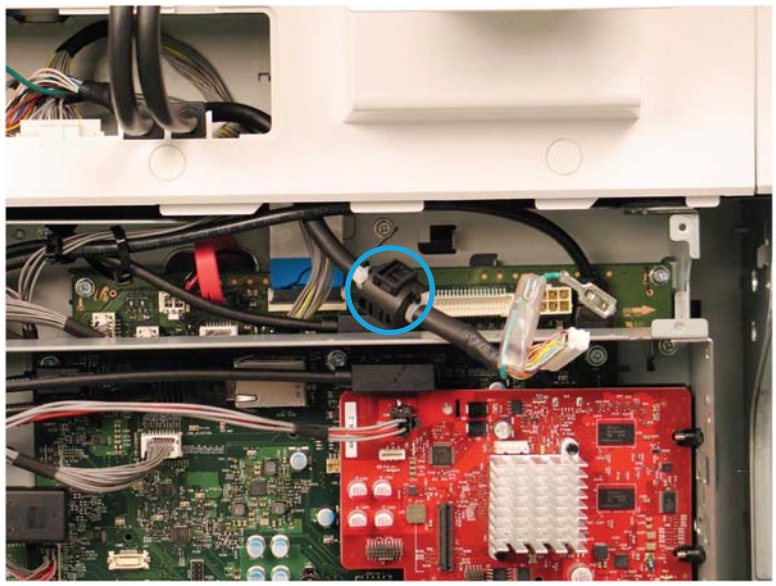
Follow these steps to remove the document feeder whole unit (GX).

1. Open the document feeder cover, and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

Figure 2-1029 Remove document feeder connector cover

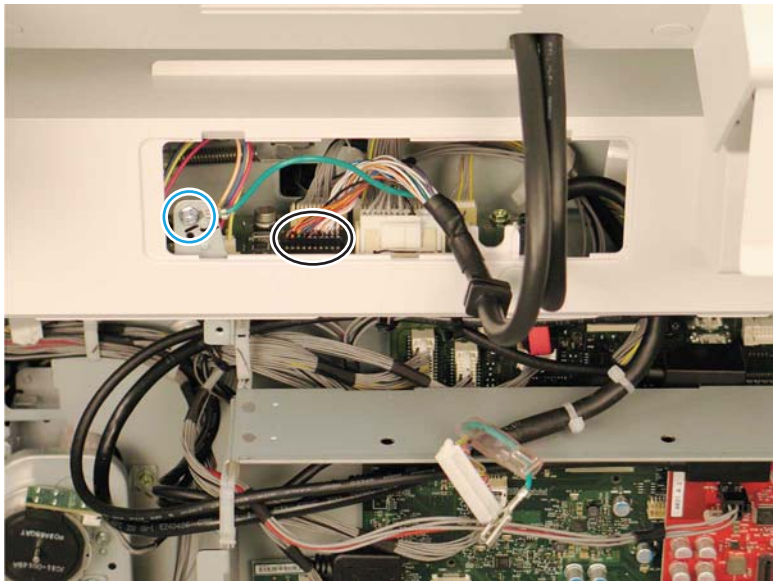
2. Remove the plastic cable choke from the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

Figure 2-1030 Remove the cable choke



3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the scanner PCA. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

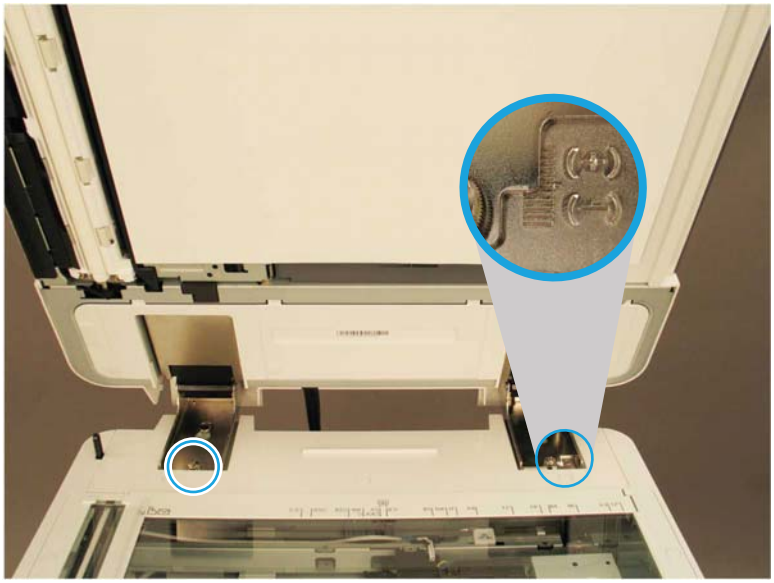
Figure 2-1031 Disconnect document feeder harness



4. Release two hinge stops on the back of the document feeder to allow the document feeder to open to a full 90°.

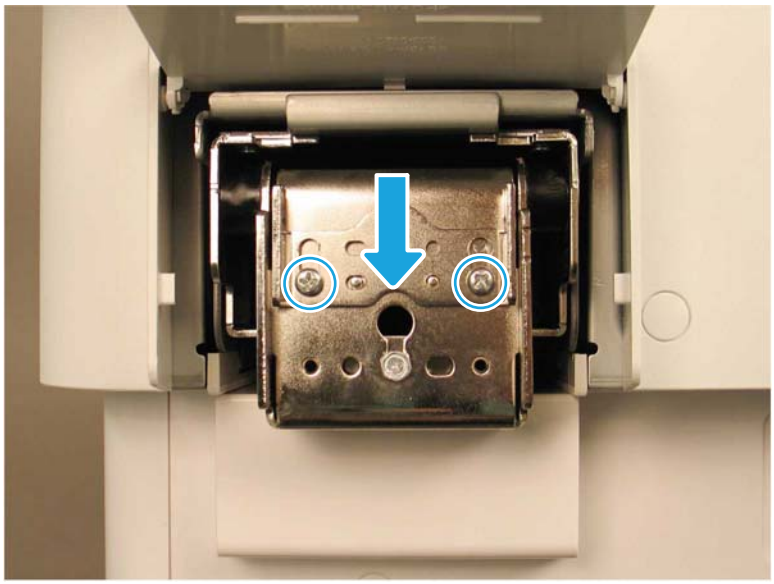
IMPORTANT: Note the alignment marks on the hinge stops. Any new document feeder must be reinstalled with the same alignment.

Figure 2-1032 Alignment marks



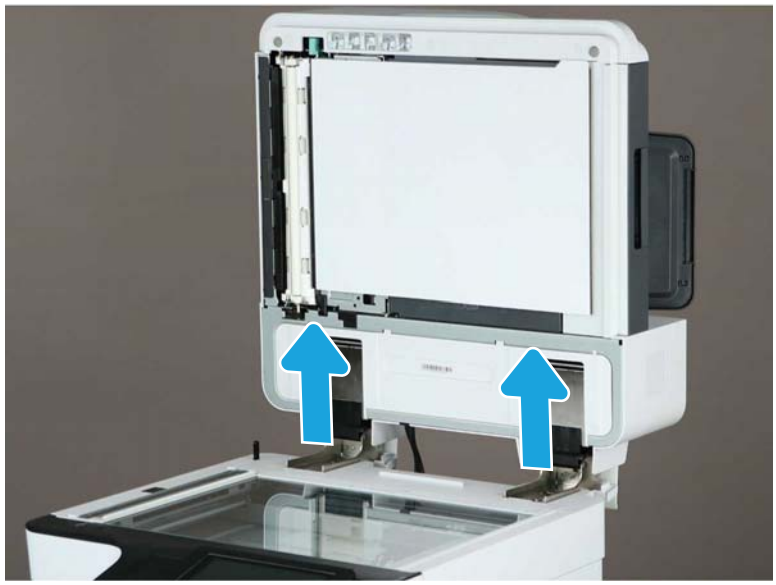
5. Remove two screws on each hinge stop.

Figure 2-1033 Remove screws



6. Pull back and then lift up to release the document feeder unit.

Figure 2-1034 Release the document feeder



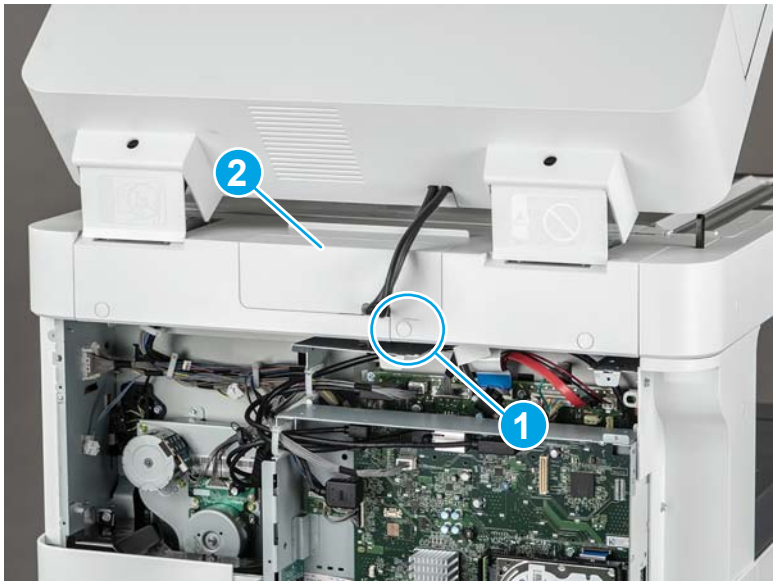
NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

Remove the document feeder whole unit (LX)

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder whole unit (LX).

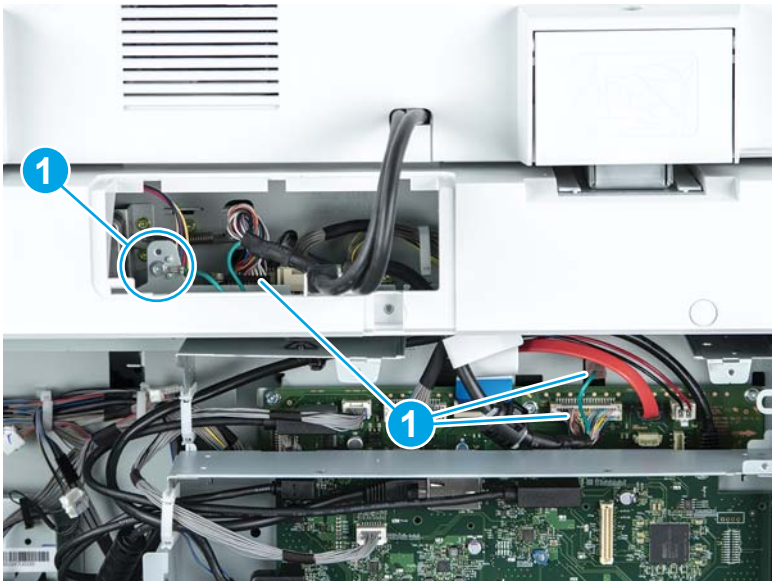
1. Remover one screw cap and screw (callout 1), and then remove the document feeder connector cover (callout 2).

Figure 2-1035 Remove the document feeder connector cover



2. Remove one screw to release the ground wire (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

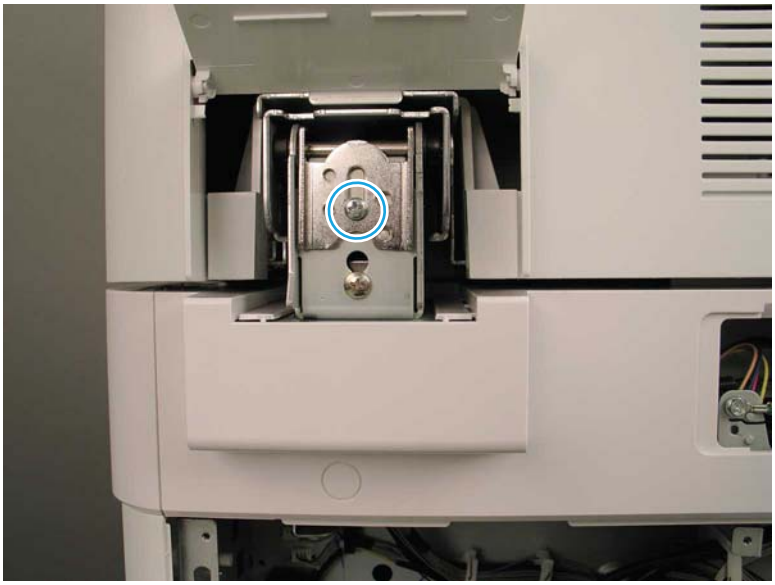
Figure 2-1036 Remove the document feeder harness and ground wire



3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the PCA - ADF HIC. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

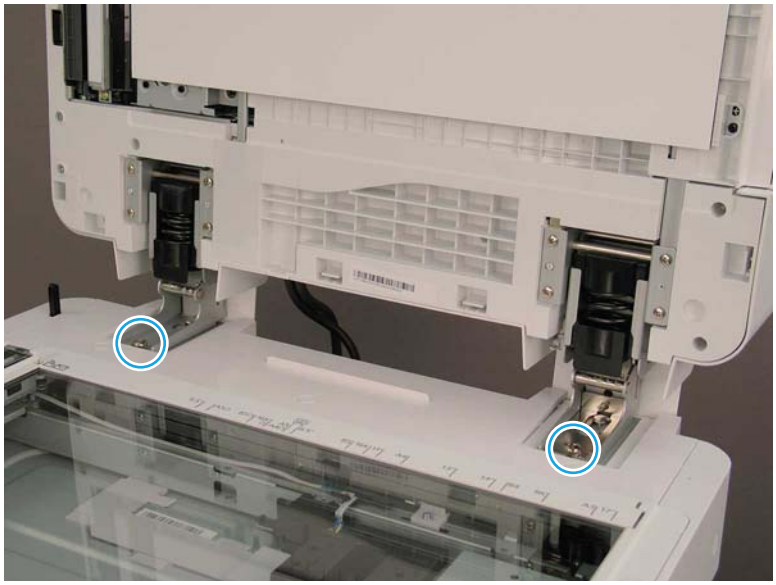
4. Release one screw on each hinge stop on the back of the document feeder.

Figure 2-1037 Release the document feeder hinge screws



5. Remove two screws. Slide the assembly back, and then lift the document feeder to remove.

Figure 2-1038 Lift and remove the document feeder



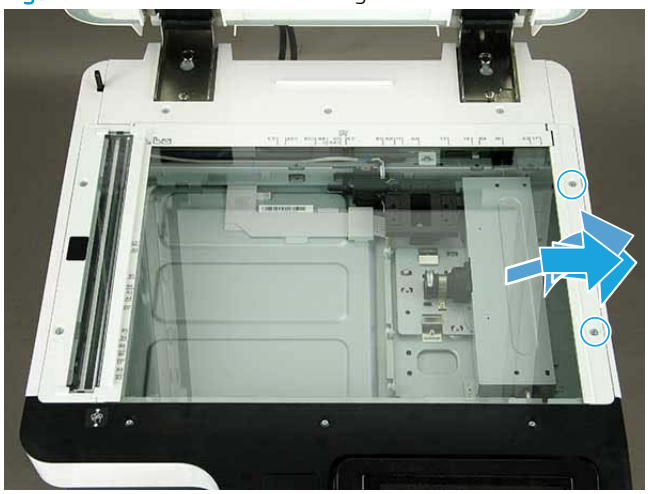
NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

Remove the scanner glass

Follow these steps to remove the scanner glass.

- Open the document-feeder cover, remove two screws, and then slide the scanner glass to the right to remove it.

Figure 2-1039 Remove scanner glass

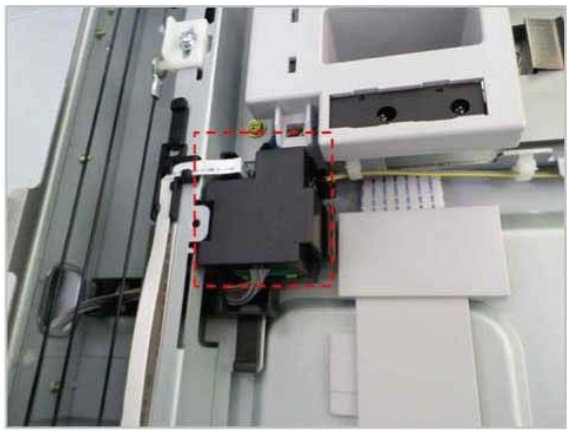


Remove the APS sensor

Follow these steps to remove the APS sensor.

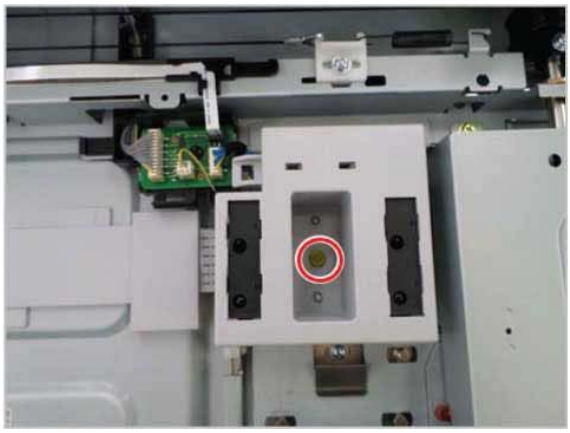
1. Remove the joint board cover.

Figure 2-1040 Remove joint board cover



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 2-1041 Remove screw

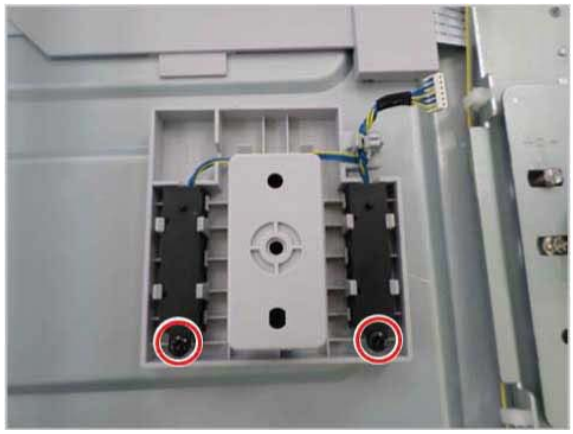


3. Disconnect the harness.

Figure 2-1042 Disconnect harness

4. Remove two screws. Release the APS sensor.

Figure 2-1043 Remove screws and release APS sensor



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.

   a. Dispose of the defective part.

   NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

   http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

   b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

   CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

   If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

   IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

   c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

   When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

   a. Save all packaging for recycling.

   b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Dual cassette feeder (DCF)

Learn about the dual cassette feeder (DCF) exploded diagrams, parts lists, and repair procedures.

DCF main

View the DCF main exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

DCF main

Parts diagram and parts list for the DCF main.

Figure 2-1044 DCF main

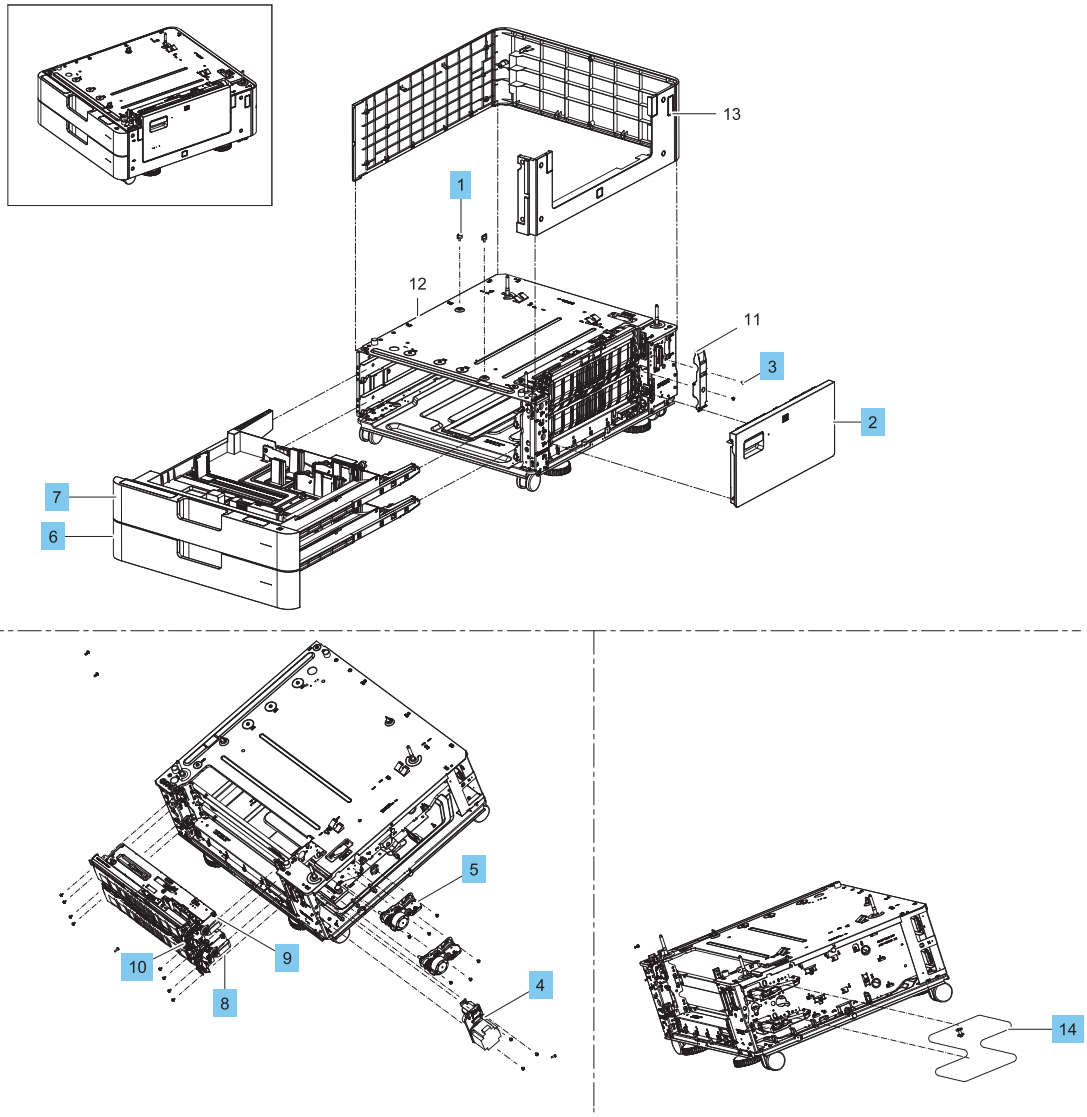


Table 2-143 DCF main

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1	JC60-00078A	Machinery, fastener screw	2	Not applicable
2	JC90-01649A	DCF, sub-takeaway (right door)	1	Removal and replacement: Dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door on page 909
3	6009-001665	Hex screw	19	Not applicable
4	JC93-01135A	Feed drive opt	1	Removal and replacement: Dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor on page 916
5	JC93-01063C	Drive pickup assembly	2	Removal and replacement: Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor on page 920
6	JC90-01652A	Cassette, fifth	1	Not applicable
7	JC90-01654A	Cassette, fourth	1	Not applicable
8	JC90-01680A	DCF second pickup	1	Removal and replacement: Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units on page 923
9	JC90-01679A	DCF first pickup	1	Removal and replacement: Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units on page 923
10	6602-003185	Timing belt	1	Not applicable
14	JC90-01677A	DCF, sub-auto closing	1	Not applicable
Not shown	JC93-01092A	Rollers - pick, feed, sep	2	Not applicable
Not shown	0604-001490	Photo-interrupter	1	Not applicable
Not shown	JC66-00977A	Clutch one way	1	Not applicable
Not shown	JC67-00455A	Coupler, torque limiter	1	Not applicable
Not shown	JC93-01435A	SF left cassette rail assembly	2	Not applicable
Not shown	JC93-01045A	SF right cassette rail assembly	2	Not applicable

Removal and replacement: Dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door

Learn how to remove and replace the DCF right door.

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the DCF right door.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-144 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01649A	DCF right door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

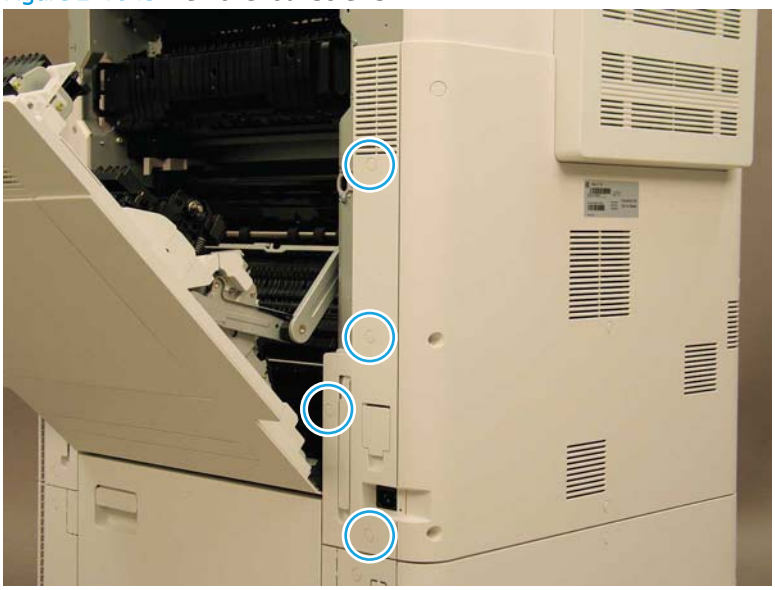
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

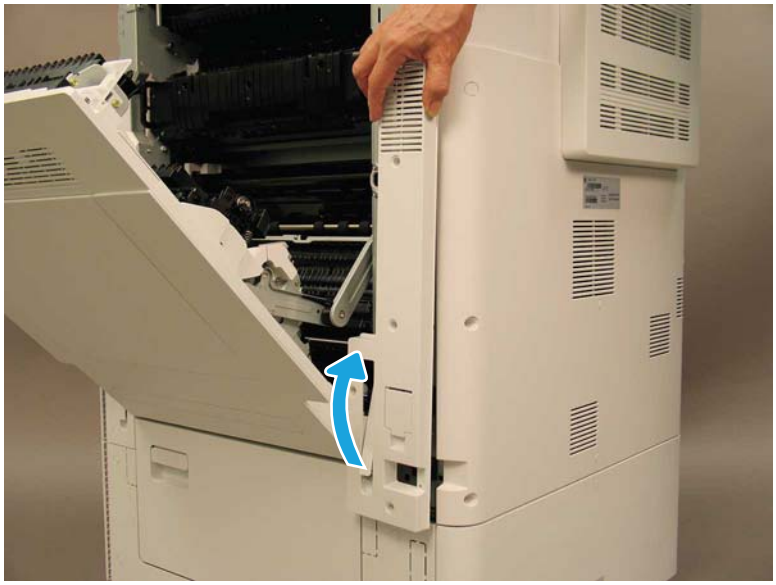
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-1045 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-1046 Remove the right rear cover

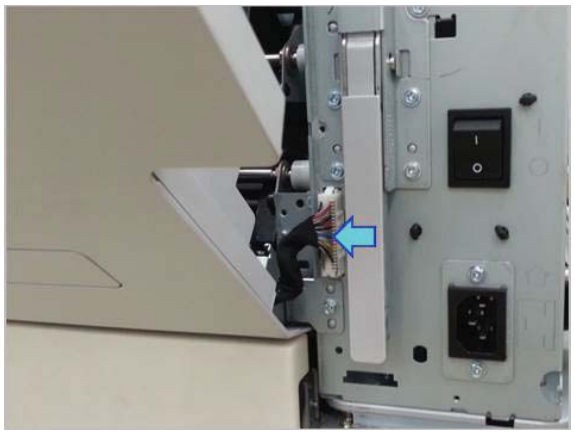


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

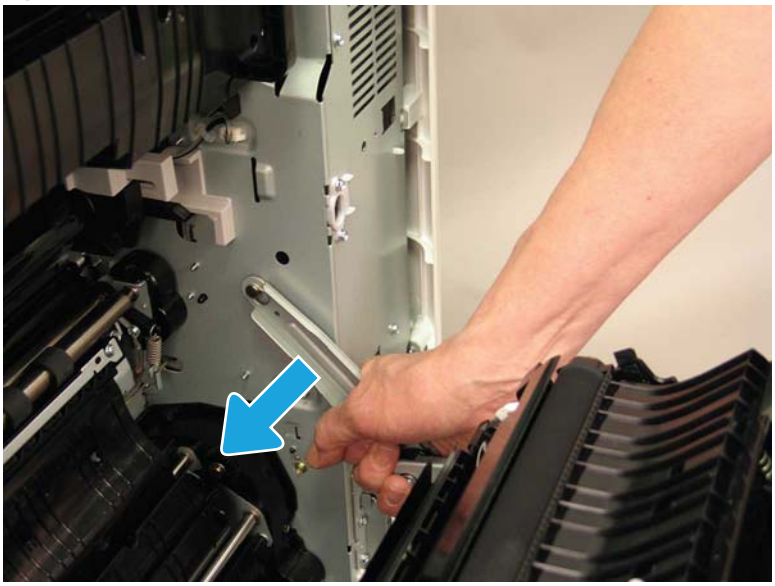
Figure 2-1047 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

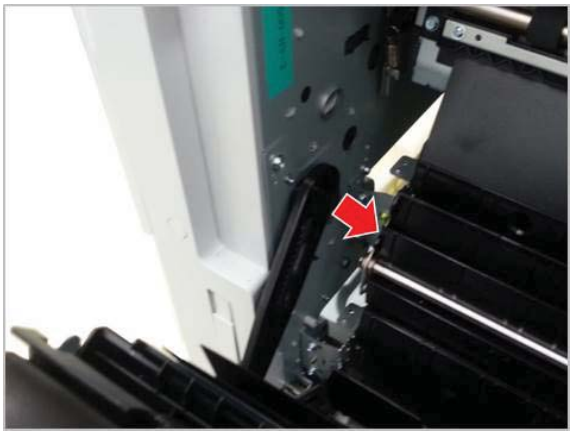
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-1048 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

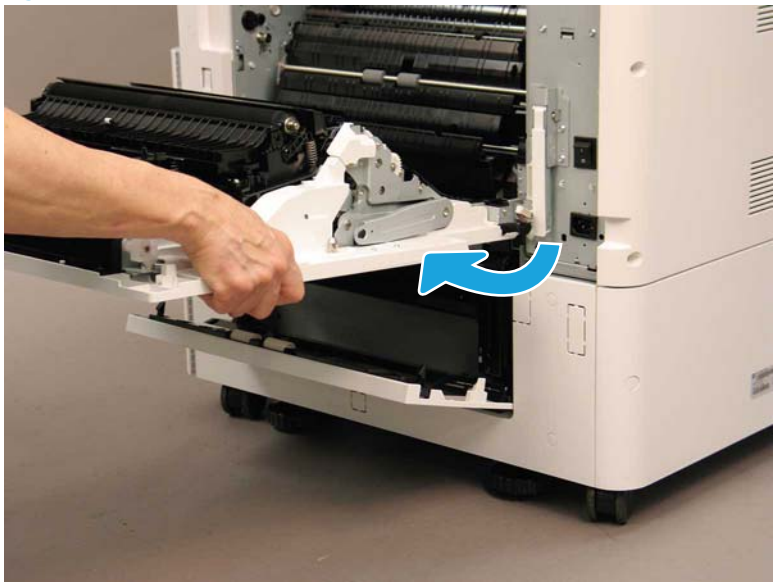
Figure 2-1049 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-1050 Remove the right door

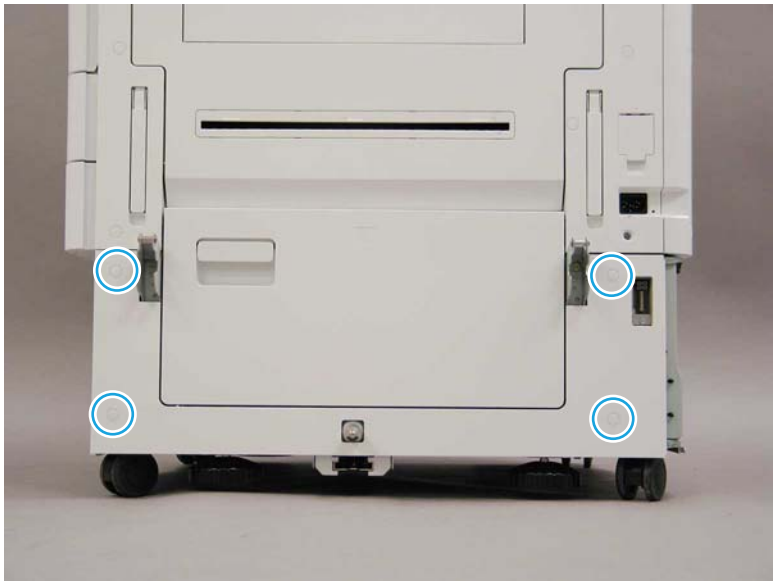


Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door

Follow these steps to remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door.

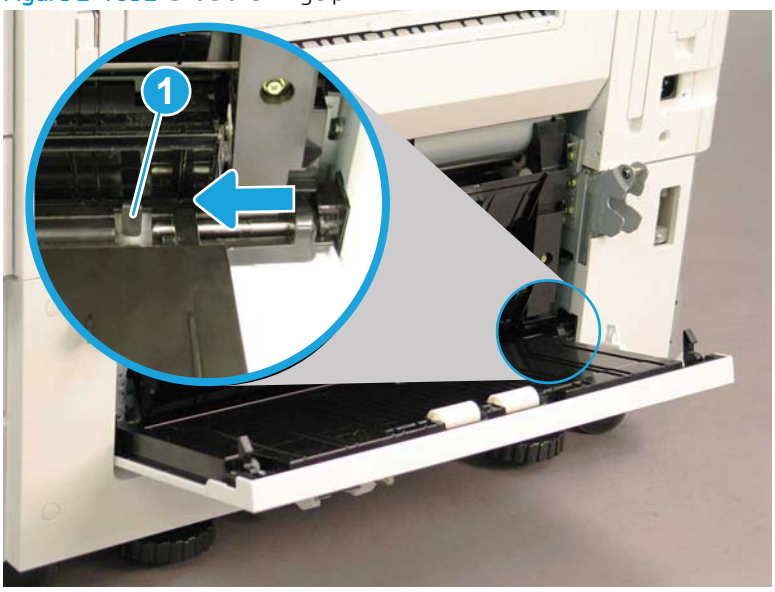
1. Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the lower right cover.

Figure 2-1051 Remove the lower right cover



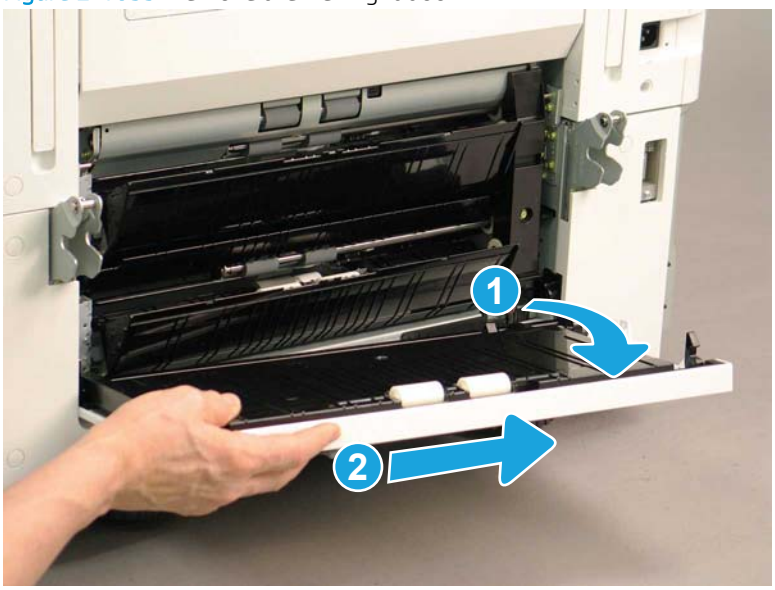
2. Open the DCF right door and slide the hinge pin to the left. Make sure that the pin slides under the tab (callout 1).

Figure 2-1052 Slide the hinge pin



3. Rotate the right edge of the door away from the feeder (callout 1), and then slide the door to the right to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 2-1053 Remove the DCF right door



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.

   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Removal and replacement: Dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor

Learn how to remove and replace the DCF cassette motor.

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the DCF cassette motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-145 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01135A	SF drive feed assy (Opt)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

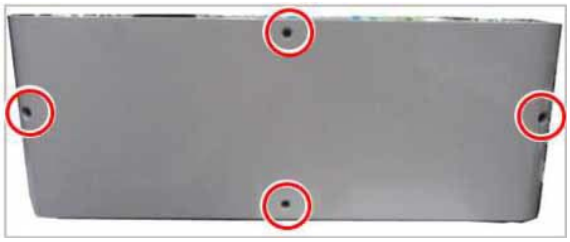
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the DCF rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the DCF rear cover.

▲ Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 2-1054 Remove the DCF rear cover

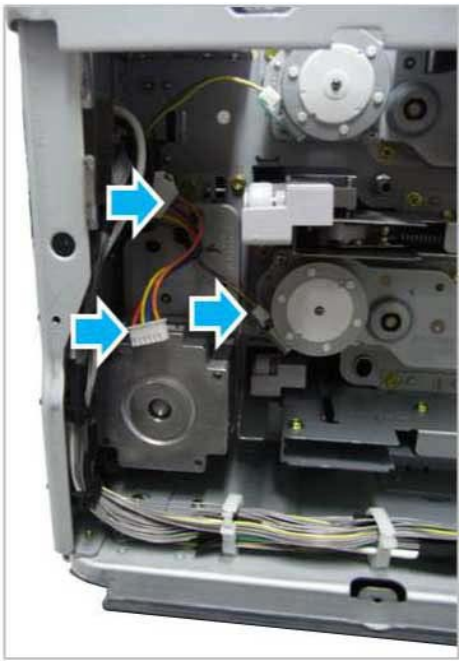


Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor

Follow these steps to remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor.

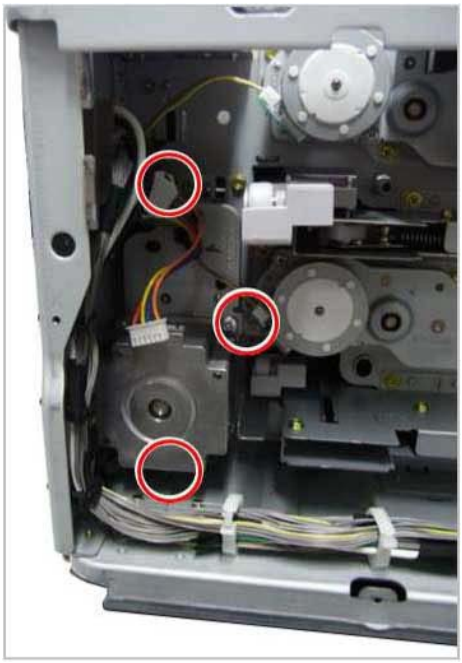
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then open one retainer.

Figure 2-1055 Disconnect two connectors and open one retainer



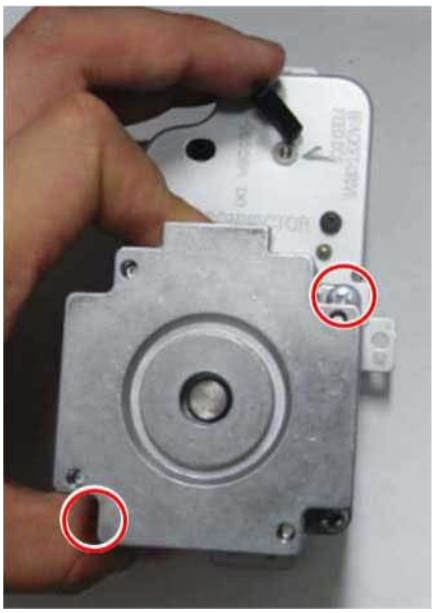
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the feed drive unit.

Figure 2-1056 Remove the feed drive unit



3. Remove two screws, and then remove the feed motor.

Figure 2-1057 Remove the feed motor



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.

   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Removal and replacement: Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor

Learn how to remove and replace the DCF pickup motor.

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the DCF pickup motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-146 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01063C	Drive pickup assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

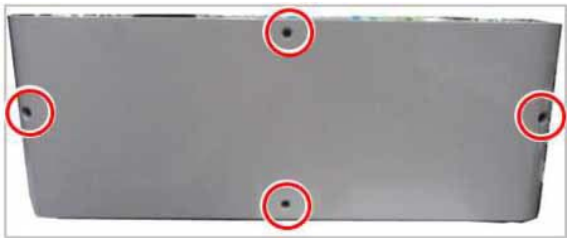
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the DCF rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the DCF rear cover.

▲ Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 2-1058 Remove the DCF rear cover

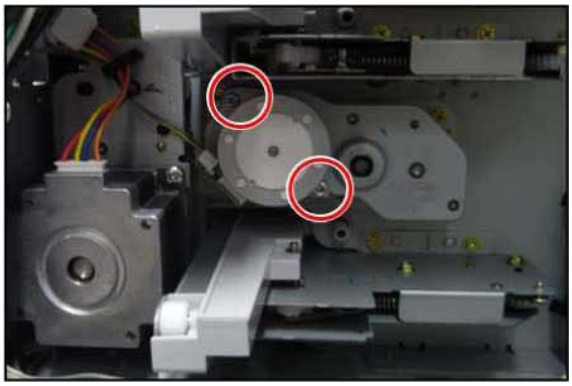


Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor

Follow these steps to remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor.

▲ Disconnect the motor connector. Remove two screws, and then remove the DCF pickup assembly.

Figure 2-1059 Remove the DCF pickup assembly



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.
   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Removal and replacement: Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units

Learn how to remove and replace the DCF pickup units.

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the DCF pickup units.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-147 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01679A	First pickup assembly
JC90-01680A	Second pickup assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

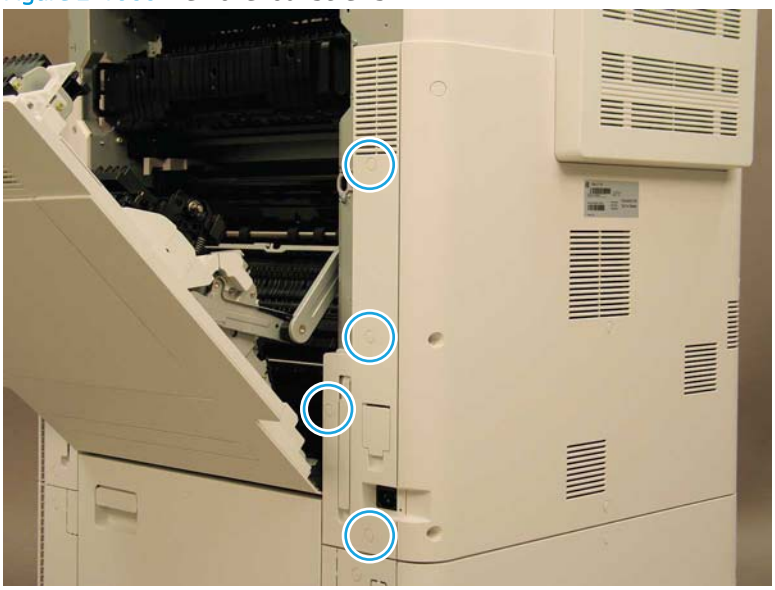
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the right rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

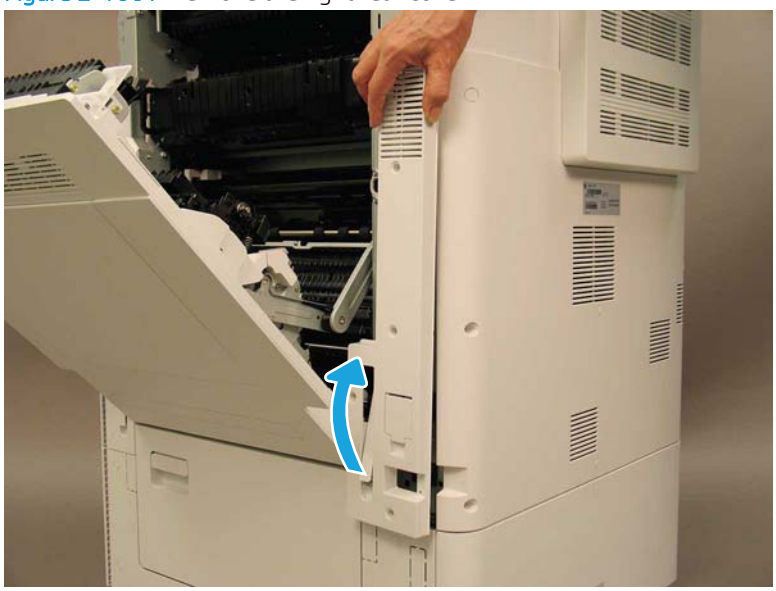
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 2-1060 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 2-1061 Remove the right rear cover

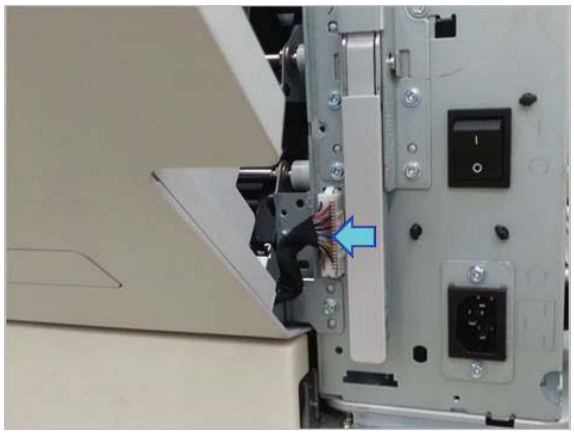


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

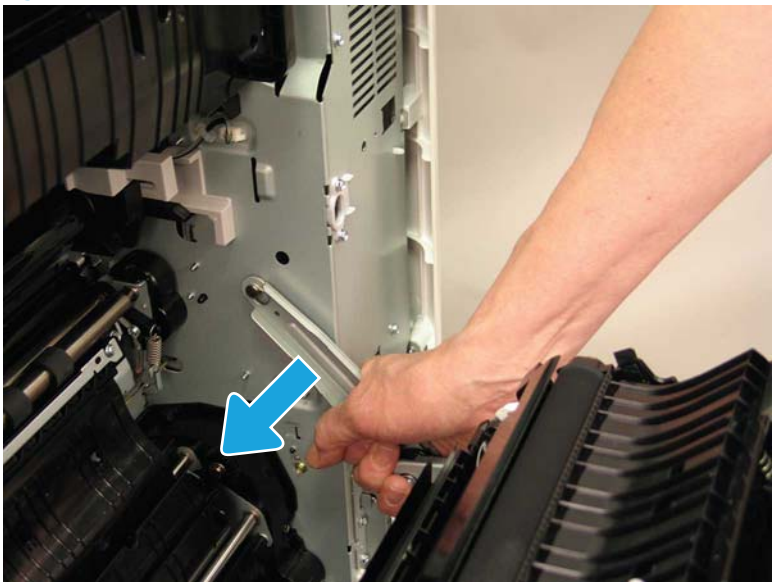
Figure 2-1062 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

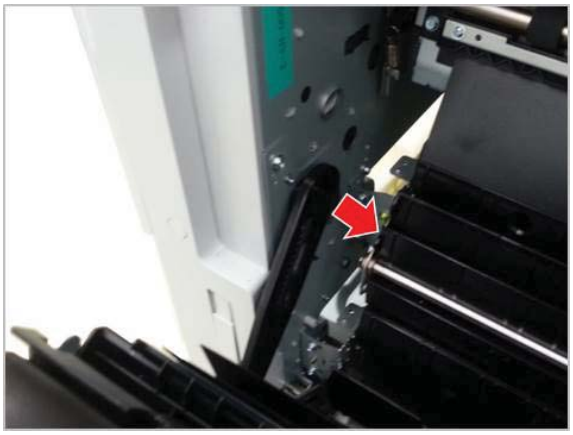
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 2-1063 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

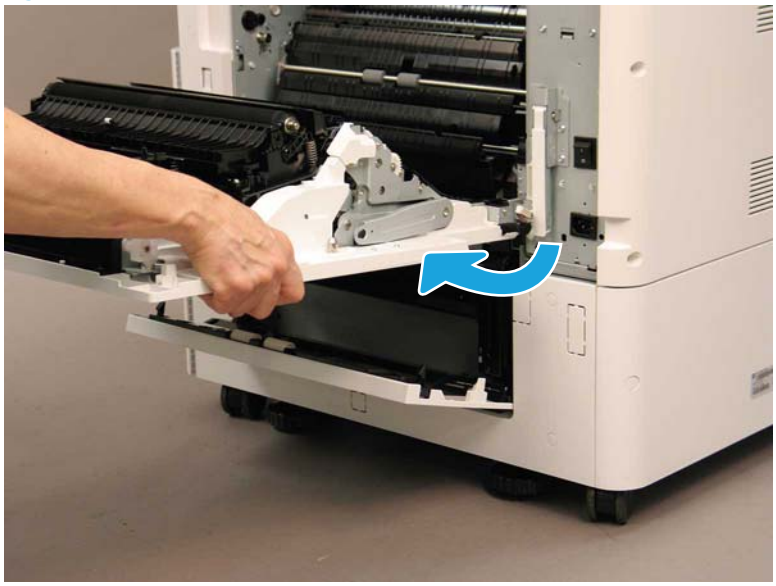
Figure 2-1064 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 2-1065 Remove the right door

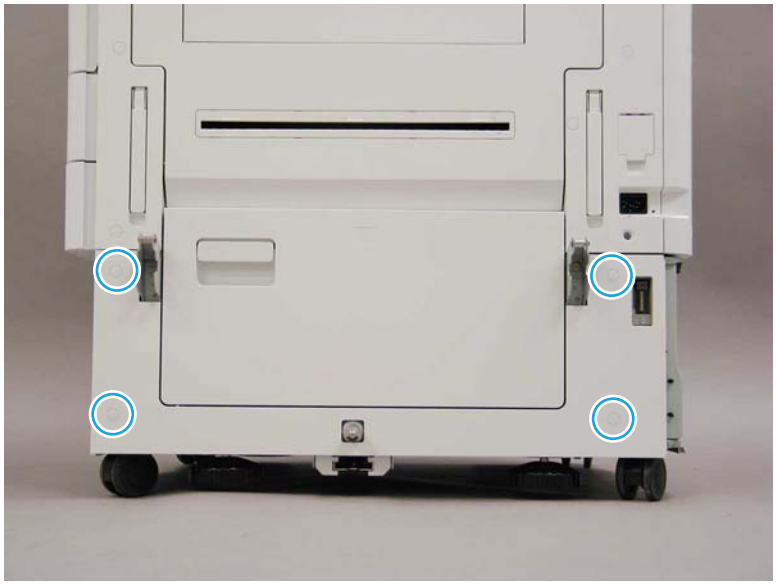


Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door

Follow these steps to remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door.

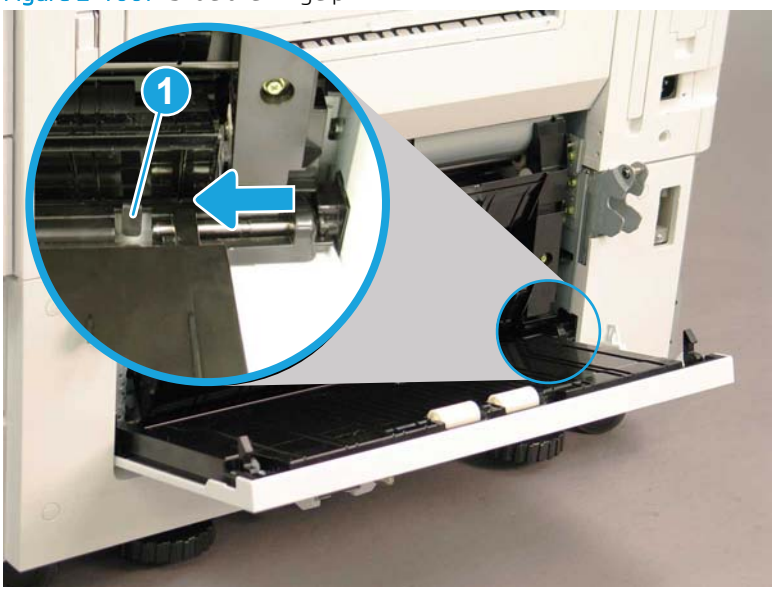
1. Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the lower right cover.

Figure 2-1066 Remove the lower right cover



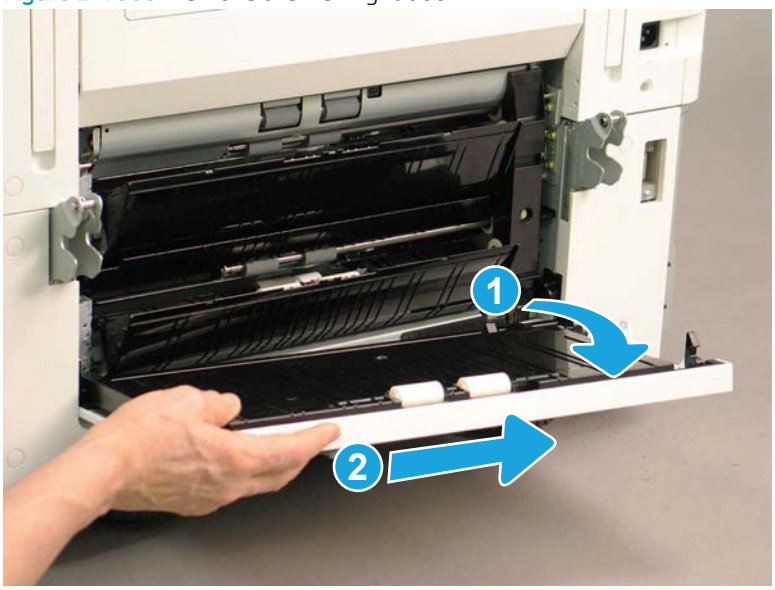
2. Open the DCF right door and slide the hinge pin to the left. Make sure that the pin slides under the tab (callout 1).

Figure 2-1067 Slide the hinge pin



3. Rotate the right edge of the door away from the feeder (callout 1), and then slide the door to the right to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 2-1068 Remove the DCF right door

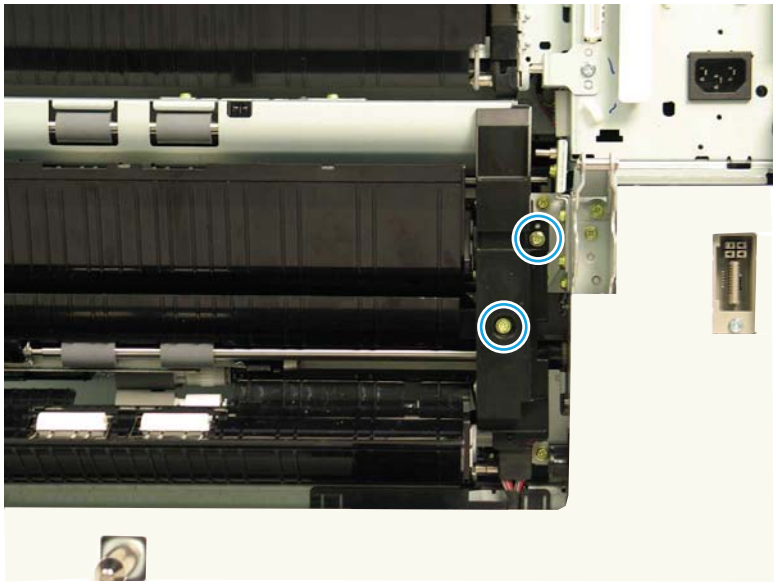


Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units

Follow these steps to remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units.

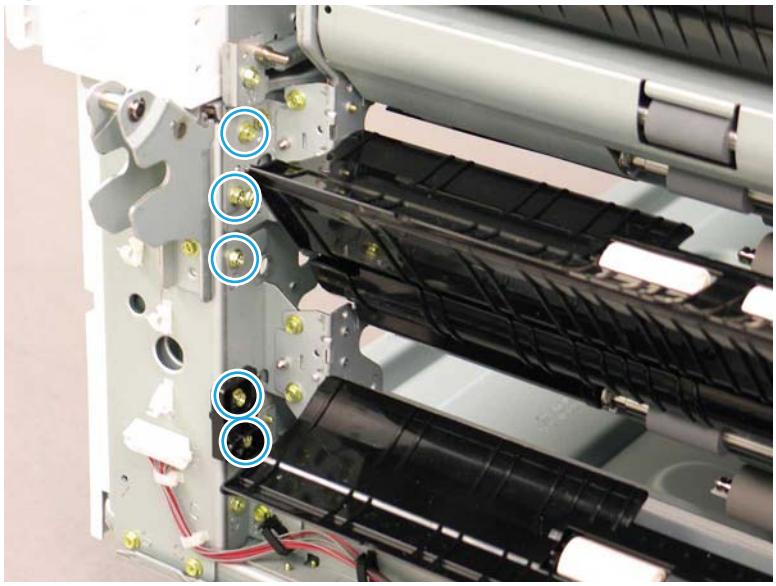
1. Remove two screws, and then remove the cable cover.

Figure 2-1069 Remove two screws and the cable cover



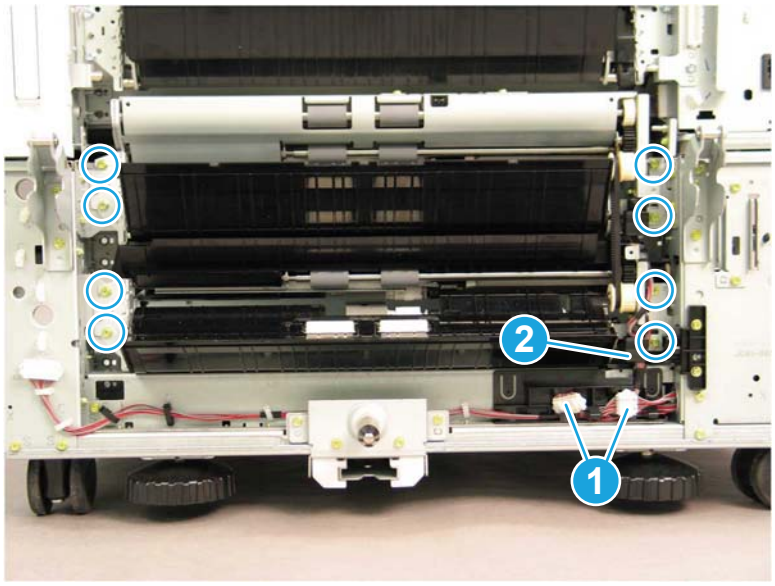
2. Remove five screws, and then remove two brackets.

Figure 2-1070 Remove five screws and two brackets



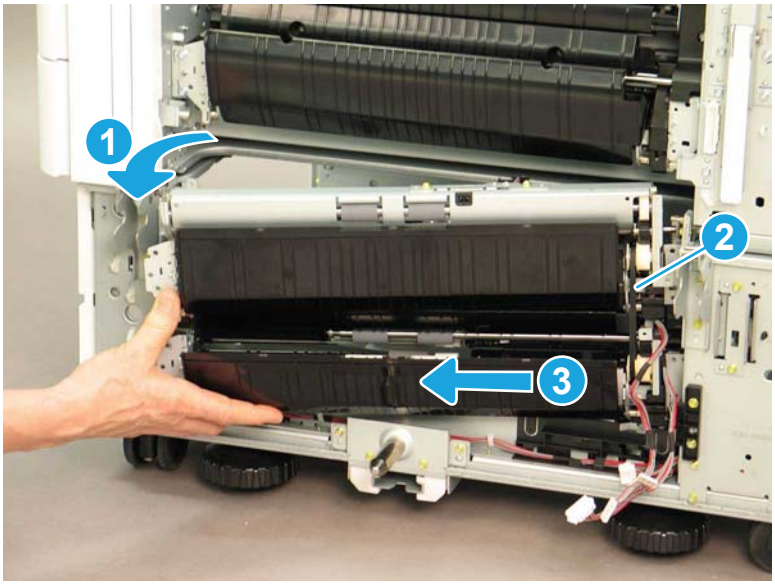
3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the wire harness from the cable guide (callout 2). Remove eight screws (callout 3).

Figure 2-1071 Disconnect two connectors and remove eight screws



4. Rotate both pickup units away from the feeder on the left (callout 1). Release the belt (callout 2) that connects the two units. Slide the pickup units to the left (callout 3) to remove them.

Figure 2-1072 Remove the pickup units



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.

   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

DCF frame

View the DCF frame exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

DCF frame

Parts diagram and parts list for the DCF frame.

Figure 2-1073 DCF frame

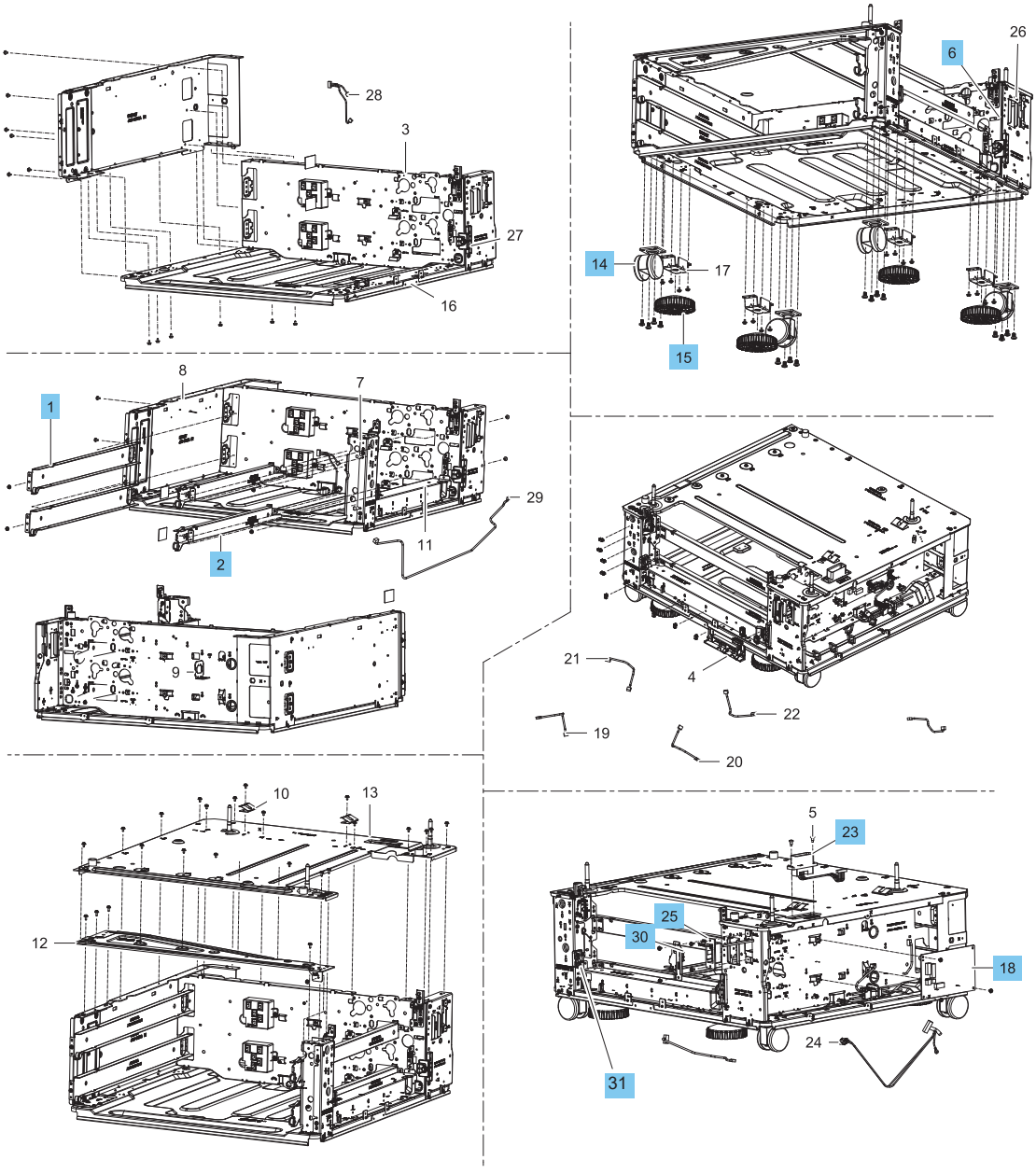


Table 2-148 DCF frame

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1	JC93-01435A	Frame, left cst rail assembly	2	Not applicable
2	JC93-01045A	Frame, right cst rail assembly	2	Not applicable
6	JC90-01385A	DCF sub-takeaway interlock	1	Not applicable
14	6109-001138	Caster	4	Not applicable
15	JC61-04871A	DCF guide adjust	4	Not applicable
18	JC92-02738D	DCF PCA	1	Removal and replacement: Dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA on page 934
23	JC39-02276A	DCF, main harness	1	Not applicable
25	JC39-02278A	DCF, sub harness	1	Not applicable
30	JC39-02268A	DCF, t1mot harness	1	Not applicable
31	JC61-06713A	Front holder-hinge	1	Not applicable

Removal and replacement: Dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA

Learn how to remove and replace the DCF PCA.

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the DCF PCA.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-149 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC92-02738D	PCA-MX7 DCF

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

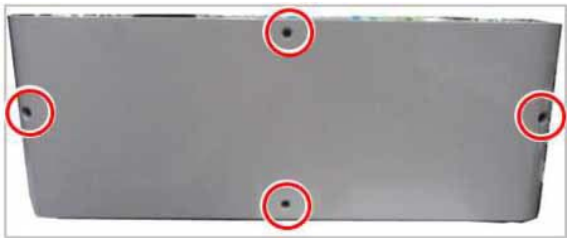
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the DCF rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the DCF rear cover.

▲ Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 2-1074 Remove the DCF rear cover

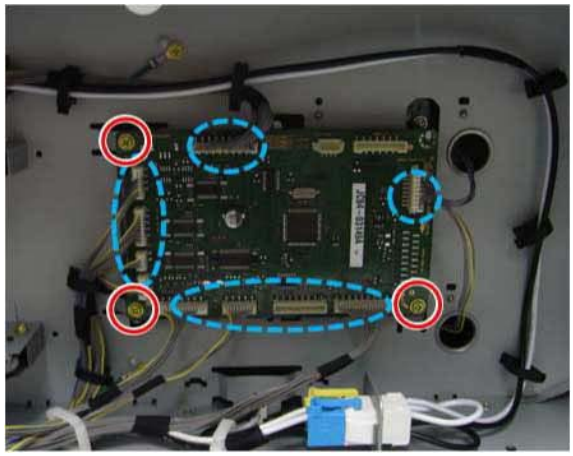


Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA

Follow these steps to remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA.

▲ Disconnect eight connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the DCF PCA.

Figure 2-1075 Remove the DCF PCA



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.
   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

DCF rear frame

View the DCF rear frame exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

DCF rear frame

Parts diagram and parts list for the DCF rear frame.

Figure 2-1076 DCF rear frame

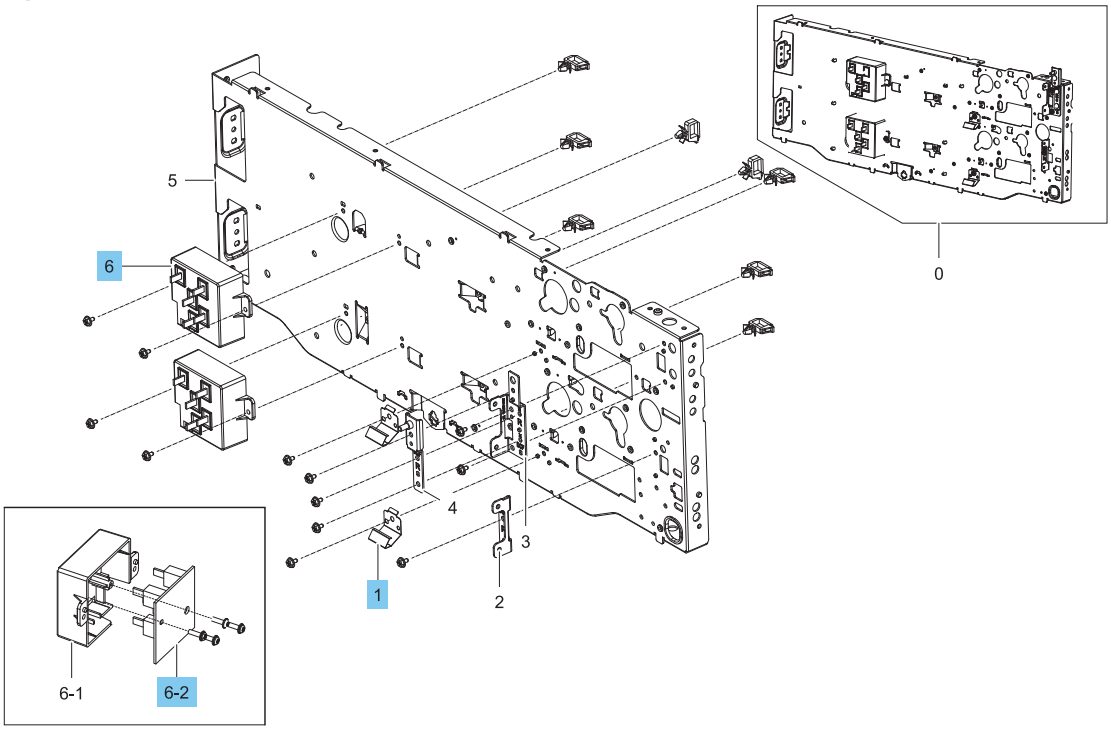


Table 2-150 DCF rear frame

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1	JC61-03002A	Ground plate	2	Not applicable
6	JC93-00018A	Main frame rear auto-size holder	2	Not applicable
6-2	JC92-02622A	PCA, paper size sensor	2	Removal and replacement: Paper size sensor on page 939

Removal and replacement: Paper size sensor

Learn how to remove and replace the DCF paper size sensor.

To view a short video of this procedure, click the link below.

View a video of how to remove and replace the DCF paper size sensor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-151 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC92-02622A	Paper size sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

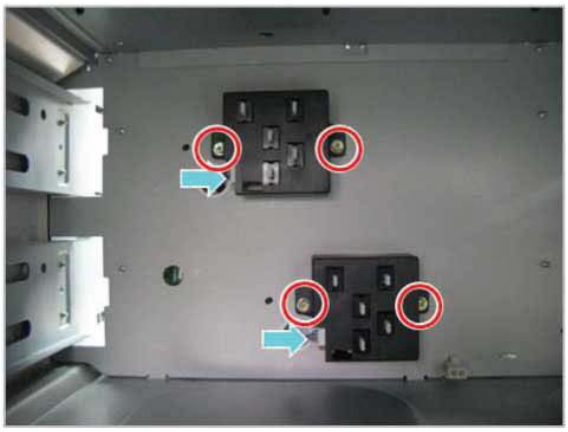
Remove the paper size sensor

Follow these steps to remove the paper size sensor.

▲ Do the following:

- Remove all trays to access the inside of the printer.
- Disconnect the connector. Remove two screws, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 2-1077 Remove screws



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.
   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Opt feed drive

Parts diagram and parts list for the opt feed drive.

Figure 2-1078 Opt feed drive

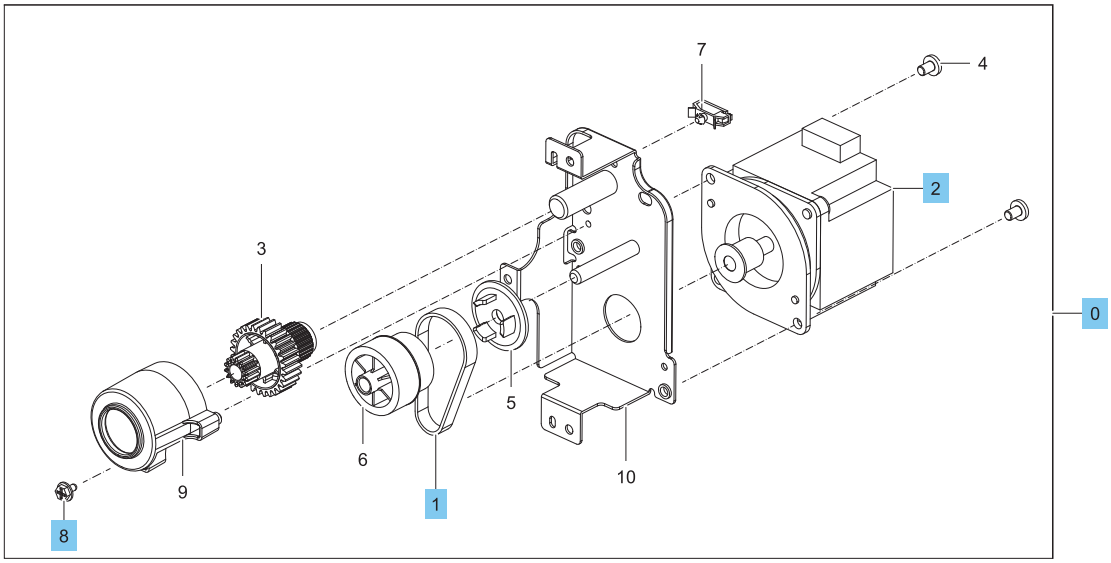


Table 2-152 Opt feed drive

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
0	JC93-01135A	Opt feed drive	1	Not applicable
1	6602-003670	Timing belt, gear	1	Not applicable
2	JC31-00177A	Step motor, ip	1	Not applicable
8	6009-001665	Hex screw	1	Not applicable

DCF second pickup

Parts diagram and parts list for the DCF second pickup.

Figure 2-1079 DCF second pickup

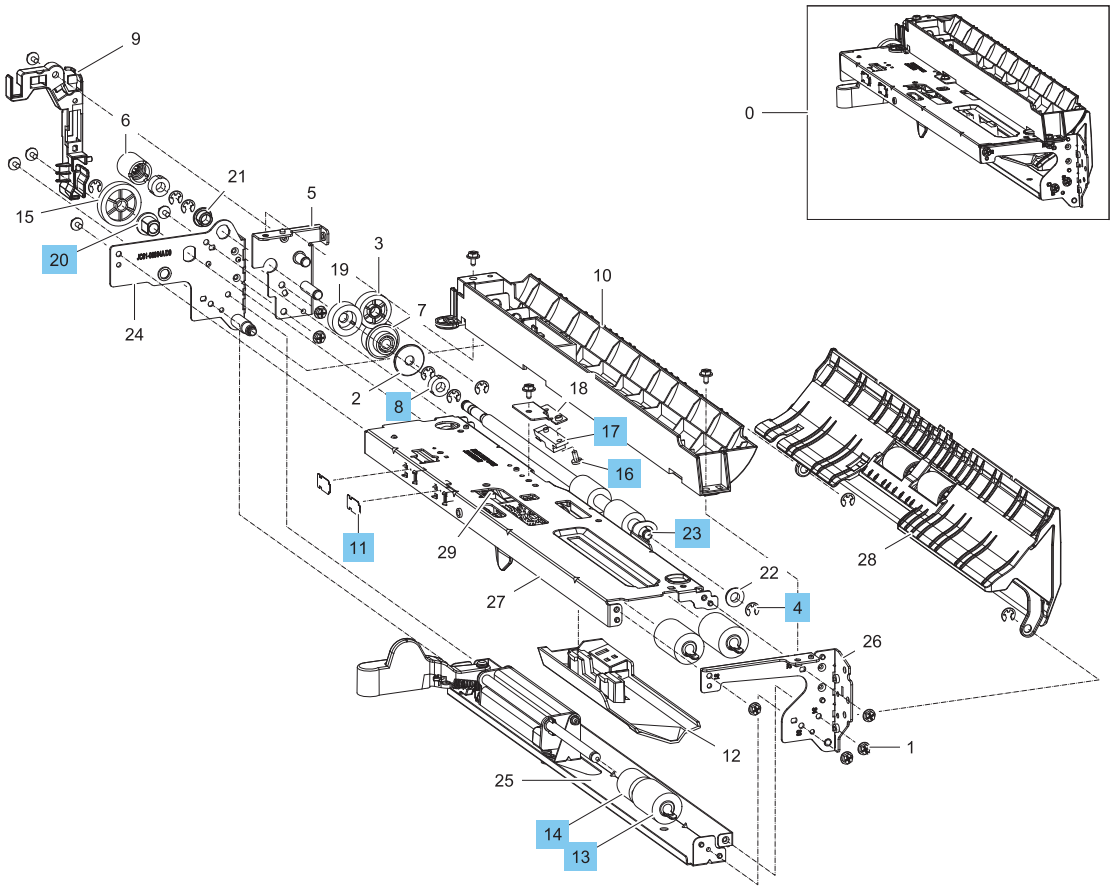


Table 2-153 DCF second pickup

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
4	6044-000125	E-ring	6	Not applicable
8	JC66-00977A	Clutch one way	4	Not applicable
11	JC63-03776A	Sheet sensor	2	Not applicable
13	JC93-01092A	Frame, main pickup roller	3	Not applicable
14	JC67-00455A	Coupler, torque limiter	1	Not applicable
16	6003-000269	Screw, tap type	4	Not applicable
17	0604-001381	Photo-interrupter	1	Not applicable
20	JC61-00884A	Bush-6, dl	2	Not applicable

2000-sheet HCI (department)

View the 2000-sheet HCI (department) exploded diagrams and parts lists.

2K HCI main

Parts diagram and parts list for the 2K HCI main.

Figure 2-1080 2K HCI main

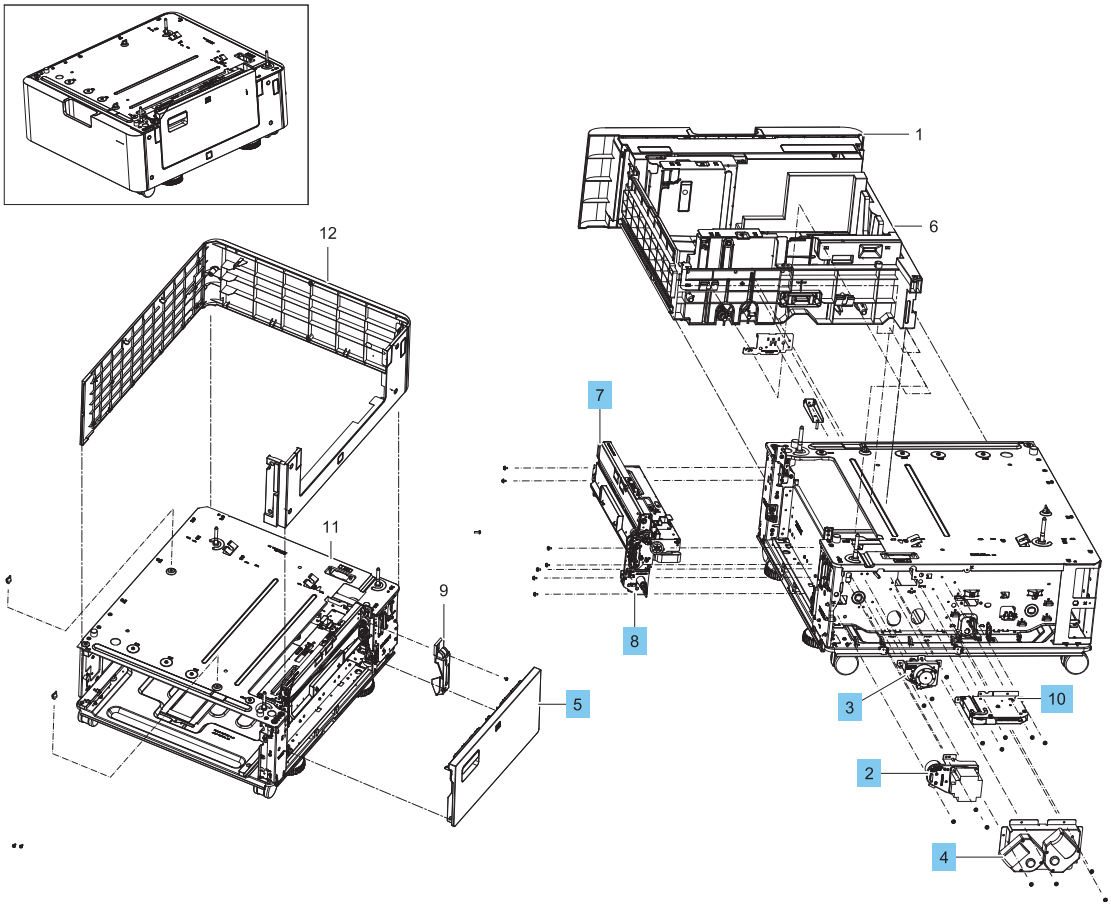


Table 2-154 2K HCI main

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
2	JC93-01114A	Feed drive, HCI	1	Not applicable
3	JC93-01115A	Pickup drive	1	Not applicable
4	JC93-01118A	Lift drive, shift assembly	1	Not applicable
5	JC90-01646A	HCI right door (takeaway)	1	Not applicable
6	JC90-01642A	Cassette	1	Not applicable
7	JC90-01736A	Assy - main pickup	1	Not applicable
8	JC93-01119A	Drive takeaway roller	1	Not applicable
10	JC90-01382A	Sub-auto closer	1	Not applicable

2K HCI drive

View the 2K HCI drive exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

2K HCI drive

Parts diagram and parts list for the 2K HCI drive.

Figure 2-1081 2K HCI drive

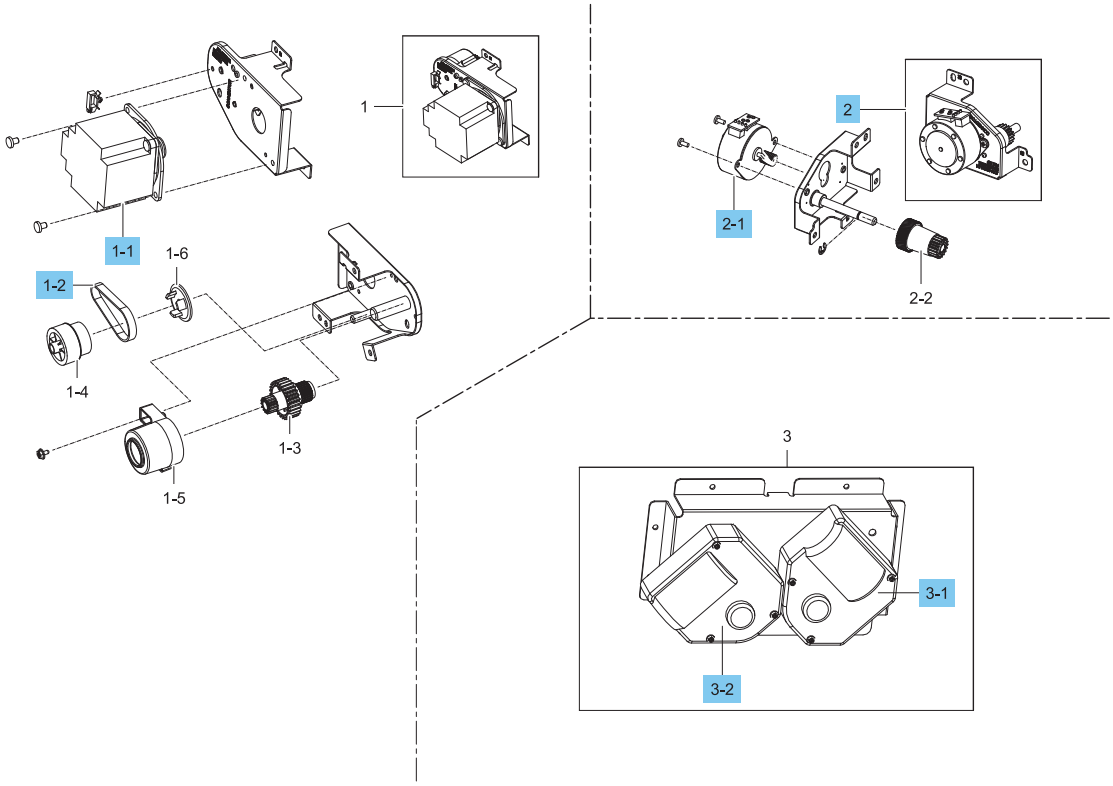


Table 2-155 2K HCI drive

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1-1	JC31-00177A	Motor step, 1p	1	Removal and replacement: Bottom HCI tray feed motor on page 950
1-2	6602-003670	Timing belt, gear	1	Not applicable
2	JC93-01115A	Pickup drive	1	Not applicable
2-1	JC93-01083A	Drive motor, step	1	Removal and replacement: Bottom HCI tray pickup motor on page 954
3-1	JC31-00125A	Motor shift gear	1	Not applicable
3-2	JC31-00109A	HCI motor gear	1	Removal and replacement: Bottom HCI tray lift-up motor on page 957
Not shown	JC31-00125A	HCI shaft motor	1	Removal and replacement: Bottom HCI tray shaft motor on page 960

Removal and replacement: Bottom HCI tray feed motor

Learn how to remove and replace the bottom HCI tray pickup motor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the bottom HCI tray feed motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-156 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00177A	Bottom HCI tray feed motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the 2K HCI rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the 2K HCI rear cover.

- ▲ Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

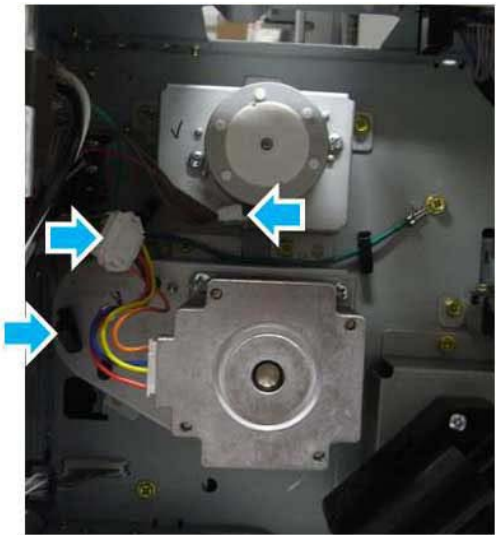
Figure 2-1082 Remove the 2K HCI rear cover

Remove the bottom HCI tray feed motor

Follow these steps to remove the bottom HCI tray feed motor.

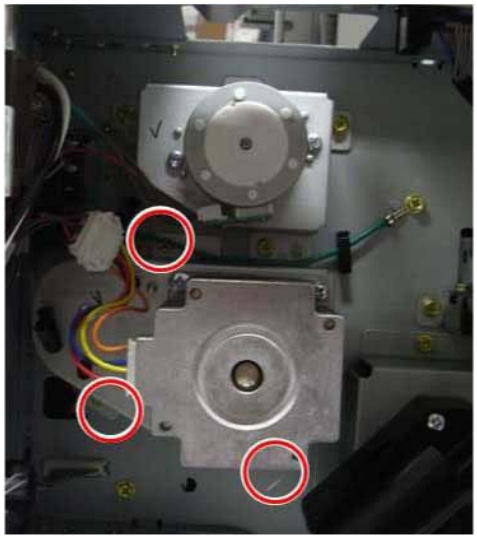
1. Disconnect two motor connectors, and open the harness clamp.

Figure 2-1083 Disconnect two connectors and open the clamp



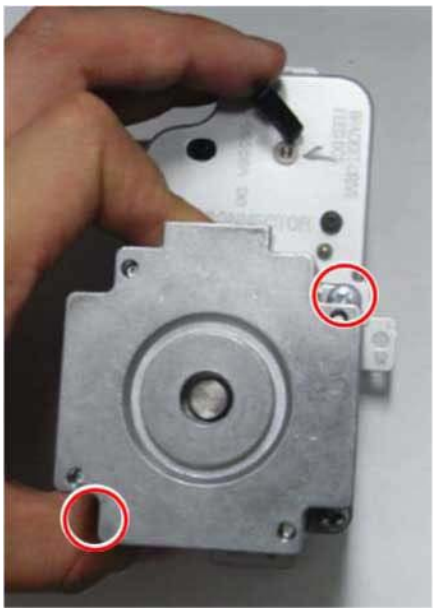
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the feed drive unit.

Figure 2-1084 Remove the feed drive unit



3. Remove two screws, and then remove the feed motor.

Figure 2-1085 Remove the feed motor



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.

   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Removal and replacement: Bottom HCI tray pickup motor

Learn how to remove and replace the bottom HCI tray pickup motor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the bottom HCI tray pickup motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-157 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01083A	Bottom HCI tray pickup motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the 2K HCI rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the 2K HCI rear cover.

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

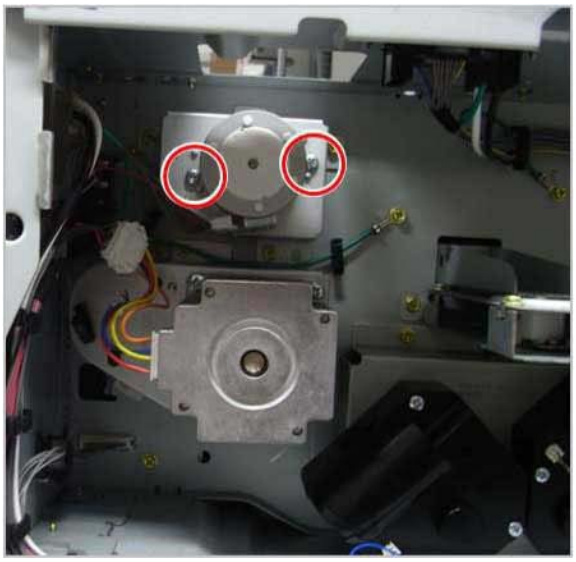
Figure 2-1086 Remove the 2K HCI rear cover

Remove the bottom HCI tray pickup motor

Follow these steps to remove the bottom HCI tray pickup motor.

- Disconnect the motor connector. Remove two screws, and remove the bottom HCI tray pickup motor.

Figure 2-1087 Remove the bottom HCI tray pickup motor



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.
   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Removal and replacement: Bottom HCI tray lift-up motor

Learn how to remove and replace the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-158 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00109A	Bottom HCI tray lift-up motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the 2K HCI rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the 2K HCI rear cover.

- ▲ Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

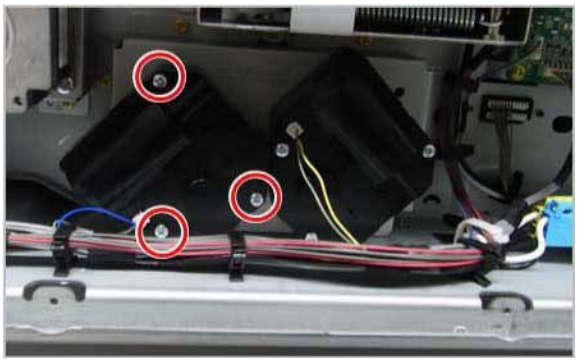
Figure 2-1088 Remove the 2K HCI rear cover

Remove the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor

Follow these steps to remove the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor.

- ▲ Disconnect the connector. Remove three screws, and the remove the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor.

Figure 2-1089 Remove the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.
   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Removal and replacement: Bottom HCI tray shaft motor

Learn how to remove and replace the bottom HCI tray shaft motor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the bottom HCI tray shaft motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-159 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00125A	Bottom HCI tray shaft motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the 2K HCI rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the 2K HCI rear cover.

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

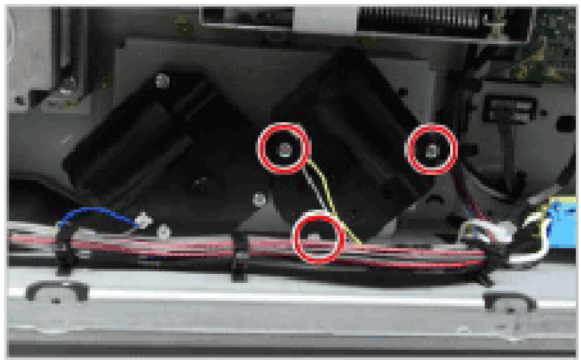
Figure 2-1090 Remove the 2K HCI rear cover

Remove the bottom HCI tray shaft motor

Follow these steps to remove the bottom HCI tray shaft motor.

- Disconnect the connector. Remove three screws, and then remove the bottom HCI tray shaft motor.

Figure 2-1091 Remove the shaft motor



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.
   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

2K HCI cassette

Parts diagram and parts list for the 2K HCI cassette.

Figure 2-1092 2K HCI cassette

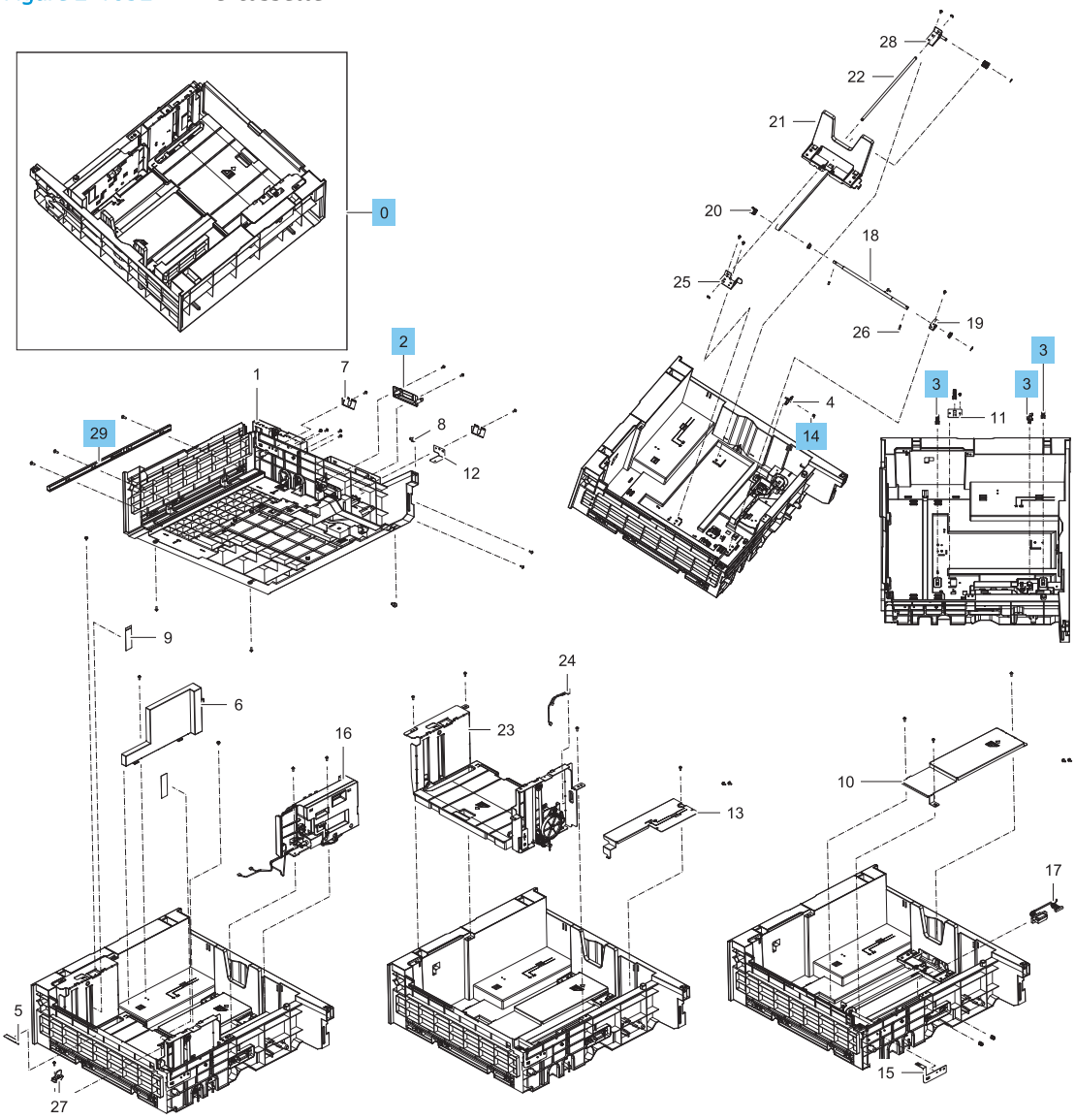


Table 2-160 2K HCI cassette

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
0	JC90-01642A	Cassette	1	Not applicable
2	JC61-01742A	Connector holder, scf	1	Not applicable
3	0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	4	Not applicable
14	JC61-00076A	Spring, etc torsion doc (cc2-f)	1	Not applicable
29	JC61-07471A	Cassette guide rail	1	Not applicable

2K HCI frame

View the 2K HCI frame exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

2K HCI frame

Parts diagram and parts list for the 2K HCI frame.

Figure 2-1093 2K HCI frame

Table 2-161 2K HCI frame

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1	JC61-03331A	Idle roller, cst	2	Not applicable
6	JC61-04871A	Adjust guide, DCF	4	Not applicable
7	6109-001138	Caster	4	Not applicable
13	JC92-02738B	PCA - Department HCI	1	Removal and replacement: 2K HCI tray PCA on page 968
14	JC39-02285A	Cable harness, sub if	1	Not applicable
15	JC39-02284A	Cable harness, heater	1	Not applicable
16	JC39-02283A	Harness, main if	1	Not applicable
19	JC39-02286A	Harness, inner tray	1	Not applicable
20	JC39-02279A	Cable harness, motor	1	Not applicable

Removal and replacement: 2K HCI tray PCA

Learn how to remove and replace the 2K HCI tray PCA.

View a video of how to remove and replace the 2K HCI tray PCA.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-162 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC92-02738B	PCA - department HCI

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the 2K HCI rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the 2K HCI rear cover.

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

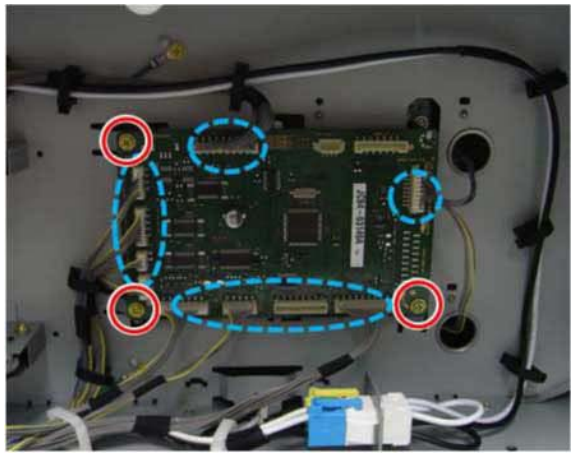
Figure 2-1094 Remove the 2K HCI rear cover

Remove the bottom HCI tray PCA

Follow these steps to remove the bottom HCI tray PCA.

- Disconnect eight connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the bottom HCI tray PCA.

Figure 2-1095 Remove the bottom HCI tray PCA



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.
   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

2K HCI main pickup

Parts diagram and parts list for the 2K HCI main pickup.

Figure 2-1096 2K HCI main pickup

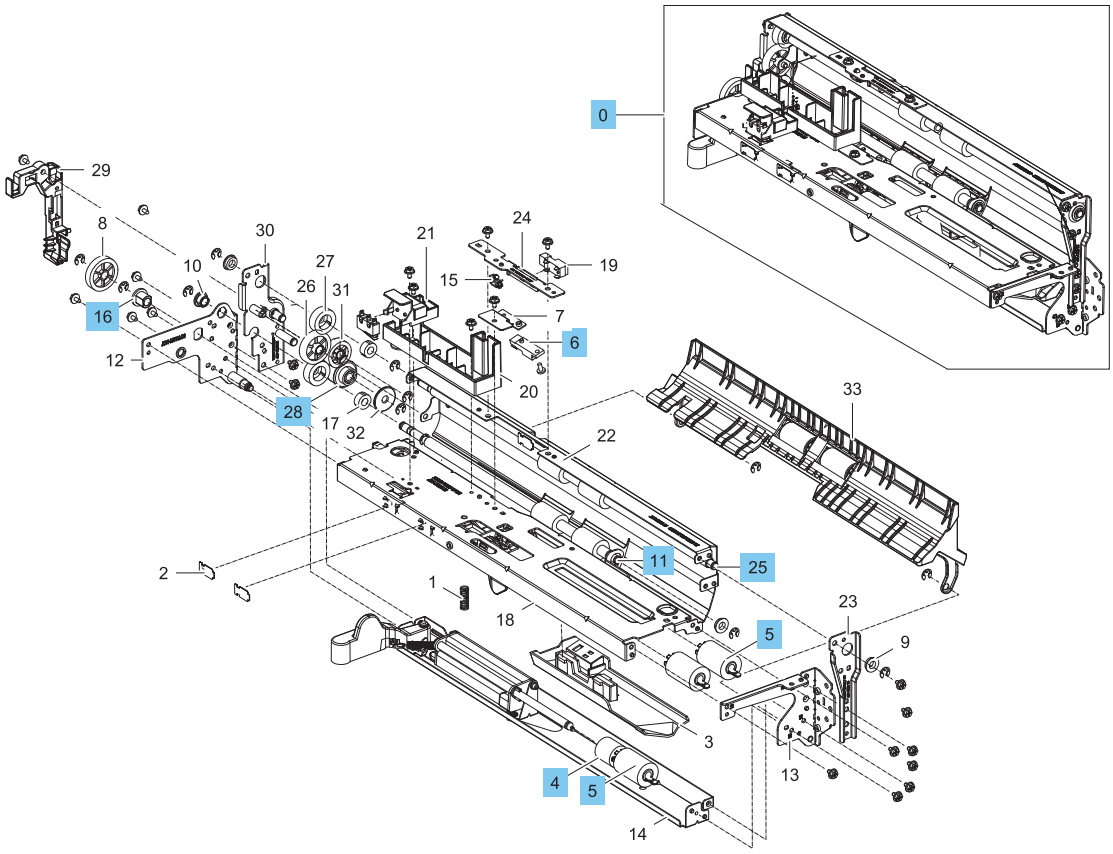


Table 2-163 2K HCI main pickup

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
0	JC93-01139A	HCI main	1	Not applicable
4	JC67-00455A	Coupler, torque limiter	1	Not applicable
5	JC93-01092A	Roller, pick, feed, and separation	3	Not applicable
6	0604-001381	Photo-interrupter	1	Not applicable
11	JC66-04607A	Roller - feed takeaway	1	Not applicable
16	JC61-00884A	Bush-6, D (L)	1	Not applicable
25	JC66-04670A	Roller - right door feed takeaway	1	Not applicable
28	JC66-04281A	Pulley belt	1	Not applicable

3000-sheet sHCI (department; E82540/50/60 and E87640/50/60 only)

View the 3000-sheet sHCI (department; E82540/50/60 and E87640/50/60 only) exploded diagrams and parts lists.

3K sHCI main 1

View the 3K sHCI main 1 exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

3K sHCI main 1

Parts diagram and parts list for the 3K sHCI main 1.

Figure 2-1097 3K sHCI main 1

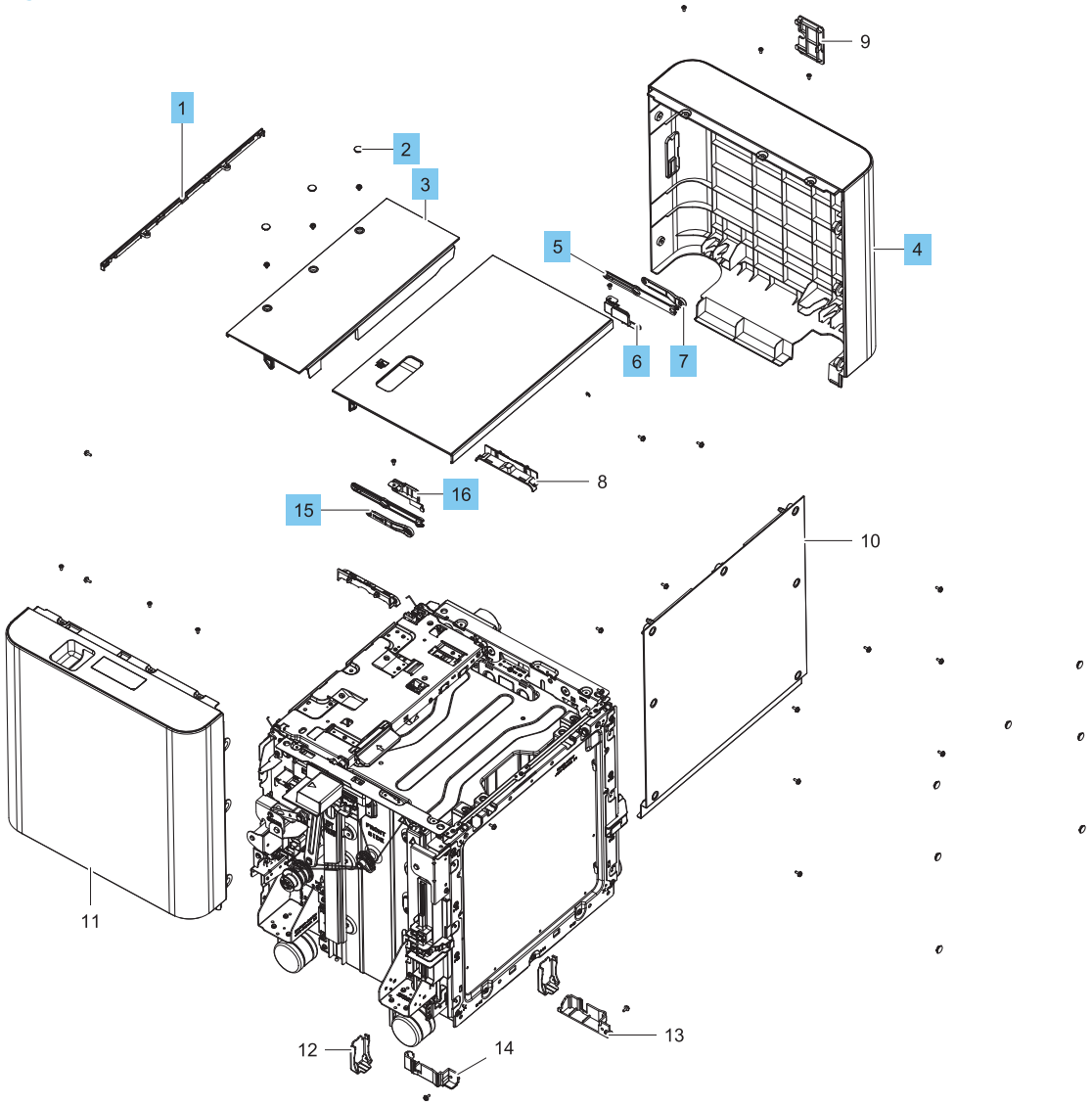


Table 2-164 3K HCI main 1

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
1	JC63-04797B	Left cover	1	Not applicable
2	JC67-00711D	Screw cap	3	Not applicable
3	JC63-04798B	Pickup cover	1	Not applicable
4	JC90-01660A	Assembly, rear cover LCT	1	Removal and replacement: Side HCI rear cover on page 977
5	JC66–04279A	Link door	2	Not applicable
6	JC61-06568A	Link holder, hinge r	1	Not applicable
7	JC66-04277A	Link door, rear 2	1	Not applicable
15	JC66-04278A	Link door, front 2	1	Not applicable
16	JC61-06567A	Link holder, hinge f	1	Not applicable
Not shown	JC92-02738C	PCA - 3K sHCI	1	Removal and replacement: Side sHCI PCA on page 980
Not shown	6001-000130	Screw, M3	1	Not applicable
Not shown	6001-002284	Screw, M4	1	Not applicable
Not shown	6003-001256	Screw, tap type M4	1	Not applicable
Not shown	6009-001664	Screw, M3	1	Not applicable
Not shown	6009-001665	Screw, M3	1	Not applicable

Removal and replacement: Side HCI rear cover

Learn how to remove and replace the side HCI rear cover.

View a video of how to remove and replace the side HCI rear cover.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-165 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01660A	Assy - cover, rear LCT

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

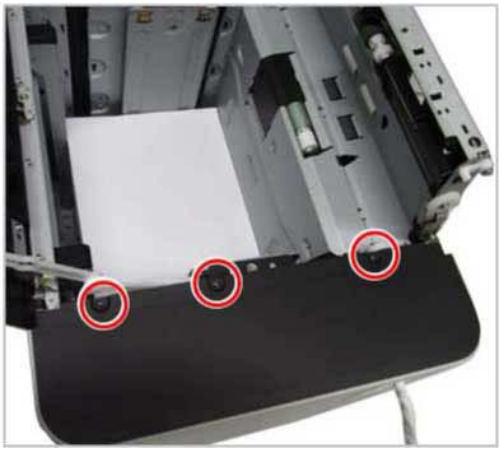
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the side HCI rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the side HCI rear cover.

▲ Remove three screws from the top, and then remove the sHCI rear cover.

Figure 2-1098 Remove the sHCI rear cover



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.
   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Removal and replacement: Side sHCI PCA

Learn how to remove and replace the side sHCI PCA.

View a video of how to remove and replace the side sHCI PCA.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-166 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC92-02738C	Side HCI PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

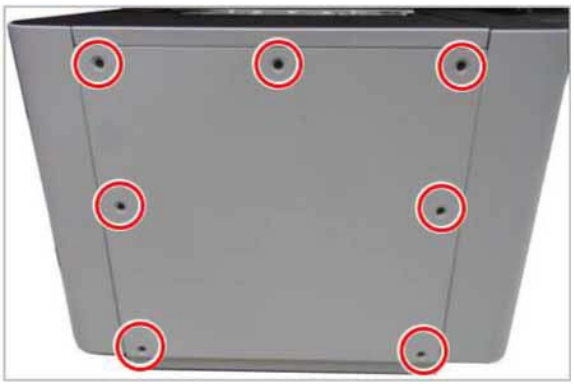
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the side HCI right cover

Follow these steps to remove the side HCI right cover.

- Remove seven screw caps and seven screws, and then remove the sHCI right cover.

Figure 2-1099 Right sHCI cover

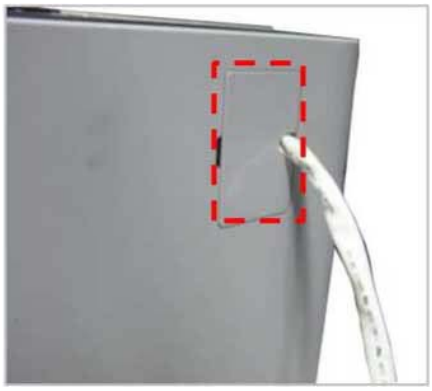


Remove the side HCI cable cover

Follow these steps to remove the side HCI cable cover.

- Remove the side HCI cable cover.

Figure 2-1100 Remove the sHCI cable cover

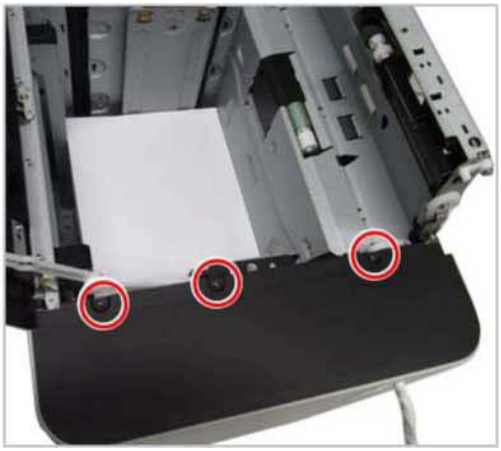


Remove the side HCI rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the side HCI rear cover.

- Remove three screws from the top, and then remove the sHCI rear cover.

Figure 2-1101 Remove the sHCI rear cover

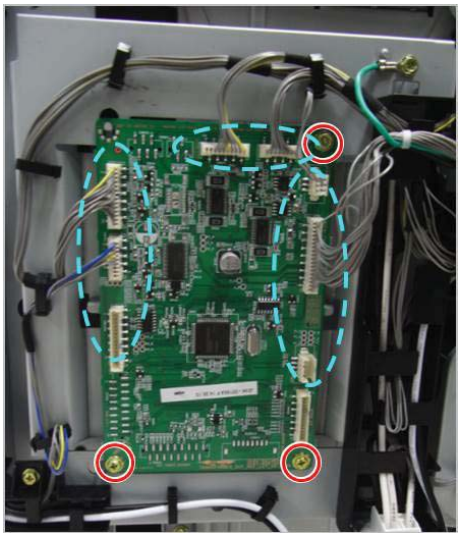


Remove the side HCI PCA

Follow these steps to remove the side HCI PCA.

▲ Disconnect all connectors. Remove three screws, and replace the sHCI PCA.

Figure 2-1102 sHCI PCA



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.
   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

3K sHCI main 3

View the 3K sHCI main 3 exploded view, parts list, and repair procedures.

3K sHCI main 3

Parts diagram and parts list for the 3K sHCI main 3.

Figure 2-1103 3K sHCI main 3

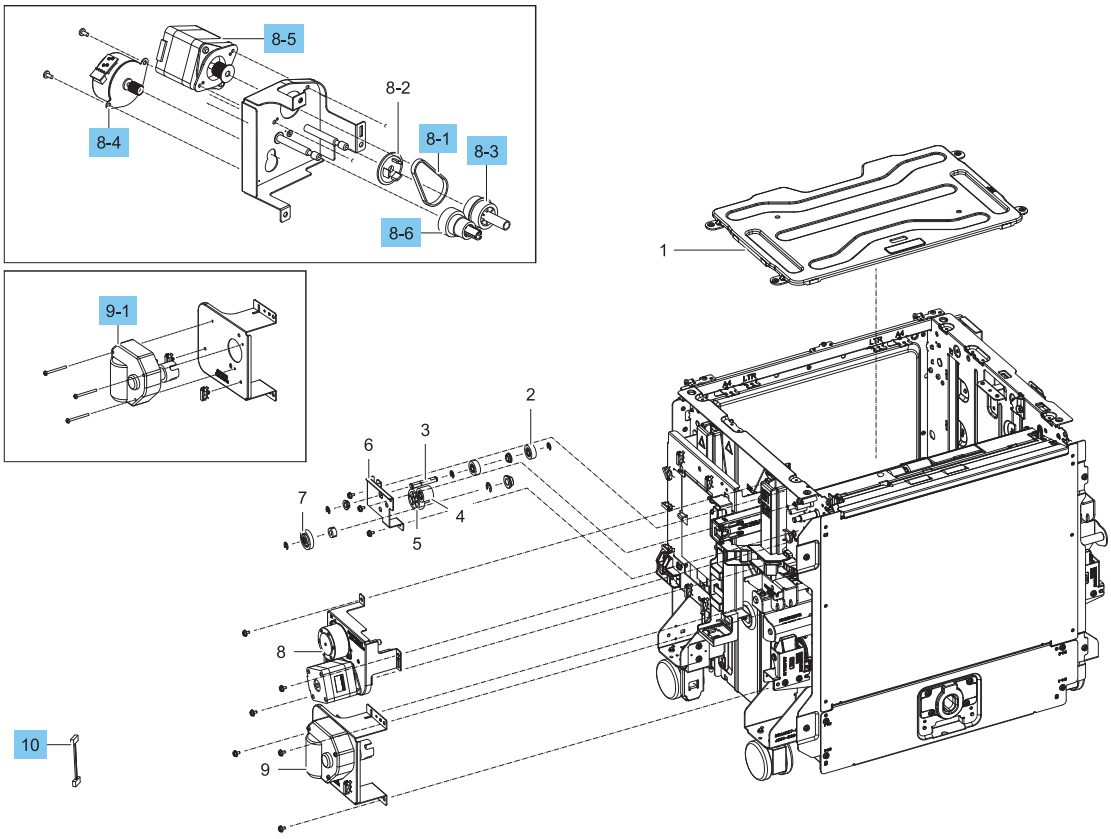


Table 2-167 3K sHCI main 3

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
8-1	6602-001730	Timing belt, gear	1	Not applicable
8-3	JC66-04295A	Feed pulley gear	1	Not applicable
8-4	JC93-01083A	Drive motor, stepJC93	1	Removal and replacement: Side HCI pickup motor on page 986
8-5	JC31-00163A	Step motor, ip	1	Removal and replacement: Side HCI feed motor on page 990
8-6	JC66-04294A	Drive gear	1	Not applicable
9-1	JC31-00109A	Gear motor	1	Removal and replacement: Side HCI lift-up motor on page 994
10	JC39-02287A	Motor harness	1	Not applicable

Removal and replacement: Side HCI pickup motor

Learn how to remove and replace the side HCI pickup motor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the side HCI pickup motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-168 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01083A	Side HCI pickup motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

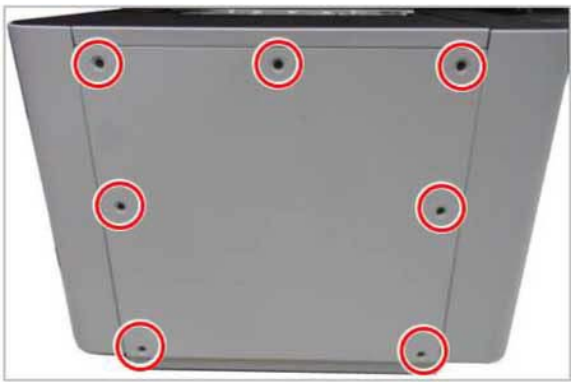
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the side HCI right cover

Follow these steps to remove the side HCI right cover.

- Remove seven screw caps and seven screws, and then remove the sHCI right cover.

Figure 2-1104 Right sHCI cover

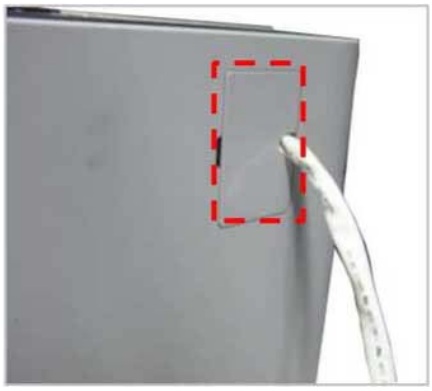


Remove the side HCI cable cover

Follow these steps to remove the side HCI cable cover.

- Remove the side HCI cable cover.

Figure 2-1105 Remove the sHCI cable cover

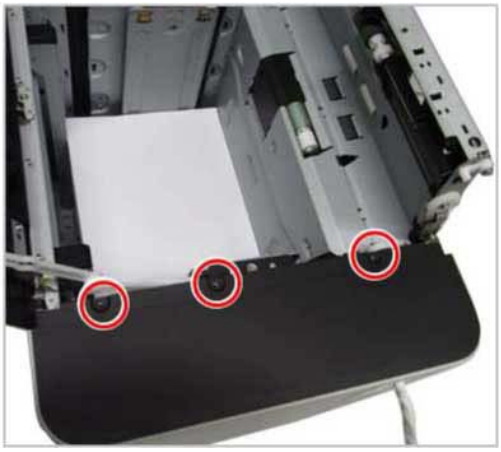


Remove the side HCI rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the side HCI rear cover.

- Remove three screws from the top, and then remove the sHCI rear cover.

Figure 2-1106 Remove the sHCI rear cover

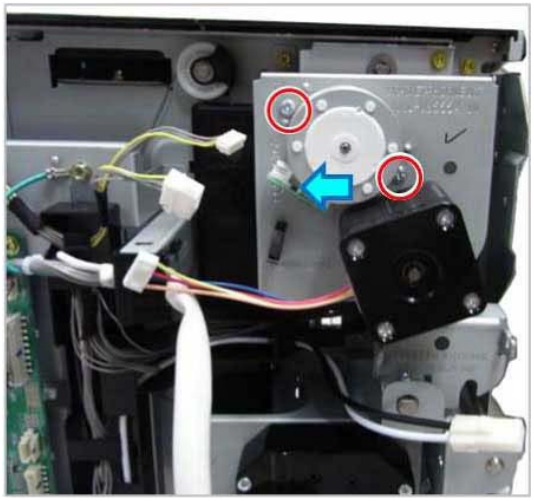


Remove the side HCI pickup motor

Follow these steps to remove the side HCI pickup motor.

▲ Disconnect the motor connector. Remove two screws, and then replace the pickup motor.

Figure 2-1107 Pickup motor



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.
   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Removal and replacement: Side HCI feed motor

Learn how to remove and replace the side HCI feed motor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the side HCI feed motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-169 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00163A	Side HCI feed motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

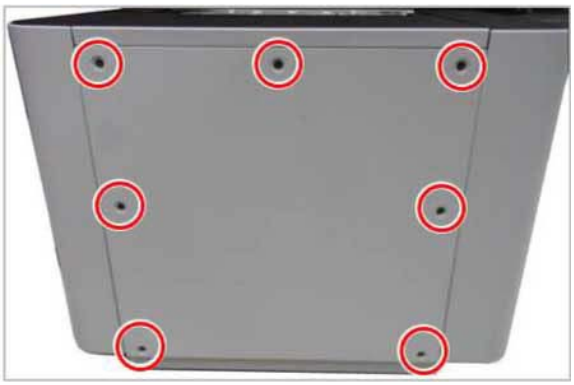
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the side HCI right cover

Follow these steps to remove the side HCI right cover.

- Remove seven screw caps and seven screws, and then remove the sHCI right cover.

Figure 2-1108 Right sHCI cover

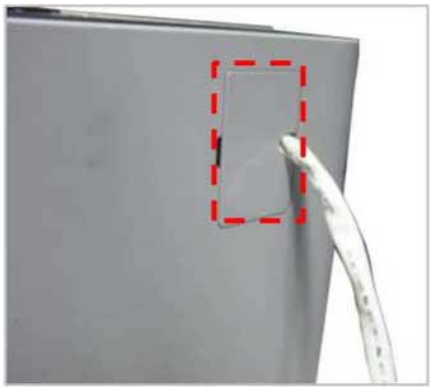


Remove the side HCI cable cover

Follow these steps to remove the side HCI cable cover.

- Remove the side HCI cable cover.

Figure 2-1109 Remove the sHCI cable cover

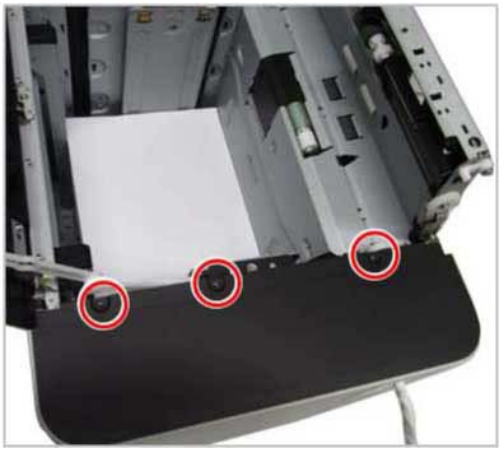


Remove the side HCI rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the side HCI rear cover.

- Remove three screws from the top, and then remove the sHCI rear cover.

Figure 2-1110 Remove the sHCI rear cover

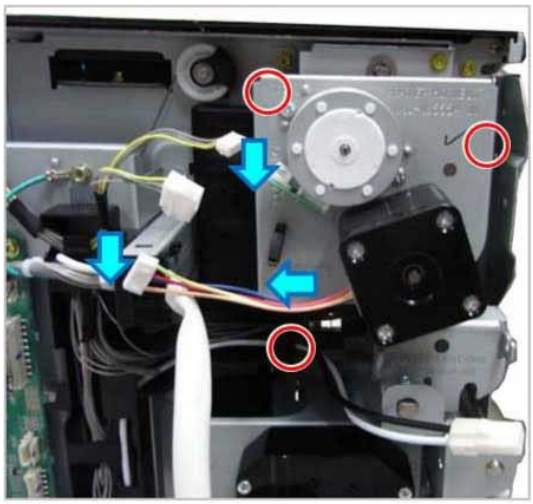


Remove the side HCI feed motor

Follow these steps to remove the side HCI feed motor.

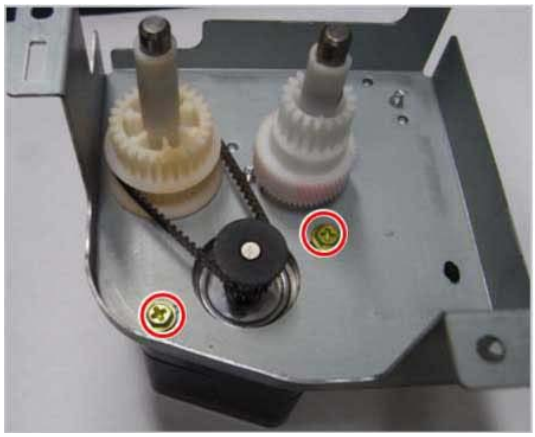
1. Disconnect two connectors. Open the cable clamp. Remove three screws, and then remove the Drive-PH

Figure 2-1111 Drive PH



2. Remove two screws, and then replace the feed motor.

Figure 2-1112 Feed motor



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.

   a. Dispose of the defective part.

   NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

   http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

   b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

   CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

   If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

   IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

   c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

   When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

   a. Save all packaging for recycling.

   b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

Removal and replacement: Side HCI lift-up motor

Learn how to remove and replace the side HCI lift-up motor.

View a video of how to remove and replace the side HCI lift-up motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-170 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00109A	Side HCI lift-up motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

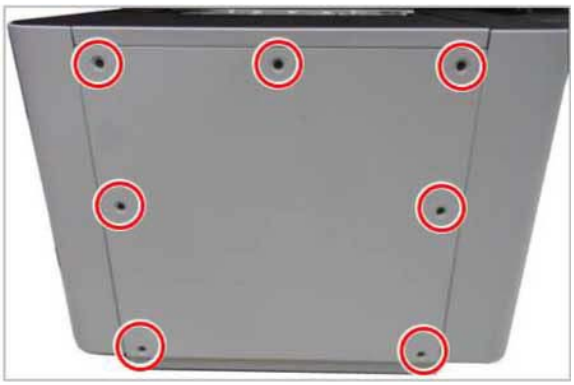
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the side HCI right cover

Follow these steps to remove the side HCI right cover.

- Remove seven screw caps and seven screws, and then remove the sHCI right cover.

Figure 2-1113 Right sHCI cover

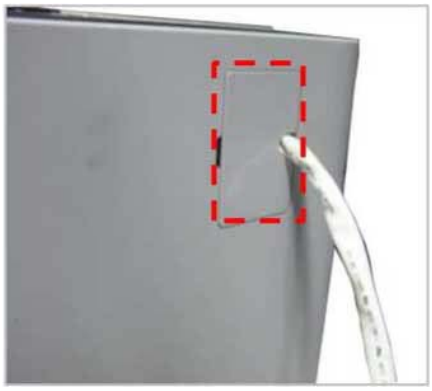


Remove the side HCI cable cover

Follow these steps to remove the side HCI cable cover.

- Remove the side HCI cable cover.

Figure 2-1114 Remove the sHCI cable cover

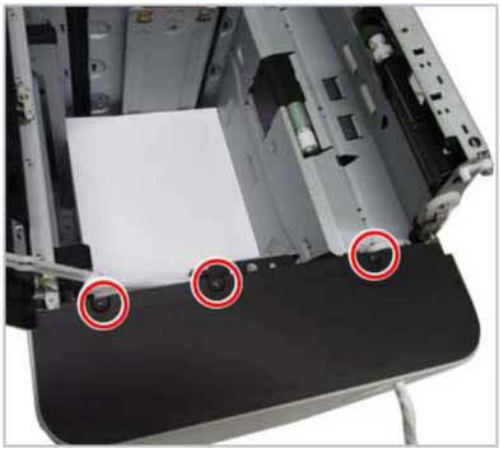


Remove the side HCI rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the side HCI rear cover.

- Remove three screws from the top, and then remove the sHCI rear cover.

Figure 2-1115 Remove the sHCI rear cover

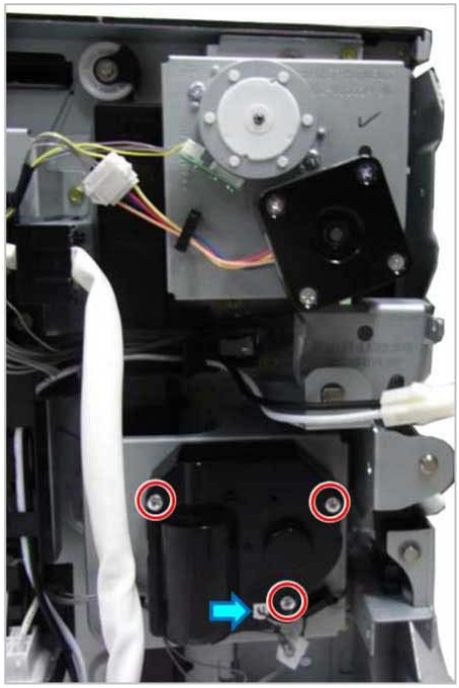


Remove the side HCI lift-up motor

Follow these steps to remove the side HCI lift-up motor.

▲ Disconnect the motor connector. Remove three screws, and then replace the sHCI lift-up motor.

Figure 2-1116 sHCI lift-up motor



1. Unpack the replacement assembly.
   a. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

b. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

c. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

2. Remove the accessory from its package.

a. Save all packaging for recycling.

b. For complete information about HP recycling programs, go to http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html.

3K sHCI main 5

Parts diagram and parts list for the 3K sHCI main 5.

Figure 2-1117 3K sHCI main 5

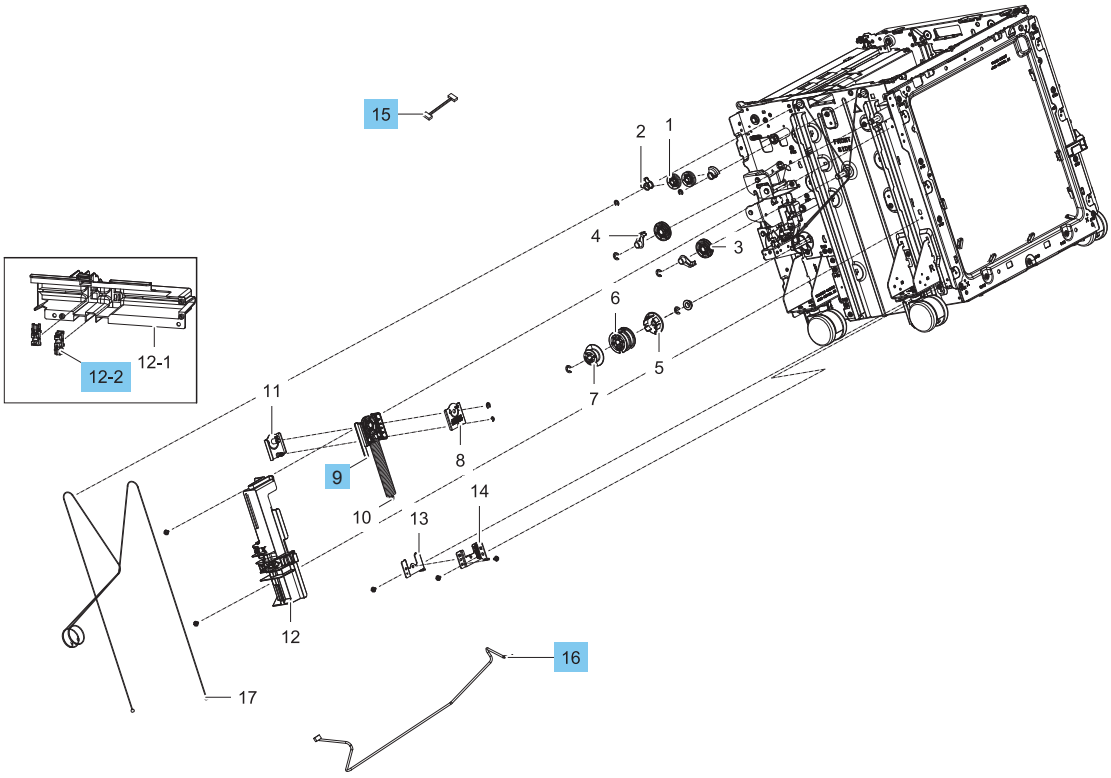


Table 2-171 3K sHCI main 5

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
9	JC66-04290A	Actuator SNS	1	Not applicable
12-2	0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	2	Not applicable
15	JC39-02291A	Connect sensor harness	1	Not applicable
16	JC39-02288A	Plow harness	1	Not applicable

3K sHCI main 6

Parts diagram and parts list for the 3K sHCI main 6.

Figure 2-1118 3K sHCI main 6

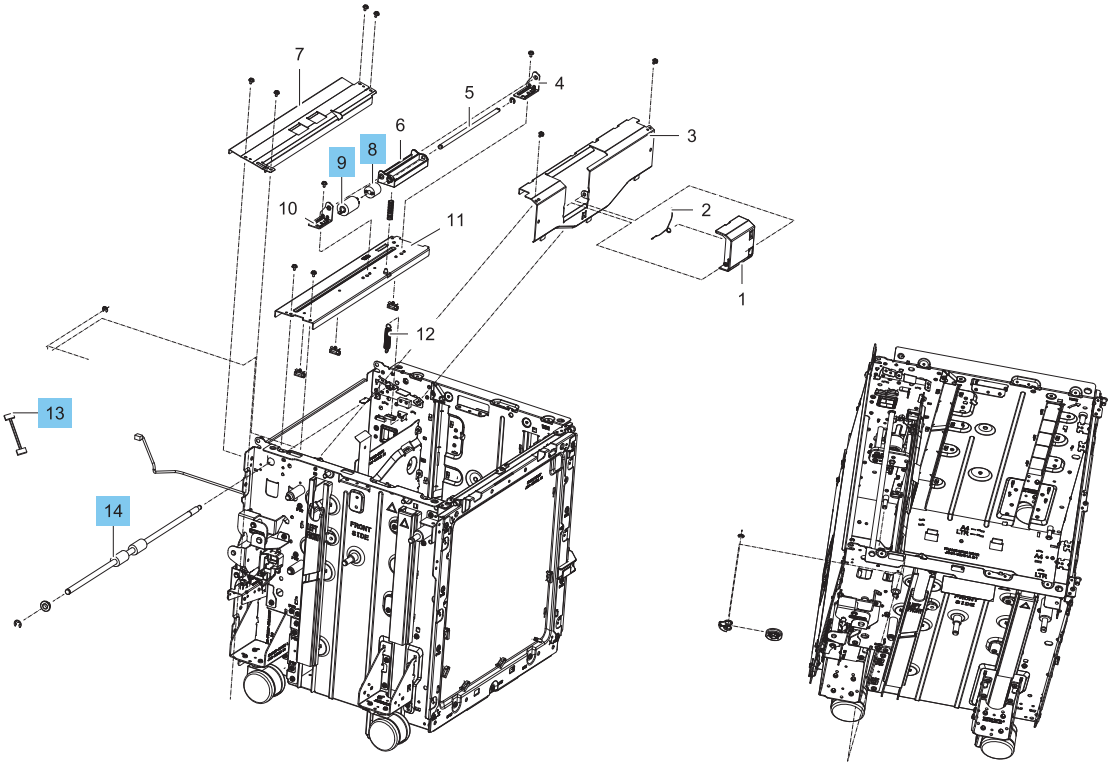


Table 2-172 3K sHCI main 6

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
8	JC67-00455A	Coupler, torque limiter	1	Not applicable
9	JC93-01092A	Frame, main pickup roller	1	Not applicable
13	JC39-02288A	Plow harness	1	Not applicable

Pickup cover unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the pickup cover unit

Figure 2-1119 Pickup cover unit

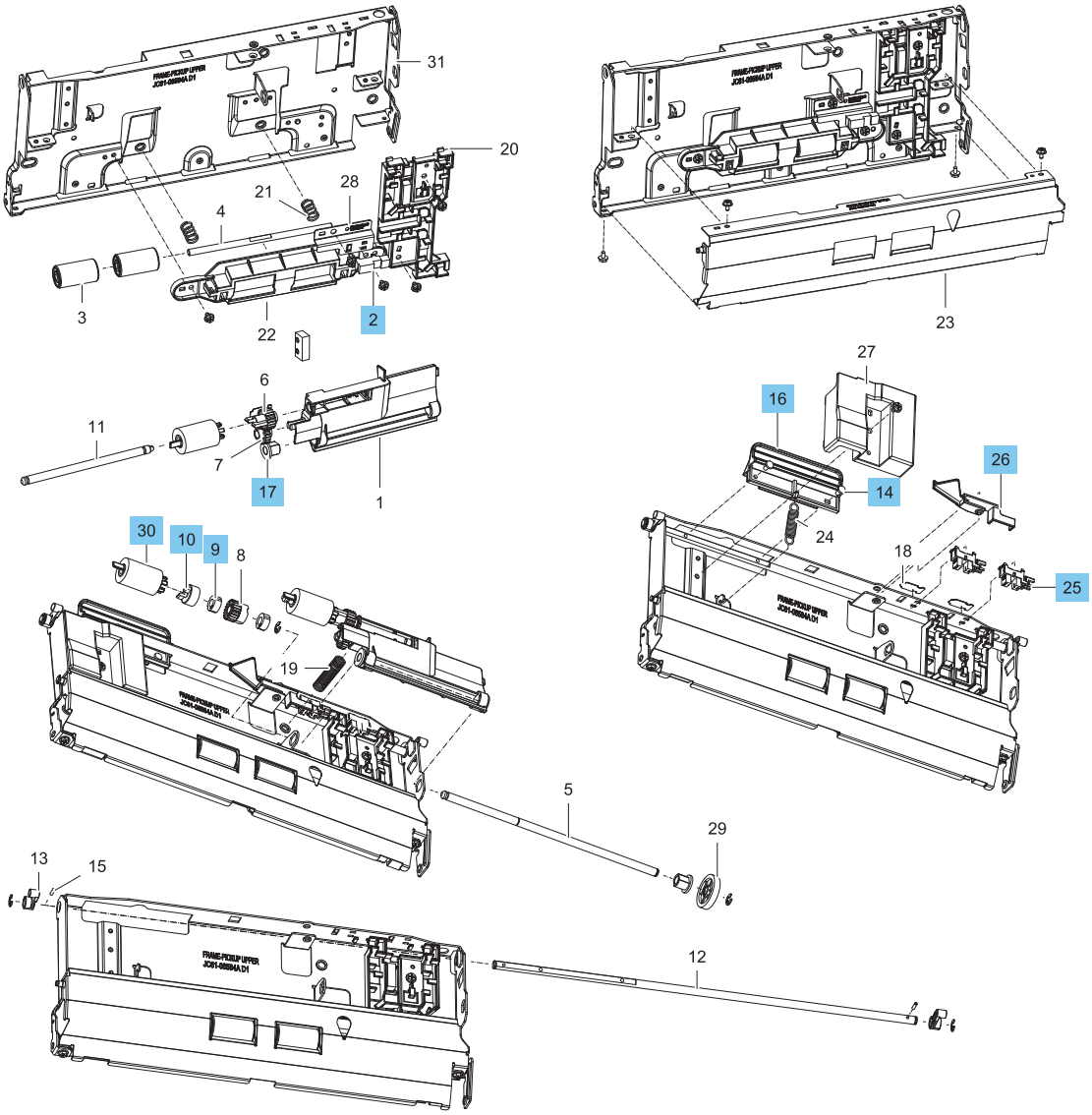


Table 2-173 Pickup cover unit

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
2	0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	1	Not applicable
9	JC66-00977A	Clutch, one way	2	Not applicable
10	JC61-01288A	Idle holder, one way	1	Not applicable
16	JC63-04799A	Pickup cover lever	1	Not applicable
17	JC61-00884A	Bush-6, D (L)	2	Not applicable
25	0604–001393	Photo-interrupter	2	Not applicable
26	JC66-04276A	Actuator, empty pickup	1	Not applicable
30	JC93-01092A	Frame, main pickup roller	3	Not applicable

3K sHCI frame

Parts diagram and parts list for the 3K sHCI frame

Figure 2-1120 3K sHCI frame

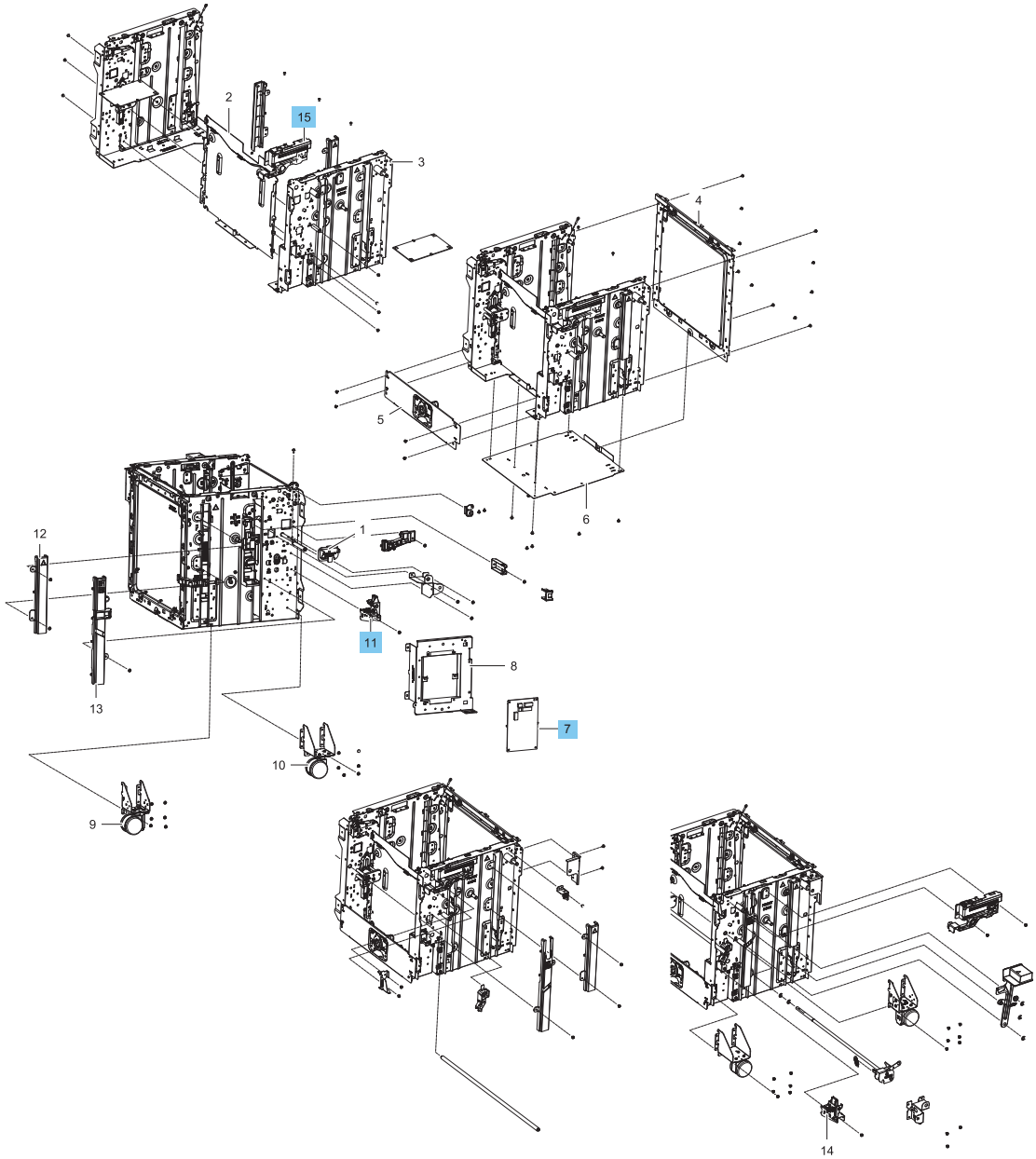


Table 2-174 3K sHCI frame

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty	Repair procedure
7	JC92-02738C	PCA - 3K sHCI	1	Not applicable
11	JC93-01124A	Assembly, frame latch rear sensor	1	Not applicable
14	JC93-01125A	Assy - frame latch sensor front	1	Not applicable
15	JC93-01123A	Assembly, frame interlock	1	Not applicable

3 Problem solving

Learn about problem solving.

Control panel messages (CPMD)

Learn about the printer control panel messages (CPMD).

Error codes

Error codes and control-panel messages display on the printer control panel to indicate the current printer status or situations that might require action. Error codes are numerical, or alphanumerical, and have a set structure with six characters (example: 13.WX.YZ).

- The first two characters are numeric and represent the system component that is causing the error. For example, in error code `10.22.15`, **10** = **Supplies** for HP LaserJets.
- The remaining four characters (W, X, Y, and Z values) further define the error.

HP LaserJet and HP PageWide Enterprise error codes are documented in the control panel message document (CPMD) for each printer.

The CPMD is a comprehensive list of error codes, diagnostic and troubleshooting steps to clear or resolve the error, and other helpful information such as service mode pins and part numbers.

The CPMD is continually updated and republished with the latest information for the following error codes.

Table 3-1 **ERROR CODES: The first two characters**

Error code	System Component	System Error Description
10.WX.YZ	Supplies (LaserJet)	Supply error or supply memory error.
11.WX.YZ	Real-time clock	Internal error with the clock on the formatter.
13.WX.YZ	Jam (LaserJet)	Paper jam or open door jam error.
15.WX.YZ	Jam (PageWide)	Paper jam or open door jam error.
17.WX.YZ	Supplies (PageWide)	Supply error or supply memory error.
20.WX.YZ	Printer memory	Insufficient memory or buffering error.
21.WX.YZ	Page	Page complexity causing a decompression error when trying to process job.
30.WX.YZ	Scanner	Flatbed scanner error occurring inside the unit.
31.WX.YZ	Document feeder	Document feeder, scanner, or jam error.
32.WX.YZ	Backup, restore, or reset	Backup, restore, or reset notification or error.
33.WX.YZ	Security	Backup, Disk, EFI BIOS, Firmware integrity (SureStart), or Trusted Platform Module (TPM) notification or error.
40.WX.YZ	Input/Output (I/O)	Partition manager, secure erase, or USB accessory error.
41.WX.YZ	Fuser, Laser scanner, or Paper path	Miscellaneous error including general and misprint or mismatch errors typically involving (but not limited to) the fuser, the laser scanner, or the paper path.

Table 3-1 ERROR CODES: The first two characters (continued)

Error code	System Component	System Error Description
42.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware failure involving the Event Log, Shell, System Manager, or other component.
44.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware failure involving a digital sending component.
45.WX.YZ	OXPd/Web Kit (PageWide)	Informational notifications involving the OXPd Web Kit (communications log).
46.WX.YZ	Engine (LaserJet)	Engine communication error.
47.WX.YZ	Firmware	Job parser or printer calibration error.
48.WX.YZ	Firmware	PJA job accounting, job management, or job pipeline error.
49.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware communication error.
50.WX.YZ	Fuser (LaserJet)	Fuser error.
51.WX.YZ	Laser scanner (LaserJet)	Laser scanner beam error.
52.WX.YZ	Laser scanner (LaserJet)	Laser scanner startup error.
54.WX.YZ	Sensor	Sensor error (not jam related).
55.WX.YZ	DC controller (LaserJet)	DC controller communication error.
56.WX.YZ	Paper handling (LaserJet)	Paper input/output or accessory error.
57.WX.YZ	Fan	Fan error.
58.WX.YZ	Sensor	Engine sensor failure.
59.WX.YZ	Motor (LaserJet)	Motor error.
60.WX.YZ	Tray motor error (LaserJet)	Tray lifting or pick up error.
61.WX.YZ	Engine (PageWide)	Print engine error with the 8–bit data package.
62.WX.YZ	System (LaserJet)	LaserJet internal system error.
	Print bar (PageWide)	PageWide print system error.
63.WX.YZ	Engine (LaserJet)	General engine error (electrical, communication, etc.).
65.WX.YZ	Connector	Output accessory connection error.
66.WX.YZ	Output accessory	Output accessory error.
67.WX.YZ	Input accessory	Input accessory connection error
69.WX.YZ	Duplexer	Duplexer error.
70.WX.YZ	DC controller (LaserJet)	DC controller firmware error.
80.WX.YZ	Managed device	Embedded Jetdirect error.
81.WX.YZ	Near Field Communication (NFC)	Wireless, Bluetooth or internal EIO error.
82.WX.YZ	Memory (hard disk, EMMC, etc.)	Disk hardware error.

Table 3-1 ERROR CODES: The first two characters (continued)

Error code	System Component	System Error Description
90.WX.YZ	Internal diagnostics	Internal test of systems (i.e. disk, CPB, display) or interconnection error.
98.WX.YZ	Hard disk	Hard disk partition error.
99.WX.YZ	Firmware installer	Remote Firmware Upgrade (RFU), firmware install (engine or accessory), or disk error.

How to search for printer documentation

Find printer documentation using the internal HP portals.

The CPMD, error codes, and other support documentation for each printer is found on the internal HP portals GCSN and WISE (formerly SAW). GCSN is available to HP channel partners and WISE is available to call agents, service technicians, and other HP internal users. The level of detail available will depend on your access credentials.

How to search WISE for printer documentation

These instructions are for HP internal use by call agents, service technicians, and other internal users. View a video of how to find support content in WISE.

To view a list of control panel message documents per printer in WISE, enter document ID **c05048451**, to locate CPMD list.

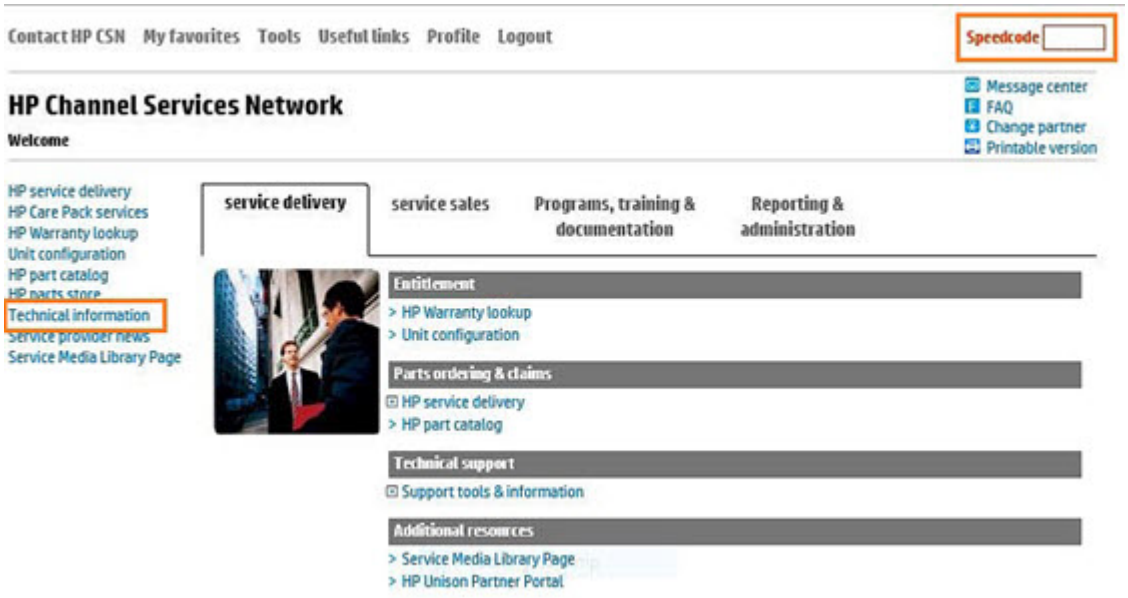
Go to WISE and enter this document ID **c05791539** for written instructions.

How to search GCSN for printer documentation

These instructions are for internal use by HP Channel Partners. View a video of how find support content in GCSN, or follow the steps below.

1. On the Home screen in GCSN, open **Technical information** using one of the following two methods:
   - Type **TINF** in the **Speedcode** field found in the upper right corner and press Enter, or
   - On the Home page, click **Technical information** in the left pane.

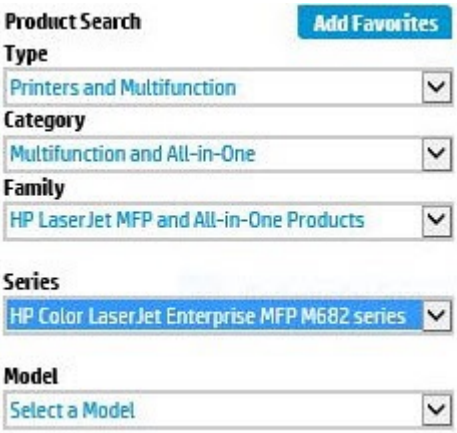
Figure 3-1 GCSN home page



2. Under **Product Search**, select the **Type**, **Category**, **Family**, and **Series** that match your product model (leave the **Model** field as blank or the default).

NOTE: Make sure to login to GCSN using your service-qualified credentials to access the most comprehensive content list available. To find out how to become service-qualified, contact your HP representative.

Figure 3-2 Sample product search criteria (GCSN)

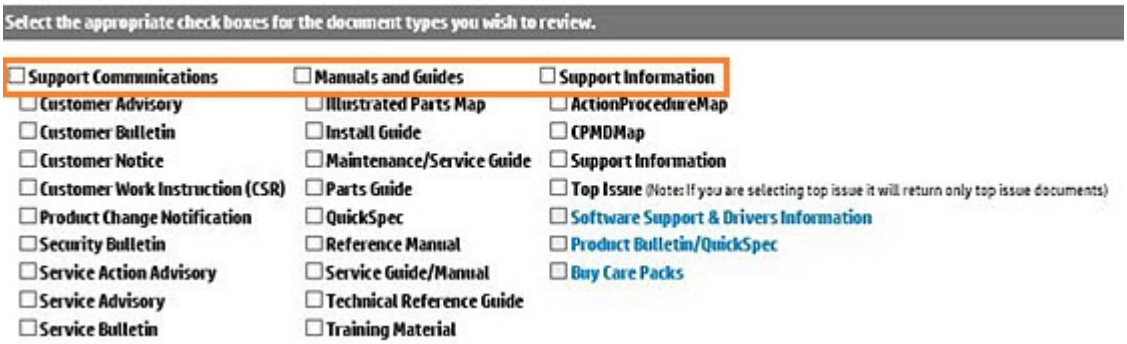


3. Click **Add Favorites** and then click **Add** to add the printer to your Favorites list and allow you to bypass the **Product Search** fields next time for that particular model (optional).

Figure 3-3 Add favorites (GCSN)

4. Clear all of the high-level check boxes.

Figure 3-4 Clear search criteria (GCSN)



5. Select the check boxes for the document types for which you want to search.

NOTE: Select only the high-level **Manuals and Guides** search option if you are not sure in which type of manual or guide the content might be listed.

Figure 3-5 Select search criteria (GCSN)

6. Select **Submit**.

7. If needed, click **Back To selection Criteria** and narrow your search (the maximum allowed search result is 100 documents).

NOTE: Do not select the **Top Issue** option unless you only want to view top issues for that model. All other available content is filtered out.

Table 3-2 Information type selections

Technical information type	Select this checkbox
Control panel message document (CPMD)	CPMD-Map
List of all CPMDs per product	Support Information
Installation Guide or Hardware Install Guide	Maintenance/Service Guide or Install Guide
Service cost document	Install Guide or Service Guide/Manual
Service guide or Service manual	Service Guide/Manual
Self-solve or troubleshooting document	Support Information
User manual or User guide	User Guide
Warranty and Legal Guide	Warranty Statement

Troubleshooting process

Learn about the troubleshooting process.

Determine the problem source

When the printer malfunctions or encounters an unexpected situation, the printer control panel alerts you to the situation. This section contains a pre-troubleshooting checklist to filter out many possible causes of the problem. A troubleshooting flowchart helps you diagnose the root cause of the problem. The remainder of this chapter provides steps for correcting problems.

- Use the troubleshooting flowchart to pinpoint the root cause of hardware malfunctions. The flowchart guides you to the section of this chapter that contains steps for correcting the malfunction.

Before beginning any troubleshooting procedure, check the following issues:

- Are supply items within their rated life?
- Are supply items Genuine HP supplies?
- Does the configuration page reveal any configuration errors?

NOTE: The customer or service provider is responsible for checking supplies and for using supplies that are in good condition.

Power subsystem

Learn about the power subsystem.

Power-on checks

The basic printer functions should start up when the printer is connected into an electrical outlet and the power switch is pushed to the *on* position. If the printer does not start, use the information in this section to isolate and solve the problem.

If the control-panel display remains blank, random patterns display, or asterisks remain on the control-panel display, perform power-on checks to find the cause of the problem.

Power-on troubleshooting overview

If the control panel is blank 1 minute after turning on the printer, check the following items:

During normal operation, a cooling fan begins to spin briefly after the printer power is turned on. Place your hand over the vents at the rear of the printer, next to the formatter, or on the on the rear of the scanner. If the fan is operating, you will feel air passing out of the printer. You can lean close to the printer and hear the fan operating.

A fan begins to blow on the right door (fuser), and then the control panel goes through a series of set up functions. The main motor turns on (unless the left door or cartridge access door is open, a jam condition is sensed, or the paper-path sensors are damaged). You might be able to visually and audibly determine if the main motor is turned on.

If the fan and main motor are operating correctly, the next troubleshooting step is to isolate print engine, formatter, and control panel problems.

1. Make sure that the printer is connected directly into an active electrical outlet (not a power strip) that delivers the correct voltage.
2. Make sure that the power switch is in the *on* position, and then verify that the LED is on.
3. Make sure that the fan runs briefly, which indicates that the power supply is operational.
4. Depress the button on the back of the control panel to test the control panel functionality.
5. Make sure that the control-panel display wire harness is connected.
6. Remove any external solutions, and then try to turn the printer on again.

Troubleshooting a blank display, black display, no display, or no power situation

Customers usually report that the control-panel display is not showing anything. It is very important to collect as much information as possible from the customer about the issue to help resolve it.

Following are some printer behaviors the customer might encounter:

- The control panel is completely blank (no LEDs or back light).
- The control panel is blank, but there might be LEDs illuminated.
- The control panel is blank (LEDs are on or flashing) and the back light is on (but no text visible).

Following are some possible causes of a blank control-panel display:

- No power to the printer.
- The control panel contrast setting is not correctly adjusted.
- The formatter connector(s) are not fully seated into the connector(s) on the DC controller, or the connectors are not fully seated on the formatter.
- A faulty component is installed on the formatter (for example a memory DIMM, fax PCA, network PCA, USB device, or other component).
- The formatter is defective.
- The control panel connector is not fully seated, or the control panel is defective.
- The DC controller is defective.

Following are some questions to ask the customer:

- Was the printer newly install or has the printer been properly functioning?
  - For a new install, investigate to see if there was any shipping damage to the printer.
  - Did the customer notice any damage to the shipping box or any visible damage to the printer?
- What happened just prior to the control panel going blank?
  - Was the printer serviced recently, a power outage occurred?
  - Has a lightning storm recently occurred?
  - Did the customer recently add a memory DIMM or install a third-party component?
- Make sure to get a complete description of the failure.
  - Is the control-panel display completely blank (might be faint text and no back light)?
  - Is the control-panel display back light on?
  - Has a print job been sent to the printer? The customer might report that their print jobs seemed to print but when they go to the printer the control-panel display is blank.

Recommended actions

If the control-panel display is completely blank (no LEDs illuminated or no back light) check to see if the printer is getting power. Listen for fans or any printer initialization sounds when the power is turned on.

If there are no signs of power, then perform the following:

1. Make sure that the printer is plugged directly into an active electrical outlet (not a power strip or interruptible power supply) that delivers the correct voltage.

TIP: Try using a different power cable if possible.

2. Turn the printer power on, and make sure that the fan(s) run briefly (this indicates that the power supply is operational).
3. Check if the yellow LED on formatter is flashing. If so, there is a communication issue between the formatter and the control panel.
4. Turn the printer power off.
5. Make sure that the control-panel display wire harness (and/or flat cable) is properly connected (and fully seated), and then turn the printer power on again.
6. Check control panel diagnostics by pressing the button on the back of the control panel to run different diagnostic tests.
7. Verify the status LEDs are illuminated, but the control-panel display is blank. If applicable: Check if the contrast setting is adjusted to very low. If so, try turning the contrast knob to see if the control-panel display becomes visible.
8. From a host computer, send a print job to the printer.

NOTE: If the print job correctly prints, then the problem is most likely to a defective control panel.

9. Turn the printer power off, and then make sure that the memory DIMM is installed in the correct slot and is fully seated.

NOTE: For some printers, there may be more than one memory DIMM installed. Some printers have third-party solutions/applications or fonts that use memory.

10. Remove all of the components/accessories installed on the formatter (for example, hard drive, solid-state drive, memory DIMM(s), fax PCA, network PCA, USB devices, or other devices).
    - Make sure that the formatter is fully seated.

      IMPORTANT: This is important because the formatter or a component on the formatter might be defective or shorted, which causes the printer to lose power.

11. Reinstall the formatter. Make sure that it makes a good connection and is fully seated.

    Make sure that all of the connectors on the formatter are correctly connected and fully seated.

12. Turn the printer power on, and then check the control-panel display.
13. If the printer control panel is properly working, replace each removed component (one at a time) to determine which one is causing the problem.

CAUTION: Turn the printer power off, and then on again, after replacing a component on the formatter.

14. If the control-panel display is still blank after performing the above troubleshooting steps, and the control panel diagnostics do not function, replace the control panel. If the control panel diagnostics are functioning, then replace the formatter.

Control panel checks

Learn about the control panel checks.

Control panel diagnostic flowcharts

Learn about the control panel diagnostic flowcharts.

Use the flowcharts in this section to troubleshoot the following control panel problems.

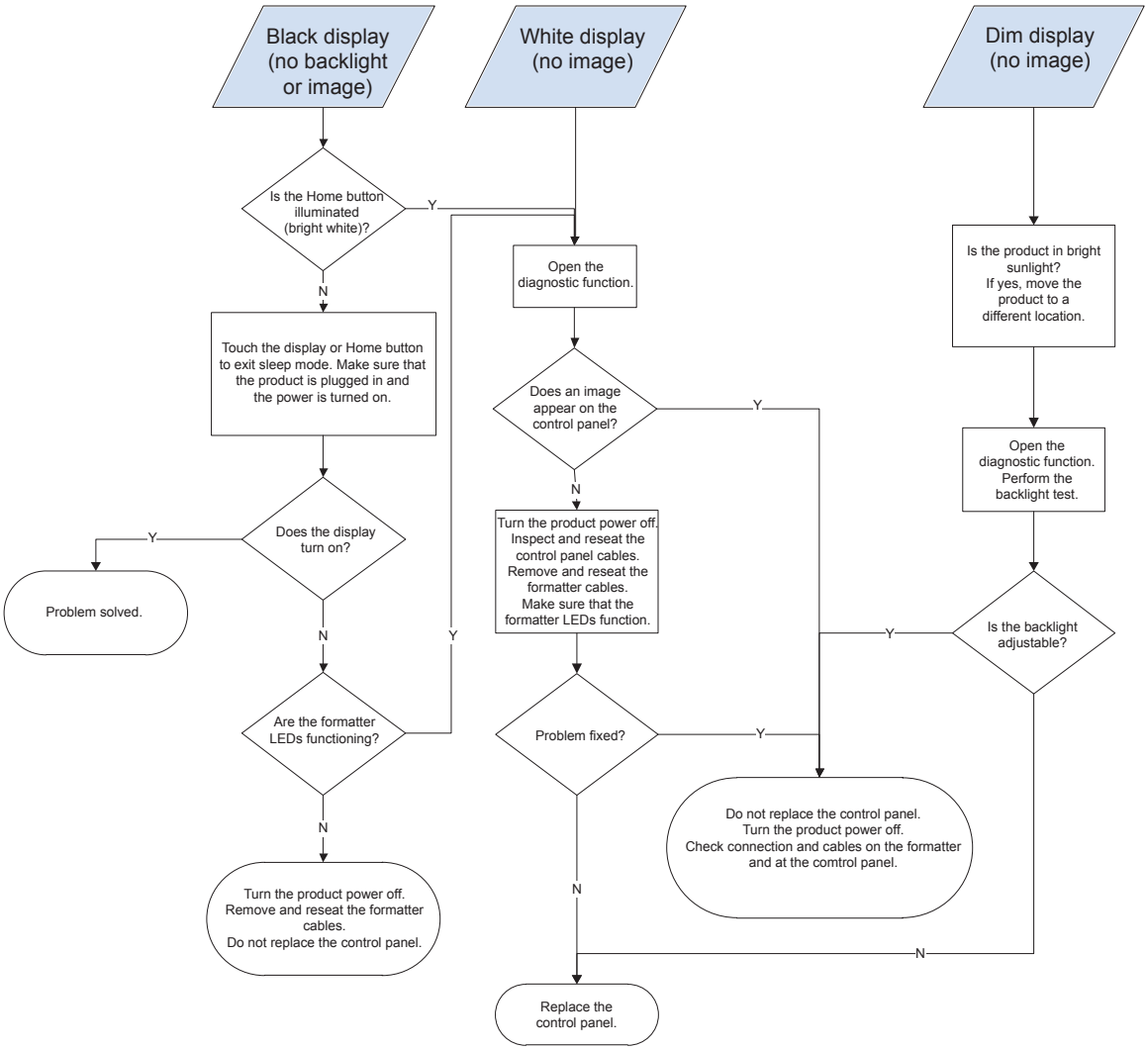
- Touchscreen is blank, white, or dim (no image).
- Touchscreen is slow to respond or requires multiple presses to respond.
- Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone.
- No control panel sound.
- Home button is unresponsive.
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional).

Touchscreen black, white, or dim (no image)

Learn about the touchscreen black, white, or dim (no image).

NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

Figure 3-6 Touchscreen blank, white, or dim (no image)

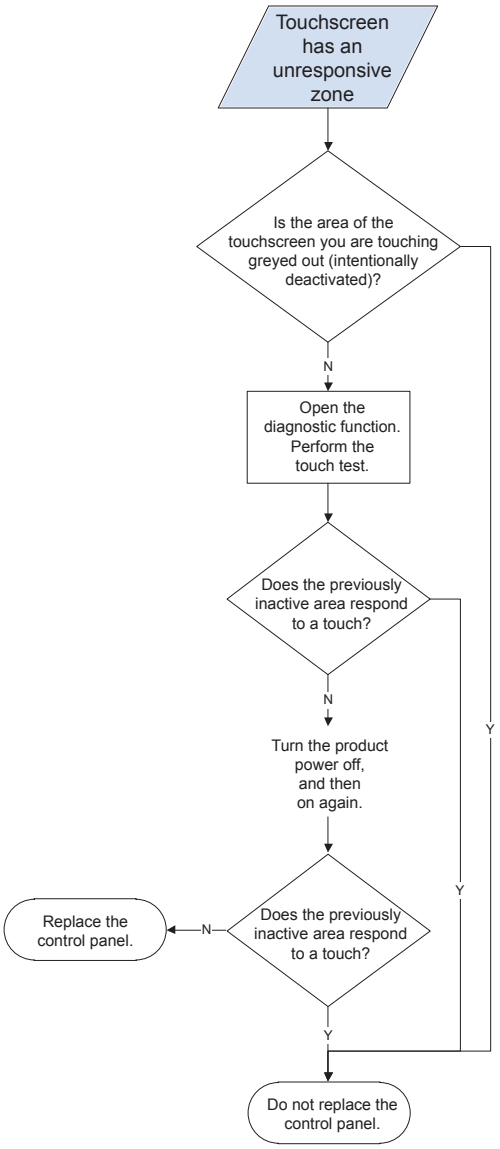


Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone

Learn about how the touchscreen has an unresponsive zone.

NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

Figure 3-7 Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone

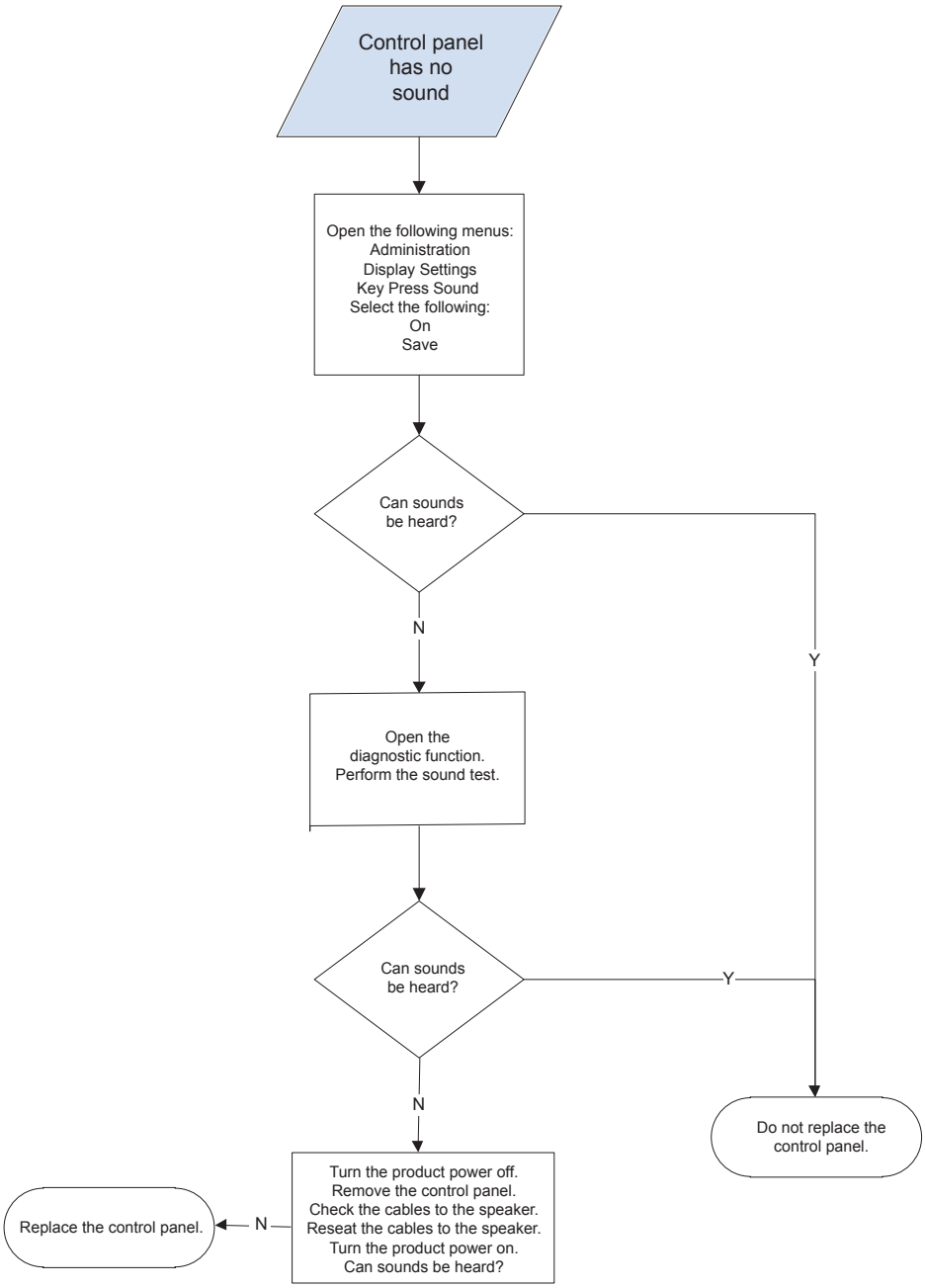


No control panel sound

Learn what to do when there is no control panel sound.

NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

Figure 3-8 No control panel sound

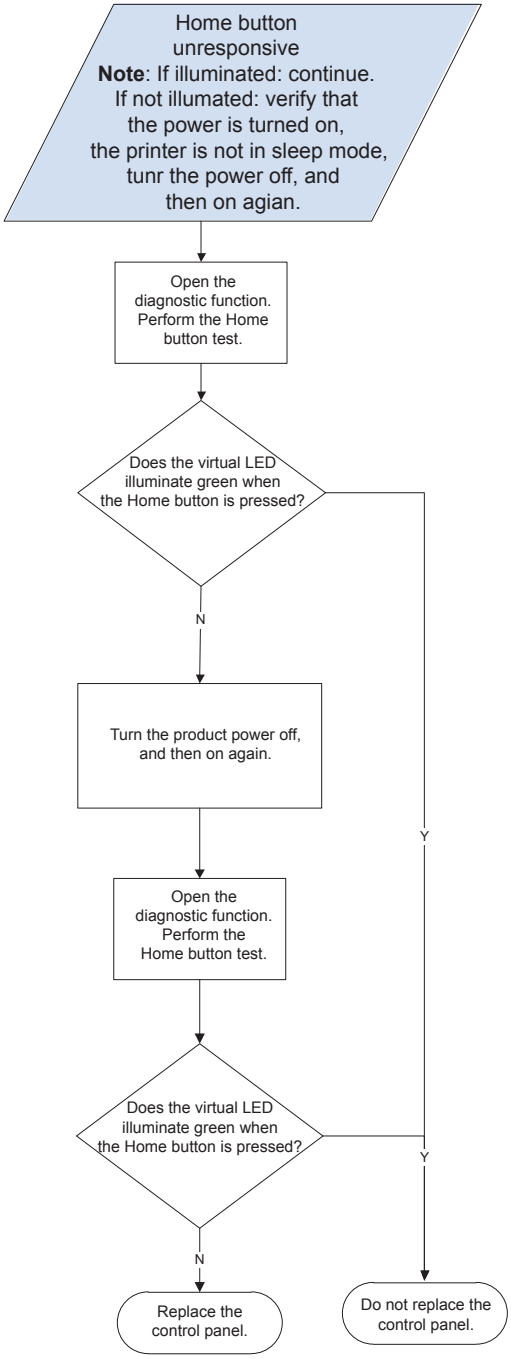


Home button is unresponsive

Learn what to do when the home button is unresponsive.

NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

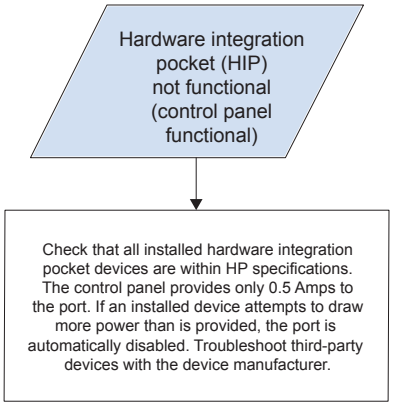
Figure 3-9 Home button is unresponsive



Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional)

Learn about when the hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional).

Figure 3-10 Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional)



Individual component diagnostics

Learn about individual component diagnostics.

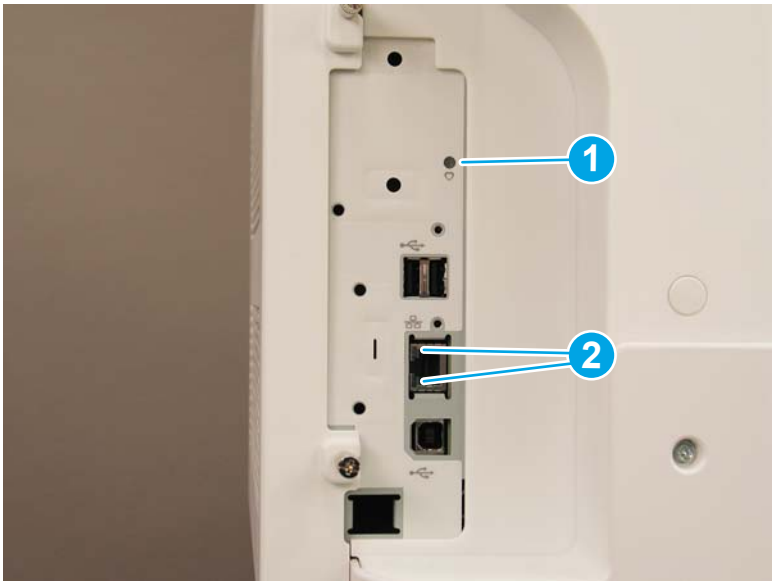
Tools for troubleshooting: LED diagnostics

LED, engine, and individual diagnostics can identify and troubleshoot printer problems.

Understand lights on the formatter

Three LEDs on the formatter indicate that the printer is functioning correctly.

Figure 3-11 LEDs



1	Heartbeat LED
2	HP Jetdirect LEDs

HP Jetdirect LEDs

Learn about the HP Jetdirect LEDs.

The embedded HP Jetdirect print server has two LEDs. The yellow LED indicates network activity, and the green LED indicates the link status. A blinking yellow LED indicates network traffic. If the green LED is off, a link has failed.

For link failures, check all the network cable connections. In addition, try to manually configure the link settings on the embedded print server by using the printer control-panel menus.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select **Settings**.
2. Open the following menus:
   - **Networking**
   - **Ethernet**
   - **Link Speed**
3. Select the appropriate link speed, and then select **OK**.

Tools for troubleshooting: Engine diagnostics

The printer contains extensive internal engine diagnostics that help in troubleshooting print quality, paper path, noise, assembly, and timing issues.

Defeating interlocks

Different tests can be used to isolate different types of issues. For assembly or noise isolation, run the diagnostic test when the toner cartridge door or right door is open.

Defeating the door interlocks allows observation of the paper pick operation (and view the page enter registration).

⚠ **WARNING!** Be careful when performing printer diagnostics to avoid risk of injury. Only trained service personnel should open and run the diagnostics with a door open. Never touch any of the power supplies when the printer is turned on.

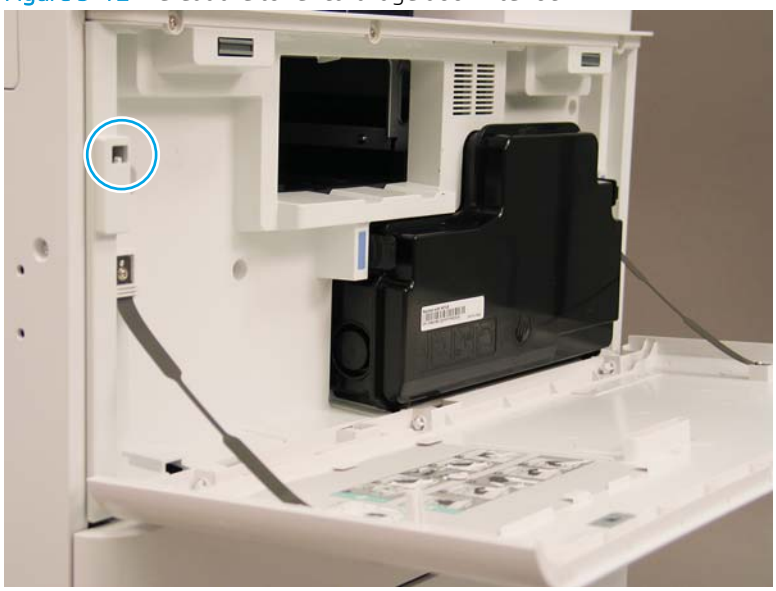
Defeat the toner cartridge door interlock

Learn how to defeat the toner cartridge door interlock.

1. Open the toner cartridge door.
2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.

TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into two 10 mm (.375 in) strips, and insert the strips into the slot for the cartridge door logic switches.

Figure 3-12 Defeat the toner cartridge door interlock



Defeat the front door interlock

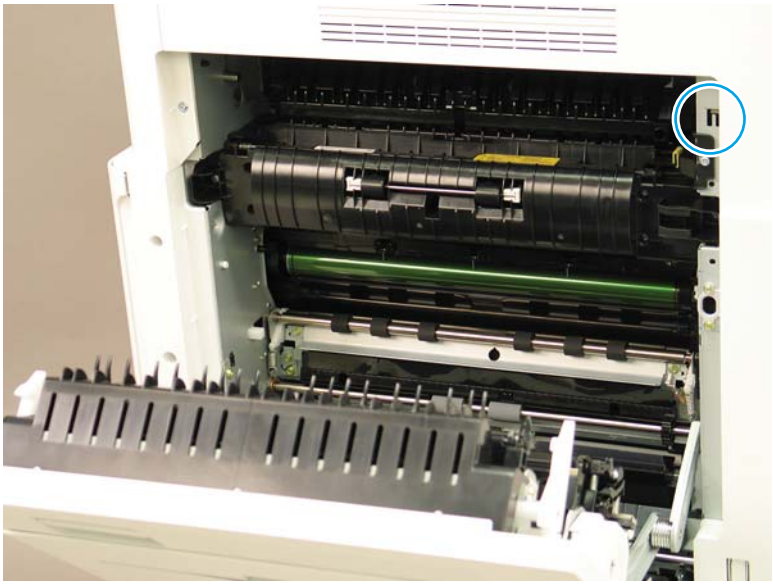
Learn how to defeat the front door interlock.

1. Open the front door.

2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.

TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into two 10 mm (.375 in) strips, and insert the strips into the slot for the front door logic switches.

Figure 3-13 Defeat the front door interlock



Tools for troubleshooting

Use the procedure below to test various printer mechanical and electromechanical assemblies.

Individual component diagnostics (special-mode test)

Learn about the individual component diagnostics (special-mode test).

This test activates individual parts independently to isolate problems.

Each component test can be performed once or repeatedly.

Each component test can be performed once or repeatedly.

NOTE: The cartridge door interlocks must be defeated to run the component tests.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Select one of the following tests:
   - Continuous Scan
   - Run Fax Test
3. Select the component test options for the test.

Tools for troubleshooting

Learn about tools for troubleshooting.

Problem-solving checklist

Follow these steps when trying to solve a problem with the printer.

Step 1: Check that the printer power is on

Learn how to check that the printer power is on.

1. Make sure that the printer is plugged in and turned on. The power button should be lit with a white light. If it is not, press the power button. If the power button does not light up, check the following conditions.
   - Make sure that the power cable is connected to the printer and the outlet.
   - Check the power source by connecting the power cable to a different outlet.
2. If the printer motors do not rotate, make sure that the toner cartridges are installed and that the doors are all closed. The control panel displays messages to indicate these problems.

Step 2: Check the control panel for error messages

Learn how to check the control panel for error messages.

The control panel should indicate ready status. If an error message appears, resolve the error.

Print a supplies status page to ensure that the supplies are not at or over end of life.

NOTE: HP long-life consumable and maintenance kit life specifications are estimations. Actual individual life or yield during normal use will vary depending on usage, environment, media, and other factors. Estimated life is not an implied warranty.

Step 3: Test print functionality

Learn how to test print functionality.

1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the Reports button.
2. Open the Reports menu, touch the Configuration/Status Pages menu, select the Configuration Page item, and then touch the Print button to print the report.
3. If the report does not print, make sure that paper is loaded in the tray, and check the control panel to see if paper is jammed inside the printer.

NOTE: Make sure that the paper in the tray meets specifications for this printer.

Step 4: Test copy functionality

Learn how to test copy functionality.

1. Place the configuration page into the ADF and make a copy. If paper does not feed smoothly through the ADF, you might need to clean the ADF rollers and separation pad. Make sure that the paper meets specifications for this printer.
2. Place the configuration page onto the scanner glass and make a copy.
3. If the print quality on the copied pages is not acceptable, clean the scanner glass and the small glass strip.

Step 5: Test the fax sending functionality

Learn how to test the fax sending functionality.

1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the Troubleshooting menu, and then open the Diagnostics Tools menu. Touch the Run Fax Test button to test the fax functionality.
3. Touch the Fax on the printer control panel, and then touch the Start Fax button.

Step 6: Test the fax receiving functionality

Learn how to test the fax receiving functionality.

1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the Support Tools button.
2. Touch the Troubleshooting menu, and then open the Diagnostics Tests menu. Touch the Run Fax Test button to test the fax functionality.
3. Use another fax machine to send a fax to the printer.
4. Review and reset the printer fax settings.

Step 7: Try sending a print job from a computer

Learn how to try sending a print job from a computer.

1. Use a word-processing program to send a print job to the printer.
2. If the job does not print, make sure that you selected the correct printer driver.
3. Uninstall and then reinstall the printer software.

Step 8: Test the Plug and Print USB Drive printing functionality

Learn how to test the plug and print USB drive printing functionality.

1. Load a .PDF document or .JPEG photo onto a USB flash drive, and insert it in the USB port near the control panel.
2. The USB Flash Drive menu opens. Try printing the document or photo.
3. If no documents are listed, try a different type of USB flash drive.

Factors that affect printer performance

Several factors affect the time it takes to print a job:

- The software program that you are using and its settings
- The use of special paper (such as heavy paper or custom-size paper)
- Printer processing and download time
- The complexity and size of graphics
- The speed of the computer you are using
- The USB or network connection

- Whether the printer is printing in color or in monochrome
- The type of USB drive, if you are using one
- Environmental factors, such as low temperature or high humidity

Print menu map

Learn how to print the menu map.

To more easily navigate individual settings, print a report of the complete Reports menu.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Reports button.
2. Open the Configuration/Status Pages menu.
3. Select the Settings Menu Map option.
4. Touch the Print button to print the report.

TIP: Multiple report pages can be selected, and then printed together.

Print current settings pages

Learn how to print current settings pages.

Printing the current settings page provides a map of the user configurable settings that might be helpful in the troubleshooting process.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Reports button.
2. Open the Configuration/Status Pages menu.
3. Select the Current Settings Page option.
4. Touch the Print button to print the report.

TIP: Multiple report pages can be selected, and then printed together.

Print event log

Printing the event log might be helpful in the troubleshooting process. For more information, see the Interpret control-panel messages and event log entries section in the printer troubleshooting manual.

Print the event log from the Reports menu from a touchscreen control panel

Learn how to print the event log from the Reports menu from a touchscreen control panel.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the following menus:
   - Troubleshooting
   - Event Log
3. The event log displays on the screen. To print it, touch the Print button.

Print the event log from the Service menu from a touchscreen control panel

Learn how to print the event log from the Service menu from a touchscreen control panel.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the Service menu.
3. Enter the following service access code for the printer:
   - Access code: 04082517
4. Touch the Event Log item.

Clear the event log from a touchscreen control panel

Learn how to clear the event log from a touchscreen control panel.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the Service menu.
3. On the sign-in screen, select the Service Access Code option from the drop-down list.
4. Enter the following service access code for the printer:
   - Access code: 04082517
5. Select the trash icon to clear the event log.

Pre-boot menu options

The Pre-boot menus are available prior to the printer initializing.

⚠ CAUTION: The Format Disk option (printers with a hard-disk drive only) performs a disk initialization for the entire disk. The operating system, firmware files, and third party files (among other files) will be completely lost. HP does not recommend this action.

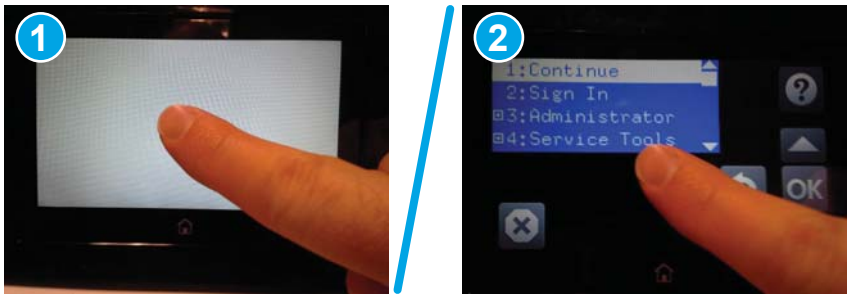
TIP: The Pre-boot menu can be remotely accessed by using a telnet network protocol to establish an administration connection to the printer. See Remote Admin on page 1048.

Open the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel

Learn how to open the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel.

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo.

Figure 3-14 Open the Pre-boot menu



2. On the Pre-boot menu screen, use the following buttons to navigate the tests.

Figure 3-15 Pre-boot menu

	Use this button to see more information about a selected item.
	Use this button to scroll up through menu items.
	Use this button to select a highlighted menu item.
	Use this button to scroll down through menu items.
	Use this button to go back to the previous menu.
	Not used.
	Use this button to exit a diagnostic test.

3. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to navigate the Pre-boot menu.
4. Touch the OK button to select a menu item.

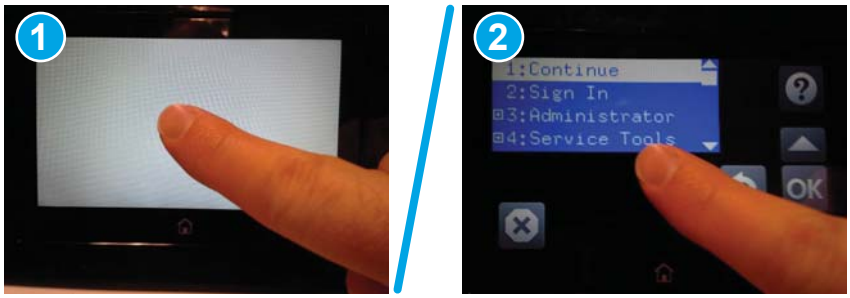
Cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel

Learn how to cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel.

⚠ CAUTION: This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo.

Figure 3-16 Open the Pre-boot menu



2. Use the button to highlight the +3:Administrator item, and then touch the OK button.
3. Use the button to highlight the +8:Startup Options item, and then touch the OK button.
4. Use the button to highlight the 2 Cold Reset item, and then touch the OK button to select it.
5. Touch the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the 1:Continue item, and then touch the OK button.

NOTE: The printer will initialize.

NOTE: Some of the pre-boot options in the following tables are not supported by the current version of the printer firmware and are included for information only. Future versions of firmware will support these options.

Table 3-3 Pre-boot menu options (1 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Continue				Selecting the Continue item exits the Pre-boot menu and continues the normal boot process. If a selection is not made in the initial menu within 30 seconds, the printer returns to a normal boot (the same as selecting Continue). If the user navigates to another menu, the timeout does not apply.
Sign In				Enter the administrator PIN or service PIN if one is required to open the Pre-boot menu.
Administrator				This item navigates to the Administrator submenus. If authentication is required (and the user is not already signed in) the Sign In prompt displays. The user is required to sign in.
	Download	Network USB USB Thumbdrive		This item initiates a Pre-boot firmware download process. A USB Thumbdrive option will work on all FutureSmart printers. USB or Network connections are not currently supported.

Table 3-3 Pre-boot menu options (1 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
	Format Disk			This item reinitializes the disk and cleans all disk partitions. CAUTION: Selecting the Format Disk item removes **all** data. A delete confirmation prompt is **not** provided. The system is **not** bootable after this action and a **99.09.67** error displays on the control panel. A firmware download must be performed to return the system to a bootable state.
	Partial Clean			This item reinitializes the disk (removing all data except the firmware repository where the master firmware bundle is downloaded and saved). CAUTION: Selecting the Partial Clean item removes **all** data except the firmware repository. A delete confirmation prompt is **not** provided. CAUTION: This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost). This allows a user to reformat the disk by removing the firmware image from the active directory without having to download new firmware code (printer remains bootable).
	Change Password			Select this item to set or change the administrator password.
	Clear Password			Select the Clear Password item to remove a password from the Administrator menu. Before the password is actually cleared, a message will be shown asking to confirm that the password should be cleared. Press the OK button to confirm the action. When the confirmation prompt displays, press the OK button to clear the password.

Table 3-4 Pre-boot menu options (2 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Manage Disk	Clear disk		Select the Clear disk item to enable using an external device for job storage. Job storage is normally enabled only for the Boot device. This will be grayed out unless the **99.09.68** error is displayed.
		Lock Disk		Select the Lock Disk item to lock (mate) a new secure disk to this printer. The secure disk already locked to this printer will remain accessible to this printer. Use this function to have more than one encrypted disk accessible by the printer when using them interchangeably. The data stored on the secure disk locked to this printer always remains accessible to this printer.

Table 3-4 Pre-boot menu options (2 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
		Leave Unlocked		Select the Leave Unlocked item to use a new secure disk in an unlocked mode for a single service event. The secure disk that is already locked to this printer will remain accessible to this printer and uses the old disk's encryption password with the new disk. The secure disk that is already locked to this printer remains accessible to this printer.
		Clear Disk Pwd		Select the Clear Disk Pwd item to continue using the non-secure disk and clear the password associated with the yet-to-be installed secure disk. CAUTION: Data on the missing secure disk will be permanently inaccessible.
		Retain Password		Select the Retain Password item to use the non-secure disk for this session only, and then search for the missing secure disk in future sessions.
		Boot Device	Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command is a one-pass overwrite, which erases the entire disk including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
			Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all data on the disk and unlock the disk to allow a user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. It erases the encryption key. The encryption key is erased, so the disk becomes a non-encrypted disk.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.

Table 3-5 Pre-boot menu options (3 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Manage Disk (continued)	Internal Device		Select the Internal Device item to erase the internal device or get a status about the internal device.
			Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command erases the entire disk, including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.

Table 3-5 Pre-boot menu options (3 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
			Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all of the data on disk and unlock the disk to allow the user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The HP High Performance Secure Hard Disk is erased.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.
		External Device		Select the External Device item to erase the external device or get status about the external device.
			Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command erases the entire disk, including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
			Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all of the data on disk and unlock the disk to allow a user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The encryption key is erased, so the disk becomes a non-encrypted disk.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.

Table 3-6 Pre-boot menu options (4 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Configure LAN NOTE: This configuration is only active when the Pre-boot menu is open.	IP Mode [DHCP]		The network can be configured to obtain the network settings from a DHCP server or as static. Use this item for automatic IP address acquisition from the DHCP server.
		IP Mode [STATIC]		Use this item to manually assign the network addresses.
			IP Address	Use this item to manually enter the IP addresses.
			Subnet Mask	Use this item to manually enter the subnet mask.
			Default Gateway	Use this item to manually enter the default gateway.
			Save	Select the Save item to save the manual settings.

Table 3-7 Pre-boot menu options (5 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Startup Options			Select the Startup Options item to specify options that can be set for the next time the printer is turned on and initializes to the **Ready** state.
		Show Revision		**Not currently functional**: Select the Show Revision item to allow the printer to initialize and show the firmware version when the printer reaches the **Ready** state. Once the printer power is turned on the next time, the Show Revision item is unchecked so that the firmware revision is not shown.
		Cold Reset		Select the Cold Reset item to clear the IP address and all customer settings. (This item also returns all settings to factory defaults.) **NOTE:** Items in the Service menu are not reset.
		Skip Disk Load		Select the Skip Disk Load item to disable installed third-party applications.
		Skip Cal		Select the Skip Cal item to skip the printer calibration for the very next power-initialization cycle only.
		Lock Service		**CAUTION:** Select the Lock Service item to lock the Service menu access (both in the Pre-boot menu and the Device Maintenance menu). Service personnel must have the administrator remove the Lock Service setting before they can open the Service menu.
		Skip FSCK		Select the Skip FSCK item to disable Chkdisk/ScanVolume during startup.
Administrator (continued)	Startup Options (continued)	First Power		**Not currently functional**: This item allows the printer to initialize as if it is the first time it has been turned on. For example, the user is prompted to configure first-time settings like date/time, language, and other settings. Select this item so that it is enabled for the next time the printer power is turned on. When the printer power is turned on the next time, this item is unchecked so that the pre-configured settings are used during configuration, and the first-time setting prompt is not used.
		Embedded Jetdirect Off		Select the Embedded Jetdirect Off item to disable the embedded HP Jetdirect. By default this item is unchecked so that HP Jetdirect is always enabled.
		WiFi Accessory		Select the WiFi Accessory item to enable the wireless accessory.

Table 3-8 Pre-boot menu options (6 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Diagnostics			Diagnostic items are useful to diagnose hardware components and their interface connections. Use these items to troubleshoot specific hardware components, and the interface between them and other components.
		Memory	Do Not Run	Use the Do Not Run item to exclude the Memory diagnostic when executing multiple diagnostics.
			Short	Use the Short item to select a brief memory test. **NOTE:** This test requires about four minutes to execute.
			Long	Use the Long item to select an extended memory test. **NOTE:** This test requires about twenty minutes to execute.
		Disk	Do Not Run	Use the Do Not Run item to exclude the Disk diagnostic when executing multiple diagnostics.
			Short	Use the Short item to select a brief firmware self-test. **NOTE:** This test requires about two or three minutes to execute.
			Long	Use the Long item to select an extended firmware self-test. **NOTE:** This test requires about sixty minutes to execute.
			Optimized	Use the Optimized item to select a test that checks the active sectors on the disk. **NOTE:** This test requires about thirty minutes to execute.
			Raw	Use the Raw item to select a test that checks every sector on the disk. **NOTE:** This test requires about fifty minutes to execute.
			Smart	Use the Smart item to select a very brief test that checks the drive self-monitoring analysis and reporting technology (SMART) status—the drive detects and reports reliability indicators to help anticipate disk failures (SMART status).
		CPB		Use the CPB item to verify the integrity of the copy processor board (CPB) and the formatter PCA connections.

Table 3-8 Pre-boot menu options (6 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
		Interconnect		Use the Interconnect item to verify the integrity of the interconnect PCA (ICB) and its connections.
		Run Selected		Select the Run Selected item to execute a selected test. NOTE: If more than one test is selected, they are executed in sequence.

Table 3-9 Pre-boot menu options (7 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Remote Admin	Start Telnet		The Remote Admin item allows a service technician to access to the printer Pre-boot menu remotely, and to navigate the menu selections from a remote location. IMPORTANT: A Remote Admin connection must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer. This person will also need to provide a randomly generated PIN to the remote service technician. NOTE: For more information about using the Remote Admin function, see Remote Admin on page 1048.
		Stop Telnet		
		Refresh IP		
	System Triage	Copy Logs		If the device will not boot to the **Ready** state, or the diagnostic log feature found in the Troubleshooting menu is not accessible, then use the System Triage item to copy the diagnostic logs to a USB flash drive at the next printer start up. The files can then be sent to HP to help diagnose the problem.
	Change Svc PWD			Use this item to change the Service menu personal identification number (PIN).
	Reset Svc PWD			If the Service menu personal identification number (PIN) has been changed. Use this item to reset it to the original PIN.
Service Tools	Reset Password			Use this item to reset the Pre-boot administrator password.
	Subsystems			For manufacturing use only. Do not change these values.
Developer Tools	Netexec			

Remote Admin

The Remote Admin feature allows remote access the printer Pre-boot menu (BIOS environment). The printer functions as a telnet server which uses the telnet networking protocol to transmit text data. Any computer (with telnet installed and enabled) can function as the telnet client to remotely display and interact with the Pre-boot menu.

IMPORTANT: While the Remote Admin function allows remote access the Pre-boot menu, for security reasons the Remote Admin connection must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer.

This section describes the following Remote Admin items.

Required software and network connection

Before using the Remote Admin feature, make sure that the telnet network protocol is installed, and enabled, on the remote telnet client computer.

NOTE: This section describes enabling and configuring the telnet feature for computers using a Windows® operating system.

HP recommends that the telnet client computer be a Windows based system, however, there are other operating systems that support the telnet network protocol. For information about enabling and configuring the telnet network protocol for other operating systems, see the owner's manual for that operating system.

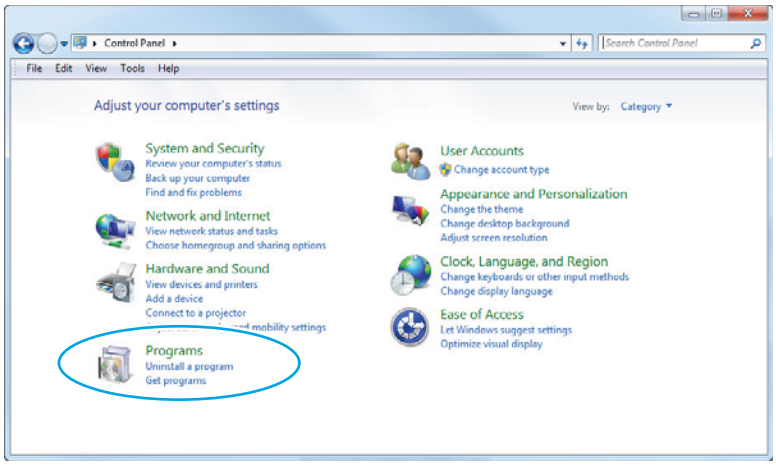
Telnet client

All computers using the Windows operating system have the telnet client installed, however, the telnet client function might not be enabled by default.

NOTE: The figures and menus in this section are for the Windows 7 Enterprise® operating system. Screens and menu selections might vary slightly for other operating systems.

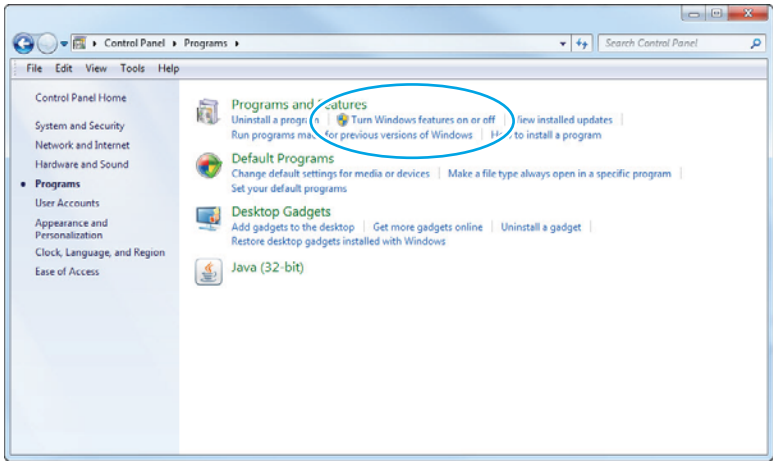
1. Use the **Start** menu to open the **Control Panel**, and then click the **Programs** item to select it.

Figure 3-17 Open the Control Panel



2. Click the **Turn Windows features on or off** item to select it.

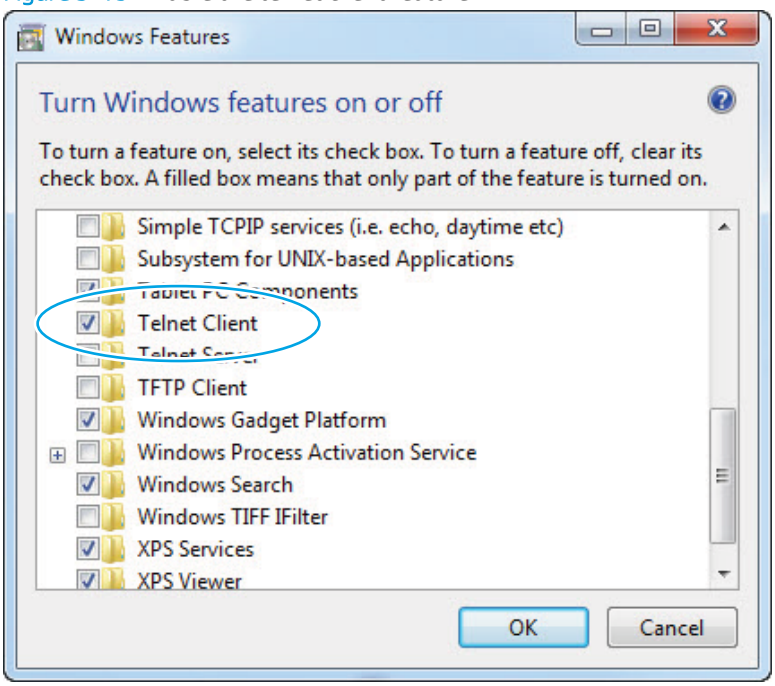
Figure 3-18 Turn Windows features on or off



3. In the **Windows Features** box, scroll down to **Telnet Client**. If the check box is not checked, click the box to select it, and then click the **OK** button.

TIP: If the check box is already checked then the telnet client function is already enabled. Click the **Cancel** button.

Figure 3-19 Enable the telnet client feature



Network connection

The remote telnet client computer must have direct network access to the printer for the Remote Admin function to operate. This means that the telnet client computer must be on the same network as the printer. The Remote Admin function cannot be accessed through a network firewall or other remote access network security programs.

If a private network is not accessible, ask the network administrator to set up a virtual private network (VPN) connection to the network.

Connect a remote connection

Learn how to connect a remote connection using telnet.

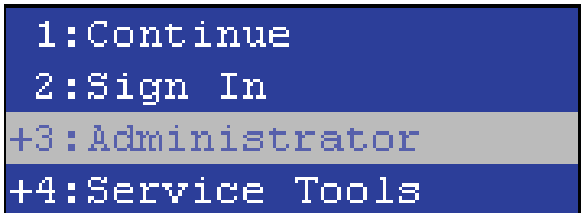
Start the telnet server function at the printer

For security reasons the Remote Admin feature must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer. The following steps must be performed by a person that is physically present at the printer.

NOTE: This person might need to sign in with an administrator or service password depending on how the printer is configured.

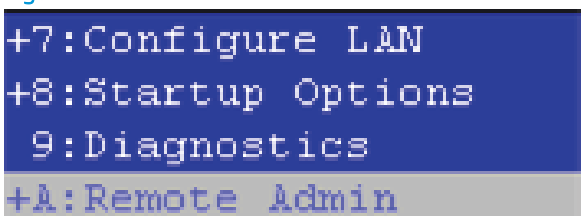
1. Turn the printer on.
2. The HP logo displays on the printer control panel. When a "1/8" with an underscore displays, touch the middle of the screen to open the Pre-boot menu.
3. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **+3:Administrator** item, and then touch the OK button to select it.

   Figure 3-20 Select the +3:Administrator item

4. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then touch the OK button to select it.

   Figure 3-21 Select the +A:Remote Admin item

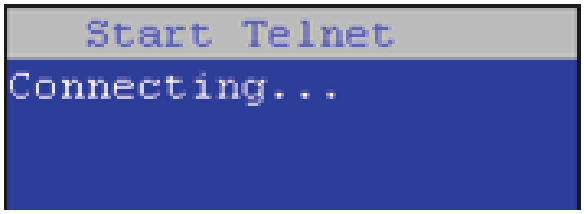
5. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **1:Start Telnet** item, and then touch the OK button to select it.

   Figure 3-22 Select the 1:Start Telnet item

6. Do one of the following

   - If a connecting message displays briefly, go to step 7.

Figure 3-23 Telnet connecting message



- If an error message displays, use the steps below to identify the problem.

Figure 3-24 Telnet error message

a. The printer network cable is not correctly connected.

b. The BIOS LAN settings are incorrect.

   - The printer should be configured to use a static IP address, but is configured to use DHCP instead.
   - The printer is configured to use a static IP address, but the IP address is incorrect.

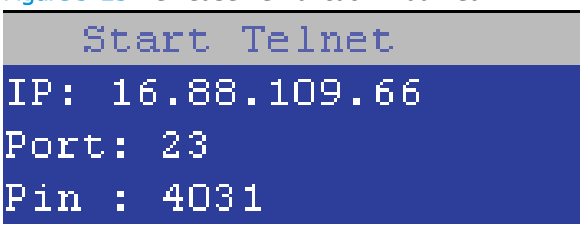
c. The printer is correctly configured to use DHCP, but the DHCP server is not turned on or is malfunctioning.

7. When the printer telnet server function is initialized, the following screen appears. Use the information on this screen to connect the remote telnet client computer to the printer.

NOTE: The printer is now ready to receive remote telnet client commands.

- **IP**: The static or dynamically allocated IP address for the printer.
- **Port**: The standard telnet port (23).
- **Pin**: A randomly generated 4-digit personal identification number (PIN).

Figure 3-25 Telnet server function initialized

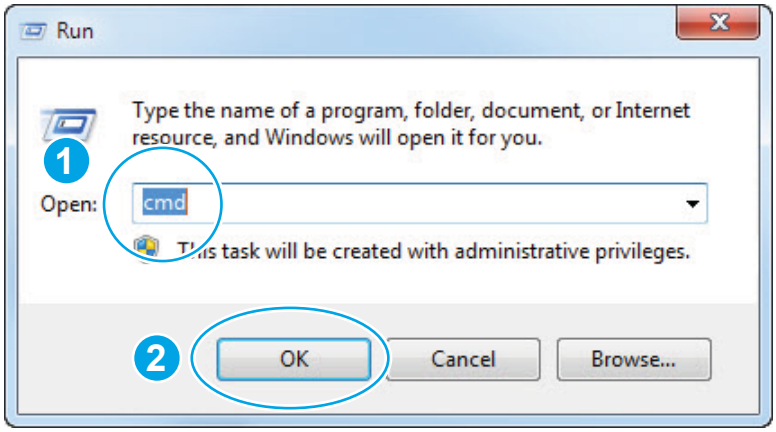


Start the telnet client function at the remote computer

The following steps establish a Remote Admin connection from a remote computer to the printer.

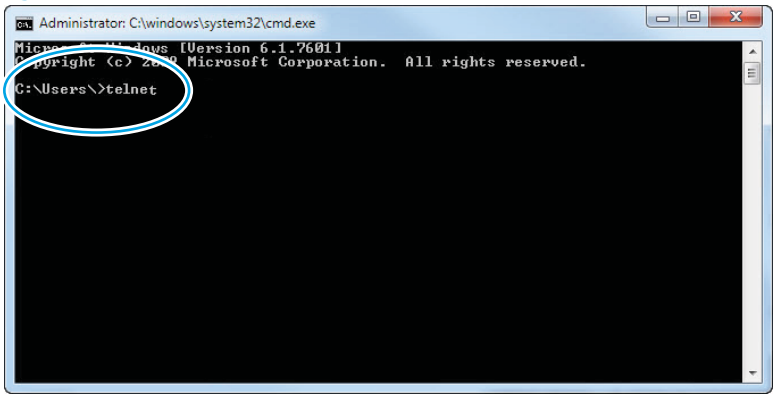
1. From the **Start** menu click **Run** to open a dialog box, type `cmd` in the **Open** field, and then click the **OK** button to open a Windows command window.

Figure 3-26 Open a command window



2. From any displayed directory, type `telnet` at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 3-27 Start a telnet session

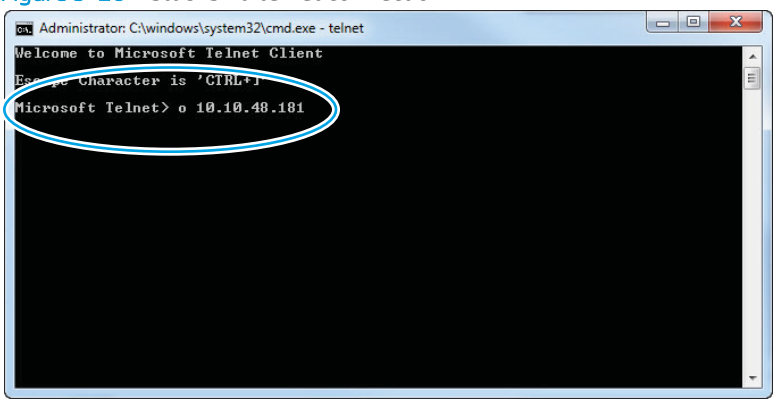


3. Type `o <IP ADDRESS>` at the telnet prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

NOTE: For `<IP ADDRESS>`, substitute the IP address that was displayed in step 7 in Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 1051.

TIP: If the telnet connection fails to establish a connection, the printer is probably behind a firewall or on a different network that the remote telnet client computer. See Network connection on page 1050.

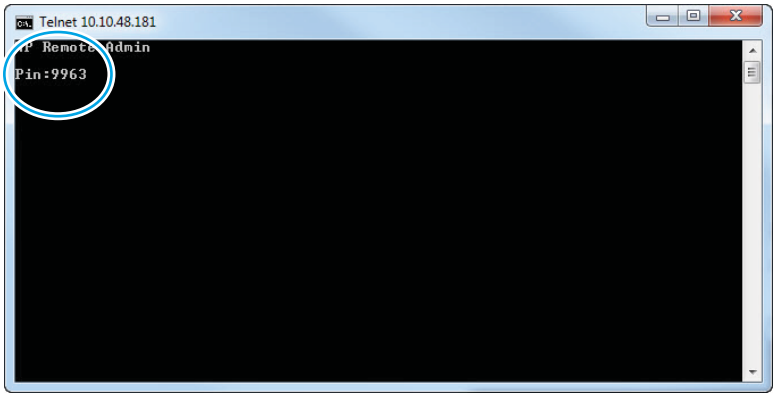
Figure 3-28 Establish a telnet connection



4. Type the PIN that was displayed in step 7 in Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 1051 at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

IMPORTANT: Make sure to type the PIN correctly. After five incorrect PIN entries, the printer terminates the Remote Admin connection. The Remote Admin feature must be re-initiated at the printer. See Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 1051.

Figure 3-29 Enter the PIN

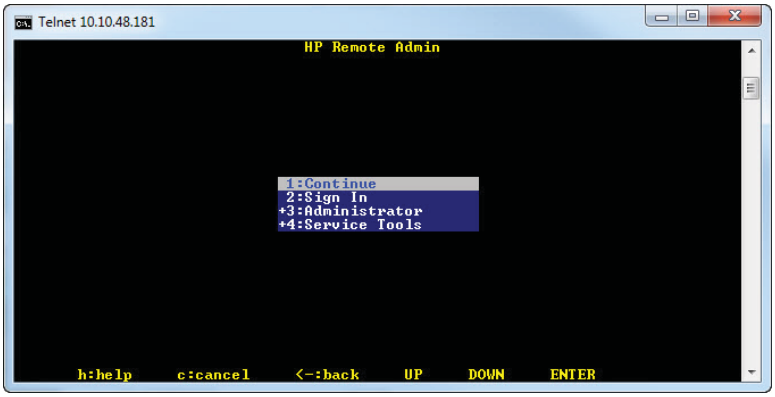


5. The following screen displays when the correct PIN is entered and the Remote Admin connection is successful. For information about the Pre-boot menu and options, see Pre-boot menu options on page 1039.

NOTE: Because a Remote Admin connection is an unsecure telnet network protocol connection, the following Pre-boot menu items are disabled for the remote telnet client computer.

- The **+3:Administrator** menu **4:Change Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **5:Clear Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **6:Disk Manage** item.

Figure 3-30 Remote Admin window



Disconnect a remote connection

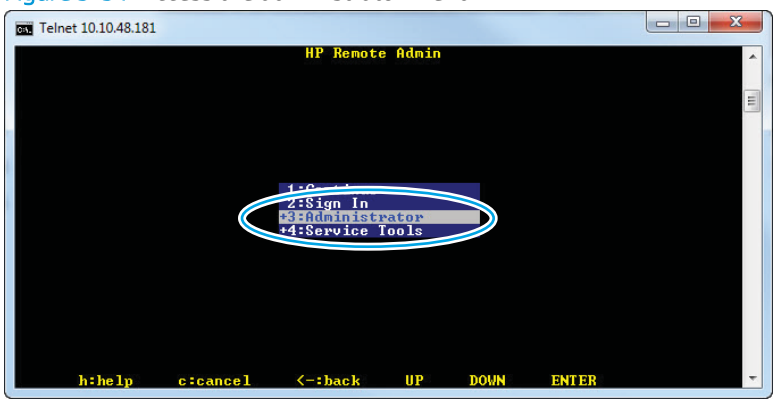
Learn how to disconnect a remote connection.

The Remote Admin connection can be terminated from the printer control panel or the remote telnet client computer.

NOTE: The following procedure describes terminating a Remote Admin connection from the remote telnet client computer.

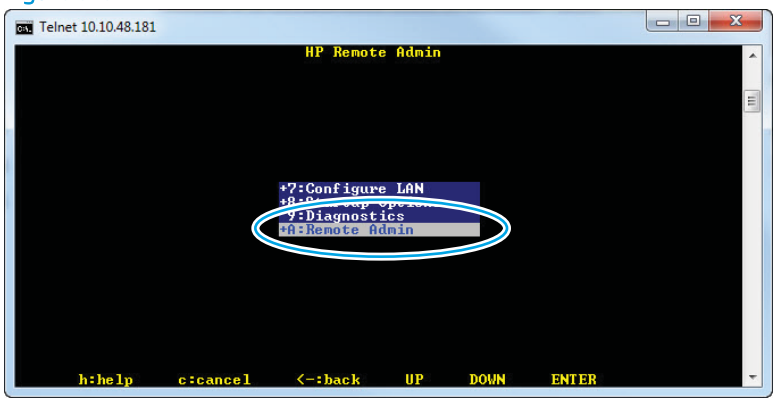
1. From the Pre-boot main menu, use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+3:Administrator** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 3-31 Access the administrator menu



2. Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 3-32 Access the remote admin menu

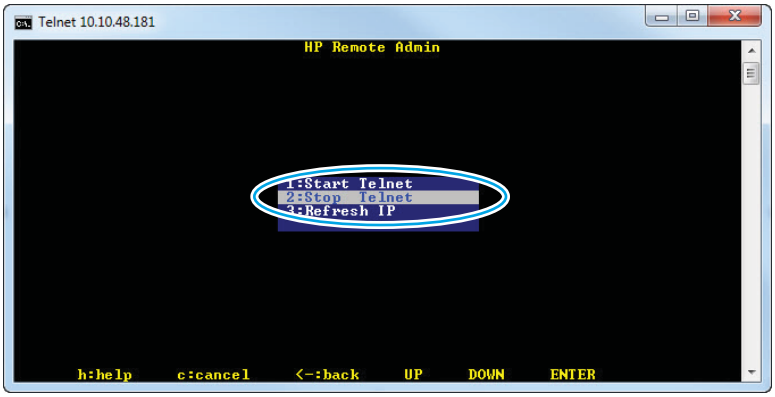


3. Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **2:Stop Telnet** item, and then press the **Enter** key. The Remote Admin connection between the printer and the remote telnet client computer terminates.

IMPORTANT: The printer remains in the Pre-boot menu. Have the person that is physically present at the printer do the following:

- Touch the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the **1:Continue** item, and then touch the OK button. The printer will continue to initialize.

Figure 3-33 Terminate the telnet connection



Control panel menus

You can perform basic printer setup by using the Settings menu. Use the HP Embedded Web Server for more advanced printer setup. To open the HP Embedded Web Server, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address bar of a web browser.

Reports menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select Reports.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-10 Reports menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Configuration/Status Pages	Settings Menu Map	Print View	Shows a map of the entire control panel system and the selected values for each setting.
	Current Settings Page	Print View	Shows a summary of the current settings for the printer. This might be helpful if you plan to make changes and need a record of the present configuration.
	Configuration Page	Print View	Shows the printer settings and installed accessories.
	How to Connect Page	Print View	Shows the network information typically needed to connect the printer to a network.
	Supplies Status Page	Print View	Shows the approximate remaining life for the supplies; reports statistics on total number of pages and jobs processed, serial number, page counts, and maintenance information. HP provides approximations of the remaining life for the supplies as a customer convenience. The actual remaining supply levels might be different from the approximations provided.
	Usage Page	Print View	Shows a count of all paper sizes that have passed through the printer; lists whether they were simplex, duplex, monochrome, or color; and reports the page count.
	File Directory	Print View	Shows the file name and folder name for files that are stored in the printer memory.
	Web Services Status Page	Print View	Shows the detected Web Services for the printer.
	Color Usage Job Log	Print View	Shows color jobs completed by the printer.

Table 3-10 Reports menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Fax Reports (MFP fax models only)	Fax Activity Log	Print View	Contains a list of the faxes that have been sent from or received by this printer.
	Billing Codes Report	Print View	Provides a list of billing codes that have been used for outgoing faxes. This report shows how many sent faxes were billed to each code.
	Blocked Fax List	Print View	A list of phone numbers that are blocked from sending faxes to this printer.
	Speed Dial List	Print View	Shows the speed dials that have been set up for this printer.
	Fax Call Report	Print View	A detailed report of the last fax operation, either sent or received.
Other Pages	Demonstration Page	Print	Prints a demonstration page.
	RGB samples	Print	Prints color samples for different RGB values. Use the samples as a guide for matching printed colors.
	CMYK samples	Print	Prints color samples for different CMYK values. Use the samples as a guide for matching printed colors.
	PCL Font List	Print	Prints the available PCL fonts.
	PS Font List	Print	Prints the available PS fonts.

Settings menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Settings menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-11 Settings menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
General	Date/Time Settings	Date/Time Format	Date Format		DD/MMM/YYYY MMM/DD/YYYY YYYY/MMM/DD	Use the Date/Time Settings menu to specify the date and time and to configure date/time settings.
			Time Format		12 hour (AM/PM) 24 hours	Select the format that the printer uses to show the date and time, for example 12-hour format or 24-hour format.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Date/Time	Date		Select the time zone from a list.	Select the time zone, date, and time that the printer uses.
			Time		Select the date from a pop-up calendar.	
			Time Zone		Select the time from a pop-up keypad.	
	Energy Settings	Sleep Schedule	A list of scheduled events displays.		+ (Add) Edit Delete	Use to configure the printer to automatically wake up or go to sleep at specific times on specific days. Using this feature saves energy. NOTE: You must configure the date and time settings before you can use this feature.
			New event	Event Type		Select whether to add or edit a Wake event or a Sleep event, and then select the time and the days for the wake or sleep event.
				Time		Set the wake or sleep event time parameters.
				Event Days	Select days of the week from a list.	Set the wake or sleep event day parameters.
		Sleep Settings	Auto Off After Sleep Sleep After Inactivity HP Auto Off/Auto On Shut Down		Range: 1 to 110 minutes Default = 0 minutes	Set the number of minutes after which the printer enters Sleep or Auto Off mode. Touch the existing number to open the virtual keypad, and then increase or decrease the number of minutes.
			Wake/Auto On to These Events		All Events* Network port Power button only	

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Display Settings	Display Brightness	Automatic* Manual		The Manual setting uses a slider to manually control the display brightness.	Use to specify the intensity of the LCD control panel display.
		System Sound			On* Off	Use to specify whether you hear a sound when you touch the screen or press buttons on the control panel.
		Language Settings	Language		Select from a list of languages that the printer supports.	Use to select a different language for control panel messages and specify the default keyboard layout. When you select a new language, the keyboard layout automatically changes to match the factory default for the selected language.
			Keyboard Layout M681z/M682z only		Each language has a default keyboard layout. To change it, select from a list of layouts.	Select the default keyboard layout that matches the language you want to use.
		Information Screen			Show connection information* Hide connection information	Use this menu item to display or hide connection information on the Home screen.
		DisplayDate and Time M681/M682 only			Show Date and Time* Hide Date and Time	Select whether to display or hide the date and time on the control panel Home screen.
		Inactivity Timeout			Range: 10-300 seconds Default = 60 seconds	Specifies the amount of time that elapses between any activity on the control panel and when the printer resets to the default settings. When the timeout expires, the control panel display returns to the Home menu, and any user signed in to the printer is signed out.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Clearable Warnings			On Job*	Use this feature to set the period that a clearable warning displays on the control panel. If the On setting is selected, clearable warnings appear until the Clearable Warnings button is pressed. If the Job setting is selected, clearable warnings stay on the display during the job that generated the warning and disappear from the display when the next job starts.
		Continuable Events			Auto-continue (10 seconds)* Touch OK to continue	Use this option to configure the printer behavior when the printer encounters certain errors. If the Auto-continue (10 seconds) option is selected, the job will continue after 10 seconds. If the Touch OK to continue option is selected, the job will stop and require the user to touch the OK button before continuing.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Jam Recovery				Auto* Off On	This printer provides a jam recovery feature that reprints jammed pages. Select one of the following options: Auto: The printer attempts to reprint jammed pages when sufficient memory is available. This is the default setting. Off: The printer does not attempt to reprint jammed pages. Because no memory is used to store the most recent pages, performance is optimal. NOTE: When using this option, if the printer runs out of paper and the job is being printed on both sides, some pages can be lost. On: The printer always reprints jammed pages. Additional memory is allocated to store the last few pages printed. This might cause a decrease in overall performance.
	Auto Recovery				Enabled Disabled*	The printer attempts to reprint jammed pages when sufficient memory is available. This is the default setting.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Hold Off Print Job				Enabled* Disabled	Enable this feature if you want to prevent print jobs from starting while a user is initiating a copy job from the control panel. Held print jobs start printing after the copy job is finished, provided that no other copy job is in the print queue.
	Restore Factory Settings				Restore Cancel	Use to restore all printer settings to their factory defaults.
Copy/Print	Copy Settings	Image Preview				Display a preview of the image before printing it.
	Enable Device USB				Enabled Disabled*	Enables the printer to open a file from a USB drive.
	Manage Stored Jobs	Job Sort Order			Job Name* Date	This option allows you list the jobs either alphabetically or chronologically.
		Retain Temporary Jobs After Reboot			Do not retain Personal jobs only All temporary jobs	Sets which temporary jobs will be retained in the event of a printer reboot.
		Temporary Job Storage Limit			1-300 Default = 32	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Job Storage Limit feature specifies the number of temporary jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Temporary Stored Job Retention			1-300 Default = 32	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Stored Job Retention feature specifies the number of temporary jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.
		Standard Stored Job Retention			1-300 Default = 32	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Stored Job Retention feature specifies the number of standard jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.
	Default Print Options	Number of Copies		Range: 1-32000 Default = 1	Sets the default number of copies for a copy job. This default applies when the Copy function or the Quick Copy function is initiated from the printer Home screen.	
		Paper Selection		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Configures the default paper size used for print jobs.	
		Default Custom Paper Size	X Dimension	Range: 3-8.5 inches Default = 8.5 inches	Configures the default paper size that is used when the user selects **Custom** as the paper size for a print job.	
			Y Dimension	Range: 5-14 inches Default = 14 inches		
			Use Inches	Enabled* Disabled		

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Output Sides		1-sided*	Use to indicate whether the original document is printed on one or both sides, and whether the copies should be printed on one or both sides. For example, select the 1-sided original, 2-sided output option when the original is printed on one side, but you want to make two-sided copies.	
				2-sided		
		Staple			None	Sets the position of the staple on the page.
					Top left	
					Top right	
					Top left or right	
		Output Bin			Automatically select	
					Standard bin	
					Upper bin	
					Middle bin	
		Resolution			FastRes1200	Sets the resolution for sent documents. Higher resolution images have more dots per inch (dpi), so they show more detail. Lower resolution images have fewer dots per inch and show less detail, but the file size is smaller. Some file types, for example a file that will be processed with OCR, require a specific resolution. When these file types are selected, the Resolution setting might automatically change to a valid value.
					1200x1200dpi	

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	PCL and PostScript Settings	Courier Font			Regular* Dark	Select which version of the Courier font you want to use. The factory default setting is Regular, which uses an average stroke width. The Dark setting can be used if a heavier Courier font is needed.
		Wide A4			Enabled Disabled*	Changes the printable area of A4-size paper. If you enable this option, eighty 10-pitch characters can be printed on a single line of A4 paper.
		Print PS Errors			Enabled Disabled*	Use this feature to select whether a PostScript (PS) error page is printed when the printer encounters a PS error.
		Print PDF Errors			Enabled Disabled*	Selects whether a PDF error page is printed when the printer encounters a PDF error.
		Personality			Auto* PCL PS PDF	Configures the default print language or personality for the printer. Normally you should not change the printer language. If you change the setting to a specific printer language, the printer does not automatically switch from one language to another unless specific software commands are sent to it.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		PCL	Font Settings	Font Source	Internal Disk resident	Selects the font source for the user-soft default font. The list of available options varies depending on the installed printer options.
				Font Number	Range: 0-110 Default = 0	Specifies the font number for the user-soft default font using the source that is specified in the Font Source menu. The printer assigns a number to each font and lists it on the PCL font list. The font number displays in the Font # column of the printout.
				Font Pitch	Range: 0.44-99.99 Default = 10	If the Font Source option and the Font Number setting indicate a contour font, then use this feature to select a default pitch (for a fixed-spaced font).
			PCL Settings	Form Length	Range: 5-128 Default = 60	Controls the PCL print-command options. PCL is a set of printer commands that HP developed to provide access to printer features. Use the Form Length feature to select the user-soft default vertical form length.
				Orientation	Portrait* Landscape	Select the orientation that is most often used for copy or scan originals. Select the Portrait option if the short edge is at the top or select the Landscape option if the long edge is at the top.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Symbol Set	Select from a list of symbol sets.	Select any one of several available symbol sets from the control panel. A symbol set is a unique grouping of all the characters in a font. The factory default value for this option is PC-8. Either PC-8 or PC-850 are recommended for line-draw characters.
				Append CR to LF	No* Yes	Configure whether a carriage return (CR) is appended to each line feed (LF) encountered in backwards-compatible PCL jobs (pure text, no job control). Select Yes to append the carriage return. The default setting is No. Some environments, such as UNIX, indicate a new line by using only the line-feed control code. This option allows the user to append the required carriage return to each line feed.
				Suppress Blank Pages	No* Yes	This option is for users who are generating their own PCL, which could include extra form feeds that would cause blank pages to be printed. When the Yes option is selected, form feeds are ignored if the page is blank.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Media Source Mapping	Standard* Classic	Use to select and maintain input trays by number when you are not using the printer driver, or when the software program has no option for tray selection. The following options are available: Standard: Tray numbering is based on newer HP LaserJet models. Classic: Tray numbering is based on HP LaserJet 4 and older models.
	Print Quality	Adjust Color	Tonal Range	Highlights Midtones Shadows		
			Cyan Magenta Yellow Black			
		Image Registration	Tray	Tray 1 Tray 2 Tray 3 Tray 4 Tray 5 Depends upon number of trays installed		Specify tray to be adjusted

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Front-side Horizontal Shift Front-side Vertical Shift Back-side Horizontal Shift Back-side Vertical Shift		-5.00 mm to 5.00 mm	Shift the margin alignment to center the image on the page from top to bottom and from left to right. You can also align the image on the front with the image printed on the back. The direction that is perpendicular to the way the paper passes through the printer is referred to as X. This is also known as the scan direction. X1 is the scan direction for a single-sided page or for the second side of a two-sided page. X2 is the scan direction for the first side of a two-sided page. The direction that the paper feeds through the printer is referred to as Y. Y1 is the feed direction for a single-sided page or for the second side of a two-sided page. Y2 is the feed direction for the first side of a two-sided page. Use the Adjust Tray <X> menu to adjust the registration settings for each tray. Before adjusting these values, print a registration test page. It provides alignment guides in the X and Y directions so you can determine which adjustments are necessary. You can adjust values for X1 Shift, X2 Shift, Y1 Shift, and Y2 Shift.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Print Test Page		Use the Print Test Page option to print a page to test the image registration. It provides alignment guides in the X and Y directions so you can determine which adjustments are necessary.
		Auto Sense Behavior	Tray 1		Sense every page	
					Sense first page	
					Sense transparency ony	
			All Other Trays		Sense first page	
					Sense transparency only	
		Adjust paper types			Select from a list of paper types	
					Reset Paper Types	
		Optimize			Normal Paper	
					Heavy paper	
					Envelope control	
					Tray 1	
					Background	
					Background 1	
					Uniformity Control	
					Tracking Control	
					Registration	
					Transfer Control	
					Moisture Control	
					Reset Optimize	
		Edge Control			Off	
					Light	
					Normal	
					Maximum	

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Manage Trays	Use Requested Tray			Exclusively* First	Controls how the printer handles jobs that have specified a specific input tray. Two options are available: Exclusively: The printer never selects a different tray when the user has indicated that a specific tray should be used, even if that tray is empty. First: The printer pulls from another tray if the specified tray is empty, even though the user specifically indicated a tray for the job.
		Manually Feed Prompt			Always* Unless loaded	Indicate whether a prompt should appear when the type or size for a job does not match the specified tray and the printer pulls from the multipurpose tray instead. Two options are available: Always: A prompt always displays before using the multipurpose tray. Unless loaded: A message displays only if the multipurpose tray is empty.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Size/Type Prompt			Display* Do not display	Controls whether the tray configuration message displays whenever a tray is closed. Two options are available: Display: Shows the tray configuration message when a tray is closed. The user is able to configure the tray settings directly from this message. Do not display: Prevents the tray configuration message from automatically appearing.
		Use Another Tray			Enabled* Disabled	Use to turn on or off the control panel prompt to select another tray when the specified tray is empty. Two options are available: Enabled: When this option is selected, the user is prompted either to add paper to the selected tray or to choose a different tray. Disabled: When this option is selected, the user is not given the option of selecting a different tray. The printer prompts the user to add paper to the tray that was initially selected.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Alternative Letterhead Mode			Disabled* Enabled	Use to load letterhead or preprinted paper into the tray the same way for all print jobs, whether you are printing to one side of the sheet or to both sides of the sheet. When this option is selected, load the paper as you would for printing on both sides. See the user documentation that came with the printer for instructions about loading letterhead for printing on both sides. When this option is selected, the printer speed slows to the speed required for printing on both sides.
		Duplex Blank Pages			Auto* Yes	Controls how the printer handles two-sided jobs (duplexing). Two options are available: Auto: Enables Smart Duplexing, which instructs the printer not to process blank pages. Yes: Disables Smart Duplexing and forces the duplexer to flip the sheet of paper even if it is printed on only one side. This might be preferable for certain jobs that use paper types such as letterhead or prepunched paper.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Override A4/Letter			Yes* No	Prints on letter-size paper when an A4 job is sent but no A4-size paper is loaded in the printer (or to print on A4 paper when a letter-size job is sent but no letter-size paper is loaded). This option will also override A3 with ledger-size paper and ledger with A3-size paper.
Scan/Digital Send	E-mail Settings Network Folder Settings SharePoint Settings Scan to USB Drive Settings **NOTE:** The same options are available for each of these features, except where noted.	E-mail Setup **NOTE:** Email Settings only				Use to configure settings that apply to sending documents through email or saving documents to a folder on the network or on a USB multi-drive. The E-mail Setup Wizard feature configures the printer to send scanned images as email attachments. To open the printer HP Embedded Web Server and set up the email notification server, enter the printer IP address into a Web browser.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Image Preview			Make optional* Require preview Disable preview	Defines the default job options for each function. If you do not specify the job options when creating the job, the default options are used. For complete setup, go to the HP Embedded Web Server by typing the IP address of the printer into a Web browser. Use the Image Preview feature to scan a document and display a preview before completing the job. Select whether this feature is available on the printer. Make optional: The feature is optional, depending on the user who is signed in. Require preview Previews are required for all users. Disable preview: Previews are disabled for all users.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Default File Name				The printer is shipped with a factory default file name of [Untitled] for any scanned files that are sent or saved. Use this feature to specify a different default file name. If you are saving a file to a network folder or USB storage printer and a file with the default file name already exists, a number is appended to the file name, for example, [Untitled]001.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Document File Type			Select from a list of file types.	PDF provides the best overall image and text quality. JPEG is a good choice for most graphics. Most computers have a browser that can view .JPEG files. This file type produces one file per page. TIFF is a standard file format that many graphics programs support. This file type produces one file per page. MTIFF: stands for multi-page TIFF. This file type saves multiple scanned pages in a single file. XPS (XML Paper Specification) creates an XML file that preserves the original formatting of the document and supports color graphics and embedded fonts. **NOTE:** OCR file types are not supported on this printer unless attached to DSS.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Optimize Text/ Picture			Manually Adjust* Text Printed picture Photograph	Use to optimize the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy when text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
		Output Quality			High (large file) Medium* Low (small file)	Use to select the quality for the output. Higher-quality images require a larger file size than lower-quality images. Larger files take more time to send, and some recipients might have trouble receiving larger files.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Original Sides			1-sided 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
			Orientation		Automatically detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			2-Sided Format		Book-style Flip-style	Book-style: The back side of the original is printed right-side-up, and the back side of the copy is printed the same way. Use this option for originals and copies that are bound along the left edge. Flip-style: The back side of the original is printed upside-down, and the back side of the copy is printed the same way. Use this option for originals and copies that are to be bound along the top edge.
		Resolution			400 dpi 300 dpi 200 dpi 150 dpi* 75 dpi	Sets the resolution for sent documents. Higher resolution images have more dots per inch (dpi), so they show more detail. Lower resolution images have fewer dots per inch and show less detail, but the file size is smaller. Some file types, for example a file that will be processed with OCR, require a specific resolution. When these file types are selected, the Resolution setting might automatically change to a valid value.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Content Orientation	Orientation		Auto Detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.
			2-Sided Format		Book-style* Flip-style	Use to configure the default style for 2-sided print jobs. If the Book-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed the right way up. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the left edge. If the Flip-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed upside-down. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the top edge.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Color/Black			Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray Black	Use to enable or disable color scanning. Automatically detect: Automatically scans documents in color if at least one page has color. Color: Scans documents in color. Black/Gray: Scans documents in grayscale. Black: Scans documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
		Original Size			Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
		Notification			Do not notify* Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails Print E-mail	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully. Print: Select to print the notification at this printer. E-mail: Select to receive the notification to an email account.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Include Thumbnail			NOTE: When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.
			Notification E-mail address			E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then type the email address for the notification.
		Image Adjustment		Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
				Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
				Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
				Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
				Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.
		Job Build			Job Build off* Job Build on	Use to combine several original documents into one job. Also use to scan an original document that has more pages than the document feeder can accommodate at one time. The printer temporarily saves all the scanned images. After you have scanned all the pages for the job, touch Finish to finish the job.
		Cropping Options			Do not crop* Crop to content Crop to paper	Use this menu item to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.
		Erase Edges			Use inches Back side erase Front side erase	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Multi-feed Detection			Disabled Enabled*	This setting stops the scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
		Blank Page Suppression			Disabled* Enabled	Use to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
		Create Multiple Files			Disabled* Enabled	Enable this item to scan pages into separate files based on a specified page limit. A page is one side of an original document. JPEG and TIFF have a limit of one page per file.
	Digital Sending Software Setup	Allow Use of a DSS Server Allow Transfer to New DSS server			Disabled Enabled*	Configure how the printer interacts with the HP Digital Sending Software (DSS) server. HP DSS handles digital sending tasks, such as faxing, emailing, and sending scanned documents to a network folder or USB storage device. Use the Allow Use of a DSS Server and Allow Transfer to New DSS server options to configure the printer to use HP DSS.
Fax	Internal Fax Modem Setup					
	Fax Send Settings	Image Preview				

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Fax Dialing Settings	Fax Dial Volume		Off Low* High	These settings control how the fax modem dials the outgoing fax number when faxes are sent.
			Dialing Mode		Tone* Pulse	
			Redial Interval		1-5 Minutes Default = 5 minutes	
			Fax Send Speed		Fast* Medium Slow	
			Dialing Prefix			
			Detect Dial Tone			
			Redial on Error		Range: 0-9 Default = 2	
			Redial on No Answer		Range: 0-2 Default = 0	
			Redial on Busy		Range: 0-9 Default = 3	
		General Fax Send Settings	Fax Number Confirmation		Enabled Disabled*	If this feature is enabled, you must enter the fax number twice.
			PC Fax Send		Enabled* Disabled	Enables users who have the correct driver installed to send faxes through the printer from their computers.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			JBIG Compression		Enabled* Disabled	The JBIG compression reduces fax-transmission time, which can result in lower phone charges. However, using JBIG compression sometimes causes compatibility problems with older fax machines. If this occurs, turn off the JBIG compression.
			Error Correction Mode		Enabled* Disabled	When error-correction mode is enabled and an error occurs during fax transmission, the printer sends or receives the error portion again.
			Fax Header		Prepend* Overlay	Use to prepend or overlay the fax header page.
			Fax Number Speed Dial Matching		Enabled Disabled*	Use this item to match the fax number that you type to numbers that are saved as a speed dial.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Billing Code Settings	Enable Billing Codes		Off* On	When billing codes are enabled, a prompt displays that asks the user to enter the billing code for an outgoing fax. This prompt does not appear if the Allow users to edit billing codes check box is not checked. You can also use the billing codes report in the Reports menu to view the list of the billing codes that have been used for faxes that have been sent from the printer. The list is grouped by billing code and also shows fax details. This feature can be used for billing or usage tracking.
			Default Billing Code			Specify a default billing code for faxing. If you specify a default billing code, this code displays in the Billing Code field when the user sends an outgoing fax. If this field is blank, no default billing code is provided for the user.
			Minimum Length		Range: 1-16 Default = 1	Specify the required length of the billing code. Billing codes can be between 1 and 16 characters long.
			Allow users to edit billing codes		Off On*	
	Fax Receive Settings	Fax Receive Setup	Ringer Volume		Off Low* High	Use to configure settings for receiving faxes.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Rings To Answer		Range: 1-6 Default = 1	
			Fax Receive Speed		Fast* Medium Slow	
			Ring Interval		Range: 220-600 ms Default = 600 ms	
			Ring Frequency		Range: 1-200 Default = 68hz	
		Fax Printing Schedule			Always store faxes Always print faxes* Use Fax Printing Schedule	If you have concerns about the security of private faxes, use this feature to store faxes rather than having them automatically print. Open the Fax Printing Schedule sub-menu, and then you can choose to always store faxes, always print them, or you can set up a schedule for each day of the week.
			Schedule Touch this to set up a fax printing schedule if you selected the Use Fax Printing Schedule option.	+ (Add) Edit Delete (trash can)	Print incoming faxes Store incoming faxes Time Event Days	If you are using a fax printing schedule, use this menu to configure when to print faxes.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Blocked Fax Numbers	Fax Number to Block			The blocked fax list can contain up to 30 numbers. When the printer receives a call from one of the blocked fax numbers, it deletes the incoming fax. It also logs the blocked fax in the activity log along with job-accounting information. Add blocked numbers: Enter a fax number into the Fax Number to Block field, and then touch the arrow button to add a new number to the blocked fax list. To remove blocked numbers: Select a number and touch the Delete button to delete it from the blocked fax list. To clear all blocked numbers: Touch the Delete All button to clear all of the numbers from the blocked fax list. You also can use the Blocked Fax List report in the Information menu to view the list of the fax numbers that have been blocked on this printer.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Default Job Options	Notification		Do not notify* Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.
					Print E-mail*	E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then enter the email address for the notification.
				Include Thumbnail		NOTE: When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.
				Notification E-mail address		Touch this text field, provide the email address to which you want notifications sent, and then touch the OK button.
			Stamp Received Faxes		Enabled Disabled*	Use this option to add the date, time, sender's phone number, and page number to each page of the faxes that this printer receives.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Fit to Page		Enabled* Disabled	Use to shrink faxes that are larger than Letter-size or A4-size so that they can fit onto a Letter-size or A4-size page. If this feature set to Disabled, faxes larger than Letter or A4 will flow across multiple pages.
			Paper Tray		Automatic* Select from a list of the trays.	
			Output Bin		Automatically select Standard bin Upper bin Middle bin	
			Out Sides		1-sided* 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides.
	Fax Forwarding	Enable Fax Forwarding			Disabled* Enabled	Use to forward received faxes to another fax machine.
			Type of Fax Job to Forward		All faxes Sent faxes Received faxes	Use to select the type of fax jobs that you want forwarded.
			Fax Forwarding Number			Provide the forwarding phone number, and then touch the OK button.
	Clear Fax Activity Log					Clears all events from the fax activity log.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Manage Supplies	Low Warning Thresholds			Black Cartridge Cyan Cartridge Magenta Cartridge Yellow Cartridge	1-100% Default = 5%	Set the estimated percentage at which the printer notifies you when a toner cartridge is very low.
	Low Warning Threshold Message				On Off	Displays a message on the control panel when a cartridge is very low.
	Very Low Behavior	Black Cartridge Color Cartridges Transfer Kit Fuser Kit Document Feeder Kit			Stop Continue Prompt to continue	
		Staples			Stop Prompt to continue	
	Restrict Color Use				Enable Disable Color Color if allowed*	Use this feature to enable, restrict, or disable color printing or copying.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Color/Black Mix				Auto Mostly Color Pages Mostly Black Pages	Instructs the printer when to switch between color and monochrome printing modes for the best overall performance. Auto: Uses the mode that is appropriate for the first page of the job. If necessary, the printer switches modes during the middle of a job and then stays in that mode until the job is finished. Mostly Color Pages: The printer uses color mode for all jobs, even if the job contains no color pages. Mostly Black Pages: The printer uses monochrome mode until it detects a color page. The printer switches back to monochrome mode when it detects a sequence of several monochrome pages.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Store Usage Data				On supplies Not on supplies	The Store Usage Data provides a way to suppress the toner cartridges from storing most of the information gathered exclusively for the purpose of understanding the usage of the printer. Select the On supplies setting to store the data on the toner cartridge memory chip. Select the Not on supplies setting to suppress the information from being stored on the memory chip.
	Cartridge Protection				Off* Protect Cartridges	Select to permanently protect cartridges so that they can be used only in this product or fleet of products.
	Cartridge Policy				Off* Authorized HP	Set Authorized HP to allow only genuine HP cartridges to be used in this product.
Manage Stapler/ Stacker	Operation Mode				Mailbox Stacker Function Separator	
	Job Offset				On Off	
Networking	Ethernet	Information	Print Security Report		Yes No*	Yes: Prints a page that contains the current security settings on the HP Jetdirect print server. No: A security settings page is not printed.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		TCP/IP	Host Name		Use the arrow buttons to edit the host name. NPIXXXXXX*	An alphanumeric string, up to 32 characters, used to identify the printer. This name is listed on the HP Jetdirect configuration page. The default host name is NPIxxxxxx, where xxxxxx is the last six digits of the LAN hardware (MAC) address.
			IPV4 Settings	Config Method	Bootp DHCP* Auto IP Manual	Specifies the method that TCP/IPv4 parameters will be configured on the HP Jetdirect print server. Bootp (Bootstrap Protocol): Use for automatic configuration from a BootP server. DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol): Use for automatic configuration from a DHCPv4 server. If selected and a DHCP lease exists, the DHCP Release menu and the DHCP Renew menu are available to set DHCP lease options. Auto IP: Use for automatic link-local IPv4 addressing. An address in the form 169.254.x.x is assigned automatically. If you set this option to the Manual setting, use the Manual Settings menu to configure TCP/IPv4 parameters.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Default IP	Auto IP* Legacy	Specify the IP address to default to when the print server is unable to obtain an IP address from the network during a forced TCP/IP reconfiguration (for example, when manually configured to use BootP or DHCP). NOTE: This feature assigns a static IP address that might interfere with a managed network. Auto IP: A link-local IP address 169.254.x.x is set. Legacy: The address 192.0.0.192 is set, consistent with older HP Jetdirect printers.
				Primary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = xxx.xxx.xx.xx	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Primary Domain Name System (DNS) Server.
				Secondary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = 0.0.0.0	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Secondary DNS Server.
			IPV6 Settings	Enable	Off On*	Use this item to enable or disable IPv6 operation on the print server. Off: IPv6 is disabled. On: IPv6 is enabled.
				Address	Manual Settings Enable Address	Use this item to enable and manually configure a TCP/IPv6 address.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				DHCPV6 Policy	Router Specified Router Unavailable* Always	Router Specified: The stateful auto-configuration method to be used by the print server is determined by a router. The router specifies whether the print server obtains its address, its configuration information, or both from a DHCPv6 server. Router Unavailable: If a router is not available, the print server should attempt to obtain its stateful configuration from a DHCPv6 server. Always: Whether a router is available, the print server always attempts to obtain its stateful configuration from a DHCPv6 server.
				Primary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = **xxx.xxx.xx.xx**	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Primary Domain Name System (DNS) Server.
				Secondary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = **0.0.0.0**	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Secondary DNS Server.

Table 3-11 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Proxy Server		Select from a provided list.	Specifies the proxy server to be used by embedded applications in the printer. A proxy server is typically used by network clients for Internet access. It caches Web pages, and provides a degree of Internet security for those clients. To specify a proxy server, enter its IPv4 address or fully-qualified domain name. The name can be up to 255 octets. For some networks, you might need to contact your Internet Service Provider (ISP) for the proxy server address.
			Proxy Port		Default = **00080**	Enter the port number used by the proxy server for client support. The port number identifies the port reserved for proxy activity on your network, and can be a value from 0 to 65535.
			Idle Timeout		Default = **0270**	The time period, in seconds, after which an idle TCP print data connection is closed (default is 270 seconds, 0 disables the timeout).

Copy menu (MFP only)

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Copy menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-12 Copy menu (MFP only)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Sides	Original Sides		1-sided* 2-sided	Use to indicate whether the original document is printed on one or both sides.
	Output Sides		1-sided 2-sided	Use to indicate whether the copies should be printed on one or both sides.
Color/Black			Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray	Select how the copy should be printed. Automatically detect: Prints color documents in color, and black and white documents in black and white. For mixed documents, the printer will determine whether to print in color or black and white. Color: Prints documents in color. Black: Prints documents in black and white or grayscale.
Quick Sets and Defaults			Load Save	
Options	Sides	Original Sides	1-sided 2-sided	
		Output Sides	1-sided 2-sided	
	Color/Black		Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray	Select how the copy should be printed. Automatically detect: Prints color documents in color, and black and white documents in black and white. For mixed documents, the printer will determine whether to print in color or black and white. Color: Prints documents in color. Black: Prints documents in black and white or grayscale.
	Staple		None Top left angled Top right angled	Sets the position of the staple on the page.

Table 3-12 Copy menu (MFP only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Scan mode		Standard Document Book Mode 2–sided ID	Book Mode allows the user to scan pages from a book. 2–sided ID allows the user to scan both sides of an identification card onto one sheet.
	Reduce/Enlarge		Automatic* Manual	Use to scale the size of the document up or down. Select one of the predefined percentages, or select the Scaling field and type a percentage between 25 and 400. The Auto option automatically scales the image to fit the paper size in the tray. NOTE: To reduce the image, select a scaling percentage that is less than 100. To enlarge the image, select a scaling percentage that is greater than 100.
	Original Size		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Describes the page size of the original document.
	Paper Selection		Paper Size Paper Type Paper Tray	For the best color and image quality, select the appropriate paper type from the control panel menu or from the print driver.
	Booklet	Booklet Format	(Checkbox)	Use to copy two or more pages onto one sheet of paper so you can fold the sheets in the center to form a booklet. The printer arranges the pages in the correct order. For example, if the original document has eight pages, the printer prints pages 1 and 8 on the same sheet.
	Content Orientation		Auto Detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.

Table 3-12 Copy menu (MFP only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Pages per Sheet		One (1) Two (2) Four (4)	Copies multiple pages onto one sheet of paper. NOTE: Before using this screen, use the Content Orientation screen to describe the original document orientation.
	Image Adjustment	Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
		Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
		Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
		Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
	Optimize Text/Picture	Manually Adjust*	Optimize For: Text Mixed Printed picture Photograph	Optimizes the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy where text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.

Table 3-12 Copy menu (MFP only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Erase Edges	Front Side	Use inches Apply same width to all edges Top edge Bottom edge Left edge Right edge	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Back Side	Use inches Mirror front side Top edge Bottom edge Left edge Right edge	
	Collate		Collate on (Sets in page order)* Collate off (Pages grouped)	If you are making more than one copy, select the Collate on (Sets in page order) option to assemble the pages in the correct order in each set of copies. Select the Collate off (Pages grouped) option to group the same pages together. For example, if you are making five copies of an original document that has two pages, all five first pages would be grouped together and all five second pages would be grouped together.
	Multi-feed Detection		Enabled* Disabled	This setting stops the scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
	Output Bin		Automatically select Standard bin Upper bin Middle bin	

Scan menu (MFP only)

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Scan menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-13 Scan menu (MFP)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to Email					
Scan to Network Folder	Folder Paths				
	File Name				
	Quick Sets and Defaults				
	Options	File Type and Resolution			
		Original sides		1-sided 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
		Color/Black		Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray Black	Use to enable or disable color scanning. Automatically detect: Automatically scans documents in color if at least one page has color. Color: Scans documents in color. Black/Gray: Scans documents in grayscale. Black: Scans documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
		Original Size		Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.

Table 3-13 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Content Orientation	Orientation	Automatically Detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.
		Image Adjustment	Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
			Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
			Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
			Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
			Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.

Table 3-13 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
			Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.
		Optimize Text/Picture			
		Erase Edges		Use inches Back side erase Front side erase	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Cropping Options		Do not crop Crop to content Crop to paper	Use this menu item to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.
		Automatically Straighten			
		Blank Page Suppression		Disabled Enabled	Use to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
		Multi-feed Detection		Disabled Enabled*	This setting stops the scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
		Create Multiple Files		Disabled Enabled	Enable this item to scan pages into separate files based on a specified page limit. A page is one side of an original document. JPEG and TIFF have a limit of one page per file.

Table 3-13 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Notification		Do not notify Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails Print E-mail	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully. Print: Select to print the notification at this printer. E-mail: Select to receive the notification to an email account.
			Include Thumbnail		Select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the job in your notification.
			Notification Email		E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then type the email address for the notification.
Scan to USB Drive	Destination				
	Job Name				
	Options	File Type and Resolution			

Table 3-13 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Original sides		1-sided 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
		Color/Black		Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray Black	Use to enable or disable color scanning. Automatically detect: Automatically scans documents in color if at least one page has color. Color: Scans documents in color. Black/Gray: Scans documents in grayscale. Black: Scans documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
		Original Size		Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
		Content Orientation		Automatically detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.

Table 3-13 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Image Adjustment	Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
			Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
			Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
			Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
			Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
			Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.

Table 3-13 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Optimize Text/Picture		Manually Adjust* Text Printed picture Photograph	Use to optimize the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy when text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
		Erase Edges		Use inches Back side erase Front side erase	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Cropping Options		Do not crop Crop to content Crop to paper	Use this menu item to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.
		Automatically Straighten			
		Blank Page Suppression		Disabled Enabled	Use to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.

Table 3-13 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Multi-feed Detection		Disabled Enabled*	This setting stops the scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
		Create Multiple Files		Disabled Enabled	Enable this item to scan pages into separate files based on a specified page limit. A page is one side of an original document. JPEG and TIFF have a limit of one page per file.
		Notification		Do not notify Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails Print E-mail	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully. Print: Select to print the notification at this printer. E-mail: Select to receive the notification to an email account.
			Include Thumbnail		Select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the job in your notification.
			Notification Email		E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then type the email address for the notification.
Scan to Job Storage				Folder Job Name	

Fax menu (fax models only)

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Fax menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-14 Fax menu (fax models only)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Dialing Prefix				
Fax Recipients				
Quick Sets and Defaults				
Options	Original Sides		1-sided* 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
	Resolution		Standard (100 x 200dpi)* Fine (200 x 200dpi) Superfine (300 x 300dpi)	Select the resolution for outgoing faxes. If you increase the resolution, faxes might be clearer but they could transmit more slowly. Some file types, for example a file that will be processed with OCR, require a specific resolution. When these file types are selected, the Resolution setting might be automatically changed to a valid value.
	Original Size		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
	Content Orientation	Orientation	Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait: This setting means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape: This setting means the long edge of the page is along the top.

Table 3-14 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Image Adjustment	Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
		Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
		Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
		Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
		Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
		Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.

Table 3-14 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Optimize Text/Picture	Manually Adjust*	Optimize For: Text Printed picture Photograph	Optimizes the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy where text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
	Blank Page Suppression		Disabled* Enabled	Prevents blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
	Multi-feed Detection		Disabled Enabled*	Use this feature to prevent multiple pages being fed through the document feeder during document scans.
	Notification		Do not notify* Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails	Use to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.
			Print E-mail	Print: Select to print the notification at this printer. E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then enter the email address for the notification.

Table 3-14 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
		Include Thumbnail		When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.
		Notification E-mail address		Provide the email address that will receive notifications.
		2-Sided Format	Book-style* Flip-style	Use to configure the default style for 2-sided print jobs. If the Book-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed the right way up. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the left edge. If the Flip-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed upside-down. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the top edge.

Print menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Print menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-15 Print Options menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Print from Job Storage	Stored Job to Print	Untitled Stored Faxes	Print a job stored on the printer.
Print from USB Drive	Stored Job to Print	Choose file to print on USB drive.	Print a job stored on a USB drive.
Fax Polling	Fax Polling Number		

Supplies menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Supplies menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-16 Supplies menu

First level	Values	Description
Supplies Summary		

Table 3-16 Supplies menu (continued)

First level	Values	Description
Black Cartridge	Status	
Cyan Cartridge	Order HP Part	
Magenta Cartridge	Pages Printed	
Yellow Cartridge	Approximate Pages Remaining	
Toner Collection Unit	Status	
Transfer Kit	Order HP Part	
Fuser Kit		
Document Feeder Kit		
Stapler 1		

Trays menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Trays menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-17 Trays menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Tray 1 Tray 2–x	Size	Select paper size from a list of supported sizes.	Choose the paper size for the tray
	Type	Select paper type from a list of supported types.	Choose the paper type for the tray.

Troubleshooting menu

To display: At the product control panel, select the Support Tools menu, and then select the Troubleshooting menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-18 Troubleshooting

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Configuration/Status Pages	• Settings Menu Map • Current Settings Page • Configuration Page • How to Connect Page • Supplies Status Page • sage Page • File Directory Page • Web Services Status Page • Color Usage Job Log				Select the configuration/Status reports to review, and then touch the Print or View button.
Reports					
Other Pages	• Demonstration Page • RGB Samples • CMYK Samples • PCL Font List • PS Font List				
Event Log				Print	Prints the 50 most recent events in the Event Log. For each event, the printed log shows the error number, page count, error code, and description or personality.
Paper Path Page				View Print	Shows how many pages were printed from each tray.
Fax (Fax is optional)	Fax T.30 Trace	Print T.30 Report		Print	Use to print or configure the fax T.30 trace report. T.30 is the standard that specifies handshaking, protocols, and error correction between fax machines.

Table 3-18 Troubleshooting (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		When to Print Report		Never automatically print* Print after every fax Print only after fax send jobs Print after any fax error Print only after fax send errors Print only after fax receive errors	Configure the T.30 report to print after certain events. You can choose to print the report after every fax job, every fax job sent, every fax job received, every send error, or every receive error.
	Fax V.34			Normal* Off	Use to disable V.34 modulations if several fax failures have occurred or if phone line conditions require it.
	Fax Speaker Mode			Normal* Diagnostic	Used by a technician to evaluate and diagnose fax issues by listening to the sounds of fax modulations
	Fax Log Entries			On Off*	The standard fax log includes basic information such as the time and whether the fax was successful. The detailed fax log shows the intermediate results of the redial process not shown in the standard fax log.
Print Quality Pages	Print Fuser Test Page			Print	Use to print pages that help you resolve problems with print quality.
Diagnostic Tests					
	Continuous Scan			2-sided	
	Run Fax Test			Start	Use this menu to perform a test on specific components within the product to determine whether the components are functioning correctly.

Table 3-18 Troubleshooting (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Retrieve Diagnostic Data				Insert a US drive into the USB port. The exported data might contain personally identifiable information.	Create files that contain information about the product that can help identify the cause of problems.
Generate Debug Data				Start	

Maintenance menu

Learn about the Maintenance menu.

Backup/Restore menu

To display: At the product control panel, select Support Tools and then Maintenance, and then select the Backup/Restore menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-19 Backup/Restore menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Backup Data	Enable Scheduled Backups	Backup Time	Enter a time	
		Days Between Backups	Enter the number of days	
	Backup Now			
	Export Last Backup			
Restore Data			Insert a USB drive that contains the backup file.	

Calibration/Cleaning menu

To display: At the product control panel, select the Maintenance menu, and then select the **Calibrate/Cleaning** menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-20 Calibrate/Cleaning menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Calibration/Cleaning Page		Print	Use to process the cleaning page that was created by using the Create Cleaning Page menu. The process takes up to 1.5 minutes.

Table 3-20 Calibrate/Cleaning menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Calibration		Start	The product automatically calibrates itself at various times. However, you can calibrate the product immediately if you see problems with print quality. Use this feature to perform a full calibration, which can take up to three minutes. Use this calibration if the color layers seem to be shifted on the page. Before calibrating the product, make sure that the **Ready** indicator displays on the control-panel display. If a job is in progress, the calibration occurs when that job is complete.
Delay Calibration at Wake/Power On		No Delay Delay 15 minutes	Controls the timing of power-on calibration when the product wakes up or is turned on. Wake: Select if you are not using the feature and want to print jobs immediately when the product wakes up or is turned on, before calibration begins. No: The product will calibrate immediately when it wakes up or is turned on. The product will not print any jobs until it finishes calibrating. Yes: Enables the product that is asleep to accept print jobs before it calibrates. It might start calibrating before it has printed all the jobs it has received. This option allows quicker printing when coming out of sleep mode or when you turn the product on, but print quality might be reduced. **NOTE:** For the best results, allow the product to calibrate before printing. Print jobs performed before calibration might not be of the highest quality.

USB Firmware Upgrade menu

To display: At the product control panel, select the Maintenance menu, and then select the **USB Firmware Upgrade** menu.

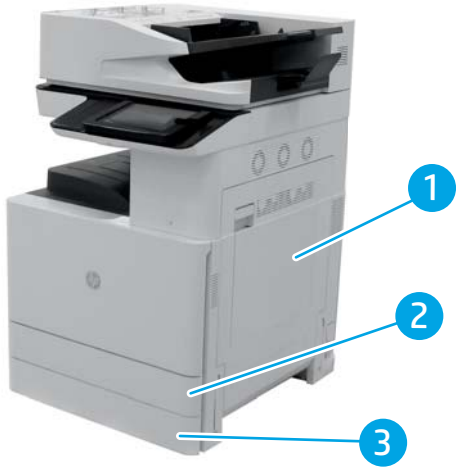
Insert a USB storage device with a firmware upgrade bundle into the USB port, and follow the on-screen instructions.

Clear paper jams

Learn about clearing paper jams.

Paper jam locations

Learn about paper jam locations.



1	Tray 1
2	Tray 2
3	Tray 3

13.A1 tray 1 paper jam

Learn about A1 tray 1 paper jams.

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to the Tray 1. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.A1.XX Jam in tray 1

1. Gently remove the jammed paper.

2. Open and then close the front door to resume printing.

13.A2, 13.A3 tray 2, tray 3 paper jam

Learn about A2, 13.A3 tray 2, tray 3 paper jams.

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to Tray 2 or Tray 3. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.A2.XX Jam in tray 2
- 13.A3.XX Jam in tray 3

CAUTION: The fuser can be hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before handling it.

NOTE: The procedure to clear a paper jam in Tray 3 is the same as for Tray 2. Only Tray 2 is shown here.

1. Open the right door.

2. Gently remove any jammed paper.

3. Close the right door.

4. Open the tray.

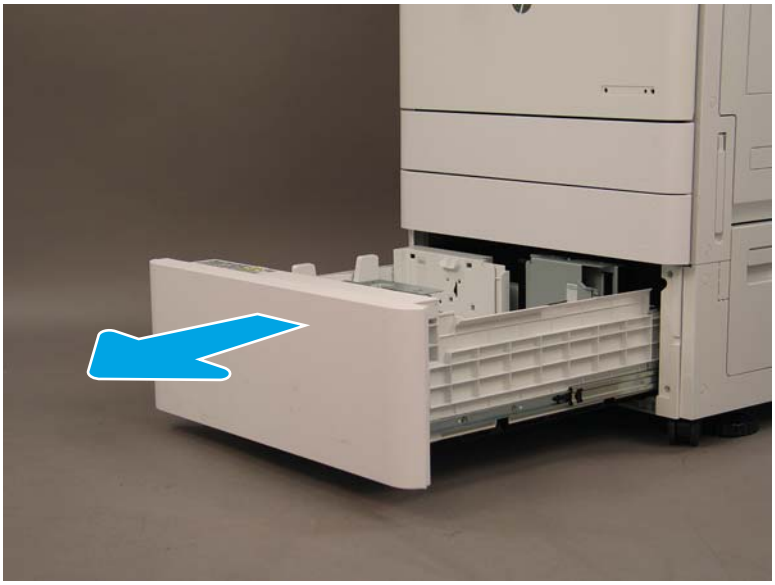
5. Gently remove any jammed paper.

6. Close the tray. Printing automatically resumes.

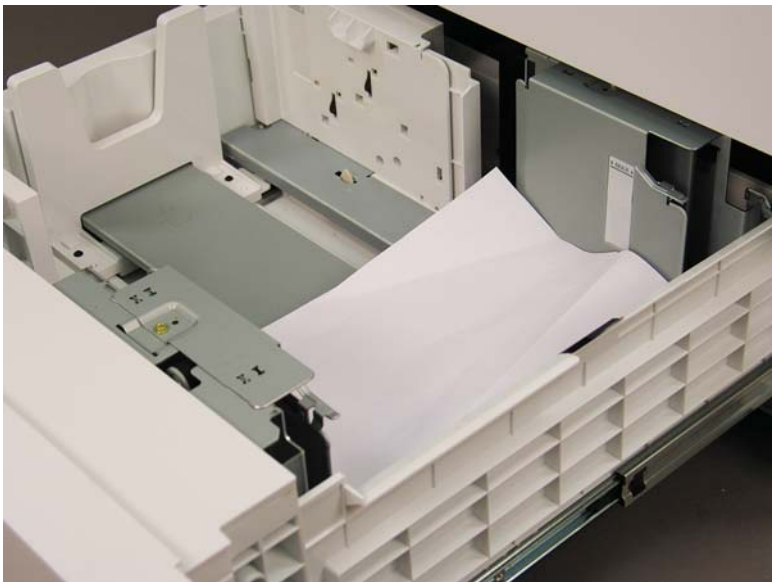
Clear paper jams in the Bottom HCI

Learn about clearing paper jams in the bottom HCI.

1. Open the HCI.



2. Remove any jammed paper.



3. Close the HCI.

Service mode (tech mode; du models)

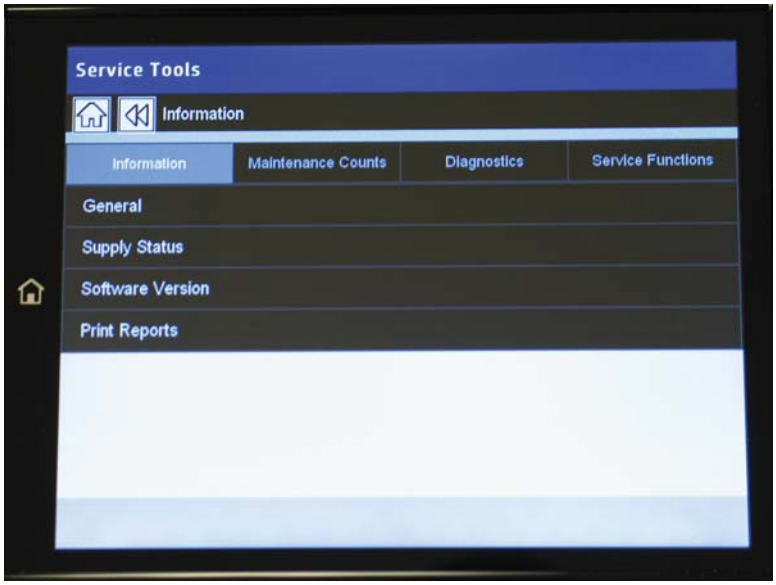
Learn about service mode (tech mode; du models).

Entering service mode

Learn about entering service mode.

1. From the control panel, select **Support tools** and then **Service**.
2. Enter the Service PIN ID.
   - 04087617
3. Select **Service tools**.

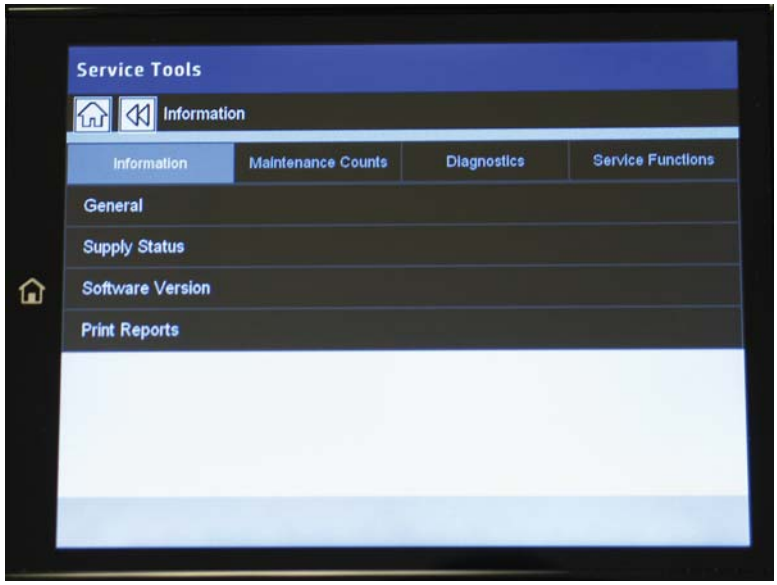
Figure 3-34 Service tools view



Service mode menu tree

Learn about the service mode menu tree.

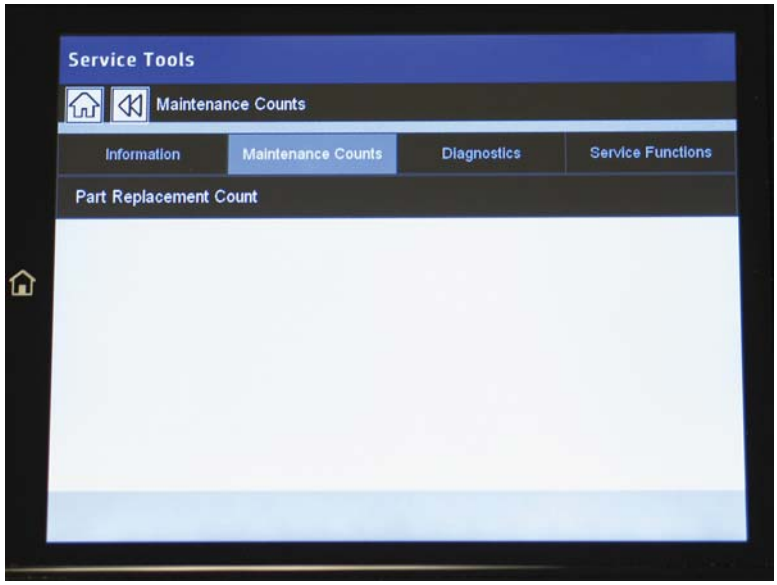
Figure 3-35 Information



Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Information	General	Engine Board Serial Number	
	Supply Status	Customer Replacement Unit	Toner (CMYK)
		Field Replacement Unit	Imaging Unit (CMYK)
			Development Unit (CMYK)
			TCU
			Intermediate transfer belt (ITB)
			ITB cleaner
			Transfer roller/T2 roller
			Fuser
			Tray x rollers
			Flow ADF Roller
	Software Version	System Firmware Version	
		Main Firmware Version	
		Engine Firmware Version	
		Boot ROM Version	
		File System Version	
		Flow ADF Firmware Version	
		Finisher Version	
		Scanner Version	
		Scan Control Version	
		Tray 2 Version	

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
		Tray 3 Version	
		Tray 4 Version	
		Tray 5 Version	
		Tray 6 Version	
		EP Version	
		Fuser Version	
		TR Version	
		Toner Version	
		Print CMS Version	
		Copy CMS Version	
		Scan CMS Version	
	Print Reports	Supplies Information	
		Full Color Plane Registration	
		Color Plane Registration	

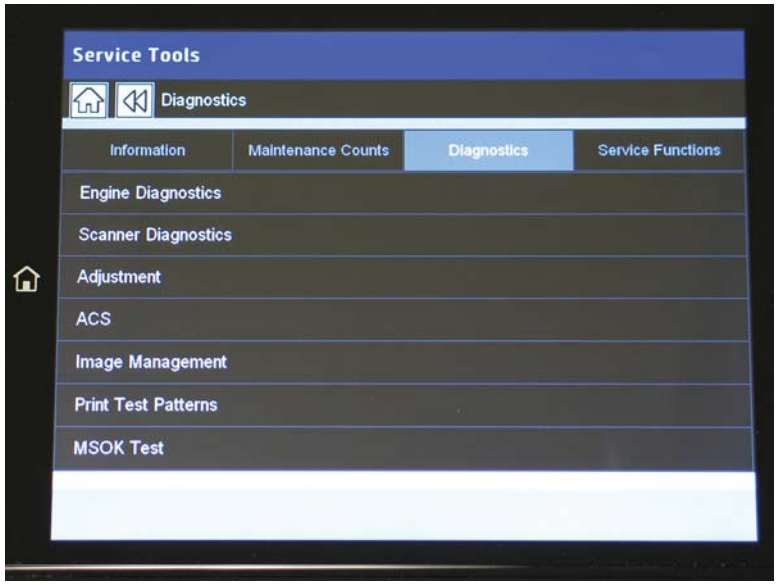
Figure 3-36 Maintenance counts



Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Maintenance counts	Part Replacement Count	Toner Cartridge (CMYK)	
		Imaging Unit (CMYK)	
		Development Unit (CMYK)	
		Image Transfer Belt (ITB)	
		ITB cleaner	

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
		Fuser	
		Tray x rollers	
		Flow ADF Pickup Roller	

Figure 3-37 Diagnostics



Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Diagnostics	Engine Diagnostics	Engine NVM Initialization	
		Engine NVM Read/Write	
		Engine Test Routines	
	Scanner Diagnostics	Shading Test	Shade and Print Report
			Print Last Shade Report
			Shade and Print Report (Flow ADF)
			Print Last Shade Report (Flow ADF)
		Scanner/Flow ADF NVM Read/ Write	
		Scanner/Flow ADF Test Routines	
	Adjustment	Print Adjustment	Image Position
			Print Test Patterns
		Copy Adjustment	Image Position
		Scan Area Adjustment	Automatic Adjustment
			Manual Adjustment

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
		Flow ADF Adjustment	Automatic Adjustment
			Manual Adjustment
	ACS	ACS Level Adjustment	[1–5]: 3*
		ACS Page Adjustment	[1–5]: 5*
	Image Management	Auto Tone Adjustment Activation	Normal
			Full
	Print Test Patterns		

Figure 3-38 Service functions

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Service Functions	Main Memory Clear		
	Debug Log	Job Status	
		Details	
	Capture Log	All	
		Period	Start Date/End Date
	Transfer Assembly Control Mode	T2 Control Mode	Paper Group/Paper Side/Paper Direction/T2 PWM
	Envelope Rotate	Off	
		90 degrees	
		180 degrees	

Information

Learn more service mode information.

General

Learn general information about the menus.

Information > General

This menu displays the following information:

- Machine serial number

Supply status

Learn about supply status.

Information > Supply Status > Customer Replacement Unit

- This menu displays the printer's customer replacement unit status. Users can select one item in the list to check the information of the selected unit.

Field replacement unit (FRU)

Information > Supply Status > Field Replacement Unit

- This menu displays the printer's field replacement unit status. Users can select one item in the list to check the information of the selected unit.

In this menu, there are five columns: Item, Threshold, Status, Count, and Maximum Life.

- Status: This column shows the current status of the selected item.
  - OK: The current count is smaller than the default warning value.
  - Check: The current count is bigger than the default warning value.
  - OFF: The current count exceeds the maximum life.
- Count: This column shows the current count of the selected item.
- Maximum Life: This column shows the maximum capacity of the selected item.

The technician can edit the default warning value within the given threshold.

Selecting some items will enable the reset button to reset the current count to zero after replacing the unit.

Software version

Learn about the software version.

Information > Software Version

- This menu displays the version of the software installed on the printer.

Print reports

Learn how to print reports.

Information > Print Reports

This menu displays reports that can be printed from the system. The following reports are available to print:

- Supplies Information
- Auto Toning History

Information > Print Reports > Auto Toning History

NOTE: TRC means Tone Reproduction Curve.

This report shows a history of execution of the TRC control. The TRC control preserves color consistency against changes in supplies resulting from long-time use and environmental change. The purpose of the history report is to check if the TRC control is working normally.

- If the TRC control performs normally, **Pass** count must be a non-zero value and **Fail** count must be zero.
- If **Fail** count is not zero, check the image density sensor.

Maintenance counts

Learn about Maintenance counts.

Part replacement count

Learn about part replacement count.

Maintenance Counts > Part Replacement Count

- This menu displays the replacement counts for the system parts. Users can select one group and press **OK** to see the exact name of the part and the occurrence of the replacement.

  The following table shows replaceable parts groups of the system:

  Table 3-21 **Part Replacement Count**

Unit	Item	Sensing Method
Toner Cartridge	Toner (C)	Auto Sensing
Toner Cartridge	Toner (M)	Auto Sensing
Toner Cartridge	Toner (Y)	Auto Sensing
Toner Cartridge	Toner (K)	Auto Sensing
Imaging Unit	Imaging Unit (C)	Auto Sensing
Imaging Unit	Imaging Unit (M)	Auto Sensing
Imaging Unit	Imaging Unit (Y)	Auto Sensing
Imaging Unit	Imaging Unit (K)	Auto Sensing
Fuser	Fuser	Auto Sensing
Transfer	Transfer Roller	Count Clear
Roller	Tray 2 Roller	Count Clear
Roller	Tray 3 Roller	Count Clear
Roller	Tray 4 Roller	Count Clear
Roller	Tray 5 Roller	Count Clear
Flow ADF Roller	Flow ADF Roller	Count Clear

Diagnostics

Learn about diagnostics.

Engine diagnostics

Learn about the engine diagnostics.

Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine NVM Initialization

- This menu initializes all engine NVM values to the default.

Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine NVM Read/Write

Table 3-22 Engine Diagnostics (Engine NVM Read/Write)

Purpose	To change a configuration value for the engine firmware
Operation procedure	When the main **NVM Read/Write** window displays, users can navigate through the list of codes with descriptions and saved values. Users can also input a code through the text box to find a configuration value directly. After selecting one value, press the **Edit** button to open an interface for user input.

Table 3-23 Engine NVM Read/Write codes

Code	Display	Meaning	Default	Max/Min
112–0120	Manual Color Registration X-Offset Yellow	Distant from hsync to lsync (multi-hsync) for yellow	100	200/0
112–0130	Manual Color Registration X-Offset Magenta	Distant from hsync to lsync (multi-hsync) for magenta	100	200/0
112–0140	Manual Color Registration X-Offset Cyan	Distant from hsync to lsync (multi-hsync) for cyan	100	200/0
112–0150	Manual Color Registration X-Offset Cyan	Distant from hsync to lsync (multi-hsync) for black	100	200/0
112–0160	Manual Color Registration Y-Offset Yellow	Distant from psync to image area for yellow	200	400/0
112–0170	Manual Color Registration Y-Offset Magenta	Distant from psync to image area for magenta	200	400/0
112–0180	Manual Color Registration Y-Offset Cyan	Distant from psync to image area for cyan	200	400/0
112–0190	Manual Color Registration Y-Offset Black	Distant from psync to image area for balck	200	400/0
112–0240	Manual Color Registration Yellow	Image area left width for yellow	500	1000/0
112–0250	Manual Color Registration Right Width Yellow	Image area right width for yellow	500	1000/0
112–0260	Manual Color Registration Left Width Magenta	Image area left width for magenta	500	1000/0

Table 3-23 Engine NVM Read/Write codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning	Default	Max/Min
112–0270	Manual Color Registration Right Width Magenta	Image area right width for magenta	500	1000/0
112–0280	Manual Color Registration Left Width Cyan	Image area left width for cyan	500	1000/0
112–0290	Manual Color Registration Right Width Cyan	Image area right width for cyan	500	1000/0
112–0300	Manual Color Registration Left Width Balck	Image area left width for black	500	1000/0
112–0310	Manual Color Registration Right Width Black	Image area right width for black	500	1000/0
112–0320	Color Registration Laser Scanner Assembly Skew Yellow	Laser scanner assembly skew for yellow	200	400/0
112–0330	Color Registration Laser Scanner Assembly Skew Magenta	Laser scanner assembly skew for magenta	200	400/0
112–0340	Color Registration Laser Scanner Assembly Skew Cyan	Laser scanner assembly skew for cyan	200	400/0

Engine test routines

- Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine Test Routines

Table 3-24 Engine Diagnostics (Engine Test Routines)

Purpose	To perform test routines for the engine
Operation procedure	When the main Engine Test Routines window displays, users can navigate through the list of routines and descriptions that display. Users can directly input an EDC code through the text box to search for a routine. A maximum of three routines can be selected at the same time. After selecting one or more routines, press the **OK** button to open the test window. The selected routines will display and users can start/start the selected test routine.
Verification	N/A
Specification	N/A
Reference	See the following table.

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes

Code	Display	Meaning
100-0041	Yellow drum motor	Yellow drum BLDC motor is on/off
100-0042	Magenta drum motor	Magenta drum BLDC motor is on/off

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning
100-0043	Cyan drum motor	Cyan drum BLDC motor is on/off
100-0044	Black drum motor	Black drum BLDC motor is on/off
100-0046	Yellow drum motor ready	Detect if yellow drum BLDC motor runs at normal speed
100-0047	Magenta drum motor ready	Detect if magenta drum BLDC motor runs at normal speed
100-0048	Cyan drum motor ready	Detect if cyan drum BLDC motor runs at normal speed
100-0049	Black drum motor ready	Detects if black drum BLDC motor is running at normal speed
100-0080	ITB Engage Motor	ITB engage motor on/off
100-0090	ITB Engage Sensor	Detects if the ITB engage is on or off
100-0140	Duplex Motor Forward	Duplex motor forward on/off
100-0141	Duplex Motor Forward Slow	Duplex motor forward slow on/off
100-0142	Duplex Motor Forward Slowest	Duplex motor forward slowest on/off
100-0160	Duplex Fan 1 Run	Start/stop duplex fan 1 run
100-0180	Duplex Fan 1 Run Ready	Detects if duplex fan 1 is running at normal speed
100-0200	Tray 2 Elevating Motor	Tray 2 elevate motor on/off
100-0210	Tray 3 Elevating Motor	Tray 3 elevate motor on/off (optional)
100-0220	Tray 4 Elevating Motor	Tray 4 elevate motor on/off (optional)
100-0230	Tray 5 Elevating Motor	Tray 5 elevate motor on/off (optional)
100-0231	Tray 6 Elevating Motor	Tray 6 elevate motor on/off (optional)
100-0240	Waste Toner Motor	Waste toner motor on/off
100-0241	Waste Toner LED	Waste Toner LED on/off
100-0250	Waste Toner Full Sensor	Detects if the Waste Toner is full

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning
100-026 0	SMPS Fan Run	Start/stop SMPS fan run
100-027 0	SMPS Fan Run Ready	Detects if SMPS fan is running at normal speed
100-034 0	Feed Motor	Feed motor is on/off
100-034 1	Feed Motor Slow	Feed motor slow is on/off
100-034 2	Feed Motor Slowest	Feed motor slowest is on/off
100-037 0	Tray 2 Pickup Motor	Tray 2 motor is on/off
100-037 1	Tray 2 Pickup Motor Slow	Tray 2 motor slow on/off
100-037 2	Tray 2 Pickup Motor Slowest	Tray 2 motor slowest on/off
100-038 0	Tray 3 Pickup Motor	Tray 3 motor is on/off
100-038 1	Tray 3 Pickup Motor Slow	Tray 3 motor slow on/off
100-038 2	Tray 3 Pickup Motor Slowest	Tray 3 motor slowest on/off
100-039 0	Tray 4 Pickup Motor	Tray 4 motor is on/off
100-039 1	Tray 4 Pickup Motor Slow	Tray 4 motor slow on/off
100-039 2	Tray 4 Pickup Motor Slowest	Tray 4 motor slowest on/off
100-040 0	Tray 5 Pickup Motor	Tray 5 motor is on/off
100-040 1	Tray 5 Pickup Motor Slow	Tray 5 motor slow on/off
100-040 2	Tray 5 Pickup Motor Slowest	Tray 5 motor slowest on/off
100-041 0	Registration Motor	Registration motor is on/off
100-041 1	Registration Motor Slow	Registration motor slow on/off
100-041 2	Registration Motor Slowest	Registration motor slowest on/off
100-042 0	Tray 1 Feed Motor	Tray 1 Feed motor is on/off

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning
100-0421	Tray 1 Feed Motor Slow	Tray 1 Feed motor slow on/off
100-0422	Tray 1 Feed Motor Slowest	Tray 1 Feed motor slowest on/off
100-0430	Exit 2 Motor Forward	Exit 2 motor is on/off
100-0431	Exit 2 Motor Forward Slow	Exit 2 motor slow on/off
100-0432	Exit 2 Motor Forward Slowest	Exit 2 motor slowest on/off
100-0490	Duplex 2 Motor Forward	Duplex motor forward is on/off
100-0491	Duplex 2 Motor Forward Slow	Duplex motor forward slow is on/off
100-0492	Duplex 2 Motor Forward Slowest	Duplex motor forward slowest is on/off
100-0600	Return Motor Forward	Return motor forward is on/off
100-0601	Return Motor Forward Slow	Return motor forward slow is on/off
100-0602	Return Motor Forward Slowest	Return motor forward slowest is on/off
100-0603	Return Motor Backward	Return motor backward is on/off
100-0604	Return Motor Backward Slow	Return motor backward slow is on/off
100-0605	Return Motor Backward Slowest	Return motor backward slowest is on/off
100-0700	Tray 6 Pickup Motor	Tray 6 motor is on/off
100-0701	Tray 6 Pickup Motor Slow	Tray 6 motor slow on/off
100-0702	Tray 6 Pickup Motor Slowest	Tray 6 motor slowest on/off
101-0101	Tray 4 Shift Gate Solenoid	Tray 4 shift gate solenoid on/off
101-0140	Tray 4 Feed Motor	Tray 4 feed motor on/off
101-0141	Tray 4 Feed Motor Slow	Tray 54 feed motor slow on/off
101-0142	Tray 4 Feed Motor Slowest	Tray 4 feed motor slowest on/off

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning
101-0150	Tray 5 Feed Motor	Tray 5 feed motor on/off
101-0151	Tray 5 Feed Motor Slow	Tray 5 feed motor slow on/off
101-0152	Tray 5 Feed Motor Slowest	Tray 5 feed motor slowest on/off
101-0160	Tray 6 Feed Motor	Tray 6 feed motor on/off
101-0161	Tray 6 Feed Motor Slow	Tray 6 feed motor slow on/off
101-0162	Tray 6 Feed Motor Slowest	Tray 6 feed motor slowest on/off
101-0190	Output Bin Full Sensor	Detects when paper is at output bin full sensor
101-0191	Output Bin 2 Full Sensor	Detects when paper is at output bin 2 full sensor
101-0206	Developer Suction Fan Run	Start/stop developer fan run
101-0207	Developer Suction Fan Run Ready	Detects if developer suction fan runs at normal speed
101-0270	Tray 1 Clutch	Tray 1 clutch on/off
101-0271	Tray 1 Solenoid	Tray 1 solenoid on/off
101-0280	Return Gate Solenoid	Return Gate solenoid on/off
101–1000	Power 24V1	
101–1001	Power 24V2	
101–1002	Power 24V3	
101–1003	Power 24V4	
102-0000	Tray 2 Home Position	Detects when Tray 2 is closed
102-0001	Tray 2 Lock Detect	Detect Tray 2 lock unit
102-0002	Tray 2 Lock Position	Check Tray 2 lock position
102-0010	Tray 2 Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Tray 2

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning
102-0041	Tray 2 Paper Size Read	Detects paper Tray 2 size.
102-0050	Tray 2 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 2 is elevated to the sensor
102-0070	Tray 3 Home Position	Detects when Tray 3 is closed
102-0071	Tray 3 Lock Detect	Detect Tray 3 lock unit
102-0072	Tray 3 Lock Position	Check Tray 3 lock position
102-0080	Tray 3 Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Tray 3
102-0111	Tray 3 Paper Size Read	Detects paper Tray 3 size.
102-0120	Tray 3 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 3 is elevated to the sensor
102-0140	Tray 4 Home Position	Detects when Tray 4 is closed
102-0141	Tray 4 Lock Detect	Detect Tray 4 lock unit
102-0142	Tray 4 Lock Position	Check Tray 4 lock position
102-0150	Tray 4 Paper Empty Sensor	Detect when paper is in Tray 4
102-0181	Tray 4 Paper Size Read	Detects Paper Tray 4 size.
102-0190	Tray 4 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 4 is elevated to the sensor
102–0201	Tray 4 Level Sensor 1	Detects when the stack height of Tray 4 level sensor 1
102–0202	Tray 4 Level Sensor 2	Detects when the stack height of Tray 4 level sensor 2
102-0210	Tray 5 Home Position	Detect when Tray 5 is closed.
102-0211	Tray 5 Lock Detect	Detect Tray 5 lock unit
102-0212	Tray 5 Lock Position	Check Tray 5 lock position
102-0220	Tray 5 Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Tray 5
102-0251	Tray 5 Paper Size Read	Detects Paper Tray 5 size

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning
102-0260	Tray 5 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 5 is elevated to the sensor
102–0271	Tray 5 Level Sensor 1	Detects when the stack height of Tray 5 level sensor 1
102–0272	Tray 5 Level Sensor 2	Detects when the stack height of Tray 5 level sensor 2
102–0273	Tray 5 Install Sensor 1	Detect when Tray 5 install sensor 1
102–0274	Tray 5 Install Sensor 2	Detect when Tray 5 install sensor 2
102-0280	Tray 1 Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Bypass Tray (Tray 1)
102-0281	Tray 1 Paper Size Read	Detect Paper Tray 1 size
102-0292	Prefeed 2 Sensor	Detects when paper is at prefeed 2 sensor
102-0300	Tray 3 Feed Sensor (or Door Open)	Detects when paper is at Tray 3 feed sensor (optional)
102-0301	Prefeed 3 Sensor	Detects when paper is at prefeed 3 sensor
102-0320	Tray 4 Feed Sensor (or Door Open)	Detects when paper is at Tray 4 feed sensor (optional)
102-0321	Prefeed 4 Sensor	Detects when paper is at prefeed 4 sensor
102-0330	Tray 4 Door Open Sensor	Detect when Tray 4 is closed
102-0343	Prefeed 5 Sensor	Detects when paper is at prefeed 5 sensor
102-0350	Tray 5 Door Open Sensor	Detect when Tray 5 is closed
102-0351	Tray 6 Door Open Sensor	Detect when Tray 6 is closed
102-0353	Prefeed 6 Sensor	Detects when paper is at prefeed 6 sensor (optional)
102-0360	Registration Sensor	Detects when paper is at the registration sensor
102-0361	Fuser Out Sensor	Detects when paper is at the fuser out sensor.
102-0371	Exit 2 Sensor	Detects when paper is at exit 2 sensor.
102-0380	Duplex Jam 1 Sensor	Detects when paper is at duplex jam 1 sensor.

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning
102-0390	Duplex Jam 2 Sensor	Detects when paper is at duplex jam 2 sensor.
102-0435	Front Cover Sensor	Detects status of front cover
102-0436	Side Cover Sensor	Detects status of side cover
102-0480	Tray 6 Paper Empty Sensor	Detect when paper is in Tray 6
102-0520	Tray 6 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 6 is elevated to the sensor
102-0531	Tray 6 Level Sensor 1	Detects when the stack height of Tray 6 level sensor 1
102-0532	Tray 6 Level Sensor 2	Detects when the stack height of Tray 6 level sensor 2
102-0533	Tray 6 Install Sensor 1	Detect when Tray 6 install sensor 1
102-0534	Tray 6 Install Sensor 2	Detect when Tray 6 install sensor 2
102-0730	Tray 4 Knock Up Home Sensor	Detect when Tray 4 knock up home sensor
102-0731	Tray 4 Shift Tray Paper Empty Sensor	Detect when paper is in Tray 4 shift tray
102-0732	Tray 4 Shift Tray Level Sensor 1	Detects when the stack height of Tray 4 shift tray level sensor 1
102-0733	Tray 4 Shift Tray Level Sensor 2	Detects when the stack height of Tray 4 shift tray level sensor 2
102-0734	Tray 4 Shift Plate Home Sensor	Detect when Tray 4 shift plate home sensor
102-0735	Tray 4 Shift Plate End Sensor	Detect when Tray 4 shift plate end sensor
102-0736	Tray 4 Gate Solenoid Home Sensor	Detect when Tray 4 gate solenoid home sensor
104-0000	Waste Install Sensor	Detects if waste is installed
105-0000	Yellow MHV Bias	Yellow MHV bias voltage on at normal drive level
105-0010	Magenta MHV Bias	Magenta MHV bias voltage on at normal drive level
105-0020	Cyan MHV Bias	Cyan MHV bias voltage on at normal drive level
105-0030	Black MHV Bias	Black MHV bias voltage on at normal drive level

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning
106-0000	Yellow Developer Bias	Yellow developer bias voltage on at normal drive level
106-0010	Magenta Developer Bias	Magenta developer bias voltage on at normal drive level
106-0020	Cyan Developer Bias	Cyan developer bias voltage on at normal drive level
106-0030	Black Developer Bias	Black developer bias voltage on at normal drive level
106-0031	Black Developer AC Bias	Black developer bias AC voltage on at normal drive level
106-0032	Cyan Developer AC Bias	Cyan developer bias AC voltage on at normal drive level
106-0033	Magenta Developer AC Bias	Magenta developer bias AC voltage on at normal drive level
106-0034	Yellow Developer AC Bias	Yellow developer bias AC voltage on at normal drive level
106-0200	HVPS Installed	Detect HVPS unit
107-0033	THV(-) Bias	THV minus bias voltage on at normal drive level
107-0034	THV CC Bias	THV constant current plus bias voltage
107-0035	THV CV Bias	THV constant voltage plus bias voltage
107-0162	Yellow Eraser On	Yellow eraser lamp on/off
107-0163	Magenta Eraser On	Magenta eraser lamp on/off
107-0164	Cyan Eraser On	Cyan eraser lamp on/off
107-0165	Black Eraser On	Black eraser lamp on/off
107-0166	Yellow Eraser Detect	Detect yellow eraser status
107-0167	Magenta Eraser Detect	Detect magenta eraser status
107-0168	Cyan Eraser Detect	Detect cyan eraser status
107-0169	Black Eraser Detect	Detect black eraser status
107-0201	ITHV Yellow Bias	Transfer assembly yellow bias on/off

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning
107-0202	ITHV Magenta Bias	Transfer assembly magenta bias on/off
107-0203	ITHV Cyan Bias	Transfer assembly cyan bias on/off
107-0204	ITHV Black Bias	Transfer assembly black bias on/off
109-0000	Fuser Temperature A	Detects what the temperature A is on fuser
109-0010	Fuser Temperature B	Detects what the temperature B is on fuser
109-0011	LSU Temperature	LSU temperature
109-0012	Inner Temperature	Inner temperature
109-0013	Outer Temperature	Outer temperature
109-0014	Humidity	Humidity
109-0020	Fuser Fan Run Ready	Detects if fuser fan motor runs at normal speed
109-0021	Exit 2 Fan Run	Start/stop exit 2 fan run
109-0022	Exit 2 Fan Run Ready	Detects if exit 2 fan runs at normal speed
109-0023	Exit 3 Fan Run	Start/stop exit 3 fan run
109-0024	Exit 3 Fan Run Ready	Detects if exit 3 fan runs at normal speed
109–0025	Exit 4 Fan Run	Start/stop exit 4 fan run
109–0026	Exit 4 Fan Run Ready	Detects if exit 4 fan runs at normal speed
109-0030	Fuser Motor Forward	Fuser motor forward on/off
109-0034	Fuser Motor Ready	Detects if fuser motor runs at each speed
109-0040	Fuser Fan Run	Fuser fan motor on/off
109-0046	Exit Fan Run	Exit fan motor on/off
109-0047	Exit Fan Run Ready	Detects if exit fan runs at normal speed

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning
109-0130	Fuser Gap Motor	Fuser press control motor on/off
109-0140	Fuser Gap Home Sensor	Detects if the fuser press is located home position
109-0200	Detect Fuser Relay	Detect fuser relay status
109-0210	Detect Zero Cross Period	Detect zero cross period
109-0300	Fuser Installed	Detect fuser unit
110-0000	LSU Motor 1 Run Ready	Detects if LSU motor 1 runs at normal speed
110-0020	LUS Motor Fan 1 Run Ready	Detects if the LSU fan motor 1 runs at normal speed
110-0060	LSU Motor 1 Run	LSU motor 1 on/off
110-0080	LSU LD Power 1	LSU LD 1 power on/off (yellow)
110-0090	LSU LD Power 2	LSU LD 2 power on/off (magenta
110-0100	LSU LD Power 3	LSU LD 3 power on/off (cyan)
110-0110	LSU LD Power 4	LSU LD 4 power on/off (black)
110-0120	LSU Fan 1 Run	Start/stop the LSU fan run
110-0140	LSU HSync 1	Detect the LSU HSync 1 (yellow)
110-0150	LSU HSync 2	Detect the LSU HSync 2 (magenta)
110-0160	LSU HSync 3	Detect the LSU HSync 3 (cyan)
110-0170	LSU HSync 4	DetectsLSU HSync 4 (black)
110-0200	LSU Installed	Detect LSU
110-0320	LSU Shutter Open	Detects if the LSU shutter is open
110-0330	LSU Shutter Closed	Detects if the LSU shutter is closed
111-0000	Toner Dispense Motor Yellow	Toner dispense (supply) motor on/off

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning
111-0010	Toner Dispense Motor Magenta	Toner dispense (supply) motor on/off
111-0020	Toner Dispense Motor Cyan	Toner dispense (supply) motor on/off
111-0030	Toner Dispense Motor Black	Toner dispense (supply) motor on/off
111-0040	Toner Sensor Yellow	TC sensor in developer tank
111-0050	Toner Sensor Magenta	TC sensor in developer tank
111-0060	Toner Sensor Cyan	TC sensor in developer tank
111-0070	Toner Sensor Black	TC sensor in developer tank
111-0110	Toner Control Voltage Yellow	Yellow toner voltage on/off
111-0120	Toner Control Voltage Magenta	Magenta toner voltage on/off
111-0130	Toner Control Voltage Cyan	Cyan toner voltage on/off
111-0140	Toner Control Voltage Black	Black toner voltage on/off
111-0200	Toner Supply Lock Sensor Yellow	Yellow supply motor lock sensor
111-0210	Toner Supply Lock Sensor Magenta	Magenta supply motor lock sensor
111-0220	Toner Supply Lock Sensor Cyan	Cyan supply motor lock sensor
111-0230	Toner Supply Lock Sensor Black	Black supply motor lock sensor
111-0300	Toner Reservoir Motor Yellow	Yellow reservoir motor on/off
111-0310	Toner Reservoir Motor Magenta	Magenta reservoir motor on/off
111-0320	Toner Reservoir Motor Cyan	Cyan reservoir motor on/off
111-0330	Toner Reservoir Motor Black	Black reservoir motor on/off
111-0340	Toner Reservoir Level Yellow	Yellow reservoir motor on/off
111-0350	Toner Reservoir Level Magenta	Magenta reservoir motor on/off

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning
111-036 0	Toner Reservoir Level Cyan	Cyan reservoir level display
111-037 0	Toner Reservoir Level Black	Black reservoir level display
112-001 0	Clear Manual Offset Value of Color Registration	Clear manual offset value of color registration
112-010 1	Yellow Drum Home Sensor Status	Yellow drum home sensor status display
112-011 1	Magenta Drum Home Sensor Status	Magenta drum home sensor status display
112-012 1	Cyan Drum Home Sensor Status	Cyan drum home sensor status display
112-013 1	Black Drum Home Sensor Status	Black drum home sensor status display
112-020 0	ACR Shutter Motor Run	ACR shutter motor on/off
112-021 0	ACR Shutter Detect	Detect ACR shutter
112-022 0	ACR Shutter Open	ACR shutter open
112-023 0	ACR Shutter Close	ACR Shutter Close
112-030 0	Front ID Sensor P Read	Front ID sensor P value display
112-031 0	Front ID Sensor S Read	Front ID sensor S value display
112-032 0	Rear ID Sensor P Read	Rear ID sensor P value display
112-033 0	Rear ID Sensor S Read	Rear ID sensor S value display
112-034 0	Center ID Sensor P Read	Show center ID sensor P value
112-035 0	Center ID Sensor S Read	Show center ID sensor S value
113-000 0	Finisher Present Sensor	Detect if the finisher is in place
113-035 0	Finisher Entrance Sensor	Detects when paper is at entrance sensor
113-036 0	Finisher Exit Sensor	Detects when paper is at exit sensor
113-036 1	Finisher Compile Paper Sensor	Detect when a paper is at compile sensor

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning
113-037 0	Finisher Paddle Home Sensor	Detects paddle home position
113-038 0	Finisher Left Tamper Home Sensor	Detects lift tamper home position
113-039 0	Finisher Right Tamper Home Sensor	Detects right tamper home position
113-041 0	Finisher Stapler Door Sensor	Detects if stapler door cover is closed
113-042 0	Finisher Jam Cover Sensor	Detects if jam door cover is closed
113-043 0	Finisher Stapler Home Sensor	Detects stapler home position
113-044 0	Finisher Stapler Low Sensor	Detects stapler level
113-045 1	Finisher Stapler Ready Sensor	Detect stapler ready sensor
113-046 1	Finisher Ejector 1 Home Sensor	Detect ejector 1 home position
113-046 2	Finisher Ejector 2 Home Sensor	Detect ejector 2 home position
113-046 3	Finisher Ejector 2 Encoder Sensor	Detect ejector 2 encoder Sensor
113-047 0	Finisher Main Tray Home Sensor	Detects main tray home position
113-047 1	Finisher Main Tray Beam Sensor	Detect main tray beam sensor
113-047 2	Finisher Main Tray Low Limit Sensor	Detect main tray low limit sensor
113-047 3	Finisher Main Tray Encoder Sensor	Detect main tray encoder sensor
113-048 1	Finisher Paper Support Sensor	Detect paper support home sensor
113-049 1	Finisher Traverse Front Sensor	Detect traverse front home sensor
113-049 2	Finisher Traverse Rear Sensor	Detect traverse rear home sensor
113-050 1	Finisher Entrance Motor	Finisher entrance motor on/off
113-050 2	Finisher Exit Motor	Finisher exit motor on/off
113-051 0	Finisher Paddle Motor	Finisher paddle motor on/off

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning
113-052 0	Finisher Left Tamper Motor	Finisher left tamper motor on/off
113-053 0	Finisher Right Tamper Motor	Finisher right tamper motor on/off
113-055 0	Finisher Staple Unit Motor	Finisher staple unit motor on/off
113-056 1	Finisher Ejector 1 Motor	Finisher ejector 1 motor on/off
113-056 2	Finisher Ejector 2 Motor	Finisher ejector 2 motor on/off
113-056 3	Finisher Ejector 2 Reverse Motor	Finisher ejector 2 reverse direction on/off
113-057 0	Finisher Main Tray Motor	Finisher main tray motor on/off
113-057 1	Finisher Paper Support Motor	Finisher paper support motor on/off
113-058 1	Finisher Traverse Motor	Finisher staple unit traverse motor on/off
113-059 1	Finisher Paper Hold Solenoid	Finisher paper hold solenoid on/off
113-060 0	Finisher Punch Motor	Finisher punch motor on/off
113-061 0	Finisher Punch Encoder Sensor	Detect finisher punch encoder sensor
113-061 1	Finisher Punch Position Sensor	Detect finisher punch position sensor
113-061 2	Finisher Punch Home Sensor	Detect finisher punch home sensor
113-062 0	Finisher Hopper Install Sensor	Detect finisher punch hopper install sensor
113-062 1	Finisher Hopper Full Sensor	Detect finisher punch hopper full sensor
113-200 0	2 Bin Finisher Buffer Lift Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher buffer lift sensor
113-201 0	2 Bin Finisher Clamp Home Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher clamp home sensor
113-202 0	2 Bin Finisher Diverter Home Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher diverter home sensor
113-203 0	2 Bin Finisher Eject 1 Away Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher eject 1 away sensor
113-203 1	2 Bin Finisher Eject 1 Home Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher eject 1 home sensor

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning
113-2032	2 Bin Finisher Eject 1 Encoder Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher eject 1 encoder sensor
113-2040	2 Bin Finisher Eject 2 Home Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher eject 2 home sensor
113-2041	2 Bin Finisher Eject 2 Encoder Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher eject 2 encoder sensor
113-2050	2 Bin Finisher End Fence Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher end fence sensor
113-2060	2 Bin Finisher Paddle Home Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher paddle home sensor
113-2070	2 Bin Finisher Bridge Entrance Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher Bridge entrance sensor
113-2071	2 Bin Finisher IPTU Middle Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher Bridge Unit middle sensor
113-2080	2 Bin Finisher Entrance Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher entrance sensor
113-2090	2 Bin Finisher Main Exit Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher main exit sensor
113-2091	2 Bin Finisher Sub Exit Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher sub exit sensor
113-2100	2 Bin Finisher Buffer Exit Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher buffer exit sensor
113-2110	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Home Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler home sensor
113-2111	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Rear Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler rear sensor
113-2112	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Front Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler front sensor
113-2113	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Manual Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler manual sensor
113-2114	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Head Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler head sensor
113-2115	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Low Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler low sensor
113-2116	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Ready Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler ready sensor
113-2120	2 Bin Finisher Front Tamper Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher front tamper sensor
113-2130	2 Bin Finisher Rear Tamper Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher rear tamper sensor
113-2140	2 Bin Finisher Main Beam Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher main beam sensor

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning
113-2141	2 Bin Finisher Main Front Level Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher main front level sensor
113-2142	2 Bin Finisher Main Rear Level Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher main rear level sensor
113-2143	2 Bin Finisher Main Encoder Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher main encoder sensor
113-2144	2 Bin Finisher Main Full Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher main full sensor
113-2145	2 Bin Finisher Sub Full Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher sub full sensor
113-2150	2 Bin Finisher Booklet Paper Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher booklet paper sensor
113-2160	2 Bin Finisher Staple Paper Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher staple paper sensor
113-2161	2 Bin Finisher Staple Button Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher staple button sensor
113-2170	2 Bin Finisher Compile Paper Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher compile paper sensor
113-2180	2 Bin Finisher Bridge Cover Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher bridge cover sensor
113-2181	2 Bin Finisher Top Cover Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher top cover sensor
113-2182	2 Bin Finisher Front Door Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher front door sensor
113-2190	2 Bin Finisher Stack Top Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stack top sensor
113-2200	2 Bin Finisher Bridge Detect Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher bridge detect sensor
113-2201	2 Bin Finisher Punch Detect Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher punch detect sensor
113-2202	2 Bin Finisher Booklet Detect Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher booklet detect sensor
113-2210	2 Bin Finisher BM exit cam home sensor	Detects 2 bin finisher booklet exit cam home sensor
113-2500	2 Bin Finisher Buffer Lift Motor	2 bin finisher buffer lift motor on/off
113-2510	2 Bin Finisher Clamp Motor	2 bin finisher camp motor on/off
113-2520	2 Bin Finisher Diverter Motor	2 bin finisher diverter motor on/off
113-2530	2 Bin Finisher Eject 1 Motor	2 bin finisher eject 1 motor on/off

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning
113-2540	2 Bin Finisher Eject 2 Motor	2 bin finisher eject 2 motor on/off
113-2560	2 Bin Finisher Bridge Feed Motor	2 bin finisher bridge feed motor on/off
113-2570	2 Bin Finisher Entrance Motor	2 bin finisher entrance motor on/off
113-2580	2 Bin Finisher Exit Feed Motor	2 bin finisher exit feed motor on/off
113-2590	2 Bin Finisher End Fence Motor	2 bin finisher end fence motor on/off
113-2600	2 Bin Finisher Paddle Motor	2 bin finisher paddle motor on/off
113-2610	2 Bin Finisher Main Tray Motor	2 bin finisher main tray motor on/off
113-2620	2 Bin Finisher Staple Move Motor	2 bin finisher staple move motor on/off
113-2621	2 Bin Finisher Staple Head Motor	2 bin finisher staple head motor on/off
113-2630	2 Bin Finisher Front Tamper Motor	2 bin finisher front tamper motor on/off
113-2640	2 Bin Finisher Rear Tamper Motor	2 bin finisher rear tamper motor on/off
113-2650	2 Bin Finisher Manual Blue LED	2 bin finisher manual blue LED on/off
113-2651	2 Bin Finisher Manual Red LED	2 bin finisher Manual red LED on/off
113-2660	2 Bin Finisher BM exit cam Motor	
113-2670	2 Bin Finisher BM exit cam Solenoid	
113-3000	Booklet Stopper Home Sensor	Detect booklet Stopper home sensor
113-3010	Booklet Staple Home Sensor	Detect booklet staple home sensor
113-3020	Booklet Front Staple Empty Sensor	Detect booklet front staple empty sensor
113-3030	Booklet Rear Staple Empty Sensor	Detect booklet rear staple empty sensor
113-3040	Booklet Knife Home Sensor	Detect booklet knife home sensor
113-3050	Booklet Guide Home Sensor	Detect booklet guide home sensor

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning
113-3060	Booklet Diverter Home Sensor	Detect booklet Diverter home Sensor
113-3080	Booklet Tamper Home Sensor	Detect booklet tamper home sensor
113-3090	Booklet Paddle Home Sensor	Detect booklet paddle home sensor
113-3100	Booklet Entrance Paper Sensor	Detect booklet entrance paper sensor
113-3110	Booklet Tray Paper Sensor	Detect booklet fold output paper sensor
113-3120	Booklet Fold Exit Paper Sensor	Detect booklet fold exit paper sensor
113-3130	Booklet Press Home Sensor	Detect booklet press home sensor
113-3500	Booklet Feed Motor	Booklet feed motor on/off
113-3510	Booklet Fold Motor	Booklet fold motor on/off
113-3520	Booklet Stopper Solenoid	Booklet stopper solenoid on/off
113-3530	Booklet Stopper Motor	Booklet stopper motor on/off
113-3540	Booklet Tamper Motor	Booklet tamper motor on/off
113-3550	Booklet Knife Motor	Booklet knife motor on/off
113-3560	Booklet Diverter Motor	Booklet diverter motor on/off
113-3570	Booklet Press Motor	Booklet press motor on/off
113-3580	Booklet Paddle Motor	Booklet paddle motor on/off
113-3590	Booklet Guide Motor	Booklet guide motor on/off
113-3600	Booklet Staple Motor	Booklet staple motor on/off
113-4000	Punch Scan Home Sensor	Detect punch scan home sensor
113-4010	Punch Scan Edge 1 Sensor	Detect punch scan edge 1 sensor
113-4011	Punch Scan Edge 2 Sensor	Detect punch scan edge 2 sensor

Table 3-25 Engine Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Display	Meaning
113-4012	Punch Scan Edge 3 Sensor	Detect punch scan edge 3 sensor
113-4013	Punch Scan Edge 4 Sensor	Detect punch scan edge 4 sensor
113-4020	Punch Home Sensor	Detect punch home sensor
113-4030	Punch Position A Sensor	Detect punch position A sensor
113-4031	Punch Position B Sensor	Detect punch position B sensor
113-4040	Punch Encoder Sensor	Detect punch encoder sensor
113-4050	Punch Hopper Full Sensor	Detect punch hopper full sensor
113-4060	Punch Type 1 Detect Sensor	Detect punch type 1 detect sensor
113-4061	Punch Type 2 Detect Sensor	Detect punch type 2 detect sensor
113-4500	Punch Scan Motor	Punch scan motor on/off
113-4510	Punch Motor	Punch motor on/off

Fax diagnostics

Learn about the fax diagnostics.

Fax NVM Read/Write

- Diagnostics > Fax Diagnostics > Fax NVM Read/Write

Table 3-26 Fax Diagnostics)Fax Diagnostics Fax NVM Read/Write)

Purpose	To change a configuration value for fax firmware.
Operation procedure	When the main **NVM Read/Write** window displays, users can navigate through the list of configuration values and descriptions that display. Users can input a code through the text box to search for a configuration value. After selecting a value, press the **Edit** button to open an interface for user input.
Verification	N/A
Specification	N/A
Reference	N/A

Table 3-27 Fax Diagnostics Fax NVM Read/Write codes

Code	Name	Description	Default	Range
20-200	Pause dial time	Pause time (value * 1000 ms)	Country/region value	0-200
20-210	Dial pulse M/B ratio	33/66 40/60	Country/region value	0 = OPTION_DP_33 1 = OPTION_DP_40 2 = OPTION_DP_37 3 = OPTION_DP_50
20-220	Auto dial start pause time	Pause time before auto-dialing (second)	1	0-10
20-300	Ring on time	Ring on time (ms)	170	90-800
20-310	Ring off time	Ring off time (ms)	560	90-800
20-320	Ring detection frequency	Sets the call indication frequency range that will be detected by LIU.	1	1 = 12-80 hz 2 = 16-55 hz 3 = 20-55 hz 4 = 22-55 hz
20-330	Ring on max time	Ring on max time (ms)	5100	3000-12000
20-340	Ring off max time	Ring off max time (ms)	11100	9000-22000
20-400	DTMF high-frequency level	DTMF high-frequency level (dBm)	Country/region value	0-15
20-410	DTMF low-frequency level	DTMF low-frequency level (dBm)	Country/region value	0-15
20-420	DTMF timing	DTMF duration of on/off output (ms)	8	1 = 80/80 2 = 70/70 3 = 70/150 4 = 60/60 5 = 80/100 6 = 150/50 7 = 150/240 8 = 100/100 9 = 100/80

Table 3-27 Fax Diagnostics Fax NVM Read/Write codes (continued)

Code	Name	Description	Default	Range
20-500	Dial mode	Select tone/pulse	Country/region value	0 = OPTION_TONE_MODE 1 = OPTION_PULSE_MODE
20-520	Error rate	Adjust error rate (Off/5%/10%/20%)	2	0 = OPTION_RATE_OFF 1 = OPTION_RATE_5 2 = OPTION_RATE_10 3 = OPTION_RATE_20
20-530	Dial tone detect	Detect dial tone prior to sending	Country/region value	0 = OPTION_OFF 1 = OPTION_ON
20-540	Loop current detect	Detect if loop current is present prior to sending	Country/region value	0 = OPTION_OFF 1 = OPTION_ON
20-550	Busy signal detect	Detect busy signal to allow redials	Country/region value	0 = OPTION_OFF 1 = OPTION_ON
20-560	TCF duration	Adjust TCF duration (ms)	1500	1000-3000
20-800	Modem speed	Select modem start speed	24	
20-810	Fax transmission level	Adjust fax transmission level (dBm)	Country/region value	Country/region value
20-830	Auto dial timeout	Adjust auto dial timeout (second)	Country/region value	30-150
20-920	CNG detection count	CNG tone detection check count during ANS/FAX mode	2	1-15
20-930	Caller ID	This option is needed to guide Caller ID off for user environment	Country/region value	0 = OPTION_OFF 1 = OPTION_ON
20-940	Ext. phone	Ext. phone detection enable/disable (default: enable 1)	1	0 = Disable 1 = Enable
21-999	Fax line setting	Fax test line setting (dual fax)	0	0 = Line 1 1 = Line 2
21-800	Modem speed line 2	Select modem start speed for line 2. This item will display only when a dual line fax kit is installed	24	

Fax test routines

- Diagnostics > Fax Diagnostics > Fax Test Routines

Table 3-28 Fax Diagnostics (Fax Test Routines)

Purpose	To perform test routines for the fax machine.
Operation procedure	When the main Fax Test Routines window displays, users can navigate through the list of routines and descriptions that display. Users can input a code through the text box to search for a routine. After selecting a routine, press **OK** to open the test window that lists the selected routine. Users can start/stop the selected test routine.

Table 3-29 Fax Test Routines codes

Code	Name	Description	State Displayed
20-012	Single tone 1100Hz Ln1	Emits single tone 1100Hz on line 1	On/Off
20-014	Single tone 1650Hz Ln1	Emits single tone 1650Hz on line 1	On/Off
20-015	Single tone 1850Hz Ln1	Emits single tone 1850Hz on line 1	On/Off
20-016	Single tone 2100Hz Ln1	Emits single tone 2100Hz on line 1	On/Off
20-020	DTMF # Line1	Emits DTMF # on line 1	On/Off
20-021	DTMF * Line1	Emits DTMF * on line 1	On/Off
20-022	DTMF 0 Line1	Emits DTMF 0 on line 1	On/Off
20-023	DTMF 1 Line1	Emits DTMF 1 on line 1	On/Off
20-024	DTMF 2 Line1	Emits DTMF 2 on line 1	On/Off
20-025	DTMF 3 Line1	Emits DTMF 3 on line 1	On/Off
20-026	DTMF 4 Line1	Emits DTMF 4 on line 1	On/Off
20-027	DTMF 5 Line1	Emits DTMF 5 on line 1	On/Off
20-028	DTMF 6 Line1	Emits DTMF 6 on line 1	On/Off
20-029	DTMF 7 Line1	Emits DTMF 7 on line 1	On/Off
20-030	DTMF 8 Line1	Emits DTMF 8 on line 1	On/Off
20-031	DTMF 9 Line1	Emits DTMF 9 on line 1	On/Off
20-040	V.21 300 bps Line1	Emits V.21 300 bps Line 1	On/Off
20-041	V.27ter 2400 bps Line1	Emits V.27ter 2400 bps Line1	On/Off
20-042	V.27ter 4800 bps Line1	Emits V.27ter 4800 bps Line1	On/Off
20-043	V.29 7200 bps Line1	Emits V.29 7200 bps Line1	On/Off
20-044	V.29 9600 bps Line1	Emits V.29 9600 bps Line1	On/Off
20-045	V.17 7200 bps Line1	Emits V.17 7200 bps Line1	On/Off
20-046	V.17 9600 bps Line1	Emits V.17 9600 bps Line1	On/Off
20-047	V.17 12000 bps Line1	Emits V.17 12000 bps Line1	On/Off

Table 3-29 Fax Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Name	Description	State Displayed
20-048	V.17 14400 bps Line1	Emits V.17 14400 bps Line1	On/Off
20-049	V.34 2400 bps Line1	Emits V.34 2400 bps Line1	On/Off
20-050	V.34 4800 bps Line1	Emits V.34 4800 bps Line1	On/Off
20-051	V.34 7200 bps Line1	Emits V.34 7200 bps Line1	On/Off
20-052	V.34 9600 bps Line1	Emits V.34 9600 bps Line1	On/Off
20-053	V.34 12000 bps Line1	Emits V.34 12000 bps Line1	On/Off
20-054	V.34 14400 bps Line1	Emits V.34 14400 bps Line1	On/Off
20-055	V.34 16800 bps Line1	Emits V.34 16800 bps Line1	On/Off
20-056	V.34 19200 bps Line1	Emits V.34 19200 bps Line1	On/Off
20-057	V.34 21600 bps Line1	Emits V.34 21600 bps Line1	On/Off
20-058	V.34 24000 bps Line1	Emits V.34 24000 bps Line1	On/Off
20-059	V.34 26400 bps Line1	Emits V.34 26400 bps Line1	On/Off
20-060	V.34 28800 bps Line1	Emits V.34 28800 bps Line1	On/Off
20-061	V.34 31200 bps Line1	Emits V.34 31200 bps Line1	On/Off
20-062	V.34 33600 bps Line1	Emits V.34 33600 bps Line1	On/Off
21-012	Single tone 1100Hz Ln2	Emits single tone 1100Hz on line 2	On/Off
21-014	Single tone 1650Hz Ln2	Emits single tone 1650Hz on line 2	On/Off
21-015	Single tone 1850Hz Ln2	Emits single tone 1850Hz on line 2	On/Off
21-016	Single tone 2100Hz Ln2	Emits single tone 2100Hz on line 2	On/Off
21-020	DTMF # Line2	Emits DTMF # on line 2	On/Off
21-021	DTMF * Line2	Emits DTMF * on line 2	On/Off
21-022	DTMF 0 Line2	Emits DTMF 0 on line 2	On/Off
21-023	DTMF 1 Line2	Emits DTMF 1 on line 2	On/Off
21-024	DTMF 2 Line2	Emits DTMF 2 on line 2	On/Off
21-025	DTMF 3 Line2	Emits DTMF 3 on line 2	On/Off
21-026	DTMF 4 Line2	Emits DTMF 4 on line 2	On/Off
21-027	DTMF 5 Line2	Emits DTMF 5 on line 2	On/Off
21-028	DTMF 6 Line2	Emits DTMF 6 on line 2	On/Off
21-029	DTMF 7 Line2	Emits DTMF 7 on line 2	On/Off
21-030	DTMF 8 Line2	Emits DTMF 8 on line 2	On/Off
21-031	DTMF 9 Line2	Emits DTMF 9 on line 2	On/Off
21-040	V.21 300 bps Line2	Emits V.21 300 bps Line2	On/Off
21-041	V.27ter 2400 bps Line2	Emits V.27ter 2400 bps Line2	On/Off

Table 3-29 Fax Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Name	Description	State Displayed
21-042	V.27ter 4800 bps Line2	Emits V.27ter 4800 bps Line2	On/Off
21-043	V.29 7200 bps Line2	Emits V.29 7200 bps Line2	On/Off
21-044	V.29 9600 bps Line2	Emits V.29 9600 bps Line2	On/Off
21-045	V.17 7200 bps Line2	Emits V.17 7200 bps Line2	On/Off
21-046	V.17 9600 bps Line2	Emits V.17 9600 bps Line2	On/Off
21-047	V.17 12000 bps Line2	Emits V.17 12000 bps Line2	On/Off
21-048	V.17 14400 bps Line2	Emits V.17 14400 bps Line2	On/Off
21-049	V.34 2400 bps Line2	Emits V.34 2400 bps Line2	On/Off
21-050	V.34 4800 bps Line2	Emits V.34 4800 bps Line2	On/Off
21-051	V.34 7200 bps Line2	Emits V.34 7200 bps Line2	On/Off
21-052	V.34 9600 bps Line2	Emits V.34 9600 bps Line2	On/Off
21-053	V.34 12000 bps Line2	Emits V.34 12000 bps Line2	On/Off
21-054	V.34 14400 bps Line2	Emits V.34 14400 bps Line2	On/Off
21-055	V.34 16800 bps Line2	Emits V.34 16800 bps Line2	On/Off
21-056	V.34 19200 bps Line2	Emits V.34 19200 bps Line2	On/Off
21-057	V.34 21600 bps Line2	Emits V.34 21600 bps Line2	On/Off
21-058	V.34 24000 bps Line2	Emits V.34 24000 bps Line2	On/Off
21-059	V.34 26400 bps Line2	Emits V.34 26400 bps Line2	On/Off
21-060	V.34 28800 bps Line2	Emits V.34 28800 bps Line2	On/Off
21-061	V.34 31200 bps Line2	Emits V.34 31200 bps Line2	On/Off
21-062	V.34 33600 bps Line2	Emits V.34 33600 bps Line2	On/Off

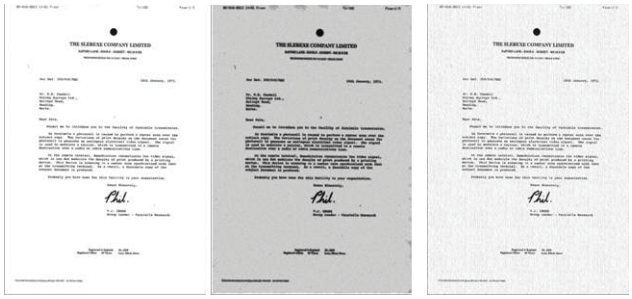
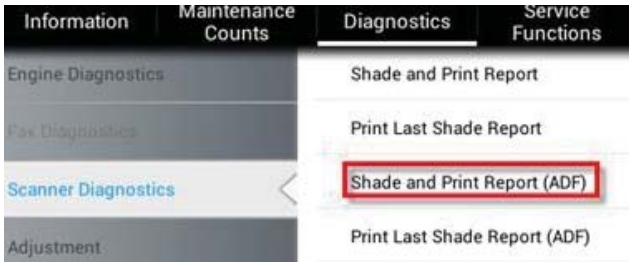
Scanner diagnostics

Learn about the scanner diagnostics.

Shading test

- Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Shading Test

Table 3-30 Scanner Diagnostics (Shading Test)

Purpose	– To check the quality of scanned images, especially if there might be defects in optical devices such as the lens, mirror, or lamp. – Check the quality problem as shown below:  Normal Image Defected Image Defected Image
Operation Procedure	**For the Image Scanner Unit** Press **Shade and Print report** to see if the current shading value is correct. Mono, red, green, and blue gray shading values will be shown on the printed report. When the previous shading value is needed, press "Print Last Shade Report". **For the Flow ADF unit** 1. Load the shading sheet on the Flow ADF tray. 2. Enter SCV mode. Select the following menu items: Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Shading Test > Shade and Print Report (Flow ADF)  Press **Print Last Shade Report (ADF)** for the previous shading value report. 3. Check if the printed results are correct. NOTE: – When executing Flow ADF shading, use only the shading sheet (JC63–05055A). – A Shading Test for the Flow ADF unit must be completed after replacing the Flow ADF unit or main board.
Verification	Look at the bottom of the report page for a "RESULTS : OK" message.

Scanner/Flow ADF NVM Read/Write

- Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Scanner/Flow ADF NVM Read/Write

Table 3-31 Scanner Diagnostics (Scanner/Flow ADF NVM Read/Write)

Purpose	To read and/or write values in the scanner and Flow ADF memory.
Operation Procedure	When the main **NVM Read/Write** window displays, users can navigate through the list of codes with descriptions and saved values. Users can also directly input a code through the text box to search for an NVM. After selecting a code, the **Edit** button will be enabled only if the code is writable. If the selected code is writable and the **Edit** button is enabled, press the button to configure the desired value for the code.
Verification	N/A
Specification	N/A
Reference	See the following table.

Table 3-32 Scanner/Flow ADF NVM Read/Write codes

Code	NVM description	Default	GX Model
05-0000	Pick Up Count	0	0
05-0001	Separation Roller Count	0	0
05-0010	Document Duplex Reverse Point	0	0
05-0030	Simplex Registration Value (Registration 1)	0	0
05-0040	Duplex Registration Value (Registration 2)	0	0
05-0050	Width Guide Max Value	Depends on Flow ADF	0
05-0060	Width Guide Min Value	Depends on Flow ADF	0

Scanner/Flow ADF test routines

- Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Scanner/Flow ADF Test Routines

Table 3-33 Scanner Diagnostics (Scanner/Flow ADF Test Routines)

Purpose	To perform test routines for the scanner and Flow ADF.
Operation Procedure	When the main **Scanner/Flow ADF Test Routines** window displays, users can navigation through the list of routines and descriptions that display. Users can input a code through the text box to search for a routine. After selecting a routine, press **OK** to open the test window that lists the selected routine. Users can start/stop the selected test routine.
Verification	N/A
Specification	N/A
Reference	See the following table.

Table 3-34 Scanner/Flow ADF Test Routines codes

Code	Name	Value	GX model
06-0000	Scanner Original Size Detecting Sensor 1	High/Low	O
06-0001	Scanner Original Size Detecting Sensor 2	High/Low	O
06-0010	Scanner Cover Open/Close Sensor 1	High/Low	O
06-0011	Scanner Cover Open/Close Sensor 2	High/Low	O
06-0020	Scanner Platen Motor Forward	Start/Stop	O
06-0030	Scanner Platen Motor Backward	Start/Stop	O
06-0040	Scanner Platen Home Position Sensor	High/Low	O
05-0000	Document Length .1 Sensor	High/Low	O
05-0001	Document Length .2 Sensor	High/Low	O
05-0020	Document Cover Open Sensor	High/Low	O
05-0040	Document Detect Sensor	High/Low	O
05-0050	Document Feed Sensor	High/Low	O
05-0060	Document Simplex Registration Sensor	High/Low	O
05–0061	Document Duplex Registration Sensor		
05-0070	Document Scan Read Sensor 1	High/Low	O
05-0071	Document Scan Read Sensor 2	High/Low	O
05-0080	Document Exit Sensor	High/Low	O
05-0090	Document Pickup Clutch	Start/Stop	X
05-0110	Document Motor Forward	Start/Stop	O
05-0111	Document Motor Backward	Start/Stop	O
05-0123	Document width 1 MSO Sensor	High/Low	O
05-0124	Document width 2 MSO Sensor	High/Low	O
05-0125	Document width 3 MSO Sensor	High/Low	O
05-0130	Document Pickup Motor Forward	Start/Stop	O
05-0131	Document Pickup Motor Backward	Start/Stop	O
05-0140	Document Pickup Roller Detect Sensor	High/Low	X

Table 3-34 Scanner/Flow ADF Test Routines codes (continued)

Code	Name	Value	GX model
05-0151	Document Stacker Lift Lower Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0160	Document Registration 1 Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0
05-0162	Document Registration 1 Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0
05-0170	Document Registration 2 Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0
05-0171	Document Registration 2 Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0
05-0180	Document Stacker Lift Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0
05-0181	Document Stacker Lift Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0
05–0182	Document Exit Motor Forward		
05–0183	Document Exit Motor Backward		
05–0184	Document Pickup Release Motor Forward		
05–0185	Document Pickup Release Motor Backward		
05–0186	Document Scan In Release Motor Forward		
05–0187	Document Scan In Release Motor Backward		
05-0190	Document Width Guide ADC Sensor	10Bit (0~1023)	0
05–0191	Document USM ADC Sensor		
05–0192	Document USM Calibration Test		
05-0210	Document Jig Test Low Speed Simplex	Start/Stop	0
05-0230	Document Jig Test High Speed Simplex	Start/Stop	0

Adjustment

Learn about the print adjustment.

Print adjustment

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Print Adjustment > Image Position

Table 3-35 Print Adjustment (Image Position)

Purpose	Manually adjust the position of the printed image on the paper in the print engine.
Operational Procedure	1. Select a tray to adjust. 2. Change the adjustment value using the + or - buttons, then press the OK button to save the changes. ○ Simplex Leading Edge ○ Simplex Side Edge ○ Duplex Leading Edge ○ Duplex Side Edge NOTE: ○ Adjustment must be done for each tray (Tray 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5). ○ Do not choose ALL for the tray selection. ○ Adjust for the tray with each new tray selection. 3. Print out the test pattern and check if the image is adjusted. If not, repeat Step 2.

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Print Adjustment > Print Margin Test

  This menu is used to print out the test pattern manually.

Copy adjustment

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Copy Adjustment > Image Position

Table 3-36 Copy Adjustment (Image Position)

Purpose	Manually adjust the position of the copied image on the paper in the copy engine.
Operation Procedure	NOTE: Before copy adjustment: – Make sure that the initial values of margin adjustment are the same as the values of the print adjustment. – Perform an adjustment for each tray. Do not choose All for tray selection, as this can confuse the adjustment. NOTE: – Complete adjustment for each tray (Tray 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5). – Do not choose All for tray selection. – Adjust for the tray with each new tray selection. 1. Locate the Scanner A/S Chart on the Flow ADF tray. 2. Change the adjustment value using the + or - button, and then press OK to save the changes. ○ Simplex Leading Edge ○ Simplex Side Edge

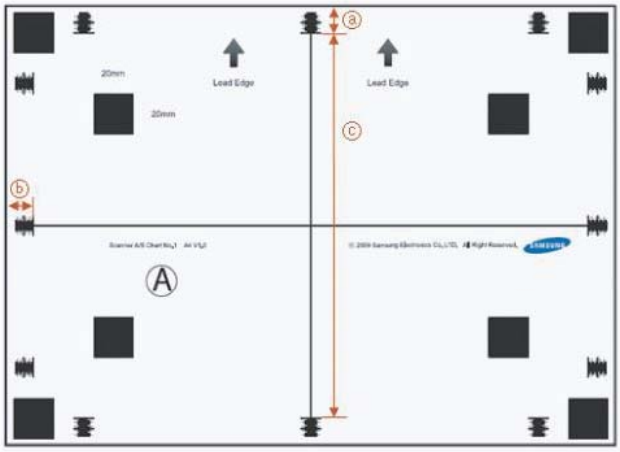
Table 3-36 Copy Adjustment (Image Position)

Purpose	Manually adjust the position of the copied image on the paper in the copy engine.
	○ Duplex Leading Edge ○ Duplex Side Edge 3. Print out the test pattern and check if the image has moved. If not, repeat Step 2.

Scan area adjustment

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Scan Area Adjustment > Automatic Adjustment

Table 3-37 Scan Area Adjustment (Automatic Adjustment)

Purpose	To correct the image position and magnification of scanned images automatically.
Operation Procedure	1. Locate the Scanner A/S chart at the scanner glass.  A4 Scanner A/S Chart Note that the **Lead Edge** arrows point to the left side of the scanner glass and are placed face down. The Scanner A/S Chart comes in two sizes, A4 and Letter. 2. Press **OK**. A scan begins and the system will automatically calculate the proper value based on the scanning result of the chart. 3. The new value saves to the system. 4. Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned from the scanner glass. 5. To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) from the chart to the scanned image. 6. To check the magnification, compare the length of line **c** from the chart to the scanned image. NOTE: Specifications: ○ a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm ○ c: 190, ± 1.5 mm

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Scan Area Adjustment > Manual Adjustment

Table 3-38 Scan Area Adjustment (Manual Adjustment)

Purpose	To correct the position and magnification of scanned images manually.
Operation Procedure	1. Choose one item from the table. There are three items to choose from: ○ Image Position — Leading Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: -6/+6) ○ Image Position — Side Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: -6/+6) ○ Magnification — Vertical Direction (Unit: %, Min/Max: 98.5/101.5) 2. Select one item and press the **Edit** button. 3. Change the adjustment value using the arrow button. 4. Image position (a, b): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press **+**, otherwise press **-**. 5. Magnification (c): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press **-**, otherwise, press **+**. 6. Press the **OK** button to apply the new value to the system. 7. Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned from the scanner glass. 8. To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) from the chart to the scanned image. 9. To check the magnification, compare the length of line **c** from the chart to the scanned image. NOTE: Specifications: ○ a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm ○ c: 190, ± 1.5 mm

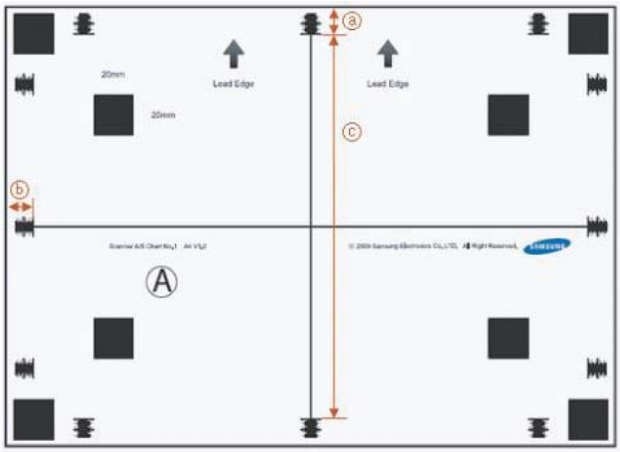
Flow ADF adjustment

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Flow ADF Adjustment > Automatic Adjustment

Table 3-39 Flow ADF Adjustment (Automatic Adjustment)

Purpose	To correct the image position and magnification of images scanned with the Flow ADF automatically.
Operation Procedure	1. Locate the Scanner A/S chart at the scanner glass.

Table 3-39 Flow ADF Adjustment (Automatic Adjustment) (continued)

Purpose	To correct the image position and magnification of images scanned with the Flow ADF automatically.
	 A4 Scanner A/S Chart 2. Press OK. A scan begins and the system will automatically calculate the proper value based on the scanning result of the chart. 3. The new value saves to the system. 4. Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned from the Flow ADF. 5. To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) from the chart to the scanned image. 6. To check the magnification, compare the length of line c from the chart to the scanned image. NOTE: Specifications: ○ a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm ○ c: 190, ± 1.5 mm NOTE: After executing the Flow ADF adjustment, perform a shading test. Refer to Scanner Diagnostics.

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Flow ADF Adjustment > Manual Adjustment

Table 3-40 Flow ADF Adjustment (Manual Adjustment)

Purpose	To correct the position and magnification of scanned images manually.
Operation procedure	1. Choose one item from the table. There are three items to choose from:

Table 3-40 Flow ADF Adjustment (Manual Adjustment)

Purpose	To correct the position and magnification of scanned images manually.
	○ Image Position — Leading Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: -6/+6) ○ Image Position — Side Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: -6/+6) ○ Magnification — Vertical Direction (Unit: %, Min/Max: 98.5/101.5) 2. Select one item and press the **Edit** button. 3. Change the adjustment value using the arrow button. 4. Image position (a, b): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press **+**, otherwise press **-**. 5. Magnification (c): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press **-**, otherwise, press **+**.

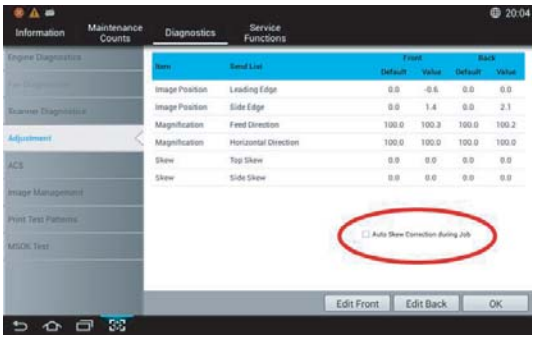
Table 3-40 Flow ADF Adjustment (Manual Adjustment)

Purpose	To correct the position and magnification of scanned images manually.

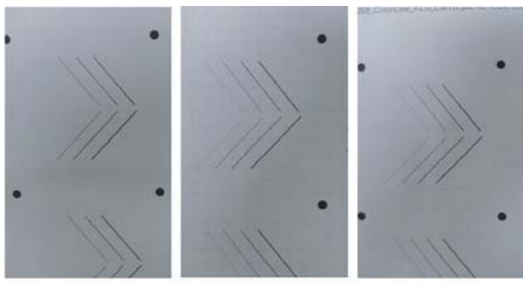
NOTE: Specifications:

- a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm
- c: 190, ± 1.5 mm

6. Press the **OK** button to apply the new value to the system.
7. Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned from the Flow ADF.
8. To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) from the chart to the scanned image.
9. To check the magnification, compare the length of line **c** from the chart to the scanned image.
10. If **Auto Skew Correction during job** box is checked, skewed image is corrected by digitally rotating the scanned images.



NOTE: When this function is enabled, visual artifact (like checkerboard patterns) might appear on the image depending on the original contents or copy option settings.



NOTE: After executing the Flow ADF adjustment, perform a shading test. Refer to Scanner Diagnostics.

Image management

Learn about image management.

Auto tone adjustment activation

- Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment Activation > Normal

Table 3-41 Auto Tone Adjustment Activation (Normal)

Purpose	To correct image quality when density of the image is poor. Normal TRC Control is recommended after changing a unit, such as a toner cartridge, imaging unit, and PTB, or after restarting the printer.
Operation Procedure	1. Select **On** or **Off** for Normal TRC Control execution. ○ Off: Normal TRC Control will not execute. ○ On: Normal TRC Control will execute during the determined conditions, 2. Change the execution condition(s) of Normal TRC Control. ○ Page Count: The system executes Normal TRC Control based on the count of printed pages since the last execution. ○ Time Left Alone: The system executes Normal TRC Control when the system returns from a power save mode and the rest time exceeds the configured value.
Verification	Print out a test job and make sure the image quality has recovered.

- Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment Activation > Full

Table 3-42 Auto Tone Adjustment Activation (Full)

Purpose	To correct image quality when any OPC drum is replaced, the life of the OPC drum is changed, the density of the image is poor, or the temperature and/or humidity in the room changes suddenly.
Operation Procedure	1. Select **On** or **Off** for Full TRC Control execution. ○ Off: Full TRC Control will not execute. ○ On: Full TRC Control will execute during the determined conditions, 2. Change the execution condition(s) of Full TRC Control. ○ Page Count: The system executes Full TRC Control based on the count of printed pages since the last execution. ○ Time Left Alone: The system executes Full TRC Control when the system returns from a power save mode and the rest time exceeds the configured value.
Verification	Print out a test job and make sure the image quality has recovered.

Print test patterns

Learn about the print test patterns.

Diagnostics > Print Test Patterns >

- EP Calibration Pattern1 Contone

Service functions

Learn about service functions.

Main memory clear

Learn about the main memory clear.

Service Functions > Main Memory Clear

- This function resets the main memory of the system to the factory default setting. This function can be used to reset the system to the initial value when the product is functioning abnormally. User configured values return to the default values.

  To clear the main memory, select the country/region where the system is located, and restart the printer.

Debug log

Learn about the debug log.

Service Functions > Debug Log

- This function sets the system log message level. Users can select three options:
  - Off: This option disables the logging option.
  - Job Status: This option only enables the logging of user created jobs.
  - Details: This option enables all the logging options of the running tasks of the system. This option might affect the performance of certain system operations. Use this option when the system performs abnormally and engineers need to investigate the problem.

Capture log

Learn about the capture log.

Service Functions > Capture Log

- This function copies all the saved logs in the system to a USB flash drive as a .zip file. The size of the system log could reach up to 1 GB. If the system log size becomes very large, it will take a longer time to copy to the USB flash drive.

  1. Connect the USB flash drive to the printer.
  2. Tap the **Service Mode** app. When the pop-up displays, press the area below the pop-up until the password window appears. Enter **4087617** and press the **OK** button.
  3. Go to **Service Functions > Debug Log** and change the debug log level to **INFO**.
  4. Go to **Service Functions > Capture Log**.
  5. Select **All** or **Period**. If selecting **Period**, enter the start and end date.
  6. Press the **Capture Log** button.
  7. Once the log is completed, a completion message will display. Restore the debug log level to **JOB STATUS**.

NOTE: If the system log size becomes very large, it will take longer to copy to the USB flash drive.

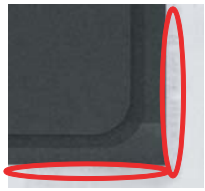
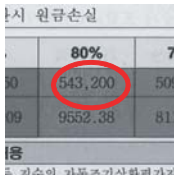
8. Check that the Log File has been saved to the USB flash drive.

Transfer assembly control mode

Learn about the transfer assembly control mode.

Service Functions > Transfer Assembly Control Mode

- Table 3-43 Transfer Assembly Control Mode

Purpose	To correct transfer related problems. This function can be used to change the transfer value to optimize image quality to a certain type of paper.
Operation Procedure	– T2 Control Mode ○ Choose the paper group, paper side, and paper direction. ○ Adjust PWM value based on the problem type. ● Blur: Increase PWM value ● Poor Transfer: Increase PWM value ● Re-transfer: Decrease PWM value ● White Spot: Decrease PWM value ● OPC Cylic Ghost: Decrease PWM value  Blur  Poor Transfer Retransfer White Spot OPC Cyclic Ghost
Verification	Print a test job and make sure the transfer problem has been resolved.
Specification	N/A
Reference	N/A

Envelope rotate

Learn about the envelope rotate function.

- This menu enables rotation when printing on an envelope. The machine usually guides loaded envelopes with SEF direction. If this function is enabled, the user can load an envelope with LEF direction and the machine will rotate the image for printing on the envelope.

  This function provides the following setting options:

  – Off (default): Load envelope SEF direction

  – 90 degrees: Load envelope LEF direction.

  – 180 degrees: Load envelope SEF direction with flap on bottom side.

Off 90 degrees 180 degrees

NOTE: If the paper source is **Auto**, the device will feed from the Tray 1 because the LEF envelope can only be loaded in the Tray 1 according to paper specification.

If the length of envelope is over the maximum size of the custom width, the device will not rotate the image and determine that the direction of the envelope is SEF. For example, the A4 model supports custom sizes like W 98–216 ~ L148–356. This model does not support C5 Env (162x229) DL Env (110x220), No 9 Env (98x225), No 10 Env (105x241) rotation.

Print quality troubleshooting guide

Learn about print quality troubleshooting.

Image quality problems and solutions

Learn about print -quality troubleshooting.

Print quality defects can be caused by printer components, consumables, media, internal software, external software applications, and environmental conditions.

To successfully troubleshoot print quality problems, eliminate as many variables as possible.

First, generate prints using printable pages using laser paper. Use paper from an unopened ream that has been acclimated to room temperature. Make sure that genuine HP toner is installed in the printer.

Figure 3-39 A/S chart (A3)

Figure 3-40 A/S chart

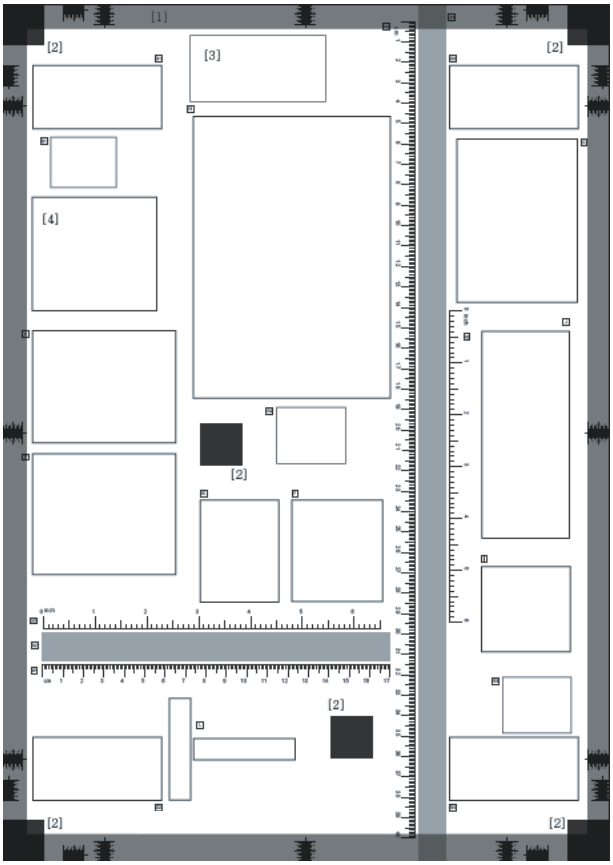


Table 3-44 A/S chart

Item	Description	Use
[1]	Grid pattern	For adjusting margin and magnification
[2]	Black patches	For adjusting skew error
[3]	Barcode	For checking the reproduction of the barcode
[4]	Note area	For recording the date, conditions, and so on.
[A]	Halftone band	For checking banding and jitter (K 50%)
[B, L]	Resolution patterns	For checking resolution
[C, D, E]	Images	For checking color reproduction
[F]	Map image	For checking fine line reproduction
[G]	Color patches	For checking color reproduction and uniformity
[H]	Gradation pattern	For checking tone reproduction of seven colors (C, M, Y, K, R, G, B/10~100%)
[I]	Color/Mono text	For checking the reproduction of color, mono text
[J]	Multilingual feature	For checking the reproduction of small text

Table 3-44 A/S chart (continued)

Item	Description	Use
[K]	White gap pattern	For checking color to color, color to mono white gap
[M]	Rulers	For checking the magnification error (unit: cm)
[N]	Rulers	For checking the magnification error (unit: inch)

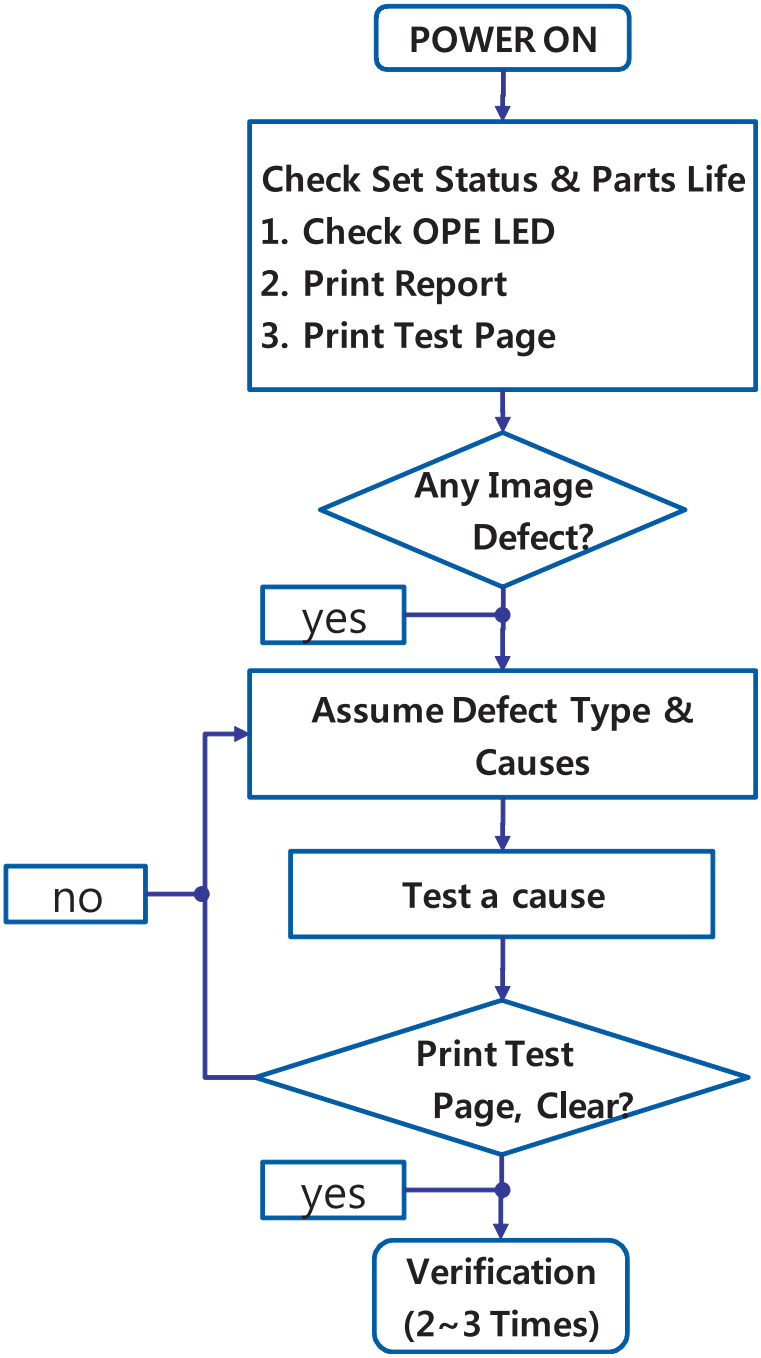
How to analyze image defects

See the following flowchart.

TIP: Depending on the remaining life of the part, the cause of the defect can vary. Check the remaining life of the part.

Check for defects even if the defect is not repeated.

Figure 3-41 Defect analysis flowchart



How to analyze image defects (rollers)

Use the following table to isolate rollers suspected of causing defects.

Table 3-45 Roller period table (repetitive defects)

Roller	Periodic
Magnetic roller (MR)	32.3 mm (1.27 in)
Charge Roller (CR)	37.7 mm (1.48 in)

Table 3-45 Roller period table (repetitive defects) (continued)

Roller	Periodic
Transfer roller	44.0 mm (1.73 in)
Transfer roller (T2)	75.4 mm (2.97 in)
OPC/Drum	94.5 mm (3.72 in)
Fuser Belt (HR)	110.0 mm (4.33 in)
Fuser Pressure Roller (PR)	114.7 mm (4.51 in)

Vertical black lines

Learn about vertical black lines.

Figure 3-42 Typical faulty images

Table 3-46 Troubleshooting procedure

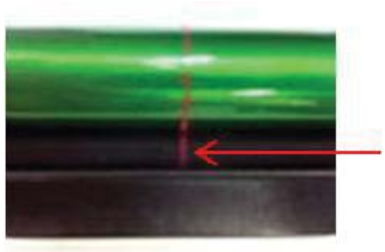
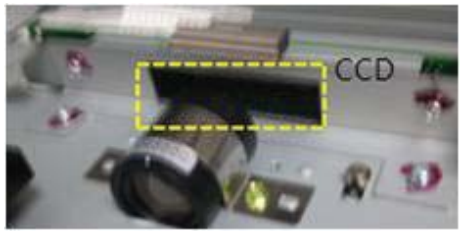
Step	Check item	Action
1	Charge roller (CR) is contaminated. 	Check if the CR is contaminated.  Replace the Drum unit if there are additional problems.

Table 3-46 Troubleshooting procedure (continued)

Step	Check item	Action
2	ITB is contaminated. • The ITB cleaning is poor. • The ITB clean-blade is partially broken.	Check if the ITB is contaminated. Replace the ITB Cleaner if there are additional problems.
3	Scanner unit is contaminated. • Scan glass contamination • Mirror contamination • CCD sensor contamination 	Wipe the surface of the contaminated parts with a soft cloth. CAUTION: The scanner unit contains fragile parts. Use caution while cleaning.

Vertical light or white lines

Learn about vertical light or white lines.

Figure 3-43 Typical faulty images

Table 3-47 Troubleshooting procedure

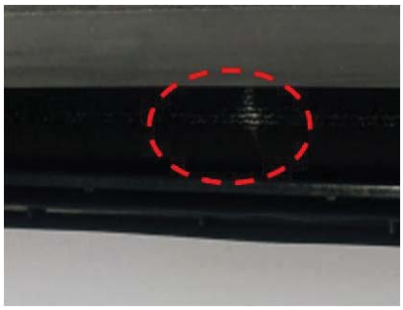
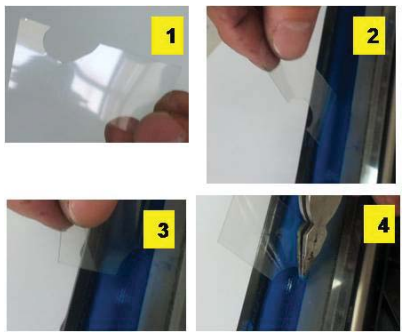
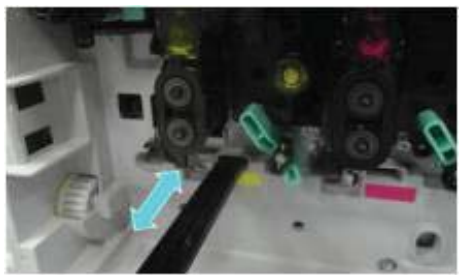
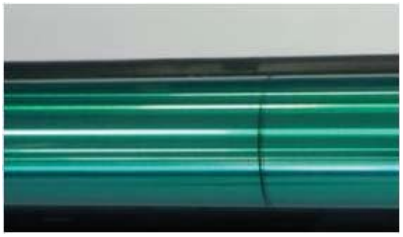
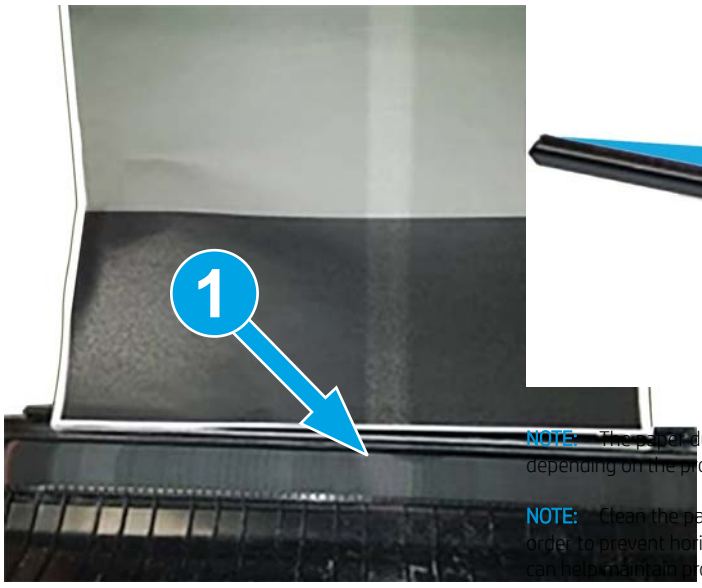
Step	Check item	Action
1	A foreign substance is between the magnetic roller and the blade. No toner on magnetic roller. 	Remove the foreign substance.  Make the hook (transparency sheet is recommended.) Put the hook into the gap between magnetic roller and blade. Pull out foreign substances.
2	The developer in the developer unit is empty or the developer unit life has expired.	• Check the life remaining of the developer unit on the supply information report. – If its life has expired, replace the developer unit. • Check if the developer layer on magnetic roller is uniform. – If the developer layer is short, replace the developer unit. **Normal**
3	The laser beam path is blocked. (Foreign substance is on the laser scanner assembly window.)	Clean the laser scanner assembly window. 

Table 3-47 Troubleshooting procedure (continued)

Step	Check item	Action
4	The OPC is scratched or contaminated in a vertical direction. 	Replace the drum unit.
5	ITB cleaner or T2 transfer unit is contaminated with paper dust build up.  	Clean the paper dust stick on a regular basis. NOTE: The paper dust stick (Callout 1) may vary depending on the product. NOTE: Clean the paper dust stick on a regular basis in order to prevent horizontal light band. Frequent cleaning can help maintain product quality. HP recommends to clean this item when replacing TCU at a minimum.

Horizontal periodic black lines, dots

Learn about horizontal periodic black lines and dots.

Figure 3-44 Typical faulty images

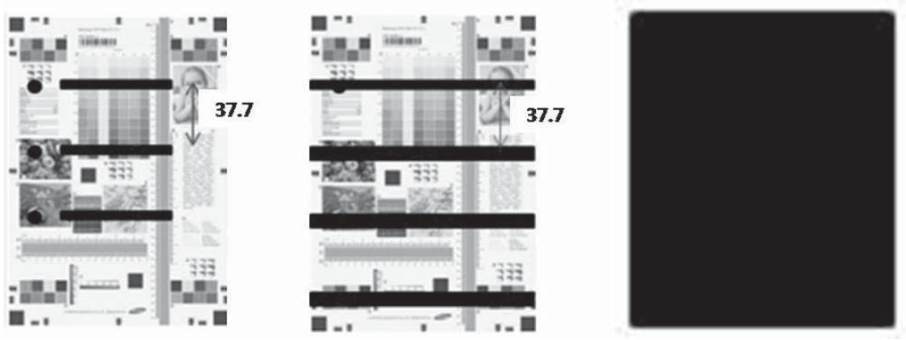


Table 3-48 Troubleshooting procedure

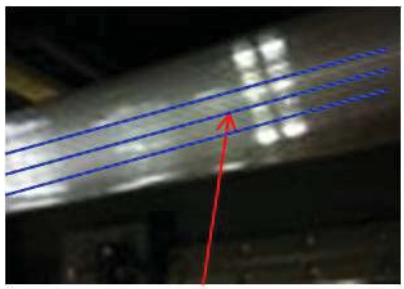
Step	Check item	Action
1	Horizontal periodic band or dot (CR 38 mm). Check if the surface of the charge roller is contaminated or scratched.	Clean the contaminated surface on the charge roller with a soft cloth. If the surface is scratched, replace the drum unit.
2	Horizontal periodic band or dot (OPC 188 mm). Check if the surface of the OPC drum is contaminated or scratched.	Clean the contaminated surface on the OPC drum with a soft cloth. If the surface is scratched, replace the drum unit.
3	Check if the charge roller contact plate had debris or is contaminated.	Clean the charge roller contact plate. If the problem persists, replace the drum unit. If the problem persists after replacing the drum unit, replace the HVPS board.

Horizontal periodic light/dark lines, dots

Learn about horizontal periodic light/dark lines and dots.

Figure 3-45 Typical faulty images

Table 3-49 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Check item	Action
1	Horizontal periodic bands (OPC, 94.2 mm) • OPC was exposed for too long. • Damage was caused by a high voltage in a short amount of time.	This problem is likely to resolve itself over time. If the problem persists, replace the drum unit.
2	Horizontal periodic bands (magnetic roller, 35 mm) The magnetic roller is in poor condition. V-groove of the surface of magnetic roller is not uniform.  V-groove in Roller-Magnetic	Replace developer unit.

Foggy image

Learn about foggy images.

Figure 3-46 Typical faulty images

Table 3-50 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	Voltage of OPC motor is abnormally low.	Replace the drum unit.
2	HVPS operates abnormally. HVPS is damaged or broken.	Replace the HVPS board.

Table 3-50 Troubleshooting procedure (continued)

Step	Cause	Action
3	Toner is over supplied by abnormal TC sensor.	Replace the toner cartridge.
4	Voltage of OPC motor is abnormally low. Transfer assembly voltage is abnormally high.	Check the transfer assembly connection in the HVPS. Check if the transfer assembly roller spring in the ITB is connected correctly. Replace HVPS.

Light image

Learn about light image.

Figure 3-47 Typical faulty images

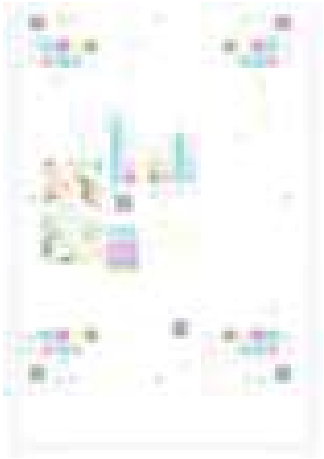


Table 3-51 Troubleshooting procedure

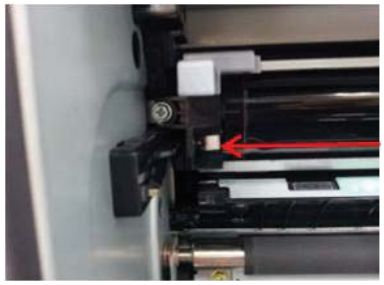
Step	Cause	Action
1	TRC operates abnormally.	Perform TRC three to four times.
2	Poor transfer has occurred.	Force a jam during the print job. Check the image on the transfer belt. If the image on the transfer belt is normal, refer to the *Blurred image* section.
3	Output voltage of HVPS is abnormally low. • Color density decreases.	Replace HVPS.
4	TC down and toner spills.	Replace the developer unit.
5	Toner spills by eraser.	Check if the eraser is contaminated. Replace the drum unit.

Blurred image

Learn about blurred images.

Figure 3-48 Typical faulty images

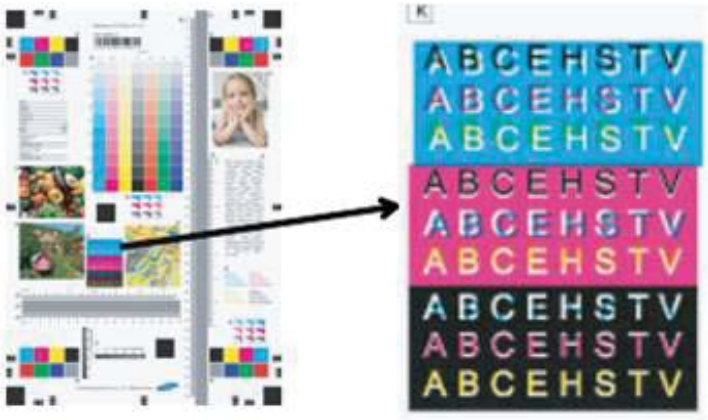
Table 3-52 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	High humidity and/or the quality of the paper.	Use new, high quality paper.
2	T2 transfer voltage is low.	Turn up the T2 transfer voltage.
3	Connection between HVPS and THV is incorrect.	Check if the connection between T2 high voltage terminal and HVPS THV terminal is correct. Check if the connection between the HVPS and ITB is correct. 
4	HVPS operates abnormally.	Replace the HVPS.

Incorrect color registration

Learn about the incorrect color registration defect.

Figure 3-49 Typical faulty images



Text of lines appear jagged, unclear, or blurred. This defect is usually caused by a faulty laser/scanner diode.

NOTE: Feed direction (callout 1).

Table 3-53 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	CPR sensor is contaminated.	Execute CPR manually.
2	Environment has changed.	To recognize the environment change, execute CPR after a certain amount of time.
3	Belt surface is contaminated.	Remove the ITB. If the surface of the belt is contaminated, clean it with soft cloth.

Uneven pitch and jitter image

Learn about uneven pitch and jitter image.

Figure 3-50 Typical faulty images

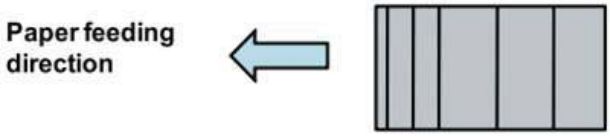


Table 3-54 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	Under 3 mm periodic jitters or horizontal bands have occurred.	Remove foreign substance from the drive gears. Grease the drive gears. • Developer unit gears • Drum unit gears • Main drive unit gears. If the problem persists, replace the abnormal units. • Developer unit • Drum unit • Main drive unit
2	Under 1 mm periodic jitter or horizontal bands have occurred.	Check if the laser scanner assembly is assembled correctly. If not, replace the screws. Replace the laser scanner assembly.

Skewed image

Learn about skewed images.

Figure 3-51 Typical faulty images

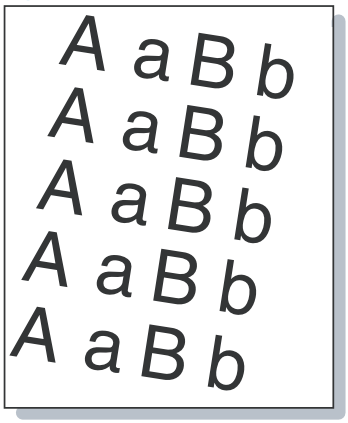


Table 3-55 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Check item	Action
1	Is the tray properly installed?	Reinstall the tray correctly.
2	Is too much paper loaded in the tray?	Remove some paper.
3	Are the paper guides properly set?	Adjust the paper guides.
4	Is the surface of the pickup/reverse/feed roller dirty?	Clean or replace the contaminated roller.

Table 3-55 Troubleshooting procedure (continued)

Step	Check item	Action
5	Is the Flow ADF installed and adjusted properly?	Reinstall the Flow ADF unit. Adjust the Flow ADF skew.
6	Is the intermediate transfer belt installed properly?	Reinstall the ITB unit.

Poor fusing performance

Learn about poor fusing performance.

Figure 3-52 Typical faulty images

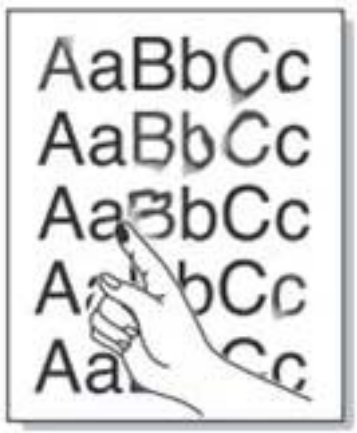
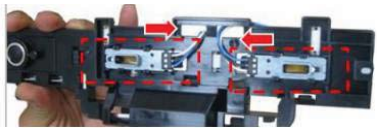


Table 3-56 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	Check the paper type. Depending on what type of paper is used, print speed varies. • Plain (71~90g/), Thick (91~105g/): Full Speed • Heavy weight (106~175g/): Half Speed • Envelope (75~90 g/), Label (120~150 g/): Half Speed	Check that the paper type displayed on the control panel is the same type of paper being used for the print job.

Table 3-56 Troubleshooting procedure (continued)

Step	Cause	Action
2	The fuser unit is worn out.	Replace the fuser unit.
3	Check the surface of the fuser belt and pressure roller for scratches.	Replace the fuser unit.
4	Check the temperature control system for problems. • Thermistor is broken or operates abnormally • Halogen lamp is broken or operates abnormally	Check the non-contact thermistor sensor  Check the halogen lamp. If parts are broken, replace the broken parts or the fuser unit.
5	Check if the pressure control system operates properly.	Check the pressure control system. If the problem persists, replace the fuser unit.
6	Paper is wrapped on the heating roller.	Remove the wrapped paper and print a test page. If the problem persists, replace the fuser unit.

Stain on the paper back side

Learn about the stain on the paper back side.

Figure 3-53 Typical faulty images

Table 3-57 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	Is the transfer roller dirty or worn out?	Clean or replace the transfer roller assembly.
2.1	Is there any stain caused by poor cleaning on the ITB?	Clean the ITB. If the problem persists, replace the ITB unit.

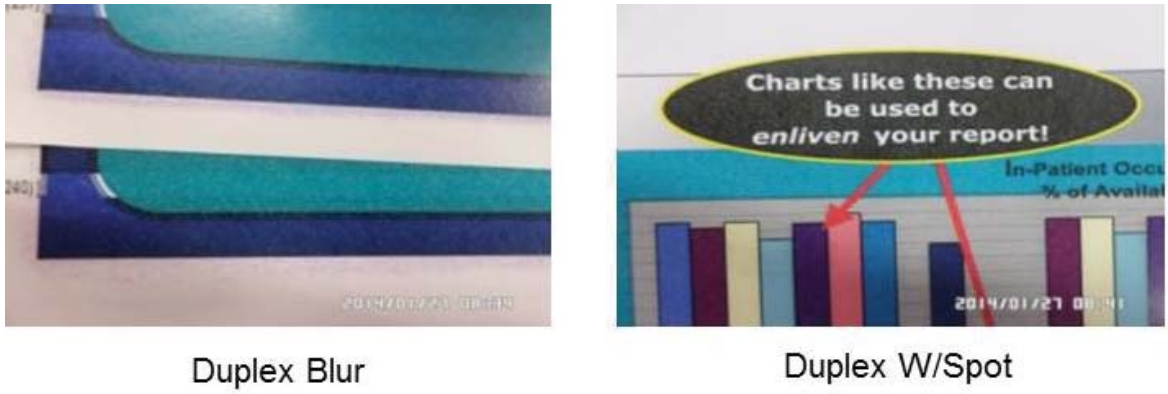
Table 3-57 Troubleshooting procedure (continued)

Step	Cause	Action
2.2	Is the ITB cleaning blade in proper contact with the ITB?	Take off the ITB and check that the ITB cleaning blade pressure spring and the pressure hook are installed correctly.
3.1	Are the fuser belt and pressure roller dirty?	Clean the fuser belt and pressure roller.
3.2	Check the pressure roller surface for damage or scratches.	Replace the fuser unit.

Duplex blur, white spot blur on color print-out

Learn about the duplex blur, white spot blur on color print-out defect.

Figure 3-54 Typical faulty images



Duplex Blur

Duplex W/Spot

Troubleshooting procedure

1. Enter **SVC Mode** → **Service Functions** → **TR Control Mode**.
2. Select **T2 Control Mode**.
3. Select the paper setting based on the site. (Paper Group, Paper Side, Paper Direction).
4. Increase value for T2 PWM and check if the blur problem is resolved.
5. When the problem persists after changing the **T2 Control Mode** values, change the **T1 Control Mode** values.
6. Decrease the value for each color and see whether the symptom disappears.

   In this case, [-4] was applied and solved the blur.
7. As there can be variation for each device, change T1, T2 and observe the results.

Setting standard tone

Learn about setting a standard tone.

When to perform the set the standard tone procedure

- When the printer is installed for the first time.
- After replacing the transfer belt (PTB or ITB) or cleaning the color toner density (CTD) sensor.

- When there is a difference in color between models.
- When image brightness changes in comparison to a previous printing.

Figure 3-55 Image brightness (color image shown for contrast)

Normal image Dark image Light image

NOTE: If the problem persists after performing the setting standard tone procedure, investigate other print-quality causes.

Perform a Setting Standard Tone

Use this procedure to adjust the color tone standard set during manufacturing.

1. Load A4- or Letter-size in a short-edge feeding (SEF) tray.
2. At the control panel, select the Setting item.
3. Log in as an **Admin** user.
4. Open the following menus:
   - Adjustment
   - Tone Adjustment
   - Setting Standard Tone
5. Select the OK item to print a scan ID chart.
6. Place the scan ID chart on the flatbed glass, and then start a scan.
7. When prompted after the scan is complete, Select the OK item.
8. Perform a **FullTRC** function: **Adjustment**▶**Auto Tone Adjustment**▶**Full + Execute Now**.

Cancel a Setting Standard Tone

Use this procedure to cancel a setting standard tone and return to the customized tone (set by the user after setting the standard tone).

1. Open the following menus:
   - Adjustment
   - Tone Adjustment
   - Cancel Setting Standard Tone
2. When cancellation is complete, select the OK item
3. Perform a **FullTRC** function: **Adjustment**▶**Auto Tone Adjustment**▶**Full + Execute Now**.

Scan image fail

When a problem occurs on the scanned ID chart, an error message displays. Check the following items:

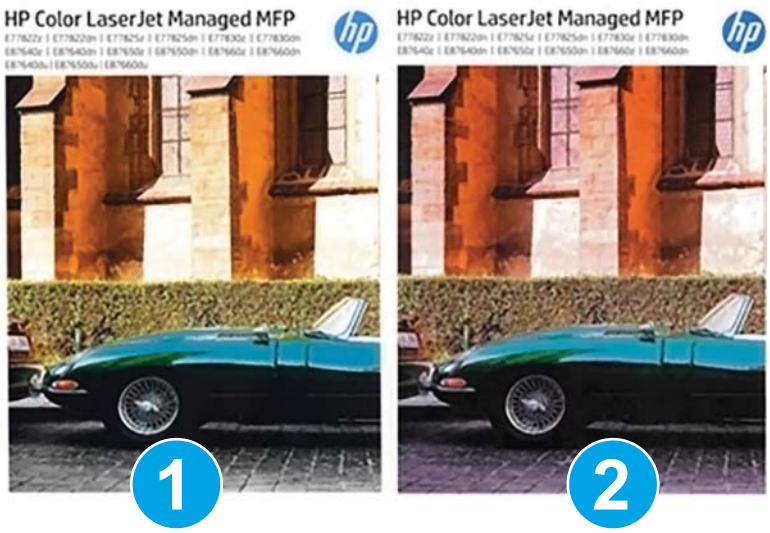
- Check the scanned ID chart for correct placement.
- Make sure that the chart direction is horizontal.
- Retry the setting standard tone procedure.

Red/Magenta hue printouts

Learn about the red/magenta hue printouts defect.

NOTE: The printed image shows a red or magenta tone in areas where red/magenta should not be present.

Figure 3-56 Typical faulty images



Troubleshooting procedure

1. Use the printer control panel to print a demo page (Reports > Other Pages > Demonstration Page).

   NOTE: If the defect is not present on this page, the issue is occurring in the application on the host computer.

2. If the defect appears on the demo page, perform a color calibration.
   1. Open the following menus: Support Tools > Maintenance > Calibration/Cleaning.
   2. Select the Color Calibrations item and then select the Start item.

      NOTE: If this menu is locked, contact the printer administrator.

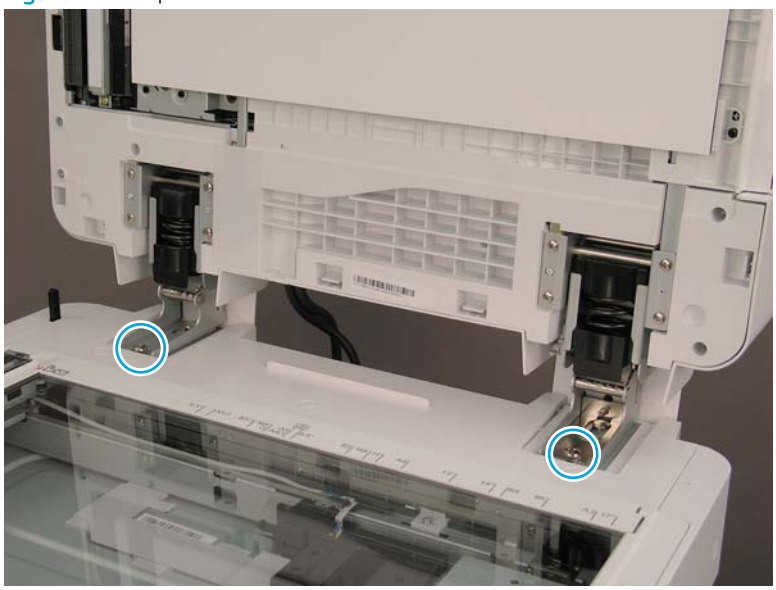
   3. Print another demo page and check for the defect.
3. If the error persists, replace the laser/scanner assembly (PN JC97-04864A).

Adjusting the ADF/ADF skew (LX du models)

Learn about adjusting the ADF/ADF skew (LX du models).

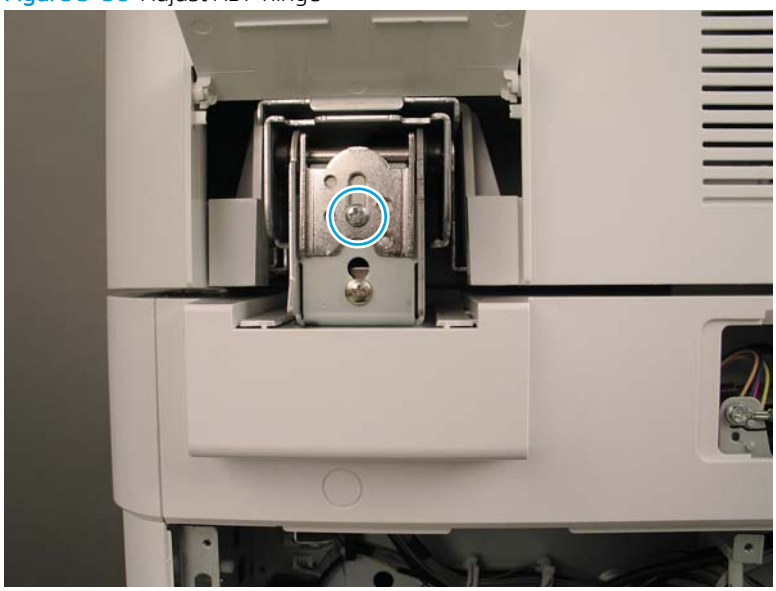
1. Open the ADF. Loosen the two screws securing both hinges.

Figure 3-57 Open ADF and loosen screws



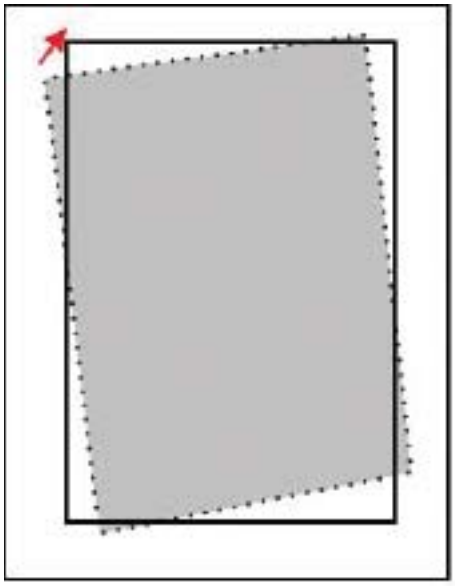
2. Adjust the position of the ADF hinge according to the skew status.

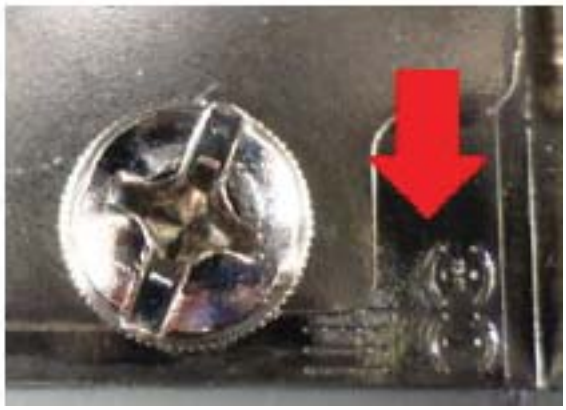
Figure 3-58 Adjust ADF hinge



a. If the skew image is similar to the following example, adjust the hinge unit in the direction of the arrow. (1 scale = >1.0 mm skew adjustment)

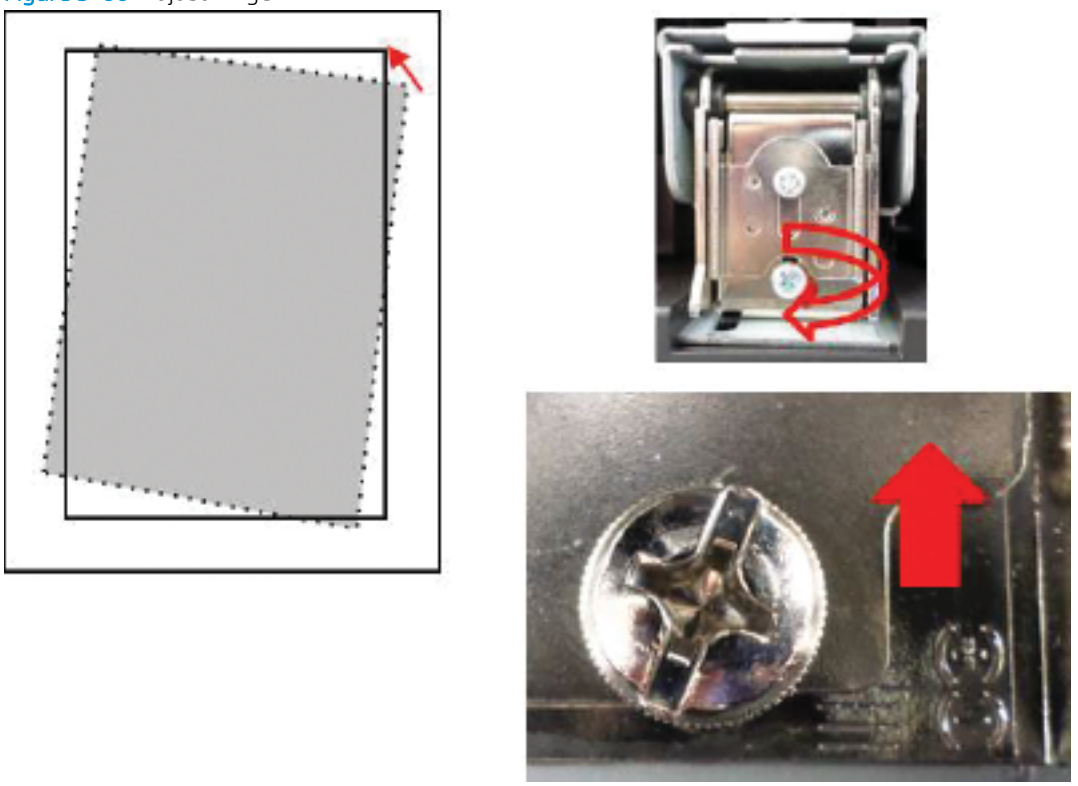
Figure 3-59 Adjust hinge





b. If the skew image is like the following example, adjust the hinge unit in the direction of the arrow. (1 scale = >1.0 mm skew adjustment)

Figure 3-60 Adjust hinge



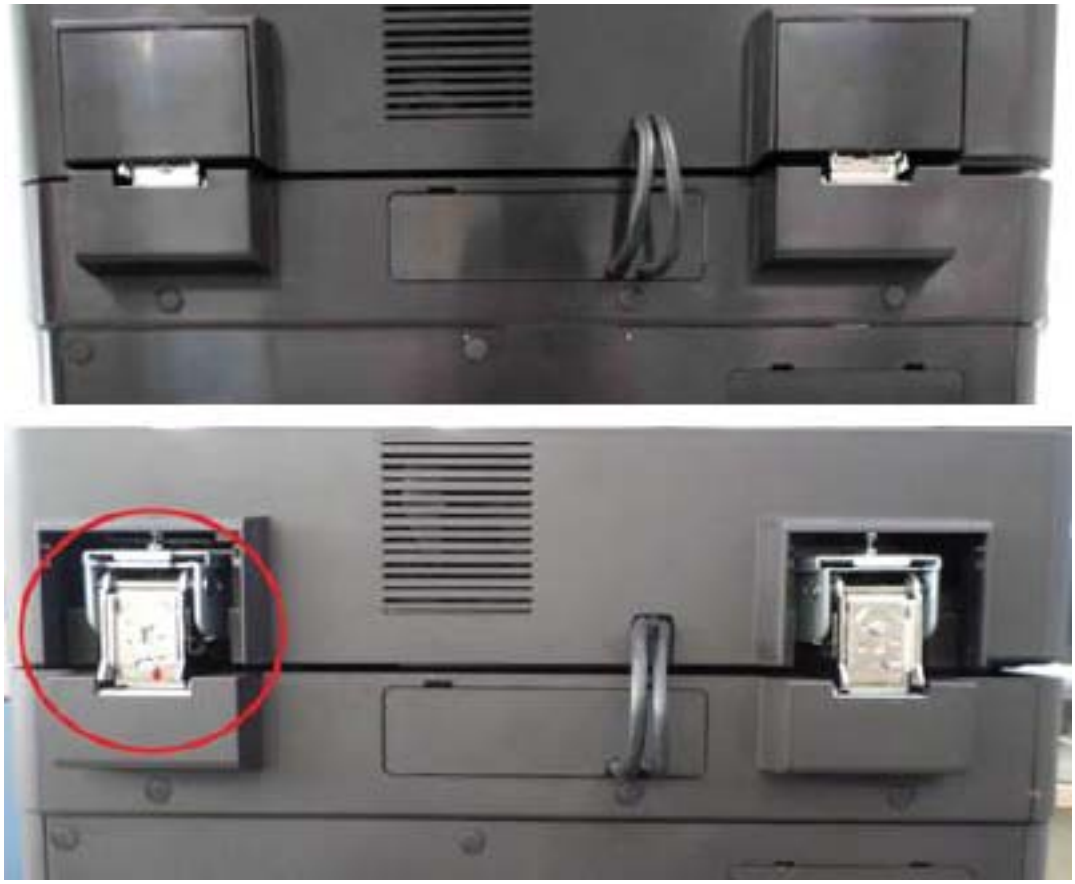
3. Detach the ADF sponge after adjusting the skew. Place the ADF sponge on the scanner glass. Close the ADF unit to attach the sponge.

Adjusting the Flow ADF skew

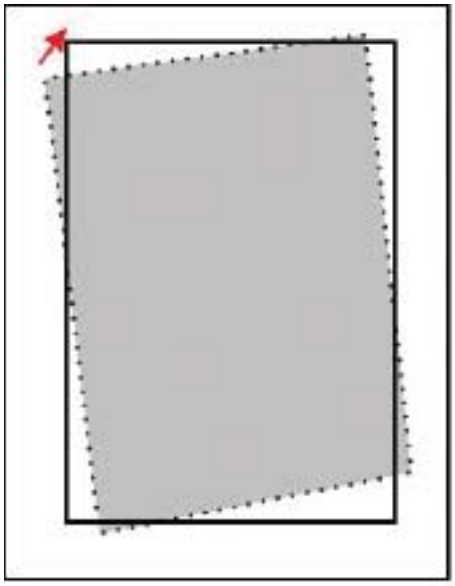
Learn about adjusting the flow ADF skew.

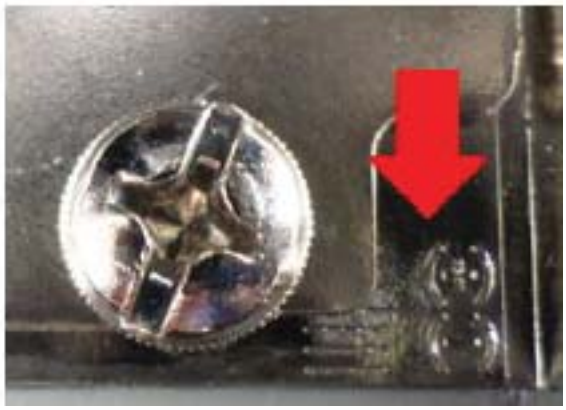
1. Open the Flow ADF. Loosen the two screws securing both hinges.

2. Adjust the position of the Flow ADF hinge according to the skew status.

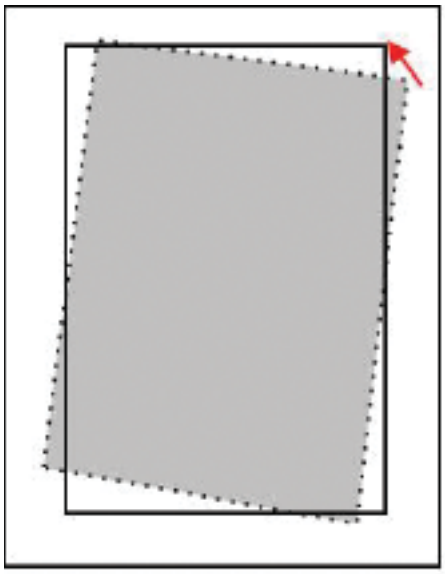


a. If the skew image is similar to the following example, adjust the hinge unit in the direction of the arrow. (1 scale = >1.0 mm skew adjustment)





b. If the skew image is like the following example, adjust the hinge unit in the direction of the arrow. (1 scale = >1.0 mm skew adjustment)



3. Detach the Flow ADF sponge after adjusting the skew. Place the Flow ADF sponge on the scanner glass. Close the Flow ADF unit to attach the sponge.

4 Electrical-mechanical diagrams

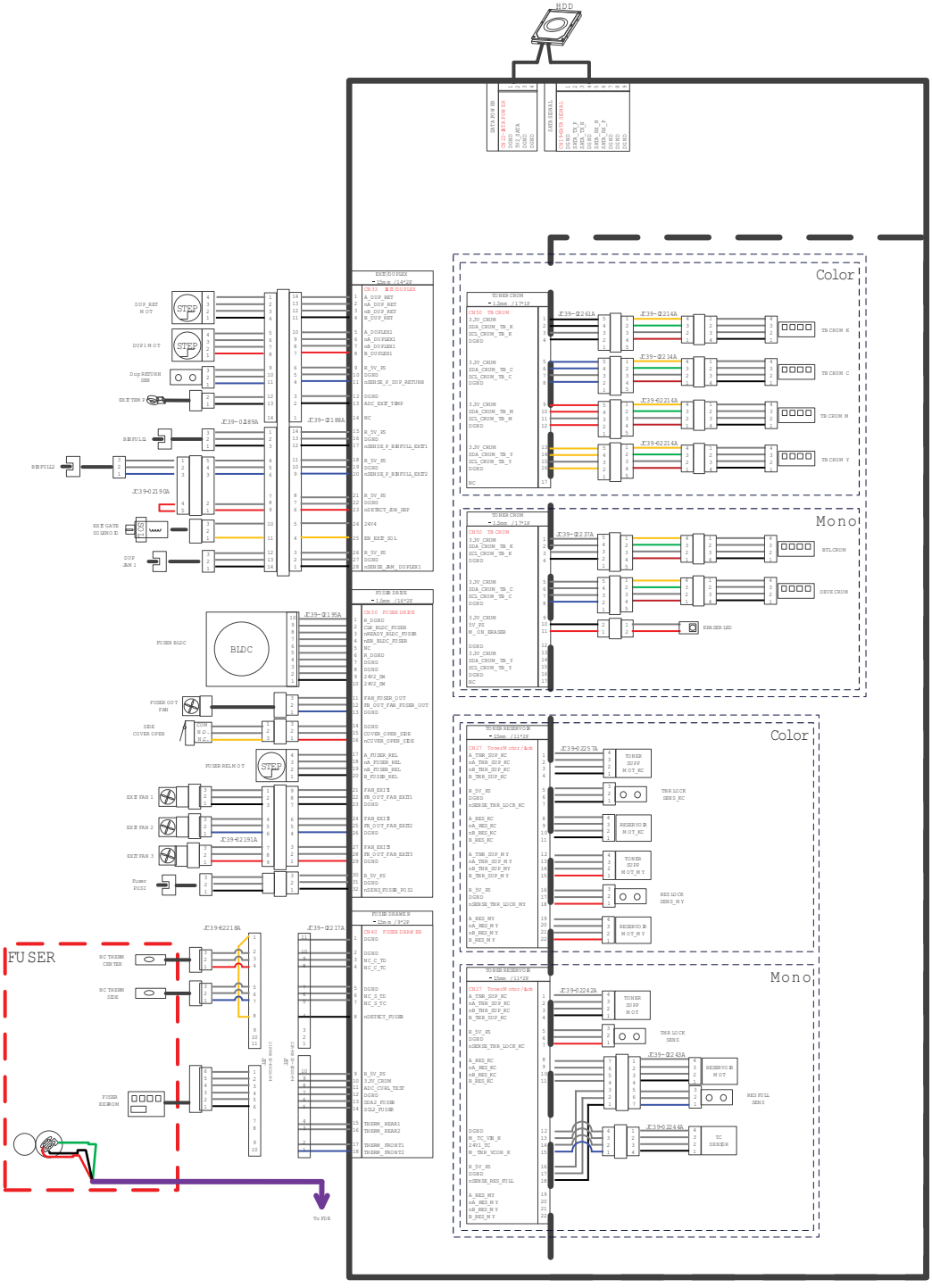
Learn about the electrical-mechanical diagrams.

Connection diagrams

Learn about the electrical-mechanical connection diagrams.

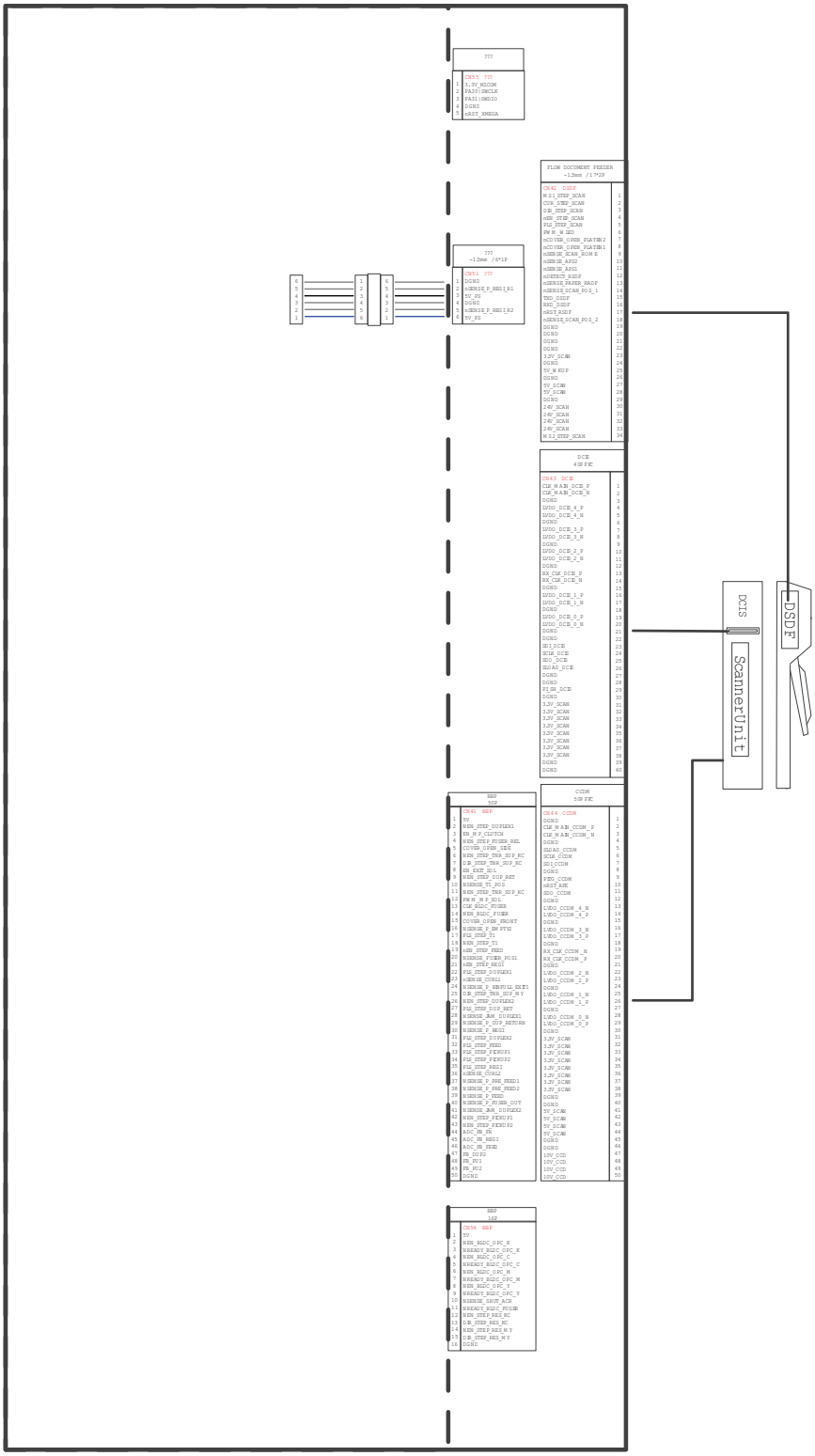
Connection Diagram (FUSER/EXIT/DUPLEX/TONER)

Learn about the connection diagram for the fuser/exit/duplex/toner.



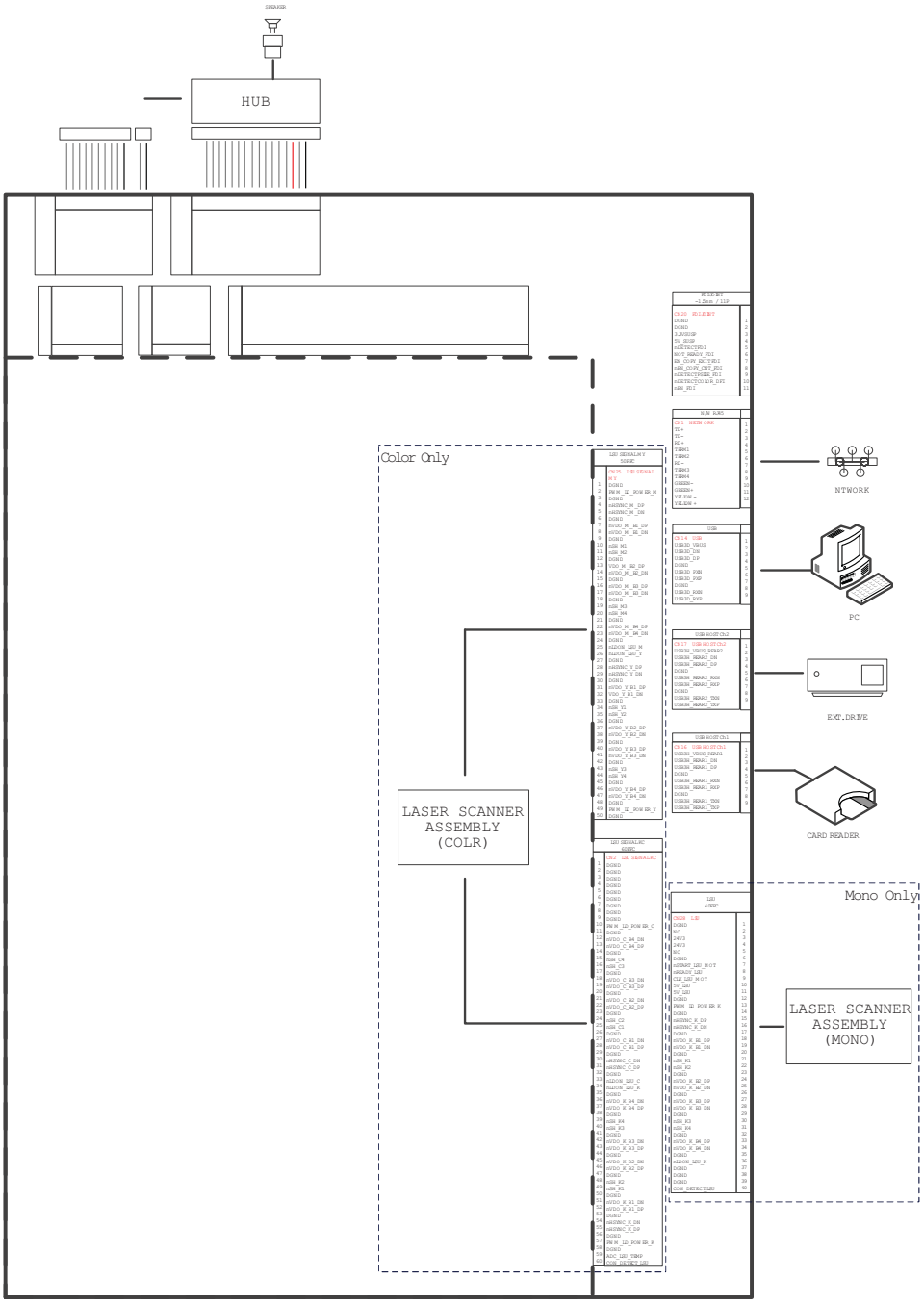
Connection Diagram (Scanner)

Learn about the connection diagram for the scanner.



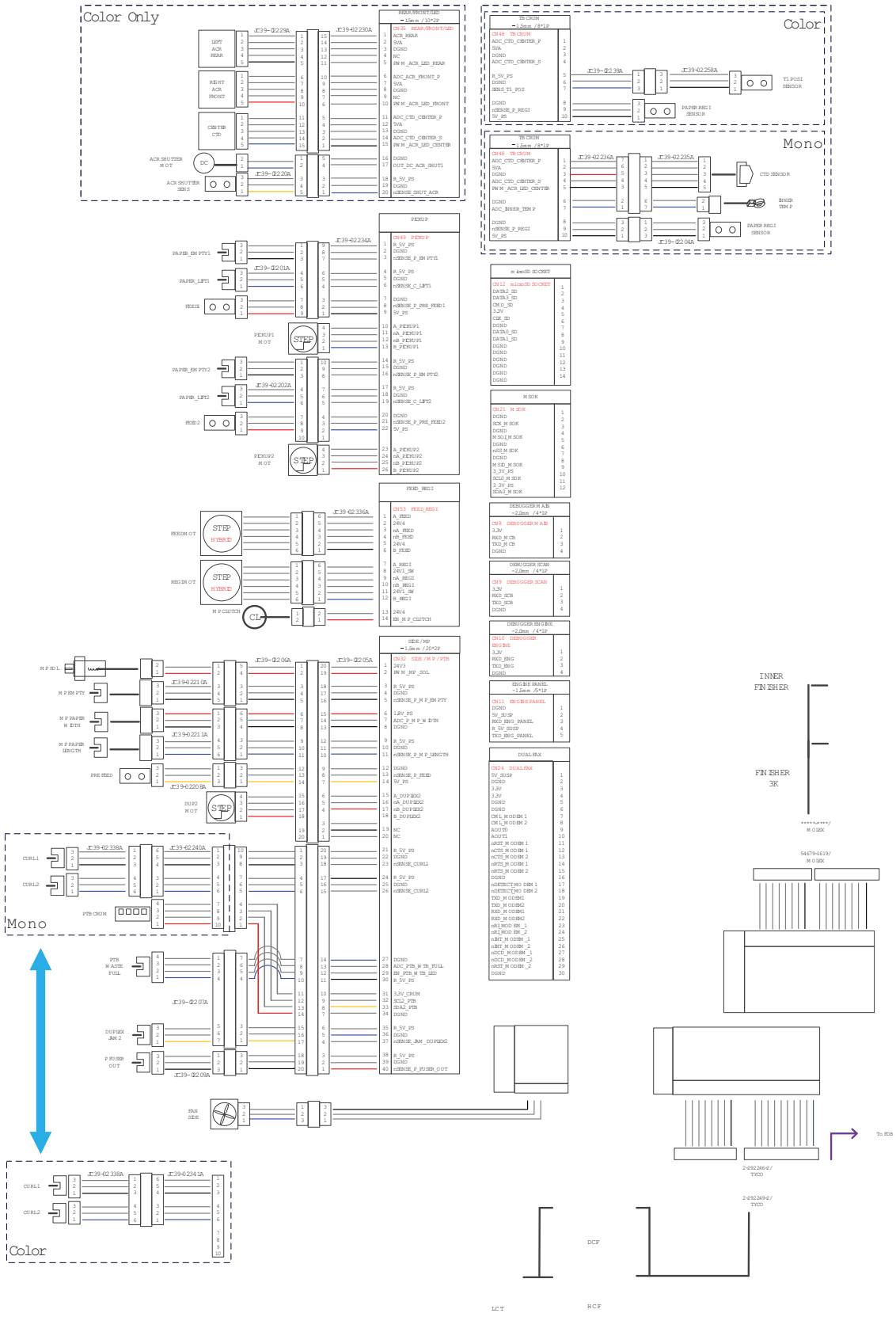
Connection Diagram (Laser Scanner Assembly/OPE/USB)

Learn about the connection diagram for the laser scanner assembly/OPE/USB.



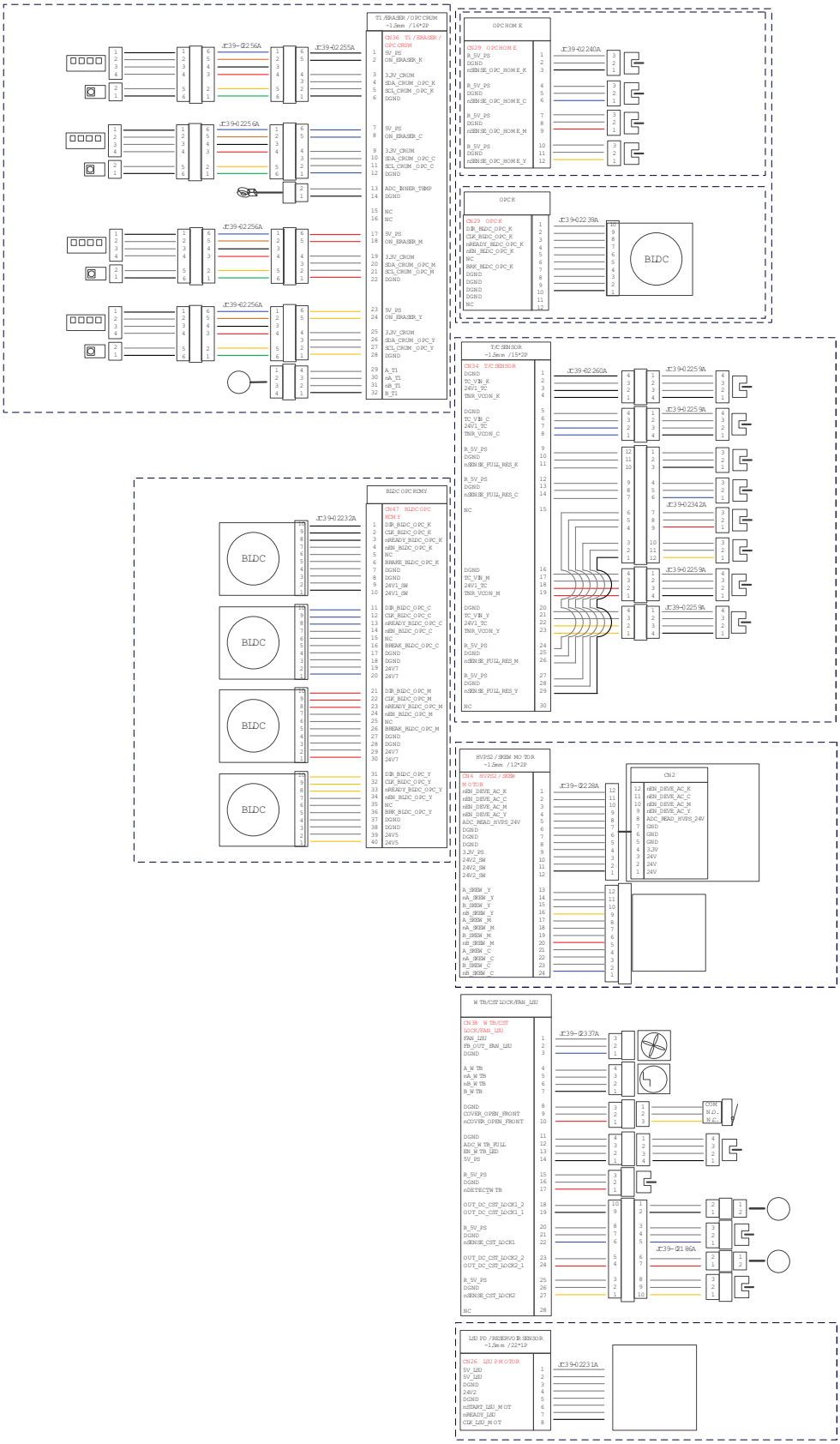
Connection Diagram (Side/MP/Feed/Registration/Pickup)

Learn about the connection diagram for the Side/MP/Feed/Registration/Pickup.


Color Only
Color
Mono
INNER FINISHER
FINISHER 3K
DCF
LCT
HCF

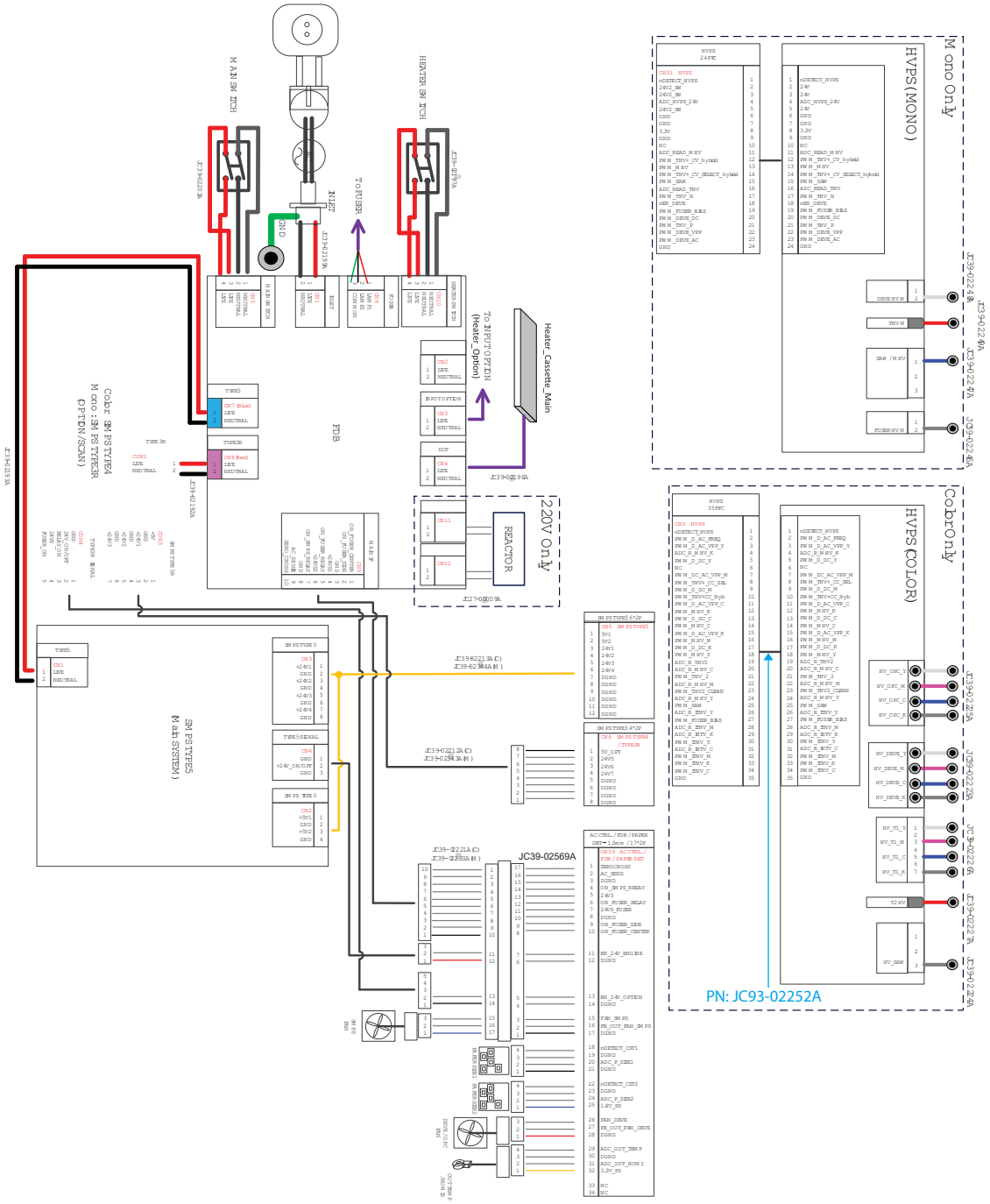
Connection Diagram (OPC/WTB/CST Lock)

Learn about the connection diagram for the OPC/WTB/CST Lock.


T1/ERASER/OPCCROM
OPCHOME
OPCK
BIDC
T/C SENSOR
BIDCOPCROMY
HVPS2/SKEW MOTOR
W TB/CST LOCK/FAN_LIU
LIU PD/RESERVOIR SENSOR
BIDC
BIDC
BIDC
BIDC

Connection Diagram (HVPS/LVPS/FDB)

Learn about the connection diagram for the HVPS/LVPS/FDB.



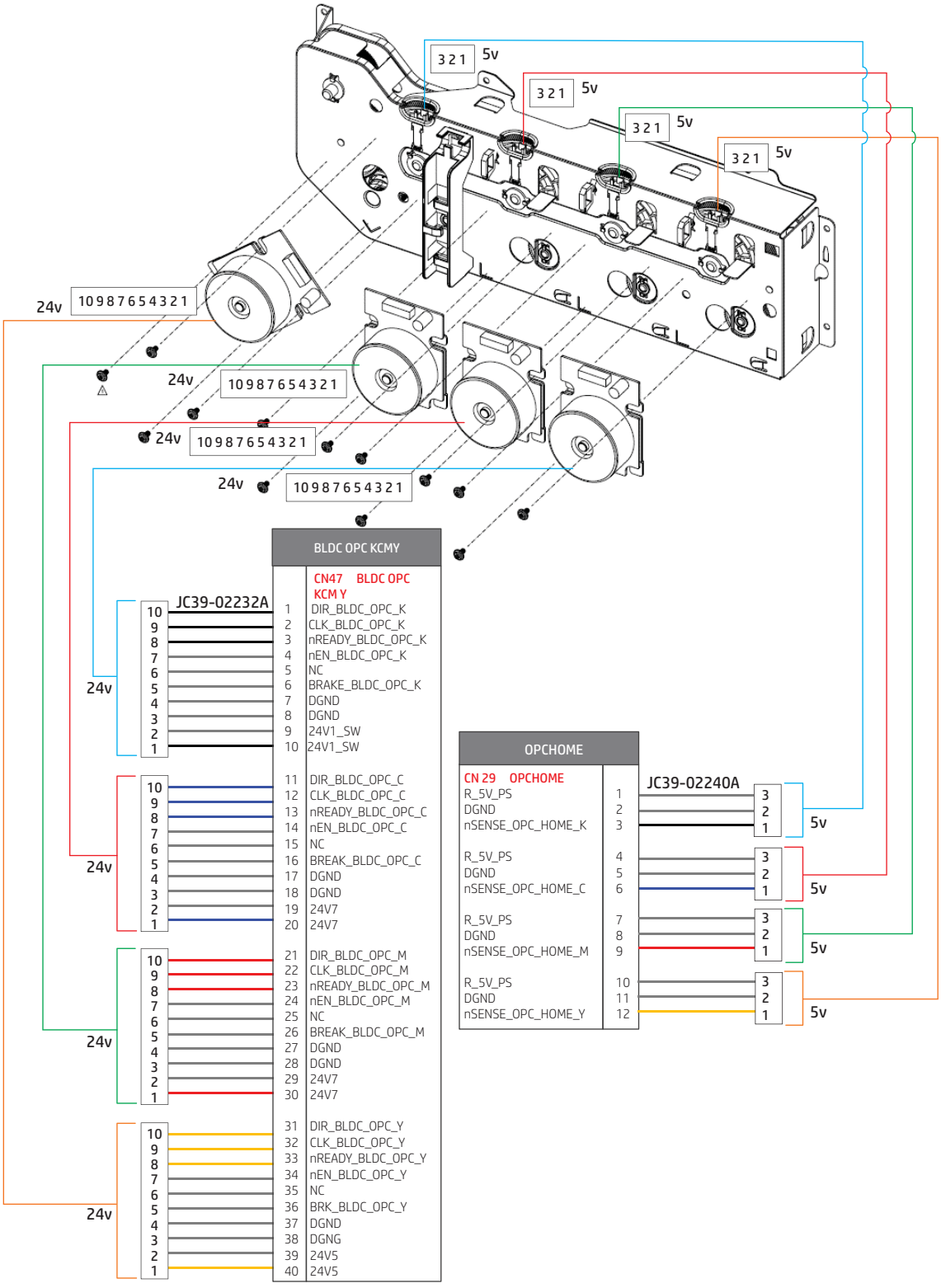
Electrical-mechanical relationships diagrams

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagrams.

Main drive (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the toner supply drive.

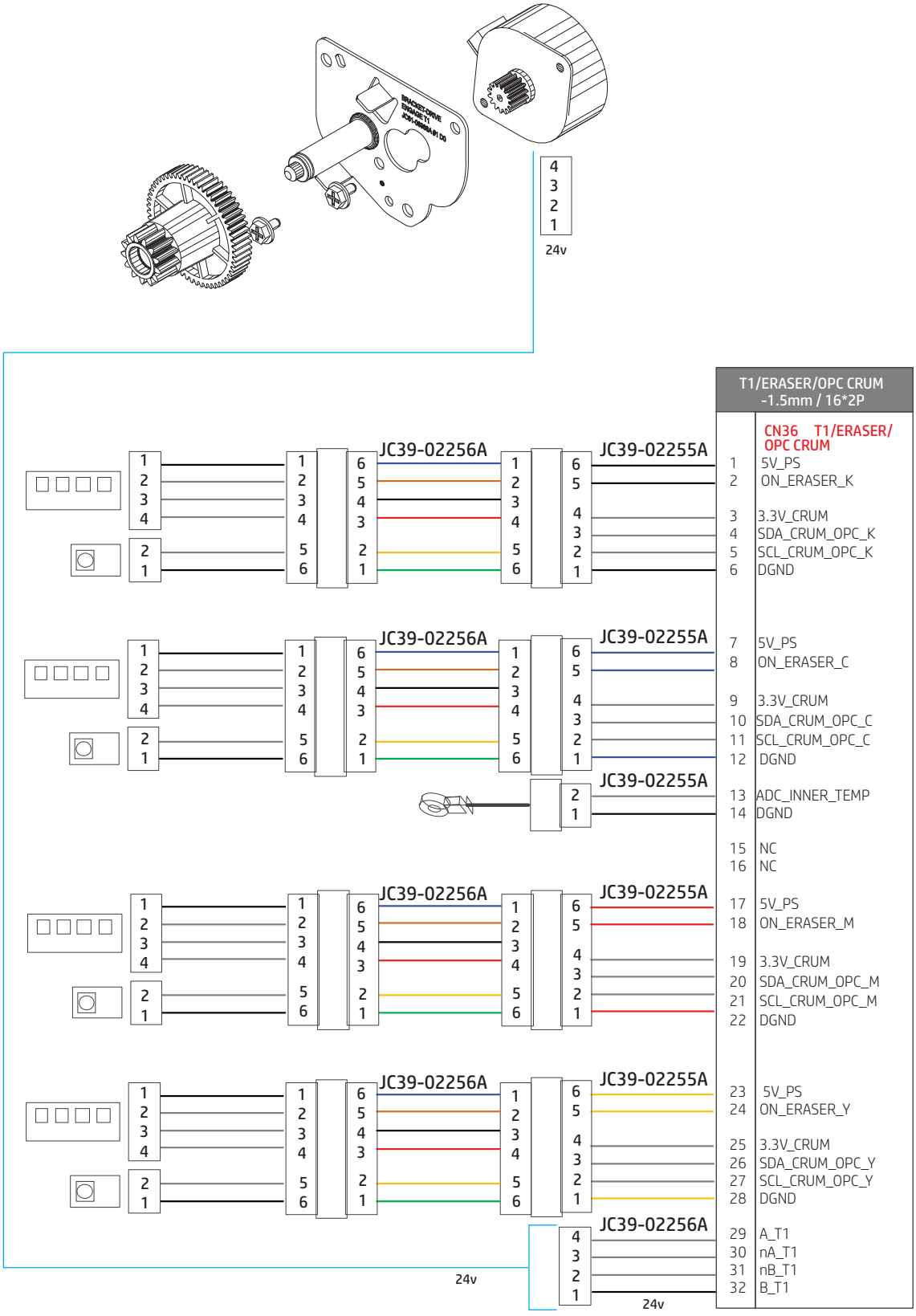
Figure 4-1 Main drive electrical-mechanical relationships (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific)



T1 drive (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the T1 drive.

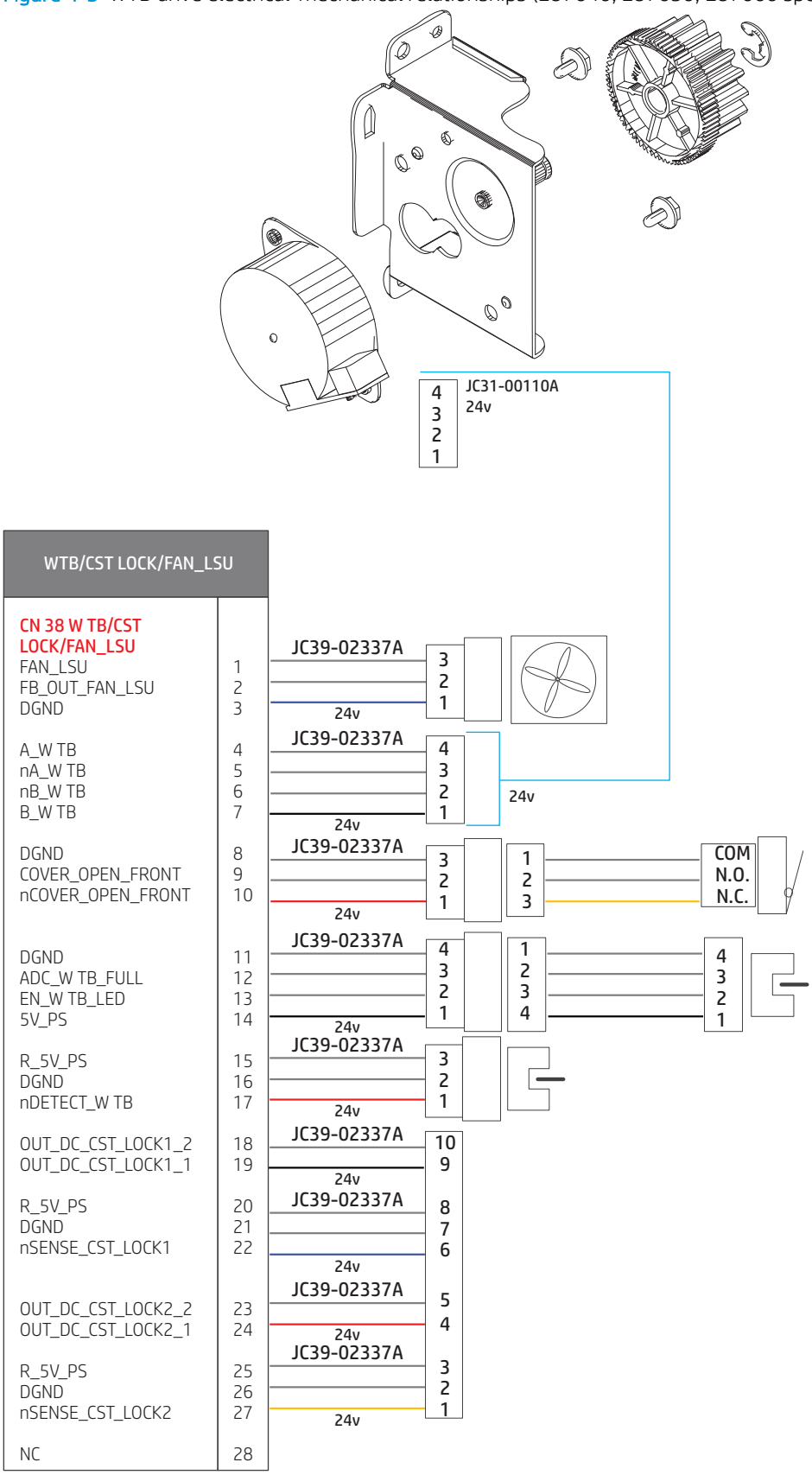
Figure 4-2 T1 drive electrical-mechanical relationships (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific)



WTB drive (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the WTB drive.

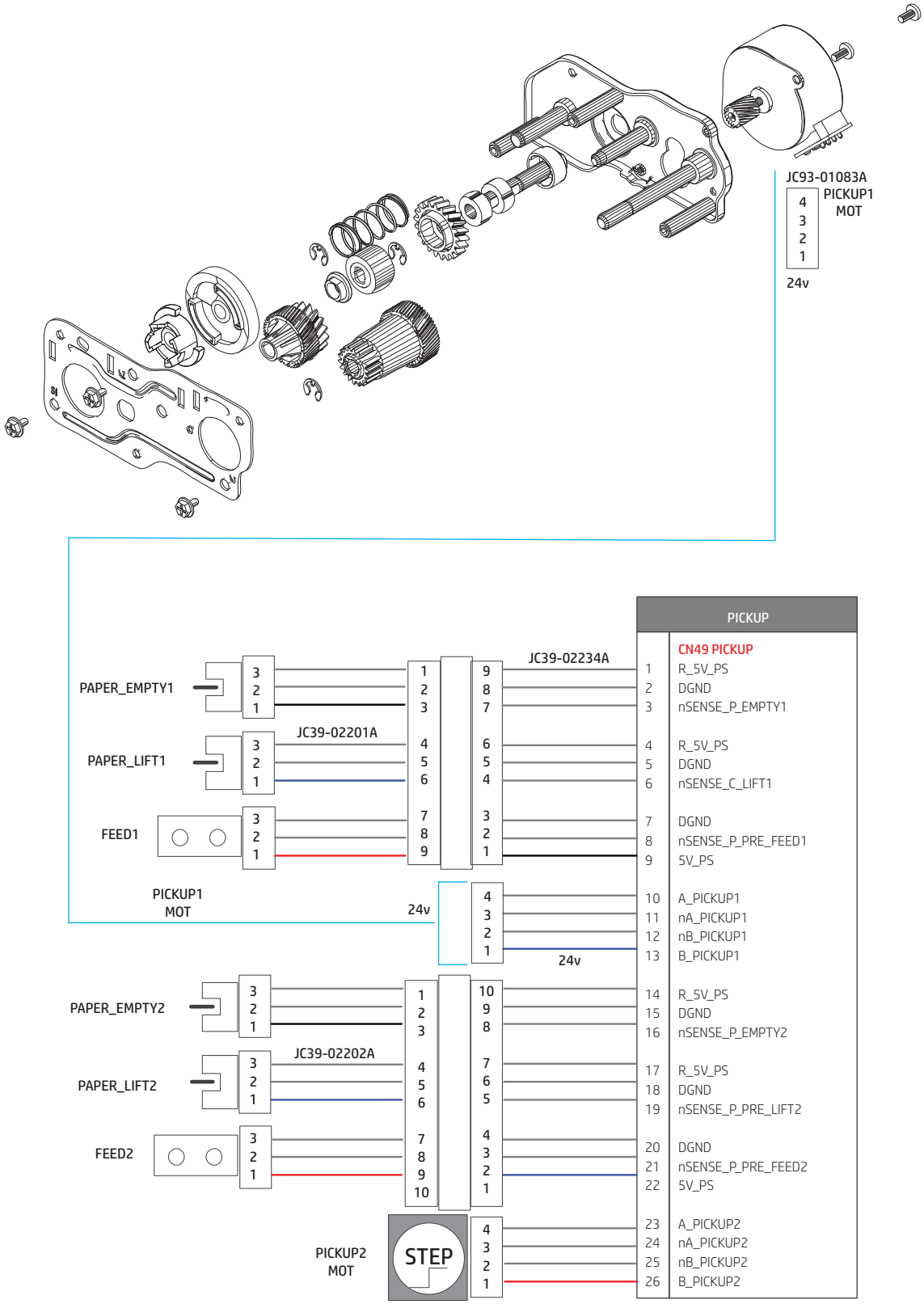
Figure 4-3 WTB drive electrical-mechanical relationships (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific)



Pickup drive (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the pickup drive.

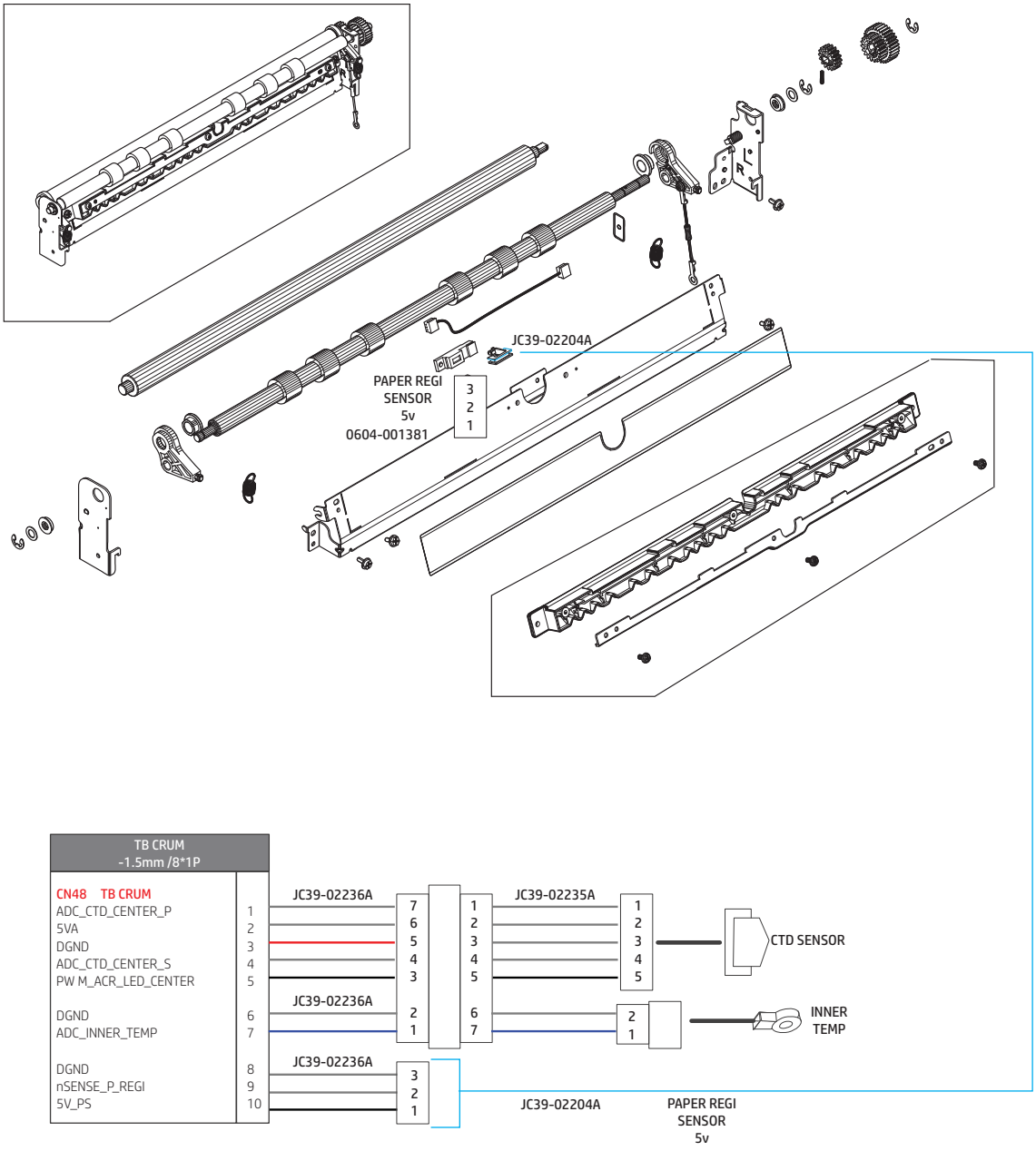
Figure 4-4 Pickup drive electrical-mechanical relationships (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific)



Registration unit (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the registration unit.

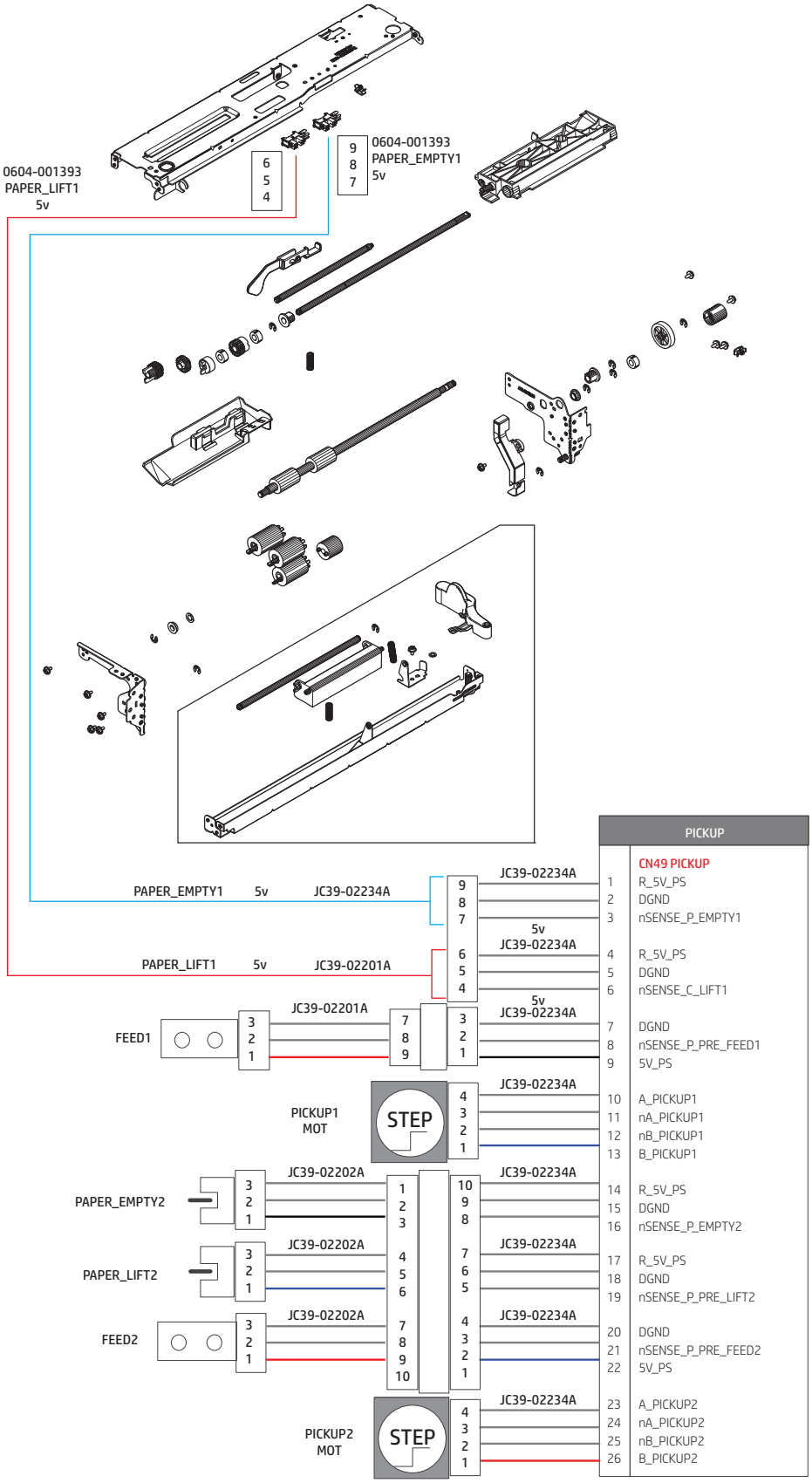
Figure 4-5 Registration unit electrical-mechanical relationships (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific)



Pickup unit (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the pickup unit.

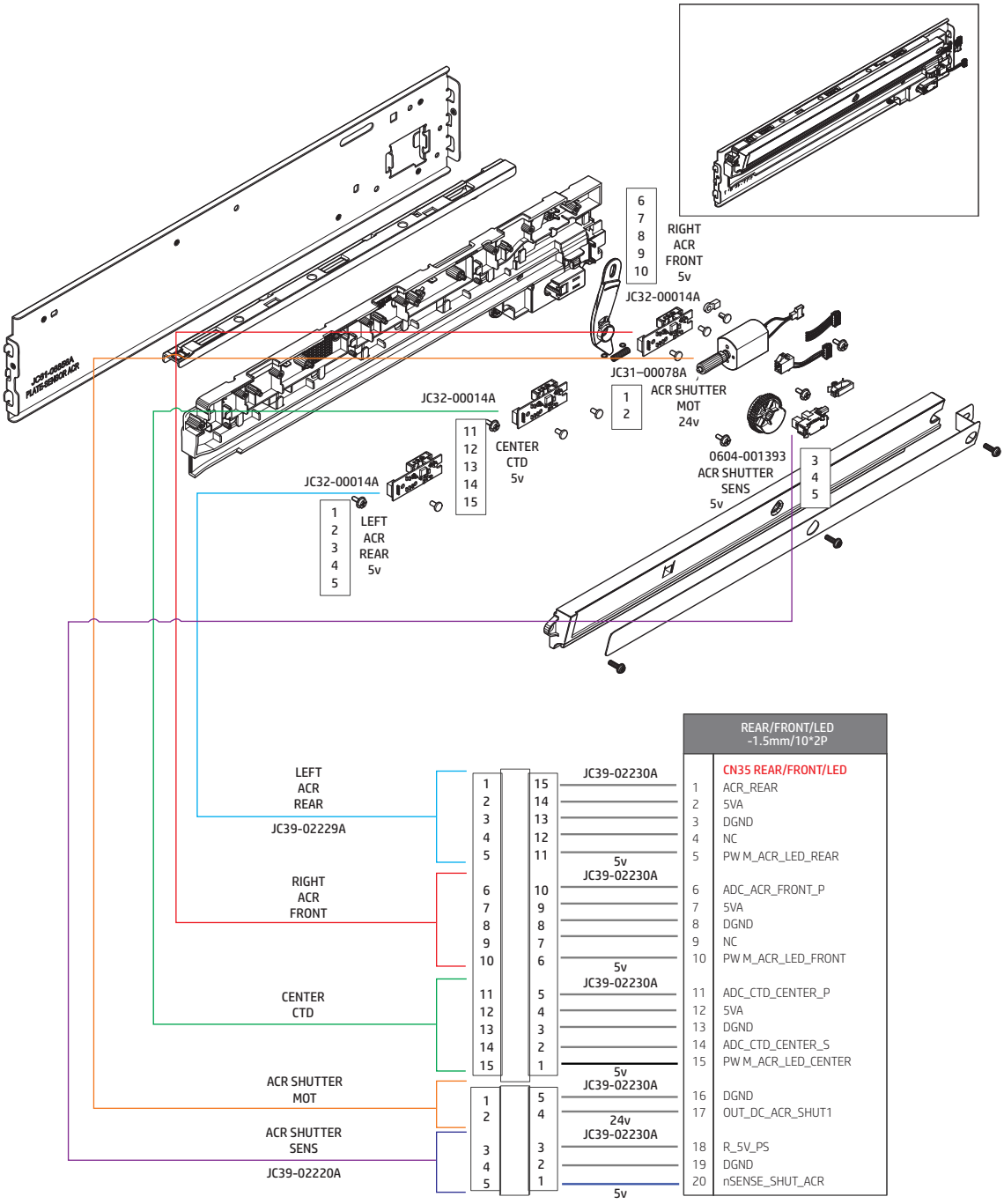
Figure 4-6 Pickup unit electrical-mechanical relationships (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific)



ACR unit (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the ACR unit.

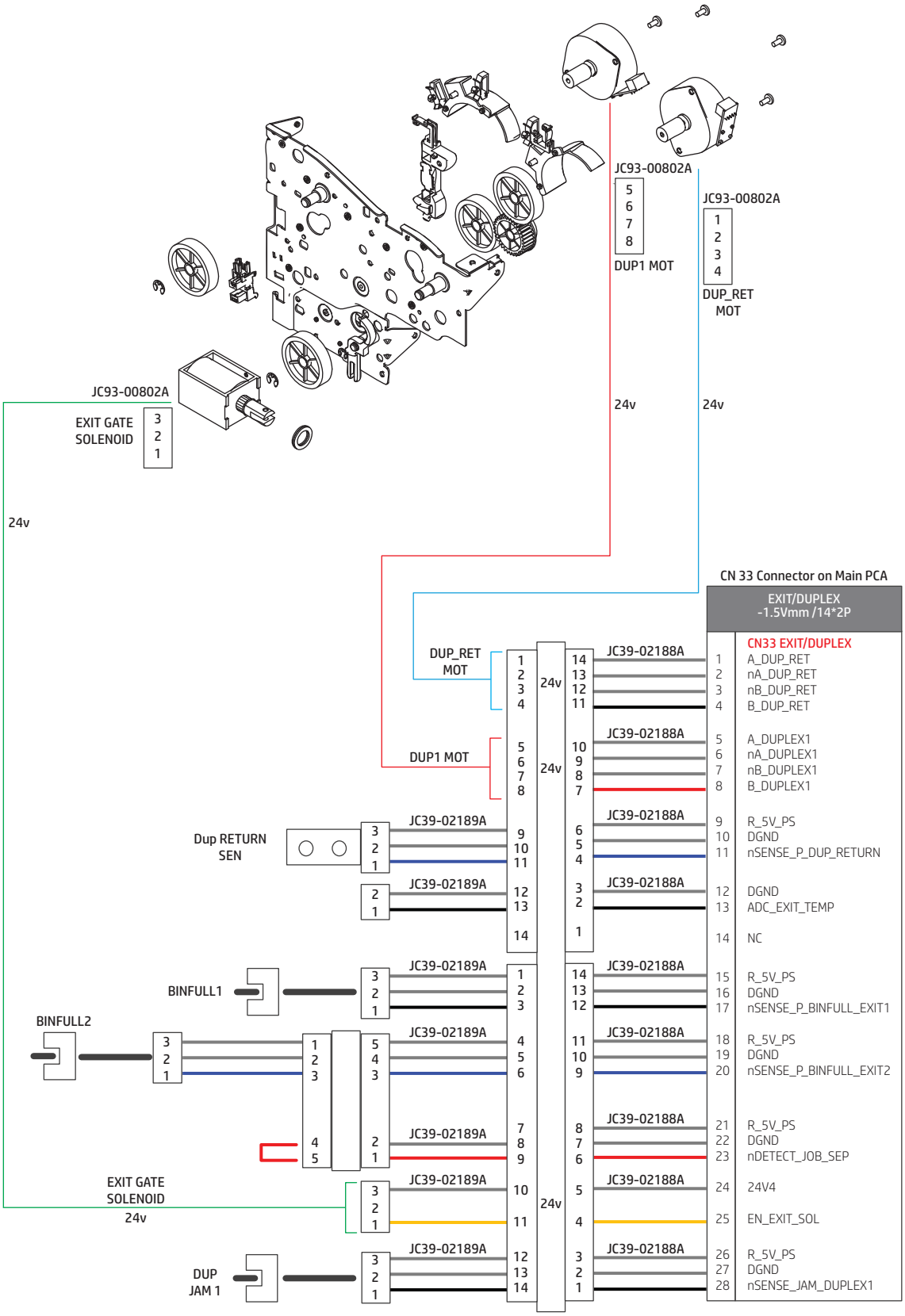
Figure 4-7 ACR unit electrical-mechanical relationships (E87640, E87650, E87660 specific)



Exit unit (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the exit unit.

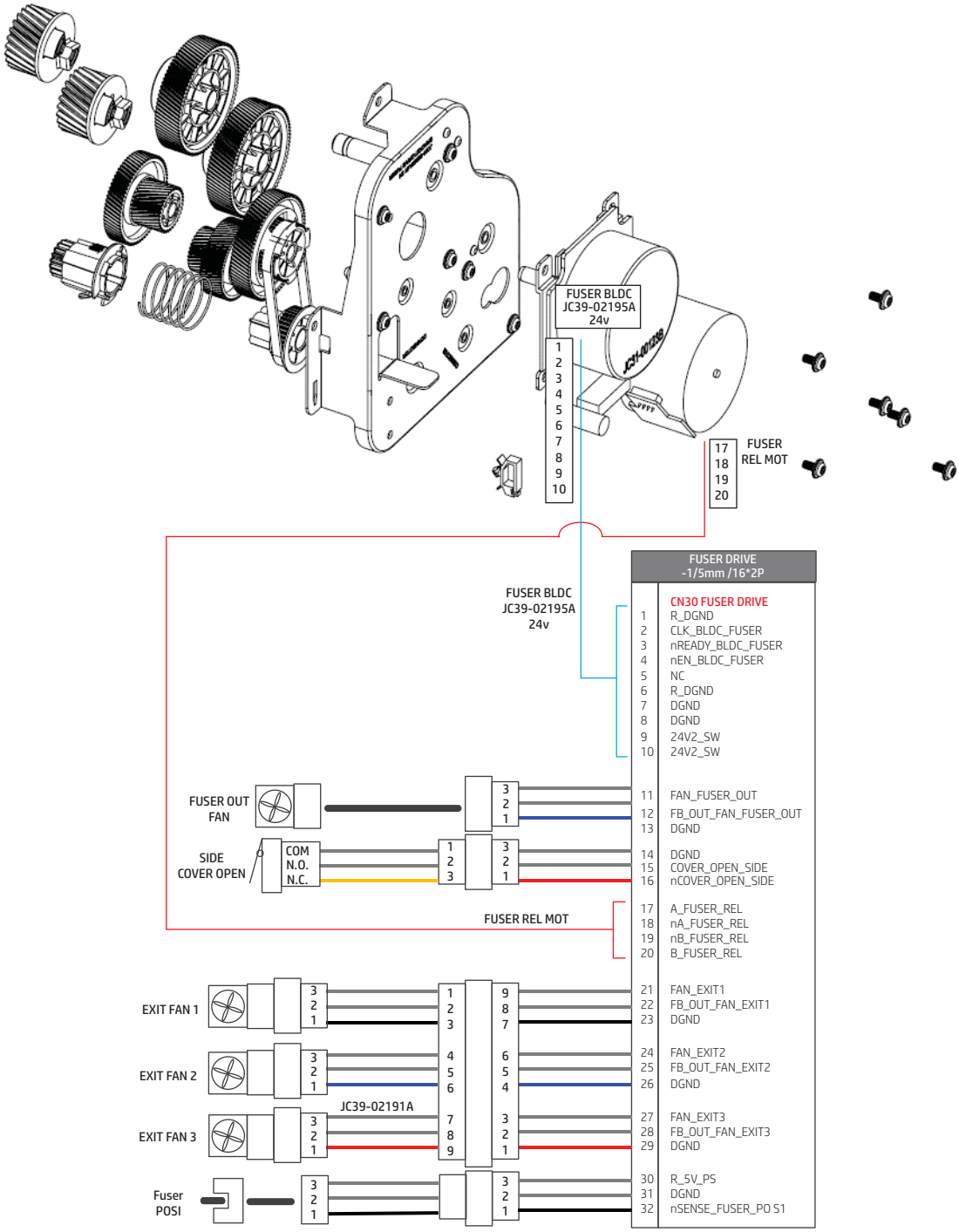
Figure 4-8 Exit unit electrical-mechanical relationships (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)



Fuser exit drive (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the fuser exit drive.

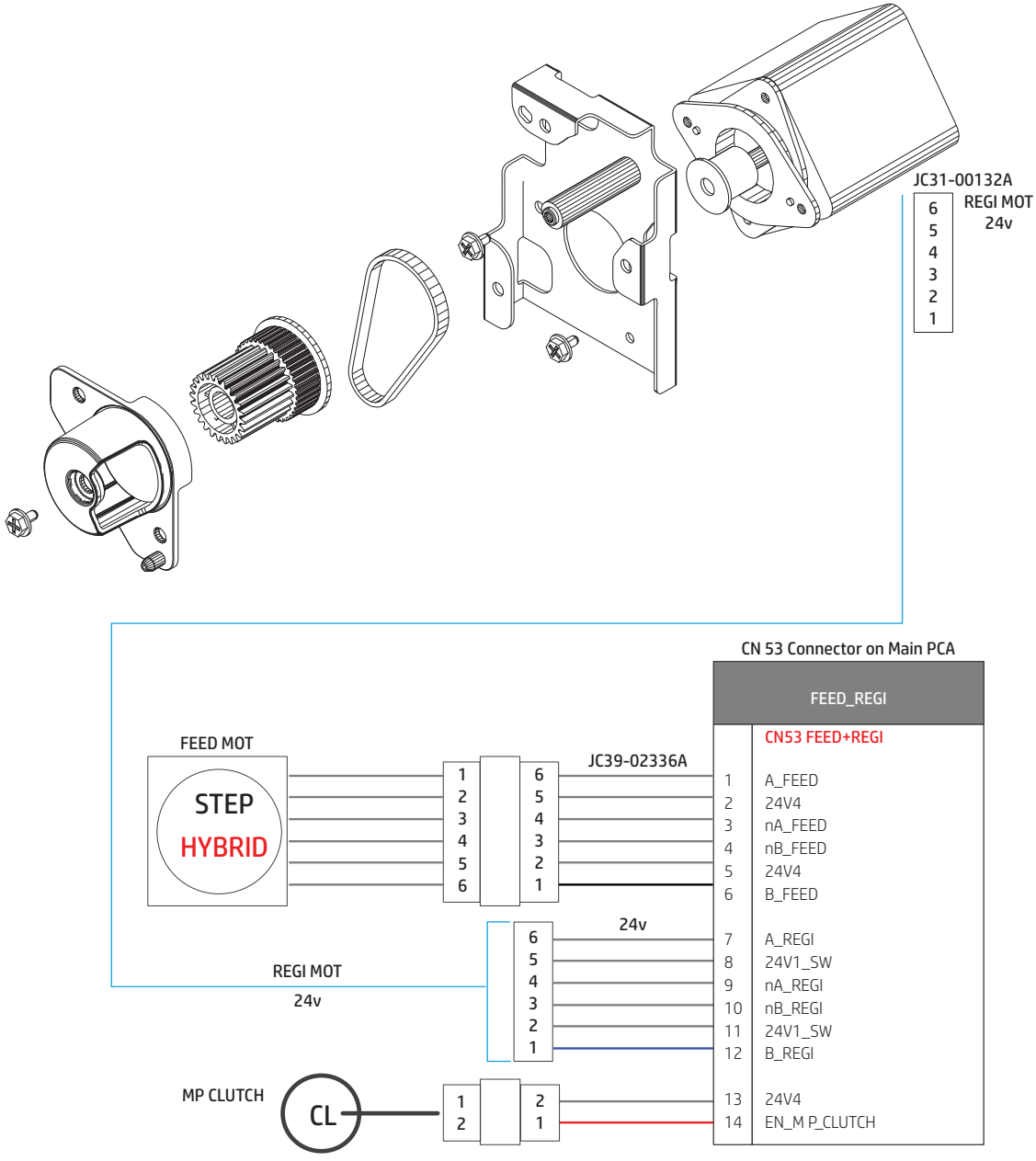
Figure 4-9 Fuser exit drive electrical-mechanical relationships (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)



Registration drive (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the registration drive.

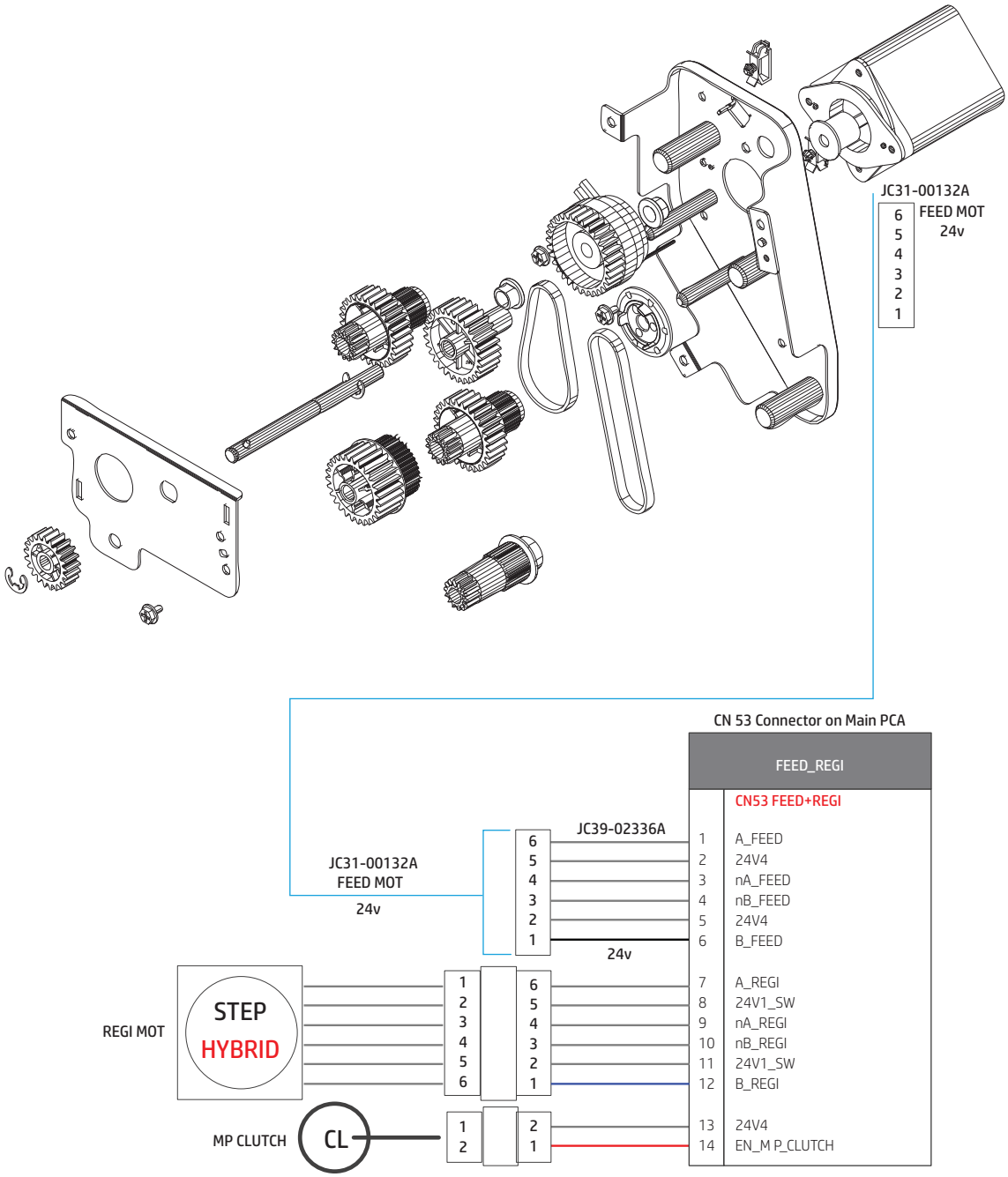
Figure 4-10 Registration drive electrical-mechanical relationships (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)



Feed drive (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the feed drive.

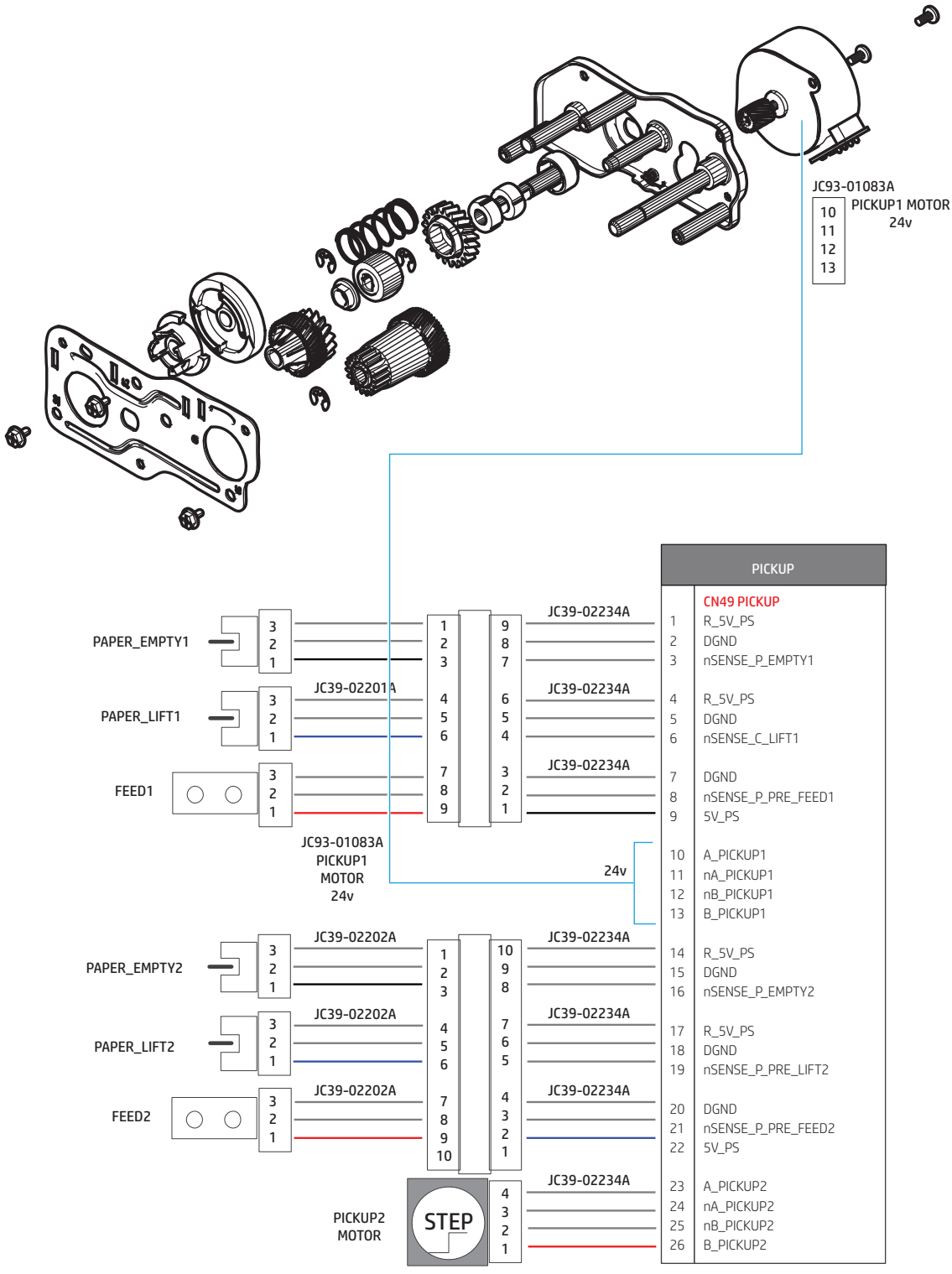
Figure 4-11 Feed drive electrical-mechanical relationships (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)



Pickup drive (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the pickup drive.

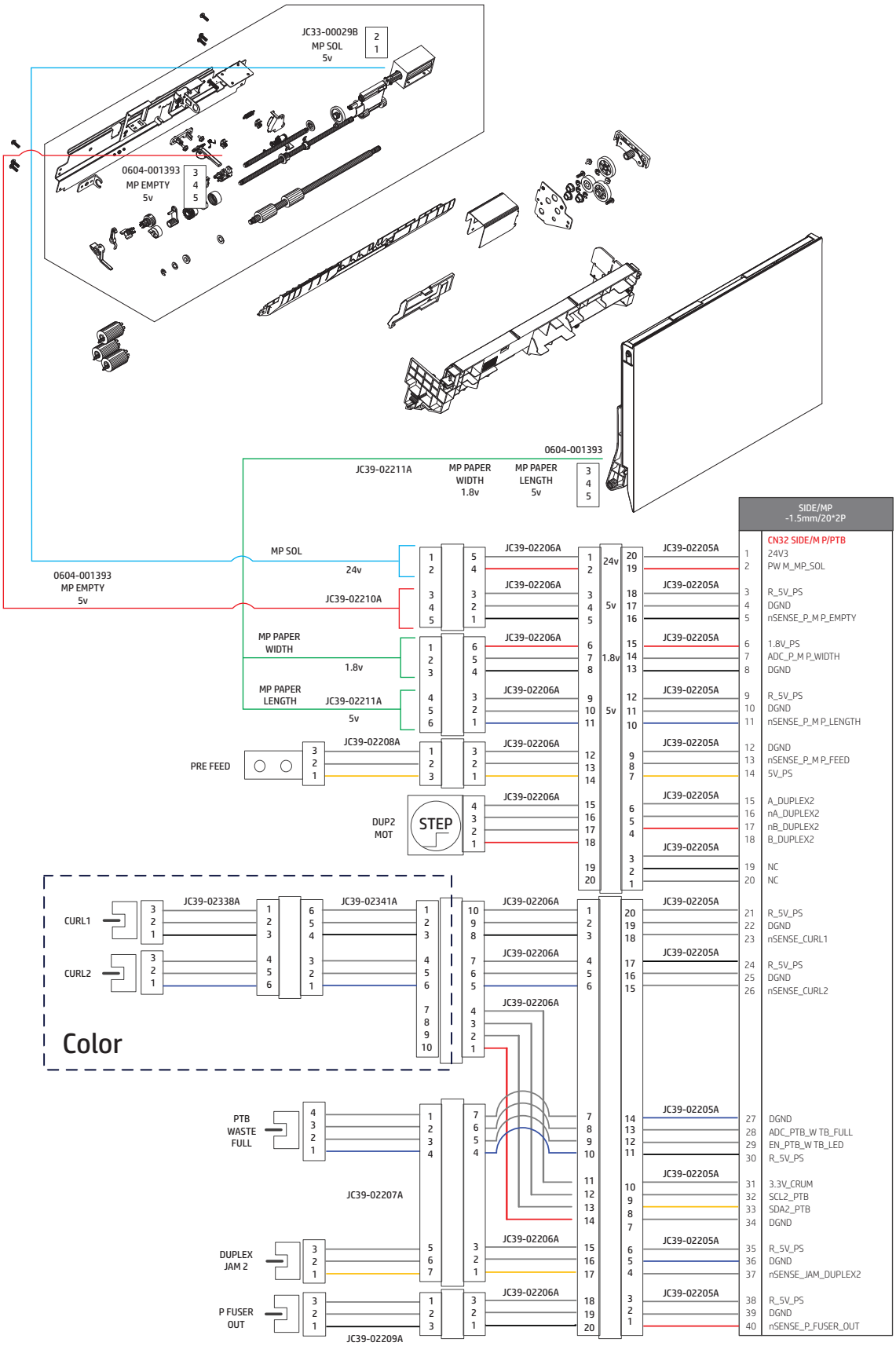
Figure 4-12 Pickup drive electrical-mechanical relationships (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)



MP unit (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the MP unit.

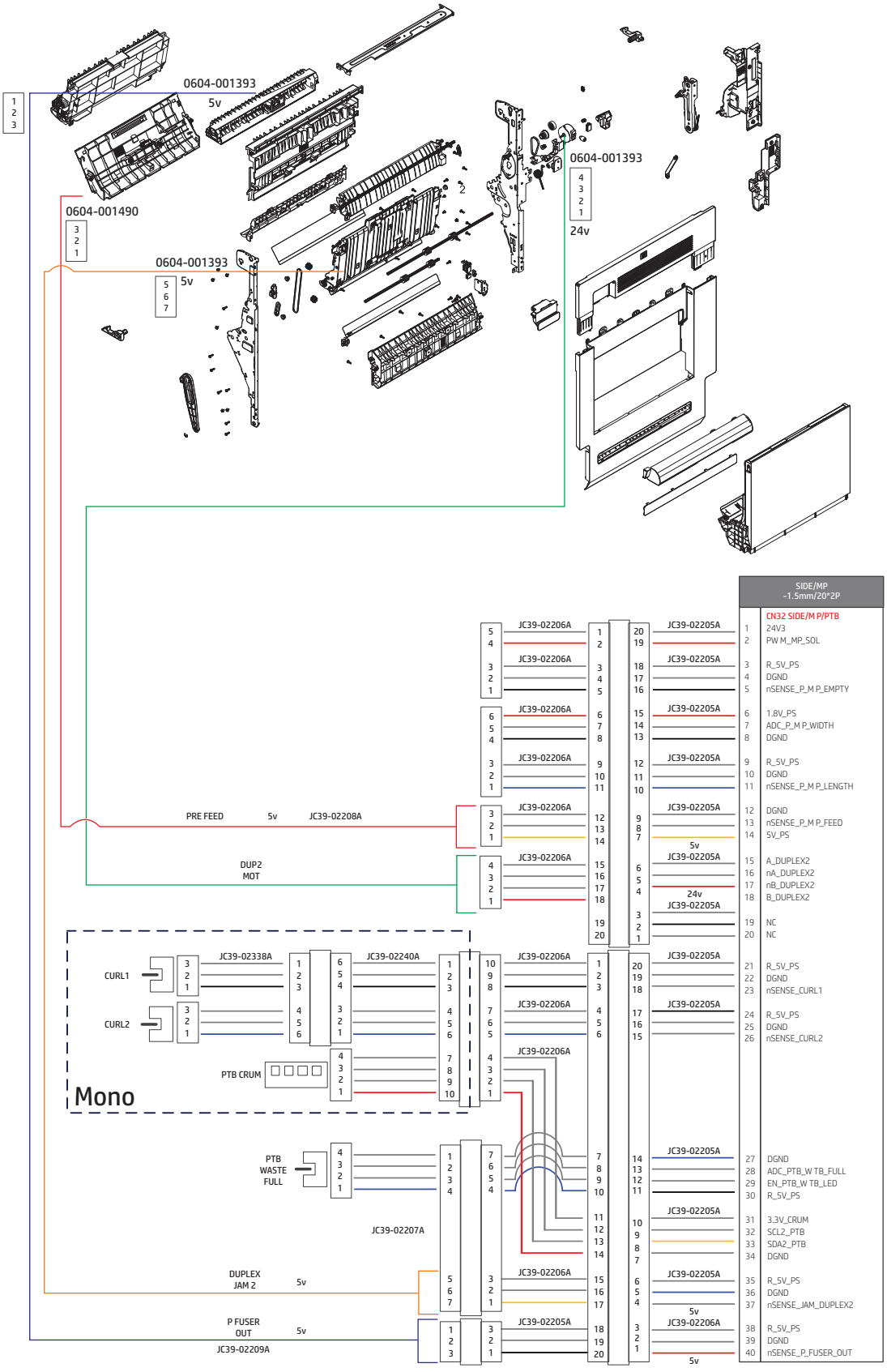
Figure 4-13 MP unit electrical-mechanical relationships (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)



Side unit (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the side unit.

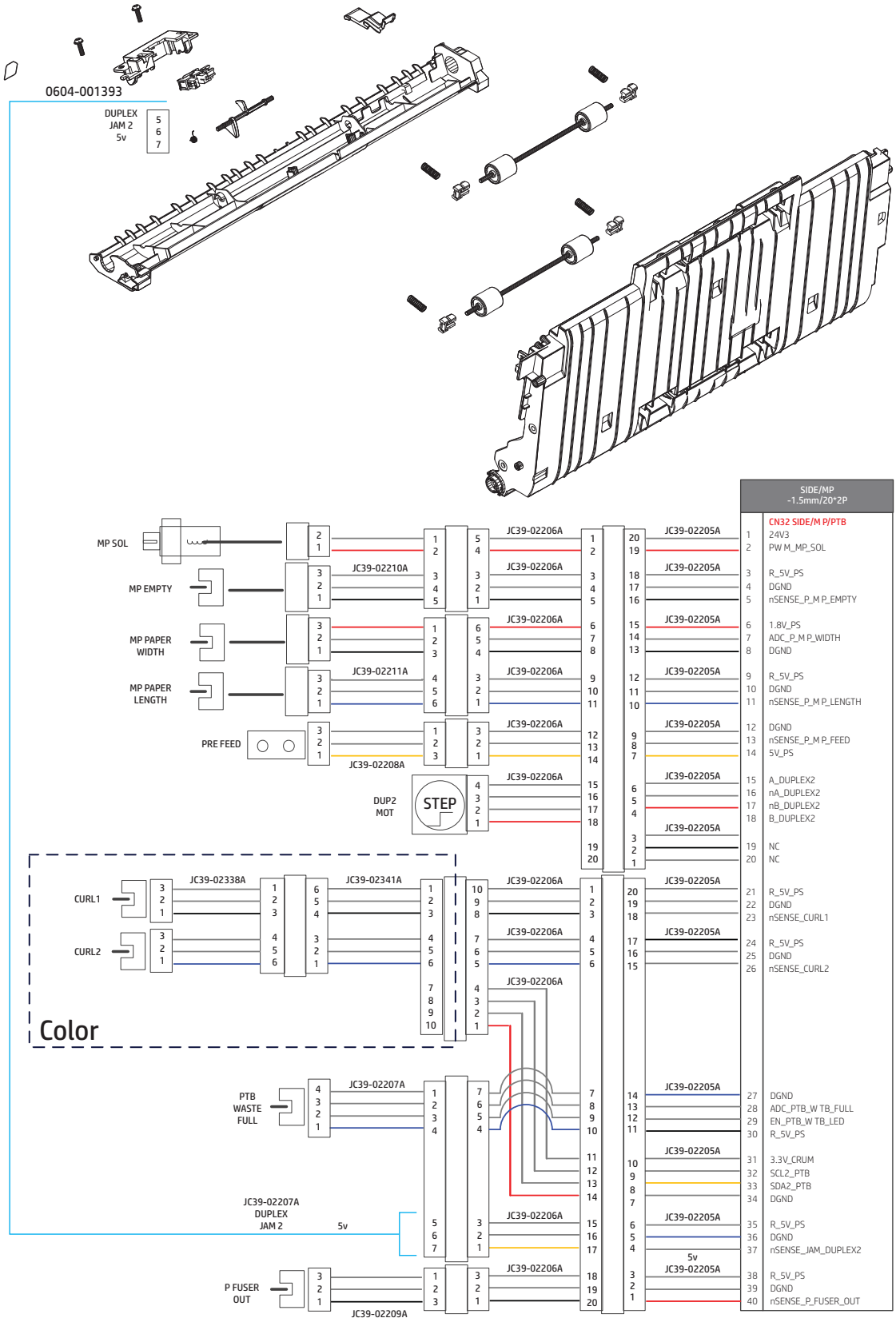
Figure 4-14 Side unit electrical-mechanical relationships (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)



Right door guide (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the right door guide.

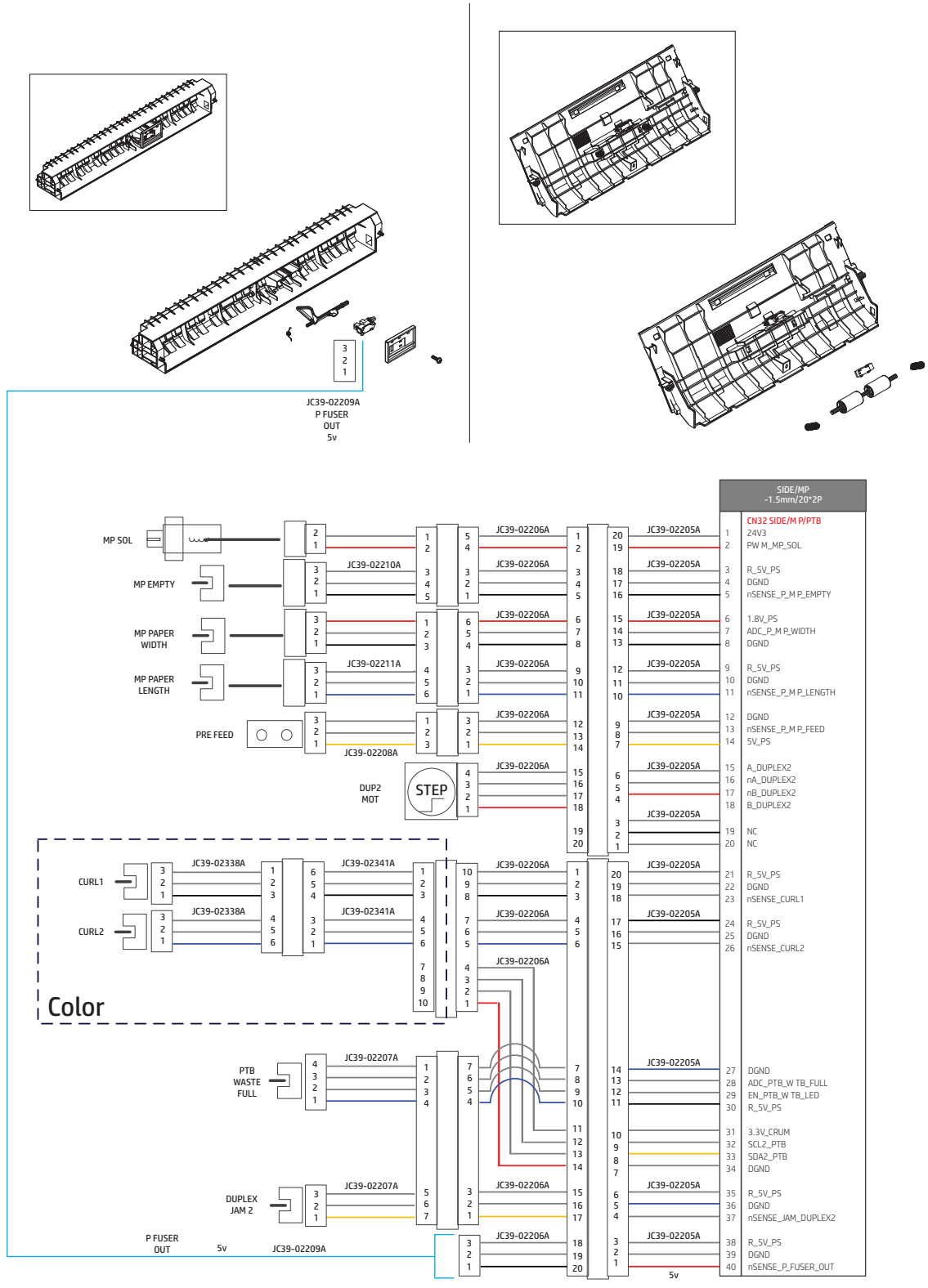
Figure 4-15 Right door guide electrical-mechanical relationships (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)



Right door output takeaway (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the right door output takeaway.

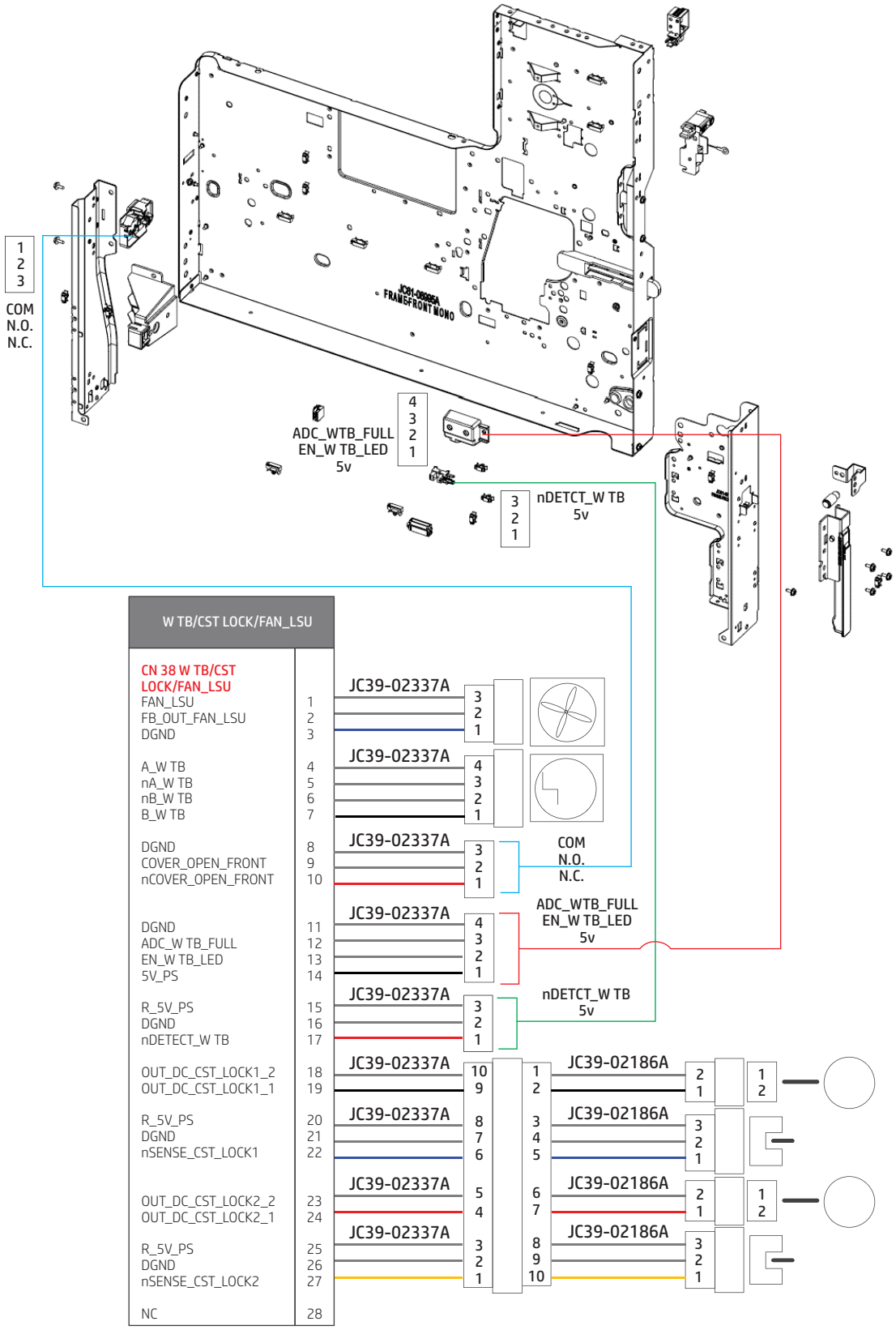
Figure 4-16 Right door output takeaway electrical-mechanical relationships (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)



Front unit (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the front unit.

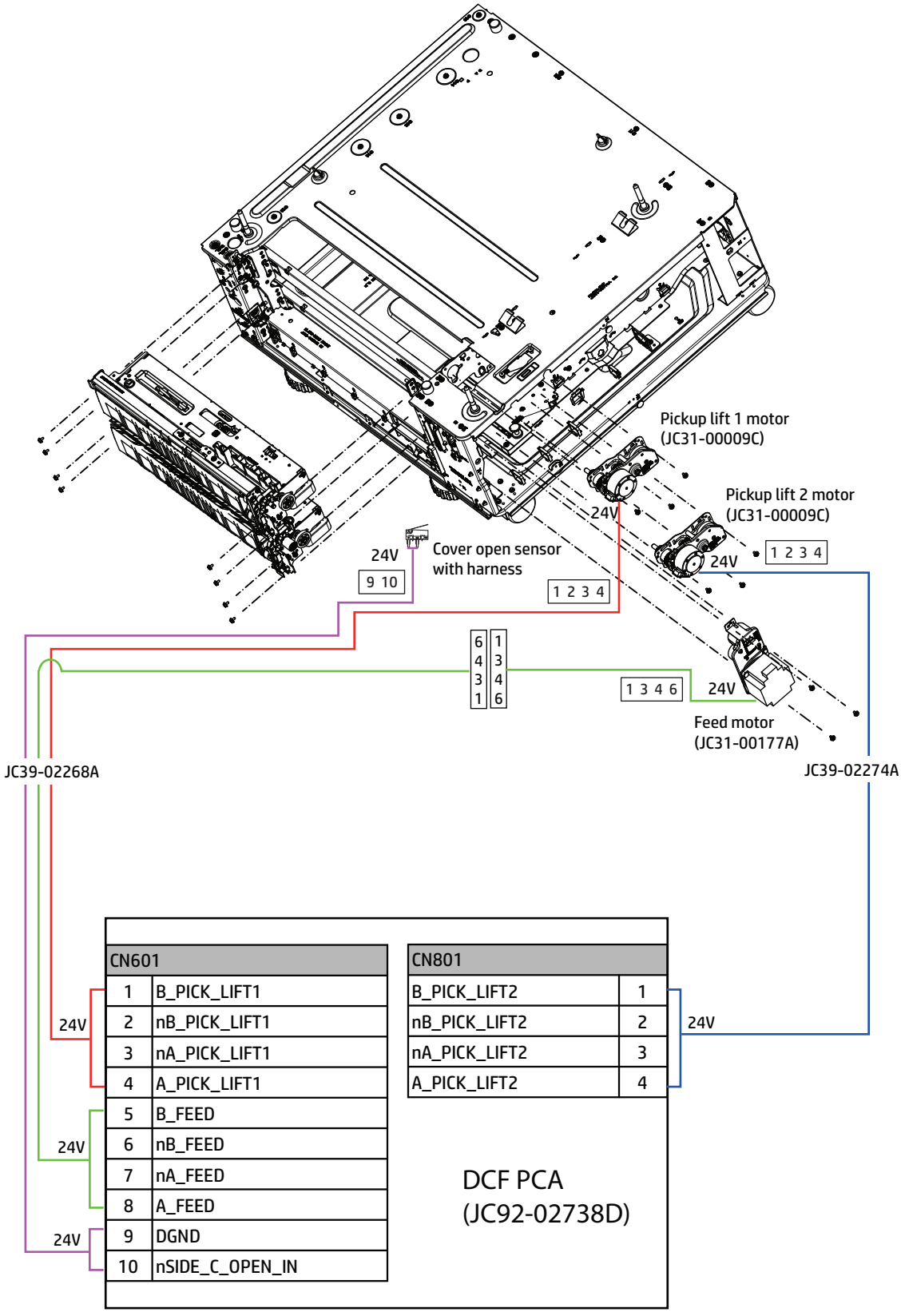
Figure 4-17 Front unit electrical-mechanical relationships (E82540, E82550, E82560, E87640, E87650, E87660 shared)



Pickup lift motors, feed motor, and cover open sensor (DCF/HCI)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the pickup lift motors, feed motor, and cover open sensor (DCF/HCI).

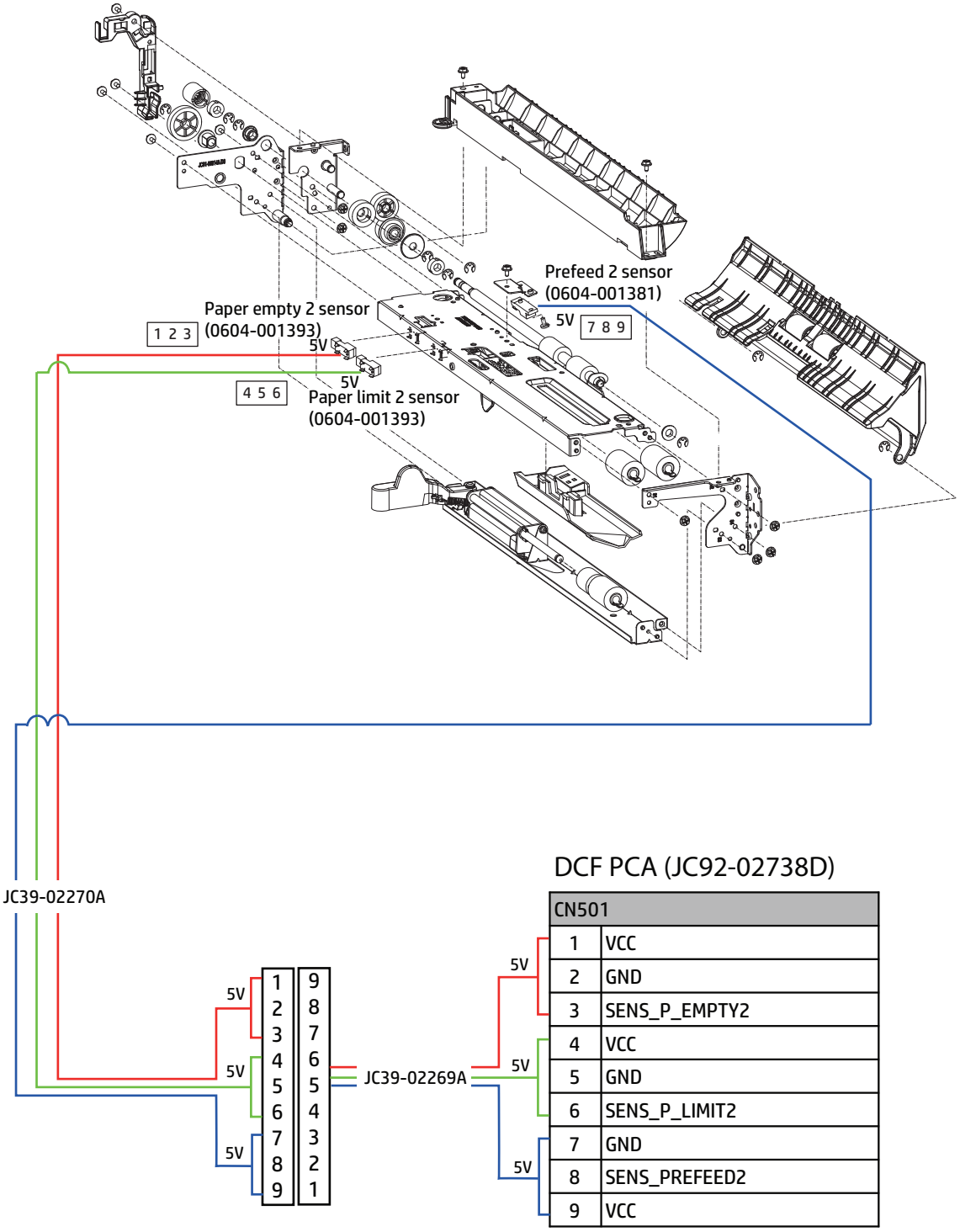
Figure 4-18 Pickup lift motors, feed motor, and cover open sensor electrical-mechanical relationships (DCF/HCI)



Paper empty and limit-2 sensors (DCF/HCI)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the paper empty and limit-2 sensors (DCF/HCI).

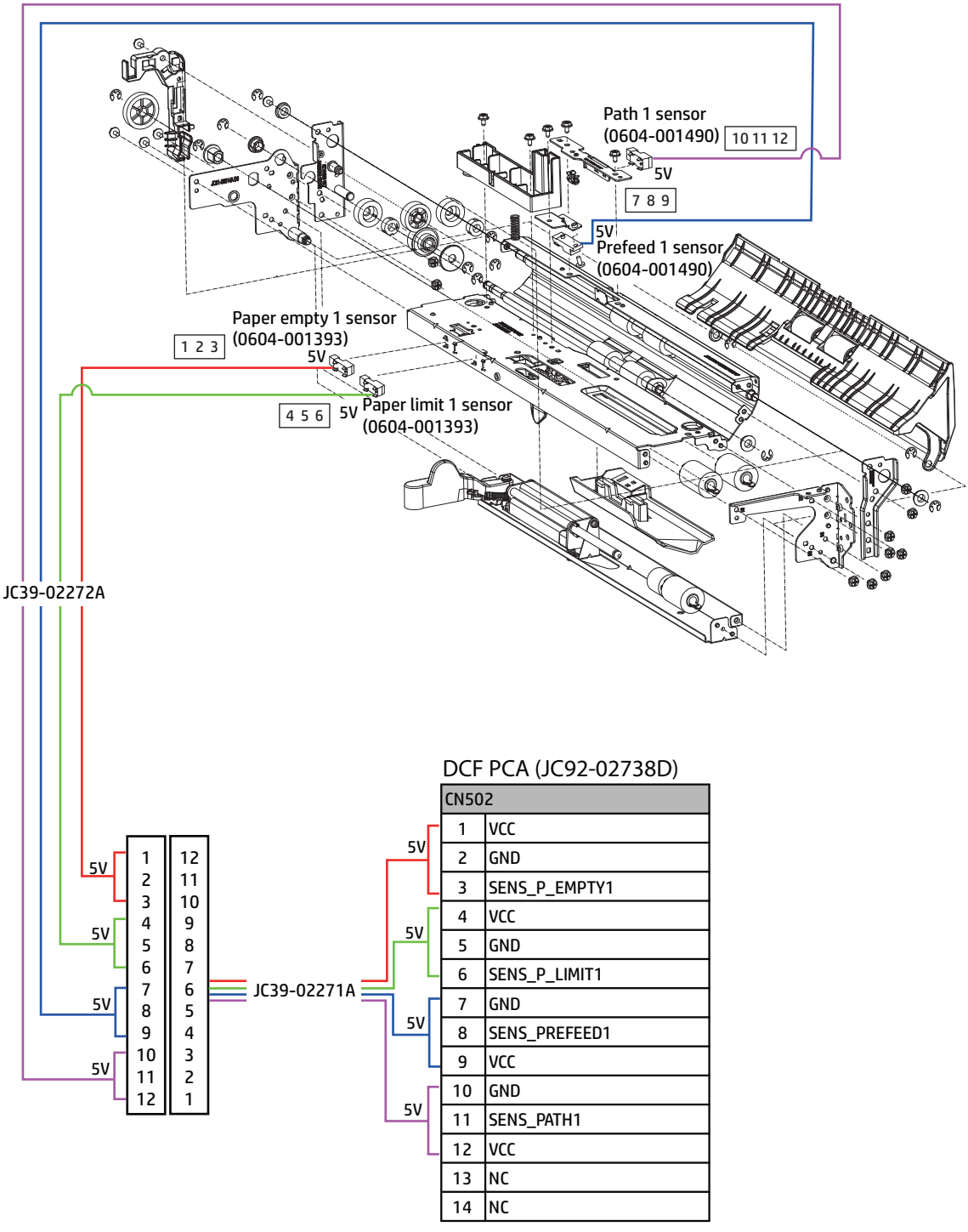
Figure 4-19 Paper empty and limit-2 sensors electrical-mechanical relationships (DCF/HCI)



Paper empty, path, limit-1, and path sensors (DCF/HCI)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the paper empty, path, limit-1, and path sensors (DCF/HCI).

Figure 4-20 Paper empty , path, limit-1, and path sensors electrical-mechanical relationships (DCF/HCI)



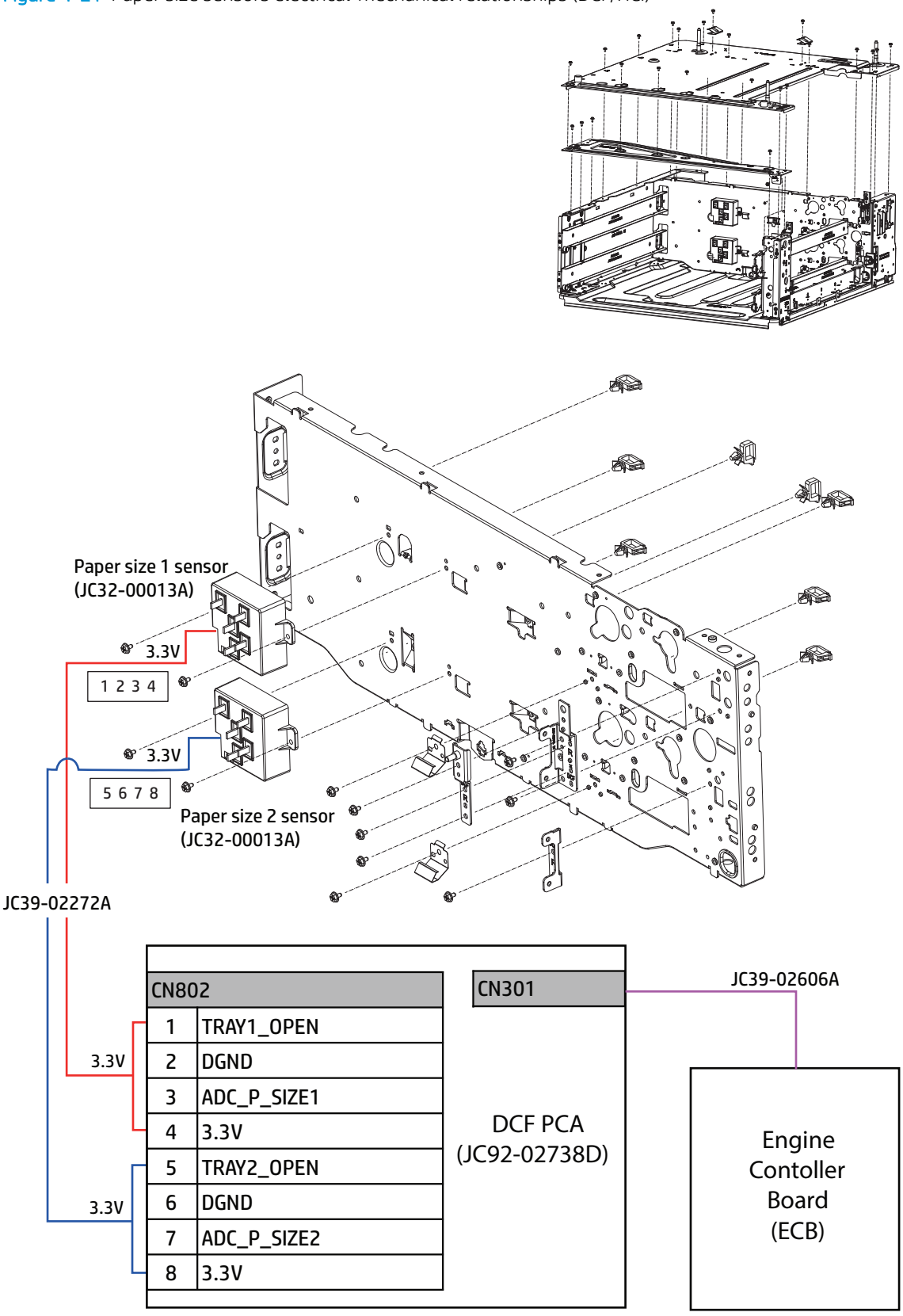
DCF PCA (JC92-02738D)

CN502	
1	VCC
2	GND
3	SENS_P_EMPTY1
4	VCC
5	GND
6	SENS_P_LIMIT1
7	GND
8	SENS_PREFEED1
9	VCC
10	GND
11	SENS_PATH1
12	VCC
13	NC
14	NC

Paper size sensors (DCF/HCI)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the paper size sensors (DCF/HCI).

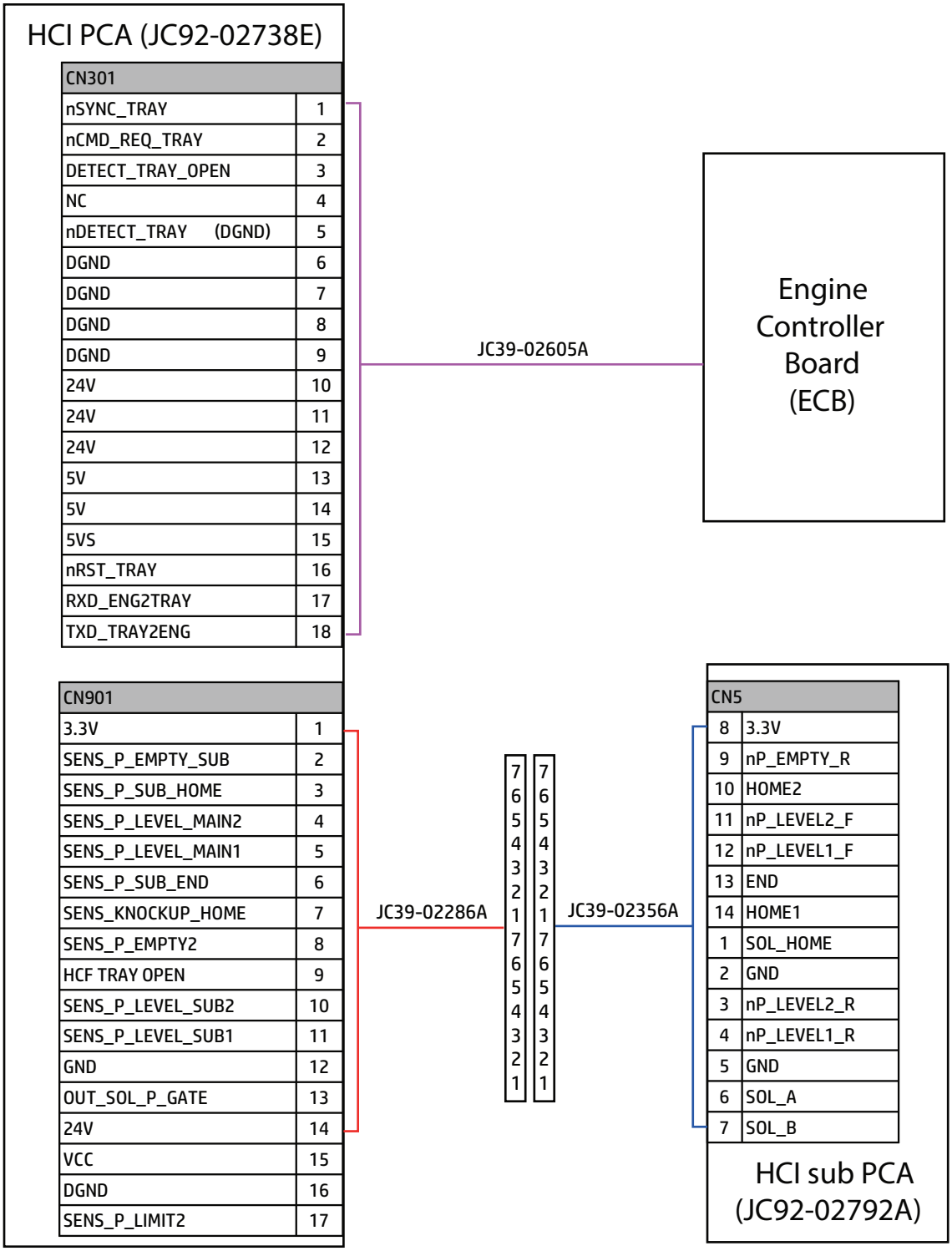
Figure 4-21 Paper size sensors electrical-mechanical relationships (DCF/HCI)



HCI PCA and HCI sup PCA (HCI)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the HCI PCA and HCI sup PCA (HCI).

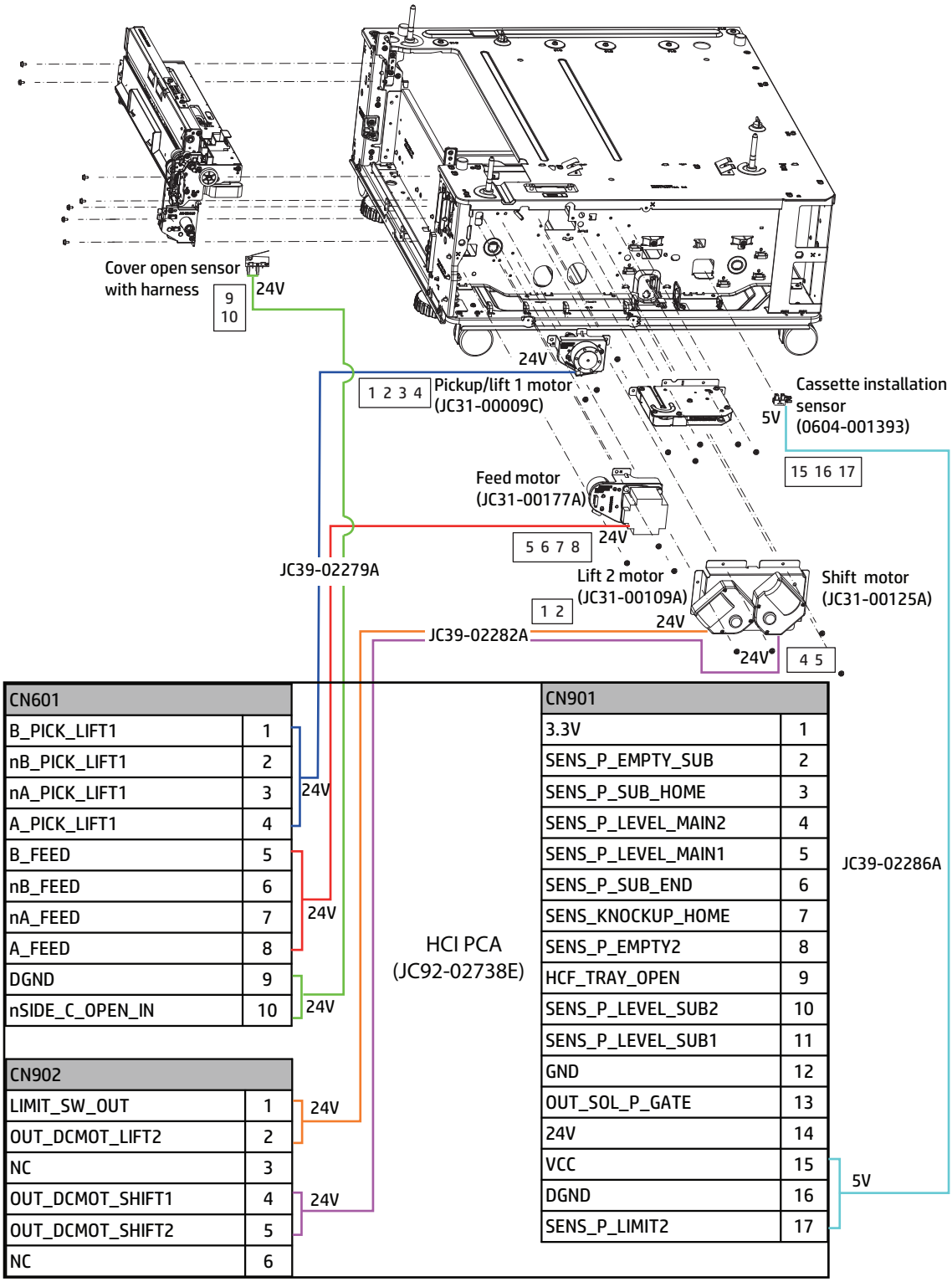
Figure 4-22 HCI PCA and HCI sup PCA (HCI)



Cover open sensor, cassette installation sensor, feed motor, pickup/lift-1 and lift-2 motors, and shift motor (DCF/HCI)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the cover open sensor, cassette installation sensor, feed motor, pickup/lift-1 and lift-2 motors, and shift motor (DCF/HCI).

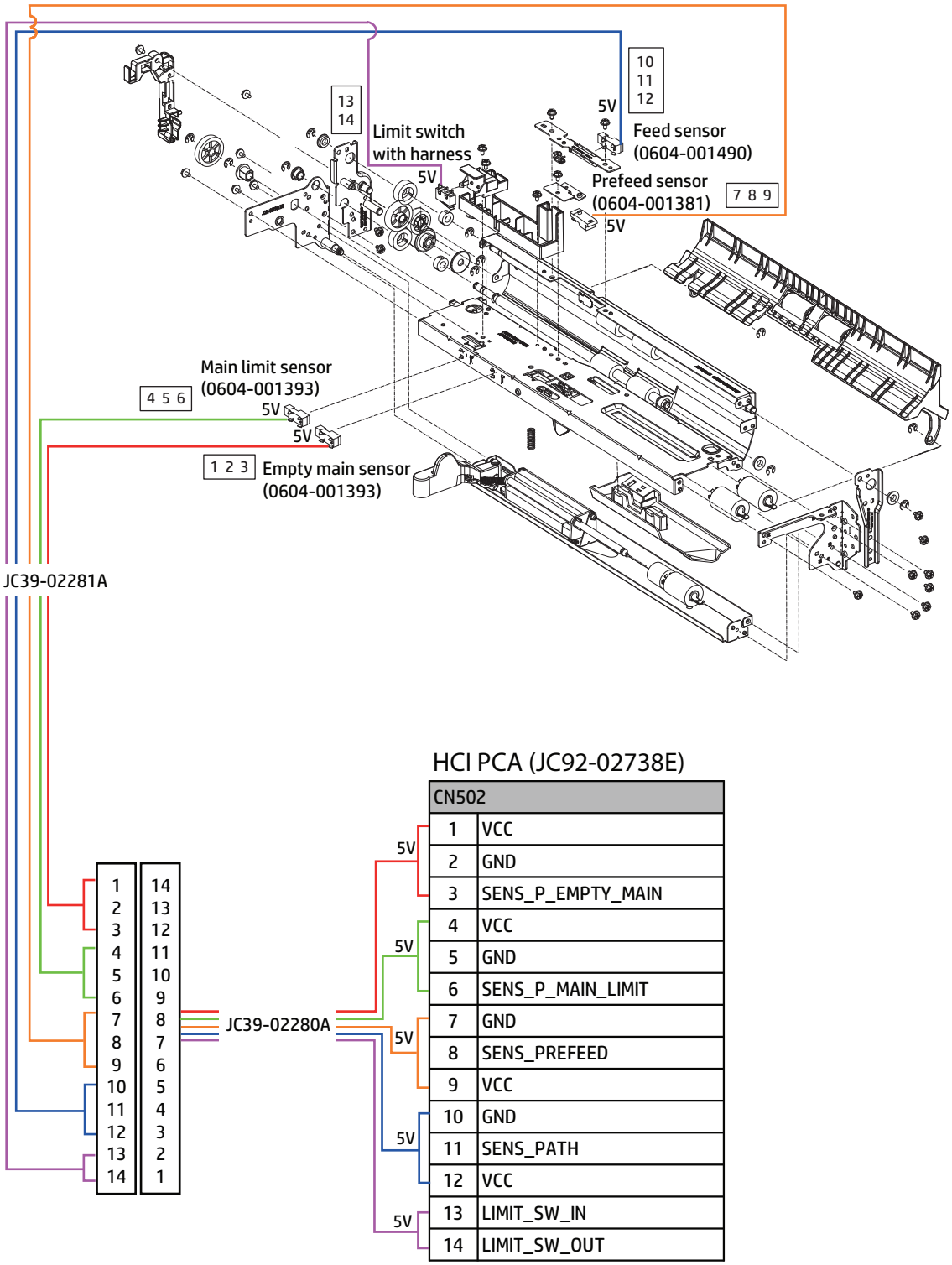
Figure 4-23 Cover open sensor, cassette installation sensor, feed motor, pickup/lift-1 and lift-2 motors, and shift motor electrical-mechanical relationships (DCF/HCI)



Limit switch, prefeed sensor, feed sensor, main limit and empty sensors (DCF/HCI)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the limit switch, prefeed sensor, feed sensor, main limit and empty sensors (DCF/HCI).

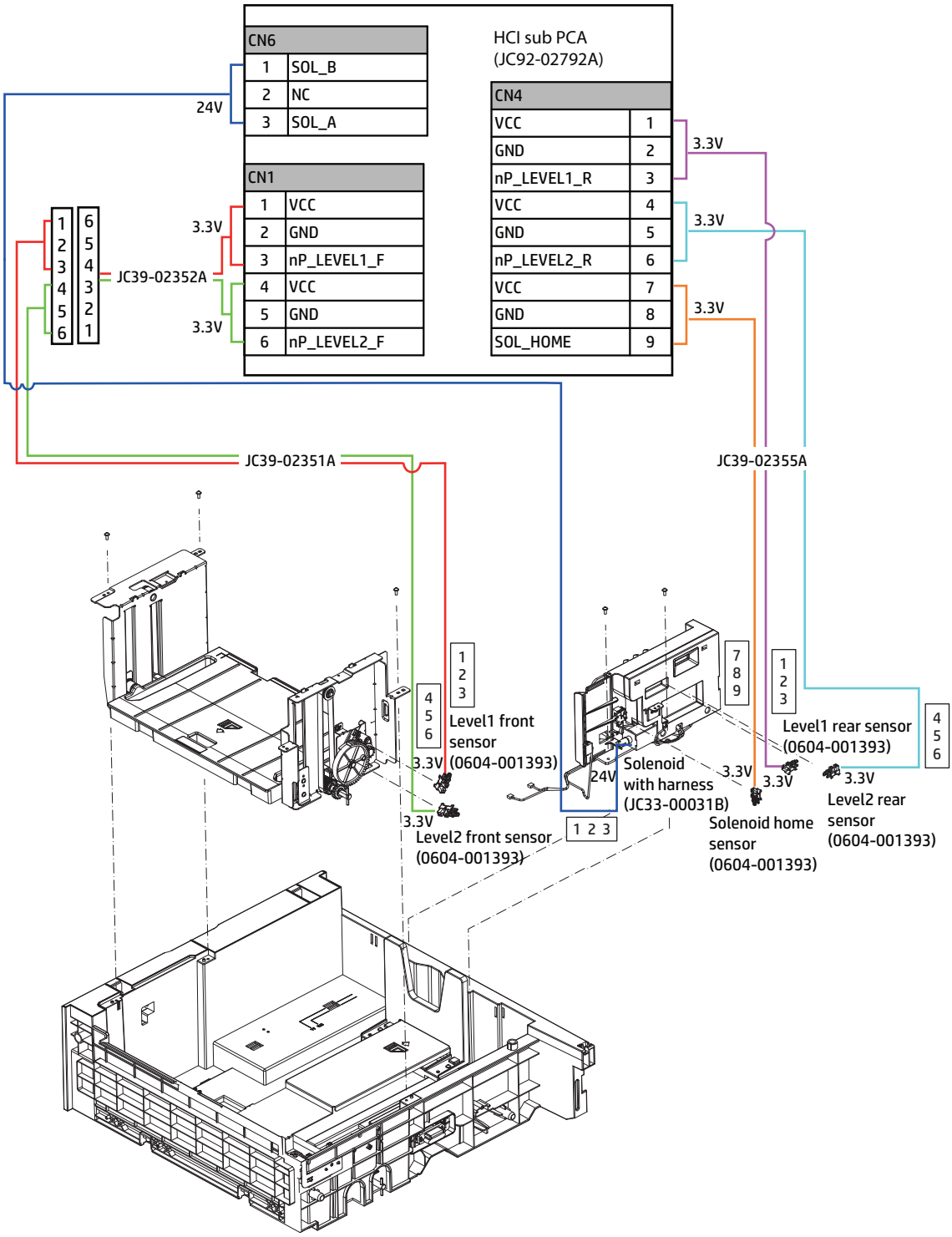
Figure 4-24 Limit switch, prefeed sensor, feed sensor, main limit and empty sensors electrical-mechanical relationships (DCF/HCI)



Level-1/2 front/rear sensors, solenoid home sensor, and solenoid (DCF/HCI)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the level-1/2 front/rear sensors, solenoid home sensor, and solenoid (DCF/HCI).

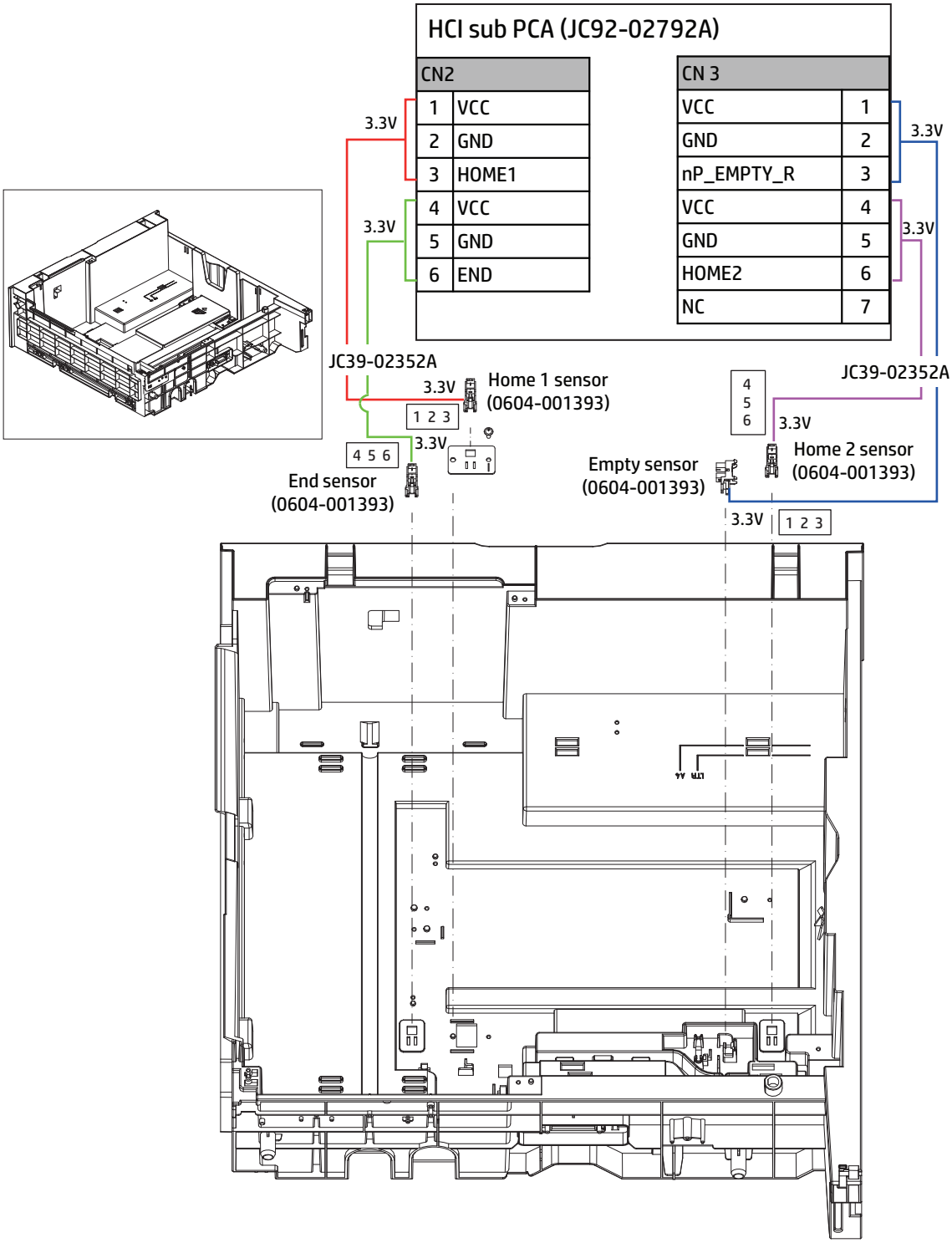
Figure 4-25 Level-1/2 front/rear sensors, solenoid home sensor, and solenoid electrical-mechanical relationships (DCF/HCI)



Home-1/2 sensors, end sensor, and empty sensor (DCF/HCI)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the home-1/2 sensors, end sensor, and empty sensor (DCF/HCI).

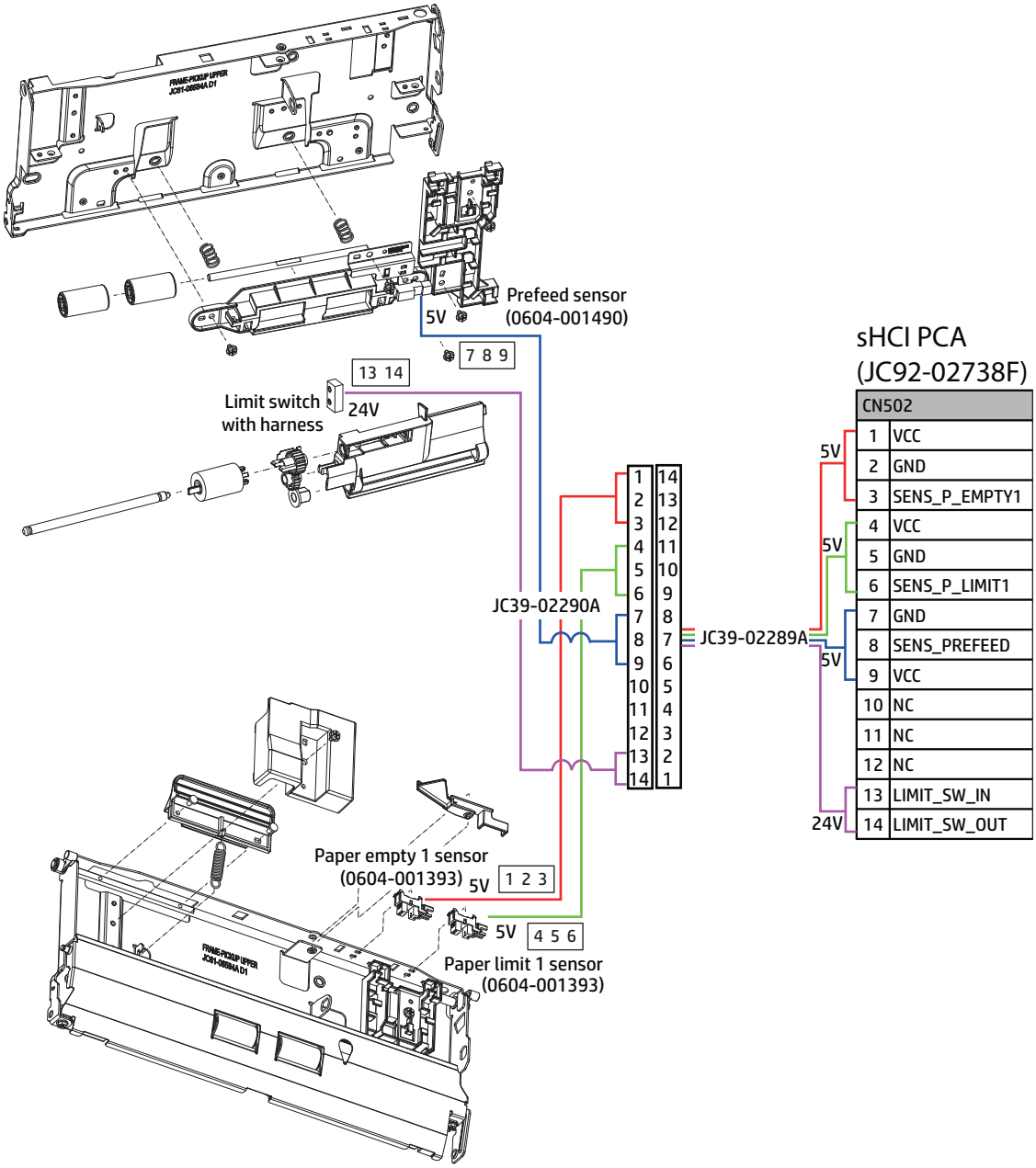
Figure 4-26 Home-1/2 sensors, end sensor, and empty sensor electrical-mechanical relationships (DCF/HCI)



Limit switch, paper limit-1 sensor, prefeed sensor, and paper empty-1 sensor (DCF/HCI)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the limit switch, paper limit-1 sensor, prefeed sensor, and paper empty-1 sensor (DCF/HCI).

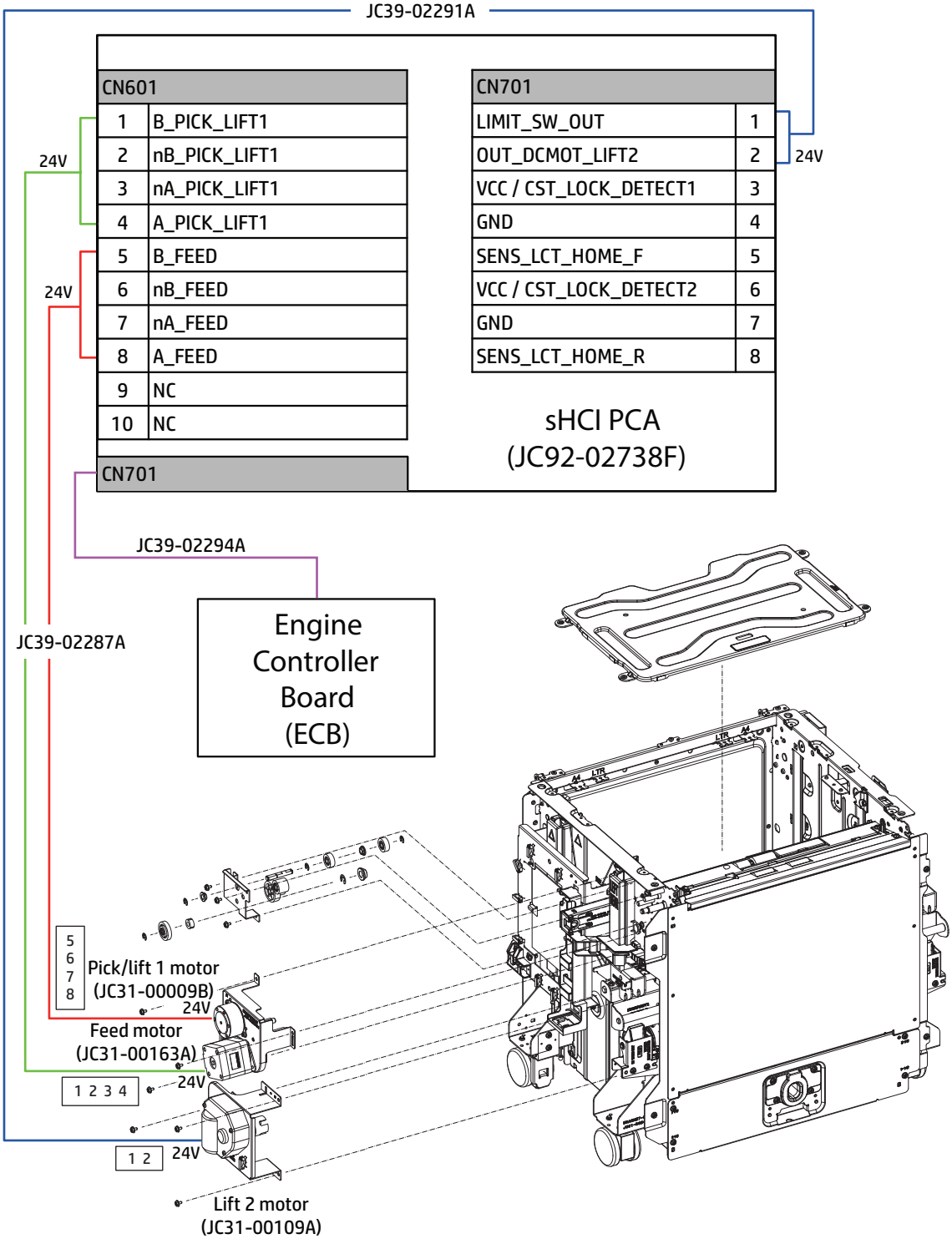
Figure 4-27 Limit switch, paper limit-1 sensor, prefeed sensor, and paper empty-1 sensor electrical-mechanical relationships (DCF/HCI)



Pick/lift-1 motor, lift-2 motor, and feed motor (DCF/HCI)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the pick/lift-1 motor, lift-2 motor, and feed motor (DCF/HCI).

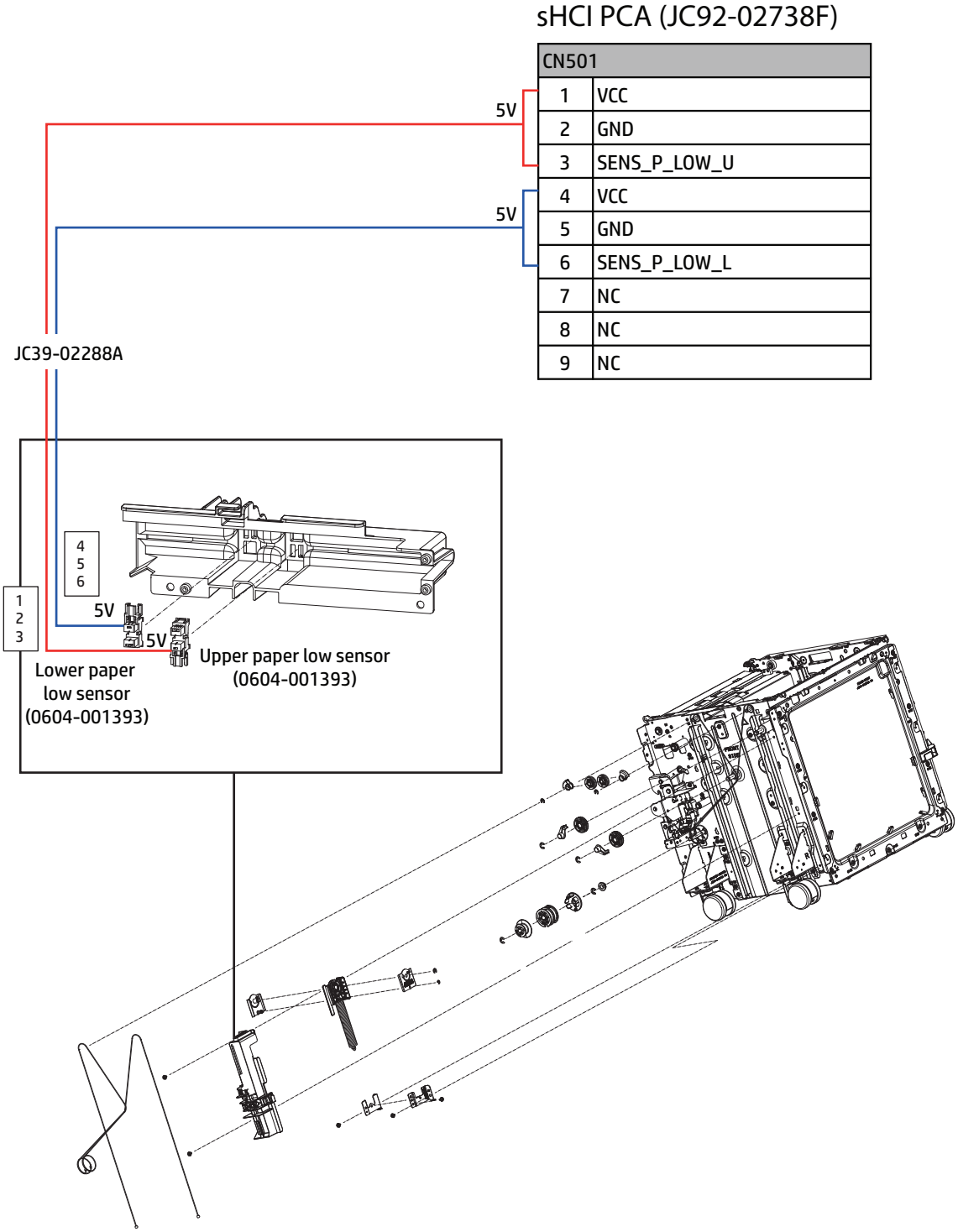
Figure 4-28 Pick/lift-1 motor, lift-2 motor, and feed motor electrical-mechanical relationships (DCF/HCI)



Upper/lower paper low sensors (DCF/HCI)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the upper/lower paper low sensors (DCF/HCI).

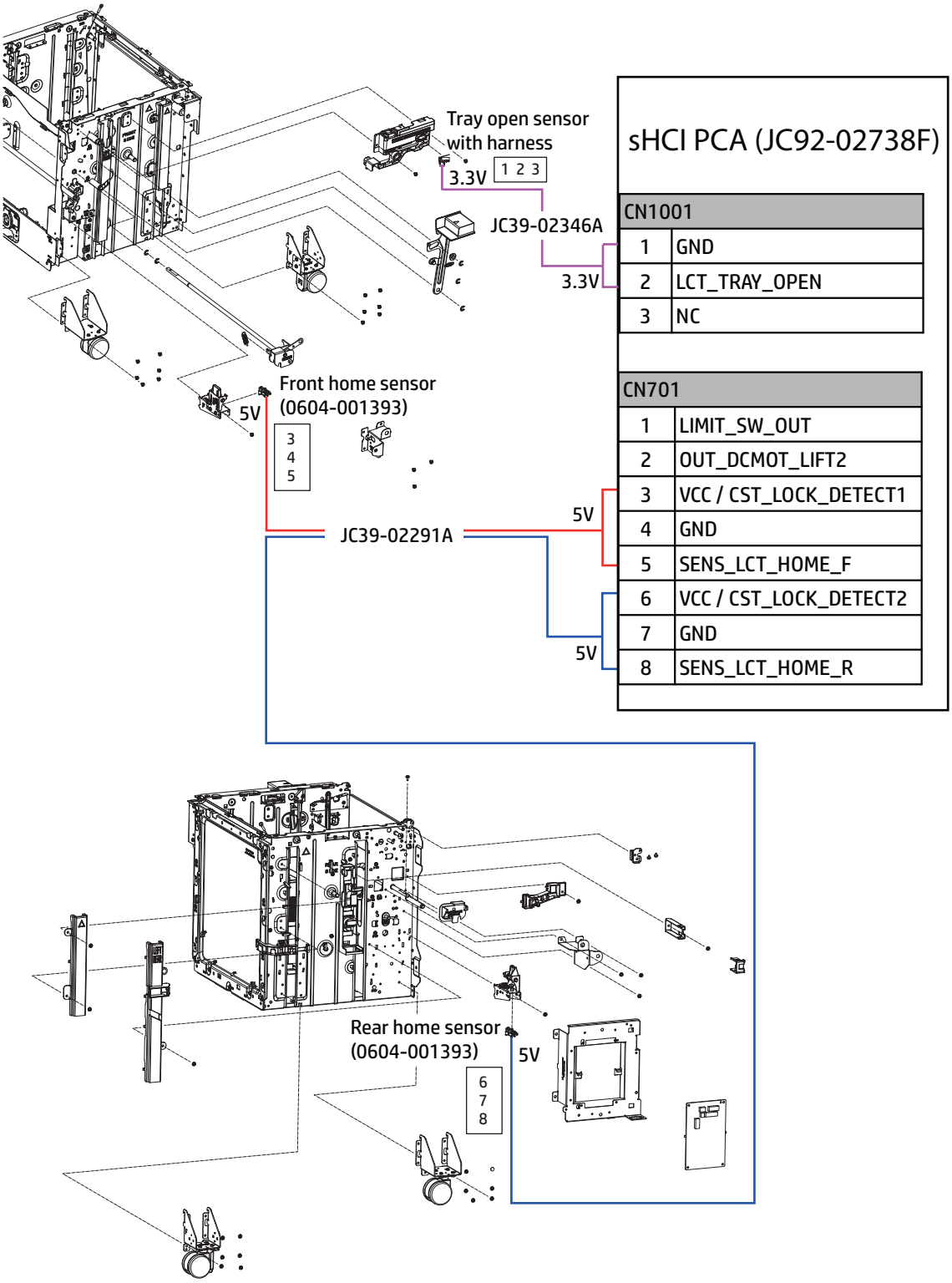
Figure 4-29 Upper/lower paper low sensors electrical-mechanical relationships (DCF/HCI)



Front/rear home sensors and tray open sensor (DCF/HCI)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the front/rear home sensors and tray open sensor (DCF/HCI).

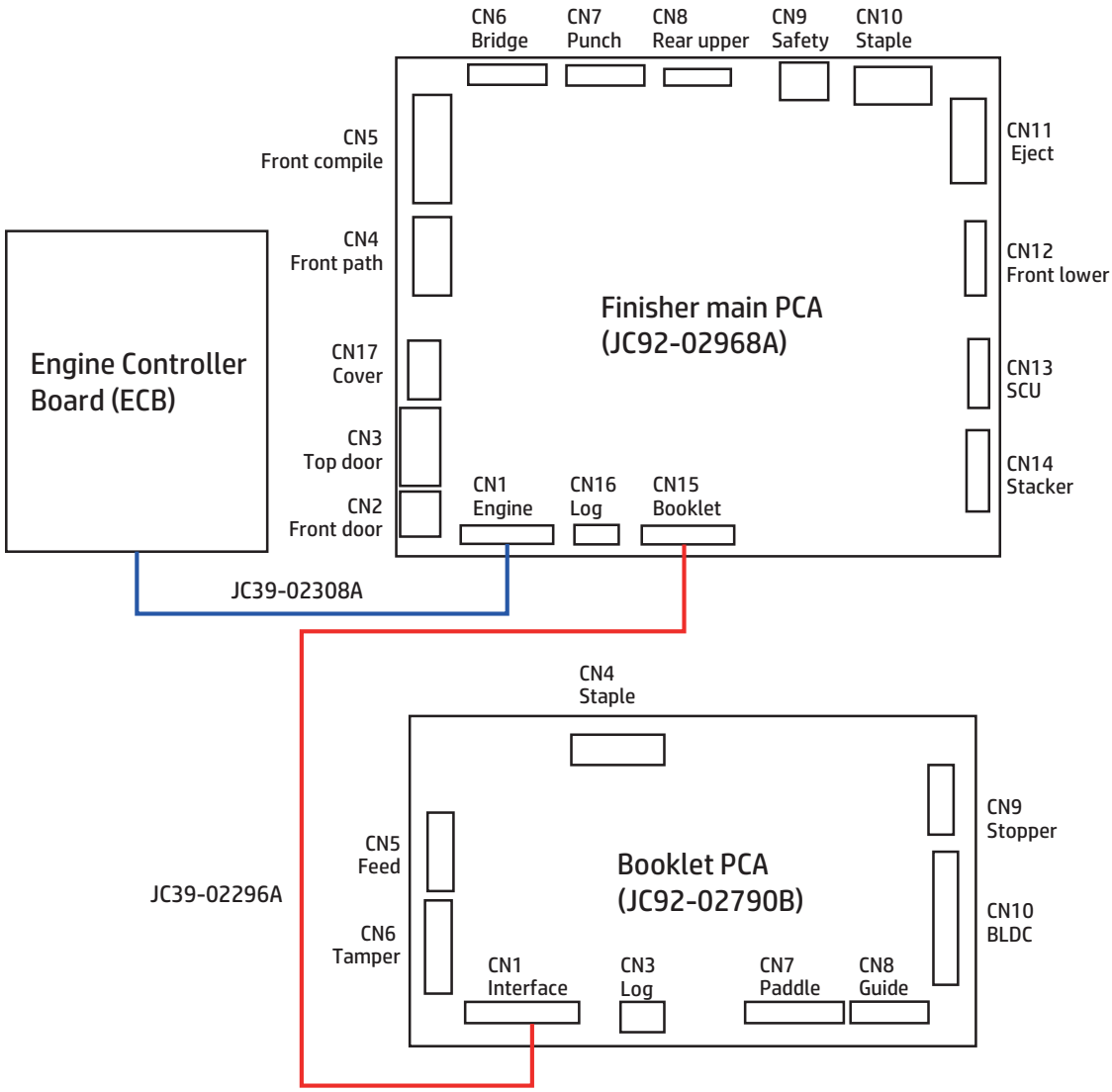
Figure 4-30 Front/rear home sensors and tray open sensor electrical-mechanical relationships (DCF/HCI)



Main PCAs (SSBM)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the main PCAs (SSBM).

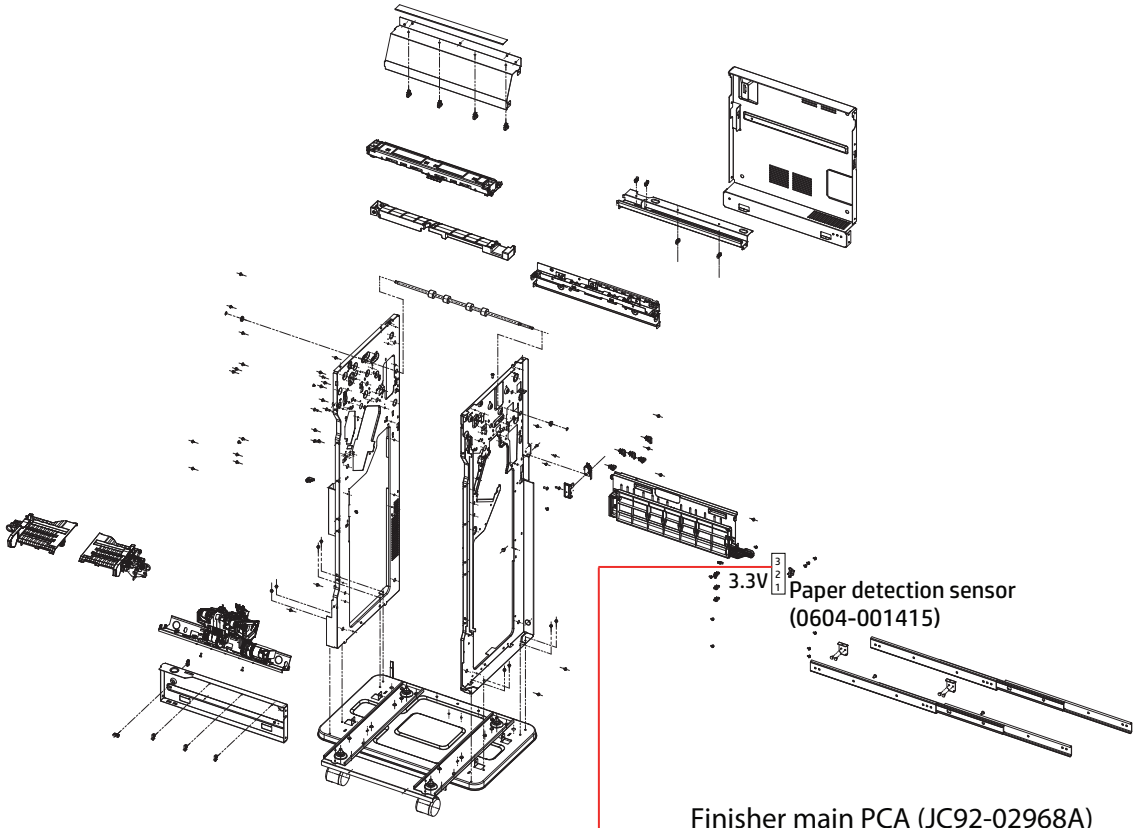
Figure 4-31 Main PCAs electrical-mechanical relationships (SSBM)



Paper detection sensor (SSBM)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the paper detection sensor (SSBM).

Figure 4-32 Paper detection sensor electrical-mechanical relationships (SSBM)



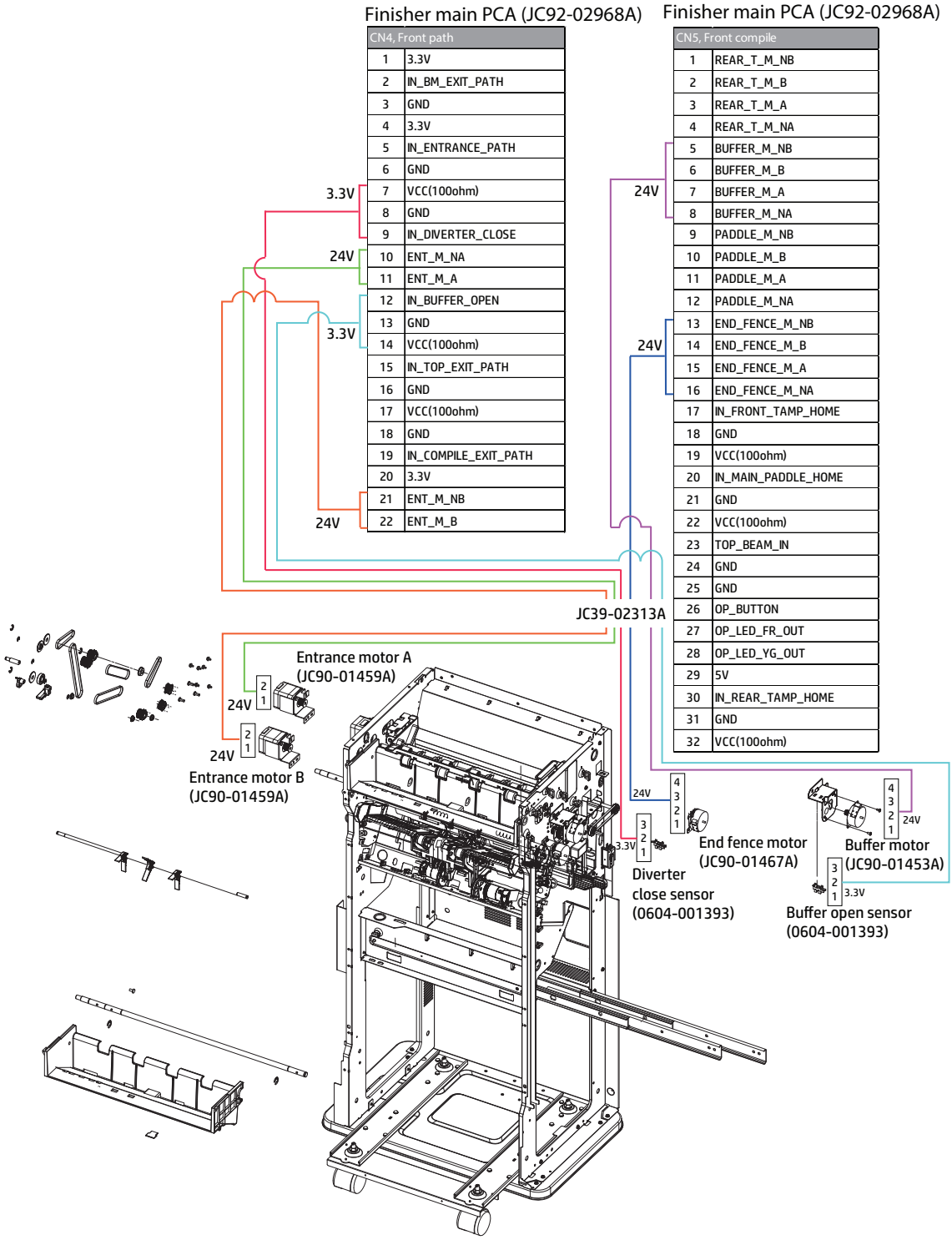
Finisher main PCA (JC92-02968A)

CN12, Front lower	
1	FRONT_T_M_NB
2	FRONT_T_M_B
3	FRONT_T_M_A
4	FRONT_T_M_NA
5	VCC(100ohm)
6	GND
7	IN_MANUAL_PAPER_DETECT
8	VCC(100ohm)
9	GND
10	IN_END_FENCE_HOME
11	VCC(100ohm)
12	GND
13	IN_STAPLER_MOVE_MANUAL_HOME

Entrance motors A/B, end fence motor, buffer motor and sensor, and diverter close sensor (SSBM)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the entrance motors A/B, end fence motor, buffer motor and sensor, and diverter close sensor (SSBM).

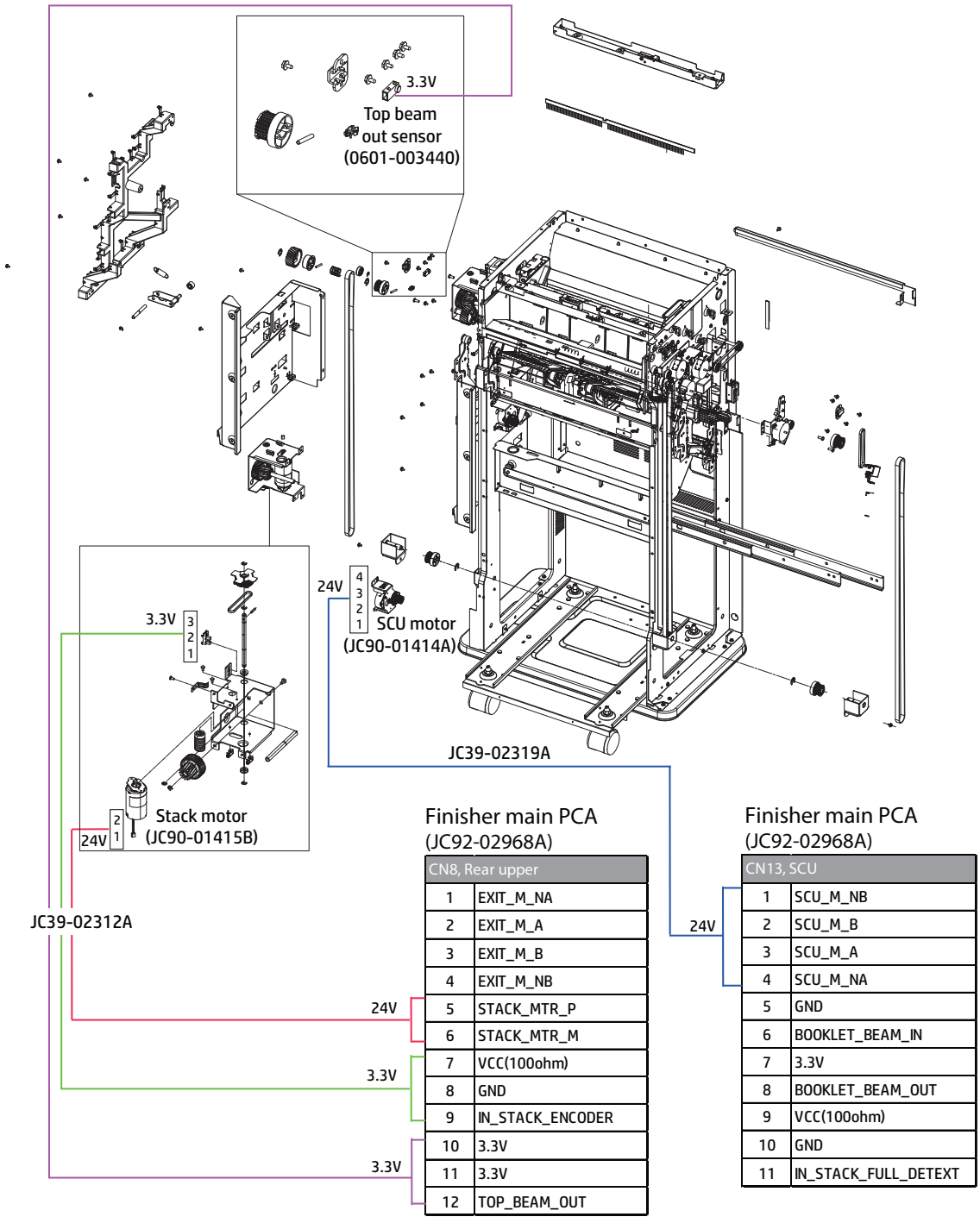
Figure 4-33 Entrance motors A/B, end fence motor, buffer motor and sensor, and diverter close sensor electrical-mechanical relationships (SSBM)



Top-beam out sensor, stack motor, and SKU motor (SSBM)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the top-beam out sensor, stack motor, and SKU motor (SSBM).

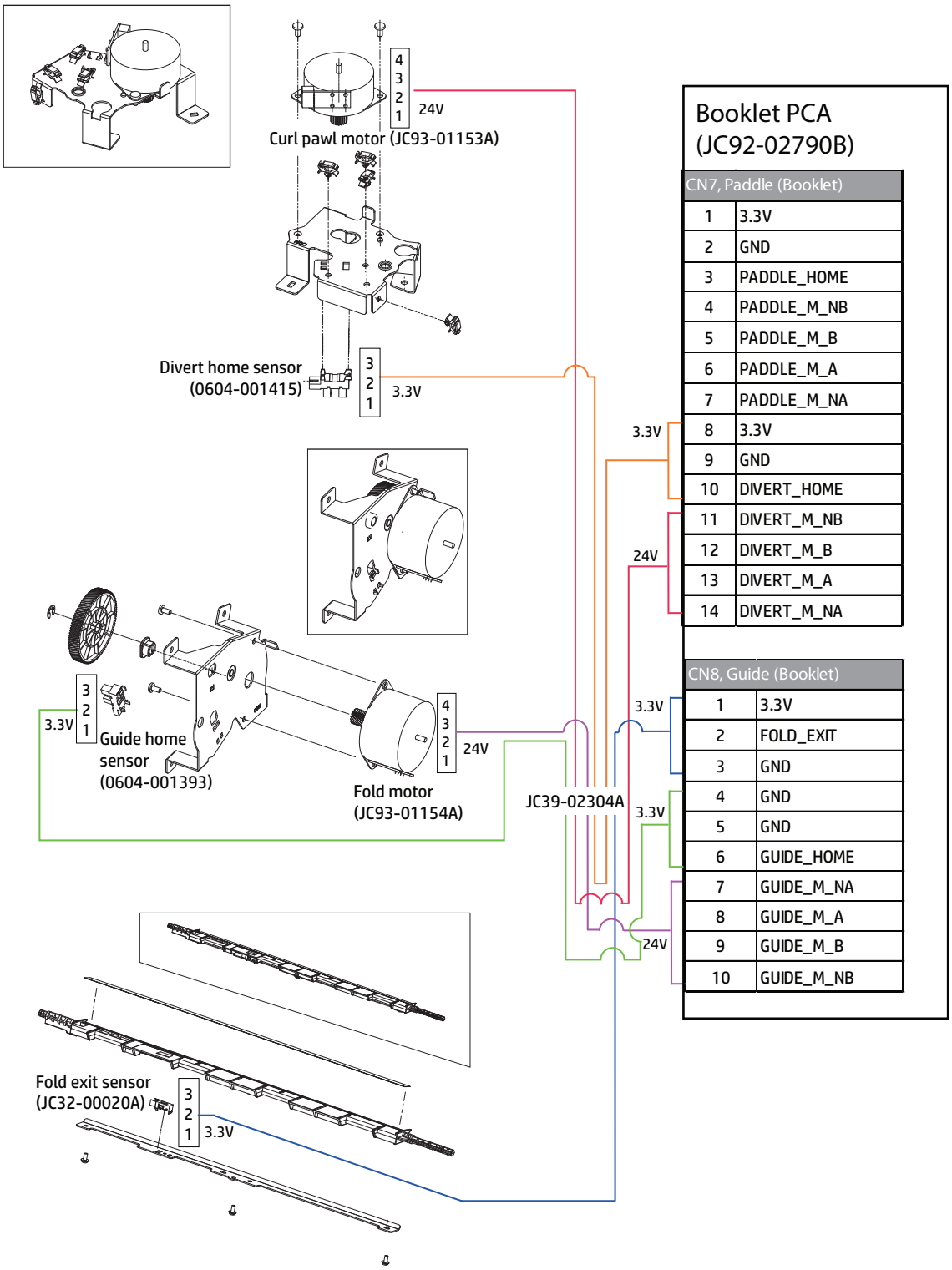
Figure 4-34 Top-beam out sensor, stack motor, and SKU motor electrical-mechanical relationships (SSBM)



Curl pawl motor, fold motor, divert home sensor, and guide home sensor (SSBM)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the curl pawl motor, fold motor, divert home sensor, and guide home sensor (SSBM).

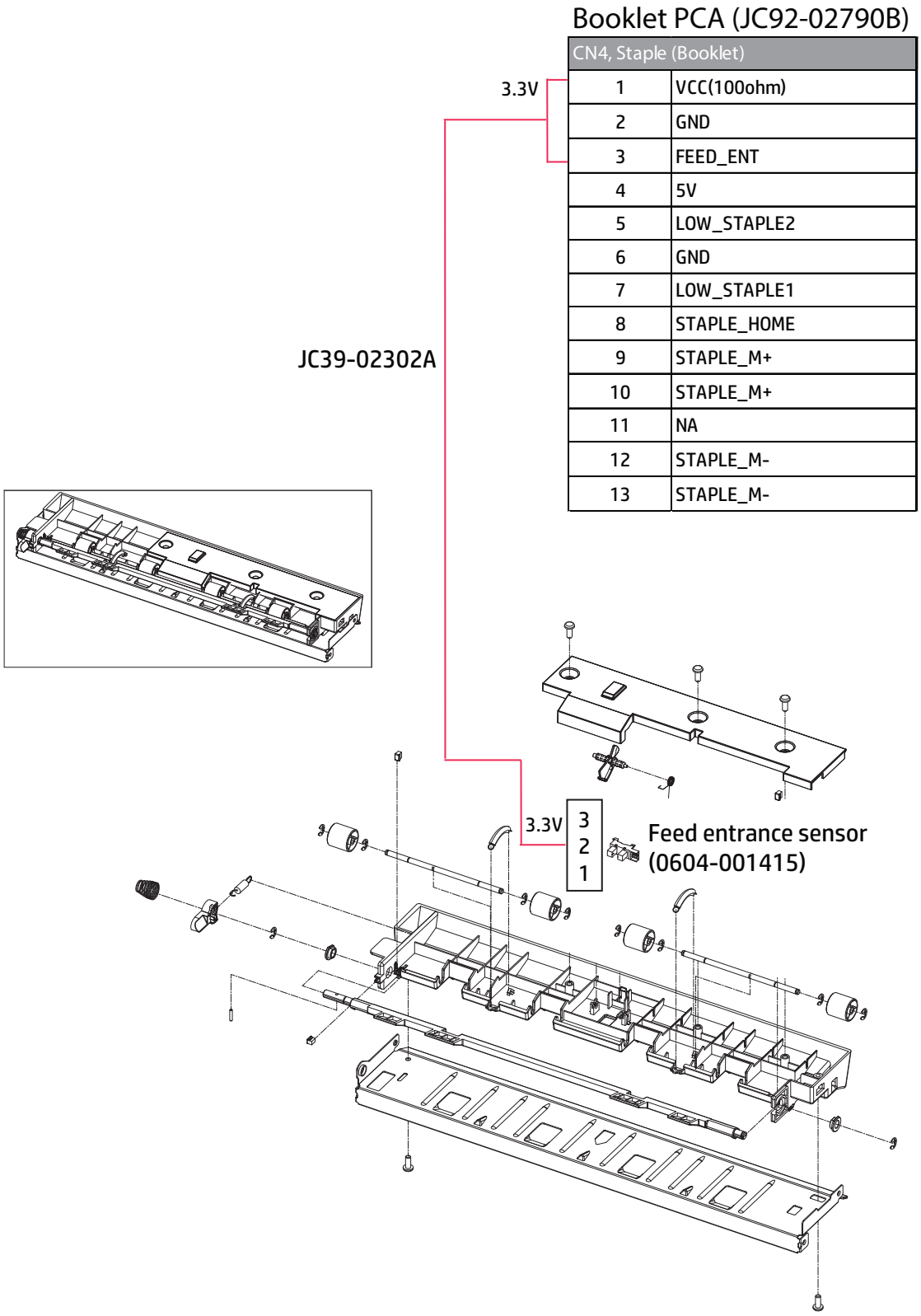
Figure 4-35 Curl pawl motor, fold motor, divert home sensor, and guide home sensor electrical-mechanical relationships (SSBM)



Feed entrance sensor (SSBM)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the feed entrance sensor (SSBM).

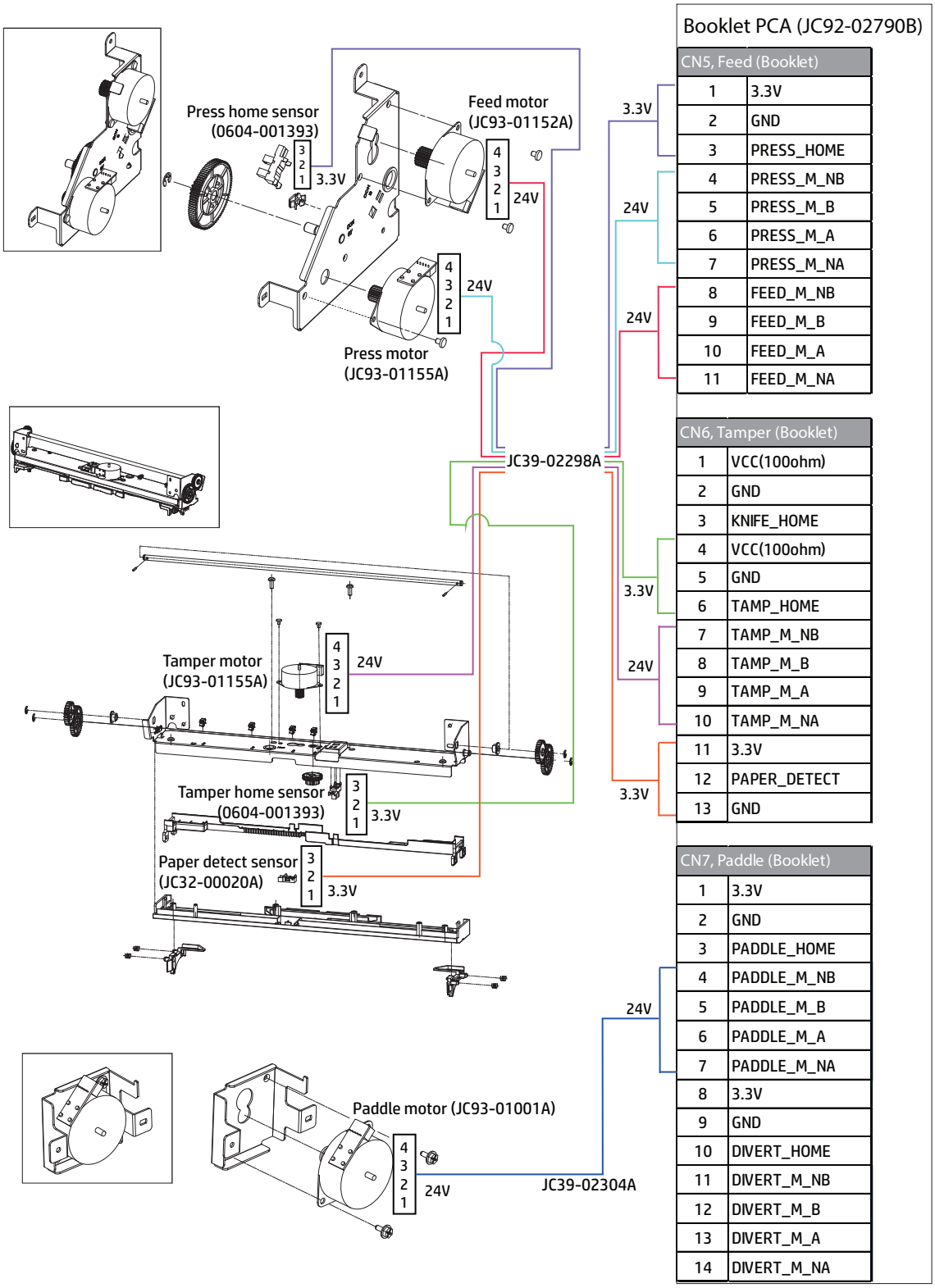
Figure 4-36 Feed entrance sensor electrical-mechanical relationships (SSBM)



Press home sensor, tamper home sensor, paper detect sensor, tamper motor, press motor, and feed motor (SSBM)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the press home sensor, tamper home sensor, paper detect sensor, tamper motor, press motor, and feed motor (SSBM).

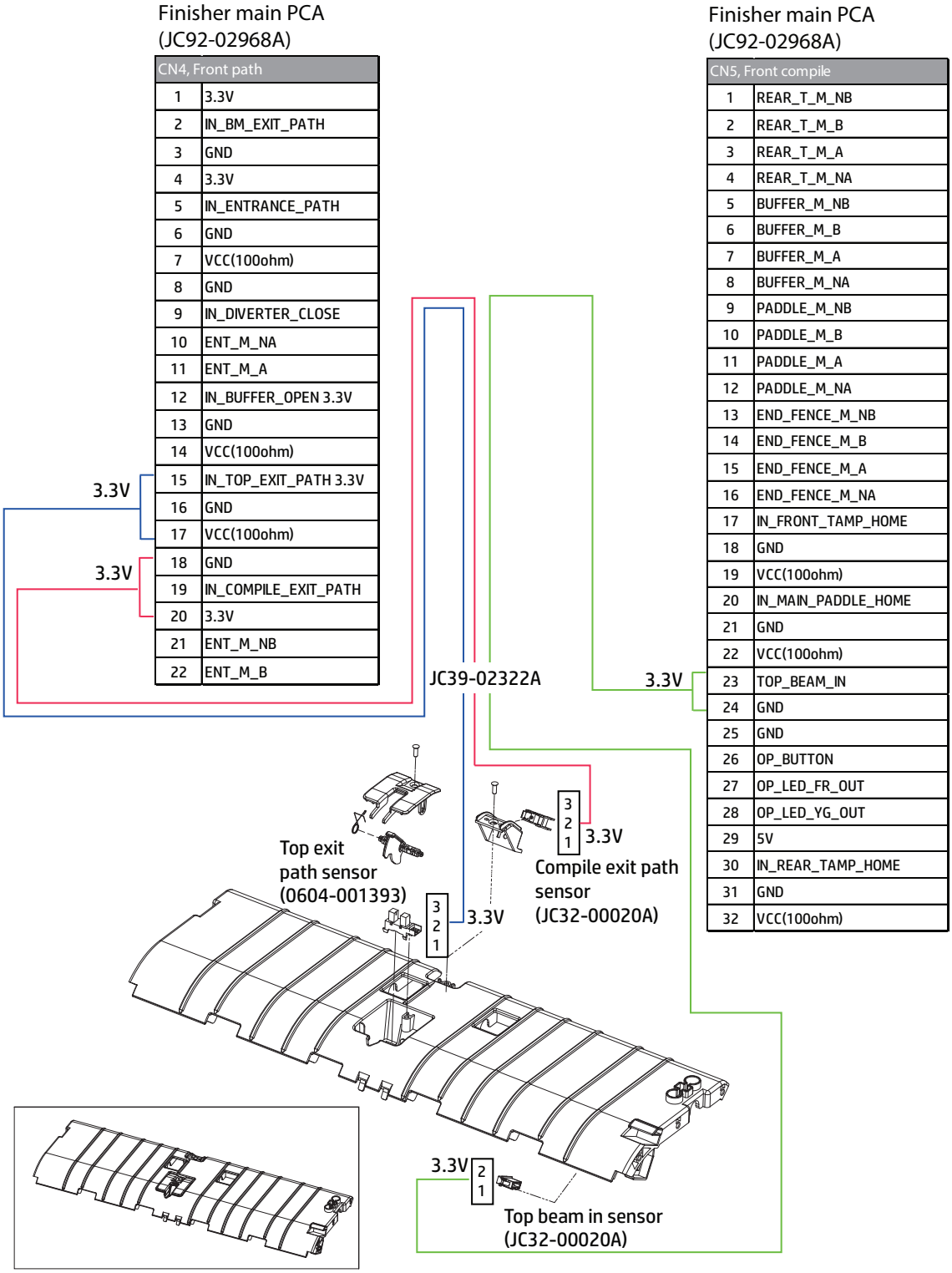
Figure 4-37 Press home sensor, tamper home sensor, paper detect sensor, tamper motor, press motor, and feed motor electrical-mechanical relationships (SSBM)



Top-exit path and compile-exit path sensors (SSBM)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the top-exit path and compile-exit path sensors (SSBM).

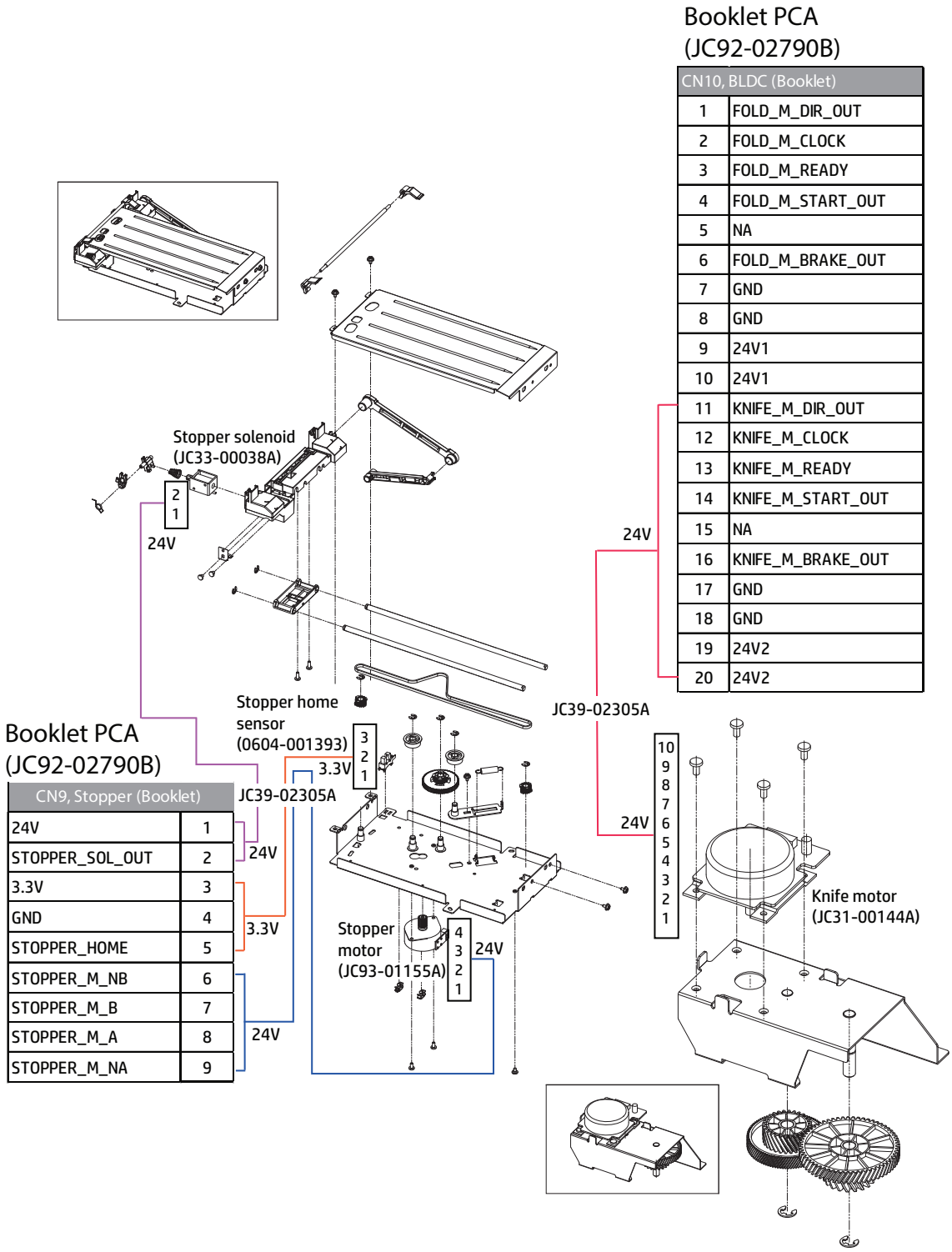
Figure 4-38 Top-exit path and compile-exit path sensors electrical-mechanical relationships (SSBM)



Knife motor, stopper home sensor, and stopper solenoid and motor (SSBM)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the knife motor, stopper home sensor, and stopper solenoid and motor (SSBM).

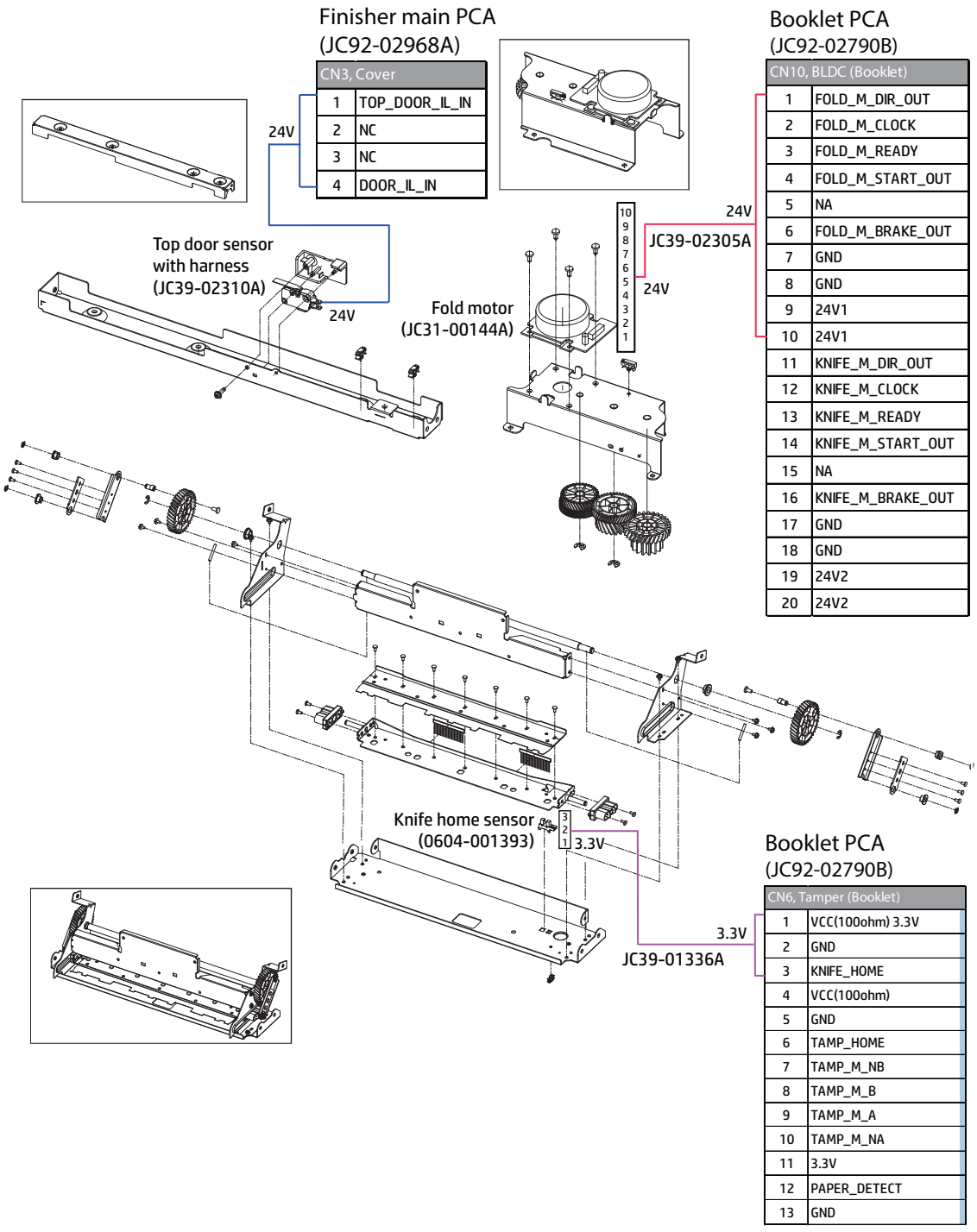
Figure 4-39 Knife motor, stopper home sensor, and stopper solenoid and motor electrical-mechanical relationships (SSBM)



Top door sensor, fold motor, and knife home position sensor (SSBM)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the top door sensor, fold motor, and knife home position sensor (SSBM).

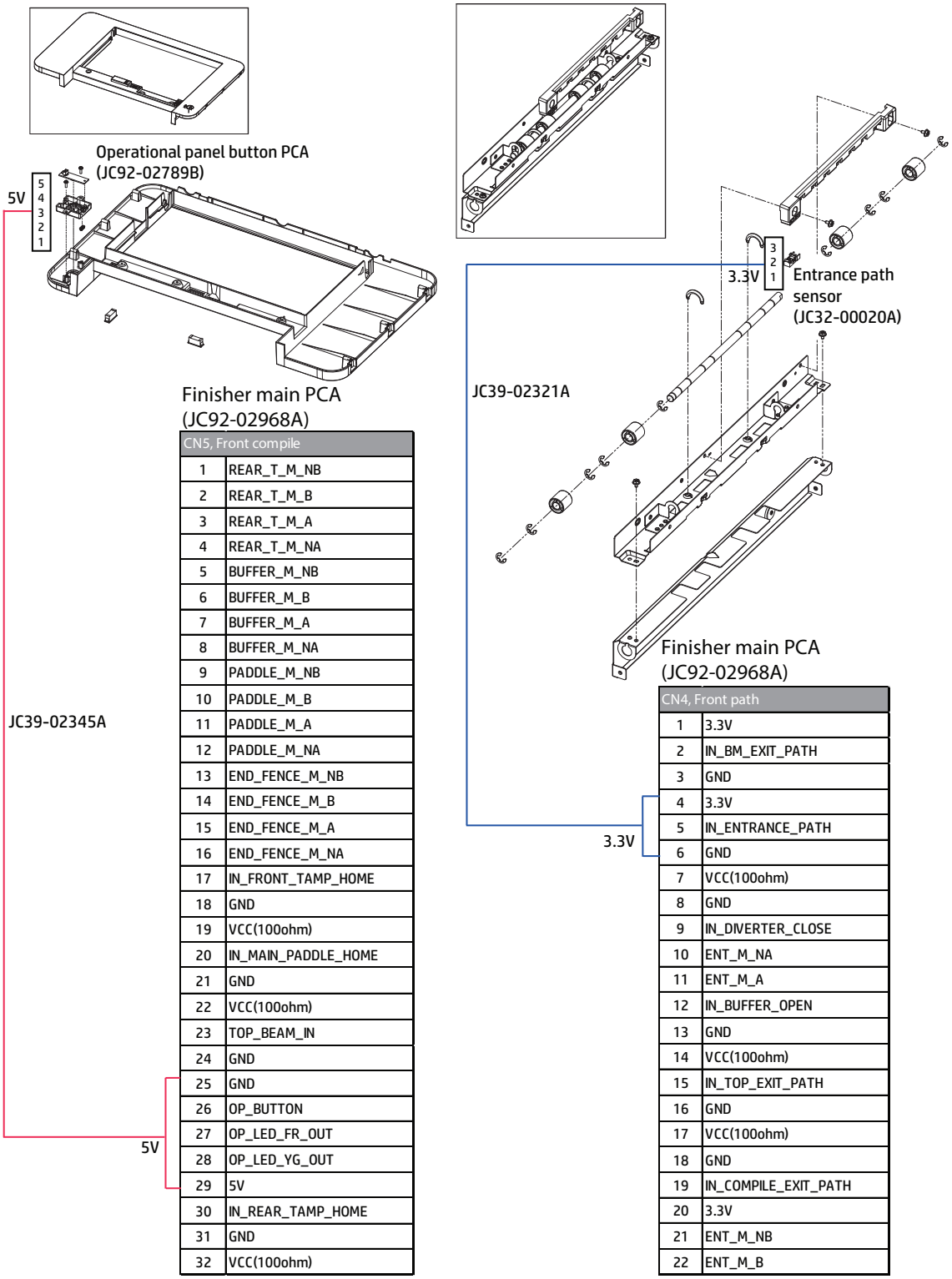
Figure 4-40 Top door sensor, fold motor, and knife home position sensor electrical-mechanical relationships (SSBM)



Operational panel button PCA and entrance path sensor (SSBM)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the operational panel button PCA and entrance path sensor (SSBM).

Figure 4-41 Operational panel button PCA and entrance path sensor electrical-mechanical relationships (SSBM)



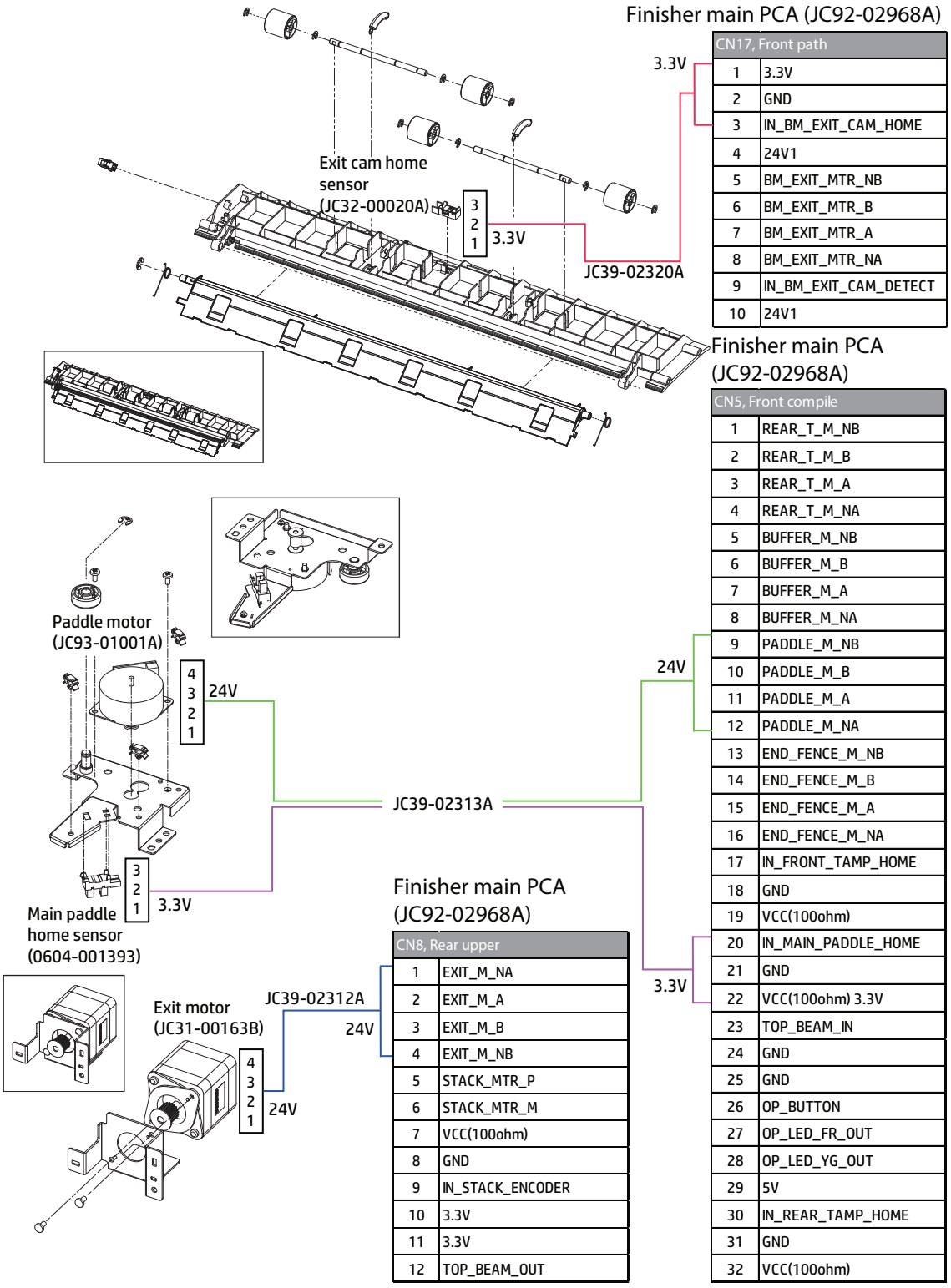
CN5, Front compile	
1	REAR_T_M_NB
2	REAR_T_M_B
3	REAR_T_M_A
4	REAR_T_M_NA
5	BUFFER_M_NB
6	BUFFER_M_B
7	BUFFER_M_A
8	BUFFER_M_NA
9	PADDLE_M_NB
10	PADDLE_M_B
11	PADDLE_M_A
12	PADDLE_M_NA
13	END_FENCE_M_NB
14	END_FENCE_M_B
15	END_FENCE_M_A
16	END_FENCE_M_NA
17	IN_FRONT_TAMP_HOME
18	GND
19	VCC(100ohm)
20	IN_MAIN_PADDLE_HOME
21	GND
22	VCC(100ohm)
23	TOP_BEAM_IN
24	GND
25	GND
26	OP_BUTTON
27	OP_LED_FR_OUT
28	OP_LED_YG_OUT
29	5V
30	IN_REAR_TAMP_HOME
31	GND
32	VCC(100ohm)

CN4, Front path	
1	3.3V
2	IN_BM_EXIT_PATH
3	GND
4	3.3V
5	IN_ENTRANCE_PATH
6	GND
7	VCC(100ohm)
8	GND
9	IN_DIVERTER_CLOSE
10	ENT_M_NA
11	ENT_M_A
12	IN_BUFFER_OPEN
13	GND
14	VCC(100ohm)
15	IN_TOP_EXIT_PATH
16	GND
17	VCC(100ohm)
18	GND
19	IN_COMPILE_EXIT_PATH
20	3.3V
21	ENT_M_NB
22	ENT_M_B

Exit cam home sensor, main paddle home sensor, paddle motor, and exit motor (SSBM)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the exit cam home sensor, main paddle home sensor, paddle motor, and exit motor (SSBM).

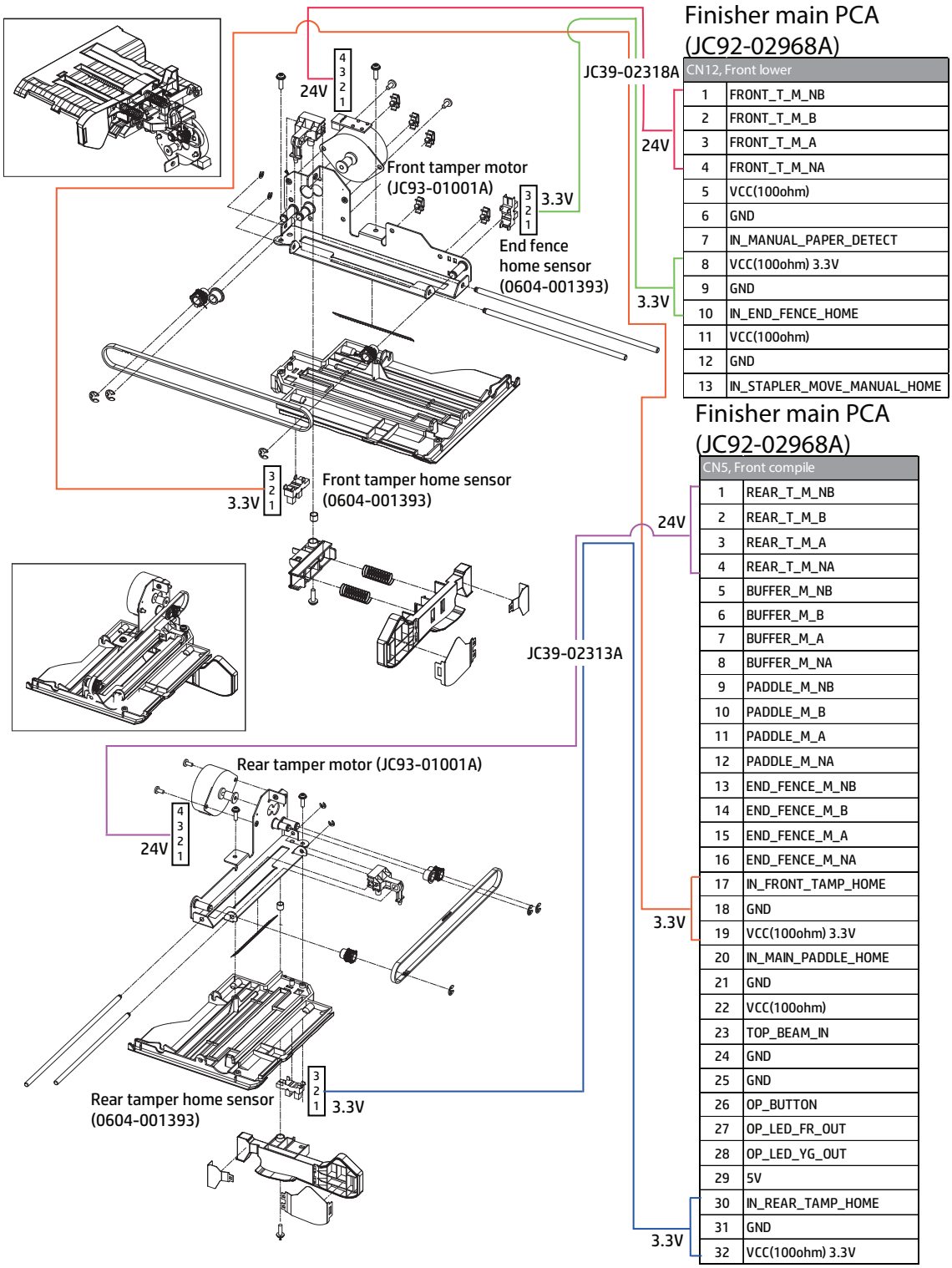
Figure 4-42 Exit cam home sensor, main paddle home sensor, paddle motor, and exit motor electrical-mechanical relationships (SSBM)



Front/rear tamper motors, front/rear tamper home sensors, and end-fence home sensor (SSBM)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the front/rear tamper motors, front/rear tamper home sensors, and end-fence home sensor (SSBM).

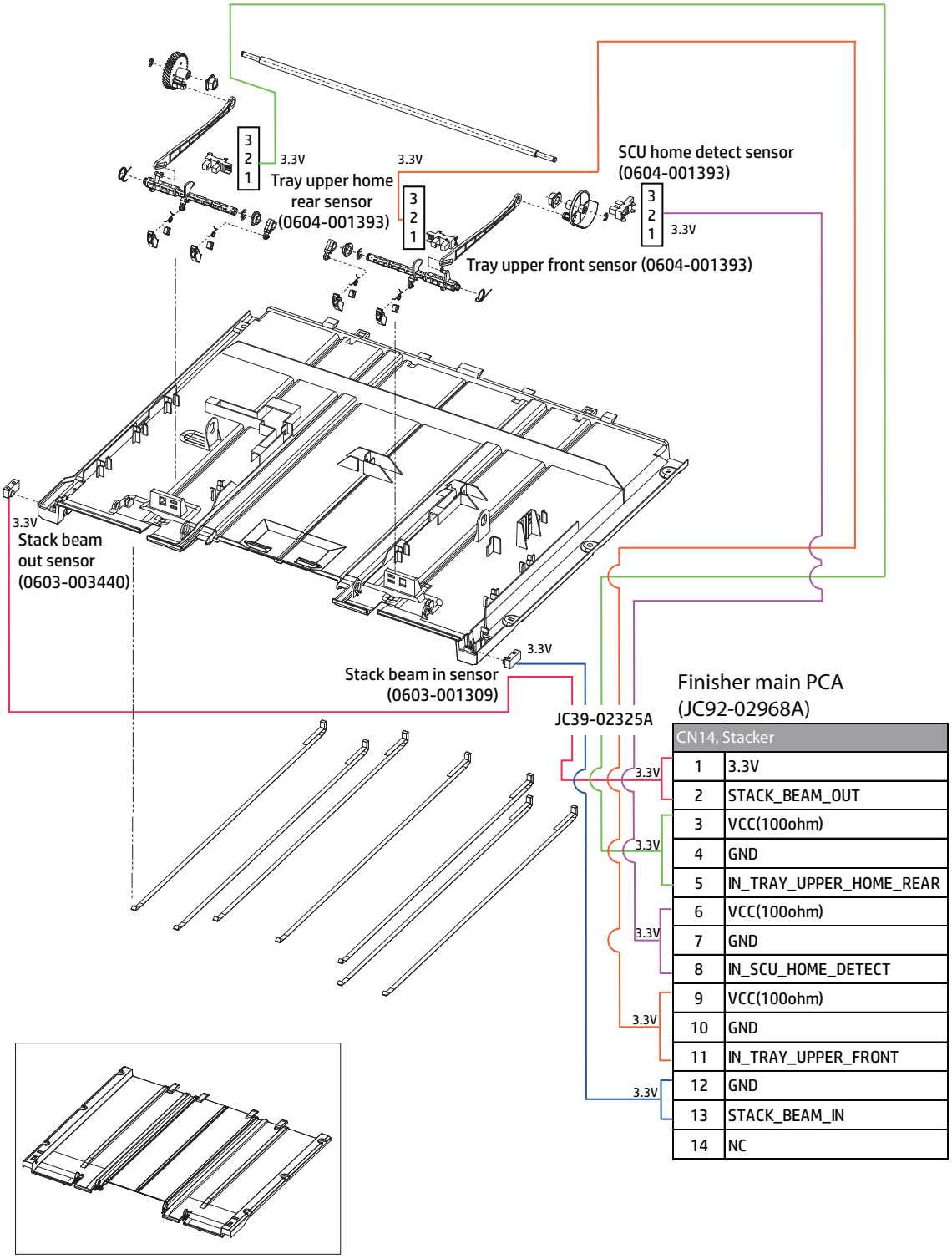
Figure 4-43 Front/rear tamper motors, front/rear tamper home sensors, and end-fence home sensor electrical-mechanical relationships (SSBM)



Tray upper front/rear sensors, SCU home detect sensor, and stack beam in/out sensors (SSBM)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the tray upper front/rear sensors, SCU home detect sensor, and stack beam in/out sensors (SSBM).

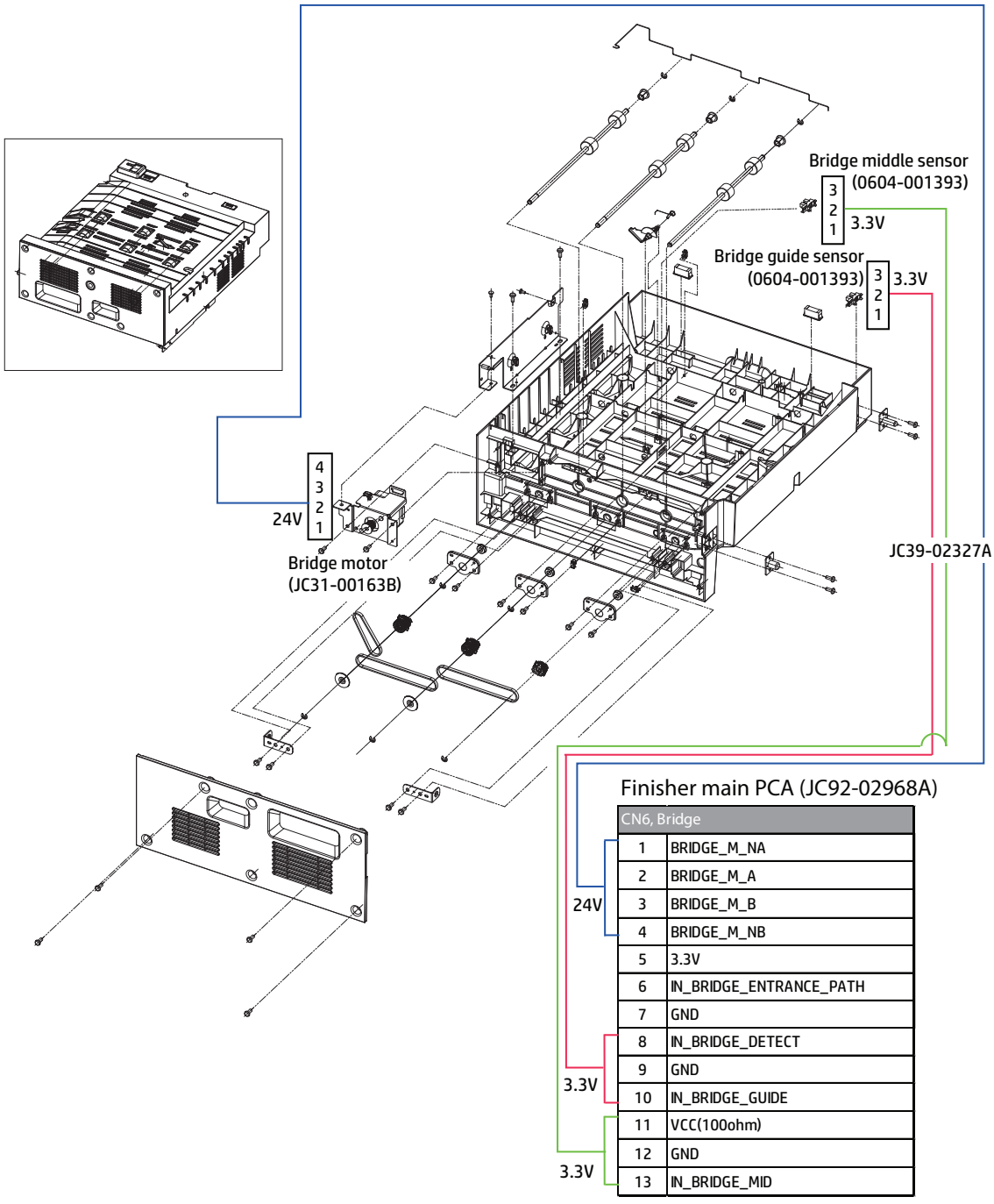
Figure 4-44 Tray upper front/rear sensors, SCU home detect sensor, and stack beam in/out sensors electrical-mechanical relationships (SSBM)



Bridge motor, bridge middle sensor, and bridge guide sensor (SSBM)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the bridge motor, bridge middle sensor, and bridge guide sensor (SSBM).

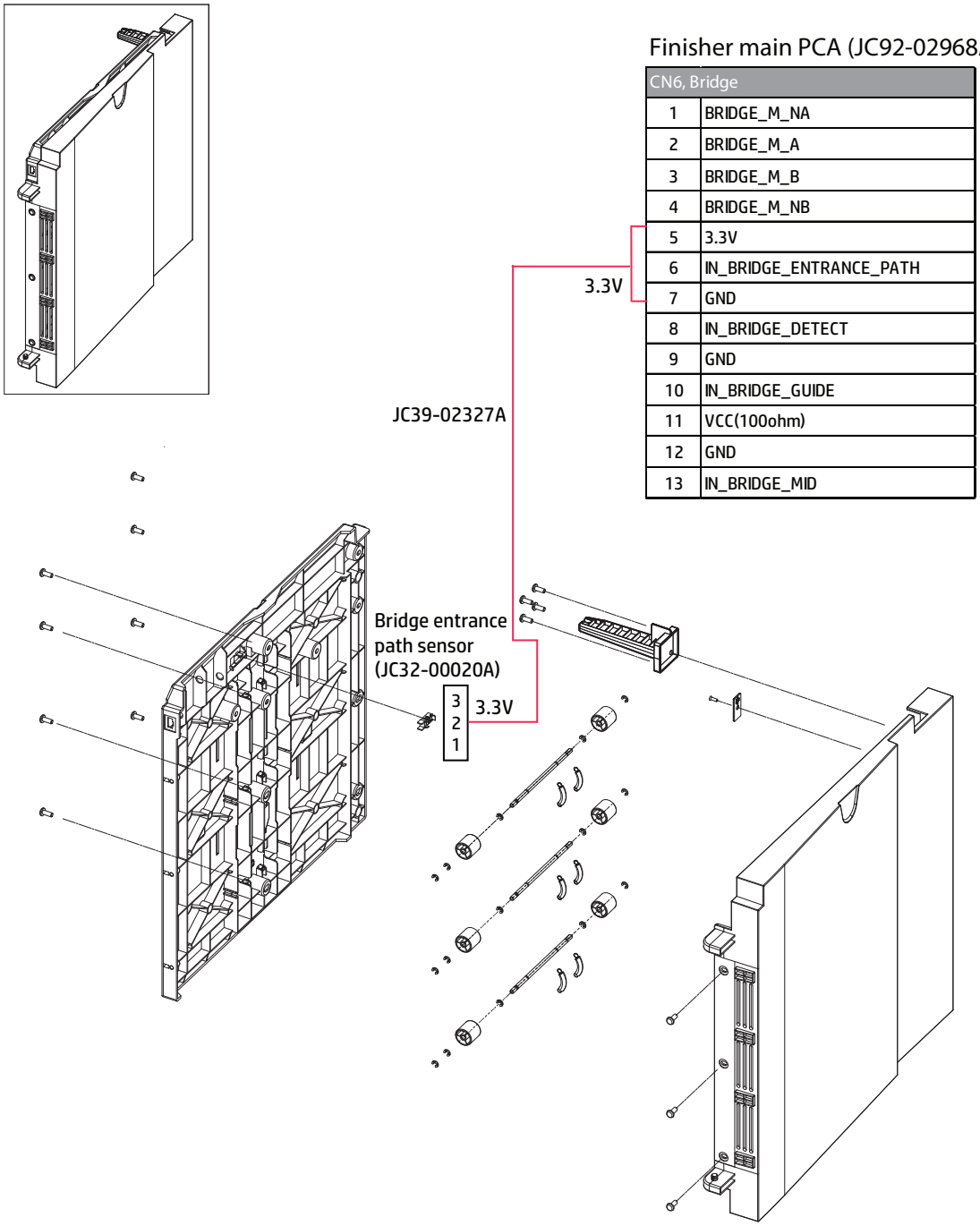
Figure 4-45 Bridge motor, bridge middle sensor, and bridge guide sensor electrical-mechanical relationships (SSBM)



Bridge entrance path sensor (SSBM)

Learn about the electrical-mechanical relationships diagram for the bridge entrance path sensor (SSBM).

Figure 4-46 Bridge entrance path sensor electrical-mechanical relationships (SSBM)



5 Stapler/stacker and booklet maker (SSBM)

Learn about the stapler/stacker and booklet maker.

Product specification and description

Learn about product specifications and descriptions.

Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher view

Learn about the front view and rear view of the stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Figure 5-1 Stapler/stacker finisher - front view

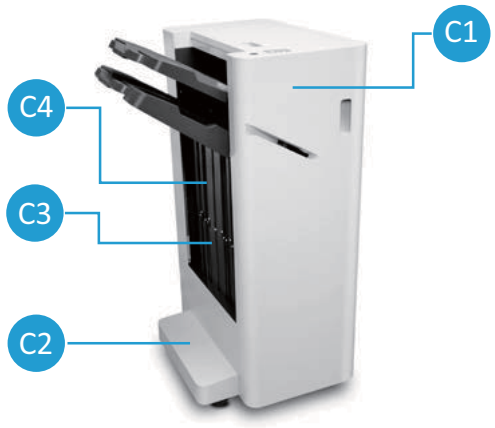


Figure 5-2 Booklet finisher - front view

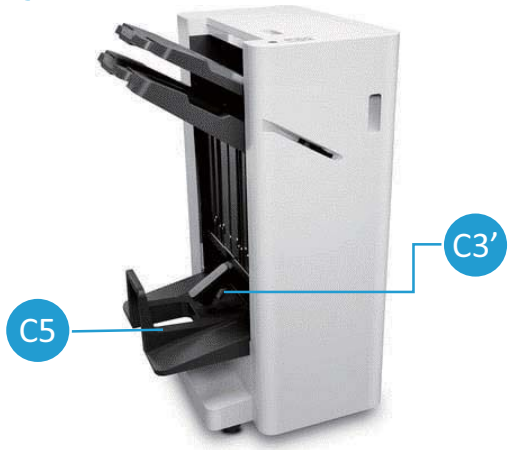


Table 5-1 Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher - front view

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)
C1	Front door	JC90-01444B	
C2	Caster cover	JC63-04985B	(*)
C3	Left lower cover (Stapler/stacker)	JC63-05001B	(*)
C3'	Left lower cover (Booklet)	JC90-01417B	(*)
C4	Left upper cover	JC90-01475B	(*)
C5	Booklet output tray	JC61-07253B, JC63-04978B	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Figure 5-3 Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher - rear view

Table 5-2 Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher - rear view

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)
C6	Top Output tray	JC63-04996B	
		JC63-05003B	(*)
C7	Main output tray	JC63-05002B	
C8	Rear cover	JC63-04988B	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Figure 5-4 Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher - top view

Table 5-3 Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher - top view

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)
C9	Top cover	JC90-01446B	
C10	Top door	JC90-01445B	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Figure 5-5 Booklet finisher – front-right view

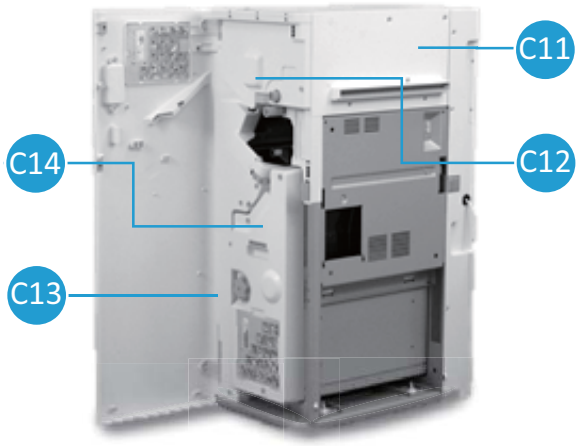


Table 5-4 booklet finisher - front-right view

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)
C11	Right upper cover	JC90-01448B	(*)
C12	Front cover	JC63-04986B	
C13	Front lower cover	JC63-04987B	
C14	Booklet front cover	JC90-01478B	

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Specification

Learn about the specifications of the stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Finisher

Table 5-5 Finisher specifications

Item		Stapler/stacker Finisher	Booklet Finisher
Speed	PPM	18.3~70,(90ppm)	18.3~70,(90ppm)
Stack Capacity (A4/ Letter 80gsm)	Main	3,000 sheets	2,000 sheets
	Top	250 sheets	250 sheets
Paper Size	Main	Statement SEF ~ 320 x 457	Statement SEF ~ 320 x 457
	Top	98 x 148 ~ 13" x 19.2" (330×1200)	98 x 148 ~ 13" x 19.2" (330×1200)
Paper Weight	Main	52 ~ 350 gsm	52 ~ 350 gsm
	Top	52 ~ 300 gsm	52 ~ 300 gsm
Offset (Non Staple) ※Exception SRA3 and larger size.		15mm(minimum)	15mm(minimum)

Table 5-5 Finisher specifications (continued)

Item		Stapler/stacker Finisher	Booklet Finisher
Staple	Clinching position	• Front/Rear Corner(45°,Flat) • Dual	• Front/Rear Corner(45°,Flat) • Dual
	Paper weight	52~256 gsm	52~256 gsm
	Capacity	65 sheets (90gsm)	65 sheets (90gsm)
	Cartridge Capacity	5,000 clinching/cartridge	5,000 clinching/cartridge
	Offline	Yes	Yes
Hole Punch	Paper weight	52 ~ 300 gsm	52 ~ 300 gsm
	available unit (Auto change)	NA2/3, EU2/4, Swedish	NA2/3, EU2/4, Swedish

Booklet

Table 5-6 Booklet maker Specification

Item		Description
Set Speed	PPM	18.3~70(90ppm)
Paper size		B5 SEF ~ 12" x 18"
Paper weight		60 ~ 120 gsm
Staple + Fold Capacity(80gsm)		25 sheets
Fold Capacity(80gsm)		5 sheets
Tray Capacity		5 sets / 25 sheets
Staple Cartridge Capacity		5,000 clinching/cartridge
C - Folding		3 sheets Letter SEF, A4 SEF

Physical

Table 5-7 Physical

Module	Option (Reference)	Size W X D X H [mm]	Module Weight [Kg]	Packed Weight [Kg]
Stapler/stacker Finisher		751.7 x 610 x 1016.4	40	62
Booklet Finisher		751.7 x 610 x 1016.4	62	84.5
	Hole Punch	80 x 485 x 235	2.8	4.1

Paper size

Table 5-8 Paper size specification

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Out put			Staple position			Punch					Booklet Maker	C-Folding
	mm	Inches	direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H		Swedish 4H		
				52-350g	Offset	52-300g	45°	Flat		2H	3H	2H	4H			
A5	210X148	8.3X5.8	LEF	X	X	X		F/R	X	X		X		X		
Statement	216X140	8.5X5.5	LEF	X	X	X		F/R	X	X		X		X		
Latter	279X216	11X8.5	LEF	X	X	X	F/R		X	X	X	X	X	X		
A4	297X210	8.3X11.7	LEF	X	X	X	F/R		X	X	X	X	X	X		
B5(JIS)	257X182	10.1×7.2	LEF	X	X	X	F/R		X	X	X	X		X		
B5(ISO)	250X176	9.8×6.9	LEF	X	X	X	F/R		X	X	X	X		X		
Executive	267X184	10.5X7.3	LEF	X	X	X	F/R		X	X	X	X	X	X		
No 9 Env	98X225	3.9X8.9	SEF			X										
Monarch Env	98.4×190.5	3.9×7.5	SEF			X										
PostCard 4x6	101.6×152.4	4.0×6.0	SEF			X										
A6	105X148	4.1X5.8	SEF			X										
No 10 Env	105×241	4.1×9.5	SEF			X										
DL Env	110×220	4.3×8.7	SEF			X										

Table 5-8 Paper size specification (continued)

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Out put			Staple position			Punch					Booklet Maker	C-Folding
	mm	Inches	direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H		Swedish 4H		
				52-350g	Offset	52-300g	45°	Flat		2 H	3 H	2 H	4 H			
C6 Env	114×162	4.5×6.4	SEF			X										
B6	128x182	5.0x7.2	SEF			X										
Statement	140X216	5.5X8.5	SEF	X		X						X		X		
A5	148X210	5.8X8.3	SEF	X		X						X		X		
C5 Env	162×229	6.4×9.0	SEF			X										
B5(ISO)	176×250	6.9×9.8	SEF	X	X	X		F/R		X		X		X		
B5(JIS)	182X257	7.2X10.1	SEF	X	X	X		F/R		X		X		X	X	
Executive	184X267	7.3X10.5	SEF	X	X	X		F/R		X		X		X	X	
16k	195X270	7.7X10.6	SEF	X	X	X		F/R	X	X		X		X	X	
A4	210X297	8.3X11.7	SEF	X	X	X		F/R	X	X		X		X	X	X
Legal	216X356	8.5X14	SEF	X	X	X		F/R	X	X		X		X	X	
Letter	216X279	8.5X11	SEF	X	X	X		F/R	X	X		X		X	X	X
Folio	216X330	8.5X13	SEF	X	X	X		F/R	X	X		X		X	X	

Table 5-8 Paper size specification (continued)

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Out put			Staple position			Punch					Booklet Maker	C-Folding
	mm	Inches	direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H		Swedish 4H		
				52-350g	Offset	52-300g	45°	Flat		2H	3H	2H	4H			
Oficio	215.9×342.9	8.5×13.5	SEF	X	X	X		F/R	X	X		X		X	X	
C4 Env	229×324	9.1X12.8	SEF			X										
Tabloid	254X374	10X14.7	SEF	X	X	X	F/R		X	X	X	X		X	X	
B4	257X364	10X14.3	SEF	X	X	X	F/R		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
8K	270X390	10.6X15.4	SEF	X	X	X	F/R		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Ledger	279X432	11X17	SEF	X	X	X	F/R		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
A3	297X420	11.7X16.5	SEF	X	X	X	F/R		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Tabloid Extra	304.8×457.2	12×18	SEF	X		X									X	
SRA3	320×450	12.6×17.7	SEF	X		X										
13"x19.2"	330x487	13x19.2	SEF			X										
Custom	W98-330 ~ L140-1200	W3.9-13 ~ L5.5-47.2	-		NA	X	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA

* F/R means Front side and Rear side can be supported.

Media performance

Table 5-9 Media performance

Paper Type	Function						
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	HP	BM		
					Cover	Content	C-Fold
Plain (71-90 g/m²)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Thick (91-105 g/m²)	X	X	X	X	X		
Heavy weight (106-175 g/m²)	X	X	X	X	X		
Extra Heavy weight 1 (176-216 g/m²)	X	X	X	X	X		
Extra Heavy weight 2 (217-256 g/m²)	X	X	X	X	X		
Extra Heavy weight 3 (257-300 g/m²)	X	X		X	X		
Extra Heavy weight 4 (301-325 g/m²)	X						
Thin (60-70 g/m²)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Cotton (75-90 g/m²)	X	X					
Colored (75-90 g/m²)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Pre-Printed (75-90 g/m²)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Recycled (60-90 g/m²)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Bond	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Archive (75-105 g/m²)	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Letter Head	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Pre-Punched	X	X	X				
Thin Cardstock (105-163 g/m²)	X	X	X	X			
Thick Cardstock (170-216 g/m²)	X	X	X				
Heavy Cardstock (217-256 g/m²)	X	X	X				
Extra Heavy Cardstock 1(257-300 g/m²)	X	X					
Extra Heavy Cardstock 2(301-325 g/m²)	X						
Thin Glossy (106-169 g/m²)	X	X	X	X	X		
Thick Glossy (170-216 g/m²)	X	X	X		X		
Heavy Glossy (217-256 g/m²)	X	X	X		X		
Envelope (75-90 g/m²)		X					
Thick Envelope (217-256 g/m²)		X					
Transparency (138~146 gsm)	X	X		X			

Table 5-9 Media performance (continued)

Paper Type	Function						
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	HP	BM		
					Cover	Content	C-Fold
Labels (120~150 gsm)		X					
Tab	X	X		X			

Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher system

Learn about the Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher system.

Overview

Learn about the overview of the Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Work flow

Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher work flow

Figure 5-6 Work flow overview

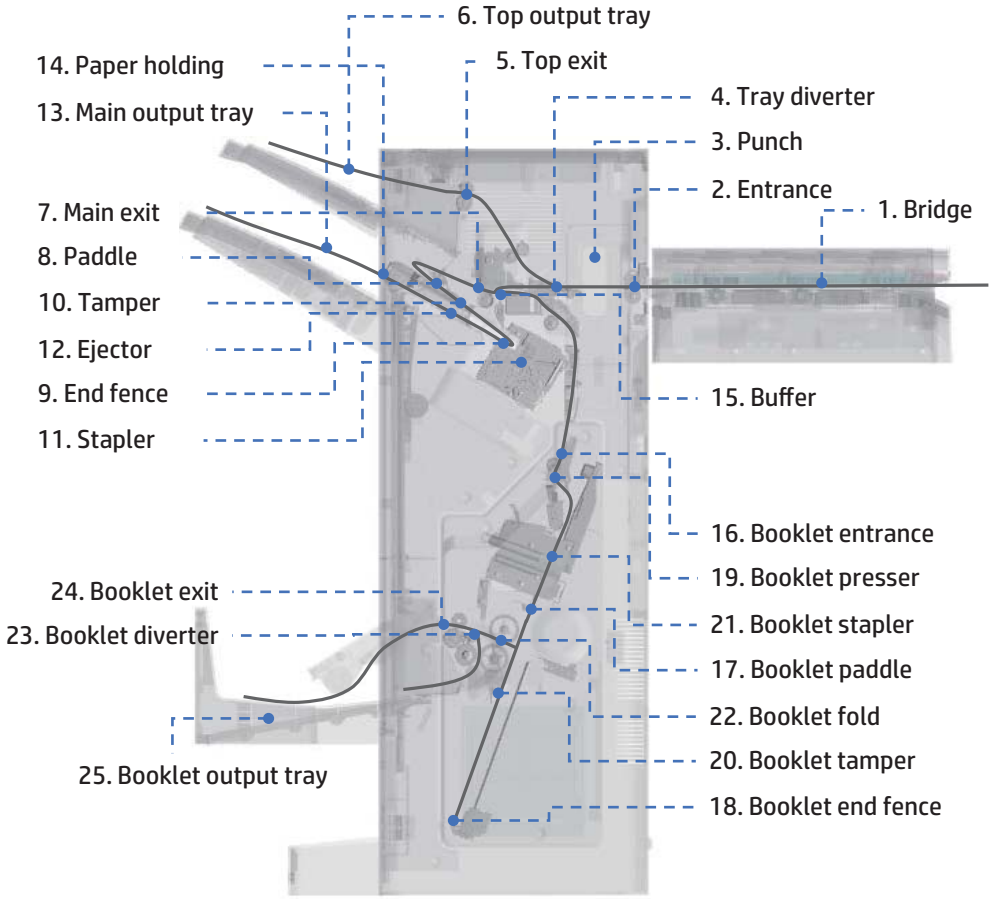


Table 5-10 work flow overview

Item	Unit	Description
1	Bridge unit	Moves paper from the printer to the finisher.
2	Entrance unit	Allows paper to move into the finisher.
3	Punch unit(optional)	Holes in a specific location on paper sheet.
4	Tray diverter unit	Changes the paper direction whether it is main output tray or top output tray.
5	Top exit unit	Moves paper from the diverter to the top output tray.
6	Top output tray unit	Stacks paper that completed its printing job.

Table 5-10 work flow overview (continued)

Item	Unit	Description
7	Main exit unit	Moves paper from the diverter unit to the ejector unit with forward direction or to the buffer unit with backward direction.
8	Paddle unit	Pushes to the end fence to be aligned towards top and bottom of the paper.
9	End fence unit	Sets the standard position of the paper to be aligned towards top and bottom of the paper.
10	Tamper unit	Aligns the paper on the right and left side of the paper.
11	Stapler unit	Staples a bundle of an aligned documents.
12	Ejector unit	Transfers a stapled paper loaded at the end fence unit to the output tray.
13	Main output tray unit	Stacks paper that completed its printing job.
14	Paper holding unit	Keeps paper static and controls the output tray movement.
15	Buffer unit	Maintains paper inside the unit for a while or moves it to the booklet maker.
16	Booklet entrance unit	Receives the paper into the booklet maker.
17	Booklet paddle unit	Pushes to the booklet end fence.
18	Booklet end fence unit	Supports paper that enters from the booklet paddle unit, then moves paper to the designated position for folding and stapling.
19	Booklet presser unit	Presses paper that enters to the booklet tamper unit to prevent paper shuffled.
20	Booklet tamper unit	Aligns the paper on the right and left side of the paper to make booklet.
21	Booklet stapler unit	Staples a bundle of aligned documents to make a booklet.
22	Booklet fold unit	Fold a bundle of aligned documents as a booklet.
23	Booklet diverter unit	Changes the paper direction to the booklet exit unit or the location to make c-fold.
24	Booklet exit unit	Moves paper to the booklet output tray.
25	Booklet output tray unit	Stacks the bundle of booklet.

Sensor

Figure 5-7 Sensor – Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher_1

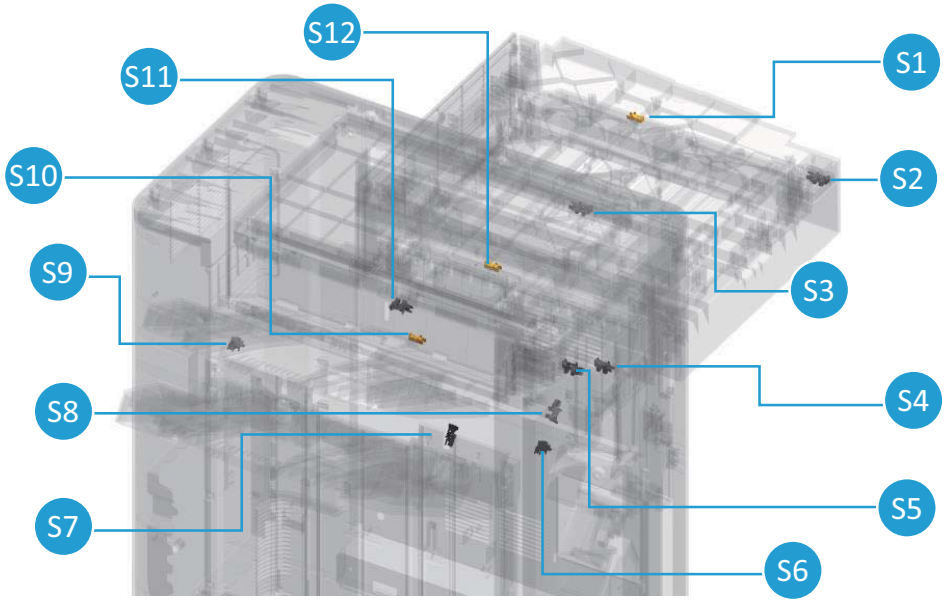


Table 5-11 Sensor – Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher_1

No	Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Type	Description
S1	Bridge entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	(*)	113-2070	Paper sensor	Checks whether paper comes into the bridge entrance unit.
S2	Bridge door sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2180	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the bridge door is opened.
S3	Bridge exit sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2071	Photo interrupter	Checks whether paper comes into the bridge exit unit.
S4	Tray diverter home sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-2020	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the tray diverter locates at the home position.
S5	Main exit cam home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2000	Photo interrupter	Check whether the main exit CAM locates at the home position.
S6	Front tamper home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2120	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the front tamper locates at the home position.
S7	End fence home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2050	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the end fence locates at the home position.
S8	Paddle home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2060	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the paddle locates at the home position.
S9	Rear tamper home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2130	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the rear tamper locates at the home position.
S10	Main exit sensor	JC32-00020A	(*)	113-2090	Paper sensor	Checks whether paper comes into the main exit unit.
S11	Top exit sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2091	Photo interrupter	Checks whether paper comes into the top exit unit.
S12	Entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	(*)	113-2080	Paper sensor	Checks whether paper comes into the entrance unit.

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Figure 5-8 Sensor – Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher_2

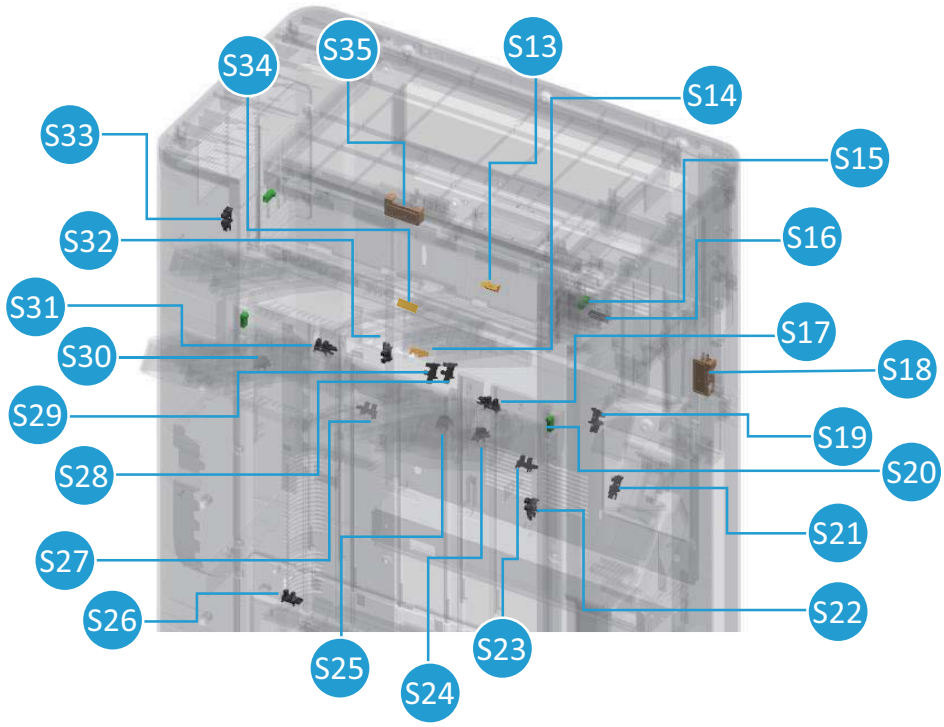


Table 5-12 Sensor – Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher_2

No	Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Type	Description
S13	Buffer sensor	JC32-00020A	(*)	113-2100	Paper sensor	Checks whether paper exits out of the buffer unit
S14	Ejector sensor	JC32-00020A	(*)	113-2170	Paper sensor	Checks whether paper is on the ejector or not.
S15	Top output tray paper full sensor	JC82-01039A	(*)	113-2145	LED IR, Photo TR	Checks whether the top output tray is full or not.
S16	Buffer home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2210	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the buffer roller and the idle roller whether attached or detached.
S17	Front Paper holding sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2141	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the location of the paper holding actuator for controlling the position of the main output tray.
S18	Front door switch	JC39-02309A		113-2182	Switch	Check whether the front door is open.
S19	Manual staple sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-2160	Photo interrupter	Check whether the paper comes into the manual staple position.
S20	Main output tray top of stack sensor	JC82-01039A	(*)	113-2140	LED IR, Photo TR	Check whether the main output tray reaches the top of stack.
S21	Stapler front sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2113	Photo interrupter	Makes the stapler positioned in accordance with the manual stapling position.
S22	Paper holding home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2010	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the paper holding actuator locates at the home position.

Table 5-12 Sensor – Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher_2 (continued)

No	Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Type	Description
S23	Ejector2 motor sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-2041	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the ejector2 motor is operational.
S24	Stapler mid front sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2112	Photo interrupter	Make the stapler positioned at the exact stapling position.
S25	Stapler mid rear sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2111	Photo interrupter	Make the stapler positioned at the exact stapling position.
S26	Main output tray lower limit sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-2144	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the lower limit of the output tray (=output tray is full).
S27	Ejector1 motor sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-2032	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the ejector1 motor is operational.
S28	Ejector1 end sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-2030	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the ejector1 locates at the end position.
S29	Ejector1 home sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-2031	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the ejector1 locates at the home position.
S30	Stapler rear sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2110	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the stapler locates at the home(rear) position.
S31	Rear paper holding sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2142	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the location of the paper holding actuator for controlling the position of the main output tray.
S32	Ejector2 home sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-2040	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the ejector2 locates at the home position.
S33	Main output tray motor sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2143	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the Main output tray motor is operational.
S34	Main output tray top of stack switch	JC39-02316A		113-2190	Switch	Checks whether the main output tray reaches at the top of stack.
S35	Top door switch	JC39-02310A		113-2181	Switch	Checks whether the top door is open.

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Figure 5-9 Sensor – Booklet finisher

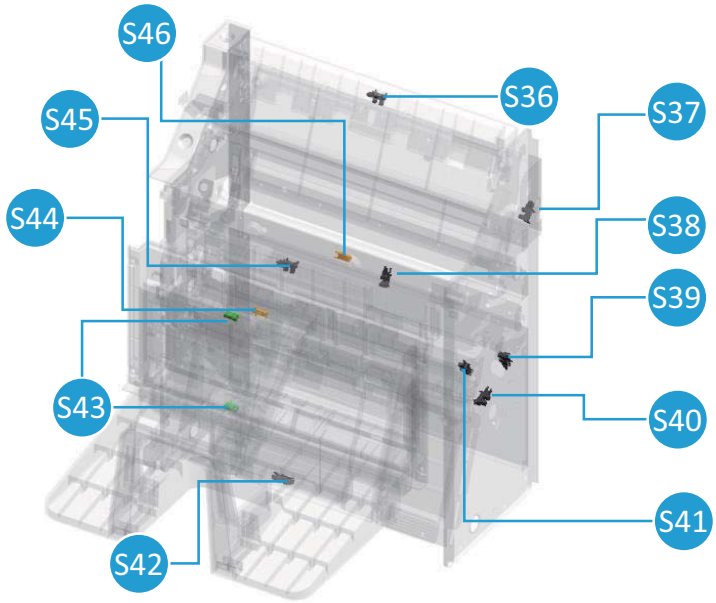
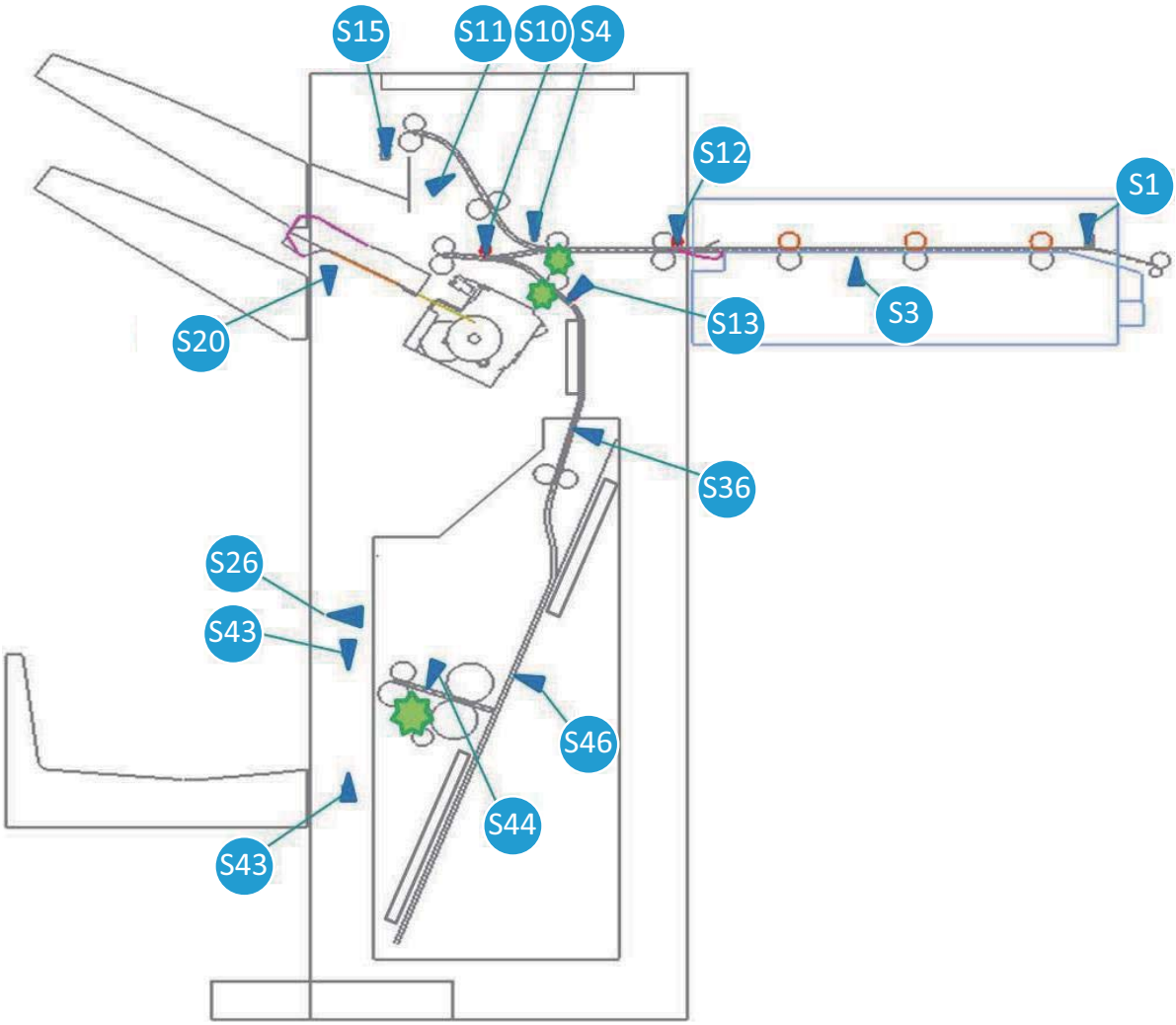


Table 5-13 Sensor – Booklet finisher

No	Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Type	Description
S36	Booklet entrance sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-3100	Photo interrupter	Checks whether paper comes into the bridge entrance unit.
S37	Booklet presser home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-3130	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet presser locates at the home position.
S38	Booklet tamper home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-3080	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet tamper locates at the home position.
S39	Booklet c-fold blade home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-3050	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet c-fold blade locates at the home position.
S40	Booklet diverter home sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-3060	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet diverter locates at the home position.
S41	Booklet paddle home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-3090	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet paddle locates at the home position.
S42	Booklet end fence home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-3000	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet end fence locates at the home position.
S43	Booklet output tray sensor	JC82-01039A	(*)	113-2150	LED IR, Photo TR	Checks whether paper goes out on the booklet output tray.
S44	Booklet exit sensor	JC32-00020A	(*)	113-3120	Paper sensor	Checks whether paper comes into the booklet exit unit.
S45	Booklet blade home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-3040	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet blade locates at the home position.
S46	Booklet tamper sensor	JC32-00020A	(*)	113-3110	Paper sensor	Checks whether paper comes into the booklet tamper unit.

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Figure 5-10 Sensor – Paper path



Motor and solenoid

Figure 5-11 Motor, solenoid – Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher

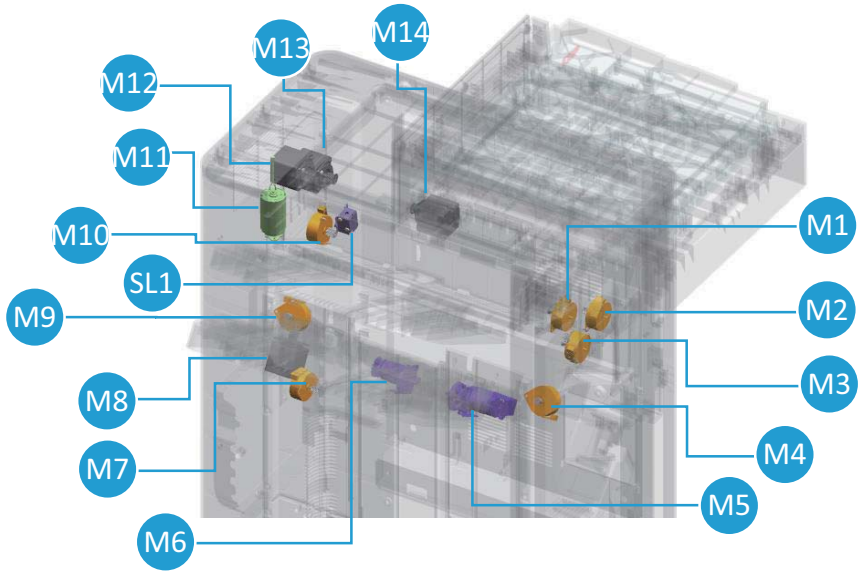


Table 5-14 Motor, solenoid – Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher

No	Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Type	Description
M1	Paddle motor	JC93-01001A	(*)	113-3580	Step motor	Rotates the paddle and moves the paddle pusher up and downward at the same time.
M2	Main exit cam motor	JC93-01155A	(*)	113-2500	Step motor	Rotates the main exit cam to detach the exit roller from the exit idle roller.
M3	End fence motor	JC93-01001A	(*)	113-2590	Step motor	Moves front and rear end fence depending on paper size(width) so that paper is well arranged at the end fence.
M4	Front tamper motor	JC93-01001A	(*)	113-2630	Step motor	Moves the front tamper unit.
M5	Ejector2 motor	JC93-01168A		113-2540	DC motor	Moves the ejector2 and grabs paper.
M6	Ejector1 motor	JC93-01168A		113-2530	DC motor	Moves the ejector1 forward and backward
M7	Paper holding motor	JC93-01156A	(*)	113-2510	Step motor	Moves paper holding actuator up when paper goes out to the output tray
M8	Stapler position motor	JC31-00163A	(*)	113-2620	Hybrid Step motor	Moves the stapler.
M9	Rear tamper motor	JC93-01001A	(*)	113-2640	Step motor	Moves the rear tamper unit.
SL1	Buffer Solenoid	JC33-00038A	(*)	113-2670	Solenoid	Holds paper not to fall out to the booklet maker during buffering task.
M10	Buffer motor	JC93-01152A	(*)	113-2660	Step motor	Moves paper to the buffer space or the booklet maker.

Table 5-14 Motor, solenoid – Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher (continued)

No	Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Type	Description
M11	Main output tray motor	JC31-00178B	(*)	113-2610	DC motor	Moves the main output tray up and down.
M12	Entrance motor	JC31-00163B	(*)	113-2570	Hybrid Step motor	Operates the entrance roller, middle roller, and top middle roller when driving in the forward and moves the diverter cam when driving in the backward.
M13	Exit motor	JC31-00163B	(*)	113-2580	Hybrid Step motor	Rotates the main exit roller and the top exit roller.
M14	Bridge motor	JC31-00163B	(*)	113-2560	Hybrid Step motor	Rotates the bridge entrance roller, the bridge middle roller and the bridge exit roller.

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Figure 5-12 Motor, solenoid – Booklet finisher

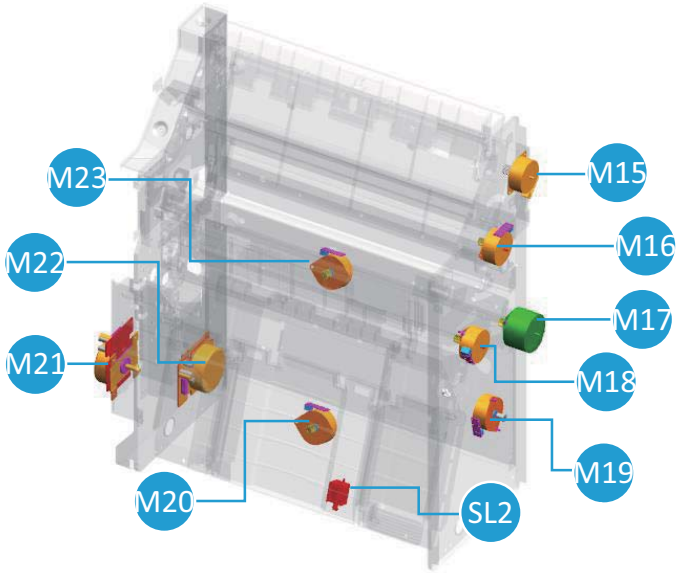


Table 5-15 Motor, solenoid – Booklet finisher

No	Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Type	Description
M15	Booklet entrance motor	JC93-01152A	(*)	113-3500	Step motor	Rotates the booklet entrance roller.
M16	Booklet presser motor	JC93-01155A	(*)	113-3570	Step motor	Operates the booklet presser.
M17	Booklet C-fold blade motor	JC93-01154A	(*)	113-3590	Step motor	Drives the booklet c-fold blade and the moving guide.
M18	Booklet diverter motor	JC93-01153A	(*)	113-3560	Step motor	Drives the booklet diverter
M19	Booklet paddle motor	JC93-01001A	(*)	113-3580	Step motor	Rotates the booklet paddle.

Table 5-15 Motor, solenoid – Booklet finisher (continued)

No	Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Type	Description
M20	Booklet end fence motor	JC93-01155A	(*)	113-3530	Step motor	Moves the booklet end fence up and down.
M21	Booklet Fold motor	JC31-00144A	(*)	113-3510	BLDC motor	Rotates the booklet fold roller, the booklet c-fold roller, and the booklet exit roller.
M22	Booklet blade motor	JC31-00144A	(*)	113-3550	BLDC motor	Drives the booklet blade.
M23	Booklet tamper motor	JC93-01155A	(*)	113-3540	Step motor	Moves the booklet tamper unit.
SL2	Booklet end fence solenoid	JC33-00038A	(*)	113-3520	Solenoid	Operates the gripper of the booklet end fence to grip paper that comes in the booklet end fence.

(*) This part is in ordering system.

NOTE: The motor sensor which is mounted near the driving motor detects whether the motor is operating or not. If a motor doesn't work properly, an event code only for the motor will occur. On the other hand, the home position sensor is installed for the purpose of checking the reference position or location when the specific unit is operating.

Figure 5-13 Motor sensor in the ejector unit

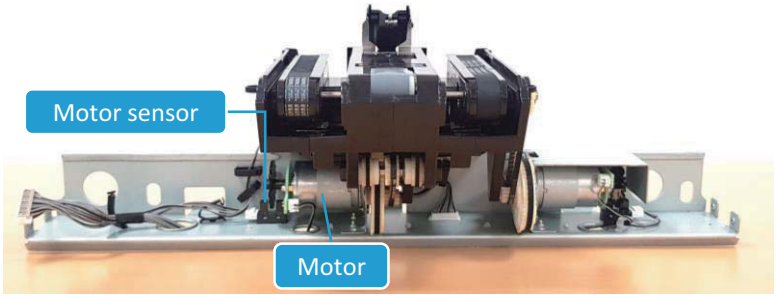
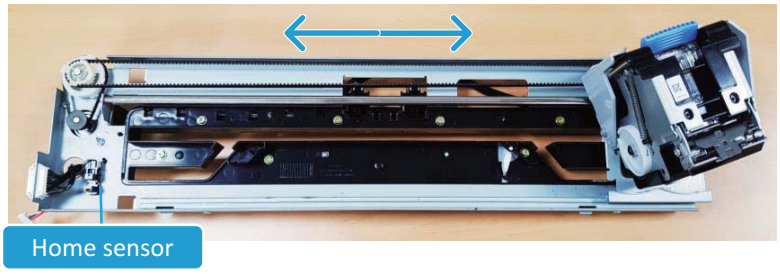


Figure 5-14 Home sensor in the stapler unit



Roller

Figure 5-15 Roller - Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher

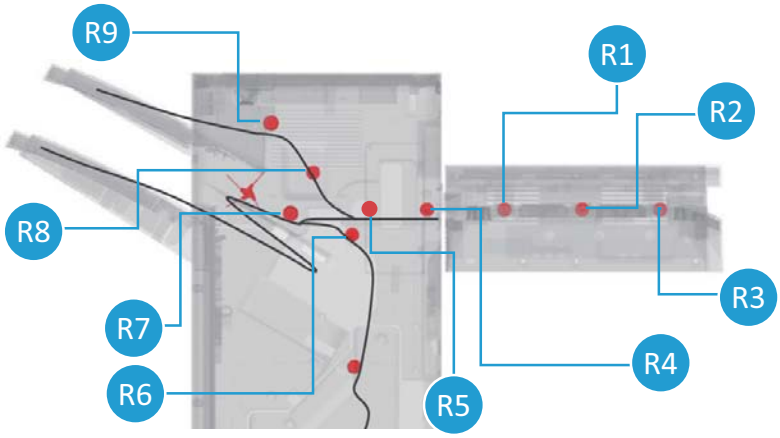


Table 5-16 Roller - Stapler/stacker finisher

No	Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Drive motor	Description
R1	Bridge exit roller	JC66-04732A	(*)	Bridge motor	Moves paper from the machine to the bridge unit.
R2	Bridge middle roller	JC66-04732A	(*)	Bridge motor	Moves paper from the machine to the bridge unit.
R3	Bridge entrance roller	JC66-04733A	(*)	Bridge motor	Moves paper from the machine to the bridge unit
R4	Entrance roller	JC66-04722A	(*)	Entrance motor	Moves paper from the entrance unit to the exit unit
R5	Middle roller	JC66-04724A	(*)	Entrance motor	Moves paper from the entrance unit to the exit unit
R6	Buffer roller	JC66-05161A		Buffer motor	Moves paper to the booklet maker, and makes the gap between the buffer roller and the idle roller so that paper stays for the buffering.
R7	Main exit roller	JC66-04726A	(*)	Exit motor Main exit cam motor	Moves paper to the ejector unit or the buffer unit and makes the gap between the main exit roller and the idle roller so that paper stays for the buffering.
R8	Top middle roller	JC66-04725A	(*)	Entrance motor	Moves paper to the top output tray.
R9	Top exit roller	JC66-04727A	(*)	Exit motor	Moves paper to the top output tray.

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Figure 5-16 Roller – Booklet finisher

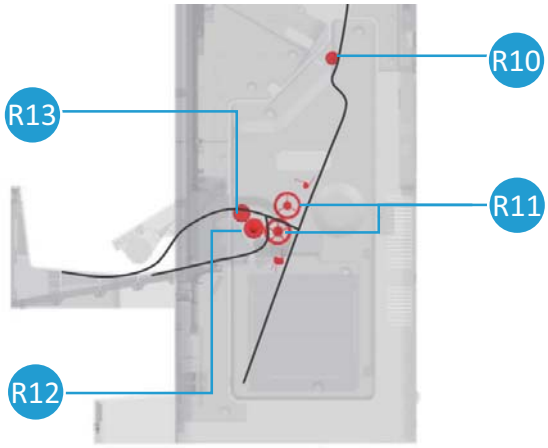


Table 5-17 Roller – Booklet finisher

No	Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Drive motor	Description
R10	Booklet entrance roller	JC66-04717A		Booklet entrance motor	Moves paper from the machine to the bridge unit.
R11	Booklet fold roller	JC66-04748A		Booklet fold motor	Presses a stack of paper to fold completely.
R12	Booklet c-fold roller	JC66-04744A	(*)	Booklet fold motor	In case of c-fold, presses a stack of paper to fold completely.
R13	Booklet exit roller	JC66-04721A	(*)	Booklet fold motor	Moves paper to the booklet output tray unit

(*) This part is in ordering system.

PCA

Figure 5-17 PCA

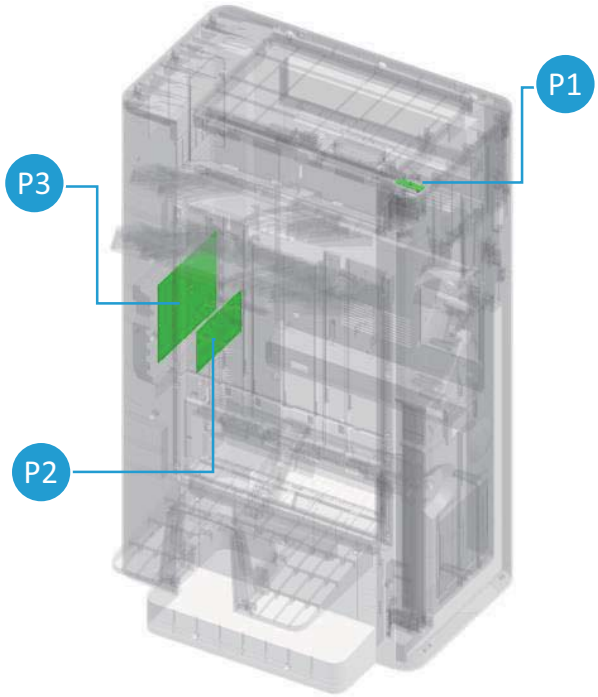


Table 5-18 PCA

No	Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Description
P1	Manual staple PCA	JC92-02789A		This PCA shows the manual stapling condition and accepts the button input for manual staple.
P2	Booklet maker PCA	JC92-02789B	(*)	This PCA controls the booklet maker module and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs.
P3	Main PCA	JC92-02790B	(*)	This PCA controls the finisher modules and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs.
Not shown	Hole punch PCA	-		This PCA controls the hole punch module and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs.

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Bridge unit

The Bridge Unit is the asset to transfer paper from the printer to the finisher. The bridge entrance sensor (S1) detects paper entering the bridge unit from the printer. In the same way, the bridge exit sensor (S3) checks that the paper leaves from the bridge unit to the finisher. The bridge motor (M14) drive the bridge entrance roller, bridge middle roller, and bridge exit roller. It makes paper moves through the bridge unit. The jam removal door locating at the front side of the unit helps user to remove the jammed paper.

Figure 5-18 Bridge unit overview

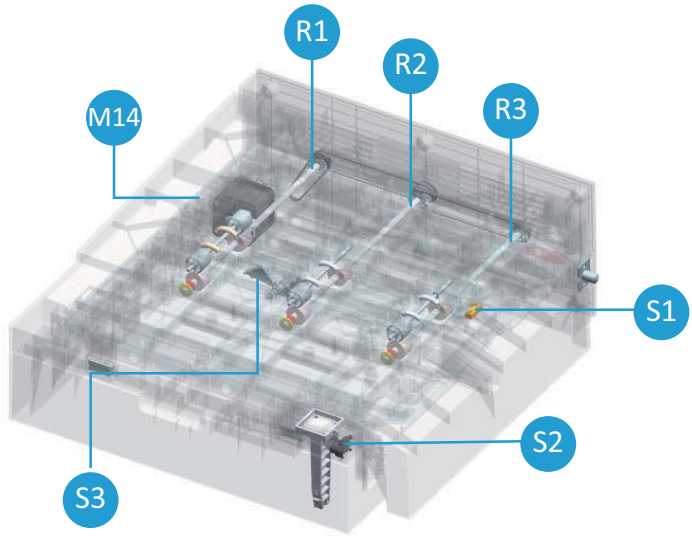


Figure 5-19 Bridge unit detail view

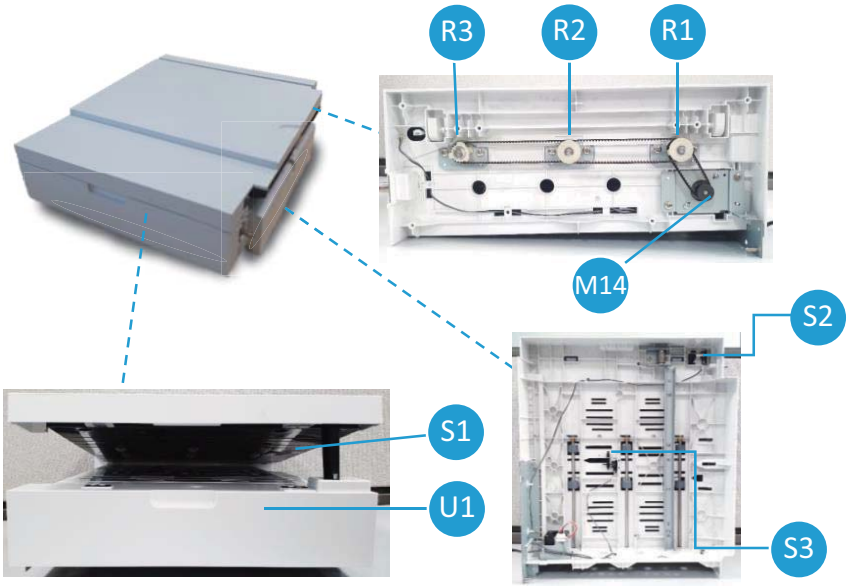


Table 5-19 Bridge unit parts information

No	Part Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
U1	Bridge unit	JC90-01772B	(*)		Moves paper from the printer to the finisher.
S2	Bridge door sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2180	Detects if the bridge door is open.
S1	Bridge entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	(*)	113-2070	Checks whether paper comes into the bridge entrance unit.
S3	Bridge exit sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2071	Checks whether paper move out of the bridge unit.
M14	Bridge motor	JC31-00163B	(*)	113-2560	Rotates the bridge entrance roller, the bridge middle roller and the bridge exit roller.
R3	Bridge entrance roller	JC66-04733A	(*)		Moves paper from the machine to the bridge unit.

Table 5-19 Bridge unit parts information (continued)

No	Part Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
R2	Bridge middle roller	JC66-04732A	(*)		Moves paper from the machine to the bridge unit.
R1	Bridge exit roller	JC66-04732A	(*)		Moves paper from the bridge unit to the finisher entrance unit.

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Entrance unit

Entrance unit moves paper from the bridge unit to the inside of the finisher.The Entrance sensor (S12) installed at the right side of the unit senses that the paper is entering the unit. The Entrance motor (M12) rotates forward to drive the entrance roller and the middle roller to move paper to the exit unit.

Figure 5-20 Entrance unit overview

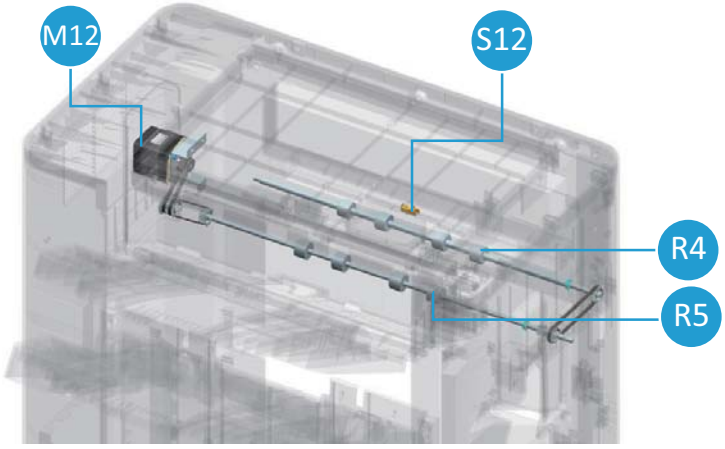


Figure 5-21 Entrance unit detail view - front

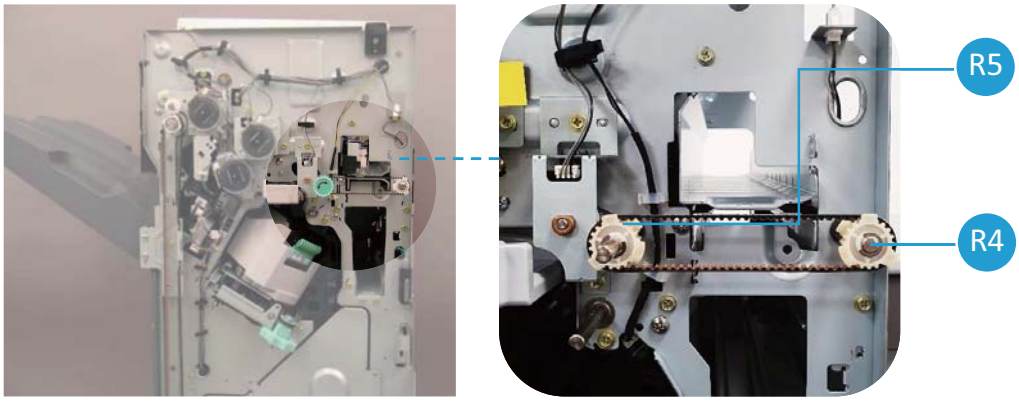


Figure 5-22 Entrance unit detail view - rear

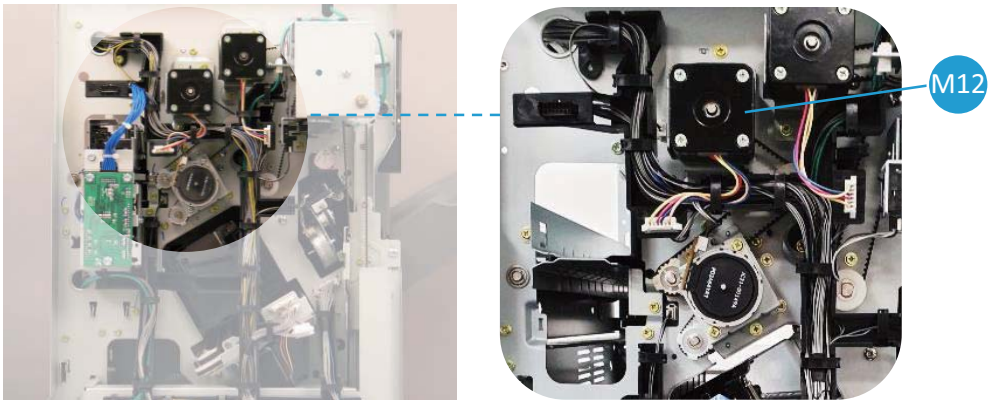


Figure 5-23 Entrance unit detail view - right

Table 5-20 Entrance unit parts information

No	Part Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
S12	Entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	(*)	113-2080	Detects whether paper enters at the entrance unit.
M12	Entrance motor	JC31-00163B	(*)	113-2570	Operates the entrance roller and middle roller when driving forward.
R4	Entrance roller	JC66-04722A	(*)		Moves paper from the entrance unit to the exit unit.
R5	Middle roller	JC66-04724A	(*)		Moves paper from the entrance unit to the exit unit.

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Punch unit (optional)

Learn about the punch unit of the Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

The punch unit is a device that punches holes in a specific location on a sheet of paper. The punch unit is positioned right after the entrance unit.

- HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/3 Accessory —Y1G10A
- HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/4 Accessory — Y1G11A
- HP LaserJet Hole Punch Swedish Accessory — Y1G12A

NOTE: Puncher types are various depending on the country.

In case of 2/3 hole punch, the 5 hole-punches are mounted in the punch unit. As the punch motor rotates forward, the inner gear moves to the right and the 3 hole-punches are moved downward to make the holes on the paper. When making 2 holes, the motor rotates in the backward direction and the inner gear rotates to the left to drill two holes. The travel distance and position of the hole-punches are detected and controlled by the 3 punch position sensors.

Figure 5-24 Punch unit overview

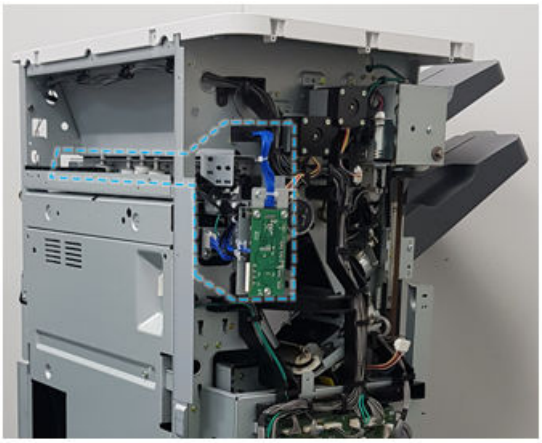


Figure 5-25 Punch unit detail view

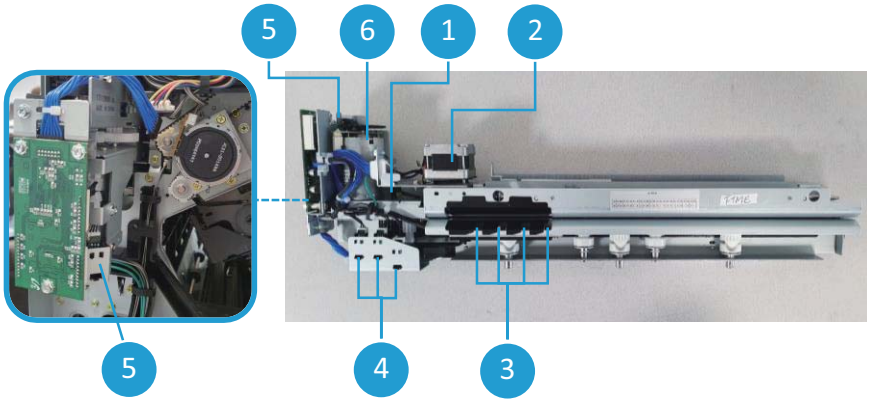


Table 5-21 Punch unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
U1	Punch unit				
	2-3 hole	Y1G10A	(*)		
	2-4 hole	Y1G11A	(*)		
	Swedish hole	Y1G12A	(*)		
1	Punch scan home sensor			113-4000	Detects the home position of the punch unit

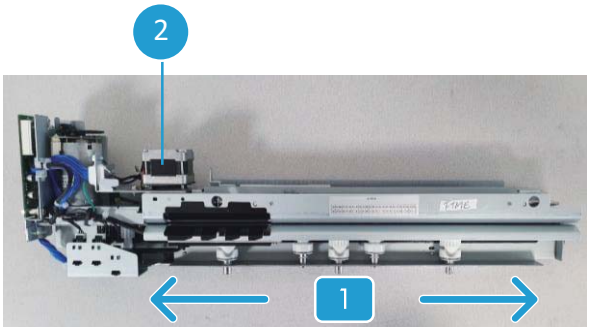
Table 5-21 Punch unit parts information (continued)

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
3	Punch scan edge sensor			113-4010 113-4011 113-4012 113-4013	Check the paper width to make hole on the right position of paper.
2	Punch scan motor			113-4500	Transmits the force to move the punch unit in the horizontal direction.
4	Punch position sensor			113-4020 113-4030 113-4031	Detects the travel distance and position of the hole-punches.
5	Punch motor sensor			113-4040	Checks whether the punch motor is operational
6	Punch motor			113-4510	Transmits the force to make holes on the paper

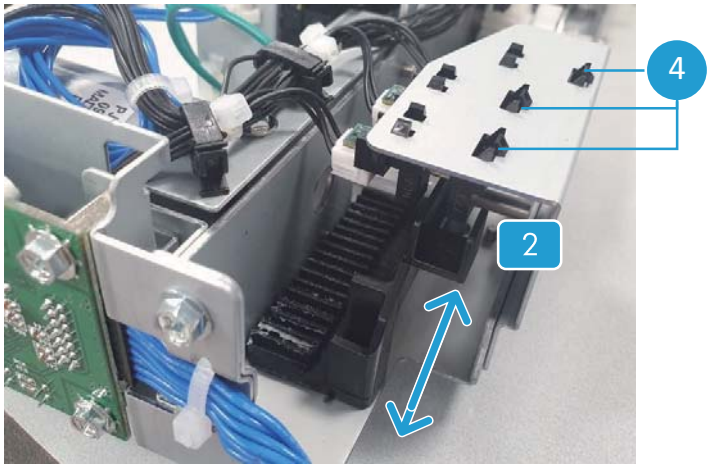
(*) This part is in system.

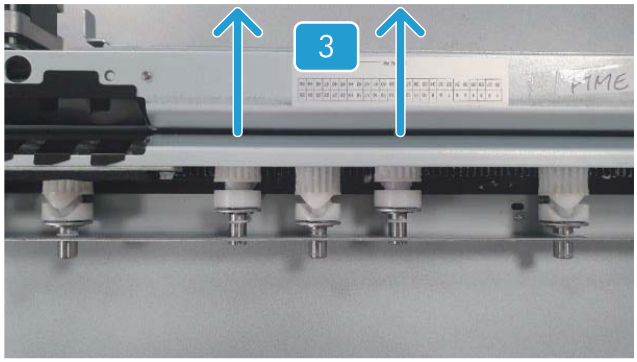
Punch unit operation

1. A paper enters into the punch unit, and it is aligned to drill holes.
2. The motor rotates forward or backward, then the punch rail in the punch unit moves in order to move the punch hole makers (callout 1).

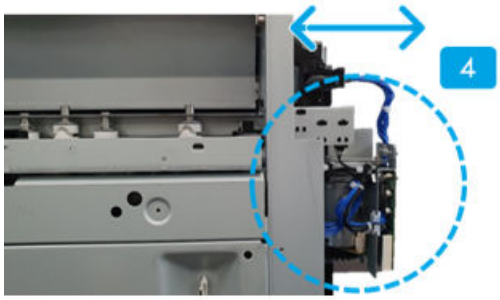


3. The punch position sensors determine the punch rail location (callout 2). It drives the punch hole makers up and down to make holes (callout 3).





4. In some paper size, paper might be jammed in a place where punch hole maker is located. Therefore, the punch unit moves left and right (callout 4).



Tray diverter unit

Learn about the Tray diverter unit of the Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

The tray diverter unit is responsible for determining the paper feed direction so that paper can be ejected to the main output tray or top output tray.

The entrance motor (M12) rotates this unit. When the entrance motor rotates backward, the phase of the divertor cam (callout1) changes so that the paper path direction changes. The tray diverter home sensor (S4) checks whether the tray diverter is located at the home position or not. (callout2).

Figure 5-26 Tray diverter unit overview

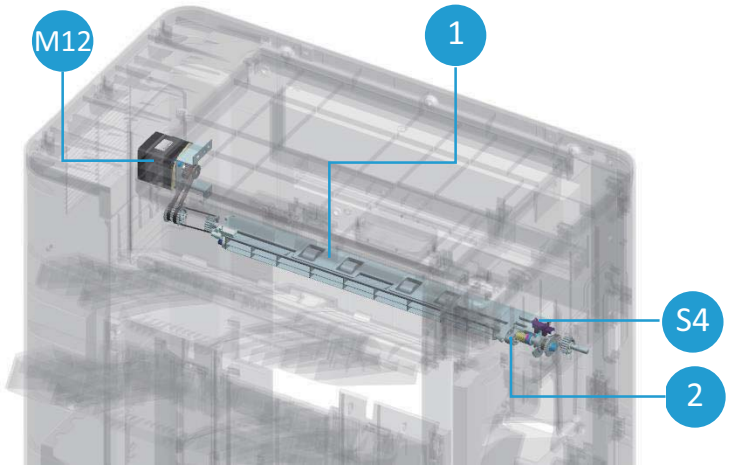


Figure 5-27 Tray diverter unit detail view – front-top

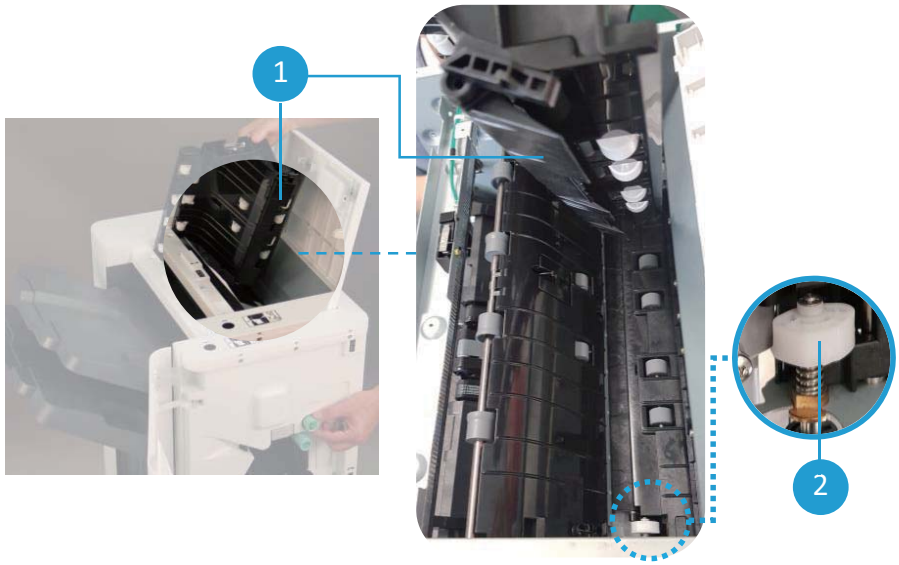


Figure 5-28 Tray diverter unit detail view – rear

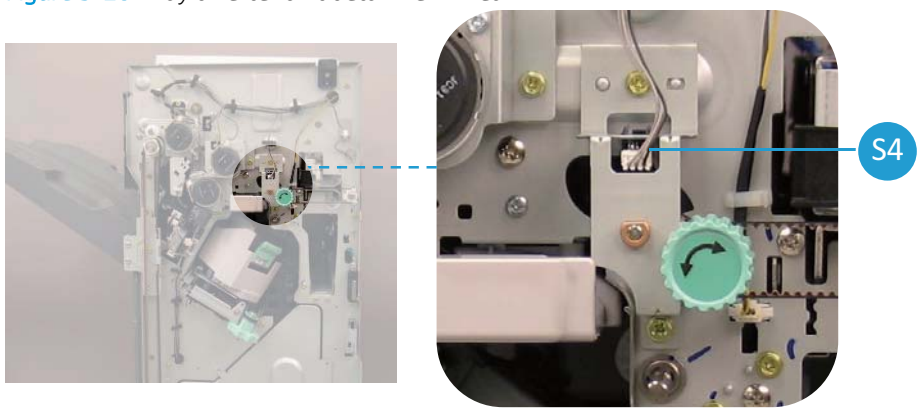


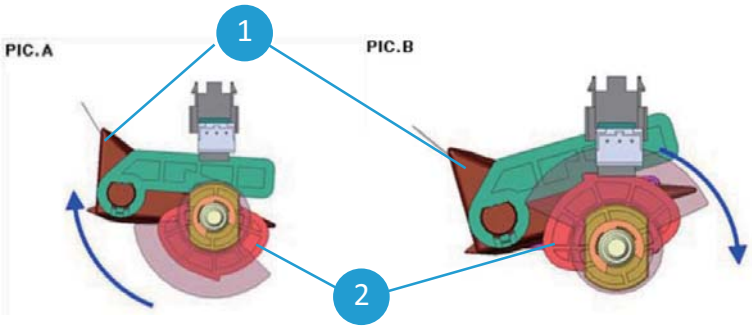
Table 5-22 Tray diverter unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Tray diverter	JC61-07205A			Selects the paper path of either the main output tray or the top output tray
2	Tray diverter cam	JC66-04560A		113-2520	Changes the paper path
S4	Tray diverter home sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-2020	Checks whether home position of the tray diverter
M12	Entrance motor	JC31-00163B	(*)		Operates the tray diverter cam when driving in the backward direction.

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Tray diverter unit operation

1. When printing or copying documents, the entrance motor operates backward so that the diverter cam (Callout 2) can be rotate.
2. The direction of the tray diverter(callout1) is changed to the main output tray or the top output tray by the tray diverter cam(callout2).



Top output tray direction Main output tray direction

Top exit unit

Learn about the Top exit unit of the Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

The top exit unit sends paper from the tray diverter unit to the top output tray unit.

The top exit sensor(S11) detects paper entry into the top exit unit. The entrance motor(M12) drives the top middle roller, and the exit motor(M13) transmit the force to rotate the top exit roller so that paper moves to the top output tray unit.

Figure 5-29 Top exit unit overview

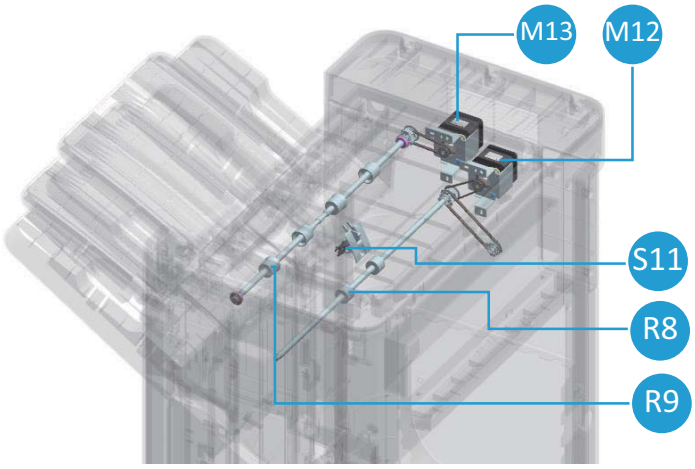


Figure 5-30 Top exit unit detail view – front-top

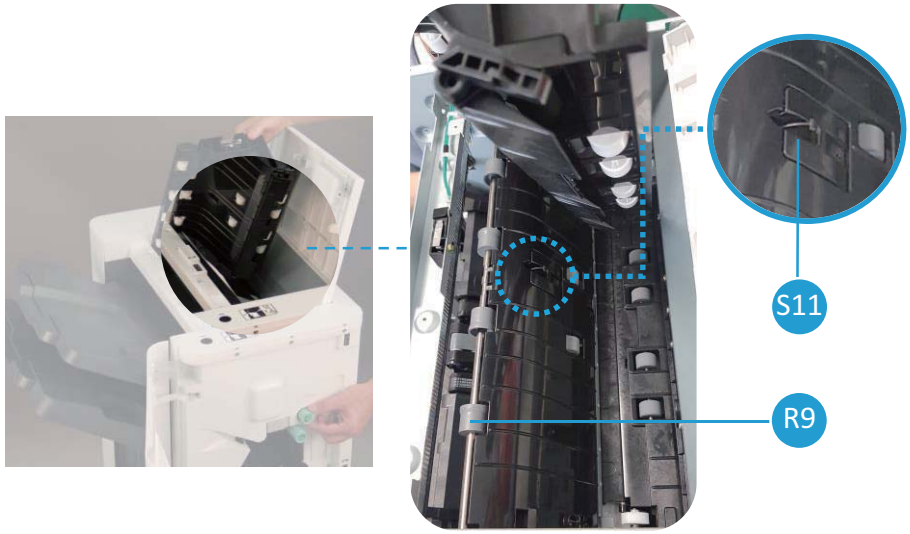


Table 5-23 Top exit unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
S11	Top exit sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2091	Checks whether paper has entered at the top exit unit
M12	Entrance motor	JC31-00163B	(*)	113-2570	Rotates the top middle roller when driving in the forward direction.
M13	Exit motor	JC31-00163B	(*)	113-2580	Rotates the top exit roller
R8	Top middle roller	JC66-04725A	(*)		Moves paper to the top output tray
R9	Top exit roller	JC66-04727A	(*)		Moves paper to the top output tray

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Top output tray unit

Learn about the Top output tray unit of the Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

The top output tray unit loads discharged paper from the finisher.

It has the paper pull sensor(S15) to detect whether the tray is full with paper.

Figure 5-31 Top output tray unit overview

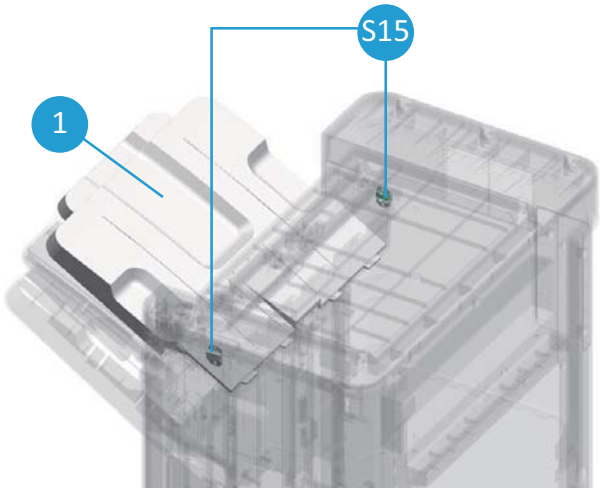


Figure 5-32 Top output tray unit detail view – front-left

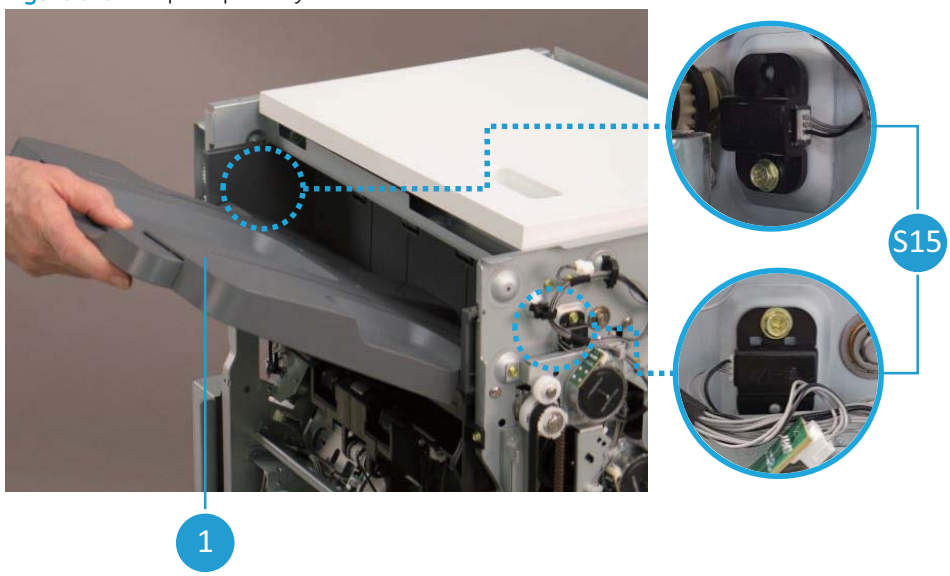


Table 5-24 Top output tray unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Top output tray	JC63-04996B			Loads ejected paper
		JC63-05003B	(*)		
S15	Top output tray paper full sensor (receiver, led)	JC82-01039A	(*)	113-2145	Detects whether paper is fully staked on the output tray.

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Main exit unit

Learn about the Main exit unit of the Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

The main exit unit delivers paper from the tray diverter unit to the ejector unit or buffer unit.

The main exit sensor (S10) detects whether paper comes in from main exit unit. The exit motor (M13) drives the main exit roller to send the paper to the ejector unit or buffer unit.

Figure 5-33 Main exit unit overview

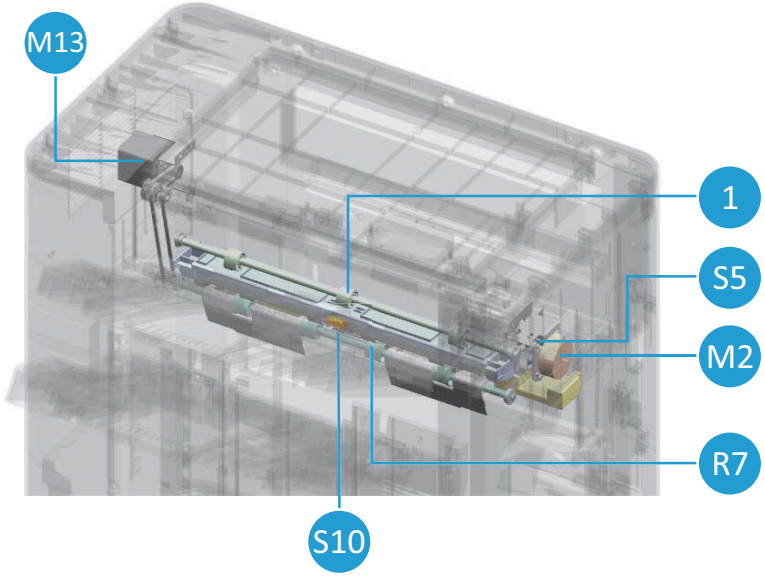


Figure 5-34 Main exit unit detail view – (front-rear)

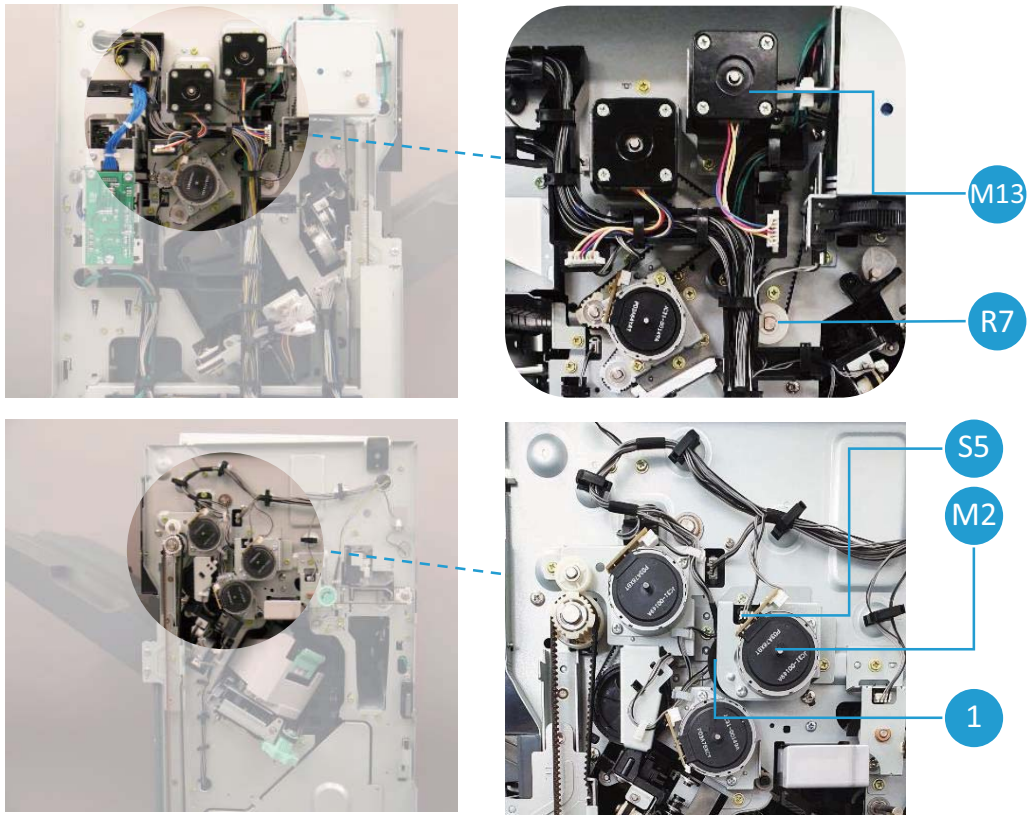


Table 5-25 Main exit unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
S10	Main exit sensor	JC32-00020A	(*)	113-2090	Detects whether paper entered at the main exit unit

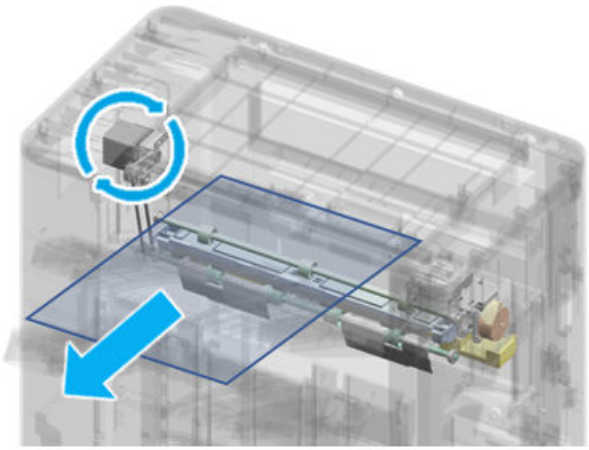
Table 5-25 Main exit unit parts information (continued)

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
M13	Exit motor	JC31-00163B	(*)	113-2580	Rotates the main exit roller
R7	Main exit roller	JC66-04726A	(*)		Moves paper to the ejector unit or the buffer unit
1	Main exit cam				Adjusts the gap between the main exit roller and the idle roller for the buffering. (*Please refer to 'buffer unit')
S5	Main exit cam home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2000	Detects the home position of the main exit cam
M2	Main exit cam motor	JC93-01155A	(*)	113-2500	Rotates the main exit cam.

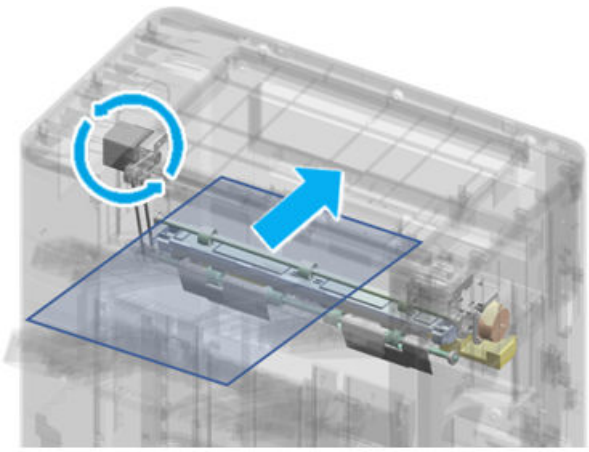
(*) This part is in ordering system.

Main exit unit operation

1. The exit motor(M13) drives forward so that paper will moves towards the ejector unit.



2. On the other hand, if the exit motor rotates backwards paper moves towards the buffer unit.



Paddle unit

Learn about the Paddle unit of the Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

The paddle unit rotates the rubber paddles mounted on the shaft to move paper to the end fence unit, allowing paper to be arranged well for the next job. The paddle presser is mounted behind the rubber paddles and presses the end of paper to help paper be stacked well at the end fence unit. The Paddle home sensor (S8) checks the home position to drive the paddles. And the paddle motor(M1) drives the paddle and paddle presser.

Figure 5-35 Paddle unit overview

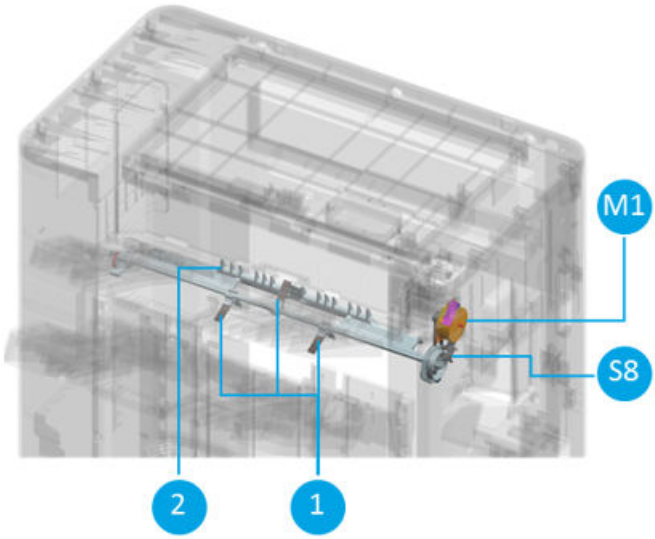


Figure 5-36 Paddle unit detail view - front

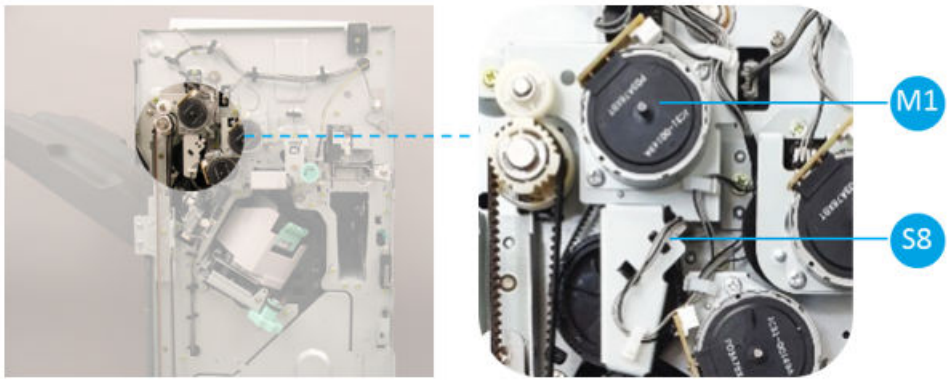


Figure 5-37 Paddle unit detail view - left

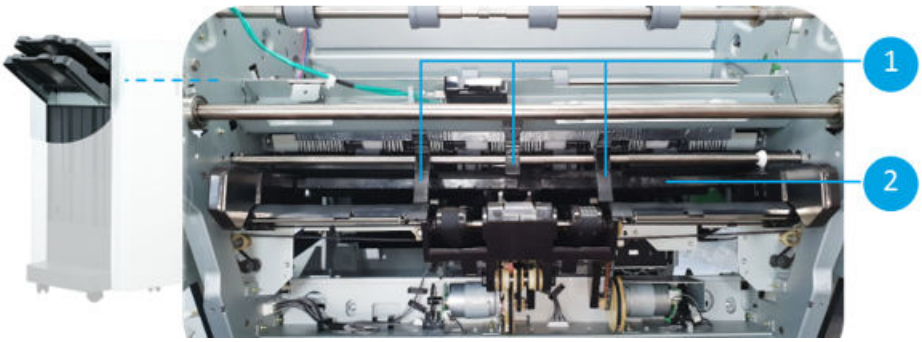


Table 5-26 Paddle unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Paddle	JC90-01480A			Moves paper into the end fence unit
2	Paddle presser	JC61-07206A			Presses the end of bent paper helps paper to be loaded well at the end fence unit
S8	Paddle home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2060	Detect the home position of the paddle
M1	Paddle motor	JC93-01001A	(*)	113-2600	Rotates the paddle, and moves the paddle presser up and downward at the same time

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Paddle unit operation

1. A paper falls downward by exit unit.
2. The paddles rotate to make a paper moves into the end fence unit. (callout 1)

3. The paddle presser presses the end of a paper so as not to be scattered. (callout 2).

End fence unit

Learn about the End fence unit of the Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

The paddle unit moves paper to the end fence unit. The end fence unit sets the standard position of the paper to be aligned towards top and bottom of the paper.

End fence motor(M3) operates the two end fences and adjust width of them in order to stack paper correctly. The end fence home sensor(S7) detects the home position of the end fence.

Figure 5-38 End fence unit overview

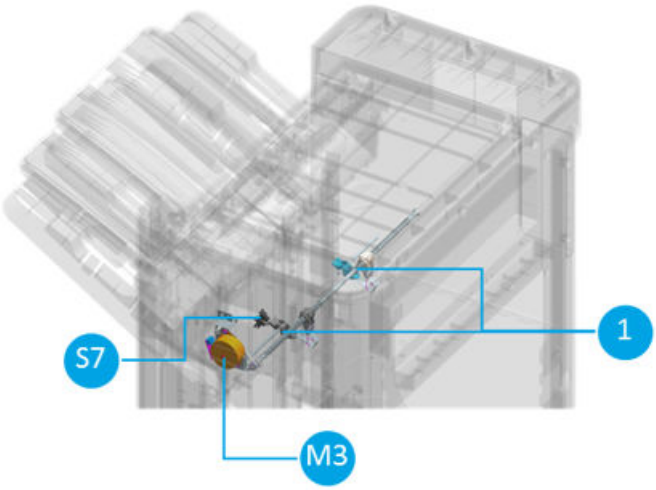


Figure 5-39 End fence unit detail view – front

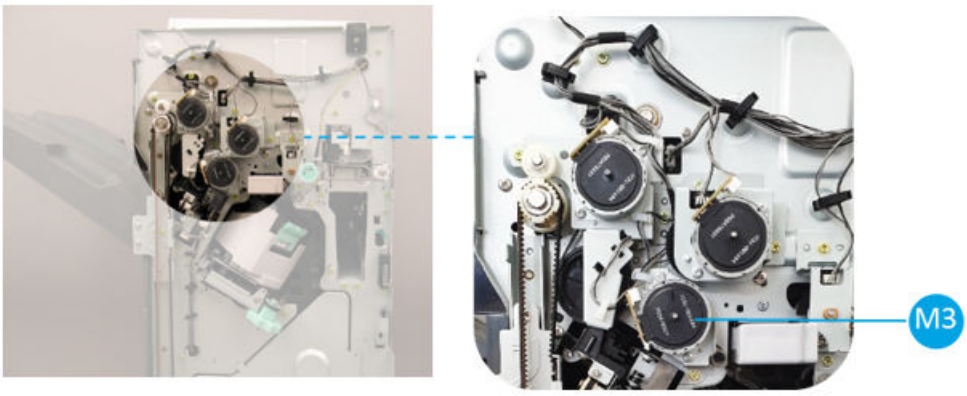


Figure 5-40 End fence unit detail view - left

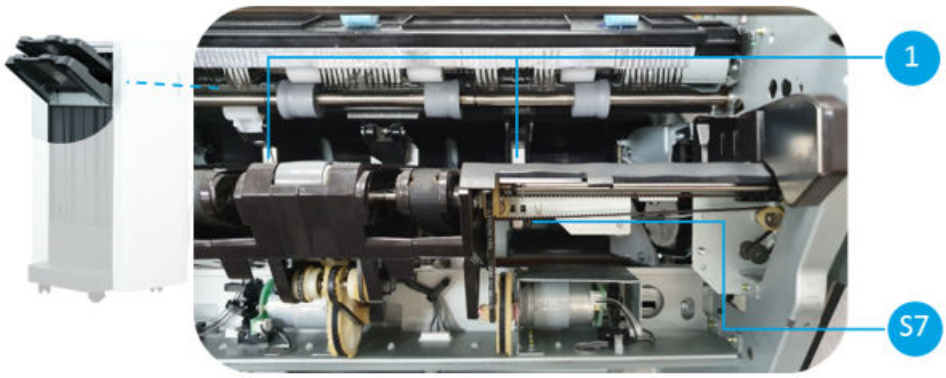


Table 5-27 End fence unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	End fence				Aligns top and bottom side of paper.
S7	End fence home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2050	Detects the home position of the end fence

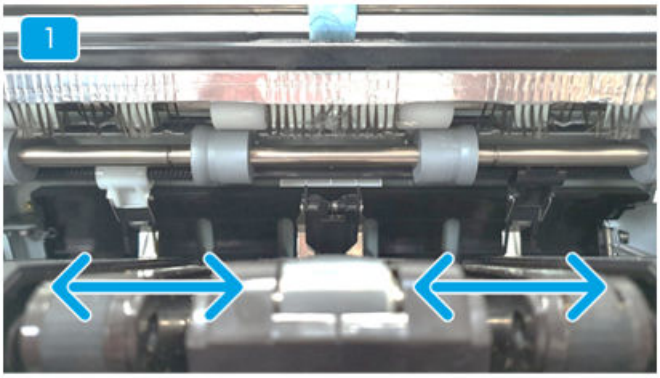
Table 5-27 End fence unit parts information (continued)

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
M3	End fence motor	JC93-01001A	(*)	113-2590	Moves front and rear end fence depending on paper size(width) so that paper arranged well at the end fence

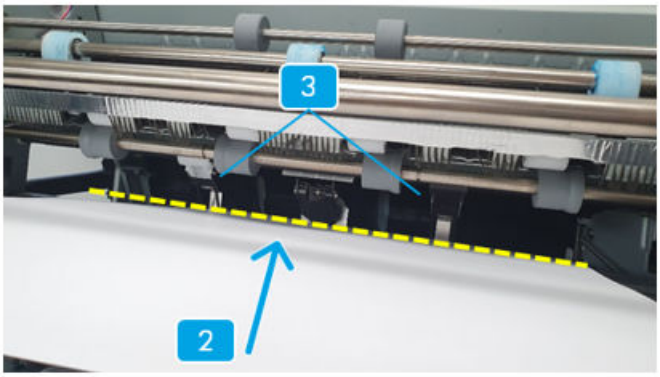
(*) This part is in ordering system.

End fence unit operation

1. The end fence motor(M3) moves the front and rear end fences in the arrow direction (callout 1) depending on paper width.



2. Paper goes into the end fence unit by the paddle unit. (callout 2)



3. At the same time the end fence unit aligns paper to the direction of yellow line. (callout 3)

Tamper unit

Learn about the Tamper unit of the Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

The tamper unit functions to align the left and right sides of a bundle of paper. When a certain amount of paper is collected after printing, the tamper unit hits the left and right ends of the paper to align the paper correctly.

Each tamper has a motor on the back side that delivers driving force to move. The tamper home sensors are mounted on the back side of the unit to check the home position of the tamper unit.

Figure 5-41 Tamper unit overview

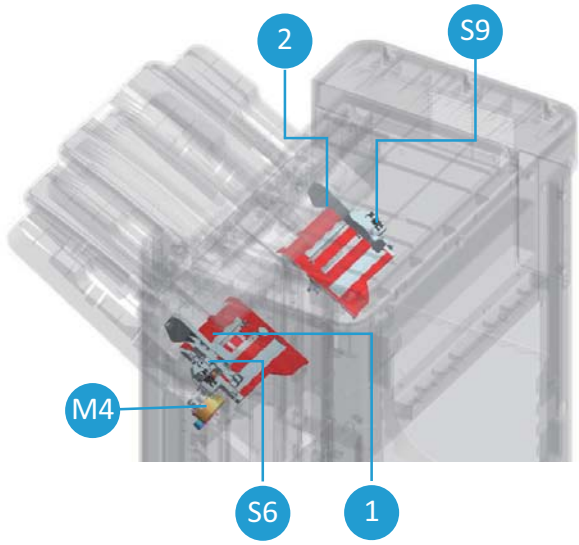


Figure 5-42 Tamper unit detail view - left

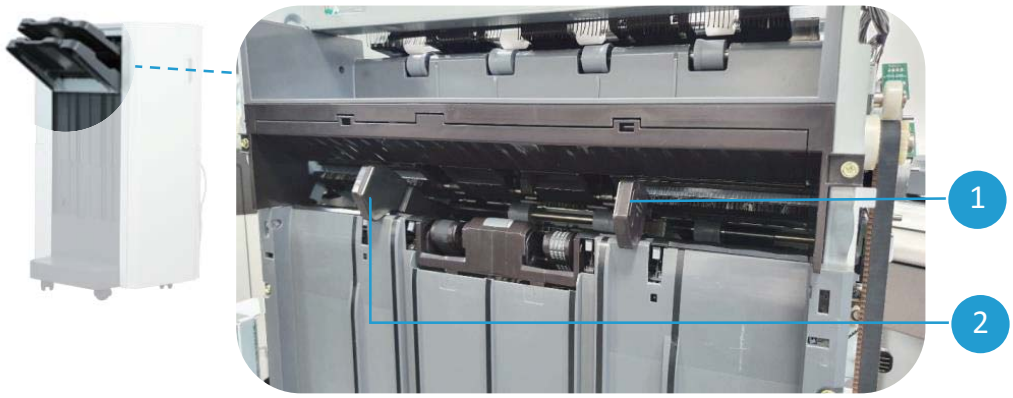


Figure 5-43 Tamper unit detail view - left-right

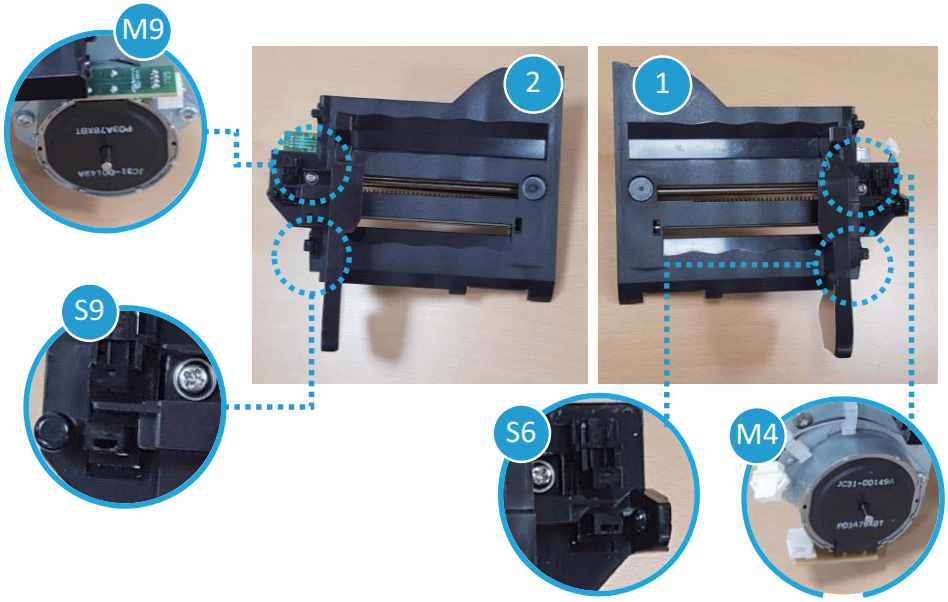


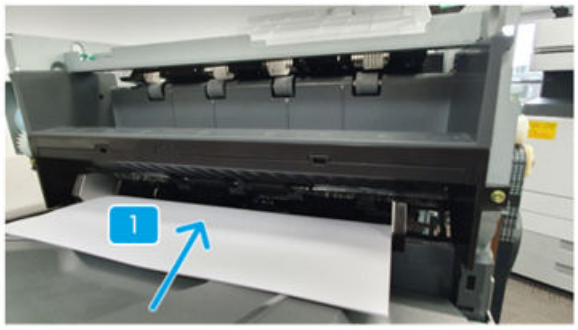
Table 5-28 tamper unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Front tamper	JC82-00901A	(*)		Aligns left and right side of paper.
S6	Front tamper home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2120	Detects the home position of the tamper unit.
M4	Front tamper motor	JC93-01001A	(*)	113-2630	Moves the front tamper unit.
2	Rear tamper	JC82-00898A	(*)		Aligns left and right side of paper.
S9	Rear tamper home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2130	Detects the home position of the tamper unit.
M9	Rear tamper motor	JC93-01001A	(*)	113-2640	Moves the front tamper unit.

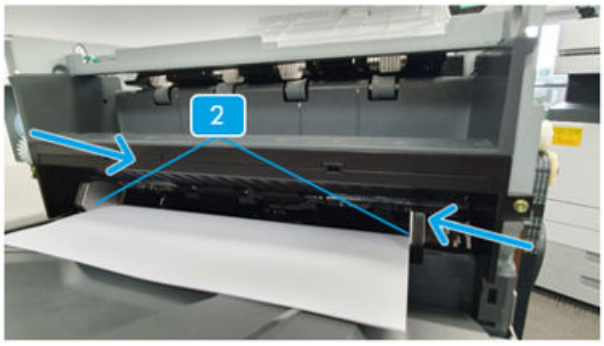
(*) This part is in ordering system.

Tamper unit operation

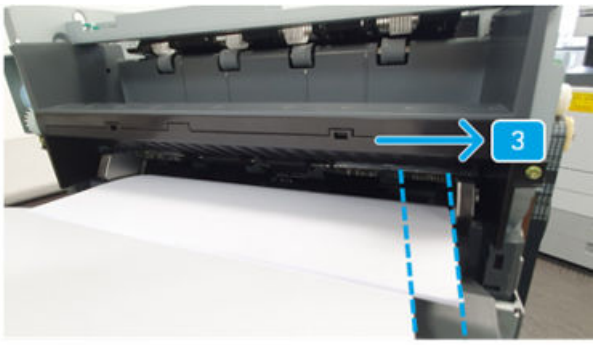
1. A stack of paper is arranged at the end fence unit.



2. The left and right tampers arrange them.



3. In case of offset printing, the tamper unit arranges the next bundle to be shifted. (callout 3)



Stapler unit

Learn about the Stapler unit of the Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Stapler unitis a device installed inside the finisher that staples a bundle of aligned documents. Documents are collected as a bundle by the tamper unit and the end fence unit for stapling, then stapler assembly staples the bundle. There are 6 options to make a bundle.

Figure 5-44 Stapling options

The stapler unit moves using the stapler motor(M8) installed inside. The one home sensor (rear sensor, S30) and two position sensors (mid-front,S24 and mid-rear sensor,S25) are mounted so that the stapler can be positioned in the exact stapling position whether it is stapled on the left, the right, or at the center of the document. Stapling is done by the motor inside the stapler assembly.

In addition, manual staple feature is available on the front-upper side of the finisher. The manual staple sensor(S19) detects whether a stack of paper comes into the manual staple location or not. The front sensor (stapler front sensor, S21) makes the stapler moves at the manual staple location.

Figure 5-45 Stapler unit overview

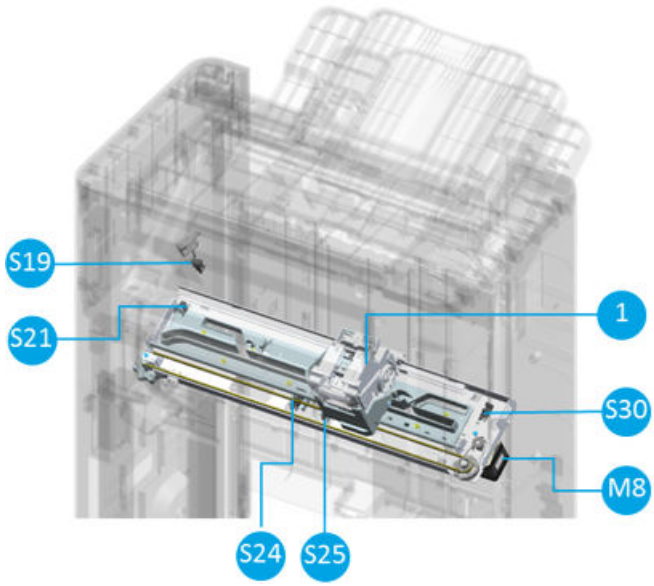


Figure 5-46 Stapler unit detail view - front

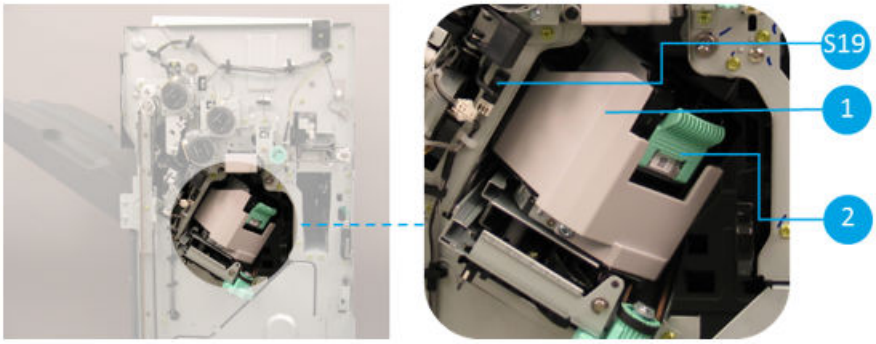


Figure 5-47 Stapler unit detail view

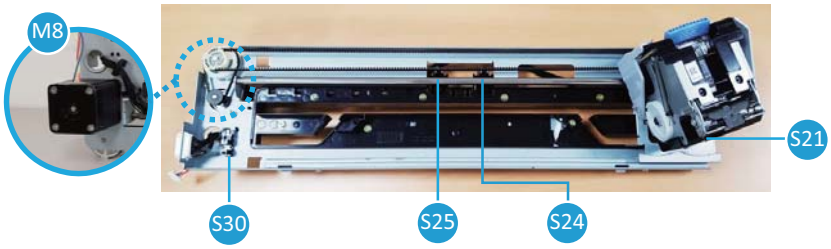


Table 5-29 Stapler unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Stapler unit	JC82-00894A	(*)		Staples a bundle of paper
2	Staple cartridge	JC81-09882B	(*)	113-2115 113-2116	Staple cartridge
S21	Stapler front sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2113	Detect the stapler at the manual stapling position
S24	Stapler mid-front sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2112	Detect the stapler location

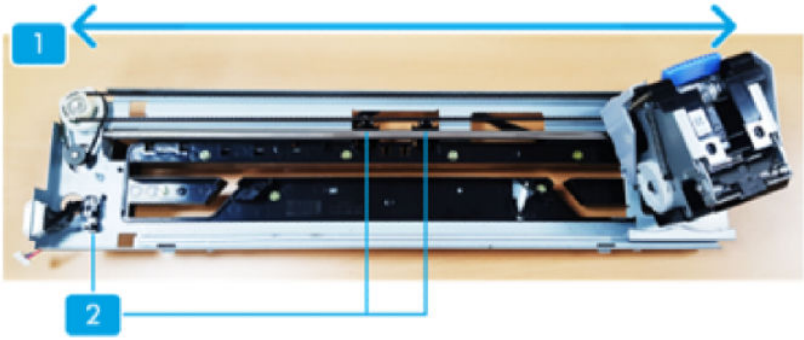
Table 5-29 Stapler unit parts information (continued)

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
S25	Stapler mid-rear sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2111	Detect the stapler location
S30	Stapler rear sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2110	Detect the home position of the stapler
S19	Manual staple sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-2160	Detect paper when manual stapling
M8	Stapler position motor	JC31-00163A	(*)	113-2620	Moves the stapler

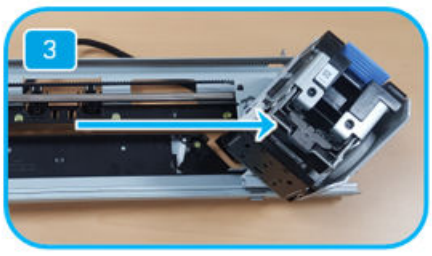
(*) This part is in ordering system.

Stapler unit operation

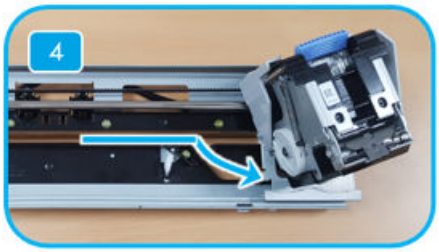
1. The stapler position motor drives the stapler assembly to direction 1.



2. The stapler assembly moves through the rail using three stapler position sensors (callout2) and staples a stack of paper.
3. In case of staple cartridge replacement, the stapler moves to direction 3.



4. For manual stapling, the stapler moves in direction 4.



Ejector unit

Learn about the ejector unit of the Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

The ejector unit ejects a bundle of paper out to the main output tray. The ejector unit consists of ejector1 and ejector2.

The ejector1 moves a stapled paper loaded at the end fence unit to the ejector2 unit. During this process, the ejector1 motor transmits the driving force to the ejector1 unit. And ejector1 motor sensor checks the ejector1 motor operation. And the ejector1 home sensor detects the home position of the ejector1. The ejector1 end sensor detects the end position of the ejector1.

When the paper arrives at the ejector2 unit, the ejector2 grabs a stack of paper and ejects it onto the main output tray. The ejector2 motor is responsible for this process, and the ejector2 motor sensor helps it to be controlled correctly. In addition, the ejector2 home sensor checks the location of the ejector2.

Figure 5-48 Ejector unit overview

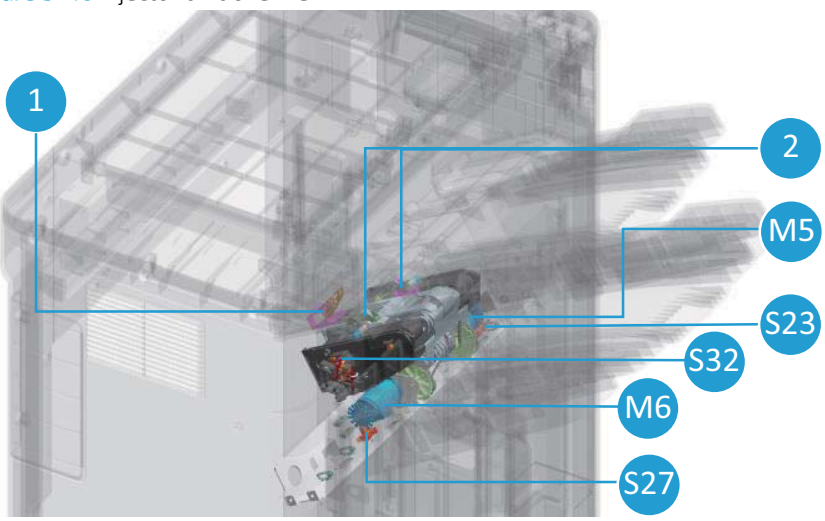


Figure 5-49 Ejector unit detail view - left

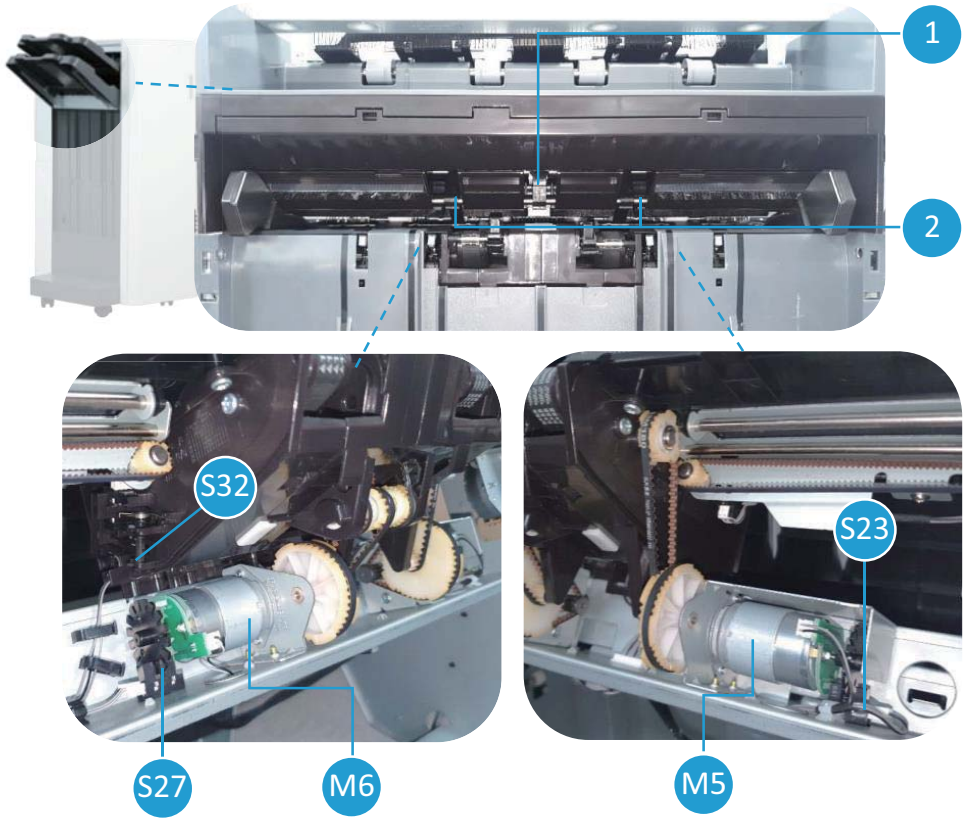


Table 5-30 Ejector unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
	Ejector unit	JC90-01409A	(*)		
S14	Ejector sensor	JC32-00020A	(*)	113-2170	Detects whether paper is on the ejector or not.
1	Ejector1				Moves the stack of paper from the end fence to the ejector2
S29	Ejector1 home sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-2031	Detects the home position of the ejector1
S28	Ejector1 end sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-2030	Detects the end position of the ejector1
S27	Ejector1 motor sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-2032	Detects whether the Ejector1 motor rotates
M6	Ejector1 motor	JC93-01168A		113-2530	Moves the ejector1 forward and backward
2	Ejector2				Moves paper from the ejector1 to the main output tray
S32	Ejector2 home sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-2040	Detects the home position of the ejector2
S23	Ejector2 motor sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-2041	Detects the ejector2 motor rotation

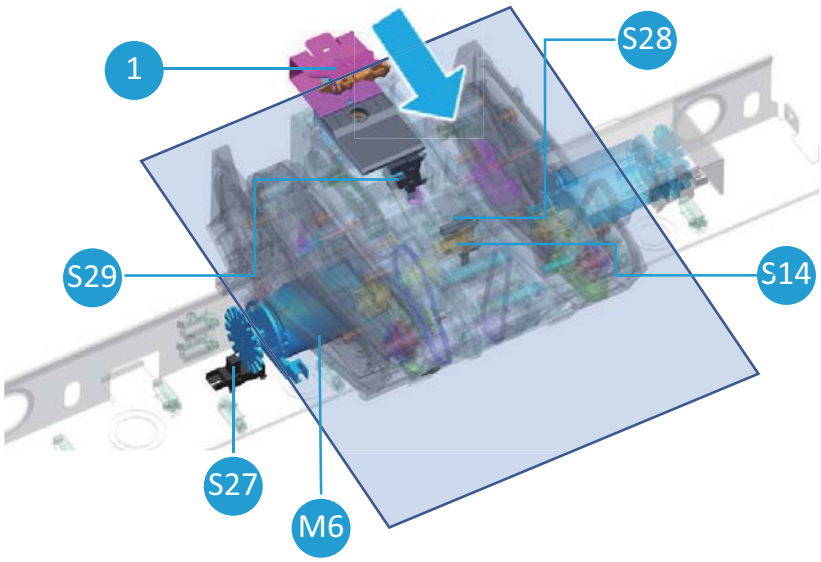
Table 5-30 Ejector unit parts information (continued)

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
M5	Ejector2 motor	JC93-01168A		113-2540	Moves the ejector2 and grabs paper

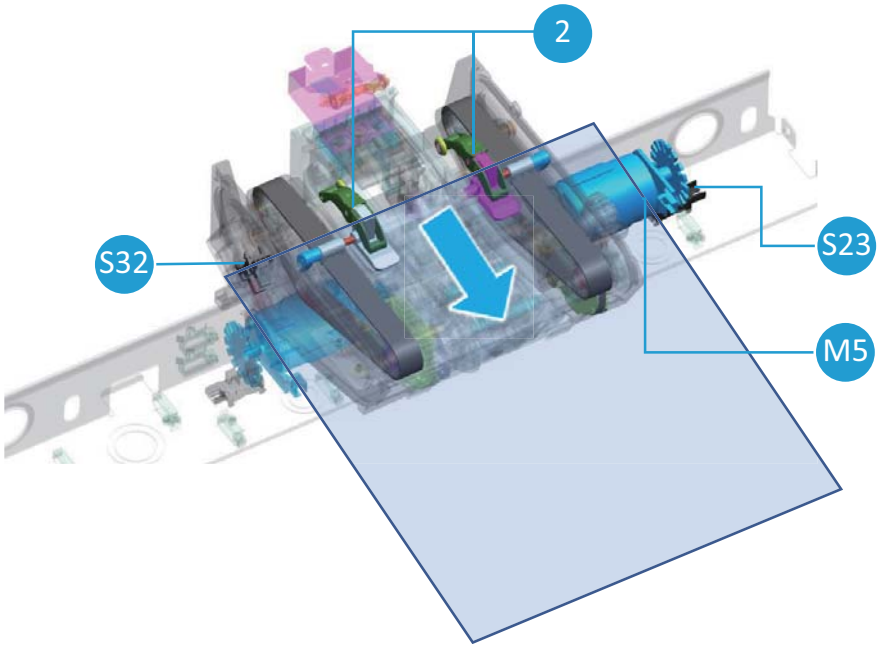
(*) This part is in ordering system.

Ejector unit operation

1. The ejector1(callout1) pushes aligned paper at the end fence unit to ejector2 unit(callout2).



2. The ejector2(callout2) picks up paper, then moves forward to the main output tray direction.



Main output tray unit

Learn about the Main output tray unit of the Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Printouts are stacked on the main output tray (C7). The main output tray moves up and down along the rails inside the finisher, and the main output tray motor (M11) controls those movements according to the signals of the front & rear paper holding sensor. Main output tray motor sensor (S33) checks whether the main output tray motor rotates properly.

When main output tray hits the lower limit sensor of the main output tray (S26), the machine detects that paper tray is full. The main output tray top of stack sensor(S20) detects that the main output tray is on the top.

Figure 5-50 Main output tray unit overview

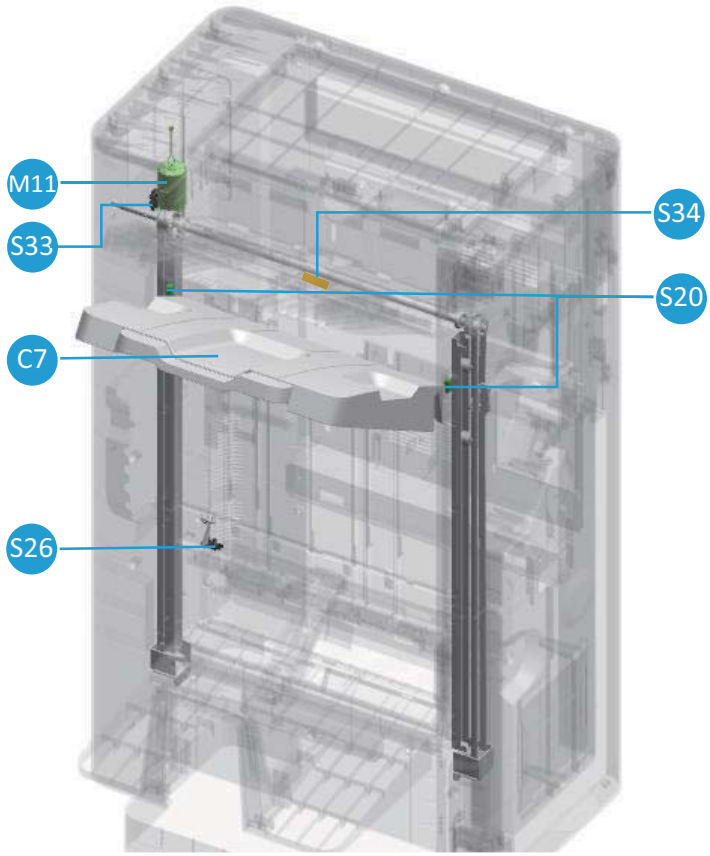


Figure 5-51 Main output tray unit detail view - left

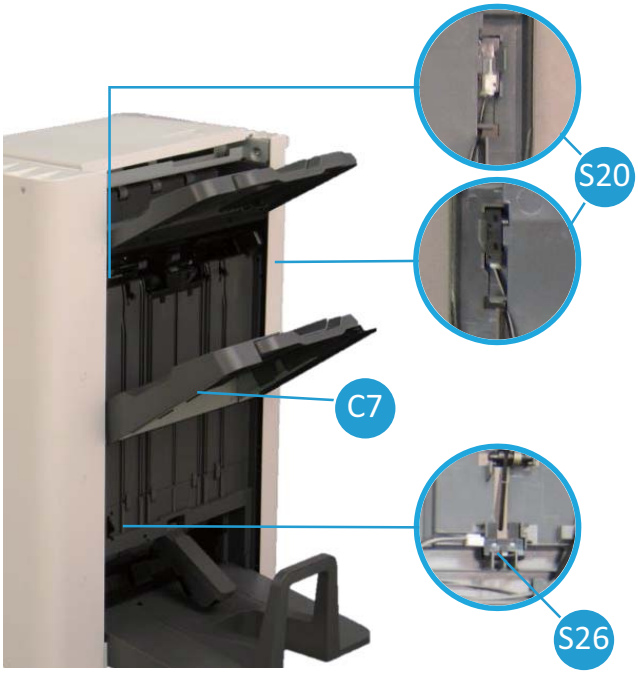


Figure 5-52 Main output tray unit detail view - rear

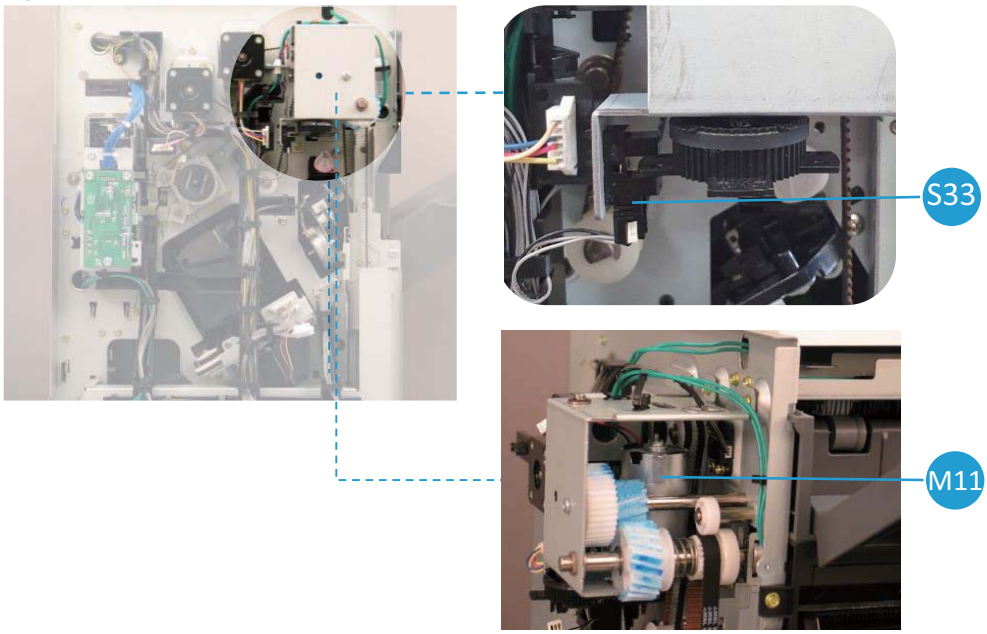


Table 5-31 Main output tray unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
C7	Main output tray	JC63-05002B			Stacking plate for ejected paper
S20	Main output tray top of stack sensor (receiver, led)	JC82-01039A	(*)	113-2140	Checks the upper limit of main output tray
S6	Main output tray lower limit sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-2144	Detects the lowest position of the output tray

Table 5-31 Main output tray unit parts information (continued)

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
S33	Main output tray motor sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2143	Detects whether the main output tray motor rotates
M11	Main output tray motor	JC31-00178B	(*)	113-2610	Moves the main output tray up and down
		JC90-01415B	(*)		
S34	Main output tray top of stack switch	JC39-02316A		113-2190	Checks the upper limit of main output tray so that detects abnormal movement of output tray

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Paper holding unit

Learn about the Paper holding unit of the Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

The paper holding unit holds printouts on the main output tray. It has a sensor that detects the height of stacked paper so that the output tray moves up and down to stack paper in a stable manner.

The paper holding motor(M7) lifts the paper holding actuator when printouts come out to the main output tray. The paper holding home sensor(S22) detects the location of paper holding actuator at the home position. The front & rear paper holding sensor (S17, S31) checks the volume of printouts on the main output tray and makes the main output tray move downward

Figure 5-53 Paper holding unit overview

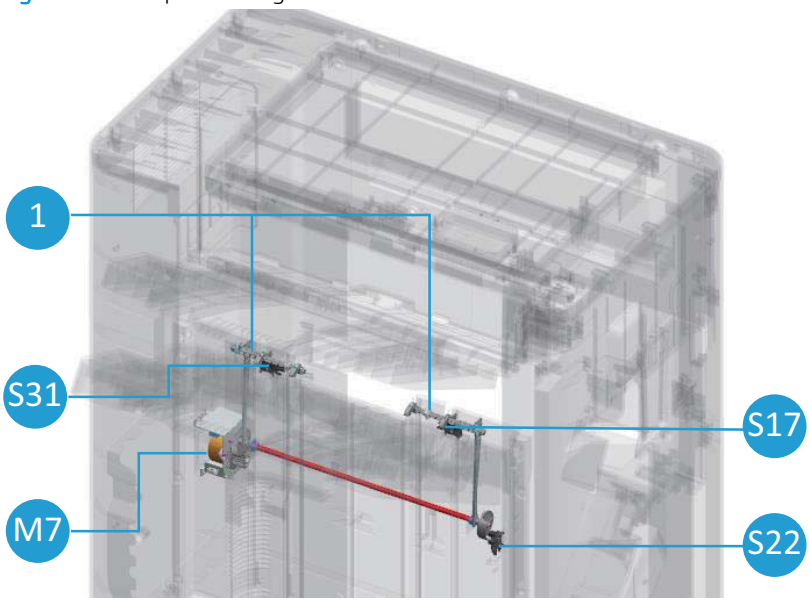


Figure 5-54 Paper holding unit detail view - left

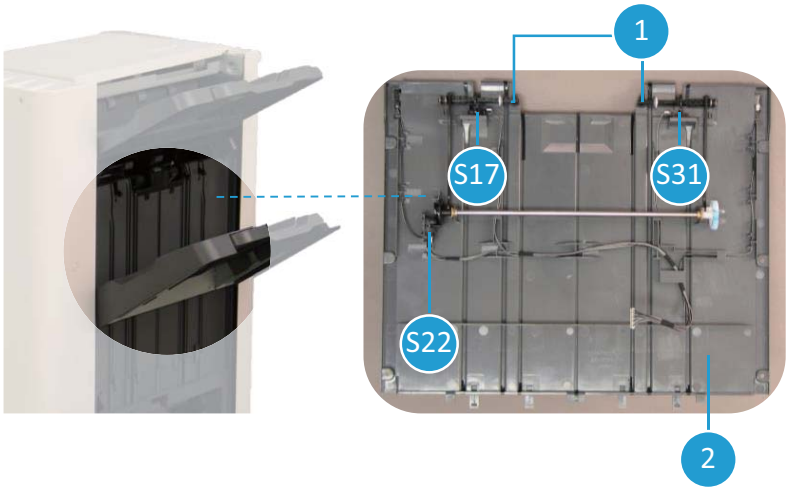


Figure 5-55 Paper holding unit detail view - left

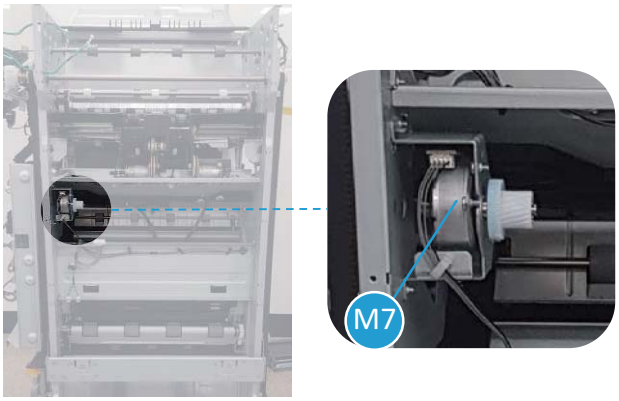


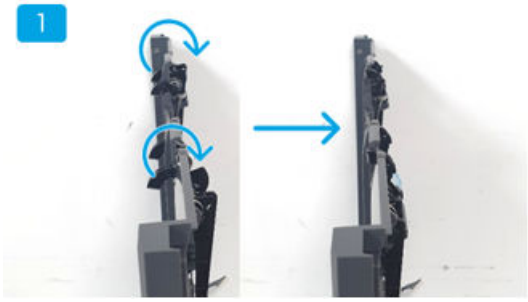
Table 5-32 paper holding unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Paper holding actuator				Control the height of the main output tray and hold printouts so as not to be scattered
S17	Front paper holding sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2141	Detects stacked paper position
S31	Rear paper holding sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2142	Detects stacked paper position
S22	Paper holding home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2010	Detects the home position of paper holding actuator
M7	Paper holding motor	JC90-01414A	(*)	113-2510	Lift paper holding actuator up when printouts delivered to the main output tray
2	Left upper cover	JC90-01475B			

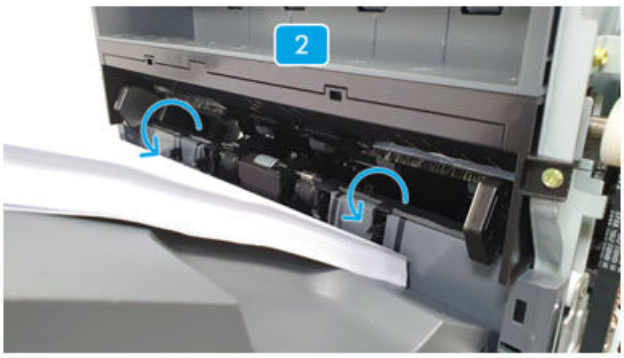
(*) This part is in ordering system.

paper holding unit operation

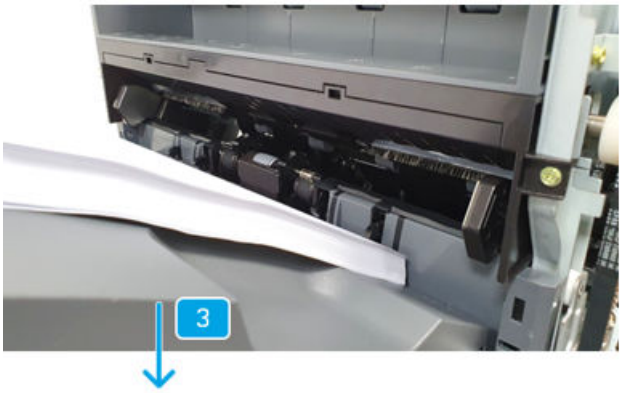
1. When printouts are delivered to the main output tray, a paper holding motor moves paper holding actuator upward to create a paper path to prevent jam (callout1).



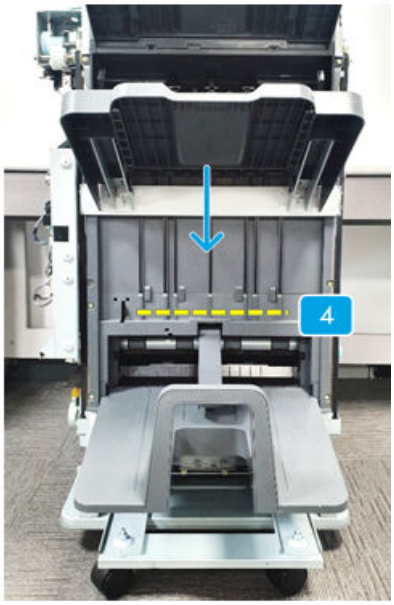
2. When printouts are stacked on top of the main output tray, the paper holding actuator goes down to hold them(callout2).



3. As paper stacks up on the main output tray, the paper holding actuator is lifted by papers. The front & rear paper holding sensors make the main output tray moves downward to store more printouts. (callout3)



4. As printouts are stacked on the main output tray, the tray goes down. When it reaches at the end of its moving range (callout 4), the main output tray touches the lower limit sensor. The sensor detects that the main output tray is full of printouts.



Buffer unit

Learn about the diverter unit of the Stapler/stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

The buffer unit keeps paper inside the unit or moves them to the booklet maker.

The buffer diverter creates a paper path so that paper can move to the buffer unit, and the buffer sensor detects whether paper moved out from the buffer unit. The buffer motor controls buffer roller, and buffer home sensors checks the location of buffer rollers. The buffer solenoid holds papers so that they do not fall into the booklet maker while buffering.

NOTE: buffering: It is to maintain print speed when users print multiple copies continuously.

The 1st page of a print job stays in the buffer unit for a moment while the previous job is being ejected. After the previous print job was ejected, the 1st and 2nd page of the job move to the ejector unit together.

Figure 5-56 Buffer unit overview

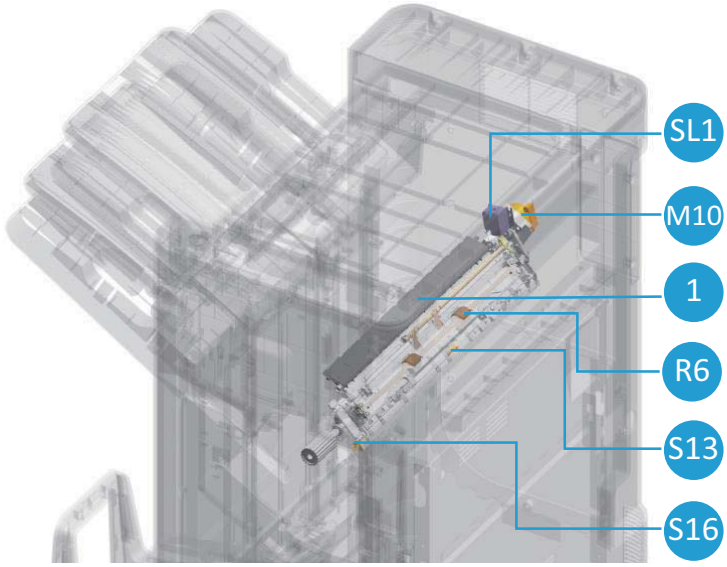


Figure 5-57 Buffer unit detail view - front

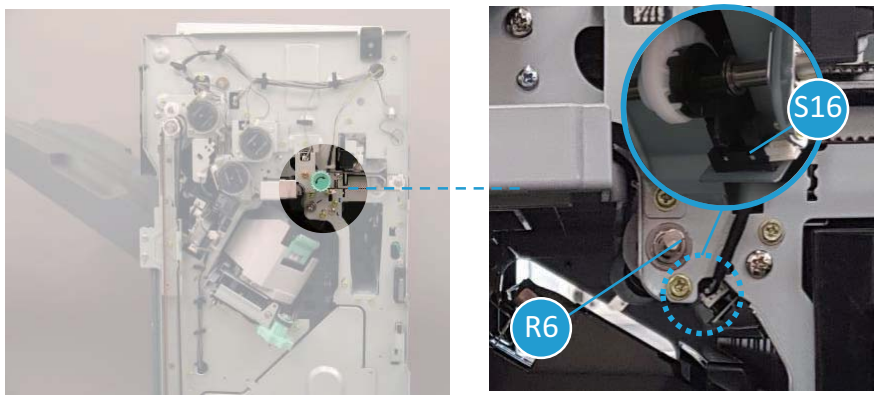


Figure 5-58 Buffer unit detail view - rear

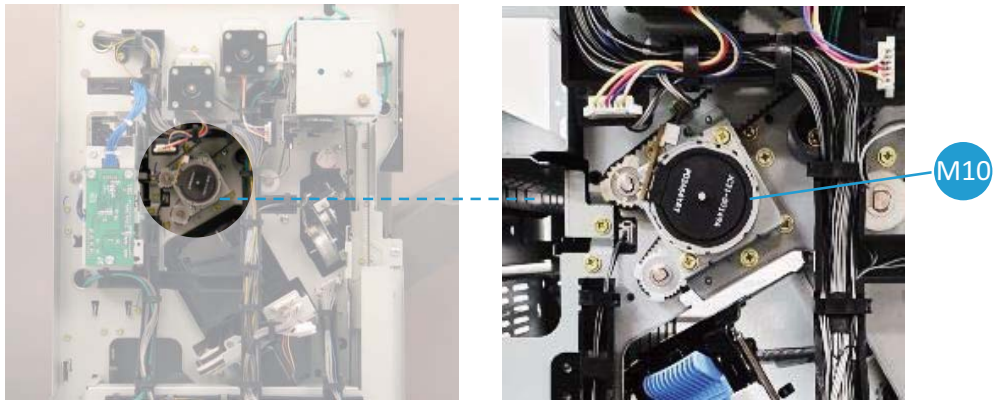


Figure 5-59 Buffer unitdetail view - top

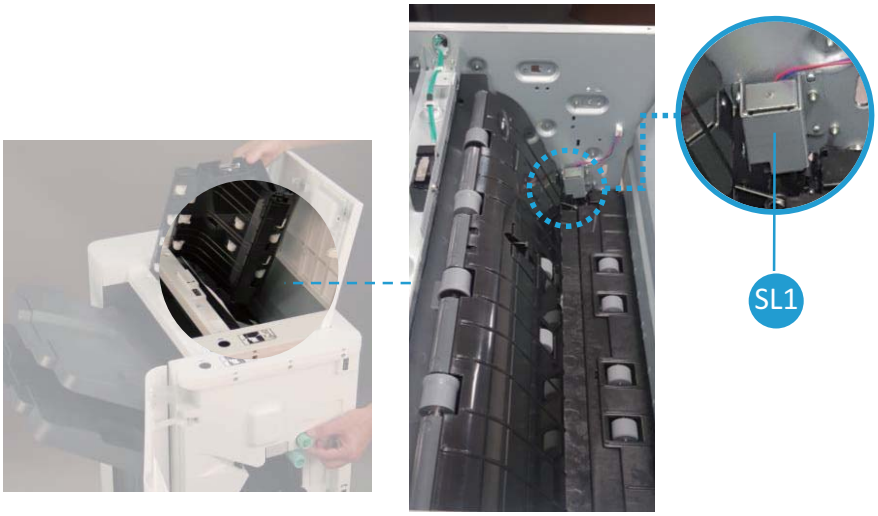


Table 5-33 Buffer unit parts information

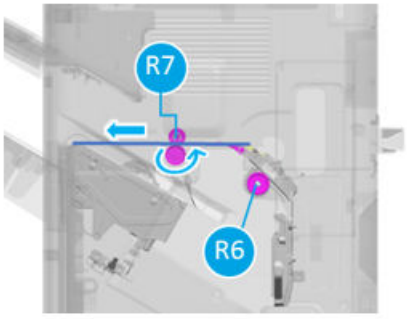
Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Buffer diverter	JC61-07204A			Makes the way to the buffer space
S13	Buffer sensor	JC32-00020A	(*)	113-2100	Detects whether paper has moved out from the buffer unit
S16	Buffer home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2210	Detects the home position of the buffer roller.
M10	Buffer motor	JC93-01152A	(*)	113-2660	Moves paper to the buffer space or the booklet maker
SL1	Buffer solenoid	JC33-00038A	(*)	113-2670	Holds paper to prevent them from falling out to the booklet maker during buffering
R6	Buffer roller	JC66-05161A			Moves paper to the booklet maker or makes the gap so that paper stays in this space.

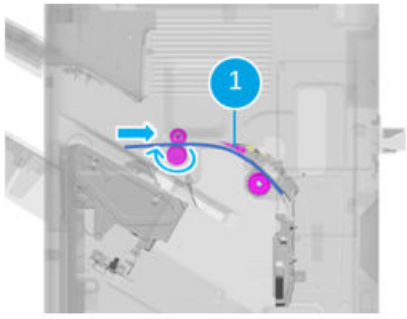
(*) This part is in ordering system.

Buffer unit operation

1. When the buffer motor rotates backward to move the cam, the buffer roller(R6) can have gap and then paper can stay inside the buffer unit

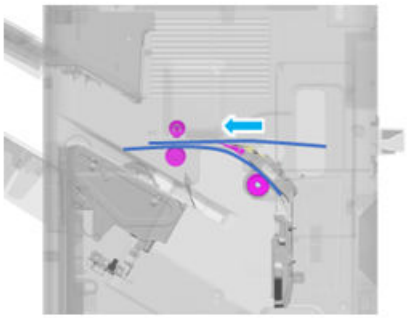
    1. When the exit motor rotates backward to drive the main exit roller(R7), paper moves to the buffer unit through the buffer diverter(callout1).

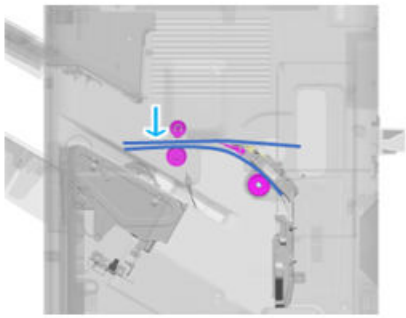




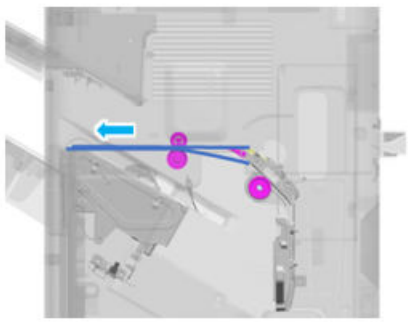
2. The main exit cam motor moves the main exit cam so that the main exit roller(R7) is separated with the idle roller to have a gap, and then paper can stay in this place for a while.

3. When the next sheet comes to the main exit unit, the main exit motor turns the man exit cam so that the main exit roller is attached to the idle roller.





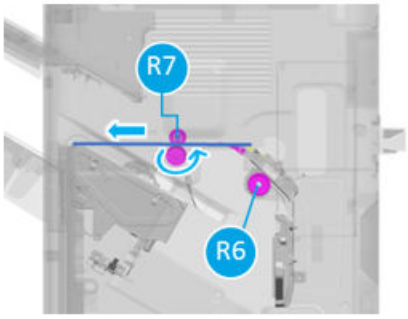
4. he exit motor rotates forward and operates the main exit roller. It makes 2 paper moves to the ejector together.



2. In case of booklet job, the buffer unit moves paper to the booklet maker.

    1. The buffer motor rotates, the buffer roller(R6) is attached to the idle roller.

    2. When paper arrives at the main exit unit, the exit motor rotates backward and moves the main exit roller(R7) so that paper moves to the buffer unit through the buffer diverter.



    3. The buffer motor rotates the buffer roller to move paper to the booklet maker.

Booklet entrance unit

Learn about the Booklet entrance unit of the booklet finisher.

The booklet entrance unit receives paper into the booklet maker. The entrance sensor(S36) detects whether the paper enters the entrance unit. The entrance motor(M15) drives the booklet entrance roller(R10) to move the paper.

Figure 5-60 Booklet entrance unit overview

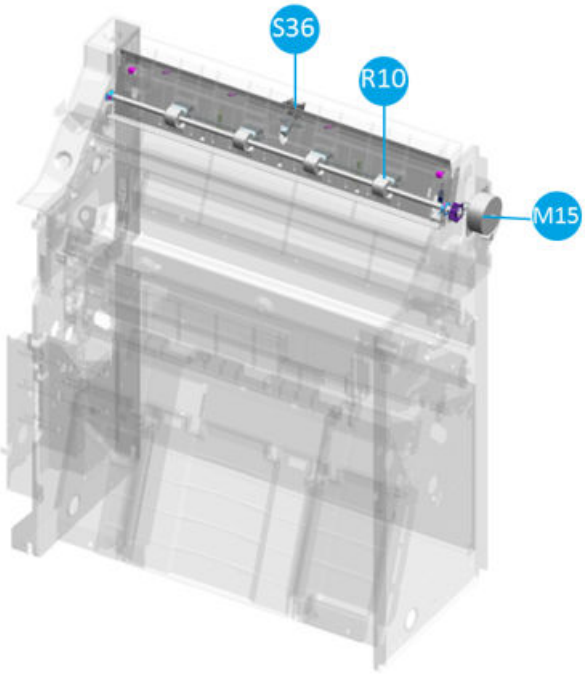


Figure 5-61 Booklet entrance unit detail view

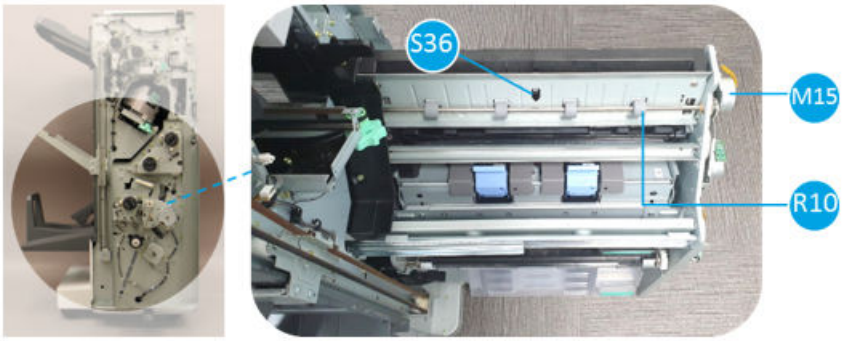


Table 5-34 Entrance unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
S36	Booklet entrance sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-3100	Detects whether paper has come into the booklet entrance unit
M15	Booklet entrance motor	JC93-01152A	(*)	113-3500	Drives the booklet entrance roller
R10	Booklet entrance roller	JC66-04717A			Moves paper into the booklet maker

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet paddle unit

Learn about the Booklet paddle unit of the booklet finisher.

The booklet paddle unit pushes paper to the booklet end fence by rotating the rubber paddles. The booklet paddle motor (M19) rotates two booklet paddles, and the booklet paddle home sensor(S41) connected to the lower booklet paddle checks the home position of the booklet paddle.

Figure 5-62 Booklet paddle unit overview

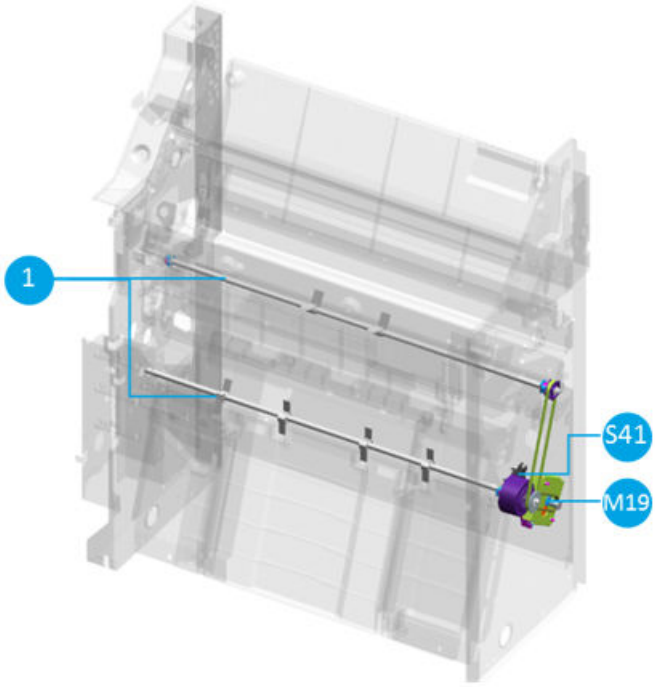


Figure 5-63 Booklet paddle unit detail view

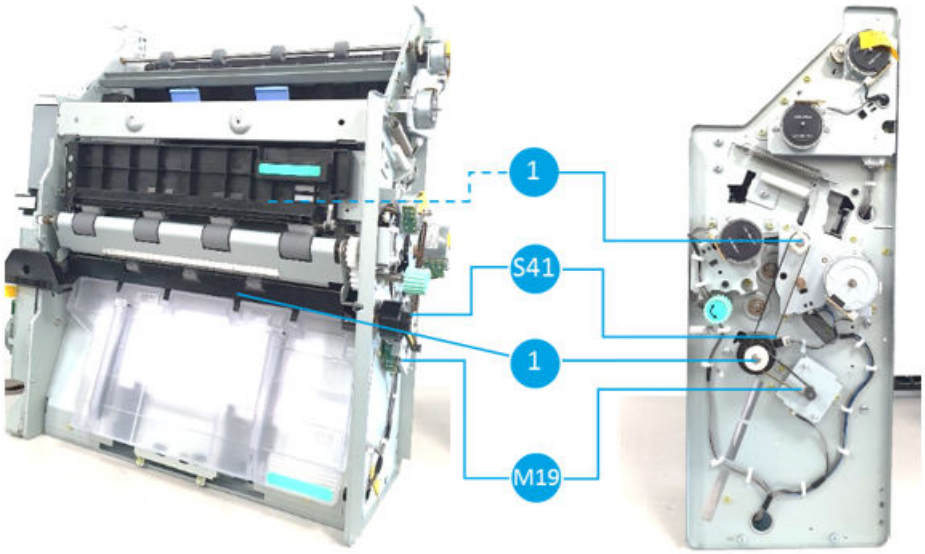


Table 5-35 booklet paddle unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Upper booklet paddle	JC66-04718A			Moves paper to the booklet end fence unit
1	Lower booklet paddle	JC90-01429A			Moves paper to the booklet end fence unit
		JC61-07225A	(*)		
		JC66-04719A	(*)		

Table 5-35 booklet paddle unit parts information (continued)

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
S41	Booklet paddle home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-2590	Check the home position of the booklet paddle
M19	Booklet paddle motor	JC93-01001A	(*)	113-3580	Drives two booklet paddles

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet end fence unit

Learn about the Booklet end fence unit of the booklet finisher.

The booklet end fence unit supports paper that enters from the booklet paddle unit, then moves paper to the designated position for folding and stapling. The Booklet end fence motor (M20) moves the booklet end fence up and down. The booklet end fence home sensor (S42) checks the home position of the booklet end fence. The booklet end fence solenoid (SL2) drives the clamp to hold paper that comes into the booklet end fence.

Figure 5-64 Booklet end fence unit overview

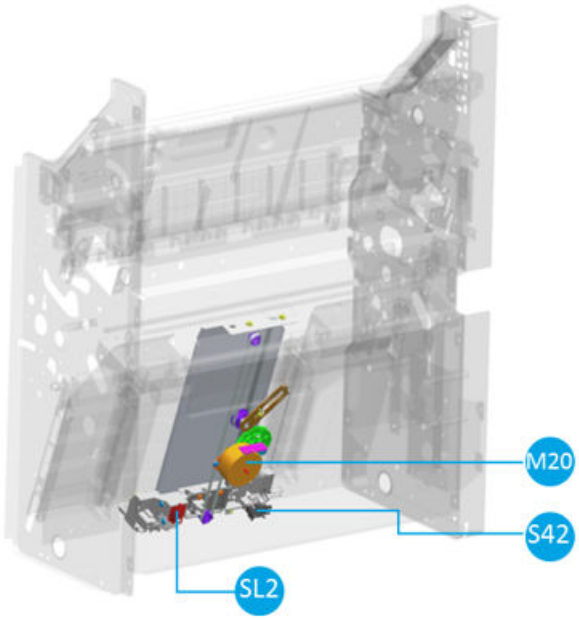


Figure 5-65 Booklet end fence unit detail view - left

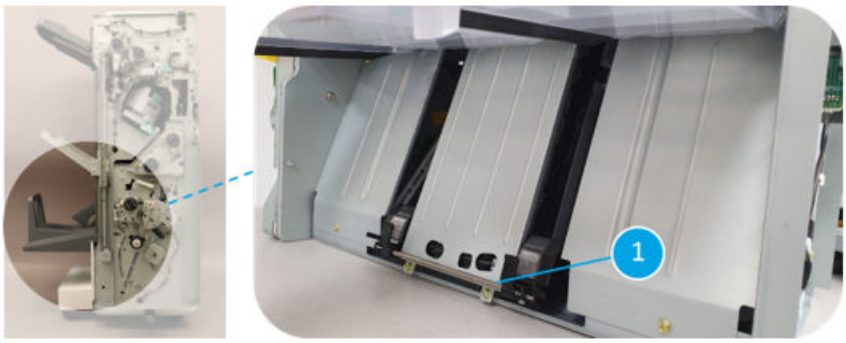


Figure 5-66 Booklet end fence unit detail view - right

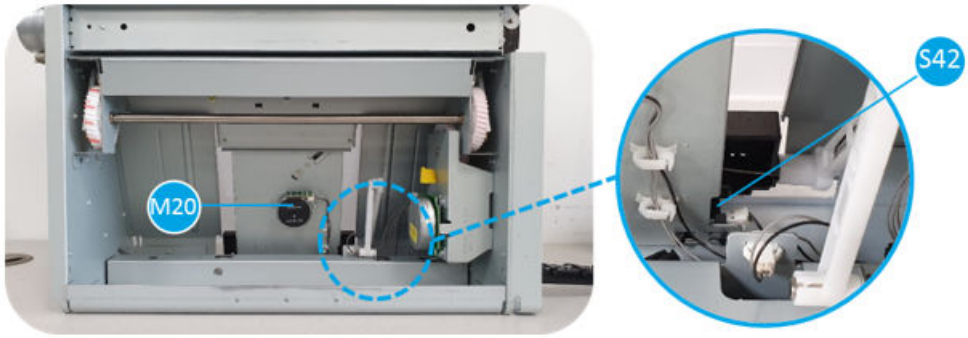


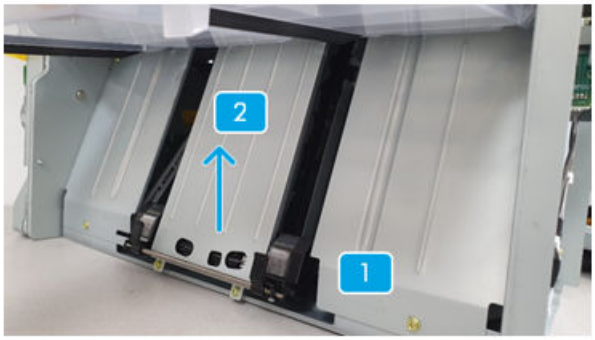
Table 5-36 booklet end fence unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Booklet end fence	JC90-01432A			Supports paper, then moves it to the designated location to fold or staple
S42	Booklet end fence home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-3000	Checks the home position of the booklet end fence
M18	Booklet end fence motor	JC93-01155A	(*)	113-3530	Moves the booklet end fence up and down
Sl2	Booklet end fence solenoid	JC33-00038A	(*)	113-3520	drives the clamp to hold paper that comes into the booklet end fence

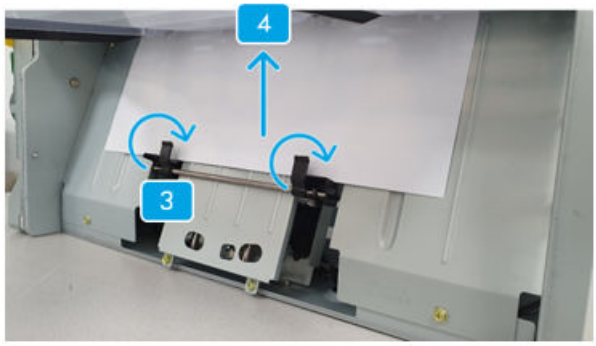
(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet end fence unit operation

1. The booklet end fence is located at the home position (callout1). When the booklet maker starts its job, the end fence goes to the direction 2.



2. The booklet end fence unit supports paper comes from the booklet paddle unit and holds paper so as not to be scattered(callout3). Then it moves to the certain location to fold or staple it (callout 4).



Booklet presser unit

Learn about the Booklet presser unit of the booklet finisher.

The booklet presser unit sort print pages that enter to the booklet maker in order.The Booklet presser motor (M16) moves the booklet presser, and the booklet presser home sensor (S37) checks whether the booklet presser is at the home position.

Figure 5-67 Booklet presser unit overview

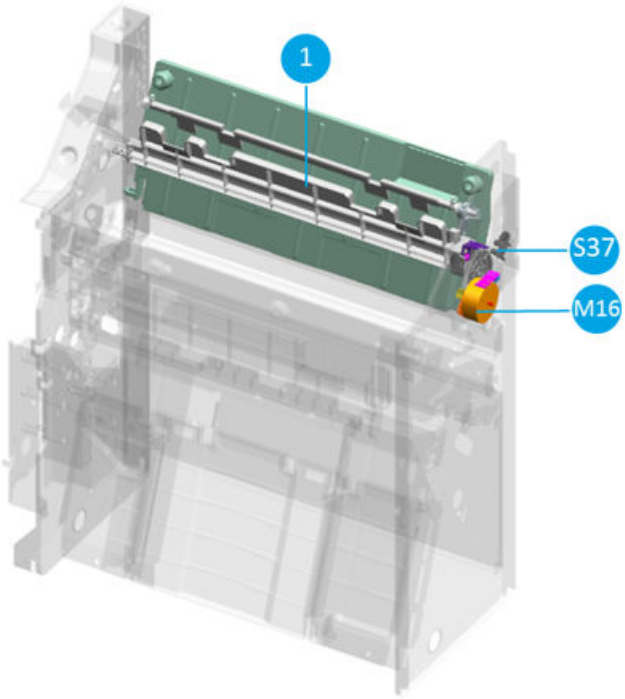


Figure 5-68 Booklet presser unit detail view

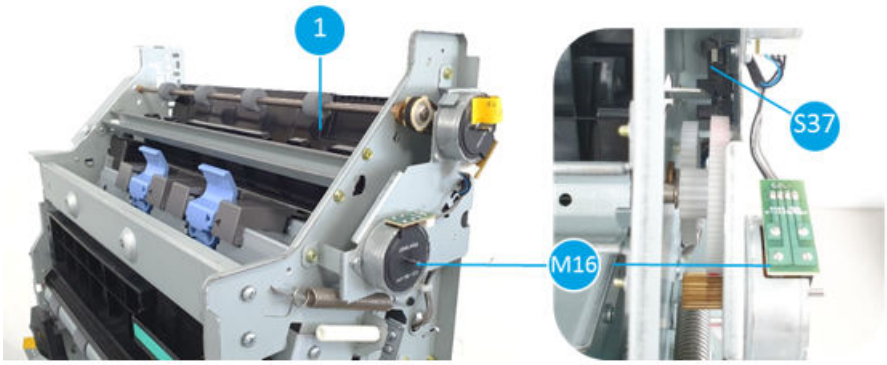


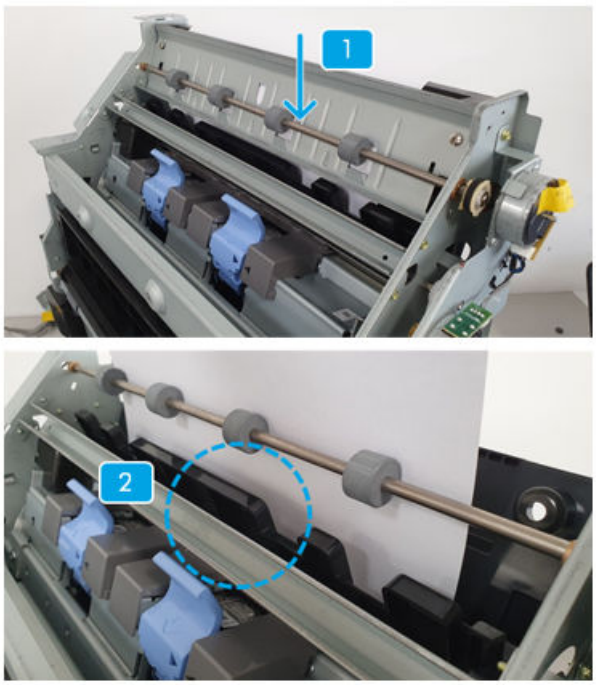
Table 5-37 Booklet presser unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Booklet presser	JC61-07237A			Accumulates paper from the entrance unit not to be shuffled
S37	Booklet presser home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-3130	Checks the home position of the booklet presser
M16	Booklet presser motor	JC93-01155A	(*)	113-3570	Drives the booklet presser

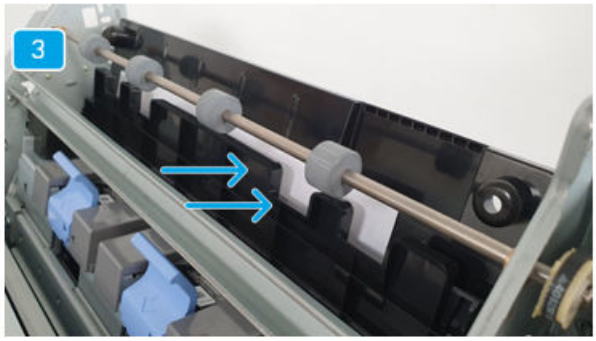
(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet presser unit operation

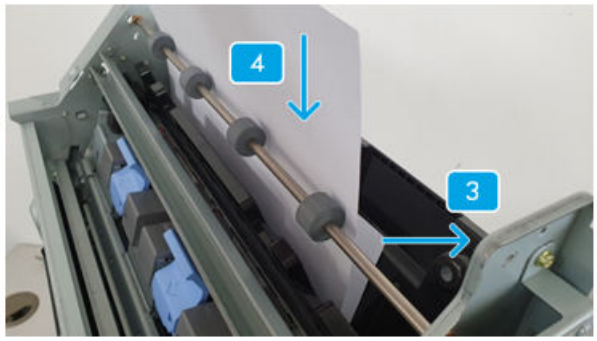
1. Paper comes into the booklet presser unit (callout1). At this time the presser is located on the left side of the finisher (callout 2).



2. After paper exits the entrance roller, the booklet presser hits the end of paper. (callout 3).



3. When a next sheet arrives at the unit, it will fall on the left side of the previous sheet pushed by the booklet presser (callout 4).



Booklet tamper unit

Learn about the Booklet tamper unit of the booklet finisher.

The booklet tamper unit aligns the left and right side of documents for stapling or folding.

The booklet tamper motor(M23) adjusts the booklet tampers' width according to paper size. The booklet tamper home sensor(S38) checks the home position of the booklet tamper.

Figure 5-69 Booklet tamper unit overview

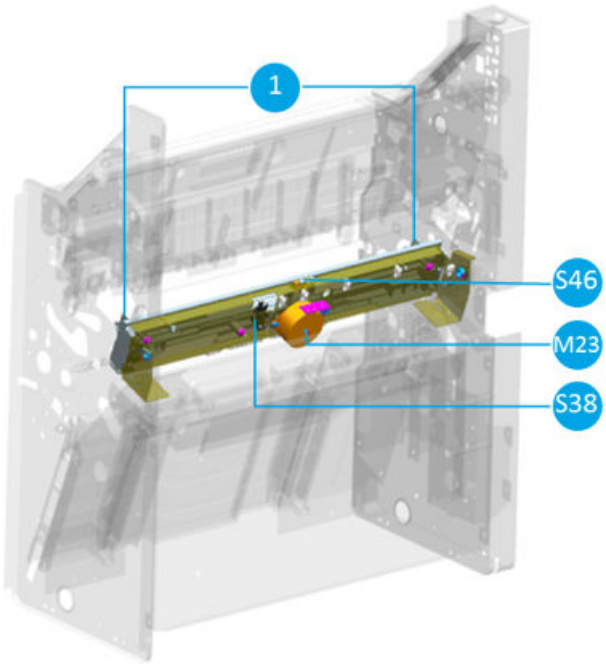


Figure 5-70 Booklet tamper unit detail view

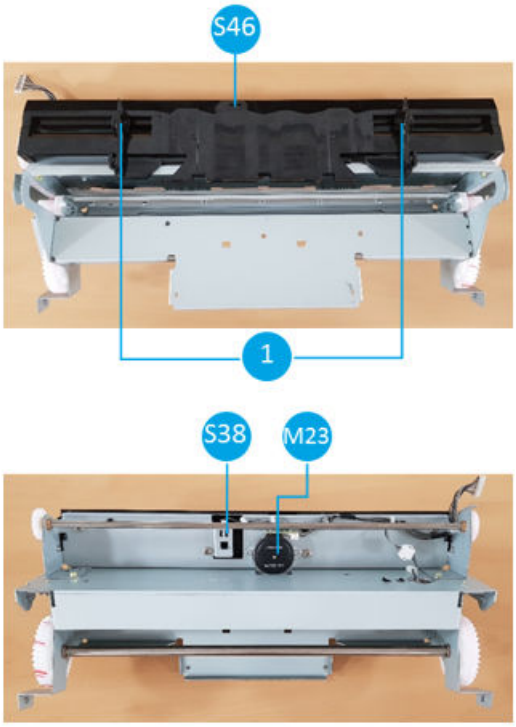


Table 5-38 Booklet tamper unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Booklet tamper	JC90-01431A			Aligns documents for stapling or folding.

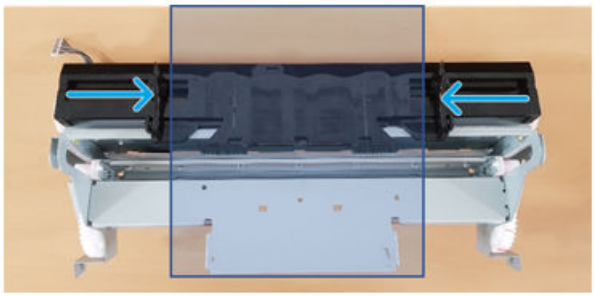
Table 5-38 Booklet tamper unit parts information (continued)

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
S38	Booklet tamper home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-3080	Checks the home position of the booklet tamper
M23	Booklet tamper motor	JC93-01155A	(*)	113-3540	Drives the booklet tamper
S46	Booklet tamper sensor	JC32-00020A	(*)	113-3110	

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet tamper unit operation

▲ When a certain amount of paper is collected, the booklet tamper unit hits the left and right sides of the paper to align the paper correctly.



Booklet stapler unit

Learn about the Booklet stapler unit of the booklet finisher.

Booklet stapler unitis a device installed inside the booklet maker that staples a bundle of aligned documents as a booklet.

There is only 1 option to make a bundle. If the user selects the option, this unit staples at the two location in the middle of stacks.

Figure 5-71 Booklet staple option

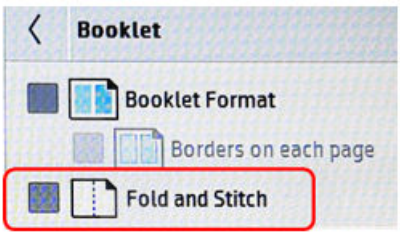


Figure 5-72 Booklet stapler unit overview

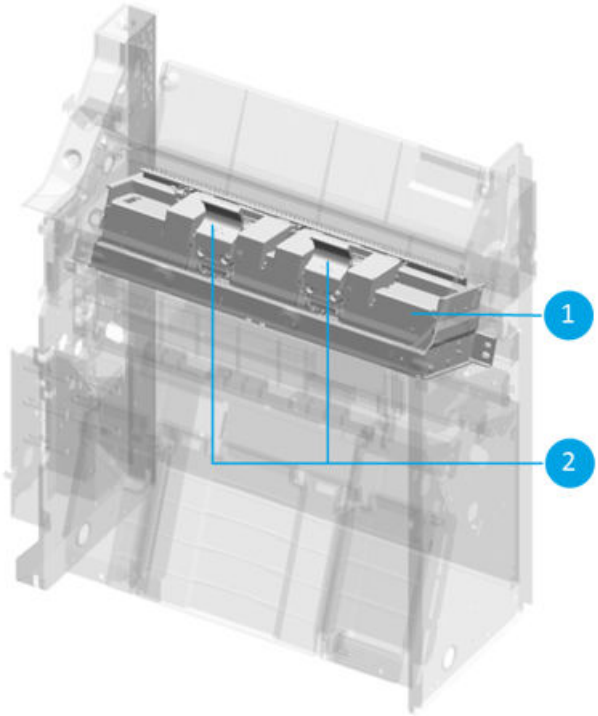


Figure 5-73 Booklet stapler unit detail view

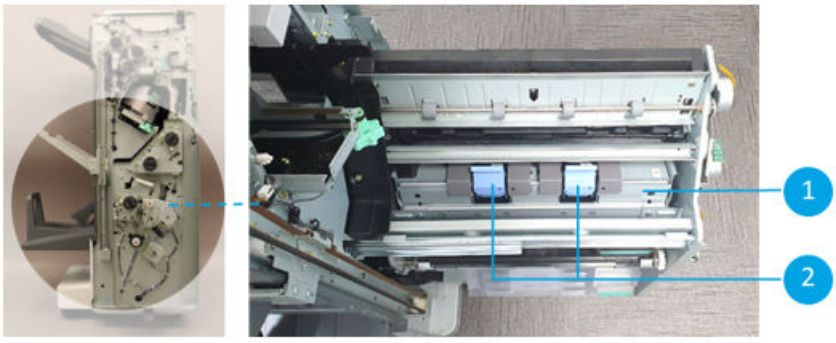


Table 5-39 Booklet stapler unitparts information

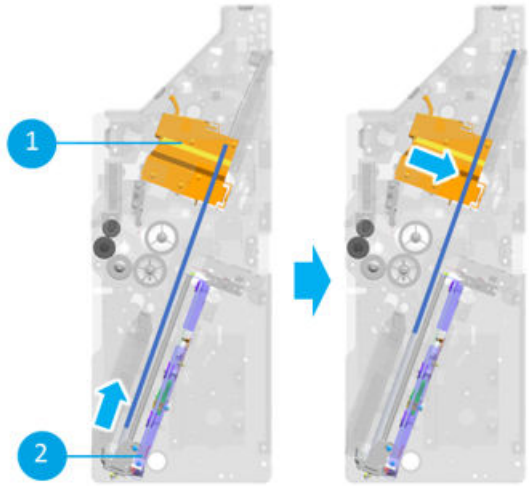
Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Booklet stapler	JC82-00725A			
2	Booklet stapler cartridge	JC81-09881B	(*)	113-3020 113-3030	

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet stapler unit operation

1. When a stack of sheets is collected in booklet end fence unit, the booklet end fence(callout2) changes its location to be stapled.

2. The booklet stapler(callout1) staples at the middle of stacks.

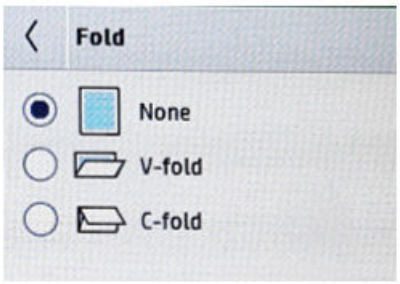


Booklet fold unit

Learn about the Booklet fold unit of the booklet finisher.

The booklet fold unit is a device installed inside the booklet maker that folds a bundle of aligned documents as a This unit consists of 2 types of blades: blade and c-fold blade. So, it creates two types of output.

Figure 5-74 Fold options



The booklet blade motor (M22) drives the booklet blades and lightly folds the stack of paper. The folded paper passes through the booklet fold rollers to be fully folded. The booklet blade home sensor (S45) checks the home position of the booklet blade, and the booklet fold motor (M21) drives the rollers that enable folding.

In case of c-fold, the booklet c-fold blade motor(M17) drives the booklet c-fold blade and lightly folds the stack of paper once more. The folded paper passes through the booklet c-fold roller to be fully folded. The booklet c-fold blade home sensor(S39) checks the home position of the c-fold blade.

Figure 5-75 Booklet fold unit overview – right-rear

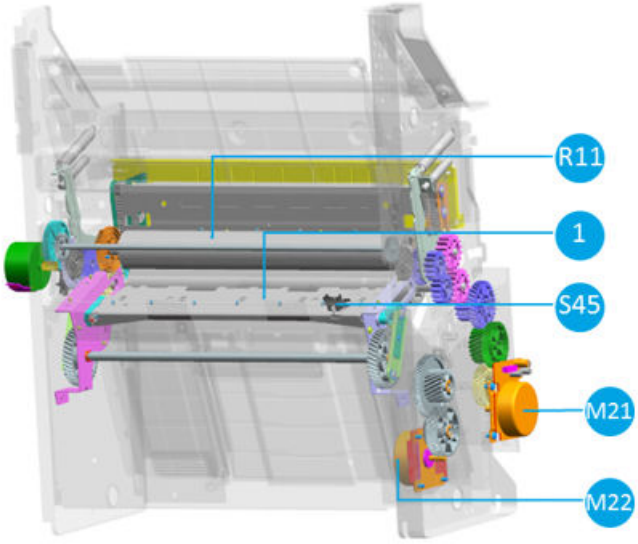


Figure 5-76 Booklet fold unit overview – left-front

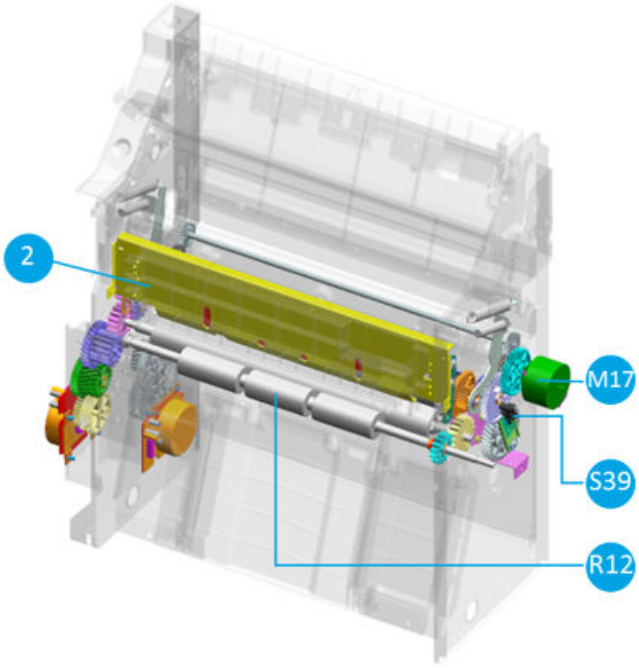


Figure 5-77 Booklet fold unit detail view - right

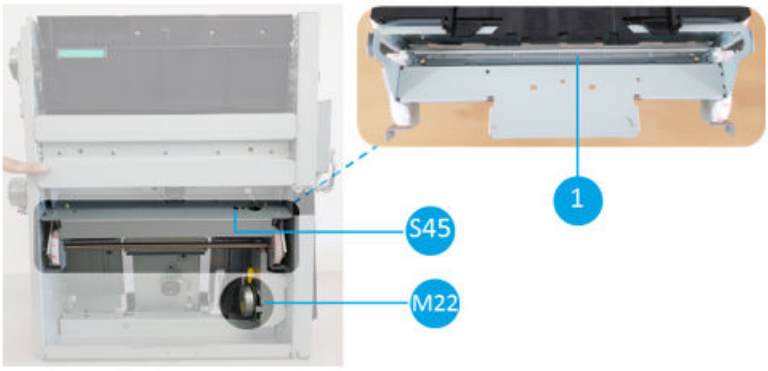


Figure 5-78 Booklet fold unit detail view – left

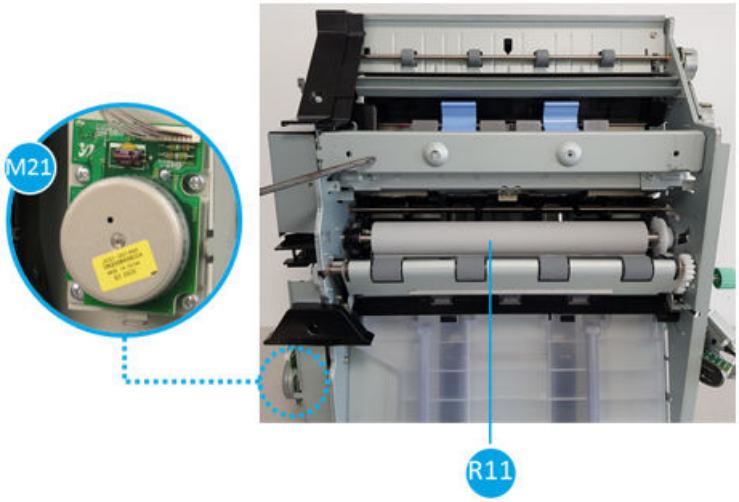


Figure 5-79 Booklet fold unit detail view – left-front

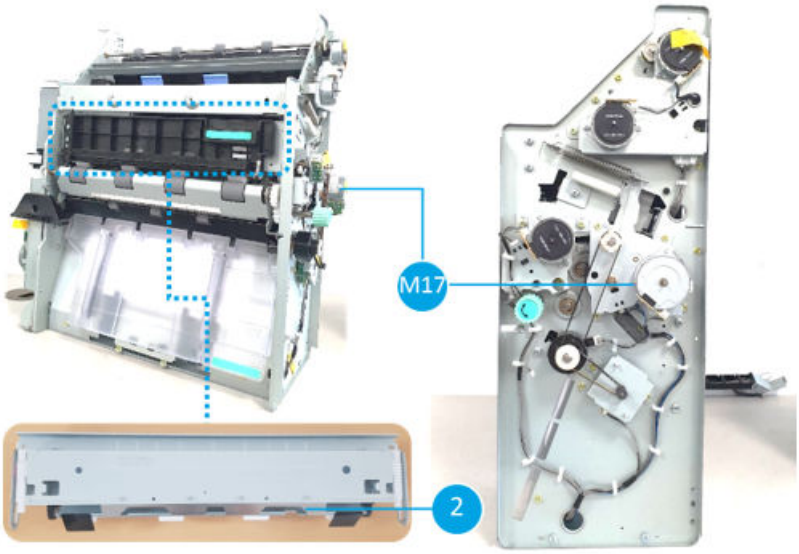


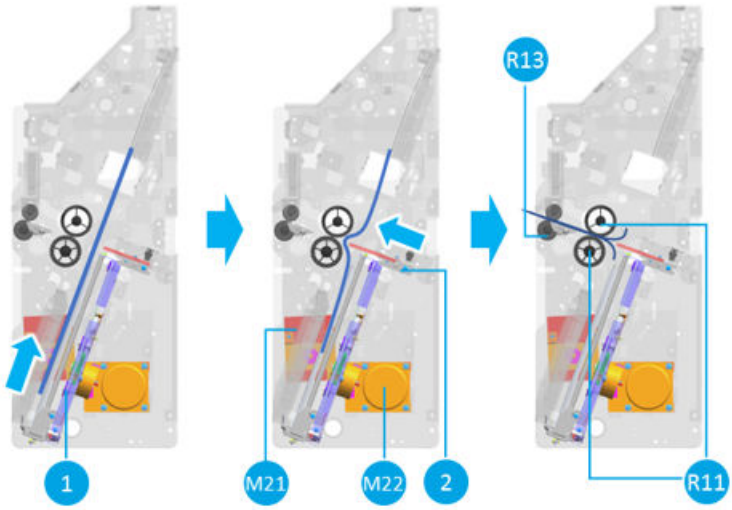
Table 5-40 Booklet fold unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Booklet blade	JC93-01163A			Pushes a stack of paper to fold.
S45	Booklet blade home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-3040	Checks the home position of the booklet blade.
M22	Booklet blade motor	JC31-00144A	(*)	113-3550	Drives the booklet blade
M21	Booklet fold motor	JC31-00144A	(*)	113-3510	Drives the booklet roller and c-fold blade
R11	Booklet fold roller	JC66-04748A			Presses a stack of paper to be fully folded
2	Booklet c-fold blade	JC61-07366A			Pushes a stack of paper to fold for the c-fold task
S39	Booklet c-fold blade home sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-3050	Checks the home position of the booklet c-fold blade
M17	Booklet c-fold blade motor	JC93-01154A	(*)	113-3590	Drives the booklet c-fold blade
R12	Booklet c-fold roller	JC66-04744A	(*)		In case of c-fold, presses a stack of paper to fold completely.

(*) This part is in ordering system.

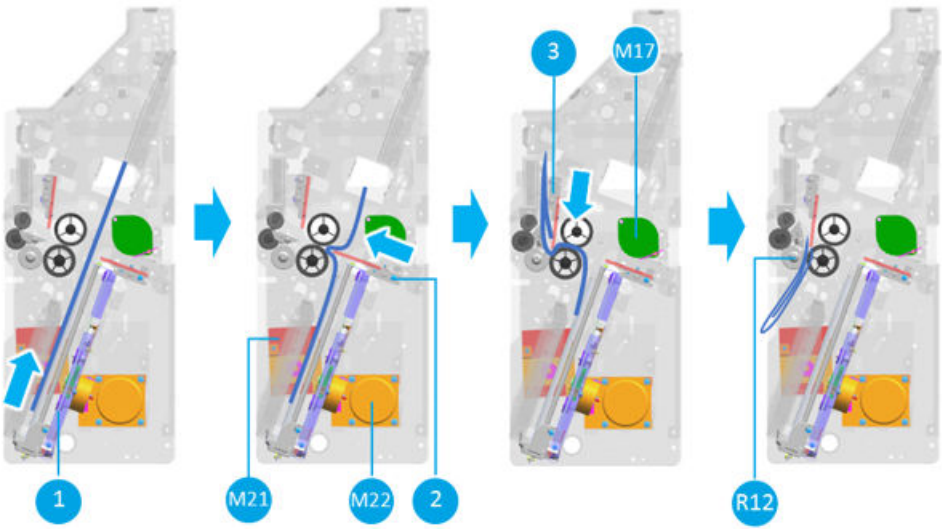
Booklet fold unit operation

1. In case of v-fold.



1. After a stack of paper is collected at a booklet end fence unit, the booklet end fence(callout1) moves to a designated location.
2. The booklet blade motor(M22) drives the booklet blade(callout2) to push the center of paper.
3. Paper enters between the booklet fold rollers(R11) by the booklet blade and it is completely folded between the rollers.
4. The folded paper stack is discharged to the booklet output tray via the booklet exit roller(R13).

2. In case of c-fold



1. After a stack of paper is collected at a booklet end fence unit, the booklet end fence(callout1) is moved to a designated location.
2. The booklet blade motor(M22) drives the booklet blade(callout2) to push one-third of paper.
3. he paper enters between the booklet fold rollers(R11) by the booklet blade and it is completely folded between the rollers.
4. The folded sheets move to s location where they will be c-folded by a booklet diverter.
5. The booklet c-fold blade motor(M17) drives the booklet c-fold blade(callout3), pokes two-thirds of paper.
6. Paper enters between the booklet c-fold roller(R12) and the booklet fold roller by the booklet c-fold blade and it is completely folded between the rollers.

Booklet diverter unit

Learn about the Booklet diverter unit of the booklet finisher.

The booklet diverter unit determines a paper path to allow the stack of folded paper to exit to the booklet output tray during the v-fold. In case of c-fold, it makes another paper path so folded sheets can move to a location that can be c-folded. The booklet diverter motor(M18) drives the booklet diverter, and the booklet diverter home sensor(S40) checks whether the booklet diverter is at the home position

Figure 5-80 Booklet diverter unit overview

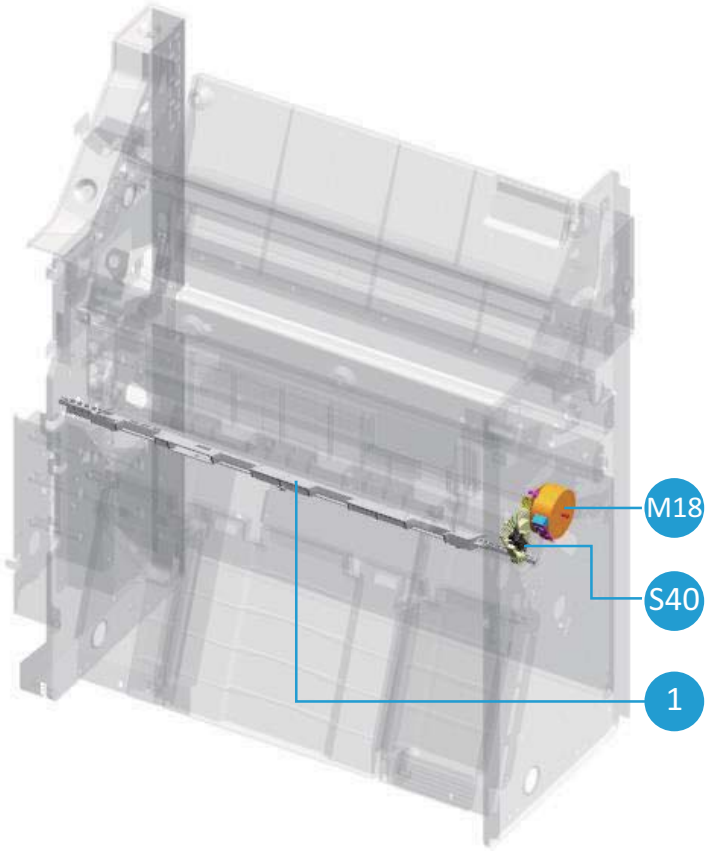


Figure 5-81 Booklet diverter unit detail view – left-front

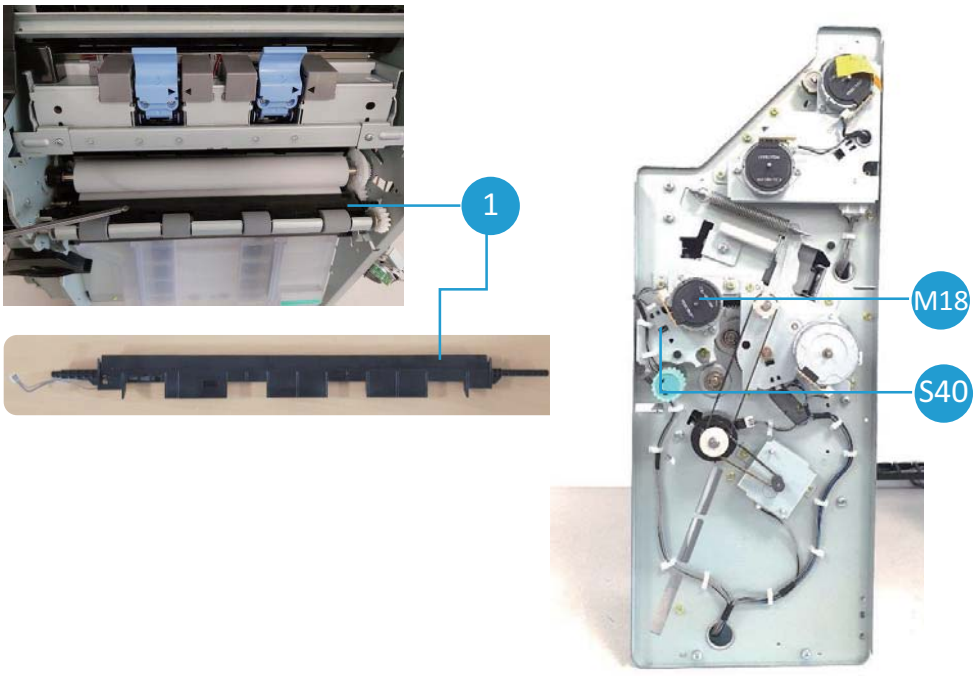


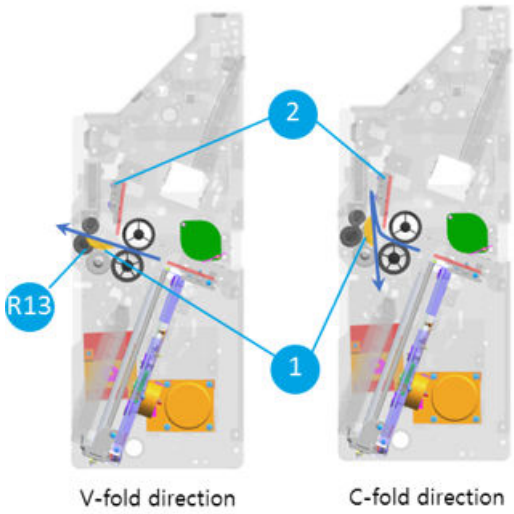
Table 5-41 Booklet diverter unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Booklet diverter	JC90-01398A			Determines the paper path for either the booklet exit unit or the location for c-fold
S40	Booklet diverter home sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-3060	Checks the home position of the booklet diverter
M18	Booklet diverter motor	JC93-01153A	(*)	113-3560	Drives the booklet diverter

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet diverter unit operation

1. In case of v-fold, the booklet diverter(callout1) determines the paper path so that the folded sheets exit to the booklet exit unit and into the booklet output tray.
2. On the other hand, in c-fold, it makes another paper path to fold it by c-fold blade(callout2).



Booklet exit unit

Learn about the Booklet exit unit of the booklet finisher.

The booklet exit unit ejects a stack of v-fold paper to the booklet output tray unit. The booklet exit sensor(S44) detects paper entry into the booklet exit unit, and the booklet fold motor(M19) drives the booklet exit roller(R4) to discharge paper.

Figure 5-82 Booklet exit unit overview – front-right

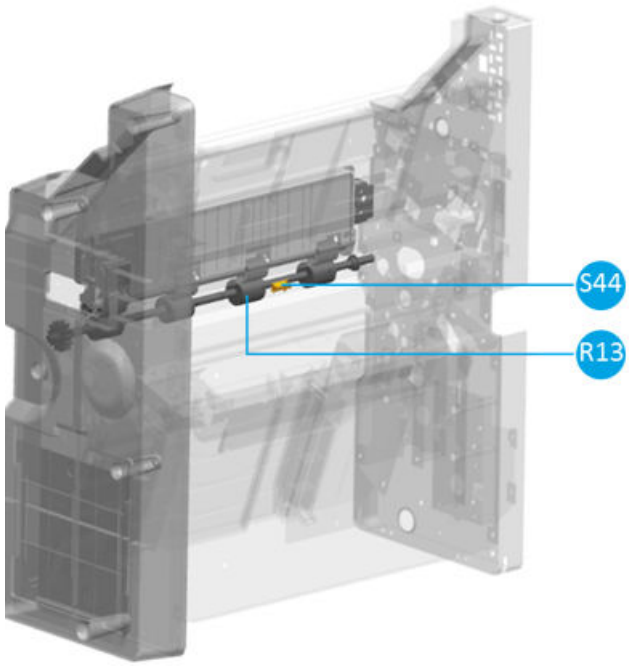


Figure 5-83 Booklet exit unit detail view

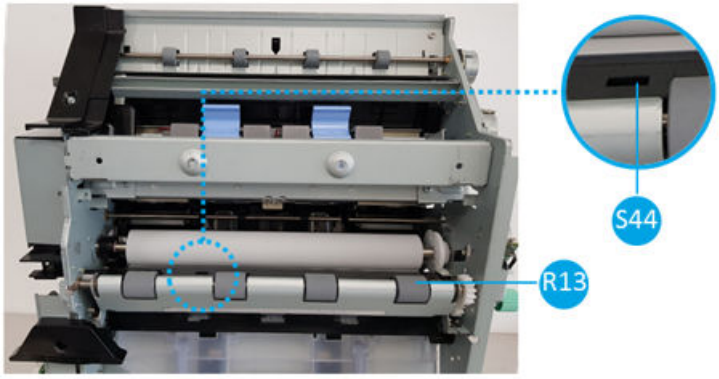


Table 5-42 Booklet exit unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
S44	Booklet exit sensor	JC32-00020A	(*)	113-3120	Check whether paper has come into the booklet unit
M21	Booklet fold motor	JC31-00144A	(*)	113-3510	Drives the booklet exit roller
R13	Booklet exit roller	JC66-04721A	(*)		Moves paper to the booklet output tray unit

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet output tray unit

Learn about the Booklet output tray unit of the booklet finisher.

The booklet output tray unit is the place where the ejected paper is stacked. The booklet output tray sensor(S43) detects whether paper is on the booklet output tray or not.

Figure 5-84 Booklet output tray unit overview

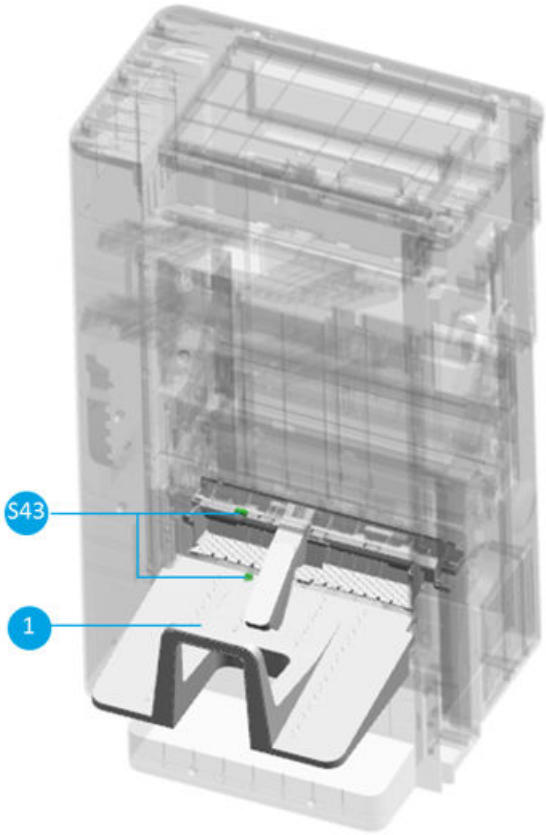


Figure 5-85 Booklet output tray unit detail view

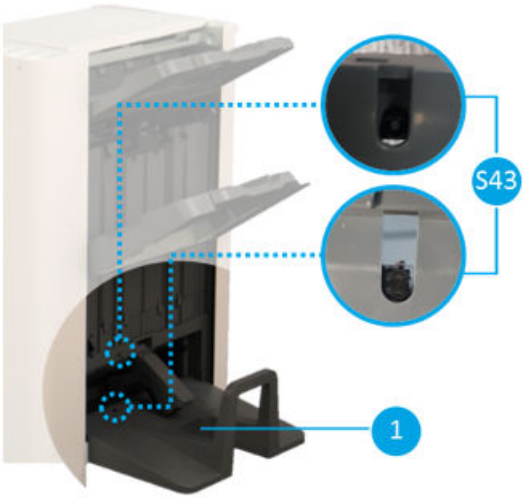


Table 5-43 Booklet output tray unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Booklet output tray	JC61-07253B	(*)		Stores paper stacks from the booklet exit unit
		JC63-04978B	(*)		

Table 5-43 Booklet output tray unit parts information (continued)

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
S43	Booklet output tray sensor	JC82-01039A	(*)	113-2150	Detects whether paper is on the booklet output tray.pa

(*) This part is in ordering system.

PCA connection information

Learn about the PCA connection information.

Figure 5-86 Stapler / Stacker finisher system - PCA connection information

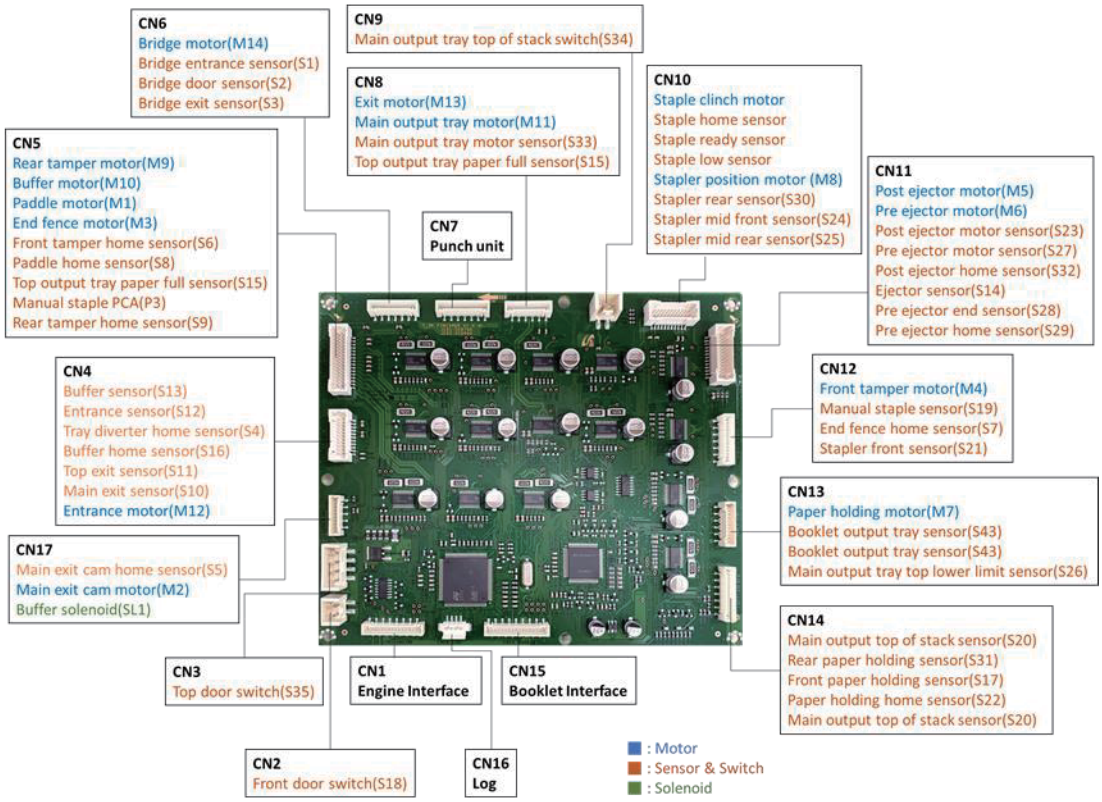


Table 5-44 Stapler/Stacker finisher system - PCA connectors, parts, and diagnostics information

Connector	Motor	Diagnostics	Sensor, Switch	Diagnostics	Solenoid, PCA	Diagnostics
CN1					MainPCA interface	
CN2			Front door switch(S35)	113-2181		
CN3			Top door switch(S18)	113-2182		
CN4	Entrance motor(M12)	113-2570	Buffer sensor(S13)	113-2100		
			Entrance sensor(S12)	113-2080		
			Tray diverter home sensor(S4)	113-2020		
			Buffer home sensor(S16)	113-2210		

Table 5-44 Stapler/Stacker finisher system - PCA connectors, parts, and diagnostics information (continued)

Connector	Motor	Diagnostics	Sensor, Switch	Diagnostics	Solenoid, PCA	Diagnostics
			Top exit sensor(S11)	113-2091		
			Main exit sensor(S10)	113-2090		
CN5	Rear tamper motor(M9)	113-2640	Front tamper home sensor(S6)	113-2120	Manual staple PCA(P3)	
	Buffer motor(M10)	113-2660	Paddle home sensor(S8)	113-2060		
	Paddle motor(M1)	113-2600	Top output tray paper full sensor(S15)	113-2145		
	End fence motor(M3)	113-2590	Rear tamper home sensor(S9)	113-2130		
CN6	Bridge motor(M14)	113-2560	Bridge entrance sensor(S1)	113-2070		
			Bridge door sensor(S2)	113-2180		
			Bridge exit sensor(S3)	113-2143		
CN7					Punch unit	
CN8	Exit motor(M13)	113-2580	Main output tray motor sensor(S33)	113-2143		
	Main output tray motor(M11)	113-2610	Top output tray paper full sensor(S15)	113-2145		
CN9			Main output tray top of stack switch(S34)	113-2190		
CN10	Staple clinch motor		Staple home sensor			
	Stapler position motor (M8)	113-2620	Staple ready sensor			
			Staple low sensor			
			Stapler rear sensor(S30)	113-2110		
			Stapler mid front sensor(S24)	113-2112		
			Stapler mid rear sensor(S25)	113-2111		
CN11	Ejector2 motor(M5)	113-2540	Ejector2 motor sensor(S23)	113-2041		
	Ejector1 motor(M6)	113-2530	Ejector1 motor sensor(S27)	113-2032		
			Ejector2 home sensor(S32)	113-2040		
			Ejector sensor(S14)	113-2170		
			Ejector1 end sensor(S28)	113-2030		
			Ejector1 home sensor(S29)	113-2031		

Table 5-44 Stapler/Stacker finisher system - PCA connectors, parts, and diagnostics information (continued)

Connector	Motor	Diagnostics	Sensor, Switch	Diagnostics	Solenoid, PCA	Diagnostics
CN12	Front tamper motor(M4)	113-2630	Manual staple sensor(S19)	113-2160		
			End fence home sensor(S7)	113-2050		
			Stapler front sensor(S21)	113-2113		
CN13	Paper holding motor(M7)	113-2510	Booklet output tray sensor(S43)	113-2150		
CN14			Main output top of stack sensor(S20)	113-2140		
			Rear paper holding sensor(S31)	113-2142		
			Front paper holding sensor(S17)	113-2141		
			Paper holding home sensor(S22)	113-2010		
			Main output top of stack sensor(S20)	113-2140		
CN15					Booklet interface	
CN16					Log	
CN17	Main exit cam motor(M2)	113-2500	Main exit cam home sensor(S5)	113-2000		
				Buffer solenoid(SL1)	113-2670	

Figure 5-87 Booklet finisher system - PCA connection information

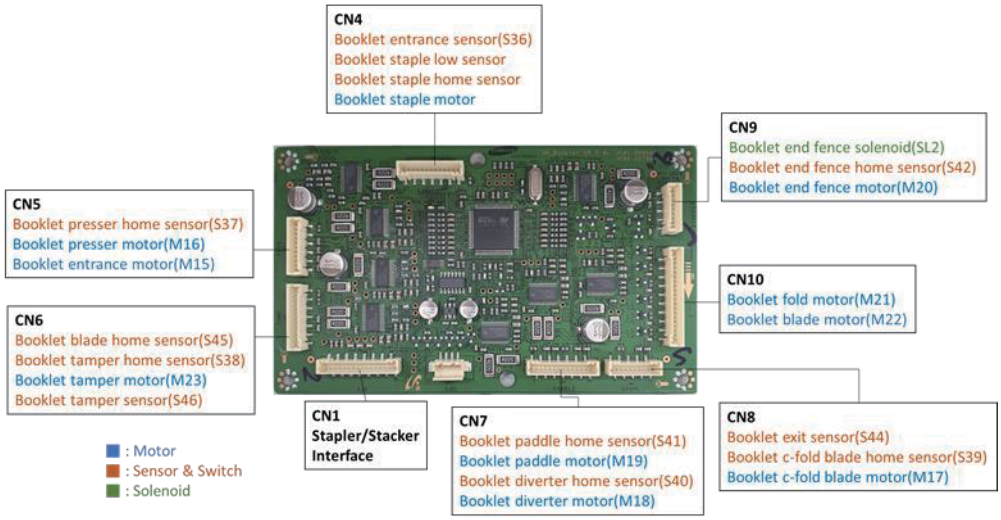


Table 5-45 Booklet finisher system - PCA connectors, parts, and diagnostics information

Connector	Motor	Diagnostics	Sensor	Diagnostics	Switch, Solenoid, PCA	Diagnostics
CN1						Stapler/ Stacker interface
CN4	Booklet staple motor		Booklet entrance sensor(S36)	113-3100		
			Booklet staple low sensor			
			Booklet staple home sensor			
CN5	Booklet presser motor(M16)	113-2580	Booklet presser home sensor(S37)	113-3130		
			Booklet entrance motor(S13)	113-2100		
CN6	Booklet tamper motor(M23)	113-3540	Booklet blade home sensor(S45)	113-3040		
			Booklet tamper home sensor(S38)	113-3080		
			Booklet tamper sensor(S46)	113-3110		
CN7	Booklet paddle motor(M19)	113-3580	Booklet paddle home sensor(S41)	113-3090		
	Booklet diverter motor(M18)	113-3560	Booklet diverter home sensor(S40)	113-3060		
CN8	Booklet c-fold blade motor(M17)	113-3590	Booklet exit sensor(S44)	113-3120		
			Booklet c-fold blade home sensor(S39)	113-3050		
CN9	Booklet end fence motor(M20)	113-3530	Booklet end fence home sensor(S42)	113-3000	Booklet end fence solenoid(SL2)	
CN10	Booklet fold motor(M21)	113-3510				113-3520
	Booklet blade motor(M22)	113-3550				

Service approach

Learn about the service approach of the inner finisher.

⚠ CAUTION: When working on the product, do not pick up the unit by the output tray, which will detach under the weight of the product.

Precautions when replacing parts

Learn about precautions when replacing parts.

Precautions when replacing parts

Learn about precautions when replacing parts.

Precautions when assembling and disassembling

- Use only HP approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, product name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct. Failure to do so might result in damage to the machine, circuit overload, fire, or electric shock.
- Do not make unauthorized changes or additions to the printer. Unauthorized changes might cause the printer to malfunction and create electric shock or fire hazards.
- Use caution when dismantling the unit. Take note of the location of each screw or other part. This printer contains different kinds of screws. Using the wrong screw might lead to system failure, short circuit or electric shock.
- Do not disassemble the laser scanner assembly. Once the laser scanner assembly is disassembled, dust might enter the mirror chamber and will seriously degrade print quality. There are no serviceable parts inside the laser scanner assembly.
- Regularly check the condition of the power cable, plug and socket. Bad contacts might lead to overheating and fire. Damaged cables might lead to electric shock or unit malfunction.

Precautions when handling PCAs

Static electricity might damage a PCA. Use approved, anti-static precautions when handling or storing a PCA. Service personnel should use grounded ESD straps and/or mats when handling PCAs.

- Precautions when moving and storing a PCA
  - Keep PCA in a conductive case, anti-static bag, or wrapped in aluminum foil.
  - Do not store a PCA where it is exposed to direct sunlight.
- Precautions when replacing a PCA
  - Disconnect power cables before disconnecting other cables.
  - Do not touch any soldered connections, connector terminals, or other electronic parts when handling insulated parts.
- Precautions when checking a PCA
  - Touch a grounded area of the printer chassis to discharge static electric charge before touching a PCA.
  - Do not touch a PCA with bare hands or metal objects. Doing so might create a short circuit or cause electric shock. Use caution when handling a PCA with moving parts such as sensors, motors, or lamps, as they might become very hot.

- Use caution when fitting and removing screws. Watch for hidden screens. Make sure that the correct screw is used and make sure that when toothed washers are removed, they are refitted in their original positions.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Releasing plastic latches

Many of the parts are held in place with plastic latches. The latches might easily break. Be careful when releasing them . To remove such parts, press the hook end of the latch away from the part to which it is latched.

Precautions when handling PCA

Static electric might damage a PCA. Use approved, anti-static precautions when handling or storing a PCA. Service personnel should use grounded ESD straps and/or mats when handling PCAs.

- Precautions when moving and storing a PCA
  - Keep PCA in a conductive case, anti-static bag, or wrapped in aluminum foil.
  - Do not store a PCA where it is exposed to direct sunlight.
- Precautions when replacing a PCA
  - Disconnect power cables before disconnecting other cables.
  - Do not touch any soldered connections, connector terminals, or other electronic parts when handling insulated parts.
- Precautions when checking a PCA
  - Touch a grounded area of the printer chassis to discharge static electric charge before touching a PCA.
  - Do not touch a PCA with bare hands or metal objects. Doing so might create a short circuit or cause electric shock. Use caution when handling a PCA with moving parts such as sensors, motors, or lamps, as they might become very hot.
  - Use caution when fitting and removing screws. Watch for hidden screens. Make sure that the correct screw is used and make sure that when toothed washers are removed, they are refitted in their original positions.
  - Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Releasing plastic latches

Learn about releasing plastic latches.

Many of the parts are held in place with plastic latches. The latches can break easily; release them carefully. To remove such parts, press the hook end of the latch away from the part to which it is latched.

Before performing service

Learn what to do before performing service.

- Remove all paper from the product.
- Turn off the power using the power button.
- Unplug the power cable and interface cable or cables.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.
- Remove the toner cartridges.
- Remove the Tray 2 cassette.

ESD precautions

Learn the importance of electrostatic discharge.

⚠ CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

After performing service

Learn what to do after performing service.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post-service test

Perform the following tests to verify that the repair or replacement was successful:

Print-quality test

Learn about the print-quality test.

1. Verify that you have completed the necessary reassembly steps.
2. Make sure that the tray contains clean, unmarked paper.
3. Attach the power cord and interface cable or interface cables, and then turn on the product.
4. Print a configuration page.
5. Print a print quality page, and then verify that there are no lines, streaks, banding, or other print quality defects.
6. Send a print job from the host computer, and then verify that the output meets expectations.

Order parts by authorized service providers

Find information about ordering parts and supplies for the printer.

Ordering

Order parts by authorized service providers.

Table 5-46 Ordering

Item or provider	Description
Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order parts from authorized service providers	www.hp.com/buy/parts or partsurfer.hp.com
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	To access, in a supported web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP SureSupply web site, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies.

Orderable parts

Not all of the parts shown in the exploded assembly diagrams are orderable parts.

Refer to the tables following the diagrams or the alphabetical/numerical parts lists to determine if a part is orderable.

Parts, diagrams, removal and replacement (stapler/ stacker and booklet finishers)

Learn about parts, diagrams, removal and replacement (stapler/ stacker and booklet finishers)

NOTE: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

Parts, diagrams (stapler/stacker)

Learn about parts, diagrams (stapler/stacker)

NOTE: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

Cover & hanress

Cover & hanress

Parts diagram and parts list for the cover and hanress.

Figure 5-88 cover

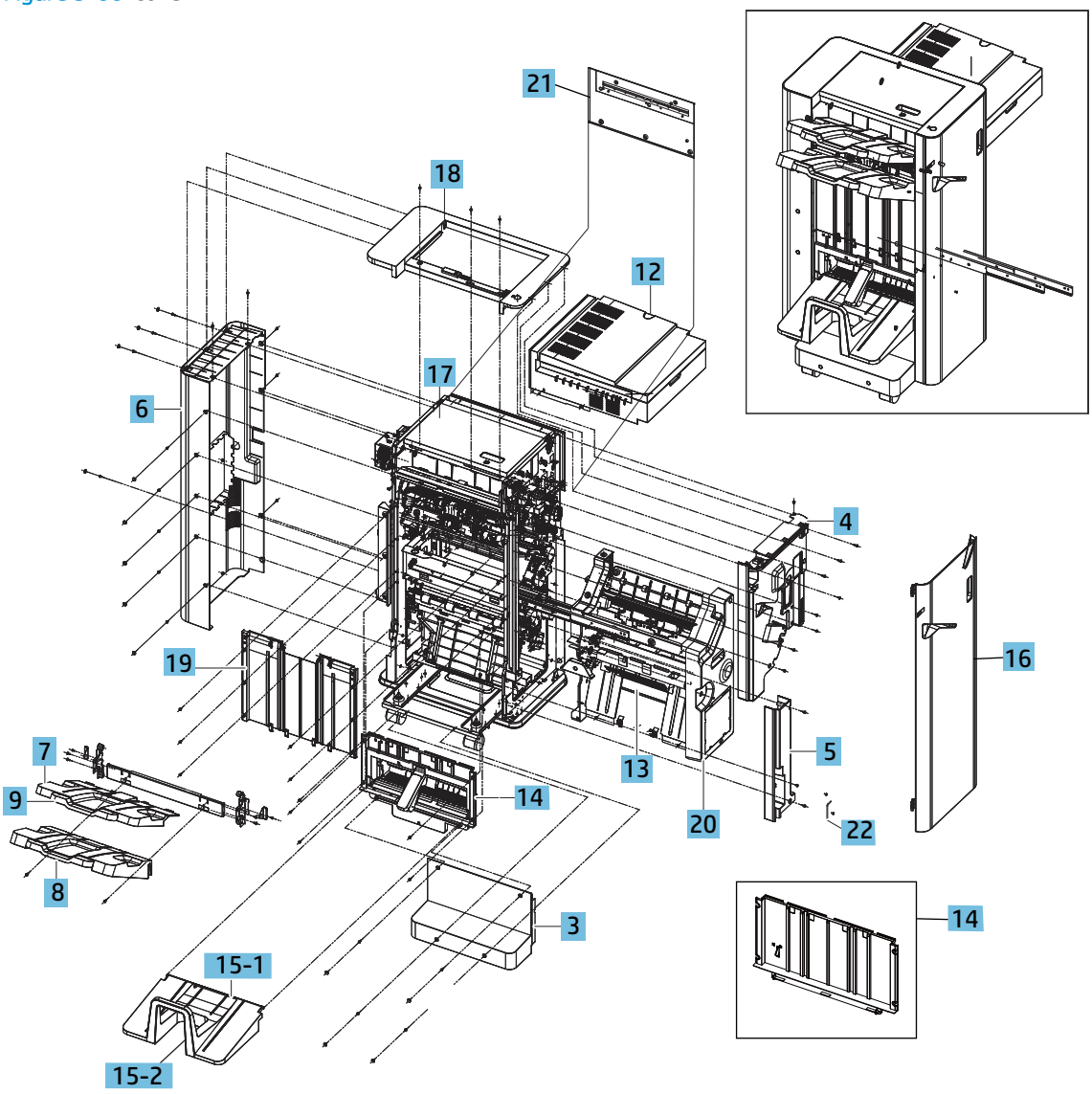


Table 5-47 cover

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
3	Caster cover	JC63-04985B	1	(*)
4	Front cover	JC63-04986B	1	(*)
5	Front lower cover	JC63-04987B	1	(*)
6	Rear cover	JC63-04988B	1	(*)
7	Top output tray upper	JC63-04996B	1	(*)
8	Main output tray	JC63-05002B	1	(*)
9	Top output tray lower	JC63-05003B	1	(*)
12	Bridge unit	JC90-01772B	1	(*)
13	Booklet maker	JC82-00905A	1	(*)
14	Left lower cover (Stacker-stapler)	JC90-01771B	1	(*)
14	Left lower cover (Booklet)	JC90-01417B	1	(*)
15-1	Booklet output tray	JC61-07253B	1	(*)
15-2	Booklet output tray cover	JC63-04978B	1	(*)
16	Front door	JC90-01444B	1	(*)
17	Top door	JC90-01445B	1	(*)
18	Top cover	JC90-01446B	1	(*)
19	Left upper cover	JC90-01475B	1	(*)
20	Booklet front cover	JC90-01478B	1	(*)
21	Right upper cover	JC90-01448B	1	(*)
22	Hinge	JC66-04767A	1	(*)

Table 5-48 harness

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
Not shown	Harness, finisher to copier PWR	JC39-02308A	1	(*)
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher to copier PWR	JC39-02308A	1	(*)
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher rear upper	JC39-02312A	1	(*)
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher front upper	JC39-02313A	1	(*)
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher punch relay	JC39-02314A	1	(*)
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher staple relay	JC39-02315A	1	(*)
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher eject relay	JC39-02317A	1	(*)
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher front lower	JC39-02318A	1	(*)
Not shown	Harness, 3K finisher stack relay	JC39-02319A	1	(*)
Not shown	Harness, 3k finisher exit path	JC39-02322A	1	(*)
Not shown	Harness, 3K Finisher Bridge Sub	JC39-02327A	1	(*)
Not shown	Harness, 3K Finisher Bridge Pa	JC39-02328A	1	(*)
Not shown	Stack full harness	JC39-02331A	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Front door, Top door, Top cover, Right upper cover

Parts diagram and parts list for the front door, top door, top cover, right upper cover.

Figure 5-89 Front door, Top door, Top cover, Right upper cover

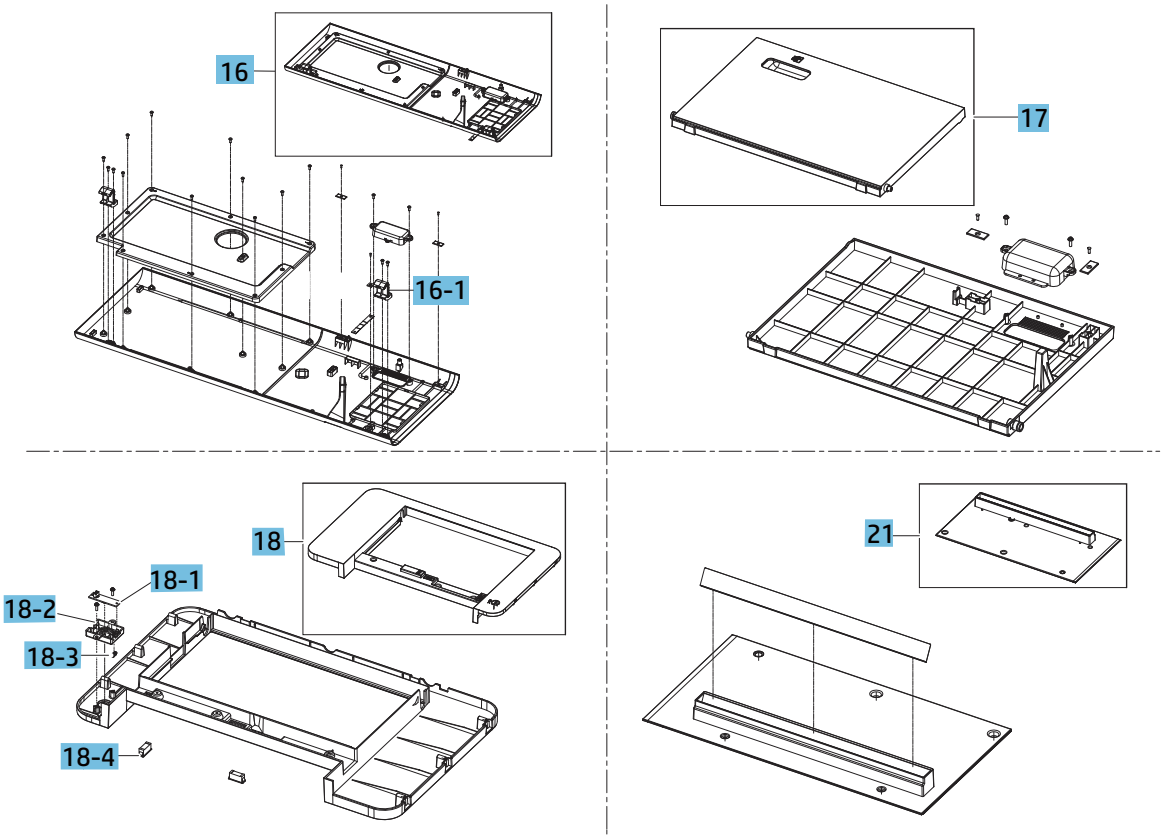


Table 5-49 Front door, Top door, Top cover, Right upper cover

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
16	Front door	JC90-01444B	1	(*)
16-1	Cover link	JC63-05004A	1	(*)
17	Top door	JC90-01445B	1	(*)
18	Top cover	JC90-01446B	1	(*)
18-1	Manual staple PCA	JC92-02789A	1	(*)
18-2	Magnet	JC81-08263A	1	(*)
18-3	Manual staple button LED	JC64-00996A	1	(*)
18-4	Manual staple button	JC64-00995A	1	(*)
21	Right upper cover	JC90-01448B	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Bridge unit

Upper bridge

Parts diagram and parts list for the bridge unit, upper bridge.

Figure 5-90 Bridge unit, Upper bridge

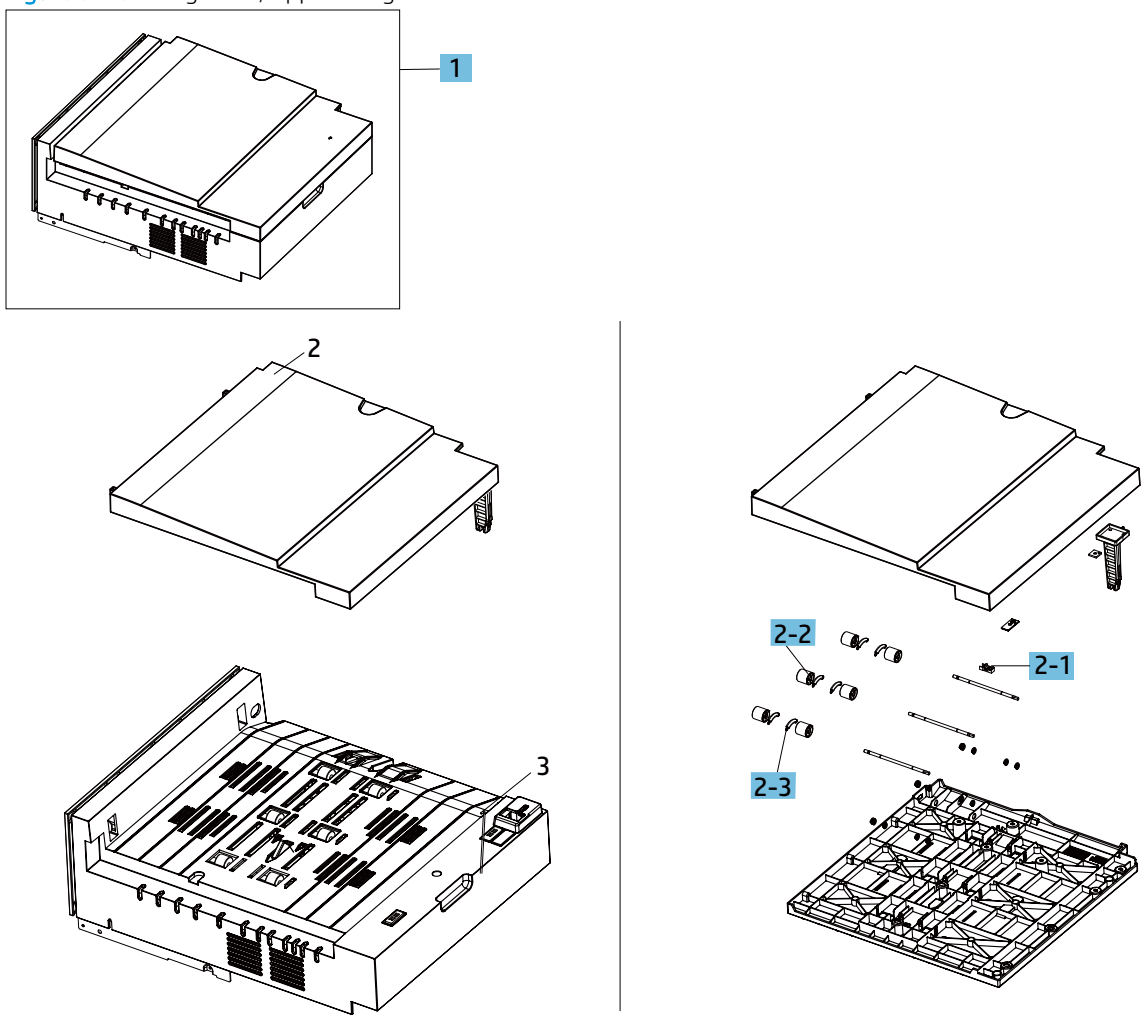


Table 5-50 Bridge unit, Upper bridge

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Bridge unit	JC90-01772B	1	(*)
2	Upper bridge unit	JC90-01406B	1	
2-1	Bridge entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	1	(*)
2-2	Spring	JC61-07431A	4	(*)
2-3	Spring	JC61-07430A	2	(*)
3	Lower bridge unit	JC90-01401B	1	

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Lower bridge

Parts diagram and parts list for the bridge unit, lower bridge.

Figure 5-91 Bridge unit, Lower bridge

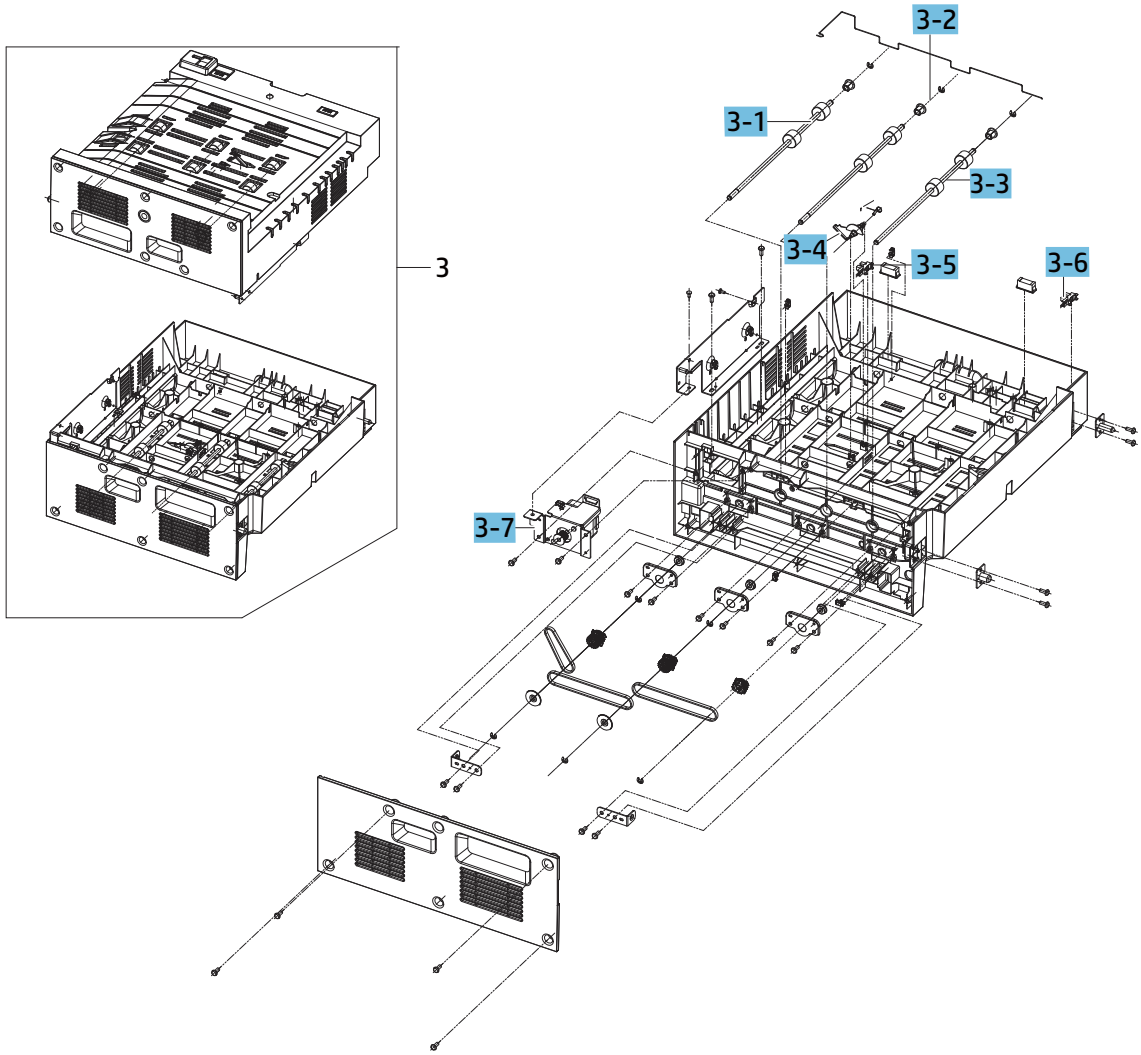


Table 5-51 Bridge unit, Lower bridge

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
3	Lower bridge unit	JC90-01401B	1	
3-1	Bridge entrance roller	JC66-04733A	1	
3-2	Bridge middle roller	JC66-04732A	1	(*)
3-3	Bridge exit roller	JC66-04732A	4	(*)
3-4	Bridge exit actuator	JC66-04569A	2	(*)
3-5	Bridge exit sensor	0604-001393	1	
3-6	Bridge door sensor	0604-001393	1	(*)
3-7	Bridge motor	JC31-00163B	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Entrance unit

Entrance unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the entrance unit.

Figure 5-92 Entrance unit

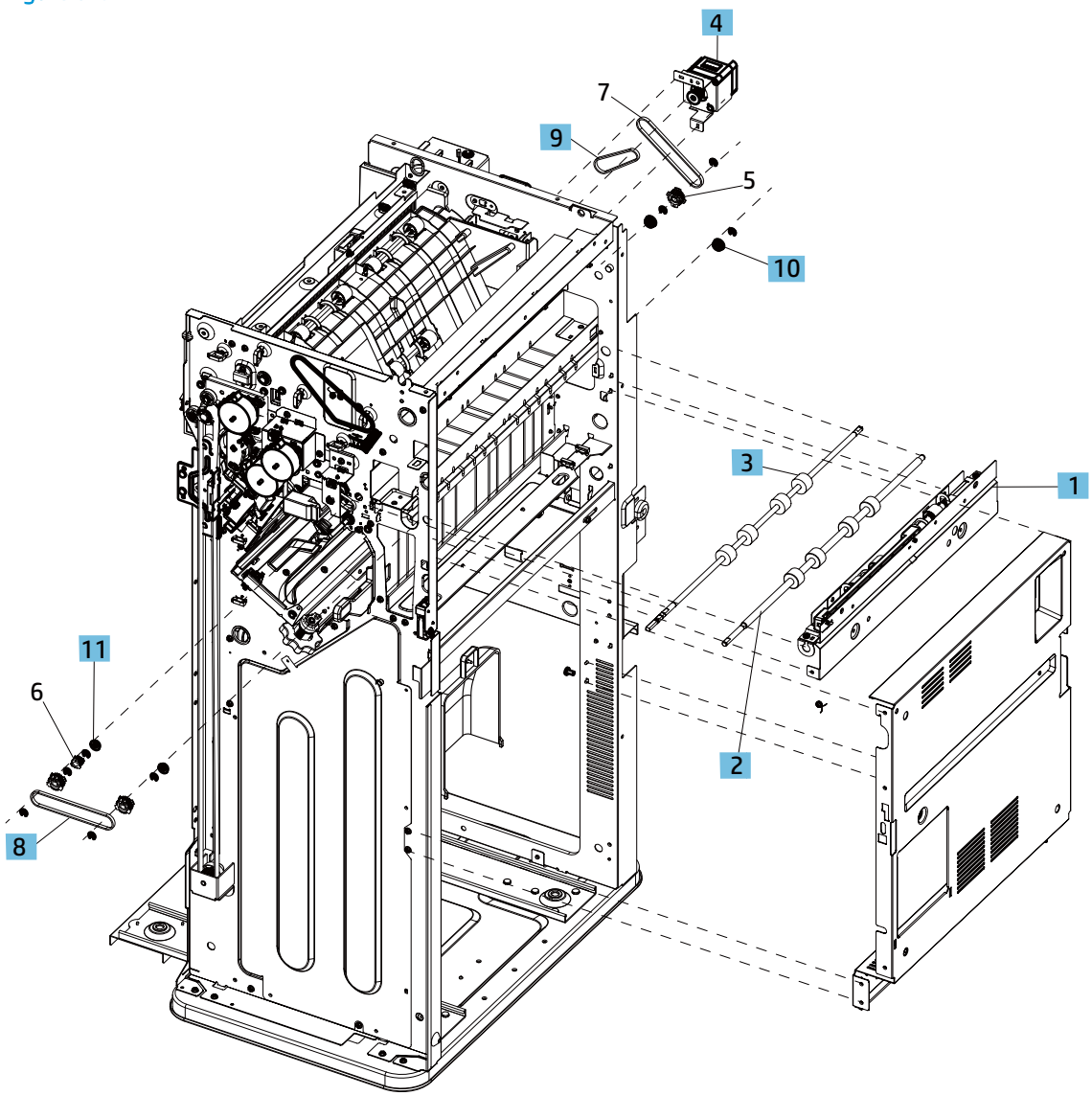


Table 5-52 Entrance unit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Entrance unit	JC90-01449A	1	(*)
2	Entrance roller	JC66-04722A	1	(*)
3	Middle roller	JC66-04724A	1	(*)
4	Entrance motor assembly	JC90-01459A	1	(*)
5	Gear	JC66-04656A	3	
6	Gear	JC66-04546A	1	
7	Belt	6602-003646	1	
8	Belt	6602-003647	1	(*)
9	Belt	6602-003645	1	(*)
10	Bushing	6601-001478	2	(*)
11	Bushing	6601-002584	2	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Entrance unit, Entrance motor

Parts diagram and parts list for the entrance unit, entrance motor.

Figure 5-93 Entrance unit, Entrance motor

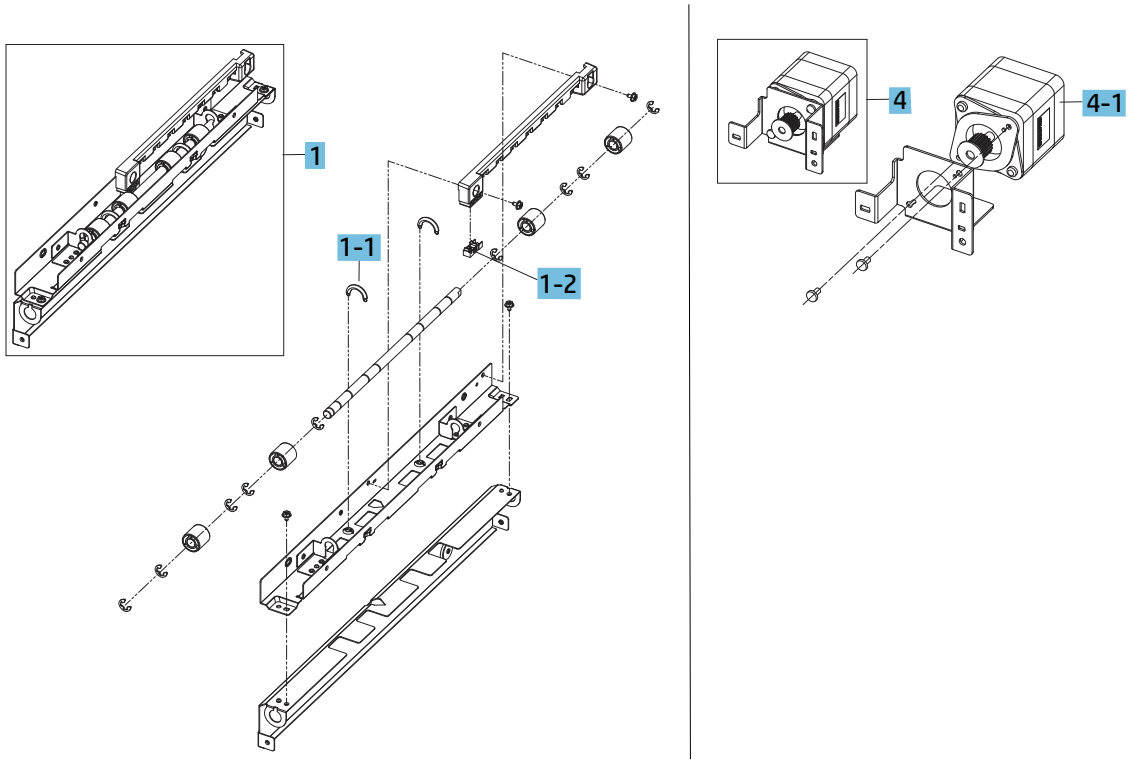


Table 5-53 Entrance unit, Entrance motor

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Entrance unit	JC90-01449A	1	(*)
1-1	Spring	JC61-07408A	2	(*)
1-2	Entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	1	(*)
4	Entrance motor assembly	JC90-01459A	1	(*)
4-1	Entrance motor	JC31-00163B	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Tray diverter unit

Tray diverter unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the tray diverter unit.

Figure 5-94 Tray diverter unit

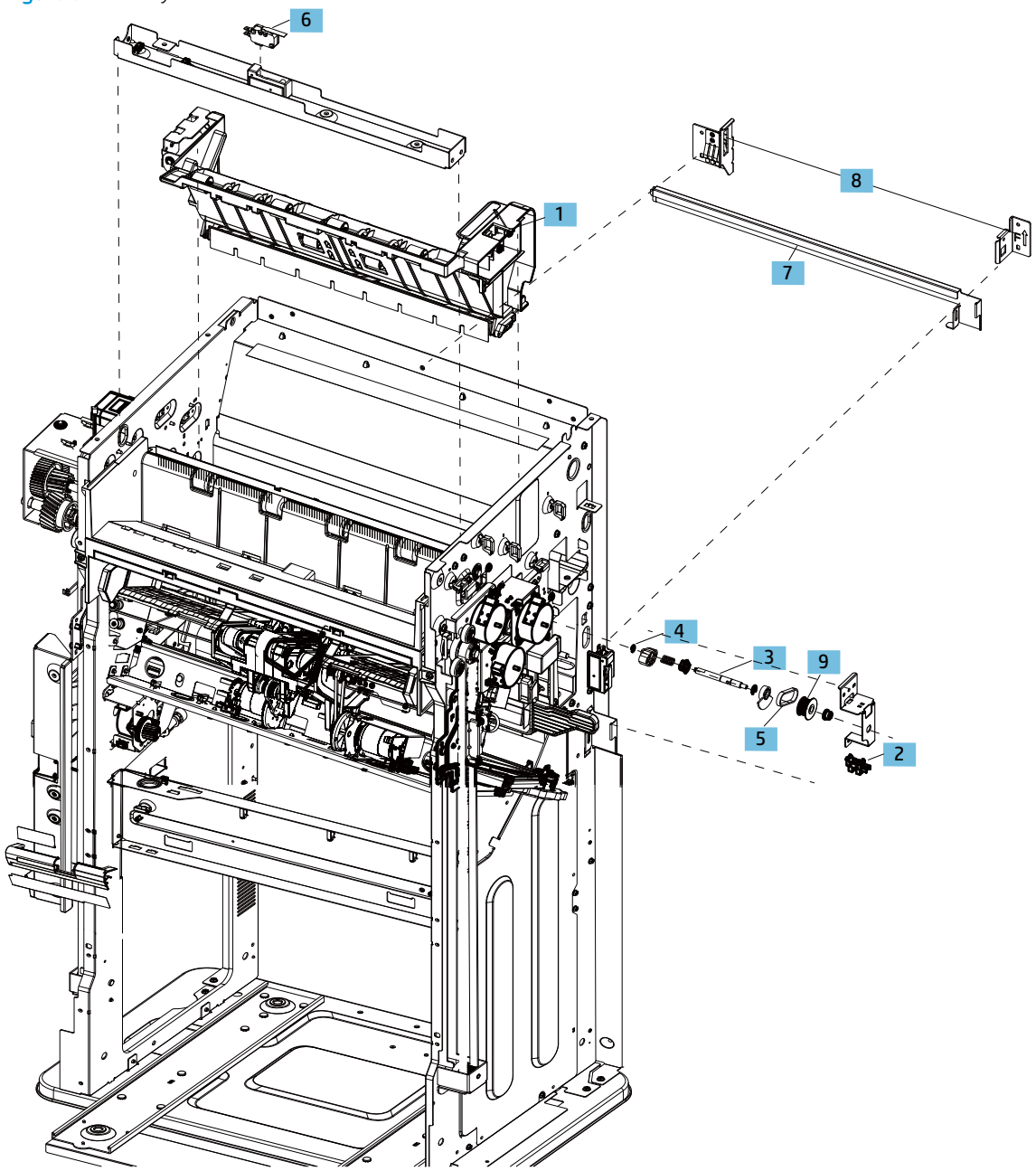


Table 5-54 Tray diverter unit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Top jam cover assembly	JC90-01455A	1	(*)
2	Tray diverter home sensor	0604-001415	1	(*)
3	Tray diverter cam	JC90-01458A	1	(*)
4	Bushing	JC61-00423A	1	(*)
5	Belt	6602-003639	1	(*)
6	Top door switch	JC39-02310A	1	(*)
7	Frame mount	JC61-06663A	1	(*)
8	Frame mount side bracket	JC90-01442A	1	(*)
9	Clutch	JC90-01474A	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Tray jam cover, Tray diverter CAM

Parts diagram and parts list for the tray jam cover, tray diverter CAM.

Figure 5-95 Tray jam cover, Tray diverter CAM

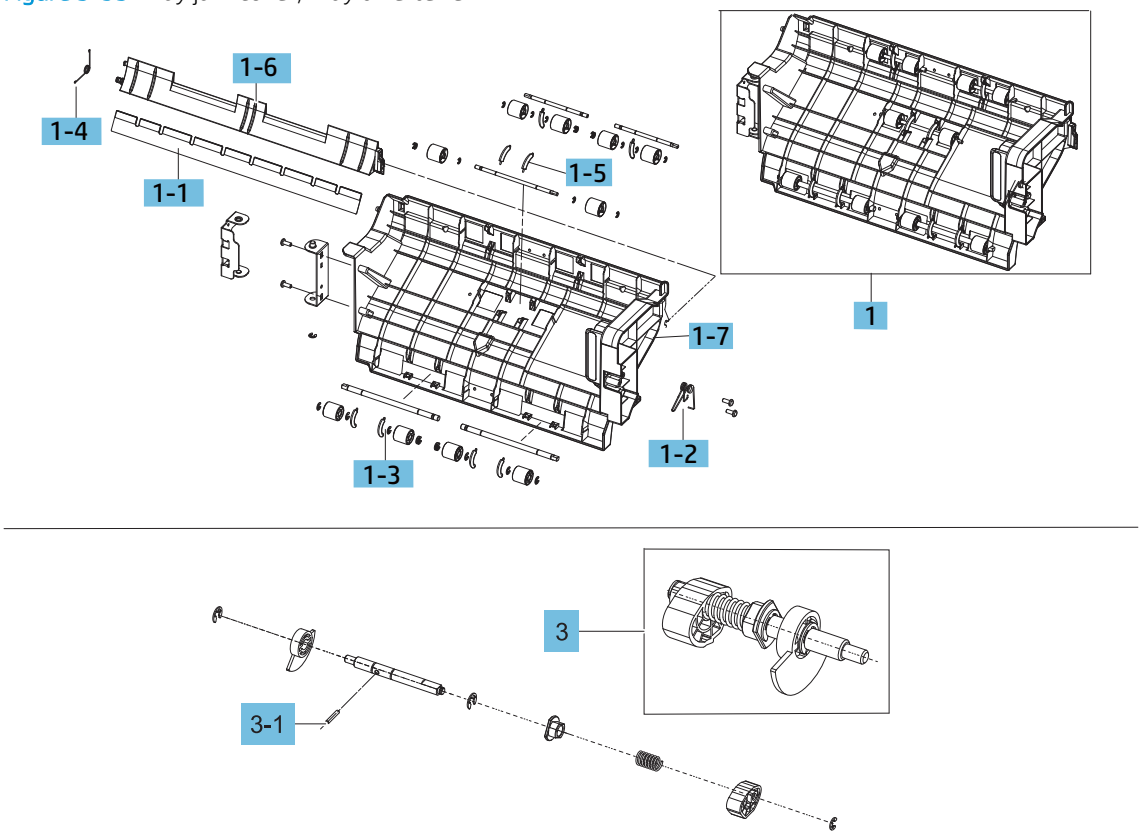


Table 5-55 Tray jam cover, Tray diverter CAM

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Top jam cover assembly	JC90-01455A	1	(*)
1-1	Seal	JC62-01328A	1	(*)
1-2	Spring	JC61-07417A	1	(*)
1-3	Spring	JC61-07415A	1	(*)
1-4	Spring	JC61-07410A	1	(*)
1-5	Spring	JC61-07409A	1	(*)
1-6	Tray diverter	JC61-07205A	1	(*)
1-7	Tray jam cover	JC61-07196A	1	(*)
3	Tray diverter cam	JC90-01458A	1	(*)
3-1	Pin	JC70-40360A	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Top output tray unit, Top exit unit, Main exit unit

Top output tray unit, Top exit unit, Main exit unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the top output tray unit, top exit unit, main exit unit.

Figure 5-96 Top output tray unit, Top exit unit, Main exit unit

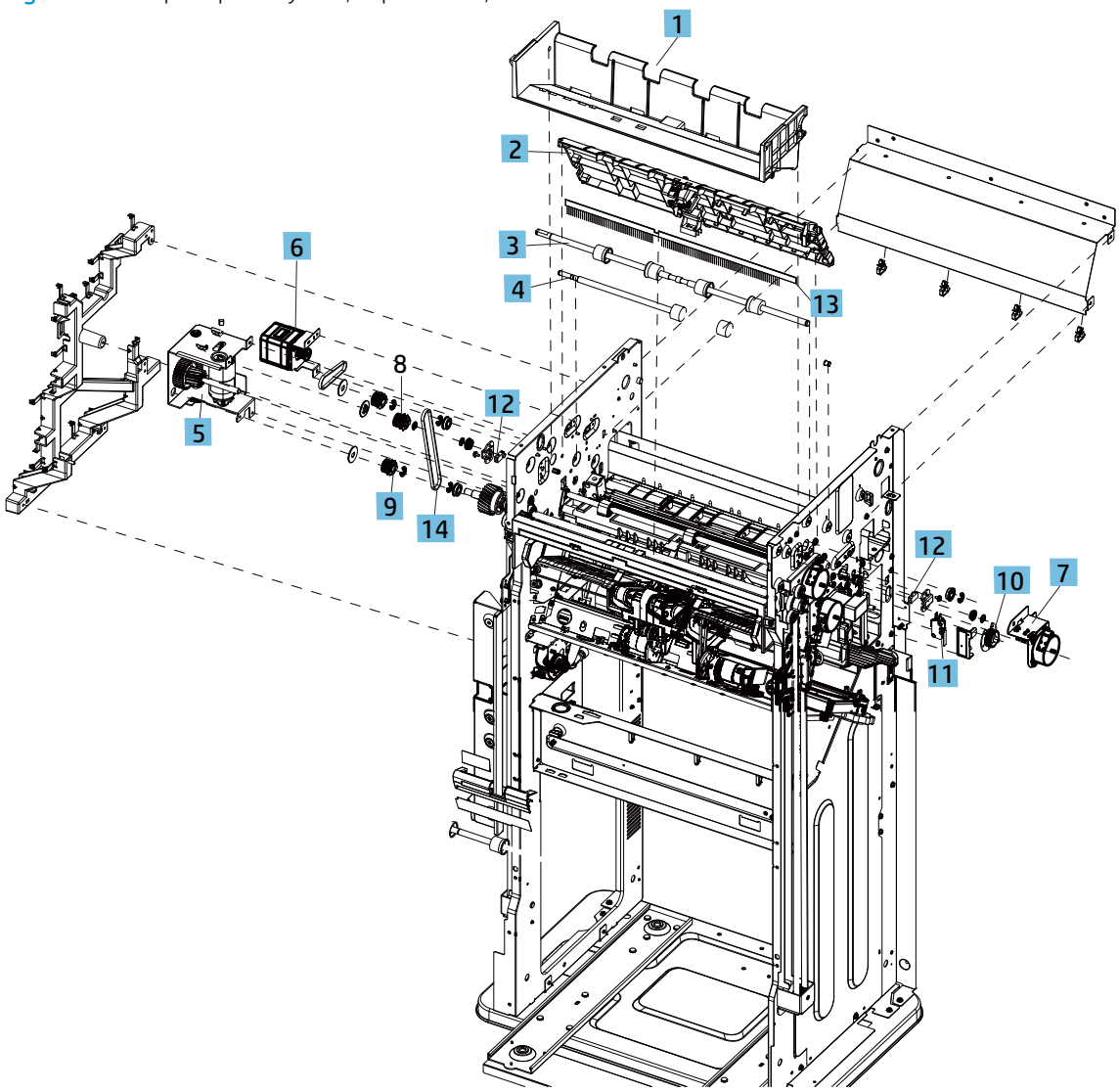


Table 5-56 Top output tray unit, Top exit unit, Main exit unit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Top output tray	JC63-04995B	1	(*)
2	Top lower feed assembly	JC90-01454A	1	(*)
3	Top exit roller	JC66-04727A	1	(*)
4	Top middle roller	JC66-04725A	1	(*)
5	Main output tray motor assembly	JC90-01415B	1	(*)
6	Exit motor assembly	JC90-01459A	1	(*)
7	Main exit CAM motor assembly	JC90-01453A	1	(*)
8	Gear	JC66-04657A	2	
9	Clutch	JC90-01404A	1	(*)
10	Gear	JC66-04602A	1	(*)
11	Front door switch	JC39-02310A	1	(*)
12	Top output tray paper full sensor	JC82-01039A	1	(*)
13	Top-brush exit	JC67-00818A	1	(*)
14	Belt	6602-003649	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Top lower cover, Exit motor, Main exit CAM motor

Parts diagram and parts list for the top lower cover, exit motor, main exit CAM motor.

Figure 5-97 Top lower cover, Exit motor, Main exit CAM motor

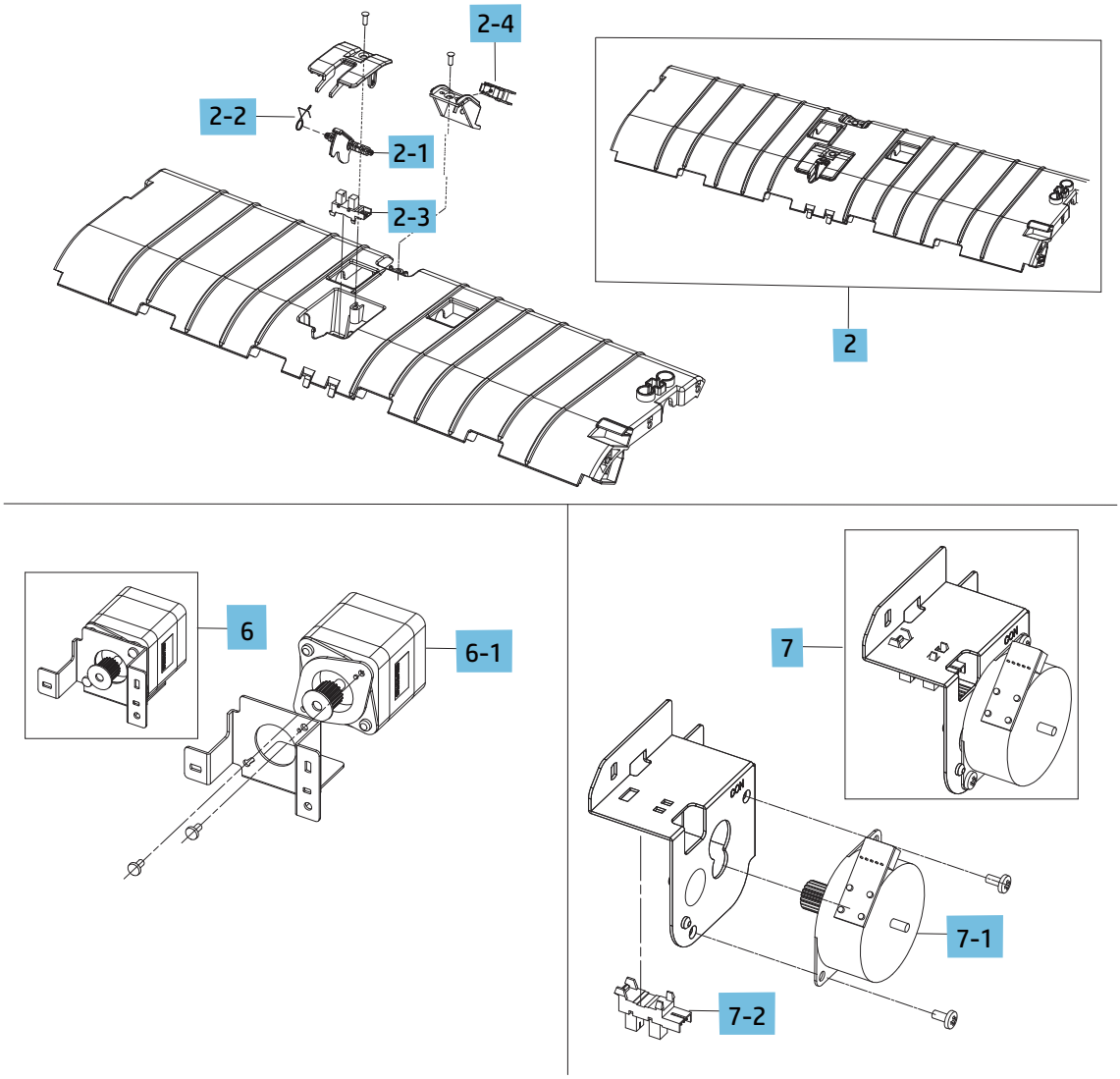


Table 5-57 Top lower cover, Exit motor, Main exit CAM motor

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
2	Top lower feed assembly	JC90-01454A	1	(*)
2-1	Top exit actuator	JC66-04525A	1	(*)
2-2	Spring	JC61-07411A	1	(*)
2-3	Top exit sensor	0604-001393	1	(*)
2-4	Main exit sensor	JC32-00020A	1	(*)
6	Exit motor assembly	JC90-01459A	1	(*)
6-1	Exit motor	JC31-00163B	1	(*)
7	Main exit CAM motor assembly	JC90-01453A	1	(*)
7-1	Main exit CAM motor	JC93-01155A	1	(*)
7-2	Main exit CAM home sensor	0604-001393	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Main exit unit, Paddle unit, End fence unit

Main exit unit, Paddle unit, End fence unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the main exit unit, paddle unit, end fence unit.

Figure 5-98 Main exit unit, Paddle unit, End fence unit

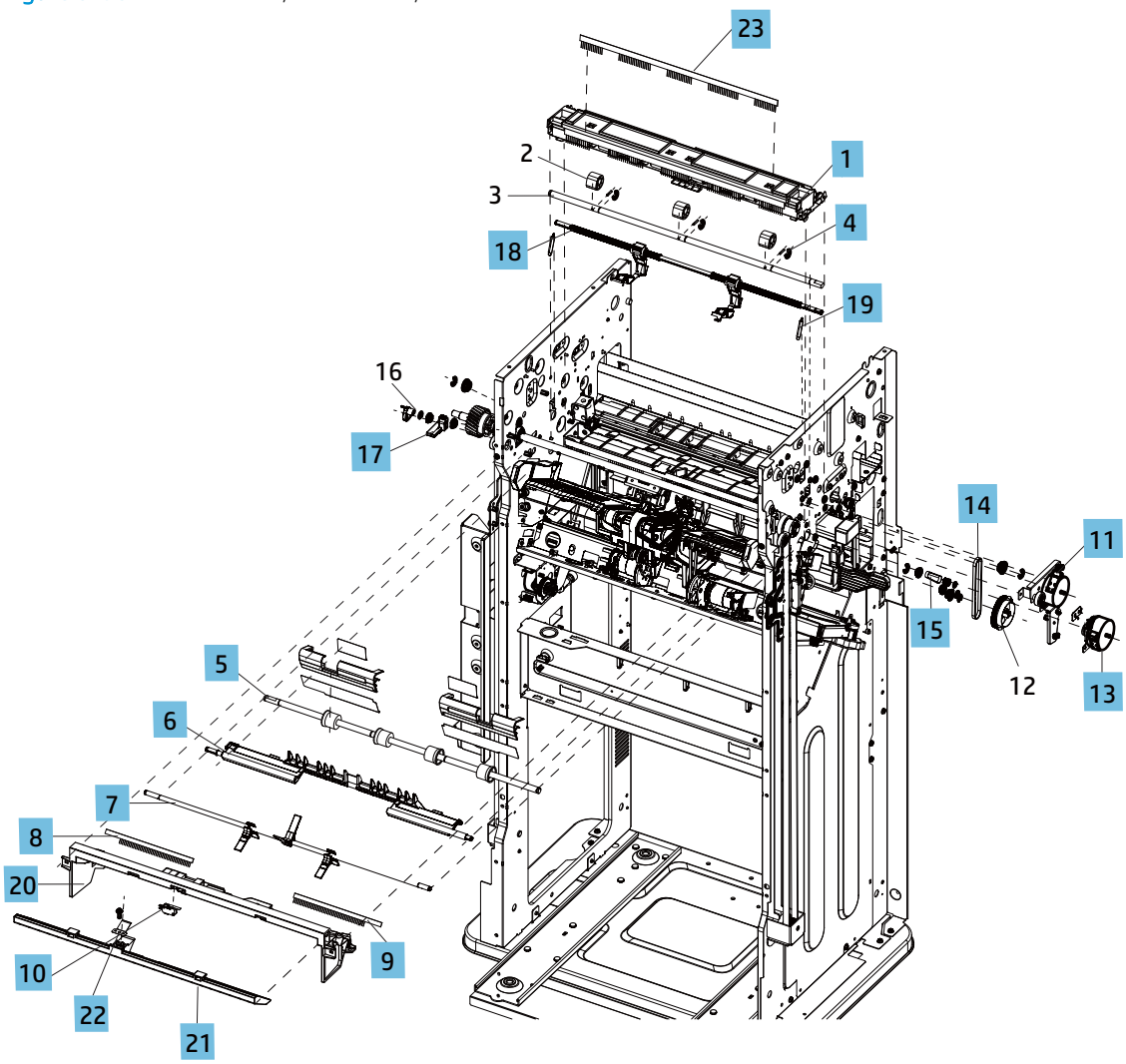


Table 5-58 Main exit unit, Paddle unit, End fence unit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Main exit CAM guide	JC90-01451A	1	(*)
2	Main exit CAM	JC66-04561A	3	
3	Main exit CAM shaft	JC66-04715A	1	
4	Pin	JC70-40360A	3	(*)
5	Main exit roller	JC66-04726A	1	(*)
6	Paddle pesser	JC61-07206A	1	(*)
7	Paddle	JC90-01480A	1	(*)
7-1	Paddle wing	JC90-01463A	2	(*)
7-2	Paddle mid	JC90-01462A	1	(*)
8	Brush	JC67-00819A	1	(*)
9	Brush	JC67-00820A	1	(*)
10	Main output tray top of stack switch	JC39-02316A	1	(*)
11	Paddle motor assembly	JC90-01461A	1	(*)
11-1	Paddle motor	JC93-01001A	1	(*)
11-2	Paddle home sensor	0604-001393	1	(*)
12	Paddle home gear	JC66-04558A	1	
13	End fence motor	JC90-01467A	1	(*)
14	Belt	6602-003270	1	(*)
15	Belt	6602-003640	1	(*)
16	CAM	JC66-04562A	1	
17	CAM guide	JC66-04526A	1	(*)
18	End fence	JC90-01466A	1	(*)
19	Spring	JC61-07414A	2	(*)
20	Main output tray top of stack switch guide	JC61-07189A	1	(*)
21	Main output tray top of stack switch lower guide	JC61-07192A	1	(*)
22	Ground	JC63-04984A	1	(*)
23	Brush	JC67-00817A	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Paddle, Paddle motor

Parts diagram and parts list for the paddle, paddle motor.

Figure 5-99 Paddle, Paddle motor

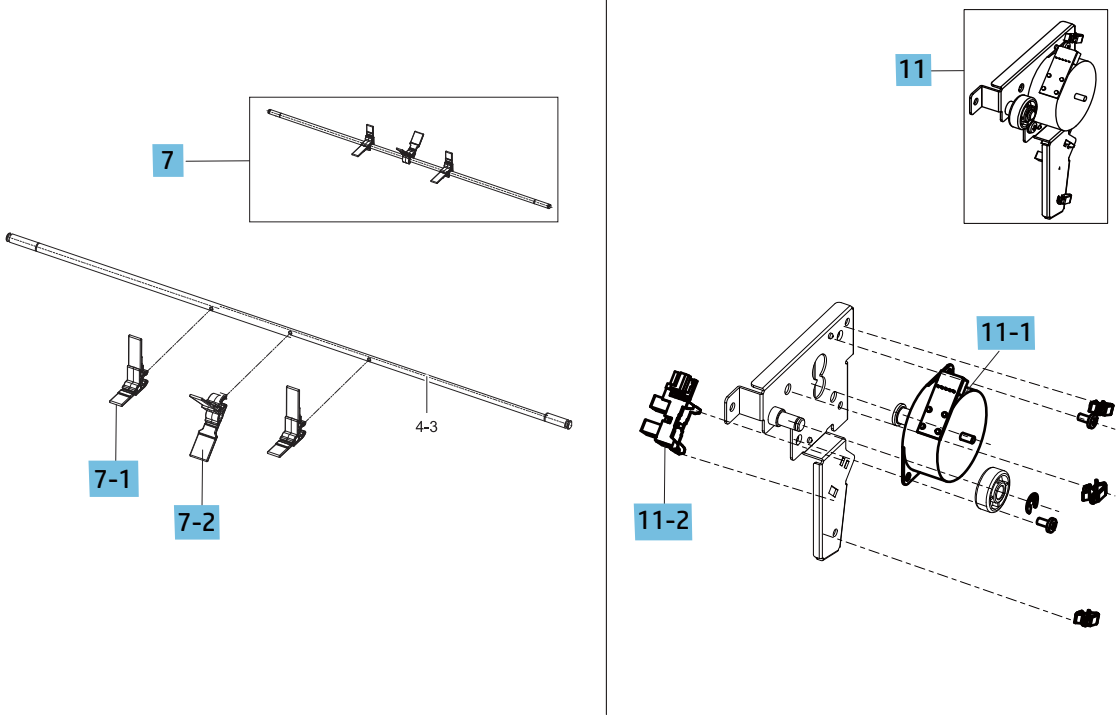


Table 5-59 Paddle, Paddle motor

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
7	Paddle	JC90-01480A	1	(*)
7-1	Paddle wing	JC90-01463A	2	(*)
7-2	Paddle mid	JC90-01462A	1	(*)
11	Paddle motor assembly	JC90-01461A	1	(*)
11-1	Paddle motor	JC93-01001A	1	(*)
11-2	Paddle home sensor	0604-001393	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Tamper unit, Ejector unit, Stapler unit, Main PCA

Tamper unit, Ejector unit, Stapler unit, Main PCA

Parts diagram and parts list for the tamper unit, ejector unit, stapler unit, main PCA.

Figure 5-100 Tamper unit, Ejector unit, Stapler unit, Main PCA

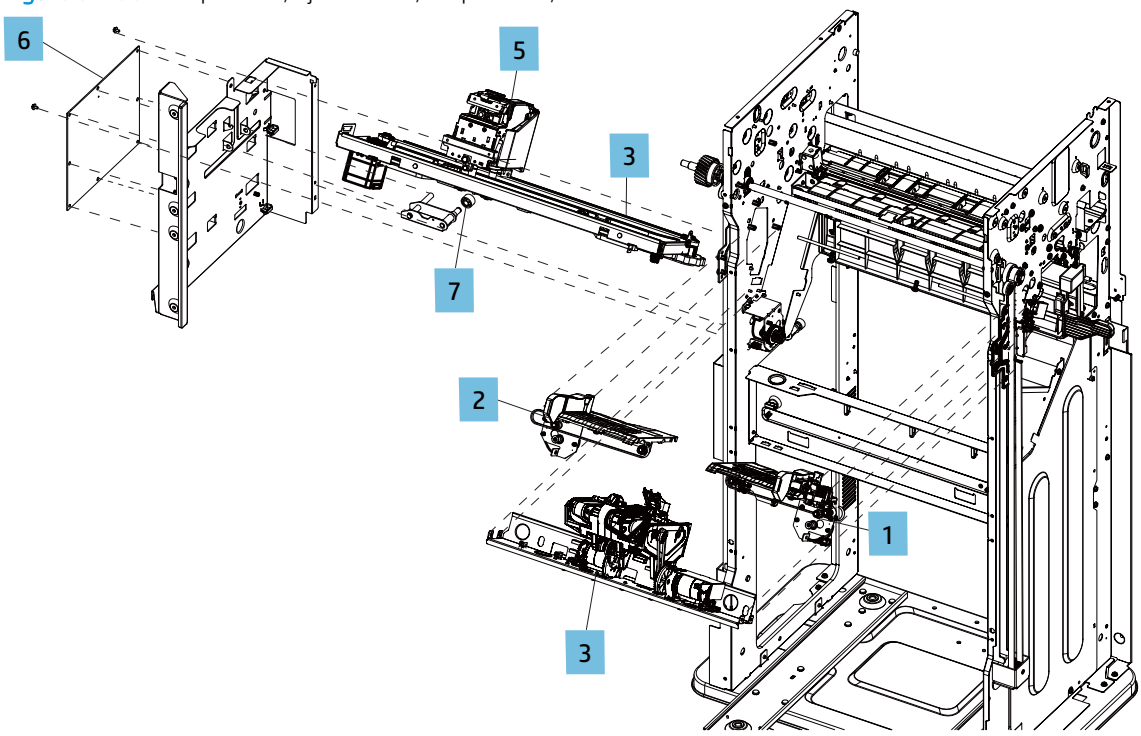


Table 5-60 Tamper unit, Ejector unit, Stapler unit, Main PCA

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Front tamper unit	JC82-00901A	1	(*)
2	Rear tamper unit	JC82-00898A	1	(*)
3	Ejector unit	JC90-01409A	1	(*)
4	Stapler unit	JC82-00894A	1	(*)
5	Stapler cartridge	JC81-09882B	1	(*)
6	Main PCA	JC92-02790B	1	(*)
7	Roller	JC66-04523A	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Tamper unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the tamper unit.

Figure 5-101 Tamper unit

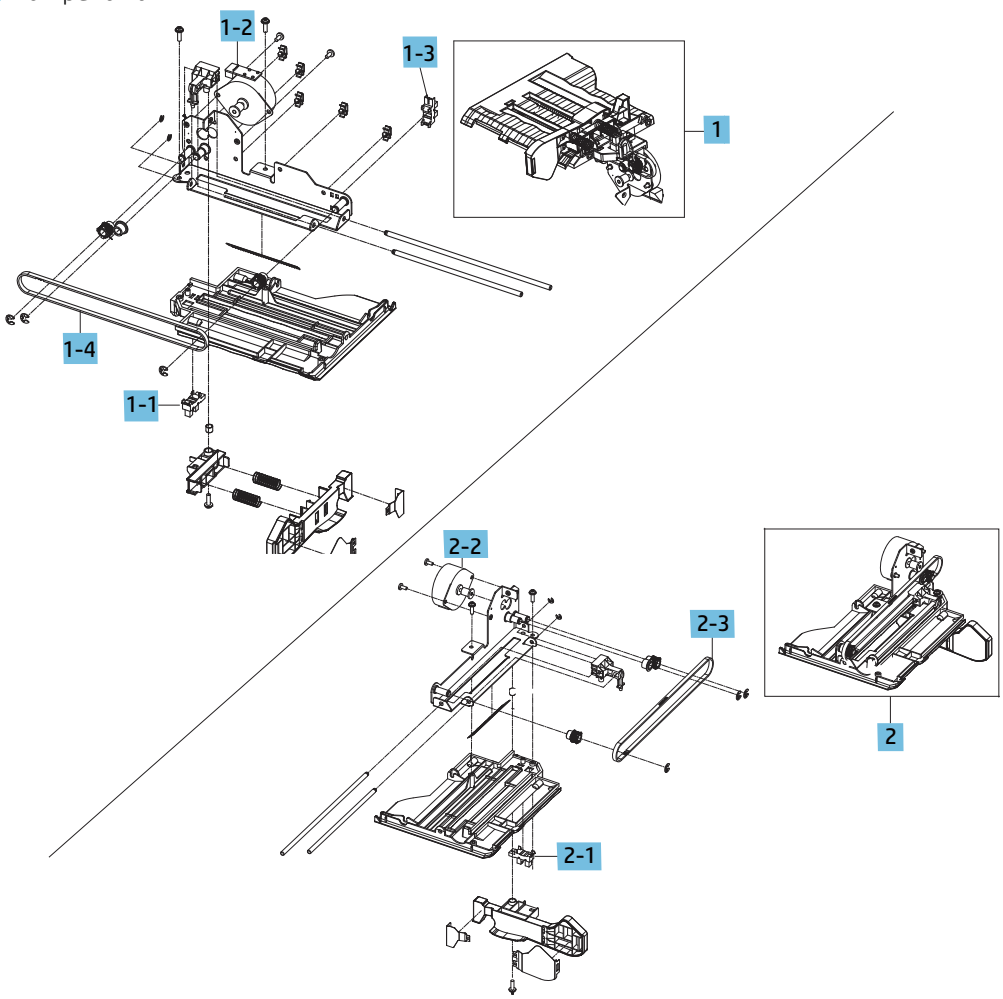


Table 5-61 Tamper unit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Front tamper unit	JC82-00901A	1	(*)
1-1	Front tamper home sensor	0604-001393	1	(*)
1-2	Front tamper motor	JC93-01001A	1	(*)
1-3	End fence home sensor	0604-001393	1	(*)
1-4	Belt	6602-003644	1	(*)
2	Rear tamper unit	JC82-00898A	1	(*)
2-1	Rear tamper home sensor	0604-001393	1	(*)
2-2	Rear tamper motor	JC93-01001A	1	(*)
2-3	Belt	6602-003644	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Ejector unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the ejector unit.

Figure 5-102 Ejector unit

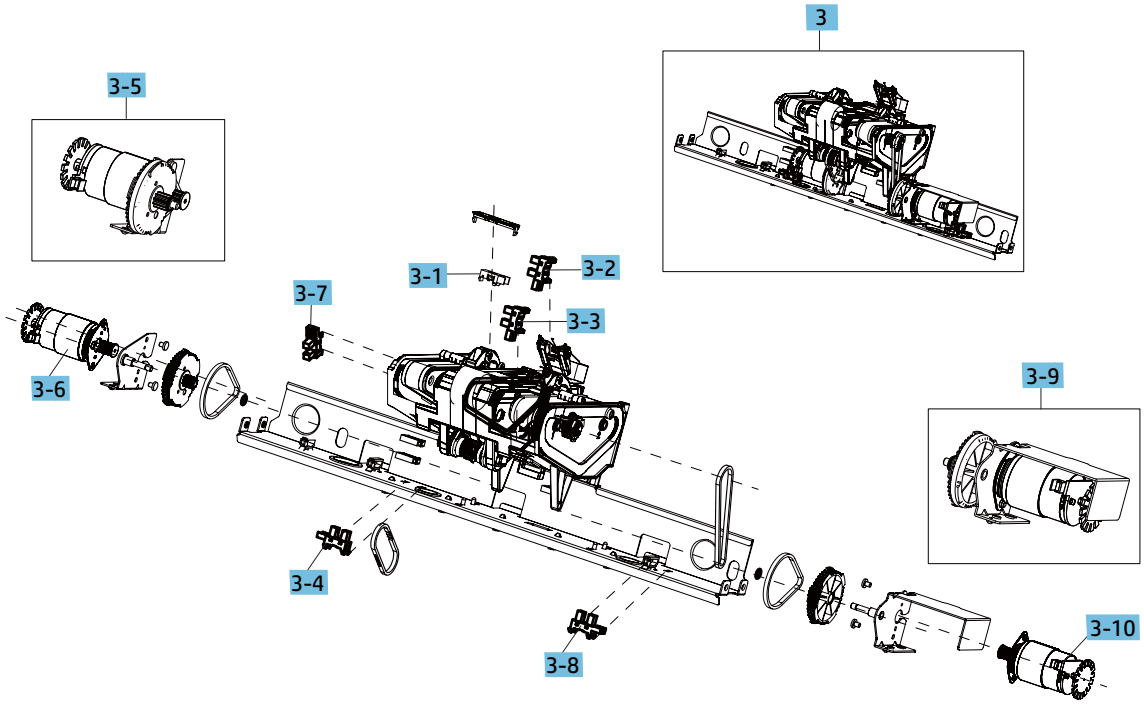


Table 5-62 Ejector unit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
3	Ejector unit	JC90-01409A	1	(*)
3-1	Ejector sensor	JC32-00020A	1	(*)
3-2	Ejector1 home sensor	0604-001415	1	(*)
3-3	Ejector1 end sensor	0604-001415	1	(*)
3-4	Ejector1 motor sensor	0604-001415	1	(*)
3-5	Ejector1 motor assembly	JC90-01411A	1	(*)
3-6	Ejector1 motor	JC93-01168A	1	(*)
3-7	Ejector2 home sensor	0604-001415	1	(*)
3-8	Ejector2 motor sensor	0604-001415	1	(*)
3-9	Ejector2 motor assembly	JC90-01410A	1	(*)
3-10	Ejector2 motor	JC93-01168A	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Paper holding unit, Main output tray unit

Paper holding unit, Main output tray unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the paper holding unit, main output tray unit.

Figure 5-103 Paper holding unit, Main output tray unit

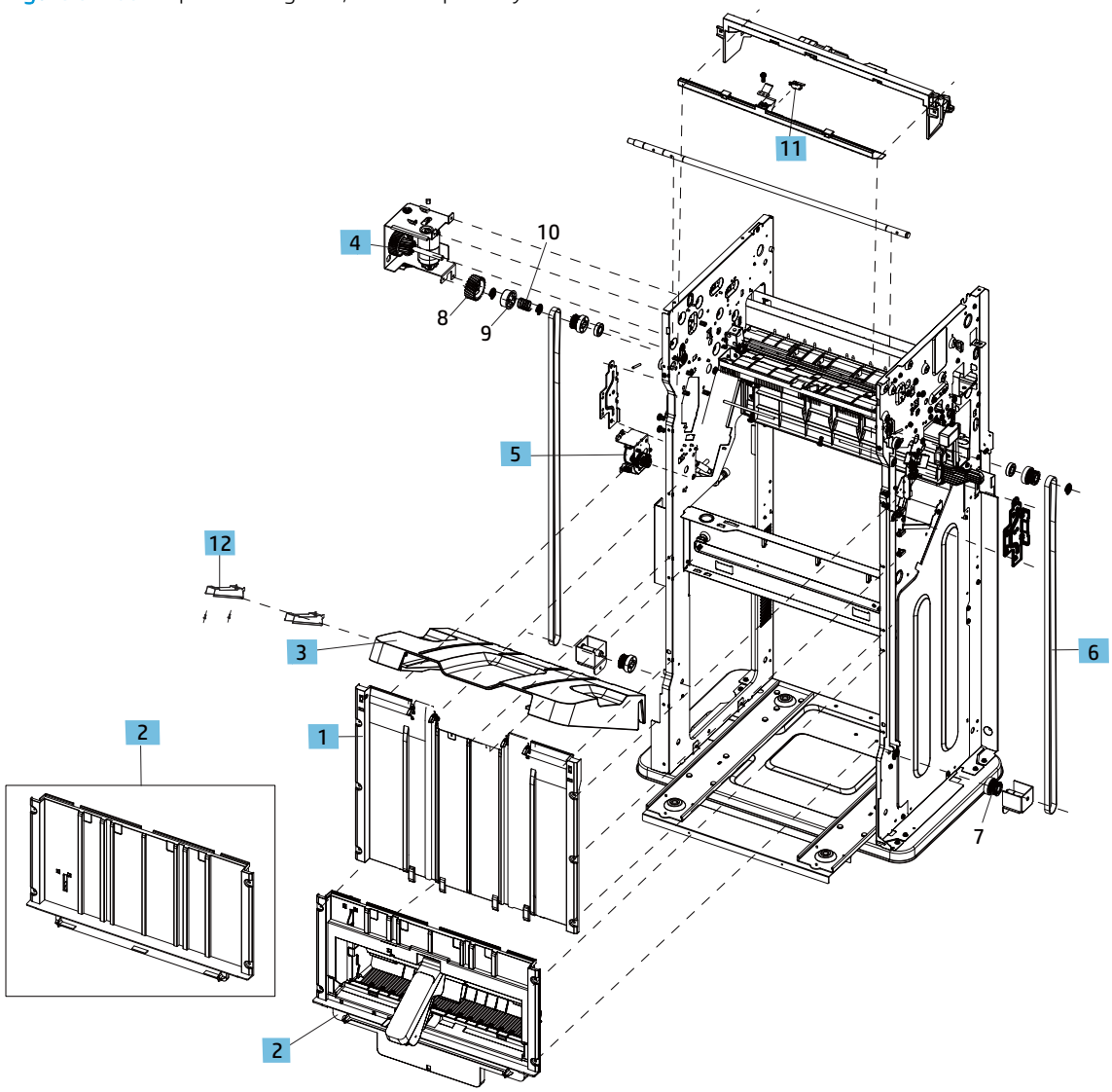


Table 5-63 Paper holding unit, Main output tray unit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Left upper cover	JC90-01475B	1	(*)
2	Left lower cover(Booklet finisher)	JC90-01417B	1	(*)
2	Left lower cover(Stapler-stacker finisher)	JC90-01771B	1	(*)
3	Main output tray	JC63-05002B	1	(*)
4	Main output tray motor aseembly	JC90-01415B	1	(*)
5	Paper holding motor	JC90-01414A	1	(*)
6	Belt	6602-003652	2	(*)
7	Gear	JC66-04663A	4	
8	Gear	JC66-04605A	1	
9	Gear	JC61-07305A	1	
10	Spring	JC61-07429A	1	
11	Main output tray top of stack switch	JC39-02316A	1	(*)
12	Main output tray support	JC61-06668A	2	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Left upper cover

Parts diagram and parts list for the left upper cover.

Figure 5-104 Left upper cover

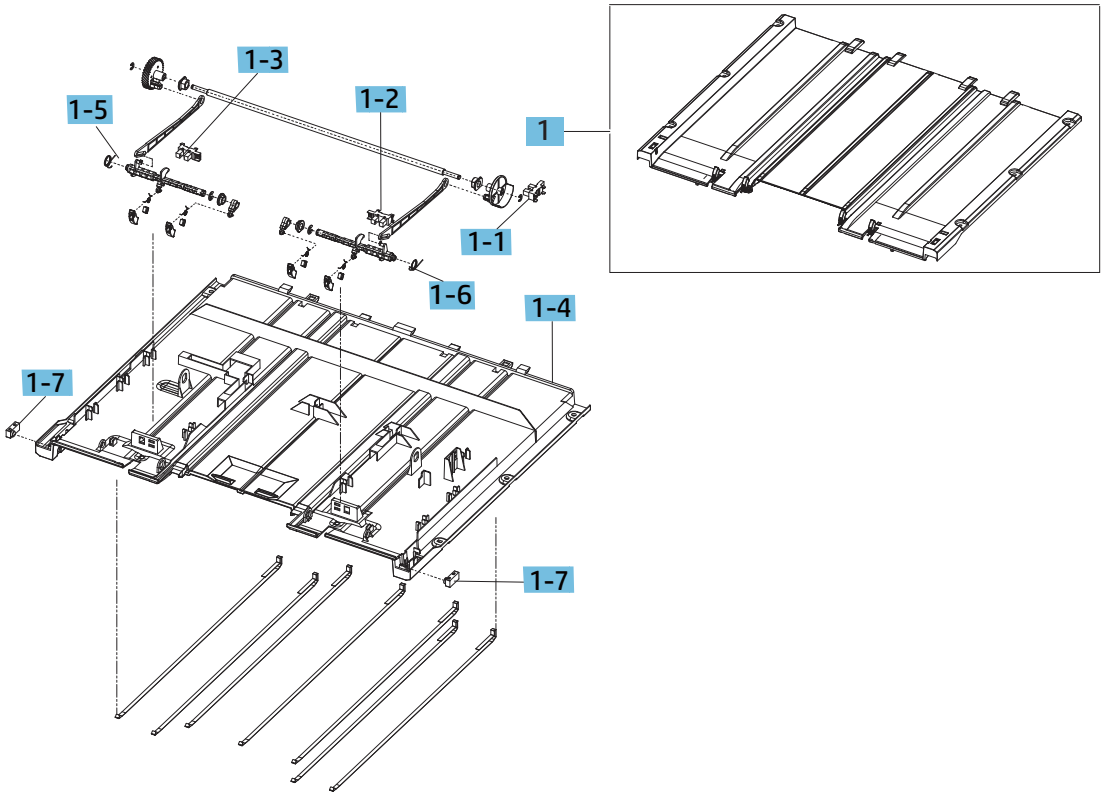


Table 5-64 Left upper cover

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Left upper cover	JC90-01475B	1	(*)
1-1	Paper holding home sensor	0604-001393	1	(*)
1-2	Front paper holding sensor	0604-001393	1	(*)
1-3	Rear paper holding sensor	0604-001393	1	(*)
1-4	Left upper cover	JC63-04999B	1	(*)
1-5	Spring	JC61-07428A	1	(*)
1-6	Spring	JC61-07427A	1	(*)
1-7	Main output tray top of stack sensor	JC82-01039A	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Left lower cover

Parts diagram and parts list for the left lower cover.

Figure 5-105 Left lower cover

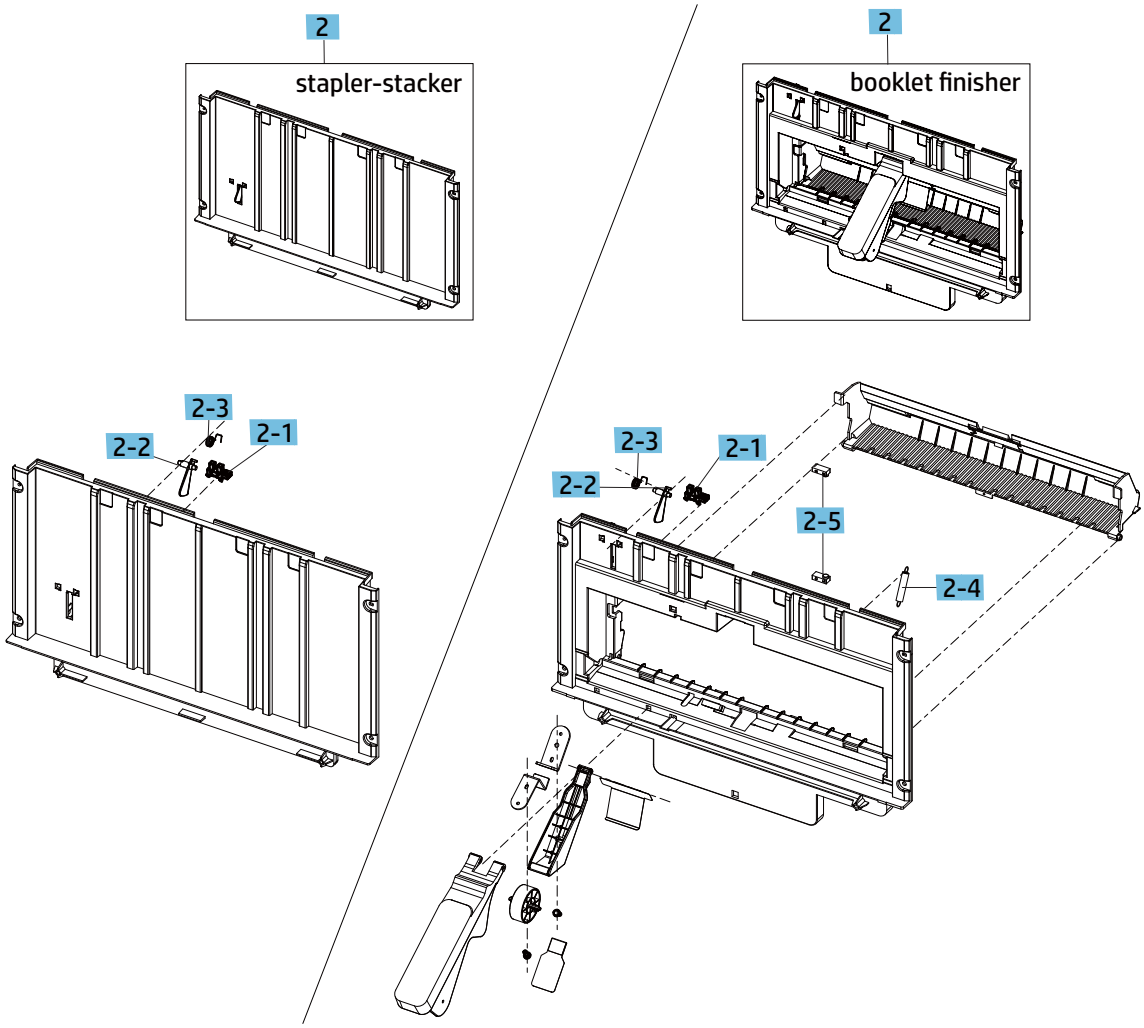


Table 5-65 Left lower cover

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
2	Left lower cover (Booklet finisher)	JC90-01417B	1	(*)
2	Left lower cover (Stapler-stacker finisher)	JC90-01771B	1	(*)
2-1	Main output tray lower limit switch	0604-001415	1	(*)
2-2	Main output tray lower limit actuator	JC81-07930A	1	(*)
2-3	Spring	JC81-09396A	1	(*)
2-4	Spring (Booklet finisher)	JC61-07407A	1	(*)
2-5	Booklet output tray sensor (Booklet finisher)	JC82-01039A	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Main output tray motor, Paper holding motor

Parts diagram and parts list for the main output tray motor, paper holding motor.

Figure 5-106 Main output tray motor, paper holding motor

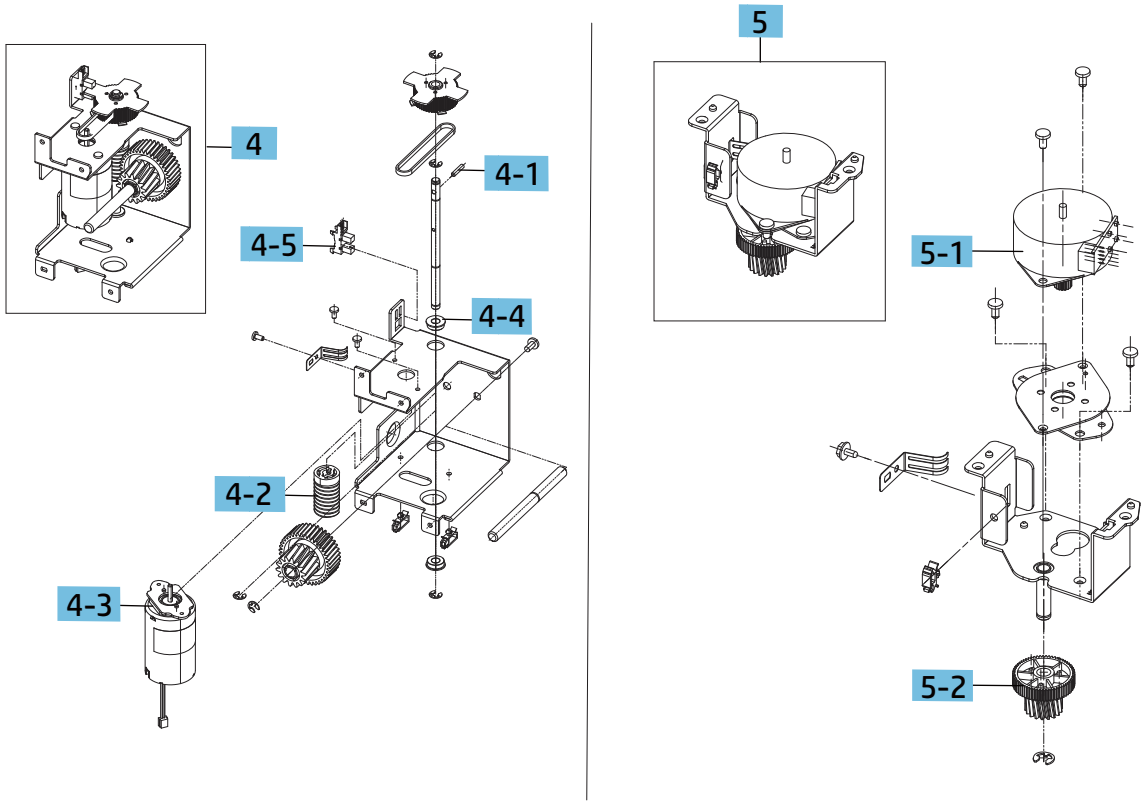


Table 5-66 Main output tray motor, paper holding motor

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
4	Main output tray motor assembly	JC90-01415B	1	(*)
4-1	Pin	JC70-40542A	1	(*)
4-2	Gear	JC81-07637A	1	(*)
4-3	Main output tray motor	JC31-00178B	1	(*)
4-4	Bearing	6601-001478	1	(*)
4-5	Main output tray motor sensor	0604-001415	1	(*)
5	Paper holding motor assembly	JC90-01414A	1	(*)
5-1	Paper holding motor	JC93-01156A	1	(*)
5-2	Gear	JC66-04604A	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Cover & hanress

Buffer unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the buffer unit.

Figure 5-107 Buffer unit

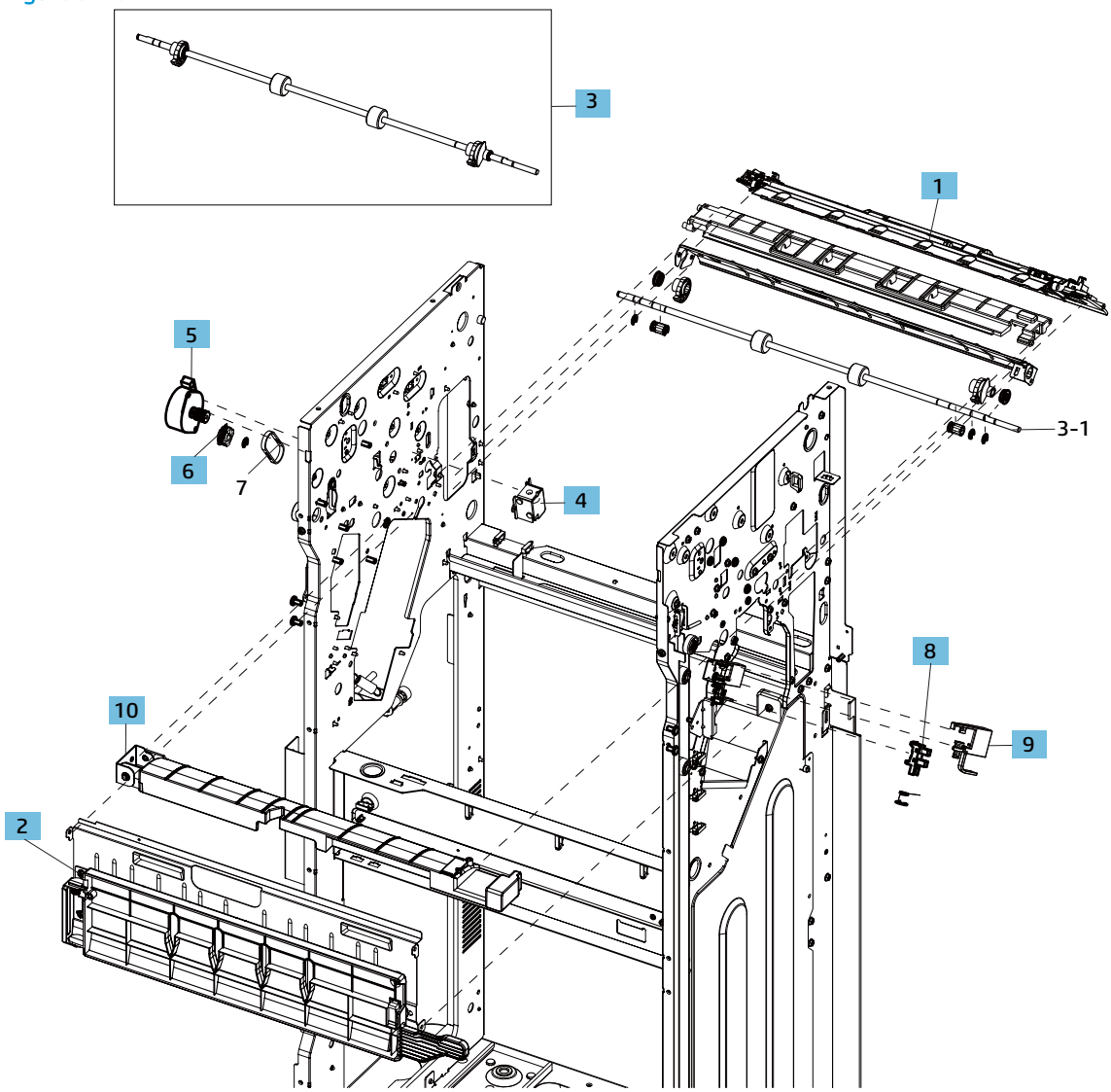


Table 5-67 Buffer unit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Buffer diverter assembly	JC90-01674A	1	(*)
2	Front jam cover assembly	JC90-01457A	1	(*)
3	Budder roller assembly	JC90-01672A	1	(*)
3-1	Buffer roller	JC66-05161A	1	
4	Buffer solenoid	JC90-01675A	1	(*)
5	Buffer motor	JC93-01152A	1	(*)
6	Gear	JC66-04582A	1	(*)
7	Belt	6602-003641	1	
8	Manual staple sensor	0604-001415	1	(*)
9	Manual staple actuator	JC66-04528A	1	(*)
10	Buffer jam cover	JC90-01450A	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Buffer diverter, Front jam cover

Parts diagram and parts list for the buffer diverter, front jam cover.

Figure 5-108 Buffer diverter, Front jam cover

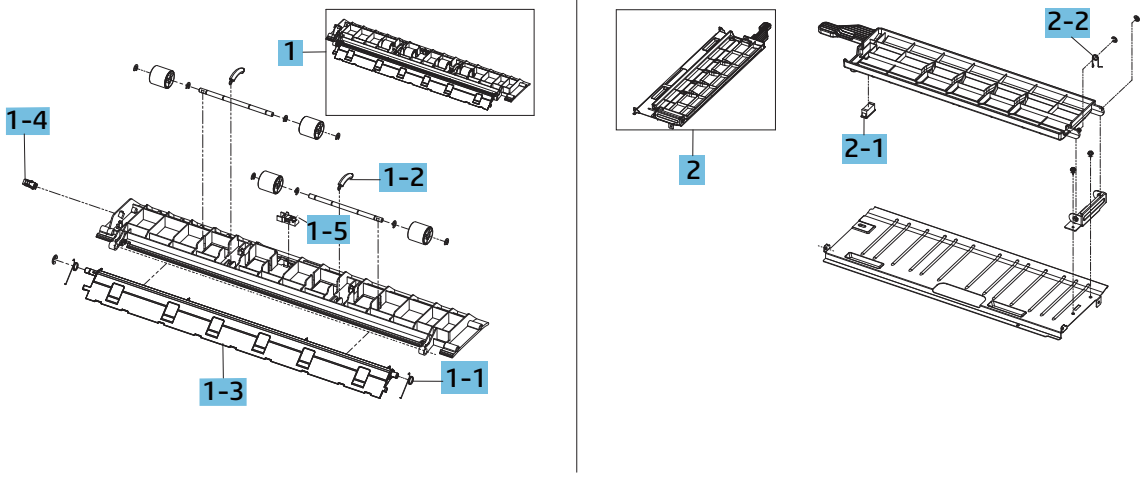


Table 5-68 Buffer diverter, Front jam cover

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Buffer diverter assembly	JC90-01674A	1	(*)
1-1	Spring	JC61-07413A	2	(*)
1-2	Spring	JC61-07409A	2	(*)
1-3	Bufer diverter	JC61-07204A	1	(*)
1-4	Buffer home sensor	0604-001393	1	(*)
1-5	Buffer sensor	JC32-00020A	1	(*)
2	Front jam cover assembly	JC90-01457A	1	(*)
2-1	Magnet	JC81-08263A	1	(*)
2-2	Spring	JC61-07418A	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Parts, diagrams (Booklet finisher)

Learn about parts, diagrams (booklet finisher)

NOTE: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

Booklet maker

Parts diagram and parts list for the booklet maker.

Figure 5-109 Booklet maker

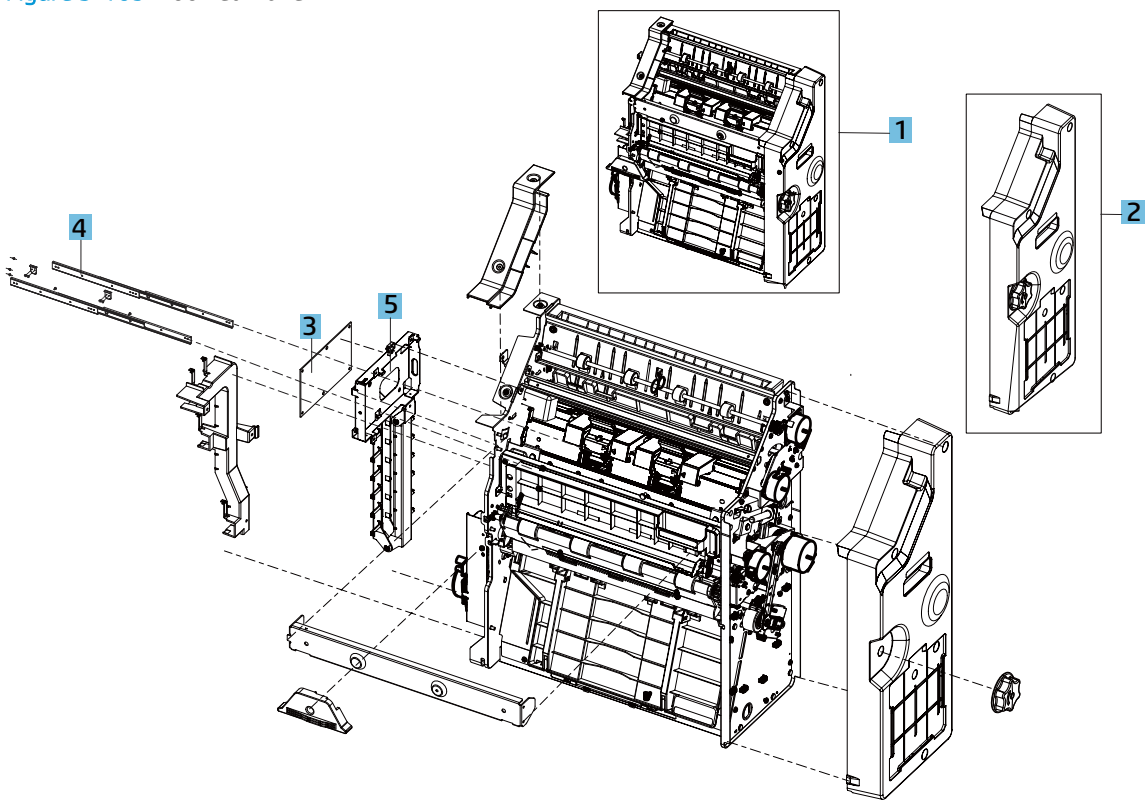


Table 5-69 Booklet maker

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Booklet maker	JC82-00905A	1	(*)
2	Booklet front cover	JC90-01478B	1	(*)
3	Booklet maker PCA	JC92-02790B	1	(*)
4	Rail	6102-003369	2	(*)
5	Harness guide	JC90-01477A	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet entrance unit, Booklet presser unit

Booklet entrance unit, Booklet presser unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the booklet entrance unit, booklet presser unit.

Figure 5-110 Booklet entrance unit, Booklet presser unit

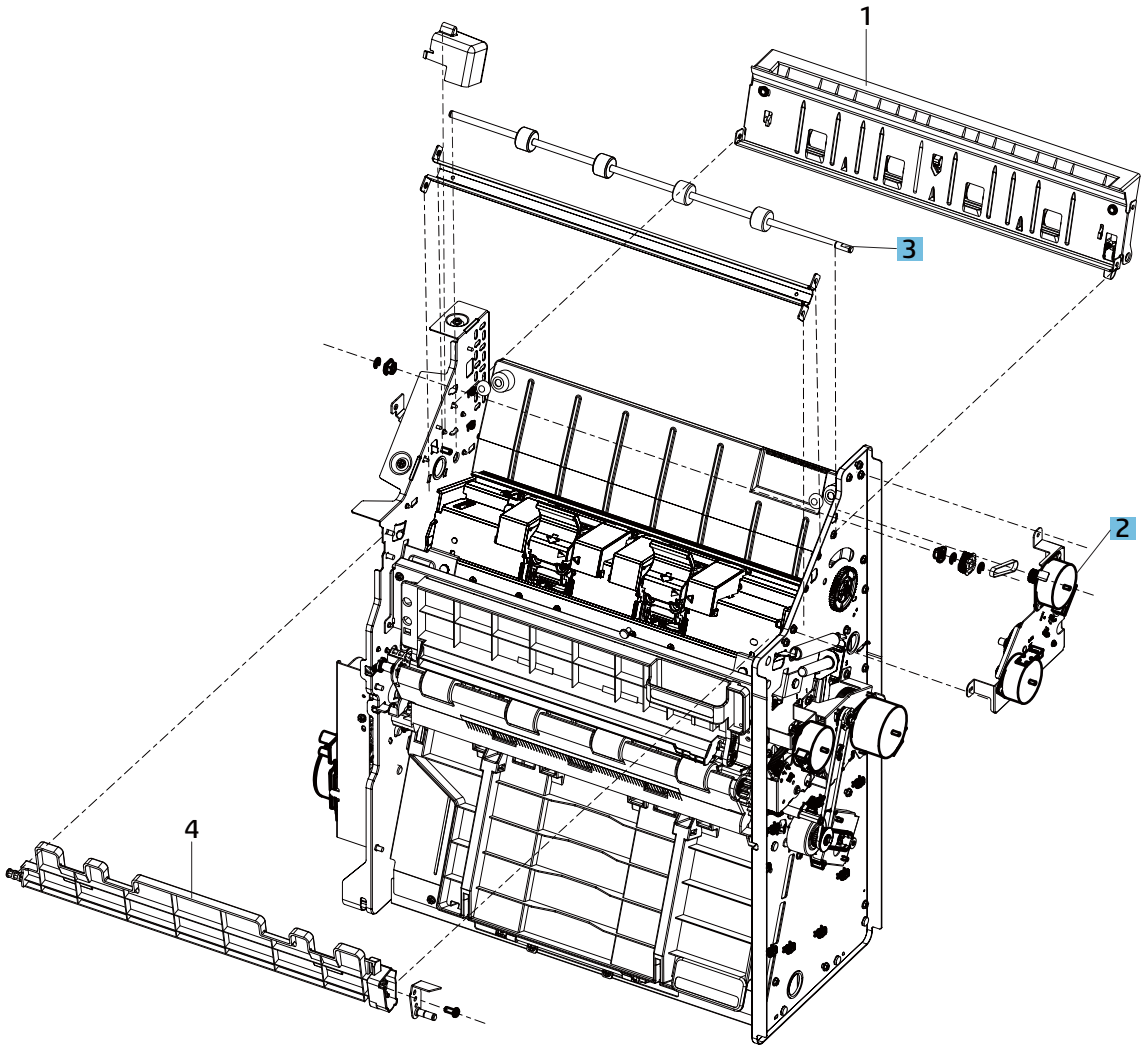


Table 5-70 Booklet entrance unit, Booklet presser unit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Booklet entrance unit	JC90-01424A	1	
2	Booklet entrance-presser motor assembly	JC90-01425A	1	(*)
3	Booklet entrace roller	JC66-04717A	1	(*)
4	Booklet presser unit	JC61-07237A	1	

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet entrance, Booklet entrance-presser motor

Parts diagram and parts list for the booklet entrance, booklet entrance-presser motor.

Figure 5-111 Booklet entrance, Booklet entrance-presser motor

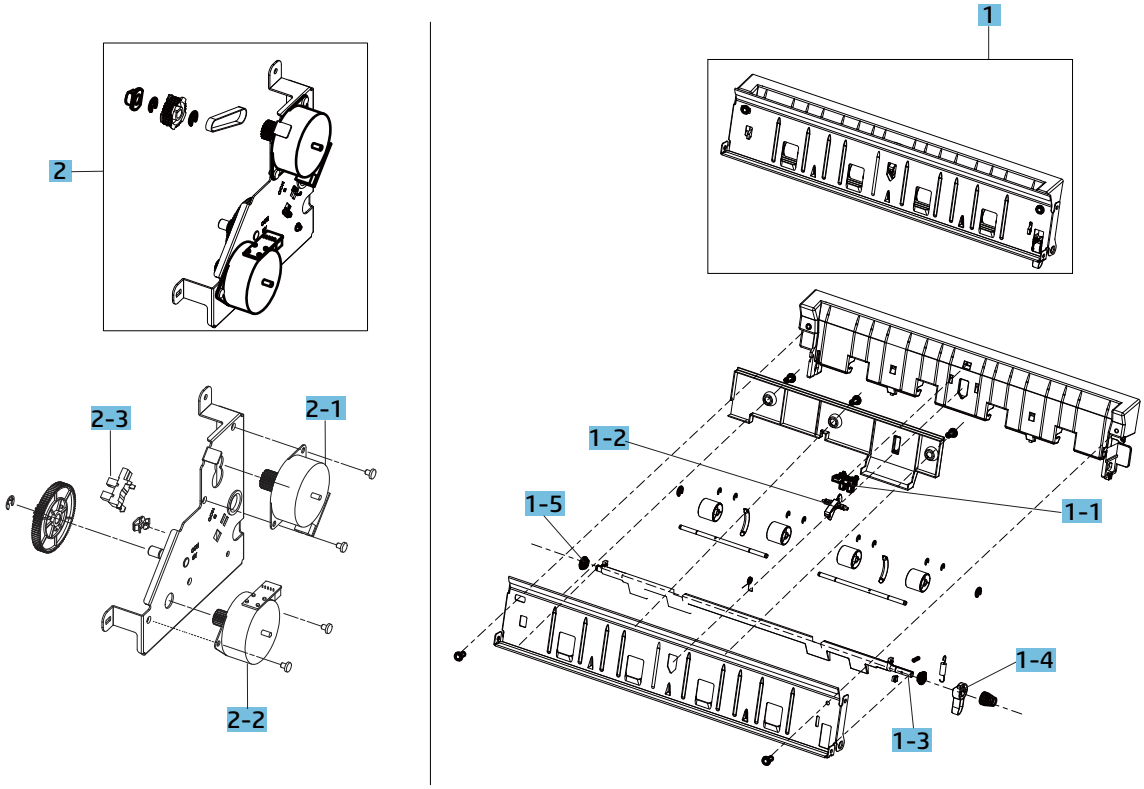


Table 5-71 Booklet entrance, Booklet entrance-presser motor

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Booklet entrance unit	JC90-01424A	1	
1-1	Booklet entrance sensor	0604-001415	1	(*)
1-2	Booklet entrance actuator	JC66-04520A	1	(*)
1-3	Booklet presser guide	JC61-07331A	1	
1-4	Booklet presser guide actuator	JC66-04644A	1	(*)
1-5	Bushing	JC61-02372A	2	(*)
2	Booklet entrance-presser motor assembly	JC90-01425A	1	(*)
2-1	Booklet entrance motor	JC93-01152A	1	(*)
2-2	Booklet presser motor	JC93-01155A	1	(*)
2-3	Booklet presser home sensor	0604-001393	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet stapler unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the booklet stapler unit.

Figure 5-112 Booklet stapler unit

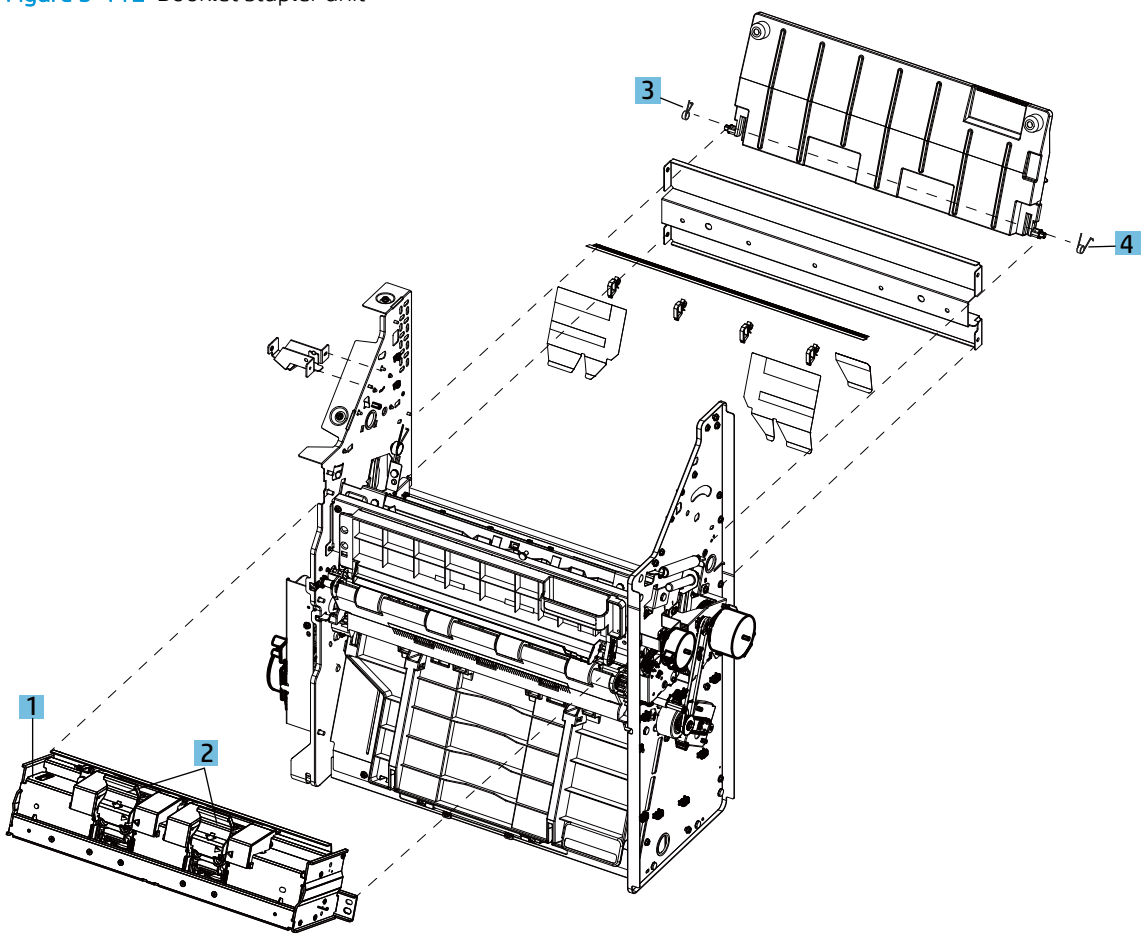


Table 5-72 Booklet stapler unit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Booklet stapler unit	JC82-00725A	1	(*)
2	Booklet stapler cartridge	JC81-09881B	2	(*)
3	Spring	JC61-07398A	1	(*)
4	Spring	JC61-07397A	2	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet tamper unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the booklet tamper unit.

Figure 5-113 Booklet tamper unit

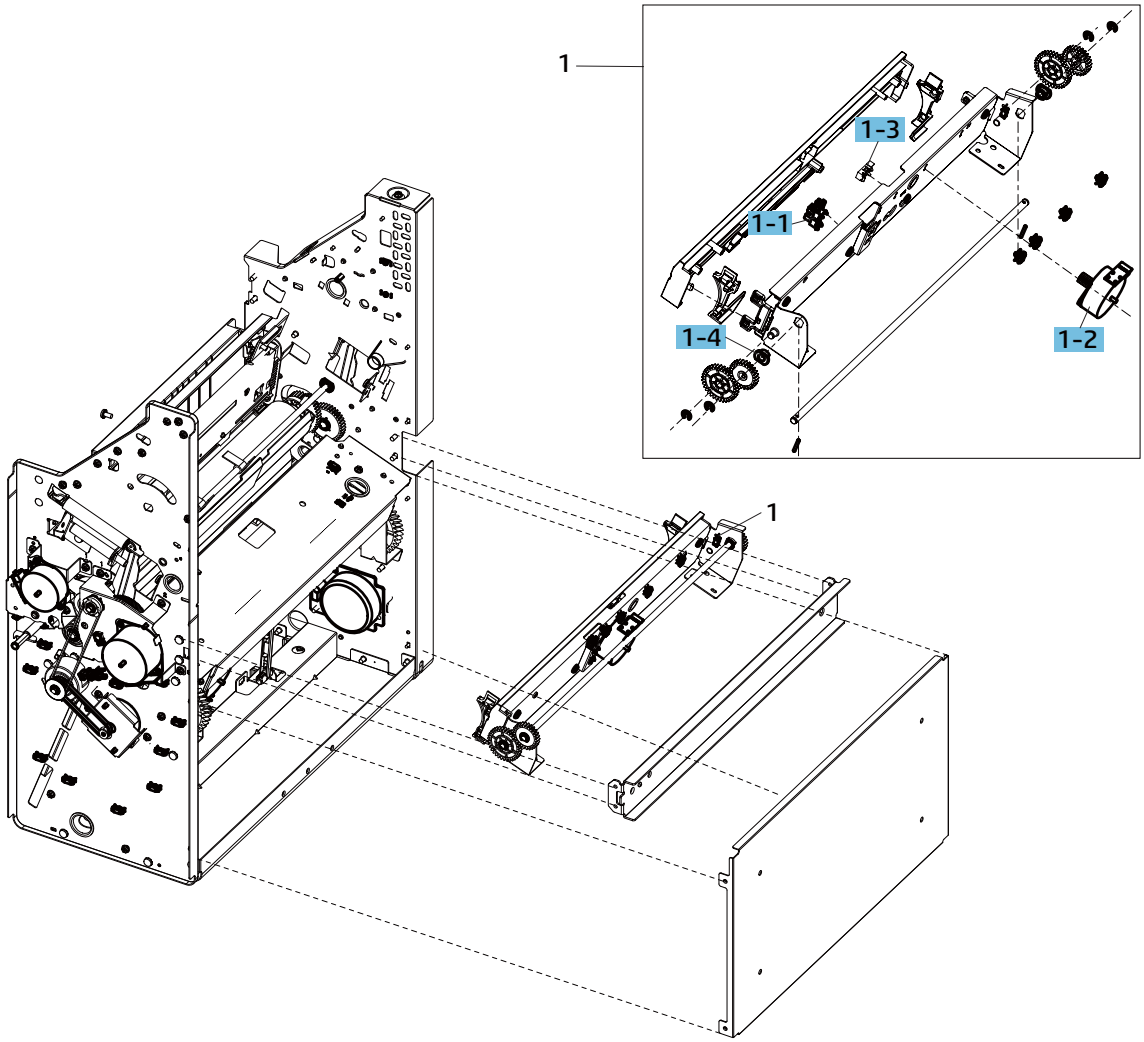


Table 5-73 Booklet tamper unit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Booklet tamper unit	JC90-01431A	1	
1-1	Booklet tamper home sensor	0604-001393	1	(*)
1-2	Booklet tamper motor	JC93-01155A	1	(*)
1-3	Booklet tamper sensor	JC32-00020A	1	(*)
1-4	Bushing	JC61-00423A	2	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet fold unit, Booklet diverter unit, Booklet exit unit

Booklet fold unit, Booklet diverter unit, Booklet exit unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the booklet fold unit, booklet diverter unit, booklet exit unit.

Figure 5-114 Booklet fold unit, Booklet diverter unit, Booklet exit unit

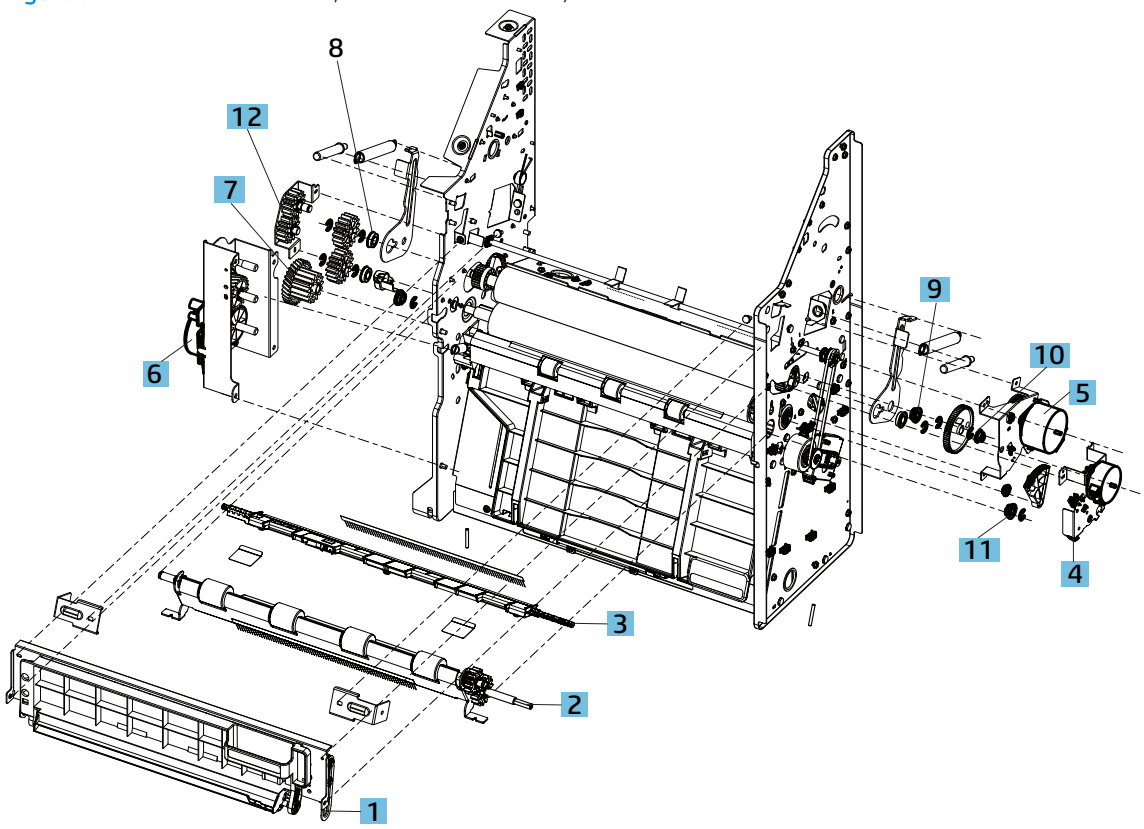


Table 5-74 Booklet fold unit, Booklet diverter unit, Booklet exit unit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Booklet c-fold blade assembly	JC90-01438A	1	(*)
2	Booklet exit unit	JC90-01400A	1	(*)
3	Booklet diverter	JC90-01398A	1	(*)
4	Booklet diverter motor assembly	JC90-01397A	1	(*)
5	Booklet c-fold blade motor assembly	JC90-01396A	1	(*)
6	Booklet fold motor assembly	JC90-01436A	1	(*)
7	Gear	JC66-04573A	1	(*)
8	Bushing	6601-003037	3	
9	Bushing	JC61-00426A	1	(*)
10	Bushing	JC61-00423A	2	(*)
11	Bushing	JC61-02372A	1	(*)
12	Gear	JC90-01479A	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet c-fold blade, Booklet exit, Booklet diverter

Parts diagram and parts list for the booklet c-fold blade, booklet exit, booklet diverter.

Figure 5-115 Booklet c-fold blade, Booklet exit, Booklet diverter

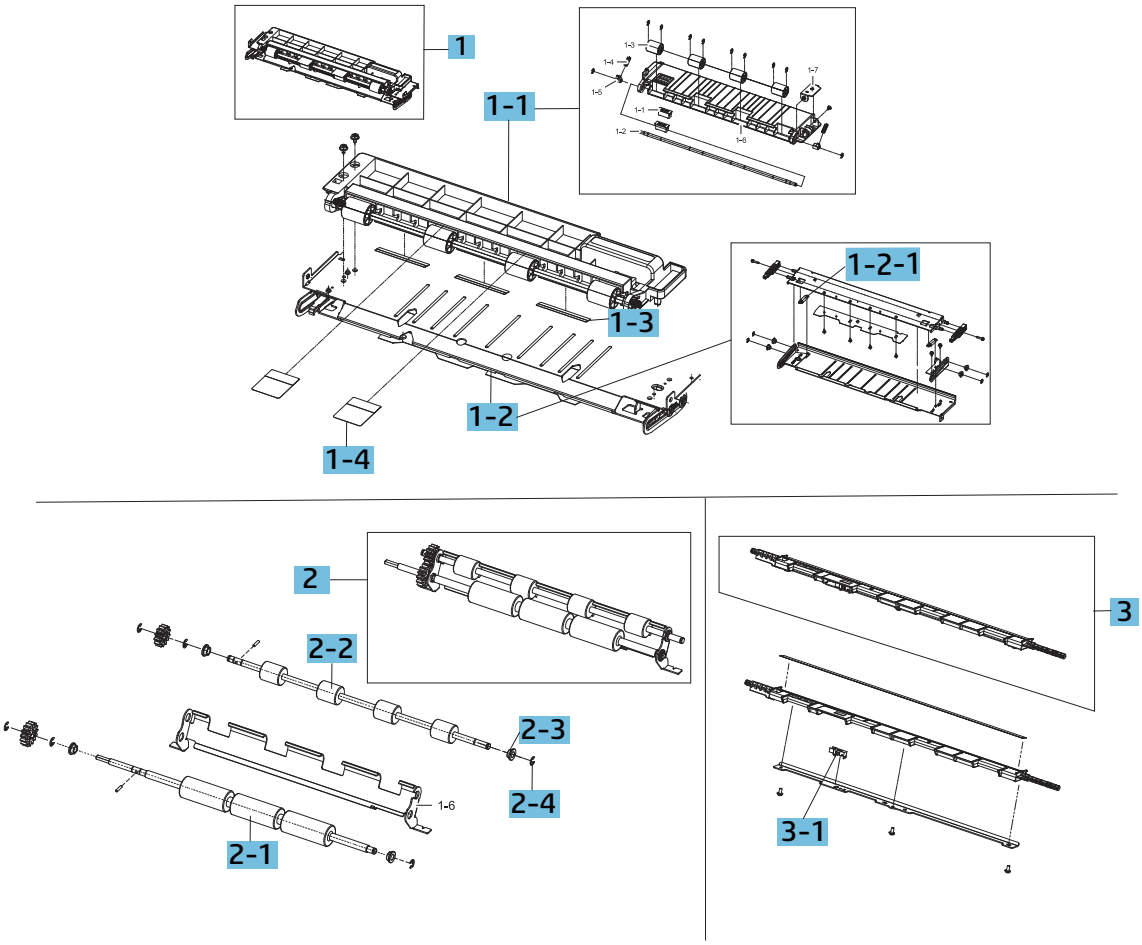


Table 5-75 Booklet c-fold blade, Booklet exit, Booklet diverter

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Booklet c-fold blade assembly	JC90-01438A	1	(*)
1-1	Booklet sub exit roller assembly	JC90-01395A	1	(*)
1-2	Booklet c-fold blade	JC90-01394A	1	(*)
1-2-1	Spring	JC61-07391A	2	(*)
1-3	Jam guide sheet	JC63-05044A	3	(*)
1-4	C-fold exit sheet	JC63-05041A	2	(*)
2	Booklet exit unit	JC90-01400A	1	(*)
2-1	Booklet c-fold roller	JC66-04744A	1	
2-2	Booklet exit roller	JC66-04721A	1	(*)
2-3	Bushing	JC61-00426A	4	(*)
2-4	E-ring	6044-000129	2	(*)
3	Booklet diverter	JC90-01398A	1	(*)
3-1	Booklet exit sensor	JC32-00020A	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet diverter motor, Booklet c-fold motor, Booklet fold motor

Parts diagram and parts list for the booklet diverter motor, booklet c-fold motor, booklet fold motor.

Figure 5-116 Booklet diverter motor, Booklet c-fold motor, Booklet fold motor

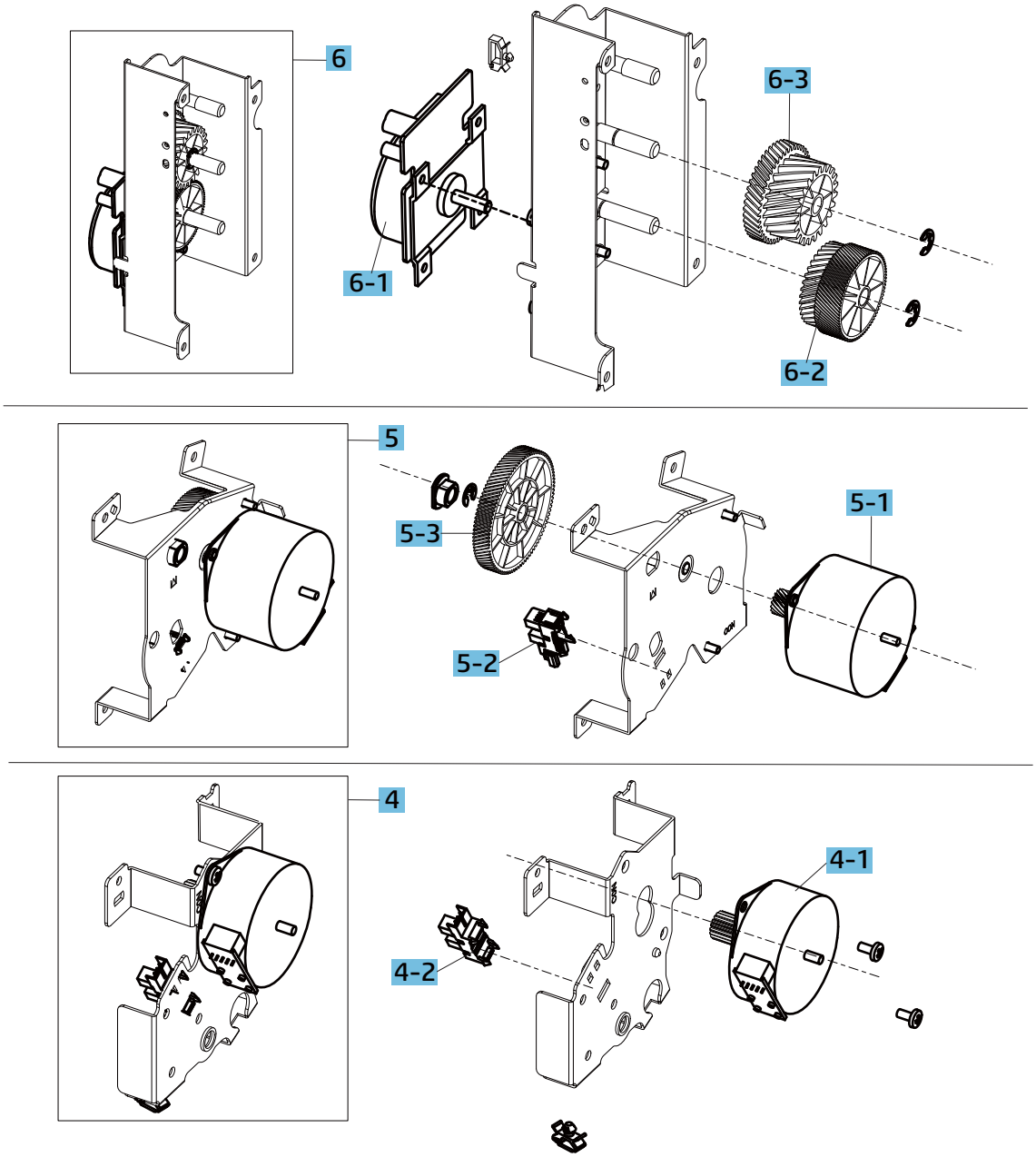


Table 5-76 Booklet diverter motor, Booklet c-fold motor, Booklet fold motor

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
4	Booklet diverter motor assembly	JC90-01397A	1	(*)
4-1	Booklet diverter motor	JC93-01153A	1	(*)
4-2	Booklet diverter home sensor	0604-001415	1	(*)
5	Booklet c-fold blade motor assembly	JC90-01396A	1	(*)
5-1	Booklet c-fold blade motor	JC93-01154A	1	(*)
5-2	Booklet c-fold blade home sensor	0604-001393	1	(*)
5-3	Gear	JC66-04579A	1	(*)
6	Booklet fold motor assembly	JC90-01436A	1	(*)
6-1	Booklet fold motor	JC31-00144A	1	(*)
6-2	Gear	JC66-04592A	1	(*)
6-3	Gear	JC66-04593A	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet fold roller

Parts diagram and parts list for the booklet fold roller.

Figure 5-117 Booklet fold roller

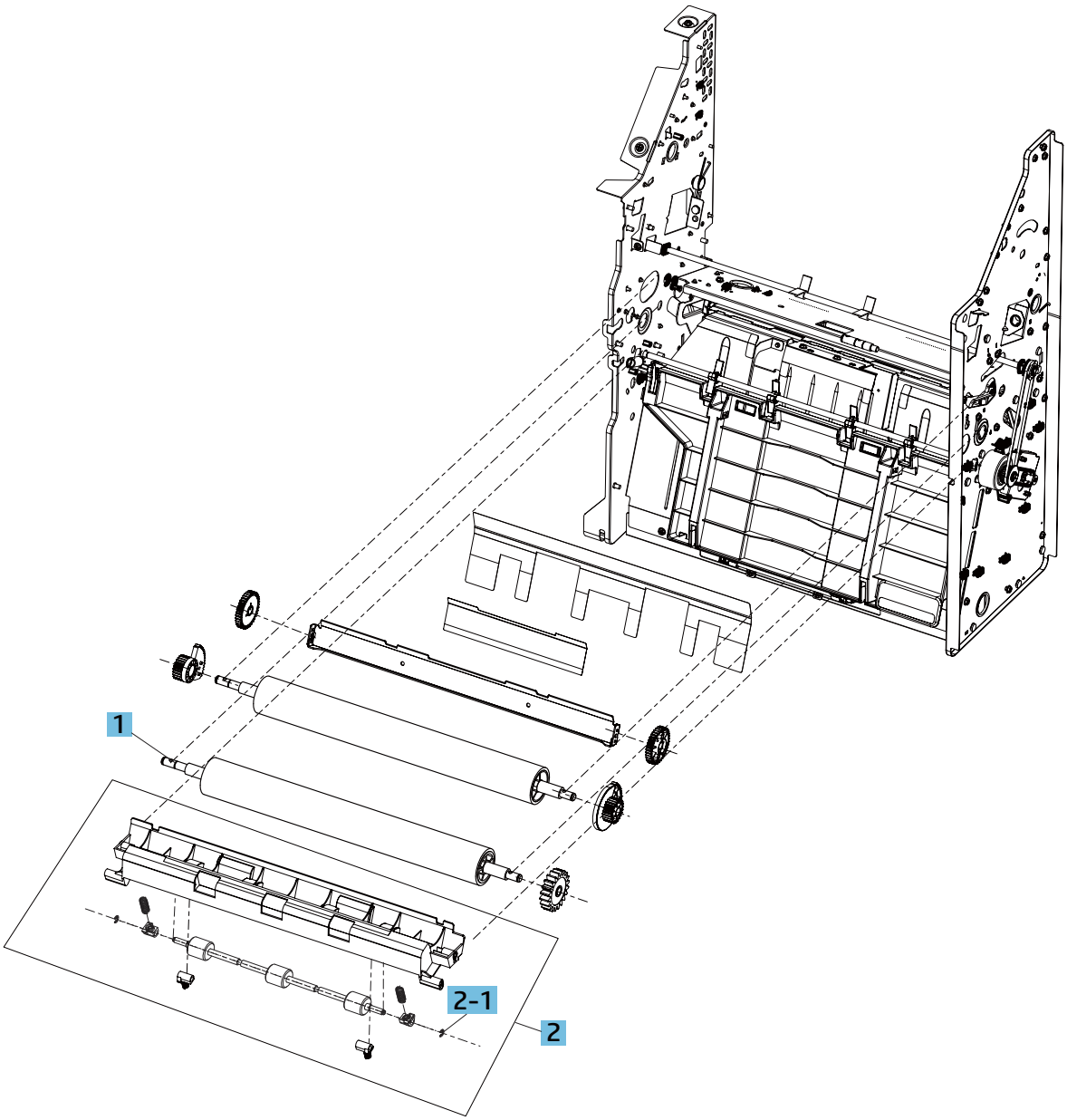


Table 5-77 Booklet fold roller

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Booklet fold roller	JC66-04748A	2	(*)
2	Booklet fold exit	JC90-01399A	1	(*)
2-1	C-ring	6044-000159	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet blade motor, Booklet blade

Parts diagram and parts list for the booklet blade motor, booklet blade.

Figure 5-118 Booklet blade motor, Booklet blade

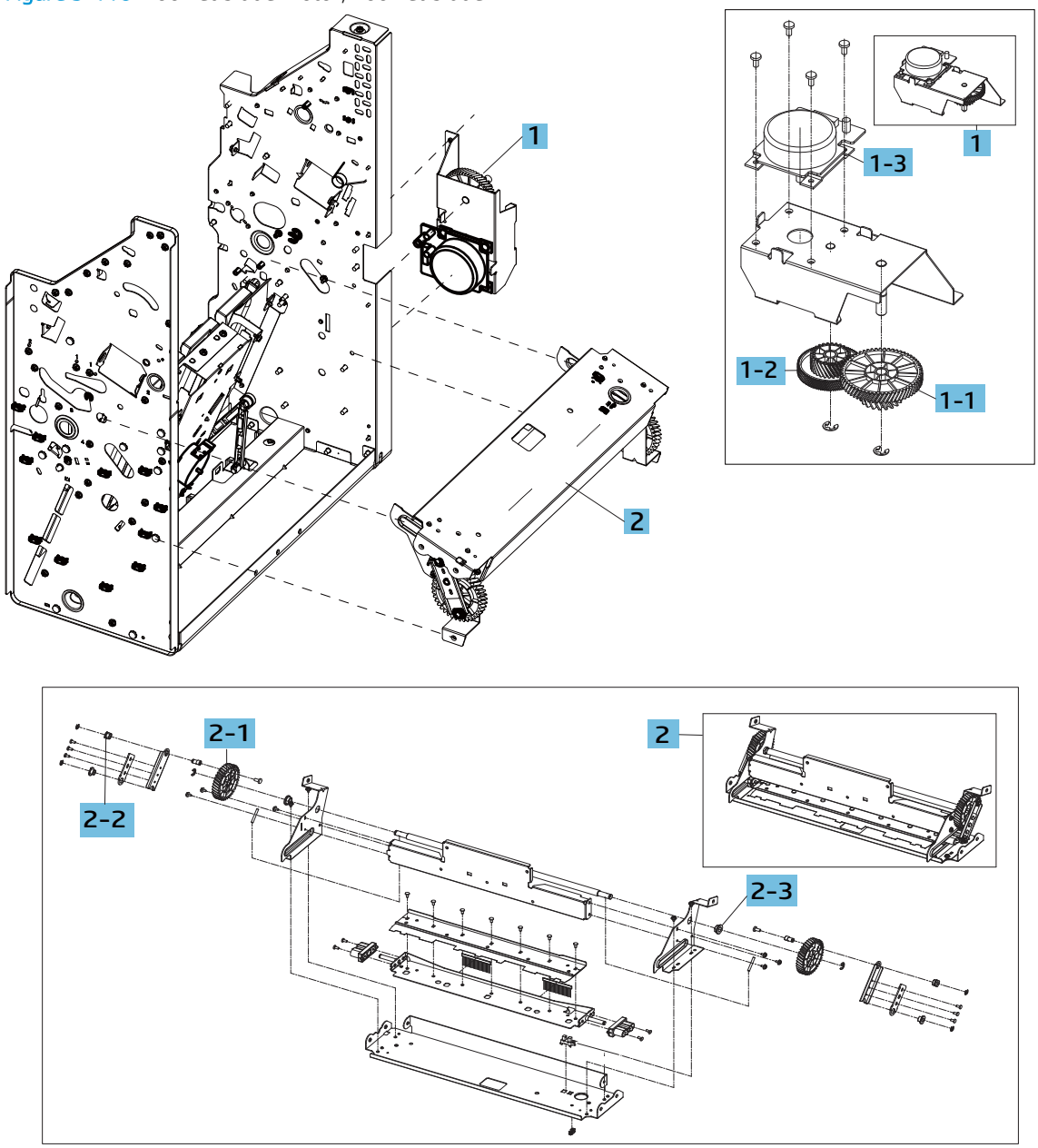


Table 5-78 Booklet blade motor, Booklet blade

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Booklet blade motor assembly	JC90-01435A	1	(*)
1-1	Gear	JC66-04595A	1	(*)
1-2	Gear	JC66-04594A	1	(*)
1-3	Booklet blade motor	JC31-00144A	1	(*)
2	Booklet blade assembly	JC90-01437A	1	(*)
2-1	Gear	JC66-04591A	1	(*)
2-2	Bushing	JC61-00423A	1	(*)
2-3	Bushing	JC61-00426A	2	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet paddle unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the booklet paddle unit.

Figure 5-119 Booklet paddle unit

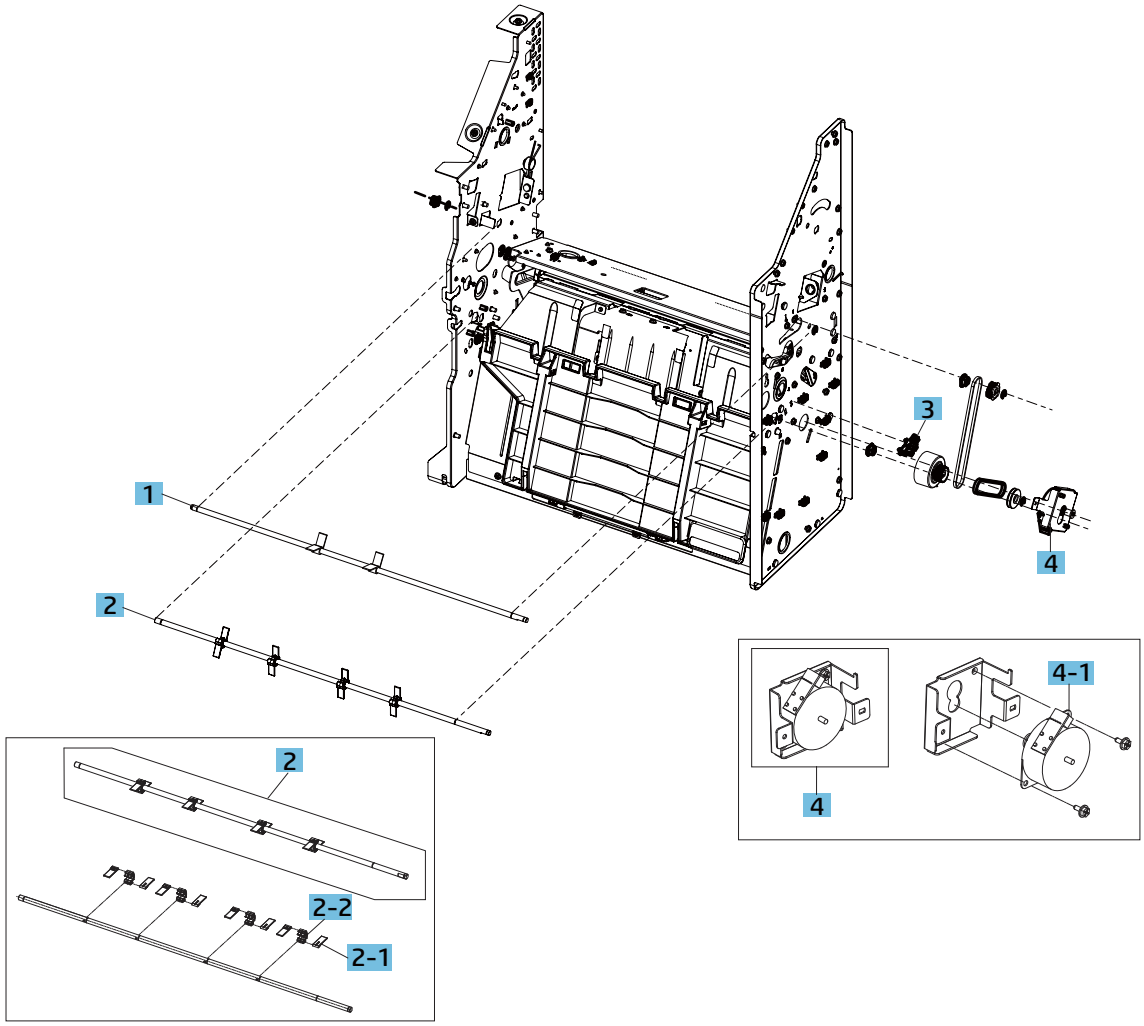


Table 5-79 Booklet paddle unit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Upper booklet paddle	JC66-04718A	1	(*)
2	Lower booklet paddle	JC90-01429A	1	(*)
2-1	Lower booklet paddle wing	JC61-07225A	1	(*)
2-2	Lower booklet paddle mid	JC66-04719A	1	(*)
3	Booklet paddle home sensor	0604-001393	1	(*)
4	Booklet paddle motor assembly	JC90-01430A	1	(*)
4-1	Booklet paddle motor	JC93-01001A	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet end fence unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the booklet end fence unit.

Figure 5-120 Booklet end fence unit

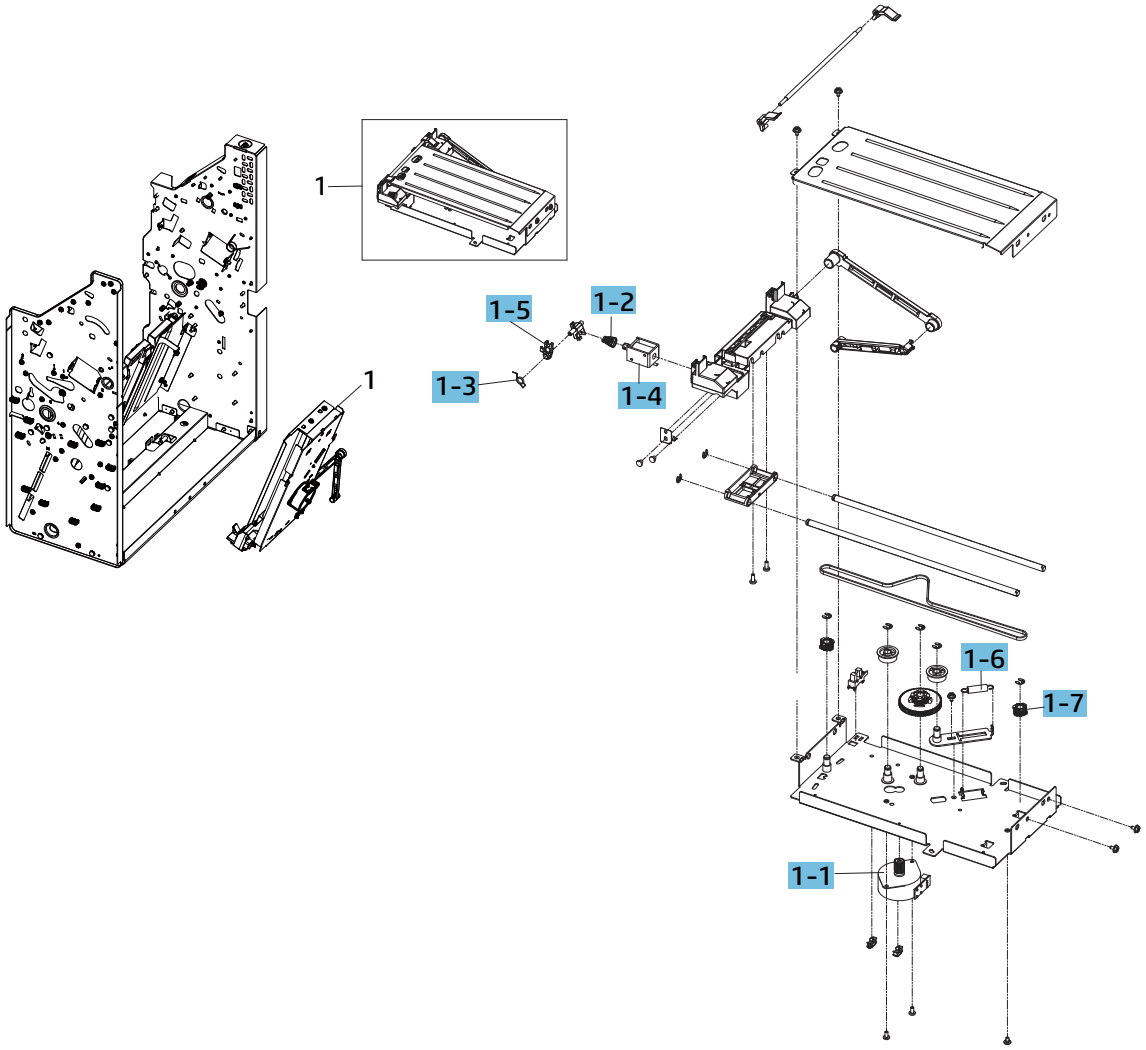


Table 5-80 Booklet end fence unit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Booklet end fence unit	JC90-01432A	1	
1-1	Booklet end fence motor	JC93-01155A	1	(*)
1-2	Spring	JC61-07403A	1	(*)
1-3	Spring	JC61-07401A	1	(*)
1-4	Solenoid	JC33-00038A	1	(*)
1-5	Booklet end fence home sensor	0604-001393	1	(*)
1-6	Spring	JC61-07400A	1	(*)
1-7	Gear	JC66-04583A	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Booklet maker base

Parts diagram and parts list for the booklet maker base.

Figure 5-121 Booklet maker base

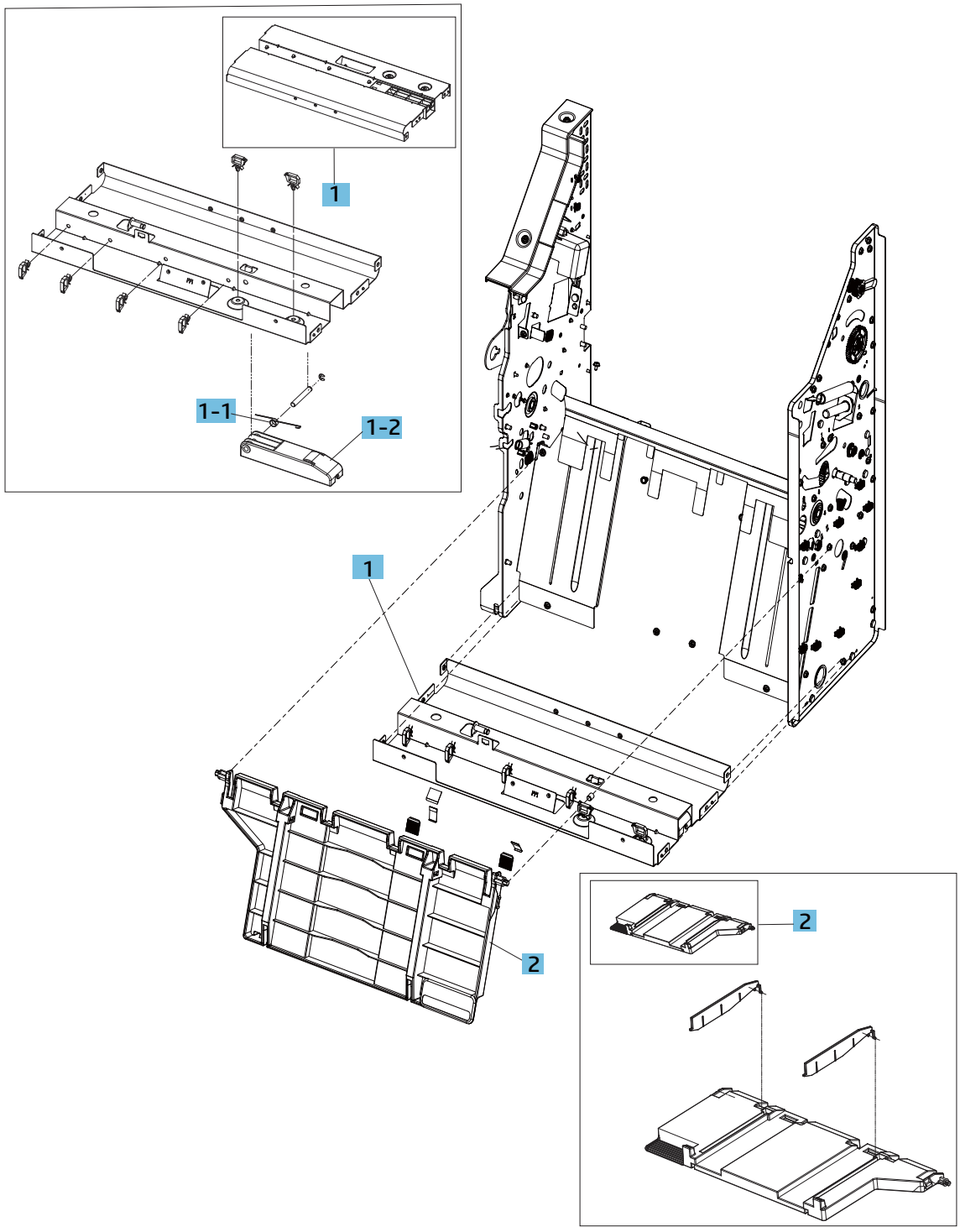


Table 5-81 Booklet maker base

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty	Orderable
1	Booklet maker base	JC90-01476A	1	(*)
1-1	Spring	JC61-07392A	1	(*)
1-2	Booklet maker base support	JC61-07279A	1	(*)
2	Booklet output jam cover	JC90-01433A	1	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Bridge unit

Removal and replacement: Bridge entrance sensor (S1)

Learn how to remove and replace the bridge entrance sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the bridge entrance sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-82 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC32-00020A	Bridge entrance sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the bridge from the machine

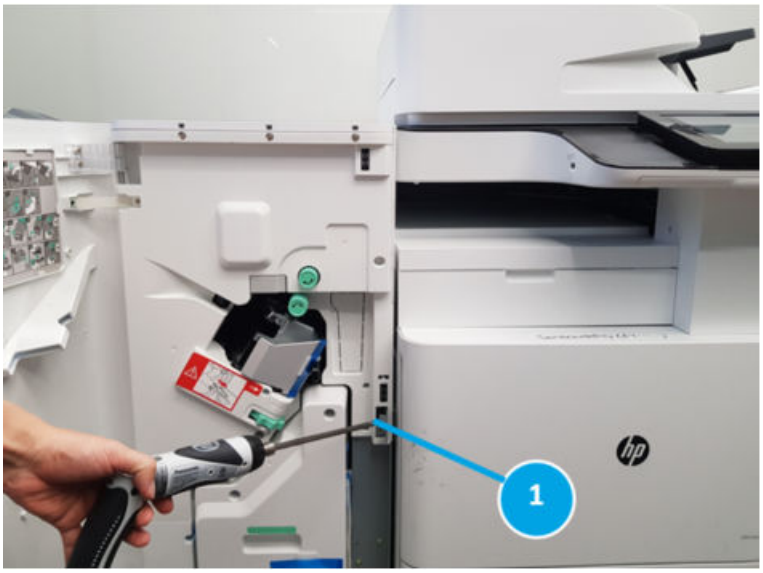
Follow these steps to remove the bridge from the machine.

1. Open the front door (callout 1)

Figure 5-122 Open the front door

2. Pull the locker out (callout 1)

Figure 5-123 Pull the locker out



3. Separate the finisher from the printer and disconnect the two connectors (callout 1)

Figure 5-124 Separate the finisher from the printer and disconnect the two connectors

4. Pull out the bridge unit(Callout 1) from the printer

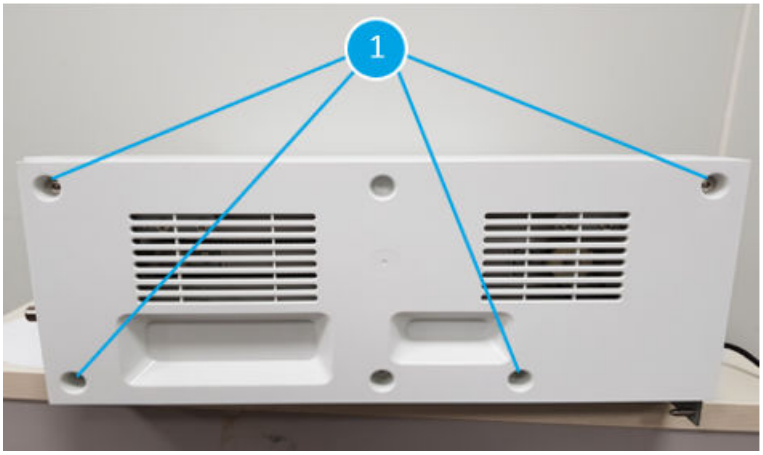
Figure 5-125 Pull out the bridge unit

Remove the bridge rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the bridge rear cover.

- ▲ Remove four screws(callout 1) and the bridge rear cover.

Figure 5-126 Remove the bridge rear cover

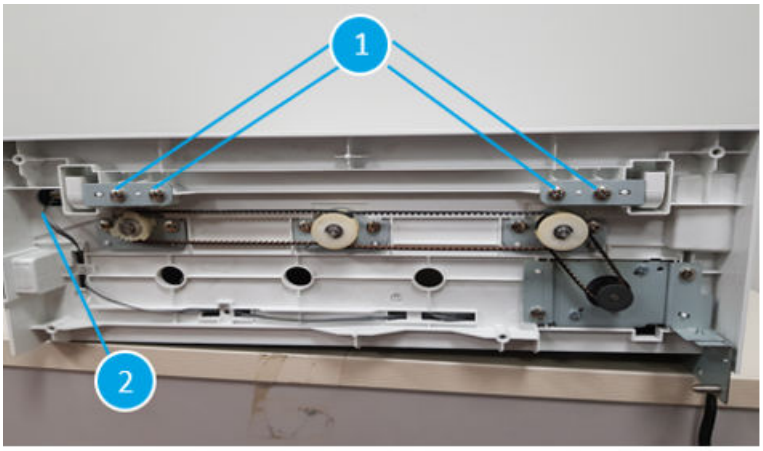


Remove the bridge door

Follow these steps to remove the bridge door.

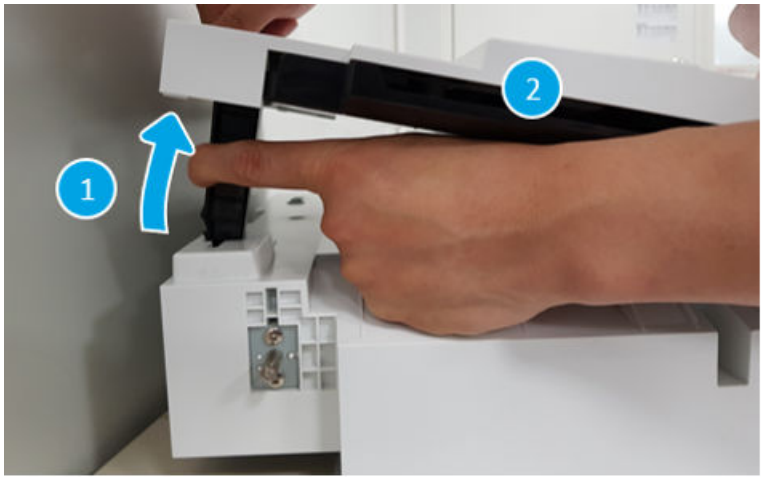
1. Remove four screws(callout 1) and remove the metal holders each side then disconnect one connector(callout 2)

Figure 5-127 Remove the screws and a connector



2. Lift the bridge door up(callout 1) and then remove the bridge door(callout 2)

Figure 5-128 Remove the bridge door

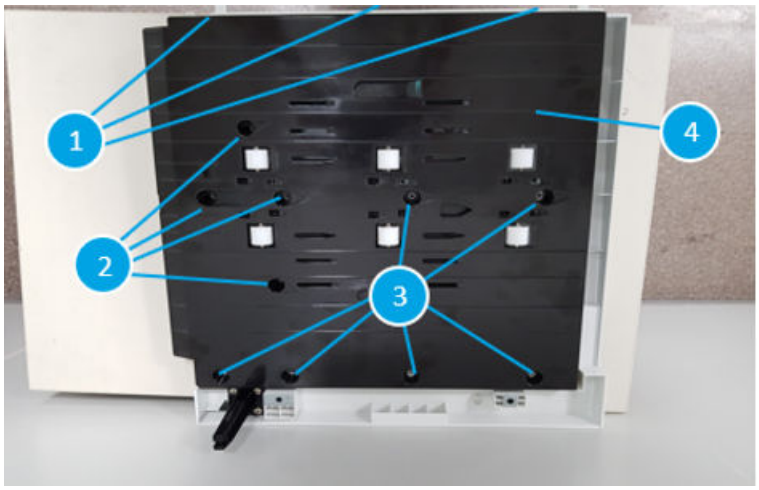


Remove the bridge paper guide

Follow these steps to remove the bridge paper guide.

▲ Remove thirteen screws(callout 1~3) and remove the bridge paper guide(callout 4) from the bridge door

Figure 5-129 Remove the bridge paper guide

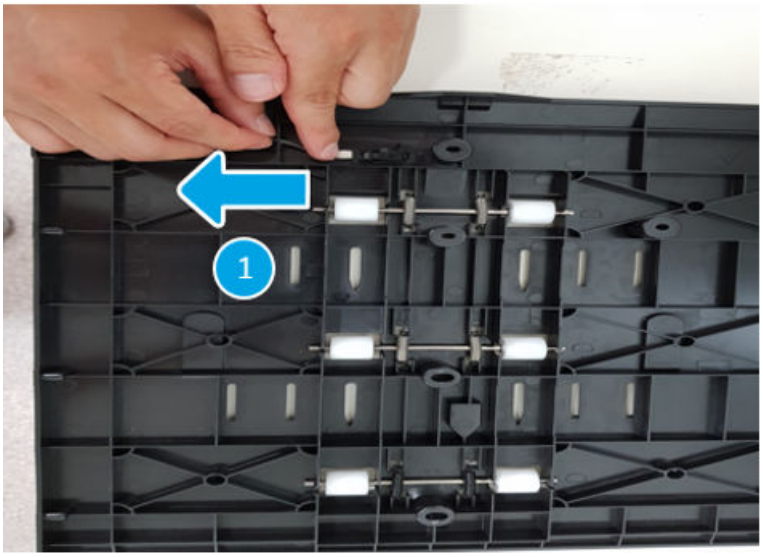


Remove the bridge entrance sensor (S1)

Follow these steps to remove the bridge entrance sensor (S1).

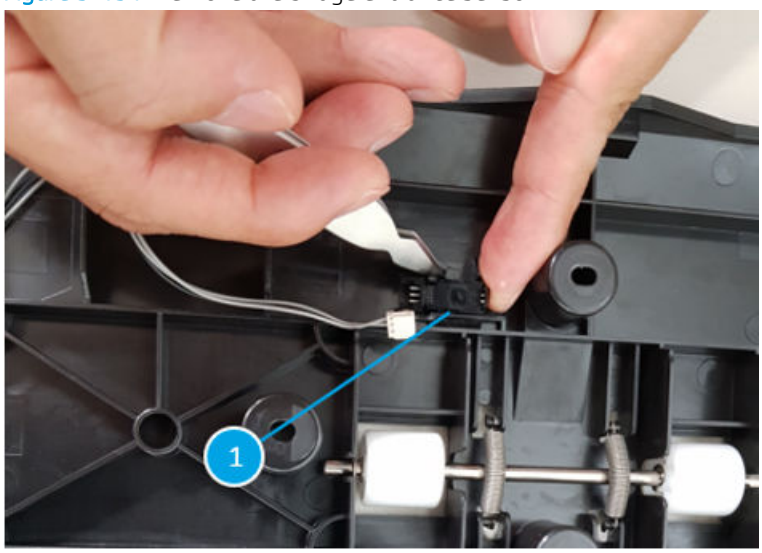
1. Unplug one connector (callout 1)

Figure 5-130 Unplug one connector



2. Use a tweezer to remove the bridge entrance sensor (S1, callout 1)

Figure 5-131 Remove the bridge entrance sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Bridge motor (M14)

Learn how to remove and replace the bridge motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the bridge motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-83 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00163B	Bridge motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the bridge from the machine

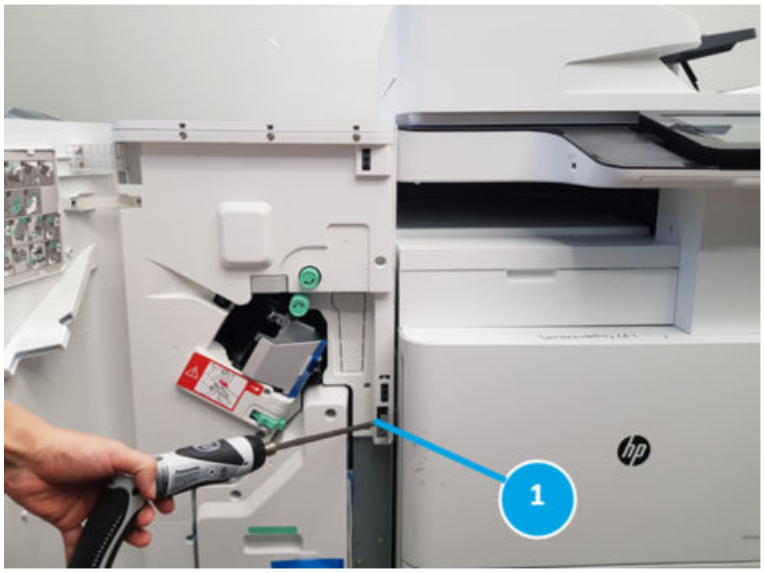
Follow these steps to remove the bridge from the machine.

1. Open the front door (callout 1)

Figure 5-132 Open the front door

2. Pull the locker out (callout 1)

Figure 5-133 Pull the locker out

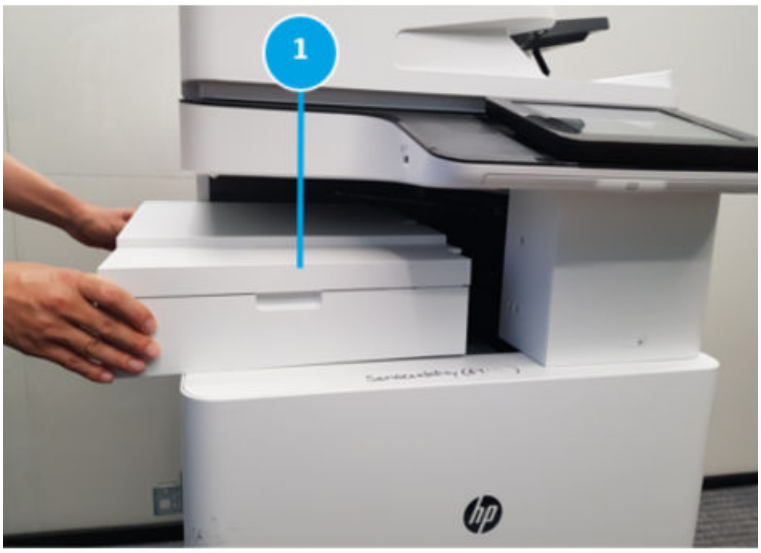


3. Separate the finisher from the printer and disconnect the two connectors (callout 1)

Figure 5-134 Separate the finisher from the printer and disconnect the two connectors

4. Pull out the bridge unit(Callout 1) from the printer

Figure 5-135 Pull out the bridge unit

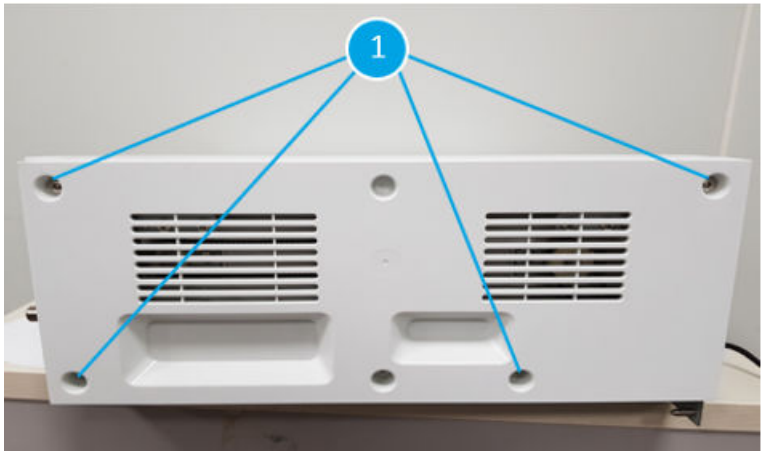


Remove the bridge rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the bridge rear cover.

- ▲ Remove four screws(callout 1) and the bridge rear cover.

Figure 5-136 Remove the bridge rear cover

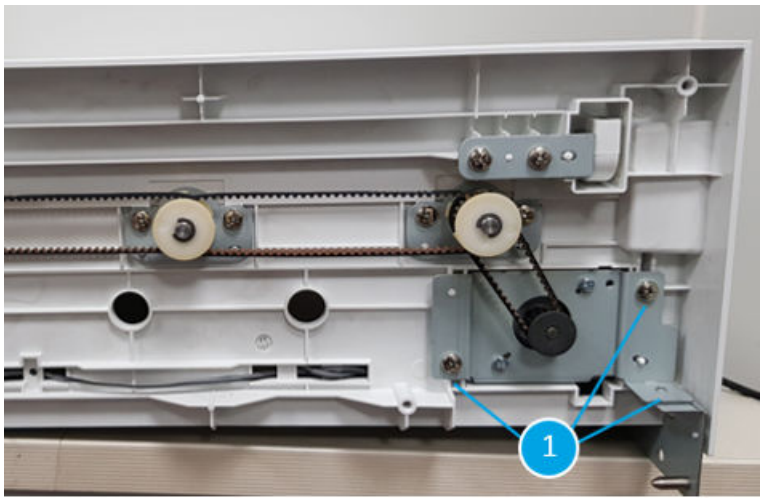


Remove the bridge motor (M14)

Follow these steps to remove the bridge motor (M14).

1. Remove three screws(callout 1)

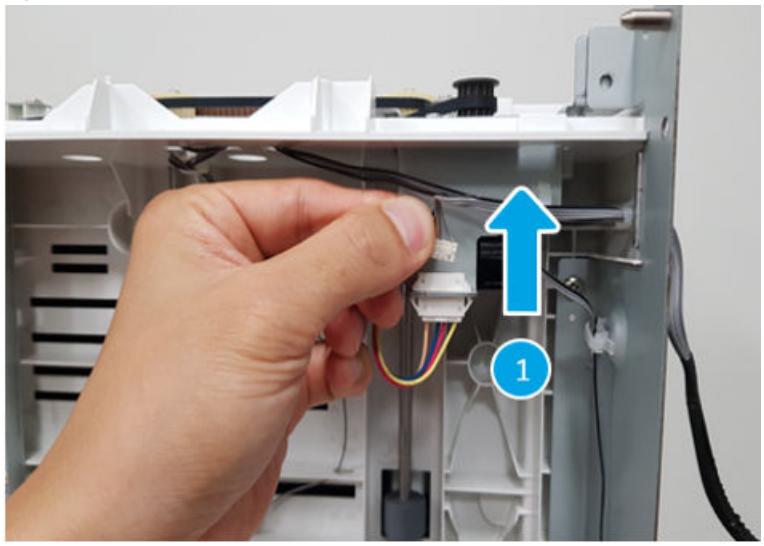
Figure 5-137 Remove three screws



2. Disconnect one connector(callout 1)

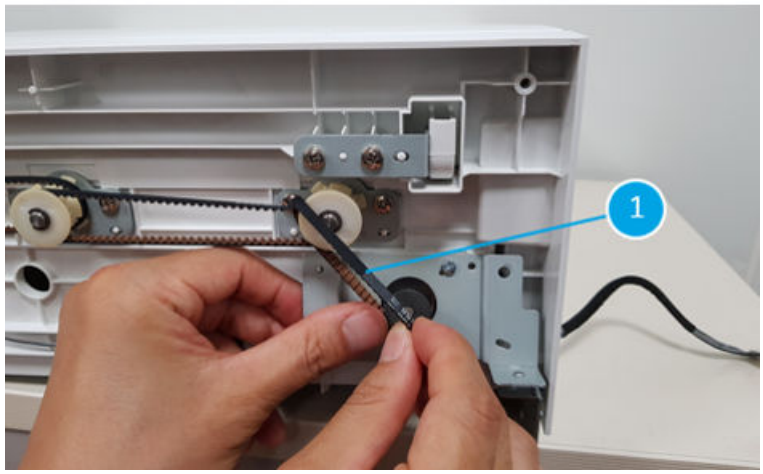
NOTE: It located on the bottom of the bridge

Figure 5-138 Disconnect one connector



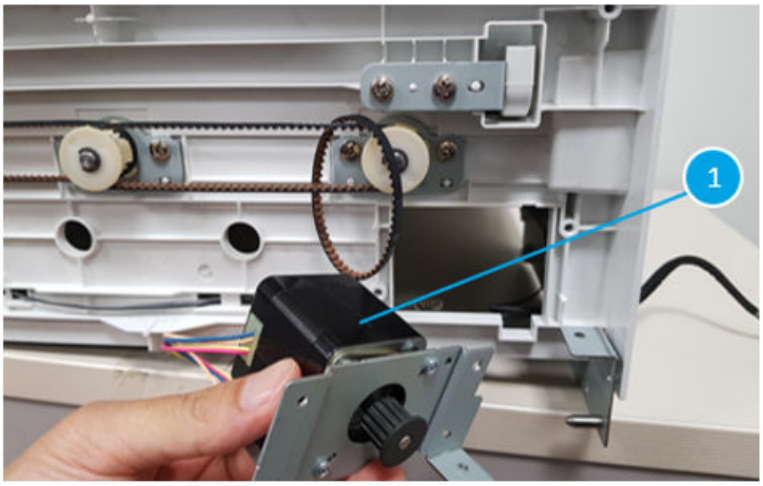
3. Remove the belt (callout 1)

Figure 5-139 Remove the belt



4. Remove the Bridge motor (M14, callout1)

Figure 5-140 Remove the Bridge motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Bridge exit sensor (S3)

Learn how to remove and replace the bridge exit sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the bridge exit sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-84 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Bridge exit sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the bridge from the machine

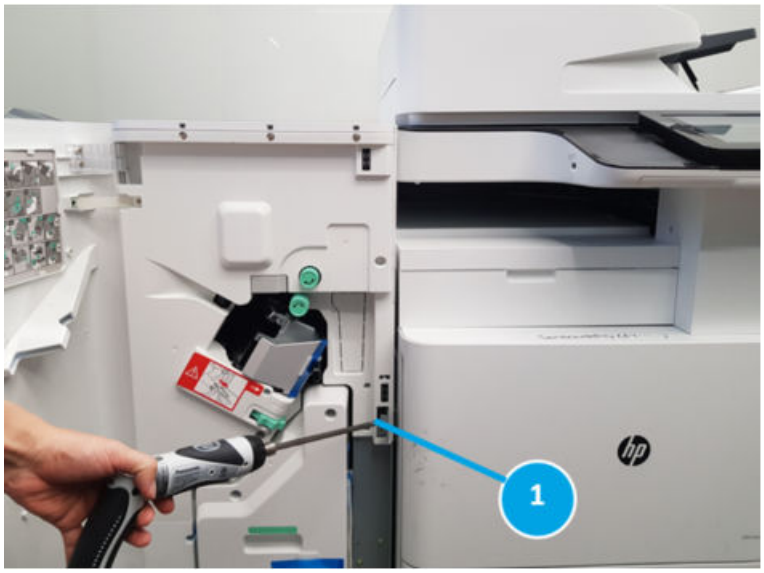
Follow these steps to remove the bridge from the machine.

1. Open the front door (callout 1)

Figure 5-141 Open the front door

2. Pull the locker out (callout 1)

Figure 5-142 Pull the locker out

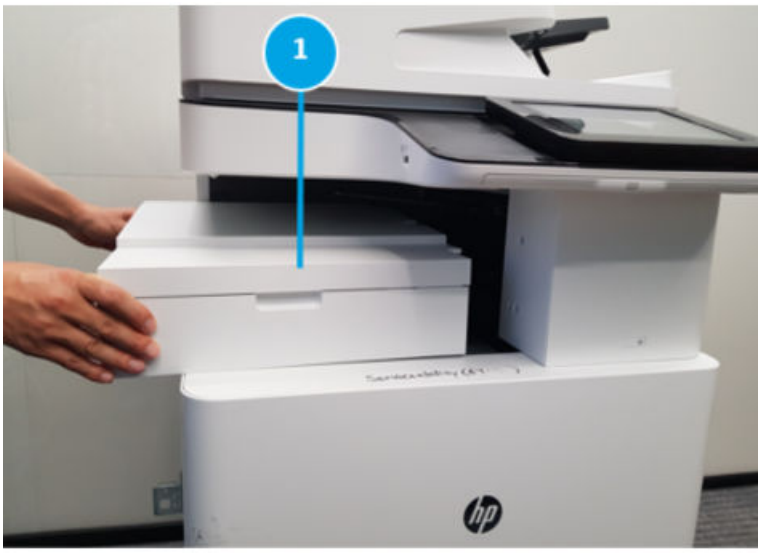


3. Separate the finisher from the printer and disconnect the two connectors (callout 1)

Figure 5-143 Separate the finisher from the printer and disconnect the two connectors

4. Pull out the bridge unit(Callout 1) from the printer

Figure 5-144 Pull out the bridge unit



Remove the bridge exit sensor (S3)

Follow these steps to remove the bridge exit sensor (S3).

1. Unplug one connector

NOTE: Bridge exit sensor(callout 1) located on the bottom of the bridge

Figure 5-145 Unplug one connector

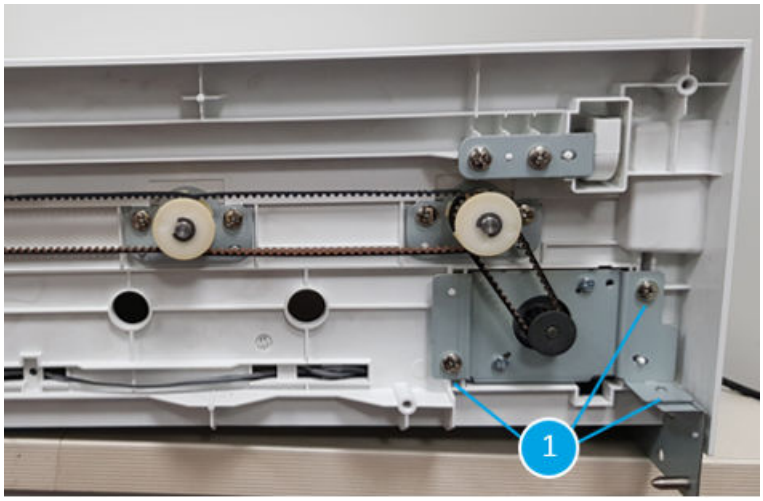
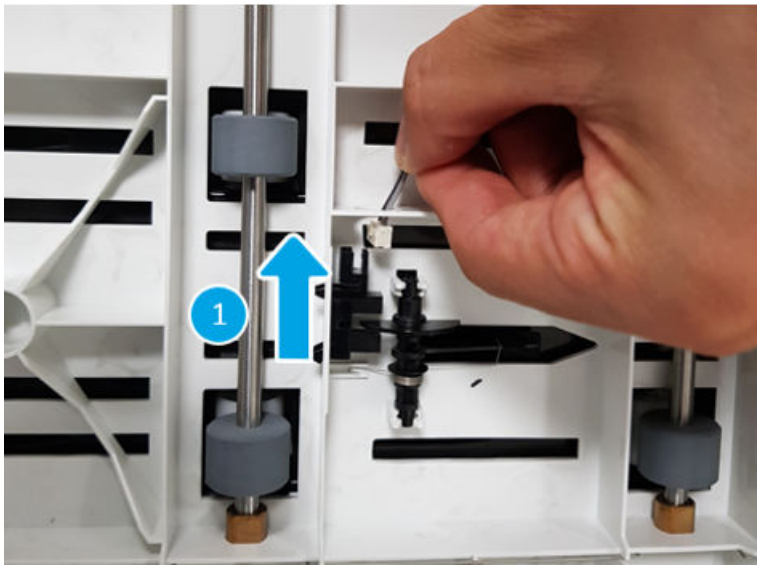
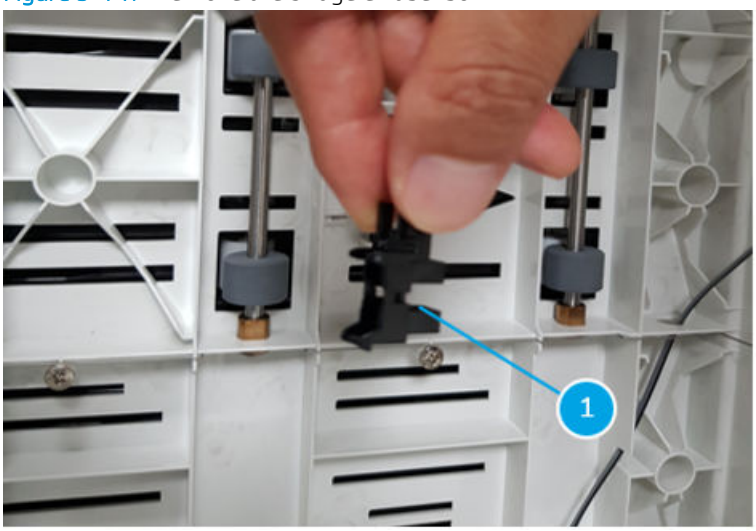


Figure 5-146 Unplug one connector



2. Use a tweezer to remove the bridge exit sensor(S3, callout1)

Figure 5-147 Remove the bridge exit sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Bridge door sensor (S2)

Learn how to remove and replace the bridge door sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the bridge door sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-85 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Bridge door sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the bridge from the machine

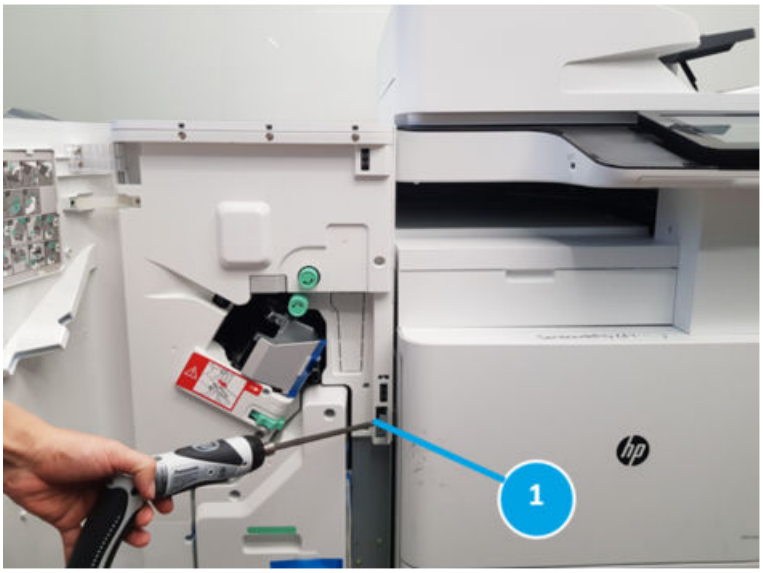
Follow these steps to remove the bridge from the machine.

1. Open the front door (callout 1)

Figure 5-148 Open the front door

2. Pull the locker out (callout 1)

Figure 5-149 Pull the locker out



3. Separate the finisher from the printer and disconnect the two connectors (callout 1)

Figure 5-150 Separate the finisher from the printer and disconnect the two connectors

4. Pull out the bridge unit(Callout 1) from the printer

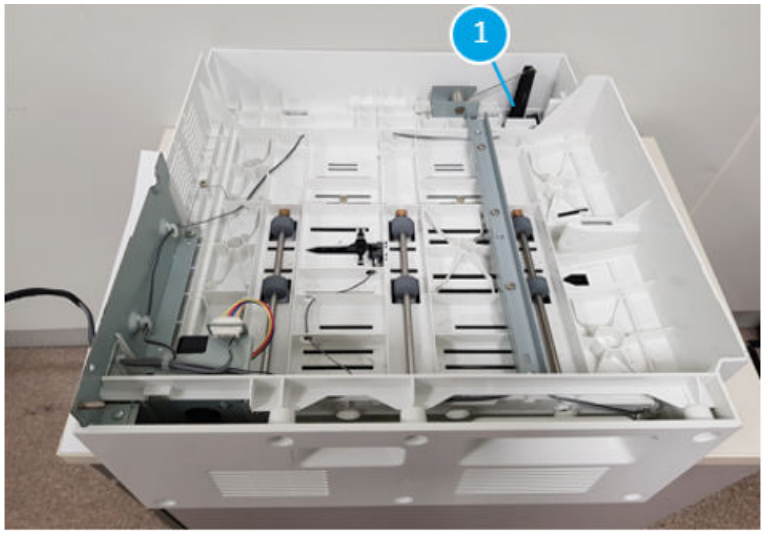
Figure 5-151 Pull out the bridge unit

Remove the bridge door sensor (S2)

Follow these steps to remove the bridge door sensor (S2).

1. Bridge door sensor(callout 1) located on the bottom of the bridge

Figure 5-152 Location of the bridge door sensor



2. Open the bridge door to remove the bridge door sensor (S2)

Figure 5-153 Open the bridge door

3. Use a tweezer to remove the bridge door sensor(S2, callout 1)

Figure 5-154 Remove the bridge door sensor

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Covers

Removal and replacement: Right upper cover

Learn how to remove and replace the right upper cover.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the right upper cover on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-86 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01448B	Right upper cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

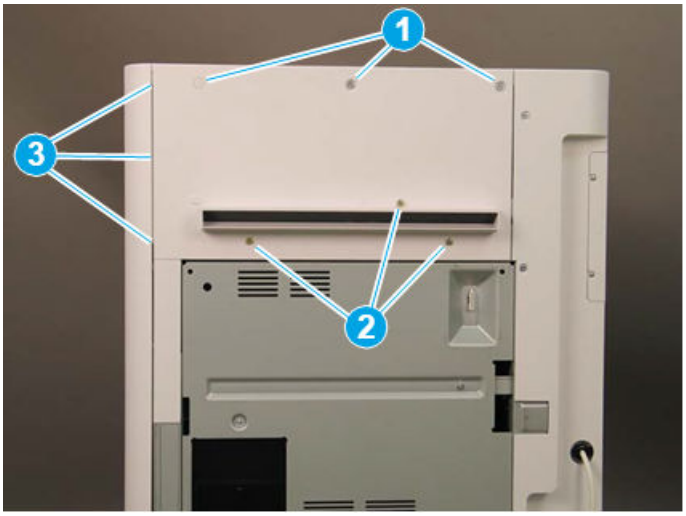
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-155 Remove the right upper cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Top cover

Learn how to remove and replace the top cover.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top cover of the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-87 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01446B	Top cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

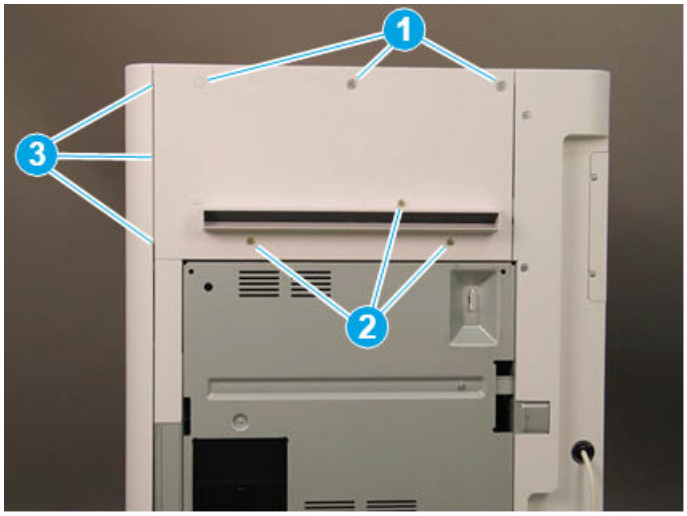
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-156 Remove the right upper cover

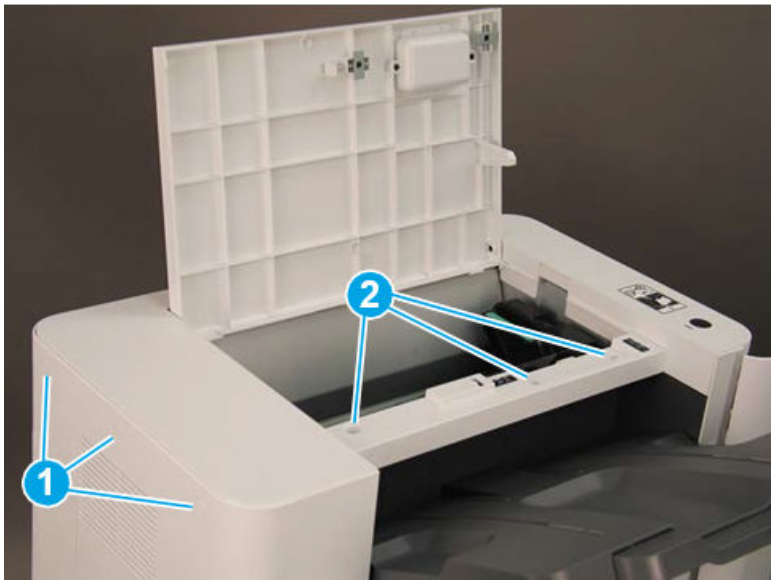


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

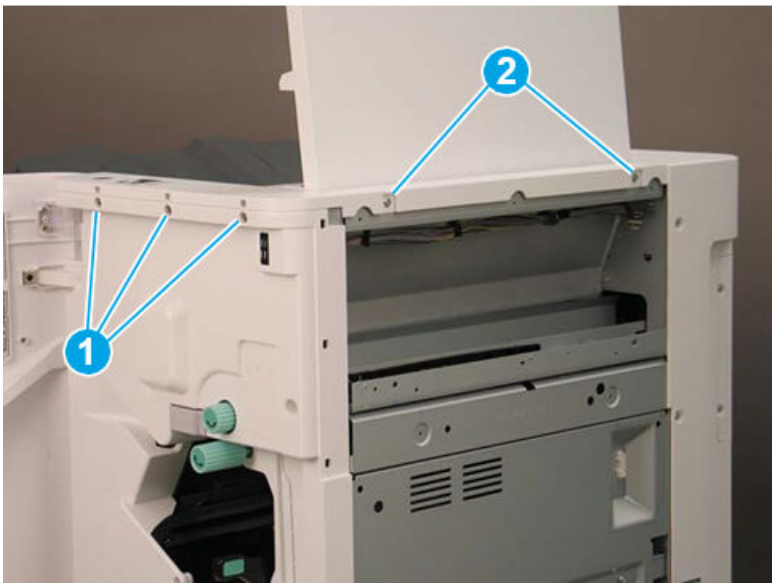
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-157 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

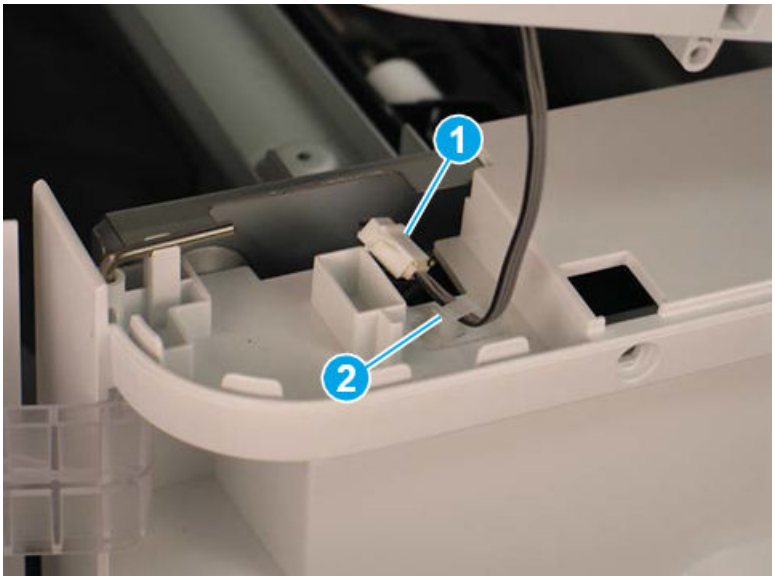
Figure 5-158 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-159 Disconnect one connector and release retainer



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front door

Learn how to remove and replace the front door.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front door for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-88 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01444B	Front door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

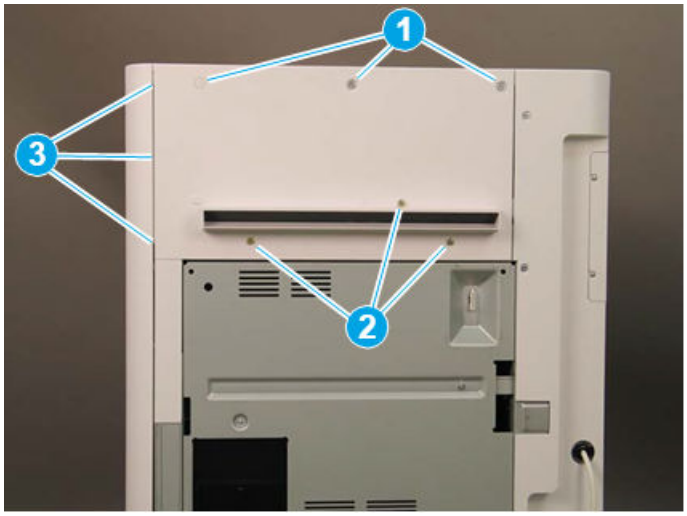
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-160 Remove the right upper cover

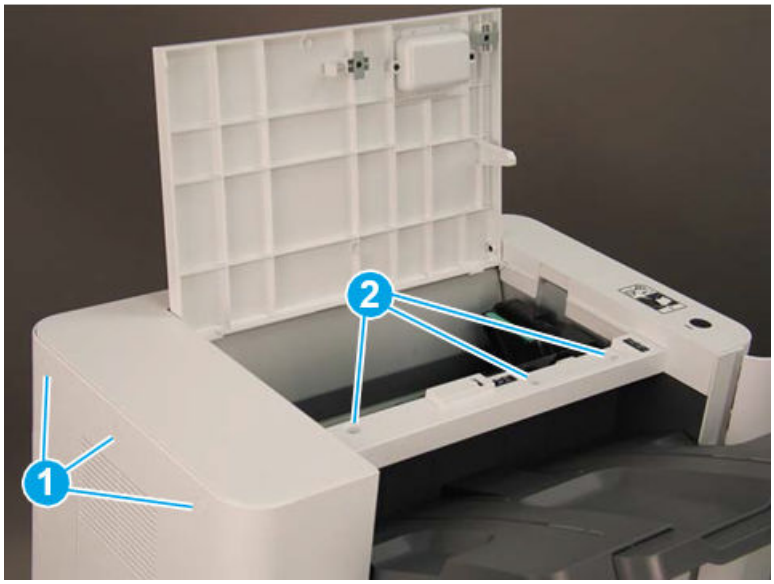


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

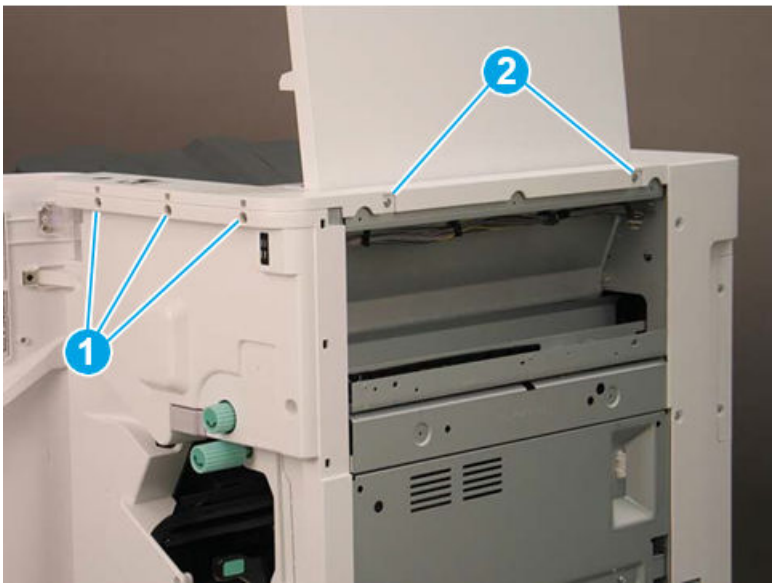
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-161 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

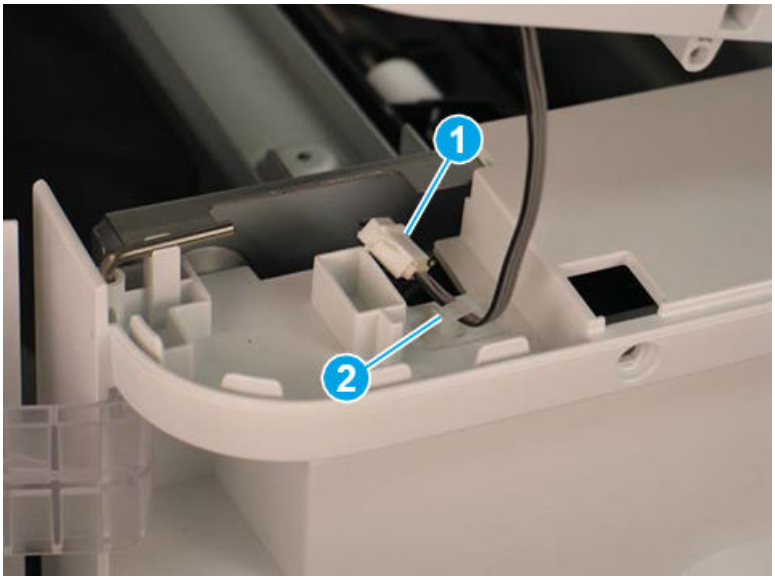
Figure 5-162 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-163 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

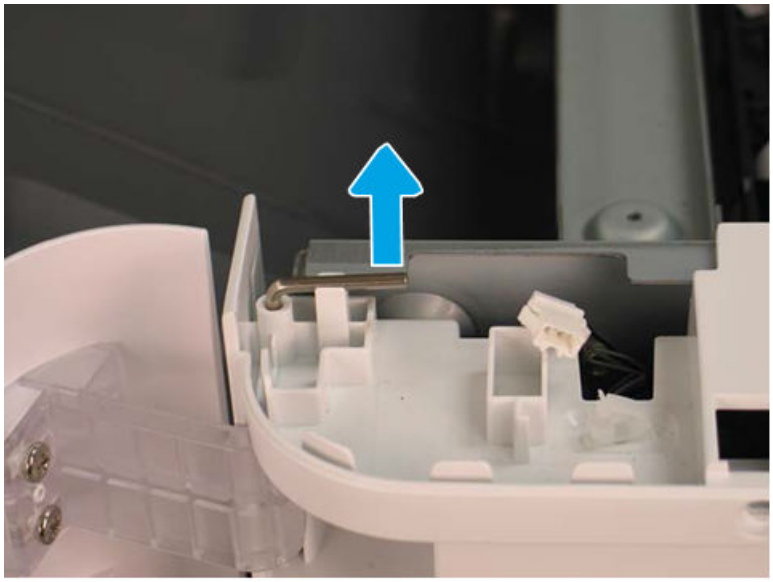


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

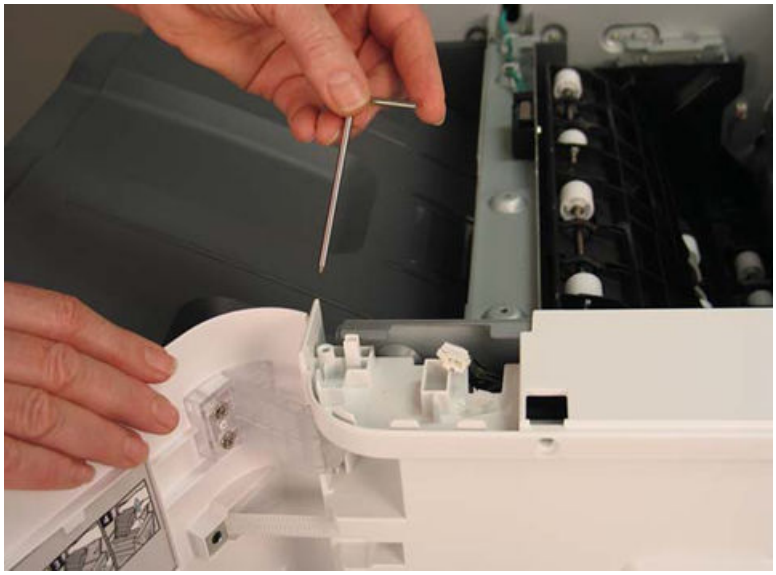
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-164 Lift the top hinge pin



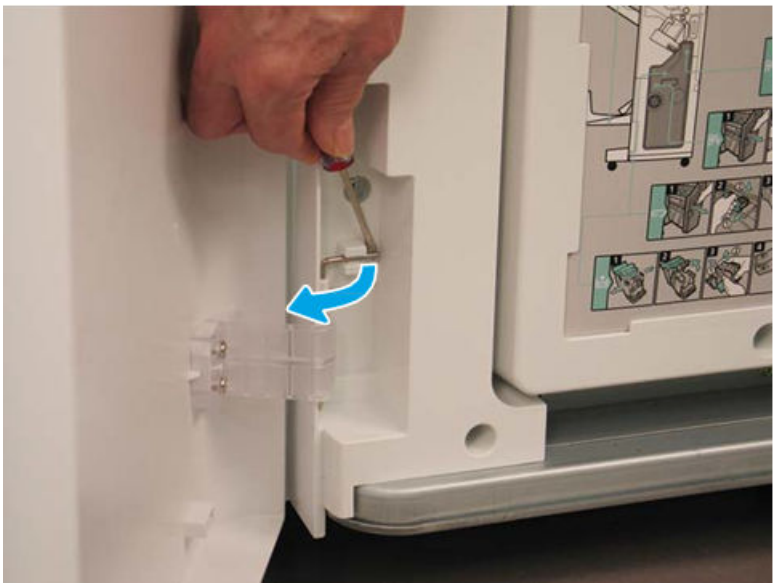
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-165 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-166 Release the lower hinge pin



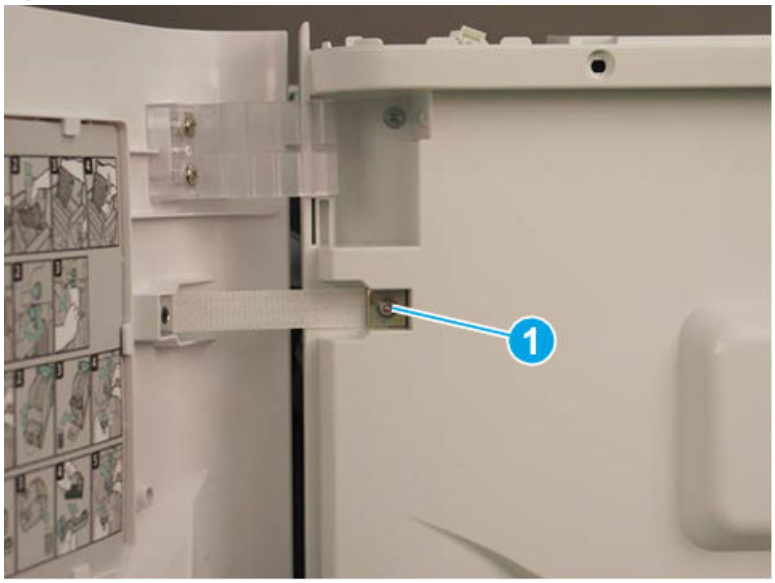
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-167 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-168 Remove the front door



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear cover

Learn how to remove and replace the rear cover.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear cover for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-89 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC63-04988B	Rear cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

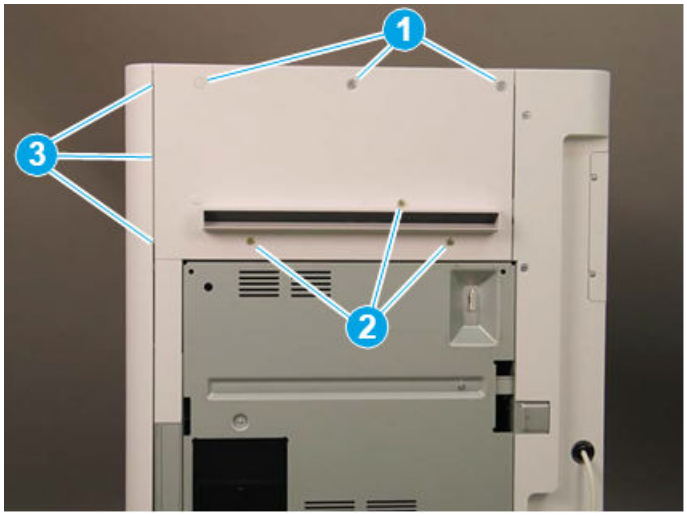
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-169 Remove the right upper cover

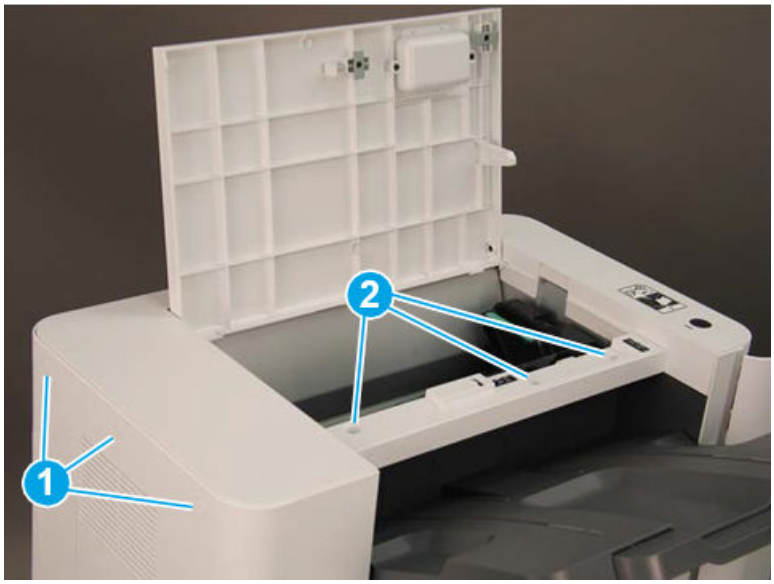


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

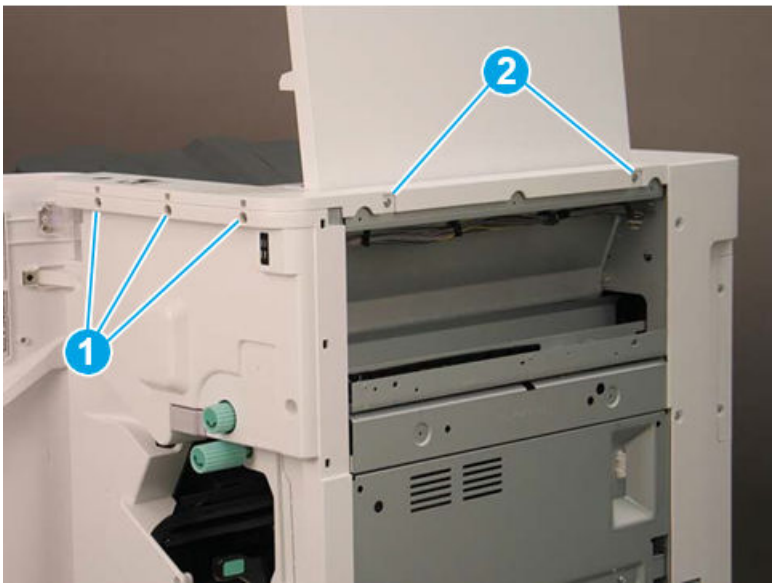
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-170 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

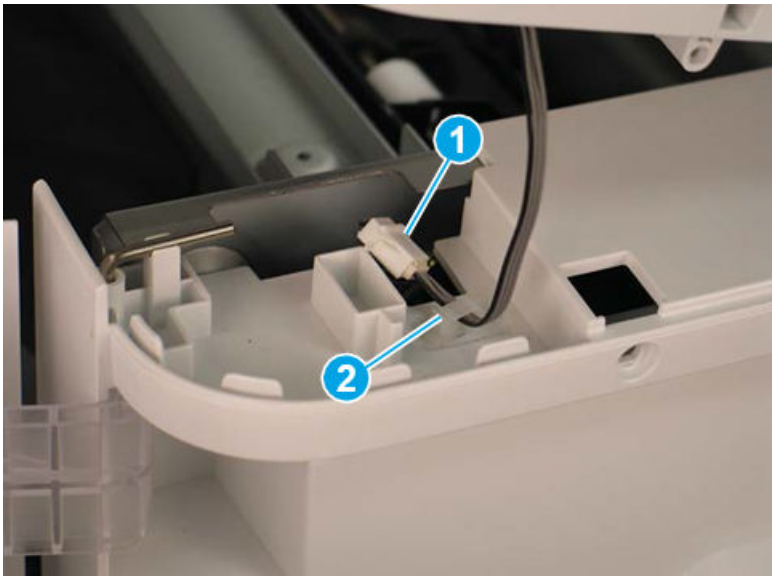
Figure 5-171 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-172 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

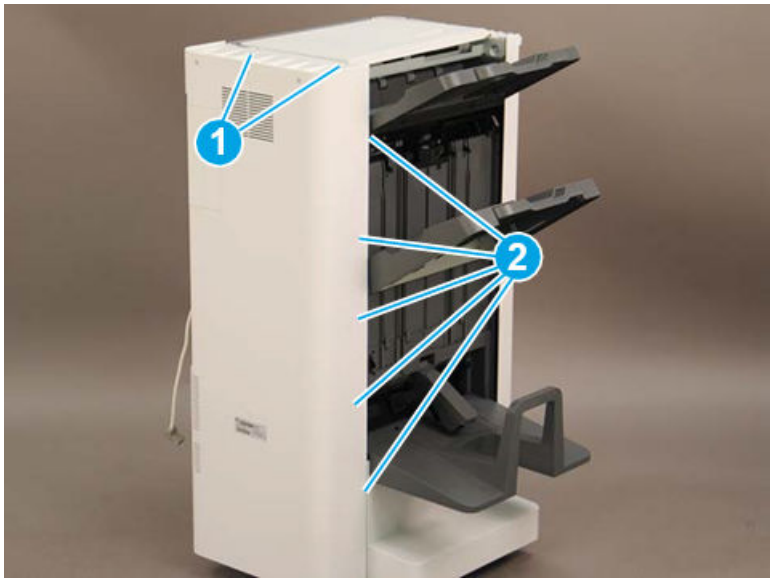


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-173 Remove seven screws

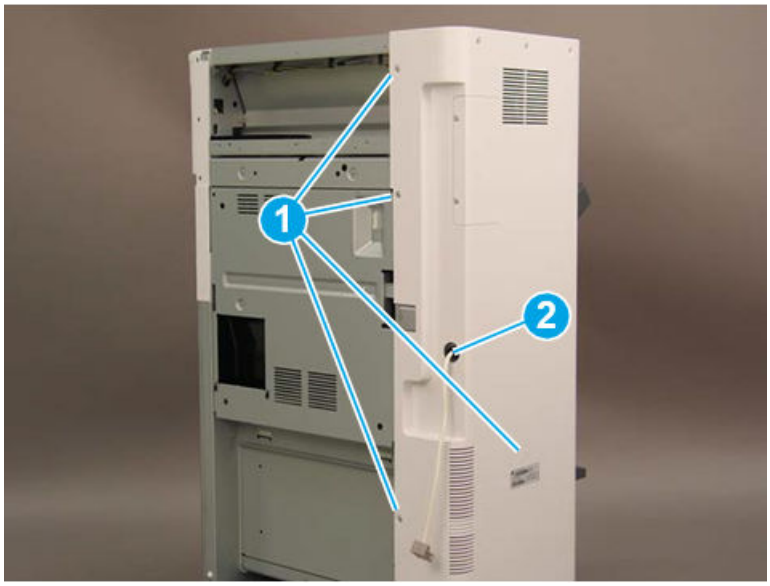


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-174 Remove the rear cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front cover

Learn how to remove and replace the front cover.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front cover for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-90 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC63-04986B	Front cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

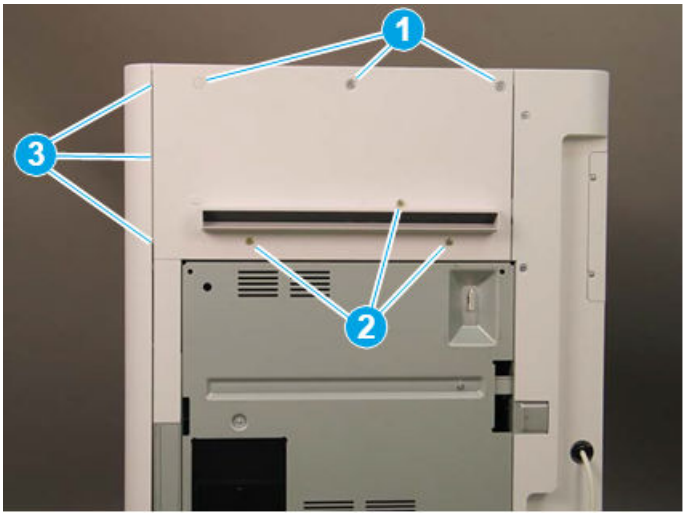
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-175 Remove the right upper cover

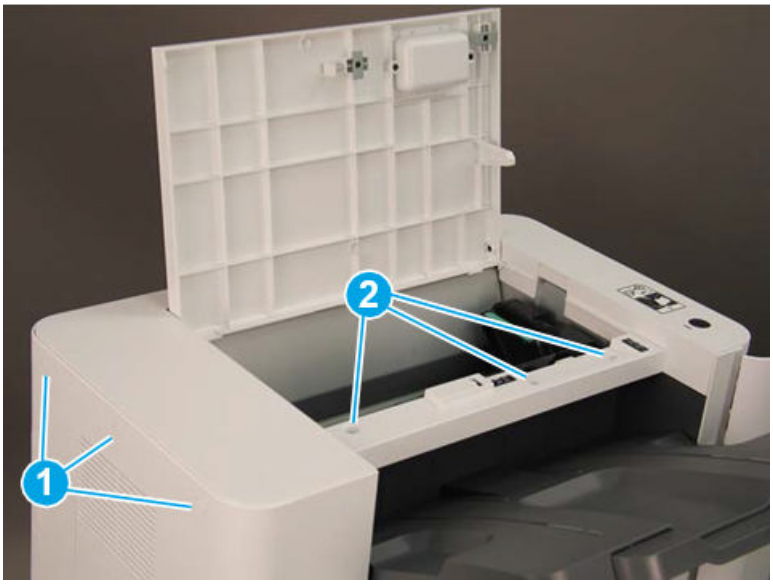


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

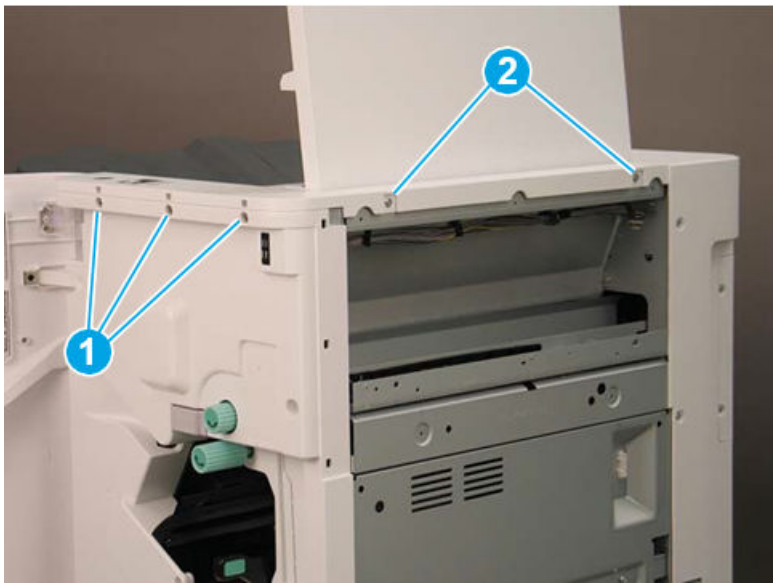
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-176 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

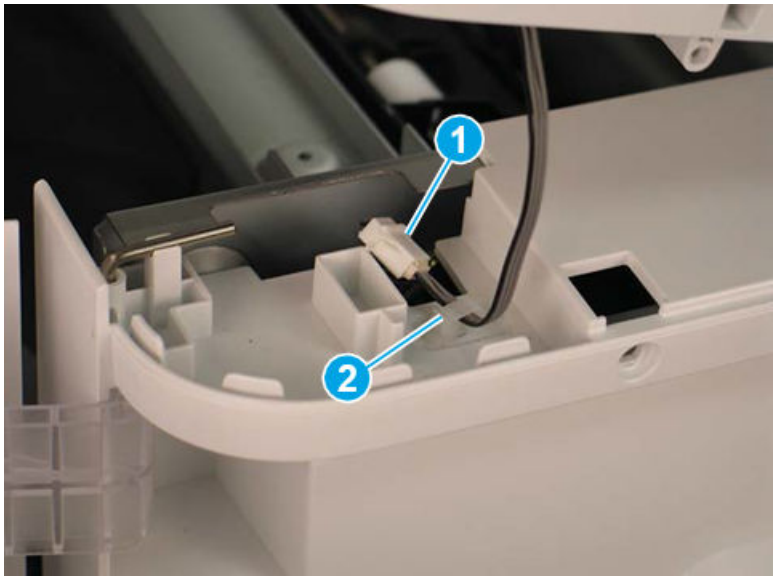
Figure 5-177 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-178 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

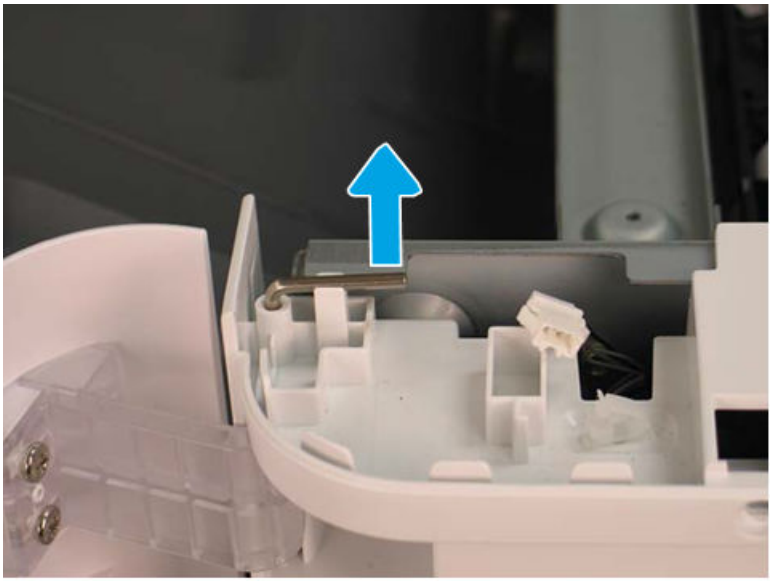


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

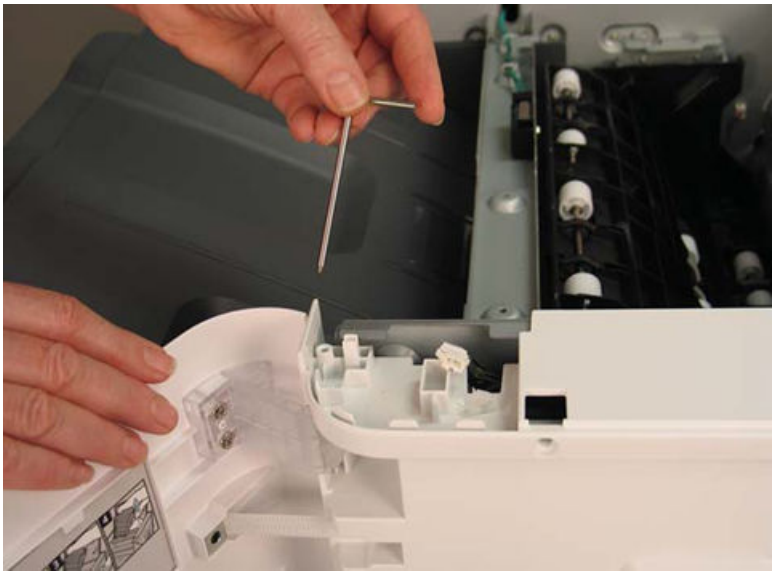
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-179 Lift the top hinge pin



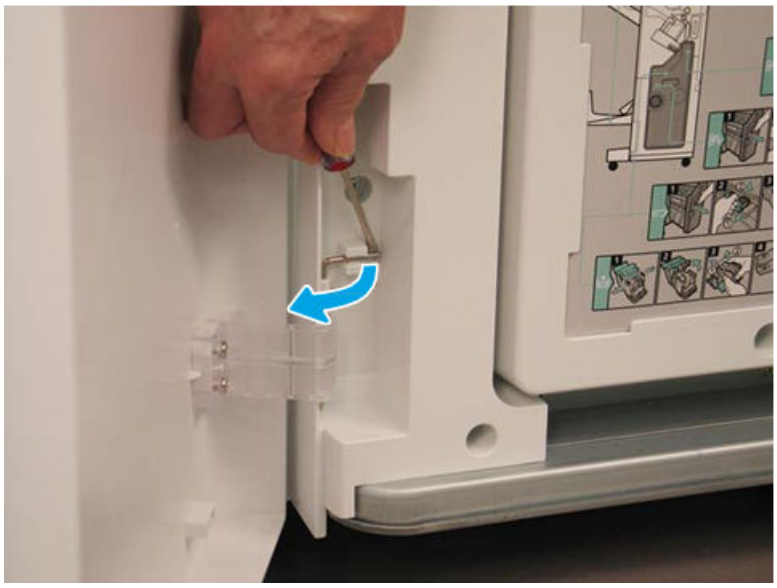
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-180 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-181 Release the lower hinge pin



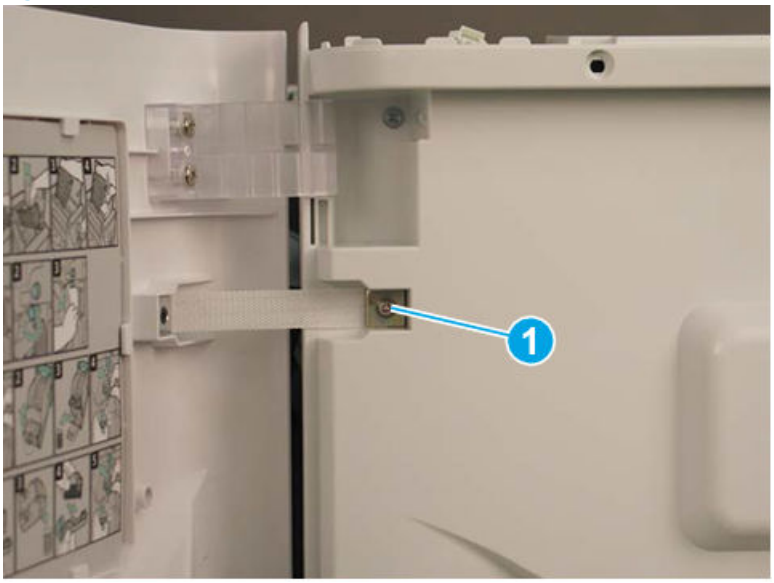
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-182 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-183 Remove the front door

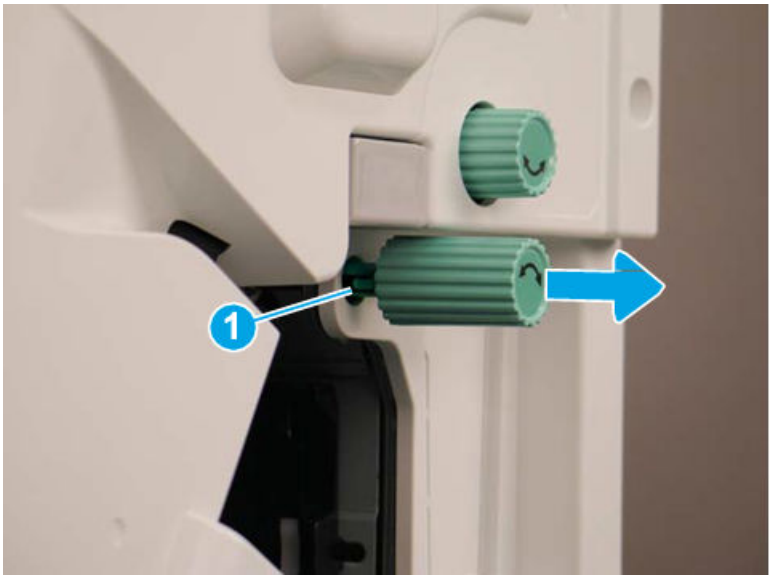


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-184 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

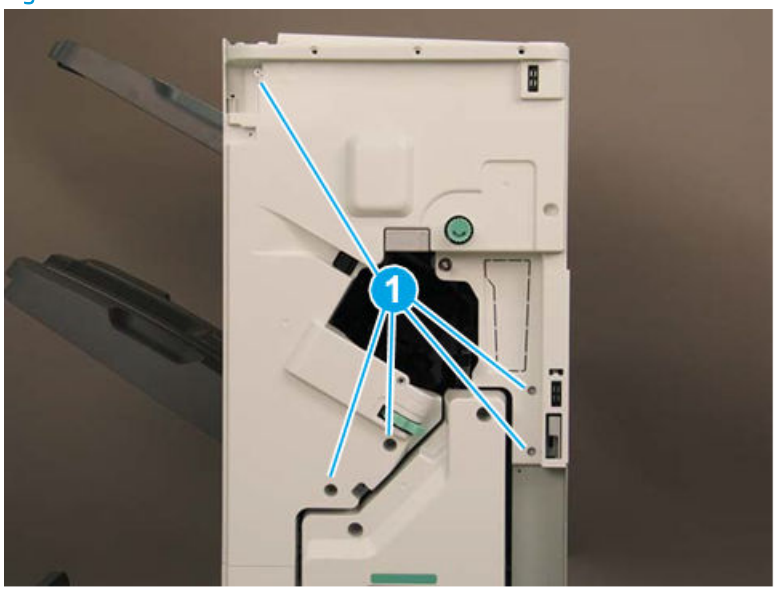
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-185 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-186 Remove the front cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front lower cover

Learn how to remove and replace the front lower cover.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front lower cover for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-91 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC63-04987B	Front lower cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

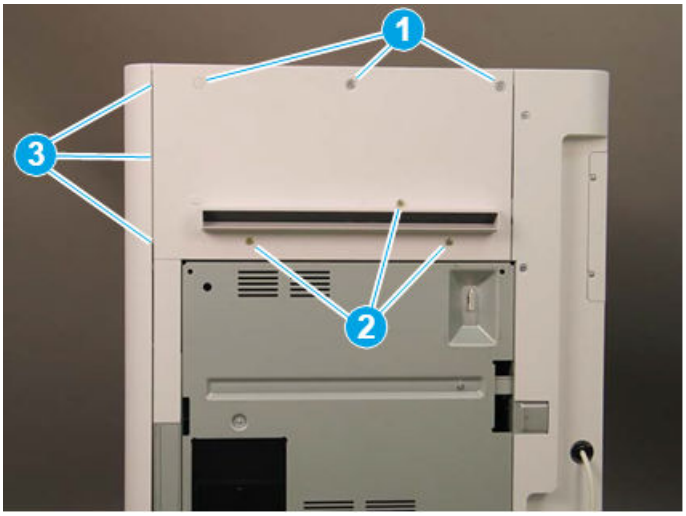
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-187 Remove the right upper cover

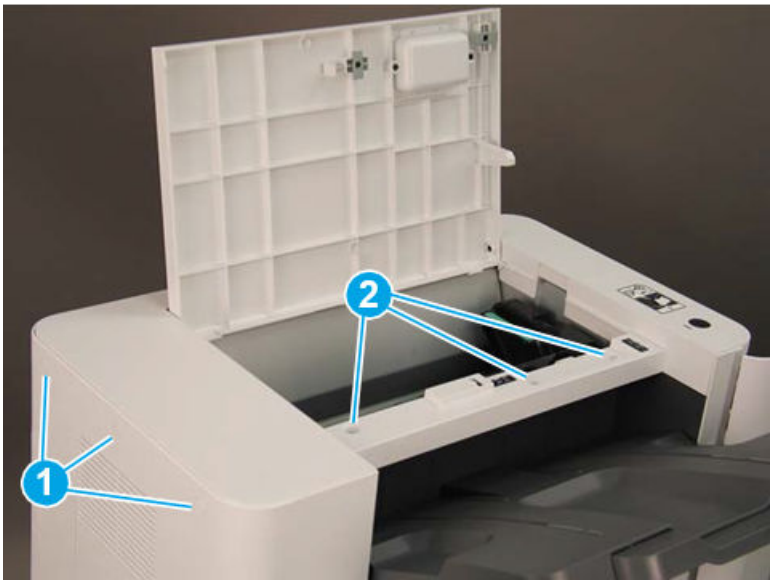


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

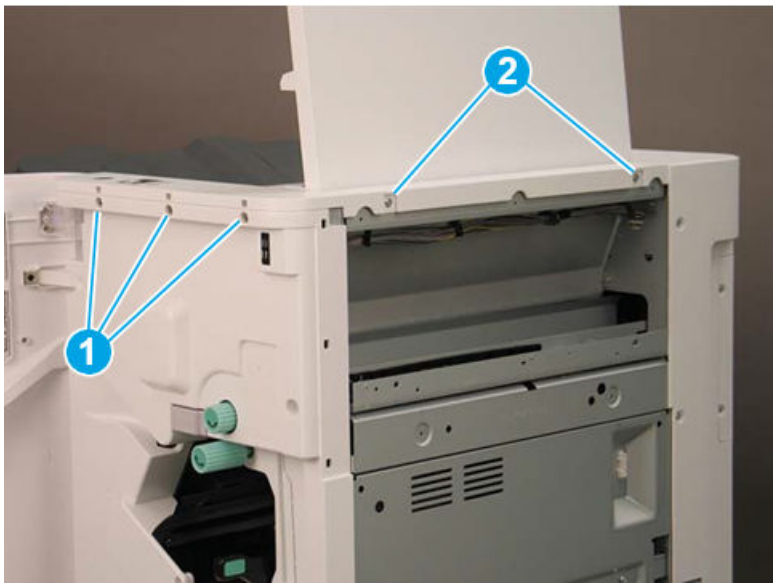
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-188 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

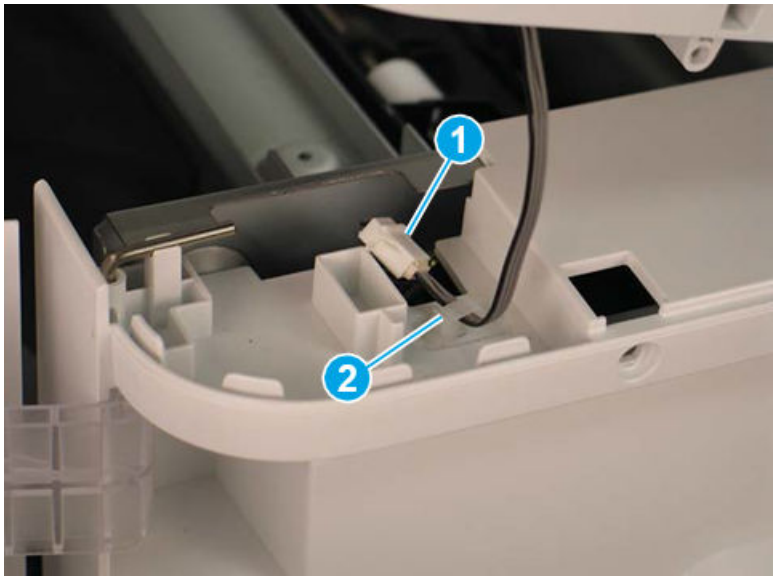
Figure 5-189 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-190 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

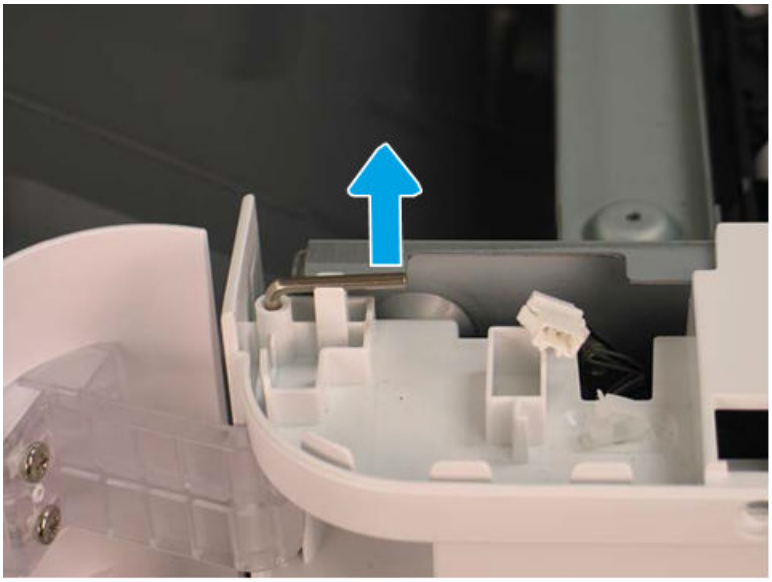


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

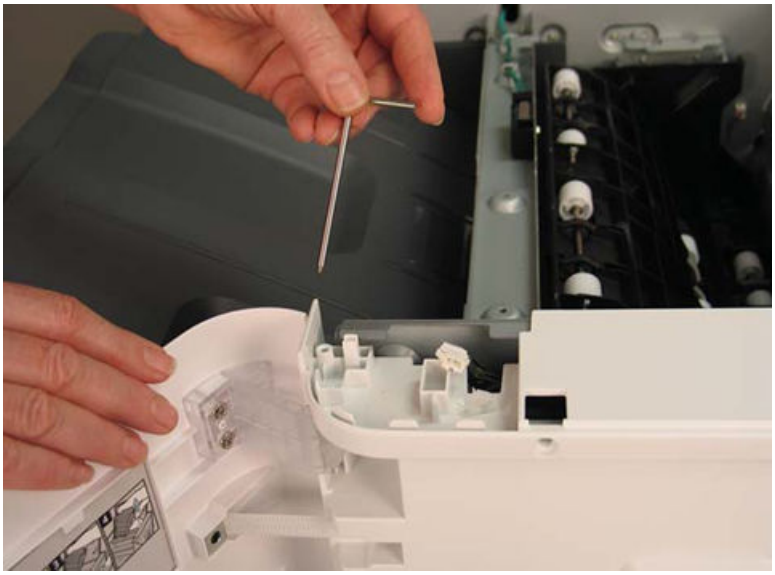
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-191 Lift the top hinge pin



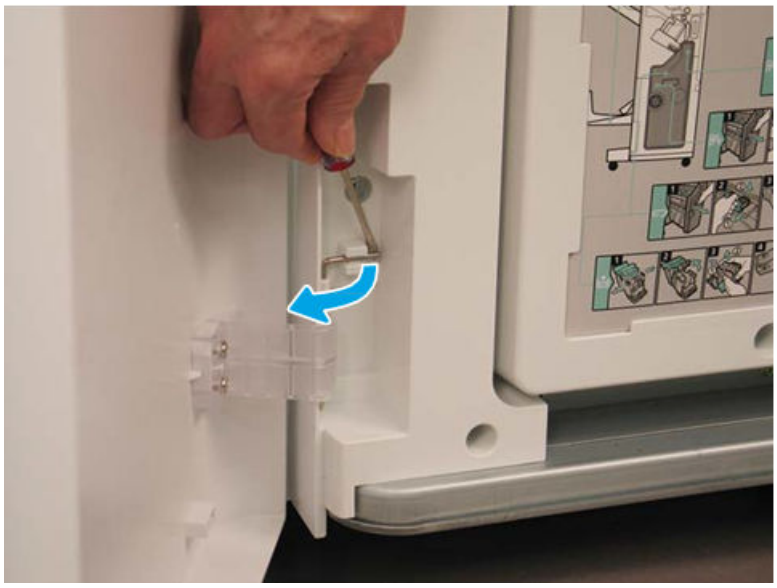
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-192 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-193 Release the lower hinge pin



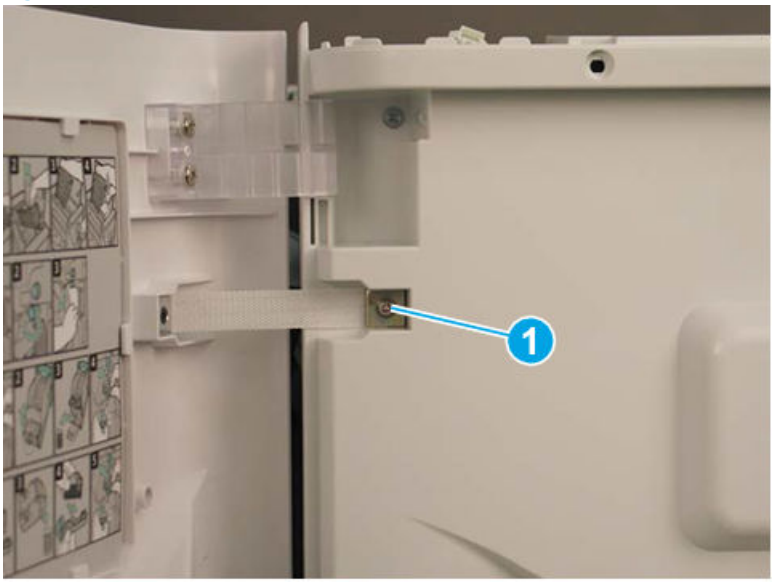
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-194 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-195 Remove the front door

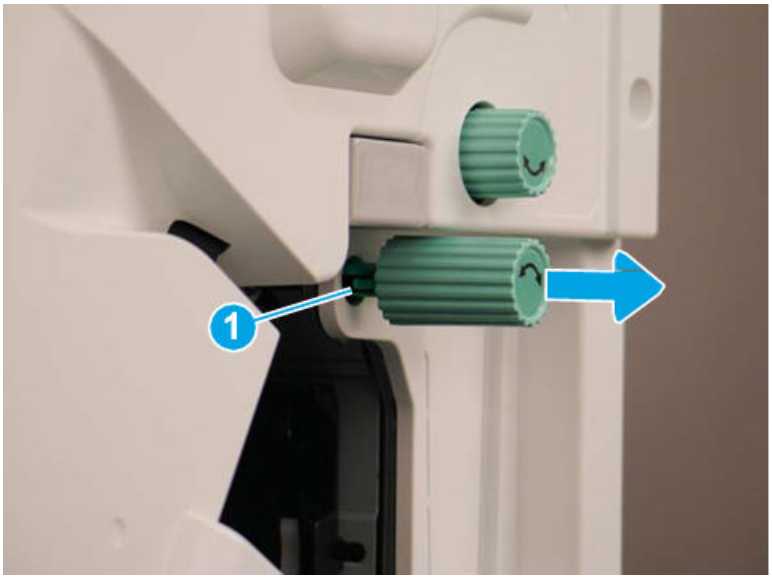


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-196 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

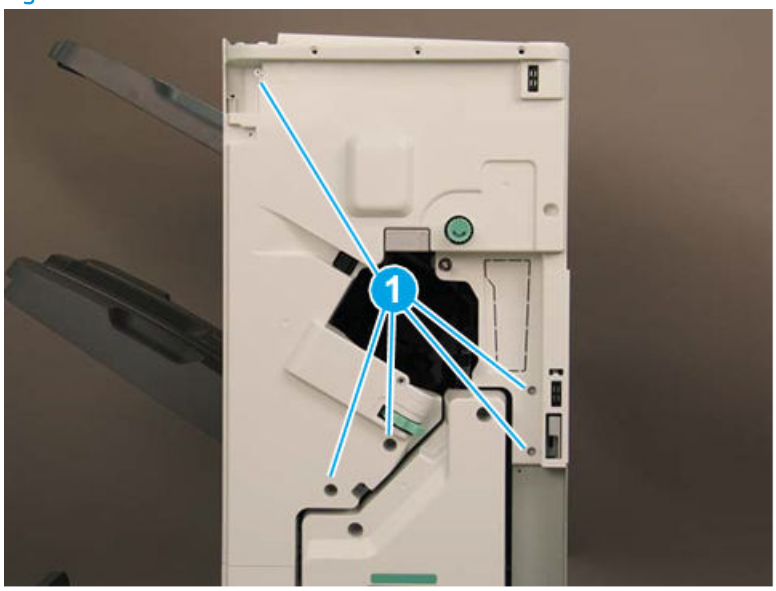
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-197 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-198 Remove the front cover



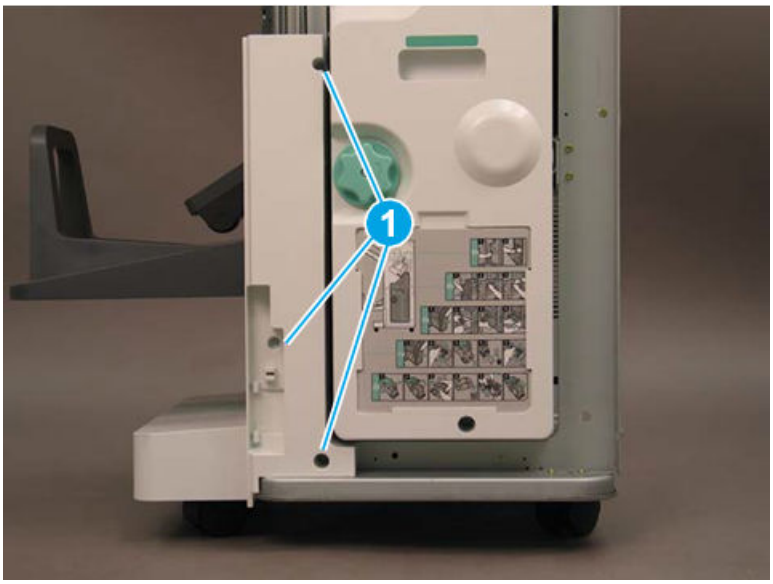
Remove the front lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front lower cover (finisher).

▲ Remove three machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front lower cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-199 Remove the front lower cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Caster cover

Learn how to remove and replace the caster cover.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the caster cover on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-92 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC63-04985B	Caster cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

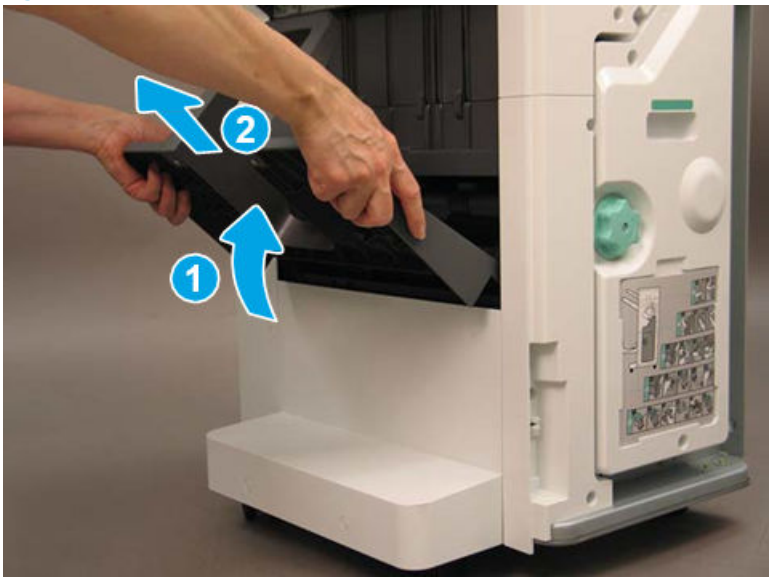
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-200 Remove the booklet output tray



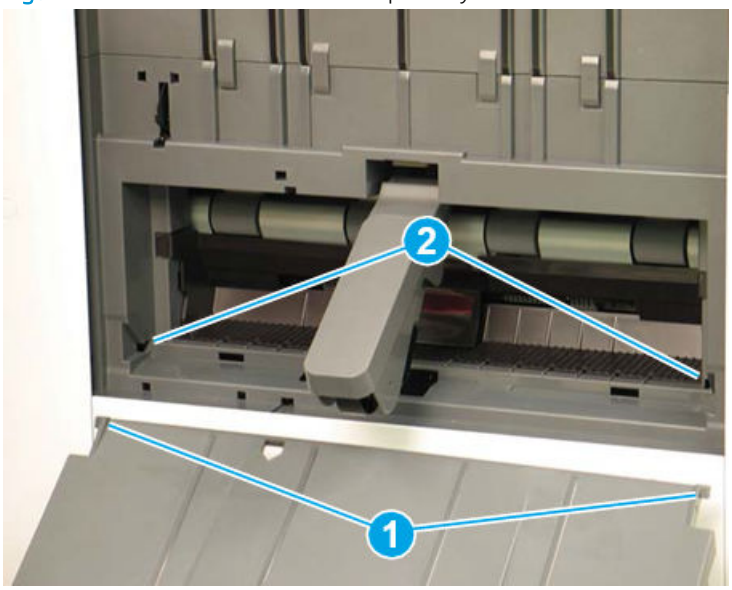
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-201 Install the booklet output tray

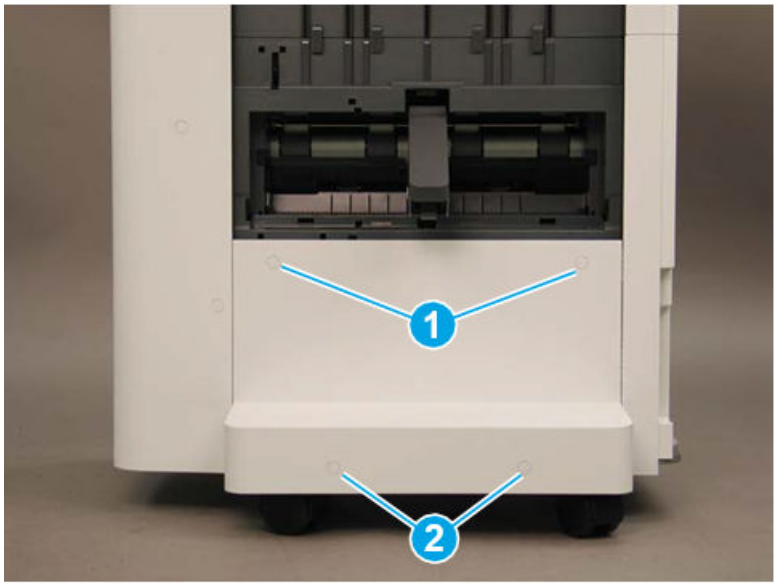


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-202 Remove four screws

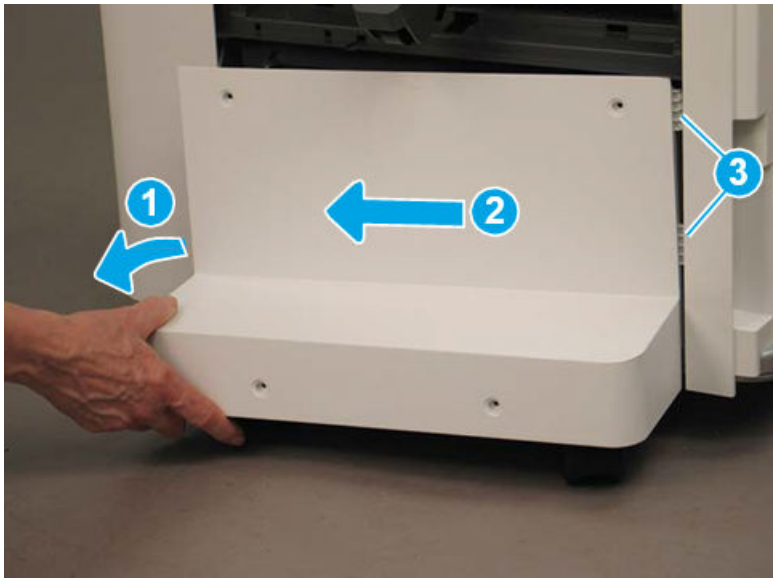


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-203 Remove the caster cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left lower cover

Learn how to remove and replace the left lower cover.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the left lower cover on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-93 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01771B	Left lower cover (for stapler/stacker finisher)
JC90-01417B	Left lower cover (for booklet finisher)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

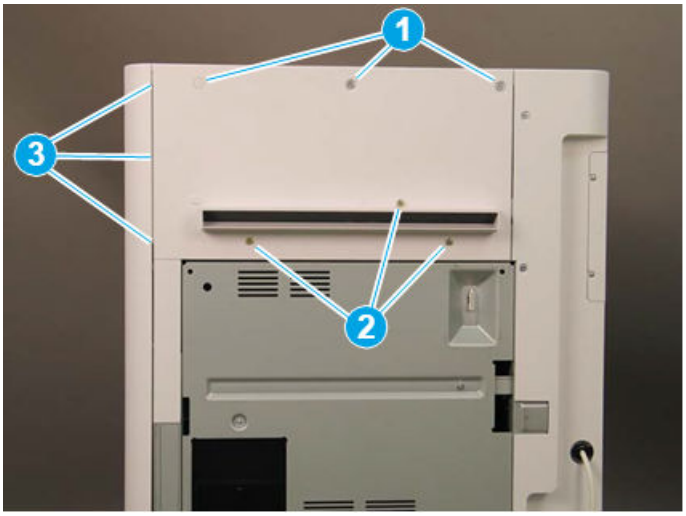
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-204 Remove the right upper cover

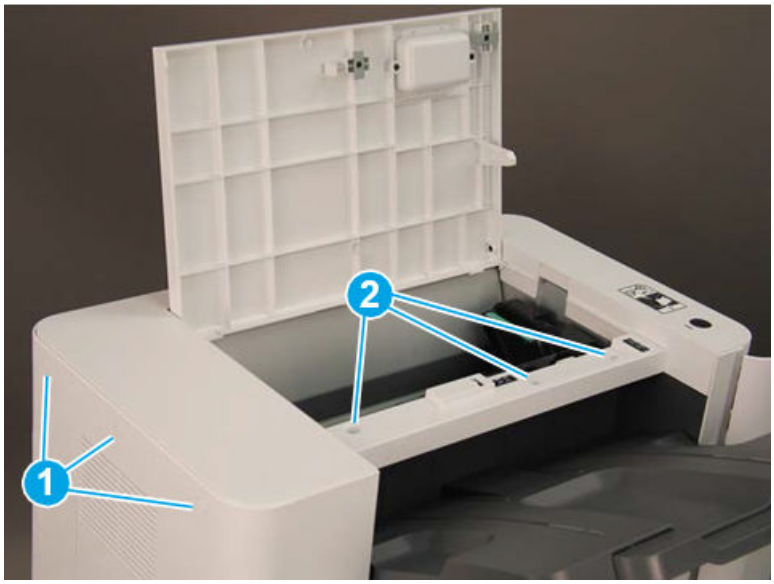


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

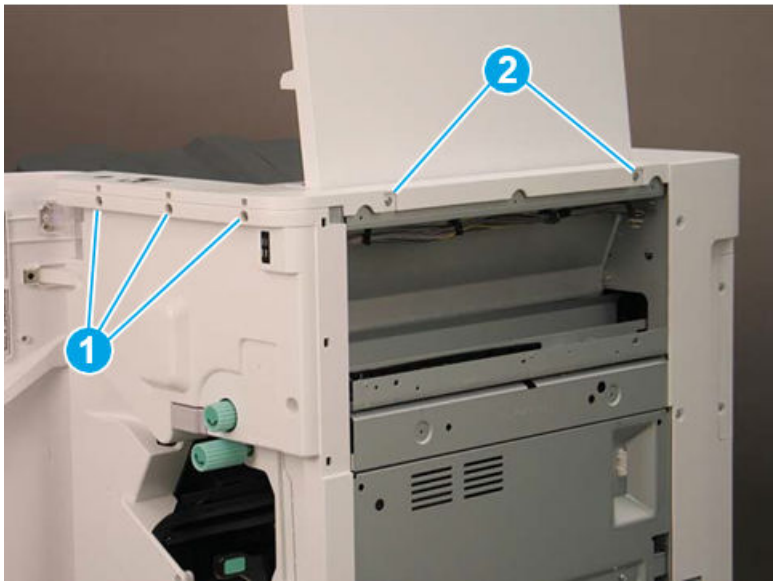
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-205 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

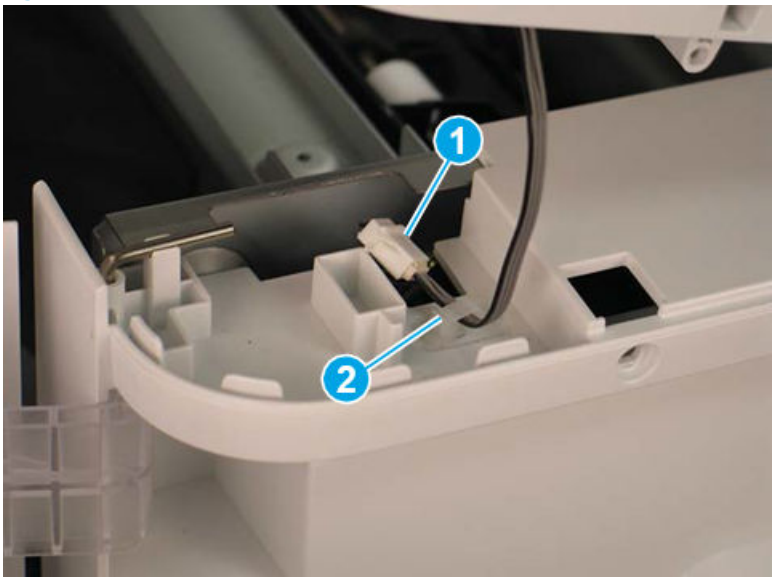
Figure 5-206 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-207 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

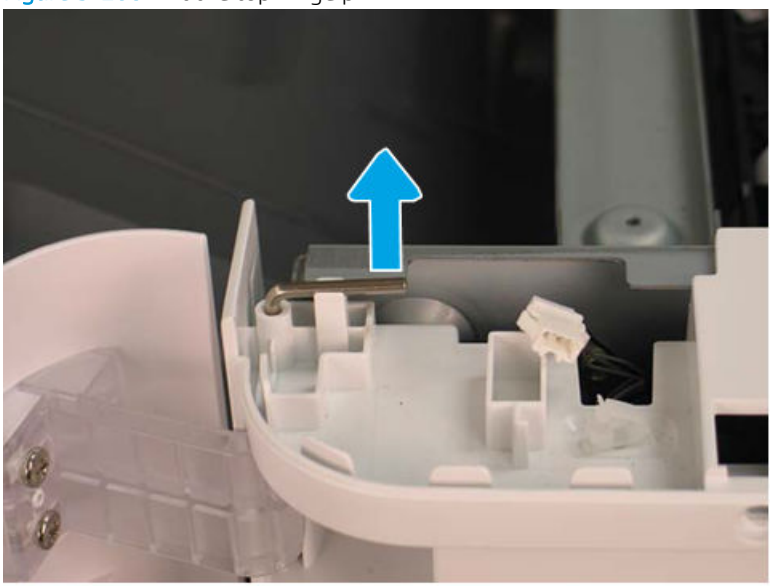


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

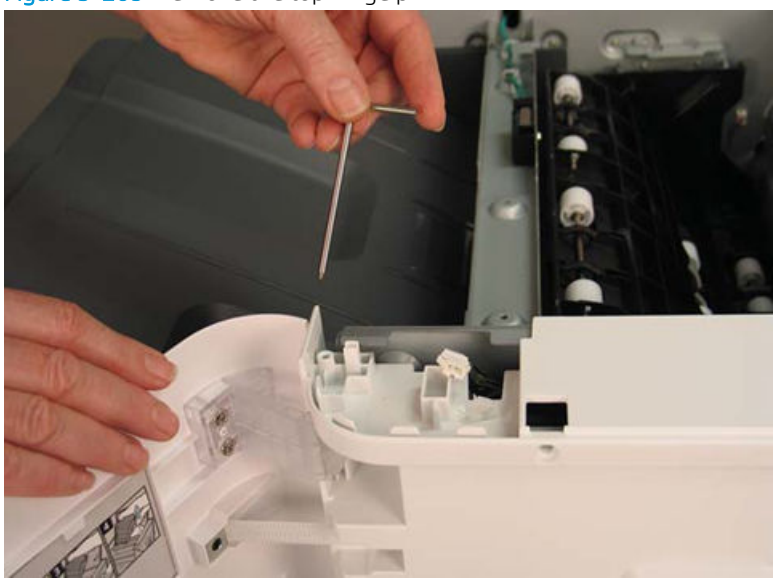
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-208 Lift the top hinge pin



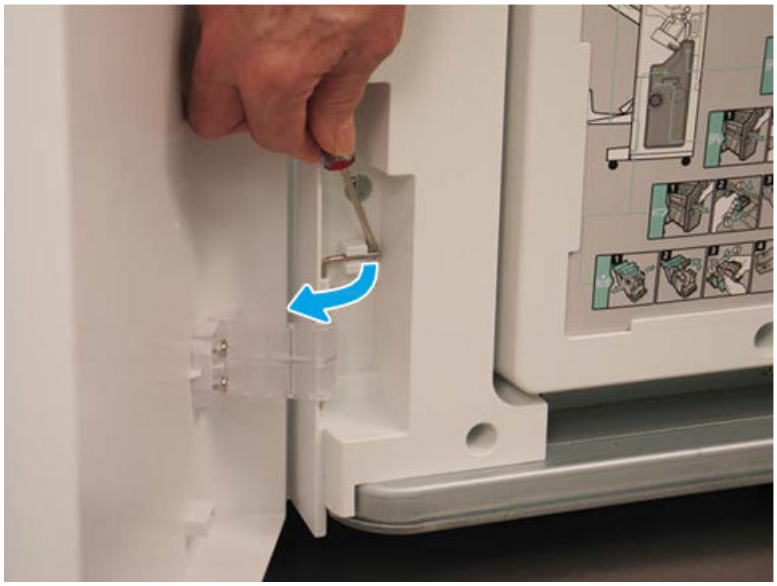
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-209 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-210 Release the lower hinge pin



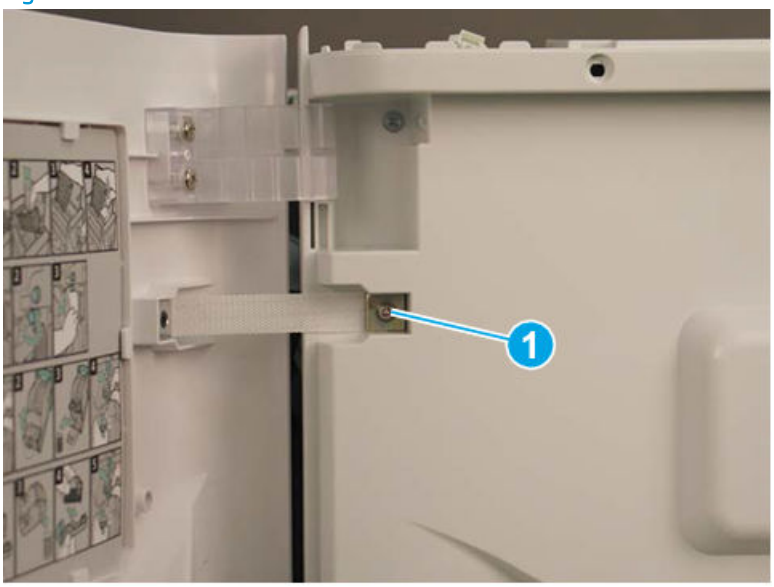
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-211 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-212 Remove the front door

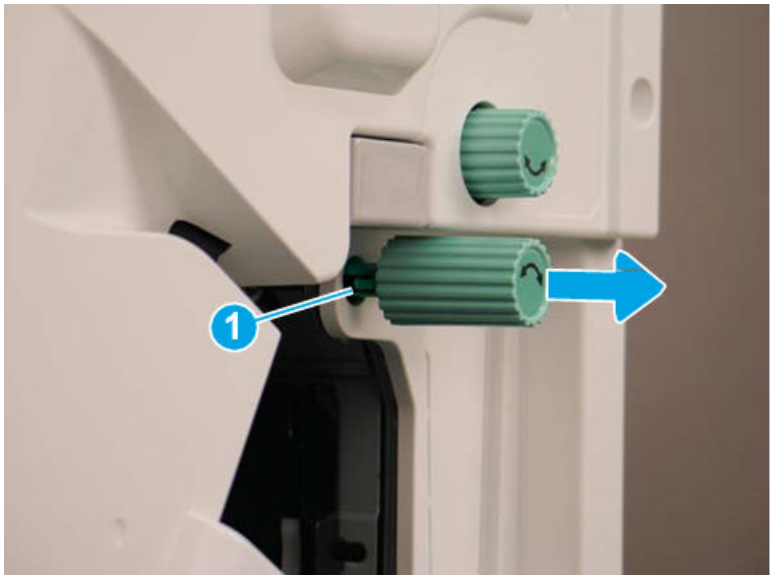


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

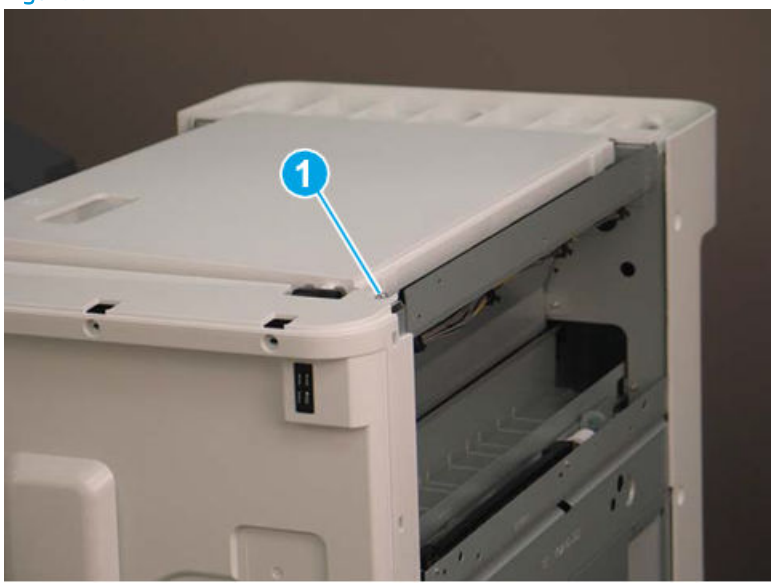
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-213 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

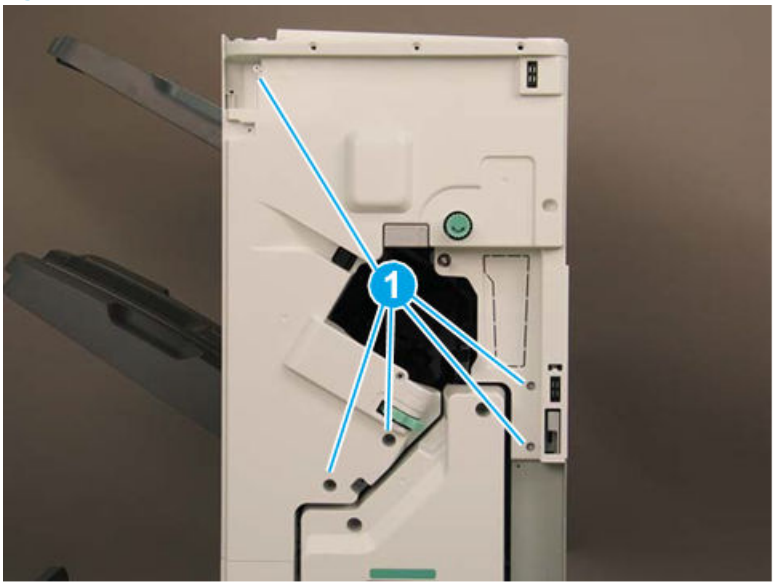
Figure 5-214 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-215 Remove the front cover

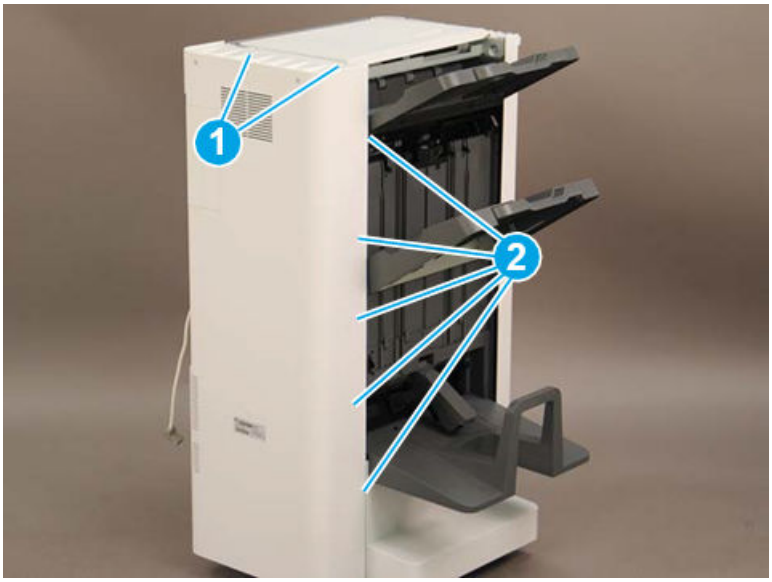


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-216 Remove seven screws

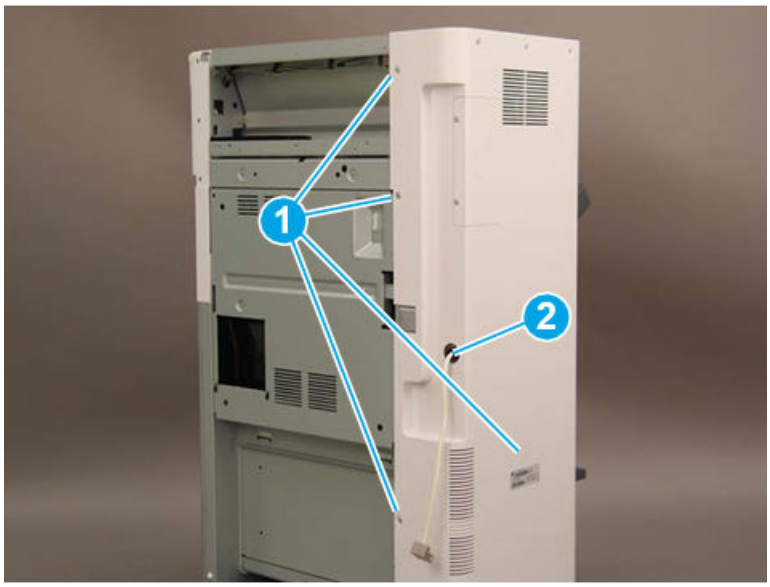


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-217 Remove the rear cover

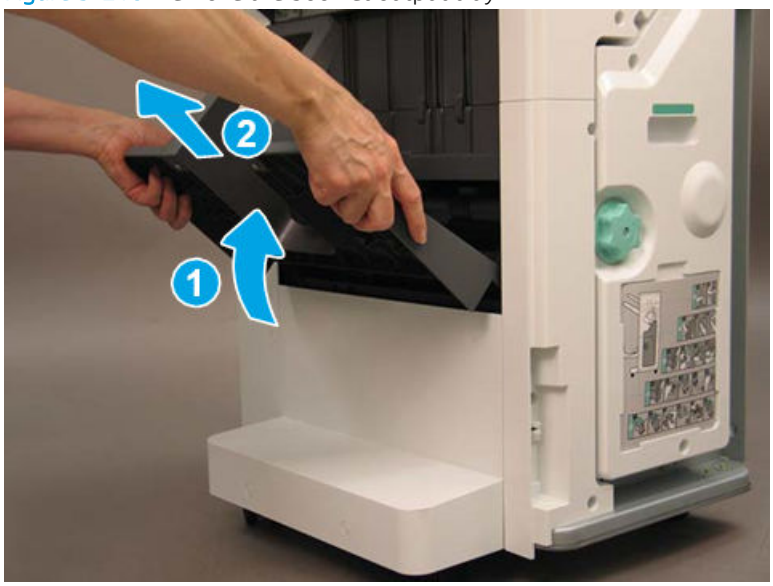


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-218 Remove the booklet output tray



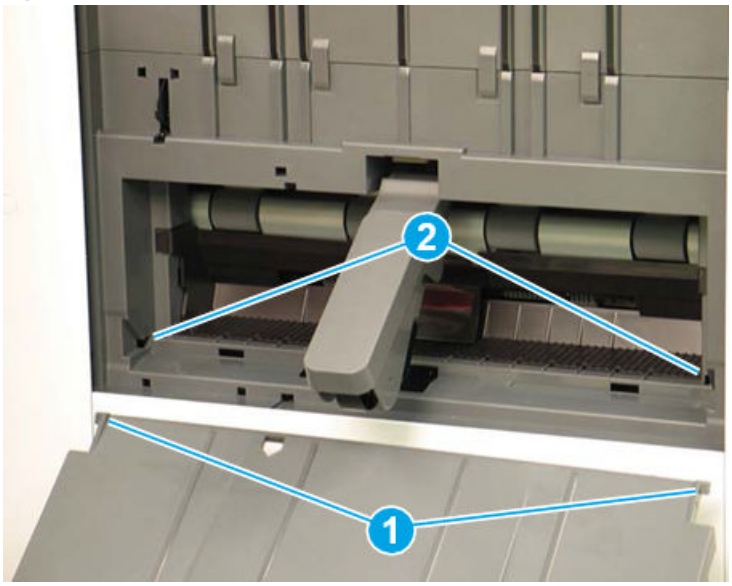
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-219 Install the booklet output tray

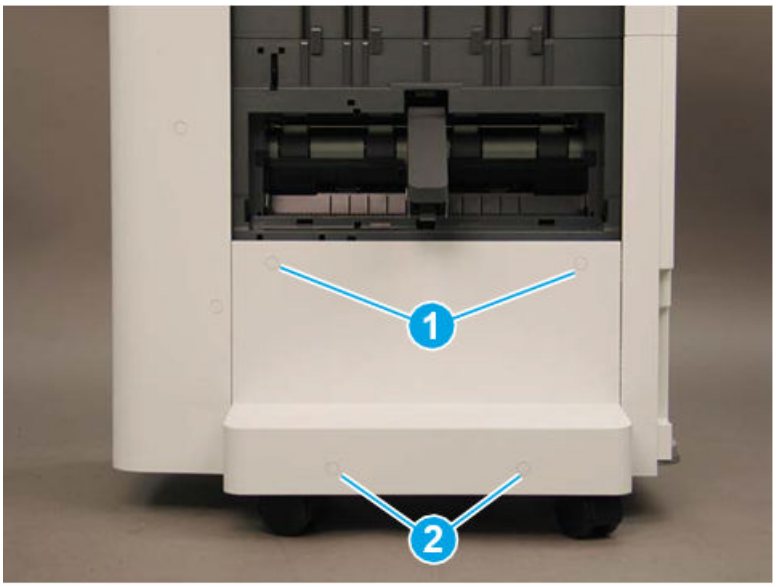


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-220 Remove four screws

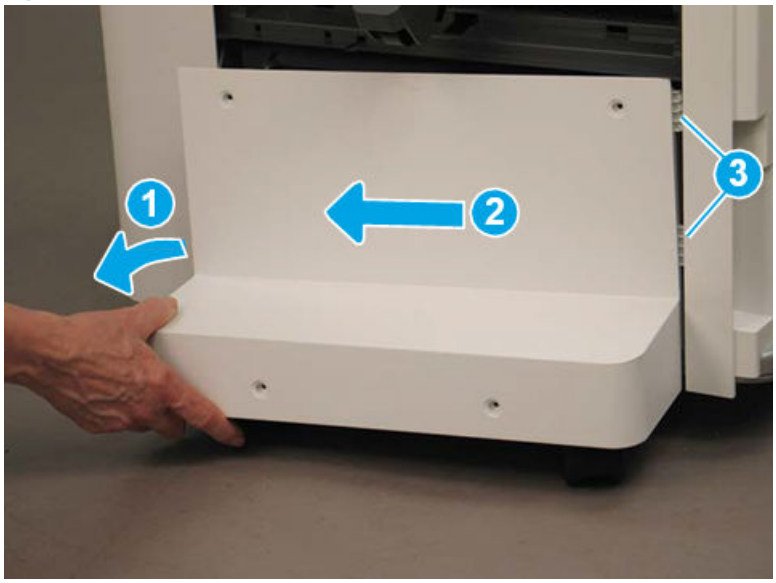


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-221 Remove the caster cover



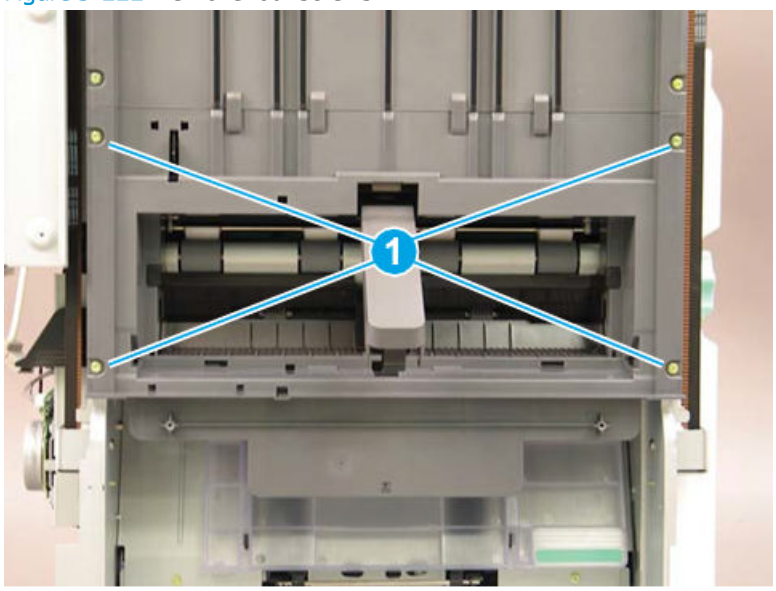
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-222 Remove four screws

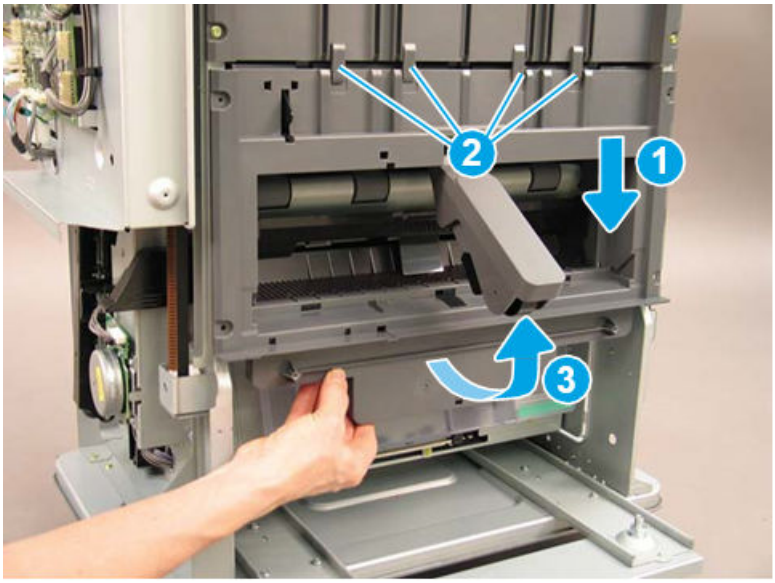


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

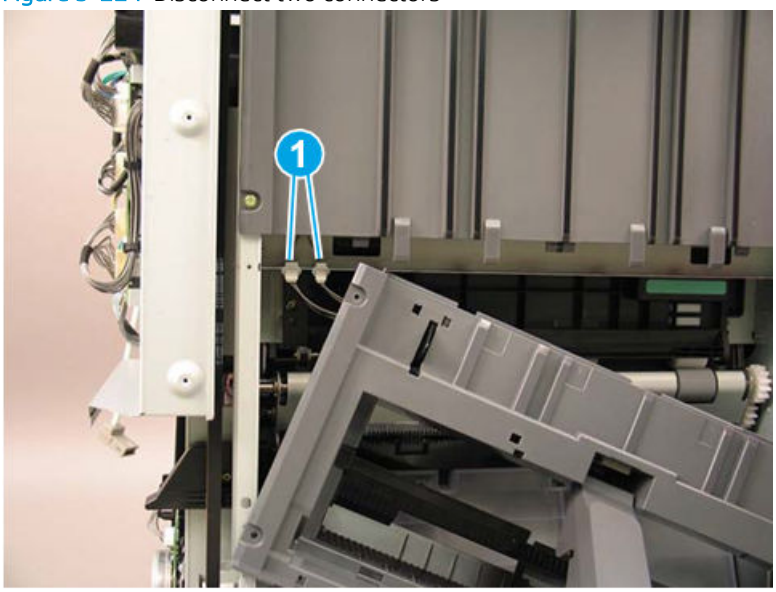
Figure 5-223 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

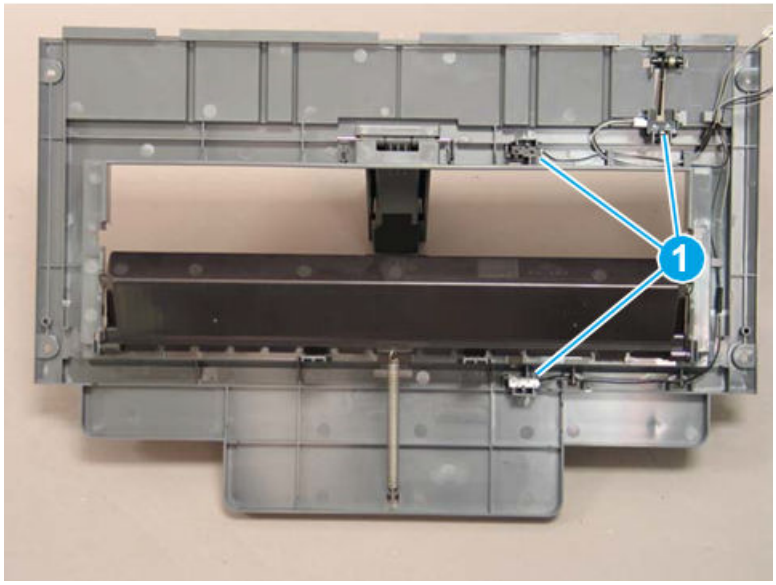
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-224 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-225 Remove the left lower cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left upper cover

Learn how to remove and replace the left upper cover.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the left upper cover on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-94 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01475B	Left upper cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

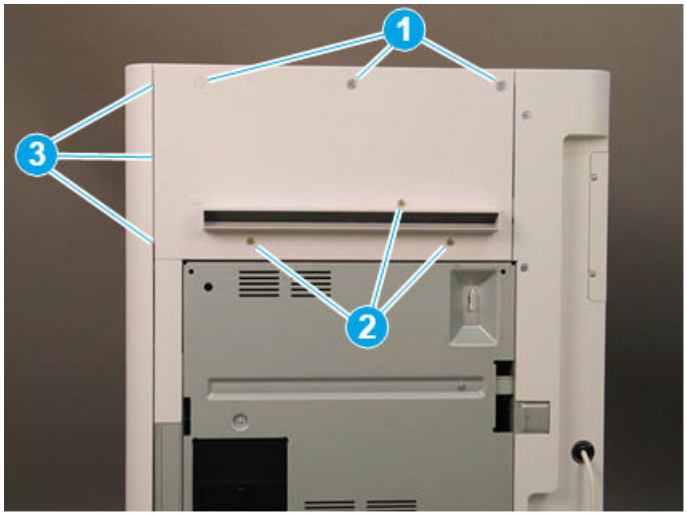
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-226 Remove the right upper cover

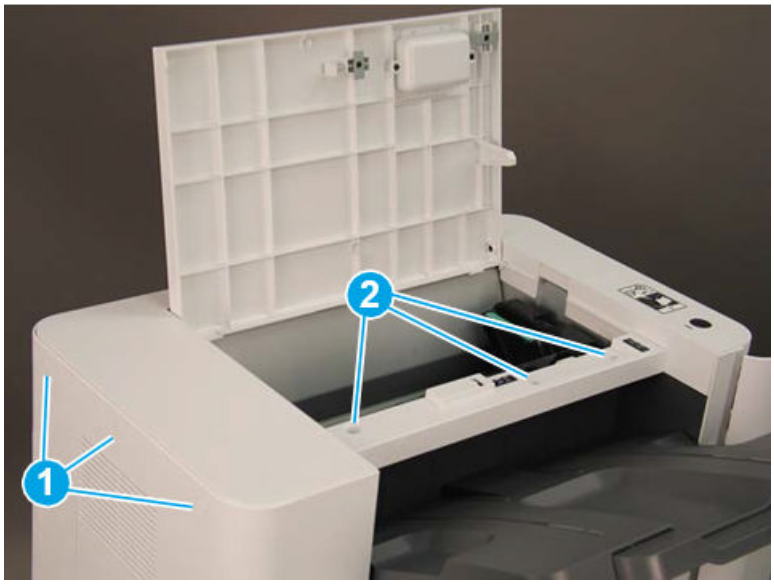


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

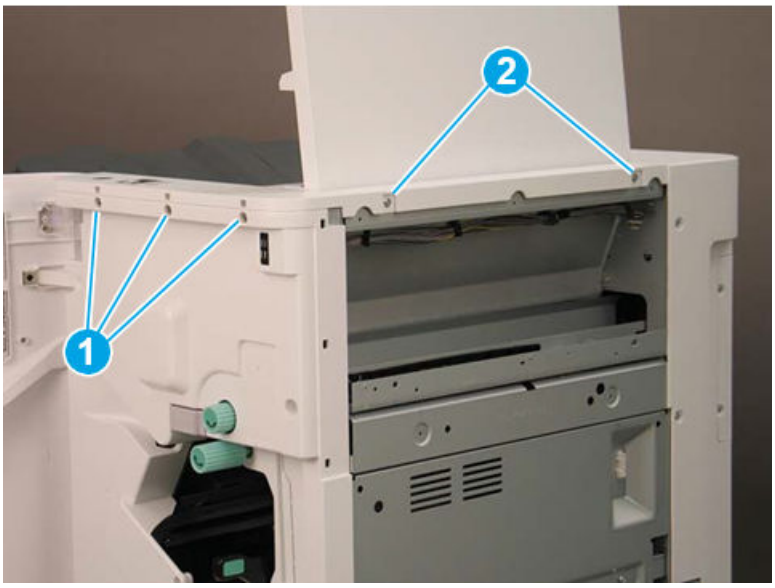
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-227 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

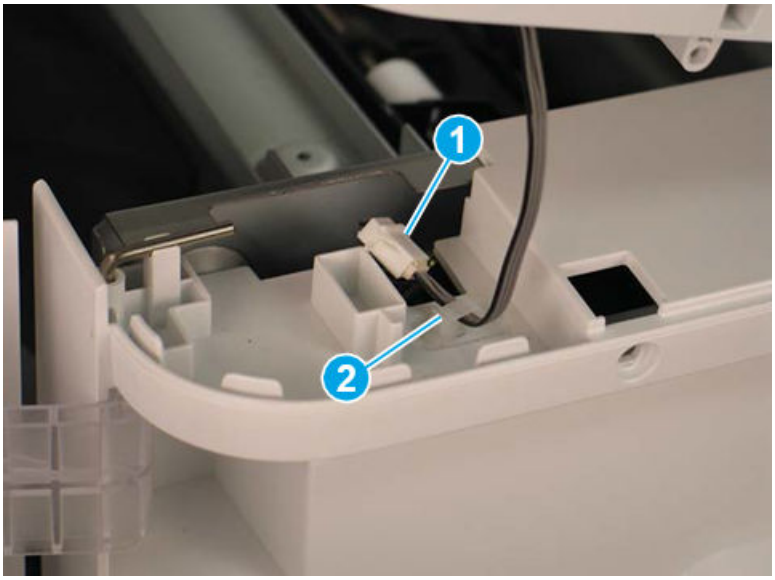
Figure 5-228 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-229 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

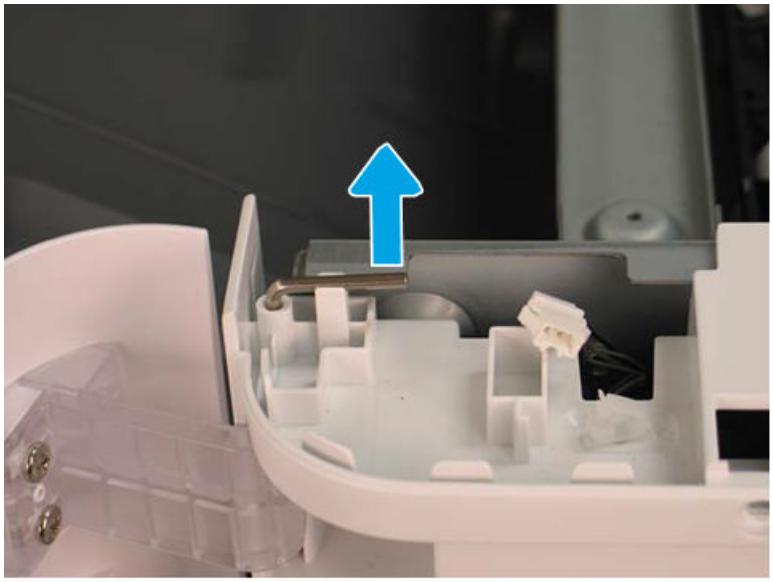


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

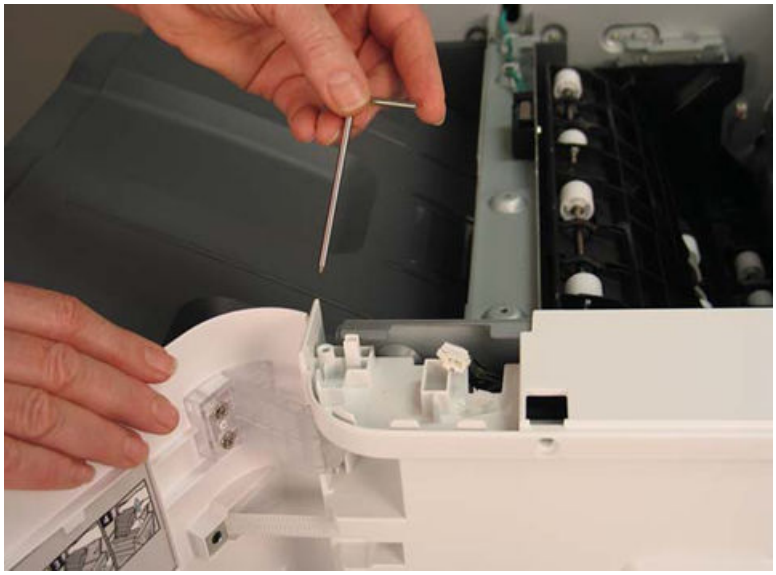
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-230 Lift the top hinge pin



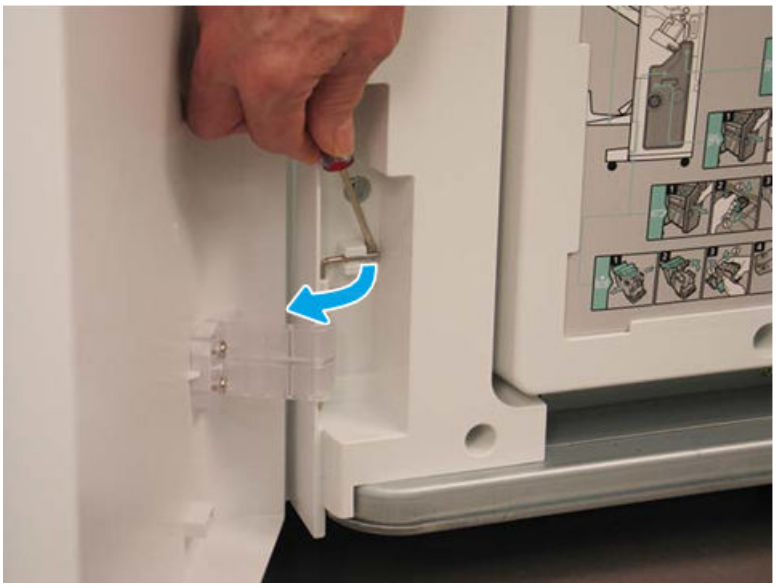
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-231 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-232 Release the lower hinge pin



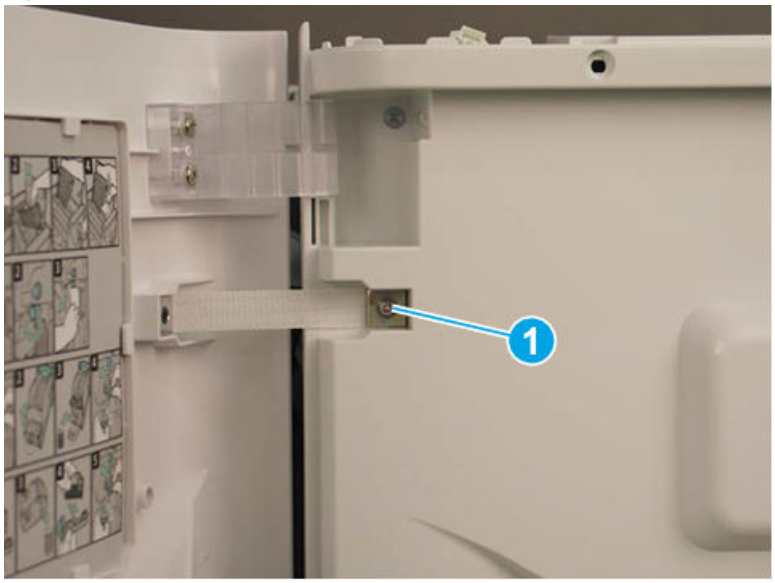
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-233 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-234 Remove the front door

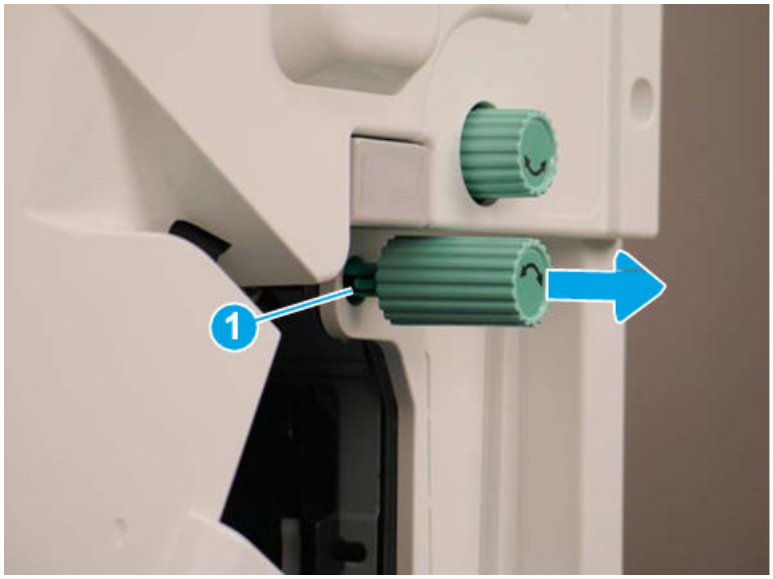


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-235 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

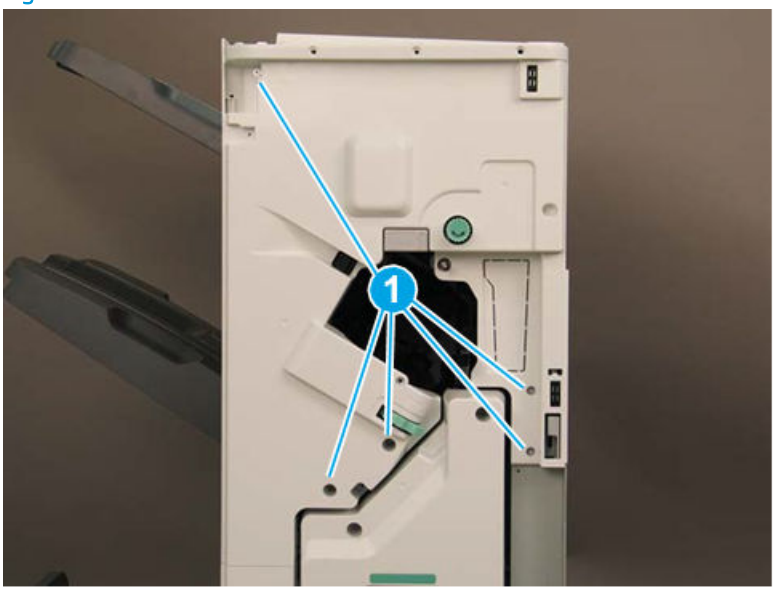
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-236 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-237 Remove the front cover

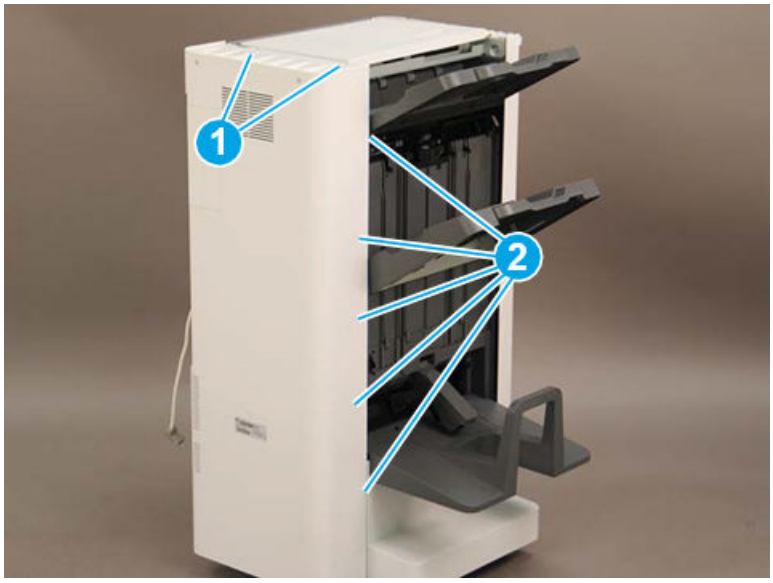


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-238 Remove seven screws

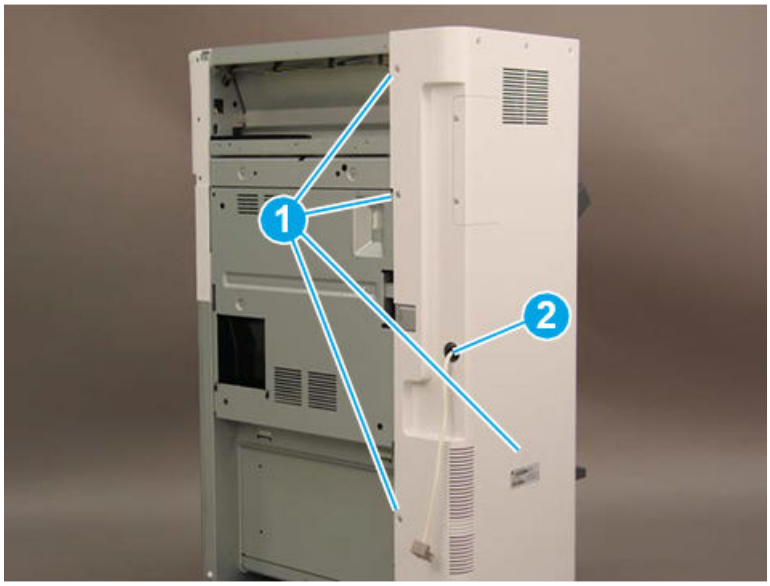


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-239 Remove the rear cover

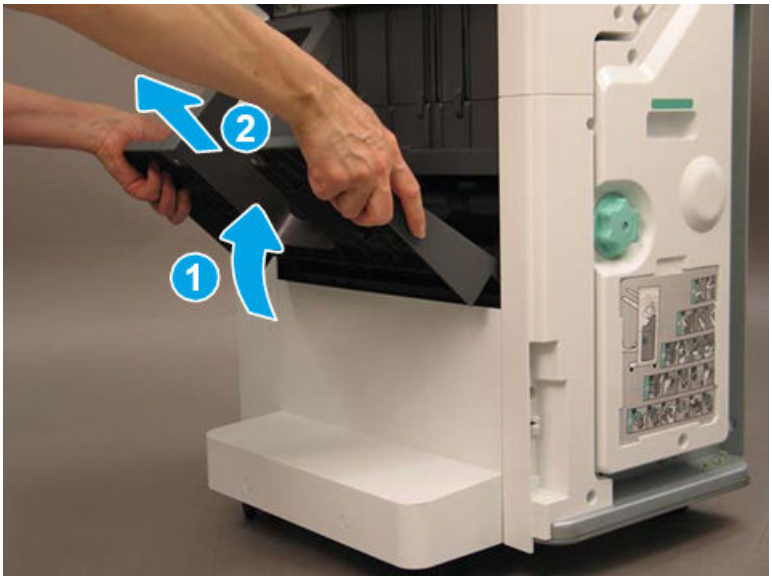


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-240 Remove the booklet output tray



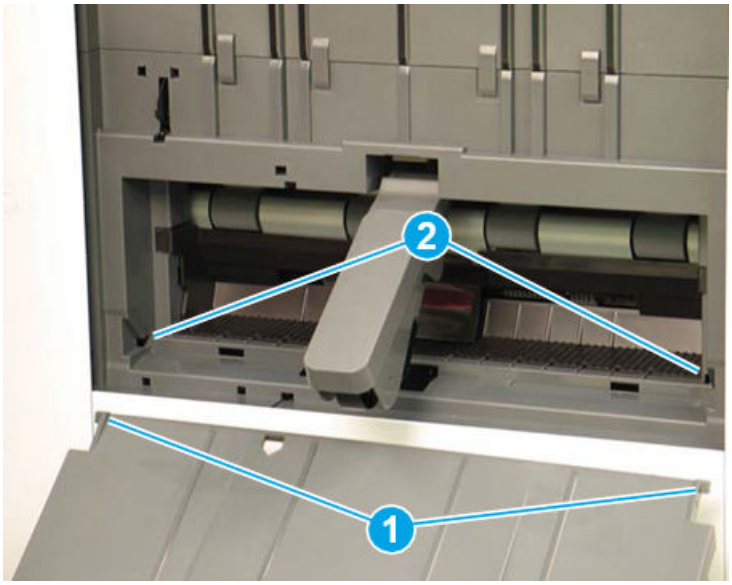
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-241 Install the booklet output tray

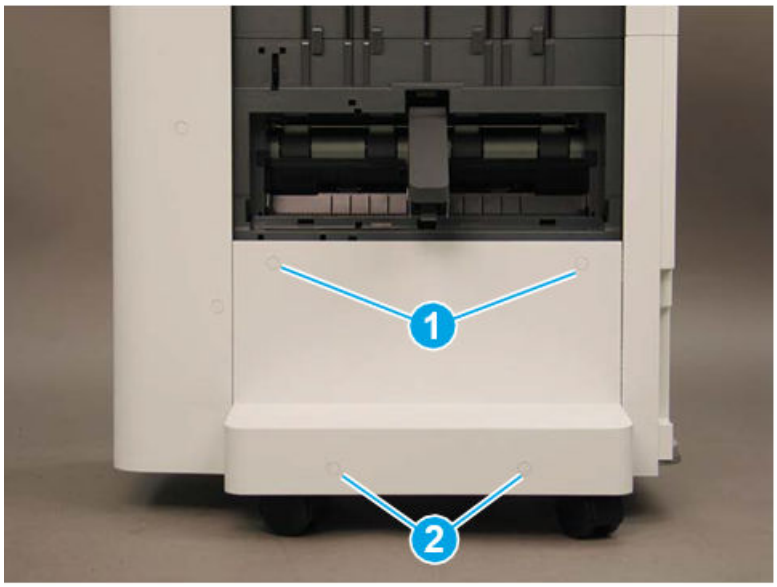


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-242 Remove four screws

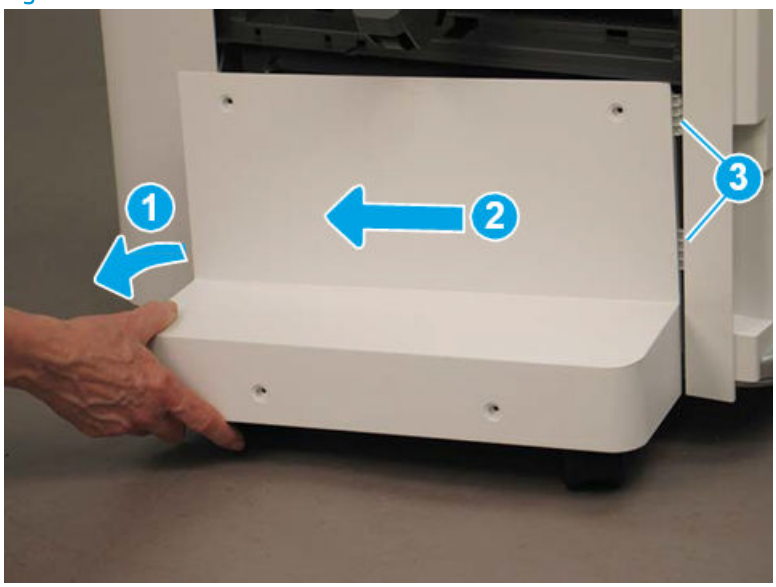


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-243 Remove the caster cover



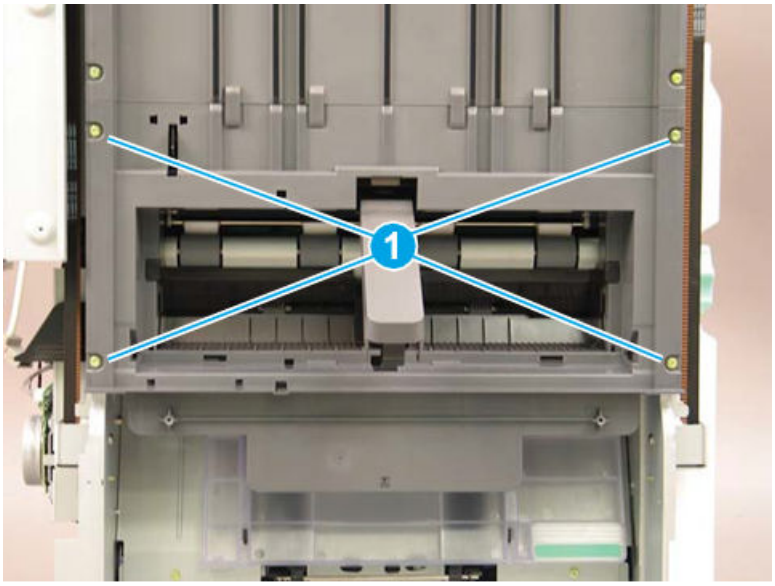
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-244 Remove four screws

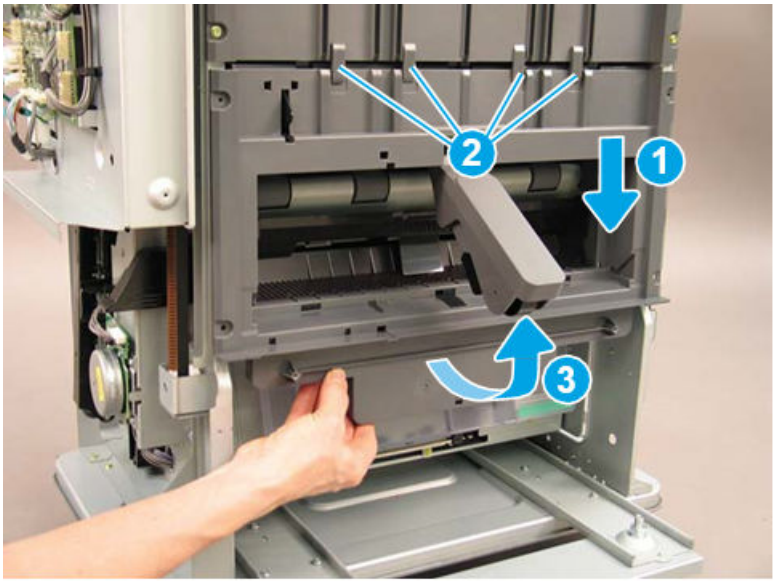


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

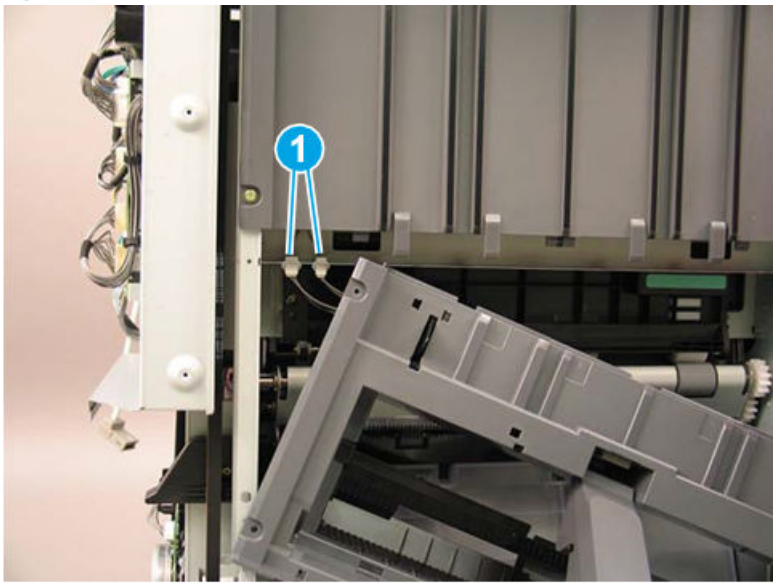
Figure 5-245 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

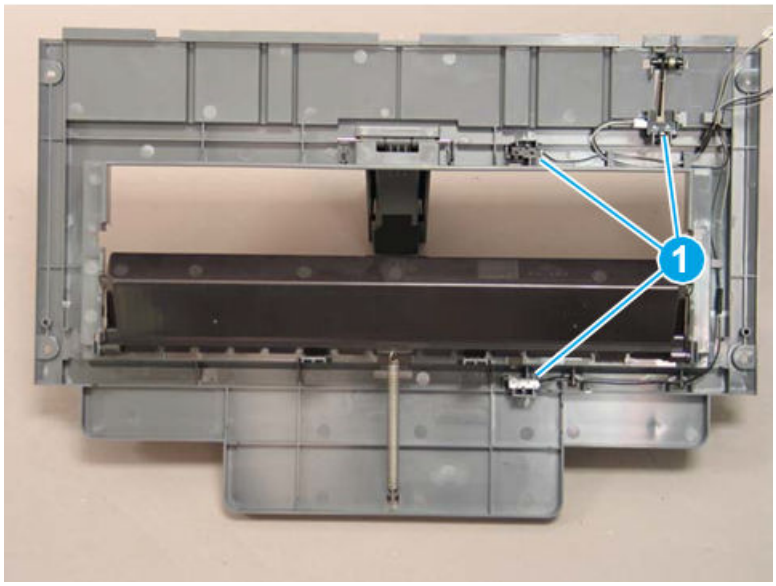
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-246 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-247 Remove the left lower cover

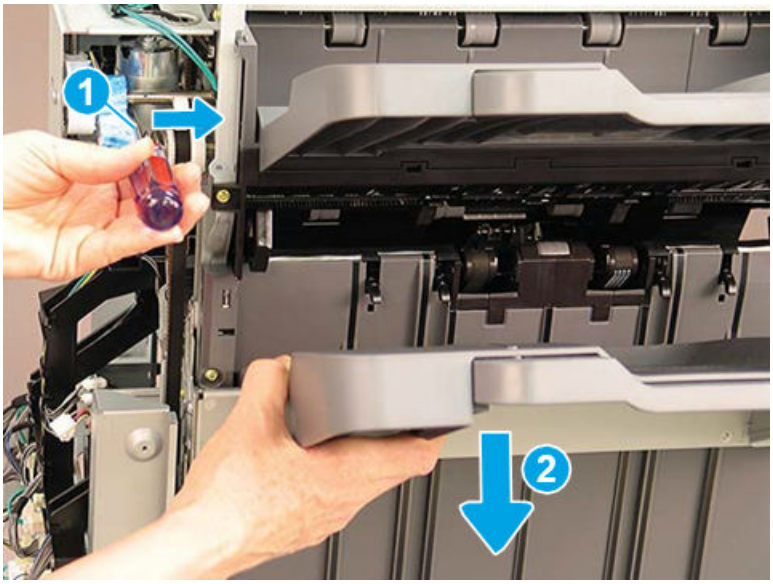


Remove the left upper cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover (finisher).

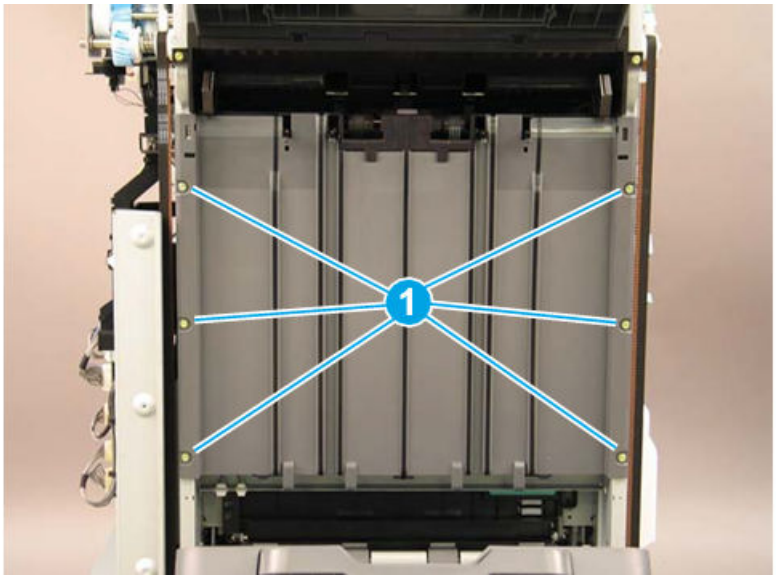
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 5-248 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-249 Remove six screws

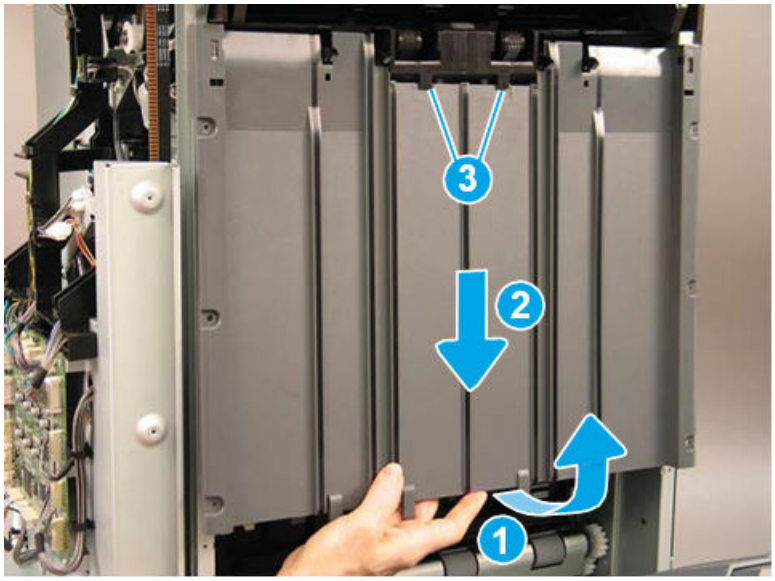


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away fromthe finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

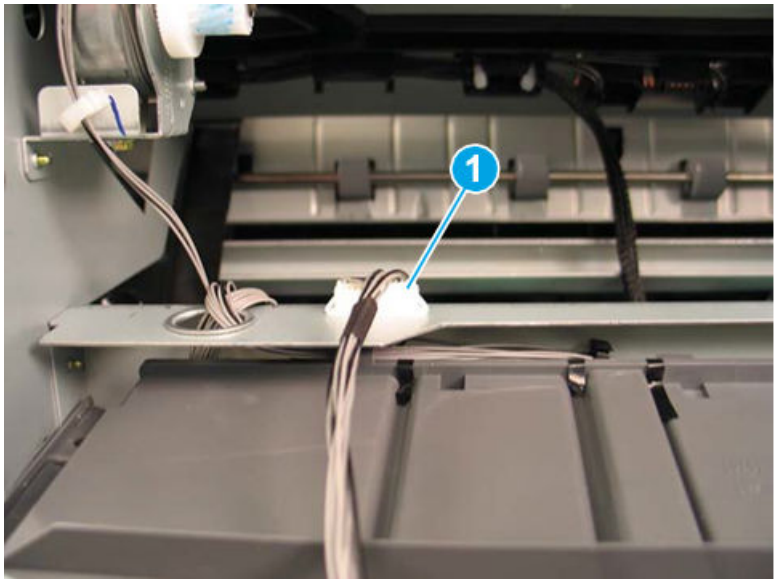
Figure 5-250 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

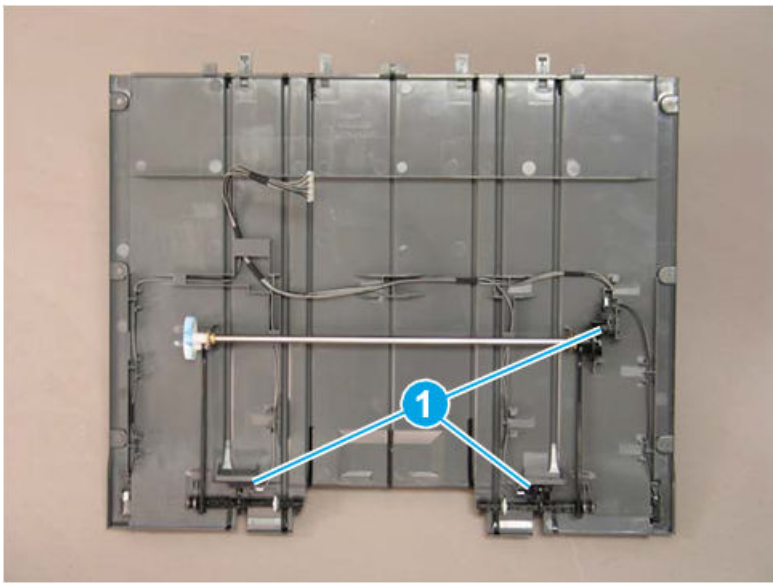
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-251 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the left upper cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left upper cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-252 Remove the left upper cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet finisher front cover

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet front cover.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet front cover on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-95 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01478B	Booklet front cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

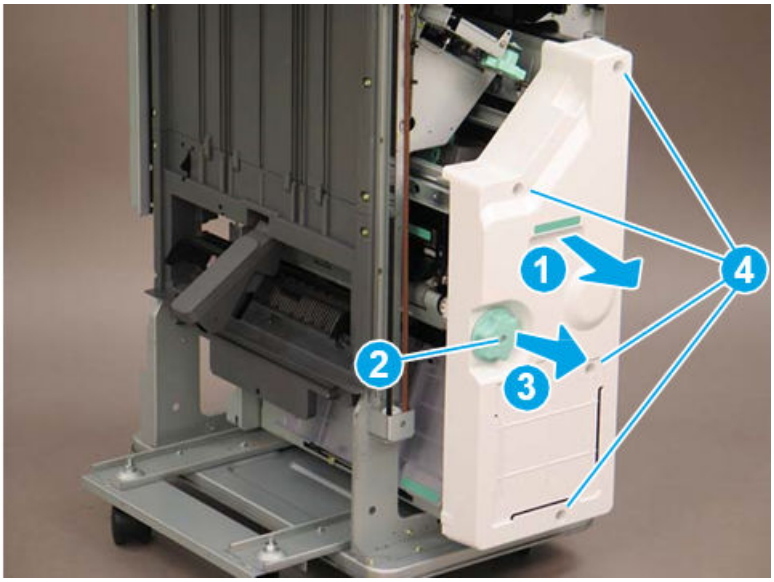
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

▲ Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-253 Remove five screws and the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Entrance unit

Removal and replacement: Entrance motor (M12)

Learn how to remove and replace the feed entrance motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the entrance motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-96 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01459A	Entrance motor assembly
JC31-00163B	Entrance motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

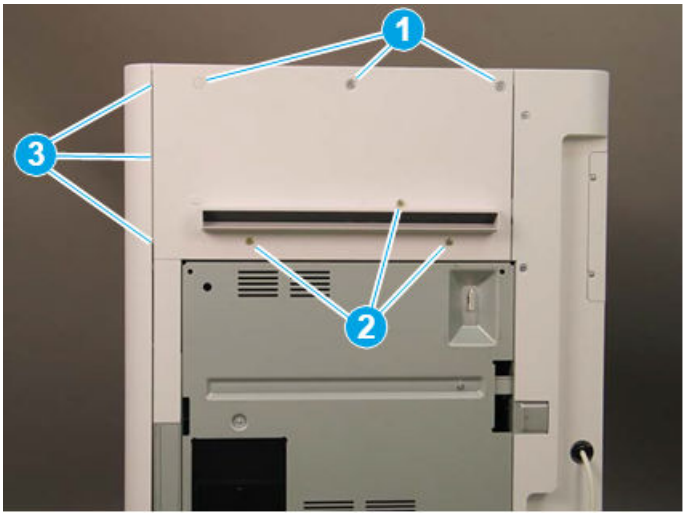
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-254 Remove the right upper cover

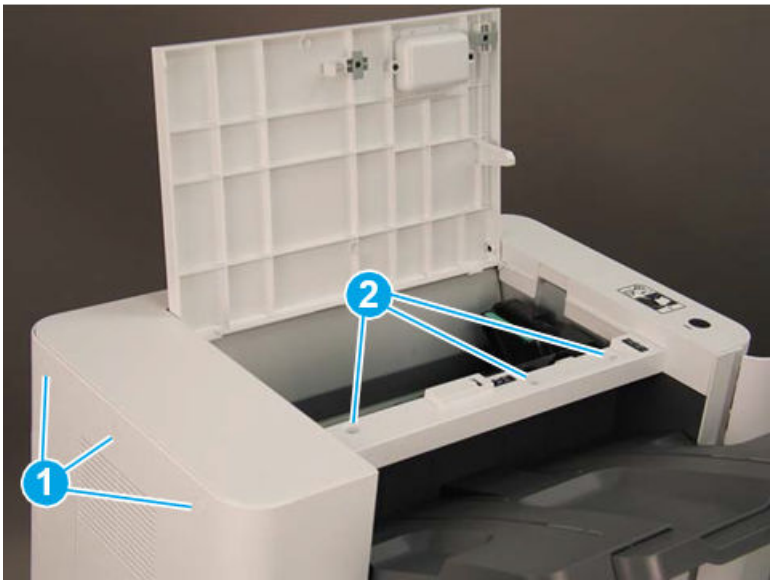


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

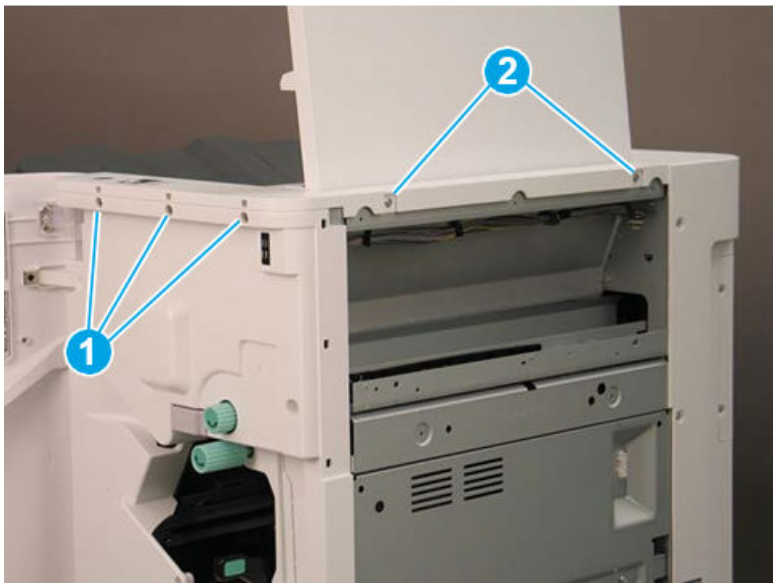
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-255 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

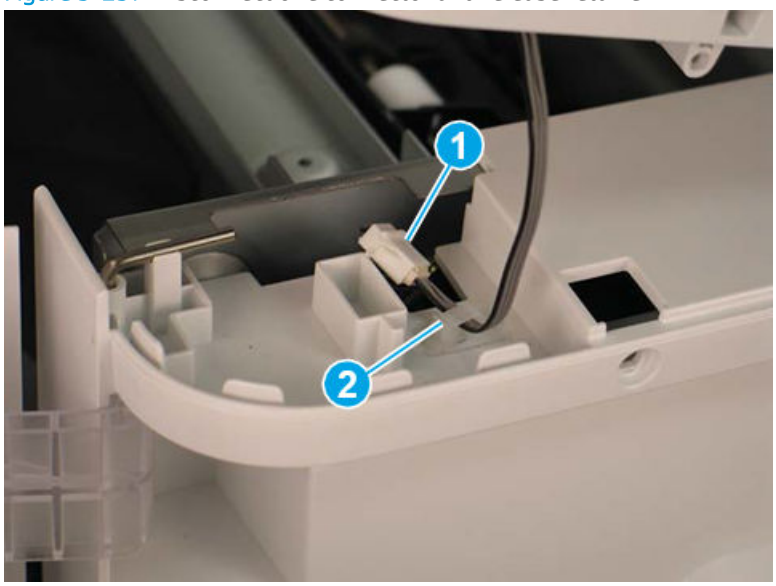
Figure 5-256 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-257 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

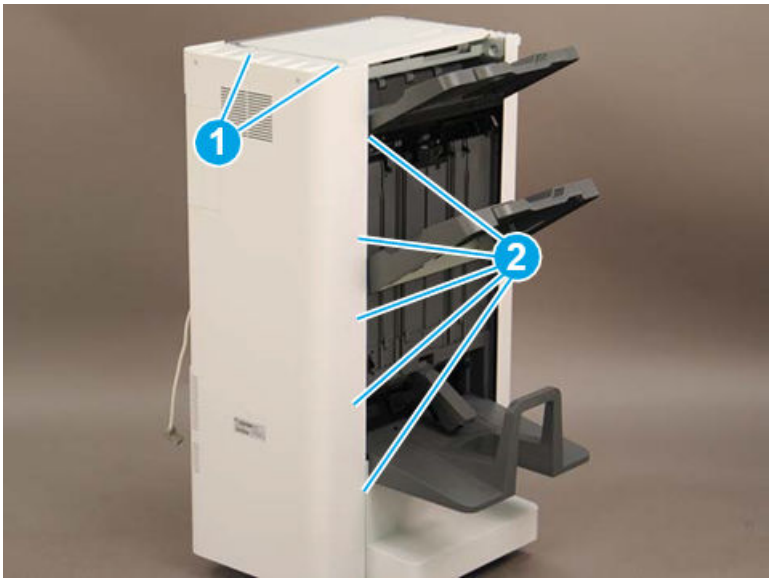


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-258 Remove seven screws

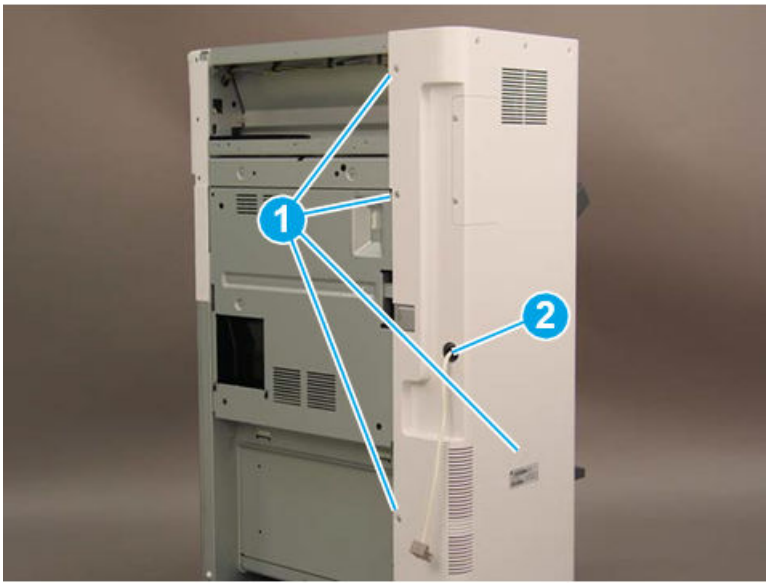


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-259 Remove the rear cover



Remove the entrance motor (M12)

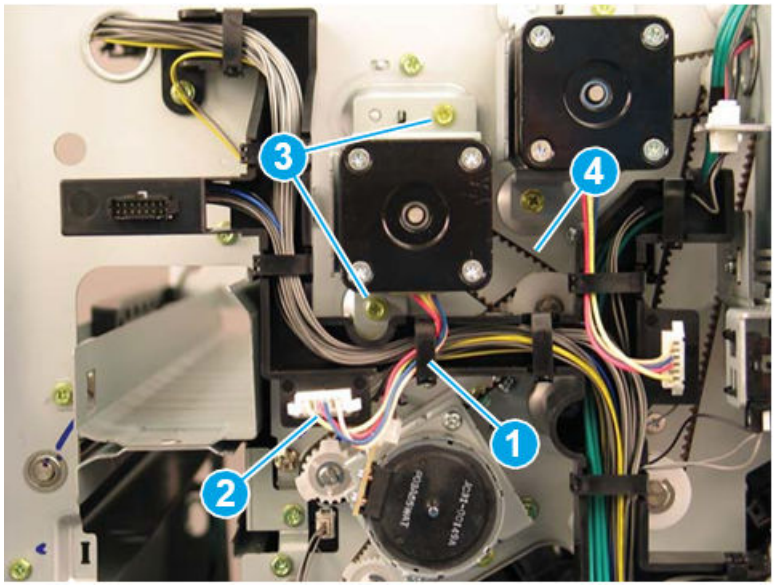
Follow these steps to remove the entrance motor (M12).

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the entrance motor.

TIP: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-260 Remove the entrance motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Punch unit

Removal and replacement: Dummy feed guide

Learn how to remove and replace the dummy feed guide.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the dummy feed guide on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-97 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01161A	Dummy feed guide
Y1G10-67901	HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/3 Accessory
Y1G11-67901	HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/4 Accessory
Y1G12-67901	HP LaserJet Hole Punch Swedish Accessory

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

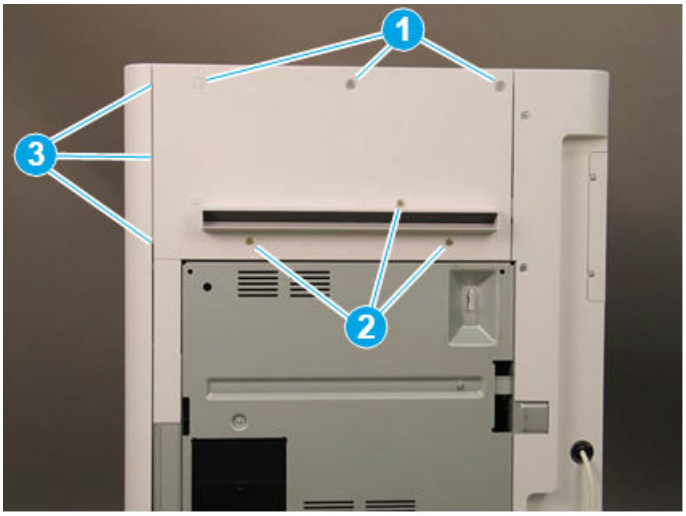
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-261 Remove the right upper cover

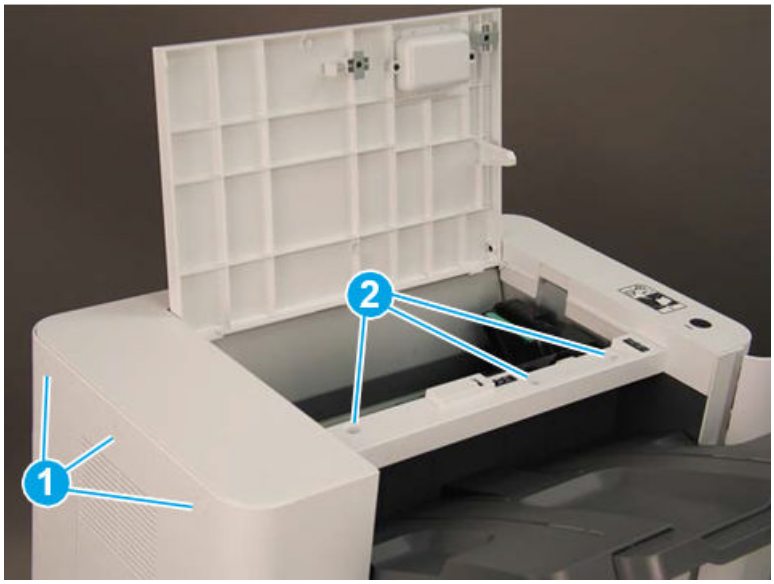


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

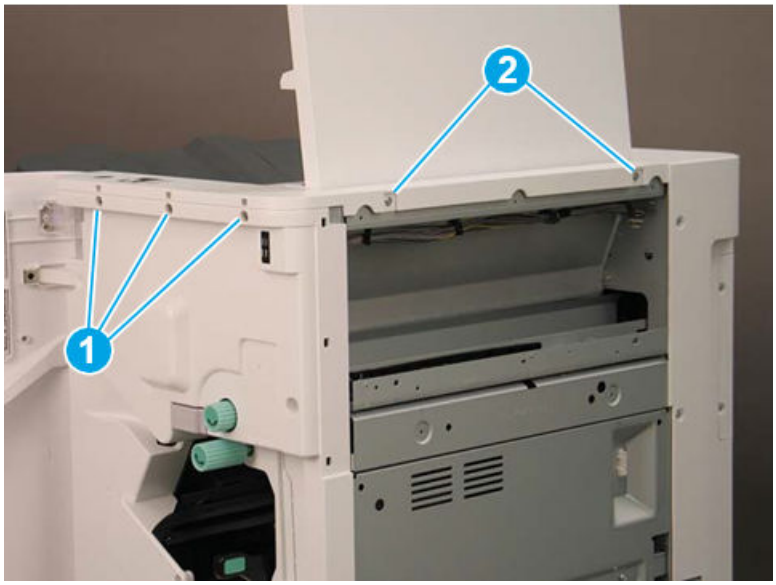
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-262 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

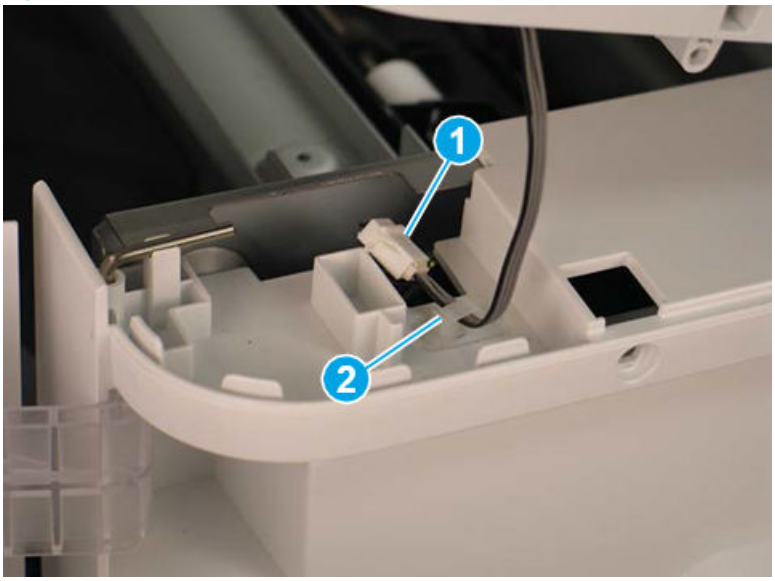
Figure 5-263 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-264 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

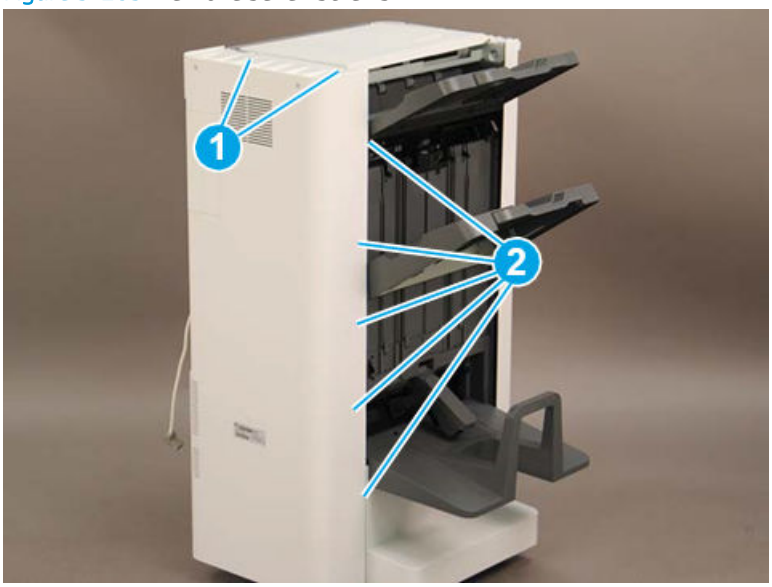


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-265 Remove seven screws

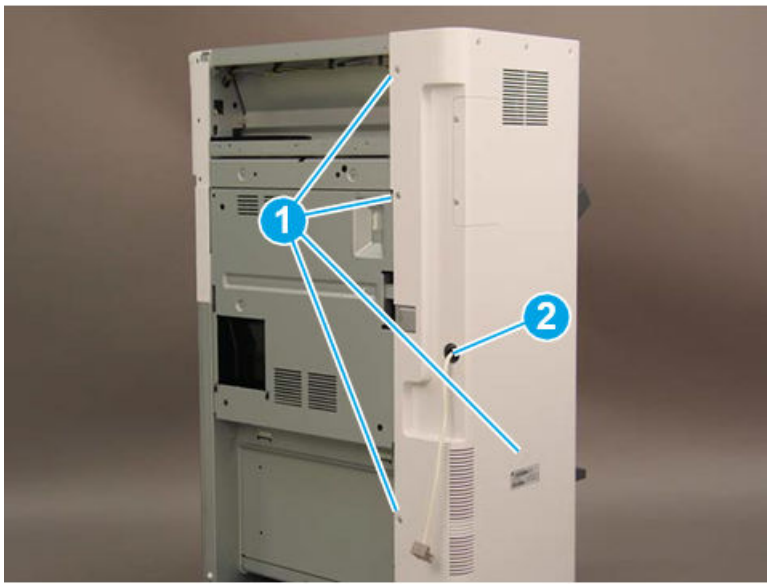


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-266 Remove the rear cover



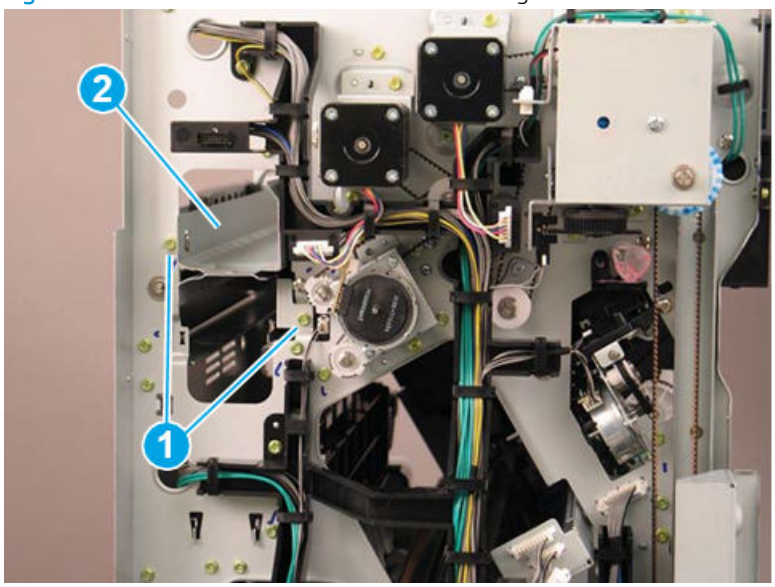
Remove the dummy feed guide (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the dummy feed guide (finisher).

▲ At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the dummy feed guide (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-267 Remove two screws and the feed guide



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Tray diverter unit

HP LaserJet Managed MFP E82540-E82560, E87640-E87660, E82540du-E82560du, E87640du-E87660du, E72525-E72535, E77822-E77830 - Removal and replacement: Top jam access cover

Learn how to remove and replace the top jam cover assembly.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top jam cover assembly for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-98 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01455A	Top jam cover assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

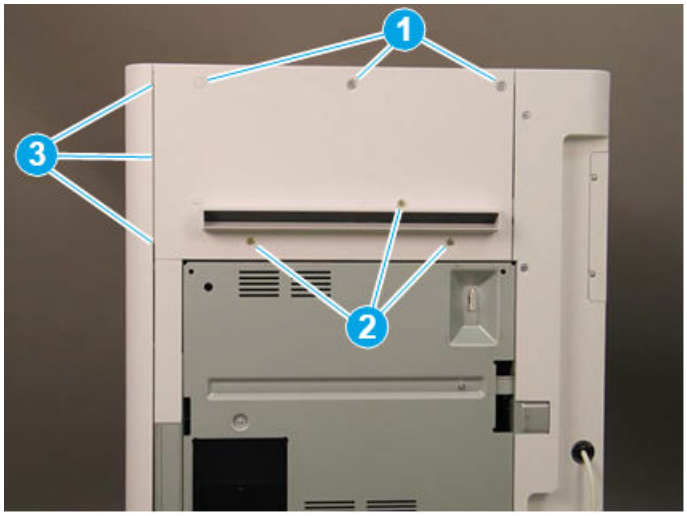
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-268 Remove the right upper cover

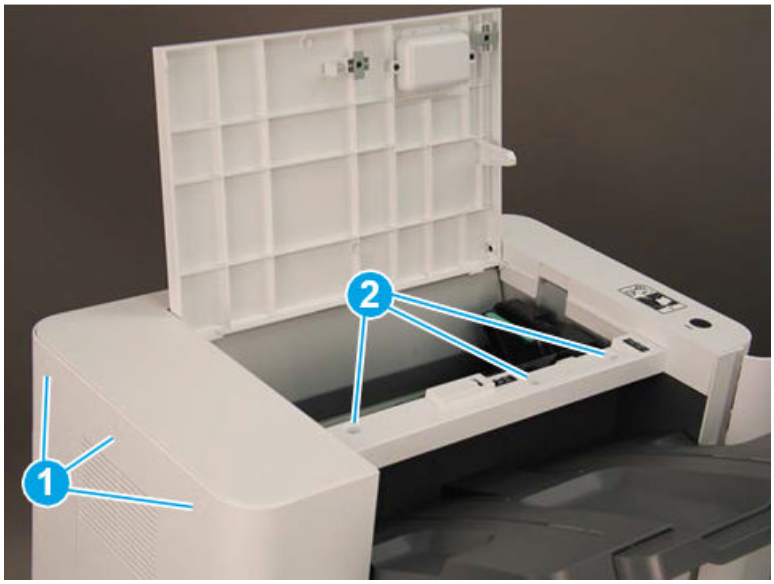


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

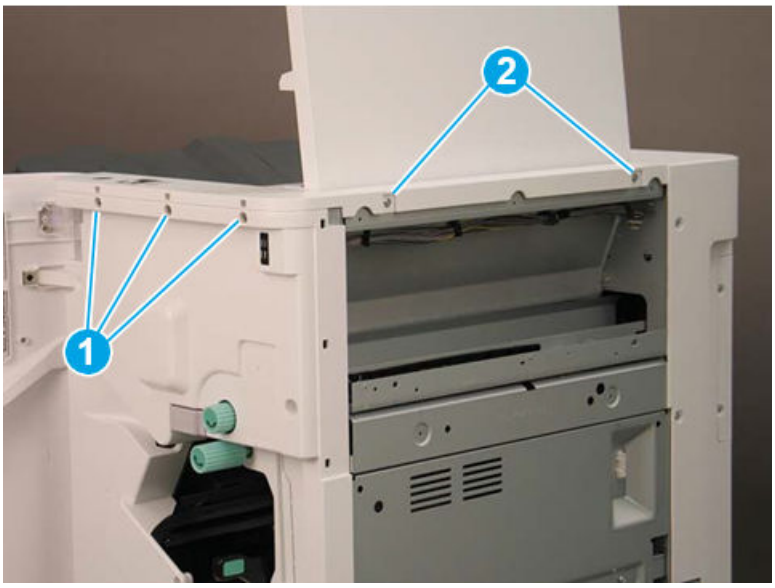
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-269 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

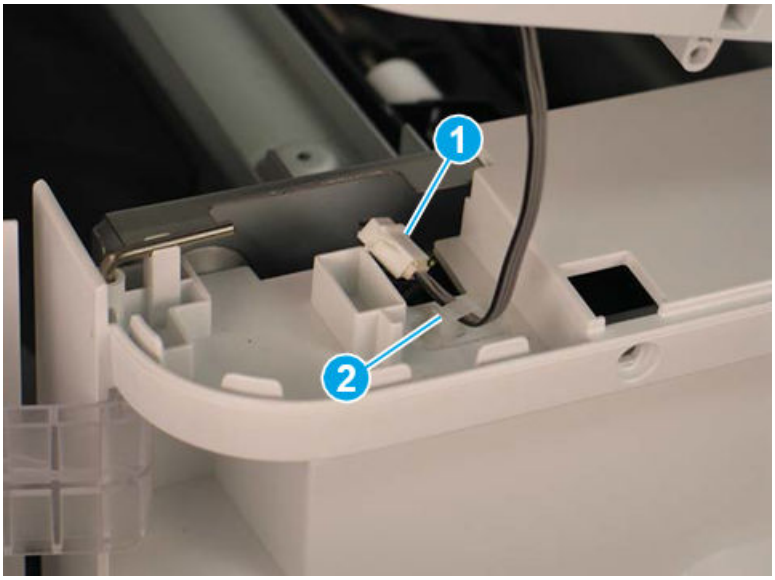
Figure 5-270 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-271 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

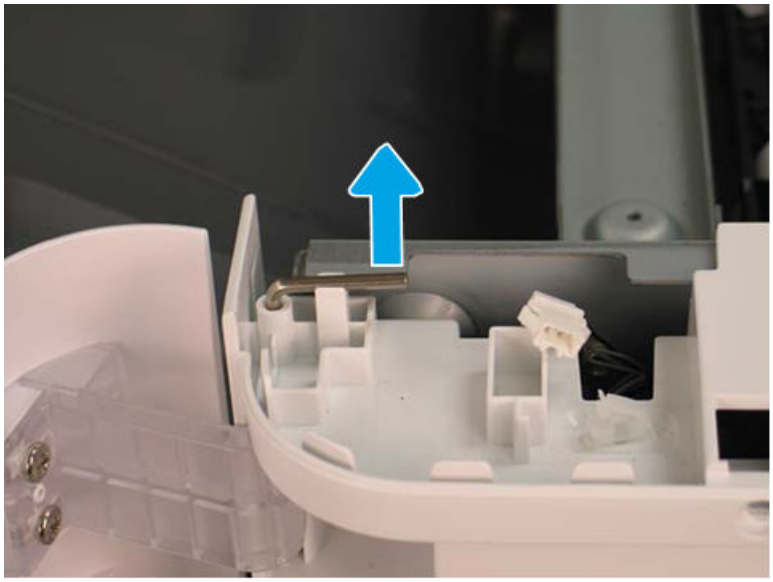


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

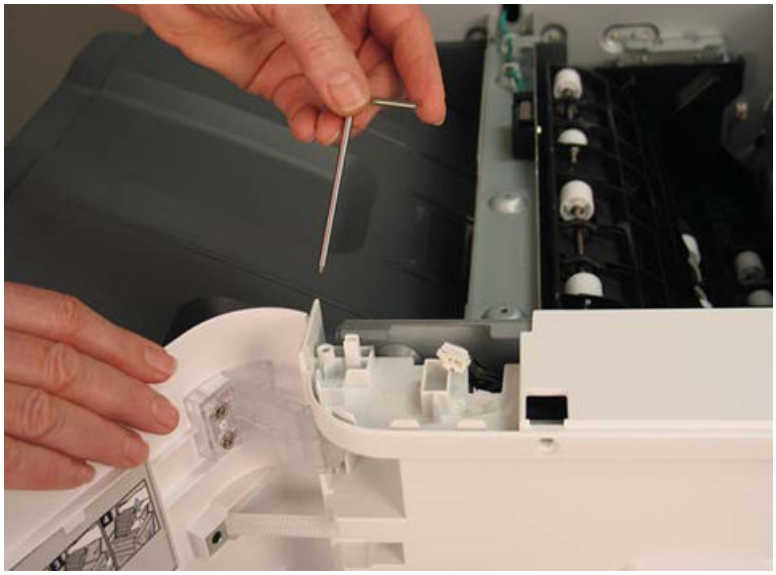
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-272 Lift the top hinge pin



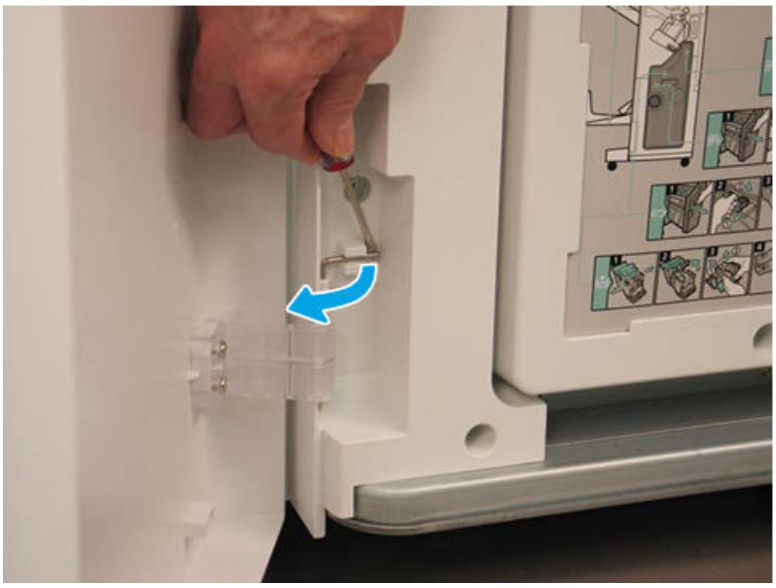
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-273 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-274 Release the lower hinge pin



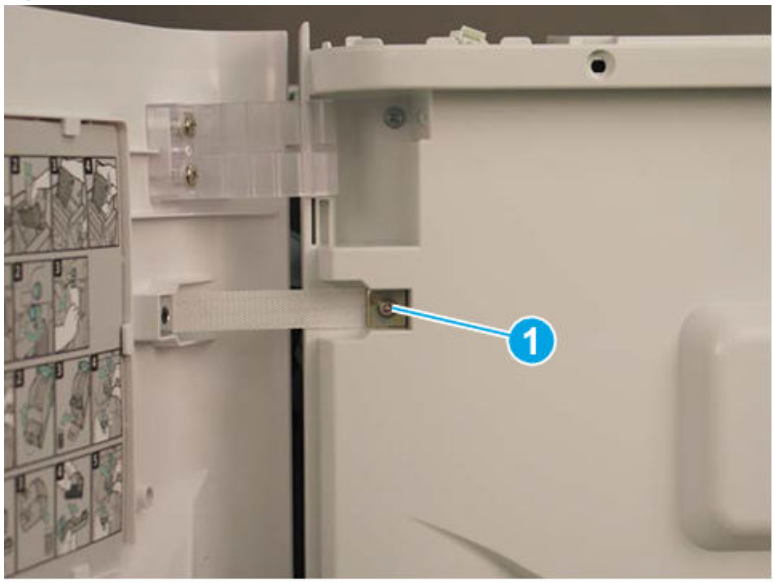
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-275 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-276 Remove the front door

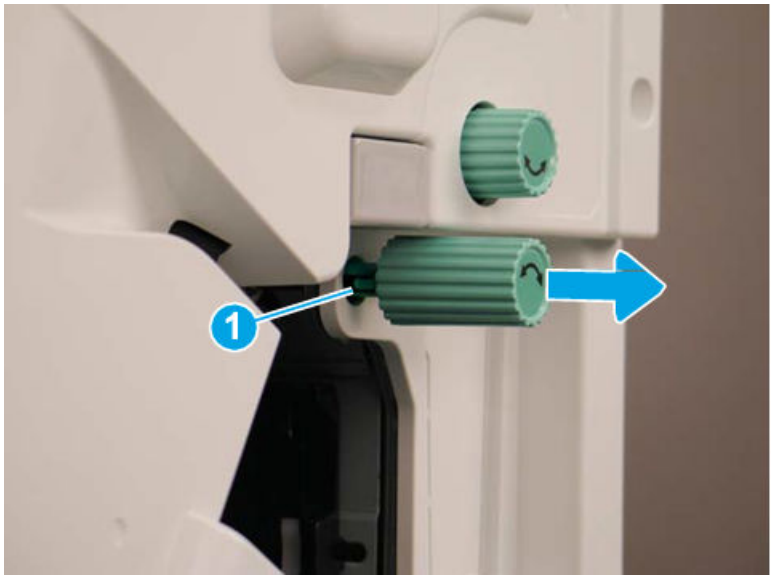


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-277 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

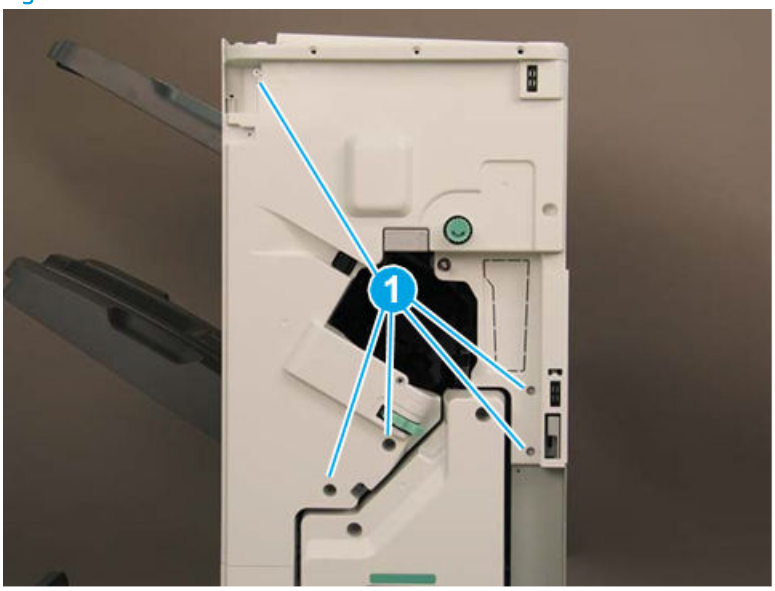
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-278 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-279 Remove the front cover

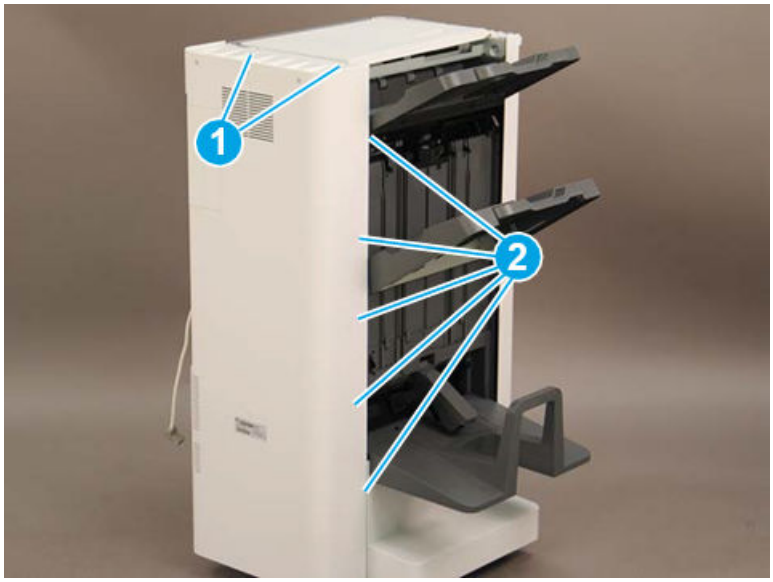


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-280 Remove seven screws

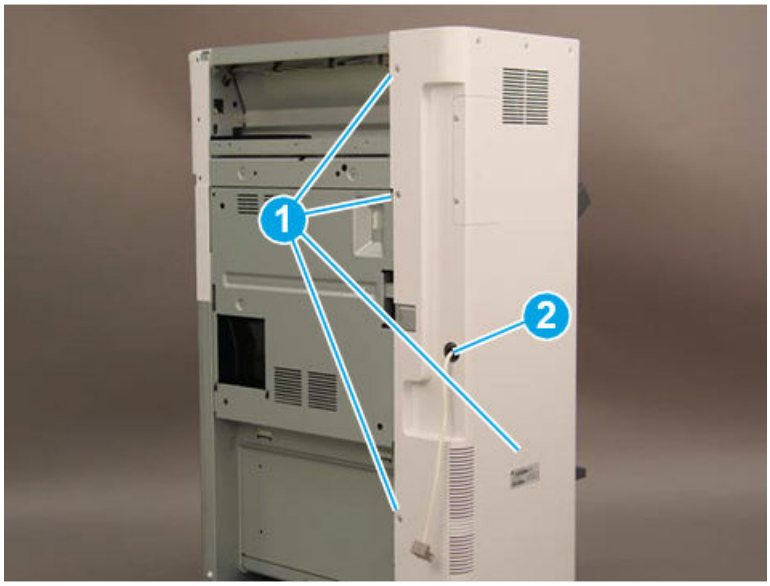


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-281 Remove the rear cover



Remove the exit motor (M13)

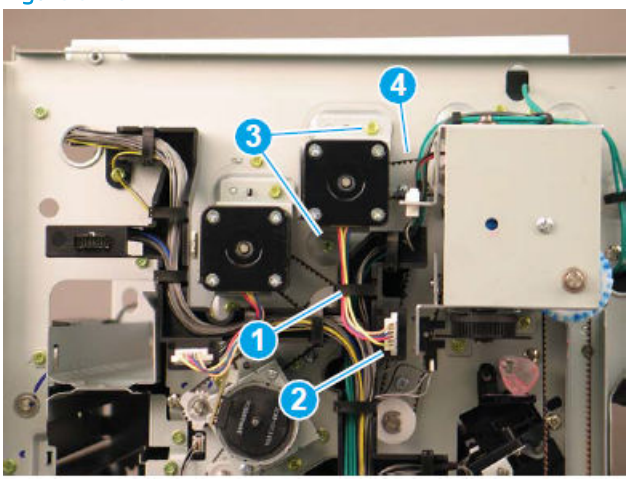
Follow these steps to remove the exit motor (M13).

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the exit motor.

TIP: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-282 Remove the exit motor

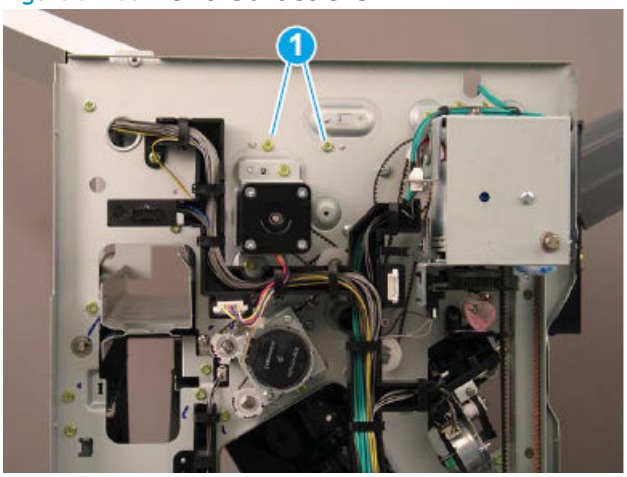


Remove the top jam access cover

Follow these steps to remove the top jam access cover.

1. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

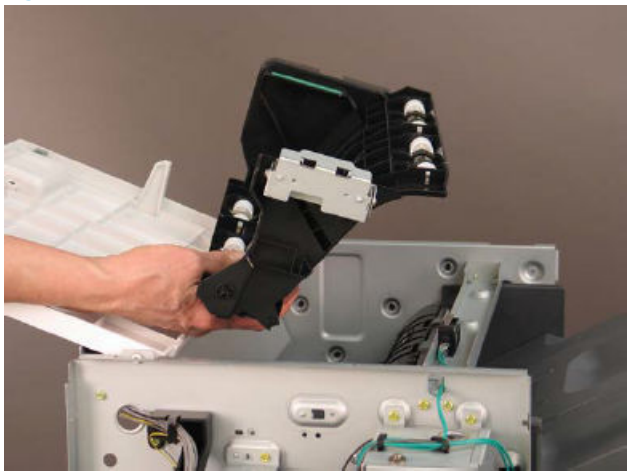
Figure 5-283 Remove two screws



2. Remove the top jam access cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-284 Remove the top jam access cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray diverter

Learn how to remove and replace the tray diverter.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the tray diverter on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-99 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC61-07205A	Tray diverter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

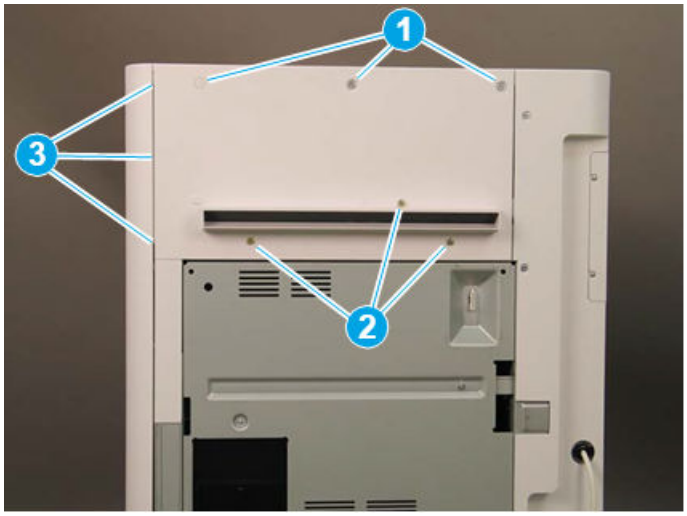
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-285 Remove the right upper cover

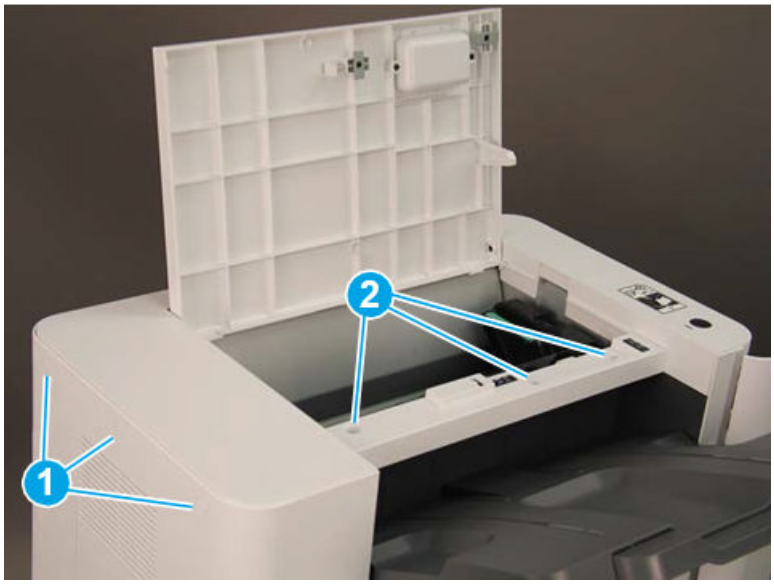


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

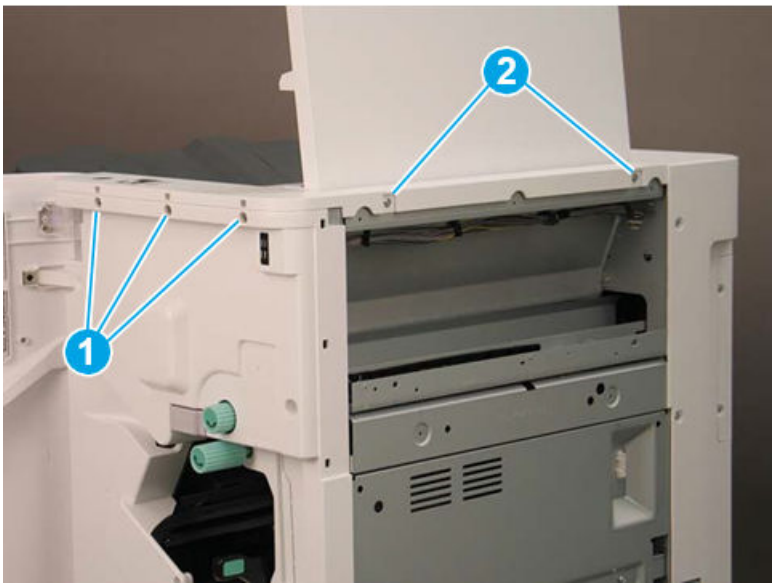
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-286 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

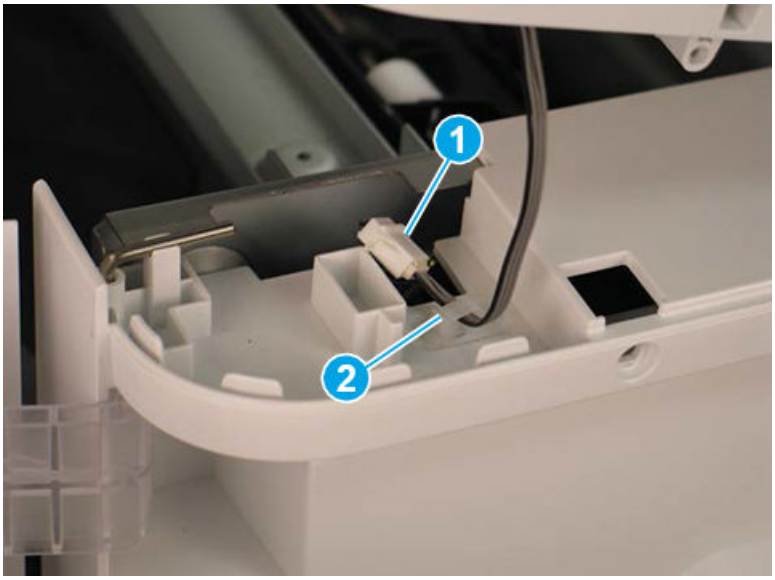
Figure 5-287 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-288 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

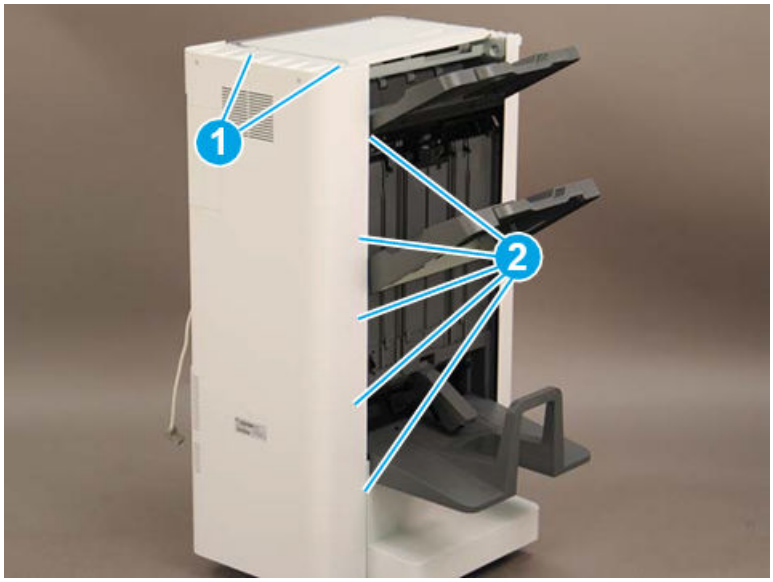


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-289 Remove seven screws

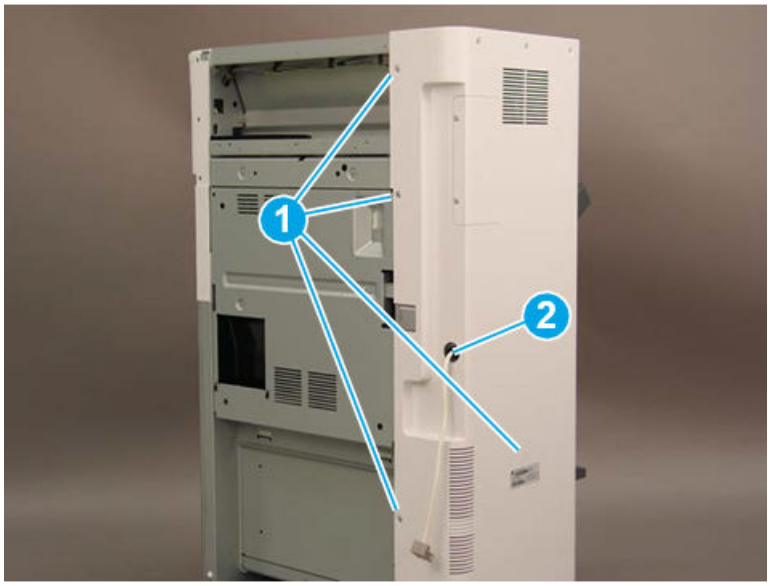


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-290 Remove the rear cover

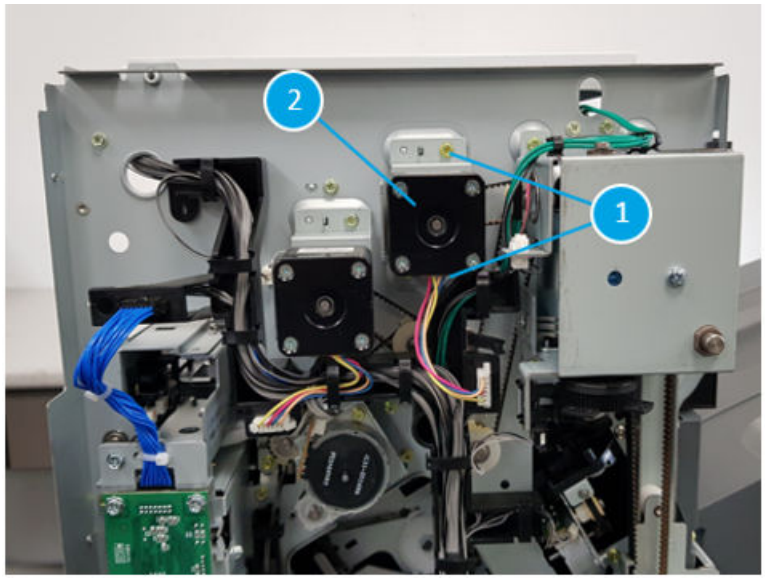


Remove the tray diverter

Follow these steps to remove the tray diverter.

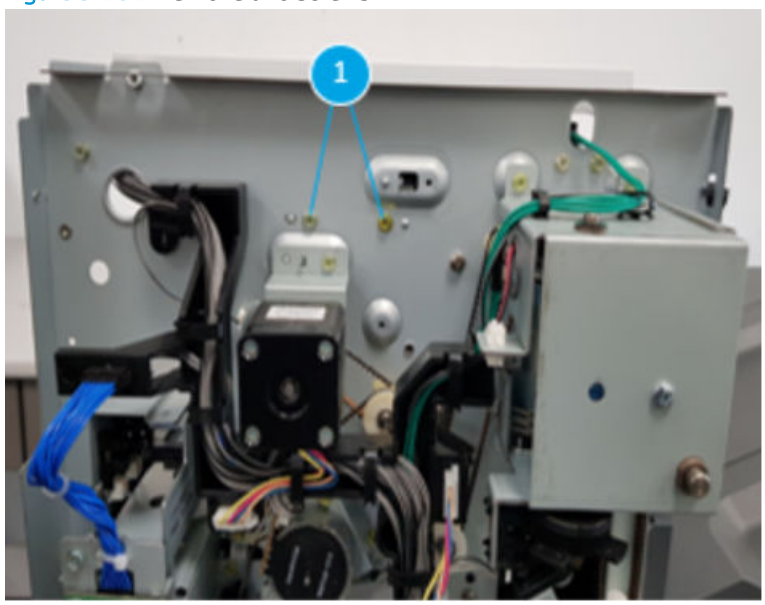
1. Remove two screws(callout 1) to take out the exit motor (callout 2)

Figure 5-291 Take out the exit motor



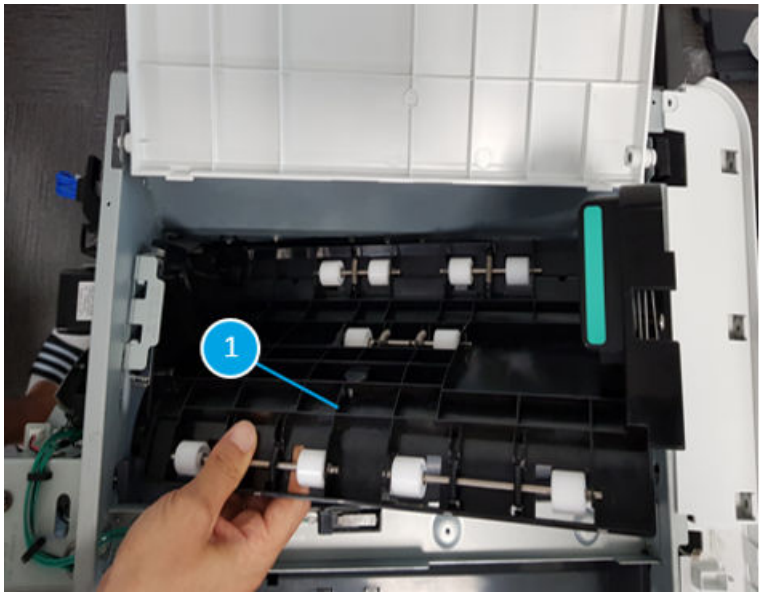
2. Remove two screws (callout 1)

Figure 5-292 Remove two screws



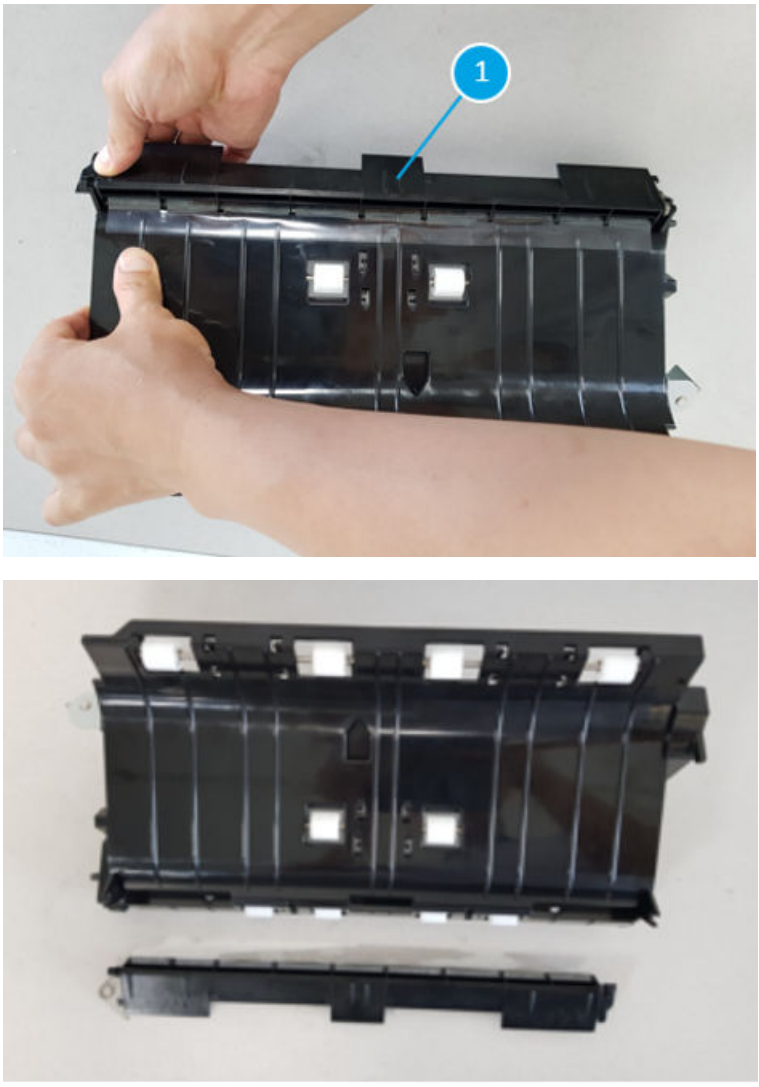
3. Pull the top jam cover assembly out.

Figure 5-293 Pull the top jam cover assembly out



4. Remove the tray diverter (callout 1) from top jam cover assembly.

Figure 5-294 Remove the tray diverter



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray diverter home sensor (S4)

Learn how to remove and replace the tray diverter home sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the tray diverter home sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-100 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Tray diverter home sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

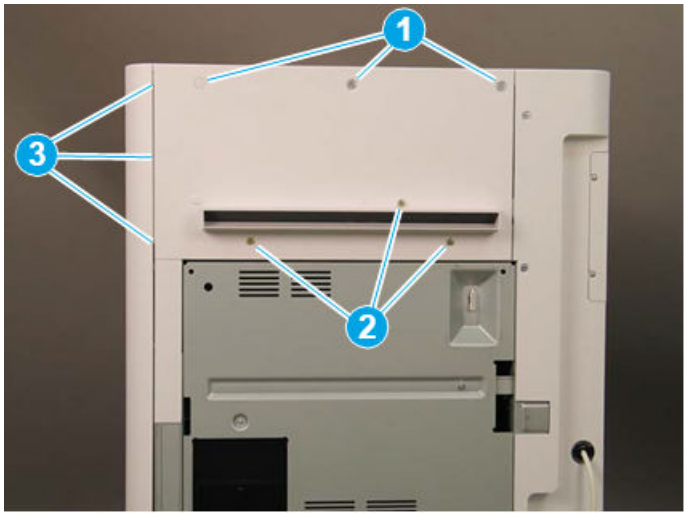
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-295 Remove the right upper cover

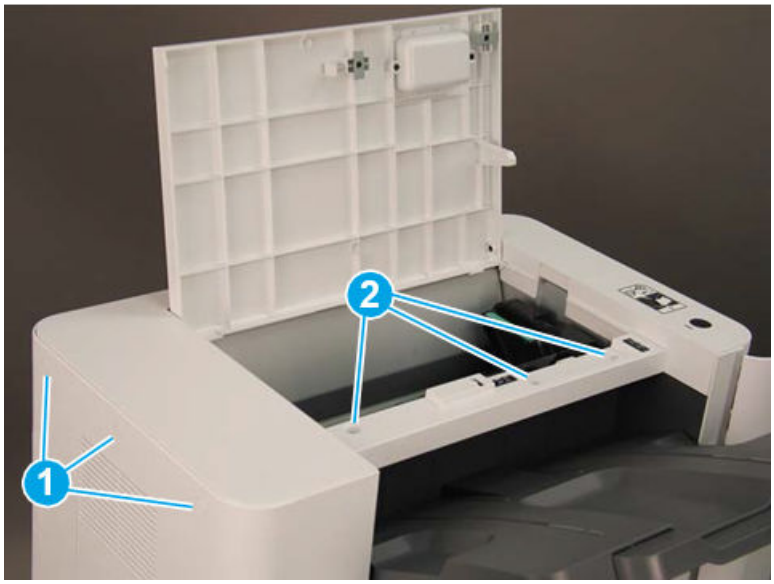


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

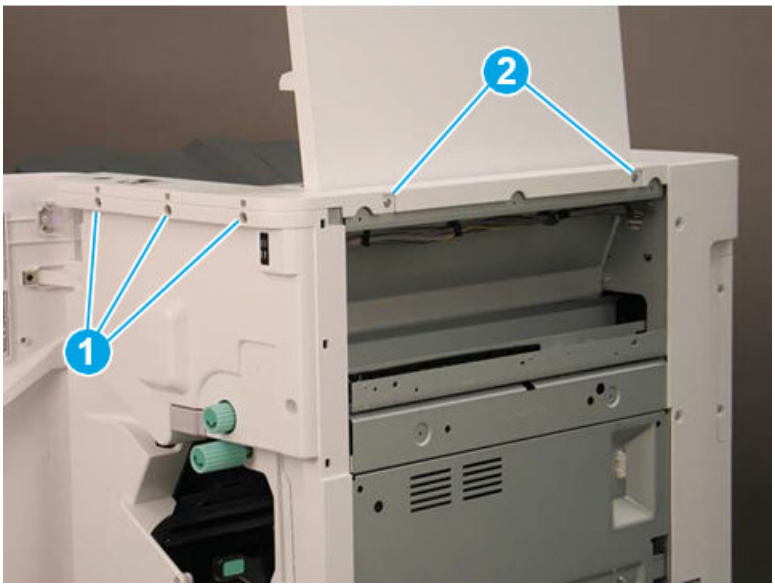
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-296 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

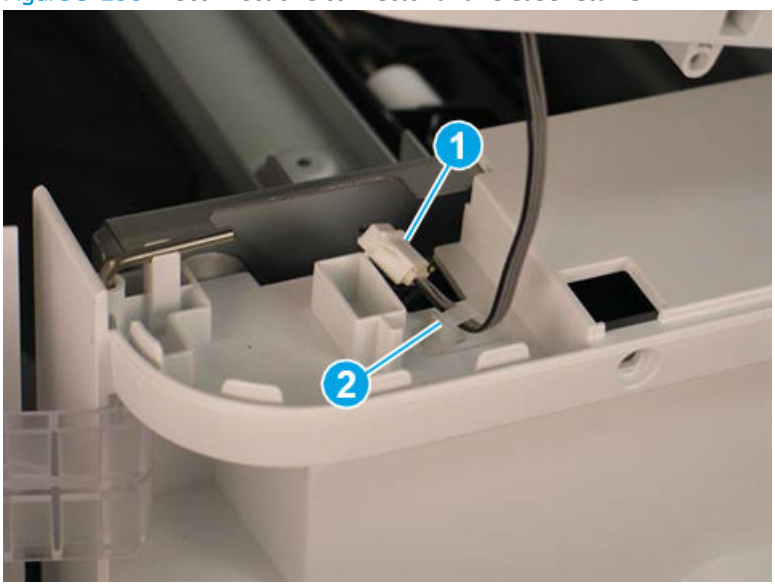
Figure 5-297 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-298 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

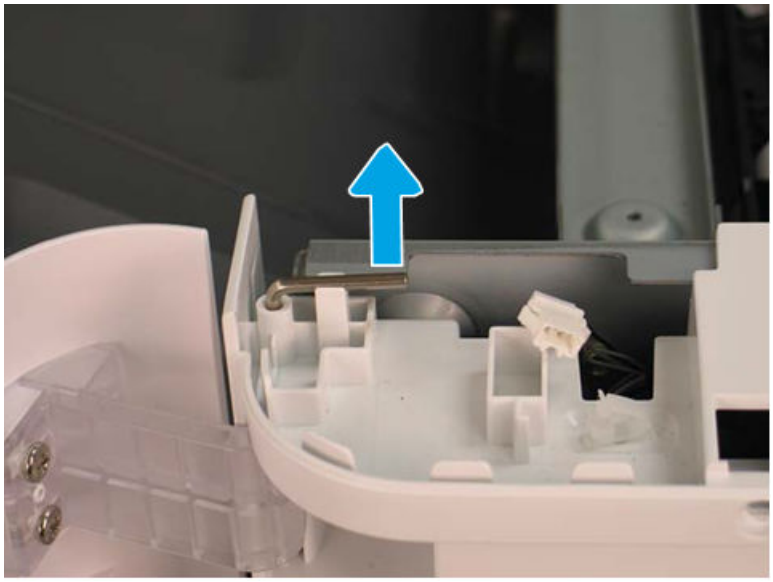


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

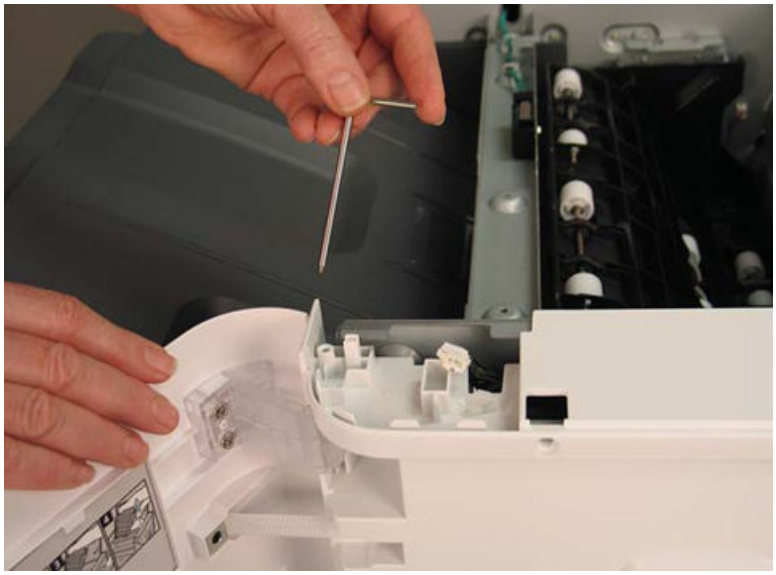
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-299 Lift the top hinge pin



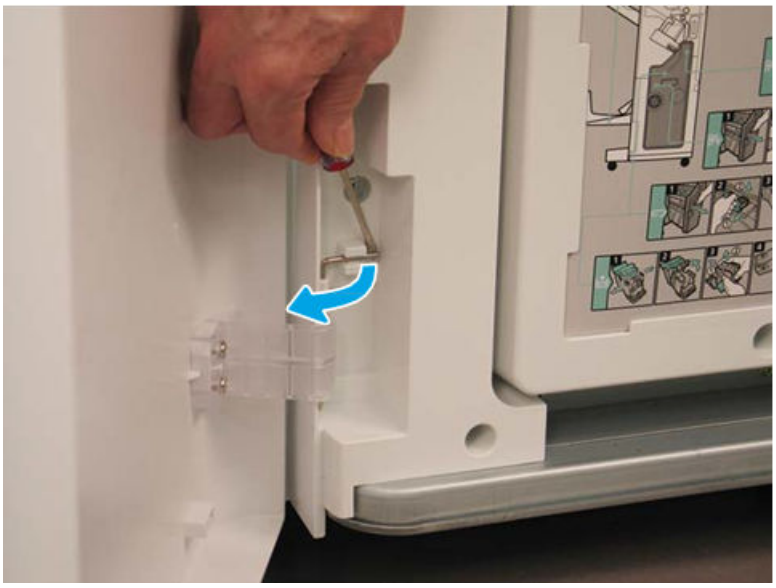
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-300 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-301 Release the lower hinge pin



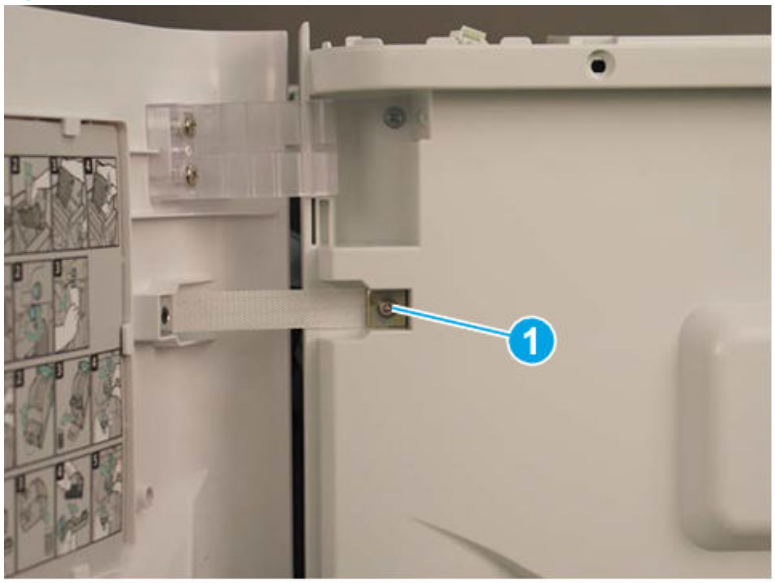
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-302 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-303 Remove the front door

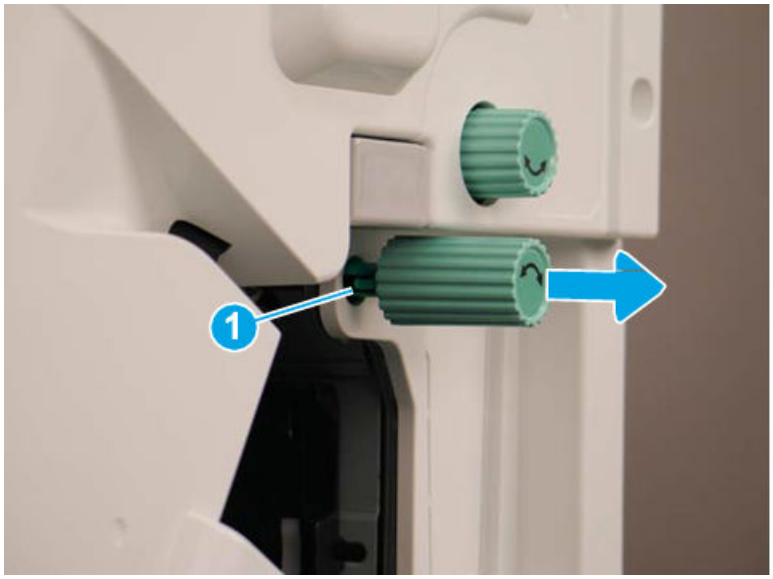


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-304 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

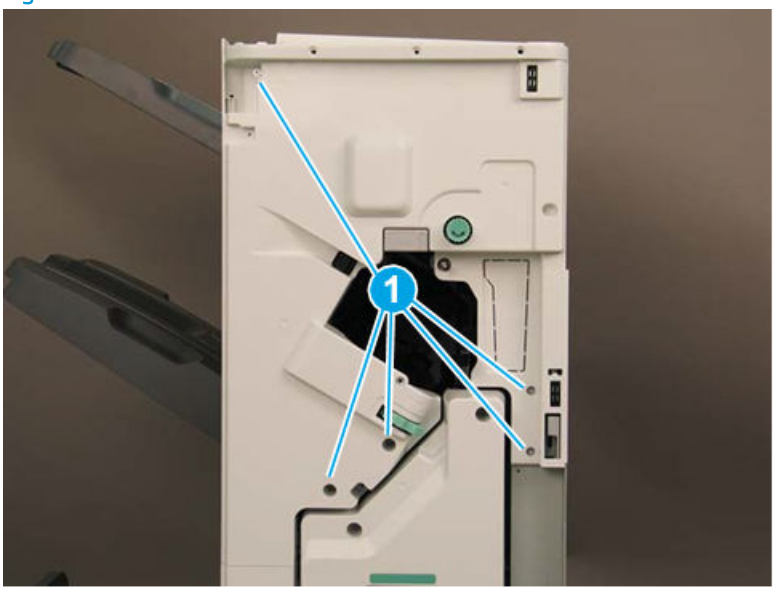
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-305 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-306 Remove the front cover

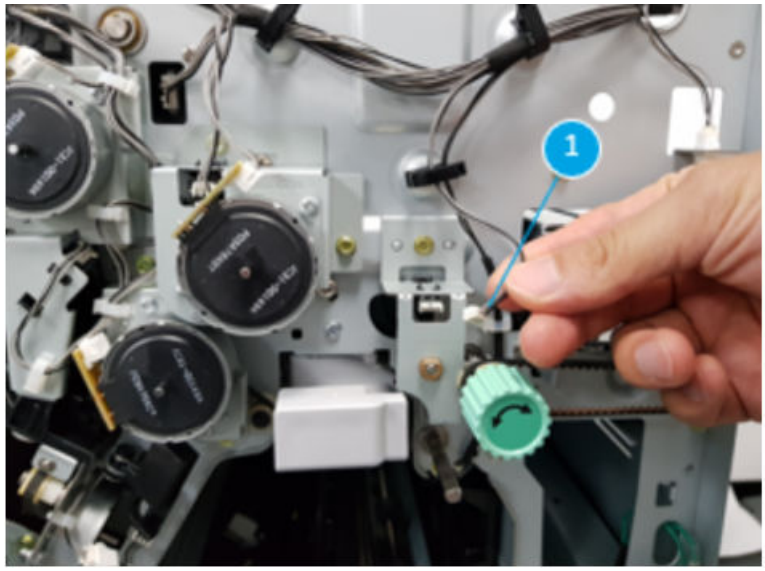


Remove the tray diverter home sensor (S4)

Follow these steps to remove the tray diverter home sensor (S4).

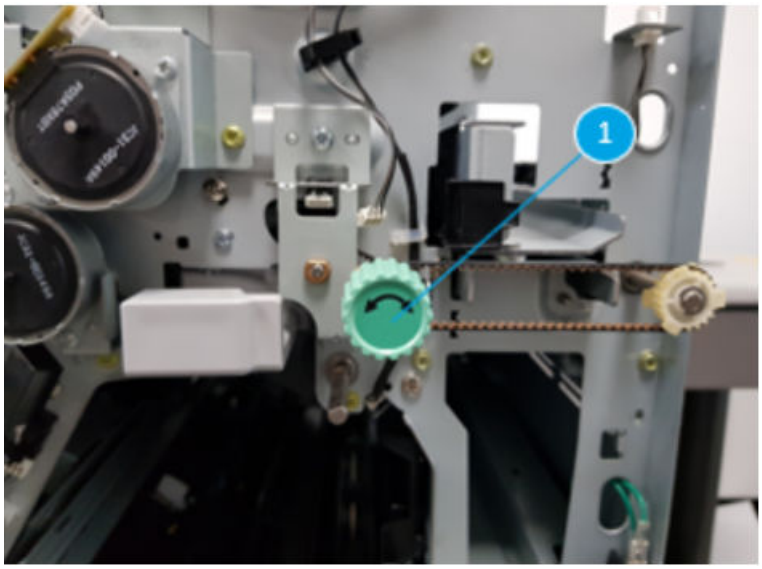
1. Disconnect one connector(callout 1)

Figure 5-307 Disconnect one connector



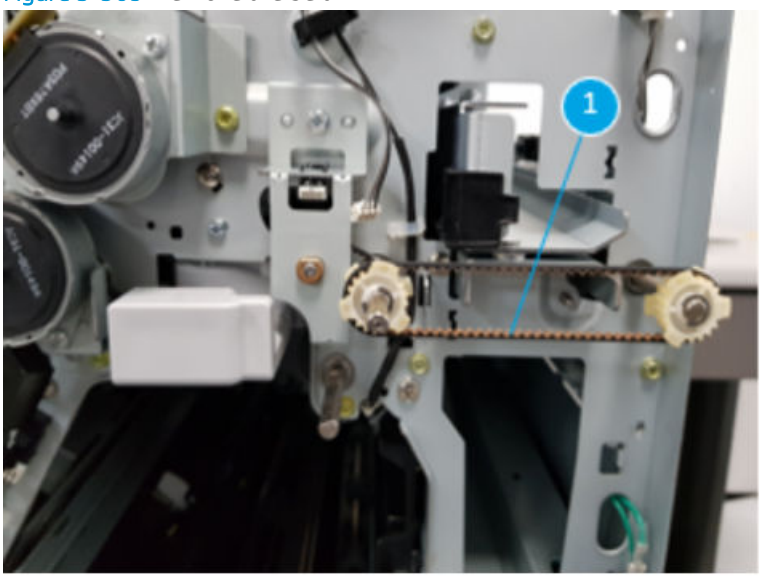
2. Remove the green handle (callout 1)

Figure 5-308 Remove the green handle



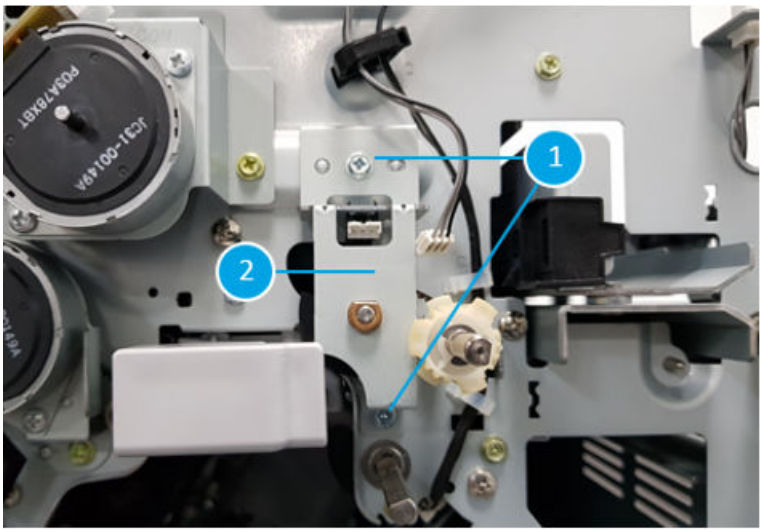
3. Remove the belt (callout 1)

Figure 5-309 Remove the belt



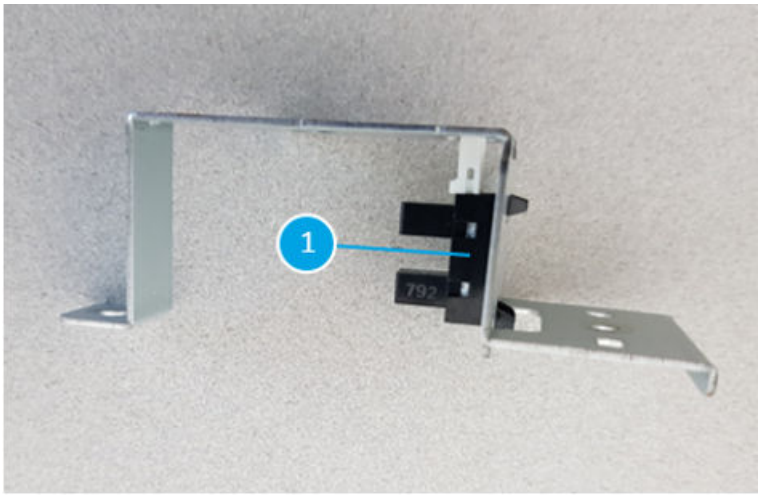
4. Remove two screws(callout 1) and remove the bracket (callout 2) to reach out the tray diverter home sensor

Figure 5-310 Remove two screws and remove the bracket



5. Remove the tray diverter home sensor (S4, callout 1)

Figure 5-311 Remove the tray diverter home sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Top exit unit

Removal and replacement: Top lower feed assembly

Learn how to remove and replace the top lower feed assembly.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top lower feed assembly for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-101 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01454A	Top lower feed assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

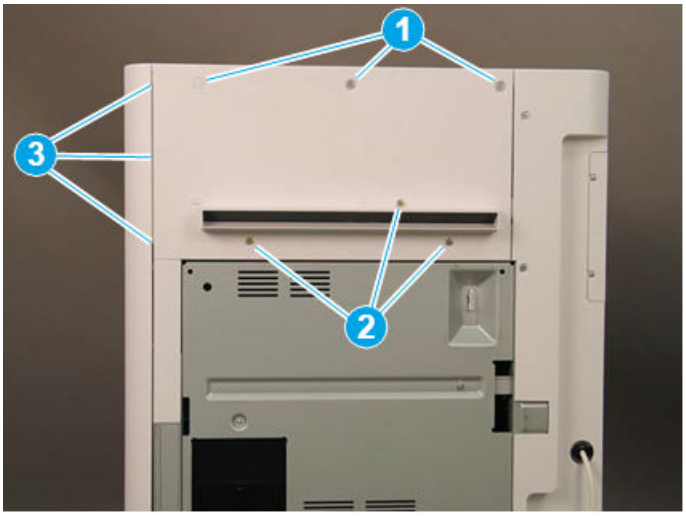
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-312 Remove the right upper cover

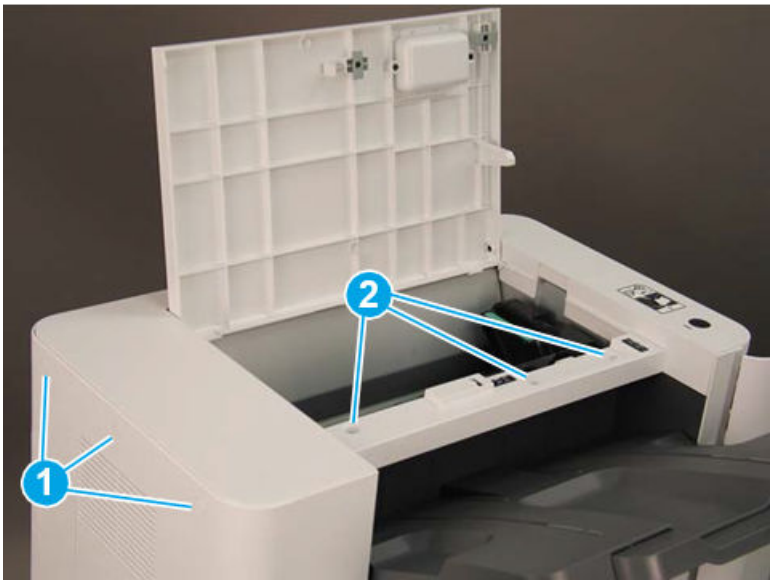


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

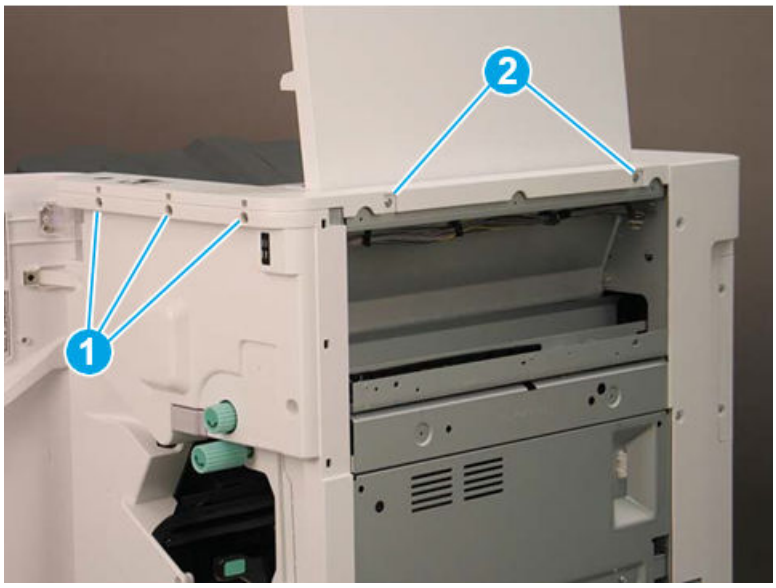
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-313 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

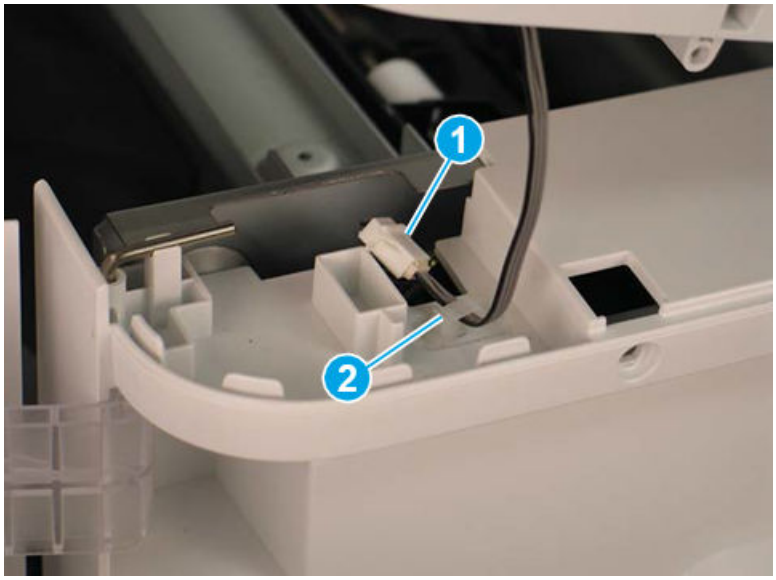
Figure 5-314 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-315 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

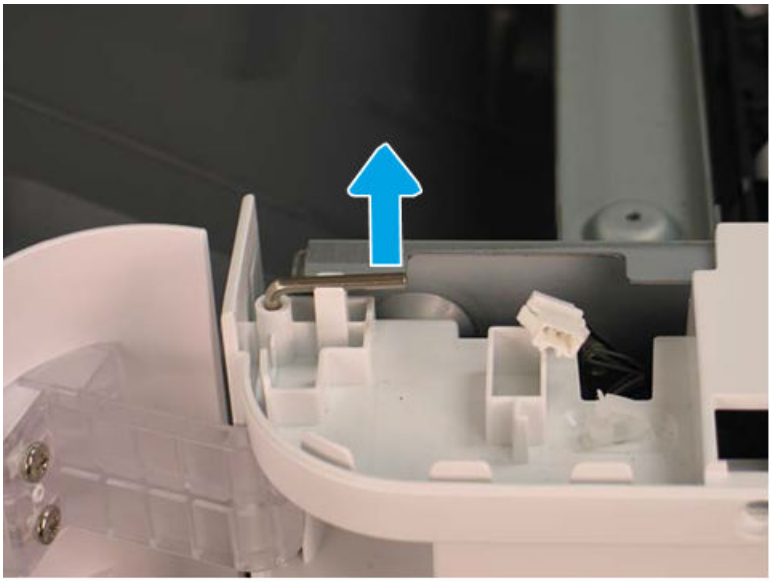


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

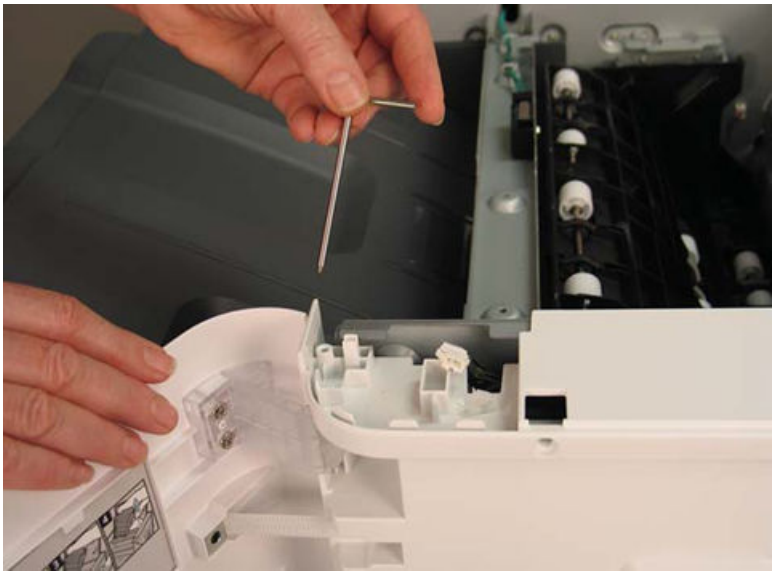
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-316 Lift the top hinge pin



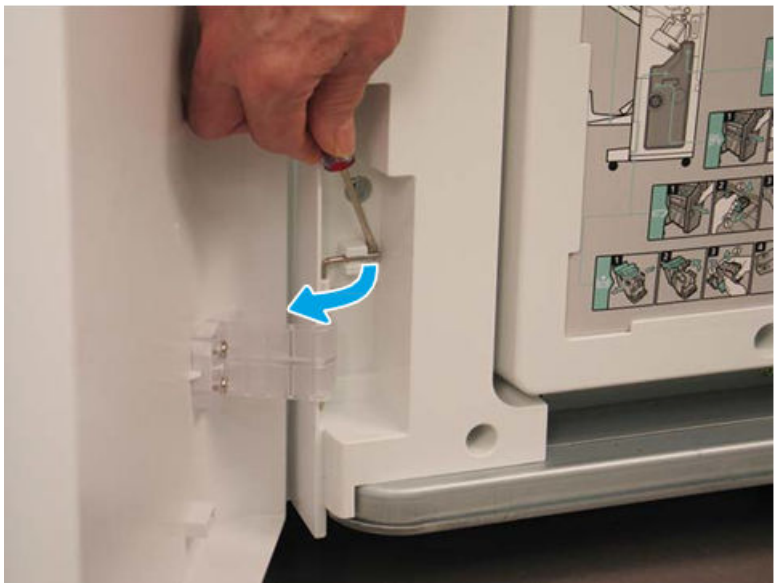
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-317 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-318 Release the lower hinge pin



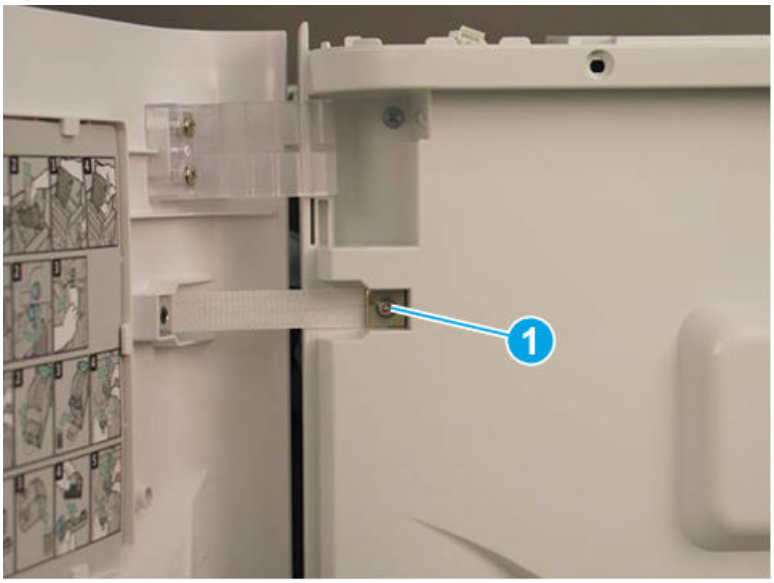
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-319 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-320 Remove the front door

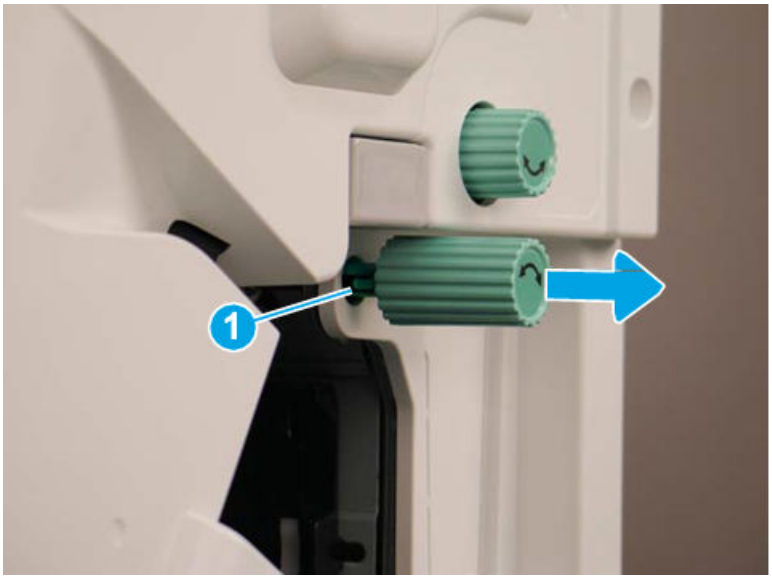


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

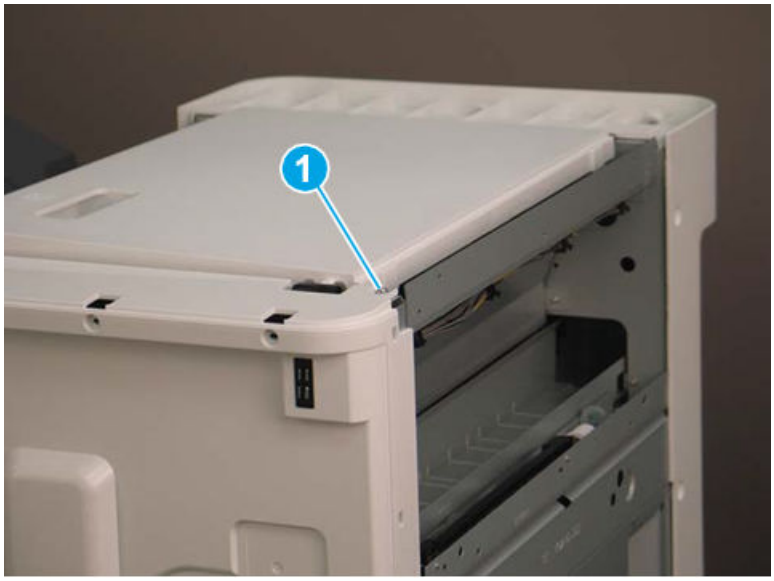
Figure 5-321 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

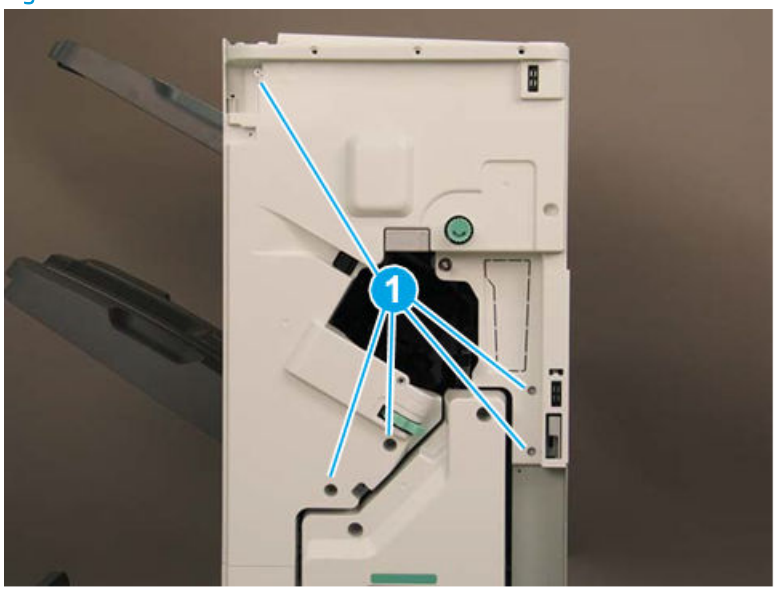
Figure 5-322 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-323 Remove the front cover

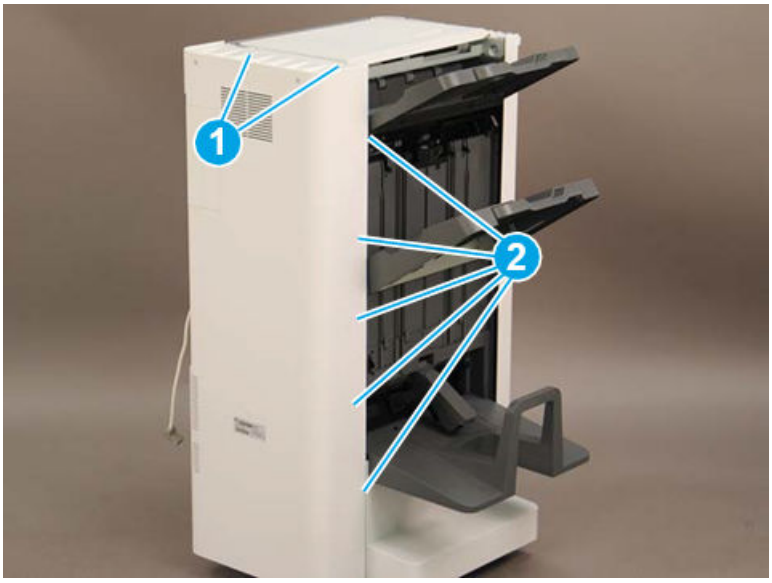


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-324 Remove seven screws

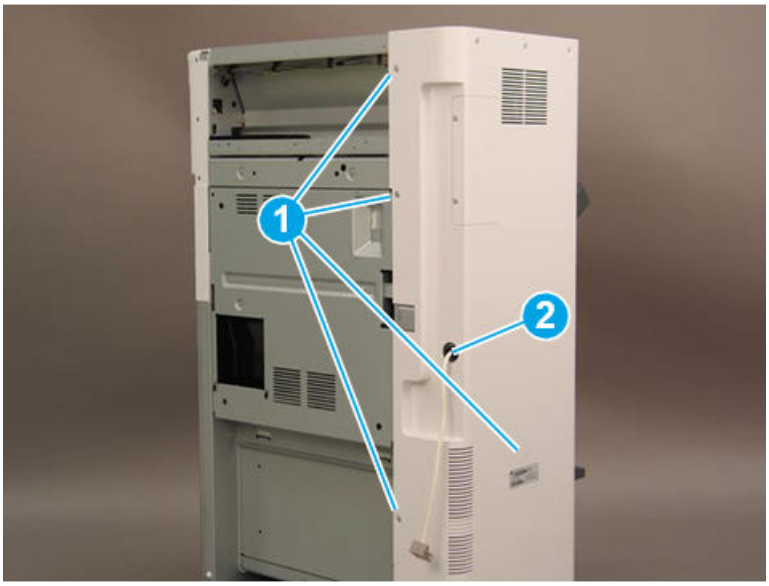


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-325 Remove the rear cover



Remove the exit motor (M13)

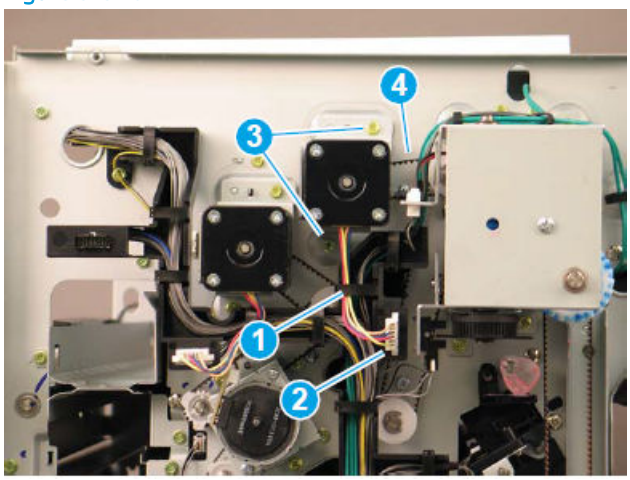
Follow these steps to remove the exit motor (M13).

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the exit motor.

TIP: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-326 Remove the exit motor

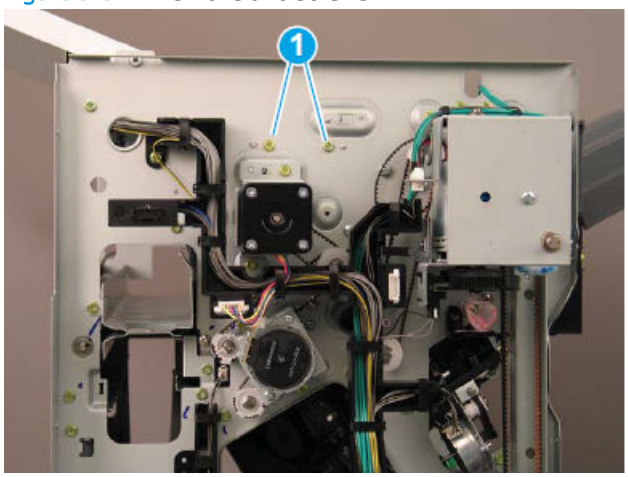


Remove the top jam access cover

Follow these steps to remove the top jam access cover.

1. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

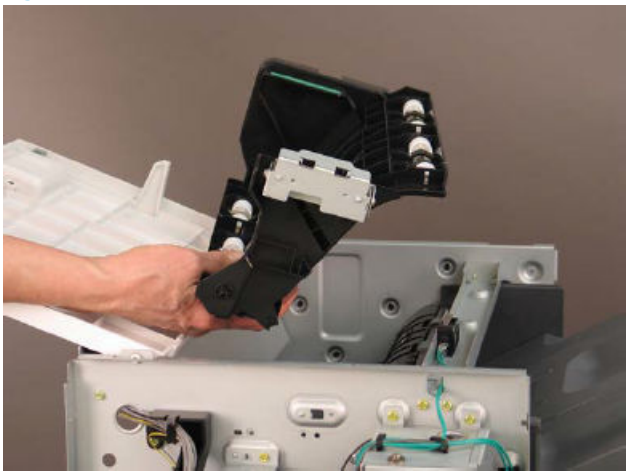
Figure 5-327 Remove two screws



2. Remove the top jam access cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-328 Remove the top jam access cover

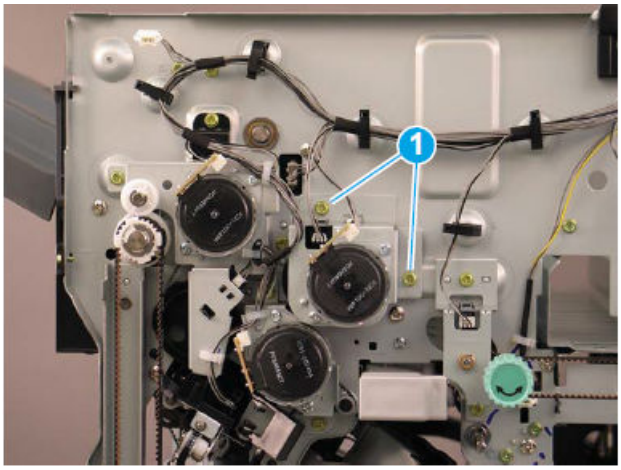


Remove the top lower feed assembly (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top lower feed assembly (finisher).

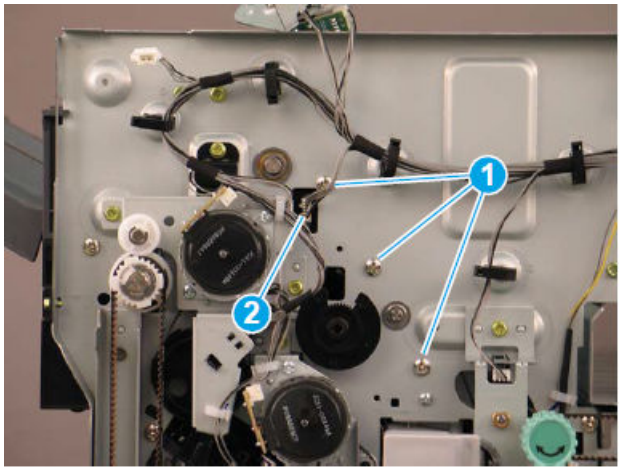
1. At the front of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1) on the main exit cam motor housing, and then tilt the motor aside to access the screws under it.

Figure 5-329 Remove two screws



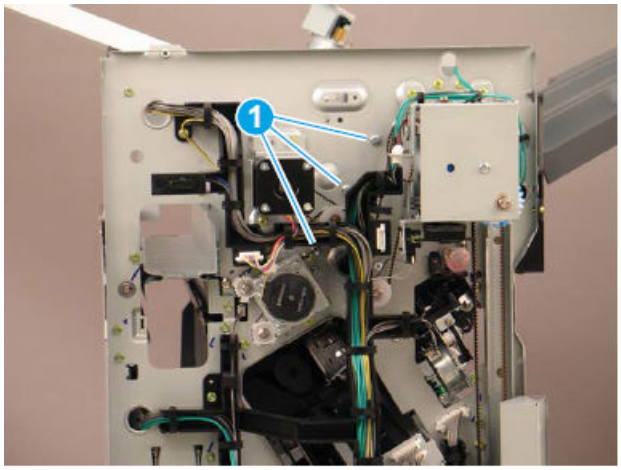
2. At the front of the finisher, remove three self-tapping screws (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-330 Remove three screws and disconnect one connector



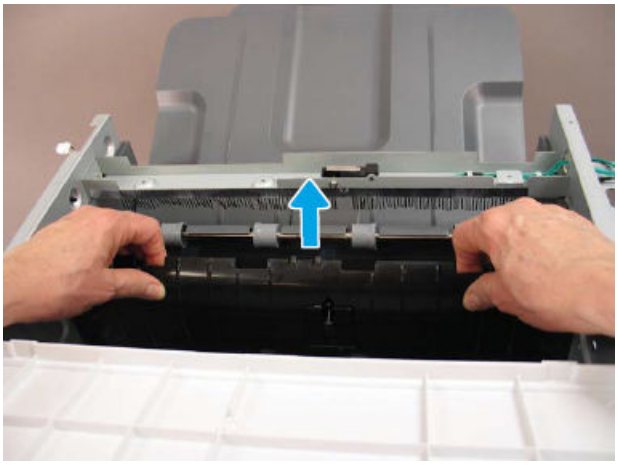
3. At the rear of the finisher, remove three machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-331 Remove three screws



4. At the top of the finisher, lift the feed assembly straight up to disengage two tabs on the bottom and remove the assembly.

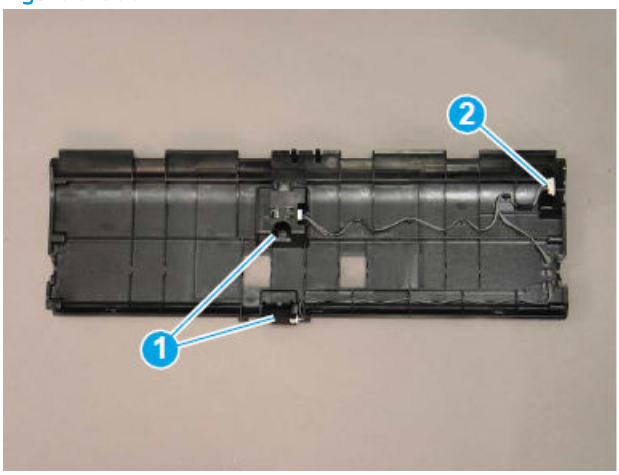
Figure 5-332 Remove the top lower feed assembly



5. If you are replacing the top lower feed assembly, locate two sensors (callout 1) and one connector (callout 2) on the back of the assembly. Remove these items and transfer them to the replacement part.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-333 Locate sensors and connector



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HP LaserJet Managed MFP E82540-E82560, E87640-E87660, E82540du-E82560du, E87640du-E87660du, E72525-E72535, E77822-E77830 - Removal and replacement: Top exit sensor (S11)

Learn how to remove and replace the top exit sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top exit sensor for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-102 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Top exit sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

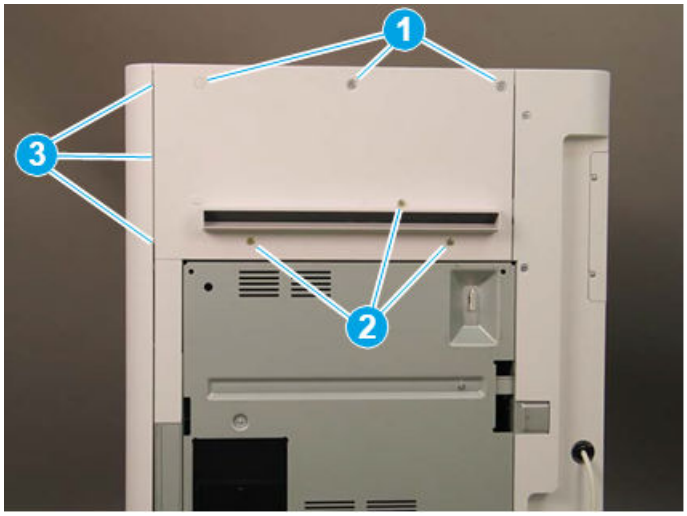
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-334 Remove the right upper cover

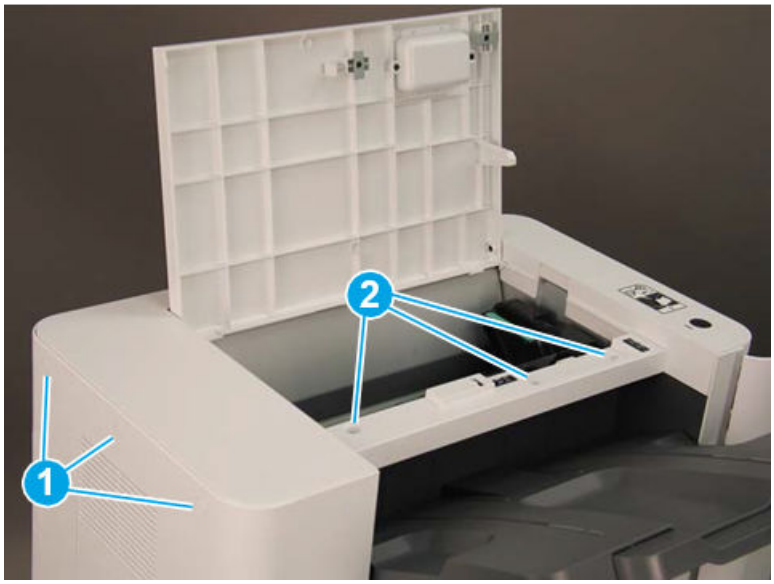


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

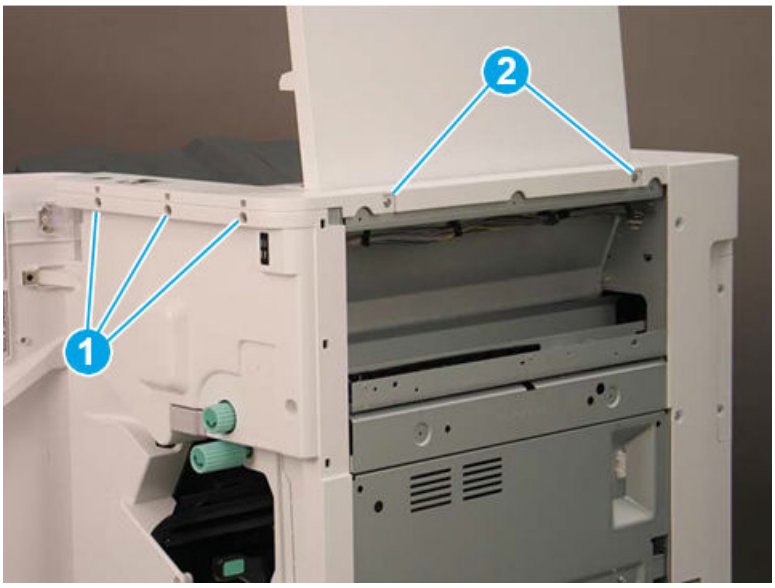
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-335 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

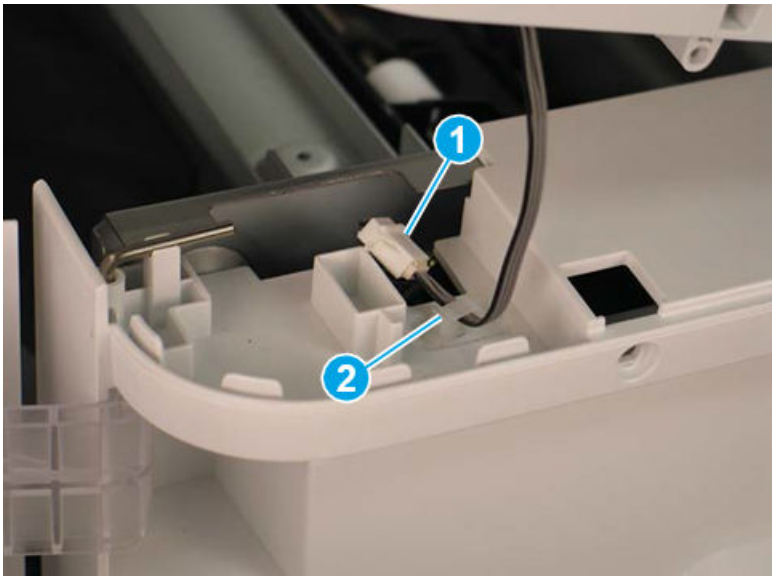
Figure 5-336 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-337 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

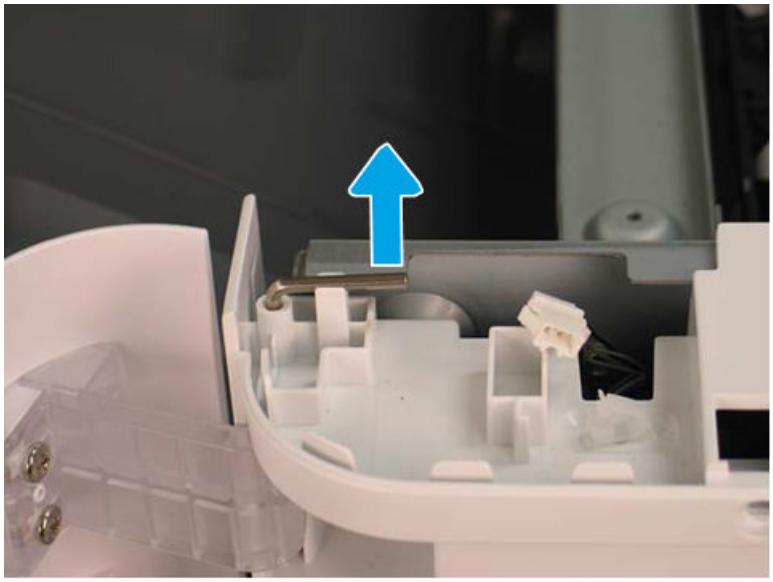


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

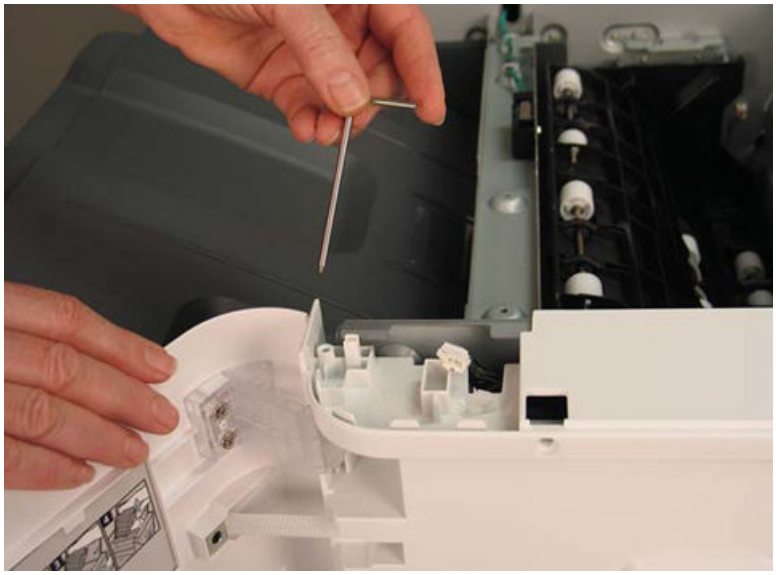
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-338 Lift the top hinge pin



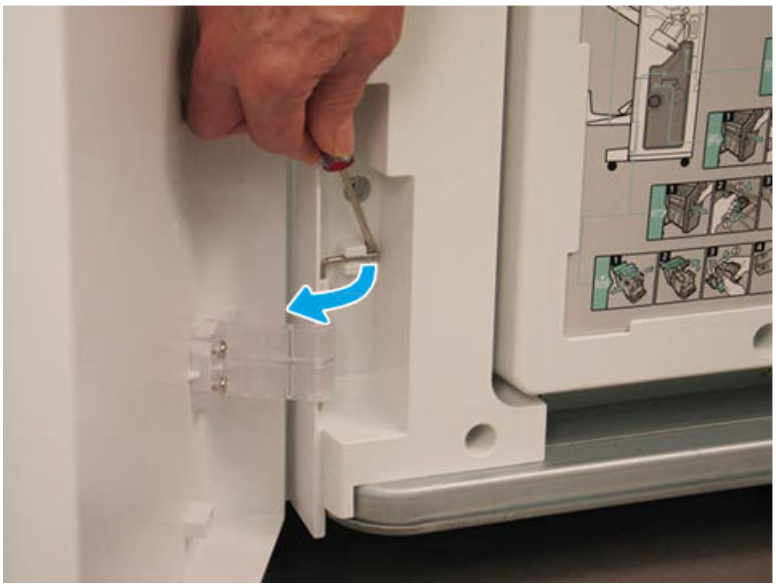
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-339 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-340 Release the lower hinge pin



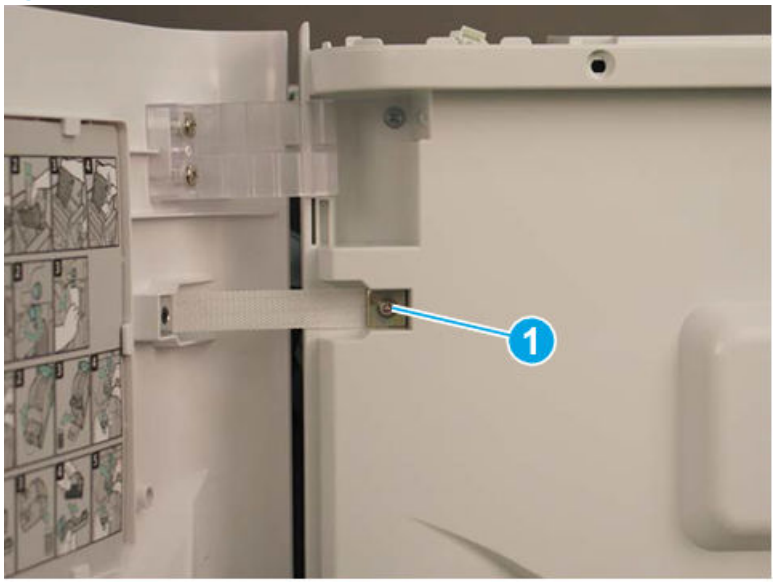
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-341 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-342 Remove the front door

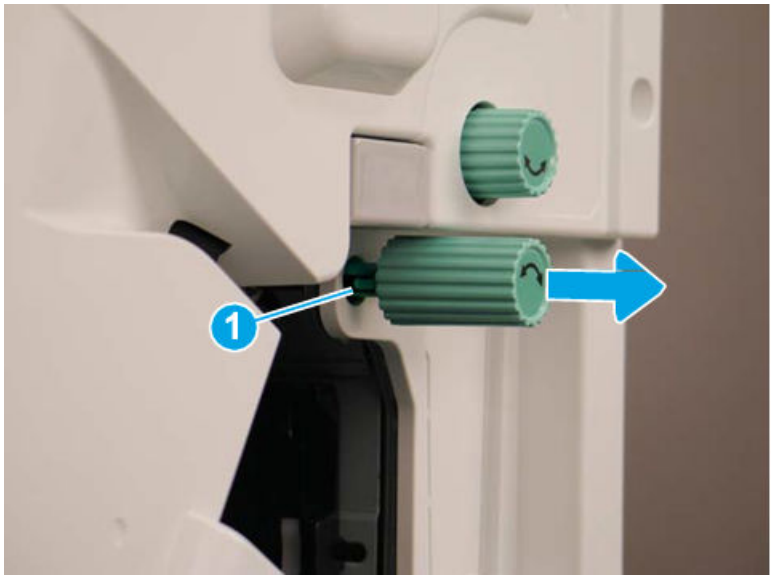


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-343 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

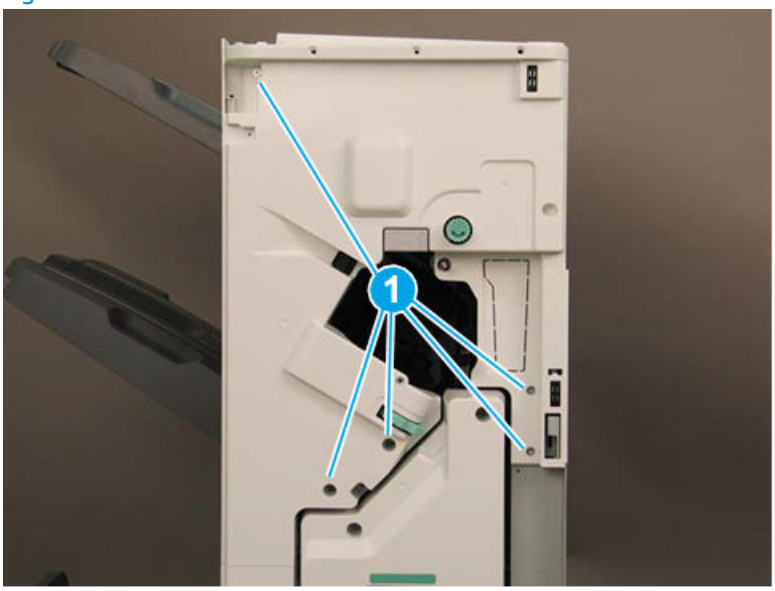
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-344 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-345 Remove the front cover

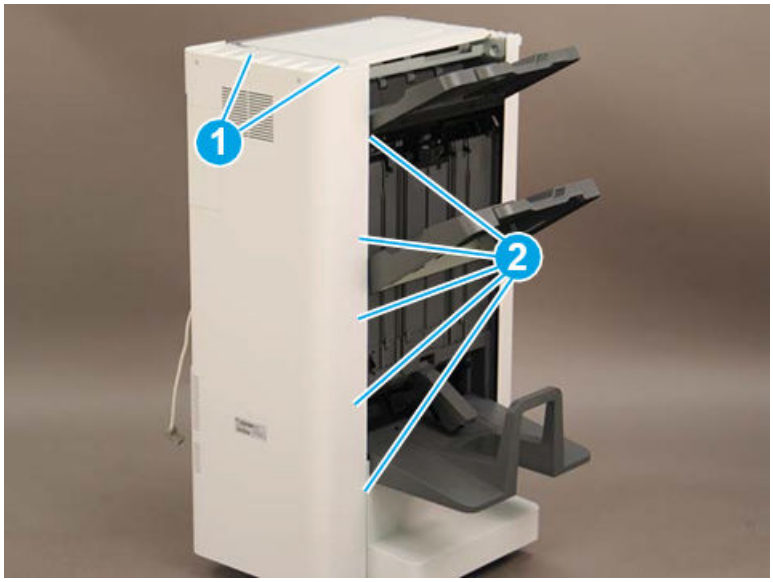


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-346 Remove seven screws

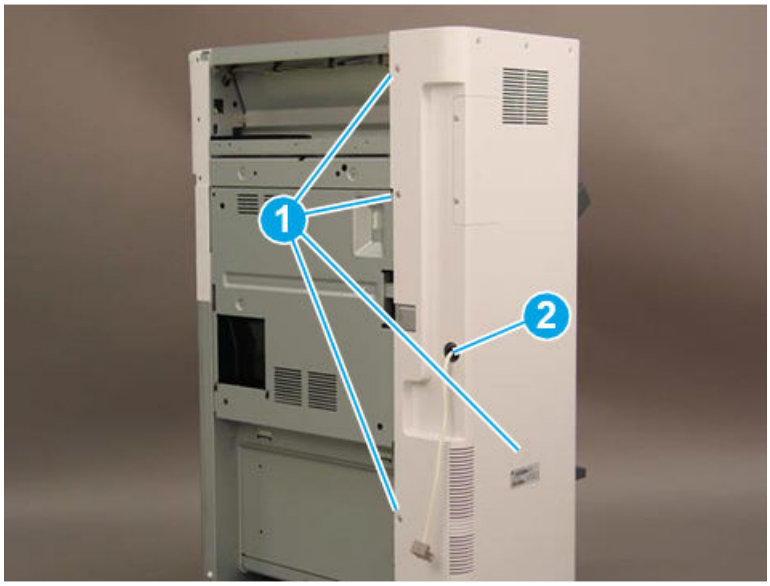


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-347 Remove the rear cover



Remove the exit motor (M13)

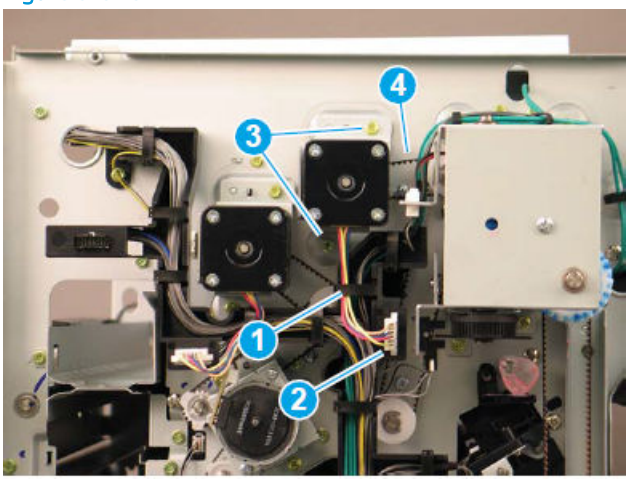
Follow these steps to remove the exit motor (M13).

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the exit motor.

TIP: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-348 Remove the exit motor

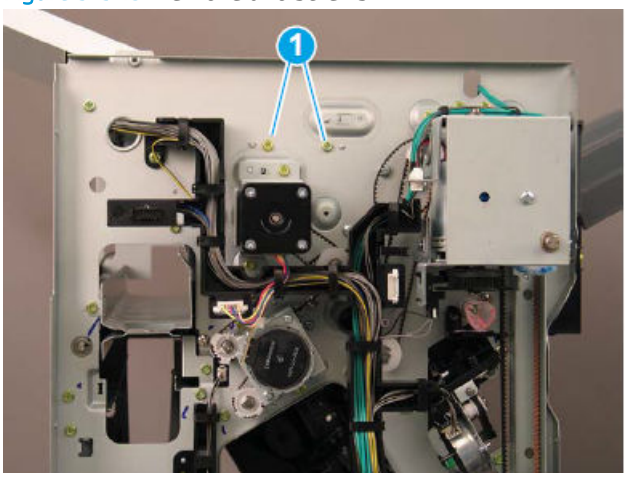


Remove the top jam access cover

Follow these steps to remove the top jam access cover.

1. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

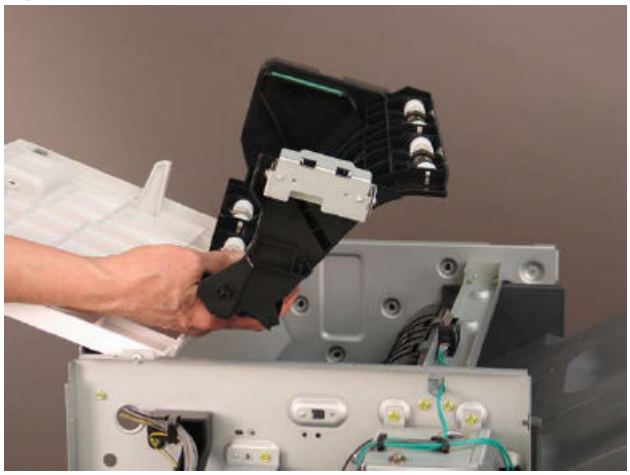
Figure 5-349 Remove two screws



2. Remove the top jam access cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-350 Remove the top jam access cover

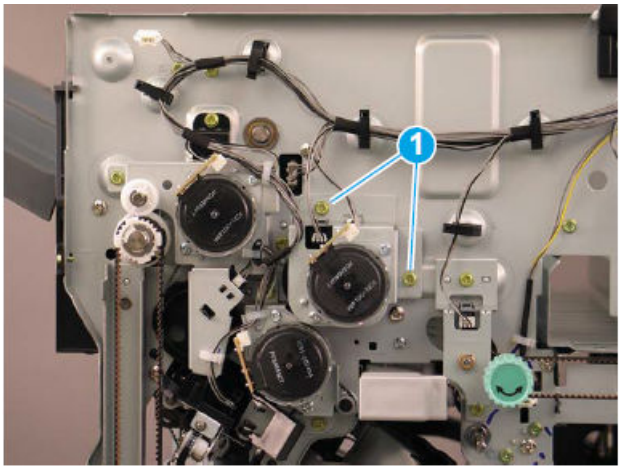


Remove the top lower feed assembly (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top lower feed assembly (finisher).

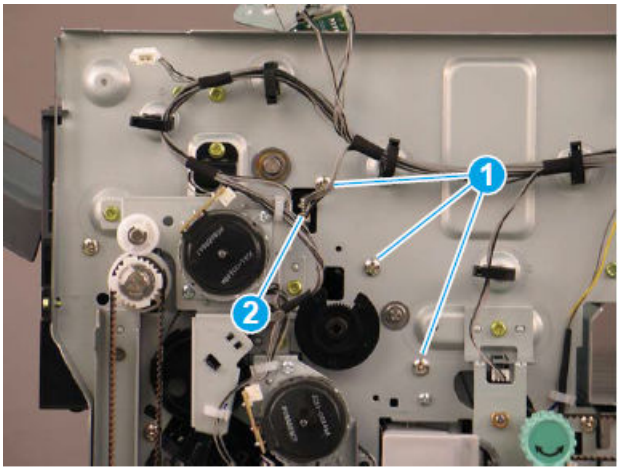
1. At the front of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1) on the main exit cam motor housing, and then tilt the motor aside to access the screws under it.

Figure 5-351 Remove two screws



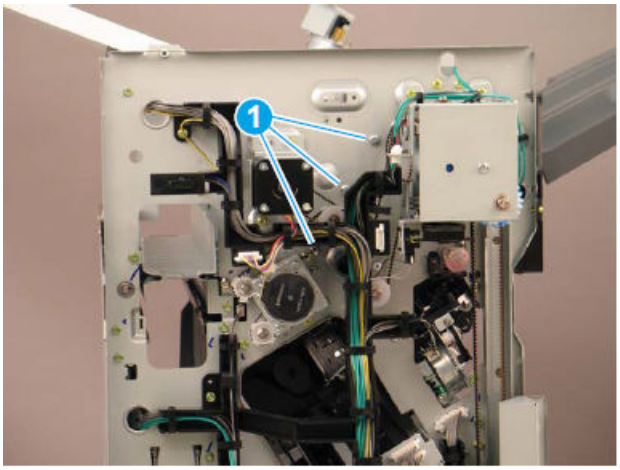
2. At the front of the finisher, remove three self-tapping screws (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-352 Remove three screws and disconnect one connector



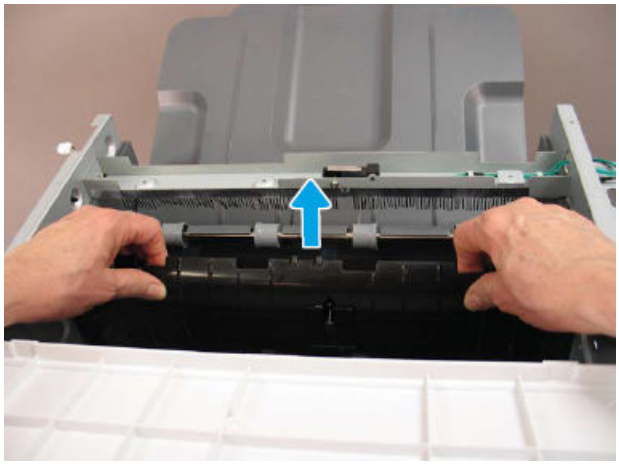
3. At the rear of the finisher, remove three machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-353 Remove three screws



4. At the top of the finisher, lift the feed assembly straight up to disengage two tabs on the bottom and remove the assembly.

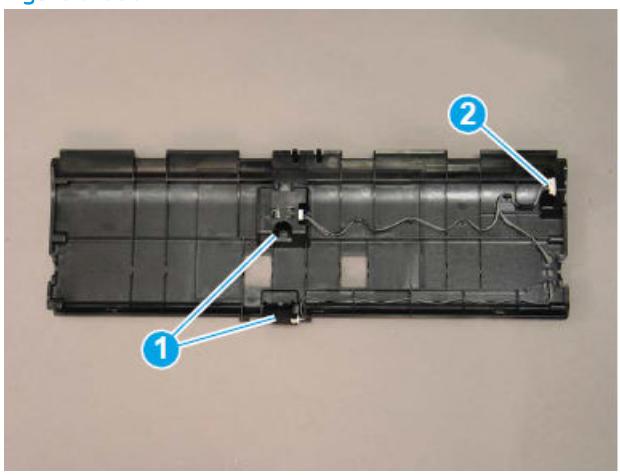
Figure 5-354 Remove the top lower feed assembly



5. If you are replacing the top lower feed assembly, locate two sensors (callout 1) and one connector (callout 2) on the back of the assembly. Remove these items and transfer them to the replacement part.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-355 Locate sensors and connector

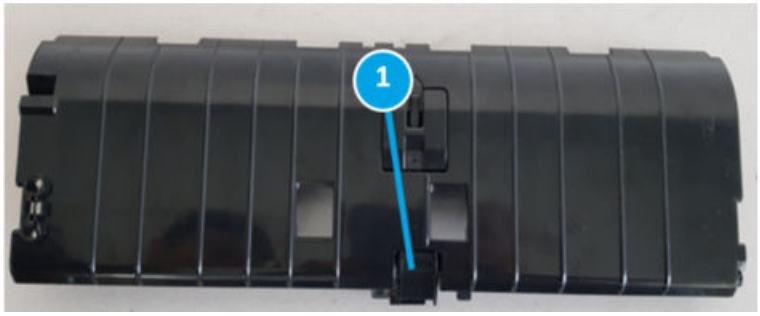


Remove the top exit sensor(S11)

Follow these steps to remove the top exit sensor(S11).

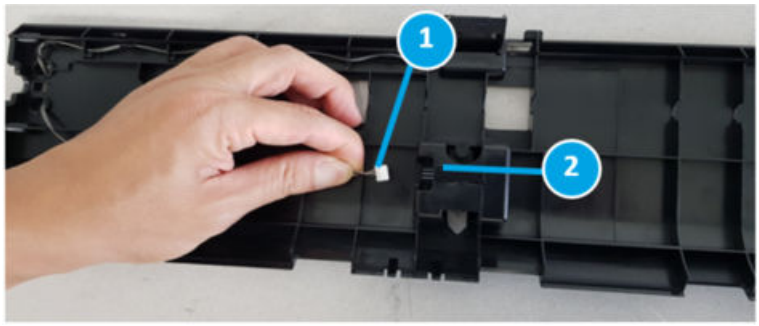
1. Remove one screw(callout 1) at the top lower feed assembly.

Figure 5-356 Remove one screw and then top lower feed assembly



2. Remove harness(callout 1) and top exit sensor(S11, callout 2)

Figure 5-357 Remove harness and then top exit sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Top output tray unit

Removal and replacement: Top output tray

Learn how to remove and replace the top output tray.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top output tray on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-103 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC63-04995B	Top output tray

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

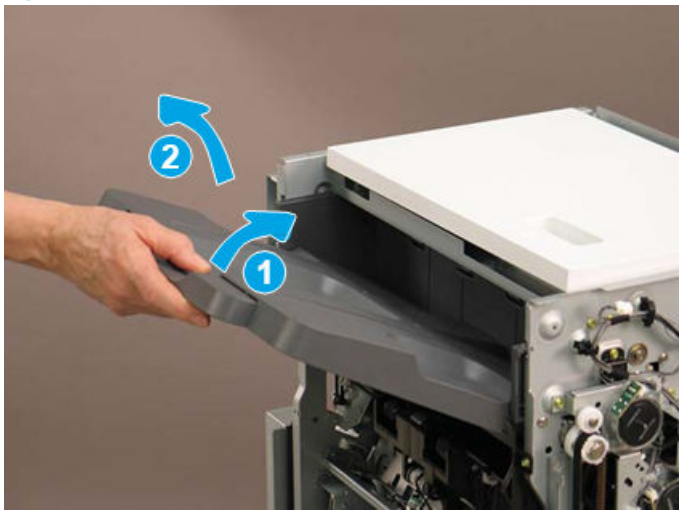
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the top output tray

Follow these steps to remove the top output tray.

▲ Raise the end of the top output tray (callout 1), and then lift it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-358 Remove the top output tray



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HP LaserJet Managed MFP E82540-E82560, E87640-E87660, E82540du-E82560du, E87640du-E87660du, E72525-E72535, E77822-E77830 - Top output tray paper full sensor (S15)

Learn how to remove and replace the top output tray paper full sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top output tray paper full sensor for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-104 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-01039A	Top output tray paper full sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

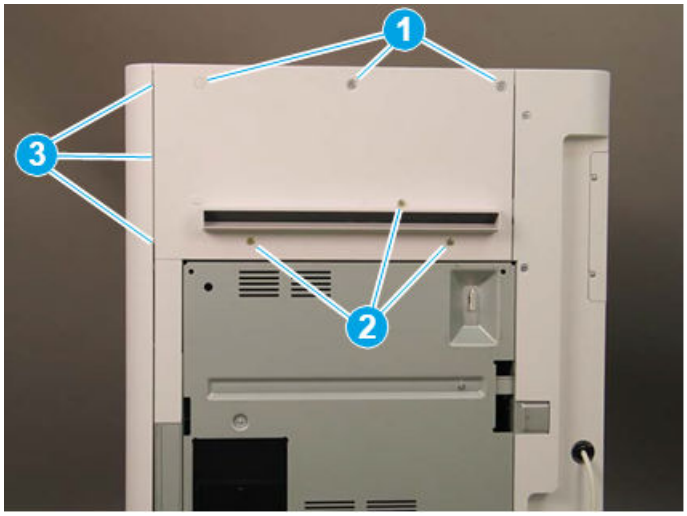
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-359 Remove the right upper cover

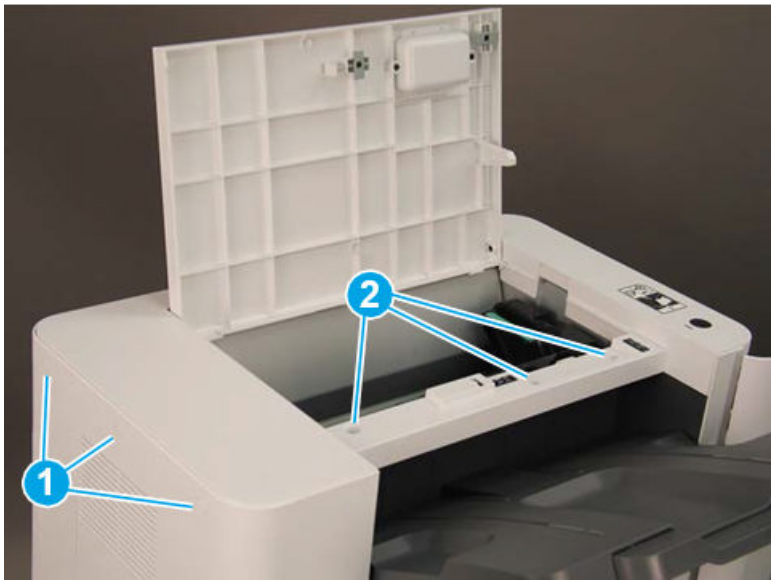


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

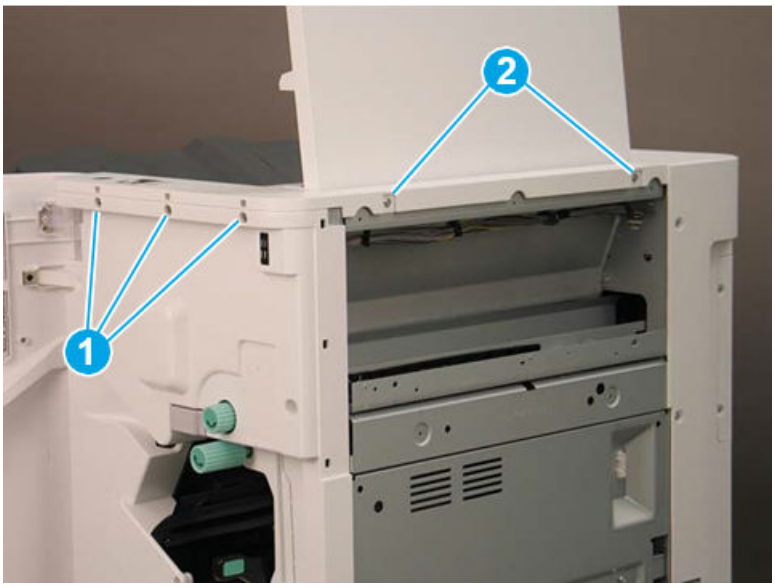
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-360 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

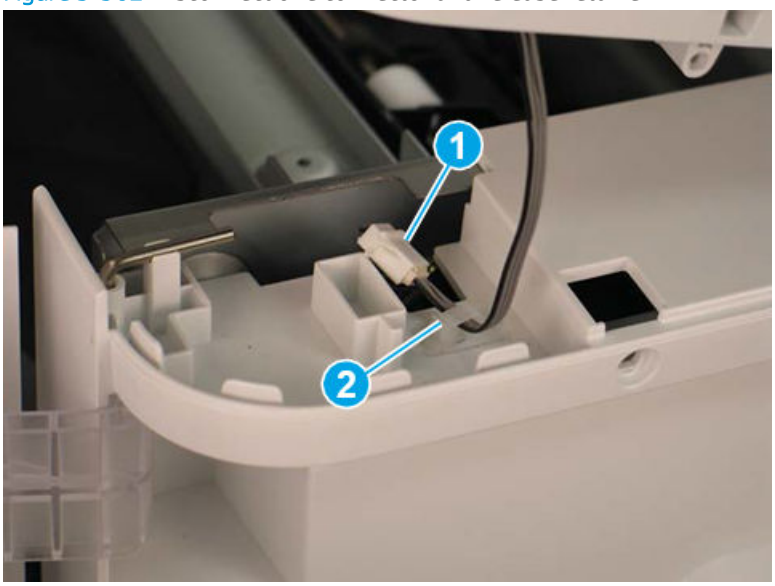
Figure 5-361 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-362 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

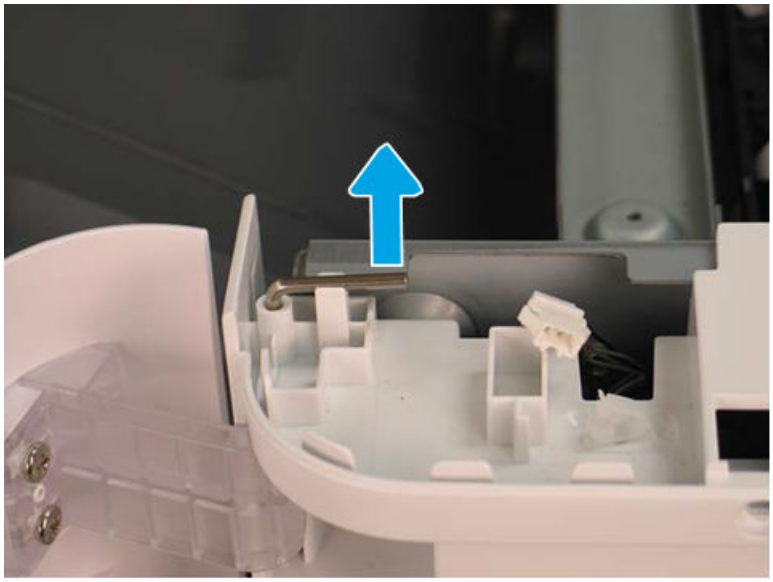


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

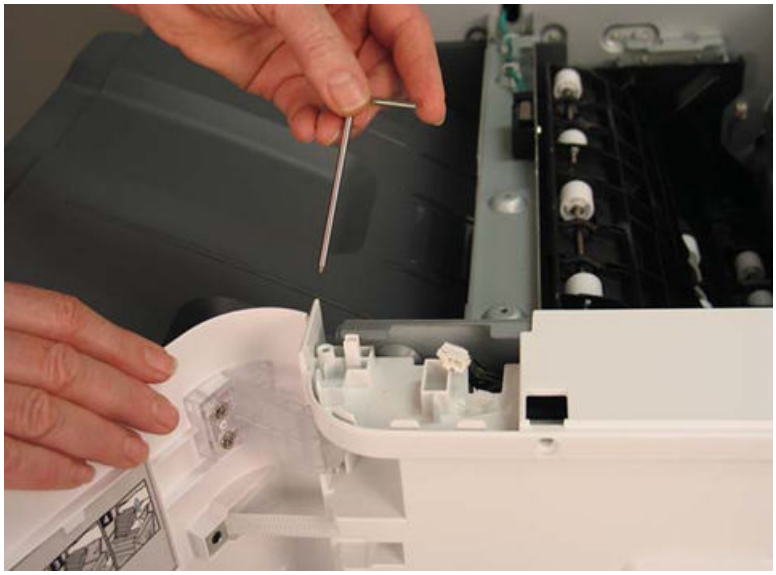
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-363 Lift the top hinge pin



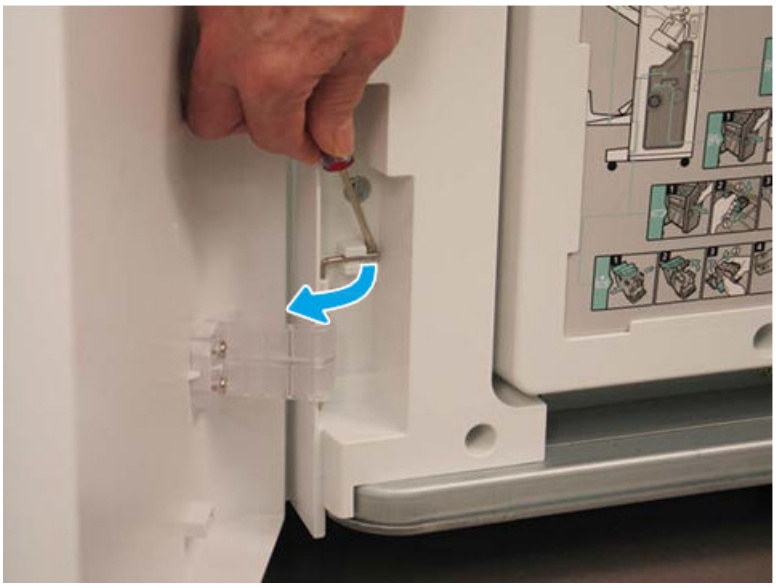
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-364 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-365 Release the lower hinge pin



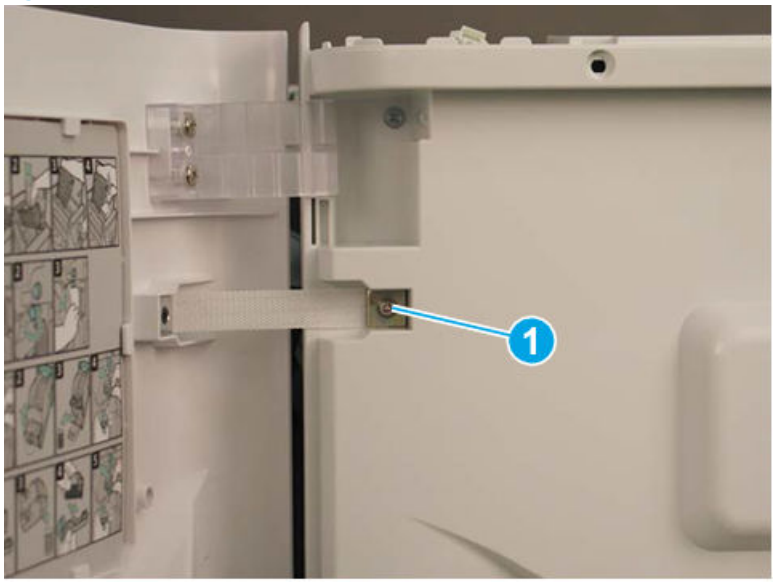
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-366 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-367 Remove the front door

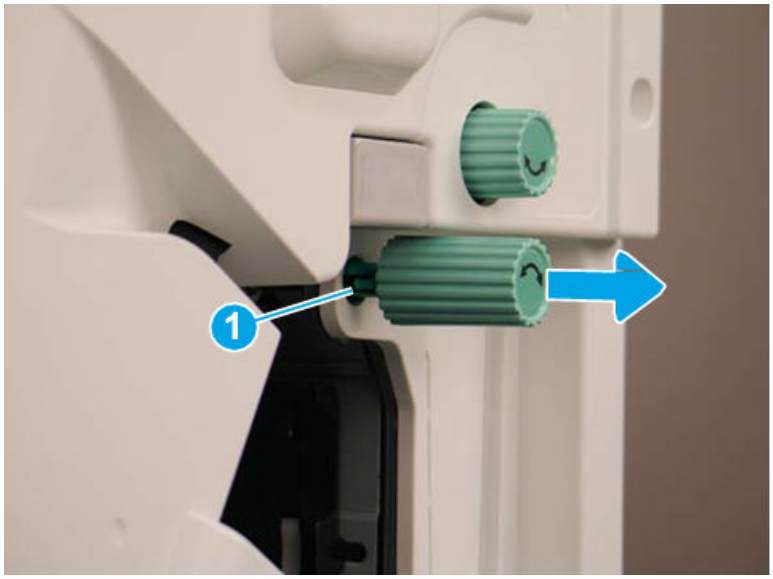


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-368 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

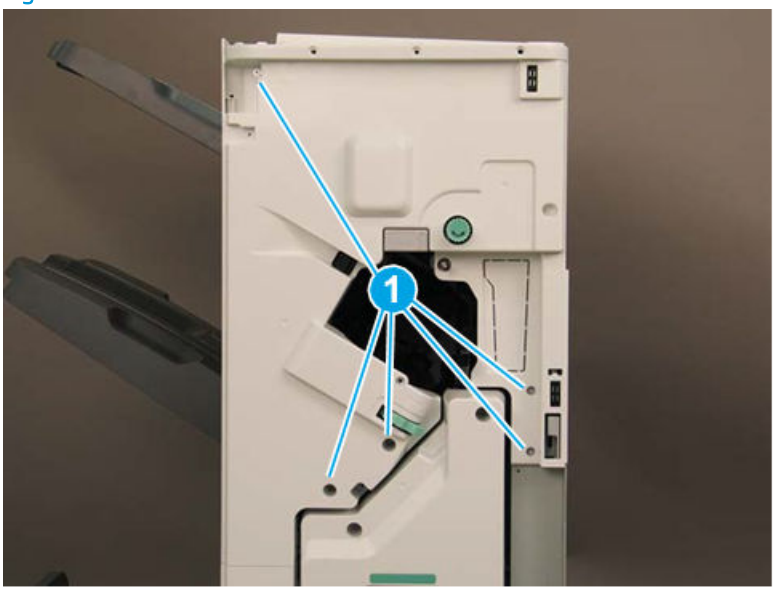
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-369 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-370 Remove the front cover

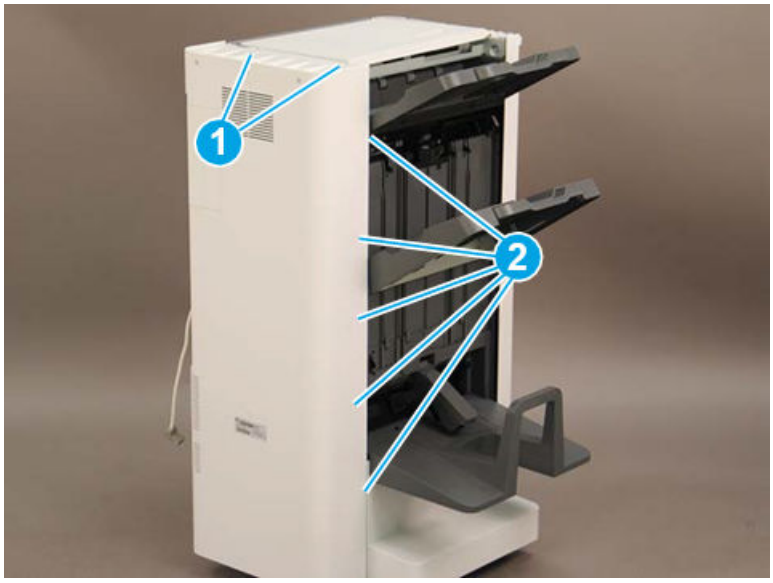


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-371 Remove seven screws

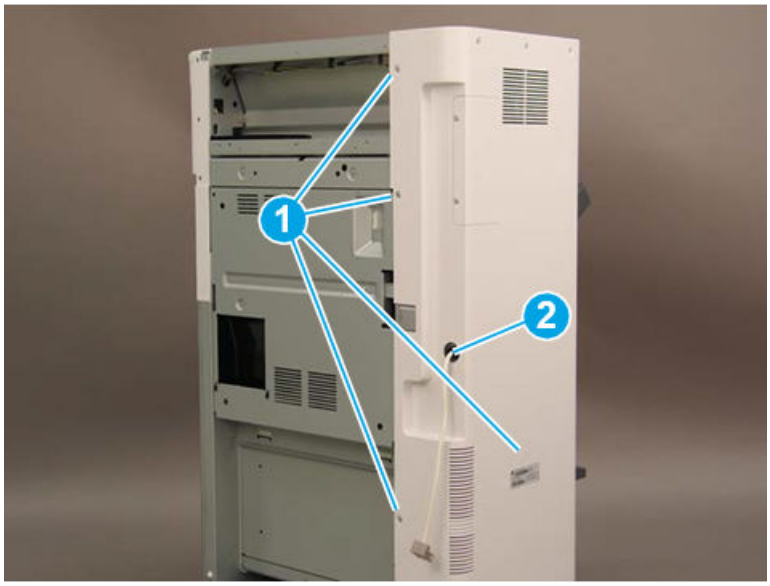


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-372 Remove the rear cover

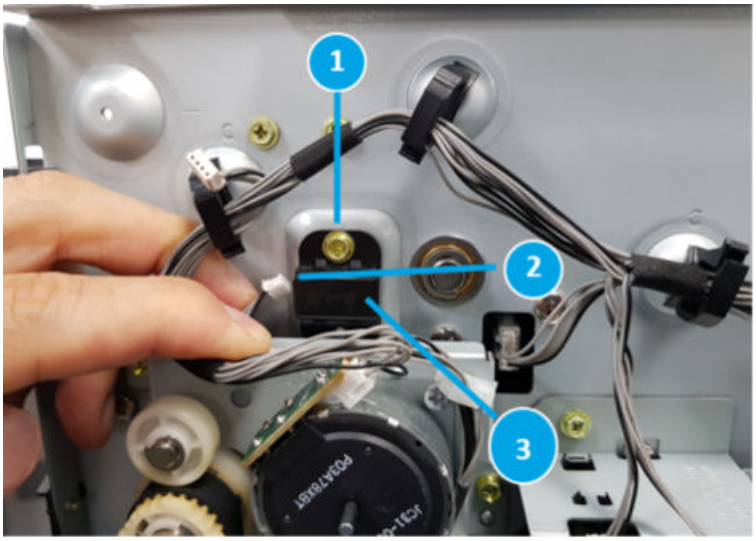


Remove top output tray paper full sensor (S15)

Follow these steps to remove top output tray paper full sensor (S15).

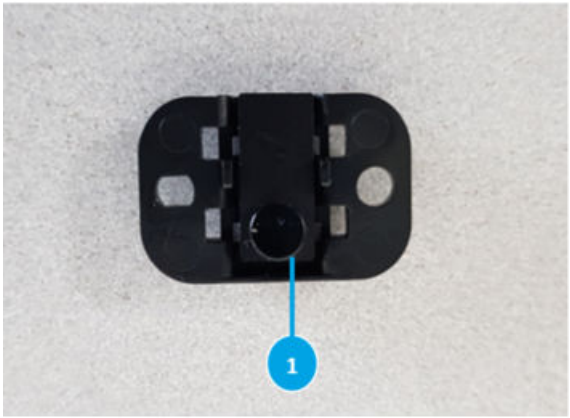
1. At the front of the finisher, remove screw (callout 1), disconnect the connector (callout 2) and then remove the sensor assembly (callout 3)

Figure 5-373 Remove screw and connector and sensor assy



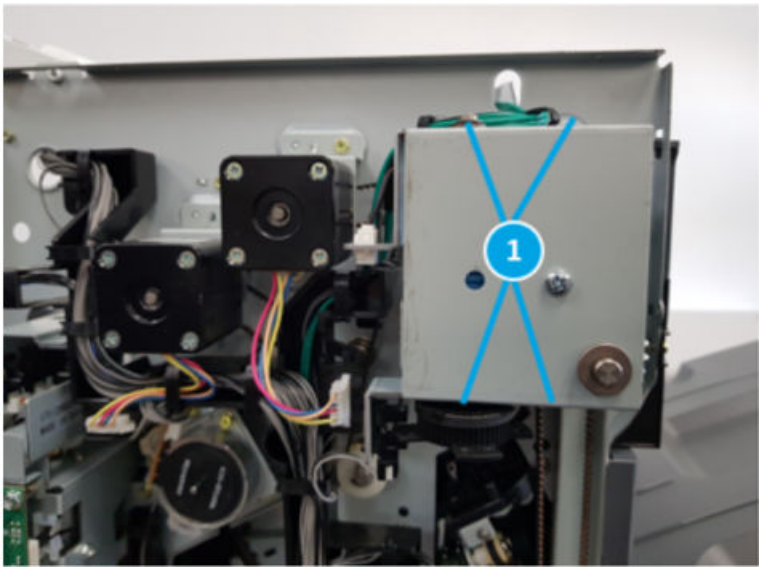
2. Remove top output tray paper full sensor- detector (callout 1).

Figure 5-374 Remove top output tray paper full sensor



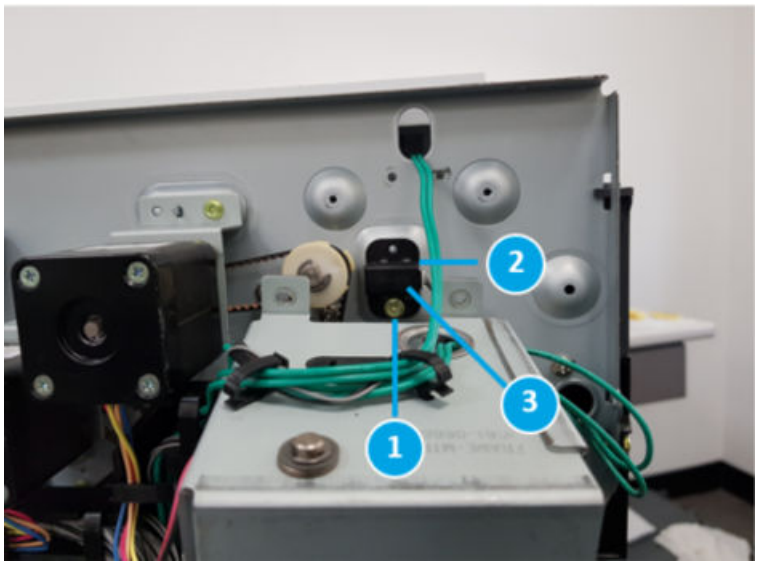
3. At the rear of the finisher, remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-375 Remove four screws



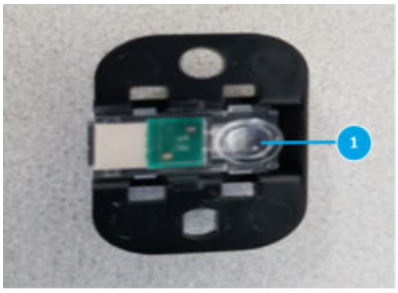
4. Remove screw (callout 1), disconnect the connector (callout 2), and then remove the sensor assembly (callout 3).

Figure 5-376 Remove screw and connector and sensor assy



5. Remove top output tray paper full sensor- emitter (callout 1).

Figure 5-377 Remove top output tray paper full sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main exit unit

Removal and replacement: Main exit sensor (S10)

Learn how to remove and replace the main exit sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the main exit sensor for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-105 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC32-00020A	Main exit sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

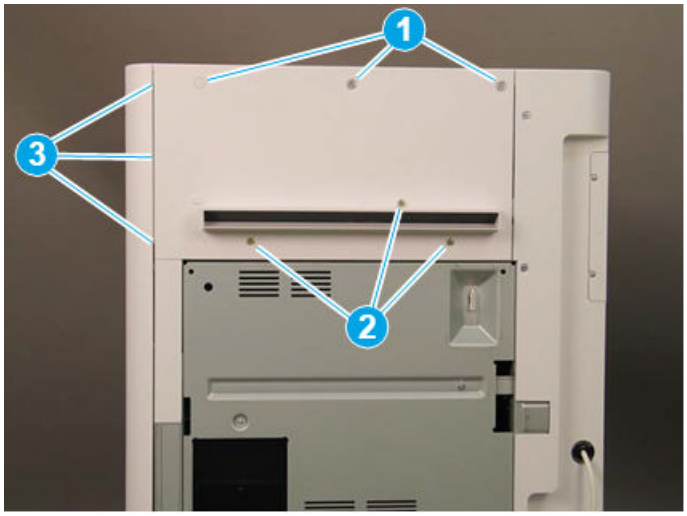
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-378 Remove the right upper cover

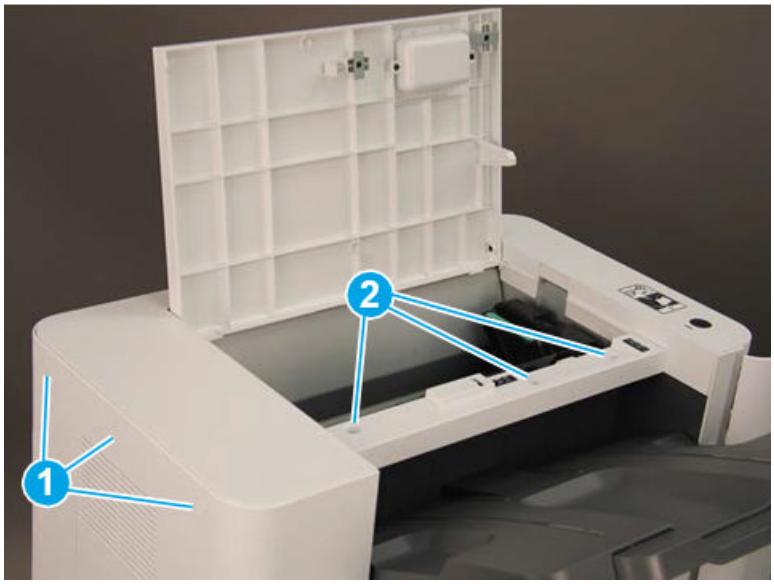


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

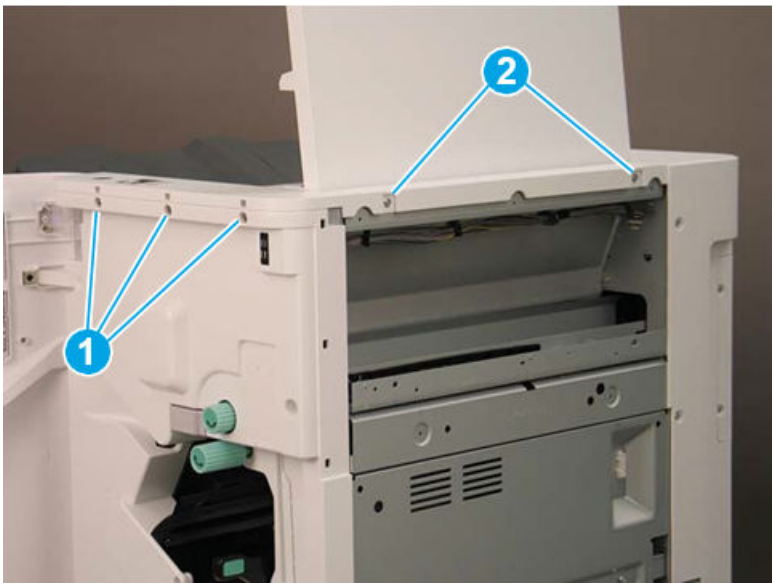
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-379 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

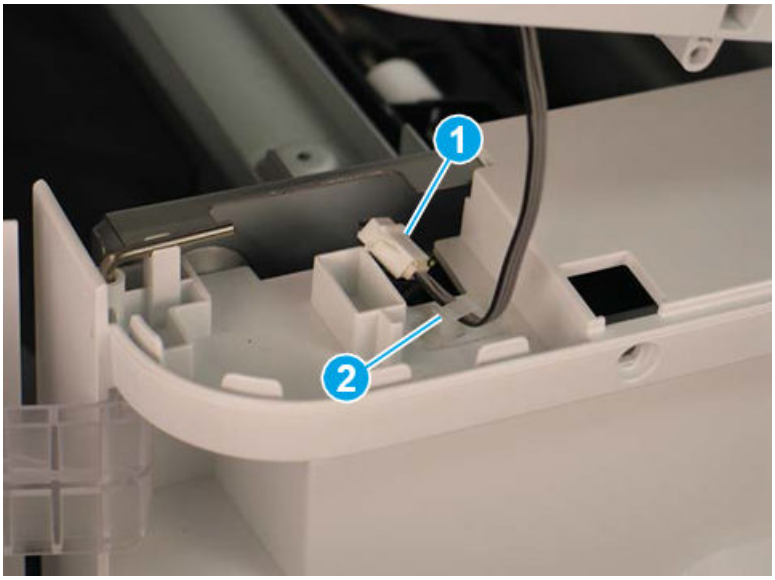
Figure 5-380 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-381 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

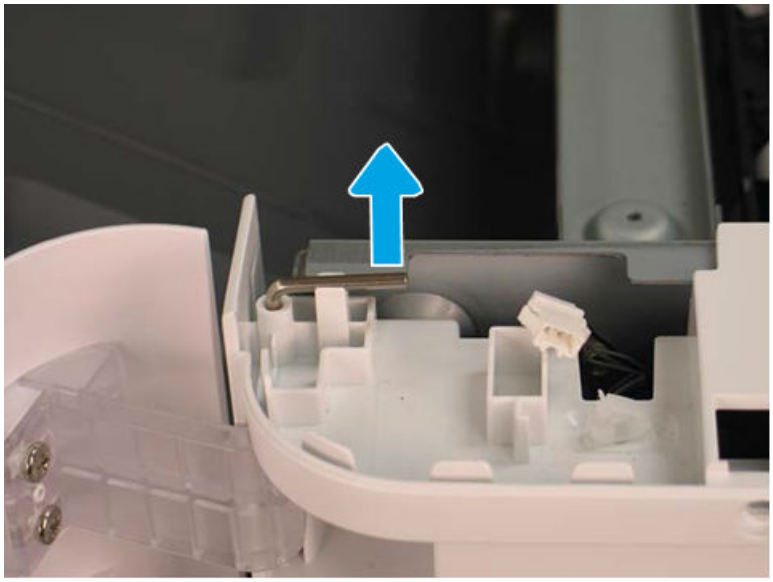


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

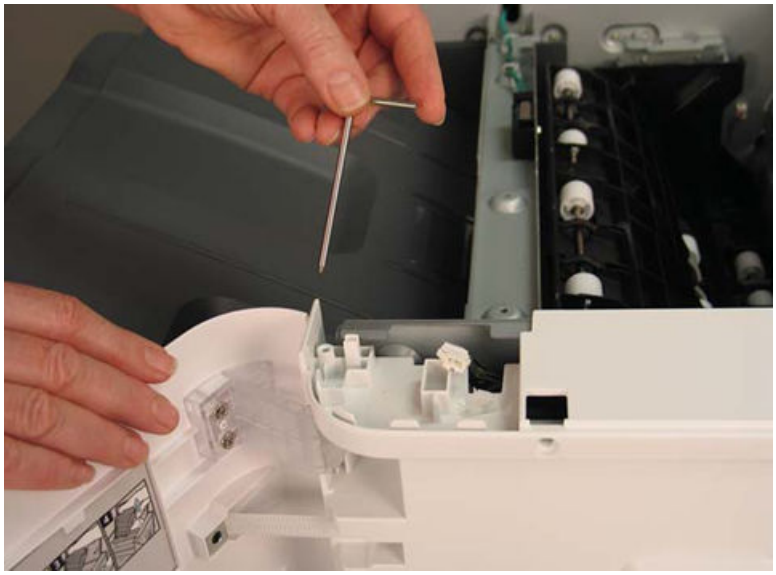
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-382 Lift the top hinge pin



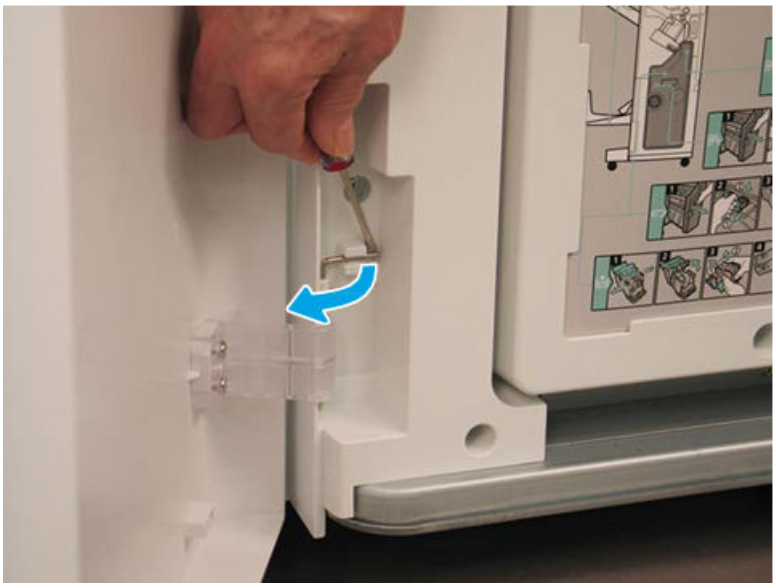
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-383 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-384 Release the lower hinge pin



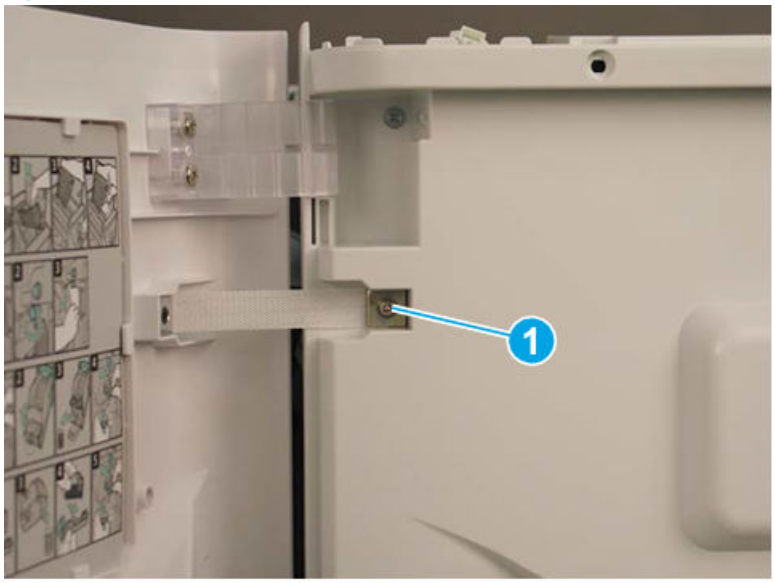
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-385 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-386 Remove the front door

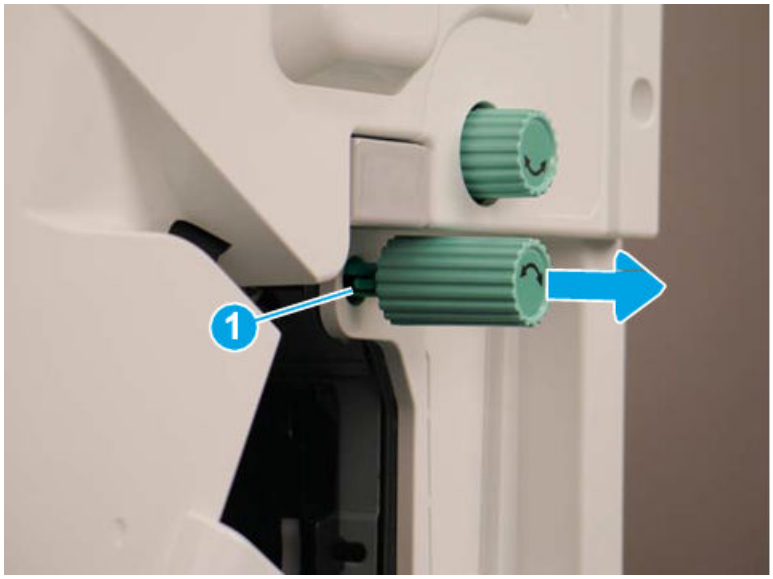


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-387 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

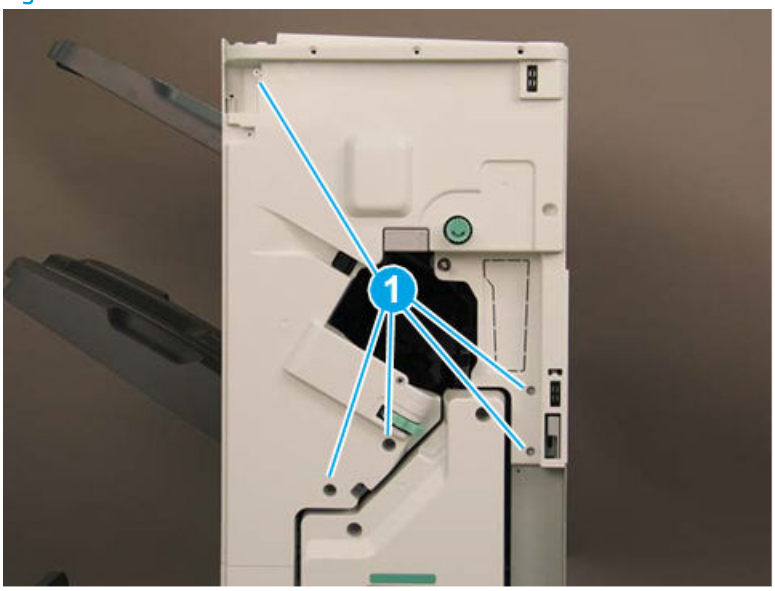
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-388 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-389 Remove the front cover

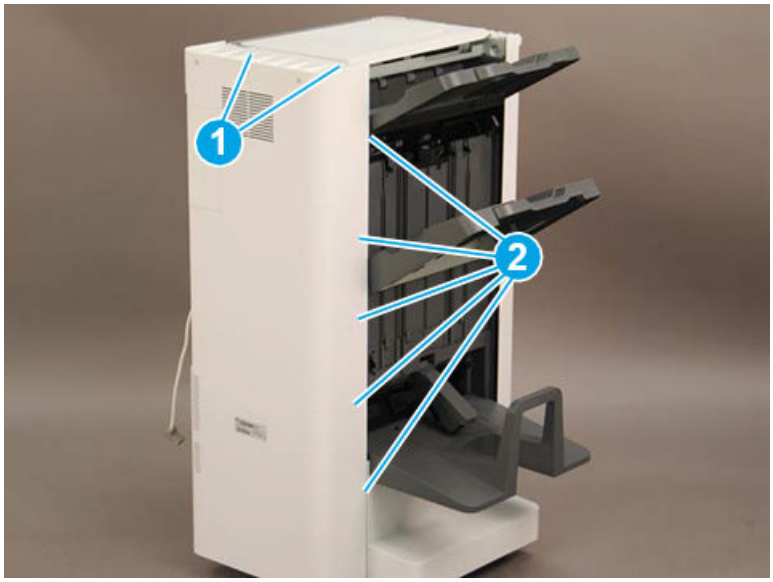


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-390 Remove seven screws

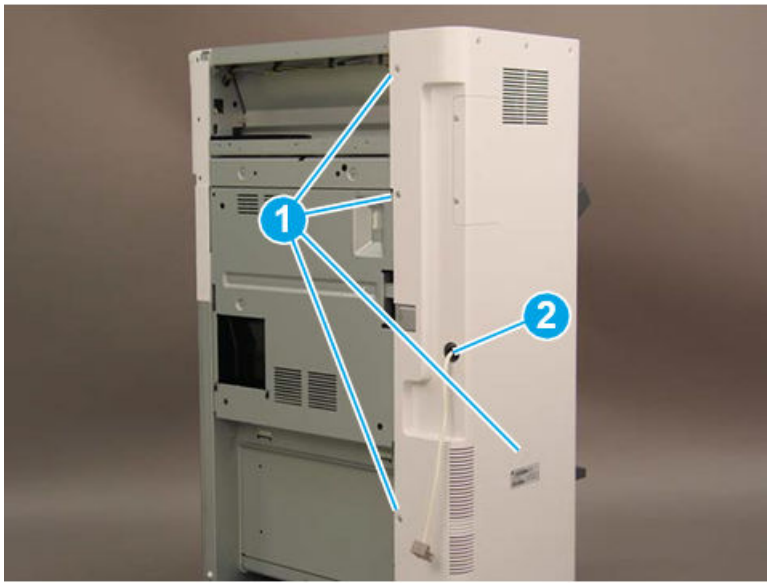


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-391 Remove the rear cover



Remove the exit motor (M13)

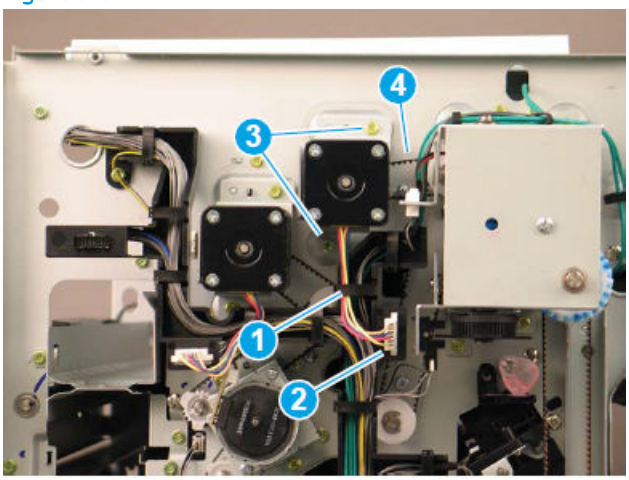
Follow these steps to remove the exit motor (M13).

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the exit motor.

TIP: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-392 Remove the exit motor

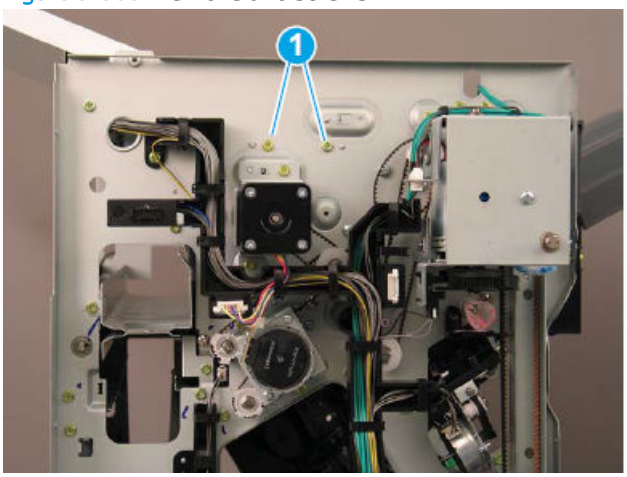


Remove the top jam access cover

Follow these steps to remove the top jam access cover.

1. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

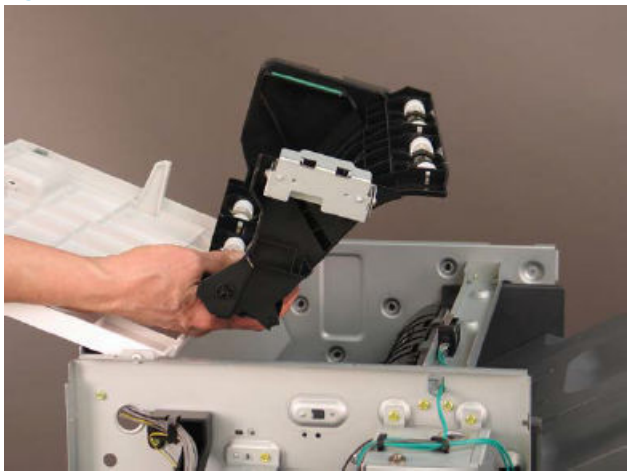
Figure 5-393 Remove two screws



2. Remove the top jam access cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-394 Remove the top jam access cover

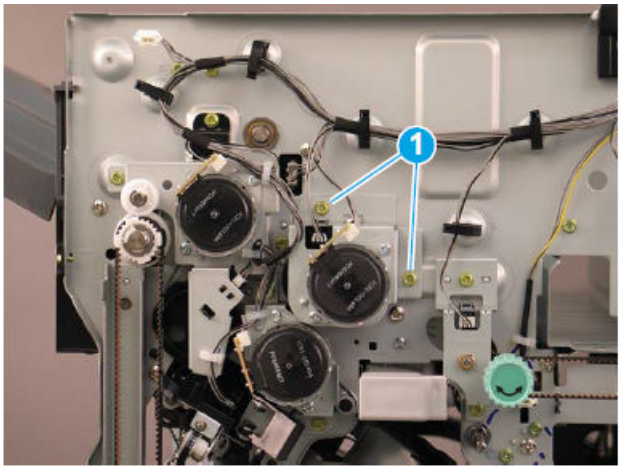


Remove the top lower feed assembly (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top lower feed assembly (finisher).

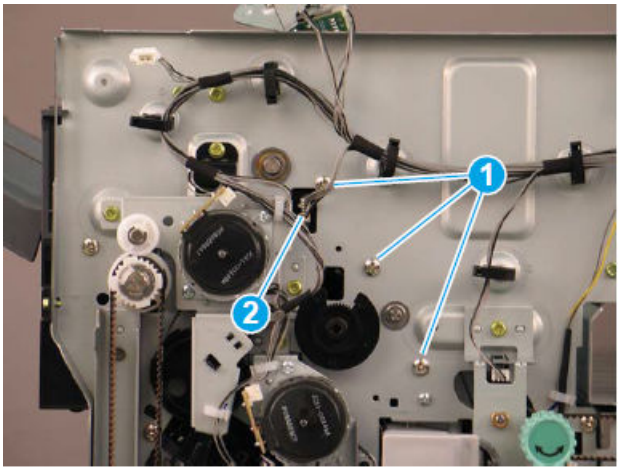
1. At the front of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1) on the main exit cam motor housing, and then tilt the motor aside to access the screws under it.

Figure 5-395 Remove two screws



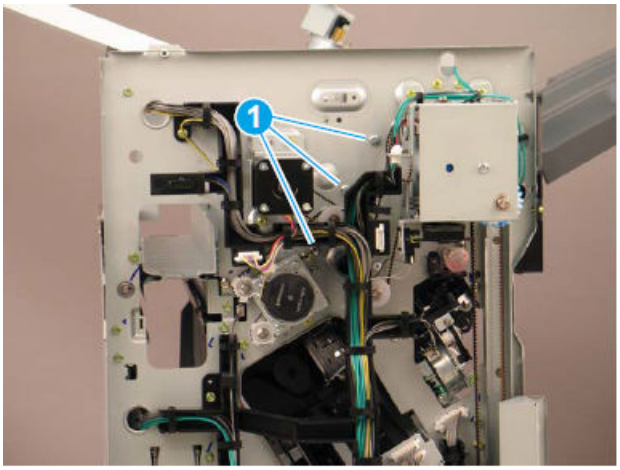
2. At the front of the finisher, remove three self-tapping screws (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-396 Remove three screws and disconnect one connector



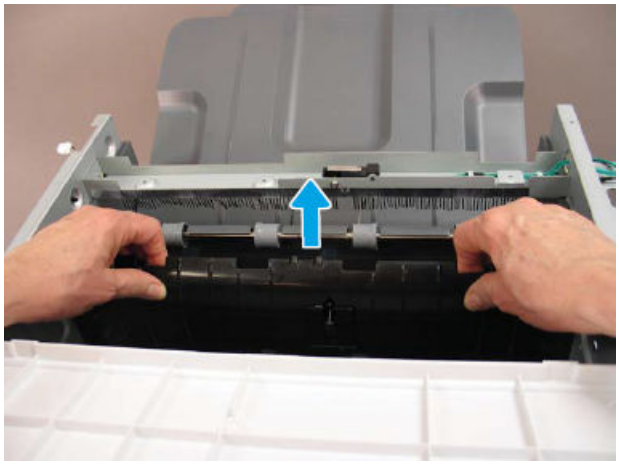
3. At the rear of the finisher, remove three machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-397 Remove three screws



4. At the top of the finisher, lift the feed assembly straight up to disengage two tabs on the bottom and remove the assembly.

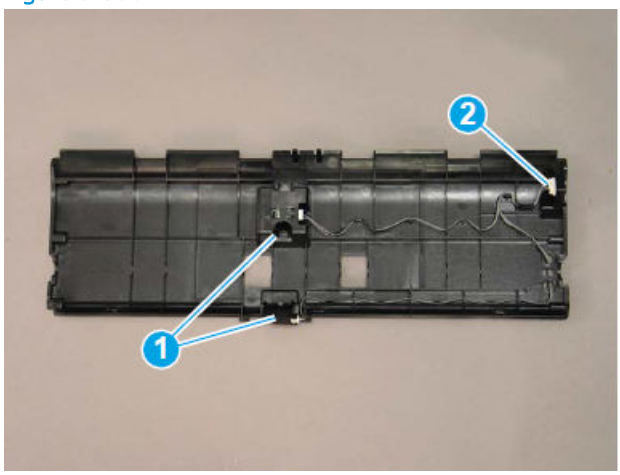
Figure 5-398 Remove the top lower feed assembly



5. If you are replacing the top lower feed assembly, locate two sensors (callout 1) and one connector (callout 2) on the back of the assembly. Remove these items and transfer them to the replacement part.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-399 Locate sensors and connector

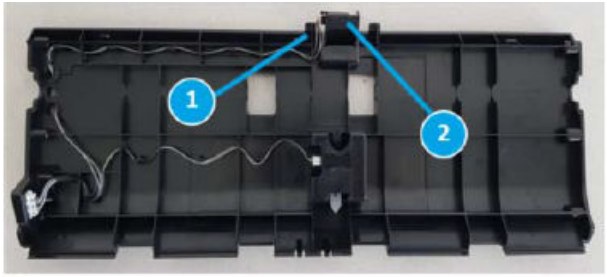


Remove the main exit sensor(S10)

Follow these steps to remove the main exit sensor(S10).

- Remove one screw (callout 1) and main exit sensor (S10; callout 2) at the top lower feed assembly.

Figure 5-400 Remove the main exit sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit motor (M13)

Learn how to remove and replace the exit motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the exit motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-106 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01459A	Exit motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

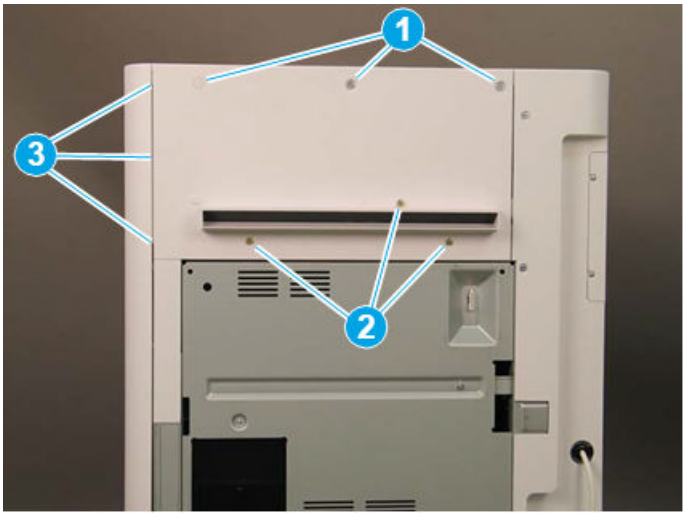
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-401 Remove the right upper cover

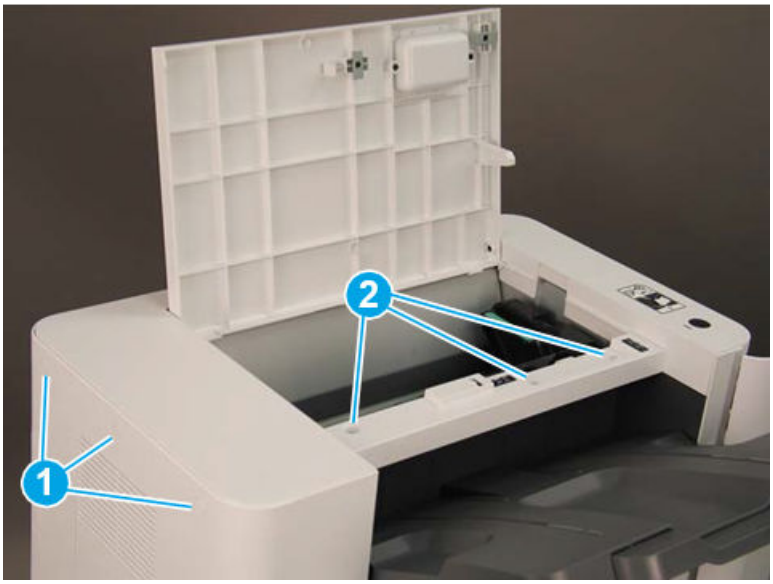


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

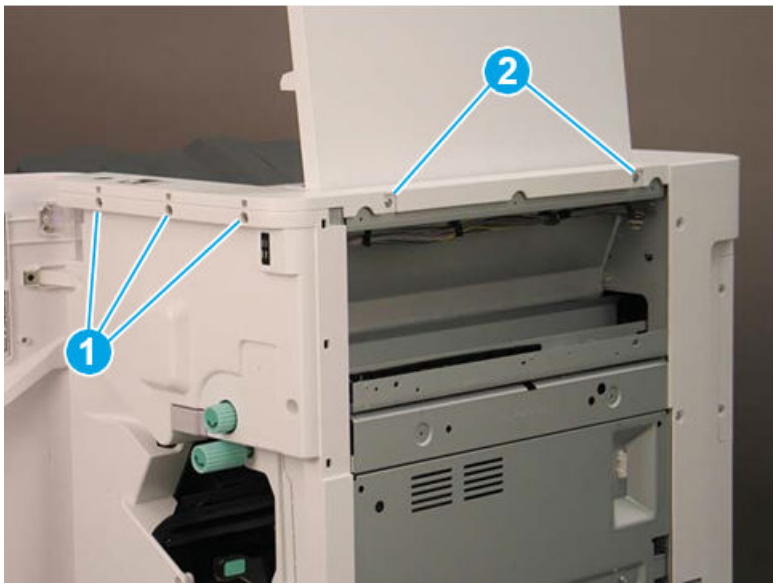
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-402 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

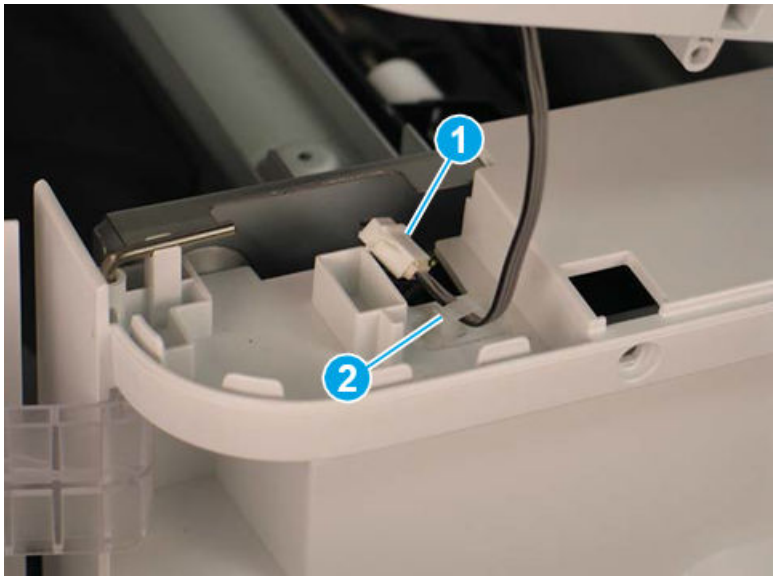
Figure 5-403 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-404 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

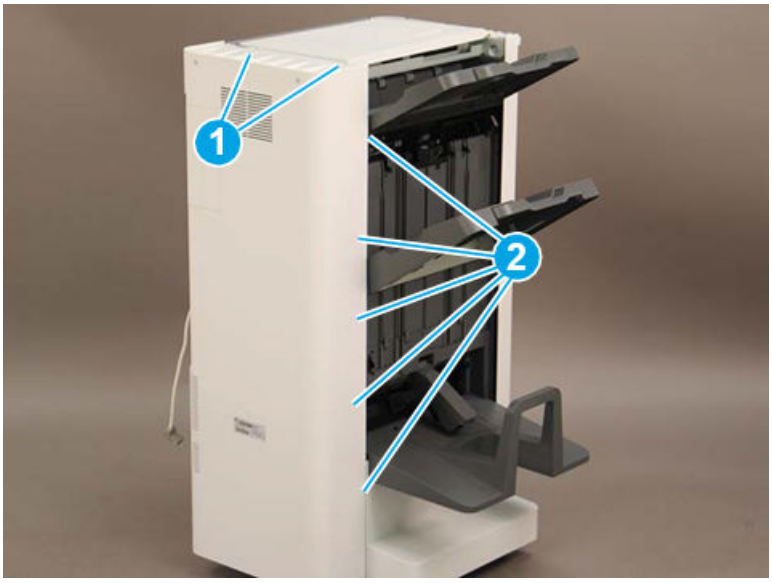


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-405 Remove seven screws

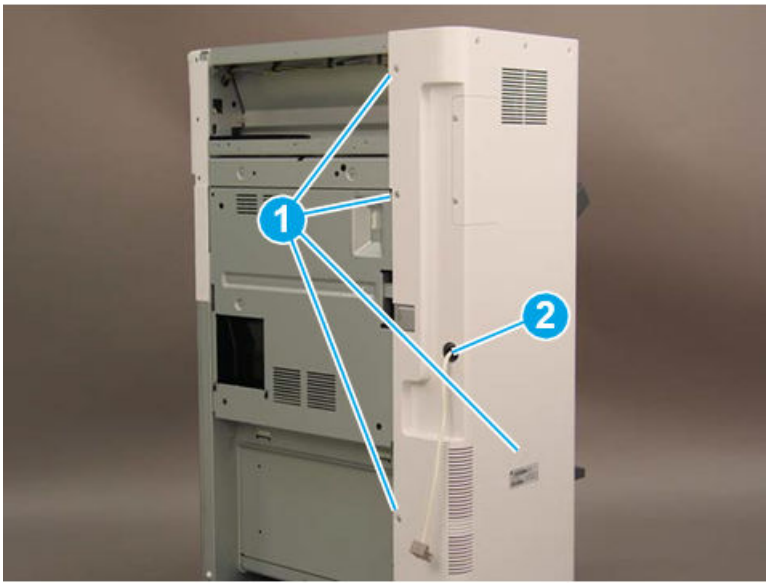


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-406 Remove the rear cover



Remove the exit motor (M13)

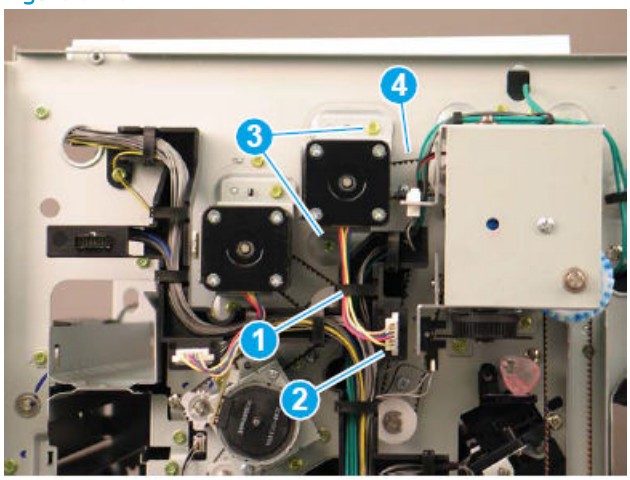
Follow these steps to remove the exit motor (M13).

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the exit motor.

TIP: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-407 Remove the exit motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main exit cam motor (M2)

Learn how to remove and replace the main exit cam motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the main exit cam motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-107 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01453A	Main exit cam motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

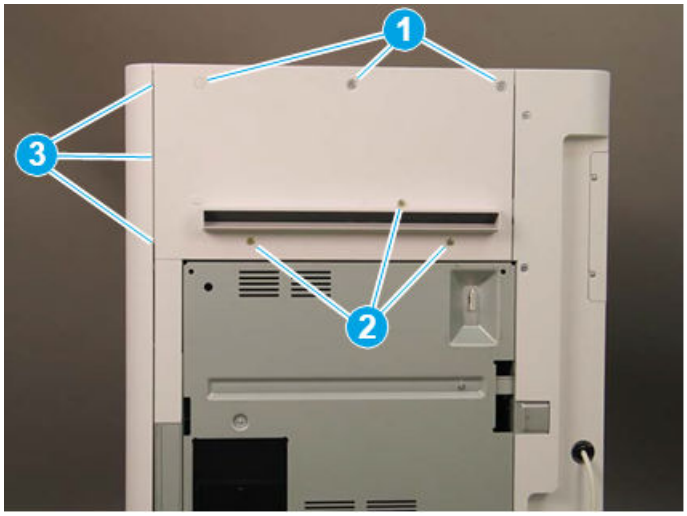
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-408 Remove the right upper cover

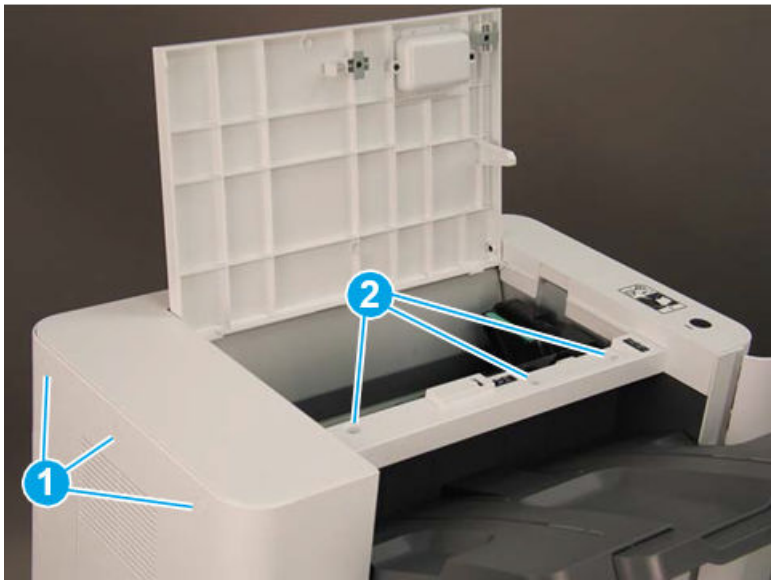


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

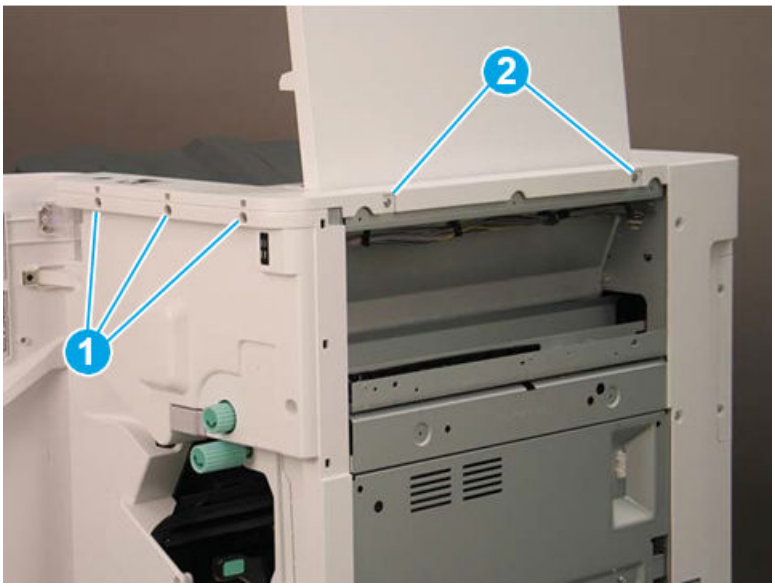
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-409 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

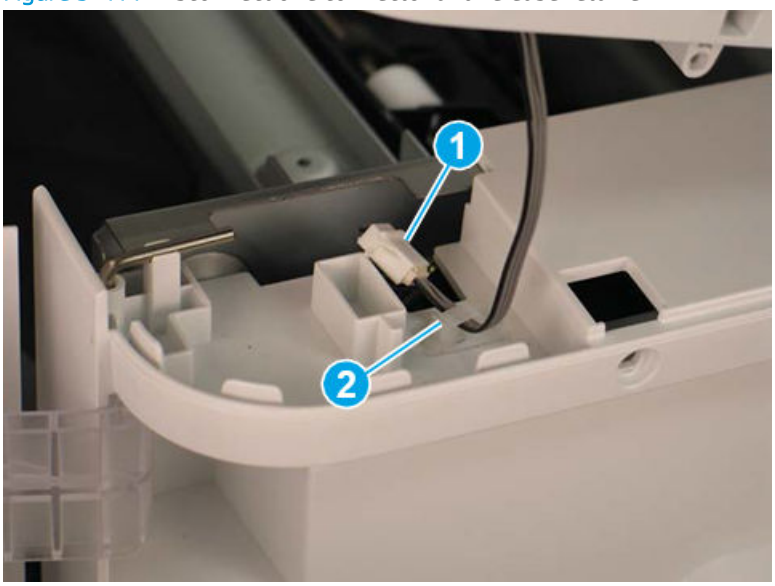
Figure 5-410 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-411 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

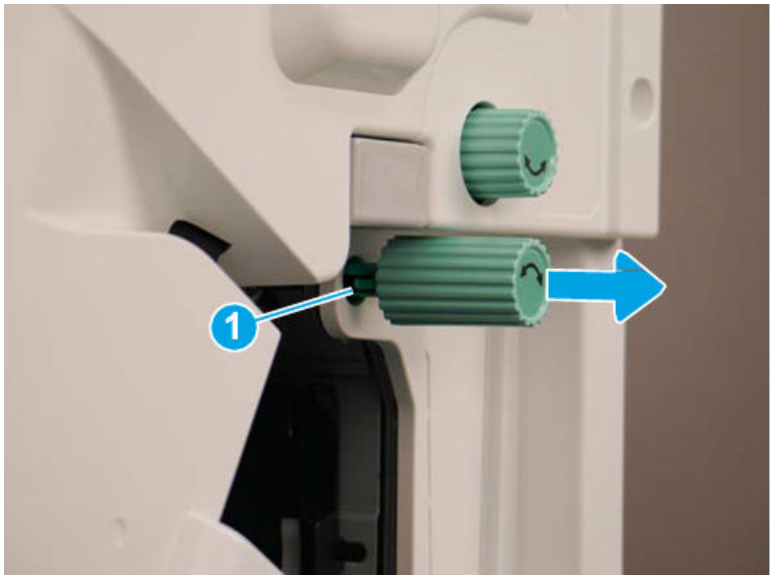


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

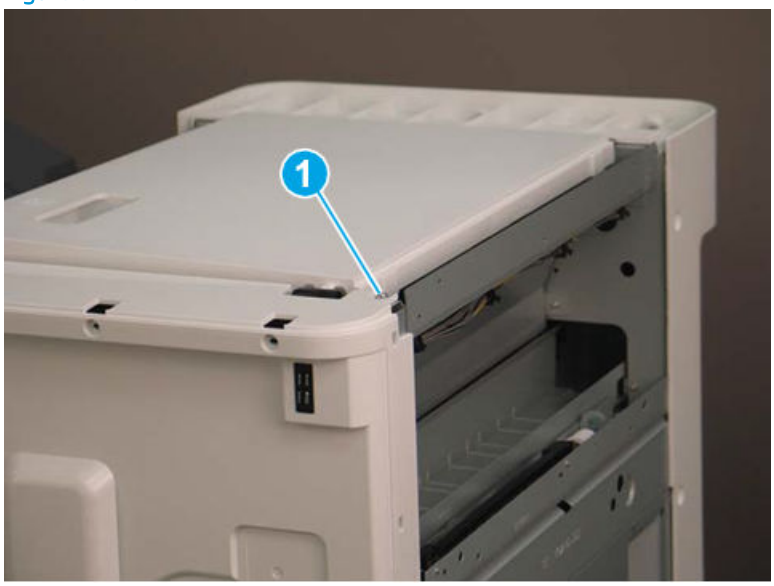
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-412 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

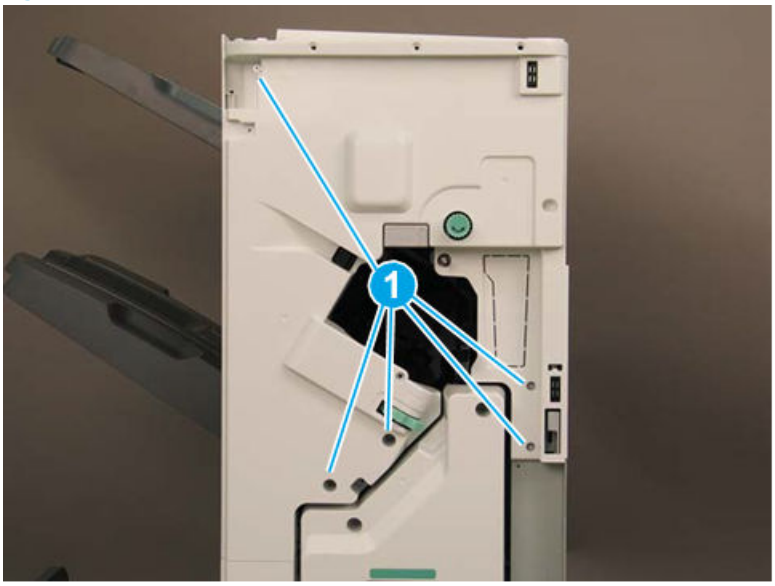
Figure 5-413 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-414 Remove the front cover

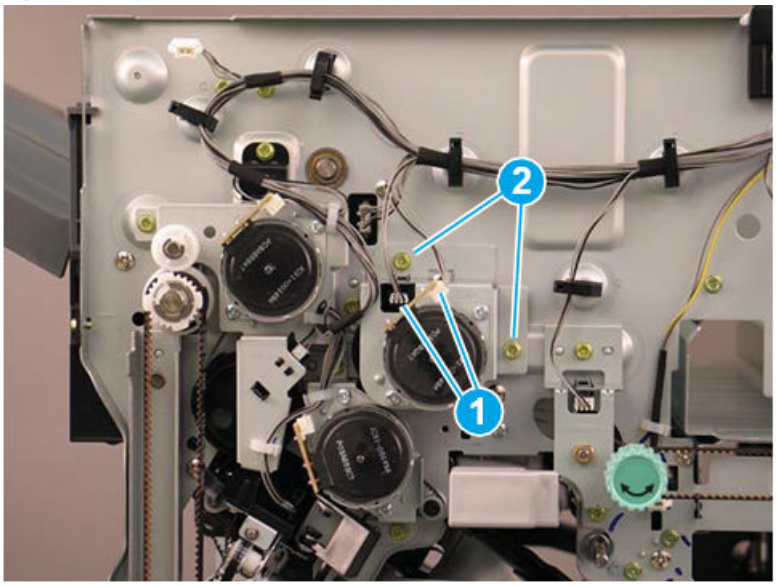


Remove the Main exit cam motor (M2)

Follow these steps to remove the Main exit cam motor (M2).

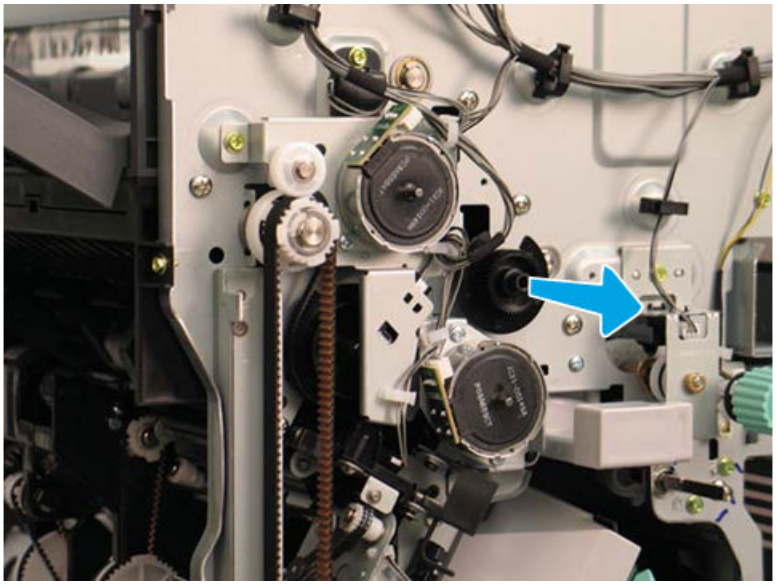
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-415 Disconnect two connectors and then two screws



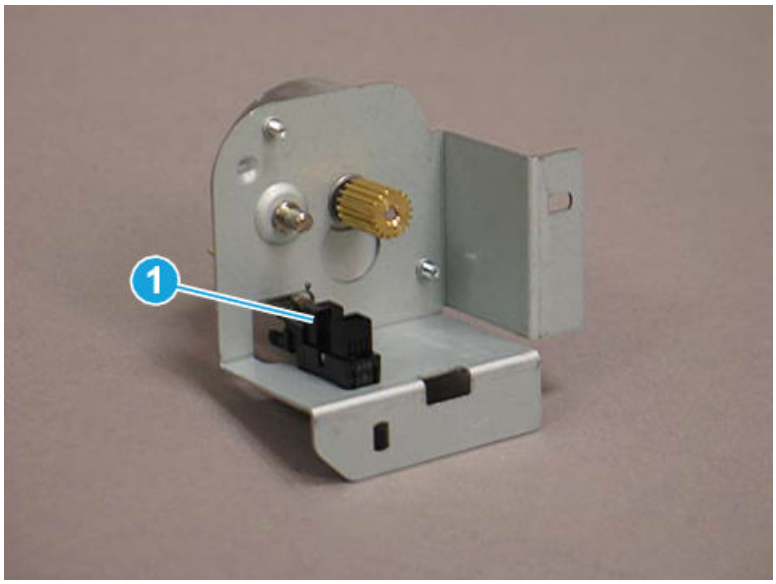
2. If you are replacing the gear, slide it off of the shaft

Figure 5-416 Slide the gear off of the shaft



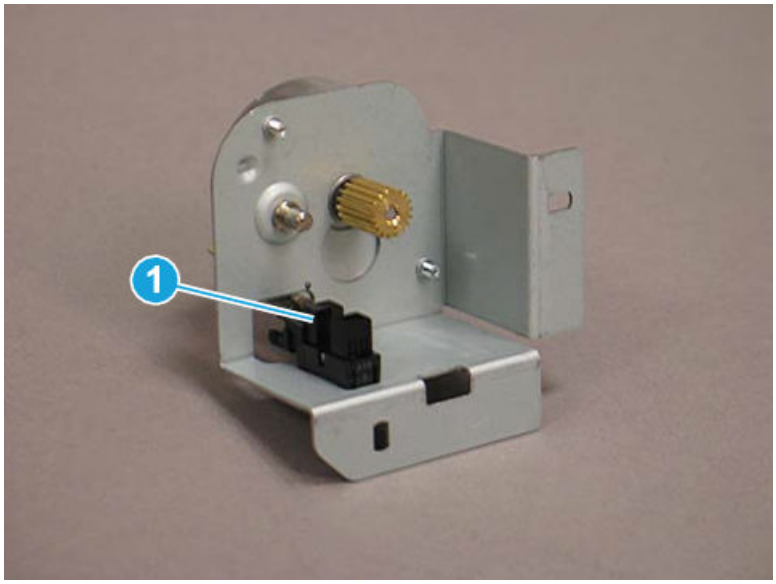
3. If you are replacing the sensor (callout 1), remove it from the motor housing.

Figure 5-417 Remove the sensor

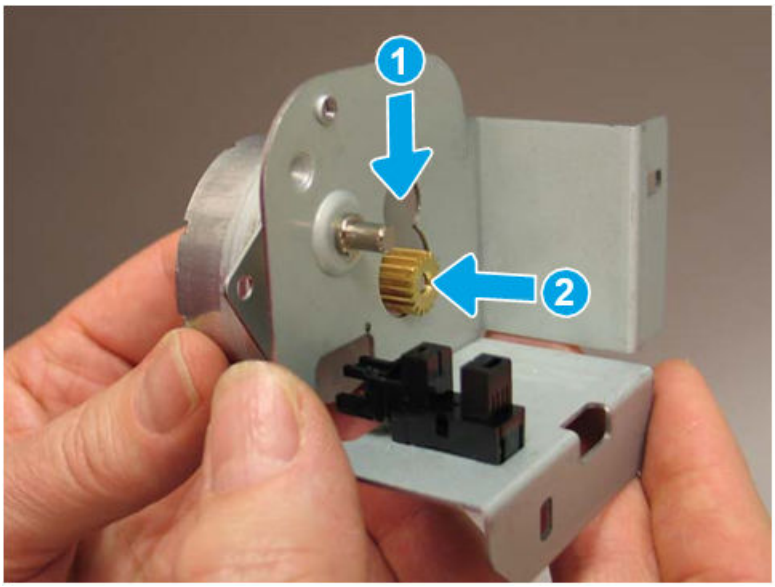


4. If you are replacing the motor, do the following.

   a. Remove two screws (callout 1)



b. Lower the motor (callout 1) and then pull it away from the housing (callout 2) to remove it.



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Paddle unit

Removal and replacement: Paddle

Learn how to remove and replace the paddle.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the paddle for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-108 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01462A	Paddle mid
JC90-01463A	Paddle wing

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

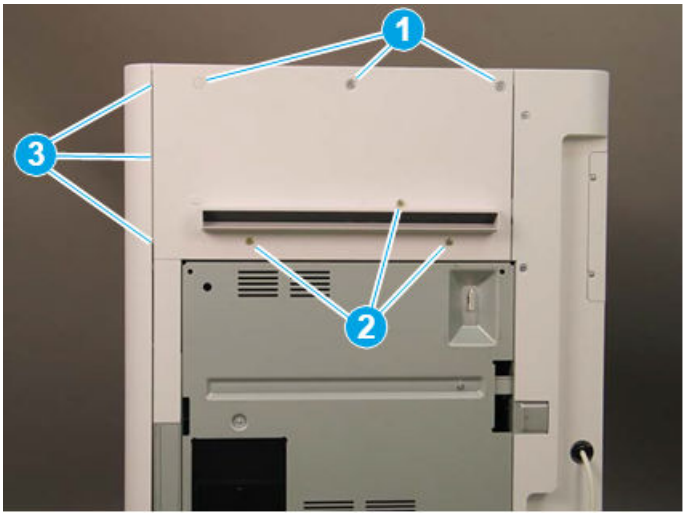
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-418 Remove the right upper cover

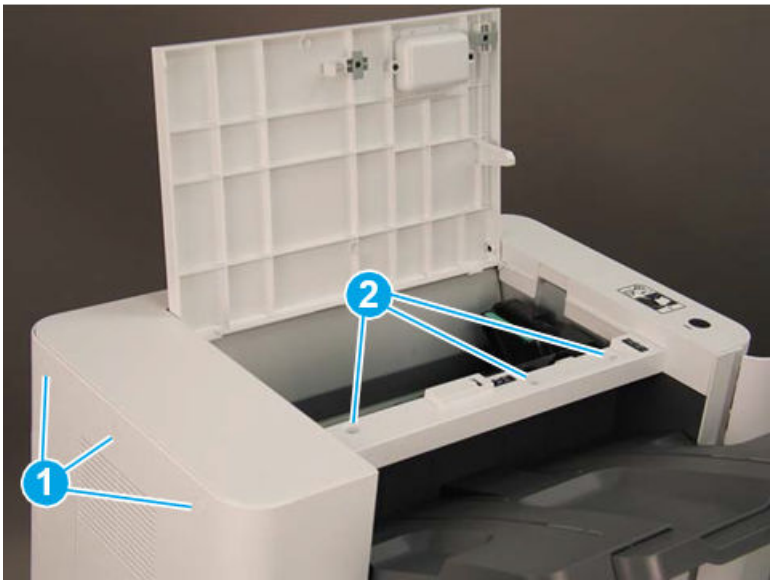


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

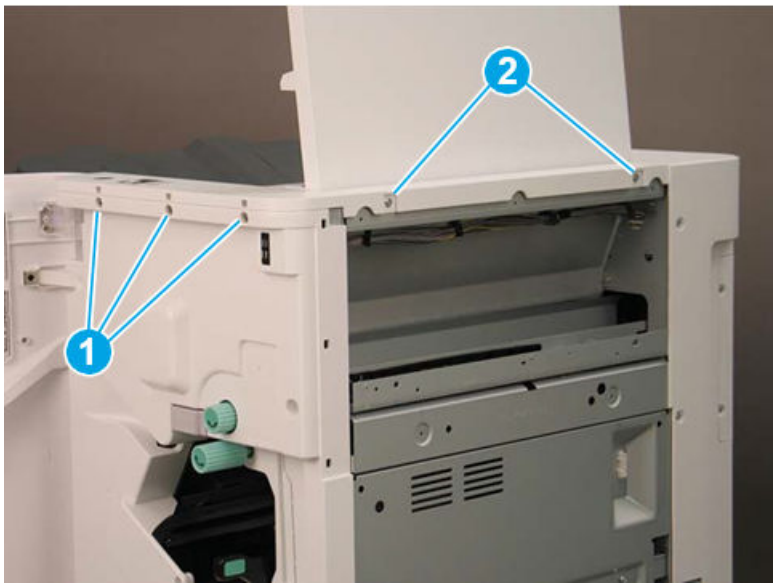
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-419 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

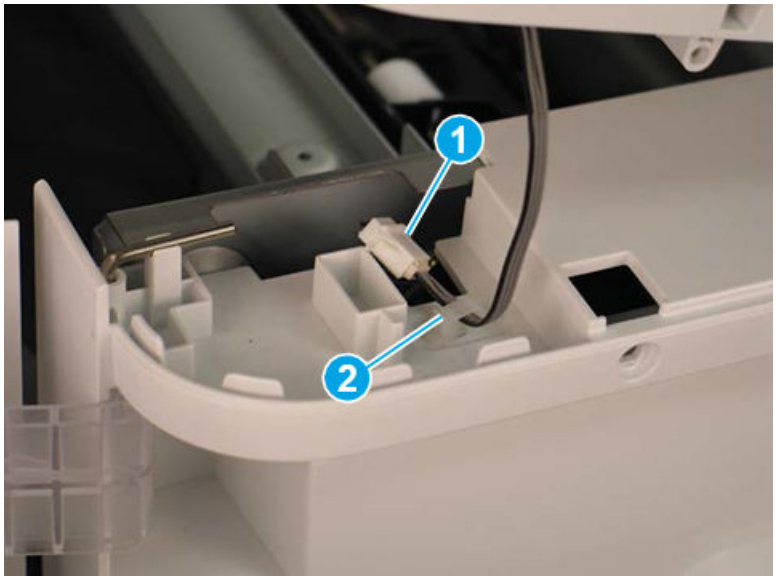
Figure 5-420 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-421 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

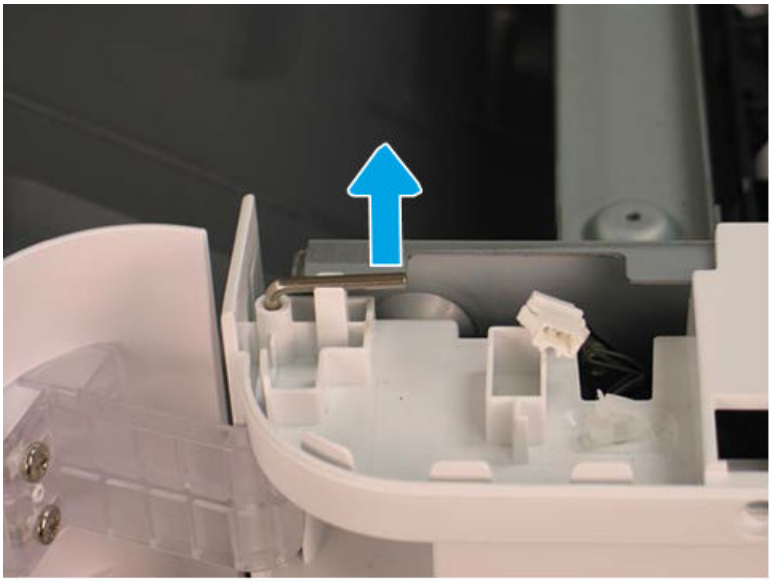


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

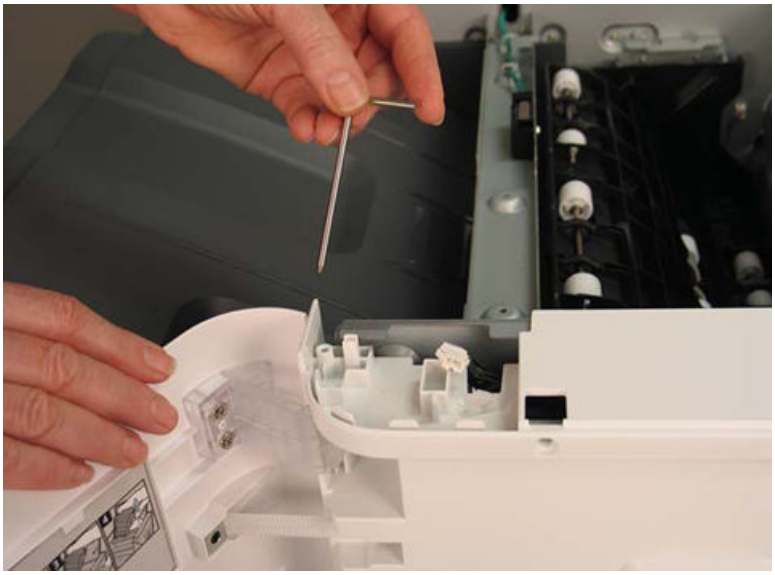
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-422 Lift the top hinge pin



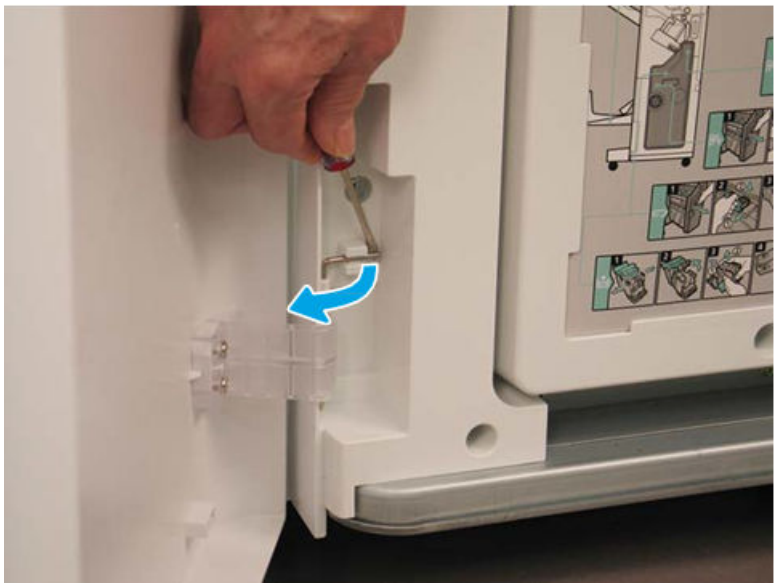
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-423 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-424 Release the lower hinge pin



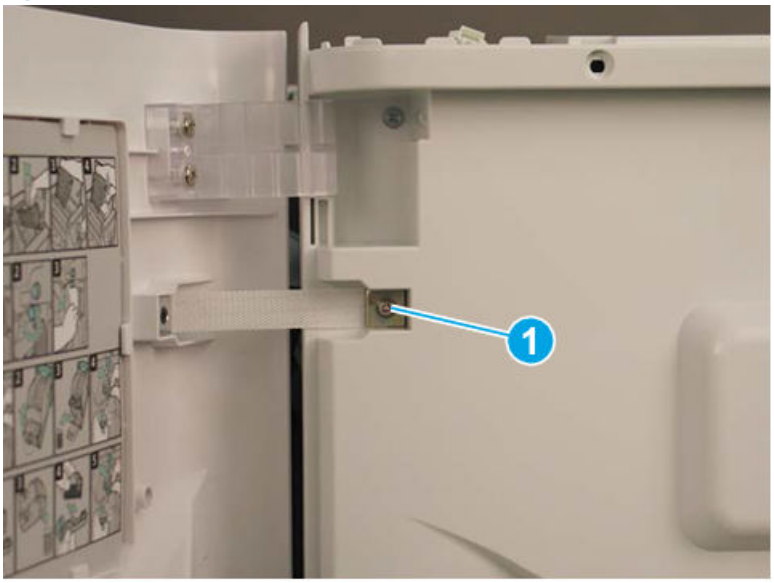
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-425 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-426 Remove the front door

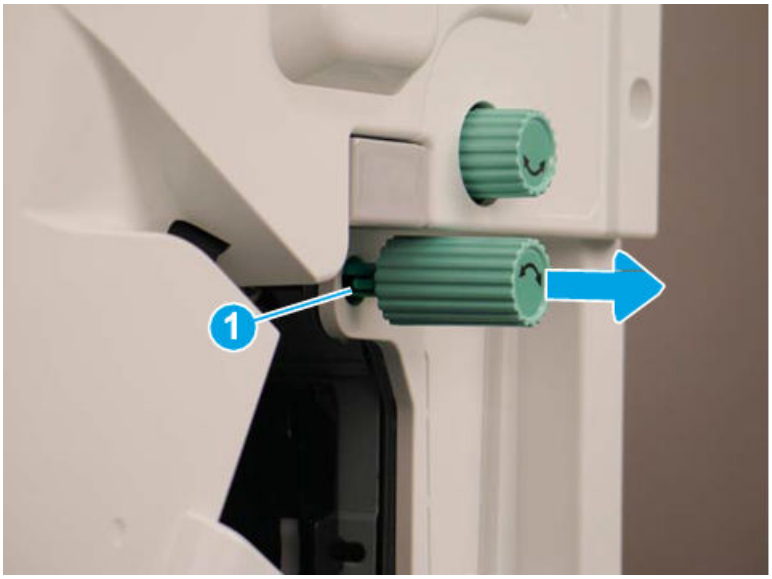


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

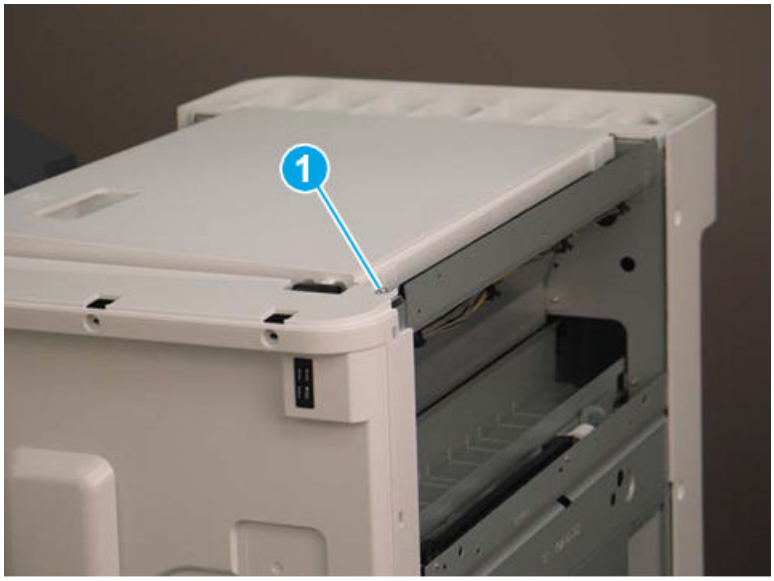
Figure 5-427 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

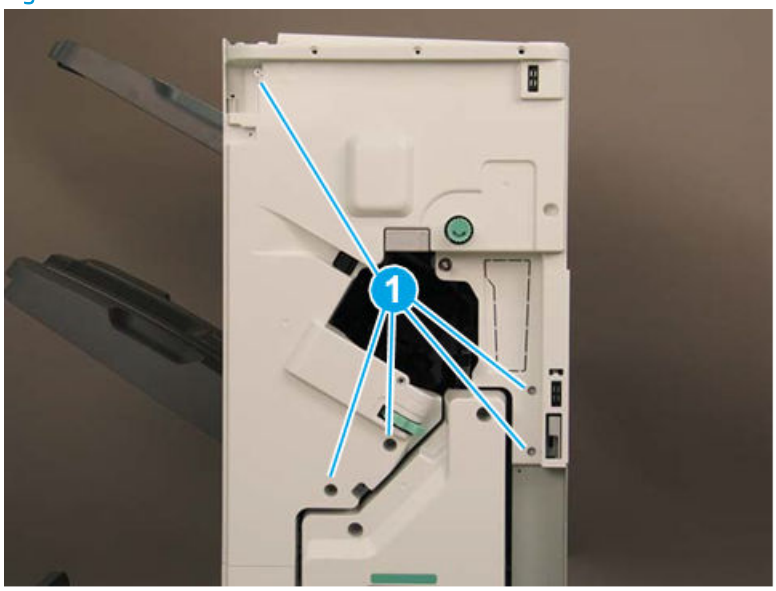
Figure 5-428 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-429 Remove the front cover

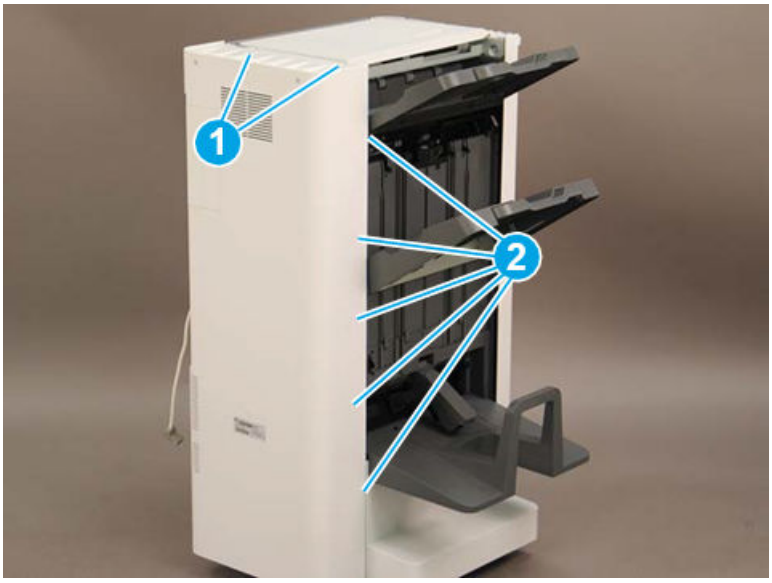


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-430 Remove seven screws

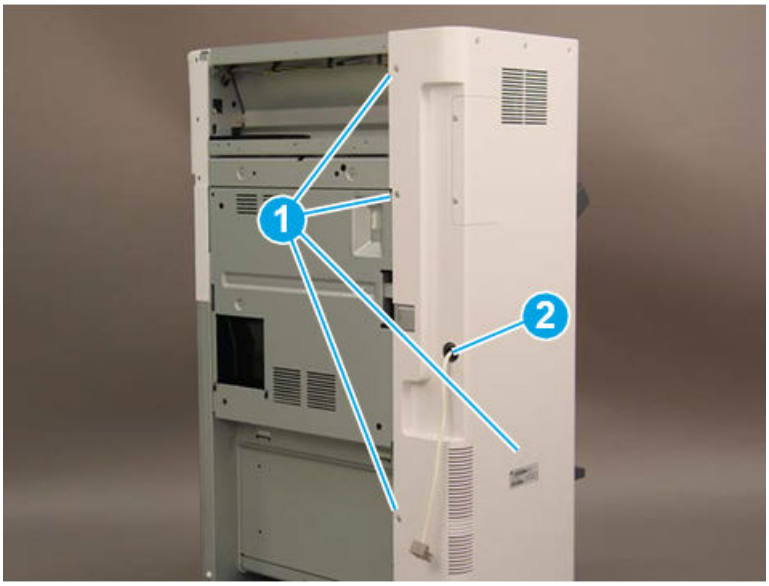


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-431 Remove the rear cover

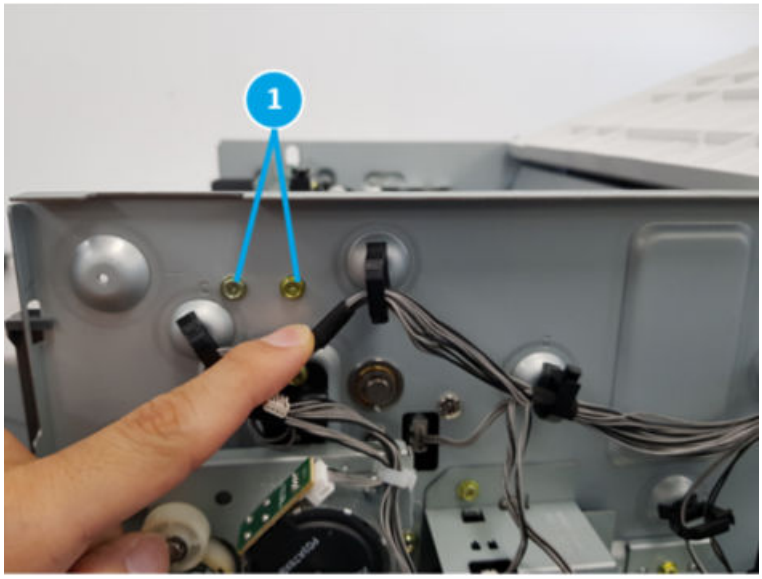


Remove the paddle (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the paddle (finisher).

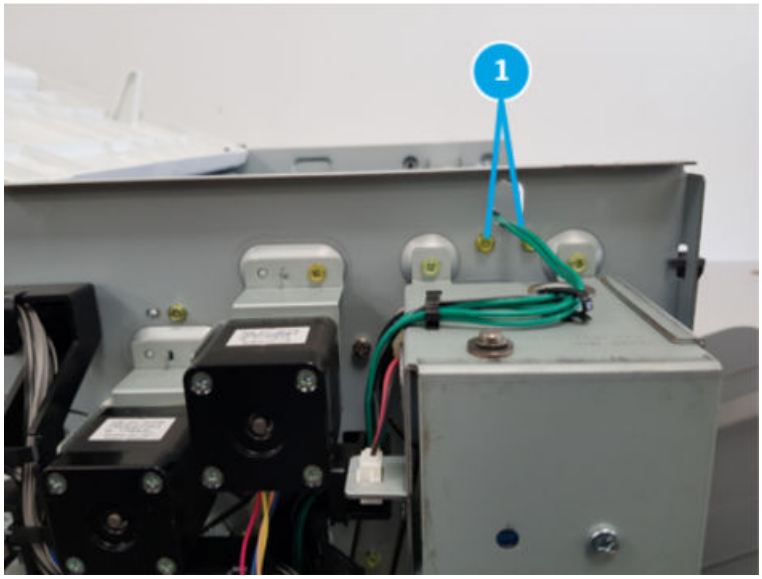
1. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-432 Remove two screws



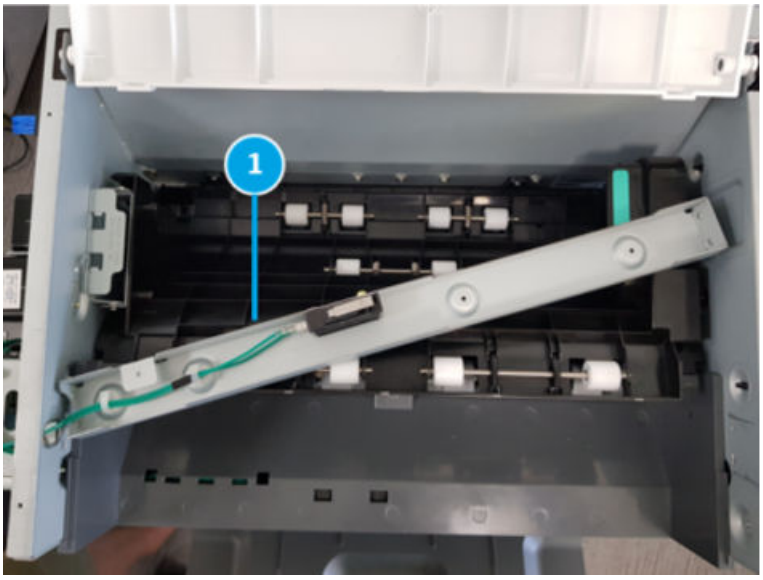
2. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-433 Remove two screws



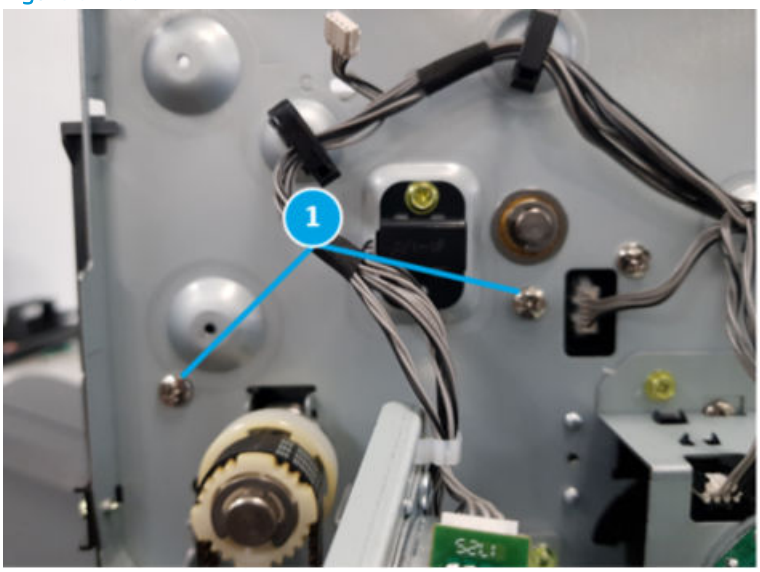
3. Do not remove the frame (callout 1) but pull it one side.

Figure 5-434 Pull it one side



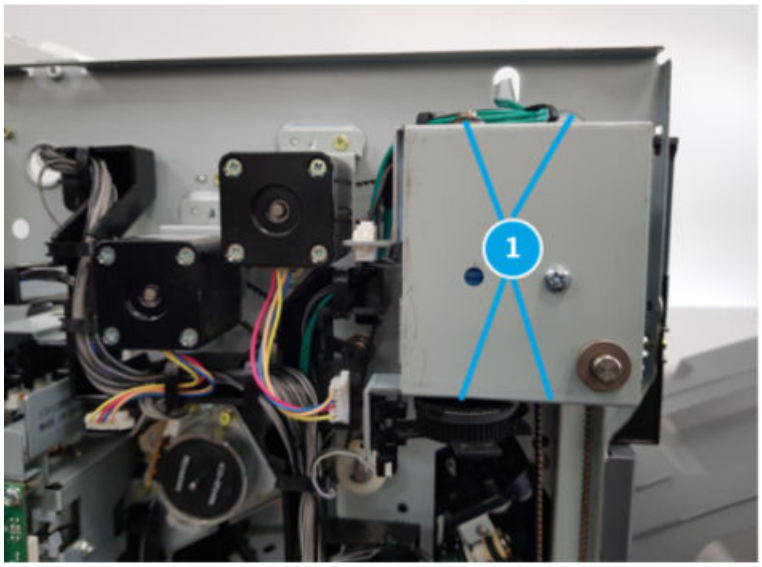
4. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1)

Figure 5-435 Remove two screws



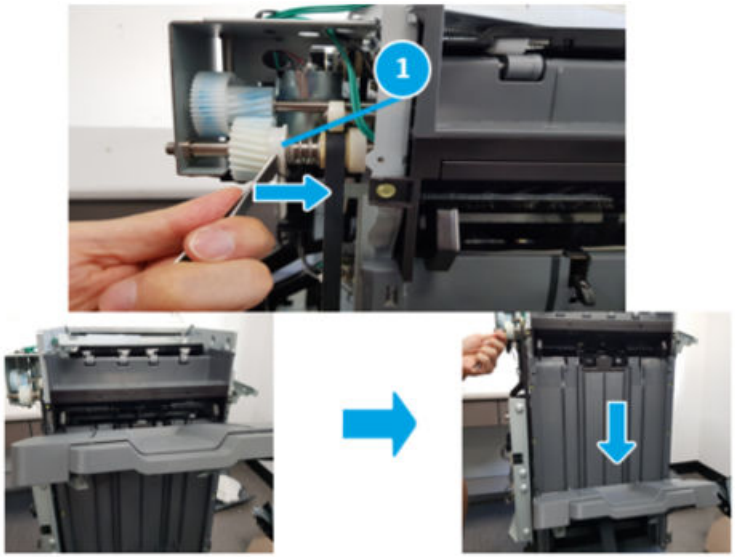
5. At the rear of the finisher, remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-436 Remove four screws



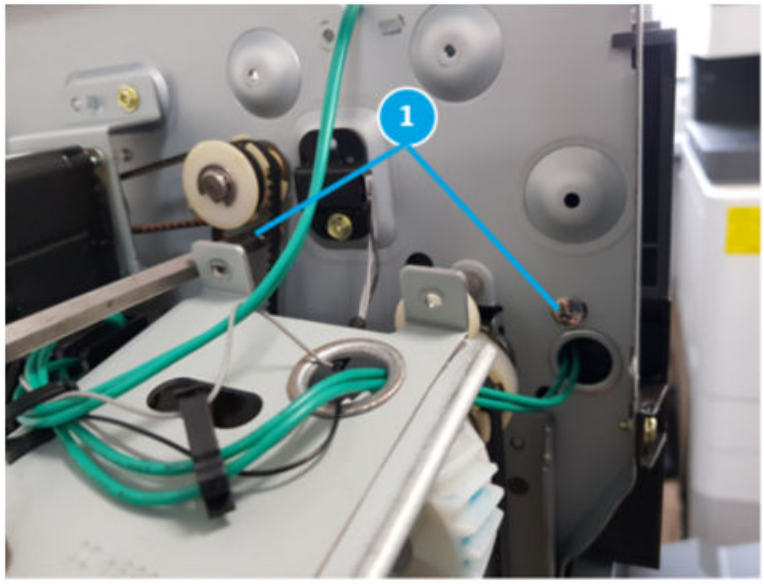
6. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver or tweezers on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.(S11)

Figure 5-437 Pressing to the right to release the clutch



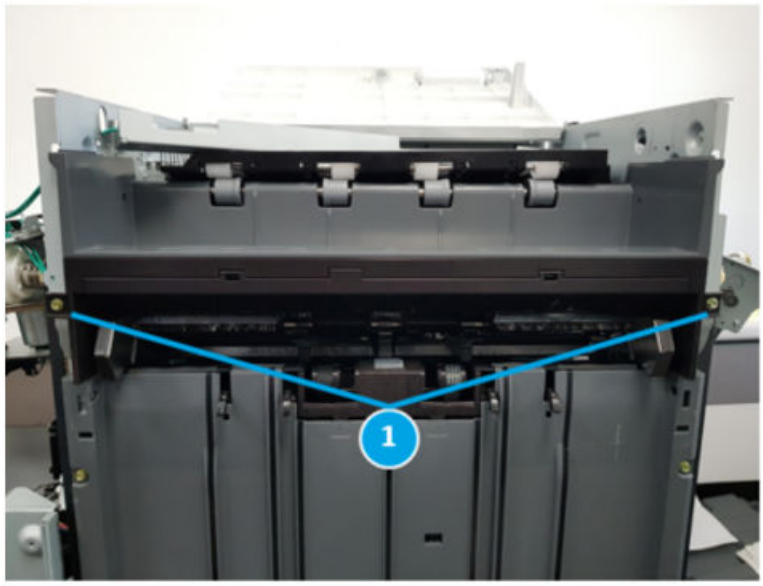
7. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-438 Remove two screws



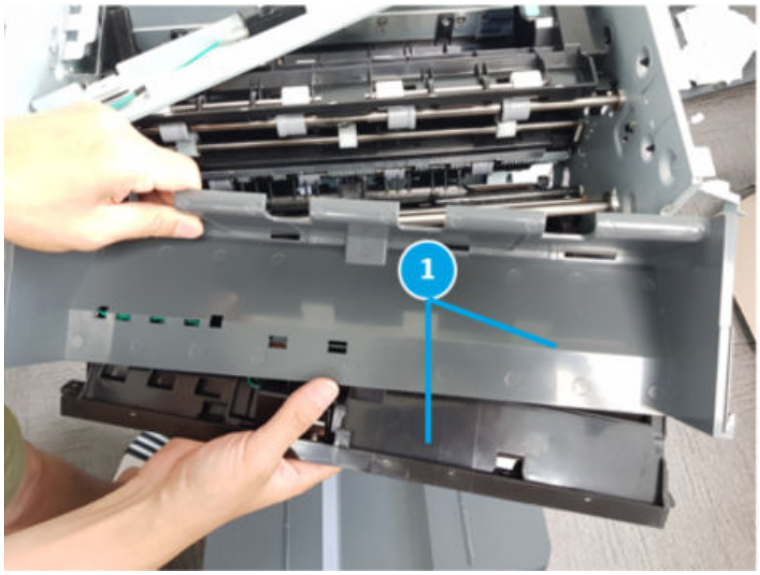
8. Remove two screws (callout 1)

Figure 5-439 Remove two screws



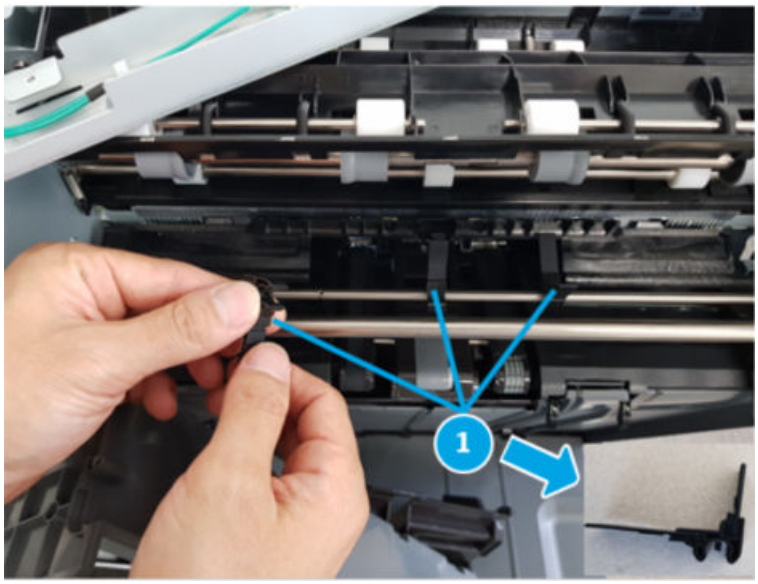
9. Take supporter of top output bin (callout 1) forward and put it down.

Figure 5-440 Take supporter of top output bin forward and put it down.



10. Remove three paddles (callout 1) from shaft

Figure 5-441 Remove the paddle



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paddle home sensor (S8)

Learn how to remove and replace the paddle home sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the paddle home sensor for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-109 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Paddle home sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

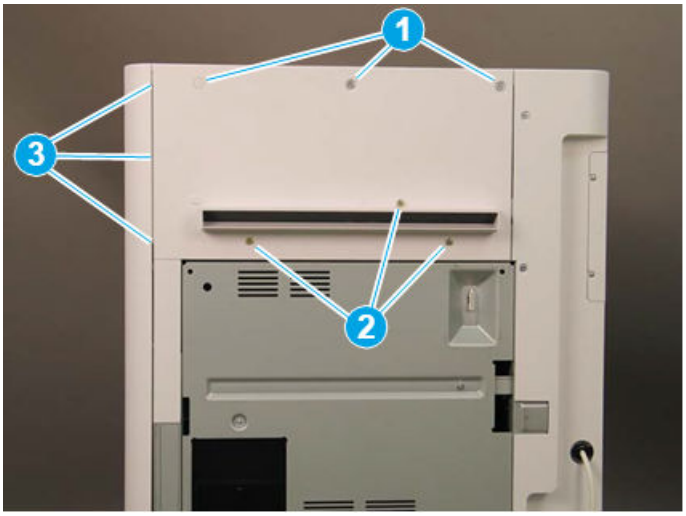
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-442 Remove the right upper cover

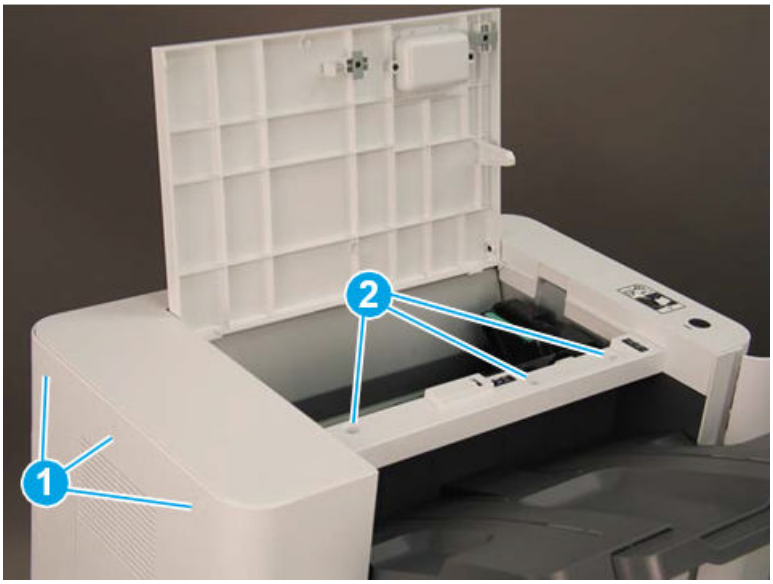


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

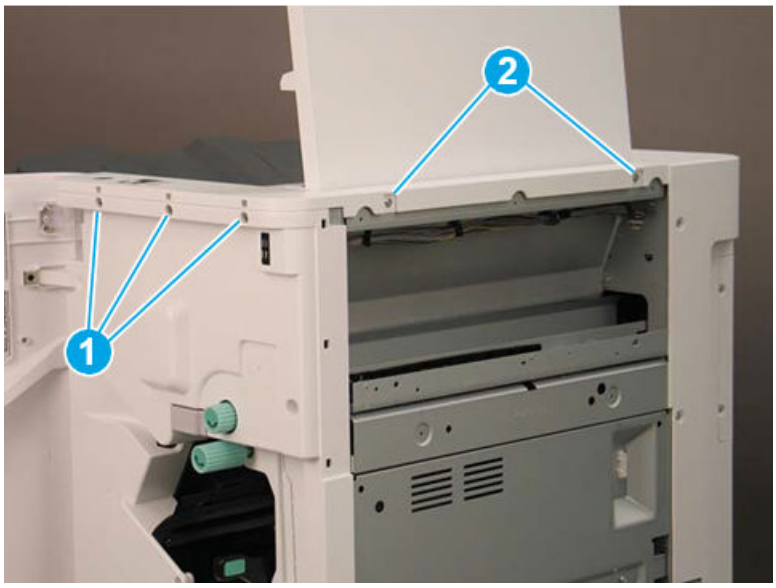
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-443 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

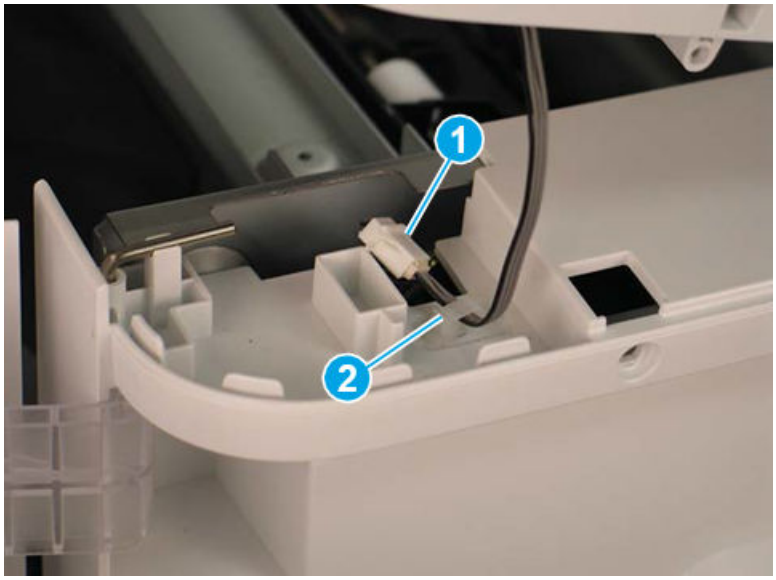
Figure 5-444 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-445 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

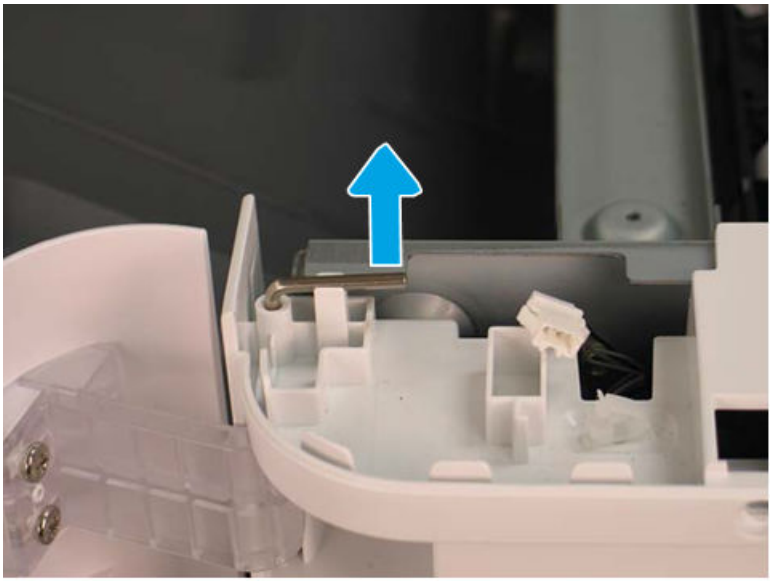


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

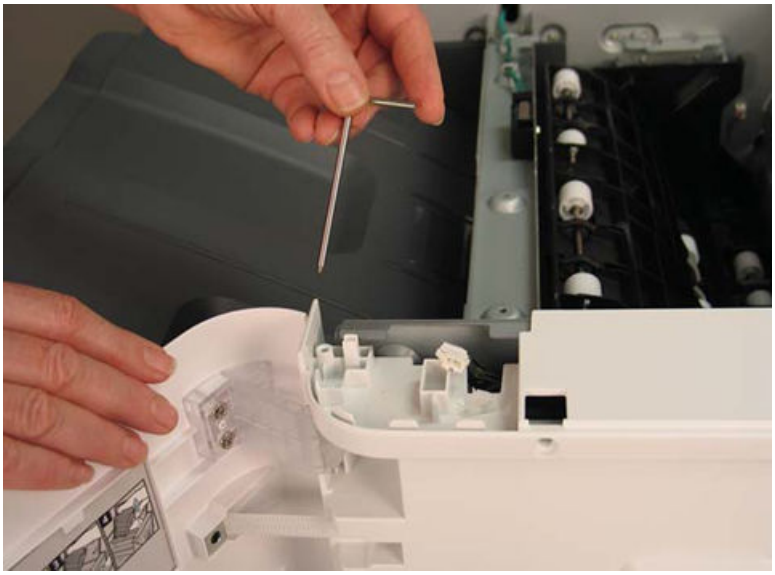
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-446 Lift the top hinge pin



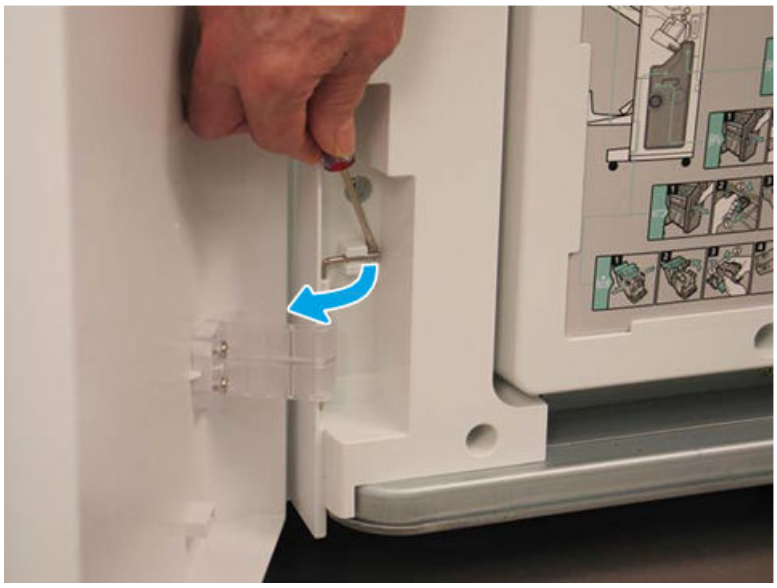
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-447 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-448 Release the lower hinge pin



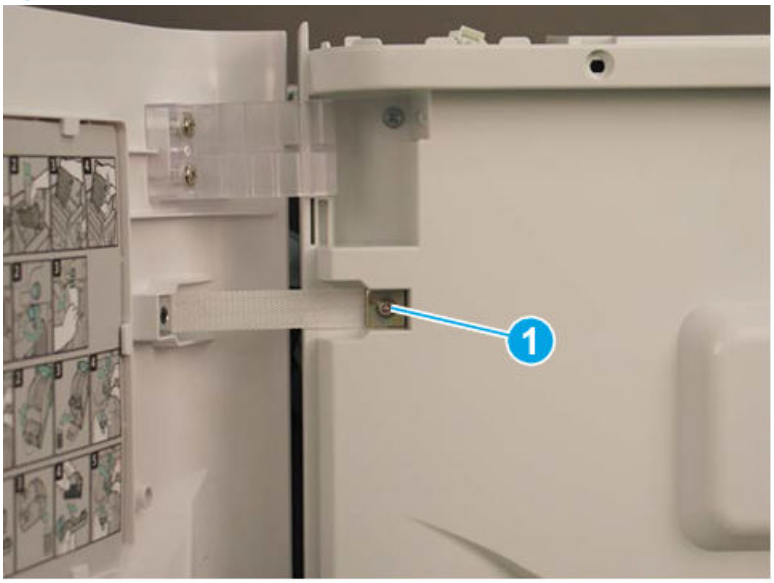
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-449 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-450 Remove the front door

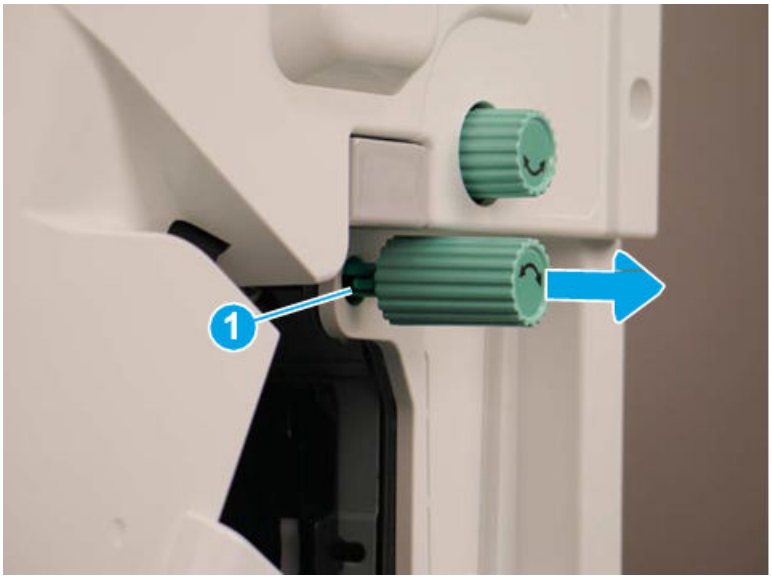


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-451 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

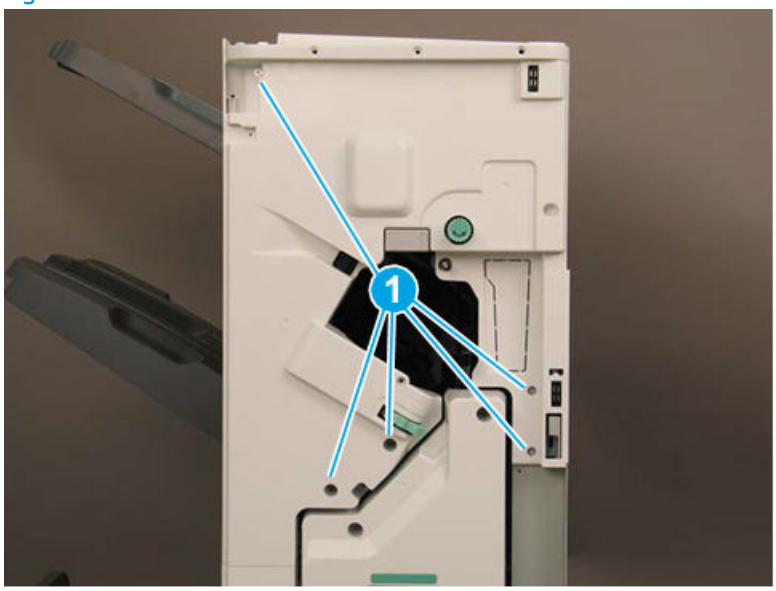
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-452 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-453 Remove the front cover

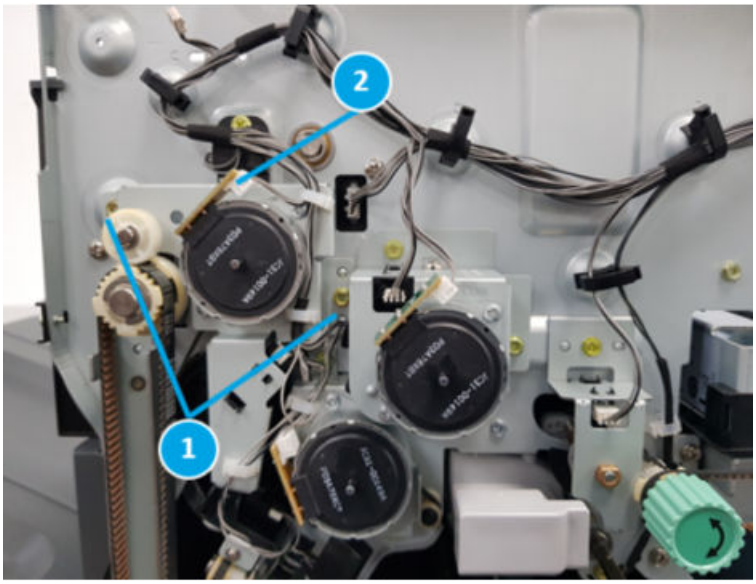


Remove the paddle home sensor (S8)

Follow these steps to remove the paddle home sensor (S8).

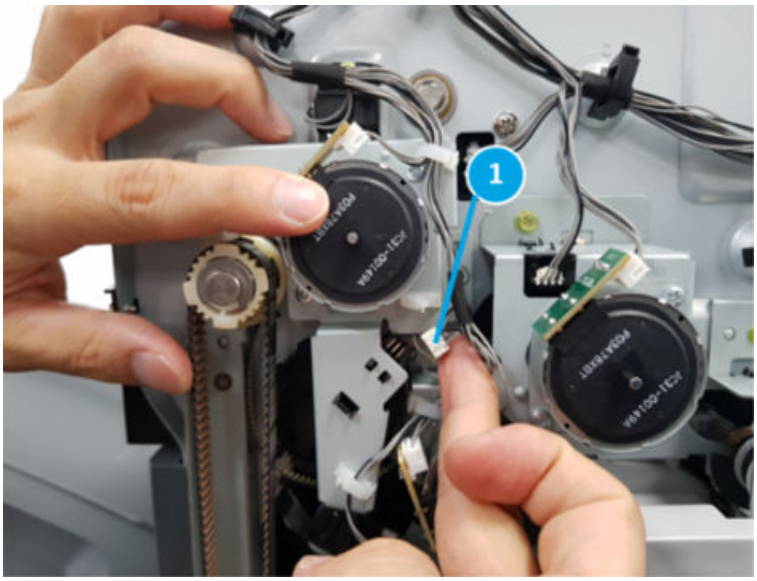
1. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1) and disconnect two connectors (callout 2)

Figure 5-454 Remove two screws and disconnect two connectors



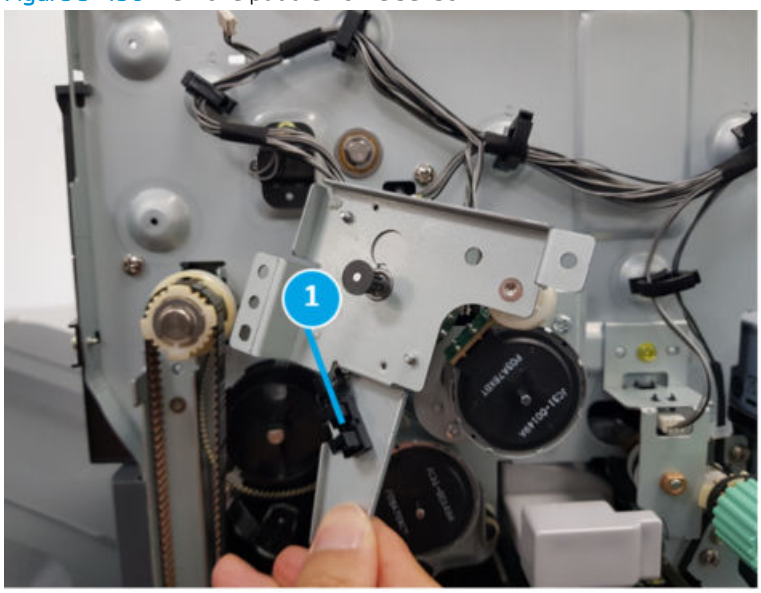
2. Disconnect connector from paddle home sensor

Figure 5-455 Disconnect connector from paddle home sensor



3. Remove paddle home sensor (S8; callout1)

Figure 5-456 Remove paddle home sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paddle motor (M1)

Learn how to remove and replace the paddle motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the paddle motor for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-110 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01461A	Paddle motor assembly
JC93-01001A	Paddle motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

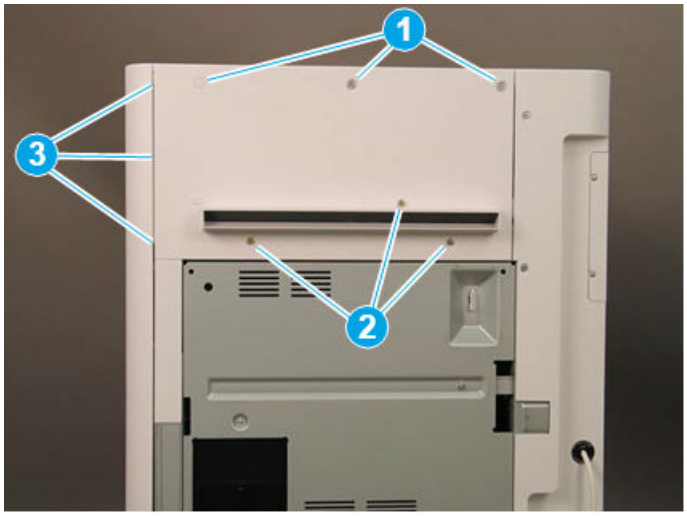
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-457 Remove the right upper cover

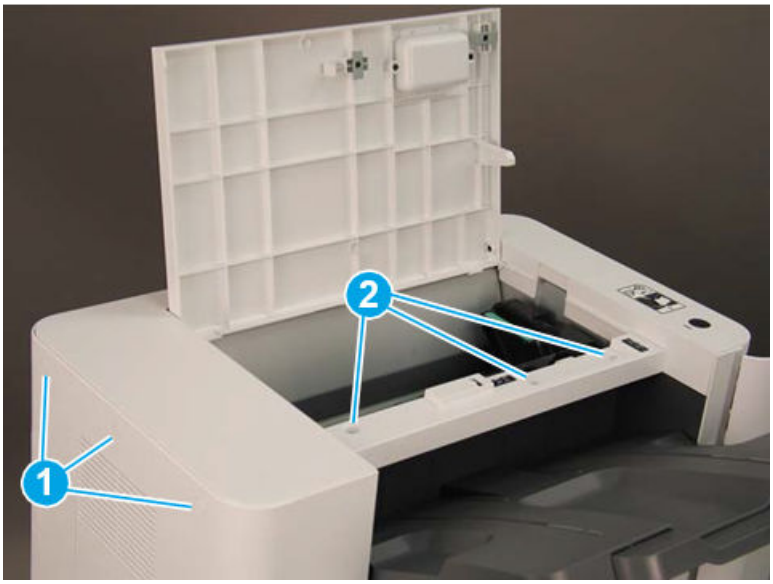


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

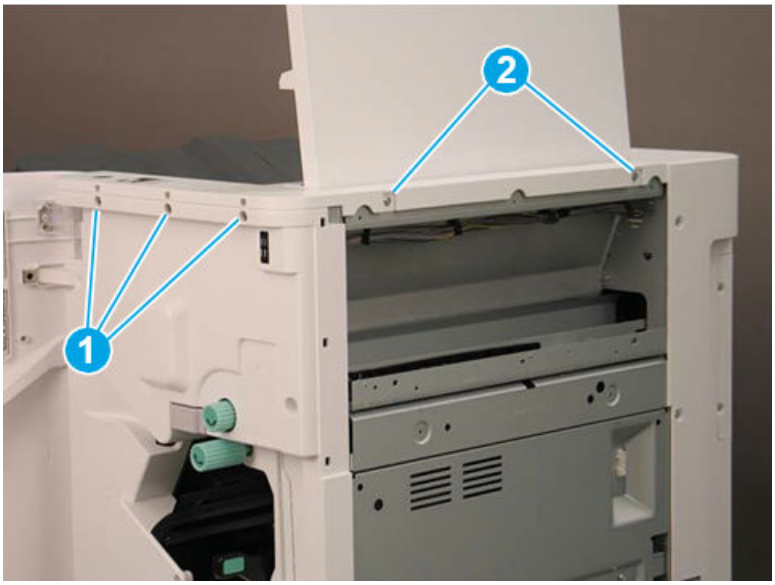
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-458 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

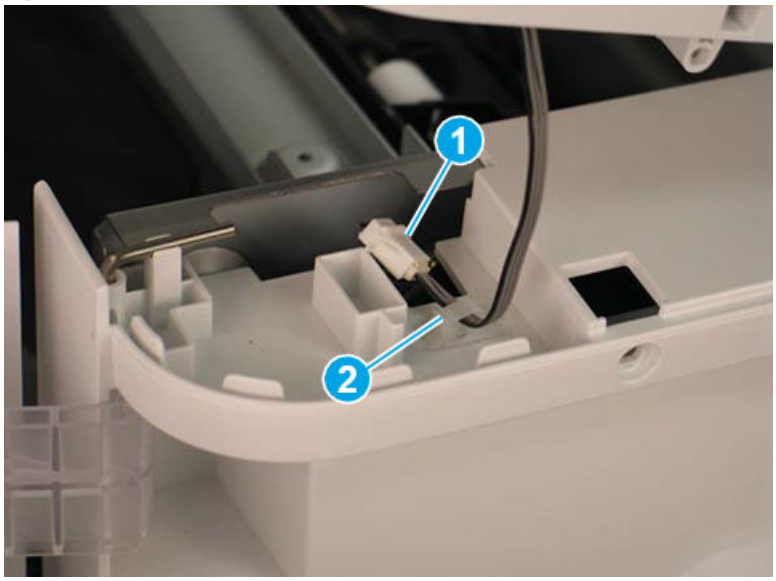
Figure 5-459 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-460 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

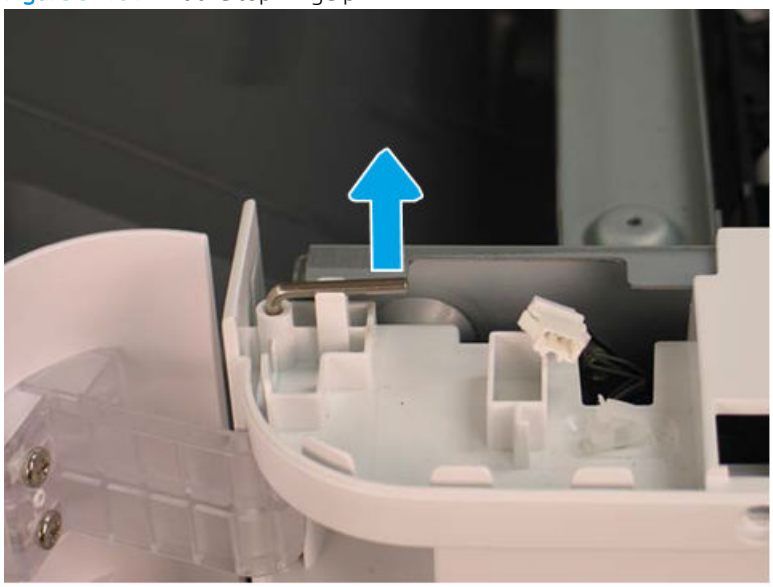


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

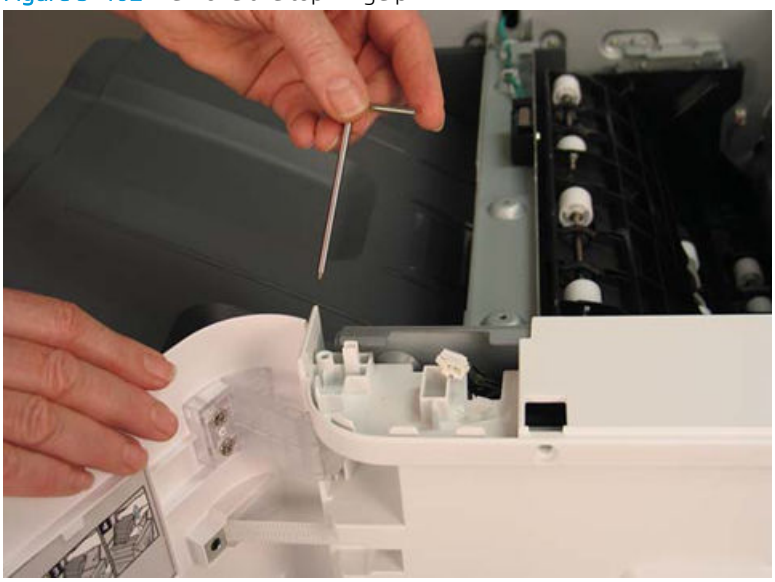
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-461 Lift the top hinge pin



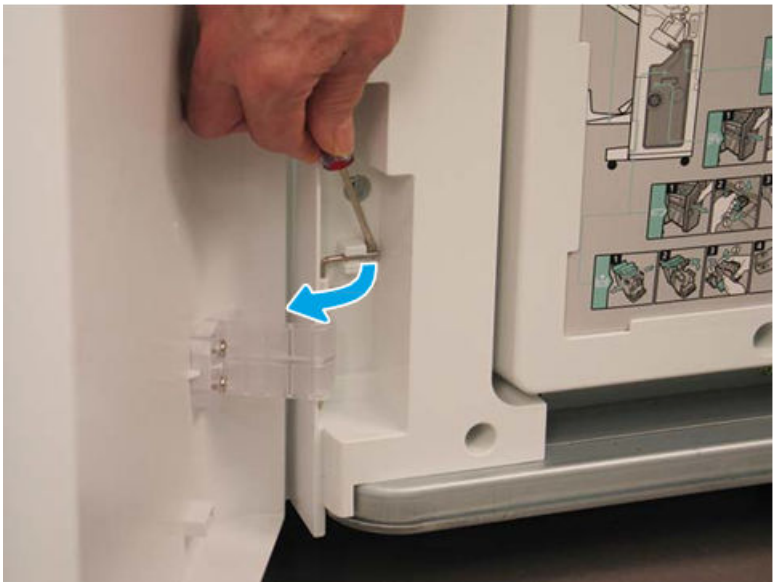
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-462 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-463 Release the lower hinge pin



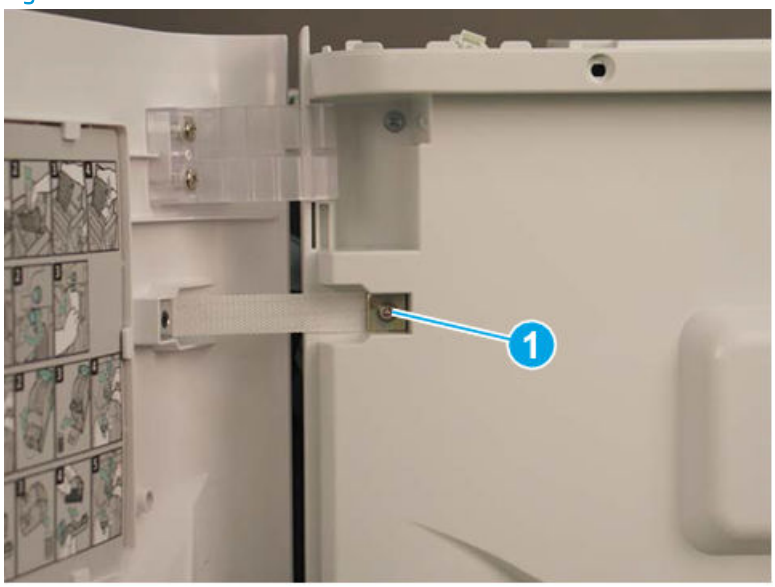
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-464 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-465 Remove the front door

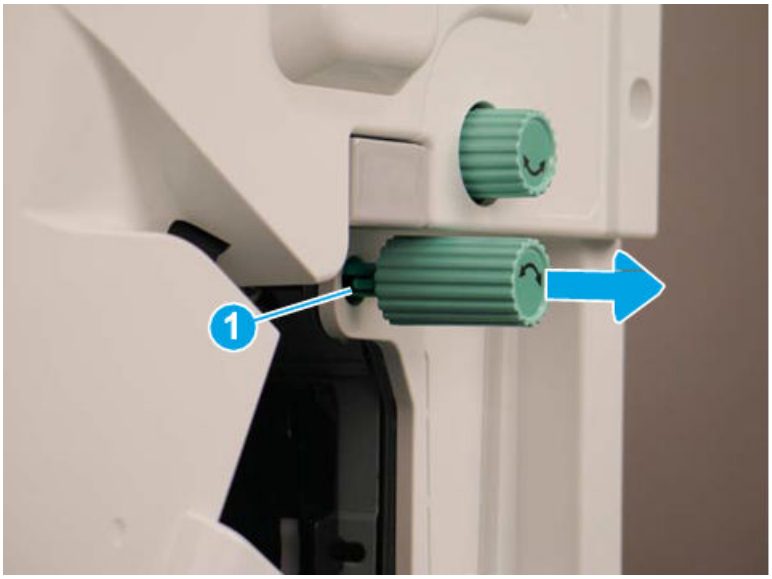


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

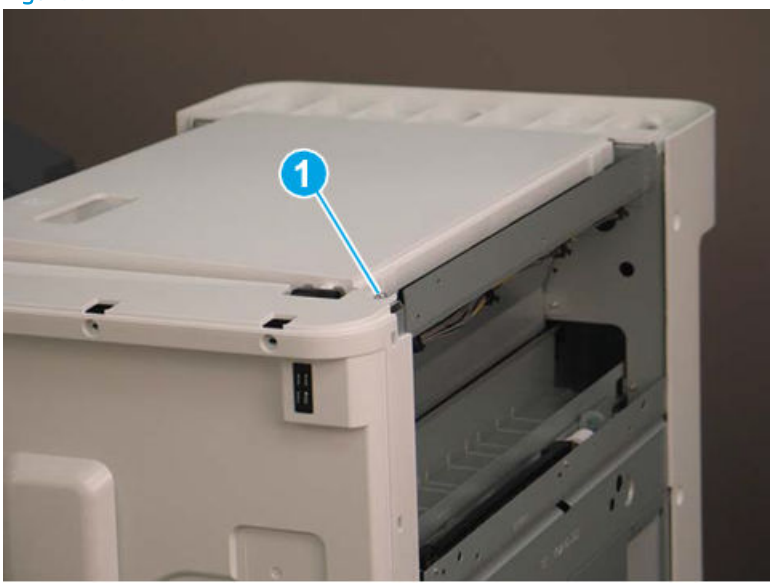
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-466 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

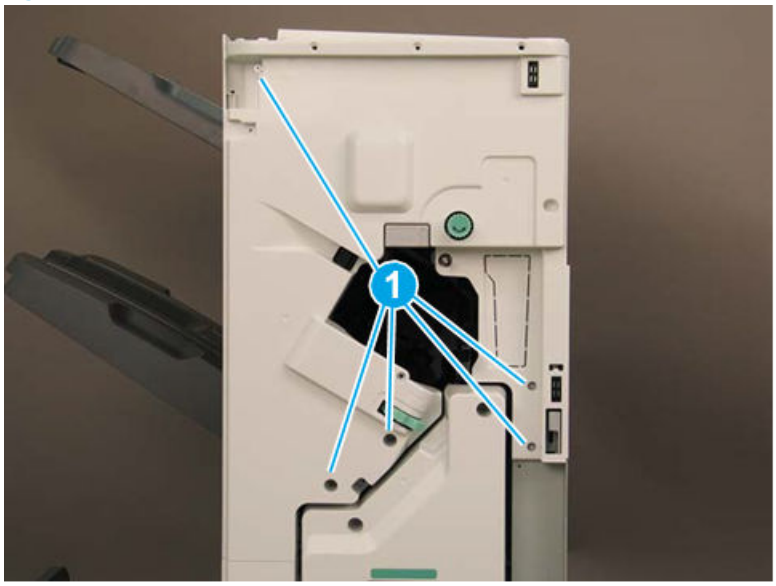
Figure 5-467 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-468 Remove the front cover

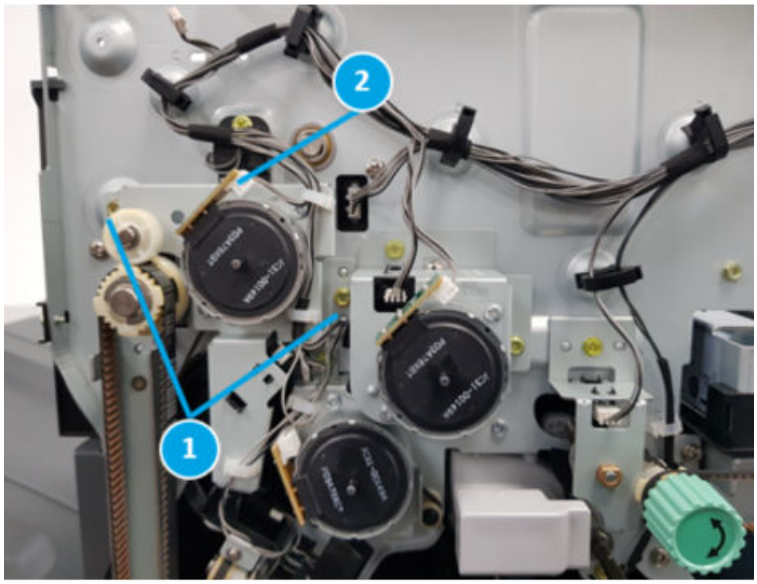


Remove the paddle motor (M1)

Follow these steps to remove the paddle motor (M1).

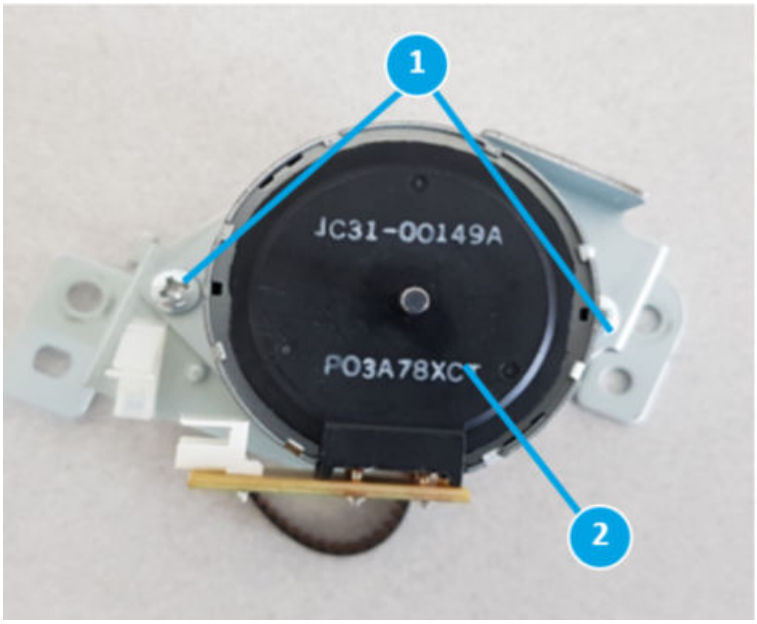
1. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1) and disconnect two connectors (callout 2)

Figure 5-469 Remove two screws and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove two screws (callout 1) and then remove paddle motor (M1; callout 2)

Figure 5-470 Remove the paddle motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

End fence unit

Removal and replacement: End fence home sensor (S7)

Learn how to remove and replace the end fence home sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the end fence home sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-111 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	End fence home sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

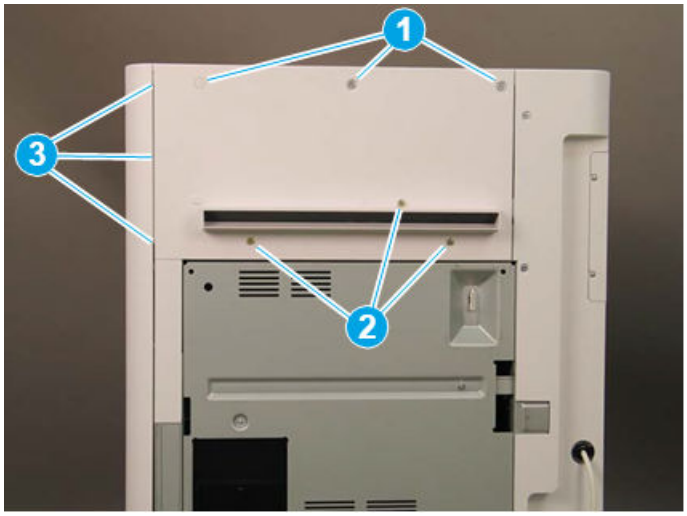
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-471 Remove the right upper cover

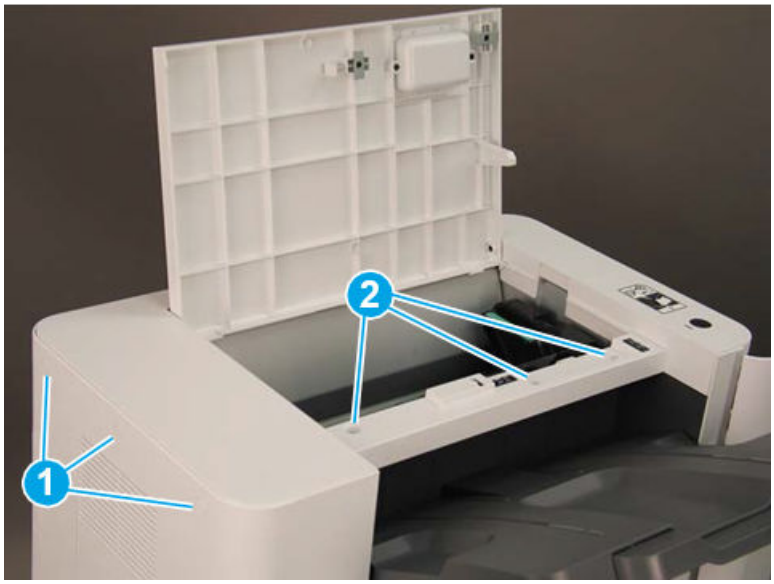


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

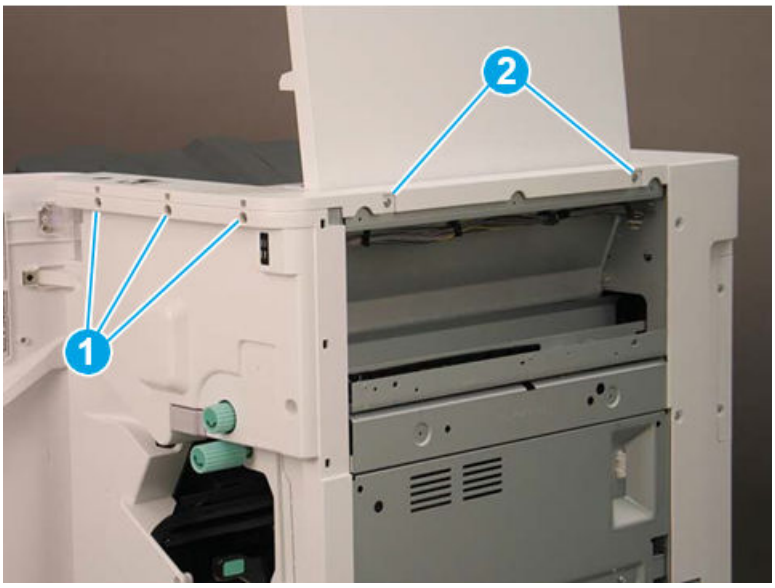
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-472 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

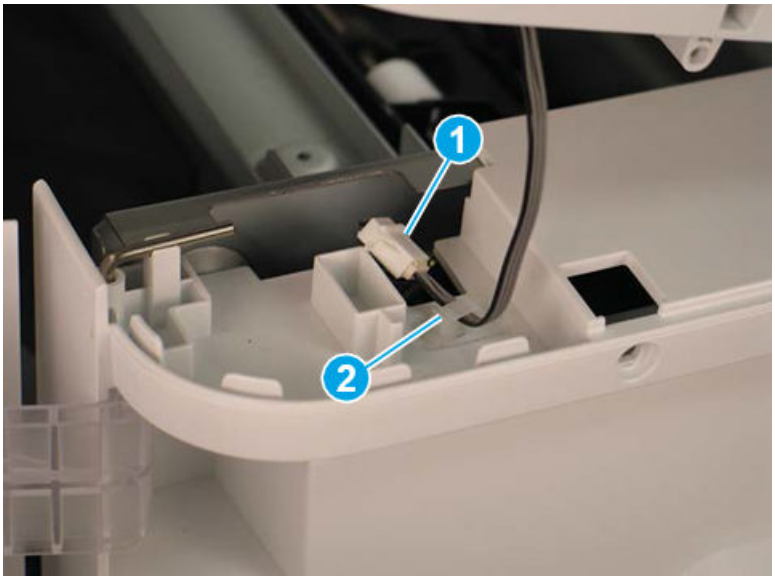
Figure 5-473 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-474 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

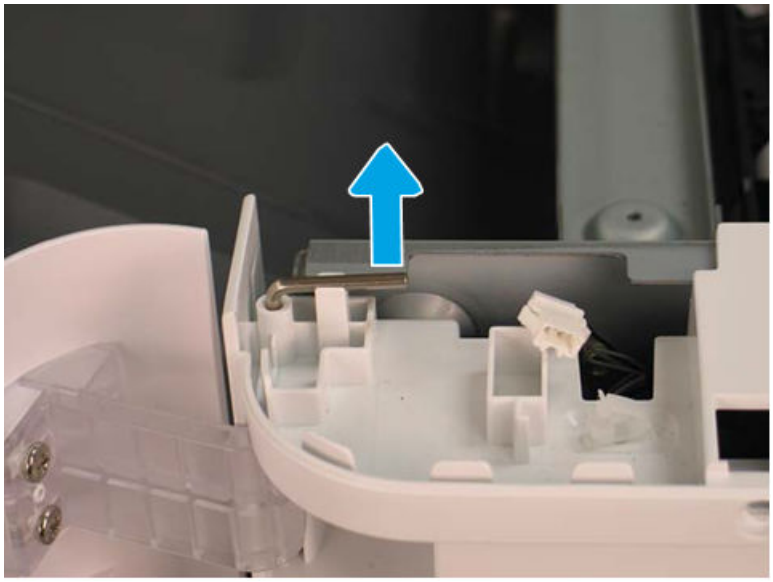


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

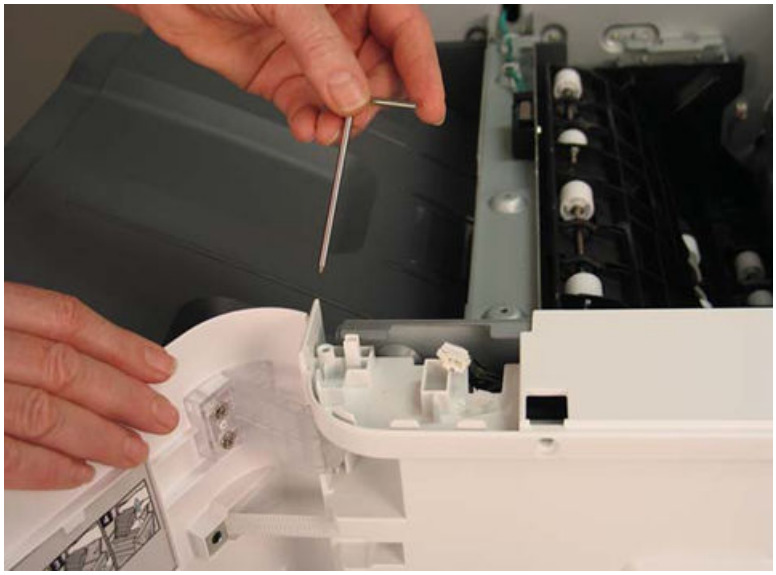
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-475 Lift the top hinge pin



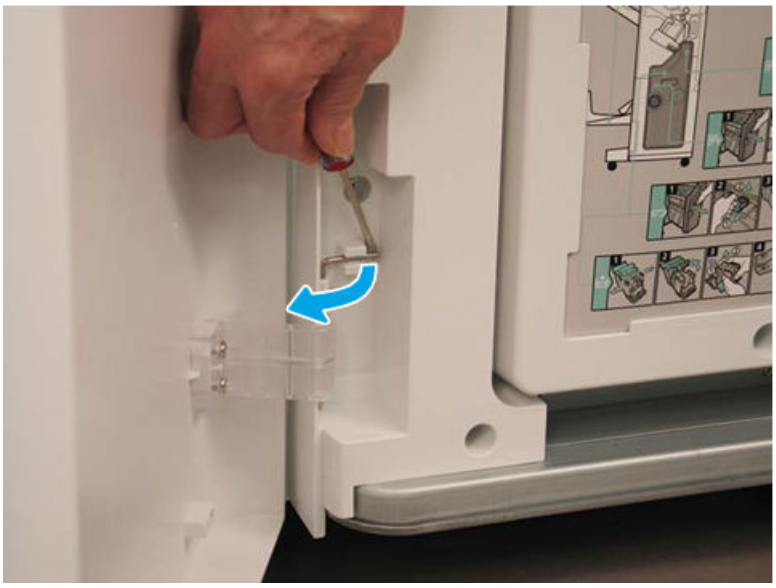
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-476 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-477 Release the lower hinge pin



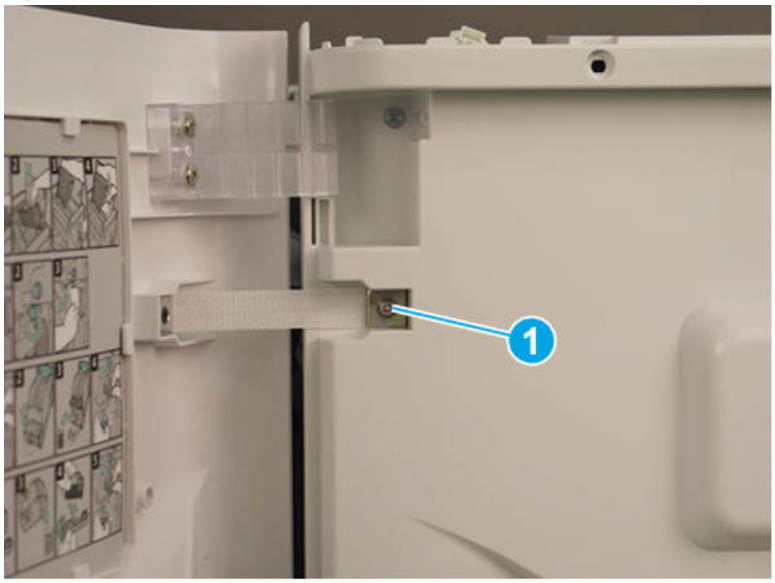
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-478 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-479 Remove the front door

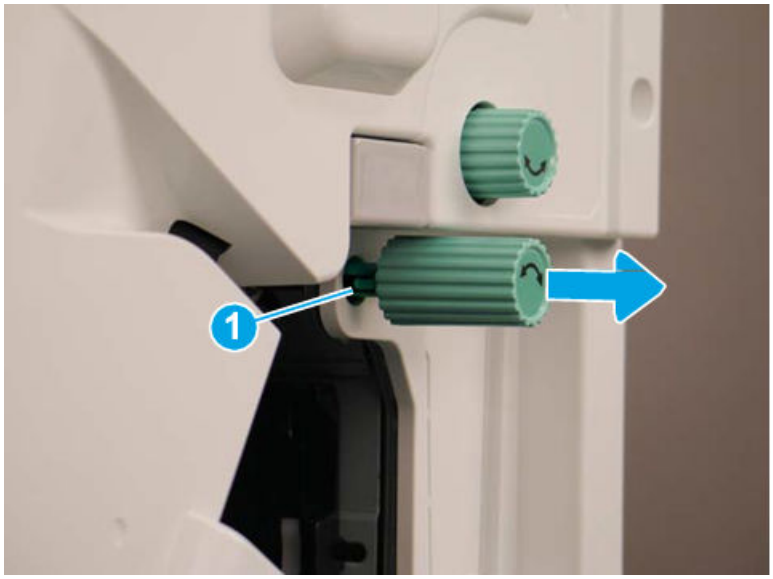


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-480 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

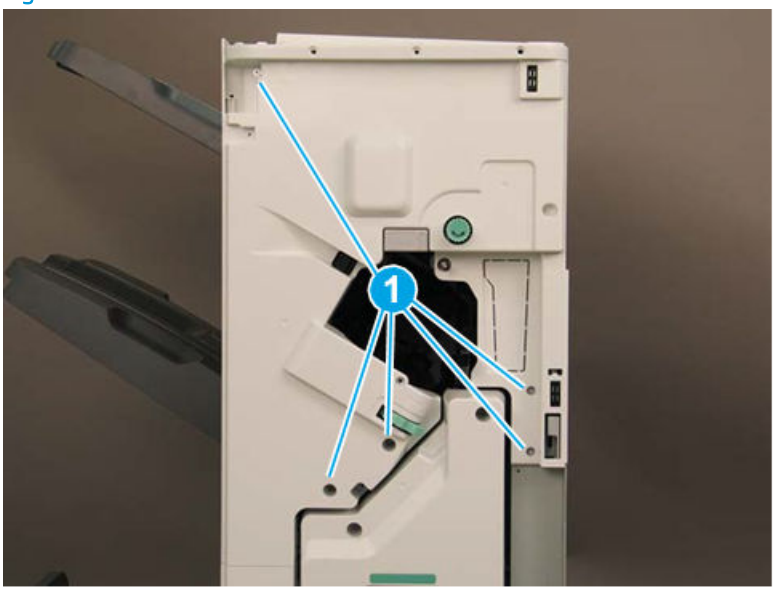
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-481 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-482 Remove the front cover

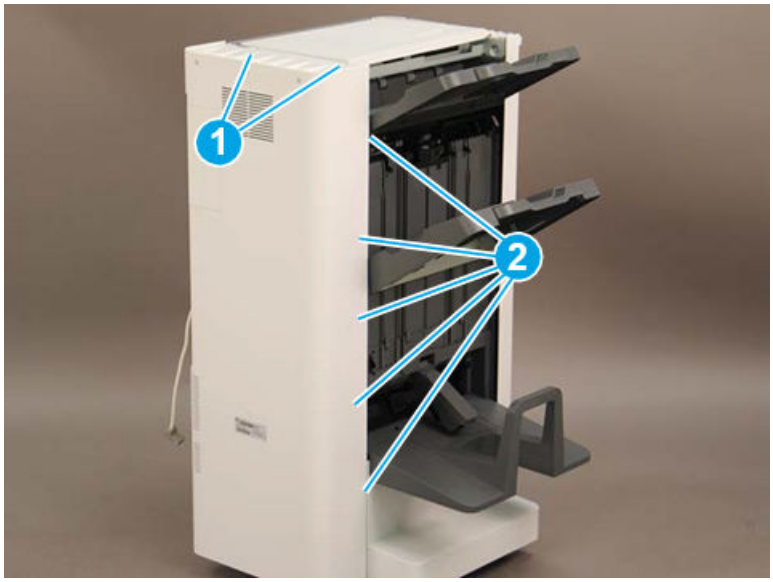


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-483 Remove seven screws

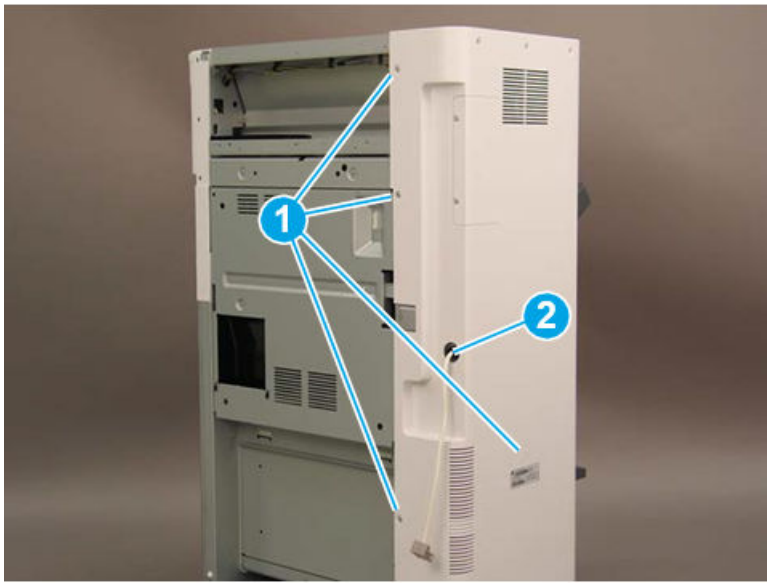


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-484 Remove the rear cover

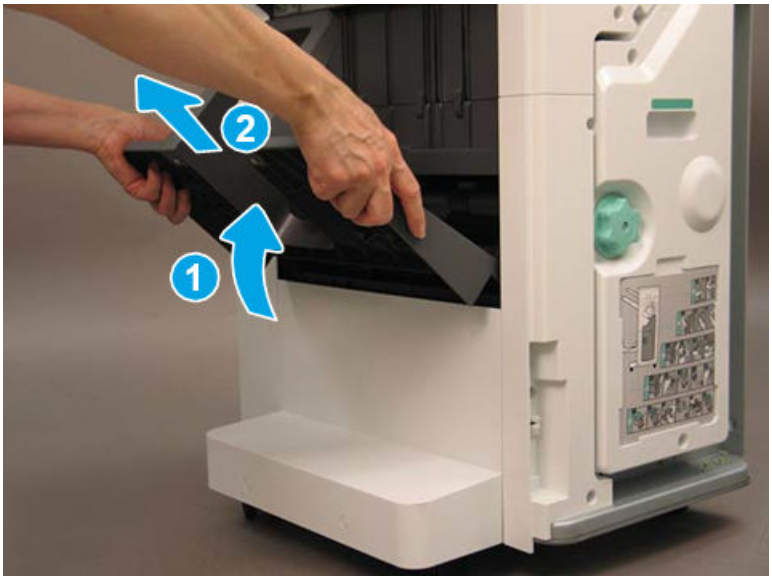


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-485 Remove the booklet output tray



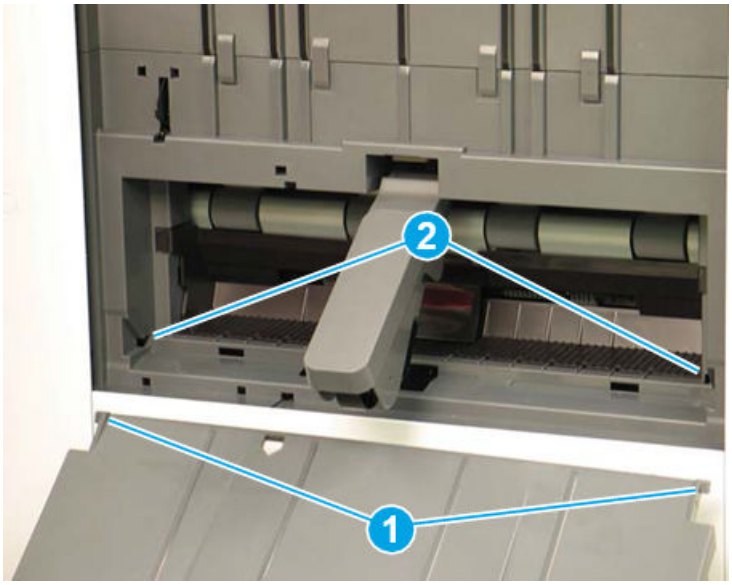
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-486 Install the booklet output tray

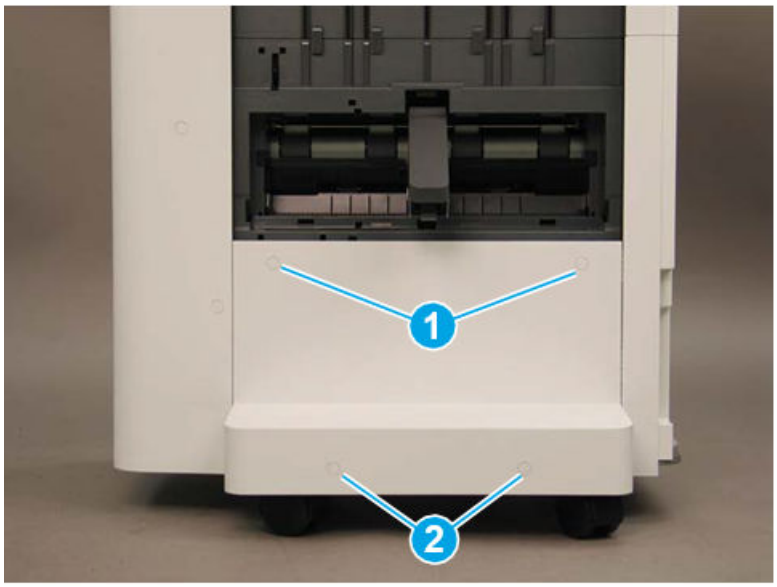


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-487 Remove four screws

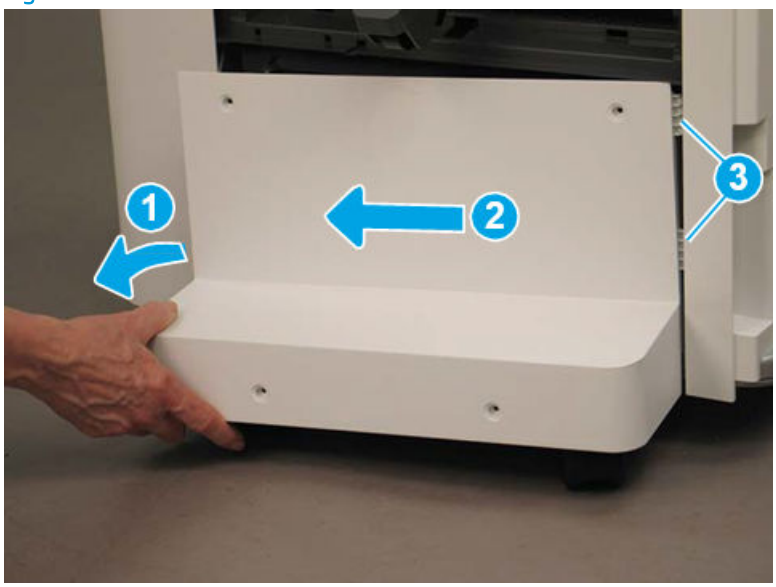


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-488 Remove the caster cover



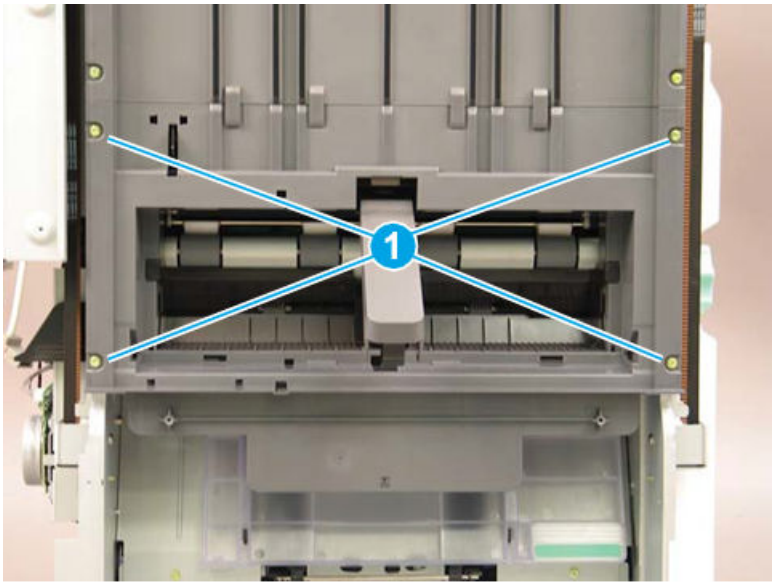
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-489 Remove four screws

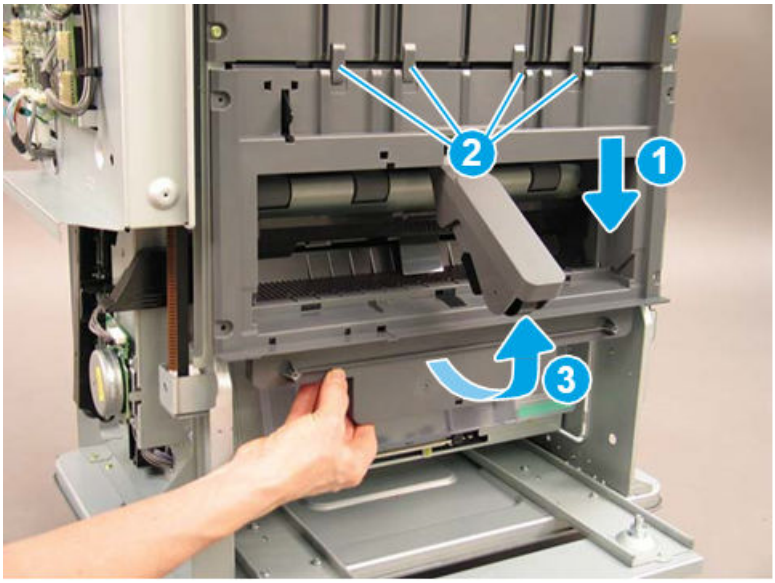


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

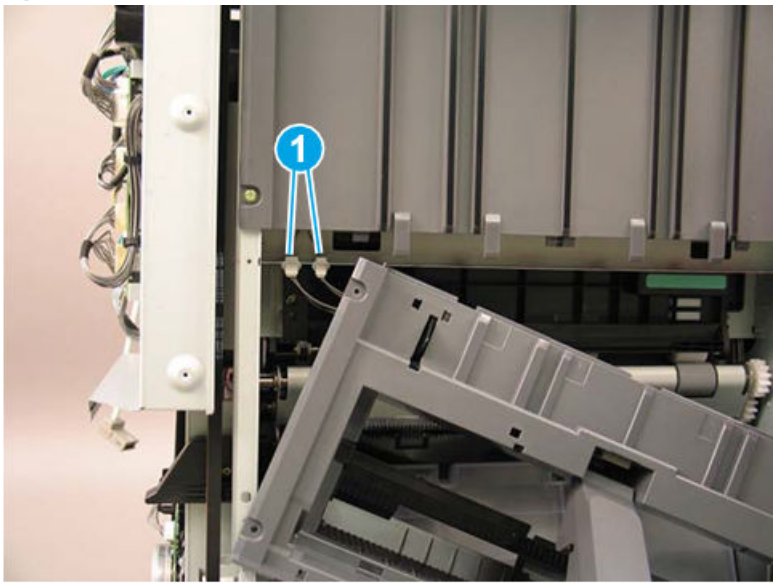
Figure 5-490 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

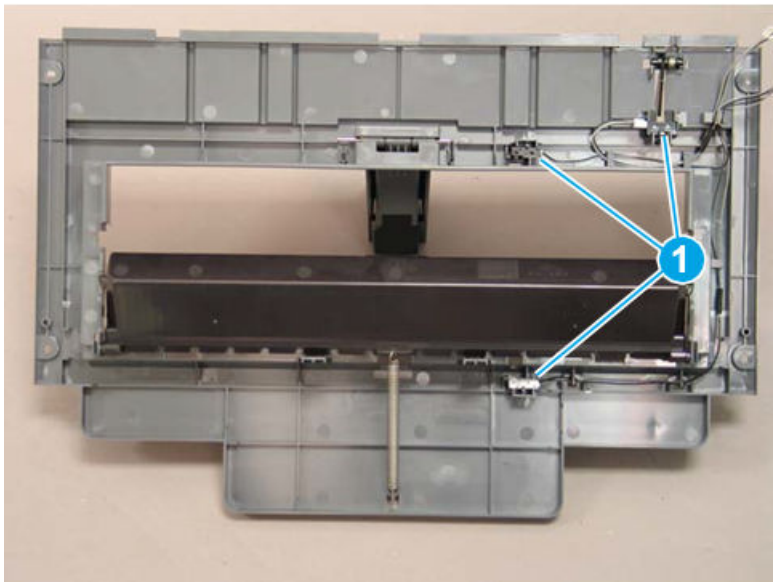
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-491 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-492 Remove the left lower cover

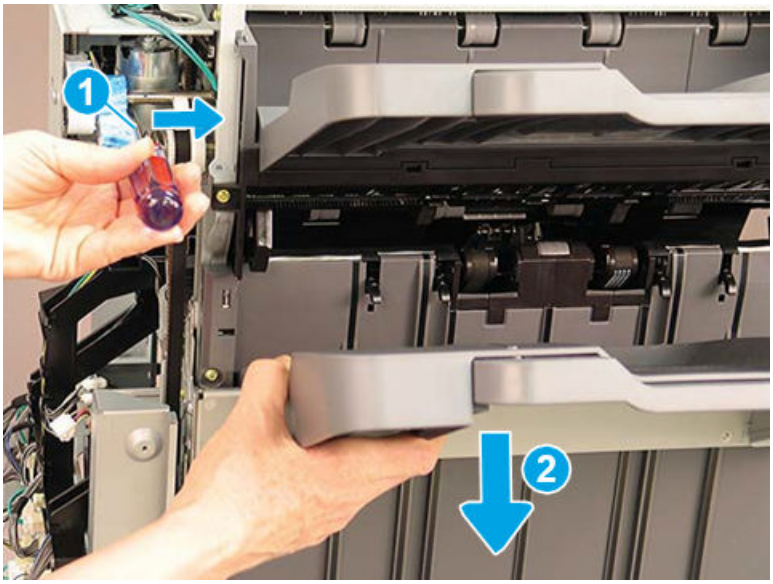


Remove the left upper cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover (finisher).

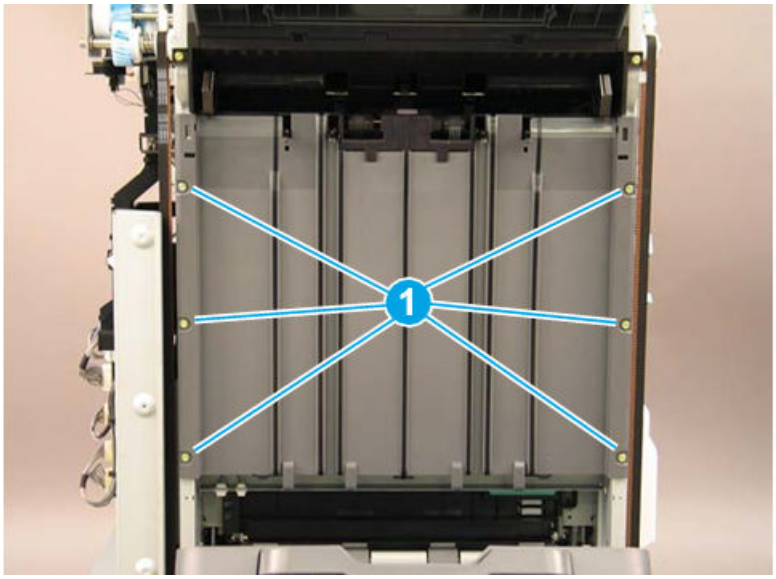
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 5-493 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-494 Remove six screws

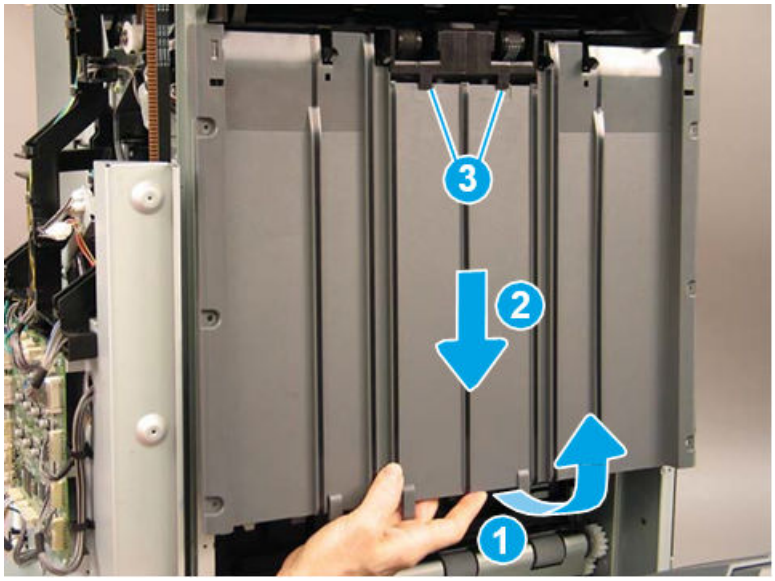


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away fromthe finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

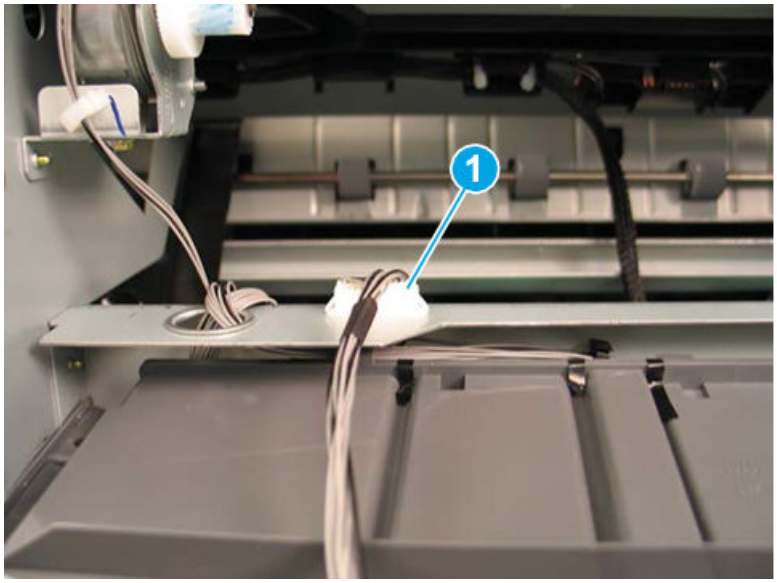
Figure 5-495 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

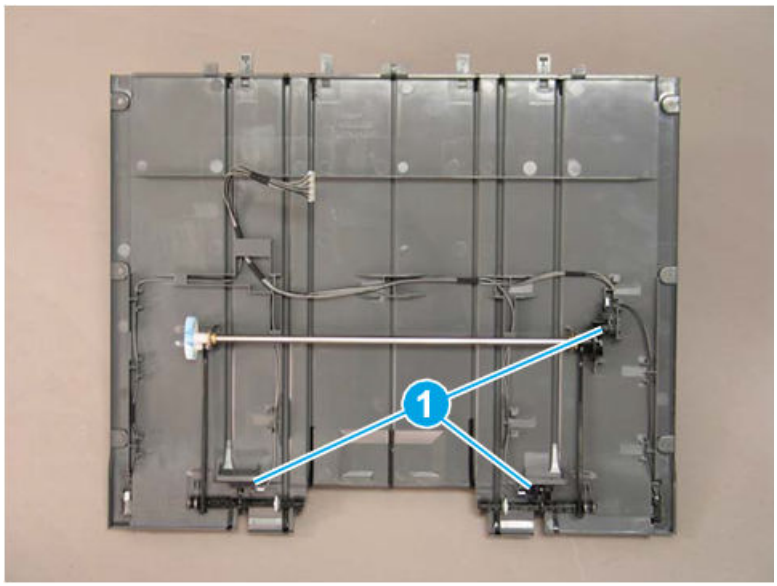
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-496 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the left upper cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left upper cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-497 Remove the left upper cover

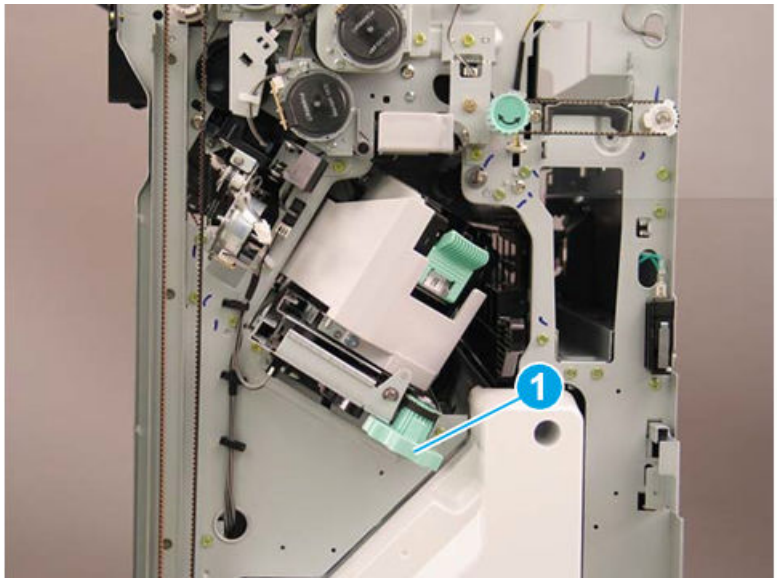


Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the ejector unit (finisher).

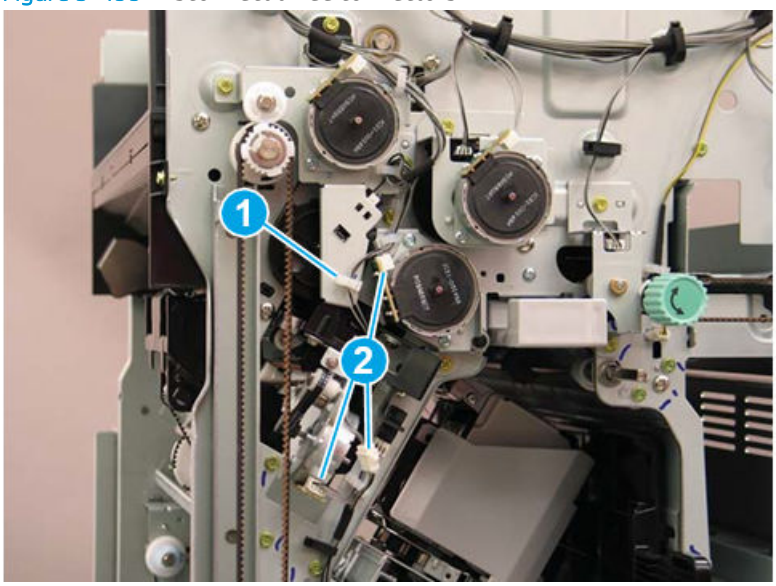
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 5-498 Move the staple unit to the center



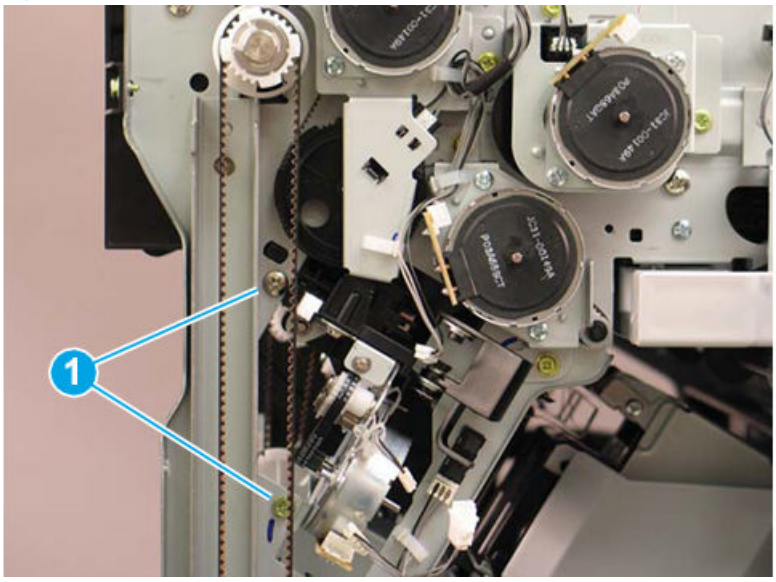
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 5-499 Disconnect three connectors



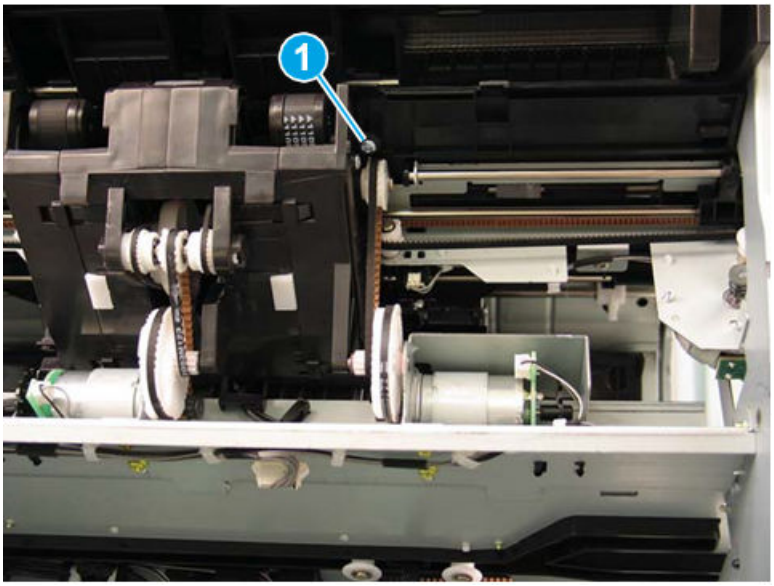
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-500 Remove two screws



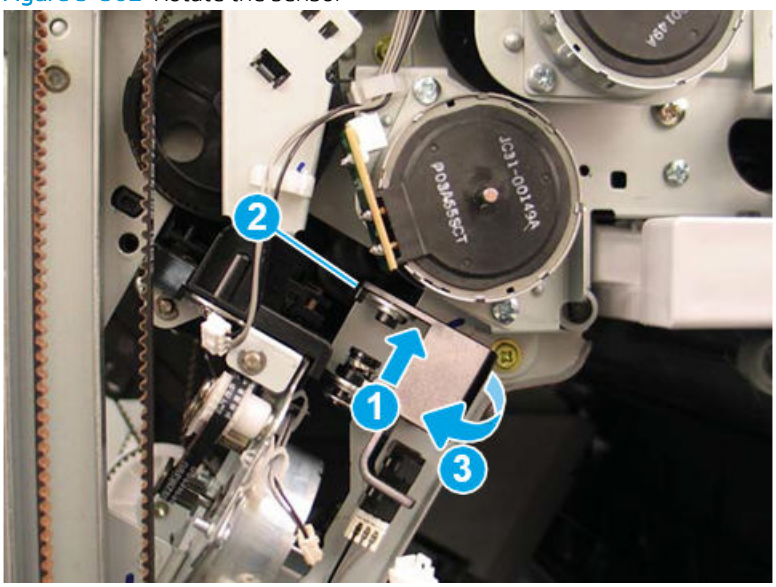
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-501 Remove one screw



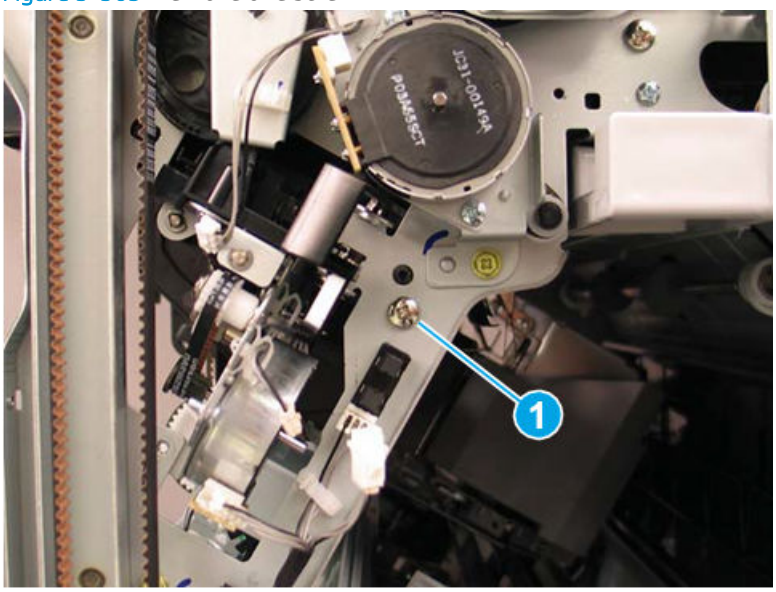
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 5-502 Rotate the sensor



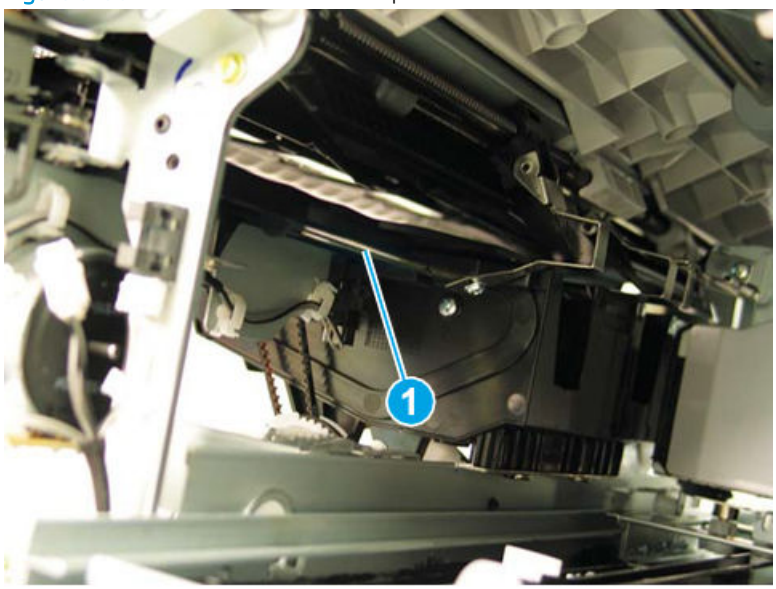
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-503 Remove one screw



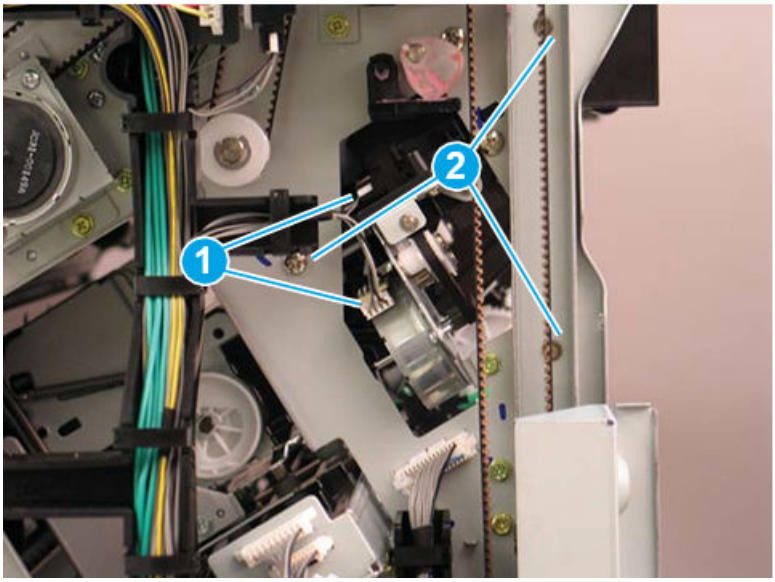
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 5-504 Remove the front tamper shaft



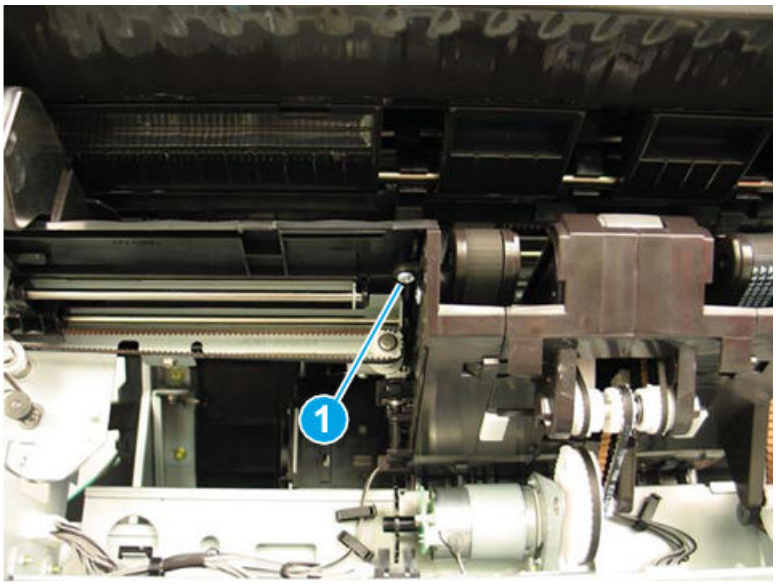
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-505 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



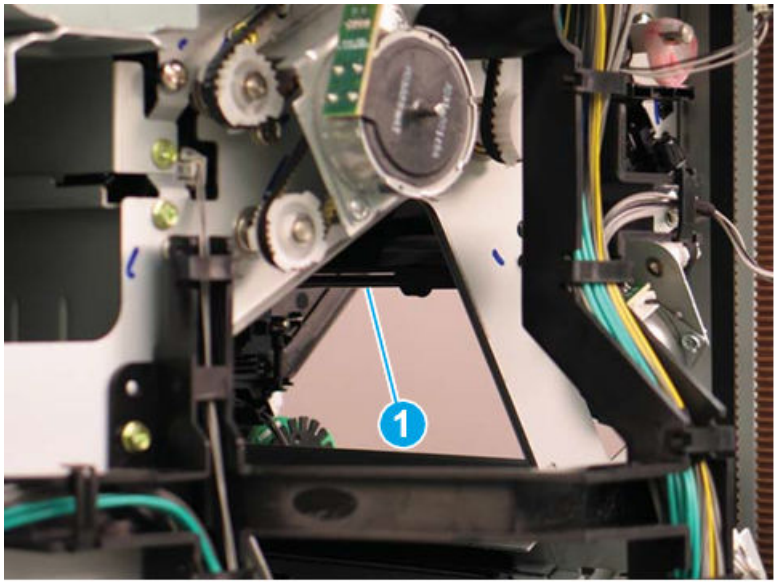
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-506 Remove one screw



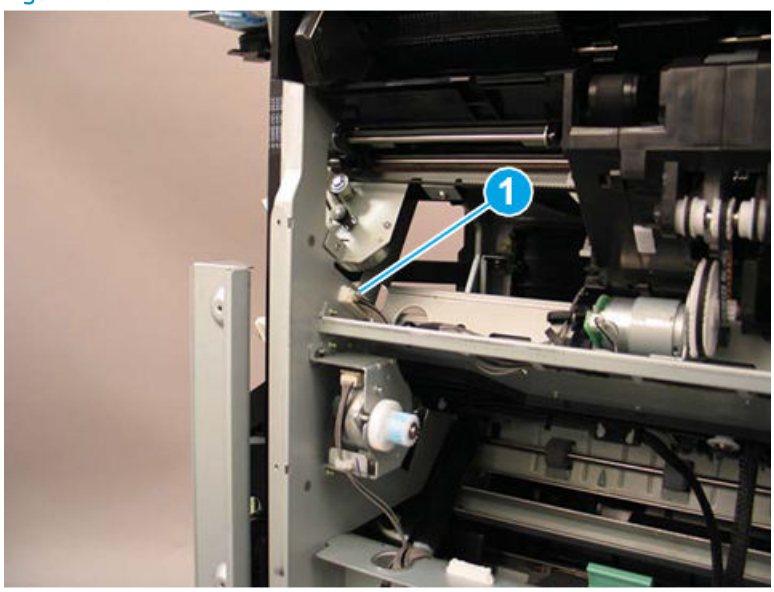
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 5-507 Remove the rear tamper shaft



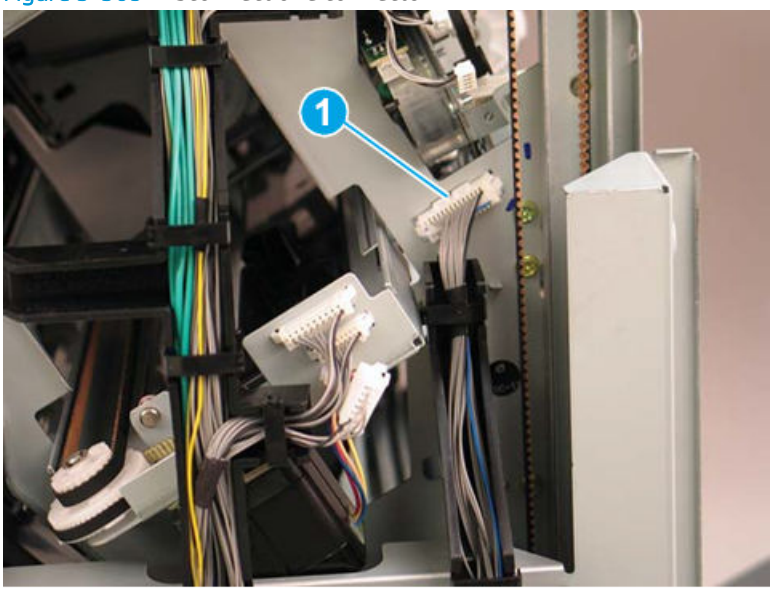
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-508 Disconnect one connector



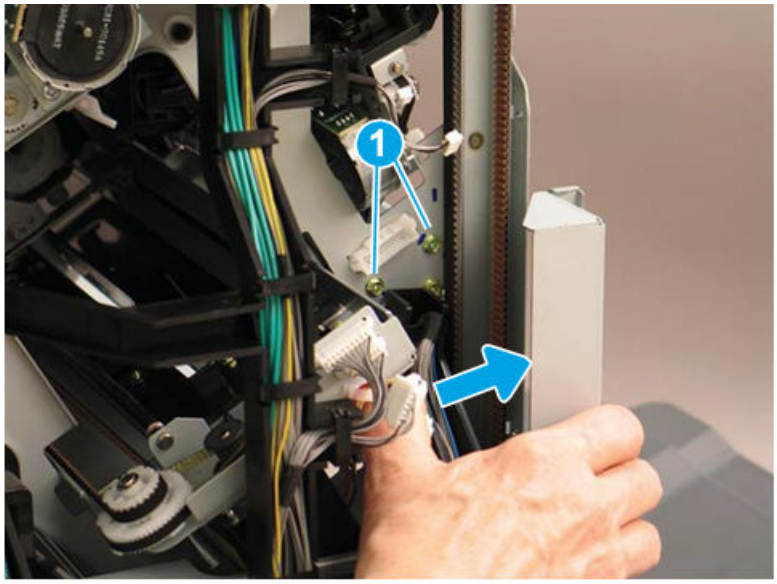
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-509 Disconnect one connector



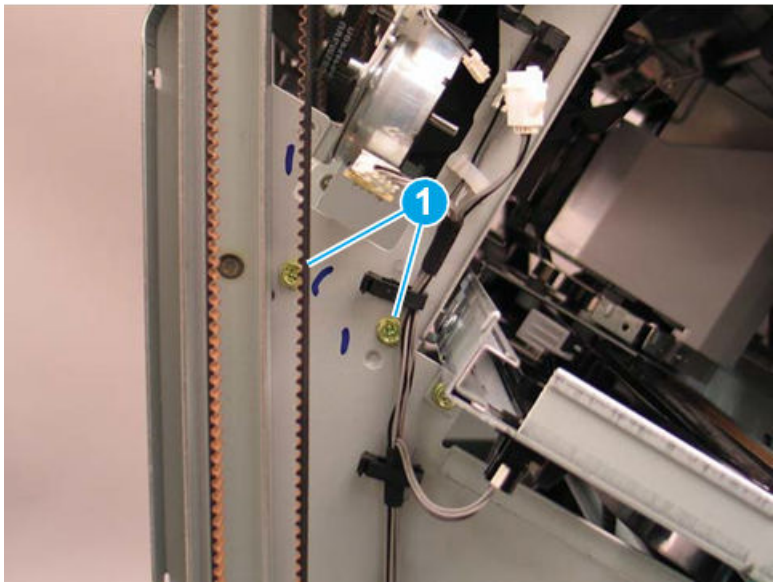
13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-510 Disconnect one connector



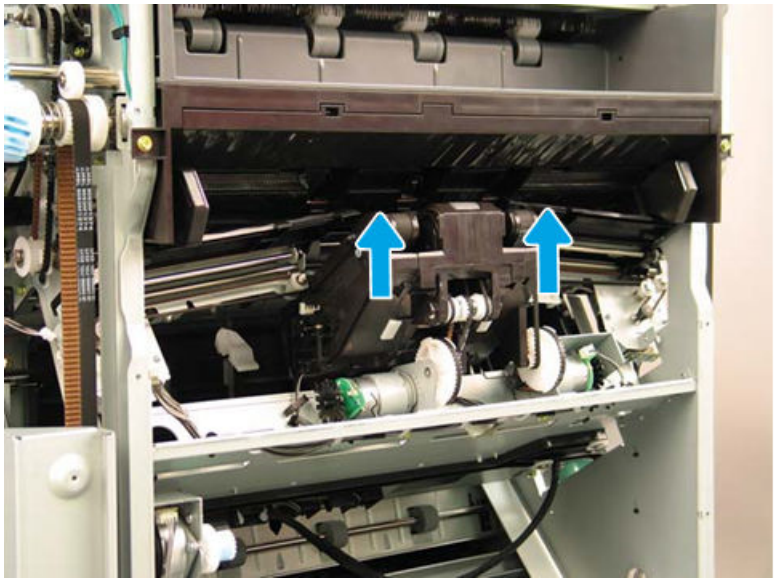
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-511 Remove two screws



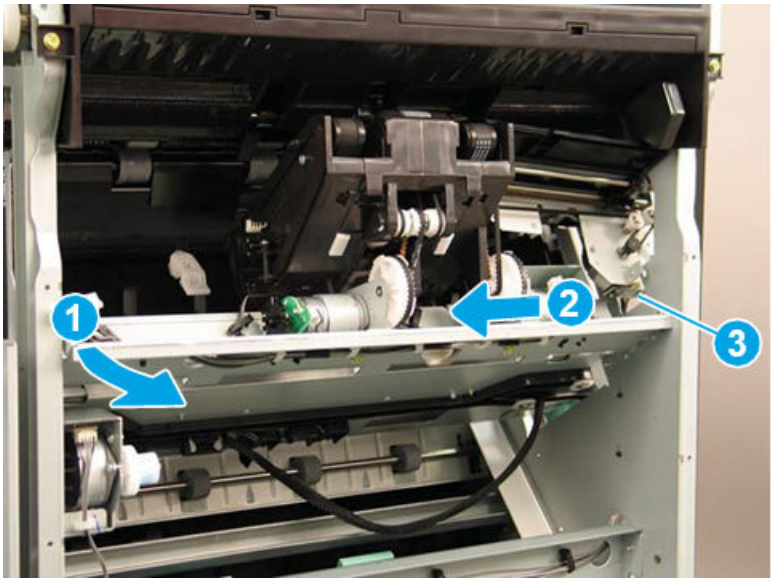
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 5-512 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 5-513 Remove the ejector unit

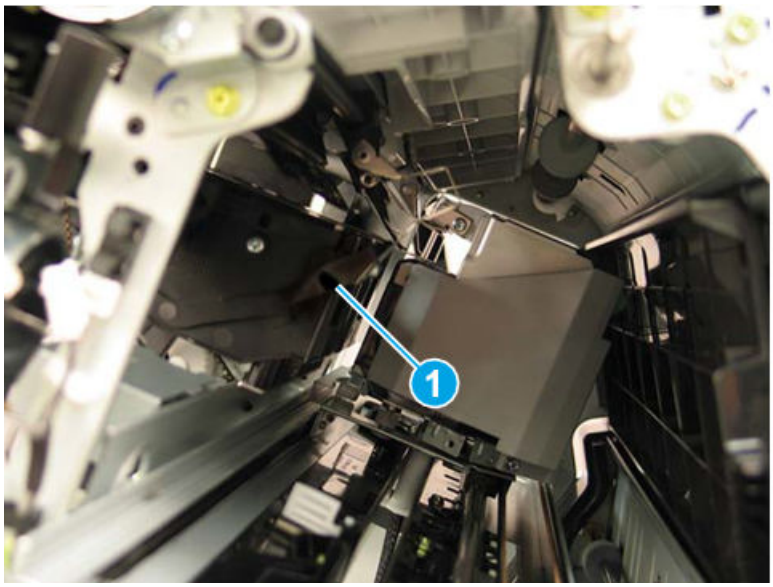


17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

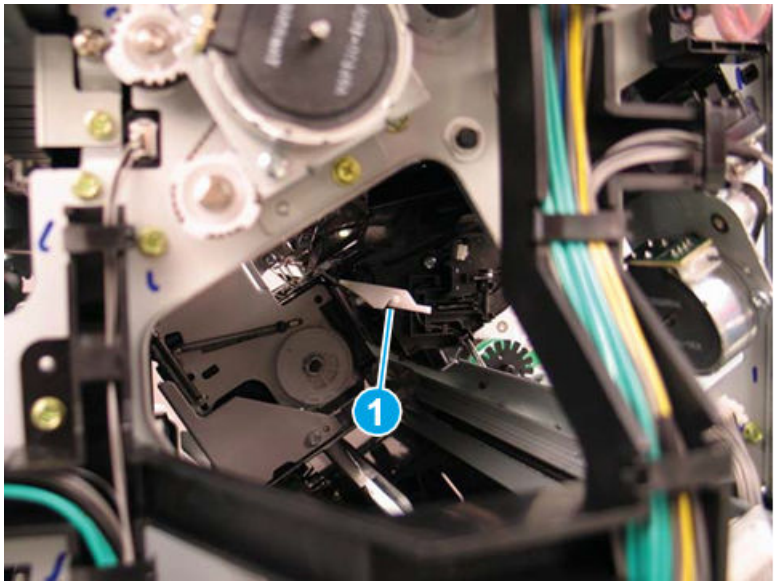
NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

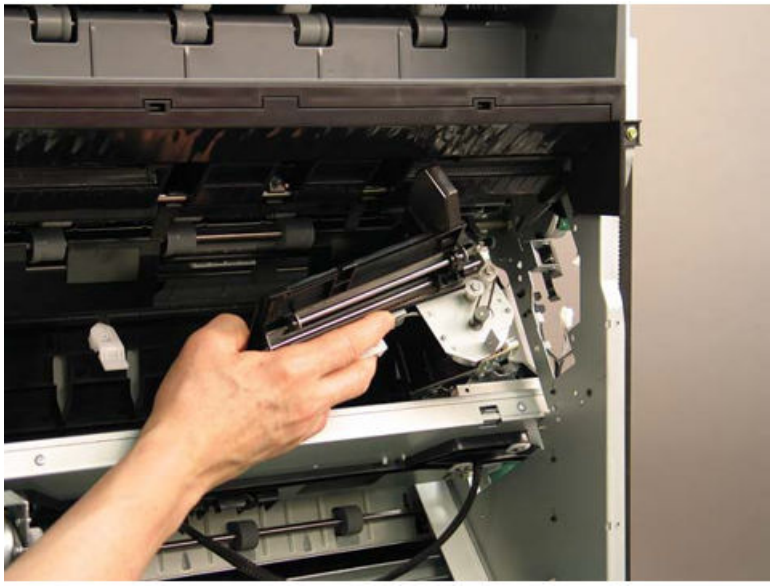


Remove the front tamper unit

Follow these steps to remove the front tamper unit.

▲ Lift the front tamper away from the finisher to remove it

Figure 5-514 Remove the front tamper

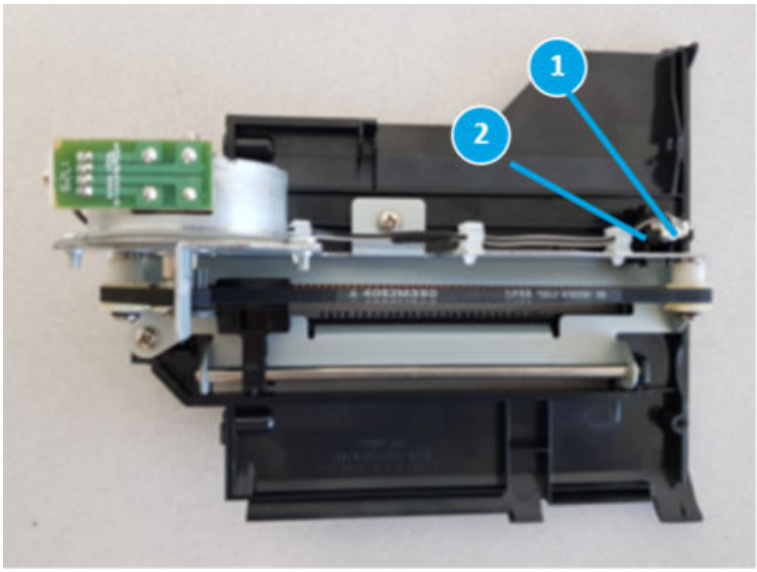


Remove the end of fence home sensor(S7)

Follow these steps to remove the end of fence home sensor(S7).

▲ At the front tamper, disconnect the connector(callout 1) and remove end fence home sensor(S7, callout 2)

Figure 5-515 Remove end fence home sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HP LaserJet Managed MFP E82540-E82560, E87640-E87660, E82540du-E82560du, E87640du-E87660du, E72525-E72535, E77822-E77830 - Removal and replacement: End fence motor (M3)

Learn how to remove and replace the end fence motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the end fence motor for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-112 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01467A	End fence motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

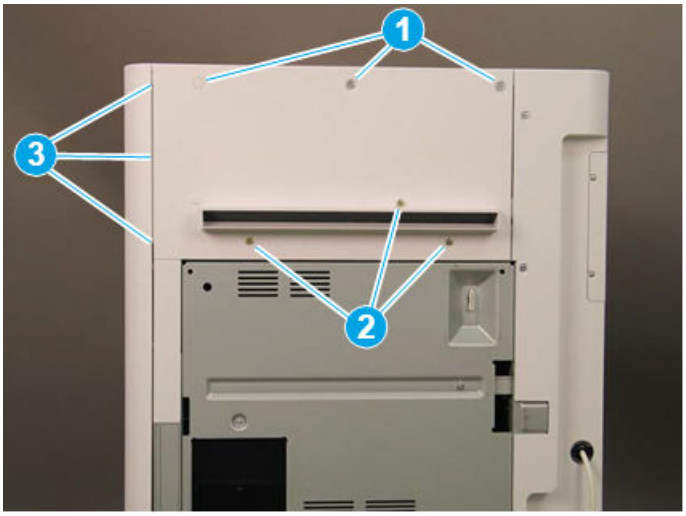
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-516 Remove the right upper cover

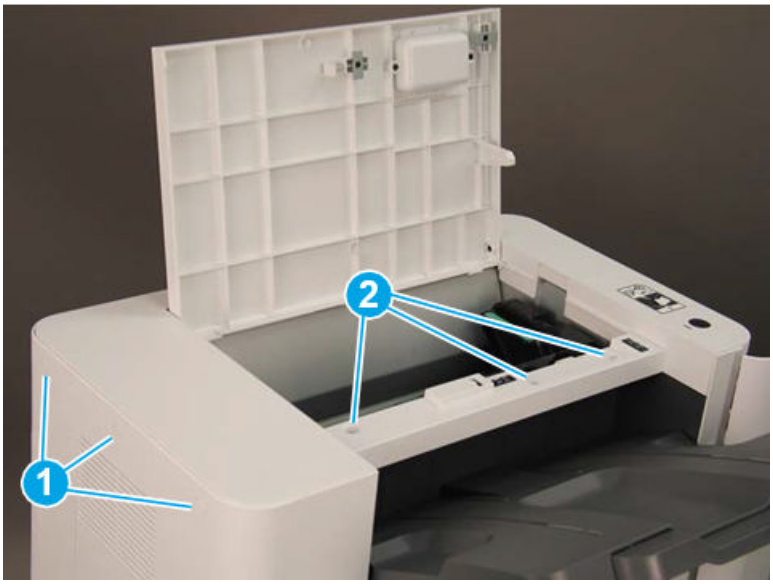


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

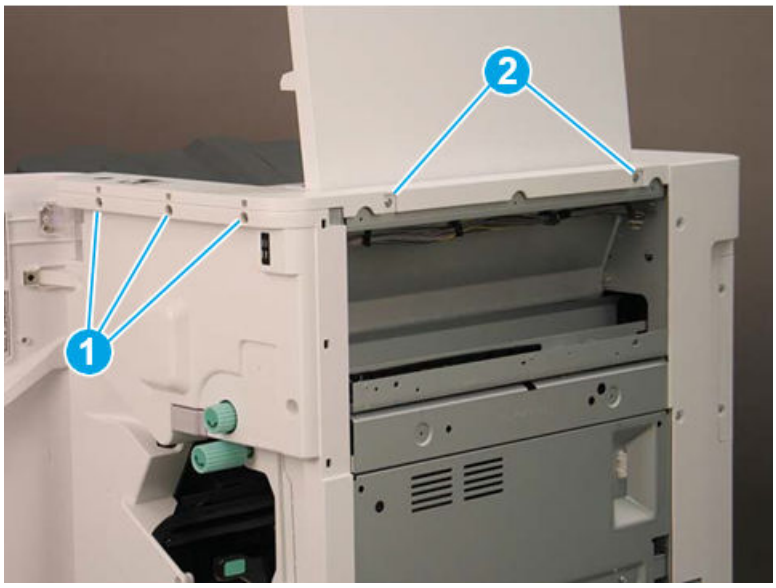
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-517 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

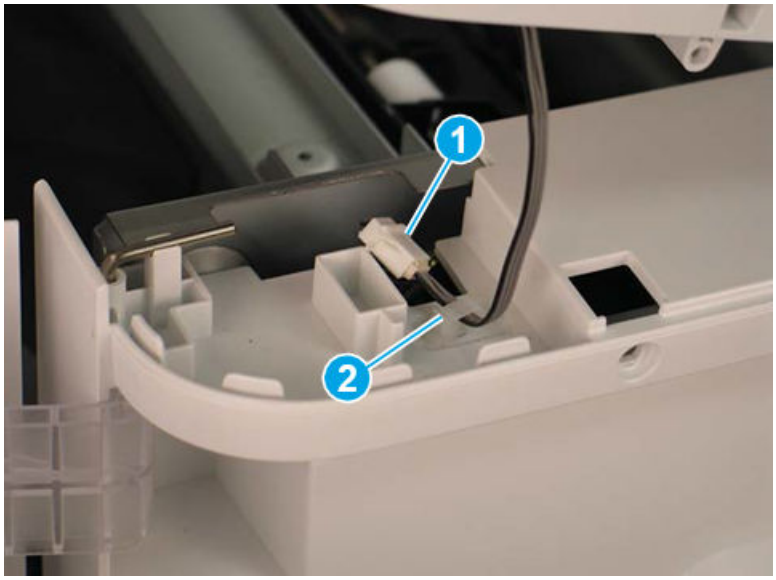
Figure 5-518 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-519 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

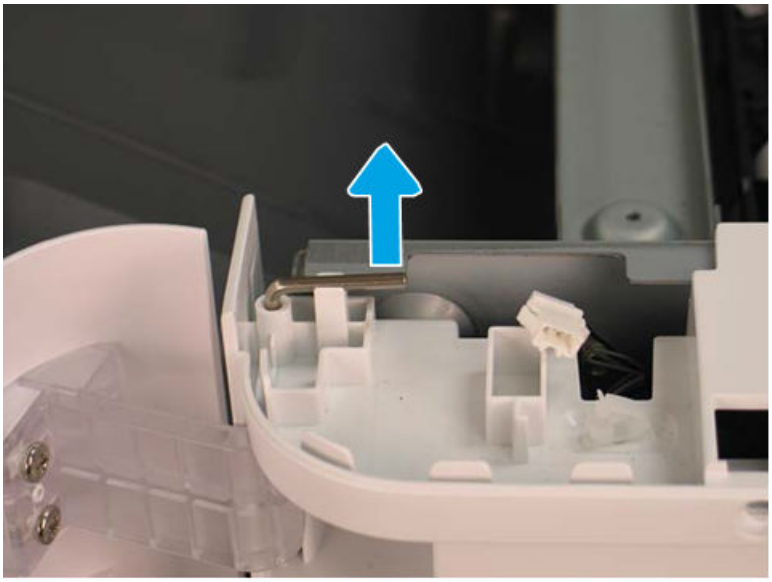


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

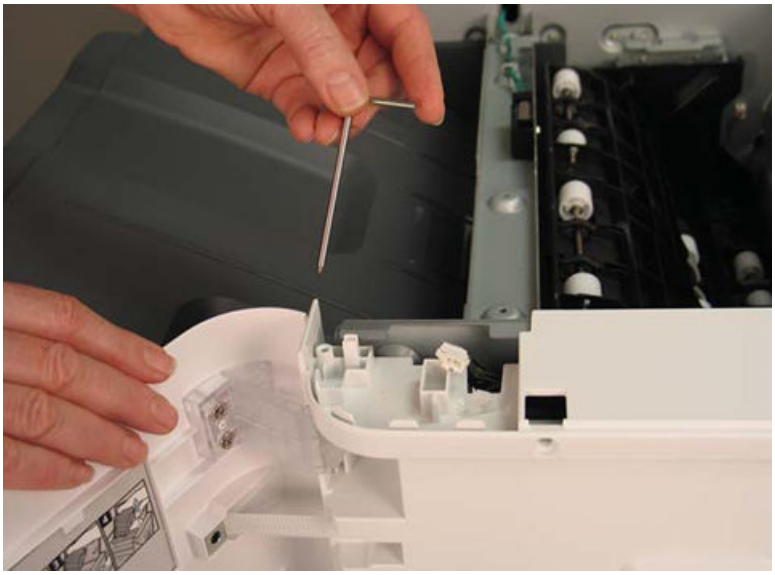
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-520 Lift the top hinge pin



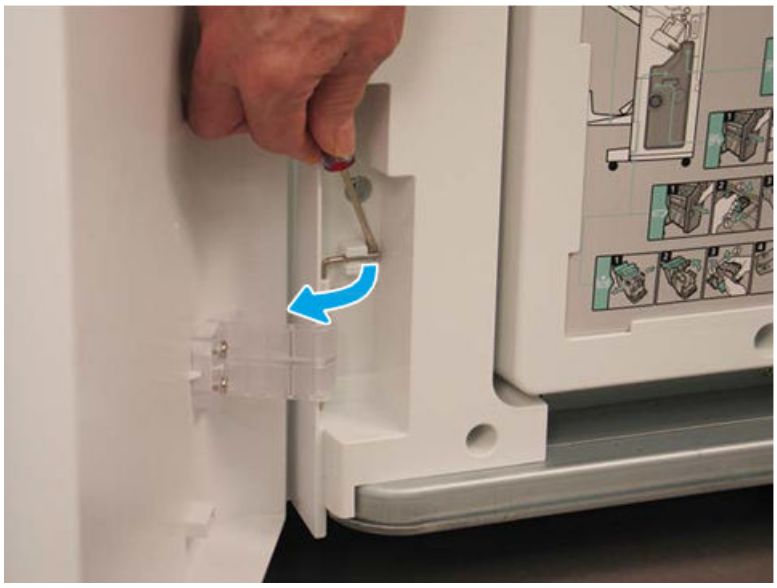
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-521 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-522 Release the lower hinge pin



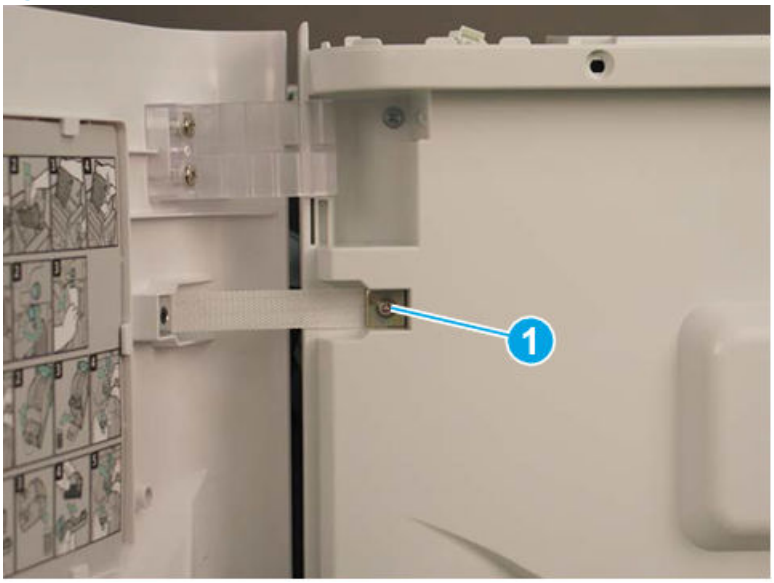
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-523 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-524 Remove the front door

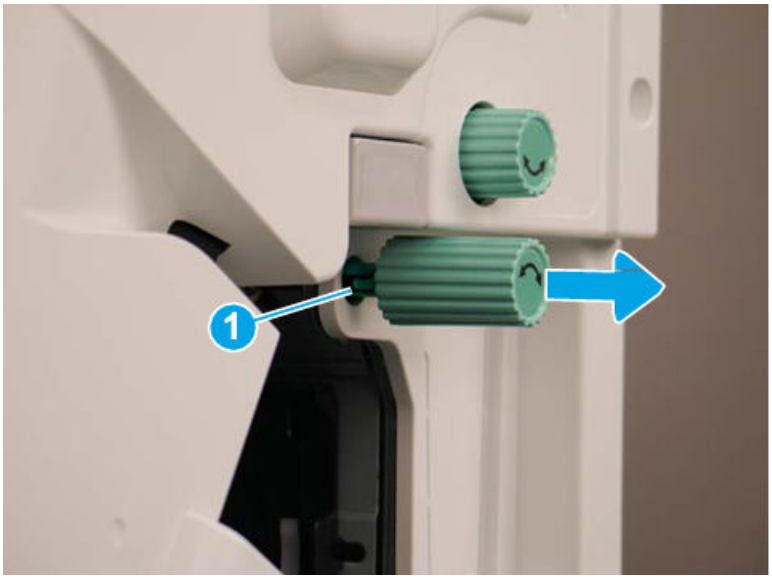


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-525 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

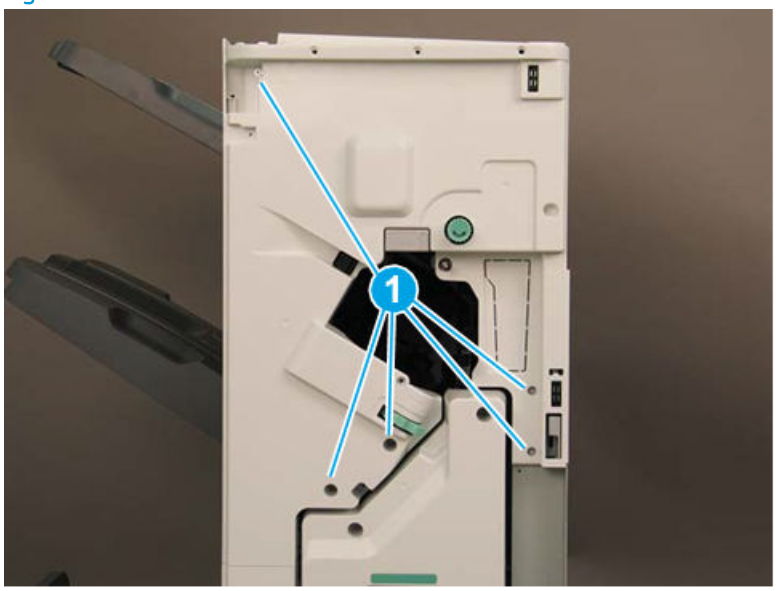
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-526 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-527 Remove the front cover

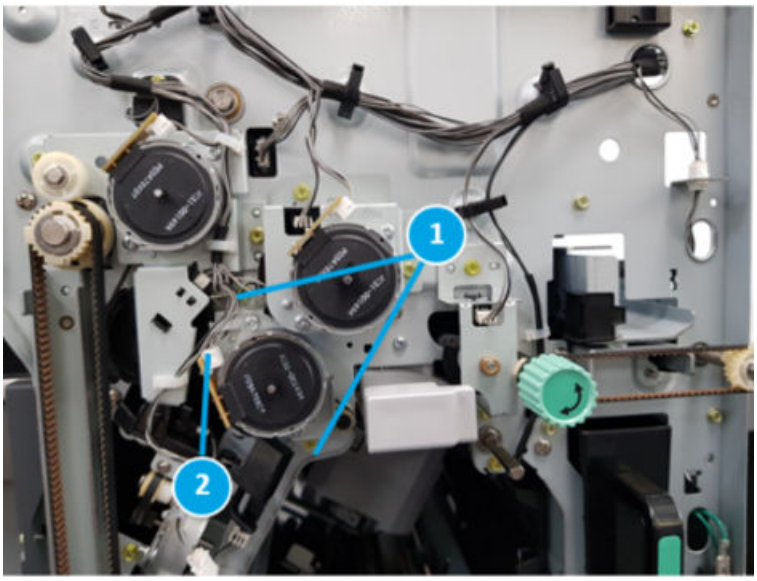


Remove the end fence motor(M3)

Follow these steps to remove the end fence motor(M3).

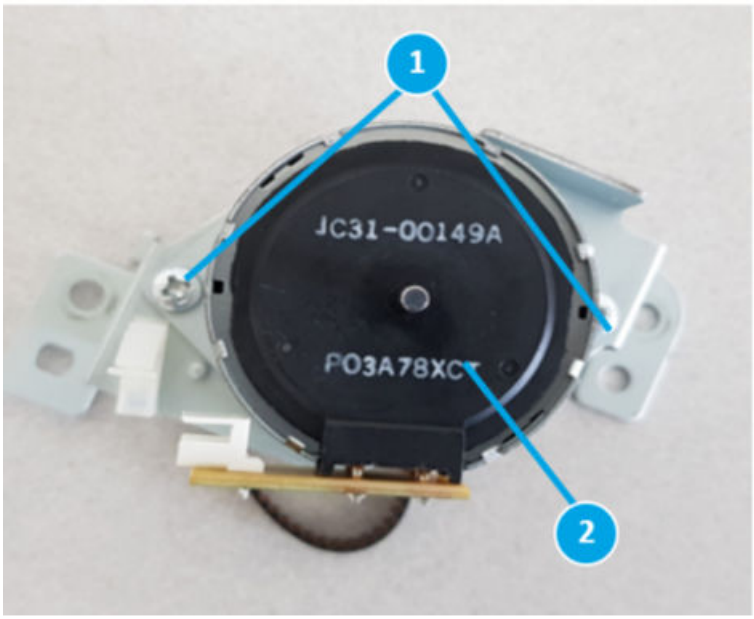
1. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws(callout 1) and disconnect connector(callout 2)

Figure 5-528 Remove two screws and disconnect connector



2. Remove two screws(callout 1) and end fence motor (M3, callout 1)

Figure 5-529 Remove end fence motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Tamper unit

Front tamper

HP LaserJet Managed MFP E82540-E82560, E87640-E87660, E82540du-E82560du, E87640du-E87660du, E72525-E72535, E77822-E77830 - Removal and replacement: Front tamper unit

Learn how to remove and replace the front tamper unit.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front tamper unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-113 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00901A	Front tamper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

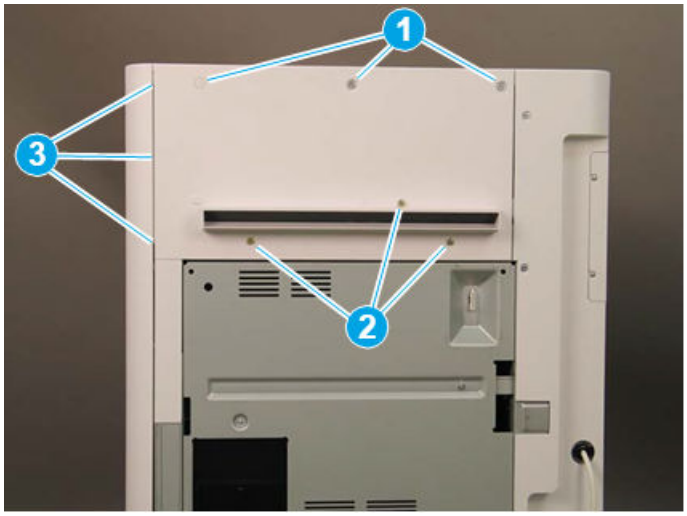
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-530 Remove the right upper cover

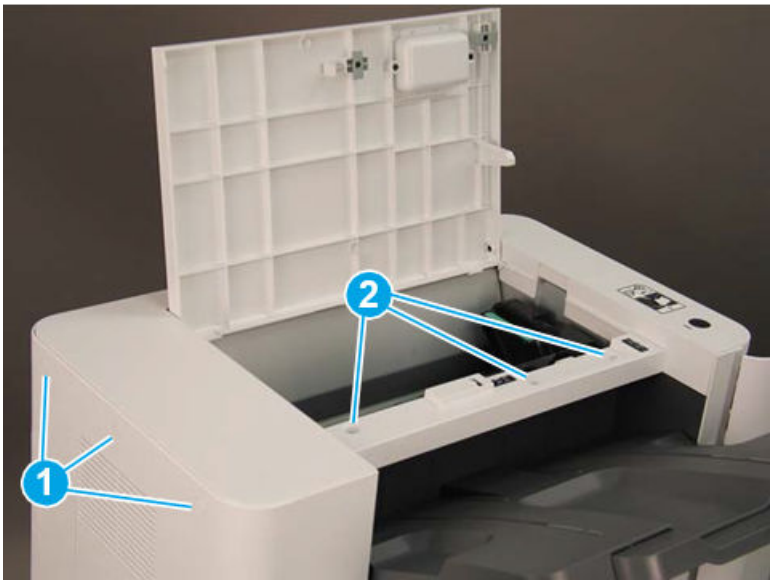


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

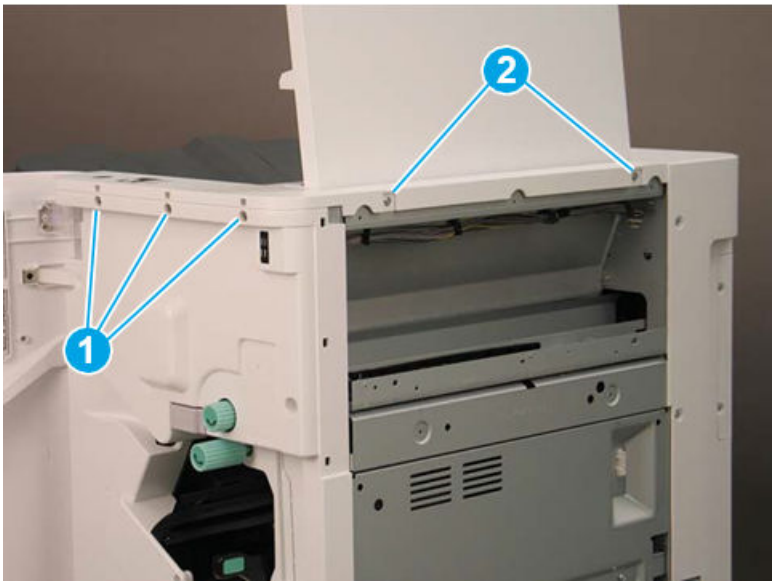
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-531 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

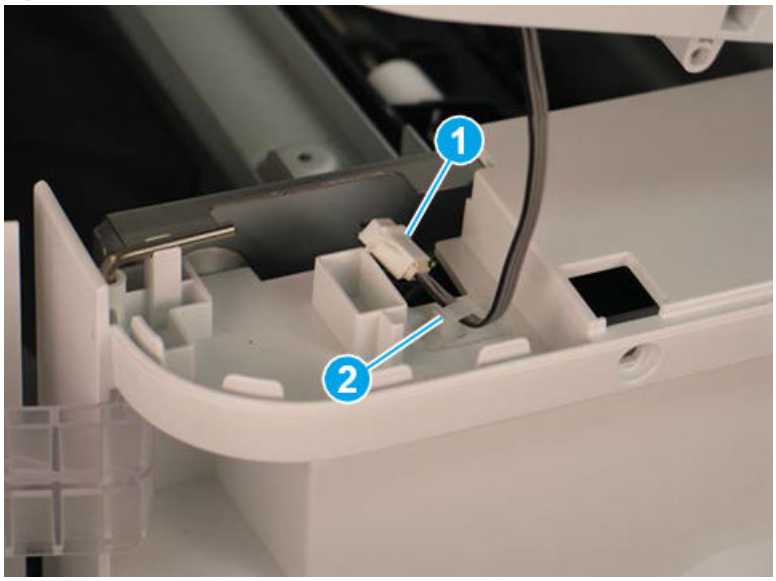
Figure 5-532 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-533 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

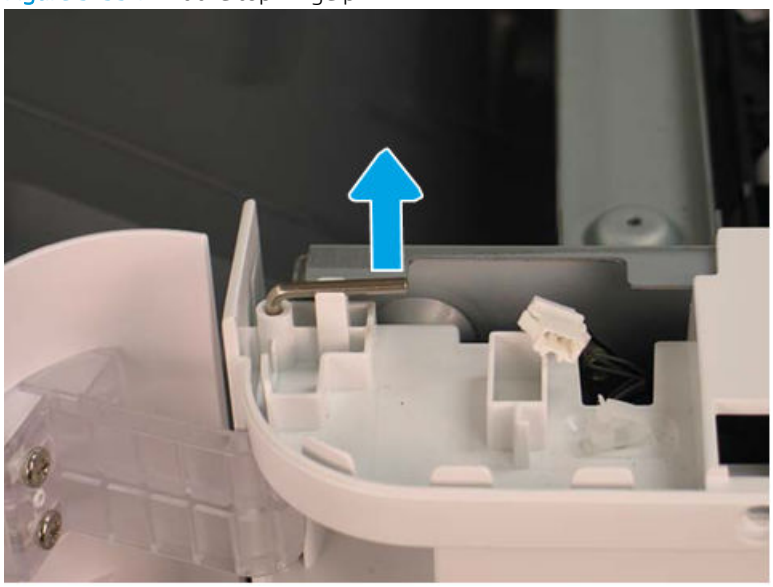


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

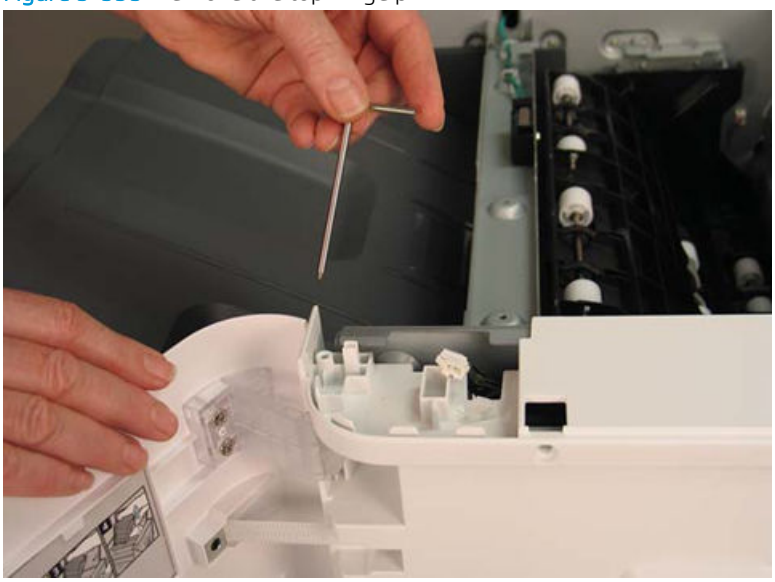
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-534 Lift the top hinge pin



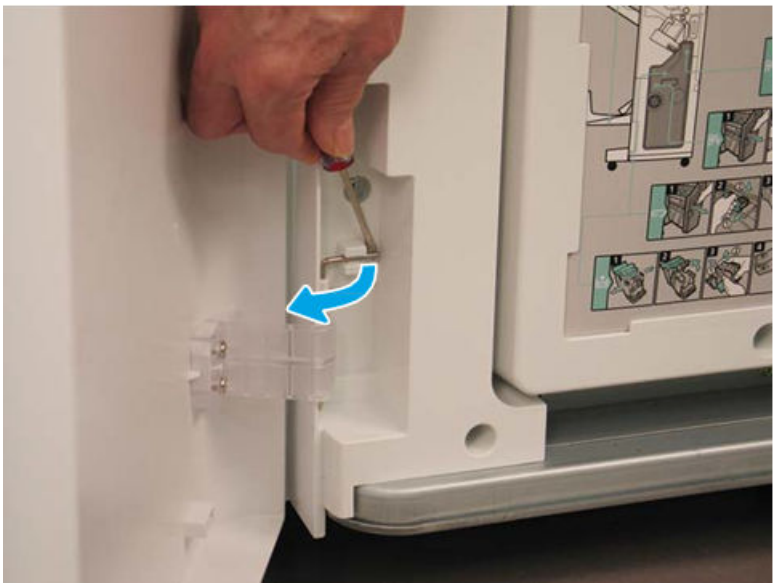
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-535 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-536 Release the lower hinge pin



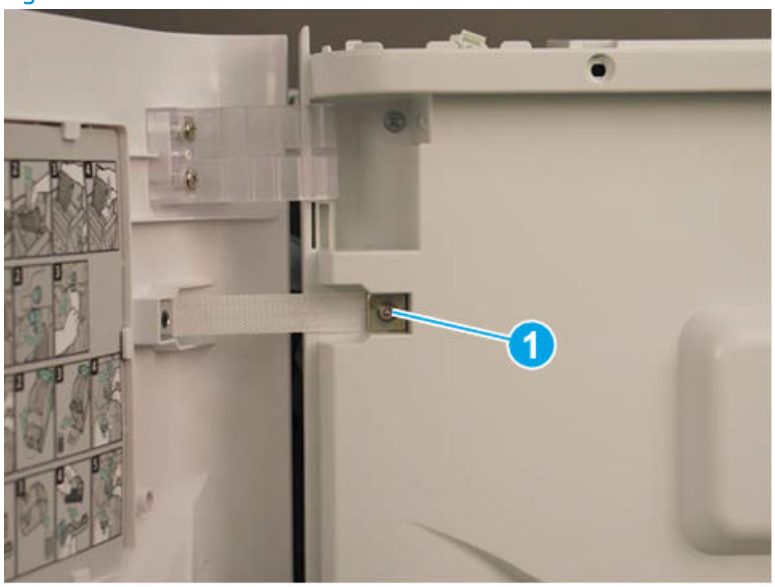
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-537 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-538 Remove the front door

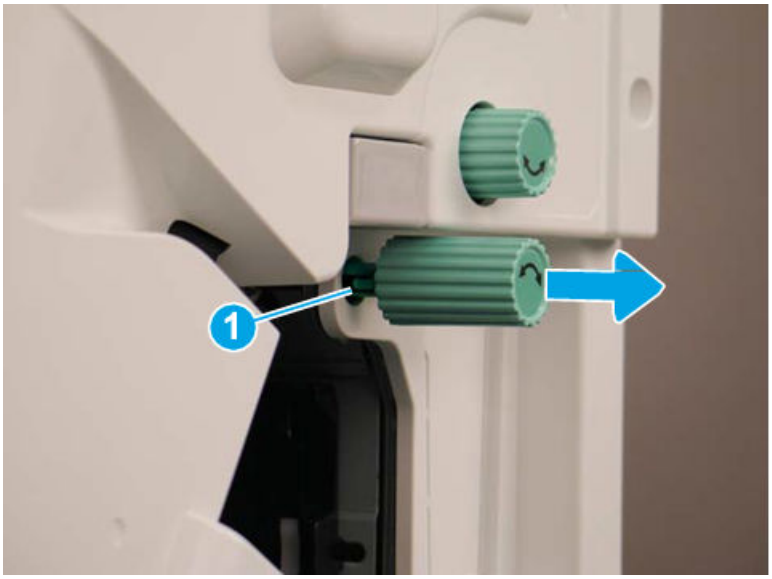


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

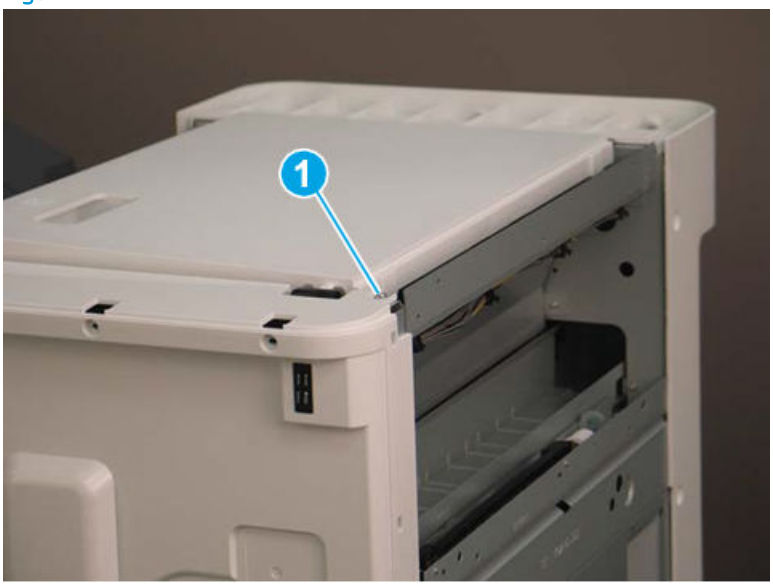
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-539 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

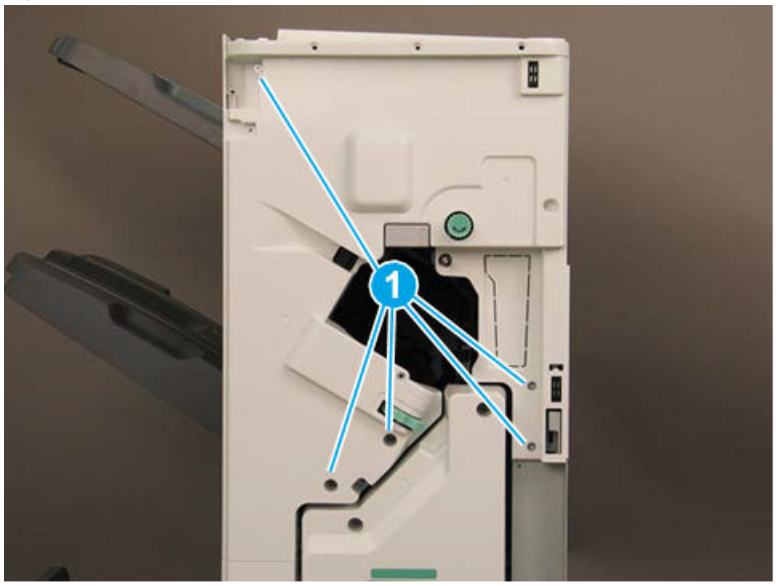
Figure 5-540 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-541 Remove the front cover

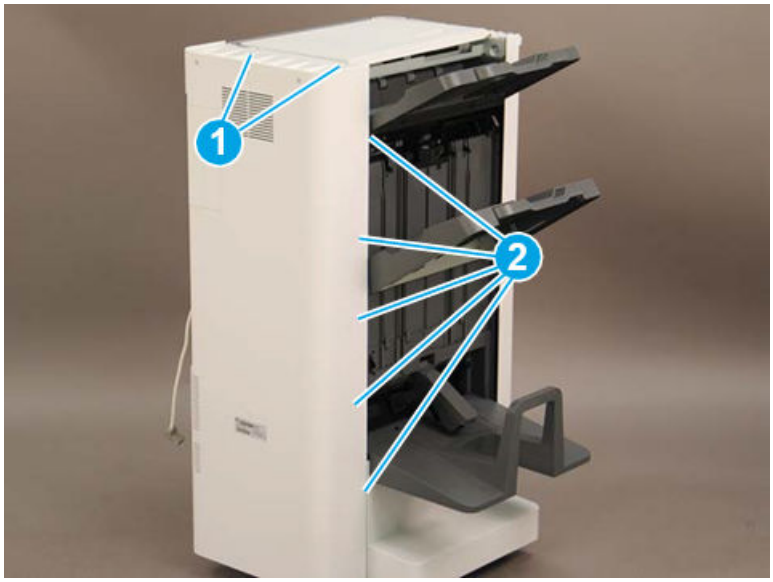


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-542 Remove seven screws

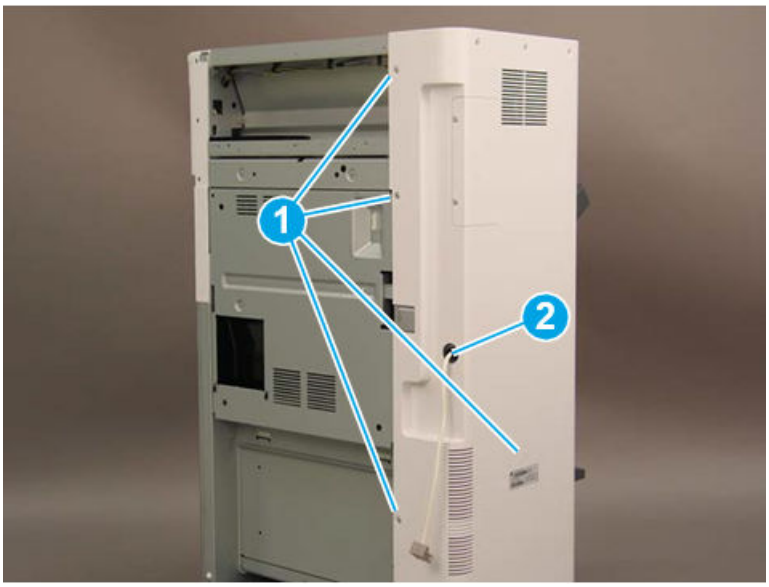


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-543 Remove the rear cover

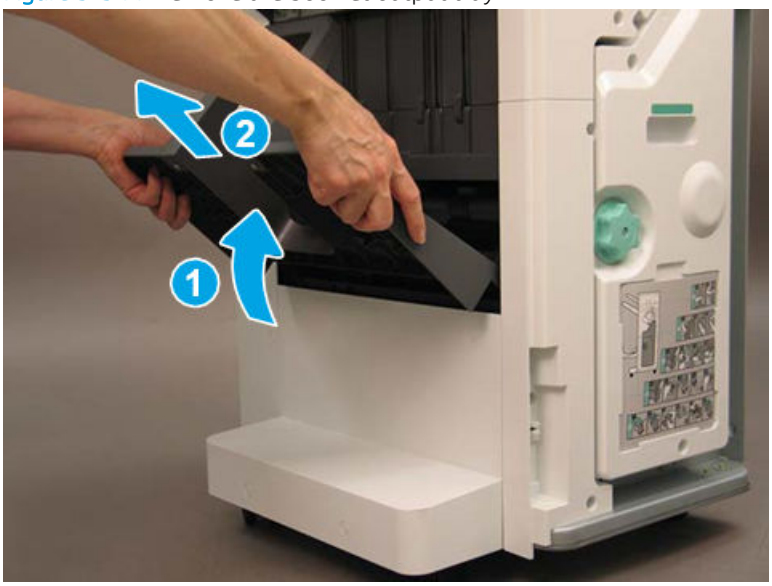


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-544 Remove the booklet output tray



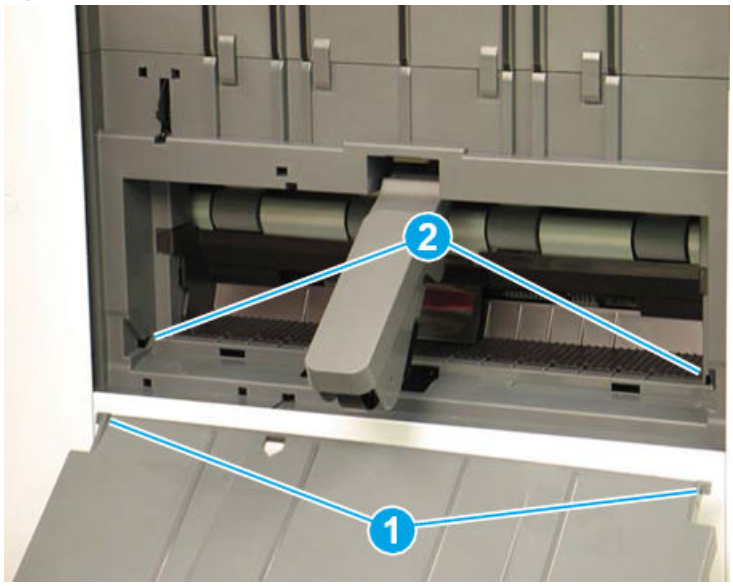
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-545 Install the booklet output tray

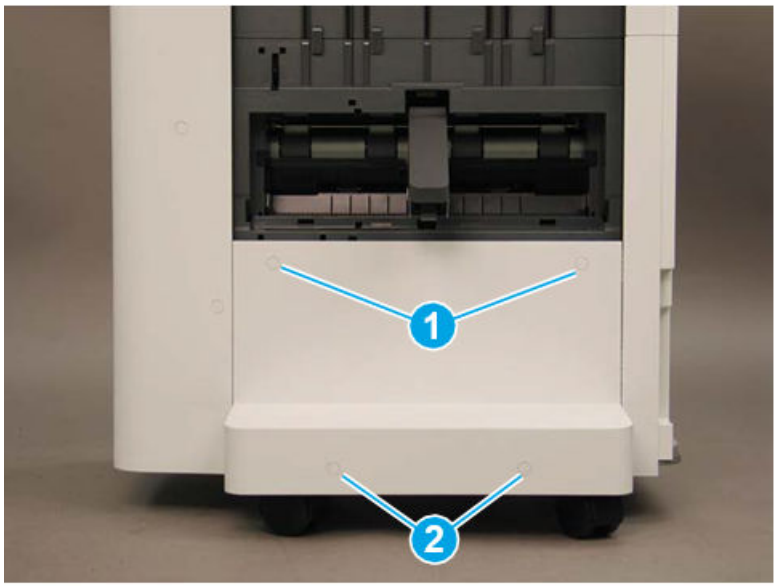


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-546 Remove four screws

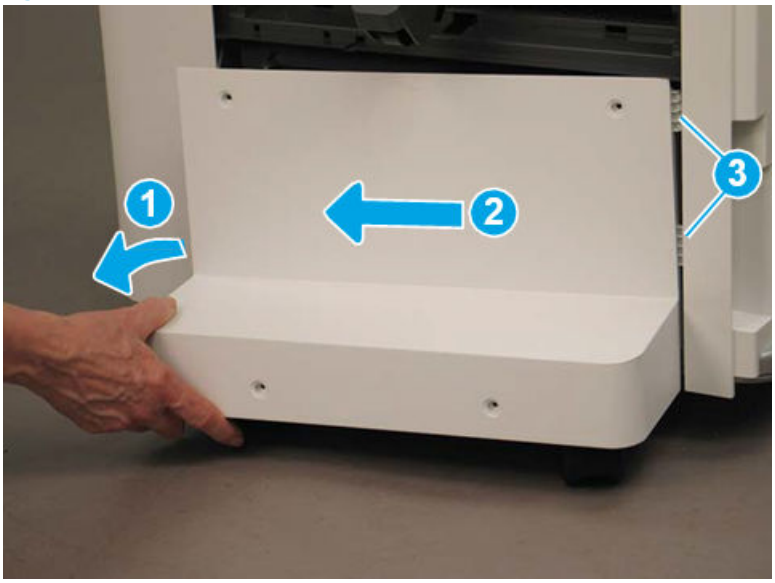


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-547 Remove the caster cover



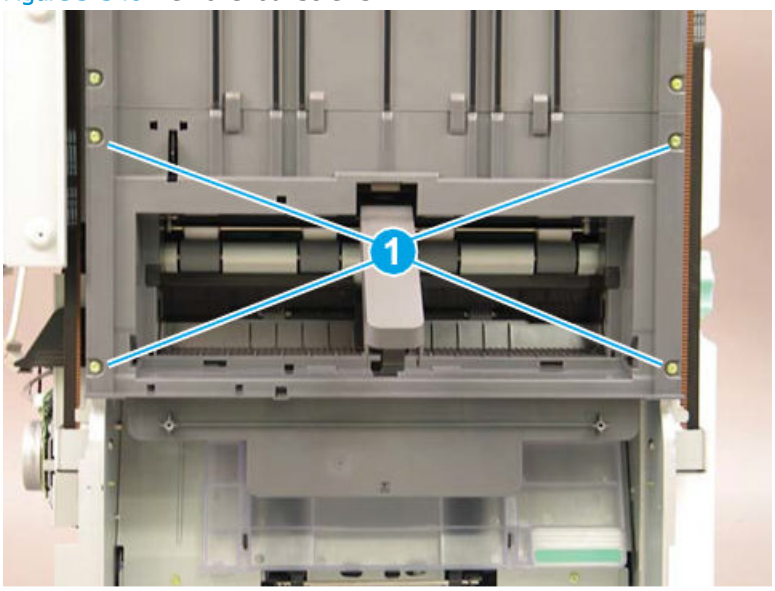
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-548 Remove four screws

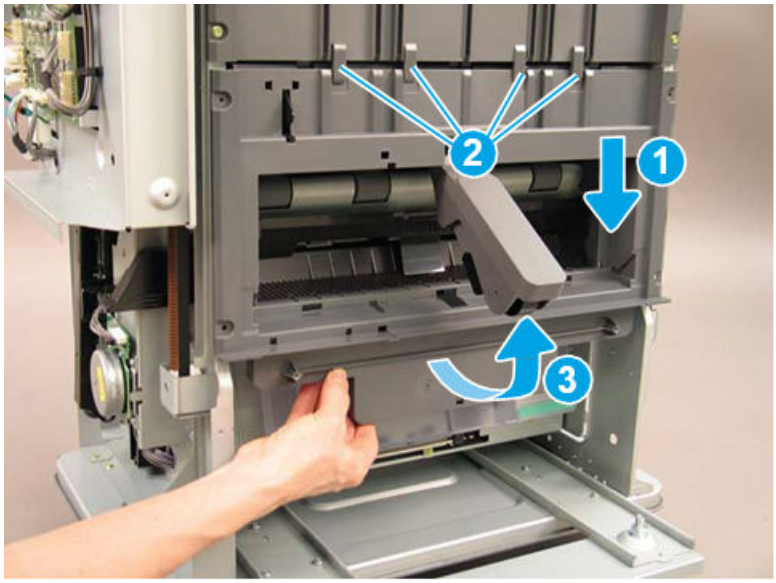


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

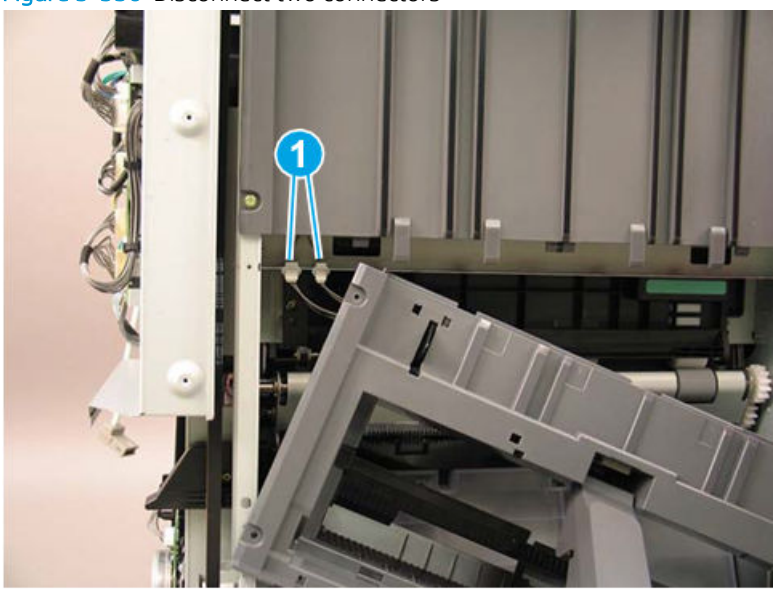
Figure 5-549 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

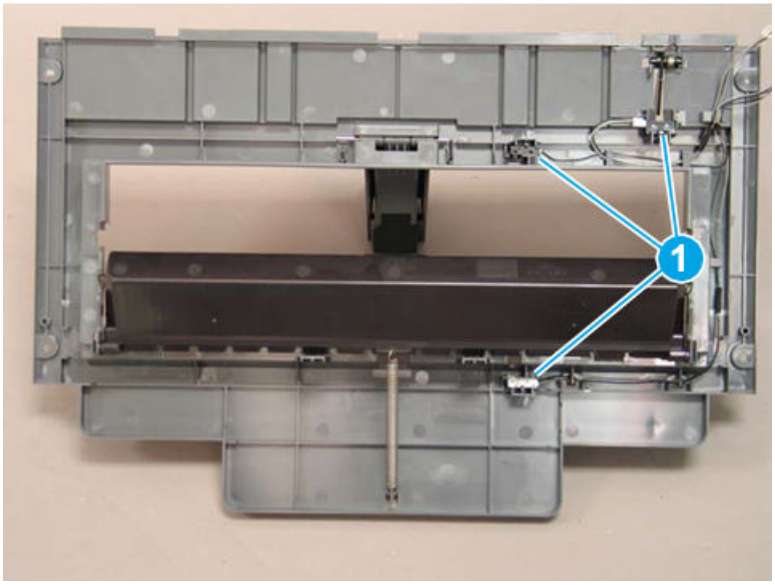
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-550 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-551 Remove the left lower cover

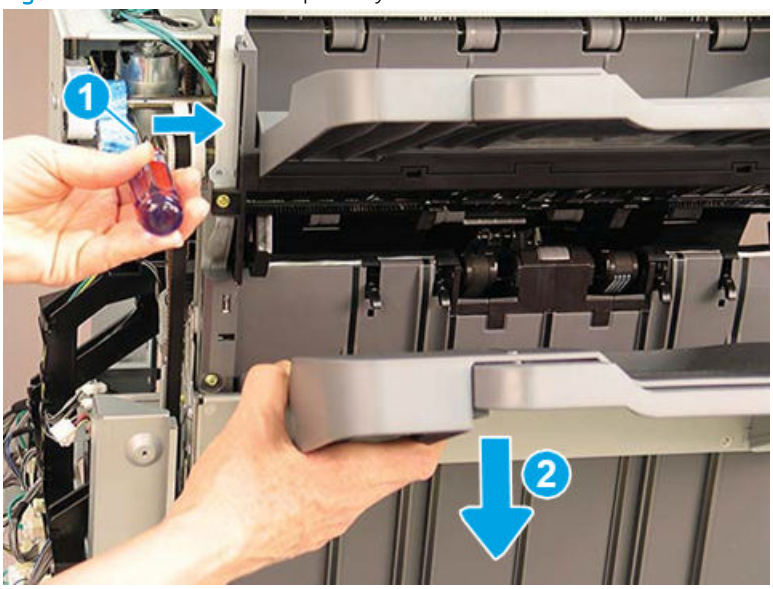


Remove the left upper cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover (finisher).

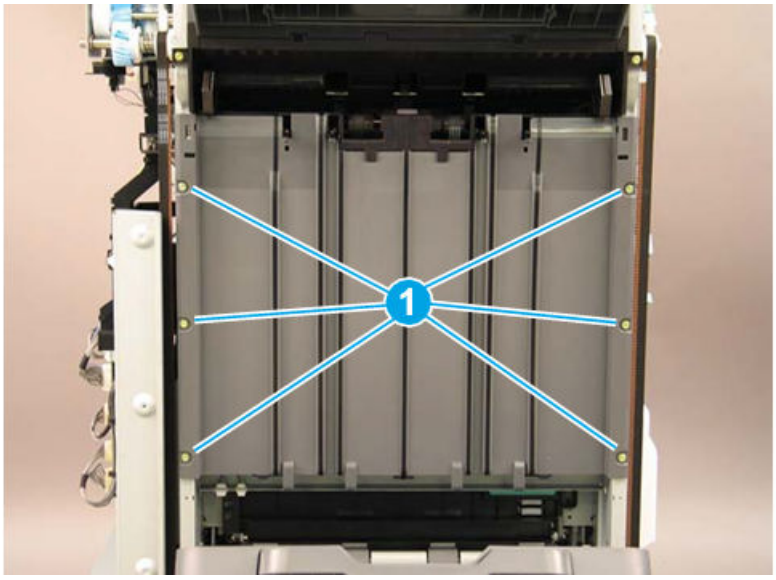
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 5-552 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-553 Remove six screws

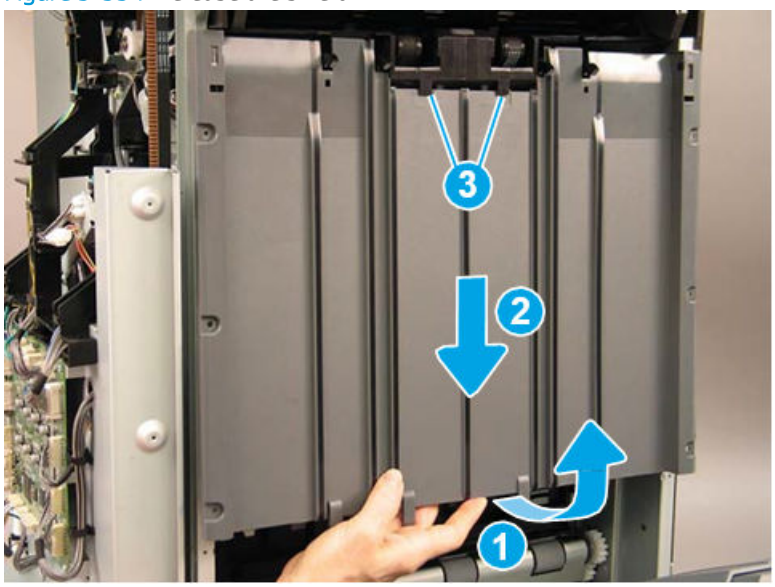


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away fromthe finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

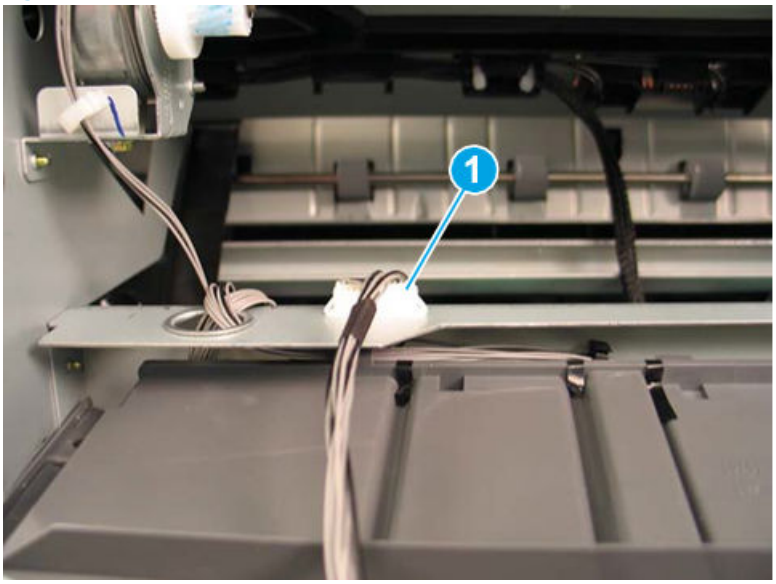
Figure 5-554 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

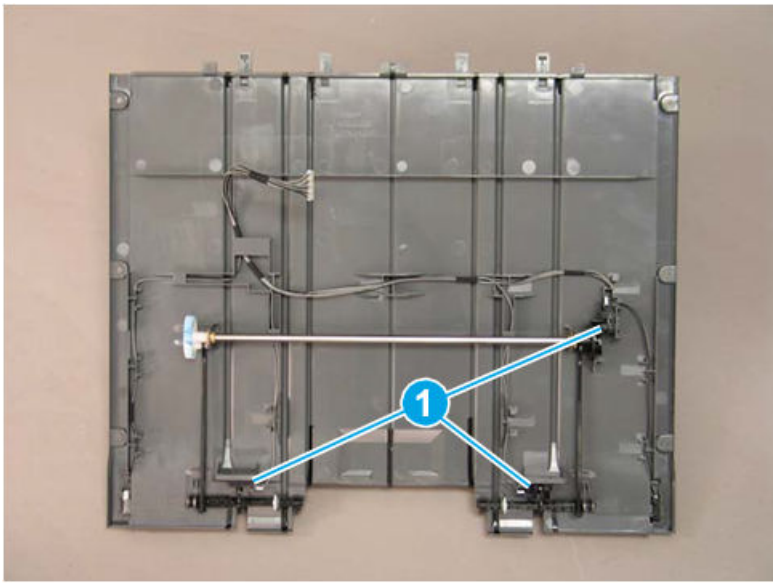
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-555 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the left upper cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left upper cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-556 Remove the left upper cover

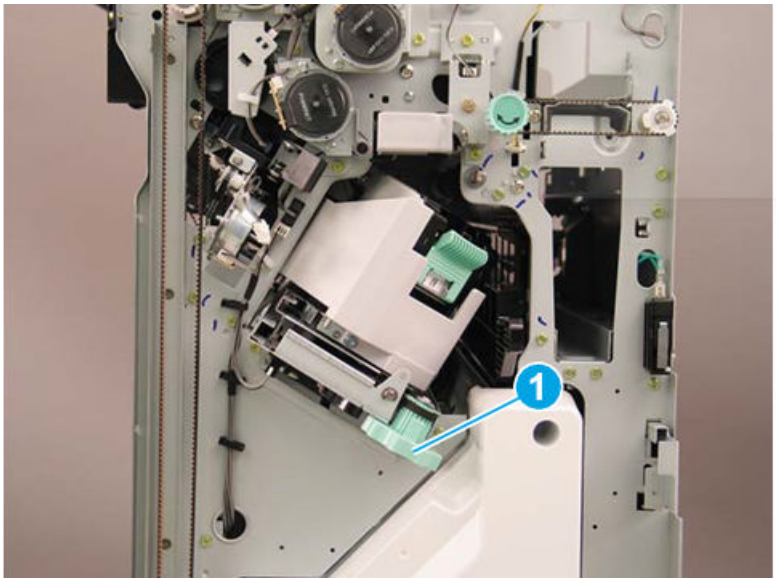


Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the ejector unit (finisher).

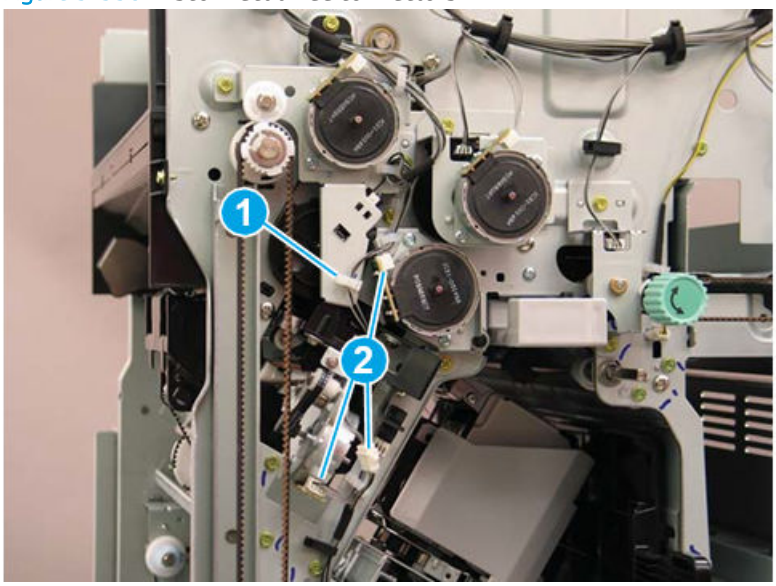
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 5-557 Move the staple unit to the center



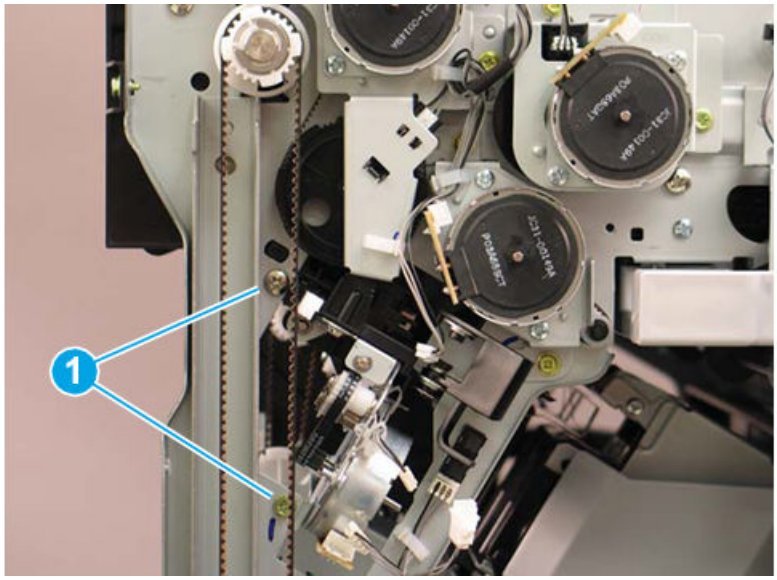
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 5-558 Disconnect three connectors



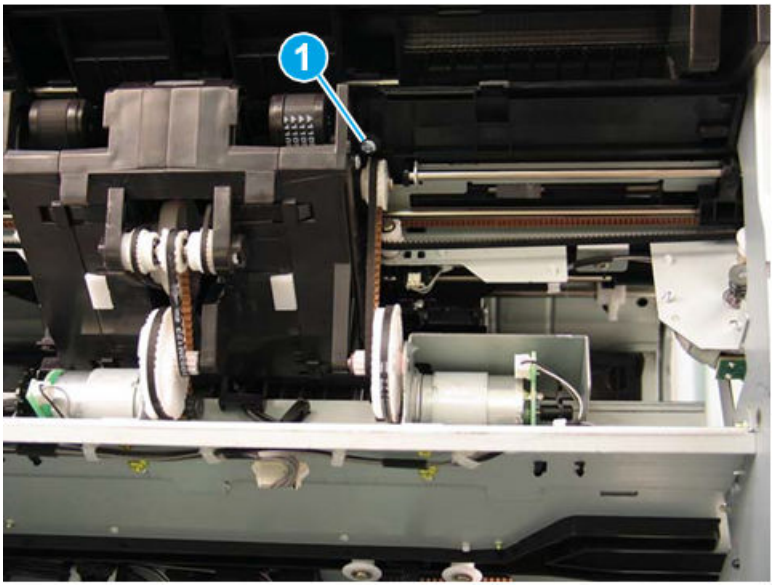
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-559 Remove two screws



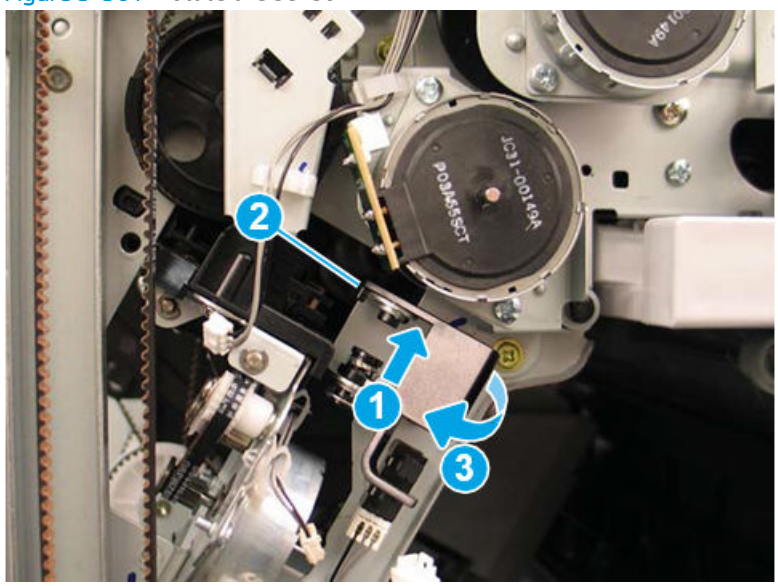
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-560 Remove one screw



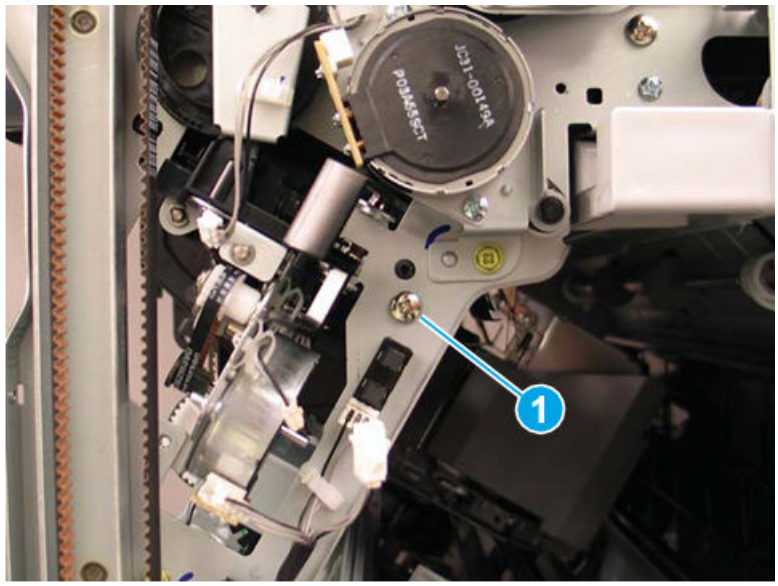
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 5-561 Rotate the sensor



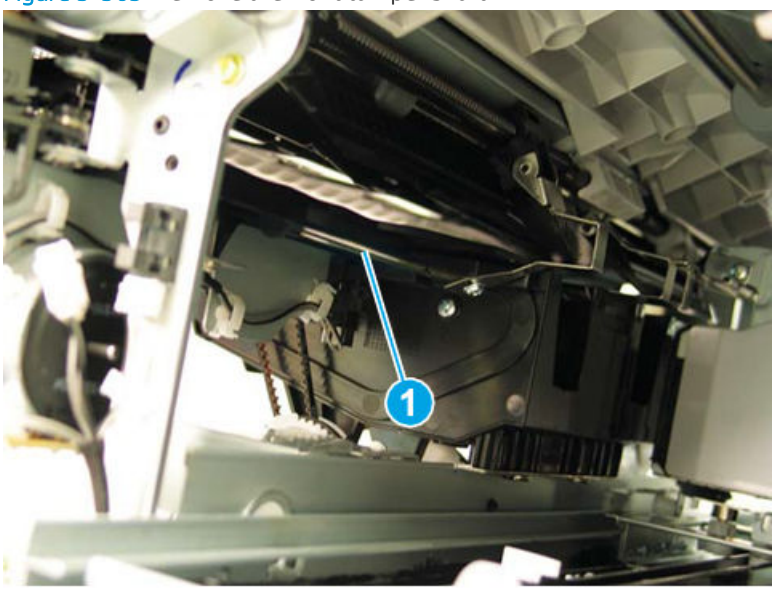
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-562 Remove one screw



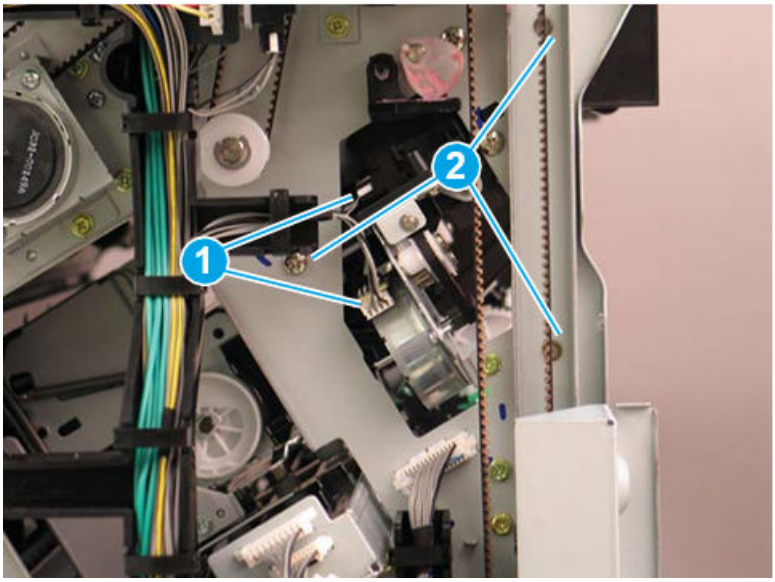
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 5-563 Remove the front tamper shaft



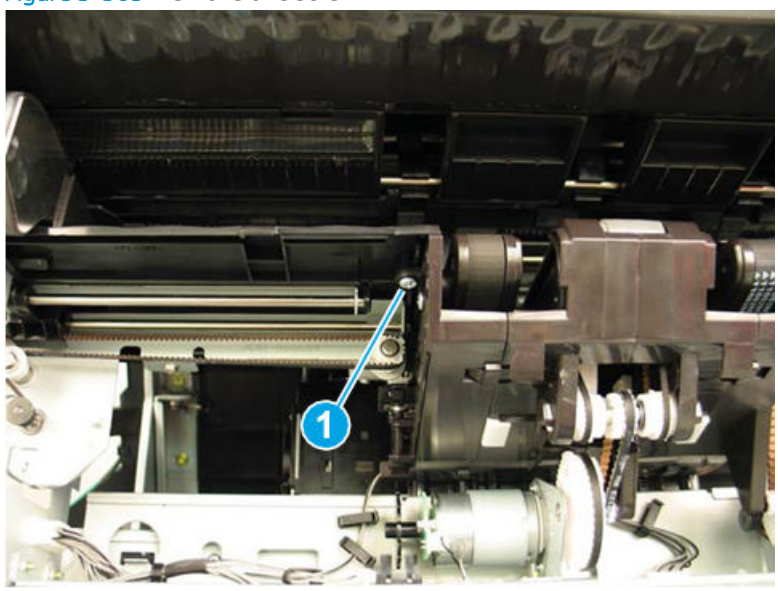
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-564 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



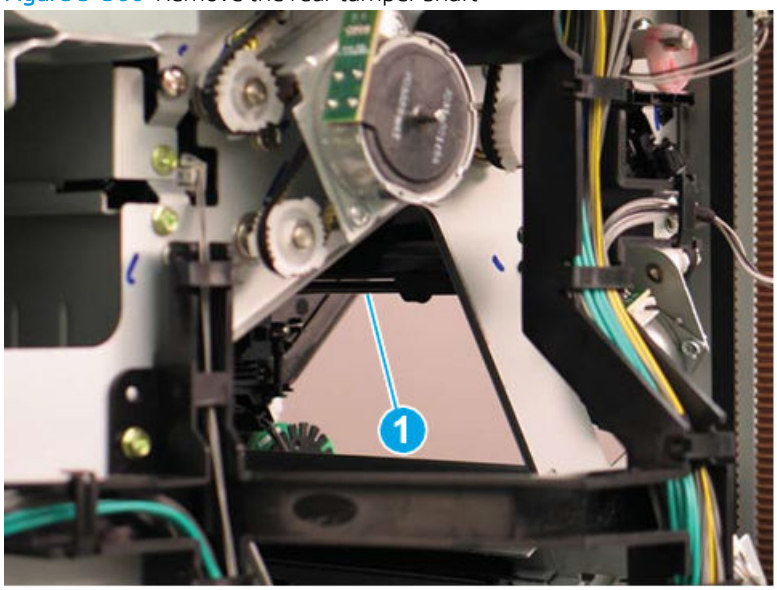
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-565 Remove one screw



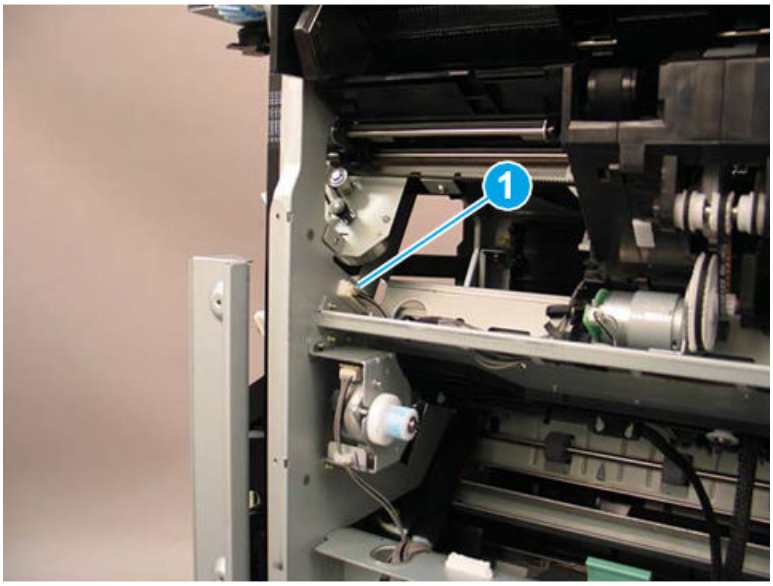
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 5-566 Remove the rear tamper shaft



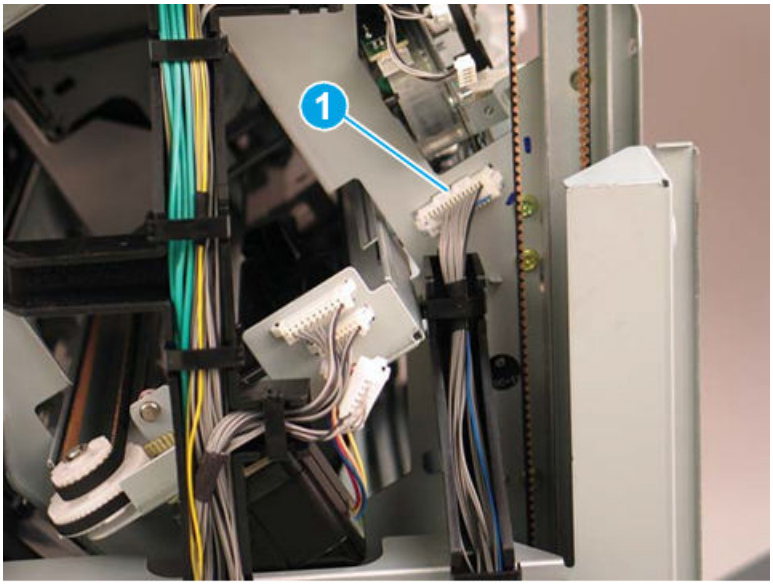
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-567 Disconnect one connector



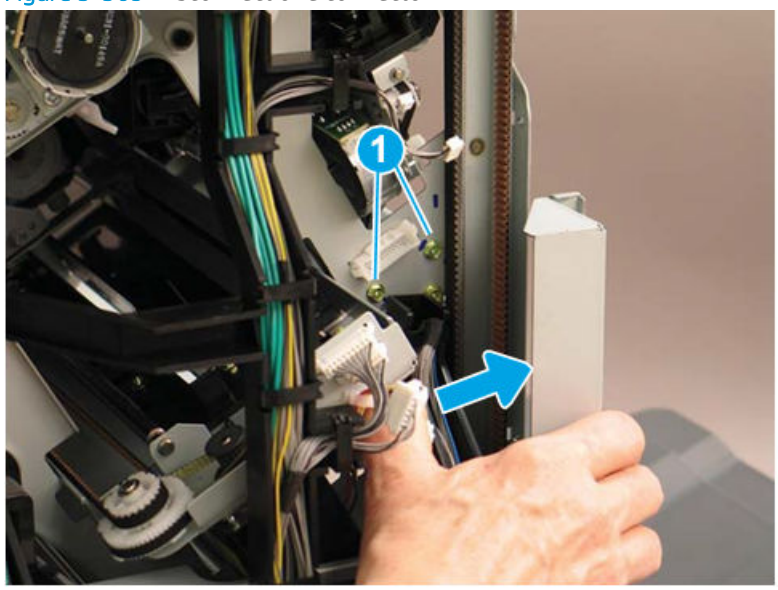
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-568 Disconnect one connector



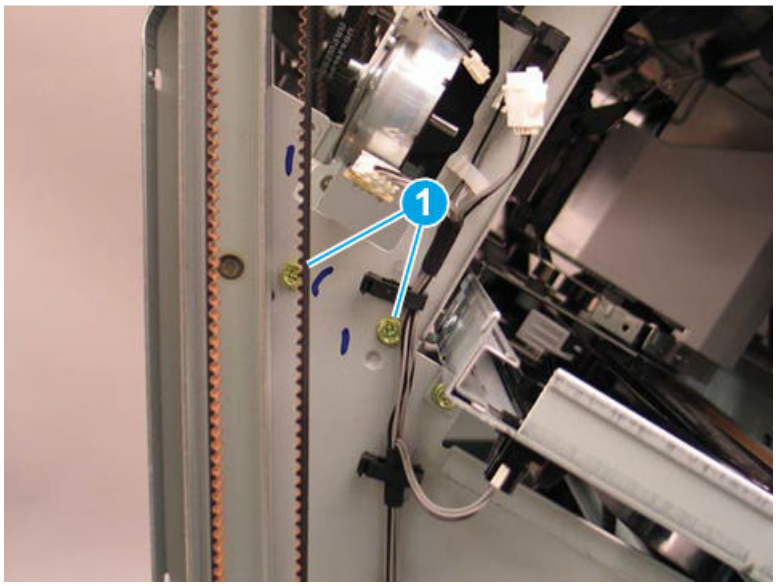
13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-569 Disconnect one connector



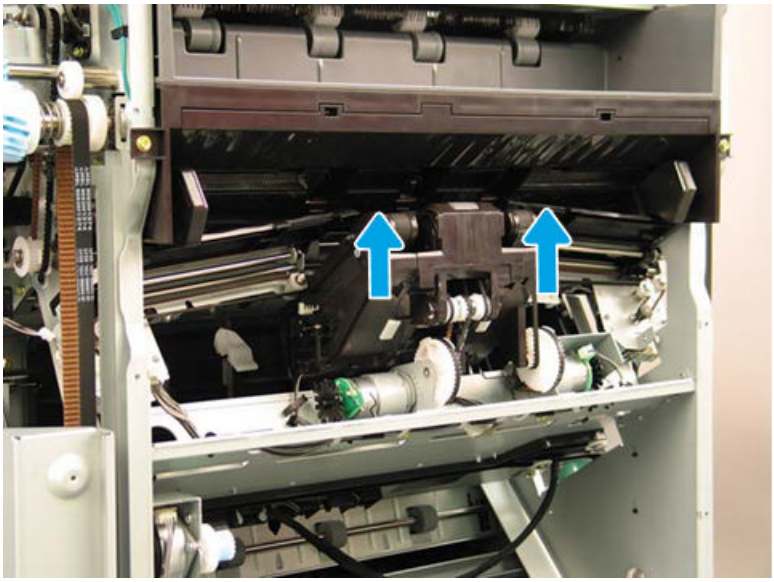
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-570 Remove two screws



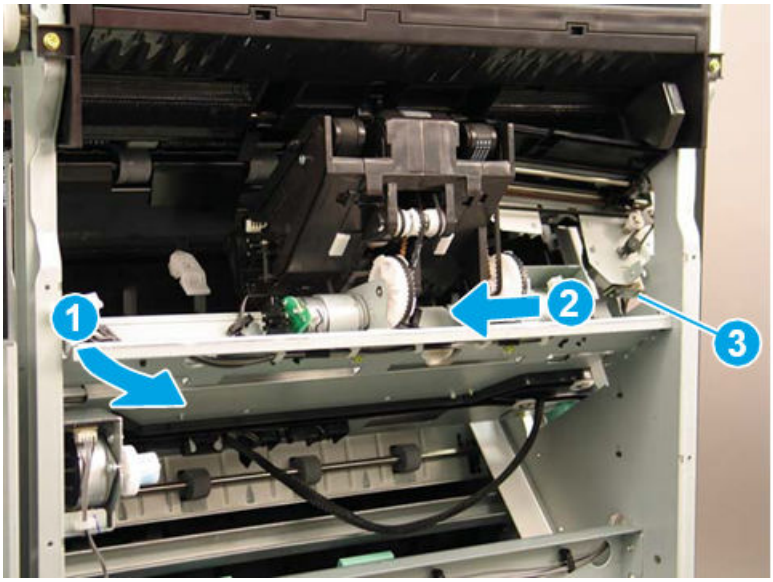
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 5-571 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 5-572 Remove the ejector unit

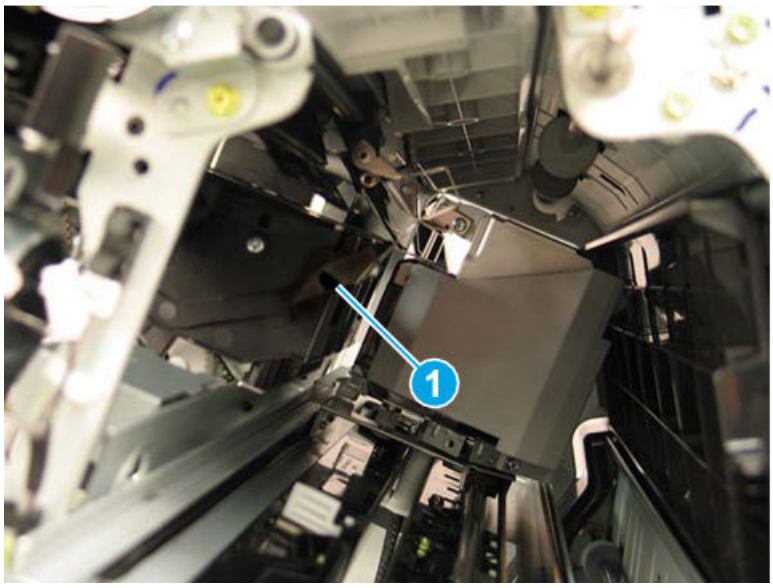


17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

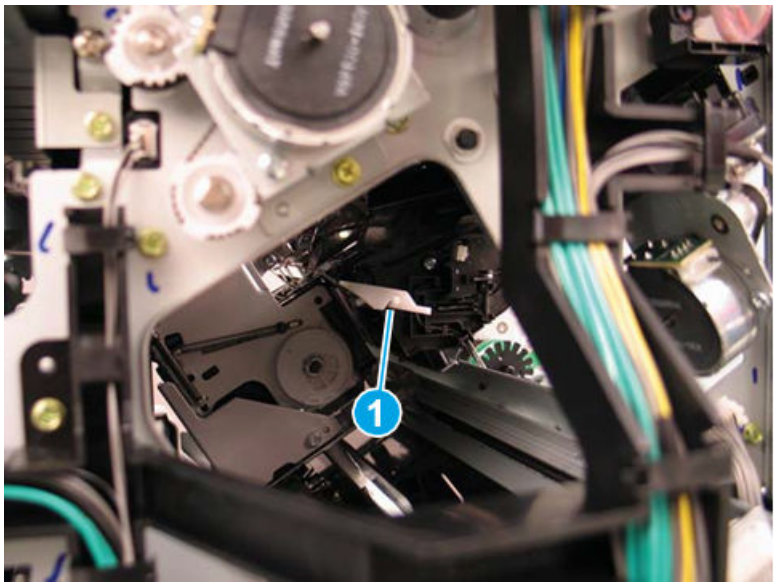
NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

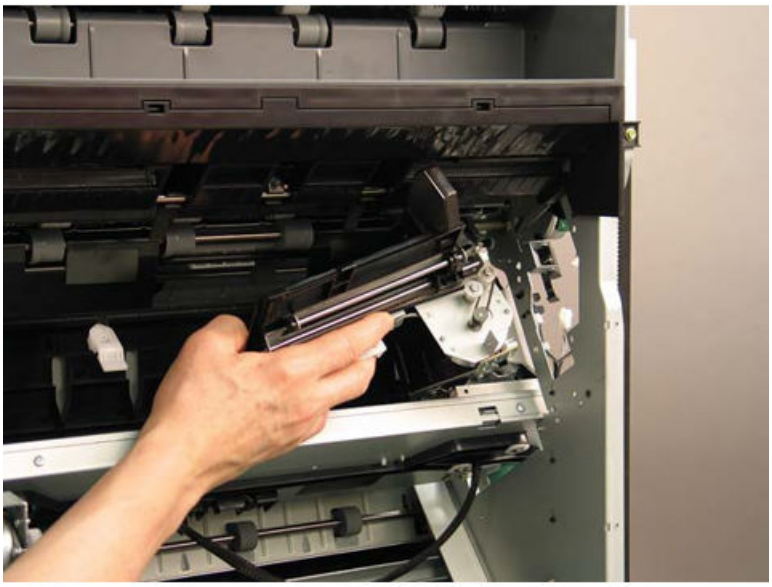


Remove the front tamper unit

Follow these steps to remove the front tamper unit.

- ▲ Lift the front tamper away from the finisher to remove it

Figure 5-573 Remove the front tamper



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front tamper home sensor (S6)

Learn how to remove and replace the front tamper home sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front tamper home sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-114 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Front tamper home sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

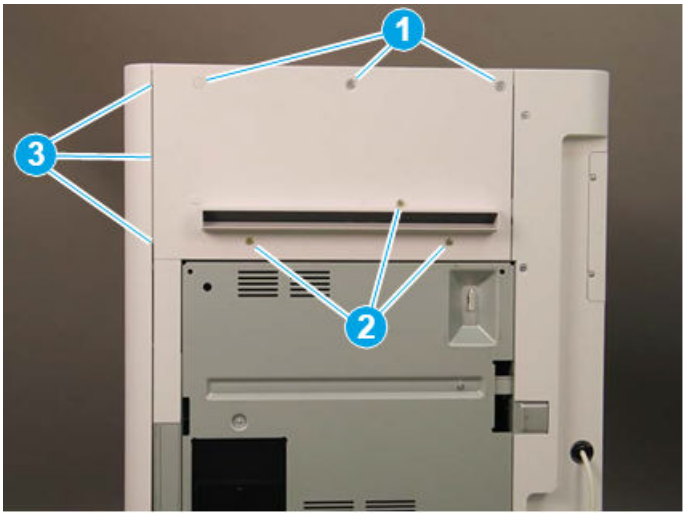
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-574 Remove the right upper cover

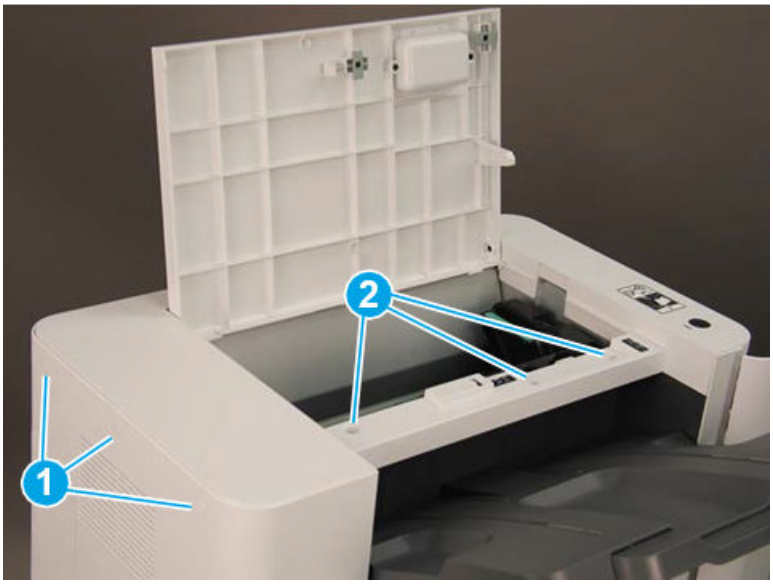


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

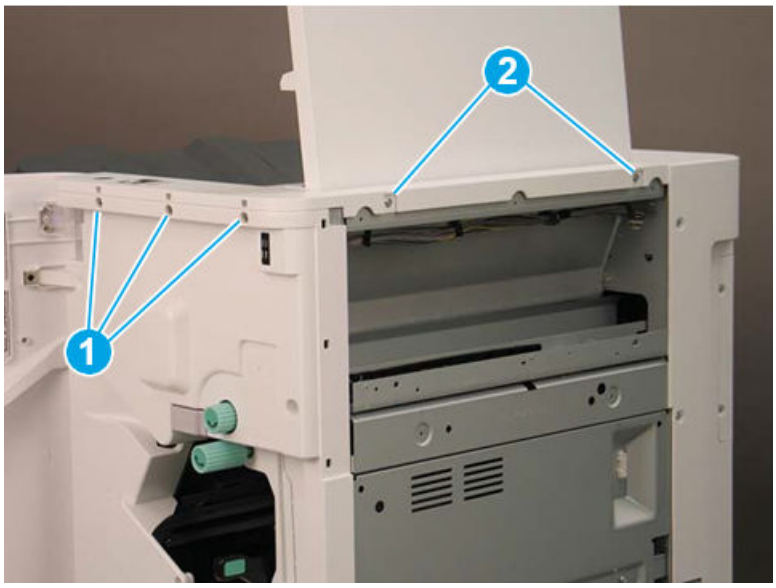
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-575 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

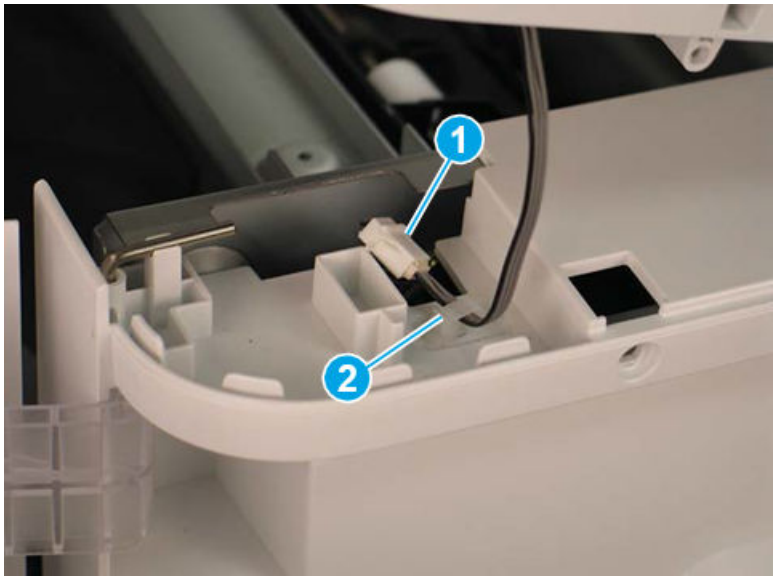
Figure 5-576 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-577 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

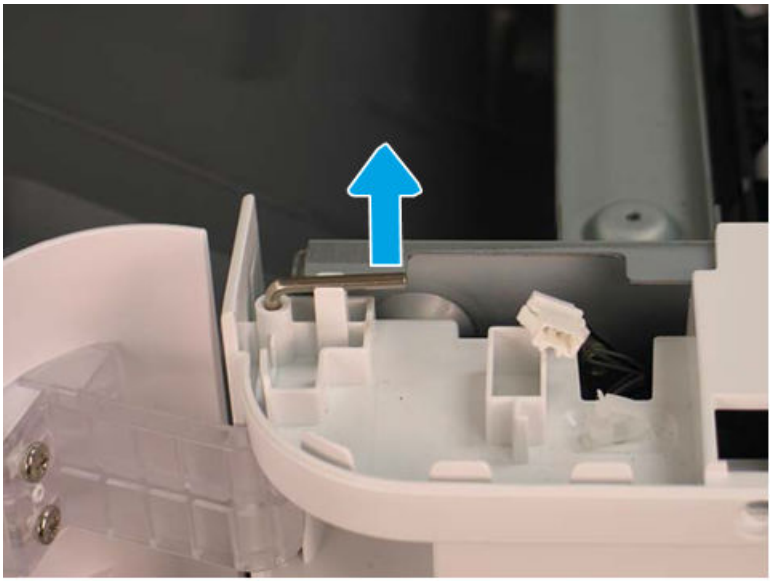


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

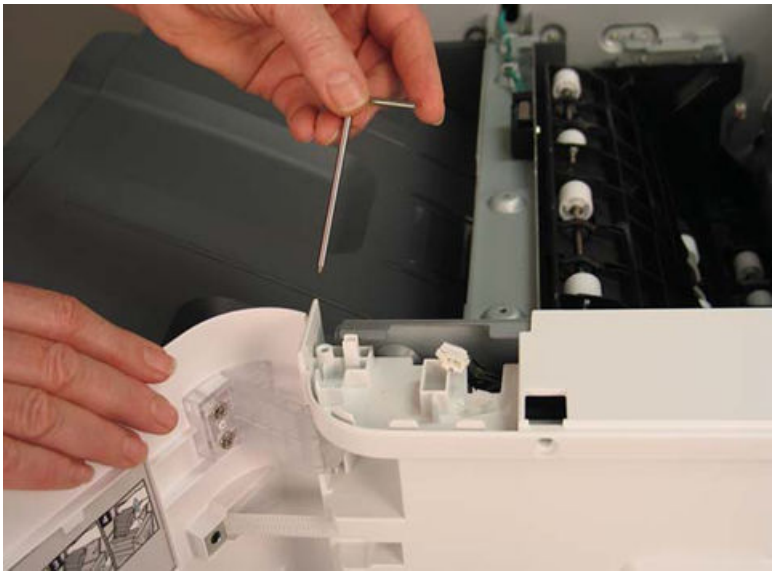
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-578 Lift the top hinge pin



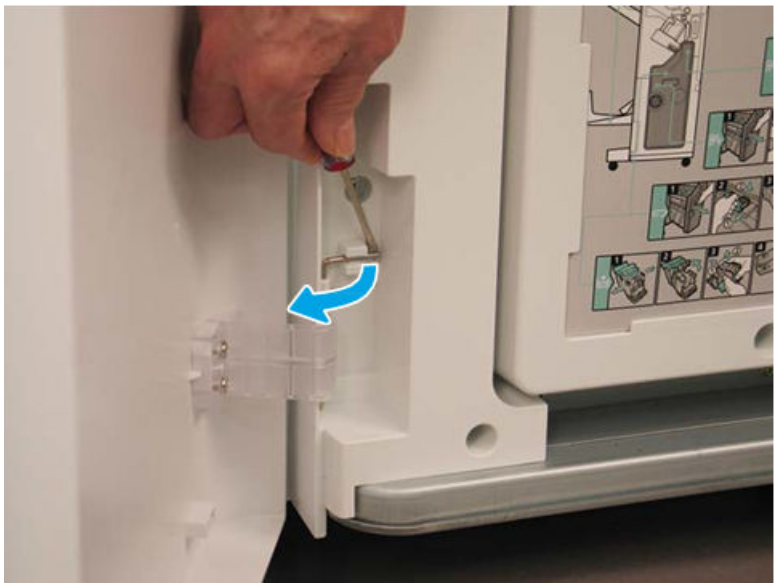
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-579 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-580 Release the lower hinge pin



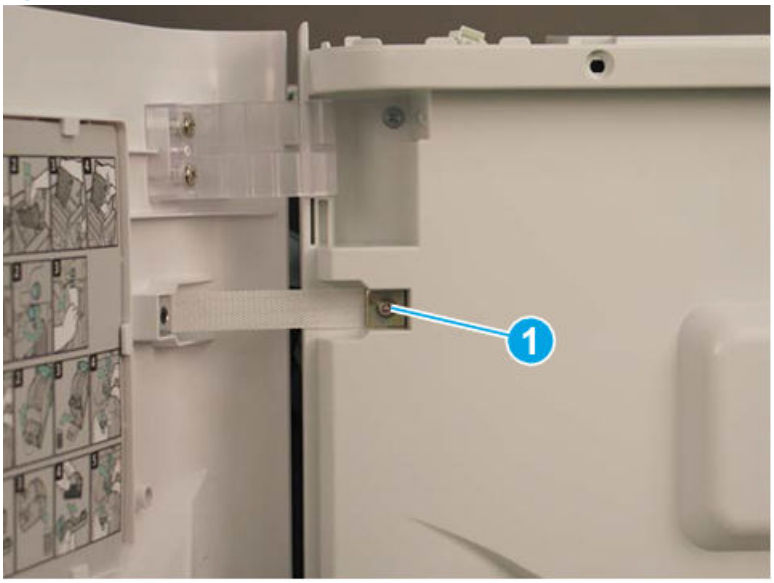
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-581 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-582 Remove the front door

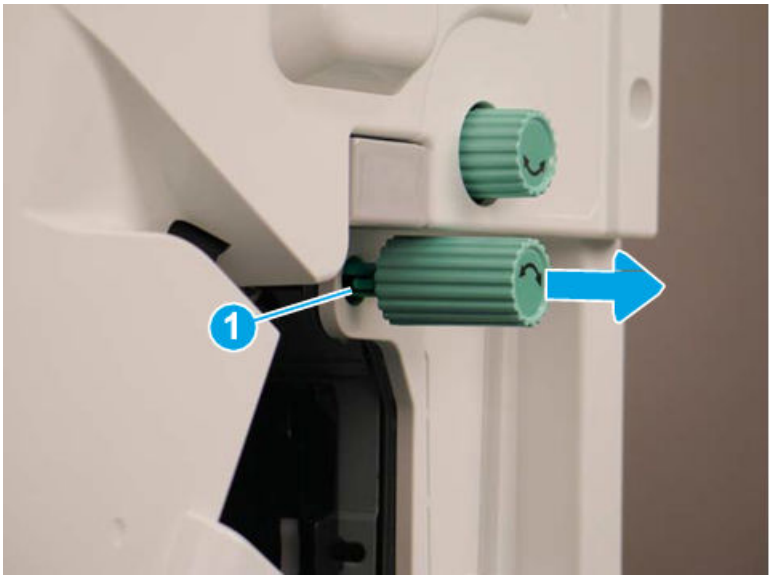


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-583 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

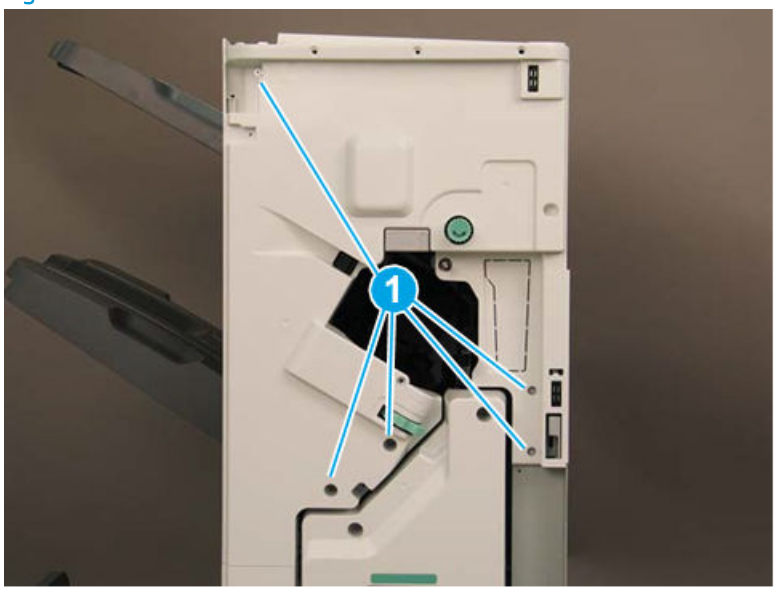
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-584 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-585 Remove the front cover

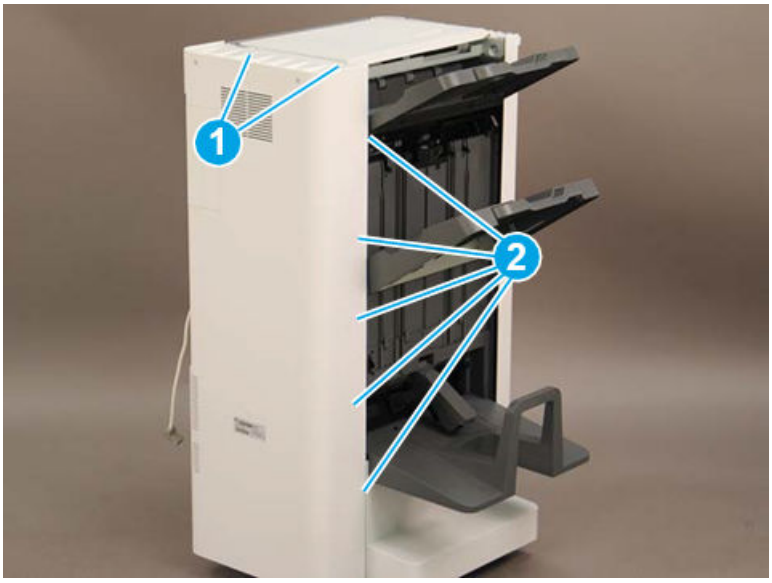


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-586 Remove seven screws

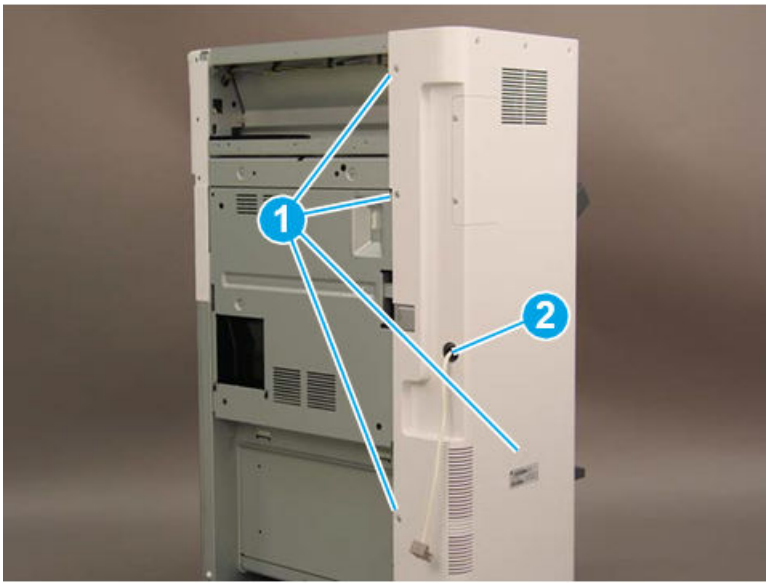


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-587 Remove the rear cover

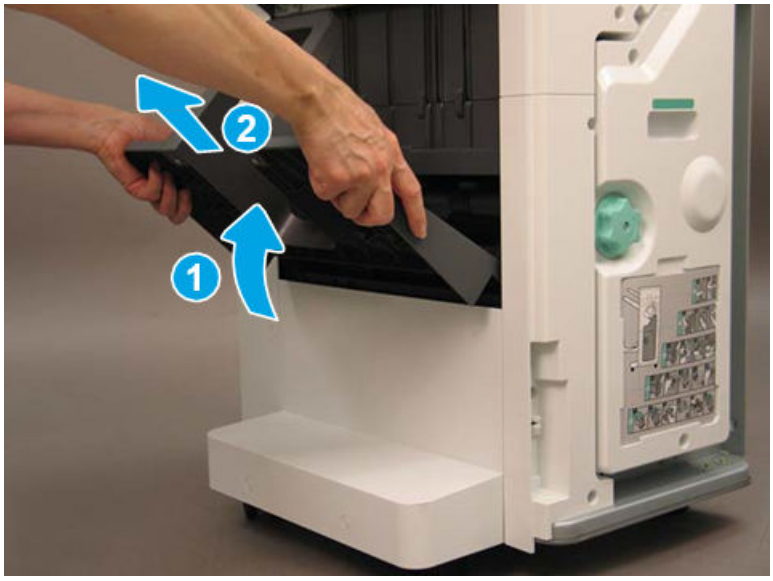


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-588 Remove the booklet output tray



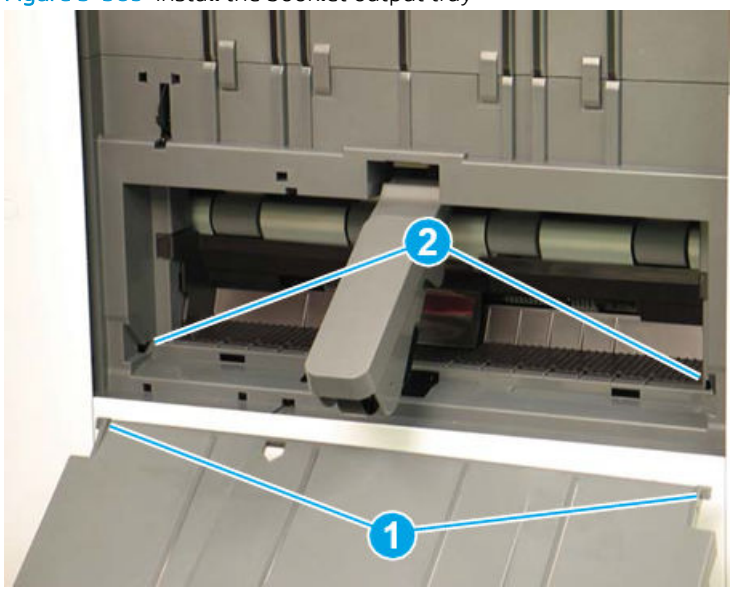
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-589 Install the booklet output tray

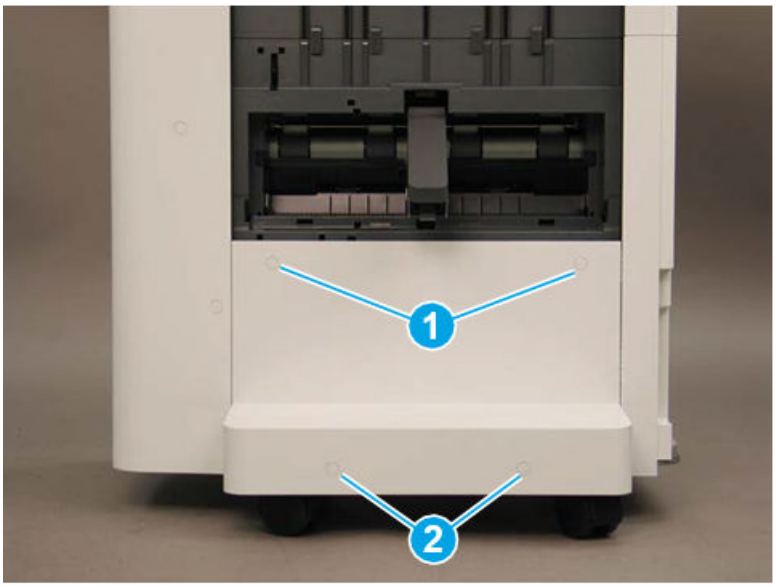


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-590 Remove four screws

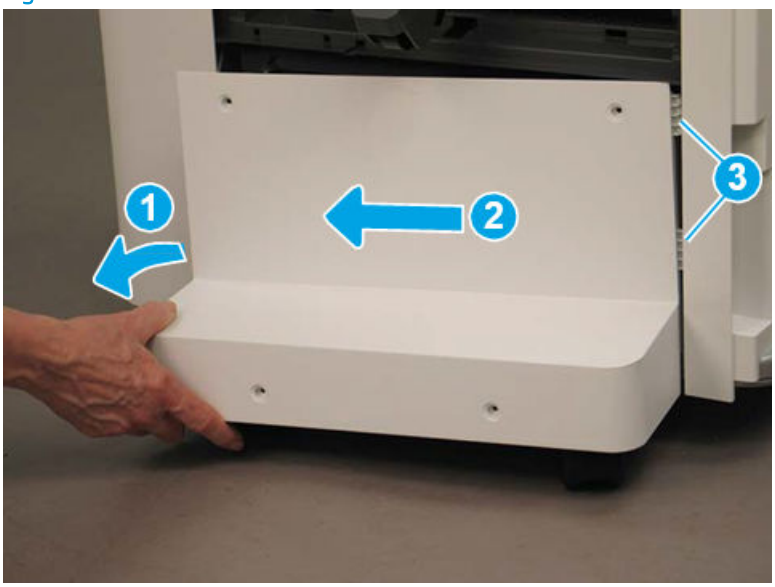


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-591 Remove the caster cover



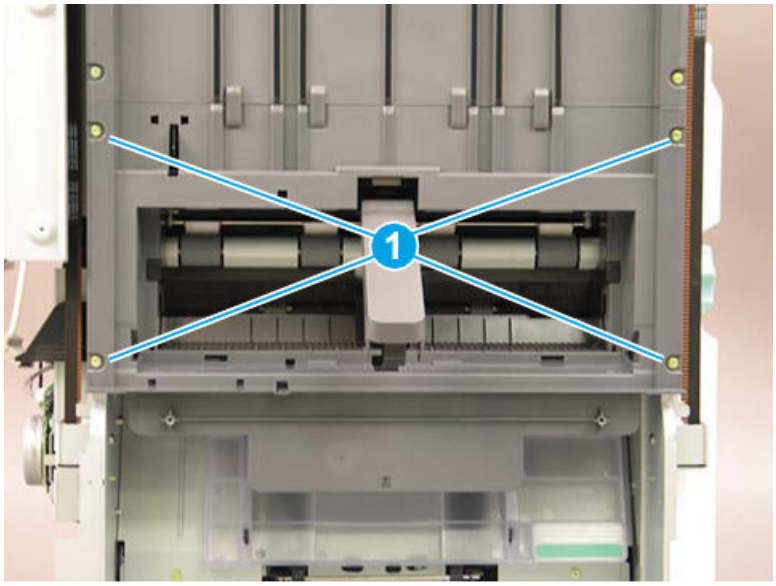
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-592 Remove four screws

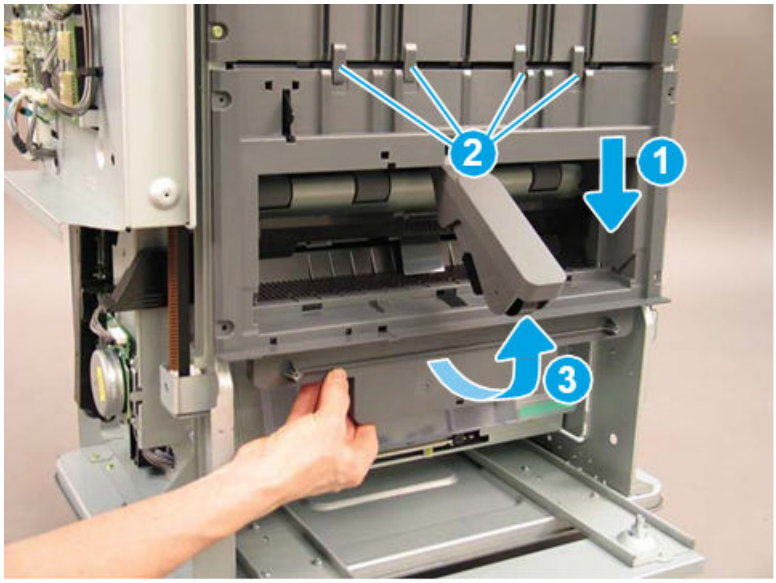


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

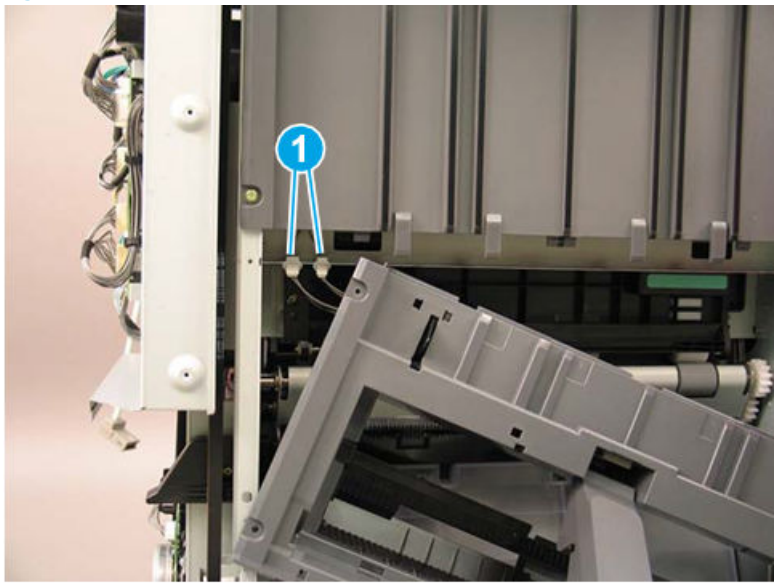
Figure 5-593 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

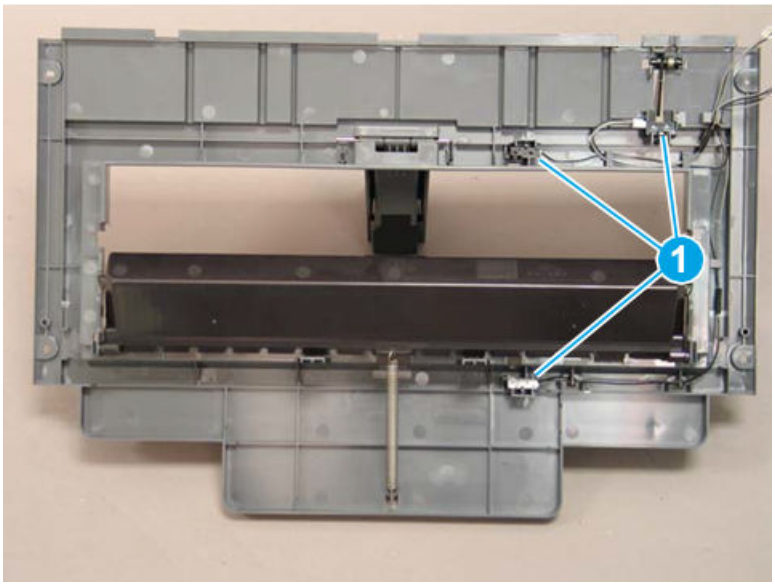
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-594 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-595 Remove the left lower cover

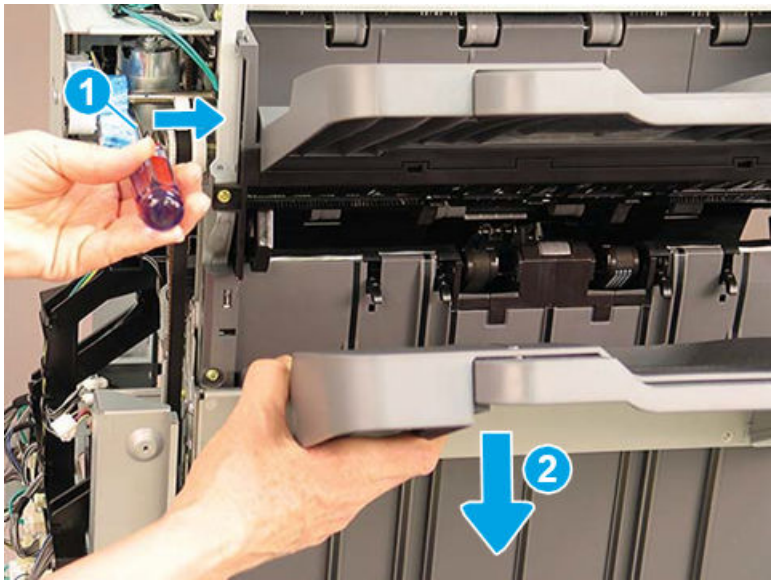


Remove the left upper cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover (finisher).

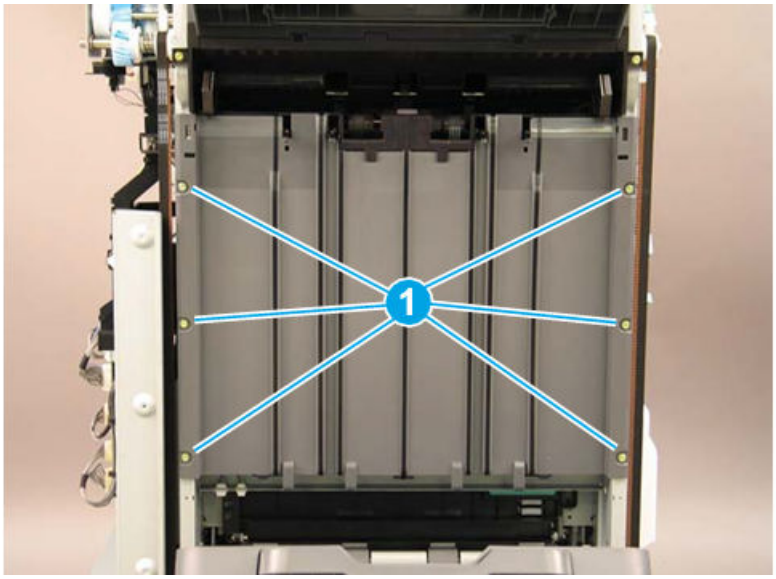
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 5-596 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-597 Remove six screws

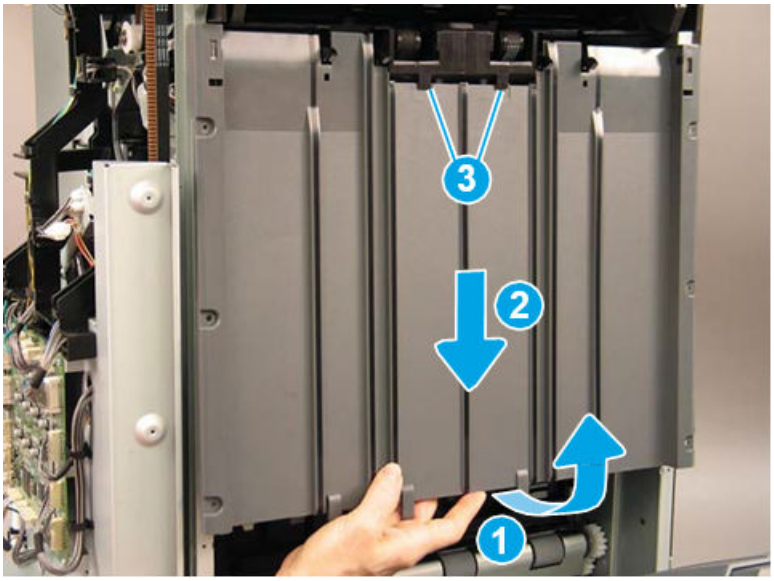


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away fromthe finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

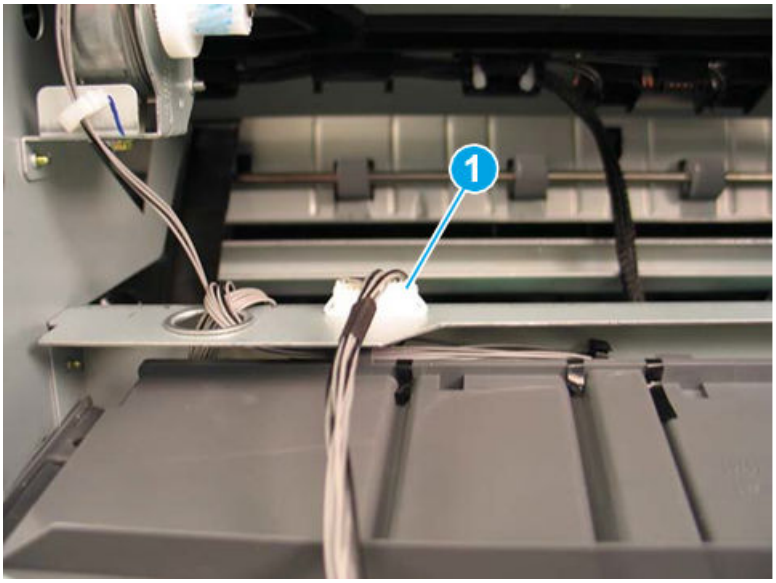
Figure 5-598 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

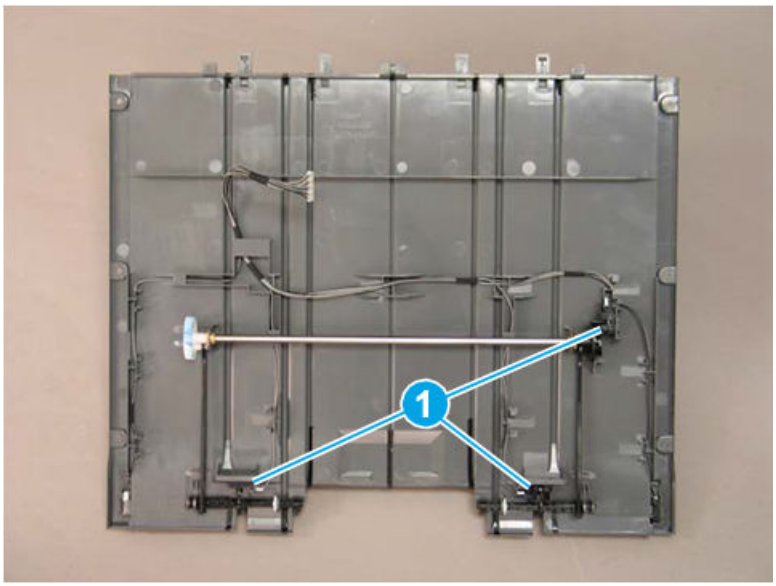
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-599 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the left upper cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left upper cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-600 Remove the left upper cover

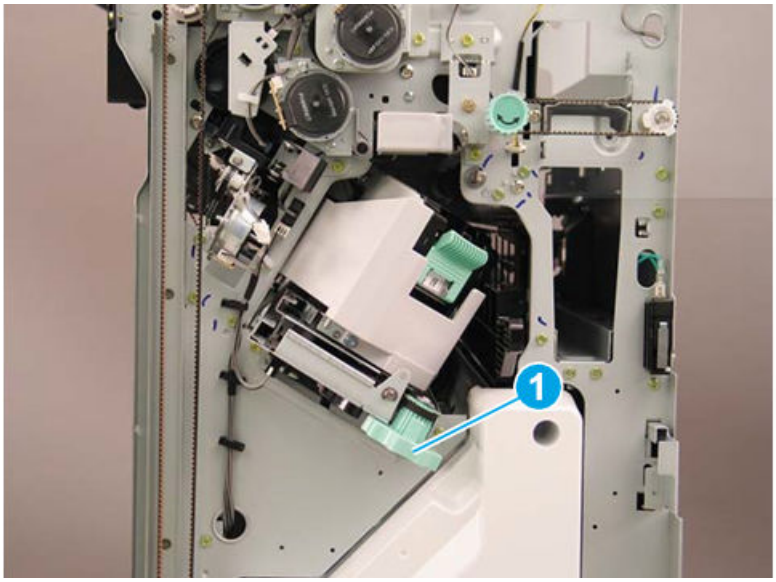


Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the ejector unit (finisher).

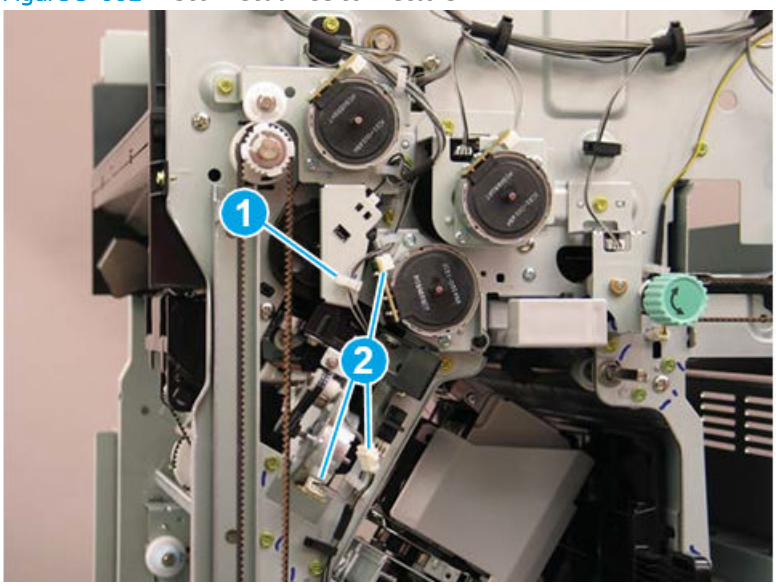
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 5-601 Move the staple unit to the center



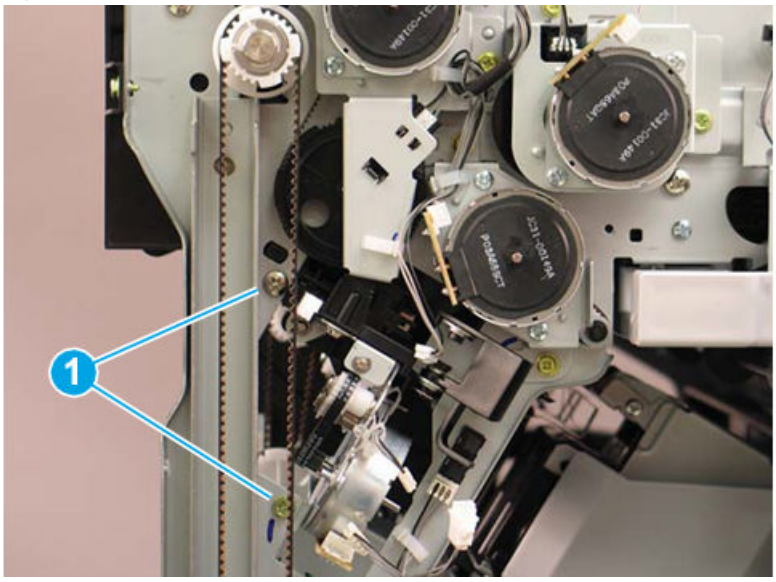
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 5-602 Disconnect three connectors



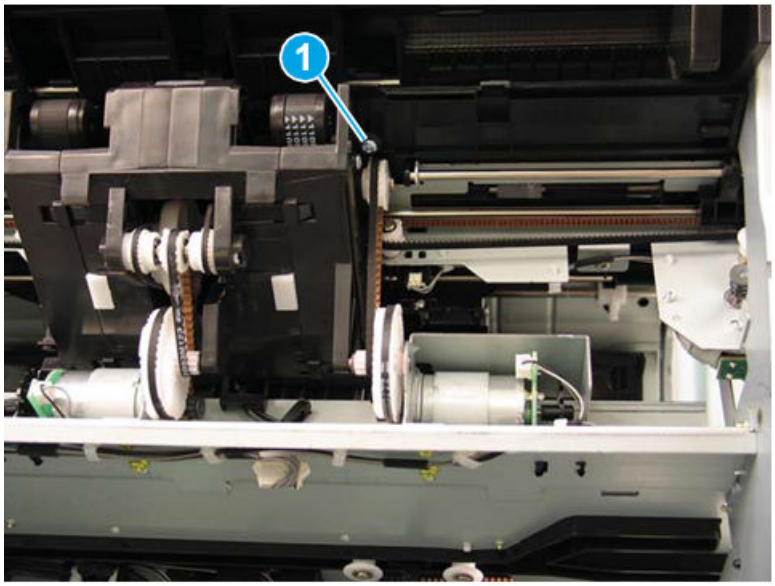
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-603 Remove two screws



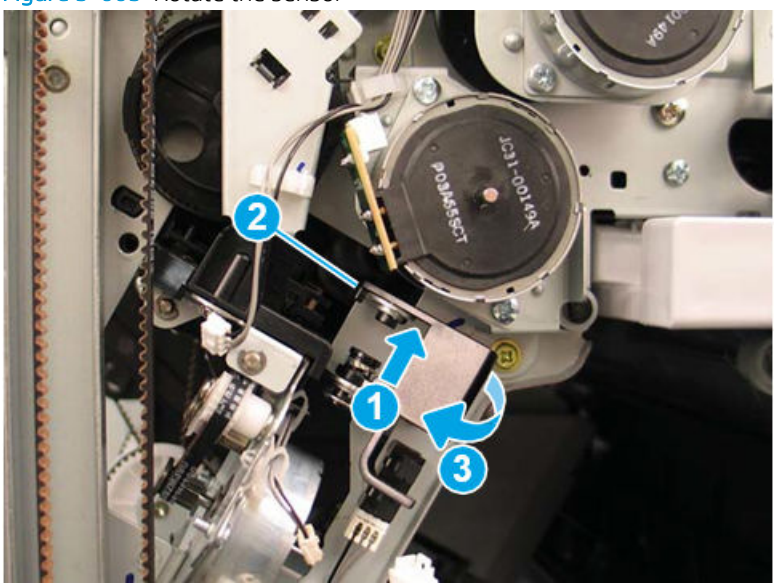
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-604 Remove one screw



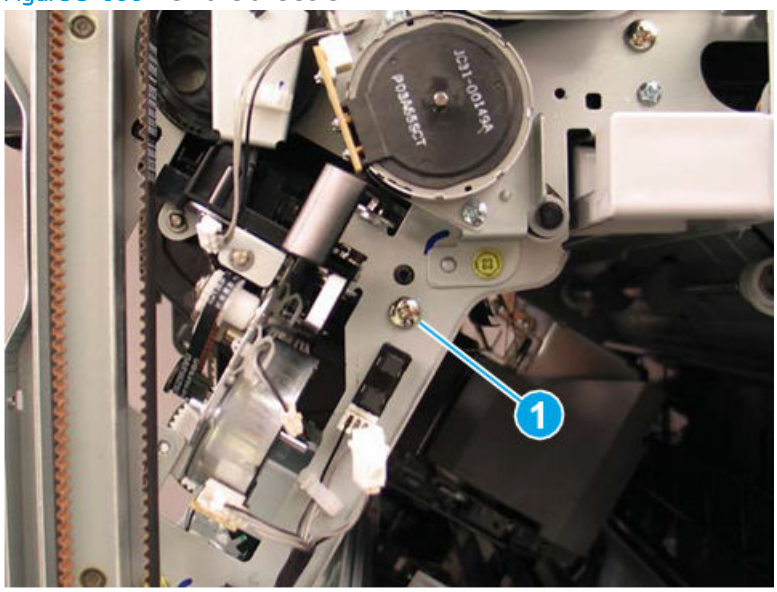
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 5-605 Rotate the sensor



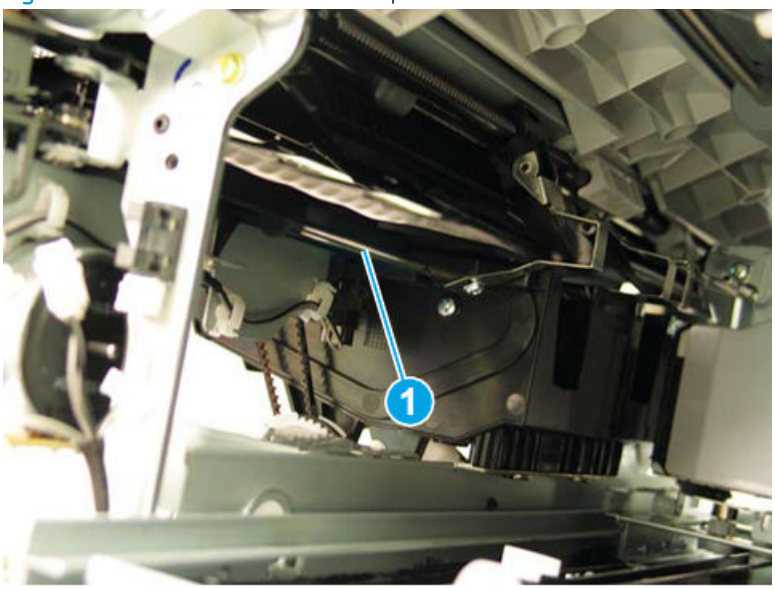
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-606 Remove one screw



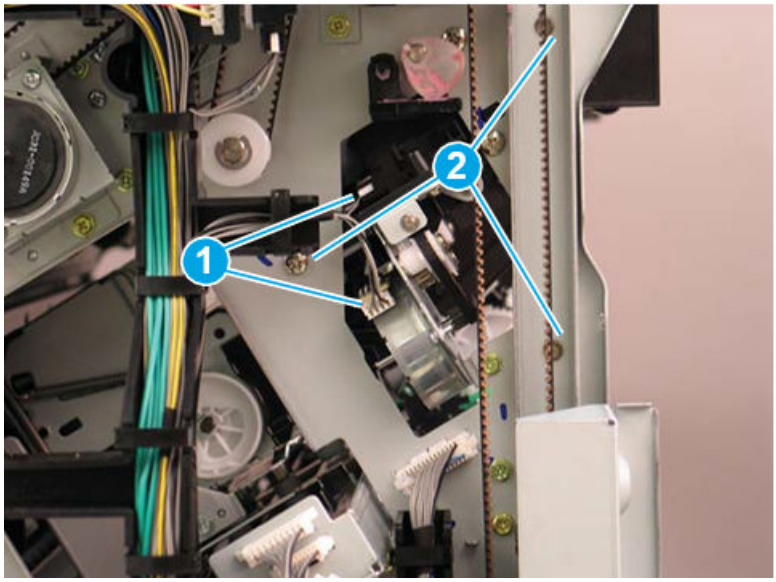
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 5-607 Remove the front tamper shaft



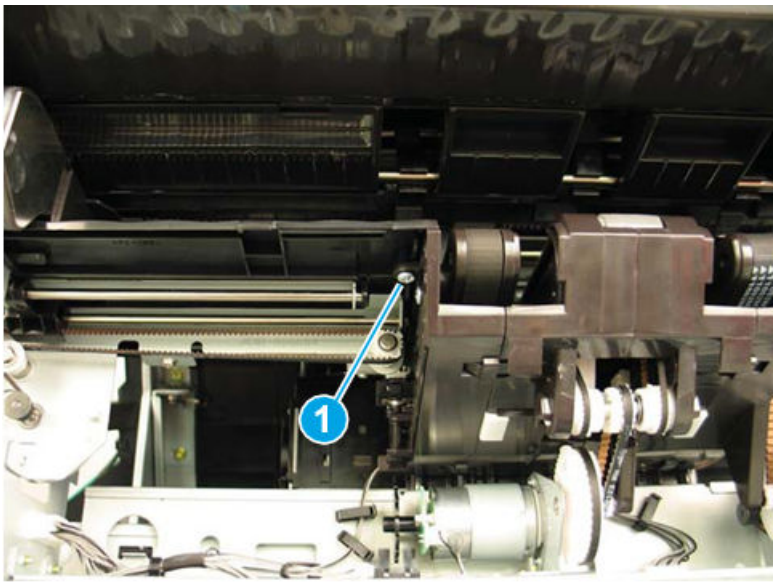
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-608 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



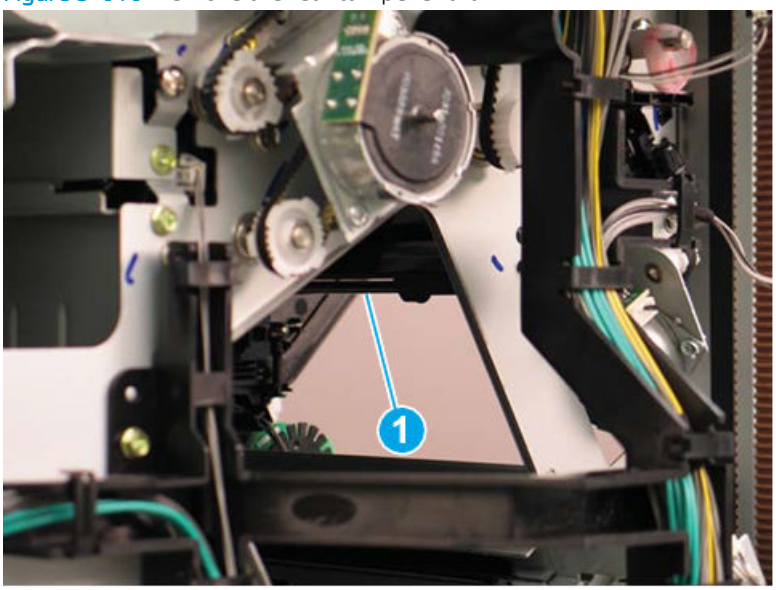
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-609 Remove one screw



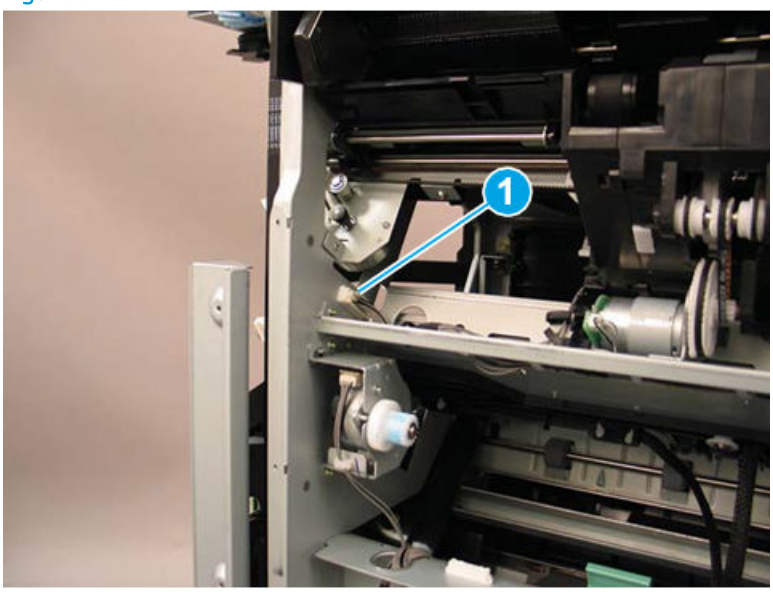
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 5-610 Remove the rear tamper shaft



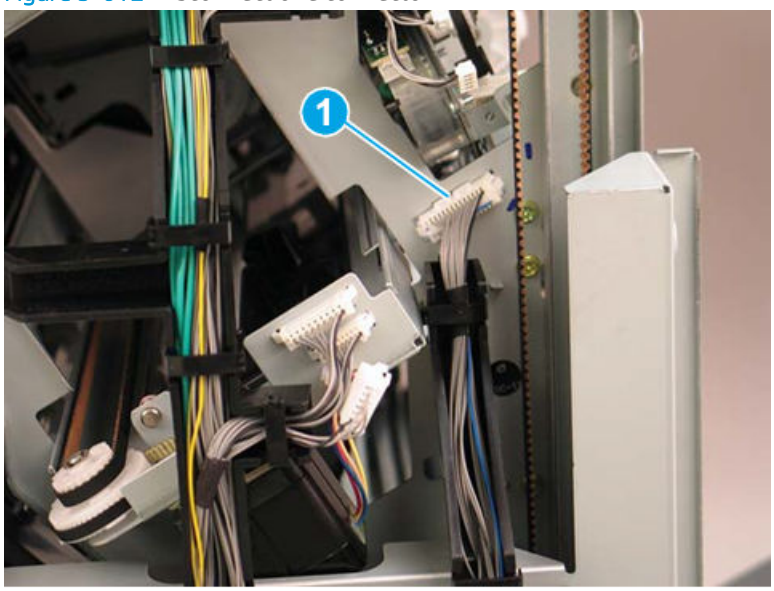
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-611 Disconnect one connector



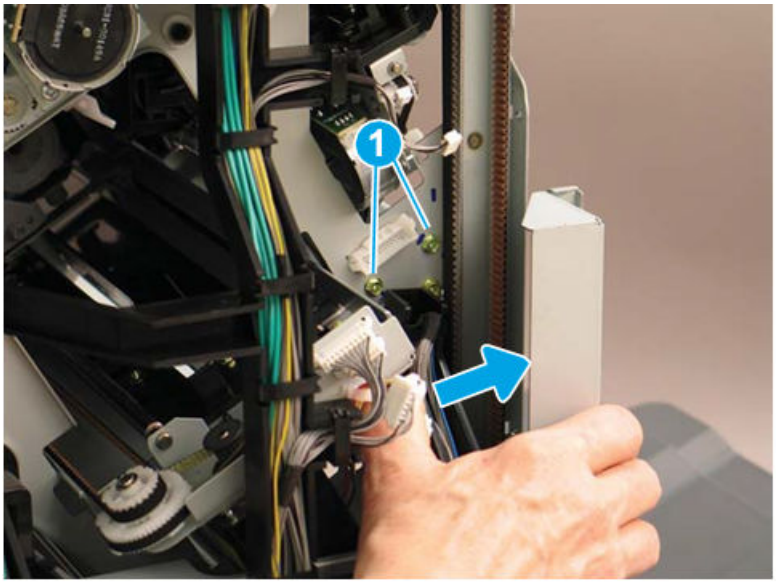
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-612 Disconnect one connector



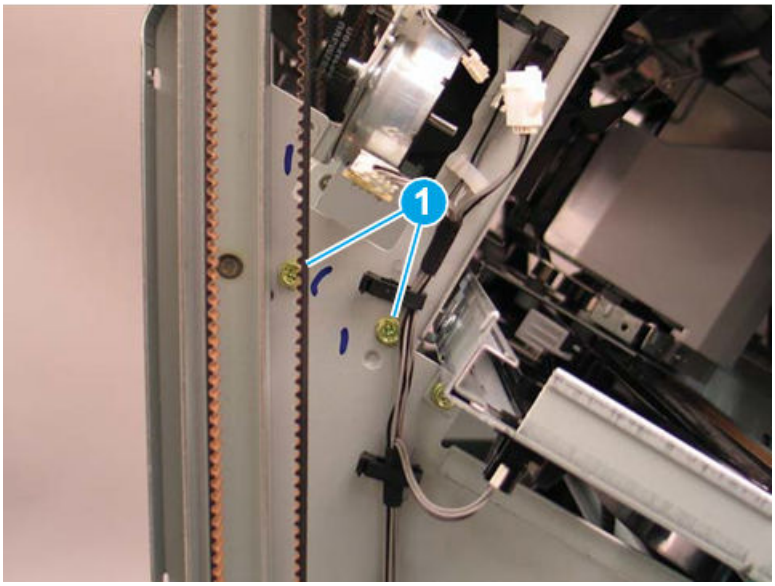
13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-613 Disconnect one connector



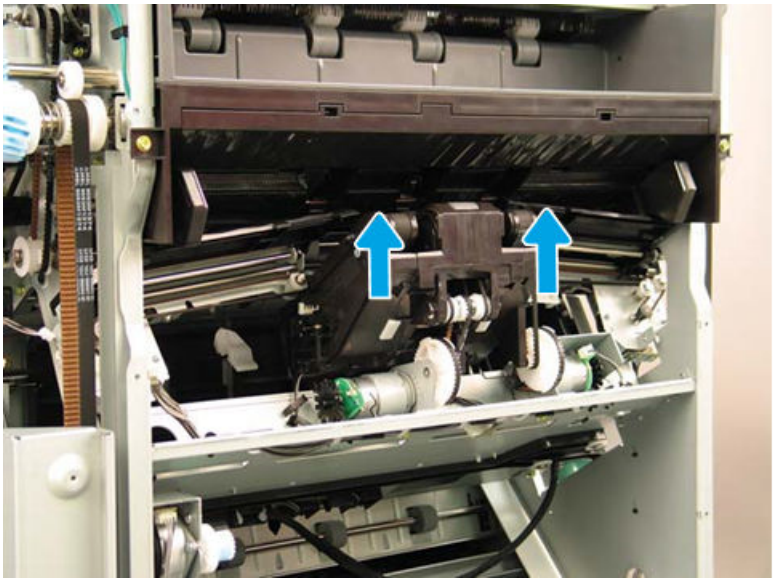
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-614 Remove two screws



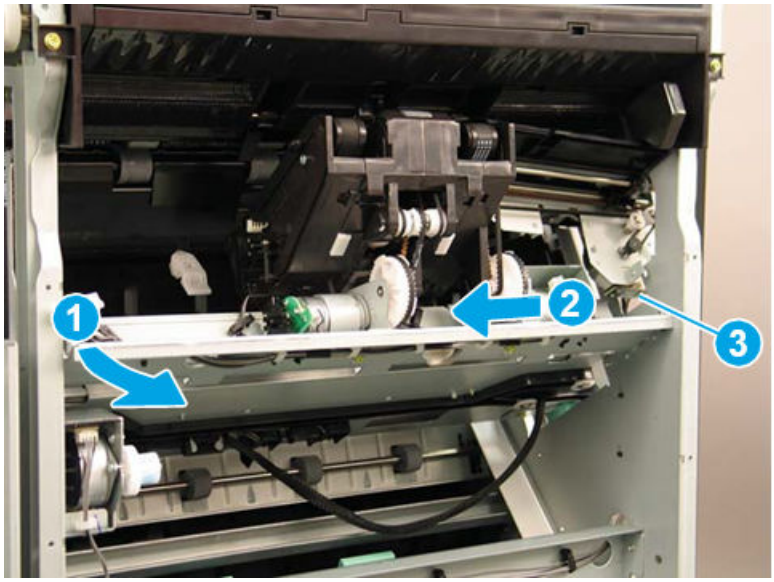
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 5-615 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 5-616 Remove the ejector unit

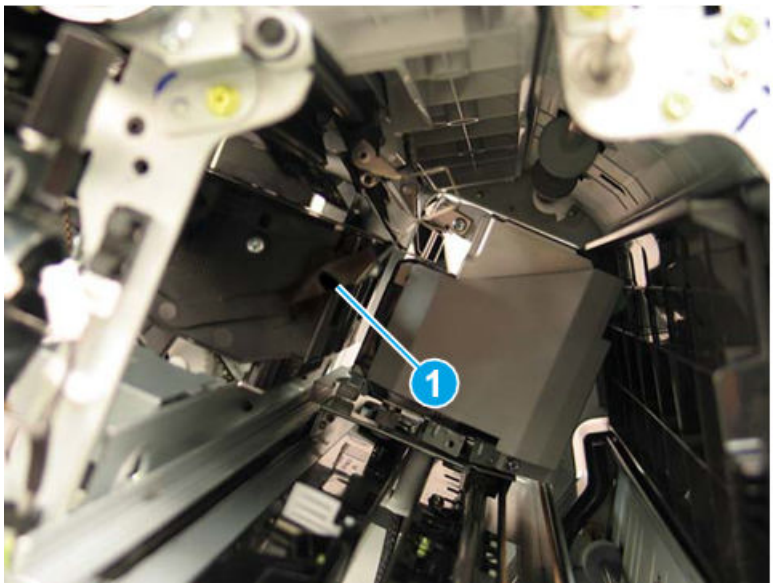


17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

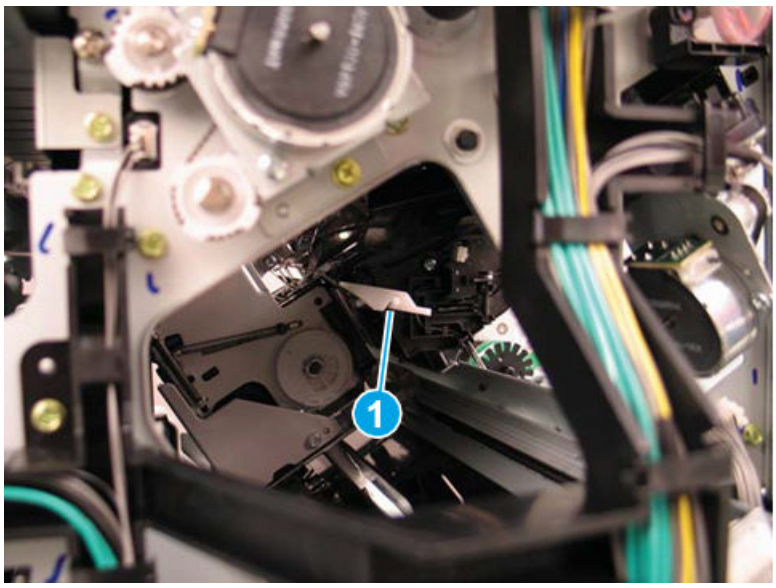
NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

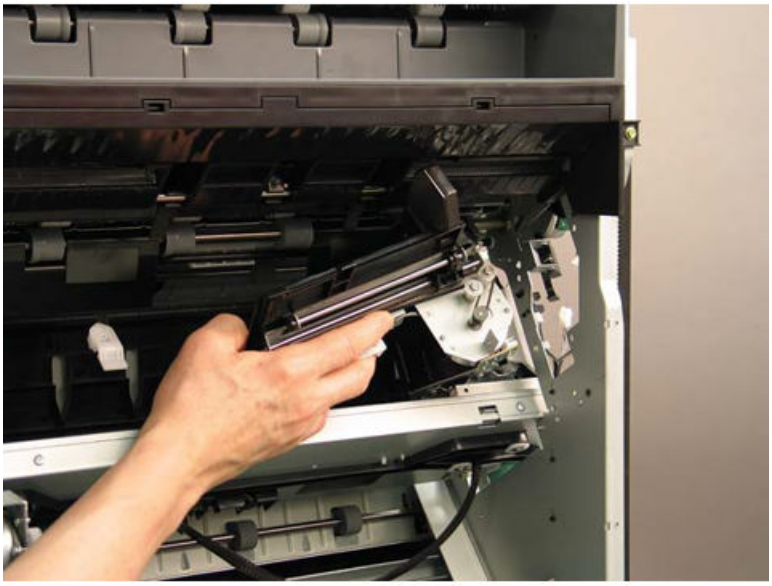


Remove the front tamper unit

Follow these steps to remove the front tamper unit.

▲ Lift the front tamper away from the finisher to remove it

Figure 5-617 Remove the front tamper

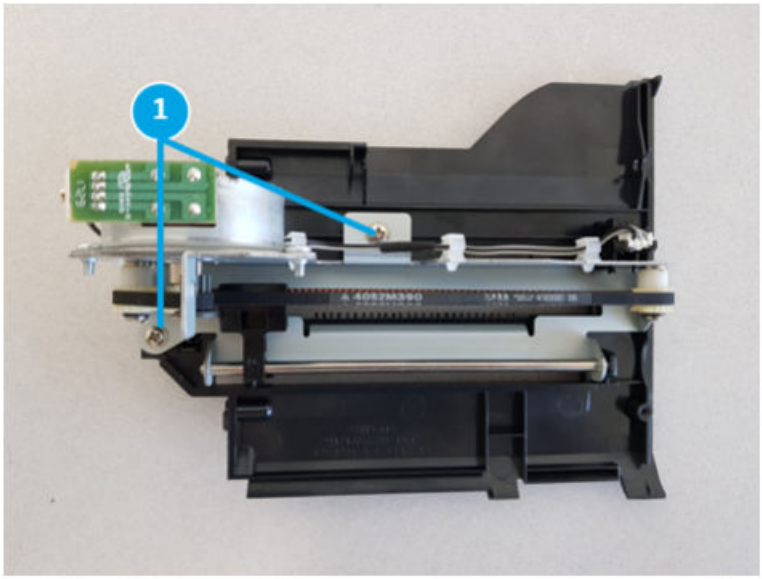


Remove the front tamper home sensor(S6)

Follow these steps to remove the front tamper home sensor(S6).

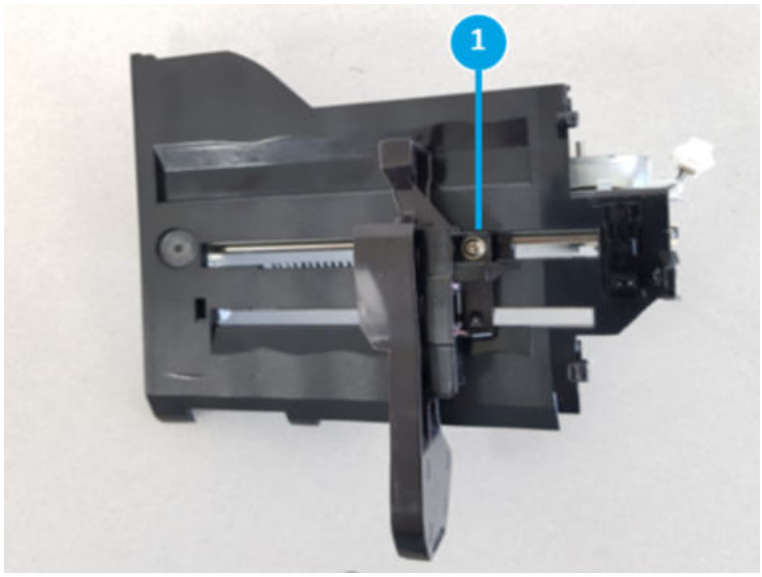
1. Remove two screws (callout 1) at front tamper.

Figure 5-618 Remove two screws



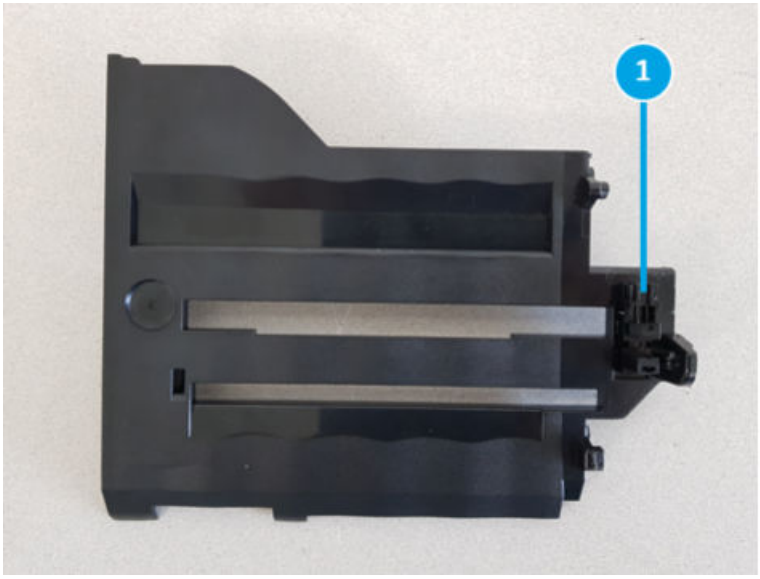
2. Remove one screw (callout 1)

Figure 5-619 Remove one screw



3. Remove front tamper home sensor(S6, callout 1)

Figure 5-620 Remove front tamper home sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front tamper motor (M4)

Learn how to remove and replace the front tamper motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front tamper motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-115 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Front tamper motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

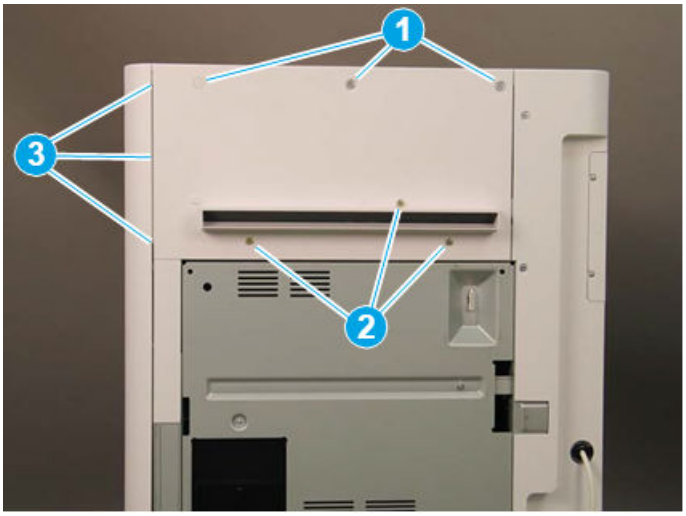
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-621 Remove the right upper cover

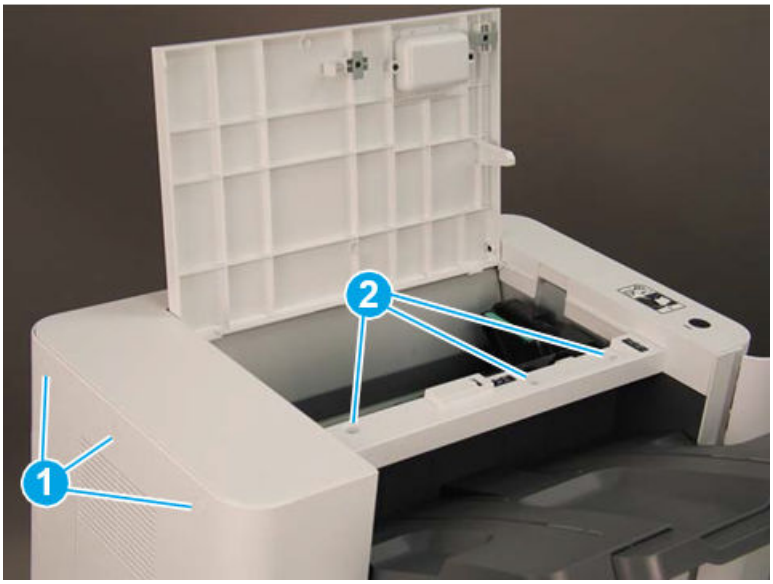


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

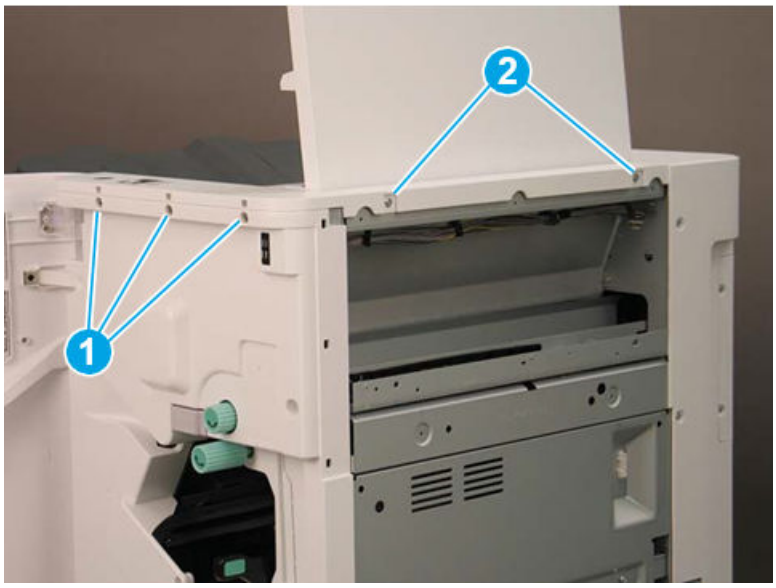
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-622 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

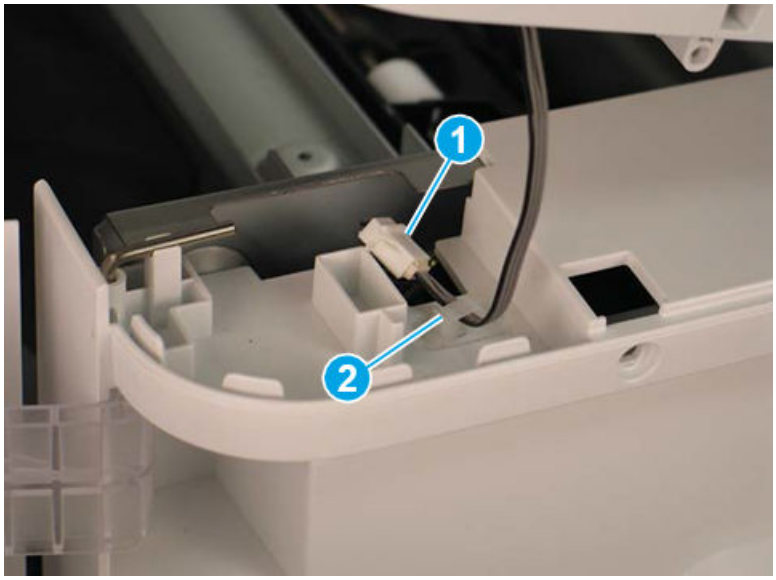
Figure 5-623 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-624 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

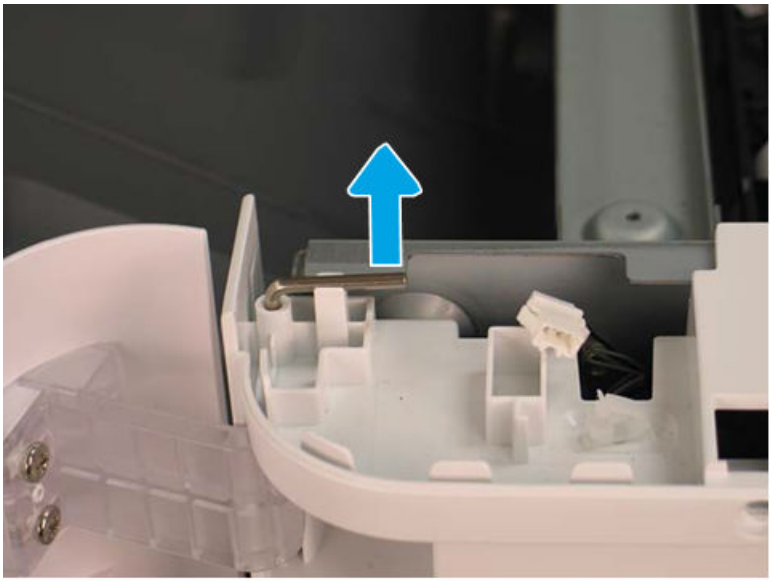


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

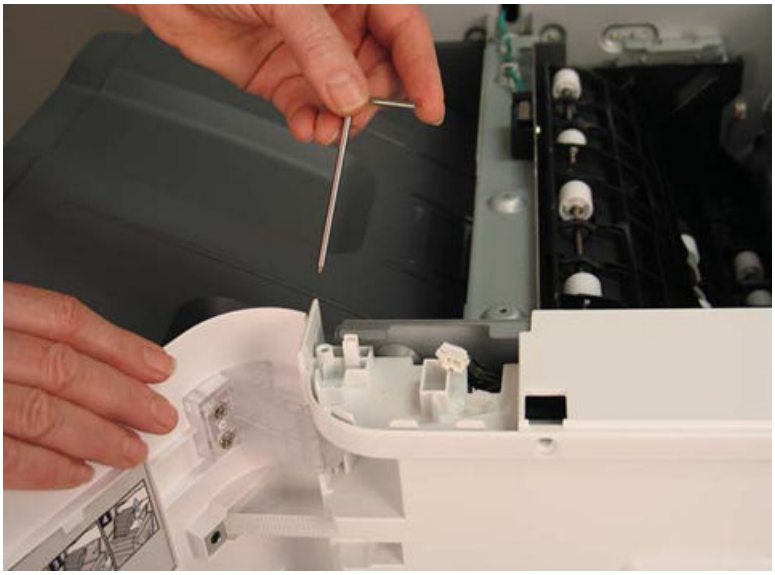
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-625 Lift the top hinge pin



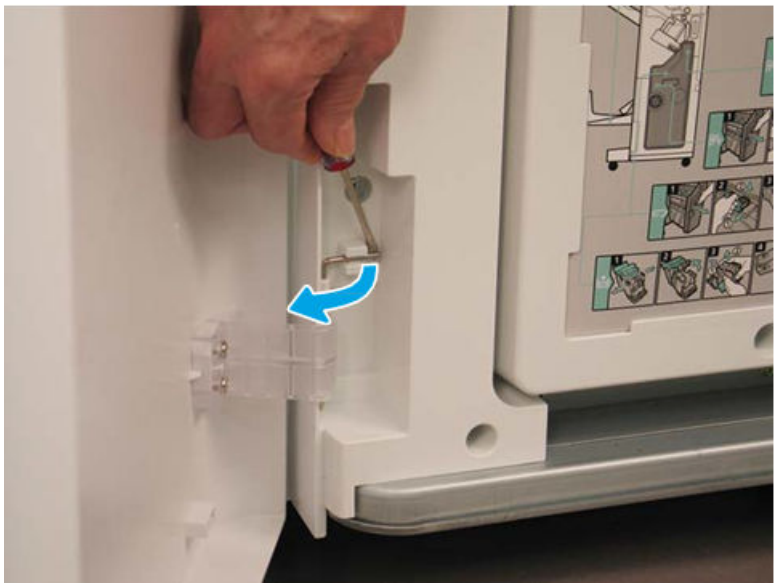
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-626 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-627 Release the lower hinge pin



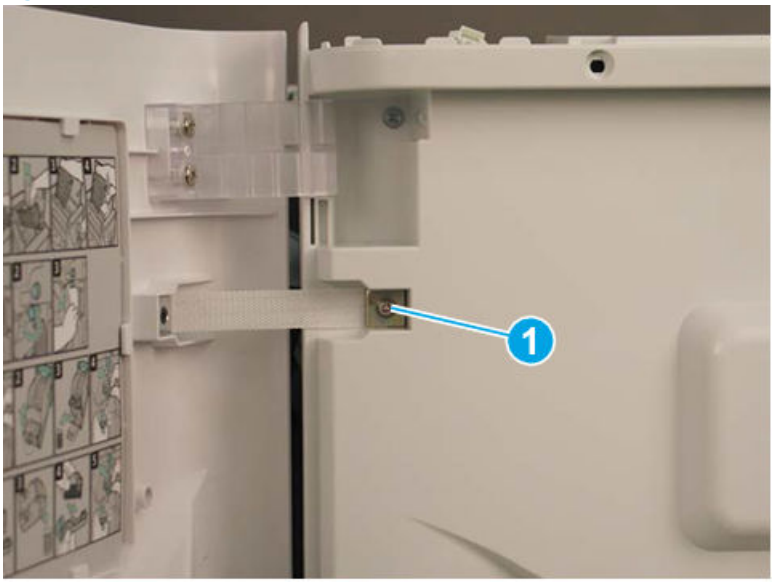
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-628 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-629 Remove the front door

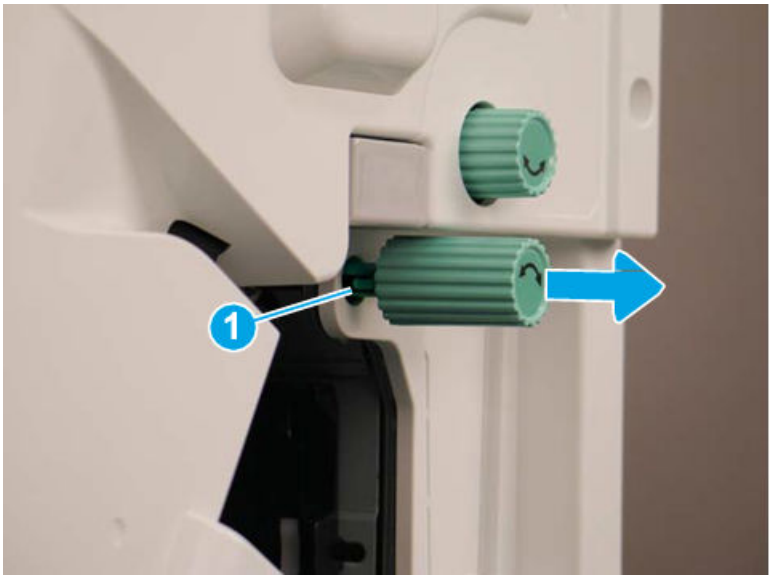


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-630 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

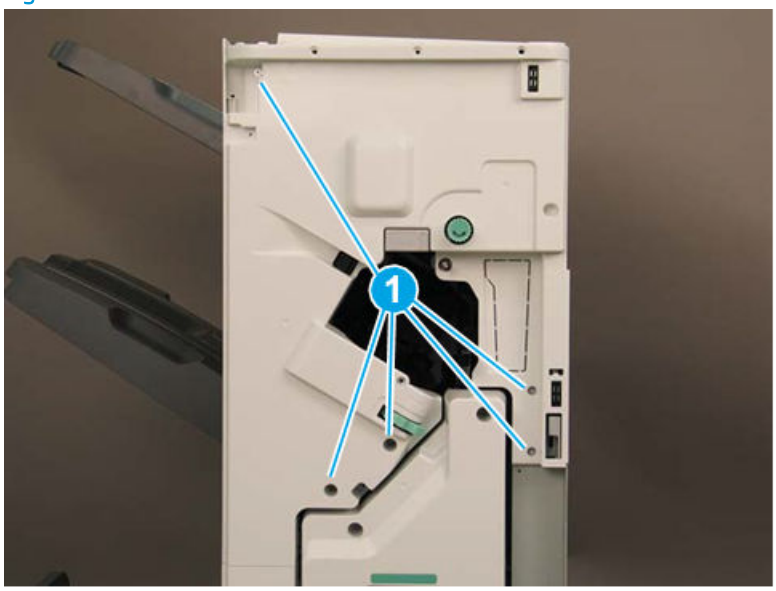
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-631 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-632 Remove the front cover

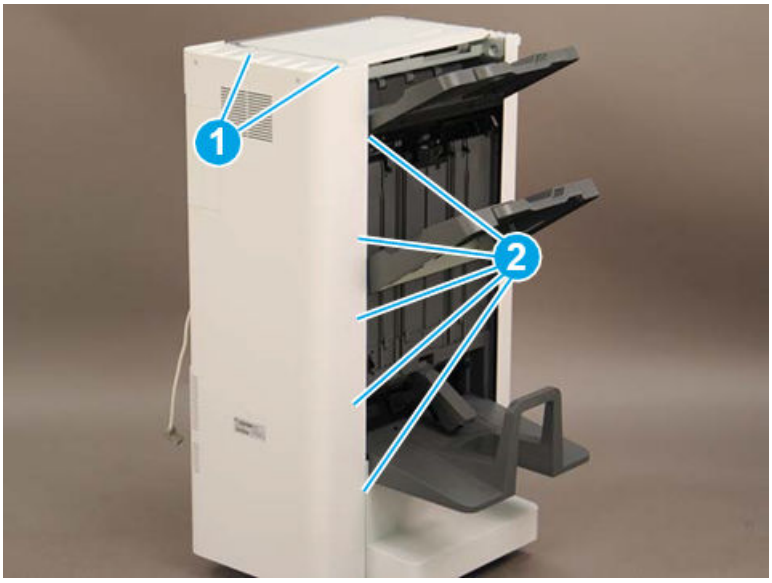


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-633 Remove seven screws

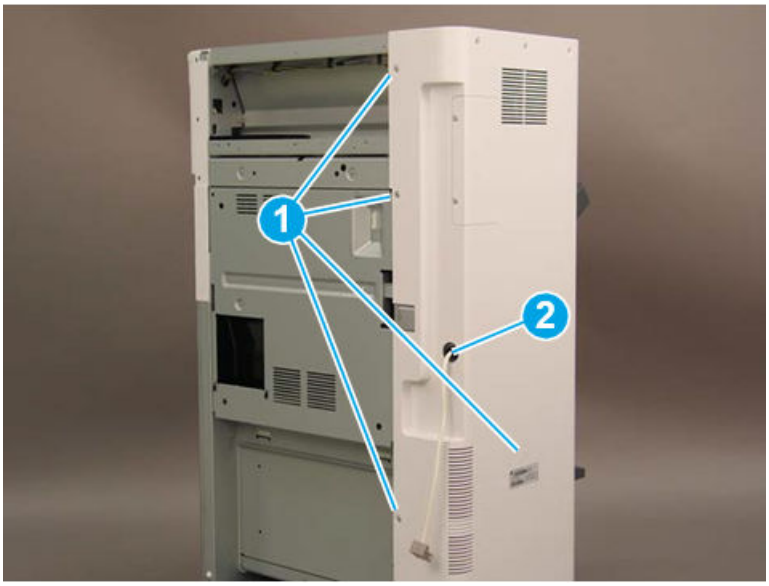


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-634 Remove the rear cover

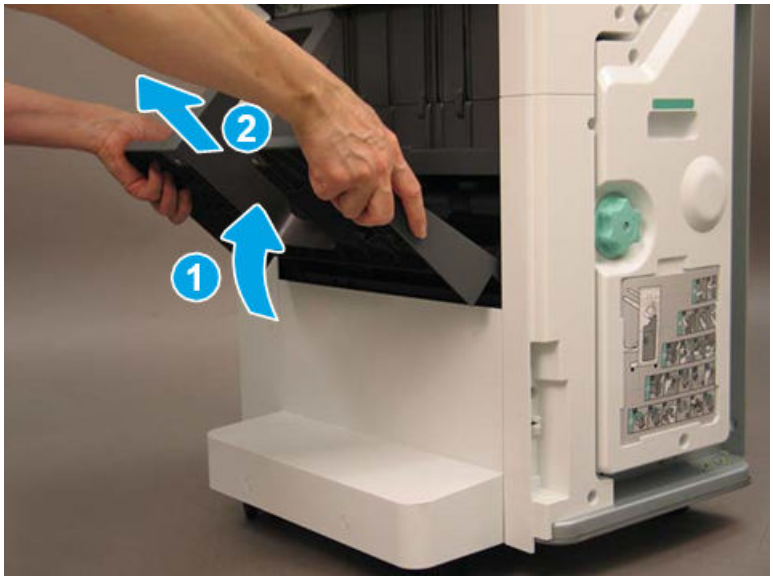


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-635 Remove the booklet output tray



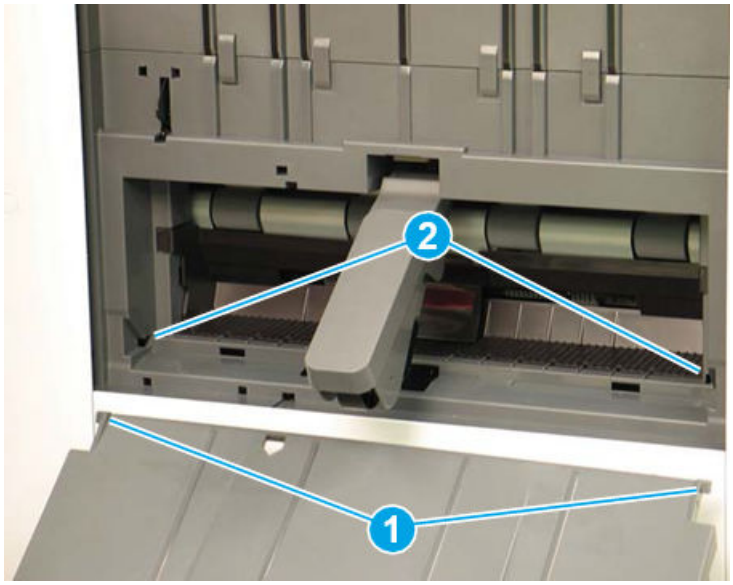
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-636 Install the booklet output tray

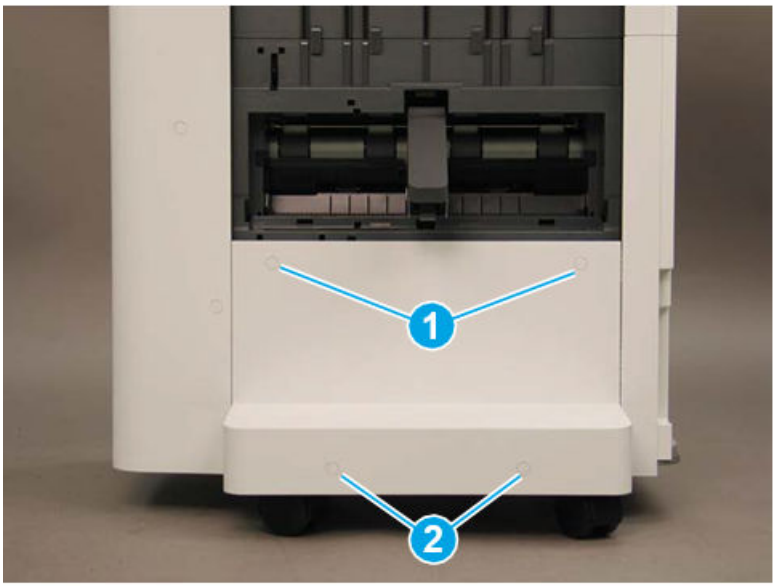


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-637 Remove four screws

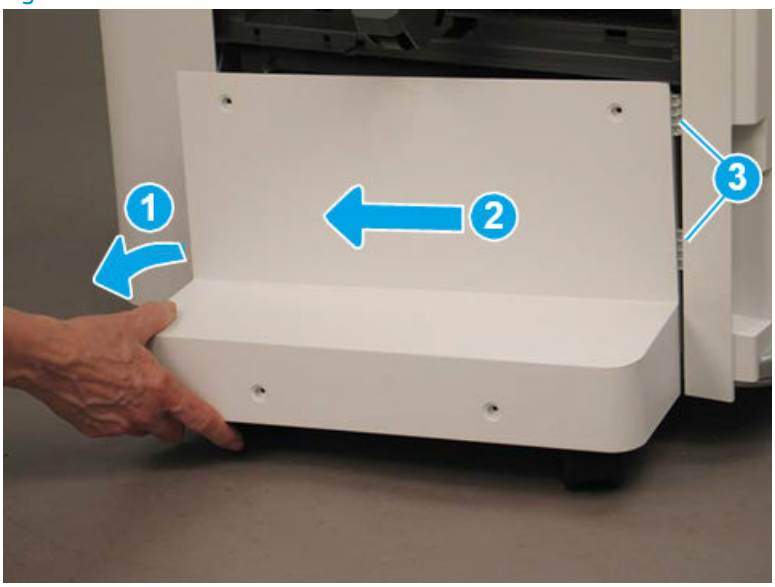


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-638 Remove the caster cover



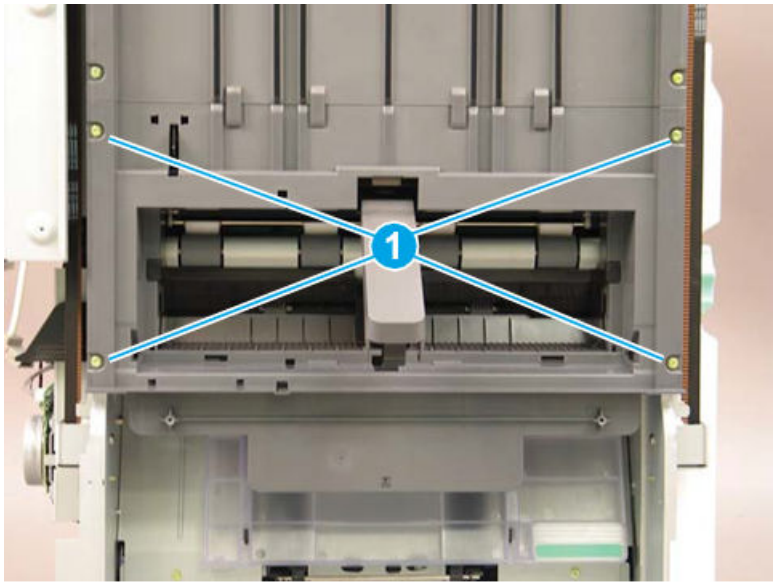
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-639 Remove four screws

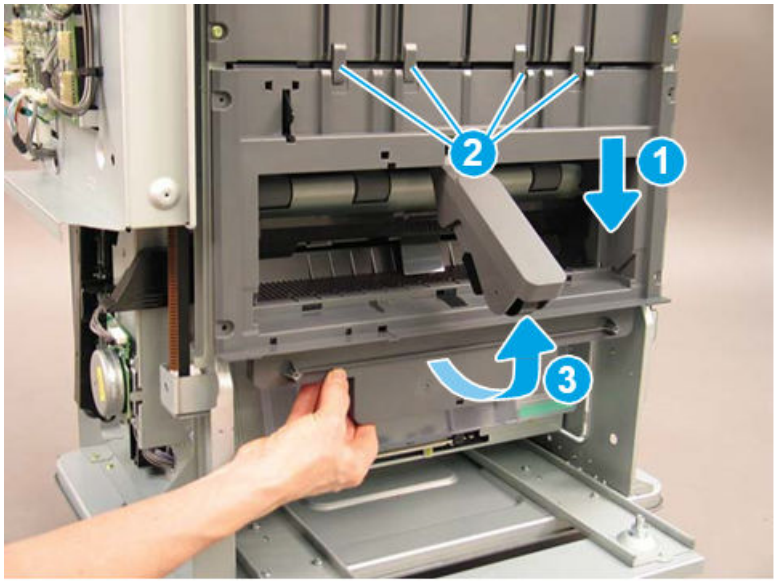


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

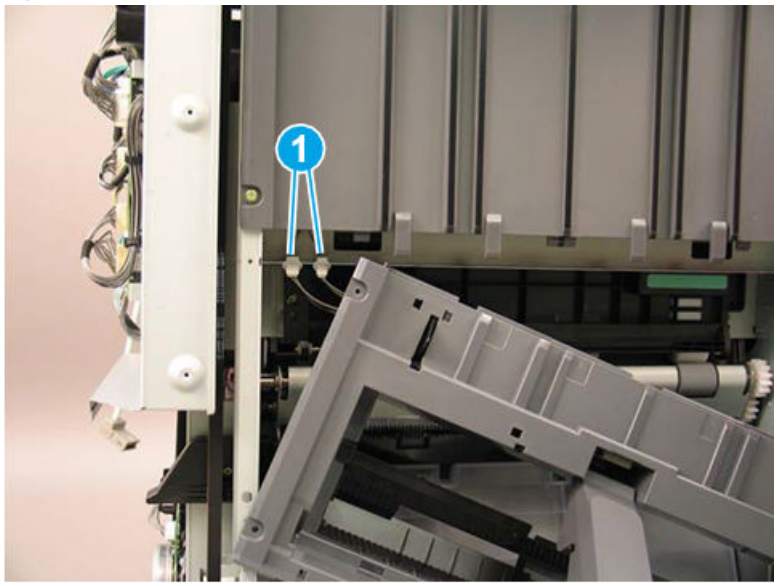
Figure 5-640 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

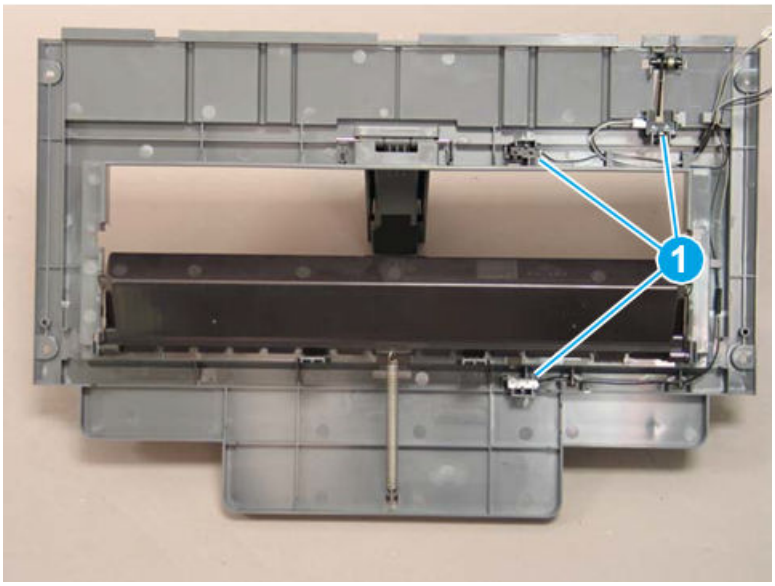
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-641 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-642 Remove the left lower cover

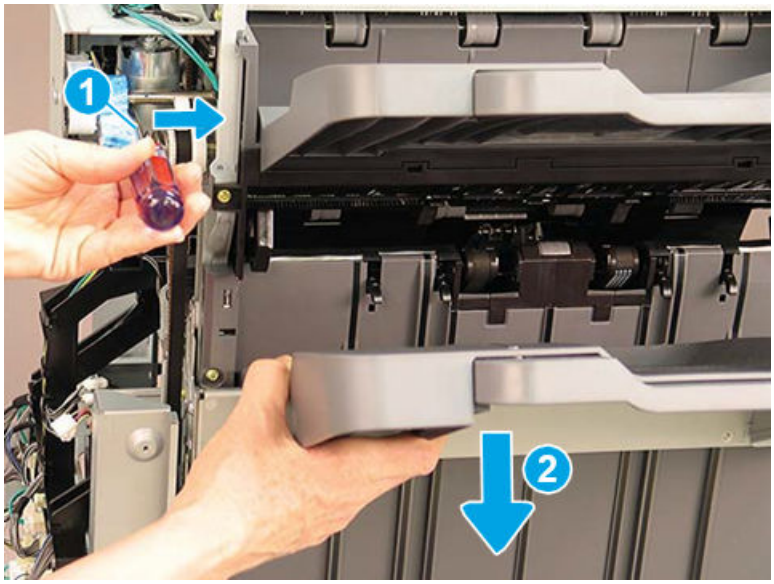


Remove the left upper cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover (finisher).

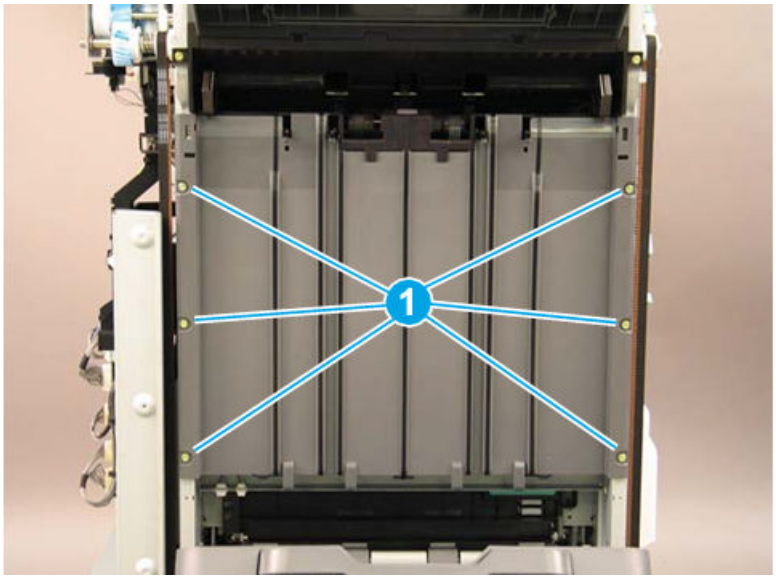
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 5-643 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-644 Remove six screws

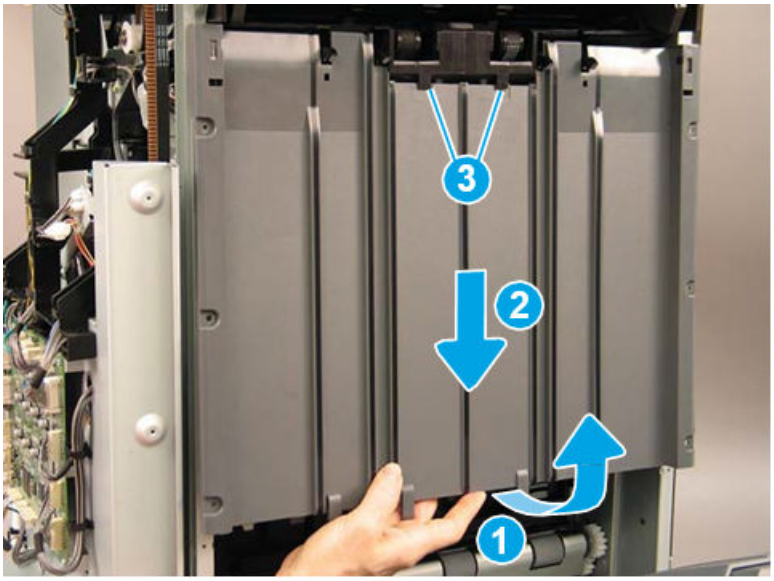


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away fromthe finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

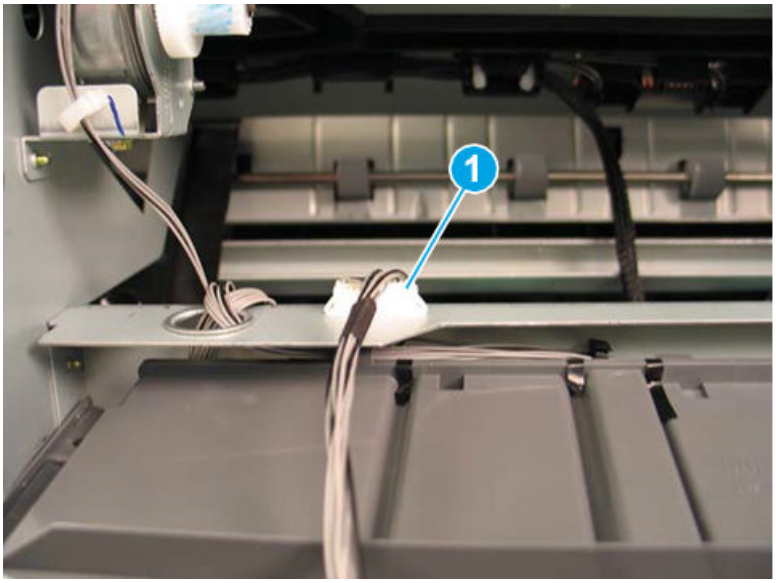
Figure 5-645 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

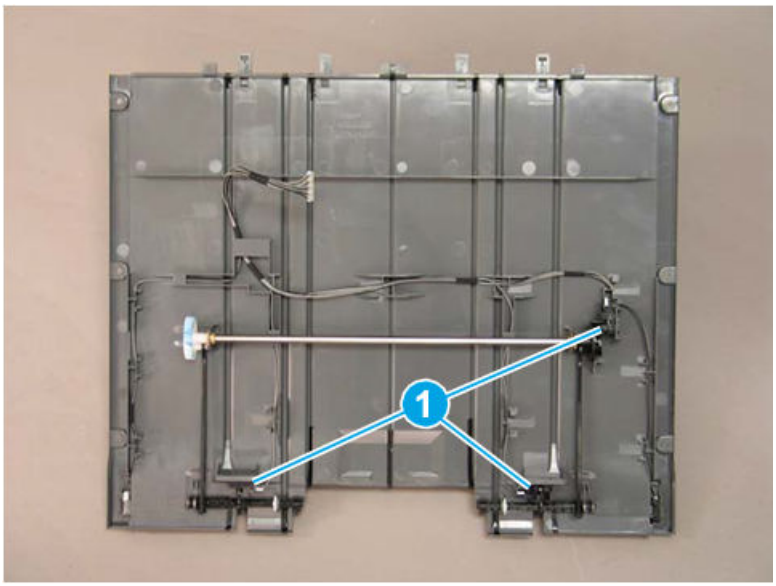
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-646 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the left upper cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left upper cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-647 Remove the left upper cover

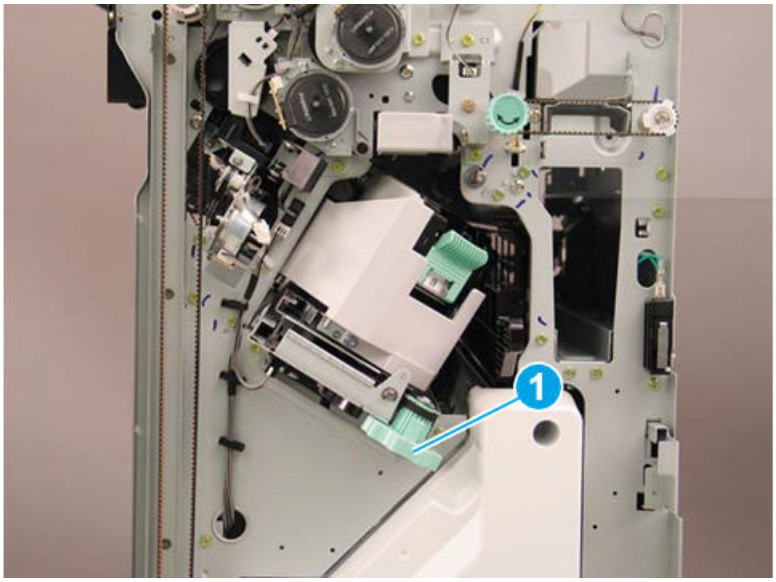


Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the ejector unit (finisher).

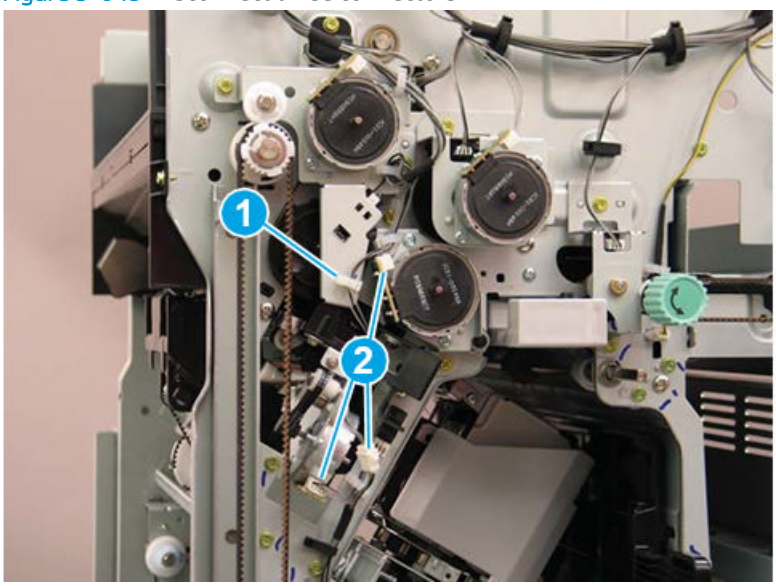
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 5-648 Move the staple unit to the center



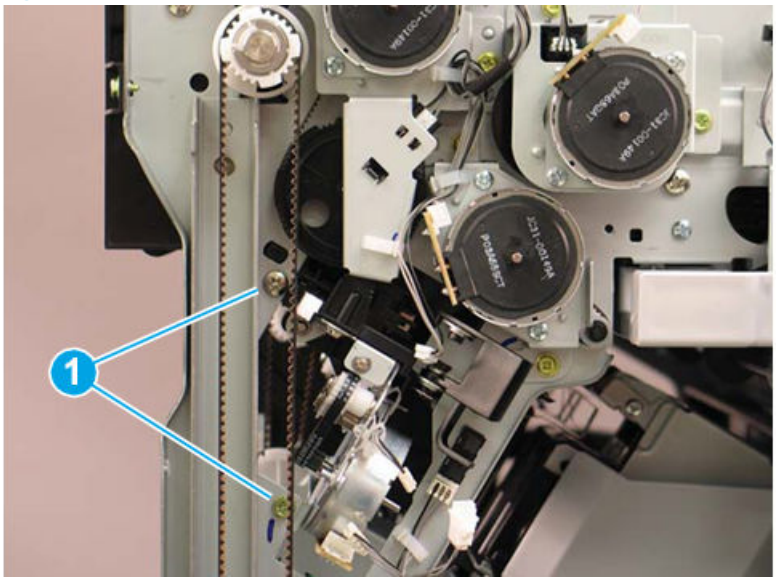
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 5-649 Disconnect three connectors



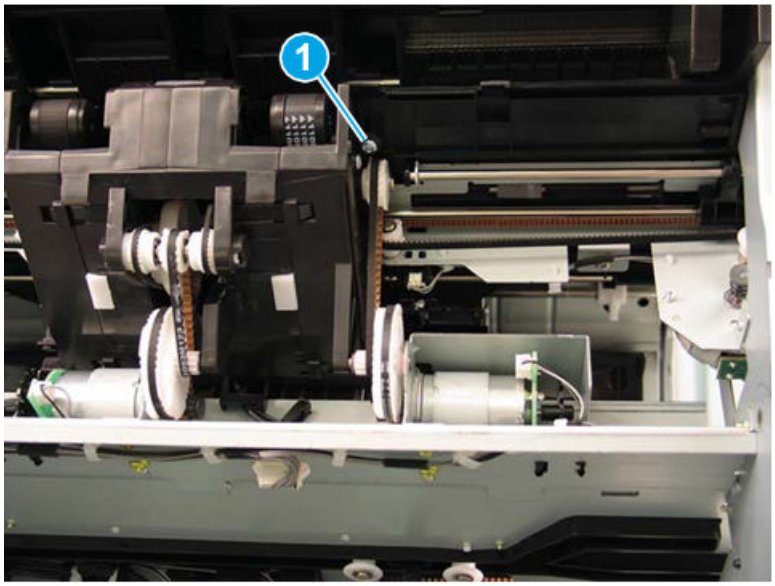
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-650 Remove two screws



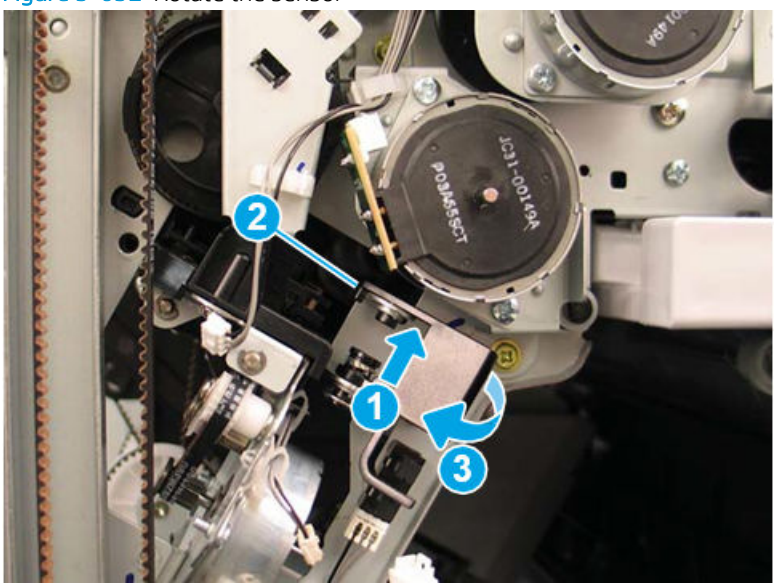
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-651 Remove one screw



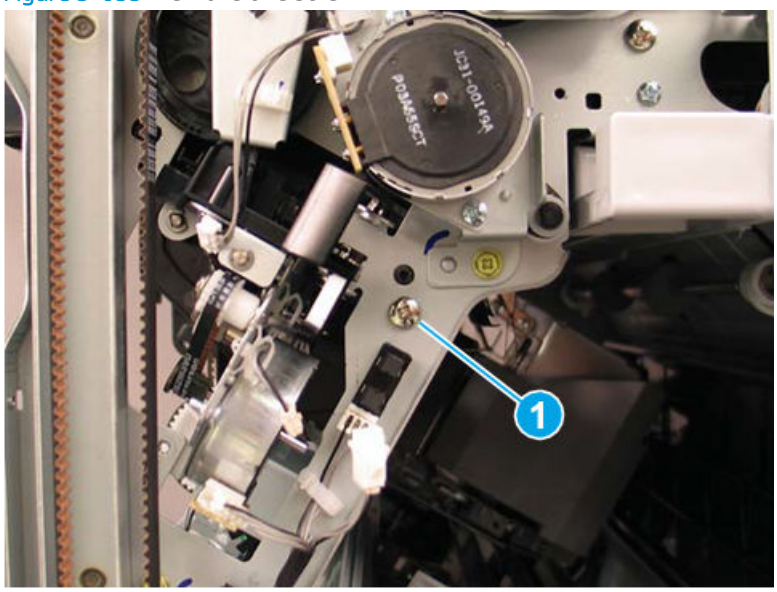
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 5-652 Rotate the sensor



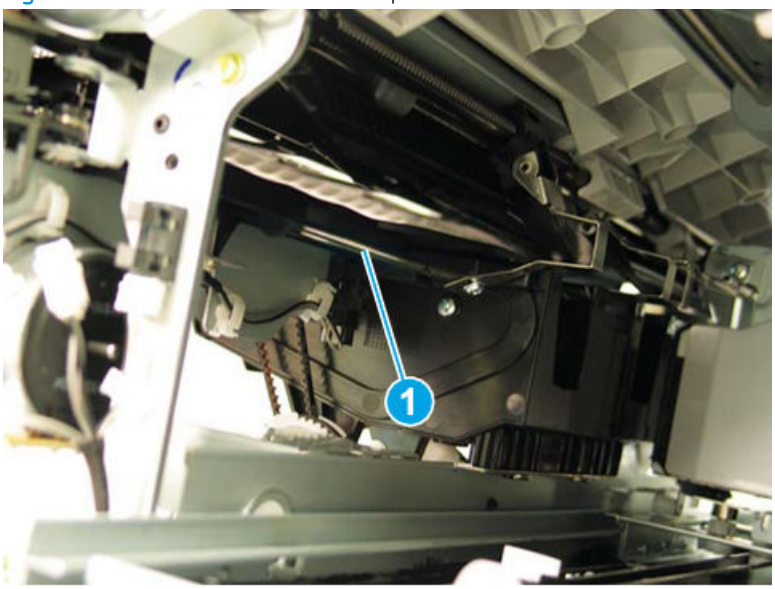
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-653 Remove one screw



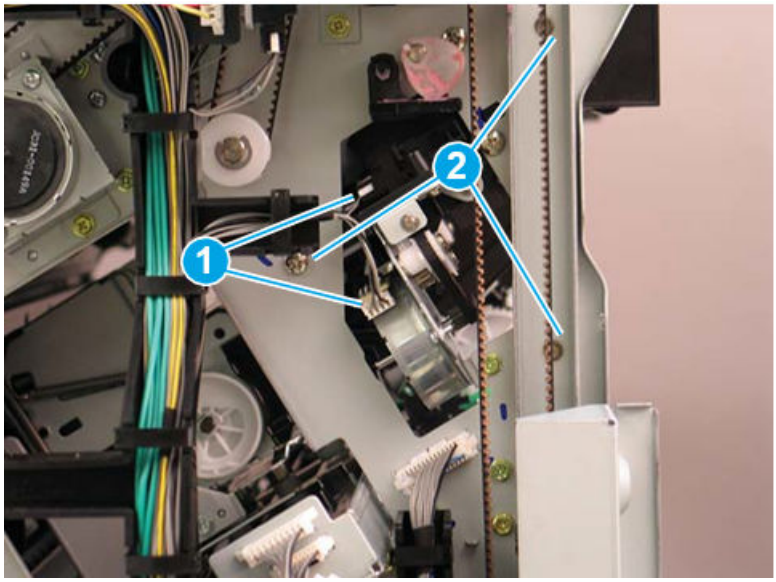
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 5-654 Remove the front tamper shaft



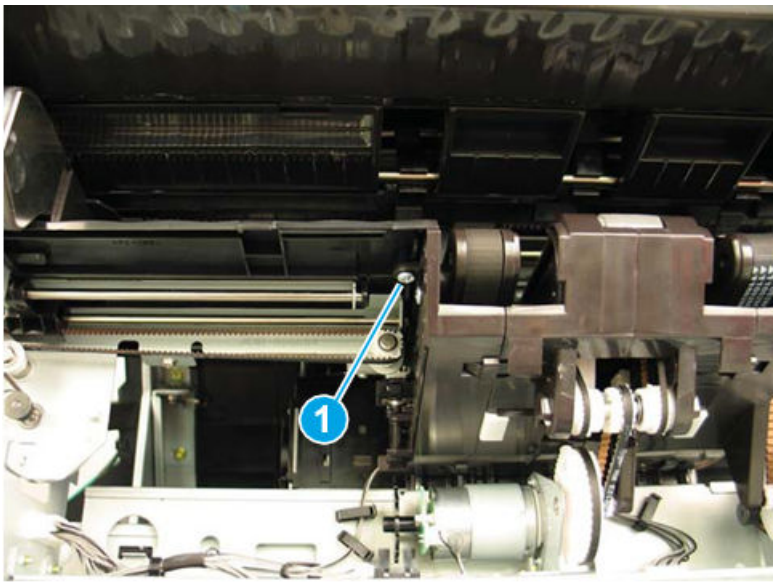
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-655 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



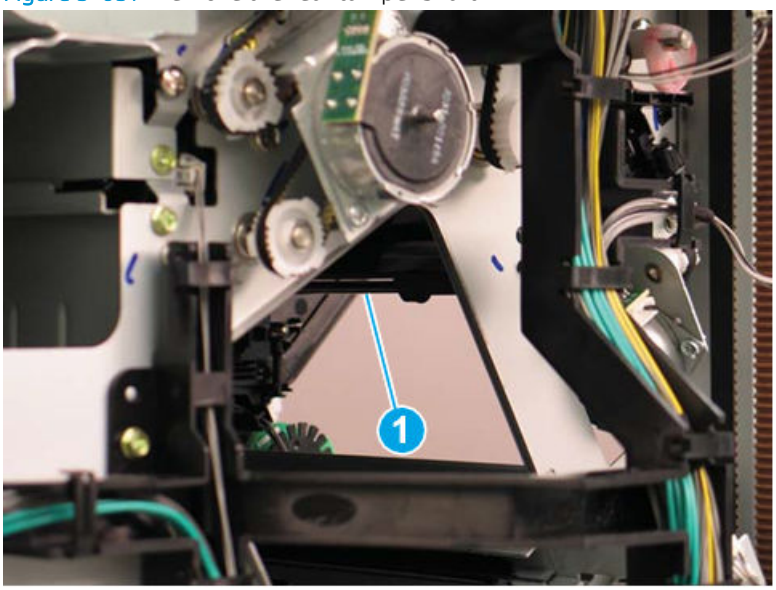
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-656 Remove one screw



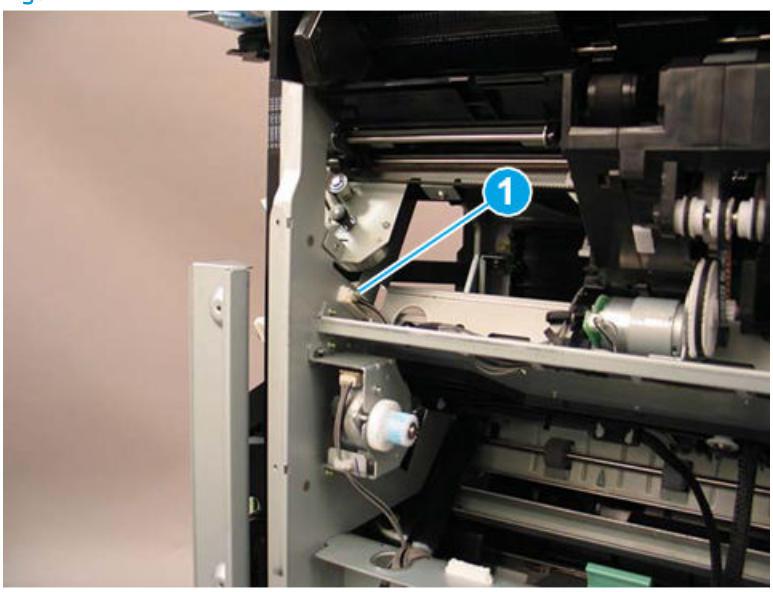
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 5-657 Remove the rear tamper shaft



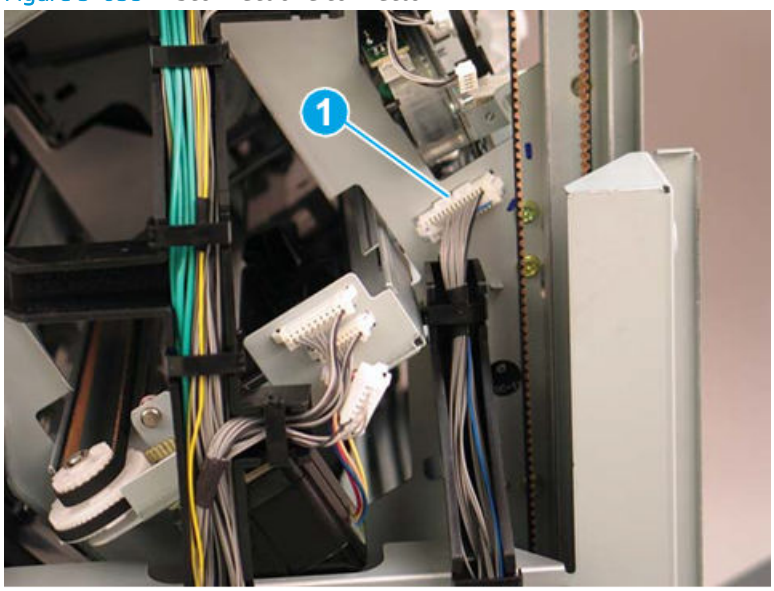
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-658 Disconnect one connector



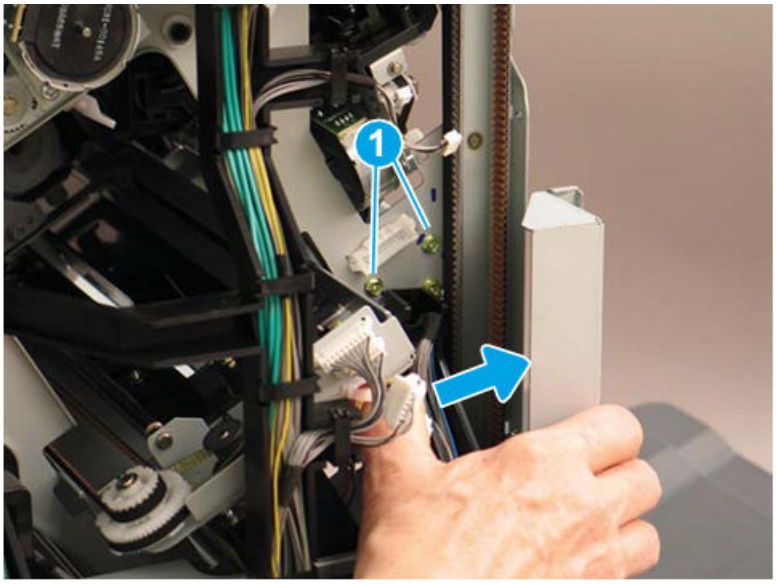
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-659 Disconnect one connector



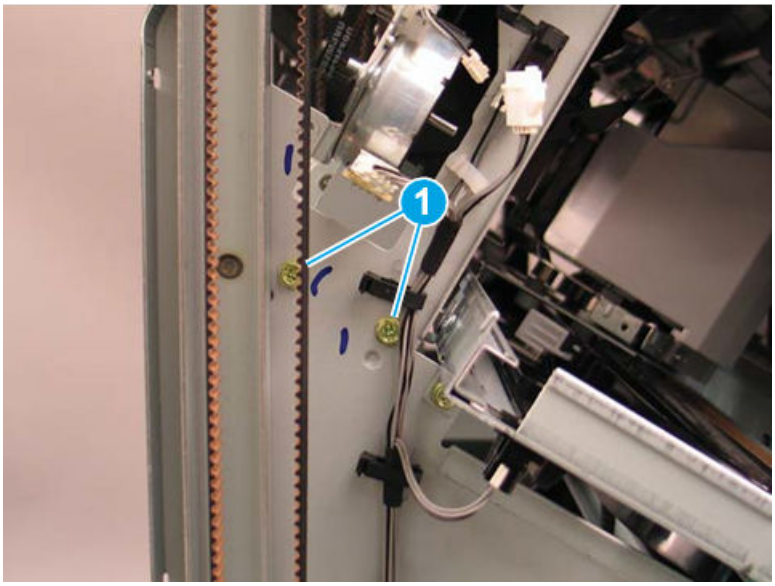
13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-660 Disconnect one connector



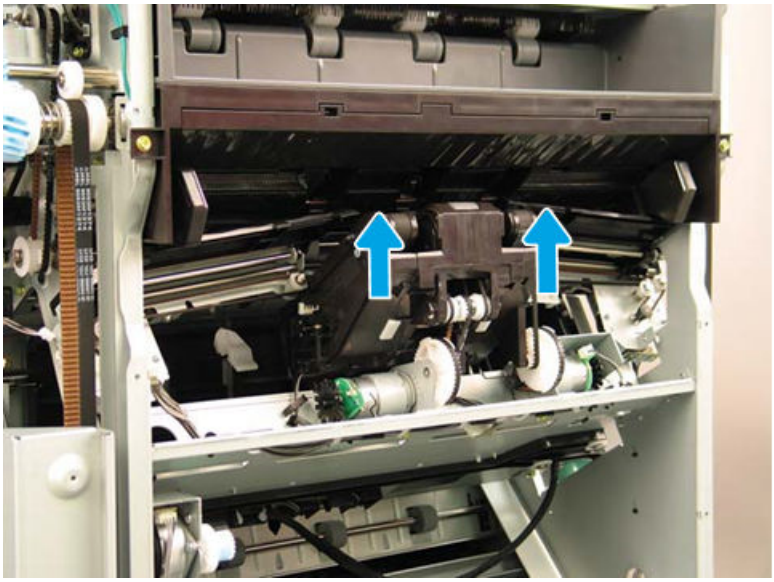
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-661 Remove two screws



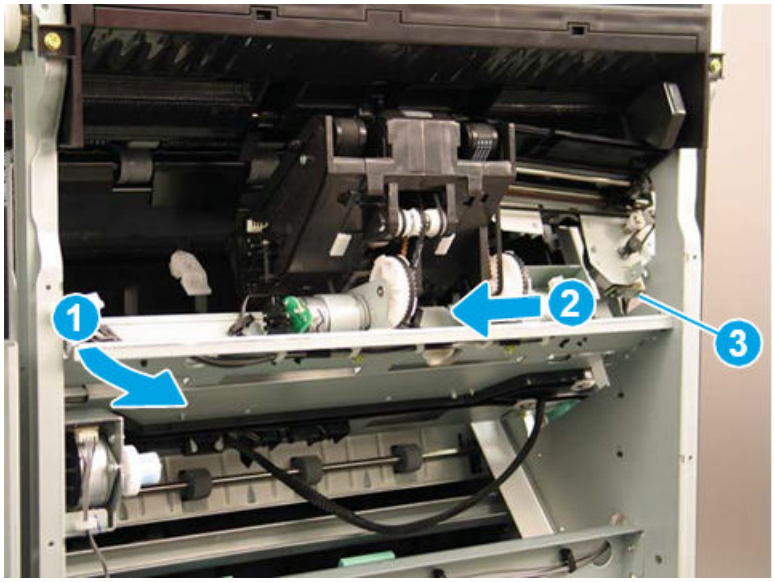
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 5-662 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 5-663 Remove the ejector unit

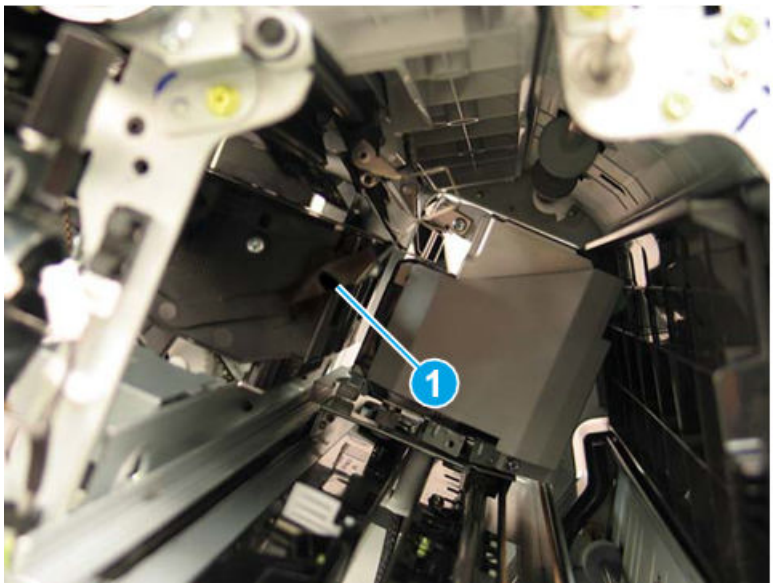


17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

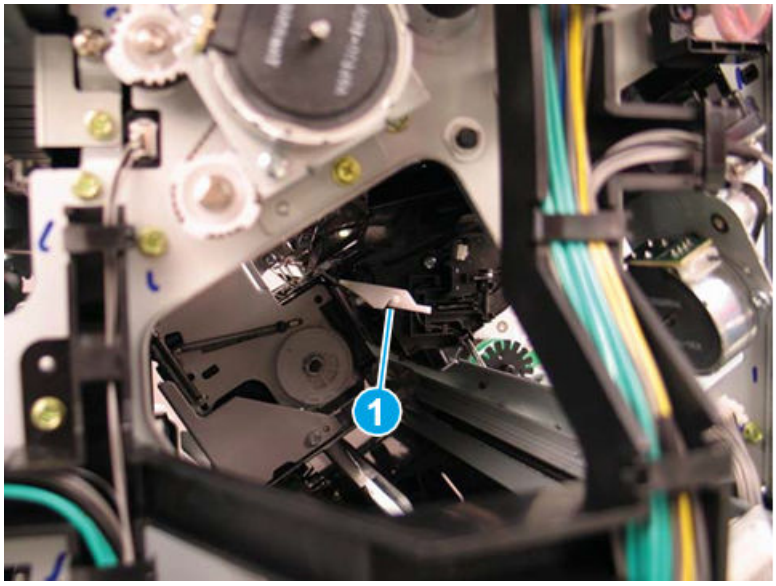
NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

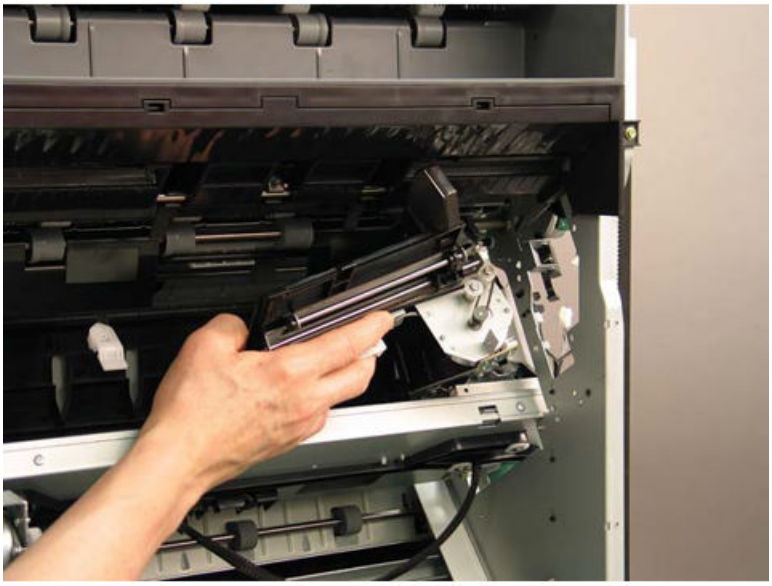


Remove the front tamper unit

Follow these steps to remove the front tamper unit.

▲ Lift the front tamper away from the finisher to remove it

Figure 5-664 Remove the front tamper

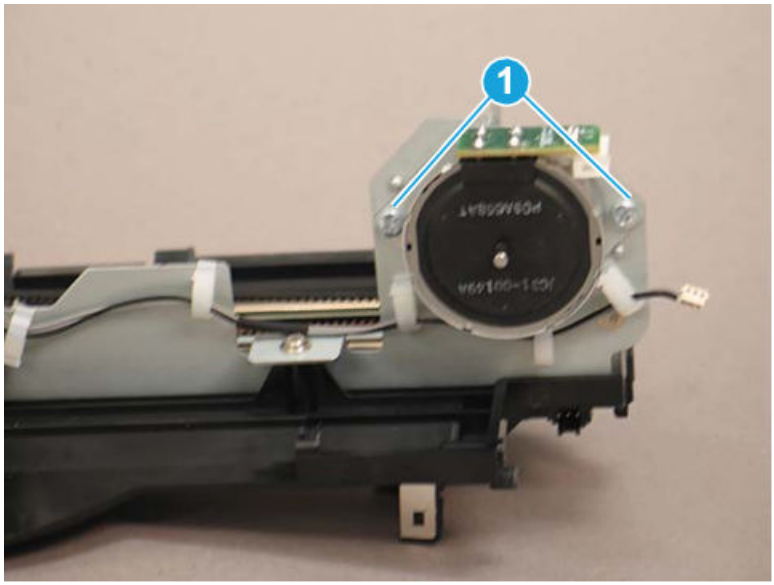


Remove the front tamper motor (M4)

Follow these steps to remove the front tamper motor (M4).

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-665 Remove two screws

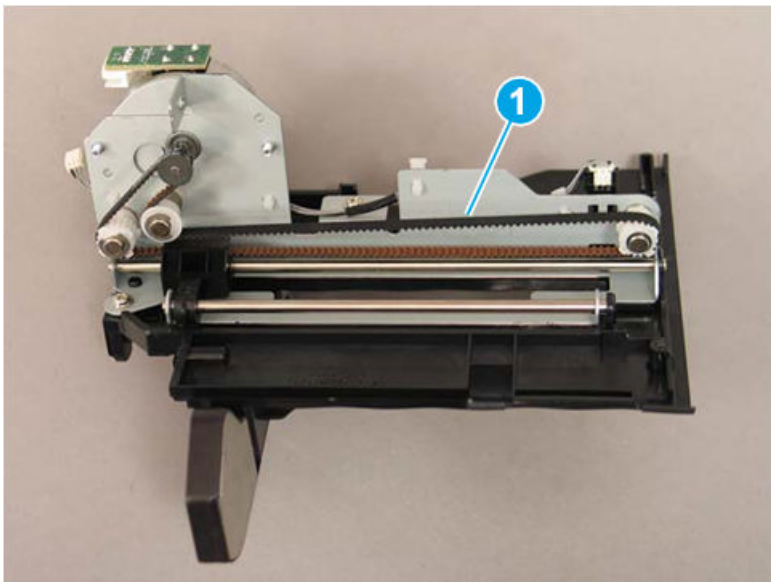


2. Release the belt (callout 1), and then remove the front tamper motor.

TIP: Make sure that the belt is routed correctly when reinstalling the motor.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-666 Release the belt and remove the motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Rear tamper

Removal and replacement: Rear tamper unit

Learn how to remove and replace the rear tamper unit.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear tamper unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-116 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00898A	Rear tamper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

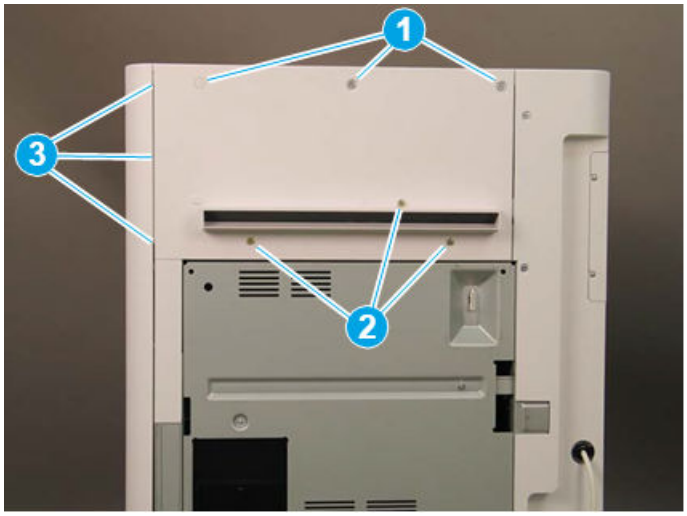
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-667 Remove the right upper cover

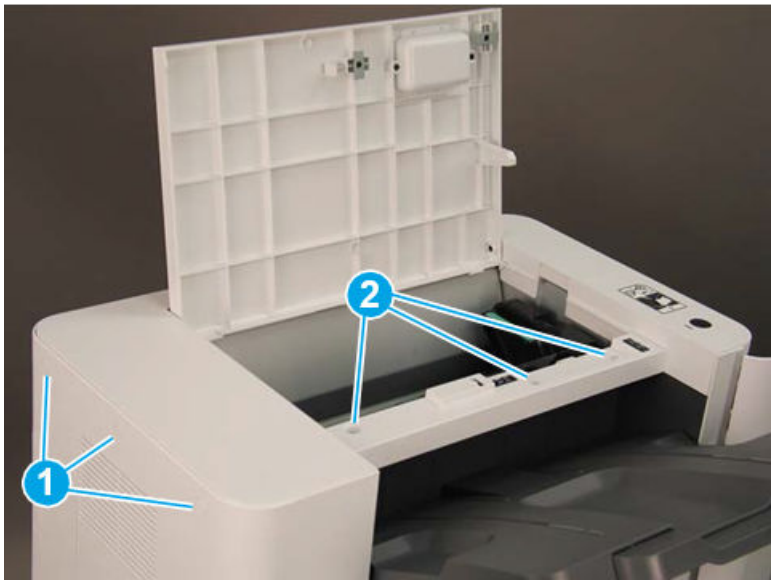


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

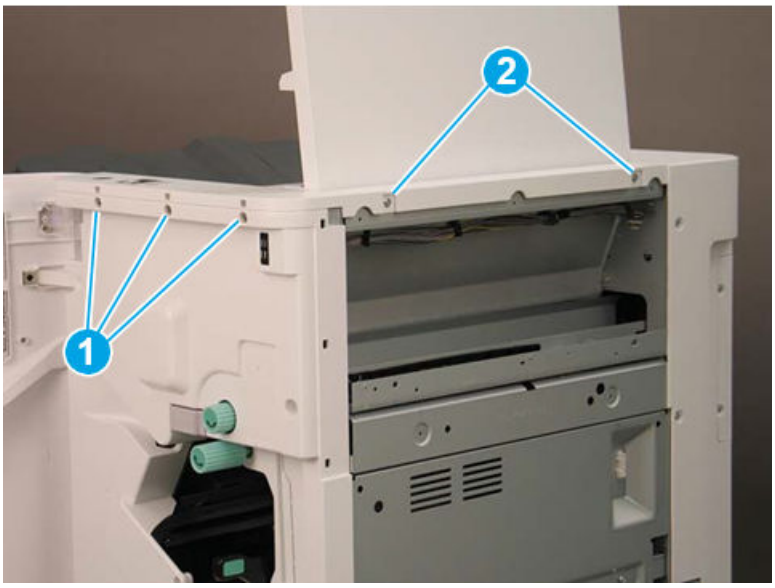
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-668 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

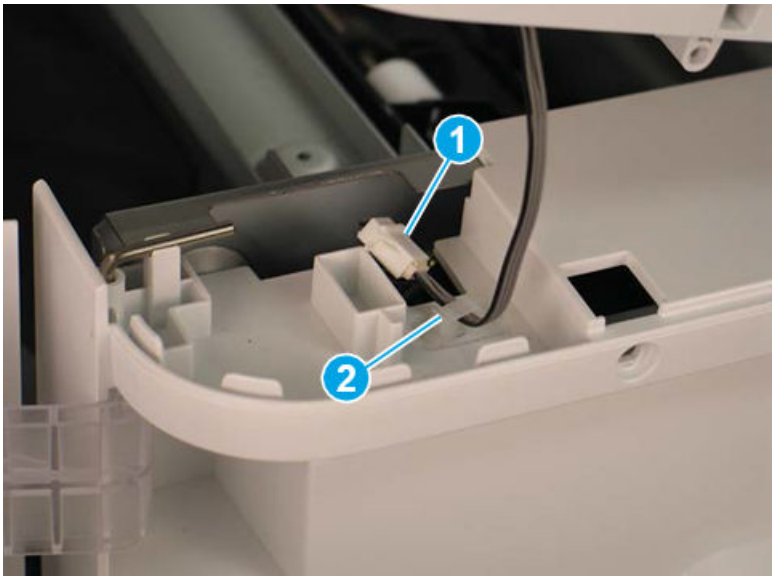
Figure 5-669 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-670 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

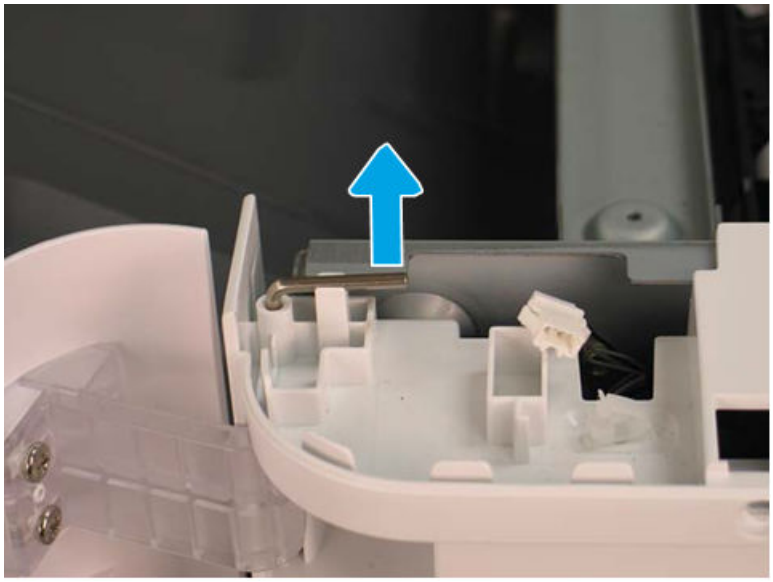


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

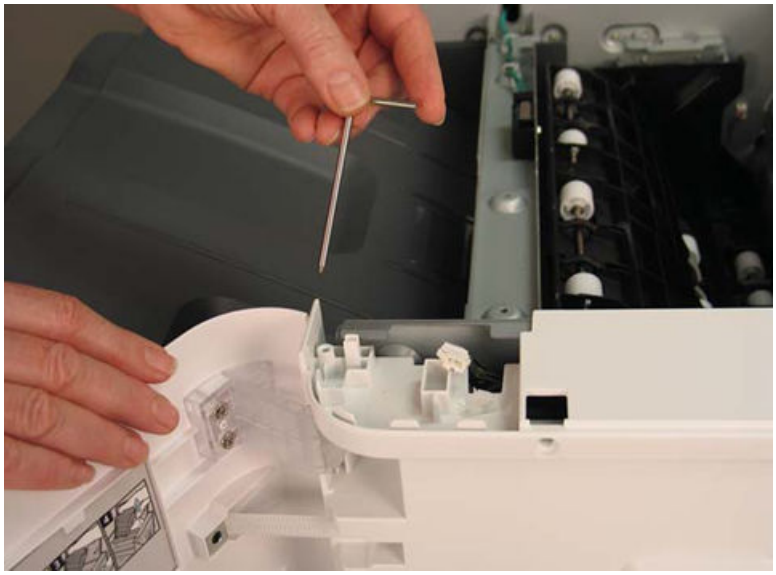
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-671 Lift the top hinge pin



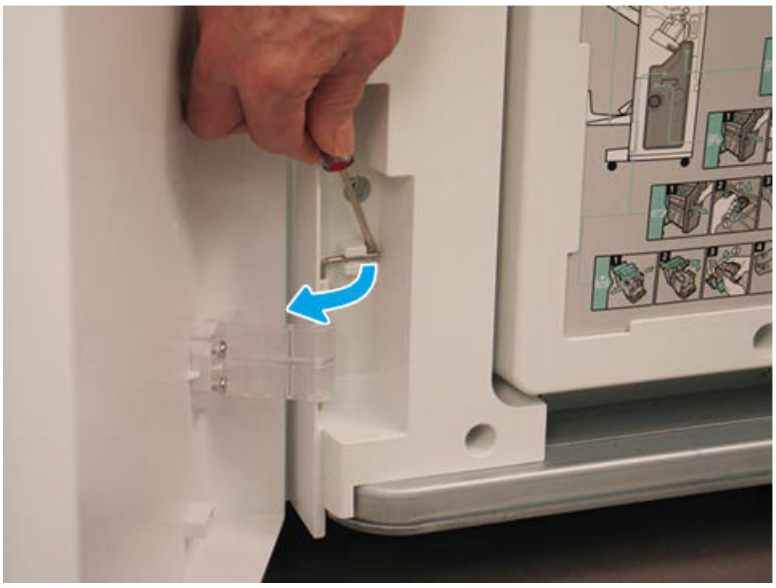
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-672 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-673 Release the lower hinge pin



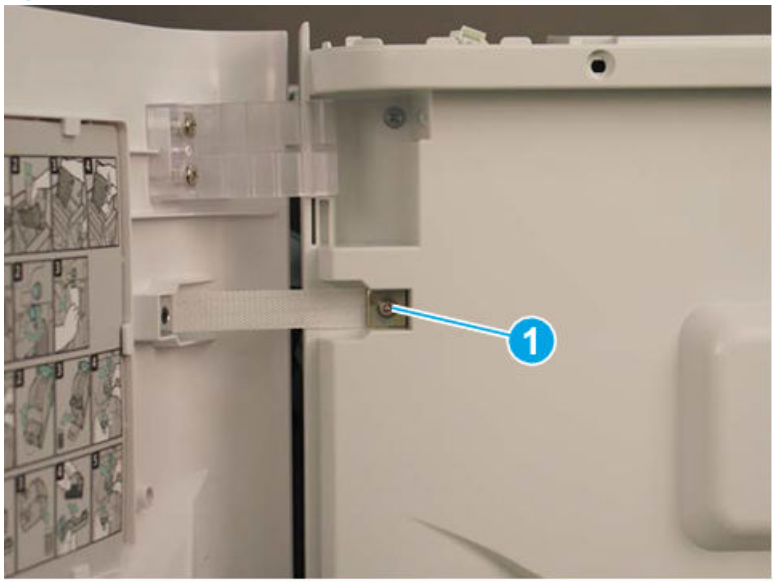
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-674 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-675 Remove the front door

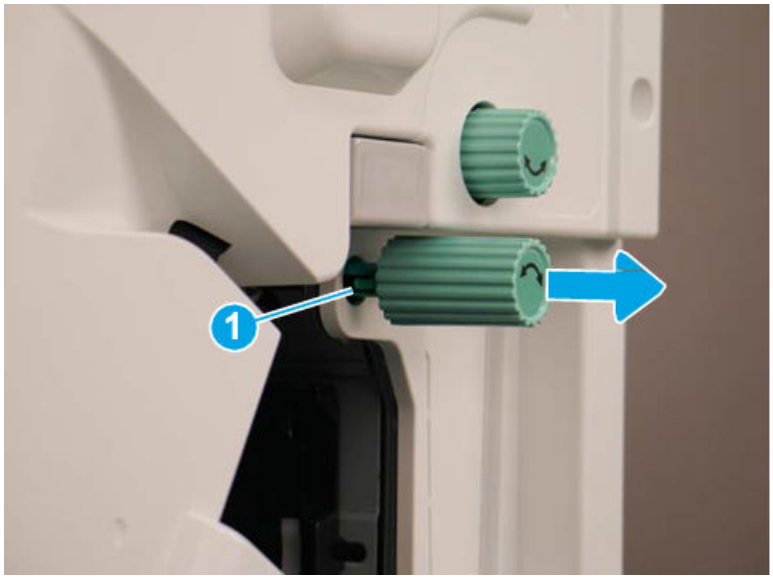


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-676 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

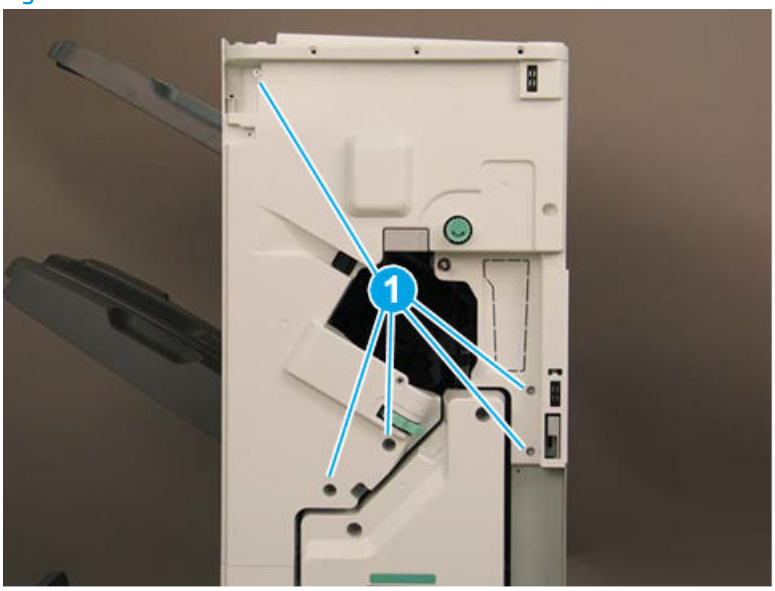
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-677 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-678 Remove the front cover

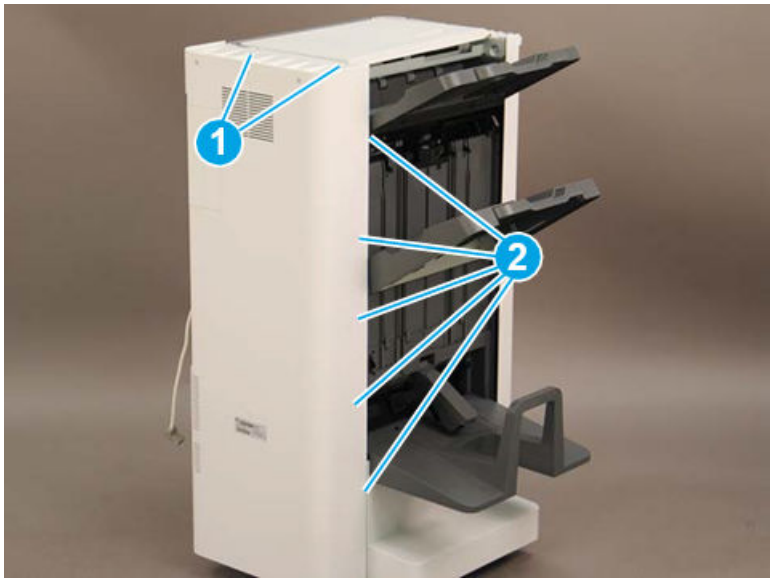


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-679 Remove seven screws

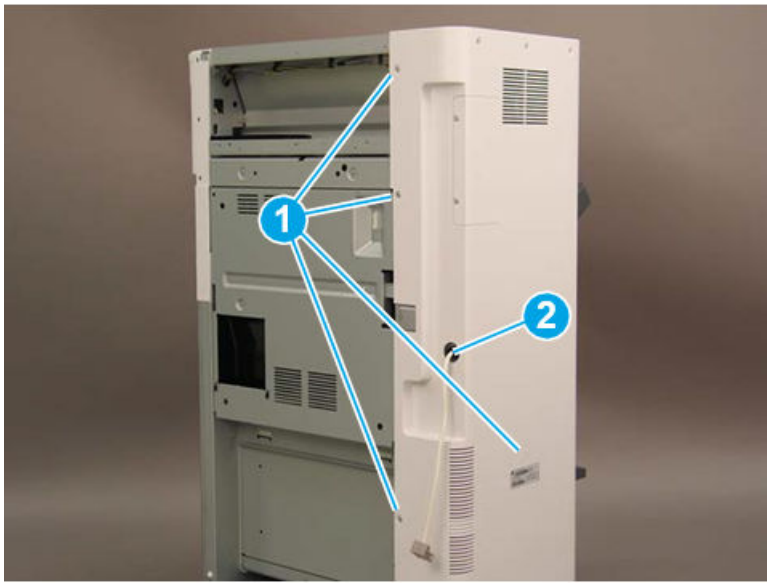


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-680 Remove the rear cover

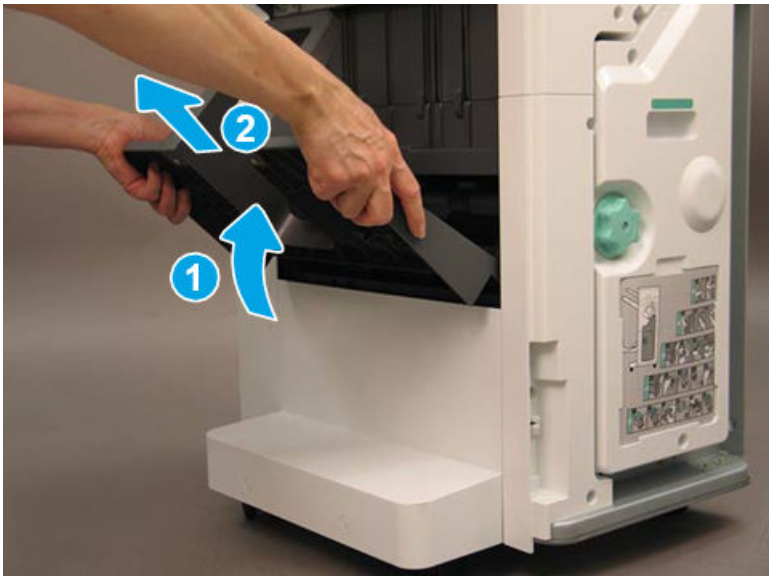


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-681 Remove the booklet output tray



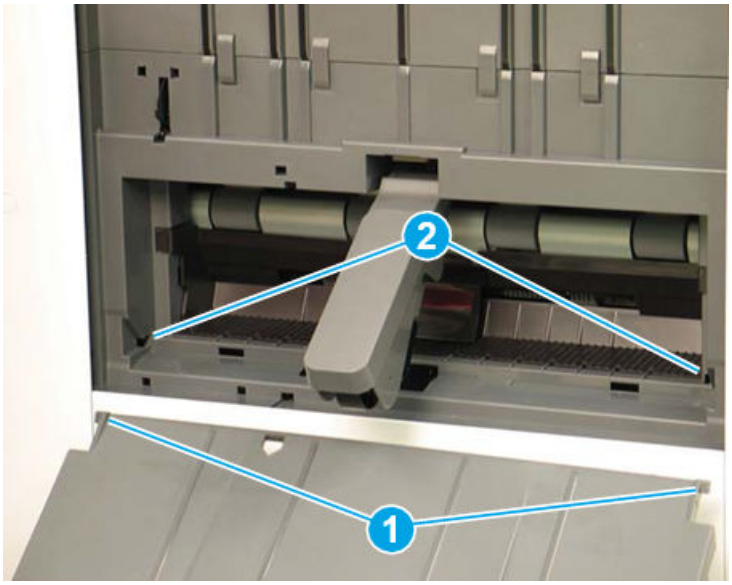
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-682 Install the booklet output tray

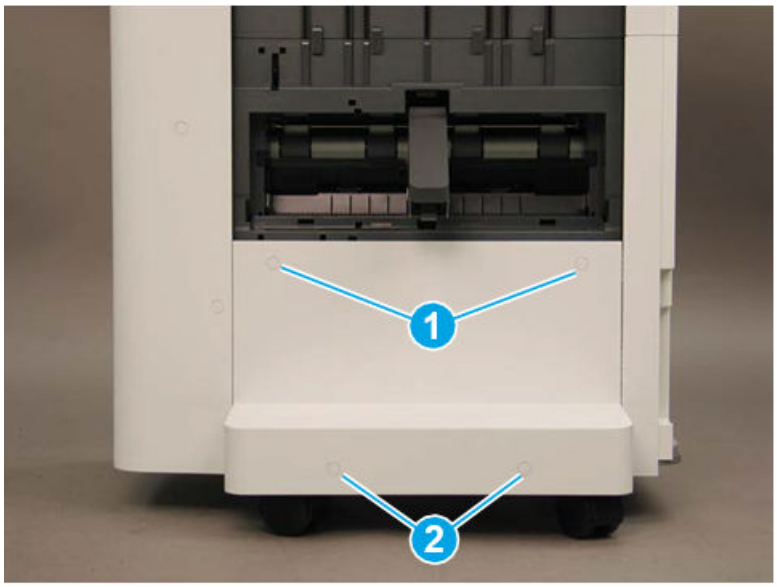


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-683 Remove four screws

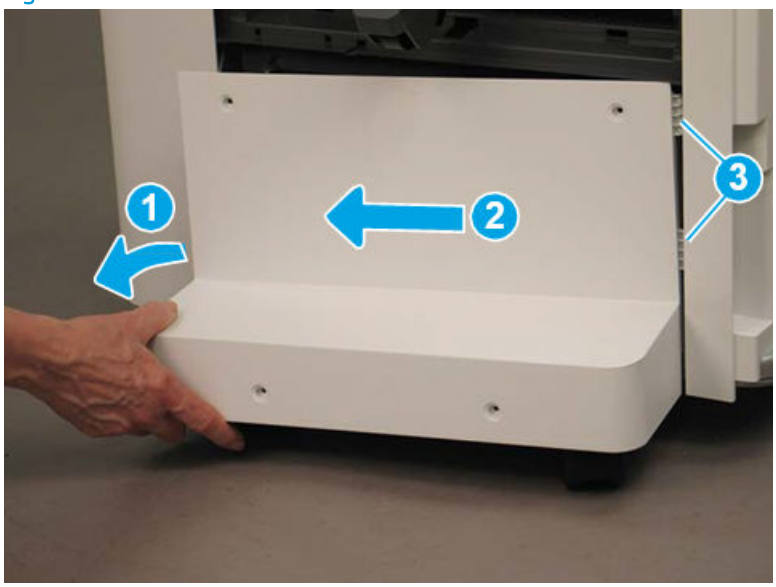


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-684 Remove the caster cover



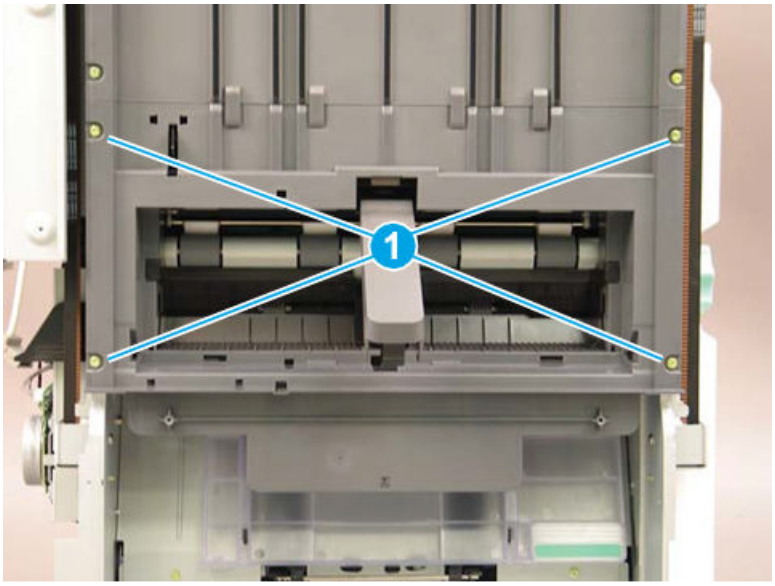
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-685 Remove four screws

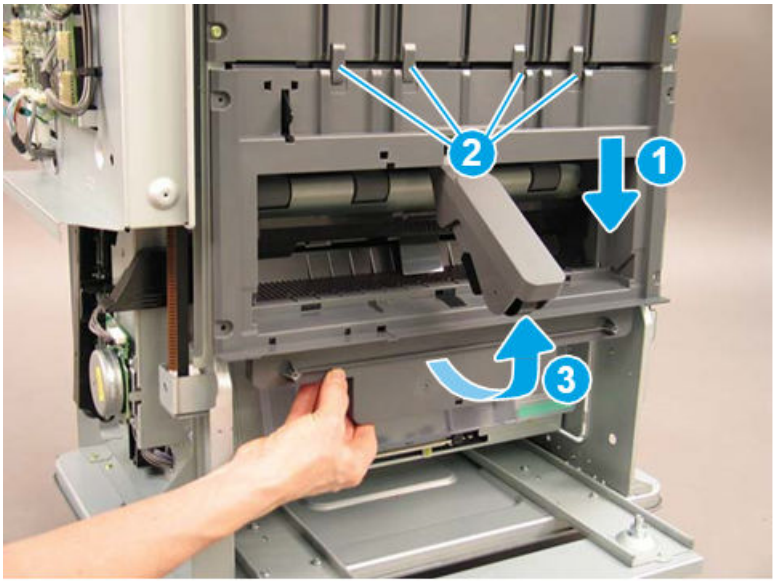


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

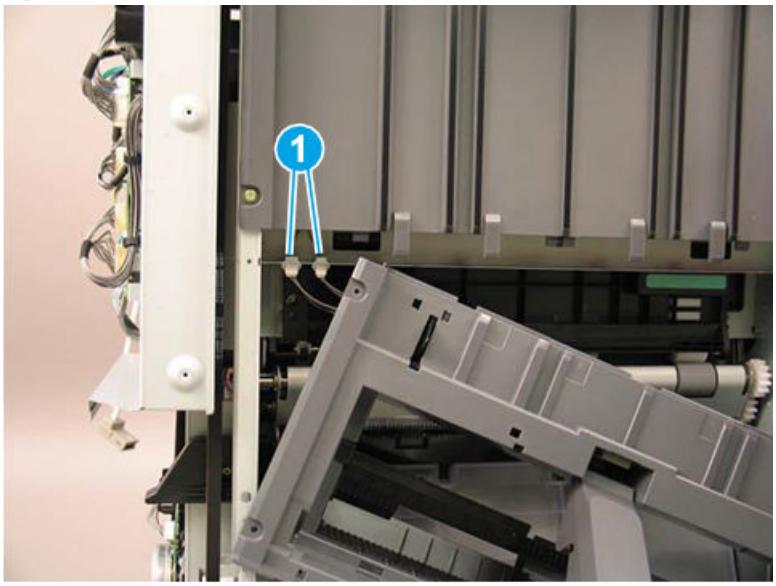
Figure 5-686 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

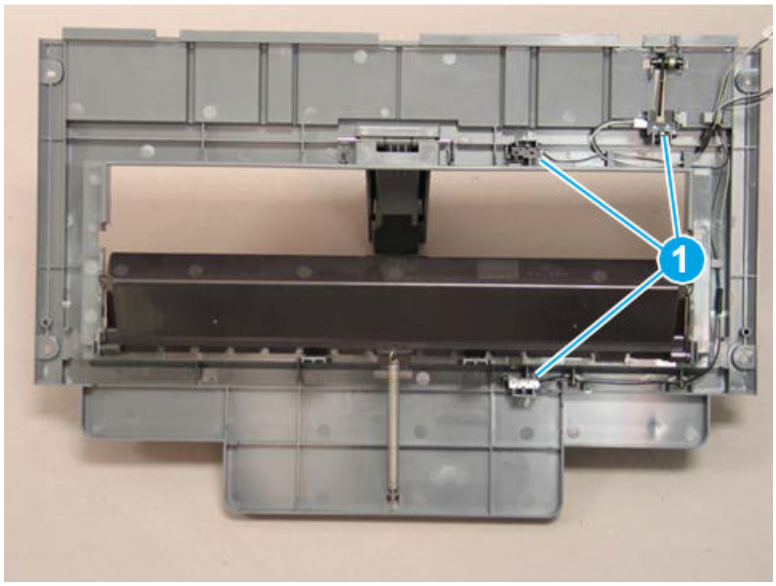
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-687 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-688 Remove the left lower cover

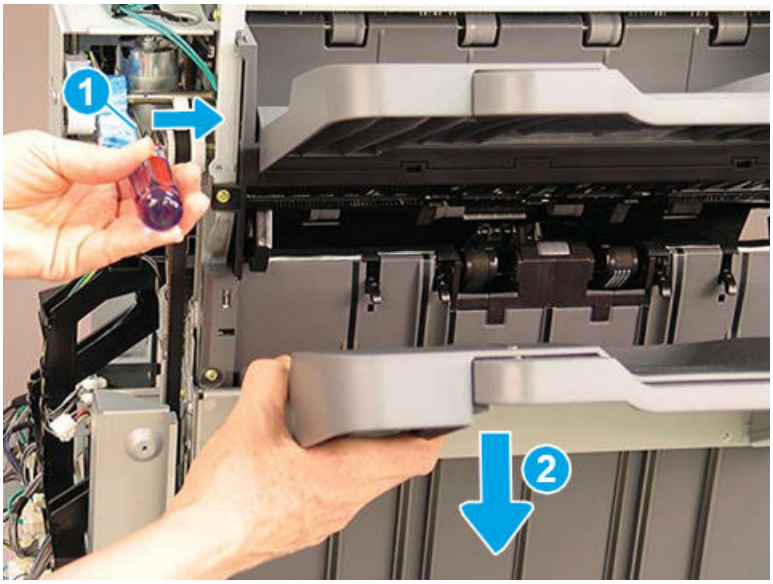


Remove the left upper cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover (finisher).

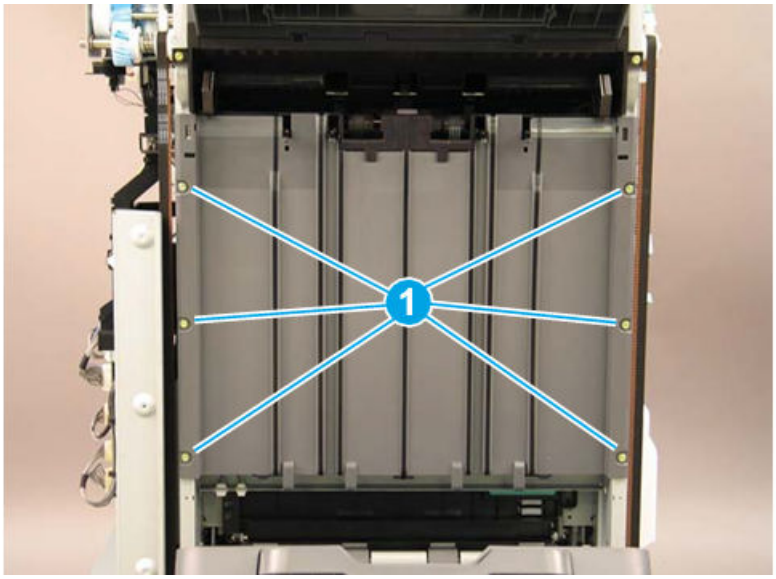
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 5-689 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-690 Remove six screws

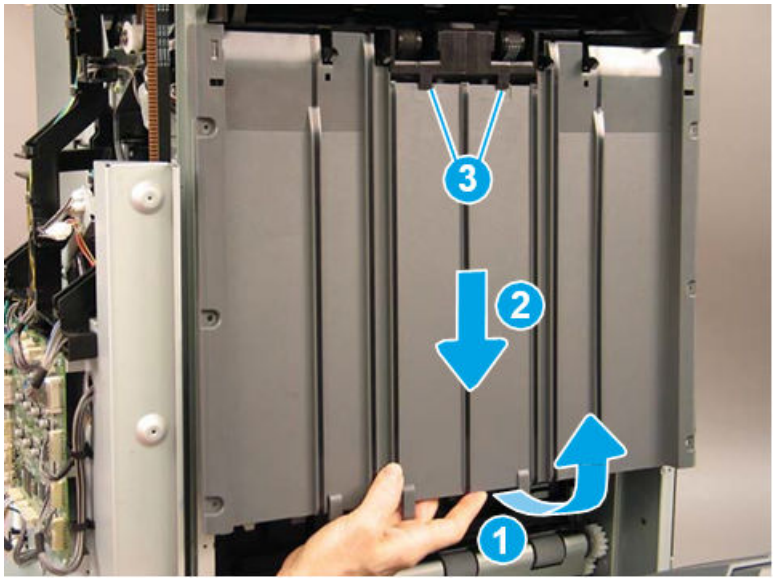


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away fromthe finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

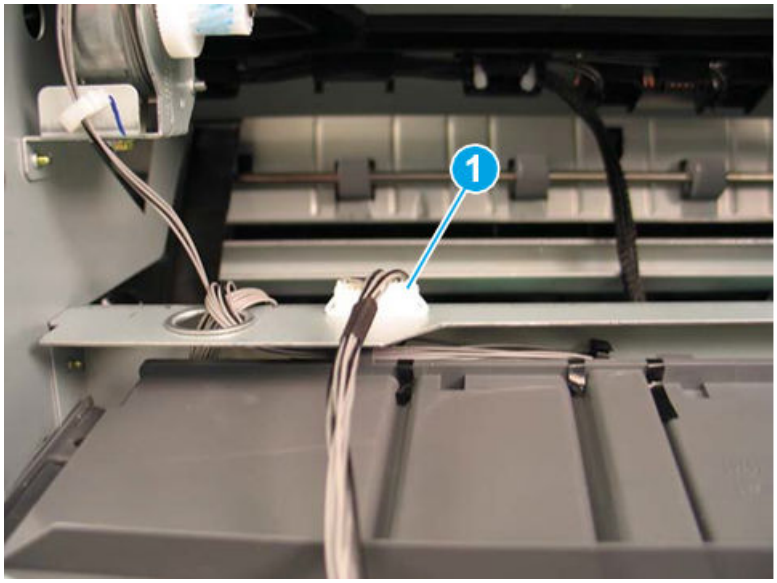
Figure 5-691 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

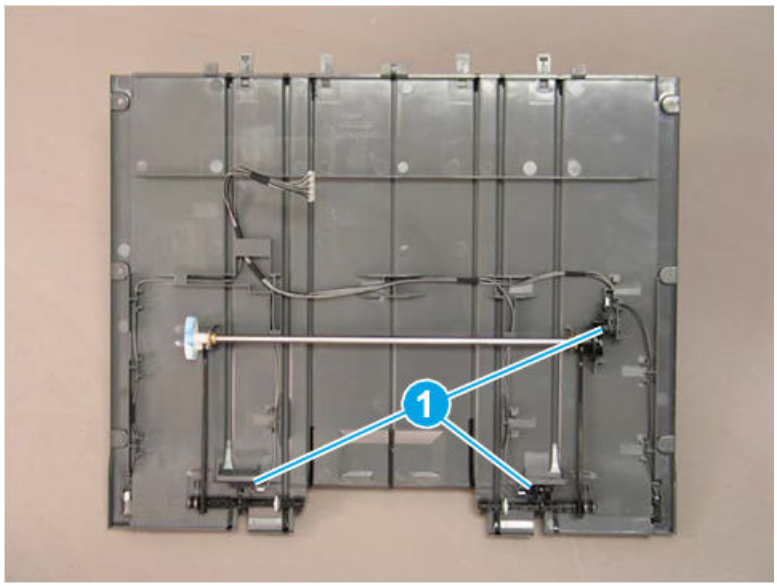
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-692 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the left upper cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left upper cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-693 Remove the left upper cover

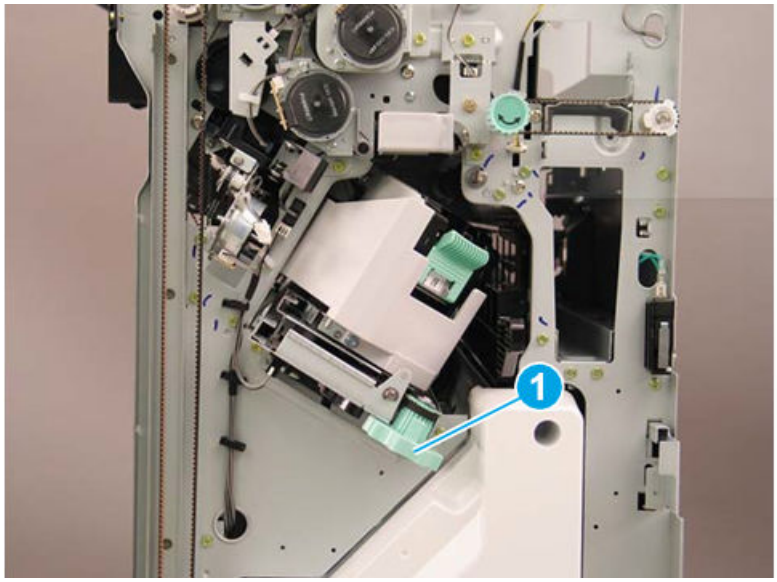


Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the ejector unit (finisher).

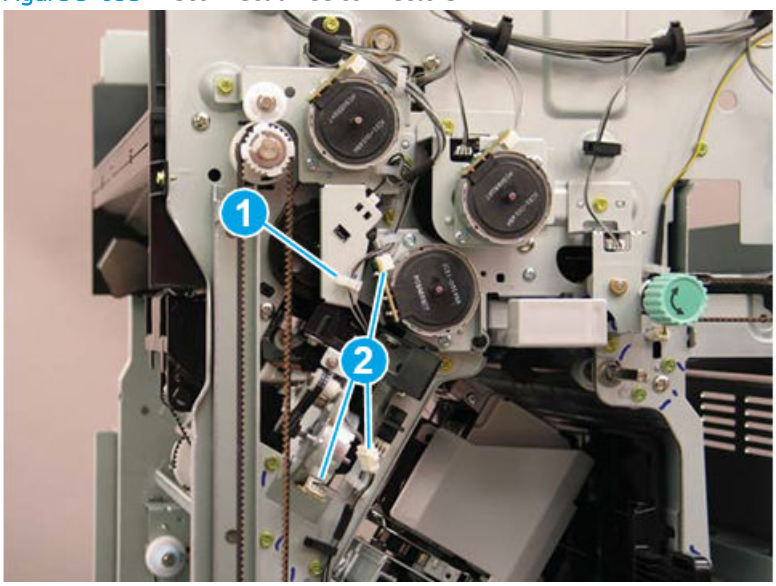
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 5-694 Move the staple unit to the center



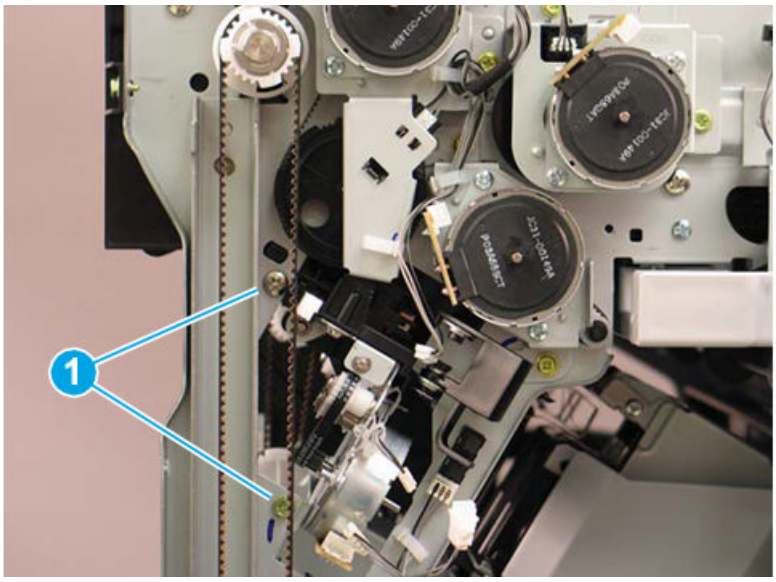
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 5-695 Disconnect three connectors



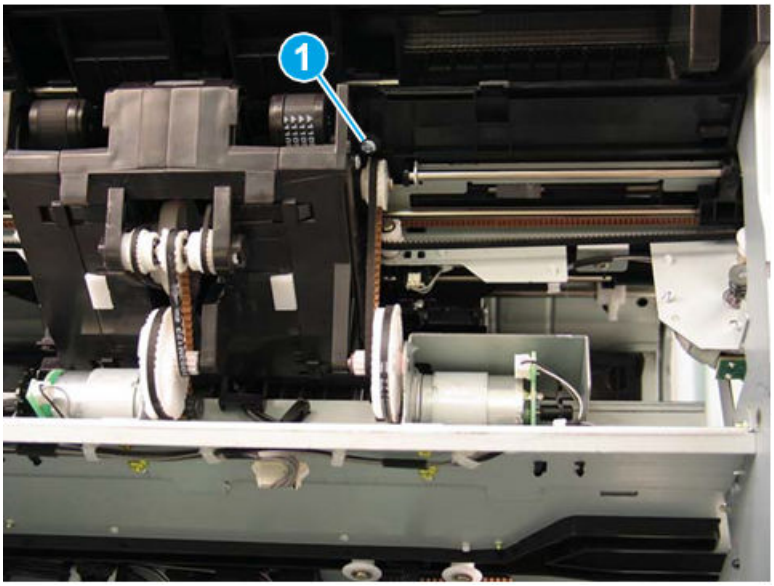
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-696 Remove two screws



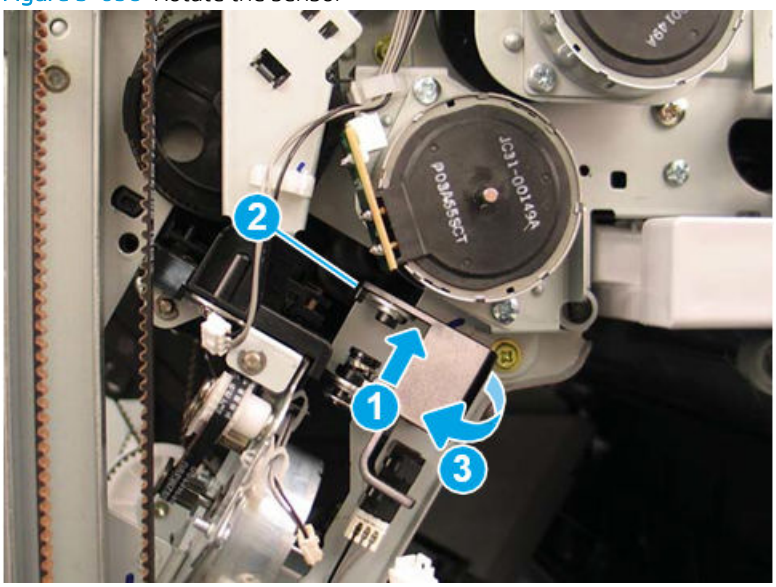
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-697 Remove one screw



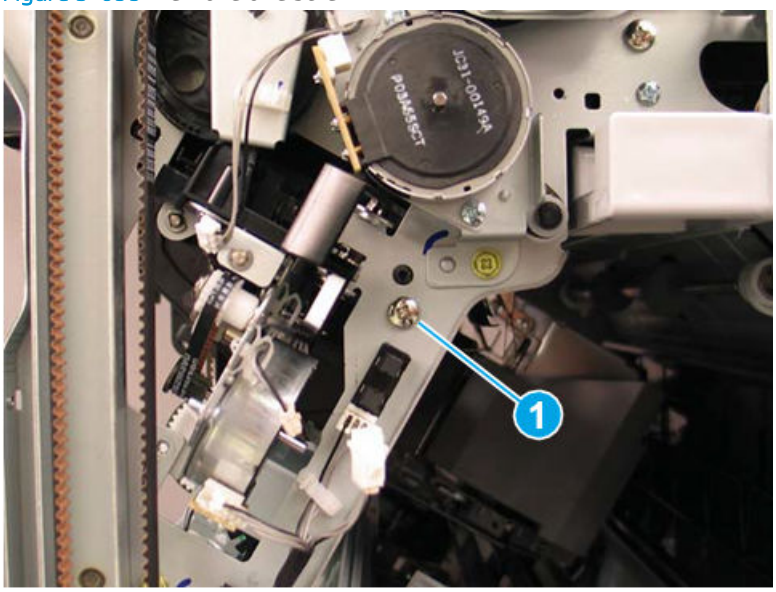
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 5-698 Rotate the sensor



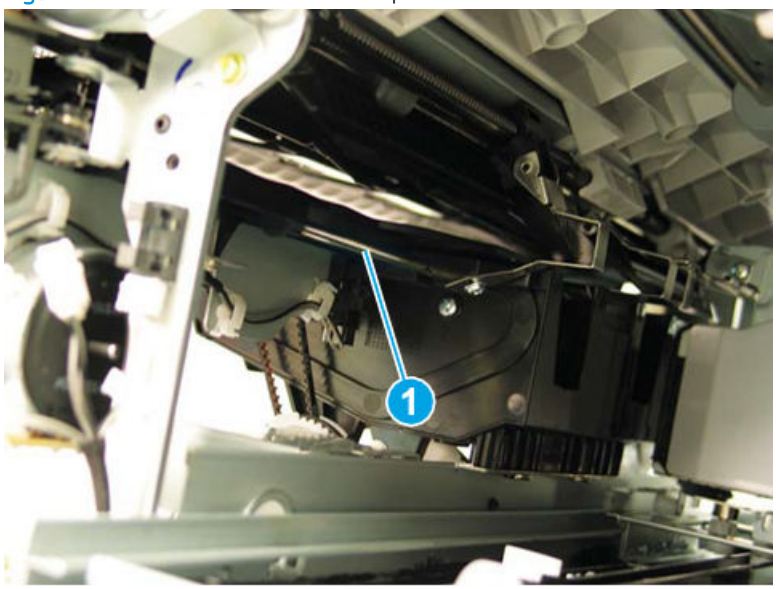
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-699 Remove one screw



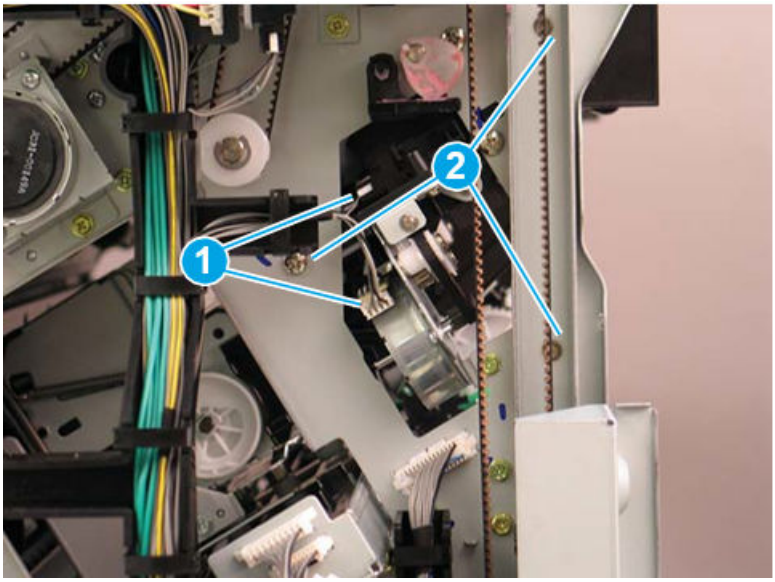
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 5-700 Remove the front tamper shaft



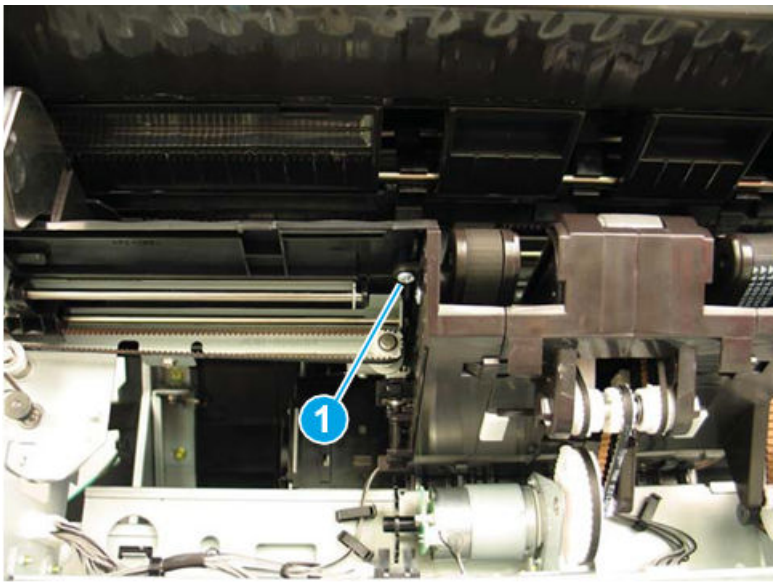
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-701 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



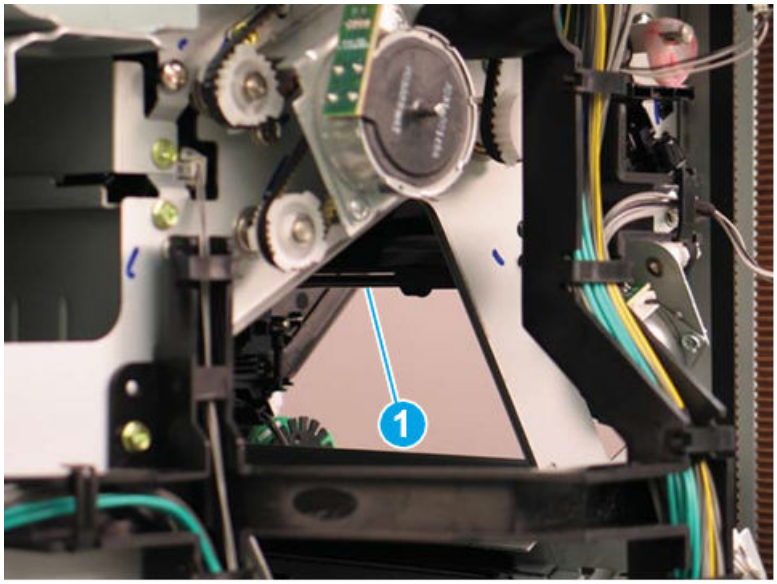
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-702 Remove one screw



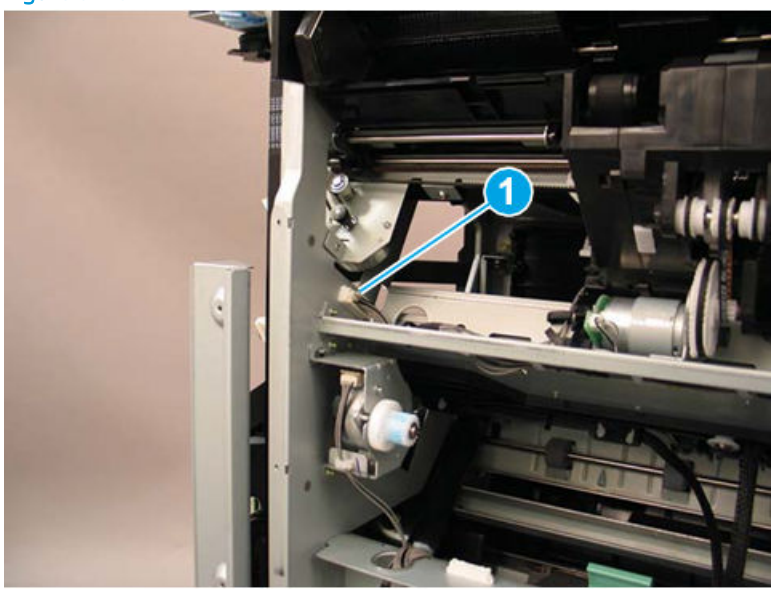
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 5-703 Remove the rear tamper shaft



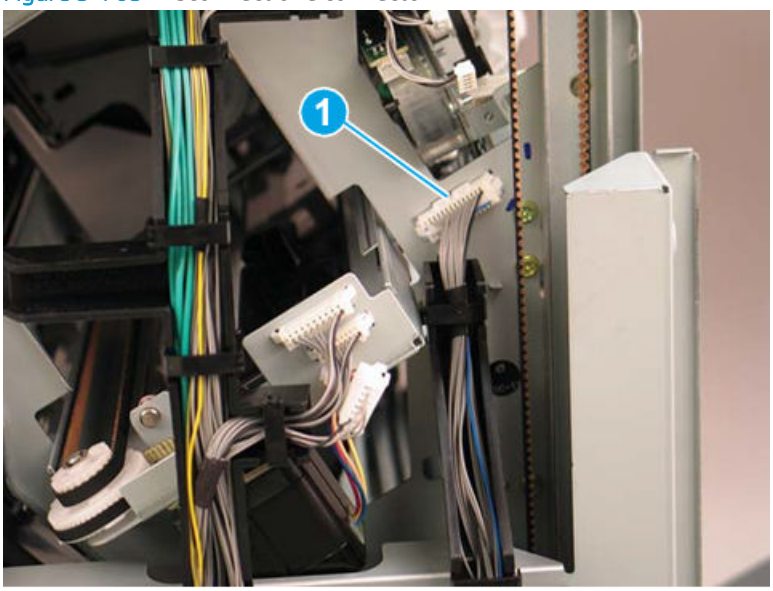
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-704 Disconnect one connector



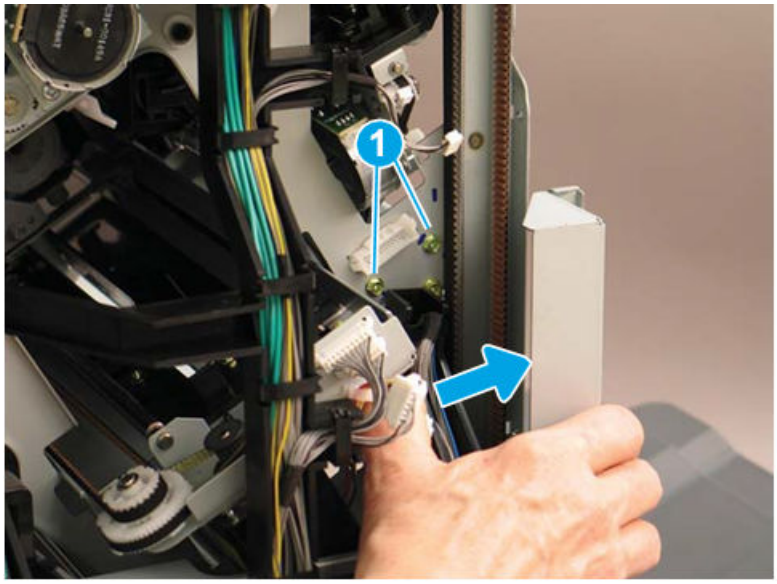
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-705 Disconnect one connector



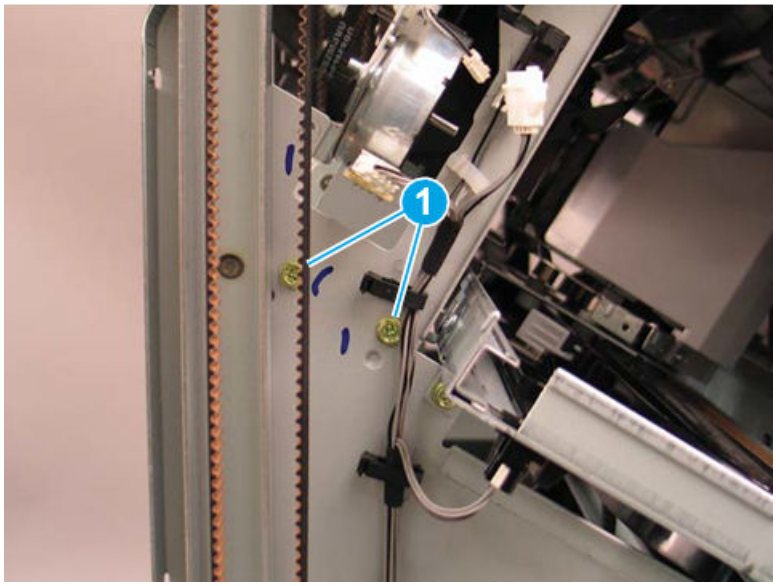
13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-706 Disconnect one connector



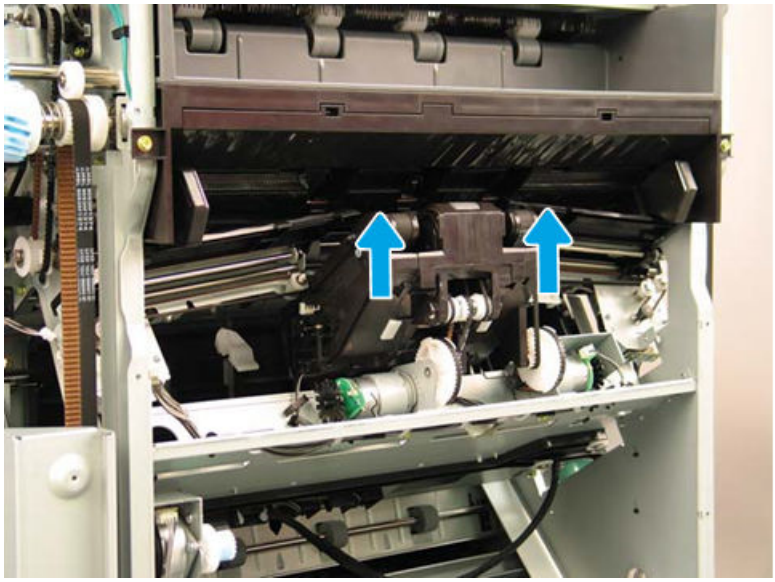
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-707 Remove two screws



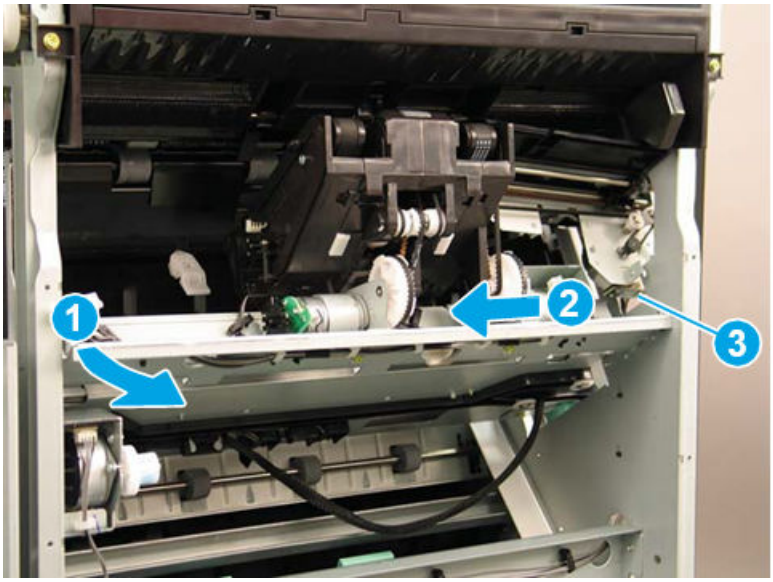
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 5-708 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 5-709 Remove the ejector unit

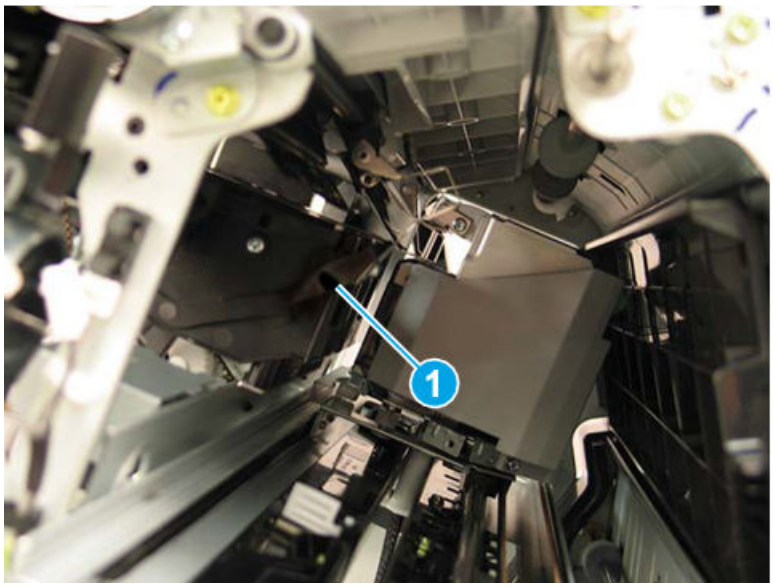


17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

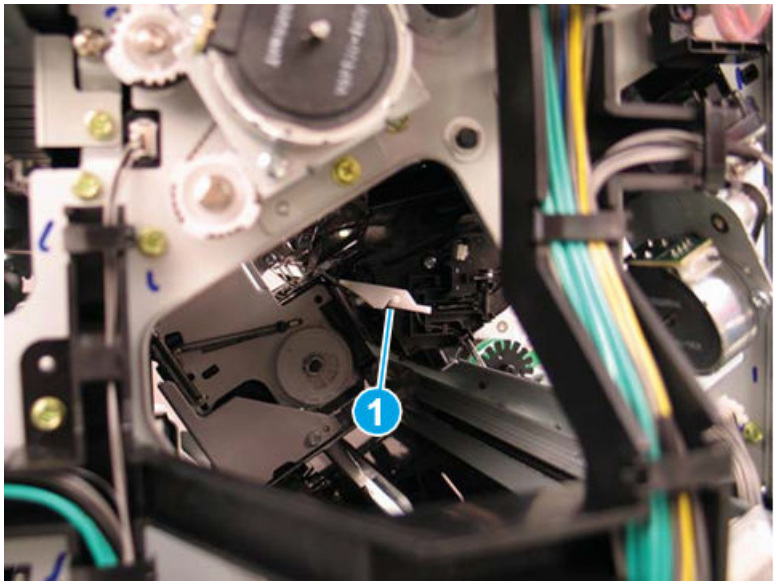
NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).



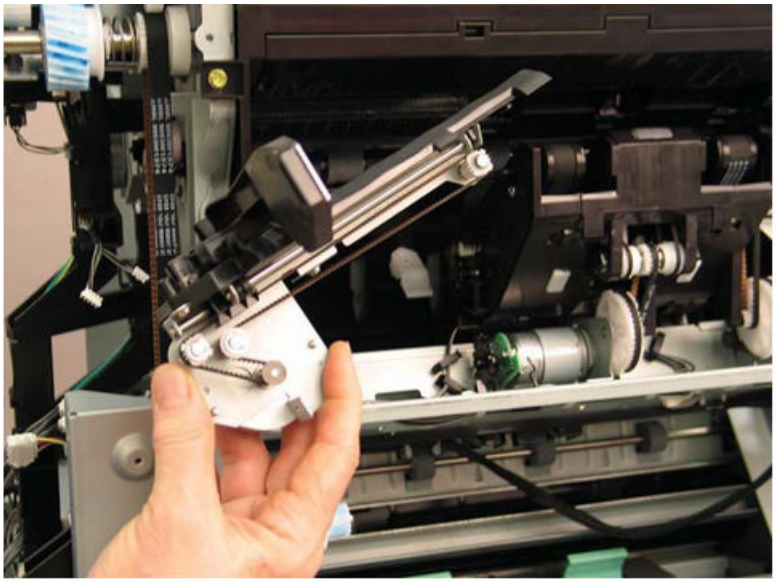
Remove the rear tamper unit

Follow these steps to remove the rear tamper unit.

▲ Lift the rear tamper away from the finisher to remove it

NOTE: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-710 Remove therear tamper



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear tamper home sensor (S9)

Learn how to remove and replace the rear tamper home sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear tamper home sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-117 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Rear tamper home sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

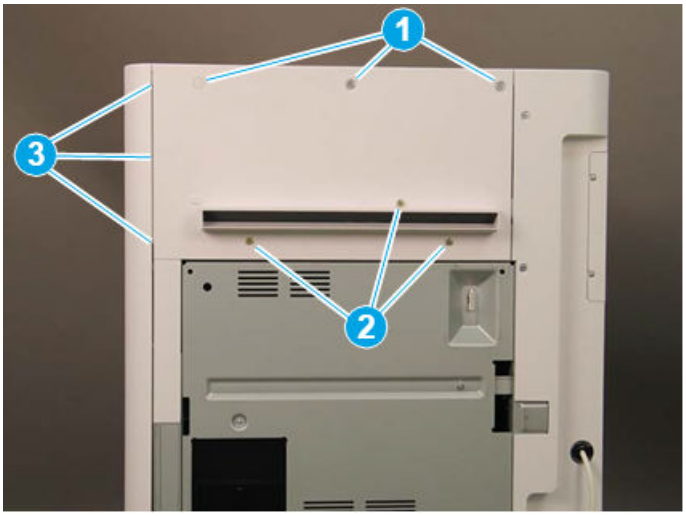
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-711 Remove the right upper cover

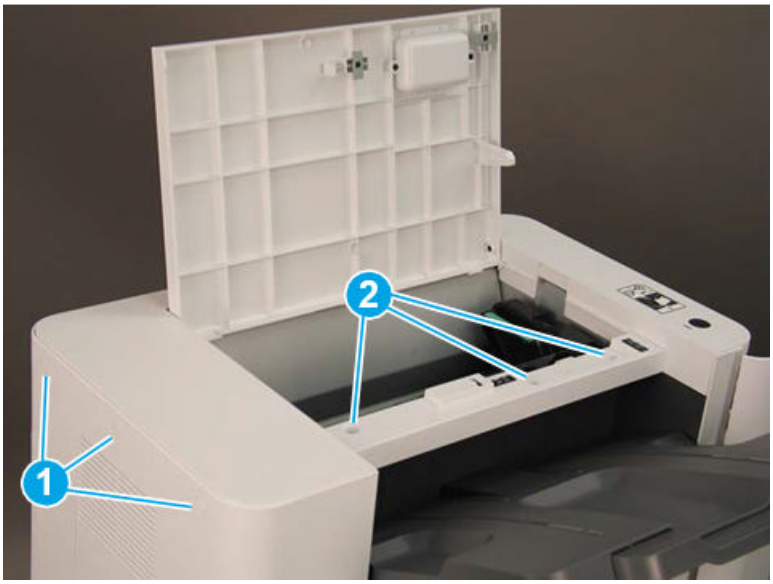


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

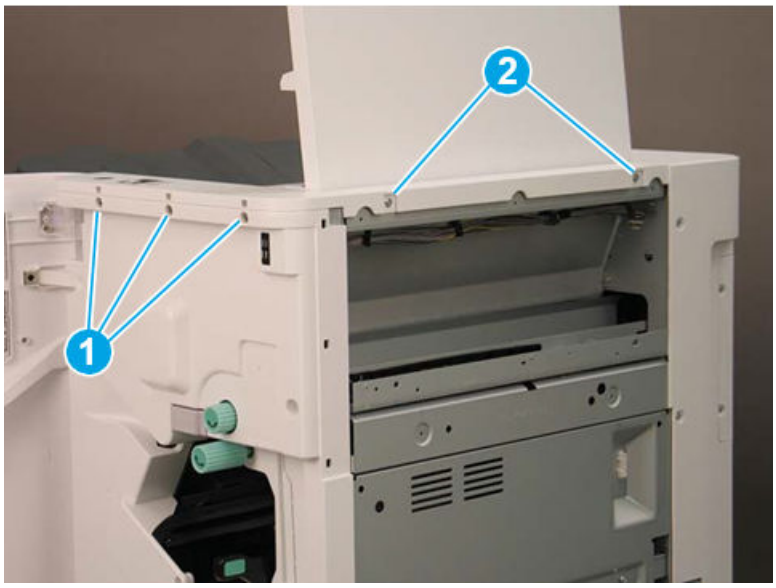
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-712 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

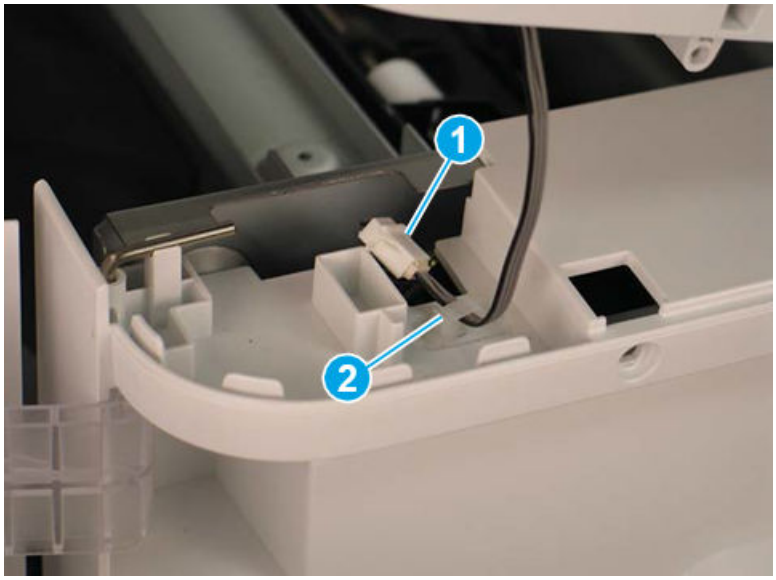
Figure 5-713 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-714 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

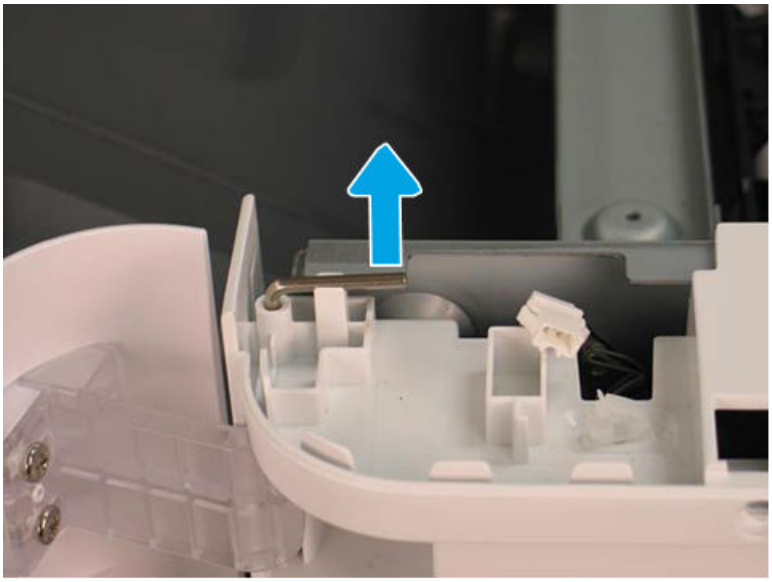


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

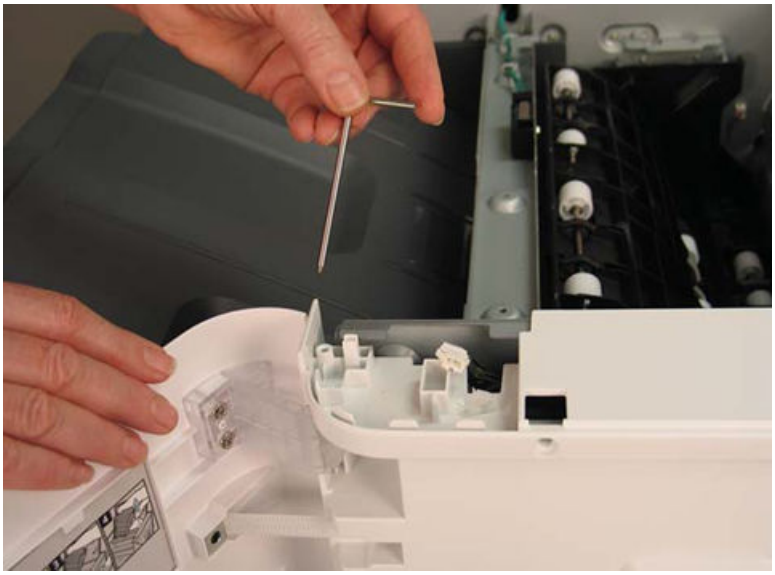
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-715 Lift the top hinge pin



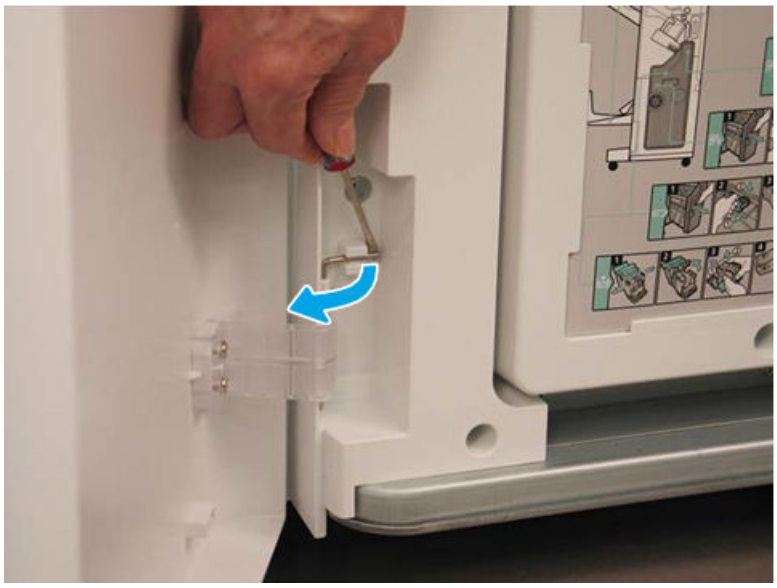
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-716 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-717 Release the lower hinge pin



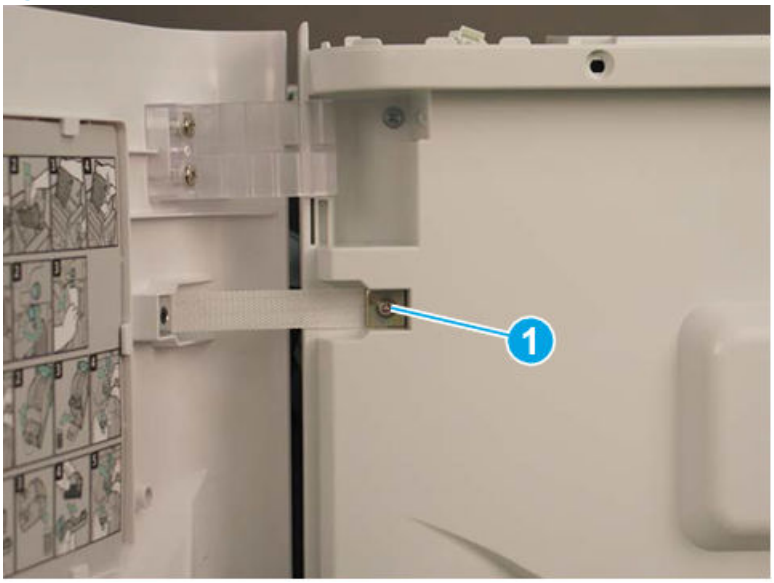
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-718 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-719 Remove the front door

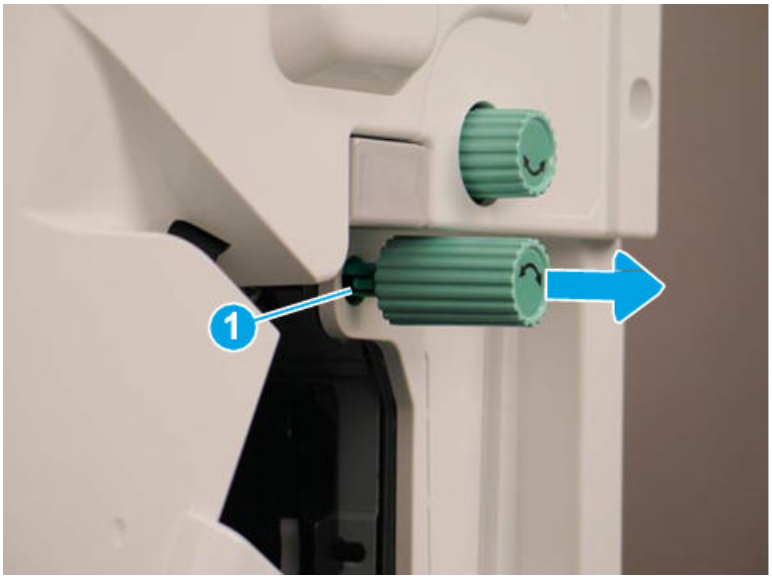


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-720 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

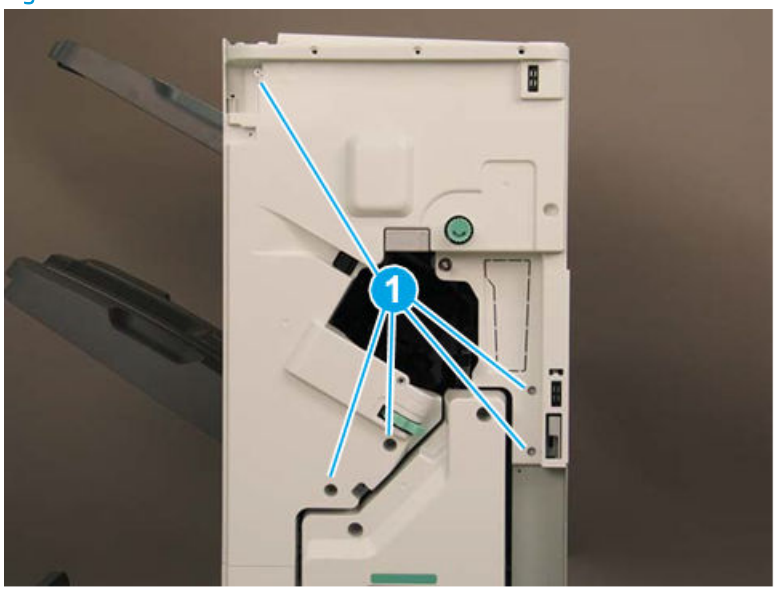
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-721 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-722 Remove the front cover

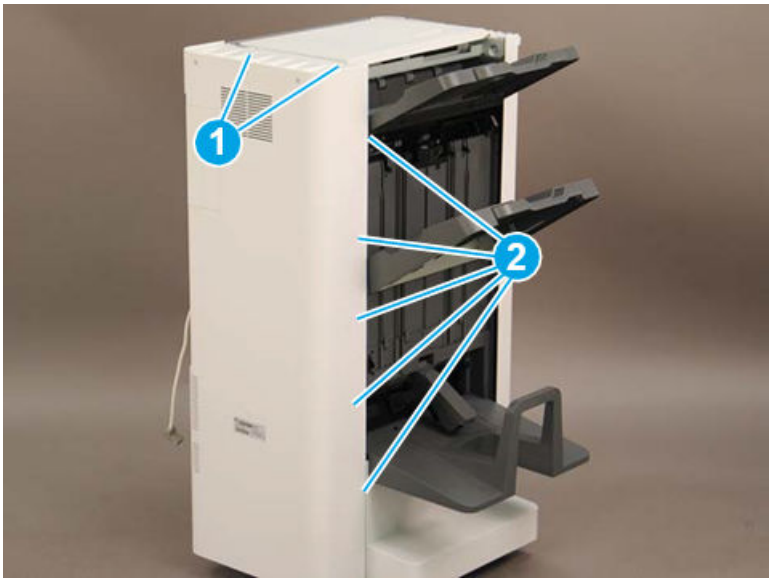


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-723 Remove seven screws

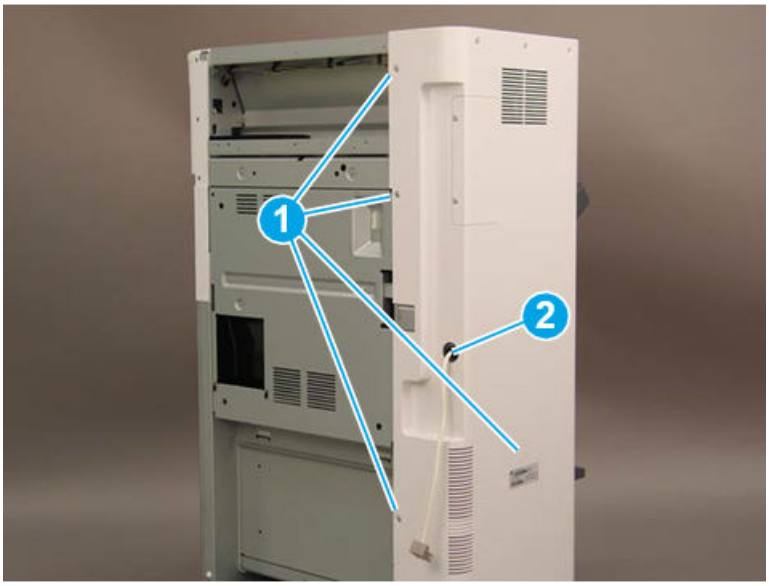


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-724 Remove the rear cover

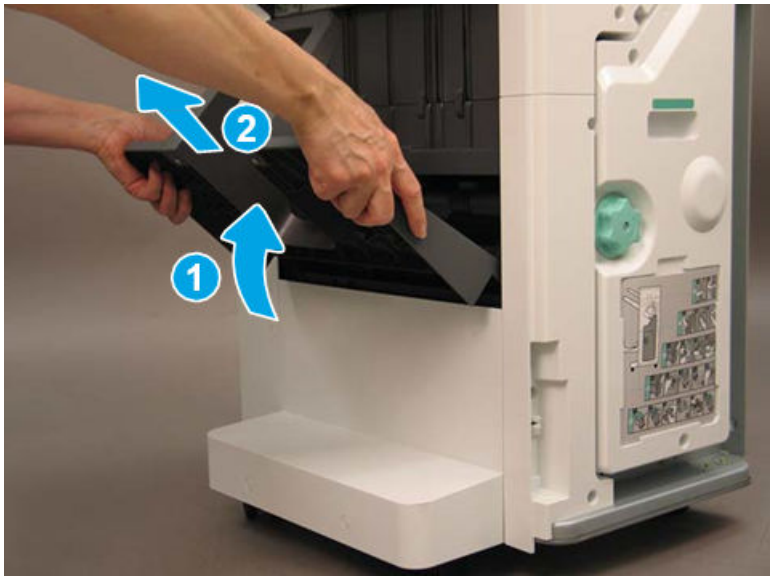


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-725 Remove the booklet output tray



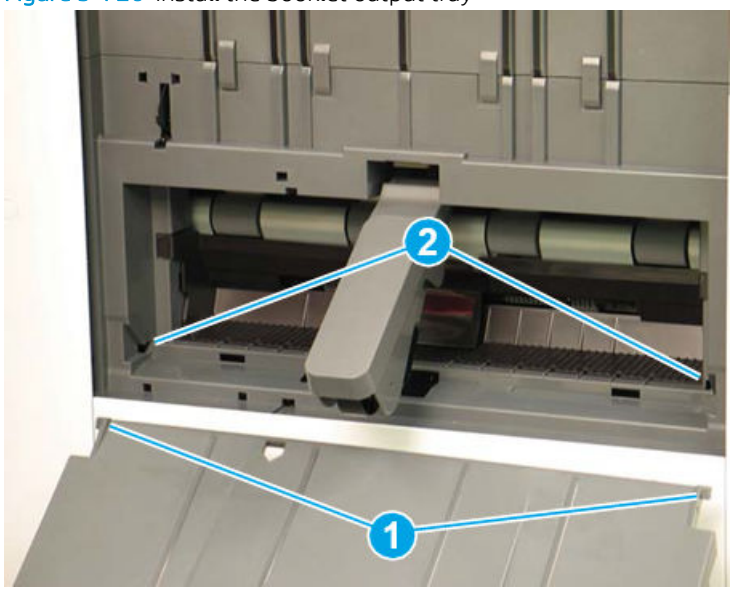
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-726 Install the booklet output tray

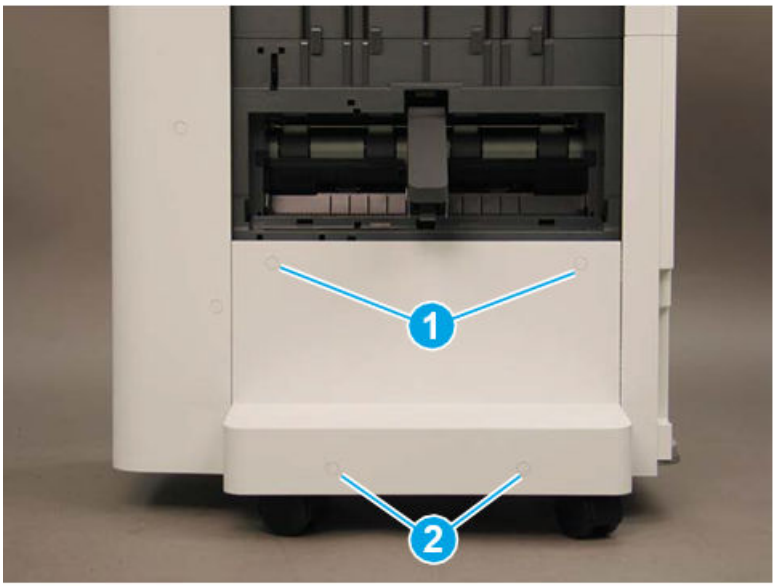


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-727 Remove four screws

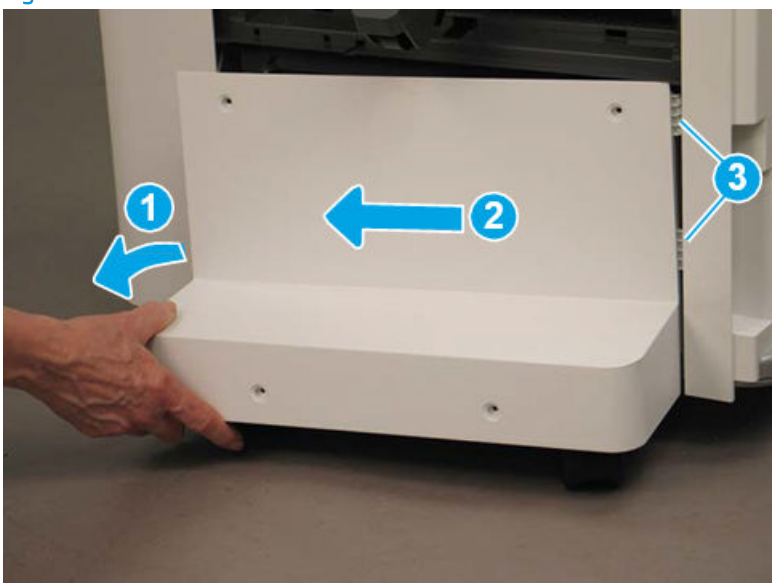


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-728 Remove the caster cover



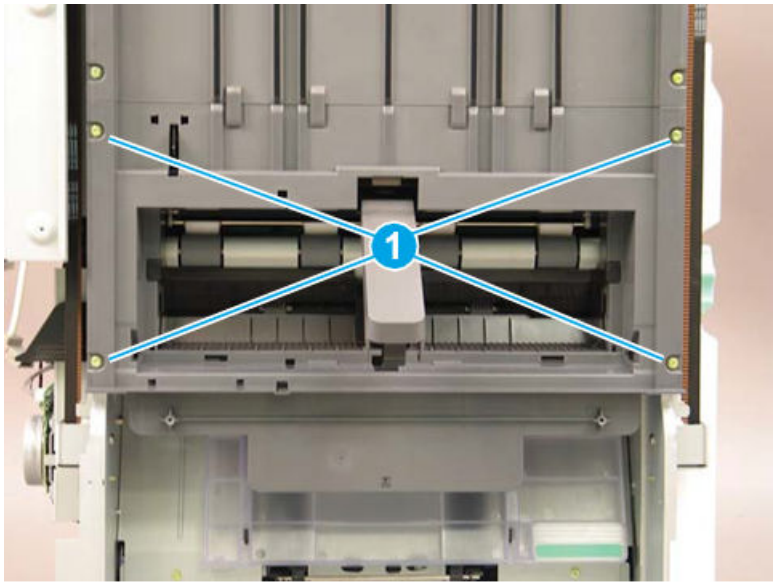
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-729 Remove four screws

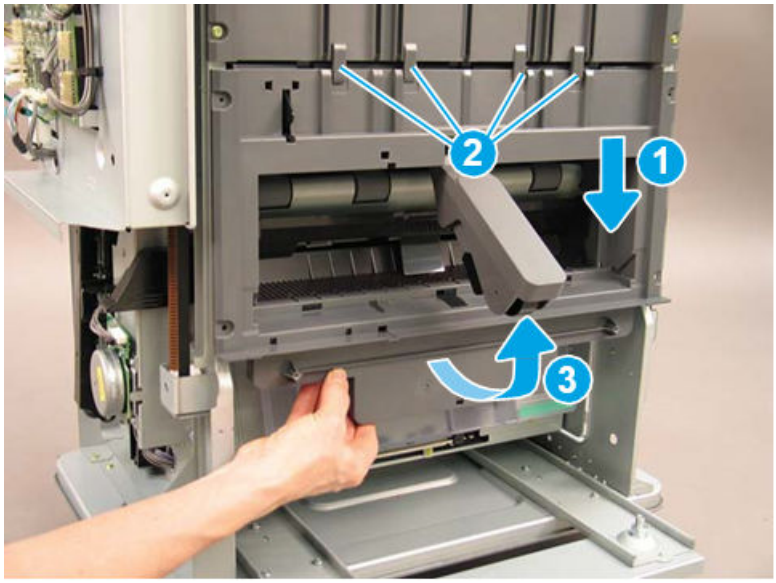


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

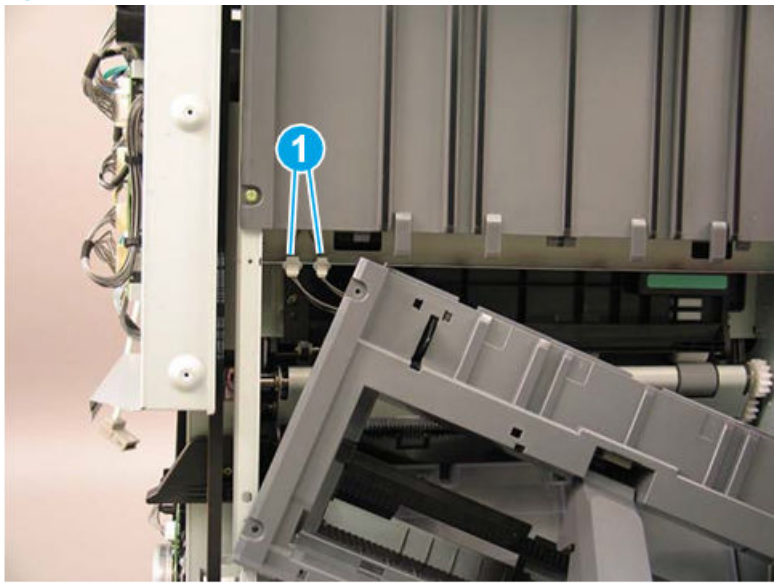
Figure 5-730 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

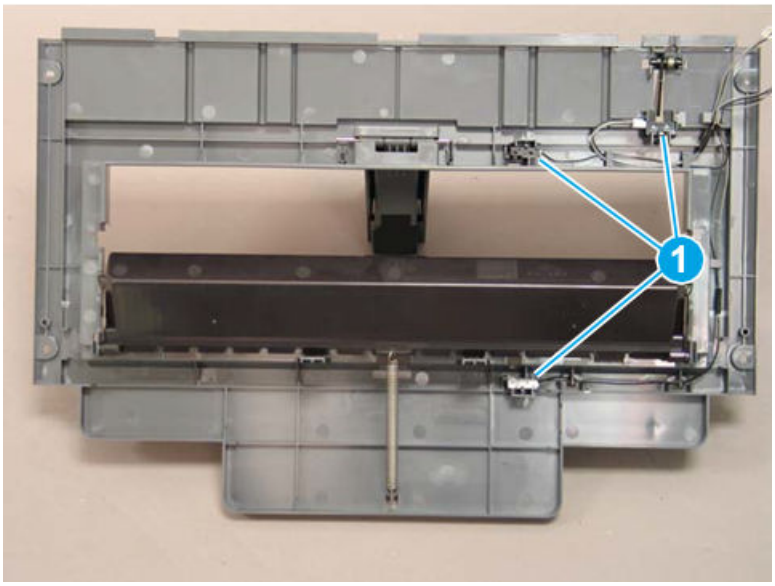
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-731 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-732 Remove the left lower cover

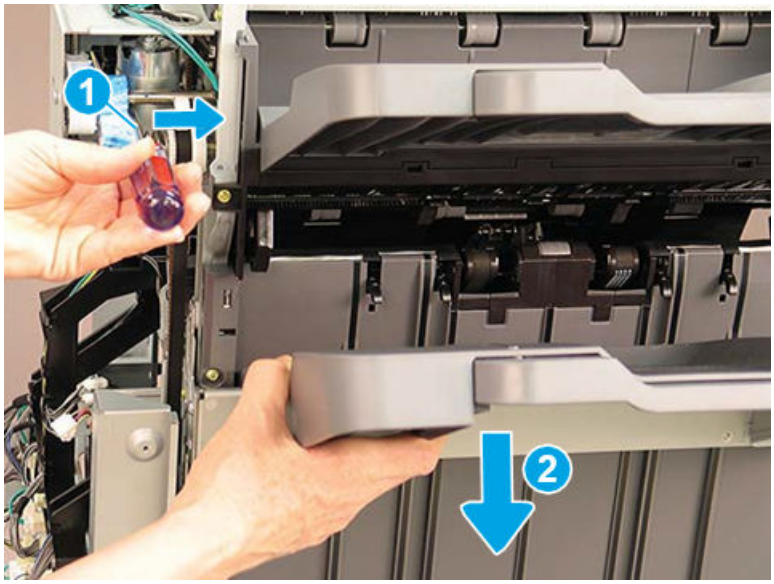


Remove the left upper cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover (finisher).

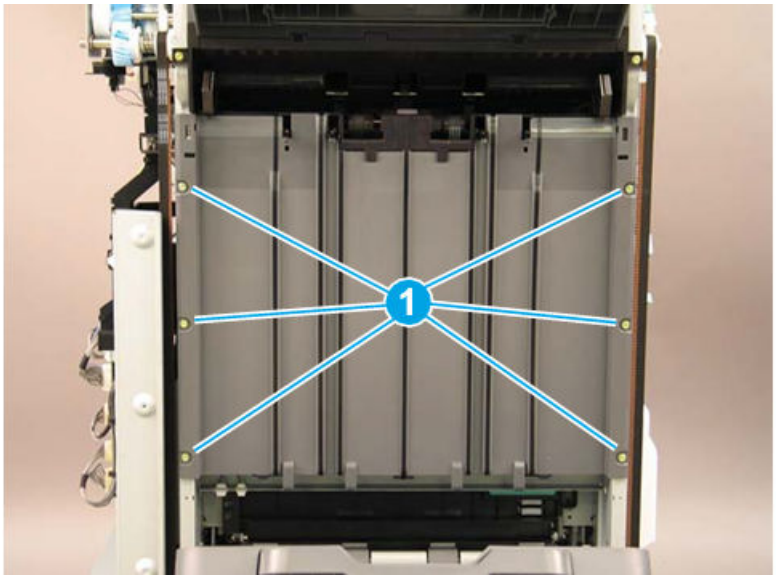
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 5-733 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-734 Remove six screws

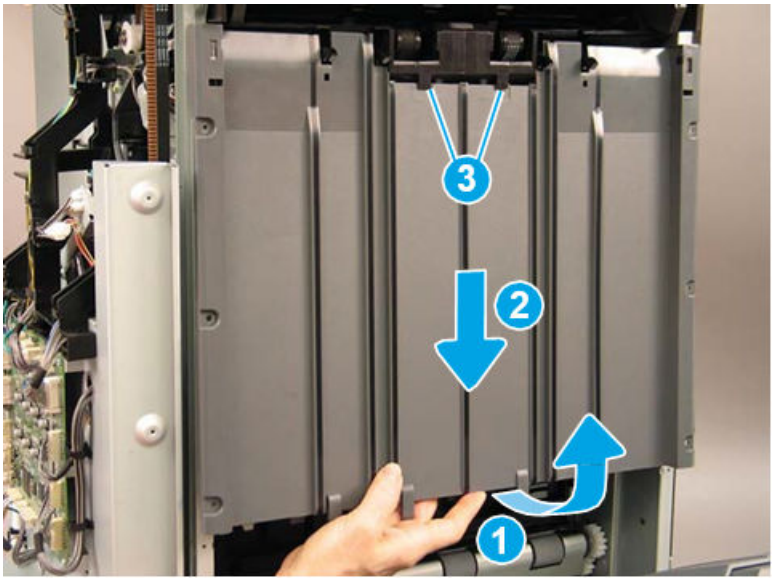


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away fromthe finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

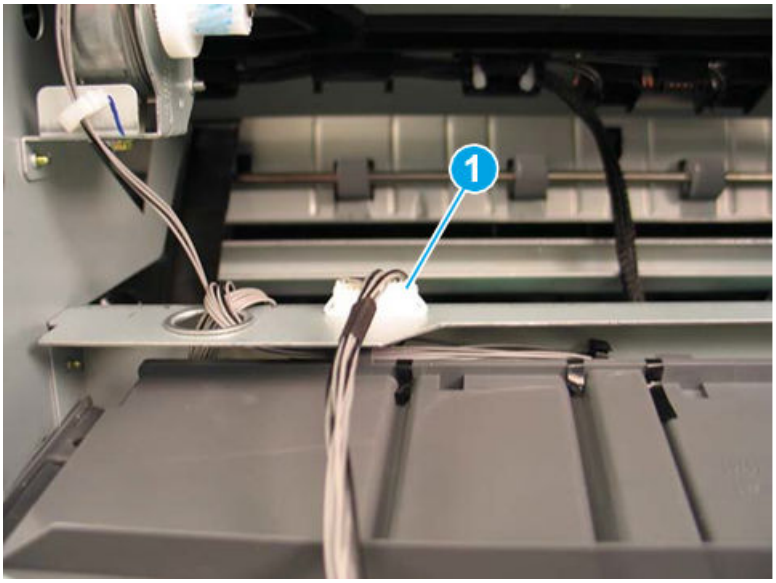
Figure 5-735 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

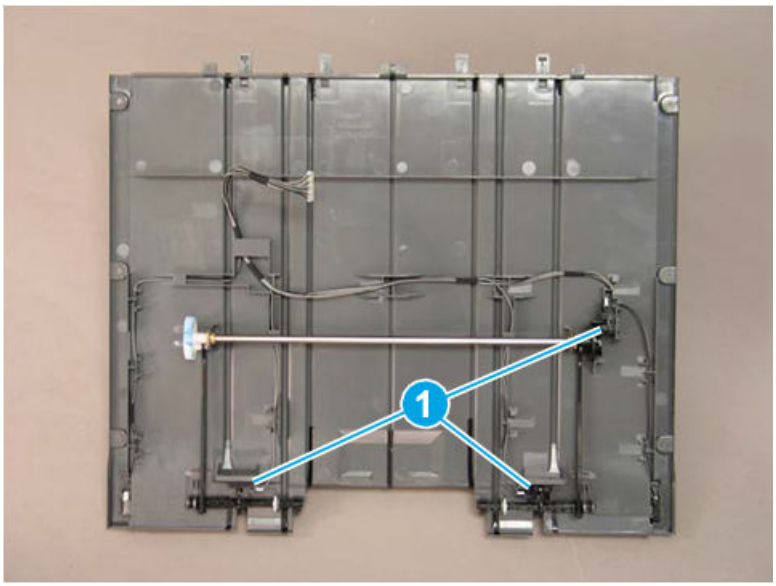
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-736 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the left upper cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left upper cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-737 Remove the left upper cover

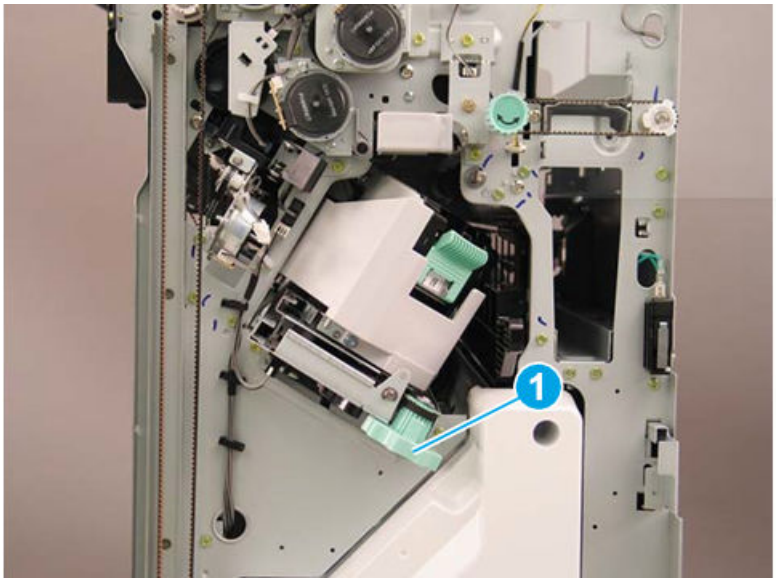


Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the ejector unit (finisher).

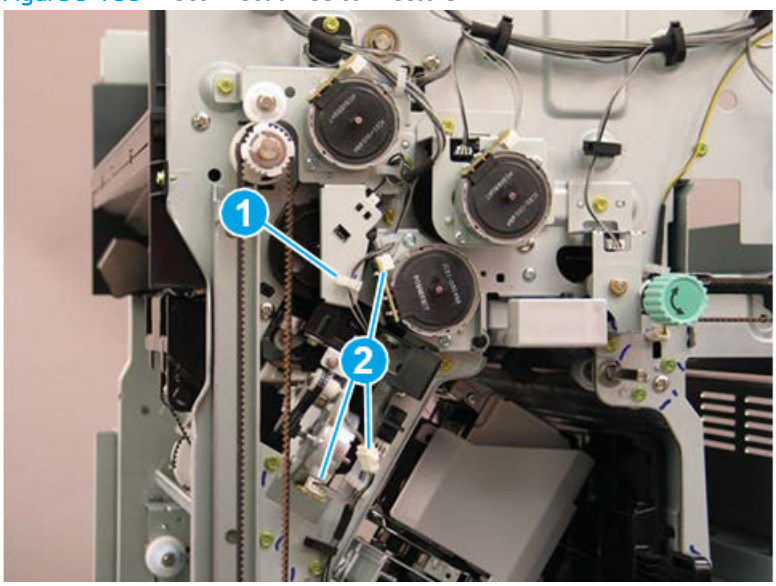
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 5-738 Move the staple unit to the center



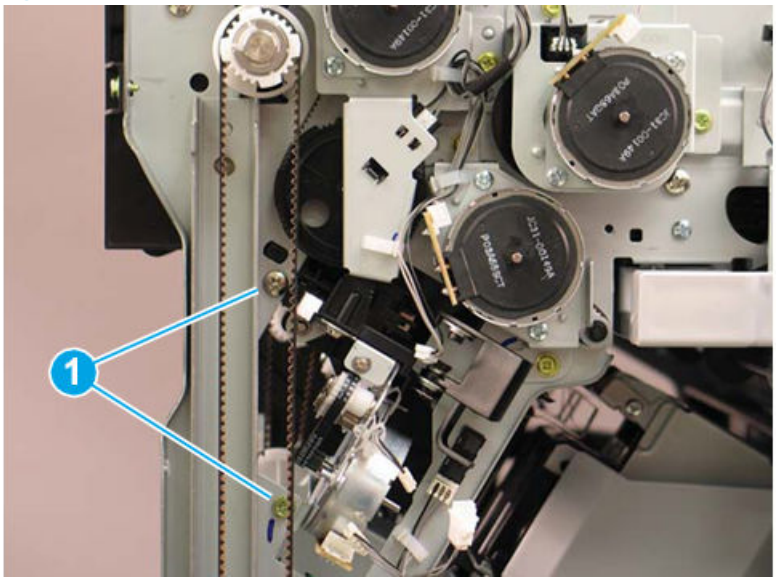
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 5-739 Disconnect three connectors



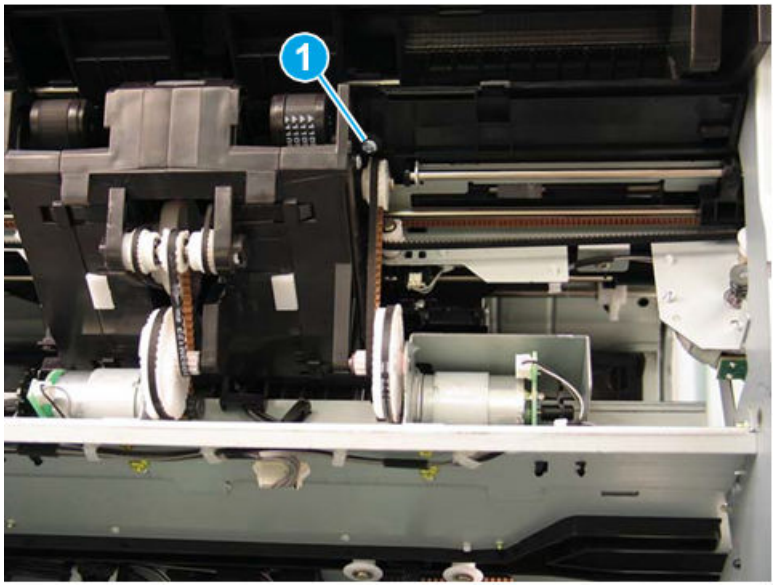
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-740 Remove two screws



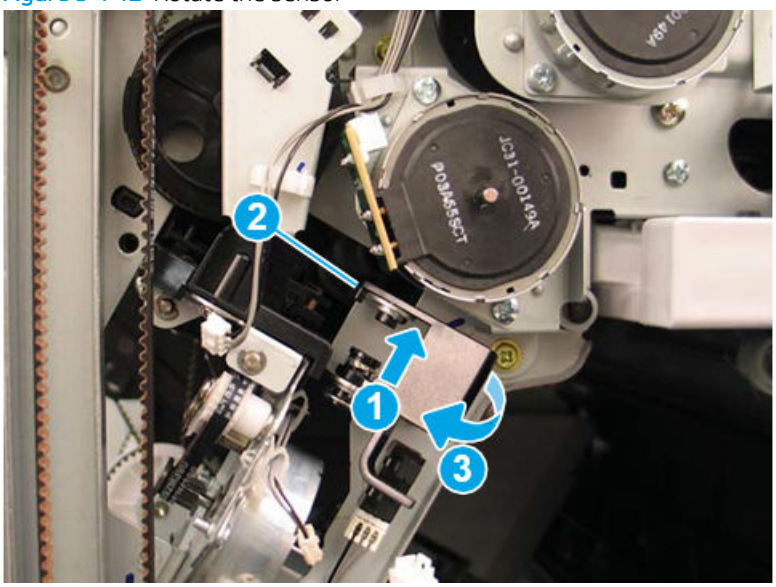
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-741 Remove one screw



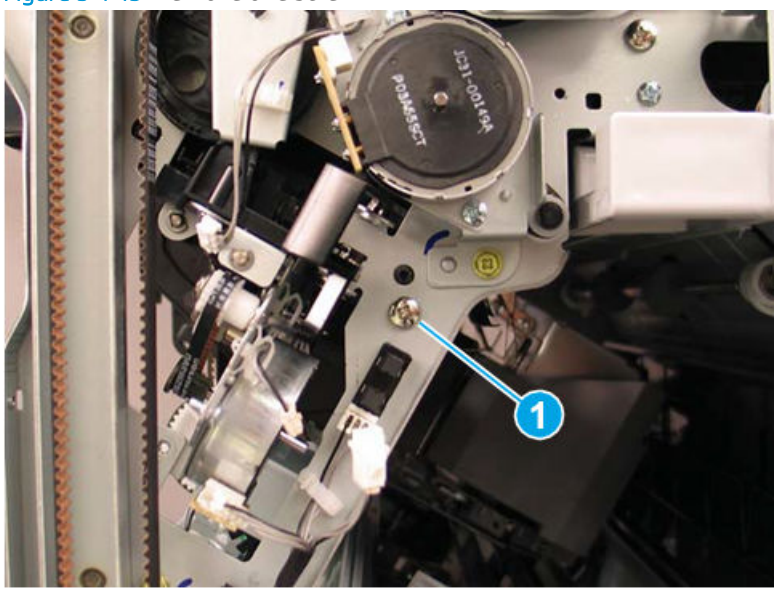
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 5-742 Rotate the sensor



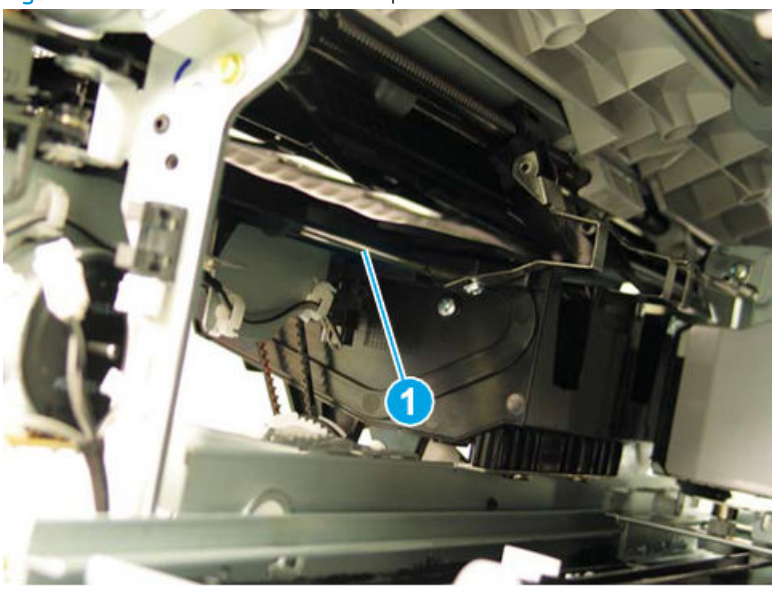
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-743 Remove one screw



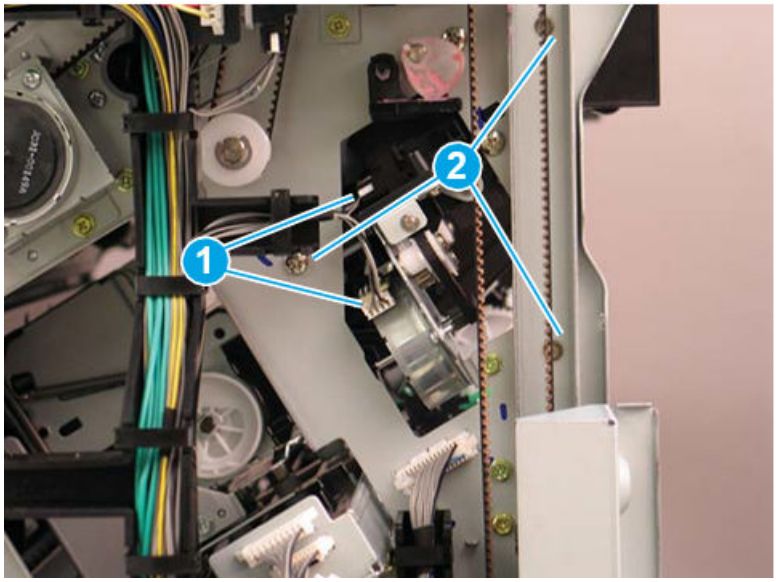
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 5-744 Remove the front tamper shaft



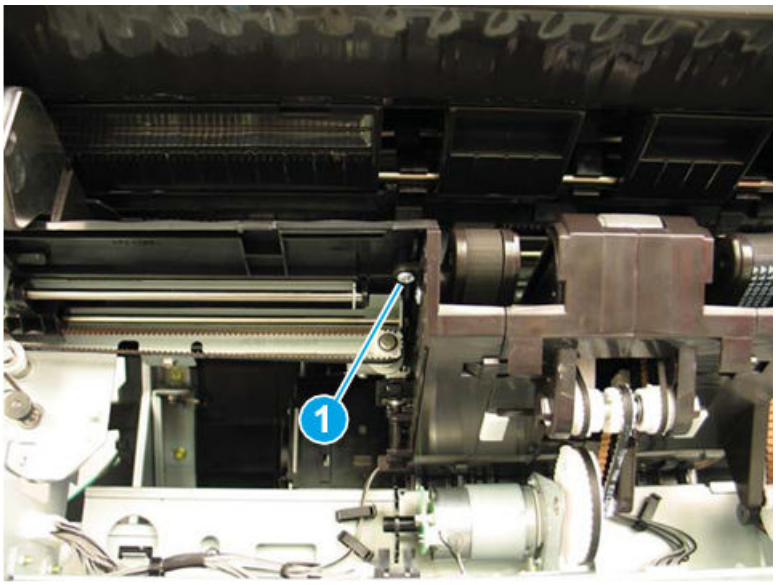
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-745 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



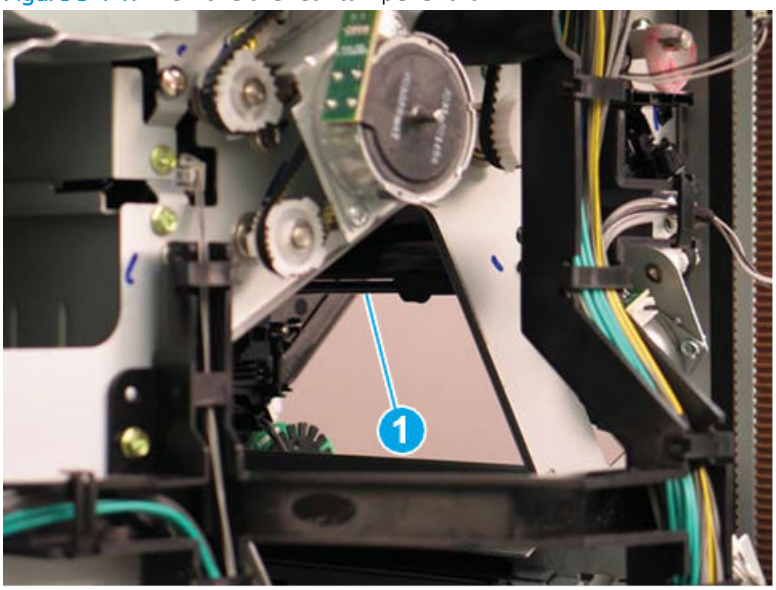
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-746 Remove one screw



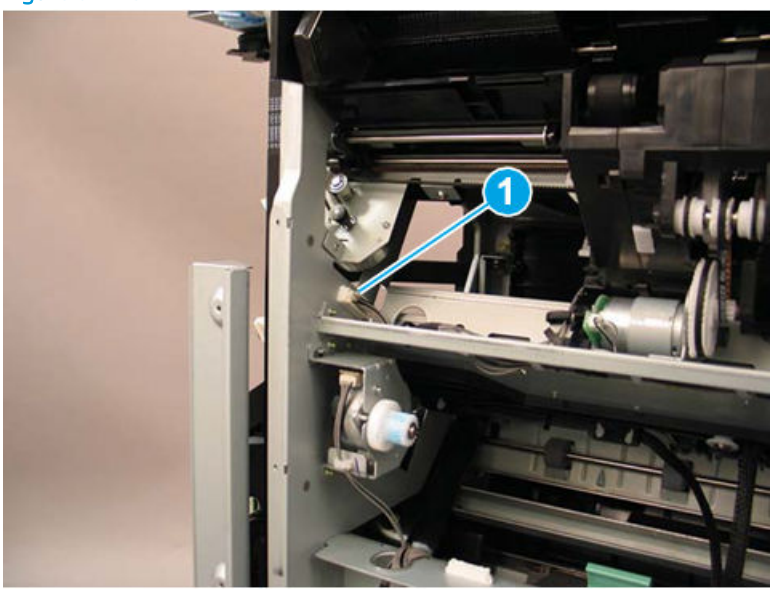
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 5-747 Remove the rear tamper shaft



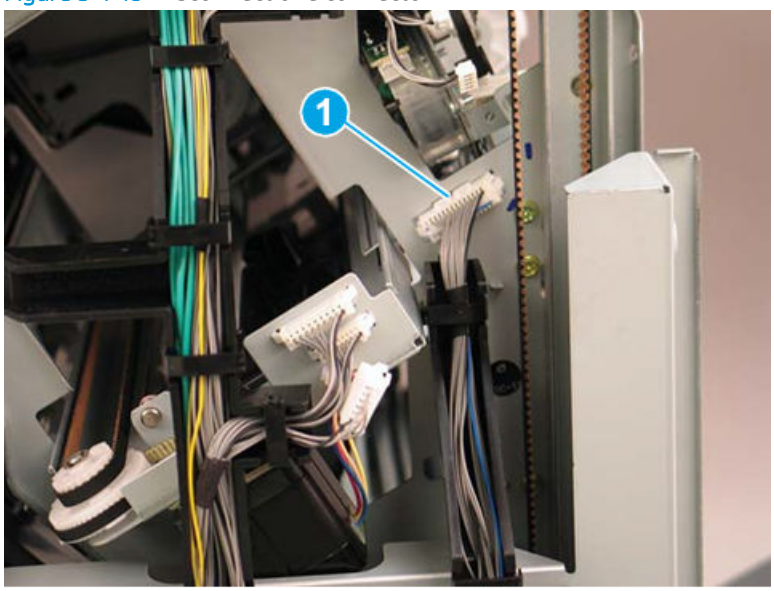
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-748 Disconnect one connector



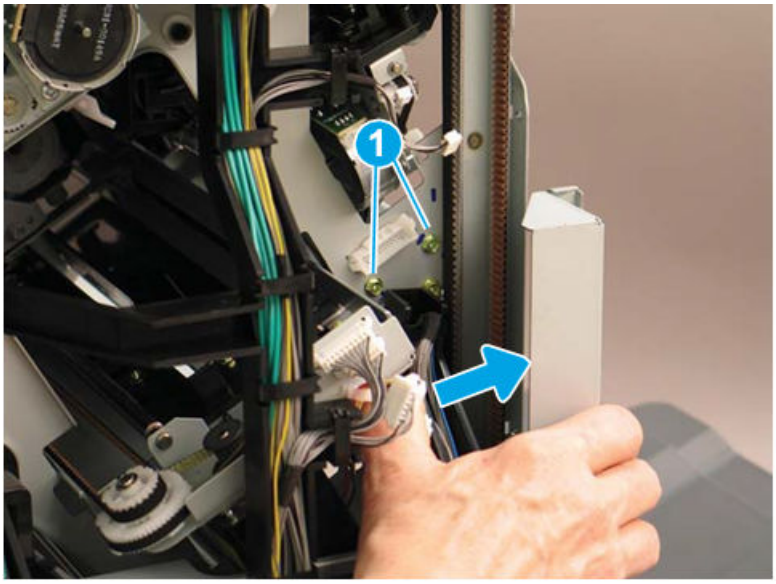
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-749 Disconnect one connector



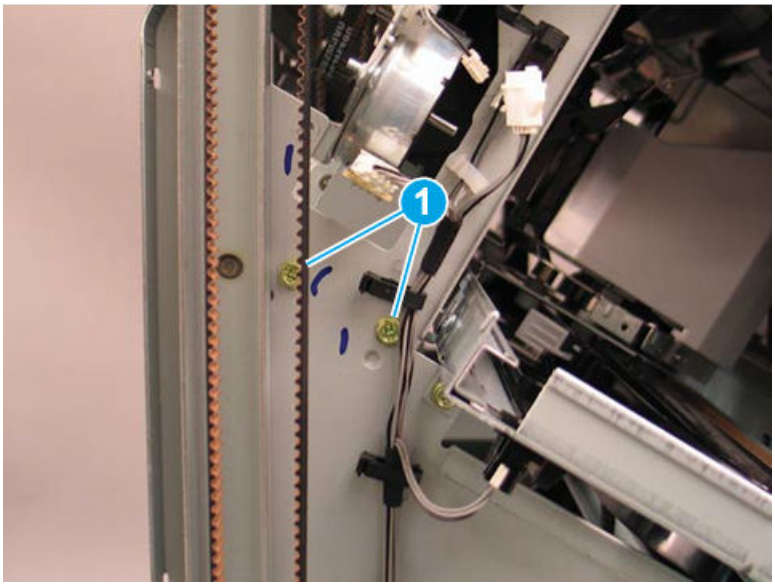
13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-750 Disconnect one connector



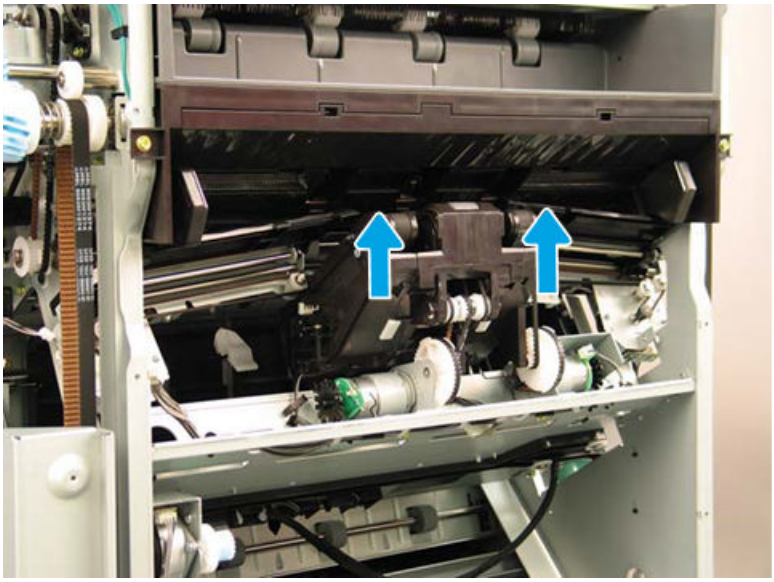
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-751 Remove two screws



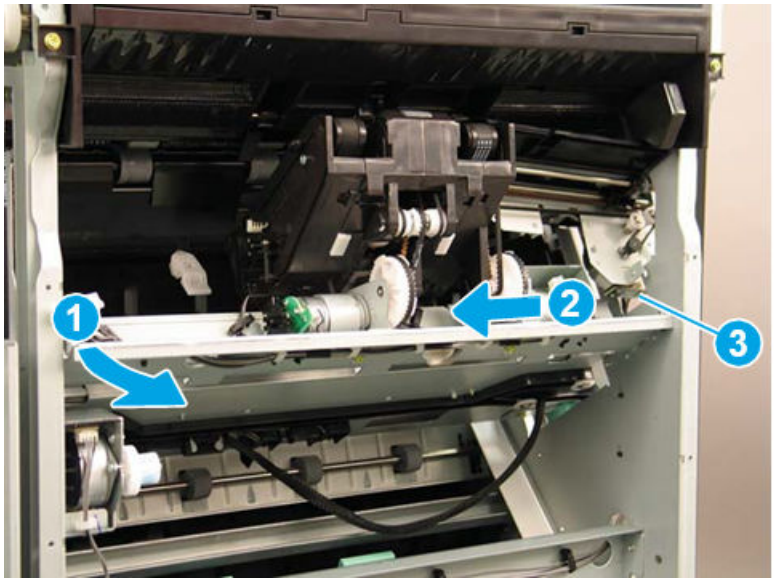
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 5-752 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 5-753 Remove the ejector unit

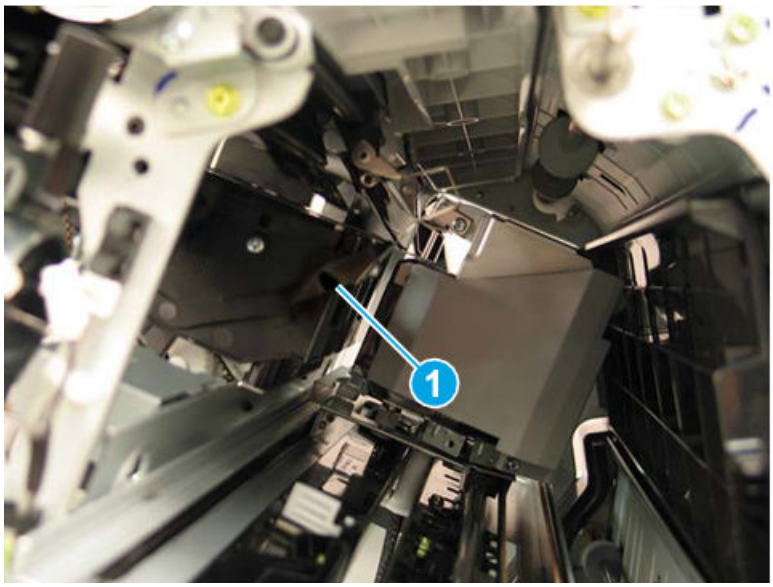


17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

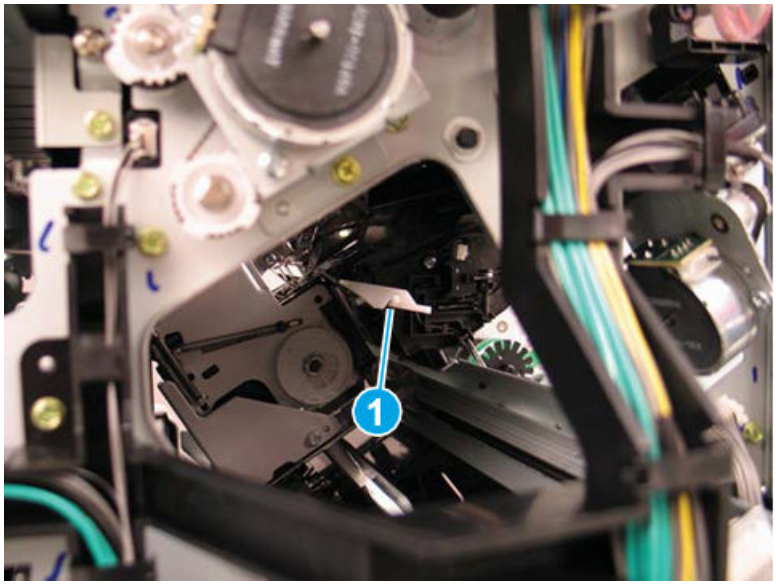
NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).



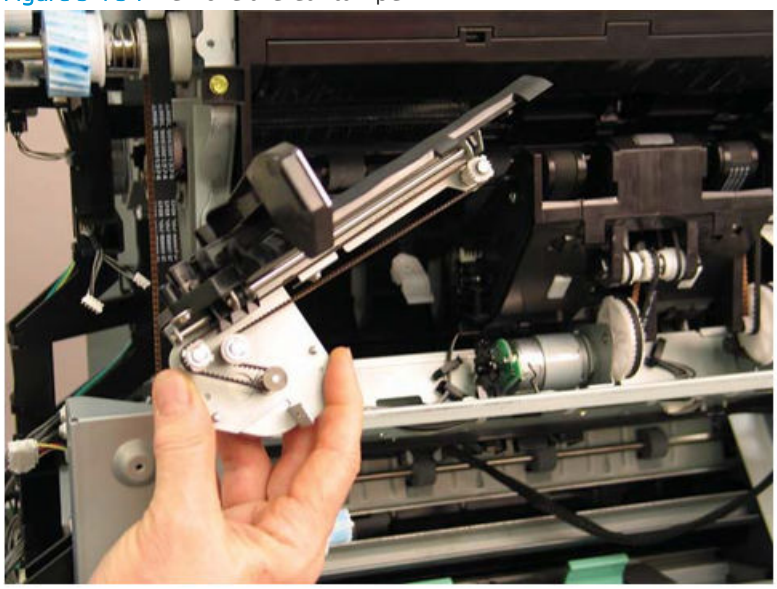
Remove the rear tamper unit

Follow these steps to remove the rear tamper unit.

▲ Lift the rear tamper away from the finisher to remove it

NOTE: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-754 Remove therear tamper

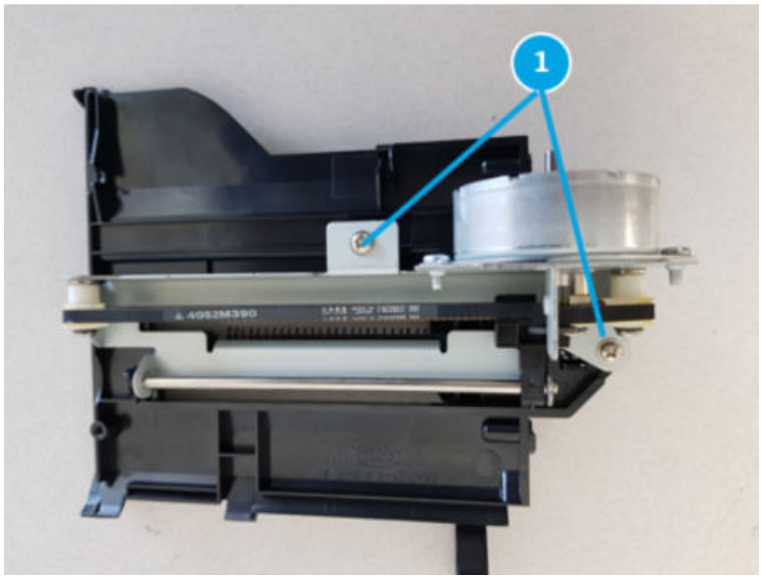


Remove the rear tamper home sensor(S9)

Follow these steps to remove the rear tamper home sensor(S9).

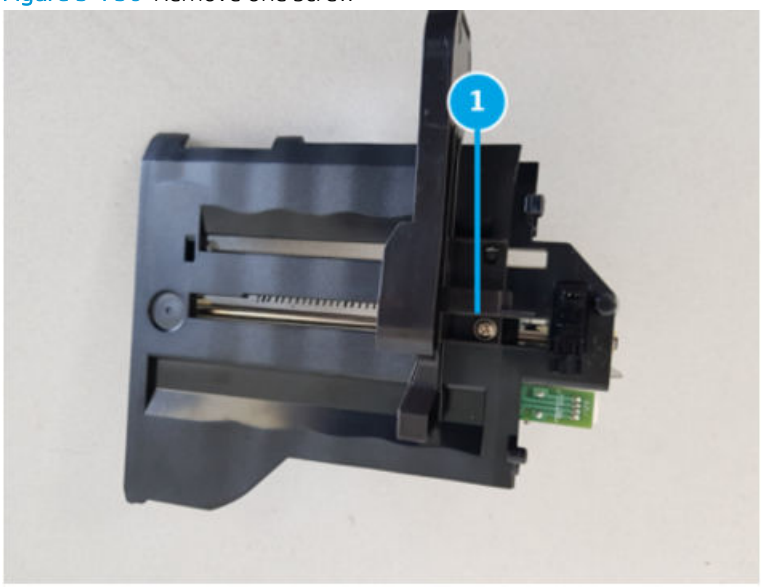
1. Remove two screws(callout 1) at the rear tamper.

Figure 5-755 Remove two screws



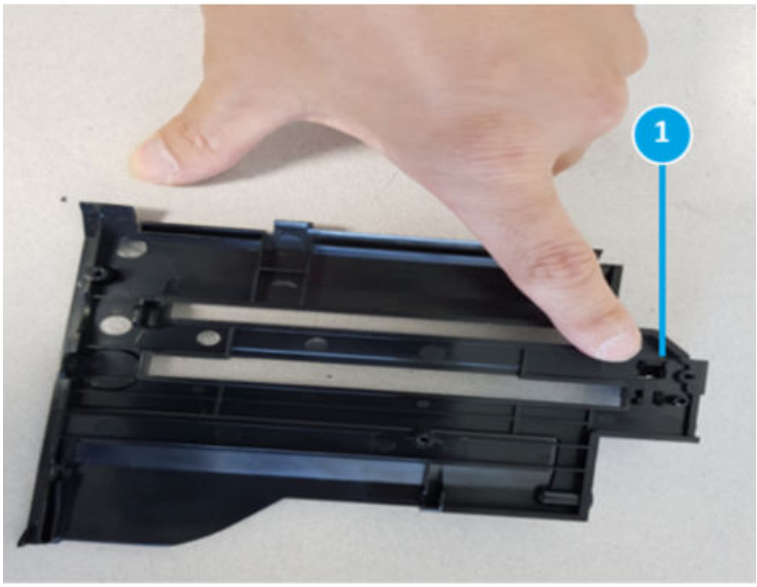
2. Remove one screw in front side(callout 1)

Figure 5-756 Remove one screw



3. Remove rear tamper home sensor(S9, callout 1)

Figure 5-757 Remove rear tamper home sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear tamper motor (M9)

Learn how to remove and replace the rear tamper motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear tamper motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-118 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Rear tamper motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

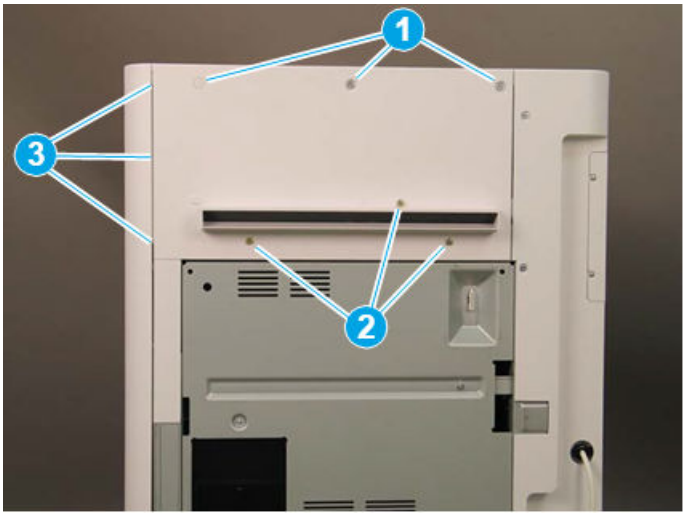
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-758 Remove the right upper cover

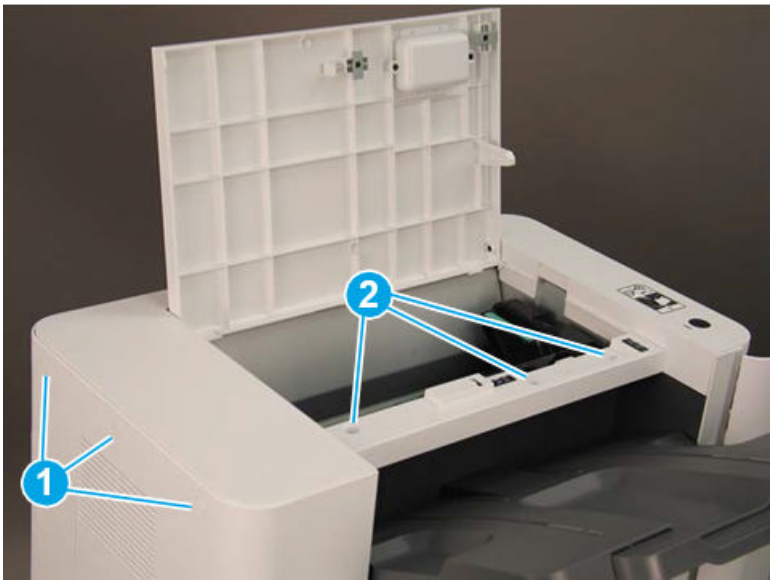


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

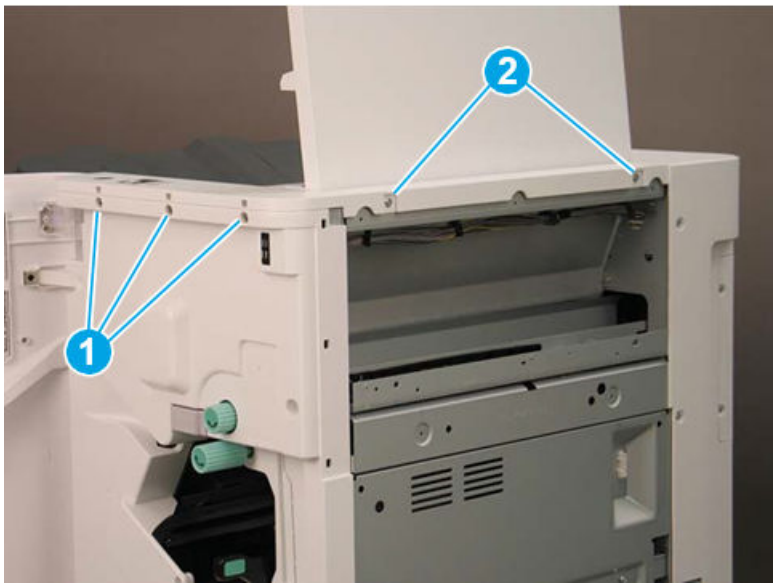
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-759 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

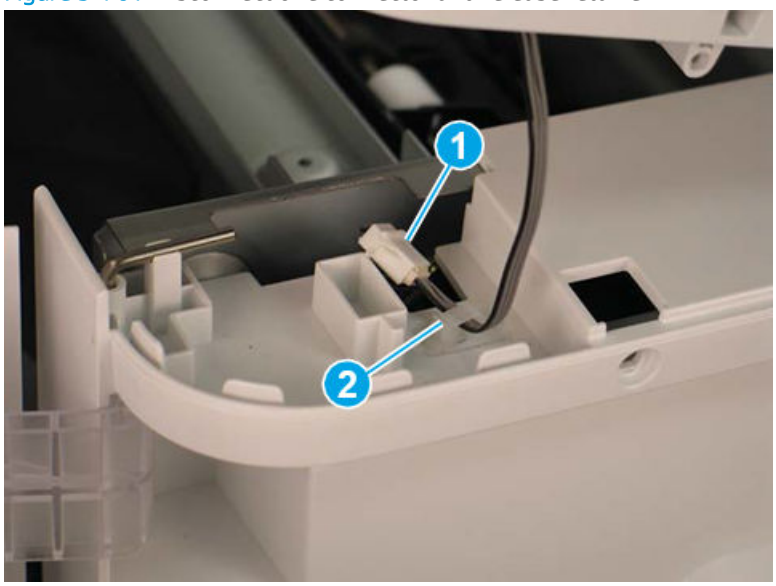
Figure 5-760 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-761 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

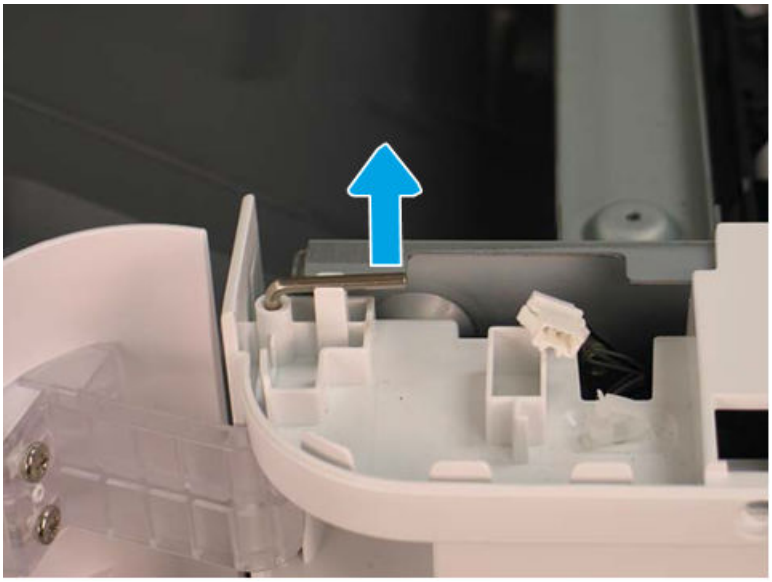


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

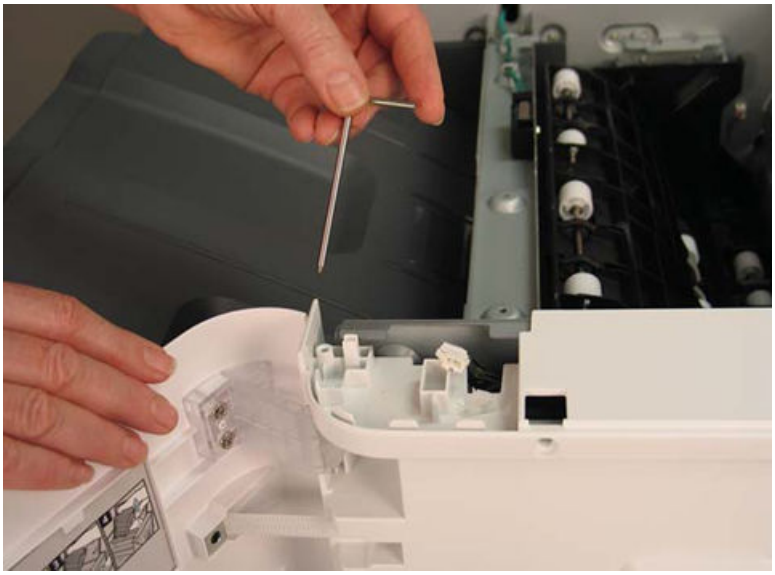
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-762 Lift the top hinge pin



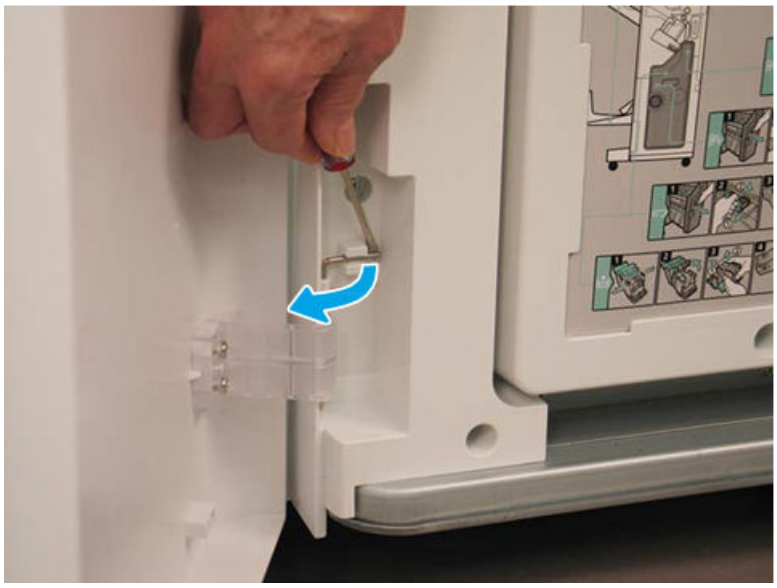
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-763 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-764 Release the lower hinge pin



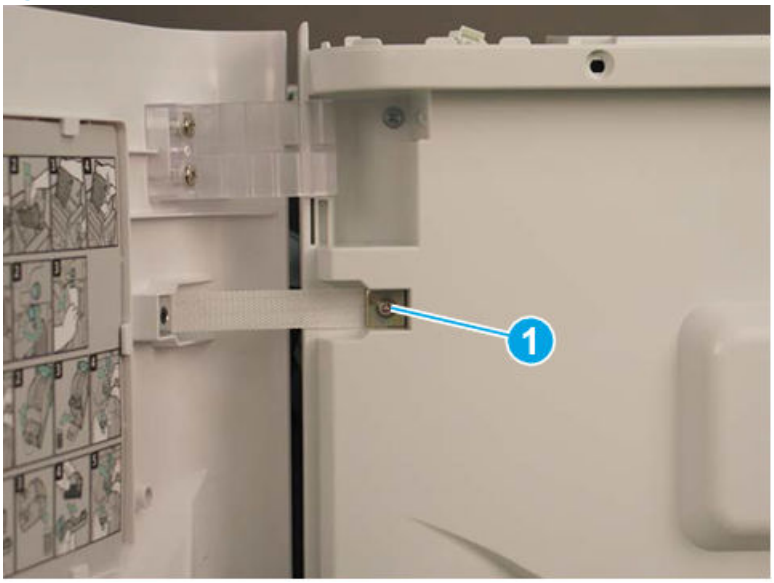
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-765 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-766 Remove the front door

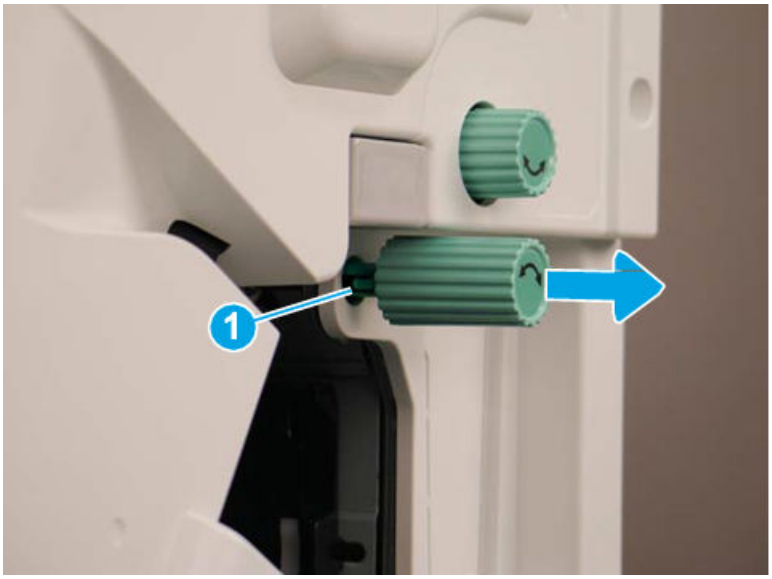


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

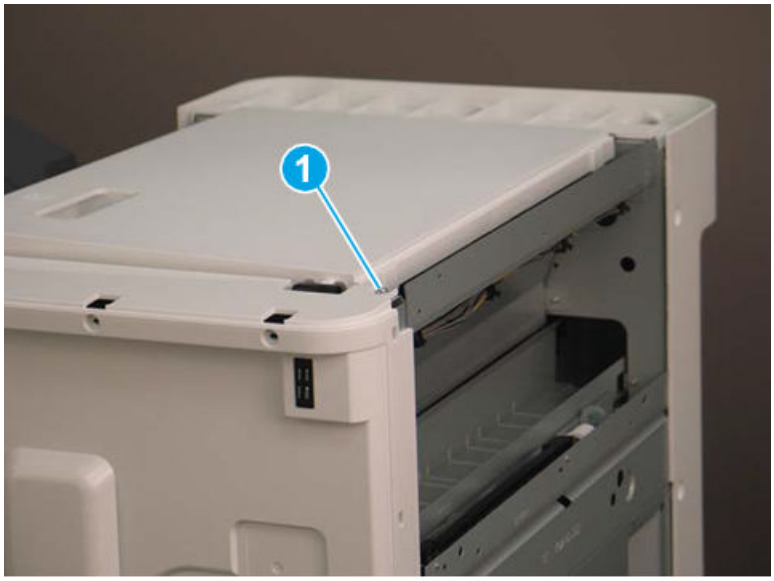
Figure 5-767 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

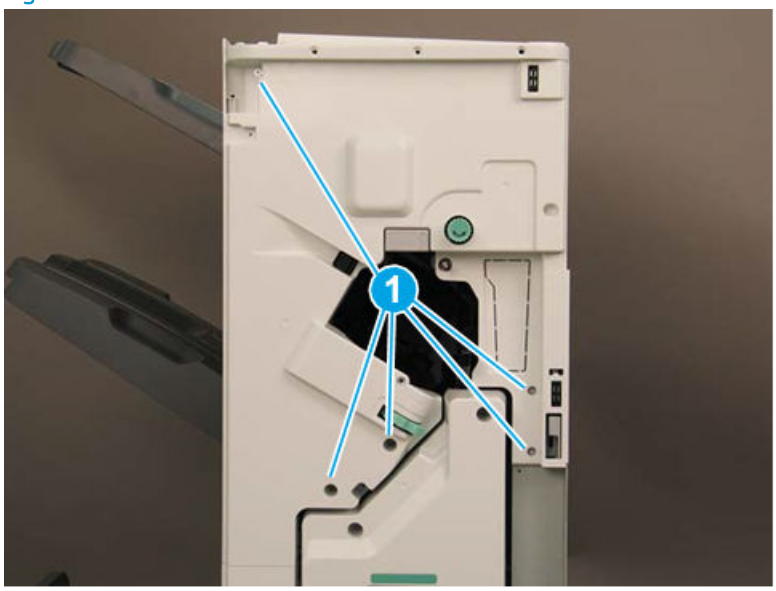
Figure 5-768 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-769 Remove the front cover

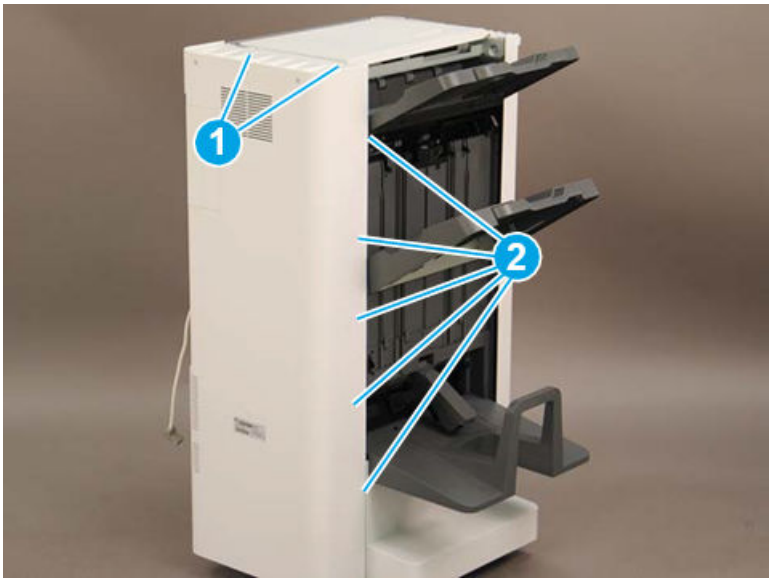


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-770 Remove seven screws

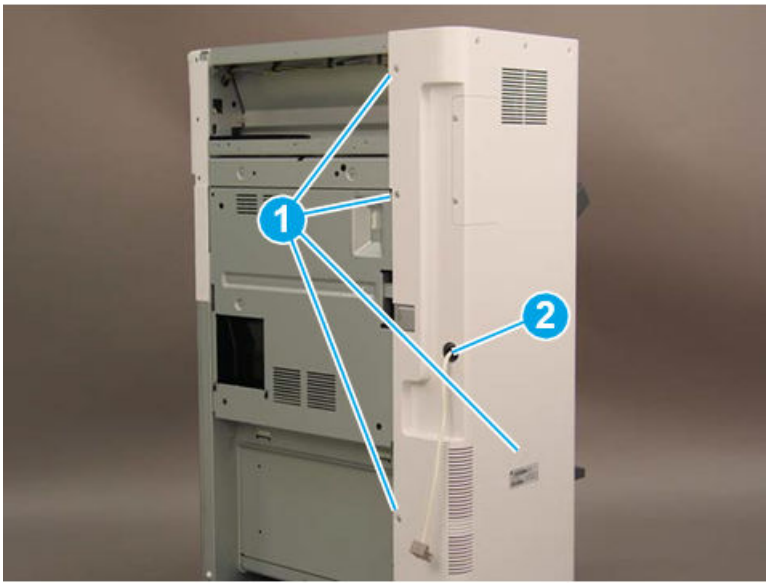


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-771 Remove the rear cover

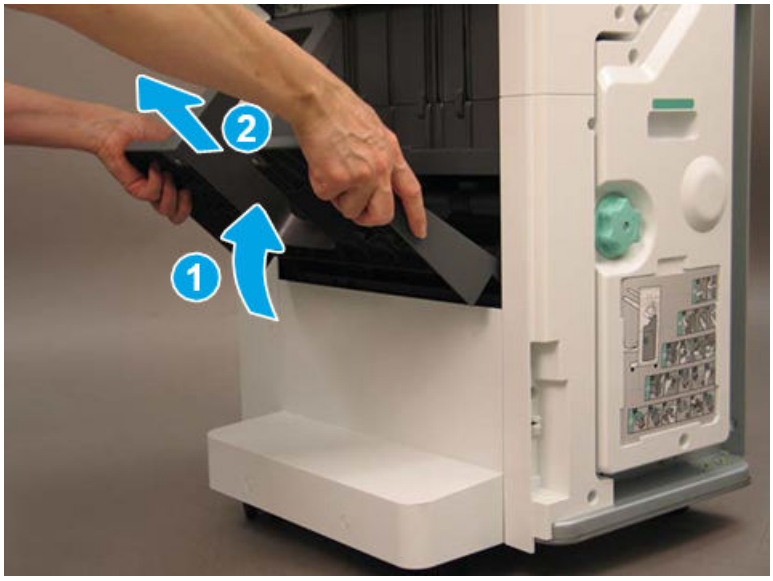


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-772 Remove the booklet output tray



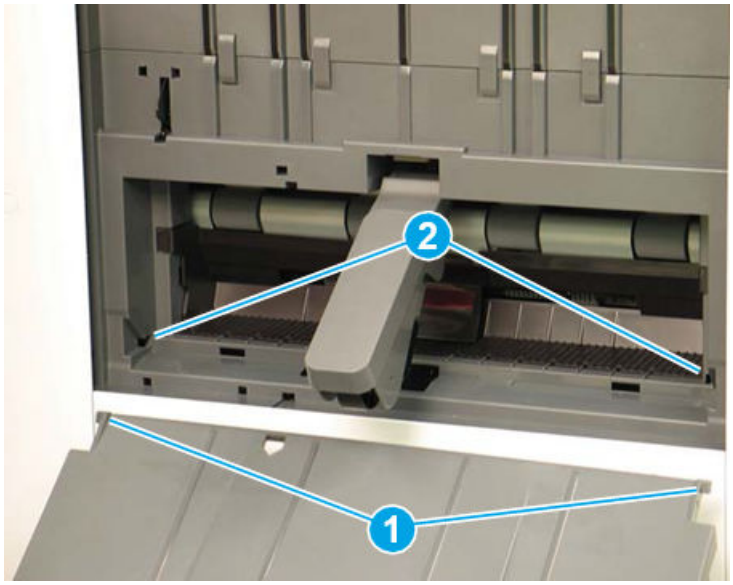
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-773 Install the booklet output tray

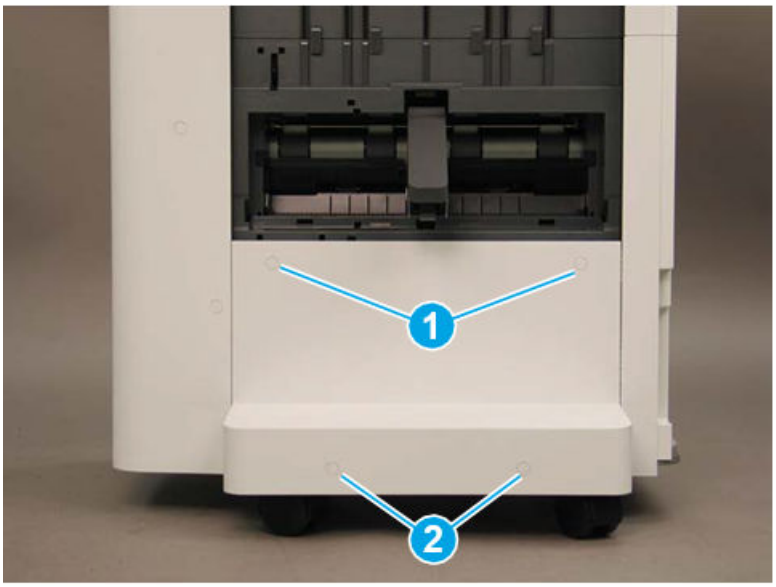


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-774 Remove four screws

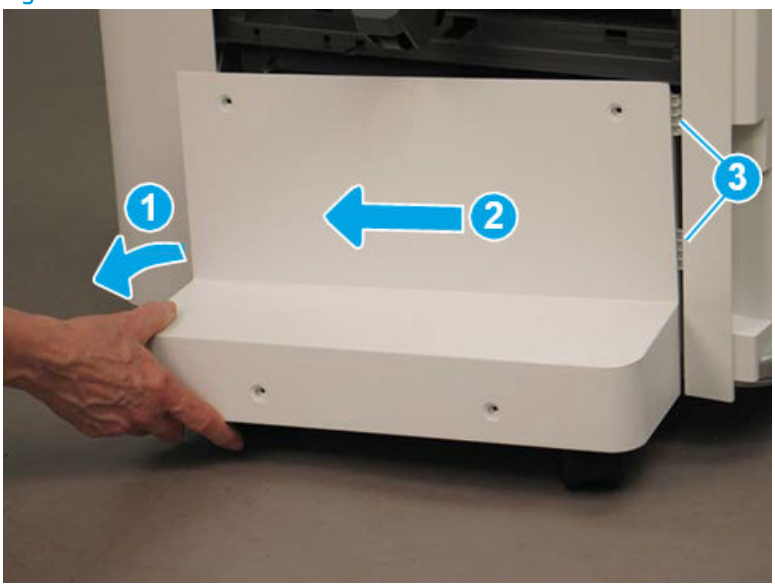


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-775 Remove the caster cover



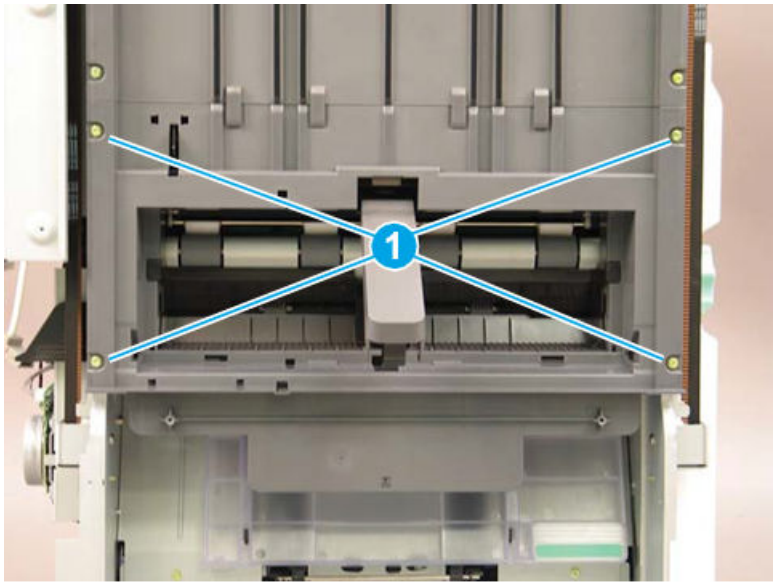
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-776 Remove four screws

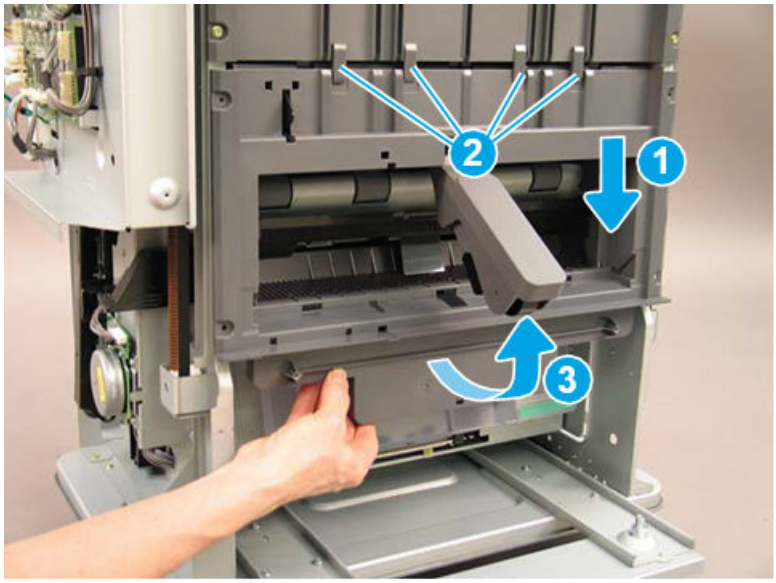


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

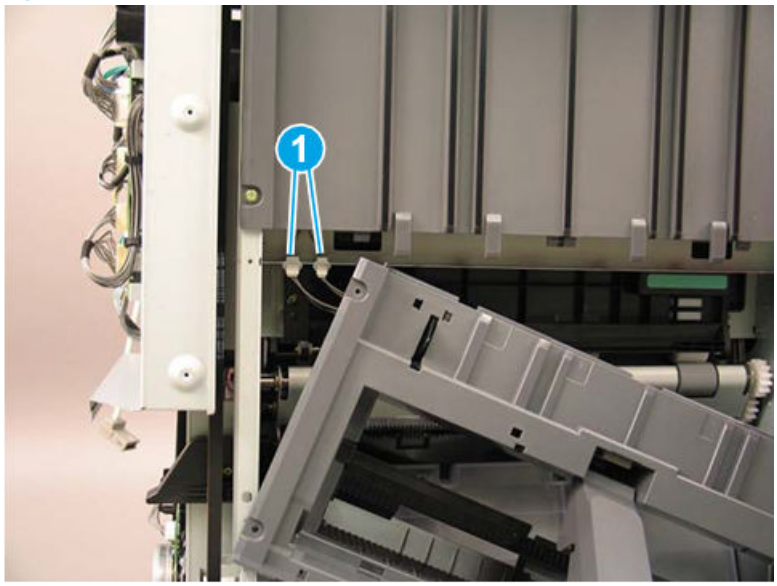
Figure 5-777 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

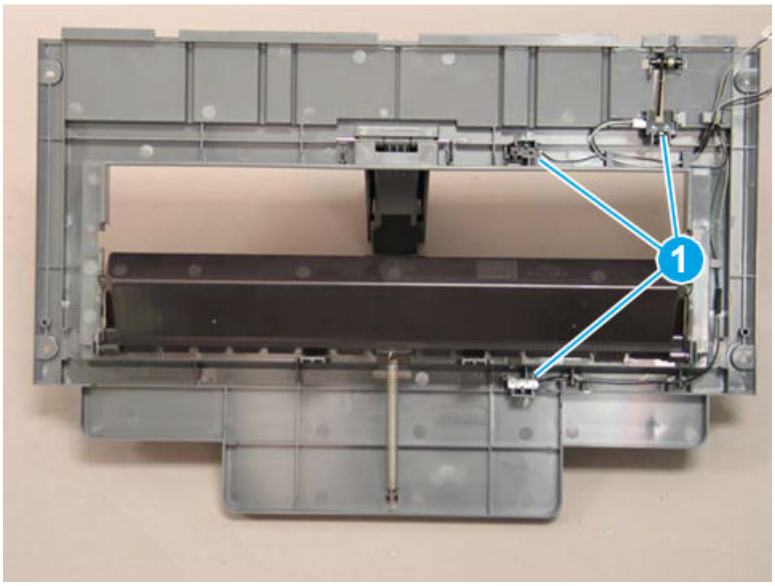
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-778 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-779 Remove the left lower cover

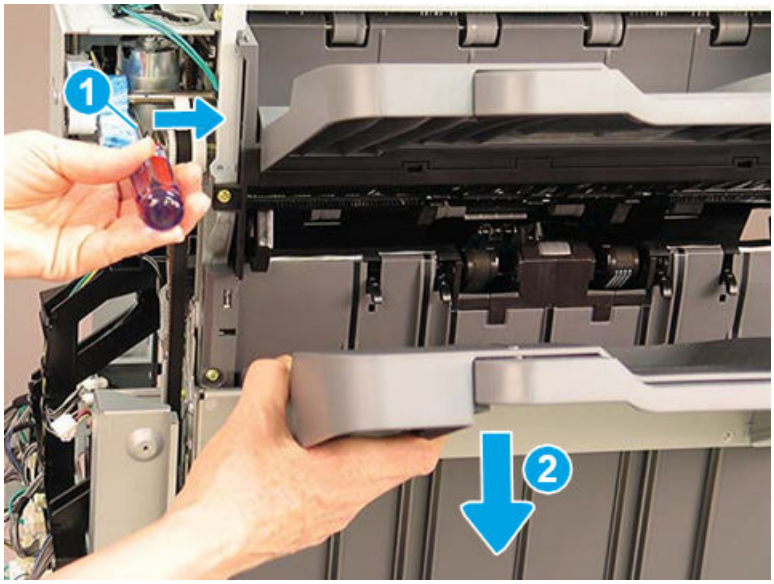


Remove the left upper cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover (finisher).

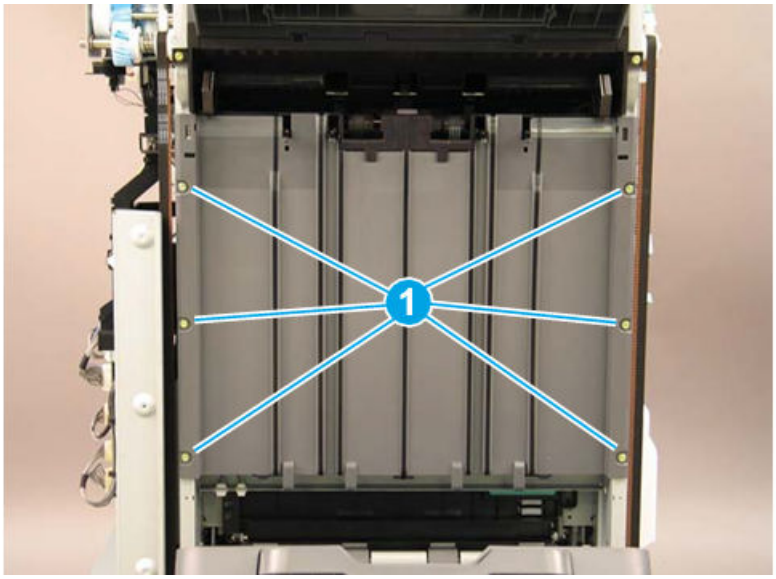
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 5-780 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-781 Remove six screws

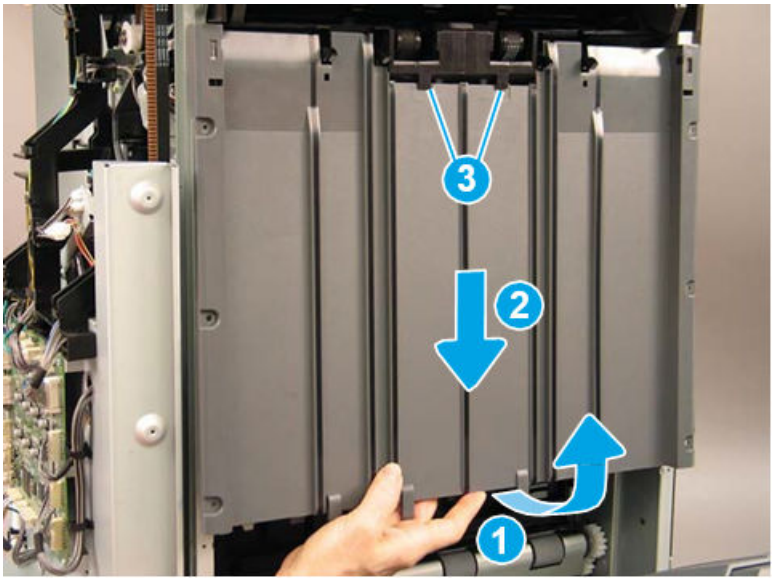


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away fromthe finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

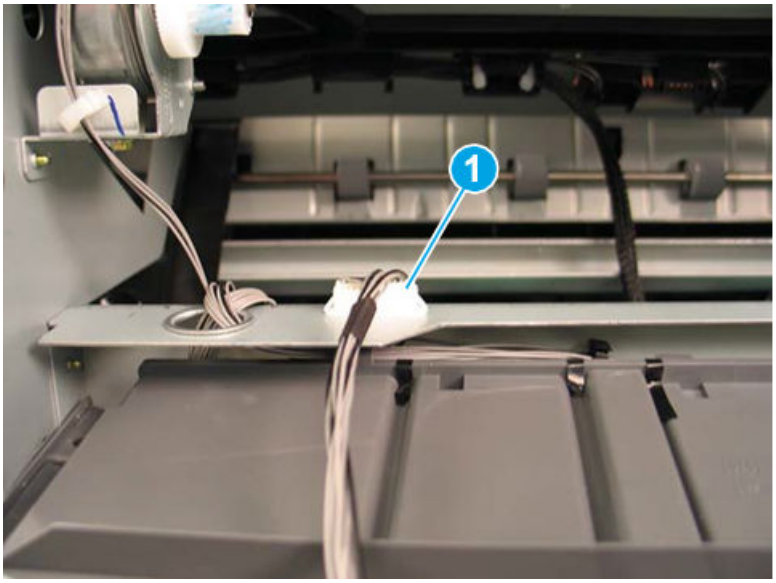
Figure 5-782 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

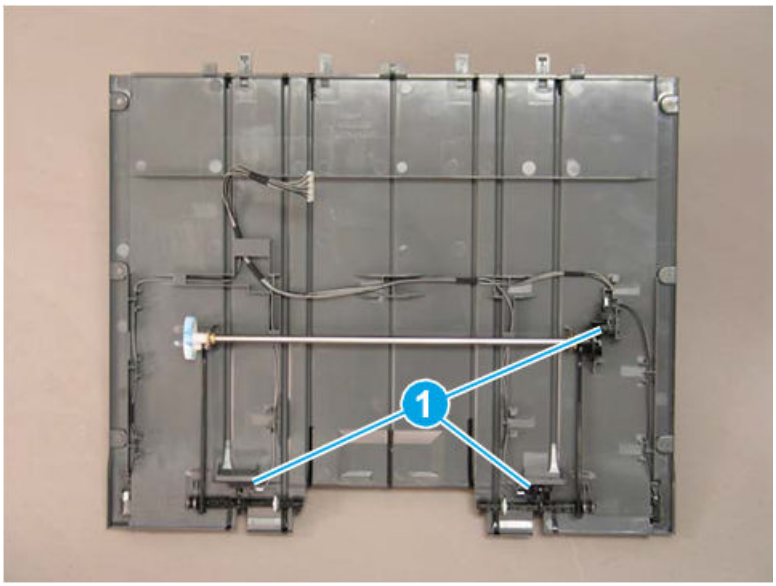
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-783 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the left upper cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left upper cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-784 Remove the left upper cover

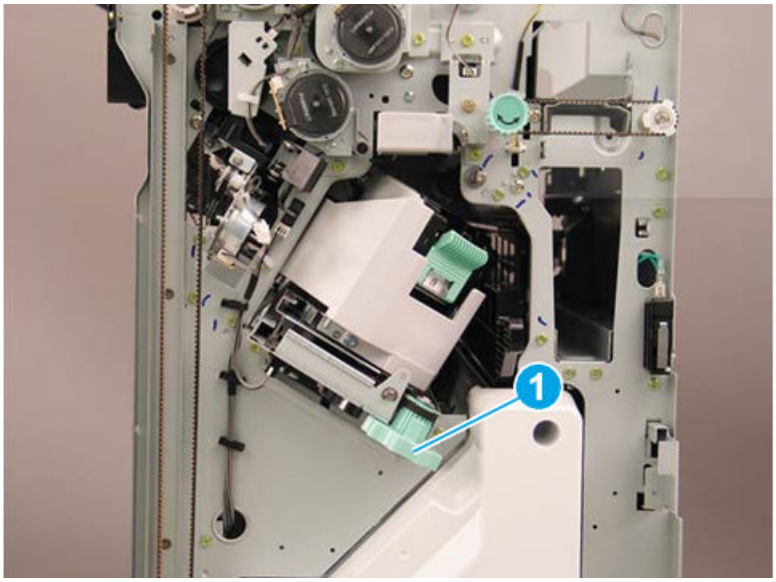


Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the ejector unit (finisher).

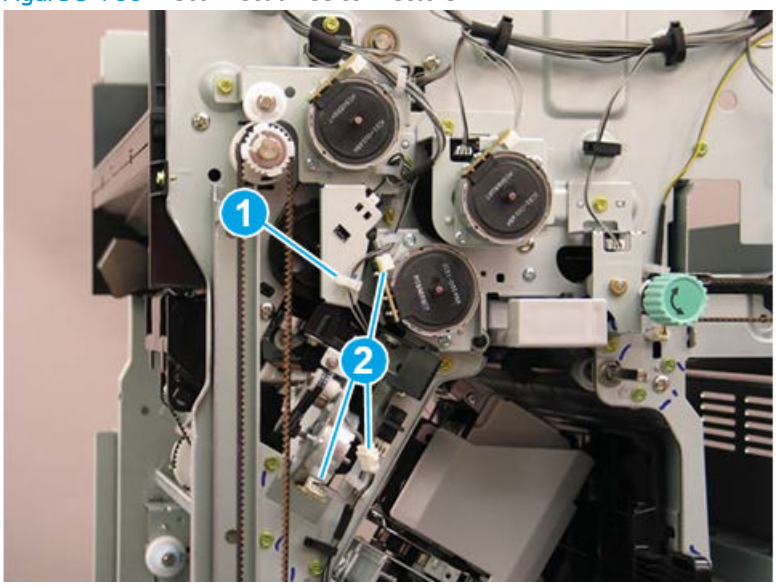
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 5-785 Move the staple unit to the center



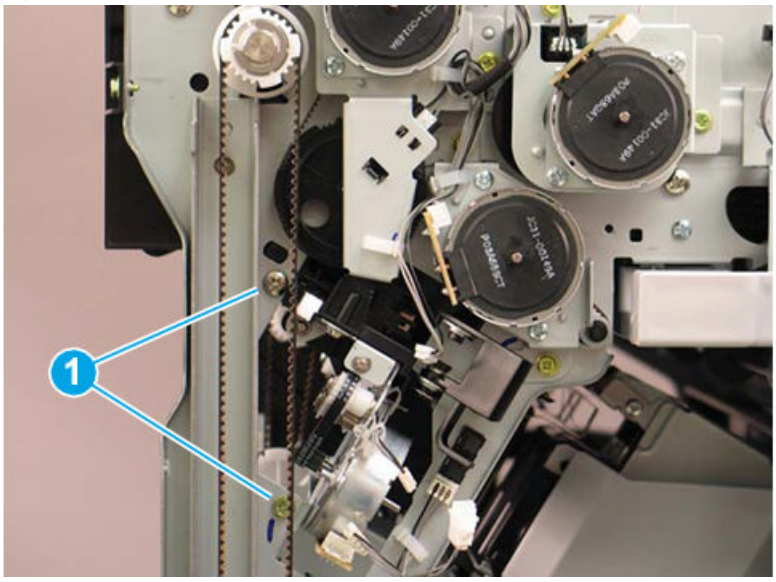
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 5-786 Disconnect three connectors



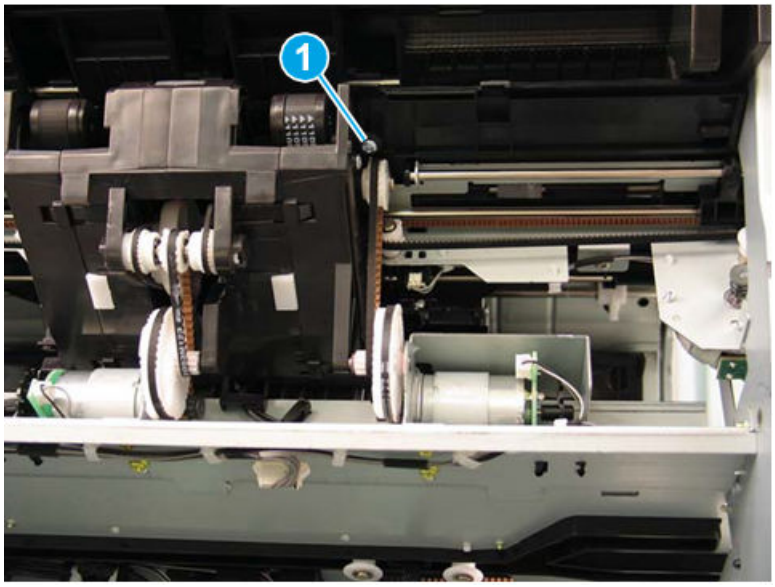
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-787 Remove two screws



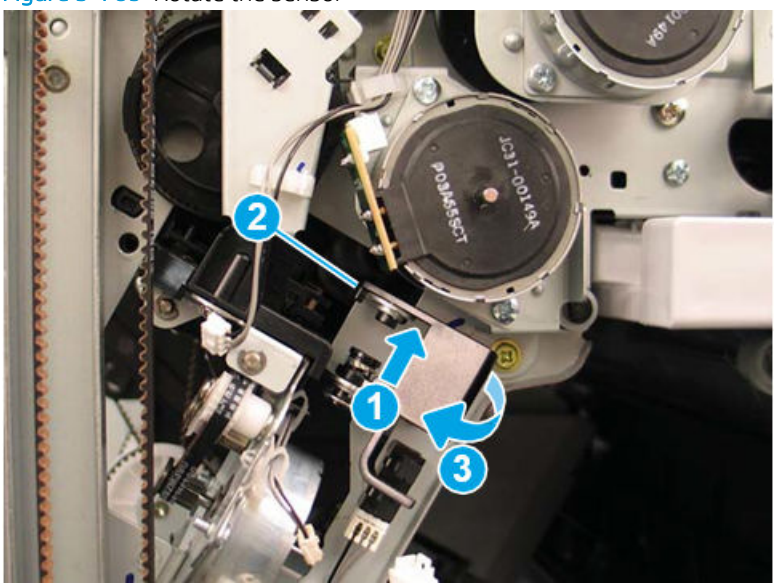
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-788 Remove one screw



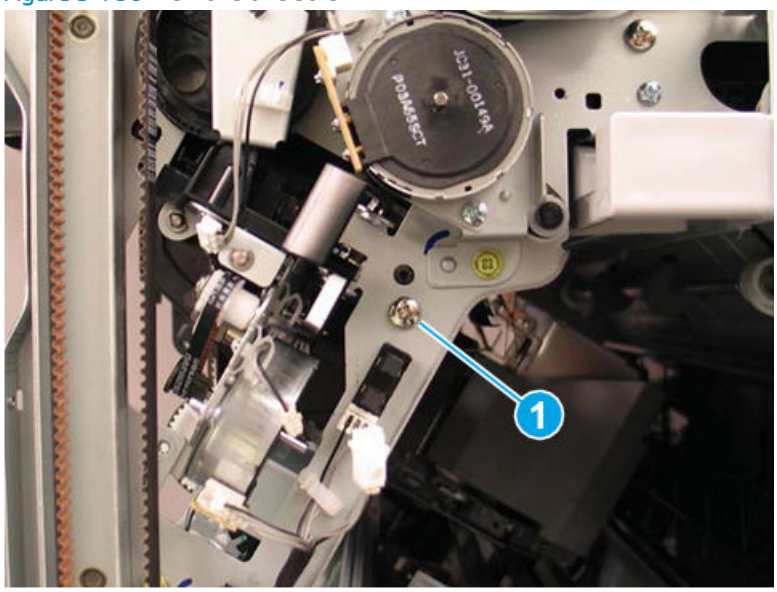
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 5-789 Rotate the sensor



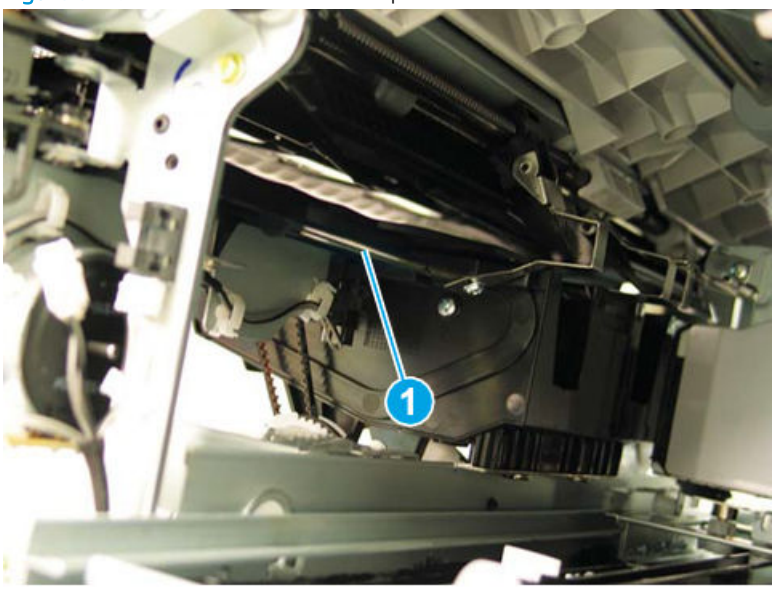
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-790 Remove one screw



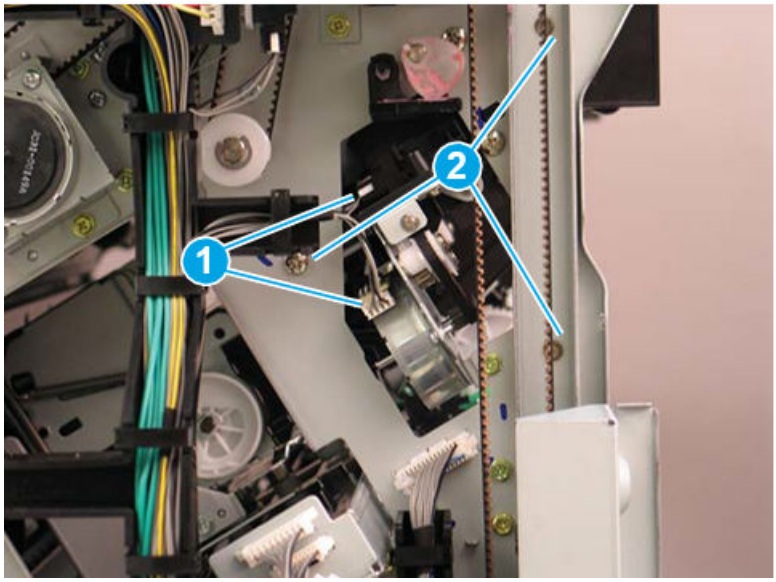
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 5-791 Remove the front tamper shaft



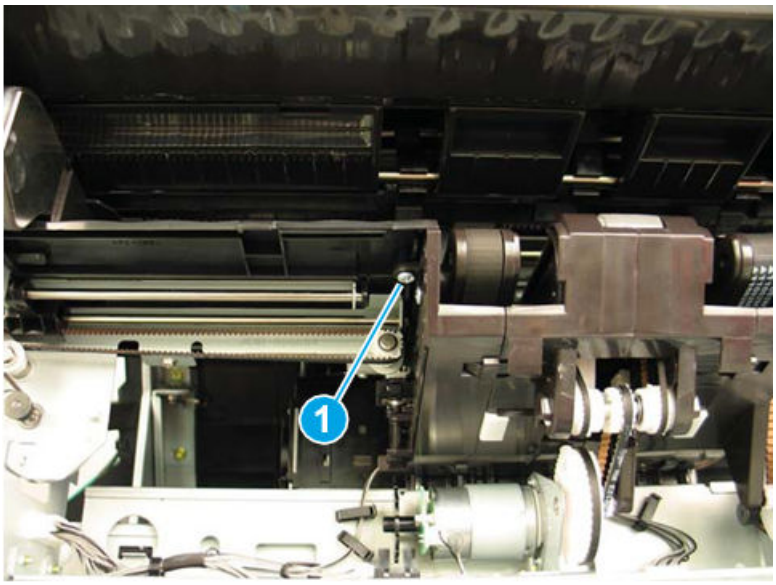
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-792 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



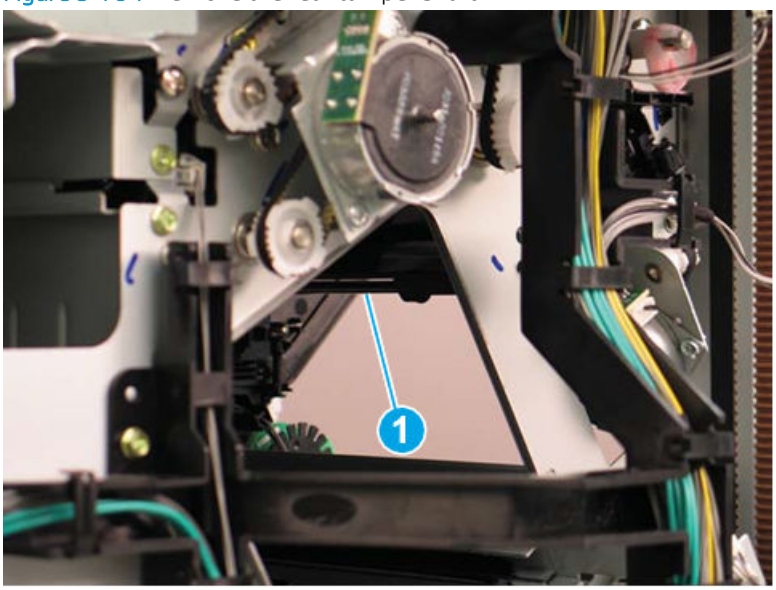
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-793 Remove one screw



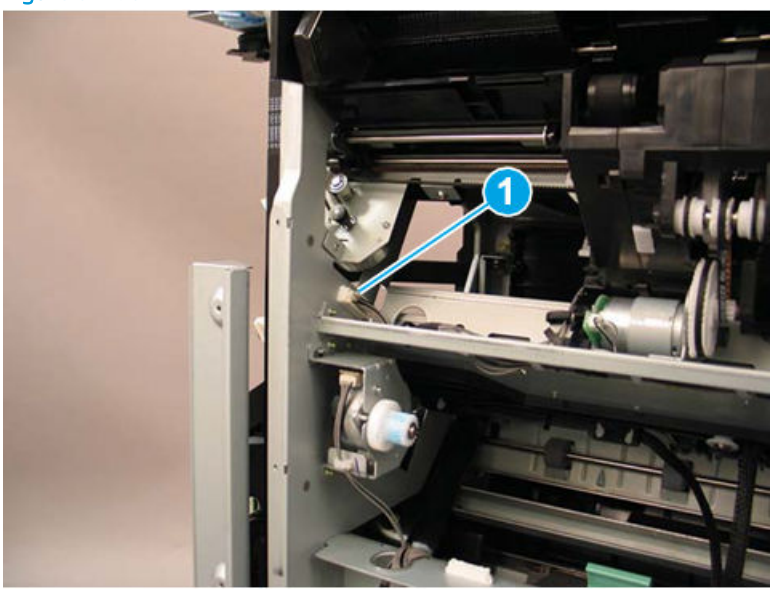
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 5-794 Remove the rear tamper shaft



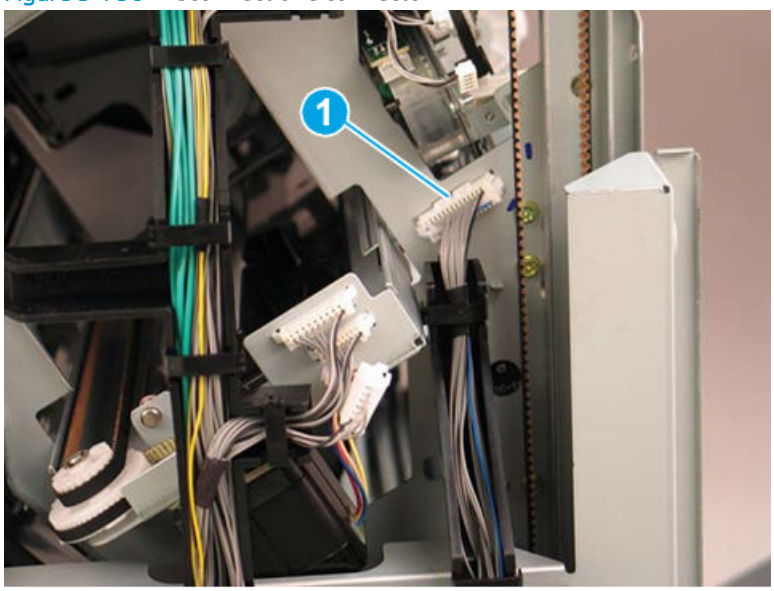
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-795 Disconnect one connector



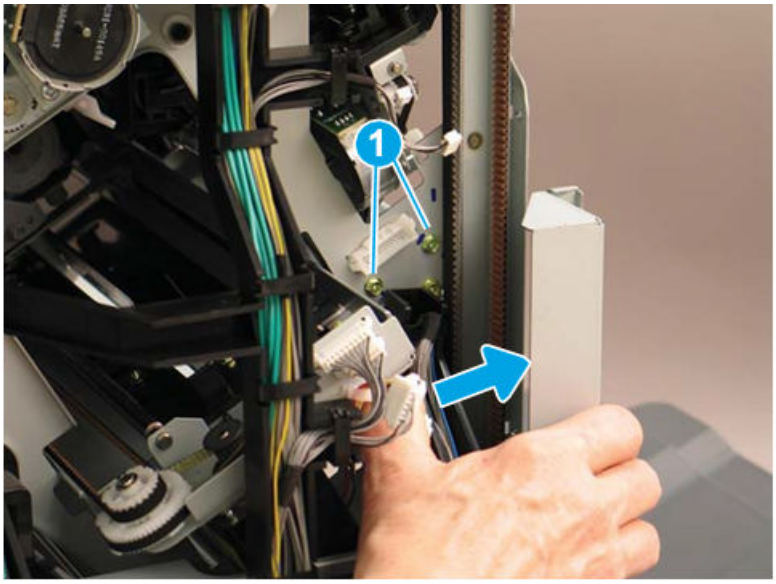
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-796 Disconnect one connector



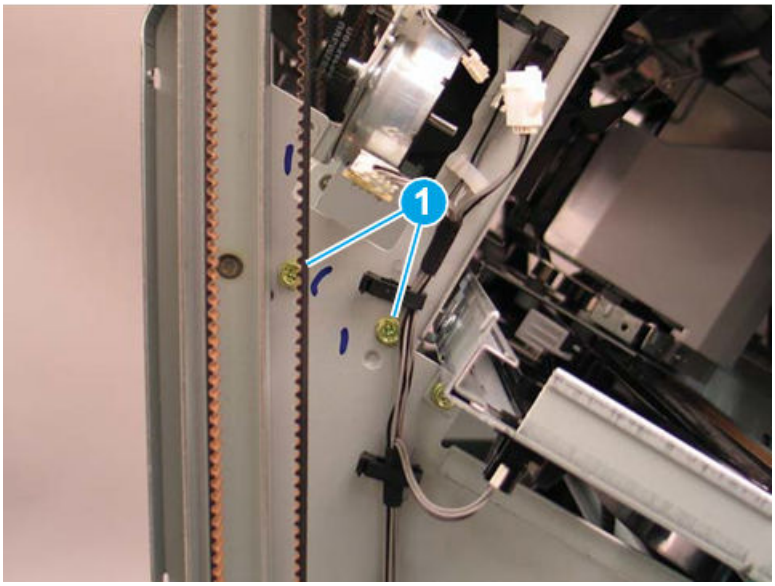
13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-797 Disconnect one connector



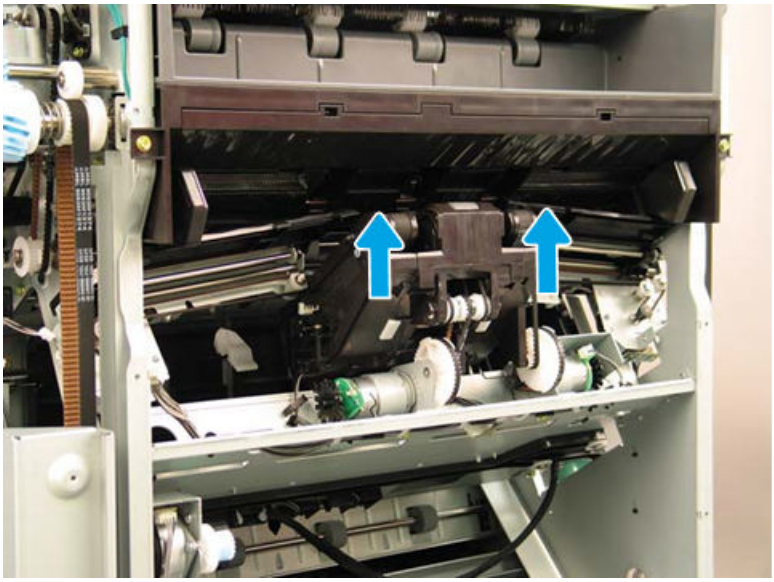
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-798 Remove two screws



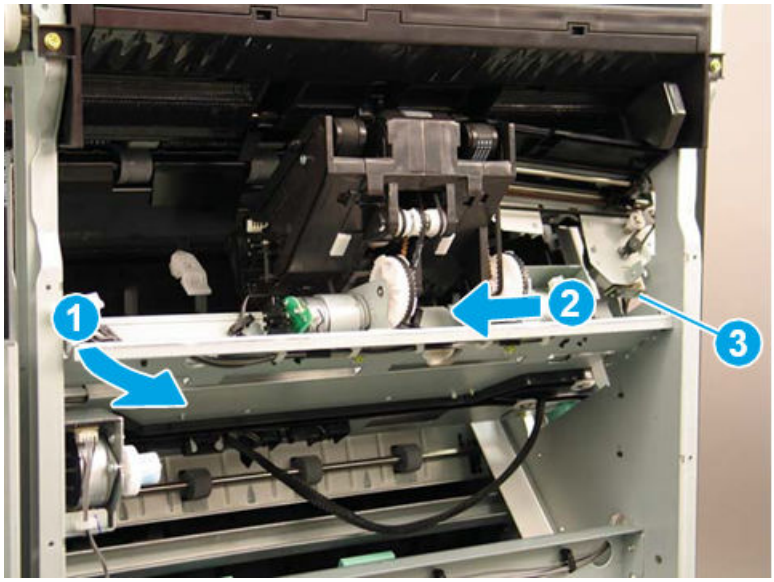
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 5-799 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 5-800 Remove the ejector unit

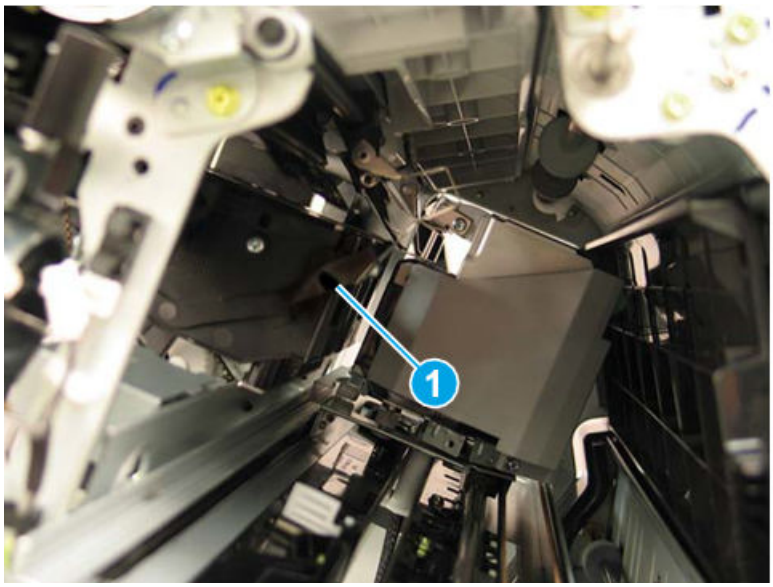


17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

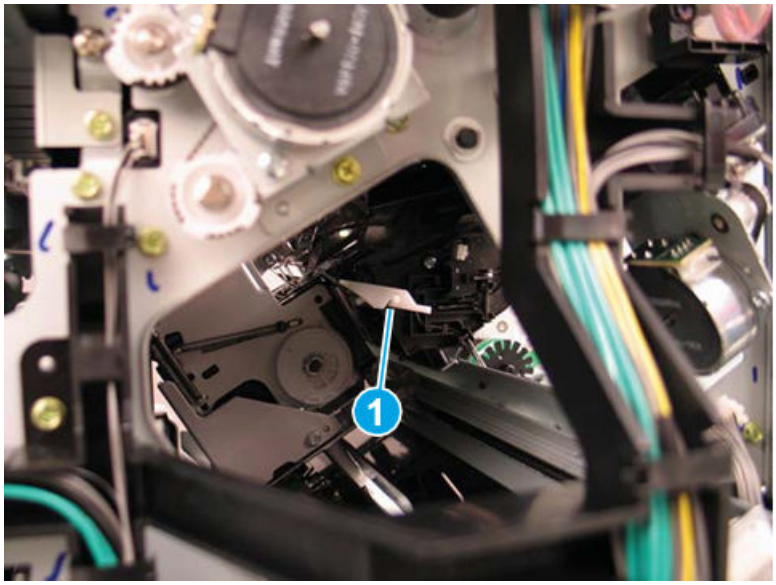
NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).



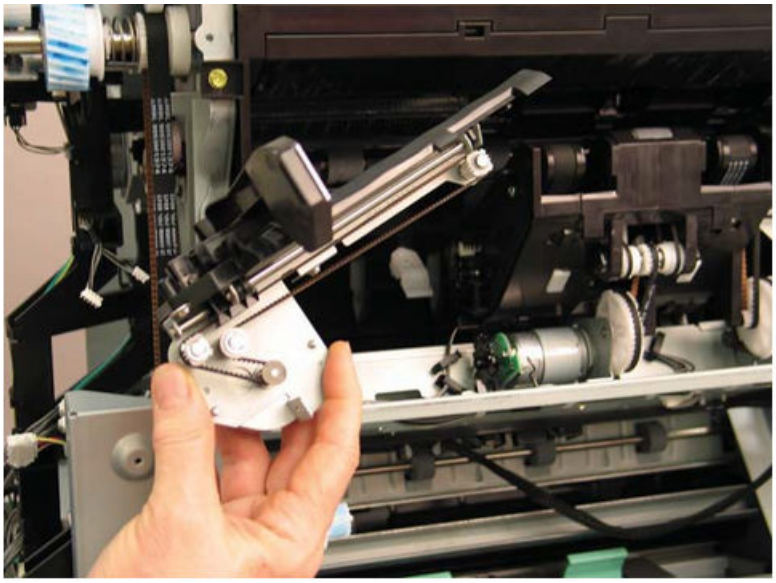
Remove the rear tamper unit

Follow these steps to remove the rear tamper unit.

▲ Lift the rear tamper away from the finisher to remove it

NOTE: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-801 Remove therear tamper

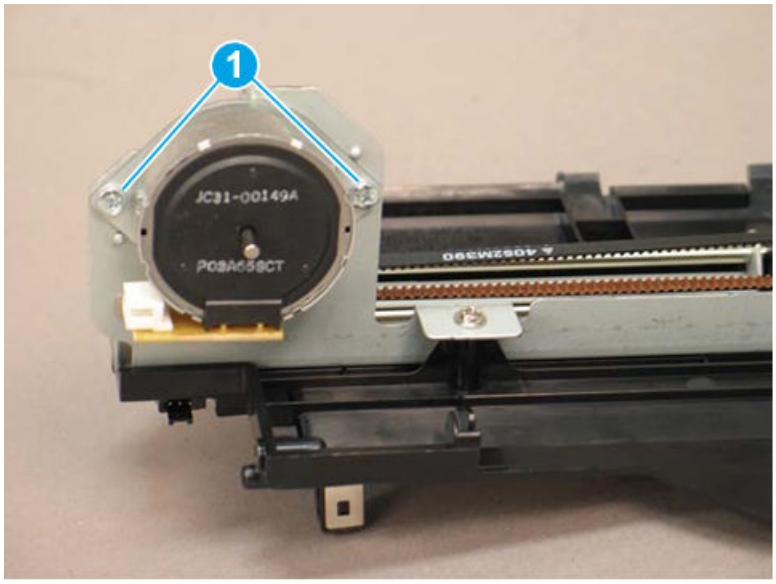


Remove the rear tamper motor (M9)

Follow these steps to remove the rear tamper motor (M9).

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-802 Remove two screws

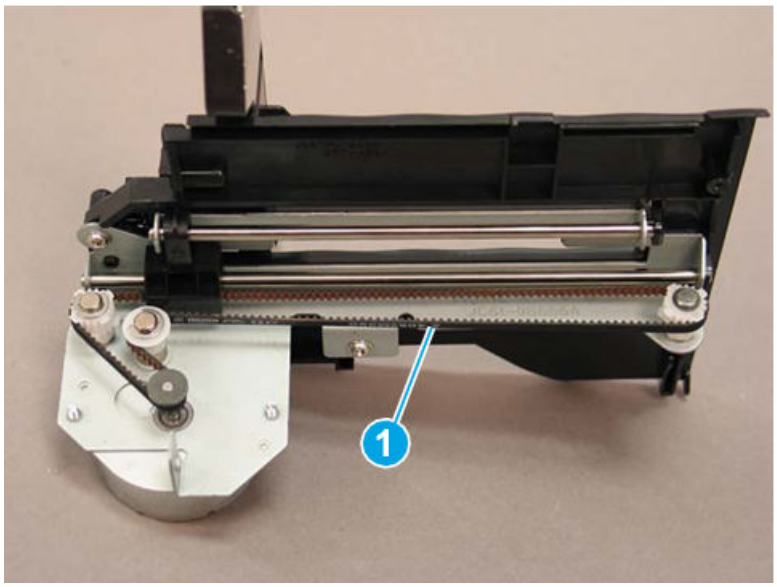


2. Release the belt (callout 1), and then remove the rear tamper motor.

TIP: Make sure that the belt is routed correctly when reinstalling the motor.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-803 Release the belt and remove the motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Stapler unit

Removal and replacement: Stapler unit

Learn how to remove and replace the stapler unit.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the stapler unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-119 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00894A	Stapler unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

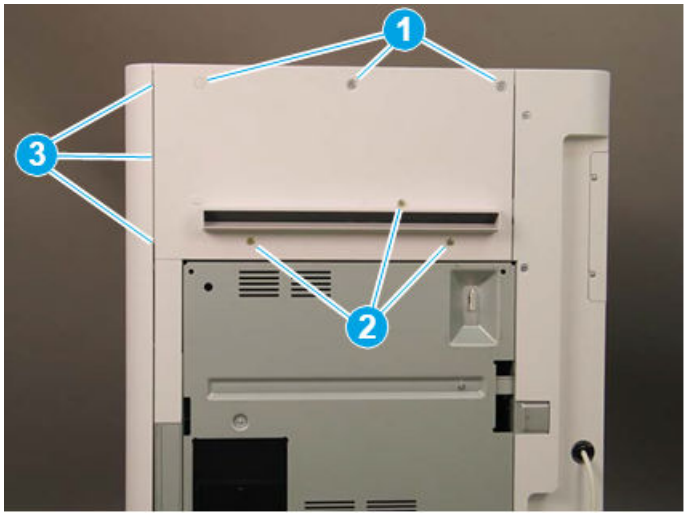
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-804 Remove the right upper cover

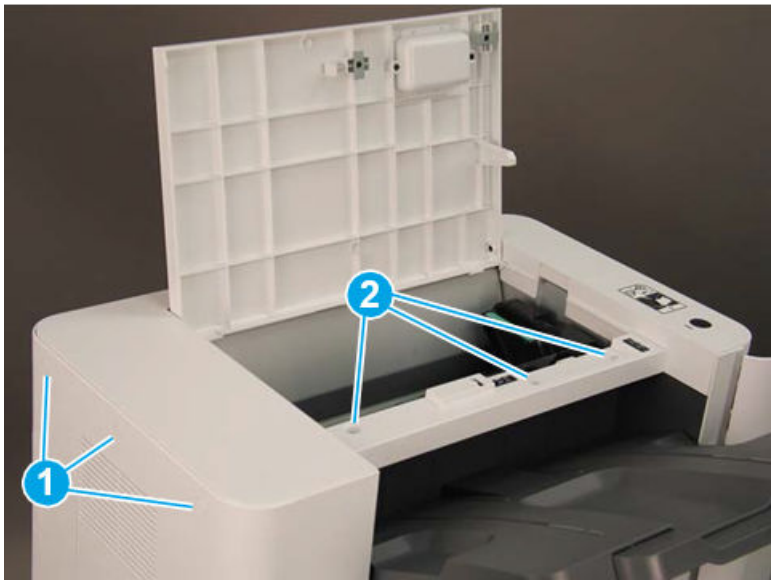


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

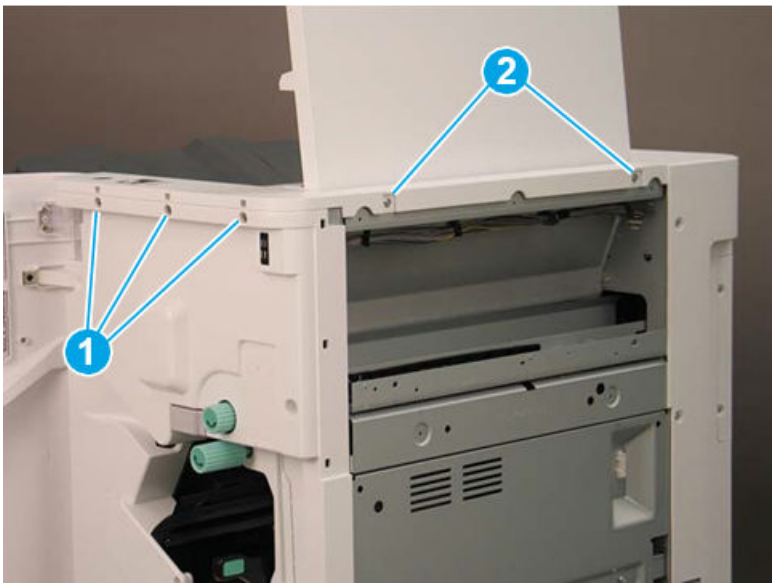
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-805 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

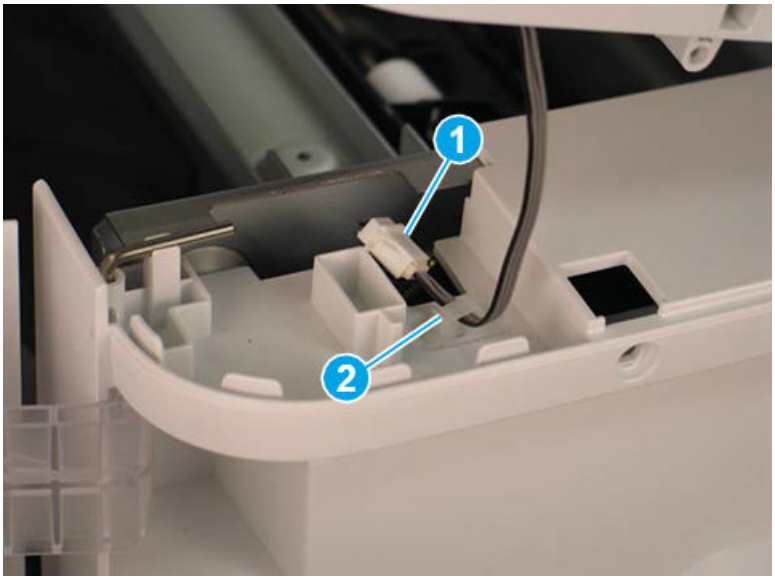
Figure 5-806 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-807 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

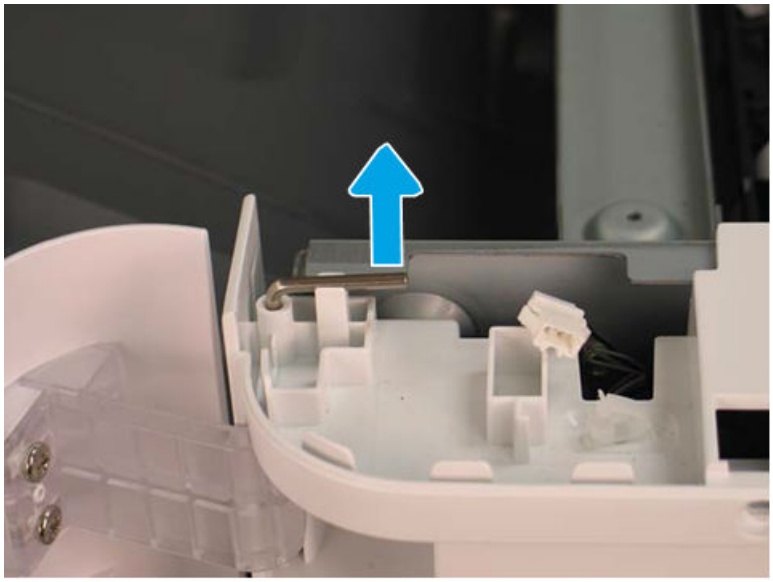


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

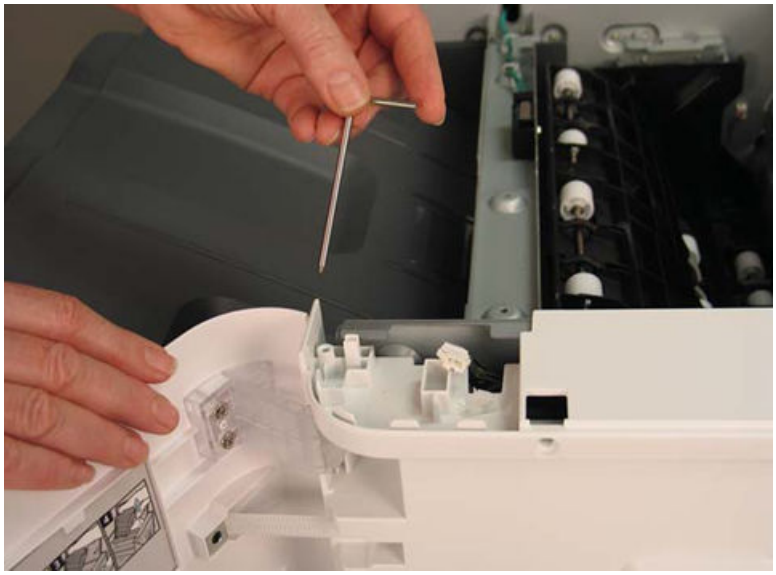
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-808 Lift the top hinge pin



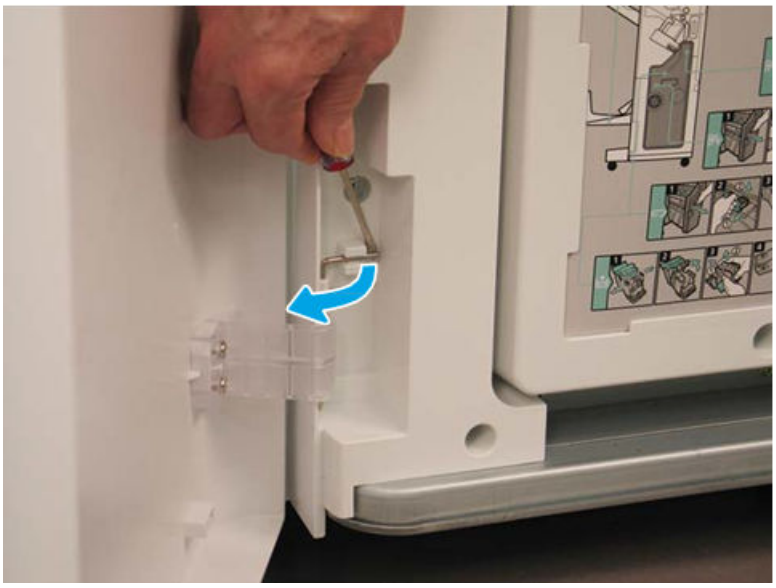
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-809 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-810 Release the lower hinge pin



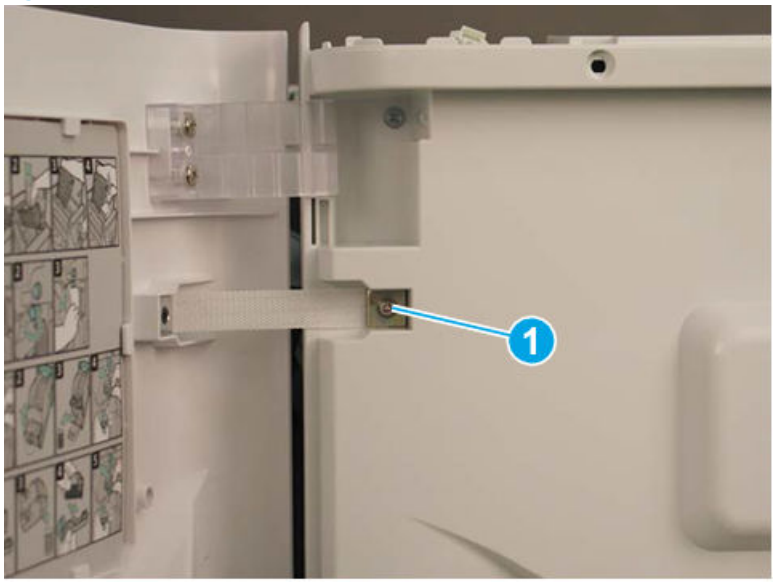
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-811 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-812 Remove the front door

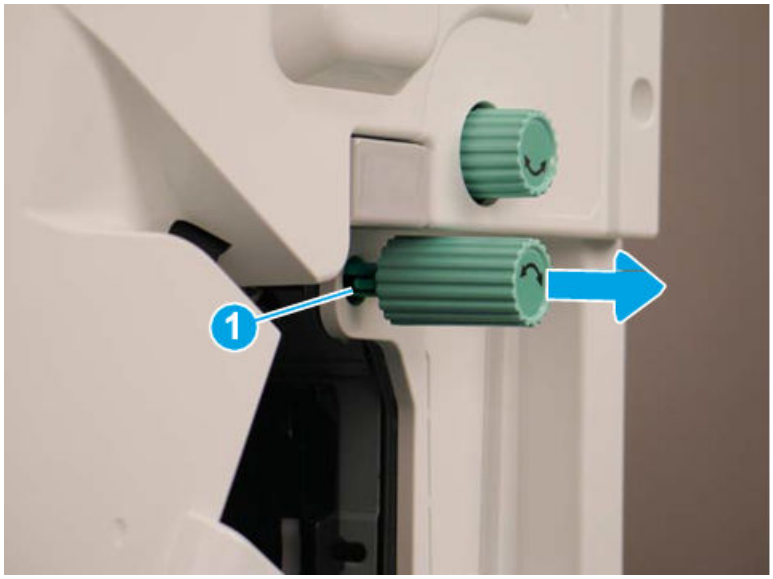


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-813 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

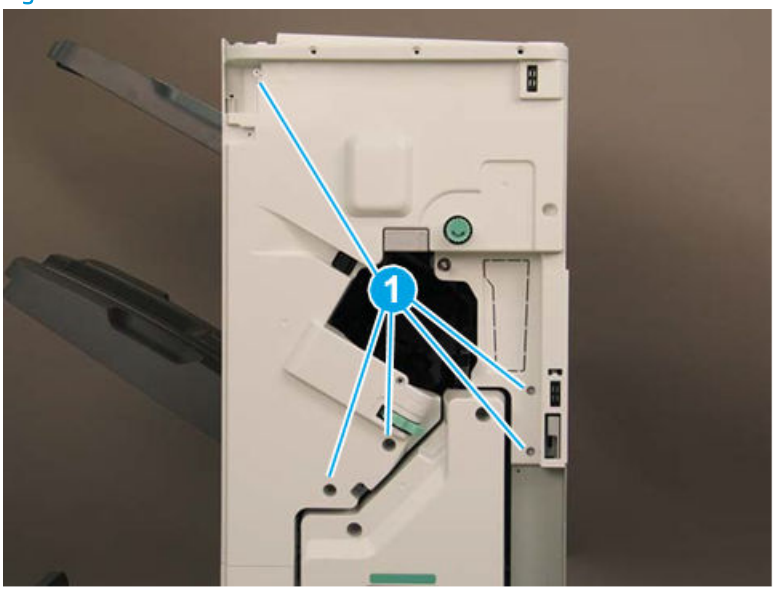
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-814 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-815 Remove the front cover

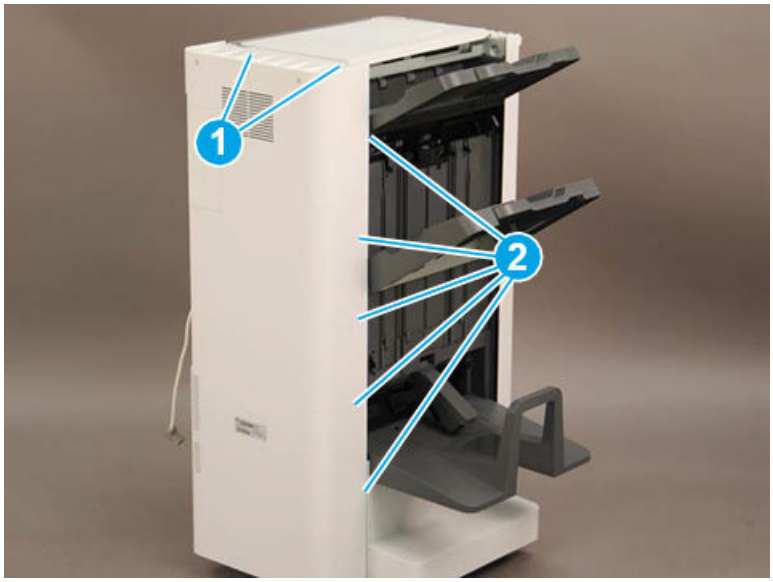


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-816 Remove seven screws

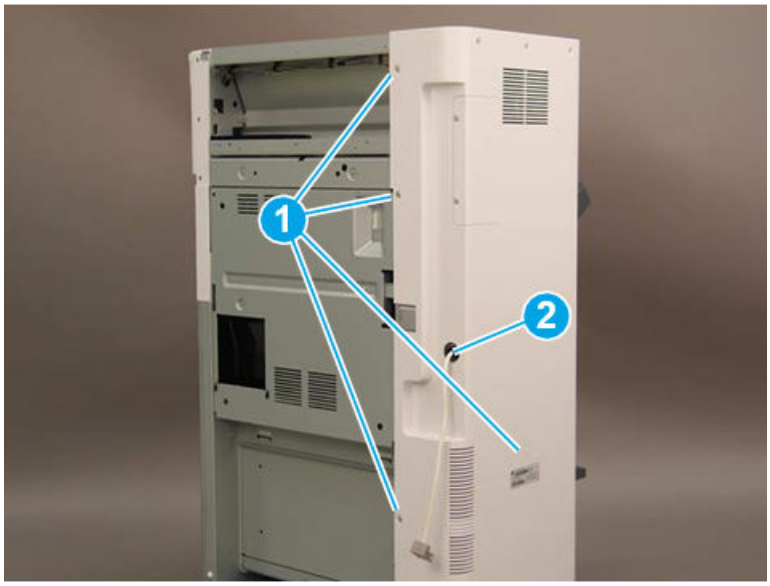


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-817 Remove the rear cover

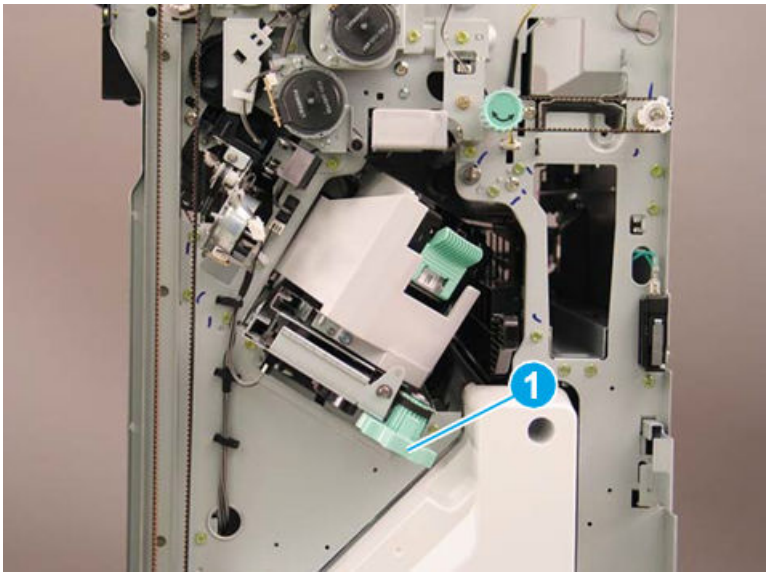


Remove the stapler unit

Follow these steps to remove the stapler unit.

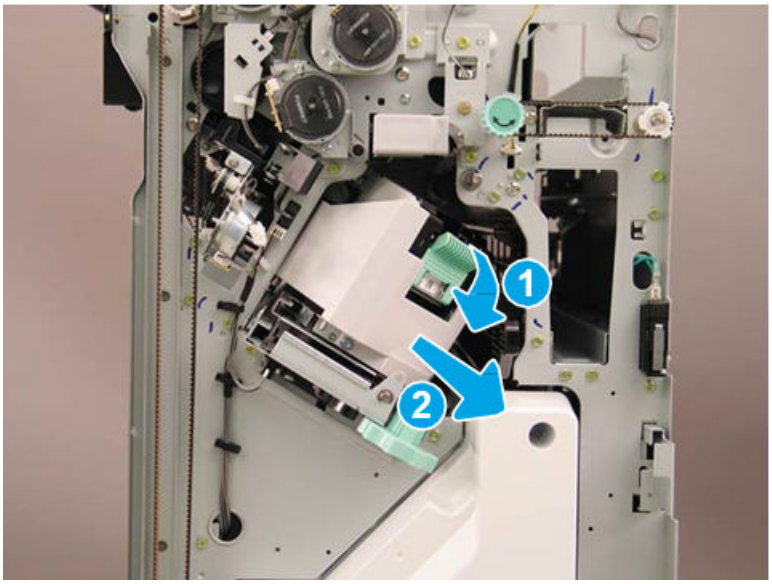
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the front until it stops.

Figure 5-818 Move the staple unit to the front



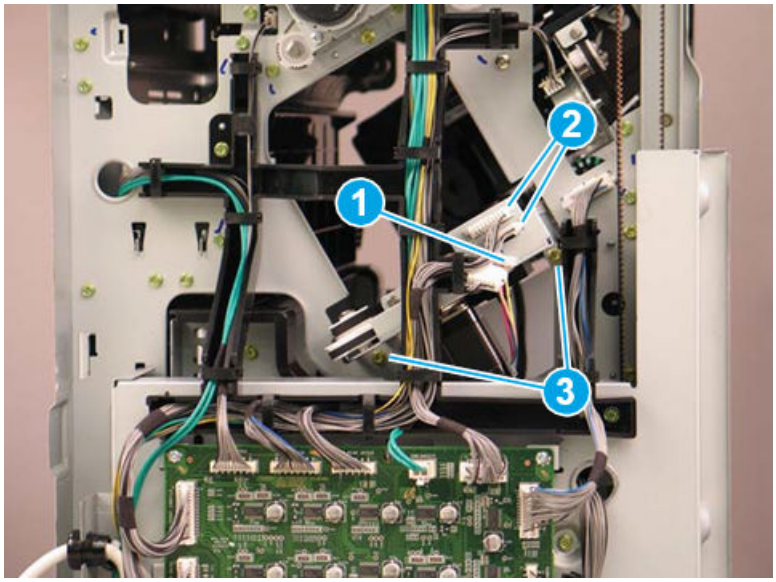
2. Lower the green latch (callout 1), and then slide the staple cartridge away from the finisher to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 5-819 Remove the staple cartridge



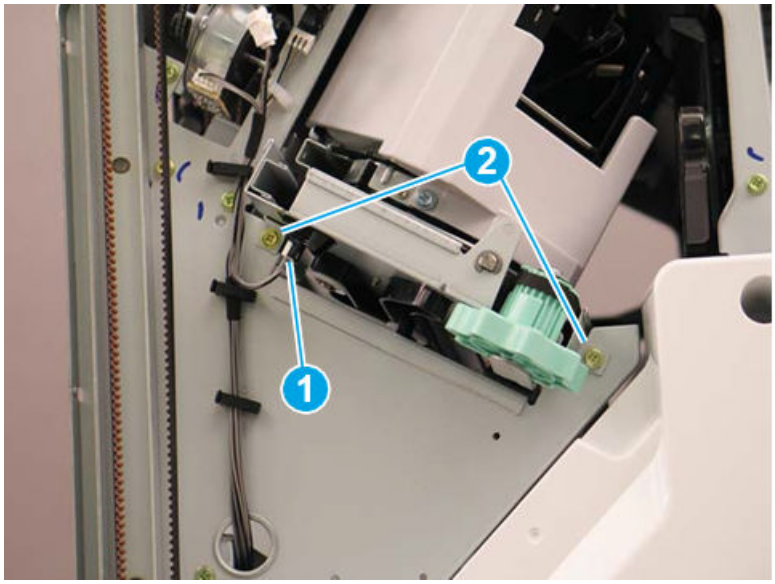
3. At the back of the finisher, release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 5-820 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws



4. At the front of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

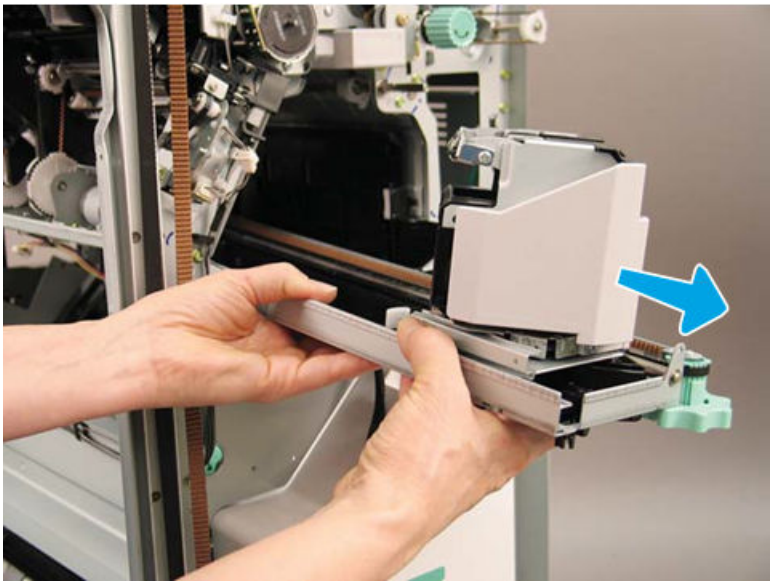
Figure 5-821 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws



5. Lift up, and then slide the staple unit to the front of the finisher to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-822 Remove the staple unit



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler front sensor (S21)

Learn how to remove and replace the stapler front sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the stapler front sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-120 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Stapler front sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

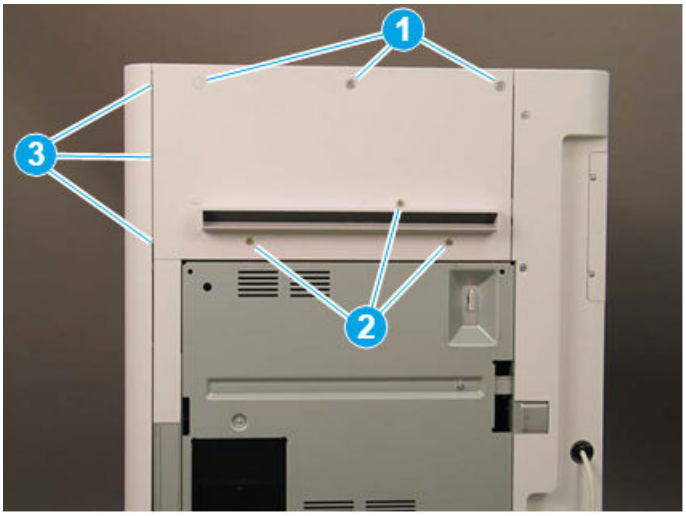
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-823 Remove the right upper cover

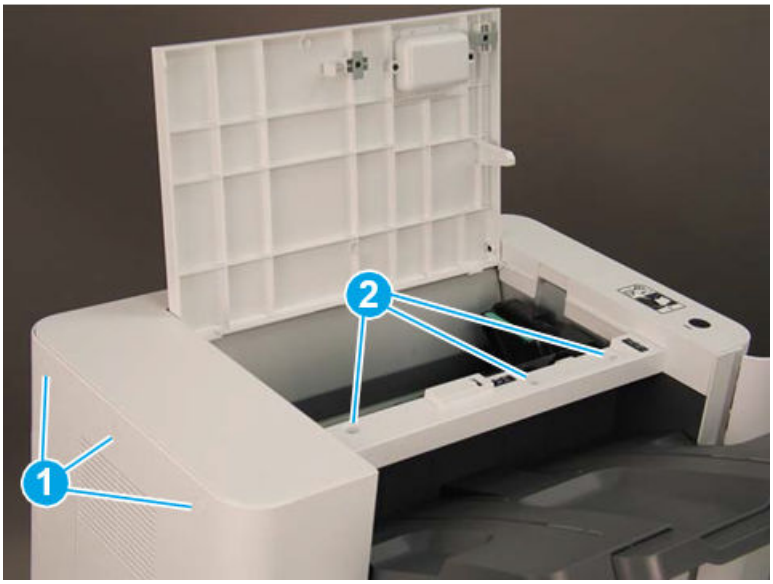


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

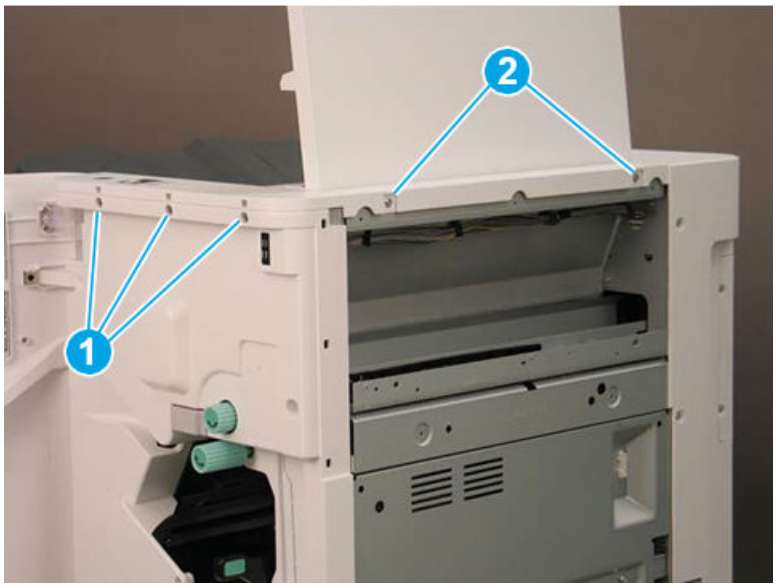
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-824 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

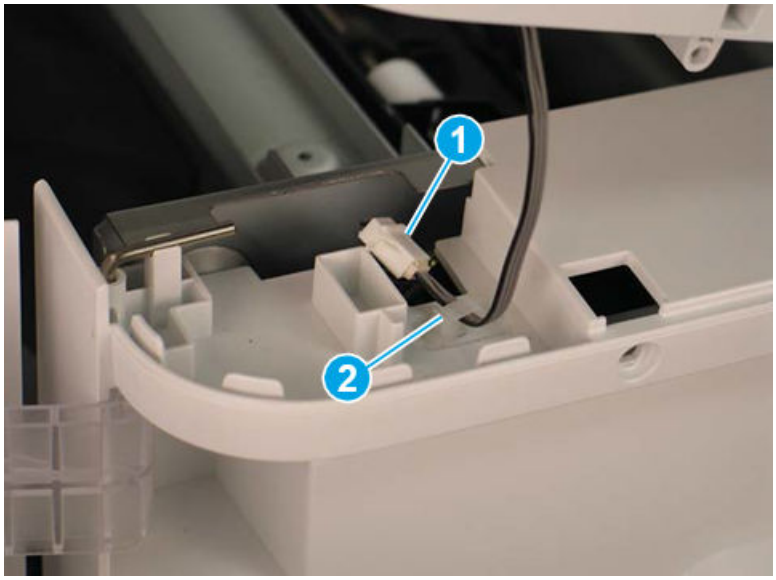
Figure 5-825 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-826 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

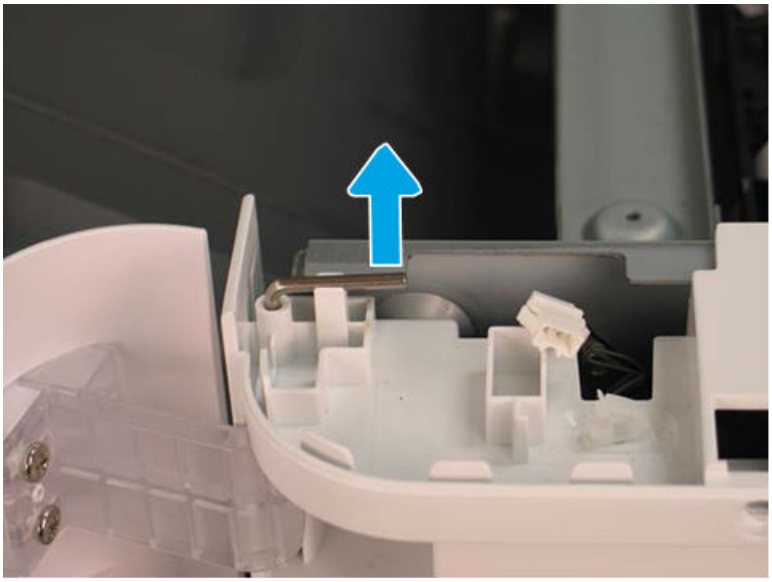


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

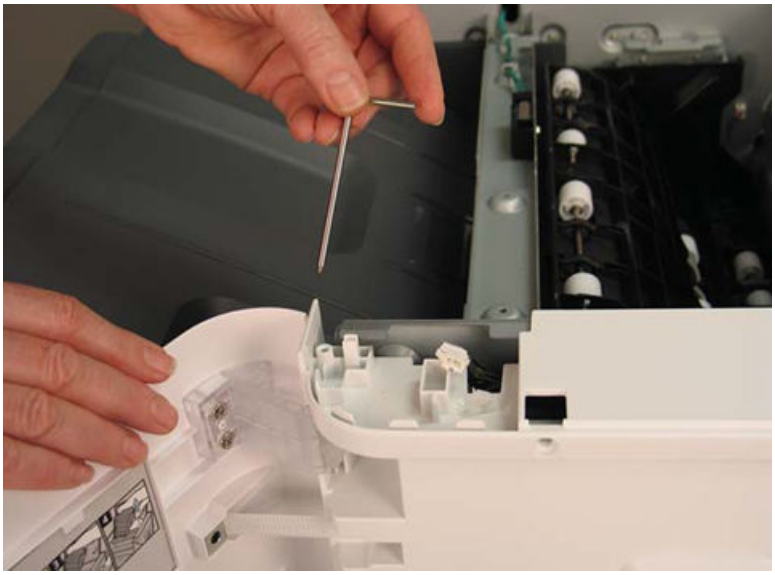
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-827 Lift the top hinge pin



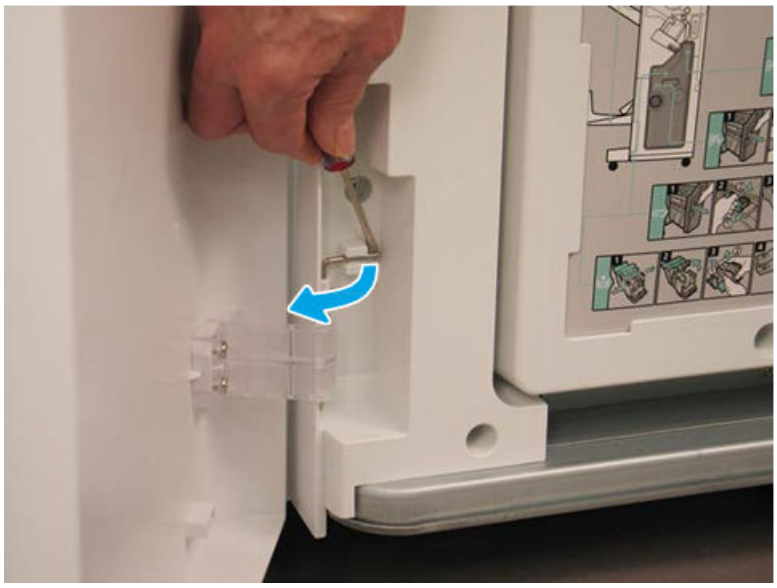
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-828 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-829 Release the lower hinge pin



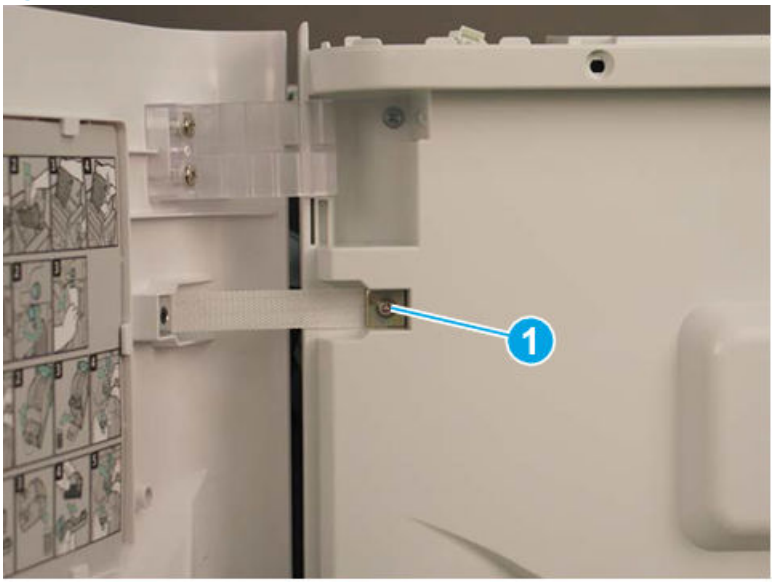
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-830 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-831 Remove the front door

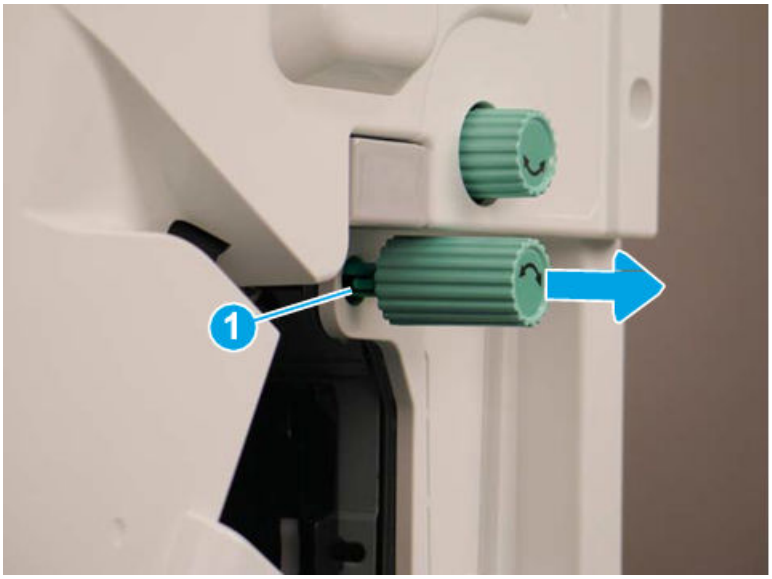


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

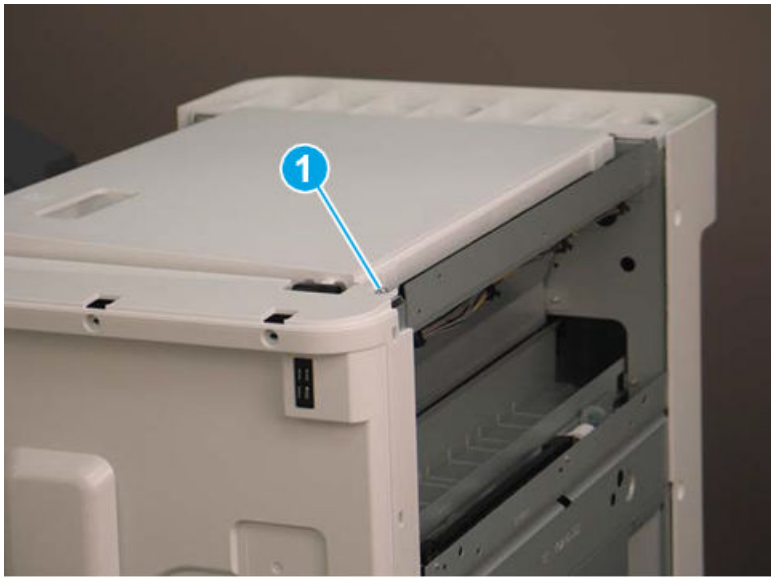
Figure 5-832 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

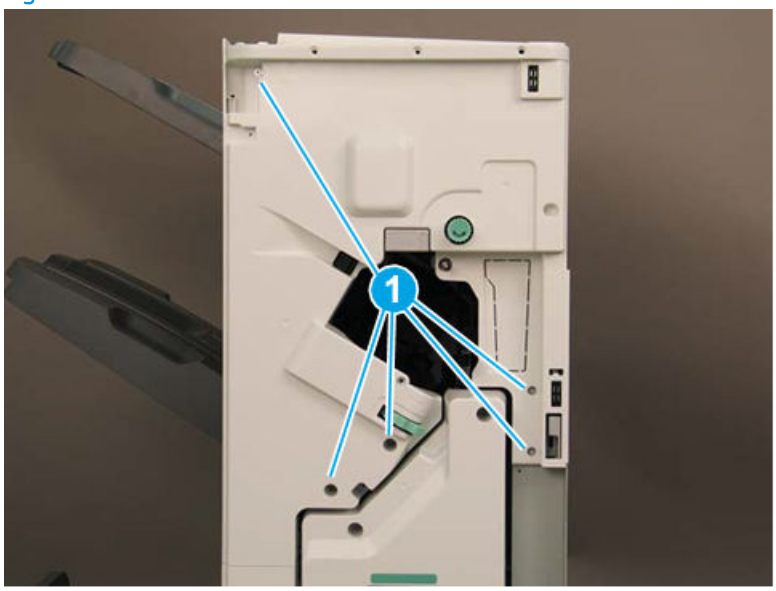
Figure 5-833 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-834 Remove the front cover

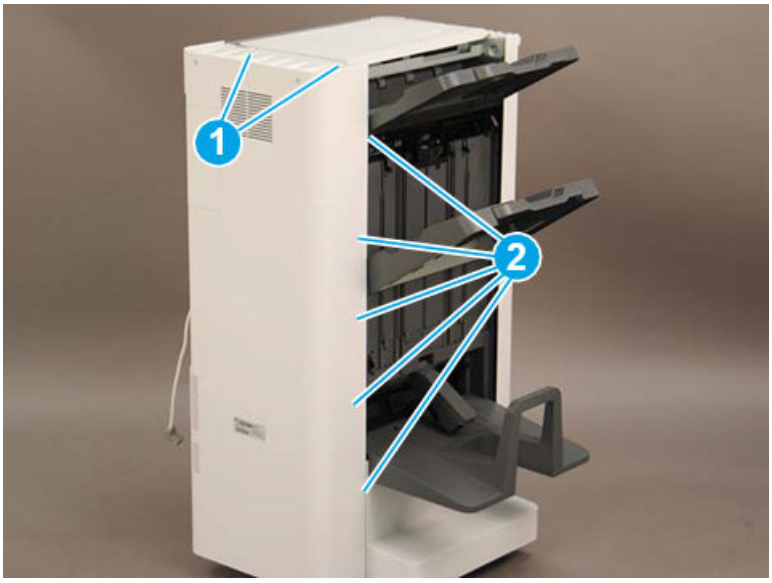


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-835 Remove seven screws

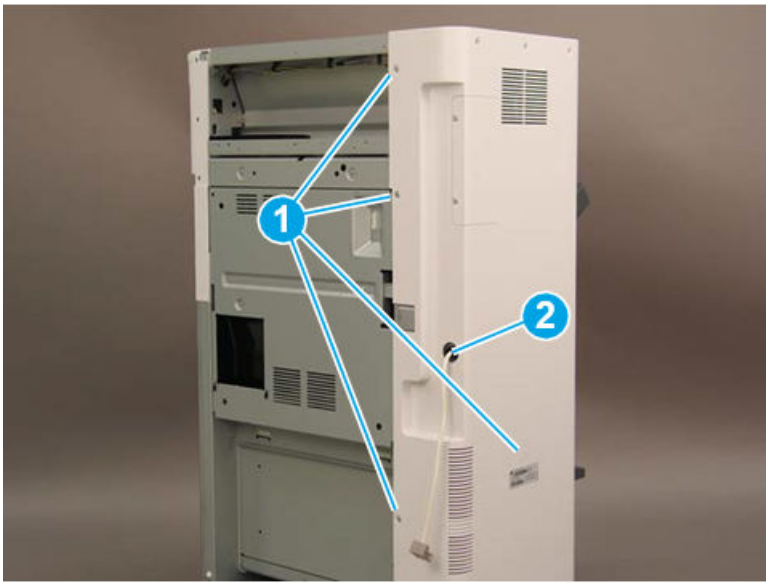


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-836 Remove the rear cover

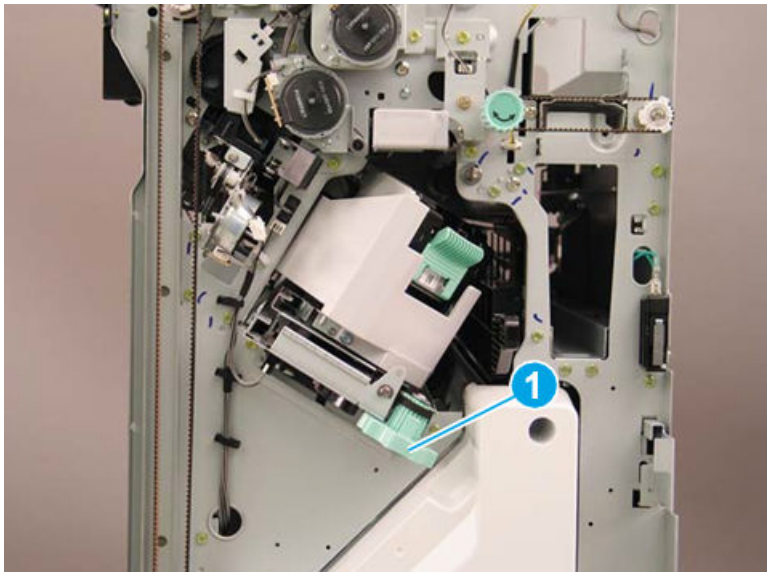


Remove the stapler unit

Follow these steps to remove the stapler unit.

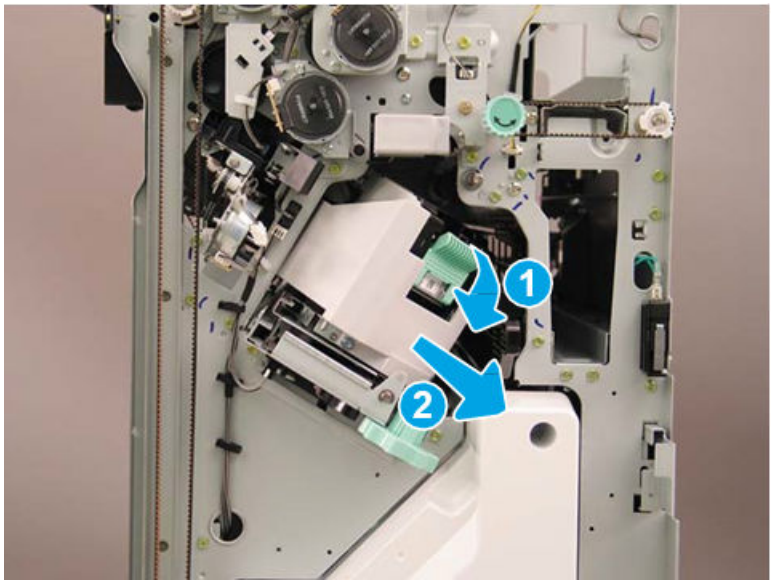
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the front until it stops.

Figure 5-837 Move the staple unit to the front



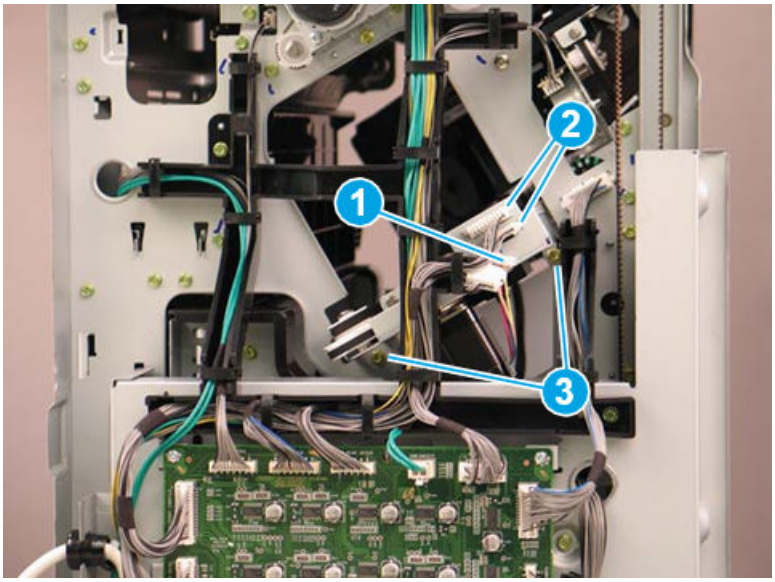
2. Lower the green latch (callout 1), and then slide the staple cartridge away from the finisher to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 5-838 Remove the staple cartridge



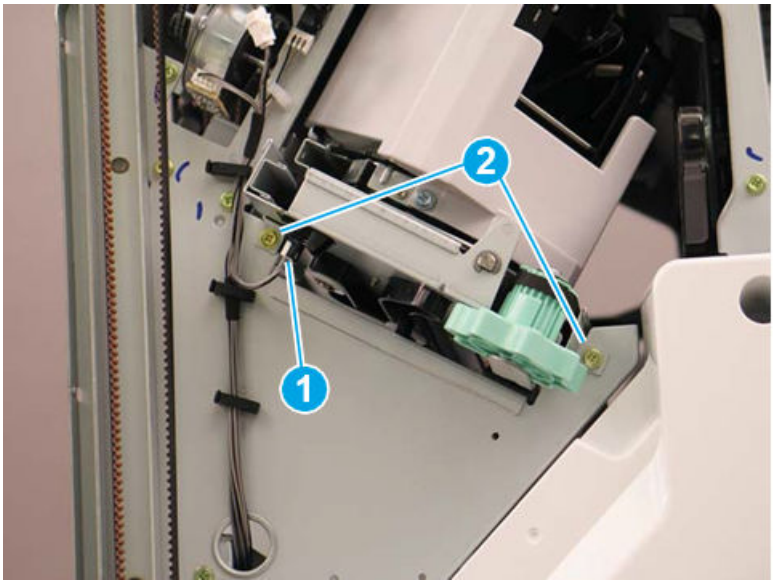
3. At the back of the finisher, release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 5-839 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws



4. At the front of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

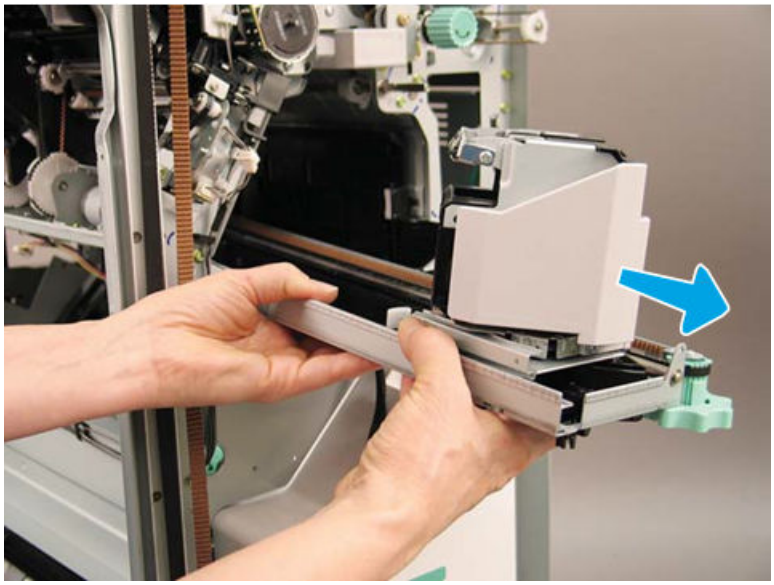
Figure 5-840 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws



5. Lift up, and then slide the staple unit to the front of the finisher to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-841 Remove the staple unit

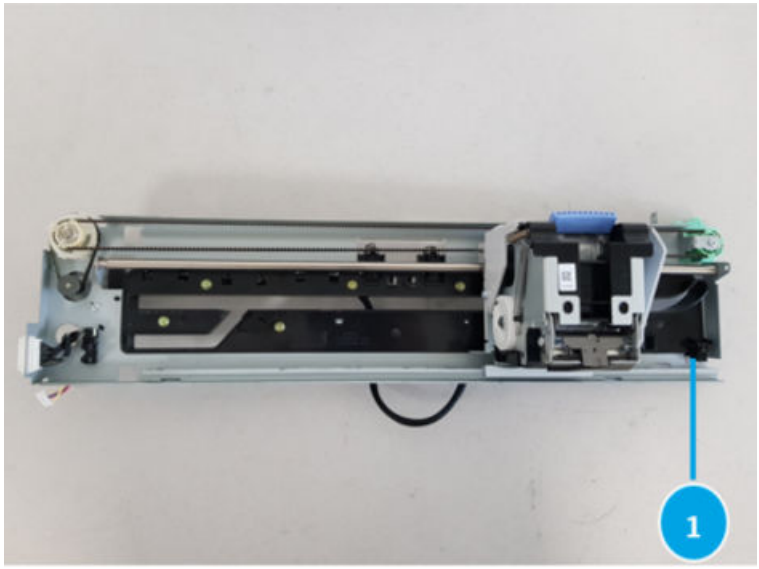


Remove the stapler front sensor(S21)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler front sensor(S21).

▲ Remove stapler front sensor from staple unit.

Figure 5-842 Remove the stapler front sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler mid-front sensor (S24)

Learn how to remove and replace the stapler mid-front sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the stapler mid-front sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-121 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Stapler mid-front sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

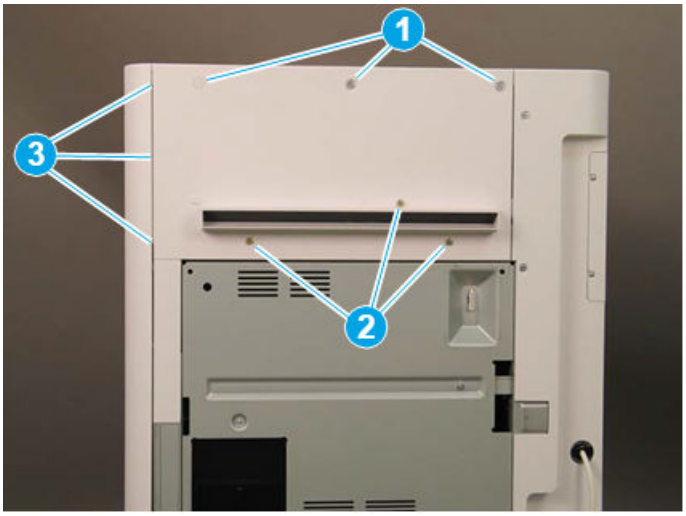
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-843 Remove the right upper cover

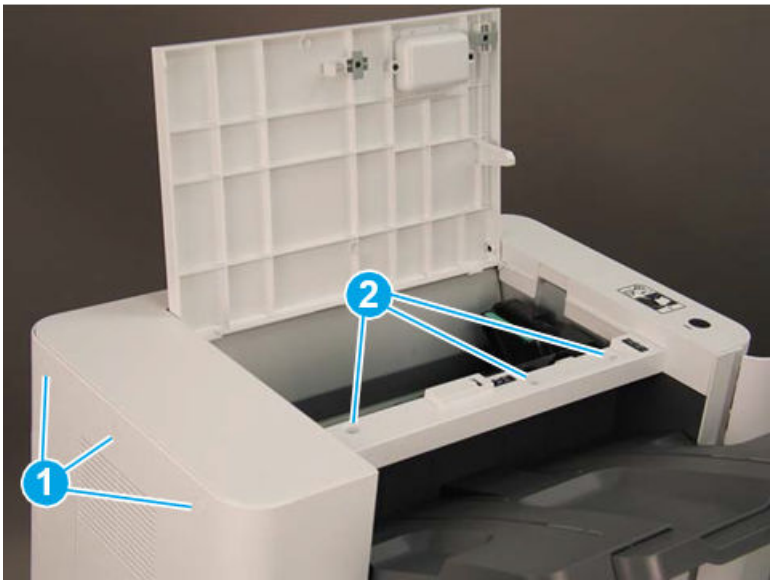


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

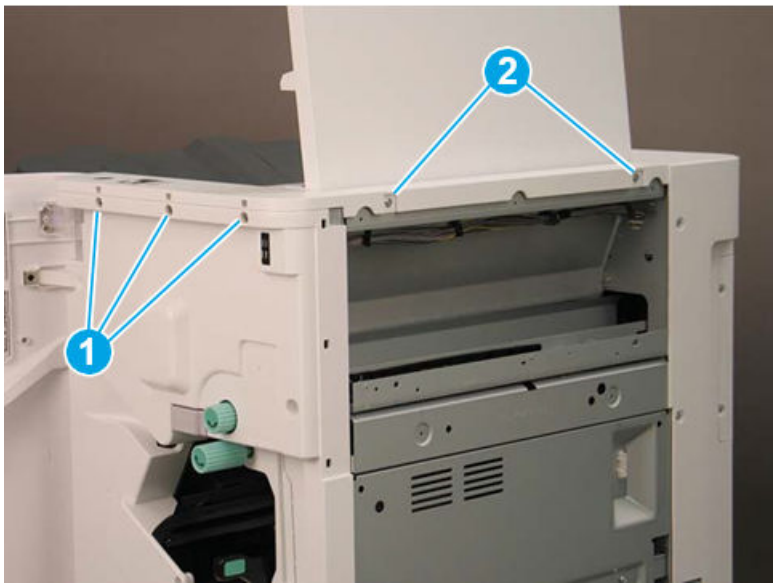
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-844 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

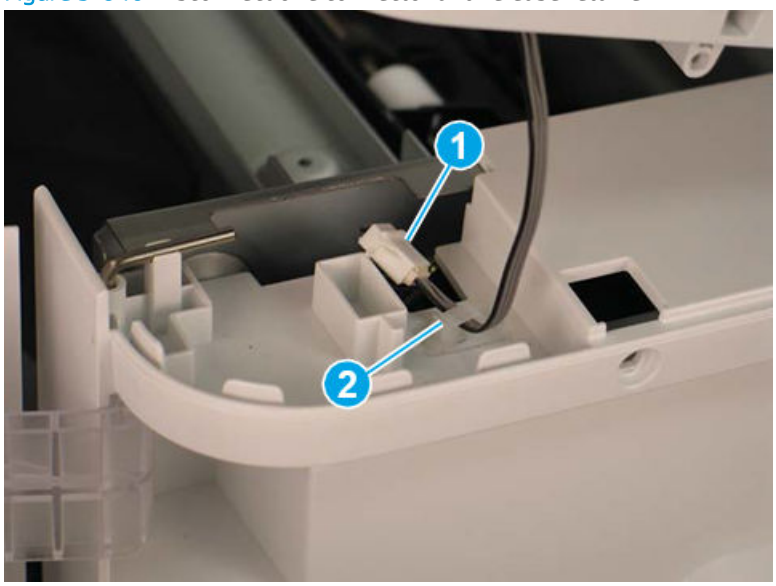
Figure 5-845 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-846 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

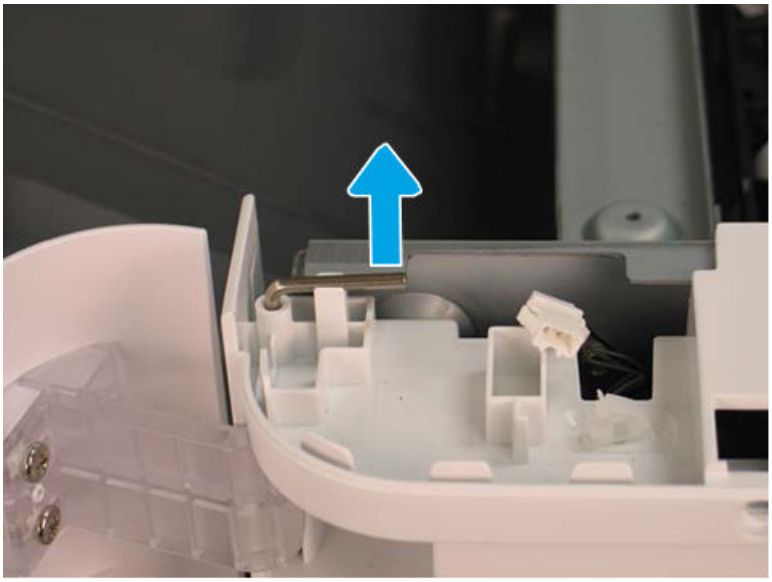


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

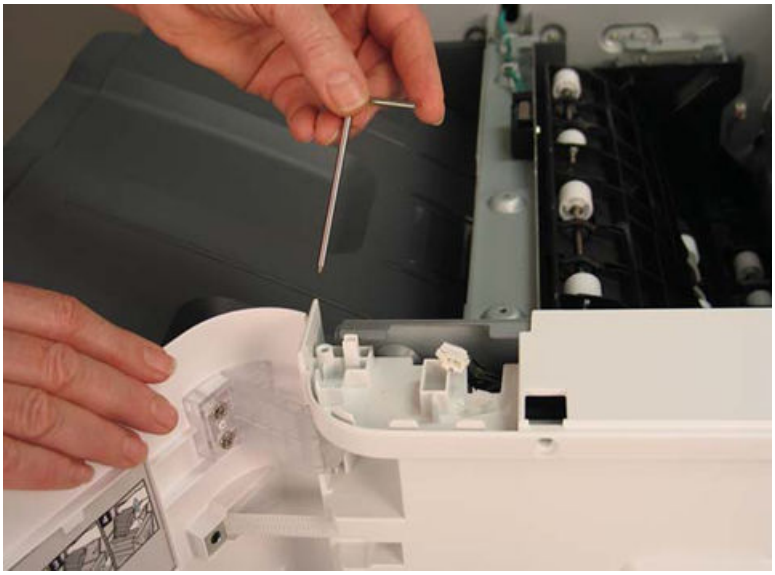
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-847 Lift the top hinge pin



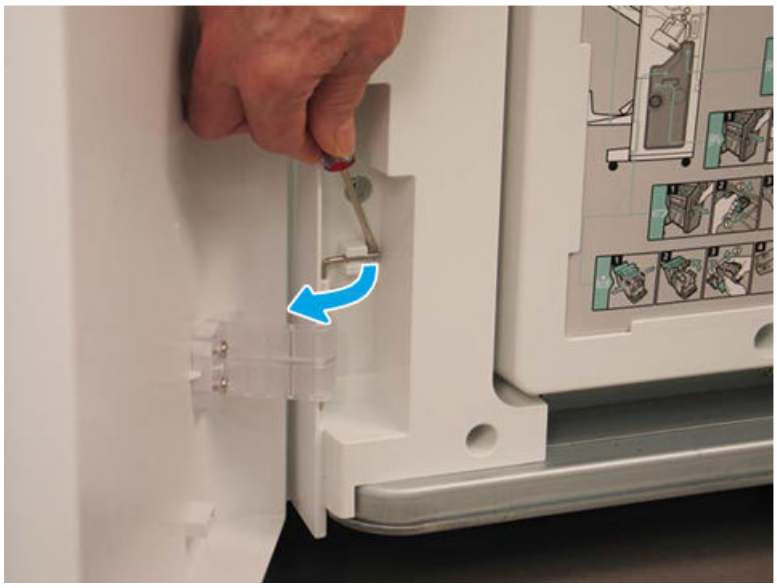
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-848 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-849 Release the lower hinge pin



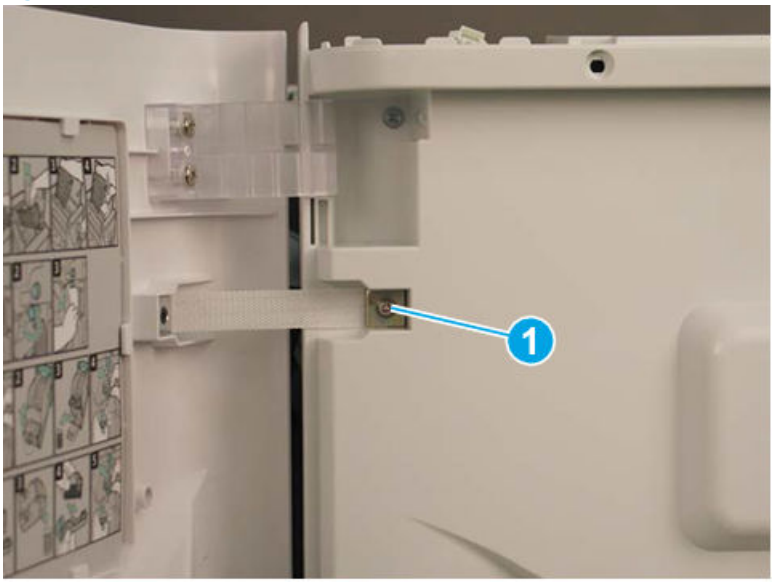
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-850 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-851 Remove the front door

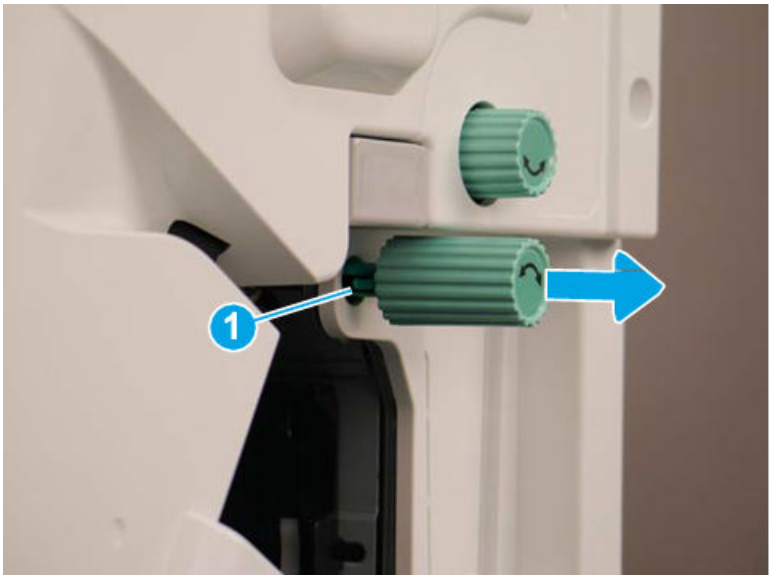


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-852 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

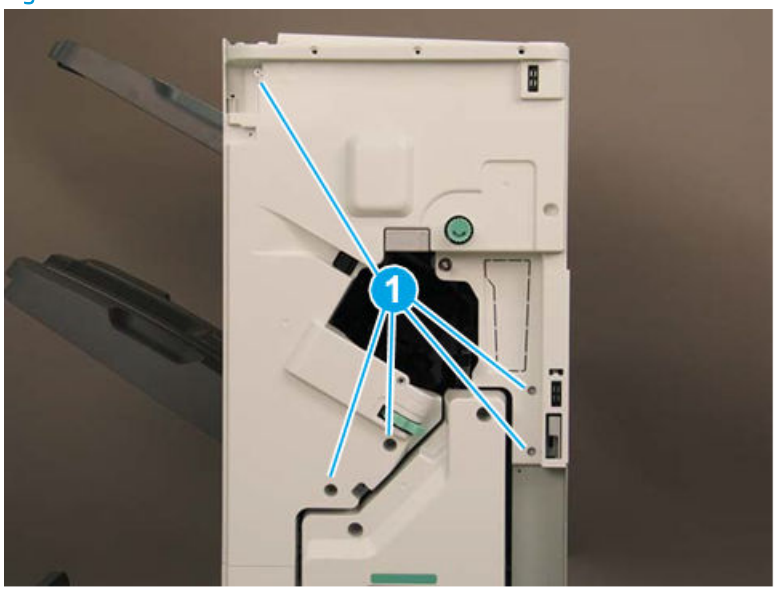
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-853 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-854 Remove the front cover

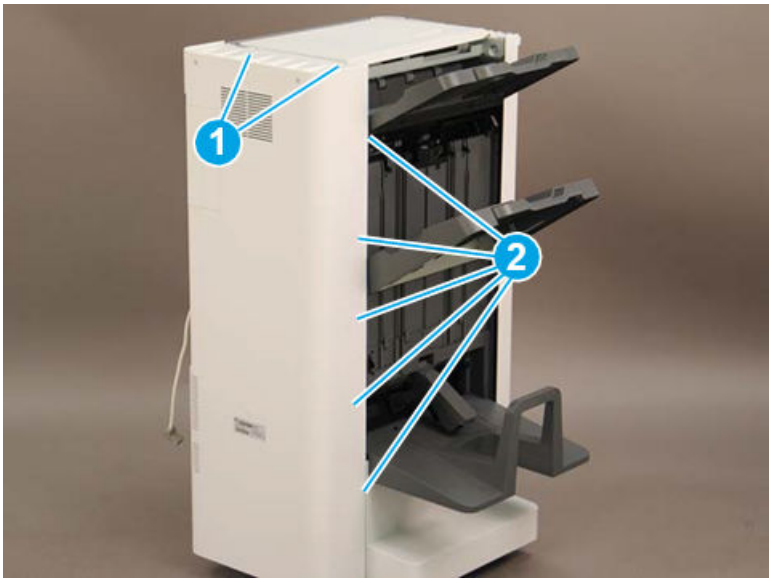


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-855 Remove seven screws

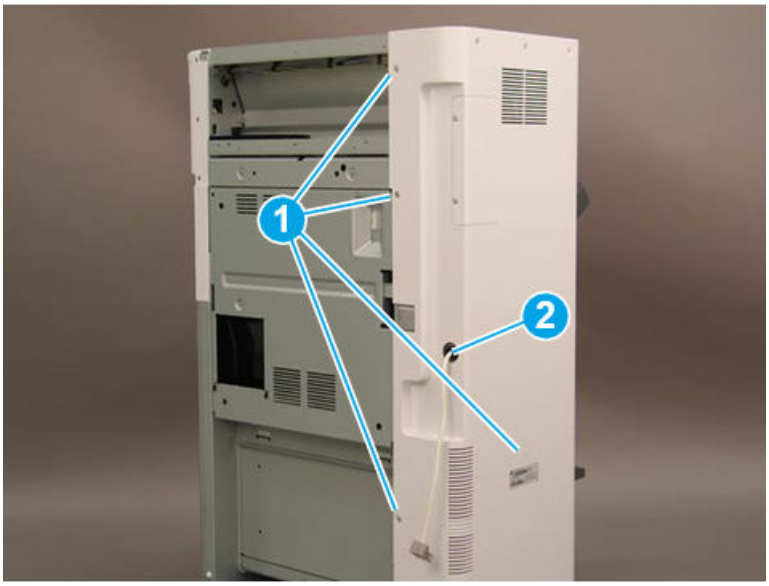


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-856 Remove the rear cover

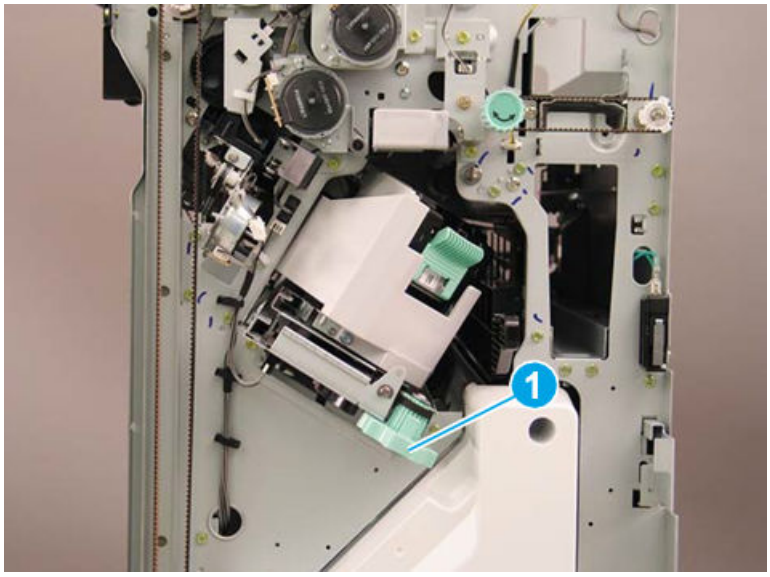


Remove the stapler unit

Follow these steps to remove the stapler unit.

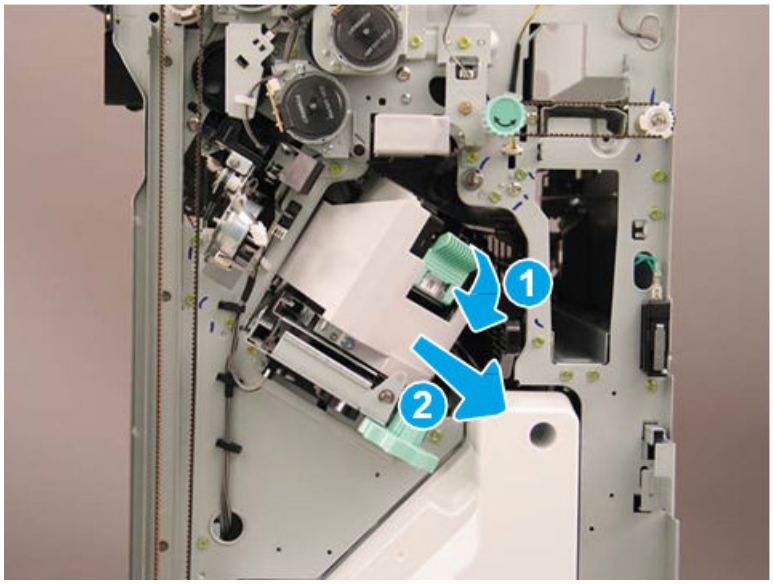
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the front until it stops.

Figure 5-857 Move the staple unit to the front



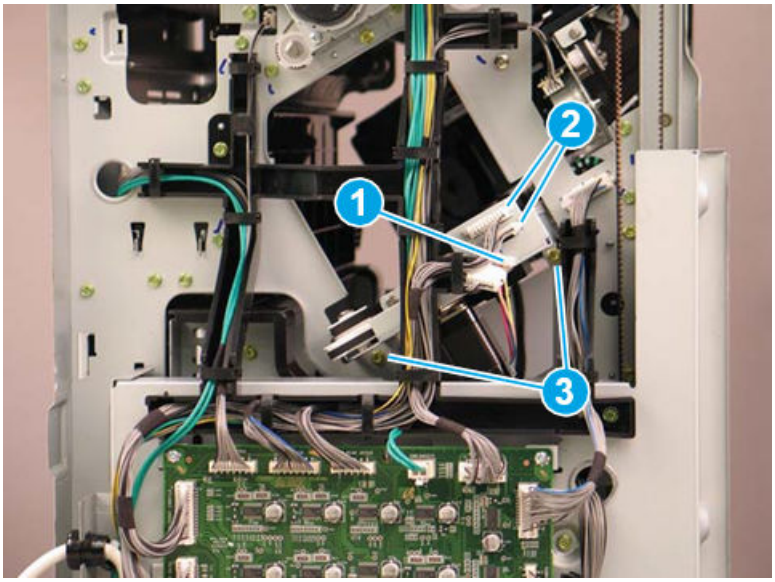
2. Lower the green latch (callout 1), and then slide the staple cartridge away from the finisher to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 5-858 Remove the staple cartridge



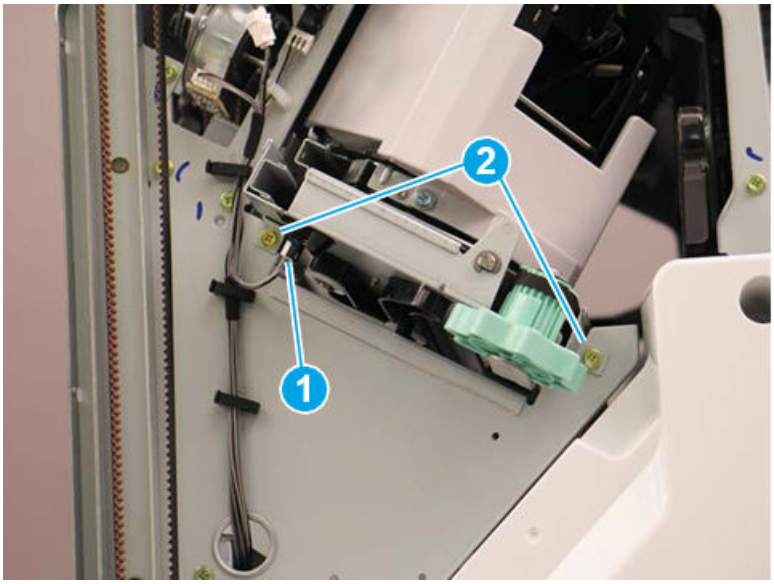
3. At the back of the finisher, release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 5-859 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws



4. At the front of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

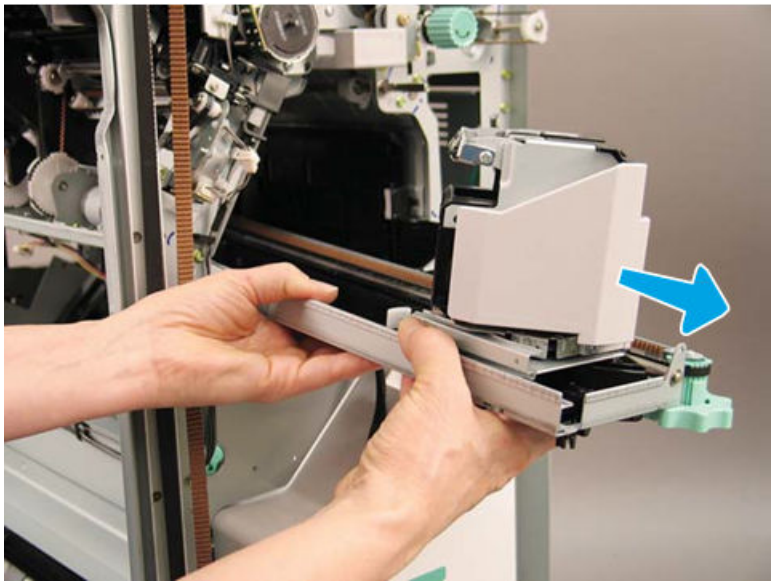
Figure 5-860 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws



5. Lift up, and then slide the staple unit to the front of the finisher to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-861 Remove the staple unit

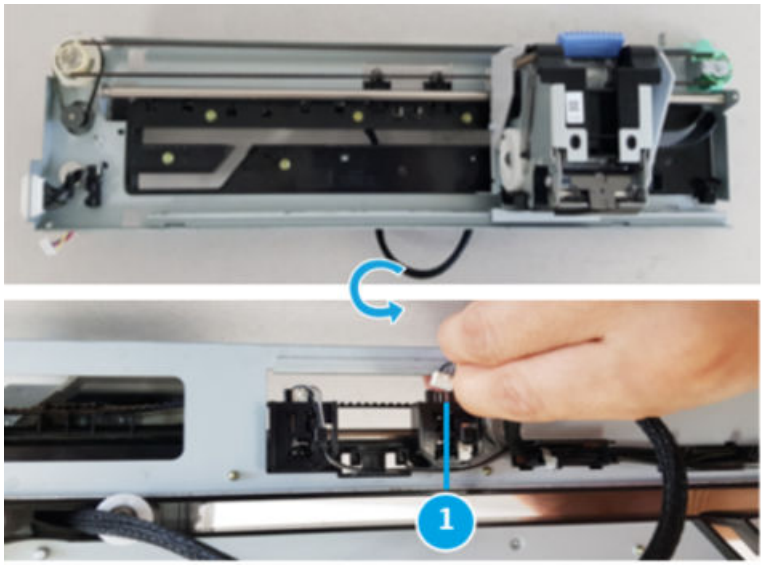


Remove the stapler mid-front sensor(S24)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler mid-front sensor(S24).

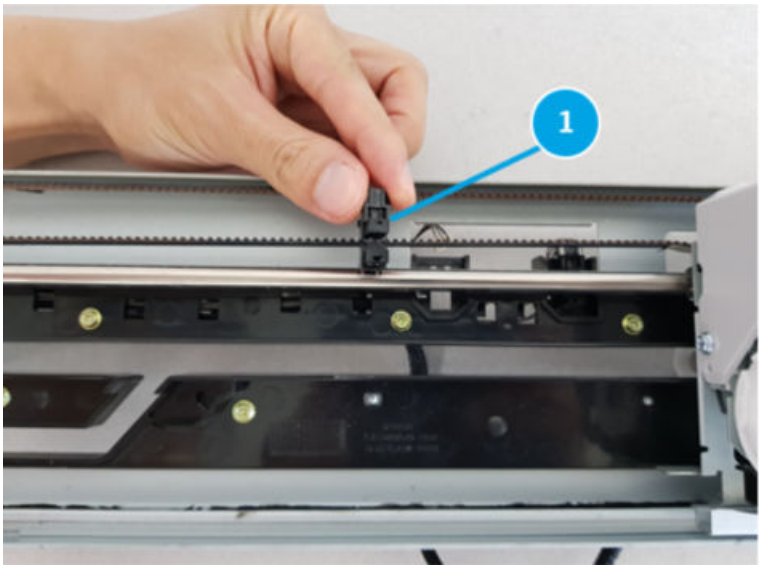
1. Turn over staple unit and disconnect the connector(callout 1)

Figure 5-862 Disconnect the connector



2. Remove stapler mid-rear sensor(S24, callout 1) from staple unit.

Figure 5-863 Remove stapler mid-rear sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler mid-rear sensor (S25)

Learn how to remove and replace the stapler mid-rear sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the stapler mid-rear sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-122 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Stapler mid-rear sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

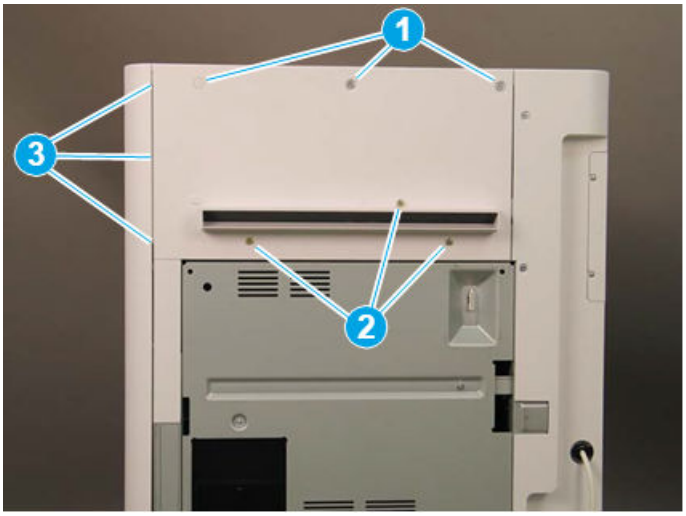
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-864 Remove the right upper cover

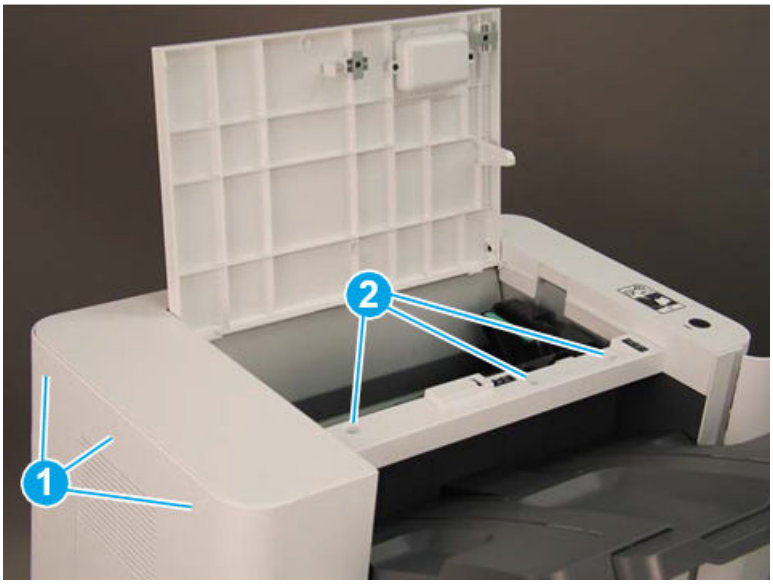


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

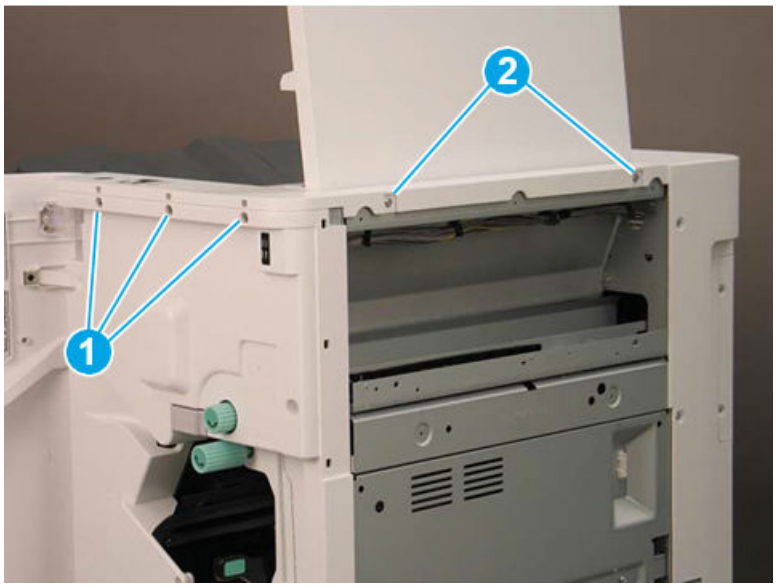
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-865 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

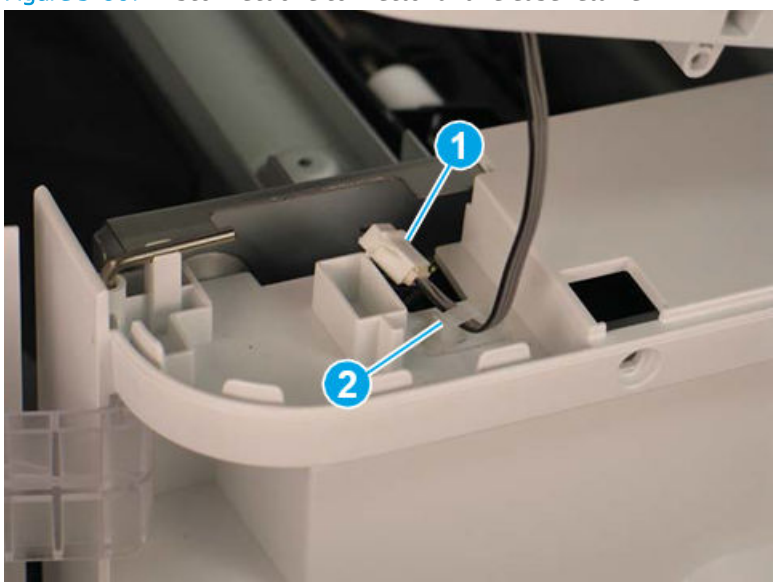
Figure 5-866 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-867 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

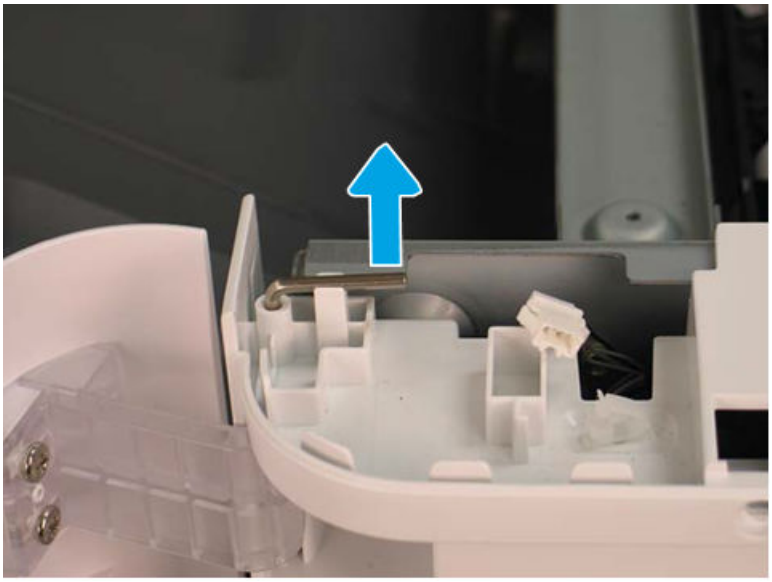


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

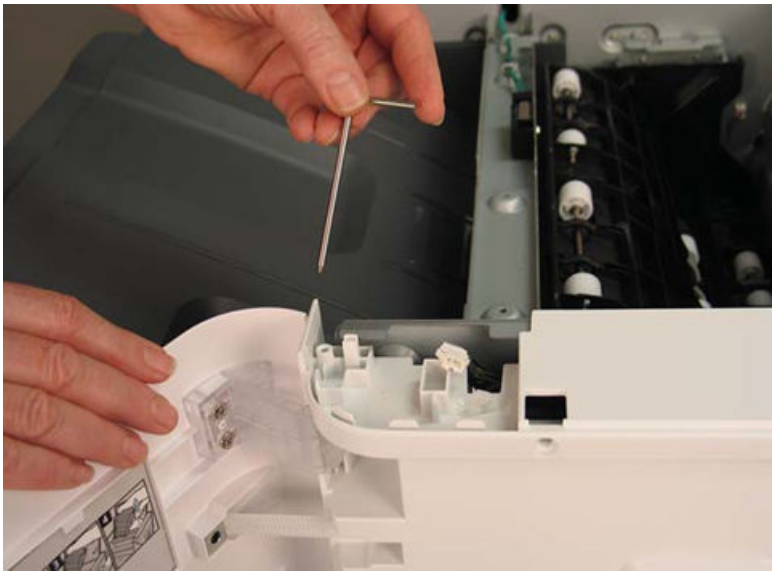
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-868 Lift the top hinge pin



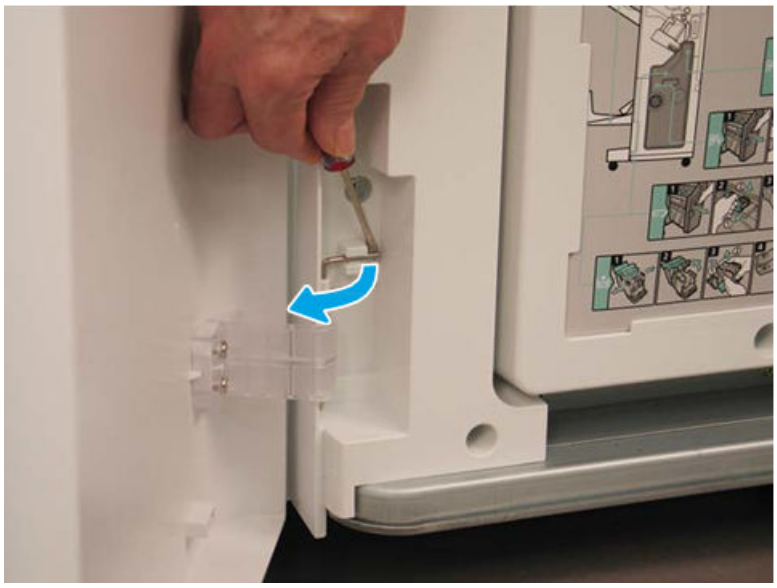
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-869 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-870 Release the lower hinge pin



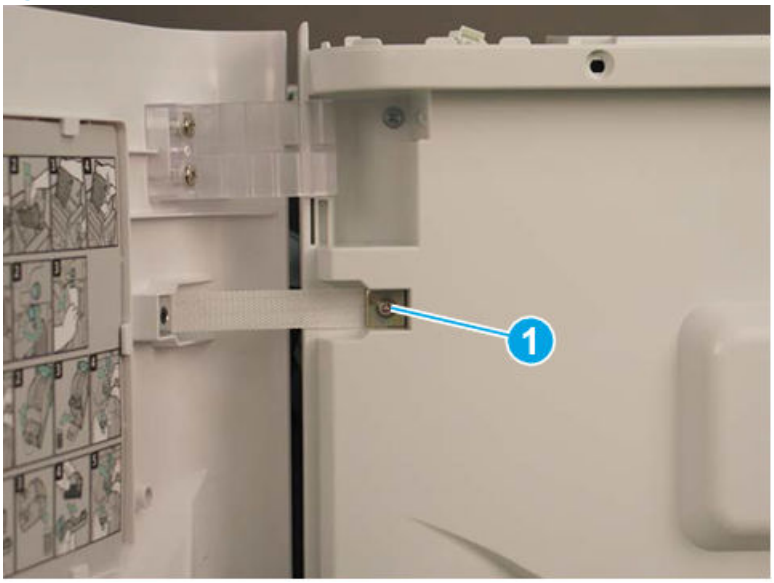
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-871 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-872 Remove the front door

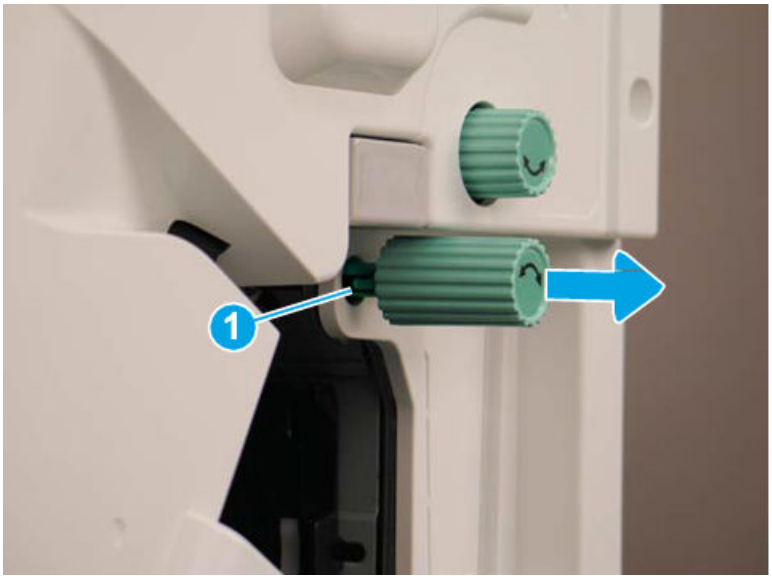


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-873 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

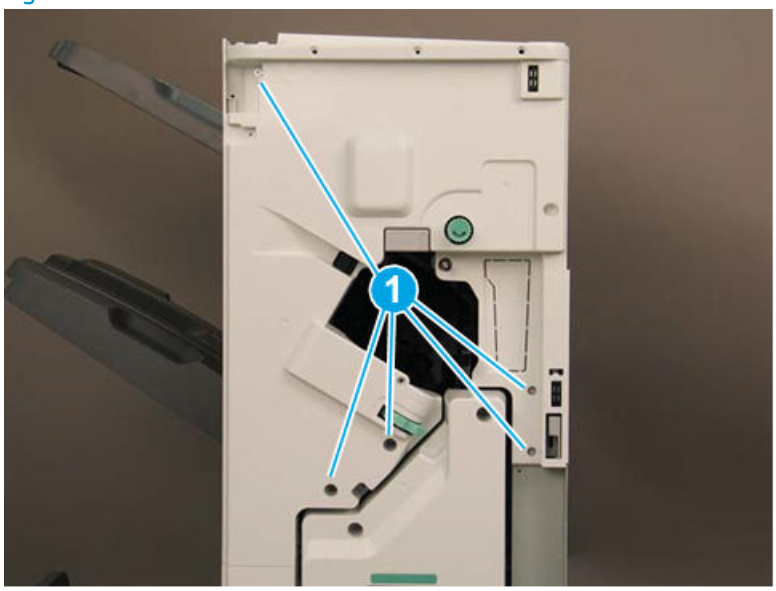
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-874 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-875 Remove the front cover

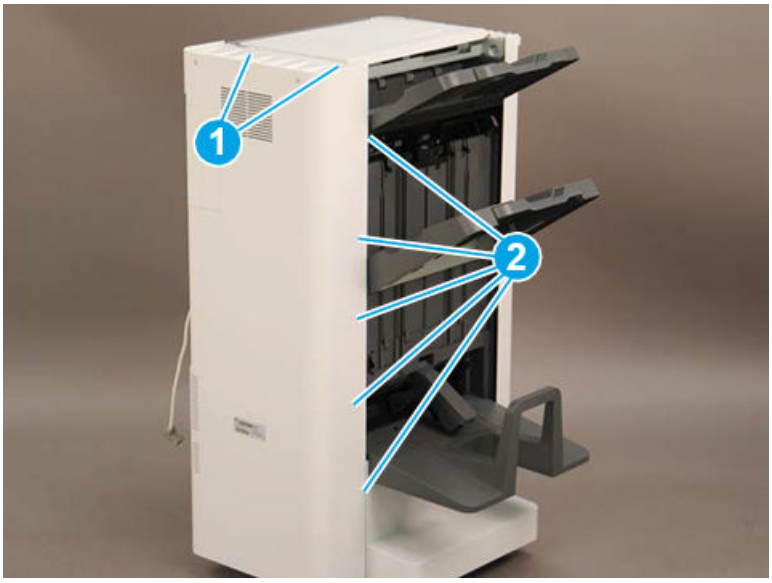


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-876 Remove seven screws

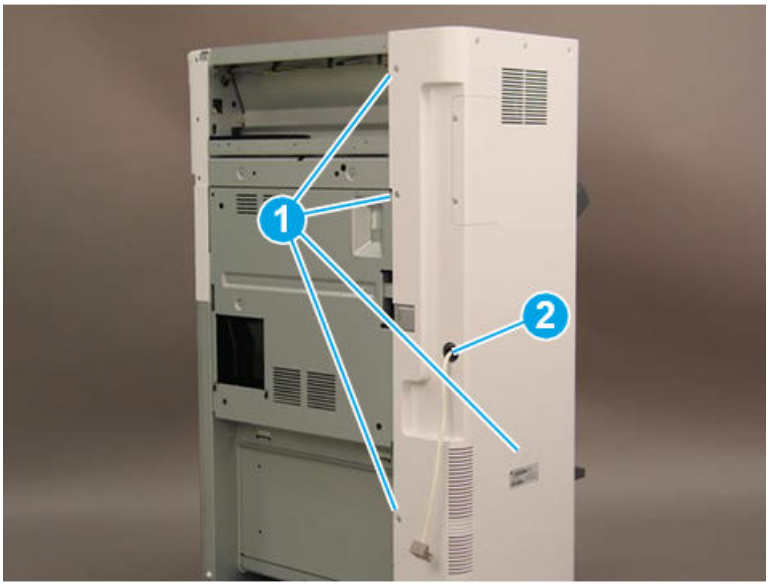


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-877 Remove the rear cover

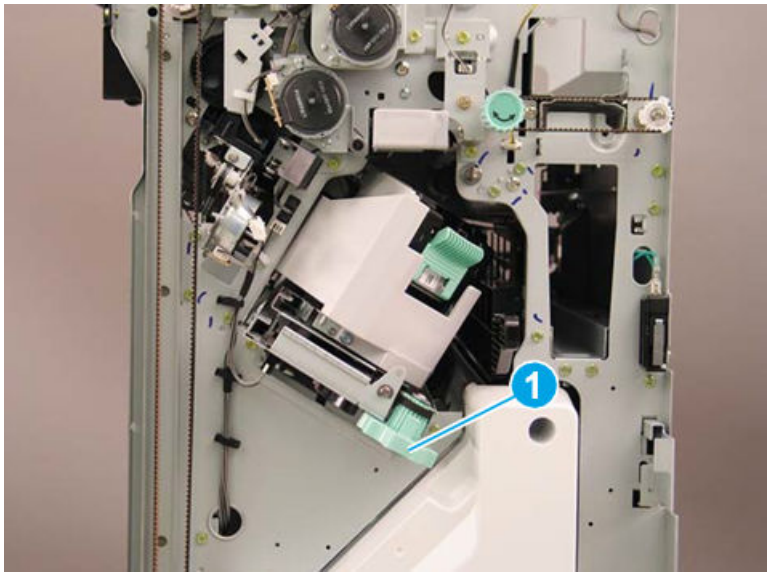


Remove the stapler unit

Follow these steps to remove the stapler unit.

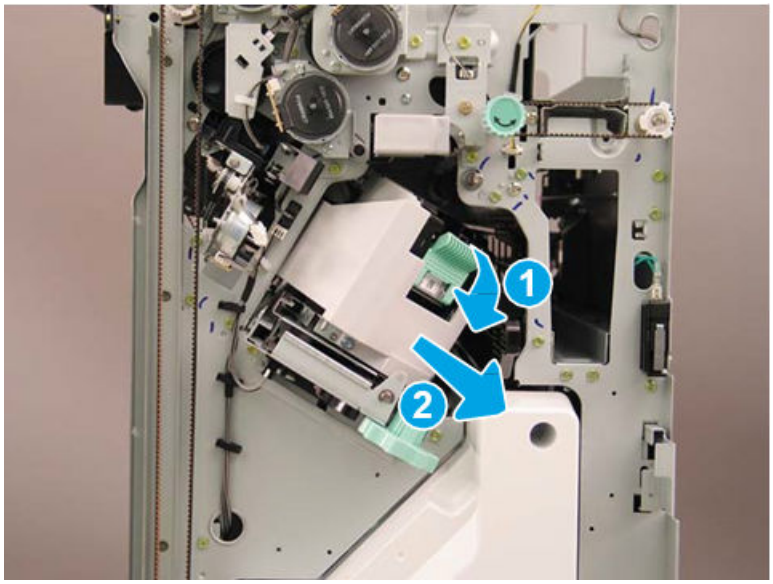
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the front until it stops.

Figure 5-878 Move the staple unit to the front



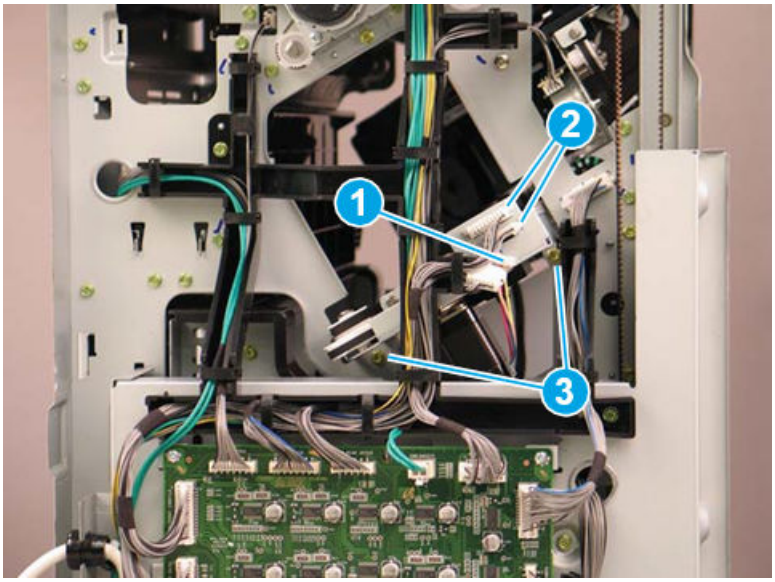
2. Lower the green latch (callout 1), and then slide the staple cartridge away from the finisher to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 5-879 Remove the staple cartridge



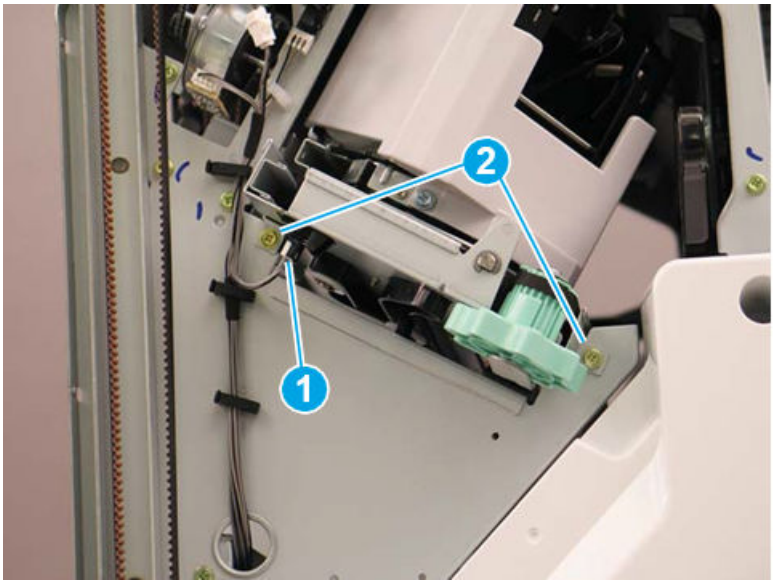
3. At the back of the finisher, release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 5-880 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws



4. At the front of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

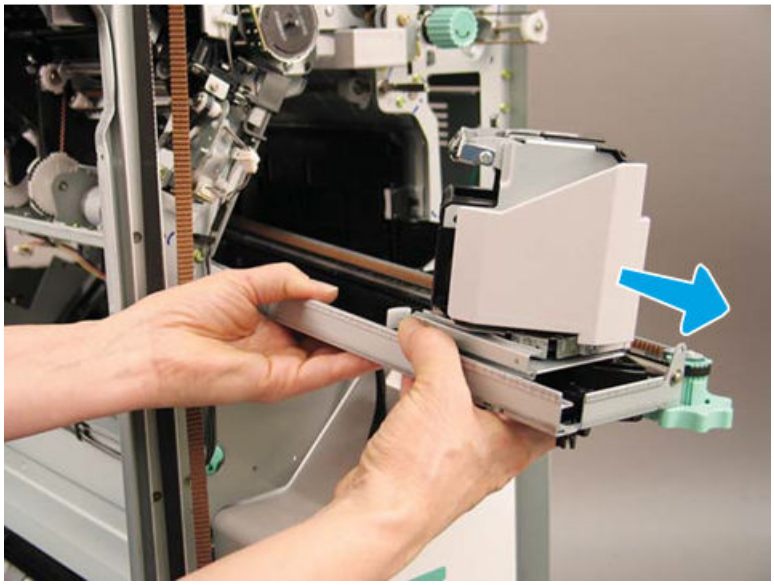
Figure 5-881 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws



5. Lift up, and then slide the staple unit to the front of the finisher to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-882 Remove the staple unit

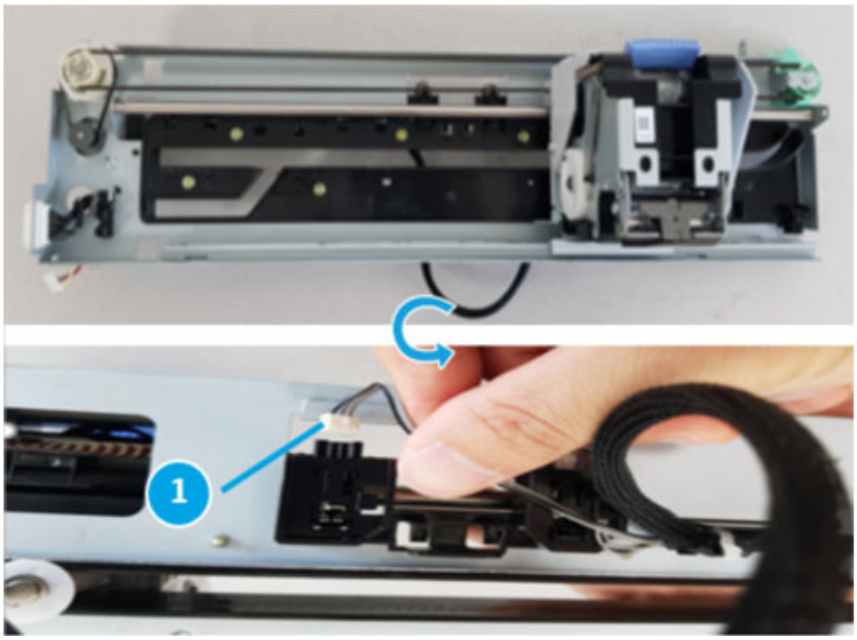


Remove the stapler mid-rear sensor(S25)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler mid-rear sensor(S25).

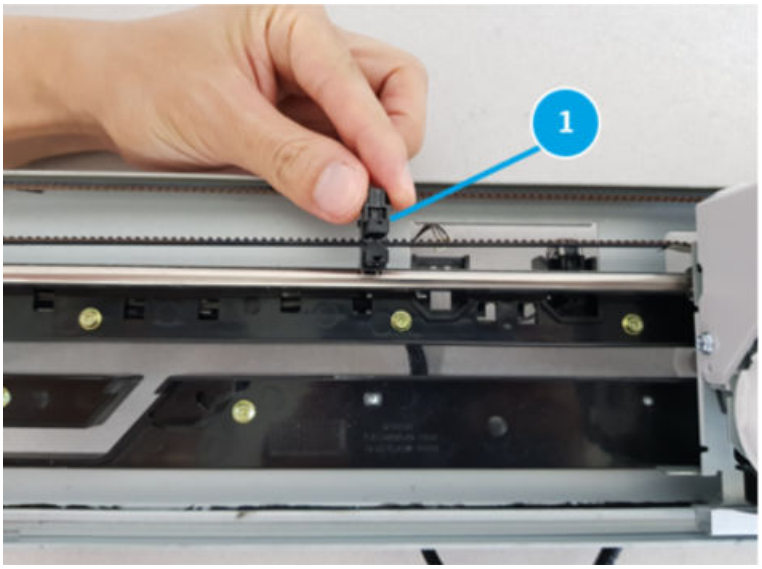
1. Turn over staple unit and disconnect the connector(callout 1)

Figure 5-883 Disconnect the connector



2. Remove stapler mid-rear sensor(S24, callout 1) from staple unit.

Figure 5-884 Remove stapler mid-rear sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler rear sensor (S30)

Learn how to remove and replace the stapler rear sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the stapler rear sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-123 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Stapler rear sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

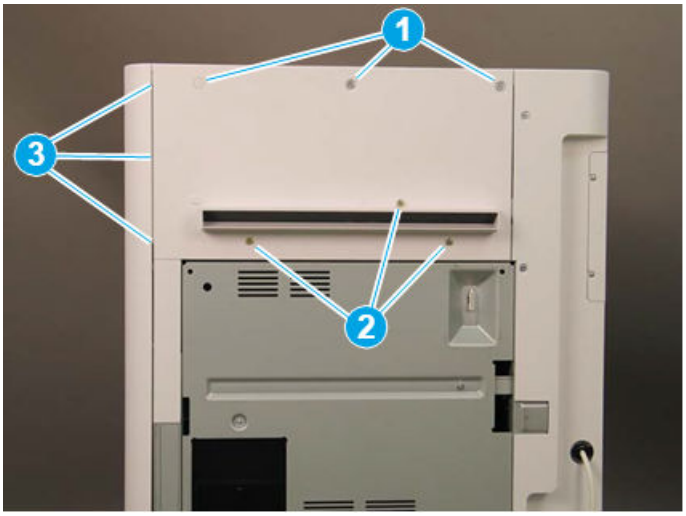
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-885 Remove the right upper cover

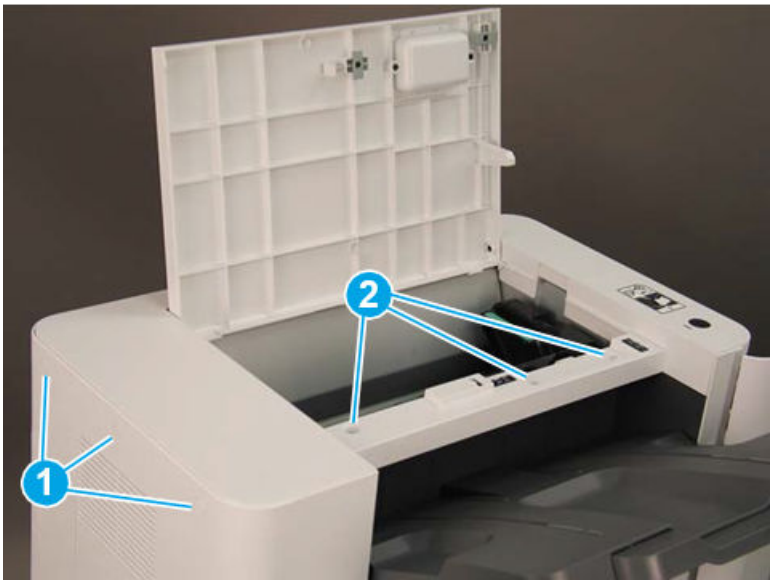


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

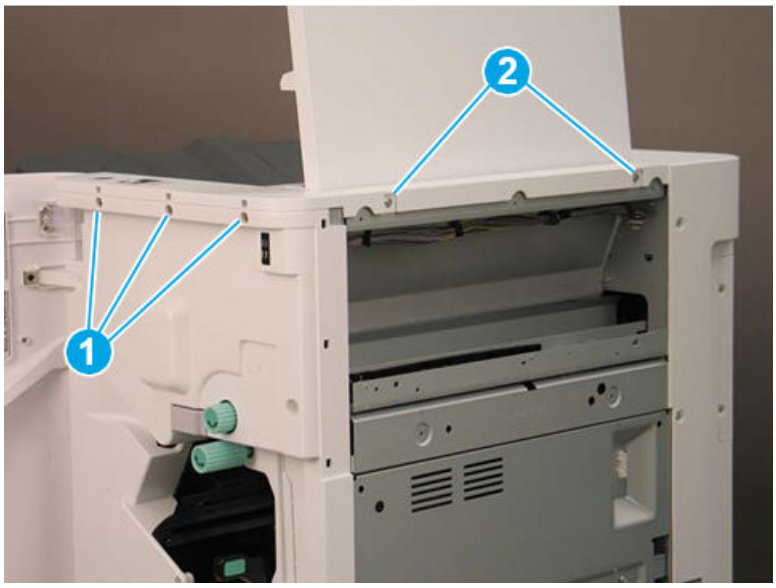
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-886 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

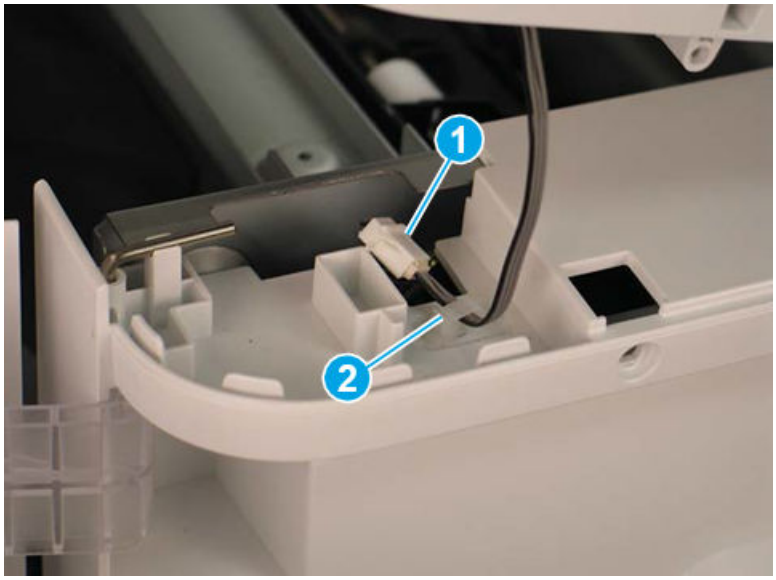
Figure 5-887 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-888 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

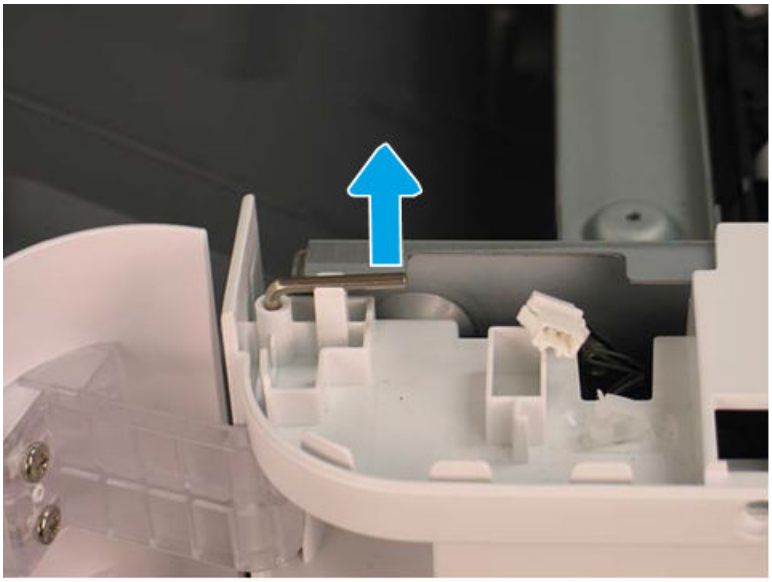


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

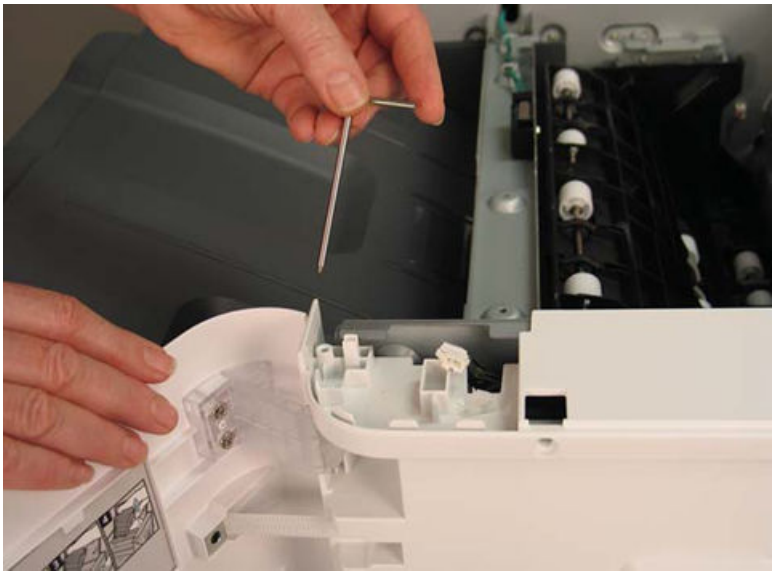
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-889 Lift the top hinge pin



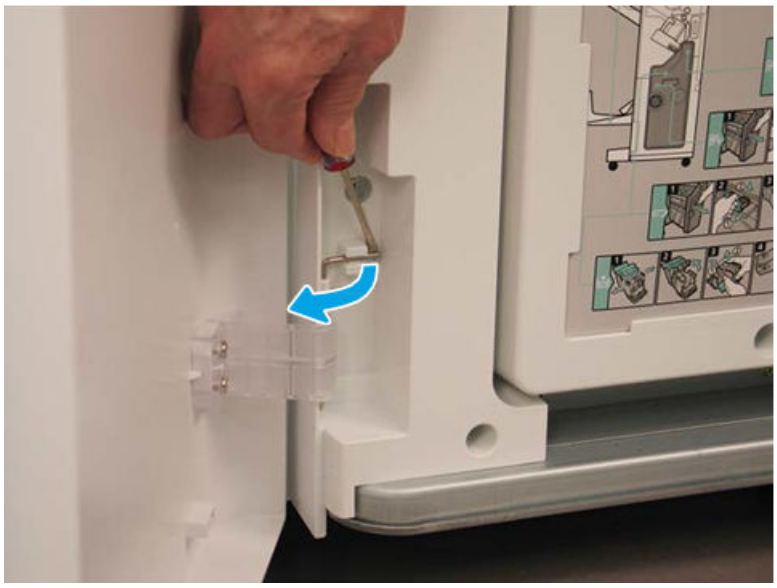
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-890 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-891 Release the lower hinge pin



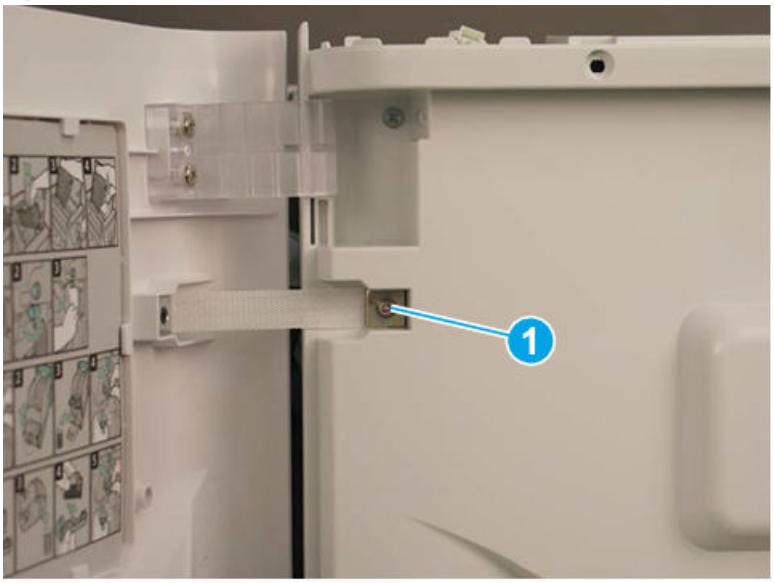
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-892 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-893 Remove the front door

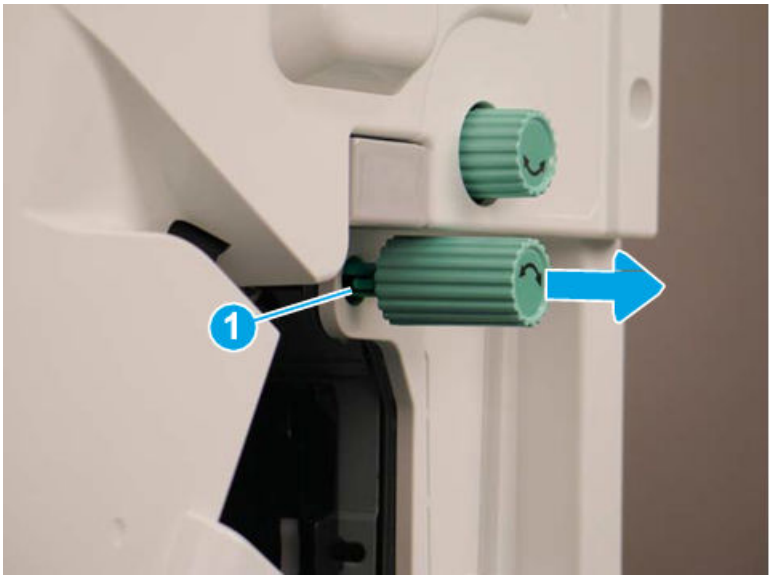


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

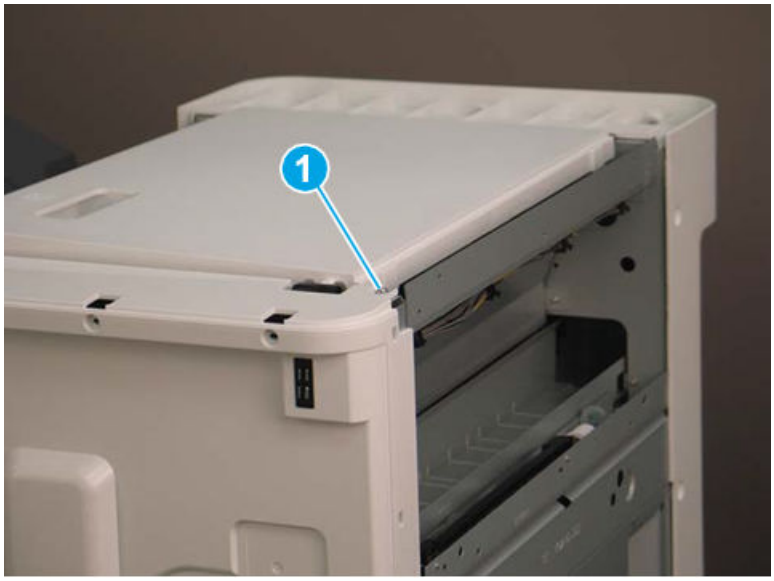
Figure 5-894 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

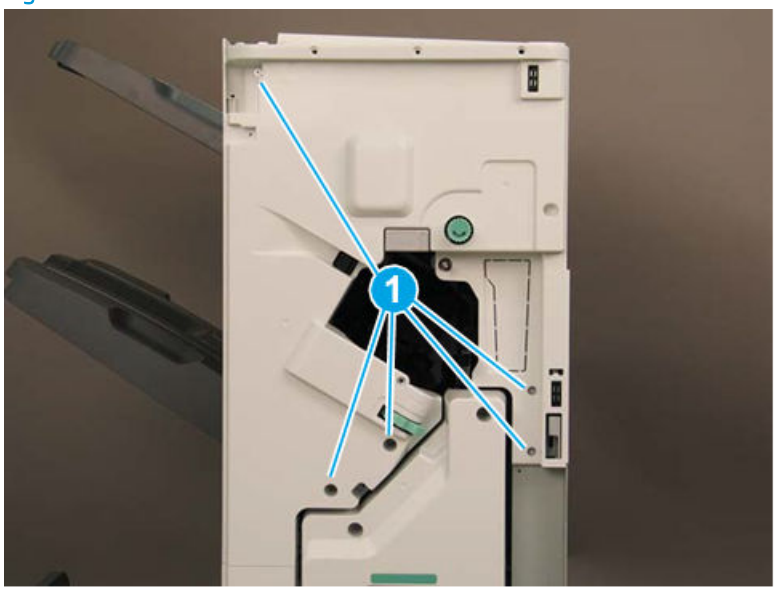
Figure 5-895 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-896 Remove the front cover

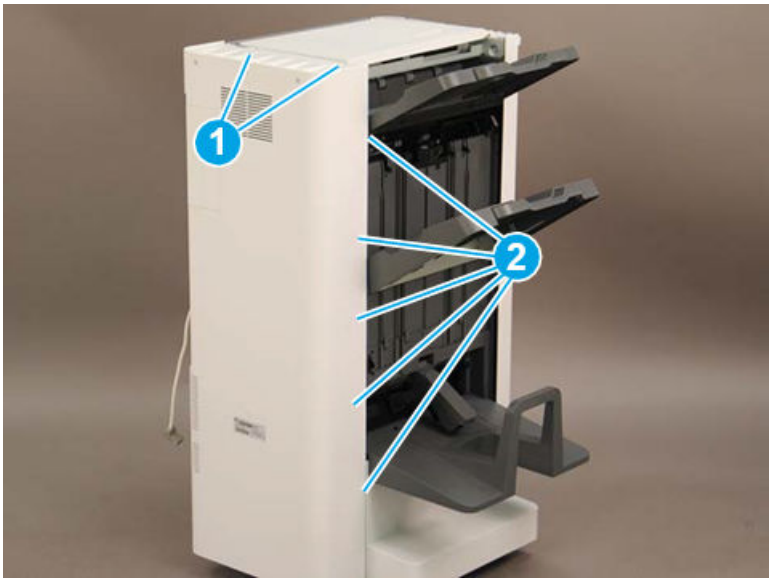


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-897 Remove seven screws

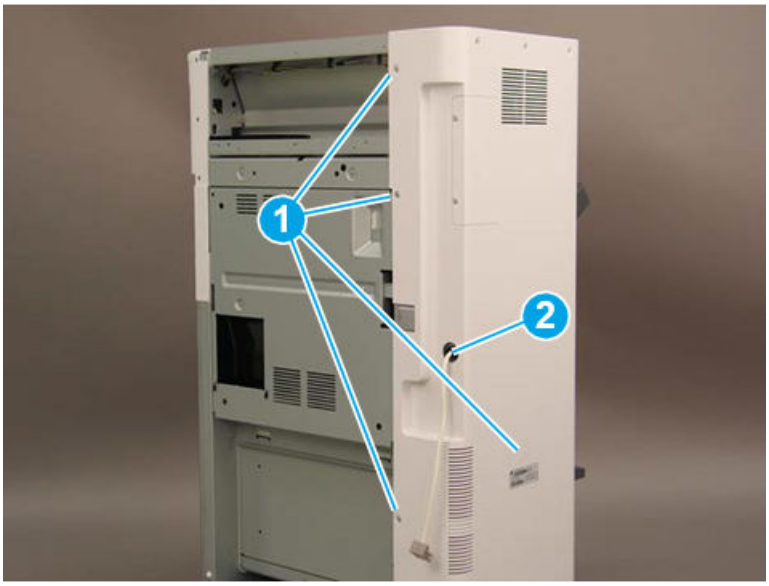


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-898 Remove the rear cover

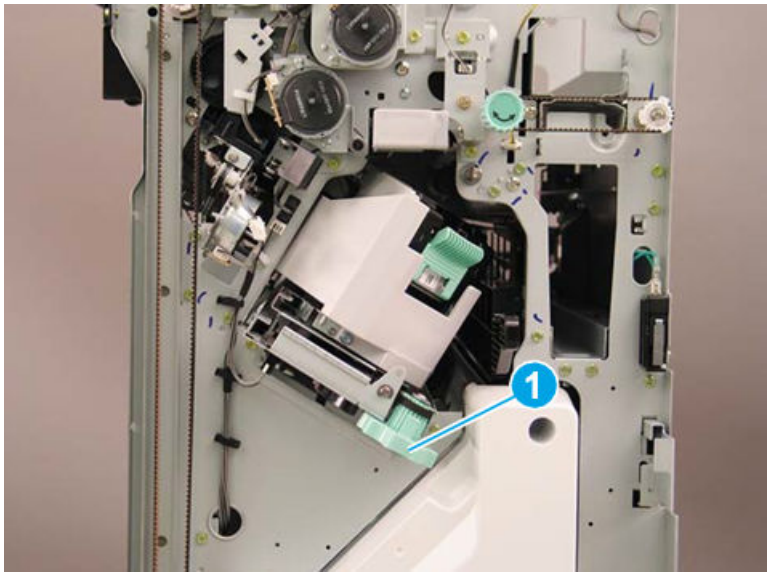


Remove the stapler unit

Follow these steps to remove the stapler unit.

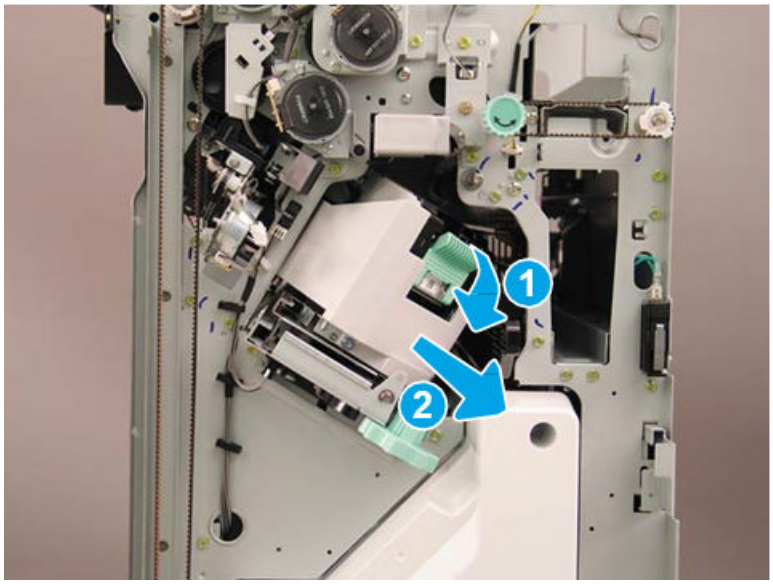
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the front until it stops.

Figure 5-899 Move the staple unit to the front



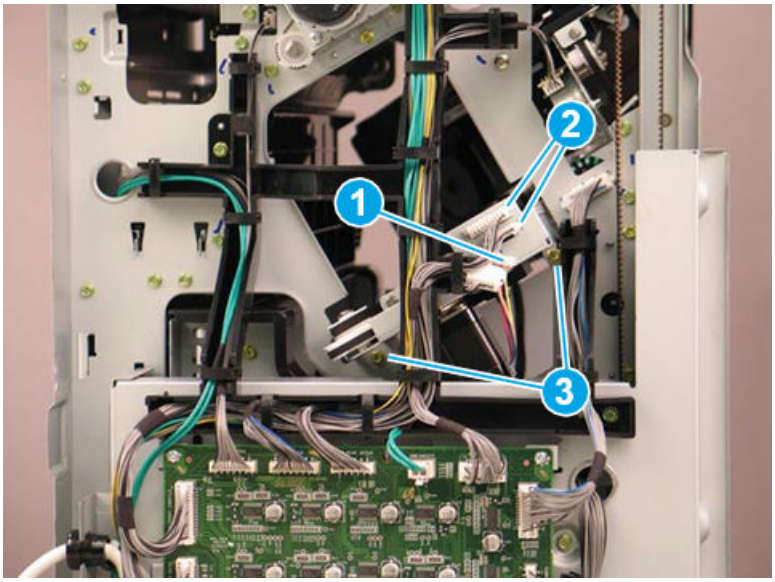
2. Lower the green latch (callout 1), and then slide the staple cartridge away from the finisher to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 5-900 Remove the staple cartridge



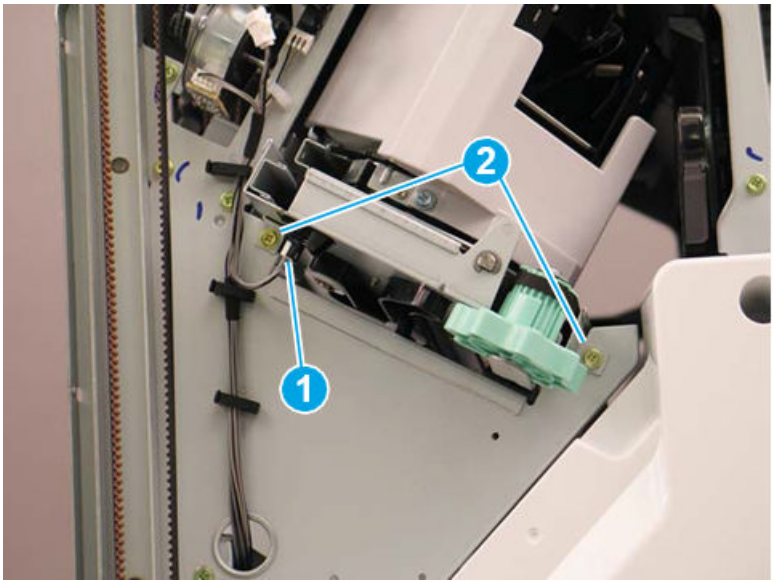
3. At the back of the finisher, release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 5-901 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws



4. At the front of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

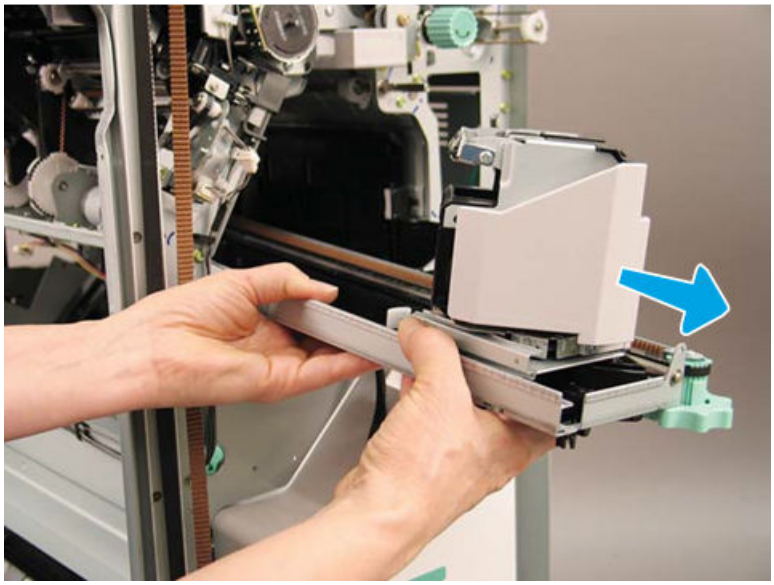
Figure 5-902 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws



5. Lift up, and then slide the staple unit to the front of the finisher to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-903 Remove the staple unit

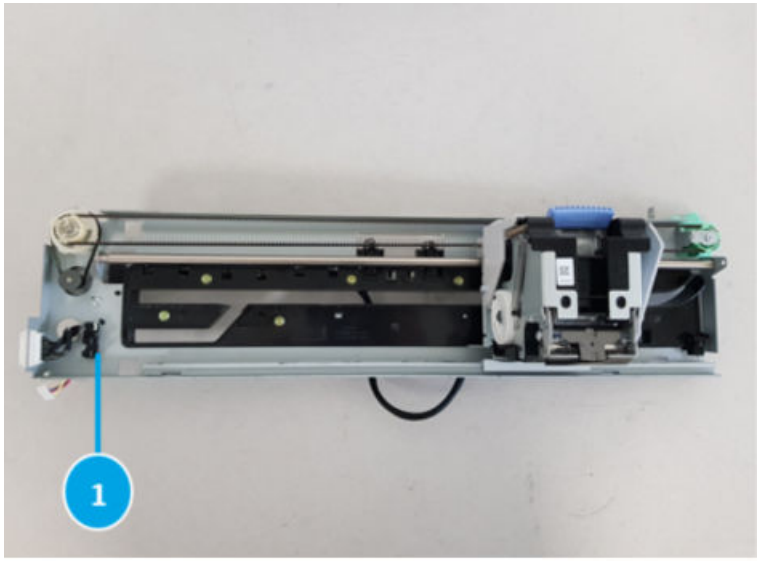


Remove the stapler rear sensor(S30)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler rear sensor(S30).

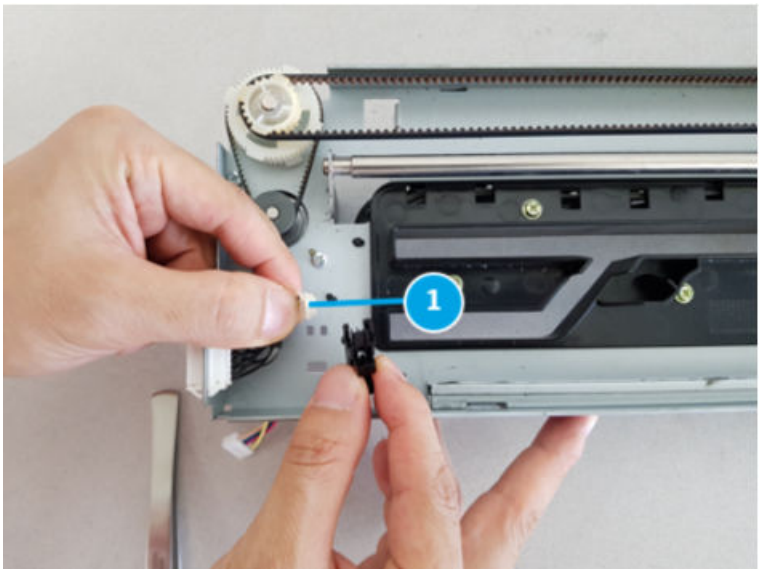
1. Remove stapler rear sensor(callout 1, S30) from staple unit.

Figure 5-904 Remove stapler rear sensor from staple unit.



2. Disconnect the connector(callout 1) from stapler rear sensor.

Figure 5-905 Disconnect the connector from stapler rear sensor.



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Manual staple sensor (S19)

Learn how to remove and replace the manual staple sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the manual staple sensor for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-124 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Manual staple sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

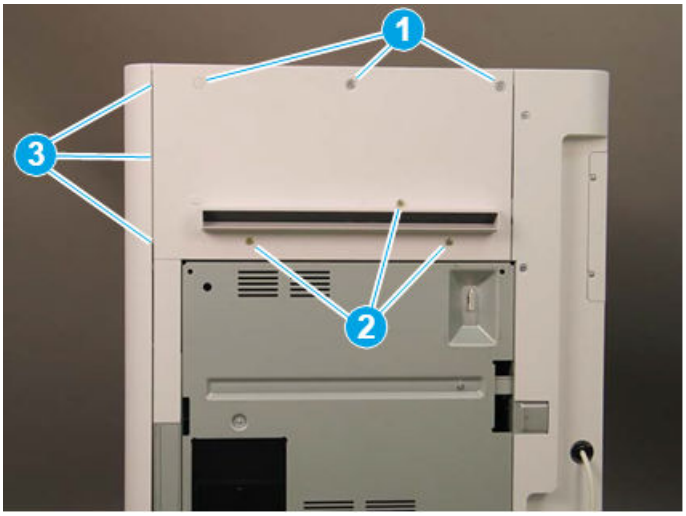
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-906 Remove the right upper cover

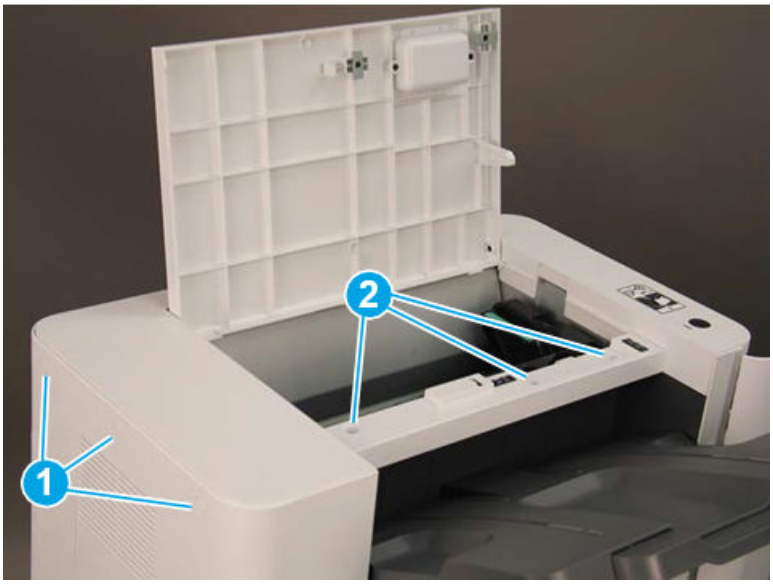


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

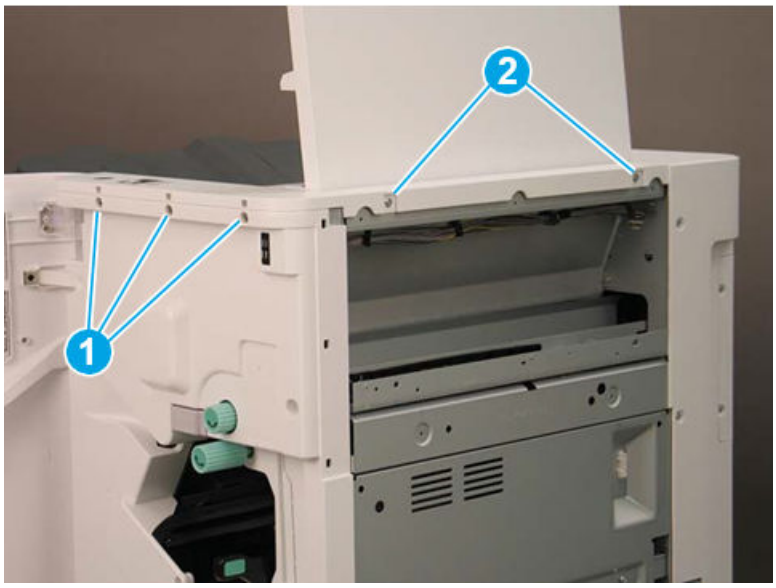
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-907 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

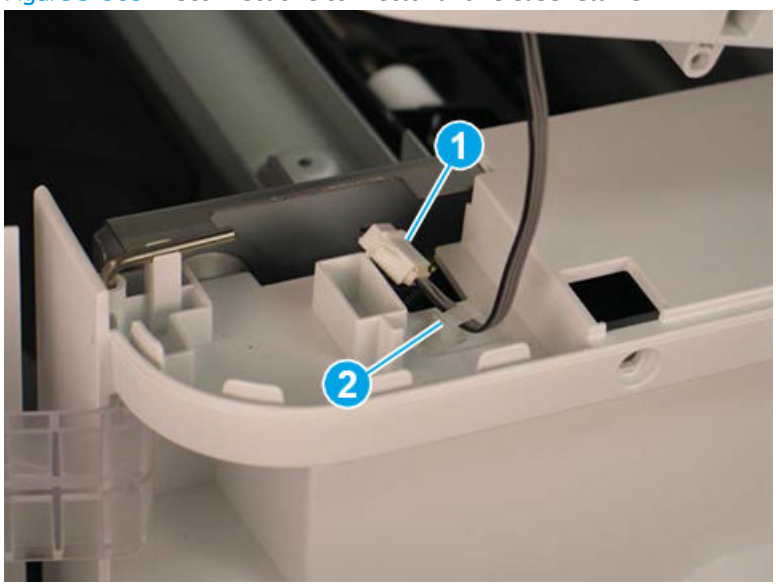
Figure 5-908 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-909 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

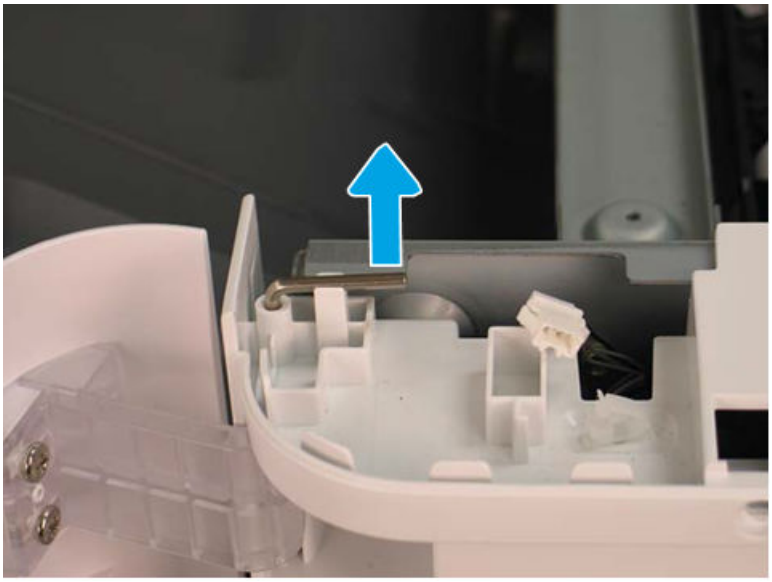


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

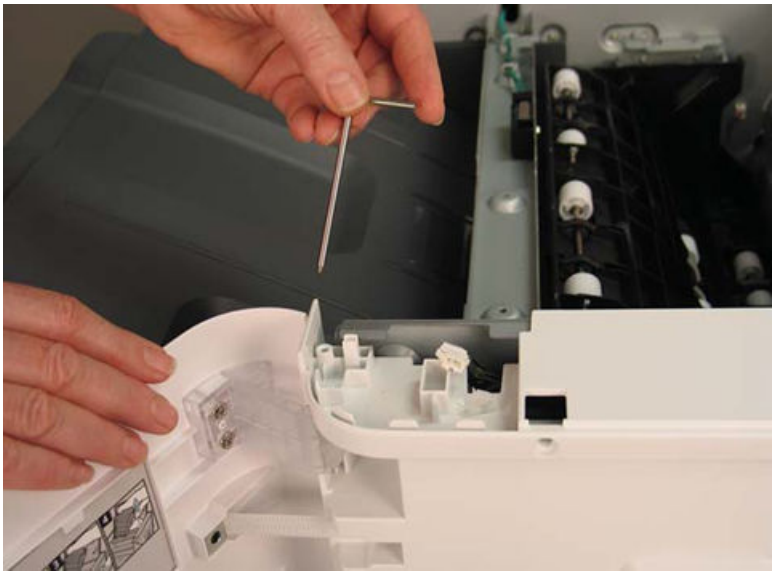
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-910 Lift the top hinge pin



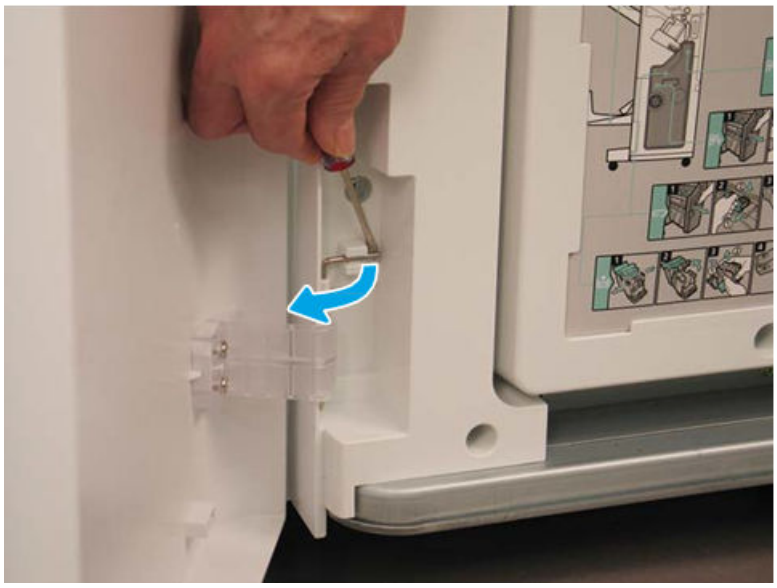
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-911 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-912 Release the lower hinge pin



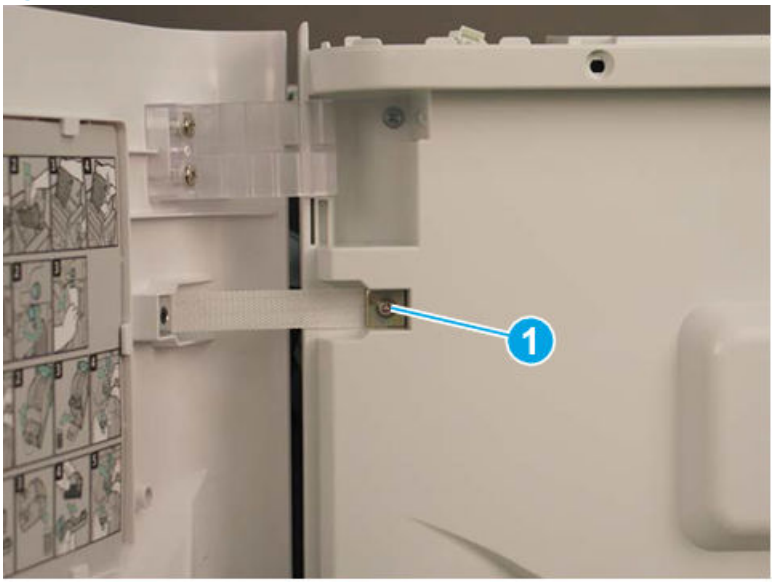
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-913 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-914 Remove the front door

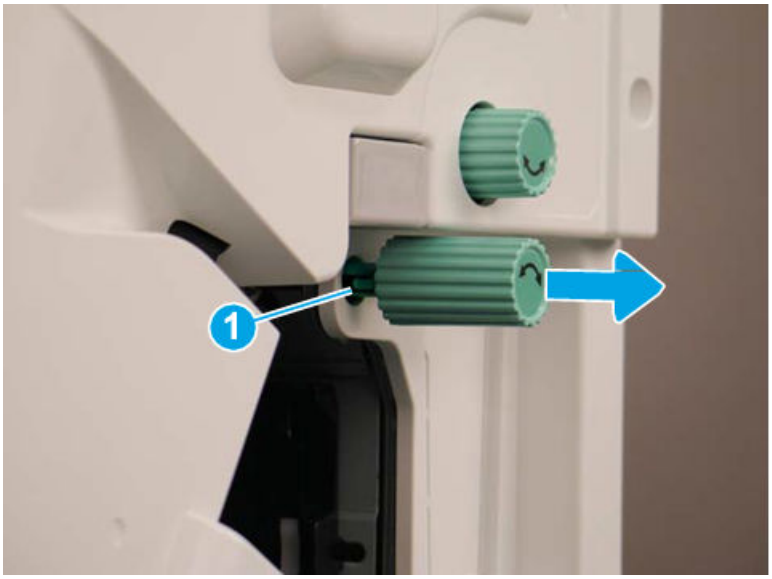


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-915 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

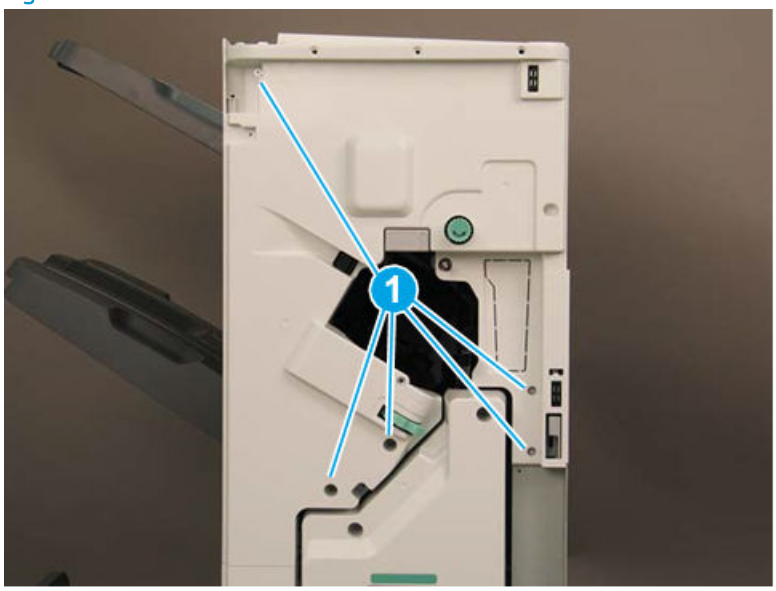
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-916 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-917 Remove the front cover

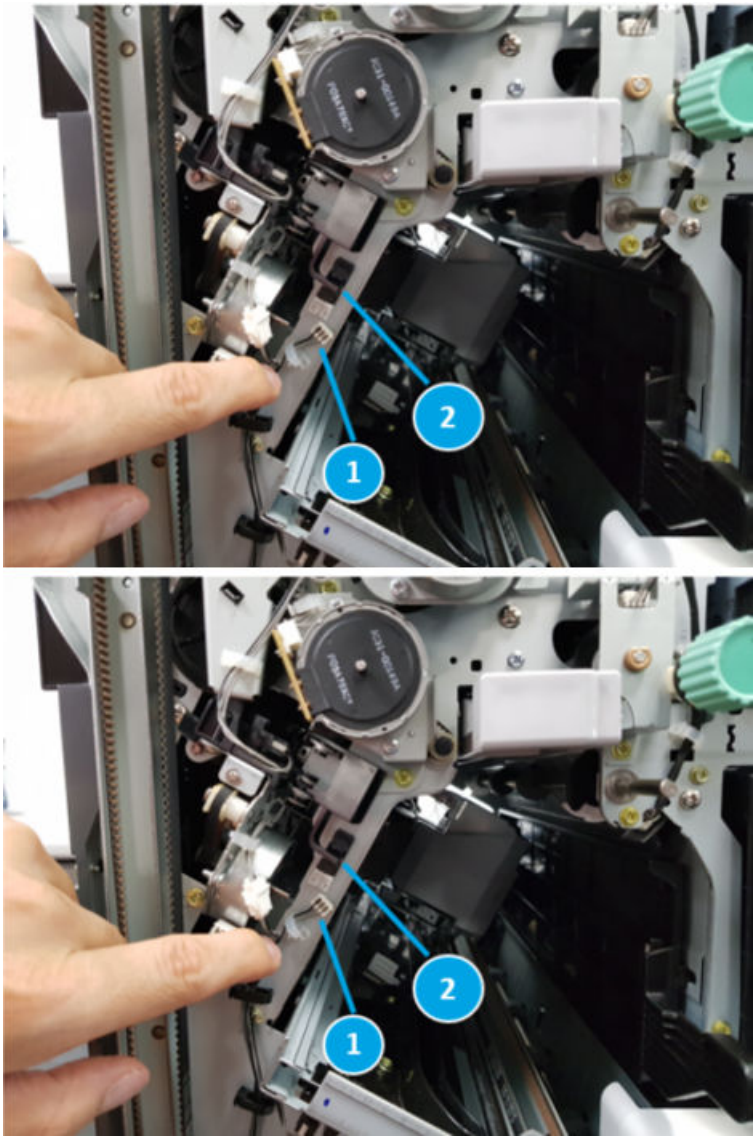


Remove the manual staple sensor(S19)

Follow these steps to remove the manual staple sensor(S19).

▲ At the front of the finisher, disconnect the connector(callout 1) and remove manual staple sensor(S19, callout 2).

Figure 5-918 Remove the manual staple sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler position motor (M8)

Learn how to remove and replace the stapler position motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the stapler position motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-125 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00163A	Stapler position motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

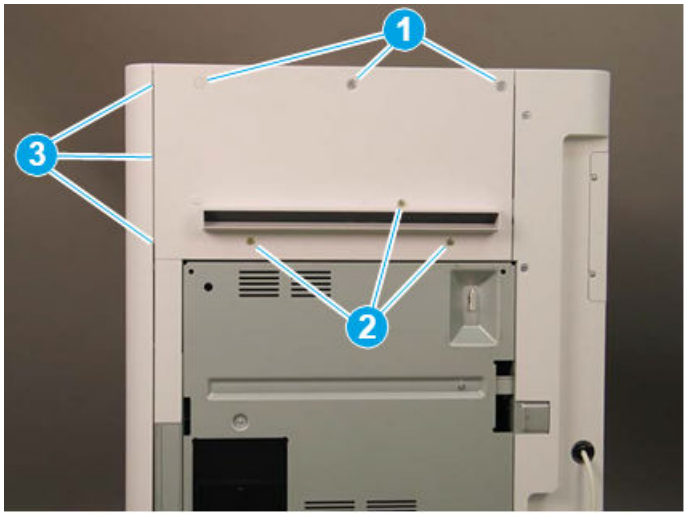
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-919 Remove the right upper cover

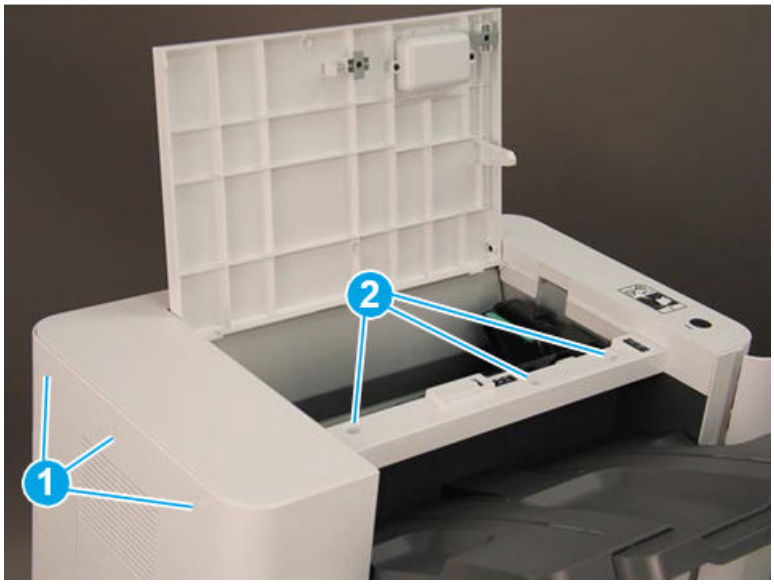


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

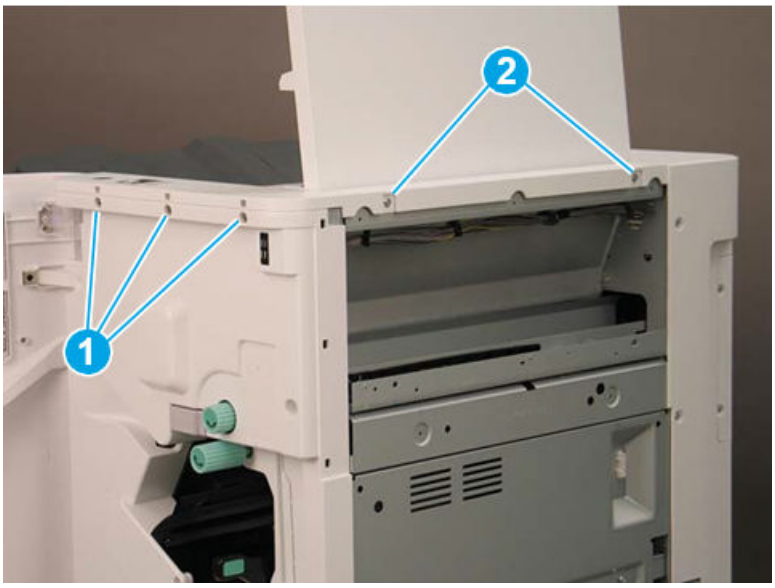
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-920 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

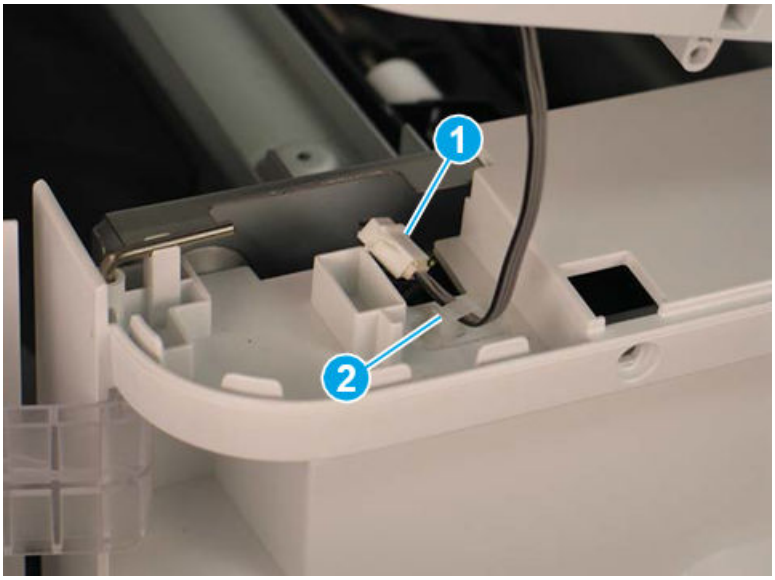
Figure 5-921 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-922 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

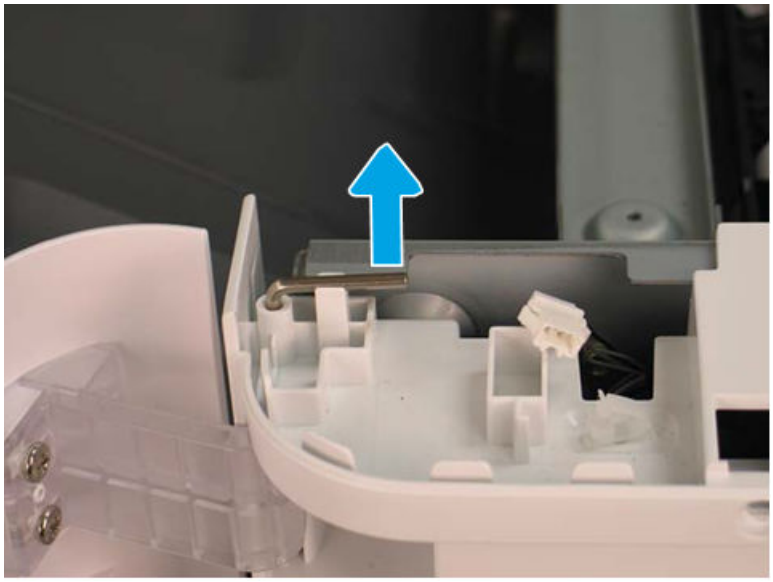


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

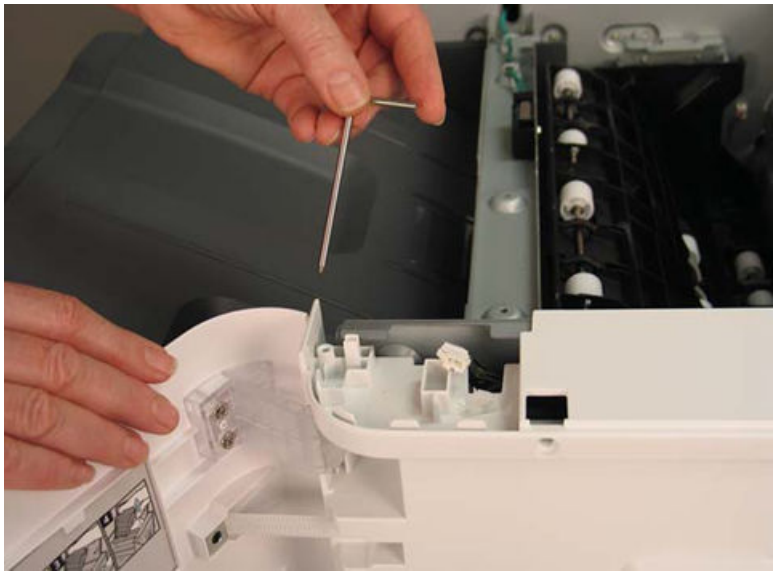
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-923 Lift the top hinge pin



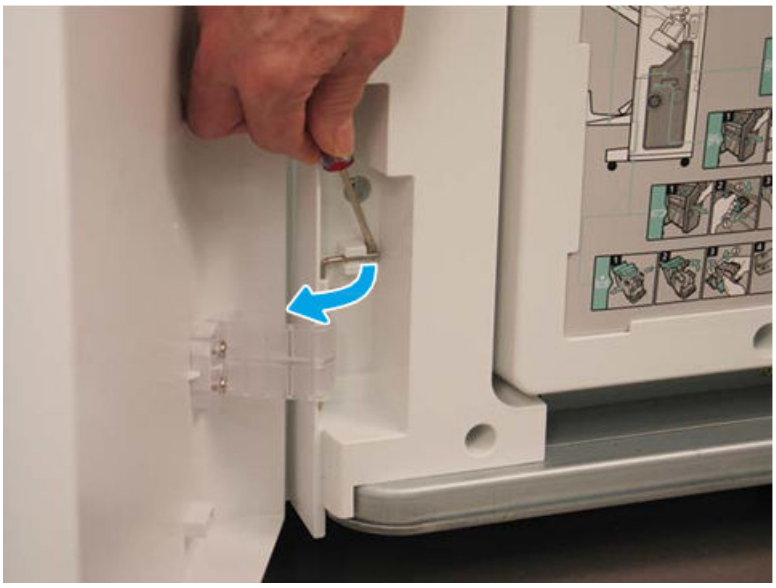
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-924 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-925 Release the lower hinge pin



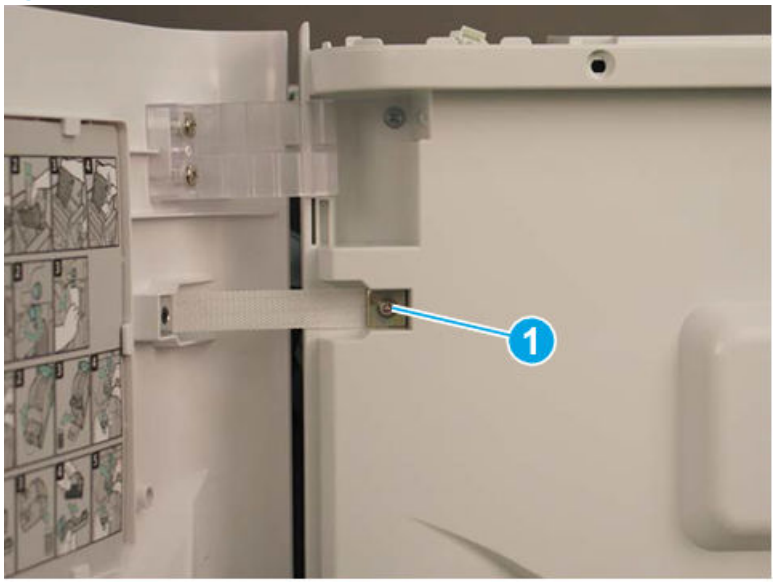
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-926 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-927 Remove the front door

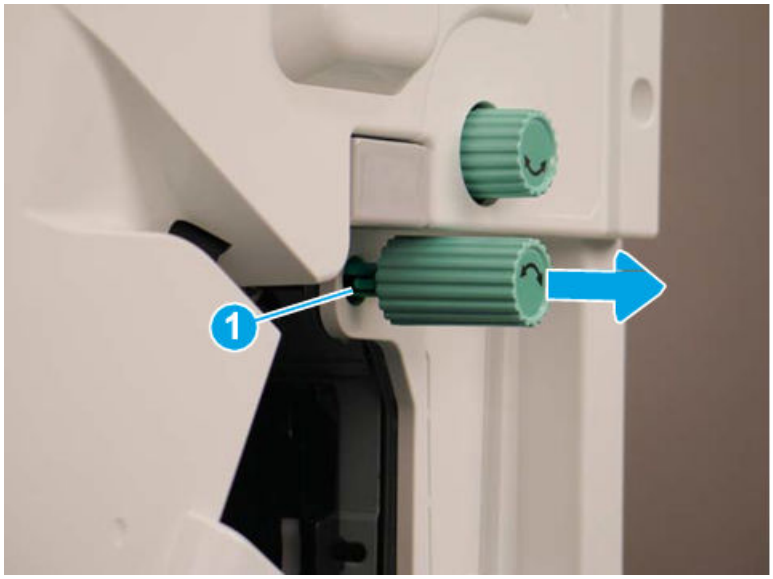


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-928 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

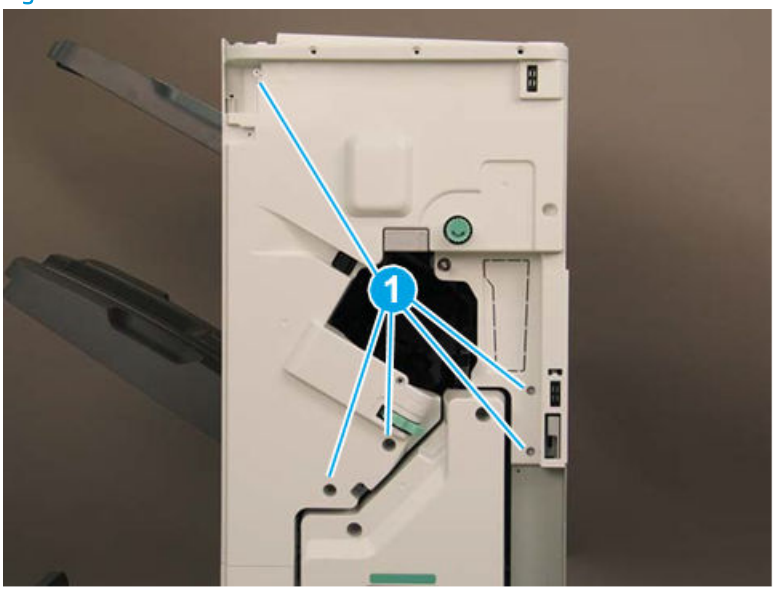
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-929 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-930 Remove the front cover

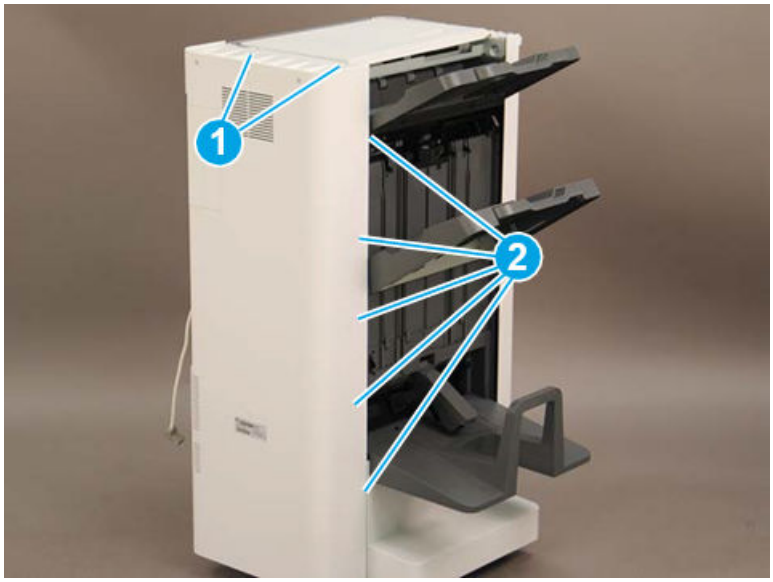


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-931 Remove seven screws

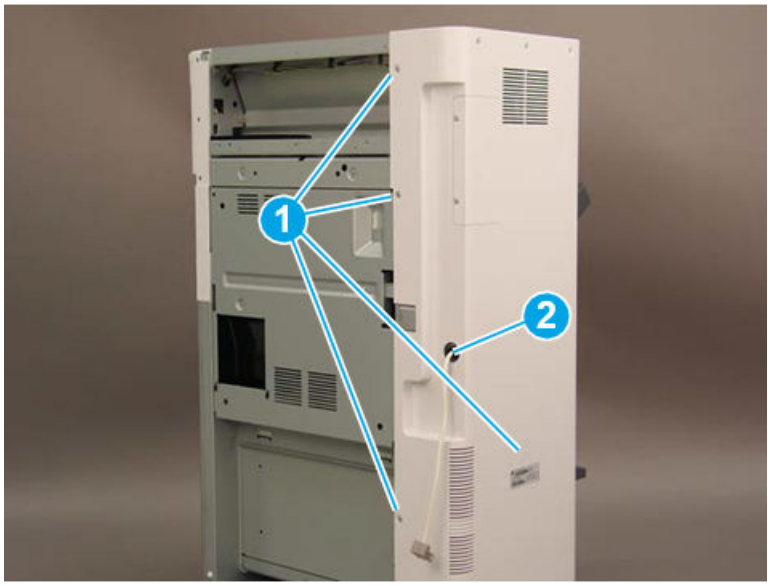


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-932 Remove the rear cover

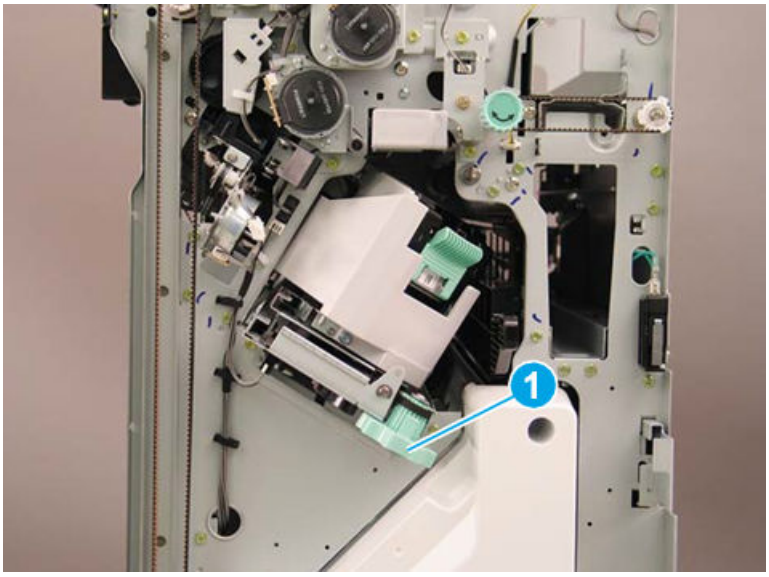


Remove the stapler unit

Follow these steps to remove the stapler unit.

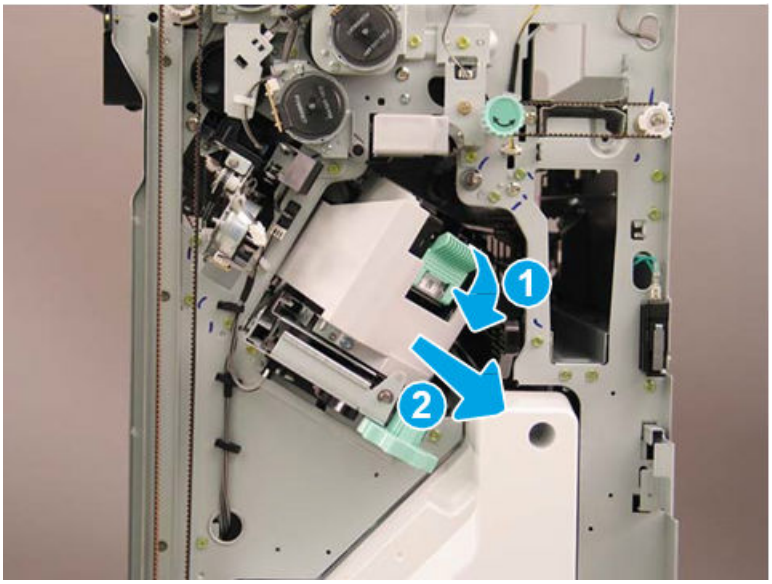
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the front until it stops.

Figure 5-933 Move the staple unit to the front



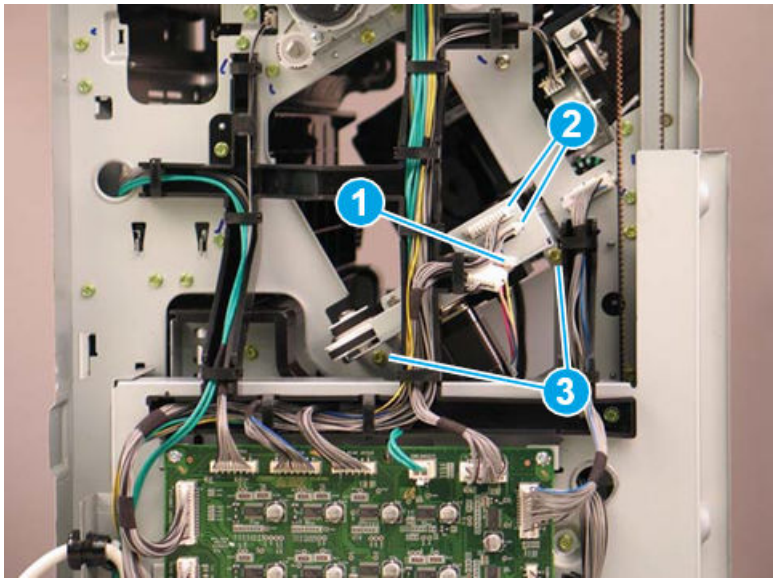
2. Lower the green latch (callout 1), and then slide the staple cartridge away from the finisher to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 5-934 Remove the staple cartridge



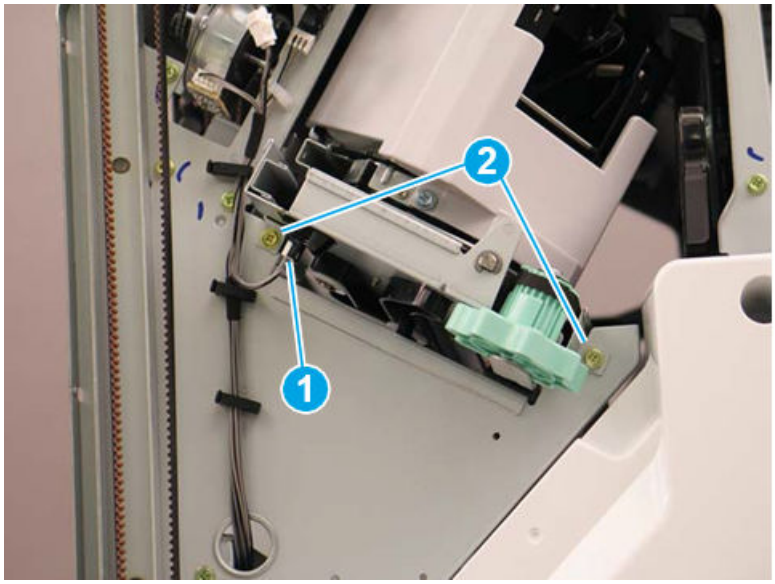
3. At the back of the finisher, release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 5-935 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws



4. At the front of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

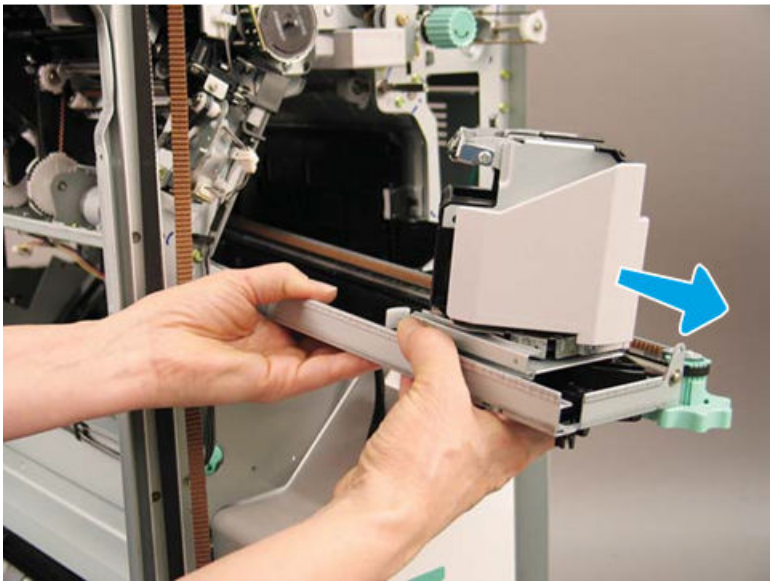
Figure 5-936 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws



5. Lift up, and then slide the staple unit to the front of the finisher to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-937 Remove the staple unit

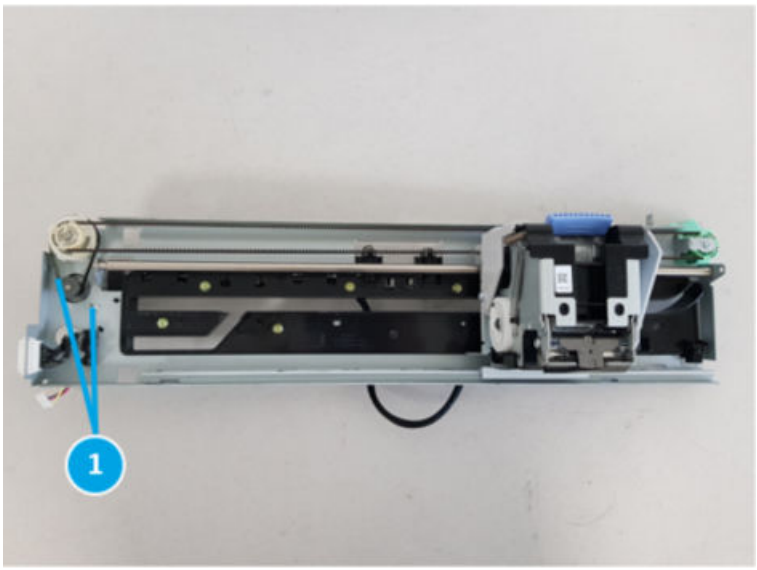


Remove the stapler position motor(M8)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler position motor(M8).

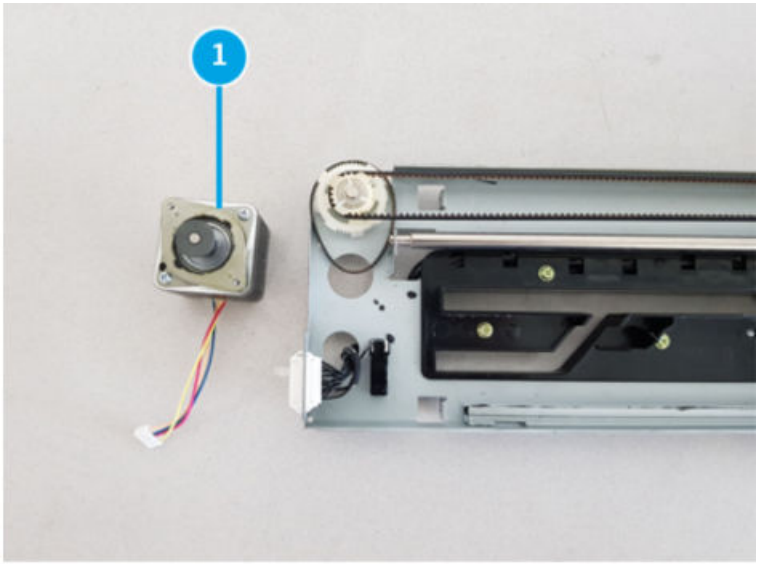
1. Remove two screws(callout 1)

Figure 5-938 Remove two screws



2. Remove stapler position motor(M8, callout1) from staple unit.

Figure 5-939 Remove stapler position motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Ejector unit

Removal and replacement: Ejector unit

Learn how to remove and replace the ejector unit.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the ejector unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-126 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01409A	Ejector unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

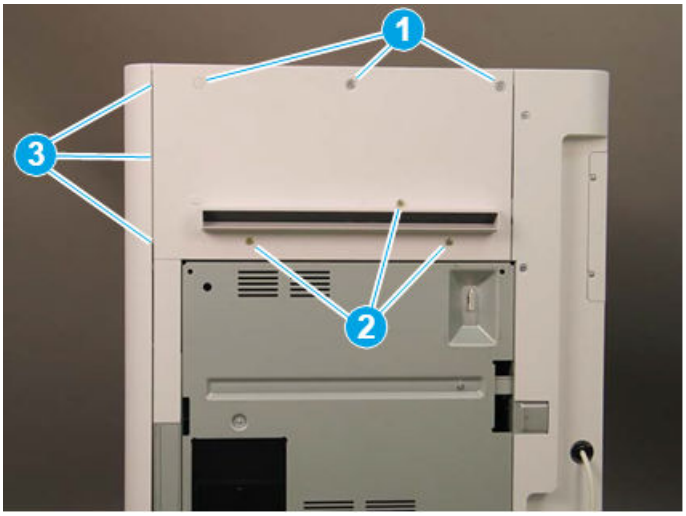
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-940 Remove the right upper cover

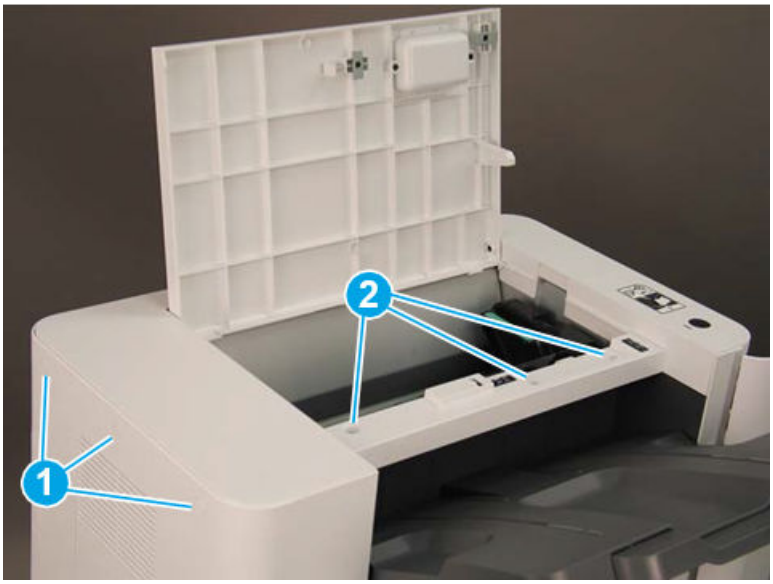


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

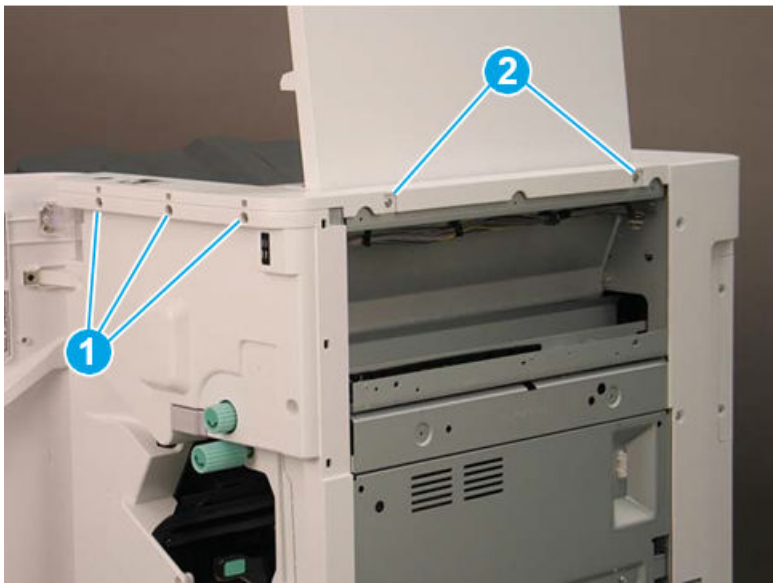
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-941 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

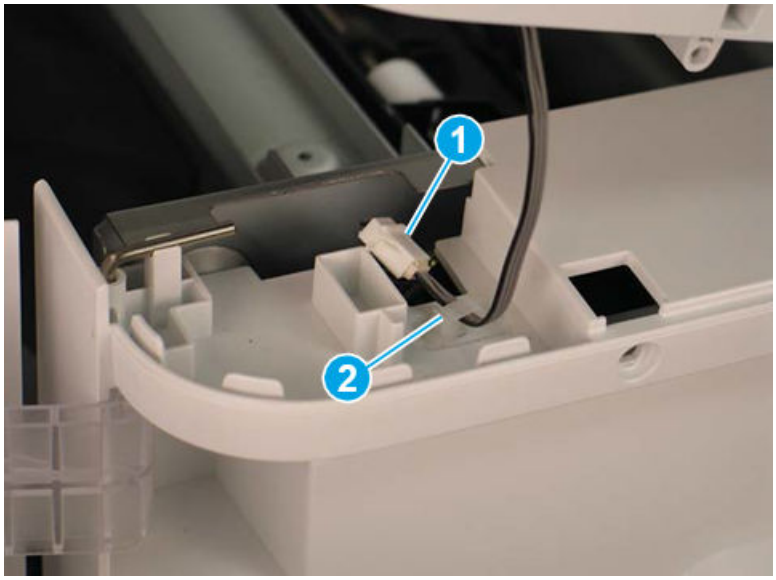
Figure 5-942 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-943 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

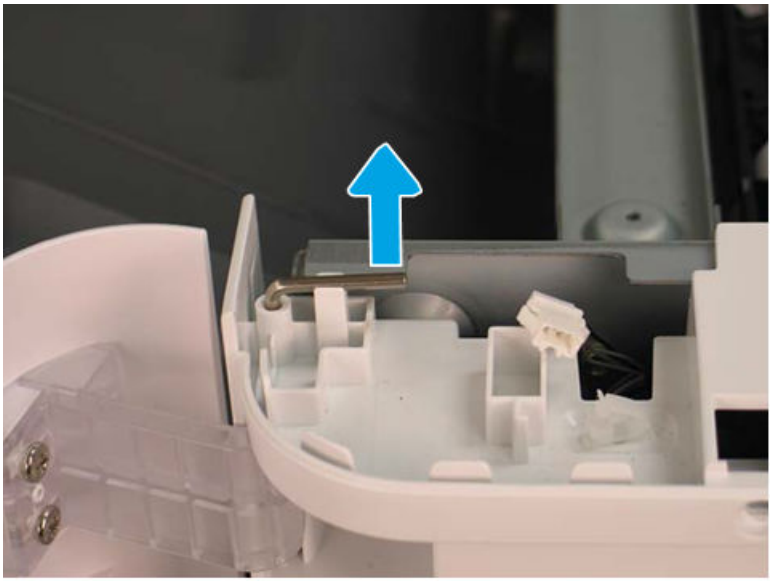


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

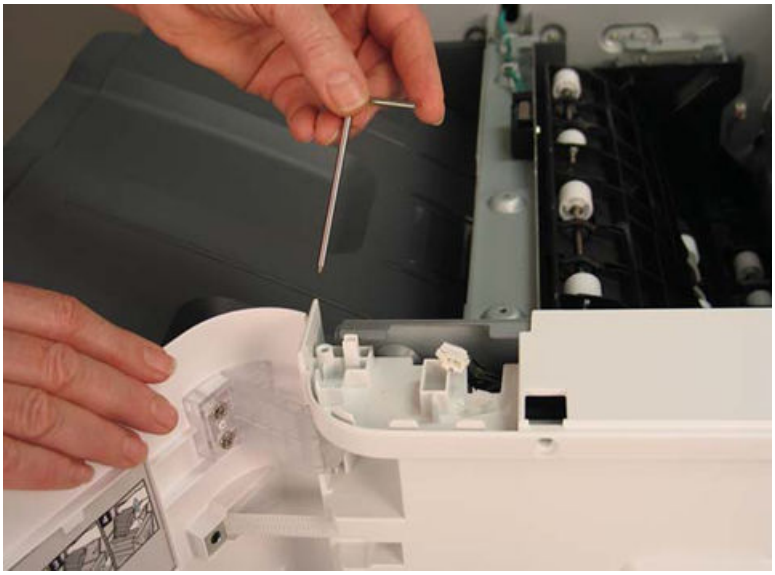
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-944 Lift the top hinge pin



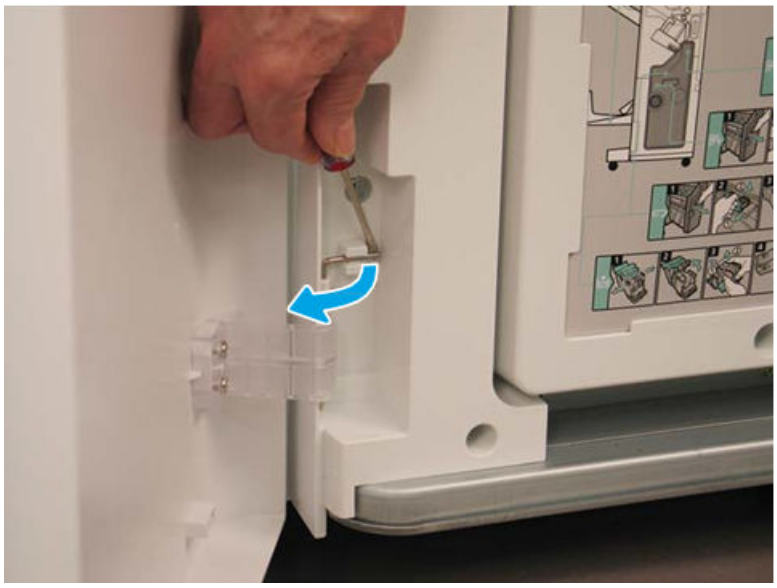
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-945 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-946 Release the lower hinge pin



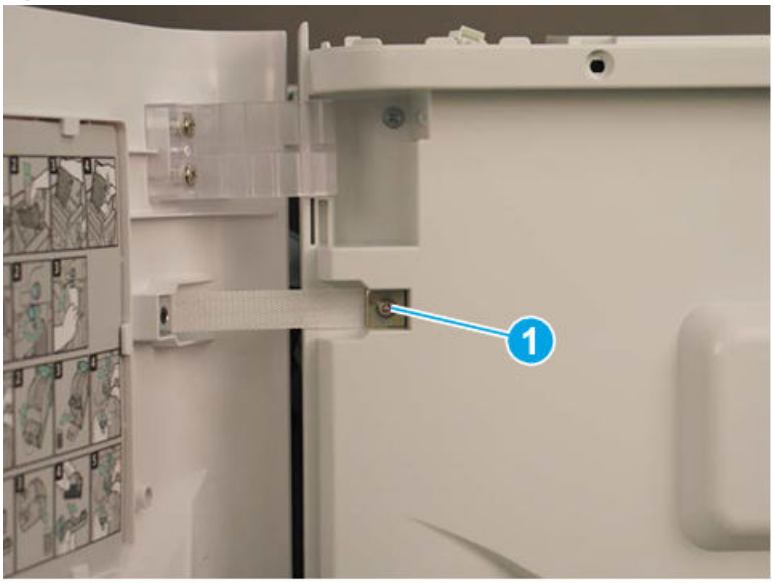
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-947 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-948 Remove the front door

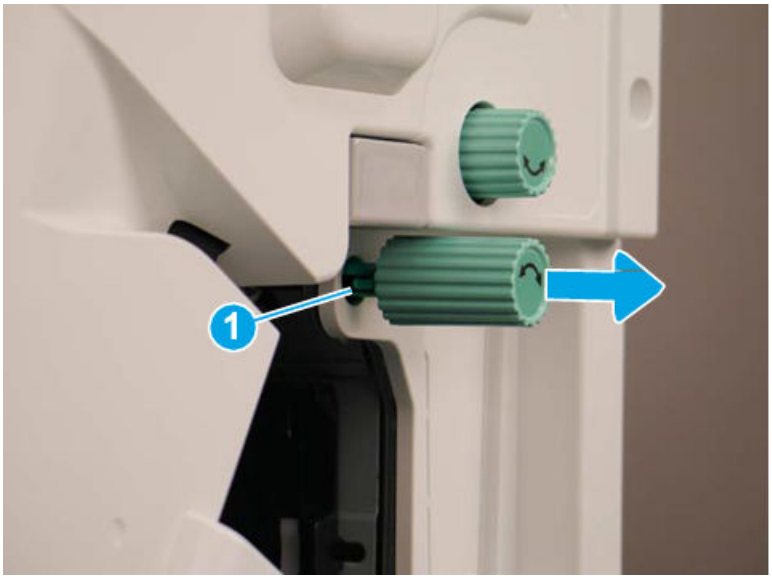


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-949 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

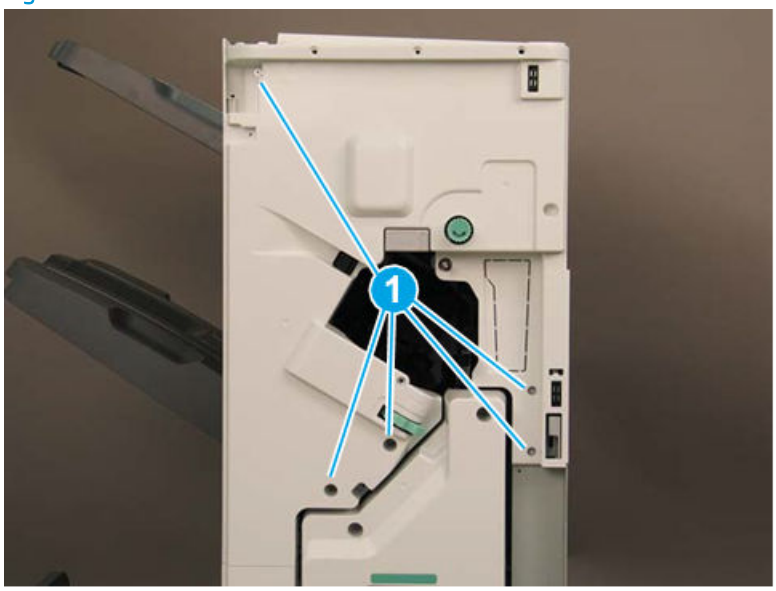
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-950 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-951 Remove the front cover

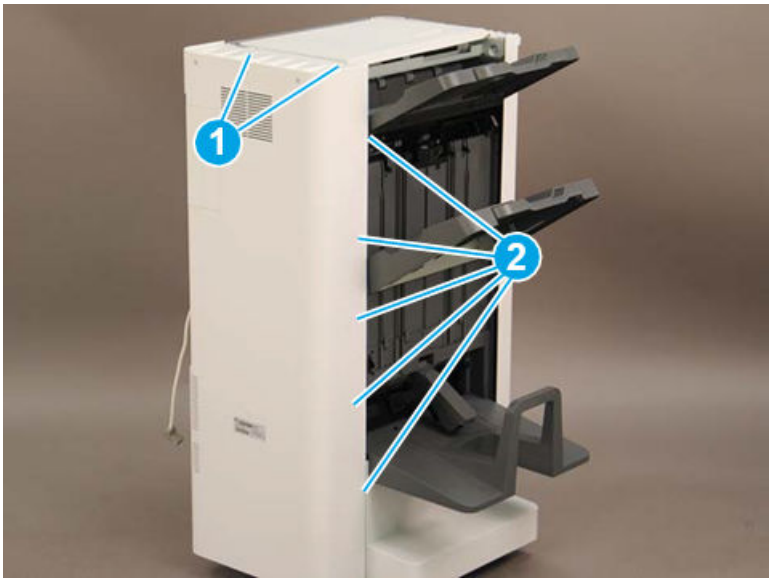


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-952 Remove seven screws

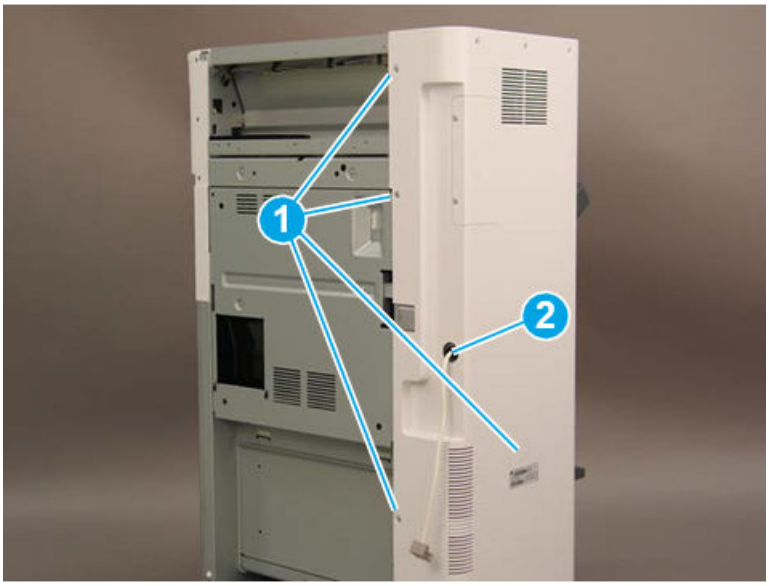


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-953 Remove the rear cover

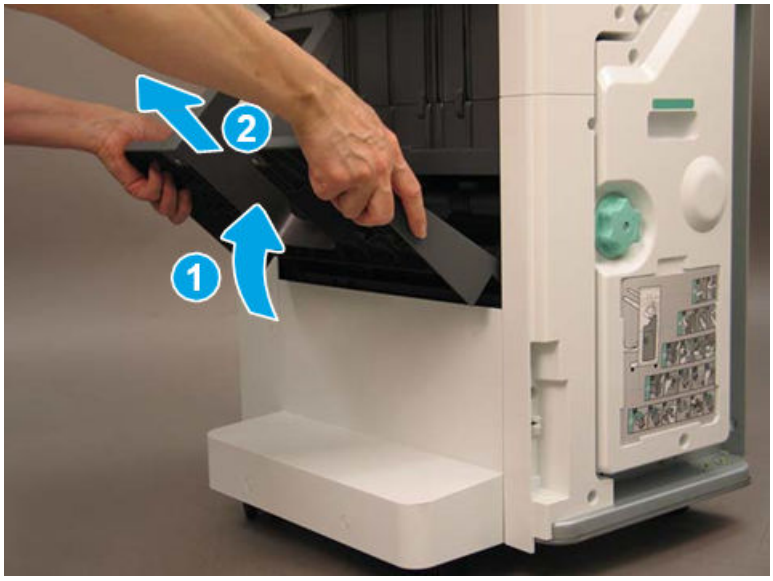


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-954 Remove the booklet output tray



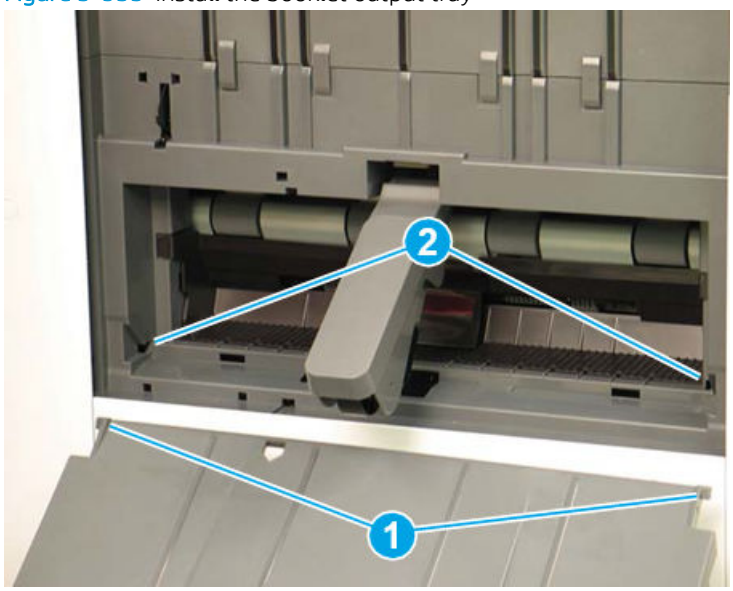
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-955 Install the booklet output tray

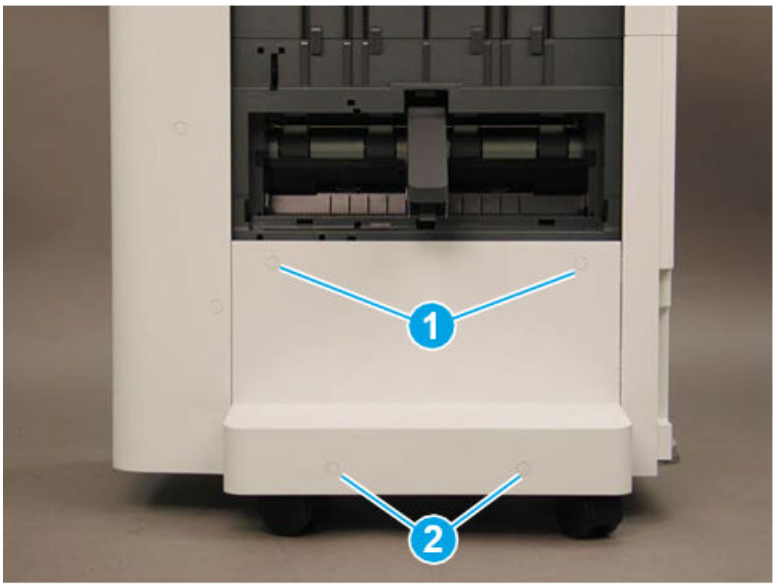


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-956 Remove four screws

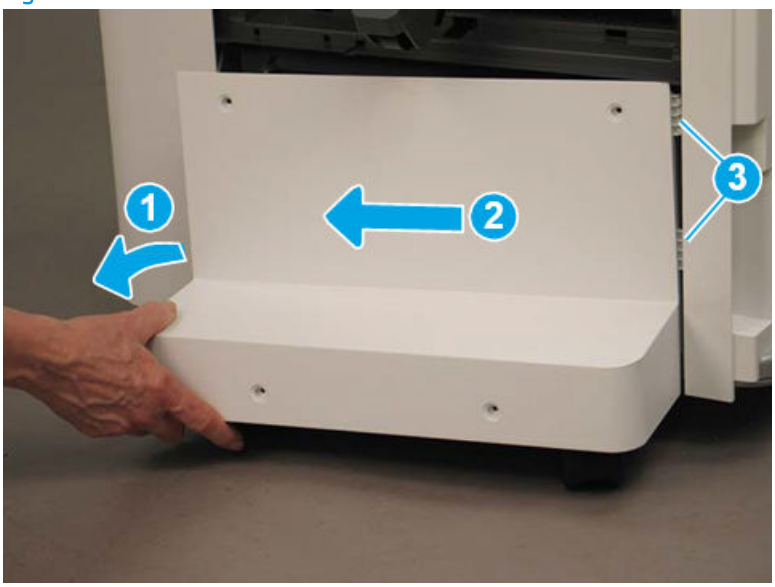


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-957 Remove the caster cover



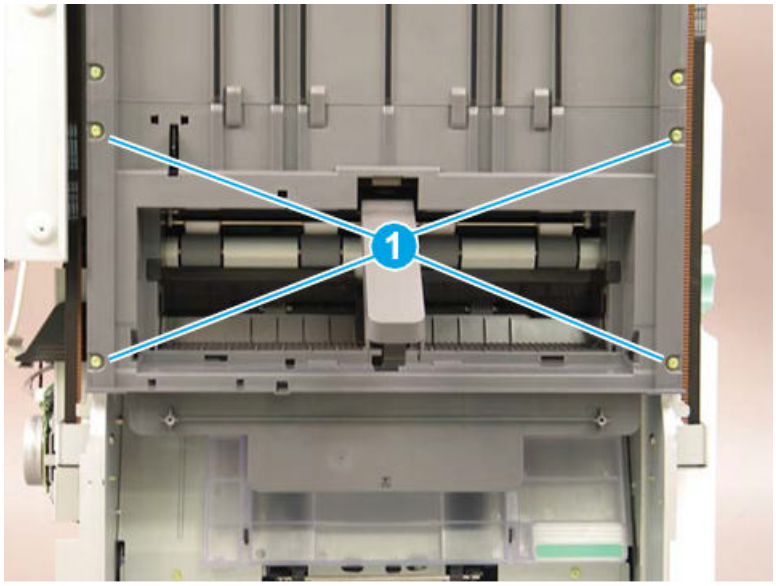
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-958 Remove four screws

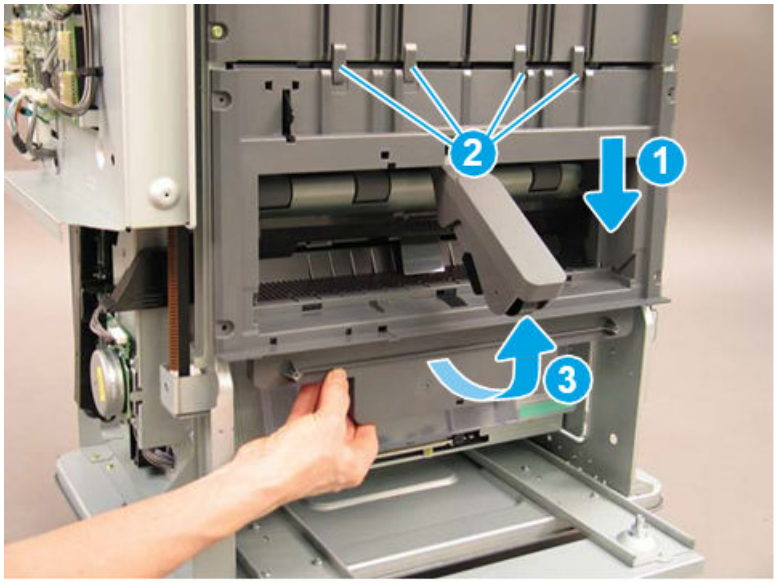


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

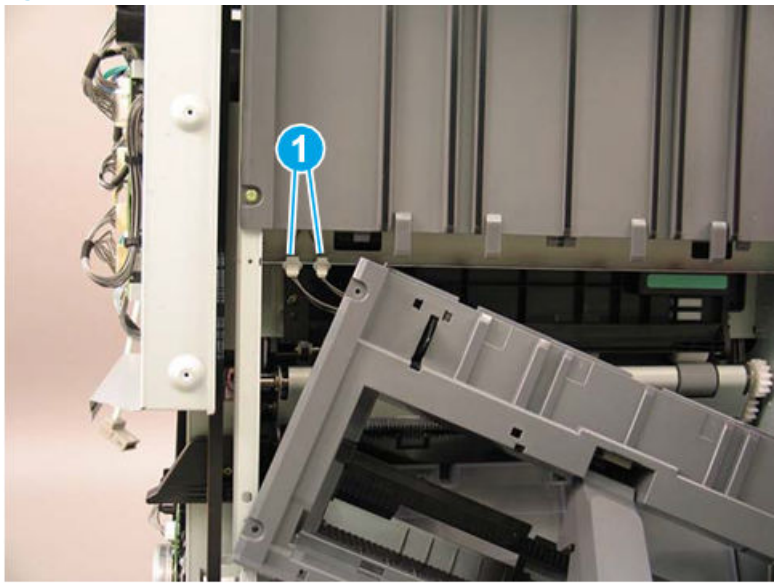
Figure 5-959 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

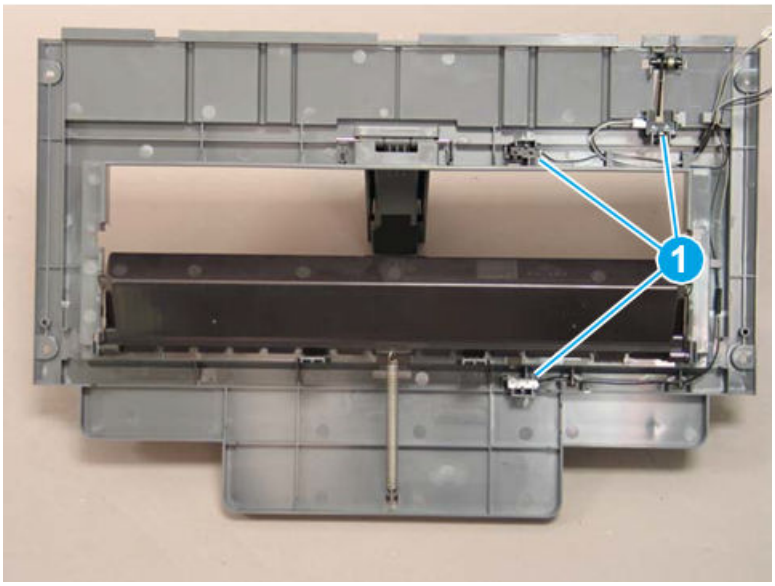
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-960 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-961 Remove the left lower cover

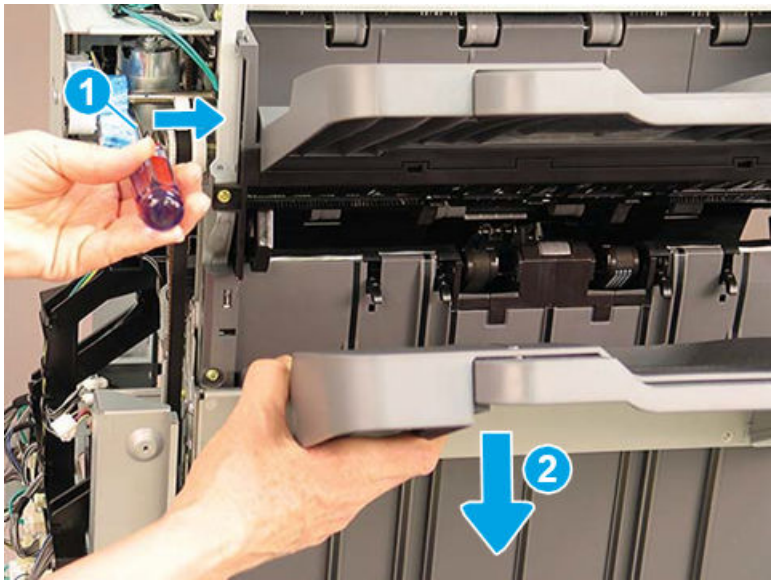


Remove the left upper cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover (finisher).

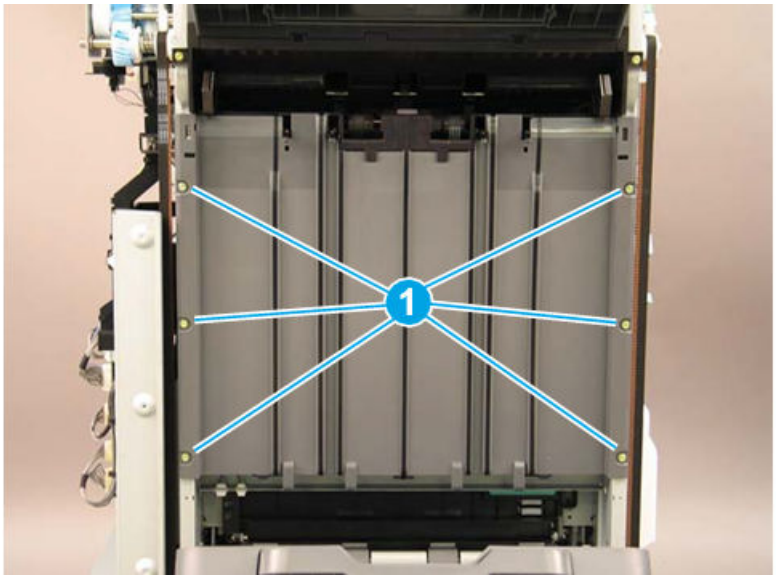
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 5-962 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-963 Remove six screws

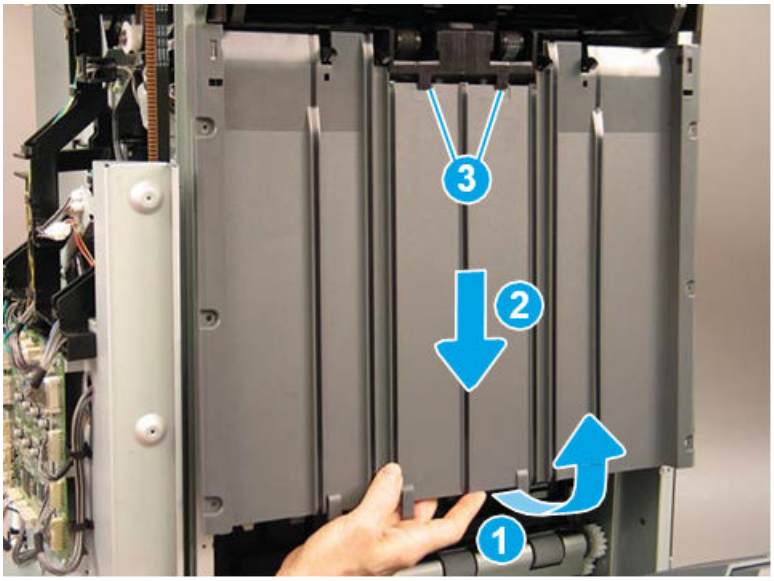


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away fromthe finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

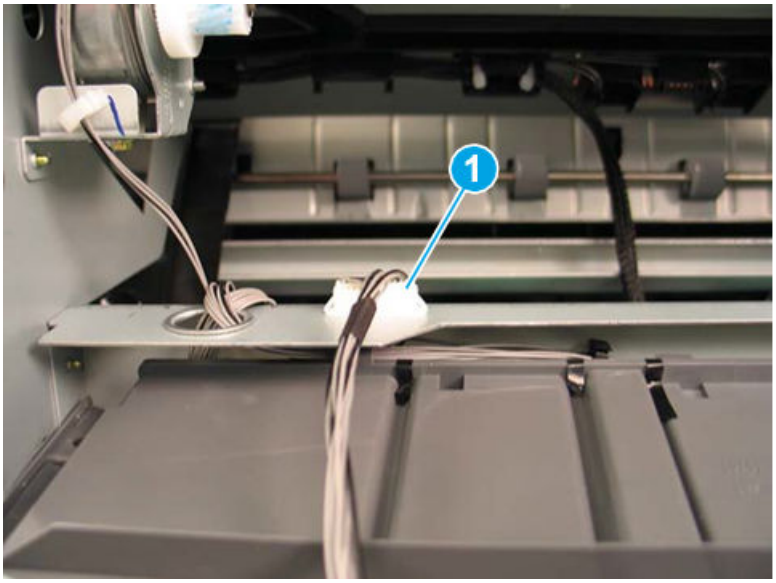
Figure 5-964 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

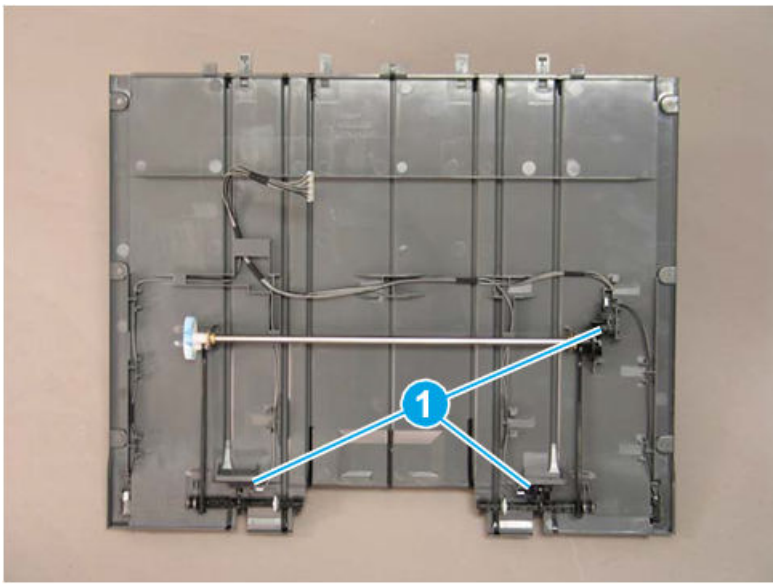
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-965 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the left upper cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left upper cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-966 Remove the left upper cover

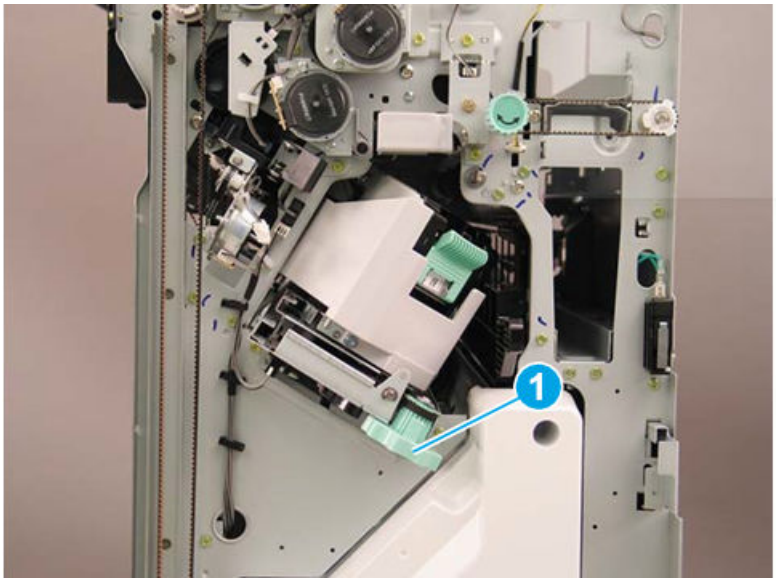


Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the ejector unit (finisher).

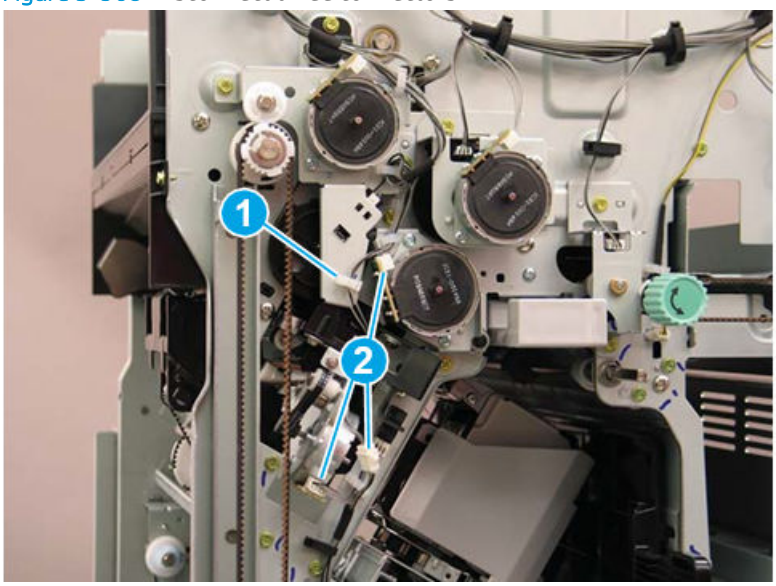
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 5-967 Move the staple unit to the center



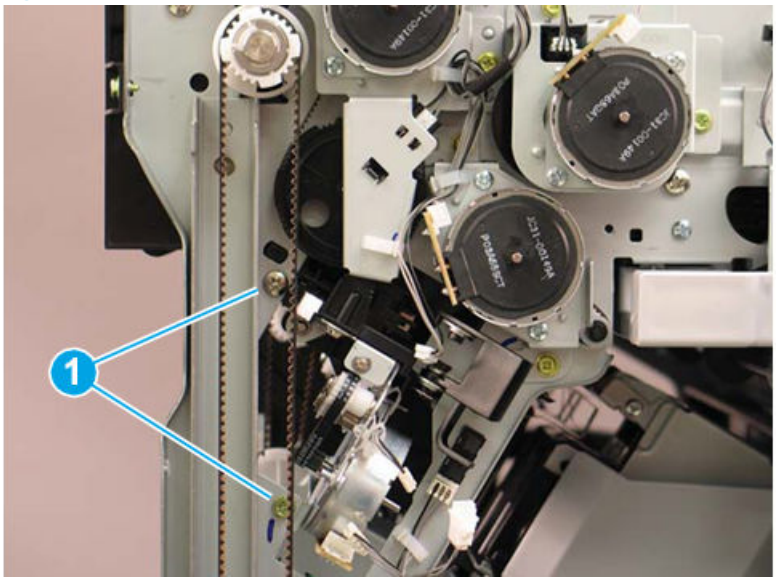
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 5-968 Disconnect three connectors



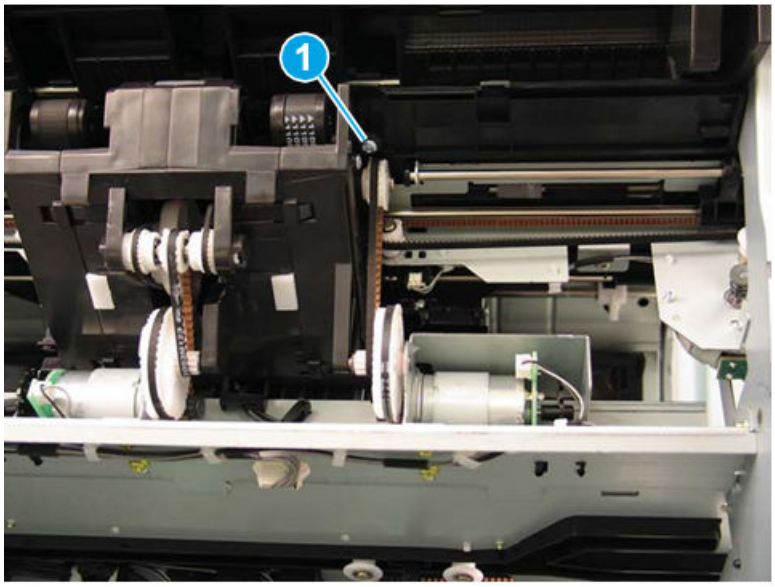
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-969 Remove two screws



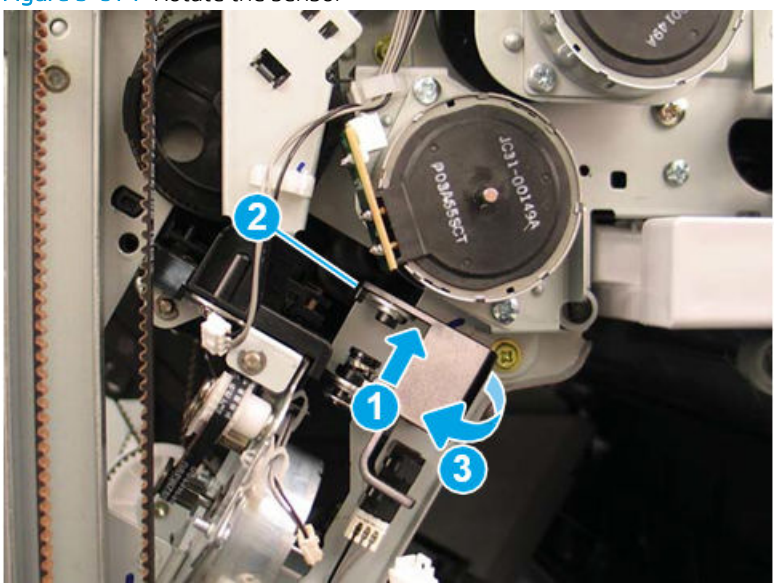
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-970 Remove one screw



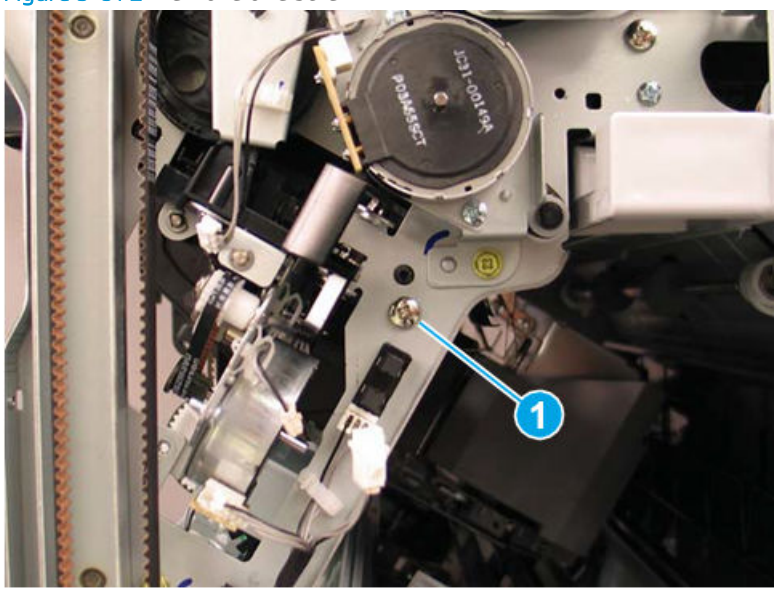
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 5-971 Rotate the sensor



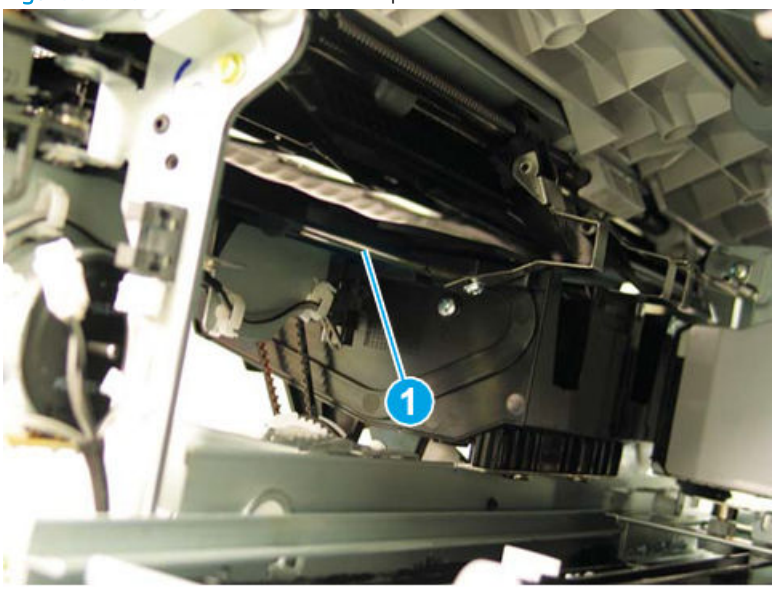
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-972 Remove one screw



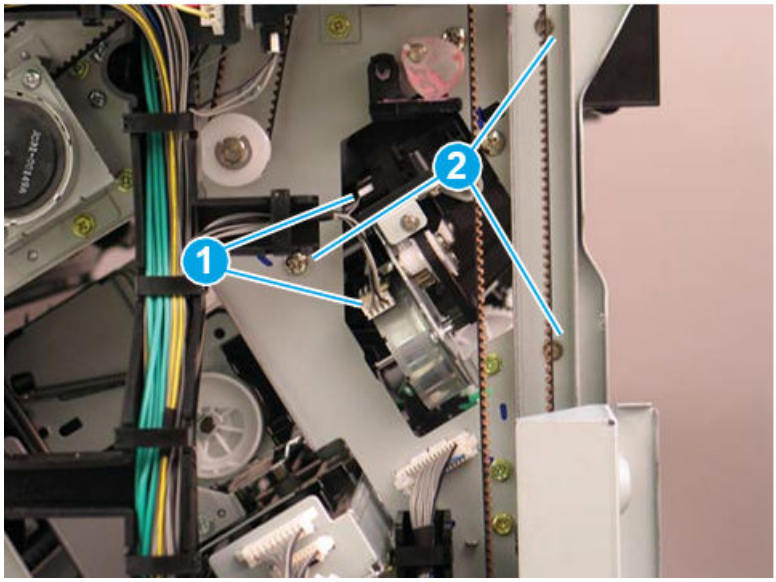
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 5-973 Remove the front tamper shaft



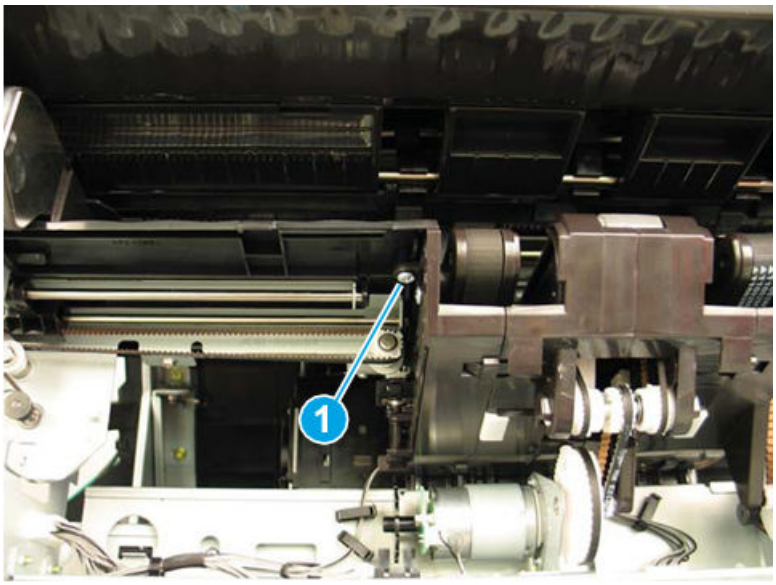
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-974 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



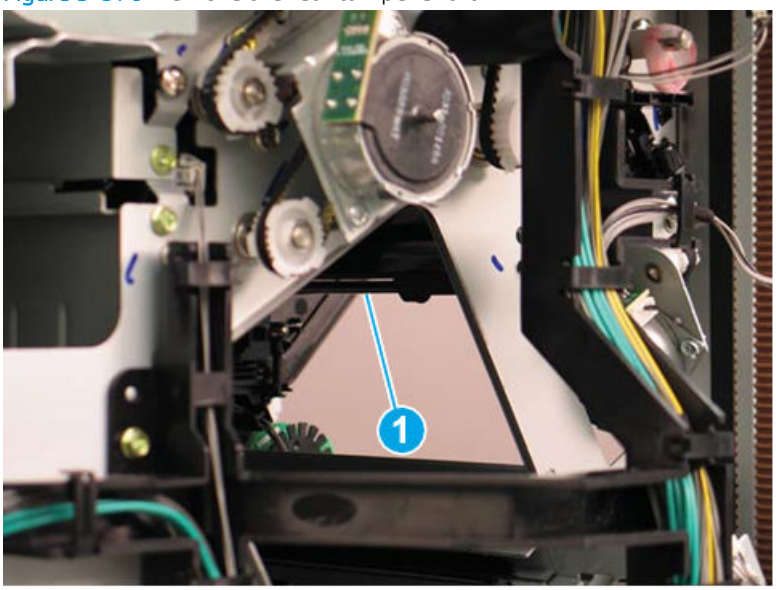
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-975 Remove one screw



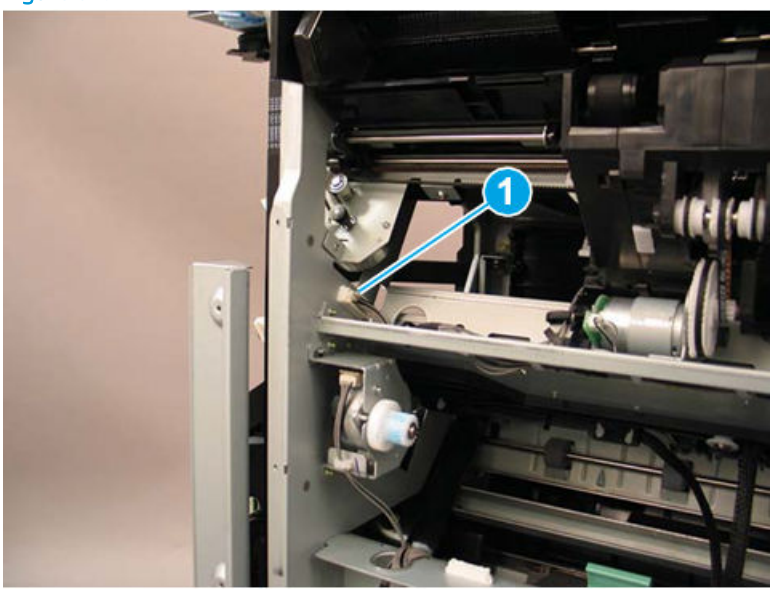
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 5-976 Remove the rear tamper shaft



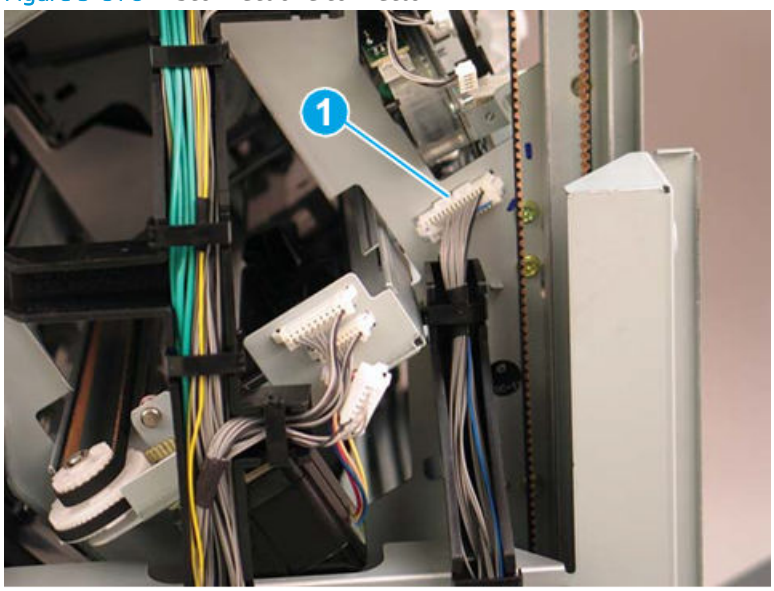
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-977 Disconnect one connector



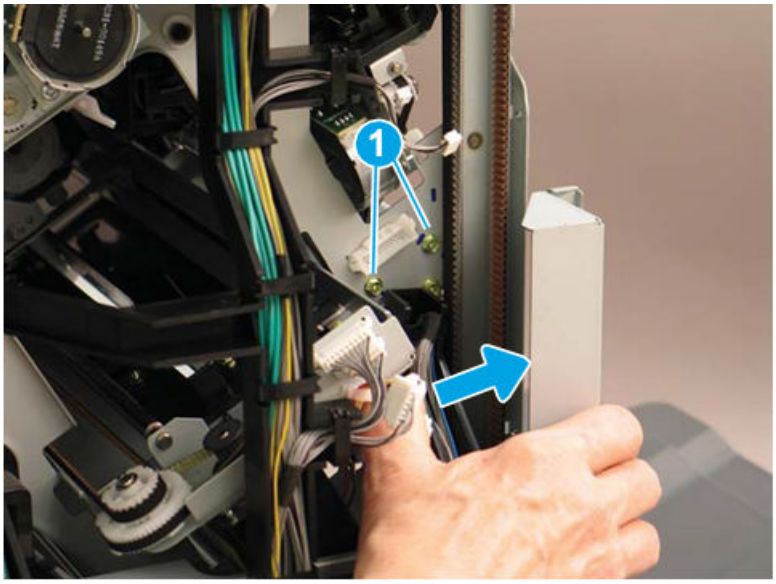
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-978 Disconnect one connector



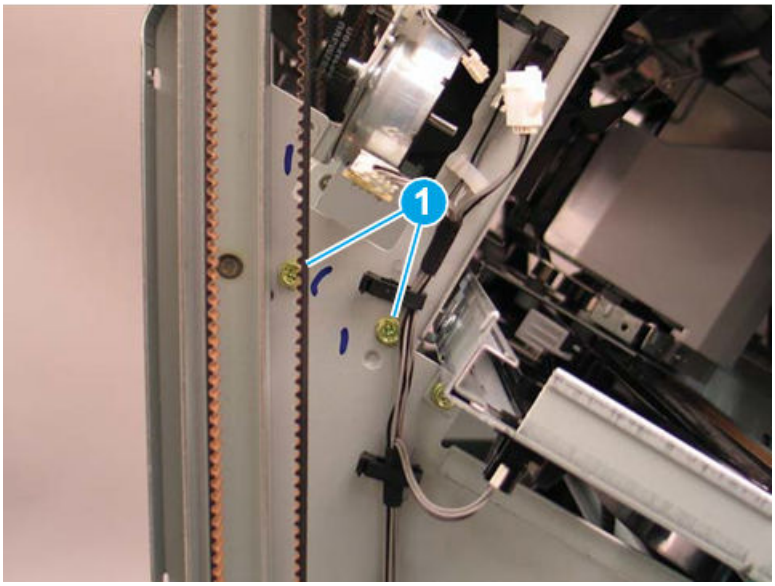
13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-979 Disconnect one connector



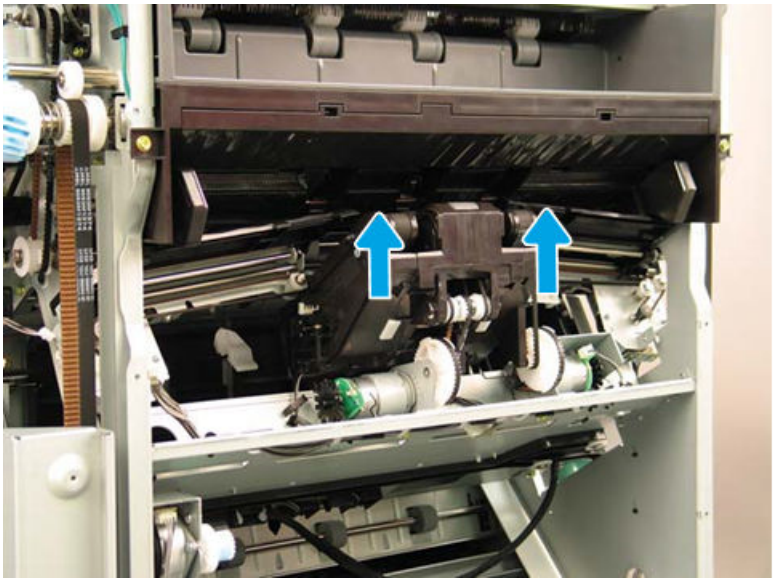
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-980 Remove two screws



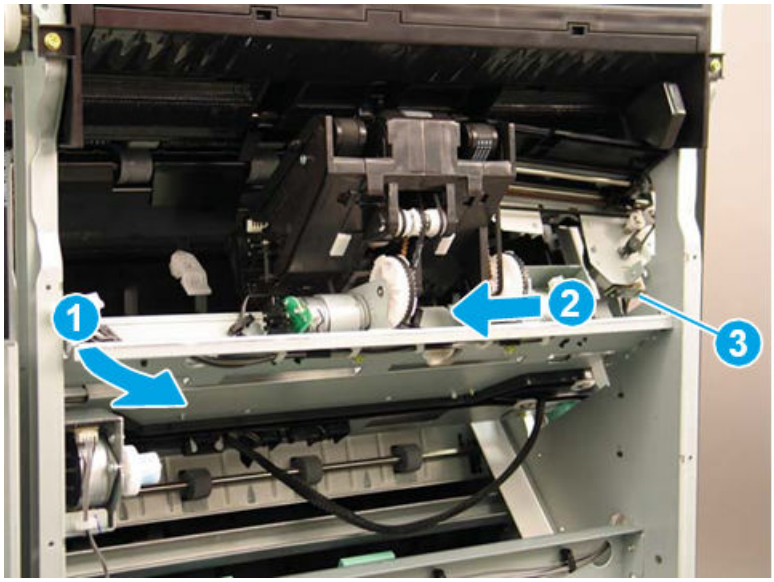
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 5-981 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 5-982 Remove the ejector unit

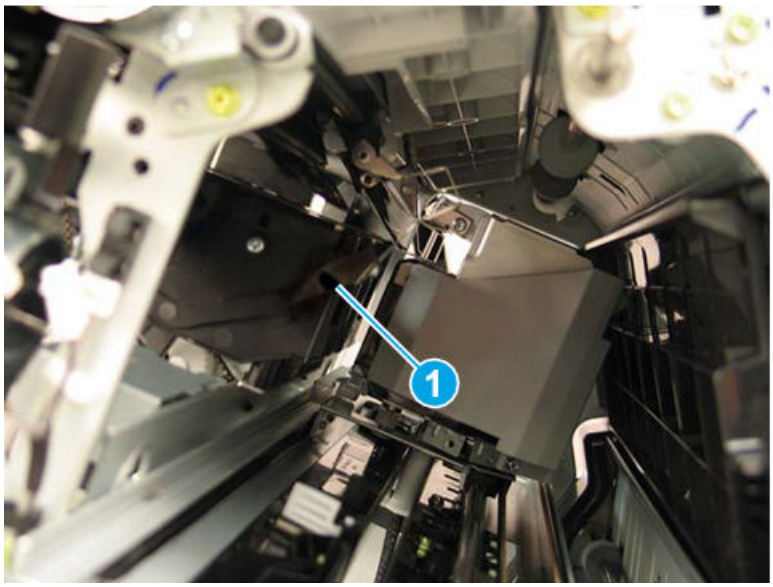


17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

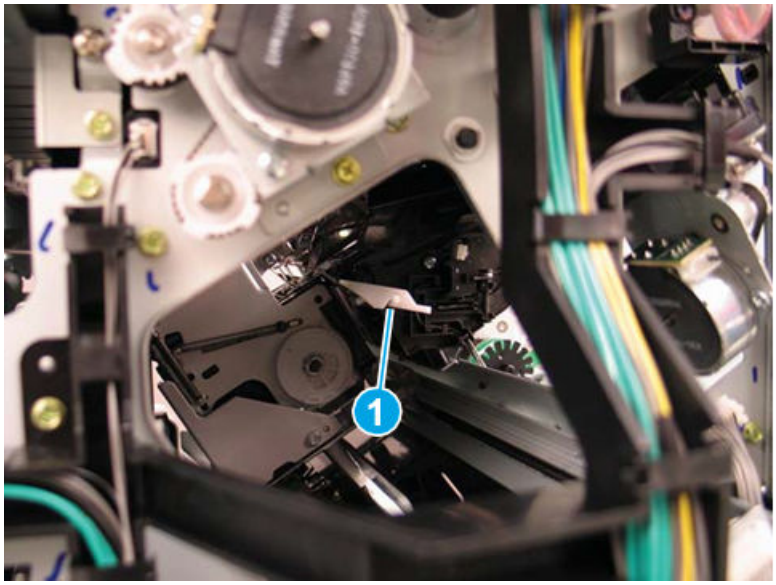
NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Ejector1

Removal and replacement: Ejector1 motor sensor (S27)

Learn how to remove and replace the ejector1 motor sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the ejector1 motor sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-127 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Ejector1 motor enor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

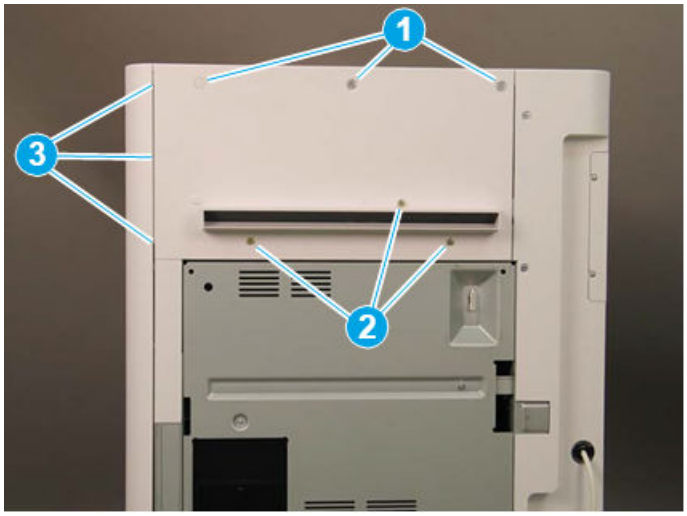
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-983 Remove the right upper cover

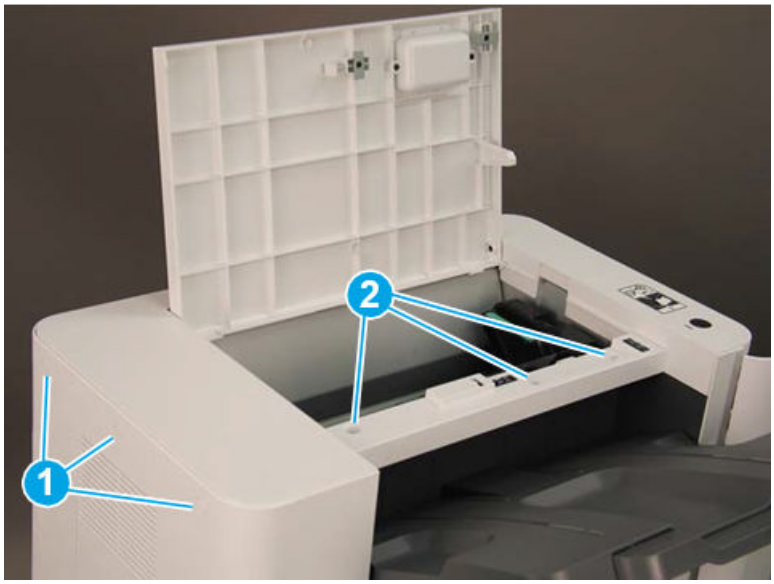


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

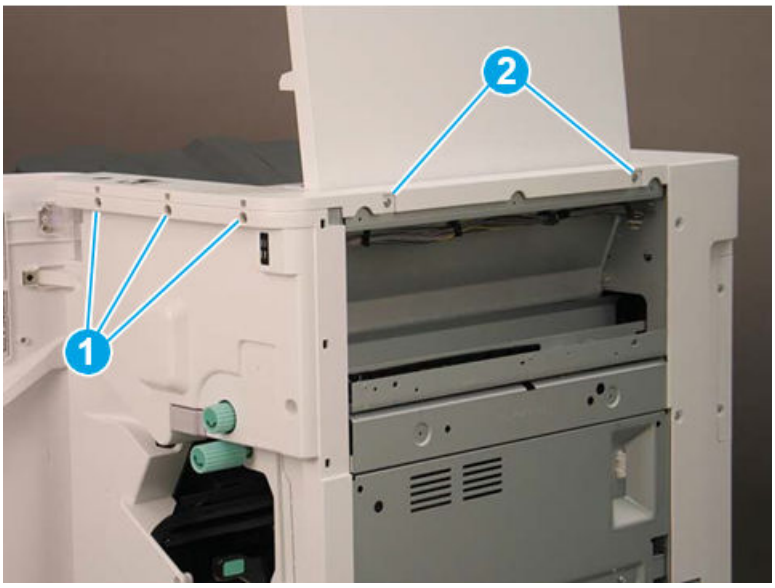
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-984 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

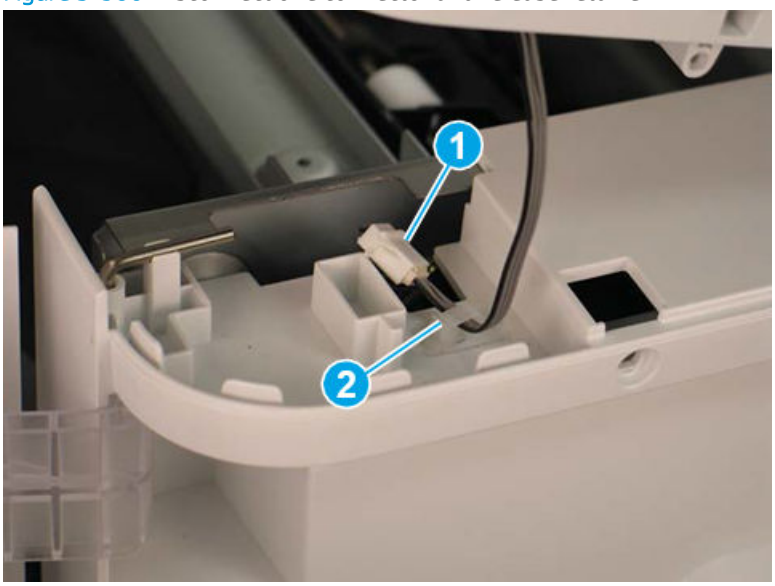
Figure 5-985 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-986 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

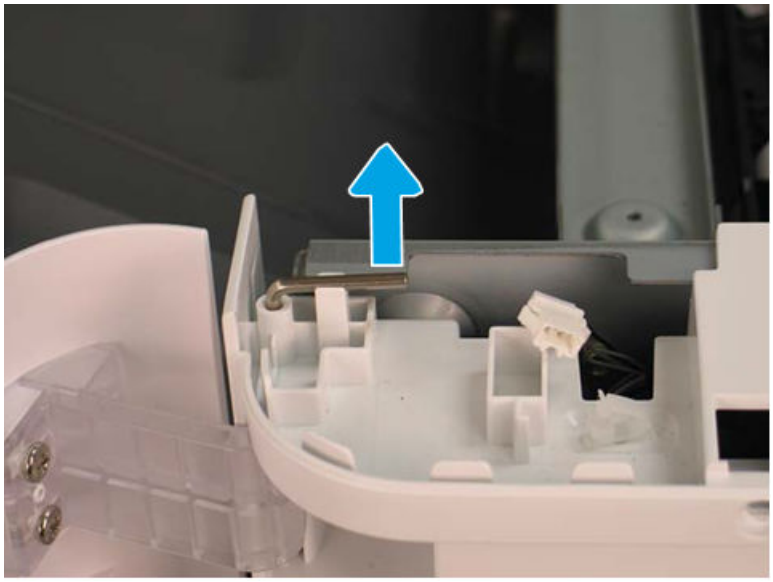


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

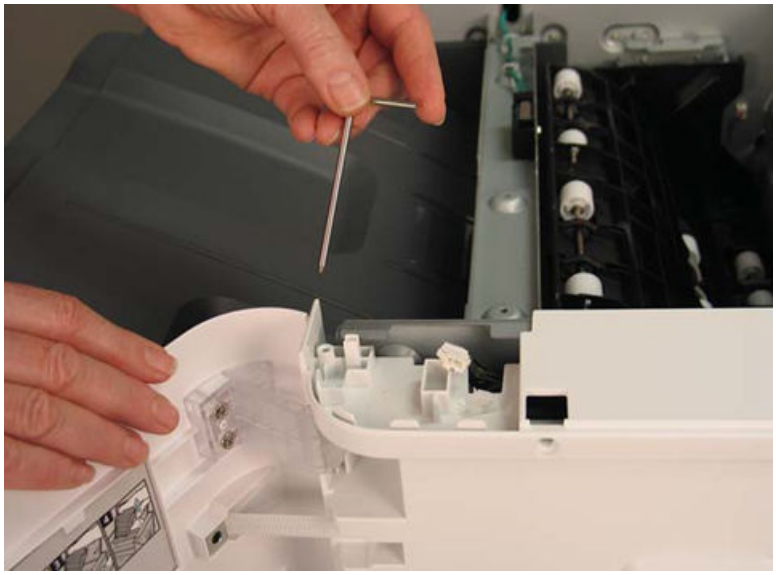
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-987 Lift the top hinge pin



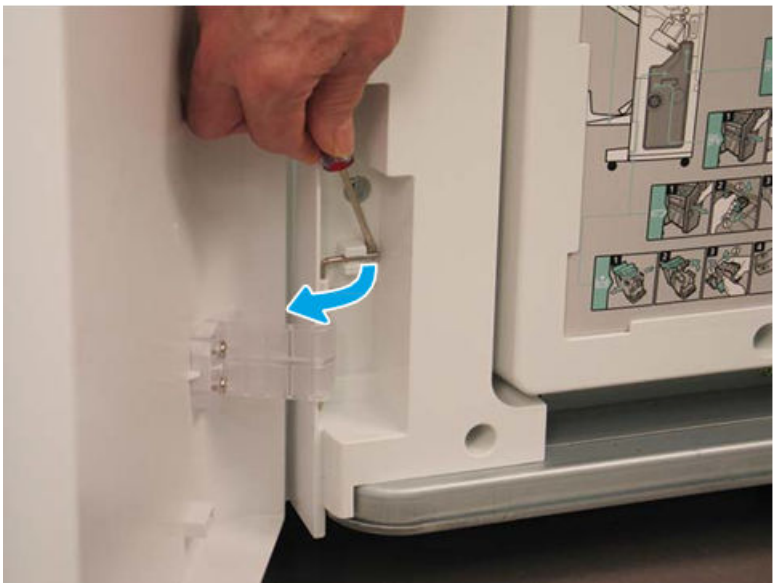
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-988 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-989 Release the lower hinge pin



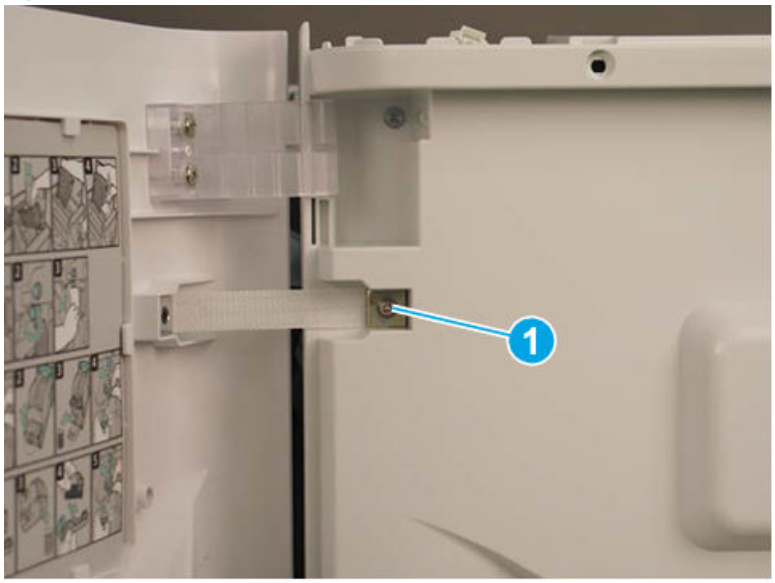
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-990 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-991 Remove the front door

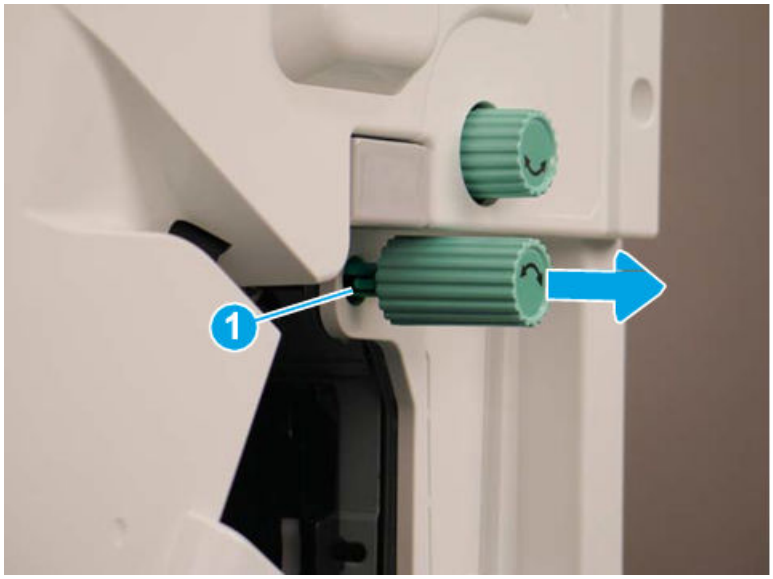


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-992 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

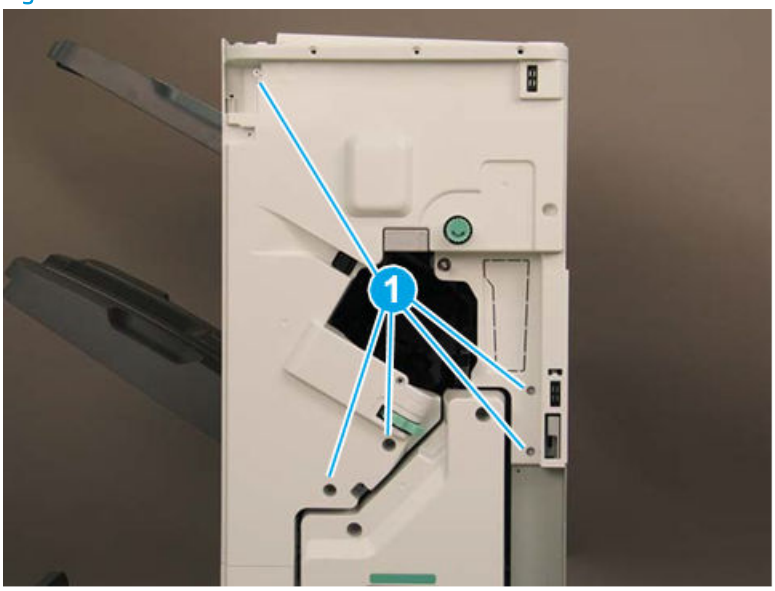
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-993 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-994 Remove the front cover

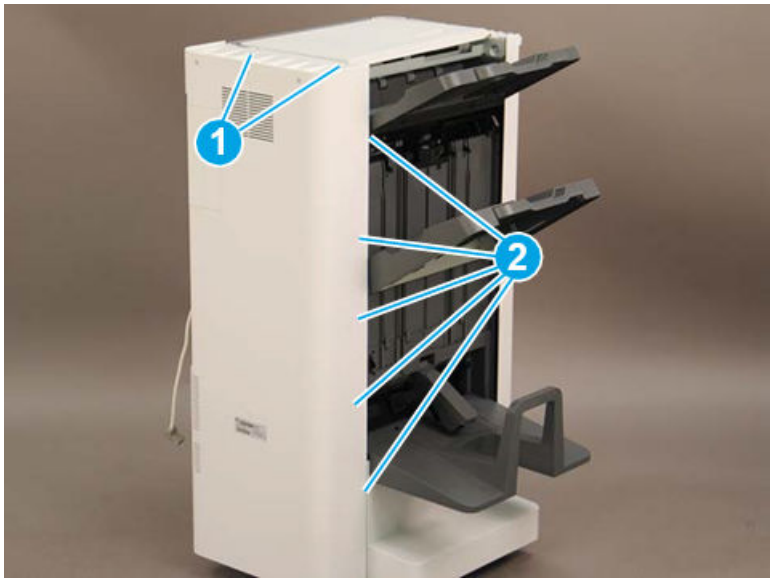


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-995 Remove seven screws

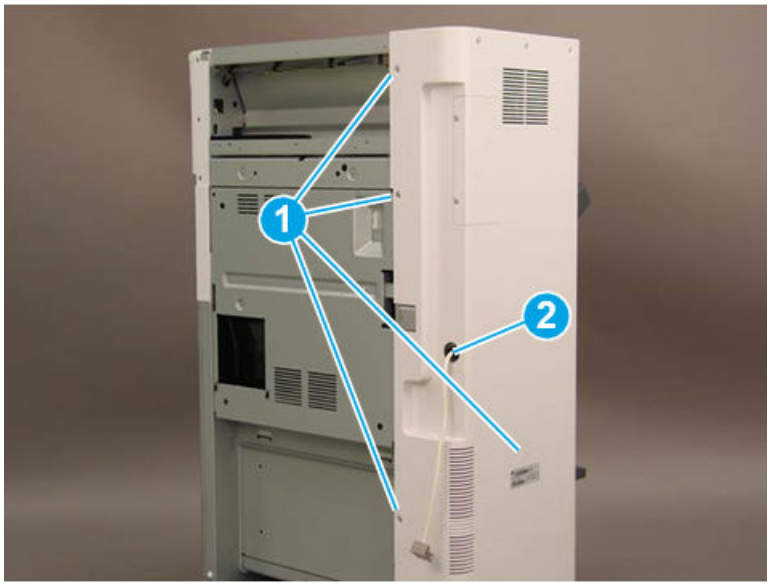


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-996 Remove the rear cover

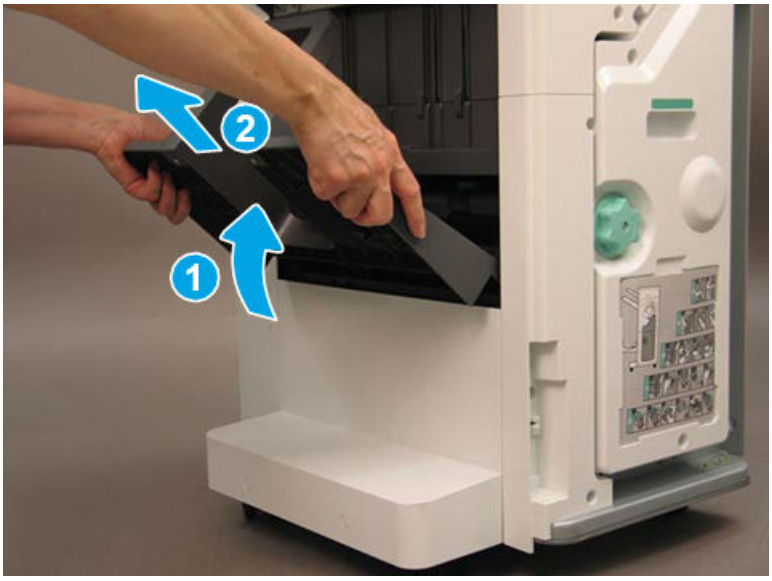


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-997 Remove the booklet output tray



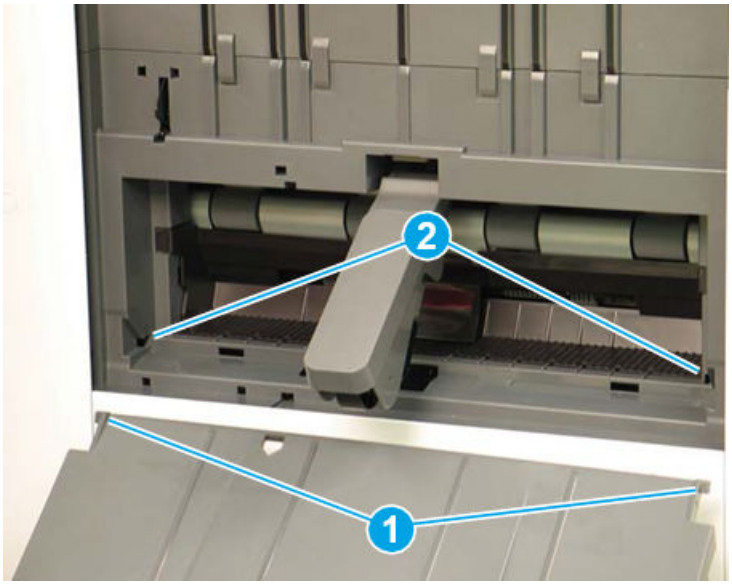
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-998 Install the booklet output tray

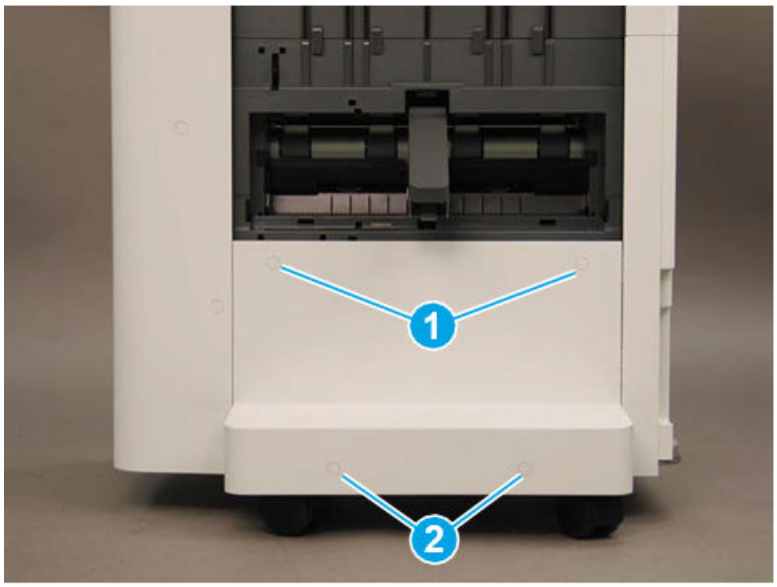


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-999 Remove four screws

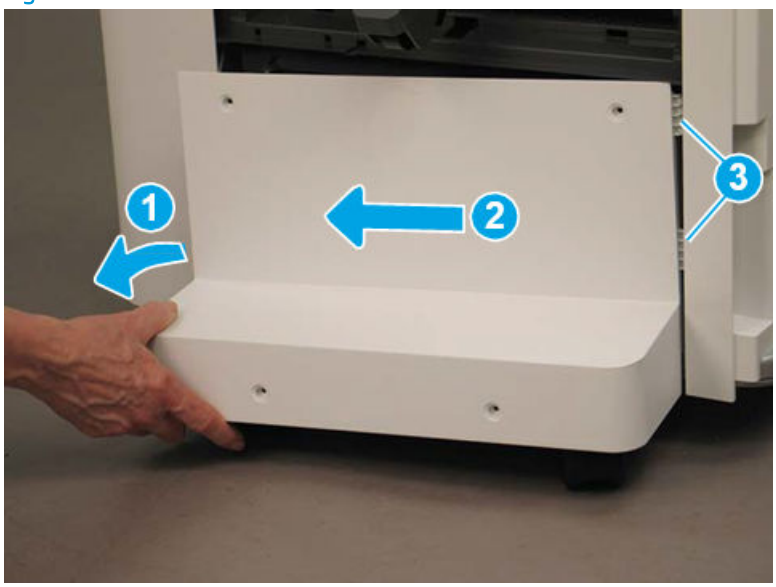


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1000 Remove the caster cover



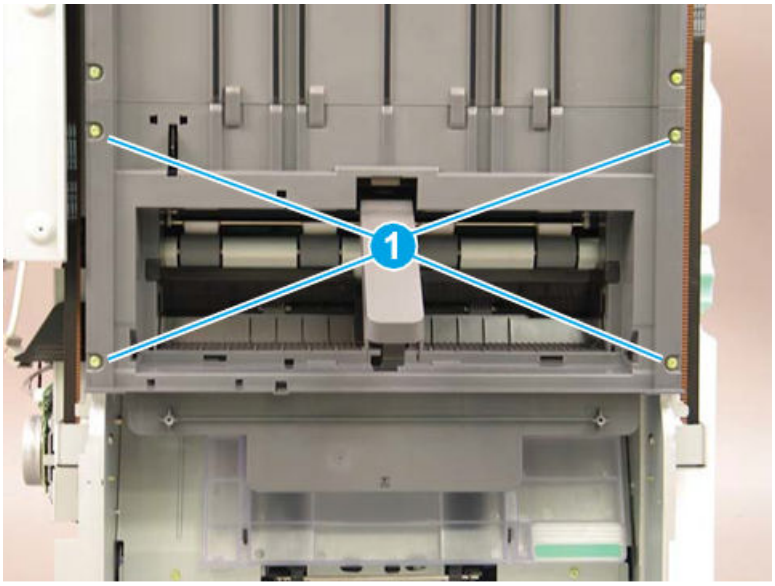
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-1001 Remove four screws

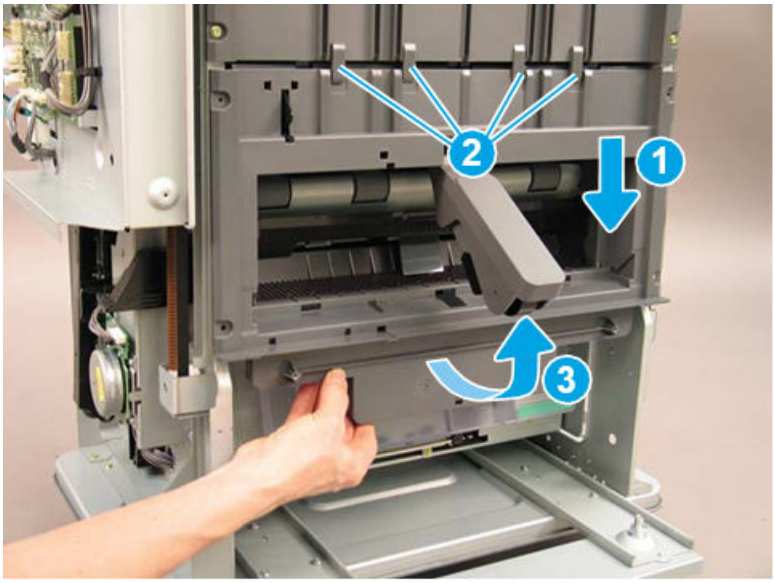


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

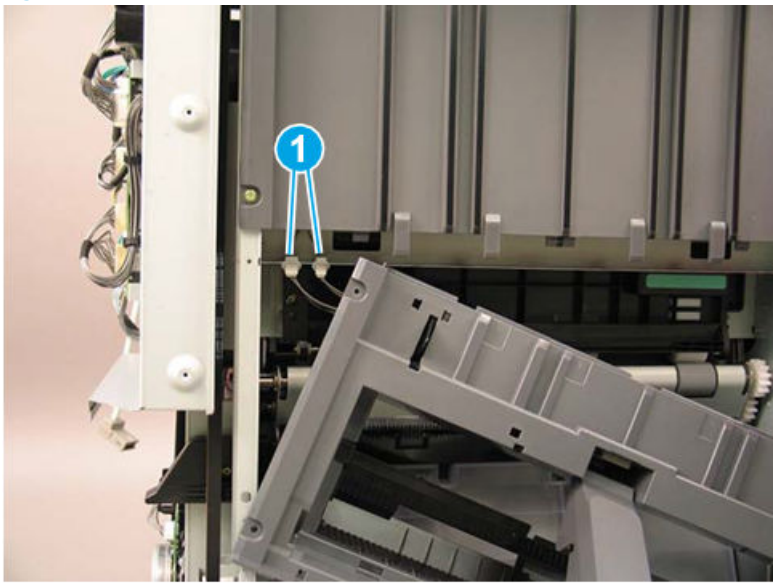
Figure 5-1002 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

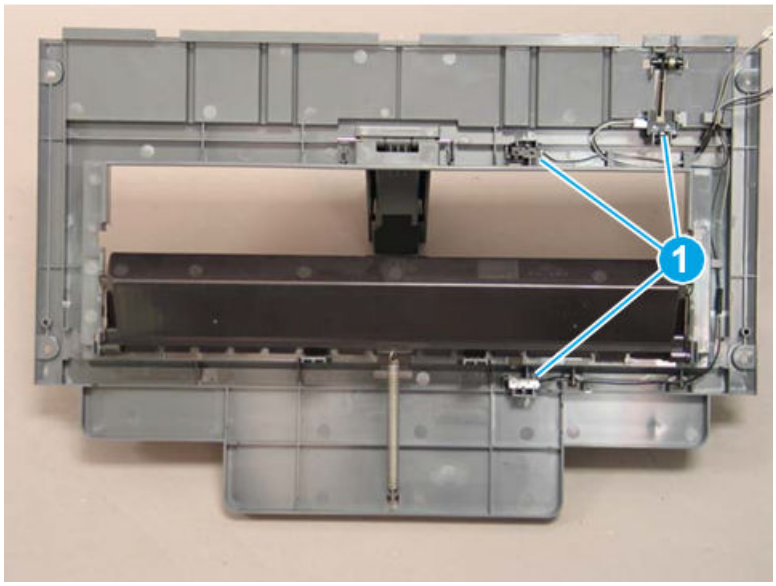
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1003 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-1004 Remove the left lower cover

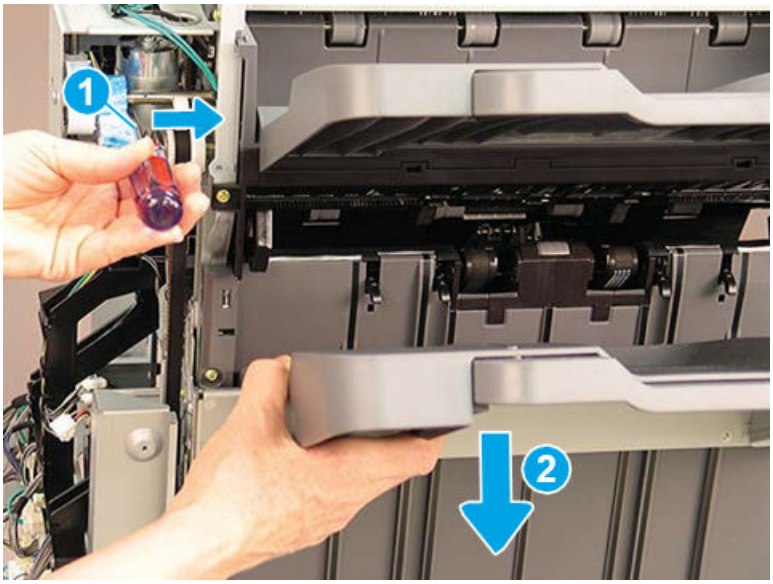


Remove the left upper cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover (finisher).

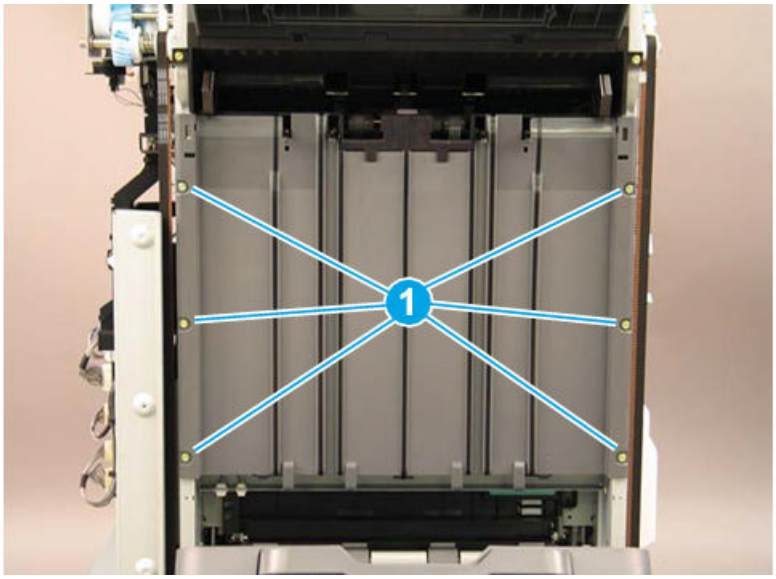
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 5-1005 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1006 Remove six screws

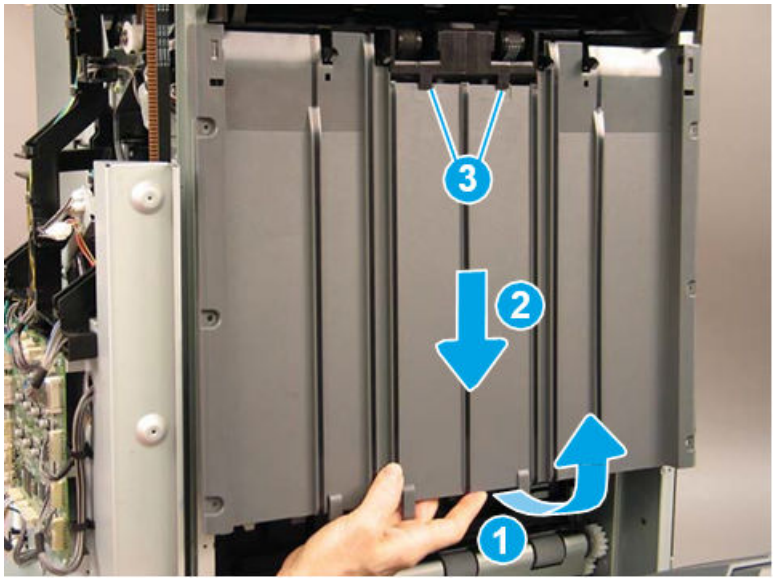


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away fromthe finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

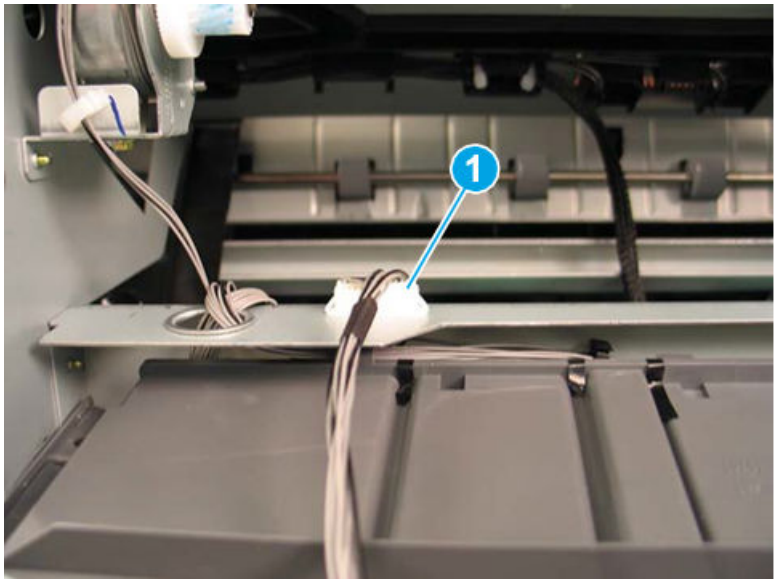
Figure 5-1007 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

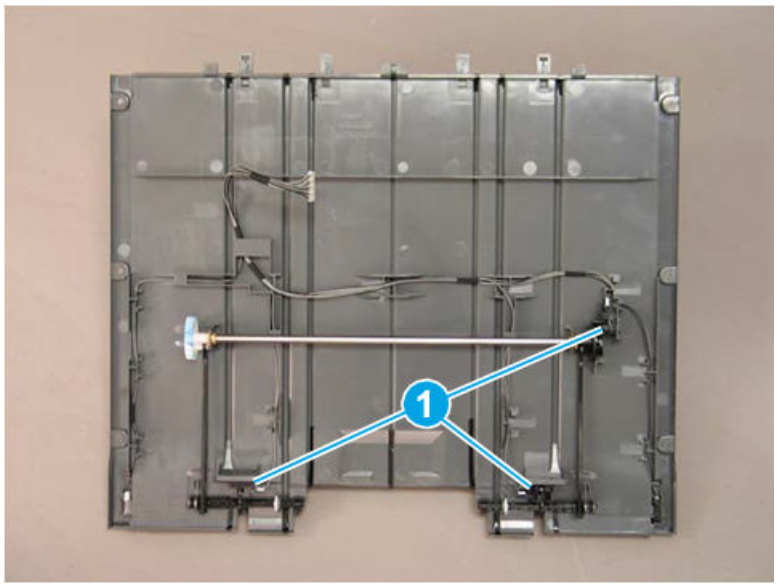
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1008 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the left upper cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left upper cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-1009 Remove the left upper cover

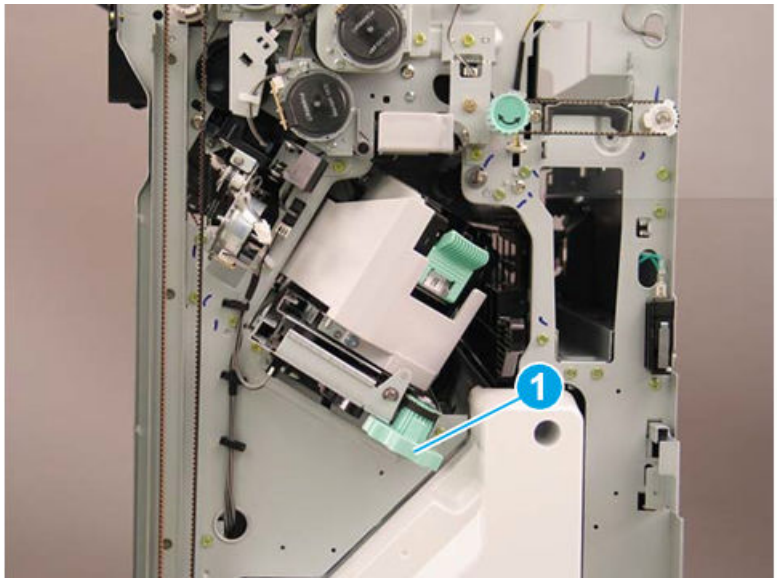


Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the ejector unit (finisher).

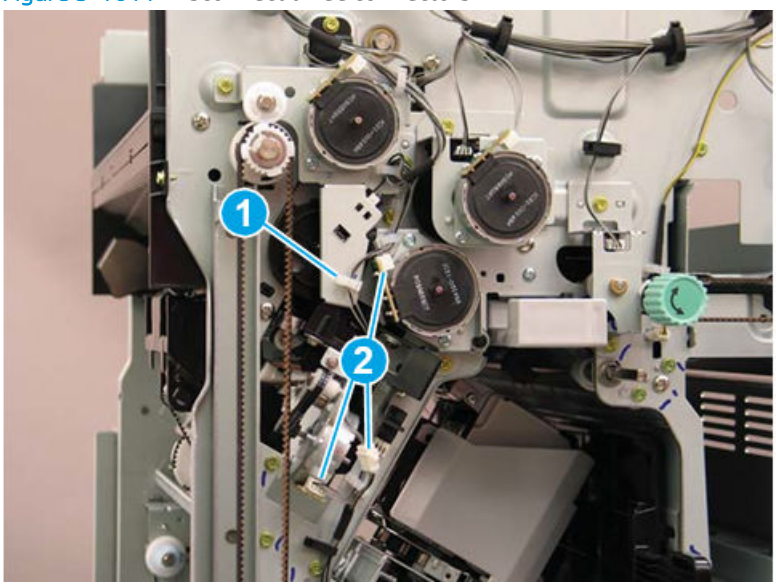
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 5-1010 Move the staple unit to the center



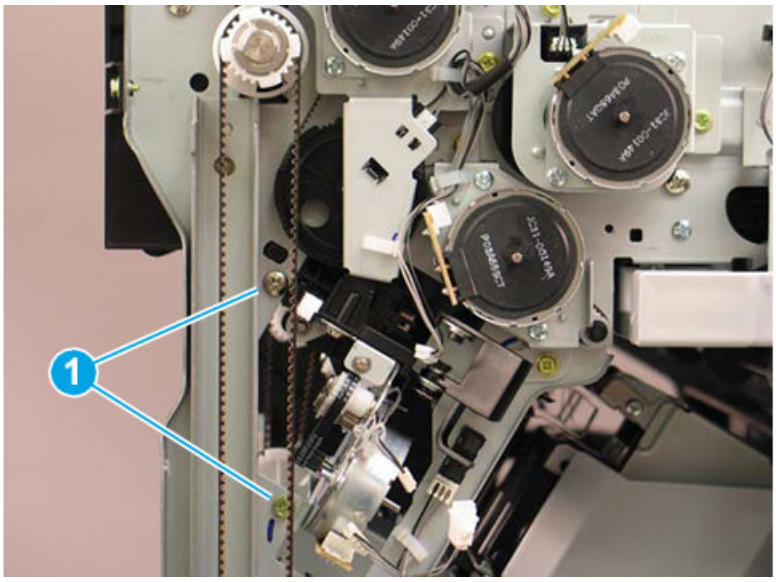
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 5-1011 Disconnect three connectors



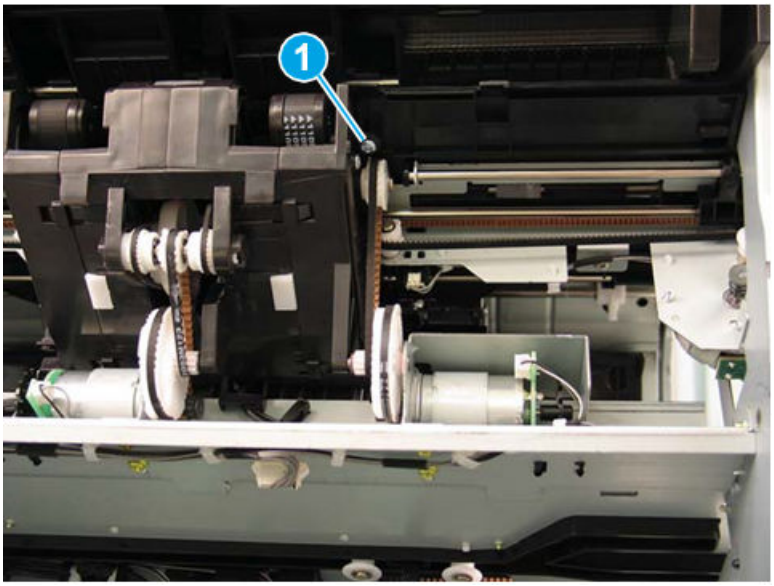
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1012 Remove two screws



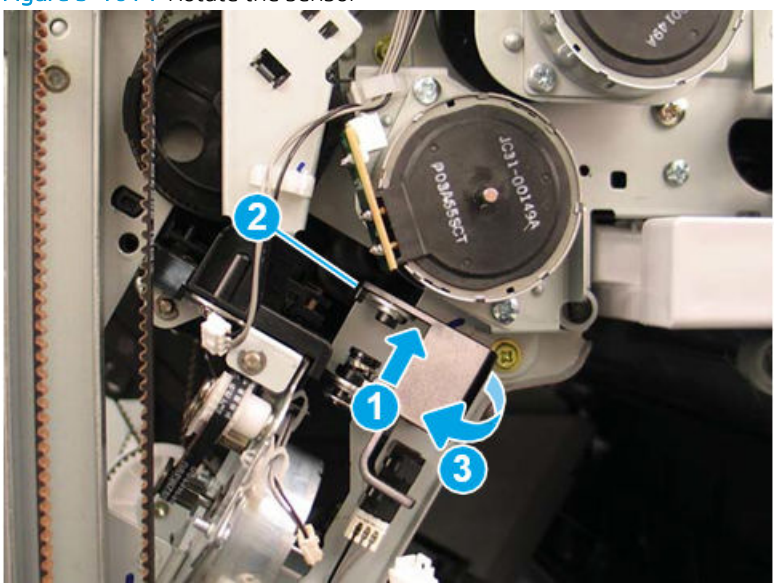
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1013 Remove one screw



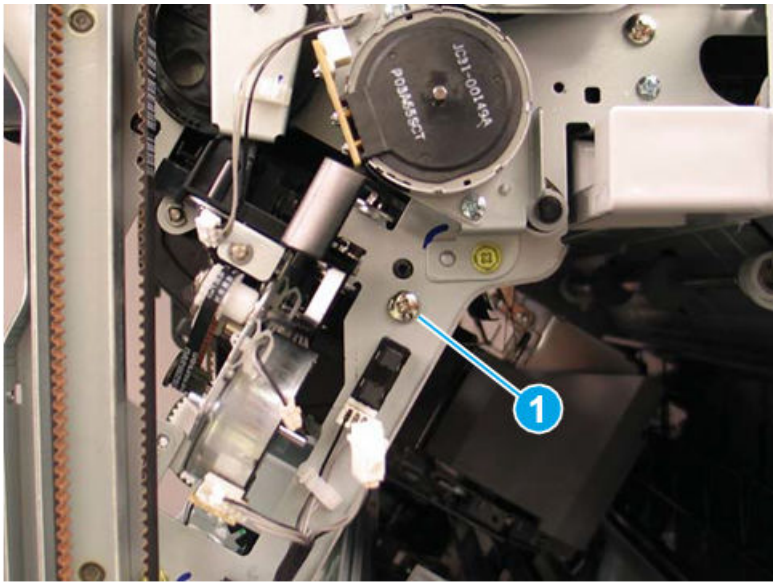
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 5-1014 Rotate the sensor



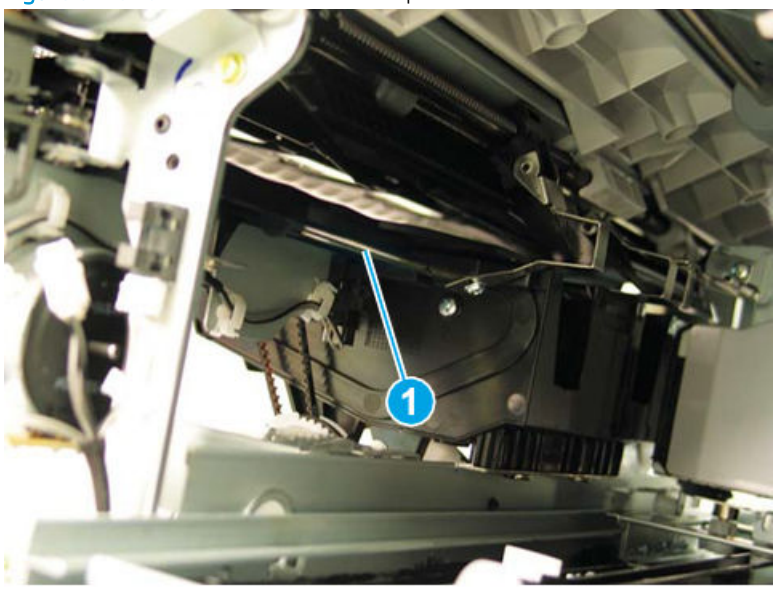
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1015 Remove one screw



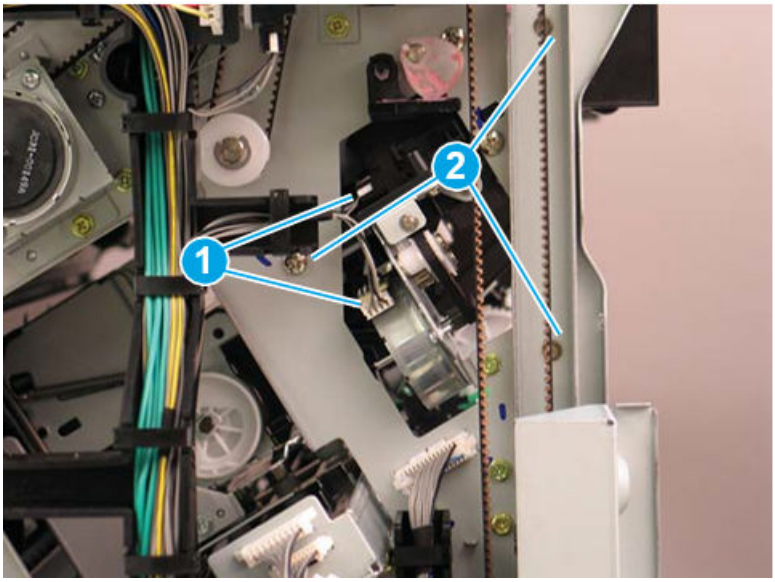
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 5-1016 Remove the front tamper shaft



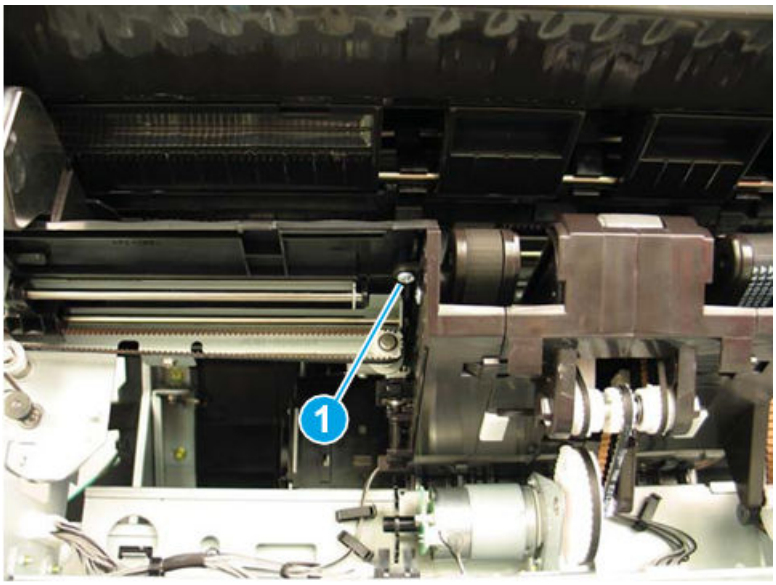
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-1017 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



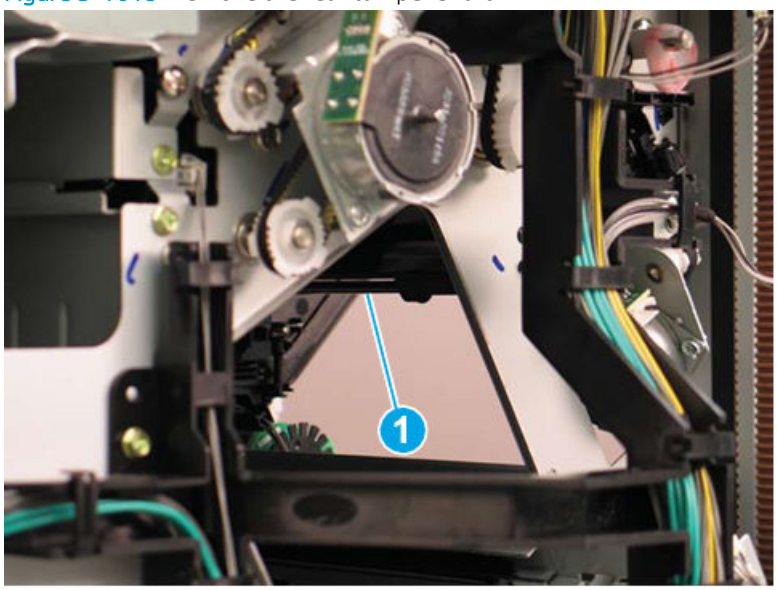
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1018 Remove one screw



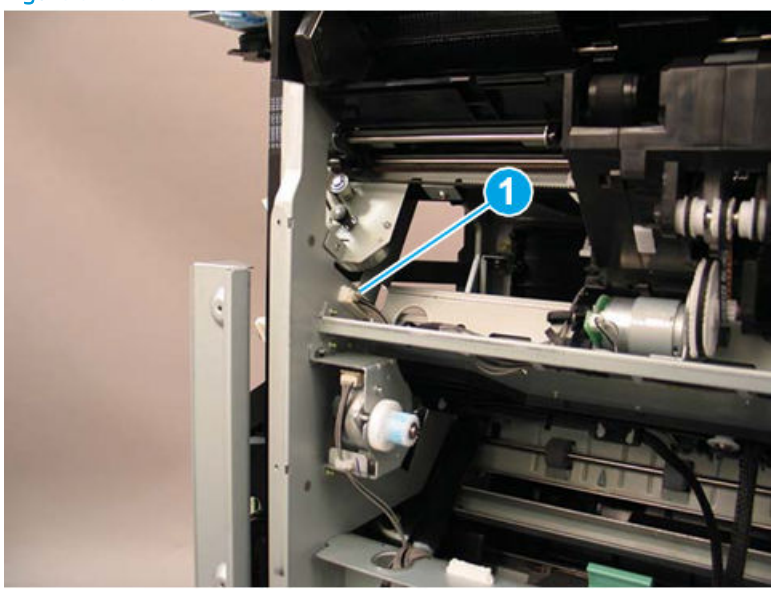
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 5-1019 Remove the rear tamper shaft



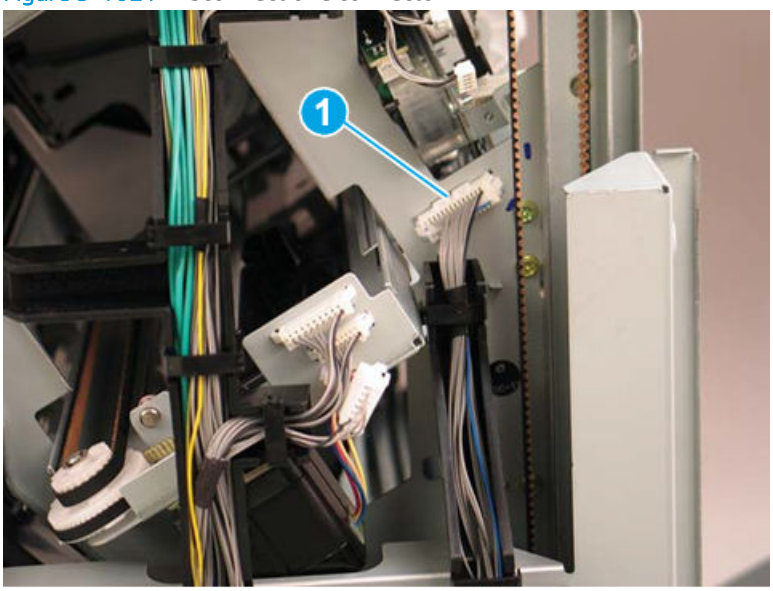
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-1020 Disconnect one connector



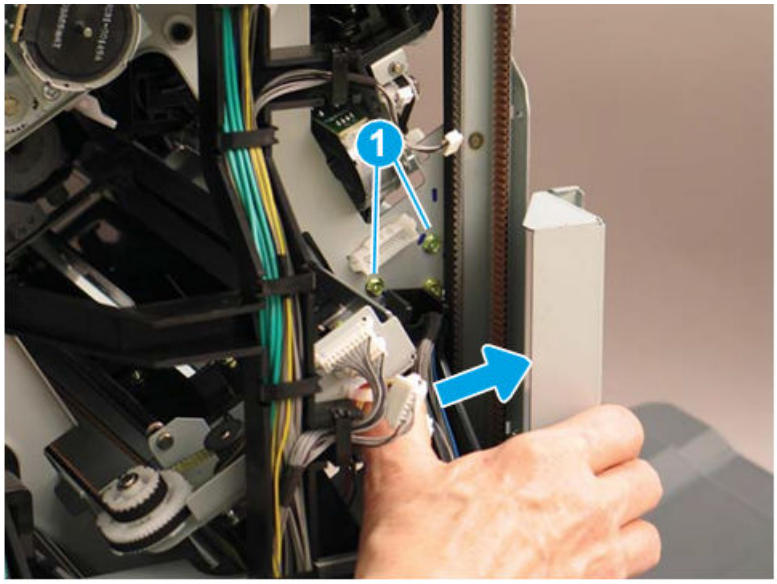
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-1021 Disconnect one connector



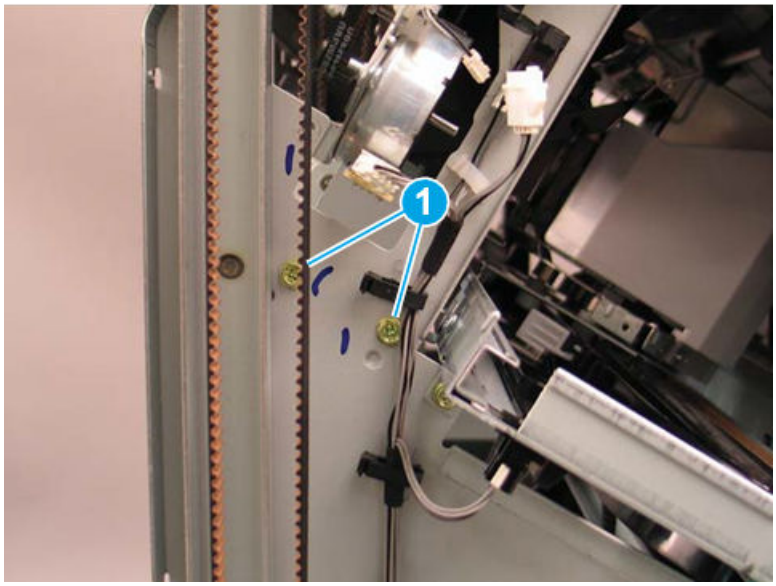
13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1022 Disconnect one connector



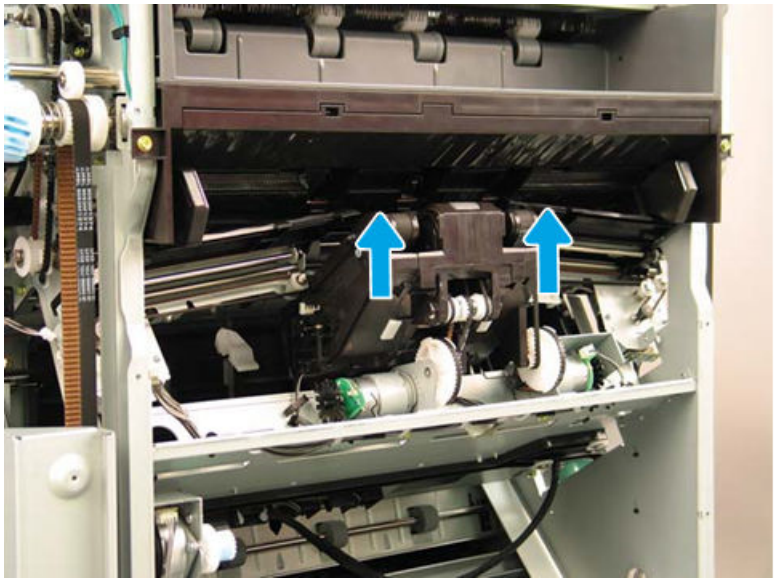
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1023 Remove two screws



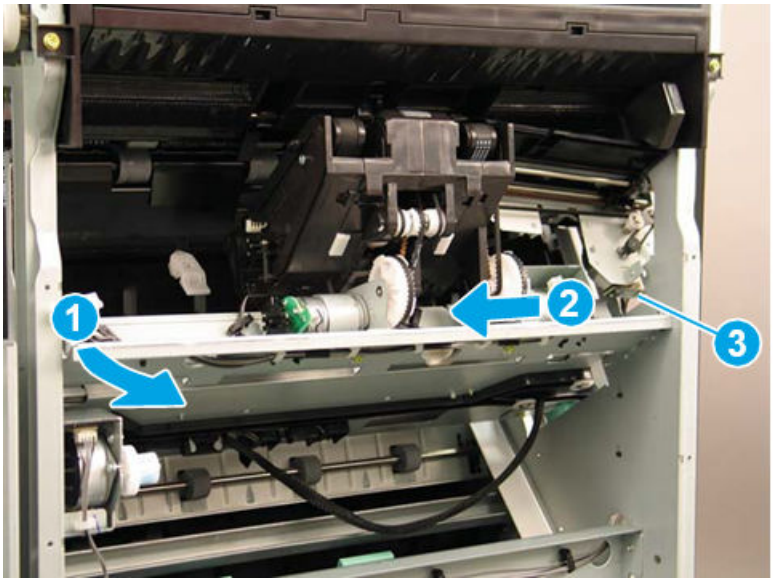
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 5-1024 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 5-1025 Remove the ejector unit

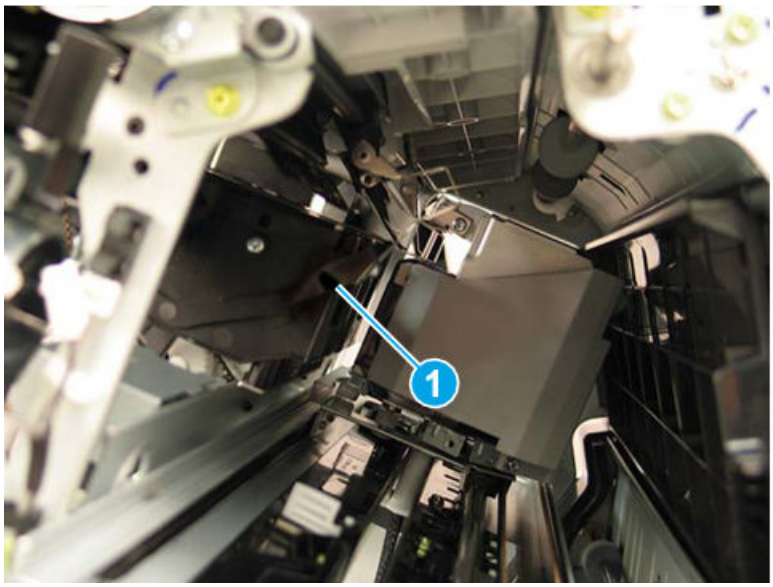


17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

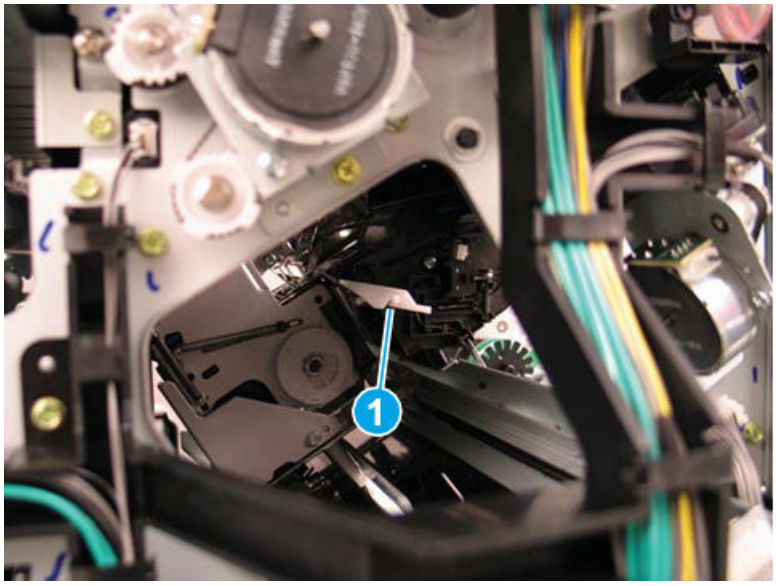
NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

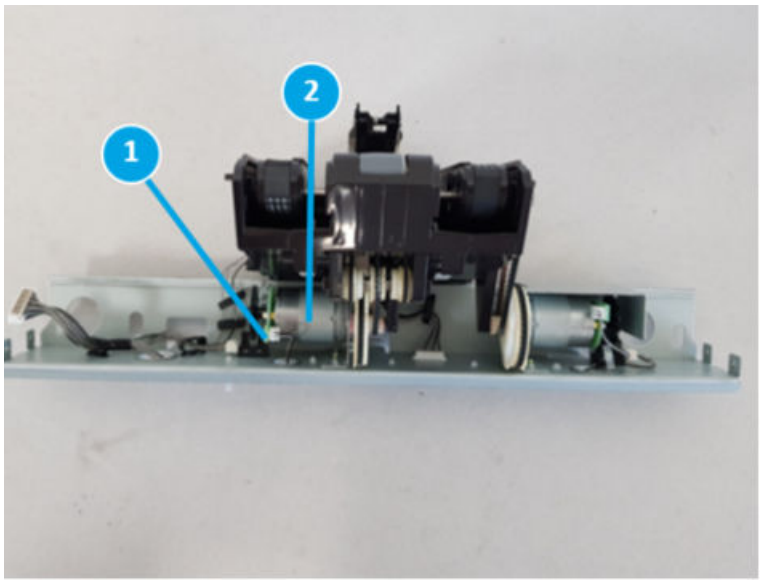


Remove the ejector1 motor sensor(S27)

Follow these steps to remove the ejector1 motor sensor(S27).

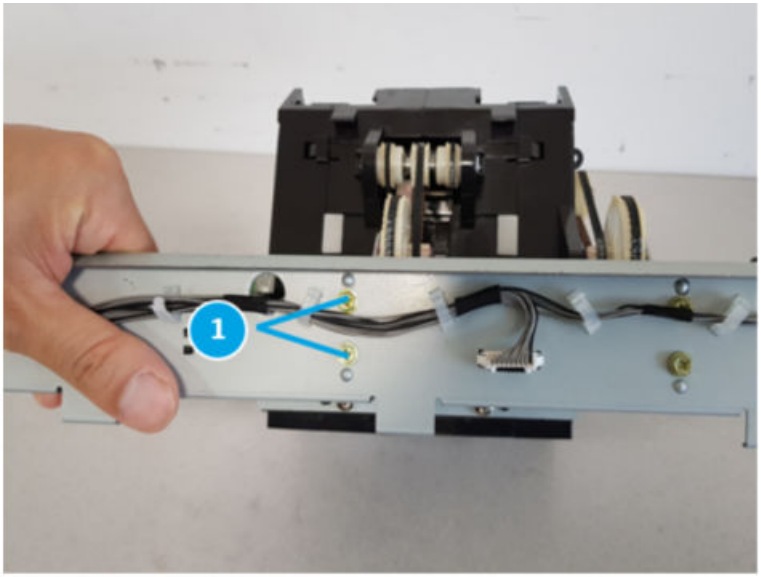
1. Disconnect the connector(callout 1) from ejector1 motor(callout 2, M6) of ejector unit.

Figure 5-1026 Disconnect the connector



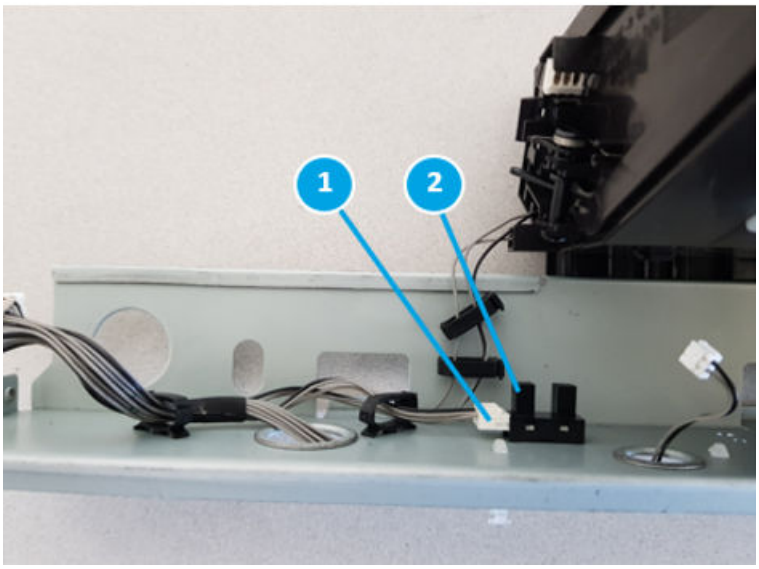
2. Remove two screws(callout 1).

Figure 5-1027 Remove two screws



3. Remove the ejector1 motor from ejector unit, disconnect the connector(callout 1), and then remove the ejector1 motor sensor(S27, callout 2)

Figure 5-1028 Remove the ejector1 motor sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Ejector1 motor (M6)

Learn how to remove and replace the ejector1 motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the ejector1 motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-128 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01168A	Ejector1 motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

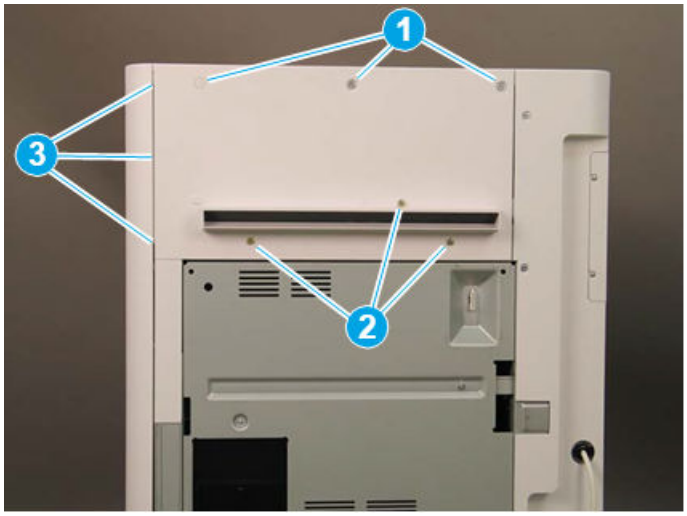
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1029 Remove the right upper cover

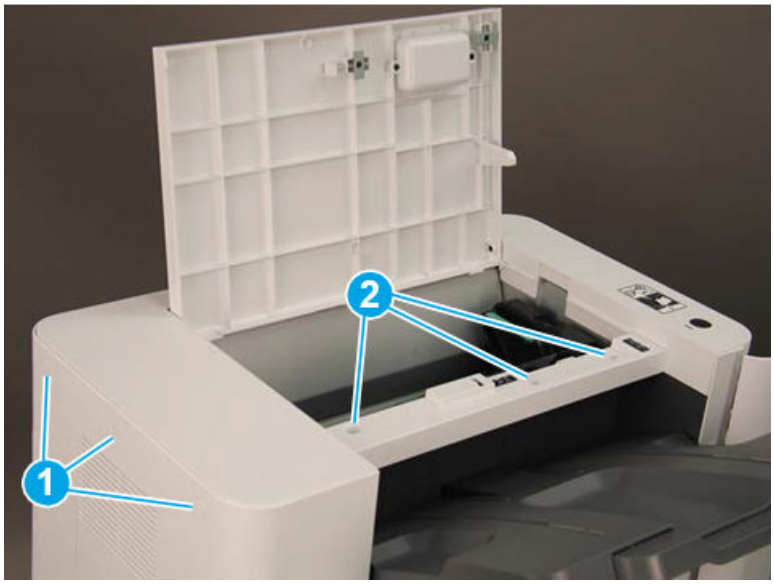


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

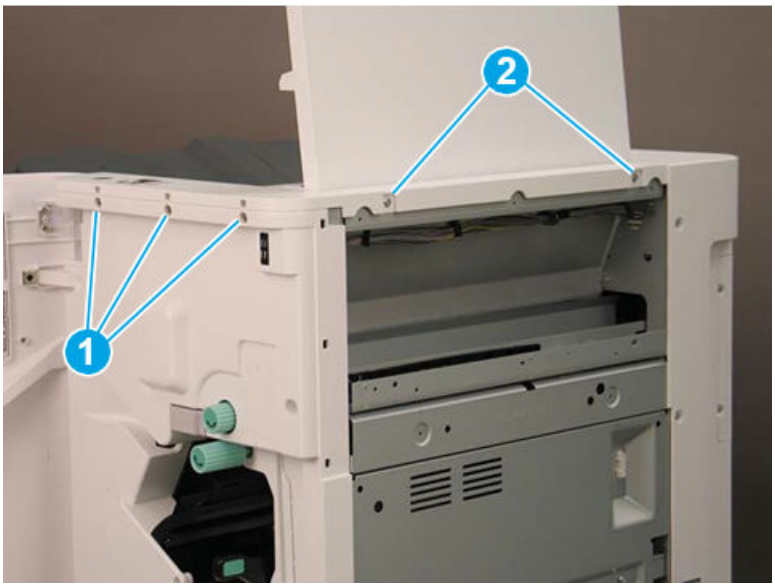
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1030 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

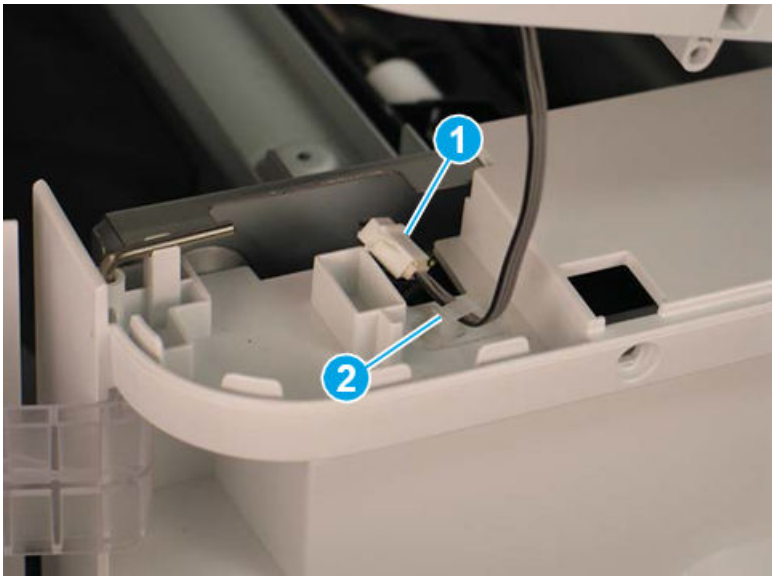
Figure 5-1031 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1032 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

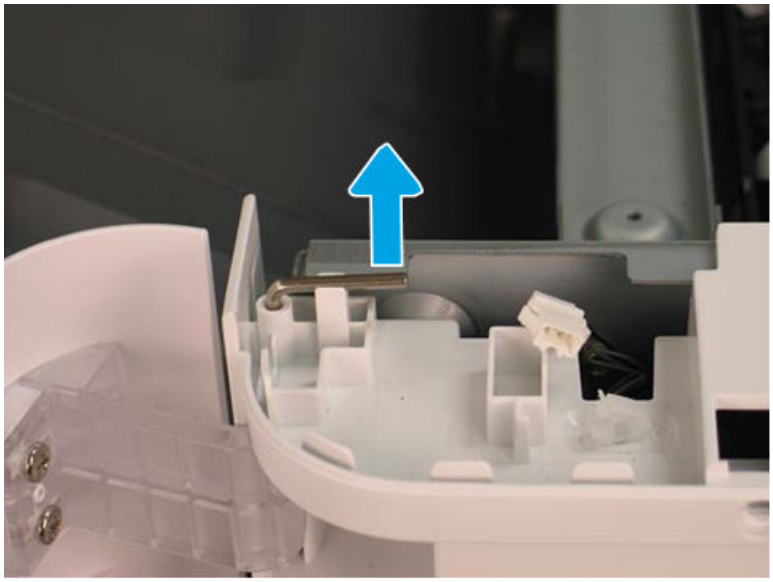


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

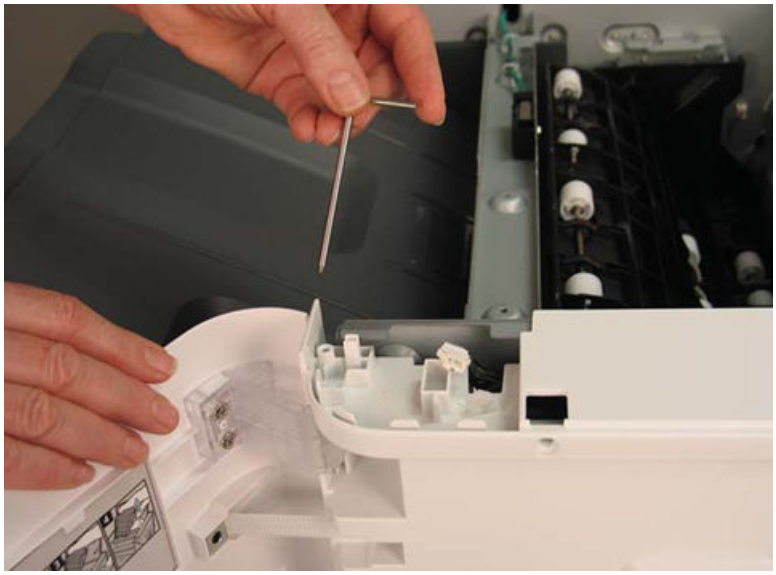
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-1033 Lift the top hinge pin



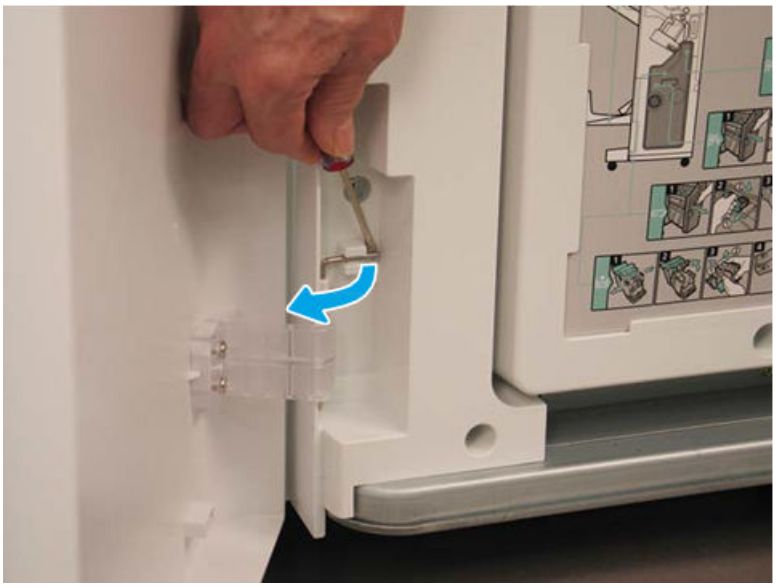
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-1034 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1035 Release the lower hinge pin



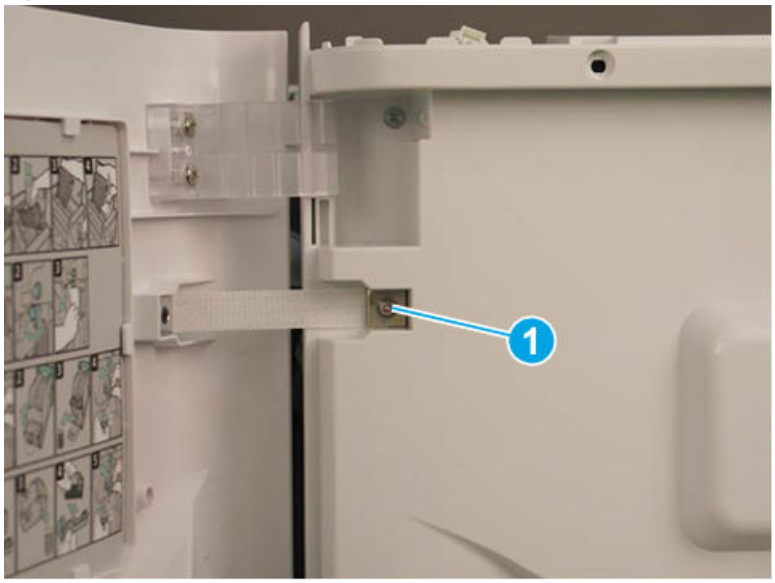
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-1036 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1037 Remove the front door

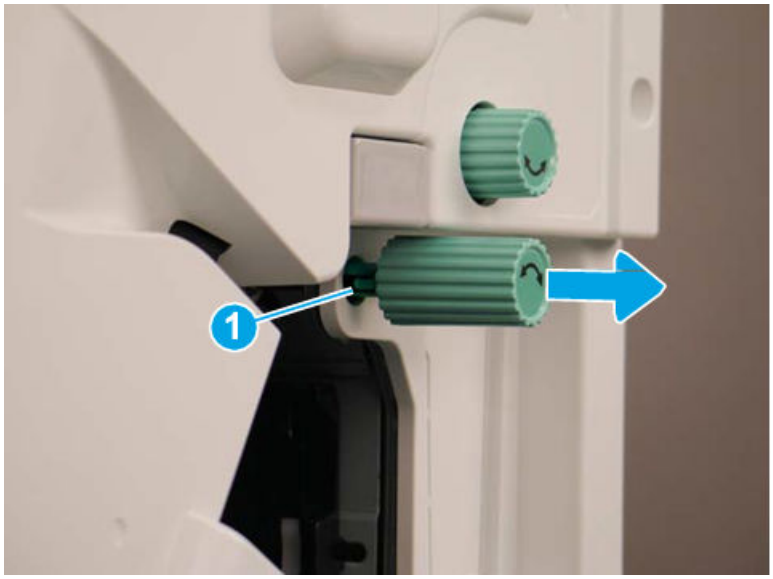


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-1038 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

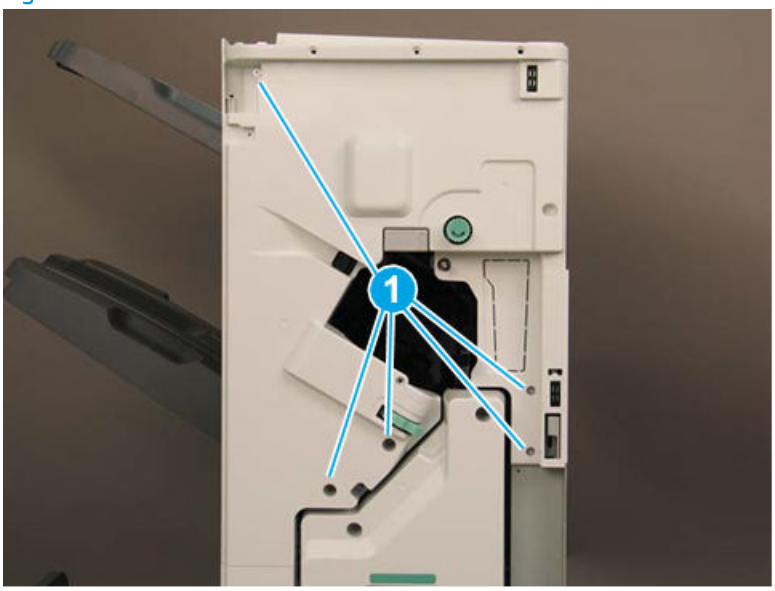
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-1039 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1040 Remove the front cover

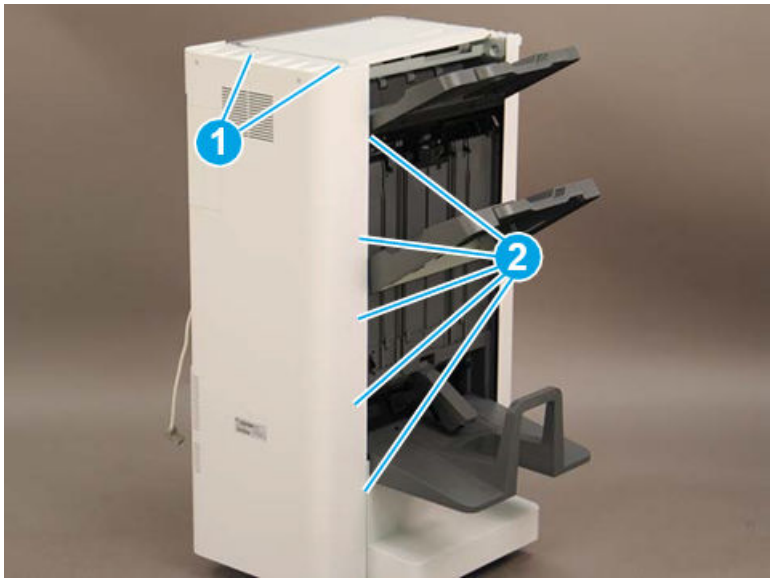


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1041 Remove seven screws

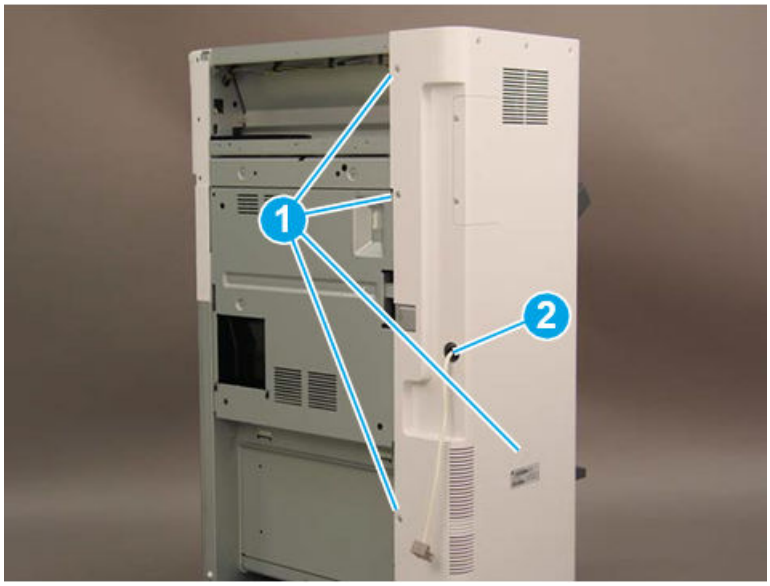


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1042 Remove the rear cover

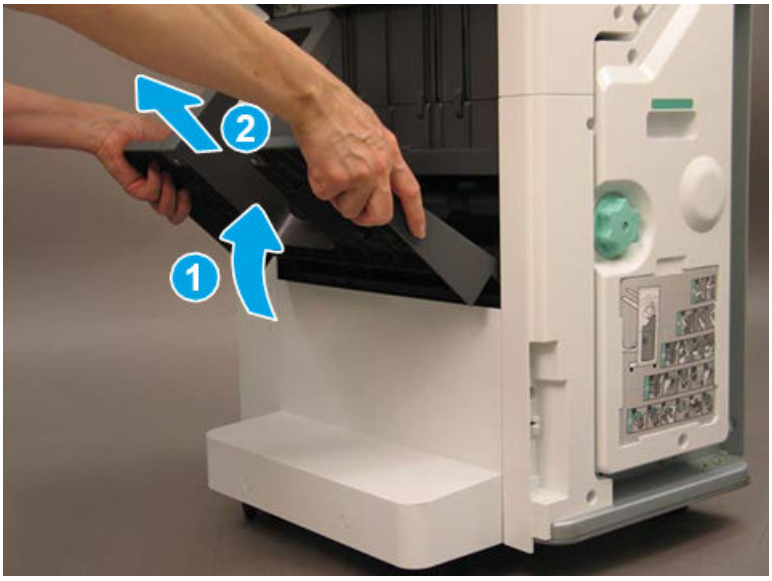


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1043 Remove the booklet output tray



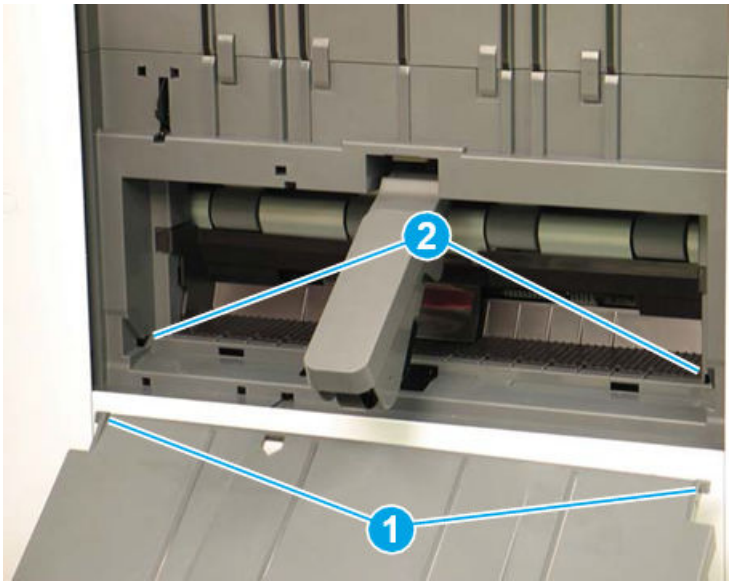
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-1044 Install the booklet output tray

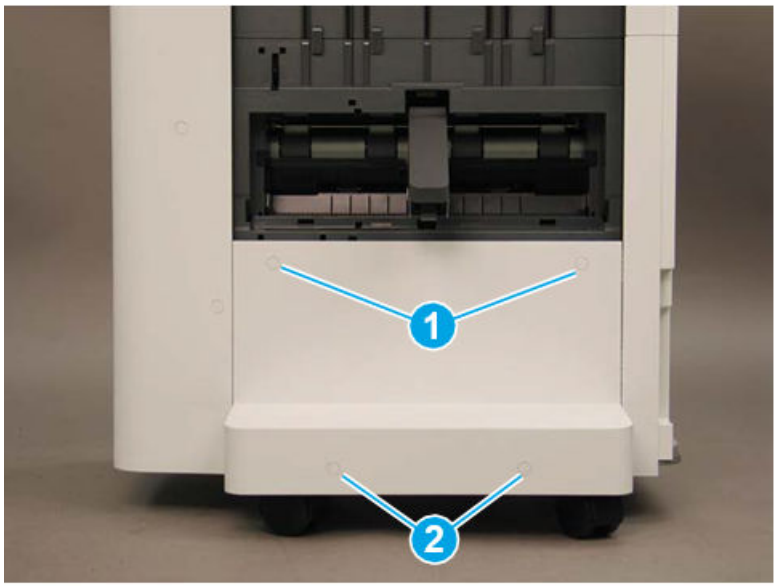


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-1045 Remove four screws

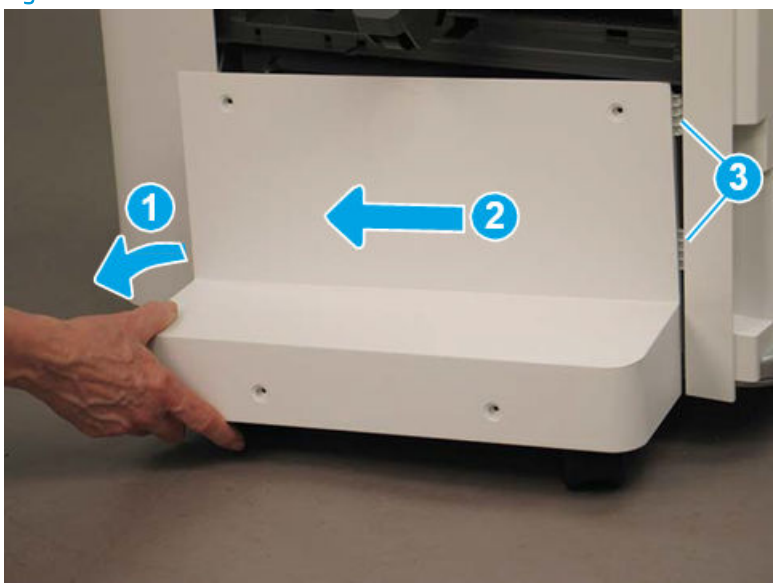


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1046 Remove the caster cover



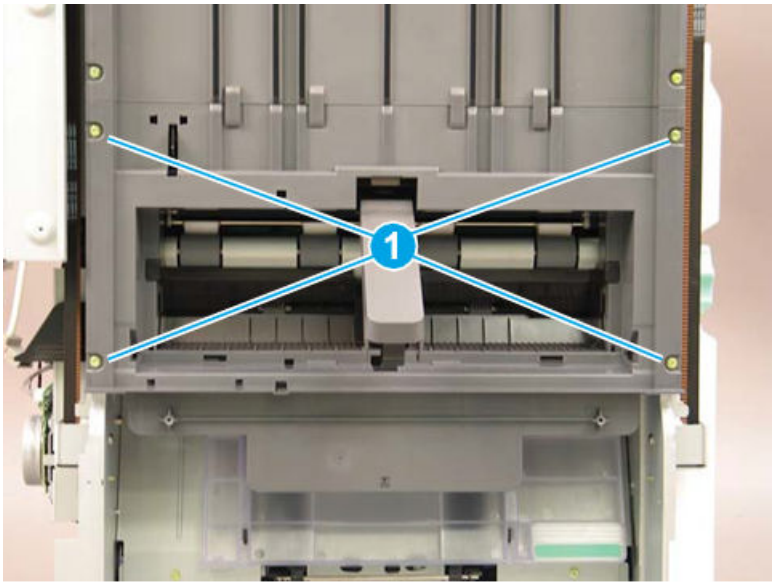
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-1047 Remove four screws

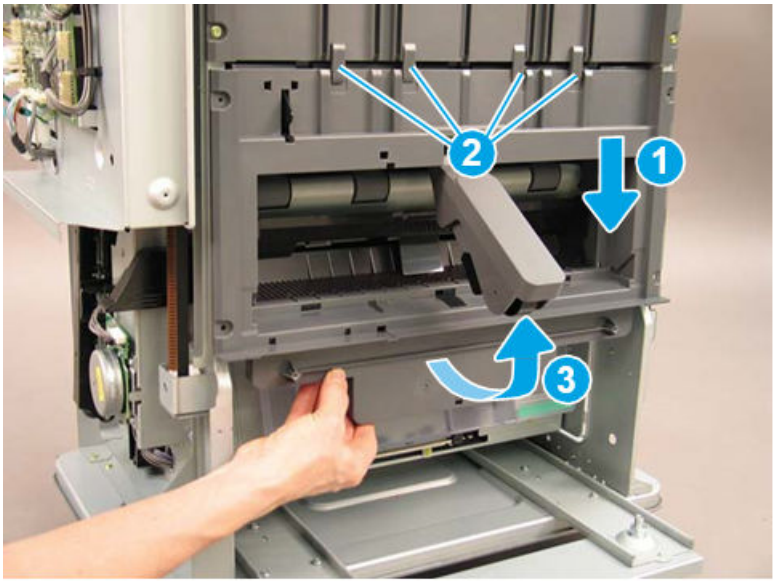


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

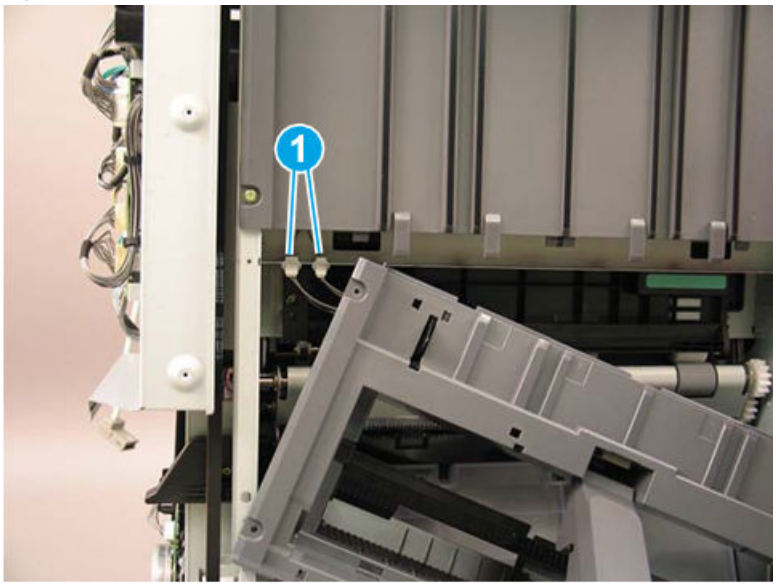
Figure 5-1048 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

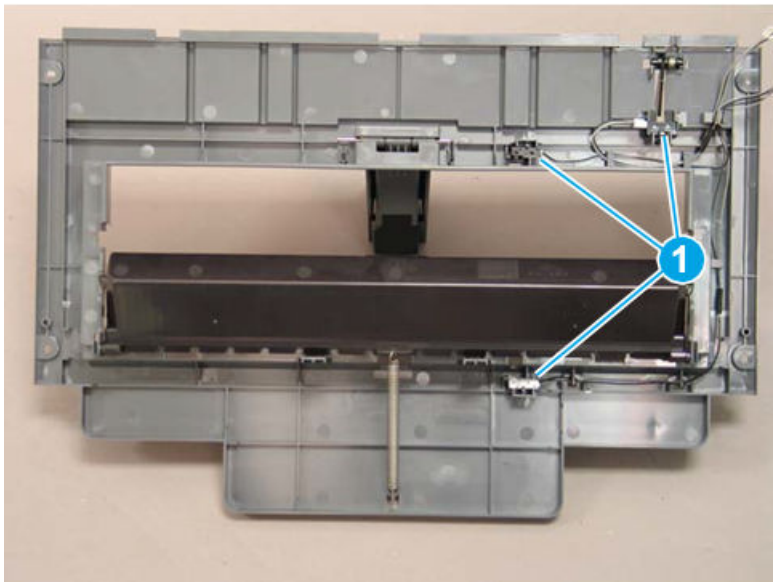
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1049 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-1050 Remove the left lower cover

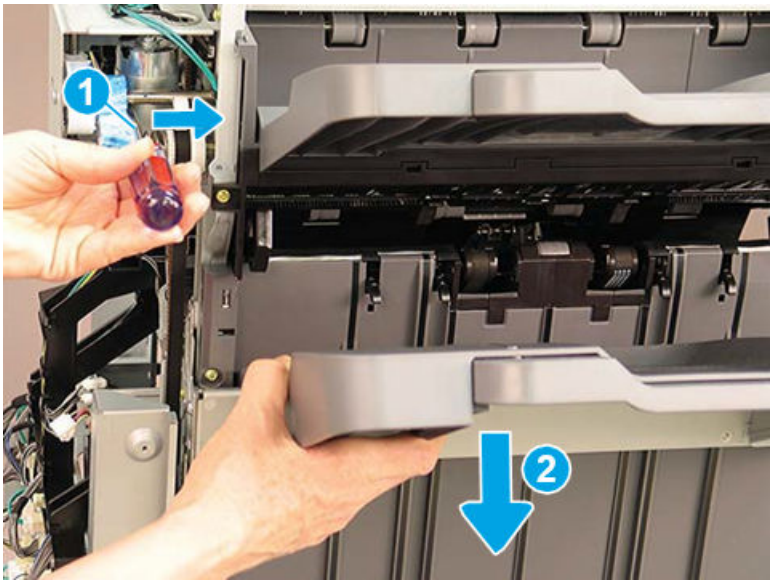


Remove the left upper cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover (finisher).

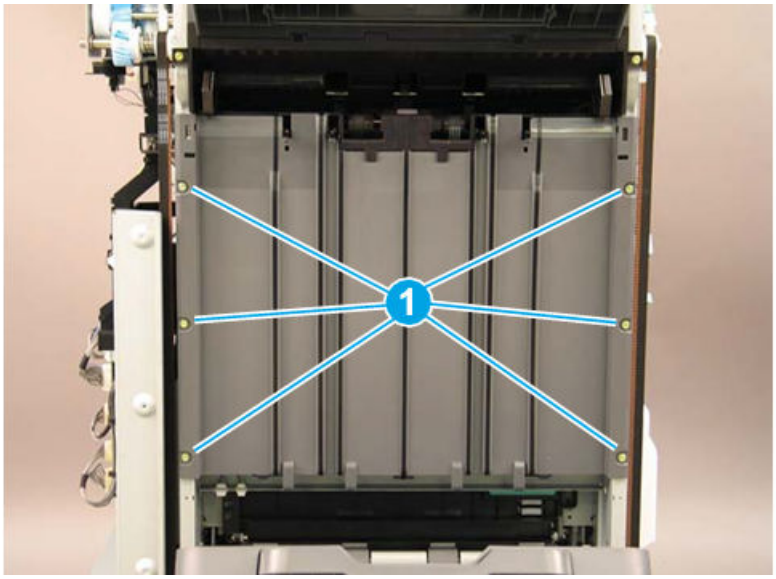
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 5-1051 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1052 Remove six screws

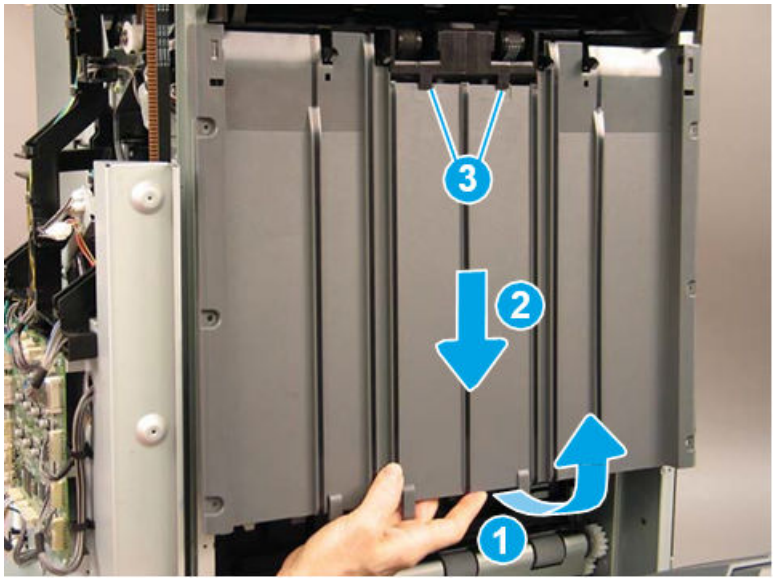


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away fromthe finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

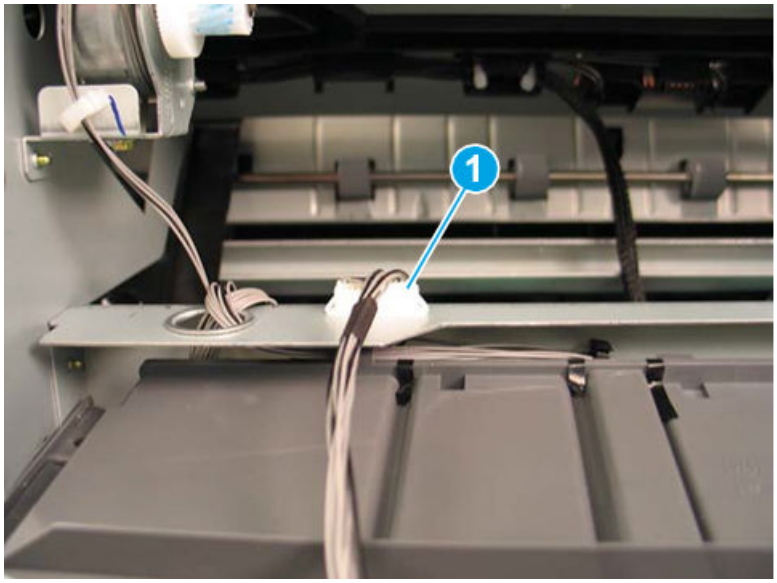
Figure 5-1053 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

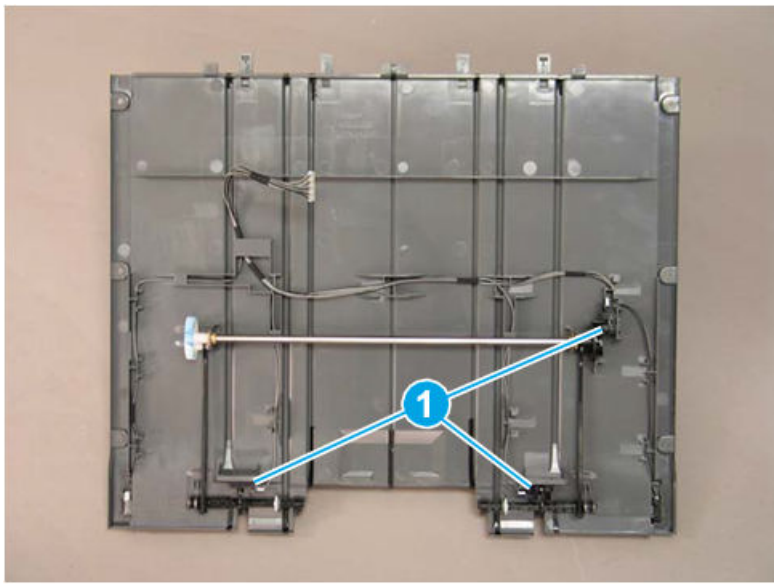
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1054 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the left upper cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left upper cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-1055 Remove the left upper cover

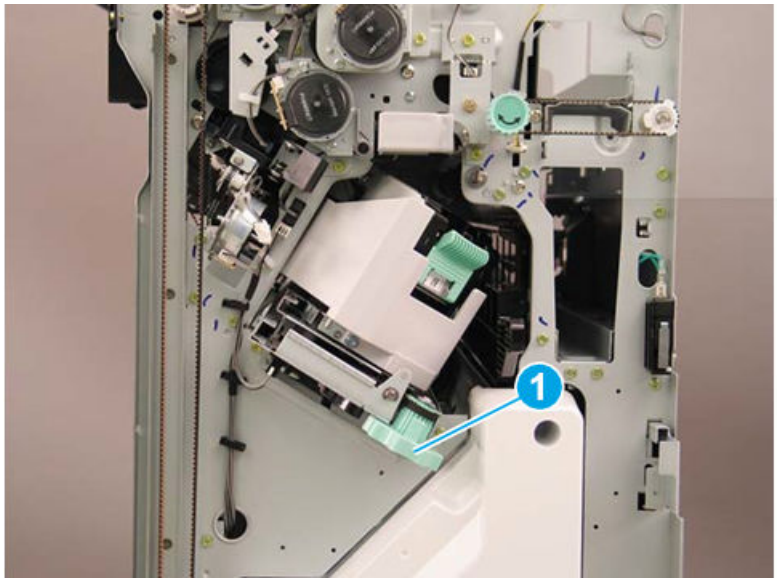


Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the ejector unit (finisher).

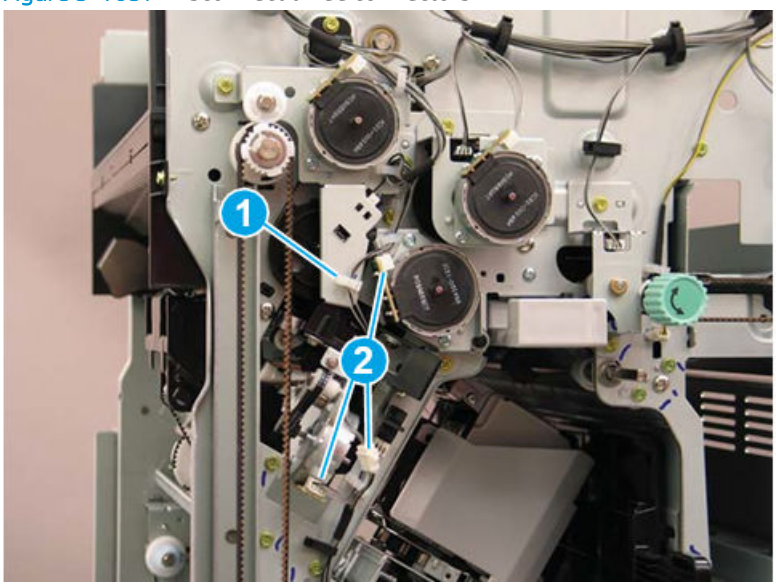
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 5-1056 Move the staple unit to the center



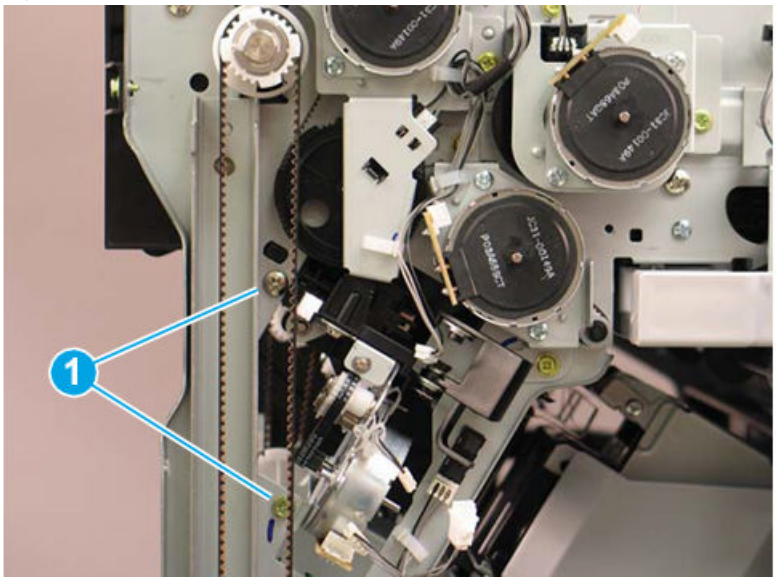
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 5-1057 Disconnect three connectors



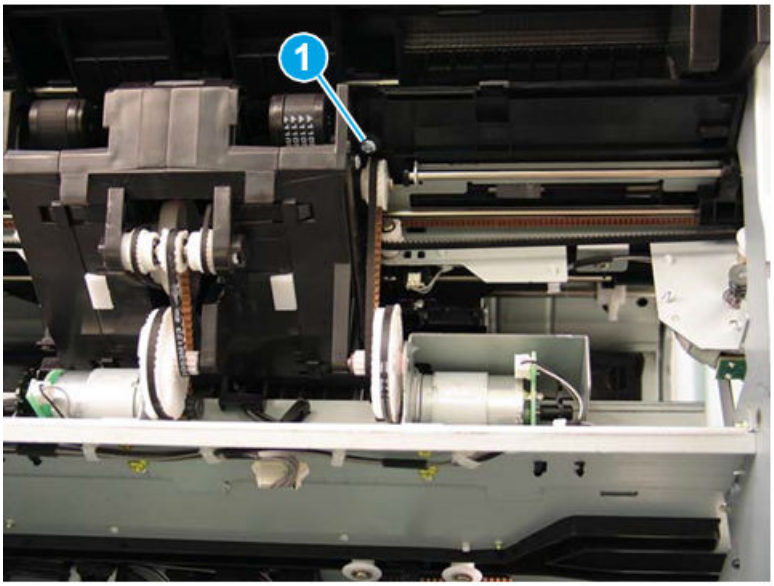
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1058 Remove two screws



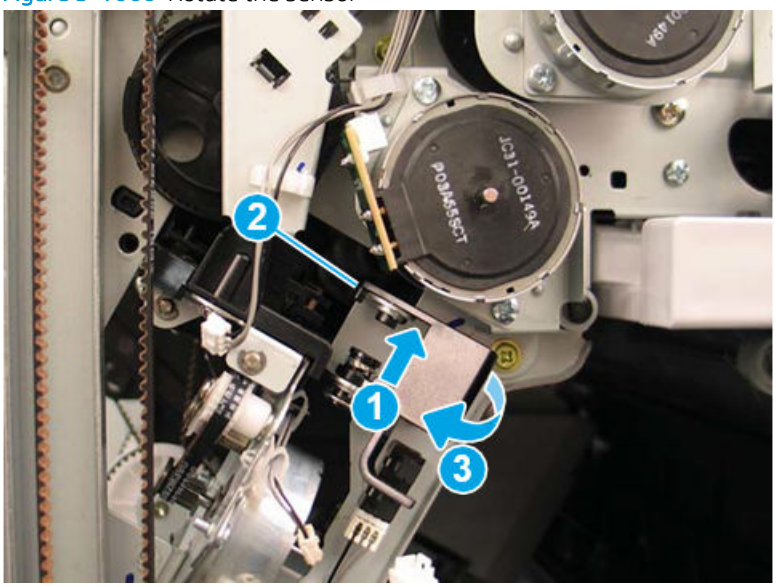
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1059 Remove one screw



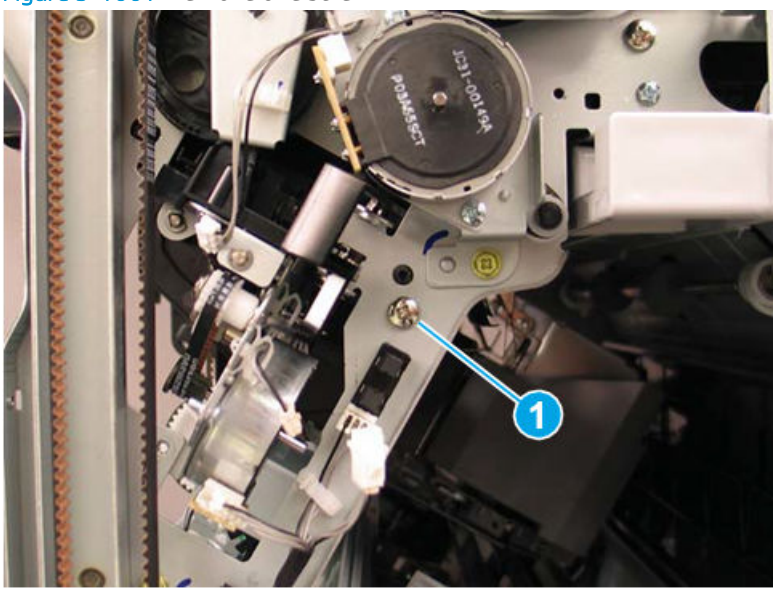
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 5-1060 Rotate the sensor



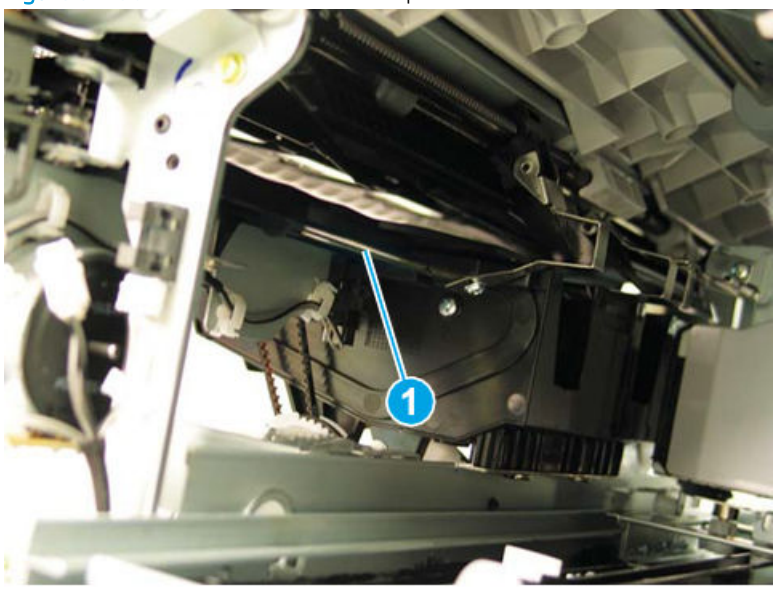
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1061 Remove one screw



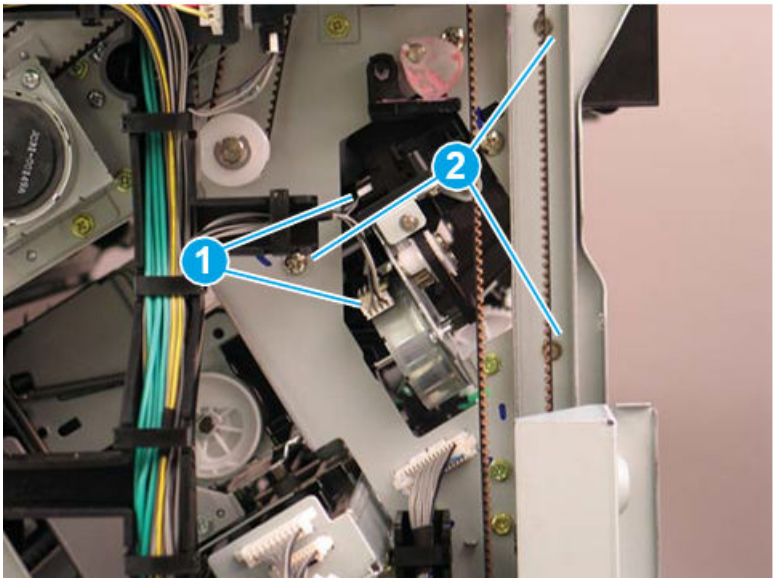
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 5-1062 Remove the front tamper shaft



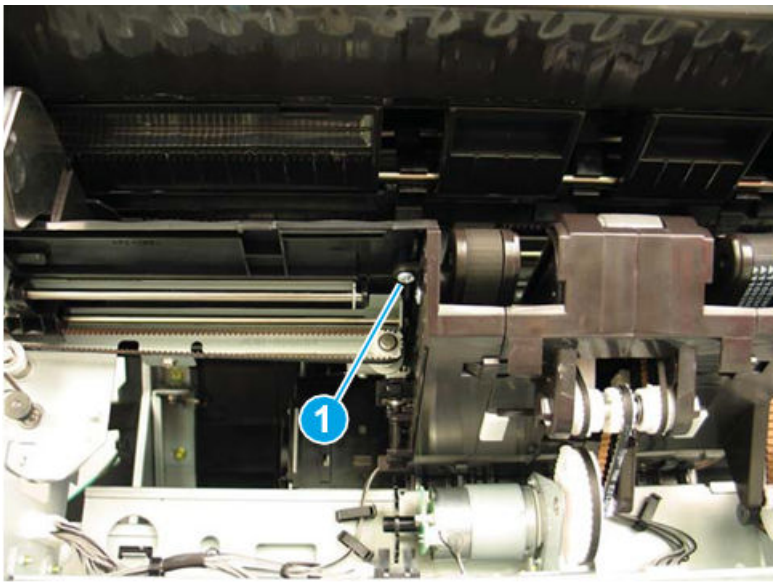
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-1063 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



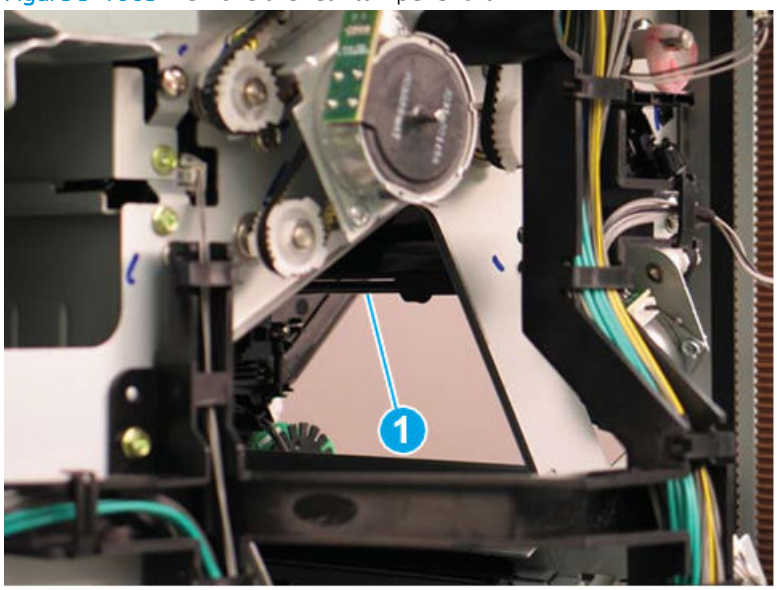
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1064 Remove one screw



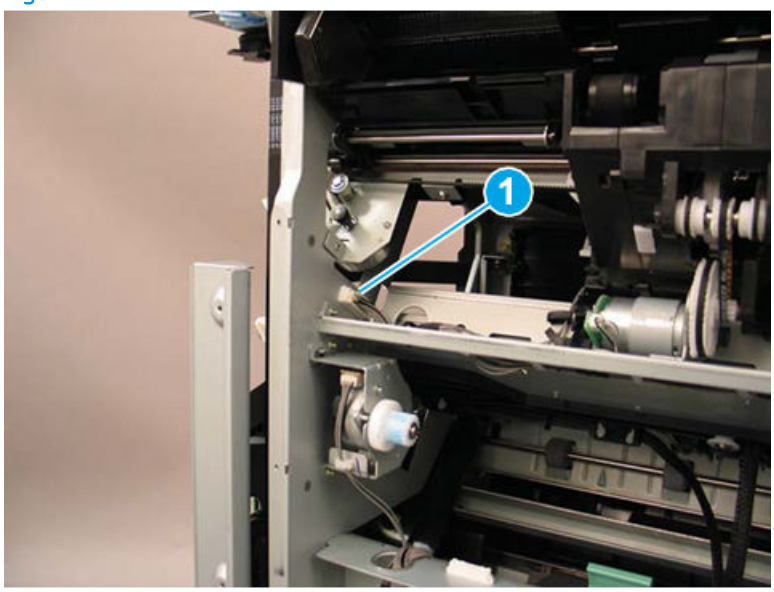
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 5-1065 Remove the rear tamper shaft



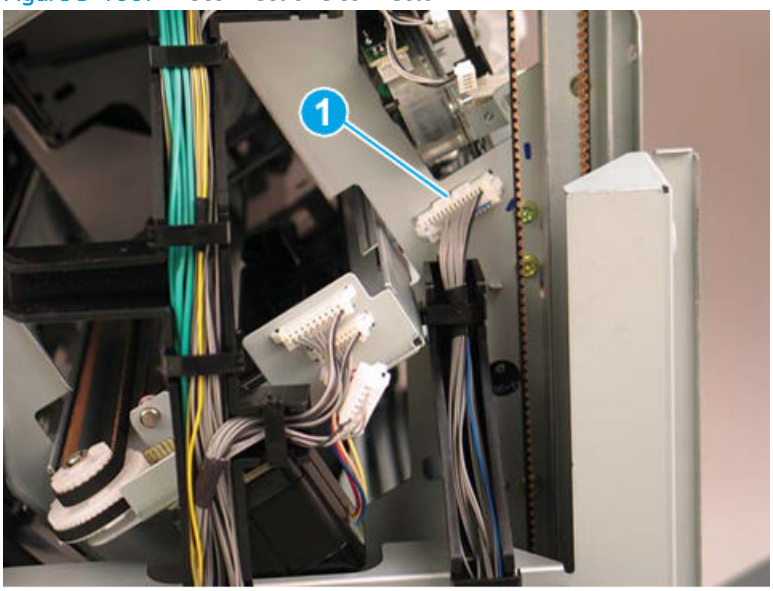
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-1066 Disconnect one connector



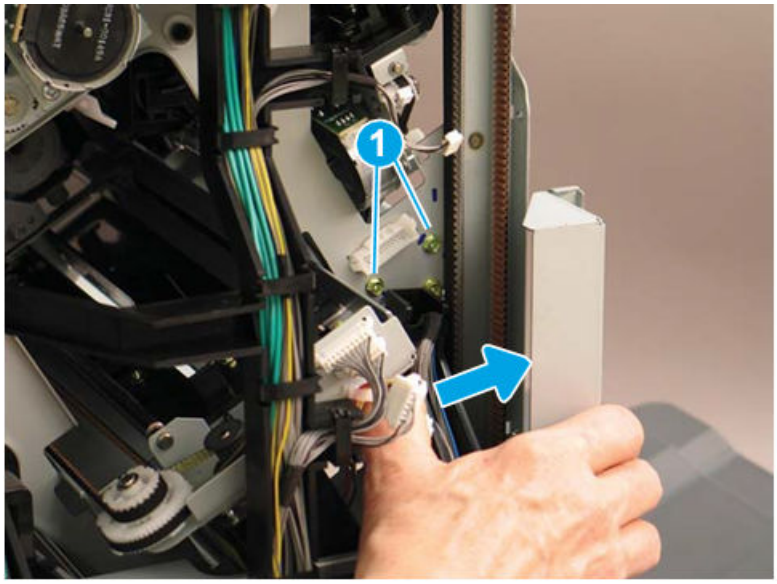
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-1067 Disconnect one connector



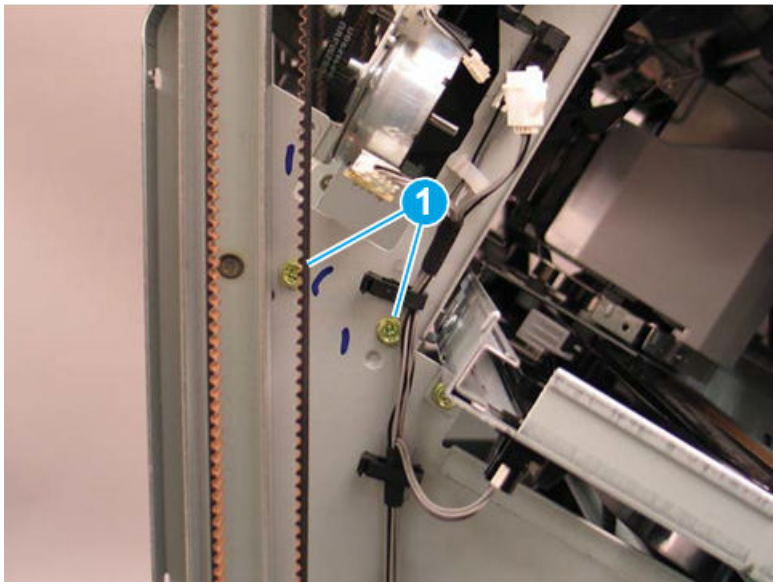
13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1068 Disconnect one connector



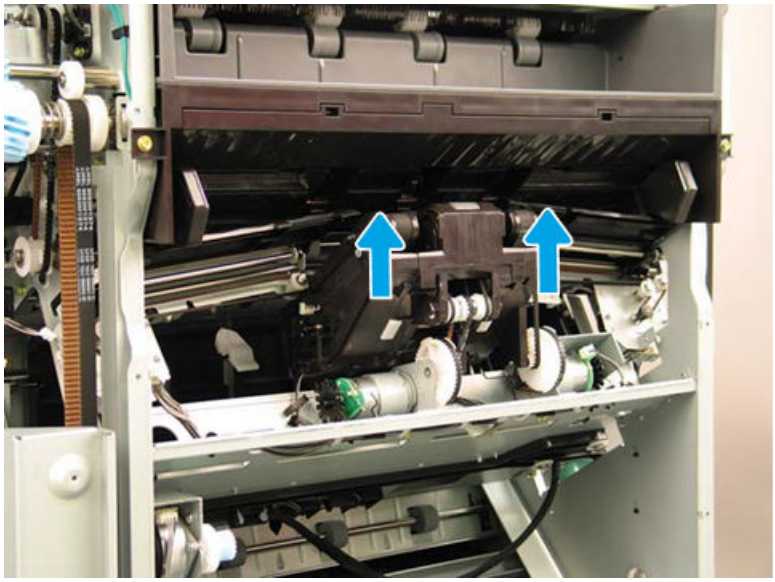
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1069 Remove two screws



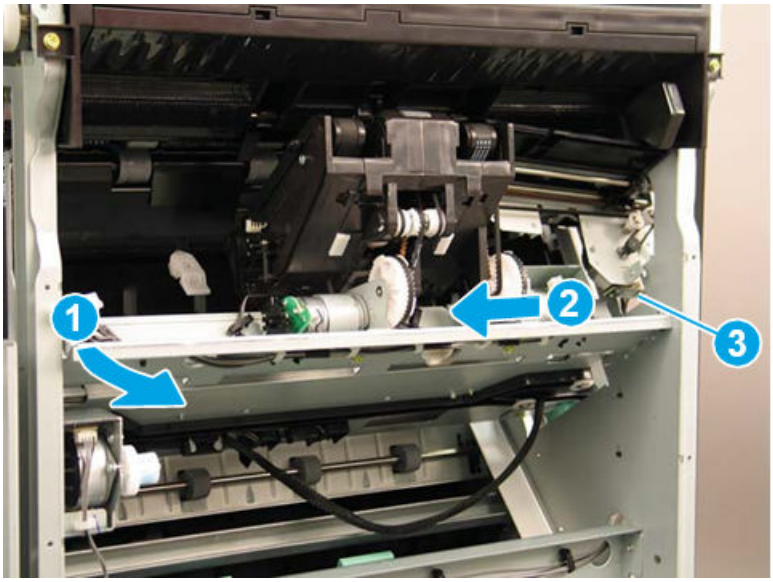
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 5-1070 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 5-1071 Remove the ejector unit

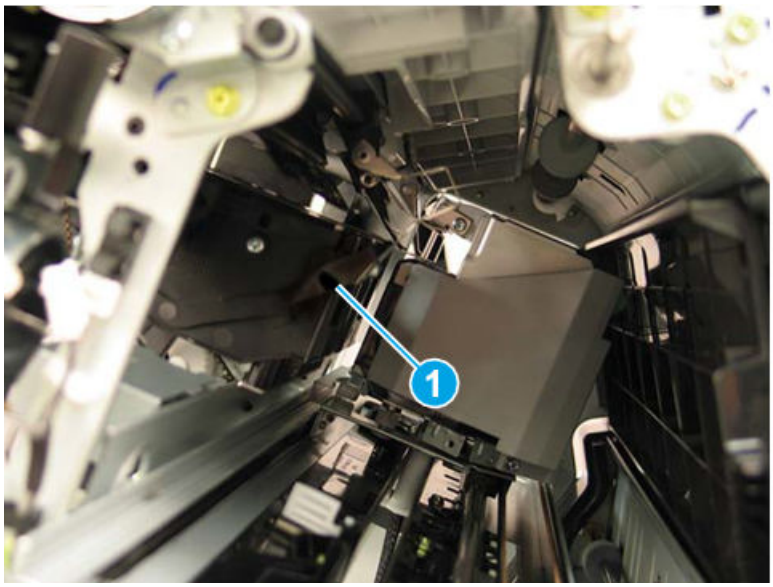


17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

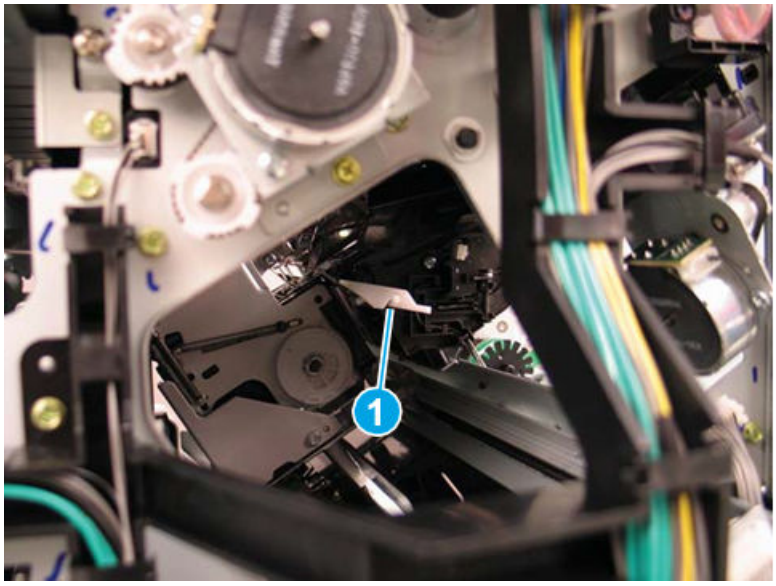
NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

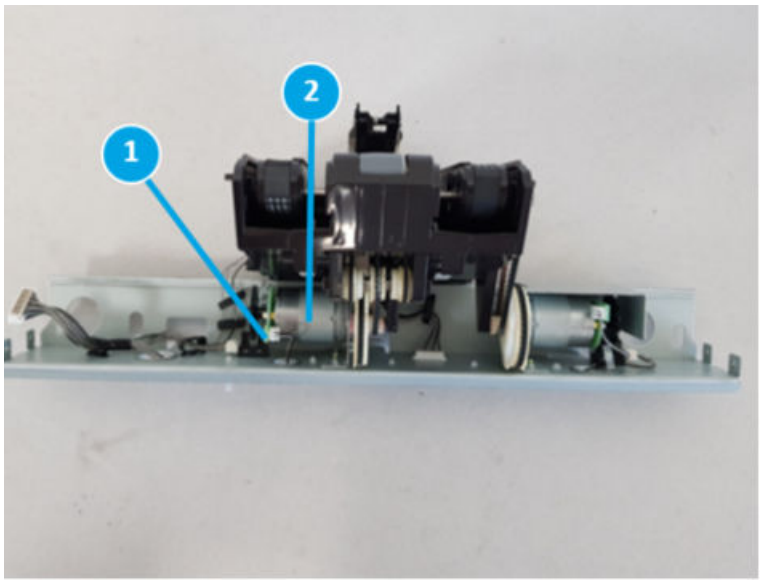


Remove the ejector1 motor(M6)

Follow these steps to remove the ejector1 motor(M6).

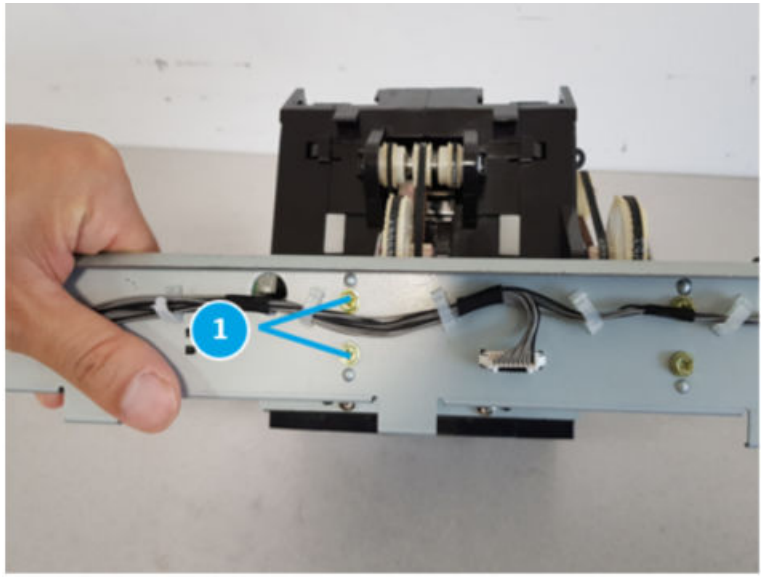
1. Disconnect the connector(callout 1) from ejector1 motor(M6, callout 2) of ejector unit.

Figure 5-1072 Disconnect the connector



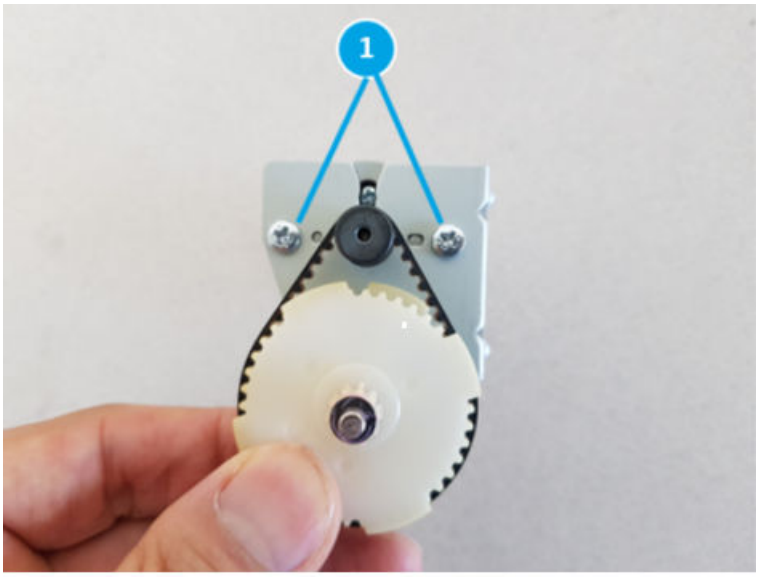
2. Remove two screws(callout 1).

Figure 5-1073 Remove two screws



3. Remove the ejector1 motor from ejector unit and remove two screws(callout 1)

Figure 5-1074 Remove the ejector1 motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Ejector2 unit

Removal and replacement: Ejector2 home sensor (S32)

Learn how to remove and replace the ejector2 home sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the ejector2 home sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-129 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Ejector2 home sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

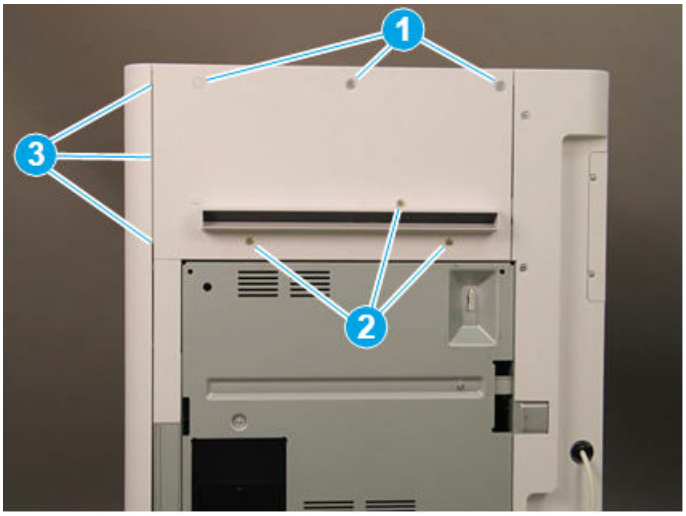
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1075 Remove the right upper cover

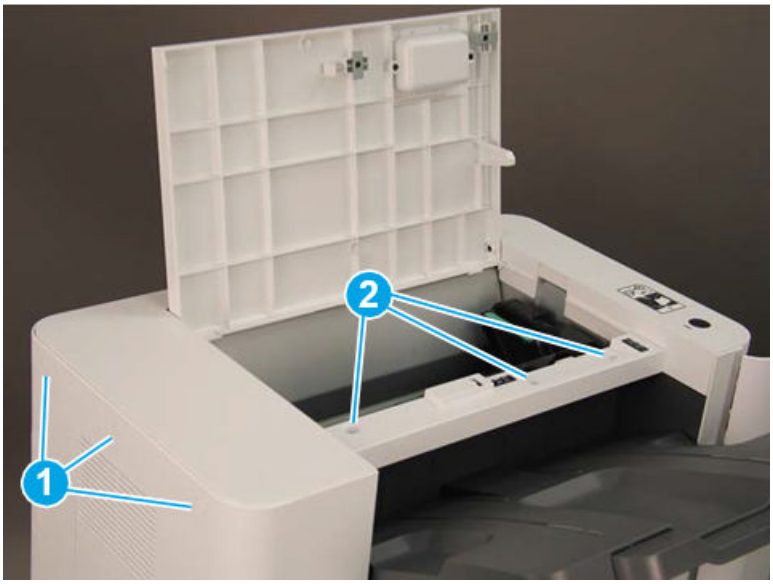


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

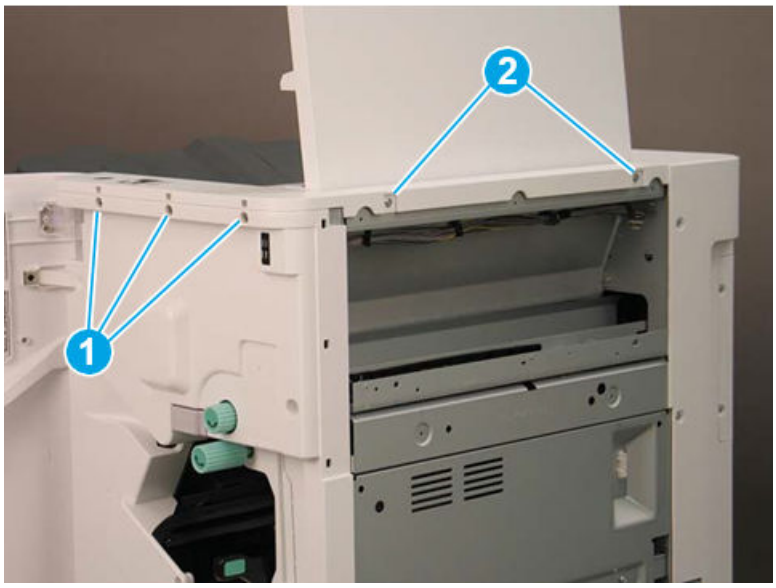
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1076 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

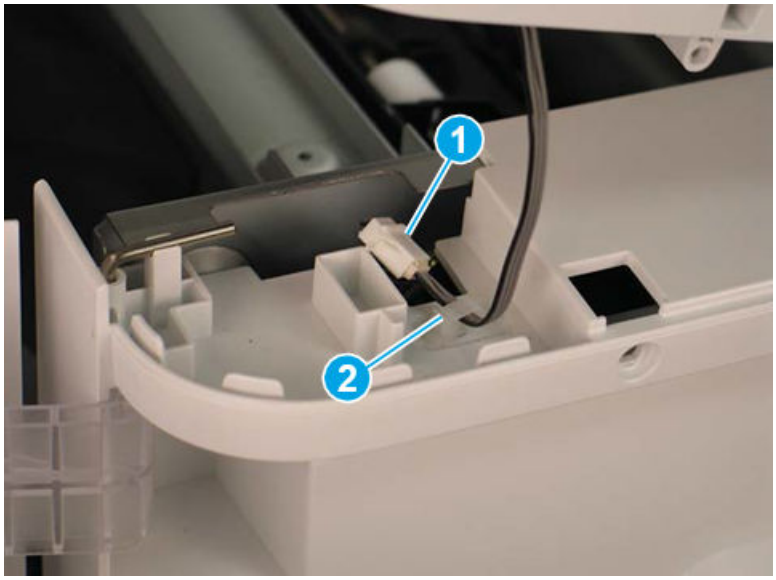
Figure 5-1077 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1078 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

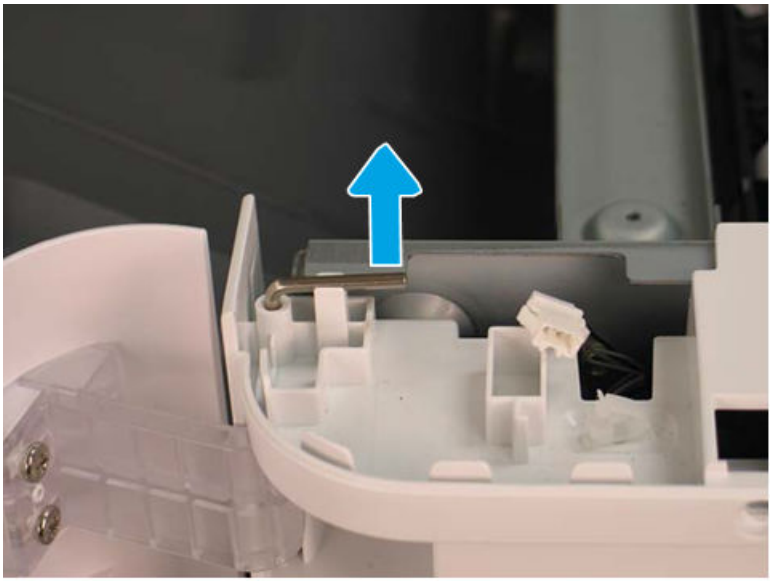


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

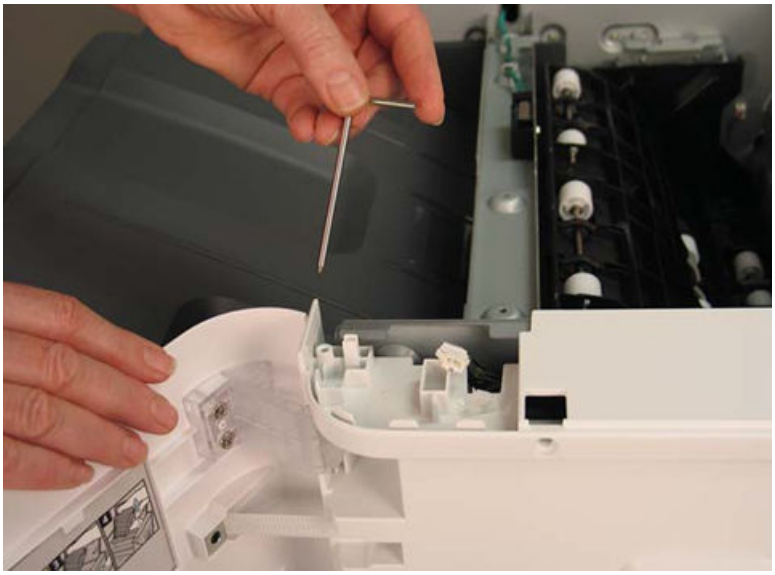
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-1079 Lift the top hinge pin



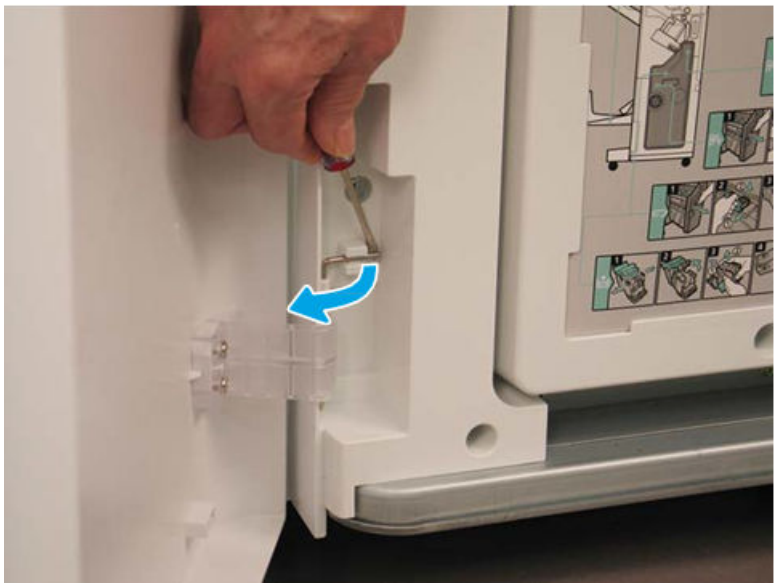
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-1080 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1081 Release the lower hinge pin



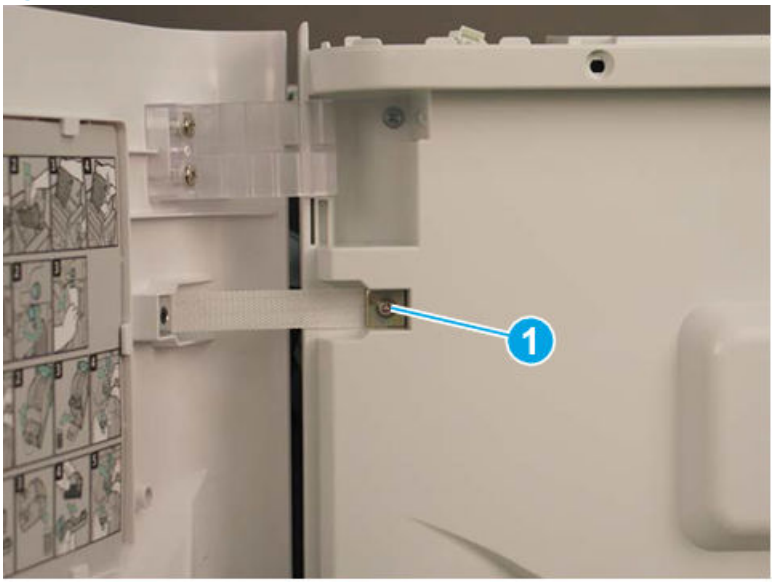
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-1082 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1083 Remove the front door

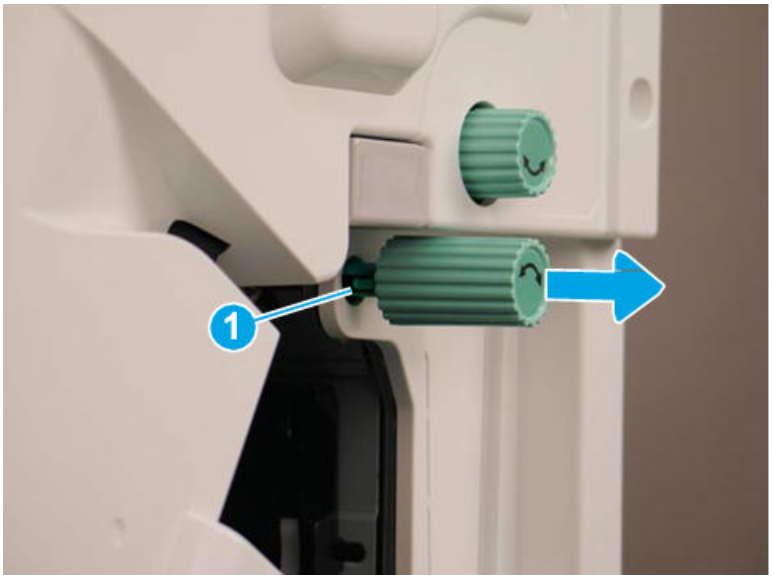


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

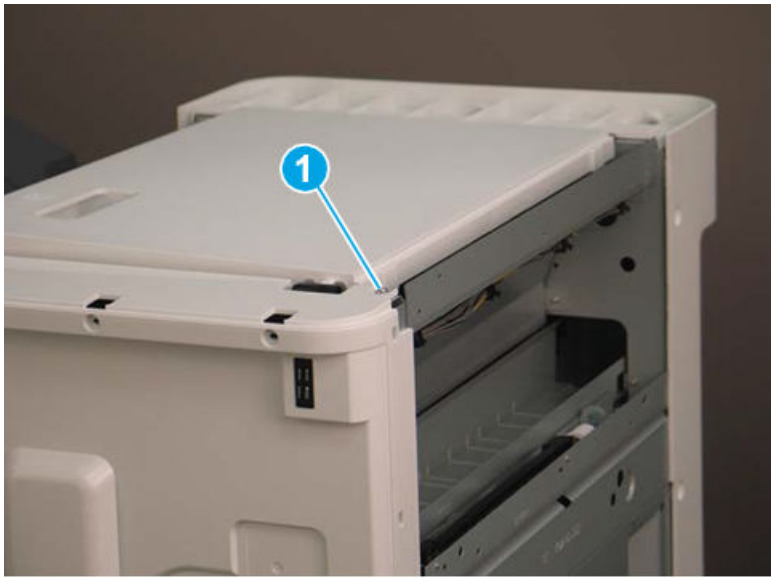
Figure 5-1084 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

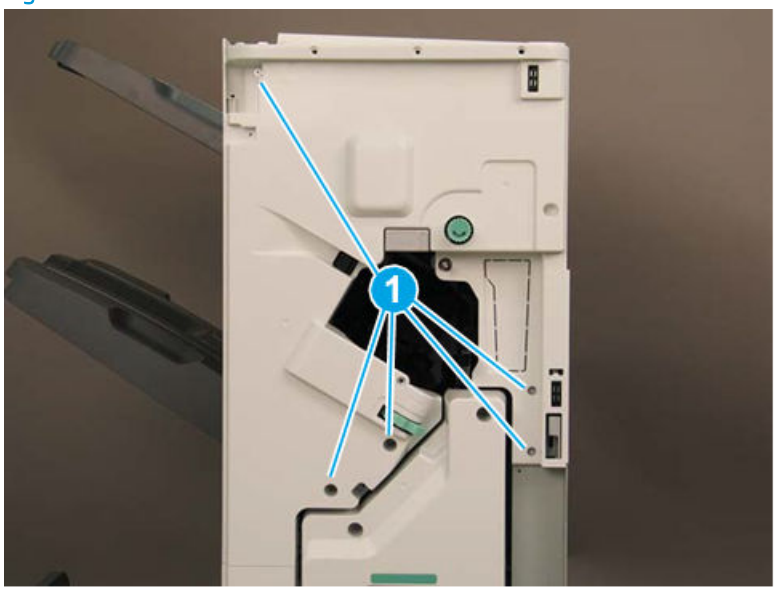
Figure 5-1085 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1086 Remove the front cover

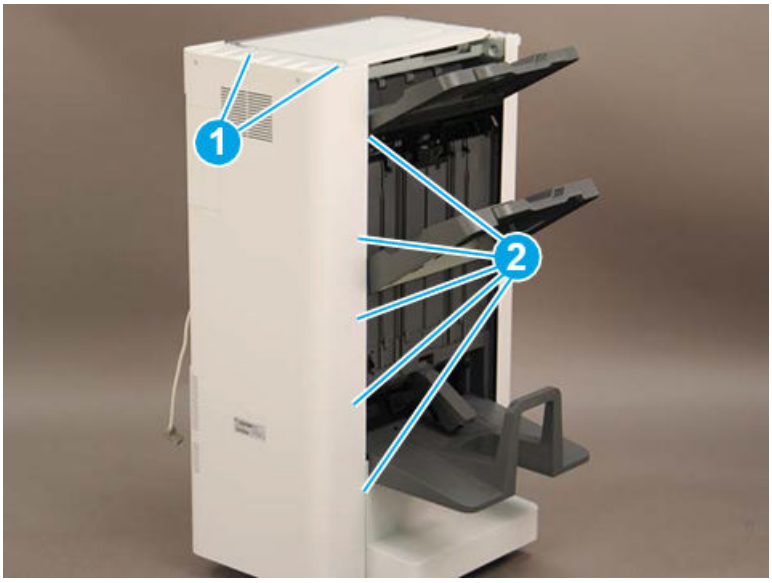


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1087 Remove seven screws

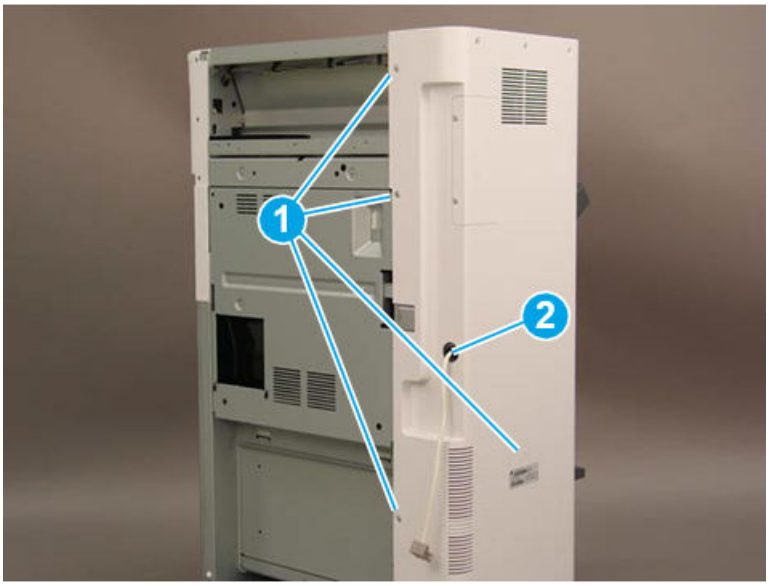


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1088 Remove the rear cover

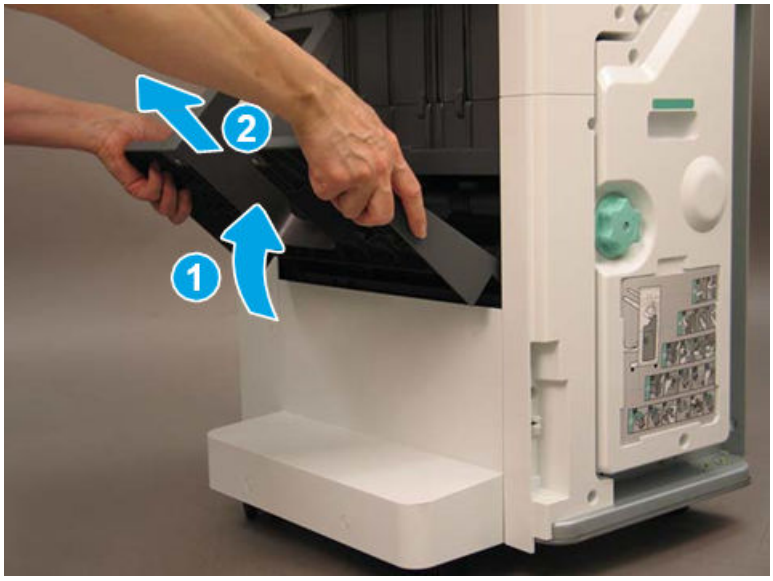


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1089 Remove the booklet output tray



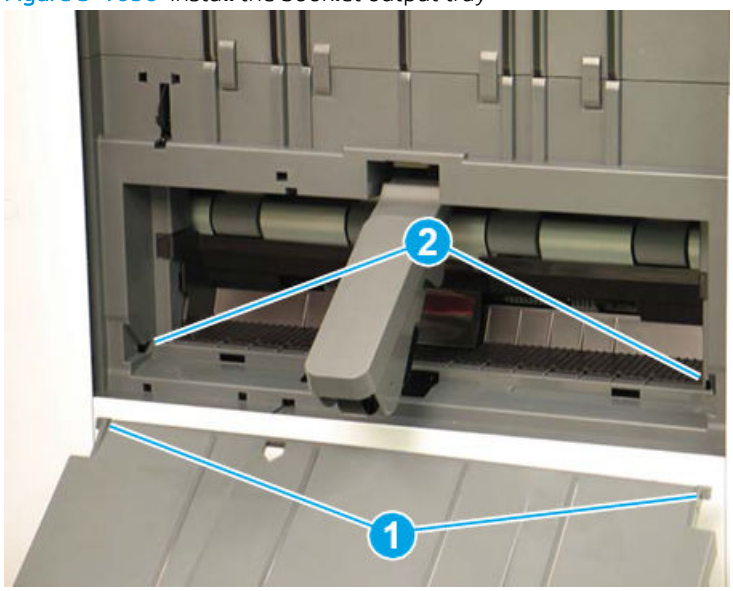
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-1090 Install the booklet output tray

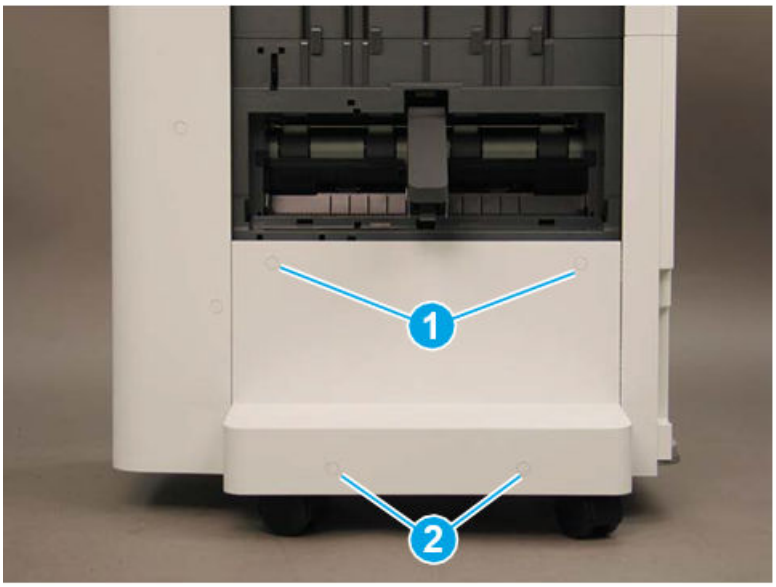


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-1091 Remove four screws

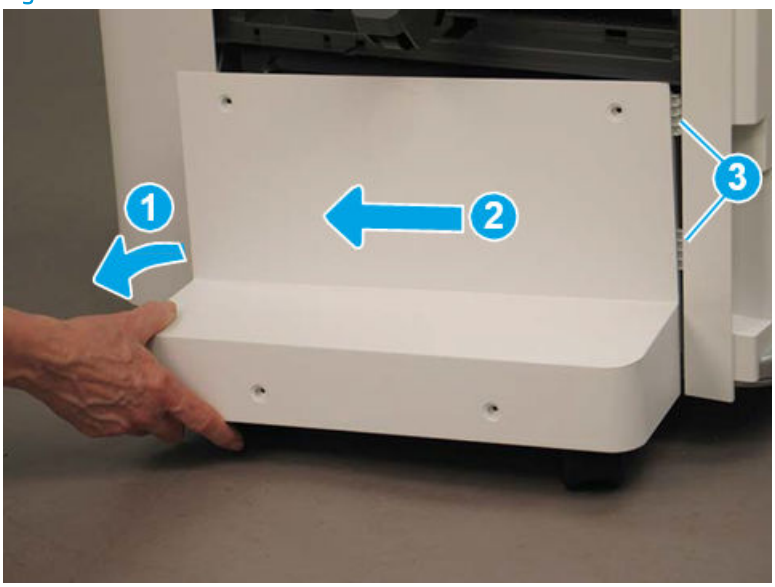


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1092 Remove the caster cover



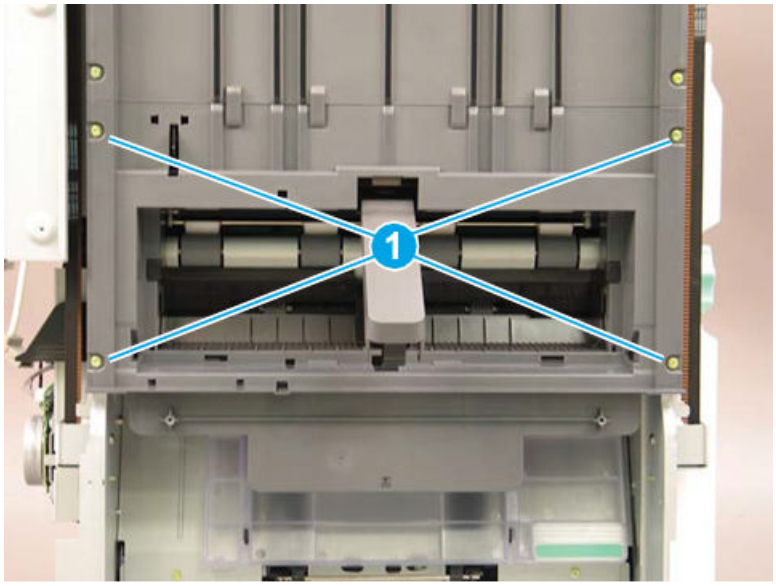
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-1093 Remove four screws

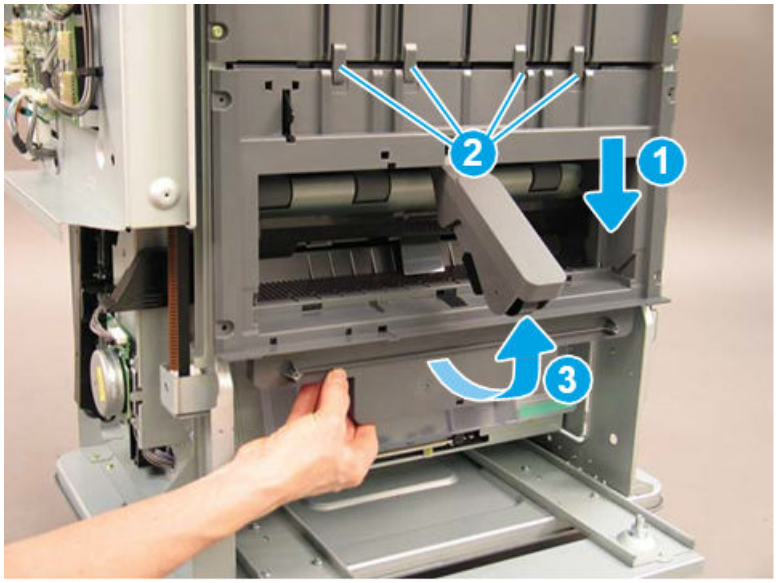


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

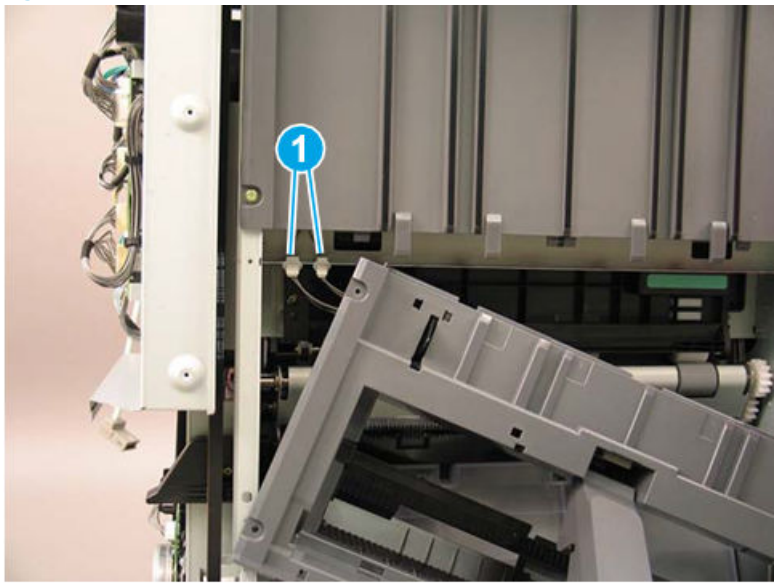
Figure 5-1094 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

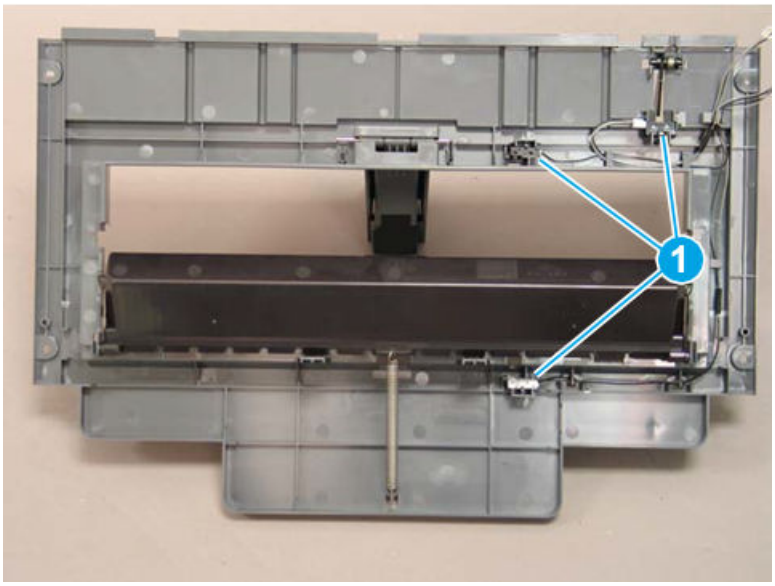
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1095 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-1096 Remove the left lower cover

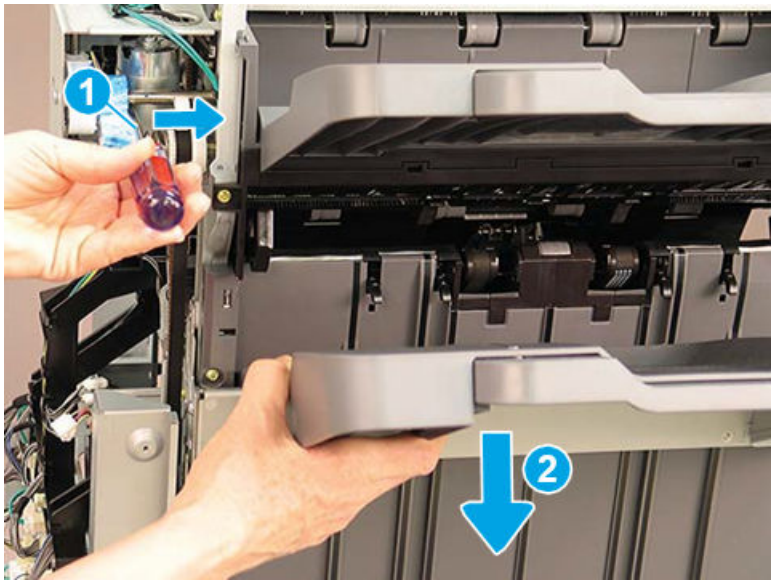


Remove the left upper cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover (finisher).

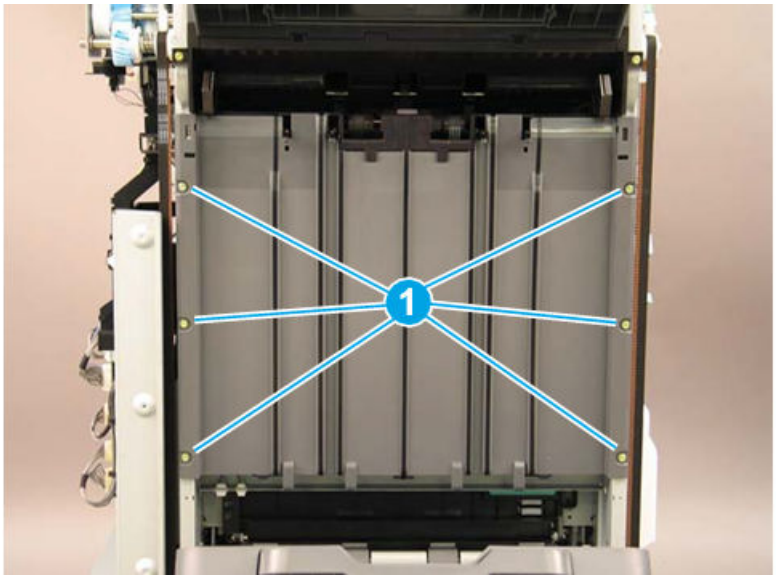
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 5-1097 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1098 Remove six screws

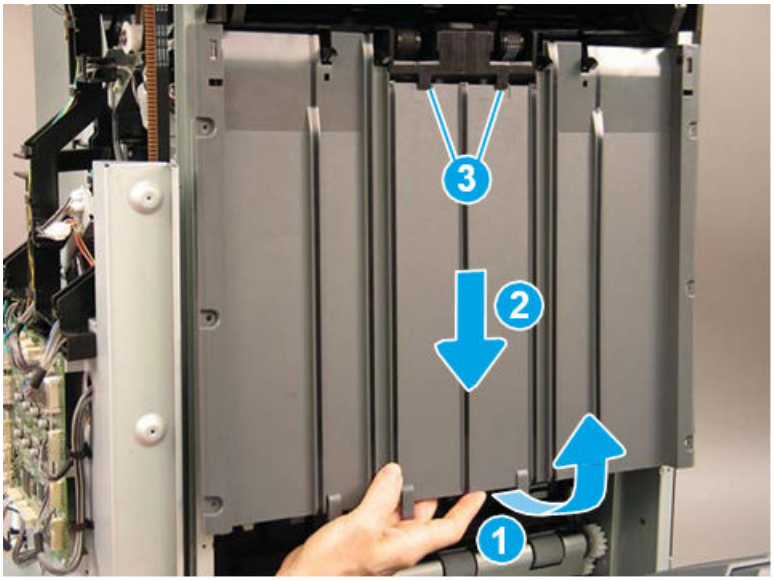


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away fromthe finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

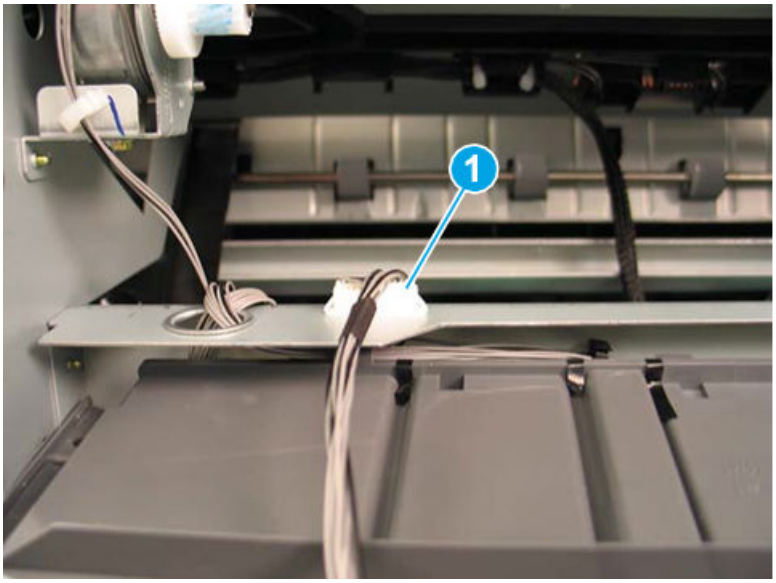
Figure 5-1099 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

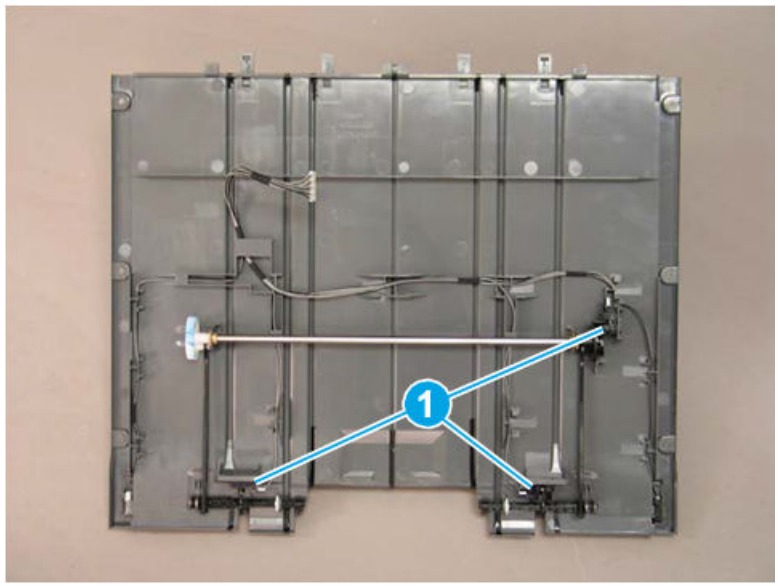
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1100 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the left upper cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left upper cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-1101 Remove the left upper cover

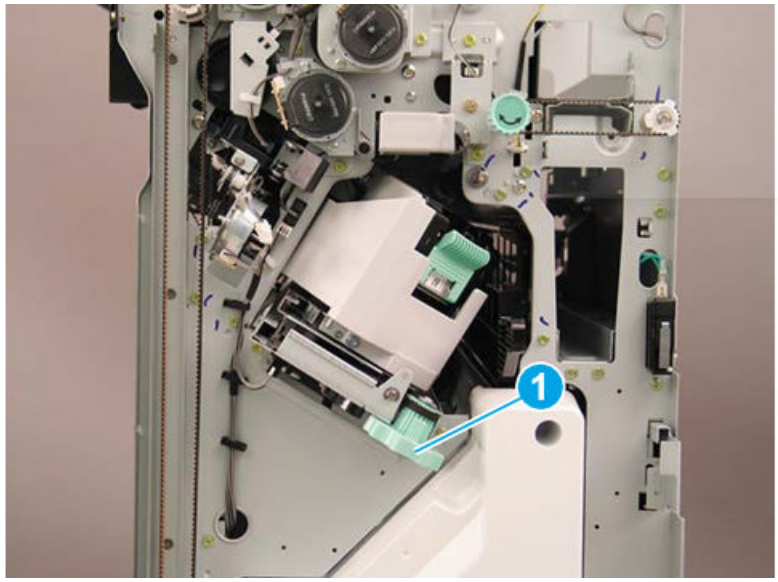


Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the ejector unit (finisher).

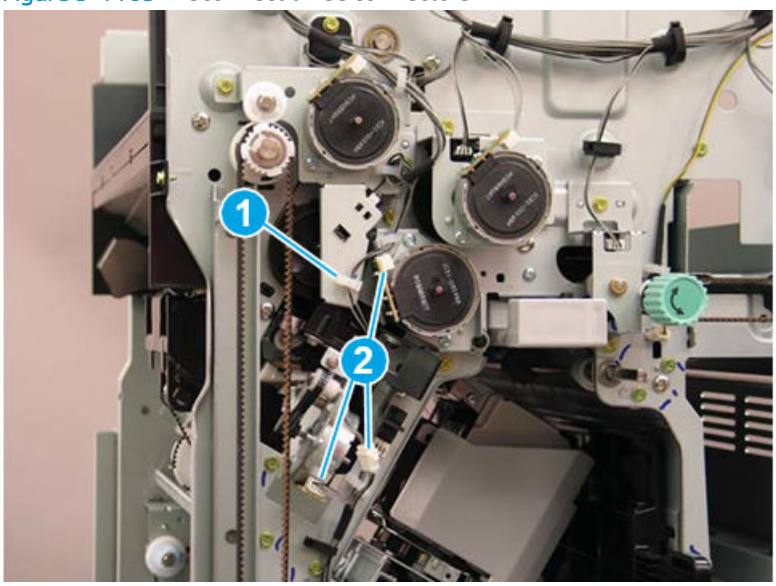
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 5-1102 Move the staple unit to the center



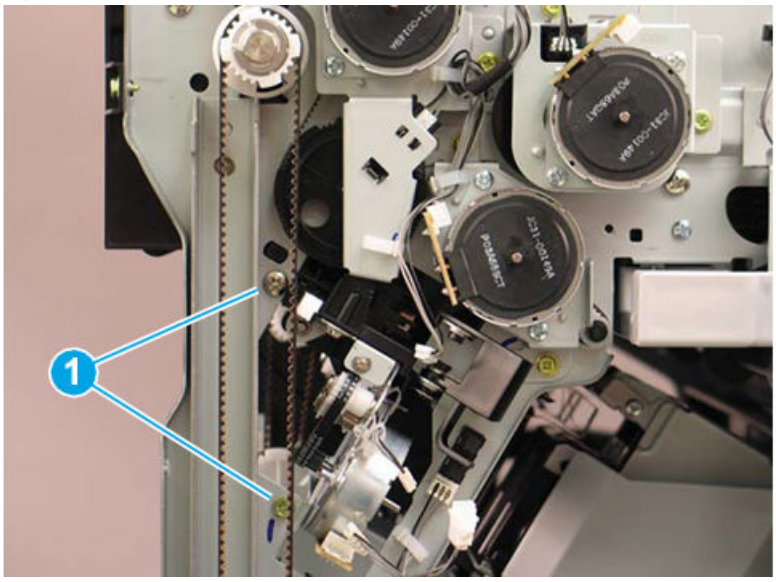
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 5-1103 Disconnect three connectors



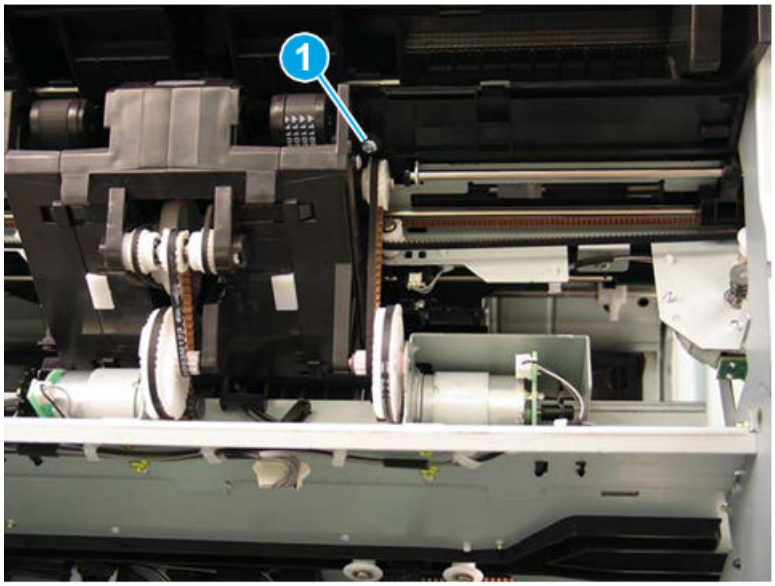
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1104 Remove two screws



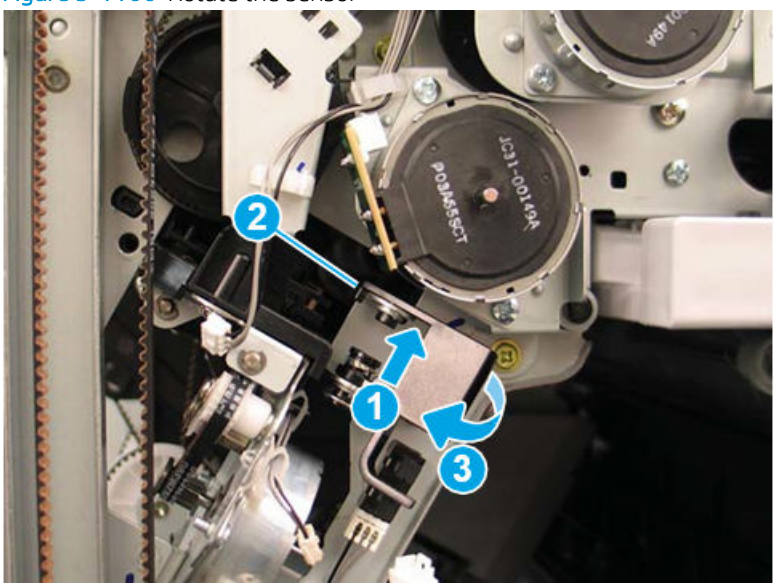
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1105 Remove one screw



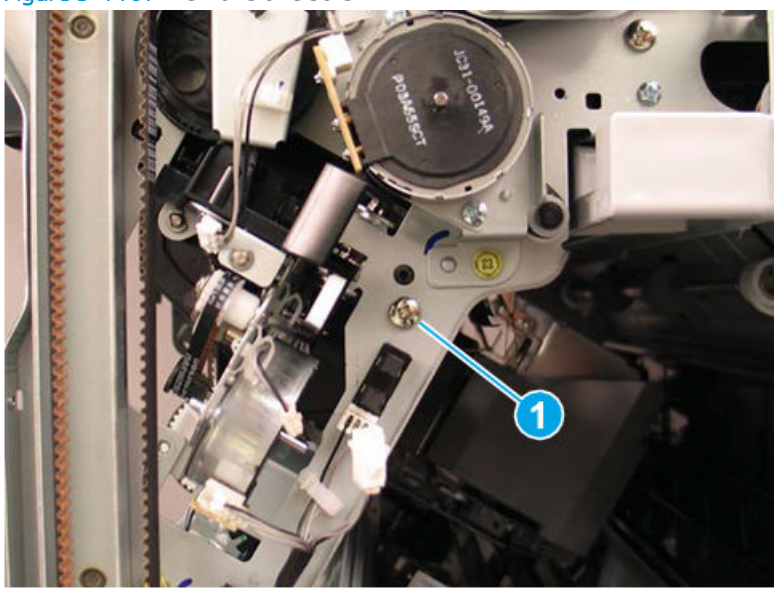
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 5-1106 Rotate the sensor



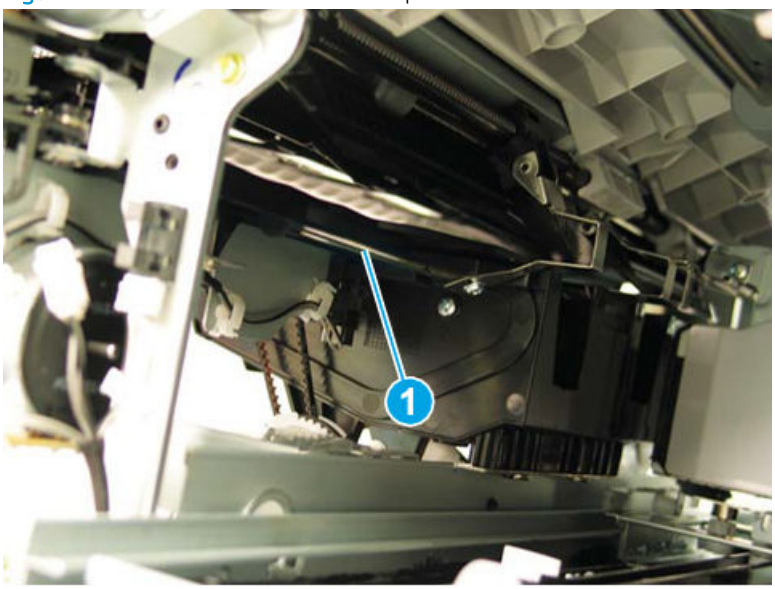
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1107 Remove one screw



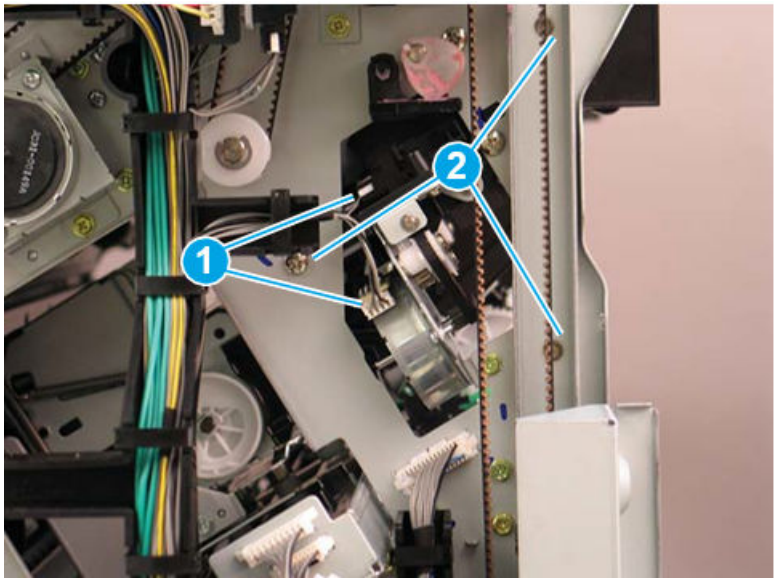
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 5-1108 Remove the front tamper shaft



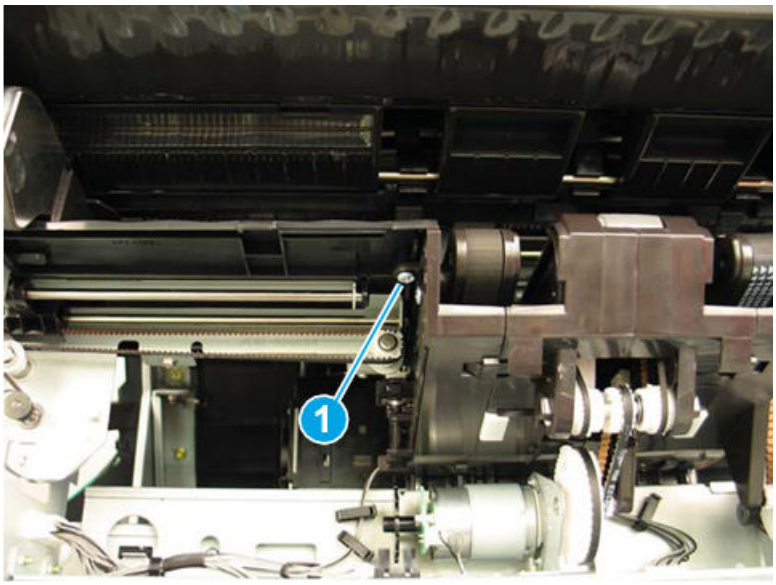
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-1109 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



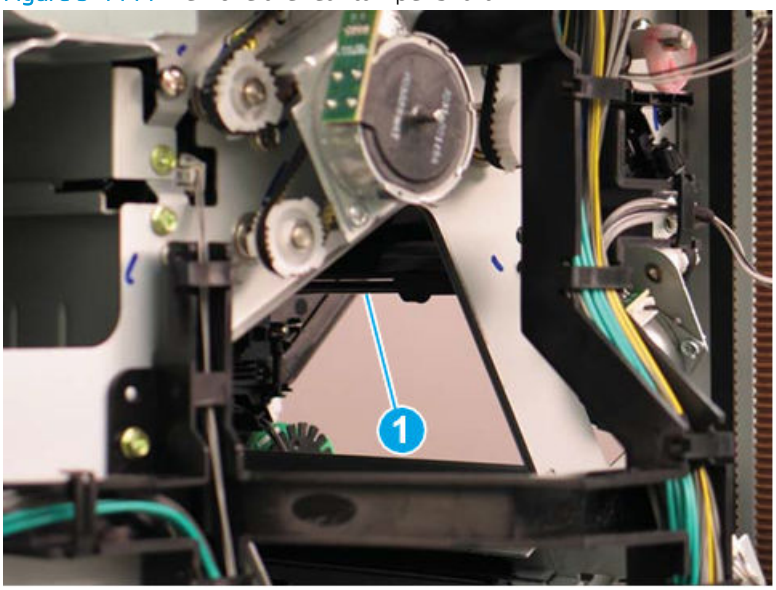
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1110 Remove one screw



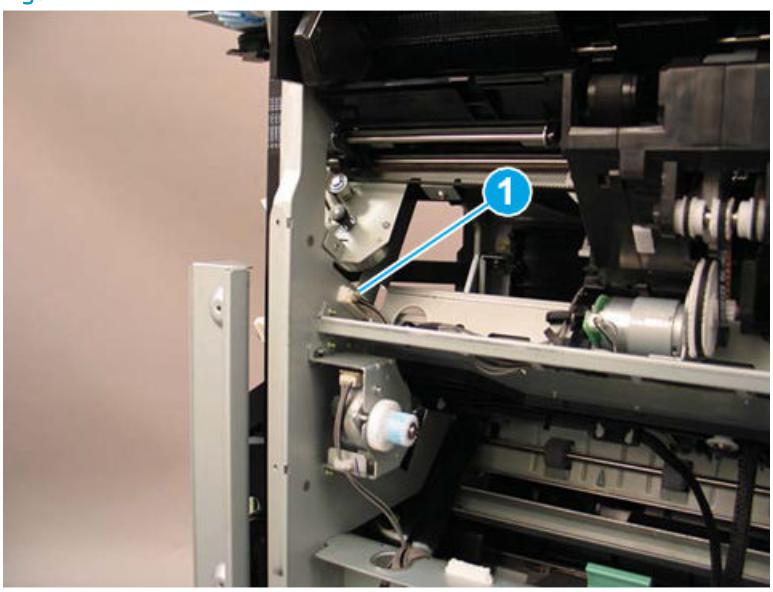
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 5-1111 Remove the rear tamper shaft



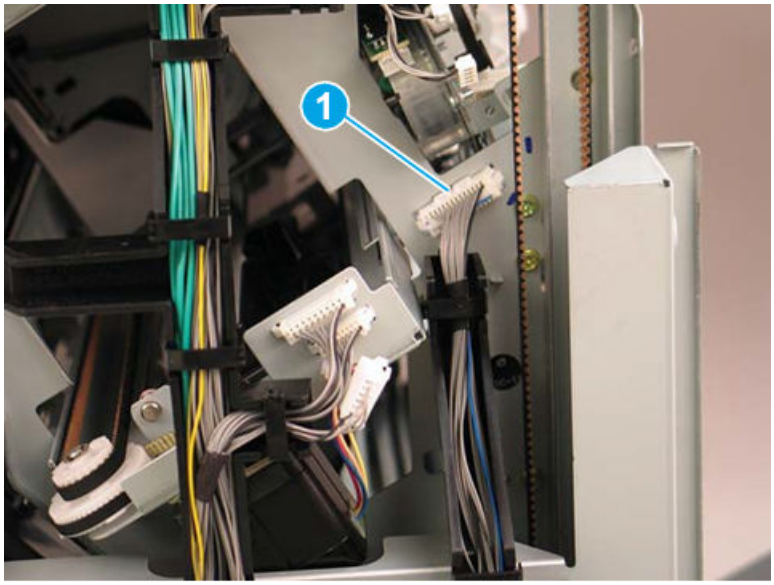
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-1112 Disconnect one connector



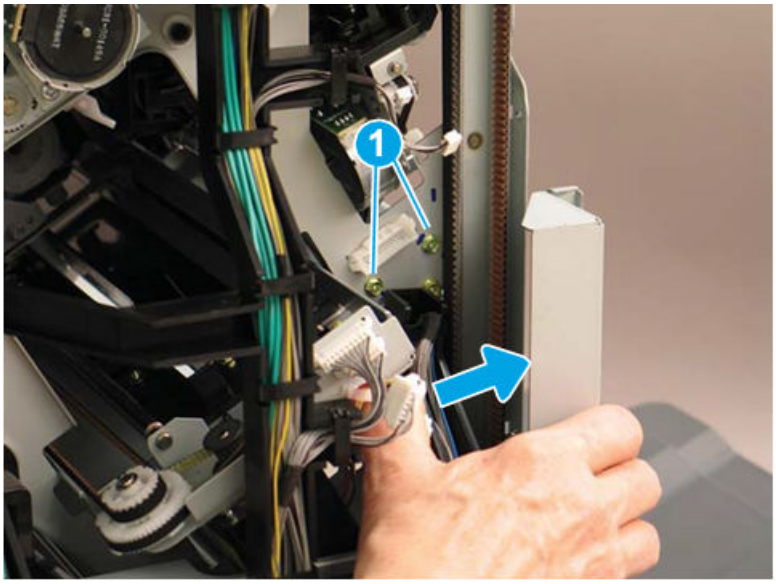
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-1113 Disconnect one connector



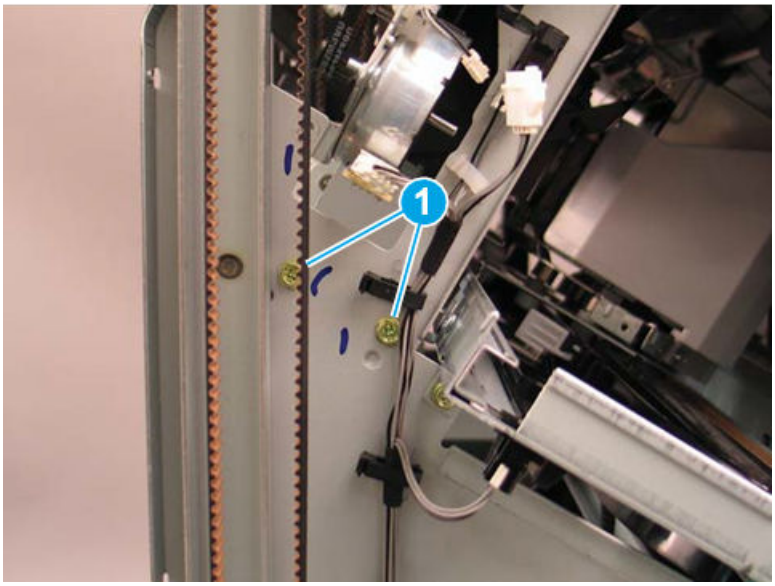
13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1114 Disconnect one connector



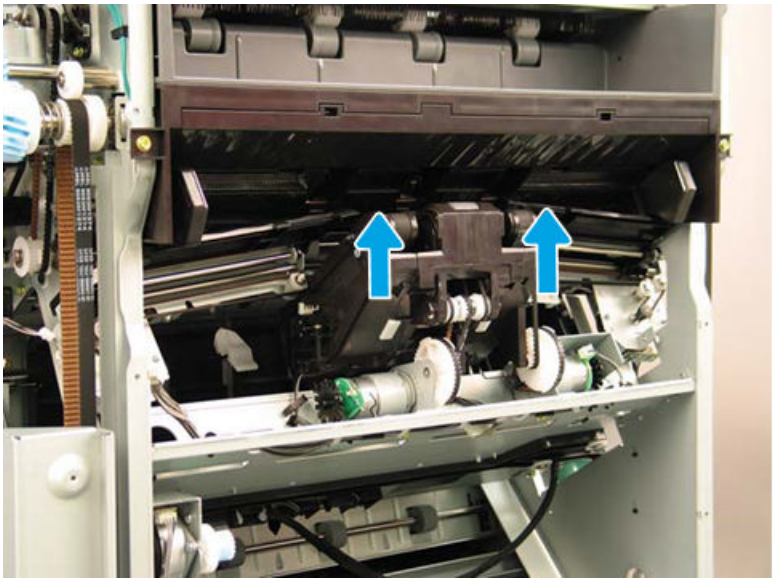
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1115 Remove two screws



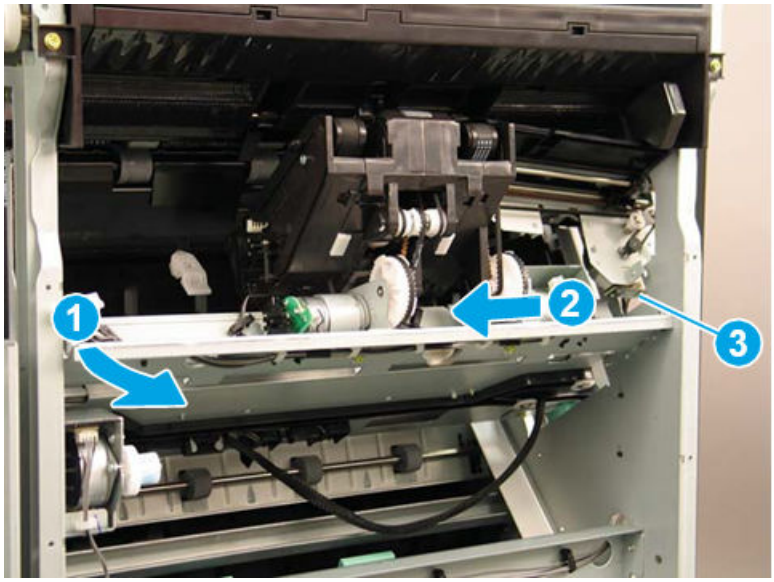
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 5-1116 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 5-1117 Remove the ejector unit

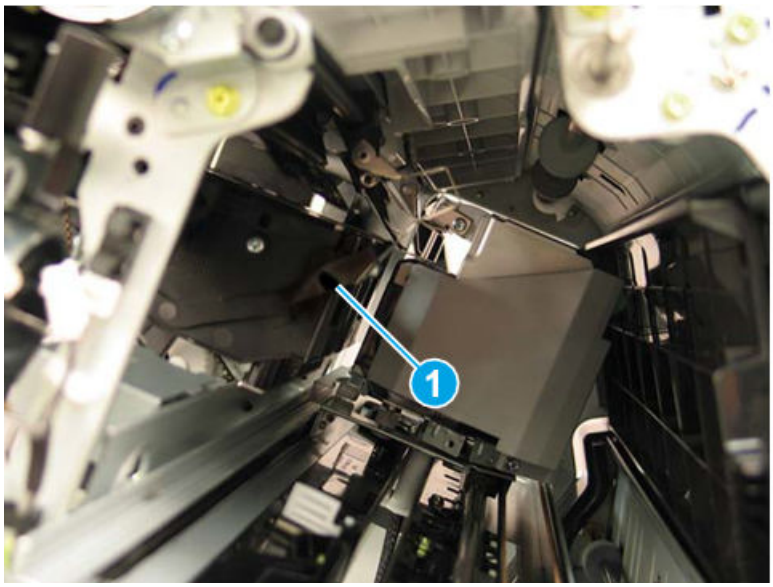


17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

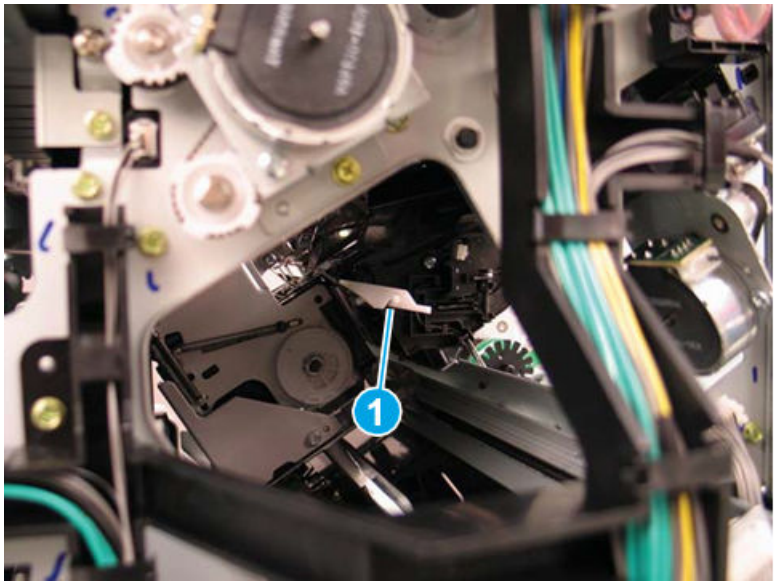
NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

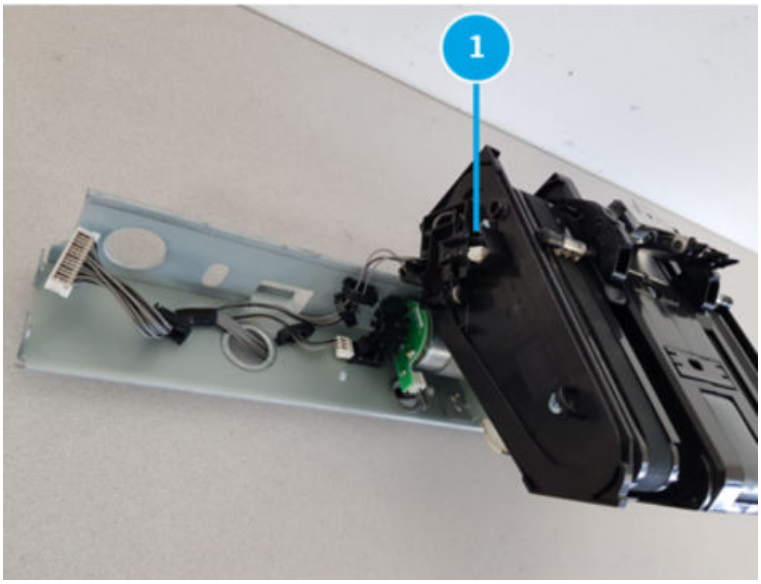


Remove the ejector2 home sensor(S32)

Follow these steps to remove the ejector2 home sensor(S32).

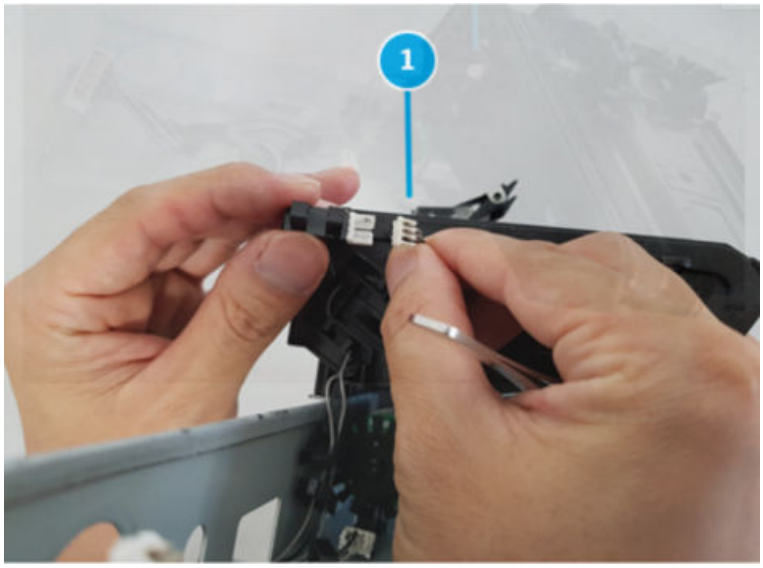
1. Remove sensor(callout 1, S32) using tweezers from the ejector unit.

Figure 5-1118 Remove sensor



2. Disconnect the connector(callout 1) from ejector2 home sensor.

Figure 5-1119 Disconnect the connector from ejector2 home sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Ejector2 motor sensor (S23)

Learn how to remove and replace the ejector2 motor sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the ejector2 motor sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-130 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Ejector2 motor sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

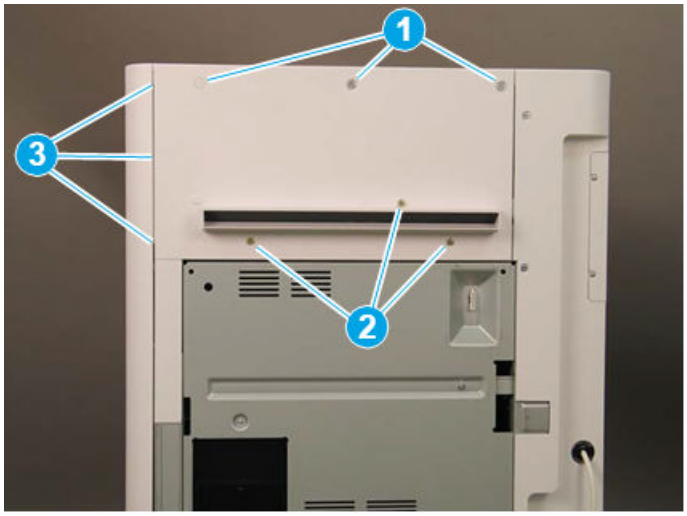
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1120 Remove the right upper cover

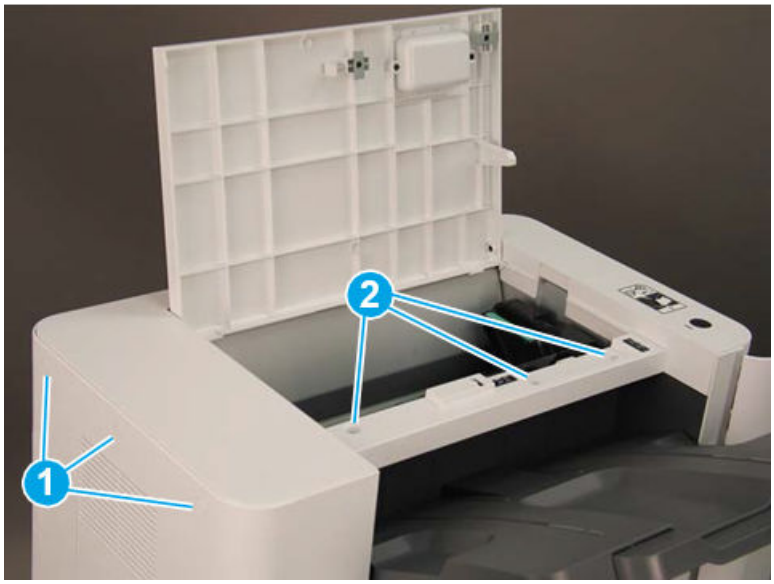


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

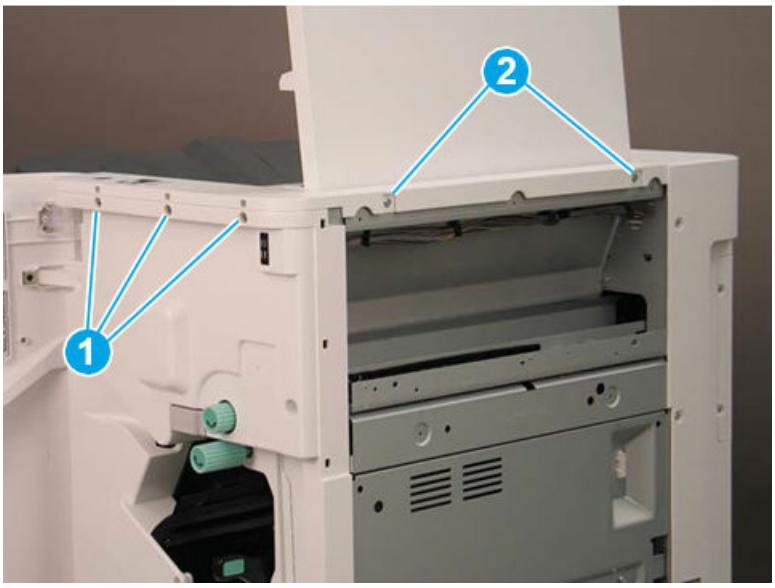
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1121 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

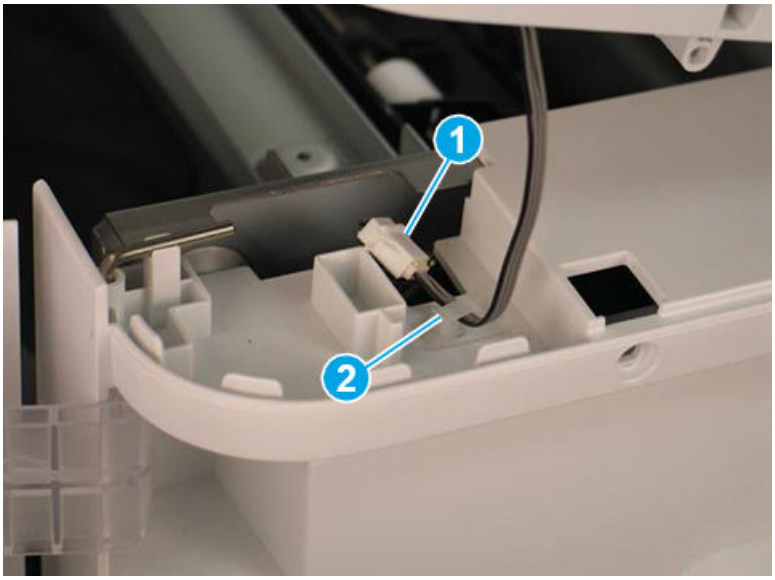
Figure 5-1122 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1123 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

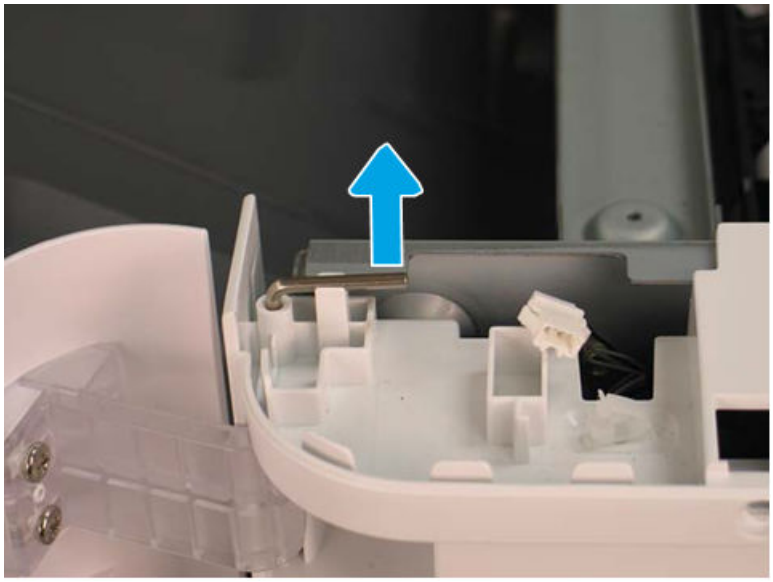


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

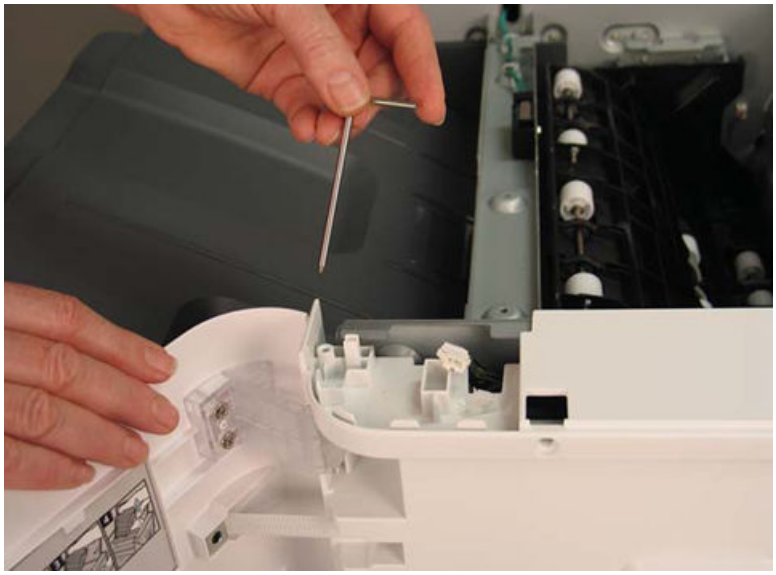
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-1124 Lift the top hinge pin



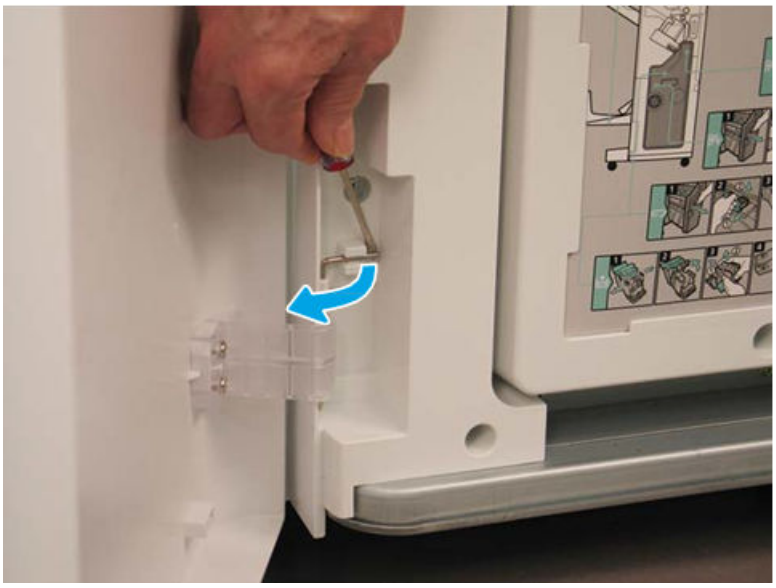
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-1125 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1126 Release the lower hinge pin



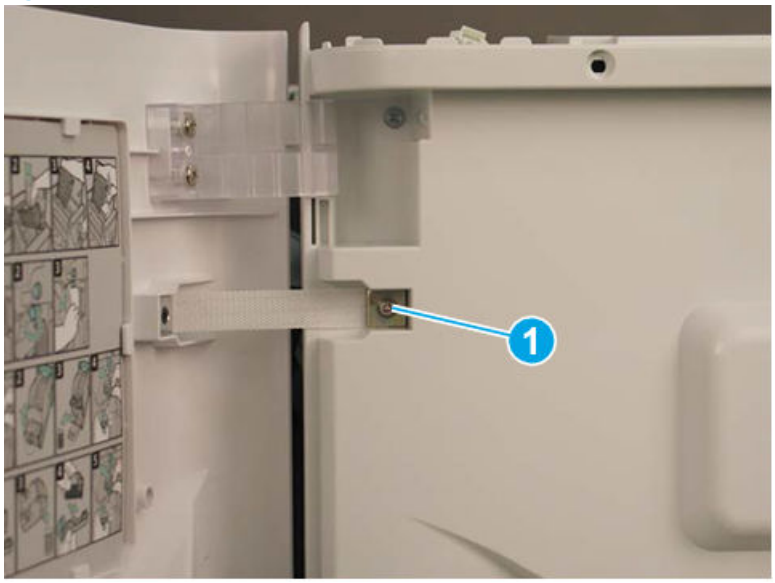
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-1127 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1128 Remove the front door

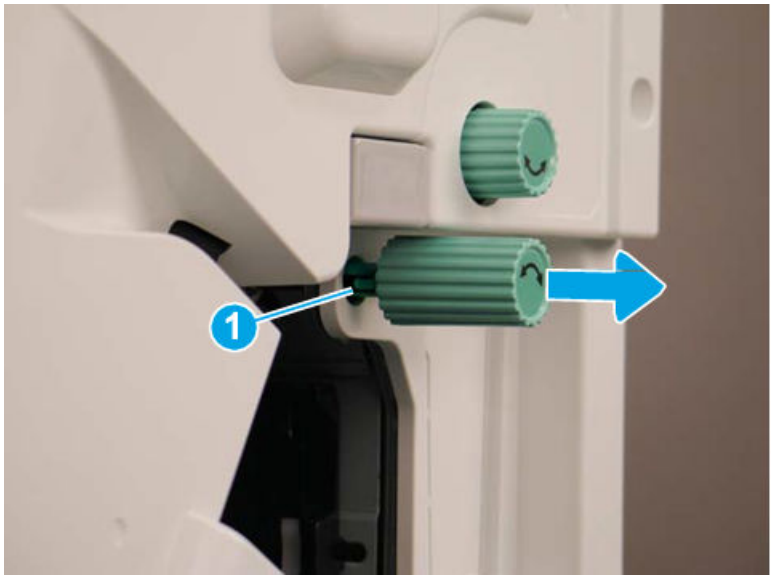


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-1129 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

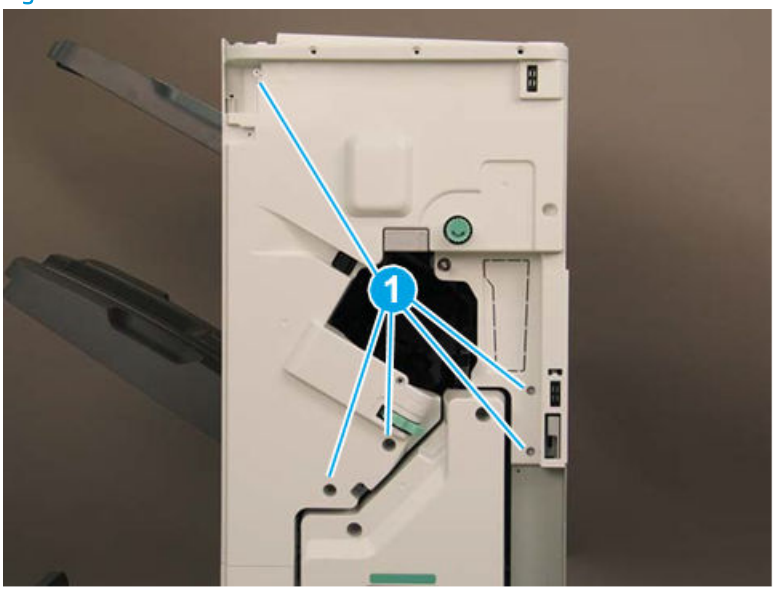
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-1130 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1131 Remove the front cover

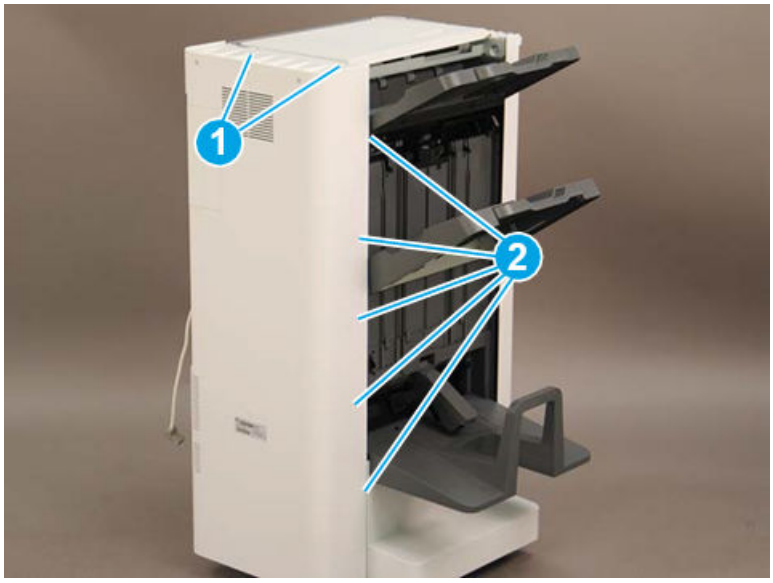


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1132 Remove seven screws

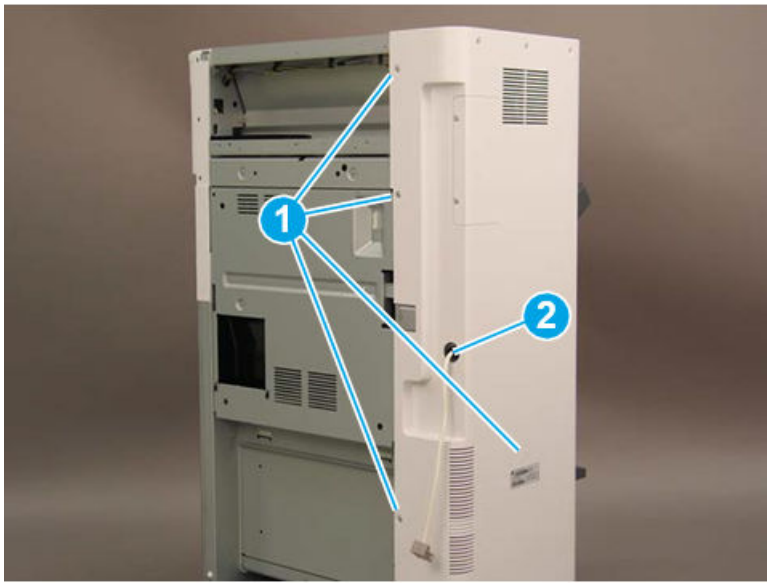


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1133 Remove the rear cover

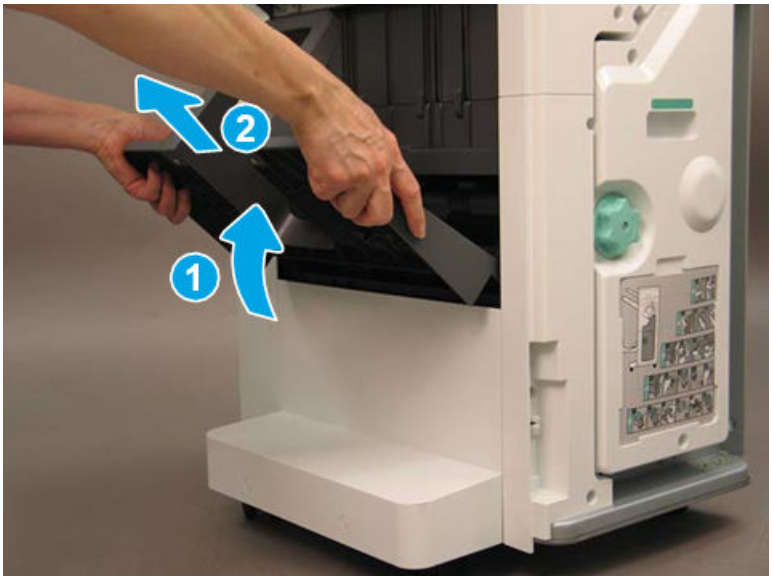


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1134 Remove the booklet output tray



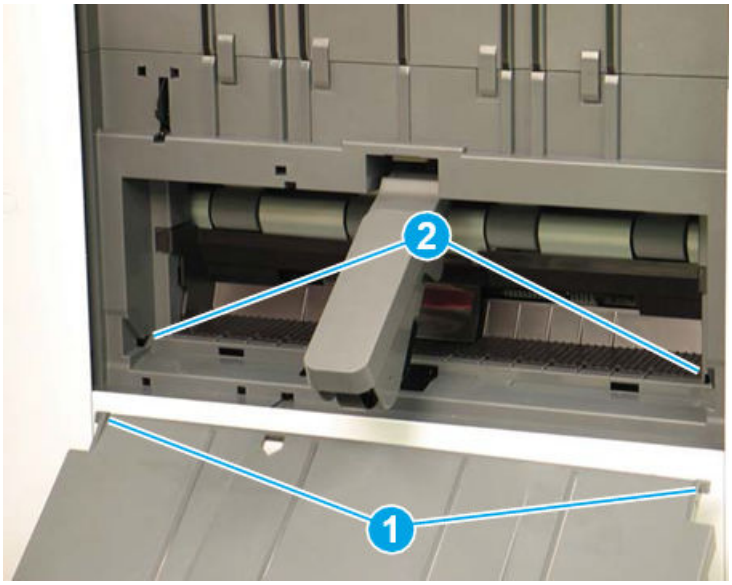
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-1135 Install the booklet output tray

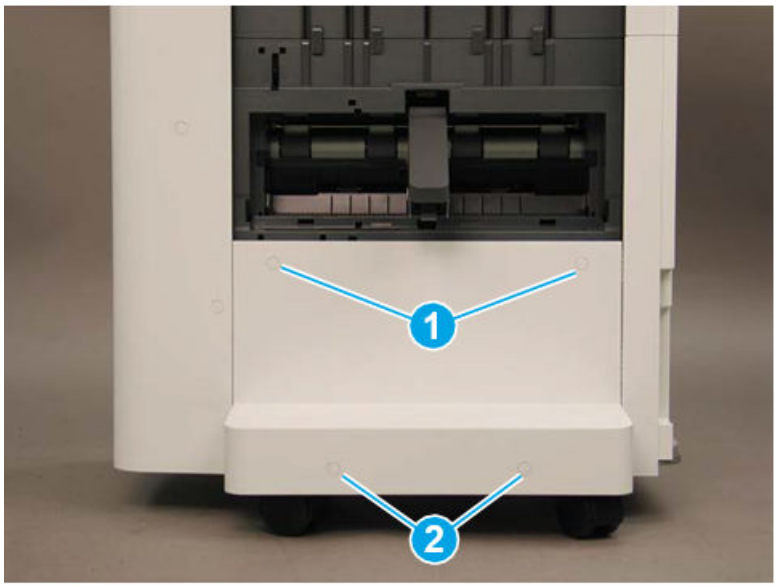


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-1136 Remove four screws

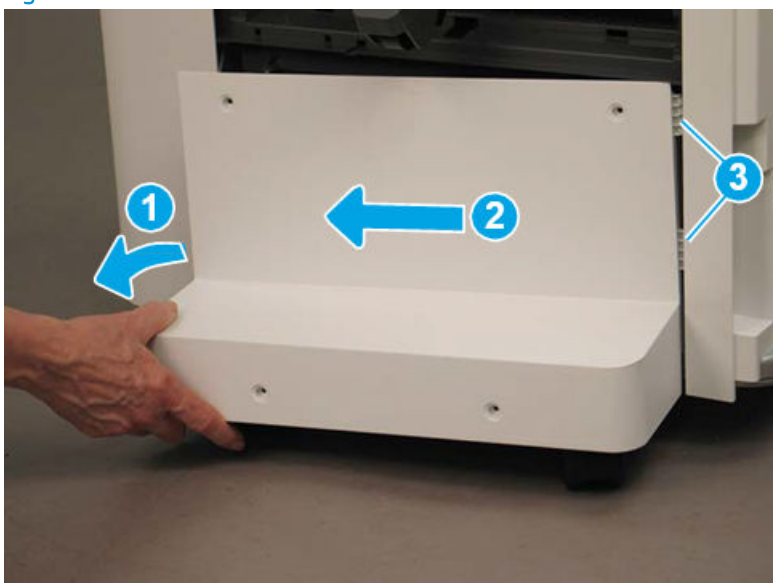


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1137 Remove the caster cover



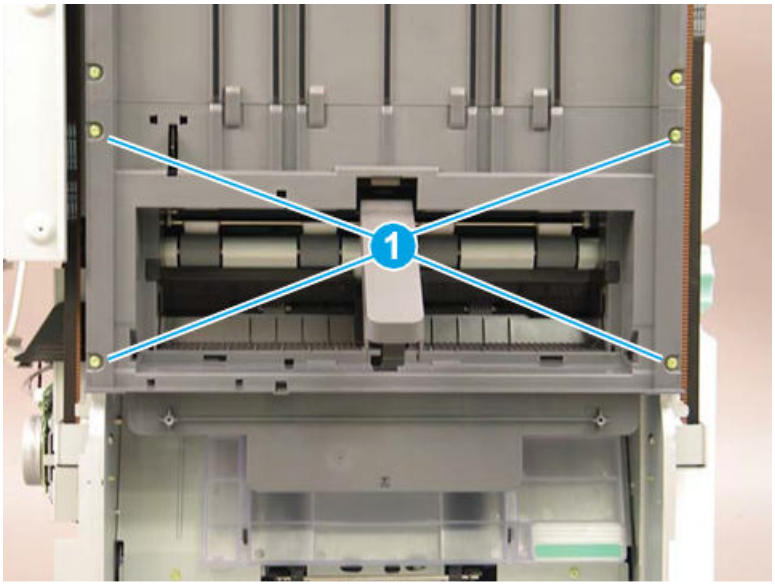
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-1138 Remove four screws

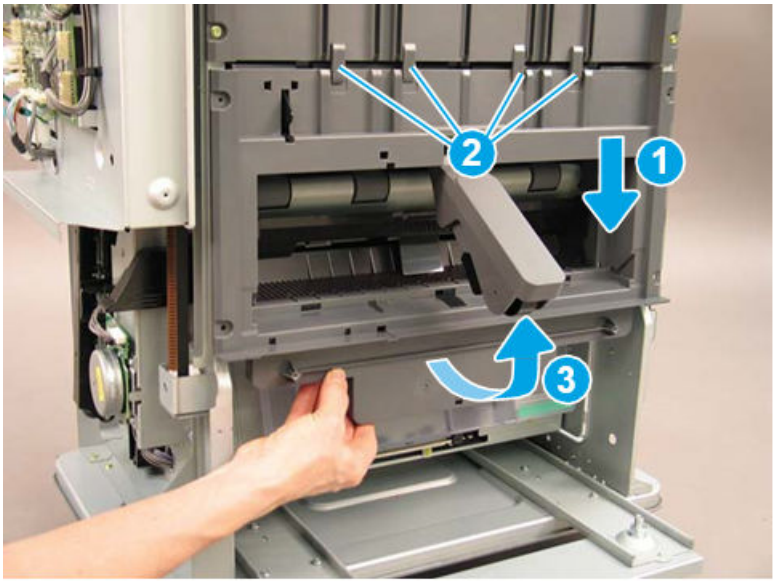


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

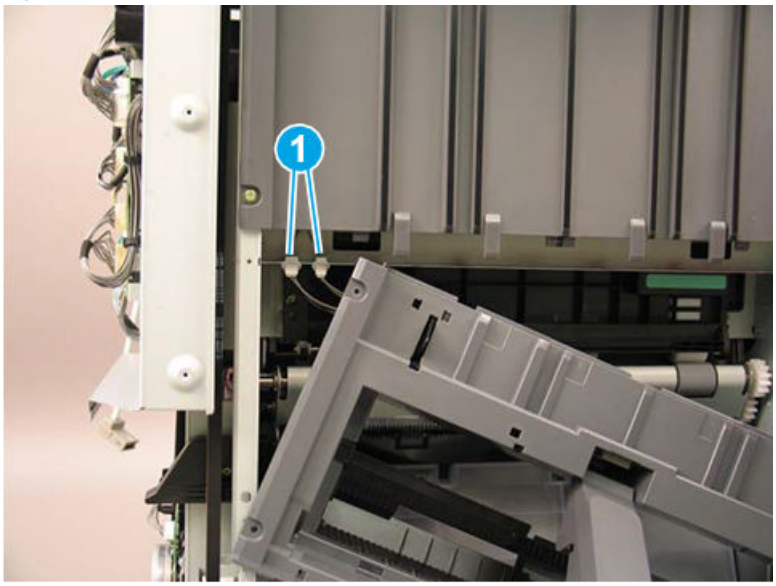
Figure 5-1139 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

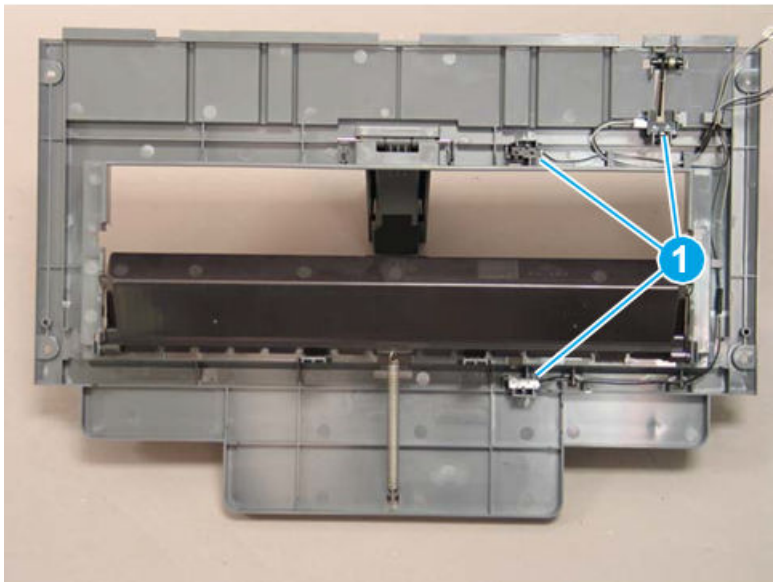
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1140 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-1141 Remove the left lower cover

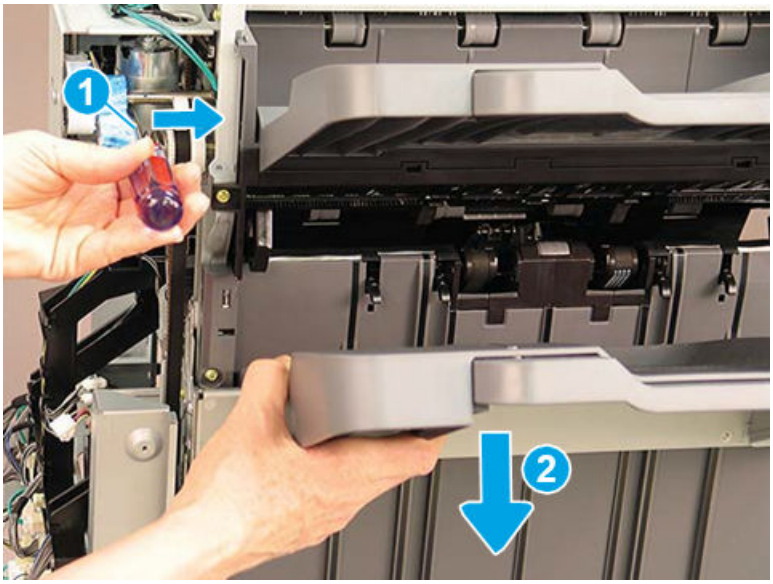


Remove the left upper cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover (finisher).

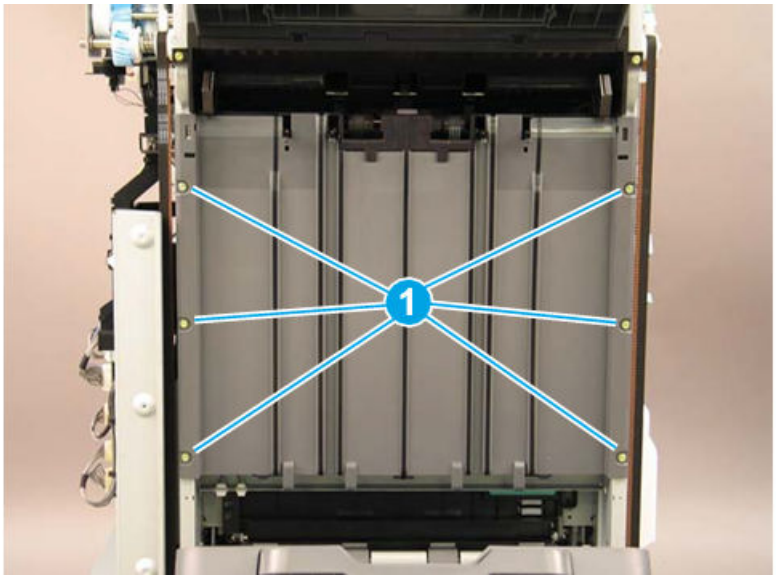
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 5-1142 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1143 Remove six screws

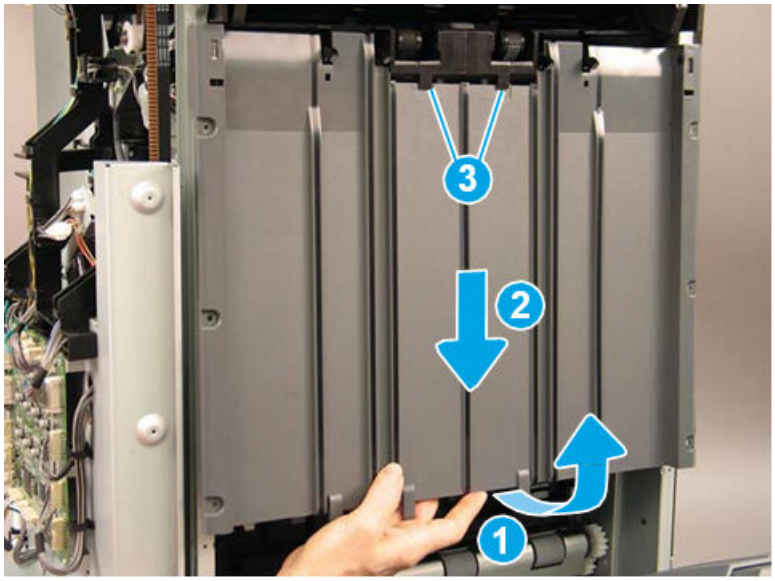


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away fromthe finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

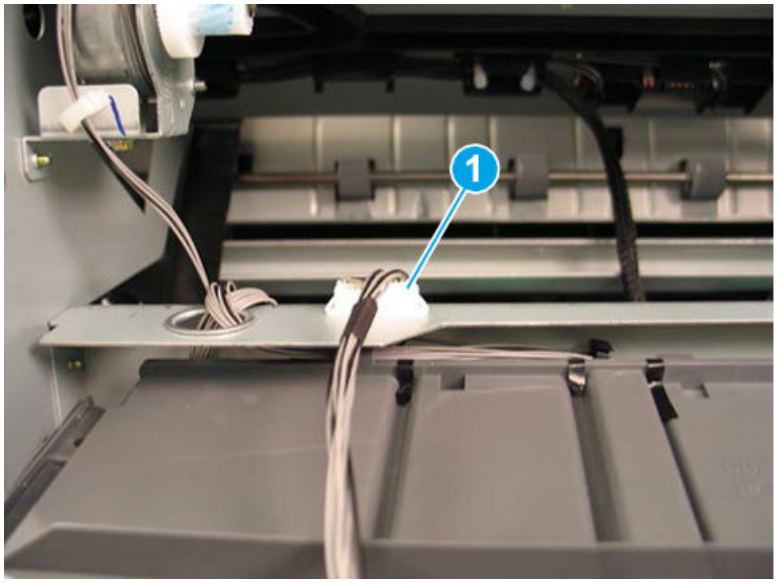
Figure 5-1144 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

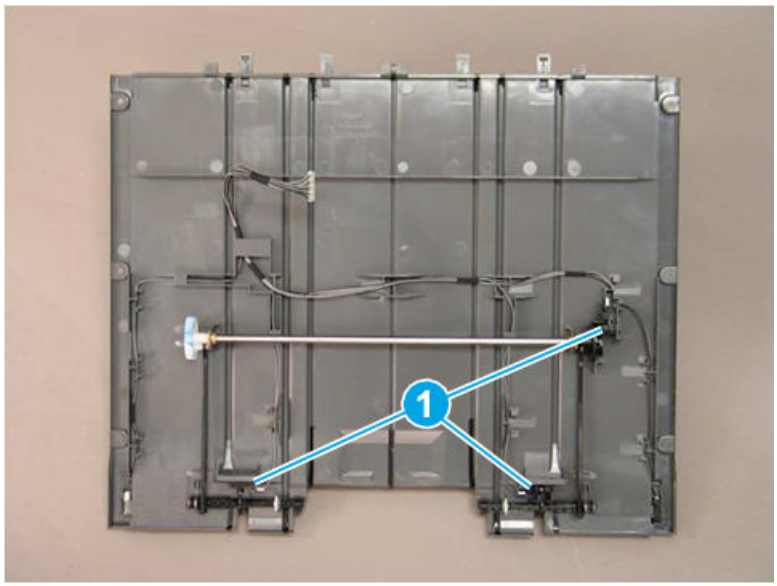
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1145 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the left upper cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left upper cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-1146 Remove the left upper cover

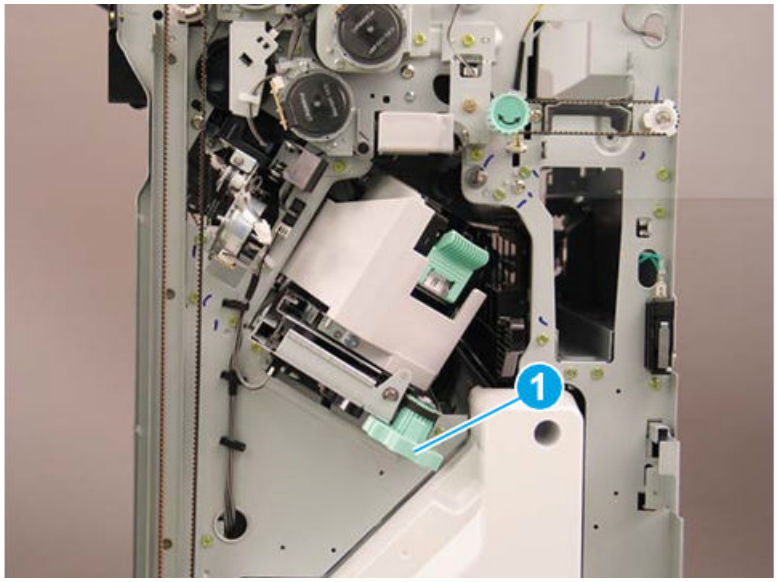


Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the ejector unit (finisher).

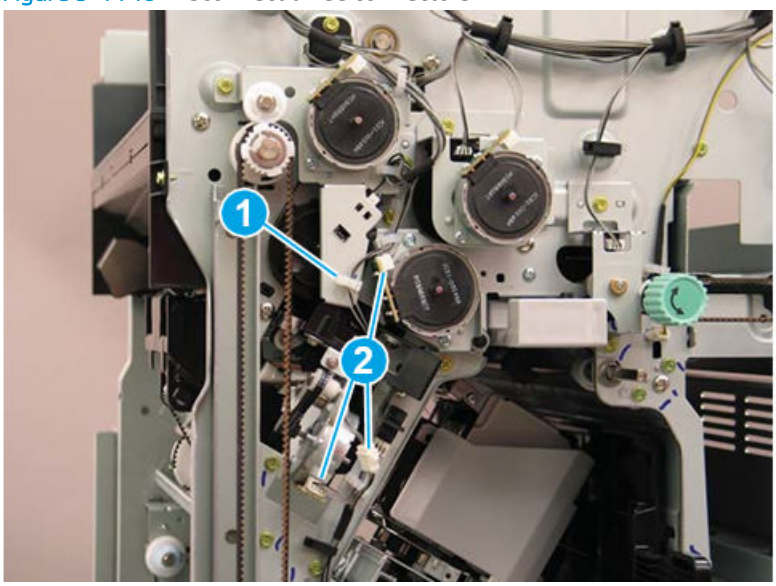
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 5-1147 Move the staple unit to the center



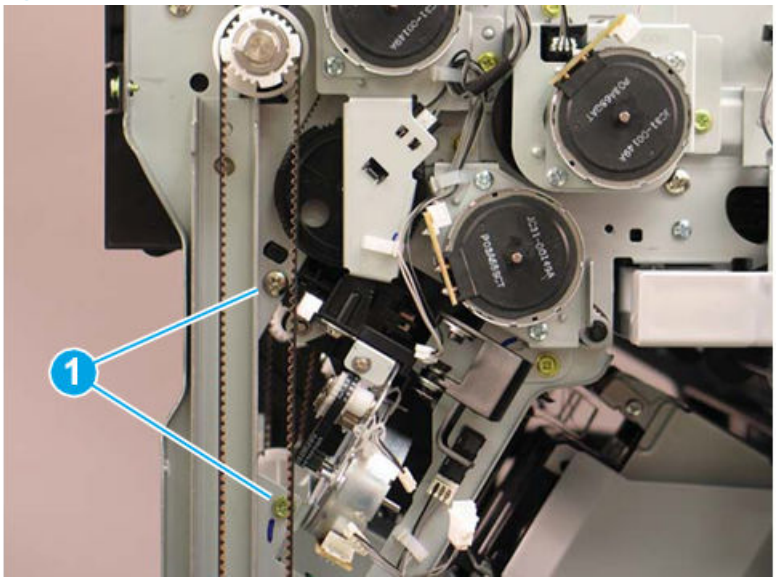
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 5-1148 Disconnect three connectors



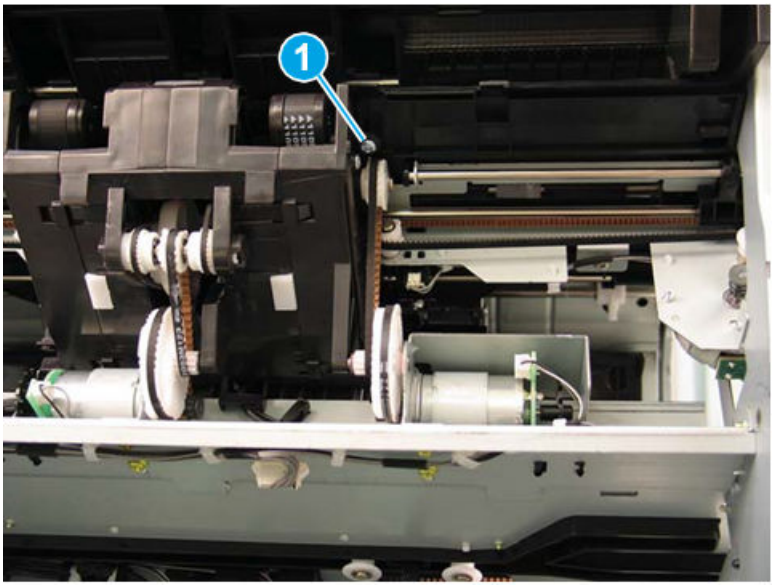
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1149 Remove two screws



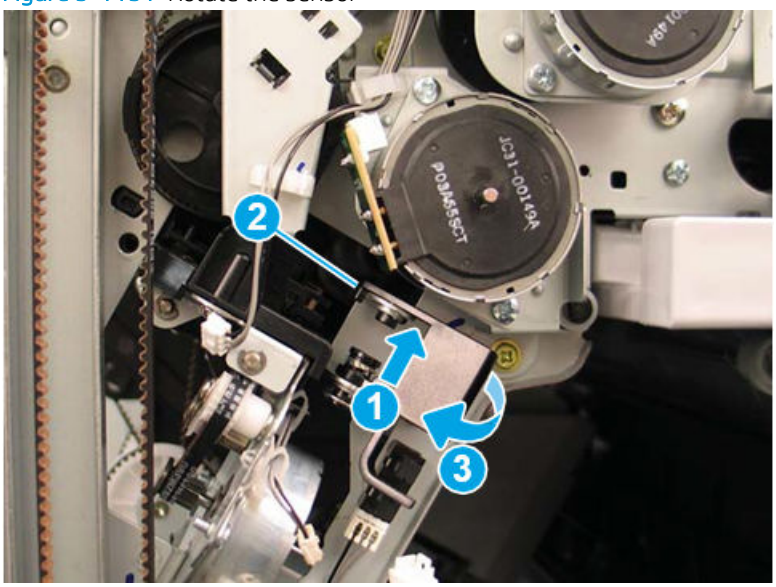
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1150 Remove one screw



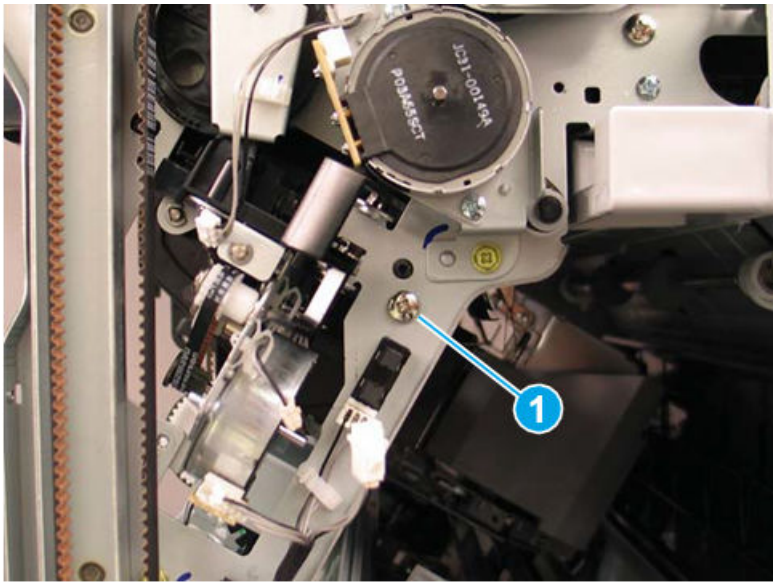
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 5-1151 Rotate the sensor



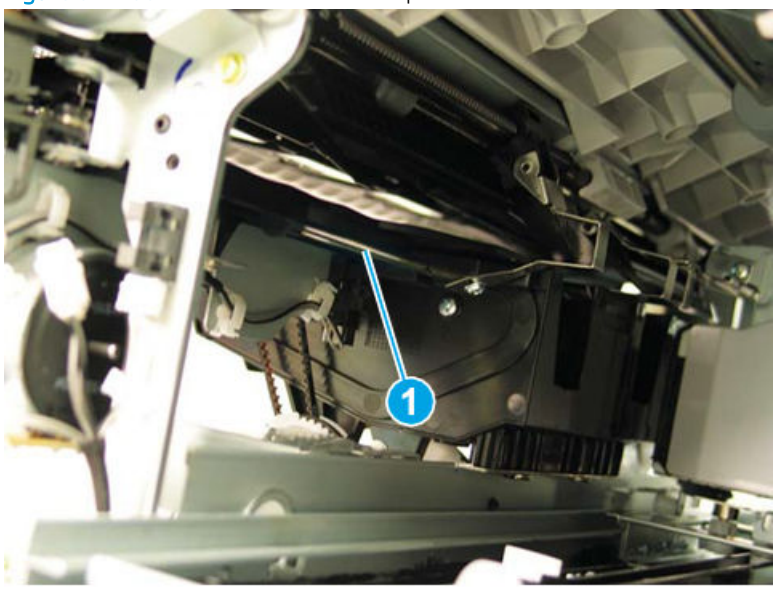
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1152 Remove one screw



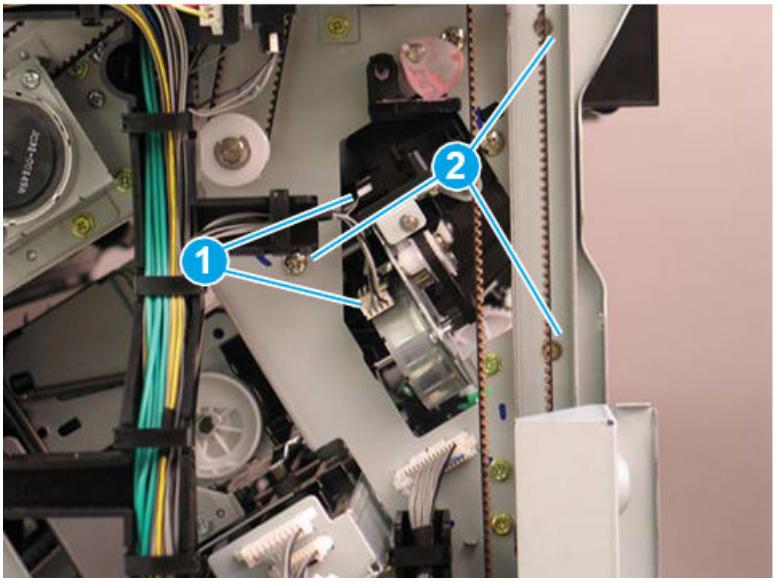
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 5-1153 Remove the front tamper shaft



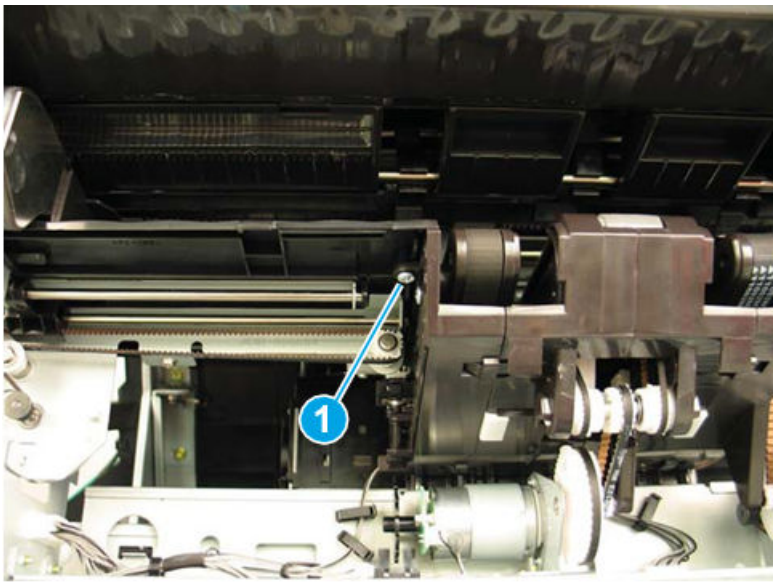
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-1154 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



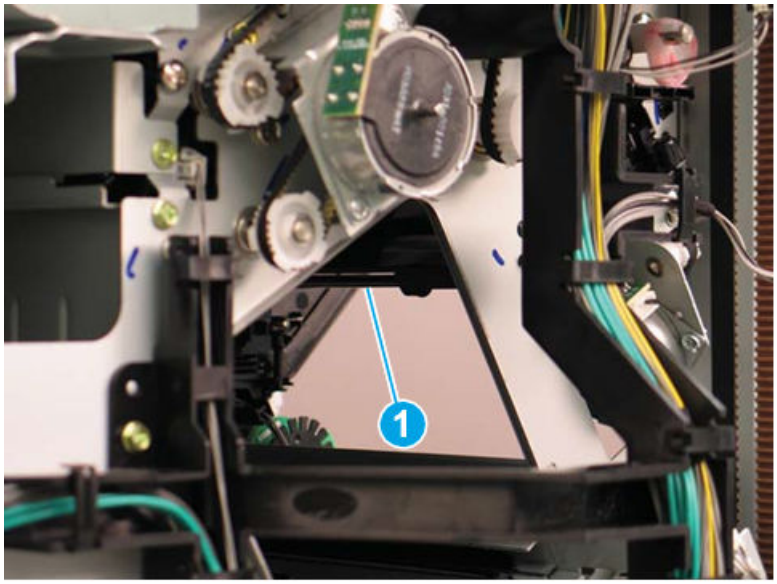
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1155 Remove one screw



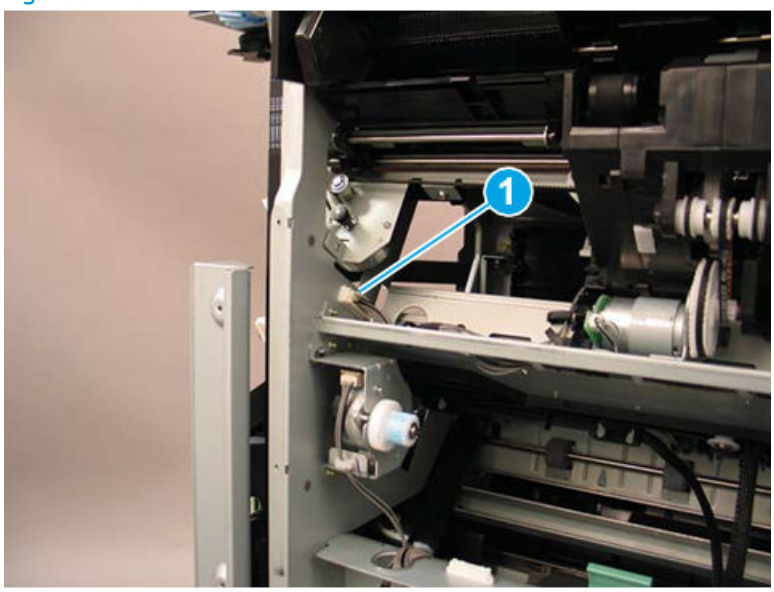
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 5-1156 Remove the rear tamper shaft



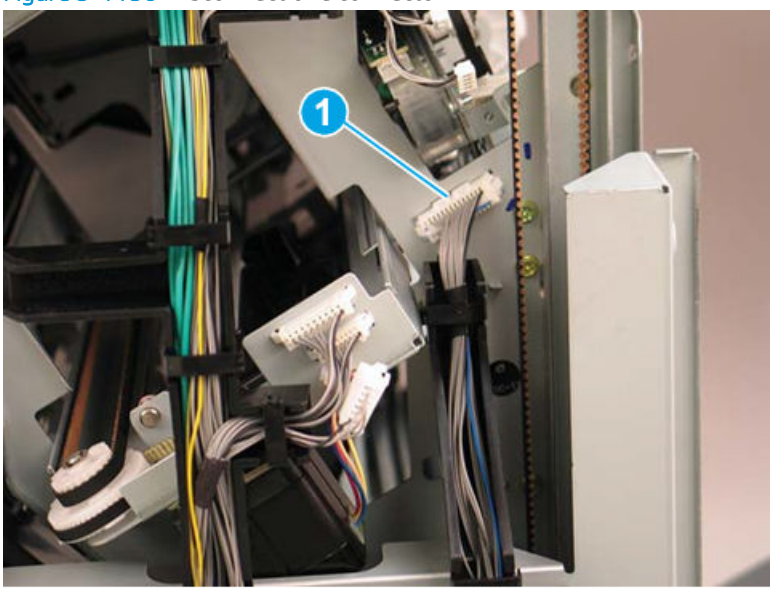
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-1157 Disconnect one connector



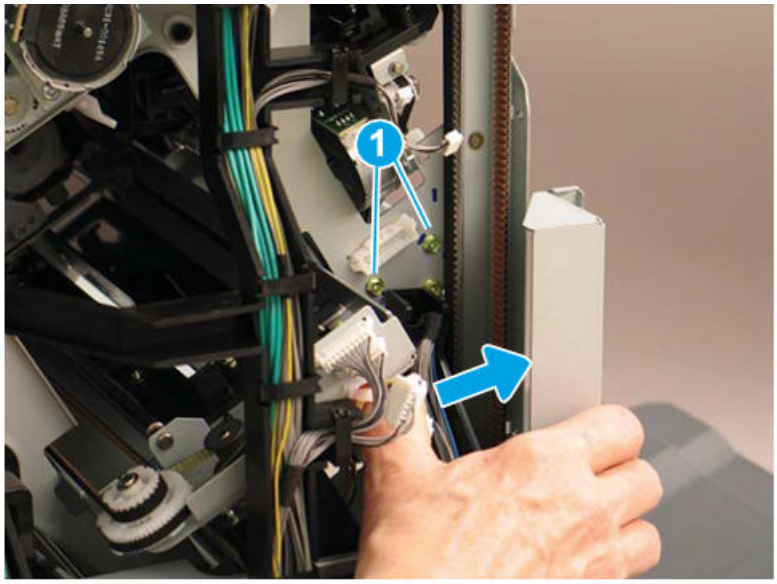
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-1158 Disconnect one connector



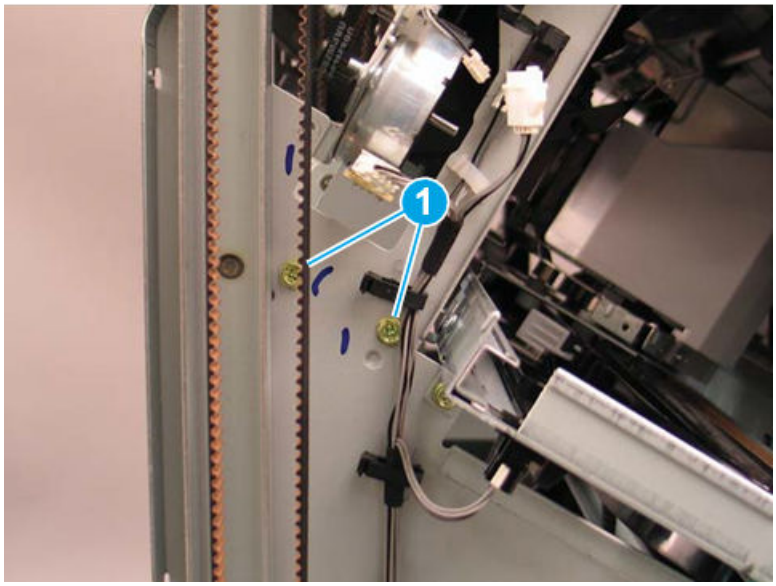
13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1159 Disconnect one connector



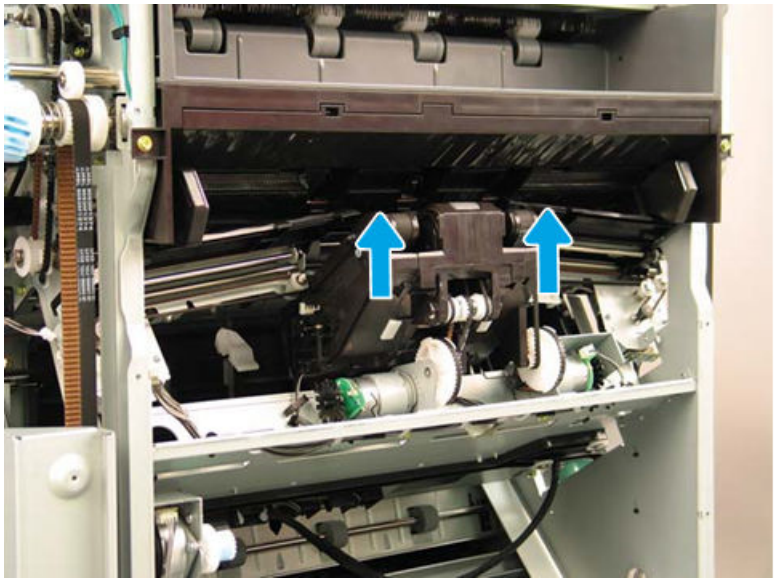
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1160 Remove two screws



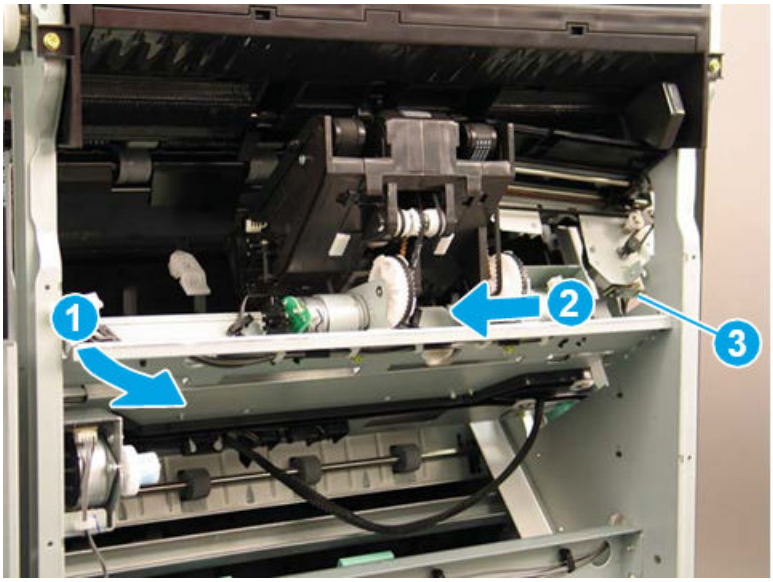
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 5-1161 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 5-1162 Remove the ejector unit

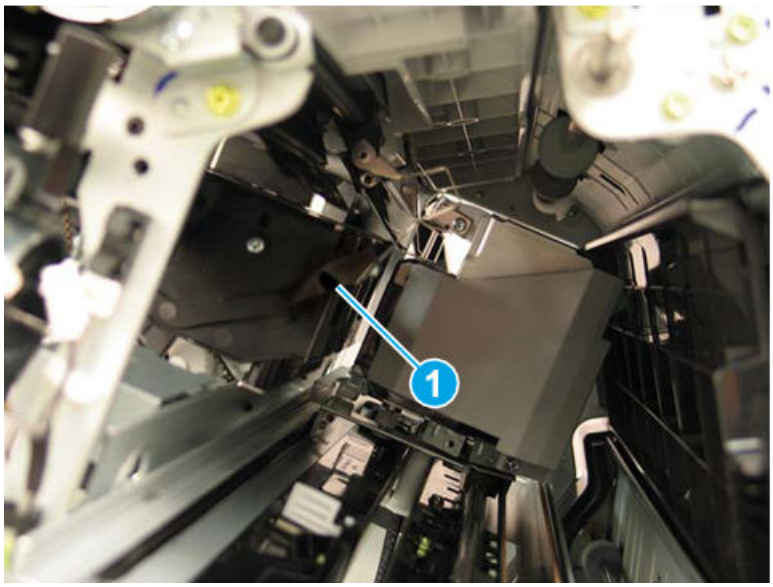


17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

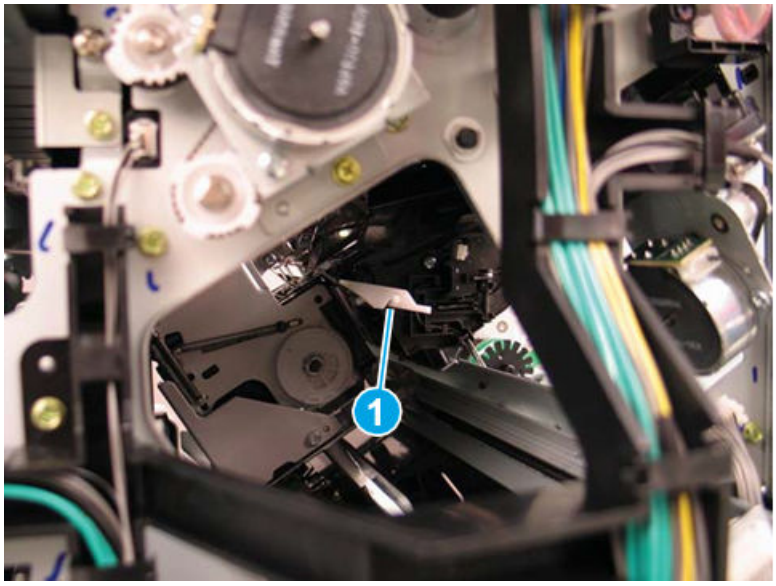
NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

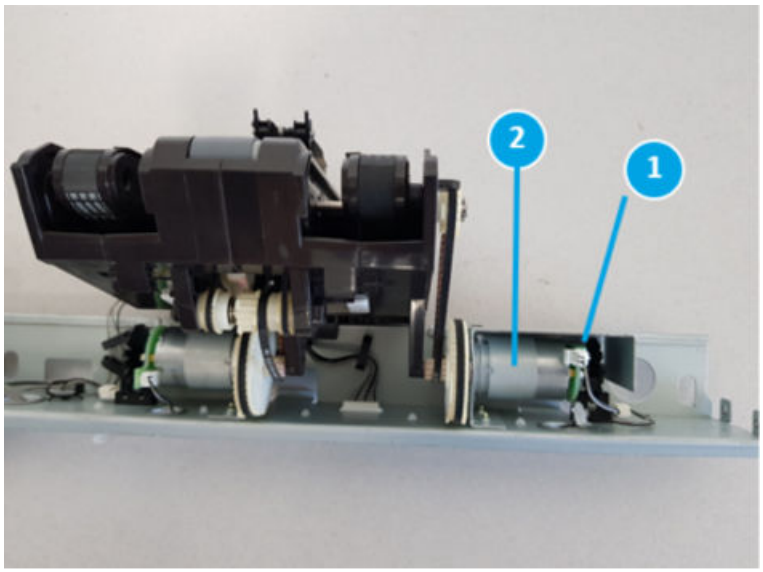


Remove the ejector2 motor sensor(S23)

Follow these steps to remove the ejector2 motor sensor(S23).

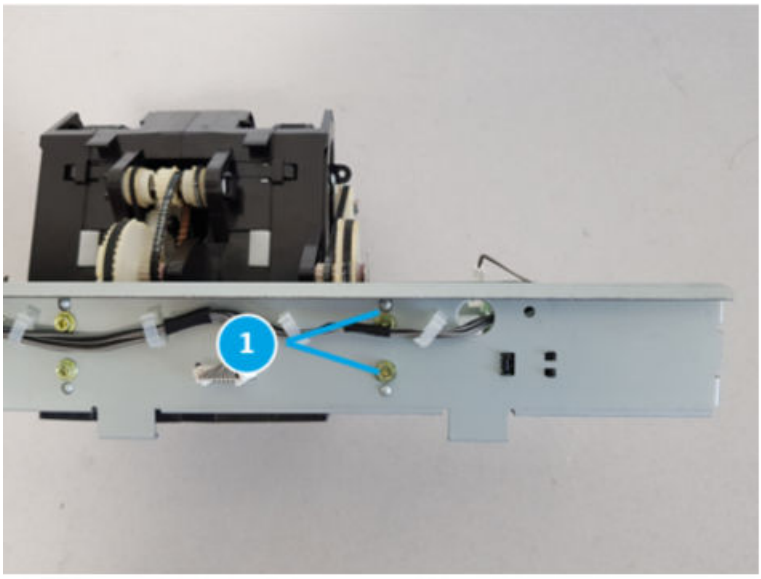
1. Disconnect the connector(callout 1) from ejector2 motor(M5, callout 2) of ejector unit.

Figure 5-1163 Disconnect the connector



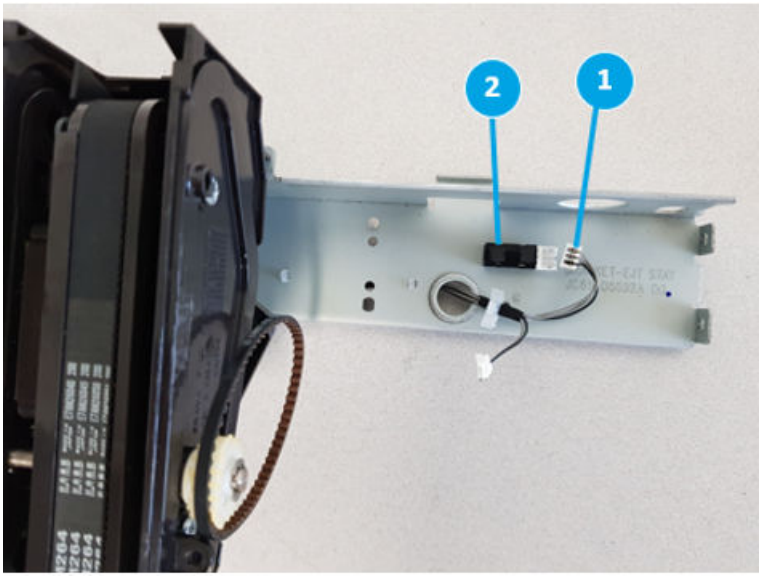
2. Remove two screws(callout 1).

Figure 5-1164 Remove two screws



3. Remove the ejector2 motor from ejector unit, disconnect the connector(callout 1), and then remove the ejector2 motor sensor(S23, callout 2)

Figure 5-1165 Remove the ejector2 motor sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Ejector2 motor (M5)

Learn how to remove and replace the ejector2 motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the ejector2 motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-131 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01168A	Ejector2 motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

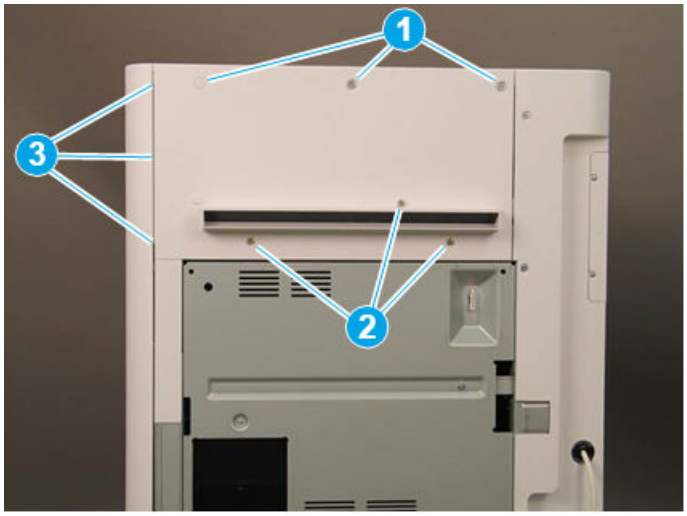
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1166 Remove the right upper cover

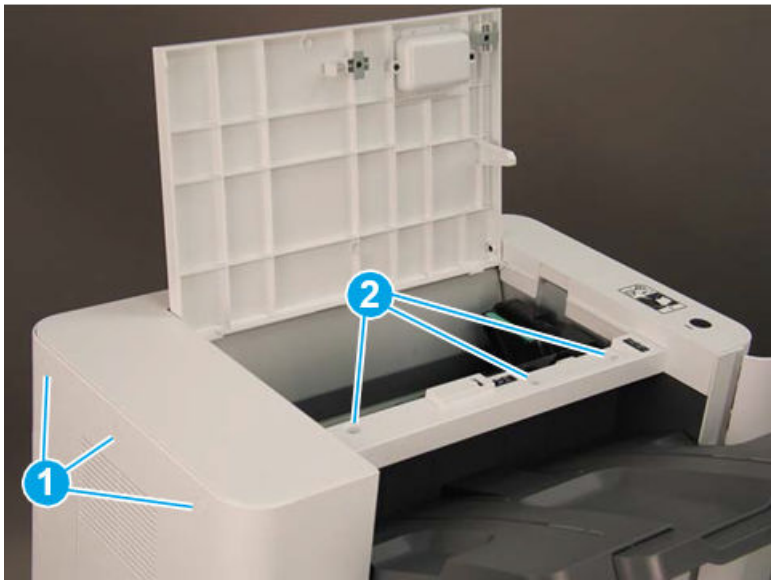


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

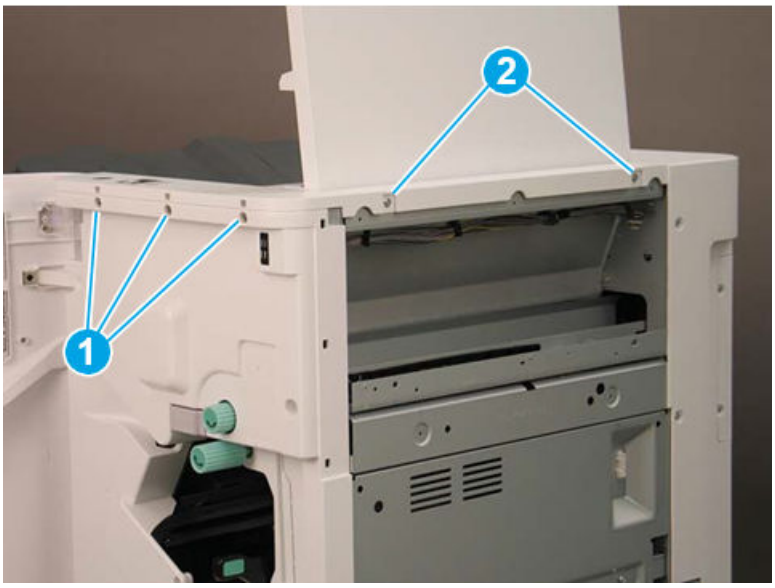
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1167 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

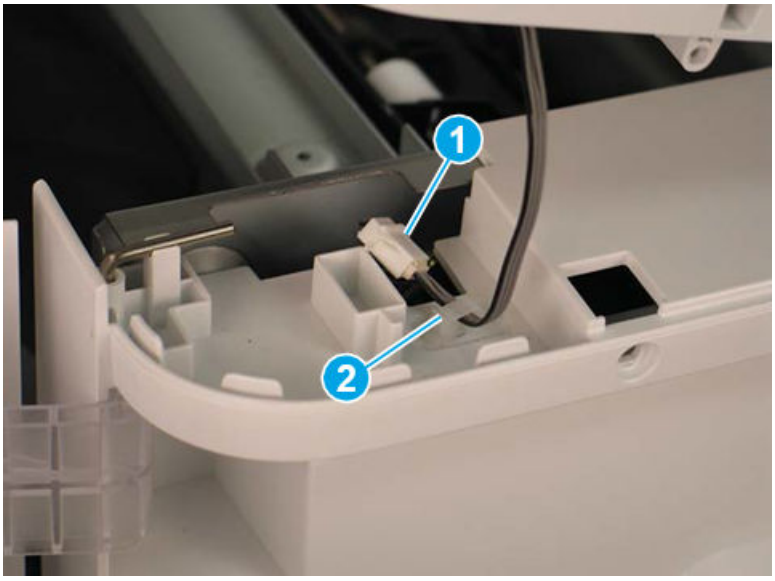
Figure 5-1168 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1169 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

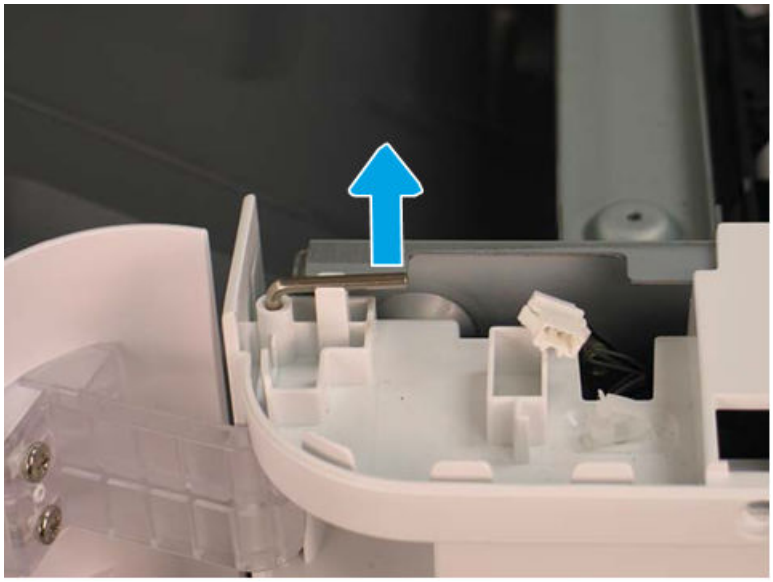


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

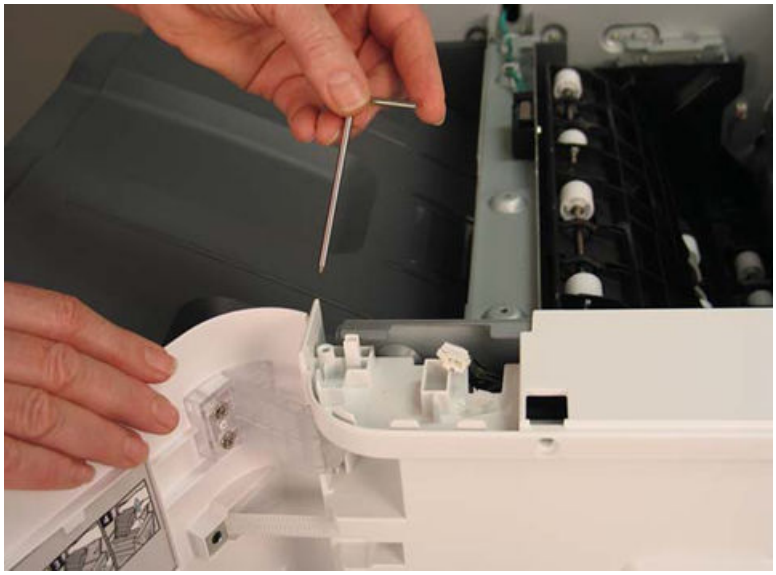
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-1170 Lift the top hinge pin



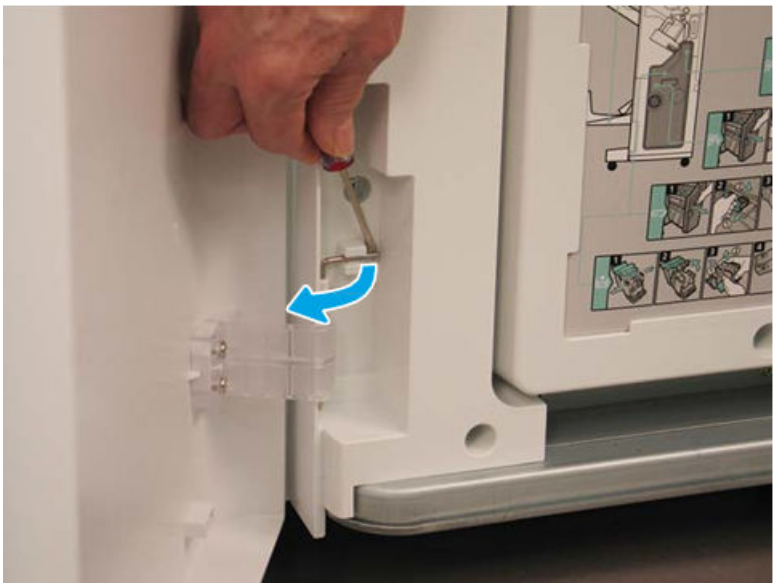
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-1171 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1172 Release the lower hinge pin



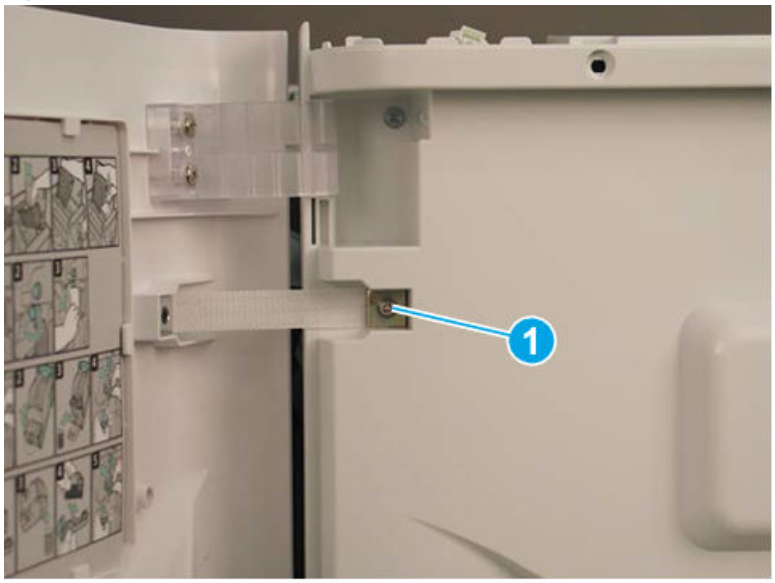
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-1173 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1174 Remove the front door

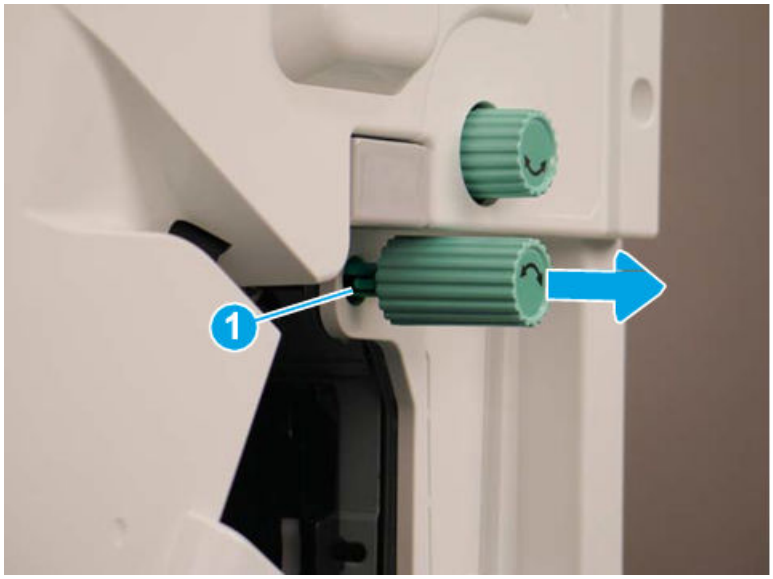


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-1175 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

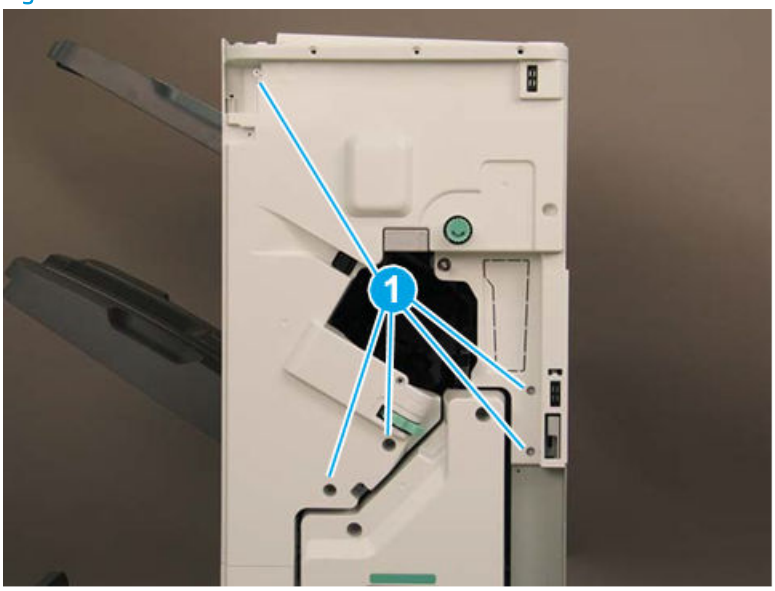
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-1176 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1177 Remove the front cover

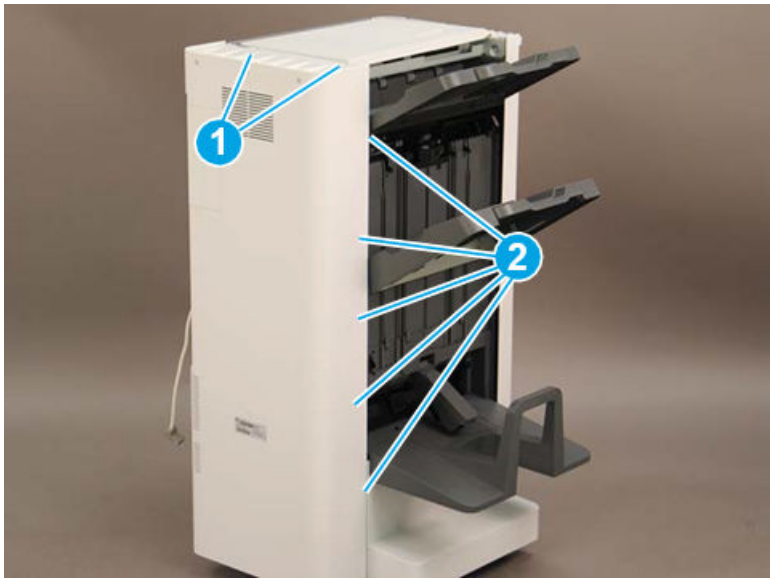


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1178 Remove seven screws

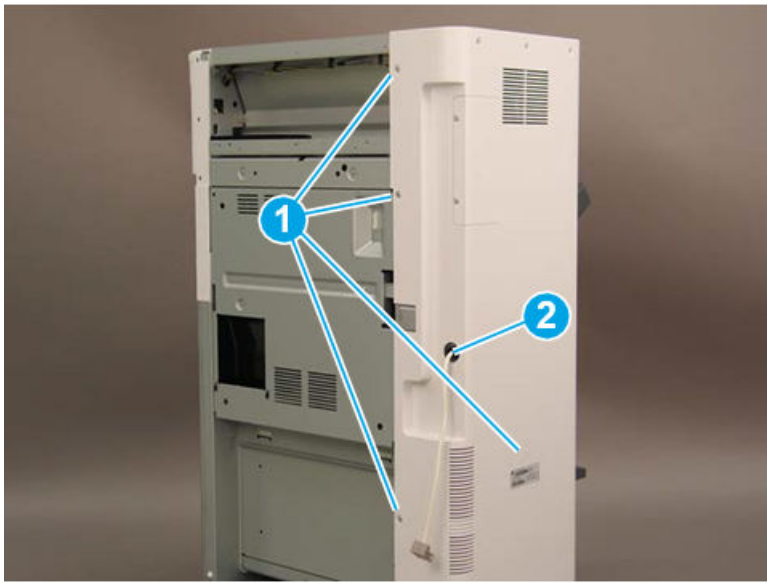


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1179 Remove the rear cover

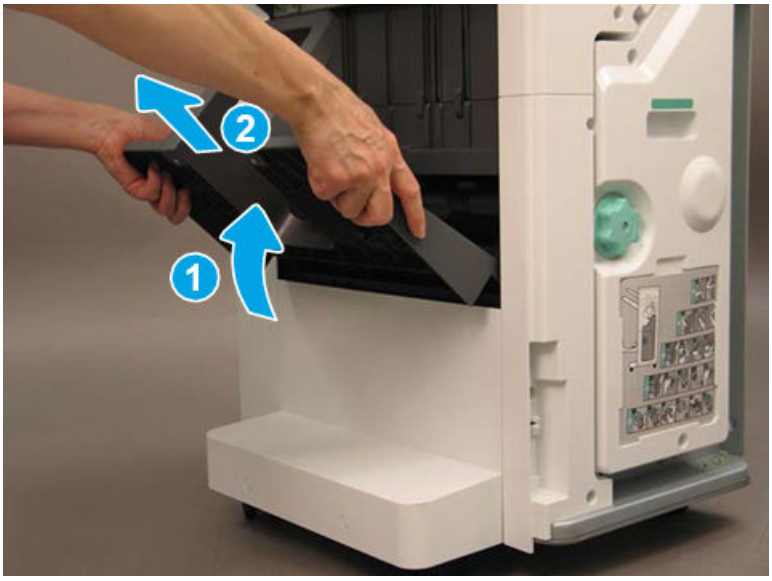


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1180 Remove the booklet output tray



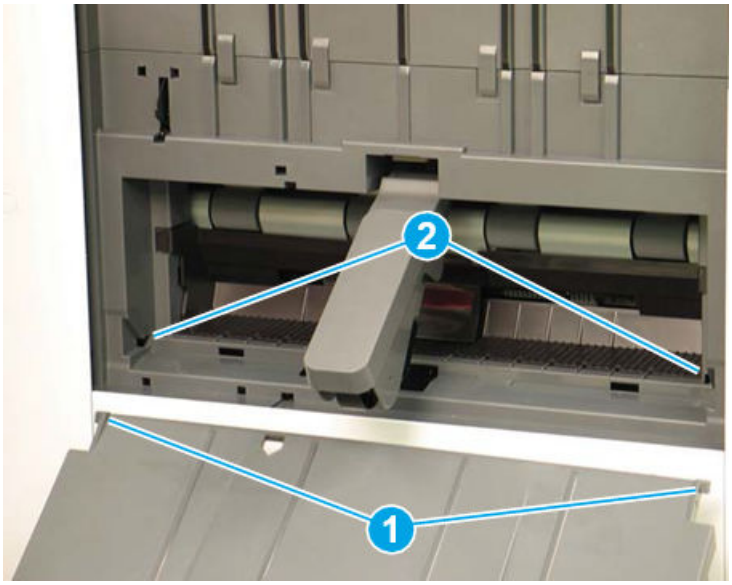
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-1181 Install the booklet output tray

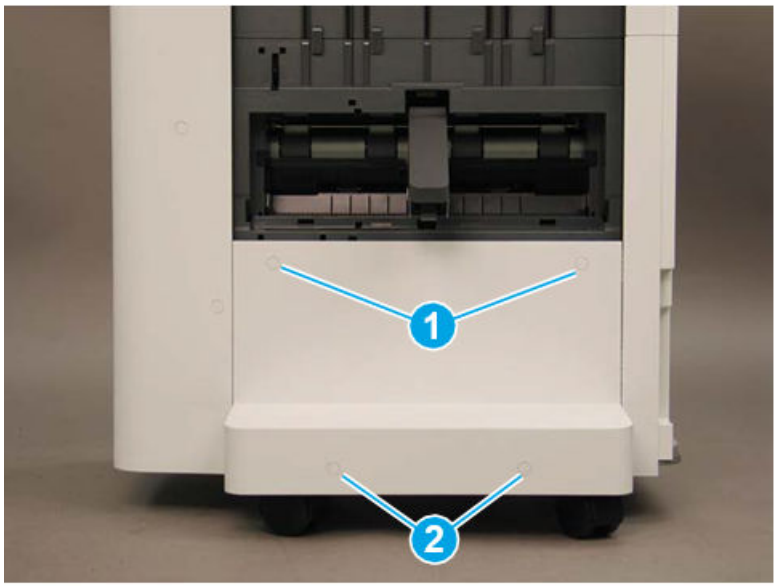


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-1182 Remove four screws

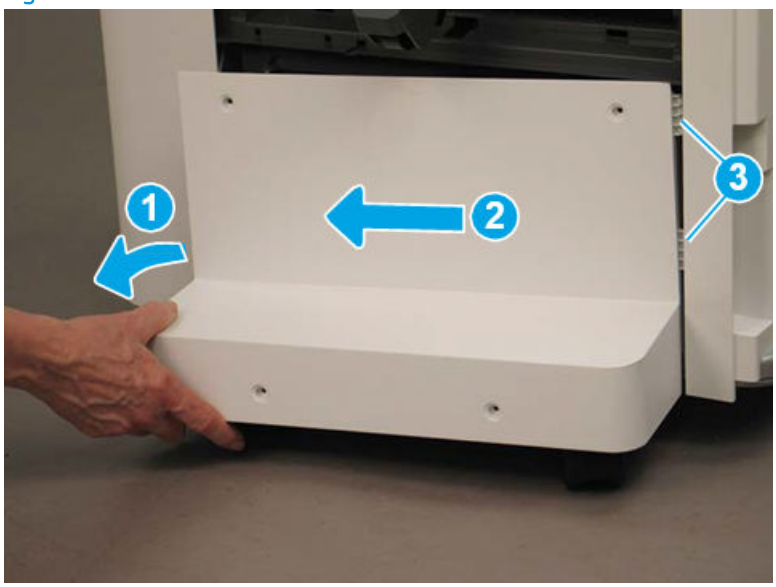


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1183 Remove the caster cover



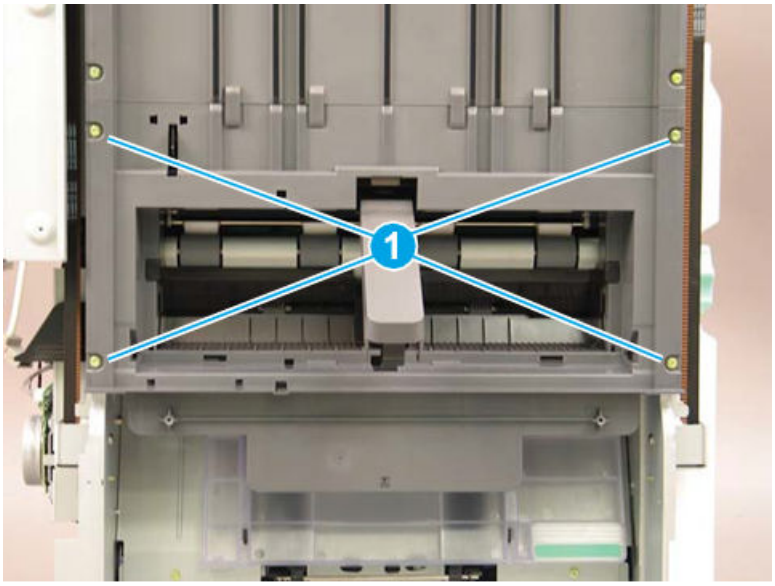
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-1184 Remove four screws

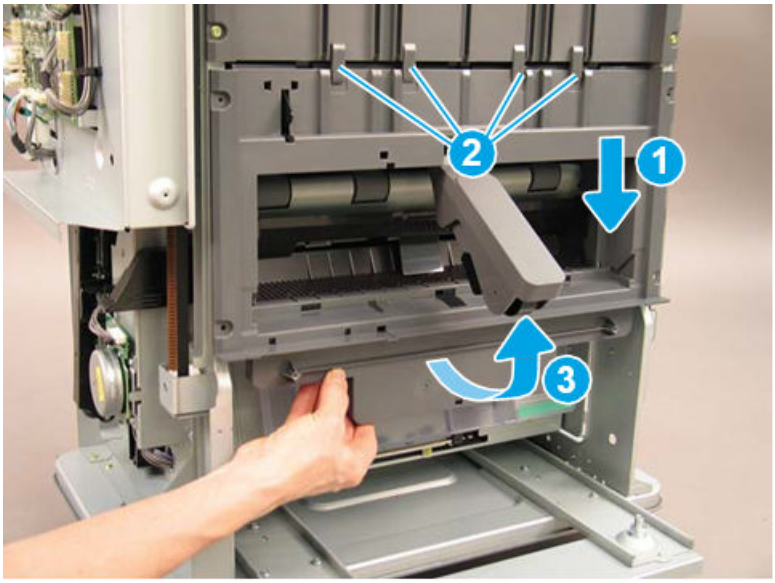


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

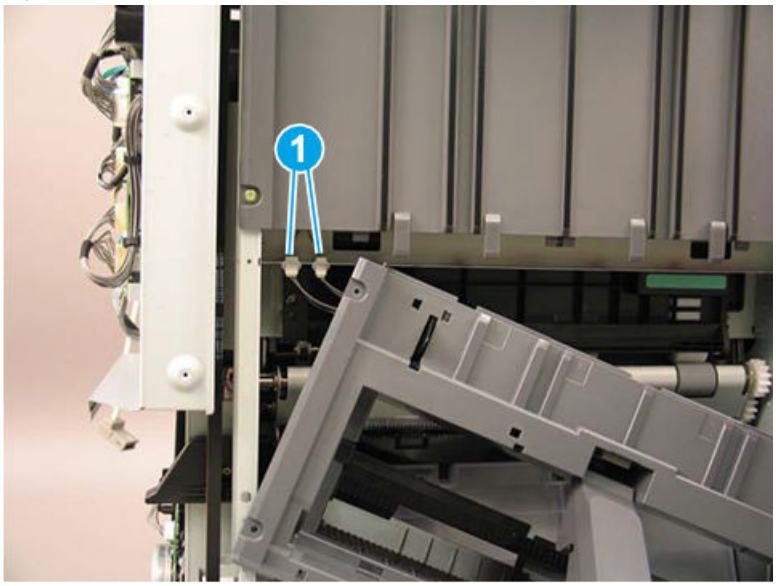
Figure 5-1185 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

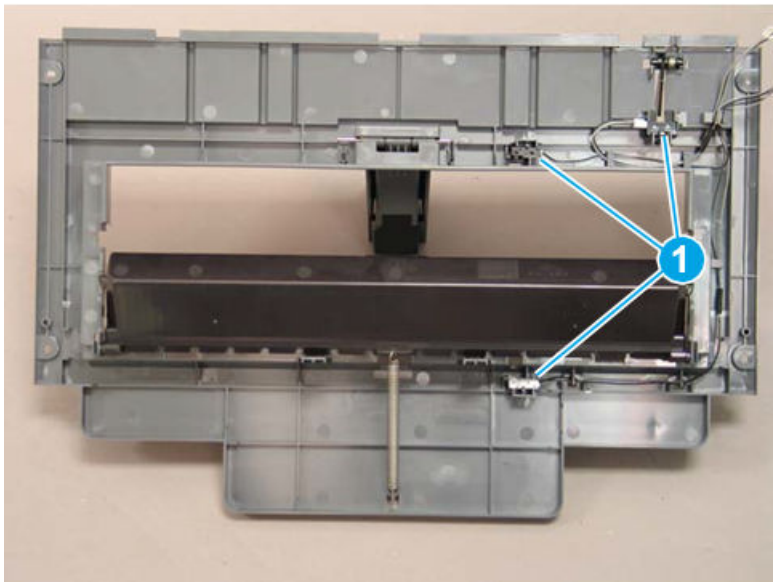
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1186 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-1187 Remove the left lower cover

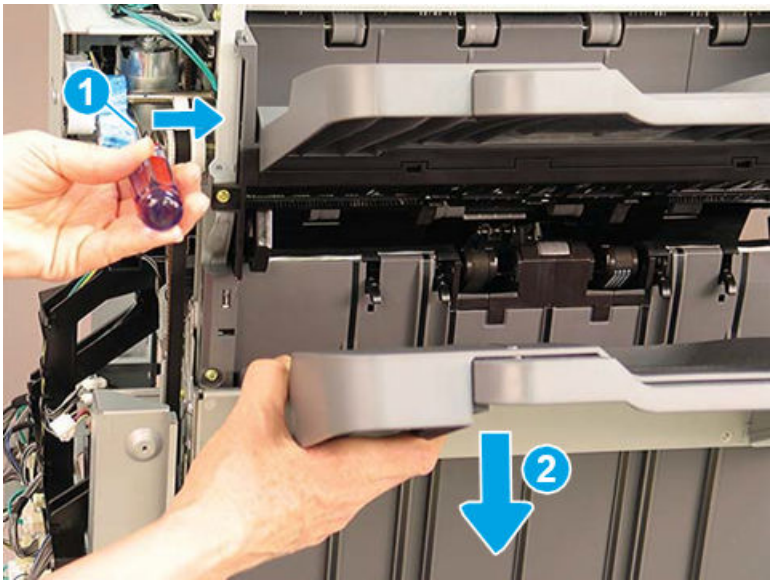


Remove the left upper cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover (finisher).

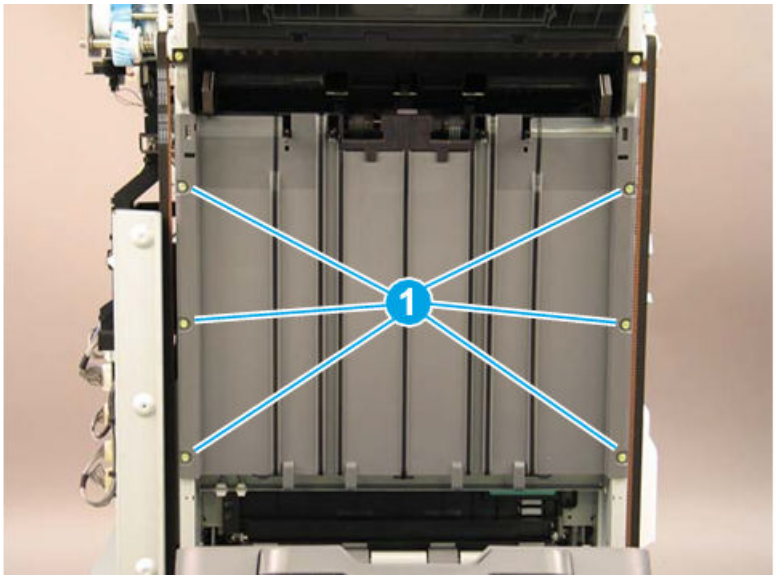
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 5-1188 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1189 Remove six screws

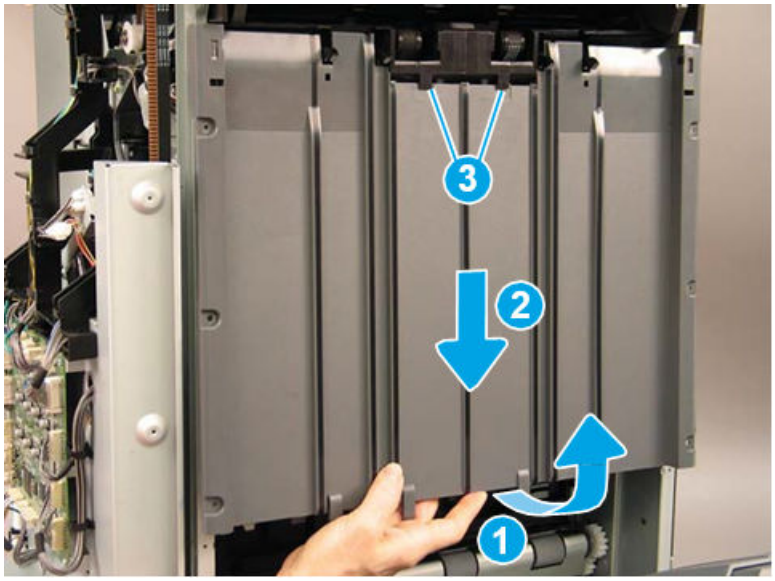


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away fromthe finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

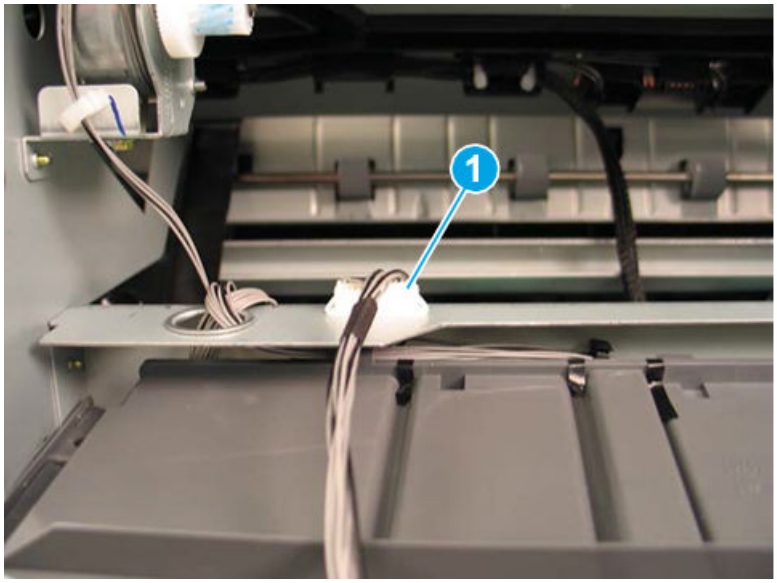
Figure 5-1190 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

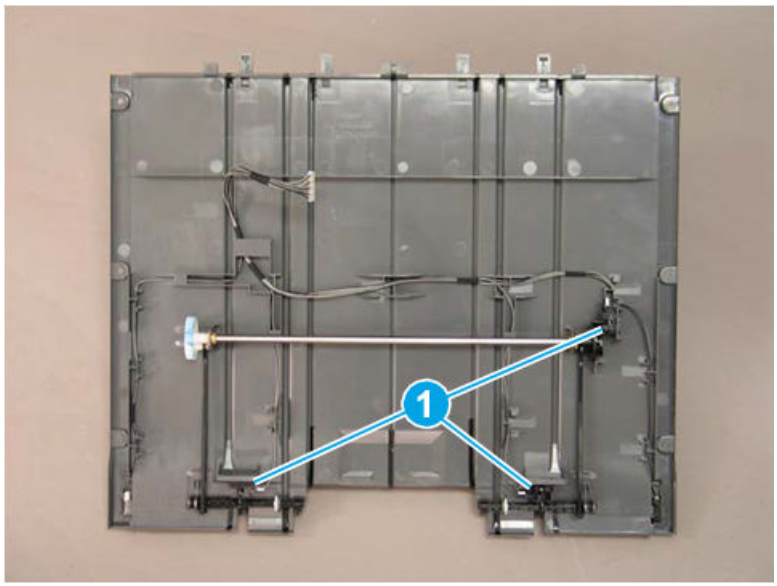
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1191 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the left upper cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left upper cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-1192 Remove the left upper cover

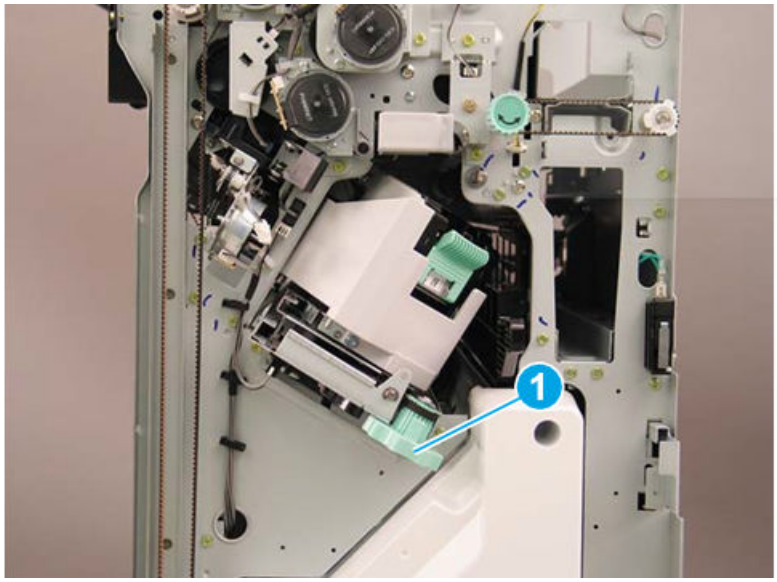


Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the ejector unit (finisher).

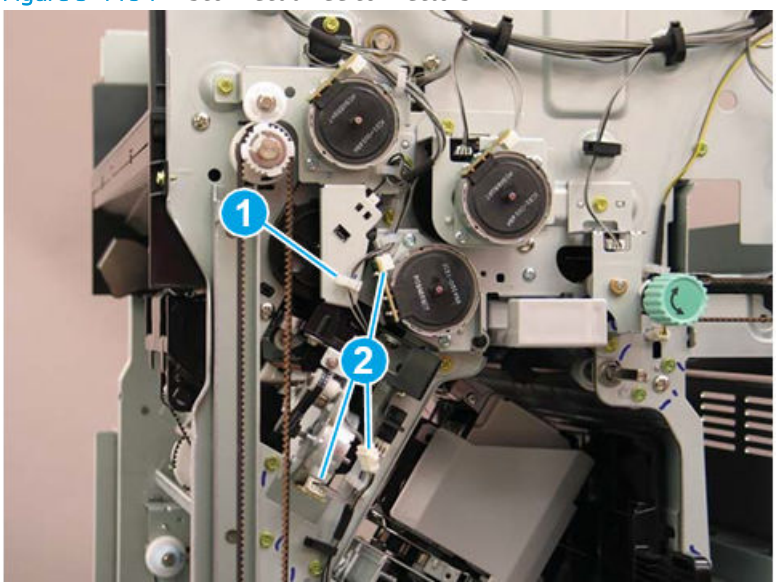
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 5-1193 Move the staple unit to the center



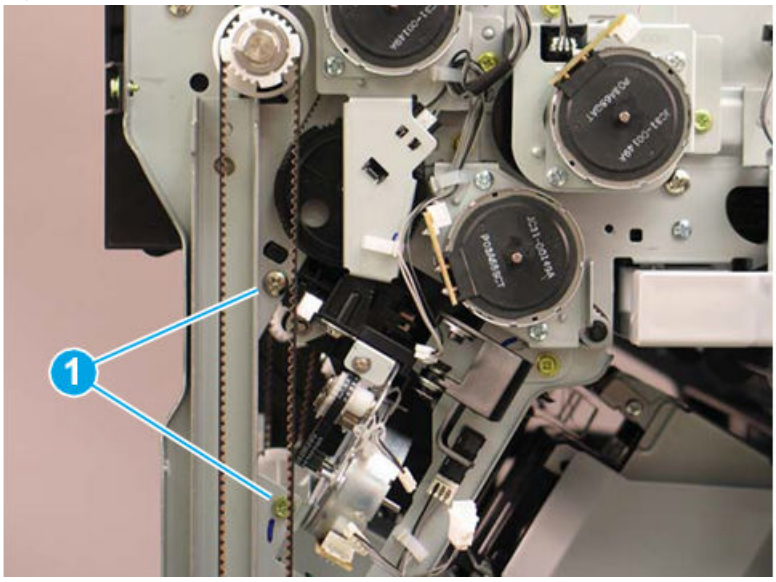
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 5-1194 Disconnect three connectors



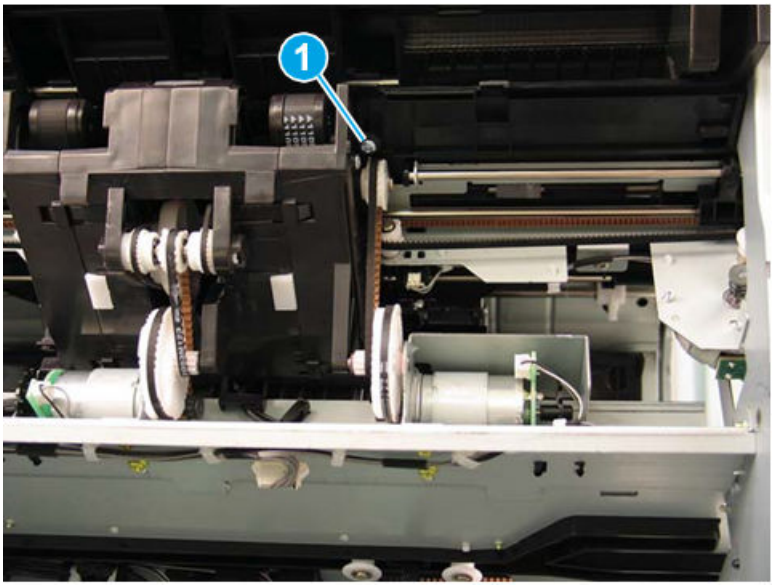
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1195 Remove two screws



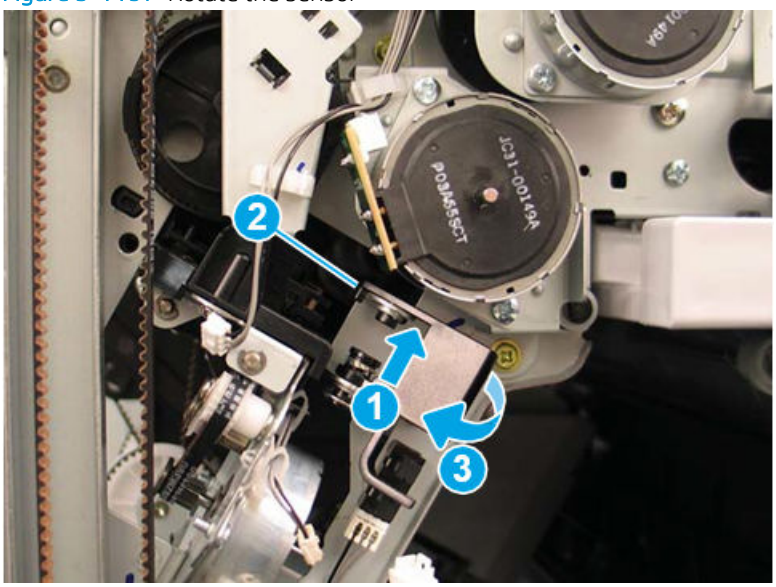
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1196 Remove one screw



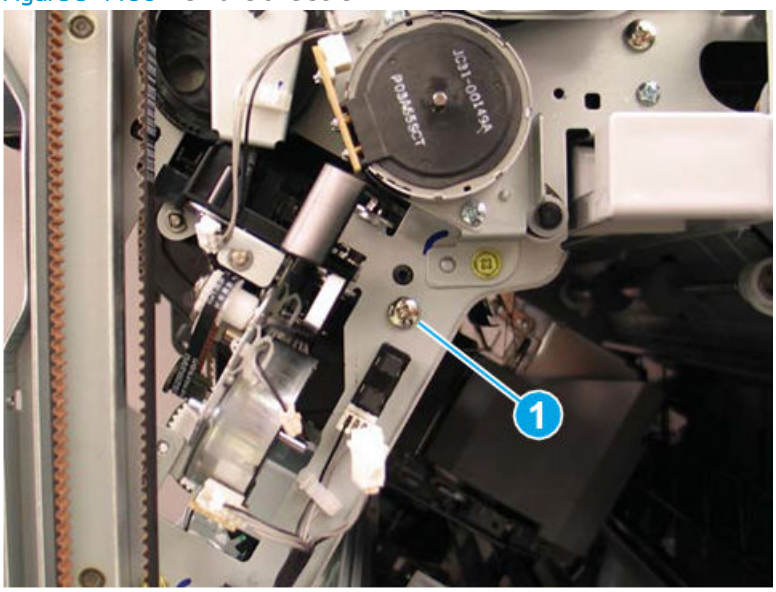
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 5-1197 Rotate the sensor



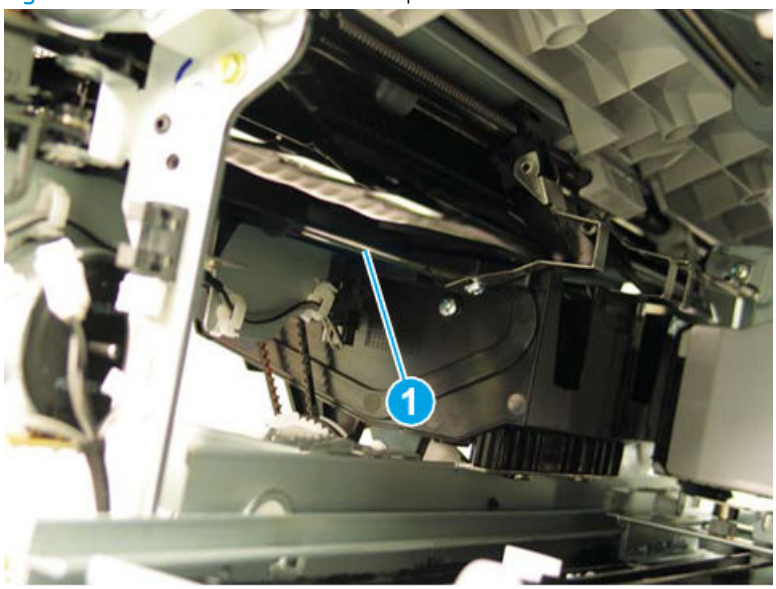
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1198 Remove one screw



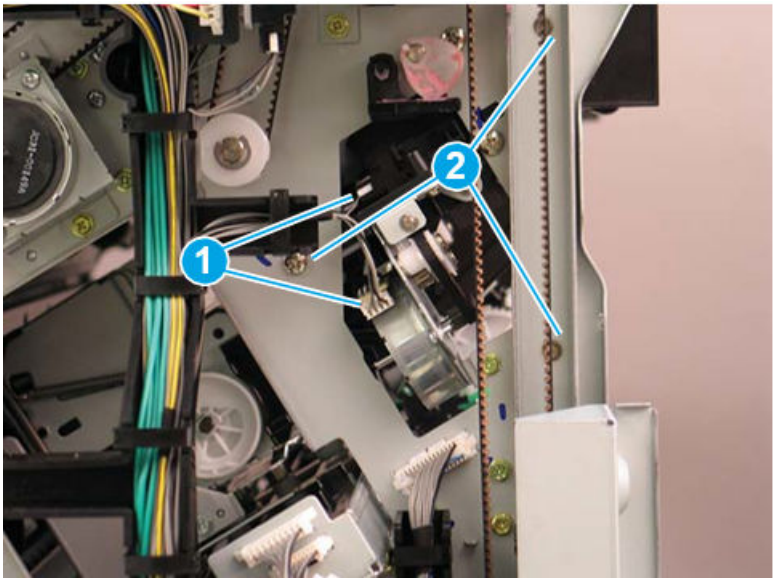
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 5-1199 Remove the front tamper shaft



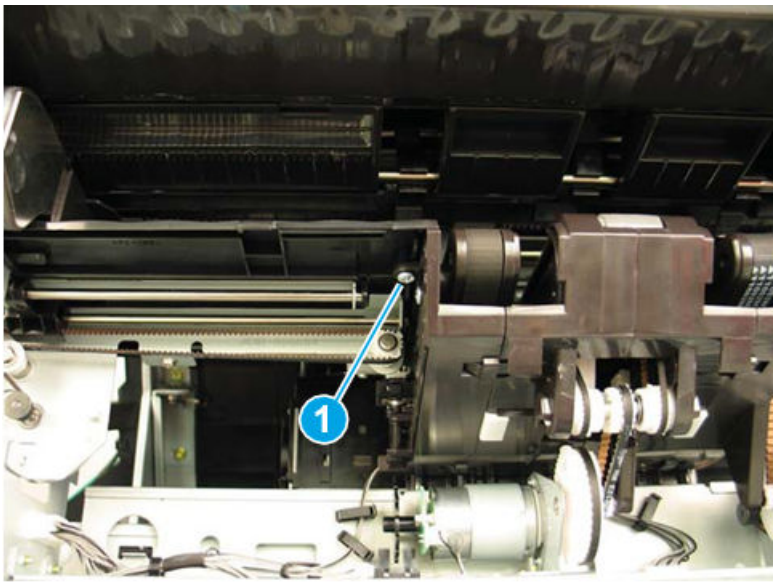
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-1200 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



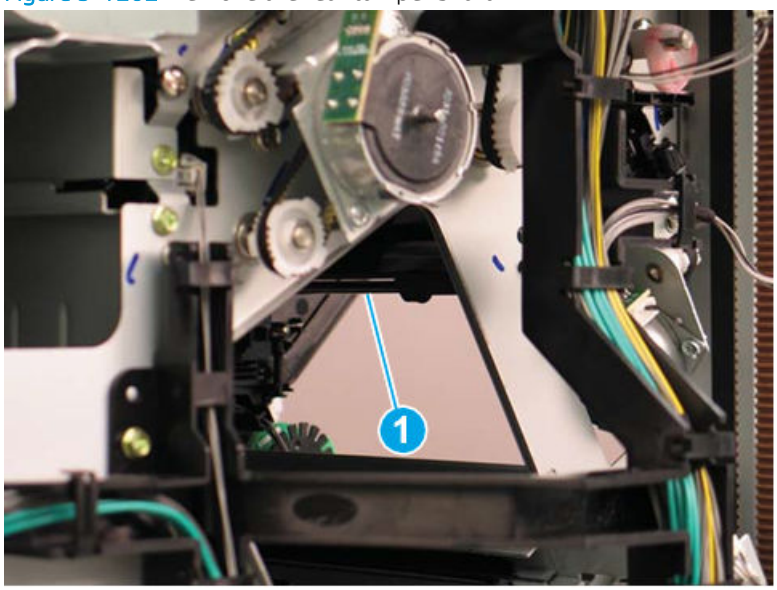
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1201 Remove one screw



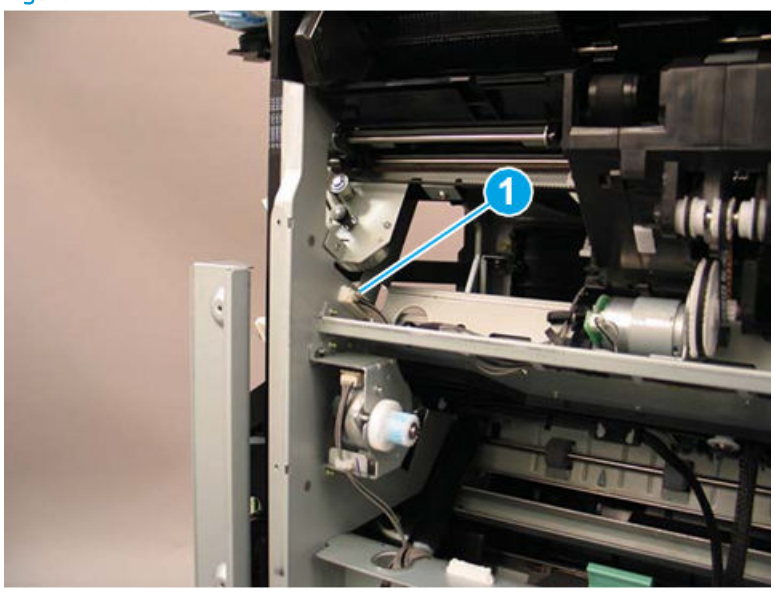
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 5-1202 Remove the rear tamper shaft



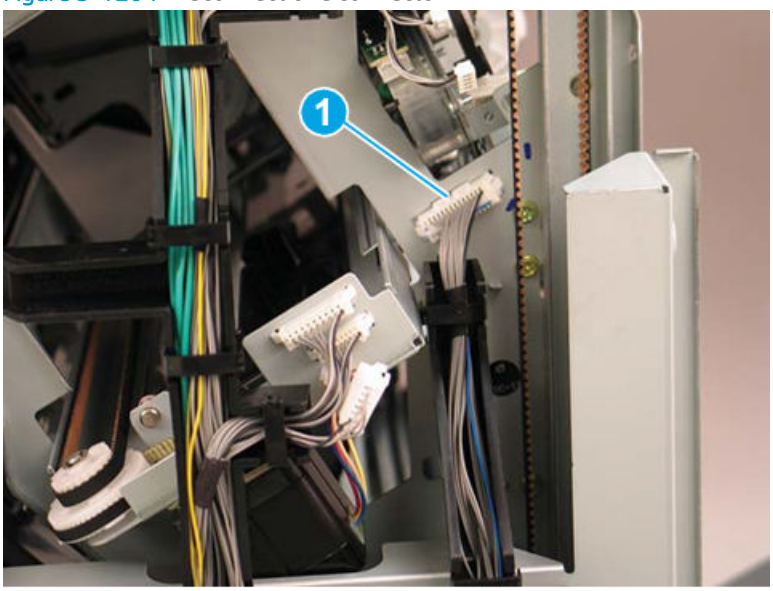
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-1203 Disconnect one connector



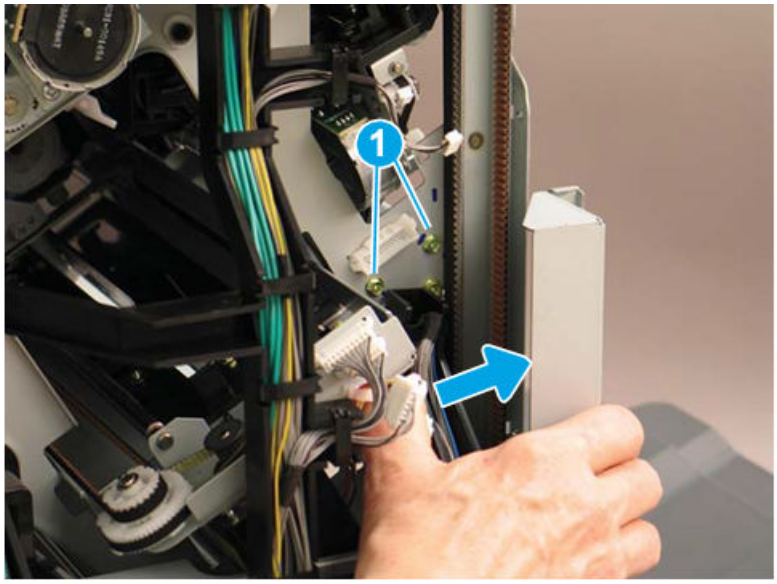
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-1204 Disconnect one connector



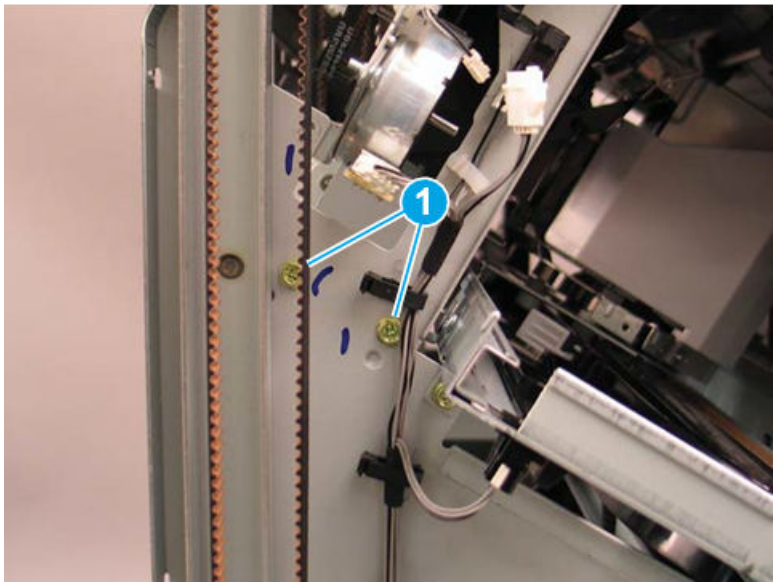
13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1205 Disconnect one connector



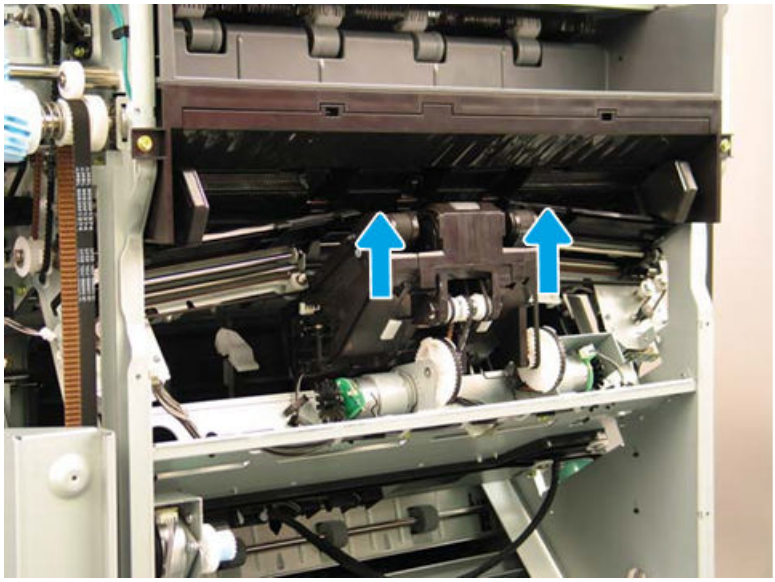
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1206 Remove two screws



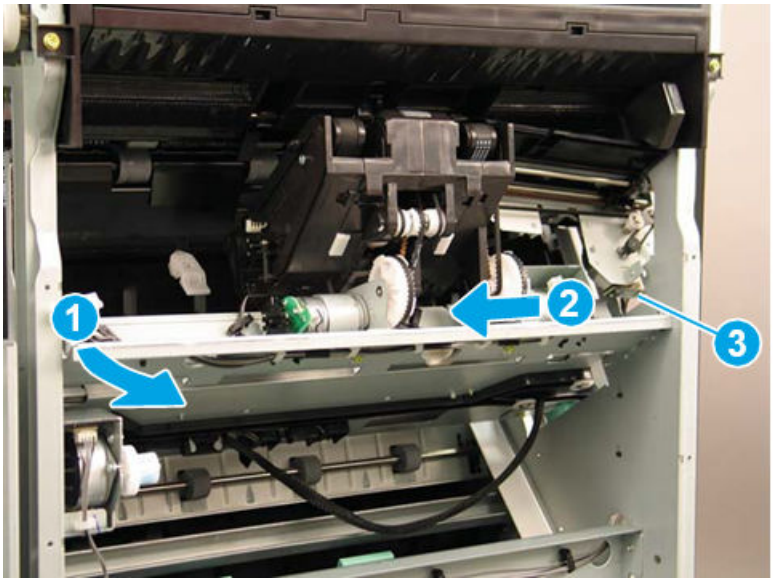
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 5-1207 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 5-1208 Remove the ejector unit

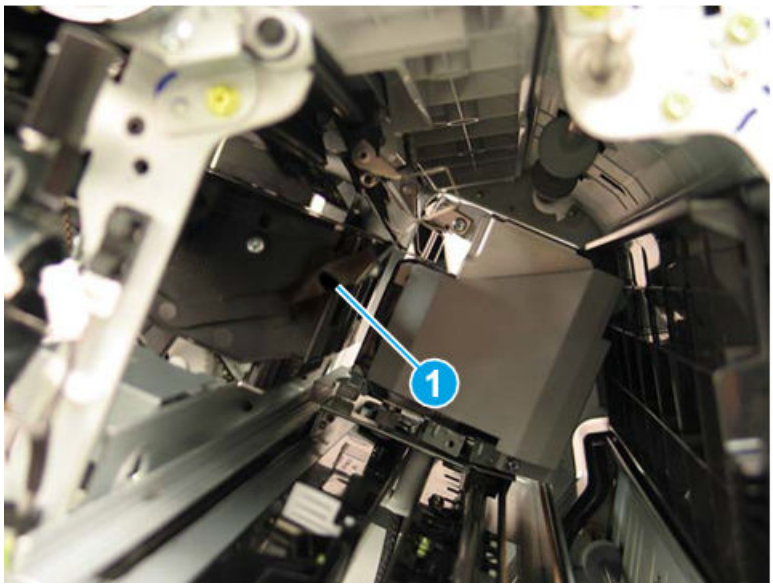


17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

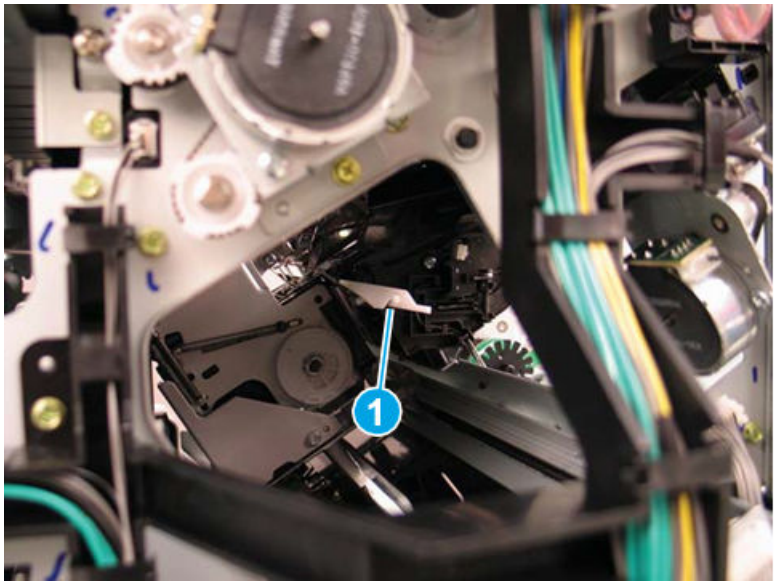
NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

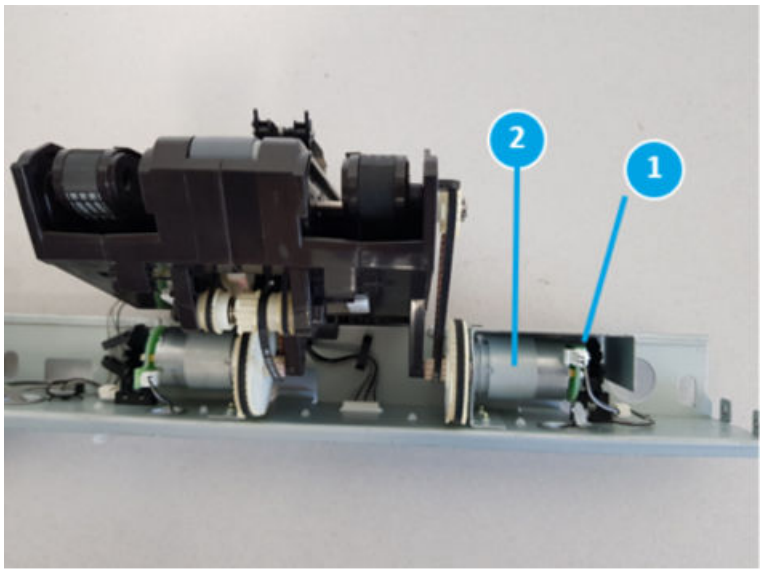


Remove the ejector2 motor(M5)

Follow these steps to remove the ejector2 motor(M5).

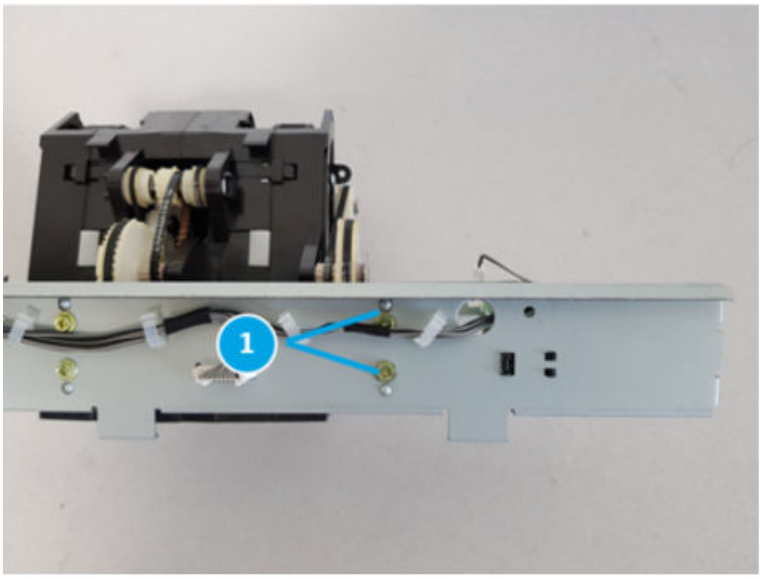
1. Disconnect the connector(callout 1) from ejector2 motor(M5, callout 2) of ejector unit.

Figure 5-1209 Disconnect the connector



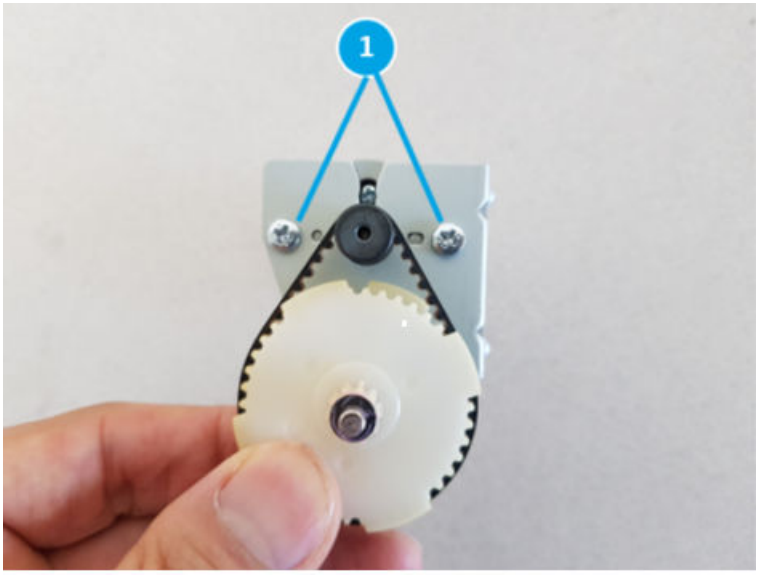
2. Remove two screws(callout 1).

Figure 5-1210 Remove two screws



3. Remove the ejector2 motor from ejector unit and remove two screws(callout 1)

Figure 5-1211 Remove the ejector2 motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main output tray unit

Removal and replacement: Main output tray top of stack sensor (S20)

Learn how to remove and replace the main output tray top of stack sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the main output tray top of stack sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-132 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-01039A	Main output tray top of stack sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

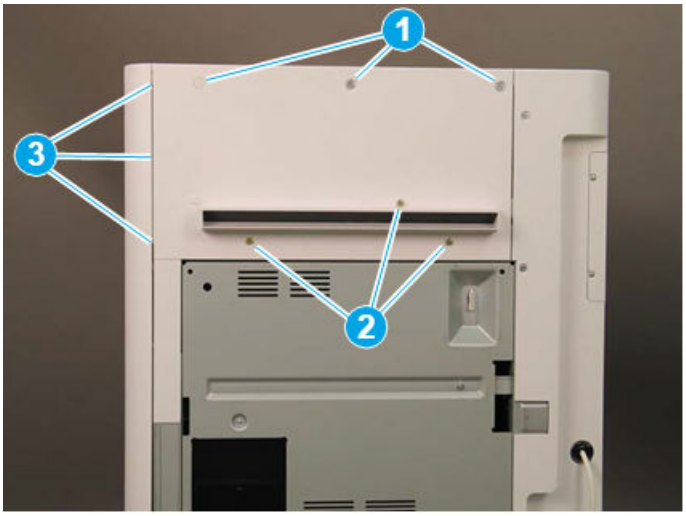
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1212 Remove the right upper cover

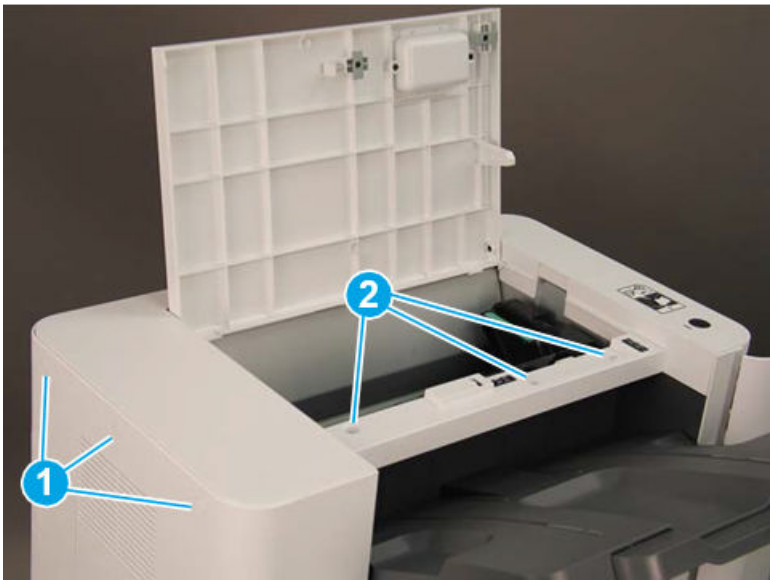


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

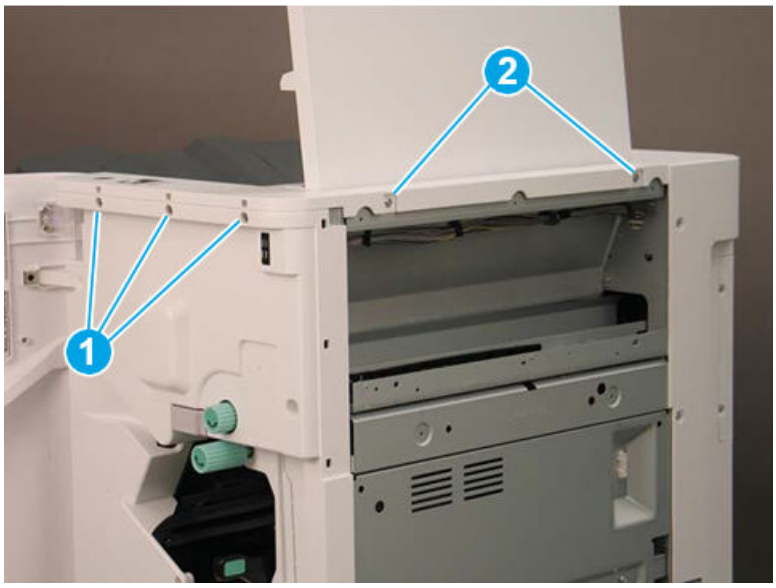
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1213 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

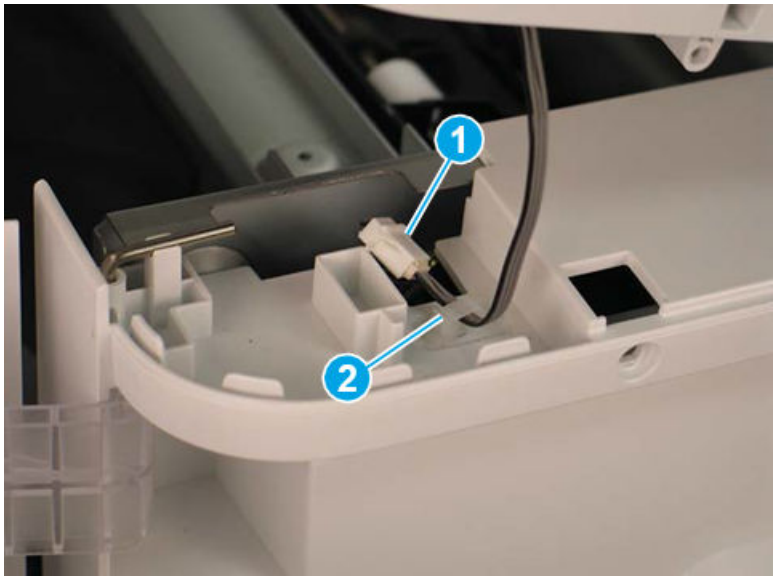
Figure 5-1214 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1215 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

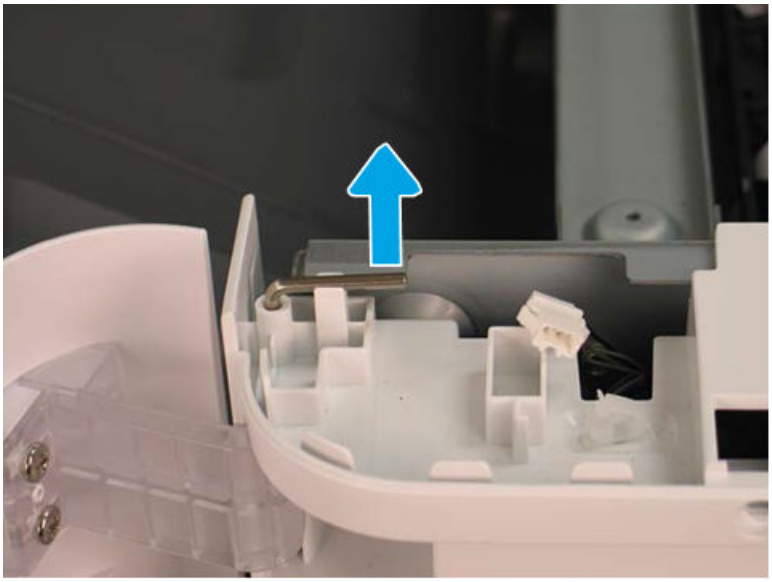


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

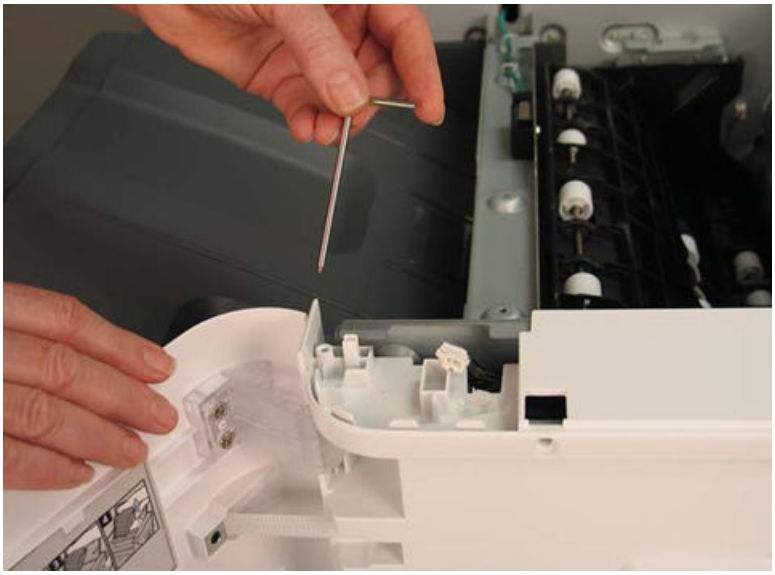
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-1216 Lift the top hinge pin



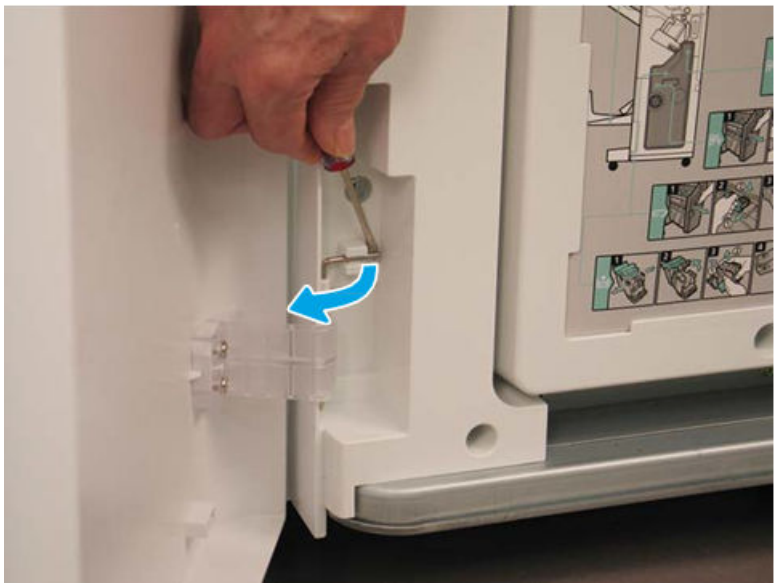
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-1217 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1218 Release the lower hinge pin



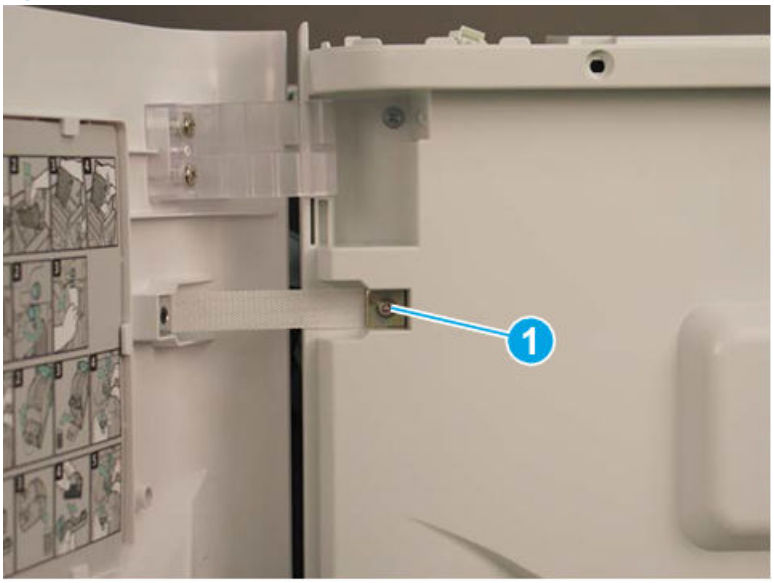
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-1219 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1220 Remove the front door

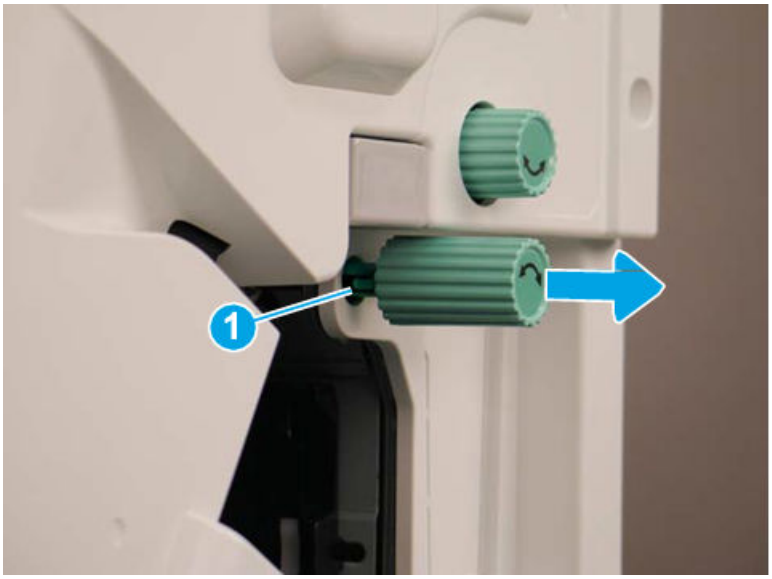


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

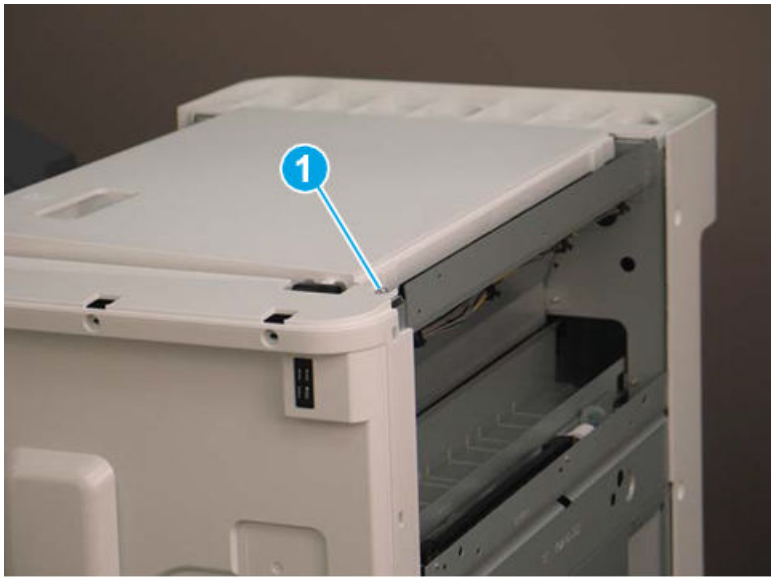
Figure 5-1221 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

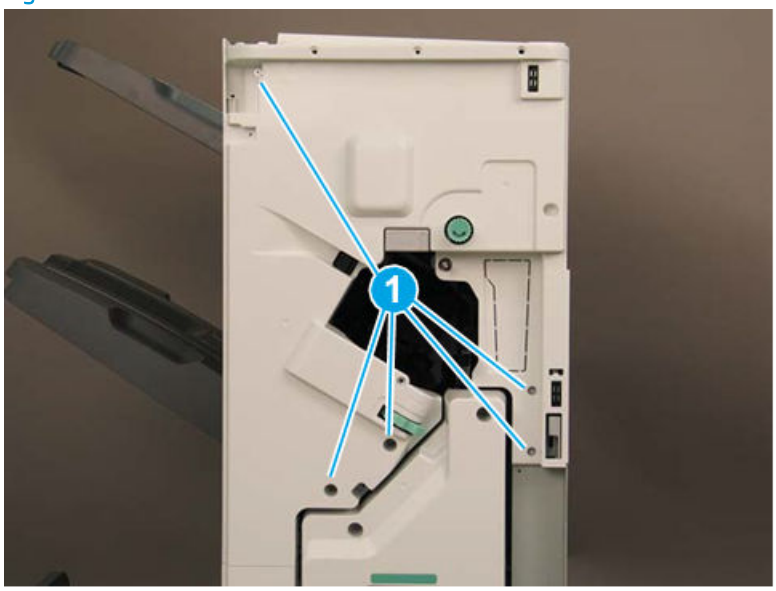
Figure 5-1222 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1223 Remove the front cover

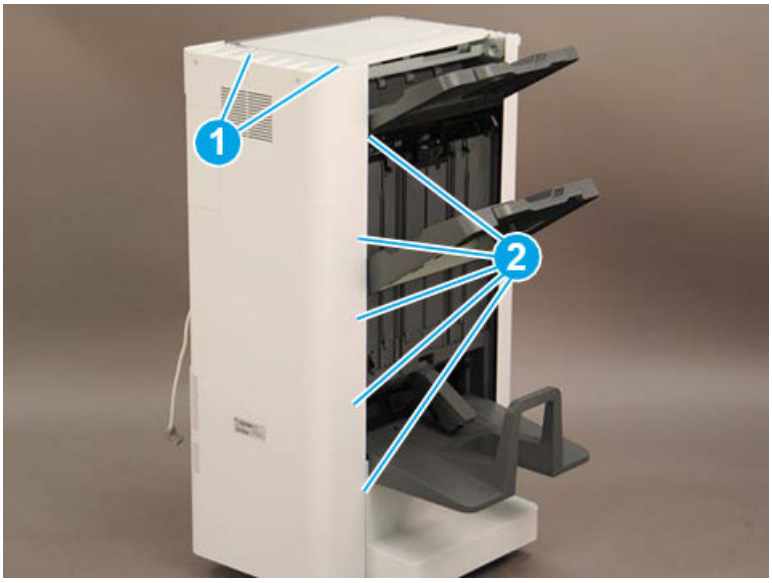


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1224 Remove seven screws

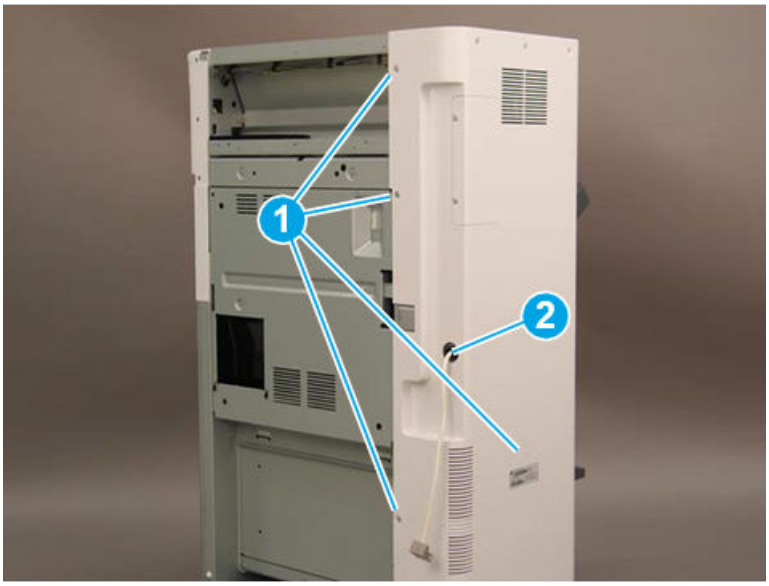


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1225 Remove the rear cover

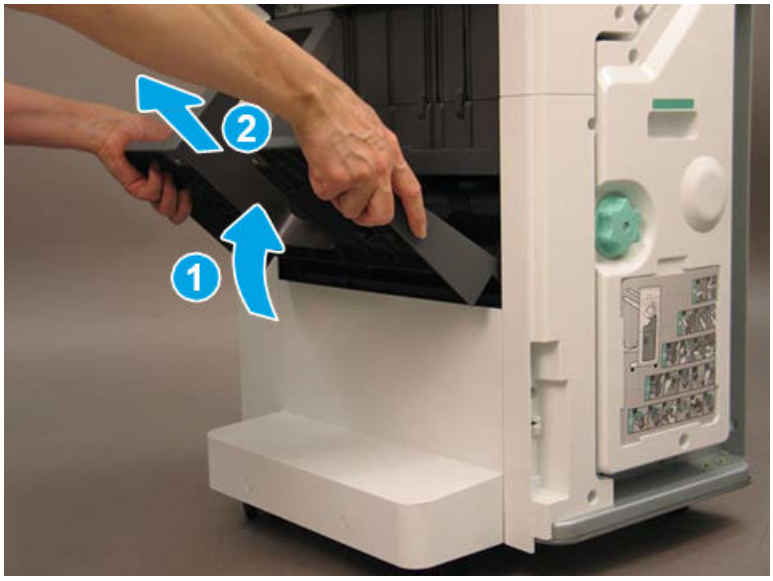


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1226 Remove the booklet output tray



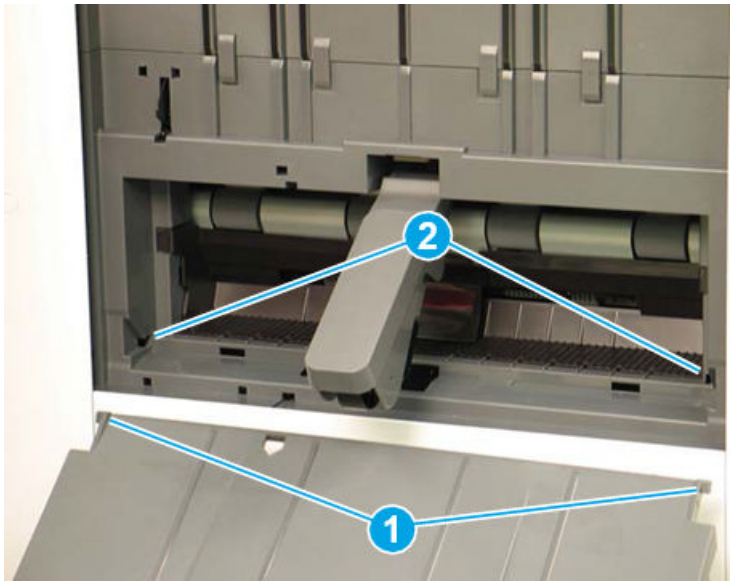
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-1227 Install the booklet output tray

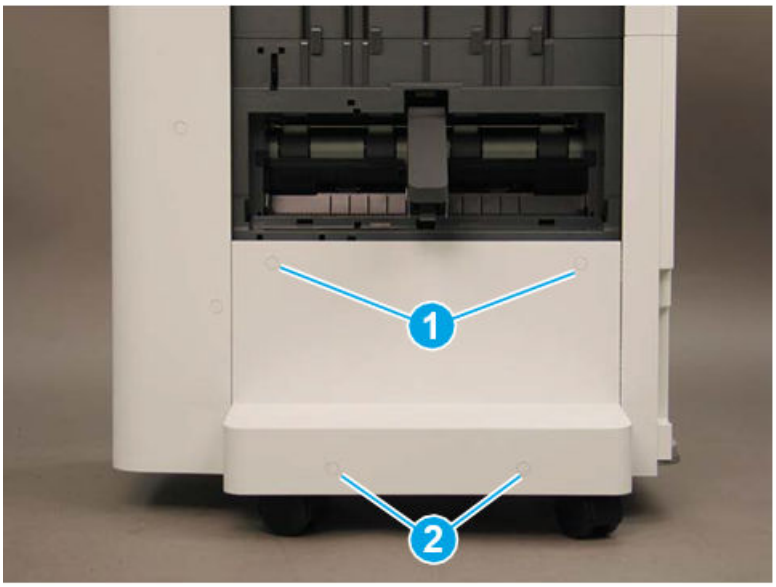


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-1228 Remove four screws

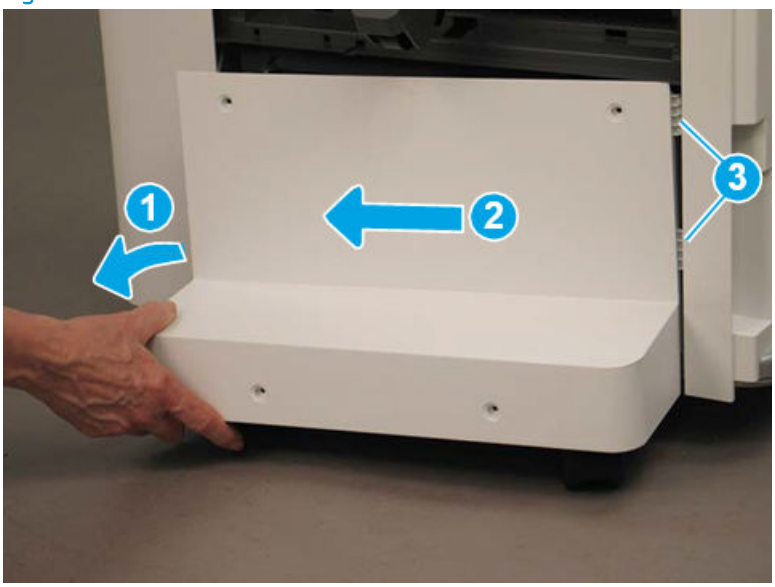


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1229 Remove the caster cover



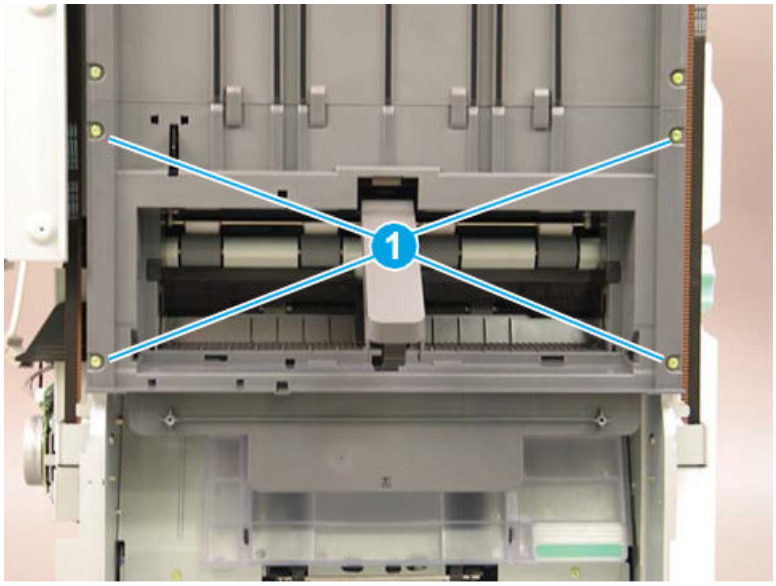
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-1230 Remove four screws

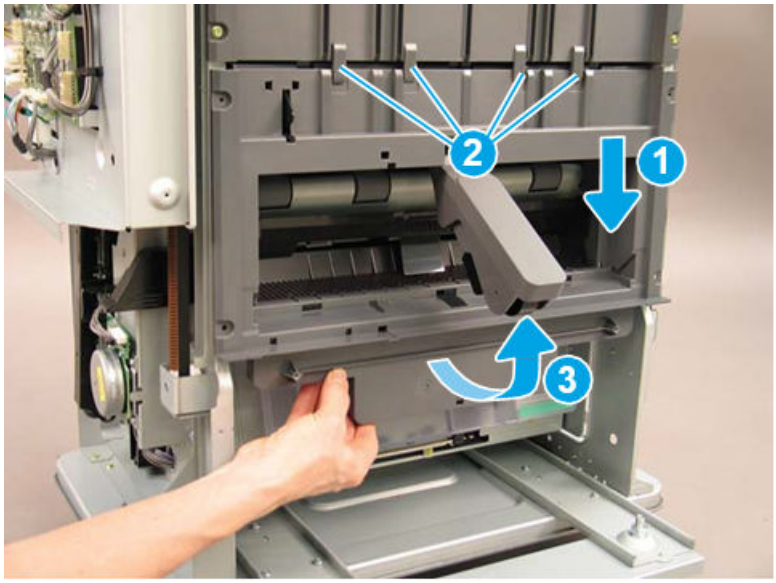


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

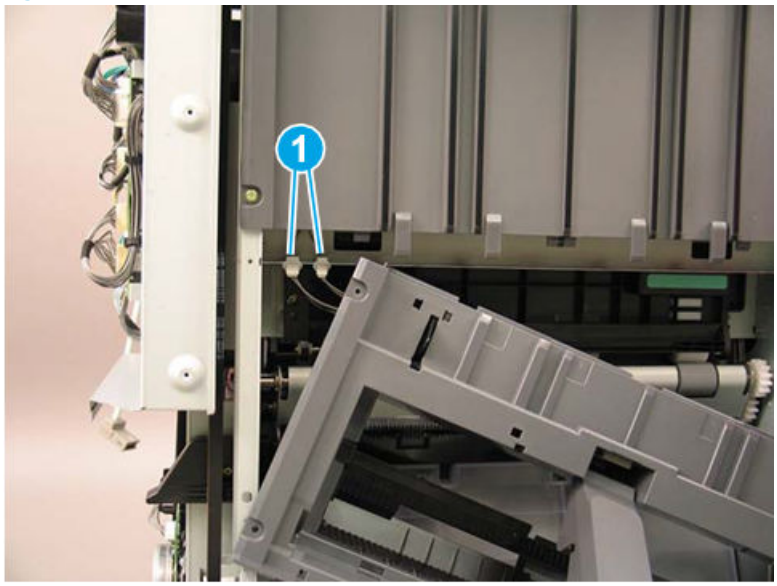
Figure 5-1231 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

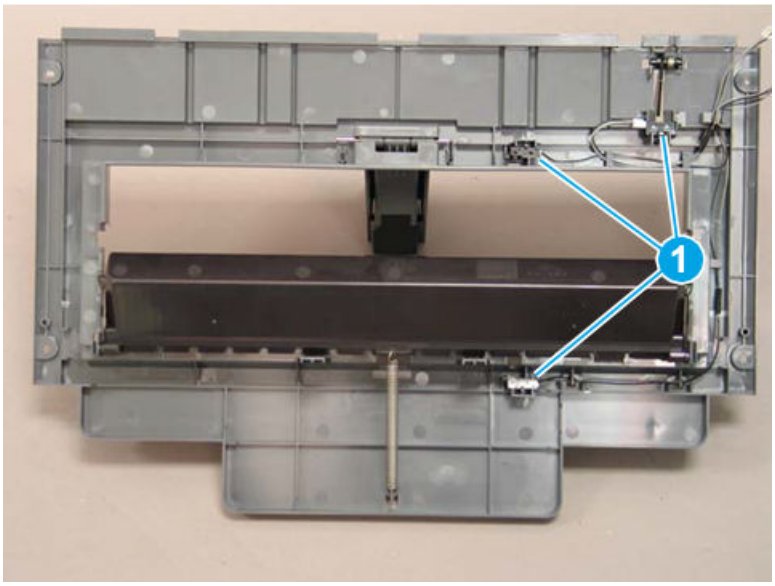
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1232 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-1233 Remove the left lower cover

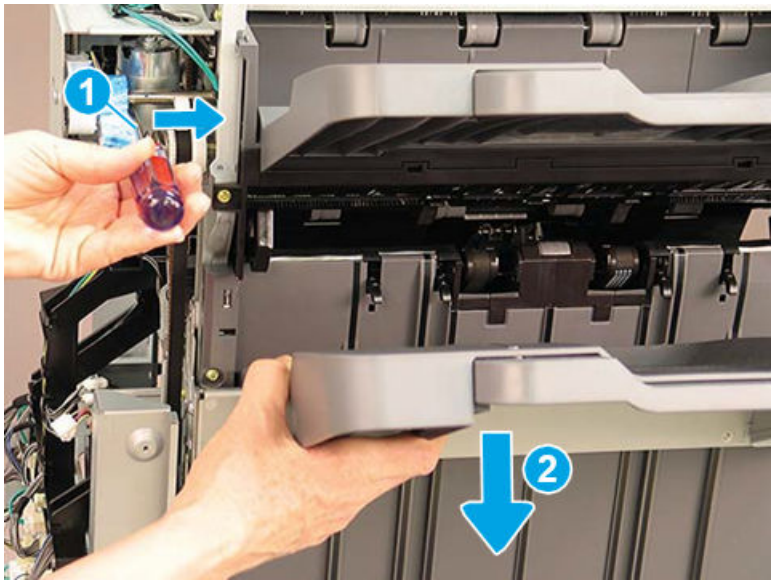


Remove the left upper cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover (finisher).

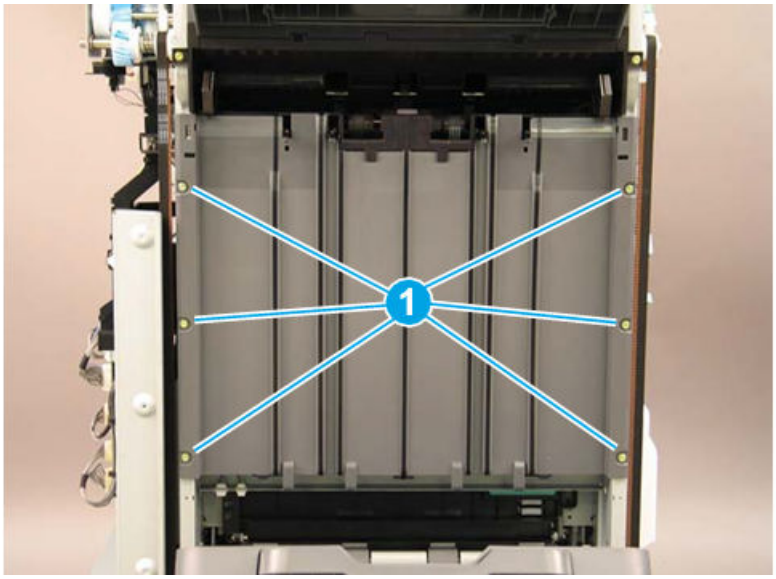
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 5-1234 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1235 Remove six screws

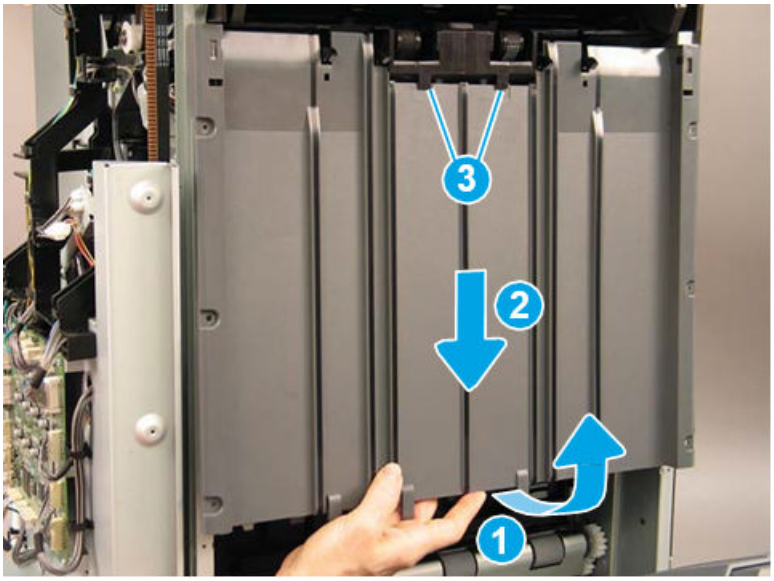


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away fromthe finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

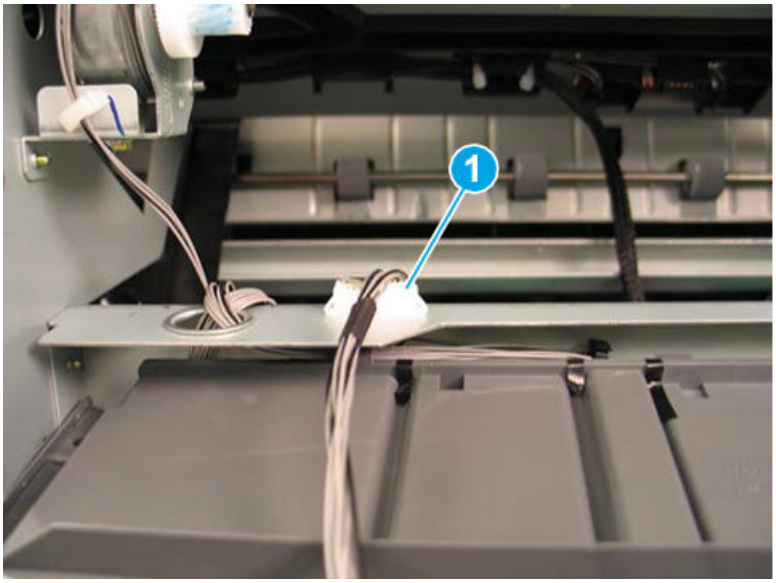
Figure 5-1236 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

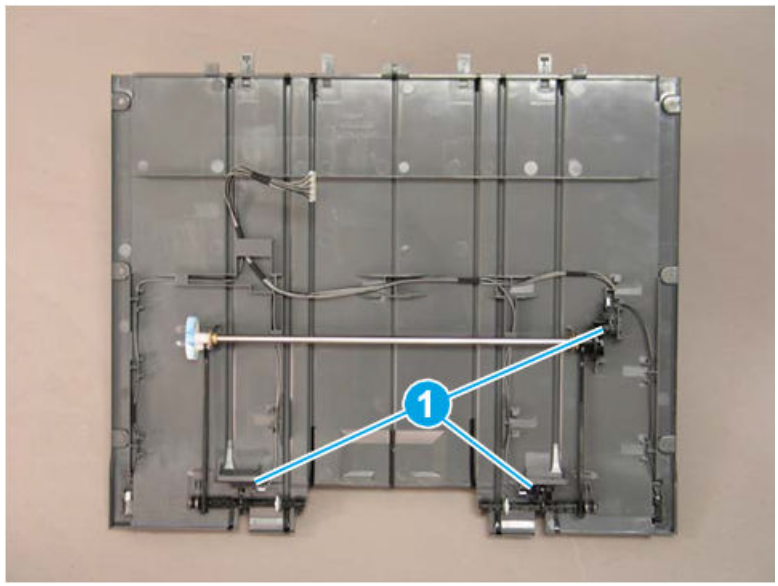
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1237 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the left upper cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left upper cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-1238 Remove the left upper cover

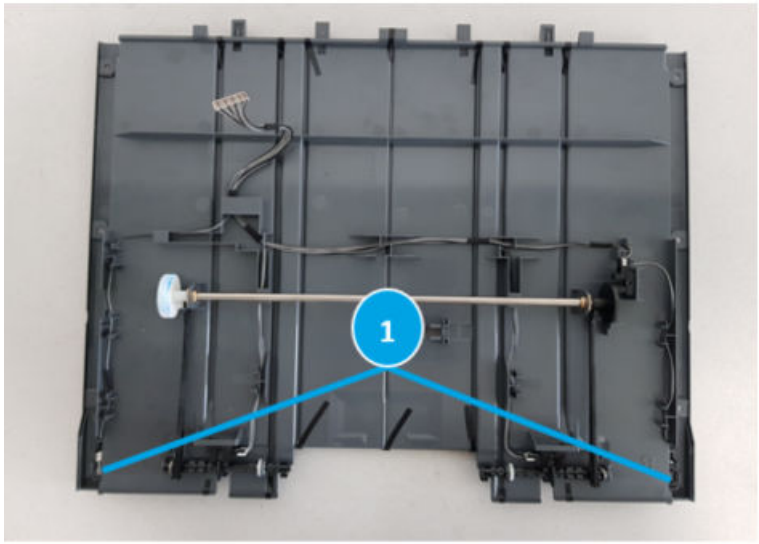


Remove the main output tray top of stack sensor(S20)

Follow these steps to remove the main output tray top of stack sensor(S20).

▲ Remove detector and emitter sensor(S20, callout 1)

Figure 5-1239 Remove detector and emitter sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray top of stack switch (S34)

Learn how to remove and replace the main output tray top of stack switch.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the main output tray top of stack switch on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-133 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02316A	Main output tray top of stack switch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

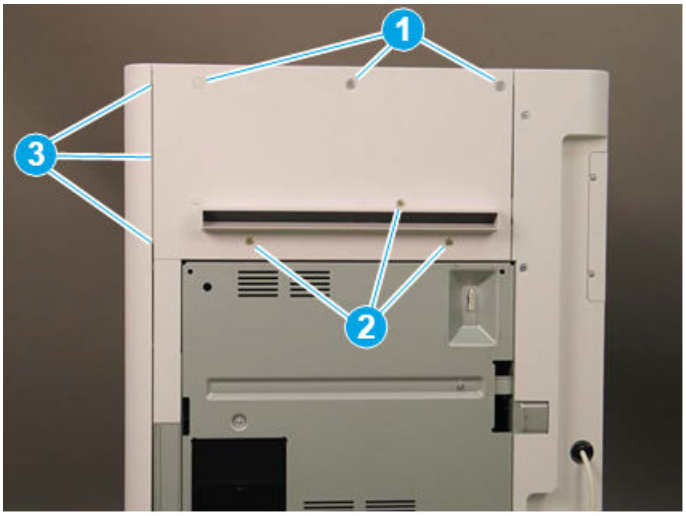
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1240 Remove the right upper cover

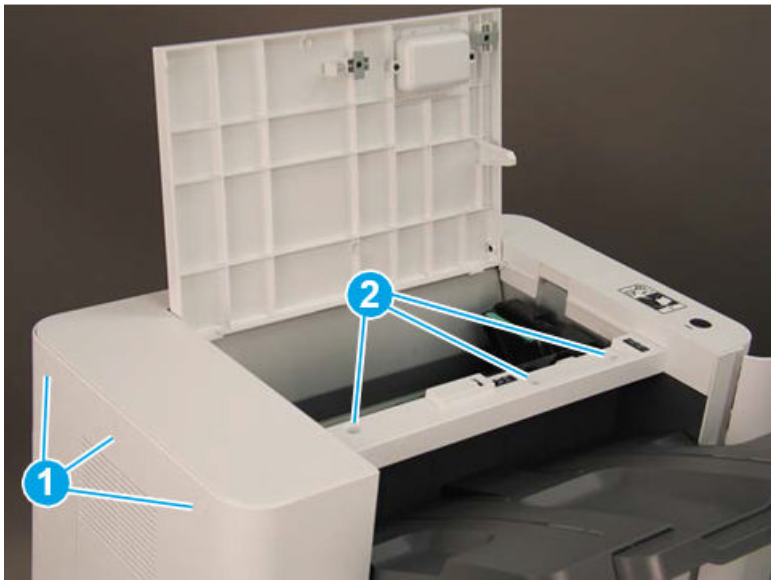


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

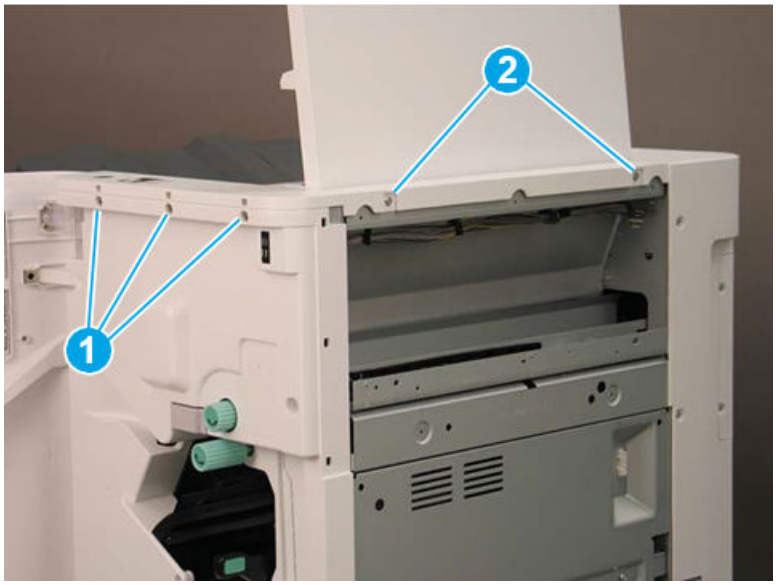
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1241 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

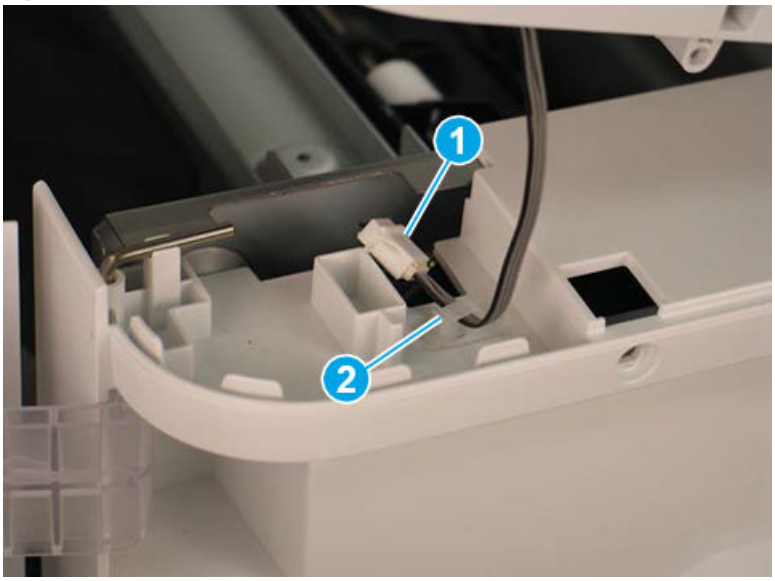
Figure 5-1242 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1243 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

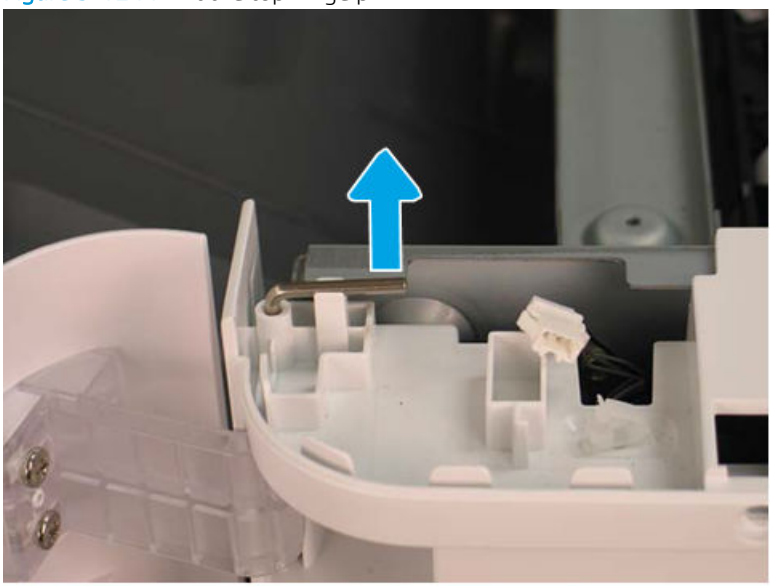


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

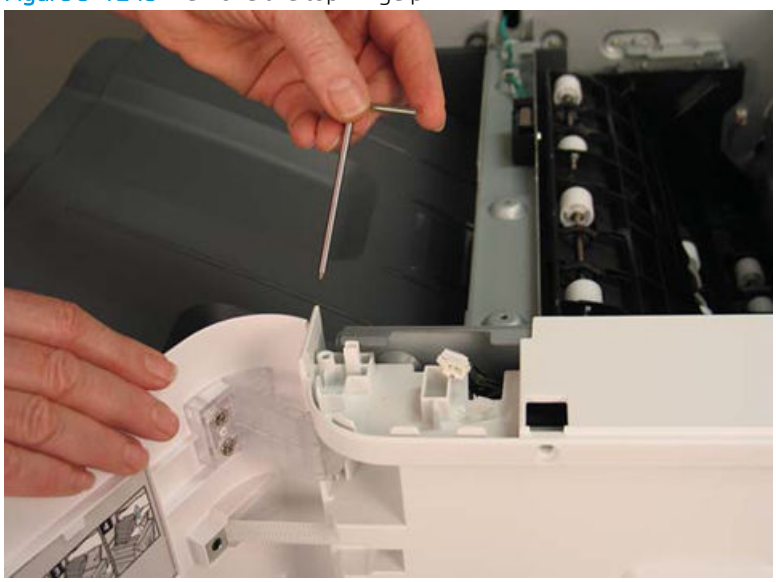
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-1244 Lift the top hinge pin



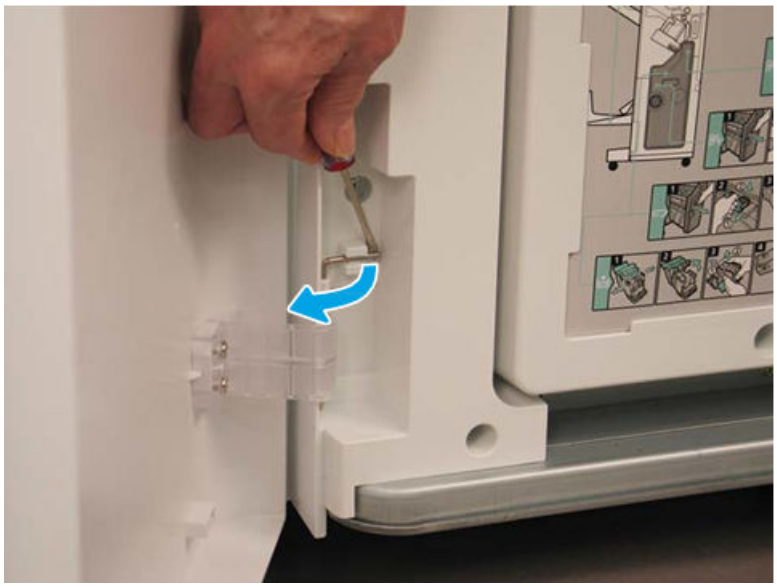
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-1245 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1246 Release the lower hinge pin



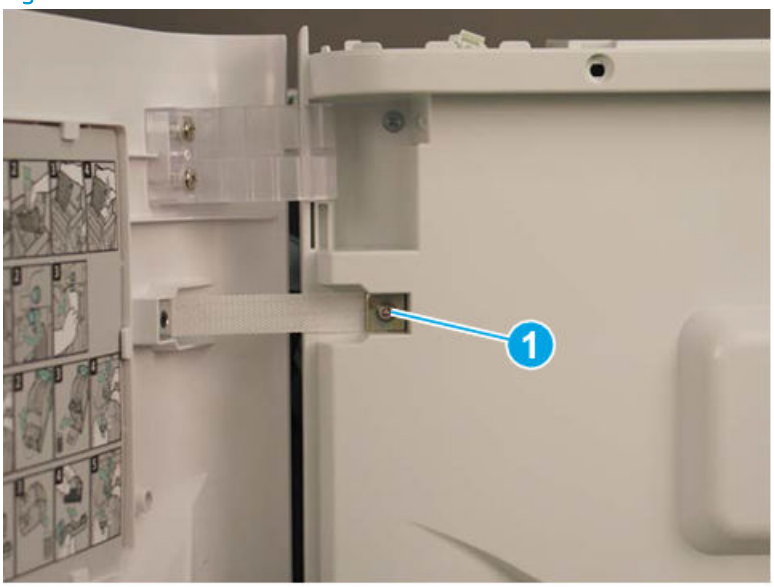
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-1247 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1248 Remove the front door

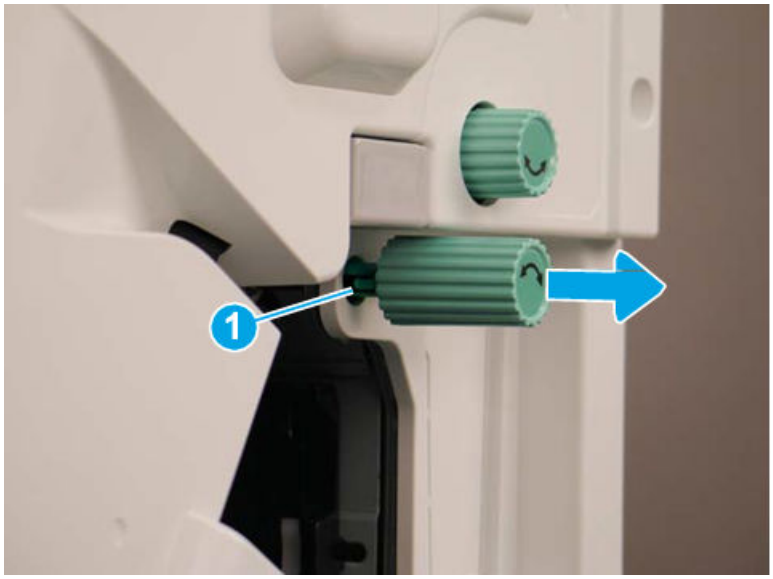


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

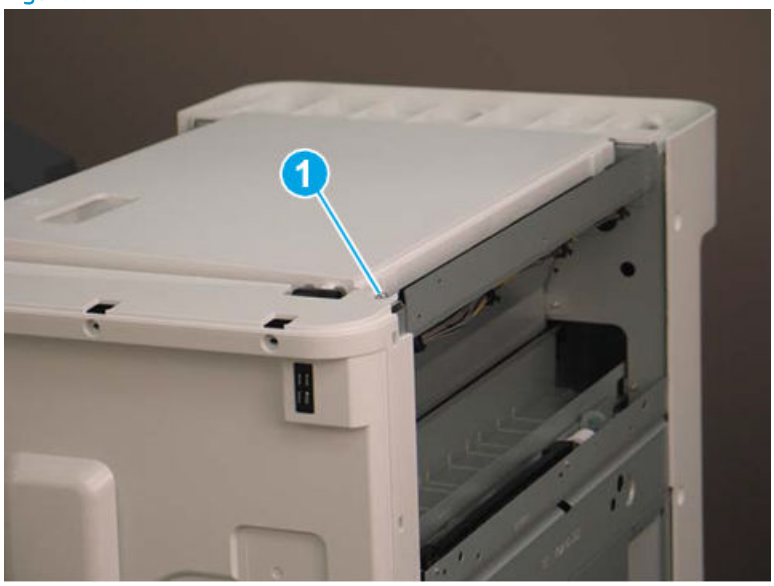
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-1249 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

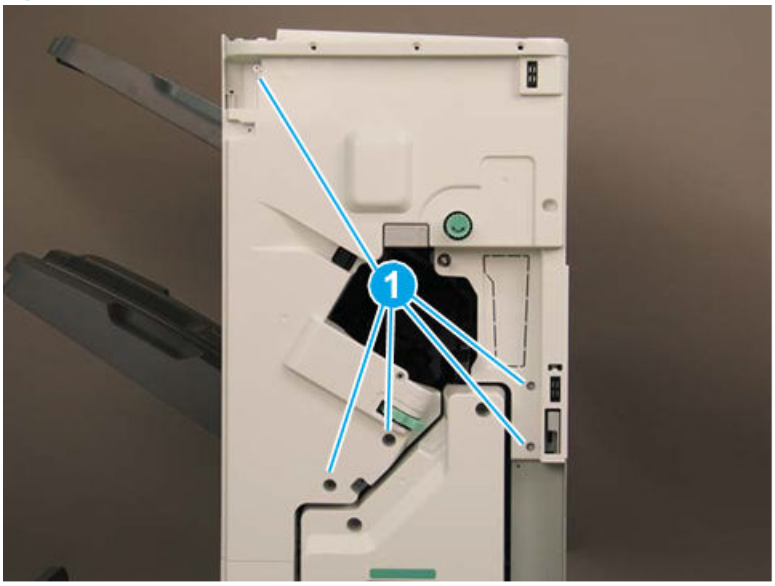
Figure 5-1250 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1251 Remove the front cover

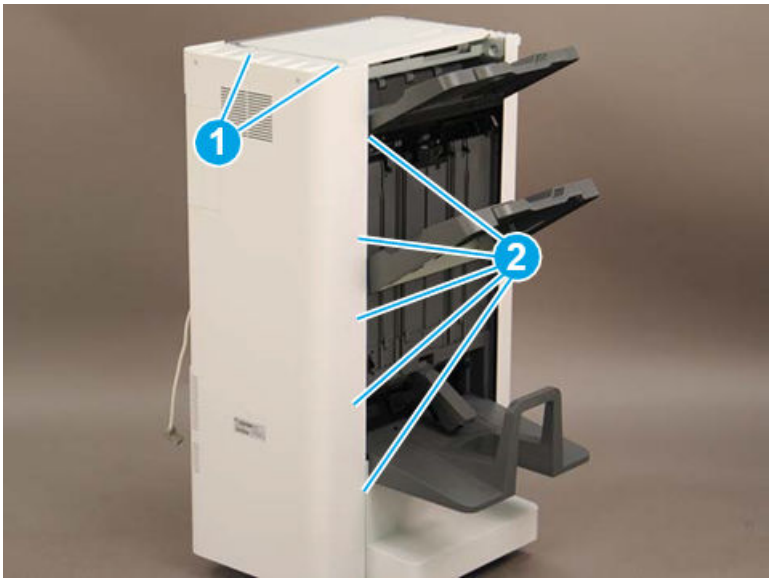


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1252 Remove seven screws

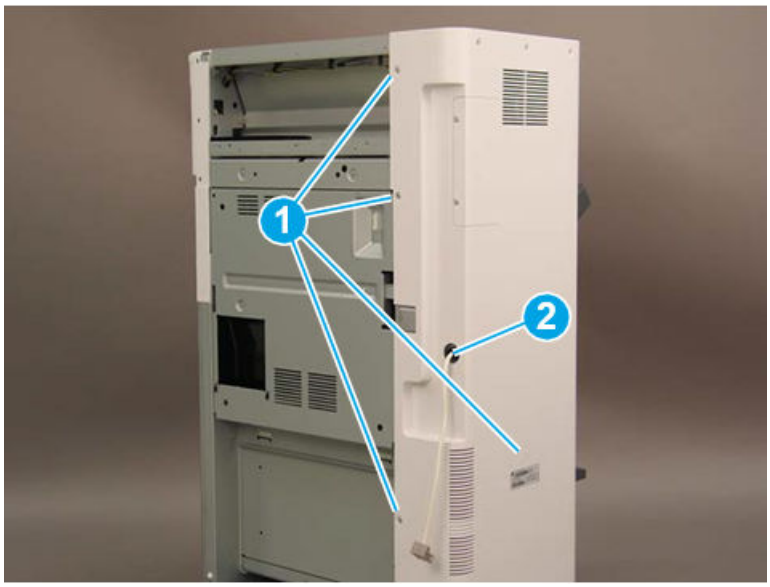


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1253 Remove the rear cover

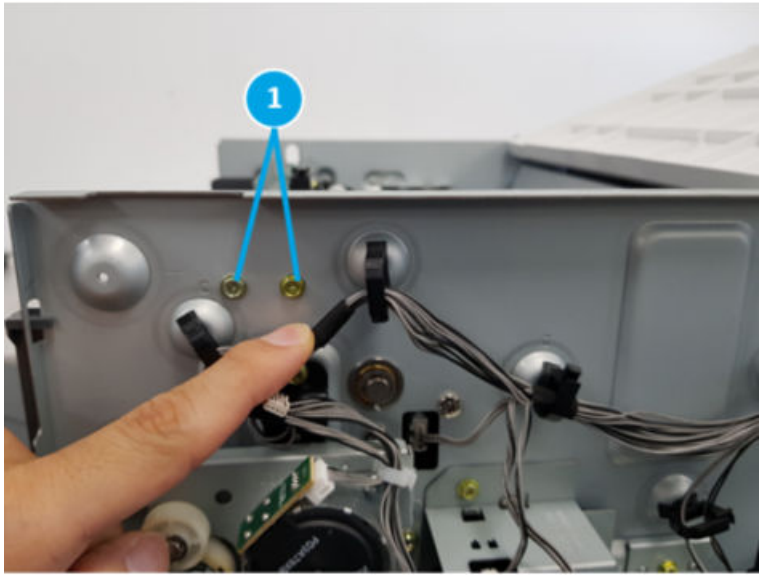


Remove the main output tray of stack switch(S34)

Follow these steps to remove the main output tray of stack switch(S34).

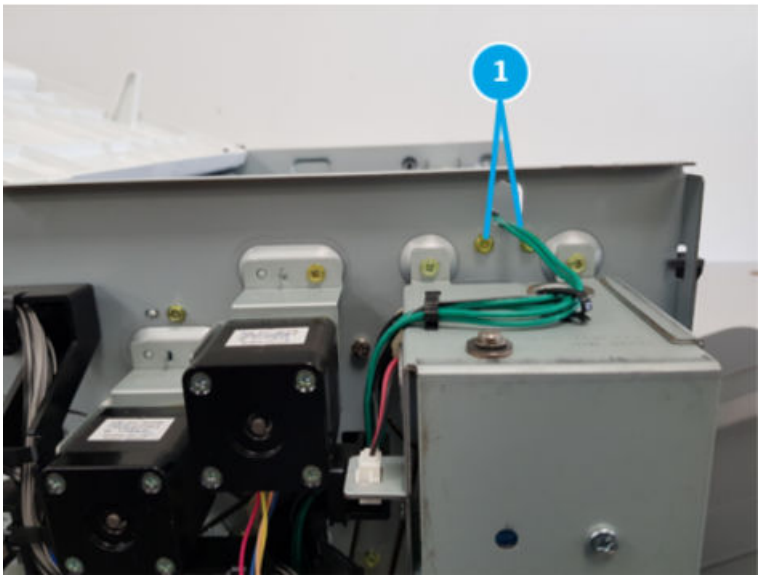
1. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws(callout 1).

Figure 5-1254 Remove two screws



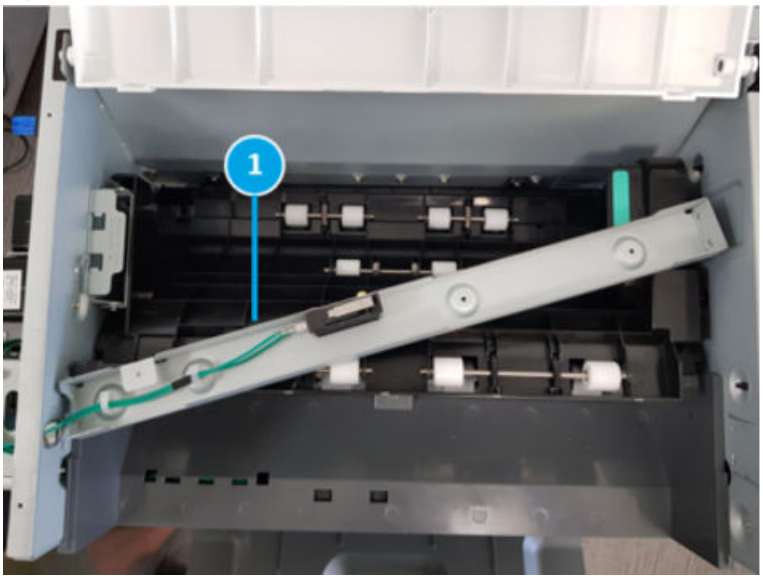
2. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws(callout 1).

Figure 5-1255 Remove two screws



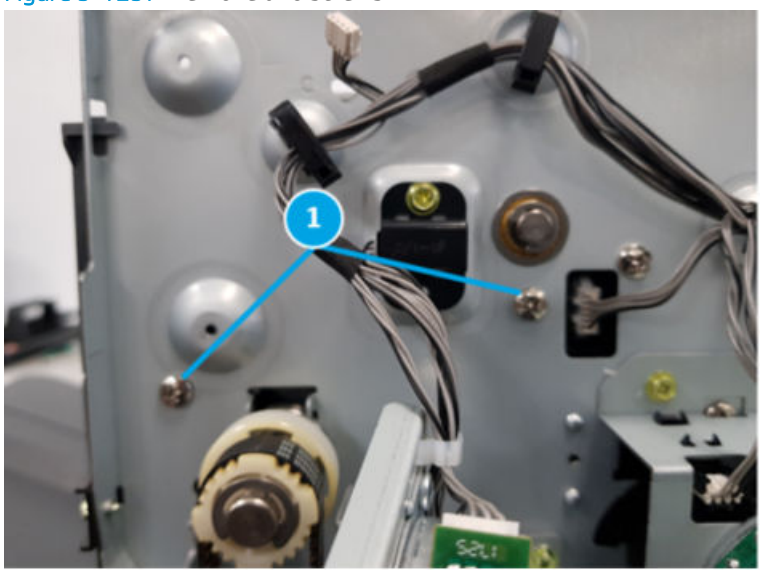
3. Do not remove the frame(callout 1) but pull it one side.

Figure 5-1256 Pull it one side



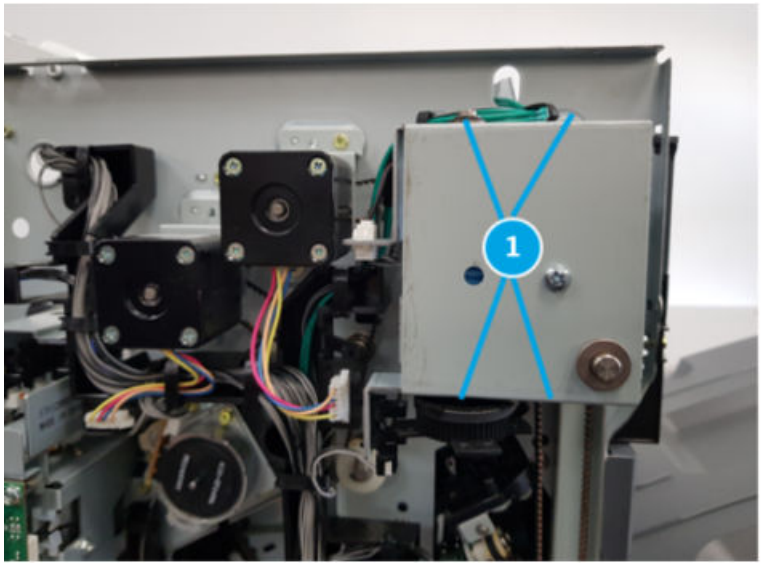
4. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws(callout 1)

Figure 5-1257 Remove two screws



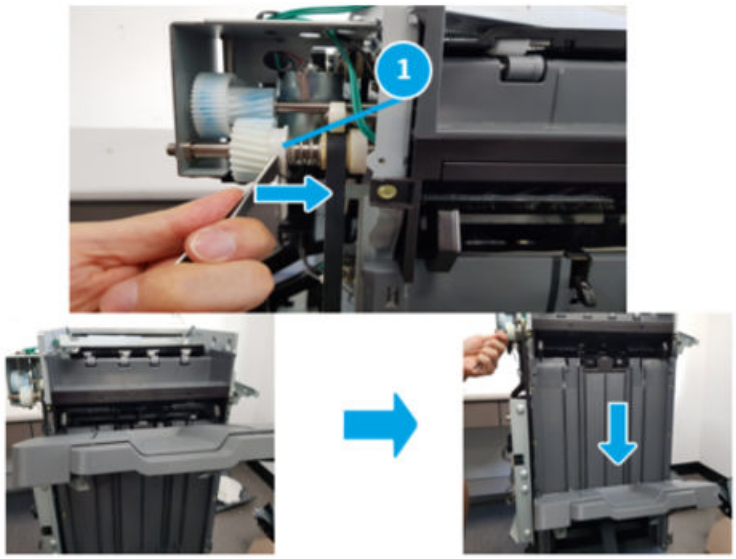
5. At the rear of the finisher, remove four screws(callout 1).

Figure 5-1258 Remove four screws



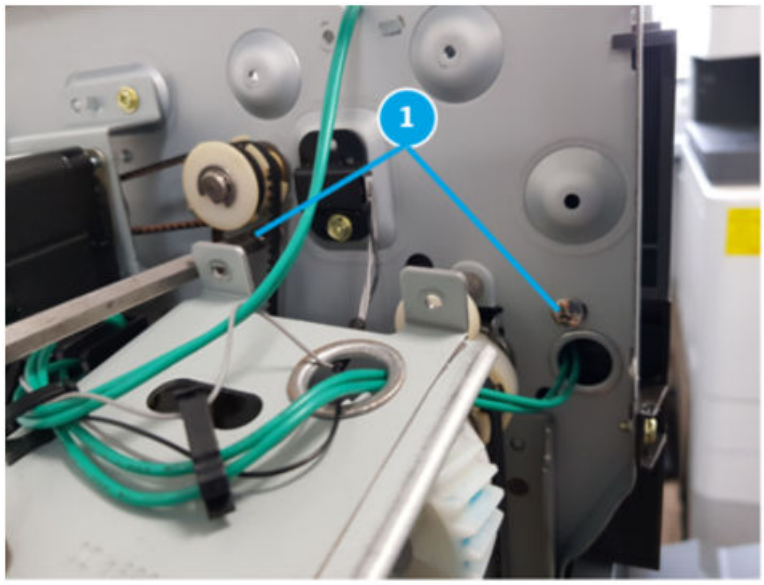
6. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver or tweezers on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position

Figure 5-1259 Pressing to the right to release the clutch



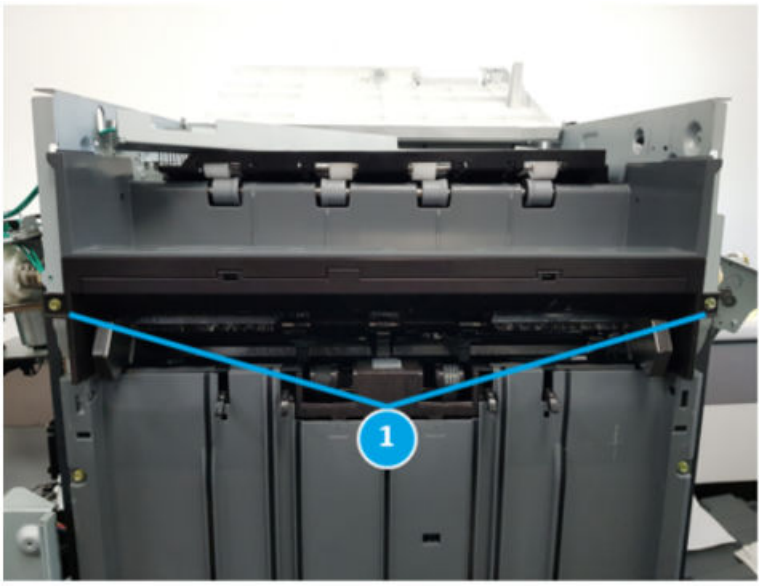
7. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws(callout 1).

Figure 5-1260 Remove two screws



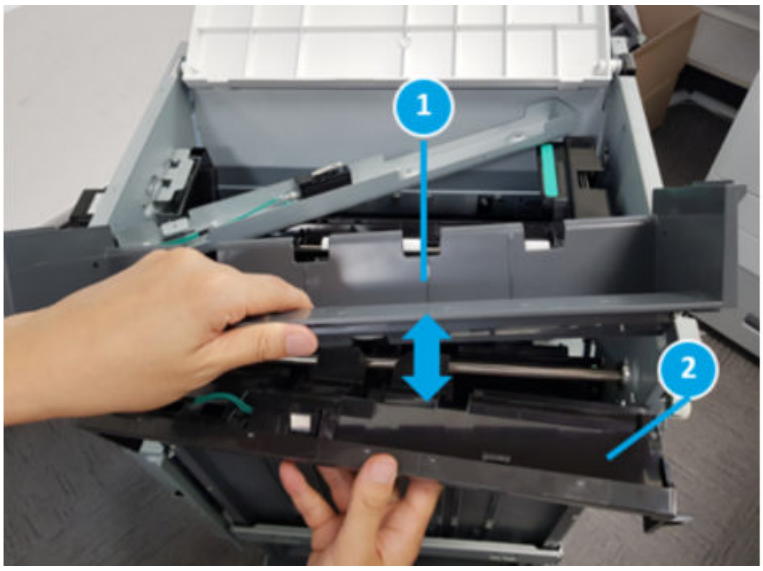
8. Remove two screws(callout 1)

Figure 5-1261 Remove two screws



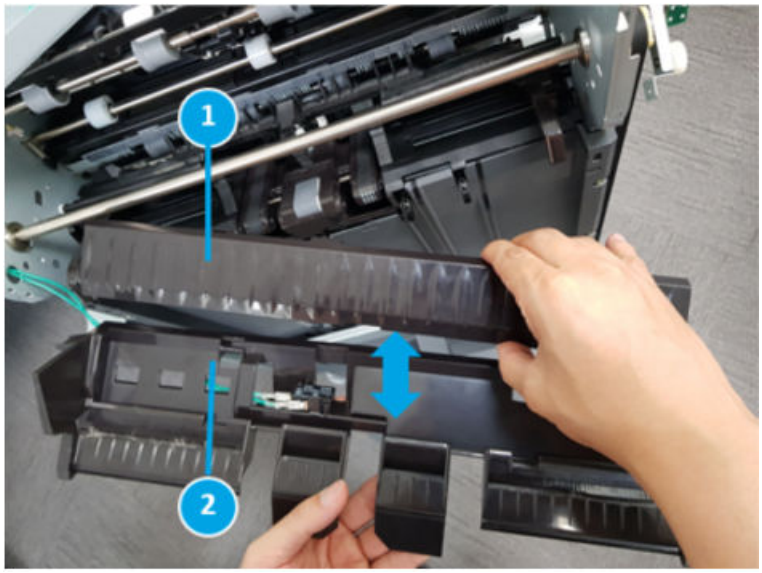
9. Separate two parts (callout 1,callout 2)

Figure 5-1262 Separate two parts



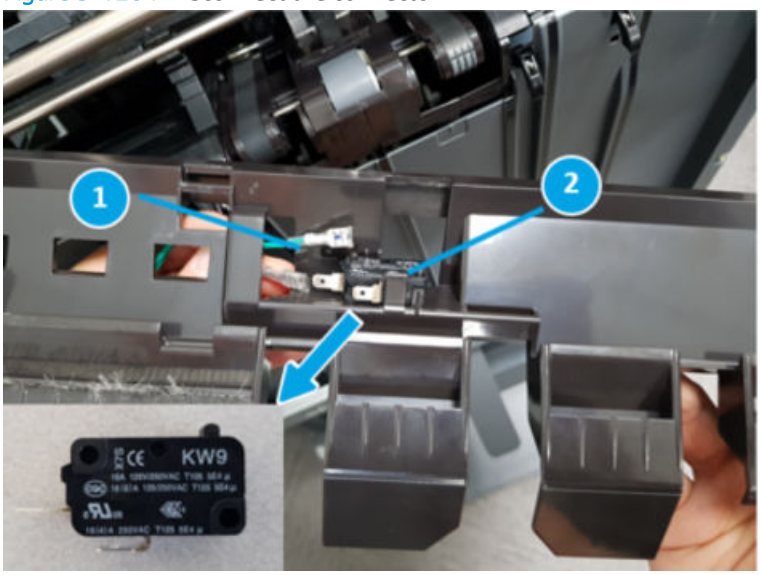
10. Separate two parts (callout 1,callout 2)

Figure 5-1263 Separate two parts



11. Disconnect the connector (callout 1) And switch(callout 2, S34)

Figure 5-1264 Disconnect the connector



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray lower limit sensor (S26)

Learn how to remove and replace the main output tray lower limit sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the main output tray lower limit sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-134 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Main output tray lower limit sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

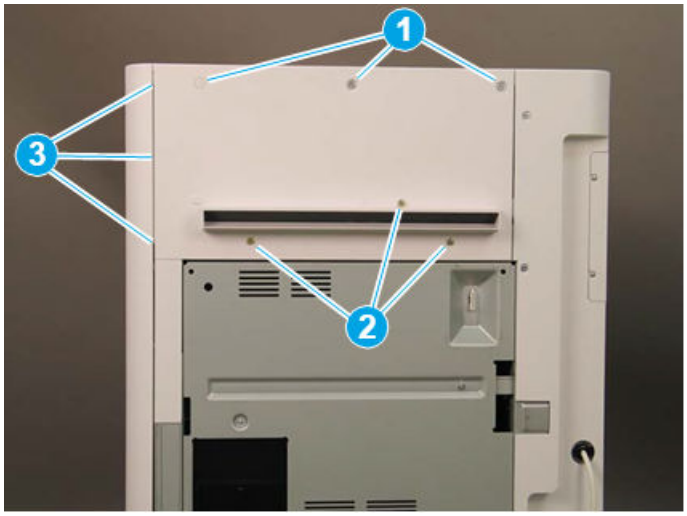
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1265 Remove the right upper cover

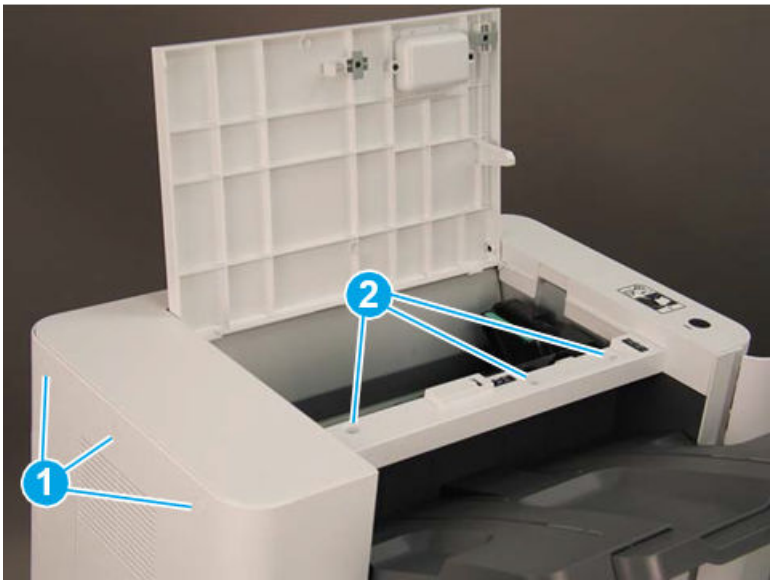


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

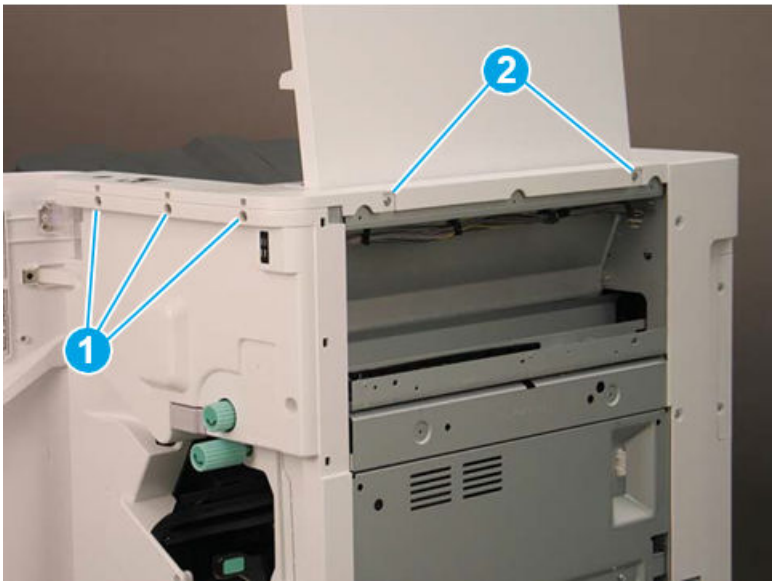
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1266 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

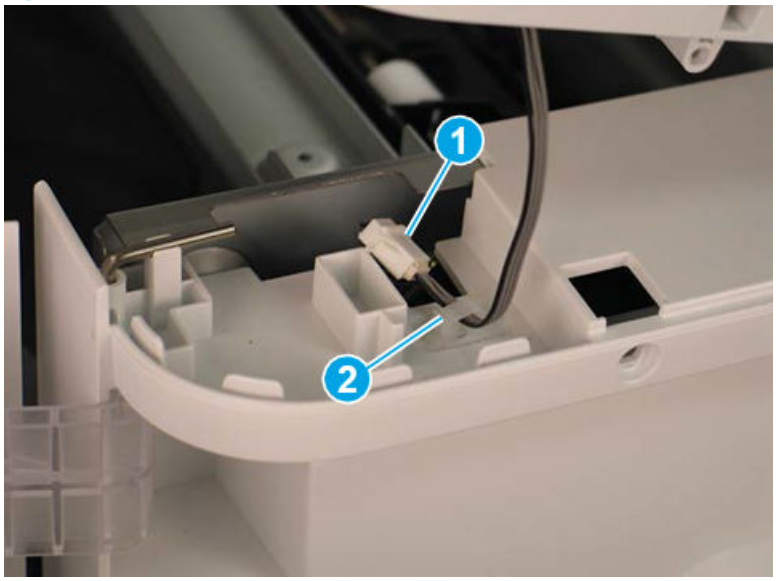
Figure 5-1267 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1268 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

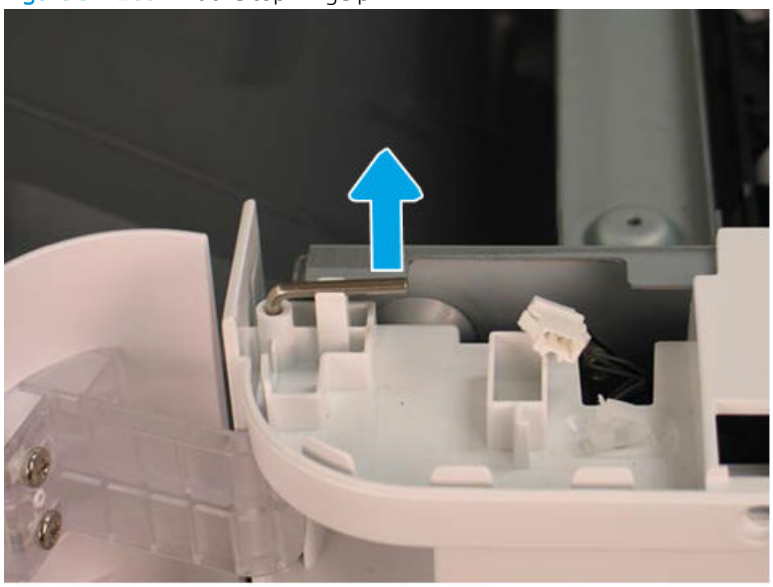


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

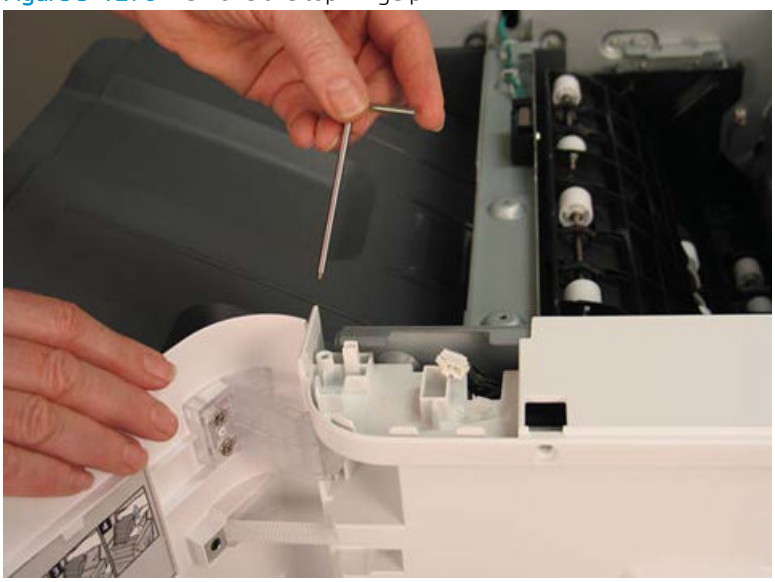
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-1269 Lift the top hinge pin



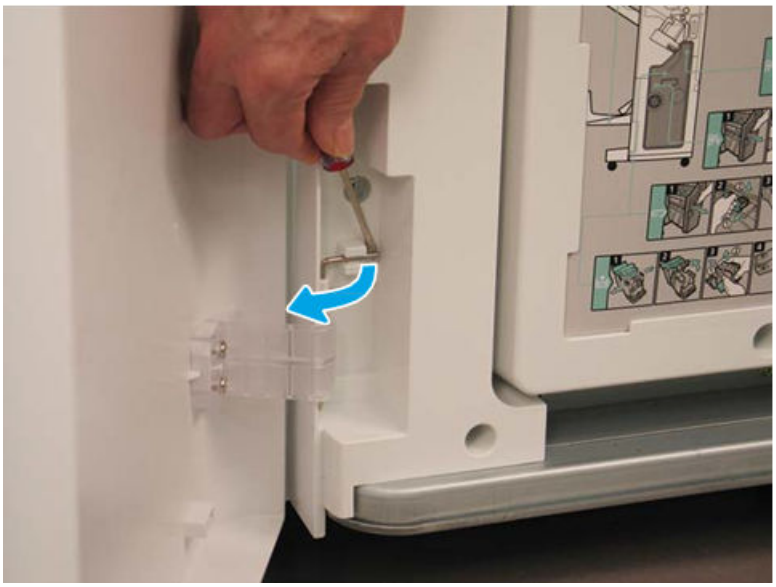
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-1270 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1271 Release the lower hinge pin



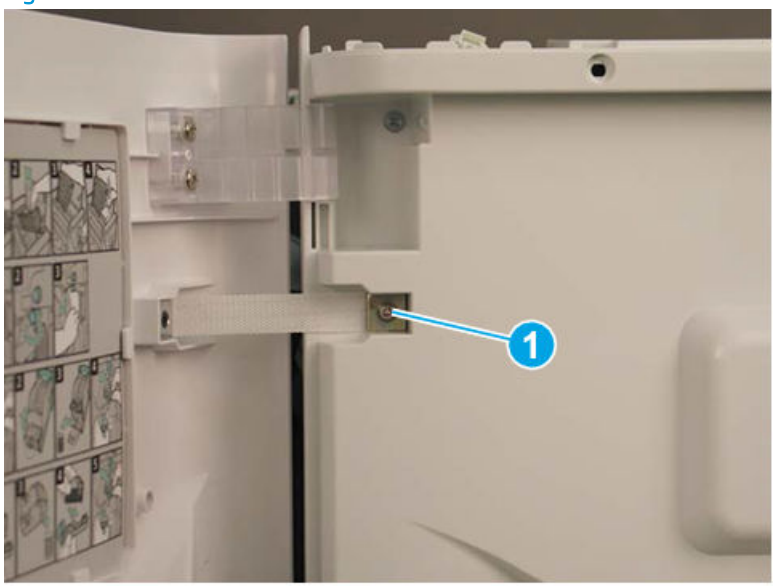
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-1272 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1273 Remove the front door

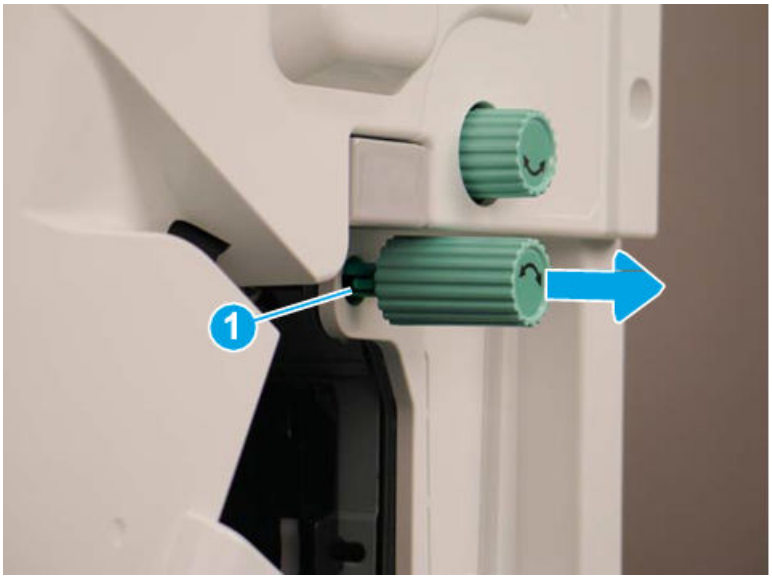


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

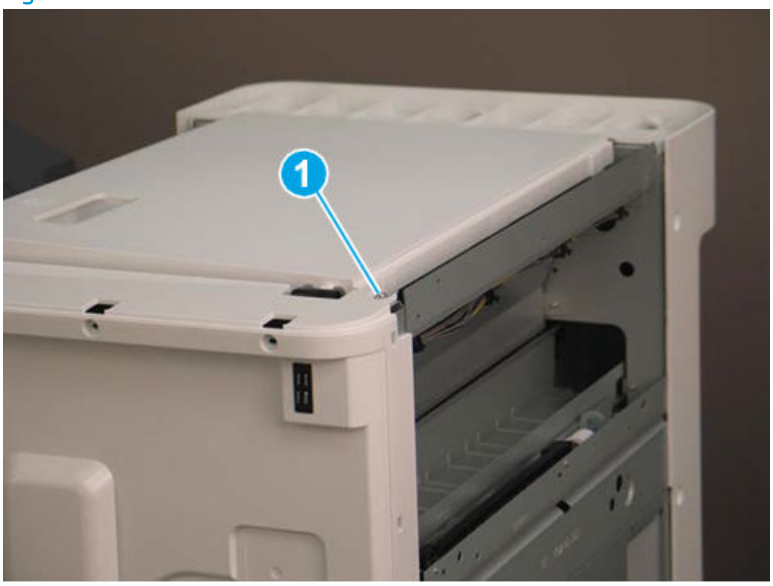
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-1274 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

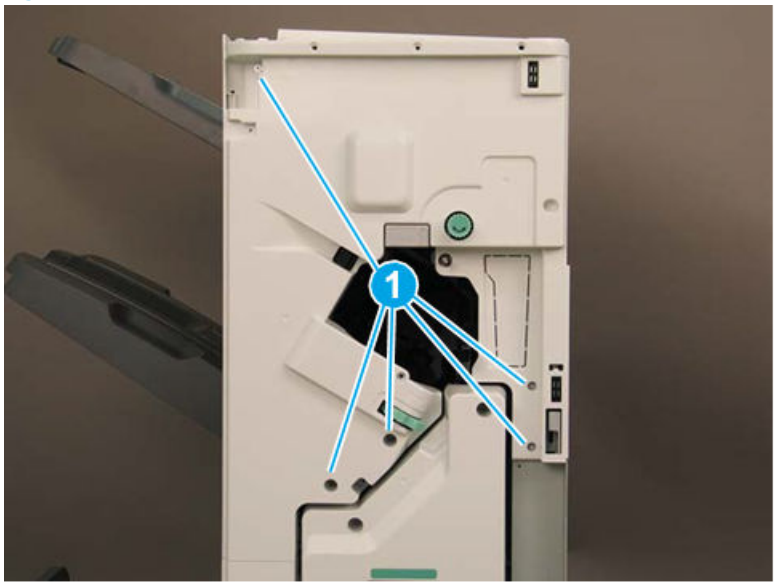
Figure 5-1275 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1276 Remove the front cover

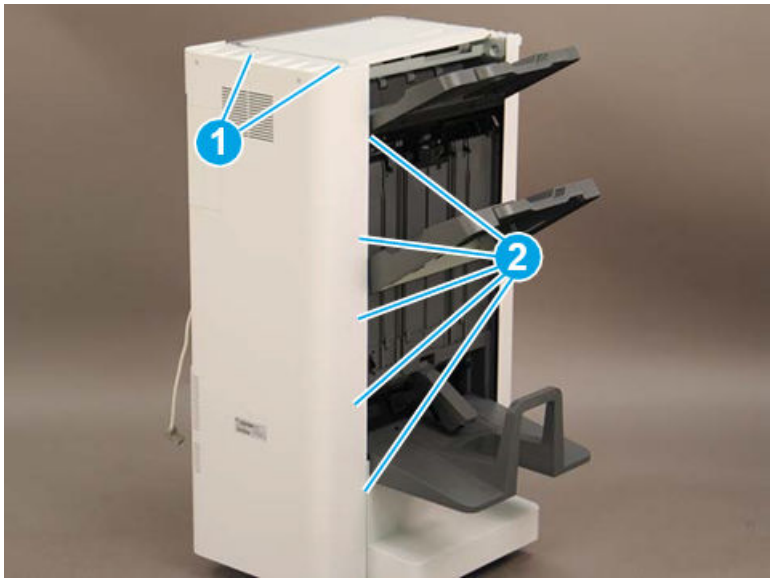


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1277 Remove seven screws

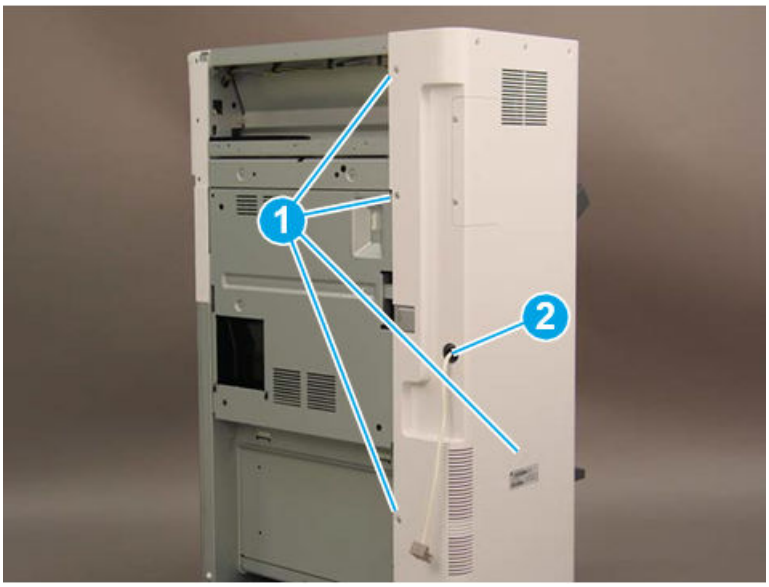


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1278 Remove the rear cover

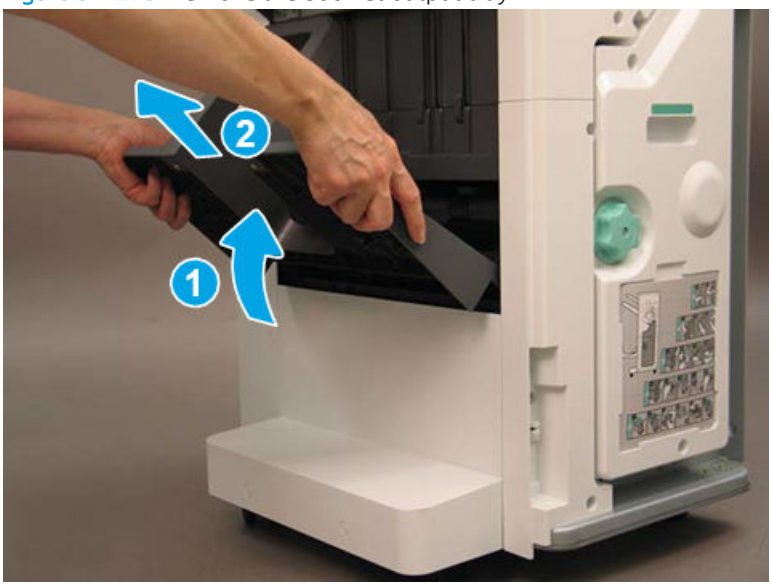


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1279 Remove the booklet output tray



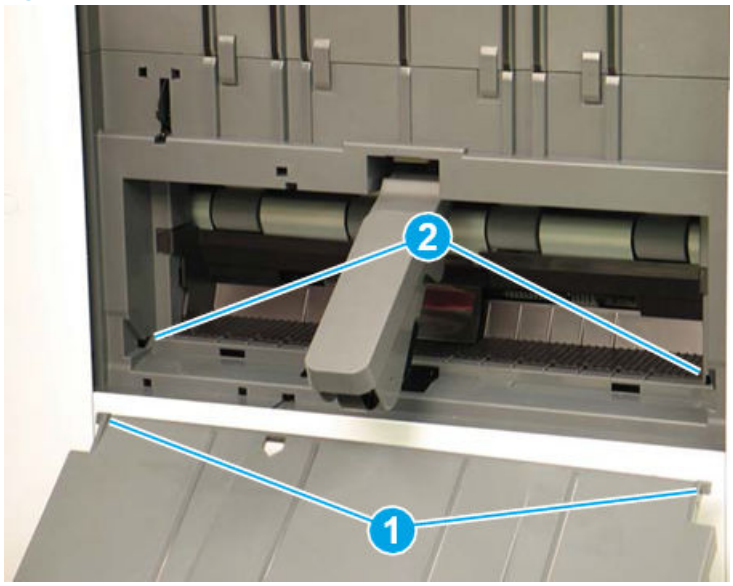
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-1280 Install the booklet output tray

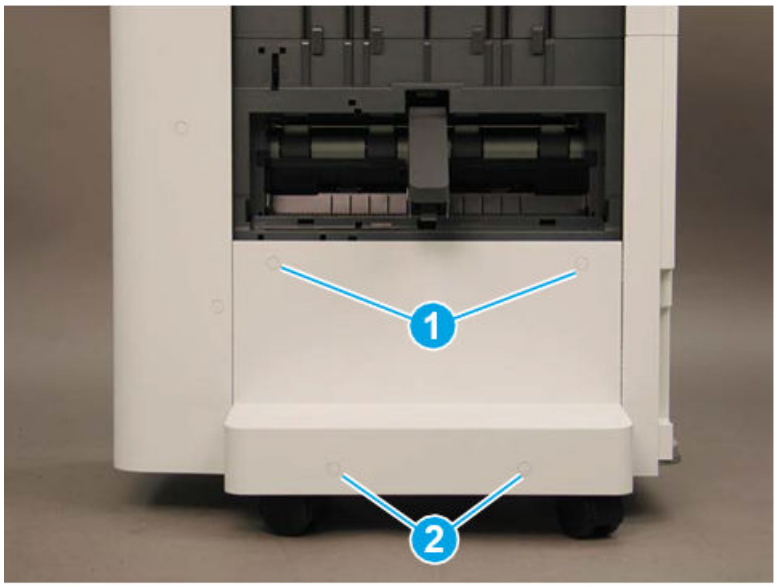


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-1281 Remove four screws

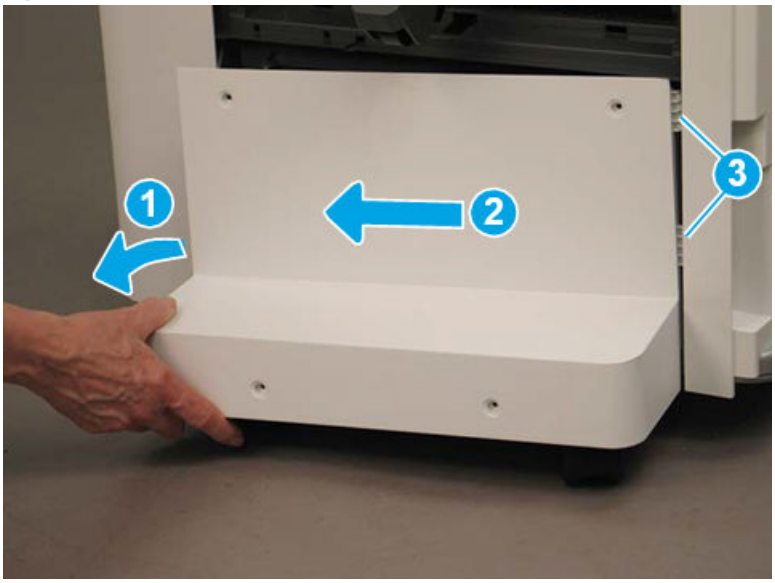


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1282 Remove the caster cover



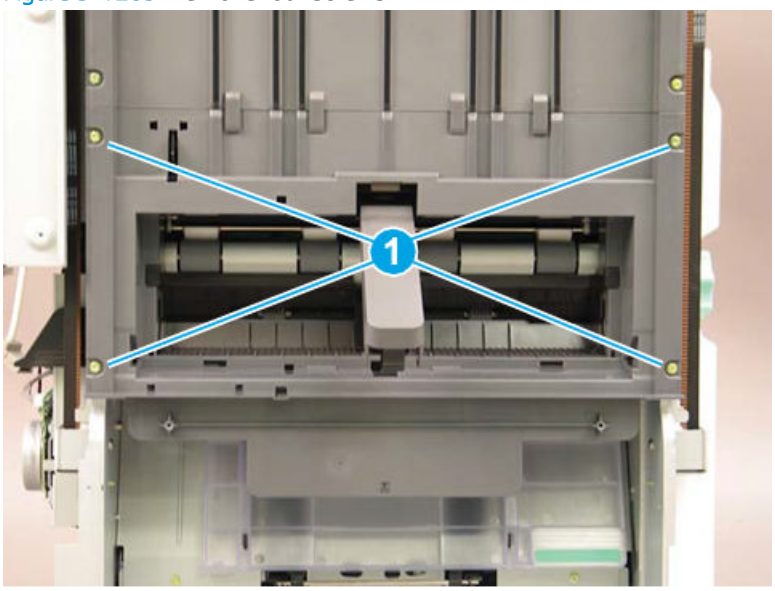
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-1283 Remove four screws

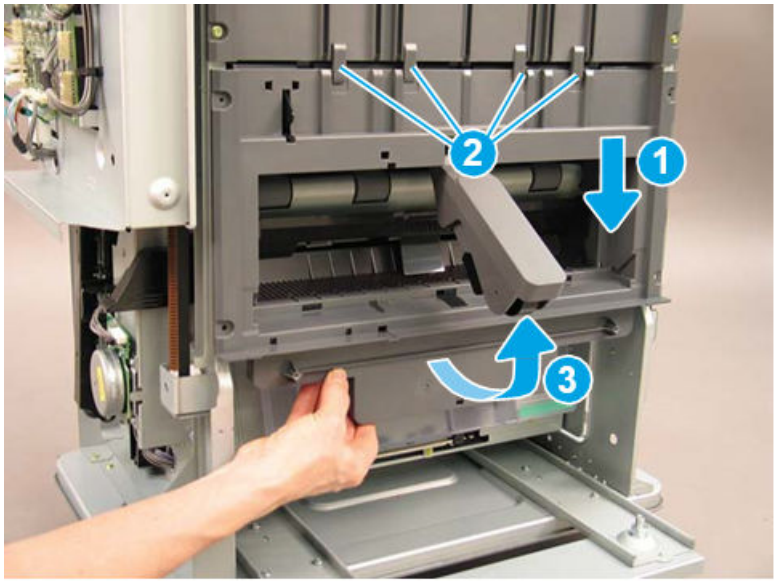


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

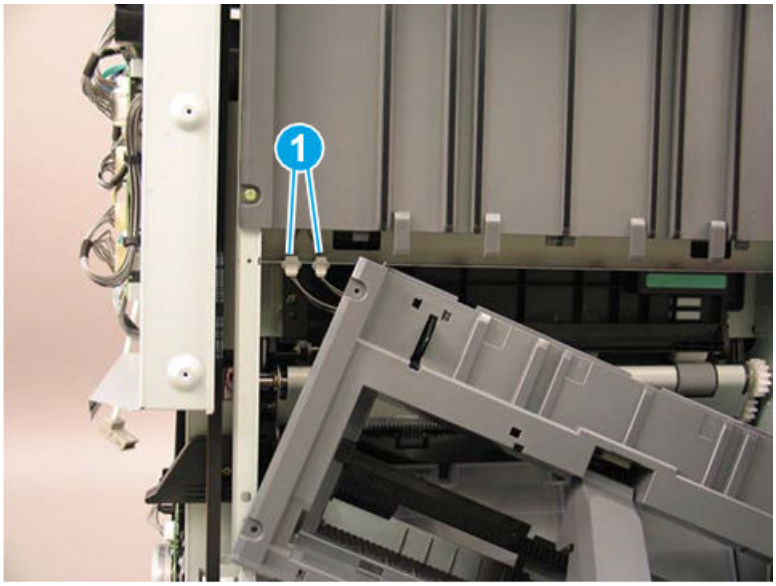
Figure 5-1284 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

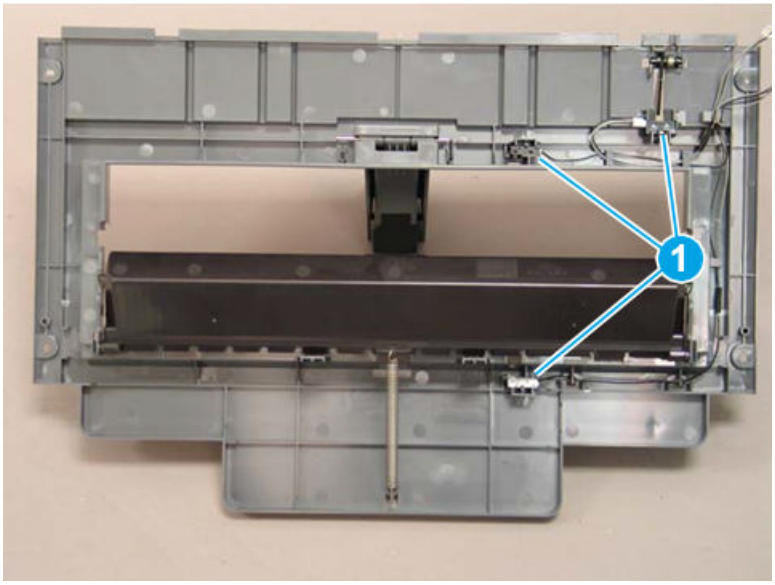
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1285 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-1286 Remove the left lower cover

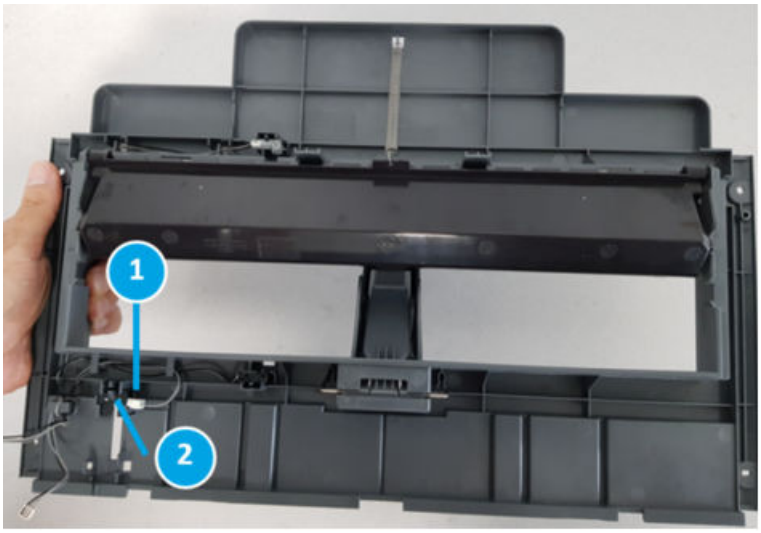


Remove the main output tray lower limit sensor(S26)

Follow these steps to remove the main output tray lower limit sensor(S26).

▲ Disconnect the connector(callout 1) and remove the sensor(S26, callout 2) from the lower shield assembly.

Figure 5-1287 Remove the main output tray lower limit sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray motor sensor (S33)

Learn how to remove and replace the main output tray motor sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the main output tray motor sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-135 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Main output tray motor sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

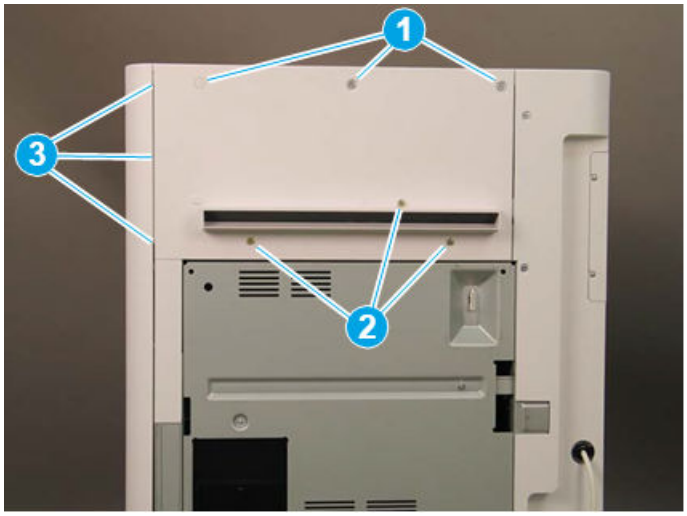
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1288 Remove the right upper cover

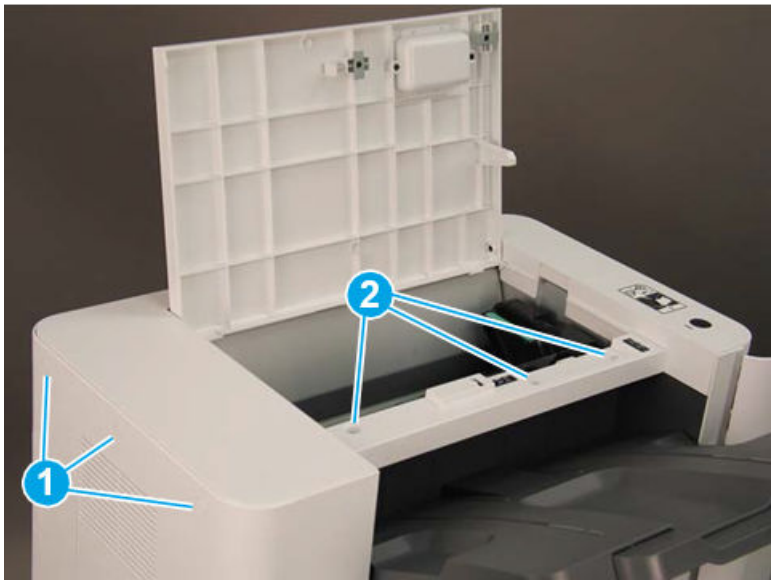


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

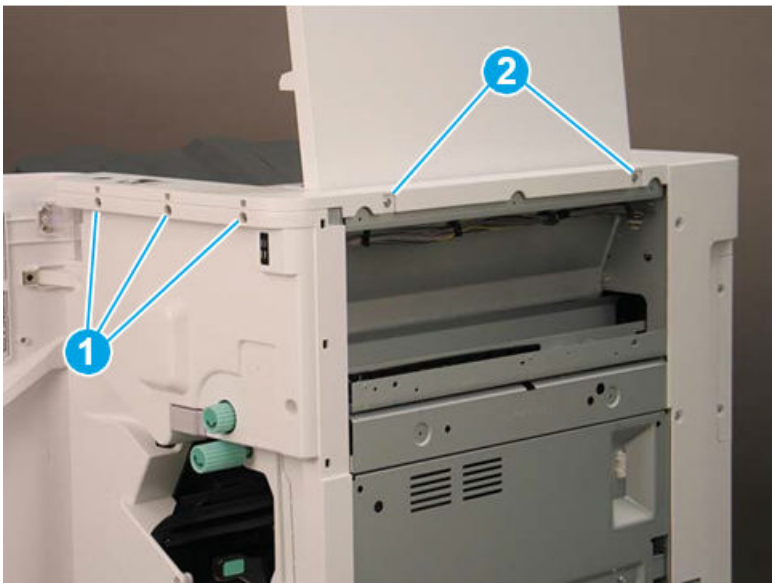
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1289 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

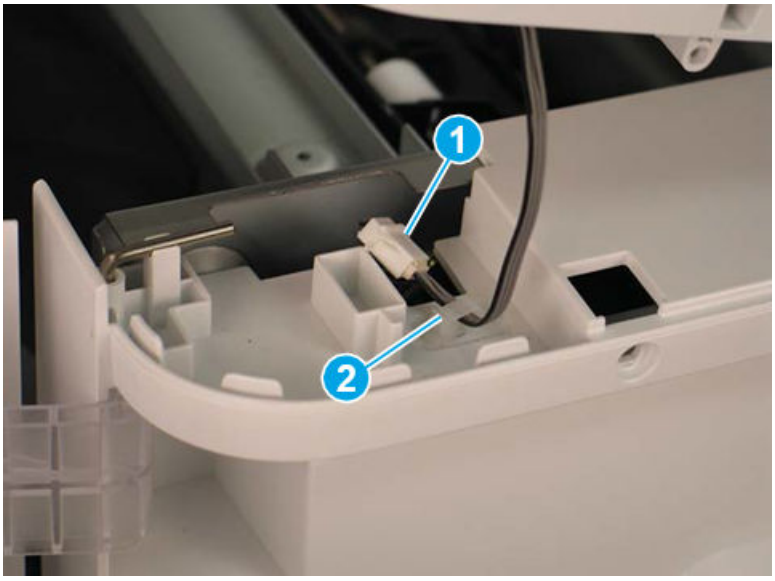
Figure 5-1290 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1291 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

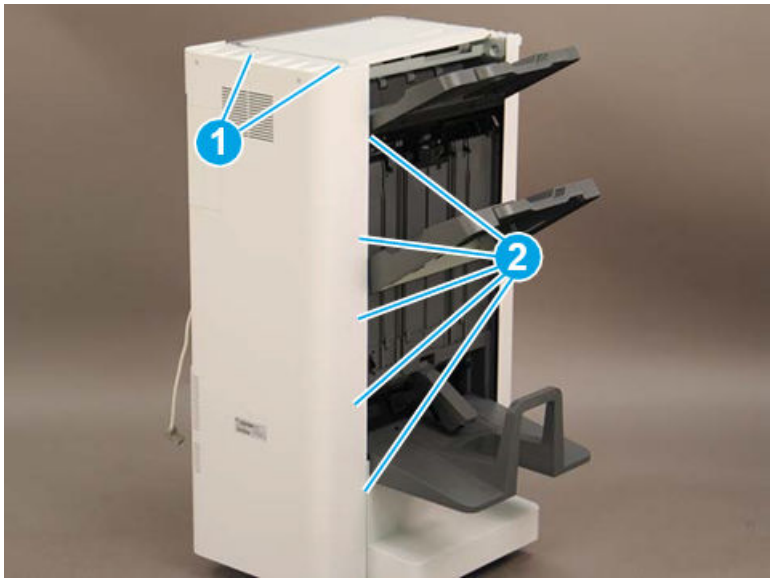


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1292 Remove seven screws

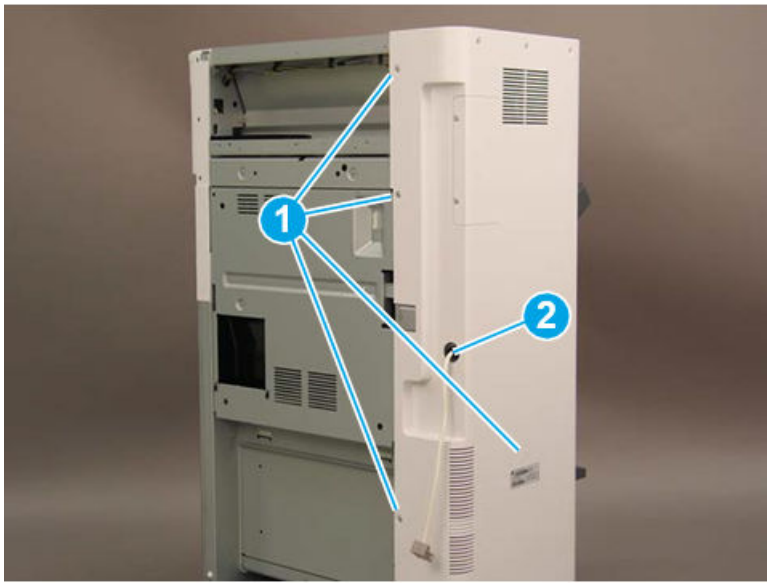


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1293 Remove the rear cover

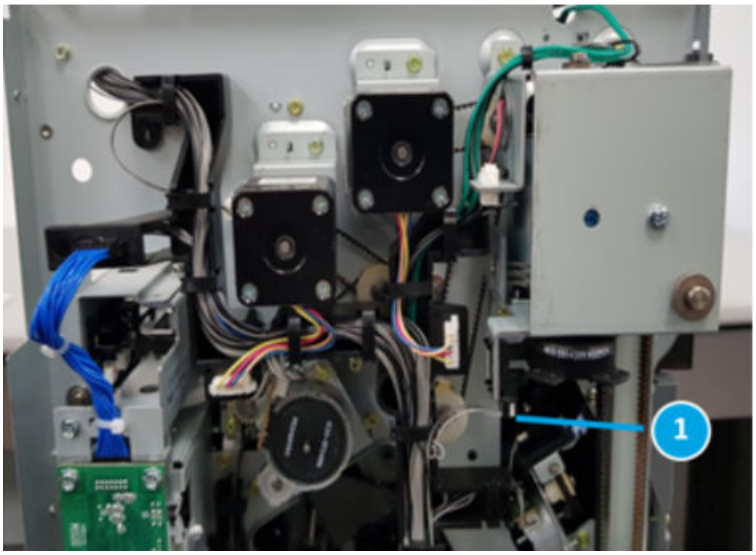


Remove the main output tray motor sensor (S33)

Follow these steps to remove the main output tray motor sensor (S33).

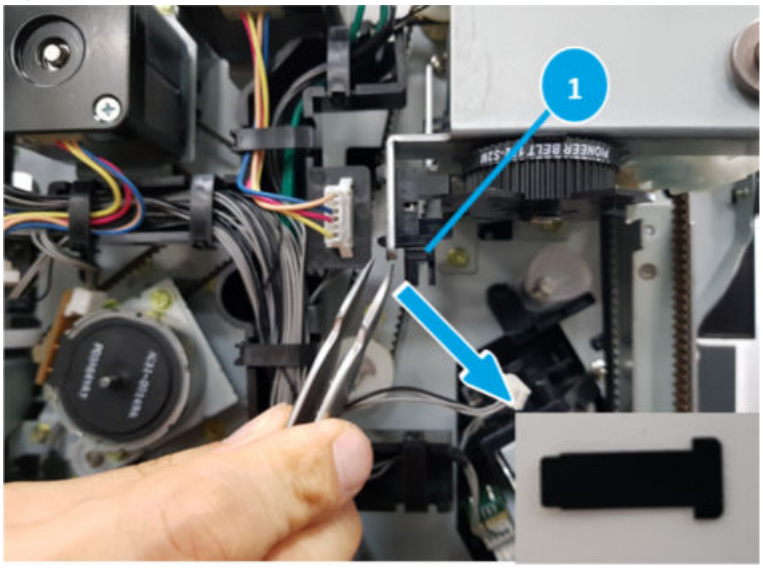
1. Disconnect the connector (callout 1)

Figure 5-1294 Disconnect the connector



2. Remove the tape using tweezers and remove the sensor (S33, callout 1).

Figure 5-1295 Remove the sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HP LaserJet Managed MFP E82540-E82560, E87640-E87660, E82540du-E82560du, E87640du-E87660du, E72525-E72535, E77822-E77830 - Removal and replacement: Main output tray motor (M11)

Learn how to remove and replace the main output tray motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the main output tray motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-136 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01415B	Main output tray motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

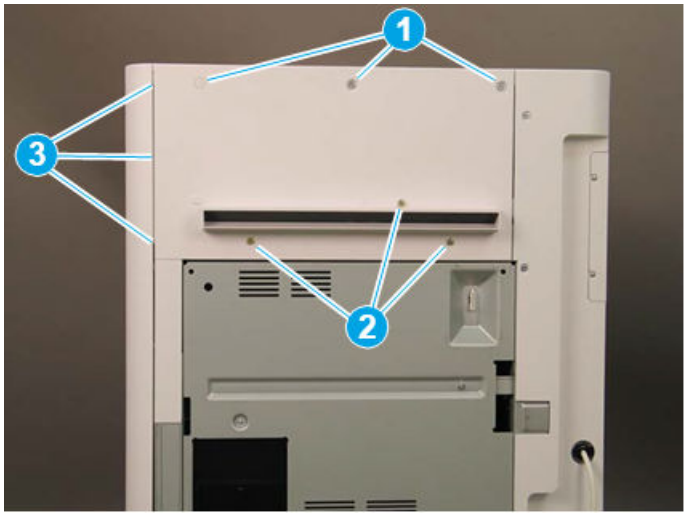
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1296 Remove the right upper cover

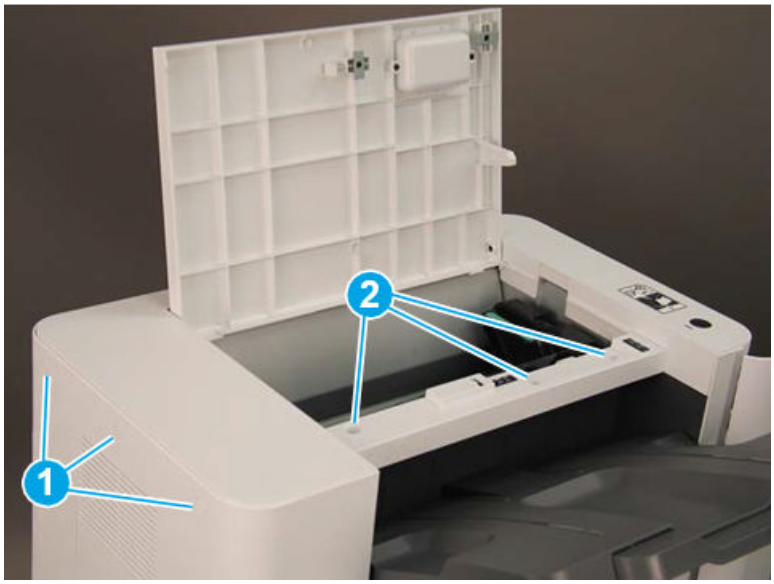


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

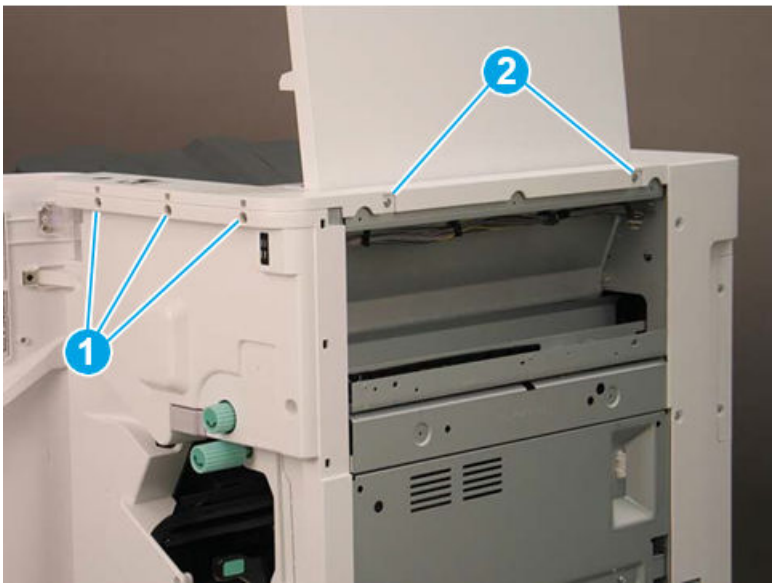
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1297 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

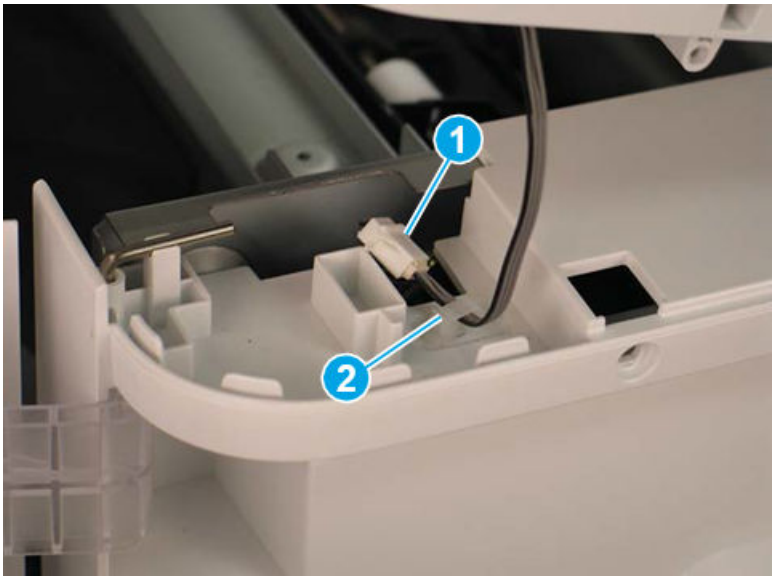
Figure 5-1298 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1299 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

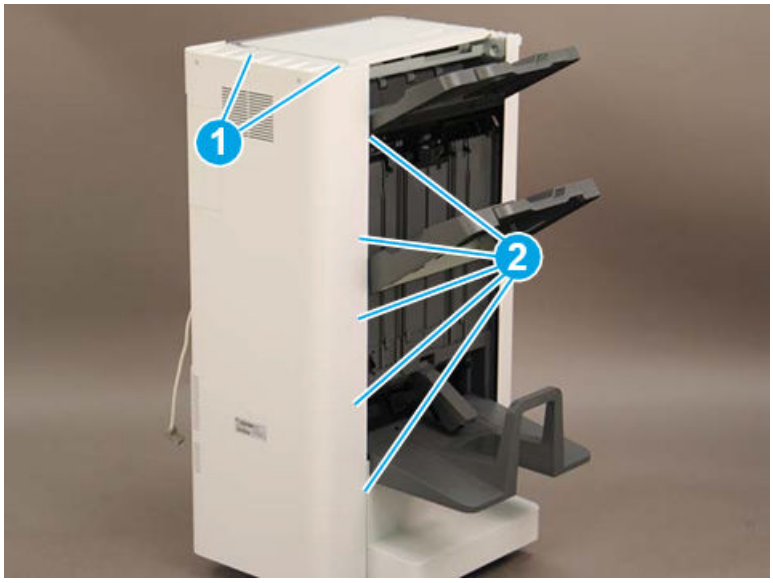


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1300 Remove seven screws

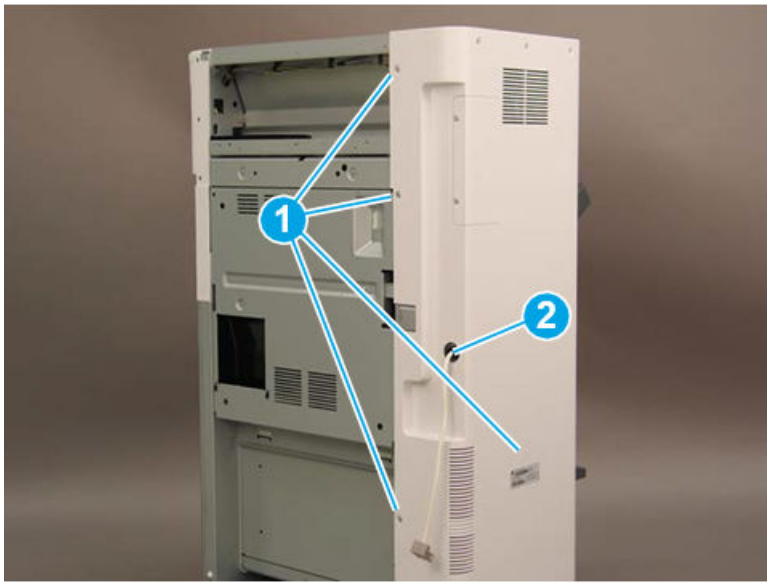


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1301 Remove the rear cover

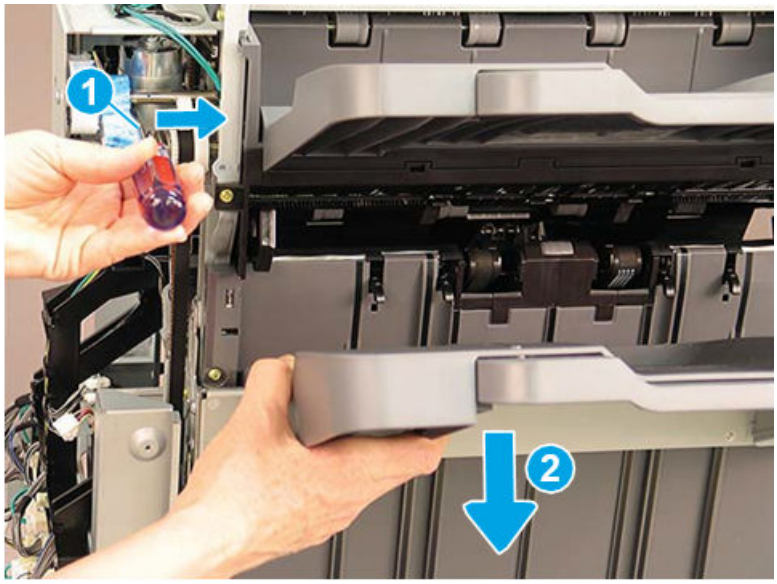


Remove the main output tray motor (M11)

Follow these steps to remove the main output tray motor (M11).

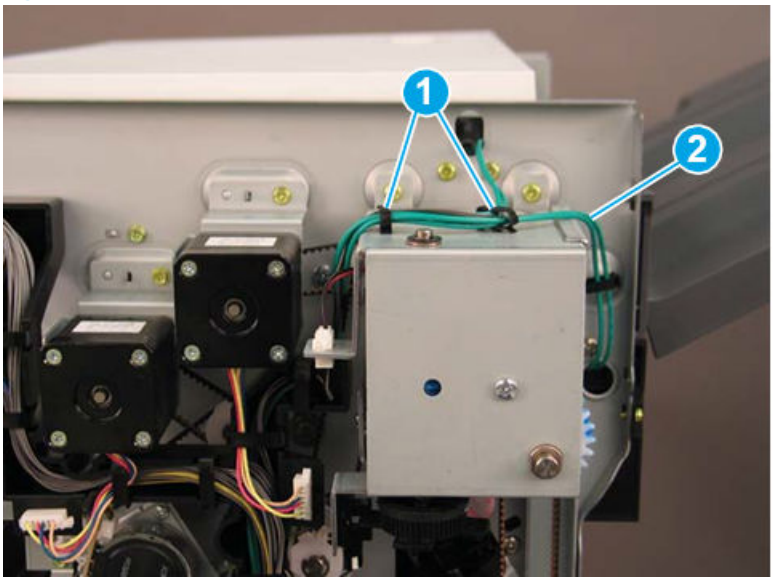
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position

Figure 5-1302 Lower theoutput tray



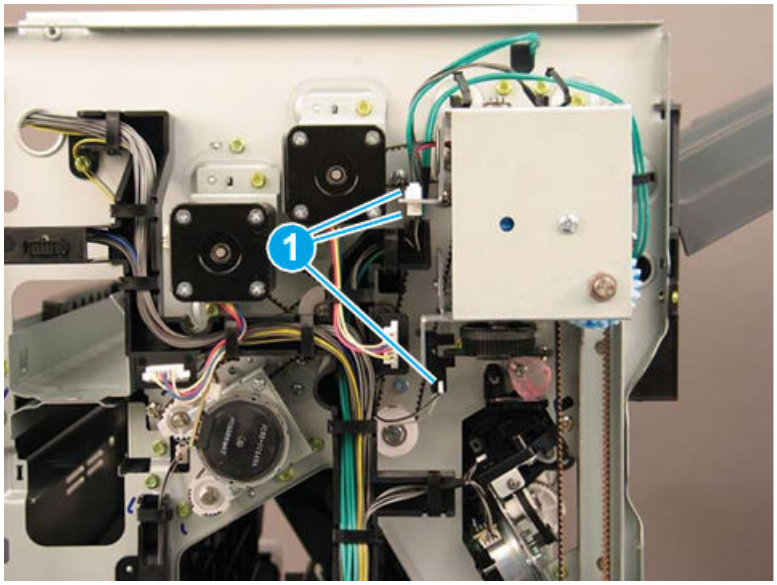
2. Open two retainers (callout 1), and then release the green wires (callout 2).

Figure 5-1303 Open two retainers



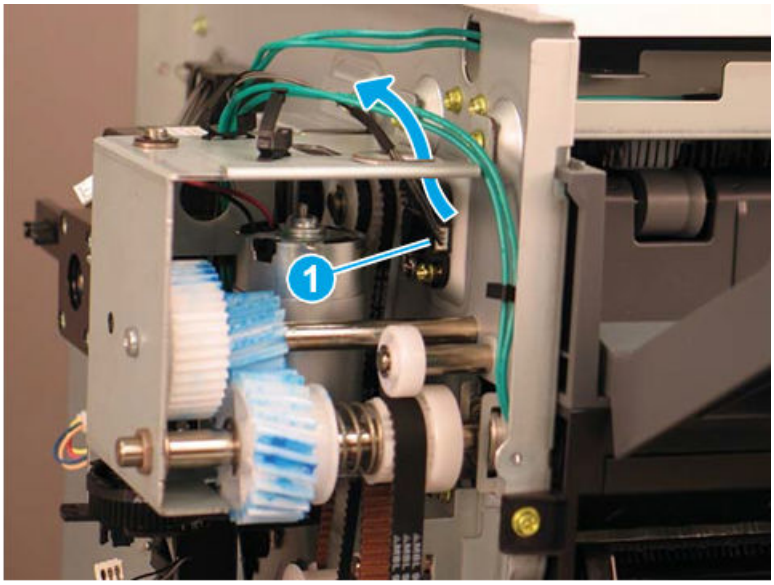
3. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).

Figure 5-1304 Disconnect three connectors



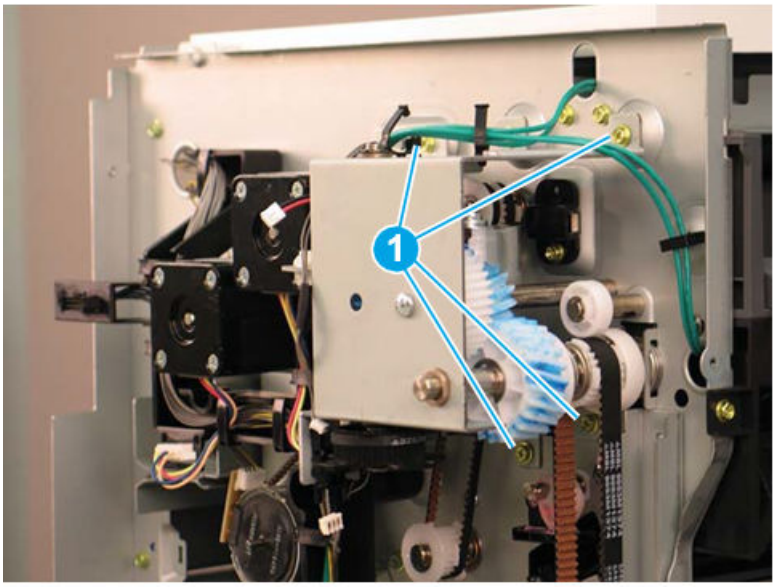
4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then thread the cable up through the opening in the top of the bracket.

Figure 5-1305 Disconnect one connector



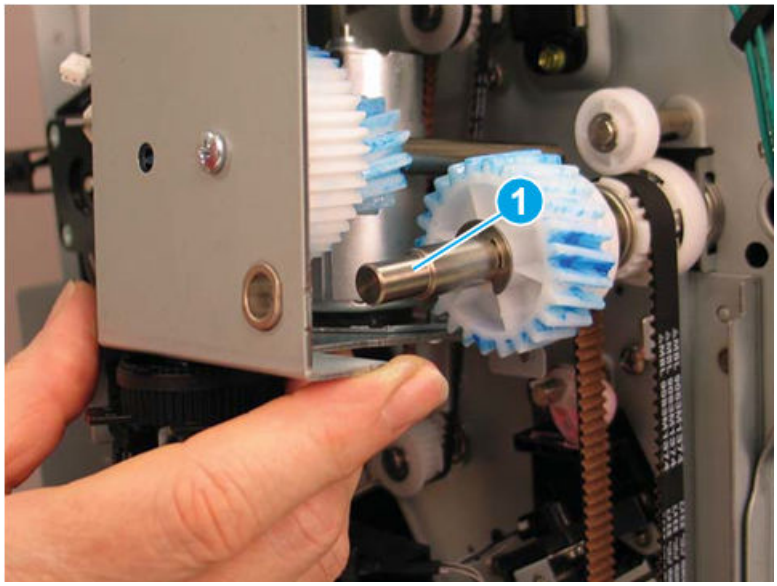
5. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the motor assembly.

Figure 5-1306 Remove four screws and the motor assembly



6. Carefully pull the motor assembly away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-1307 Remove the motor assembly

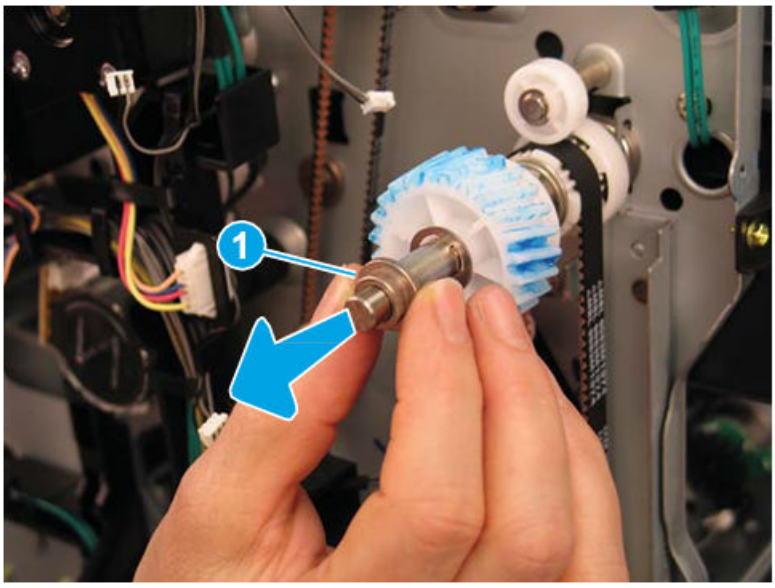


7. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

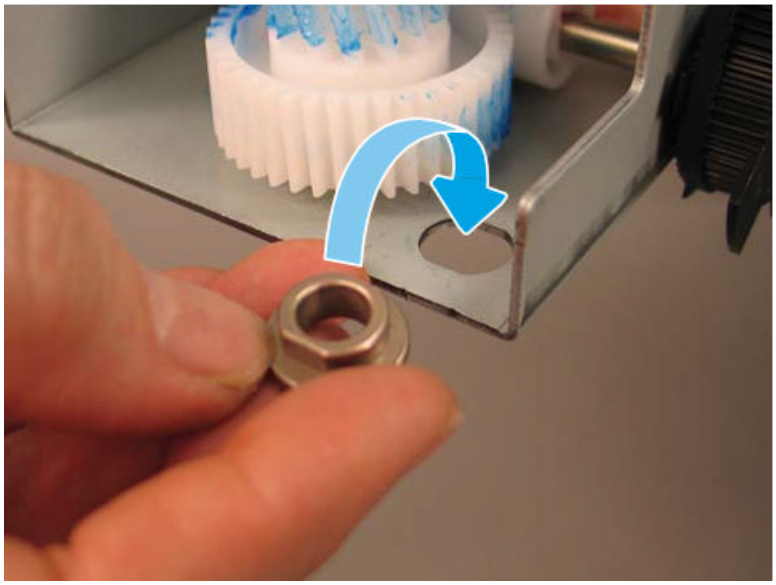
NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Main tray moving motor (M11)

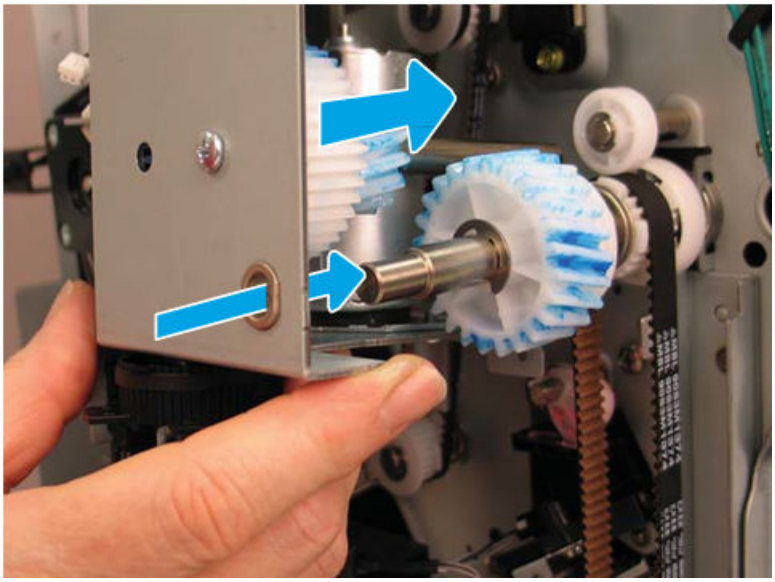
a. Before installing the motor assembly, slide the bushing (callout 1) off of the shaft.



b. Align the flat edges on the bushing with the flat edges on the opening in the motor assembly bracket, and then install the bushing.



c. Position the bushing over the shaft, and then install the motor assembly.



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Paper holding unit

Removal and replacement: Paper holding home sensor (S22)

Learn how to remove and replace the paper holding home sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the paper holding home sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-137 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Paper holding home sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

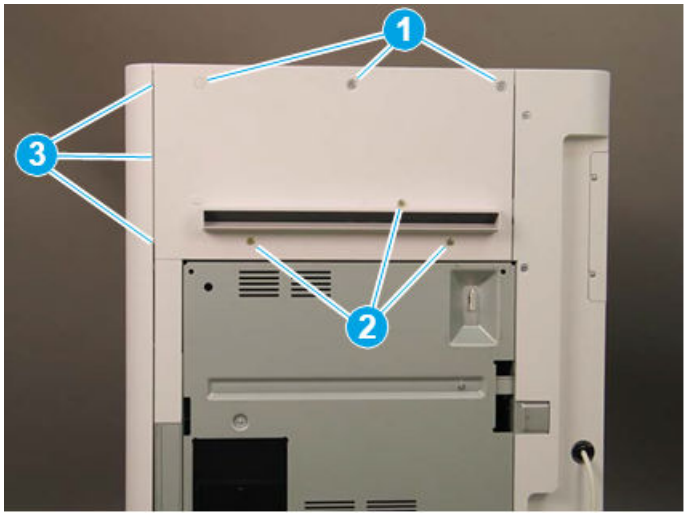
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1308 Remove the right upper cover

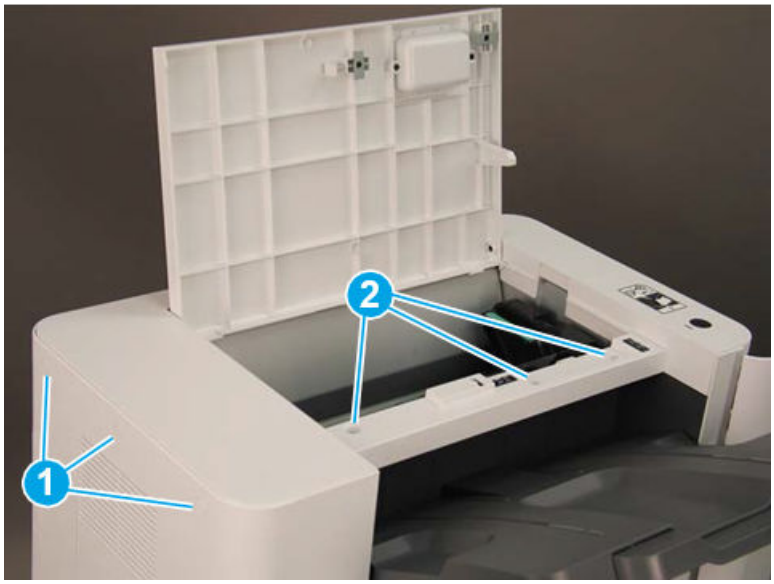


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

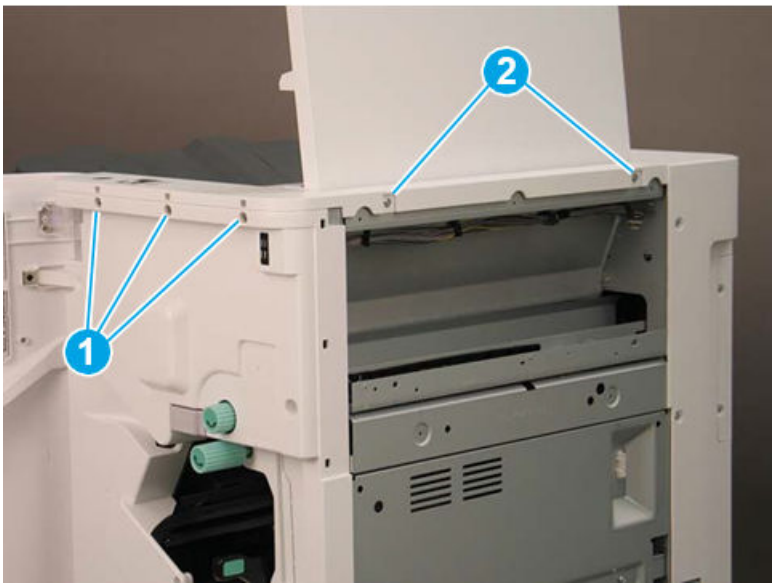
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1309 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

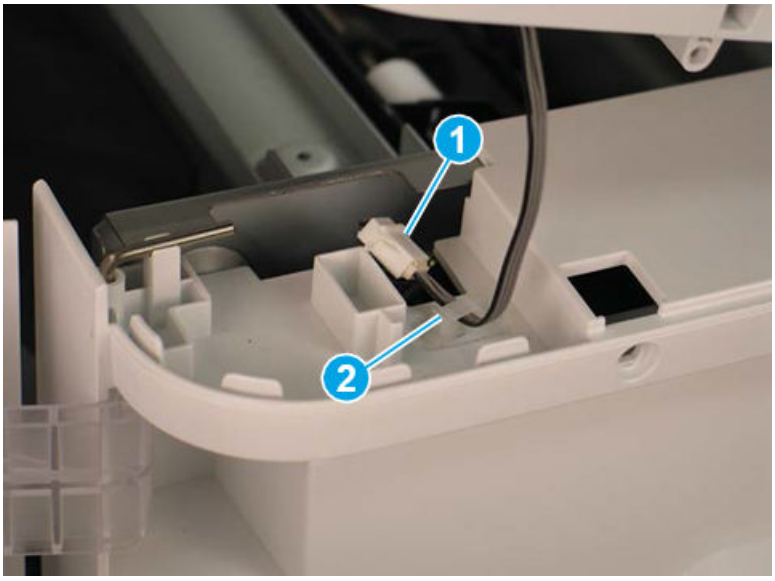
Figure 5-1310 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1311 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

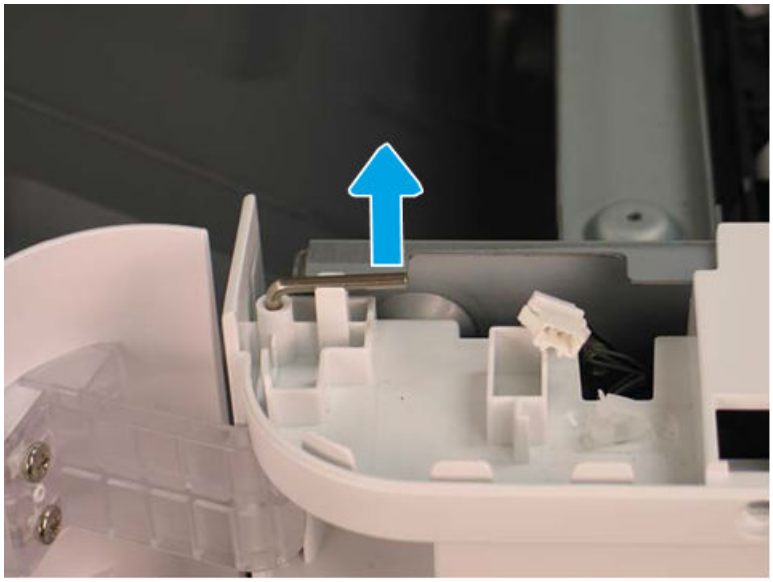


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

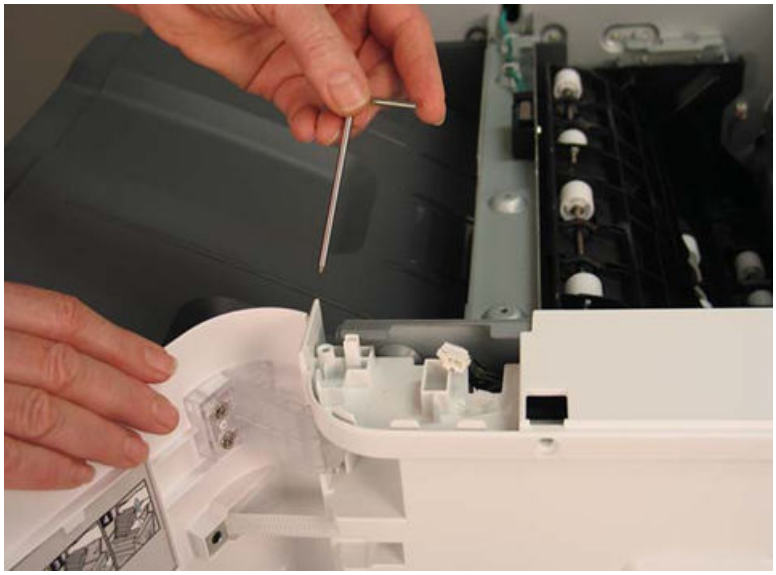
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-1312 Lift the top hinge pin



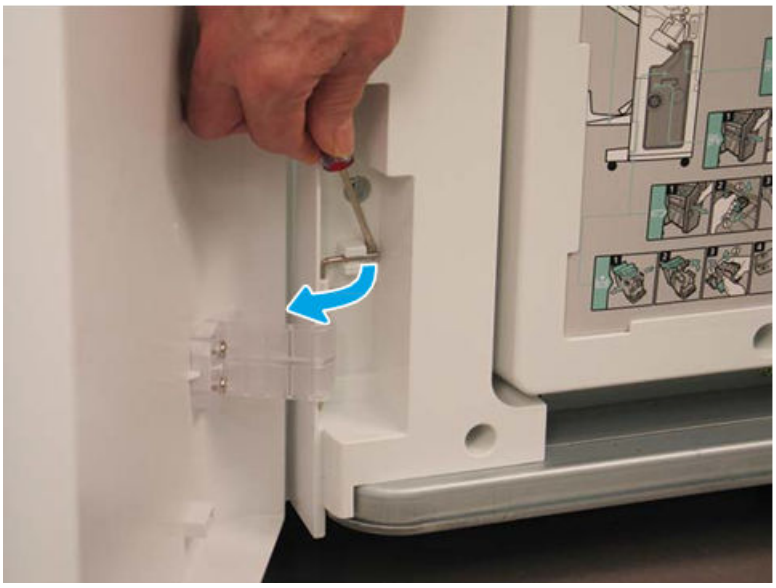
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-1313 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1314 Release the lower hinge pin



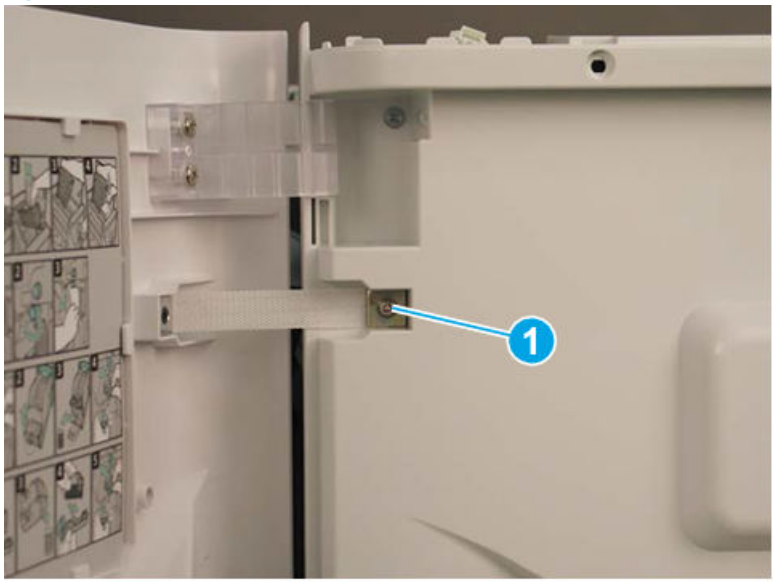
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-1315 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1316 Remove the front door

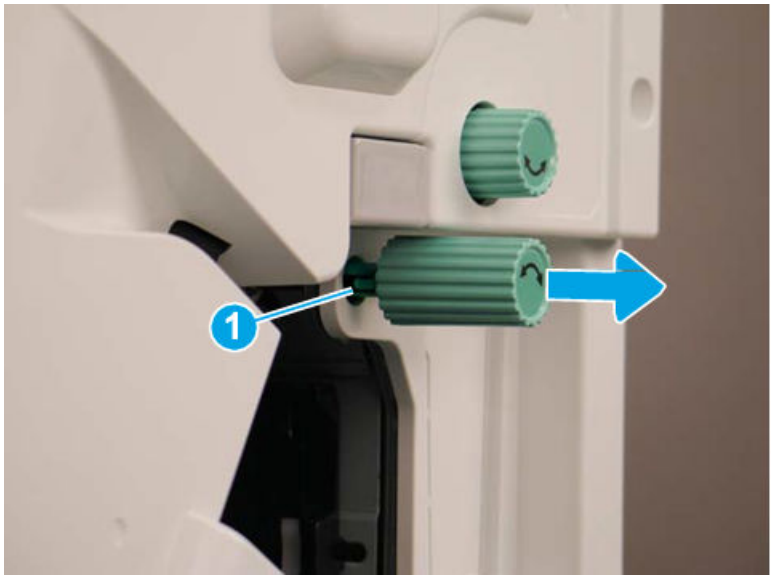


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-1317 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

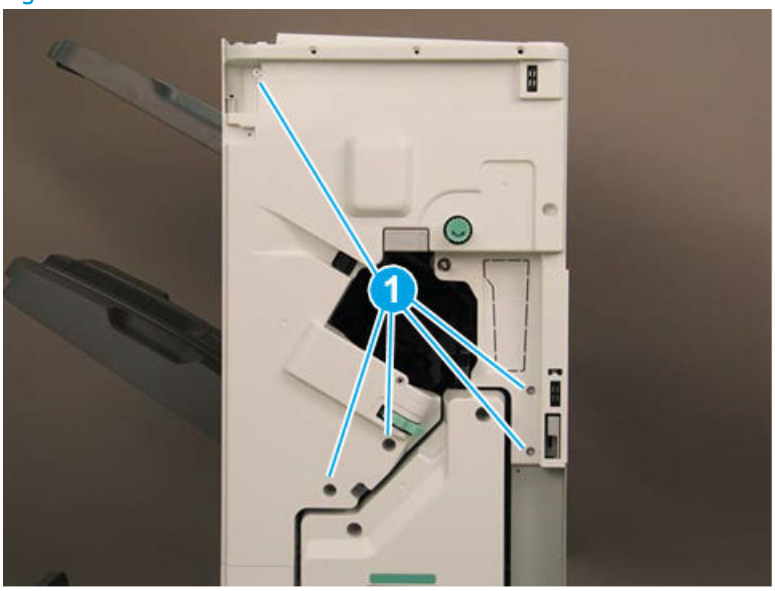
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-1318 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1319 Remove the front cover

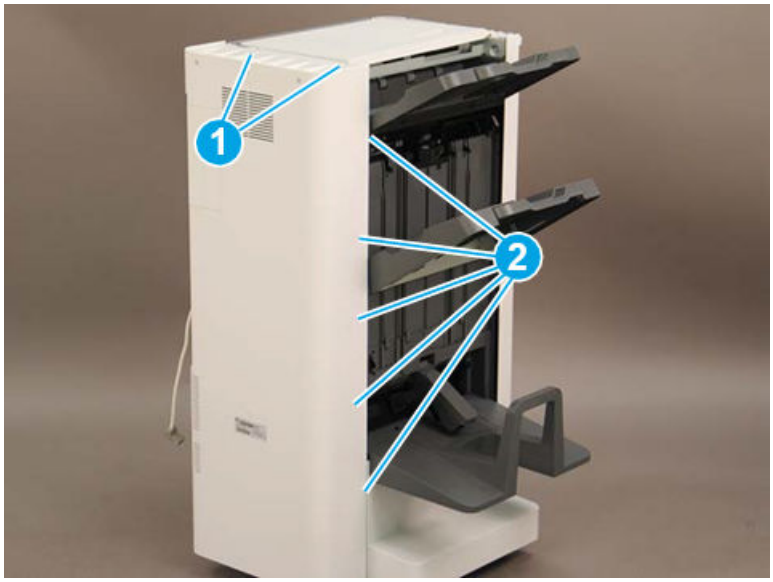


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1320 Remove seven screws

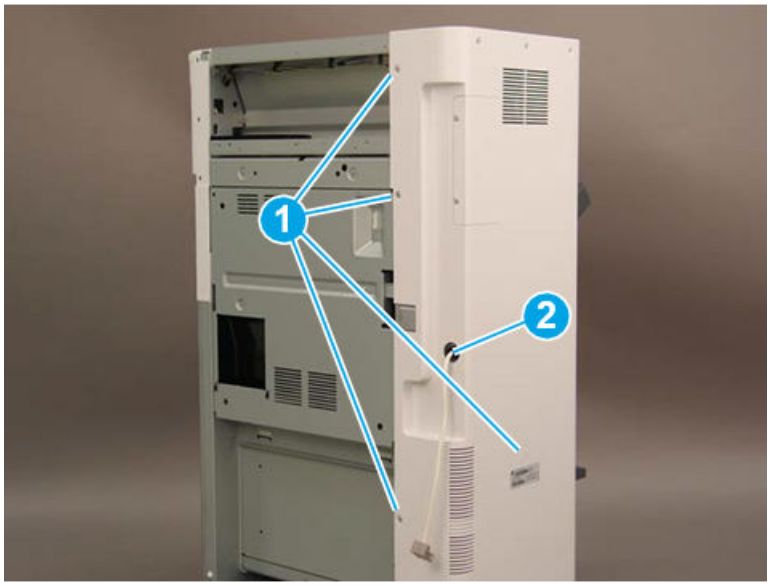


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1321 Remove the rear cover

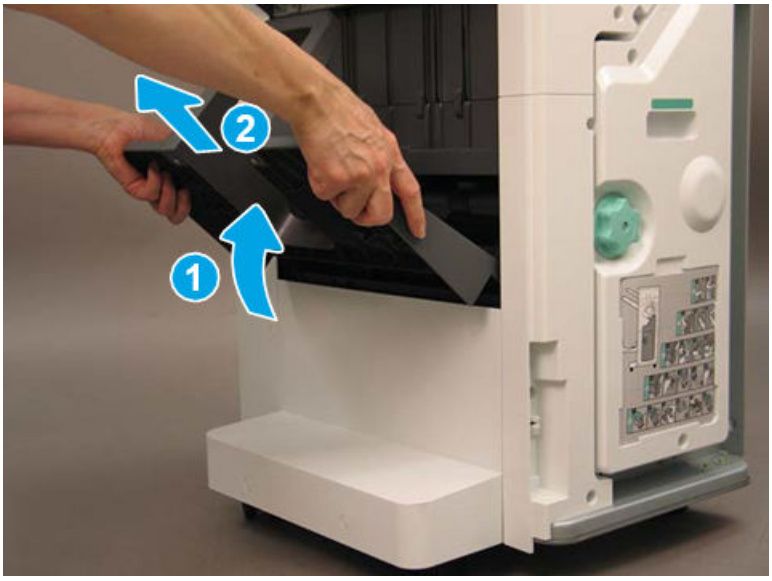


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1322 Remove the booklet output tray



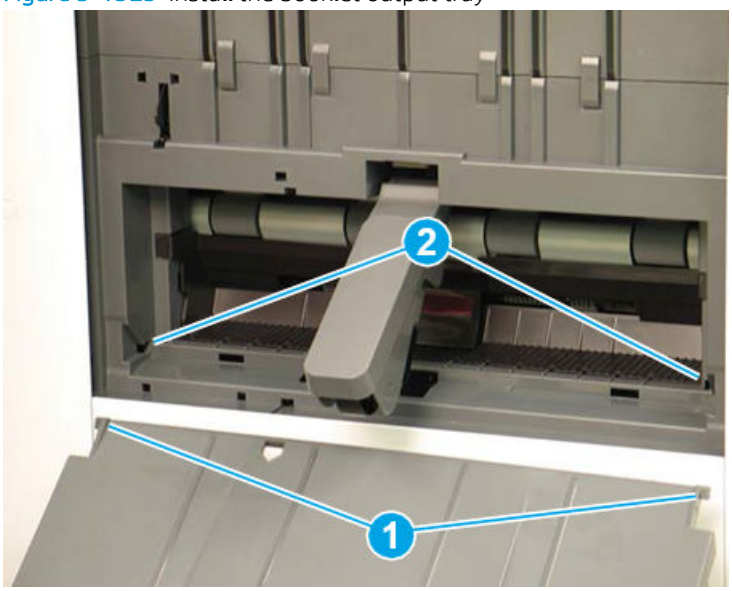
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-1323 Install the booklet output tray

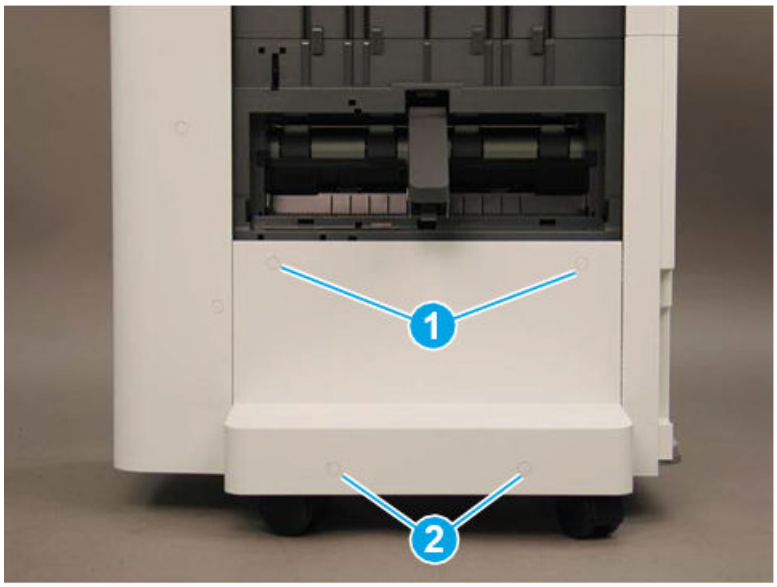


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-1324 Remove four screws

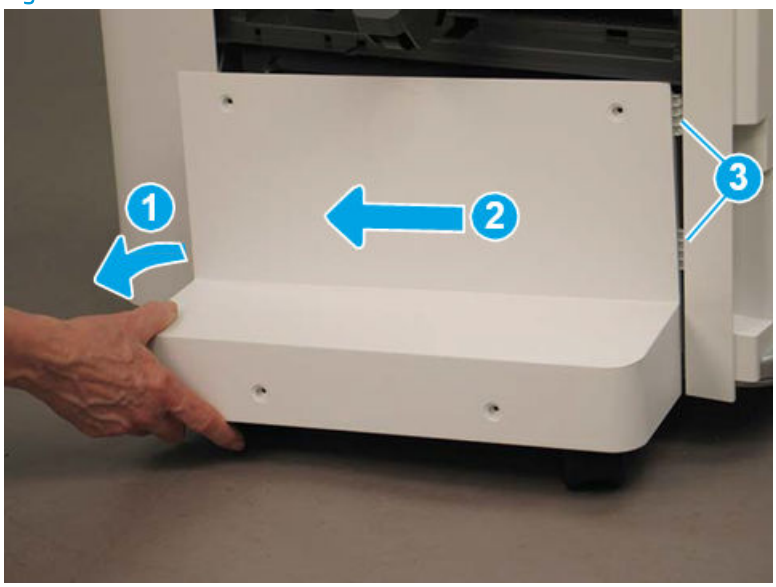


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1325 Remove the caster cover



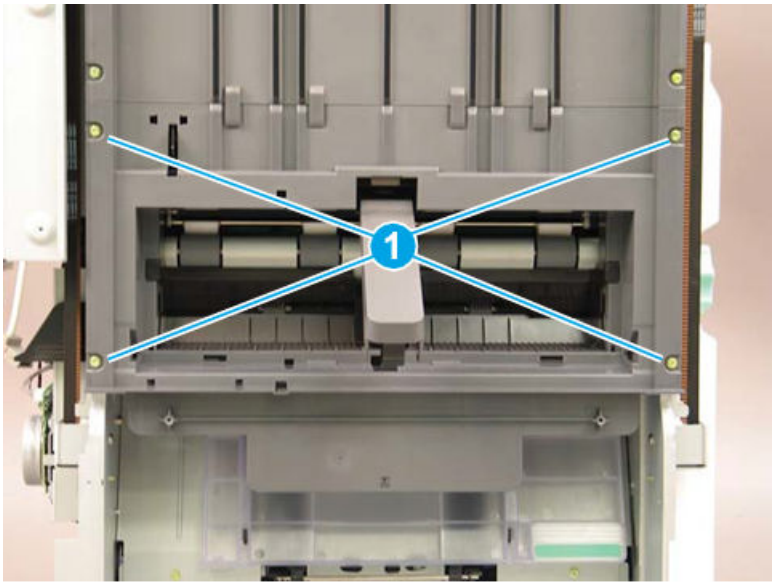
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-1326 Remove four screws

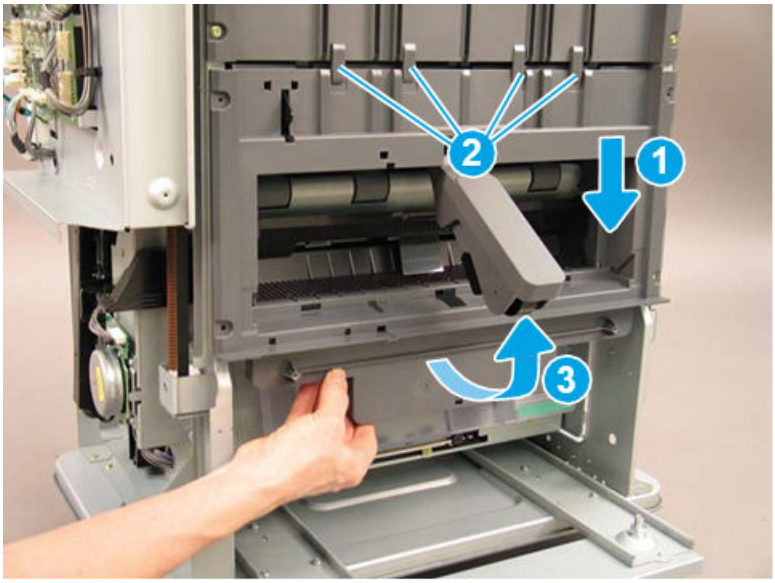


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

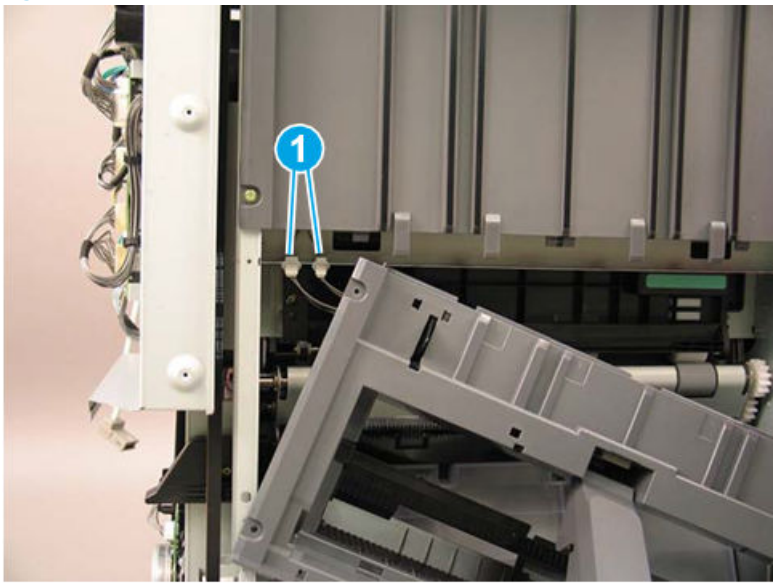
Figure 5-1327 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

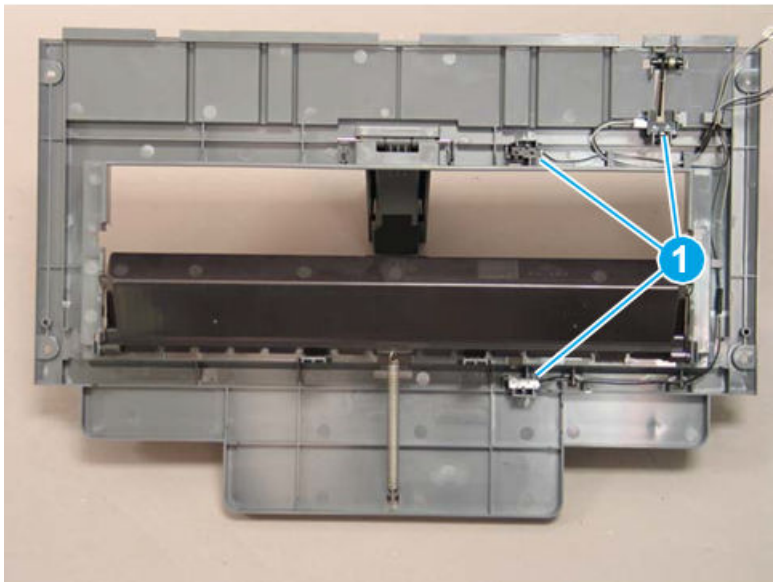
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1328 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-1329 Remove the left lower cover

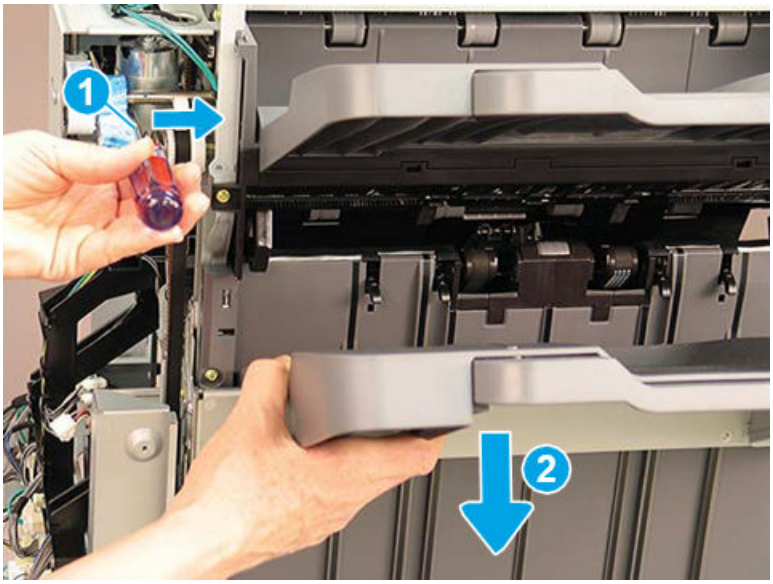


Remove the left upper cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover (finisher).

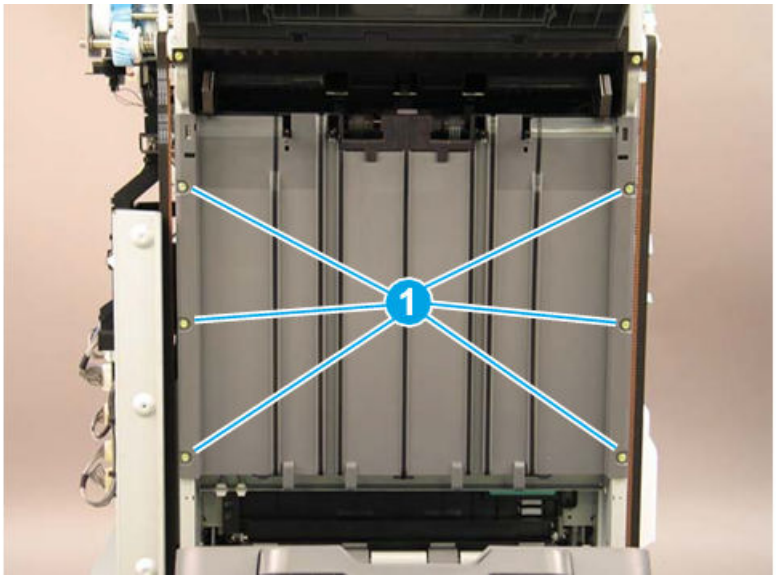
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 5-1330 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1331 Remove six screws

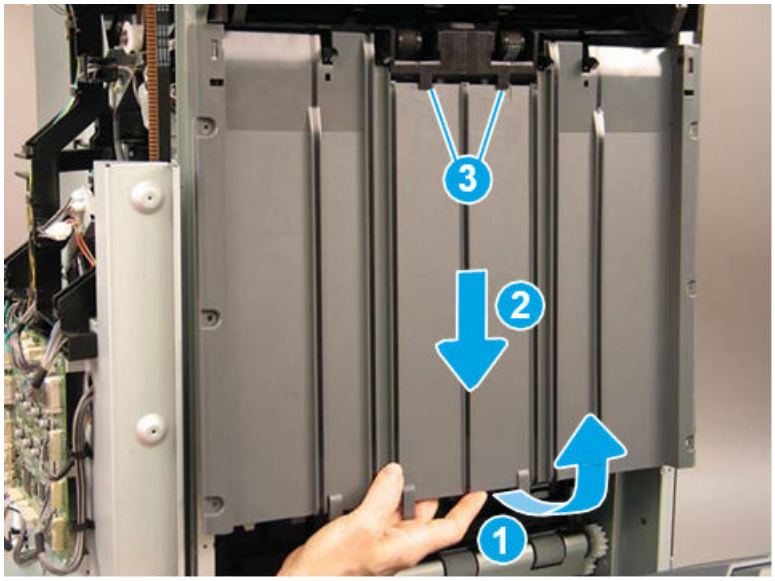


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away fromthe finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

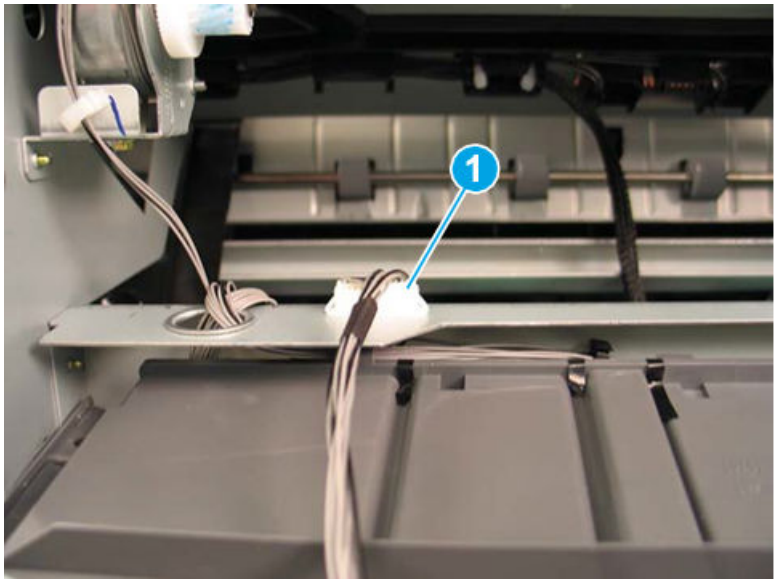
Figure 5-1332 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

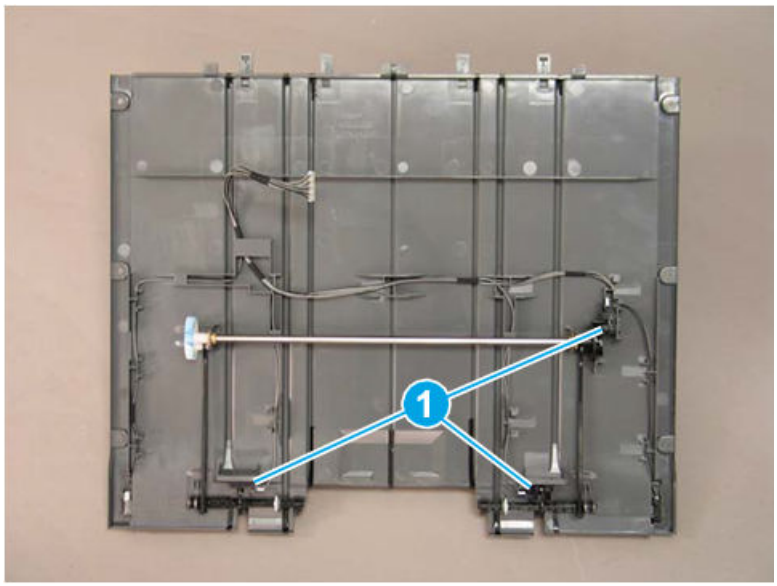
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1333 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the left upper cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left upper cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-1334 Remove the left upper cover

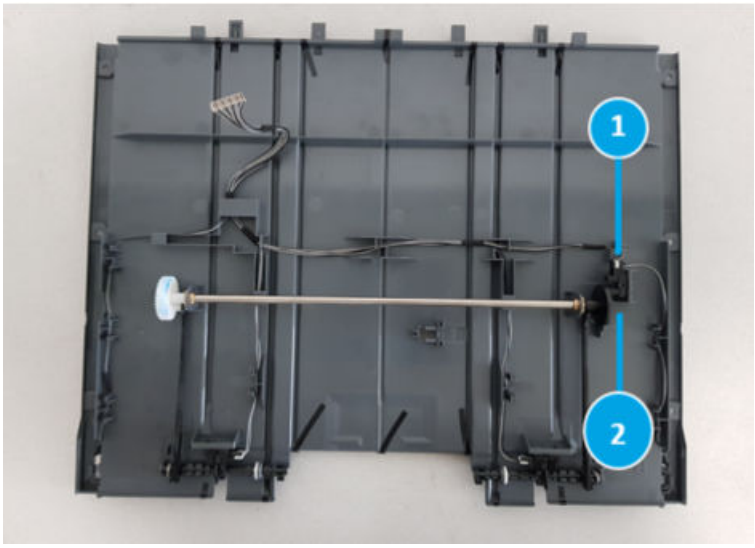


Remove the paper holding home sensor(S22)

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding home sensor(S22).

▲ Disconnect the connector(callout 1) and remove the sensor(S22, callout 2) from the upper shield assembly.

Figure 5-1335 Remove the paper holding home sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper holding front sensor (S17)

Learn how to remove and replace the front paper holding sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front paper holding sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-138 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Front paper holding sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

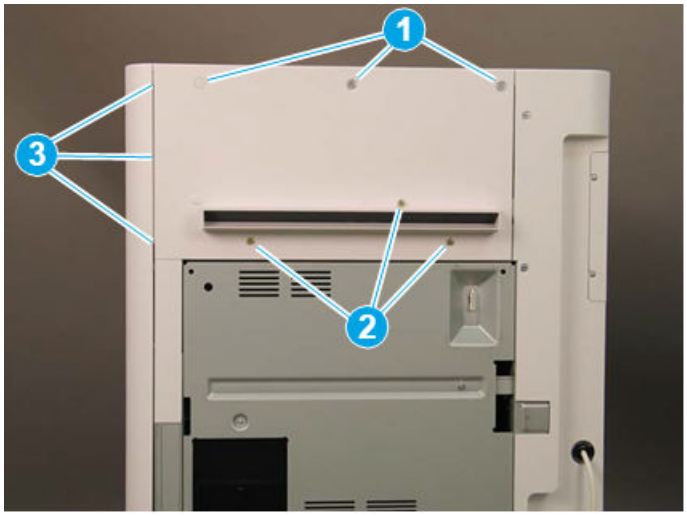
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1336 Remove the right upper cover

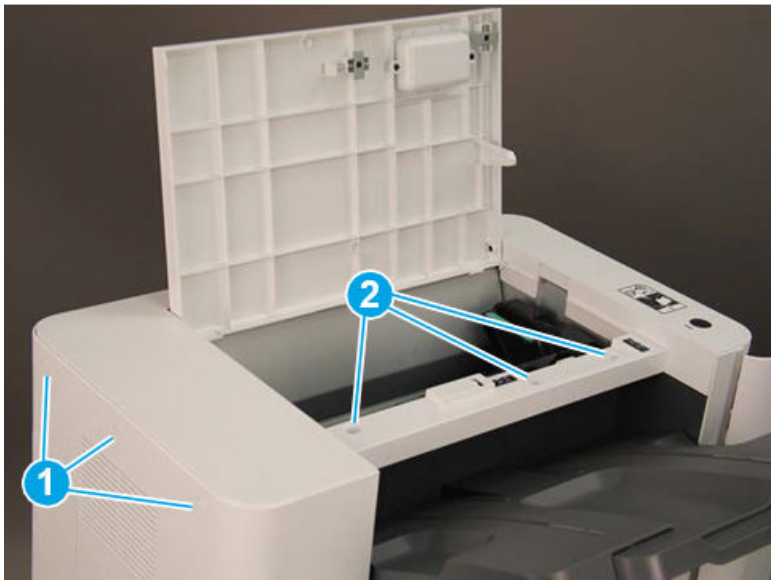


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

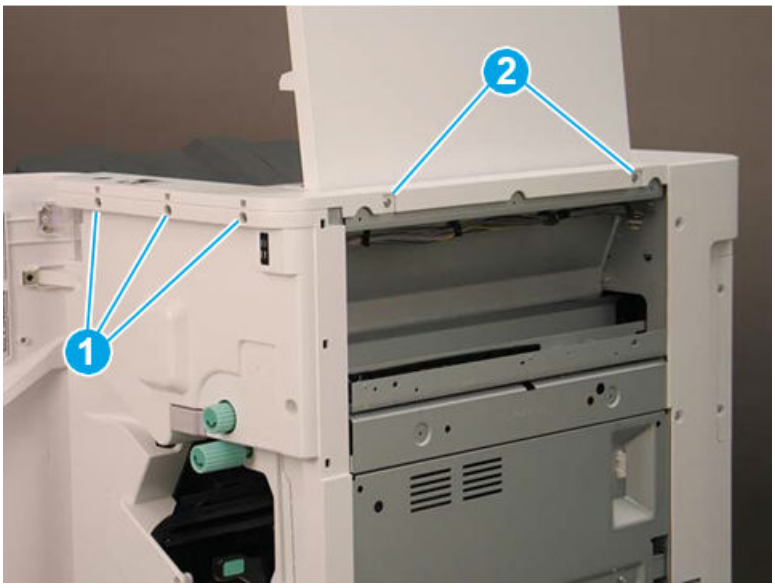
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1337 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

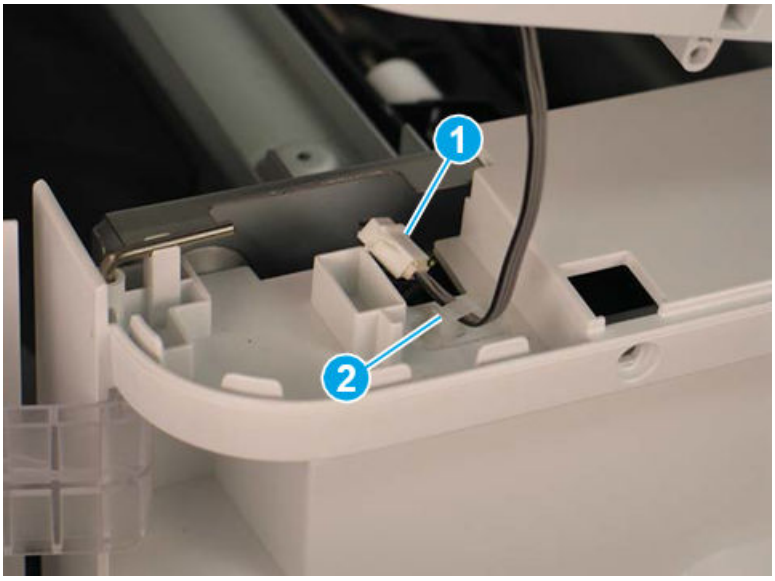
Figure 5-1338 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1339 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

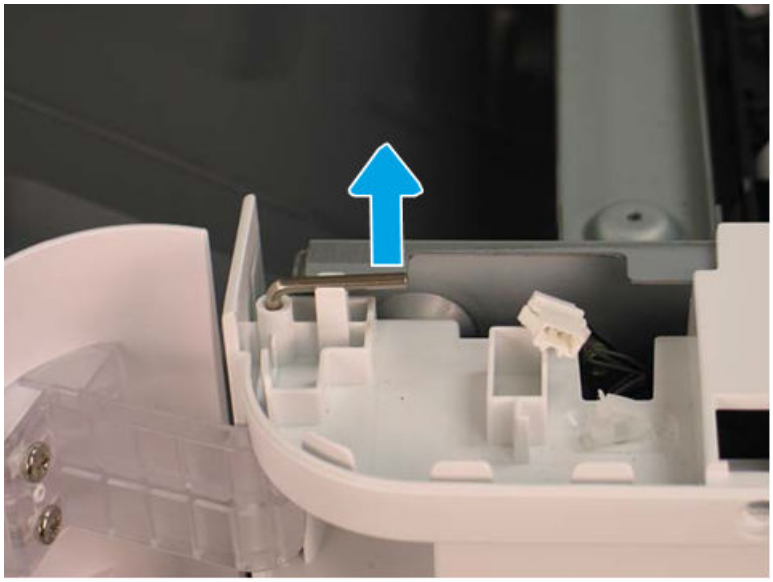


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

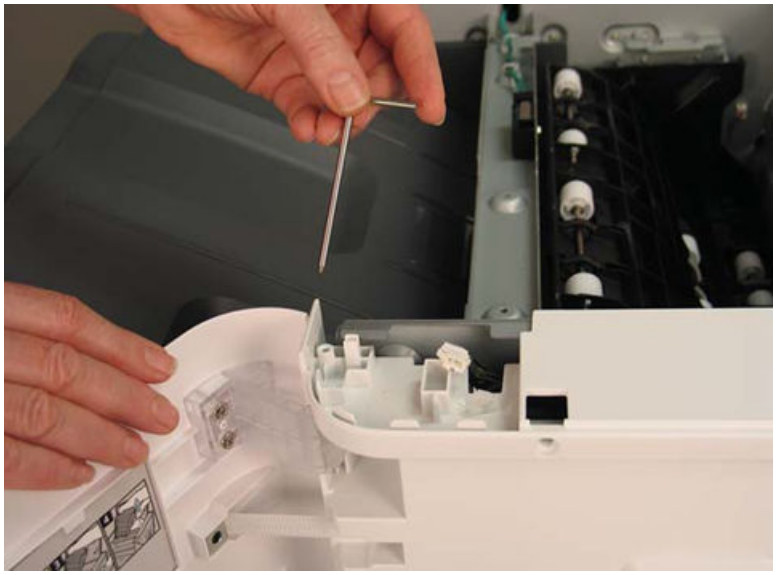
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-1340 Lift the top hinge pin



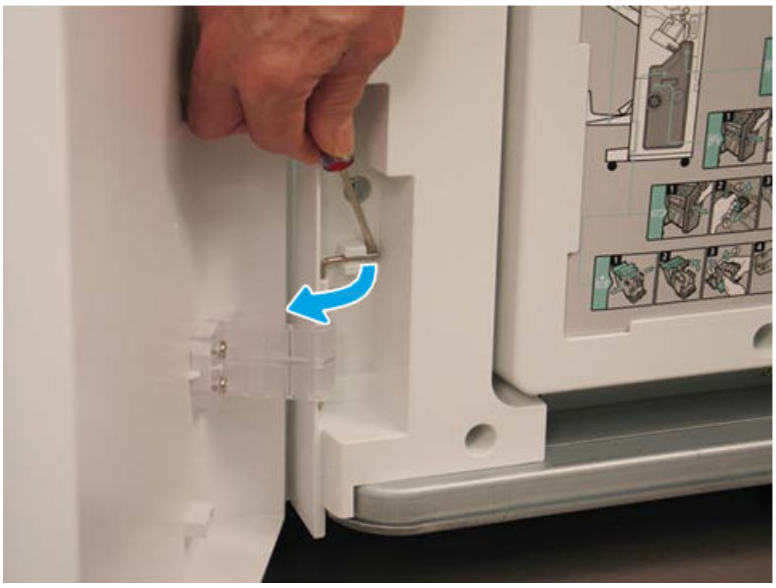
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-1341 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1342 Release the lower hinge pin



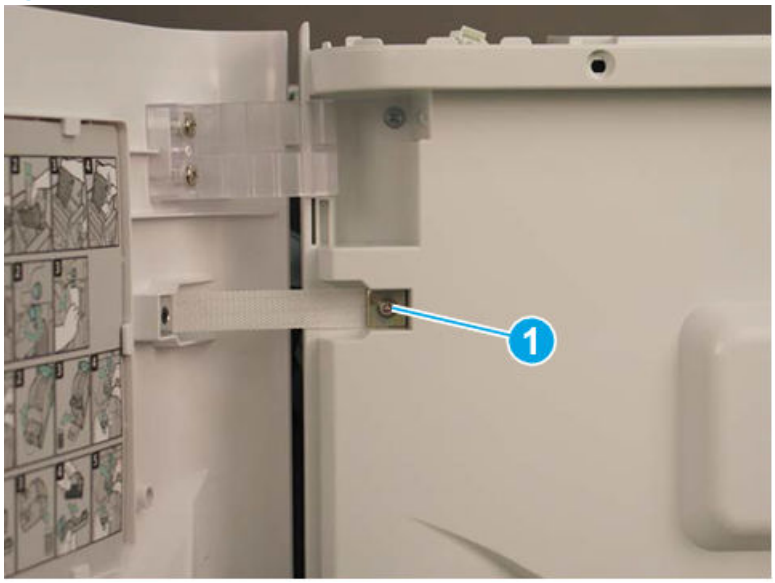
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-1343 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1344 Remove the front door

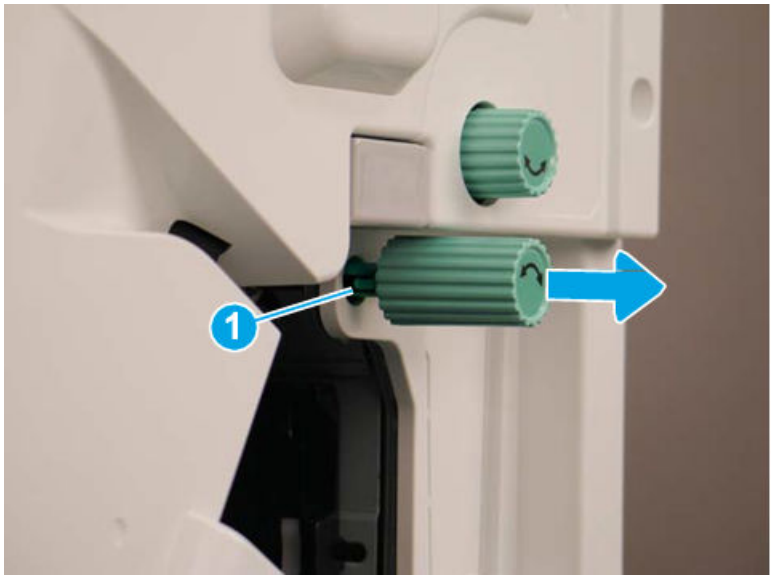


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-1345 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

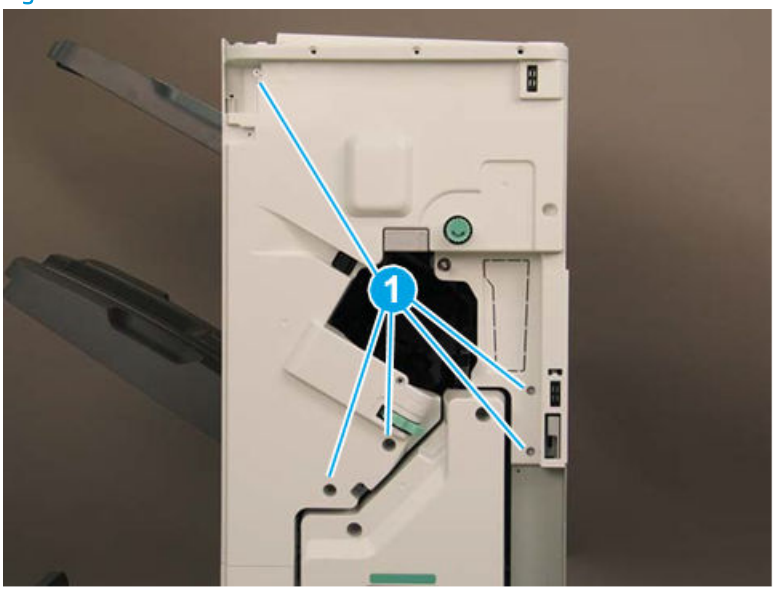
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-1346 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1347 Remove the front cover

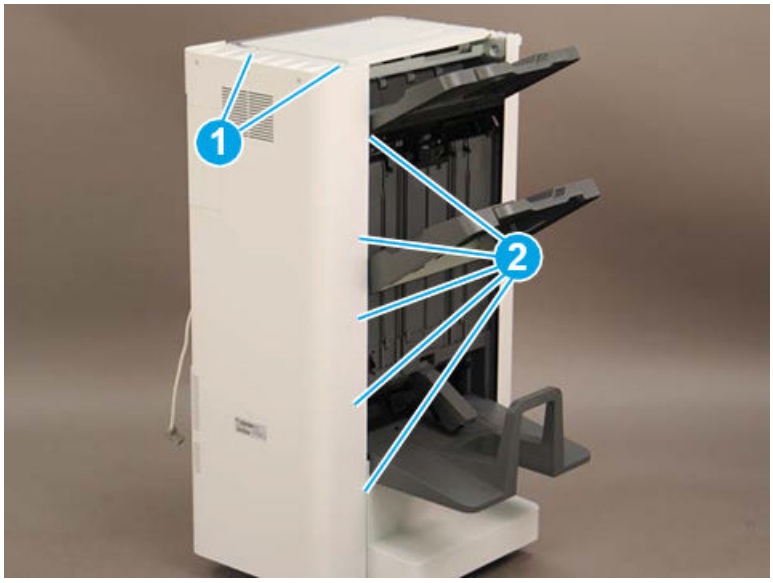


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1348 Remove seven screws

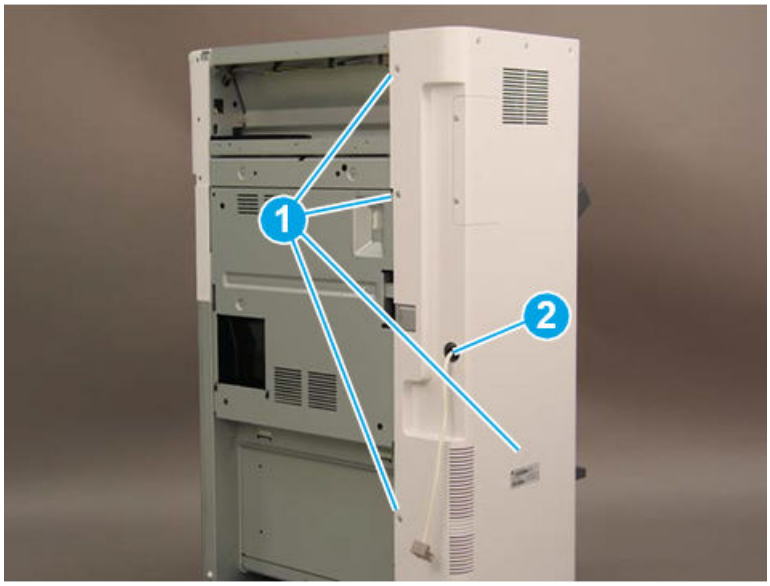


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1349 Remove the rear cover

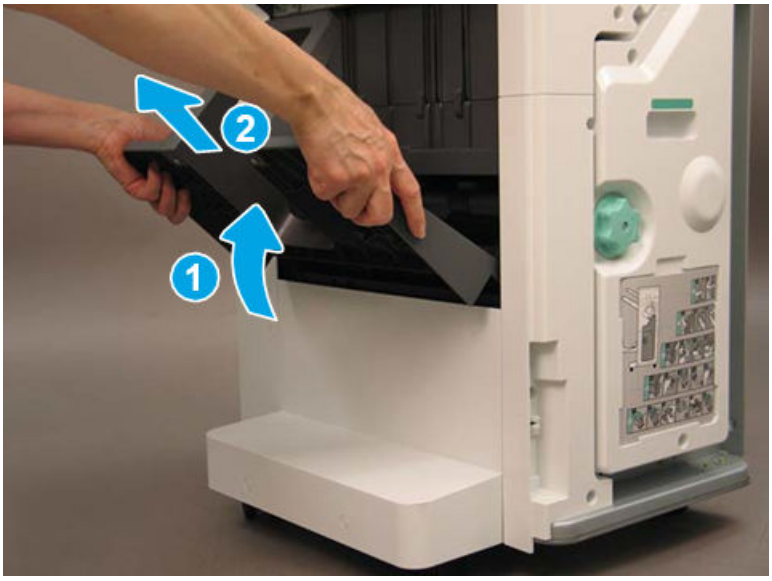


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1350 Remove the booklet output tray



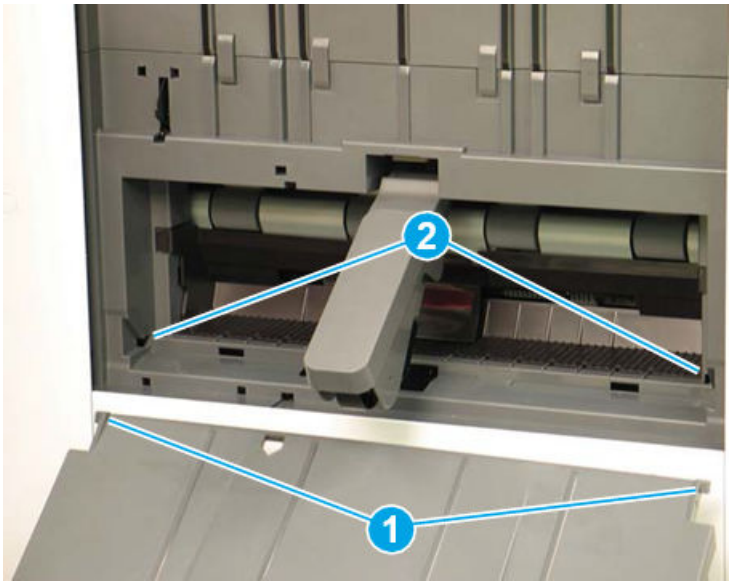
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-1351 Install the booklet output tray

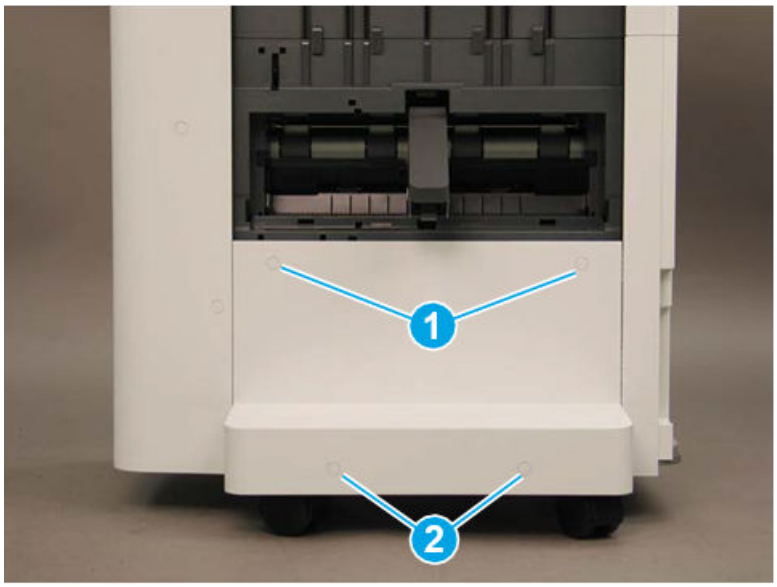


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-1352 Remove four screws

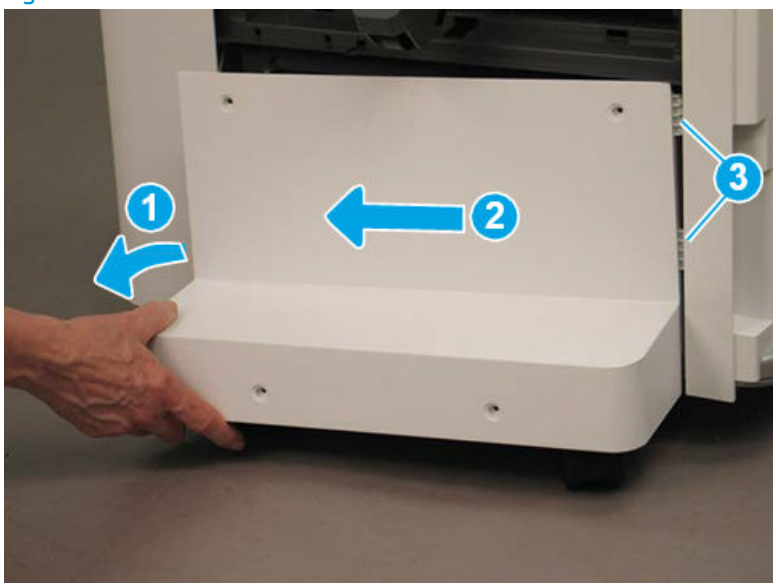


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1353 Remove the caster cover



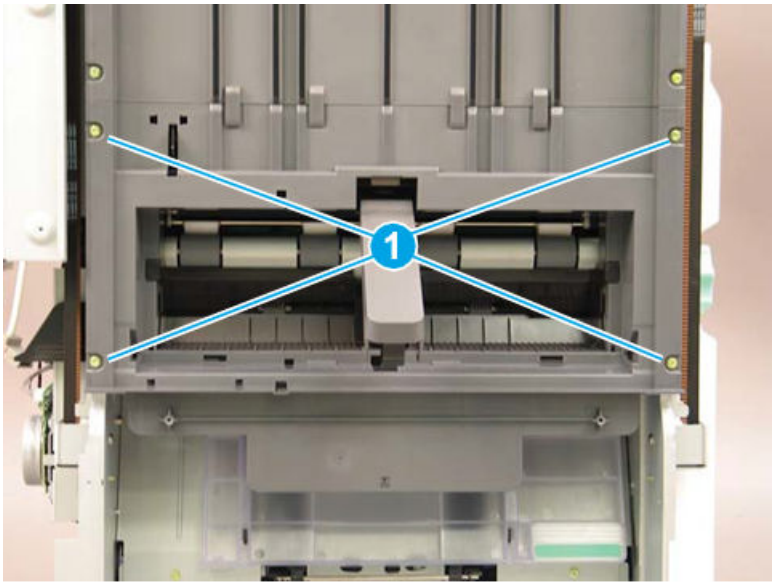
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-1354 Remove four screws

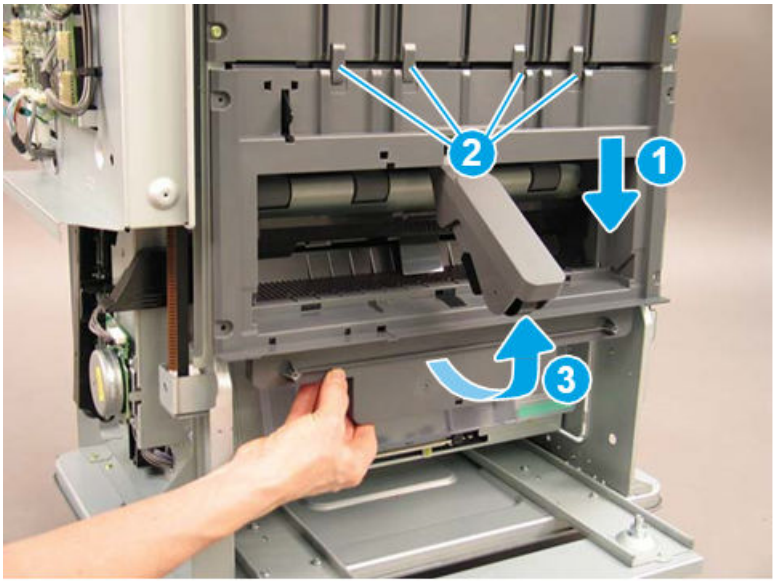


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

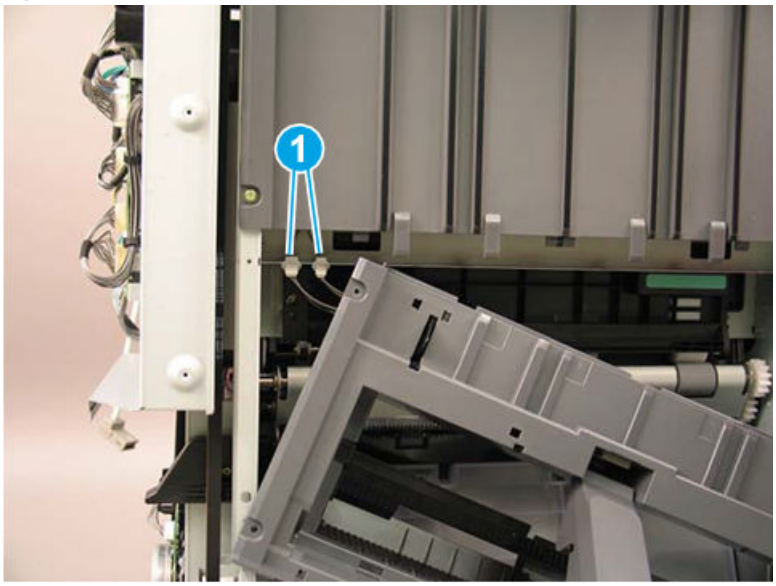
Figure 5-1355 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

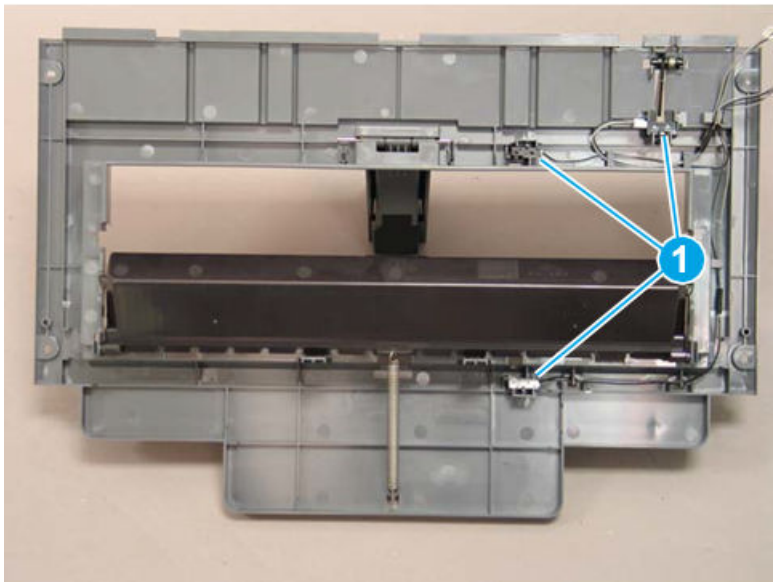
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1356 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-1357 Remove the left lower cover

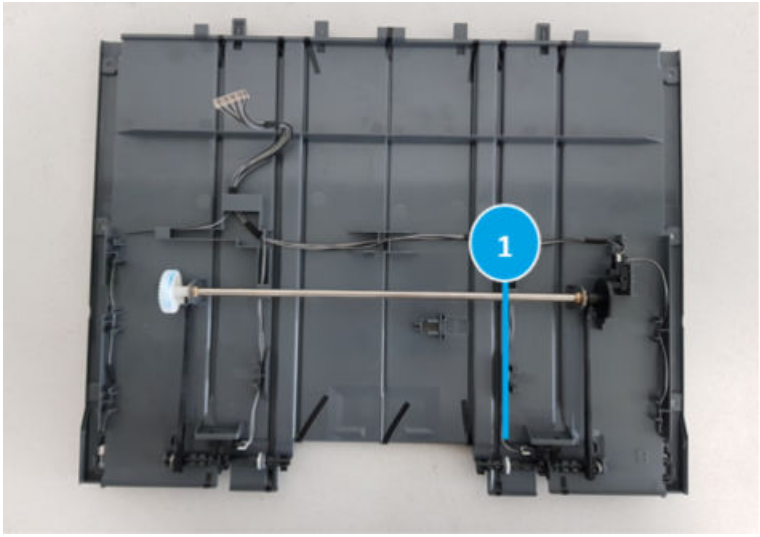


Remove the paper holding sensor (S17)

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding sensor (S17).

- Remove the sensor(callout 1, S17) from the upper shield assembly.

Figure 5-1358 Remove the paper holding sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper holding rear sensor (S31)

Learn how to remove and replace the rear paper holding sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear paper holding sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-139 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Rear paper holding sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

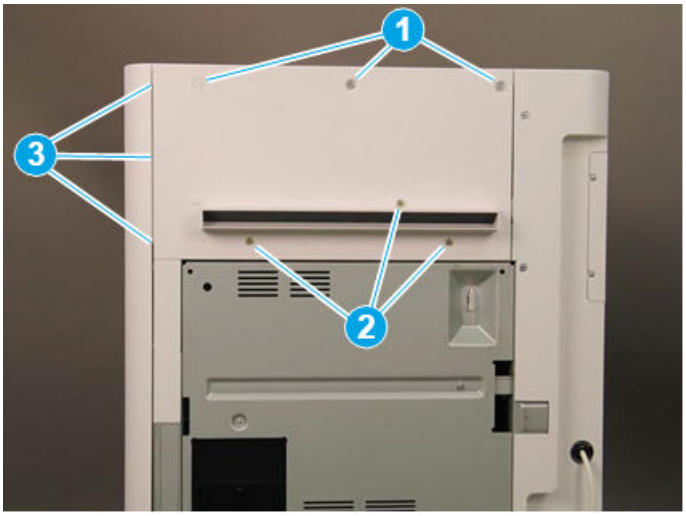
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1359 Remove the right upper cover

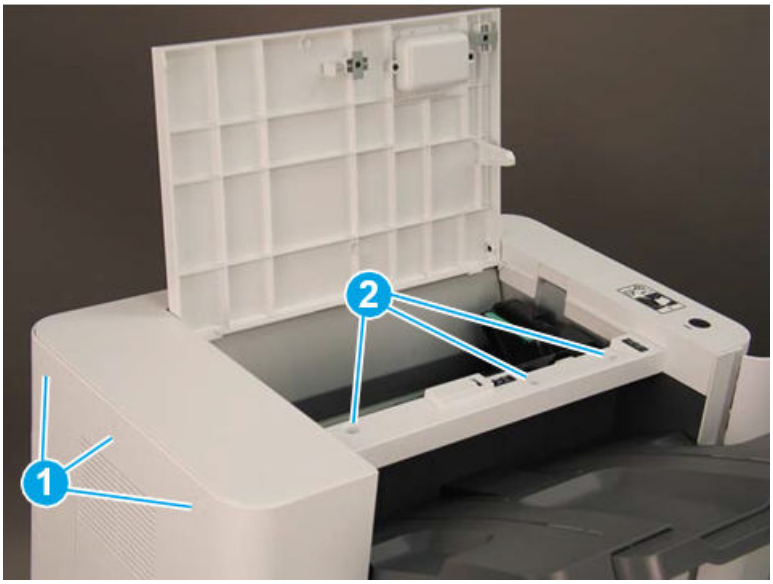


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

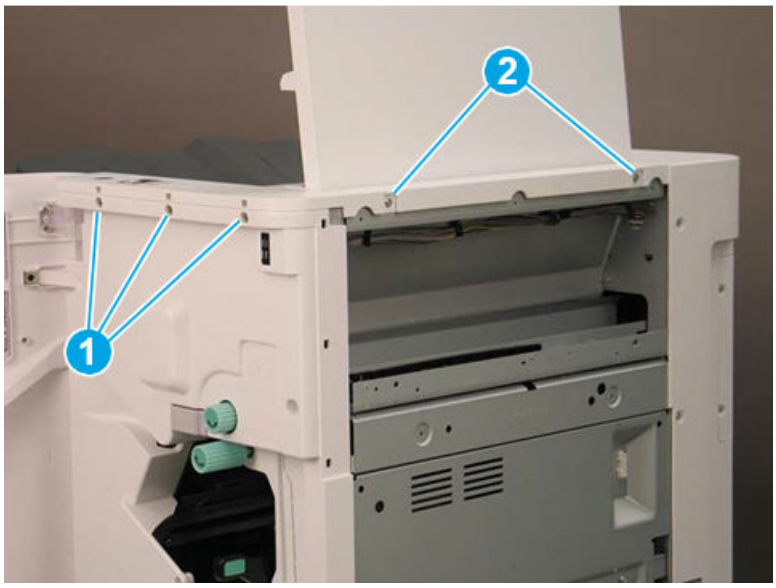
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1360 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

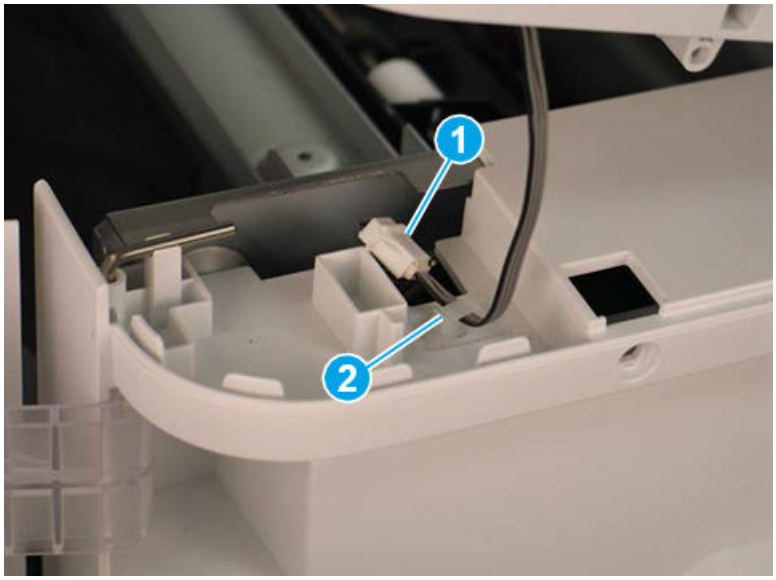
Figure 5-1361 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1362 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

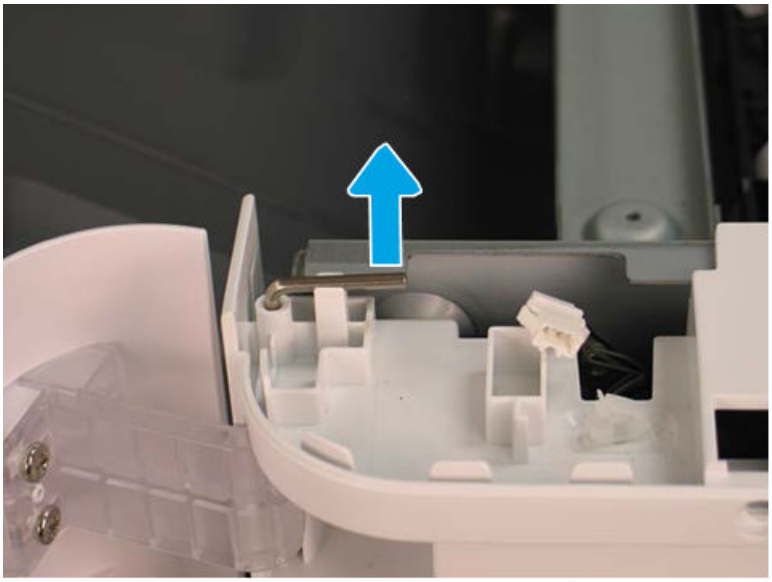


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

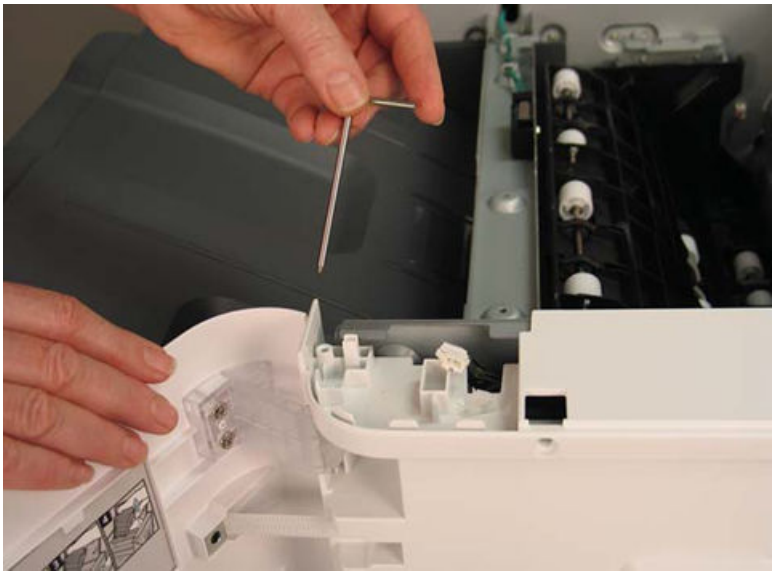
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-1363 Lift the top hinge pin



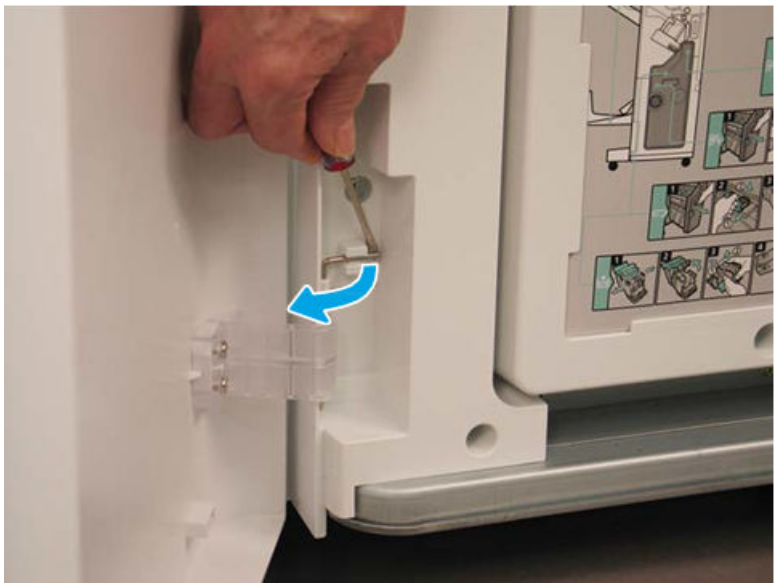
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-1364 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1365 Release the lower hinge pin



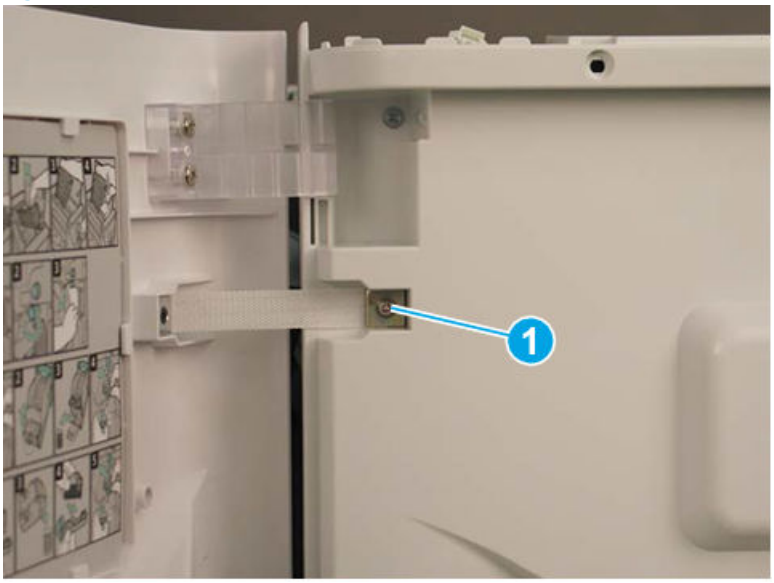
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-1366 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1367 Remove the front door

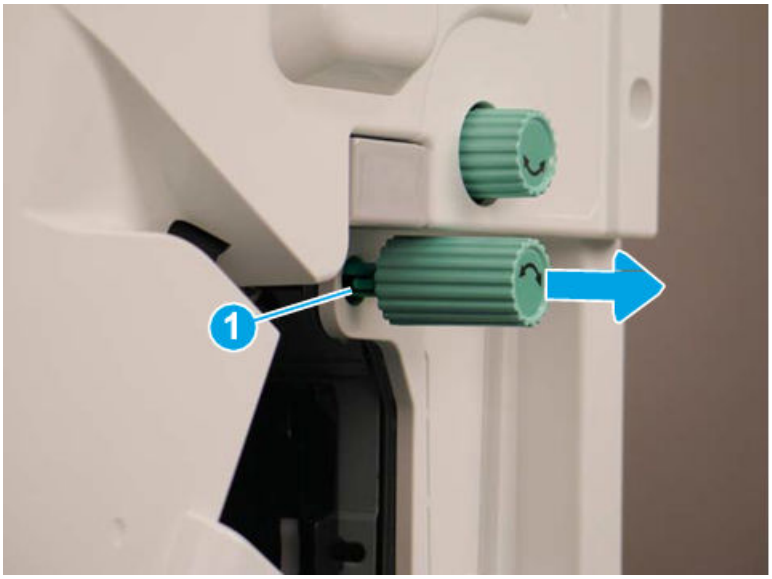


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-1368 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

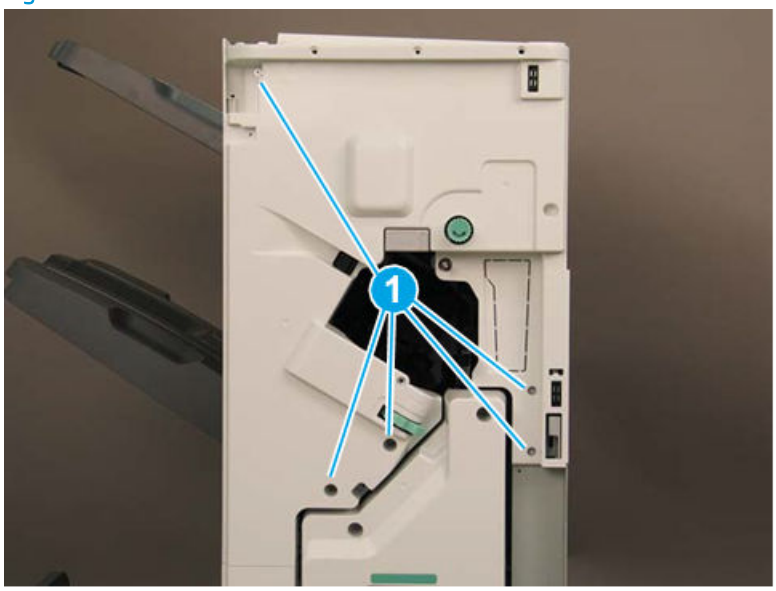
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-1369 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1370 Remove the front cover

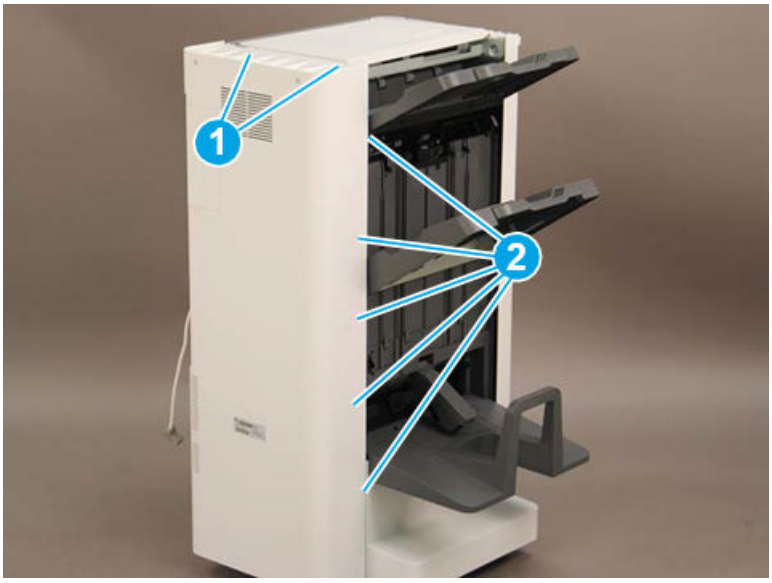


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1371 Remove seven screws

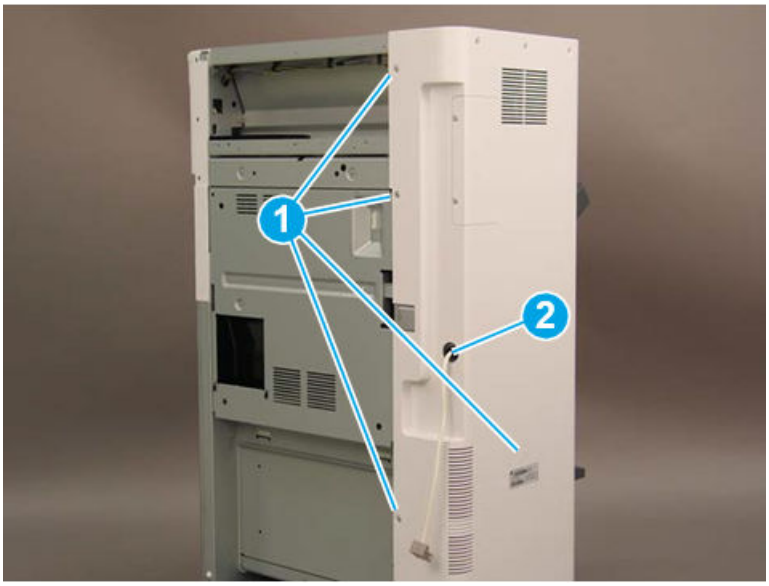


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1372 Remove the rear cover

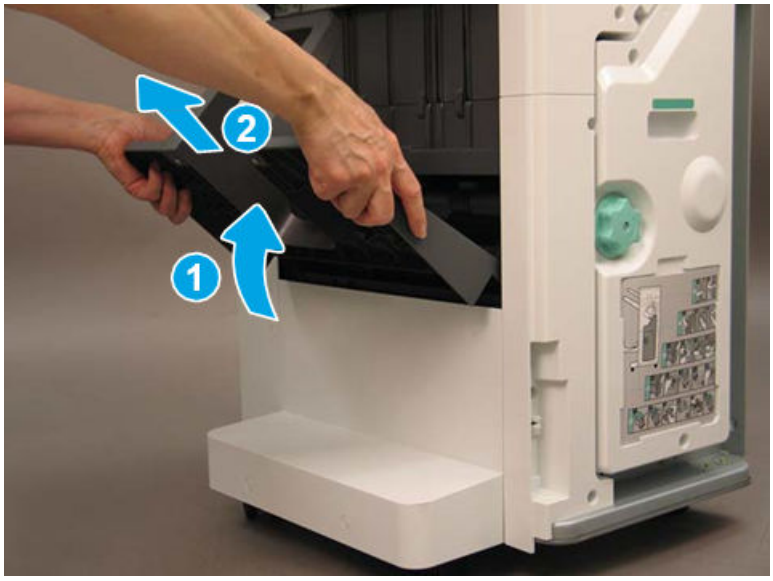


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1373 Remove the booklet output tray



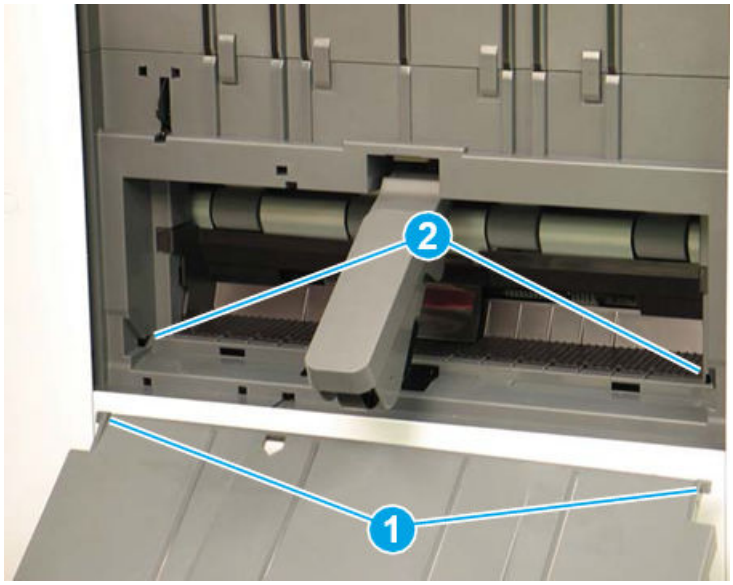
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-1374 Install the booklet output tray

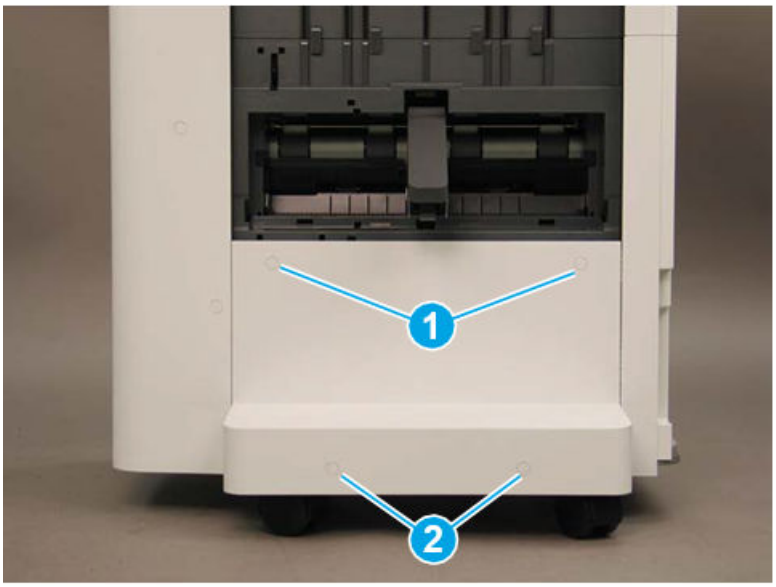


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-1375 Remove four screws

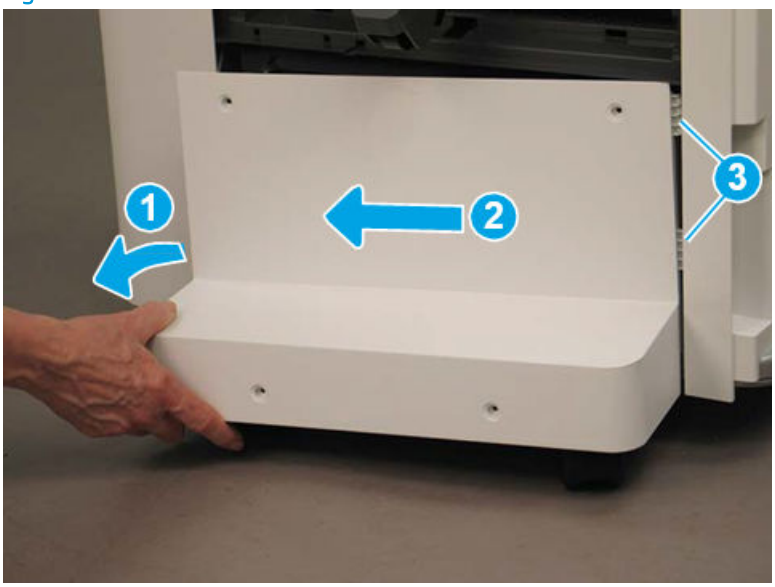


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1376 Remove the caster cover



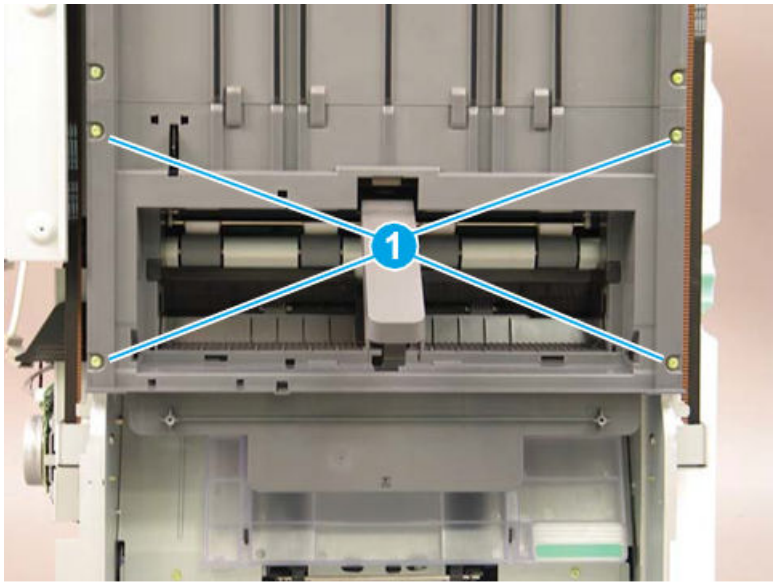
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-1377 Remove four screws

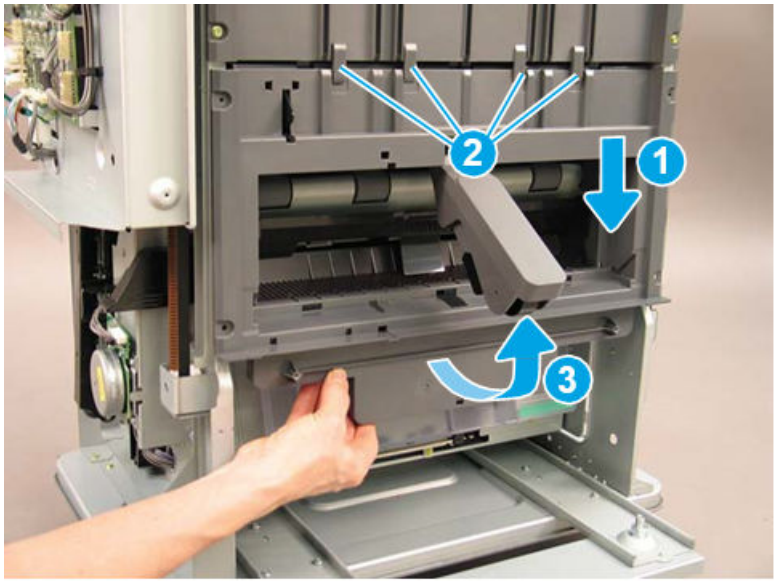


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

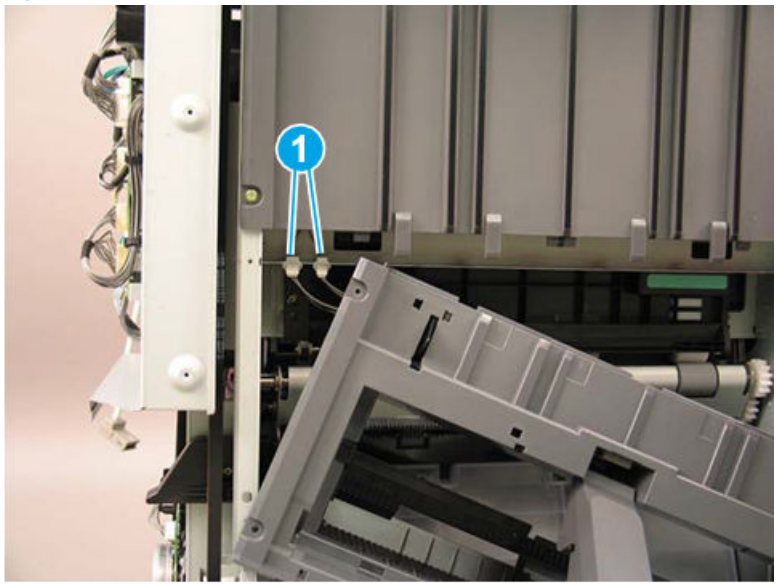
Figure 5-1378 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

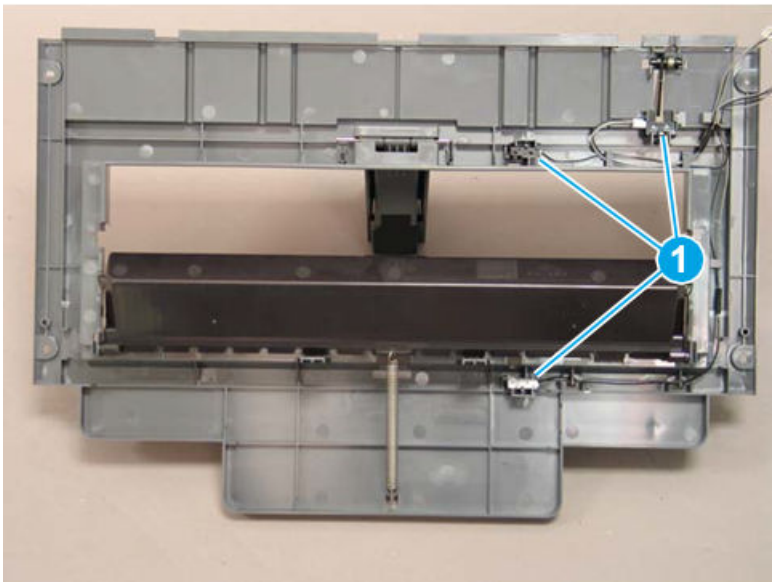
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1379 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-1380 Remove the left lower cover

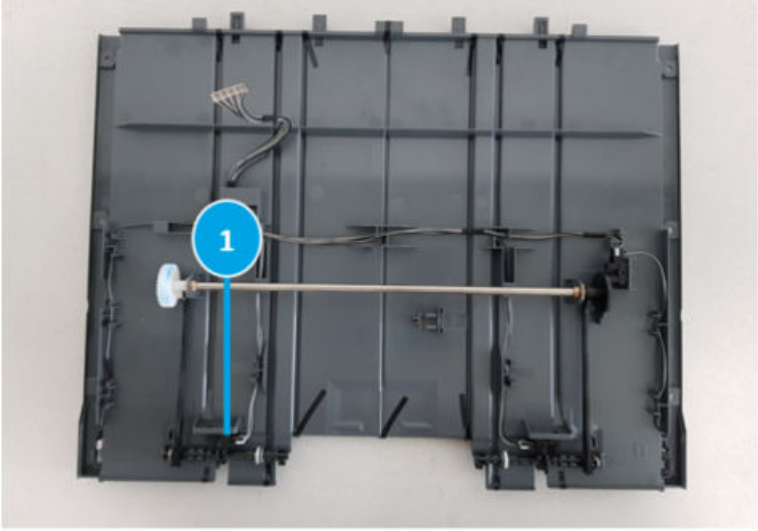


Remove the rear paper holding sensor(S31)

Follow these steps to remove the rear paper holding sensor(S31).

▲ Remove the sensor(S31, callout 1) from the upper shield assembly.

Figure 5-1381 Remove the rear paper holding sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper holding Motor (M7)

Learn how to remove and replace the paper holding Motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the paper holding Motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-140 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01414A	Paper holding motor assembly
JC93-01156A	Paper holding motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

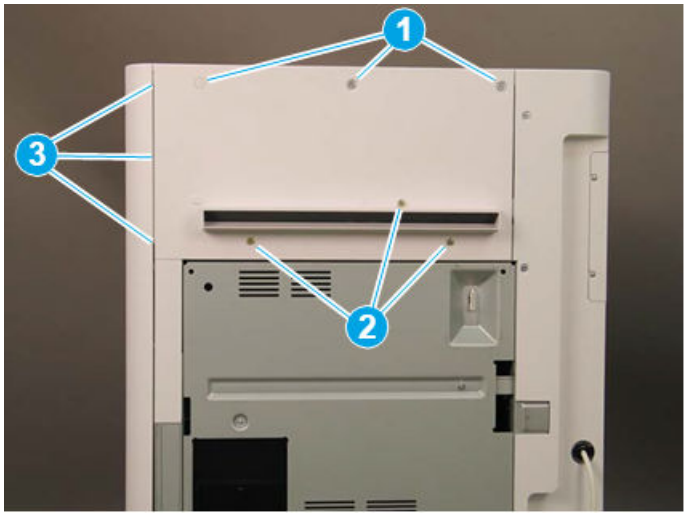
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1382 Remove the right upper cover

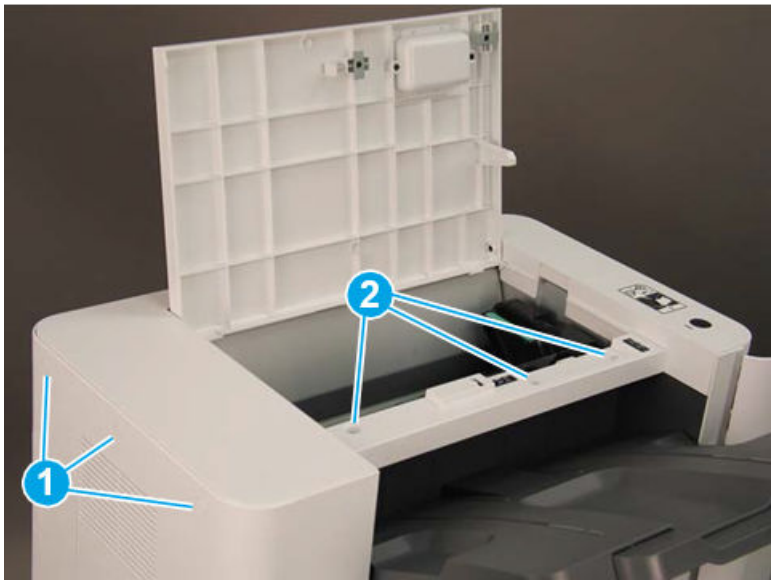


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

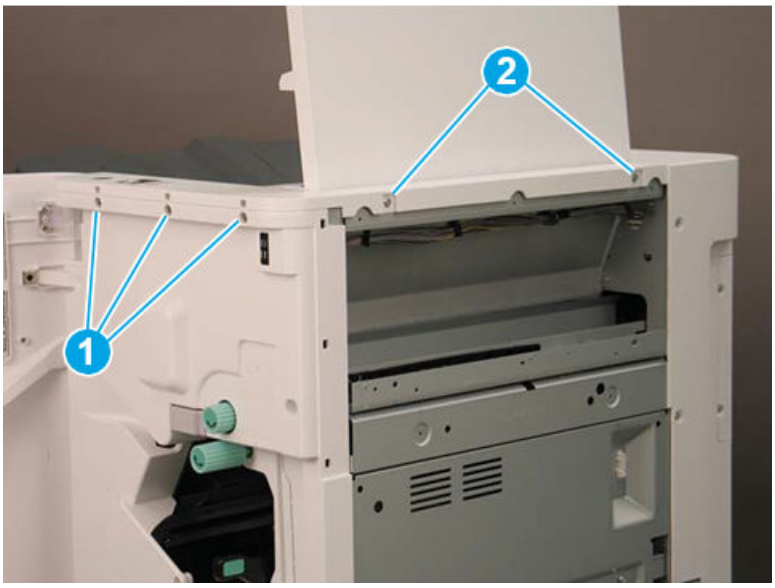
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1383 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

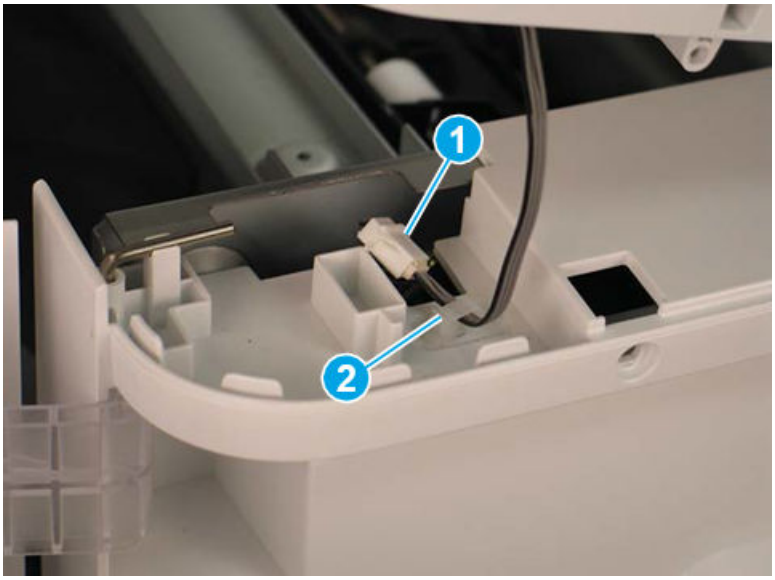
Figure 5-1384 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1385 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

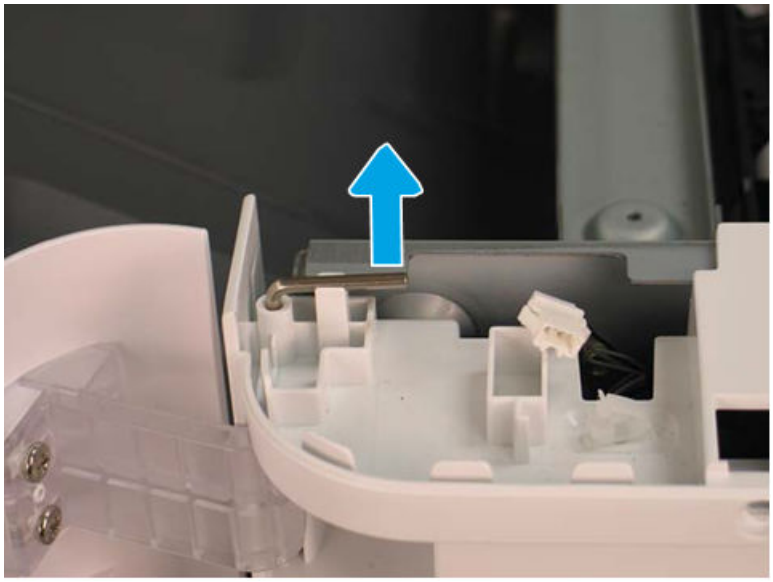


Remove the front door (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front door (finisher).

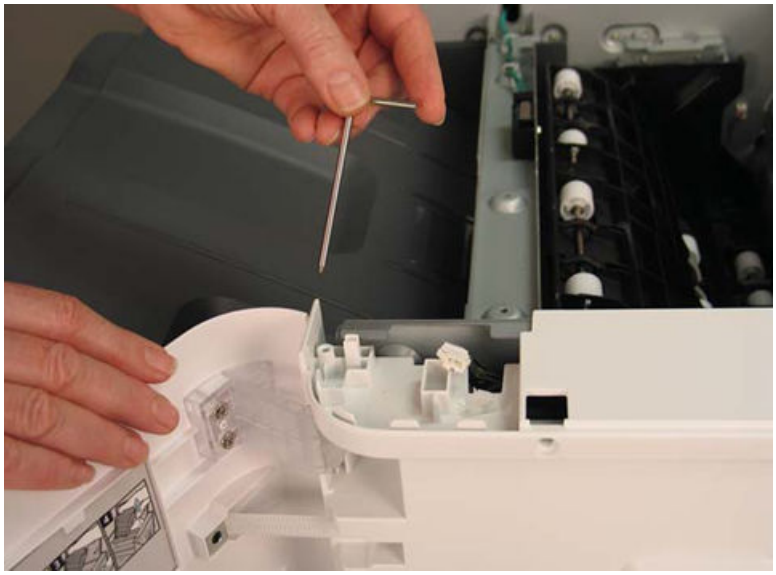
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 5-1386 Lift the top hinge pin



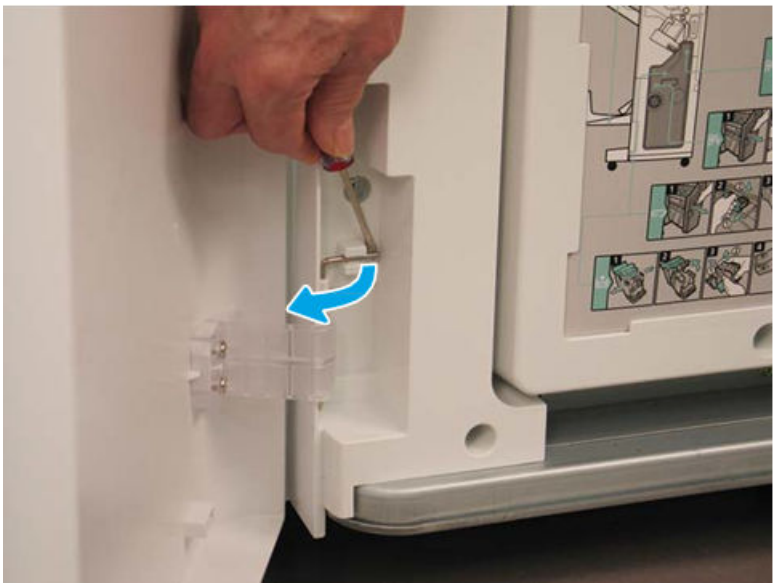
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 5-1387 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1388 Release the lower hinge pin



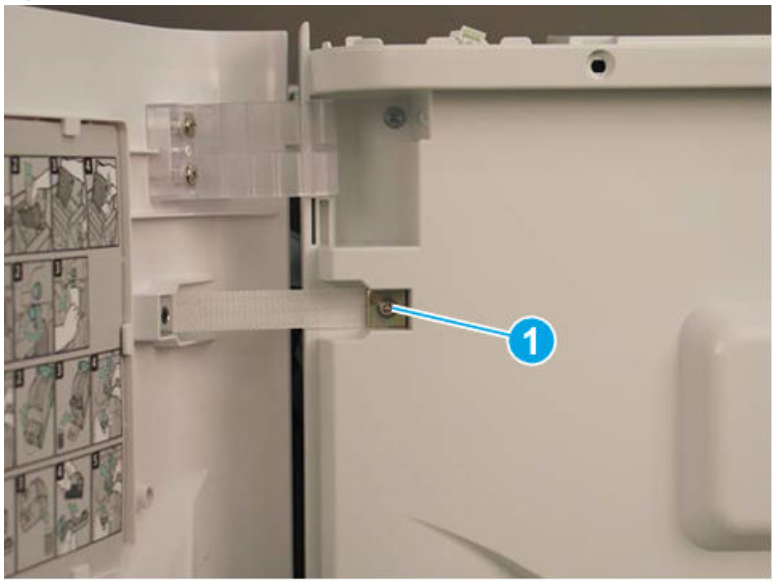
4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-1389 Remove the lower hinge pin

5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1390 Remove the front door

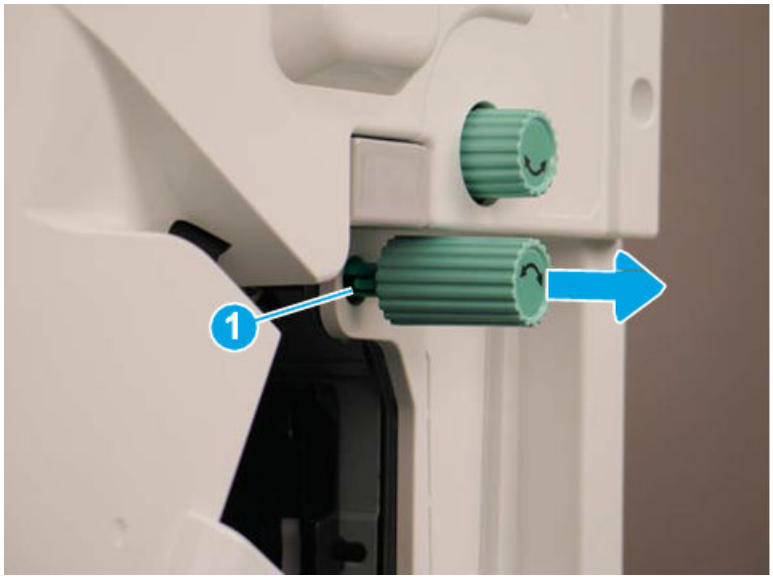


Remove the front cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the front cover (finisher).

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 5-1391 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

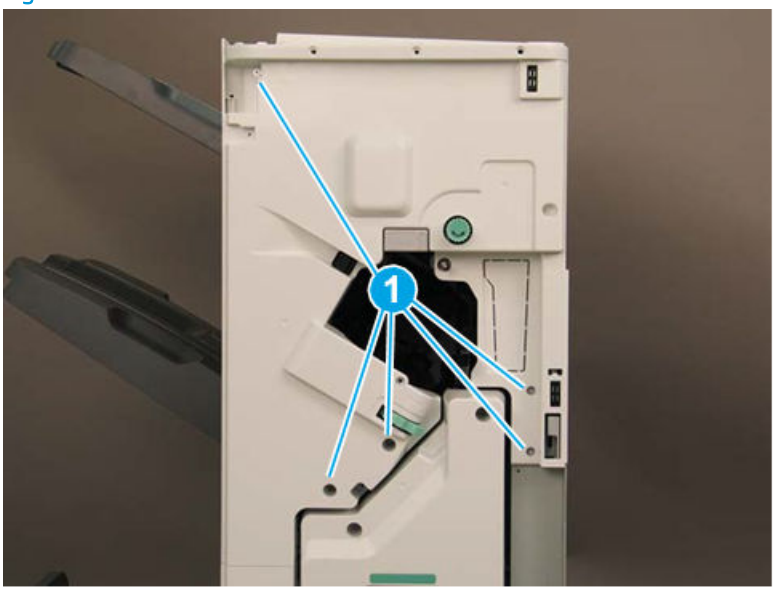
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

Figure 5-1392 Remove one screw

4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1393 Remove the front cover

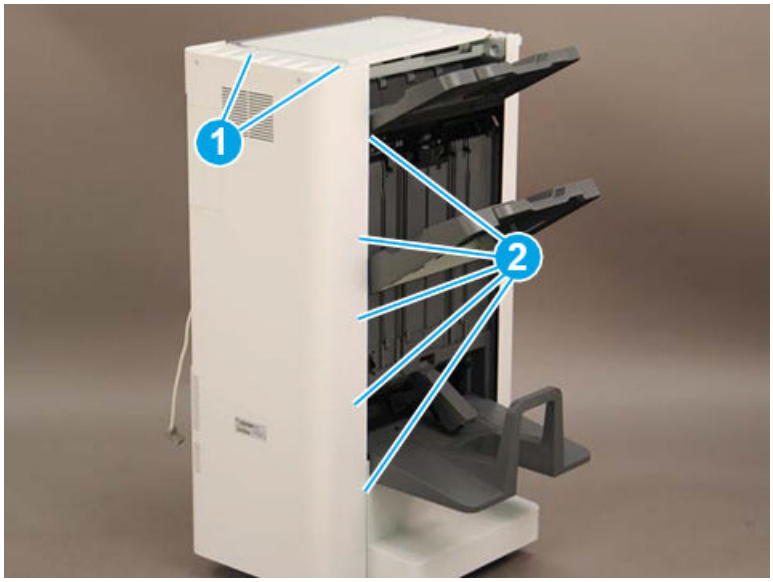


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1394 Remove seven screws

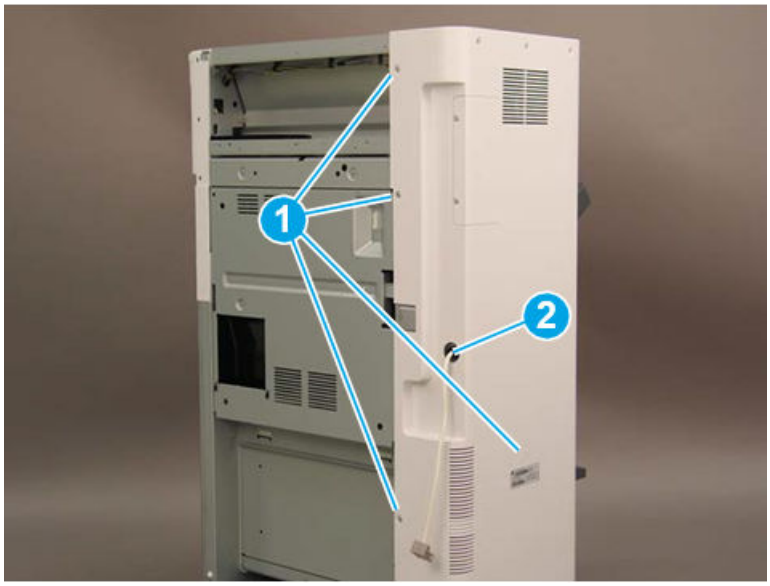


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1395 Remove the rear cover

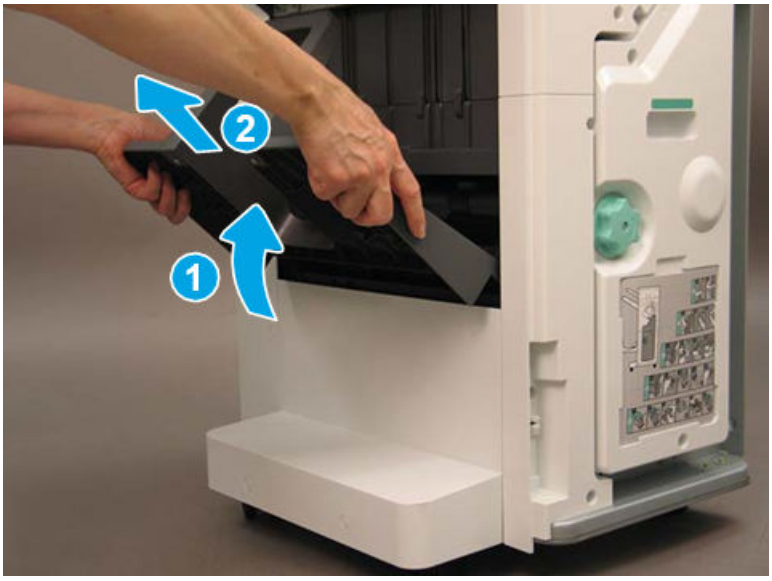


Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1396 Remove the booklet output tray



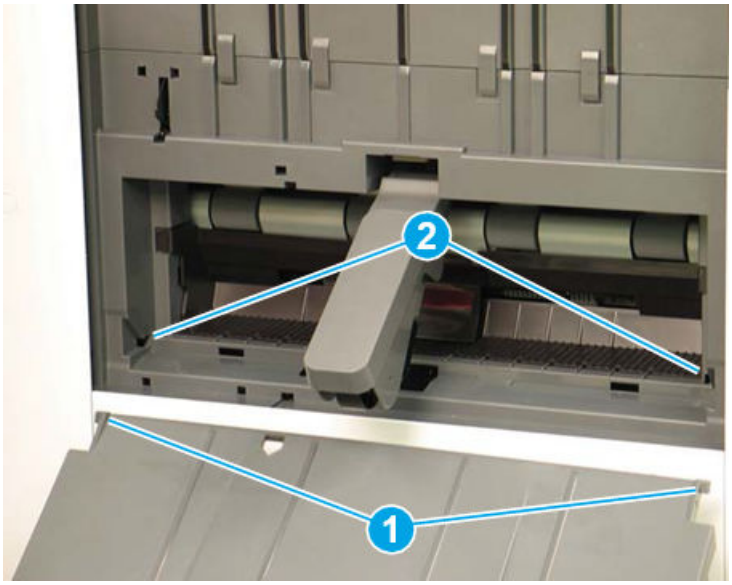
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-1397 Install the booklet output tray

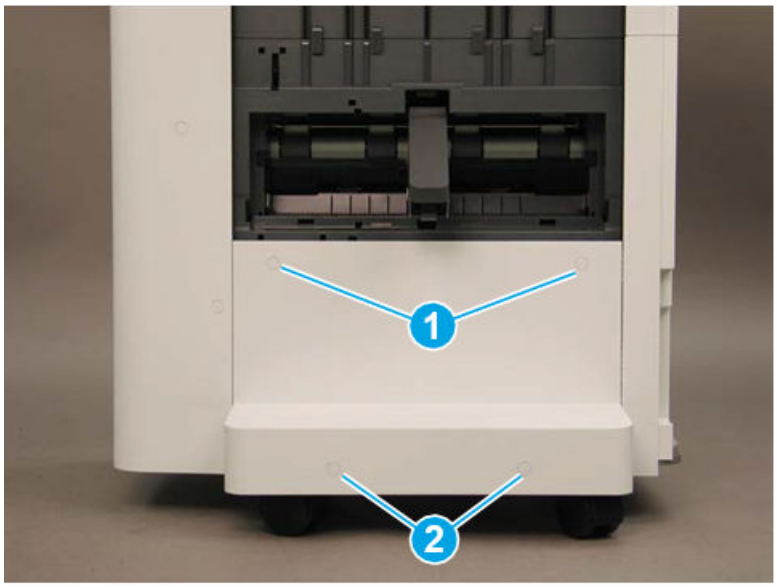


Remove the caster cover

Follow these steps to remove the caster cover.

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-1398 Remove four screws

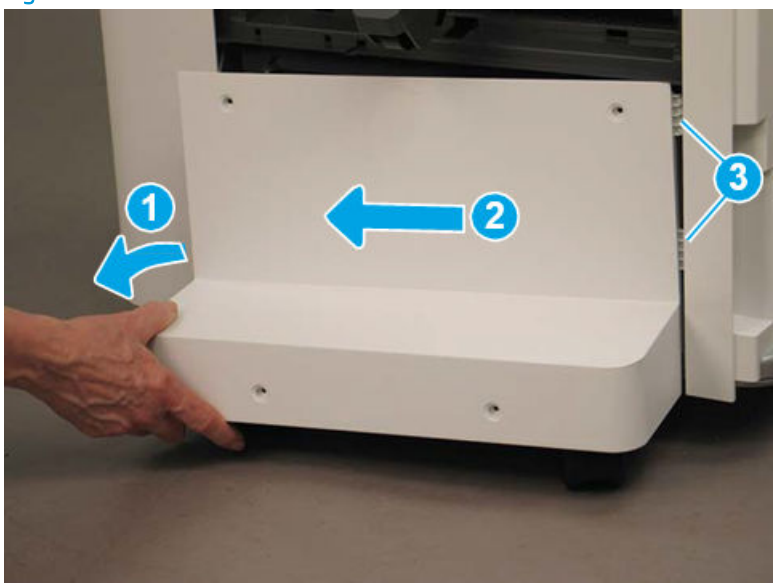


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

TIP: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1399 Remove the caster cover



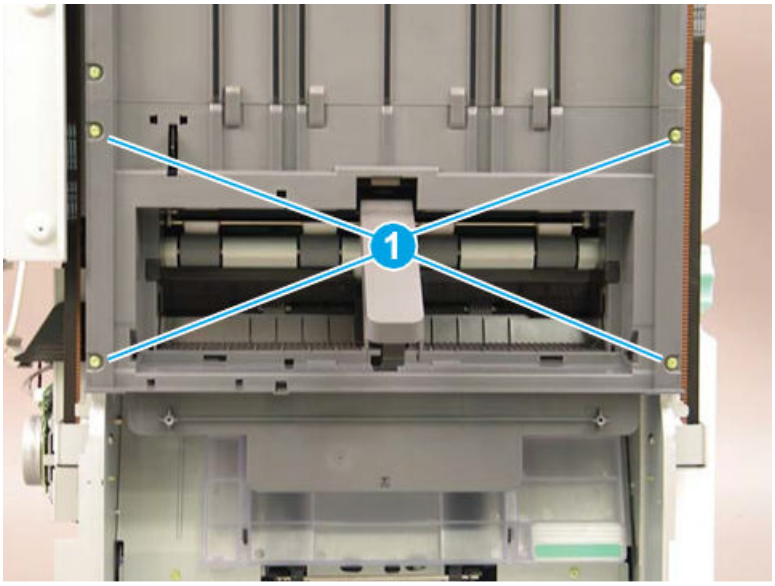
Remove the left lower cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover (finisher).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raisethe lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 5-1400 Remove four screws

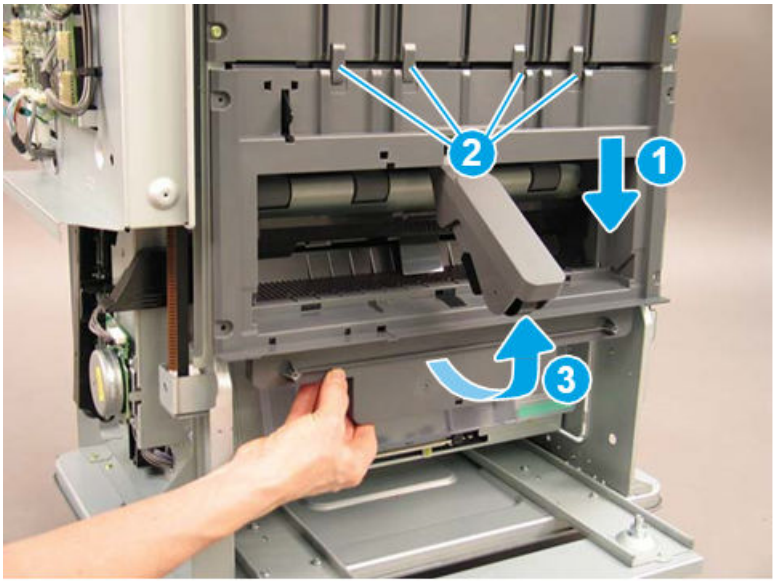


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

TIP: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

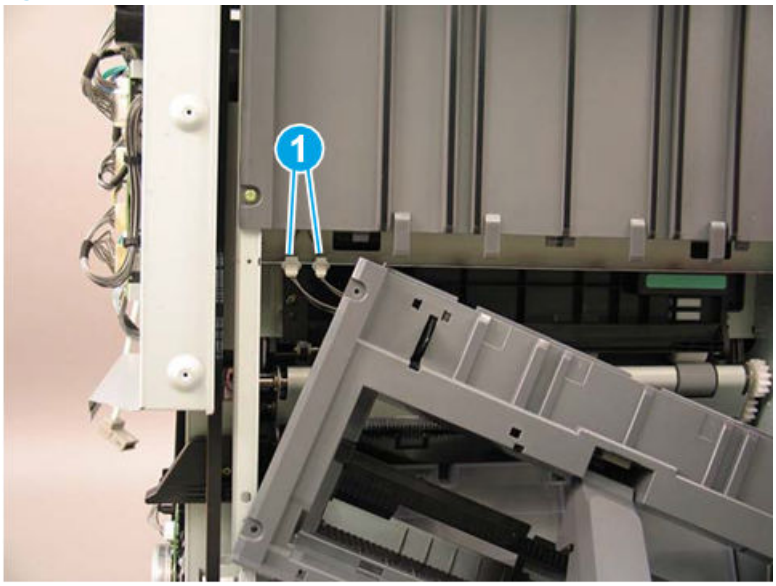
Figure 5-1401 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

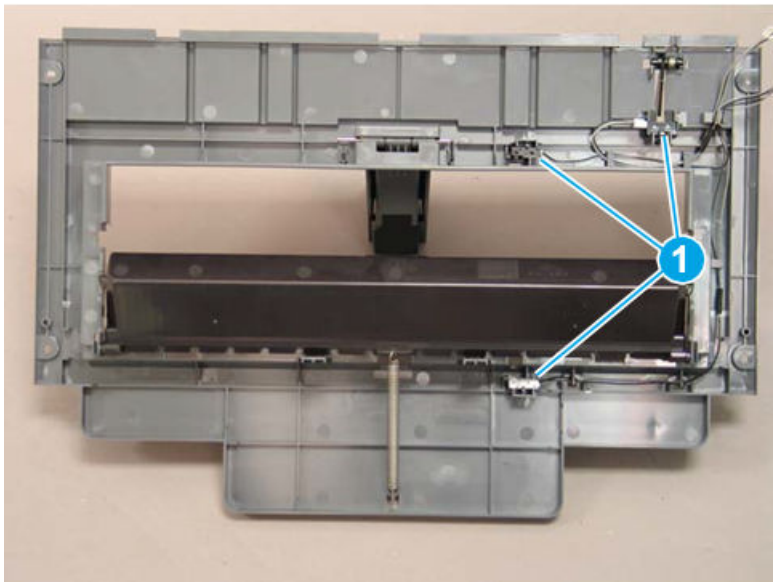
TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1402 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the left lower cover, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the left lower cover. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 5-1403 Remove the left lower cover

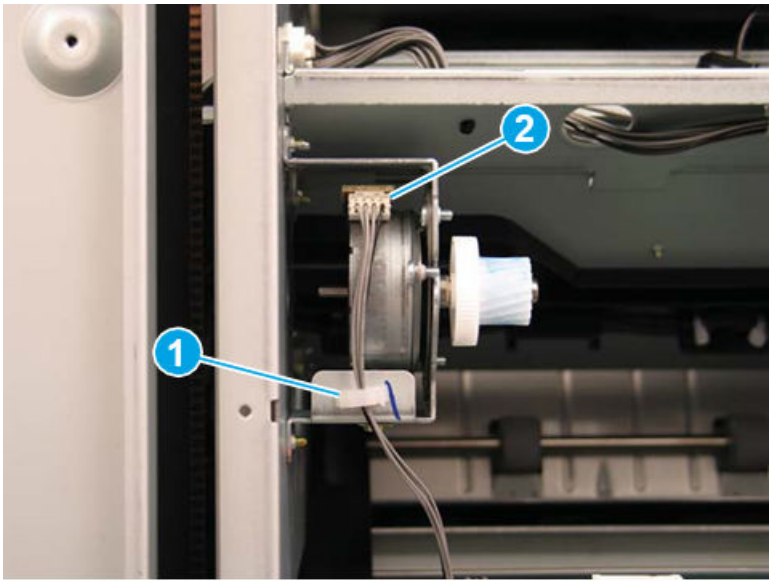


Remove the paper holding Motor (M7)

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding Motor (M7).

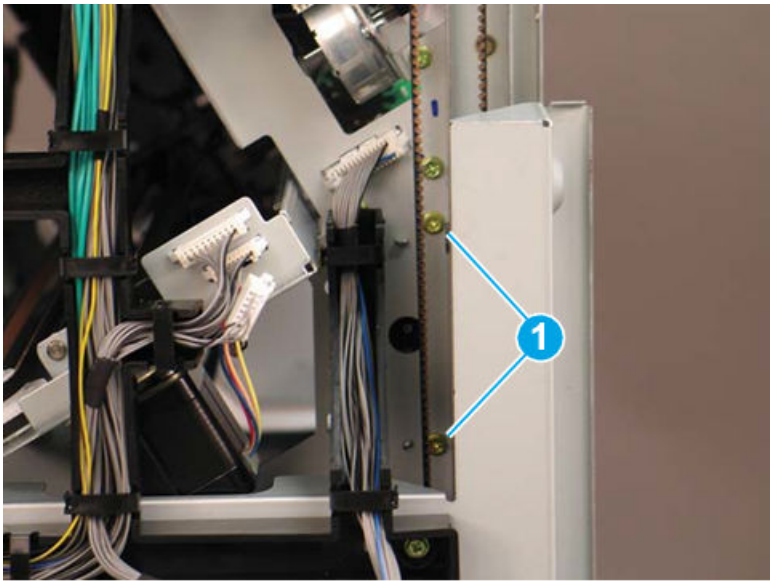
1. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-1404 Disconnect one connector



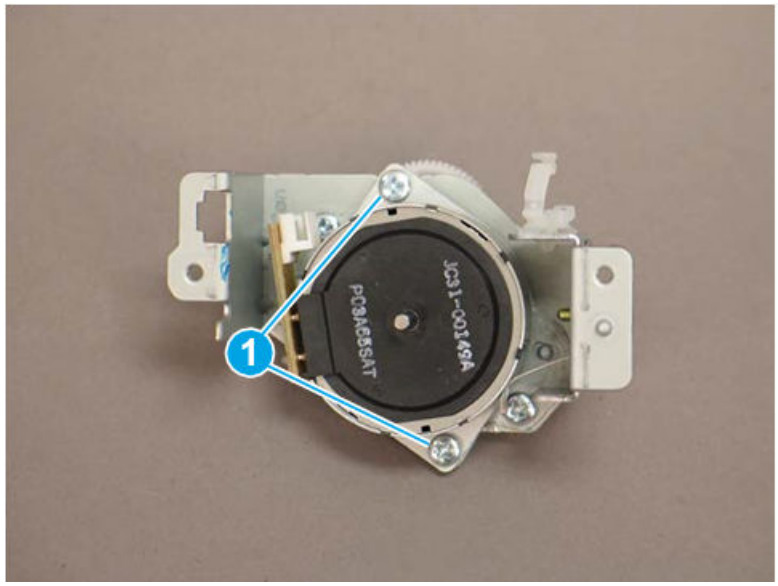
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the motor and bracket.

Figure 5-1405 Remove two screws



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the motor.

Figure 5-1406 Remove two screws and the motor



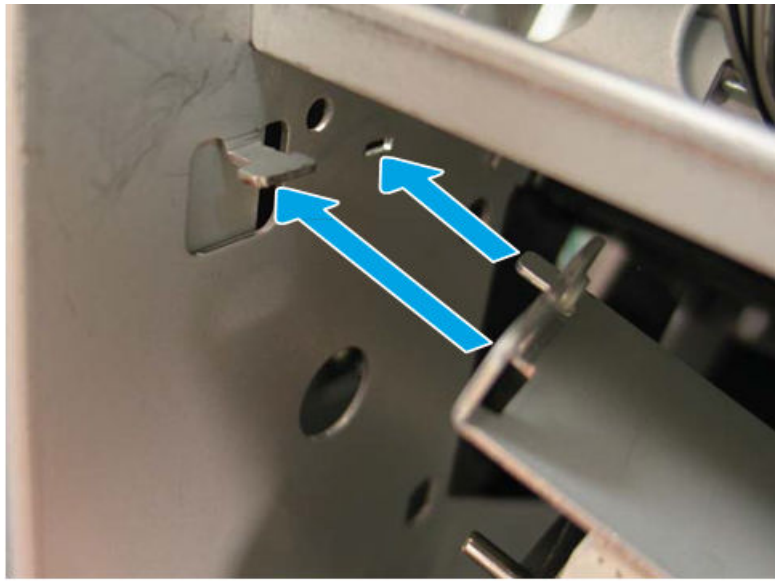
4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: paper holding Motor (M10)

When installing the motor and bracket, align the tab and slot on the motor bracket with the tab and slot in the printer.

Figure 5-1407 Install the motor and bracket



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Buffer unit

Removal and replacement: Buffer motor (M10)

Learn how to remove and replace the buffer motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the buffer motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-141 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01152A	Buffer motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

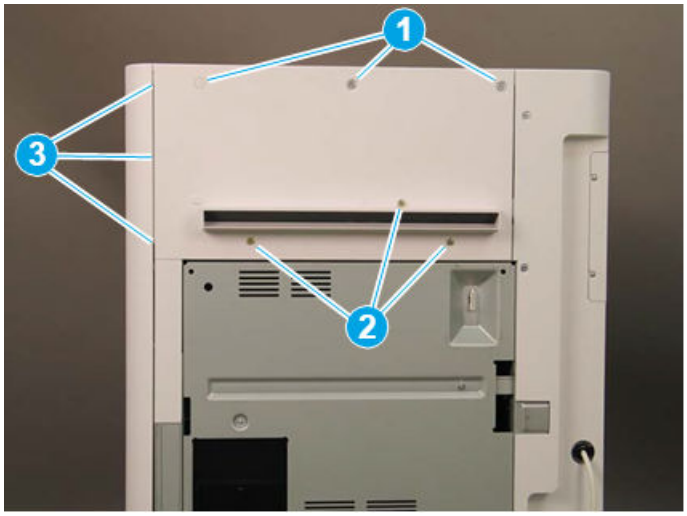
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1408 Remove the right upper cover

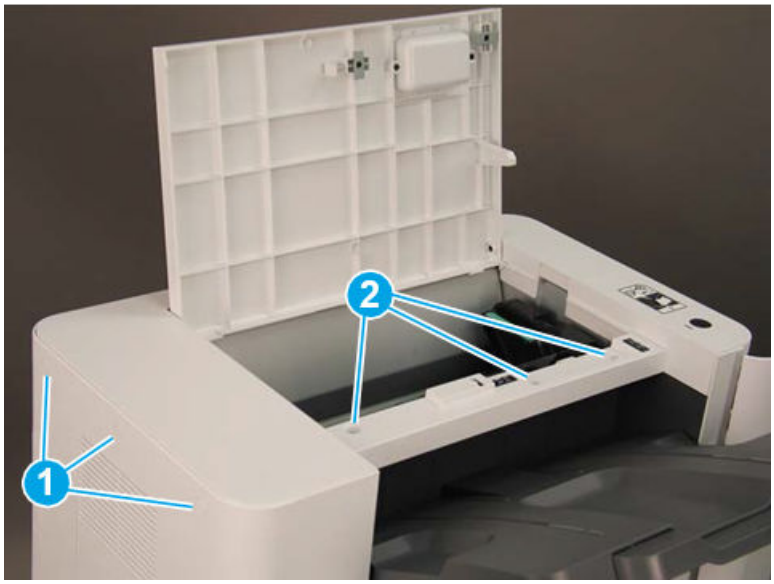


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

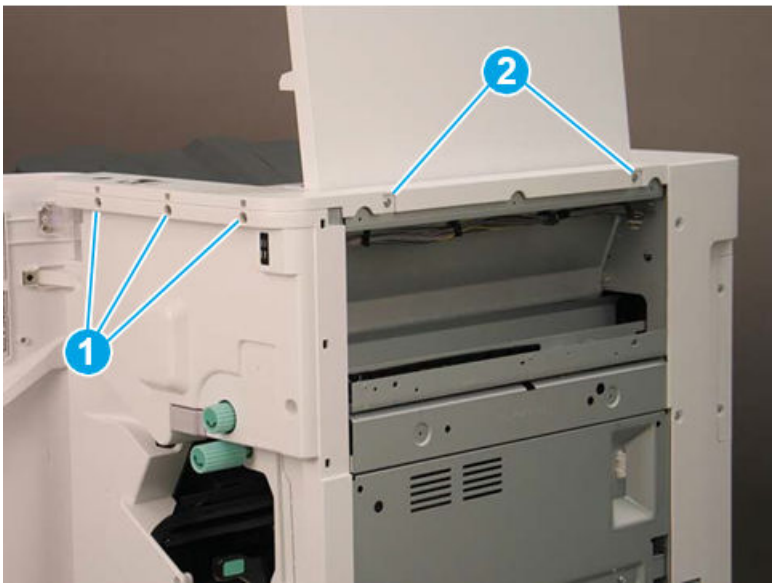
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1409 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

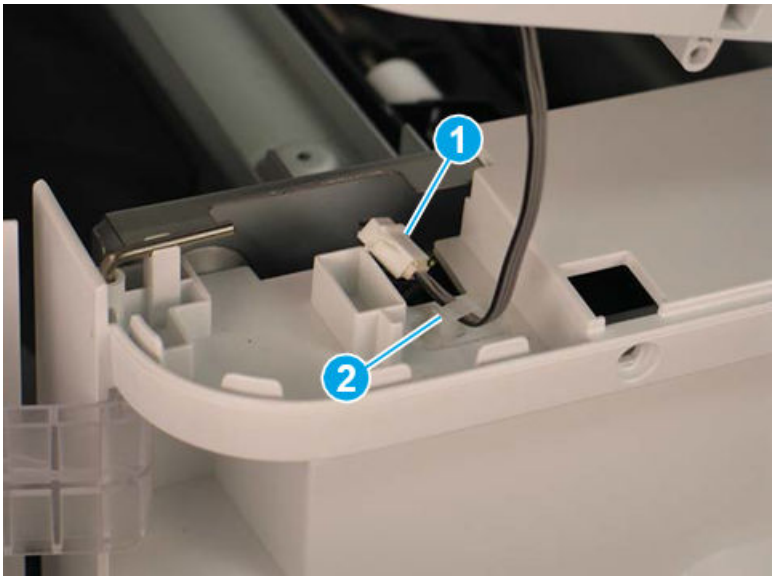
Figure 5-1410 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1411 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

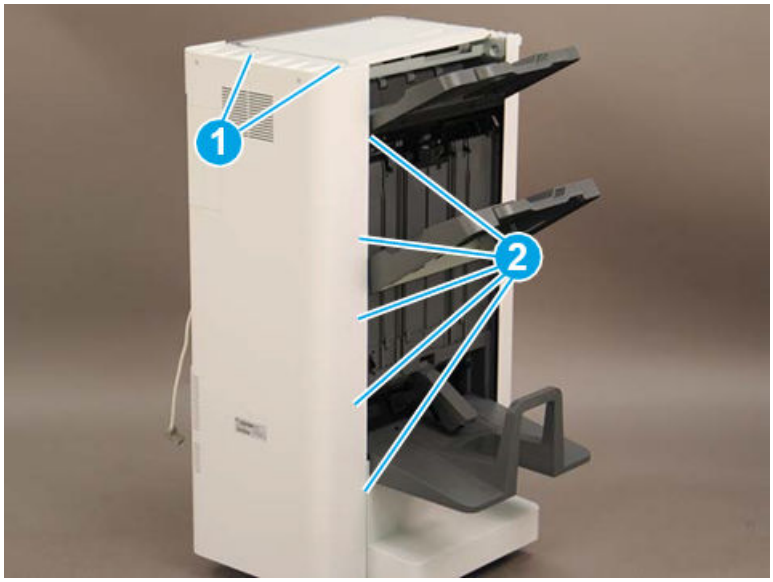


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1412 Remove seven screws

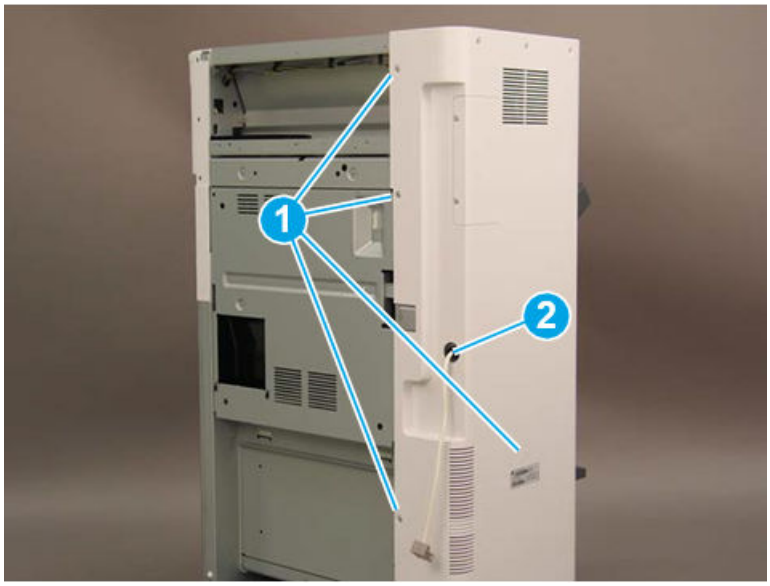


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1413 Remove the rear cover

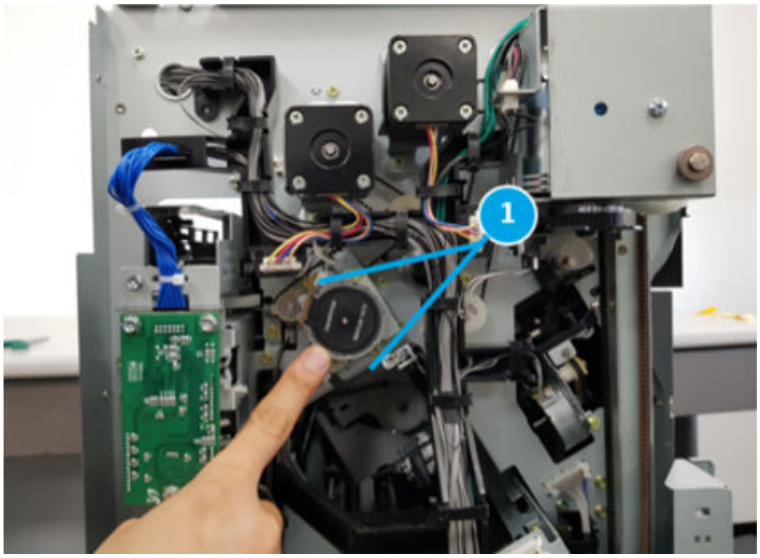


Remove the main exit cam motor(M10)

Follow these steps to remove the main exit cam motor(M10).

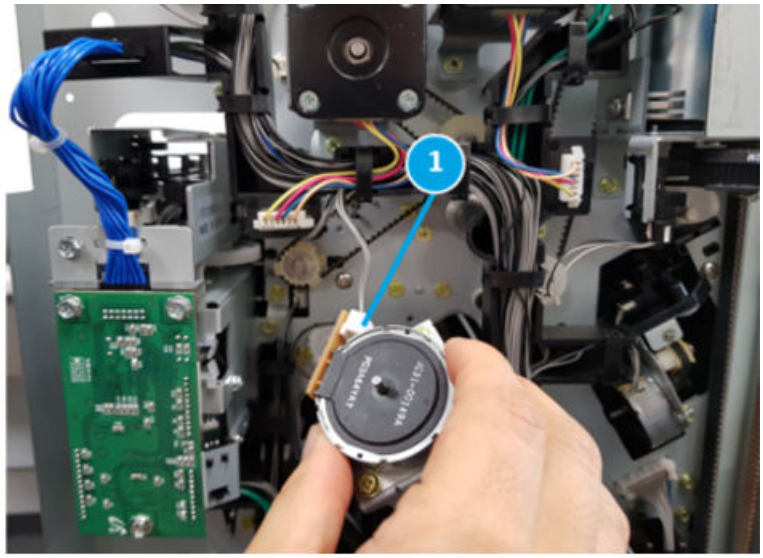
1. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws(callout 1).

Figure 5-1414 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect the connector(callout 1)

Figure 5-1415 Disconnect the connector



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Buffer solenoid (SL1)

Learn how to remove and replace the buffer solenoid.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the buffer solenoid on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-142 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01675A	Buffer solenoid

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

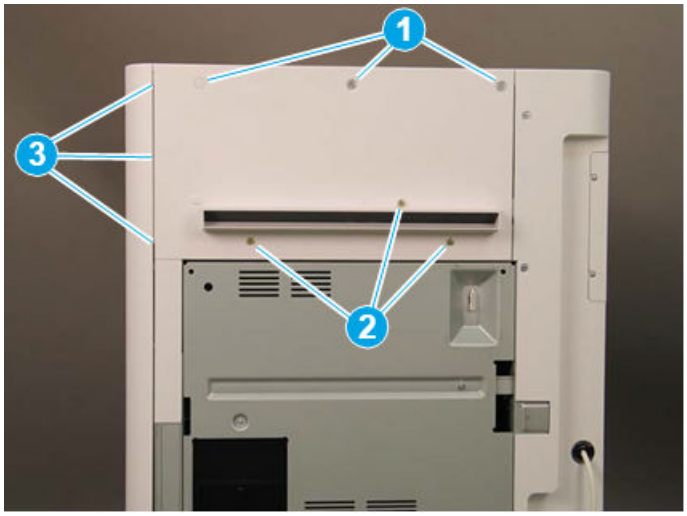
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1416 Remove the right upper cover

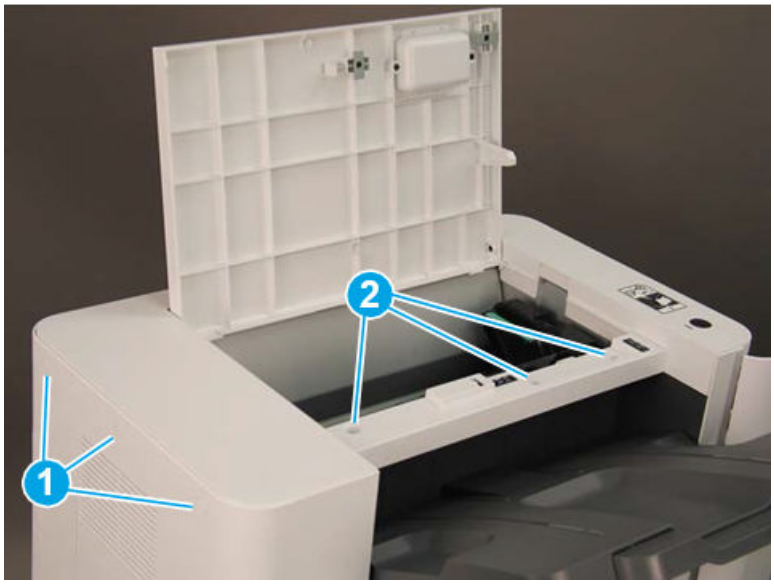


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

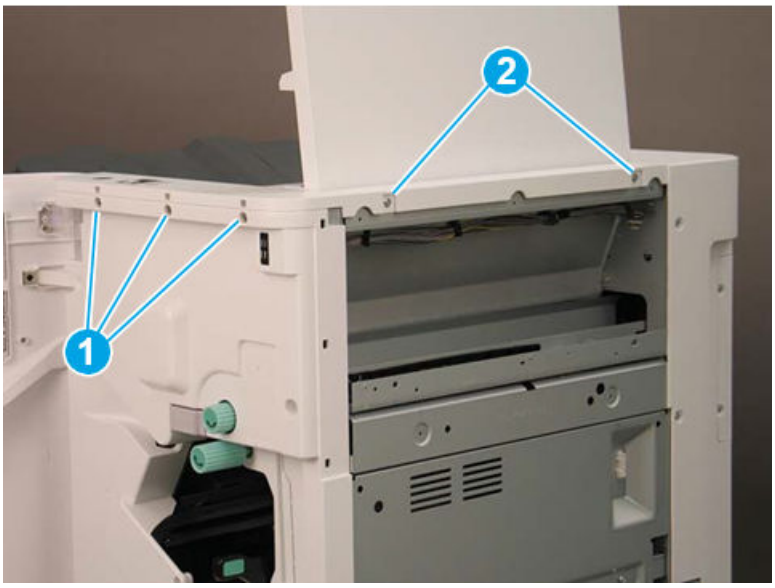
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1417 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

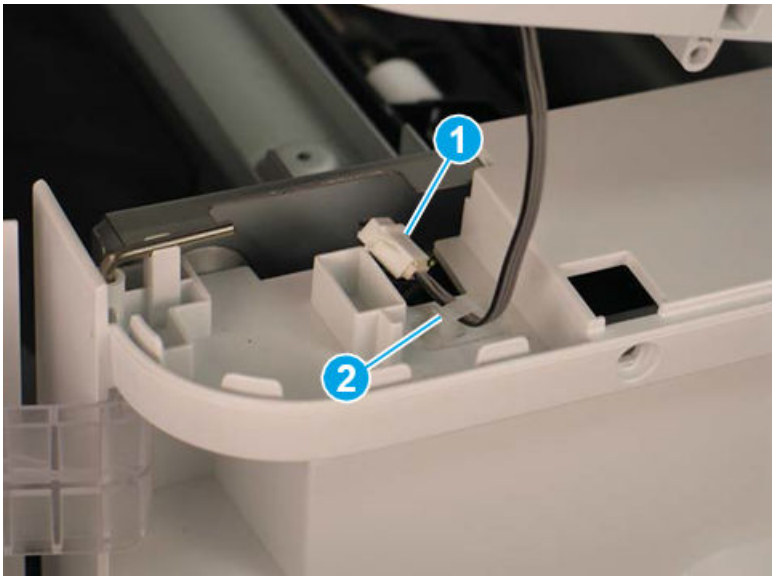
Figure 5-1418 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1419 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

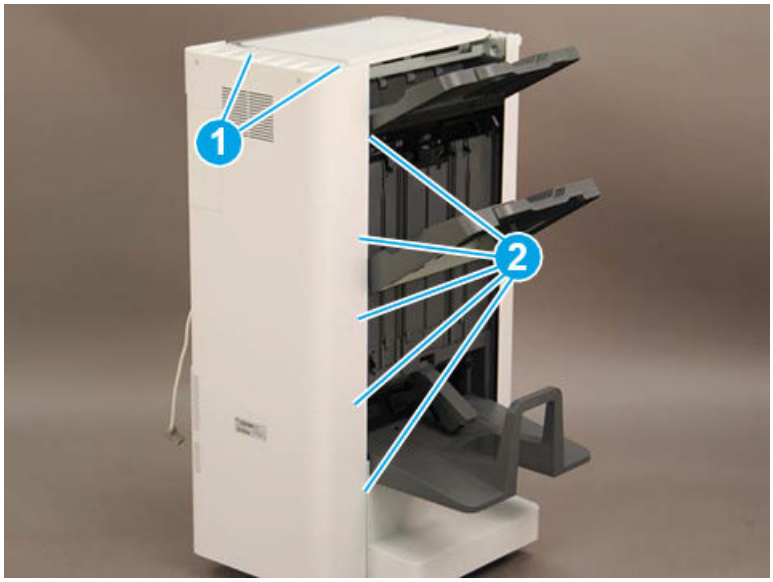


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1420 Remove seven screws

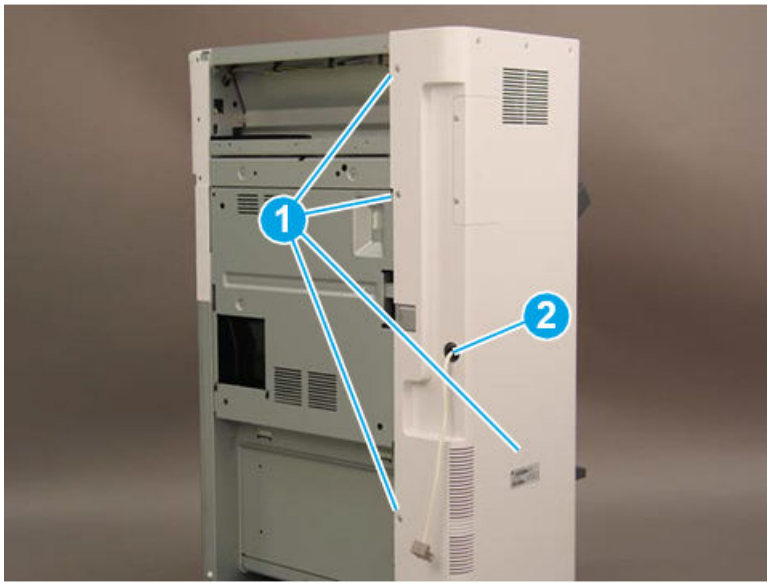


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1421 Remove the rear cover

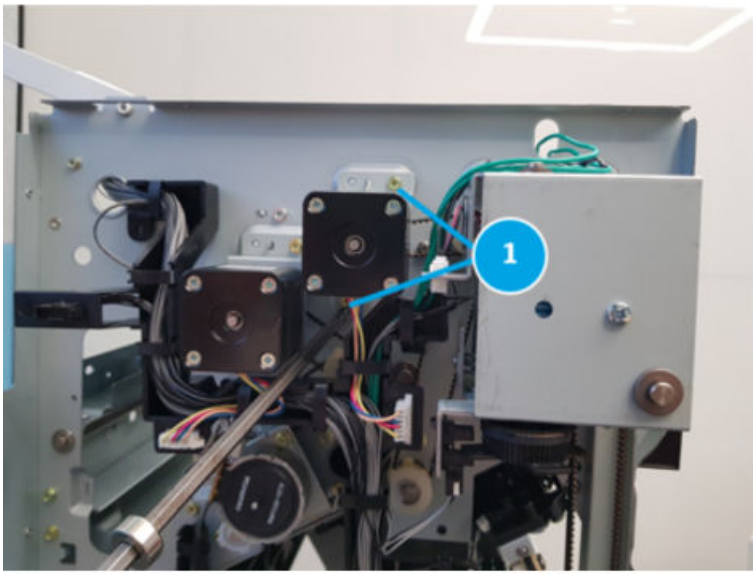


Remove the buffer solenoid(SL1)

Follow these steps to remove the buffer solenoid(SL1).

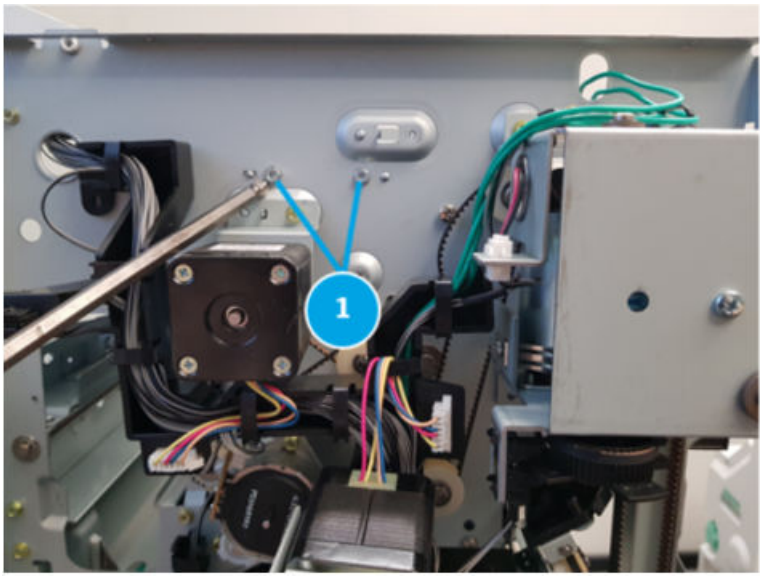
1. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws(Callout 1)

Figure 5-1422 Remove two screws



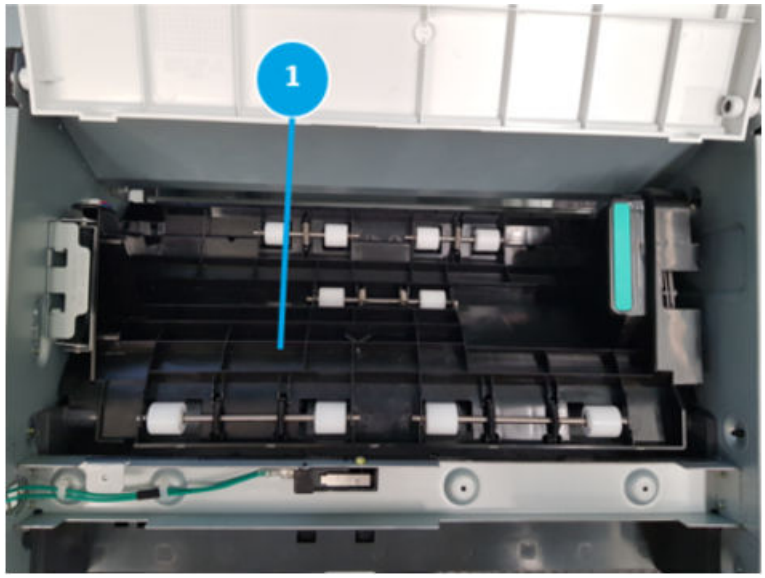
2. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws(Callout 1)

Figure 5-1423 Remove two screws



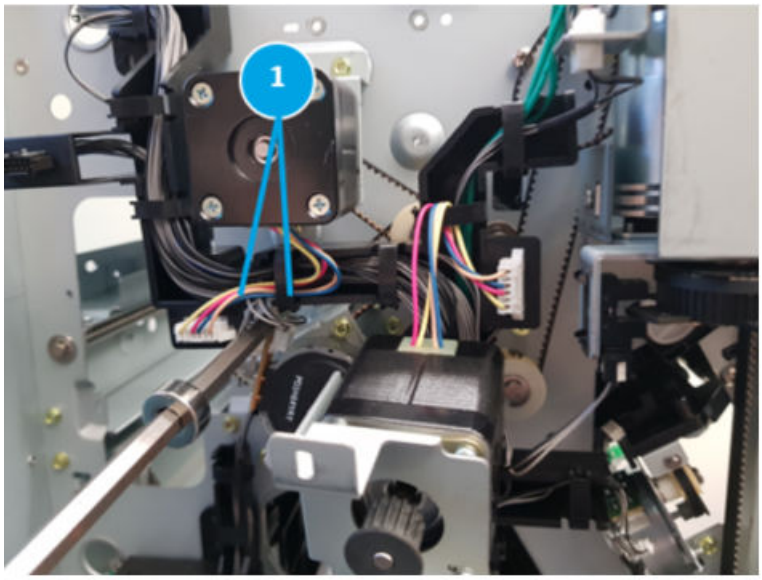
3. Remove top jam cover assembly (Callout 1)

Figure 5-1424 Remove top jam cover assembly



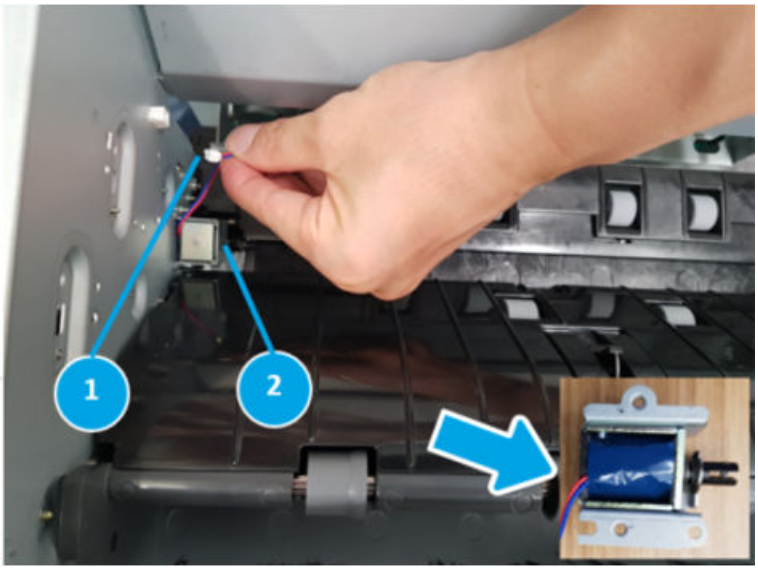
4. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws(Callout 1)

Figure 5-1425 Remove two screws



5. Disconnect the connector(Callout 1) and remove the buffer solenoid(Callout 2)

Figure 5-1426 Remove the buffer solenoid



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet maker

Removal and replacement: Booklet finisher

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet maker.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet maker on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-143 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00905A	Booklet maker

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

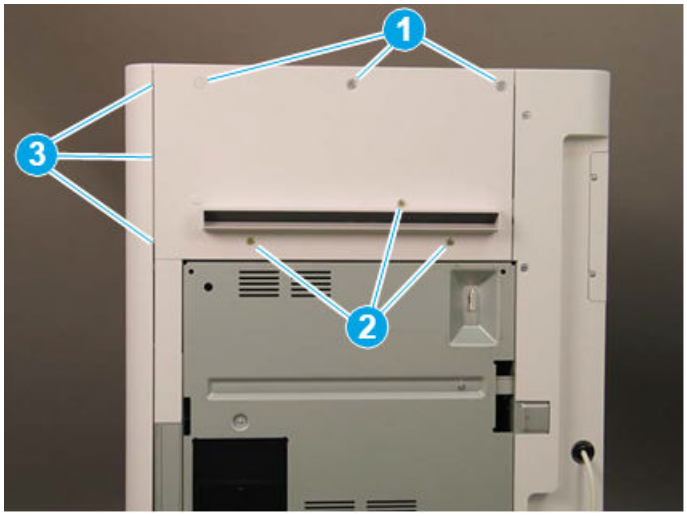
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1427 Remove the right upper cover

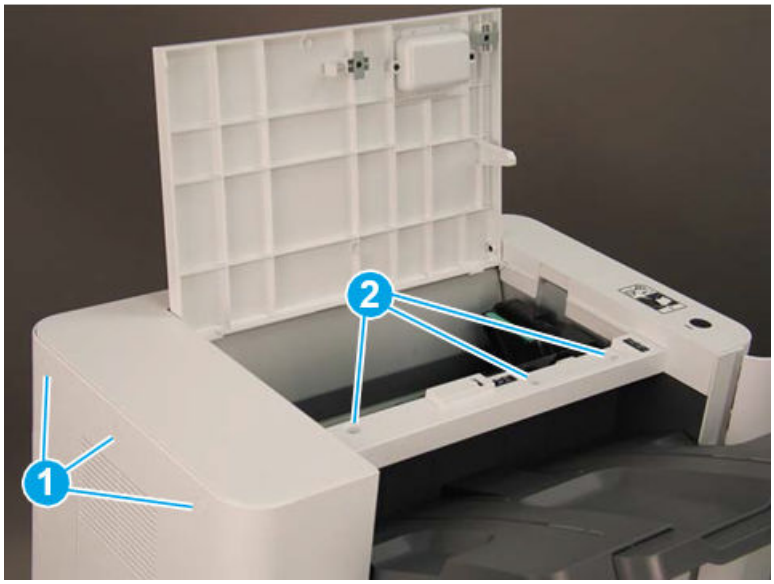


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

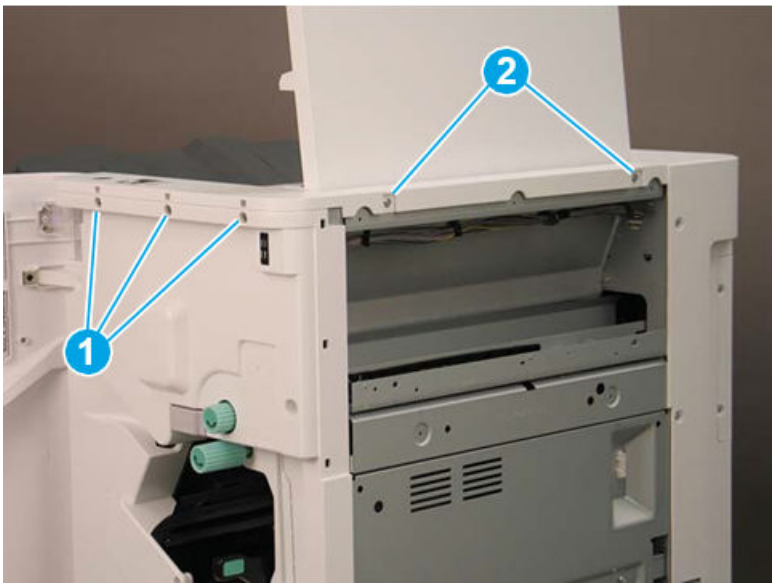
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1428 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

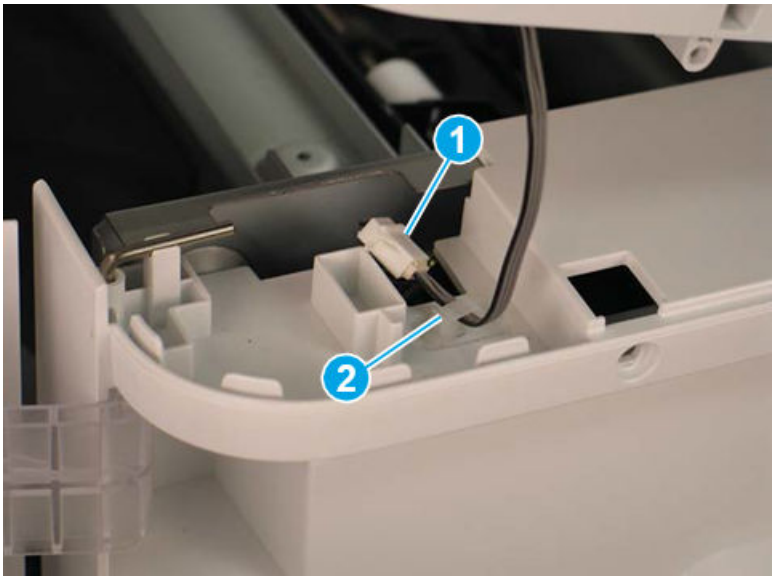
Figure 5-1429 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1430 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

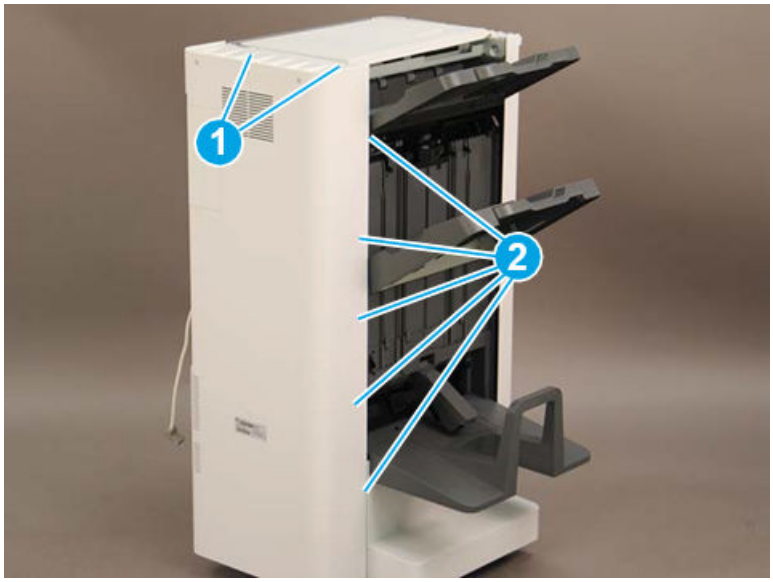


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1431 Remove seven screws

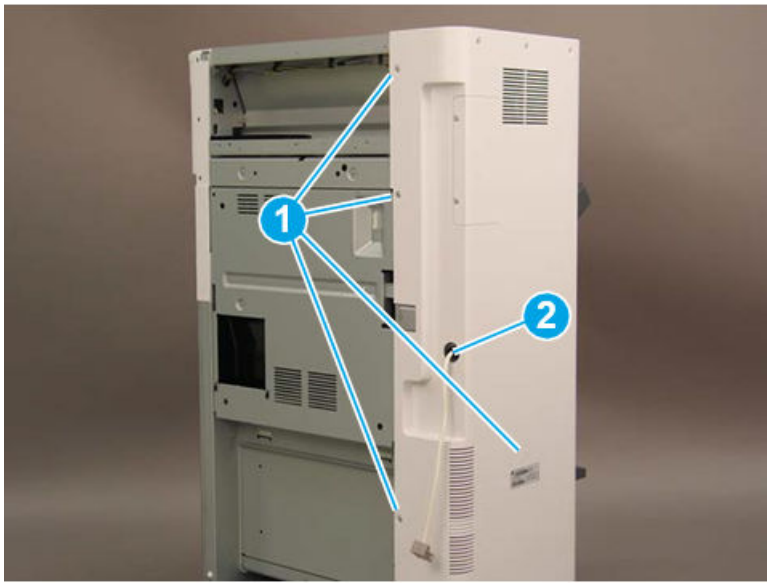


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1432 Remove the rear cover



Remove the booklet maker

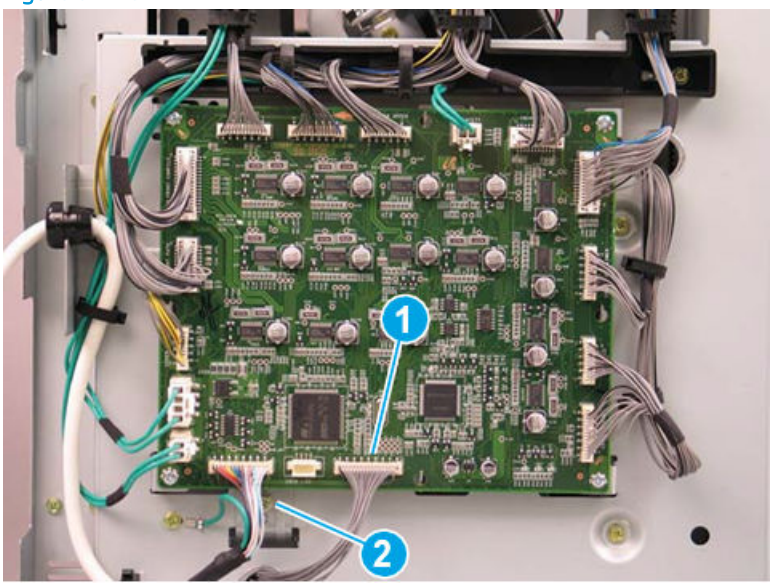
Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker.

1. Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1433 Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher

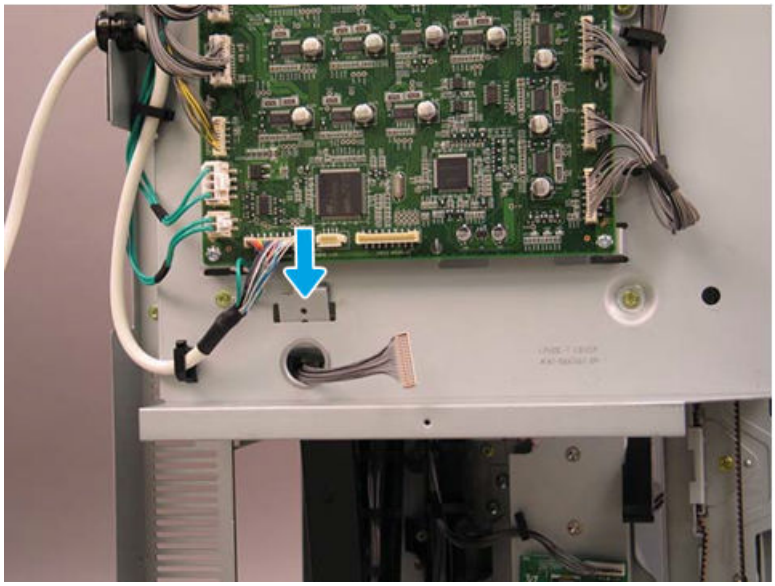
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 5-1434 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



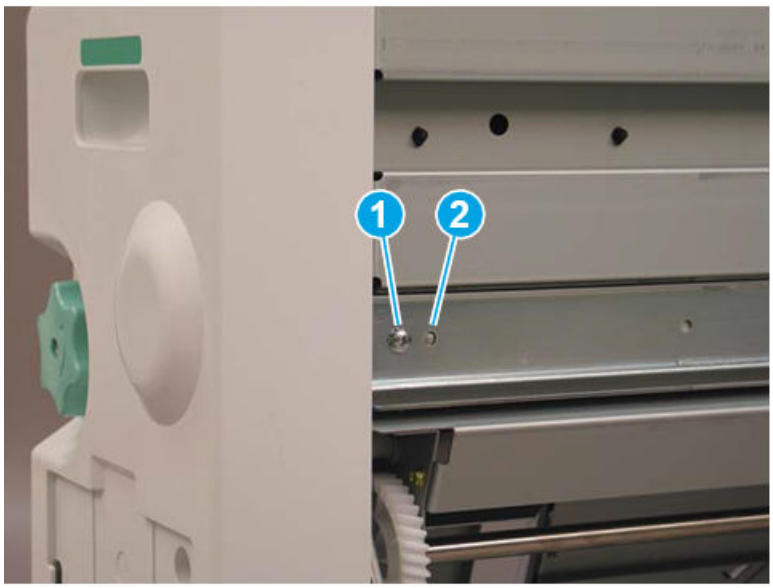
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 5-1435 Release the metal bracket



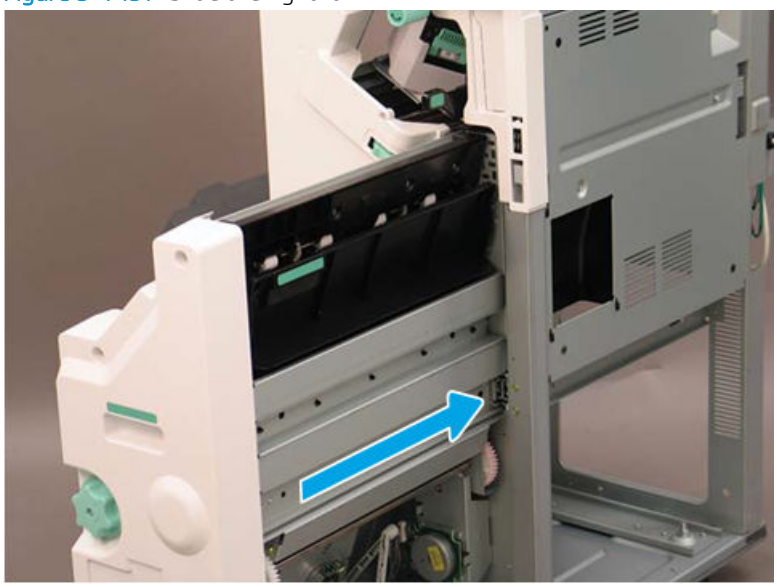
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1436 Remove one screw



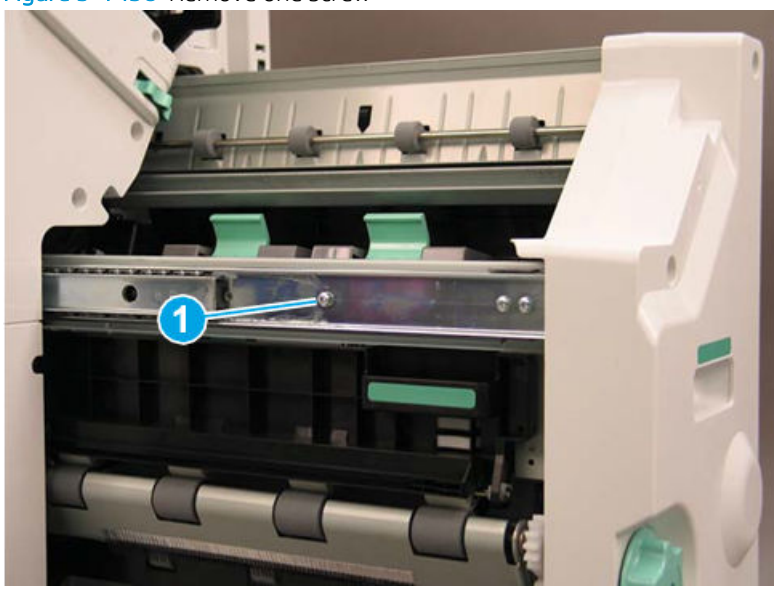
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 5-1437 Slide the right rail



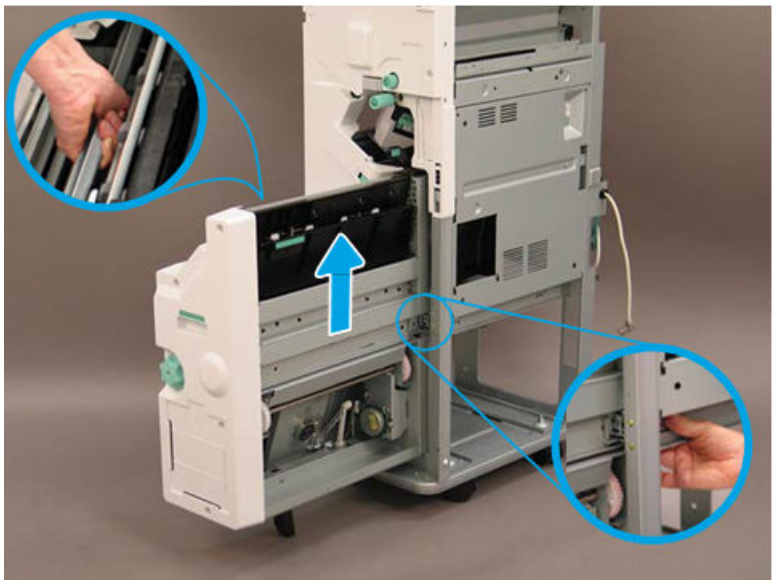
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1438 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1439 Remove the booklet maker



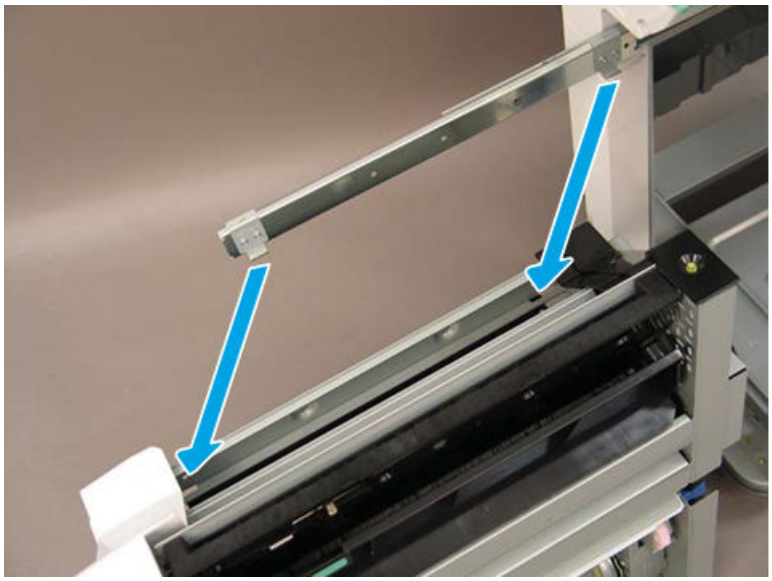
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: booklet maker

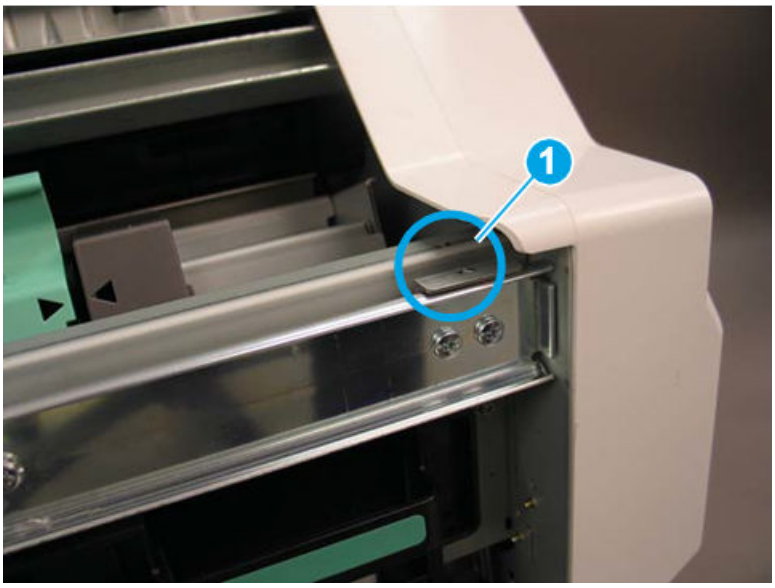
When installing the booklet maker, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1440 Position the hooks



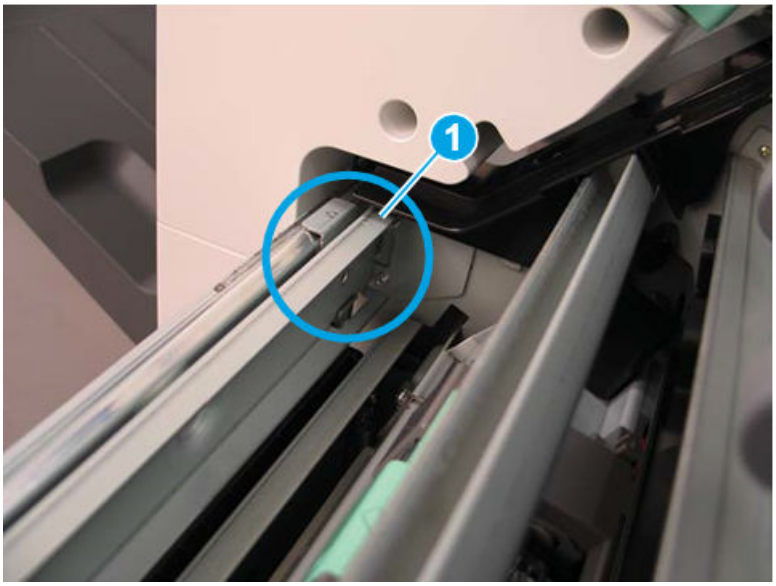
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1441 Align arrows



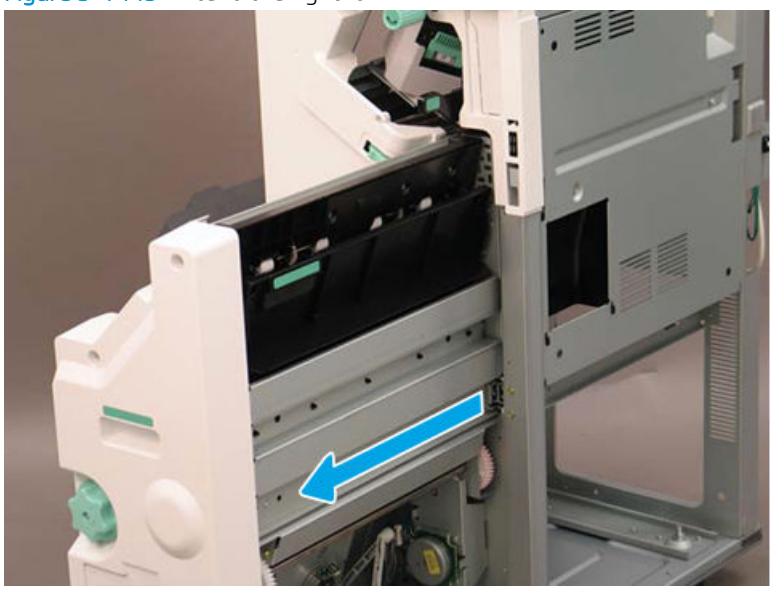
10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1442 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.

Figure 5-1443 Extend the right rail



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet entrance unit

Removal and replacement: Booklet entrance motor (M15)

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet entrance motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet entrance motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-144 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01152A	Booklet entrance motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

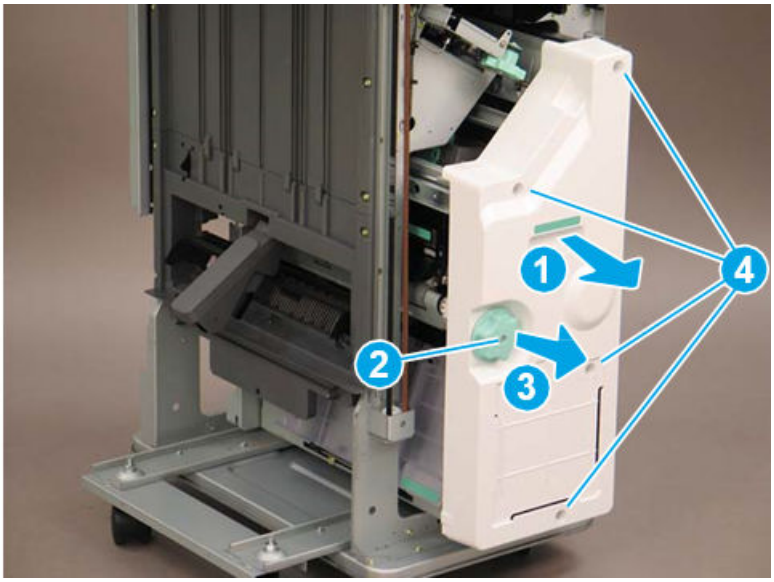
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

- Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1444 Remove five screws and the cover



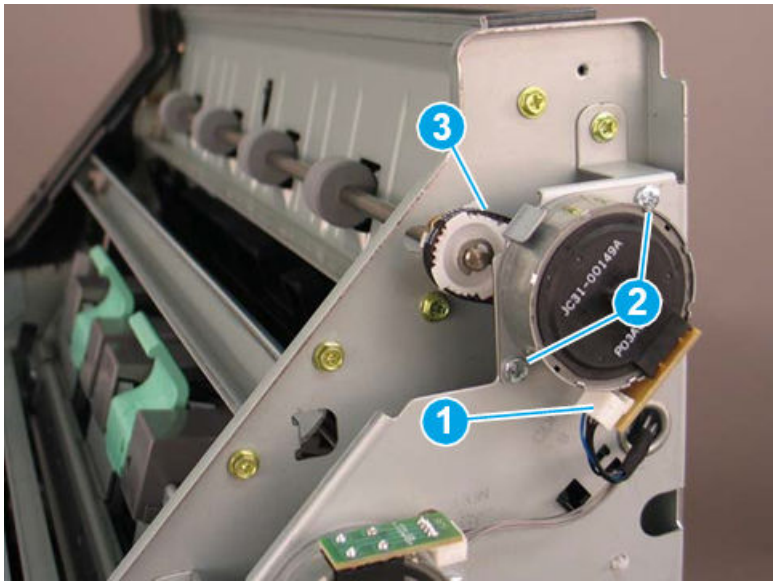
Remove the booklet entrance motor (M15)

Follow these steps to remove the booklet entrance motor (M15).

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2). Lift the motor away from the booklet maker and release the belt (callout 3) from the back of the motor.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1445 Remove the booklet entrance motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet entrance sensor (S36)

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet entrance sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet entrance sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-145 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Booklet entrance sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

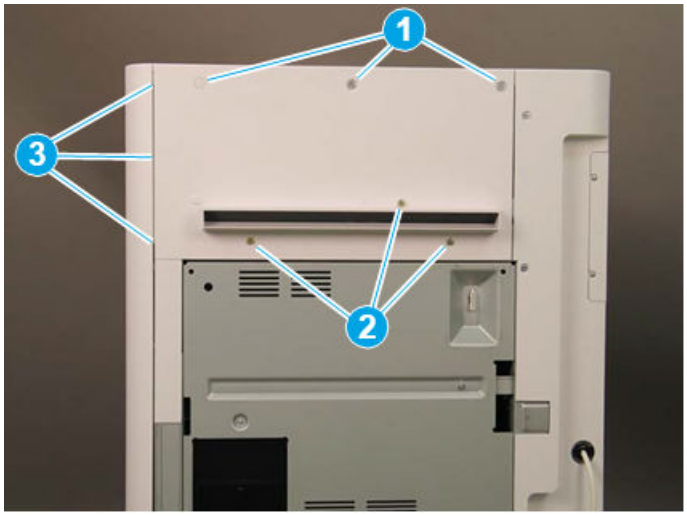
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1446 Remove the right upper cover

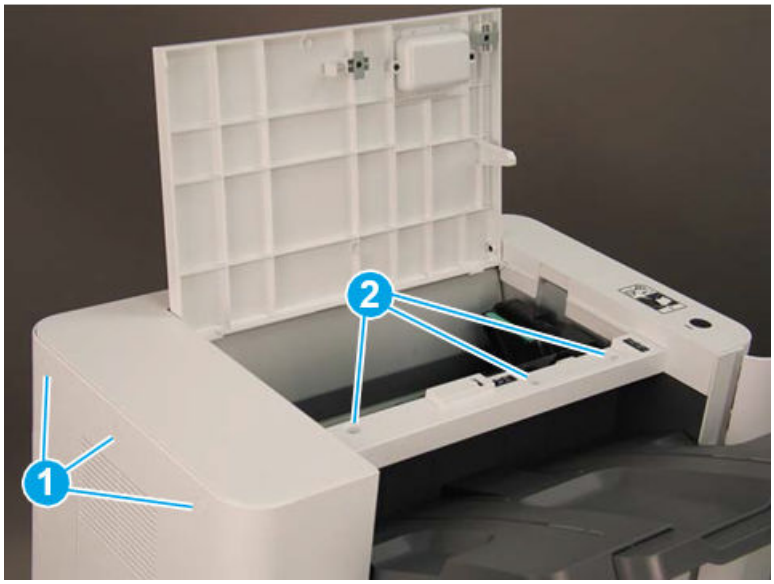


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

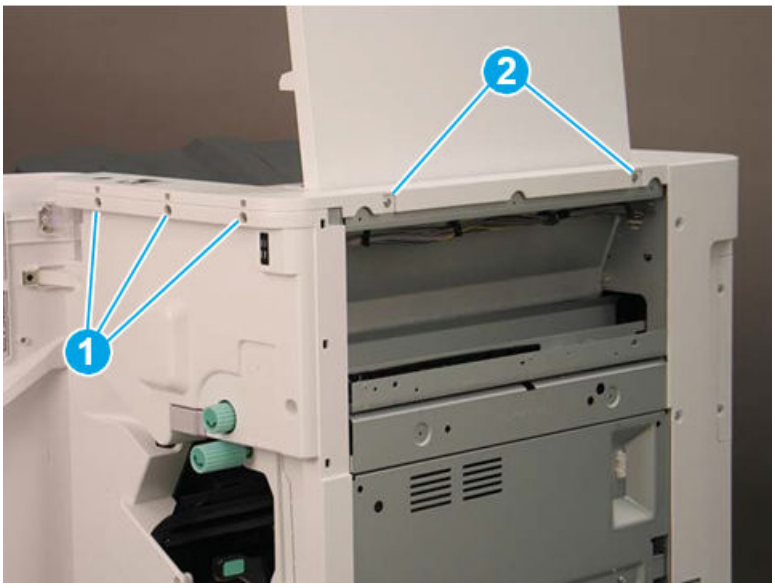
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1447 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

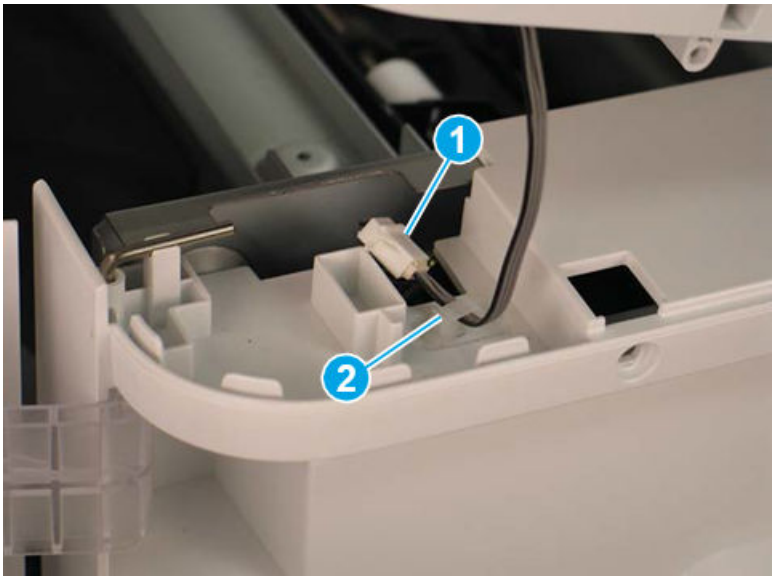
Figure 5-1448 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1449 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

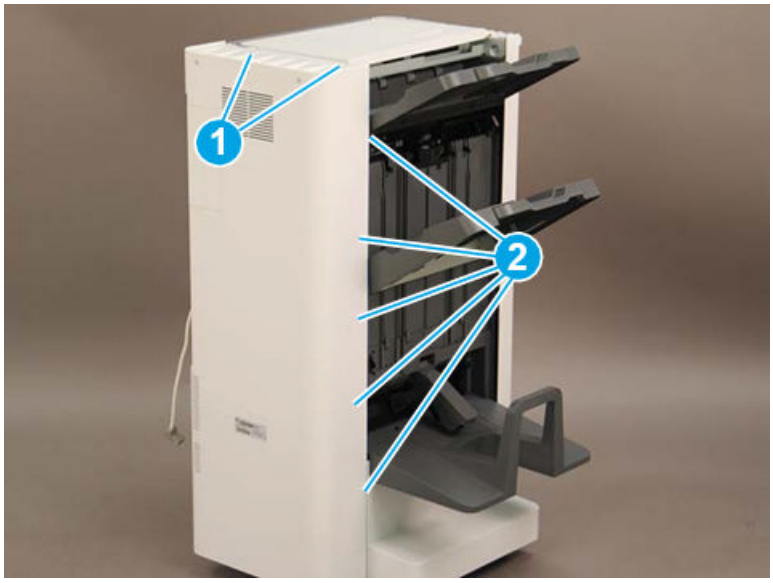


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1450 Remove seven screws

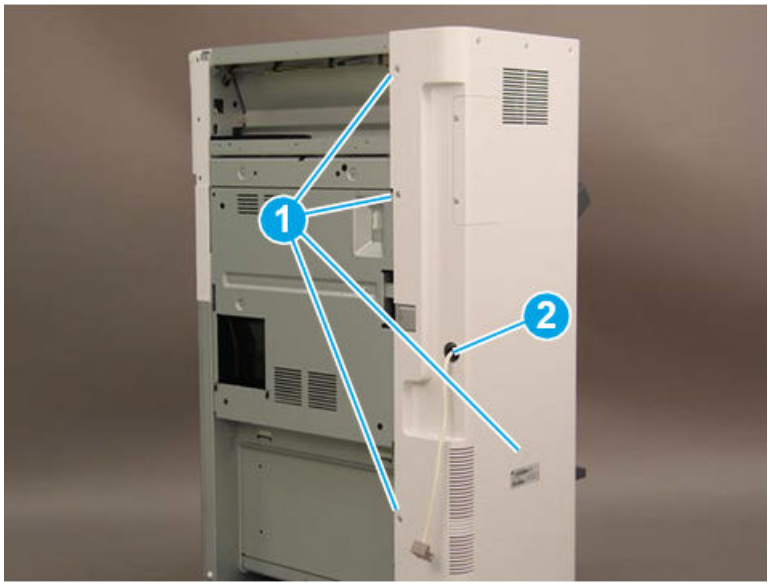


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1451 Remove the rear cover



Remove the booklet maker

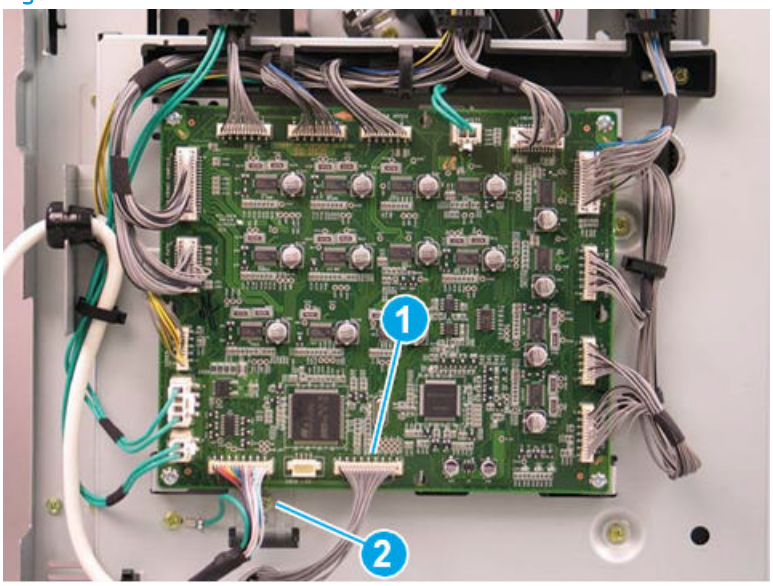
Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker.

1. Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1452 Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher

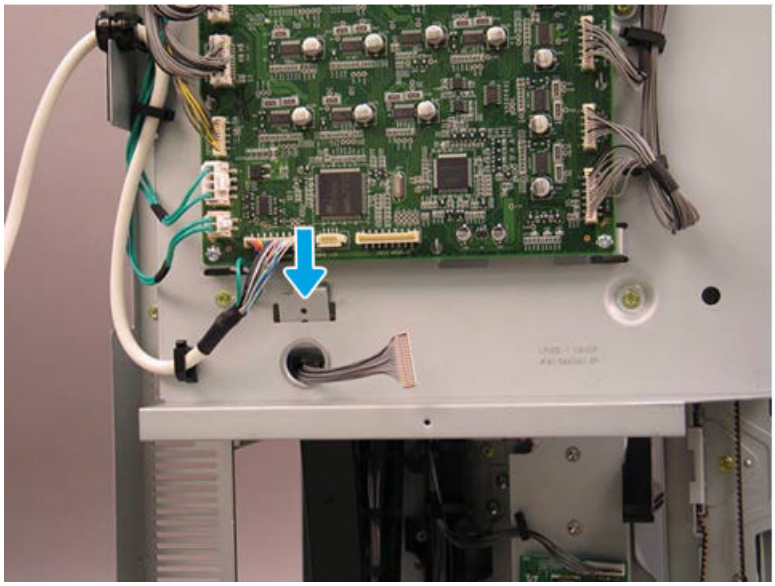
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 5-1453 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



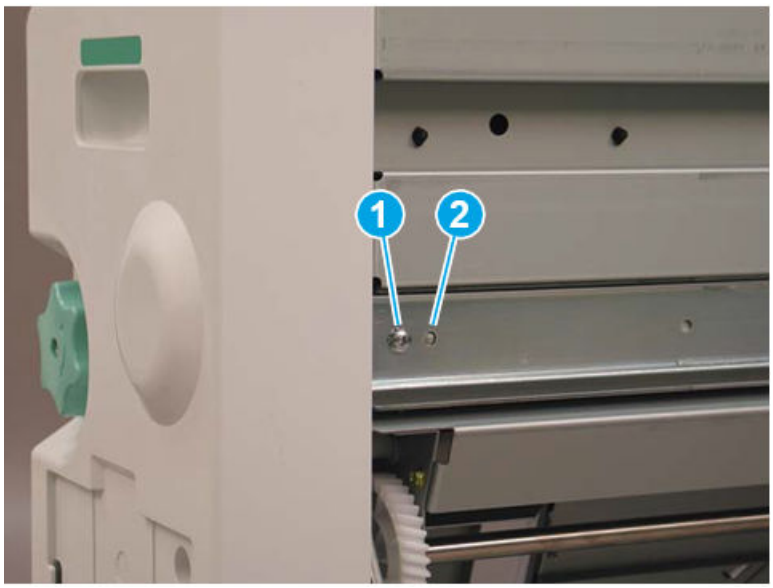
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 5-1454 Release the metal bracket



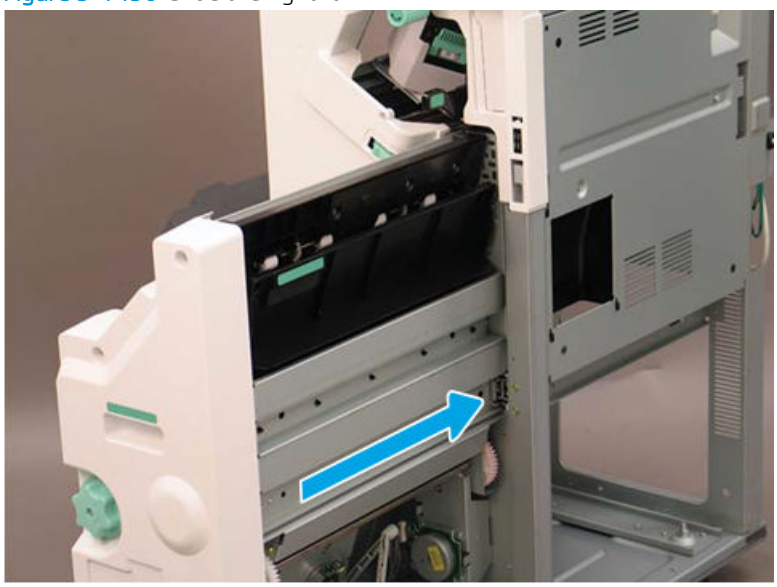
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1455 Remove one screw



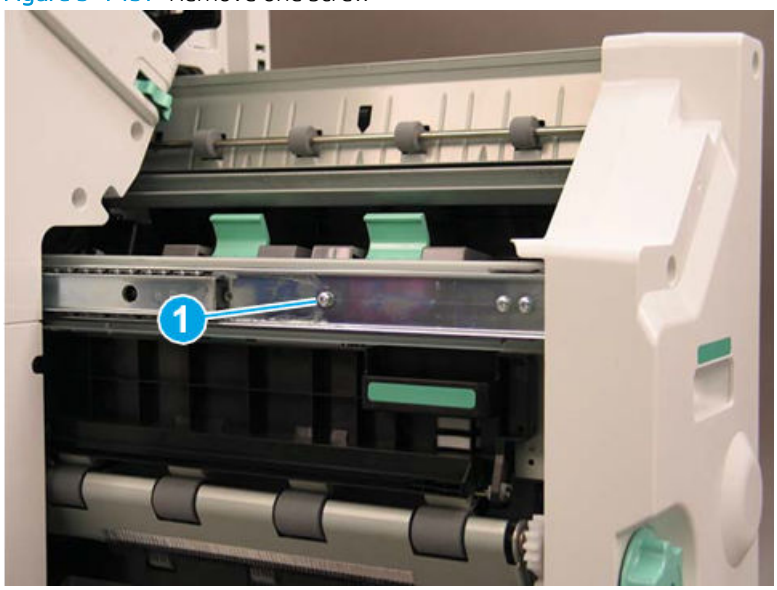
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 5-1456 Slide the right rail



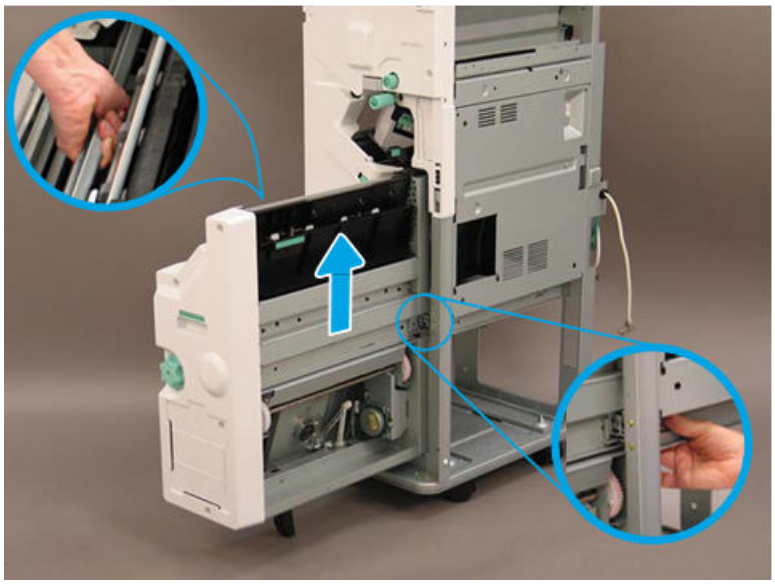
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1457 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1458 Remove the booklet maker



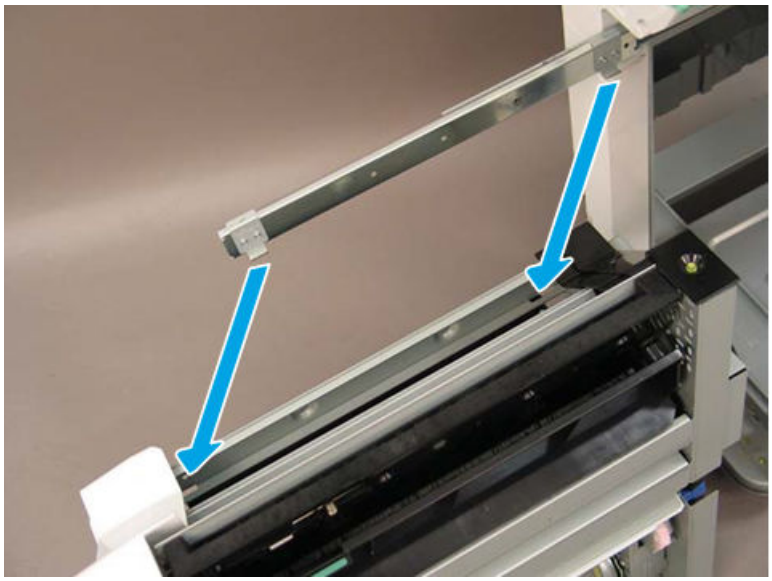
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: booklet maker

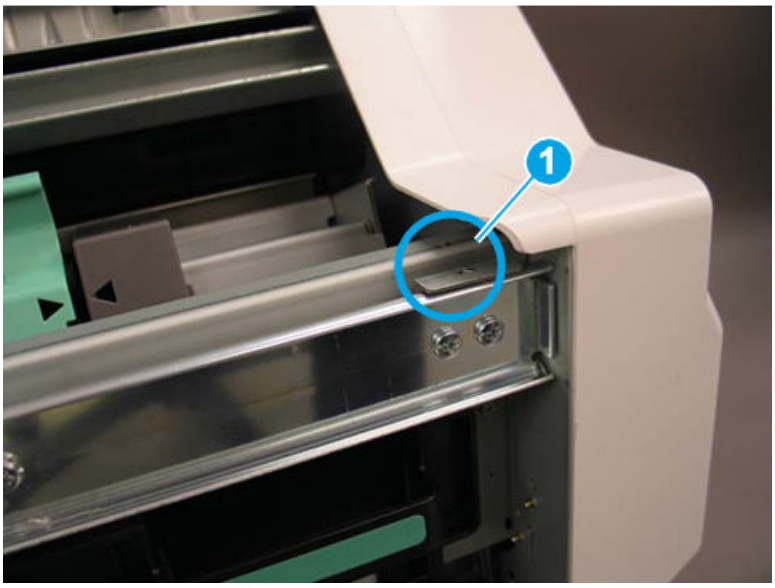
When installing the booklet maker, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1459 Position the hooks



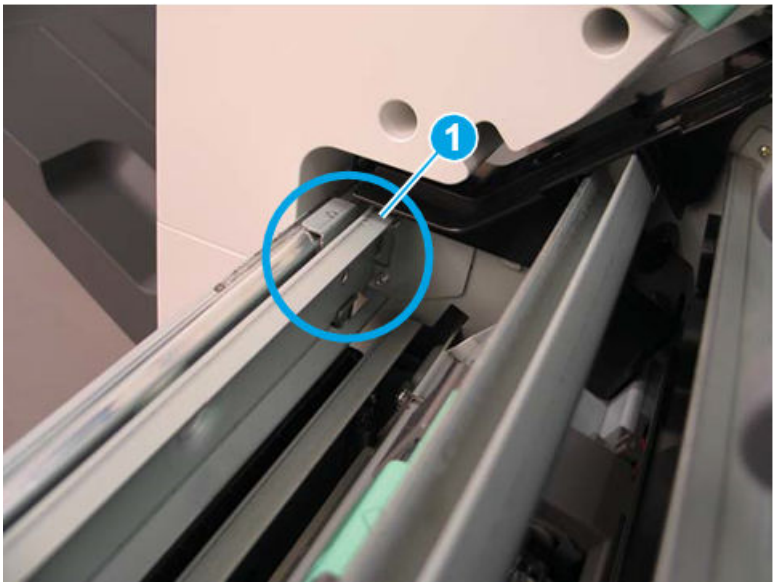
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1460 Align arrows



10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1461 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.

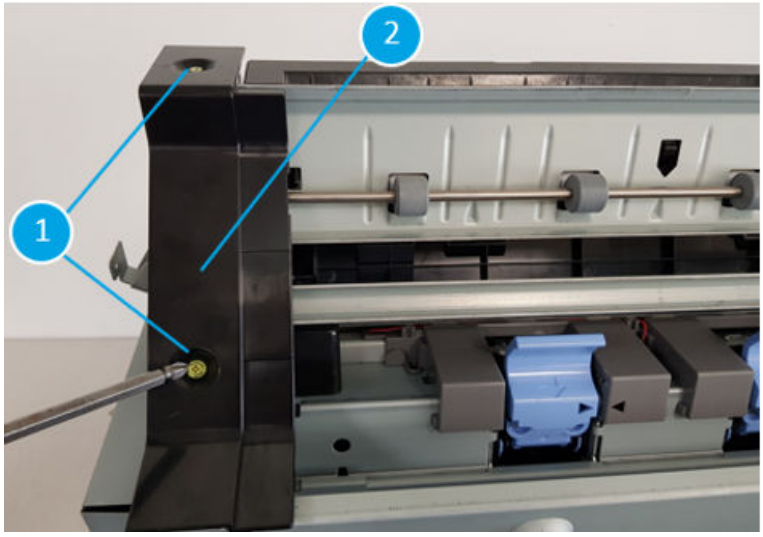
Figure 5-1462 Extend the right rail

Remove the booklet entrance unit

Follow these steps to remove the booklet entrance unit.

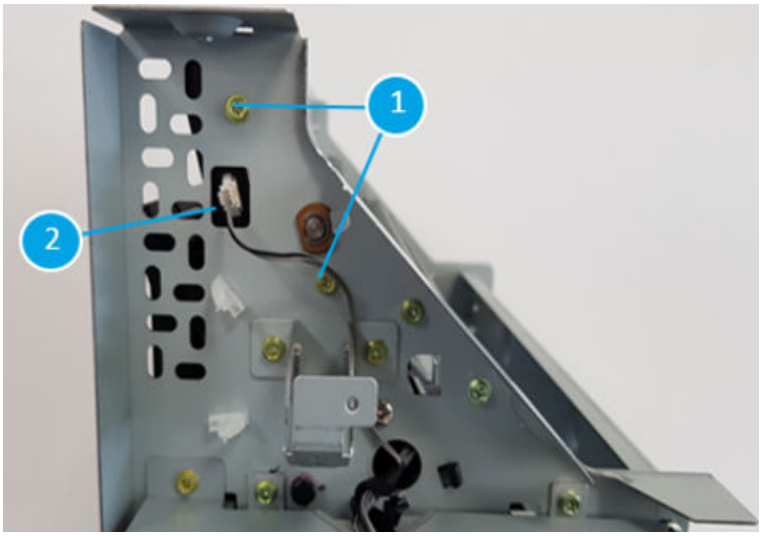
1. Remove two screws(callout 1) then remove the black cover (callout 2)

Figure 5-1463 Remove two screws then remove the black cover



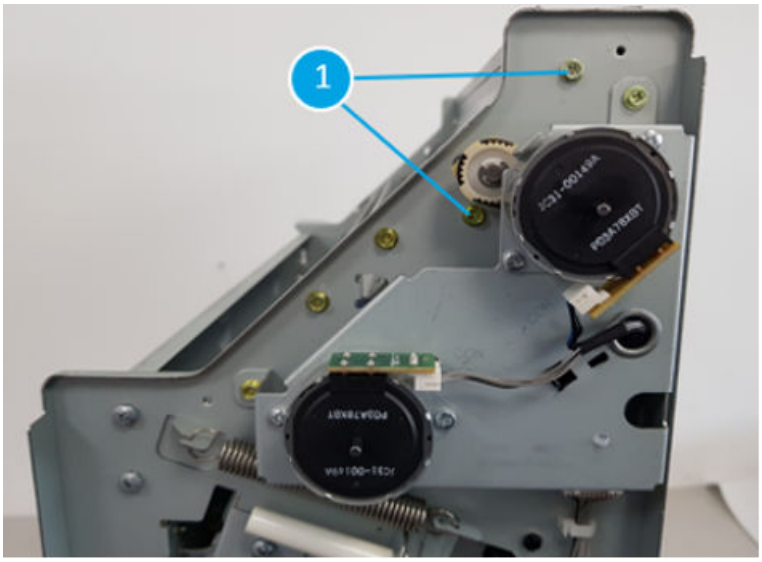
2. Remove two screws(callout 1) and disconnect one connector(callout 2)

Figure 5-1464 Remove two screws and disconnect one connector



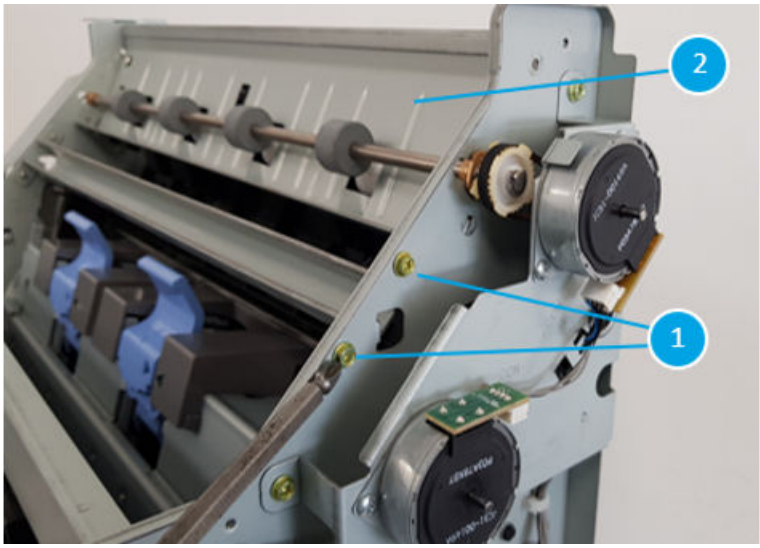
3. Remove two screws(callout 1)

Figure 5-1465 Remove two screws



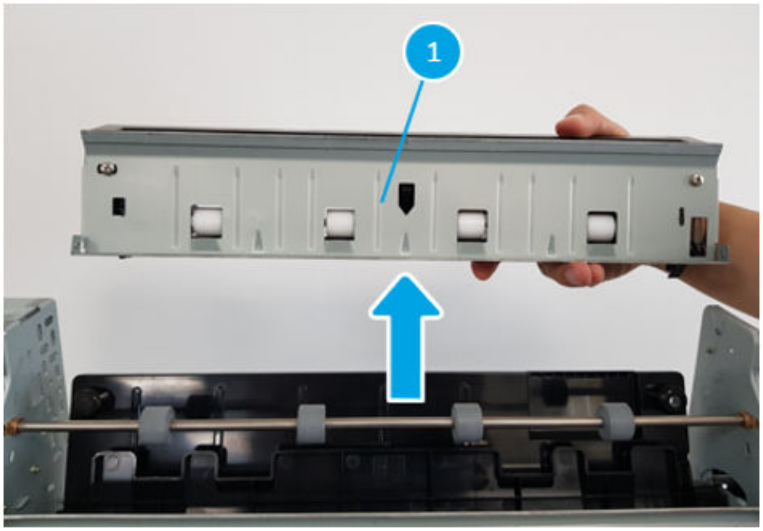
4. Remove two screws(callout 1) to make it easy to pull off the booklet entrance unit (callout2)

Figure 5-1466 Remove two screws to make it easy to pull off the booklet entrance unit



5. Remove the booklet entrance unit (callout 1)

Figure 5-1467 Remove the booklet entrance unit

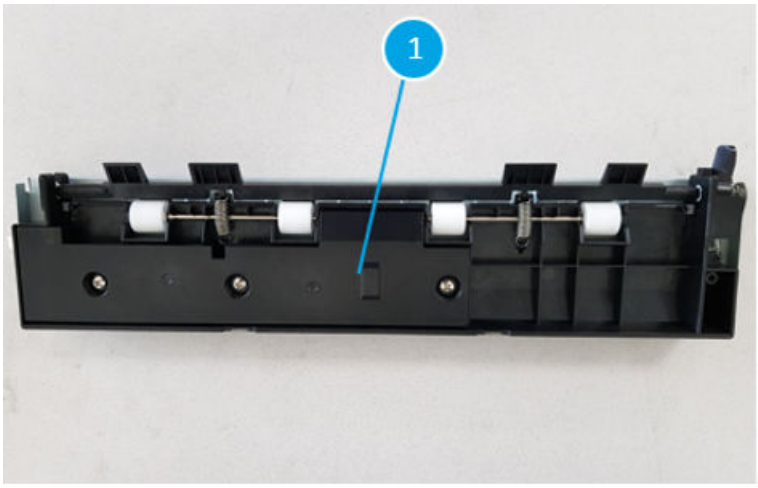


Remove the booklet entrance sensor (S36)

Follow these steps to remove the booklet entrance sensor (S36).

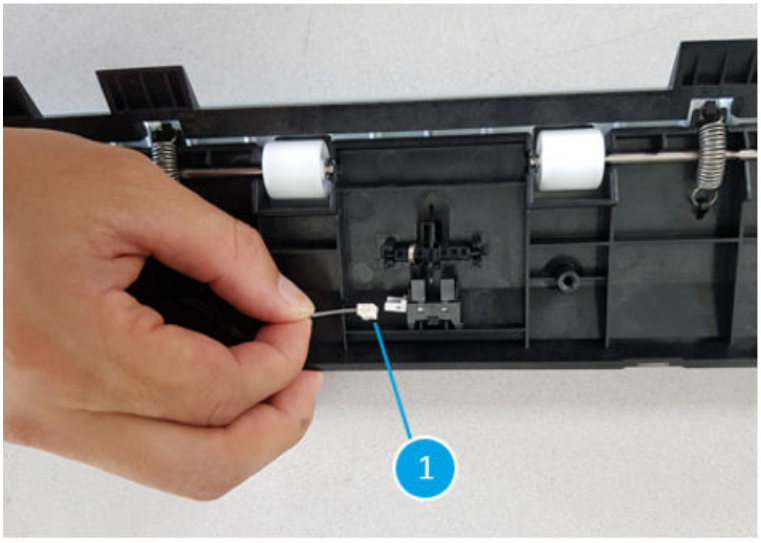
1. Entrance unit (callout 1)

Figure 5-1468 Entrance unit



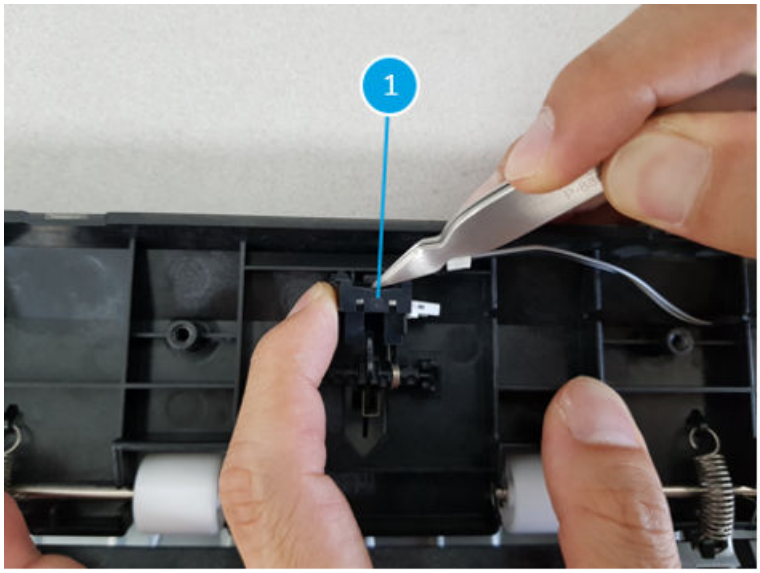
2. Unplug one connector (callout 1)

Figure 5-1469 Unplug one connector



3. Use a tweezer to remove the entrance sensor (S36, callout1)

Figure 5-1470 Remove the entrance sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet paddle unit

Removal and replacement: Booklet paddle motor (M19)

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet paddle motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet paddle motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-146 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Booklet paddle motor
JC90-01430A	Booklet paddle motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

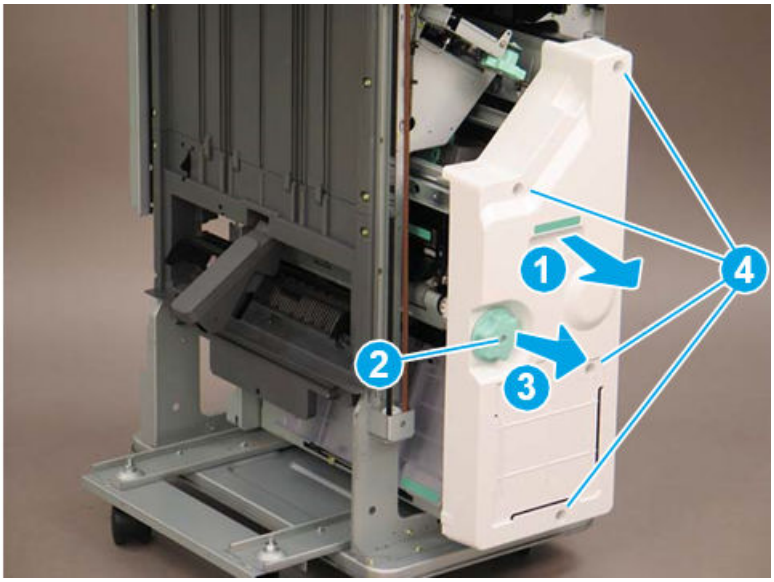
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

- ▲ Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1471 Remove five screws and the cover

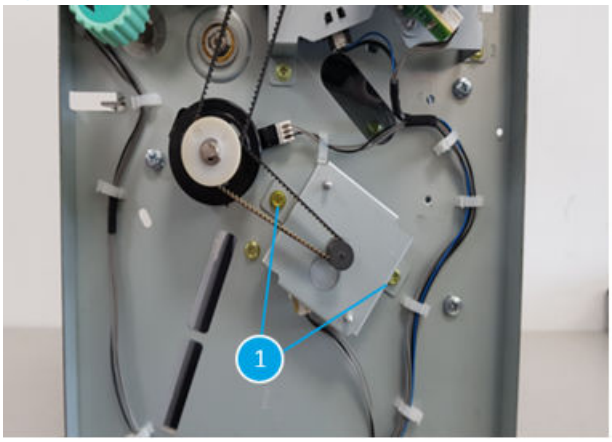


Remove the booklet paddle motor (M19)

Follow these steps to remove the booklet paddle motor (M19).

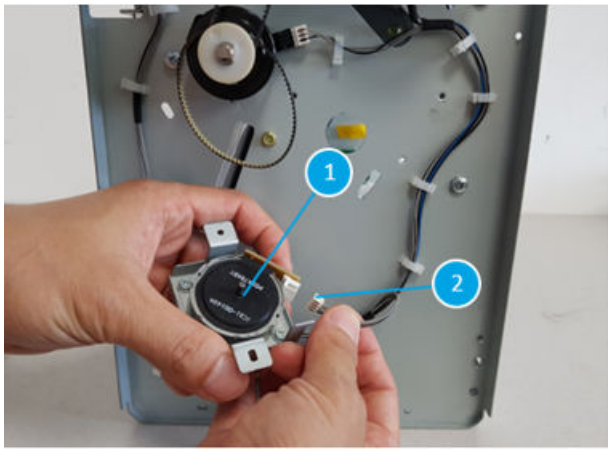
1. Remove two screws(callout 1)

Figure 5-1472 Remove two screws



2. Remove the booklelt paddle motor (M19, callout1) and unplug one connector (callout 2)

Figure 5-1473 Remove the booklelt paddle motor and unplug one connector



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet paddle home sensor (S41)

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet paddle home sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet paddle home sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-147 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Booklet paddle home sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

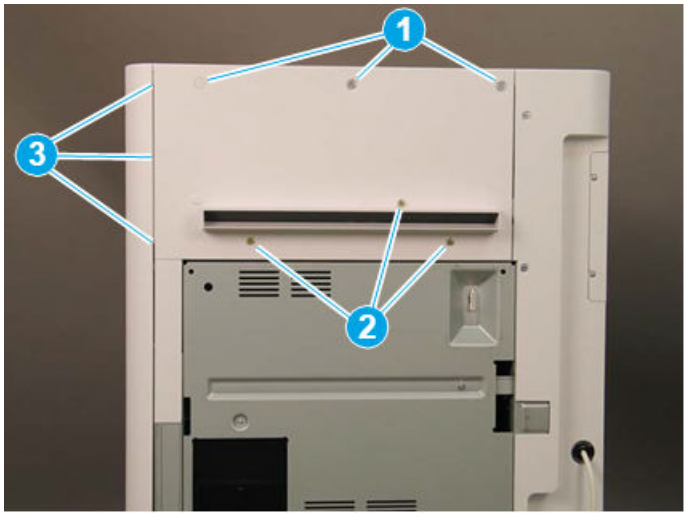
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1474 Remove the right upper cover

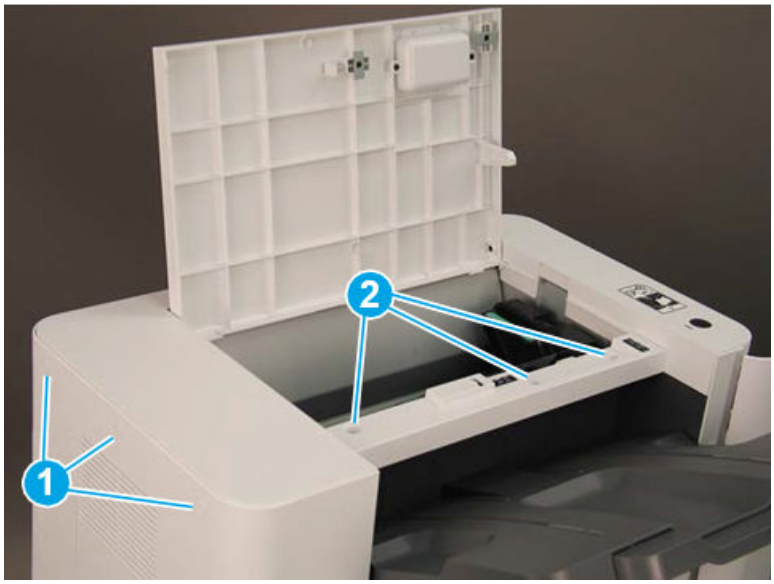


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

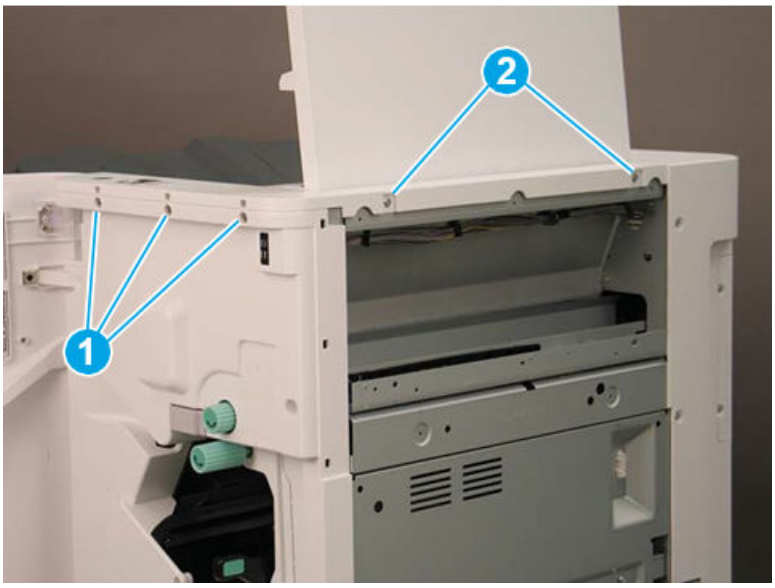
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1475 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

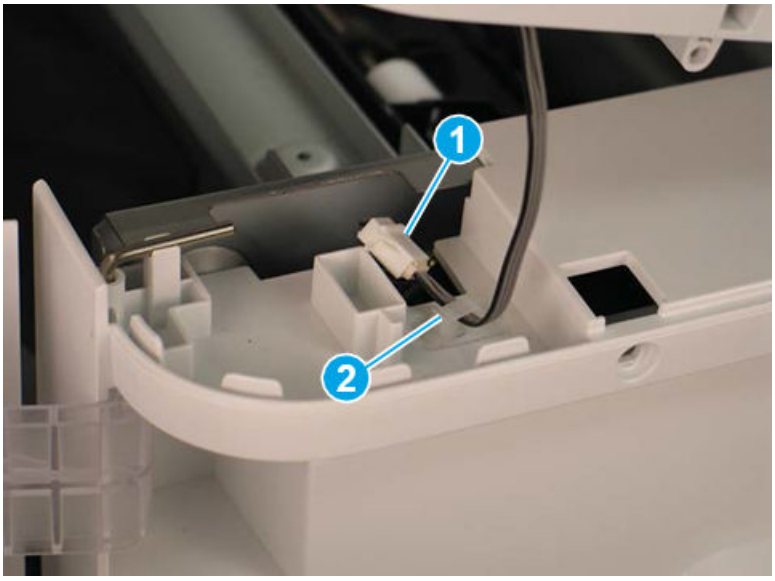
Figure 5-1476 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1477 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

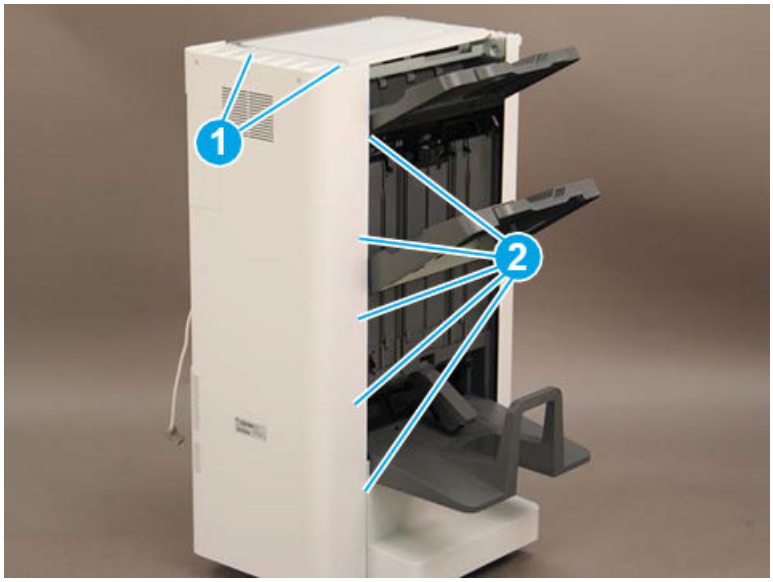


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1478 Remove seven screws

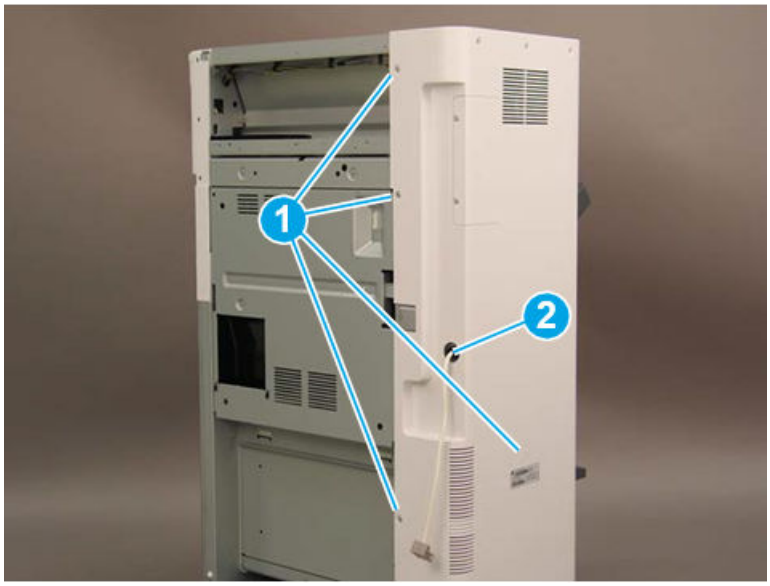


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1479 Remove the rear cover



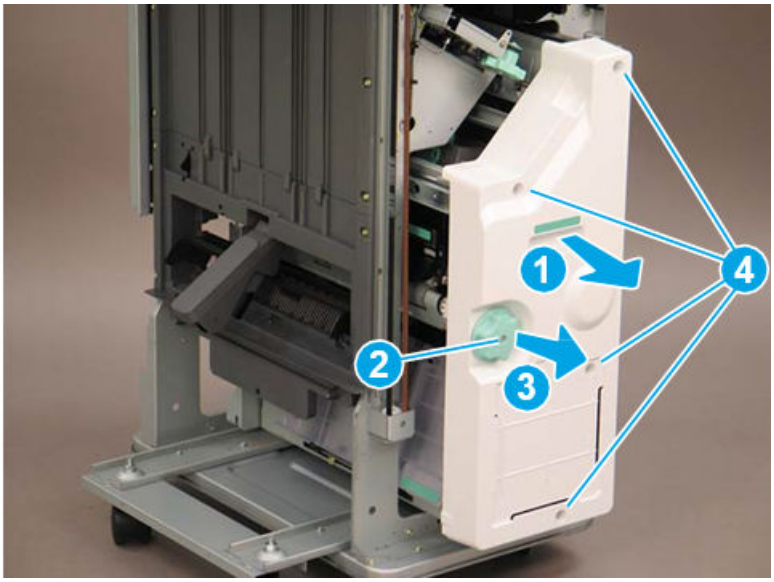
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

- Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1480 Remove five screws and the cover

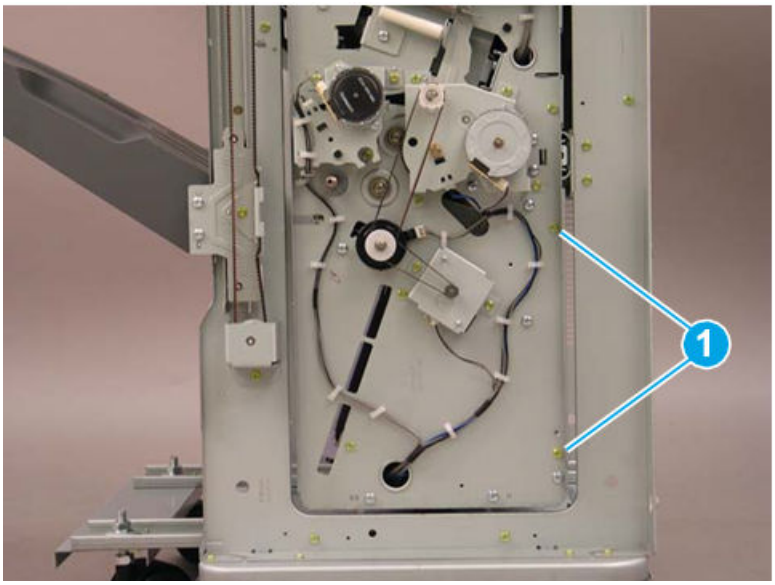


Remove the booklet right lower shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet right lower shield.

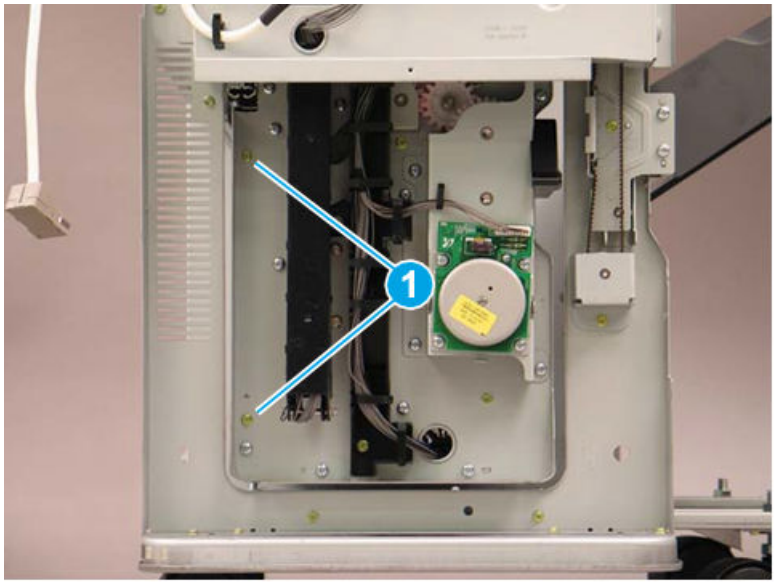
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1481 Remove two screws



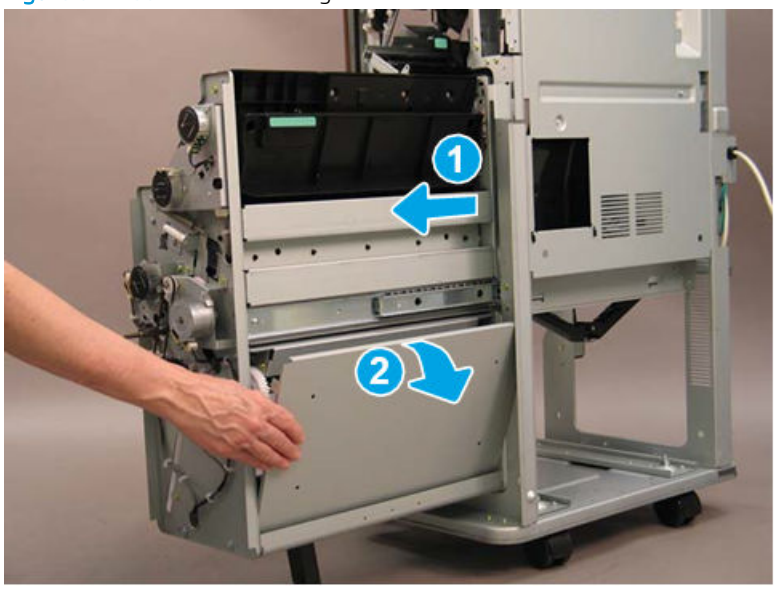
2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1482 Remove two screws



3. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the right lower shield (callout 2) away from the booklet maker to remove it.

Figure 5-1483 Remove the right lower shield

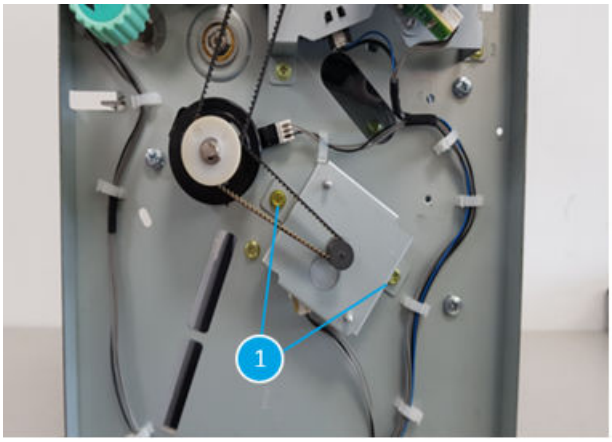


Remove the booklet paddle motor (M19)

Follow these steps to remove the booklet paddle motor (M19).

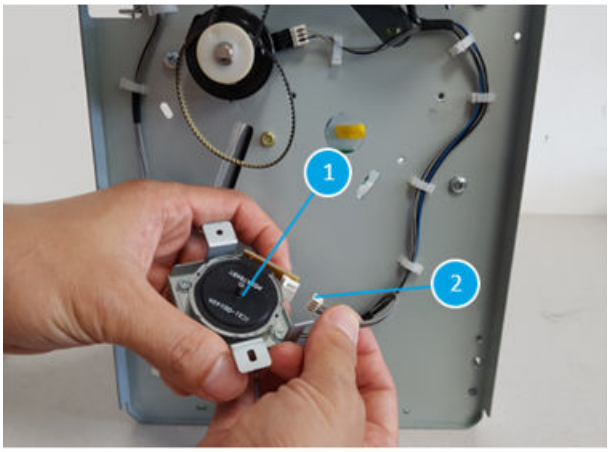
1. Remove two screws(callout 1)

Figure 5-1484 Remove two screws



2. Remove the booklelt paddle motor (M19, callout1) and unplug one connector (callout 2)

Figure 5-1485 Remove the booklelt paddle motor and unplug one connector

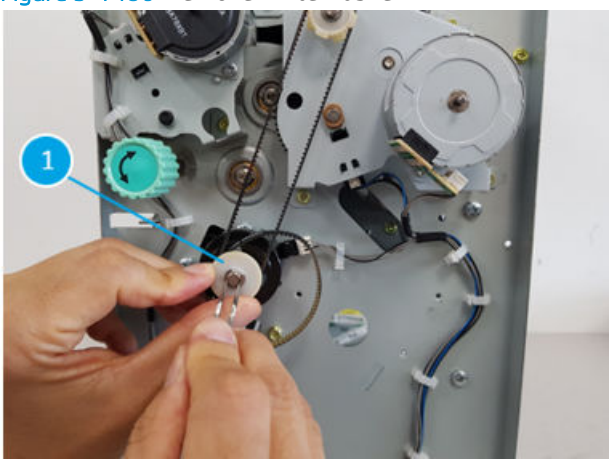


Remove the booklet paddle home sensor (S41)

Follow these steps to remove the booklet paddle home sensor (S41).

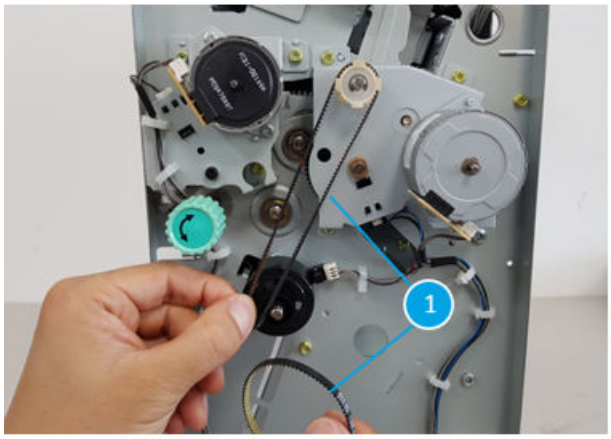
1. Remove one e-clip on top of the white washer and then remove the white washer(callout 1)

Figure 5-1486 Remove white washer



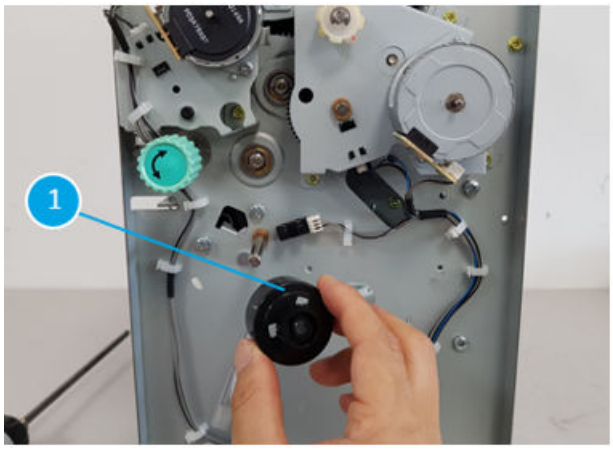
2. Remove two belts (callout 1)

Figure 5-1487 Remove two belts



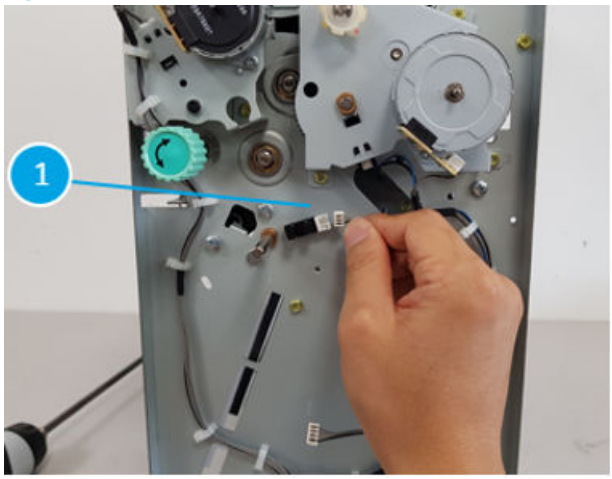
3. Remove the black actuator (callout 1)

Figure 5-1488 Remove the black actuator



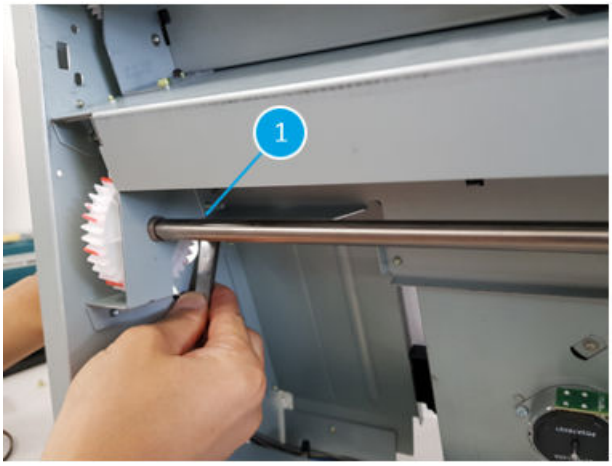
4. Unplug one connector (callout 1)

Figure 5-1489 Unplug one connector



5. Use a tweezer to remove the Booklet paddle home sensor (S41, callout 1) from the left side

Figure 5-1490 Use a tweezer to remove the Booklet paddle home sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet end fence unit

Removal and replacement: Booklet end fence unit

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet end fence.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet end fence on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-148 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01432A	Booklet end fence unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

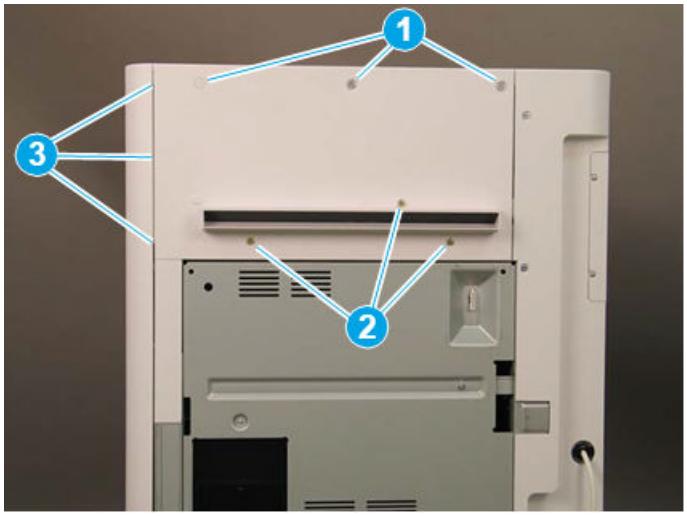
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1491 Remove the right upper cover

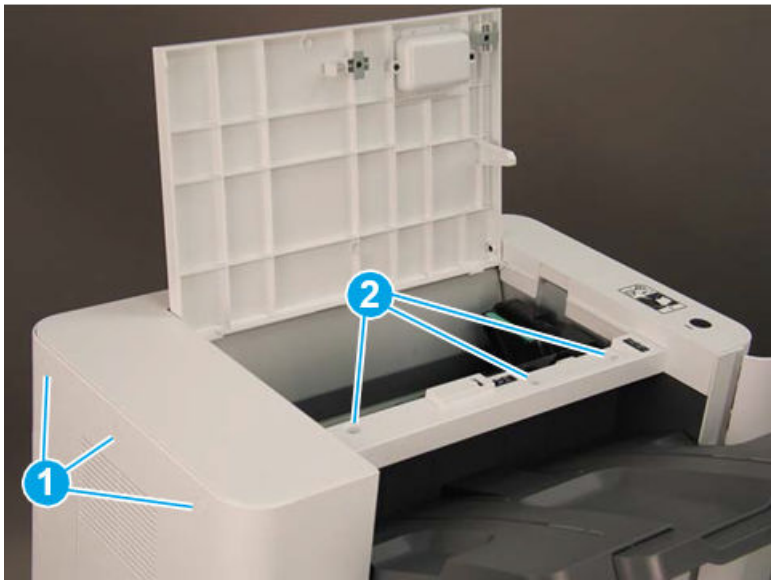


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

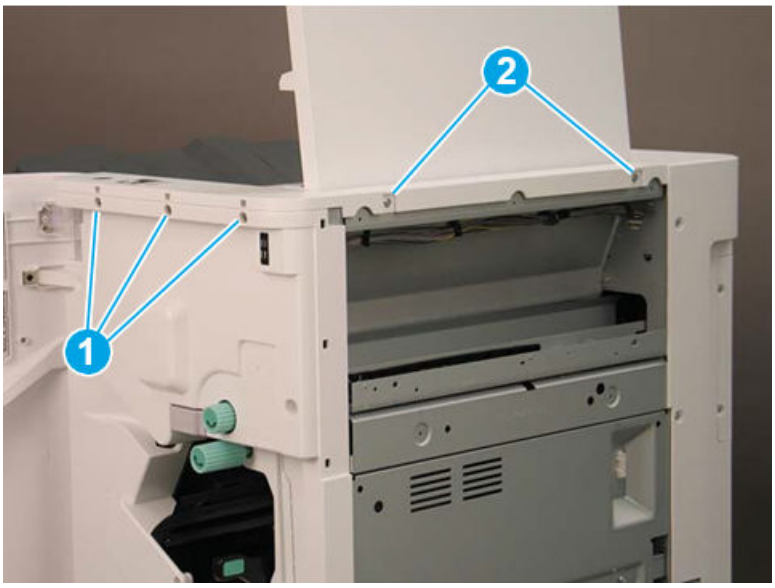
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1492 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

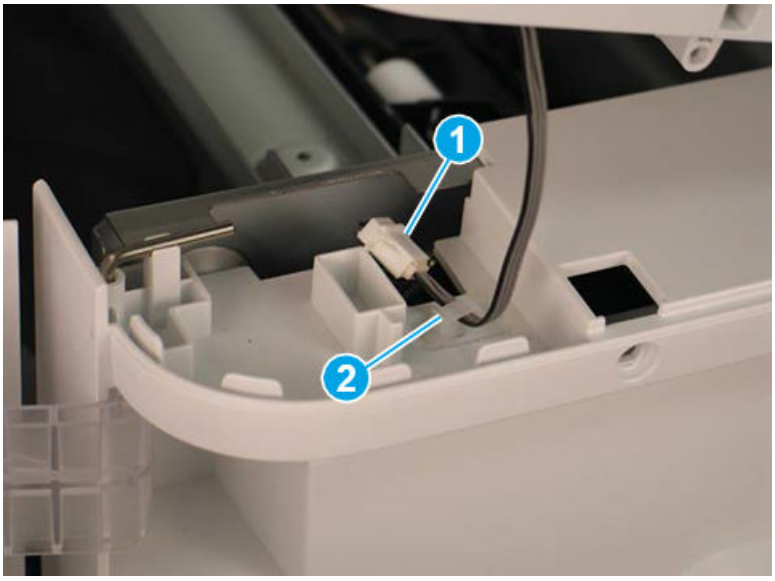
Figure 5-1493 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1494 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

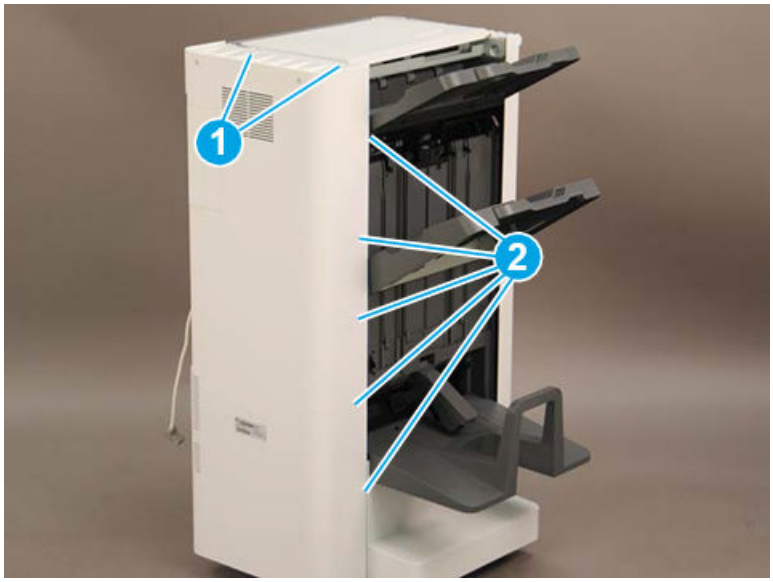


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1495 Remove seven screws

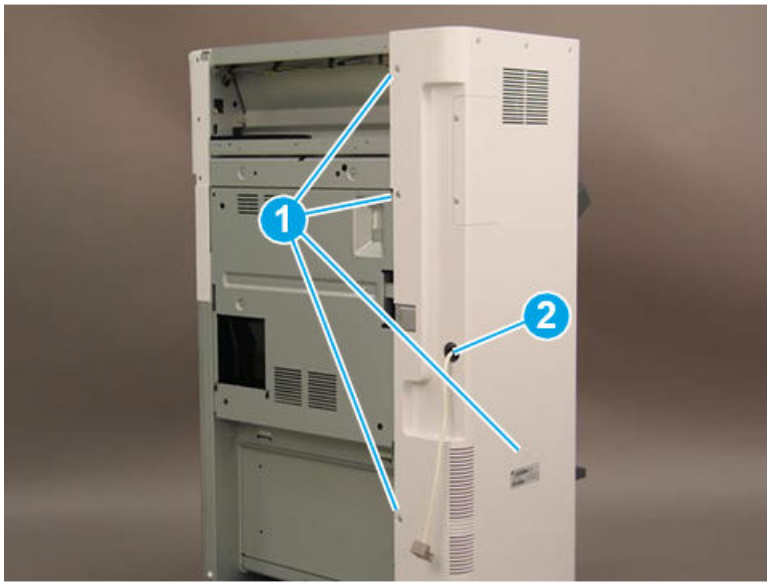


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1496 Remove the rear cover



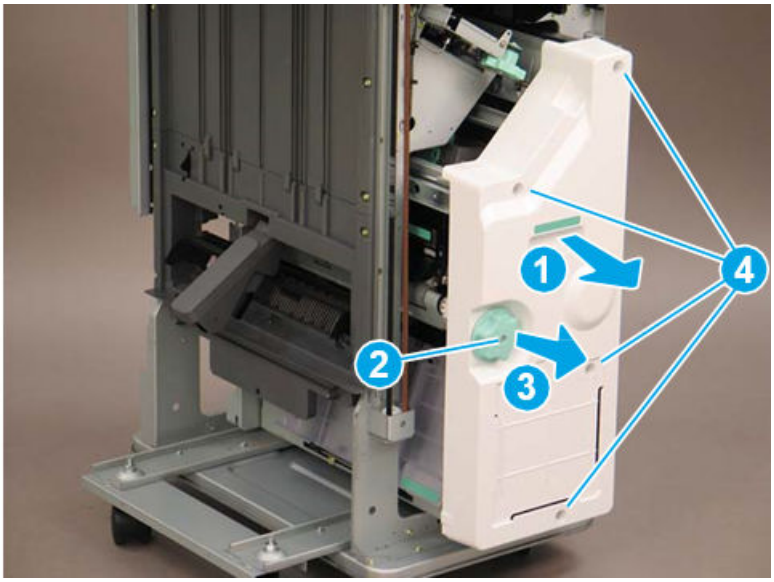
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

- Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1497 Remove five screws and the cover

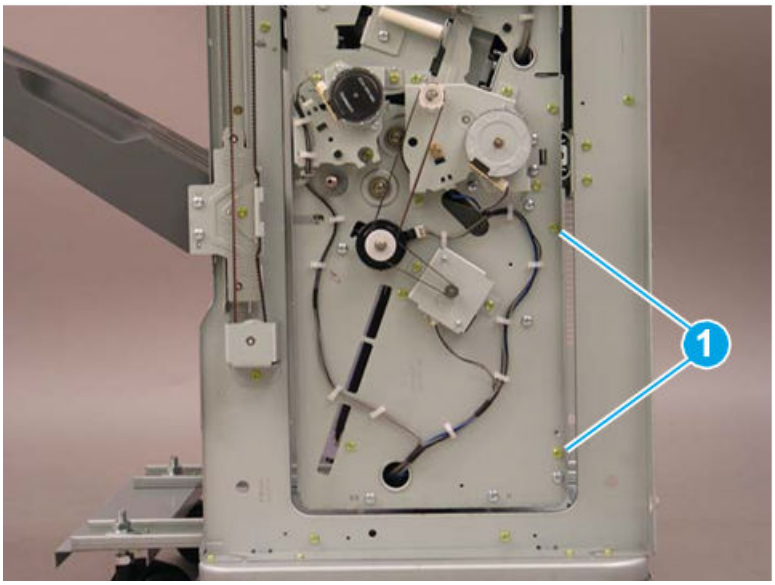


Remove the booklet right lower shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet right lower shield.

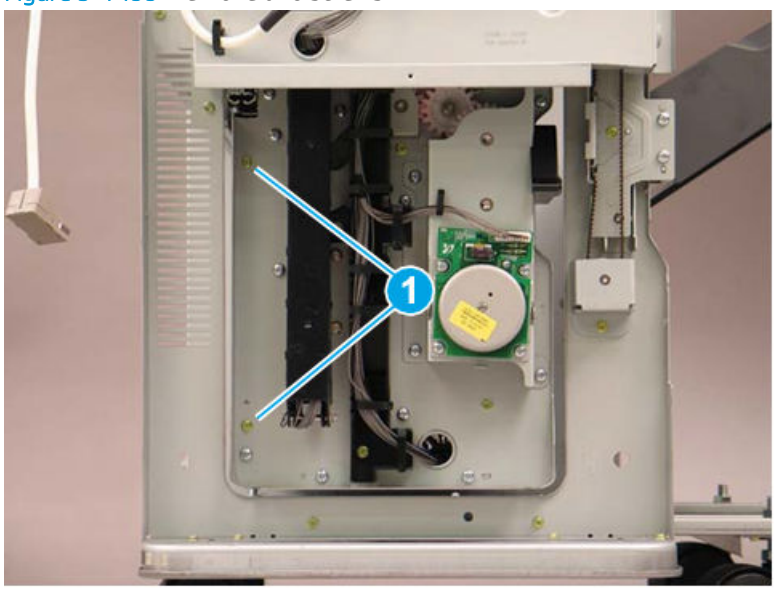
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1498 Remove two screws



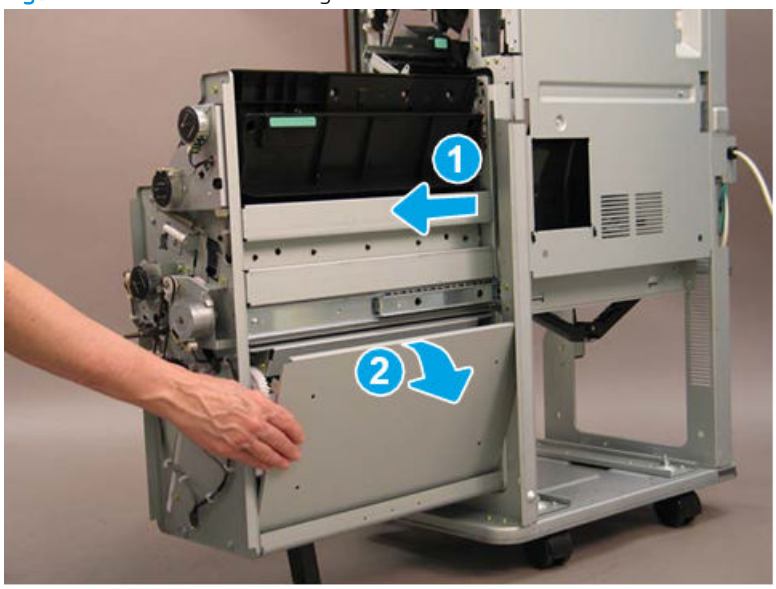
2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1499 Remove two screws



3. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the right lower shield (callout 2) away from the booklet maker to remove it.

Figure 5-1500 Remove the right lower shield

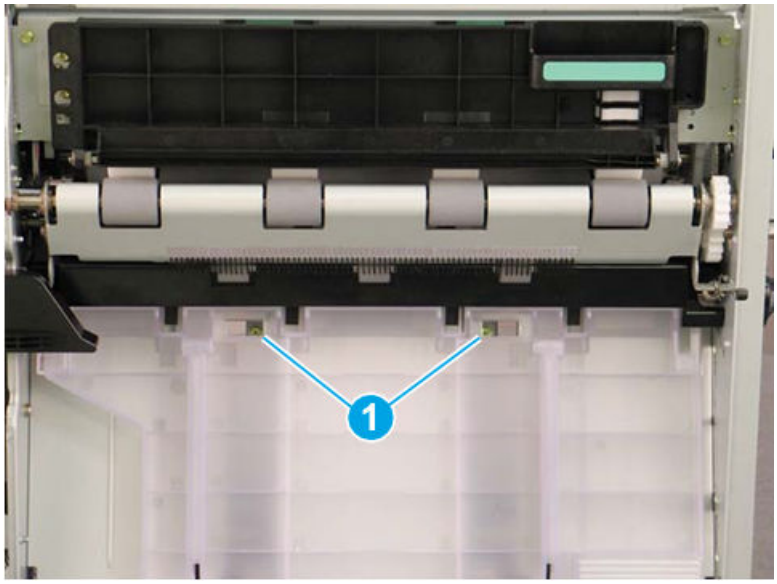


Remove the fold stopper unit

Follow these steps to remove the fold stopper unit.

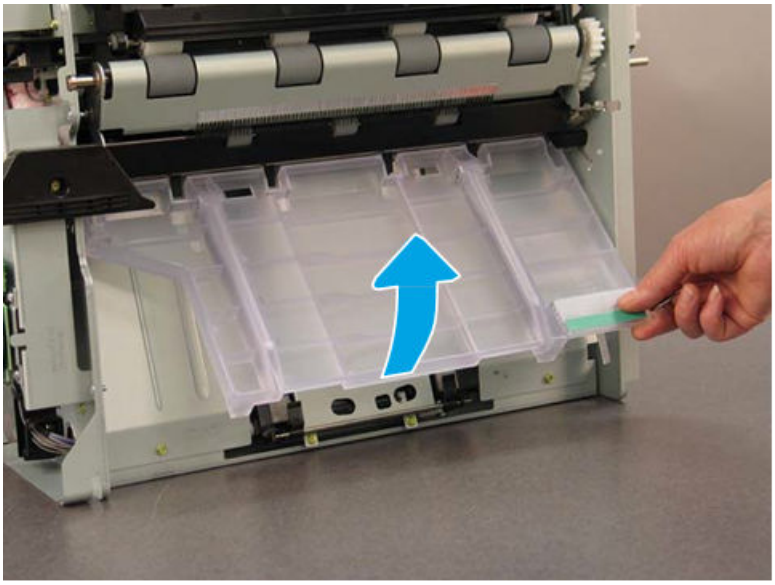
1. On the left side of the booklet maker, remove two screws through access openings in the jam access cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1501 Remove two screws



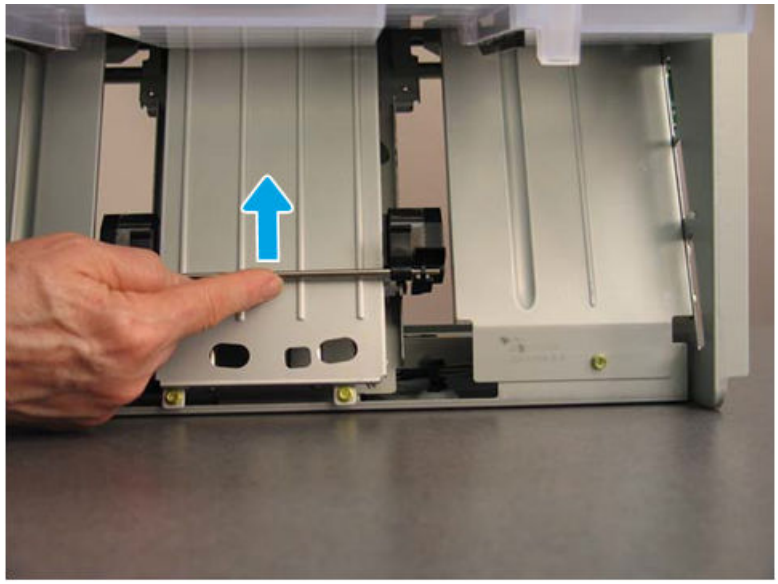
2. Raise the jam access cover.

Figure 5-1502 Raise the jam access cover



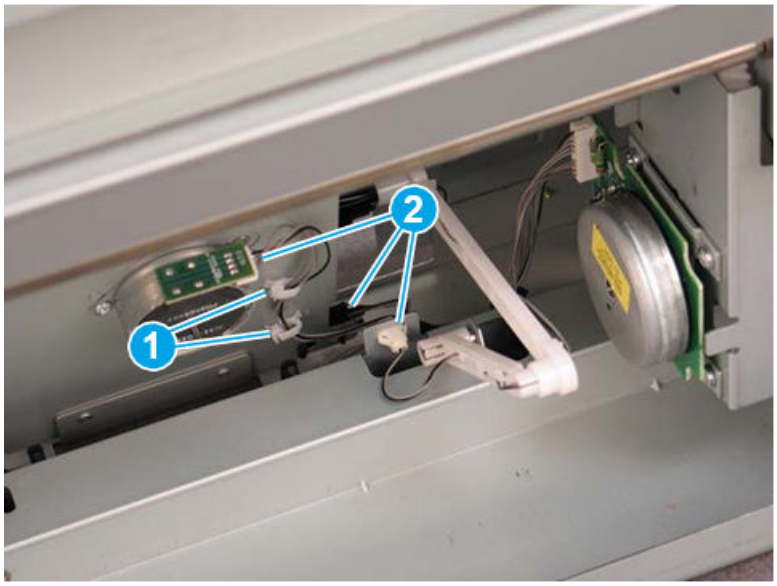
3. Raise the booklet width guide.

Figure 5-1503 Raise the booklet width guide.



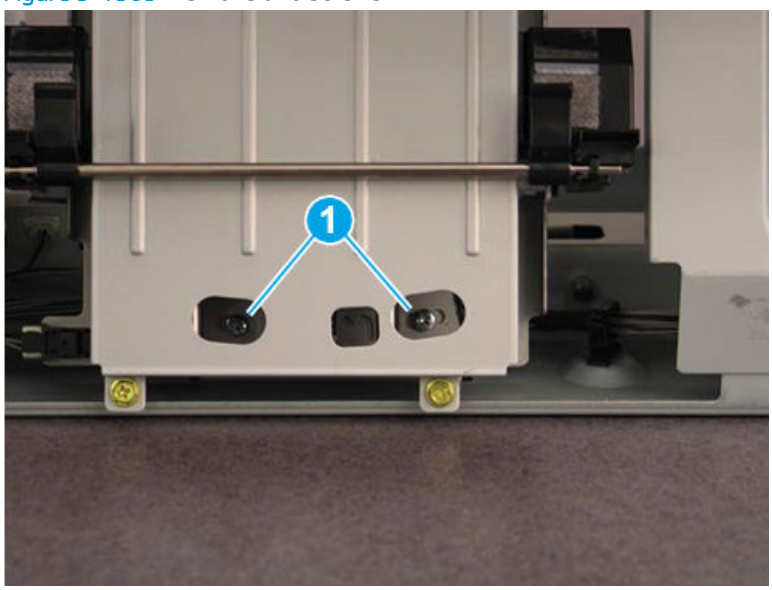
4. On the right side of the booklet maker, open two retainers (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 5-1504 Disconnect three connectors



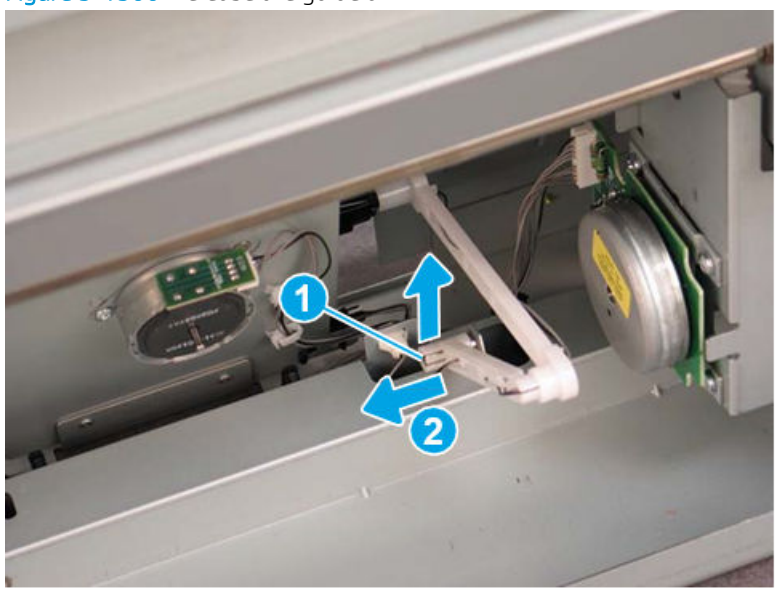
5. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1505 Remove two screws



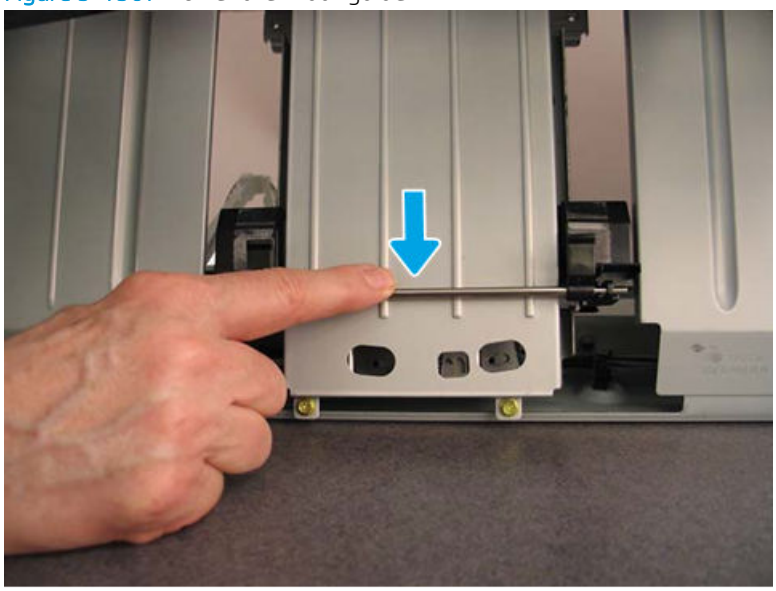
6. Release the tab (callout 1) on the guide arm, and then slide the guide off of the shaft (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1506 Release the guide arm



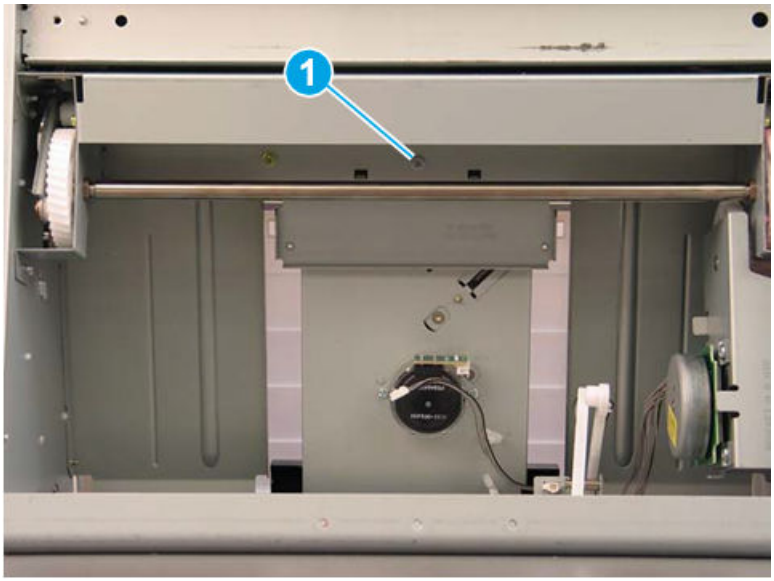
7. Lower the width guide to the lowest position.

Figure 5-1507 Lower the width guide



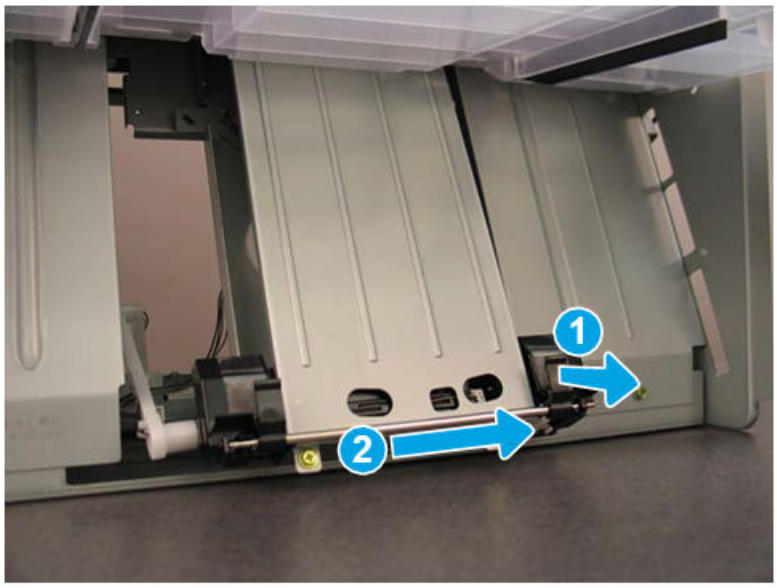
8. On the right side of the booklet maker, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1508 Remove one screw



9. Lift the right lower corner (callout 1) to clear the cable guide, and then slide the assembly to the right (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1509 Remove the fold stopper unit



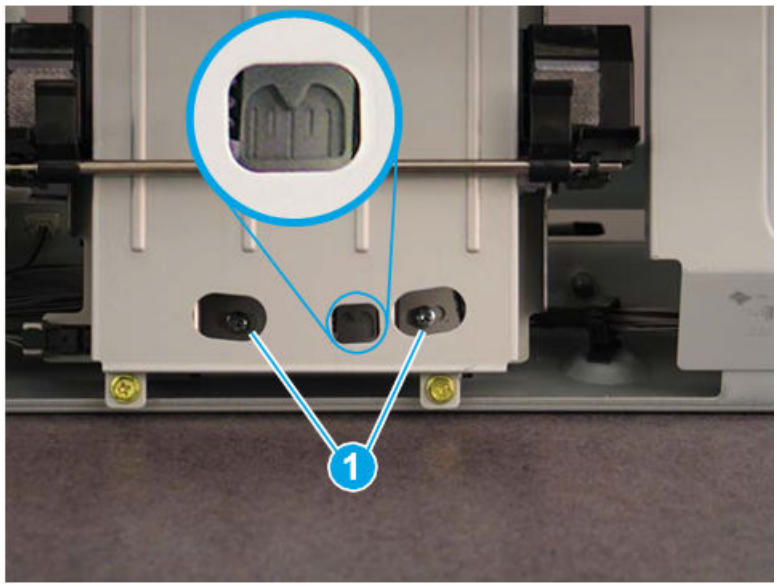
10. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse theremoval steps to finishinstalling theassembly.

Special installation instructions: Fold stopper unit

Loosen the two alignment screws (callout 1) and move the fold unit side to side to until the alignment gauge is positioned on the center line. Tighten the screws and run a folded job through the finisher and verify that the fold is correct. If the fold is not correct, loosen the screws, adjust the alignment, and run another fold job. Continue this process until the fold is correct.

Figure 5-1510 Adjust the alignment gauge



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: End fence motor (M3)

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet end fence motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet end fence motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-149 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01155A	Booklet end fence motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

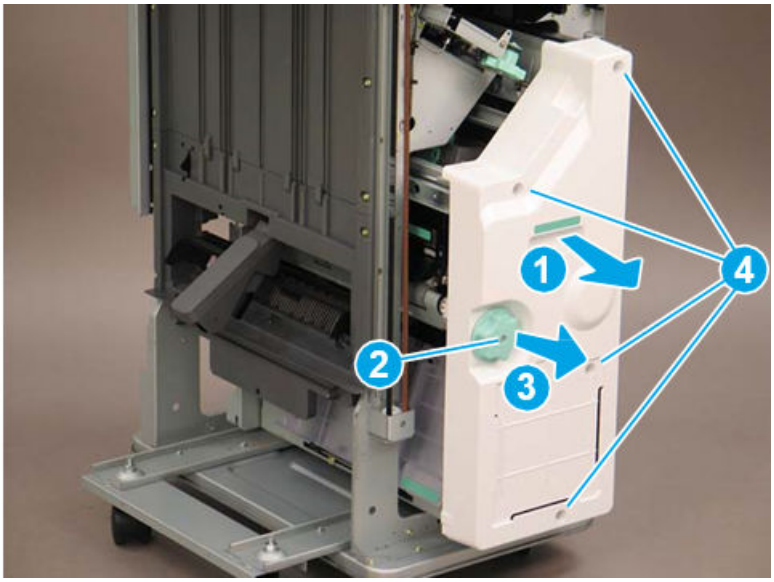
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

- ▲ Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1511 Remove five screws and the cover

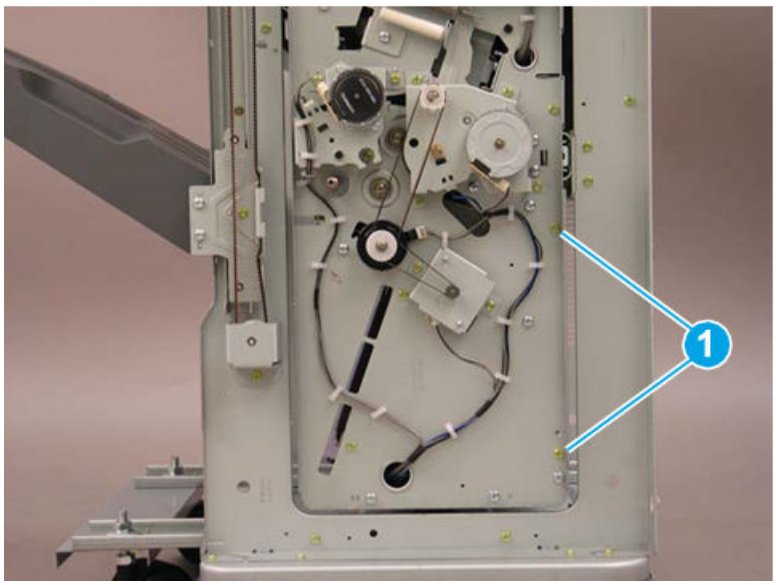


Remove the booklet right lower shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet right lower shield.

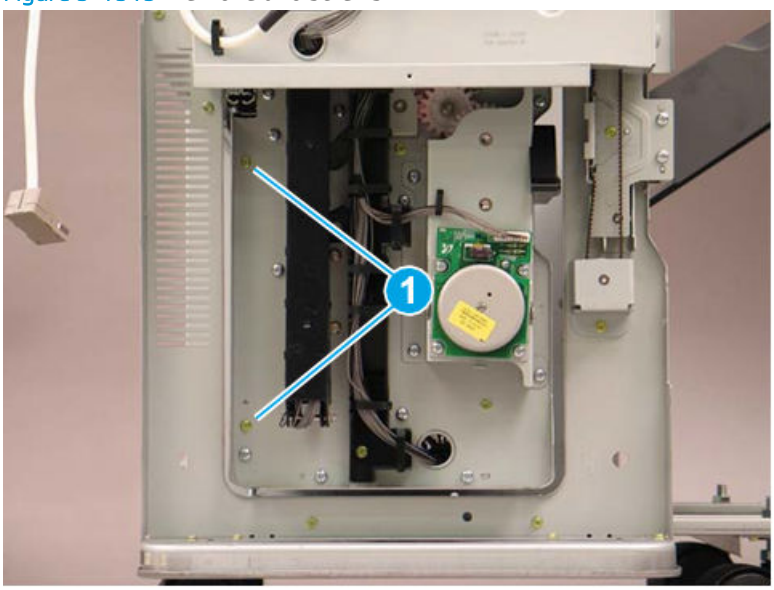
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1512 Remove two screws



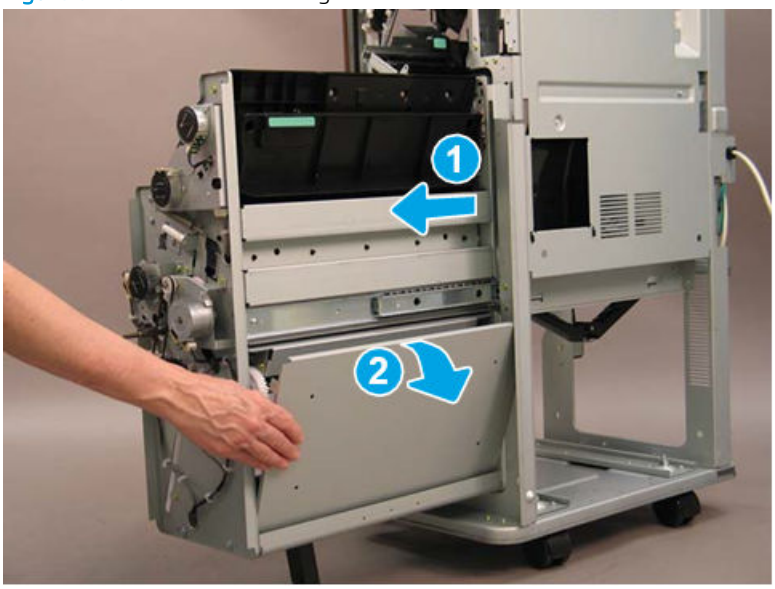
2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1513 Remove two screws



3. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the right lower shield (callout 2) away from the booklet maker to remove it.

Figure 5-1514 Remove the right lower shield



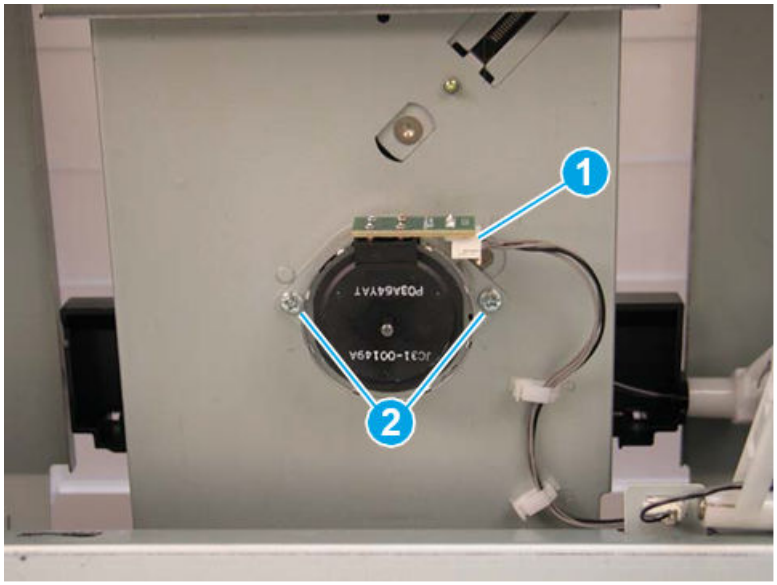
Remove the booklet end fence motor (M20)

Follow these steps to remove the booklet end fence motor (M20).

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet end fence motor.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1515 Remove the booklet end fence motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet end fence home sensor (S42)

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet end fence home sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet end fence home sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-150 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Booklet end fence home sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

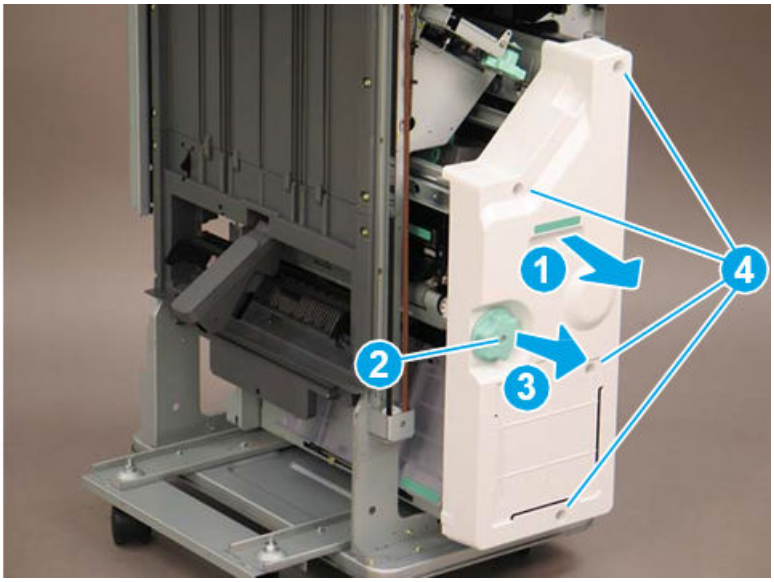
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

- ▲ Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1516 Remove five screws and the cover

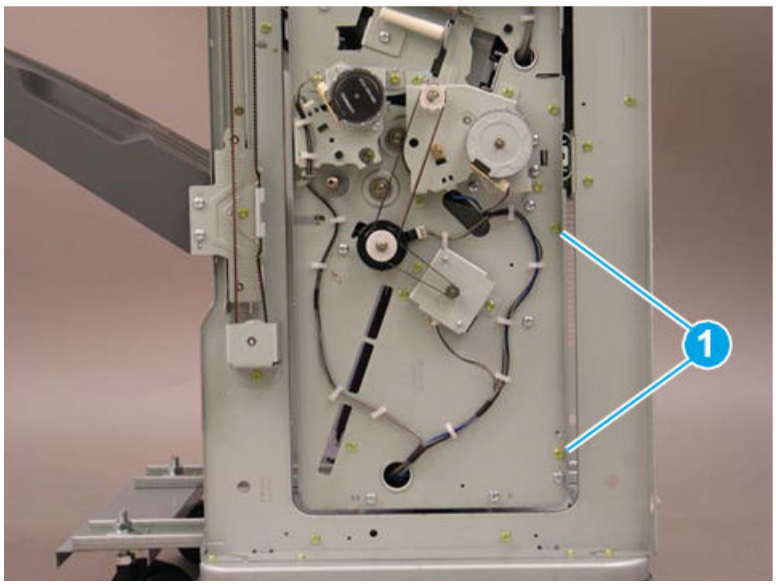


Remove the booklet right lower shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet right lower shield.

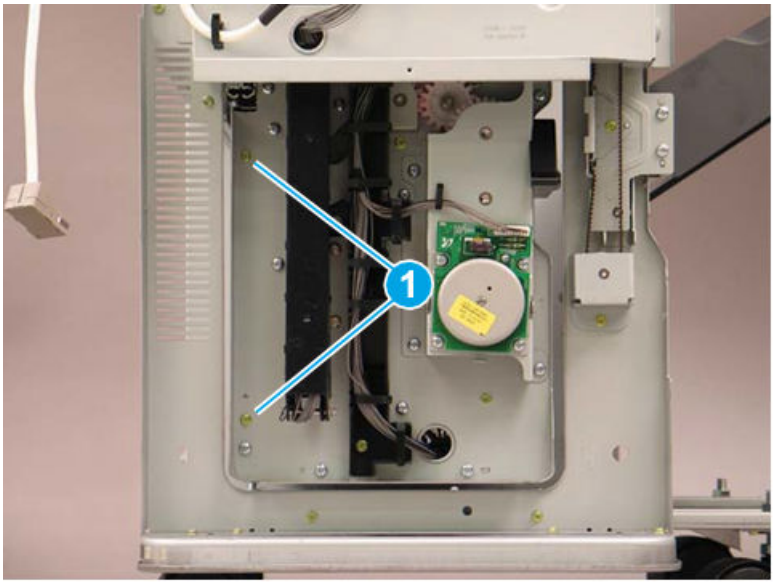
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1517 Remove two screws



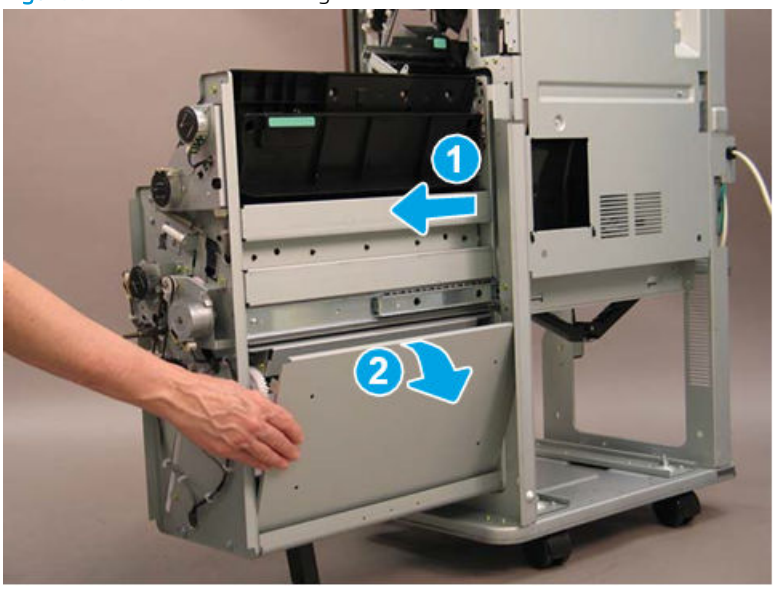
2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1518 Remove two screws



3. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the right lower shield (callout 2) away from the booklet maker to remove it.

Figure 5-1519 Remove the right lower shield

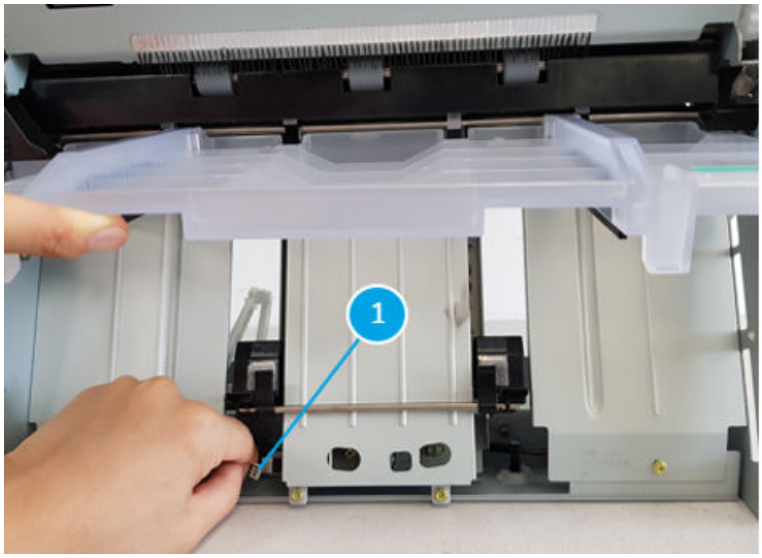


Remove the Booklet end fence home sensor (S42)

Follow these steps to remove the Booklet end fence home sensor (S42).

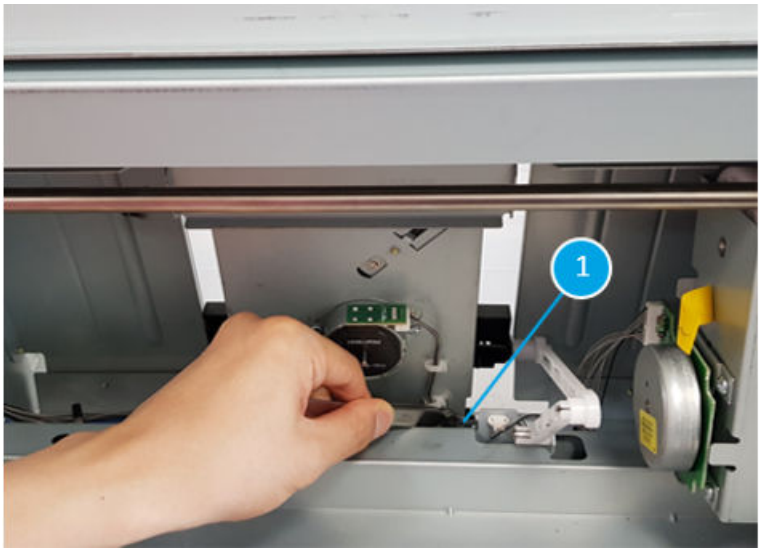
1. Unplug one connector(callout 1) at the left of the booklet make

Figure 5-1520 Unplug one connector



2. Remove the Booklet end fence home sensor (S42, callout 1) at the right of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1521 Remove the Booklet end fence home sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet presser unit

Removal and replacement: Booklet presser

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet presser.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet presser on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-151 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC61-07237A	Booklet presser

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

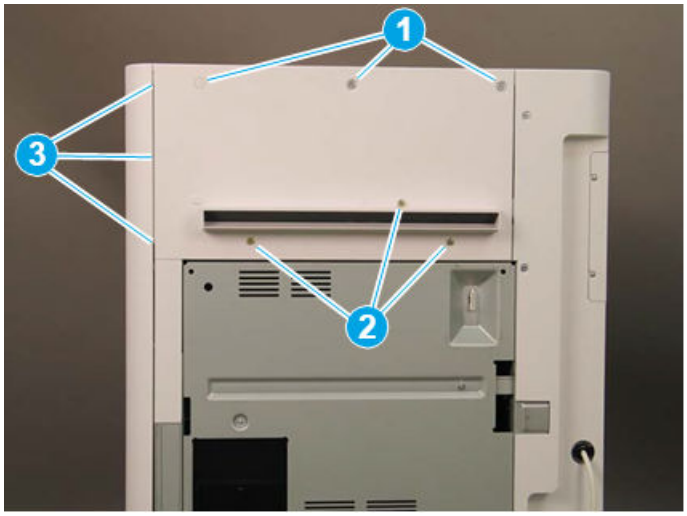
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1522 Remove the right upper cover

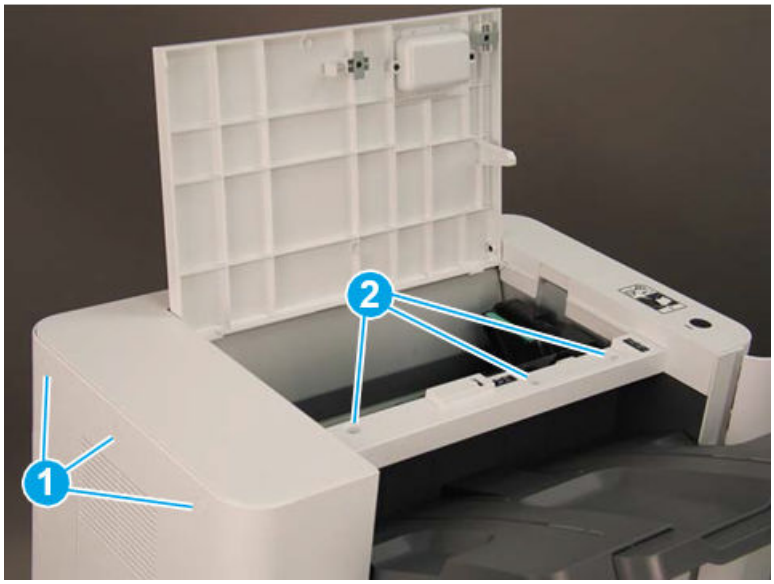


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

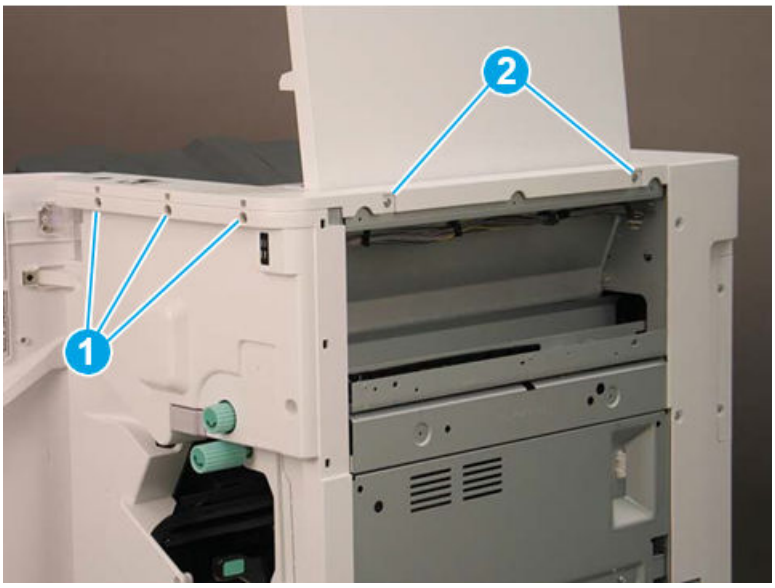
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1523 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

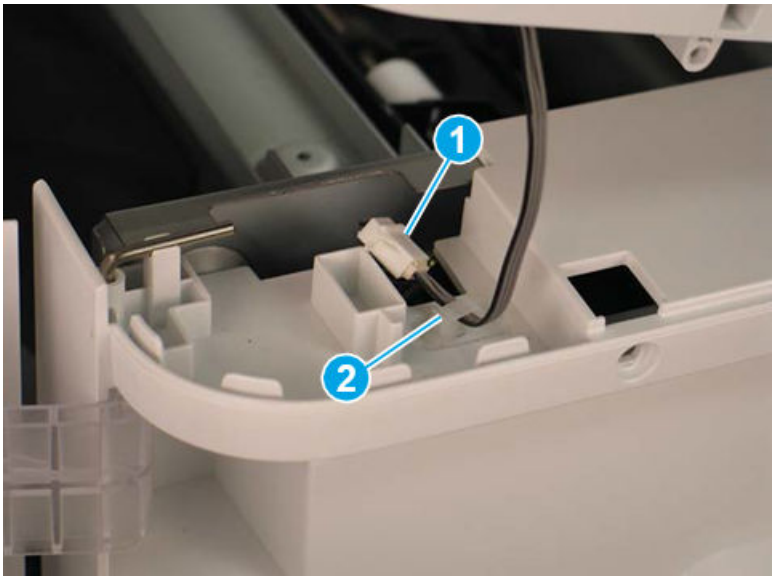
Figure 5-1524 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1525 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

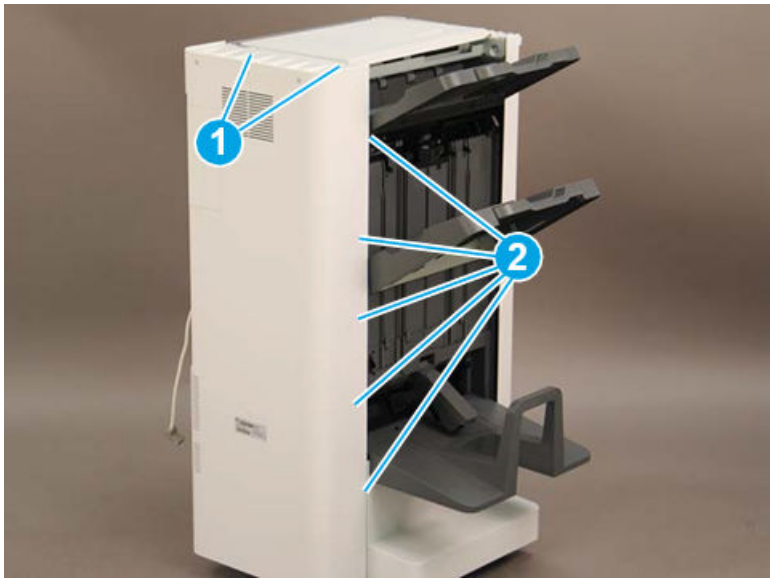


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1526 Remove seven screws

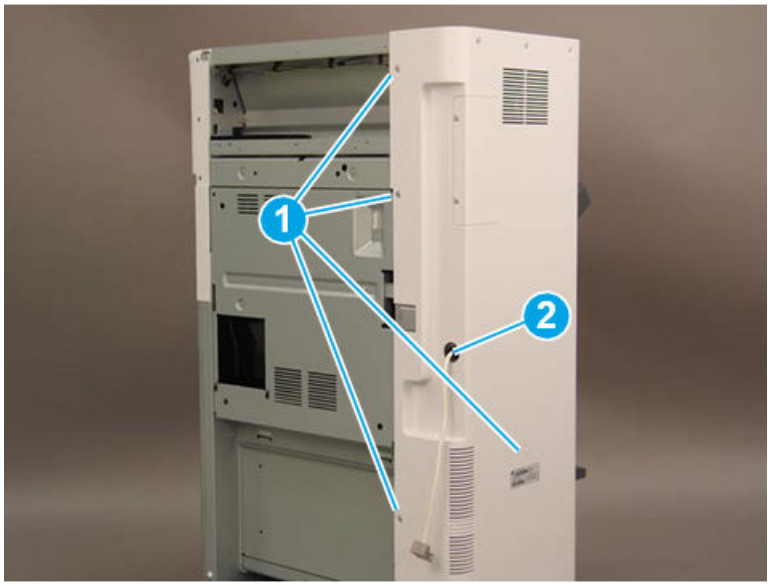


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1527 Remove the rear cover



Remove the booklet maker

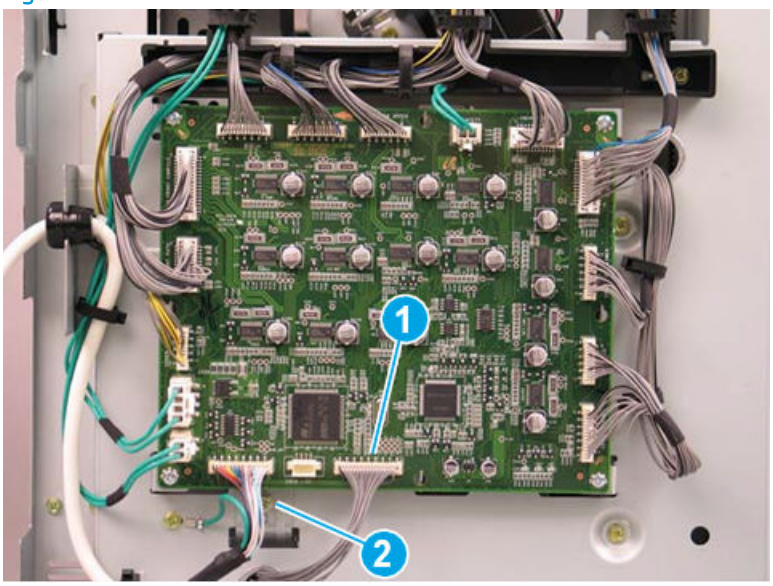
Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker.

1. Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1528 Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher

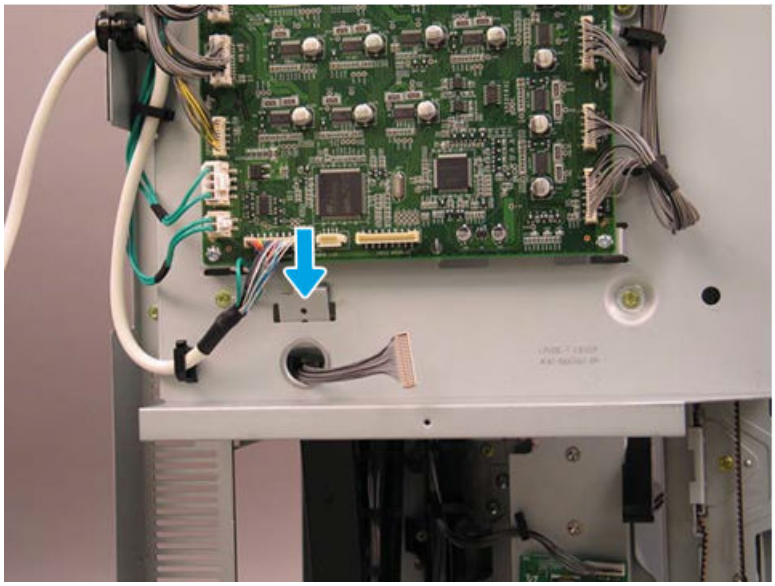
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 5-1529 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



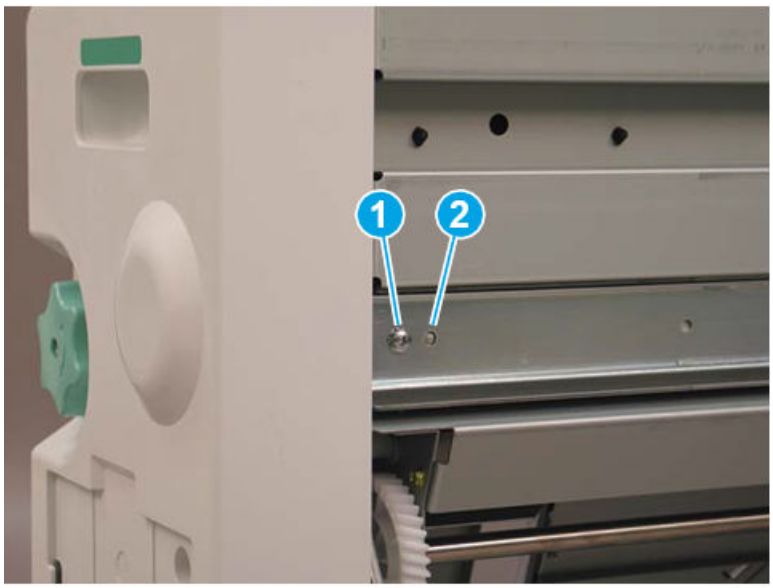
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 5-1530 Release the metal bracket



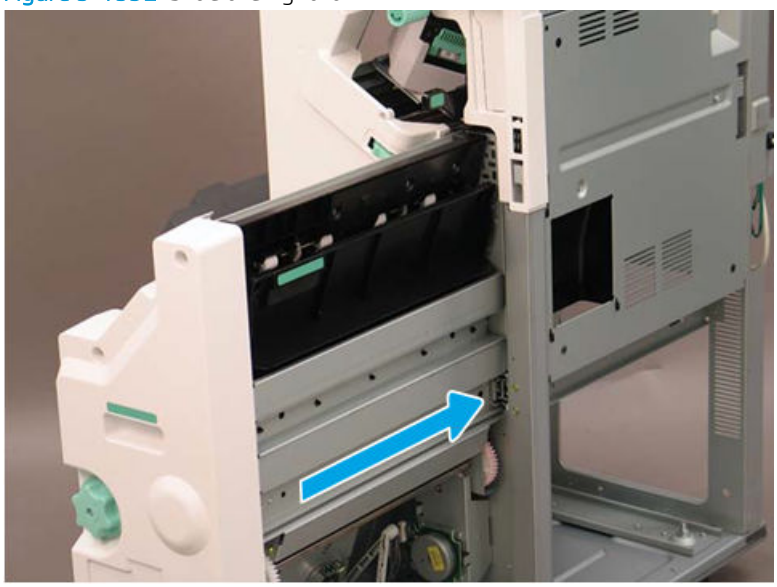
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1531 Remove one screw



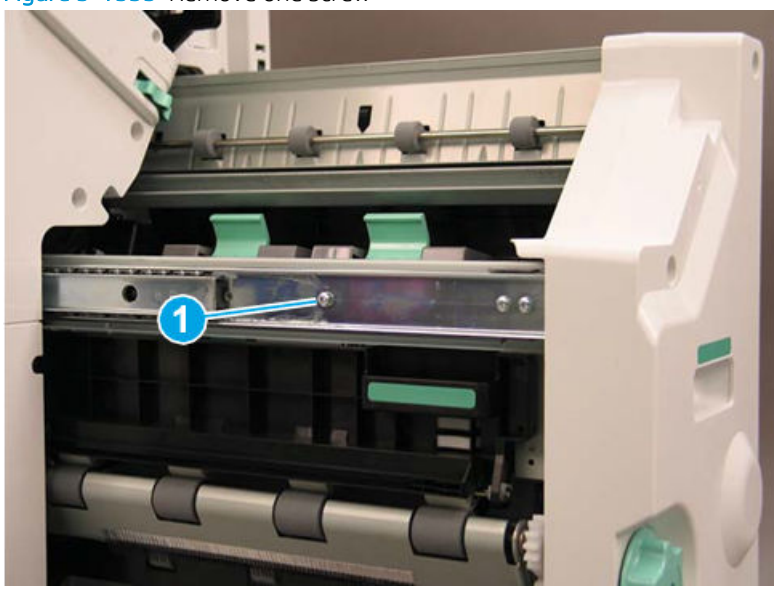
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 5-1532 Slide the right rail



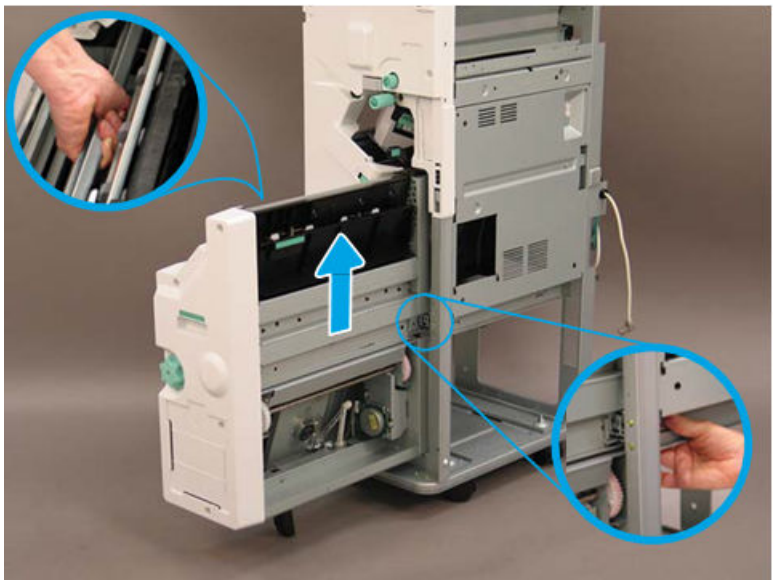
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1533 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1534 Remove the booklet maker



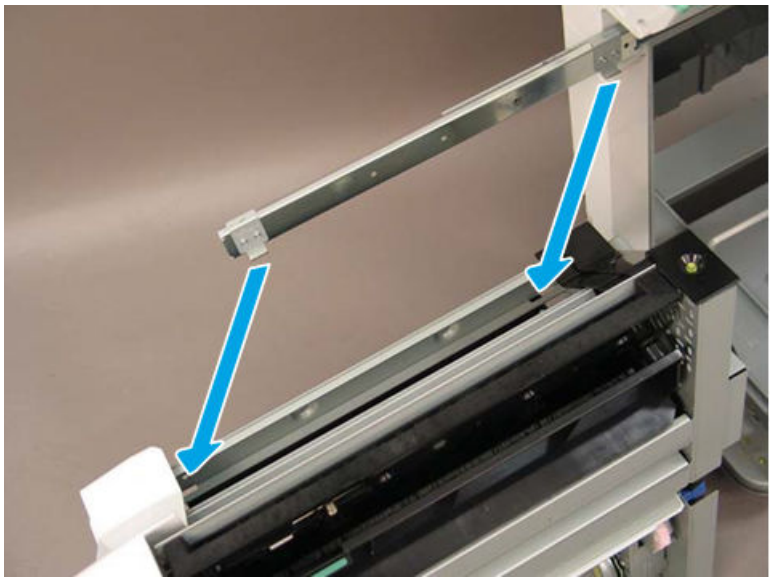
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: booklet maker

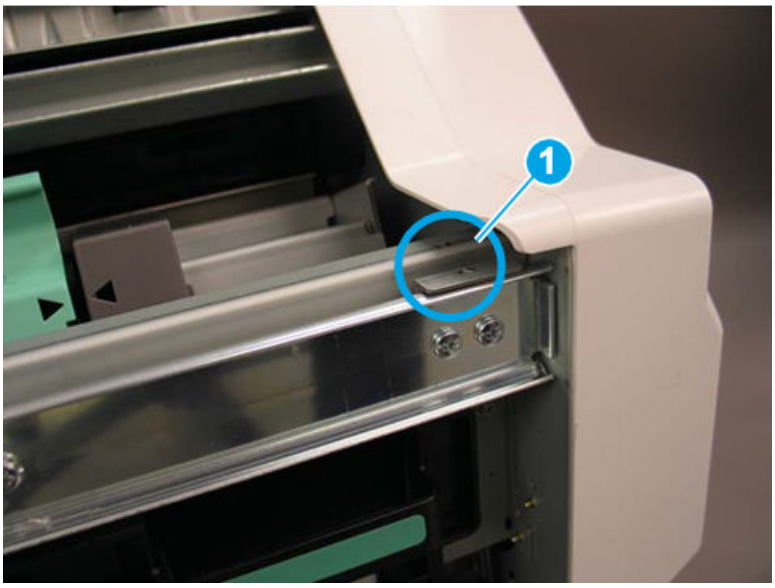
When installing the booklet maker, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1535 Position the hooks



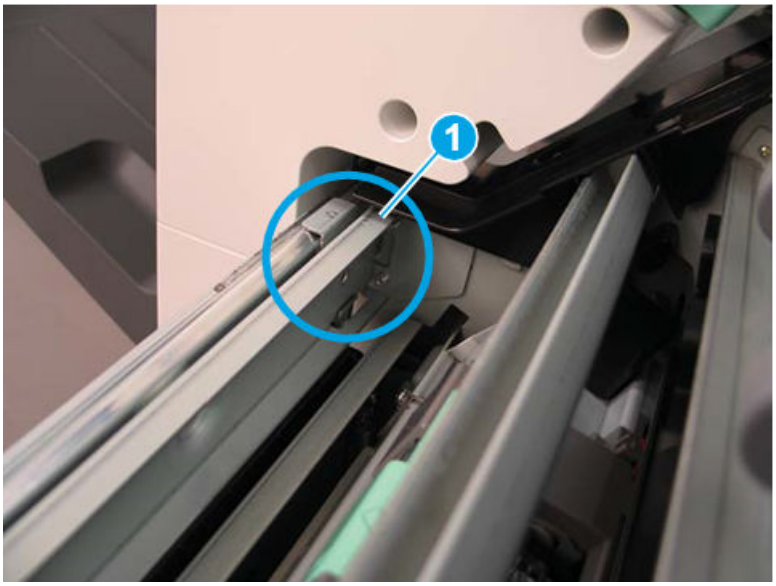
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1536 Align arrows



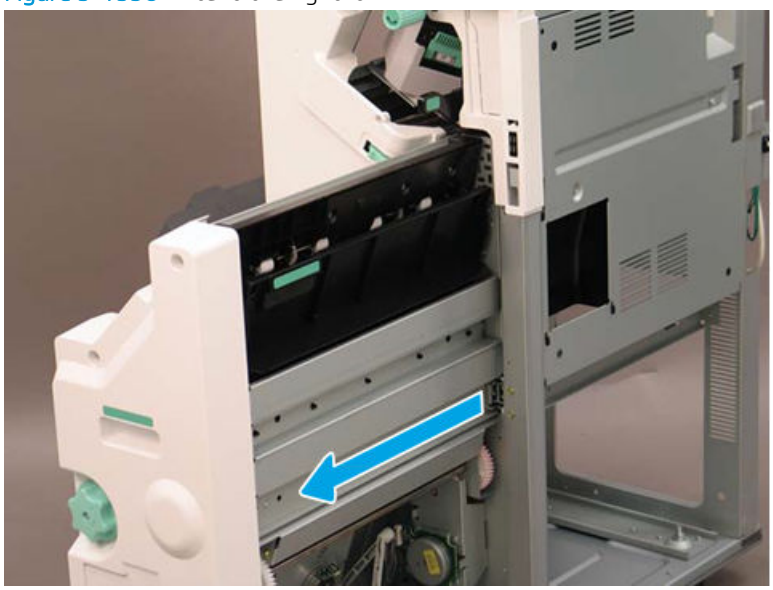
10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1537 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.

Figure 5-1538 Extend the right rail

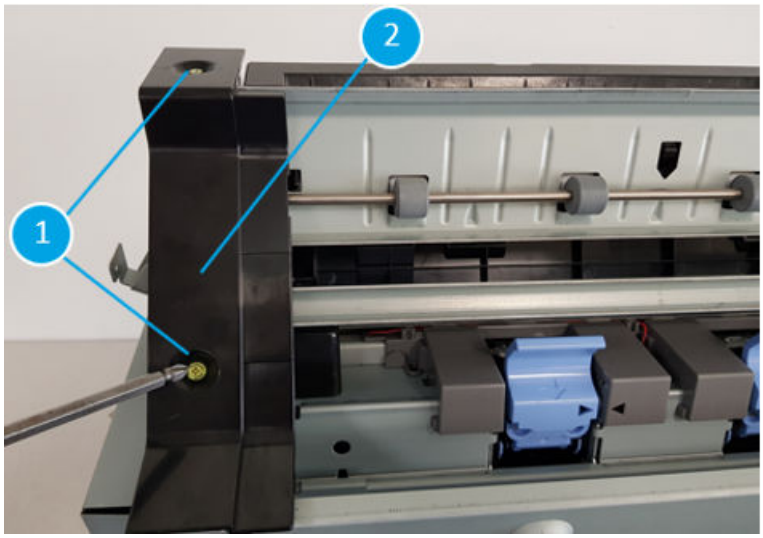


Remove the booklet entrance unit

Follow these steps to remove the booklet entrance unit.

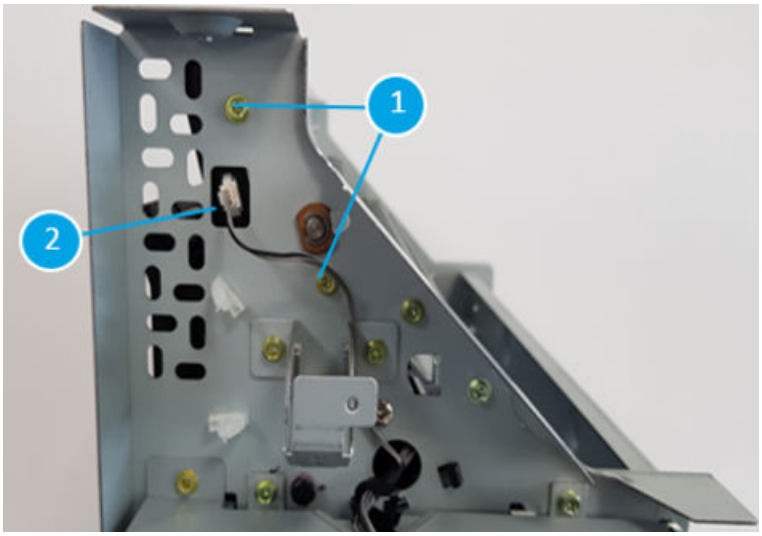
1. Remove two screws(callout 1) then remove the black cover (callout 2)

Figure 5-1539 Remove two screws then remove the black cover



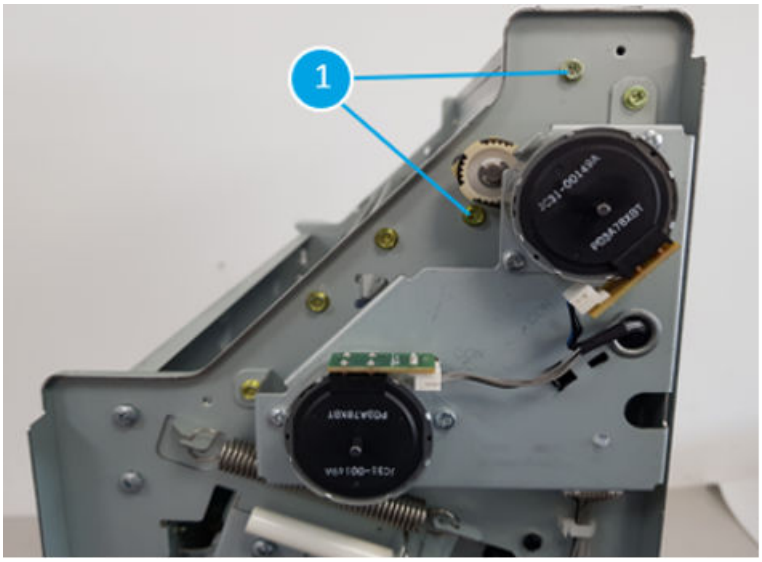
2. Remove two screws(callout 1) and disconnect one connector(callout 2)

Figure 5-1540 Remove two screws and disconnect one connector



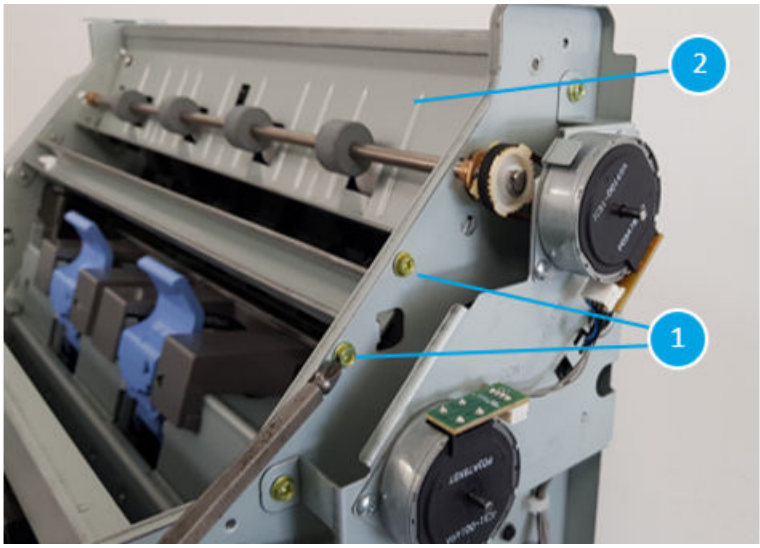
3. Remove two screws(callout 1)

Figure 5-1541 Remove two screws



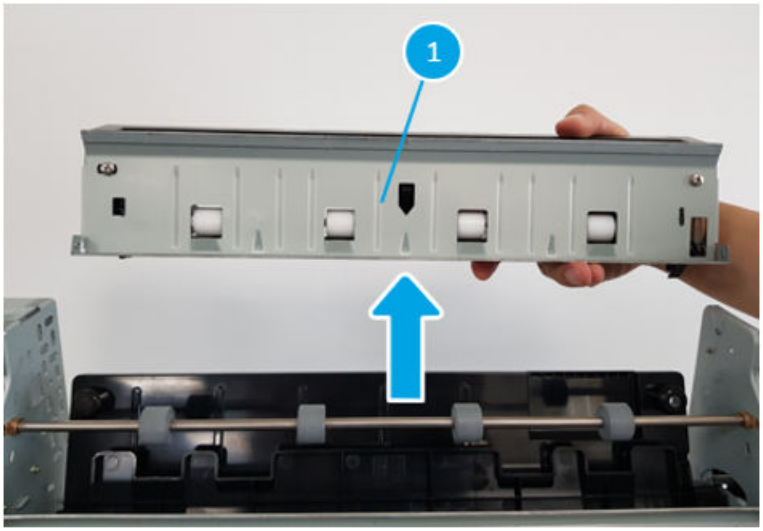
4. Remove two screws(callout 1) to make it easy to pull off the booklet entrance unit (callout2)

Figure 5-1542 Remove two screws to make it easy to pull off the booklet entrance unit



5. Remove the booklet entrance unit (callout 1)

Figure 5-1543 Remove the booklet entrance unit

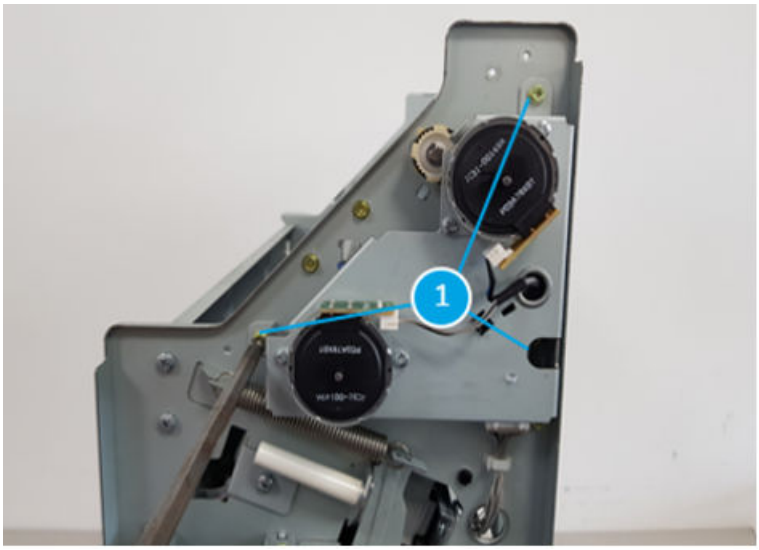


Remove the booklet presser

Follow these steps to remove the booklet presser.

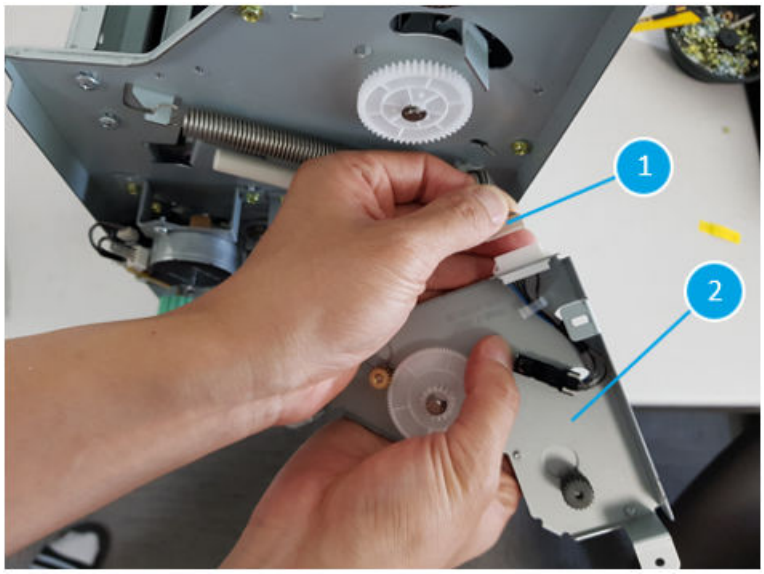
1. Remove three screws (callout 1)

Figure 5-1544 Remove three screws



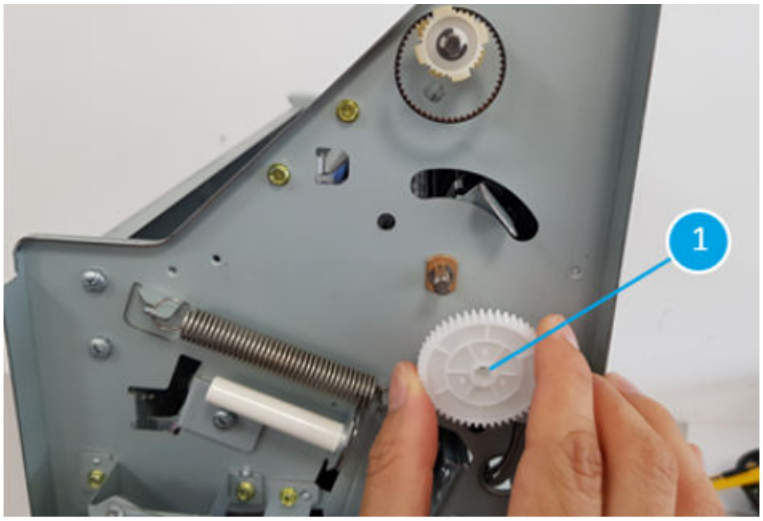
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1) and remove the motor unit (callout 2)

Figure 5-1545 Disconnect one connector and remove the motor unit



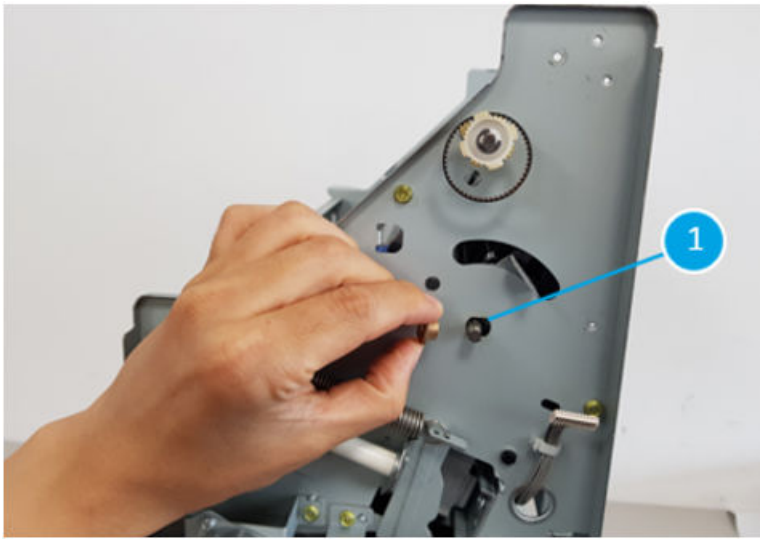
3. Remove one e-clip on top of the white gear then remove the white gear (callout 1)

Figure 5-1546 Remove one e-clip on top of the white gear then remove the white gear



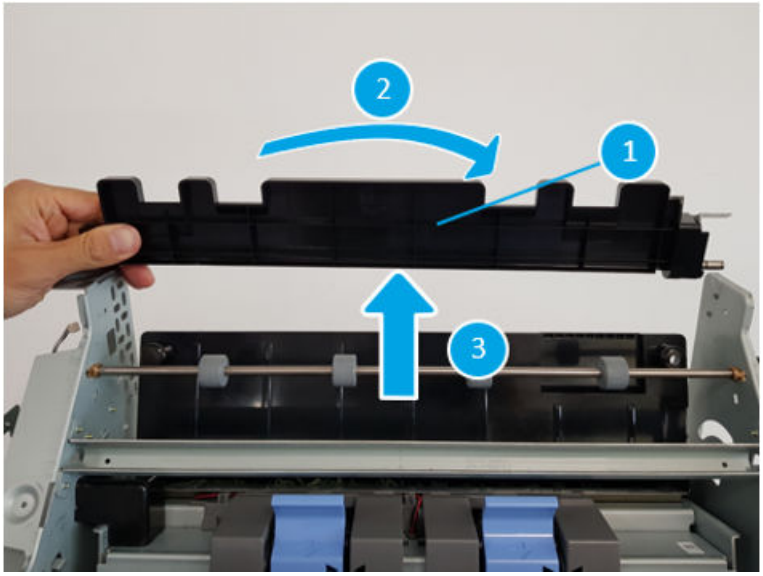
4. Remove one e-clip on top of the bush then remove the bush (callout 1)

Figure 5-1547 Remove one e-clip on top of the bush then remove the bush



5. Band (callout2) the booklet presser (callout 1) out to make it easy to pull out (callout 3)

Figure 5-1548 Band the booklet presser out to make it easy to pull out



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet presser home sensor (S37)

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet presser home sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet presser home sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-152 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Booklet presser home sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

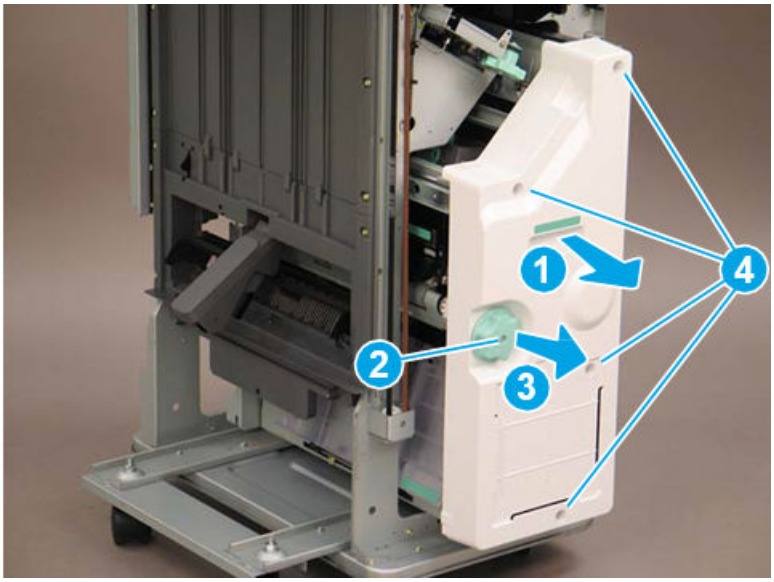
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

- ▲ Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1549 Remove five screws and the cover

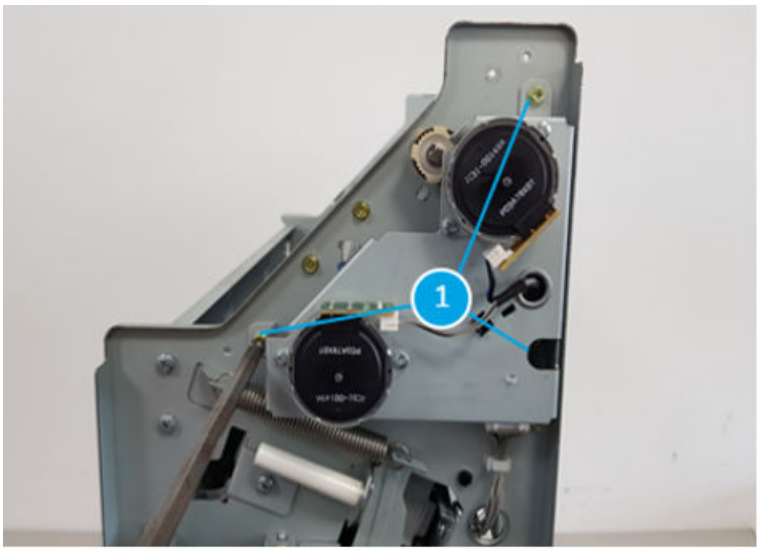


Remove the booklet presser home sensor (S37)

Follow these steps to remove the booklet presser home sensor (S37) .

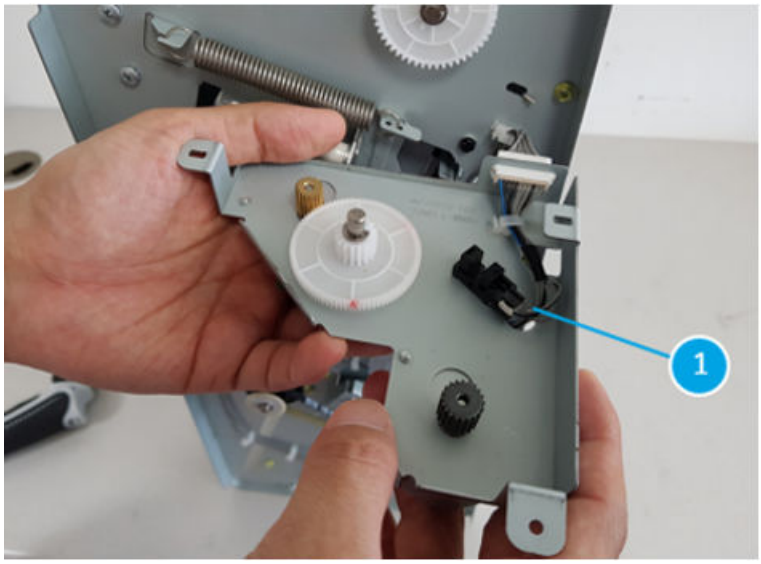
1. Remove three screws (callout 1)

Figure 5-1550 Remove three screws



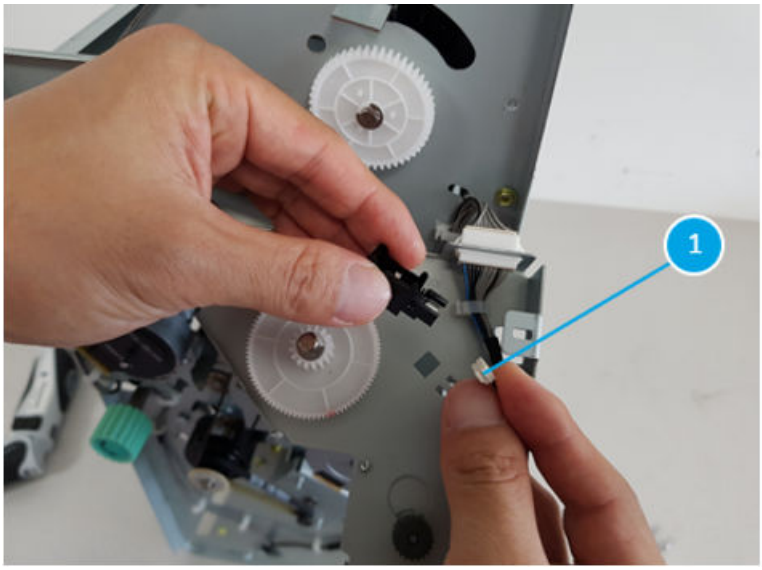
2. Use a tweezer to remove booklet presser home sensor (S37, callout 1)

Figure 5-1551 Remove booklet presser home sensor



3. Unplug one connector (callout 1)

Figure 5-1552 Unplug one connector



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet presser motor (M16)

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet presser motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet presser motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-153 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01155A	Booklet presser motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

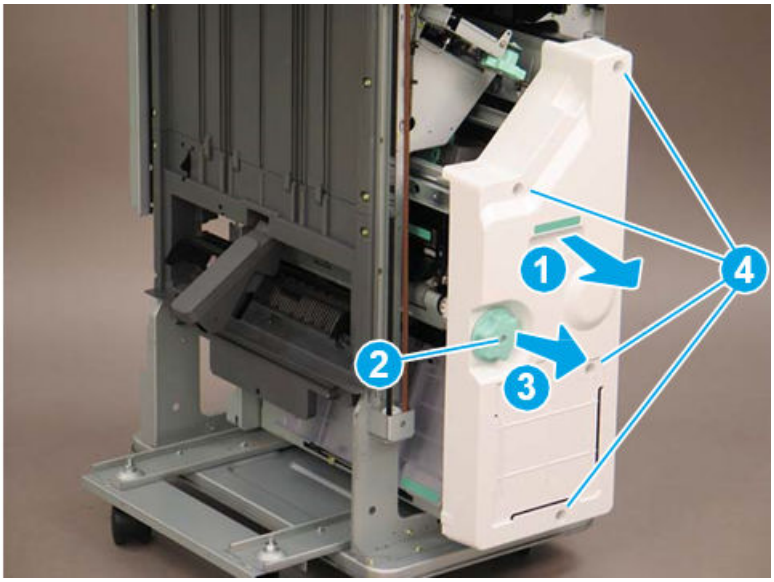
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

- Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1553 Remove five screws and the cover



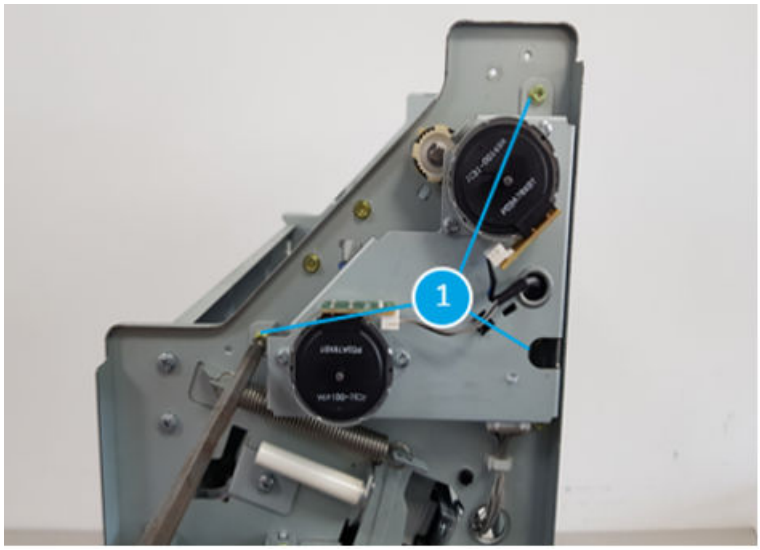
Remove the booklet presser motor (M16)

Follow these steps to remove the booklet presser motor (M16).

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet presser motor.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1554 Remove the booklet presser motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet tamper unit

Removal and replacement: Booklet tamper unit

Learn how to remove and replace the tray booklet tamper unit.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet tamper unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-154 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01431A	Booklet tamper unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

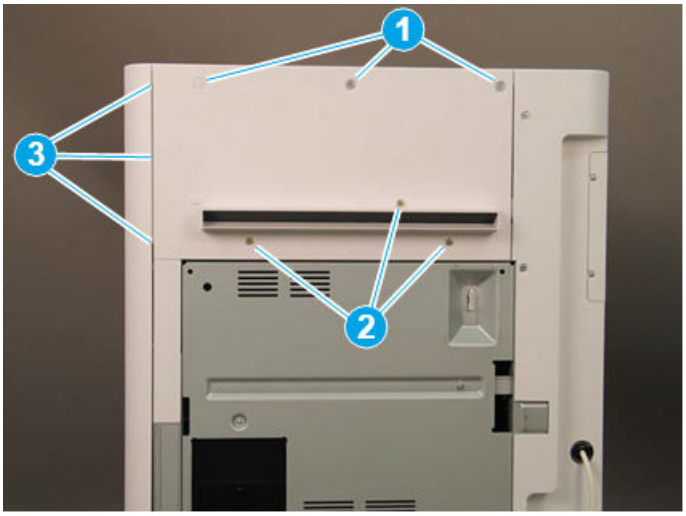
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1555 Remove the right upper cover

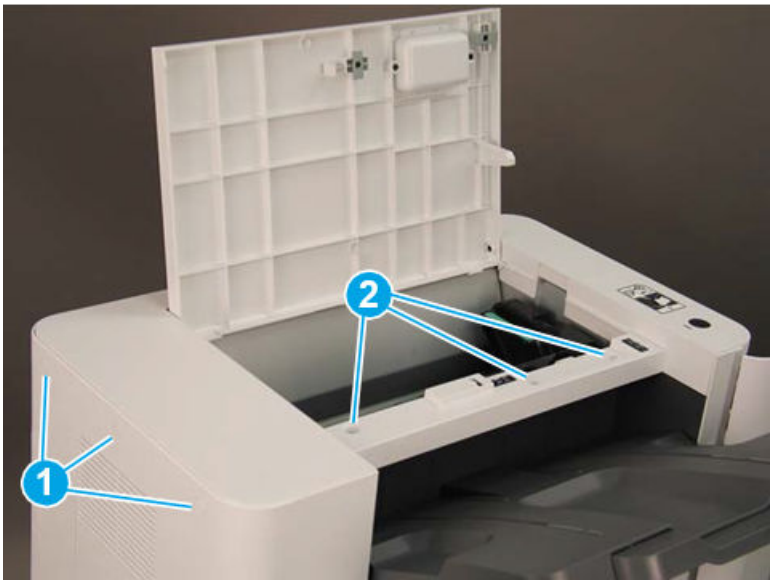


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

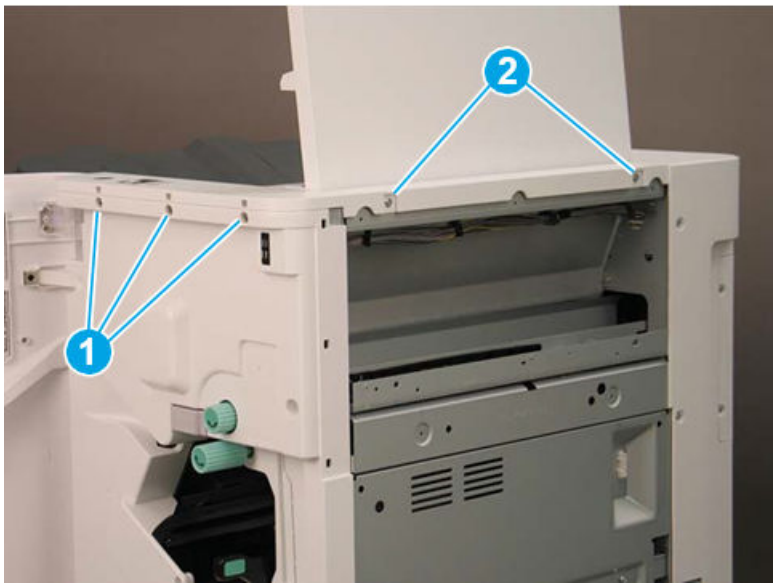
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1556 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

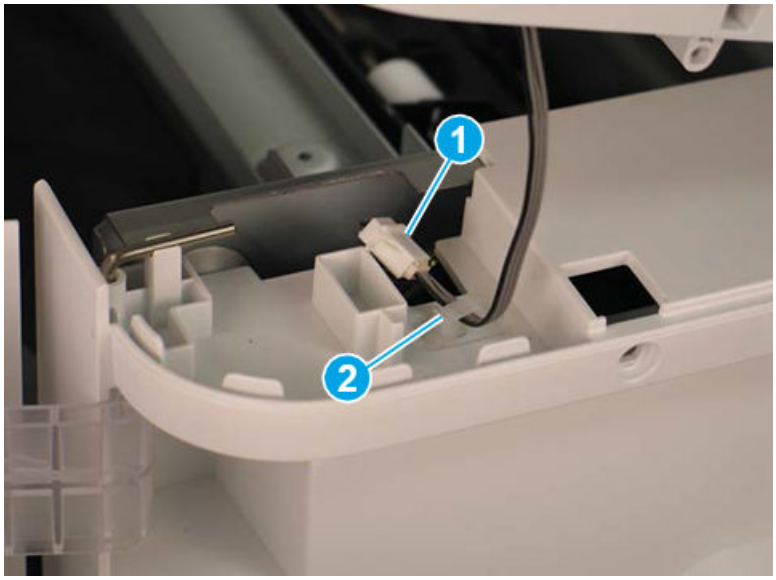
Figure 5-1557 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1558 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

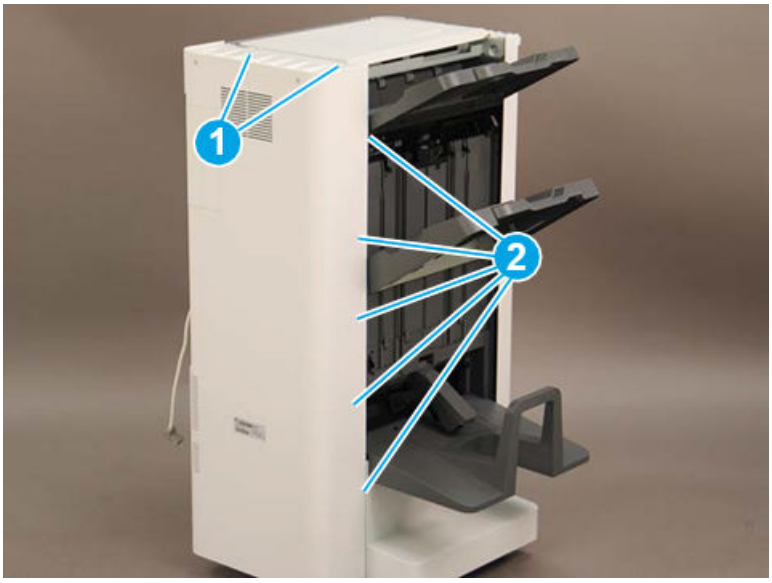


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1559 Remove seven screws

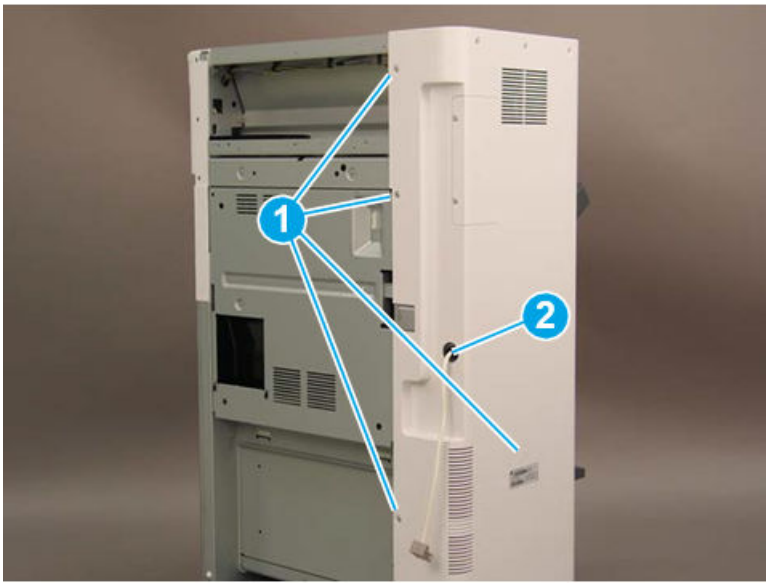


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1560 Remove the rear cover



Remove the booklet maker

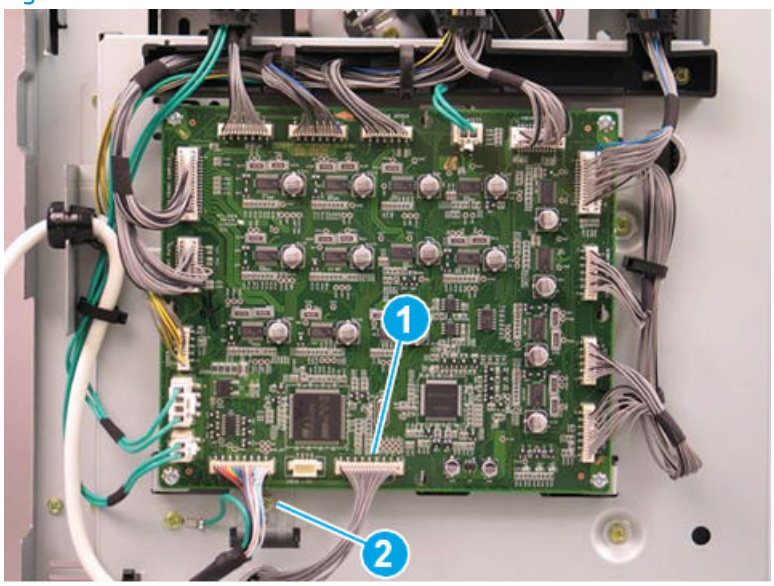
Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker.

1. Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1561 Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher

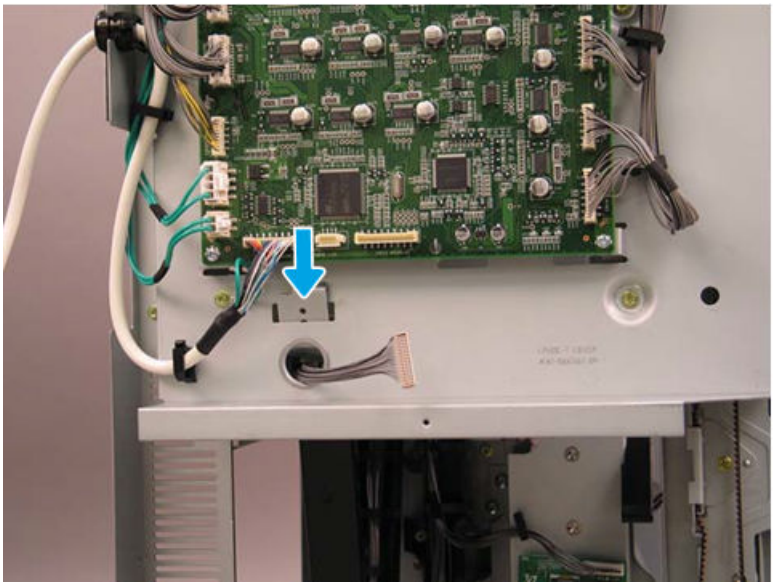
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 5-1562 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



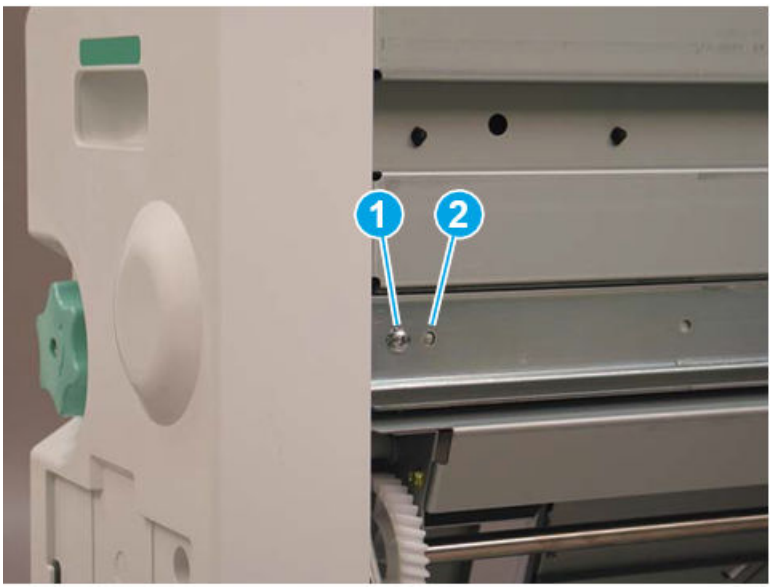
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 5-1563 Release the metal bracket



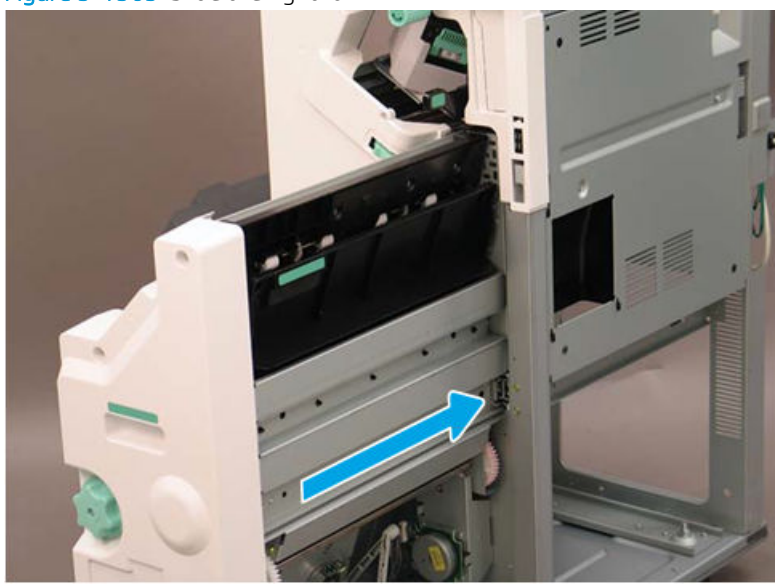
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1564 Remove one screw



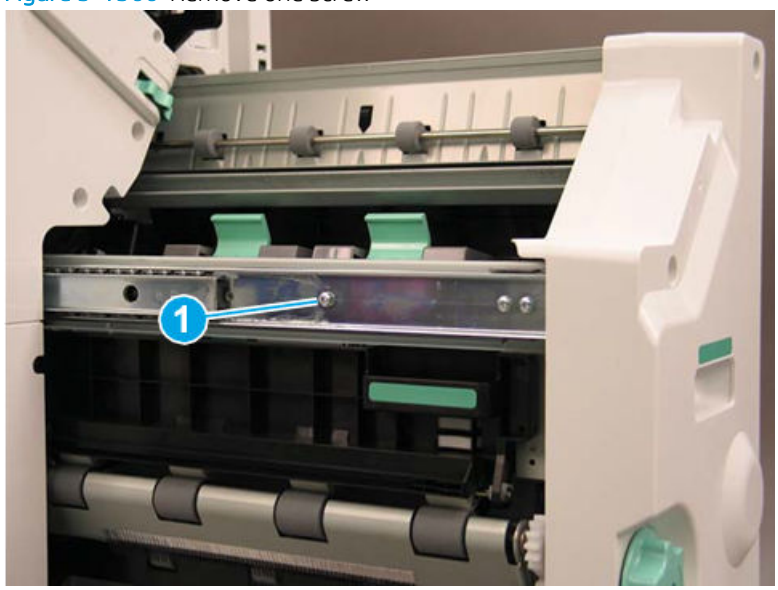
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 5-1565 Slide the right rail



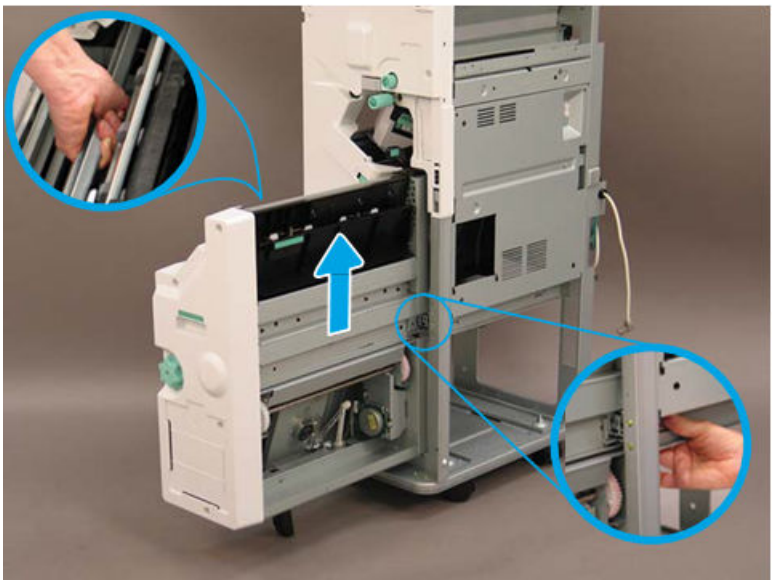
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1566 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1567 Remove the booklet maker



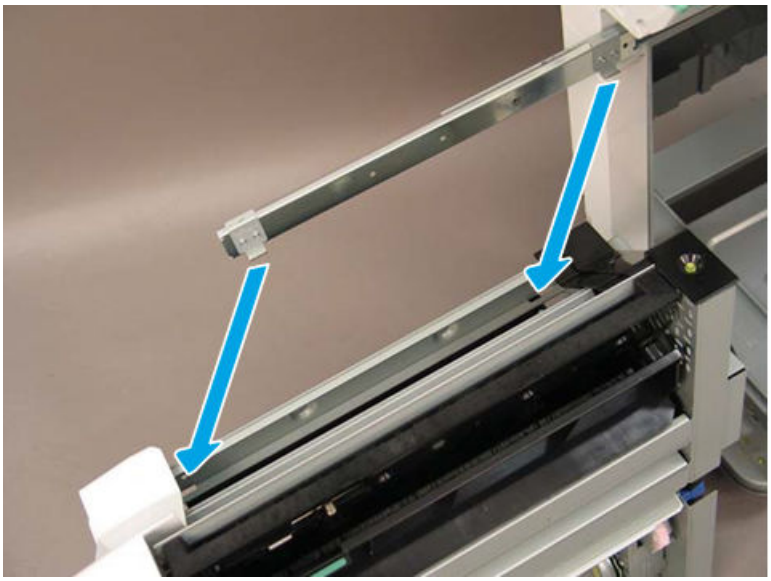
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: booklet maker

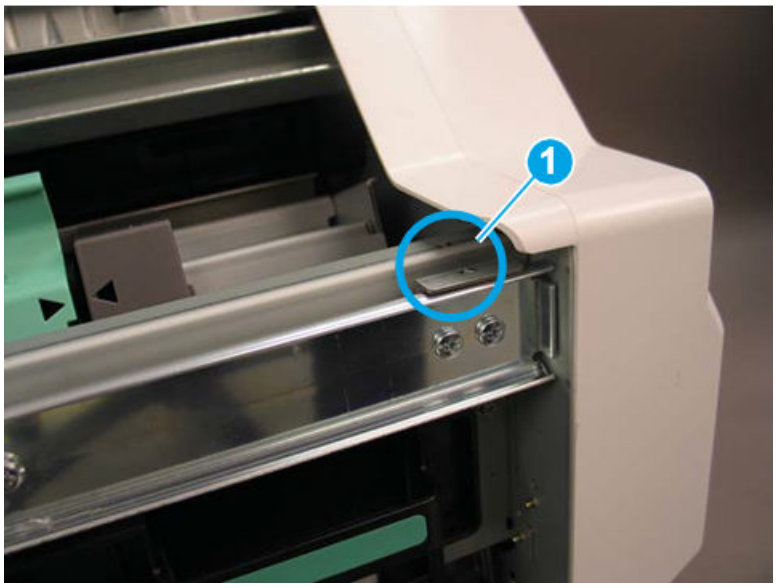
When installing the booklet maker, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1568 Position the hooks



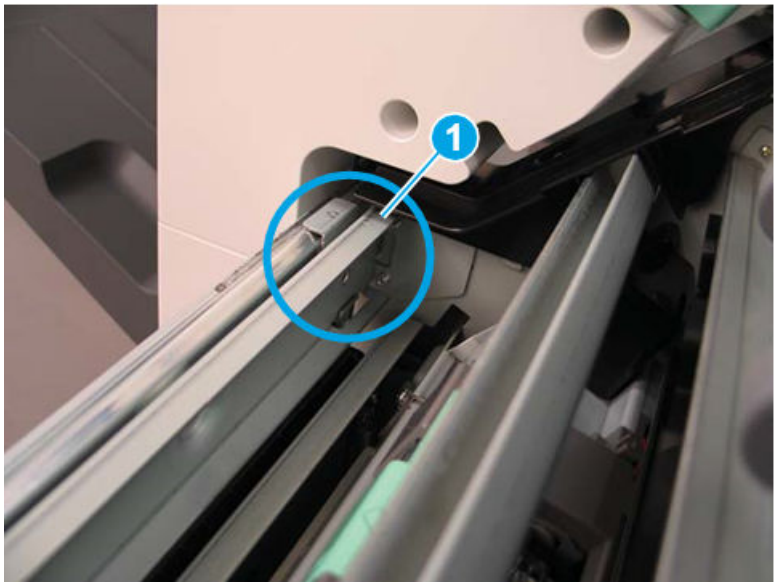
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1569 Align arrows



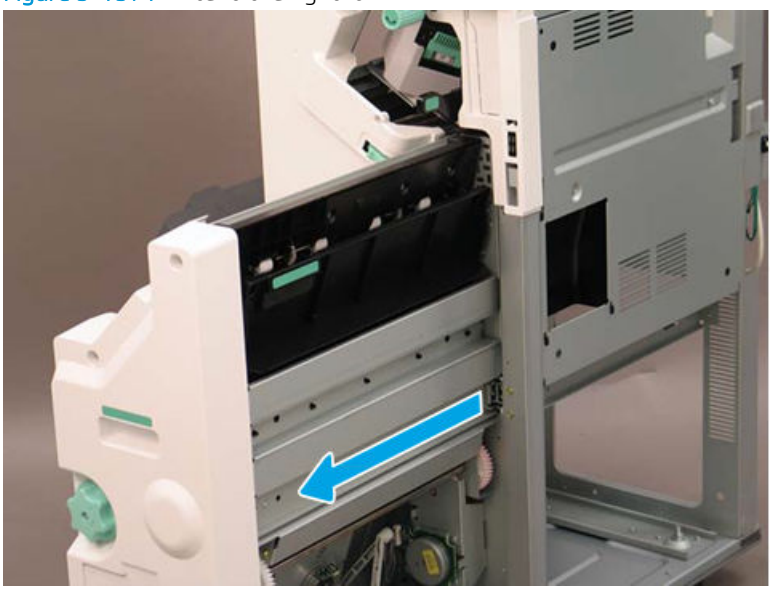
10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1570 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.

Figure 5-1571 Extend the right rail



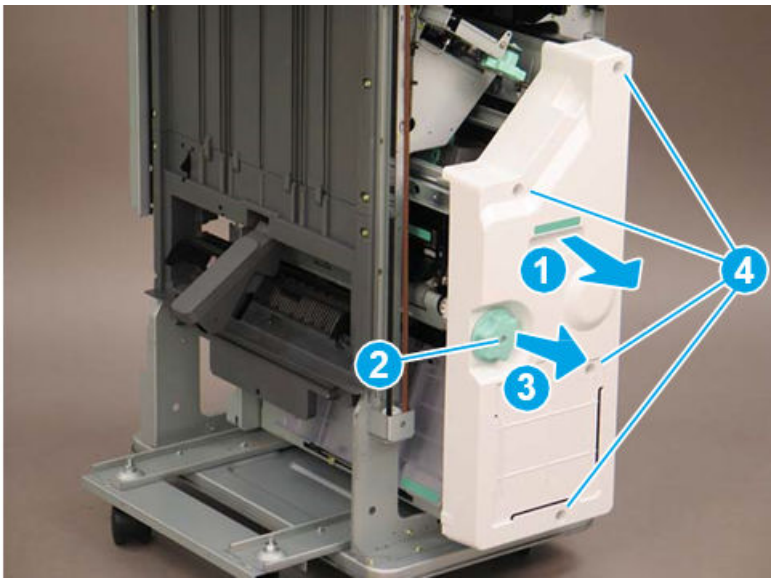
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

▲ Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1572 Remove five screws and the cover

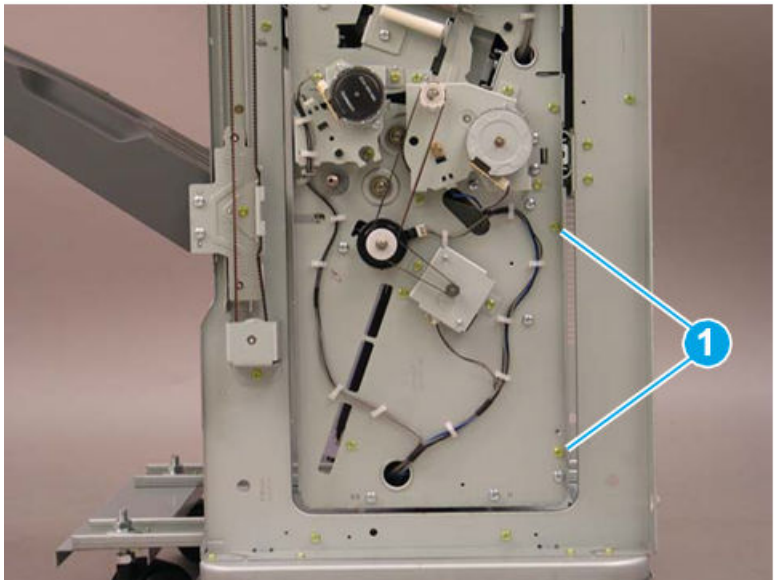


Remove the booklet right lower shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet right lower shield.

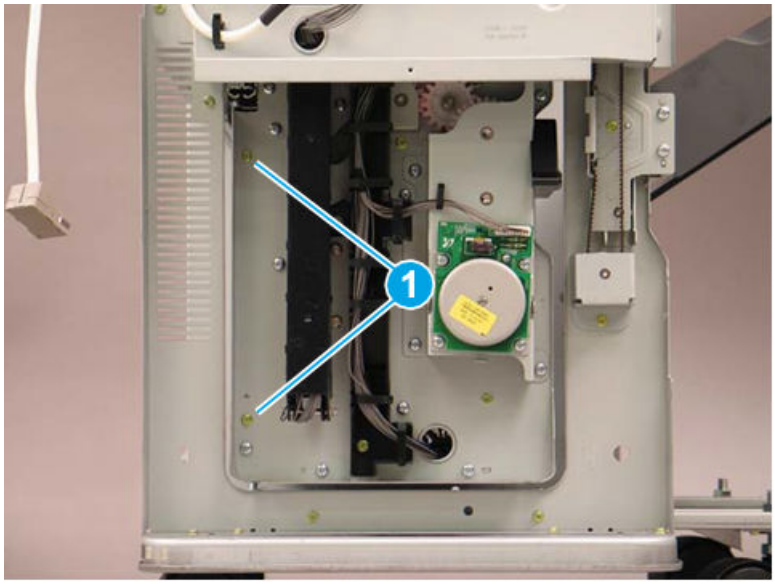
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1573 Remove two screws



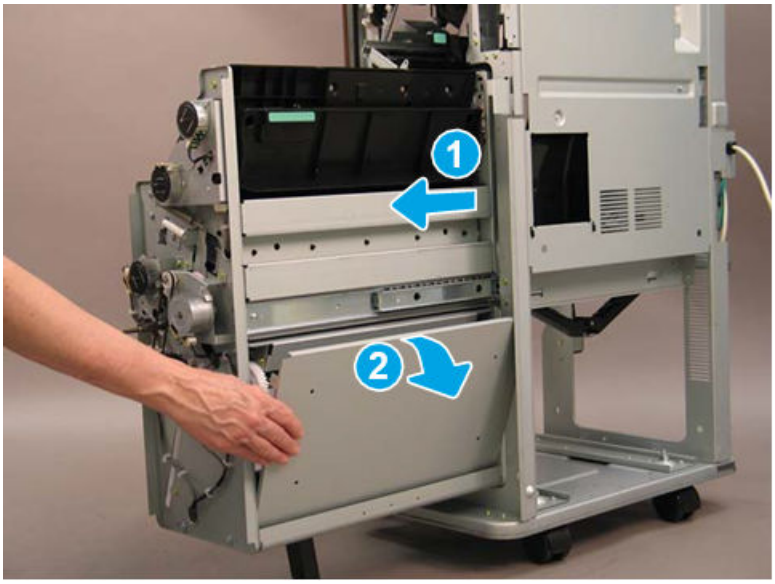
2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1574 Remove two screws



3. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the right lower shield (callout 2) away from the booklet maker to remove it.

Figure 5-1575 Remove the right lower shield

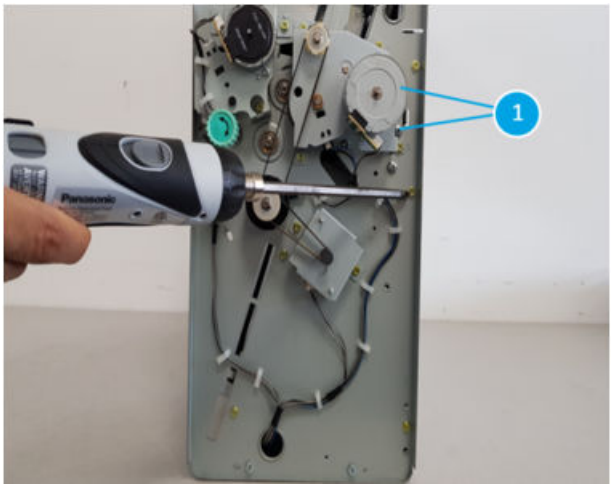


Remove the booklet maker middle right shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker middle right shield.

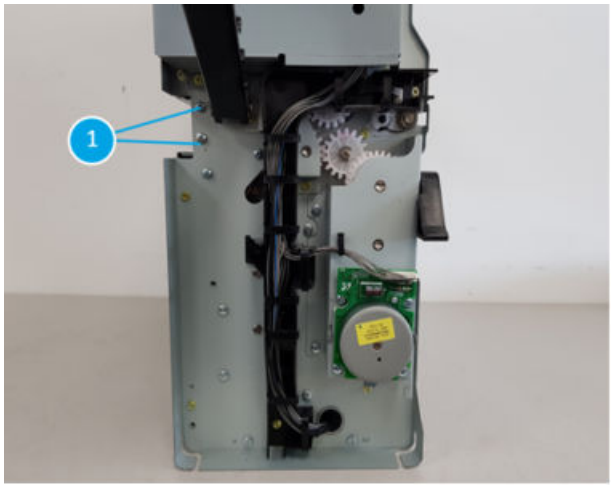
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1576 Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker



2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1577 Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker

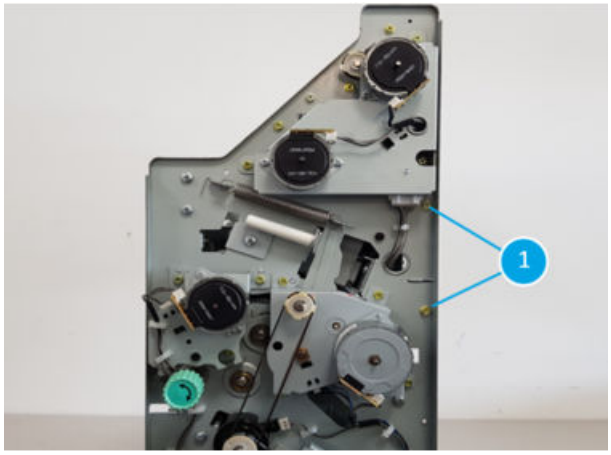


Remove the booklet finisher upper right shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet finisher upper right shield.

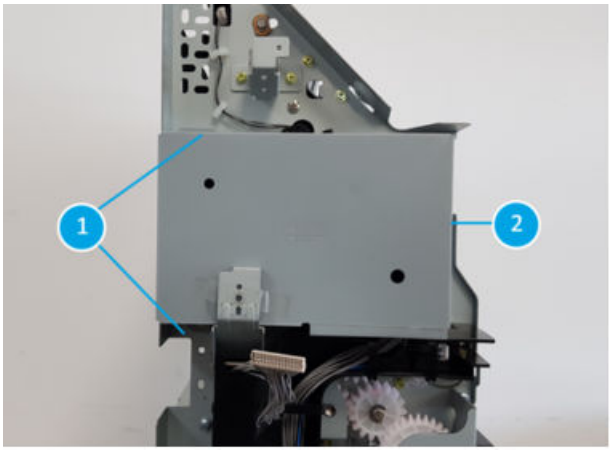
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1)

Figure 5-1578 Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker



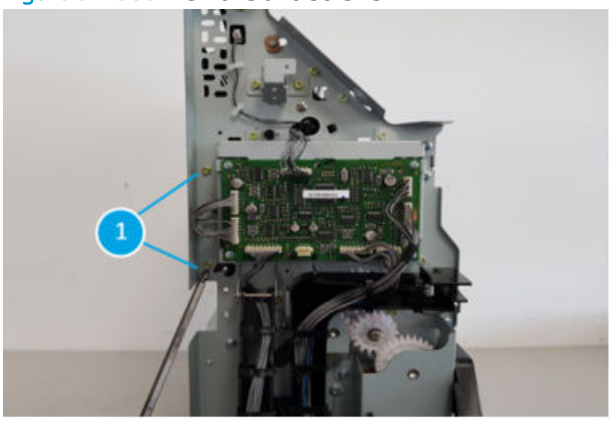
2. Remove two screws(callout 1) and one screw(callout 2) at the back of the booklet maker and then remove the board cover.

Figure 5-1579 Remove the board cover



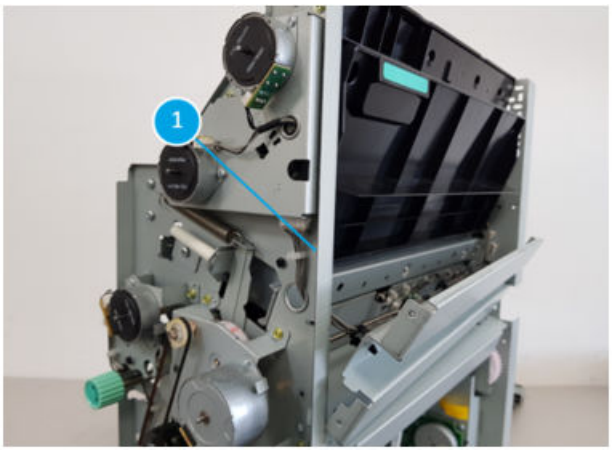
3. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1580 Remove two screws



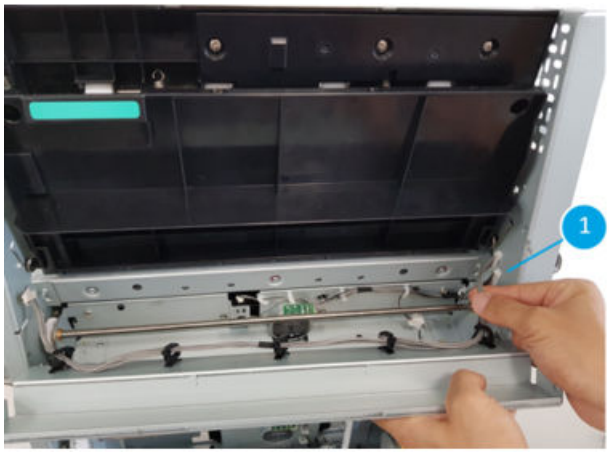
4. Disconnect one connector at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1581 Disconnect one connector



5. Disconnect one connector at the right of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1582 Disconnect one connector

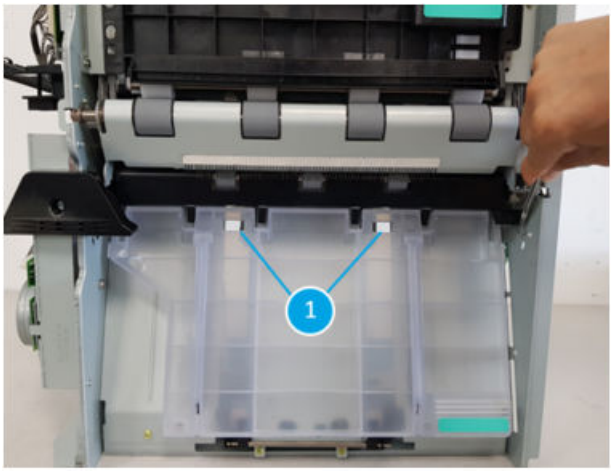


Remove the booklet tamper and fold unit

Follow these steps to remove the booklet tamper and fold unit.

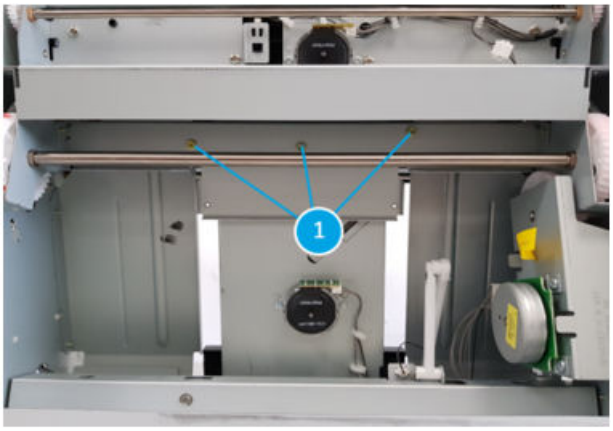
1. Remove two screws at the left of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1583 Remove two screws at the left of the booklet maker



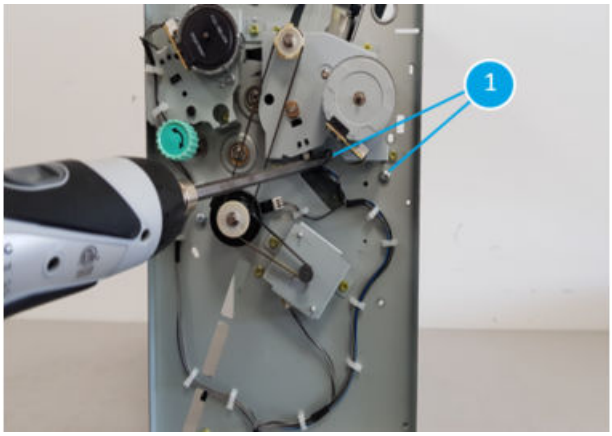
2. Remove three screws at the right of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1584 Remove three screws at the right of the booklet maker



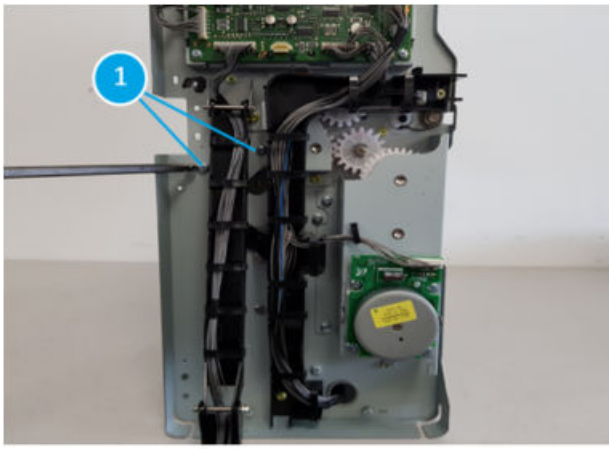
3. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1585 Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker



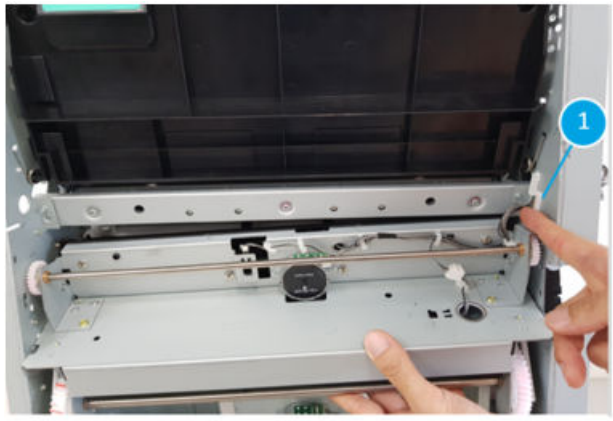
4. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1586 Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker



5. Disconnect one connector at the right of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1587 Disconnect one connector

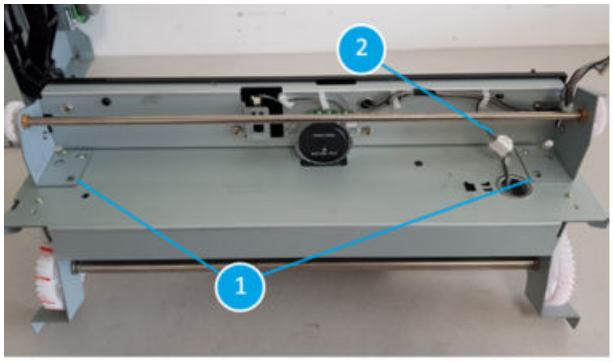


Remove the booklet tamper unit

Follow these steps to remove the booklet tamper unit.

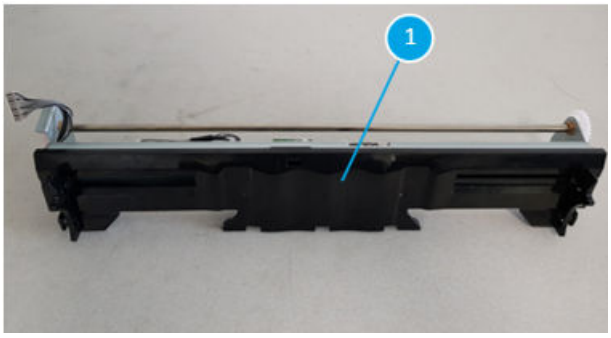
1. Remove two screws and disconnect one connector (callout 2)

Figure 5-1588 Remove two screws



2. Booklet tamper unit (callout 1)

Figure 5-1589 Booklet tamper unit



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet presser home sensor (S37)

Learn how to remove and replace the tray booklet tamper home sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet tamper home sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-155 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Booklet tamper home sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

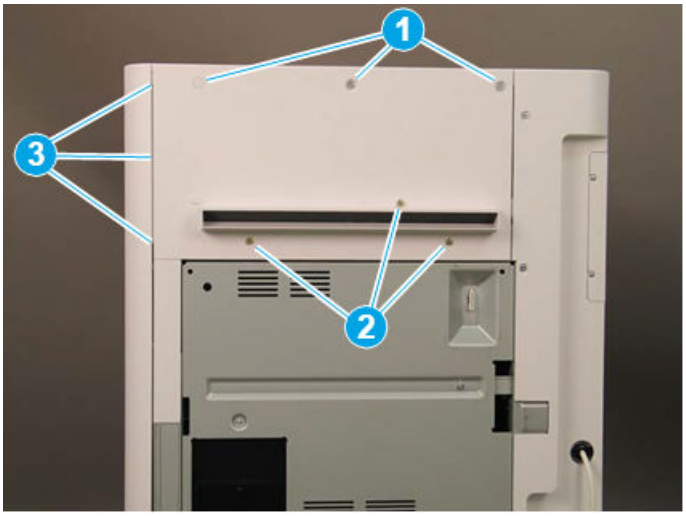
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1590 Remove the right upper cover

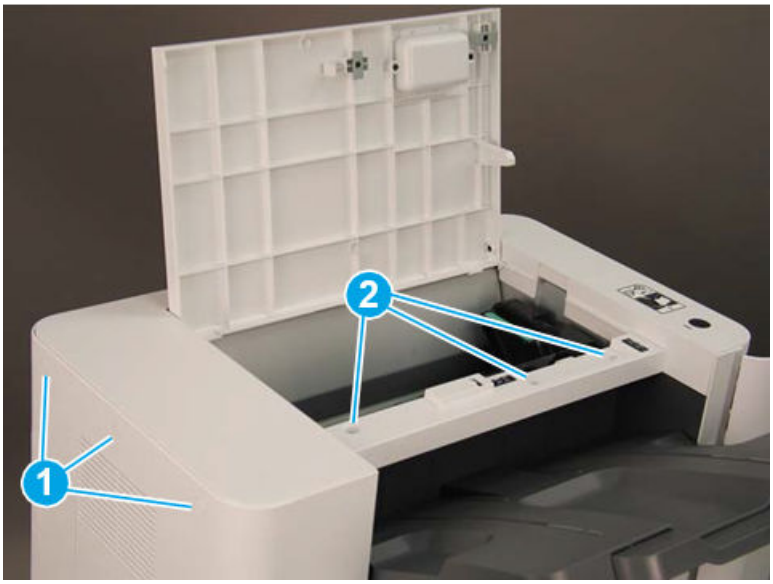


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

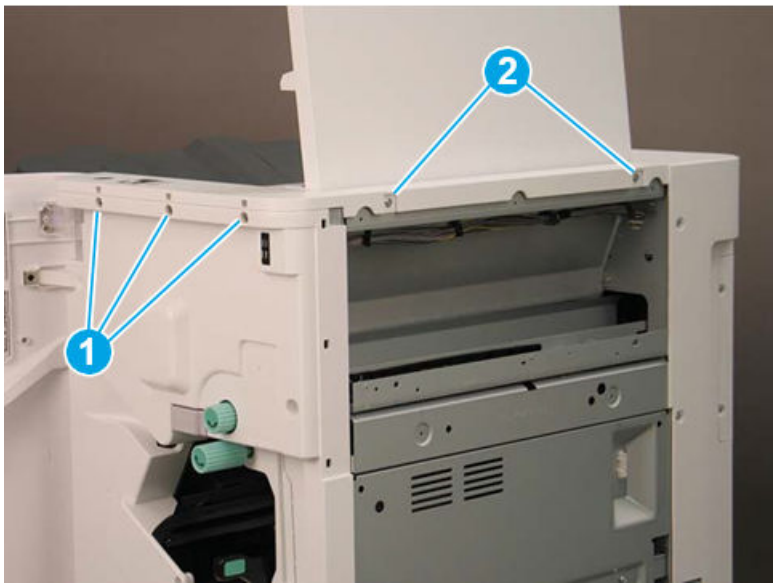
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1591 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

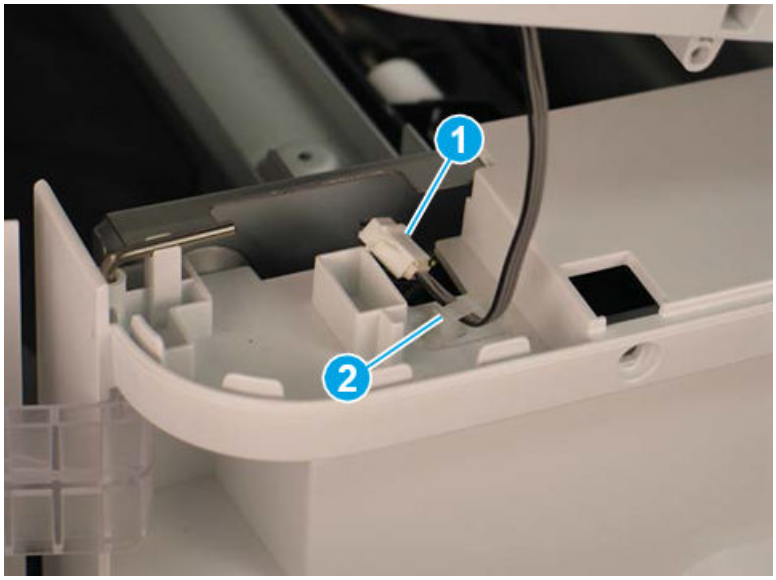
Figure 5-1592 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1593 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

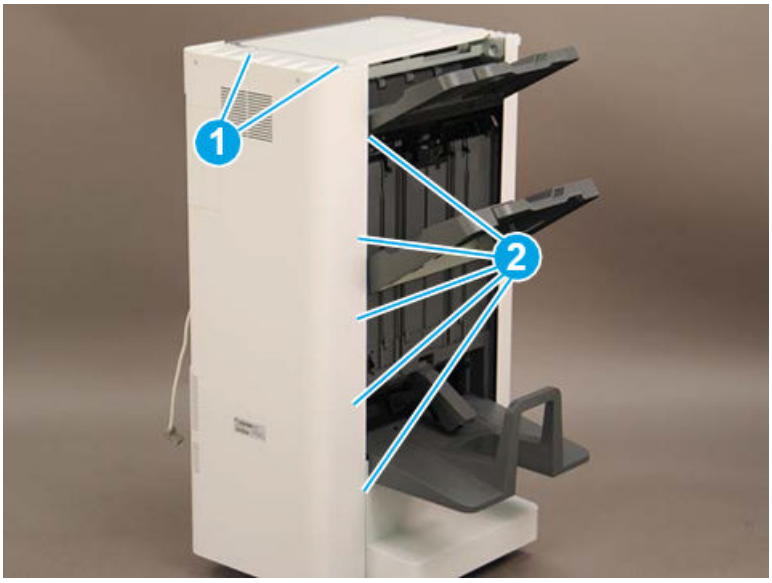


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1594 Remove seven screws

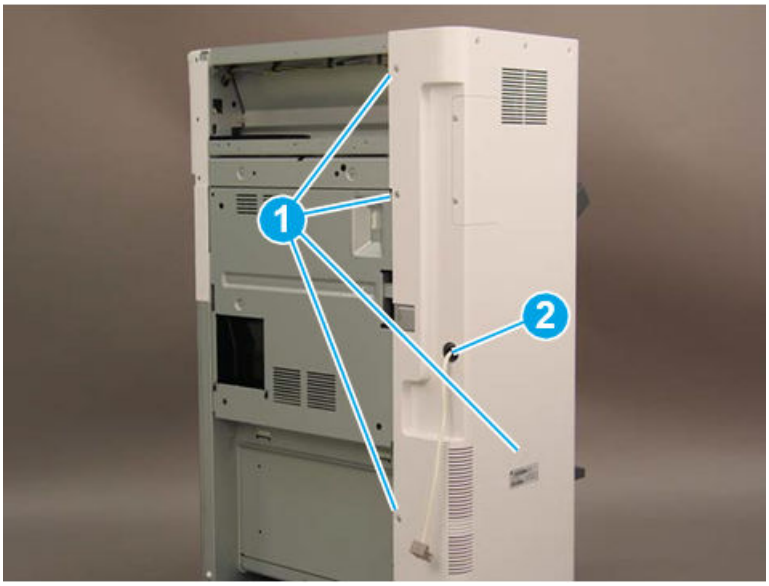


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1595 Remove the rear cover



Remove the booklet maker

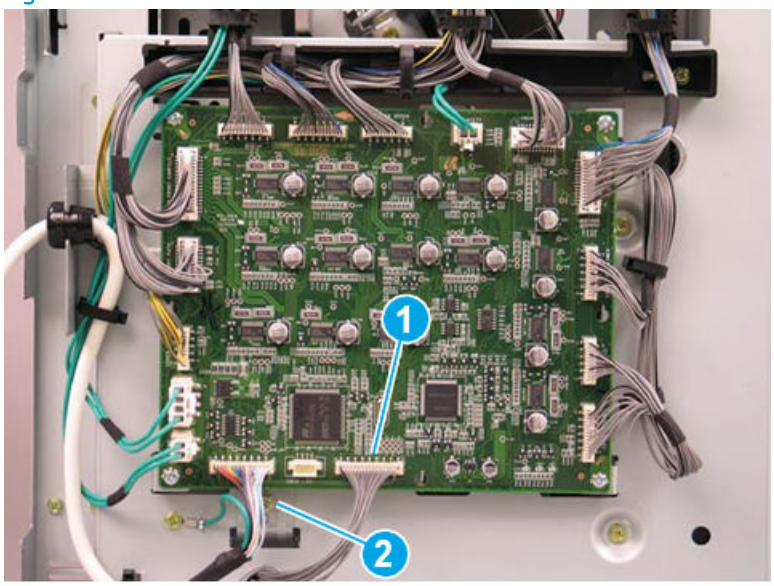
Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker.

1. Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1596 Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher

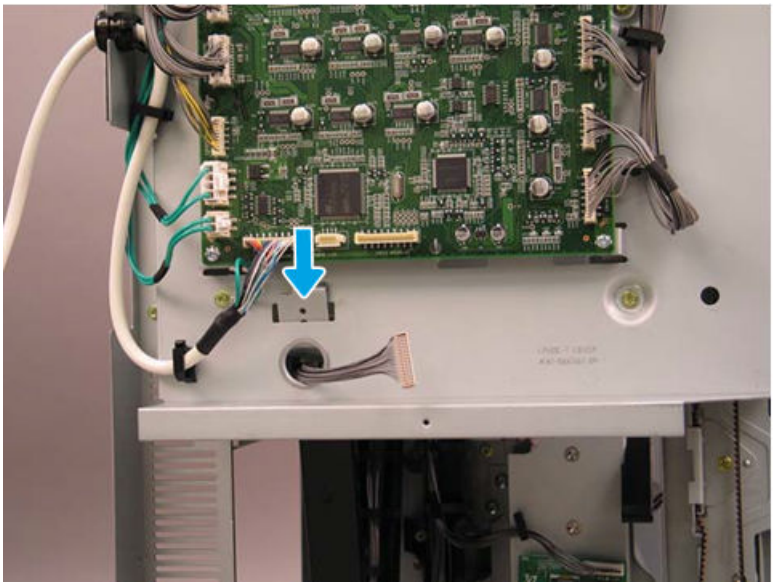
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 5-1597 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



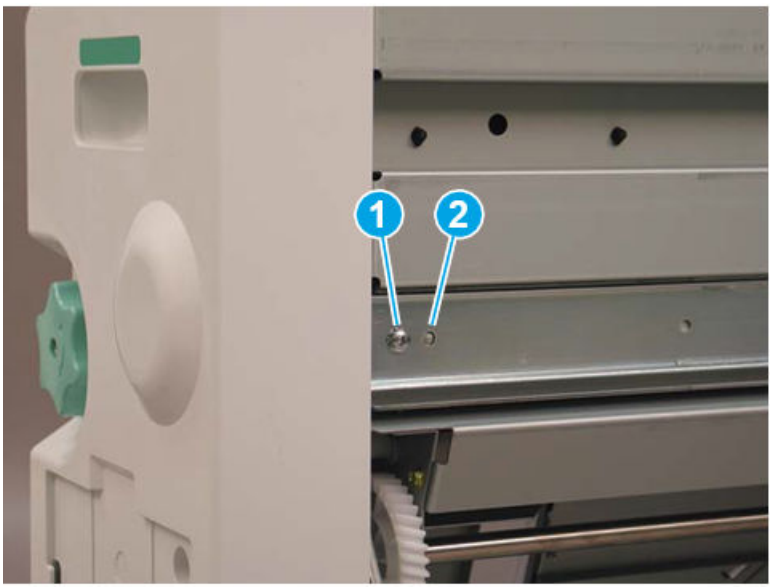
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 5-1598 Release the metal bracket



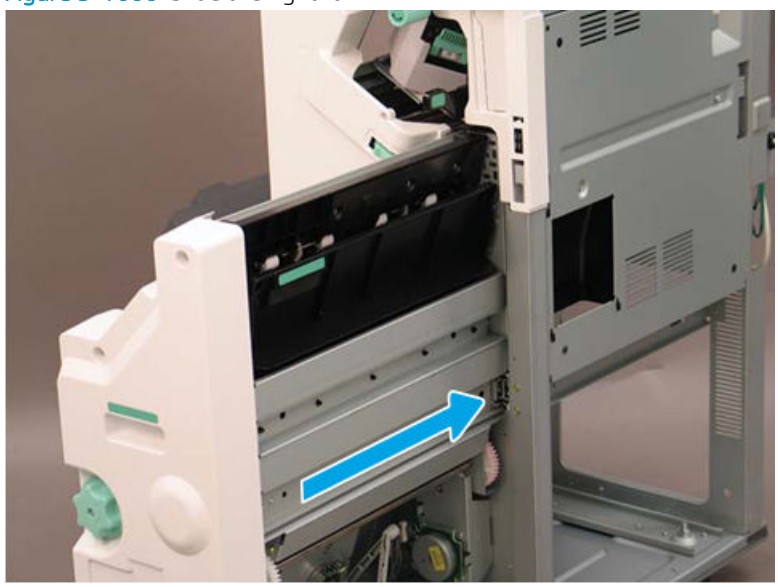
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1599 Remove one screw



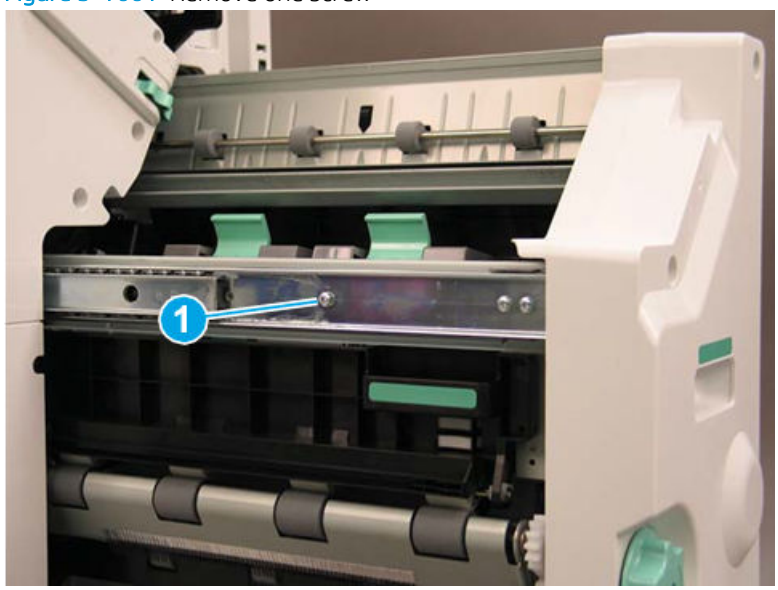
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 5-1600 Slide the right rail



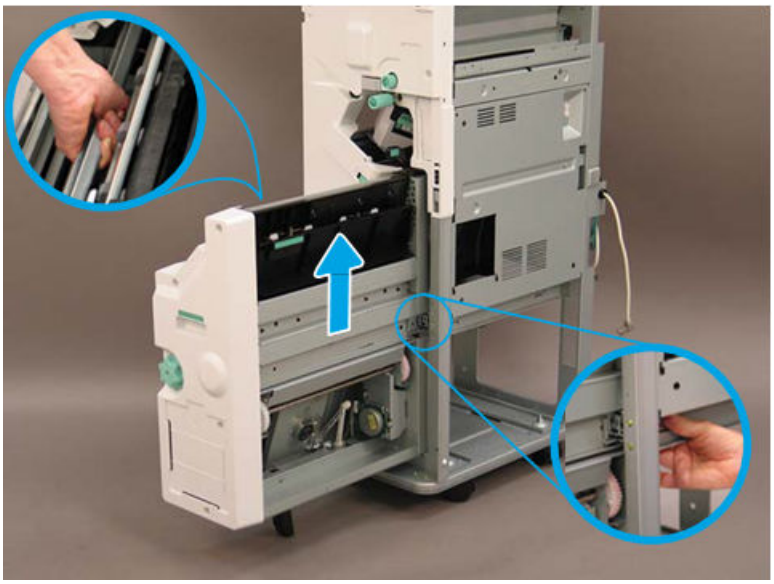
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1601 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1602 Remove the booklet maker



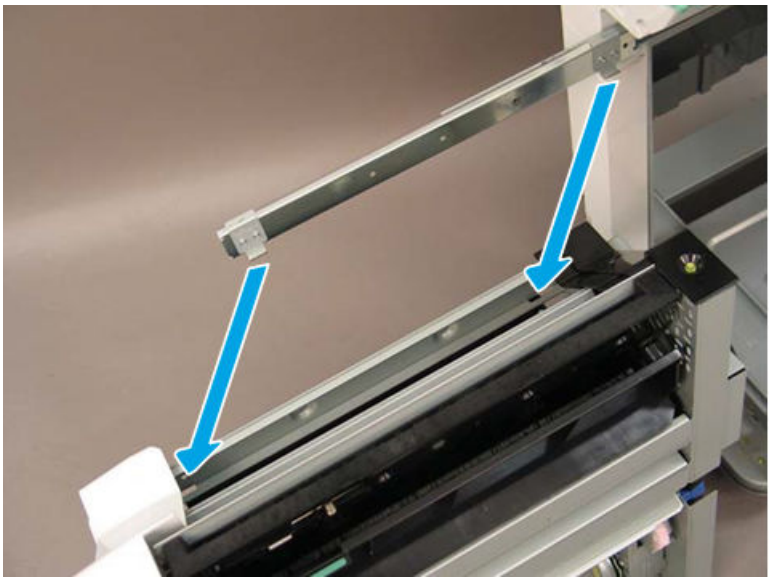
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: booklet maker

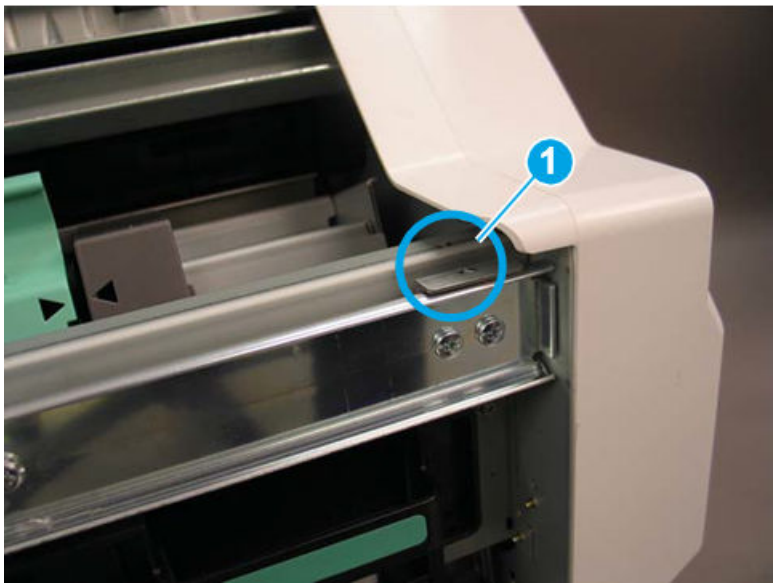
When installing the booklet maker, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1603 Position the hooks



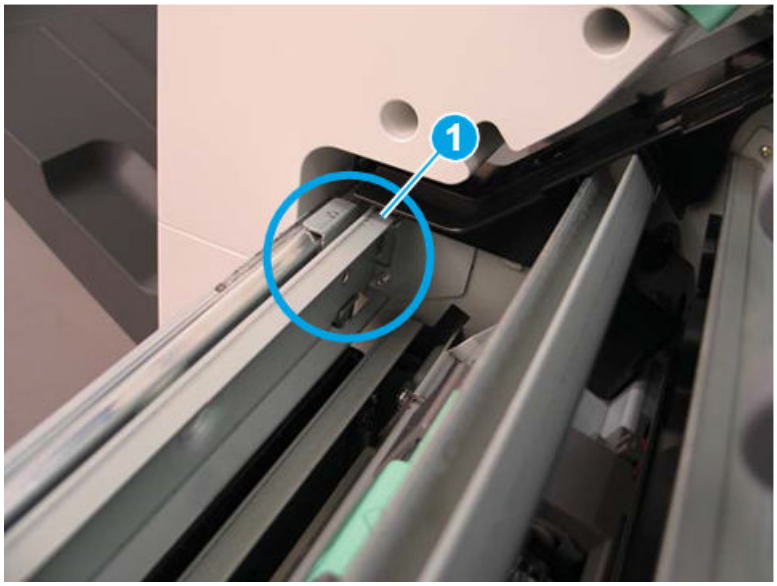
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1604 Align arrows



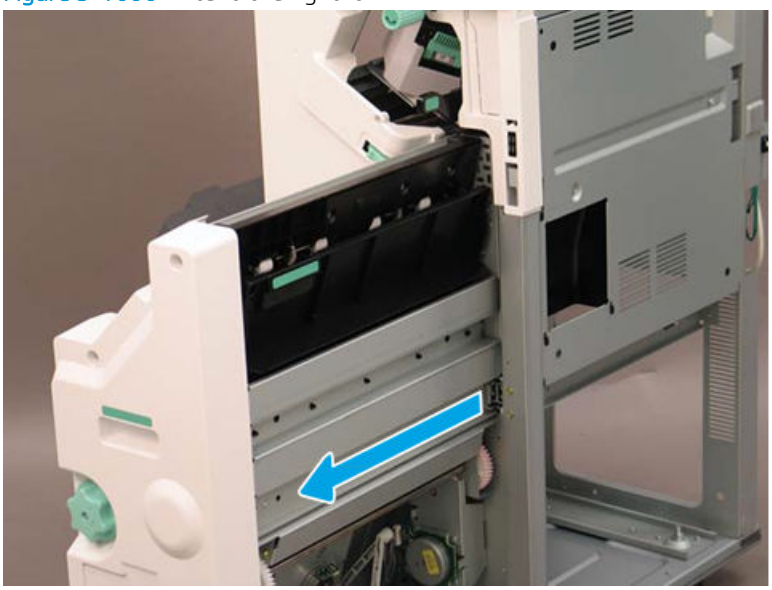
10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1605 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.

Figure 5-1606 Extend the right rail



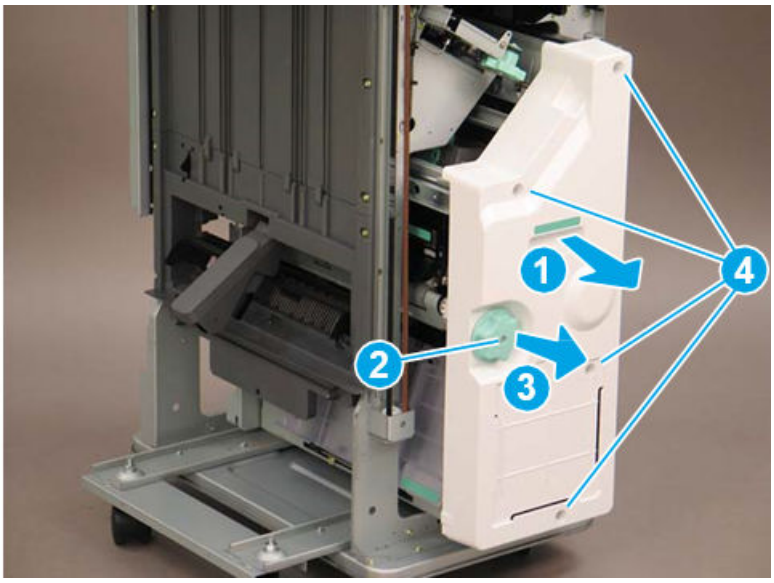
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

▲ Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1607 Remove five screws and the cover

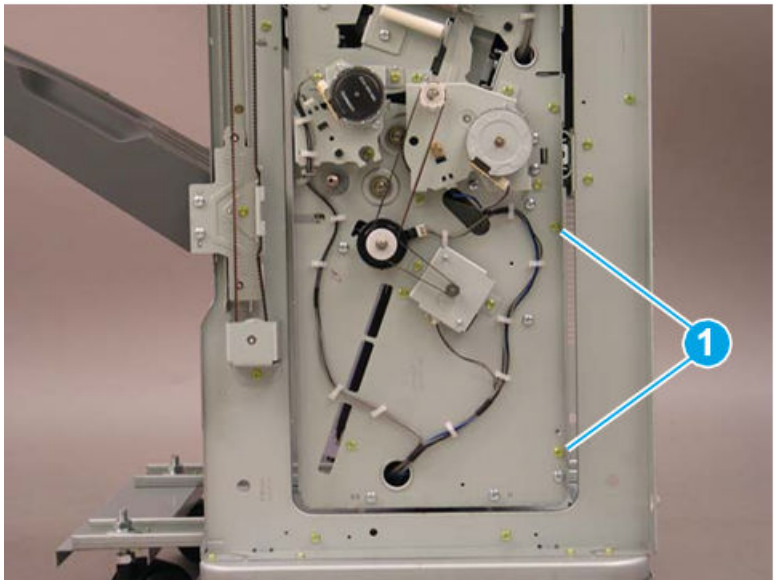


Remove the booklet right lower shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet right lower shield.

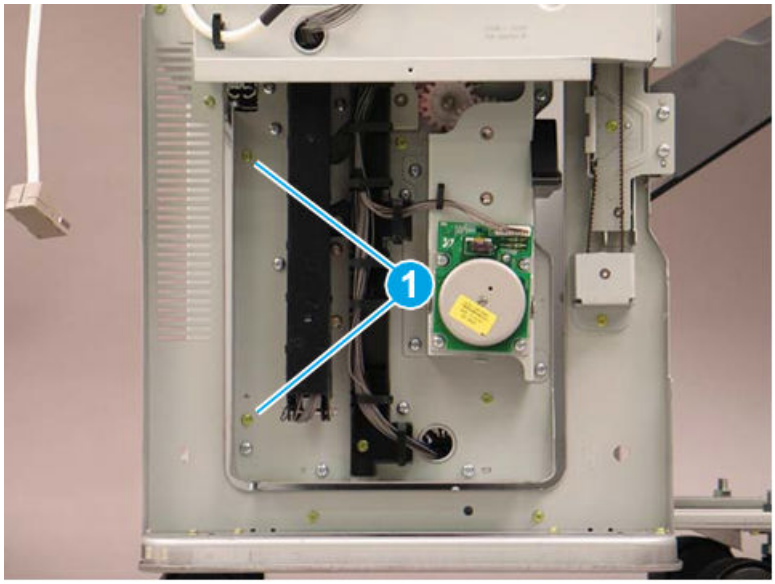
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1608 Remove two screws



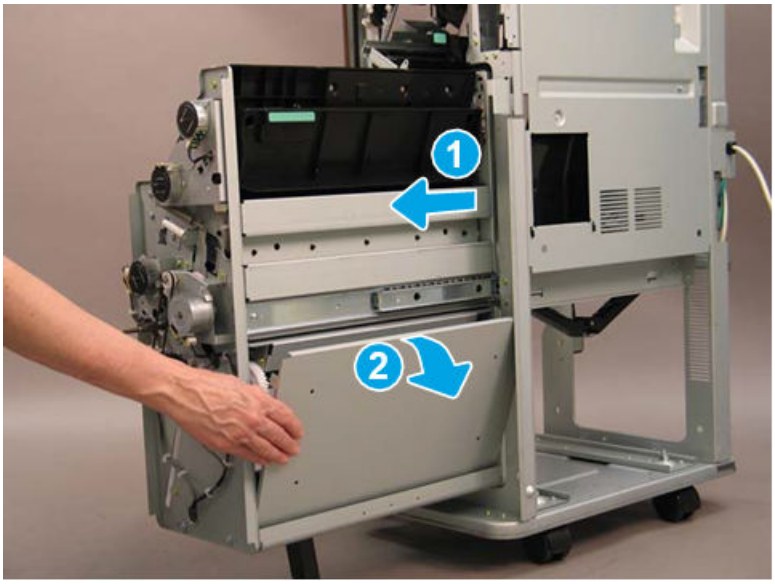
2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1609 Remove two screws



3. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the right lower shield (callout 2) away from the booklet maker to remove it.

Figure 5-1610 Remove the right lower shield

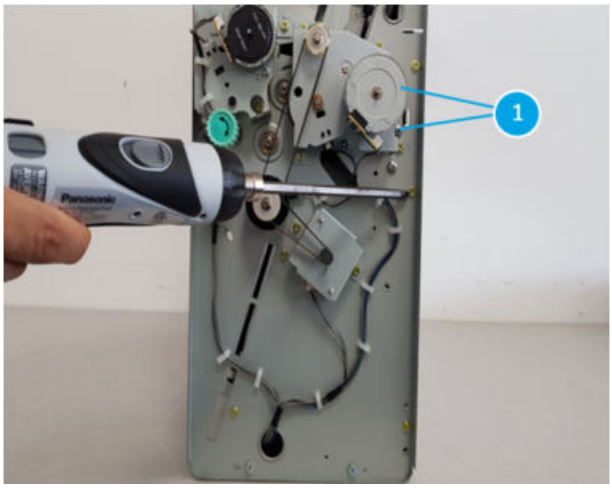


Remove the booklet maker middle right shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker middle right shield.

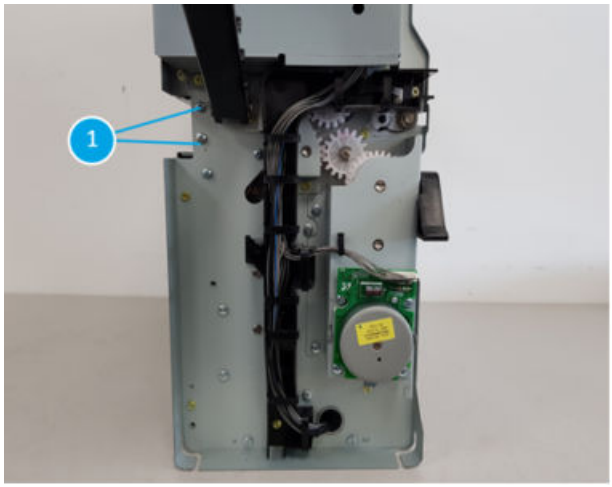
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1611 Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker



2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1612 Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker

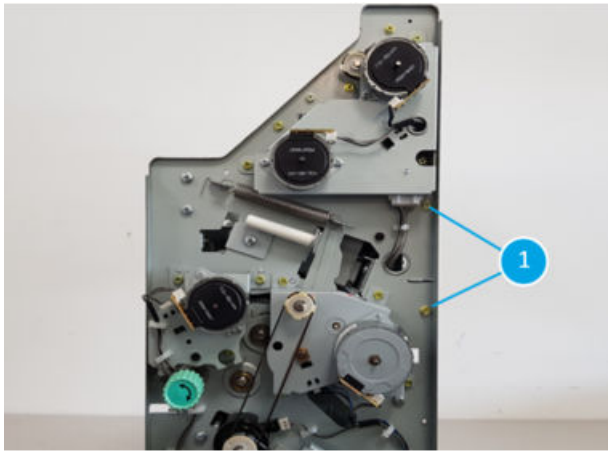


Remove the booklet finisher upper right shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet finisher upper right shield.

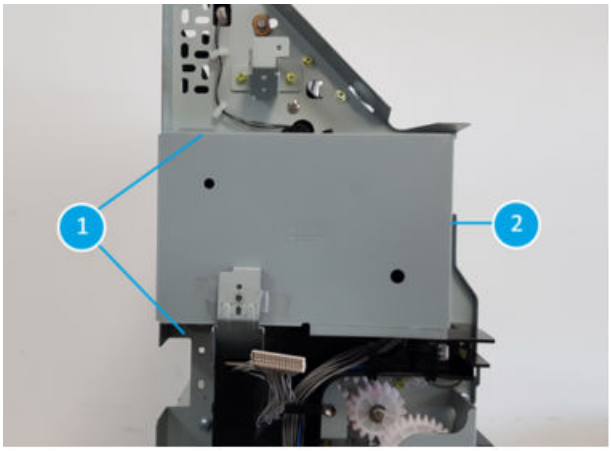
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1)

Figure 5-1613 Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker



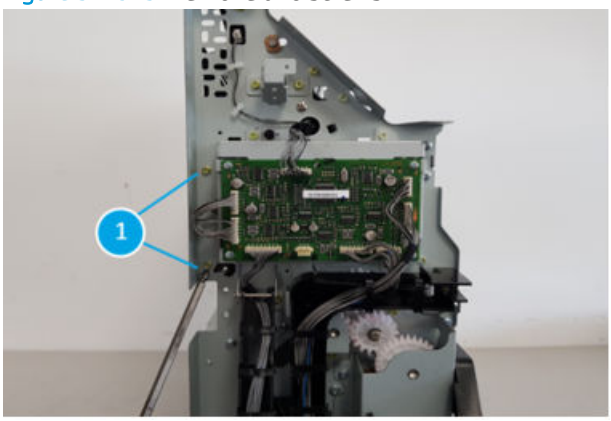
2. Remove two screws(callout 1) and one screw(callout 2) at the back of the booklet maker and then remove the board cover.

Figure 5-1614 Remove the board cover



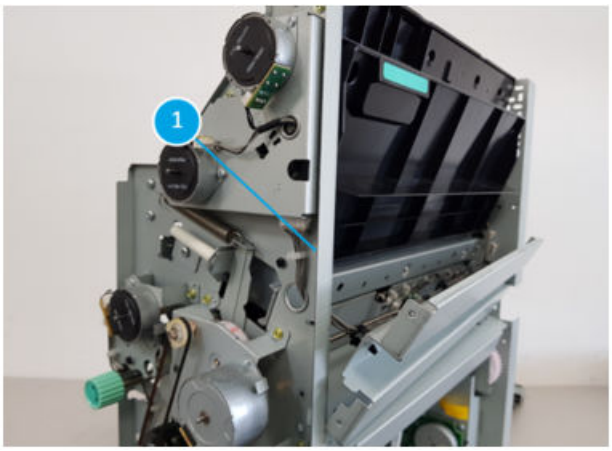
3. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1615 Remove two screws



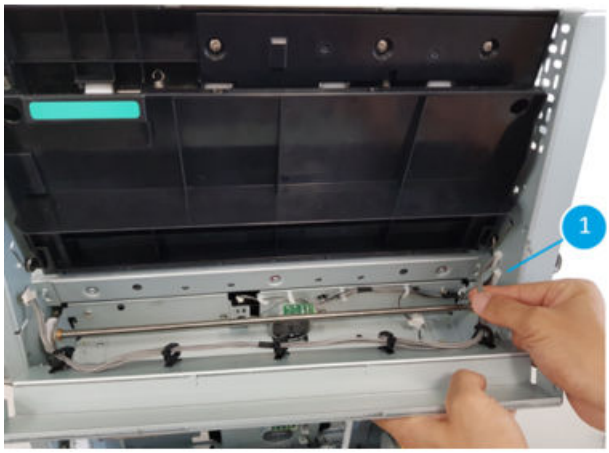
4. Disconnect one connector at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1616 Disconnect one connector



5. Disconnect one connector at the right of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1617 Disconnect one connector

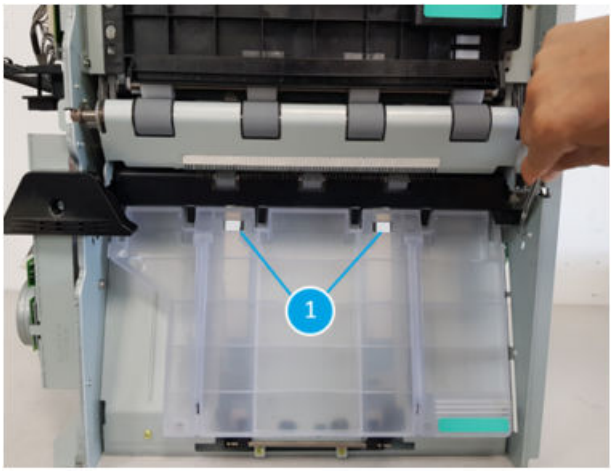


Remove the booklet tamper and fold unit

Follow these steps to remove the booklet tamper and fold unit.

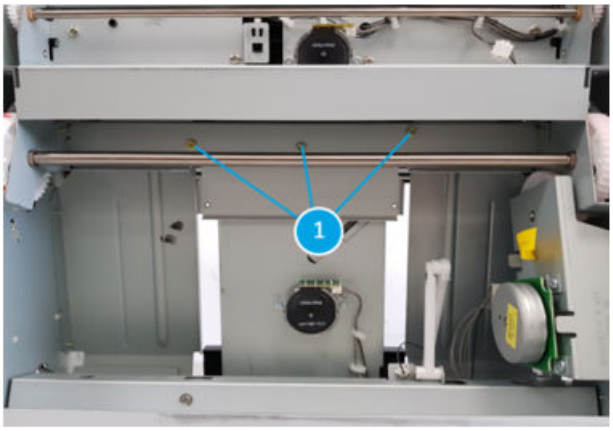
1. Remove two screws at the left of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1618 Remove two screws at the left of the booklet maker



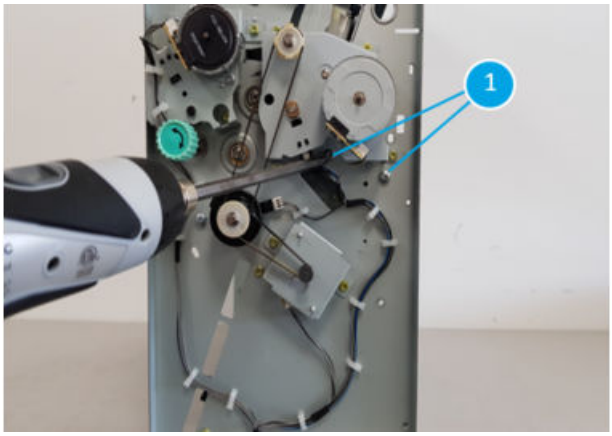
2. Remove three screws at the right of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1619 Remove three screws at the right of the booklet maker



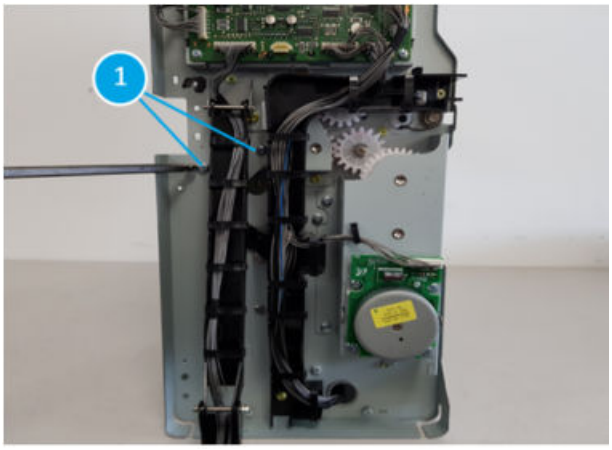
3. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1620 Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker



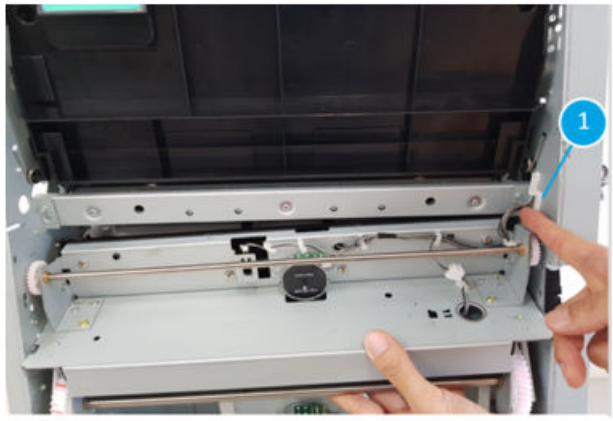
4. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1621 Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker



5. Disconnect one connector at the right of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1622 Disconnect one connector

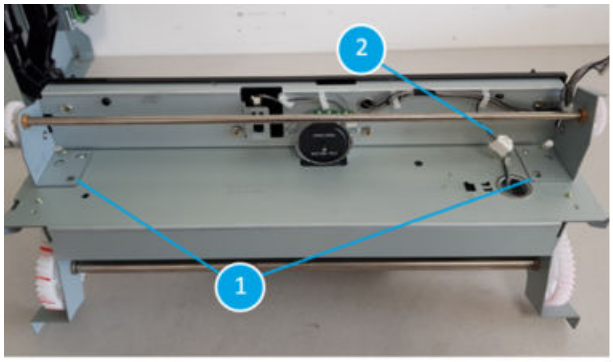


Remove the booklet tamper unit

Follow these steps to remove the booklet tamper unit.

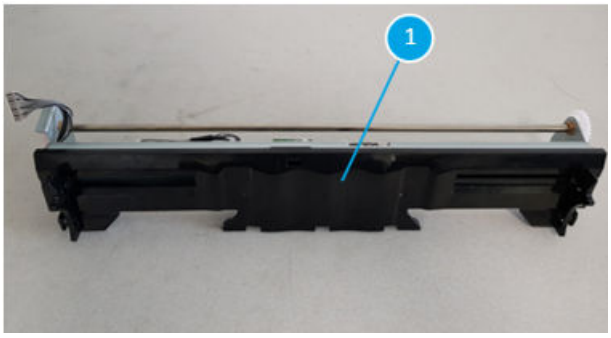
1. Remove two screws and disconnect one connector (callout 2)

Figure 5-1623 Remove two screws



2. Booklet tamper unit (callout 1)

Figure 5-1624 Booklet tamper unit

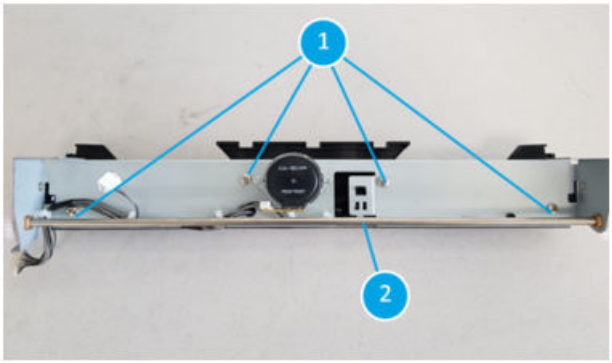


Remove the booklet tamper home sensor (S38)

Follow these steps to remove the booklet tamper home sensor (S38).

1. Remove four screws (callout 1) and unplug one connector (callout 2)

Figure 5-1625 Remove four screws



2. Use a tweezer to remove the booklet tamper home sensor (S38, callout 1)

Figure 5-1626 Remove booklet tamper home sensor

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet tamper motor (M23)

Learn how to remove and replace the tray booklet tamper motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet tamper motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-156 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01155A	Booklet tamper motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

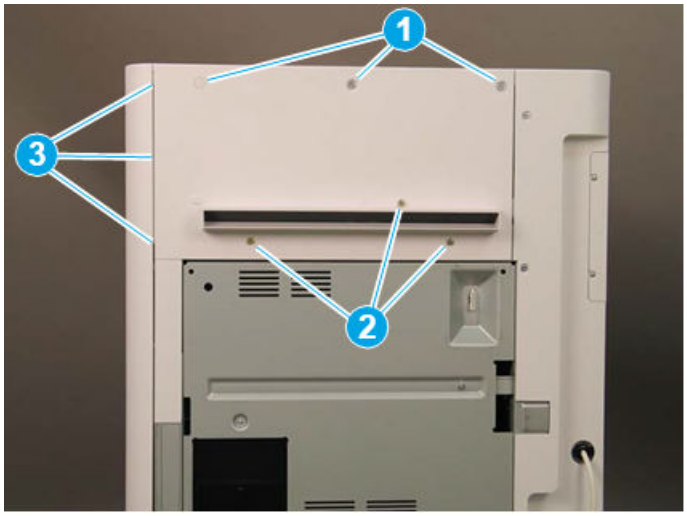
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1627 Remove the right upper cover

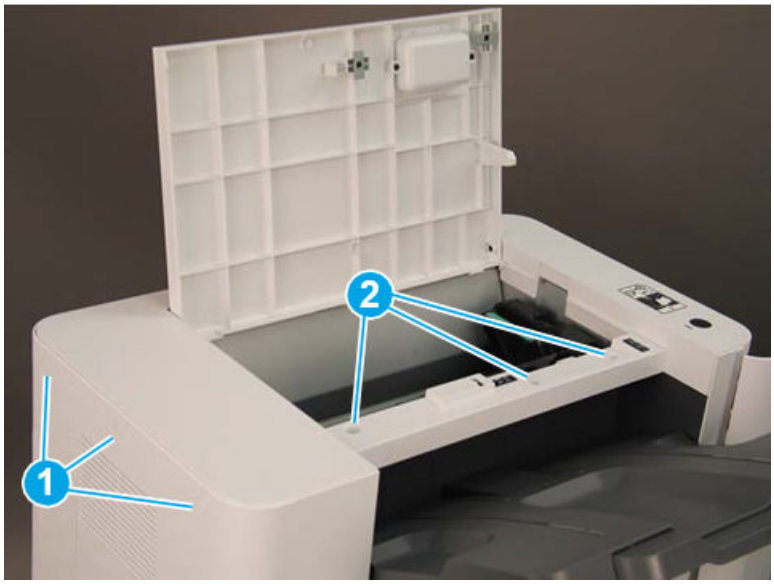


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

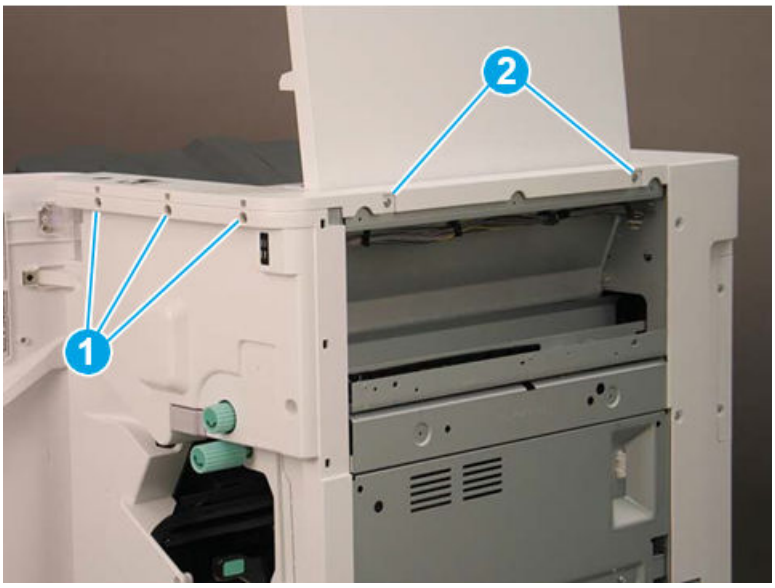
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1628 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

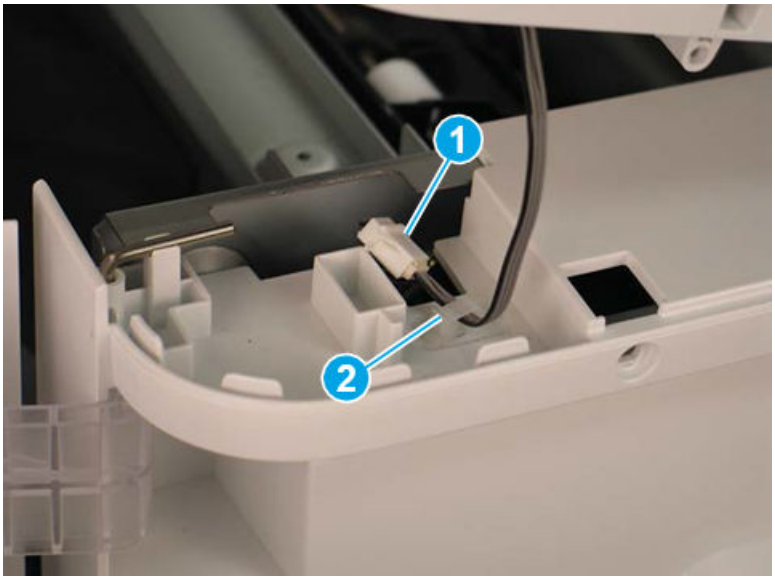
Figure 5-1629 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1630 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

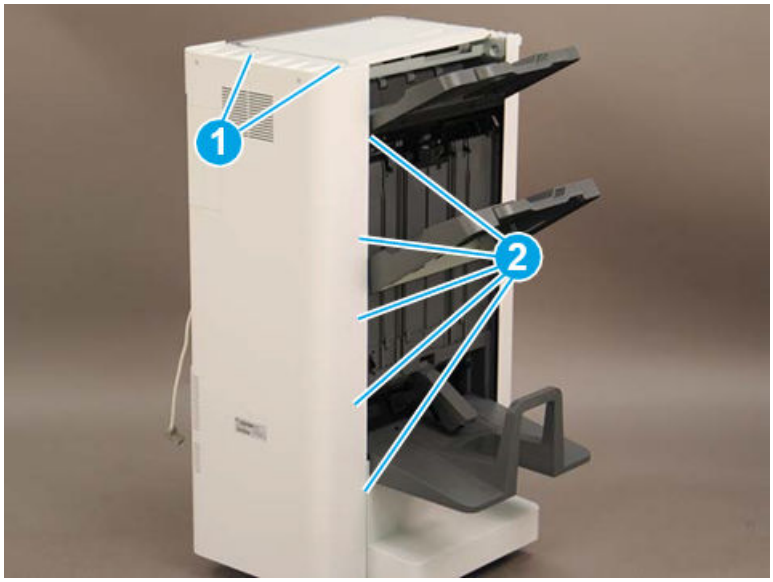


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1631 Remove seven screws

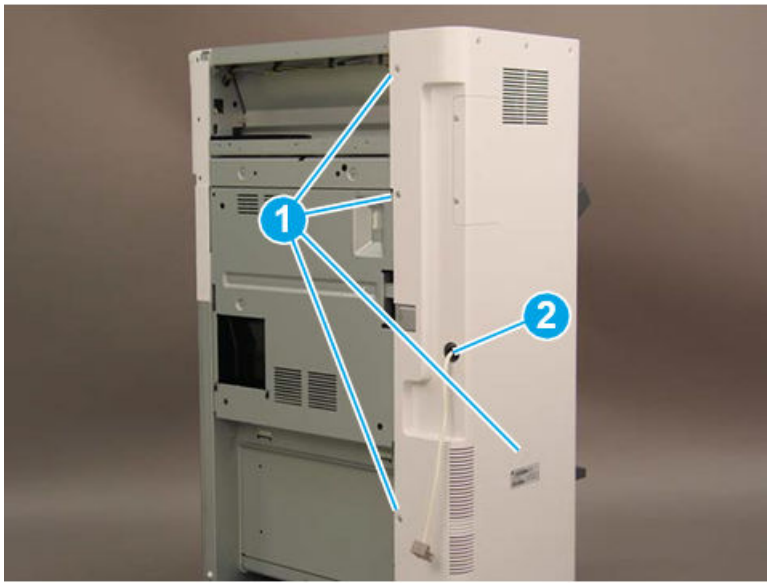


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1632 Remove the rear cover



Remove the booklet maker

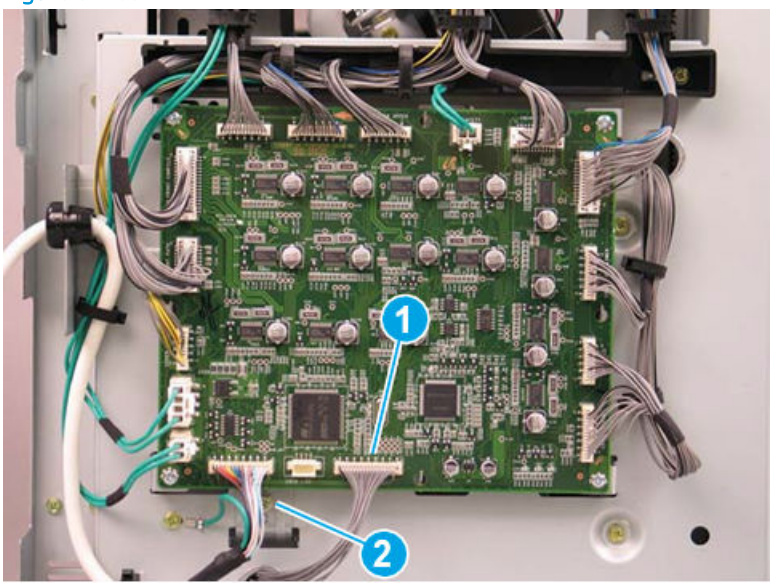
Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker.

1. Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1633 Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher

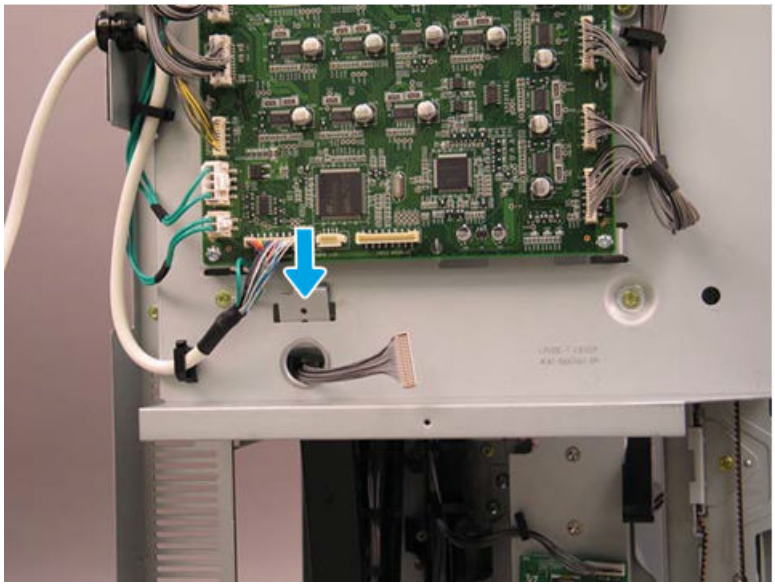
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 5-1634 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



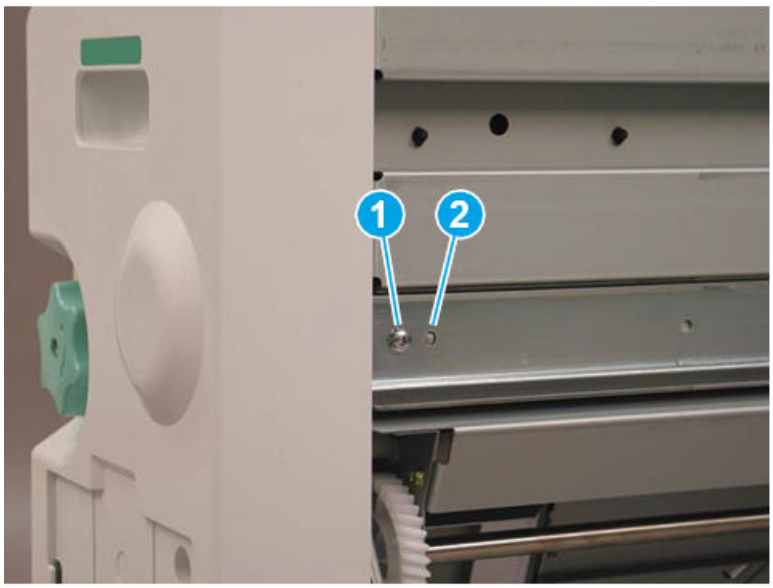
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 5-1635 Release the metal bracket



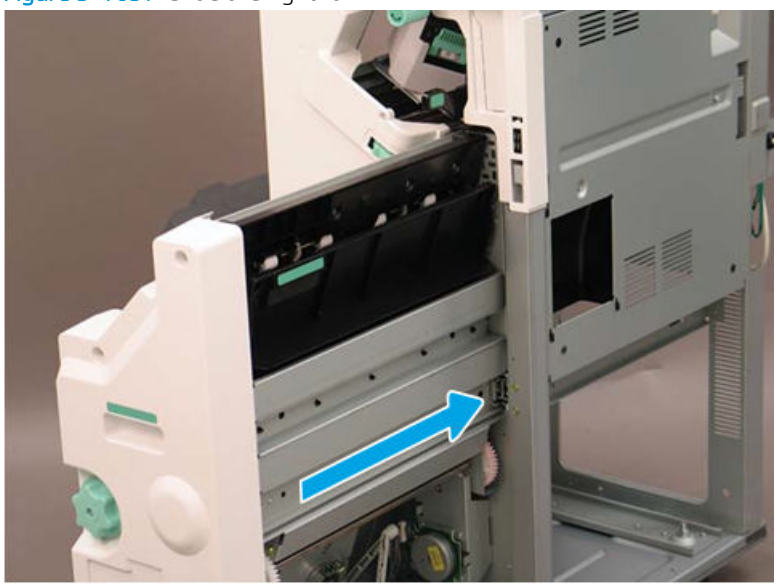
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1636 Remove one screw



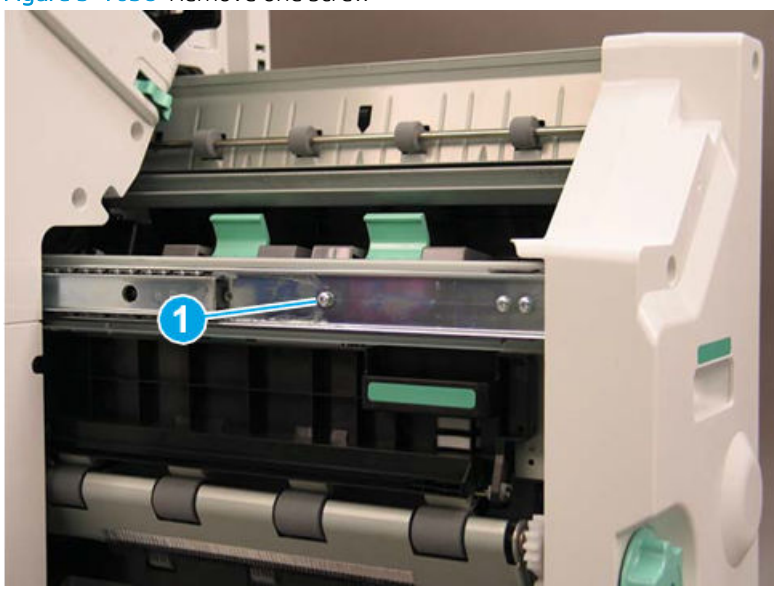
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 5-1637 Slide the right rail



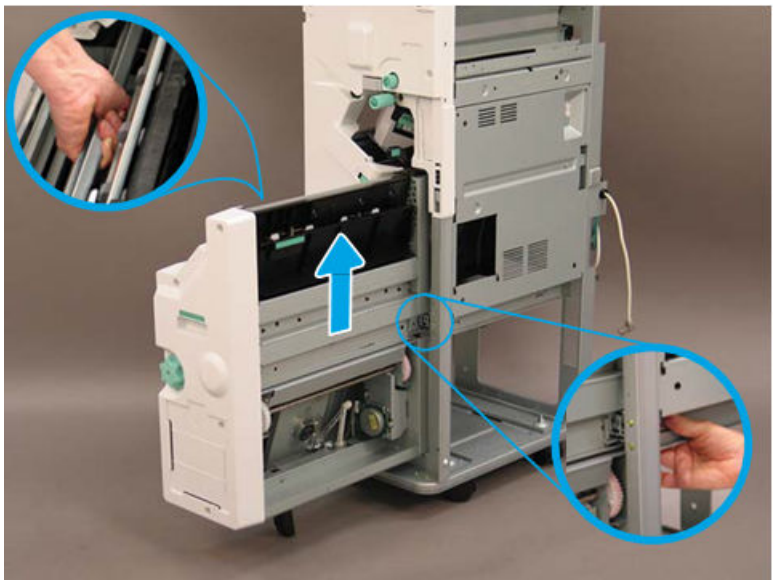
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1638 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1639 Remove the booklet maker



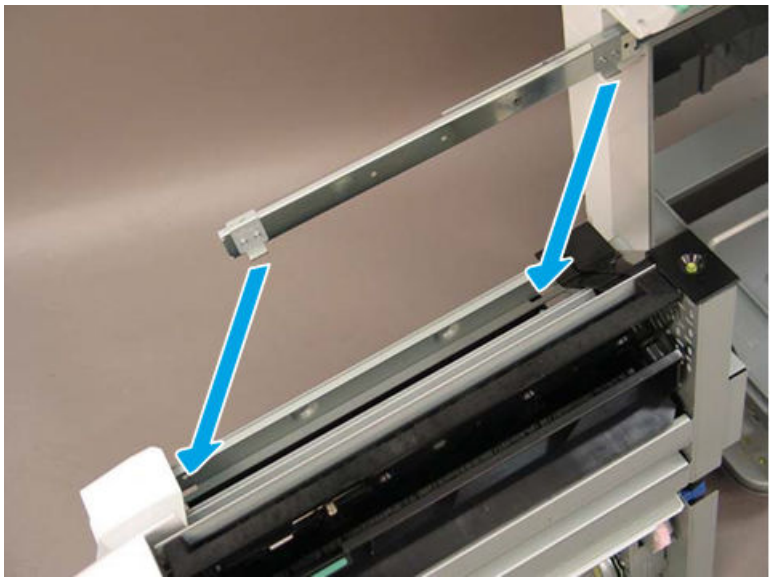
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: booklet maker

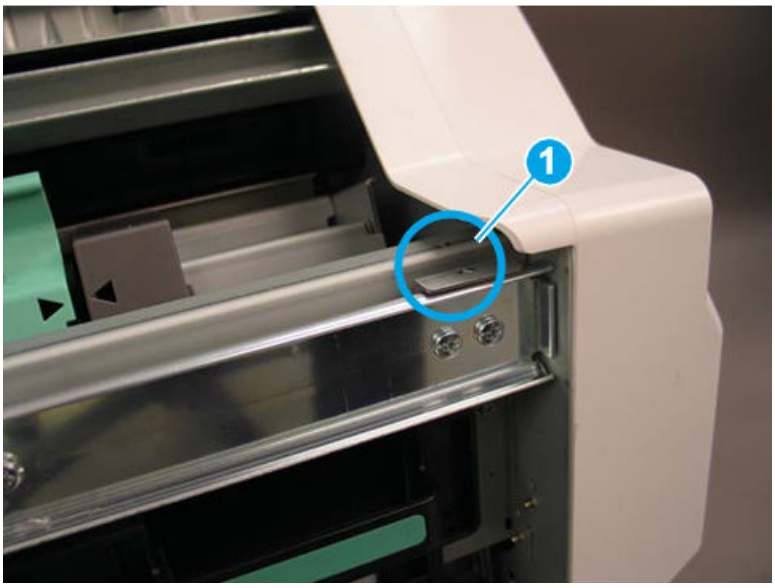
When installing the booklet maker, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1640 Position the hooks



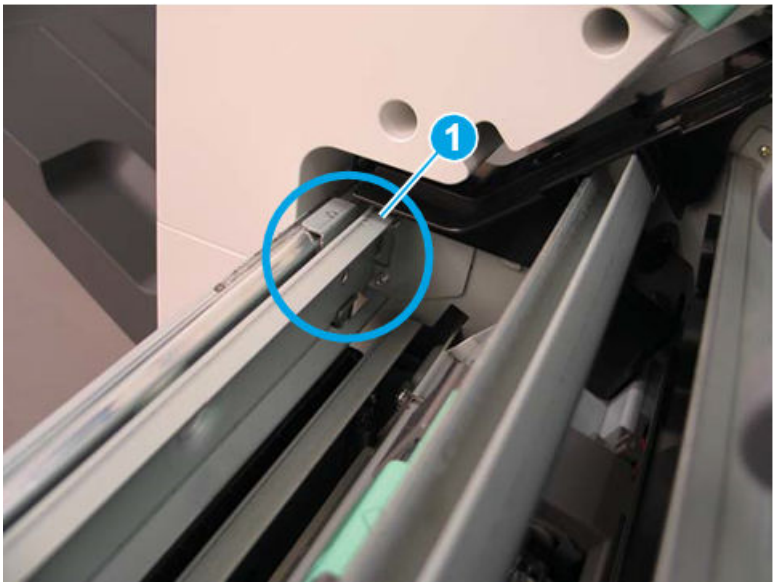
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1641 Align arrows



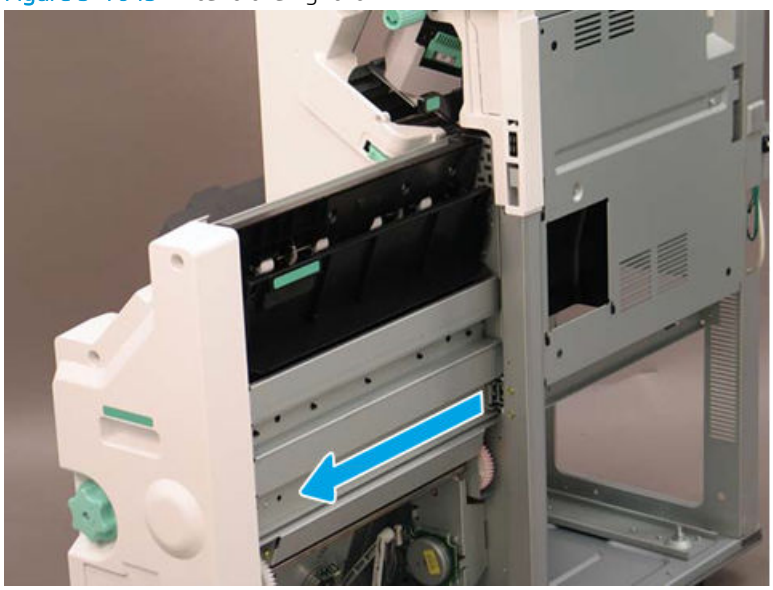
10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1642 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.

Figure 5-1643 Extend the right rail



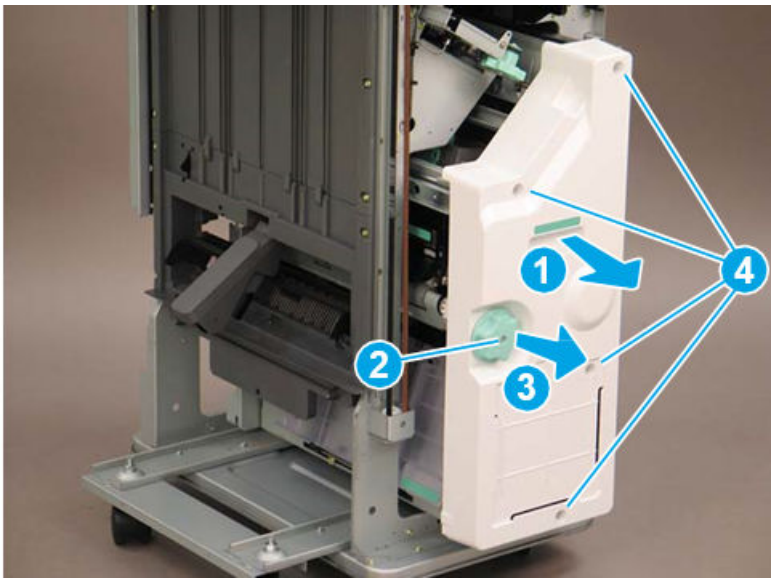
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

- Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1644 Remove five screws and the cover

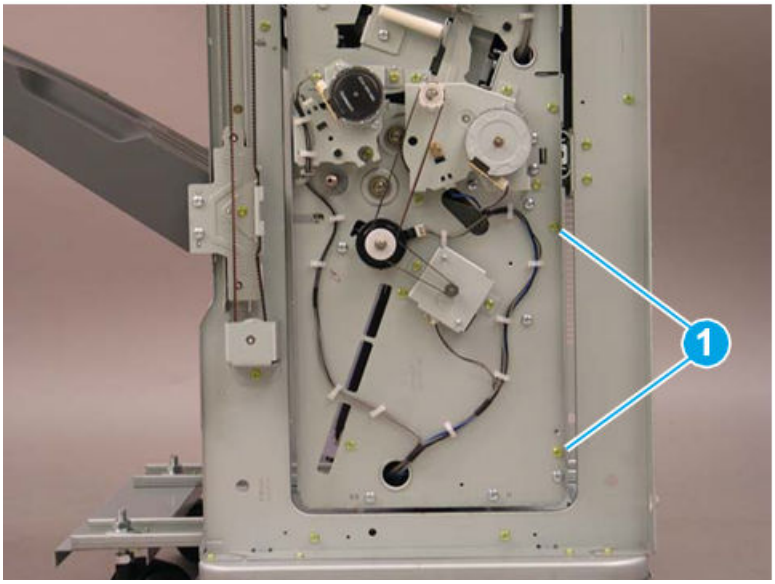


Remove the booklet right lower shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet right lower shield.

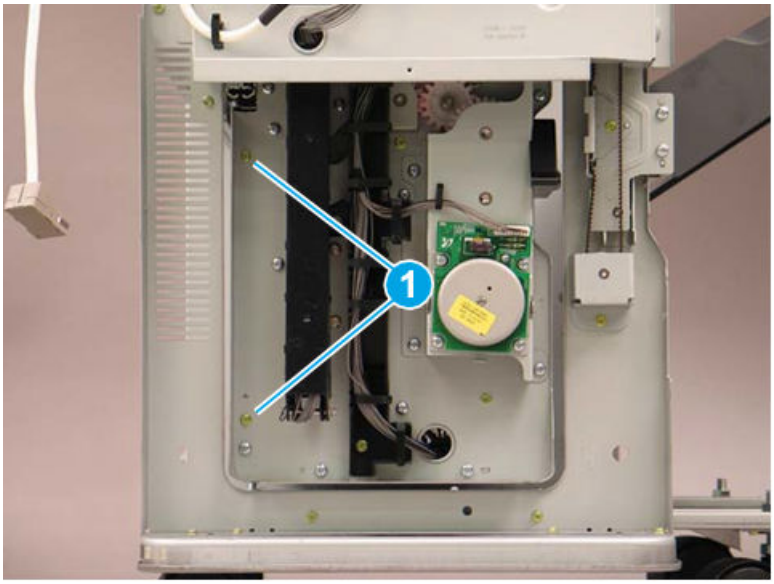
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1645 Remove two screws



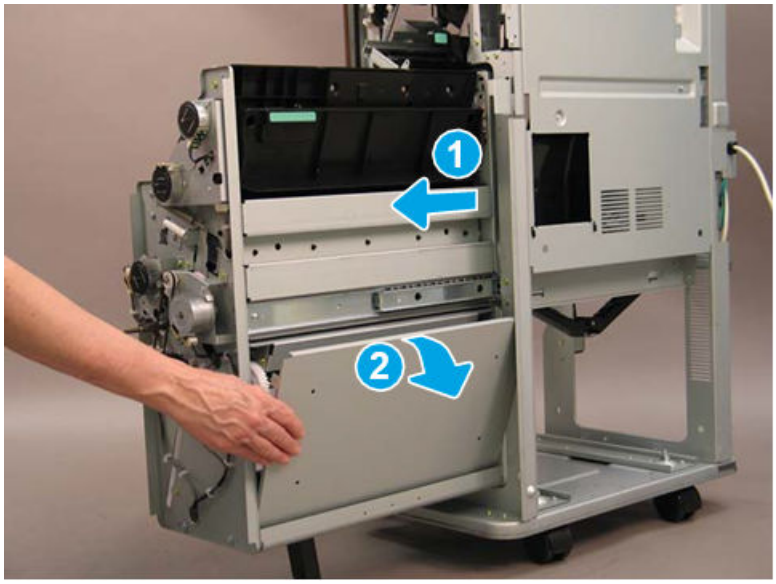
2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1646 Remove two screws



3. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the right lower shield (callout 2) away from the booklet maker to remove it.

Figure 5-1647 Remove the right lower shield

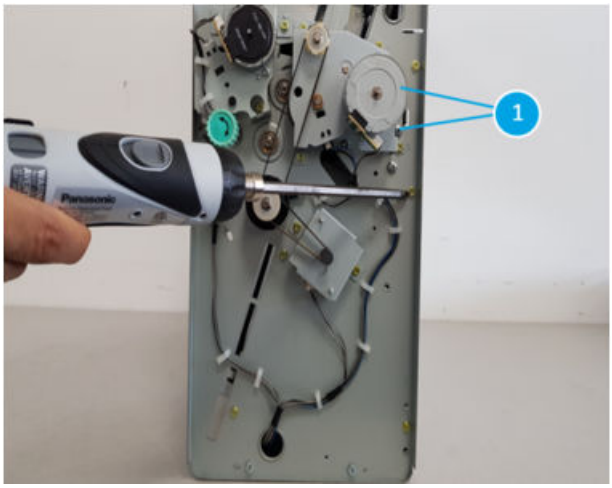


Remove the booklet maker middle right shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker middle right shield.

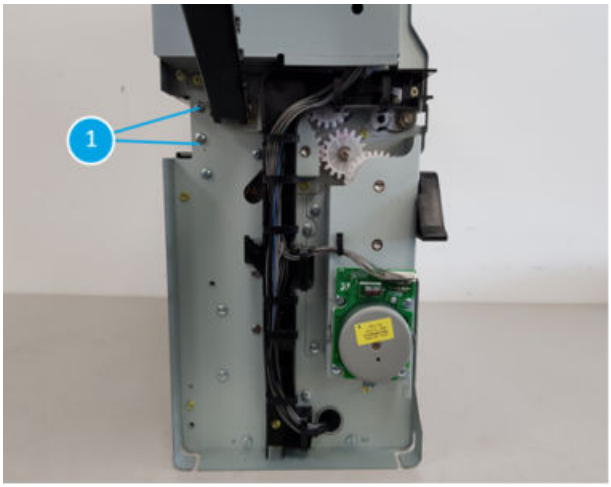
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1648 Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker



2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1649 Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker

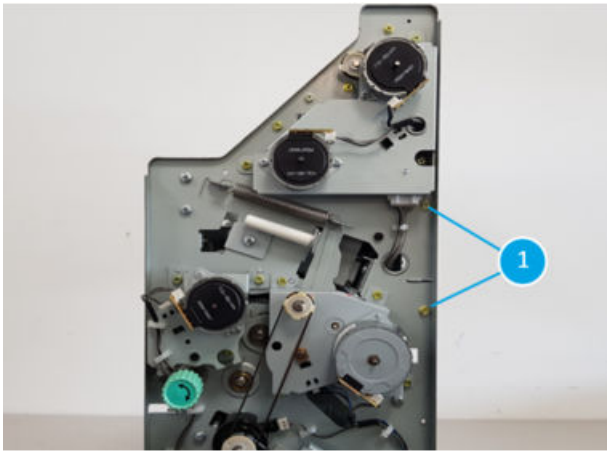


Remove the booklet finisher upper right shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet finisher upper right shield.

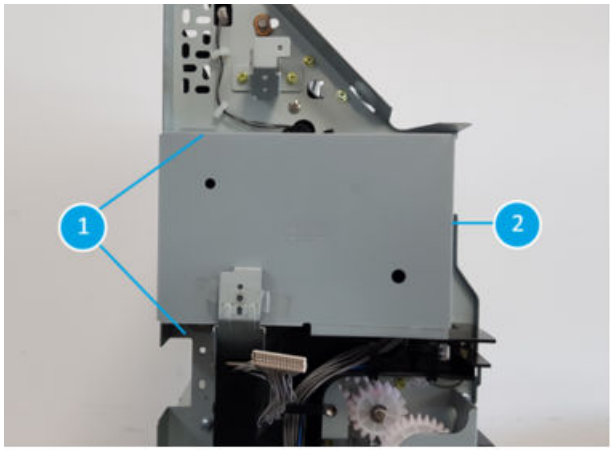
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1)

Figure 5-1650 Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker



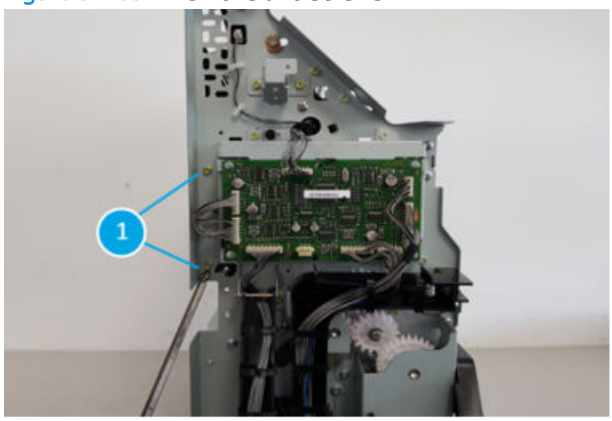
2. Remove two screws(callout 1) and one screw(callout 2) at the back of the booklet maker and then remove the board cover.

Figure 5-1651 Remove the board cover



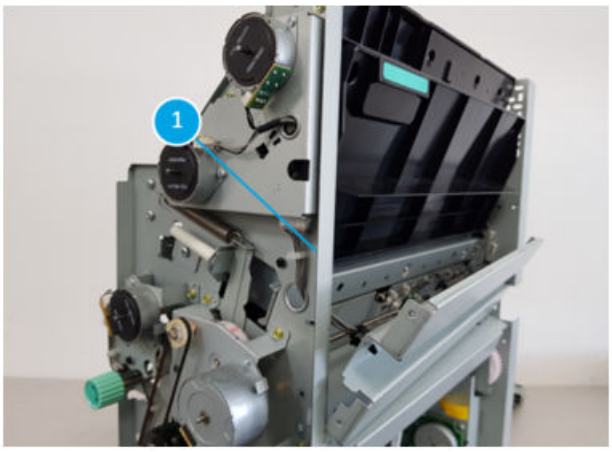
3. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1652 Remove two screws



4. Disconnect one connector at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1653 Disconnect one connector



5. Disconnect one connector at the right of the booklet maker (callout 1).

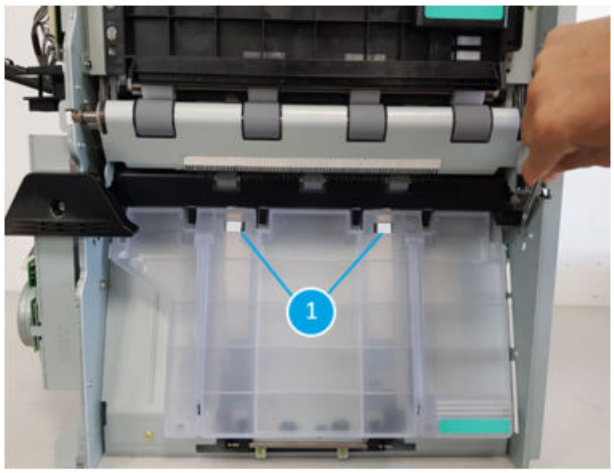
Figure 5-1654 Disconnect one connector

Remove the booklet tamper and fold unit

Follow these steps to remove the booklet tamper and fold unit.

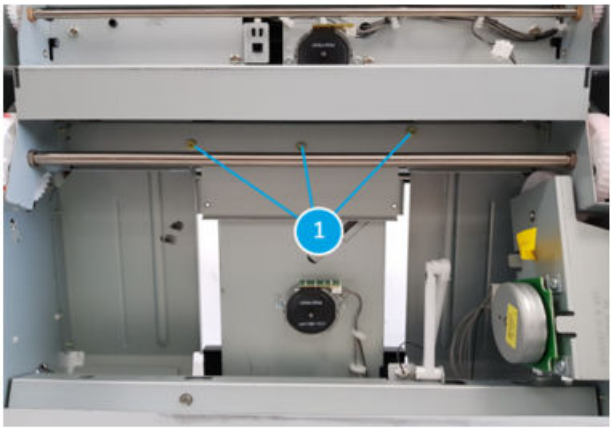
1. Remove two screws at the left of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1655 Remove two screws at the left of the booklet maker



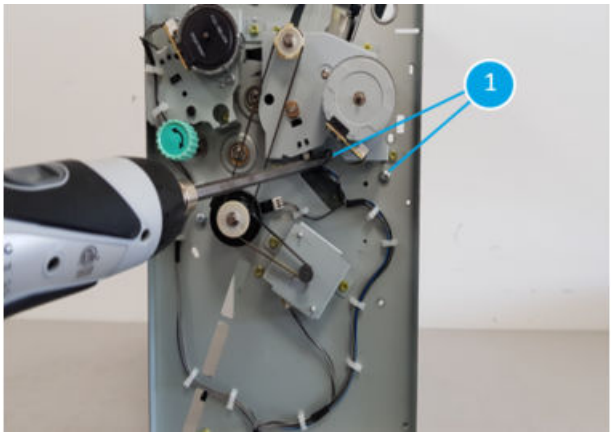
2. Remove three screws at the right of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1656 Remove three screws at the right of the booklet maker



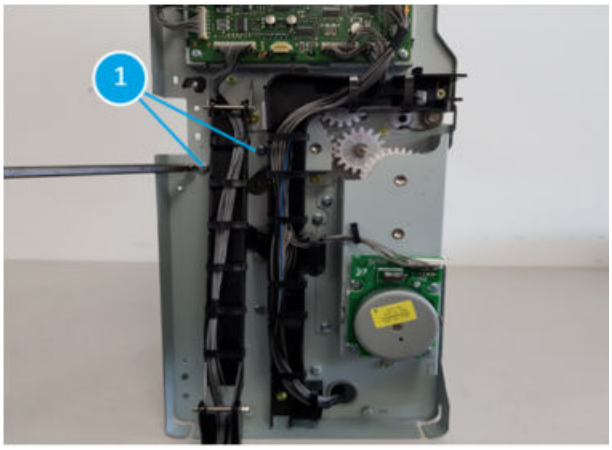
3. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1657 Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker



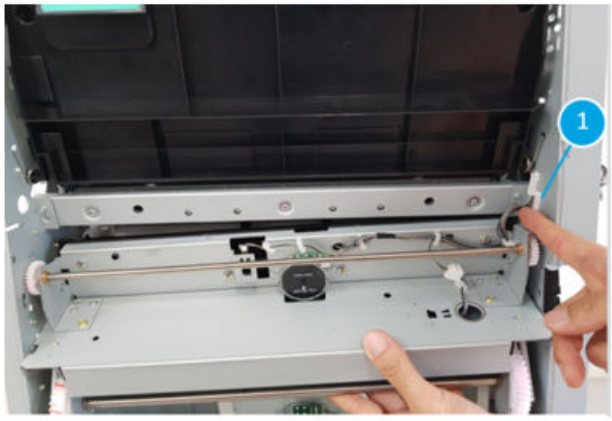
4. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1658 Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker



5. Disconnect one connector at the right of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1659 Disconnect one connector

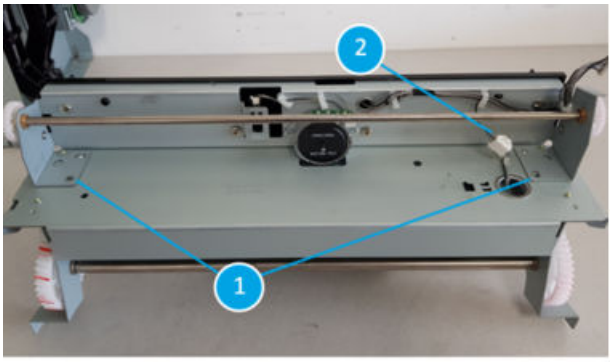


Remove the booklet tamper unit

Follow these steps to remove the booklet tamper unit.

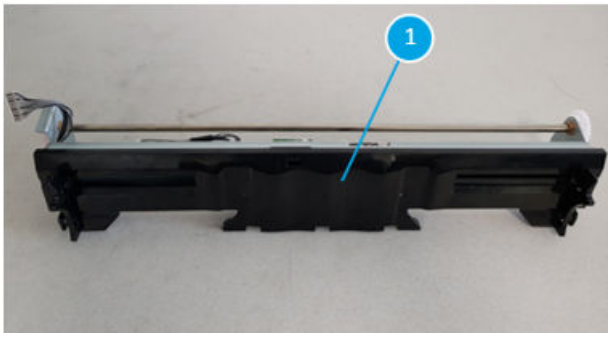
1. Remove two screws and disconnect one connector (callout 2)

Figure 5-1660 Remove two screws



2. Booklet tamper unit (callout 1)

Figure 5-1661 Booklet tamper unit

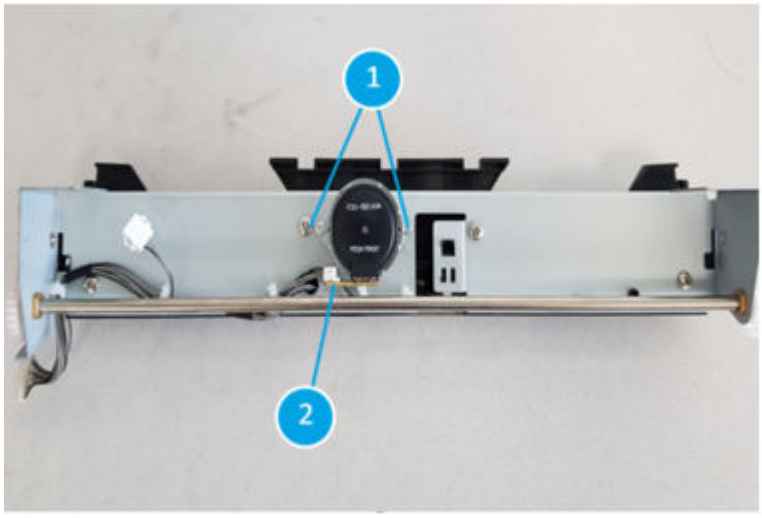


Remove the booklet tamper motor (M23)

Follow these steps to remove the booklet tamper motor (M23).

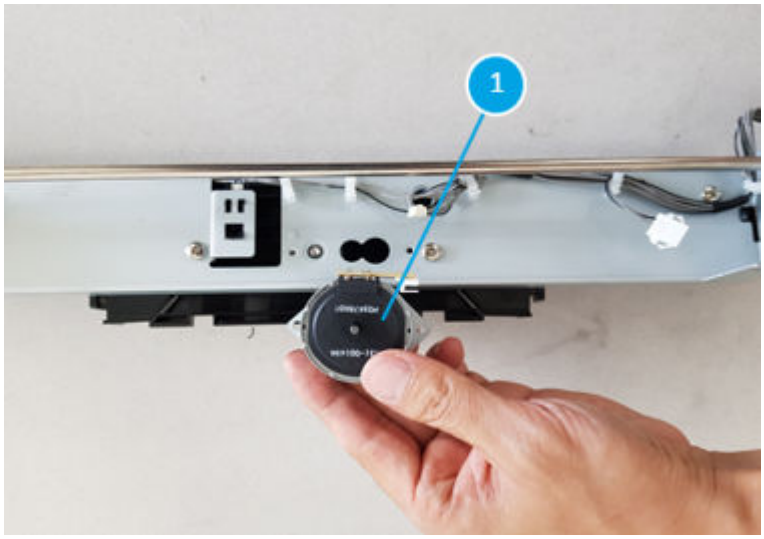
1. Remove two screws (callout 1) and unplug one connector (callout 2)

Figure 5-1662 Remove two screws and unplug one connector



2. Remove the booklet tamper motor (M23, callout 1)

Figure 5-1663 Remove the booklet tamper motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet stapler unit

Removal and replacement: Booklet stapler unit

Learn how to remove and replace the tray booklet stapler unit.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet stapler unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-157 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00725A	Booklet stapler unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

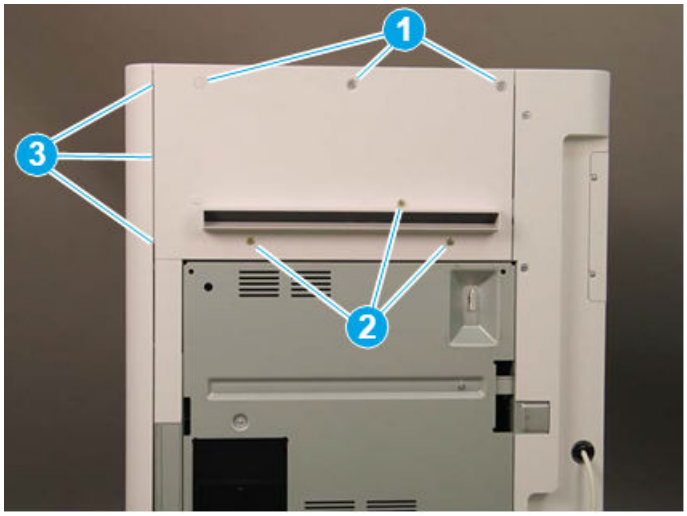
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1664 Remove the right upper cover

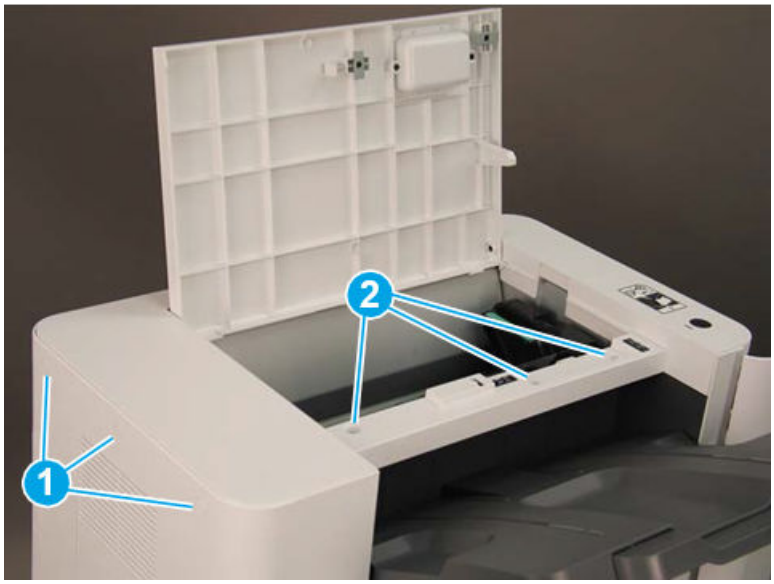


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

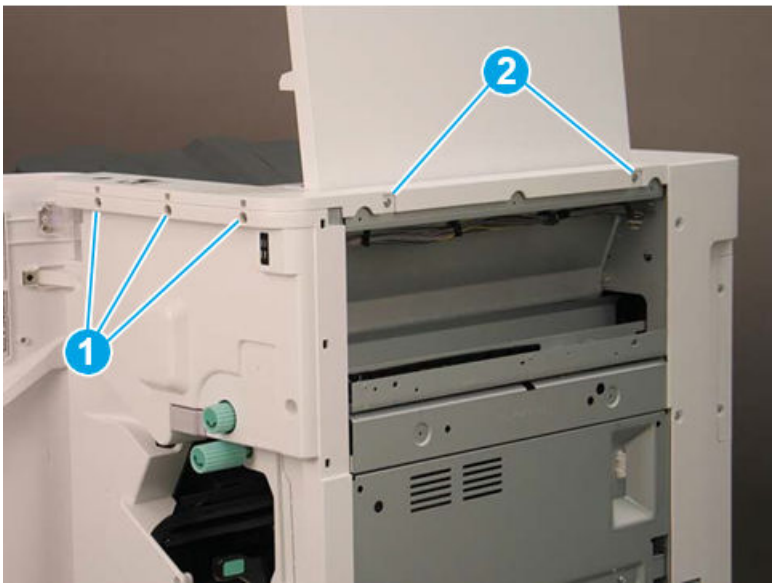
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1665 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

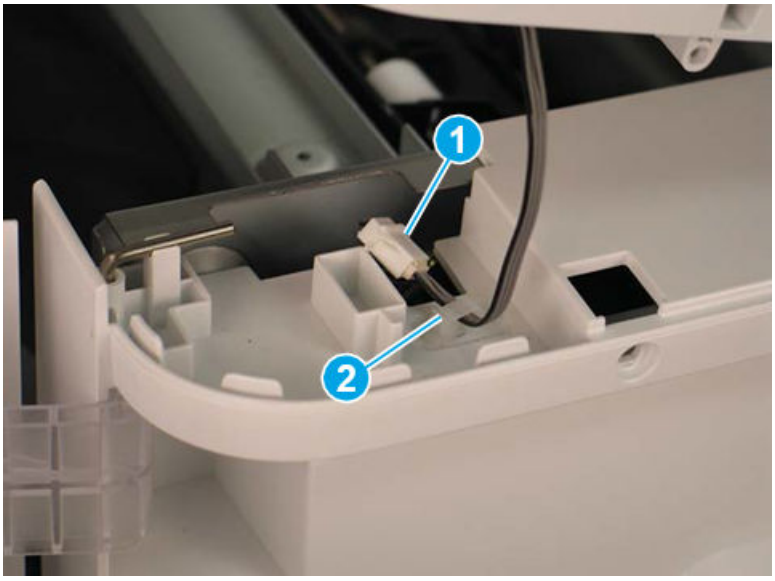
Figure 5-1666 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1667 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

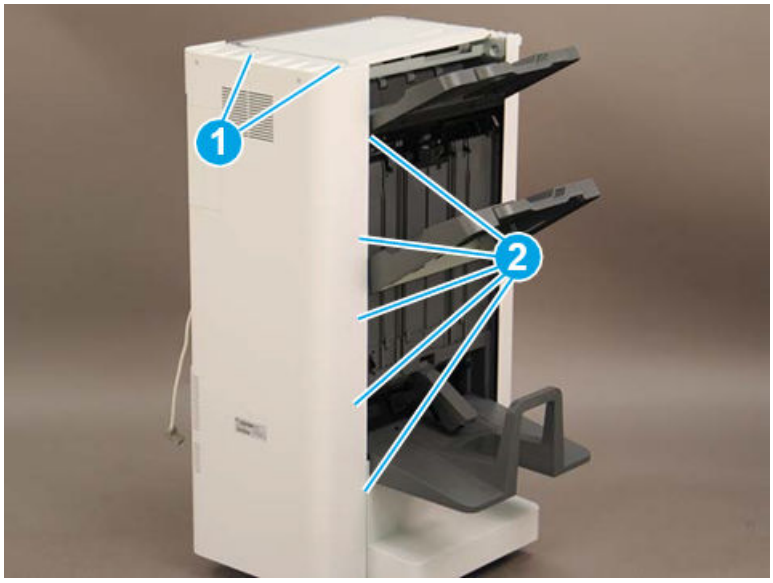


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1668 Remove seven screws

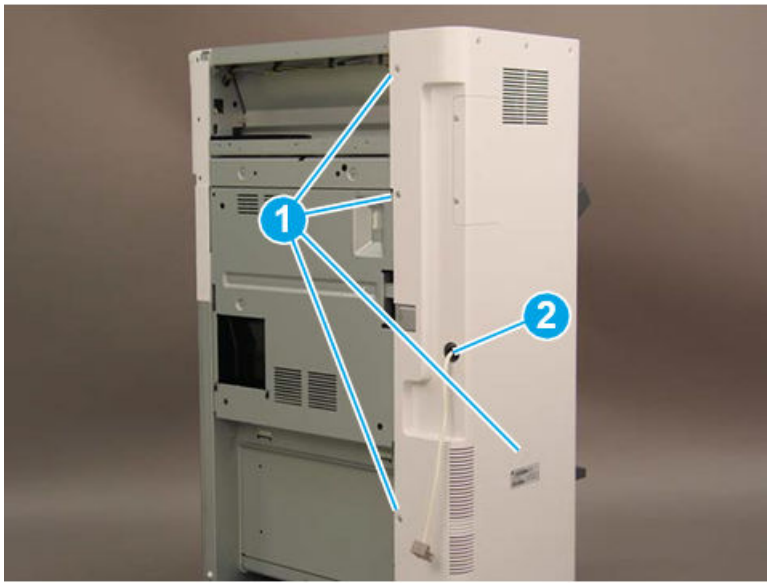


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1669 Remove the rear cover



Remove the booklet maker

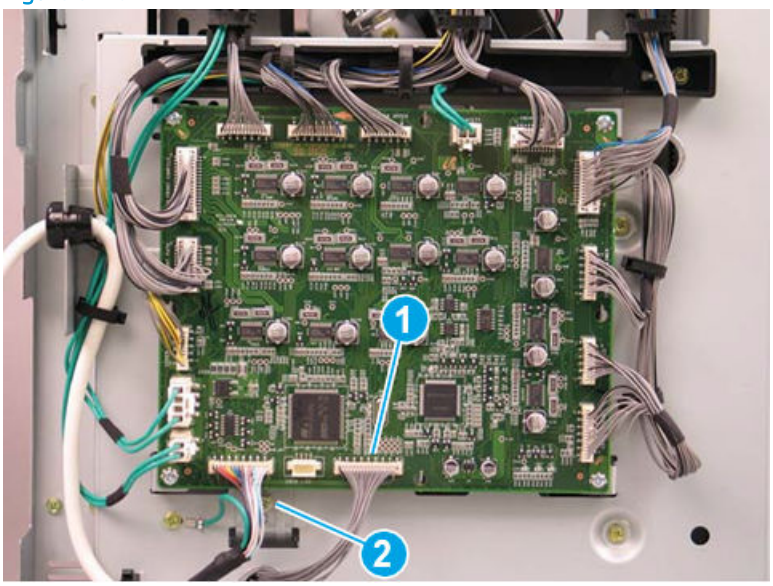
Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker.

1. Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1670 Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher

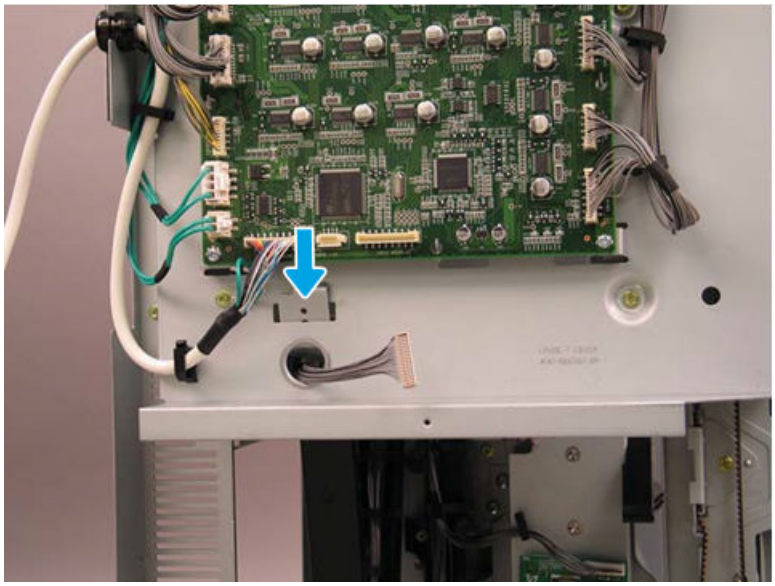
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 5-1671 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



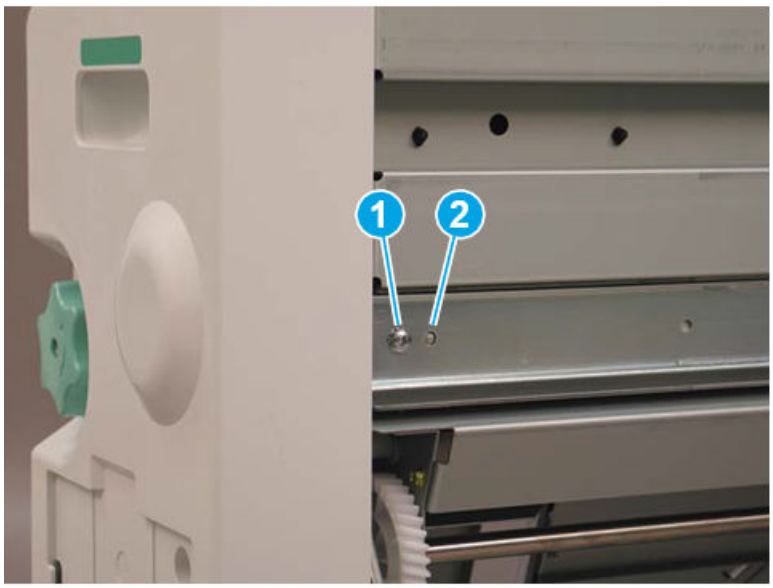
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 5-1672 Release the metal bracket



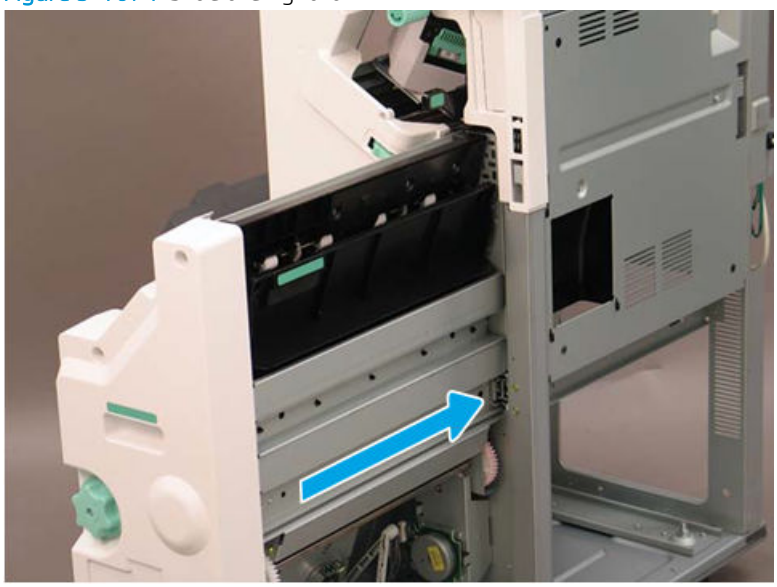
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1673 Remove one screw



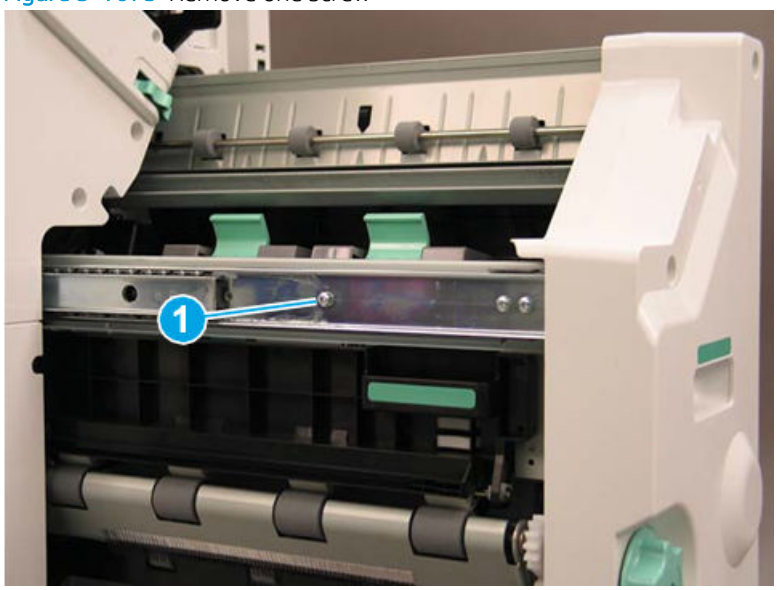
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 5-1674 Slide the right rail



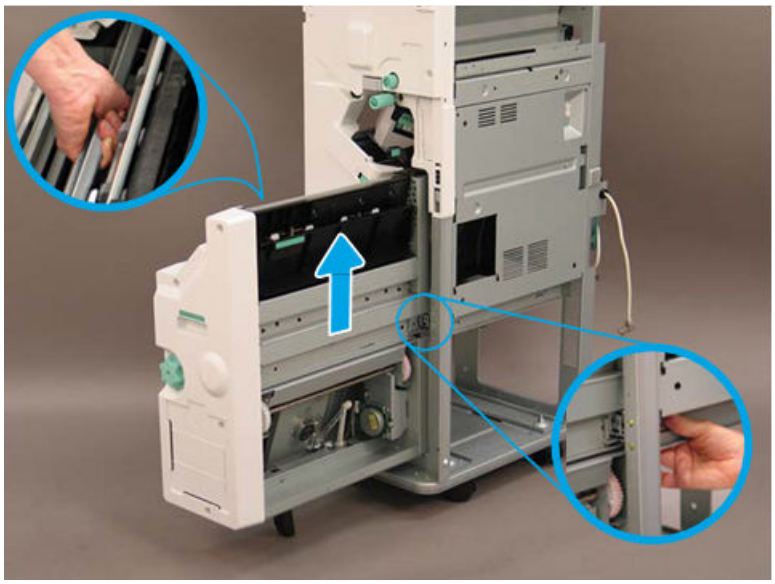
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1675 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1676 Remove the booklet maker



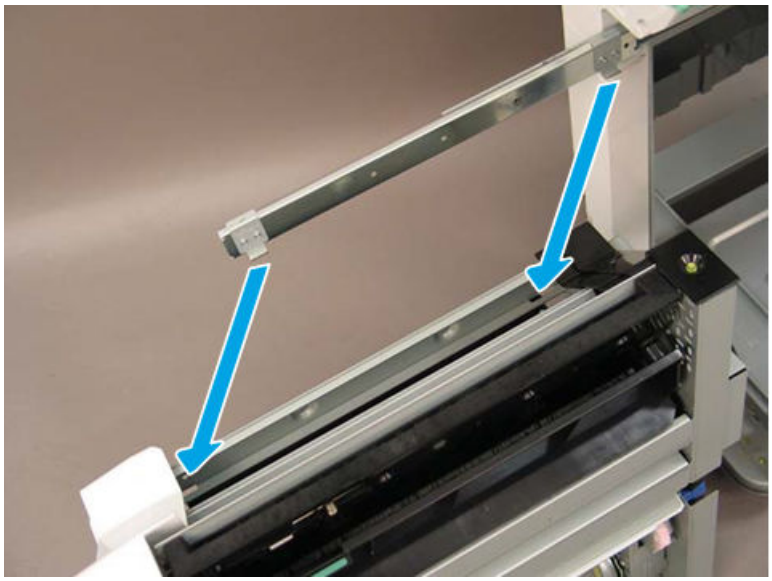
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: booklet maker

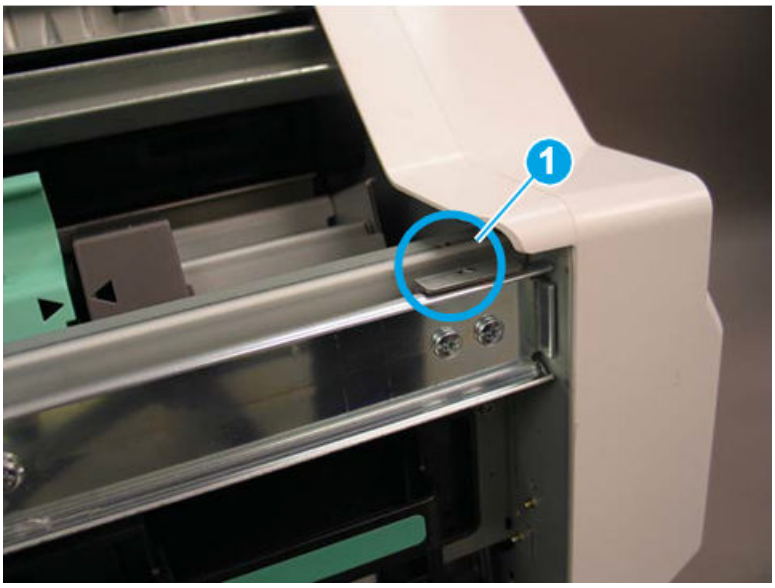
When installing the booklet maker, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1677 Position the hooks



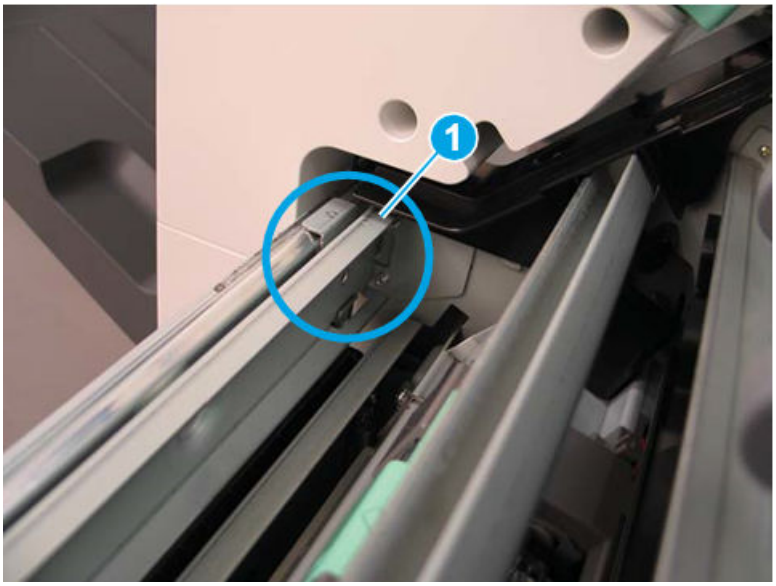
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1678 Align arrows



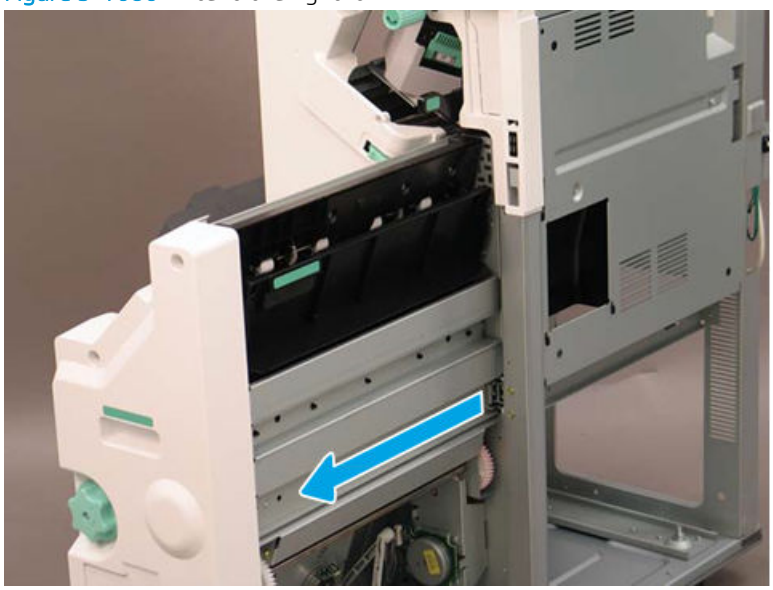
10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1679 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.

Figure 5-1680 Extend the right rail



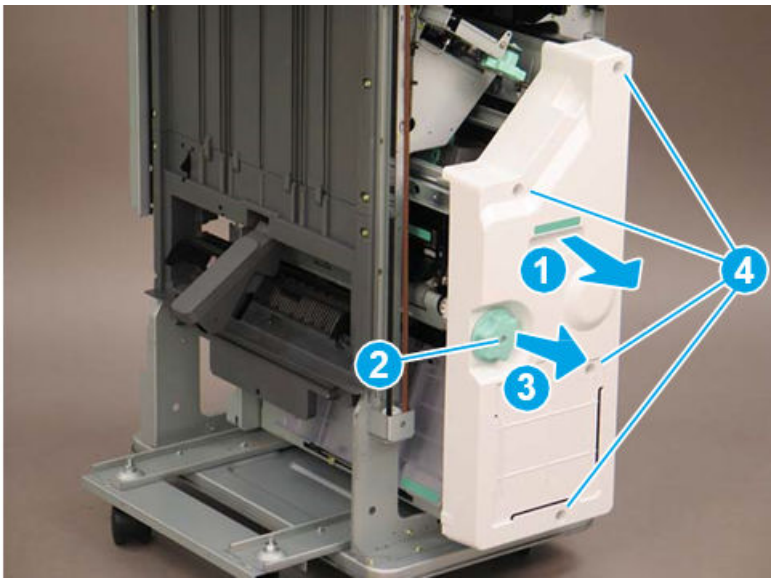
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

- Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1681 Remove five screws and the cover

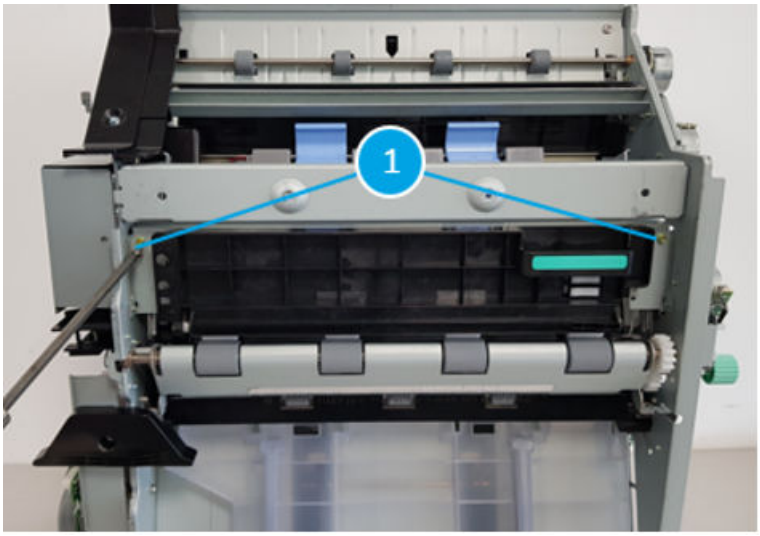


Remove the Booklet c-fold blade unit

Follow these steps to remove the Booklet c-fold blade unit.

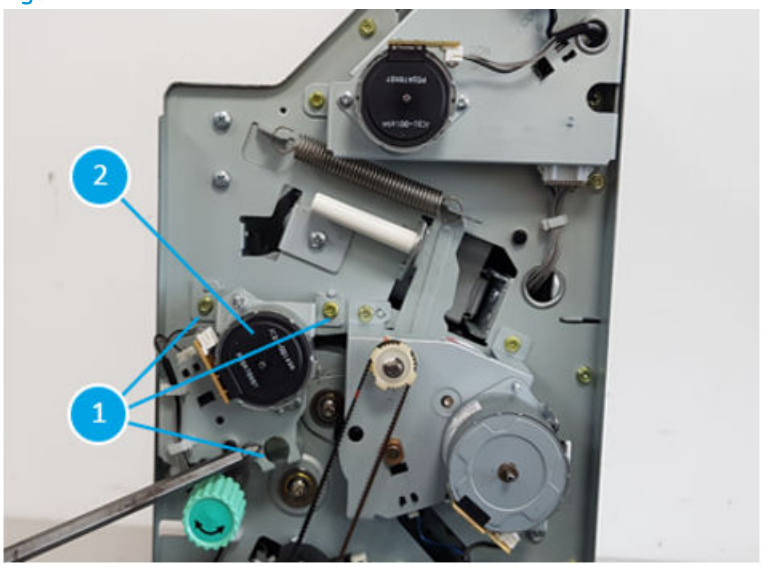
1. Remove two screws(callout 1) at the left of the booklet maker

Figure 5-1682 Remove two screws at the left of the booklet maker



2. Remove three screws(callout 1) at the front of the booklet maker to remove motor unit(callout 2) to reach out to the screw.

Figure 5-1683 Remove three screws to remove motor unit to reach out to the screw

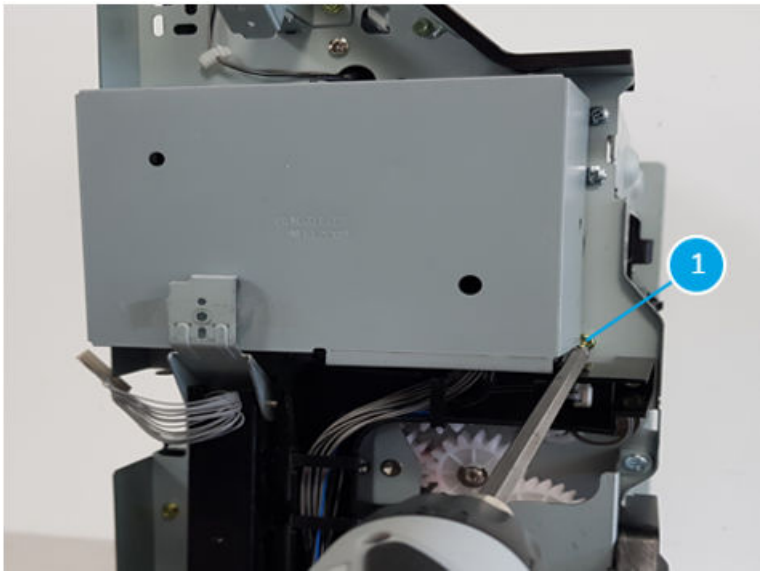


3. Remove one screw(callout 1) at the front of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1684 Remove one screw at the front of the booklet maker

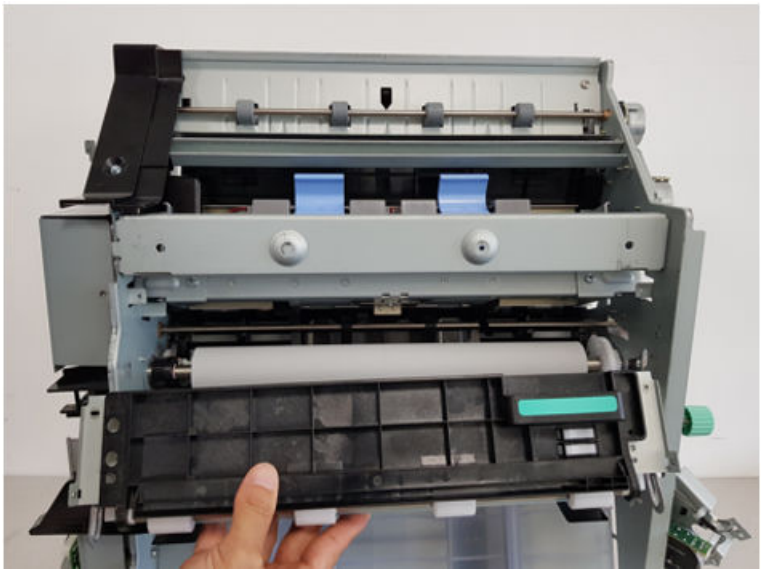
4. Remove one screw(callout 1) at the rear of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1685 Remove one screw at the rear of the booklet maker



5. Take the booklet c-fold blade unit out from the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1686 Take the booklet c-fold blade unit out from the booklet maker

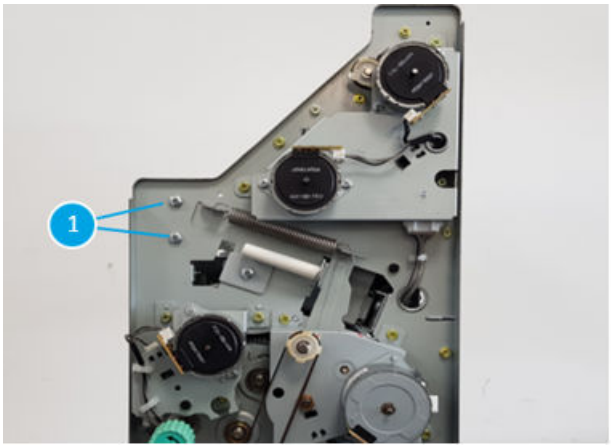


Remove the booklet stapler unit

Follow these steps to remove the booklet stapler unit.

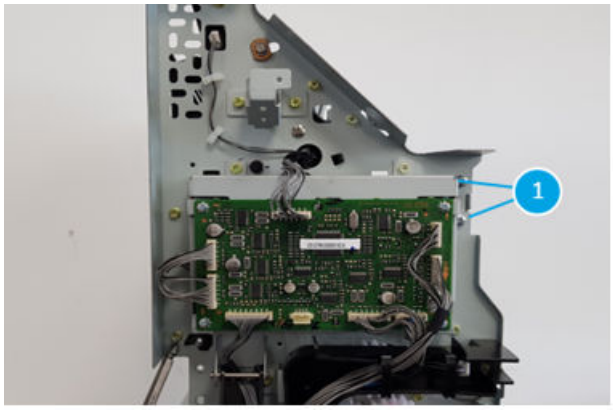
1. Remove two screws (callout 1) at the front of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1687 Remove two screws



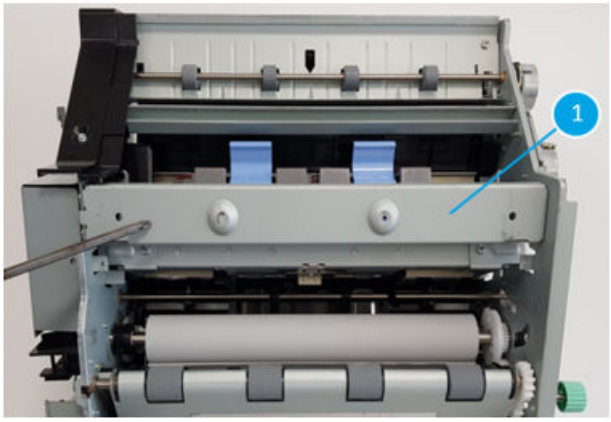
2. Remove two screws (callout 1) at the rear of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1688 Remove two screws



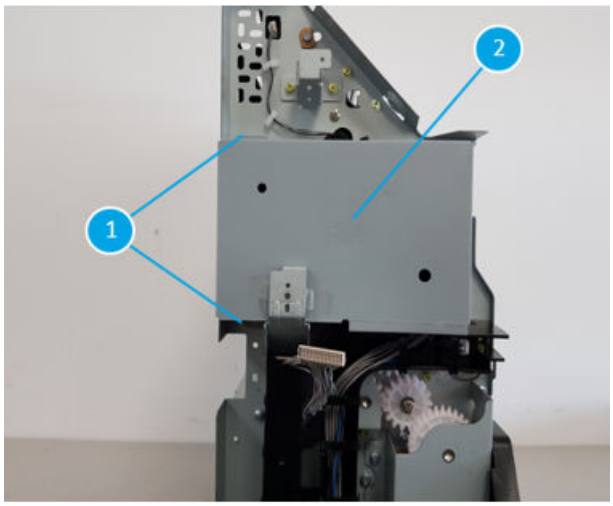
3. Remove the metal frame (callout 1)

Figure 5-1689 Remove the metal frame



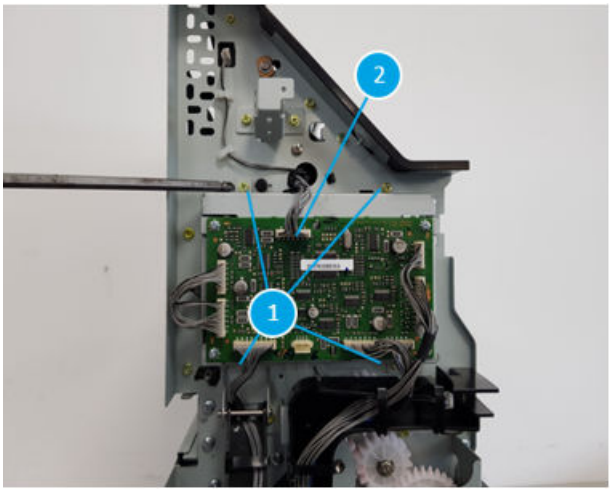
4. Remove two screws (callout 1) at the rear of the booklet maker to remove the board cover (callout 2)

Figure 5-1690 Remove the board cover



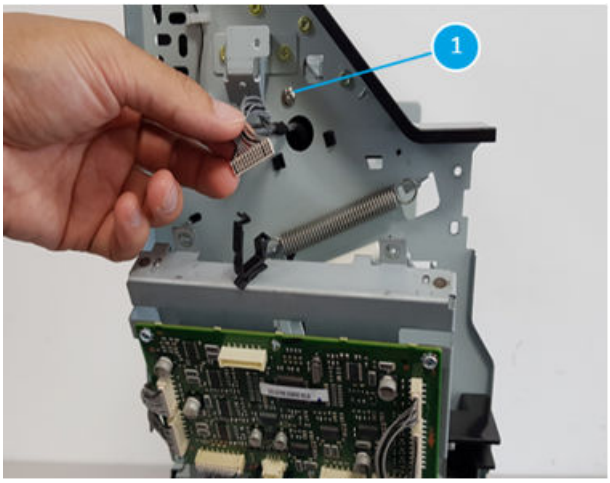
5. Remove four screws (callout 1) and unplug the connector (callout 2) at the rear of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1691 Remove four screws and unplug the connector



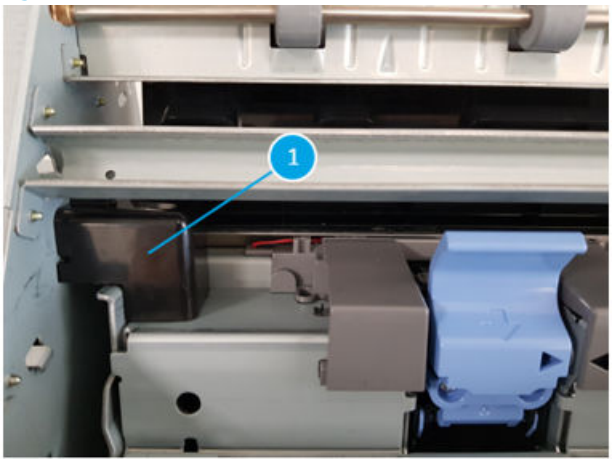
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1692 Remove one screw



7. Remove the connector cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1693 Remove the connector cover



8. Remove one screw(callout 1) at the front of the booklet maker.

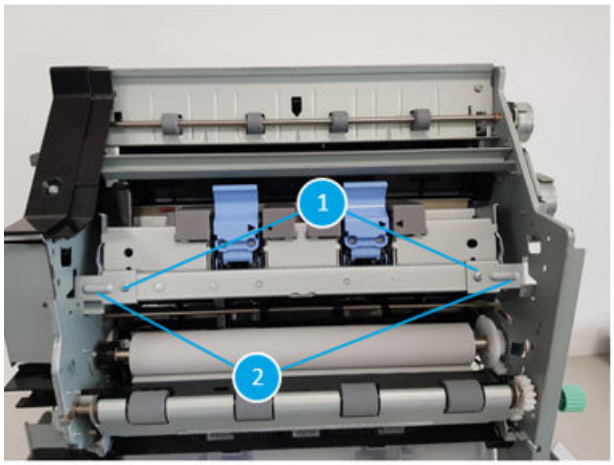
Figure 5-1694 Remove one screw

9. Remove one screw(callout 1) at the rear of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1695 Remove one screw

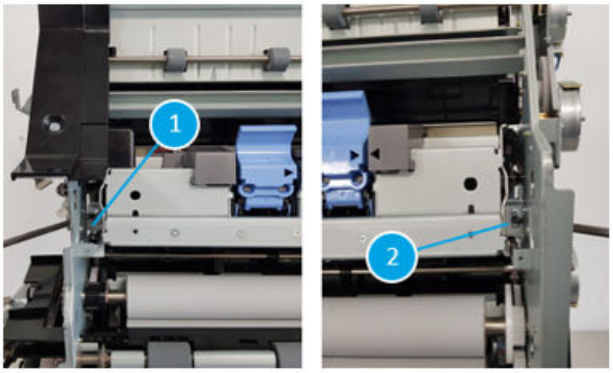
10. Remove two screws (callout 1) at the left of the booklet maker and pull the metal bracket (callout 2) out each side.

Figure 5-1696 Remove two screws



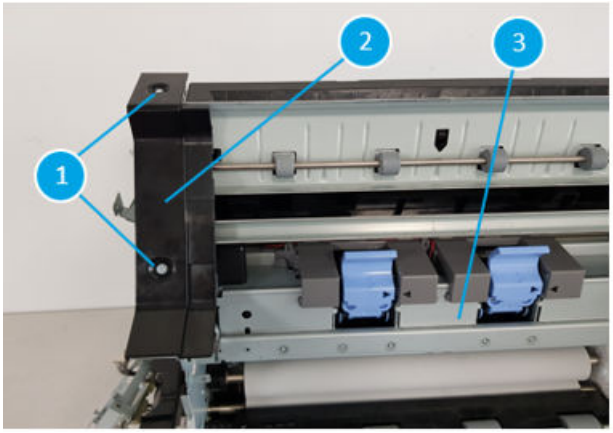
11. Remove one screw(callout 1) and remove one screw(callout 2) (Remove two screws each side)

Figure 5-1697 Remove two screws each side



12. Remove two screws (callout 1) and remove the black cover (callout 2) and pull the stapler unit (callout 3) out

Figure 5-1698 Pull the stapler unit



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet fold unit

Removal and replacement: Booklet blade

Learn how to remove and replace the tray booklet blade.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet blade on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-158 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01163A	Booklet blade

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

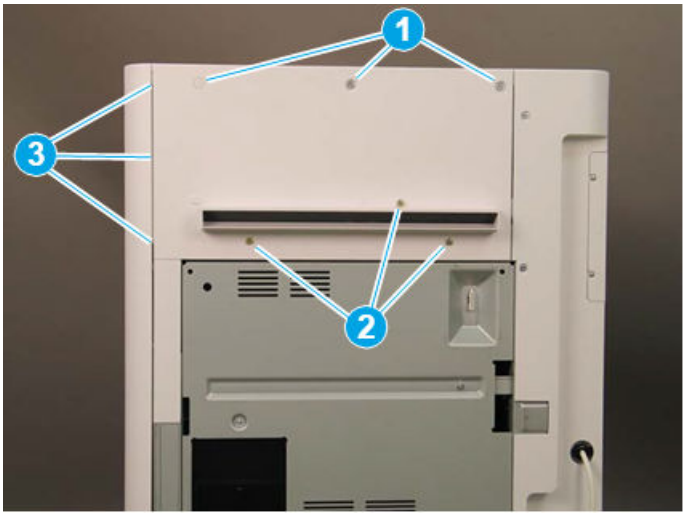
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1699 Remove the right upper cover

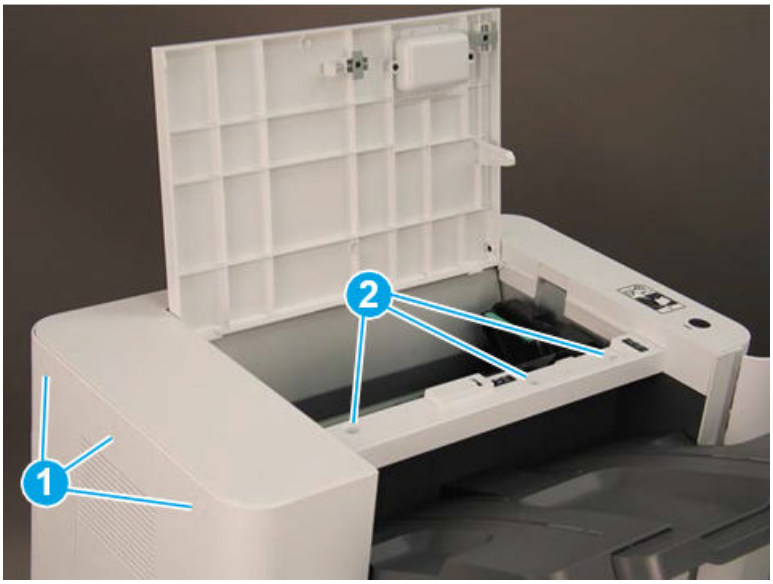


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

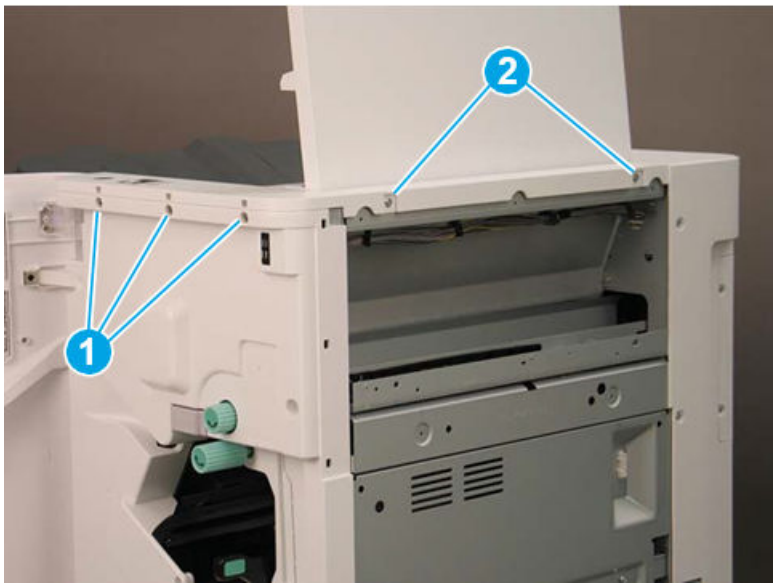
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1700 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

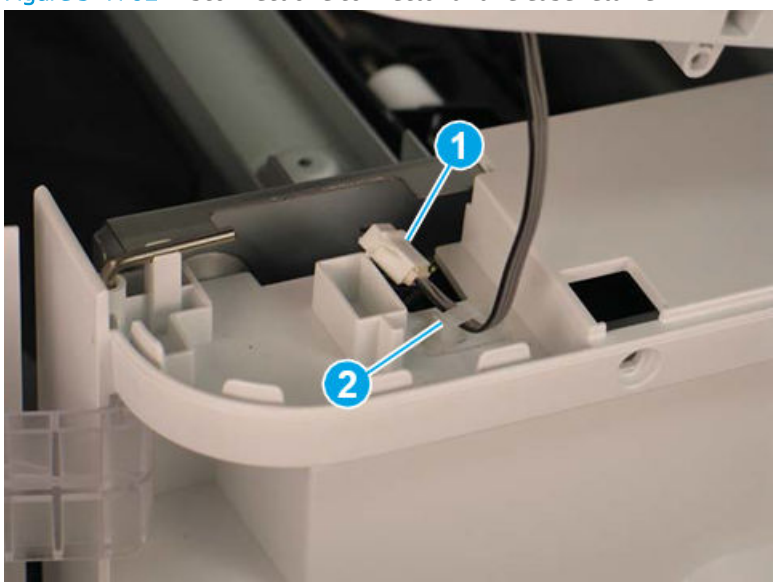
Figure 5-1701 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1702 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

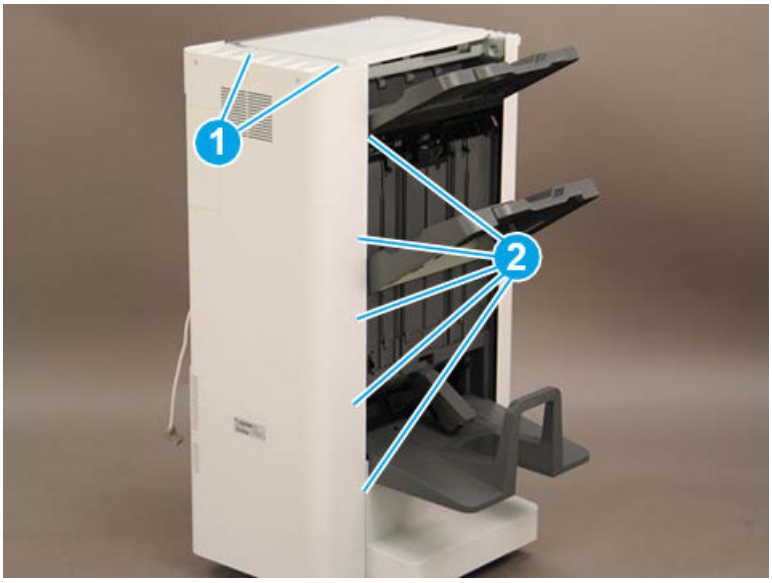


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1703 Remove seven screws

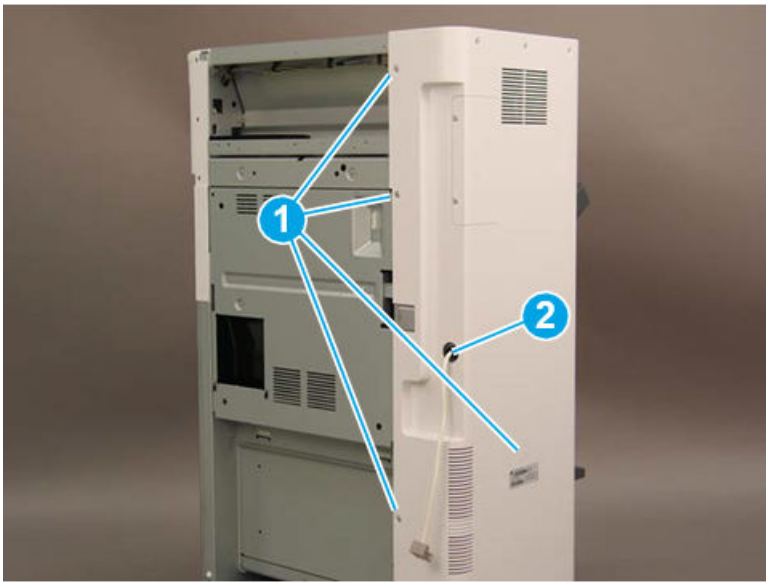


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1704 Remove the rear cover



Remove the booklet maker

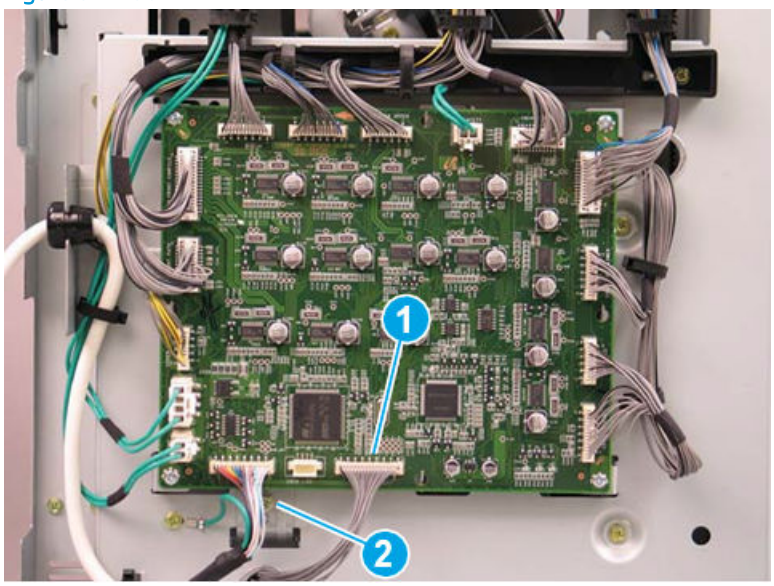
Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker.

1. Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1705 Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher

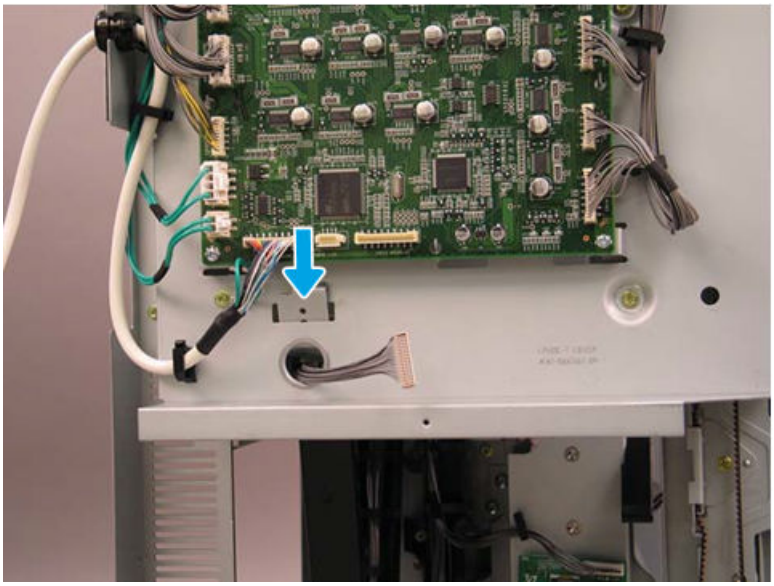
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 5-1706 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



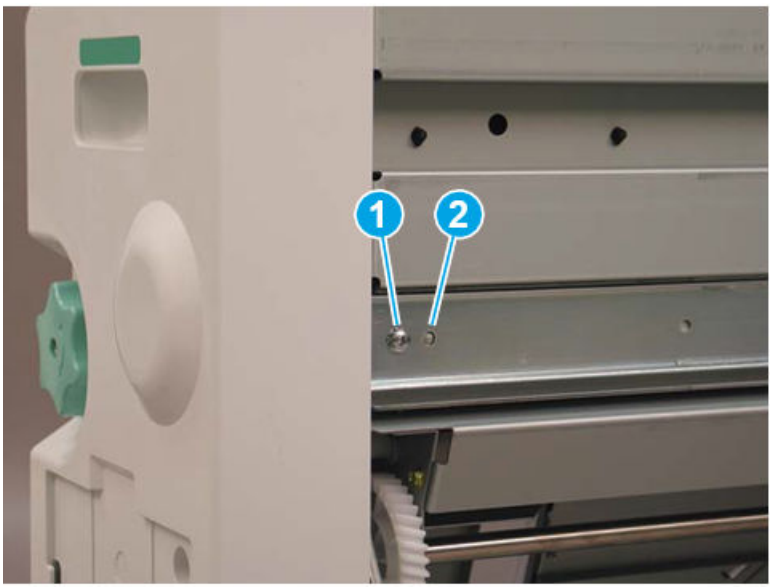
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 5-1707 Release the metal bracket



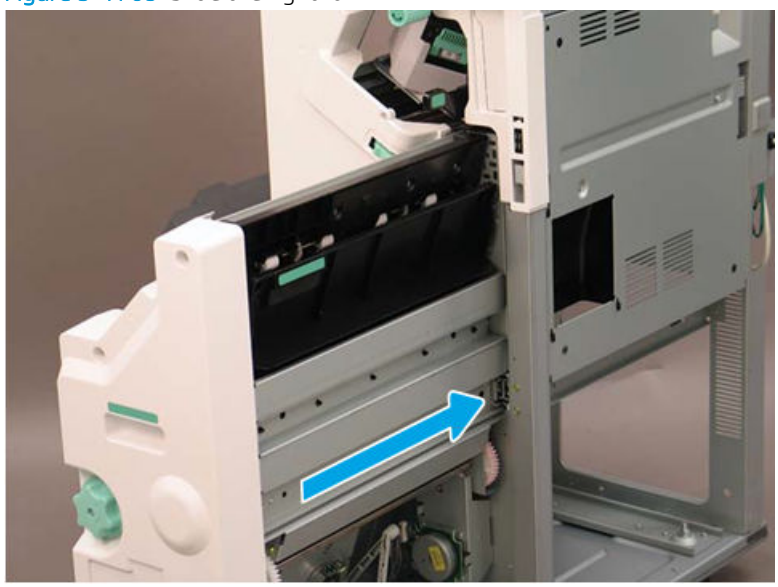
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1708 Remove one screw



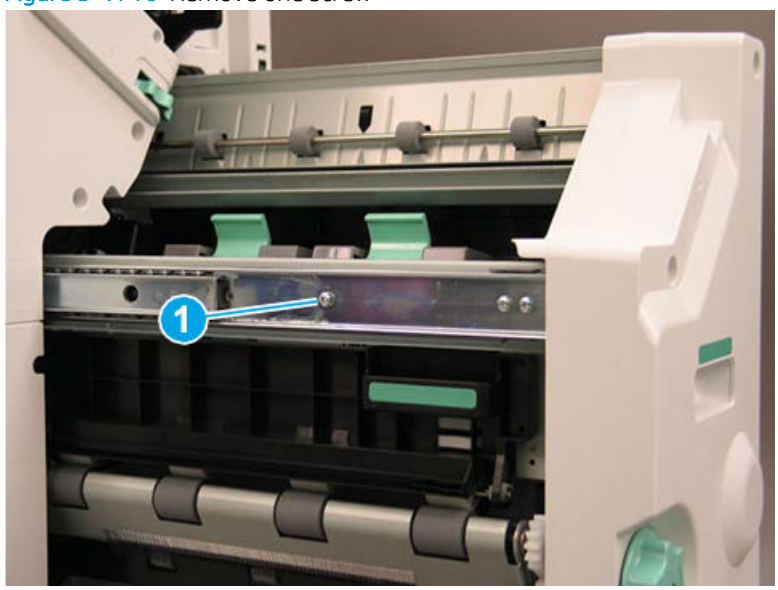
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 5-1709 Slide the right rail



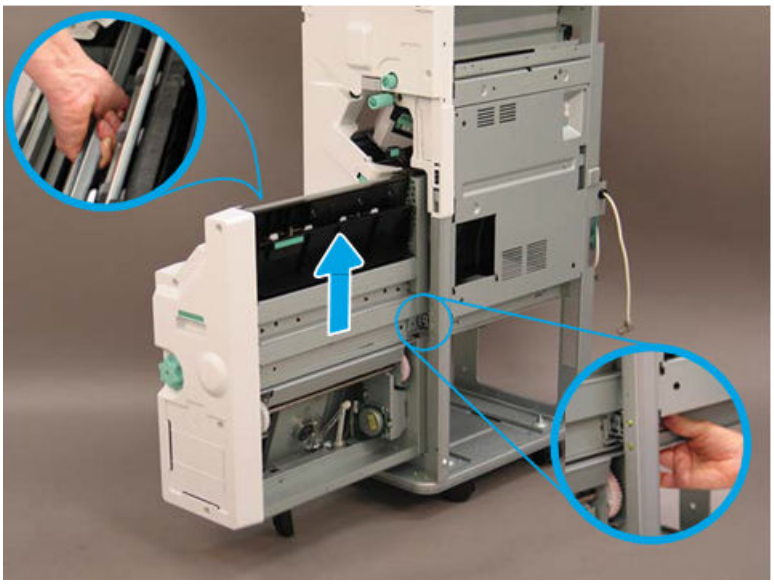
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1710 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1711 Remove the booklet maker



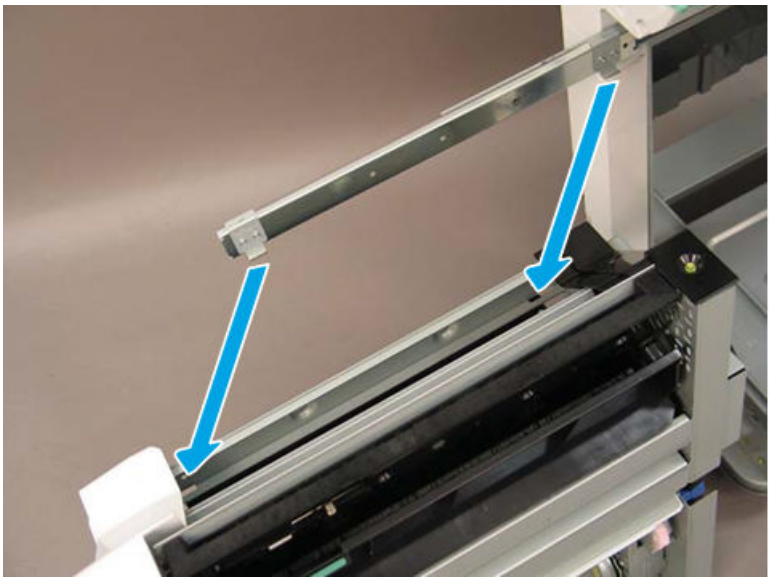
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: booklet maker

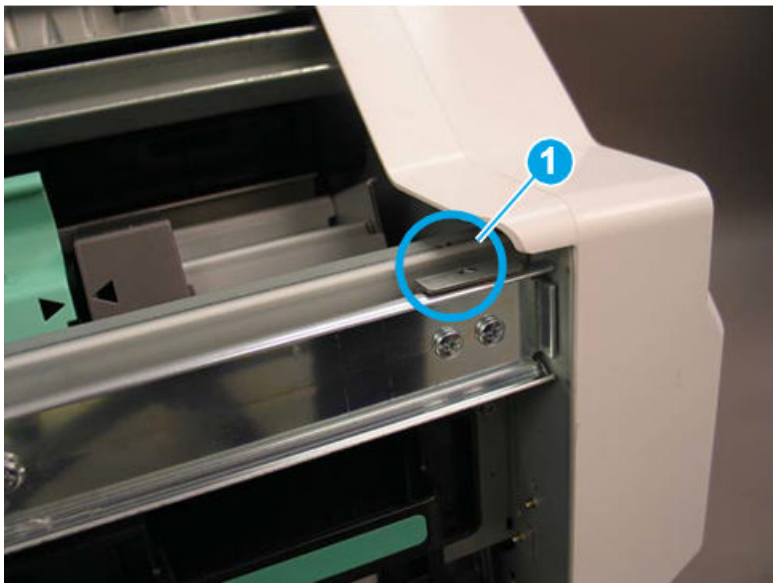
When installing the booklet maker, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1712 Position the hooks



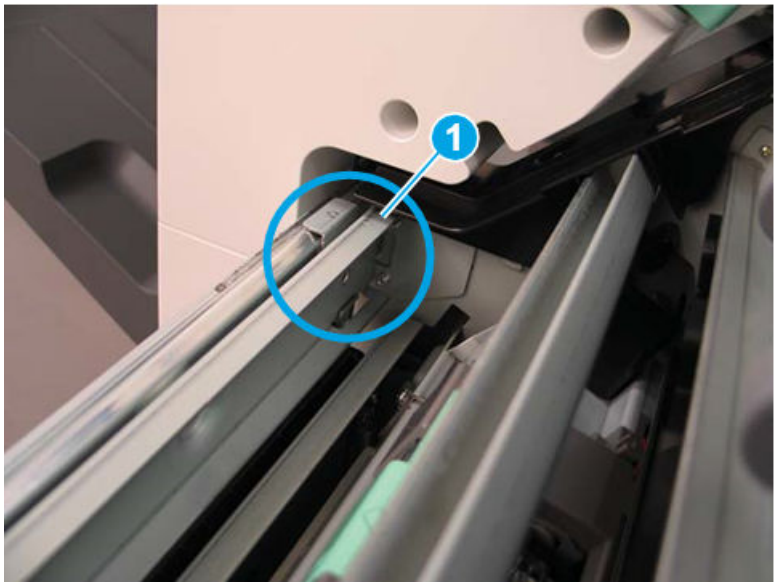
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1713 Align arrows



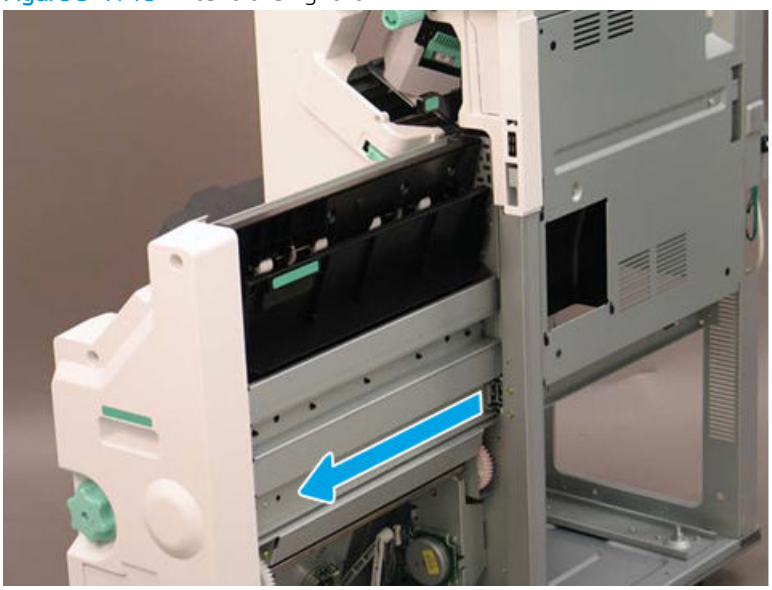
10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1714 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.

Figure 5-1715 Extend the right rail



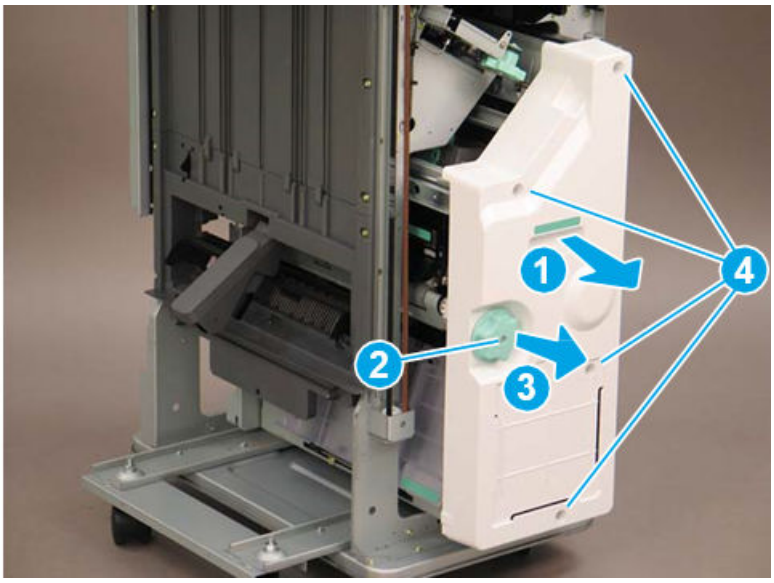
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

▲ Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1716 Remove five screws and the cover

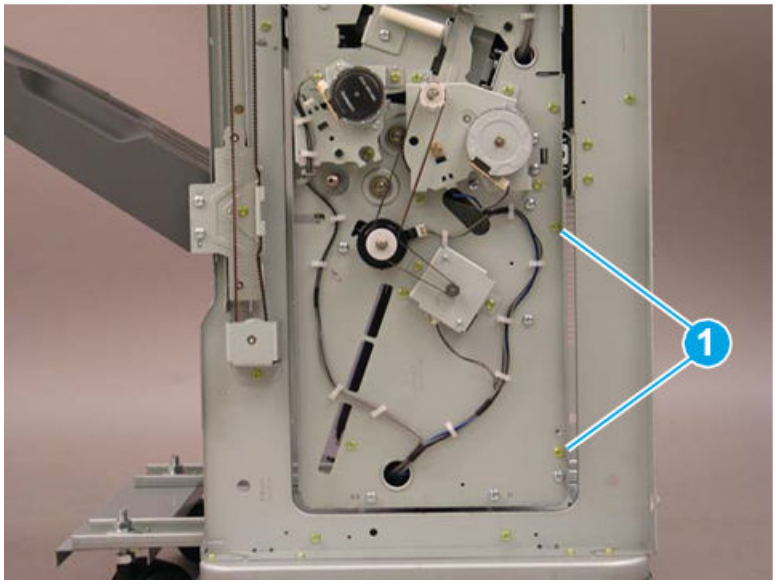


Remove the booklet right lower shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet right lower shield.

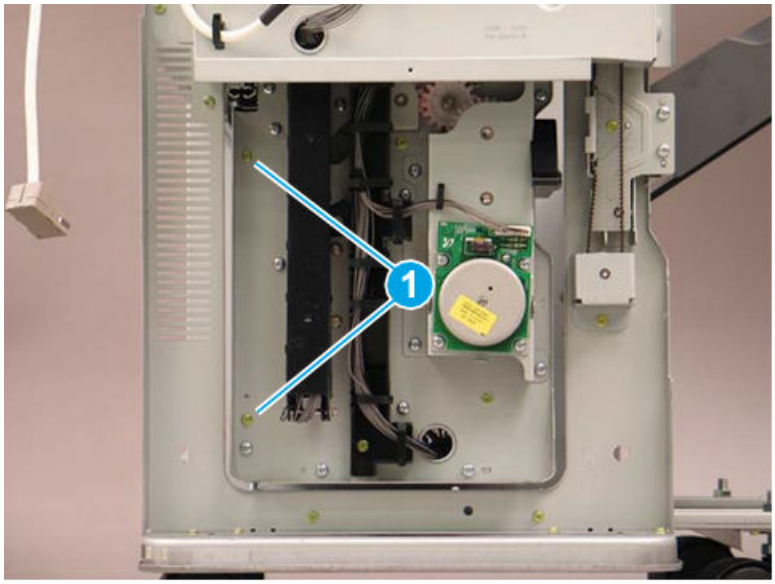
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1717 Remove two screws



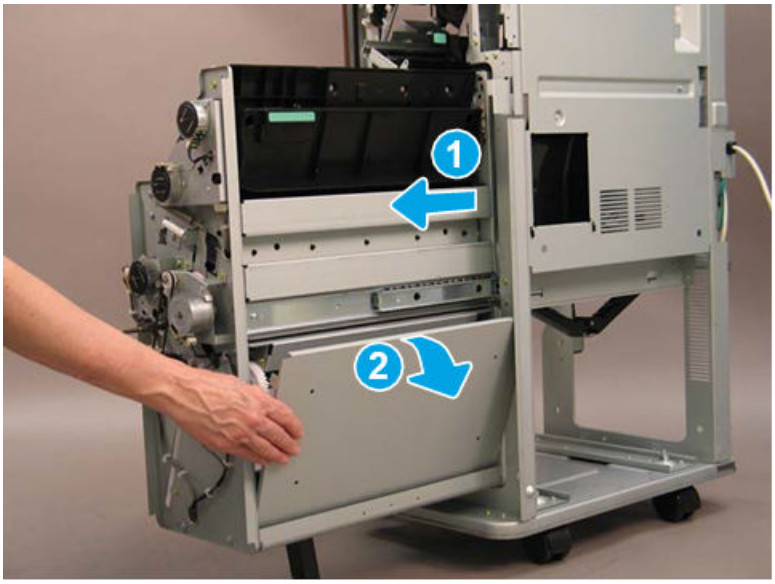
2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1718 Remove two screws



3. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the right lower shield (callout 2) away from the booklet maker to remove it.

Figure 5-1719 Remove the right lower shield

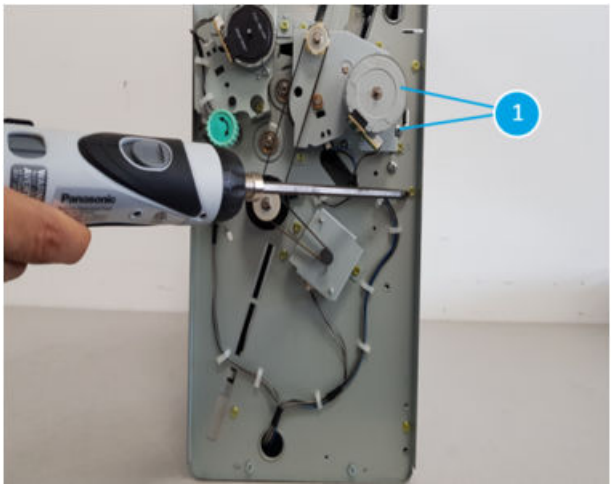


Remove the booklet maker middle right shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker middle right shield.

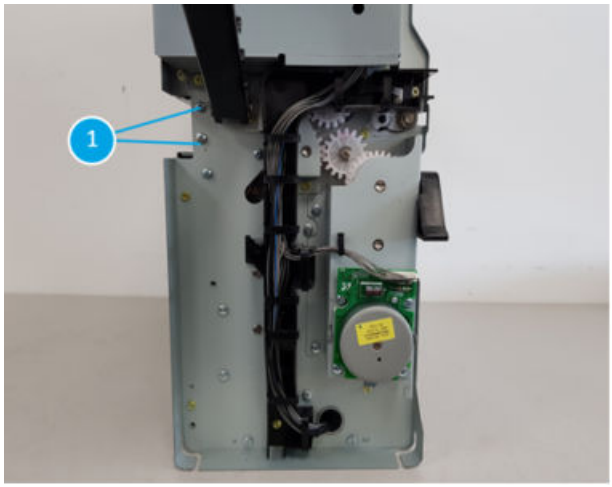
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1720 Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker



2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1721 Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker

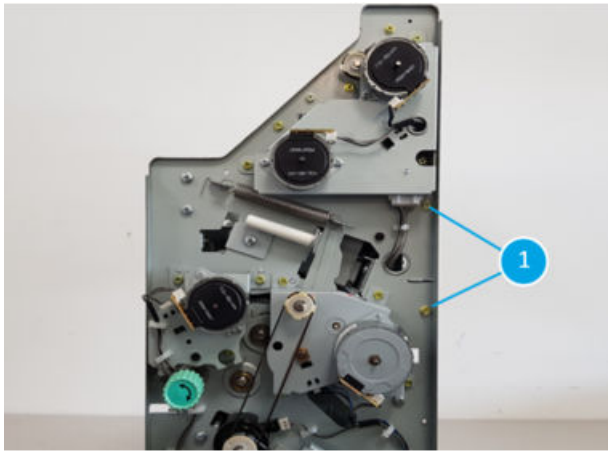


Remove the booklet finisher upper right shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet finisher upper right shield.

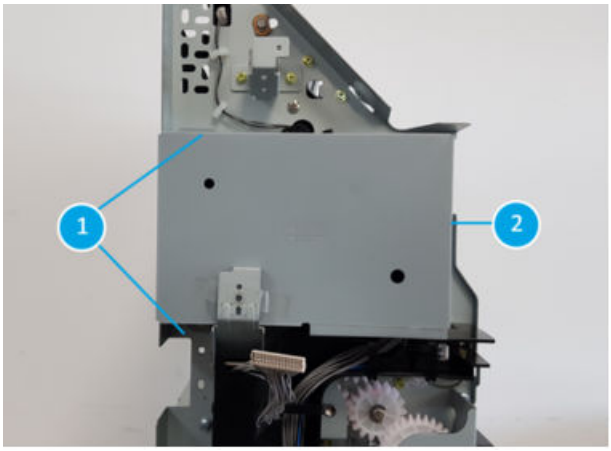
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1)

Figure 5-1722 Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker



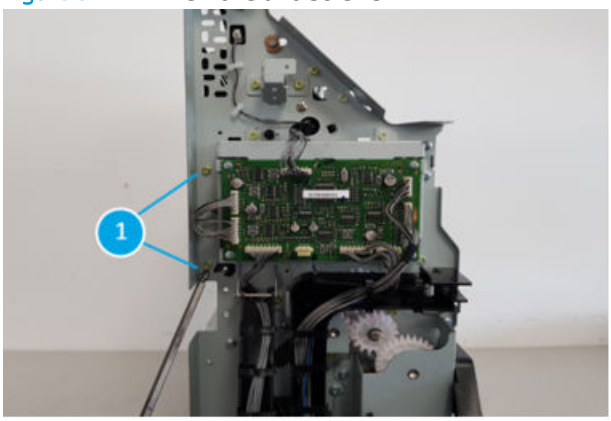
2. Remove two screws(callout 1) and one screw(callout 2) at the back of the booklet maker and then remove the board cover.

Figure 5-1723 Remove the board cover



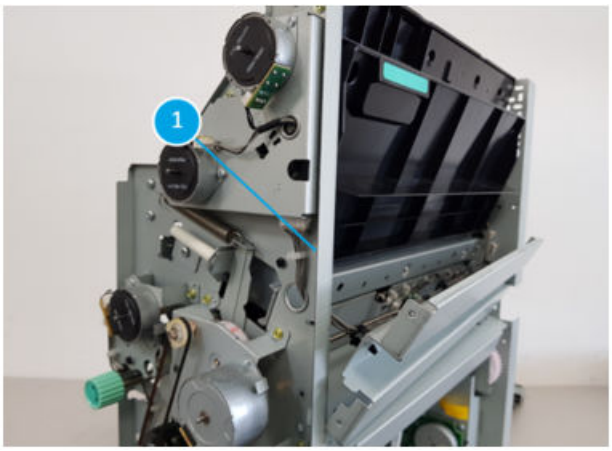
3. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1724 Remove two screws



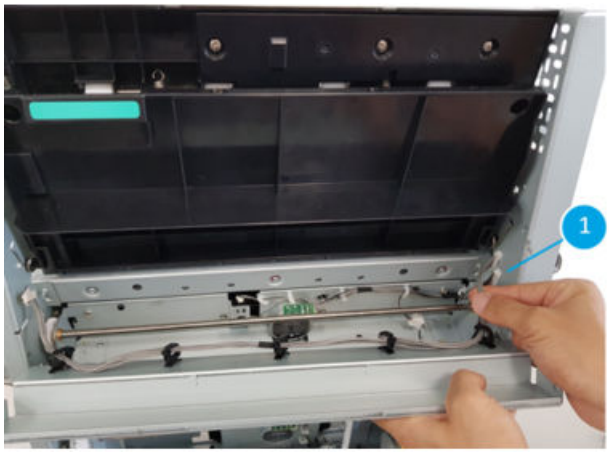
4. Disconnect one connector at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1725 Disconnect one connector



5. Disconnect one connector at the right of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1726 Disconnect one connector

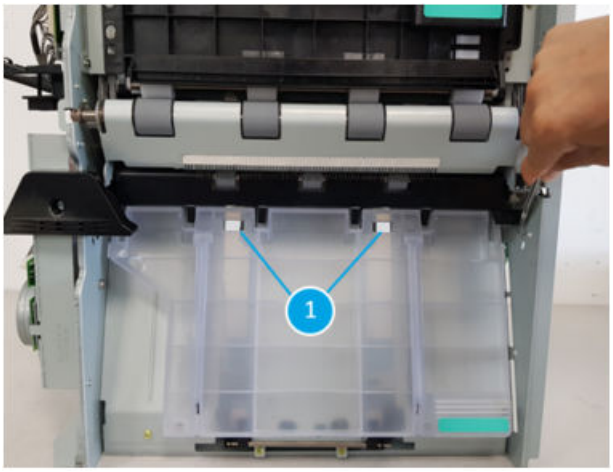


Remove the booklet tamper and fold unit

Follow these steps to remove the booklet tamper and fold unit.

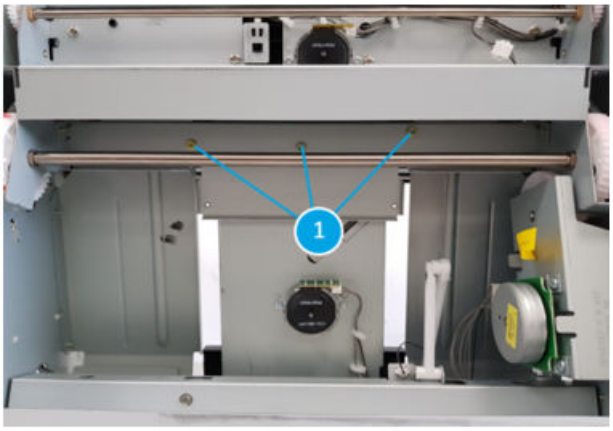
1. Remove two screws at the left of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1727 Remove two screws at the left of the booklet maker



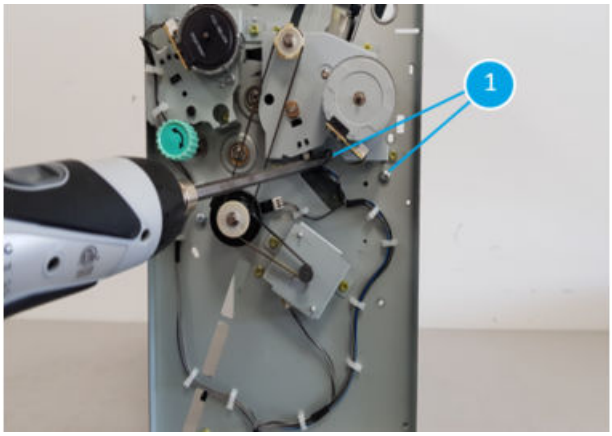
2. Remove three screws at the right of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1728 Remove three screws at the right of the booklet maker



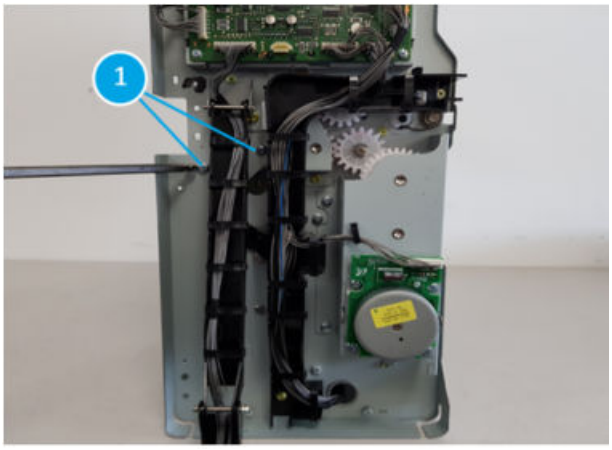
3. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1729 Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker



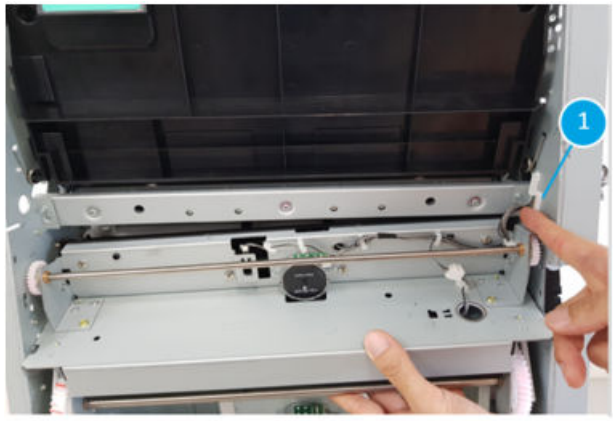
4. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1730 Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker



5. Disconnect one connector at the right of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1731 Disconnect one connector

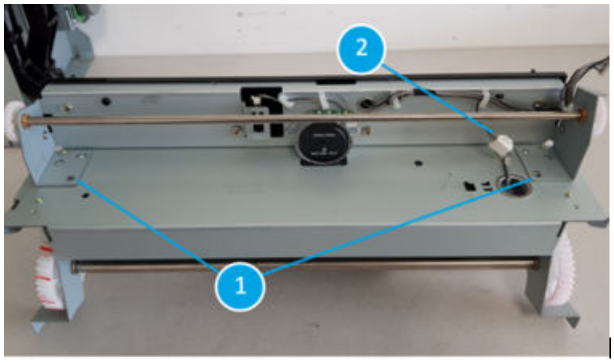


Remove the booklet blade

Follow these steps to remove the booklet blade.

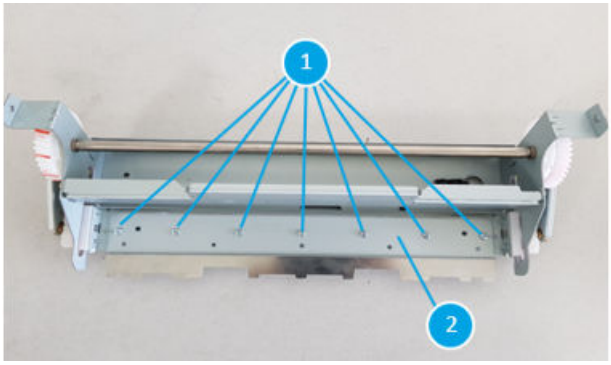
1. Remove two screws (callout 1) and disconnect one connector (callout 2)

Figure 5-1732 Remove two screws and disconnect one connector



2. Remove 7 screws (callout 1) and remove the booklet blade (callout 2)

Figure 5-1733 Remove 7 screws and remove the booklet blade



NOTE: Be sure to make the scale when you reassemble with the new blade

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet blade home sensor (S45)

Learn how to remove and replace the tray booklet blade home sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet blade home sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-159 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Booklet blade home sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

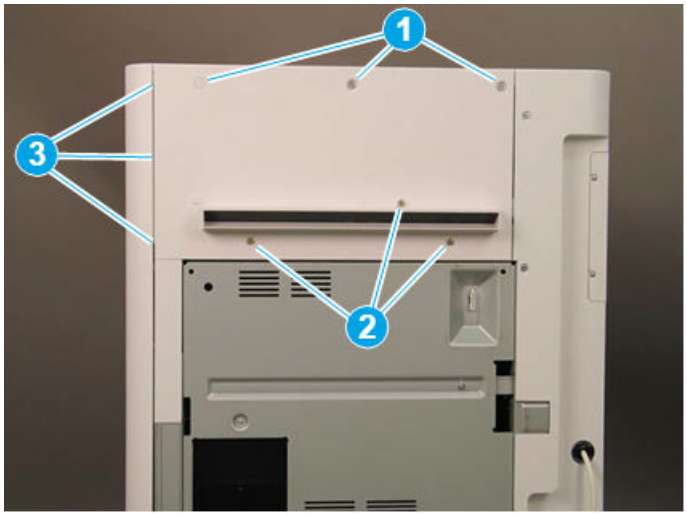
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1734 Remove the right upper cover

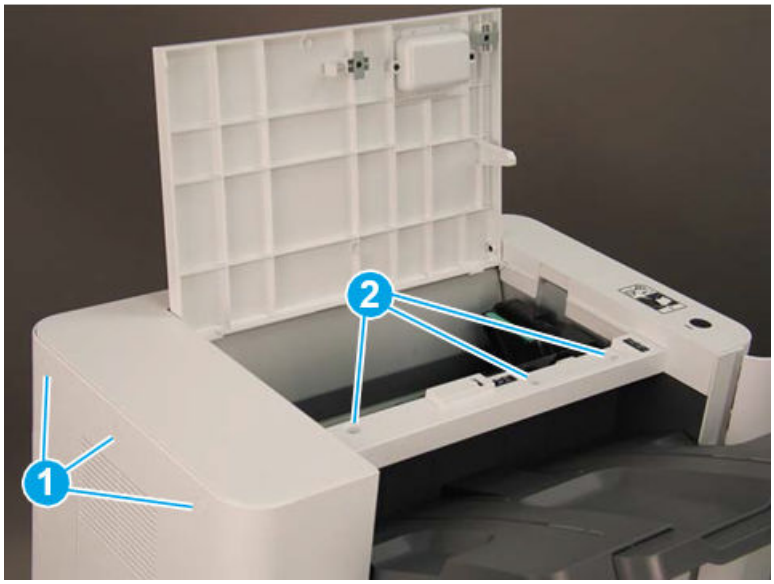


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

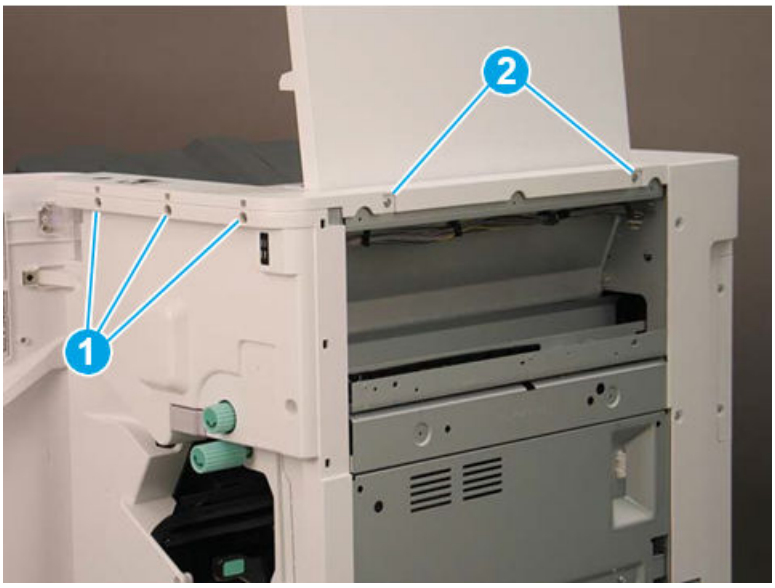
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1735 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

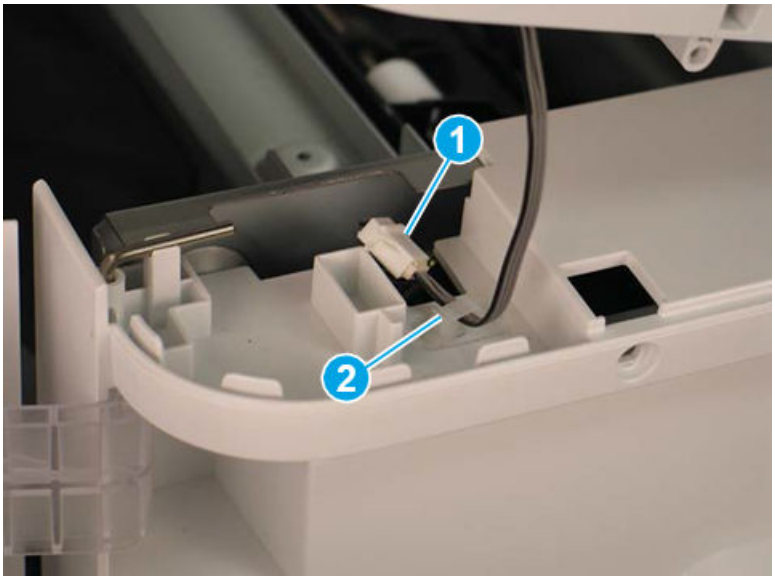
Figure 5-1736 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1737 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

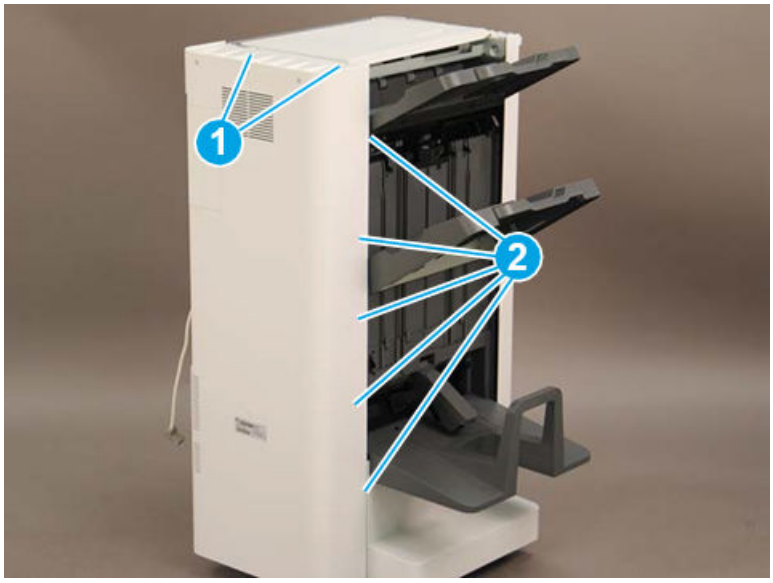


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1738 Remove seven screws

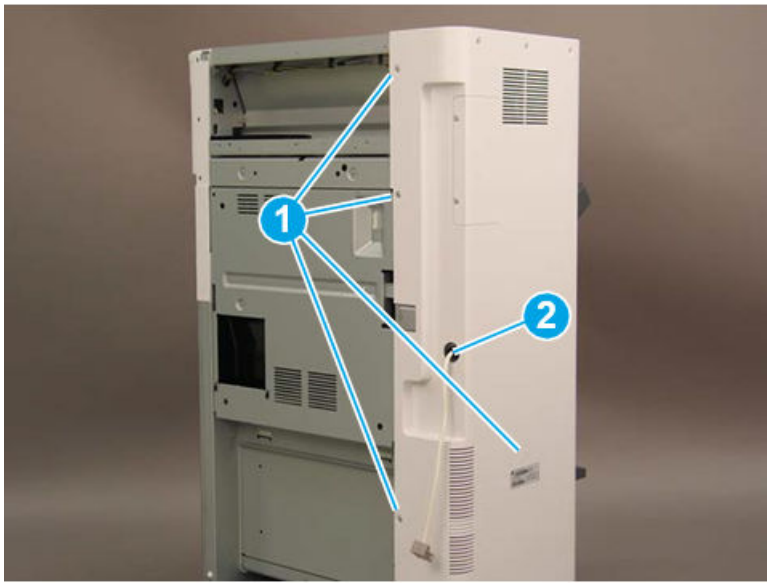


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1739 Remove the rear cover



Remove the booklet maker

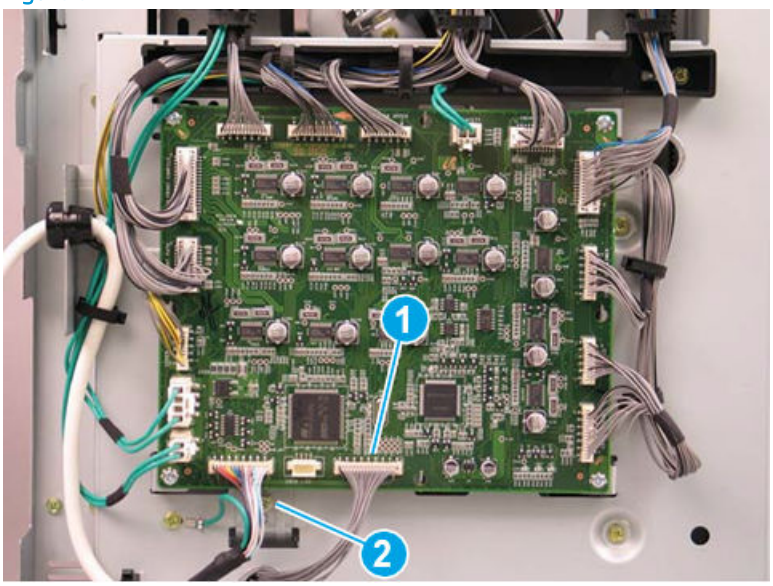
Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker.

1. Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1740 Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher

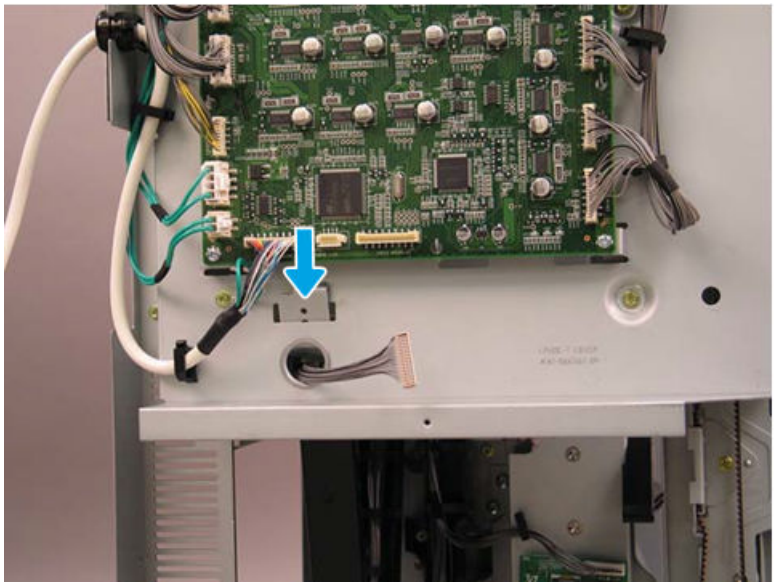
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 5-1741 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



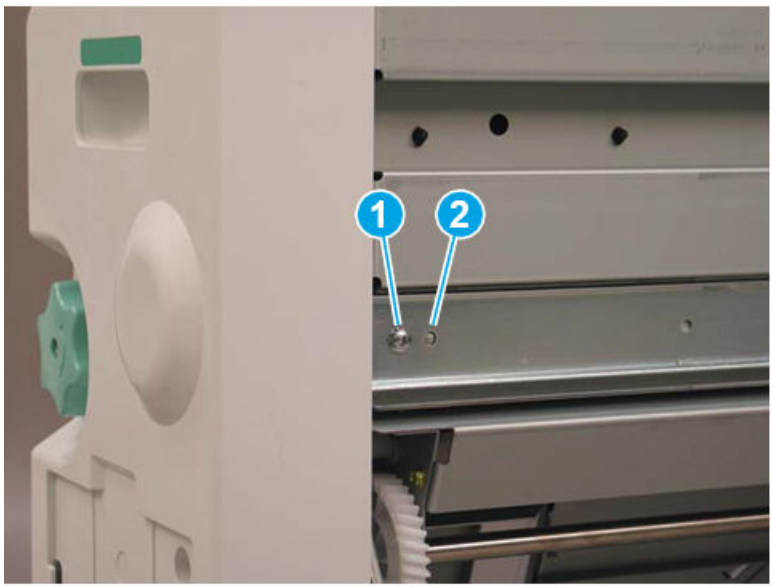
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 5-1742 Release the metal bracket



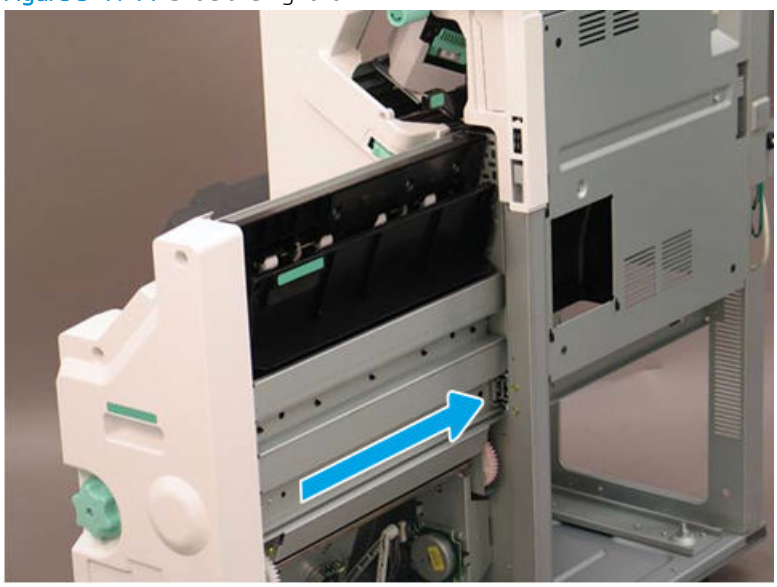
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1743 Remove one screw



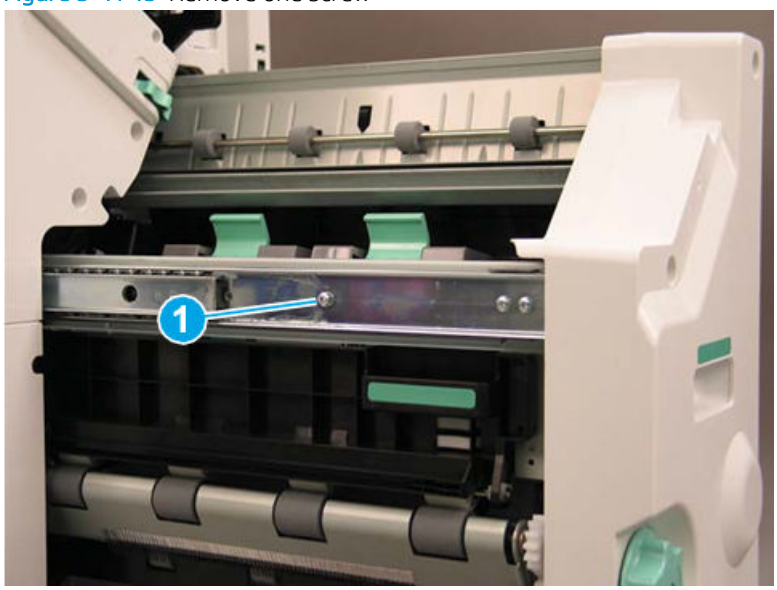
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 5-1744 Slide the right rail



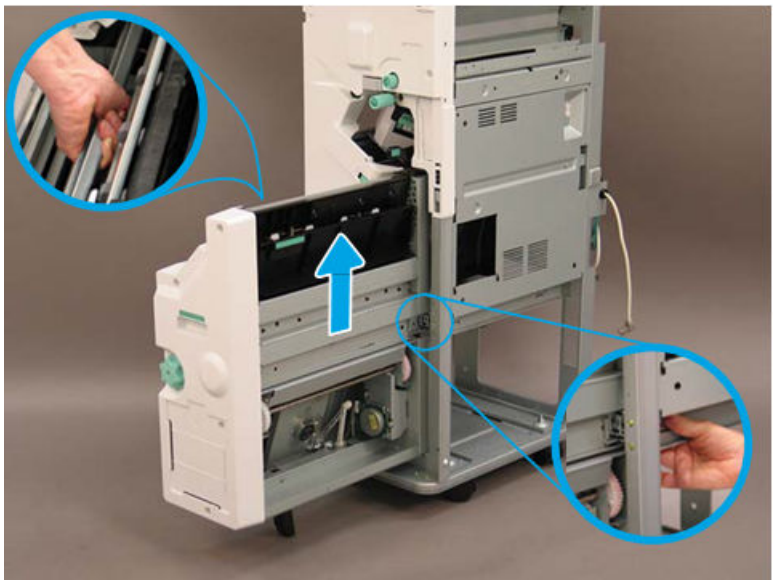
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1745 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1746 Remove the booklet maker



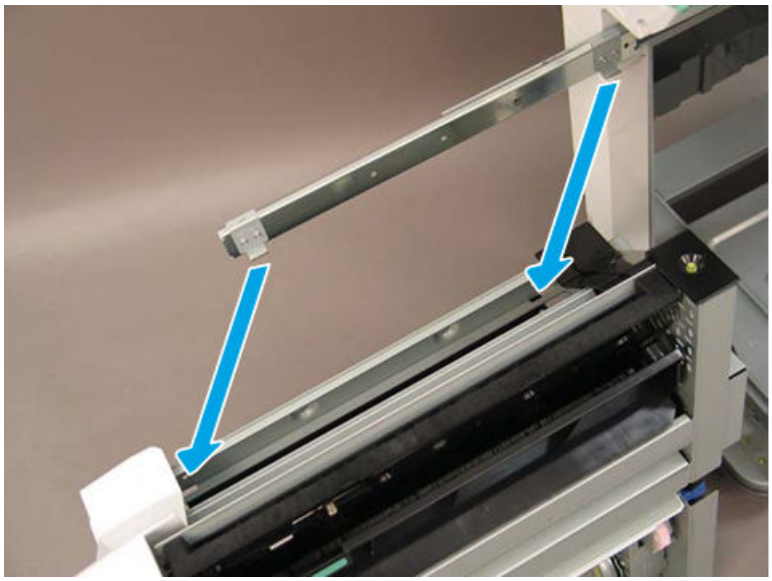
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: booklet maker

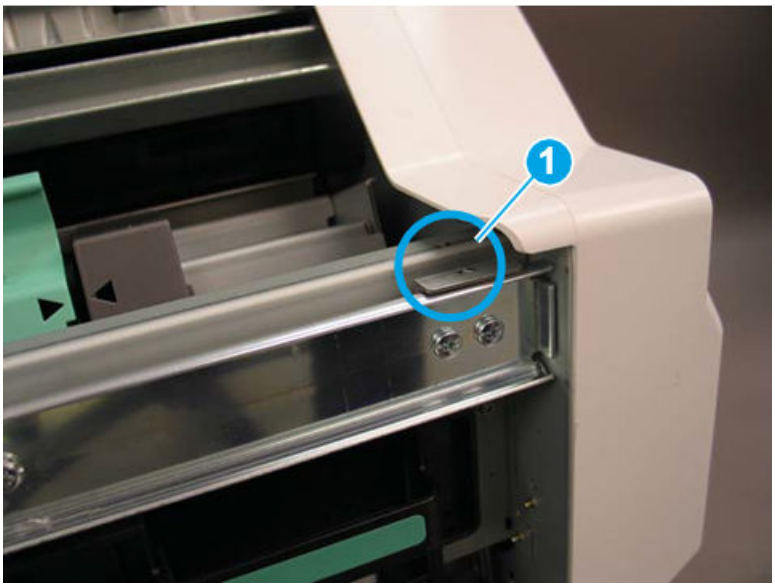
When installing the booklet maker, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1747 Position the hooks



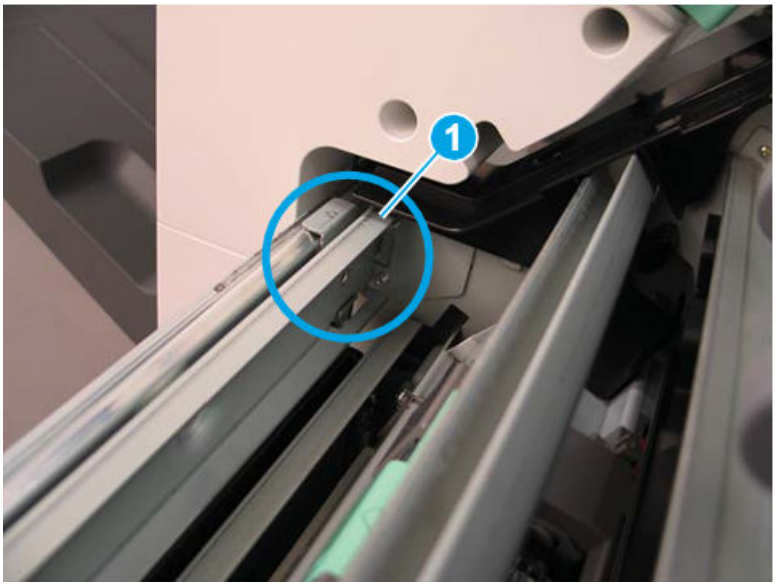
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1748 Align arrows



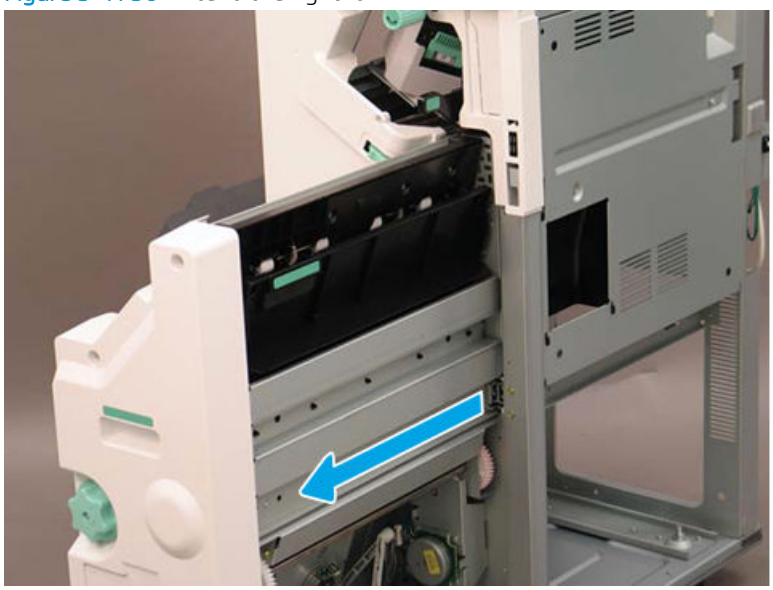
10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1749 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.

Figure 5-1750 Extend the right rail



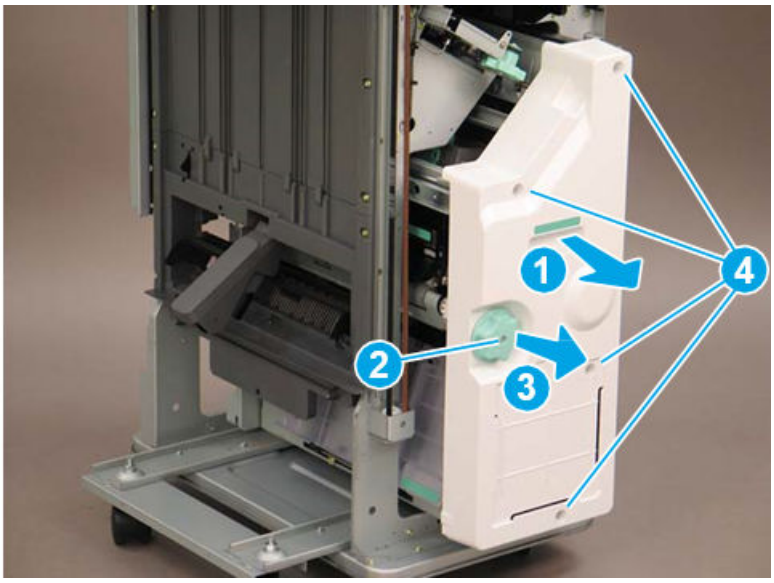
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

- Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1751 Remove five screws and the cover

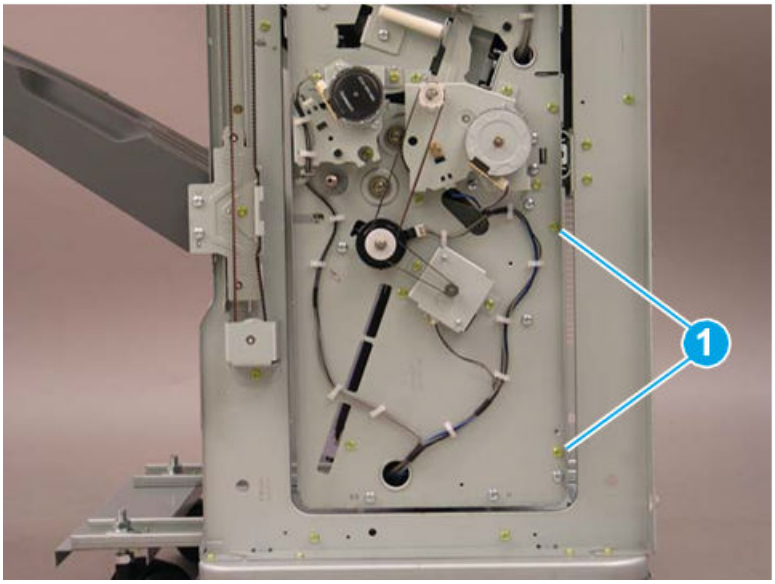


Remove the booklet right lower shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet right lower shield.

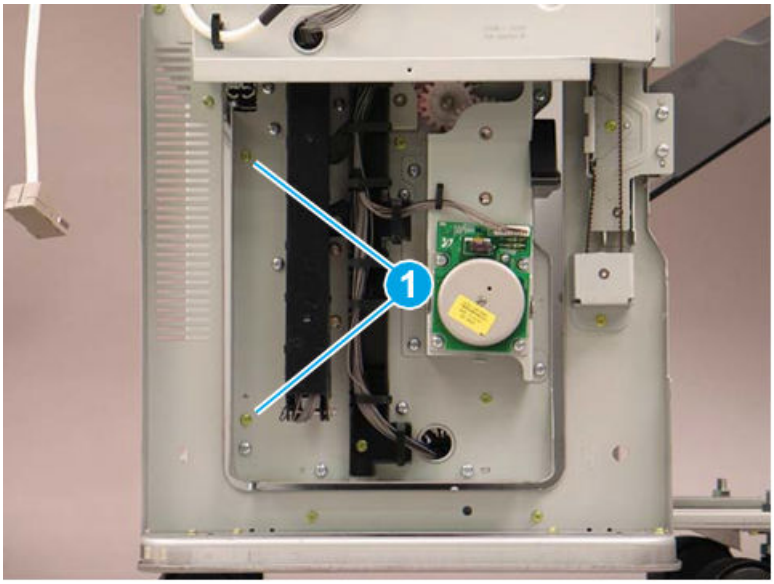
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1752 Remove two screws



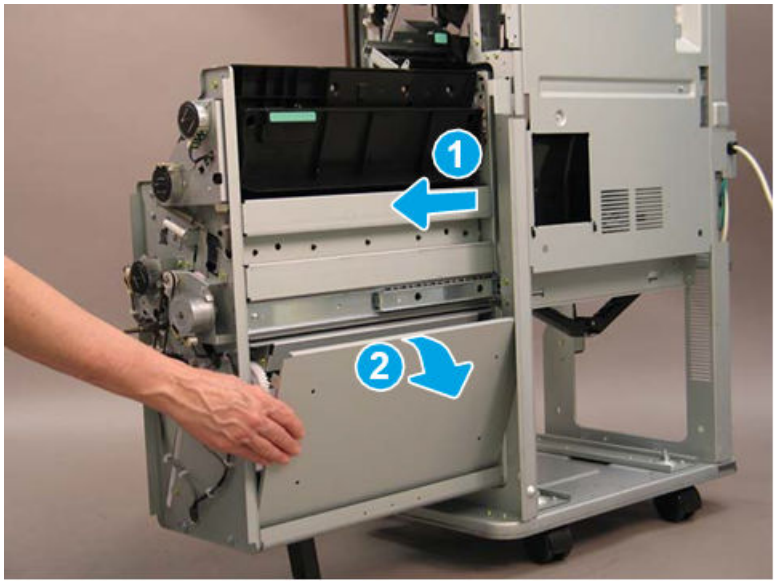
2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1753 Remove two screws



3. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the right lower shield (callout 2) away from the booklet maker to remove it.

Figure 5-1754 Remove the right lower shield

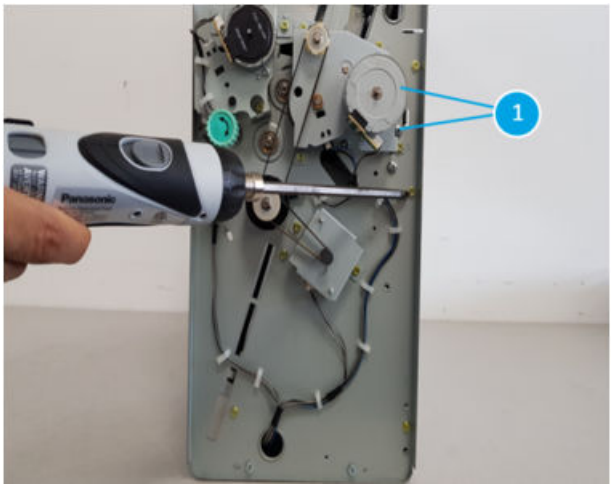


Remove the booklet maker middle right shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker middle right shield.

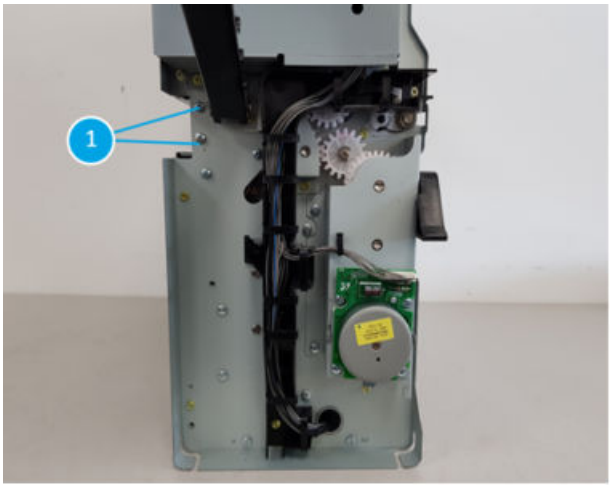
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1755 Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker



2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1756 Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker

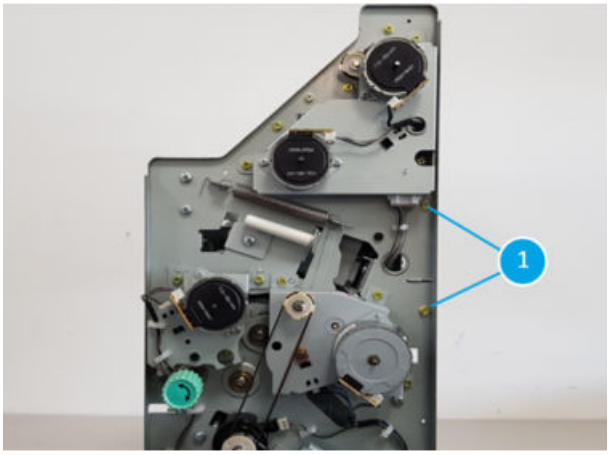


Remove the booklet finisher upper right shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet finisher upper right shield.

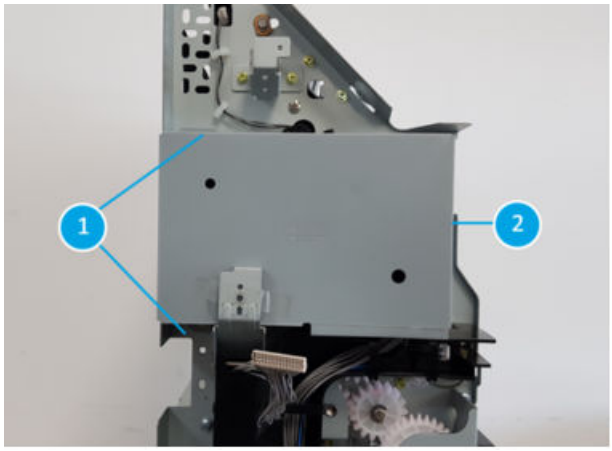
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1)

Figure 5-1757 Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker



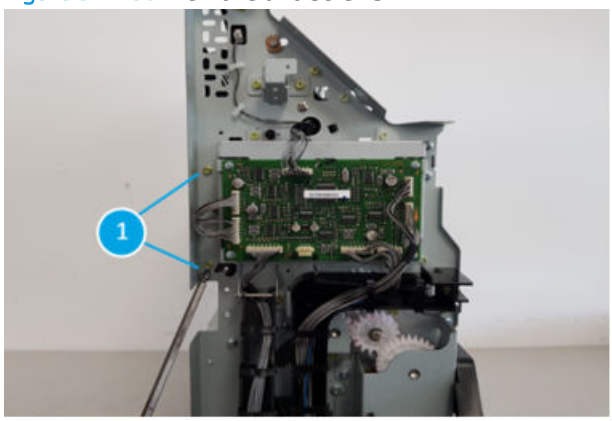
2. Remove two screws(callout 1) and one screw(callout 2) at the back of the booklet maker and then remove the board cover.

Figure 5-1758 Remove the board cover



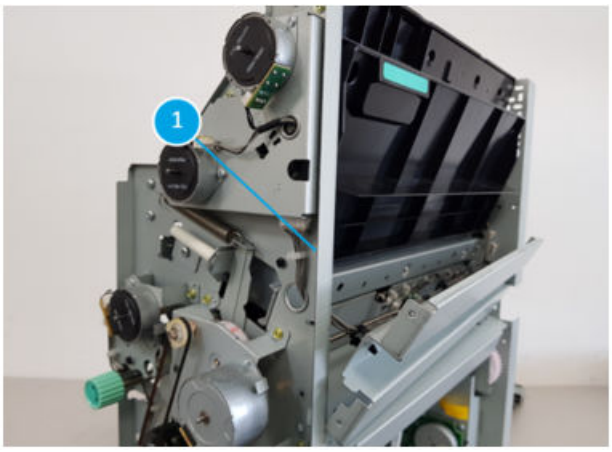
3. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1759 Remove two screws



4. Disconnect one connector at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1760 Disconnect one connector



5. Disconnect one connector at the right of the booklet maker (callout 1).

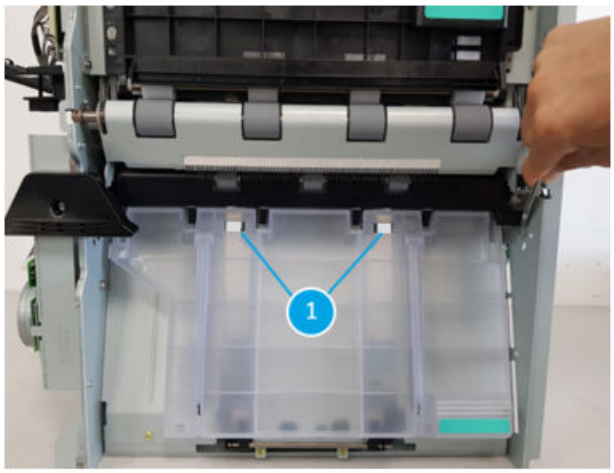
Figure 5-1761 Disconnect one connector

Remove the booklet tamper and fold unit

Follow these steps to remove the booklet tamper and fold unit.

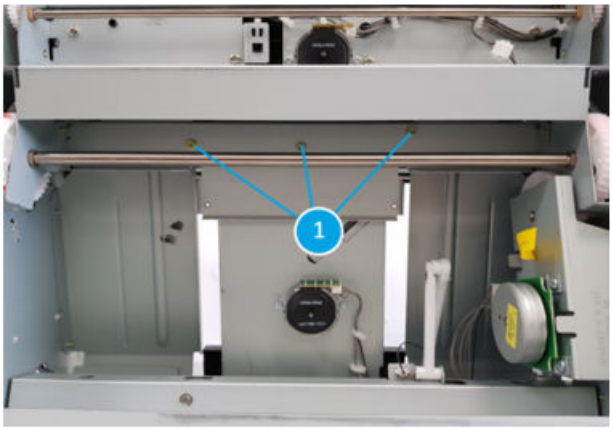
1. Remove two screws at the left of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1762 Remove two screws at the left of the booklet maker



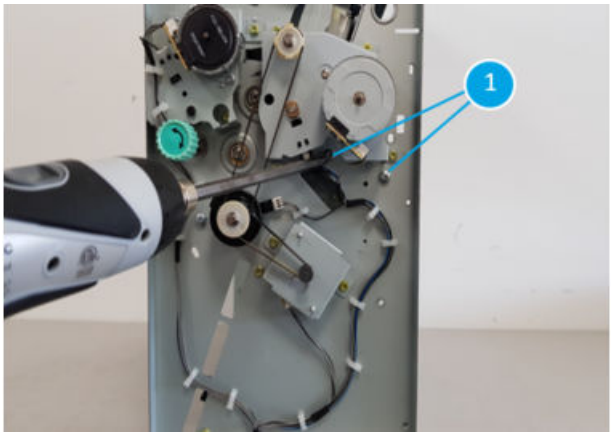
2. Remove three screws at the right of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1763 Remove three screws at the right of the booklet maker



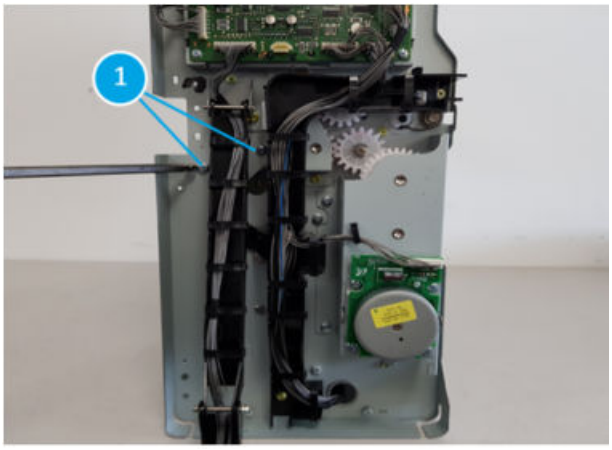
3. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1764 Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker



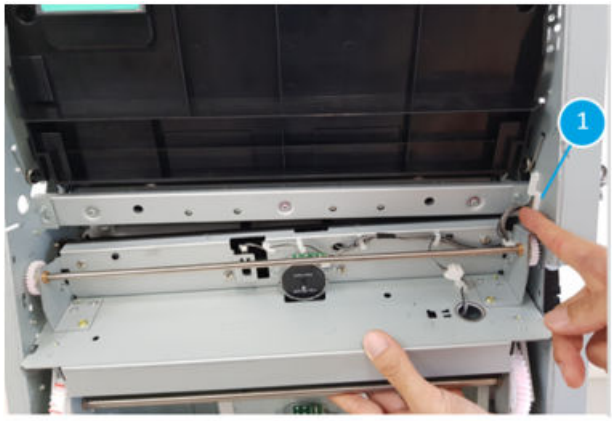
4. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1765 Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker



5. Disconnect one connector at the right of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1766 Disconnect one connector

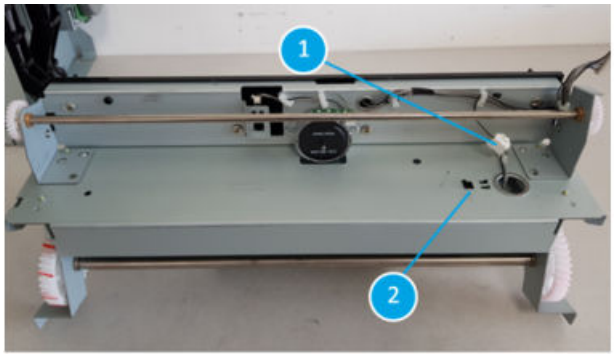


Remove the booklet blade home sensor (S45)

Follow these steps to remove the booklet blade home sensor (S45).

▲ Disconnect one connector(callout 1) and remove the Booklet blade home sensor (S45, callout 2)

Figure 5-1767 Disconnect one connector and remove the Booklet blade home sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet blade motor (M22)

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet blade motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet blade motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-160 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01435A	Booklet blade motor assembly
JC31-00144A	Booklet blade motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

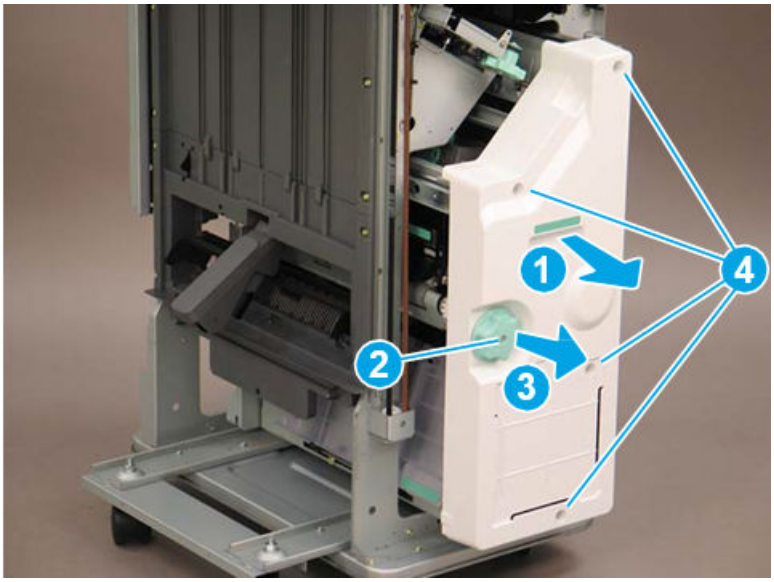
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

- Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1768 Remove five screws and the cover

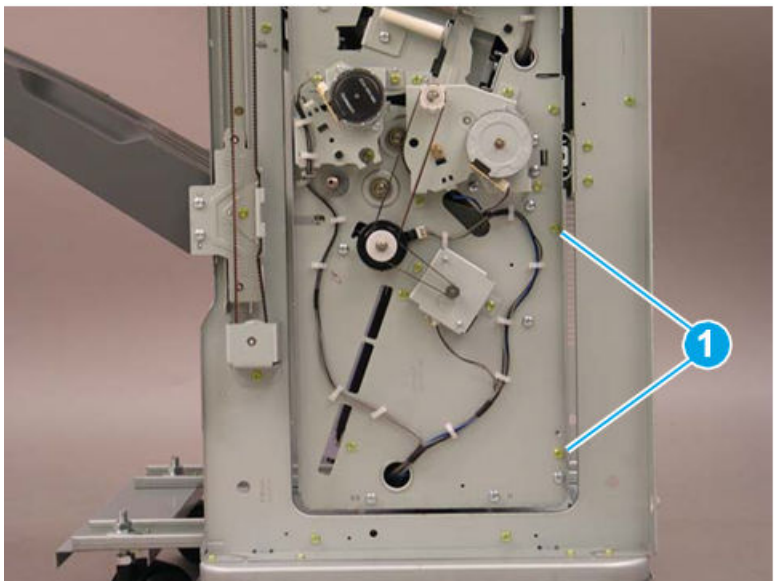


Remove the booklet right lower shield

Follow these steps to remove the booklet right lower shield.

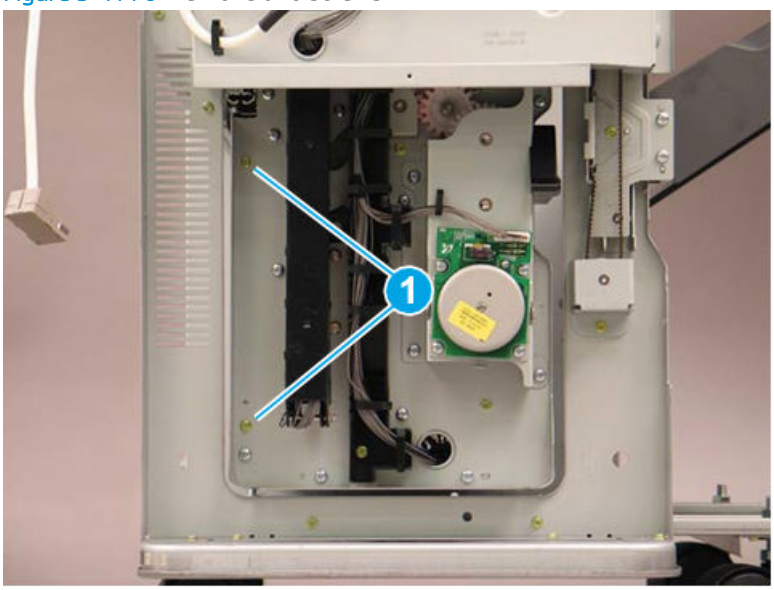
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1769 Remove two screws



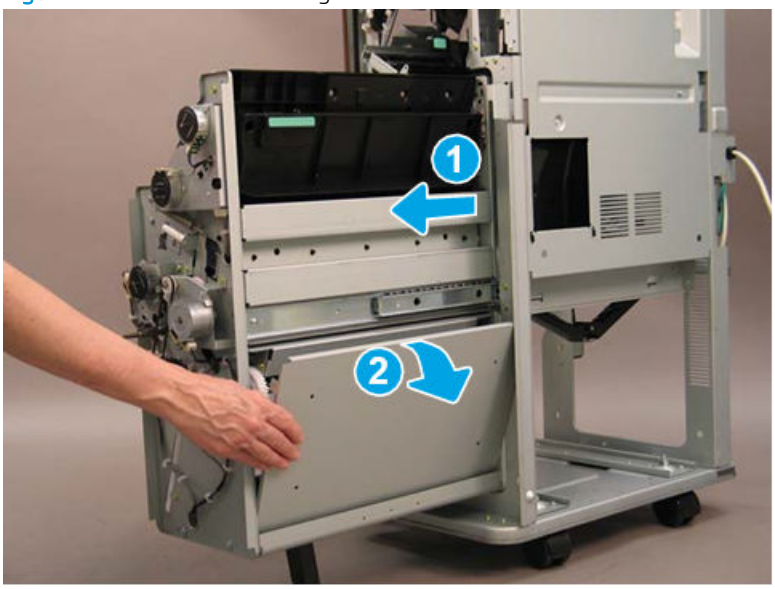
2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet maker (callout 1).

Figure 5-1770 Remove two screws



3. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the right lower shield (callout 2) away from the booklet maker to remove it.

Figure 5-1771 Remove the right lower shield



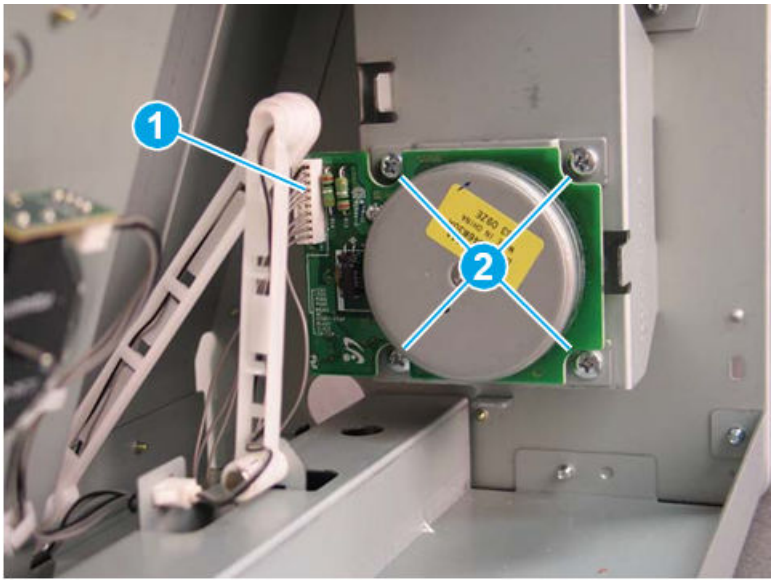
Remove the booklet blade motor (M22)

Follow these steps to remove the booklet blade motor (M22).

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet blade motor.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1772 Remove the booklet blade motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet fold motor (M21)

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet fold motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet fold motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-161 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01436A	Booklet fold motor assembly
JC31-00144A	Booklet fold motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

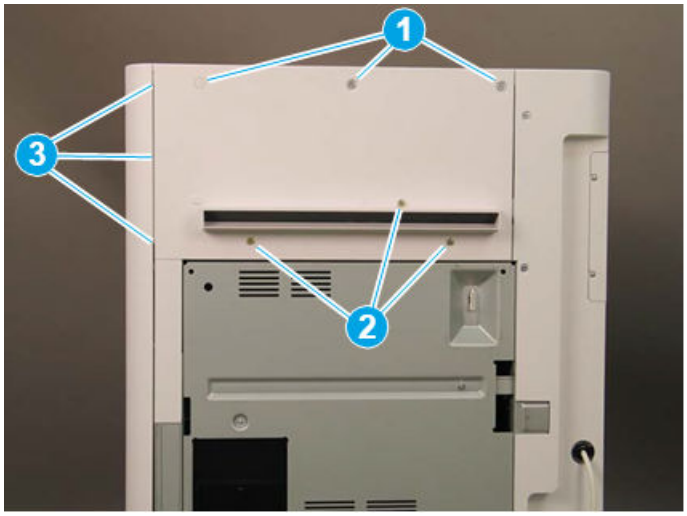
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1773 Remove the right upper cover

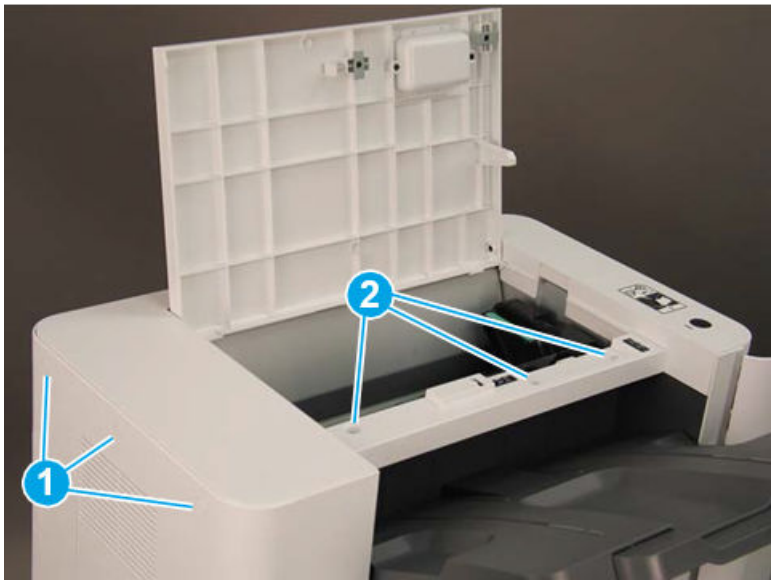


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

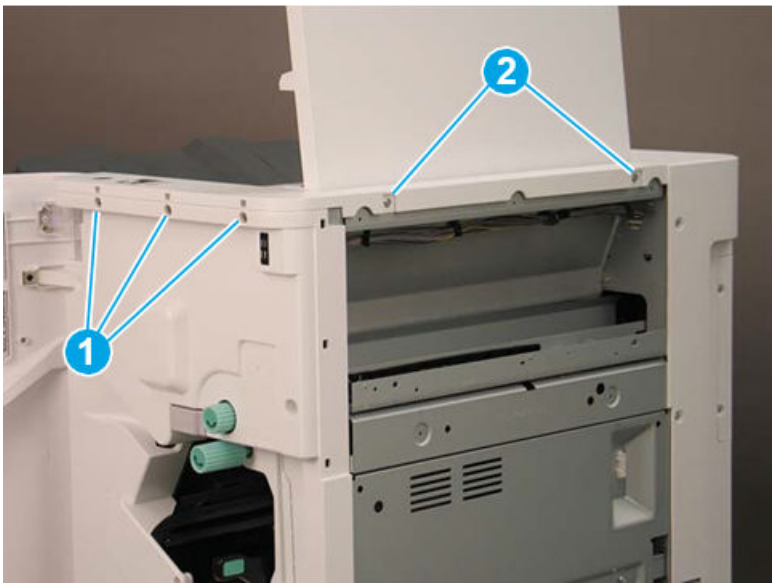
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1774 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

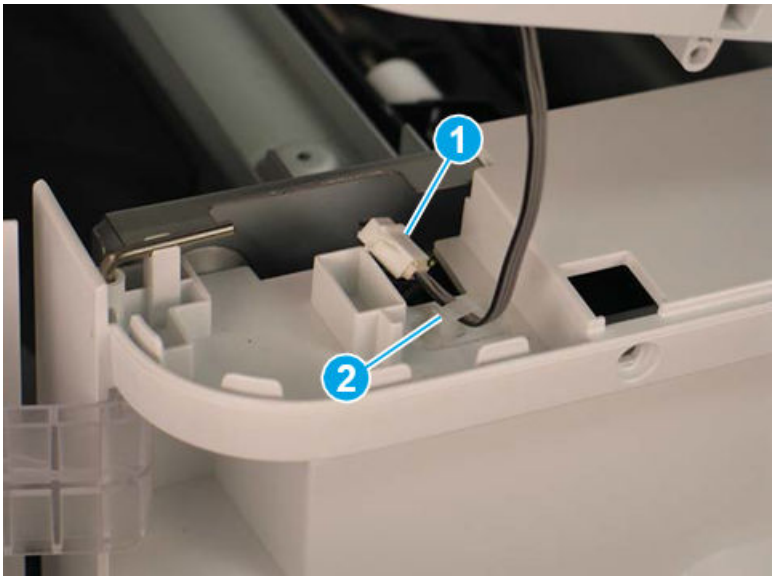
Figure 5-1775 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1776 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

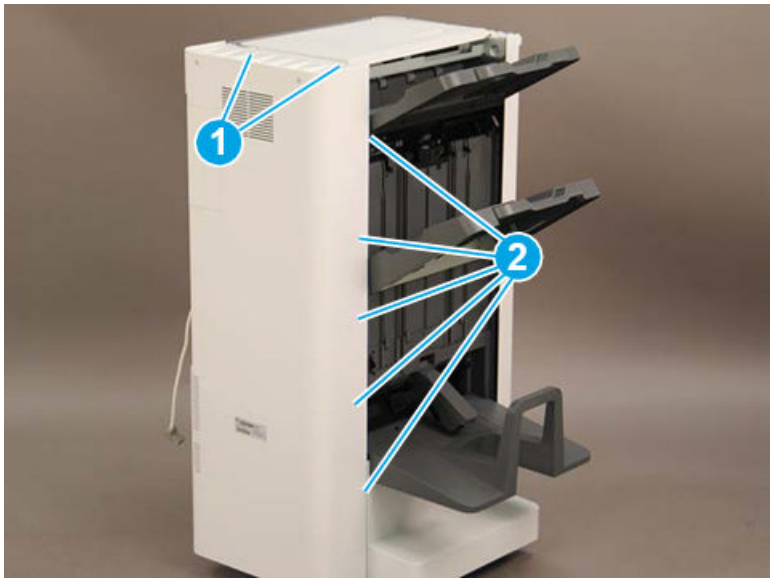


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1777 Remove seven screws

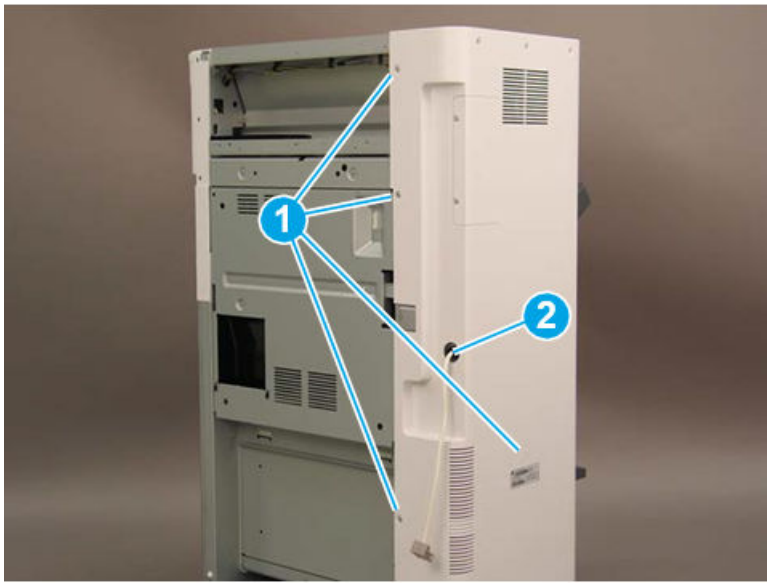


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1778 Remove the rear cover



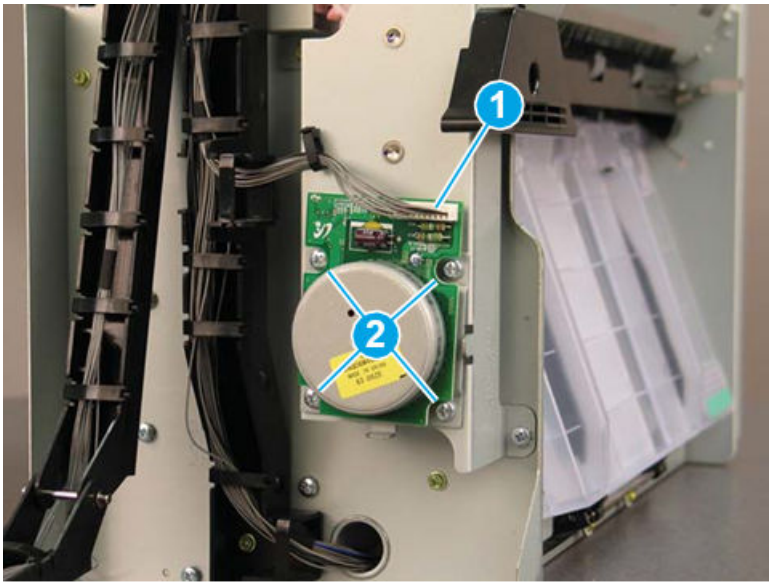
Remove the booklet fold motor (M21)

Follow these steps to remove the booklet fold motor (M21).

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the folding roller motor.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1779 Remove the booklet fold motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet c-fold blade

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet c-fold blade.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet c-fold blade on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-162 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC61-07366A	Booklet c-fold blade

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

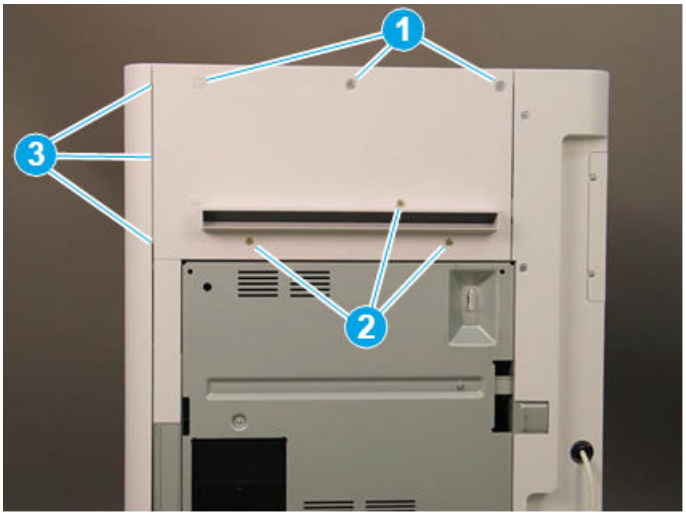
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1780 Remove the right upper cover

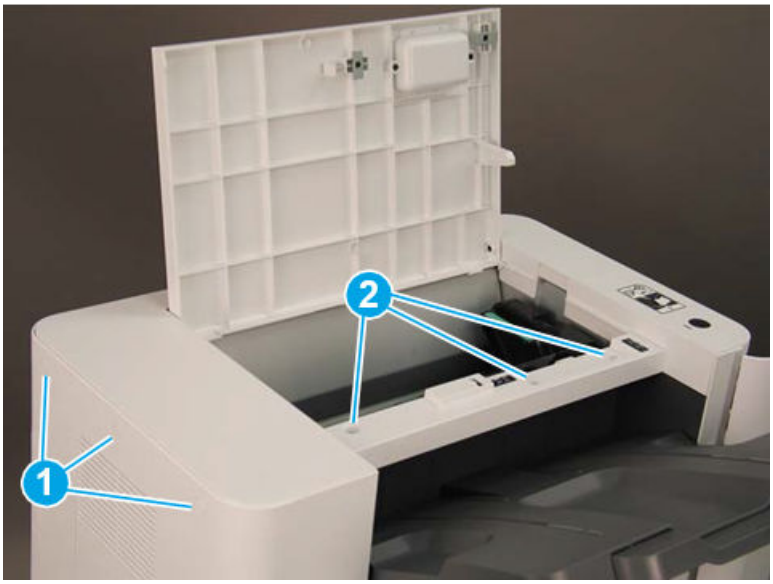


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

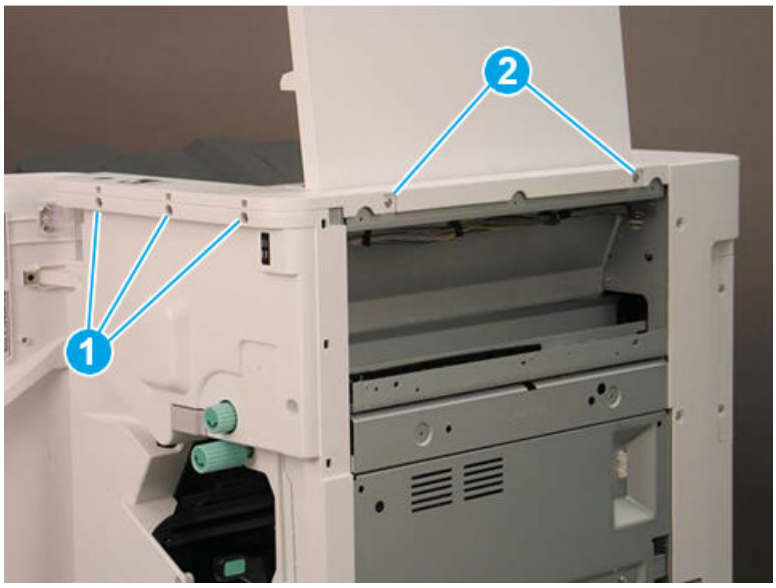
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1781 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

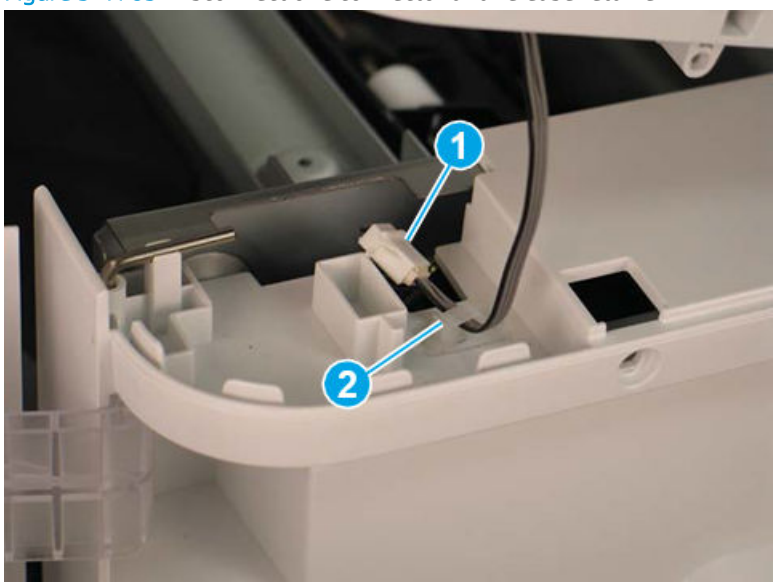
Figure 5-1782 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1783 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

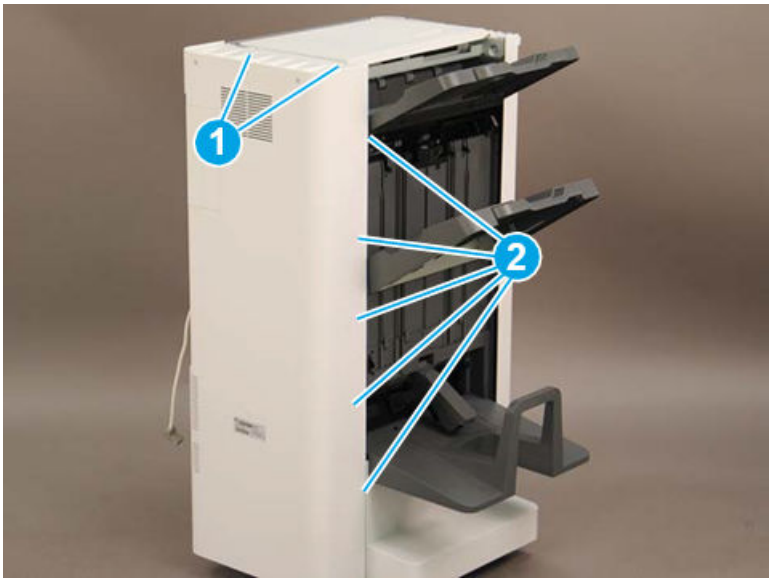


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1784 Remove seven screws

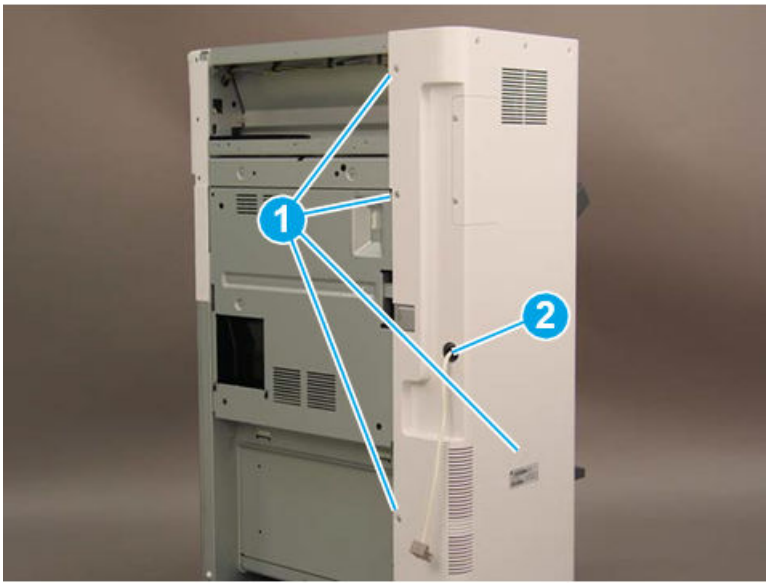


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1785 Remove the rear cover



Remove the booklet maker

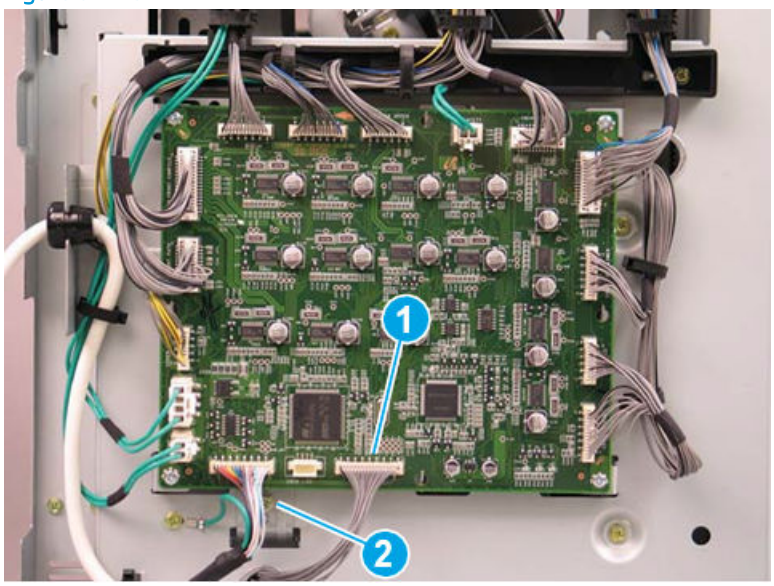
Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker.

1. Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1786 Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher

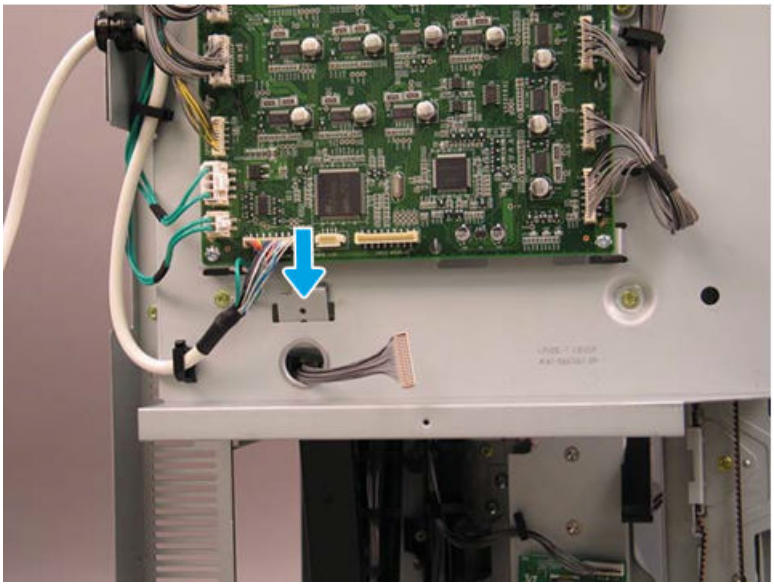
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 5-1787 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



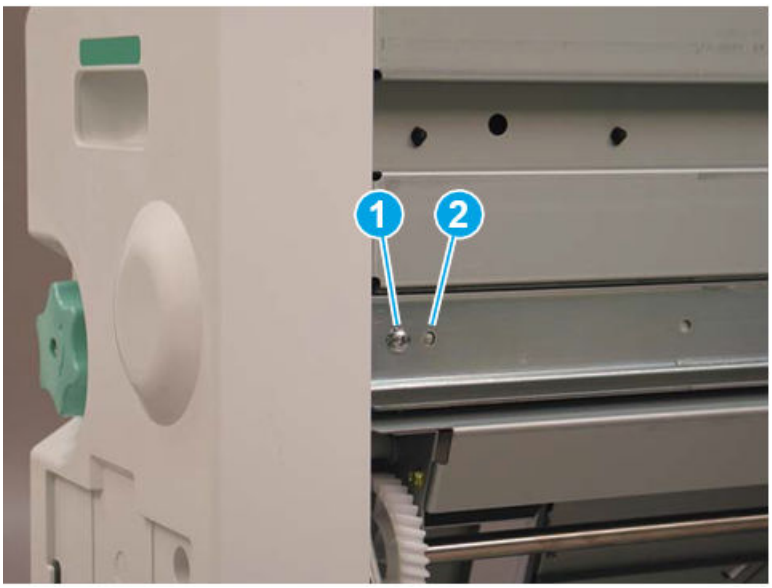
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 5-1788 Release the metal bracket



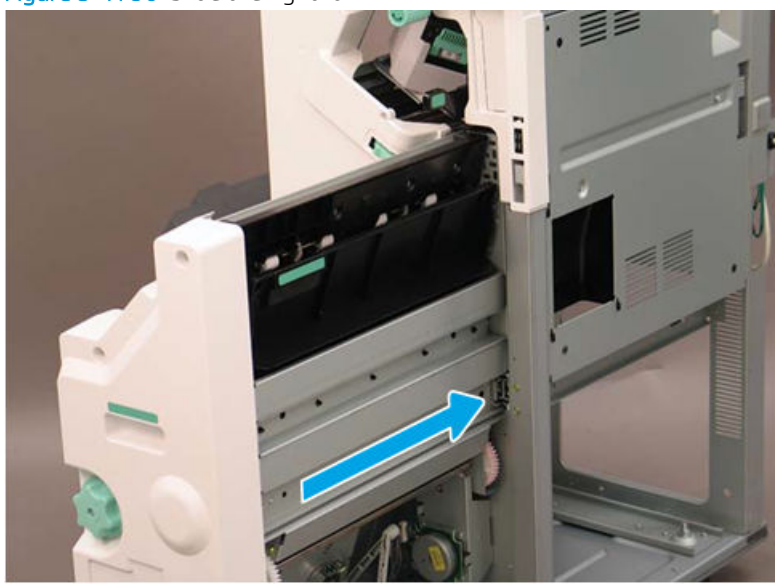
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1789 Remove one screw



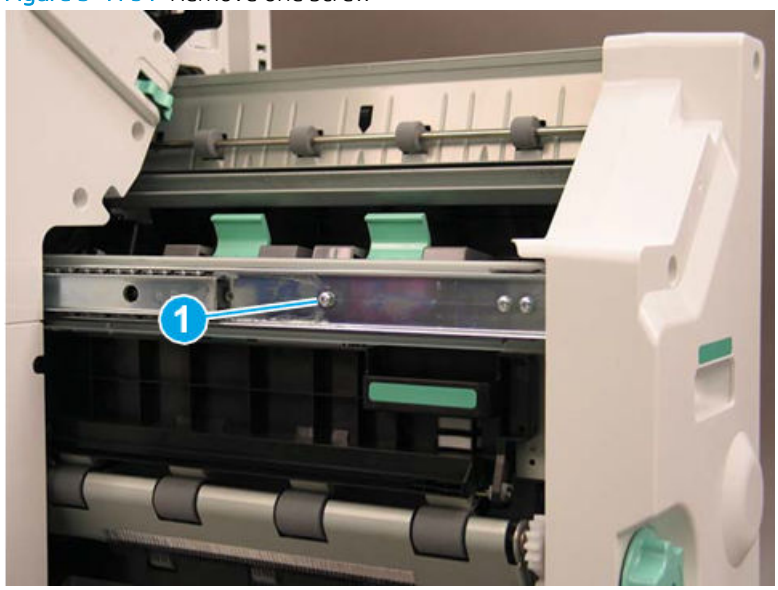
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 5-1790 Slide the right rail



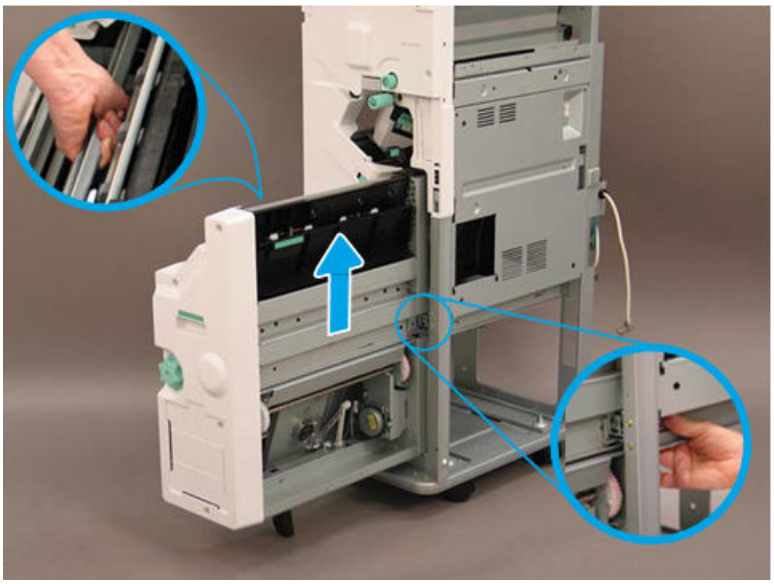
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1791 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1792 Remove the booklet maker



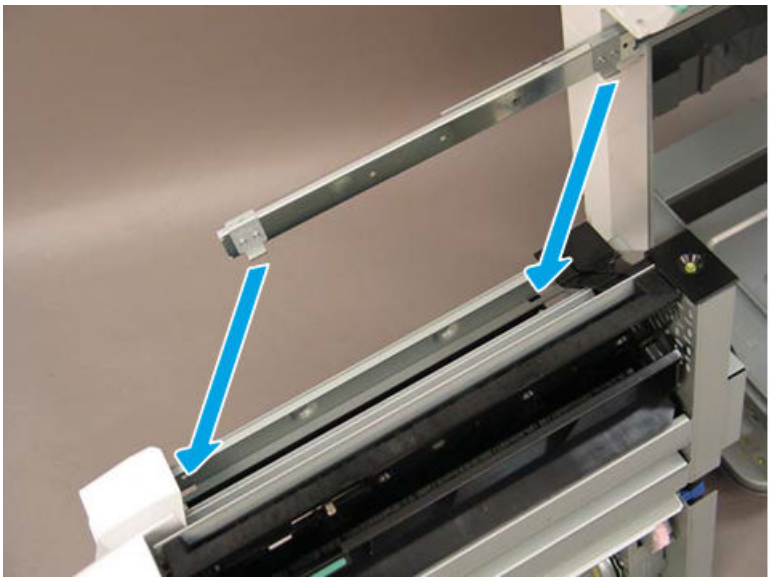
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: booklet maker

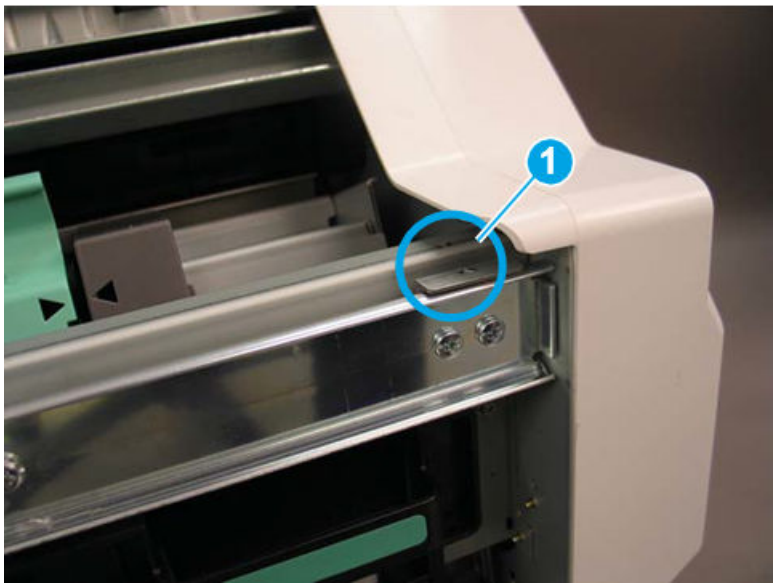
When installing the booklet maker, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1793 Position the hooks



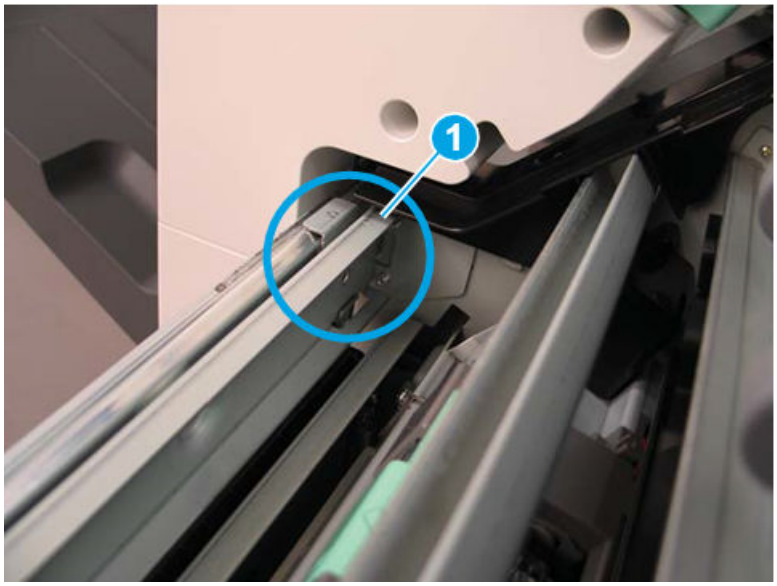
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1794 Align arrows



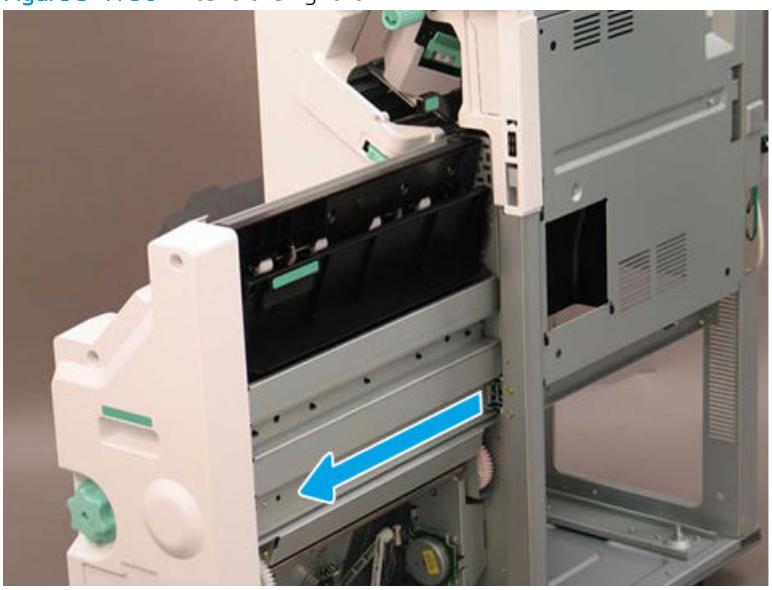
10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1795 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.

Figure 5-1796 Extend the right rail



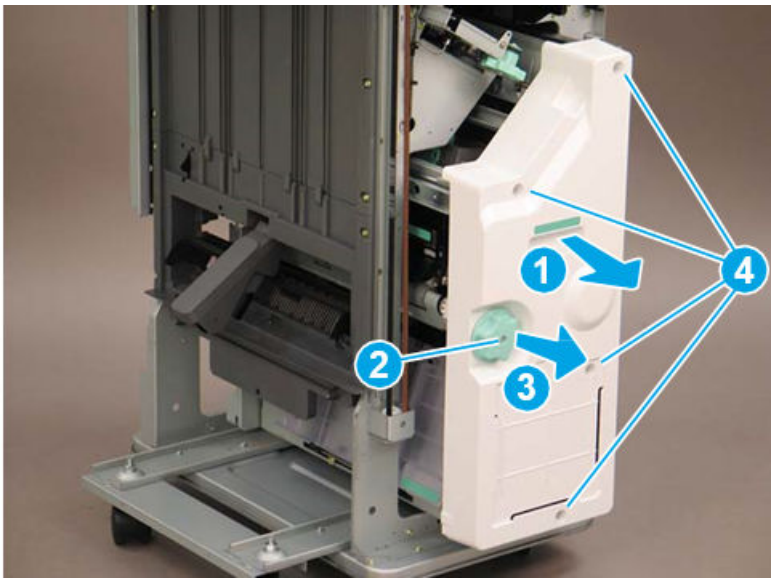
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

- Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1797 Remove five screws and the cover

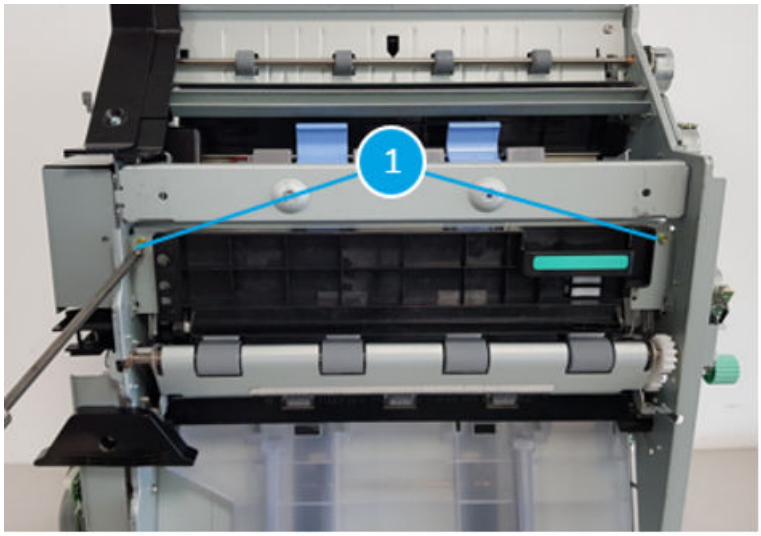


Remove the Booklet c-fold blade unit

Follow these steps to remove the Booklet c-fold blade unit.

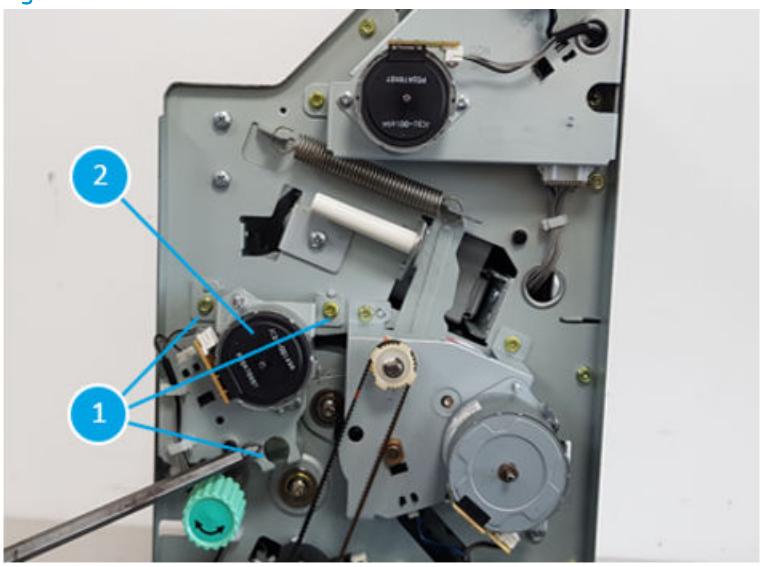
1. Remove two screws(callout 1) at the left of the booklet maker

Figure 5-1798 Remove two screws at the left of the booklet maker



2. Remove three screws(callout 1) at the front of the booklet maker to remove motor unit(callout 2) to reach out to the screw.

Figure 5-1799 Remove three screws to remove motor unit to reach out to the screw

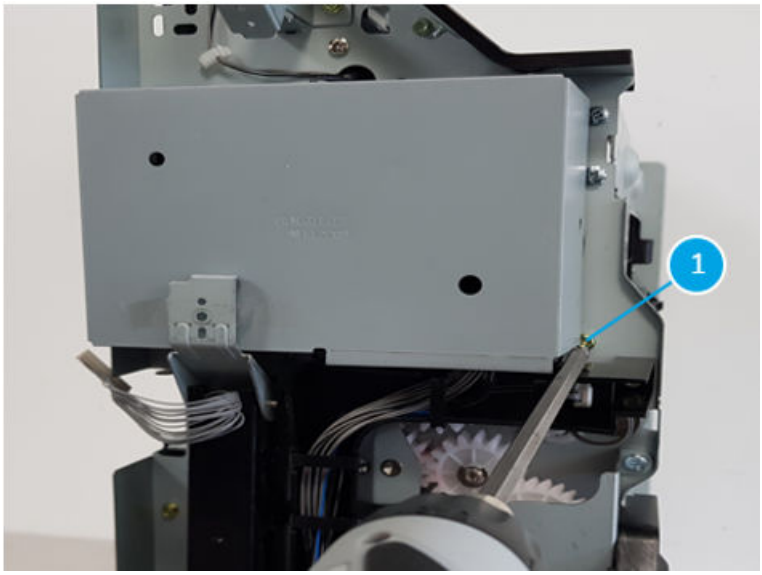


3. Remove one screw(callout 1) at the front of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1800 Remove one screw at the front of the booklet maker

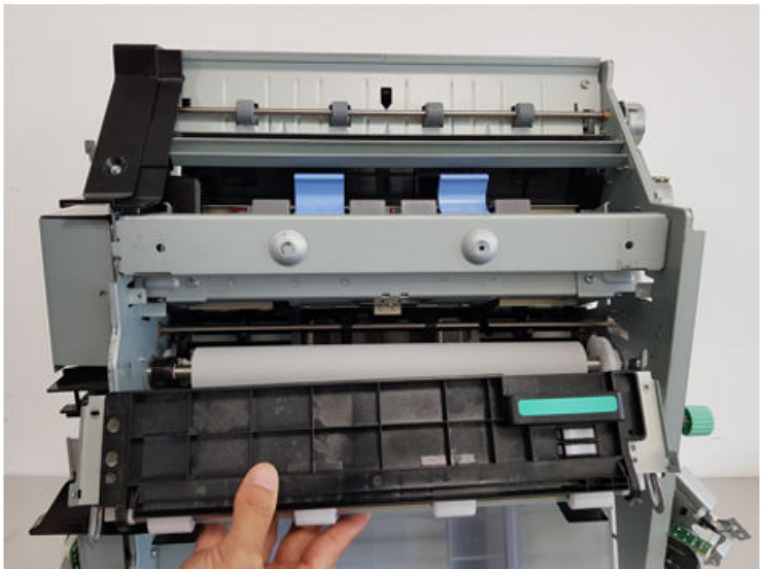
4. Remove one screw(callout 1) at the rear of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1801 Remove one screw at the rear of the booklet maker



5. Take the booklet c-fold blade unit out from the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1802 Take the booklet c-fold blade unit out from the booklet maker

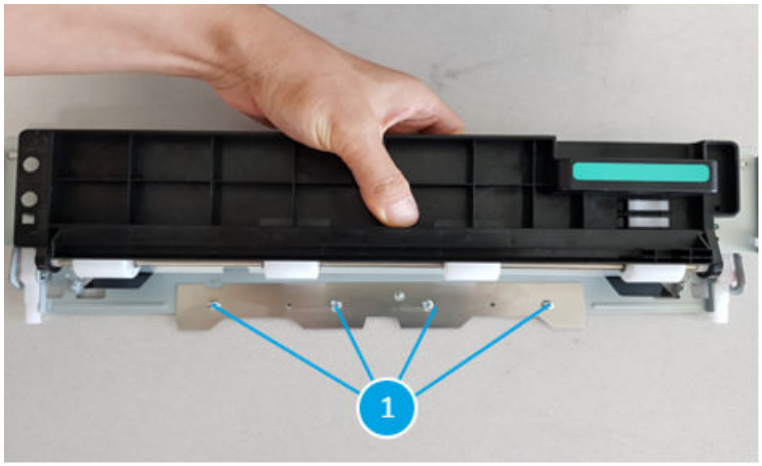


Remove the Booklet c-fold blade

Follow these steps to remove the Booklet c-fold blade.

▲ Remove four screws(callout 1) to remove the booklet c-fold blade

Figure 5-1803 Remove four screws to remove the booklet c-fold blade

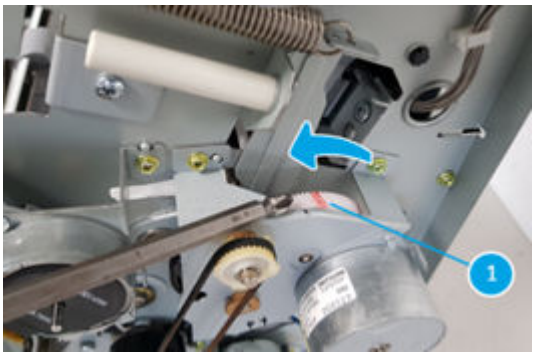


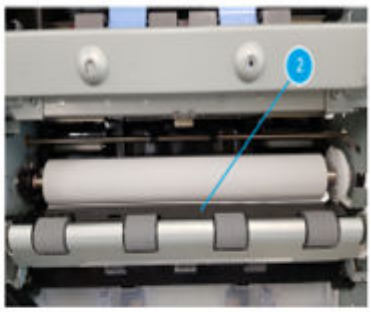
NOTE:

- Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.
- Make sure the metal located on the home position when you reassemble the unit.

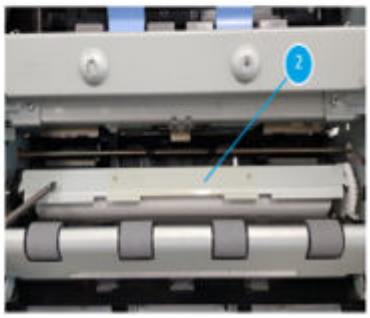
  You can make it by rotating the gear to the left direction.

TIP: Rotate the white gear (callout 1) to the left direction to make the metal (callout 2) to the home postion.





Right position



Wrong position

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet c-fold blade home sensor (S39)

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet c-fold blade home sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet c-fold blade home sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com.

Table 5-163 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Booklet c-fold blade home sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

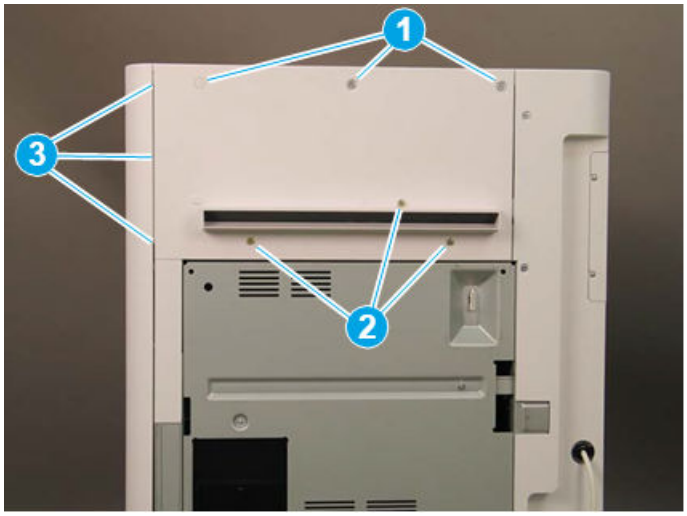
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1804 Remove the right upper cover

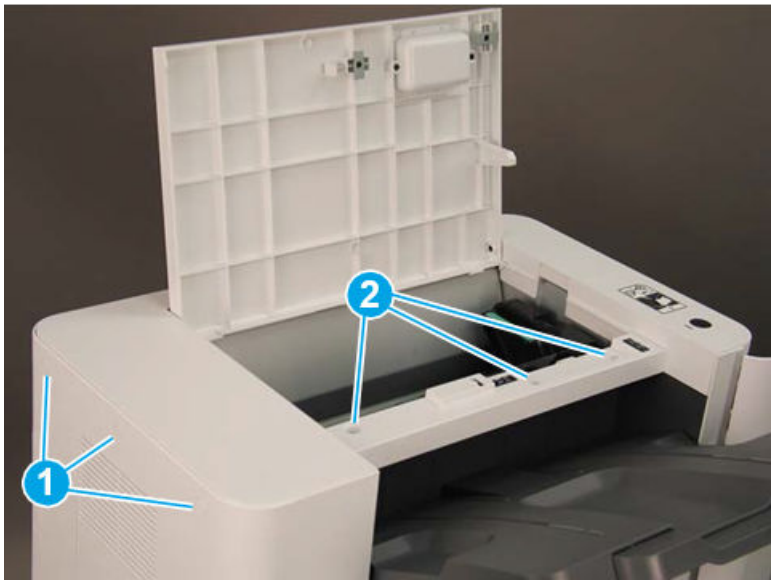


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

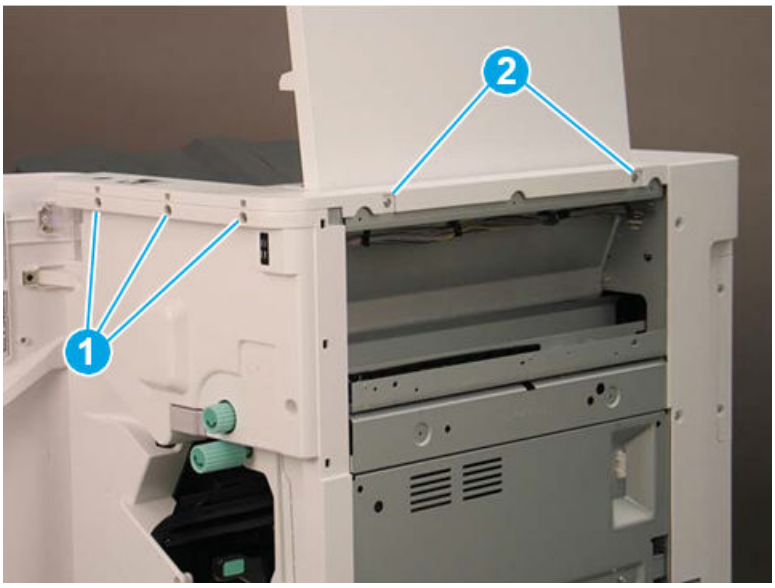
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1805 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

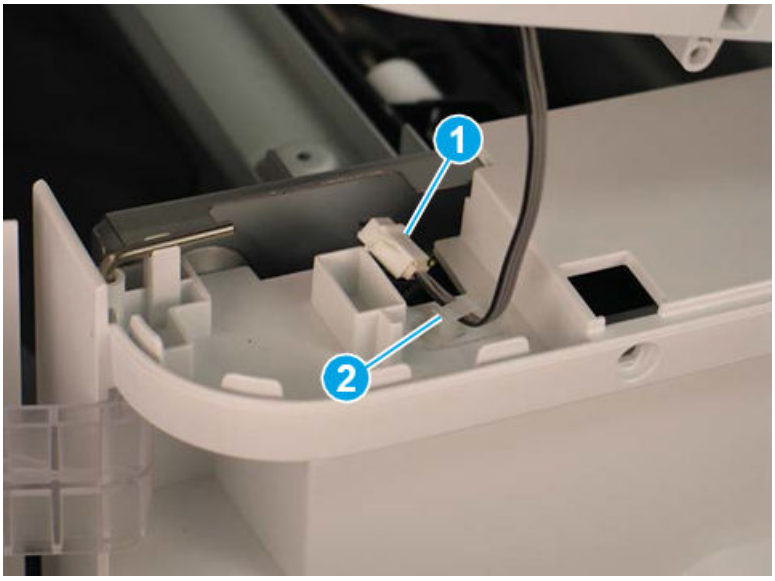
Figure 5-1806 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1807 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

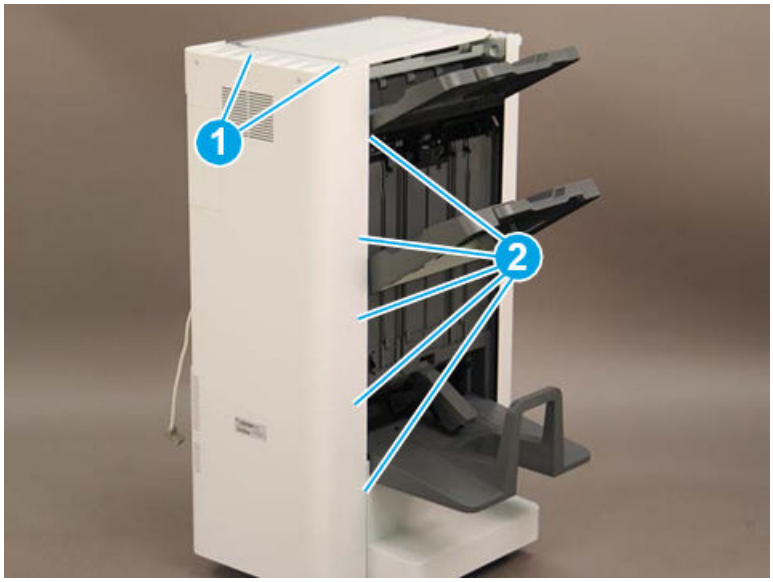


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1808 Remove seven screws

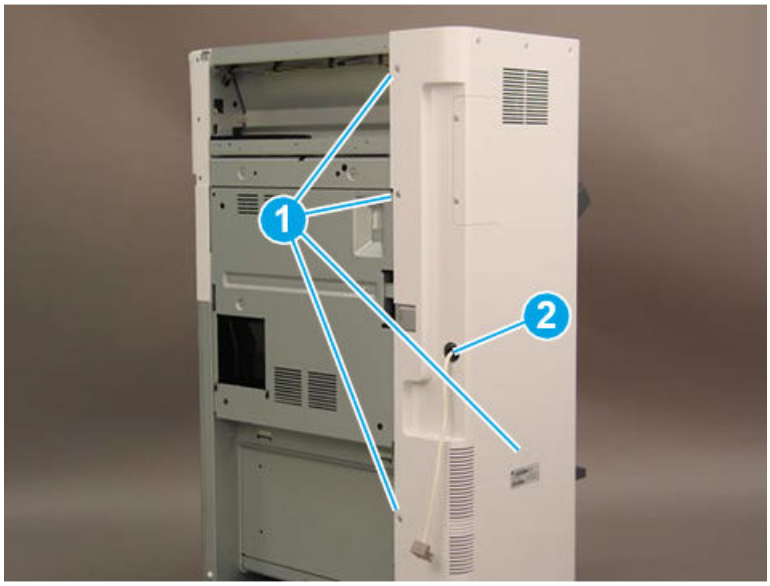


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1809 Remove the rear cover



Remove the booklet maker

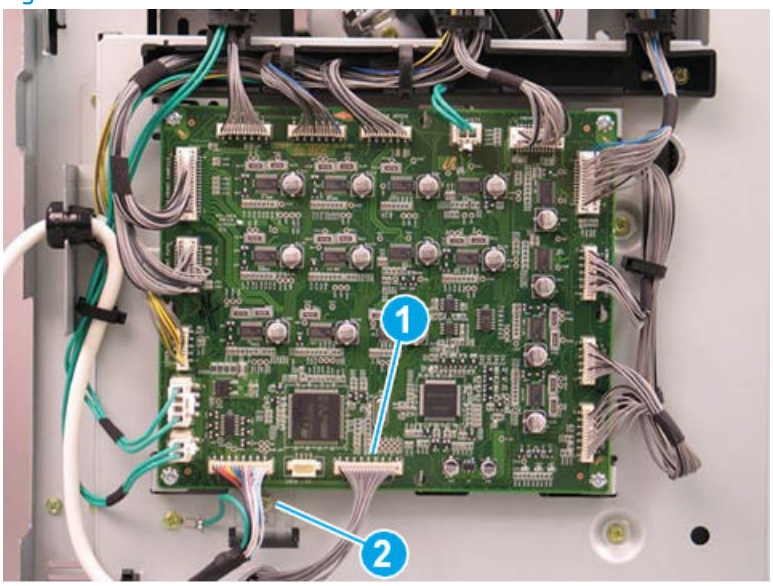
Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker.

1. Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1810 Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher

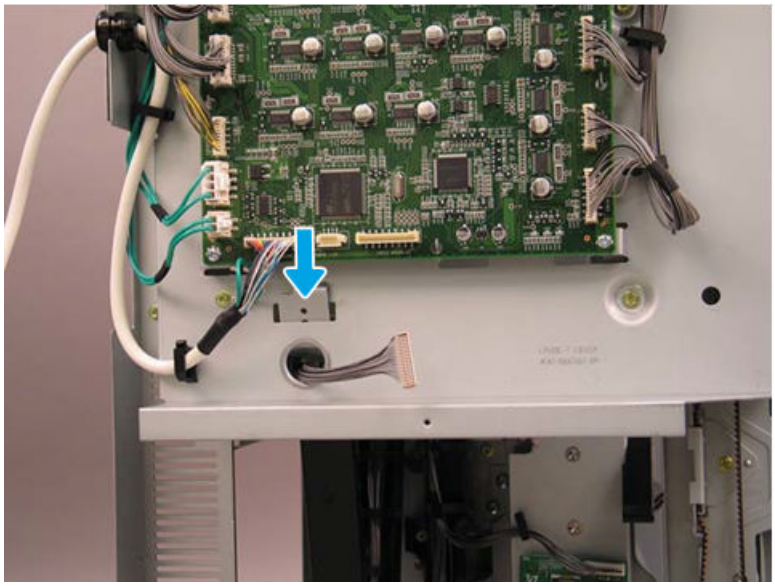
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 5-1811 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



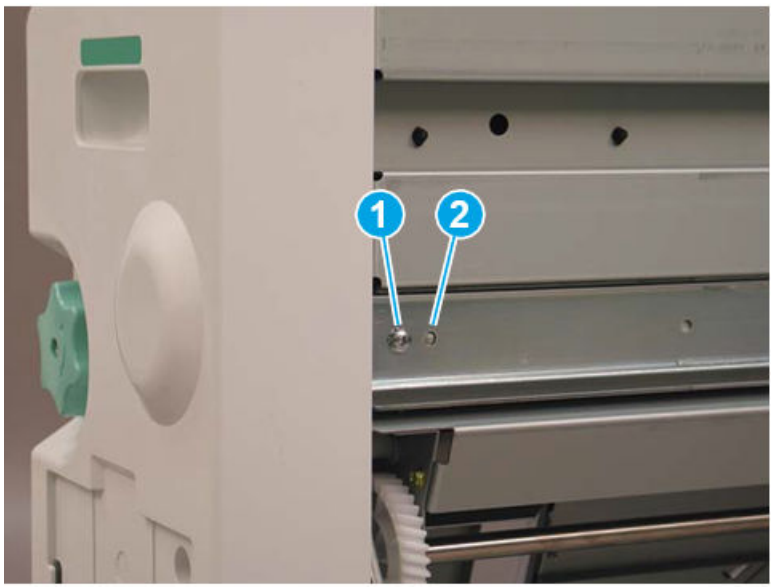
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 5-1812 Release the metal bracket



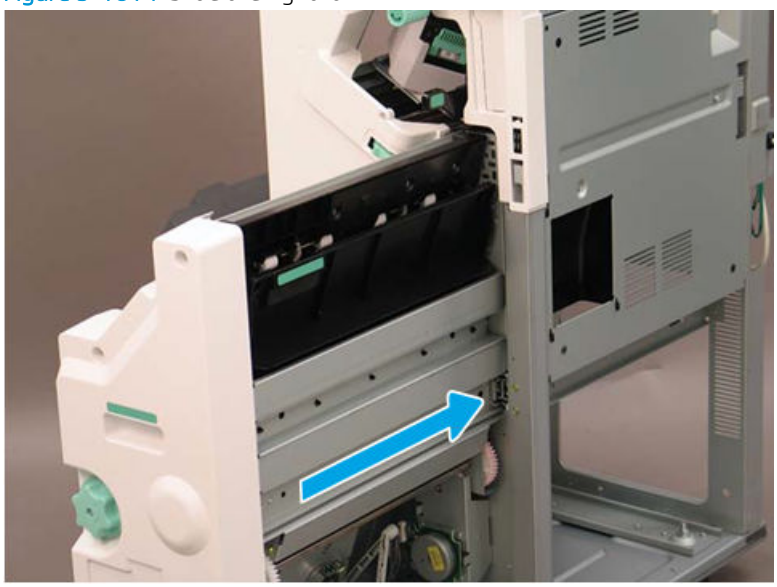
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1813 Remove one screw



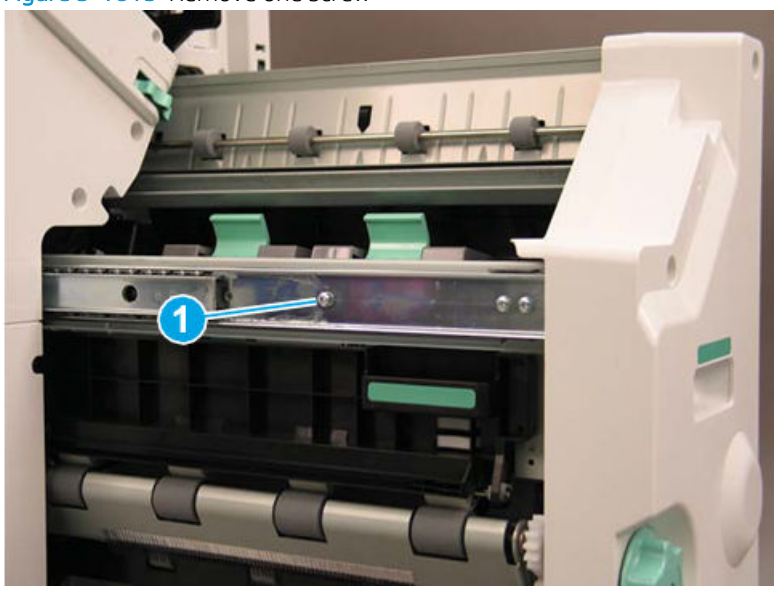
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 5-1814 Slide the right rail



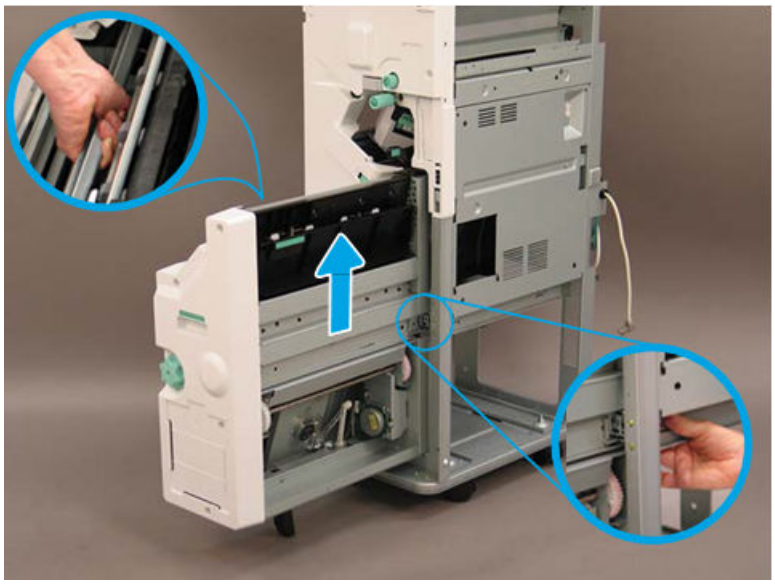
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1815 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1816 Remove the booklet maker



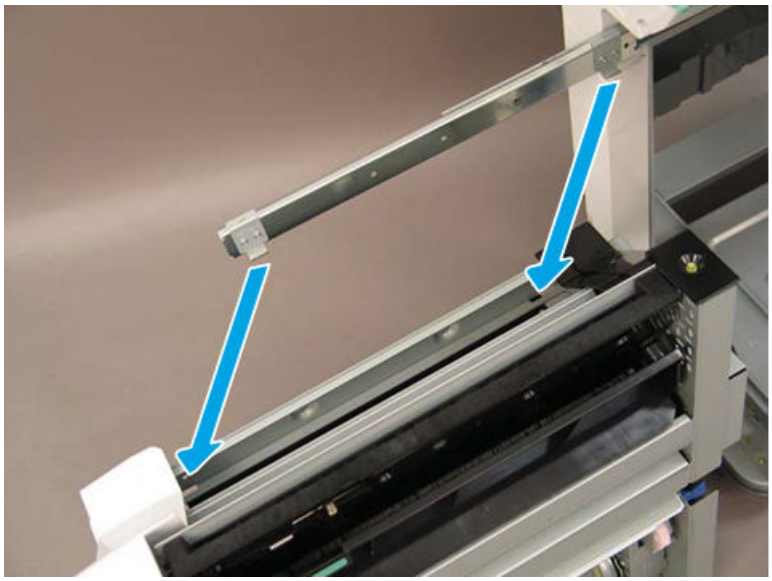
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: booklet maker

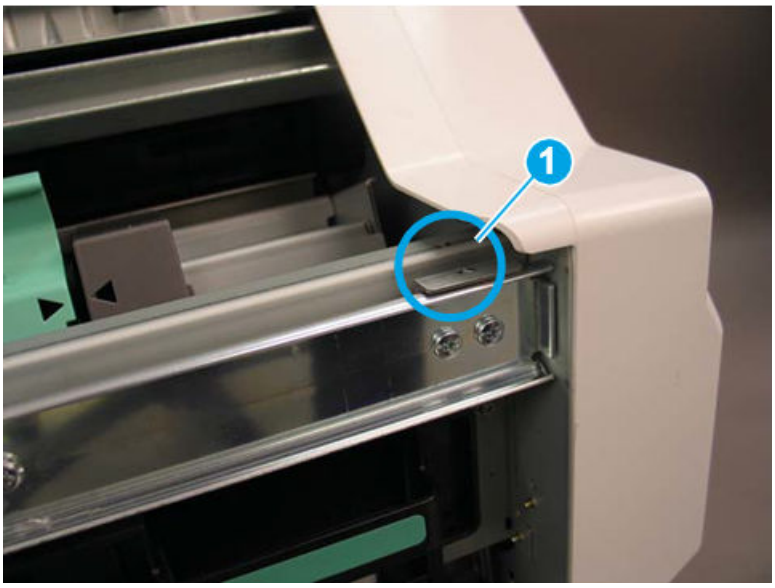
When installing the booklet maker, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1817 Position the hooks



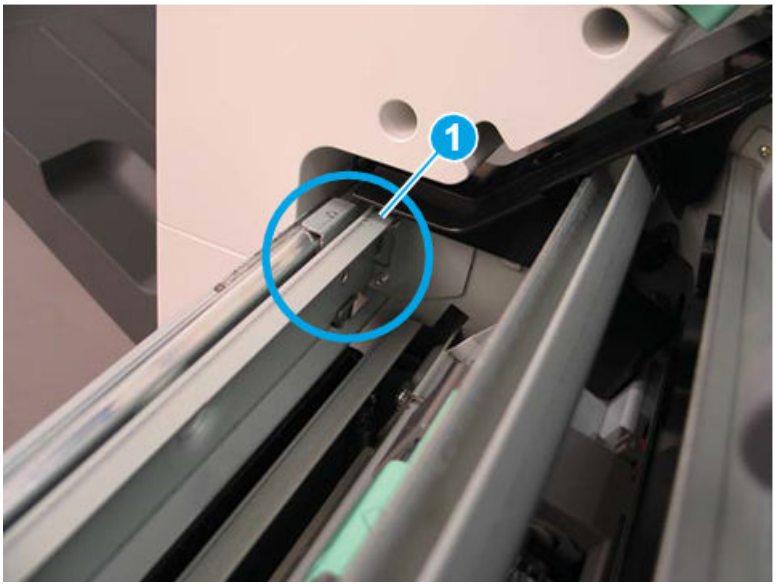
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1818 Align arrows



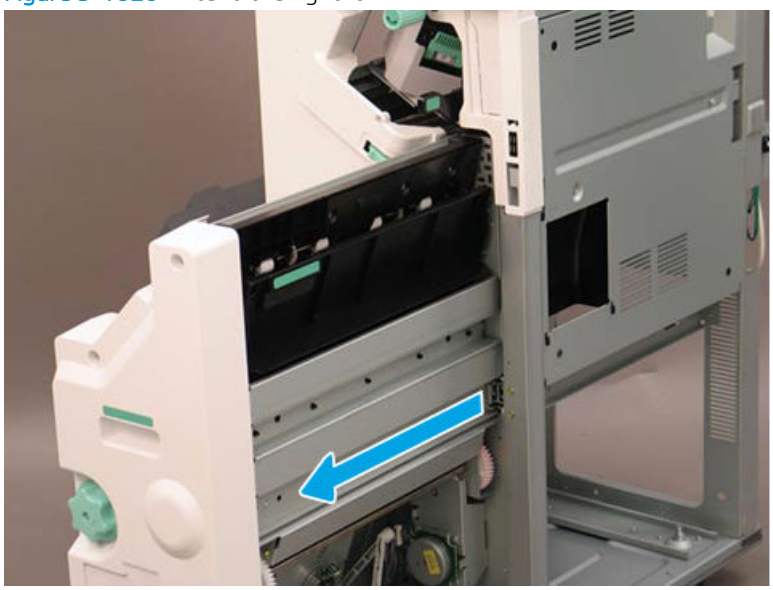
10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1819 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.

Figure 5-1820 Extend the right rail



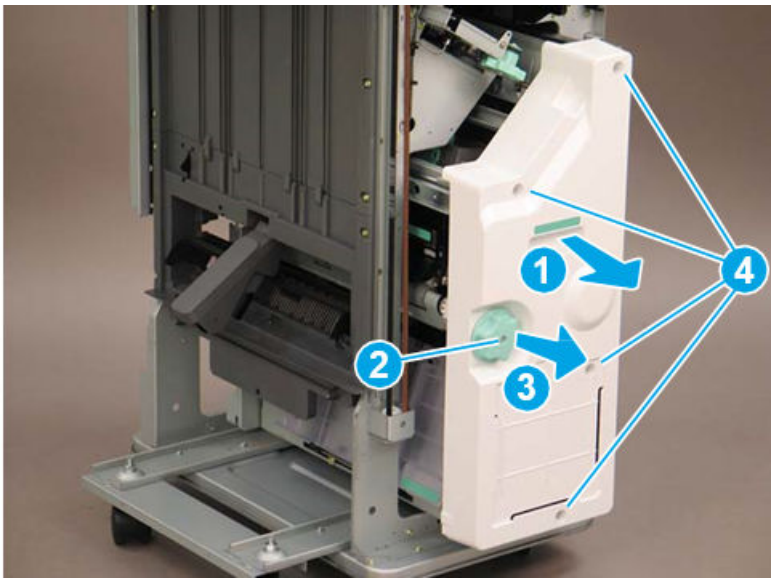
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

- Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1821 Remove five screws and the cover

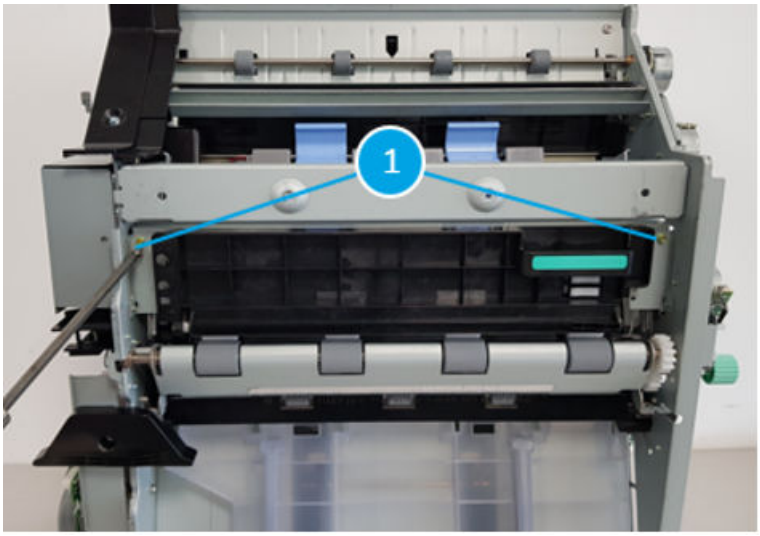


Remove the Booklet c-fold blade unit

Follow these steps to remove the Booklet c-fold blade unit.

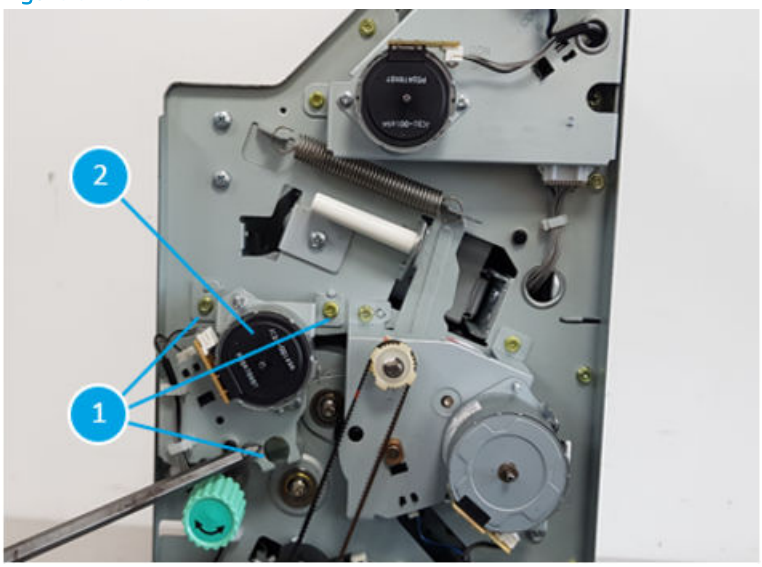
1. Remove two screws(callout 1) at the left of the booklet maker

Figure 5-1822 Remove two screws at the left of the booklet maker



2. Remove three screws(callout 1) at the front of the booklet maker to remove motor unit(callout 2) to reach out to the screw.

Figure 5-1823 Remove three screws to remove motor unit to reach out to the screw

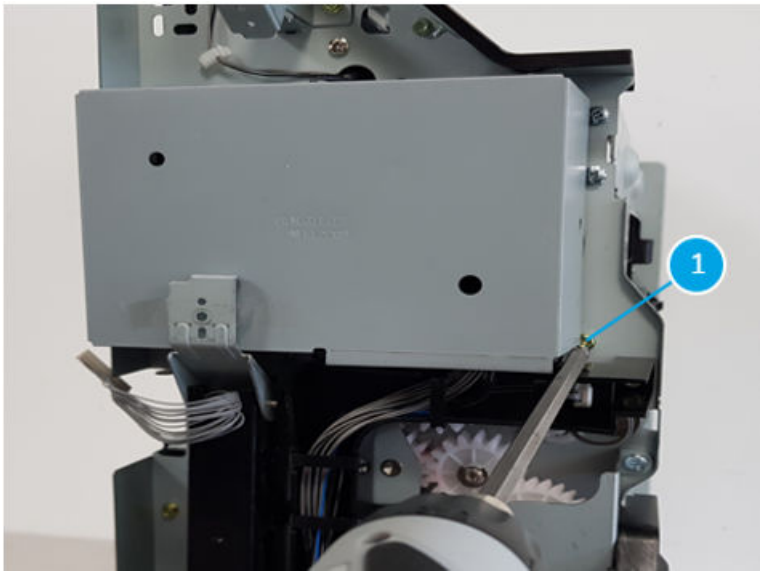


3. Remove one screw(callout 1) at the front of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1824 Remove one screw at the front of the booklet maker

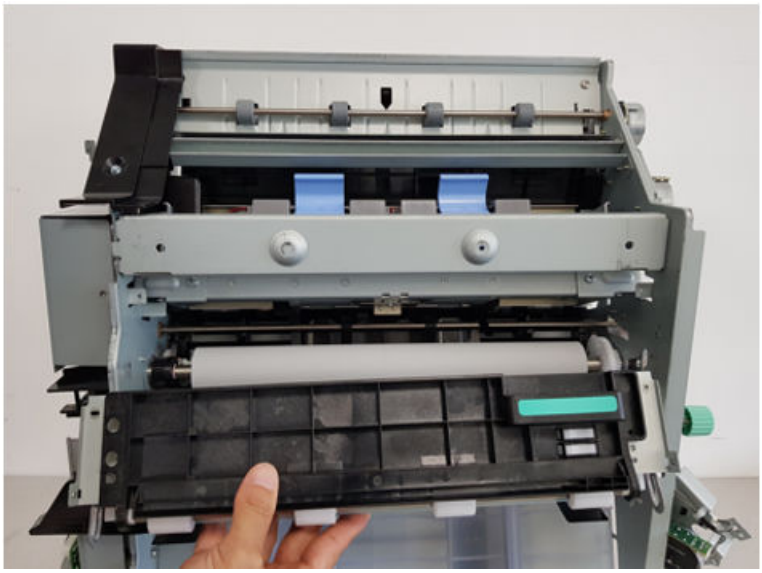
4. Remove one screw(callout 1) at the rear of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1825 Remove one screw at the rear of the booklet maker



5. Take the booklet c-fold blade unit out from the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1826 Take the booklet c-fold blade unit out from the booklet maker

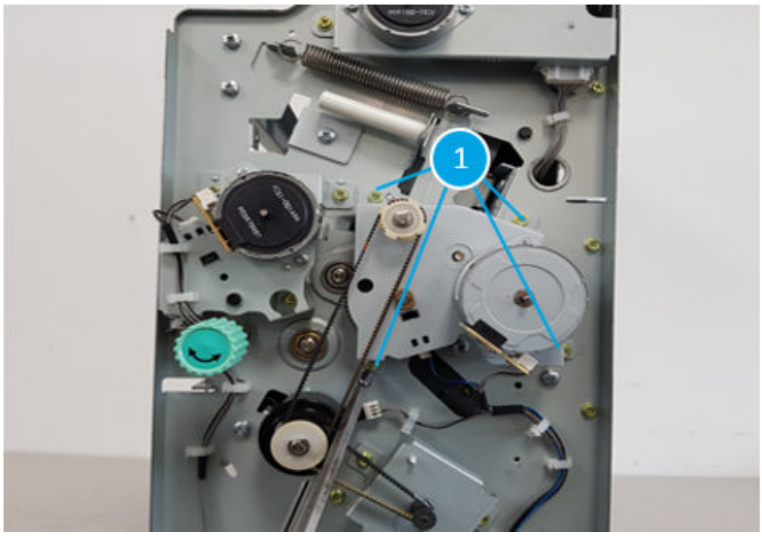


Remove the booklet c-fold blade home sensor (S39)

Follow these steps to remove the booklet c-fold blade home sensor (S39).

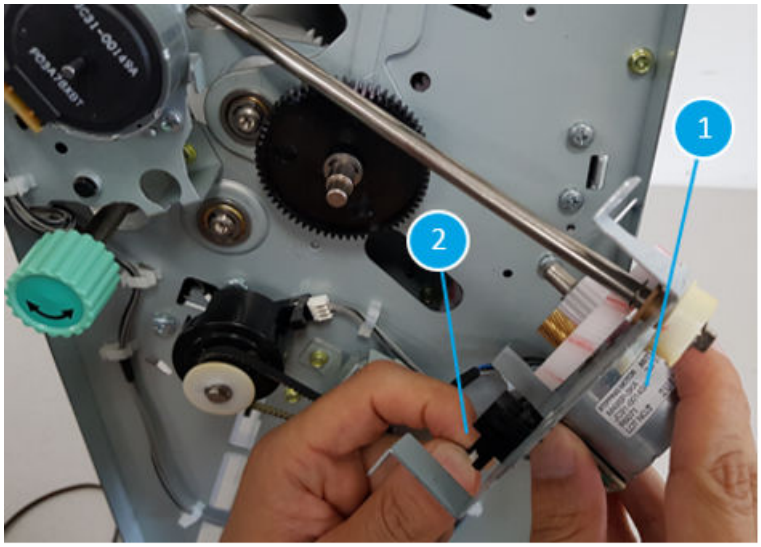
1. Remove three screws(callout 1) at the front of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1827 Remove three screws at the front of the booklet maker



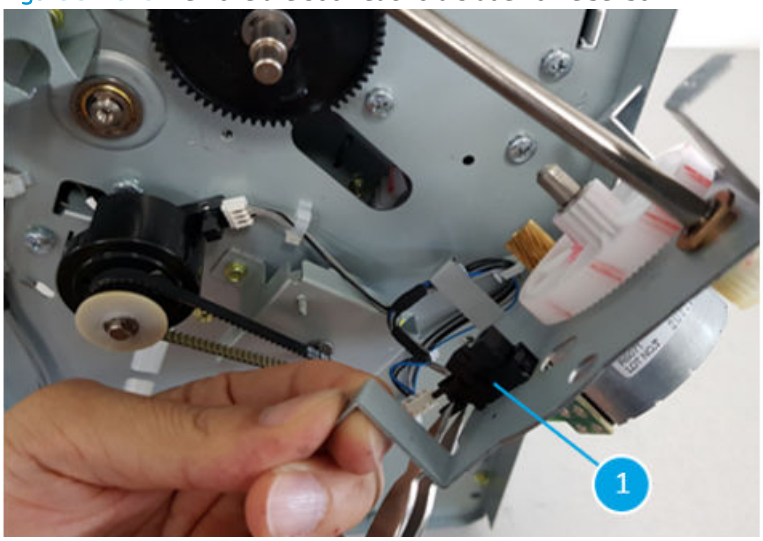
2. Take motor unit (callout 1) out from the booklet maker and unplug one connector (callout 2)

Figure 5-1828 Take motor unit out from the booklet maker and unplug one connector



3. Remove the booklet c-fold blade home sensor (S39, callout 1)

Figure 5-1829 Remove the booklet c-fold blade home sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet c-fold blade motor (M17)

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet c-fold blade motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet c-fold blade motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com..

Table 5-164 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01154A	Booklet c-fold blade motor
JC90-01396A	Booklet c-fold blade motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

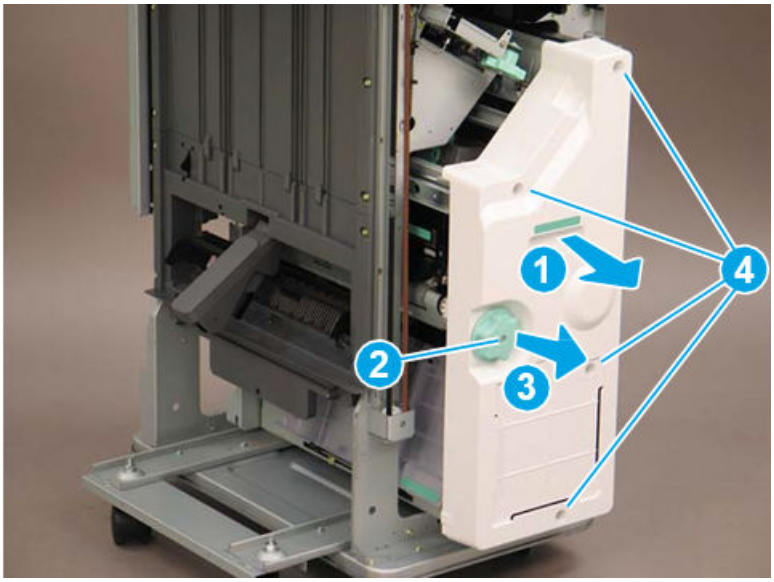
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

- ▲ Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1830 Remove five screws and the cover

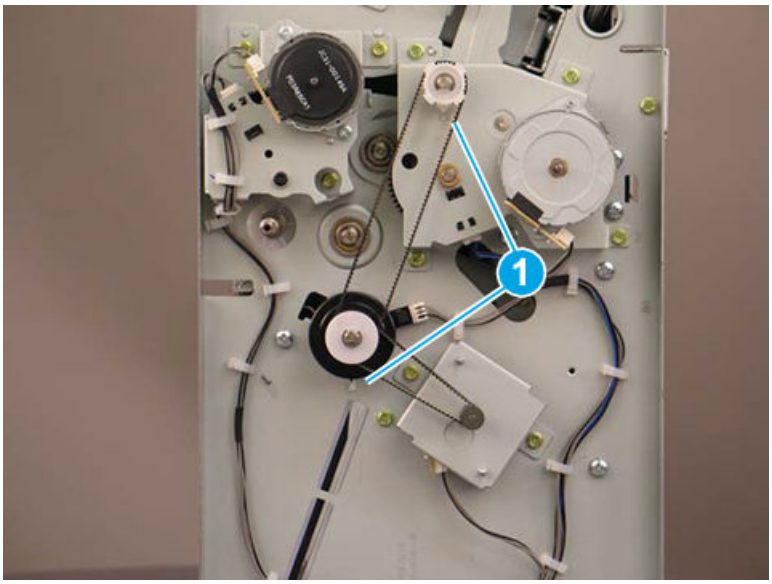


Remove the booklet c-fold blade motor (M17)

Follow these steps to remove the booklet c-fold blade motor (M17).

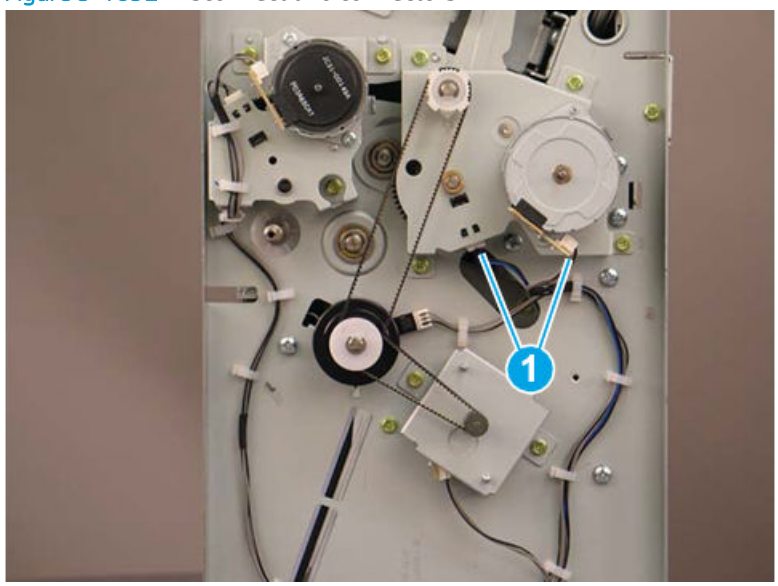
1. Note the position of the alignment arrows on the upper white gear and the lower motor (callout 1). These arrows must be aligned in these positions when the motor is reinstalled.

Figure 5-1831 Check arrow alignment



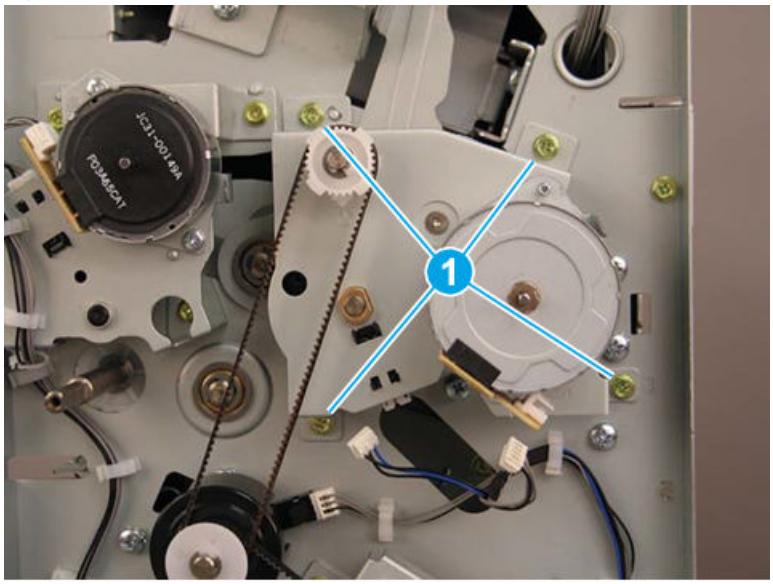
2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

Figure 5-1832 Disconnect two connectors



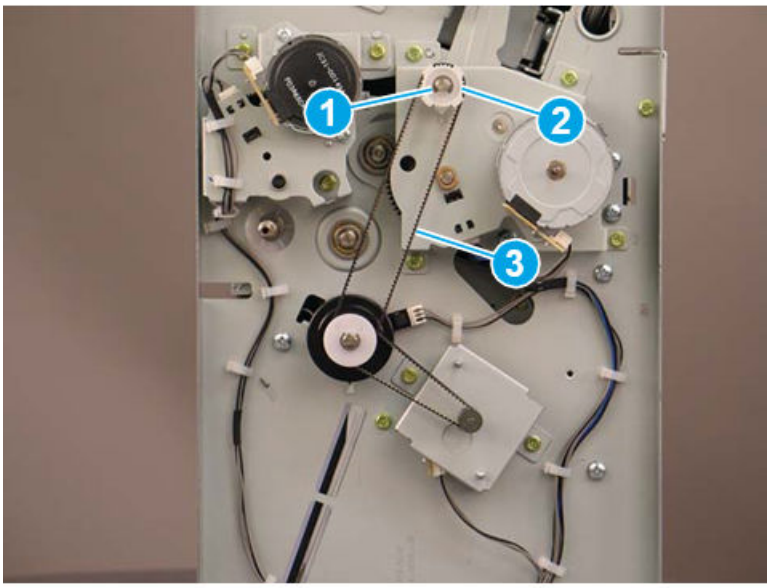
3. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1833 Remove four screws (callout 1).



4. Remove one e-clip (callout 1) on top of the white gear. Remove the white gear (callout 2) and release the belt (callout 3).

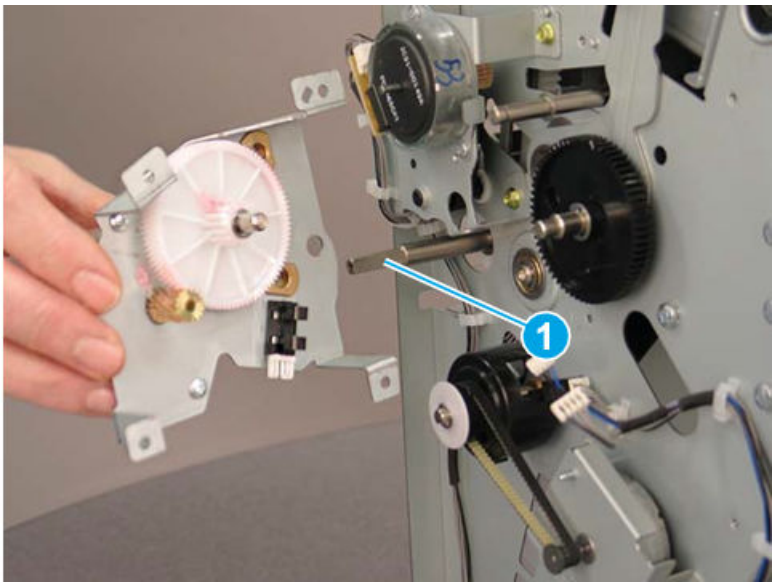
Figure 5-1834 Remove one e-clip, gear, and belt



5. Remove the bracket and motor from the booklet maker.

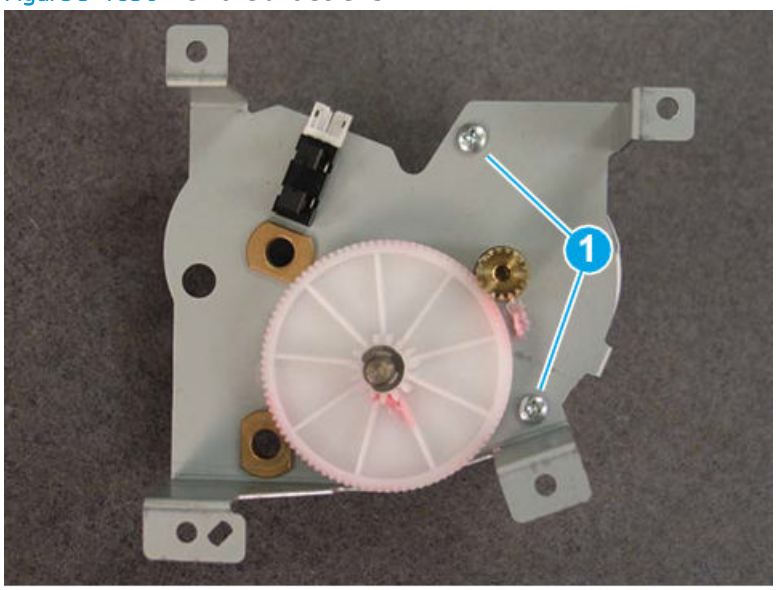
CAUTION: Do not pull on the shaft (callout 1) while removing the bracket and motor. The shaft might become dislodged at the other end. If the shaft becomes dislodged, remove the booklet maker PCA shield and PCA bracket to reinstall the shaft.

Figure 5-1835 Remove the bracket and motor



6. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the C fold motor.

Figure 5-1836 Remove two screws

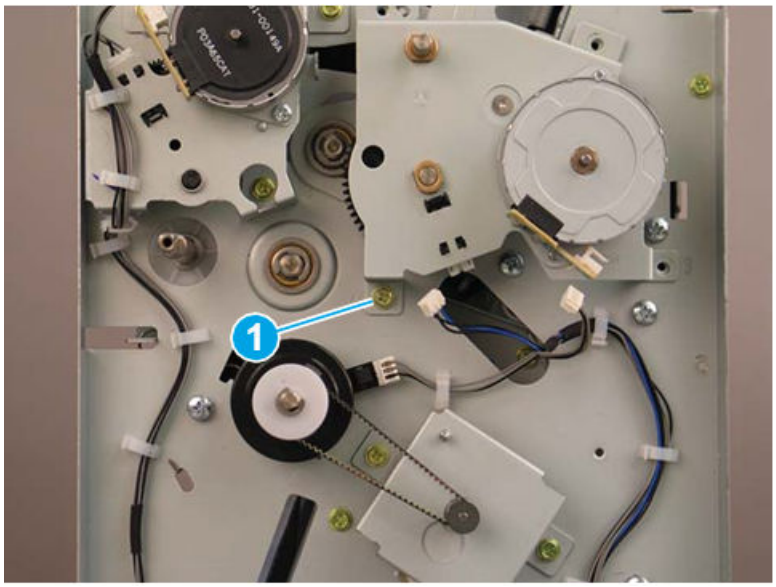


7. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

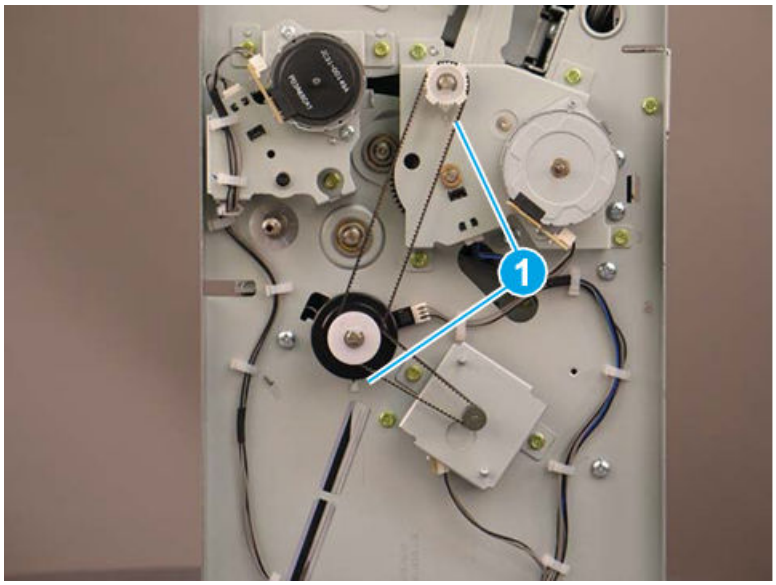
NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: C fold motor

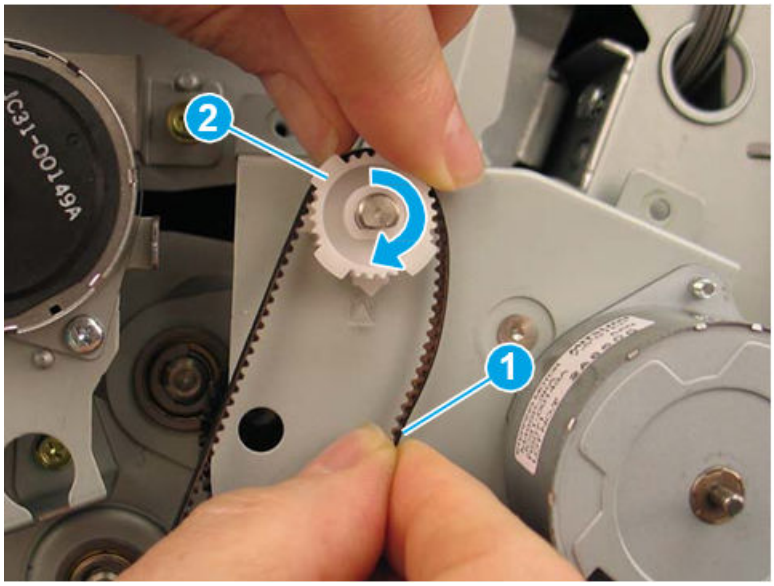
a. When installing the motor, install one screw (callout 1) to hold the bracket in place while installing the gear and belt.



b. Check the position of the alignment arrows on the upper white gear and the lower motor (callout 1).



c. If the arrows are not aligned, slightly pull up on the belt to create some slack around the gear (callout 1), and then rotate the gear (callout 2) until the arrows align.



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet diverter unit

Removal and replacement: Booklet diverter

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet diverter.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet diverter on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com..

Table 5-165 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01398A	Booklet diverter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

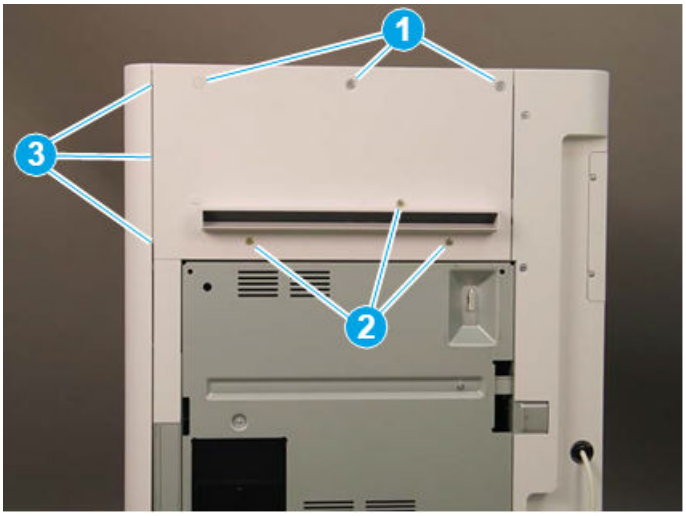
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1837 Remove the right upper cover

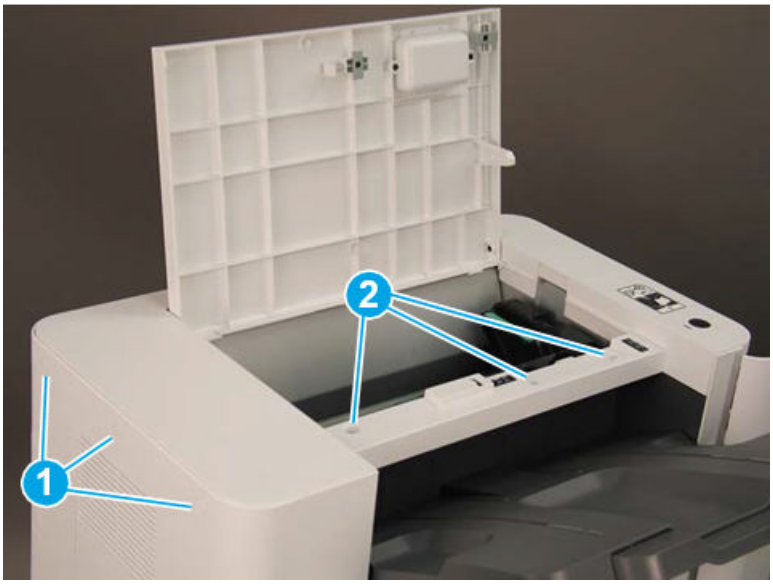


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

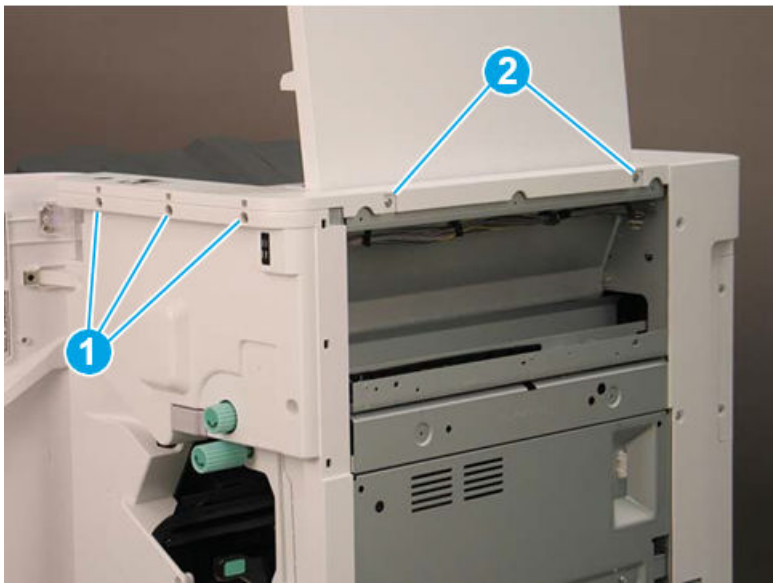
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1838 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

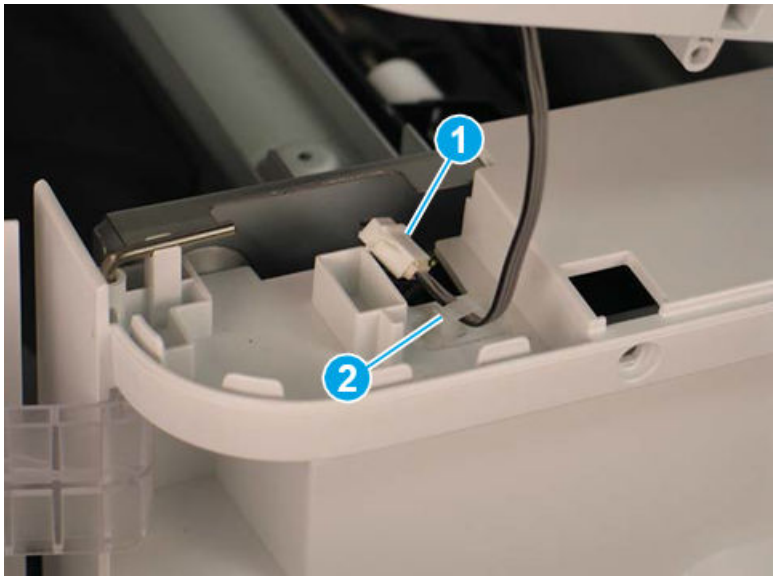
Figure 5-1839 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1840 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

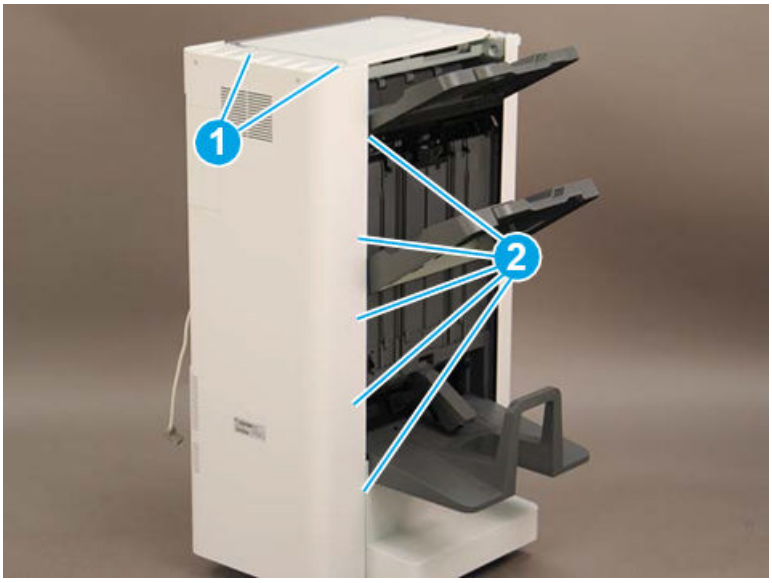


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1841 Remove seven screws

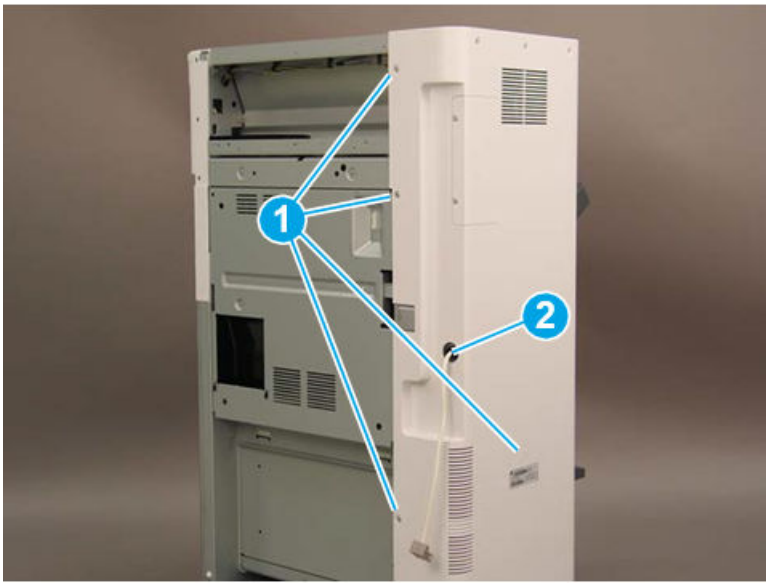


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1842 Remove the rear cover



Remove the booklet maker

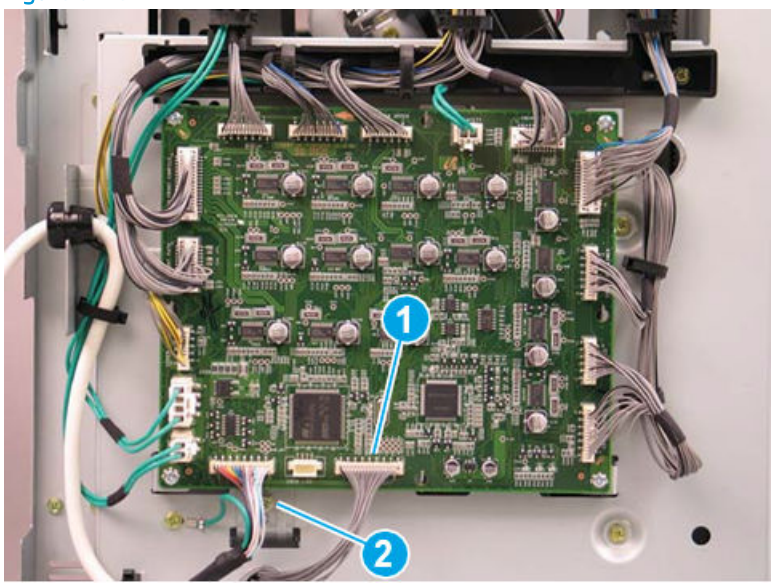
Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker.

1. Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1843 Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher

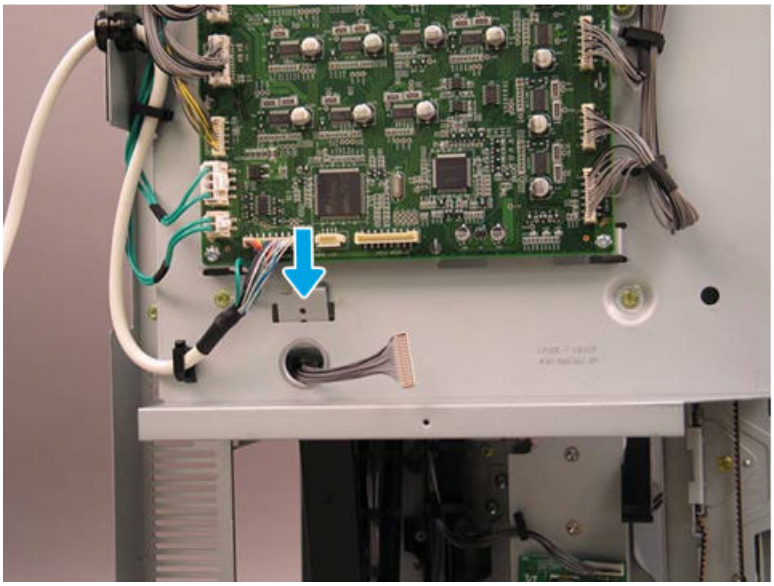
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 5-1844 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



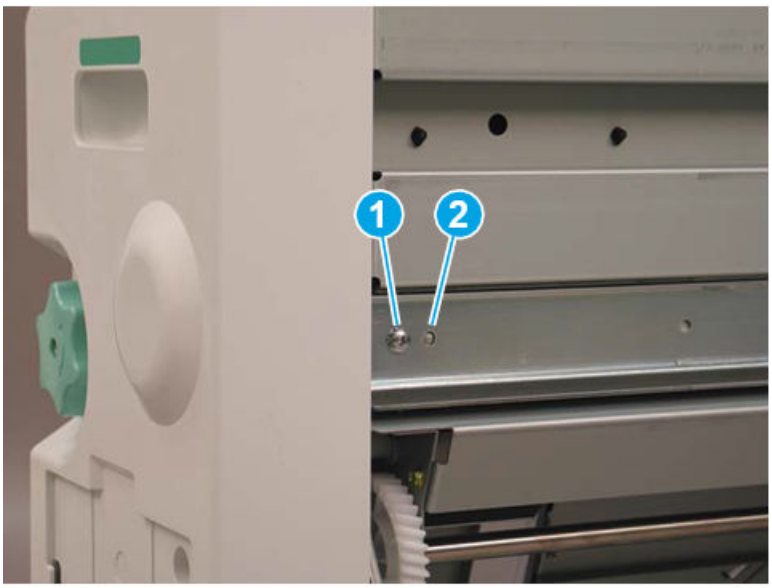
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 5-1845 Release the metal bracket



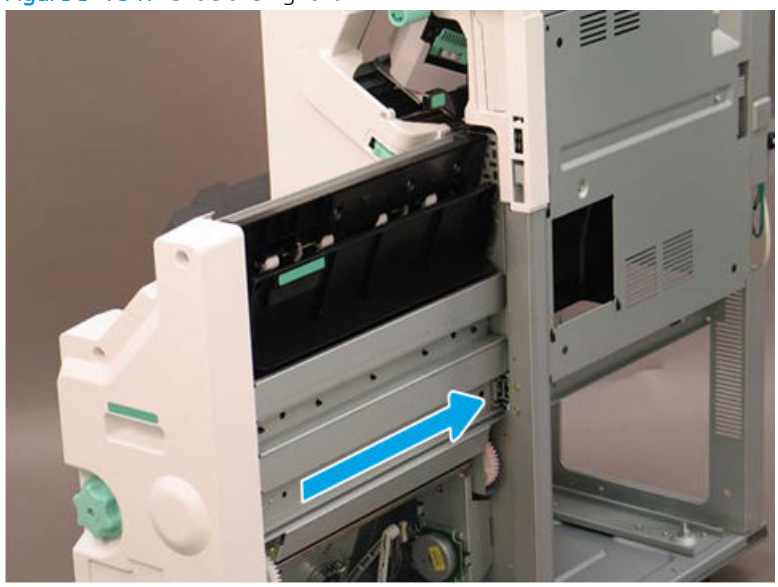
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1846 Remove one screw



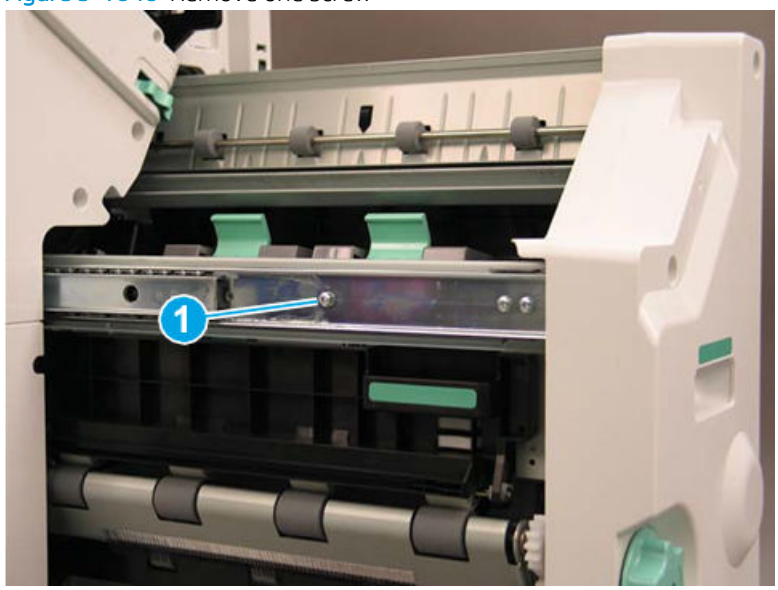
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 5-1847 Slide the right rail



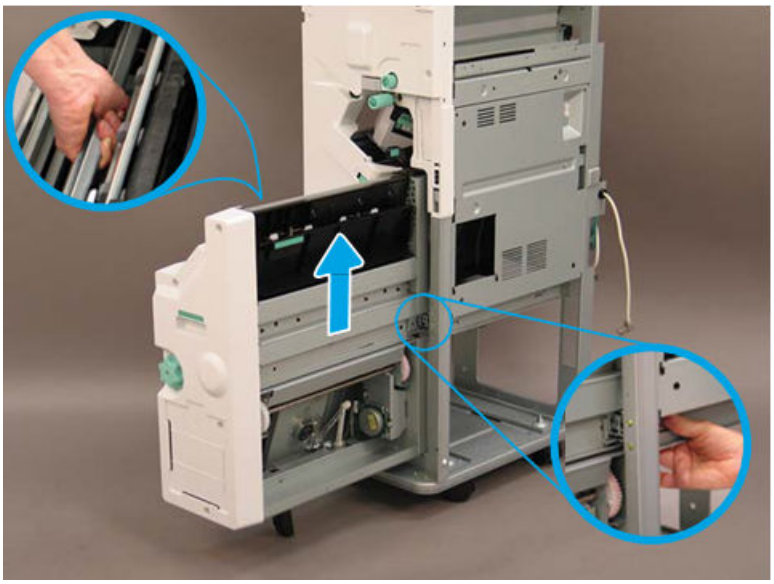
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1848 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1849 Remove the booklet maker



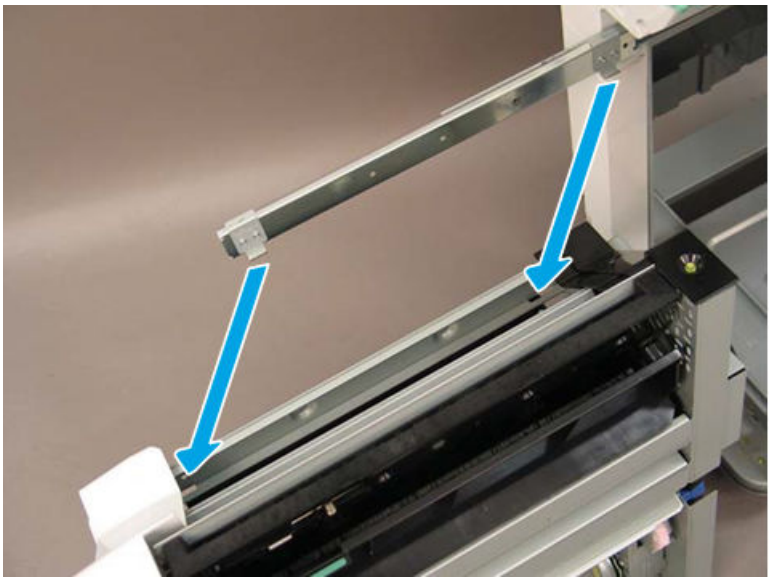
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: booklet maker

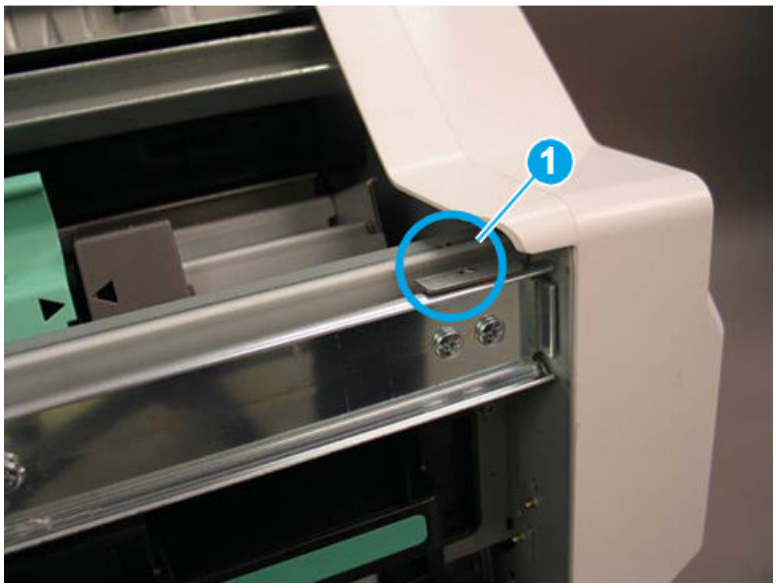
When installing the booklet maker, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1850 Position the hooks



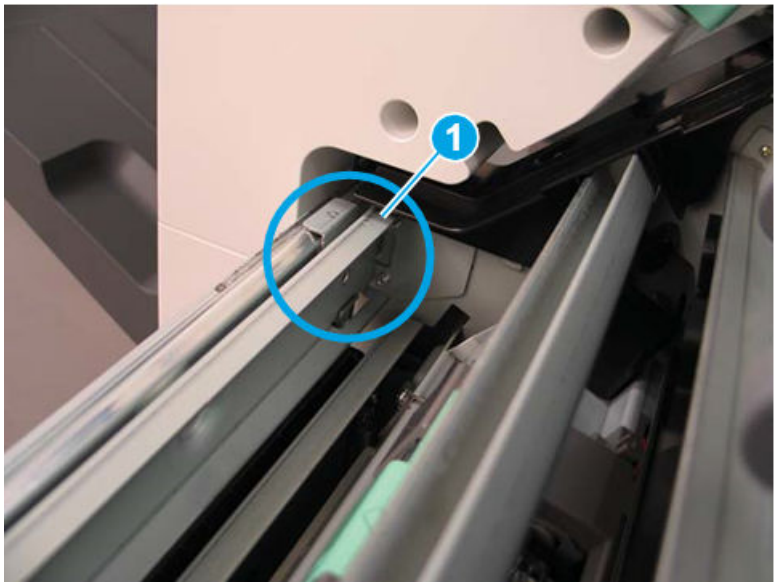
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1851 Align arrows



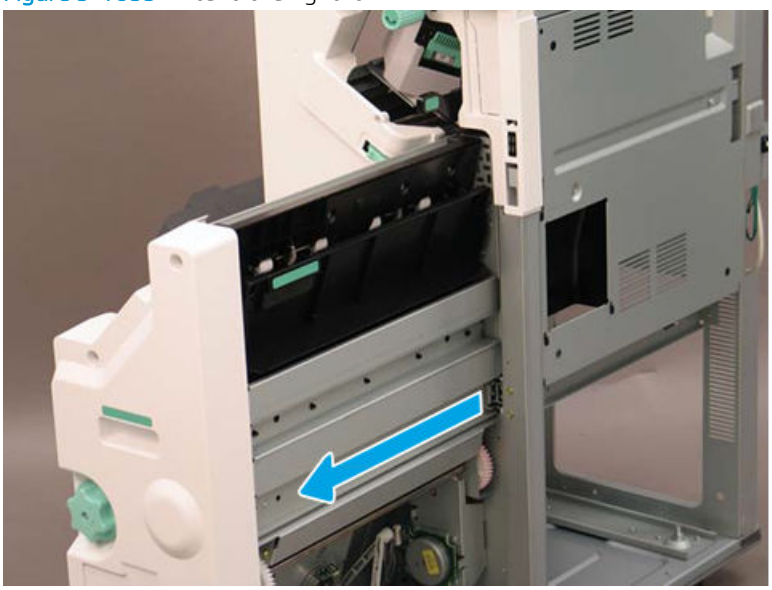
10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1852 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.

Figure 5-1853 Extend the right rail



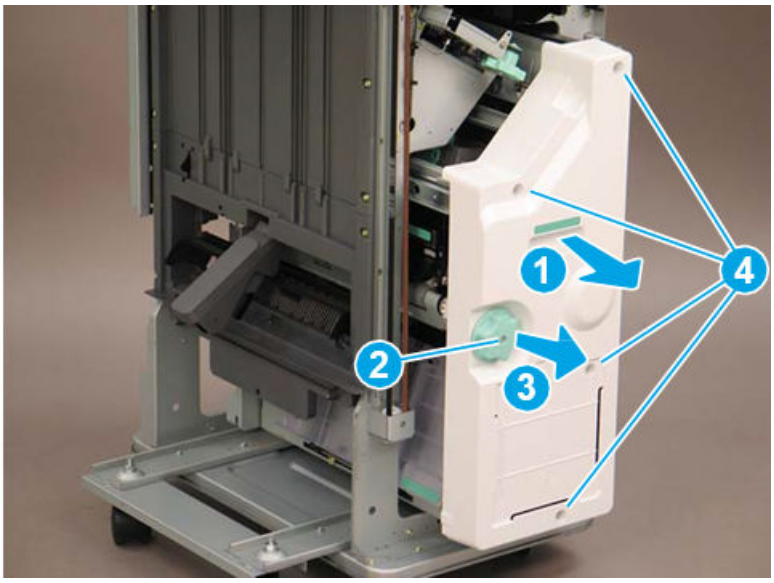
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

- Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1854 Remove five screws and the cover

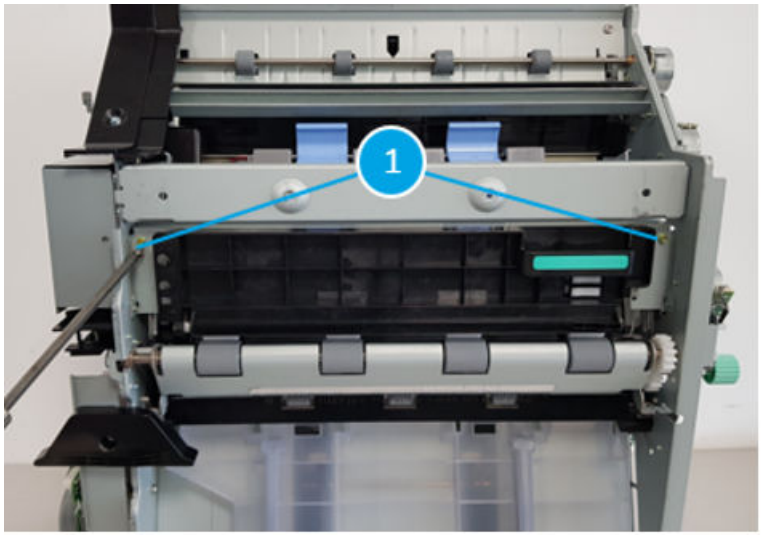


Remove the Booklet c-fold blade unit

Follow these steps to remove the Booklet c-fold blade unit.

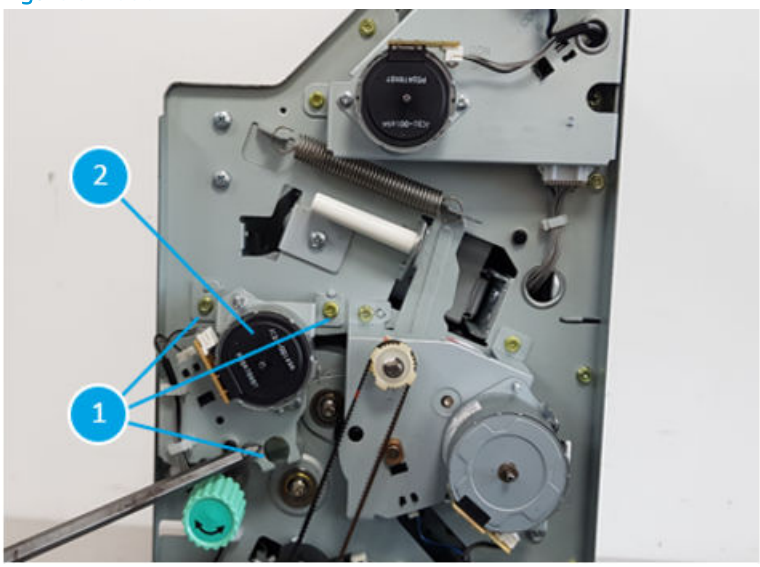
1. Remove two screws(callout 1) at the left of the booklet maker

Figure 5-1855 Remove two screws at the left of the booklet maker



2. Remove three screws(callout 1) at the front of the booklet maker to remove motor unit(callout 2) to reach out to the screw.

Figure 5-1856 Remove three screws to remove motor unit to reach out to the screw

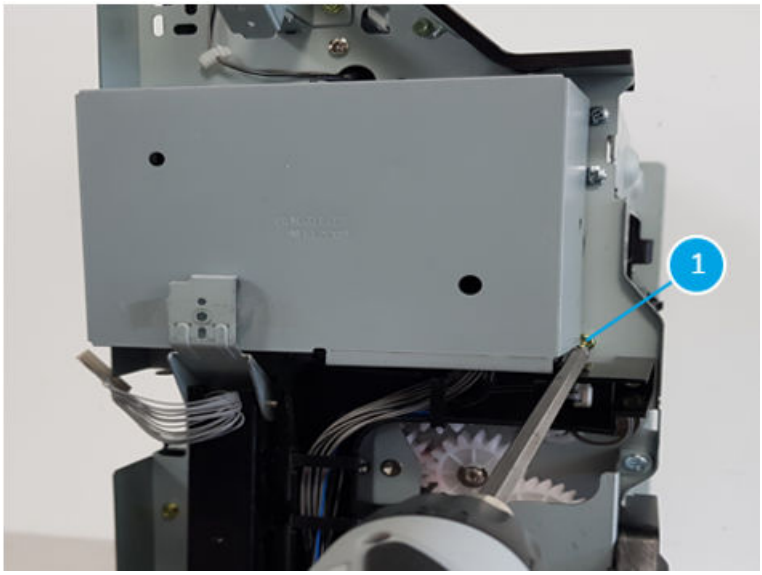


3. Remove one screw(callout 1) at the front of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1857 Remove one screw at the front of the booklet maker

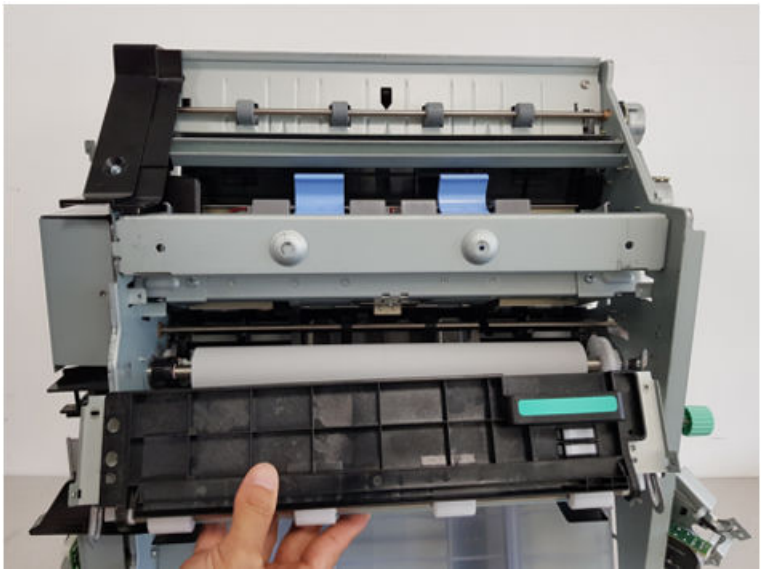
4. Remove one screw(callout 1) at the rear of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1858 Remove one screw at the rear of the booklet maker



5. Take the booklet c-fold blade unit out from the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1859 Take the booklet c-fold blade unit out from the booklet maker

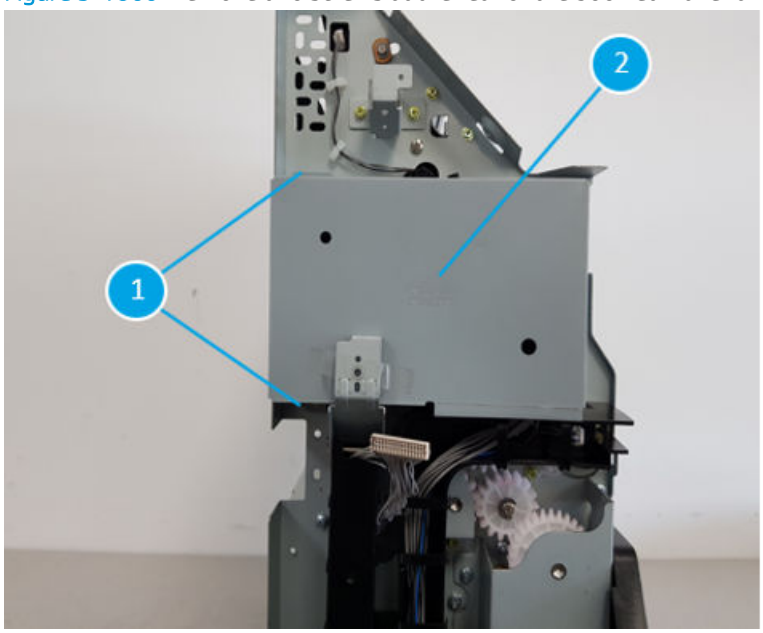


Remove the booklet diverter

Follow these steps to remove the booklet diverter.

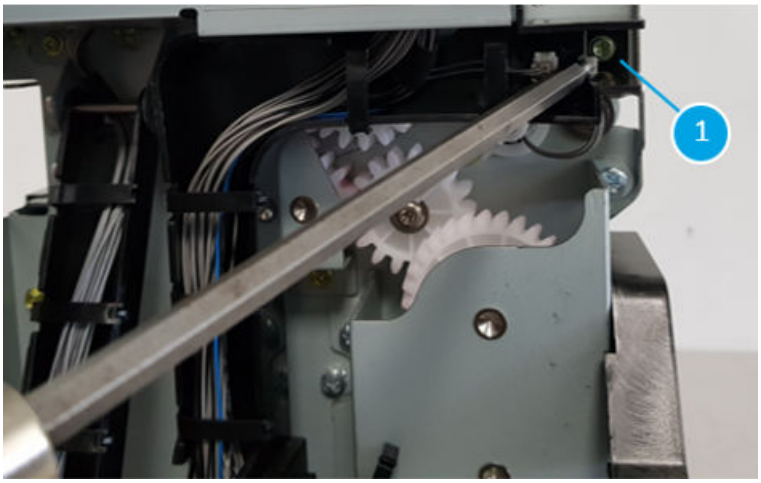
1. Remove two screws (callout 1) at the rear of the booklet maker and remove the PCA cover (callout 2).

Figure 5-1860 Remove two screws at the rear of the booklet maker and remove the PCA cover



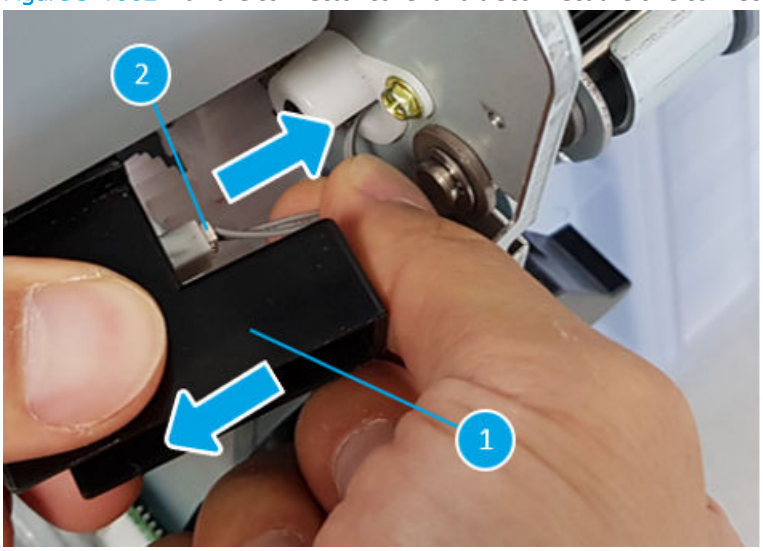
2. Remove one screw(callout 1) at the rear of the booklet maker to make it easy to disconnect the connector.

Figure 5-1861 Remove one screw at the rear of the booklet maker



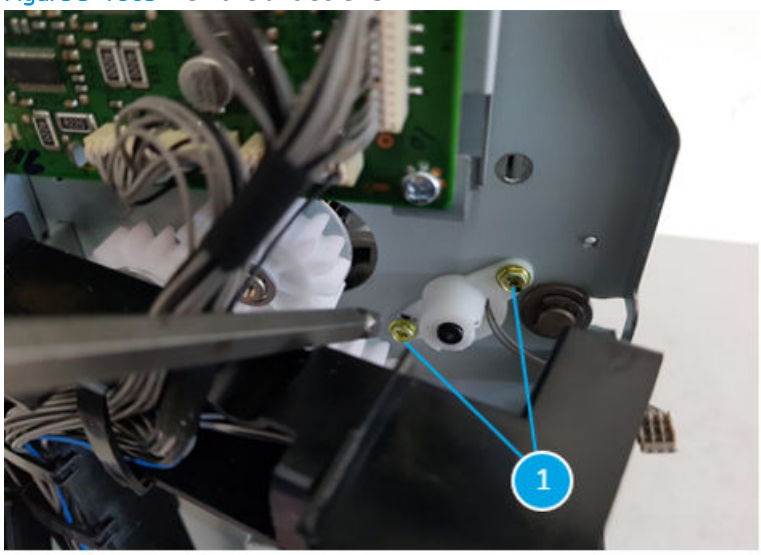
3. Pull the connector cover (callout 1) and disconnect the one connector (callout 2)

Figure 5-1862 Pull the connector cover and disconnect the one connector



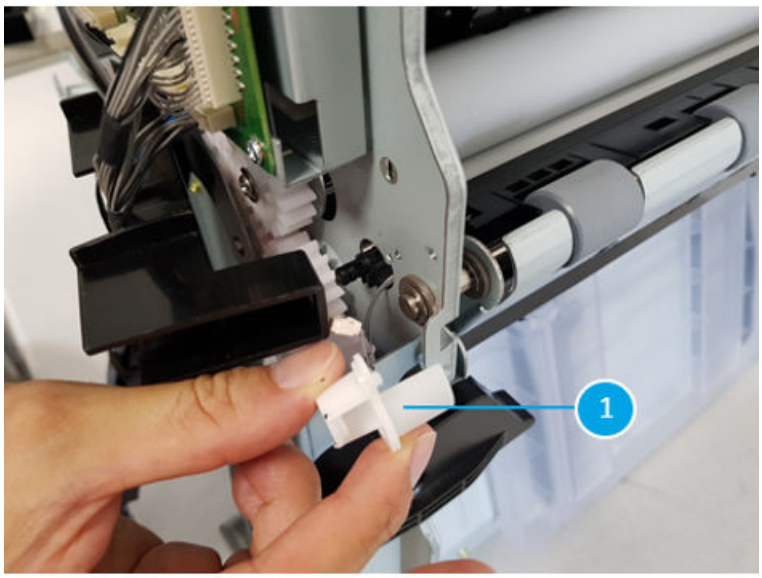
4. Remove two screws(callout 1)

Figure 5-1863 Remove two screws



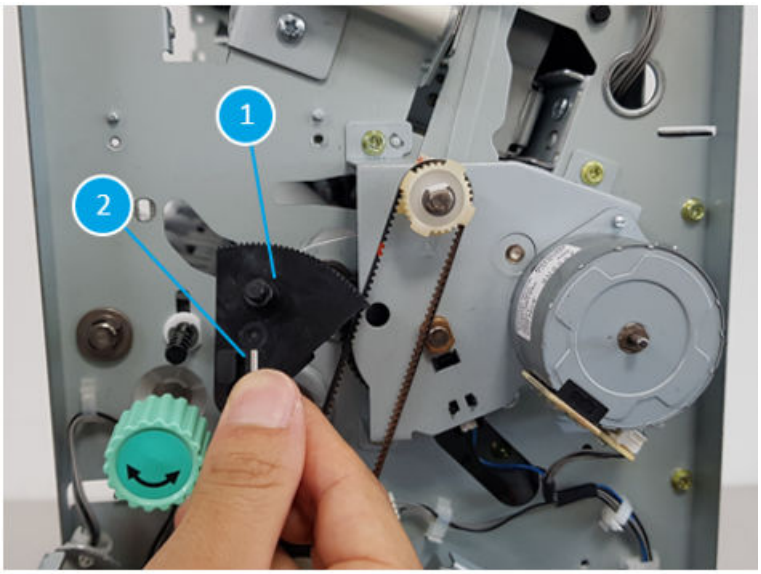
5. Remove the white bush

Figure 5-1864 Remove the white bush



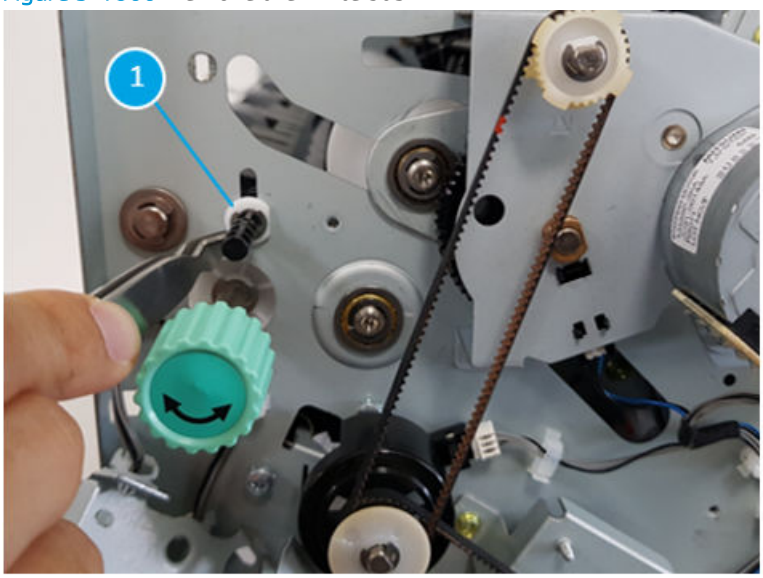
6. Remove one e-clip on top of the black actuator (callout 1) and remove the black actuator and make sure not to lose the pin(callout 2) when you pull out the black actuator.

Figure 5-1865 Remove one e-clip on top of the black actuator (callout 1) and remove the black actuator



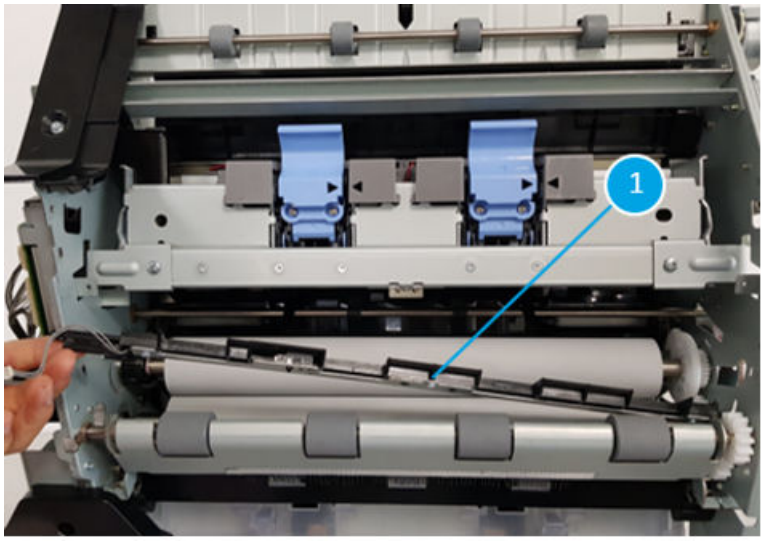
7. Remove the white bush (callout 1).

Figure 5-1866 Remove the white bush



8. Pull the booklet diverter out from the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1867 ull the booklet diverter out from the booklet maker



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet diverter home sensor (S40)

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet diverter home sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet diverter home sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com..

Table 5-166 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Booklet diverter home sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

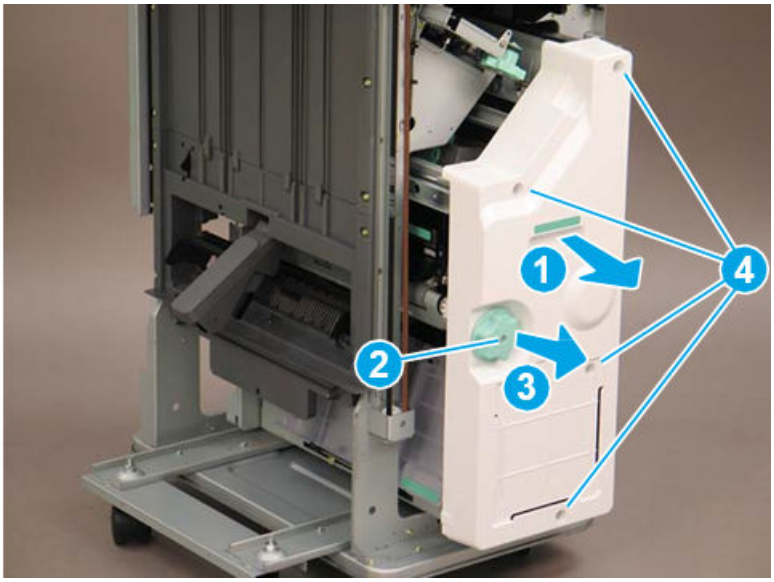
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

▲ Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1868 Remove five screws and the cover

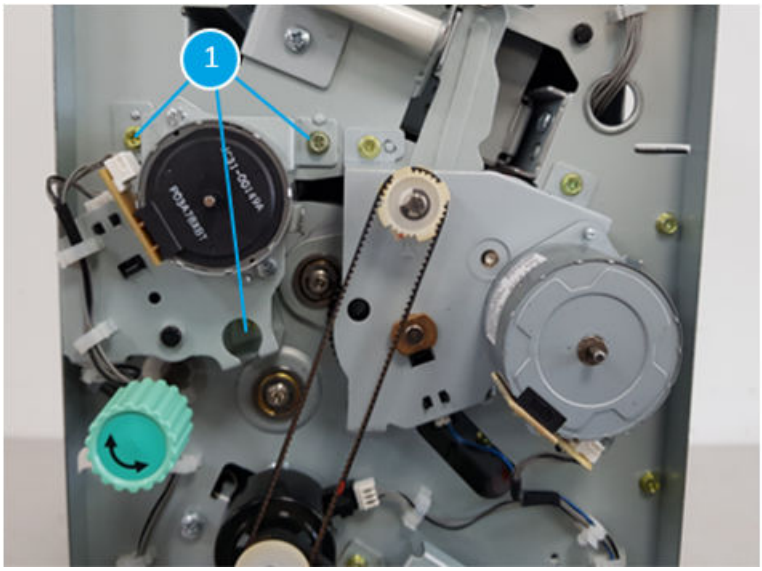


Remove the booklet diverter home sensor (S40)

Follow these steps to remove the booklet diverter home sensor (S40).

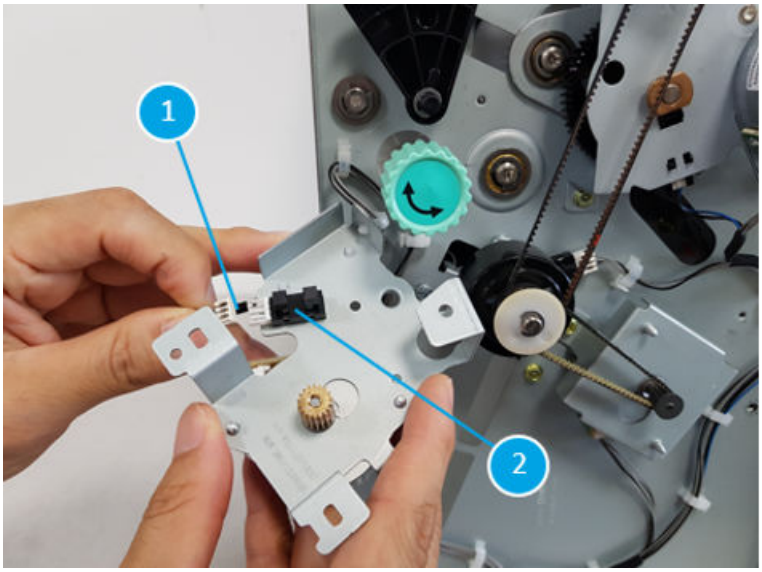
1. Remove three screws (callout 1)

Figure 5-1869 Remove three screws



2. Unplug one connector (callout 1) and remove the booklet diverter home sensor (S40, callout 2)

Figure 5-1870 Remove the booklet diverter home sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet diverter motor (M18)

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet diverter motor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet diverter motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com..

Table 5-167 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01397A	Booklet diverter motor assembly
JC93-01153A	Booklet diverter motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

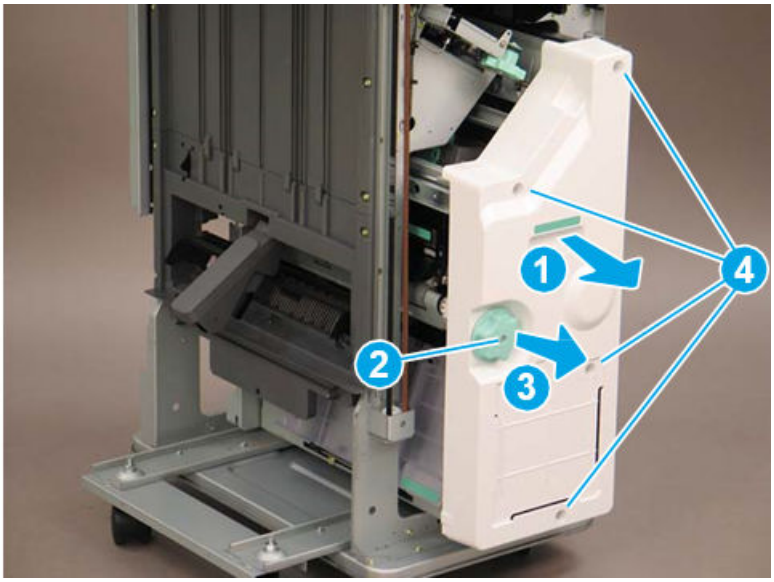
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

- Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1871 Remove five screws and the cover



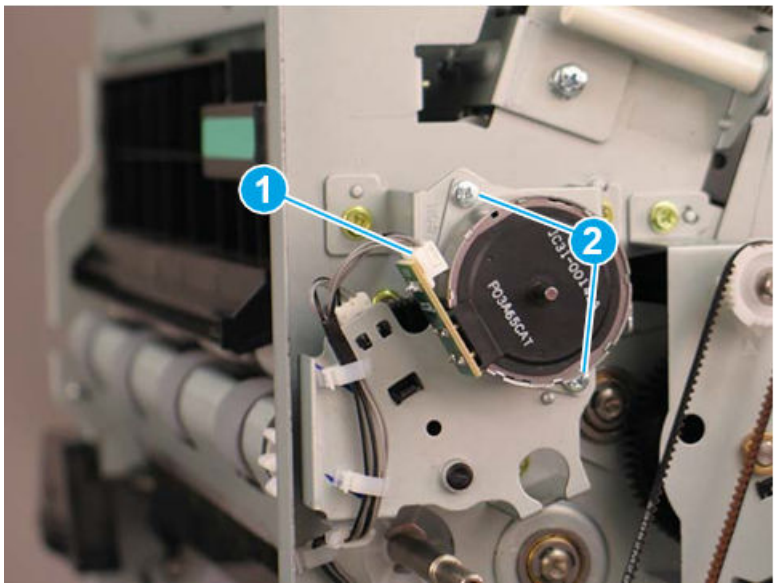
Remove the booklet diverter motor (M18)

Follow these steps to remove the booklet diverter motor (M18).

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet diverter motor.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1872 Remove the separate pawl motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet exit unit

Removal and replacement: Booklet exit sensor (S44)

Learn how to remove and replace the tray booklet exit sensor.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet exit sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com..

Table 5-168 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC32-00020A	Booklet exit sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

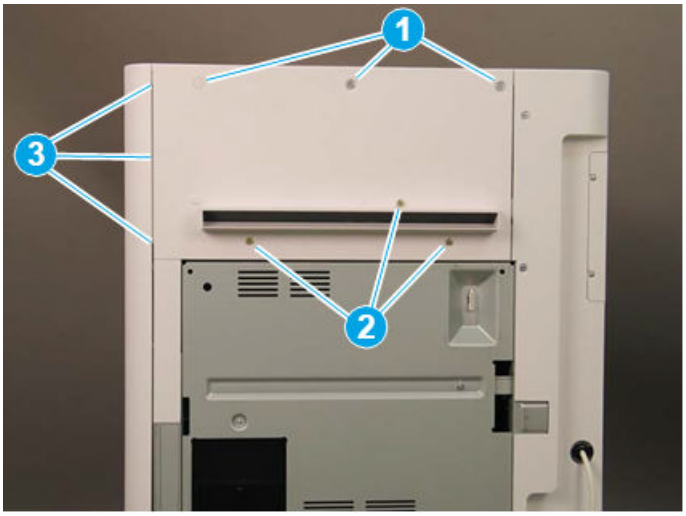
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1873 Remove the right upper cover

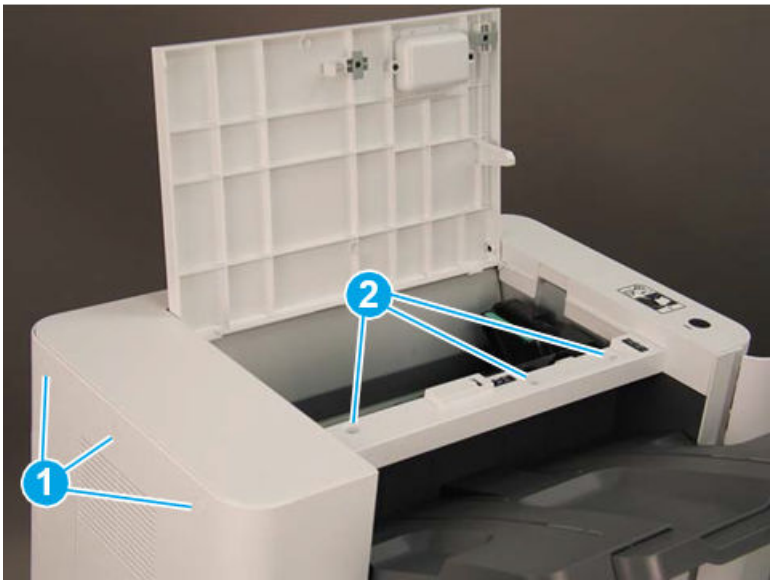


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

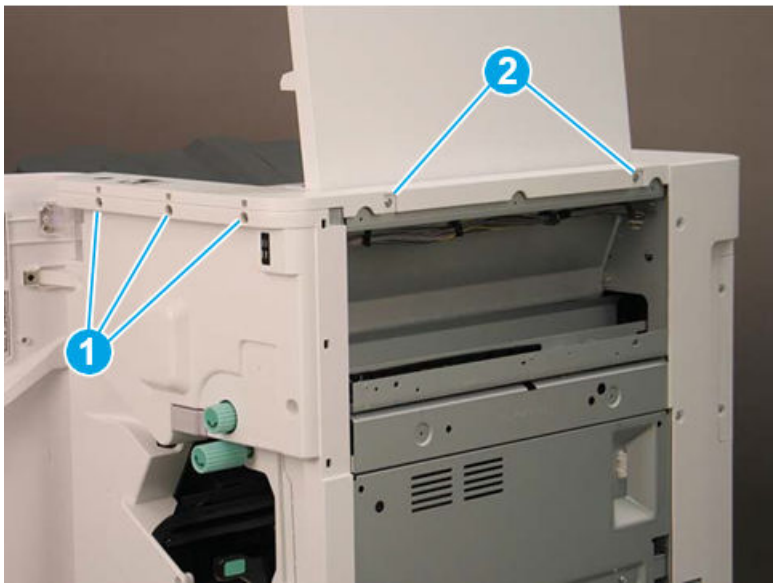
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1874 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

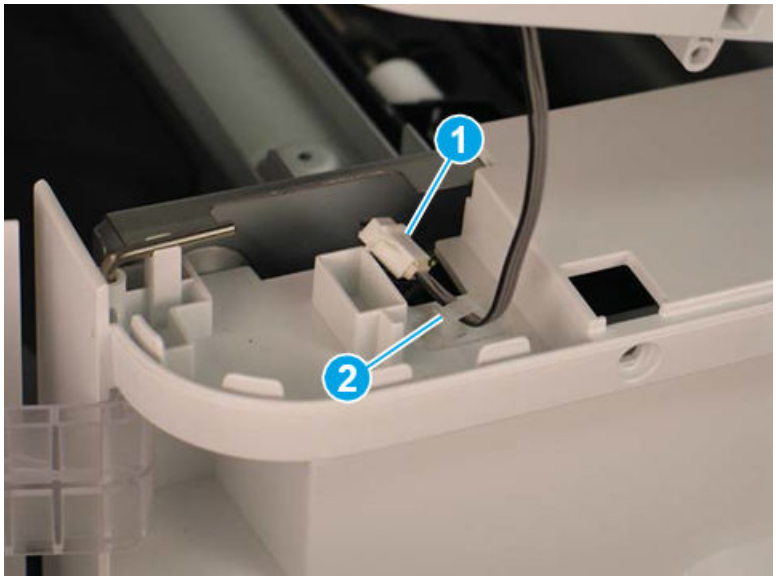
Figure 5-1875 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1876 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

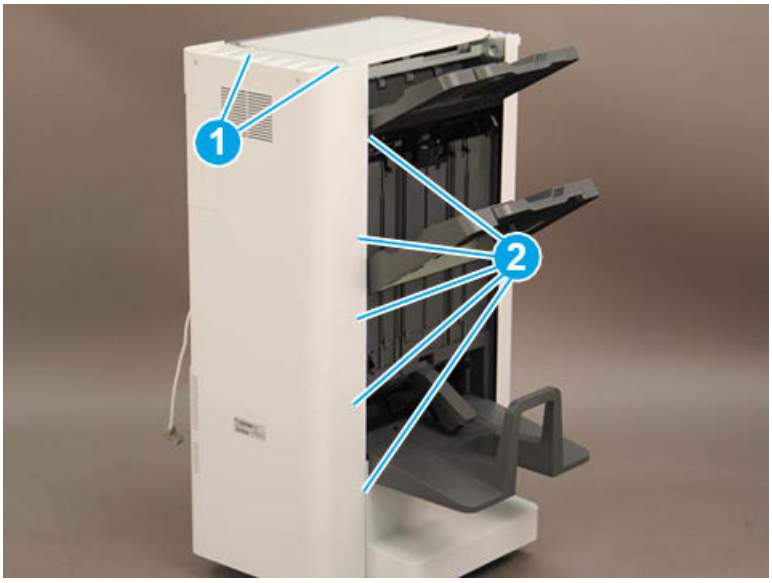


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1877 Remove seven screws

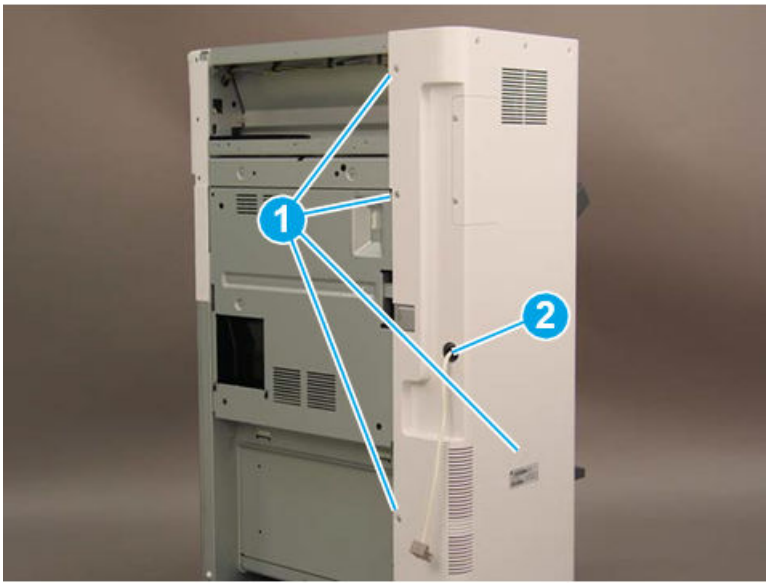


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1878 Remove the rear cover



Remove the booklet maker

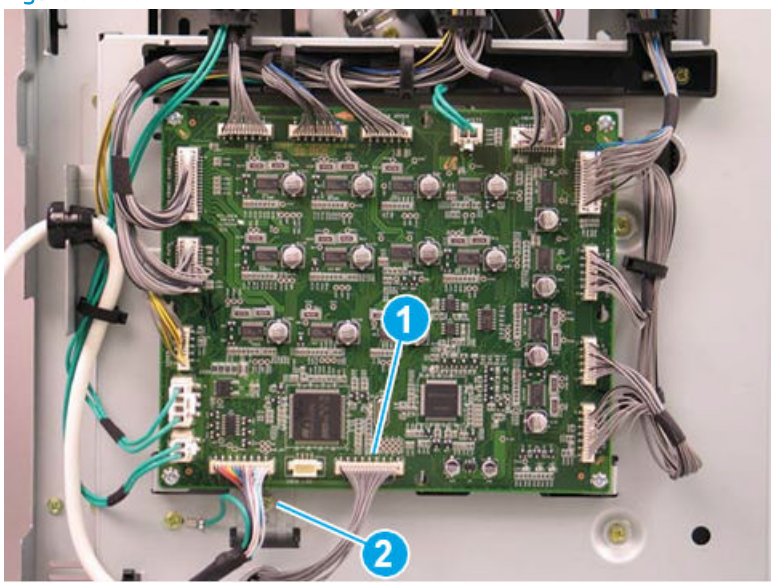
Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker.

1. Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1879 Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher

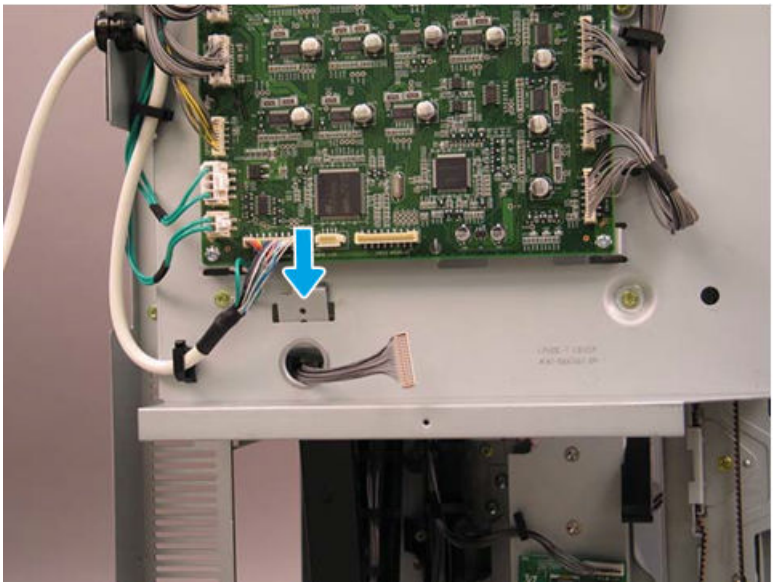
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 5-1880 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



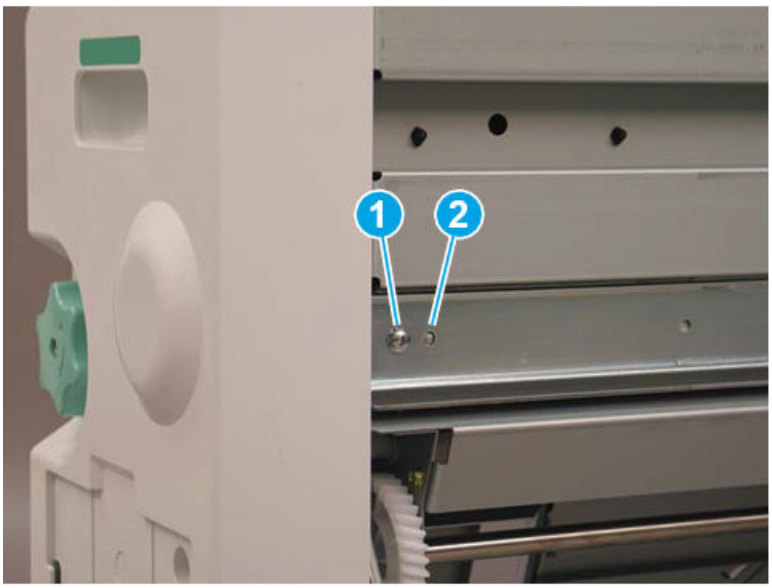
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 5-1881 Release the metal bracket



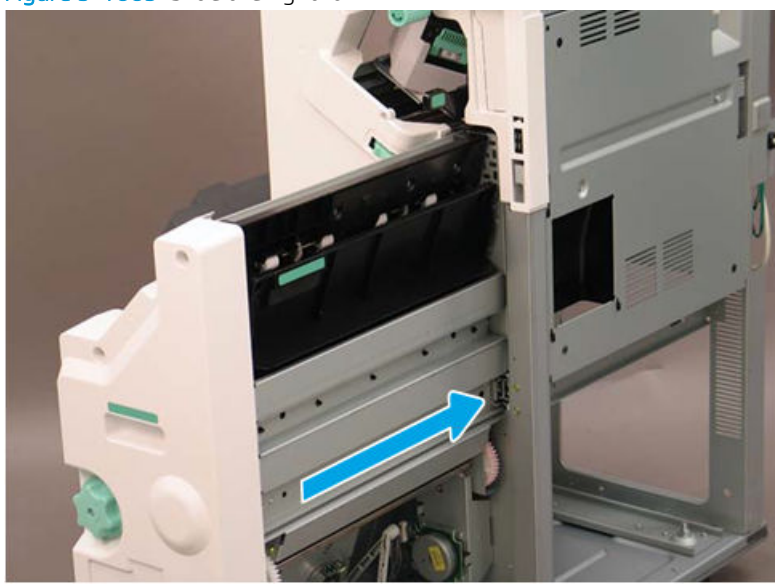
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1882 Remove one screw



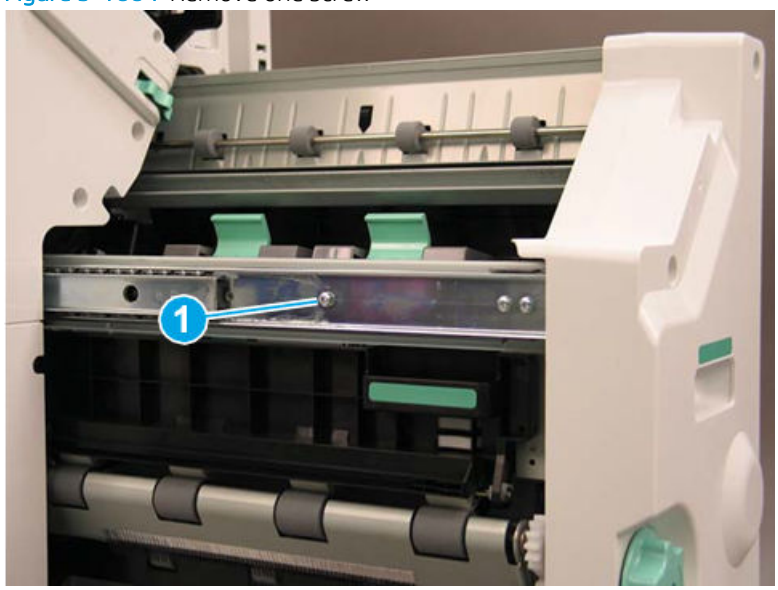
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 5-1883 Slide the right rail



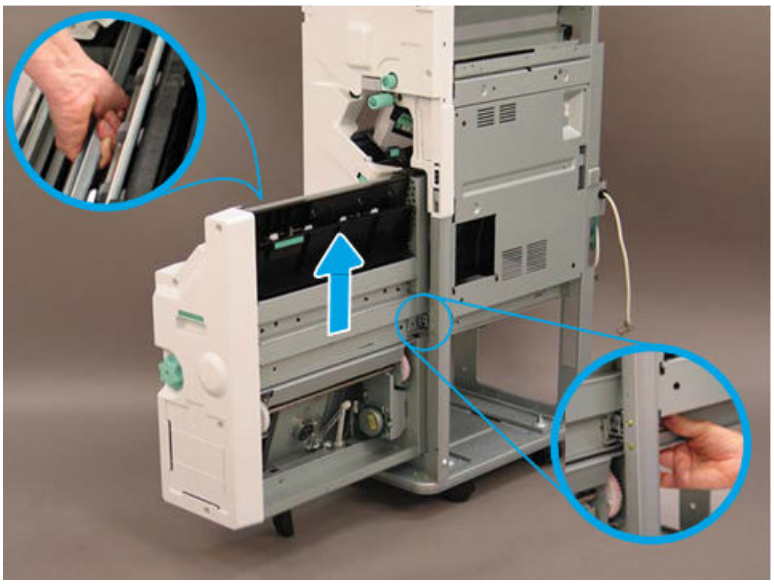
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1884 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1885 Remove the booklet maker



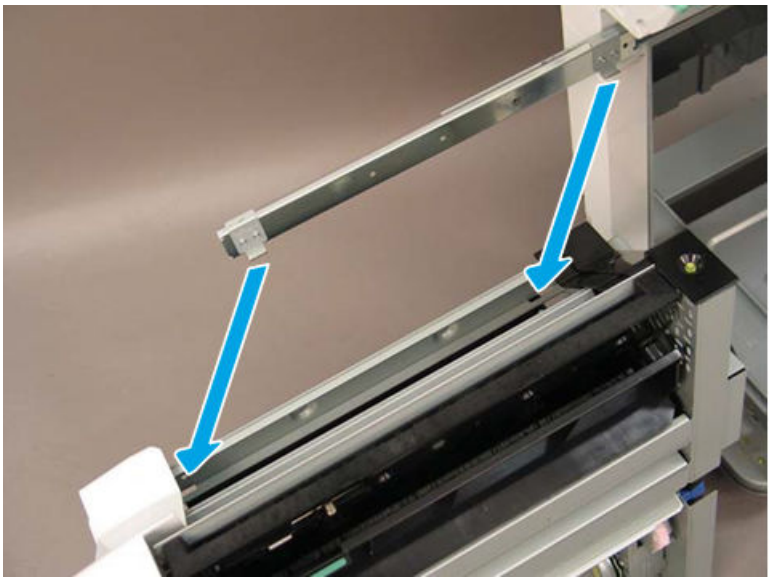
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: booklet maker

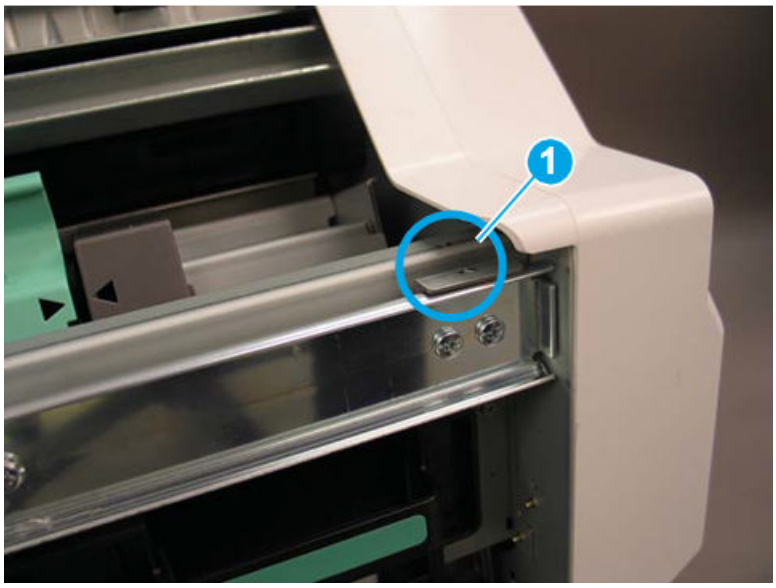
When installing the booklet maker, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1886 Position the hooks



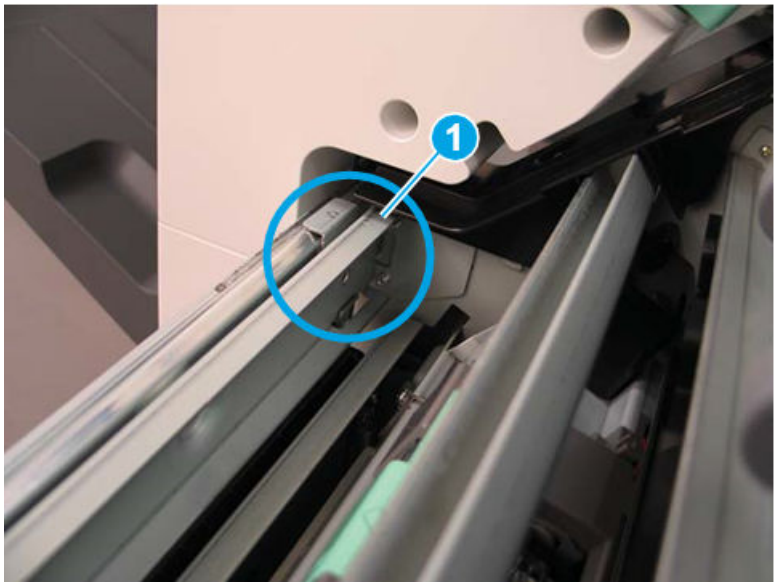
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1887 Align arrows



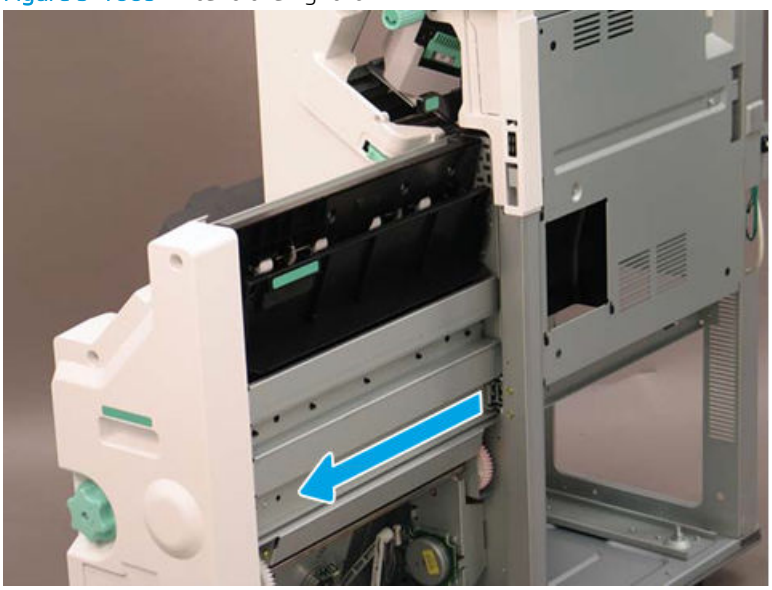
10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1888 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.

Figure 5-1889 Extend the right rail



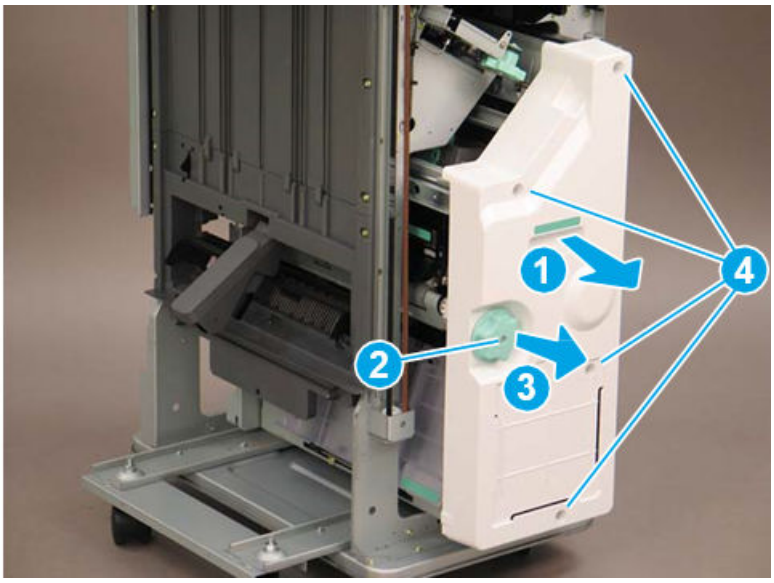
Remove the booklet front cover

Follow these steps to remove the booklet front cover.

▲ Slide the booklet maker slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet maker to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet front cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1890 Remove five screws and the cover

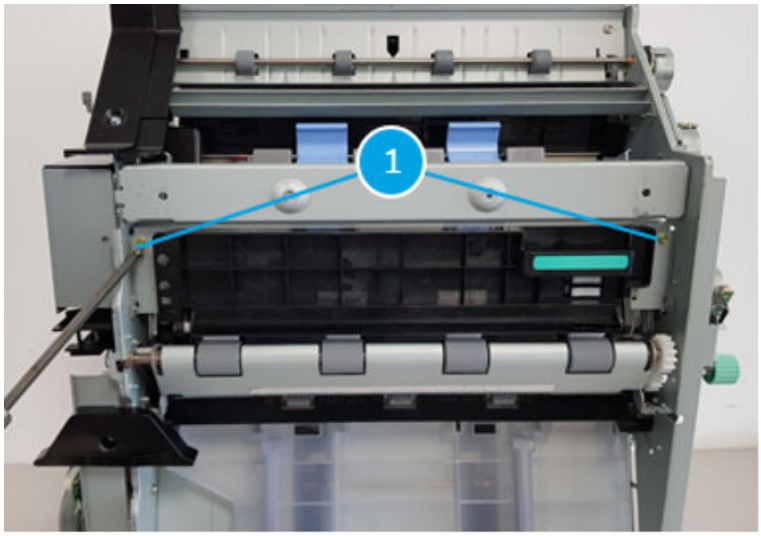


Remove the Booklet c-fold blade unit

Follow these steps to remove the Booklet c-fold blade unit.

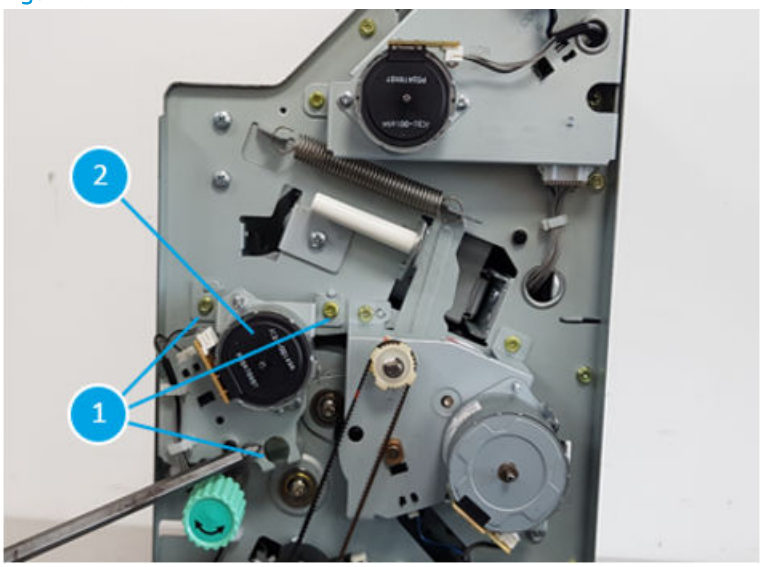
1. Remove two screws(callout 1) at the left of the booklet maker

Figure 5-1891 Remove two screws at the left of the booklet maker



2. Remove three screws(callout 1) at the front of the booklet maker to remove motor unit(callout 2) to reach out to the screw.

Figure 5-1892 Remove three screws to remove motor unit to reach out to the screw

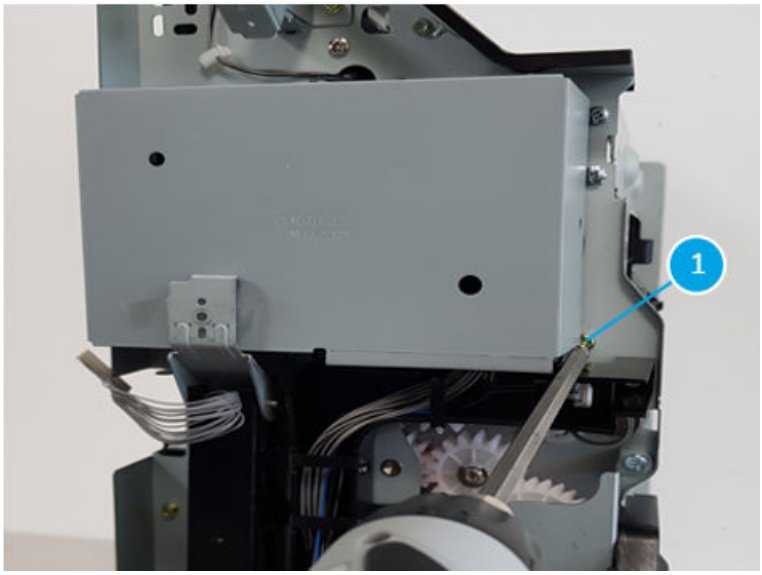


3. Remove one screw(callout 1) at the front of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1893 Remove one screw at the front of the booklet maker

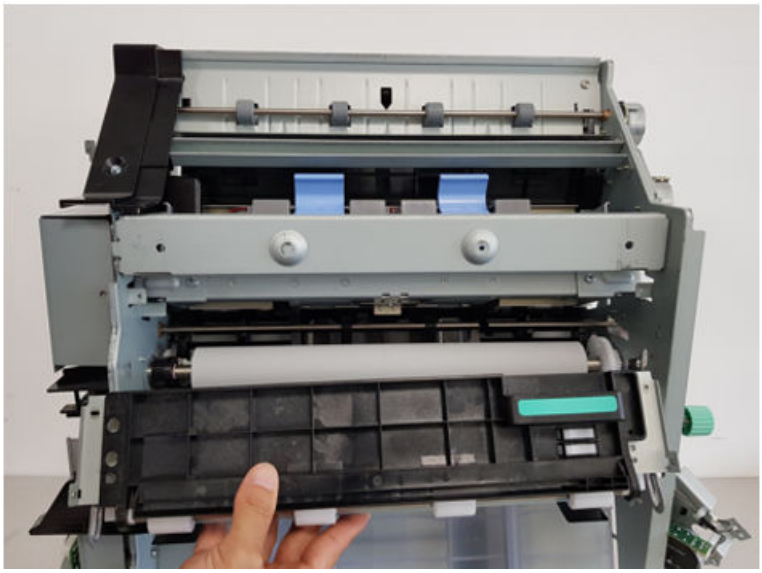
4. Remove one screw(callout 1) at the rear of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1894 Remove one screw at the rear of the booklet maker



5. Take the booklet c-fold blade unit out from the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1895 Take the booklet c-fold blade unit out from the booklet maker

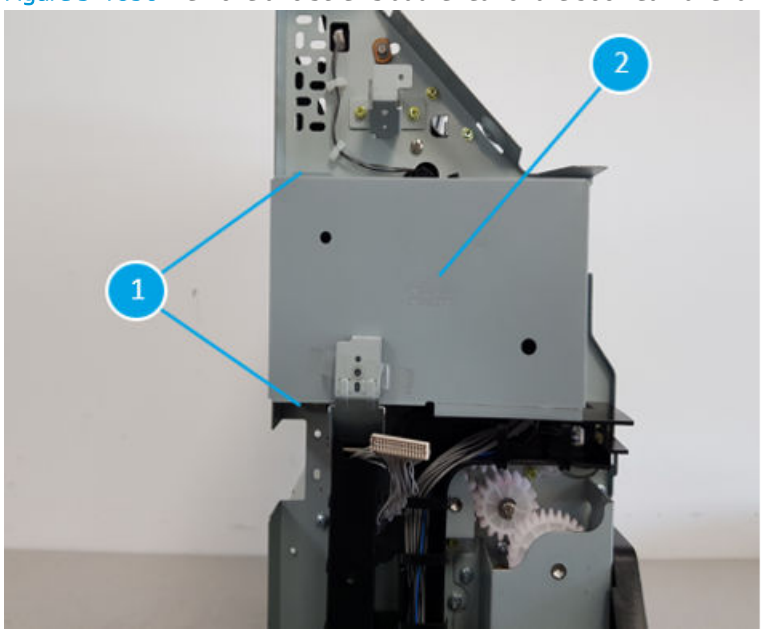


Remove the booklet diverter

Follow these steps to remove the booklet diverter.

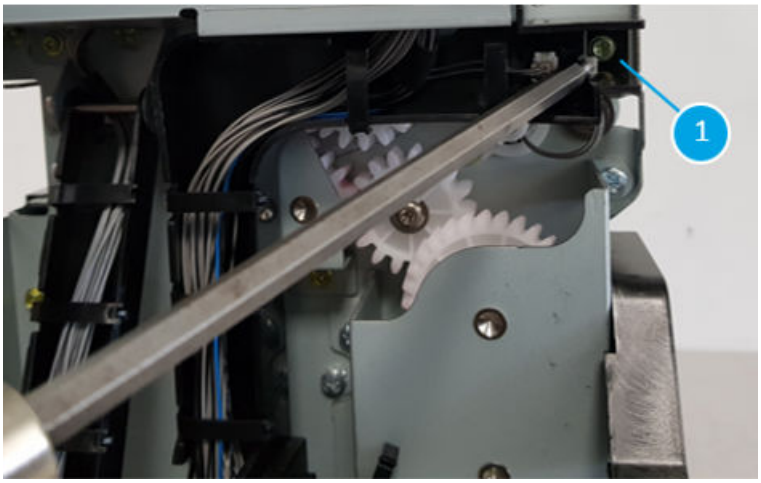
1. Remove two screws (callout 1) at the rear of the booklet maker and remove the PCA cover (callout 2).

Figure 5-1896 Remove two screws at the rear of the booklet maker and remove the PCA cover



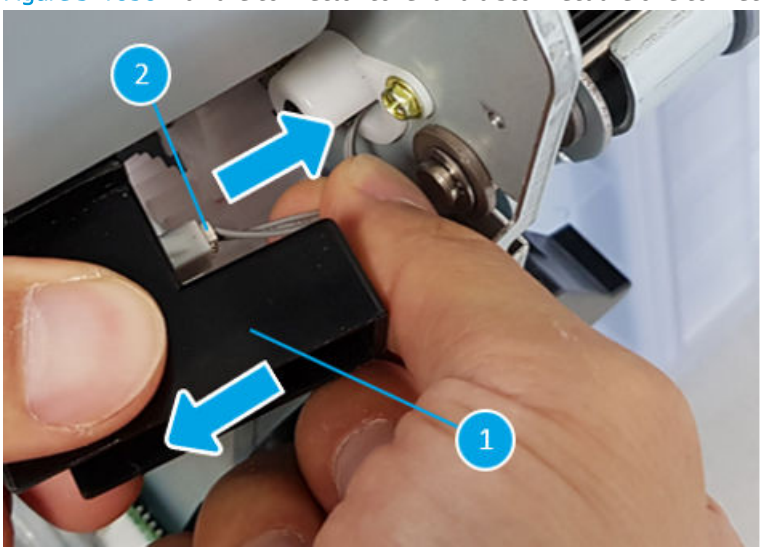
2. Remove one screw(callout 1) at the rear of the booklet maker to make it easy to disconnect the connector.

Figure 5-1897 Remove one screw at the rear of the booklet maker



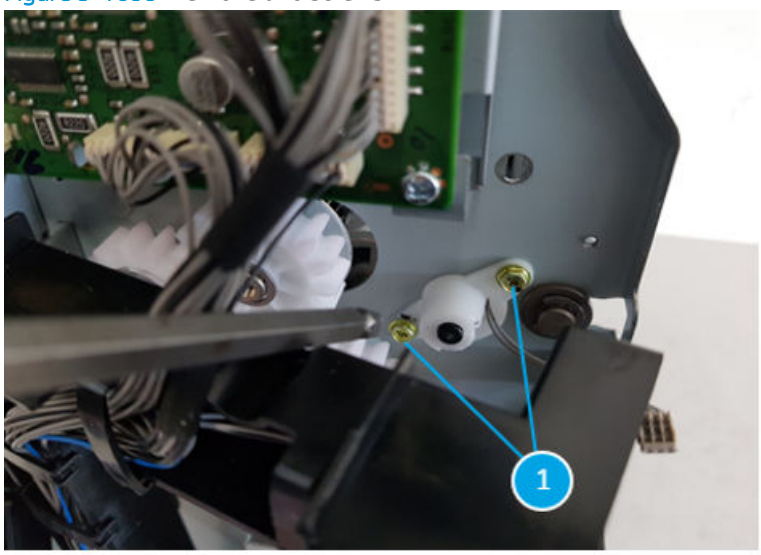
3. Pull the connector cover (callout 1) and disconnect the one connector (callout 2)

Figure 5-1898 Pull the connector cover and disconnect the one connector



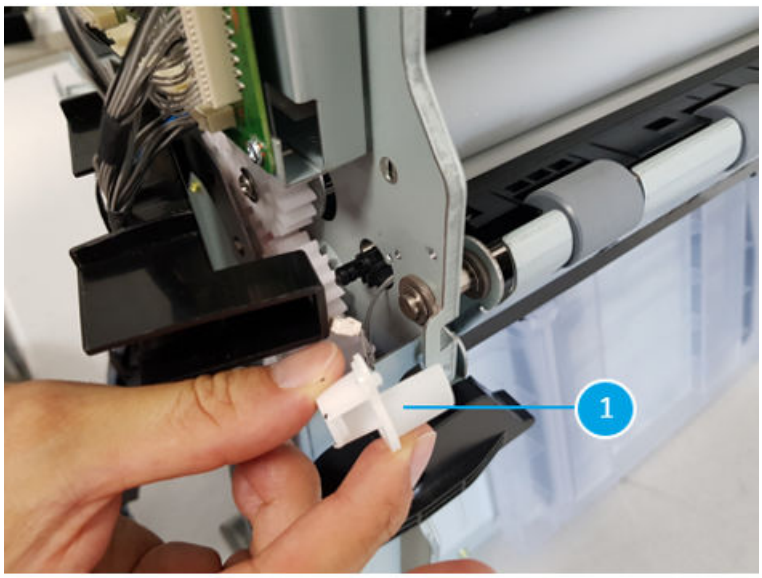
4. Remove two screws(callout 1)

Figure 5-1899 Remove two screws



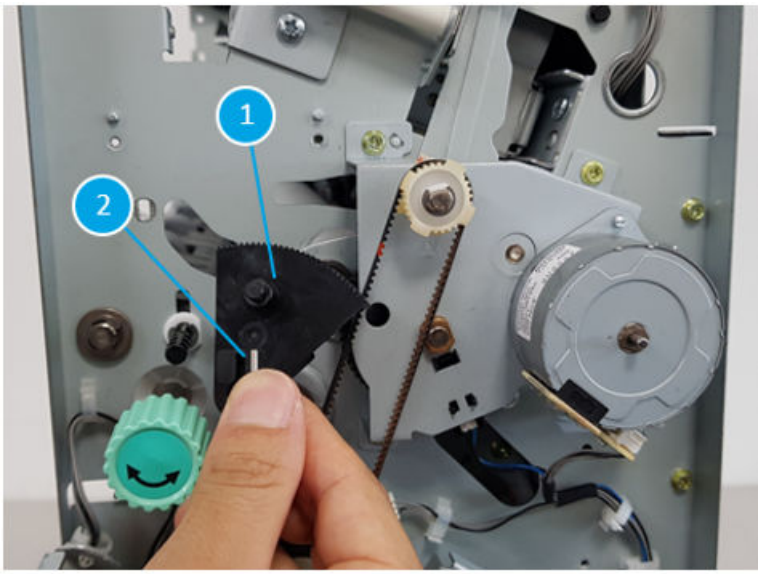
5. Remove the white bush

Figure 5-1900 Remove the white bush



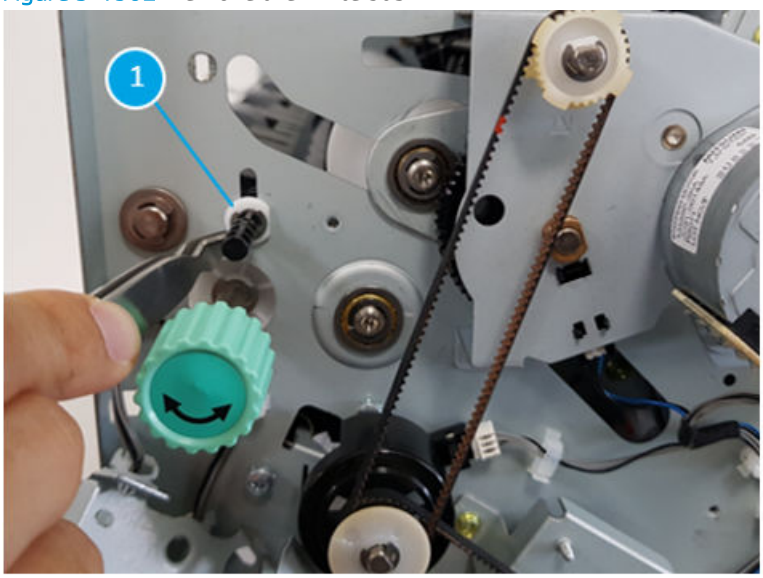
6. Remove one e-clip on top of the black actuator (callout 1) and remove the black actuator and make sure not to lose the pin(callout 2) when you pull out the black actuator.

Figure 5-1901 Remove one e-clip on top of the black actuator (callout 1) and remove the black actuator



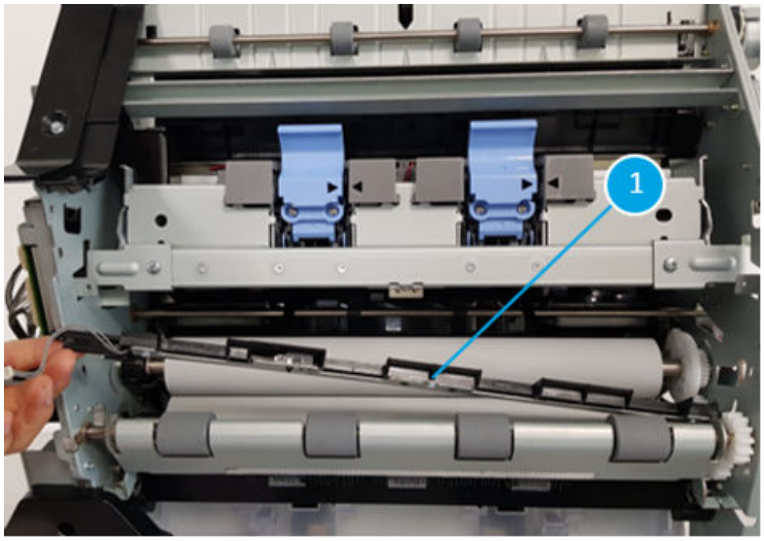
7. Remove the white bush (callout 1).

Figure 5-1902 Remove the white bush



8. Pull the booklet diverter out from the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1903 ull the booklet diverter out from the booklet maker

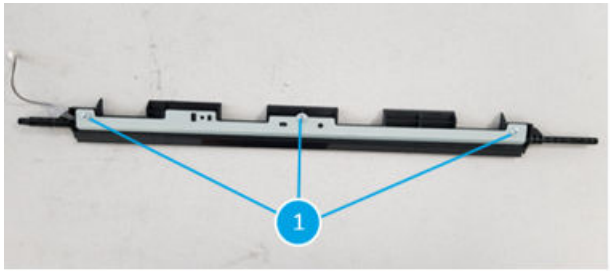


Remove the booklet exit sensor (S44)

Follow these steps to remove the booklet exit sensor (S44).

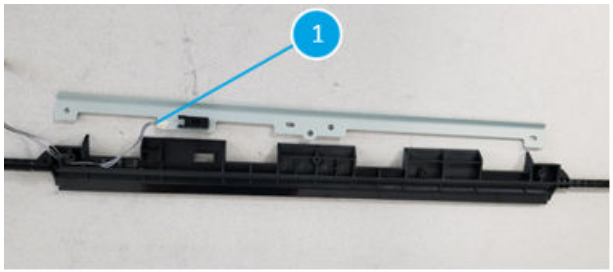
1. Remove three screws (callout 1)

Figure 5-1904 Remove three screws



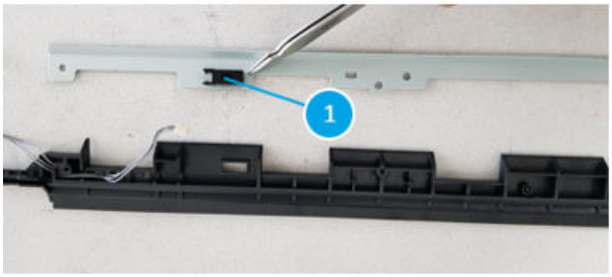
2. Unplug one connector (callout 1)

Figure 5-1905 Unplug one connector



3. Remove the booklet exit sensor (S44, callout 1)

Figure 5-1906 Remove the booklet exit sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet output tray unit

Removal and replacement: Booklet output tray

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet output tray.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet output tray on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com..

Table 5-169 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC61-07253B	Booklet output tray
JC63-04978B	Booklet output tray cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

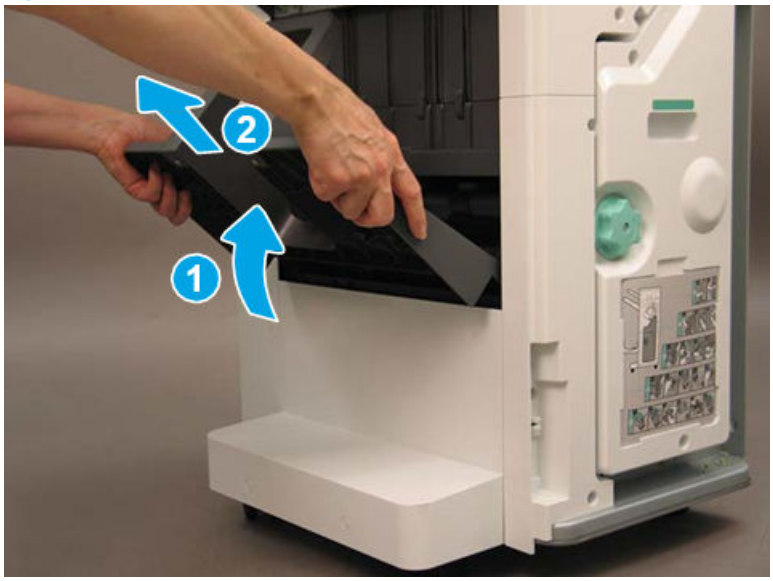
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the booklet output tray

Follow these steps to remove the booklet output tray.

1. Raise the booklet output tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1907 Remove the booklet output tray



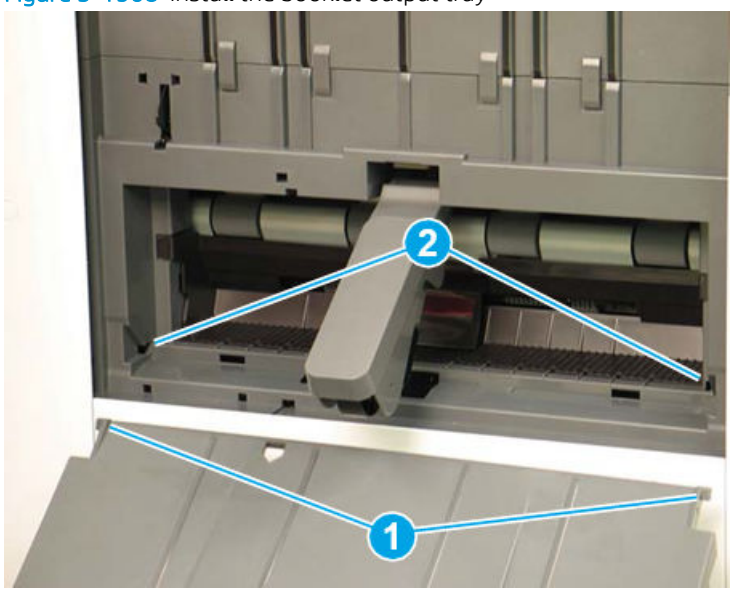
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly

Special installation instructions: booklet output tray

Position thetabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 5-1908 Install the booklet output tray



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

PCA

Removal and replacement: Main PCA

Learn how to remove and replace the main PCA.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the main PCA on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com..

Table 5-170 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC92-02790B	ControllerPCA(finisher)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

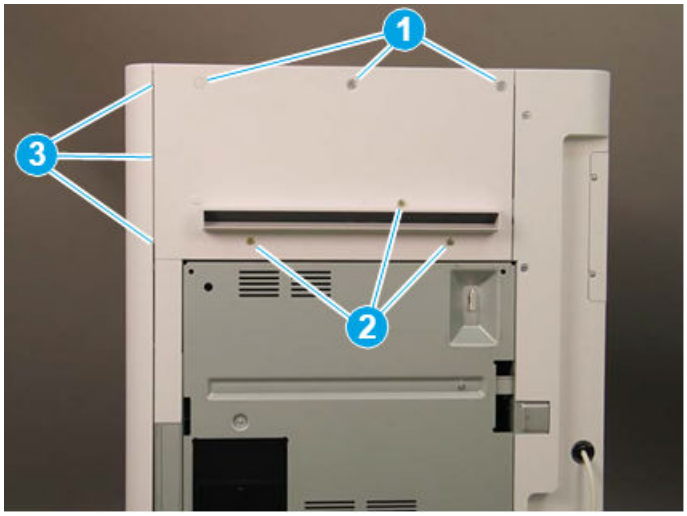
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1909 Remove the right upper cover

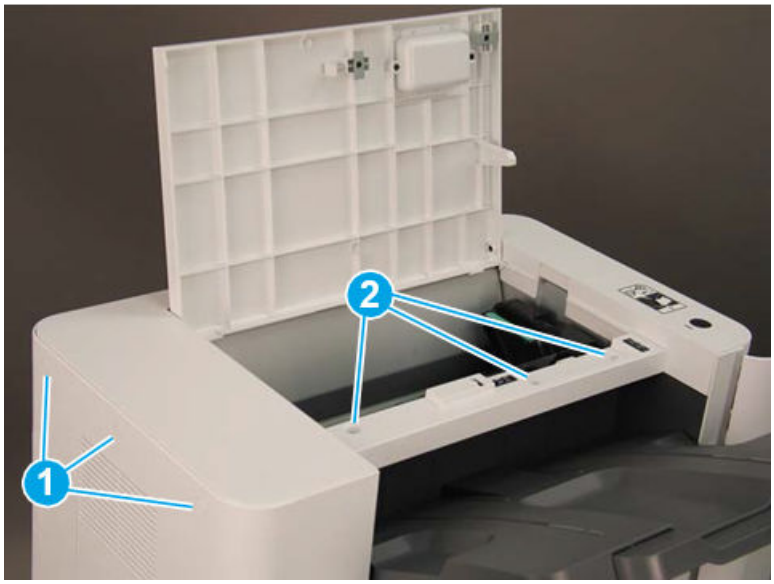


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

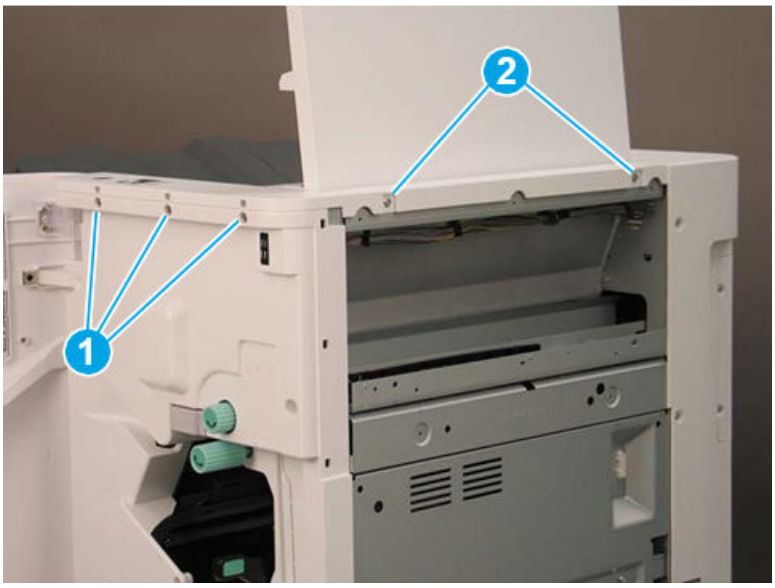
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1910 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

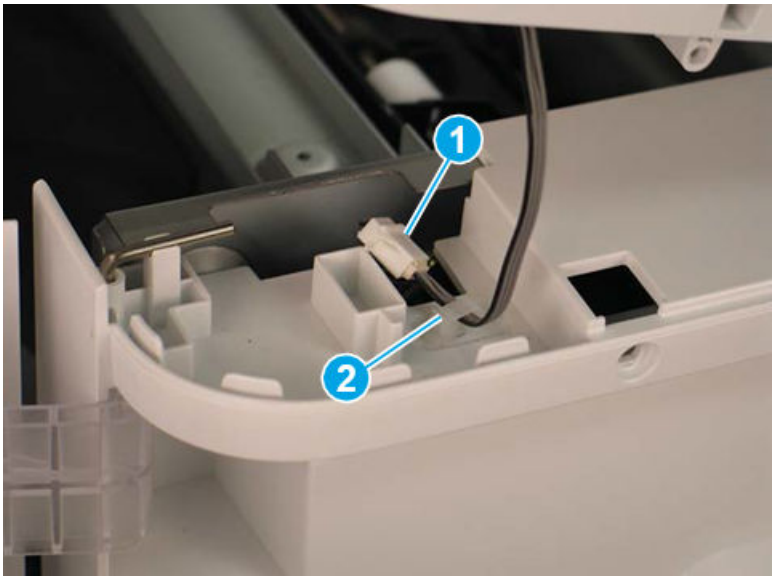
Figure 5-1911 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1912 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

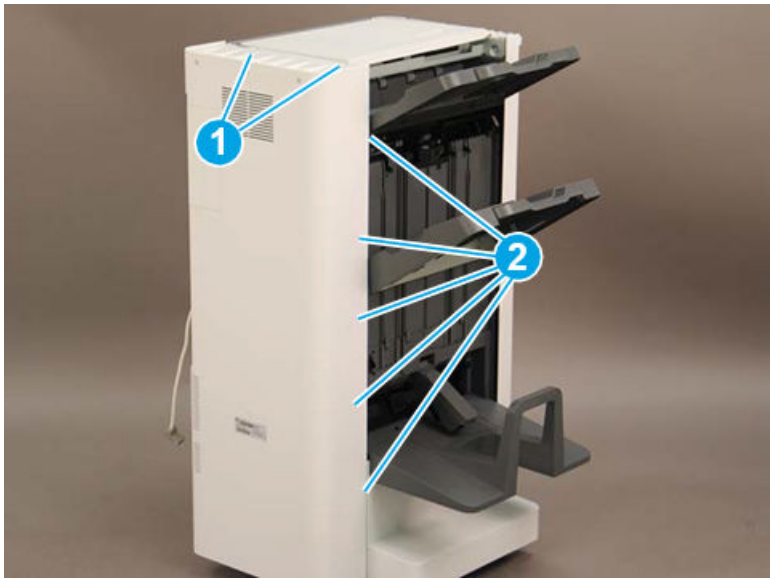


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1913 Remove seven screws

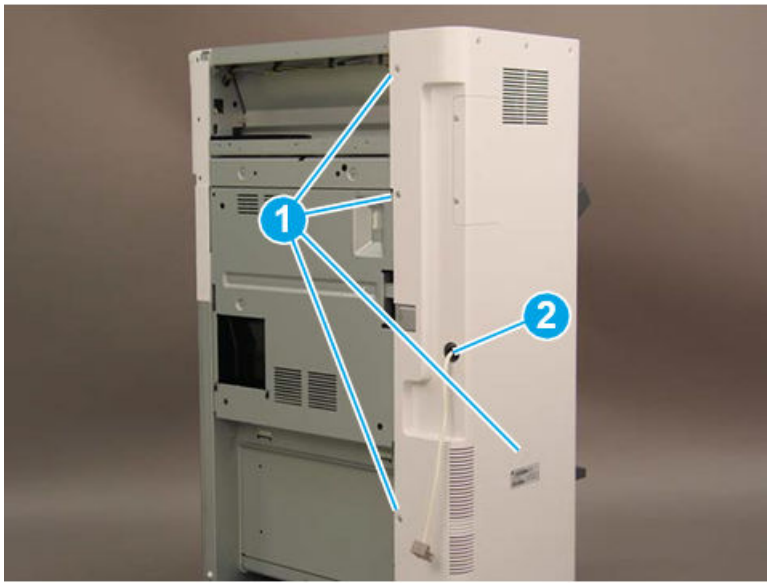


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1914 Remove the rear cover



Remove the controller PCA

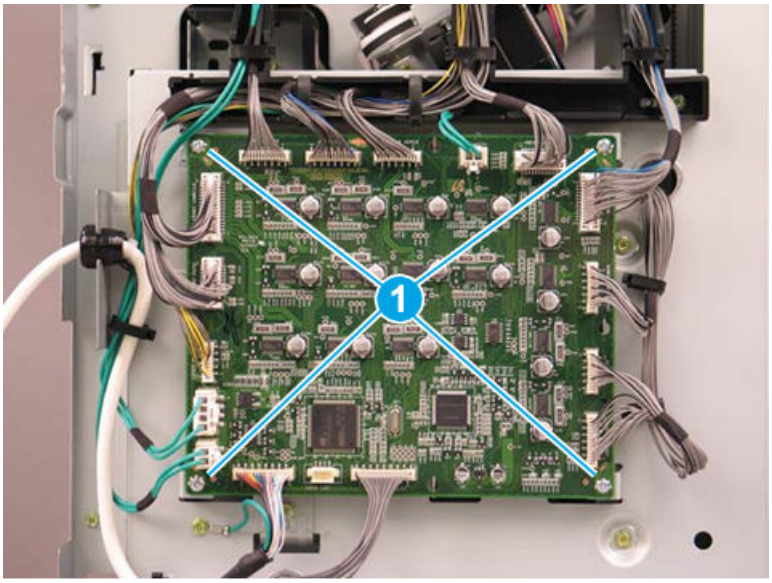
Follow these steps to remove the controller PCA.

▲ Disconnect all of the connectors, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the controller PCA.

TIP: Refer to the figure below for correct positioning and connection of the cables.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1915 Remove the controller PCA



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet finisher PCA

Learn how to remove and replace the booklet maker PCA.

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet maker PCA on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to https://parts.hp.com..

Table 5-171 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC92-02789B	Booklet finisher PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Remove the right upper cover (finisher)

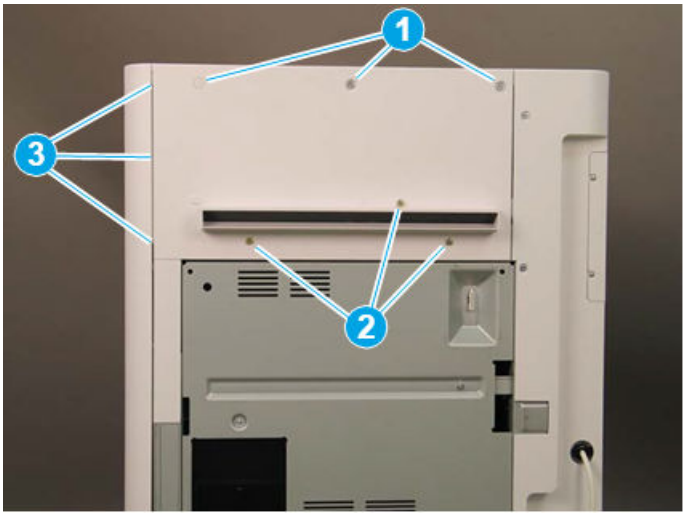
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover (finisher).

- ▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

TIP: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1916 Remove the right upper cover

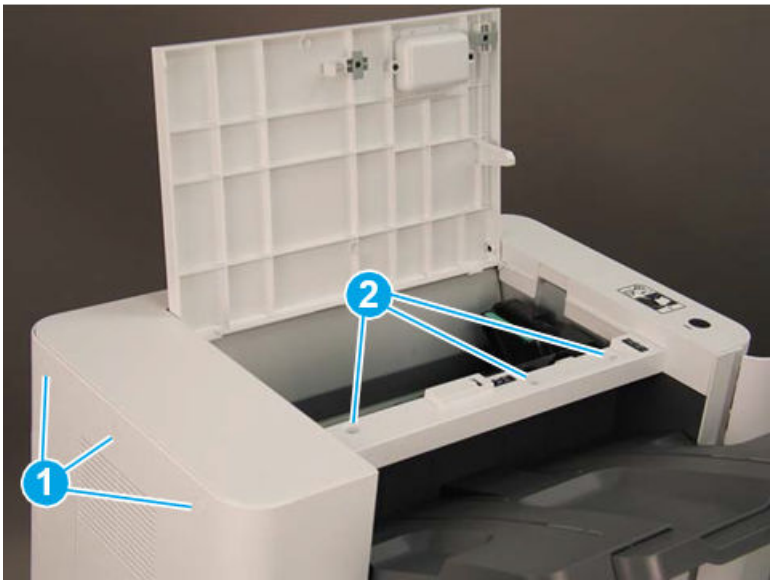


Remove the top cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover (finisher).

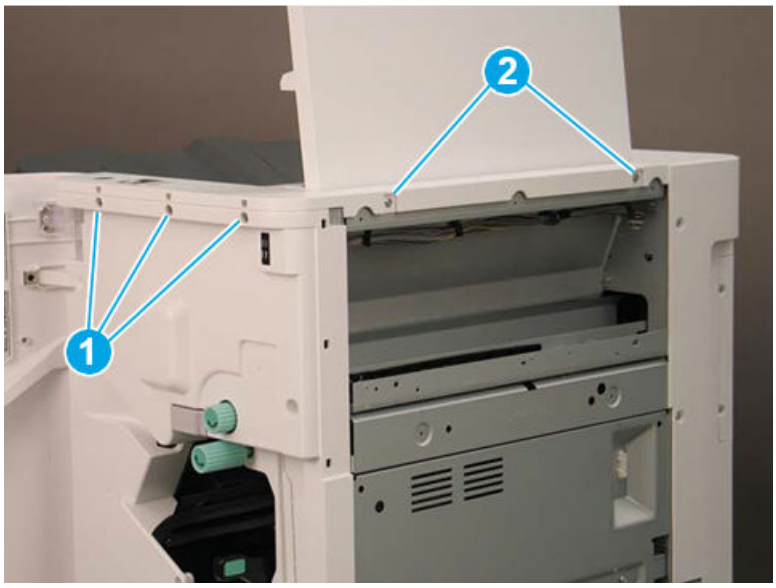
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 5-1917 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

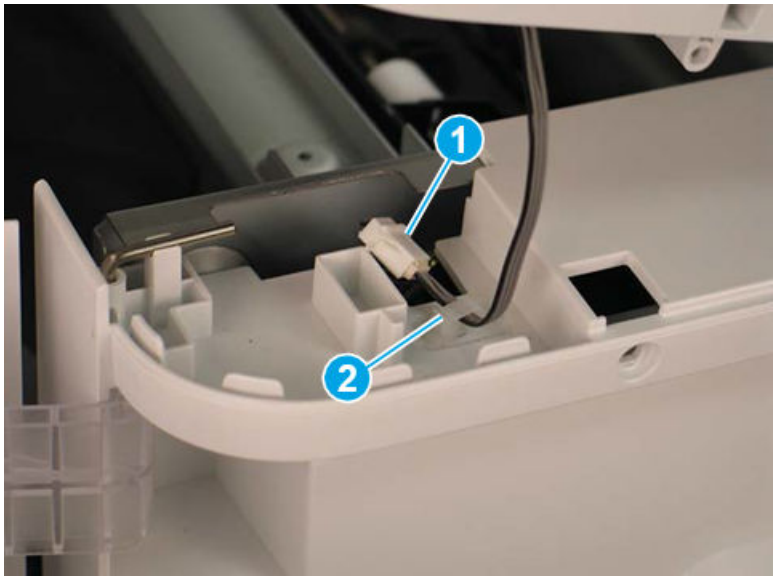
Figure 5-1918 Remove five screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1919 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

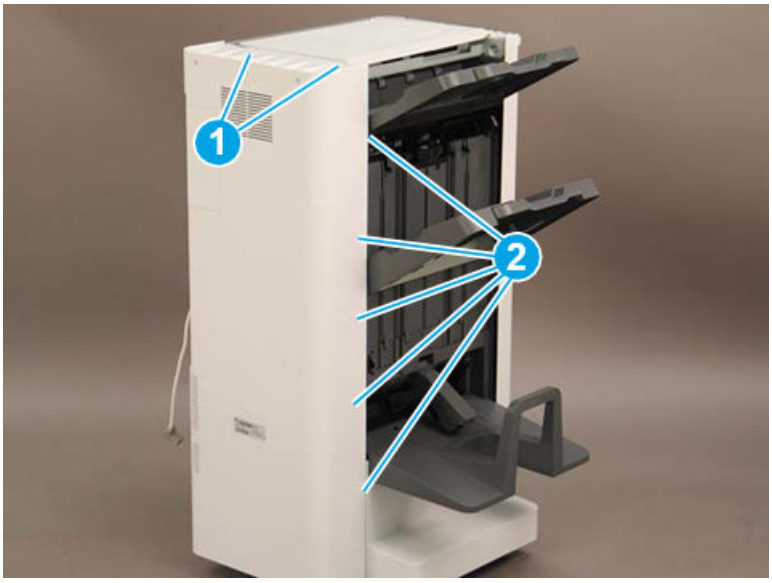


Remove the rear cover (finisher)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover (finisher).

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 5-1920 Remove seven screws

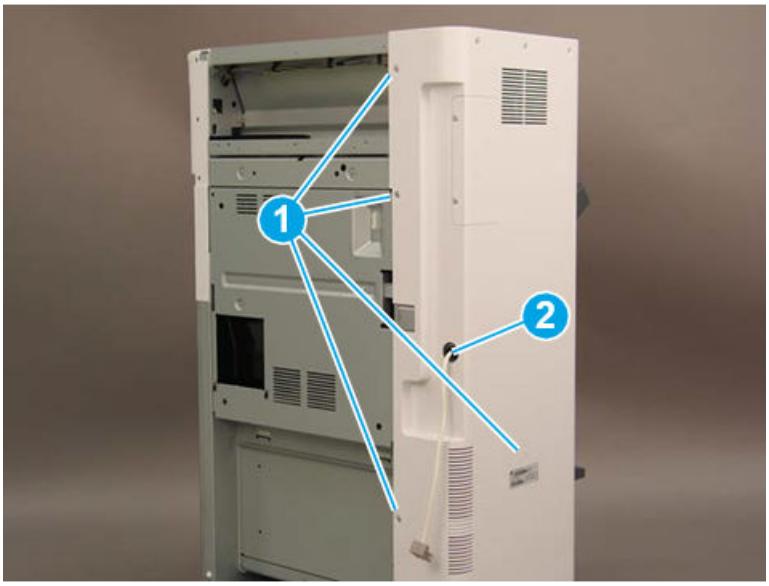


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly

Figure 5-1921 Remove the rear cover



Remove the booklet maker

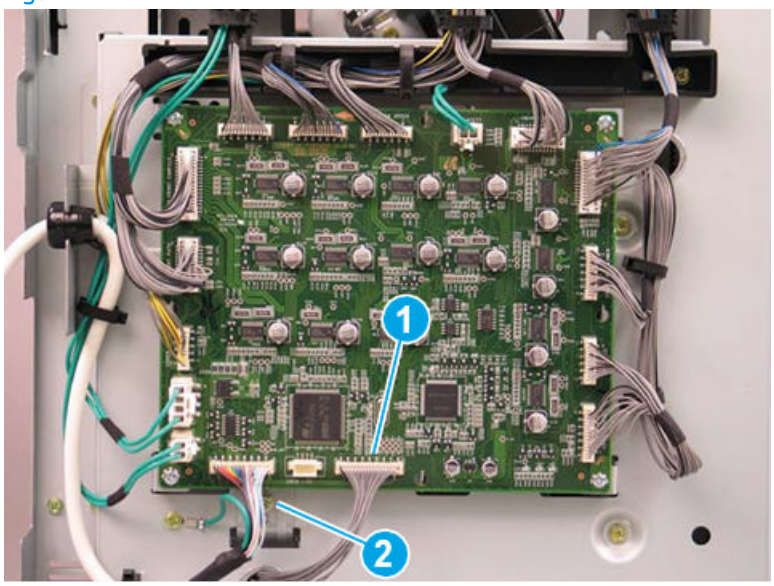
Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker.

1. Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher.

Figure 5-1922 Slide the booklet maker away from the finisher

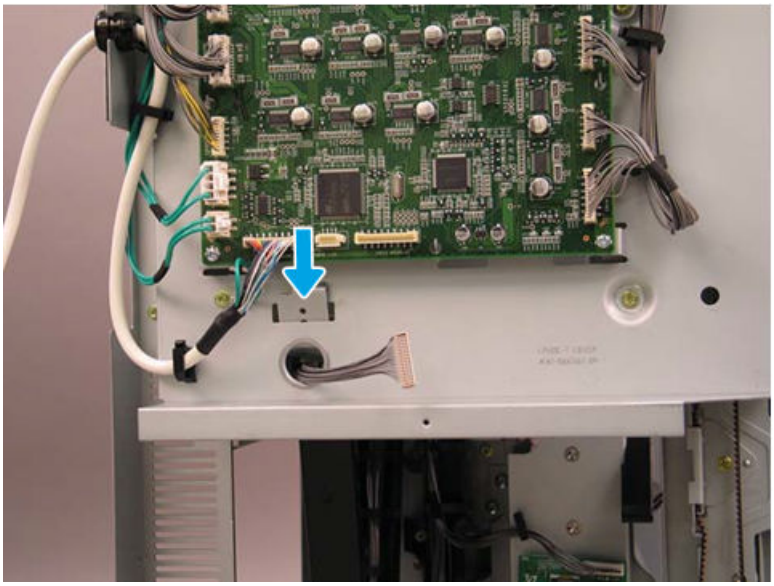
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 5-1923 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



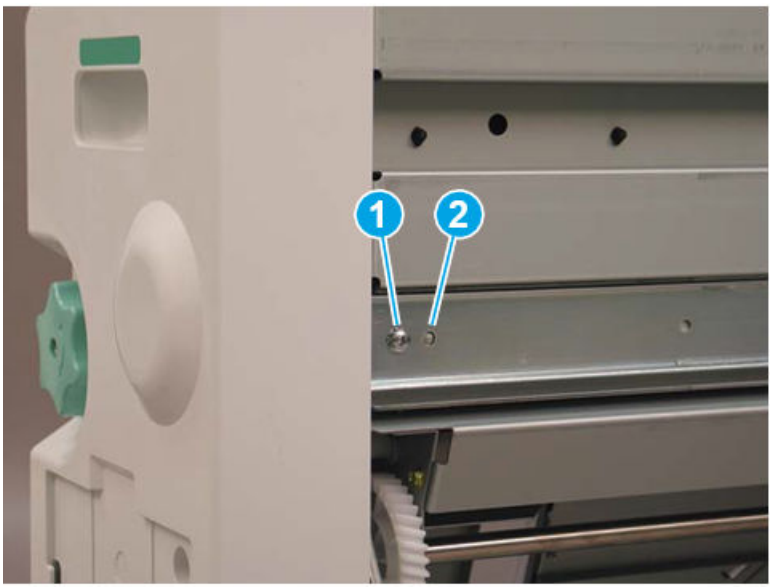
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 5-1924 Release the metal bracket



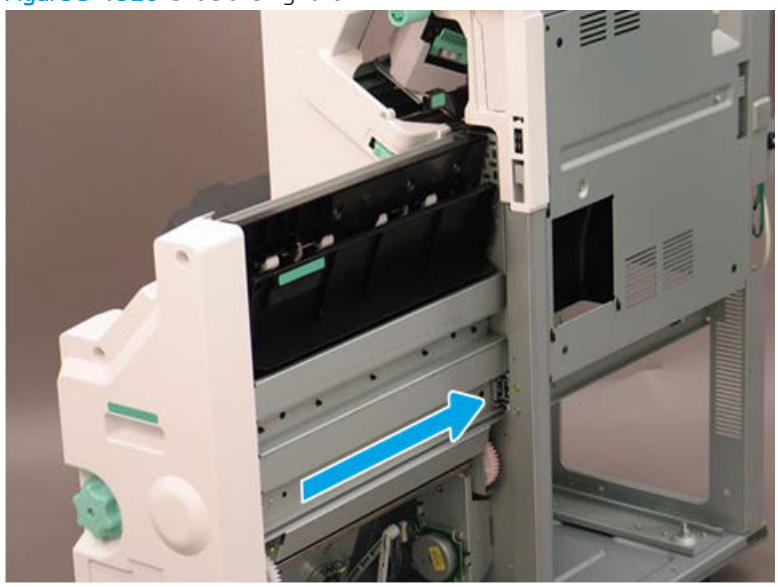
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1925 Remove one screw



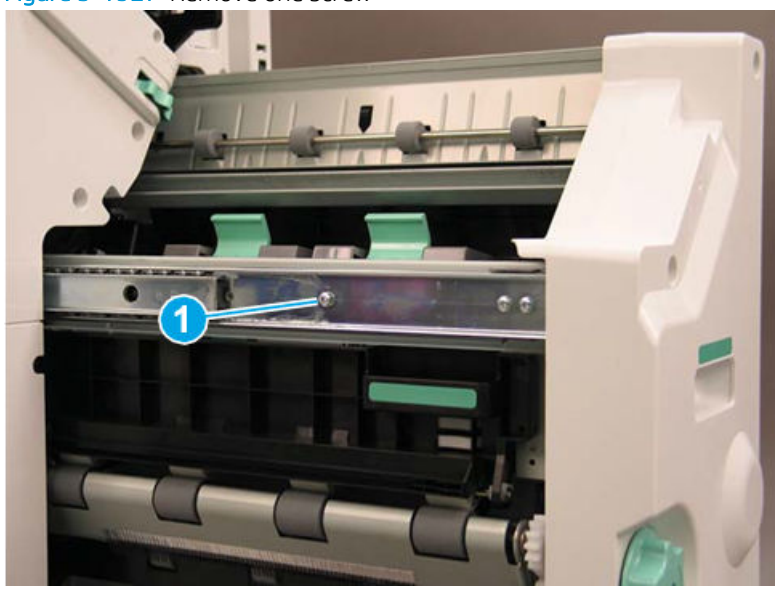
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 5-1926 Slide the right rail



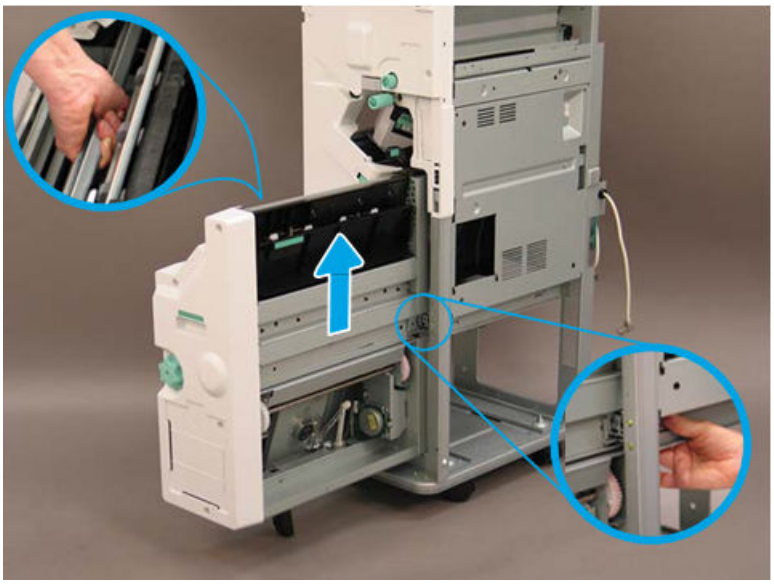
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1927 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1928 Remove the booklet maker



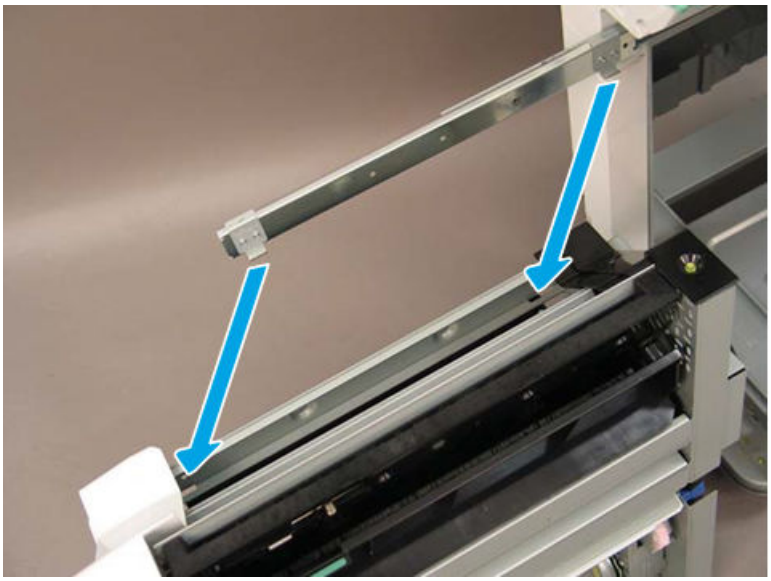
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: booklet maker

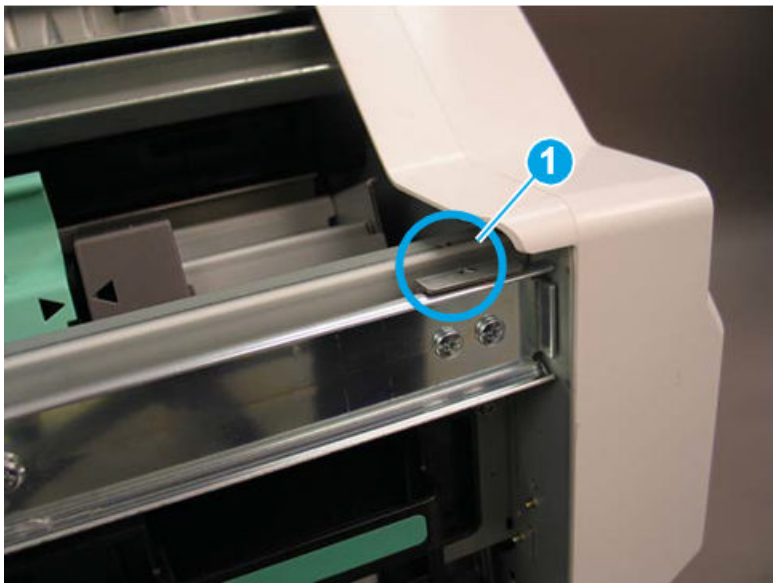
When installing the booklet maker, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 5-1929 Position the hooks



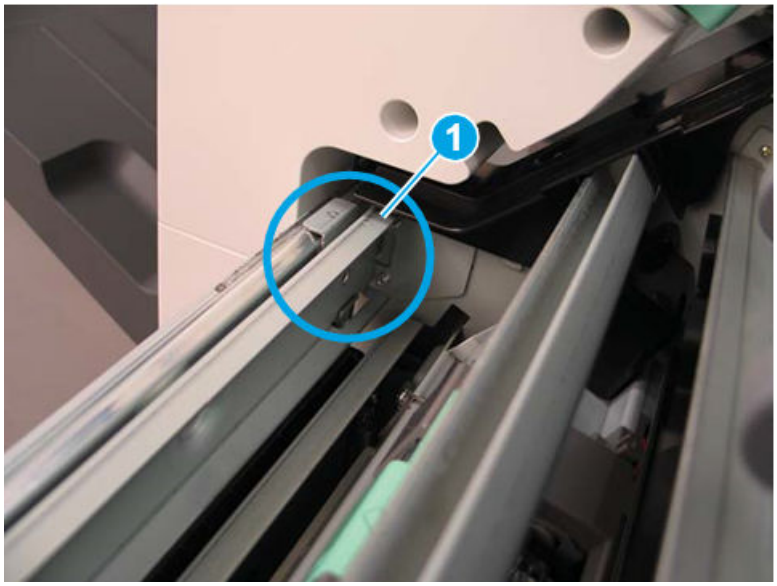
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1930 Align arrows



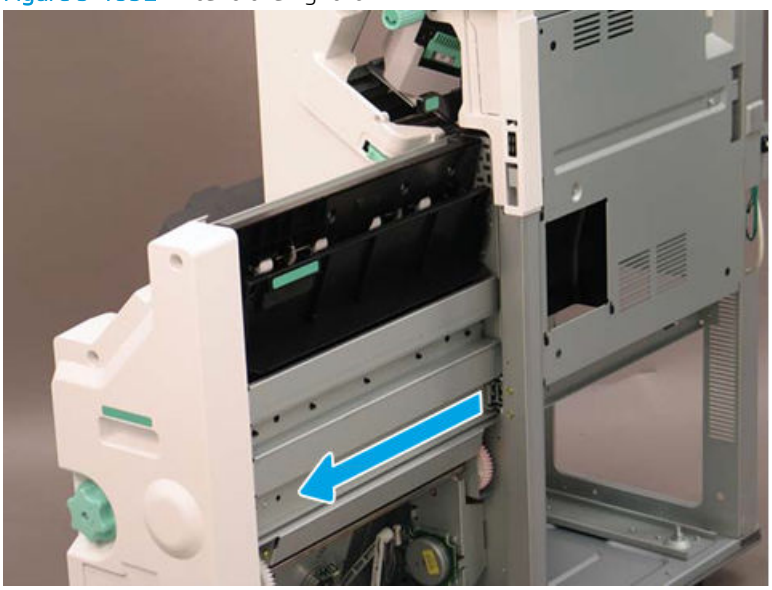
10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 5-1931 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.

Figure 5-1932 Extend the right rail

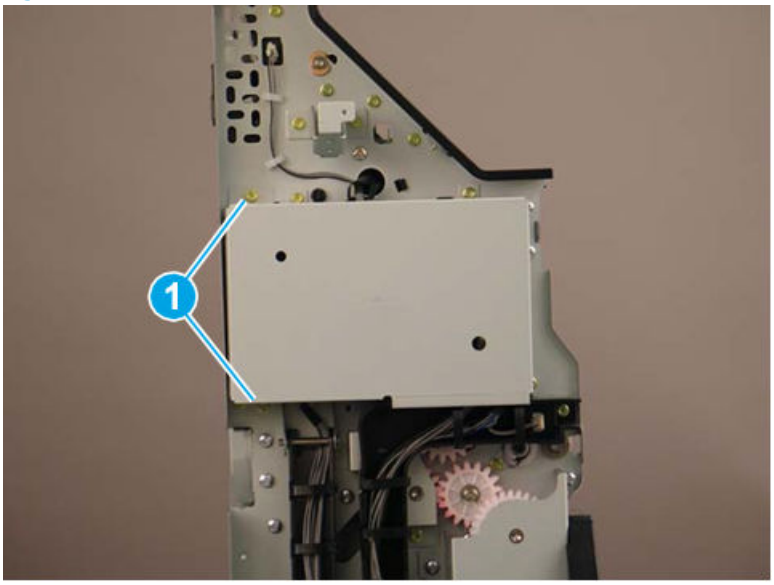


Remove the booklet maker PCA

Follow these steps to remove the booklet maker PCA.

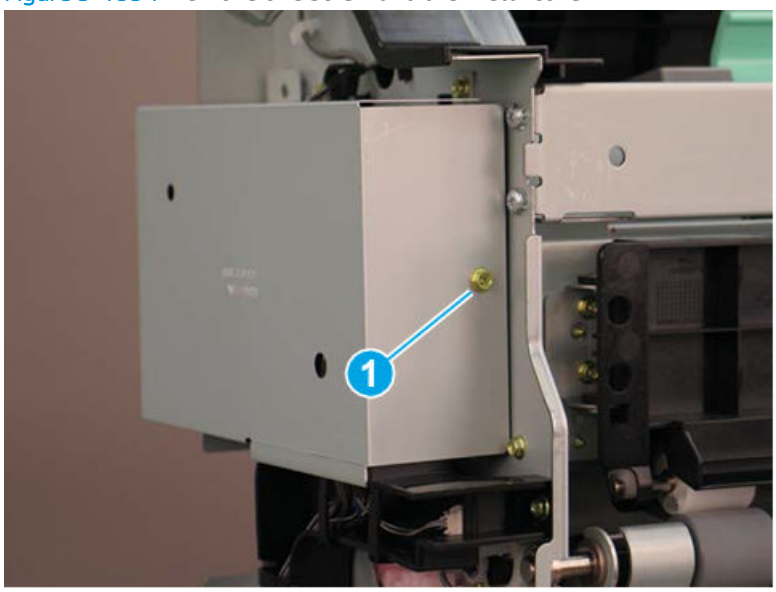
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1933 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the metal cover.

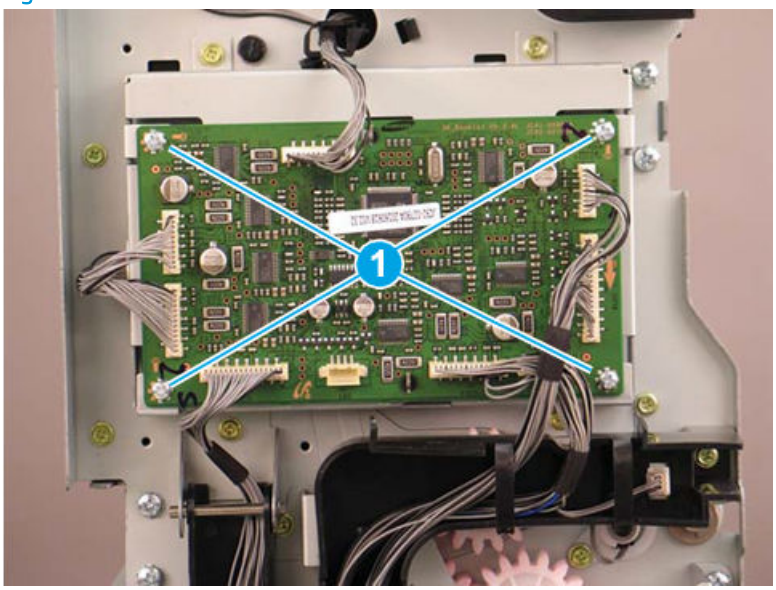
Figure 5-1934 Remove one screw and the metal cover



3. Disconnect all of the connectors, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the booklet maker PCA.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 5-1935 Remove four screws and the PCA



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Problem solving

Learn about problem solving.

Control panel message document (CPMD)

Learn about the control panel message document (CPMD).

Refer to Error codes on page 1008 for more details.

Clear paper jams

Learn about clearing paper jams.

Clear paper jams in the Booklet maker

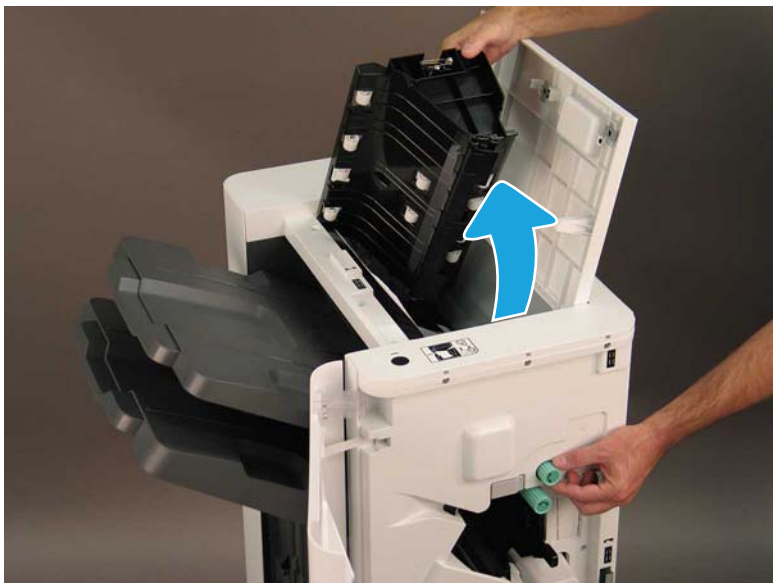
Learn how to clear paper jams in the Booklet maker.

Clear jams in the top output area

Learn how to clear jams in the top output area.

1. Open the top cover.

2. Lift the TF feeder, and then turn the knob while the TF feeder is lifted.



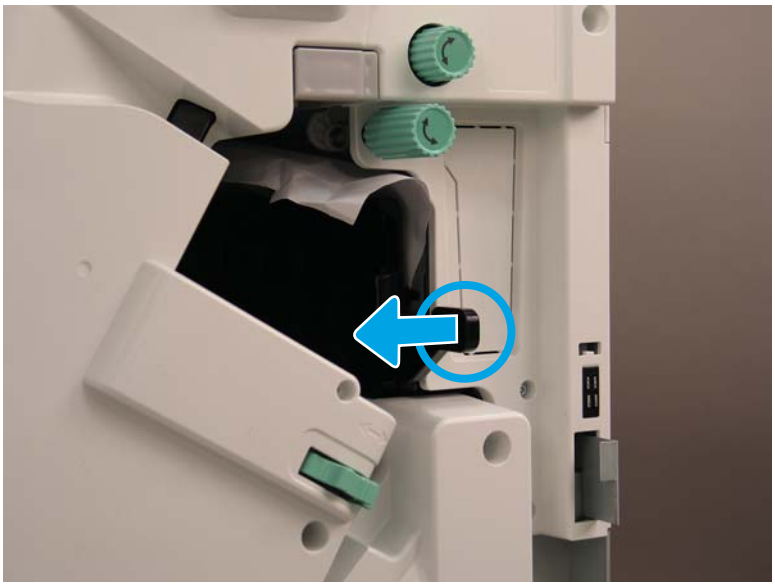
3. Remove any jammed paper.

Clear jams in the booklet maker paper path

Learn how to clear jams in the booklet maker paper path.

1. Open the booklet maker door.

2. Release the lever.



3. Turn the knob.

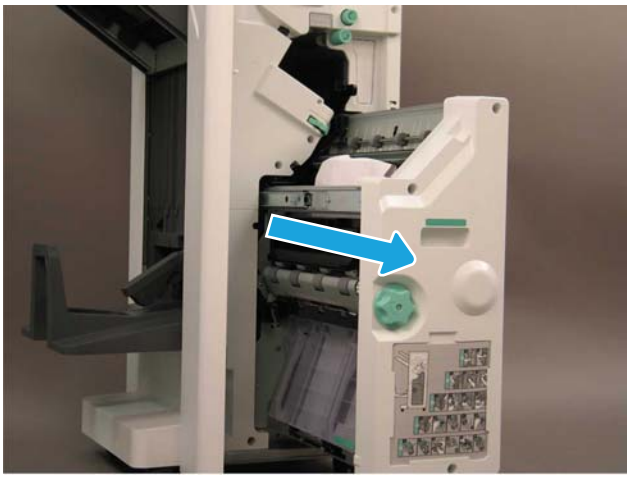
4. Remove the jammed paper.

Clear jams in the booklet maker booklet output area

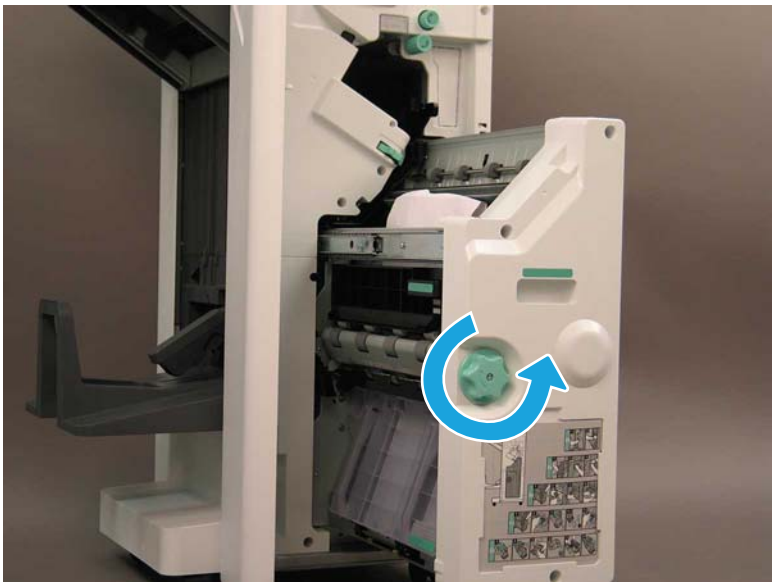
Learn how to clear jams in the booklet maker booklet output area.

1. Open the booklet maker door.

2. Pull out the booklet maker assembly until it stops.



3. Turn the knob to advance the jammed paper.



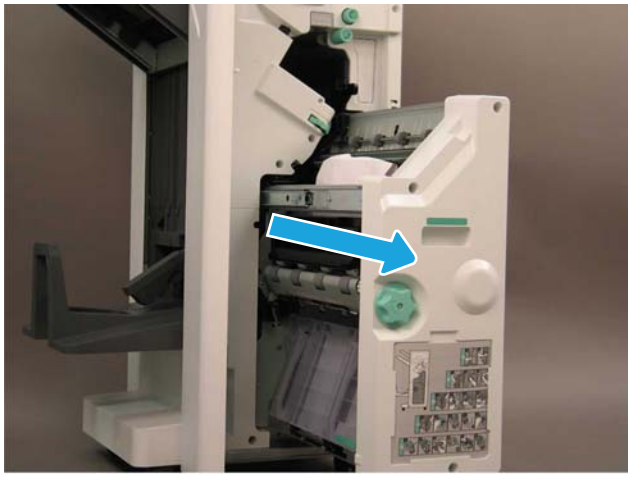
4. Remove the jammed paper/booklet from the output area.

Clear jams in the booklet maker assembly-right-upper area

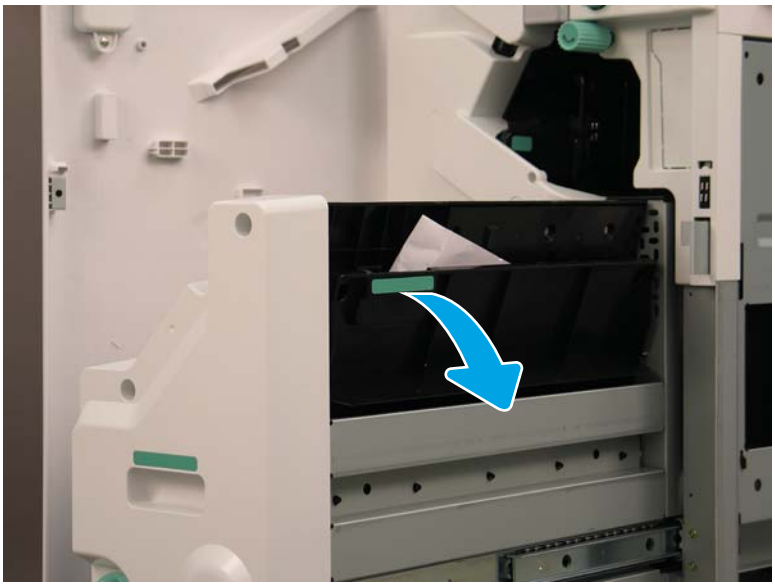
Learn how to clear paper jams in the booklet maker assembly-right-upper-area.

1. Open the booklet maker door.

2. Pull out the booklet maker assembly until it stops.



3. Open the vertical tray by pulling outward on the green tab.



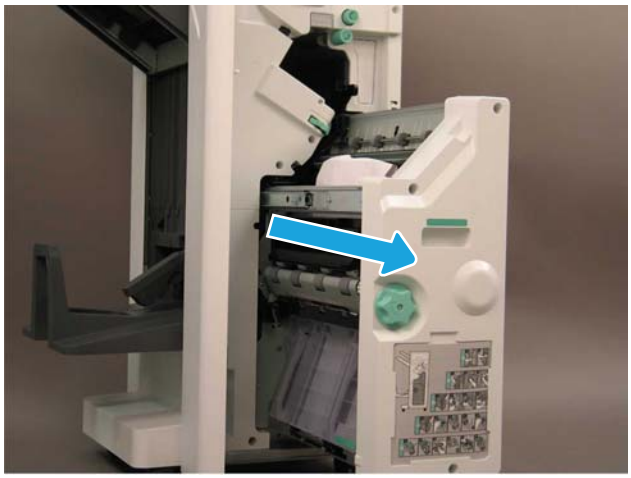
4. Remove the jammed paper.

Clear jams in the booklet maker assembly left middle area

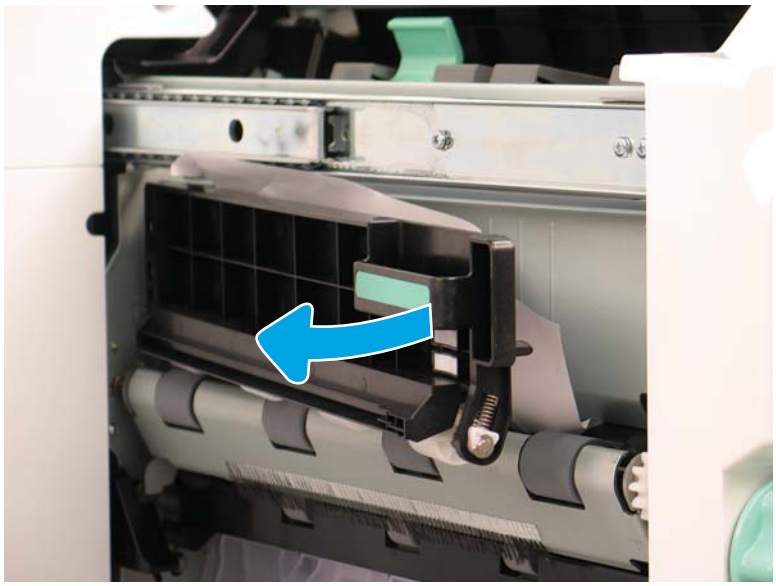
Learn how to clear jams in the booklet maker assembly left-middle-area.

1. Open the booklet maker door.

2. Pull out the booklet maker assembly until it stops.

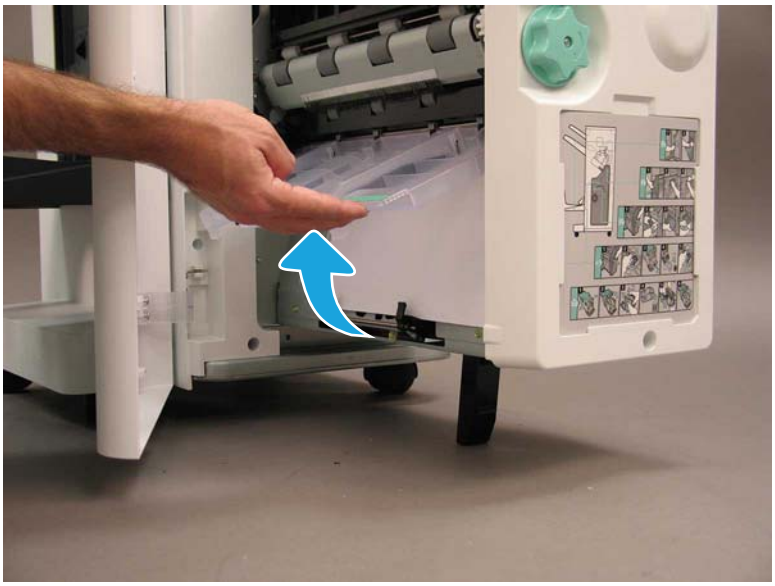


3. Pull the green tab.



4. Remove the jammed paper.

5. Open the clear plastic door at the left bottom.



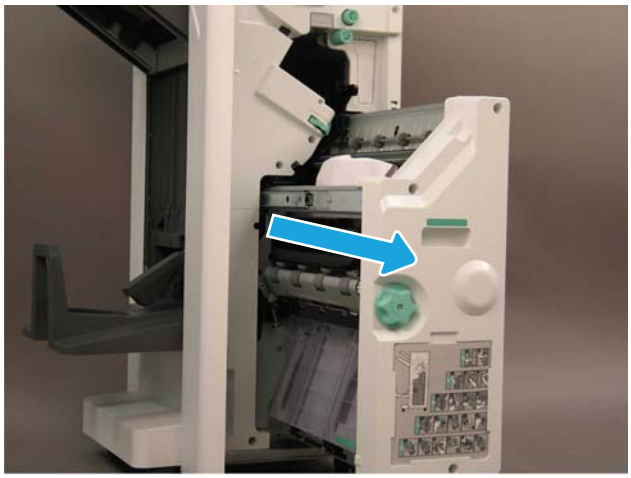
6. Remove the jammed paper.

Clear jams in the booklet maker assembly left lower area

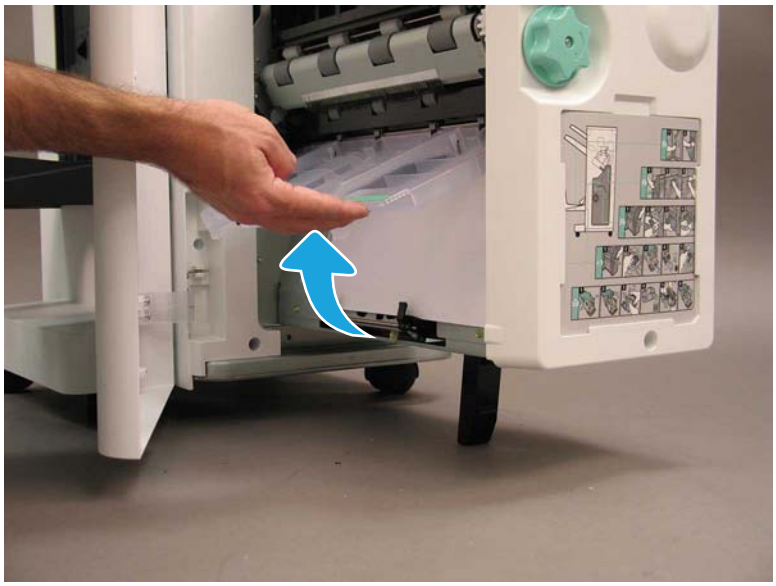
Learn how to clear jams in the booklet maker assembly left-lower area.

1. Open the booklet maker door.

2. Pull out the booklet maker assembly until it stops.



3. Open the roller door.
4. Remove the jammed paper.
5. Open the clear plastic door at the left bottom.



6. Remove the jammed paper.

Clear jams in the IPTU

Learn how to clear jams in the IPTU.

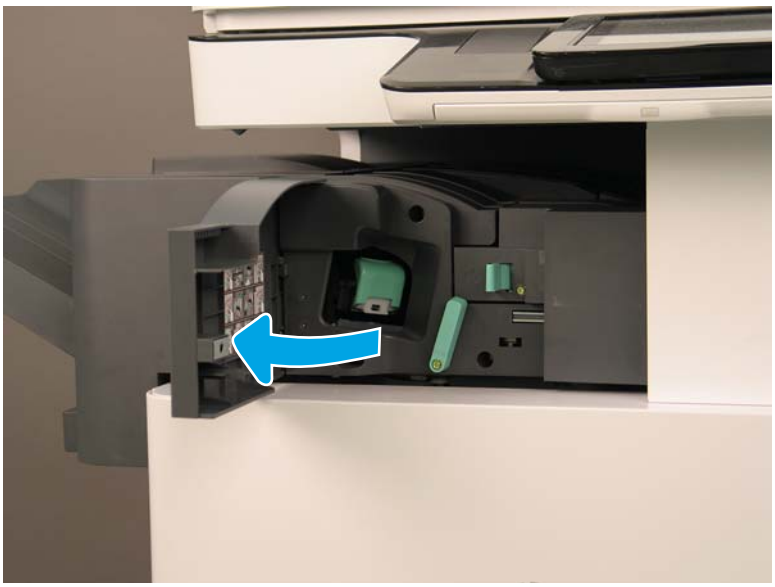
1. Lift the IPTU cover and clear any jammed paper inside the IPTU.

2. Close the IPTU cover.

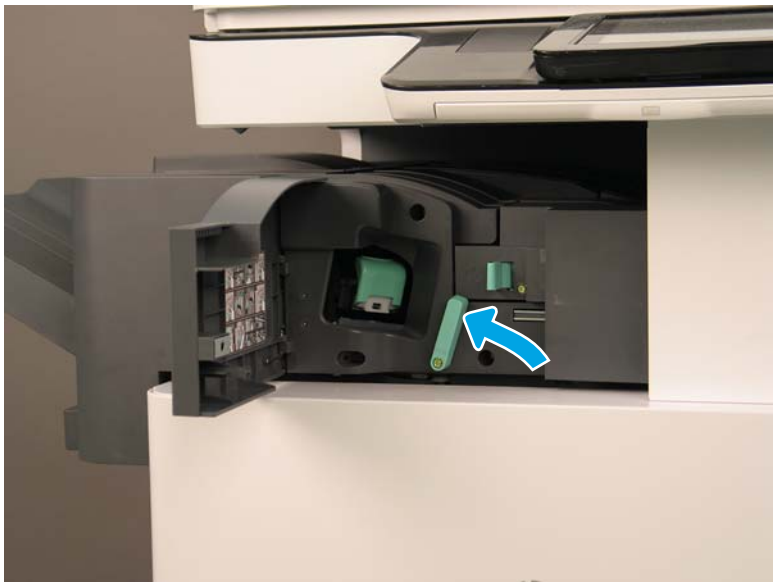
Clear jams in the inner finisher (IF)

Learn how to clear jams in the inner finisher (IF).

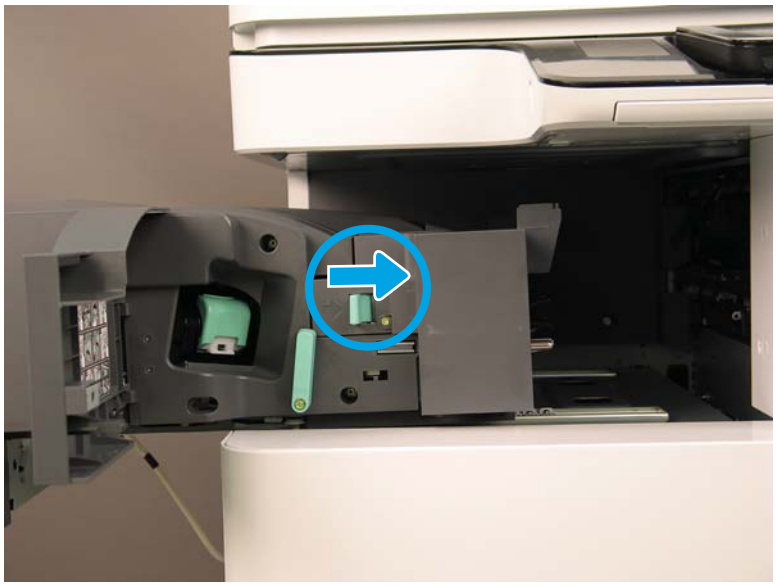
1. Open the staple cartridge access door.



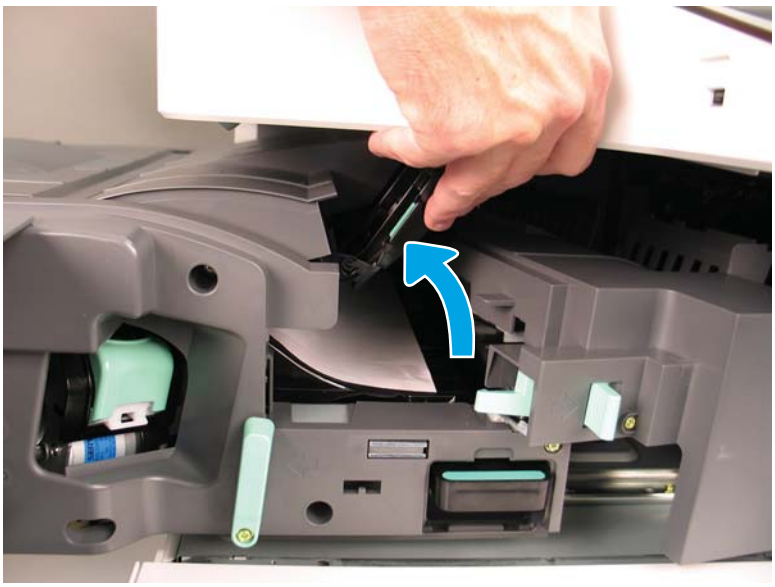
2. Rotate the lever to the left to release the hooks that secure the inner finisher (they hold the IF in place).



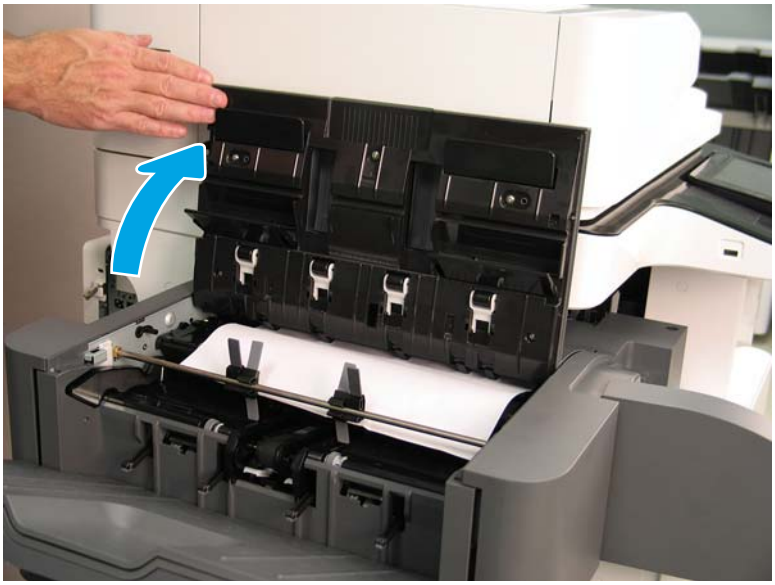
3. Slide the inner finisher partially out.
4. Release the lever to open the right cover on the inner finisher.



5. Lift the inner finisher jam access cover, and then remove any jammed paper inside the rear of the inner finisher.



6. Close the inner finisher jam access cover.
7. Close the inner finisher right cover.
8. Open the output side jam access cover, and then remove any jammed paper.



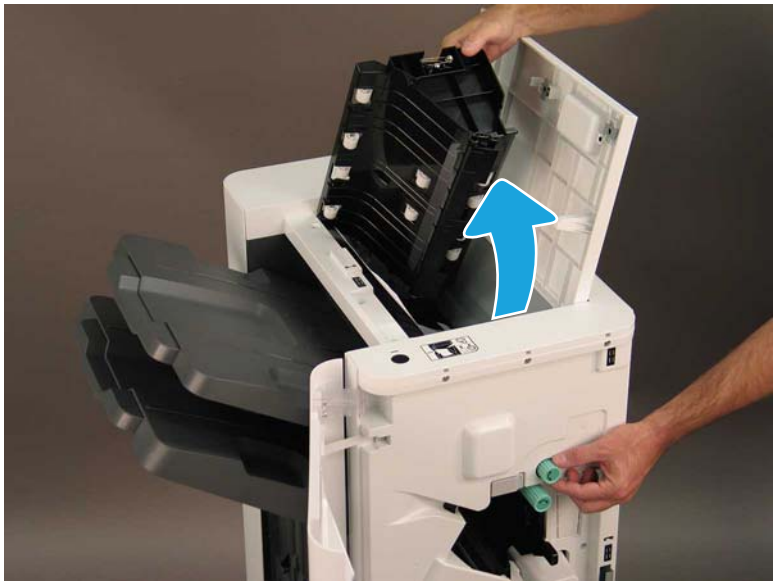
9. Close the output side jam access cover.
10. Slide the inner finisher in until it clicks into place.
11. Close the staple cartridge access door.

Clear paper jams in the High-volume finisher

Learn how to clear paper jams in the High-volume finisher.

1. Open the top cover.

2. Lift the TF feeder, and then turn the knob while the TF feeder is lifted.



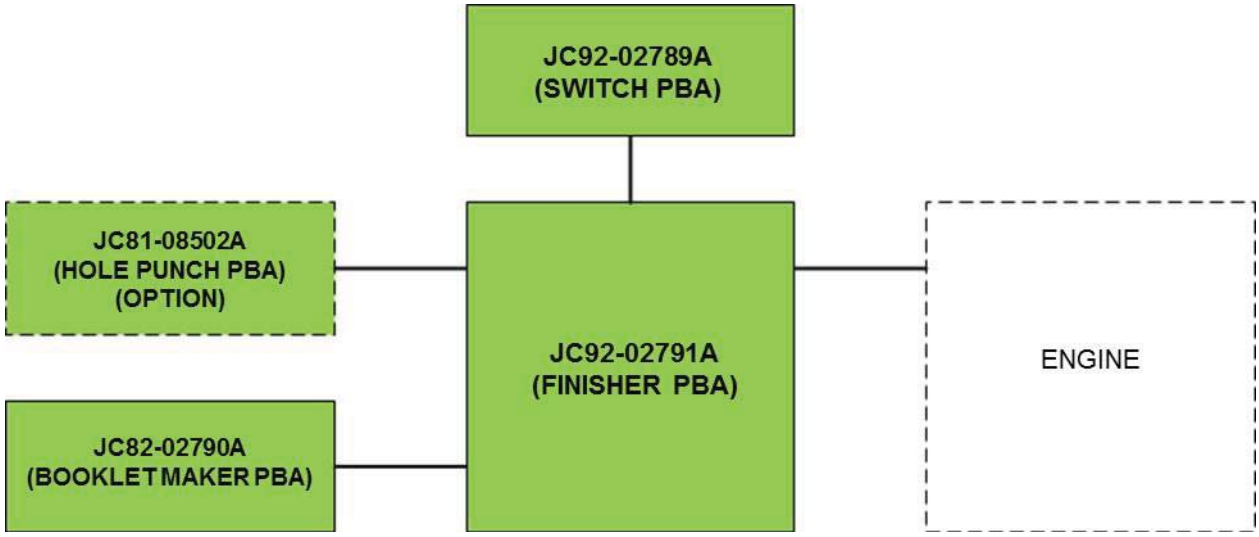
3. Remove any jammed paper.

Finisher system diagram

Learn about the finisher system diagram.

Finisher system consists of the FINISHER PCA, BOOKLET MAKER PCA, SWITCH PCA, and HOLE PUNCH PCA.

Figure 5-1936 Finisher system diagram



PCA function

- FINISHER PCA

  This PCA controls the finisher modules and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs.

- SWITCH PCA

  This PCA shows the manual stapling condition and accepts the button input for manual staple operation.

- BOOKLET MAKER PCA

  This PCA controls the booklet maker module and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs.

- HOLE PUNCH PCA

  This PCA controls the hole punch module and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs.

6 Inner finisher

Learn more about the inner finisher.

Product specification and description

Learn about product specifications and descriptions.

Inner finisher view

Learn about the front view and rear view of the inner finisher.

Front & rear view

Figure 6-1 Inner finisher system - front view

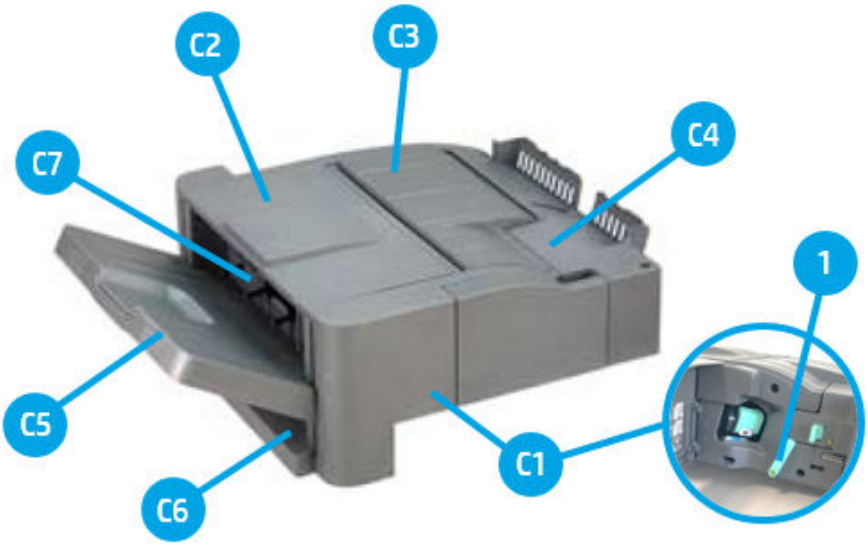


Figure 6-2 Inner finisher system - rear view

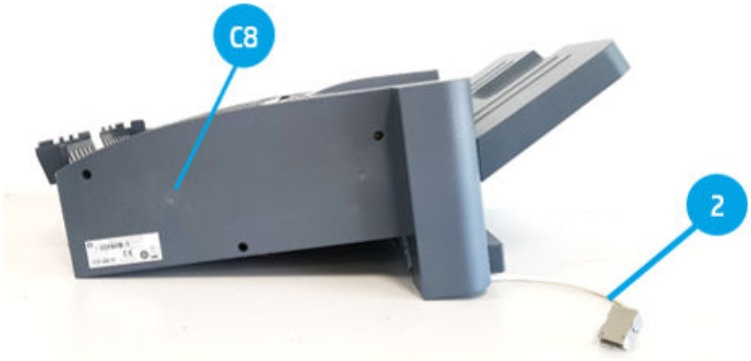


Table 6-1 Inner finisher system - entrance unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)
C1	Front cover	JC90-01321B	(*)
C2	Top cover	JC90-01323B	(*)
C3	Middle cover	JC90-01322B	(*)
C4	Punch cover	JC90-01343B	(*)

Table 6-1 Inner finisher system - entrance unit parts information (continued)

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)
C5	Output tray	JC90-01337B	(*)
C6	PCA cover	JC63-04792B	(*)
C7	Left cover	JC90-01324B	(*)
C8	Rear cover	JC63-04750B	(*)
1	Lock release handle	JC66-04233A	(*)
2	Main interface harness	JC39-02169A	(*)

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Specification

Learn about the specifications of the inner finisher.

Item	Description
Capacity	550 Sheets (Main 500, Top 50) @ 80gsm
Sensing	Paper Jam/Tray Sensing/Stapler/Cover Open
Media Sizes	• Main: 148 - 320 mm x 140-457.2 mm (58.3-126 inch x 55.1-180 inch) • Top: 98 - 297 mm x 140-432 mm (38.6-116.9 inch x 55.1-170.1 inch)
Media types	Plain/Thick/Heavy weight/Thin/Cotton/Colored/Recycled/Bond/Archive/Pre-Punched/Cardstock/Glossy/ Envelope
Media Weight	• Main: 52-256 gsm (13.9-68.3 lb.) • Top: 52-325 gsm (13.9-86.7 lb.)
Number of Bin	2 (Main/Top)
Dimension (W X D X H)	458 x 491 x 173 mm (18.0 X 19.3 X 6.8 inch)
Weight	15 kg (33 lb.)
Tray1 Finishing Capacity	50 Sheets @ 80gsm
Tray1 Finishing Mode	Stapling (Left, Right, Center)/Punch (2/3, 2/4, Swedish)
Tray2 Finishing Capacity	500 Sheets @ 80 gsm

Table 6-2 Paper Size Specification

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position		
	mm	Inches	Direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL
				52-256 g	Offset	52-325 g	45°	Flat	
A5	210 x 148	8.3 x 5.8	LEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Statement	216 x 140	8.5 x 5.5	LEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O

Table 6-2 Paper Size Specification (continued)

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position		
	mm	Inches	Direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL
				52-256 g	Offset	52-325 g	45°	Flat	
Lt	279 x 216	11 x 8.5	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
A4	297 x 210	8.3 x 11.7	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
B5(JIS)	257 x 182	10.1 x 7.2	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
B5(ISO)	250 x 176	9.8 x 6.9	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
Executive	267 x 184	10.5 x 7.3	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
No 9 Env	98 x 225	3.9 x 8.9	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
Monarch Env	98.4 x 190.5	3.9 x 7.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
PostCard 4X6	101.6 x 152.4	4.0 x 6.0	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
A6	105 x 148	4.1 x 5.8	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
No 10 Env	105 x 241	4.1 x 9.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
DL Env	110 x 220	4.3 x 8.7	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
C6 Env	114 x 162	4.5 x 6.4	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
B6	128 x 182	5.0 x 7.2	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
Statement	140 x 216	5.5 x 8.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
A5	148 x 210	5.8 x 8.3	SEF	O	X	O	X	X	X
C5 Env	162 x 229	6.4 x 9.0	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
B5(ISO)	176 x 250	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	X
B5(JIS)	182 x 257	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	X
Executive	184 x 267	7.3 x 10.5	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	X
16k	195 x 270	7.7 x 10.6	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
A4	210 x 297	8.3 x 11.7	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Legal	216 x 356	8.5 x 14	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Letter	216 x 279	8.5 x 11	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Folio	216 x 330	8.5 x 13	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Oficio	215.9 x 342.9	8.5 x 13.5	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
C4	229 x 324	9.1 x 12.8	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
Tabloid	254 x 374	10 x 14.7	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
B4	257 x 364	10 x 14.3	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
8K	270 x 390	10.6 x 15.4	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O

Table 6-2 Paper Size Specification (continued)

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position		
	mm	Inches	Direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL
				52-256 g	Offset	52-325 g	45°	Flat	
Ledger	279 x 432	11 x 17	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
A3	297 x 420	11.7 x 16.5	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
Tabloid Extra	304.8 x 457.2	12 x 18	SEF	O	X	X	X	X	X
SRA3	320 x 450	12.6 x 17.7	SEF	O	O	X	X	X	X
Custom	W 98-320 ~ L 140-1200	W3.9-12.6 ~ L 5.5-47	—	W 148-320 - L 140-1200	X	W 98-297 - L 140-1200	X	X	X

[1] "F/R" means front side and rear side can be supported.

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Punch				
	mm	Inches	Direction	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H		Swedish
				2H	3H	2H	4H	4H
A5	210 x 148	8.3 x 5.8	LEF	O	X	O	X	O
Statement	216 x 140	8.5 x 5.5	LEF	O	X	O	X	O
Lt	279 x 216	11 x 8.5	LEF	O	O	O	O	O
A4	297 x 210	8.3 x 11.7	LEF	O	O	O	O	O
B5 (JIS)	257 x 182	10.1 x 7.2	LEF	O	O	O	X	O
B5 (ISO)	250 x 176	9.8 x 6.9	LEF	O	O	O	X	O
Executive	267 x 184	10.5 x 7.3	LEF	O	O	O	O	O
No 9 Env	98 x 225	3.9 x 8.9	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Monarch Env	98.4 x 190.5	3.9 x 7.5	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
PostCard 4X6	101.6 x 152.4	4.0 x 6.0	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
A6	105 x 148	4.1 x 5.8	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
No 10 Env	105 x 241	4.1 x 9.5	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
DL Env	110 x 220	4.3 x 8.7	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
C6 Env	114 x 162	4.5 x 6.4	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
B6	128 x 182	5.0 x 7.2	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Statement	140 x 216	5.5 x 8.5	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
A5	148 x 210	5.8 x 8.3	SEF	O	X	O	X	O

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Punch				
	mm	Inches	Direction	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H		Swedish
				2H	3H	2H	4H	4H
C5 Env	162 x 229	6.4 x 9.0	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
B5(ISO)	176 x 250	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
B5(JIS)	182 x 257	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Executive	184 x 267	7.3 x 10.5	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
16k	195 x 270	7.7 x 10.6	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
A4	210 x 297	8.3 x 11.7	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Legal	216 x 356	8.5 x 14	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Letter	216 x 279	8.5 x 11	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Folio	216 x 330	8.5 x 13	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Oficio	215.9 x 342.9	8.5 x 13.5	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
C4	229 x 324	9.1 x 12.8	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Tabloid	254 x 374	10 x 14.7	SEF	O	O	O	X	O
B4	257 x 364	10 x 14.3	SEF	O	O	O	X	O
8K	270 x 390	10.6 x 15.4	SEF	O		O	O	O
Ledger	279 x 432	11 x 17	SEF	O	O	O	O	O
A3	297 x 420	11.7 x 16.5	SEF	O	O	O	O	O
Tabloid Extra	304.8 x 457.2	12 x 18	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
SRA3	320 x 450	12.6 x 17.7	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Custom	W 98-320 ~ L 140-1200	W3.9-12.6 ~ L 5.5-47	-	X	X	X	X	X

Table 6-3 Media performance

Paper Type	Function			
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	Punch
Plain (71-90 g/m^2)	O	O	O	O
Thick (91-105 g/m^2)	O	O	O	O
Heavy weight (106-175 g/m^2)	O	O	O	O
Extra Heavy weight 1 (176-216 g/m^2)	O	O	O	O
Extra Heavy weight 2 (217-256 g/m^2)	O	O	O	O
Extra Heavy weight 3 (257-300 g/m^2)	X	O	X	X
Extra Heavy weight 4 (301-325 g/m^2)	X	O	X	X

Table 6-3 Media performance (continued)

Paper Type	Function			
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	Punch
Thin (60-70 g/m^2)	O	O	O	O
Cotton (75-90 g/m^2)	O	O	O	O
Colored (75-90 g/m^2)	O	O	O	O
Pre-Printed (75-90 g/m^2)	O	O	O	O
Recycled (60-90 g/m^2)	O	O	O	O
Bond	O	O	O	O
Archive (75-105 g/m^2)	O	O	O	O
LetterHead	O	O	O	O
Pre-Punched	O	O	O	X
Thin Cardstock (105-163 g/m^2)	O	O	O	O
Thick Cardstock (170-216 g/m^2)	O	O	O	X
Heavy Cardstock (217-256 g/m^2)	O	O	O	X
Extra Heavy Cardstock 1(257-300 g/m²)	X	O	X	X
Extra Heavy Cardstock 2(301-325 g/m^2)	X	O	X	X
Thin Glossy (106-169 g/m^2)	O	O	O	O
Thick Glossy (170-216 g/m²)	O	O	O	X
Heavy Glossy (217-256 g/m^2)	O	X	X	X
Envelope (75-90 g/m^2)	X	O	X	X
Thick Envelope (217-256 g/m^2)	O	X	X	X
Tab	O	X	X	O
Perforated Paper (75-90 g/m^2)	X	O	X	X

Inner finisher system

Learn about the inner finisher system.

Overview

Learn about the overview of the inner finisher.

Work flow

Figure 6-3 Inner finisher system - work flow overview

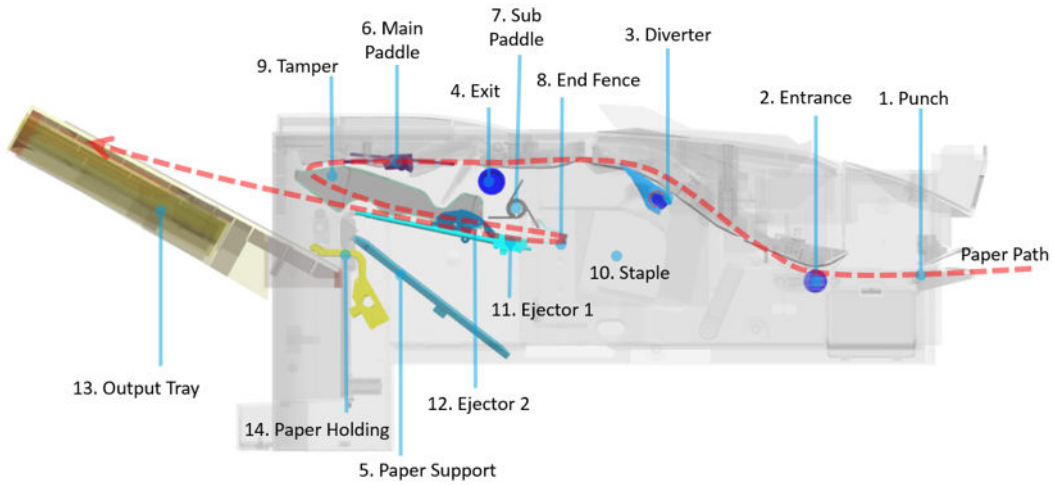


Table 6-4 Inner finisher system - work flow overview

Item	Unit	Description
1	Punch unit	holes in a specific location on a sheet of paper
2	Entrance unit	allows paper to move into the finisher
3	Diverter unit	holds paper so that the newly printed paper can stay out for seconds while the stapled bundle of paper moves to the output tray
4	Exit unit	moves paper from the diverter unit to the ejector unit
5	Paper support unit	prevents paper from being fallen down or bent when the long length paper such as A3 is ejected from the exit unit
6	Main paddle unit	moves paper to the sub paddle
7	Sub paddle unit	moves paper to the end fence
8	End fence unit	sets the standard position of the paper to be aligned towards top and bottom of the paper
9	Tamper unit	aligns the paper on the right and left side of the paper
10	Stapler unit	performs stapling to a bundle of aligned documents
11	Ejector 1 unit	transfers a stapled paper loaded at the end fence unit to the ejector2 unit
12	Ejector 2 unit	grips a stack of paper up and ejects it onto the output tray
13	Output tray unit	stacks the job ended paper
14	Paper holding unit	controls the output tray movement

Sensor

Figure 6-4 Inner finisher system - sensor

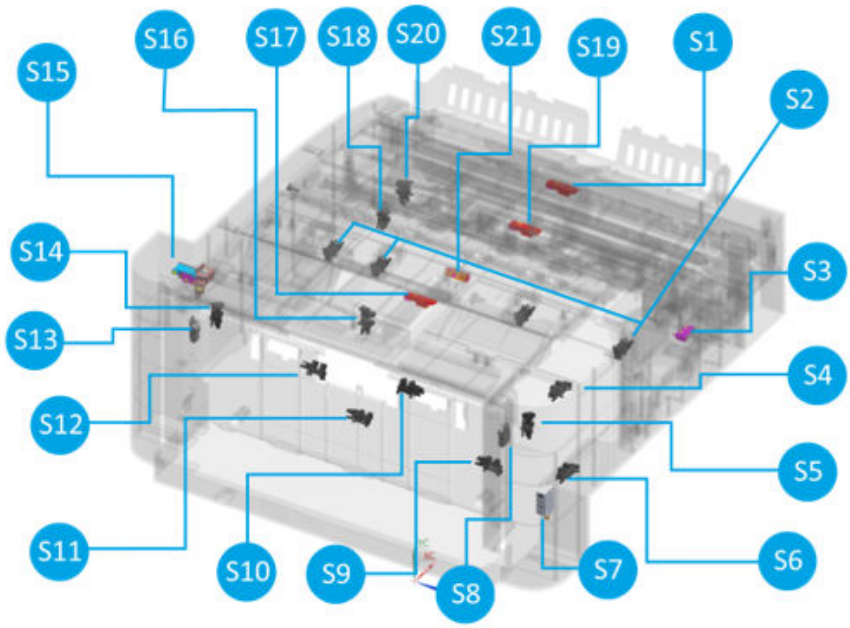


Table 6-5 Inner finisher system - sensor

No	Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Type	Description
S1	Entrance sensor	0604-001381	(*)	113-0350	Photo emitter, detector	Checks paper comes into the entrance unit
S2	Stapler position sensor	0604-001393		113-0491 113-0492	Photo interrupter	Makes the stapler be positioned in the exact stapling position
S3	Front cover switch	JC39-01610A		113-0410	Cover open switch	Checks whether the front cover is closed or opened
S4	Main paddle home sensor	0604-001393		113-0370	Photo interrupter	Checks the main paddle locates at the home position
S5	Front tamper home sensor	0604-001393		113-0390	Photo interrupter	Checks the front tamper locates at the home position
S6	Output tray motor sensor	0604-001393		113-0473	Photo interrupter	Checks the output tray motor is operational
S7	Output tray lower limit switch	JC90-01320A	(*)	113-0472	Lower limit switch assembly	Checks the lower limit (=Output tray is full) of the output tray
S8	Output tray top of stack sensor (receiver)	0603-001309	(*)	113-0471	Photo TR	Checks the upper limit of output tray
S9	Paper holding sensor	0604-001393		113-0470	Photo interrupter	Checks the location of the paper holding actuator
S10	Ejector 2 home sensor	0604-001393		113-0462	Photo interrupter	Checks the ejector 2 locates at the home position.
S11	Ejector 2 motor sensor	0604-001393		113-0463	Photo interrupter	Checks the ejector 2 motor is operational

Table 6-5 Inner finisher system - sensor (continued)

No	Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Type	Description
S12	Paper support home sensor	0604-001393		113-0481	Photo interrupter	Checks the paper support locates at the home position
S13	Output tray top of stack sensor (led)	0601-003440		113-0471	LED IR	Checks the upper limit of output tray
S14	Rear tamper home sensor	0604-001393		113-0380	Photo interrupter	Checks the rear tamper locates at the home position
S15	Top cover switch	JC39-01610A	(*)	113-0420	Cover open switch	Checks whether the top cover is closed or opened
S16	Ejector 1 home sensor	0604-001393		113-0461	Photo interrupter	Checks the ejector 1 locates at the home position
S17	End fence sensor	0604-001381	(*)	113-0361	Photo emitter, detector	Check paper comes into the end fence unit
S18	Punch waste box sensor	0604-001393		113-0620	Photo interrupter	Detects the punch waste box is installed
S19	Punch waste full sensor	0604-001381	(*)	113-0621	Photo emitter, detector	Checks the punch waste box is full
S20	Finisher docking sensor	0604-001393		113-0000	Photo interrupter	Checks the finisher is installed
S21	Exit sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-0360	Photo interrupter	Checks paper comes into the exit unit

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Figure 6-5 Inner finisher system - Photo interrupter (0604-001393)

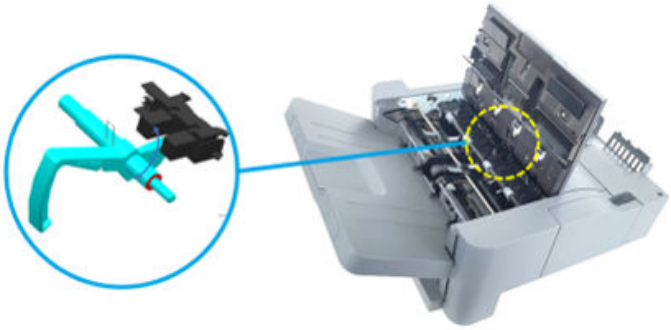
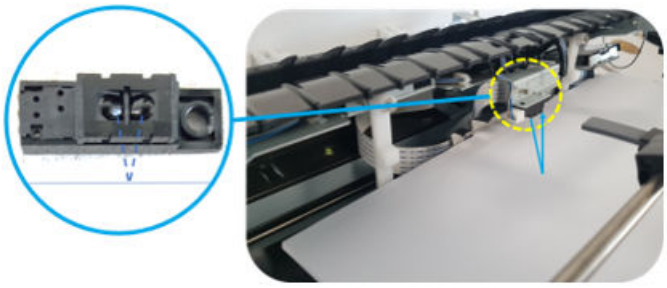


Figure 6-6 Inner finisher system - Photo emitter, detector (0604-001381)



Motor and solenoid

Figure 6-7 Inner finisher system - motor, solenoid

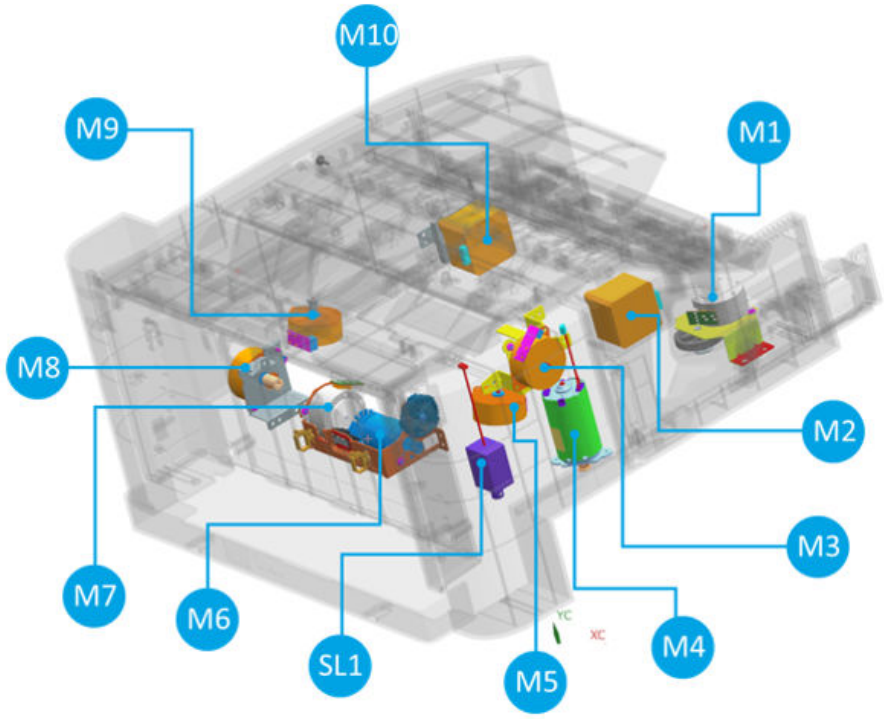


Table 6-6 Inner finisher system - motor, solenoid

No	Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Type	Motor sensor	Description
M1	Stapler position motor	JC93-00999A	(*)	113-0581	Step motor		Drives the stapler unit
M2	Exit motor	JC31-00169B	(*)	113-0502	Step motor		Drives the exit roller and the sub paddle unit
M3	Main paddle motor assembly	JC93-01001A	(*)	113-0510	Step motor	Home	Drives the main paddle unit
M4	Output tray motor assembly	JC90-01334B	(*)	113-0570	DC Motor	Encoder	Drives the output tray unit
M5	Rear tamper motor assembly	JC93-01001A	(*)	113-0520	Step motor	Home	Drives the rear tamper unit
M6	Ejector2 motor assembly	JC93-01168A		113-0562	DC Motor	Home, encoder	Drives the ejector 2 unit
M7	Ejector1 motor assembly	JC93-00998A		113-0561	Step Motor	Home	Drives the ejector 1 unit
M8	Paper support motor assembly	JC93-00802B		113-0571	Step Motor	Home	Drives paper support unit

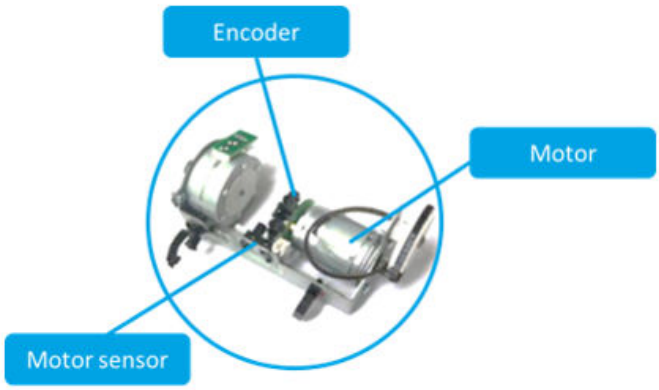
Table 6-6 Inner finisher system - motor, solenoid (continued)

No	Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Type	Motor sensor	Description
M9	Front tamper motor assembly	JC93-01001A	(*)	113-0530	Step Motor	Home	Drives the front tamper unit
M10	Entrance motor assembly	JC90-01344A	(*)	113-0501	Step Motor		Drives the entrance roller and the middle roller
SL1	Paper holding solenoid	JC33-00037A	(*)	113-0591	Solenoid		Drives paper holding unit

(*) This part is in ordering system.

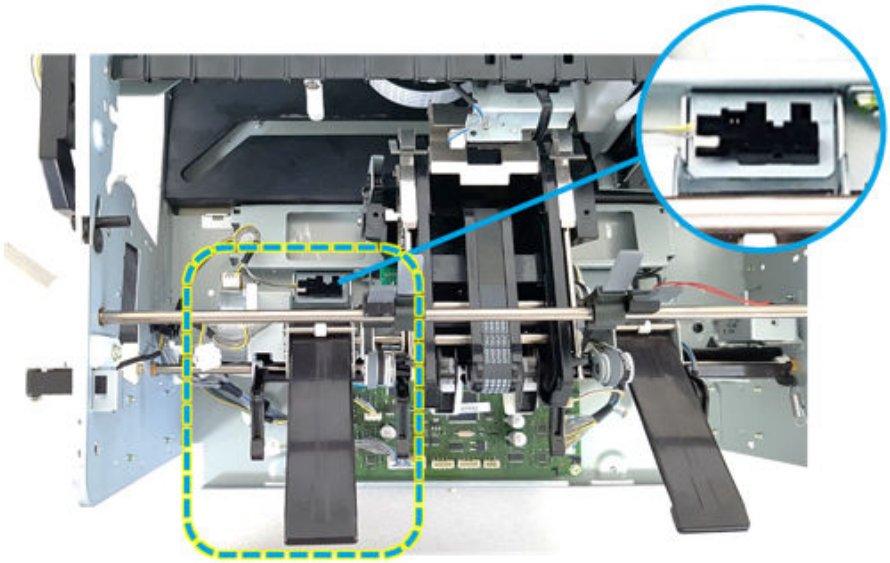
The sensor mounted at the driving motor detects motor operation. If a motor doesn't work properly, an event code only for the motor will pop up.

Figure 6-8 Inner finisher system - motor sensor



The home position sensor is installed for the purpose of checking the reference point when the specific unit is operating.

Figure 6-9 Inner finisher system - home sensor



Roller

Figure 6-10 Inner finisher system - roller

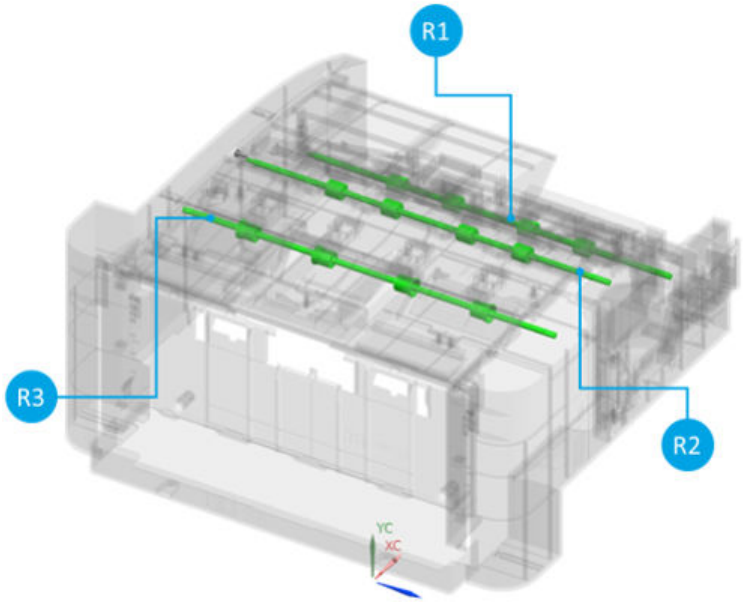


Table 6-7 Inner finisher system - roller

No	Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Type	Description
R1	Entrance roller	JC66-04243A	(*)		Roller	Moves paper forward
R2	Middle roller	JC66-04243A	(*)		Roller	Moves paper forward
R3	Exit roller	JC66-04244A	(*)		Roller	Moves paper forward

(*) This part is in ordering system.

PCA

Figure 6-11 Inner finisher system - PCA

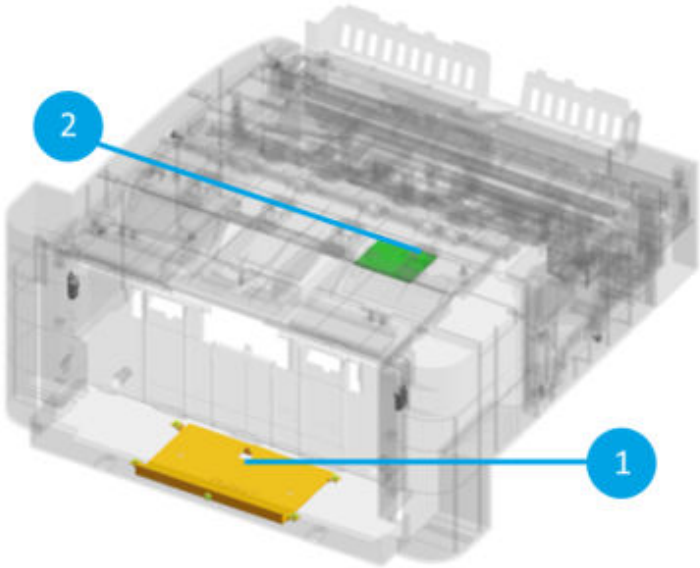


Table 6-8 Inner finisher system - roller

No	Name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Type	Description
1	Main PCA	JC92-02774B	(*)			
2	Rear joint PCA	JC92-02780A	(*)			Joint PCA between main PCA and several parts punch, stapler, entrance, and front door

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Punch unit (optional)

Learn about the punch unit of the inner finisher.

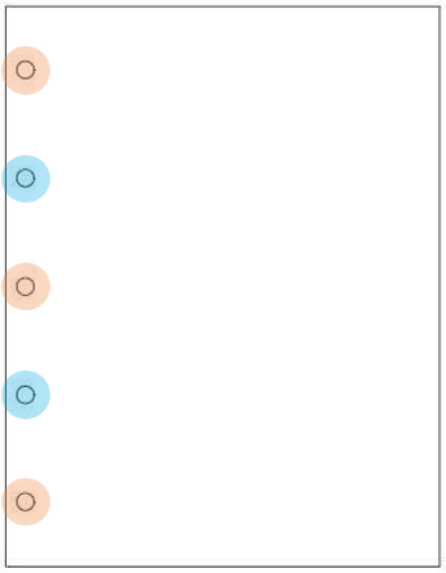
The punch unit is a device that punches holes in a specific location on a sheet of paper. The punch unit is located immediately before the entrance unit and punches holes onto a paper.

- HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole2/3 Punch : Y1G02-67901
- HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole2/4 Punch : Y1G03-67901
- HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Swedish Punch : Y1G04-67901

NOTE: Puncher types vary depending on the country/region.

In case of 2/3 hole punch, the 5 hole-punches are mounted in the punch unit. As the punch motor rotates clockwise, the inner gear moves to the right and the 3 hole-punches are moved downward to make holes. When making 2 holes, the motor rotates in the counterclockwise direction and the inner gear rotates to the left to drill two holes. The travel distance and position of the motor are detected and controlled by the hole punch home sensor and the hole punch motor sensor.

Figure 6-12 Inner finisher system - punched hole location and pair



For more information, go to the HP WISE support portal and search for *HP LaserJet Managed MFP - How to use the hole punch* (c05450959).

Figure 6-13 Inner finisher system - punch unit overview

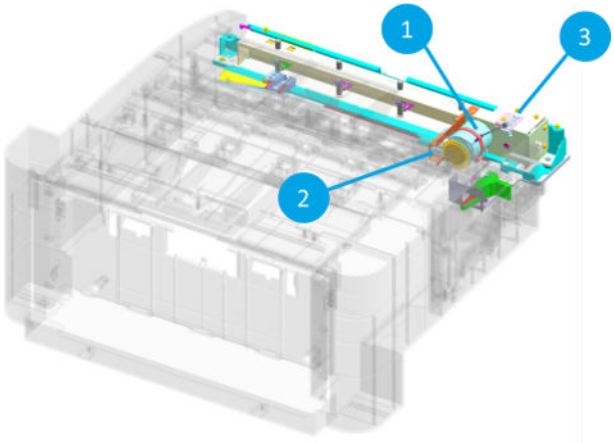


Figure 6-14 Inner finisher system - punch unit detail view

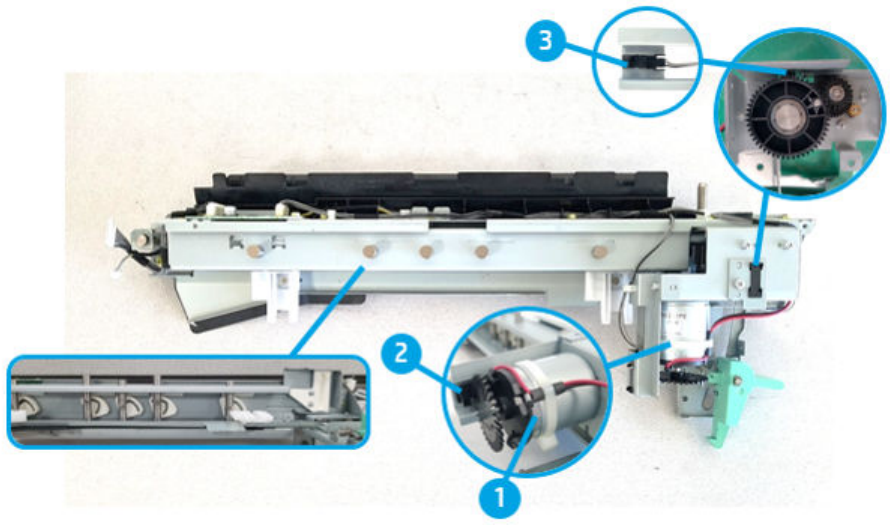


Table 6-9 Inner finisher system - punch unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
-	Hole 2/3 Punch Hole 2/4 Punch Swedish Punch Punch cover	Y1G02-67901 Y1G03-67901 Y1G04-67901 JC90-01343B	(*)		Punch unit assembly for hole 2/3 Punch unit assembly for hole 2/4 Punch unit assembly for swedish Punch cover (for the finisher punch is not installed)
1	Punch motor	-		113-0610	Drives the entrance roller connected by a belt
2	Punch motor sensor	-		113-0600	Detects punch motor operation
3	Punch home sensor	-		113-0612	Detects punchers' home position
Not shown	SVC AS-PBA-HOLE PUNCH 2-4 HOLE	SS465-67001	(*)		
Not shown	SVC AS-PBA-HOLE PUNCH SWEDISH	SS466-67001	(*)		
Not shown	SVC AS-PBA-HOLE PUNCH 2-3	SS467-67001	(*)		

(*) This part is in system.

Figure 6-15 Inner finisher system - punch unit operation (3 holes)

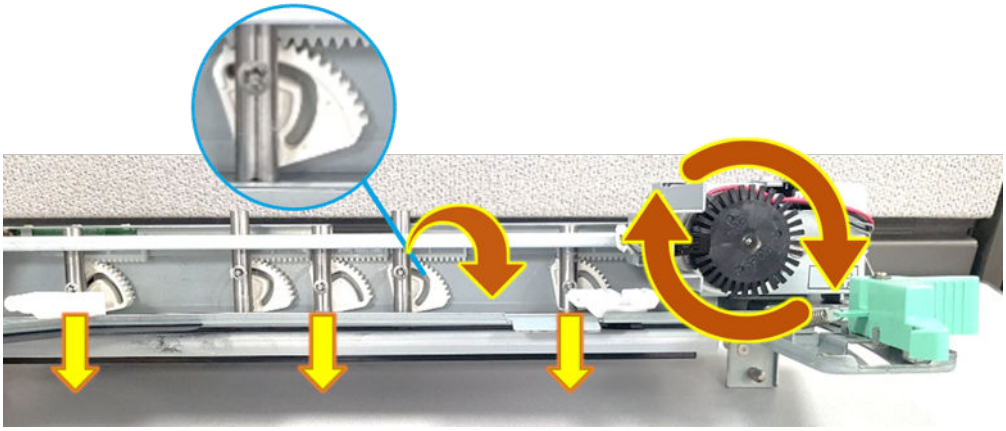
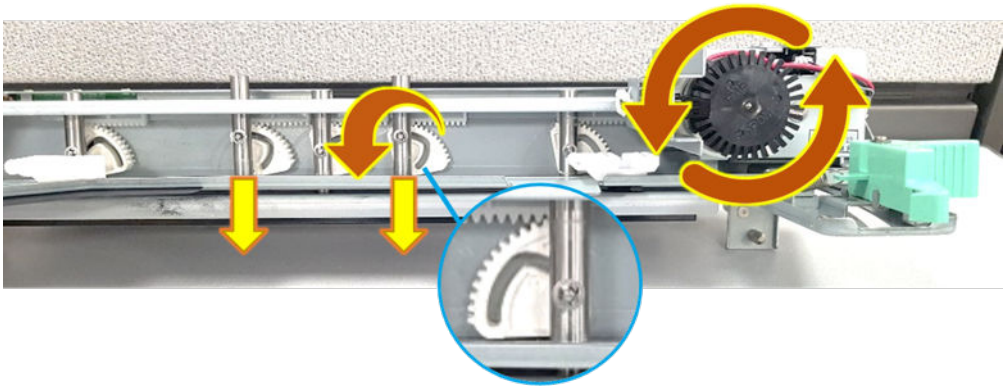


Figure 6-16 Inner finisher system - punch unit operation (2 holes)



Entrance unit

Learn about the entrance unit of the inner finisher.

The entrance unit is located right after the punch unit. This unit is driven by entrance motor which is installed on the rear of the finisher. This motor is connected to the entrance roller by a belt, which transfers driving force to move paper from the printer to the finisher inside. If an error such as paper jam occurs in the entrance unit, the entrance sensor detects the error and generates an event code (13.60.xx).

Figure 6-17 Inner finisher system - entrance unit overview

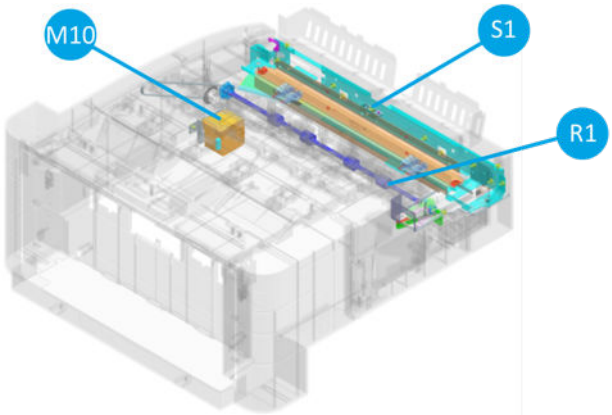


Figure 6-18 Inner finisher system - entrance unit detail view

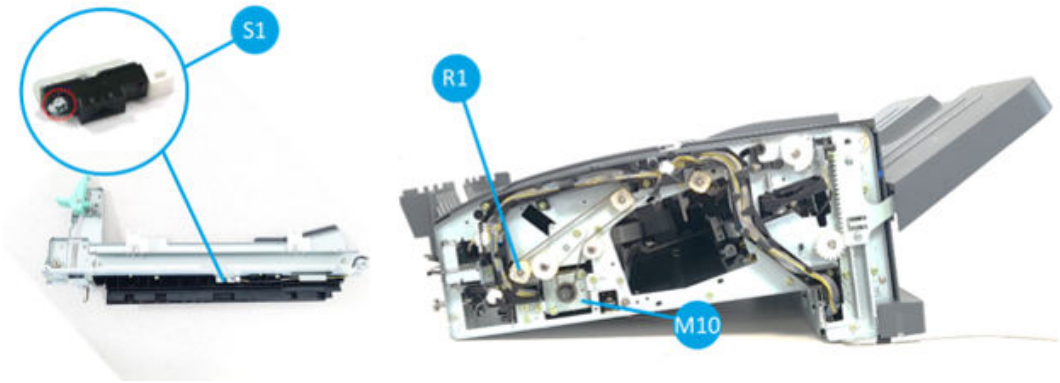


Table 6-10 Inner finisher system - entrance unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
S1	Entrance sensor	0604-001381	(*)	113-0350	Detects paper if it comes into the entrance unit
M10	Entrance motor assembly	JC90-01344A	(*)	113-0501	Drives the entrance roller connected by a belt
-	Entrance motor	JC31-00169B	(*)		
R1	Entrance roller	JC66-04243A	(*)		Moves paper forward

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Diverter unit

Learn about the diverter unit of the inner finisher.

The diverter unit holds paper so that the newly printed paper can wait for a few seconds until the stapled bundle moves to the output tray.The diverter unit is used to change paper path, which is done by a spring mounted on the diverter unit. When paper exit from the unit, it goes through the upper path of the diverter. When the paper rolls back, it passes the lower paper path created by the diverter. Here, the paper sits for a while until the next paper is ready to come out together.

Figure 6-19 Inner finisher system - diverter unit overview

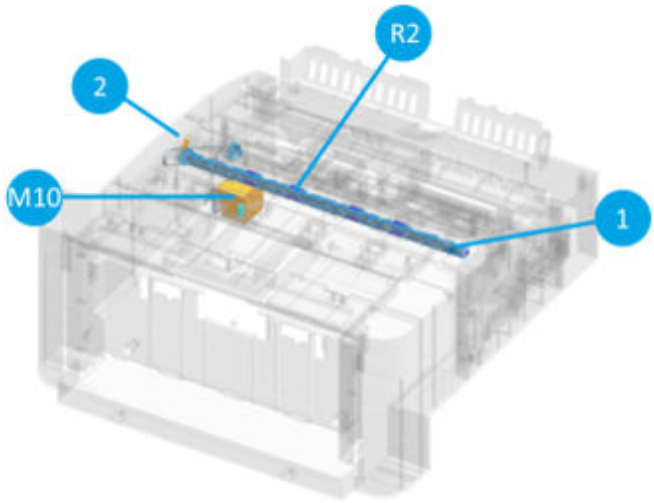


Figure 6-20 Inner finisher system - diverter unit detail view

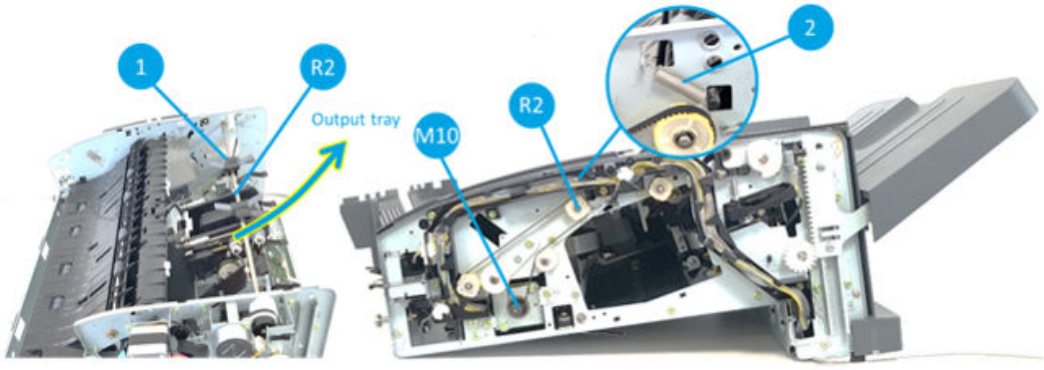


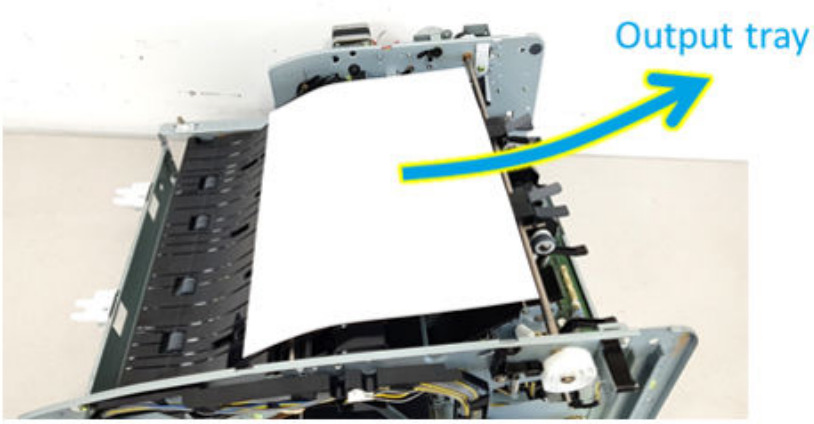
Table 6-11 Inner finisher system - diverter unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
M10	Entrance motor assembly	JC90-01344A	(*)	113-501	Drives the feed roller connected by a belt
	Entrance motor	JC31-00169B	(*)		
R2	Middle roller	JC66-04243A	(*)		Drives paper forward installed in front of the diverter
1	Diverter	JC61-06392A			Changes paper path when paper goes backward
2	Diverter spring	JC61-07269A			Pulls the diverter to upward so that it makes paper path to the lower of the diverter

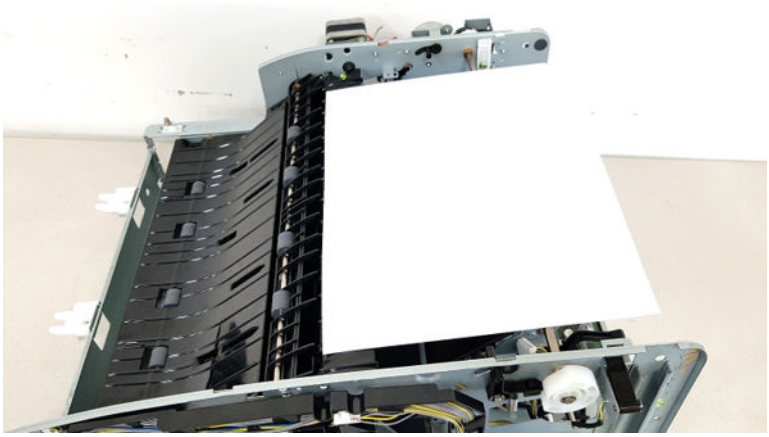
(*) This part is in ordering system.

Diverter unit operation

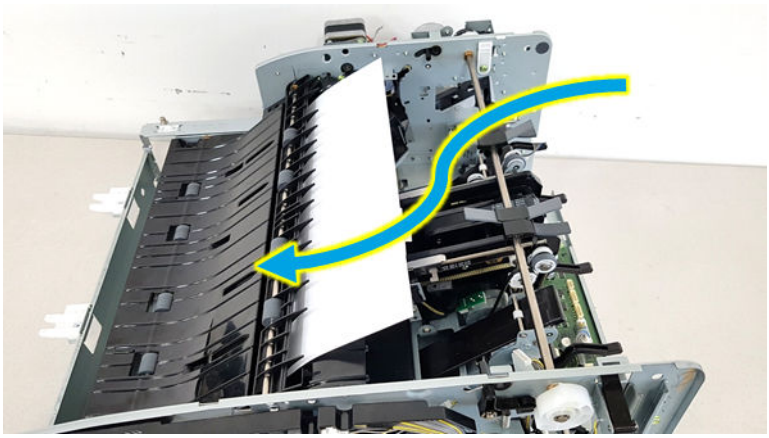
1. Paper goes forward to the output tray.



2. Exit roller stops after paper passes by the diverter unit.



3. Paper goes backward under the diverter unit.



Exit unit

Learn about the exit unit of the inner finisher.

The exit unit is the part that moves paper from the diverter unit to the ejector unit. The exit unit is powered by an exit motor installed on the front of the finisher. The motor and the exit roller are connected by a single belt. The exit motor rotates in both the forward and reverse directions, since it serves to return paper to a new paper path

created by the diverter unit. The exit sensor is installed right in front of exit roller. It generates an event code when a paper jam occurred.

Figure 6-21 Inner finisher system - exit unit overview

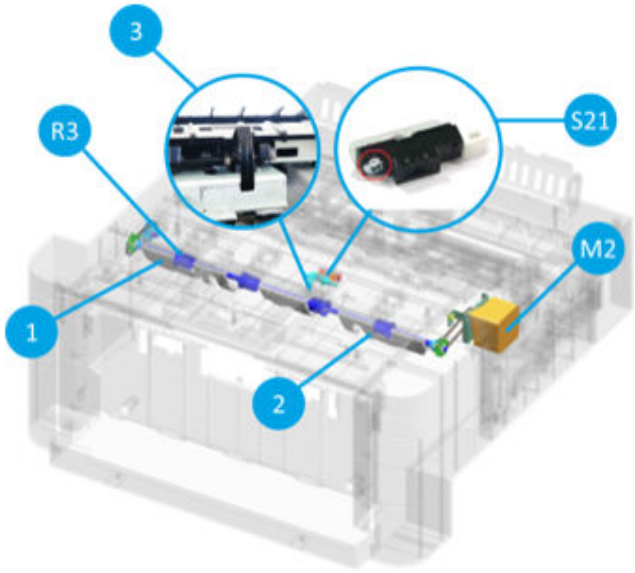


Figure 6-22 Inner finisher system - exit unit detail view

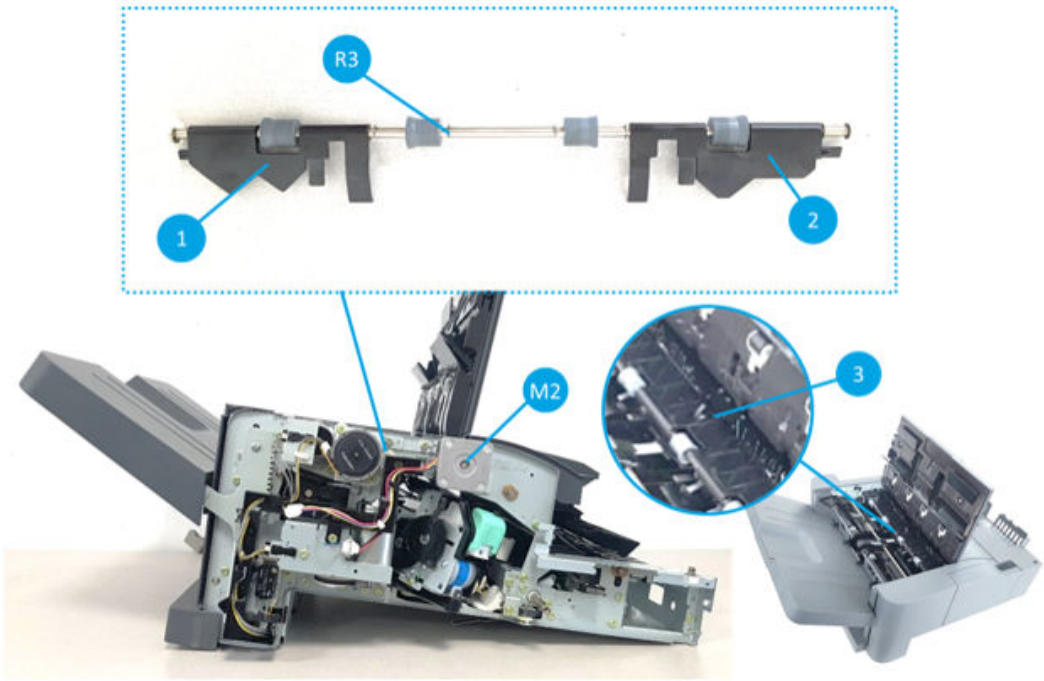


Table 6-12 Inner finisher system - exit unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Rear compile guide	JC61-07450A	(*)		Guides to help paper move through the paper path
2	Front compile guide	JC61-07449A	(*)		Guides to help paper move through the paper path

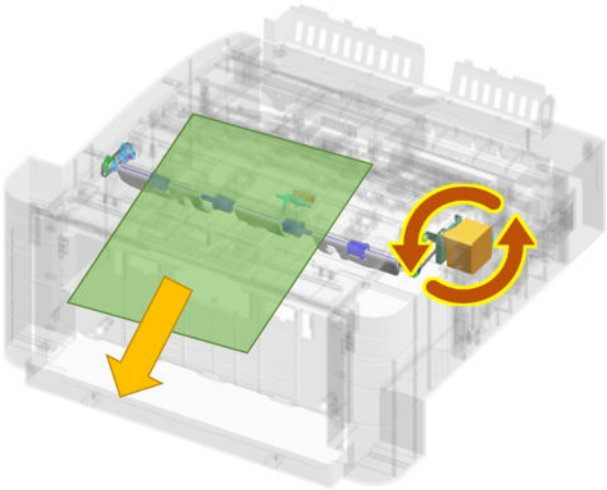
Table 6-12 Inner finisher system - exit unit parts information (continued)

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
3	Exit sensor actuator	JC66-04199A	(*)	113-0360	Makes the sensor on and off by checking paper
S21	Exit sensor	0604-001415	(*)	113-0360	Detects paper if it passes through the exit unit
M2	Exit motor assembly	JC90-01331A		113-0502	Drives the exit roller connected by a belt
	Exit motor	JC31-00169B	(*)		
R3	Exit roller	JC66-04244A	(*)		Moves paper to the ejector unit

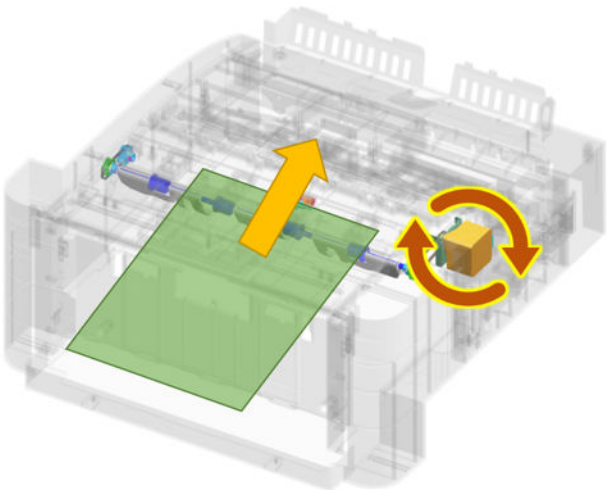
(*) This part is in ordering system.

Exit unit operation

1. When rotating the exit motor counter clockwise, paper goes forward to the output tray.



2. When rotating the exit motor clockwise, paper goes backward to the end fence unit.



Paper support unit

Learn about the paper support unit of the inner finisher.

Paper support unit works to prevent the paper from falling out or being folded. Also, the newly printed paper will not scatter papers already sitting on the output tray. Paper guides are installed on each front and rear side of the finisher, these guides move towards the output tray when the paper exits, then the guides return to the original position after the support operation is completed. The paper support home sensor confirms the original position of the guide.

Figure 6-23 Inner finisher system - paper support unit overview

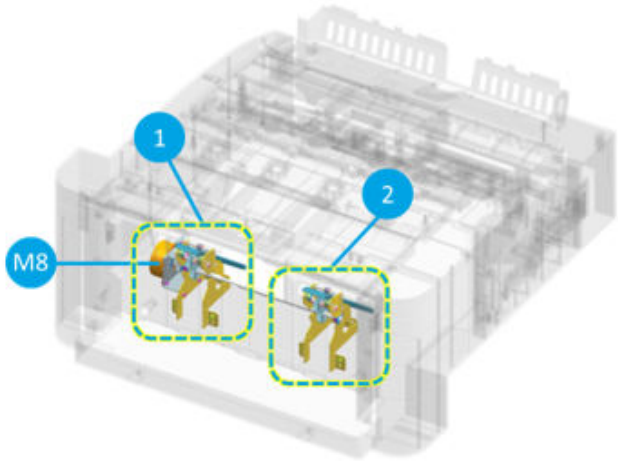


Figure 6-24 Inner finisher system - paper support unit detail view

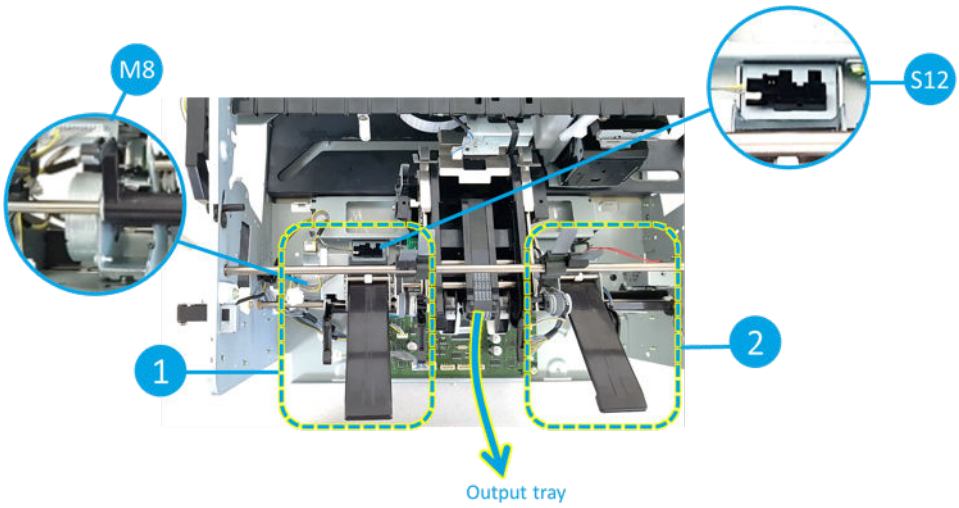


Table 6-13 Inner finisher system - paper support unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Rear paper support	JC90-01311A	(*)		Supports paper not to be bended
2	Front paper support	JC90-01310A	(*)		Supports paper not to be bended
S12	Paper support home sensor	0604-001393		113-0481	Detects the paper support guides locate at the home position

Table 6-13 Inner finisher system - paper support unit parts information (continued)

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
M8	Paper support motor assembly	JC93-00802B		113-0571	Drives paper support guides from the home position to the forward direction
	Paper support motor	JC31-00149A			

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Paper support unit operation

Paper support unit is extended to the arrow direction to help paper is bent of fallen to the output tray.

Figure 6-25 Inner finisher system - paper support unit operation

Paddle unit

Learn about the paddle unit of the inner finisher.

The paddle unit consists of two paddle systems, a main paddle and a sub paddle. First, when paper is discharged from the exit unit, the main paddle unit moves paper to the sub paddle. Then the sub paddle unit moves paper to the end fence unit so that it can be ready to be stapled.

The main paddle unit is operated by the main paddle motor. The main paddle sensor detects the main paddle position. The sub paddle unit rotates by the exit motor.

Figure 6-26 Inner finisher system - paddle unit driving system overview (main paddle unit)

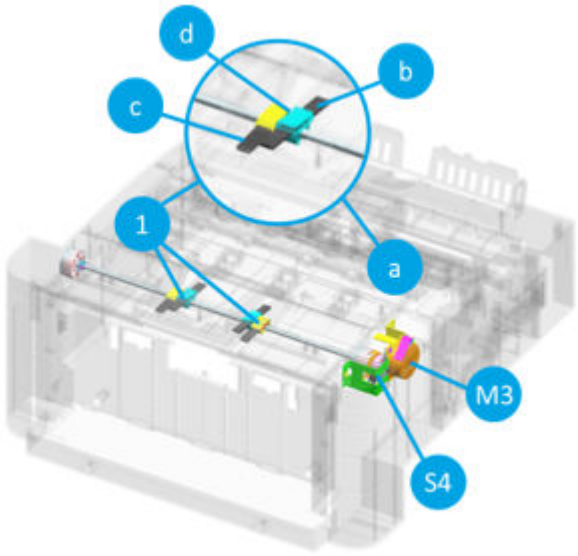


Figure 6-27 Inner finisher system - paddle unit driving system overview (sub paddle unit)

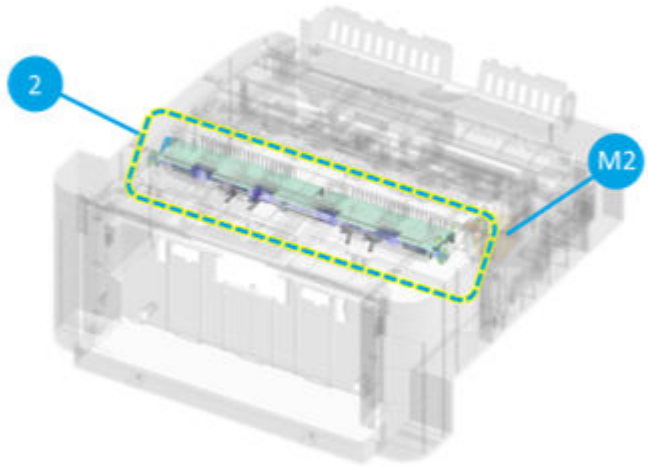


Figure 6-28 Inner finisher system - paddle unit driving system detail view (1/2)

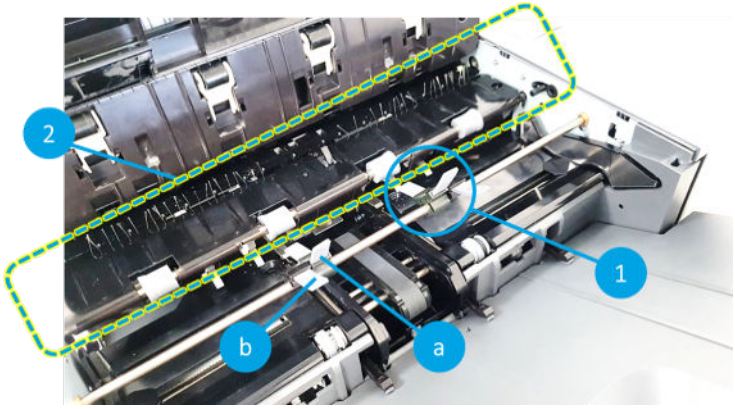


Figure 6-29 Inner finisher system - paddle unit driving system detail view (2/2)

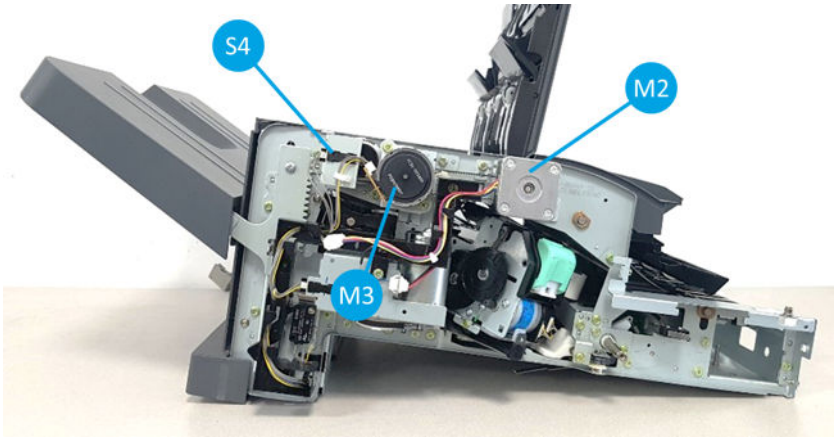


Table 6-14 Inner finisher system - paddle unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Main paddle	JC90-01327A	(*)		Moves paper to the sub paddle unit
1-a	Main paddle kit	JC82-01038A	(*)		
1-b	Main paddle A	JC63-04957A	(*)		
1-c	Main paddle B	JC63-04958A	(*)		
1-d	Main paddle holder	JC81-07560A	(*)		
2	Sub paddle	JC90-01336A	(*)		Gets paper move to the end fence and arrange them to be stapled correctly
S4	Main paddle home sensor	0604-001393		113-0370	Detects the home position of the main paddle
M3	Main paddle motor assembly	JC90-01331A	(*)	113-0510	Drives the main paddle unit connected by a belt
	Main paddle motor	JC31-00149A			
M2	Exit motor	JC31-00169B	(*)	113-0502	Drives the sub paddle unit connected by a belt

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Paddle unit operation

1. Main paddles get paper moves to the sub paddle unit.

2. Sub paddle unit gets paper goes to the end fence unit.

Tamper unit

Learn about the tamper unit of the inner finisher.

The tamper unit functions to align the left and right sides of a bundle of paper in order to staple it to the correct position. When a certain amount of paper for stapling is collected after printing, the tamper unit hits the left and right ends of the paper to align the paper correctly.

Each temper has a motor on the back side that delivers driving force to move. The temper unit sensors are mounted on the back side of the unit, to check the position of the temper unit.

Figure 6-30 Inner finisher system - tamper unit overview

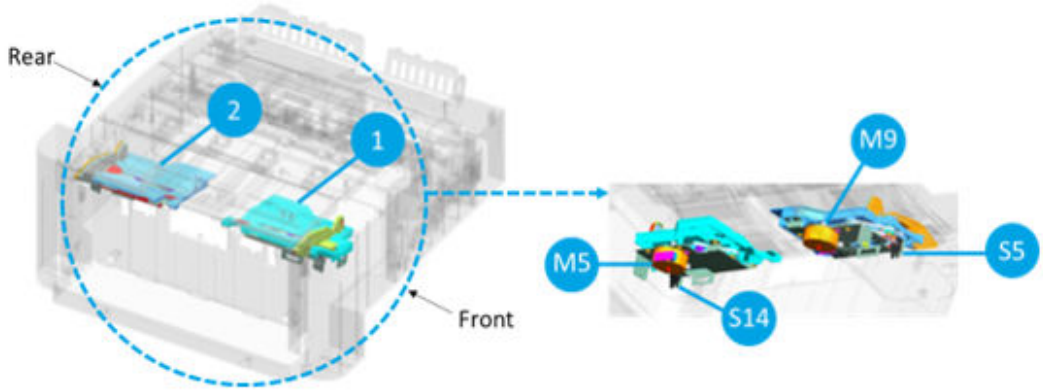


Figure 6-31 Inner finisher system - tamper unit detail view (1/3)

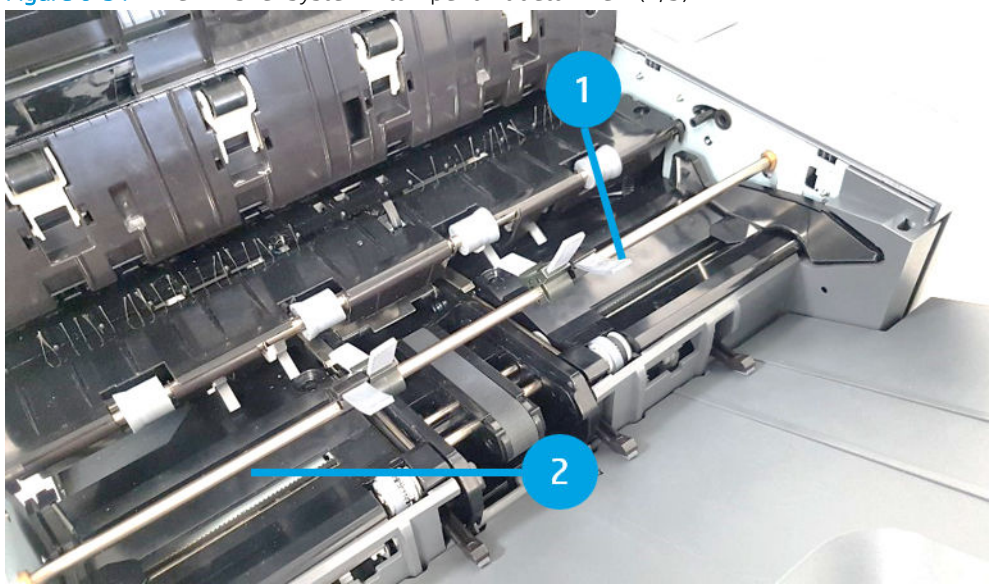


Figure 6-32 Inner finisher system - tamper unit detail view (rear) (2/3)

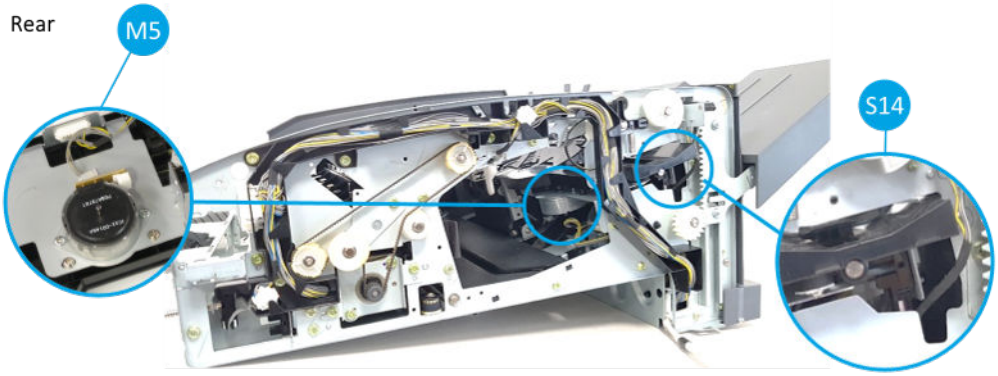


Figure 6-33 Inner finisher system - tamper unit detail view (front) (3/3)

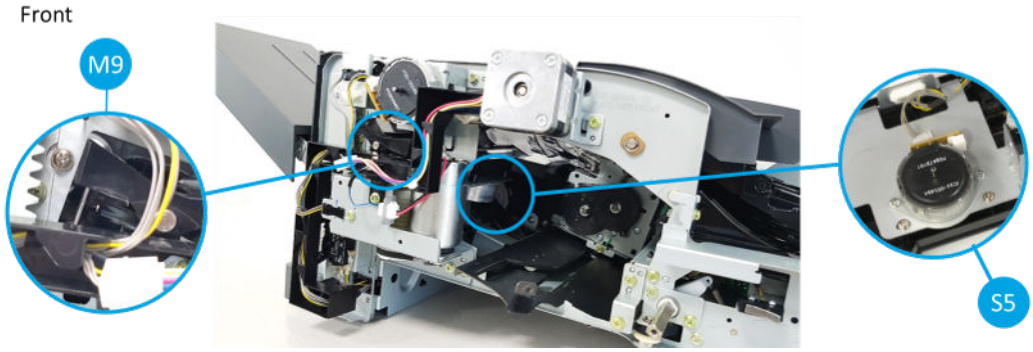


Table 6-15 Inner finisher system - tamper unit parts information

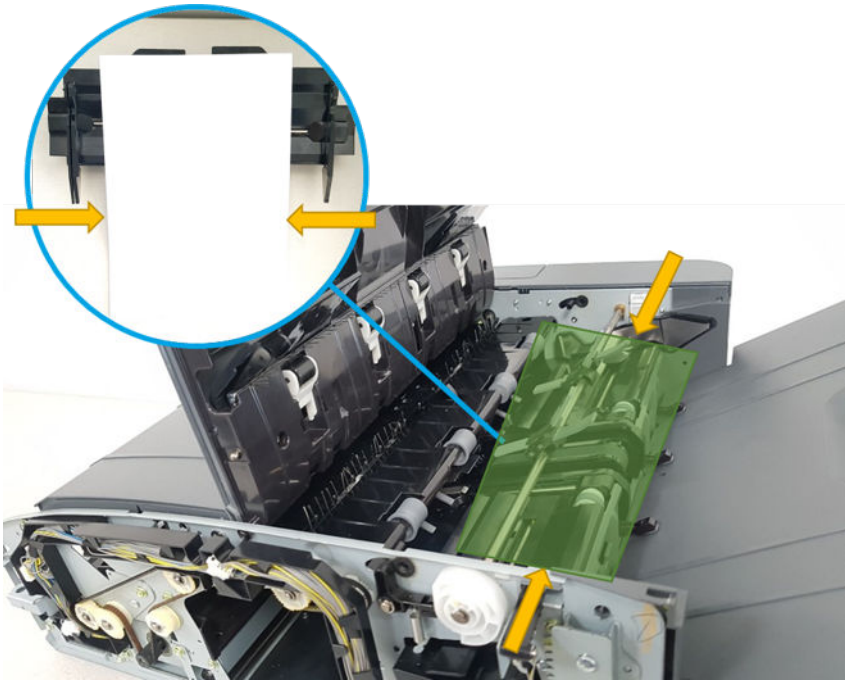
Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Front tamper	JC82-00899A	(*)		Aligns left and right side of paper
2	Rear tamper	JC82-00900A	(*)		Aligns left and right side of paper
M5	Rear tamper motor assembly	JC93-01001A	(*)	113-0520	Drives the rear temper unit
	Rear tamper motor	JC31-00149A			
S14	Rear tamper home sensor	0604-001393		113-0380	Detects the reference position of the tamper unit
M9	Front tamper motor assembly	JC93-01001A	(*)	113-0530	Drives the front tamper unit
	Front tamper motor	JC31-00149A			
S5	Front tamper home sensor	0604-001393		113-0390	Detects the reference position of the tamper unit

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Tamper unit operation

1. Paper is arranged at the end of the end fence unit.

2. The left and right tampers arrange a stack of paper.



End fence unit

Learn about the end fence unit of the inner finisher.

The paddle unit moves paper to the end fence unit. The end fence unit sets the standard position of the paper to be aligned towards top and bottom of the paper. The end fence is fixed onto the finisher, and the end fence sensor can sense any paper entering the end fence unit.

Figure 6-34 Inner finisher system - end fence unit overview

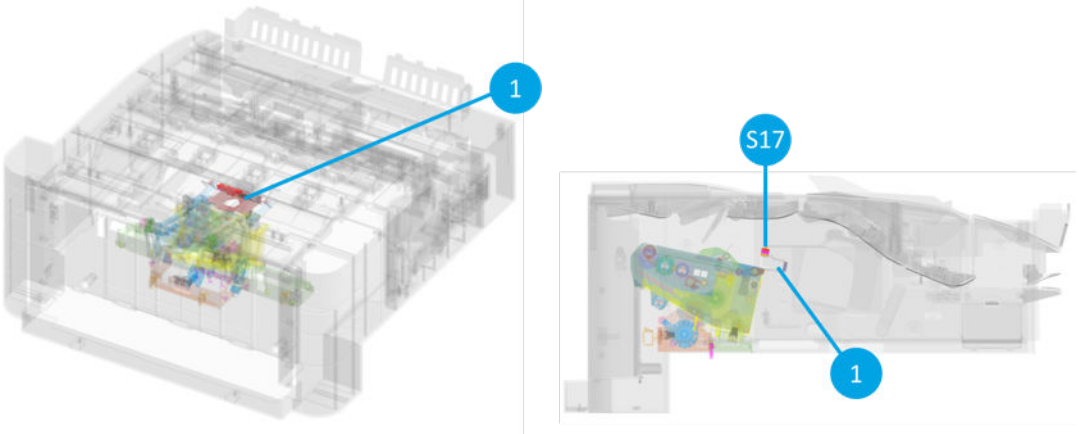


Figure 6-35 Inner finisher system - end fence unit detail view

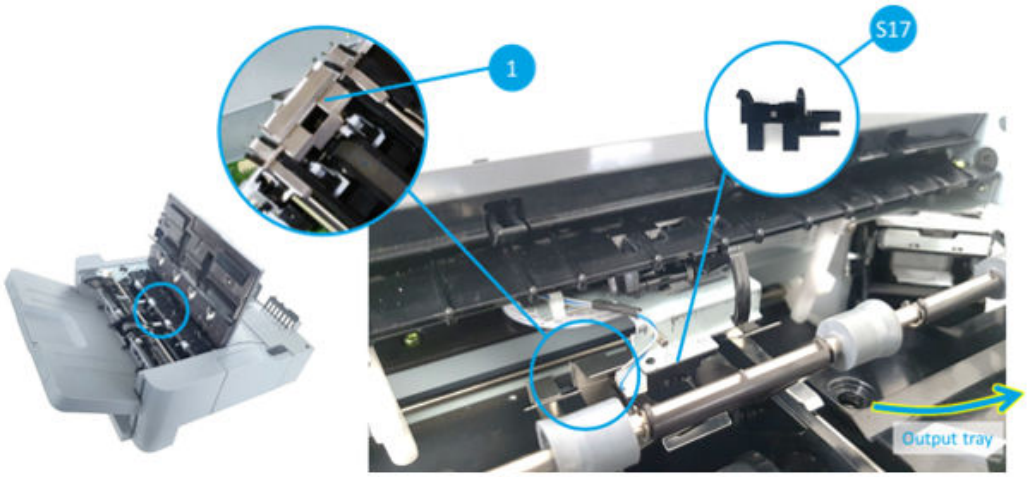


Table 6-16 Inner finisher system - end fence unit parts information

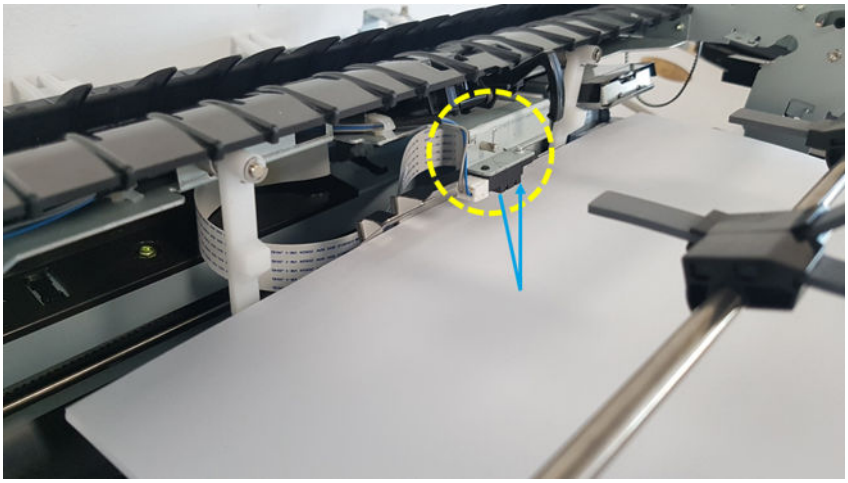
Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	End fence	JC61-06428A			Aligns paper toward top and bottom direction
2	End fence sensor	0604-001381	(*)	113-0361	Detects paper whether paper exists in the end fence unit

(*) This part is in ordering system.

End fence unit operation

1. Paper goes into the end fence unit through the main paddle unit and sub paddle unit. At the same time the end fence unit is aligned paper to the direction of yellow line.

2. The end fence sensor is checking whether paper goes into the end fence sensor.

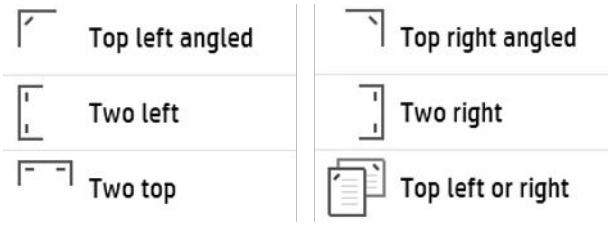


Stapler unit

Learn about the stapler unit of the inner finisher.

Stapler unit is a device installed inside the finisher that staples a bundle of aligned documents. Documents are collected as a bundle by the tamper unit and the end fence unit for stapling, then stapler assembly staples the bundle. There are 6 options to make a bundle.

Figure 6-36 Inner finisher system - stapling options



The stapler unit moves using the stapler motor installed inside. The four stapler position sensors are mounted so that the stapler can be positioned in the exact stapling position whether it is stapled on the left, the right, or at the center of the document. Stapling is done by the motor inside the stapler assembly.

Figure 6-37 Inner finisher system - stapler unit overview

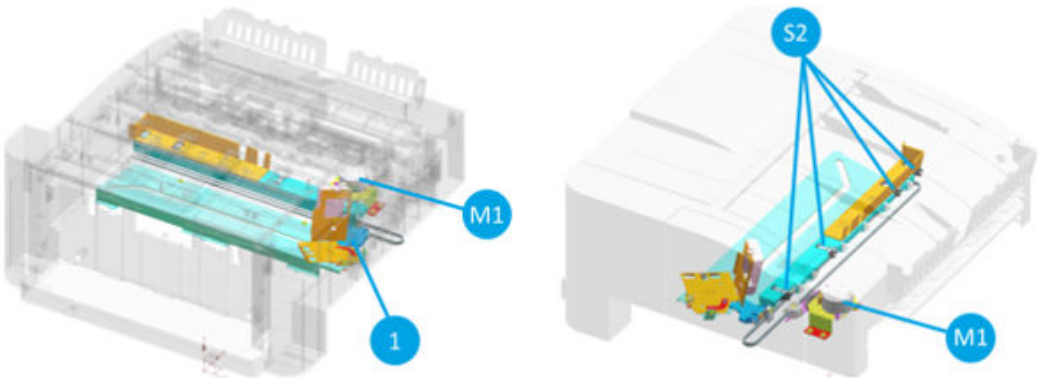


Figure 6-38 Inner finisher system - stapler unit detail view (1/2)

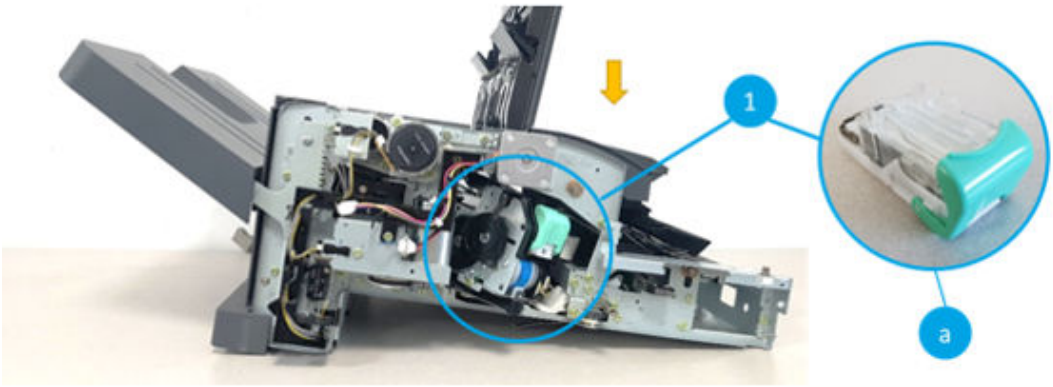


Figure 6-39 Inner finisher system - stapler unit detail view (2/2)

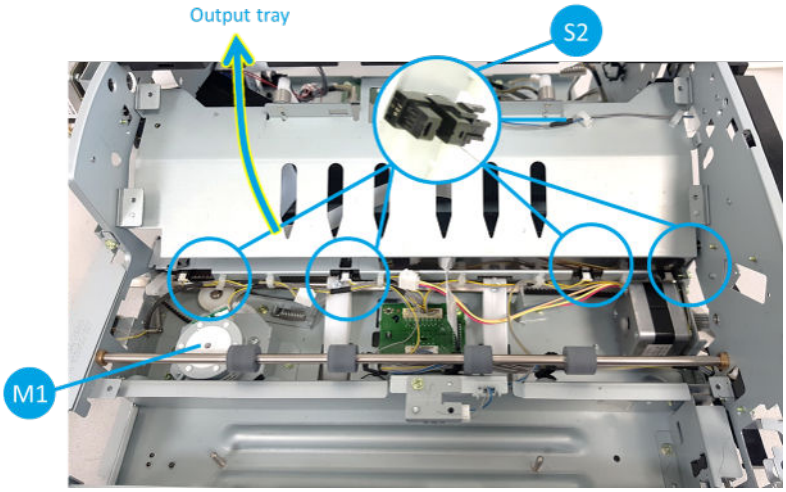


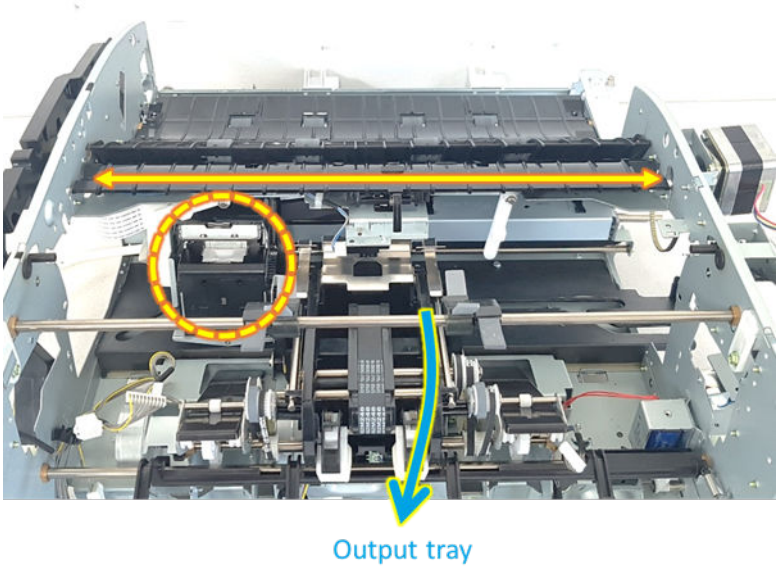
Table 6-17 Inner finisher system - stapler unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Stapler assembly	JC59-00040A	(*)		Staples a bundle of paper
1-a	Staple cartridge	JC81-07408B	(*)		Staple cartridge
S2	Stapler position sensor	0604-001393	(*)	113-0491 113-0492	Detects and moves the staple assembly position to make a bundle of paper at the exact location
M1	Stapler position motor	JC93-00999A	(*)	113-0581	Gets the staple assembly move toward top and down direction of paper

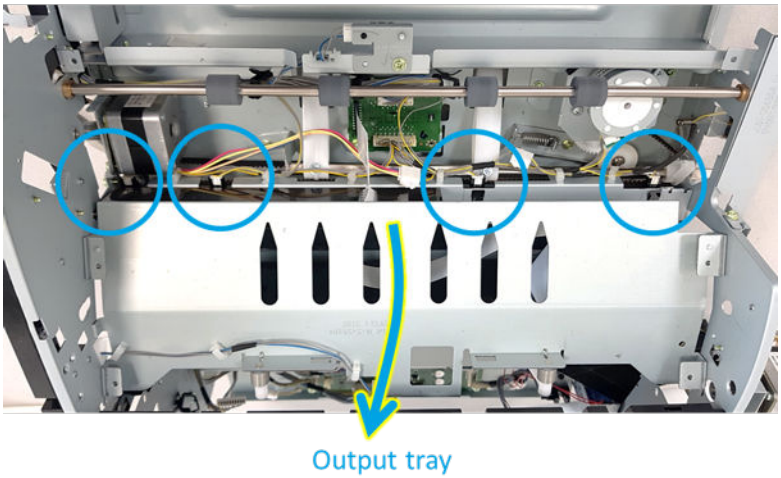
(*) This part is in ordering system.

Stapler unit operation

1. The stapler position motor delivers the stapler assembly to the horizontal direction (yellow line).



2. The stapler assembly checks front and rear home position and moves where the stapler position sensors are located depending on stapling types.



Ejector unit

Learn about the ejector unit of the inner finisher.

The ejector unit moves a bundle of stapled paper out. The ejector unit consists of ejector1 and ejector2. The Ejector1 transfers a stapled paper loaded at the end fence unit to the ejector2 unit. During this process, the ejector1 motor transmits the driving force to the ejector1 unit. And the ejector1 home position sensor controls the movement of the ejector1. When the paper arrives at the ejector2 unit, the ejector2 grabs a stack of paper and ejects it onto the output tray. The ejector2 motor is responsible for this process, and the ejector2 motor sensor helps it to be controlled correctly. In addition, the ejector2 home position sensor is mounted to check the location of the ejector2.

Figure 6-40 Inner finisher system - ejector unit overview

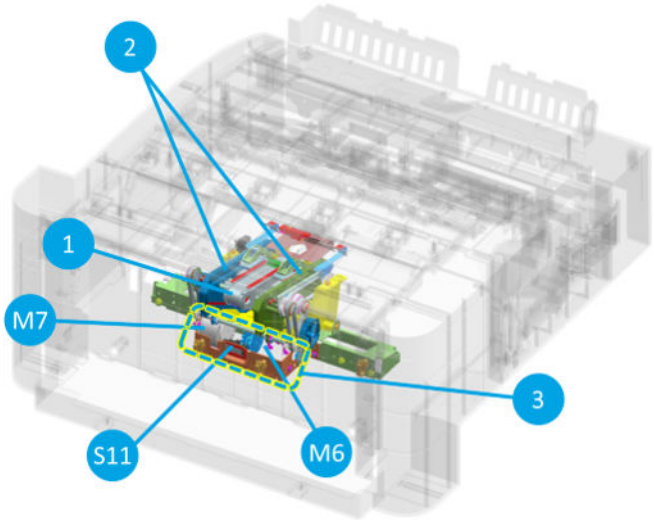


Figure 6-41 Inner finisher system - ejector unit detail view (1/3)

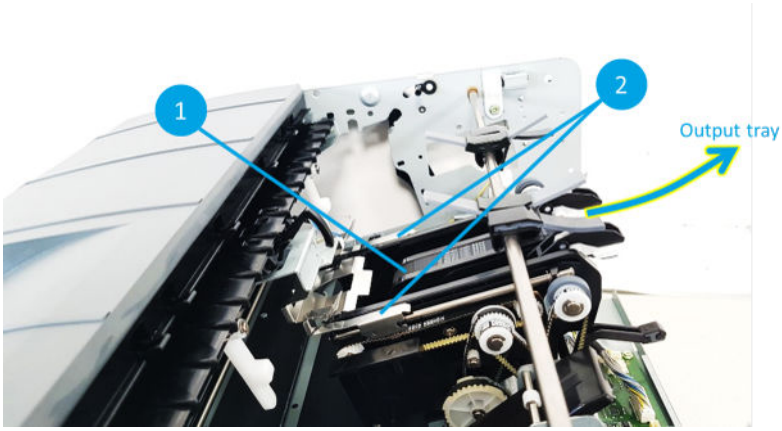


Figure 6-42 Inner finisher system - ejector unit detail view (2/3)

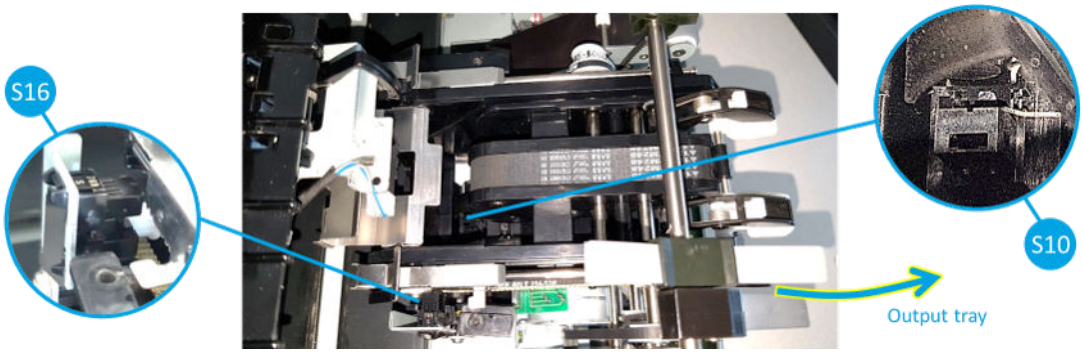


Figure 6-43 Inner finisher system - ejector unit detail view (3/3)

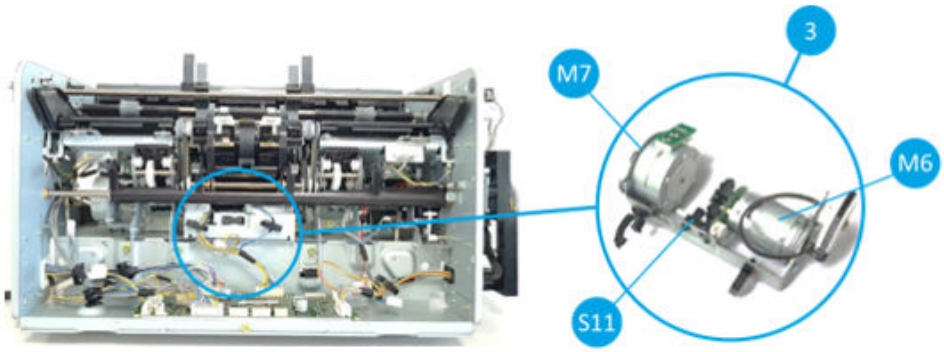


Table 6-18 Inner finisher system - ejector unit parts information

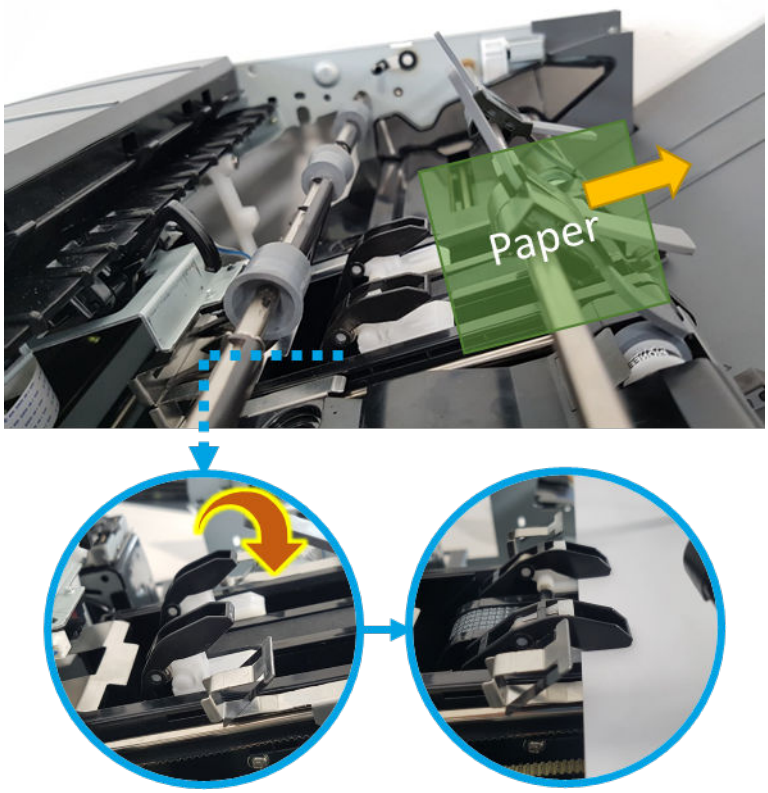
Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
	Ejector	SS456-61001	(*)		
1	Ejector2				Moves paper from the ejector 1 to the output tray
2	Ejector1	Y1G14-67901			Moves the stack of paper from the end fence to the ejector2
S10	Ejector2 home sensor	0604-001393		113-0462	Detects the home position of the ejector2
S16	Ejector1 home sensor	0604-001393		113-0461	Detects the home position of the ejector1
3	Ejector motor assembly	JC90-01309A			Moves the ejector1 and ejector2
M6	Ejector2 motor assembly	JC93-01168A		113-0562	Moves the ejector2 forward and backward
	Ejector2 motor	JC31-00175A			Detects the ejector2 motor rotation
S11	Ejector2 motor sensor	0604-001393		113-0463	
M7	Ejector1 motor assembly	JC93-00998A		113-0561	Grabs a stack of paper, then move it to the output tray
	Ejector1 motor	JC31-00009C			

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Ejector unit operation

1. Ejector 1 pushes aligned paper at the end fence unit to ejector 2 unit.

2. Ejector 2 grabs paper, then moves forward to the output tray unit direction.



3. Ejector2 draws off paper on the output tray.

Output tray & paper holding unit

Learn about the output tray & paper holding unit of the inner finisher.

The output tray moves up and down along the rails inside the finisher, and the output tray motor controls those movement according to the signals sent from the paper holding sensor. As paper stacks up on the output tray, the paper holding unit is lifted by papers. When the paper holding sensor is touched, the output tray moves downward.

The machine detects when the output tray is full as the output tray hits the lower limit switch. The output tray top of stack sensor is mounted on both left and right sides for the case that the paper holding sensor breaks down.

The paper holding solenoid lifts the paper holding actuator up when a new bundle of paper come to the output tray.

Figure 6-44 Inner finisher system - output tray unit overview

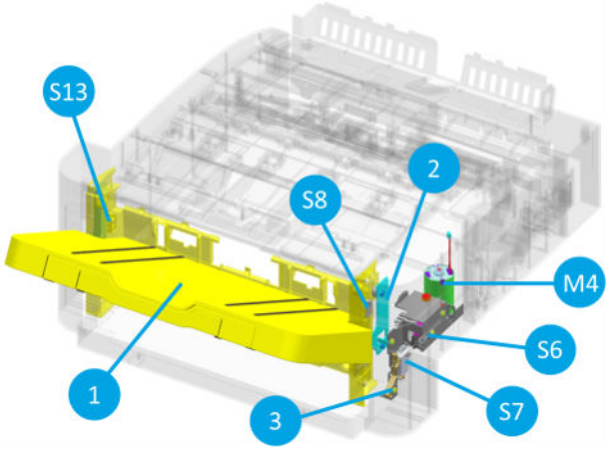


Figure 6-45 Inner finisher system - output tray unit detail view (1/2)

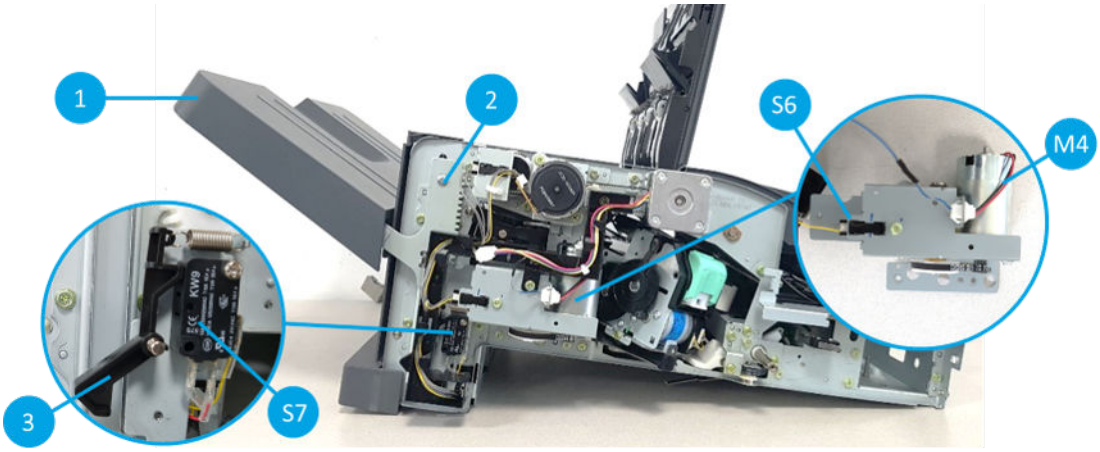


Figure 6-46 Inner finisher system - output tray unit detail view (2/2)

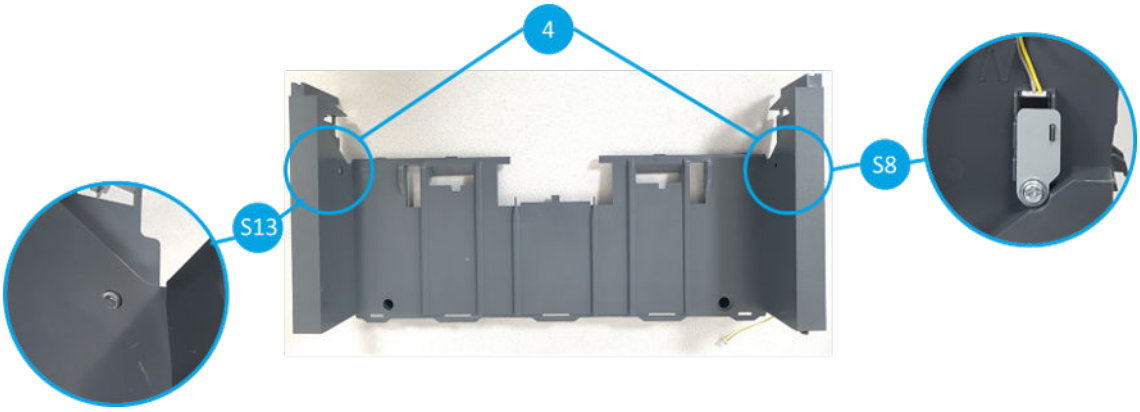


Table 6-19 Inner finisher system - output tray unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Output tray	JC90-01337B	(*)		Stacking plate for ejected paper
M4	Output tray motor assembly	JC90-01334B	(*)	113-0570	Moves the output tray up and down
	Output tray motor	JC31-00178B	(*)		
S6	Output tray motor sensor	0604-001393		113-0473	Detects if the output tray motor is operational
2	Output tray frame	JC90-01319A	(*)		
S7	Output tray lower limit switch	JC90-01320A	(*)	113-0472	Detects the lowest position of the output tray
3	Output tray lower actuator	JC66-04200A	(*)	113-0472	Detects the lowest position of the output tray
4	Output tray top of stack sensor kit	JC82-01039A	(*)	113-0471	Detects abnormal movement of output tray (Output tray top of stack sensor receiver + led)
S8	Output tray top of stack sensor (receiver)	0603-001309	(*)		

Table 6-19 Inner finisher system - output tray unit parts information (continued)

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
S13	Output tray top of stack sensor (led)	0601-003440			

(*) This part is in ordering system.

Figure 6-47 Inner finisher system - paper holding unit overview

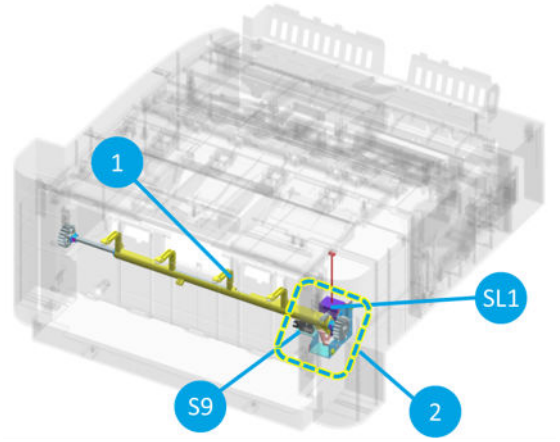


Figure 6-48 Inner finisher system - paper holding unit detail view

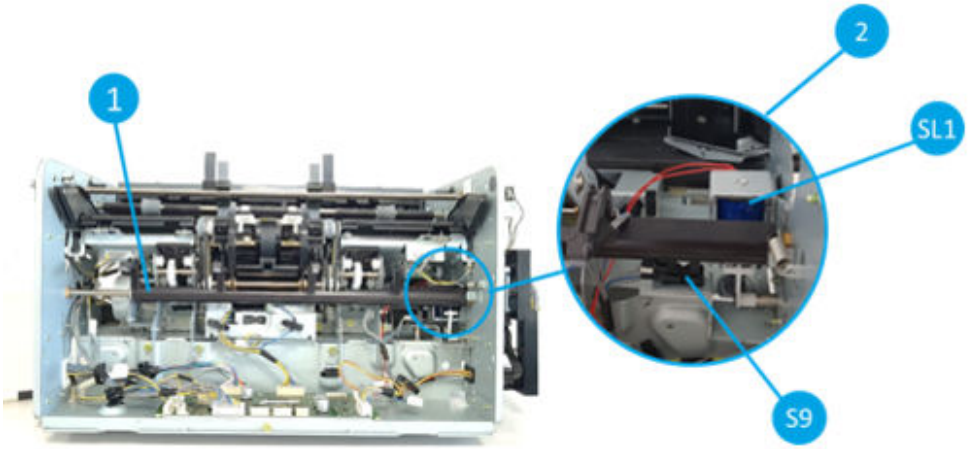


Table 6-20 Inner finisher system - output tray unit parts information

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
1	Paper holding actuator	JC90-01313A	(*)		Controls the output tray height, and grabs stacked paper not to be scattered
2	Paper holding kit	JC90-01314A	(*)		Paper holding solenoid + Paper holding sensor
SL1	Paper holding solenoid	JC33-00037A	(*)	113-0591	Moves paper holding actuator up when paper goes out to the output tray

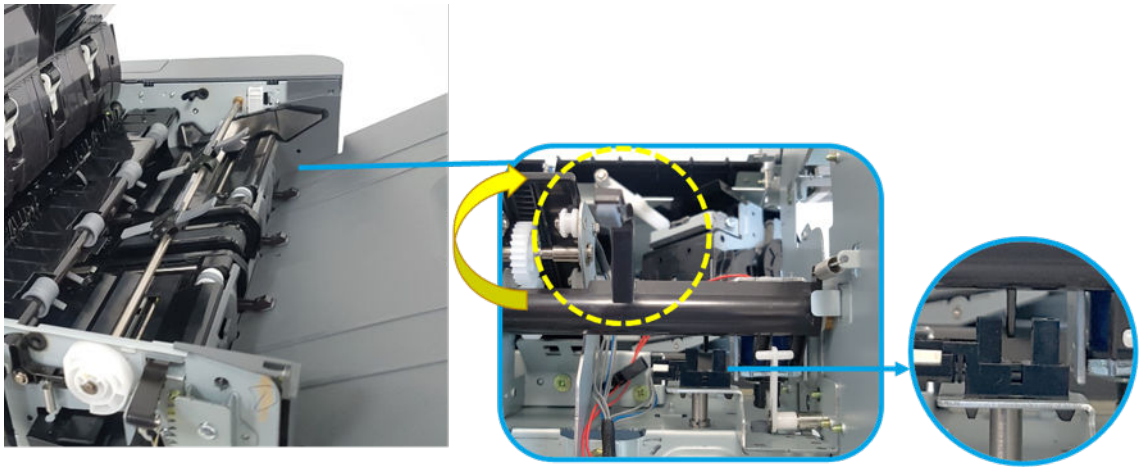
Table 6-20 Inner finisher system - output tray unit parts information (continued)

Item	Part name	Part number	Orderable(*)	Diagnostics	Description
S9	Paper holding sensor	0604-001393		113-0470	Detects stacked paper position

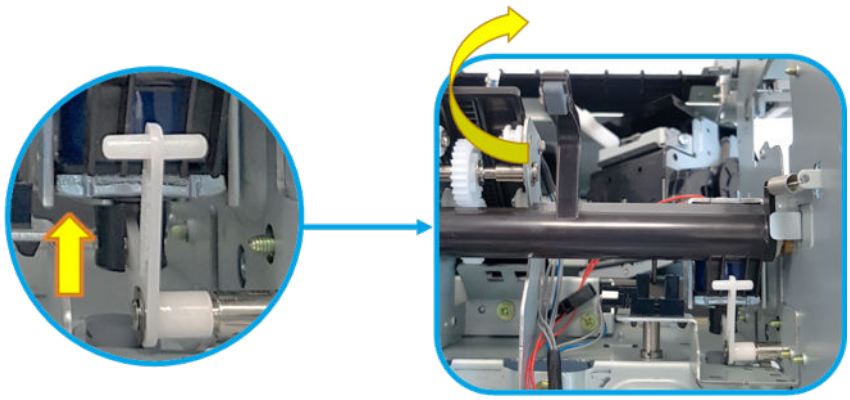
(*) This part is in ordering system.

Inner finisher system - output tray & paper holding unit operation

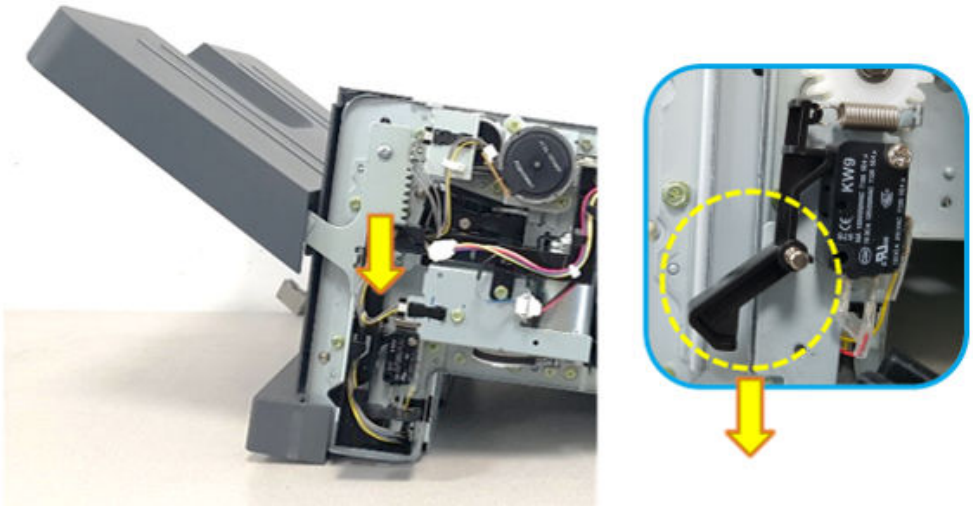
1. Paper holding unit helps paper stores stable on the output tray. Besides it detects amount of stacked paper and get the output tray moves downward.



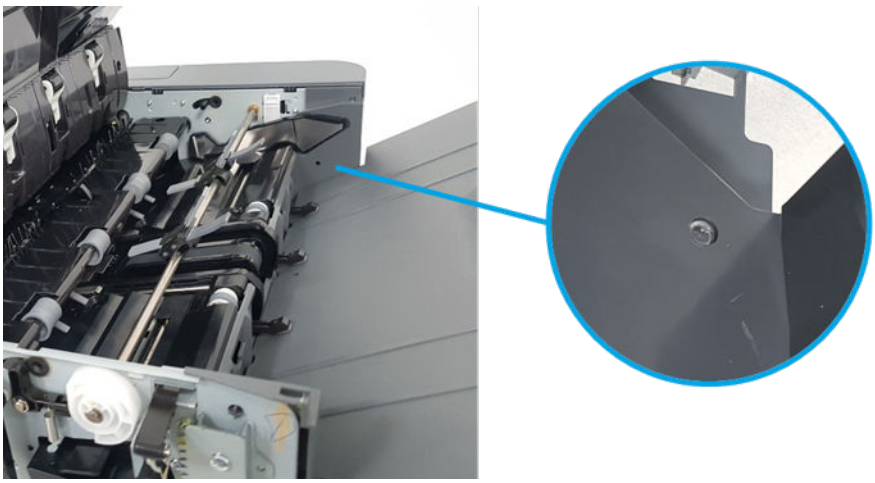
2. When paper goes out to the output tray, paper holding solenoid forcibly make paper holding actuator goes upward to create the paper passage not to be jammed by the paper holding actuator.



3. As the paper accumulates, output tray moves downward. When it reaches at the end of the moving range, output tray lower limit switch is pressed. The switch detects paper stacks full on the output tray.



4. In case of fatal error in the output tray unit and paper holding unit, output tray top of stack sensor makes the machine emergency stop so that output tray unit does not move upward.



PCA connection information

Learn about the PCA connection information.

Figure 6-49 Inner finisher system - PCA connection information

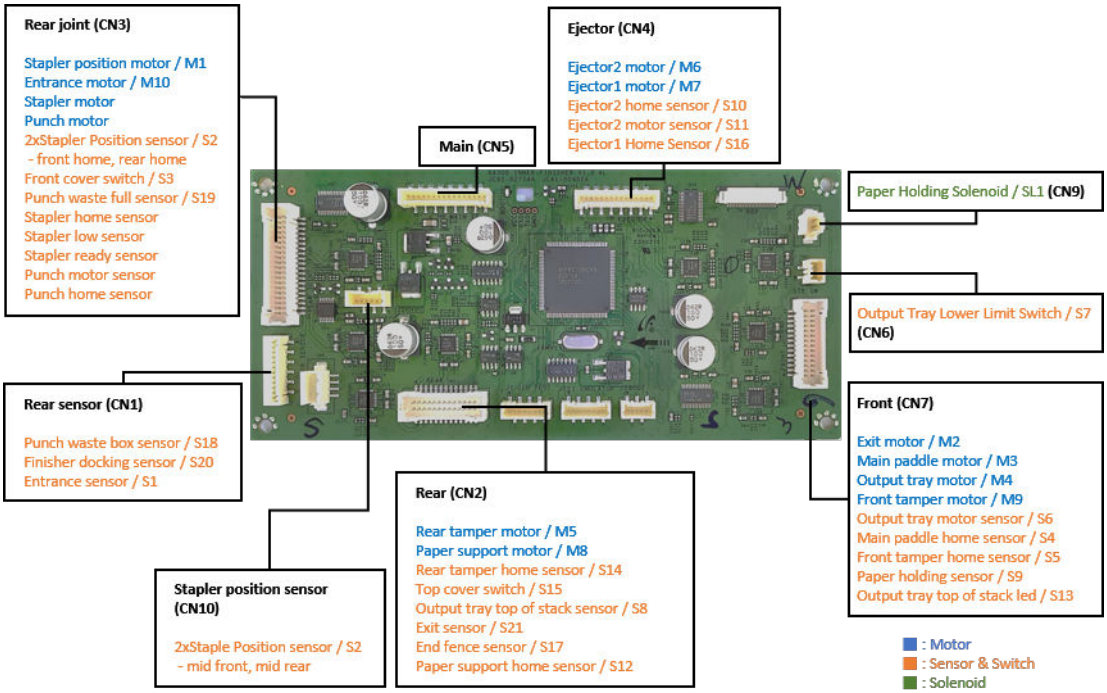


Table 6-21 Inner finisher system - PCA connectors, parts, and diagnostics information

CN No.	Connector name	Motor (Diagnostics)	Sensor (Diagnostics)	Switch & Solenoid (Diagnostics)
CN1	Rear sensor		• Punch waste box sensor (113-0620) • Finisher docking sensor (113-0000) • Entrance sensor (113-0350)	
CN2	Rear	• Rear tamper motor (113-0520) • Paper support motor (113-0571)	• Rear tamper home sensor (113-0380) • Output tray top of stack sensor (113-0471) • Exit sensor (113-0360) • End fence sensor (113-0361) • Paper support home sensor (113-0481)	• Top cover switch (113-0420)

Table 6-21 Inner finisher system - PCA connectors, parts, and diagnostics information (continued)

CN No.	Connector name	Motor (Diagnostics)	Sensor (Diagnostics)	Switch & Solenoid (Diagnostics)
CN3	Rear joint	• Stapler motor (113-0550) • Stapler position motor (113-0581) • Entrance motor (113-0501) • Punch motor (113-0610)	• Stapler low sensor(113-0440) • Stapler ready sensor (113-0451) • Stapler home sensor(113-0430) • Stapler position sensor (front home) (113-0491) • Stapler position sensor (rear home) (113-0492) • Punch waste full sensor (113-0621) • Punch motor sensor(113-0600) • Punch home sensor (113-0612)	• Front cover switch (113-0420)
CN4	Ejector	• Ejector2 motor (113-0562) • Ejector1 motor (113-0561)	• Ejector2 motor sensor (113-0463) • Ejector2 home sensor (113-0462) • Ejector1 home sensor (113-0461)	
CN5	Main (to the main PBA)			
CN6	Output tray lower limit switch			• Output tray lower limit switch (113-0472)
CN7	Front	• Exit motor (113-0502) • Main paddle motor (113-0510) • Output tray motor (113-0570) • Front tamper motor (113-0530)	• Output tray motor sensor (113-0473) • Main paddle home sensor (113-0370) • Front tamper home sensor (113-0390) • Paper holding sensor (113-0470) • Output tray top of stack sensor (113-0471)	

Table 6-21 Inner finisher system - PCA connectors, parts, and diagnostics information (continued)

CN No.	Connector name	Motor (Diagnostics)	Sensor (Diagnostics)	Switch & Solenoid (Diagnostics)
CN9	Paper holding solenoid			• Paper holding solenoid (113-0591)
CN10	Stapler position sensor		• Stapler position sensor (mid front) (-) • Stapler position sensor (mid rear) (-)	

Service approach

Learn about the service approach of the inner finisher.

⚠ CAUTION: When working on the product, do not pick up the unit by the output tray, which will detach under the weight of the product.

Precautions when replacing parts

Learn about precautions when replacing parts.

Precautions when replacing parts

Learn about precautions when replacing parts.

Precautions when assembling and disassembling

- Use only HP approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, product name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct. Failure to do so might result in damage to the machine, circuit overload, fire, or electric shock.
- Do not make unauthorized changes or additions to the printer. Unauthorized changes might cause the printer to malfunction and create electric shock or fire hazards.
- Use caution when dismantling the unit. Take note of the location of each screw or other part. This printer contains different kinds of screws. Using the wrong screw might lead to system failure, short circuit or electric shock.
- Do not disassemble the laser scanner assembly. Once the laser scanner assembly is disassembled, dust might enter the mirror chamber and will seriously degrade print quality. There are no serviceable parts inside the laser scanner assembly.
- Regularly check the condition of the power cable, plug and socket. Bad contacts might lead to overheating and fire. Damaged cables might lead to electric shock or unit malfunction.

Precautions when handling PCAs

Static electricity might damage a PCA. Use approved, anti-static precautions when handling or storing a PCA. Service personnel should use grounded ESD straps and/or mats when handling PCAs.

- Precautions when moving and storing a PCA
  - Keep PCA in a conductive case, anti-static bag, or wrapped in aluminum foil.
  - Do not store a PCA where it is exposed to direct sunlight.
- Precautions when replacing a PCA
  - Disconnect power cables before disconnecting other cables.
  - Do not touch any soldered connections, connector terminals, or other electronic parts when handling insulated parts.
- Precautions when checking a PCA
  - Touch a grounded area of the printer chassis to discharge static electric charge before touching a PCA.
  - Do not touch a PCA with bare hands or metal objects. Doing so might create a short circuit or cause electric shock. Use caution when handling a PCA with moving parts such as sensors, motors, or lamps, as they might become very hot.

- Use caution when fitting and removing screws. Watch for hidden screens. Make sure that the correct screw is used and make sure that when toothed washers are removed, they are refitted in their original positions.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Releasing plastic latches

Many of the parts are held in place with plastic latches. The latches might easily break. Be careful when releasing them . To remove such parts, press the hook end of the latch away from the part to which it is latched.

Precautions when handling PCA

Static electric might damage a PCA. Use approved, anti-static precautions when handling or storing a PCA. Service personnel should use grounded ESD straps and/or mats when handling PCAs.

- Precautions when moving and storing a PCA
  - Keep PCA in a conductive case, anti-static bag, or wrapped in aluminum foil.
  - Do not store a PCA where it is exposed to direct sunlight.
- Precautions when replacing a PCA
  - Disconnect power cables before disconnecting other cables.
  - Do not touch any soldered connections, connector terminals, or other electronic parts when handling insulated parts.
- Precautions when checking a PCA
  - Touch a grounded area of the printer chassis to discharge static electric charge before touching a PCA.
  - Do not touch a PCA with bare hands or metal objects. Doing so might create a short circuit or cause electric shock. Use caution when handling a PCA with moving parts such as sensors, motors, or lamps, as they might become very hot.
  - Use caution when fitting and removing screws. Watch for hidden screens. Make sure that the correct screw is used and make sure that when toothed washers are removed, they are refitted in their original positions.
  - Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Releasing plastic latches

Learn about releasing plastic latches.

Many of the parts are held in place with plastic latches. The latches can break easily; release them carefully. To remove such parts, press the hook end of the latch away from the part to which it is latched.

Before performing service

Learn what to do before performing service.

- Remove all paper from the product.
- Turn off the power using the power button.
- Unplug the power cable and interface cable or cables.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.
- Remove the toner cartridges.
- Remove the Tray 2 cassette.

ESD precautions

Learn the importance of electrostatic discharge.

⚠ CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

After performing service

Learn what to do after performing service.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post-service test

Perform the following tests to verify that the repair or replacement was successful:

Print-quality test

Learn about the print-quality test.

1. Verify that you have completed the necessary reassembly steps.
2. Make sure that the tray contains clean, unmarked paper.
3. Attach the power cord and interface cable or interface cables, and then turn on the product.
4. Print a configuration page.
5. Print a print quality page, and then verify that there are no lines, streaks, banding, or other print quality defects.
6. Send a print job from the host computer, and then verify that the output meets expectations.

Order parts by authorized service providers

Find information about ordering parts and supplies for the printer.

Ordering

Order parts by authorized service providers.

Table 6-22 Ordering

Item or provider	Description
Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order parts from authorized service providers	www.hp.com/buy/parts or partsurfer.hp.com
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	To access, in a supported web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP SureSupply web site, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies.

Orderable parts

Not all of the parts shown in the exploded assembly diagrams are orderable parts.

Refer to the tables following the diagrams or the alphabetical/numerical parts lists to determine if a part is orderable.

Parts, diagrams, removal and replacement (inner finisher)

Learn about parts, diagrams, removal and replacement (inner finisher)

NOTE: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

Parts and diagrams (inner finisher)

View inner finisher exploded diagrams and parts lists.

Inner finisher (main)

Parts diagram and parts list for the inner finisher (main).

Figure 6-50 Inner finisher (main)

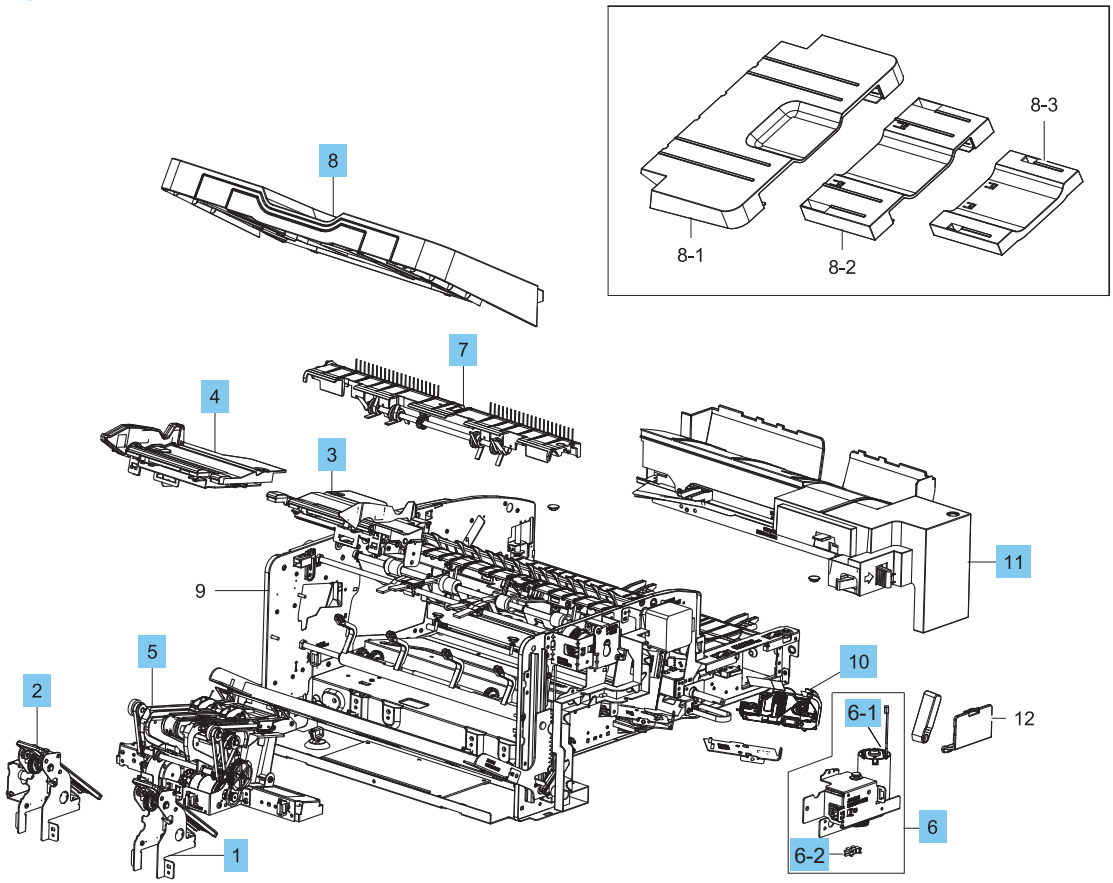


Table 6-23 Inner finisher (main)

Ref	Part number	Description	Qty
Complete	Y1G00-67902	Inner finisher whole unit	1
1	JC90-01310A	Front paper support	1
2	JC90-01311A	Rear paper support	1
3	JC82-00899A	Front tamper unit assembly	1
4	JC82-00900A	Rear tamper unit assembly	1
5	SS456-61001	Ejector	1
6	JC90-01334B	Output tray motor assembly	1
6-1	JC31-00178B	Output tray motor	1
6-2	0604-001393	Output tray motor sensor	1
7	JC90-01336A	Sub paddle unit	1
8	JC90-01337B	Output tray	1
10	JC81-07408B	Staple cartridge	1
11	JC90-01343B	Punch cover	1
Not shown	JC39-02169A	Main interface harness	1

Inner finisher (covers)

Parts diagram and parts list for the inner finisher (covers)

Figure 6-51 Inner finisher (covers)

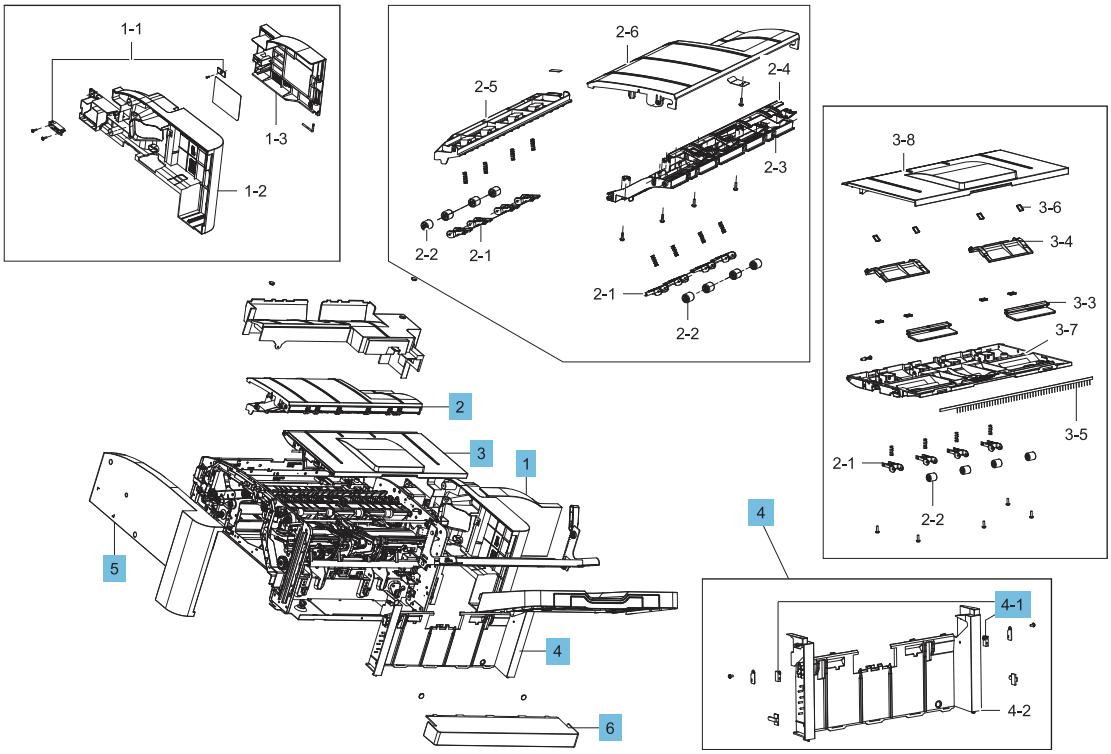


Table 6-24 Inner finisher (covers)

Ref	Part number	Description	Qty
1	JC90-01321B	Front cover	1
2	JC90-01322B	Middle cover	1
3	JC90-01323B	Top cover	1
4	JC90-01324B	Left cover	1
4-1	JC82-01039A	Output tray top of stack sensor kit	1
5	JC63-04750B	Rear cover	1
6	JC63-04792B	PCA cover	1

Inner finisher (main paddle unit, entrance unit, exit unit, paper holding unit, and output tray unit)

Parts diagram and parts list for the inner finisher (main paddle unit, entrance unit, exit unit, paper holding unit, and output tray unit).

Figure 6-52 Inner finisher (main paddle unit, entrance unit, exit unit, paper holding unit, and output tray unit)

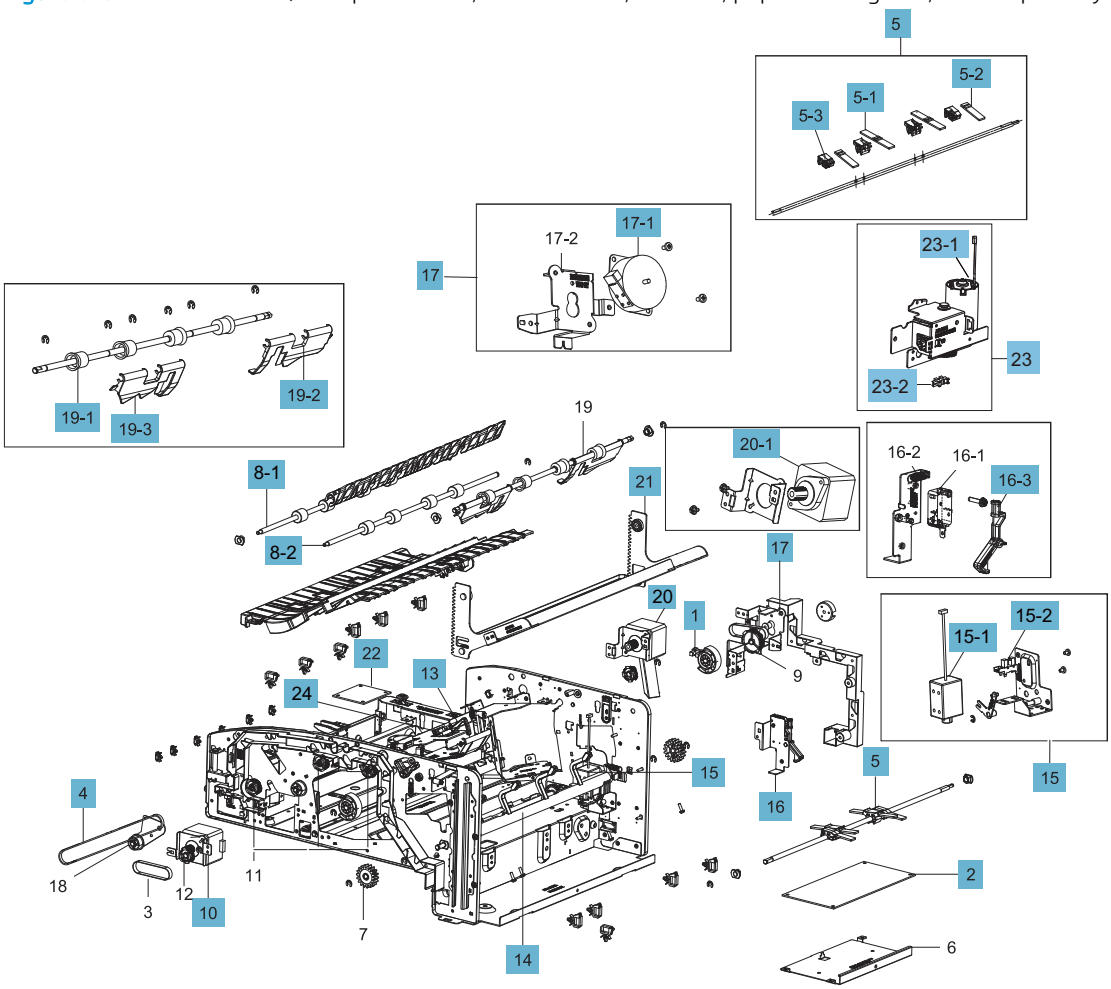


Table 6-25 Inner finisher (main paddle unit, entrance unit, exit unit, paper holding unit, and output tray unit)

Ref	Part number	Description	Qty
1	0604-001393	Main paddle home sensor	2
2	JC92-02774B	Main PCA	1
4	6602-003644	Entrance motor timing belt	1
5	JC82-01038A	Paddle kit	1
5-1	JC63-04957A	Paddle A	2
5-2	JC63-04958A	Paddle B	2
5-3	JC81-07560A	Paddle holder	4
8-1	JC66-04243A	Entrance roller	1
8-2	JC66-04243A	Middle roller	1
10	JC90-01344A	Entrance motor assembly	1
13	JC66-04199A	Exit sensor actuator	1
14	JC90-01313A	Paper holding actuator	1
15	JC90-01314A	Paper holding kit	1
15-1	JC33-00037A	Paper holding solenoid	1
15-2	0604-001393	Paper holding sensor	1
16	JC90-01320A	Output tray lower limit switch	1
16-3	JC66-04200A	Output tray lower limit switch actuator	1
17	JC93-01001A	Main paddle motor assembly	1
17-1	JC31-00149A	Main paddle motor	1
19-1	JC66-04244A	Exit roller	1
19-2	JC61-07449A	Front compile guide	1
19-3	JC61-07450A	Rear compile guide	1
20	JC90-01331A	Exit motor assembly	1
20-1	JC31-00169B	Exit motor	1
21	JC90-01319A	Output tray frame	1
22	JC92-02780A	Rear joint PCA	1
23 shown	JC90-01334B	Output tray motor assembly	1
23-1	JC31-00178B	Output tray motor	1
23-2	0604-001393	Output tray motor sensor	1
24	0604-001415	Exit sensor	1

Inner finisher (paper support unit)

Parts diagram and parts list for the inner finisher (paper support unit).

Figure 6-53 Inner finisher (paper support unit)

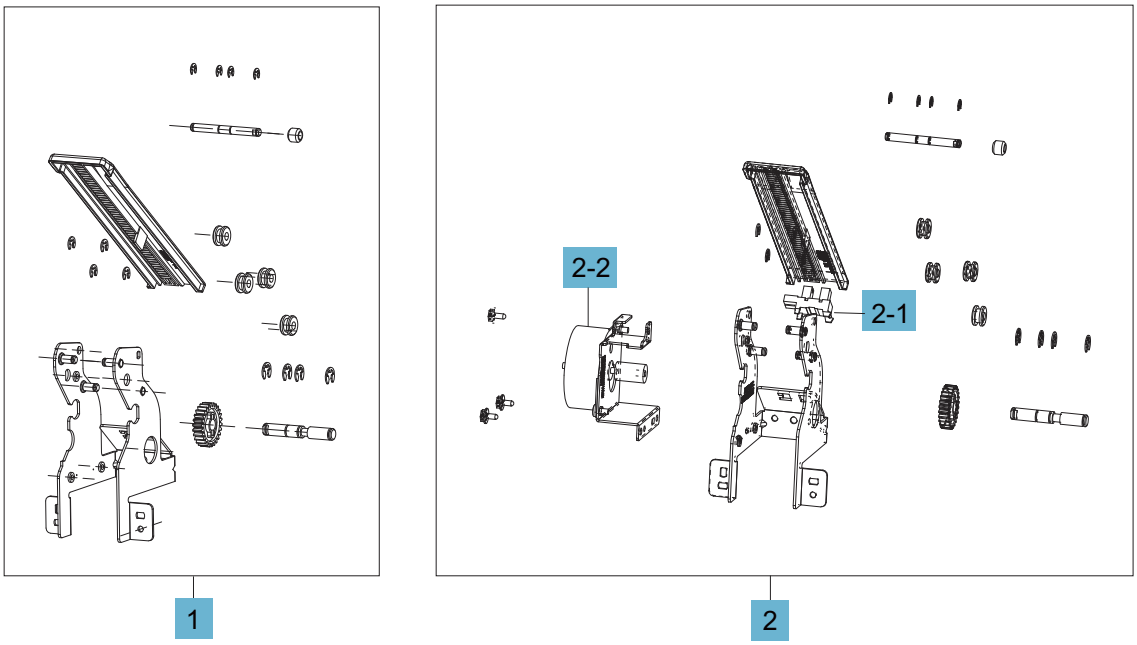


Table 6-26 Inner finisher (paper support unit)

Ref	Part number	Description	Qty
1	JC90-01310A	Front paper support	1
2	JC90-01311A	Rear paper support	1
2-1	0604-001393	Paper support home sensor	1
2-2	JC93-00802B	Paper suport motor assembly	1

Inner finisher (tamper unit)

Parts diagram and parts list for the inner finisher (tamper unit).

Figure 6-54 Inner finisher (tamper unit)

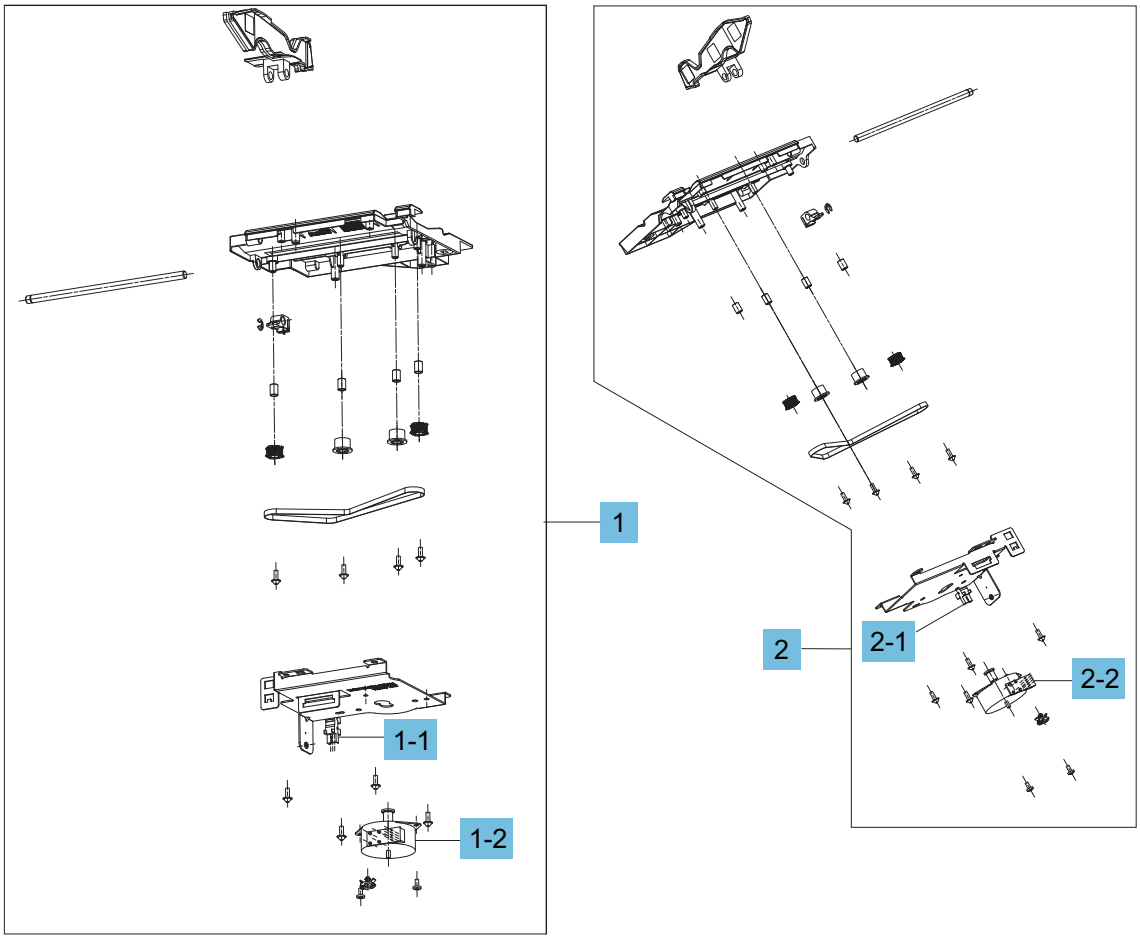


Table 6-27 Inner finisher (tamper unit)

Ref	Part number	Description	Qty
1	JC82-00900A	Rear tamper unit	1
1-1	0604-001393	Rear tamper home sensor	1
1-2	JC93-01001A	Rear tamper motor assembly	1
2	JC82-00899A	Front tamper unit	1
2-1	0604-001393	Front tamper home sensor	1
2-2	JC93-01001A	Front tamper motor assembly	1

Inner finisher (stapler unit, end fence unit)

Parts diagram and parts list for the inner finisher (stapler unit, end fence unit).

Figure 6-55 Inner finisher (stapler unit, end fence unit)

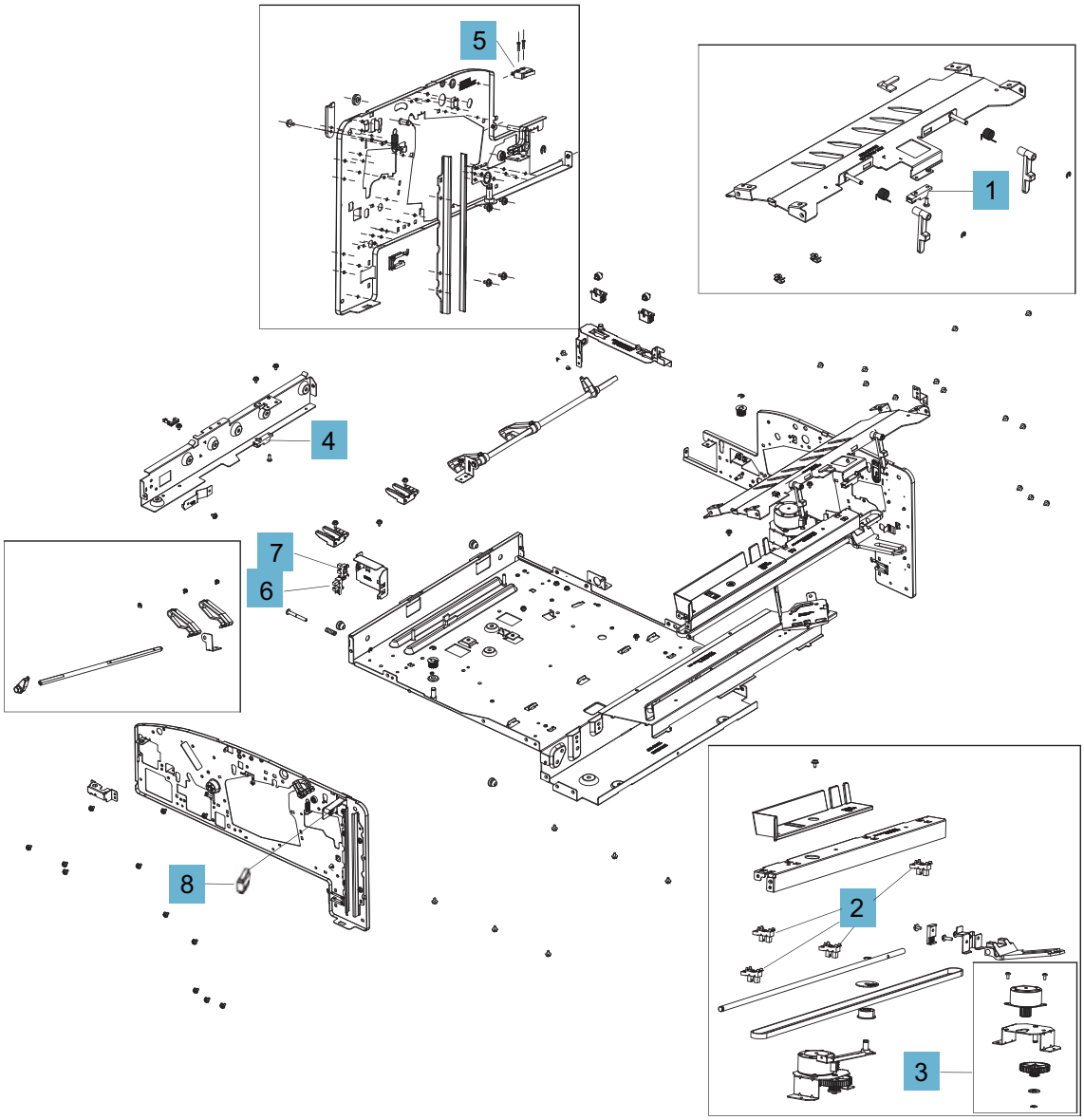


Table 6-28 Inner finisher (stapler unit, end fence unit)

Ref	Part number	Description	Qty
1	0604-001381	End fence sensor	1
2	0604-001393	Stapler position sensor	1
3	JC93-00999A	Stapler position motor	1
4	0604-001381	Punch waste full sensor	1
5	JC39-01610A	Top cover switch	1
6	0604-001393	Finisher docking sensor	1
7	0604-001393	Punch waste box sensor	1
8	JC39-01610A	Compile cover switch	1

Inner finisher (stapler assembly, entrance unit)

Parts diagram and parts list for the inner finisher (stapler assembly, entrance unit).

Figure 6-56 Inner finisher (stapler assembly, entrance unit)

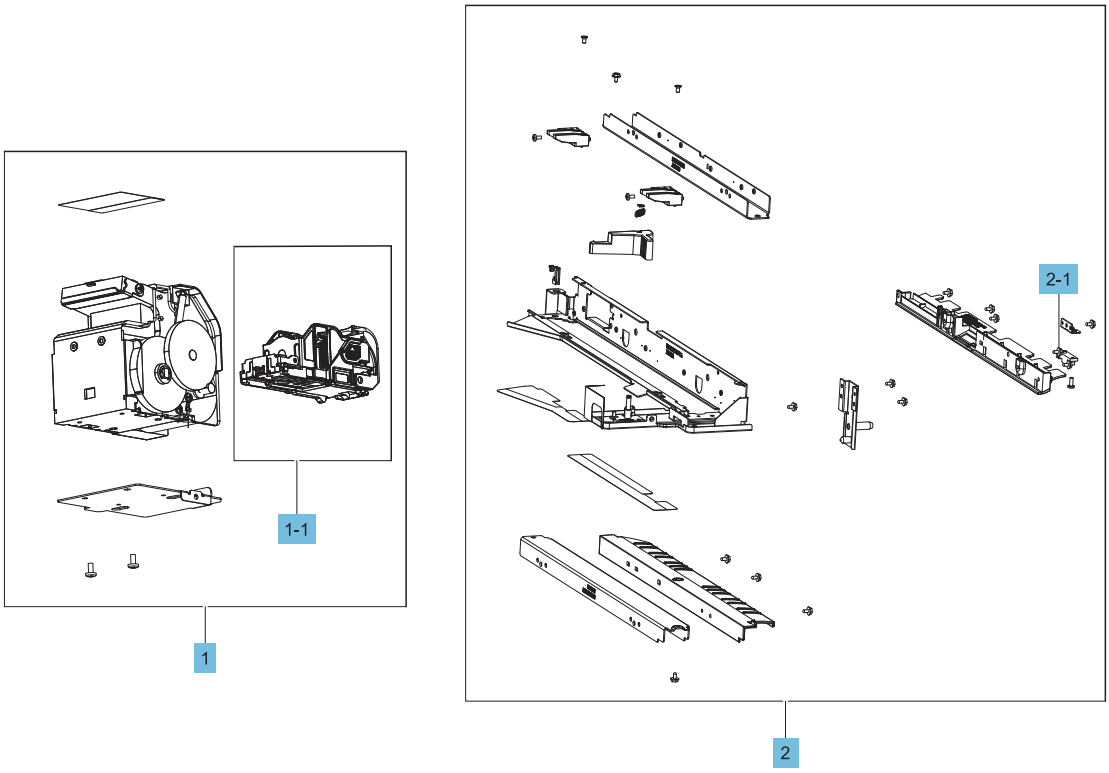


Table 6-29 Inner finisher (stapler assembly, entrance unit)

Ref	Part number	Description	Qty
1	JC59-00040A	Stapler assembly	1
1-1	JC81-07408B	Staple cartridge	1
2	JC90-01343B	Punch cover	1
2-1	0604-001381	Entrance sensor	1
Not shown	SS465-67001	SVC AS-PBA-HOLE PUNCH 2-4 HOLE	1
Not shown	SS466-67001	SVC AS-PBA-HOLE PUNCH SWEDISH	1
Not shown	SS467-67001	SVC AS-PBA-HOLE PUNCH 2-3	1

Inner finisher (ejector unit)

Parts diagram and parts list for the inner finisher (ejector unit).

Figure 6-57 Inner finisher (ejector unit)

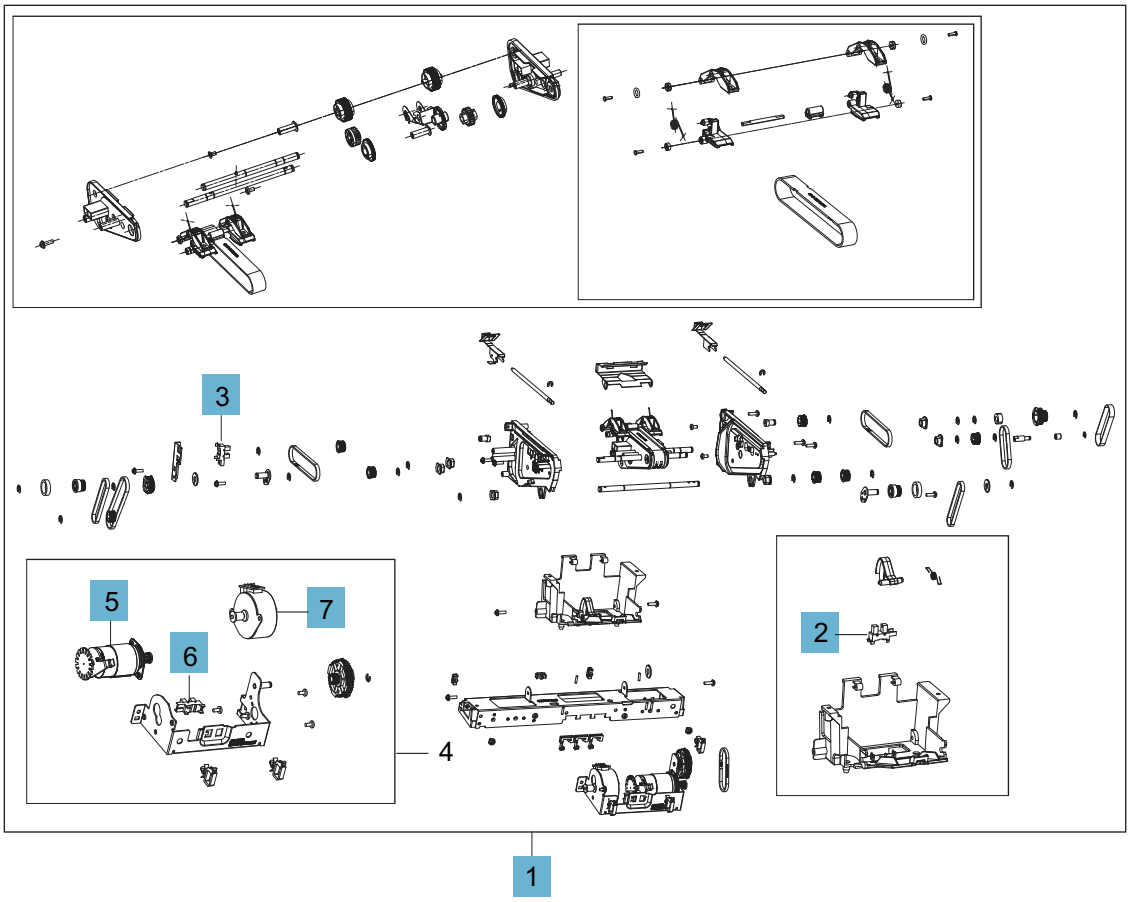


Table 6-30 Inner finisher (ejector unit)

Ref	Part number	Description	Qty
1	SS456-61001	Ejector	1
2	0604-001393	Ejector2 home sensor	1
3	0604-001393	Ejector1 home sensor	1
4	JC90-01309A	Ejector motor assembly	1
5	JC93-01168A	Ejector2 motor assembly	1
6	0604-001393	Ejector2 motor sensor	1
7	JC93-00998A	Ejector1 motor assembly	1

Covers

Removal and replacement: Front cover (C1)

Learn how to remove and replace the front cover.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-31 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01321B	Front cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

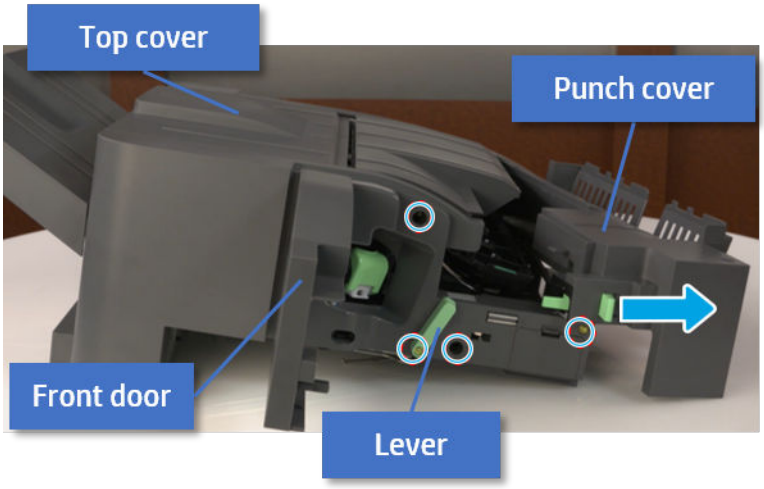
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-58 Remove the front cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear cover (C8)

Learn how to remove and replace the rear cover.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-32 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC63-04750B	Rear cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

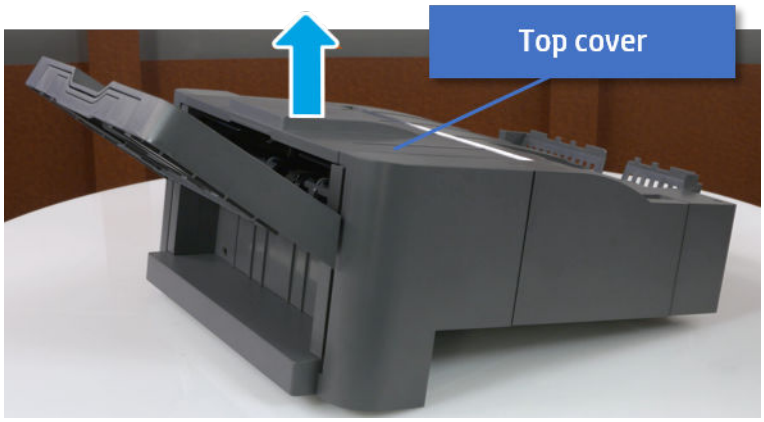
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

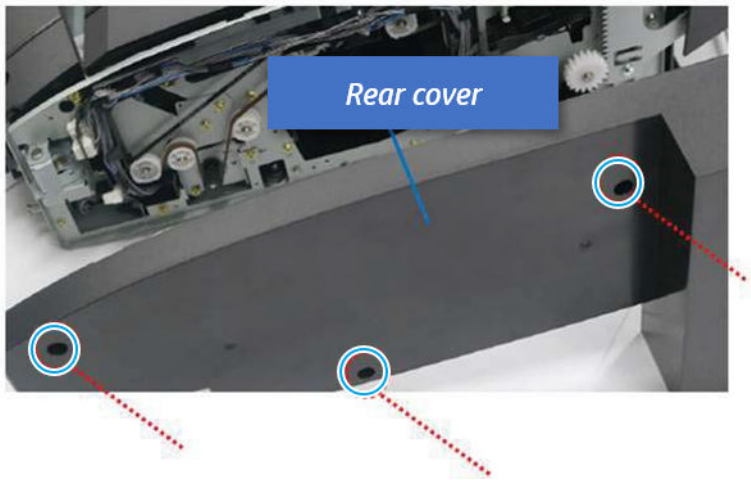
1. Open the top cover.

   Figure 6-59 Open the top cover

2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

   Figure 6-60 Remove the rear cover

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Middle cover (C3)

Learn how to remove and replace the middle cover.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-33 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01322B	Middle cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

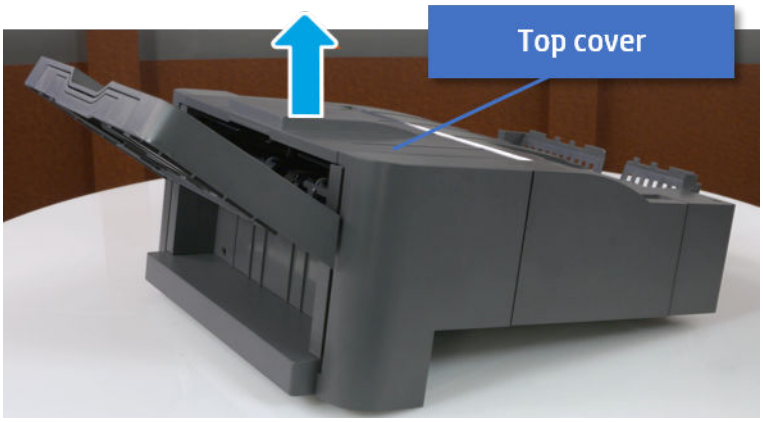
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

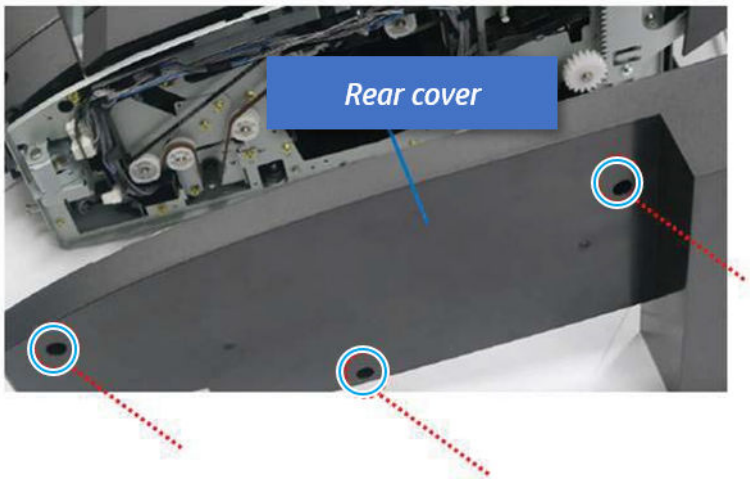
1. Open the top cover.

   Figure 6-61 Open the top cover

2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

   Figure 6-62 Remove the rear cover

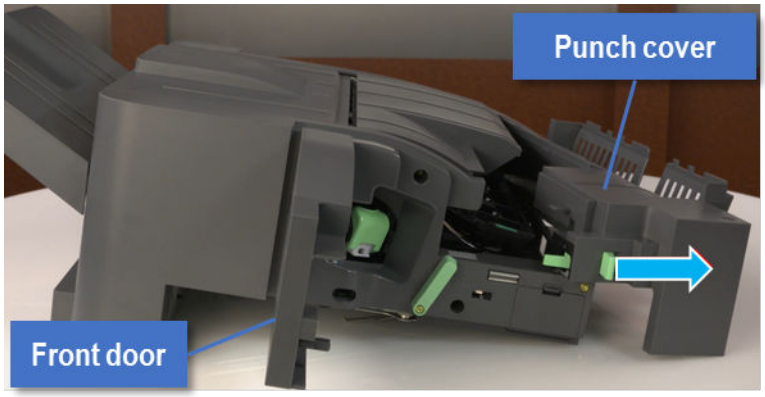
   

Remove the middle cover

Follow these steps to remove the middle cover.

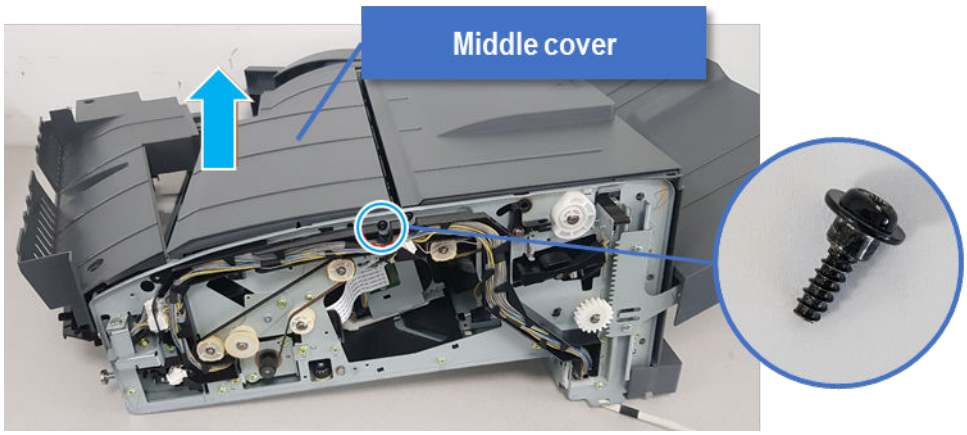
1. Open the front door and then open the punch cover.

Figure 6-63 Open the front door and puch cover.



2. Remove left-side one screw at the rear of the inner finisher, and then remove the middle cover by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

Figure 6-64 Remove the middle cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Top cover (C2)

Learn how to remove and replace the top cover.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-34 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01323B	Top cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

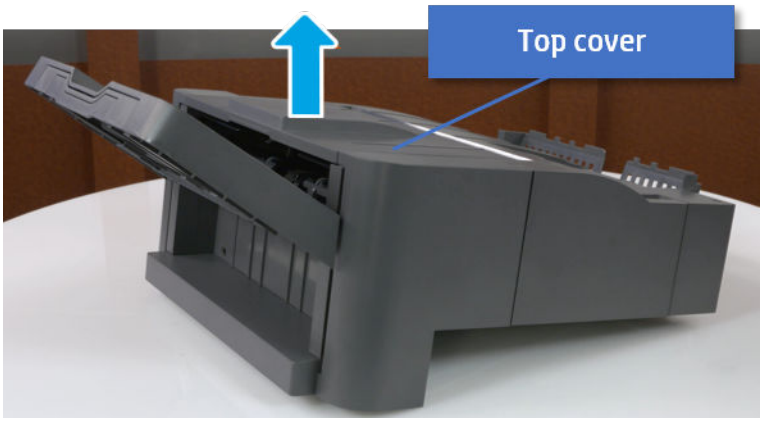
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

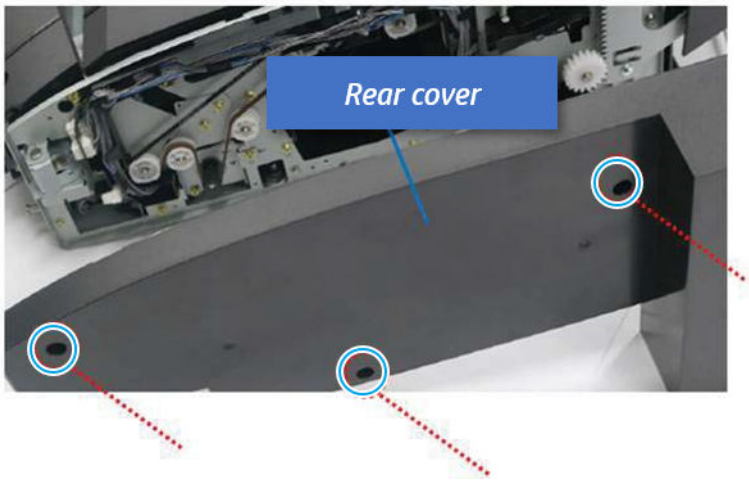
1. Open the top cover.

   Figure 6-65 Open the top cover

2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

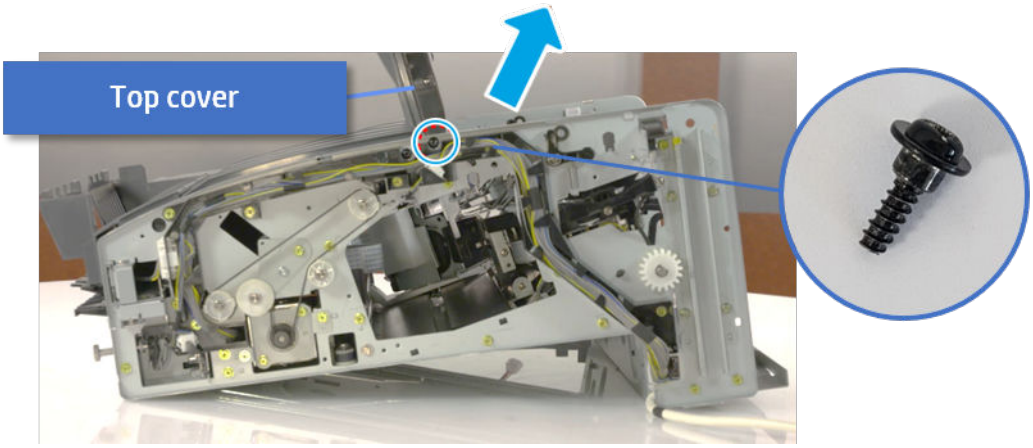
   Figure 6-66 Remove the rear cover

Remove the top cover

Follow these steps to remove the top cover.

Figure 6-67 Remove the top cover



▲ Remove one screw at the rear of the inner finisher, and then remove the top cover by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: PCA cover (C6)

Learn how to remove and replace the PCA cover.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-35 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC63-04792B	PCA cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

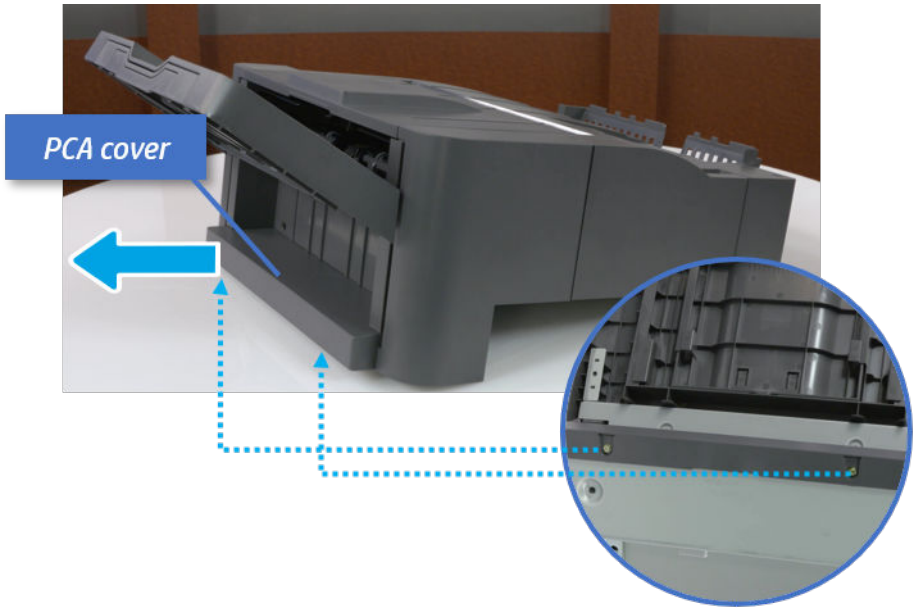
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-68 Remove the PCA cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left cover (C7)

Learn how to remove and replace the left cover.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-36 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01324B	Left cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

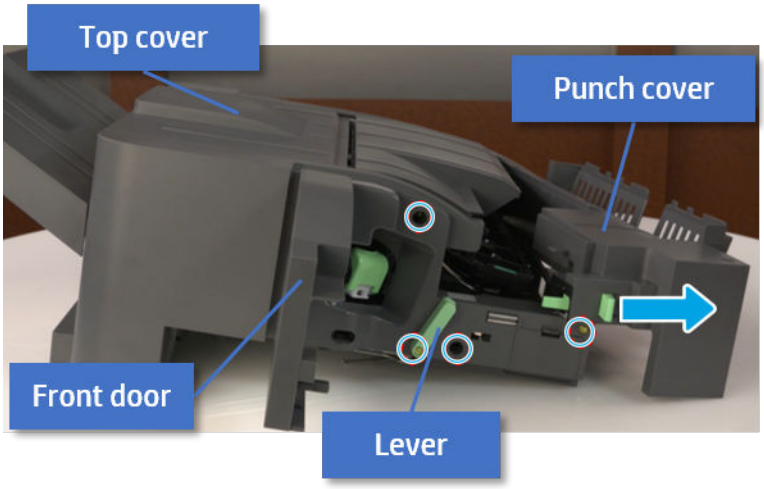
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-69 Remove the front cover

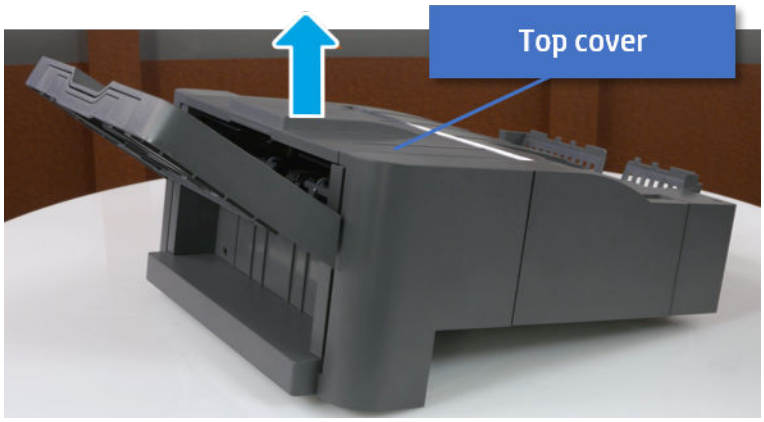


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

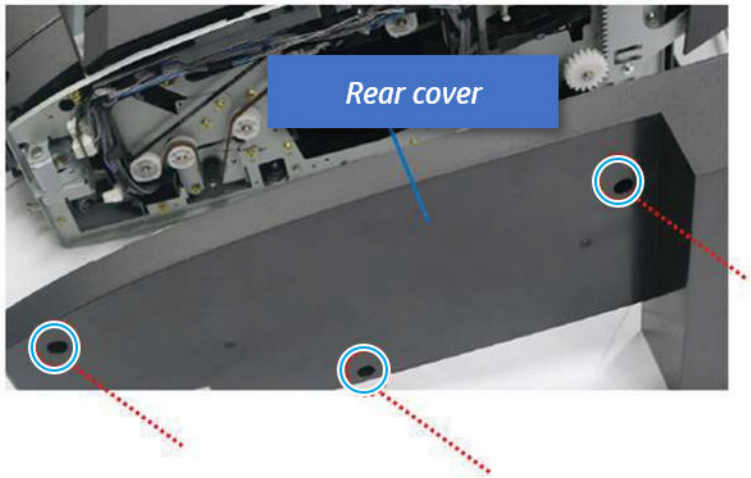
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-70 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-71 Remove the rear cover

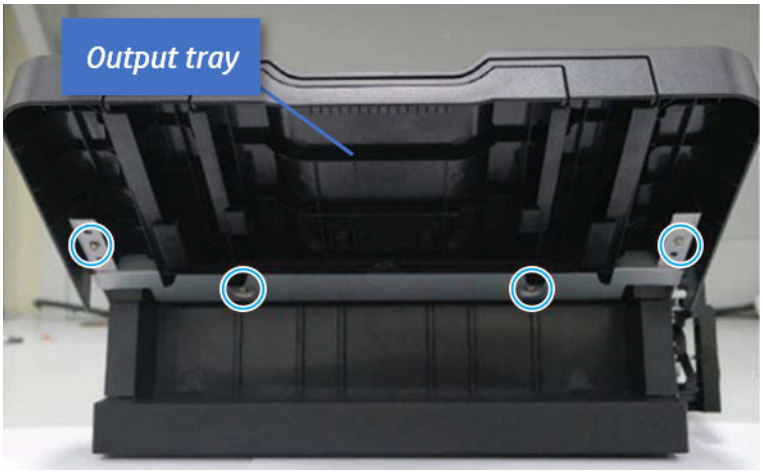


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-72 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

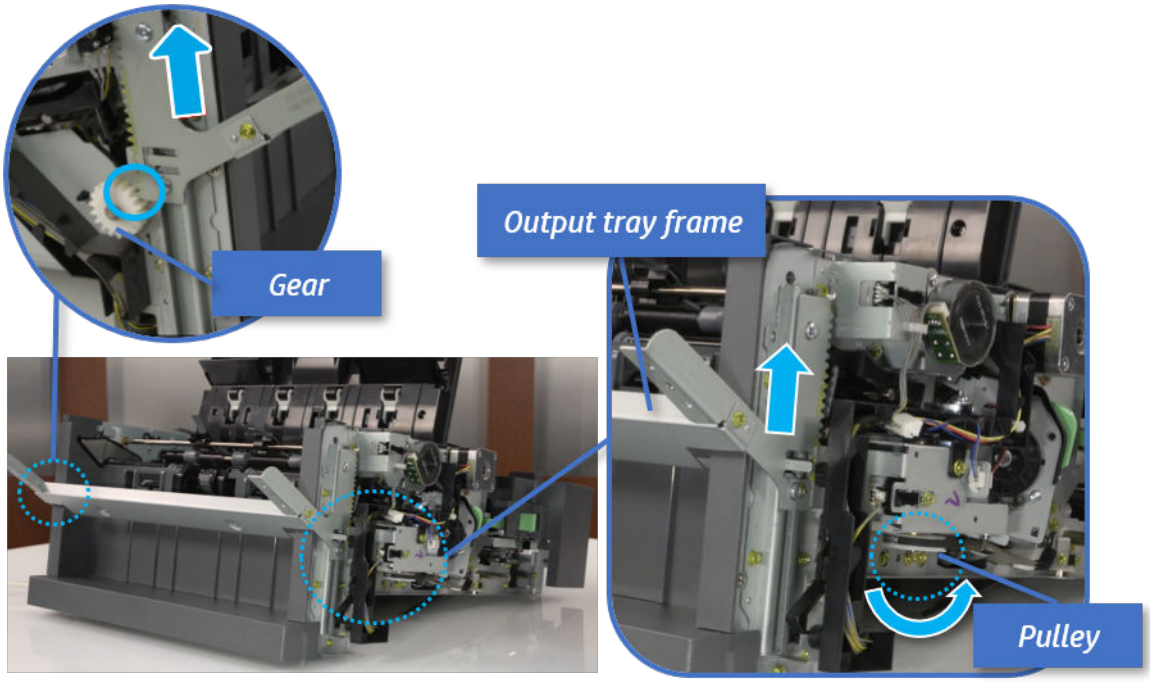
Figure 6-73 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

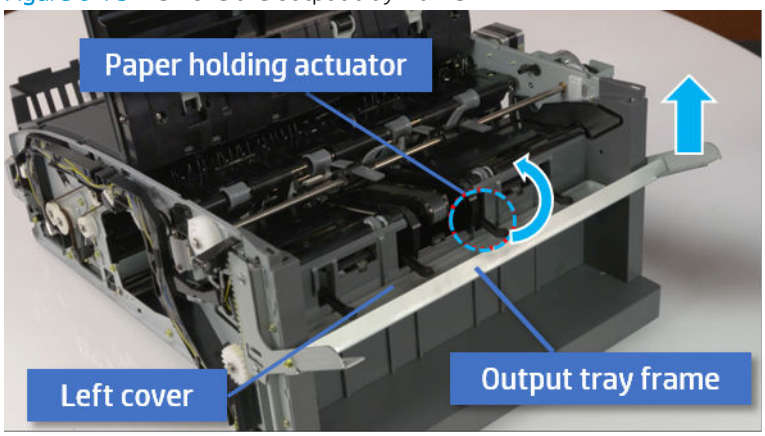
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-74 Remove the pulley



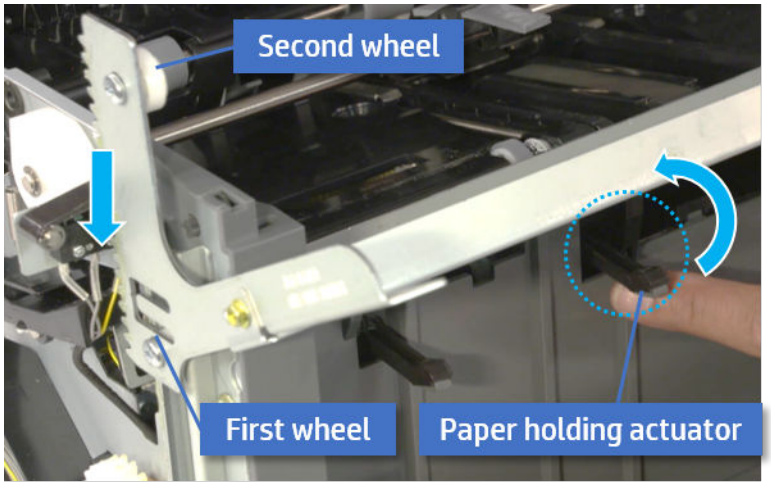
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-75 Remove the output tray frame



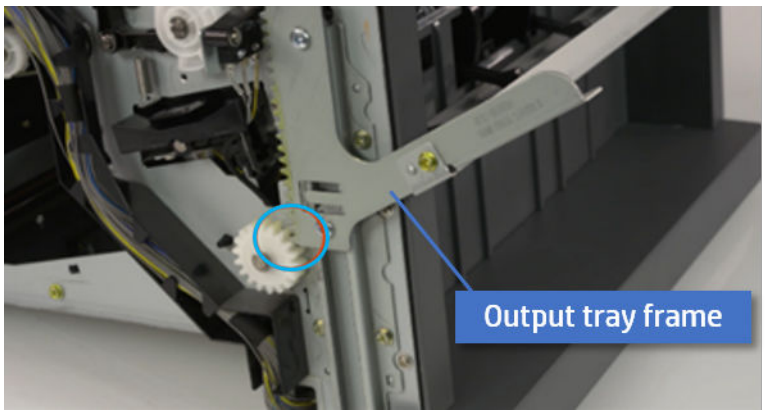
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

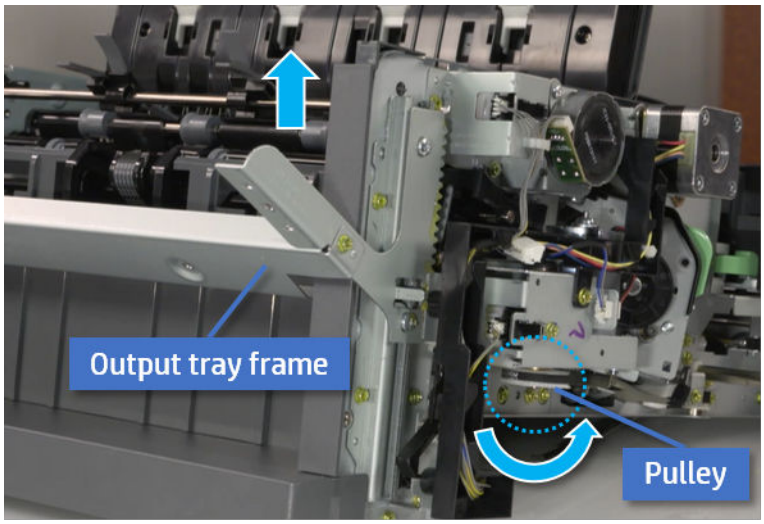


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

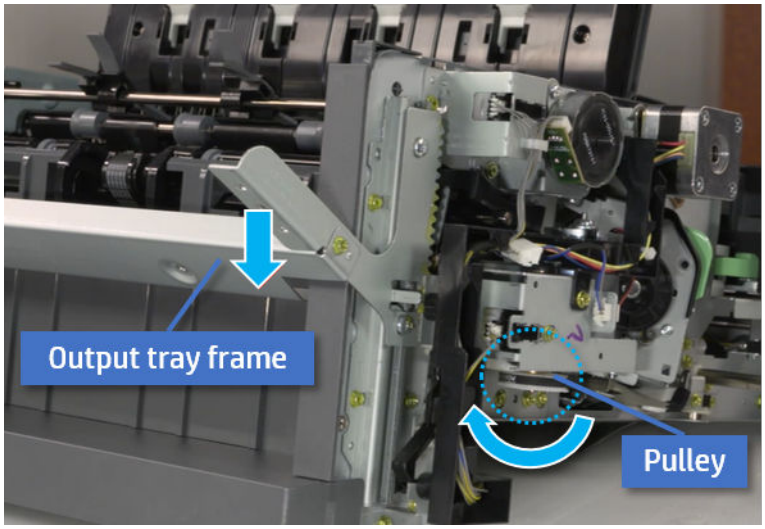
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

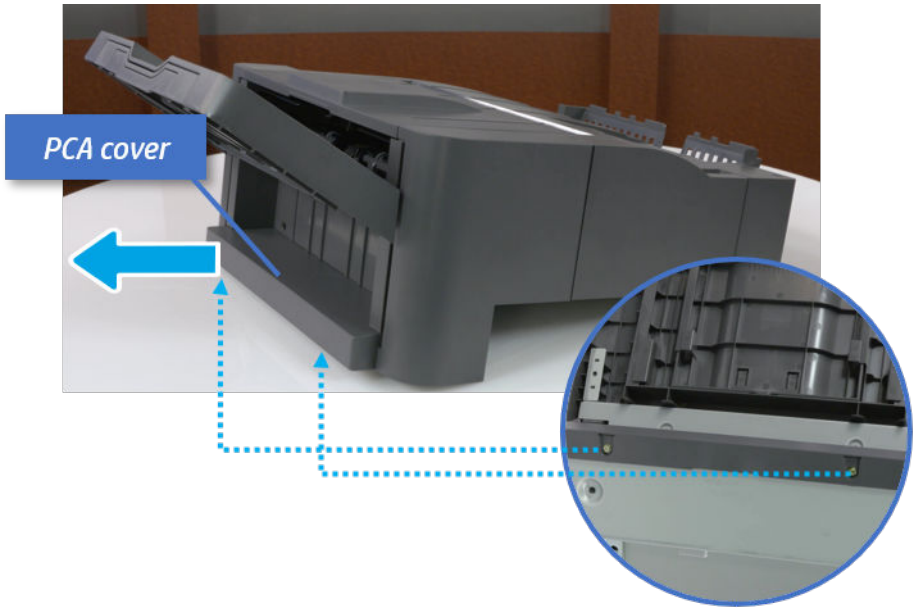


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-76 Remove the PCA cover

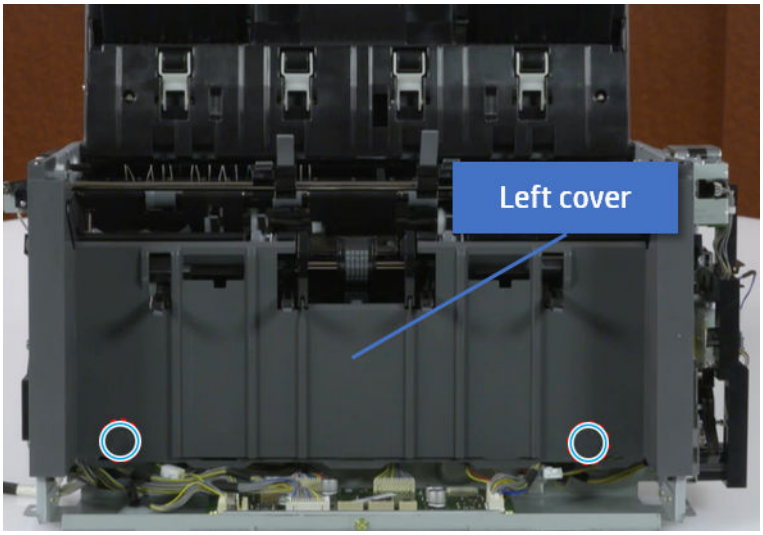


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

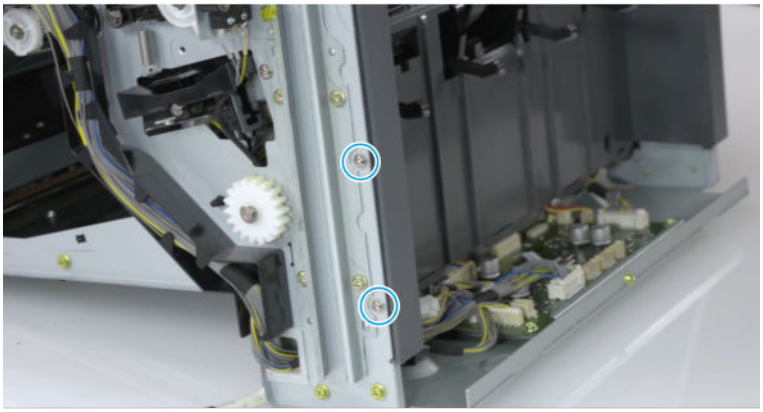
1. Remove two screws.

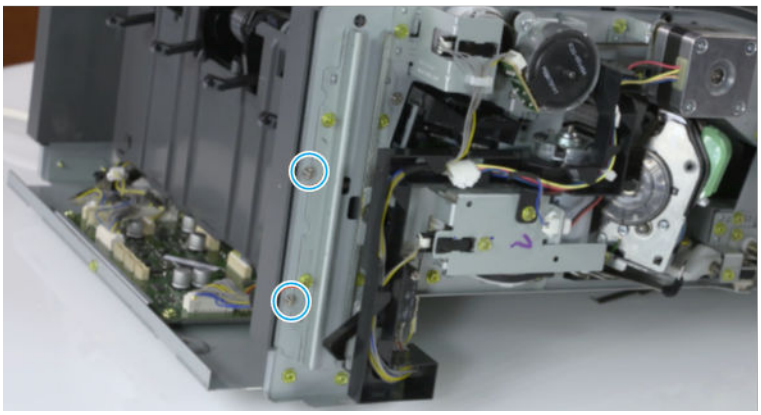
Figure 6-77 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

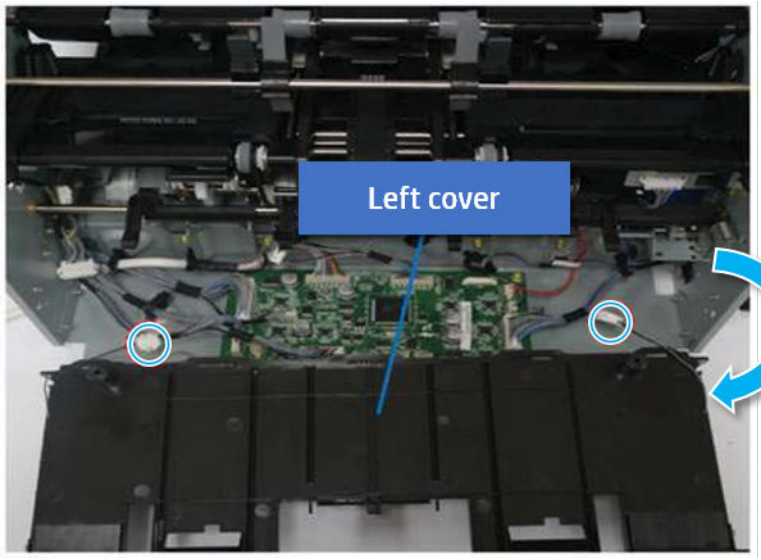
Figure 6-78 Remove four screws



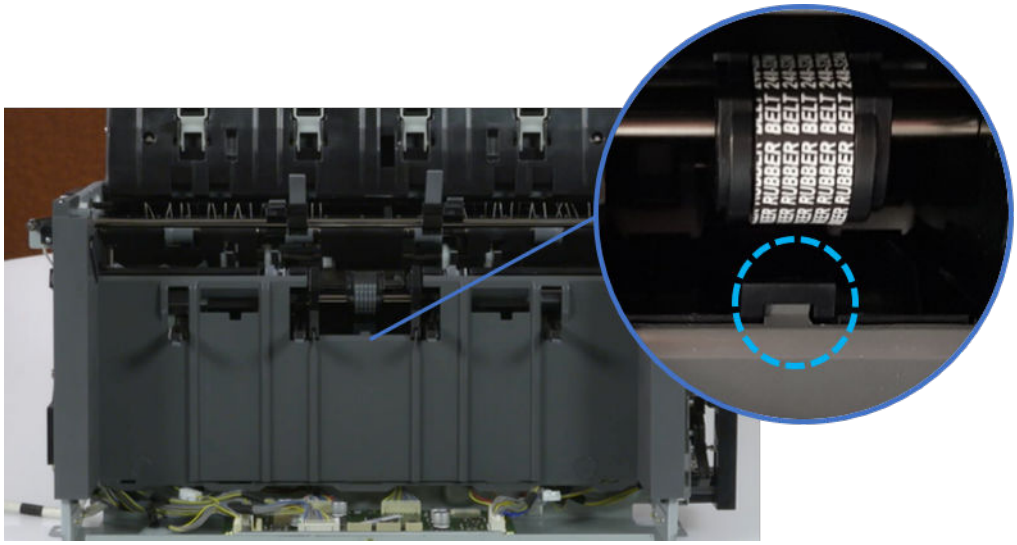


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-79 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Entrance unit

Removal and replacement: Entrance sensor (S1)

Learn how to remove and replace the entrance sensor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-37 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	Entrance sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

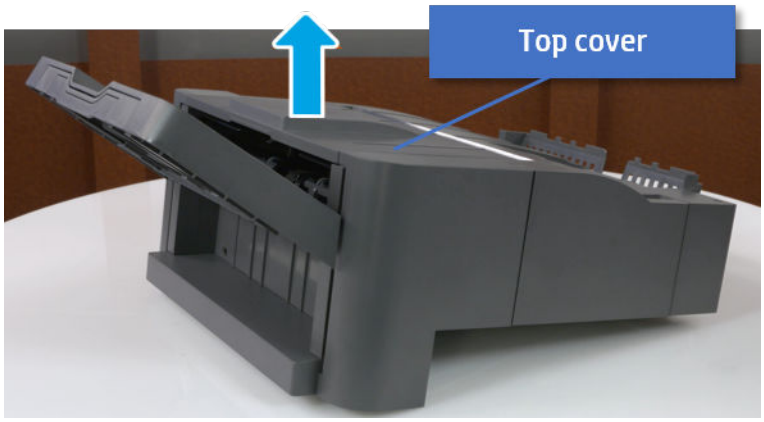
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

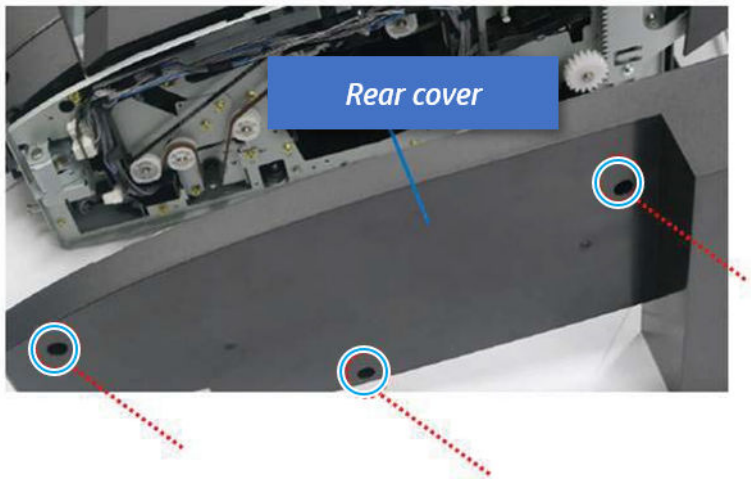
1. Open the top cover.

   Figure 6-80 Open the top cover

2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

   Figure 6-81 Remove the rear cover

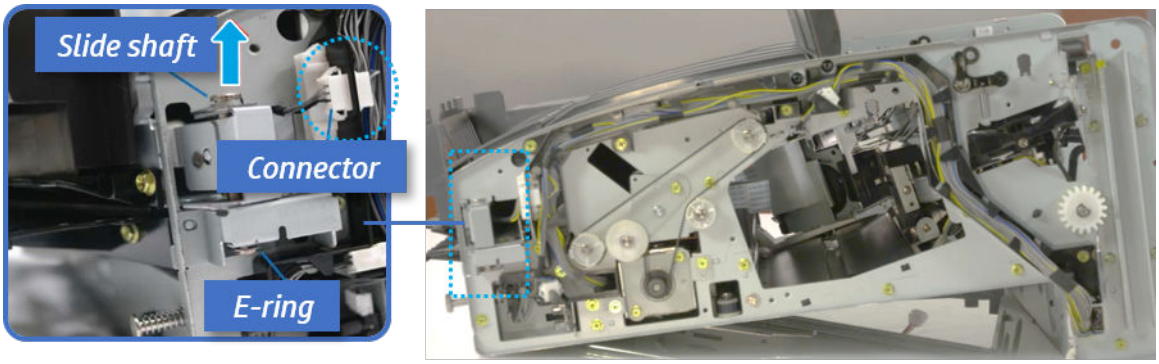
   

Remove the punch cover

Follow these steps to remove the punch cover.

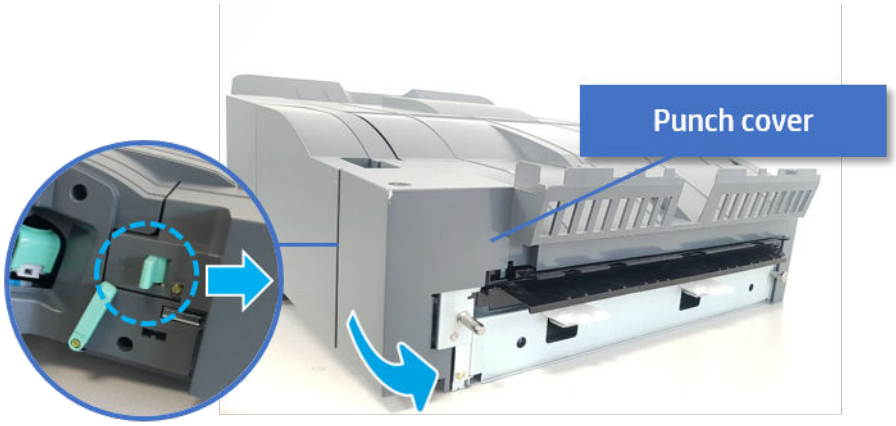
1. Unplug the connector. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the slide shaft at the rear of the inner finisher.

Figure 6-82 Remove the slide shaft



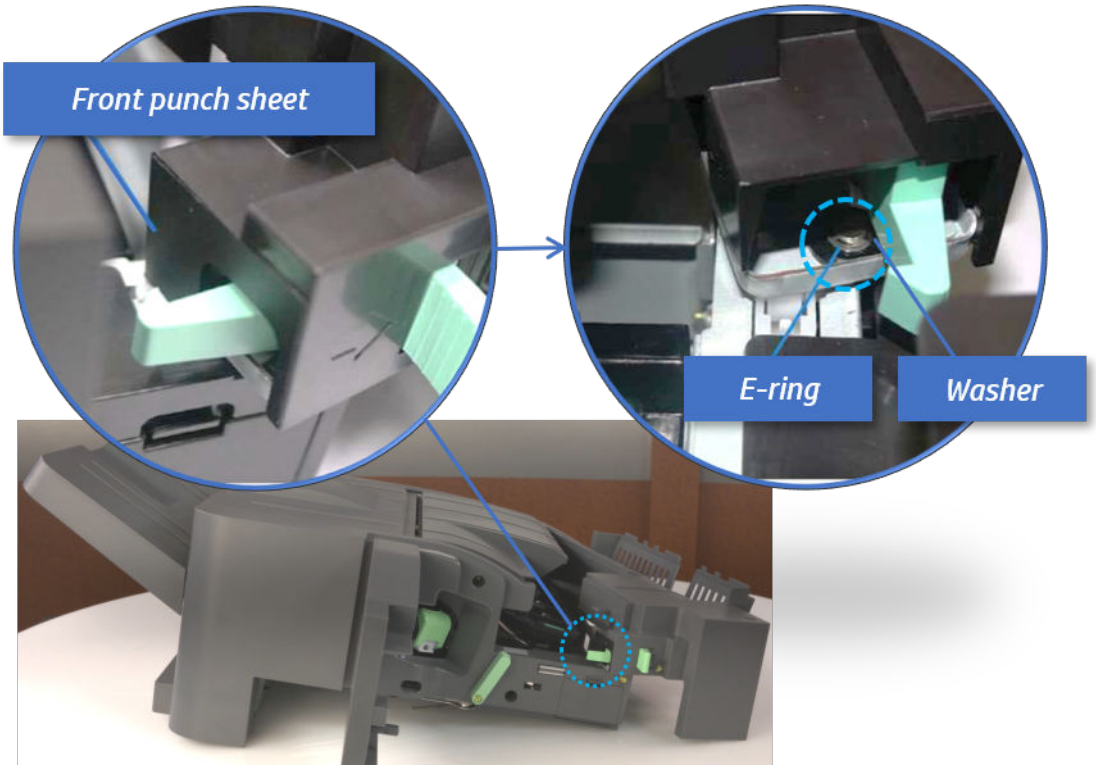
2. Open the punch cover.

Figure 6-83 Open the punch cover



3. Remove the front punch sheet, and then remove the e-ring and the washer. And then remove the punch cover.

Figure 6-84 Remove the punch cover

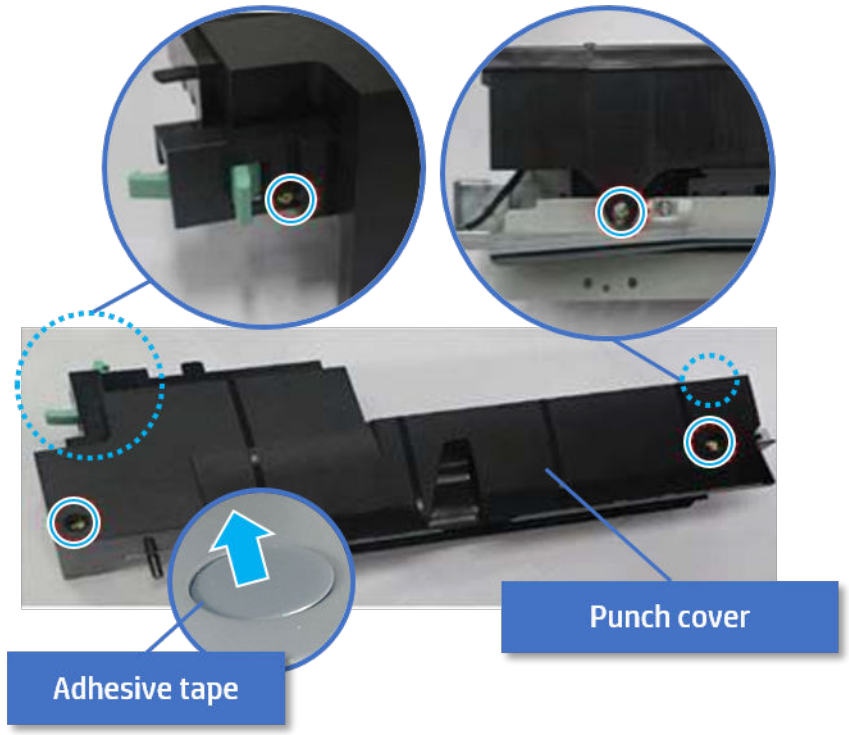


Remove the entrance sensor

Follow these steps to remove the entrance sensor.

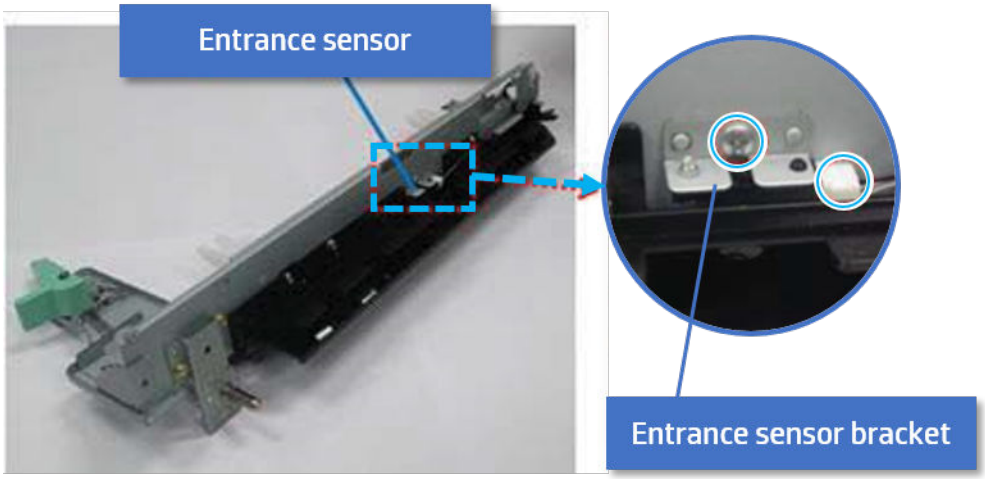
1. Loosen the adhesive tape around, and then remove four screws. And then remove the punch cover.

Figure 6-85 Remove the punch cover



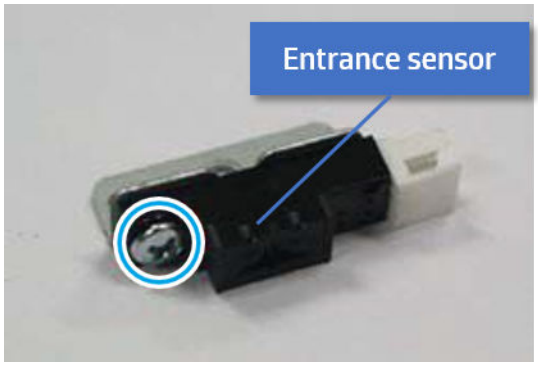
2. Remove one screw, unplug the connector, and then remove the entrance sensor bracket.

Figure 6-86 Remove the entrance sensor bracket



3. Remove one screw, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 6-87 Remove the entrance sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Entrance motor (M10)

Learn how to remove and replace the entrance motor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-38 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01344A	Entrance motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

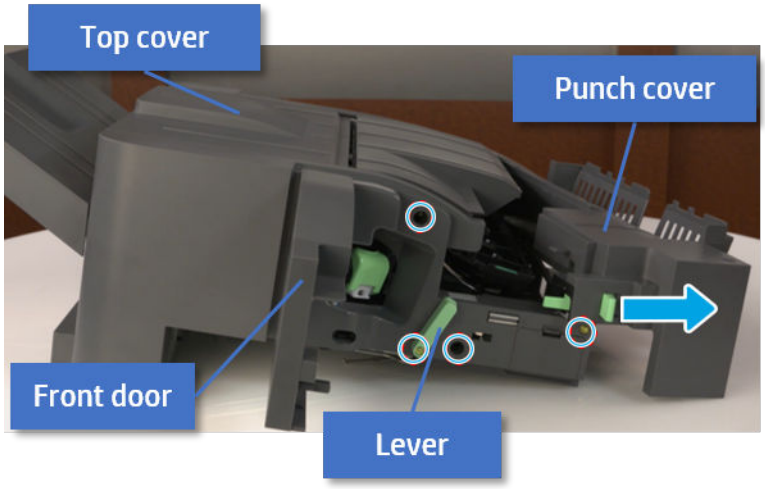
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-88 Remove the front cover

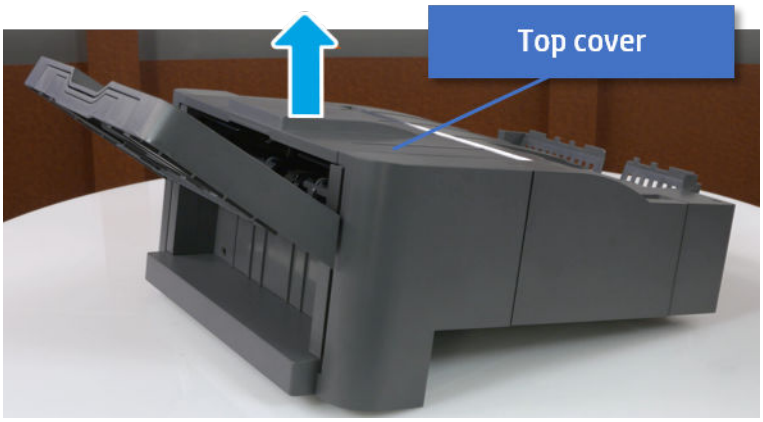


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

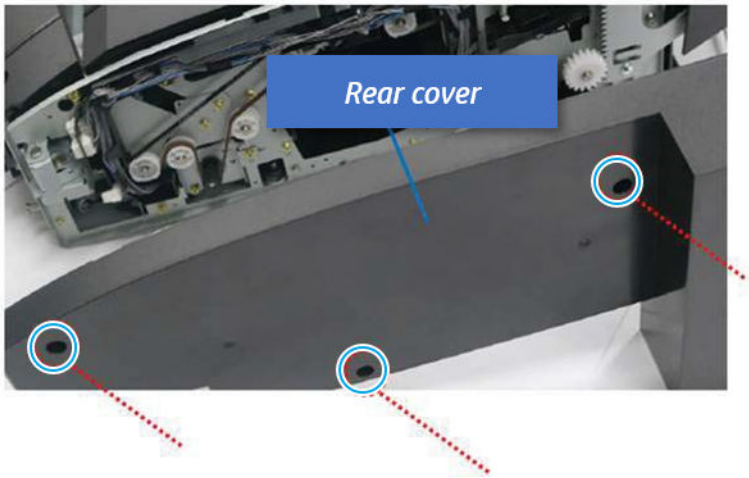
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-89 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-90 Remove the rear cover

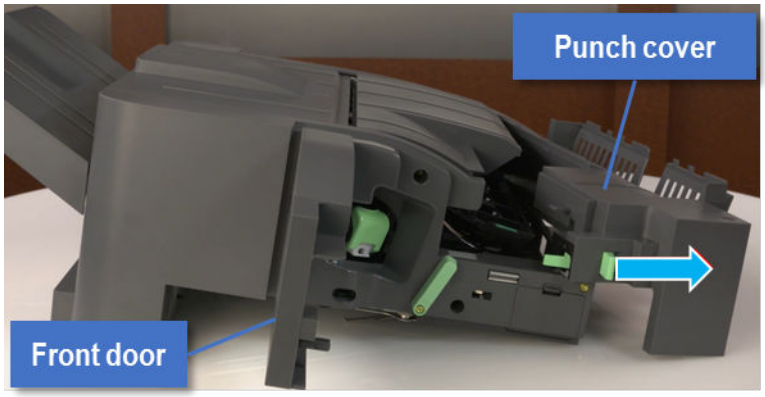


Remove the middle cover

Follow these steps to remove the middle cover.

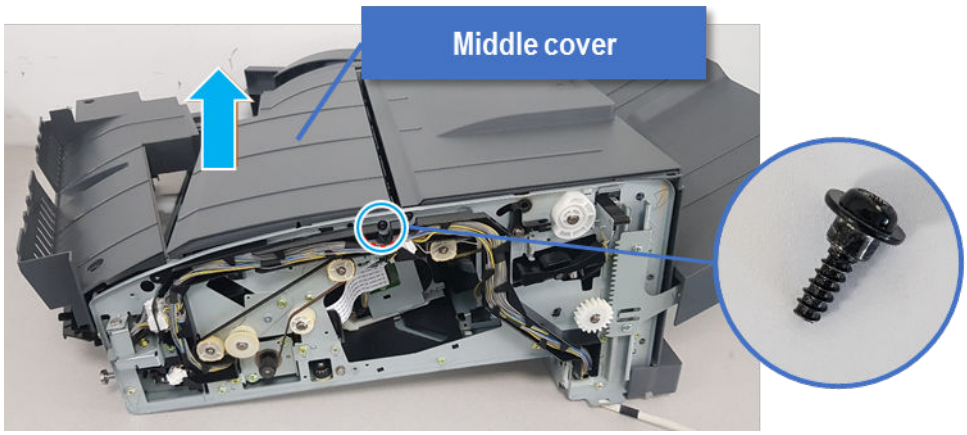
1. Open the front door and then open the punch cover.

Figure 6-91 Open the front door and puch cover.



2. Remove left-side one screw at the rear of the inner finisher, and then remove the middle cover by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

Figure 6-92 Remove the middle cover

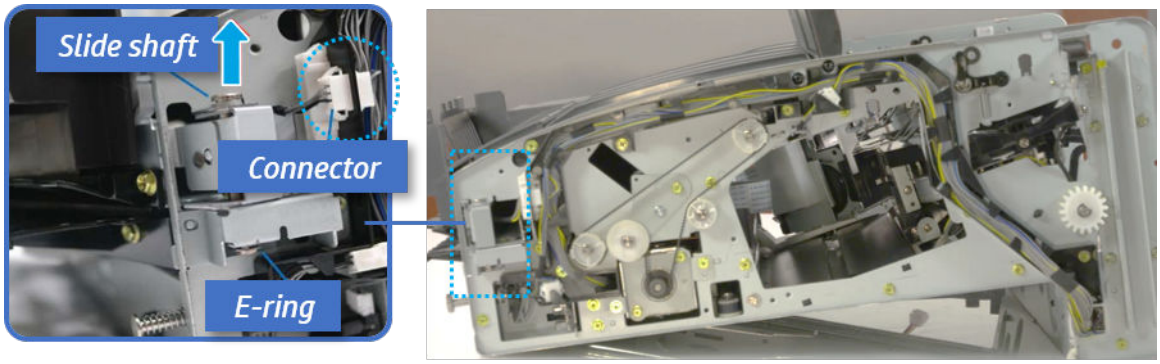


Remove the punch cover

Follow these steps to remove the punch cover.

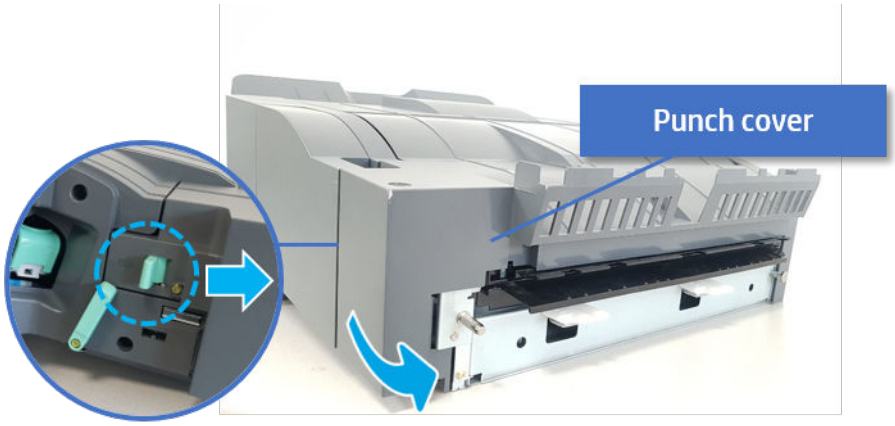
1. Unplug the connector. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the slide shaft at the rear of the inner finisher.

Figure 6-93 Remove the slide shaft



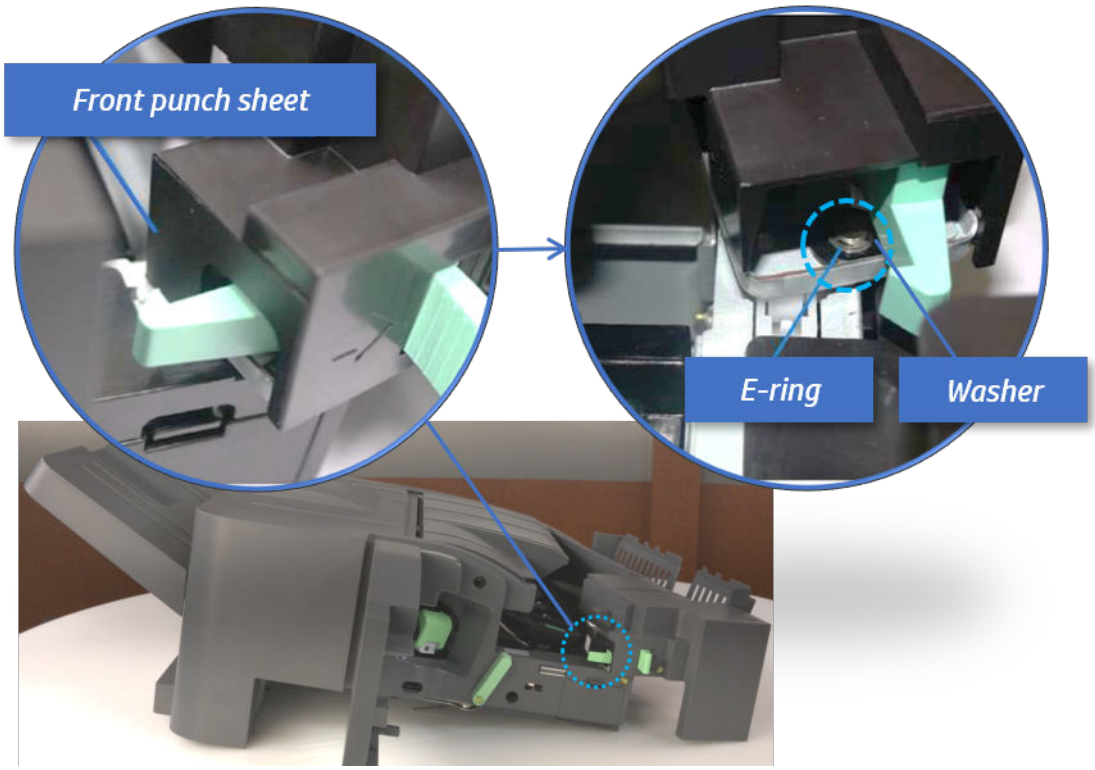
2. Open the punch cover.

Figure 6-94 Open the punch cover



3. Remove the front punch sheet, and then remove the e-ring and the washer. And then remove the punch cover.

Figure 6-95 Remove the punch cover

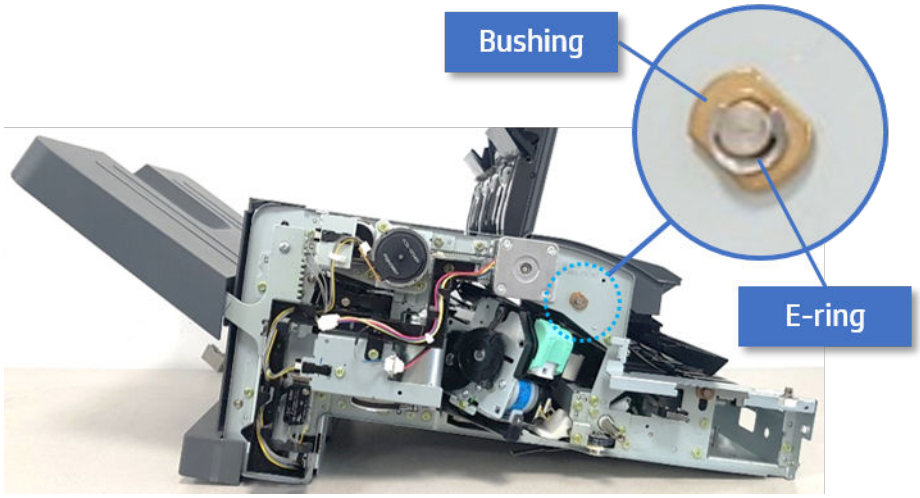


Remove the diverter guide and the middle roller

Follow these steps to remove the diverter guide and the middle roller.

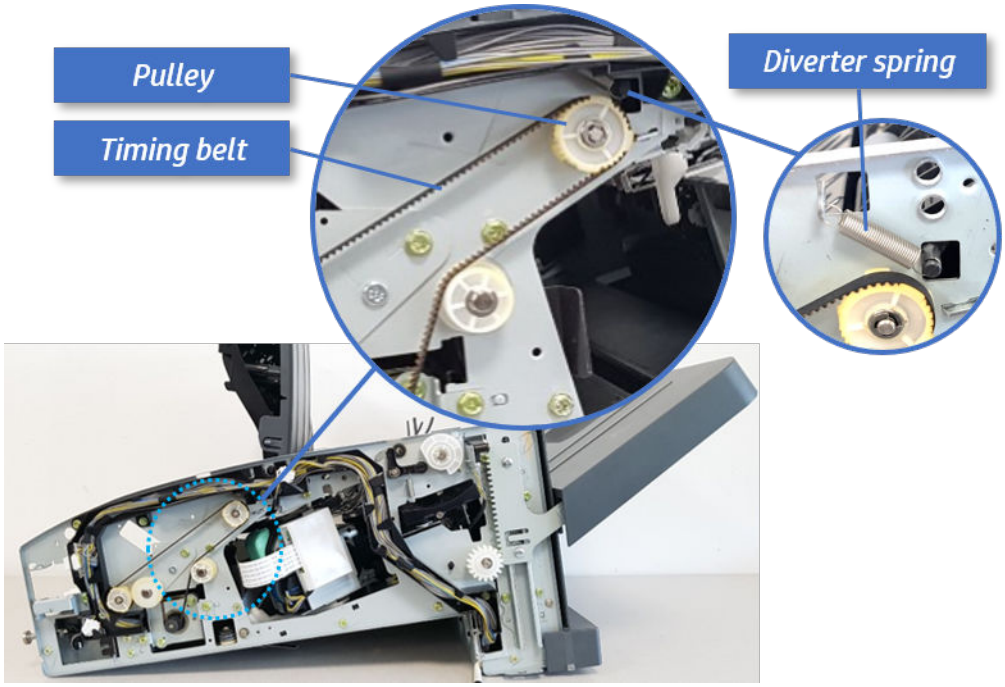
1. On the front of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and bushing.

Figure 6-96 Remove the e-ring and bushing



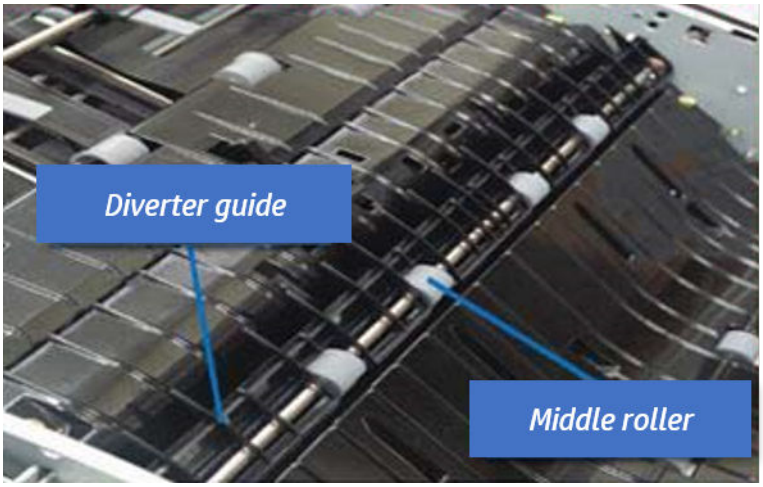
2. Onthe rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, and spring (slightly hiddenfrom view).

Figure 6-97 Remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, and spring



3. Remove the diverter guide and the middler roller.

Figure 6-98 Remove the diverter guide and the middler roller

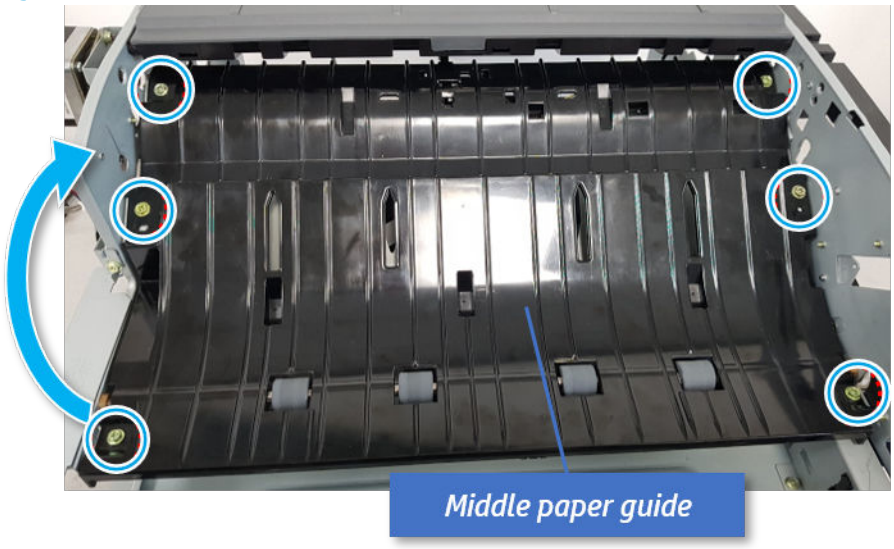


Remove the middle paper guide

Follow these steps to remove the middle paper guide.

1. Remove six screws, and then open the middle paper guide in the direction of the arrow.

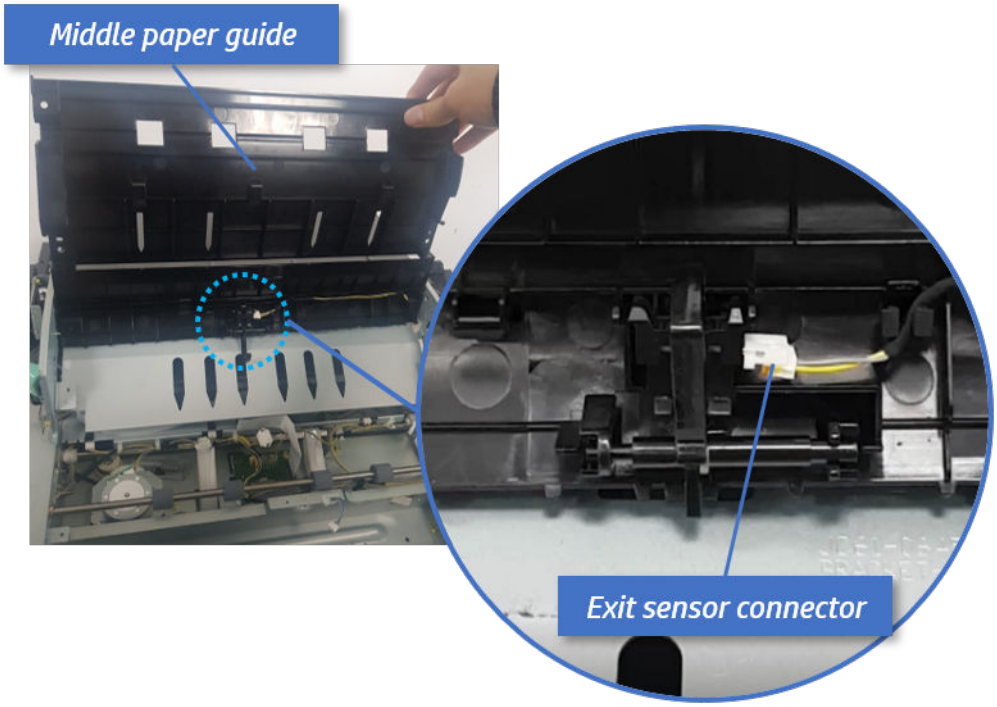
Figure 6-99 Open the middle paper guide



NOTE: Becareful not to damage the sensor connector.

2. Unplug the connector under the middle paper guide. And then, remove the middle paper guide.

Figure 6-100 Remove the middle paper guide

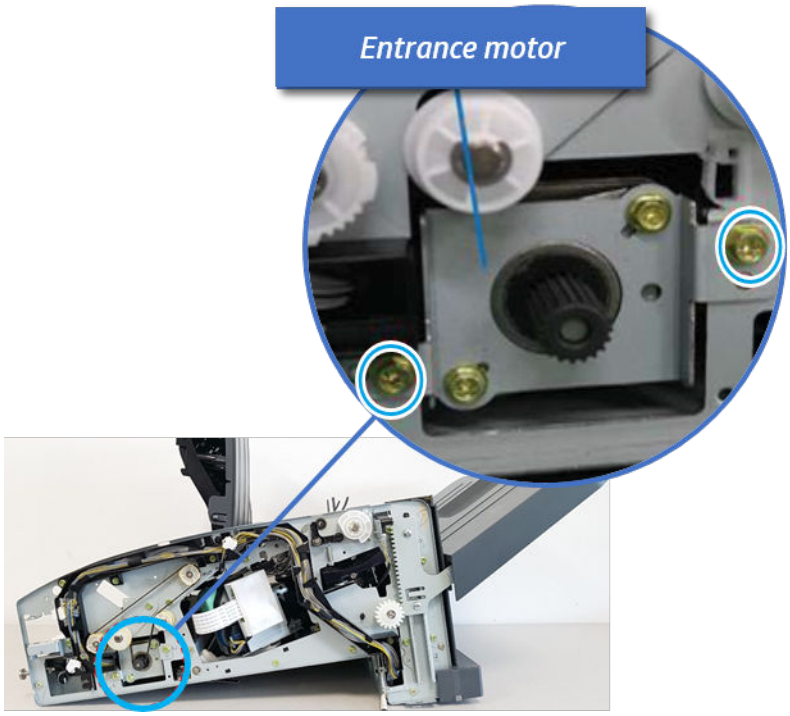


Remove the entrance motor

Follow these steps to remove the entrance motor.

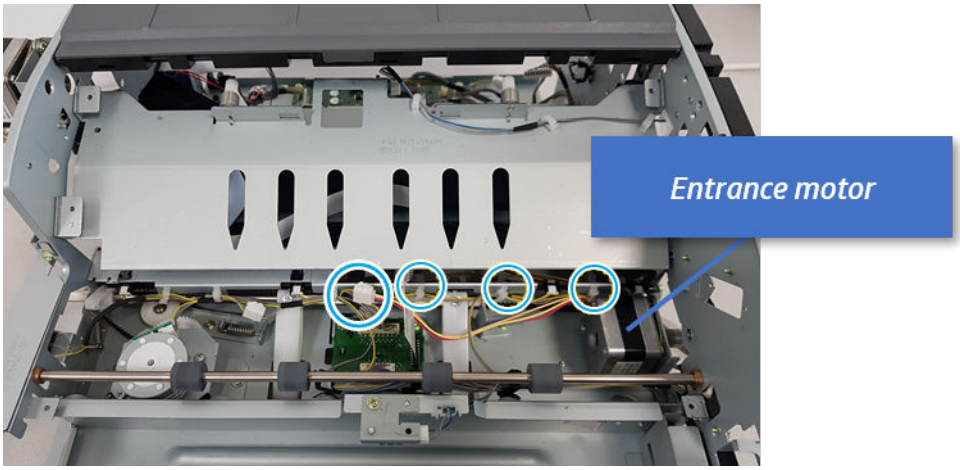
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-101 Remove two screws



2. Open the clamps, and then unplug the connector.

Figure 6-102 Unplug the connector



3. Remove two screws, and then remove the motor.

Figure 6-103 Remove the entrance motor

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Exit unit

Removal and replacement: Exit roller (R3)

Learn how to remove and replace the exit roller.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-39 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC66-04244A	Exit roller
JC61-07449A	Front compile guide
JC61-07450A	Rear compile guide

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

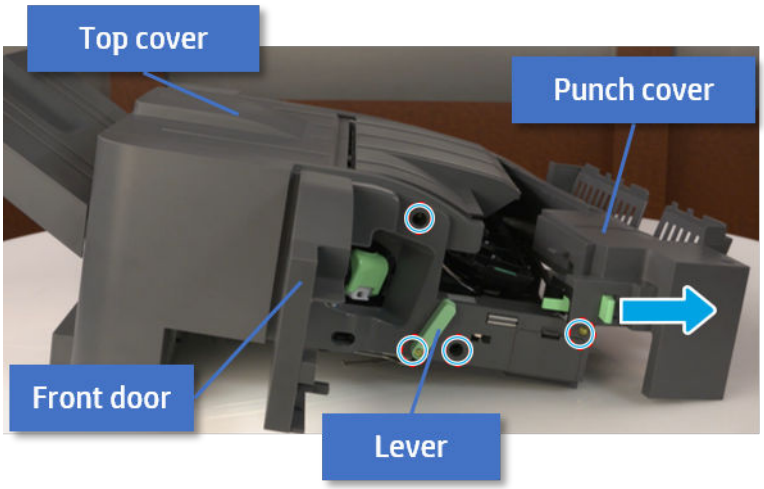
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-104 Remove the front cover

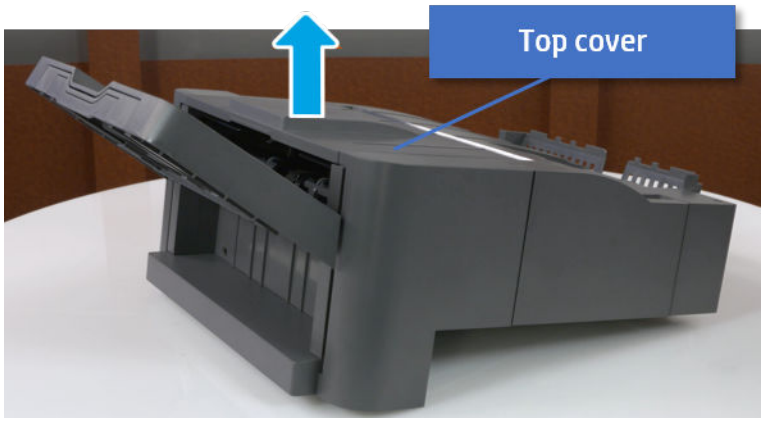


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

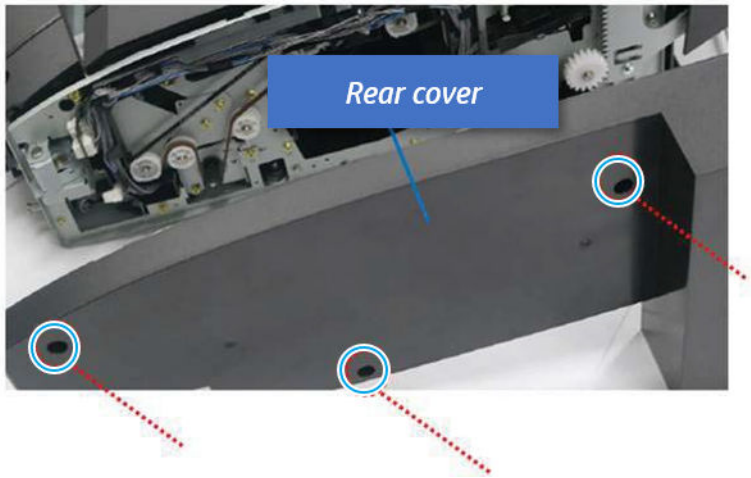
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-105 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-106 Remove the rear cover

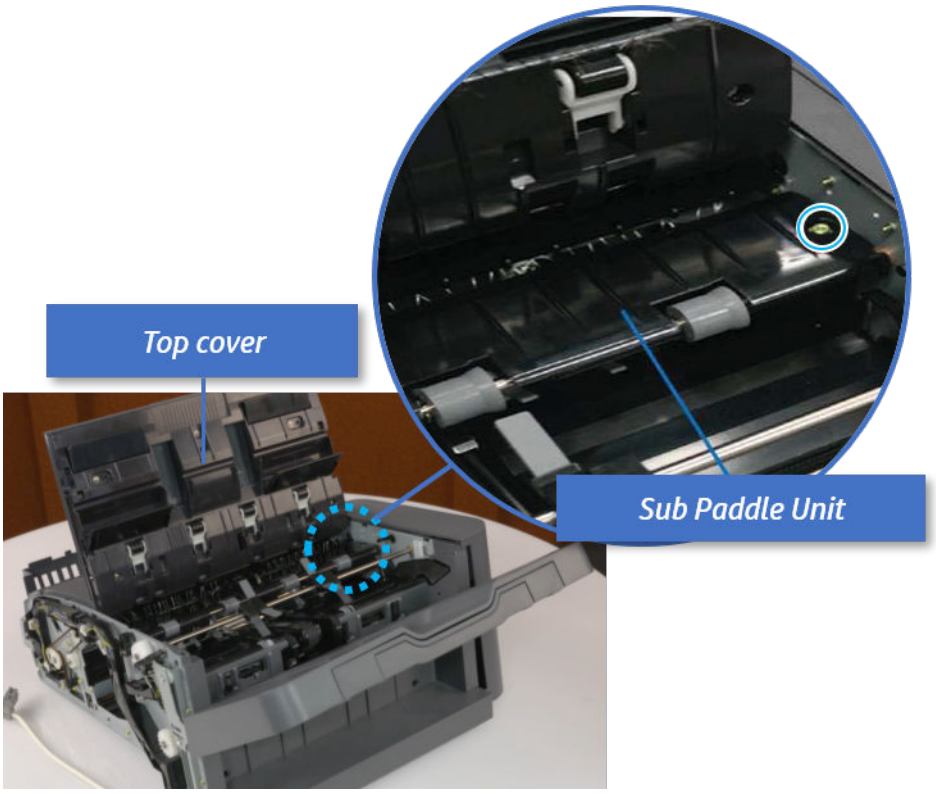


Remove the sub paddle unit

Follow these steps to remove the sub paddle unit.

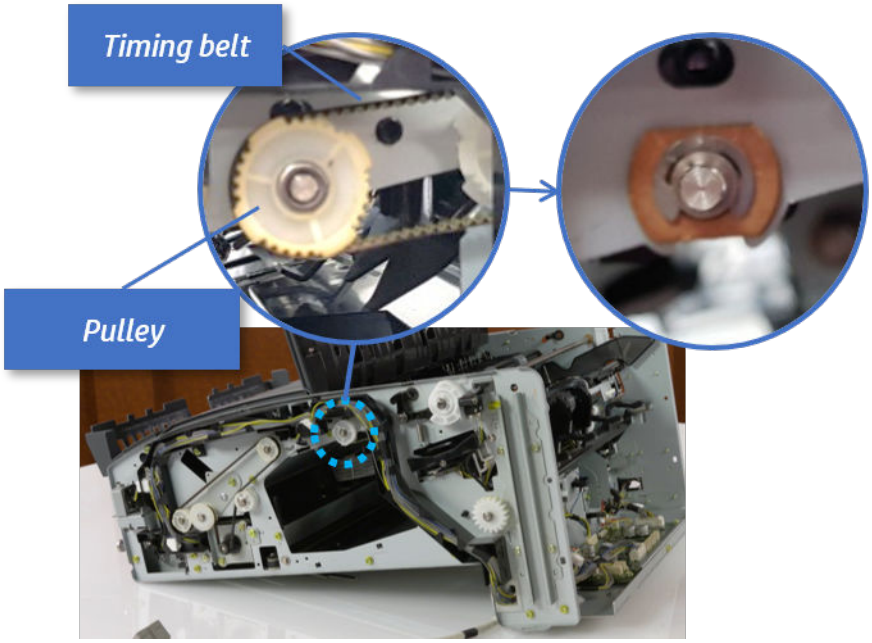
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw securing the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-107 Remove one screw



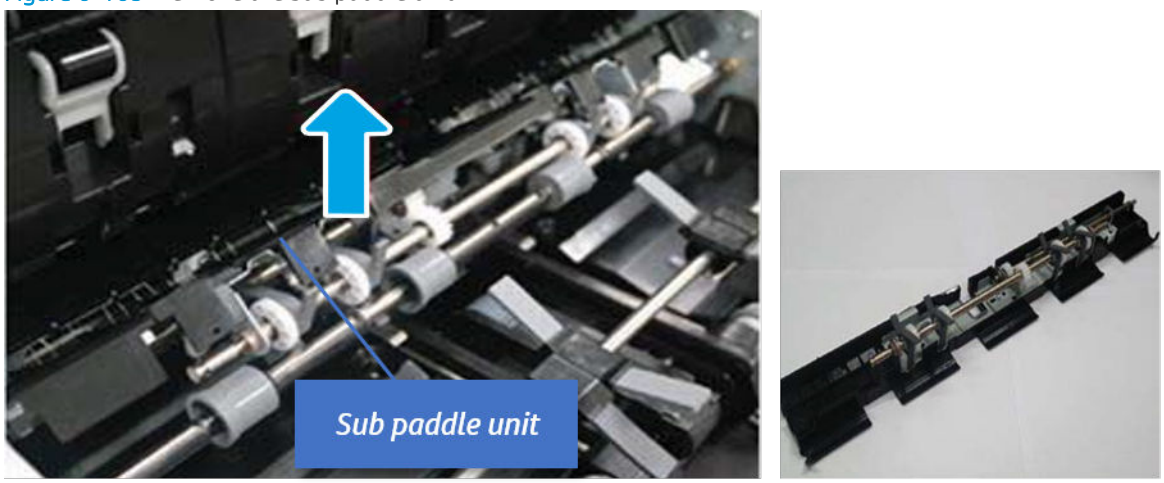
2. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt. And then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-108 Remove the e-ring, pulley, timing belt, and bushing



3. Lift up and remove the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-109 Remove the sub paddle unit

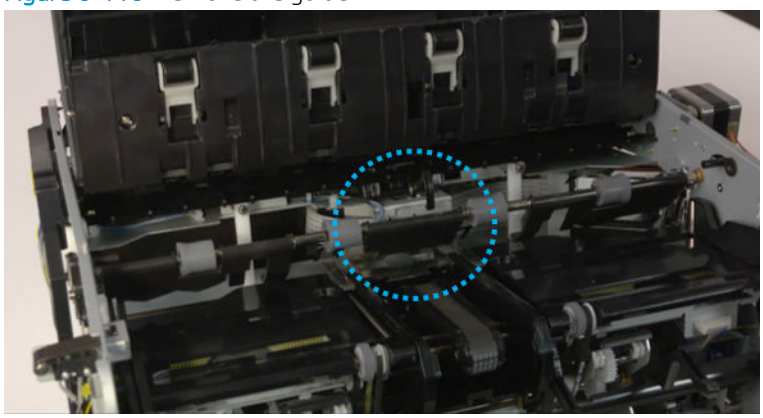


Remove the exit roller

Follow these steps to remove the exit roller.

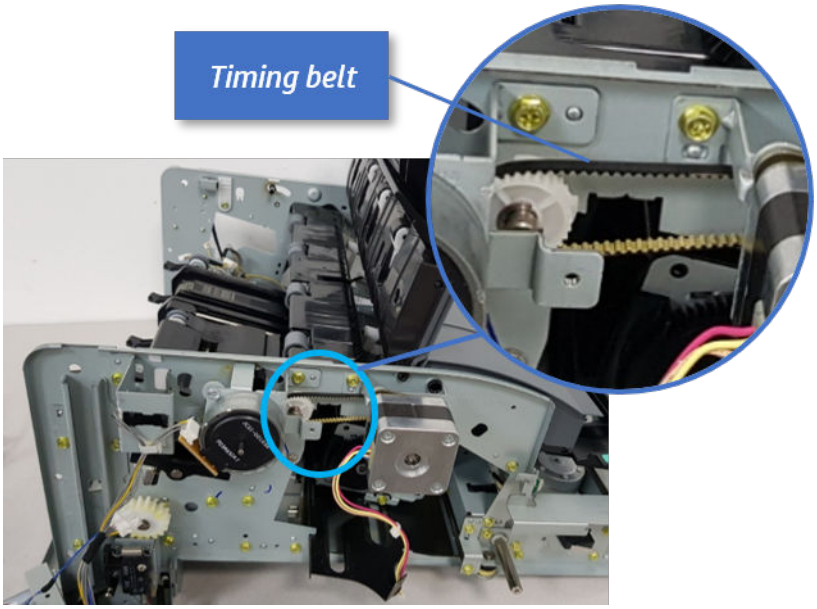
1. Remove the guide on the center of the exit roller.

Figure 6-110 Remove the guide



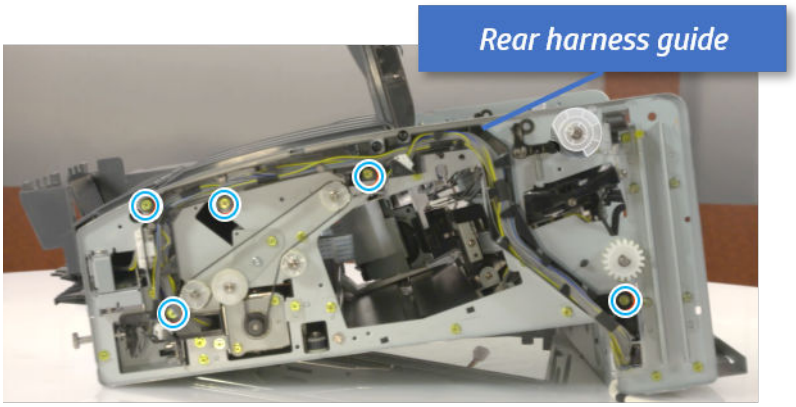
2. On the front of the inner finisher, release the timing belt connected to the exit motor.

Figure 6-111 Release the timing belt



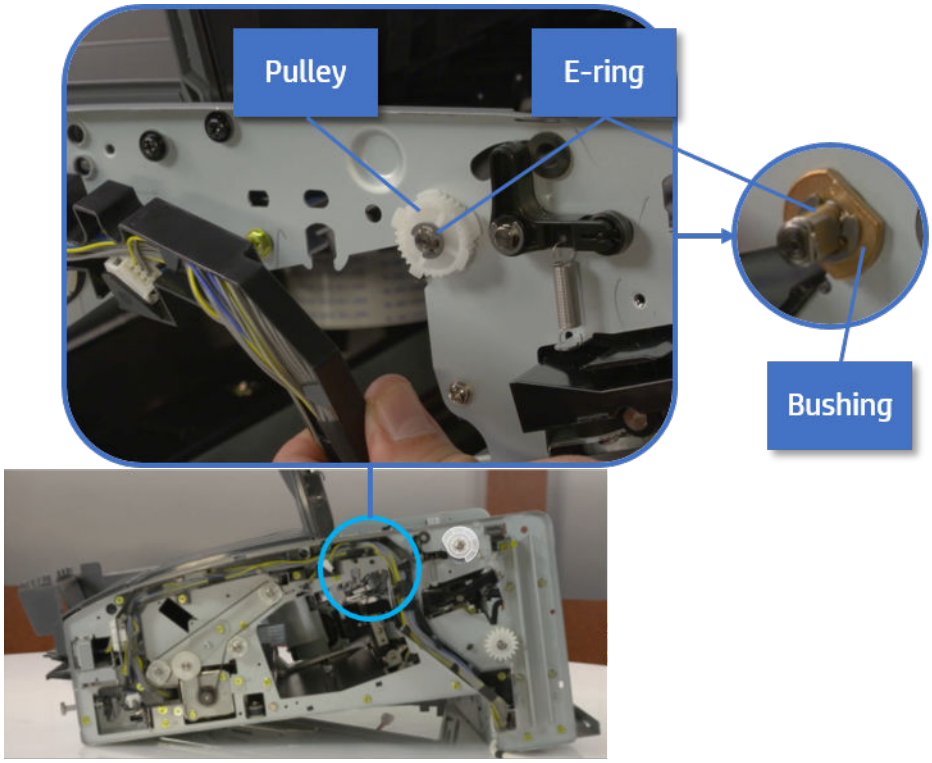
3. Remove five screws securing the rear harness guide.

Figure 6-112 Remove five screws



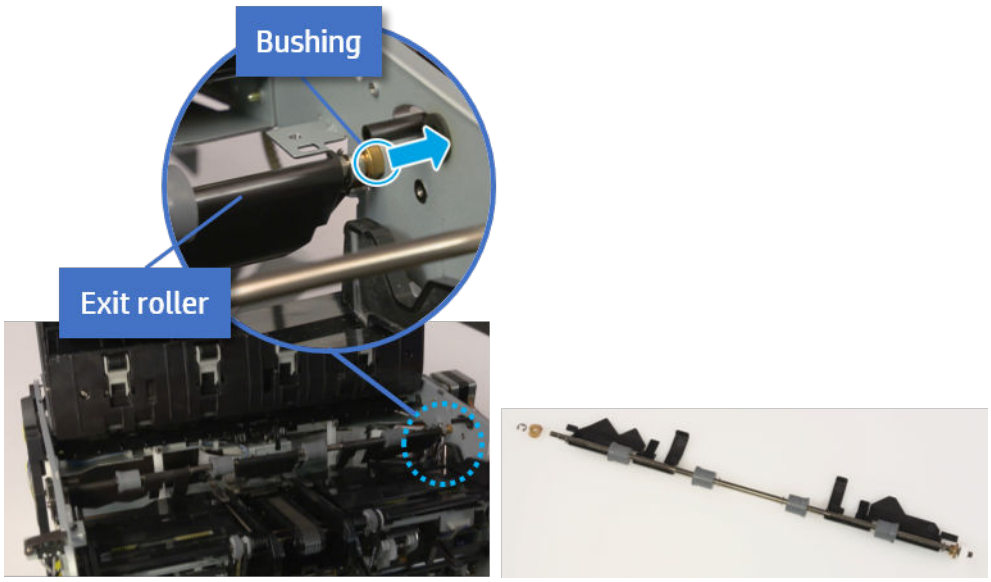
4. On the rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and the pulley and then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-113 Remove e-ring, pulley, and bushing



5. Push the bushing to detach it, and then remove the exit roller.

Figure 6-114 Remove the exit roller



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit sensor (S21)

Learn how to remove and replace the exit sensor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-40 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Exit sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

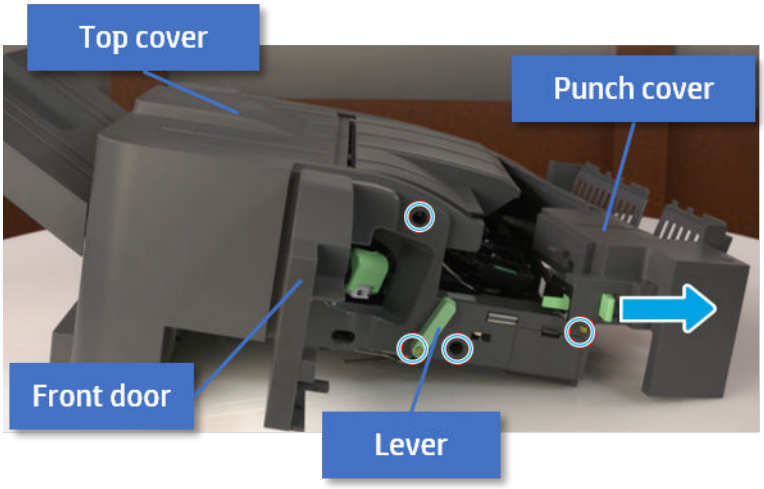
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-115 Remove the front cover

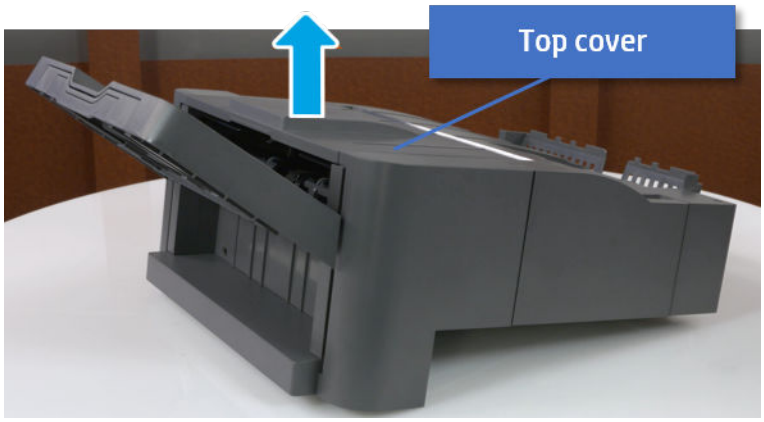


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

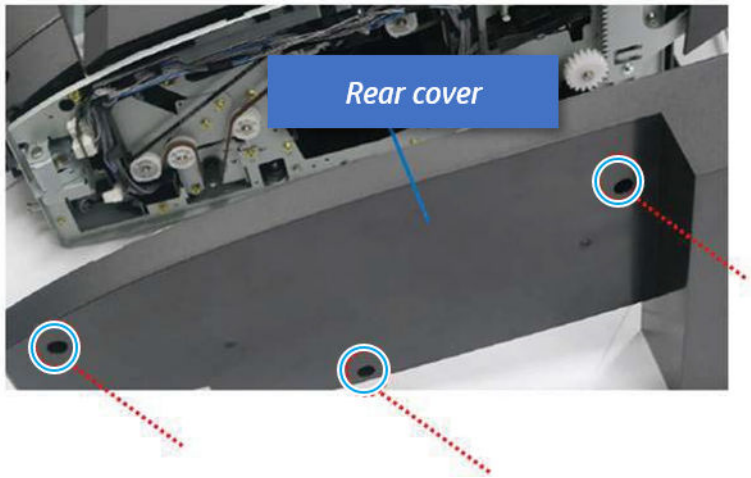
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-116 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-117 Remove the rear cover

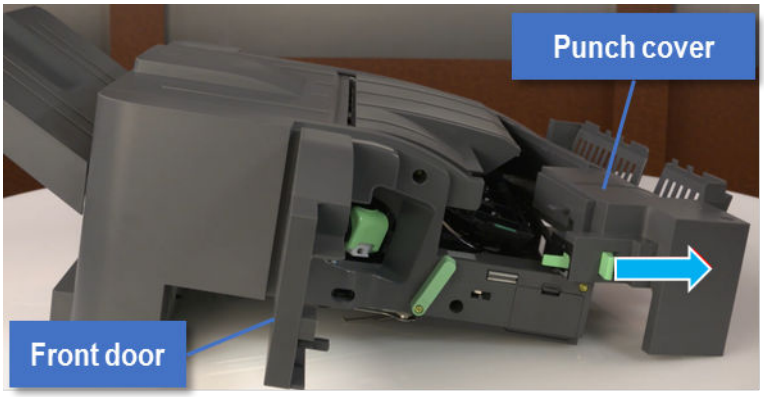


Remove the middle cover

Follow these steps to remove the middle cover.

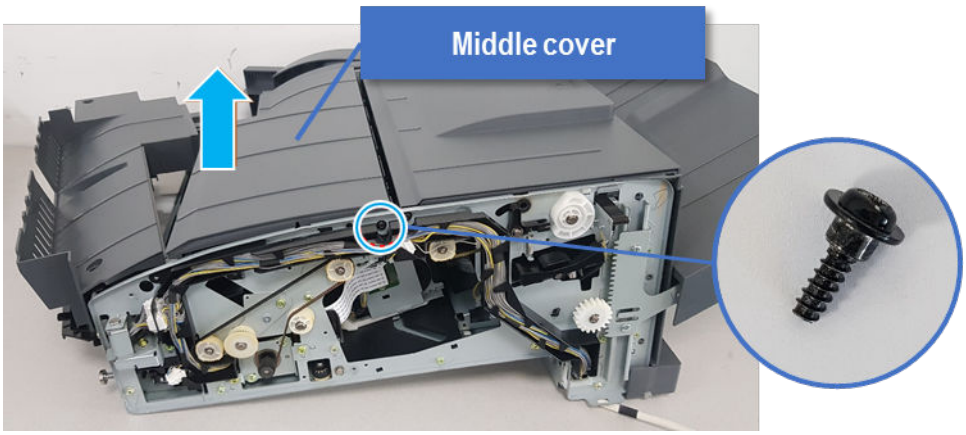
1. Open the front door and then open the punch cover.

Figure 6-118 Open the front door and puch cover.



2. Remove left-side one screw at the rear of the inner finisher, and then remove the middle cover by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

Figure 6-119 Remove the middle cover

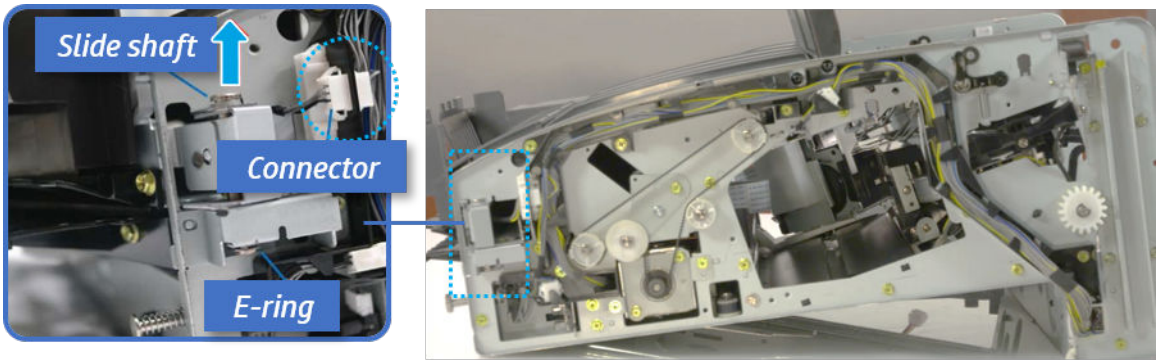


Remove the punch cover

Follow these steps to remove the punch cover.

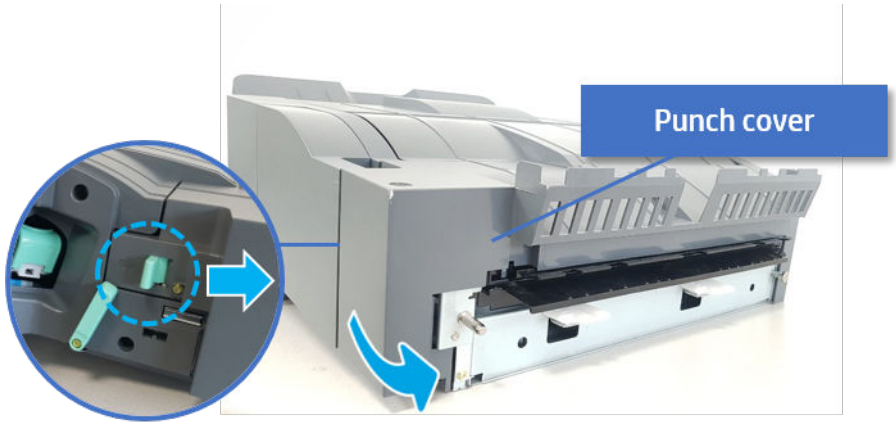
1. Unplug the connector. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the slide shaft at the rear of the inner finisher.

Figure 6-120 Remove the slide shaft



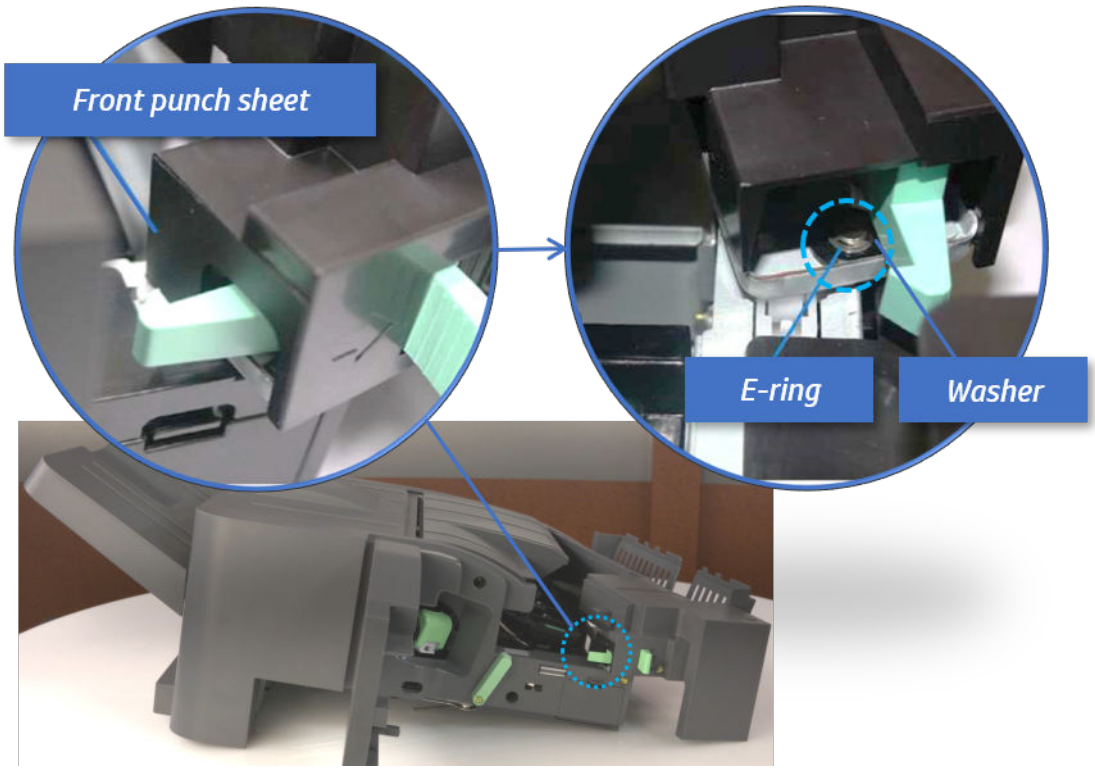
2. Open the punch cover.

Figure 6-121 Open the punch cover



3. Remove the front punch sheet, and then remove the e-ring and the washer. And then remove the punch cover.

Figure 6-122 Remove the punch cover

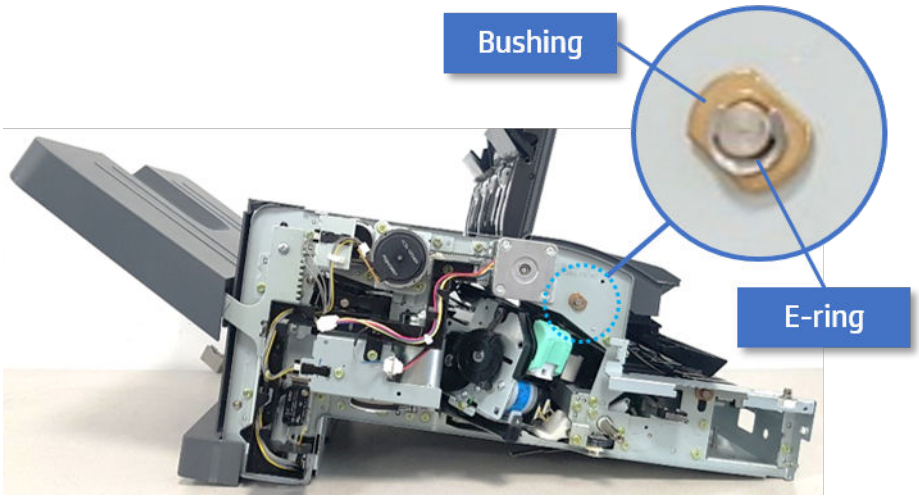


Remove the diverter guide and the middle roller

Follow these steps to remove the diverter guide and the middle roller.

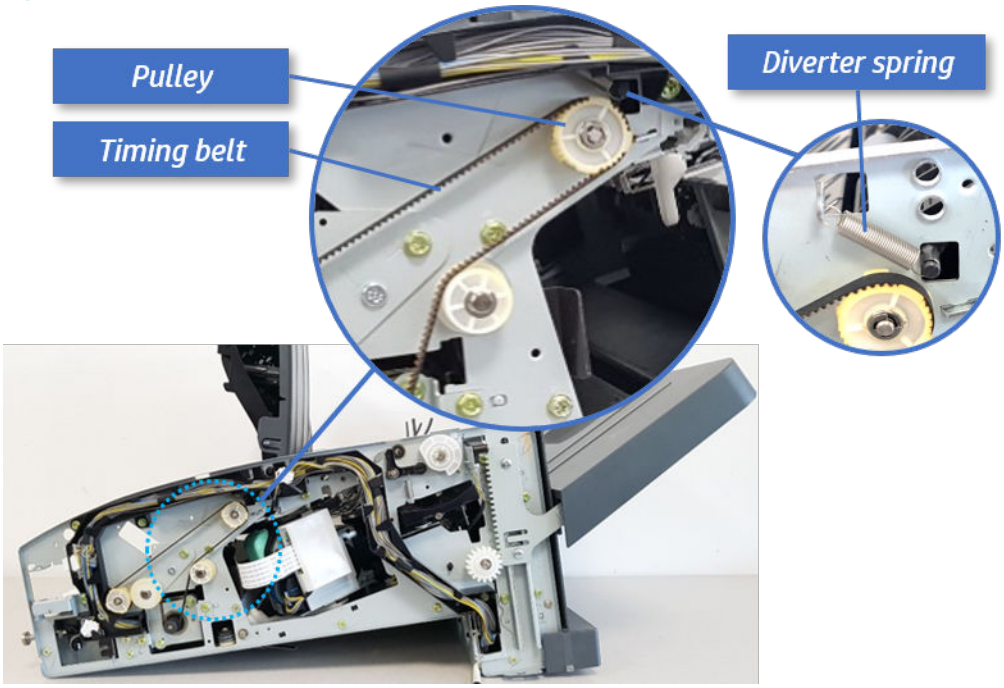
1. On the front of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and bushing.

Figure 6-123 Remove the e-ring and bushing



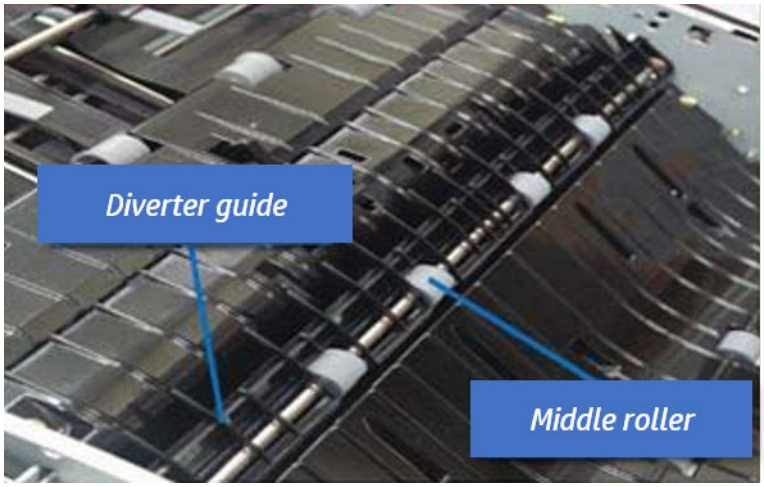
2. Onthe rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, and spring (slightly hiddenfrom view).

Figure 6-124 Remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, and spring



3. Remove the diverter guide and the middler roller.

Figure 6-125 Remove the diverter guide and the middler roller

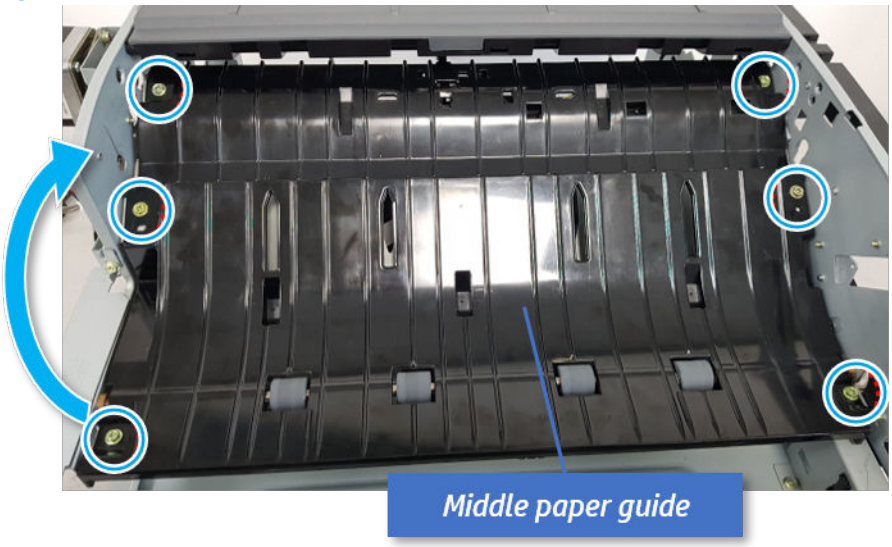


Remove the middle paper guide

Follow these steps to remove the middle paper guide.

1. Remove six screws, and then open the middle paper guide in the direction of the arrow.

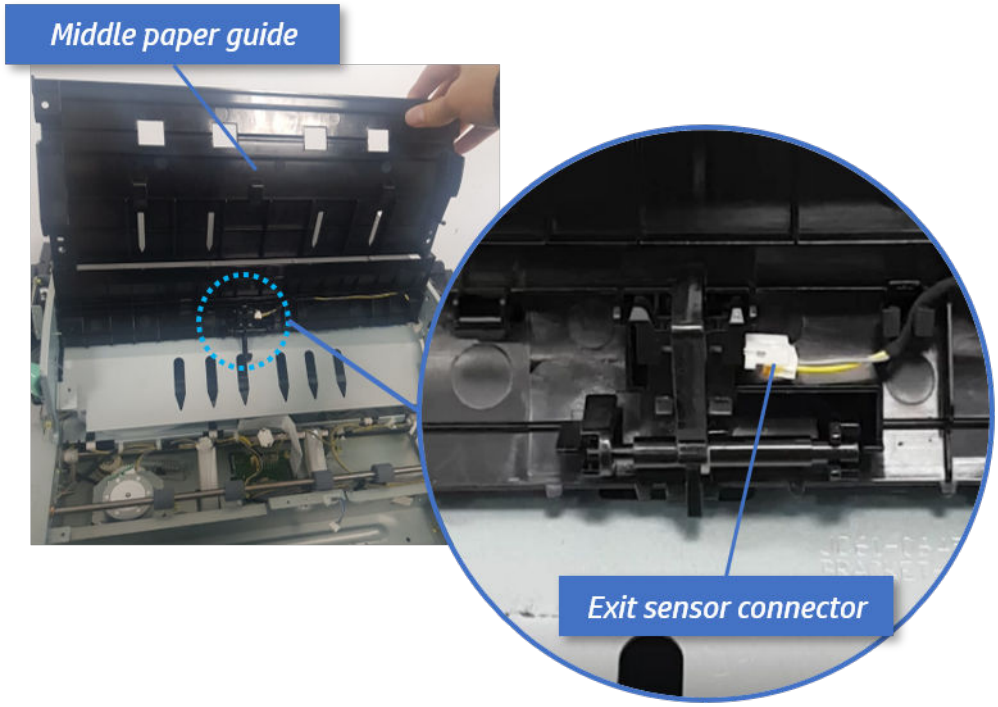
Figure 6-126 Open the middle paper guide



NOTE: Becareful not to damage the sensor connector.

2. Unplug the connector under the middle paper guide. And then, remove the middle paper guide.

Figure 6-127 Remove the middle paper guide

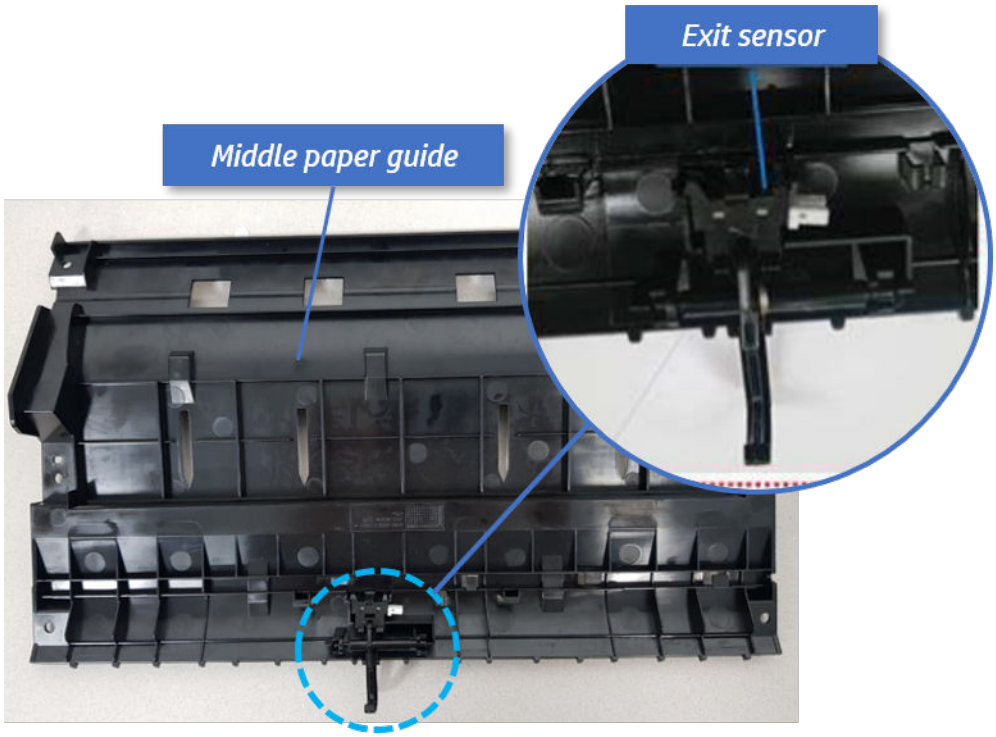


Remove the exit sensor

Follow these steps to remove the exit sensor.

▲ Remove the exit sensor from the middle paper guide.

Figure 6-128 Remove the exit sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit motor (M2)

Learn how to remove and replace the exit motor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-41 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00169B	Exit motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

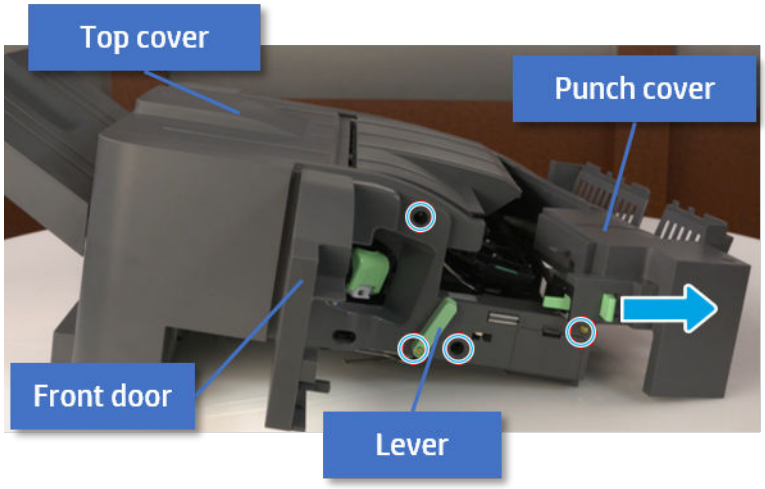
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-129 Remove the front cover

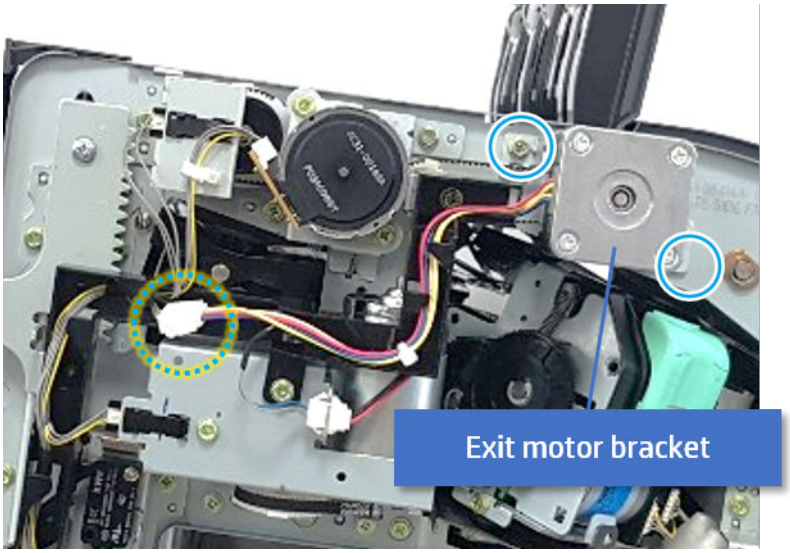


Remove the exit motor bracket

Follow these steps to remove the exit motor bracket.

- Remove two screws, unplug the motor connector. And then remove exit motor bracket.

Figure 6-130 Remove the exit motor bracket

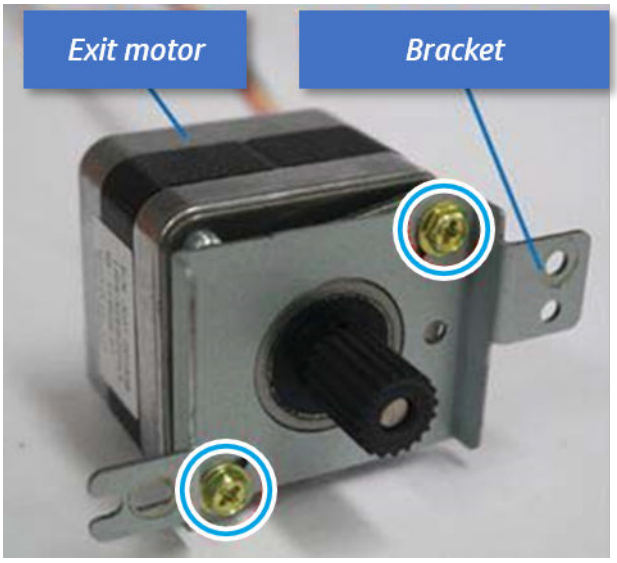


Remove the exit motor

Follow these steps to remove the exit motor.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor from the bracket.

Figure 6-131 Remove the exit motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Paper support unit

Removal and replacement: Front paper support

Learn how to remove and replace the front paper support.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-42 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01310A	Front paper support

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

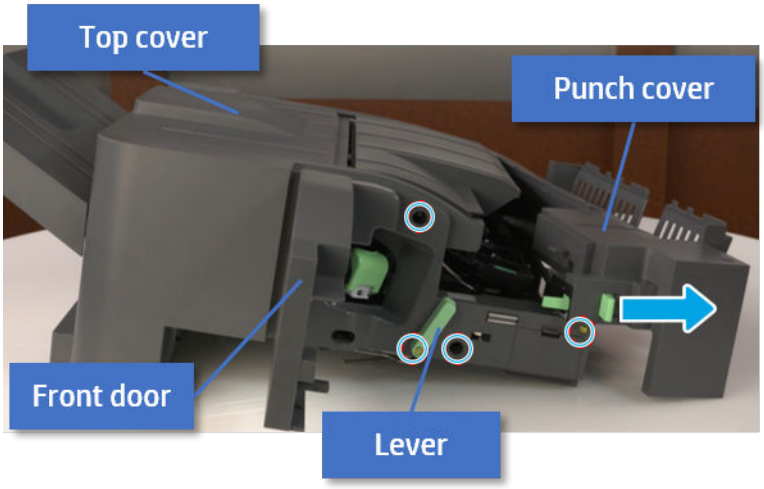
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-132 Remove the front cover

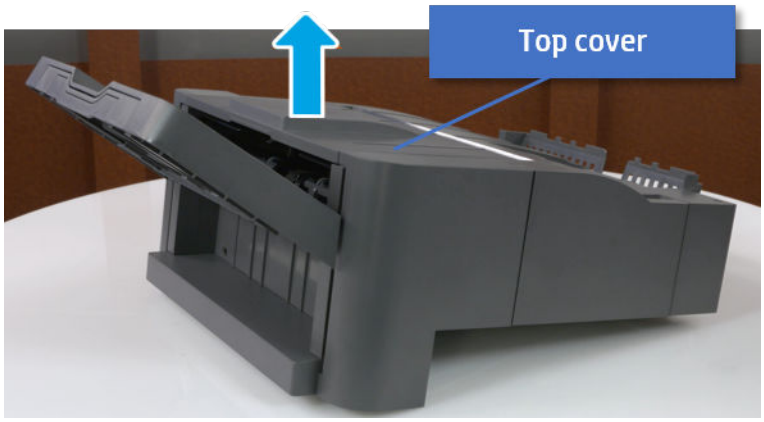


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

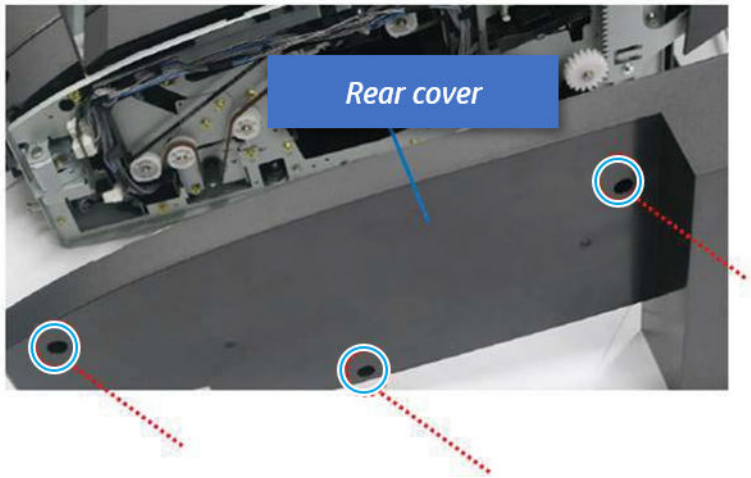
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-133 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-134 Remove the rear cover

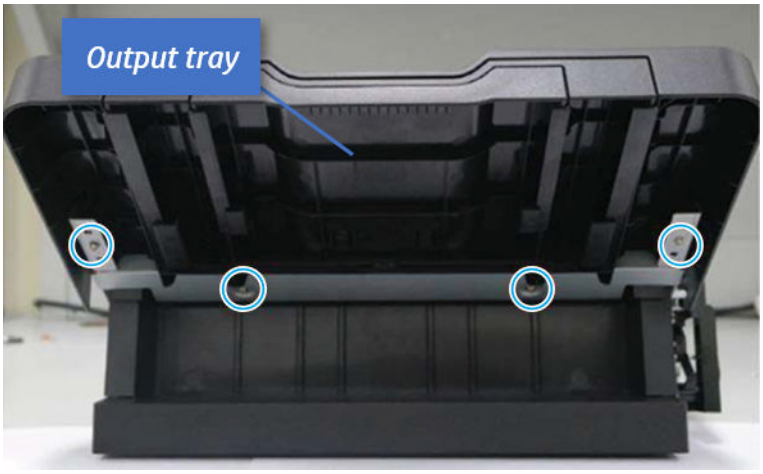


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-135 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

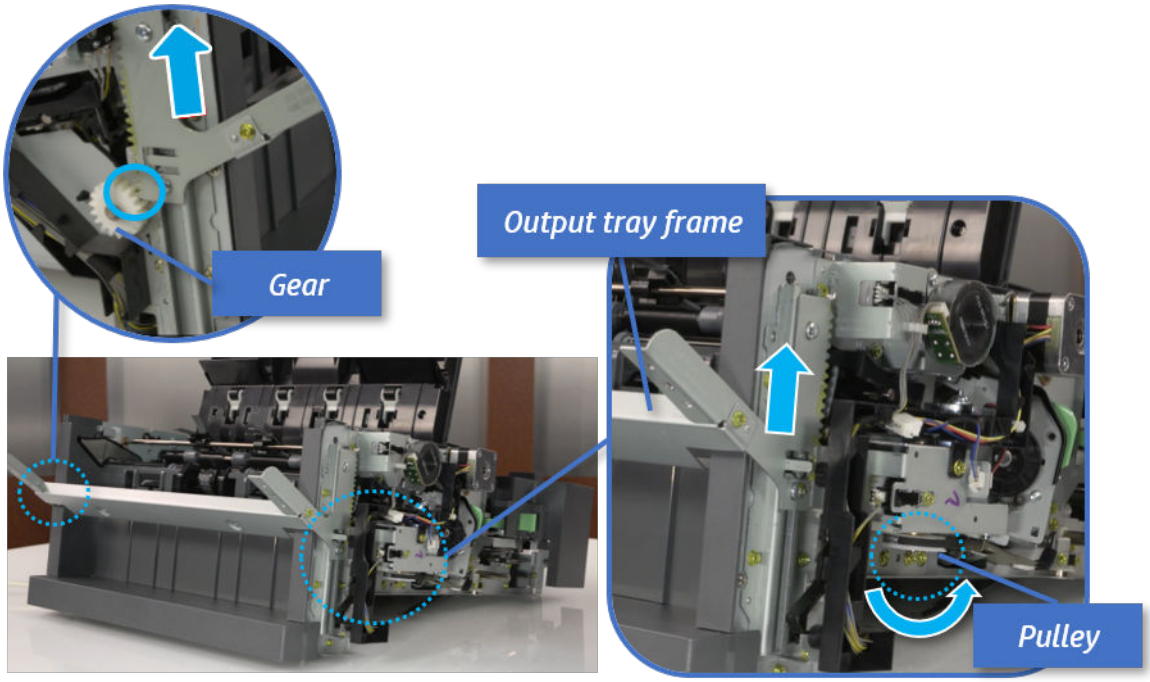
Figure 6-136 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

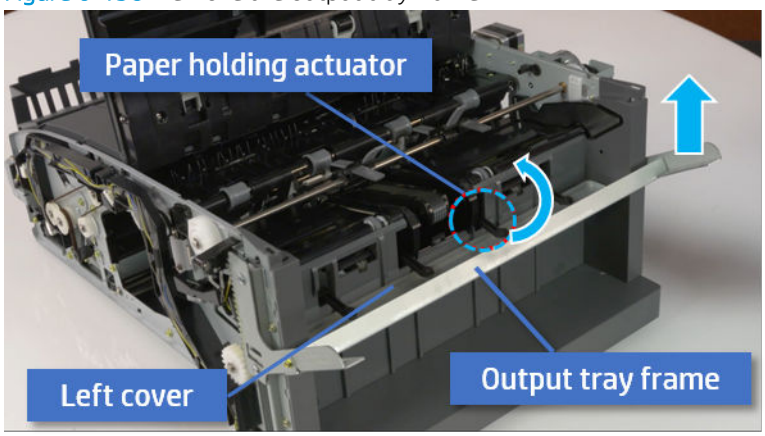
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-137 Remove the pulley



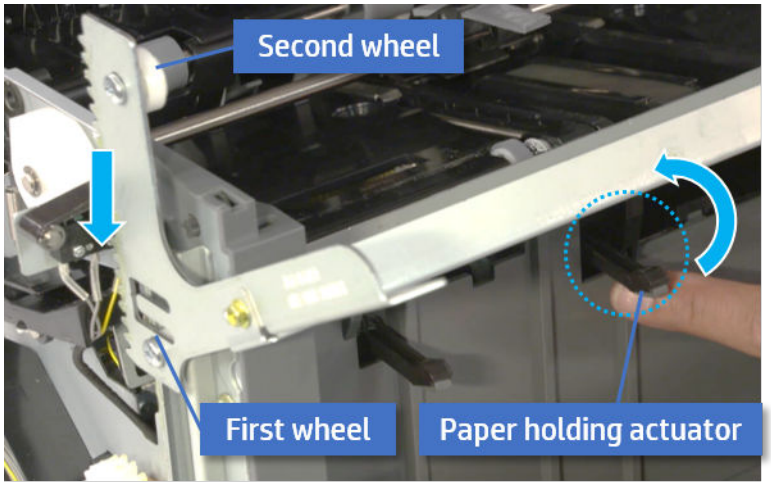
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-138 Remove the output tray frame



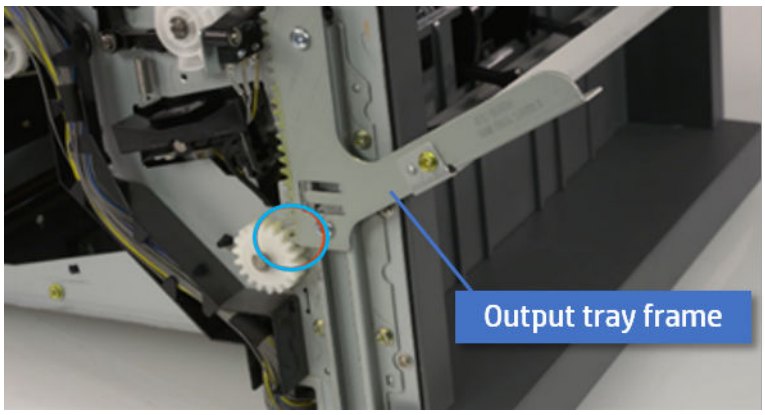
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

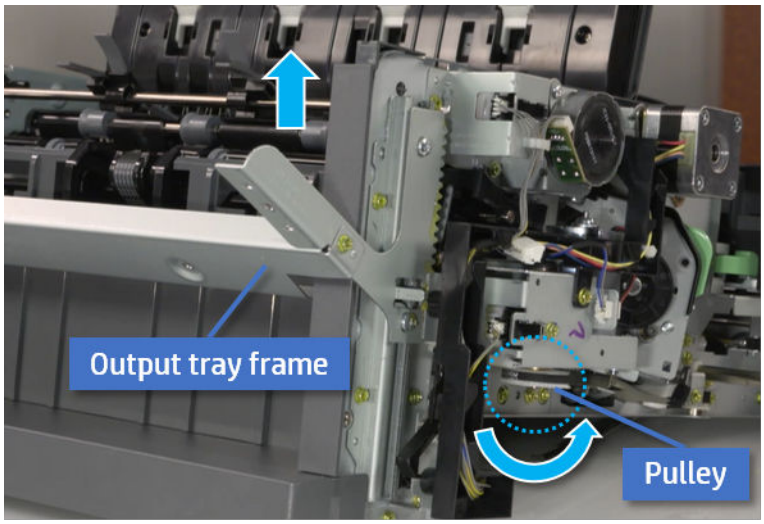


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

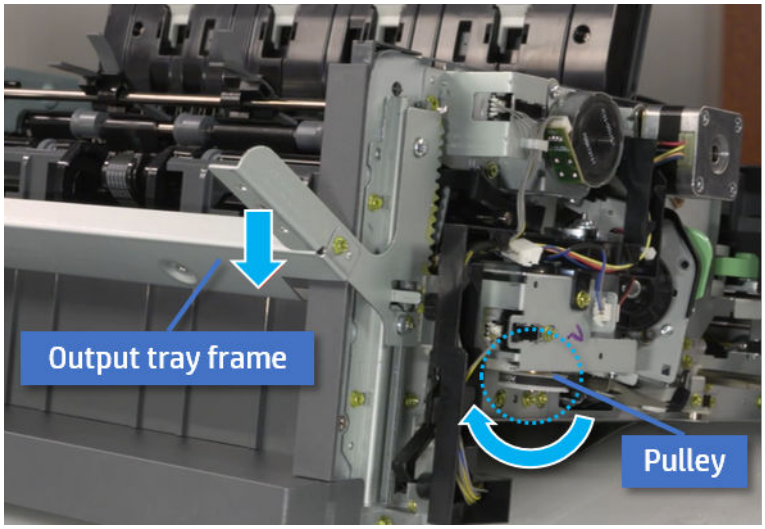
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

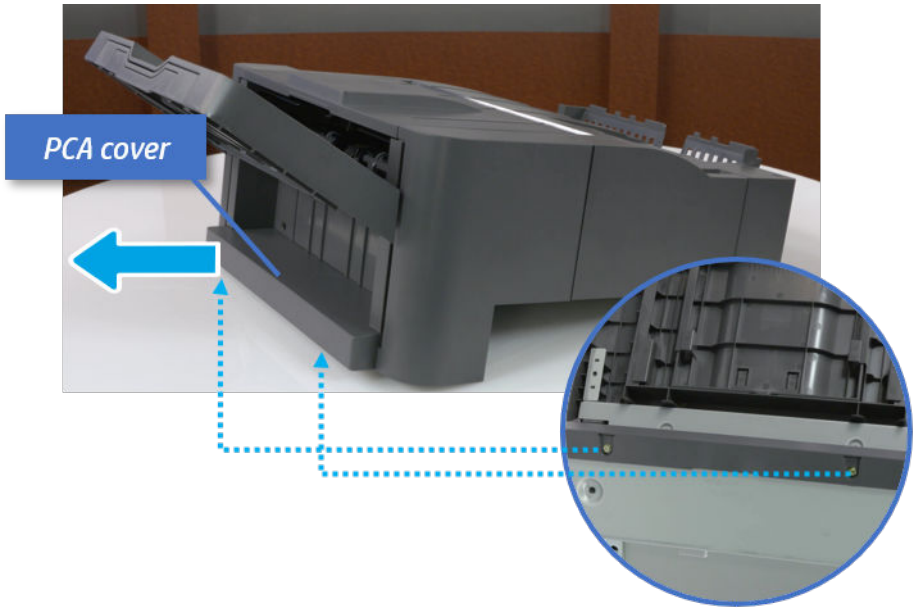


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-139 Remove the PCA cover

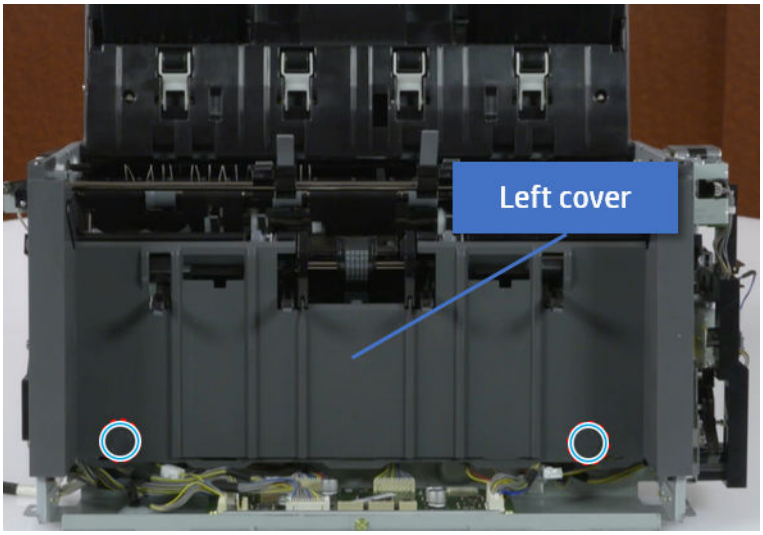


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

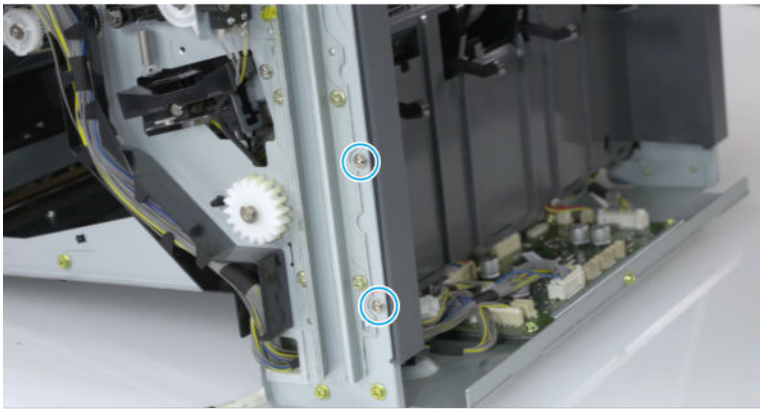
1. Remove two screws.

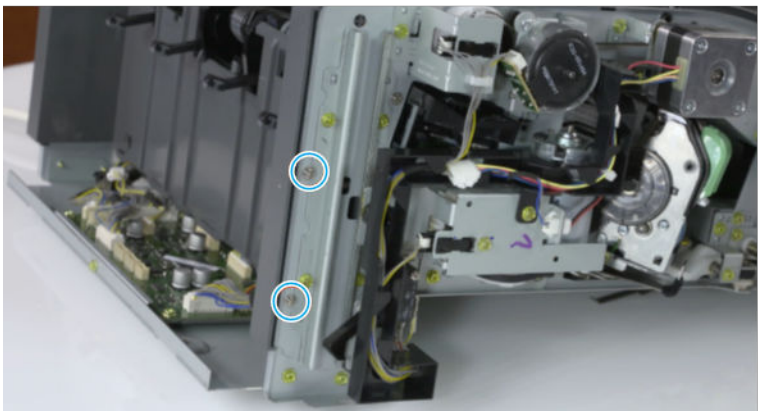
Figure 6-140 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

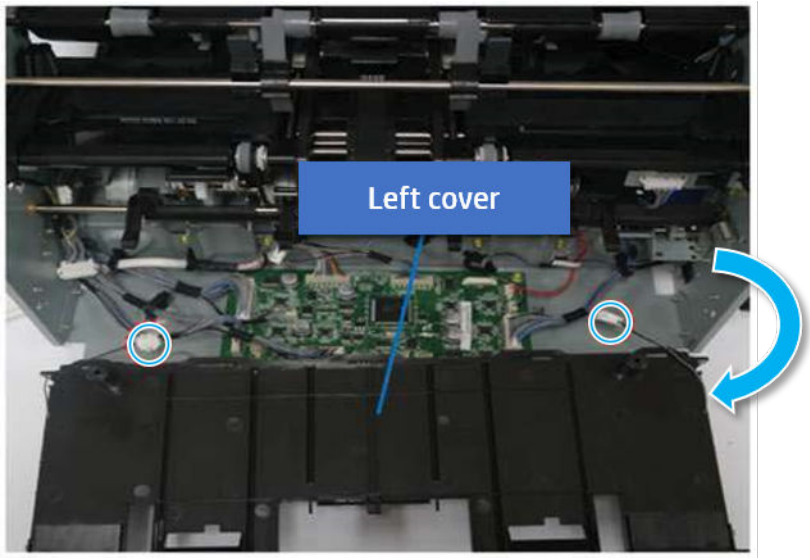
Figure 6-141 Remove four screws



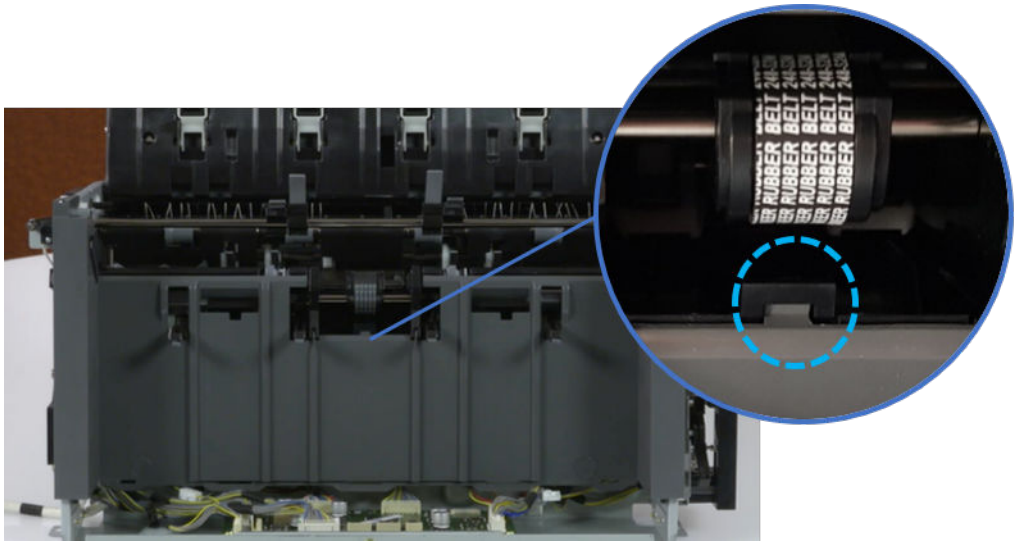


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-142 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



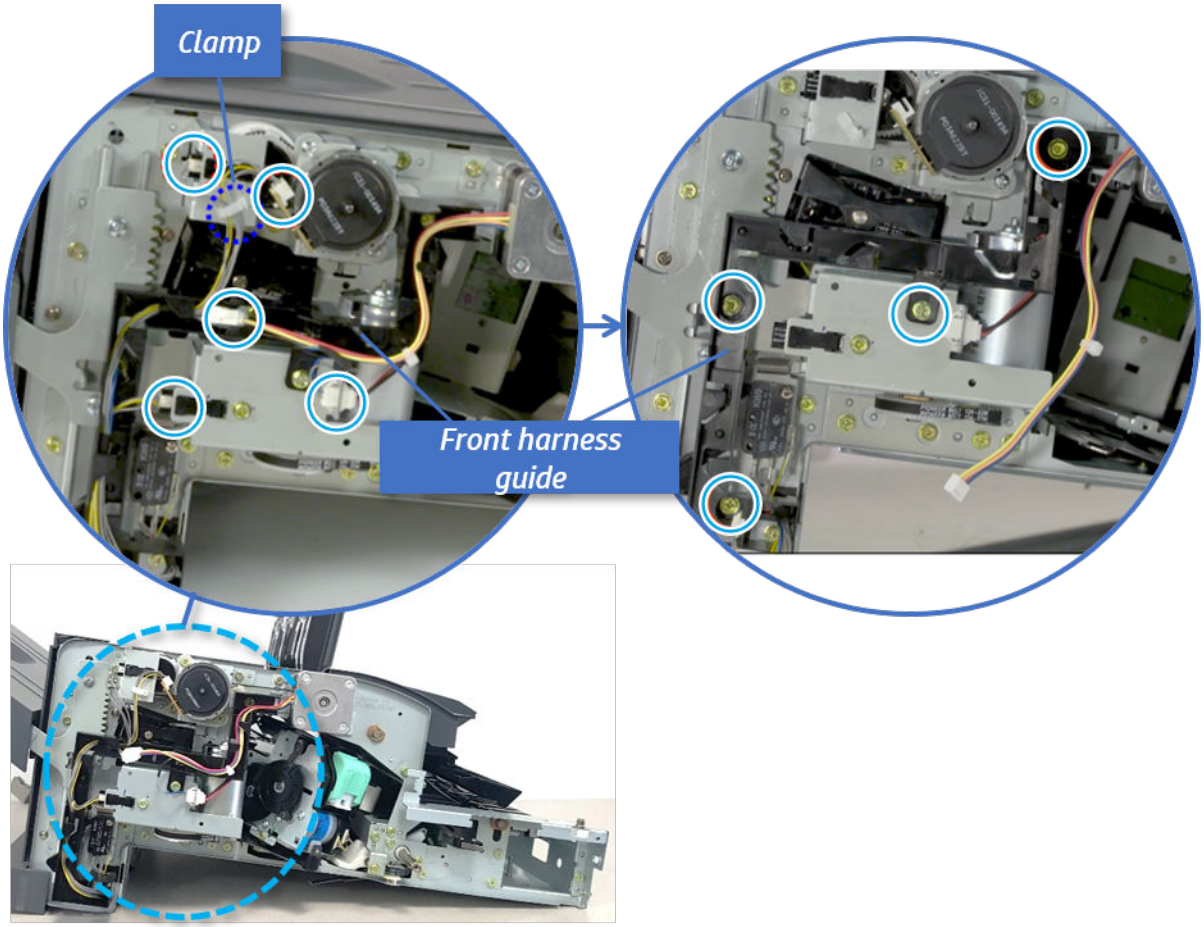
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-143 Remove the front harness guide

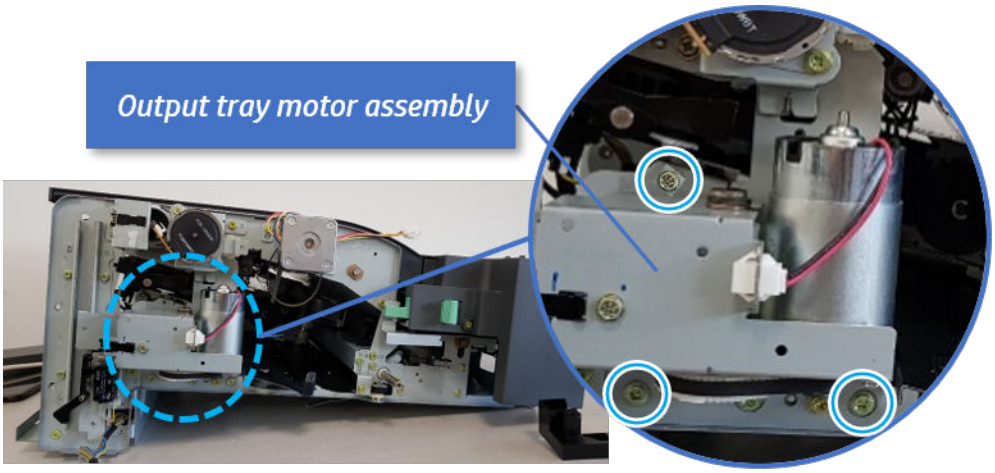


Remove the output tray motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor assembly.

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-144 Remove the output tray motor assembly

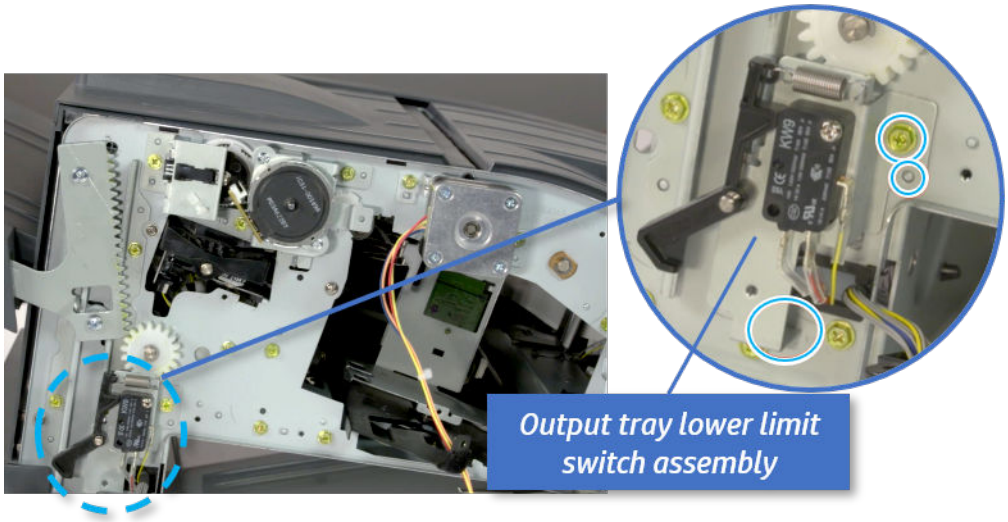


Remove the output tray lower limit switch

Follow these steps to remove the output tray lower limit switch.

▲ Remove one screw, and then remove the output tray lower limit switch.

Figure 6-145 Remove the output tray lower limit switch

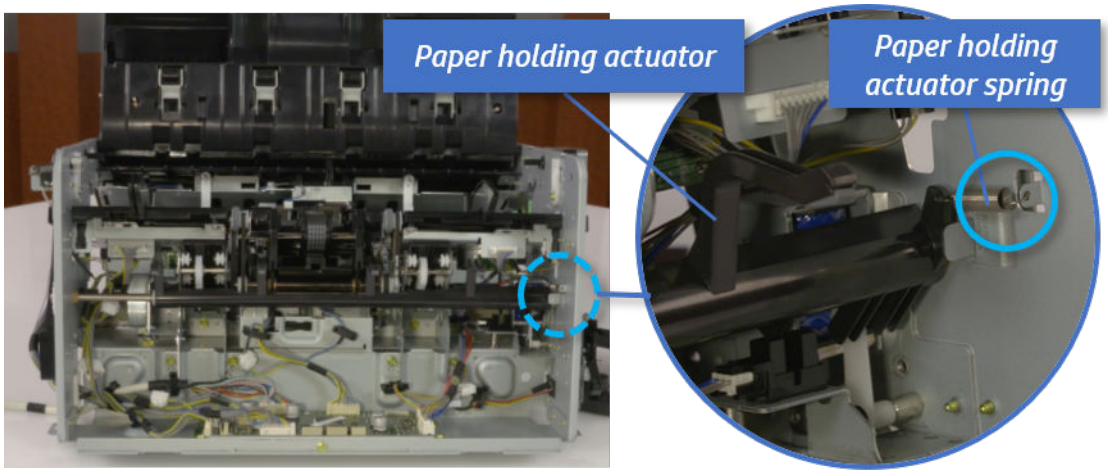


Remove the paper holding

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding.

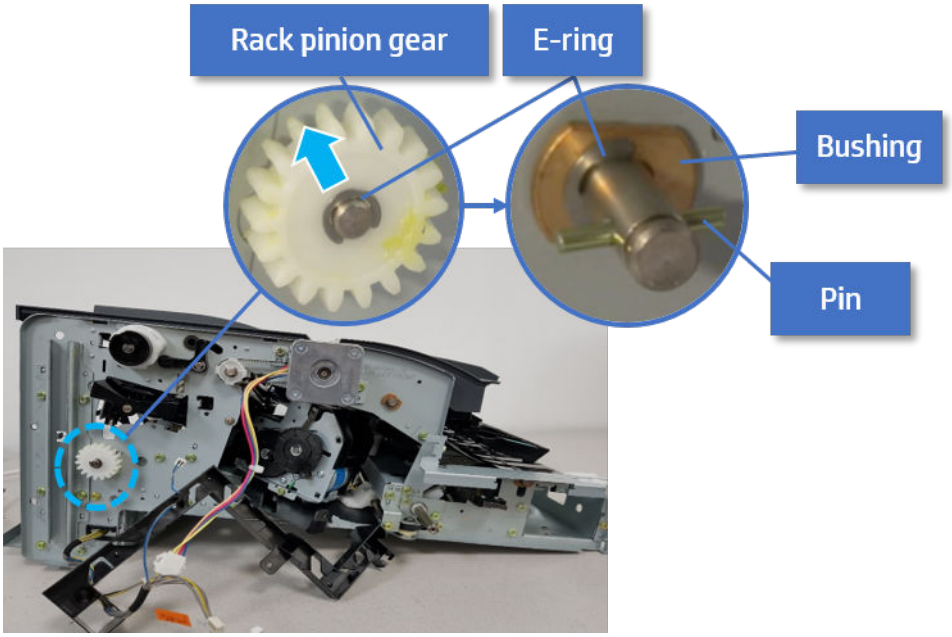
1. Remove the paper holding actuator spring.

Figure 6-146 Remove the paper holding actuator spring



2. Remove the e-ring and the rack pinion gear. And then remove the pin and the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

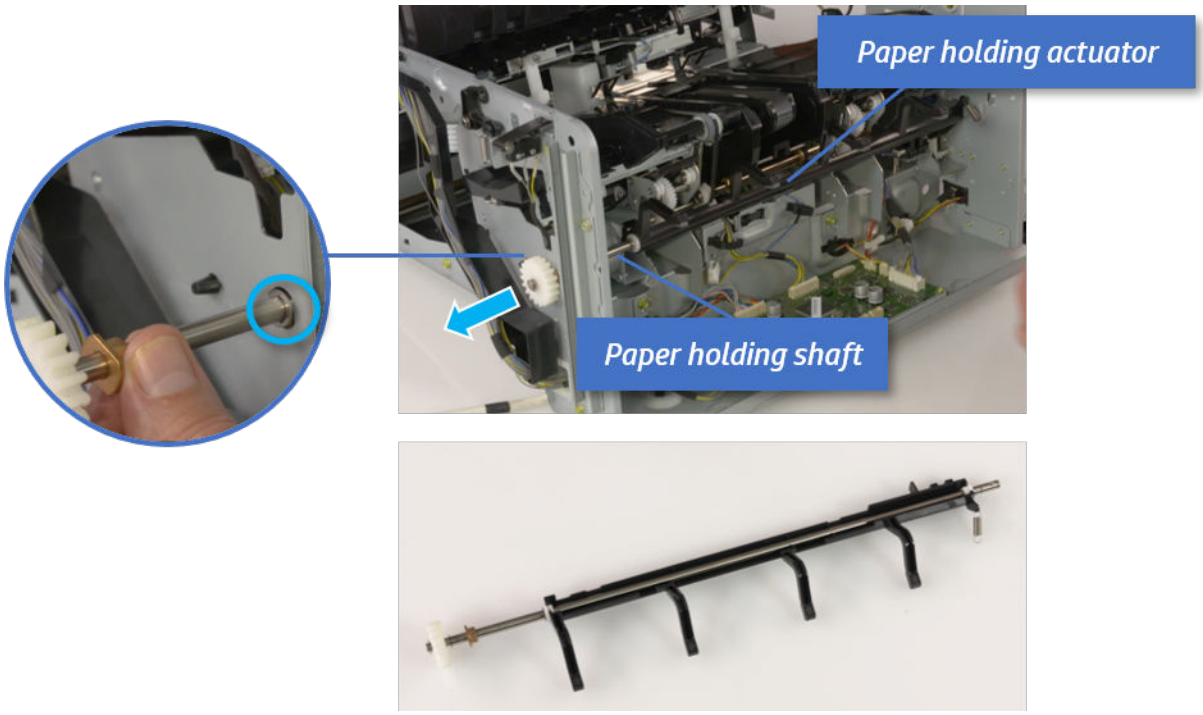
Figure 6-147 Remove e-ring, rack pinion gear, pin, and bushing



NOTE: Be sure not to lose the pin.

3. Carefully remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator.

Figure 6-148 Remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator

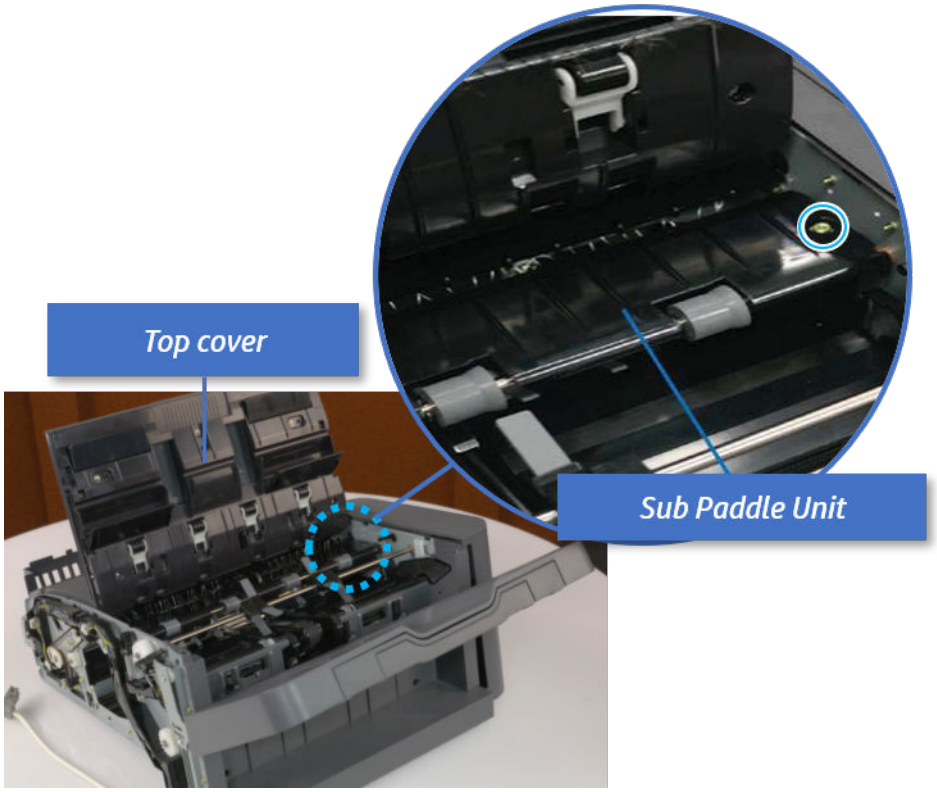


Remove the sub paddle unit

Follow these steps to remove the sub paddle unit.

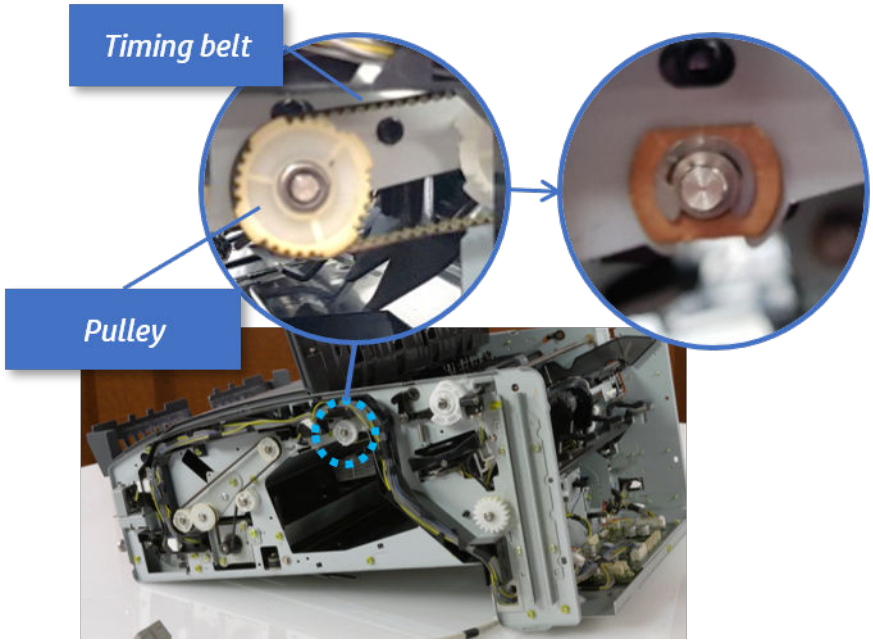
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw securing the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-149 Remove one screw



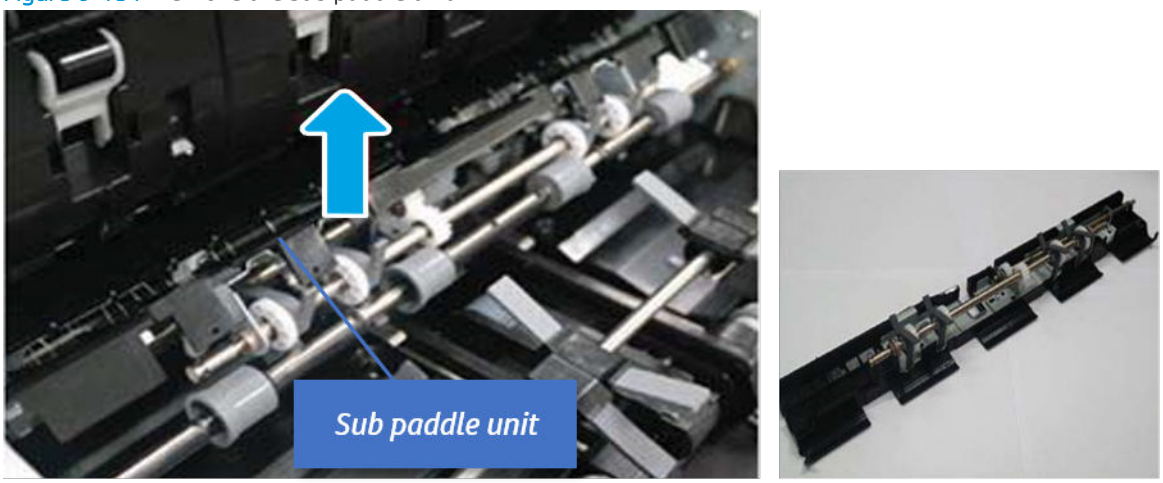
2. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt. And then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-150 Remove the e-ring, pulley, timing belt, and bushing



3. Lift up and remove the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-151 Remove the sub paddle unit

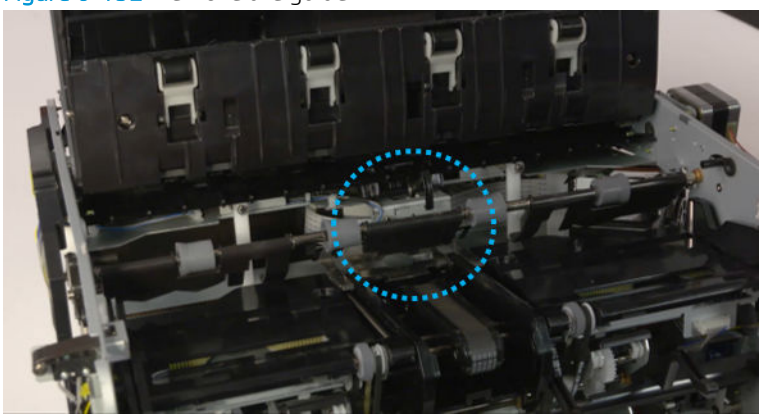


Remove the exit roller

Follow these steps to remove the exit roller.

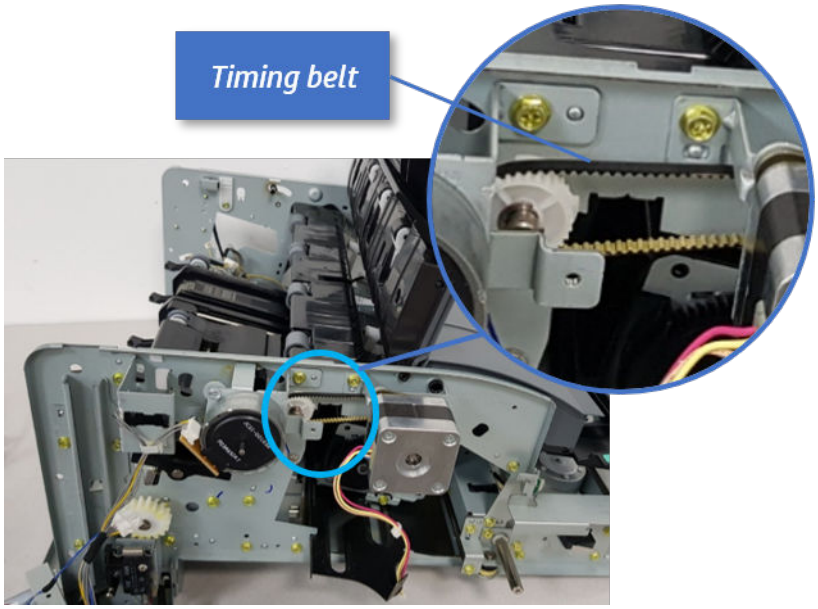
1. Remove the guide on the center of the exit roller.

Figure 6-152 Remove the guide



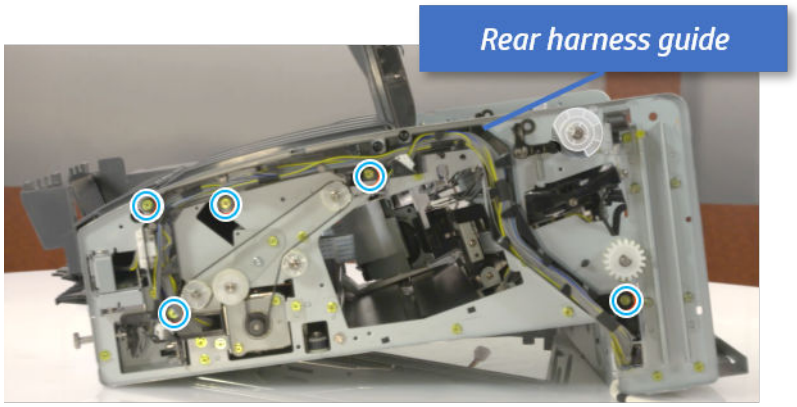
2. On the front of the inner finisher, release the timing belt connected to the exit motor.

Figure 6-153 Release the timing belt



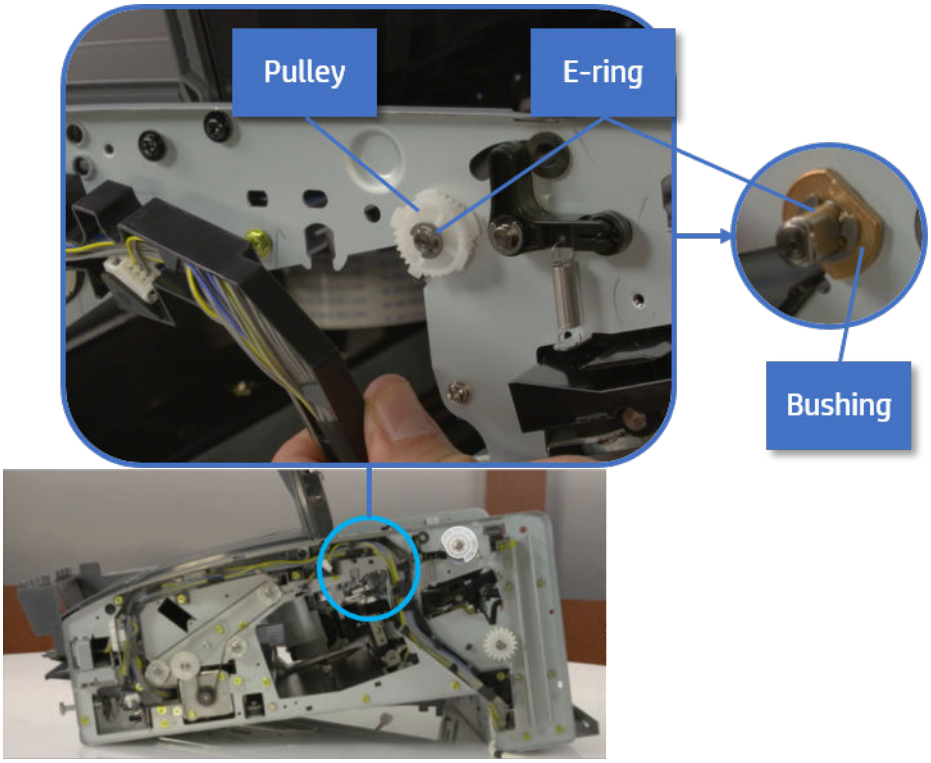
3. Remove five screws securing the rear harness guide.

Figure 6-154 Remove five screws



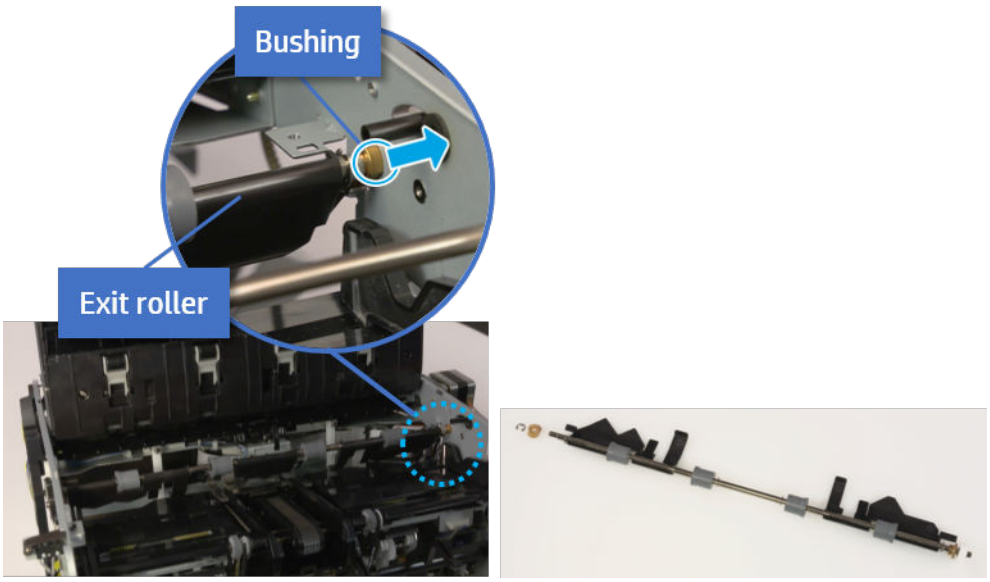
4. On the rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and the pulley and then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-155 Remove e-ring, pulley, and bushing



5. Push the bushing to detach it, and then remove the exit roller.

Figure 6-156 Remove the exit roller

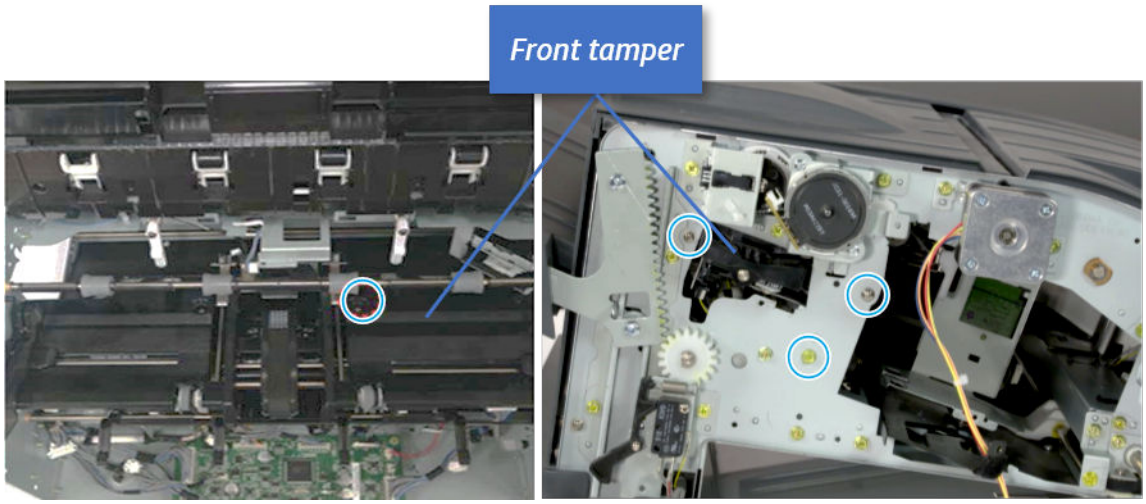


Remove the front tamper

Follow these steps to remove the front tamper.

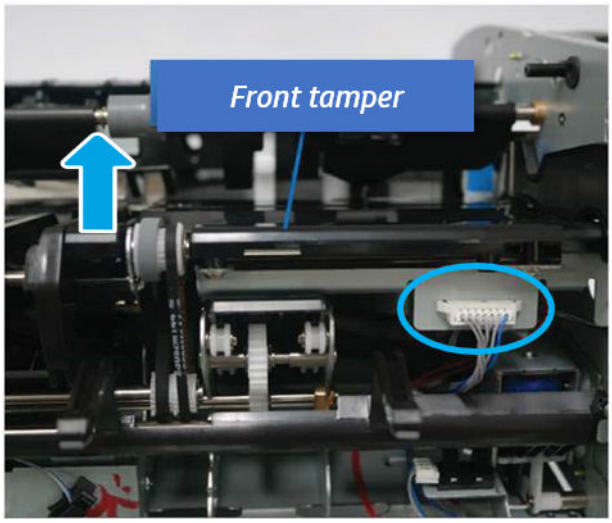
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-157 Remove four screws



2. Unplug the connector and release the hook, and then pull the front tamper up to remove.

Figure 6-158 Remove the front tamper



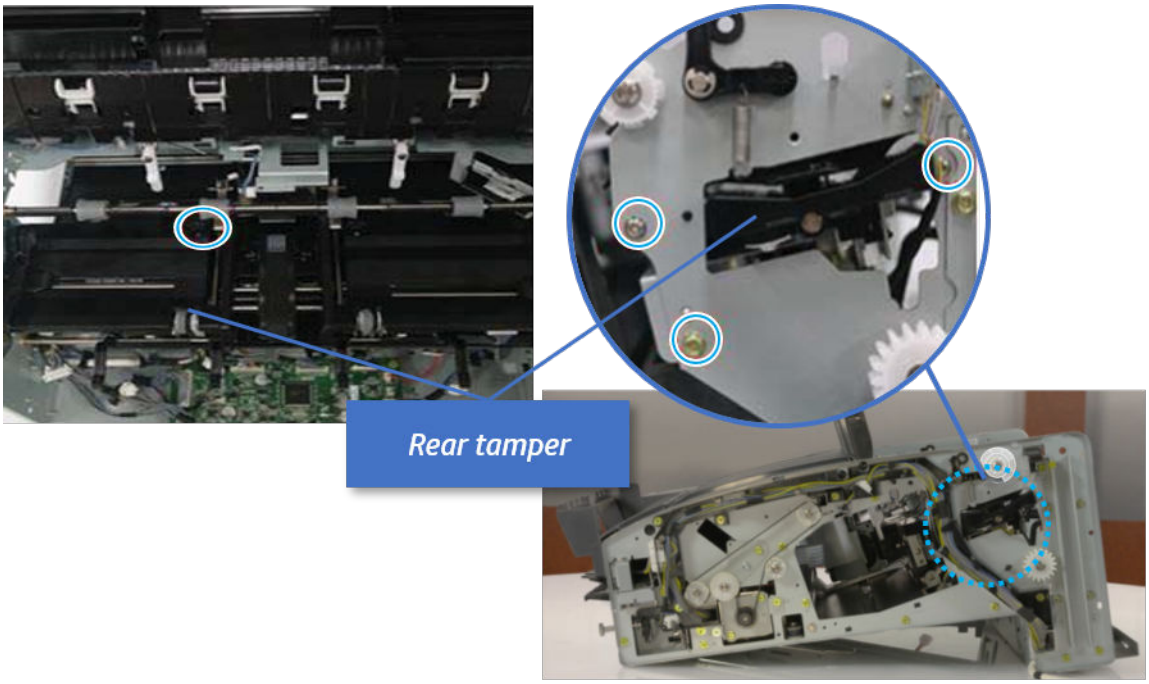
Remove the rear tamper

Follow these steps to remove the rear tamper.

1. Remove four screws.

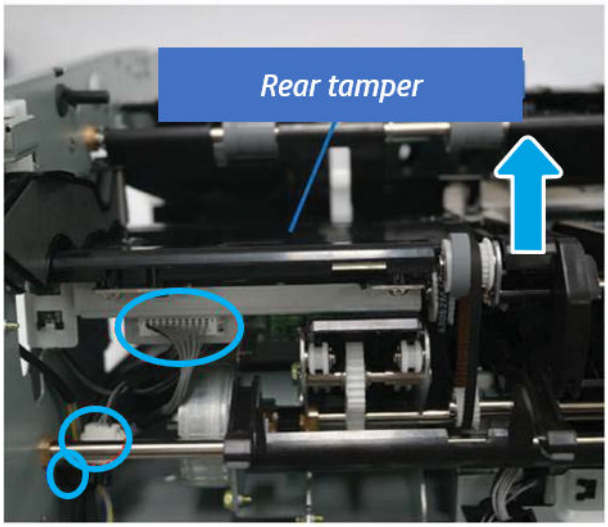
NOTE: Move cable guideout of position to access the screws.

Figure 6-159 Remove four screws



2. Unplug two connectors and release the hook, and then remove the rear tamper.

Figure 6-160 Remove the rear tamper

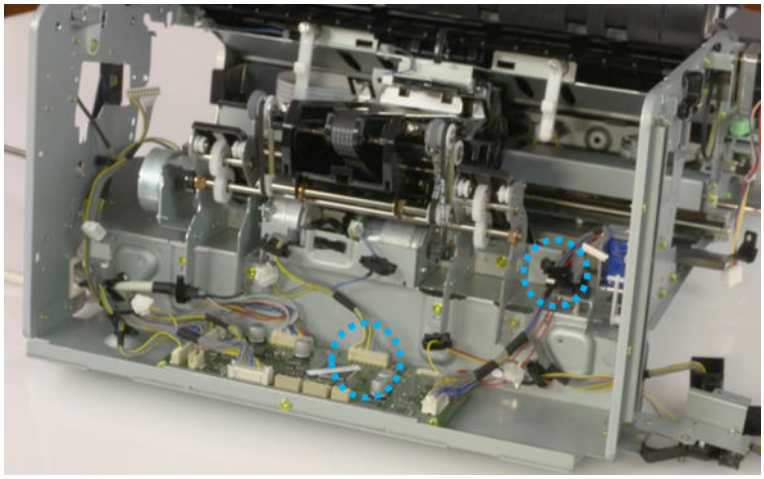


Remove the ejector & paper support assembly

Follow these steps to remove the ejector & paper support assembly.

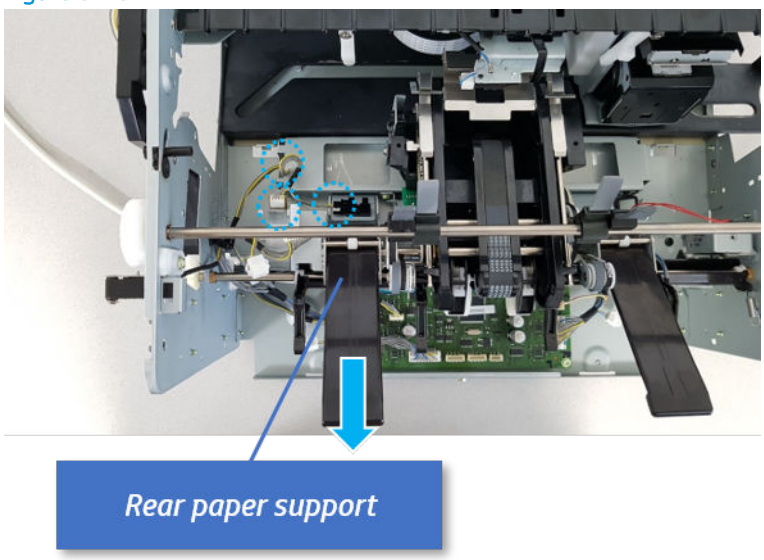
1. Open one clamp, disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-161 Disconnect one connector



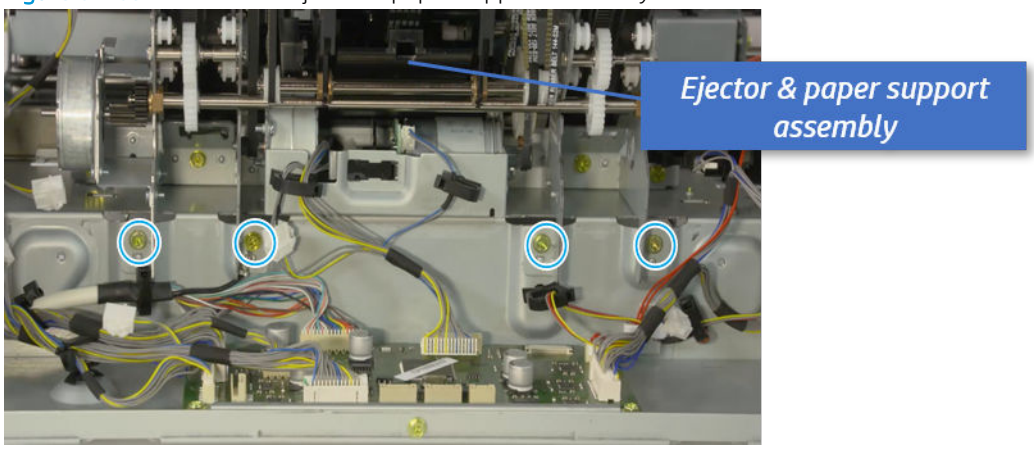
2. Pull the rear paper support up, and then release one clamp and disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-162 Disconnect two connector



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the ejector & paper support assembly.

Figure 6-163 Remove the ejector & paper support assembly

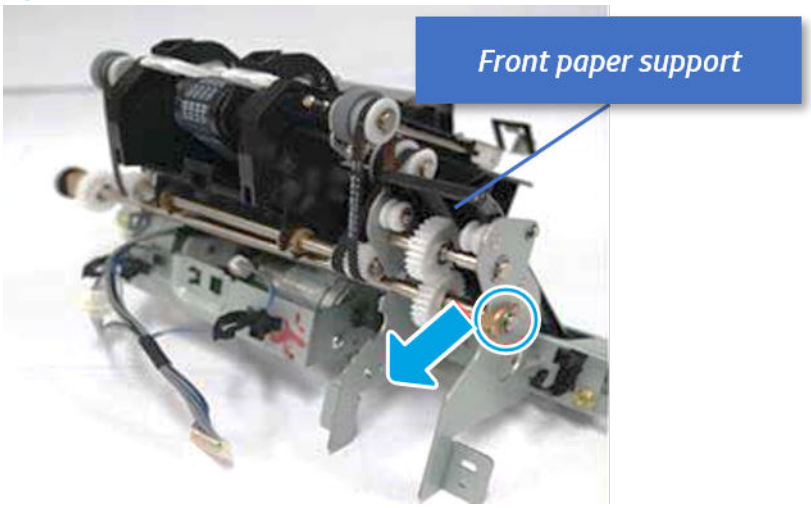


Remove the front paper support

Follow these steps to remove the front paper support.

1. Remove the e-ring and the bushinging, and then pull and remove the drive shaft.

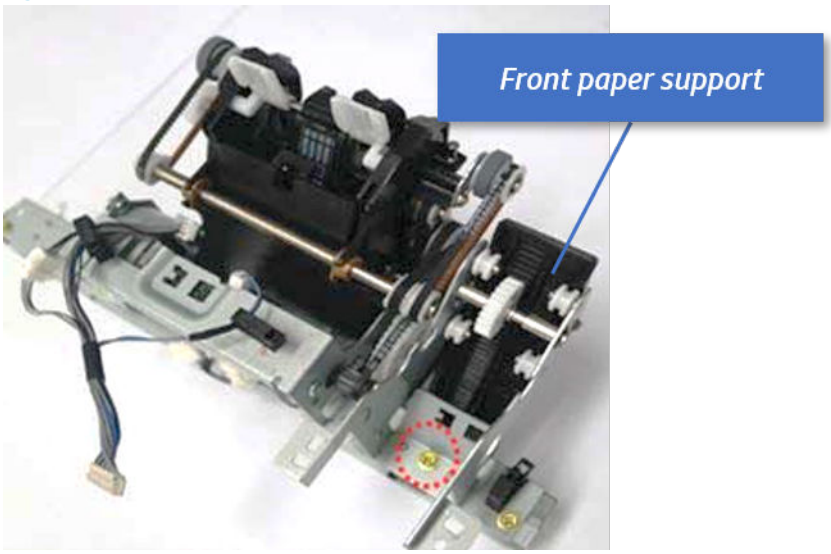
Figure 6-164 Remove the drive shaft



TIP: When reassembling the drive shaft, ensure the paper supports are in the full down position(against the stops).

2. Remove one screw, and then remove the front paper support.

Figure 6-165 Remove the front paper support



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Rear paper support

HP LaserJet Managed MFP E82540du-E82560du, E87640du-E87660du, E82540-E82560, E87640-E87660, E72525-E72535, E77822-E77830 - Rear paper support

Learn how to remove and replace the rear paper support.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-43 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01311A	Rear paper support

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

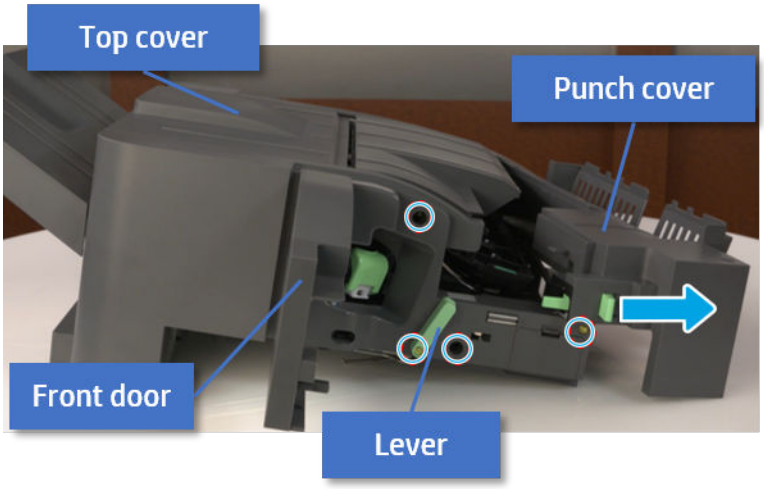
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-166 Remove the front cover

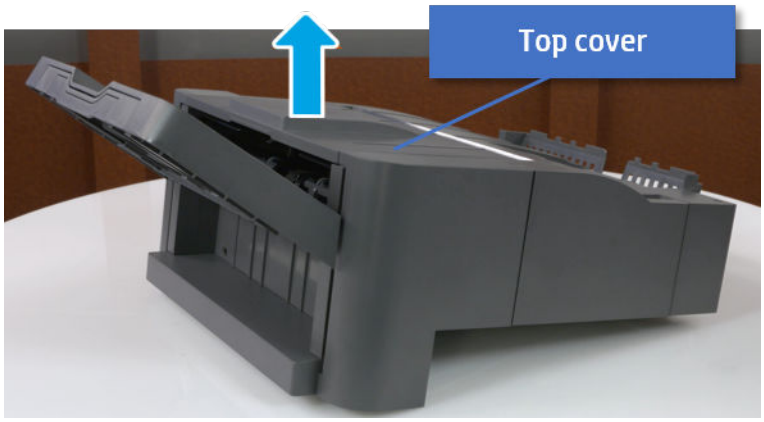


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

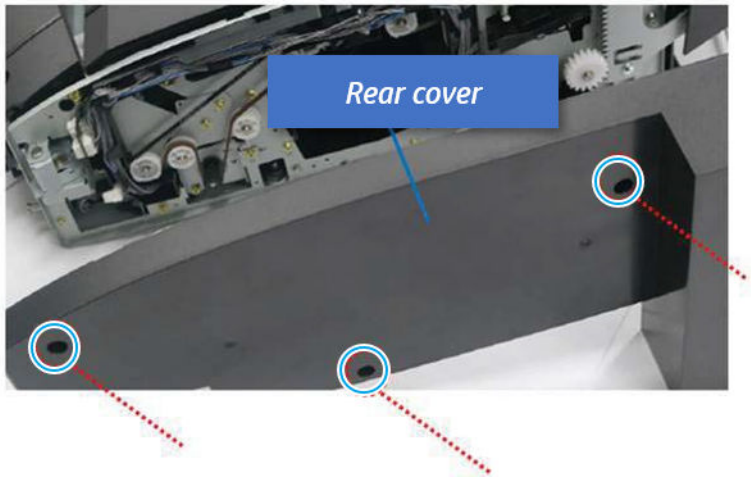
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-167 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-168 Remove the rear cover

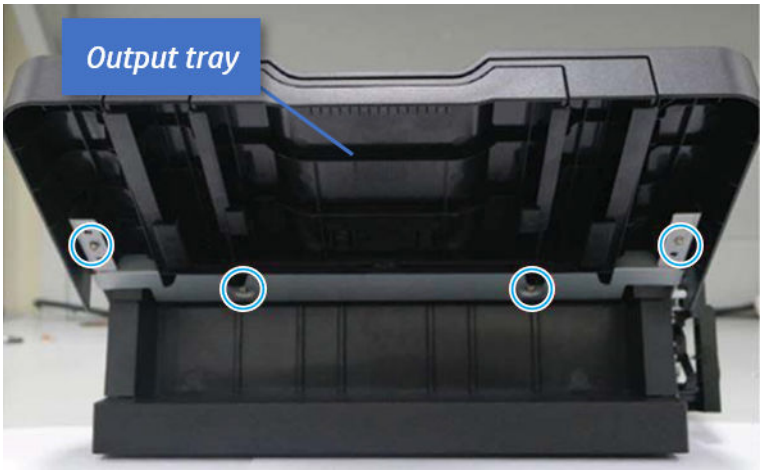


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-169 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

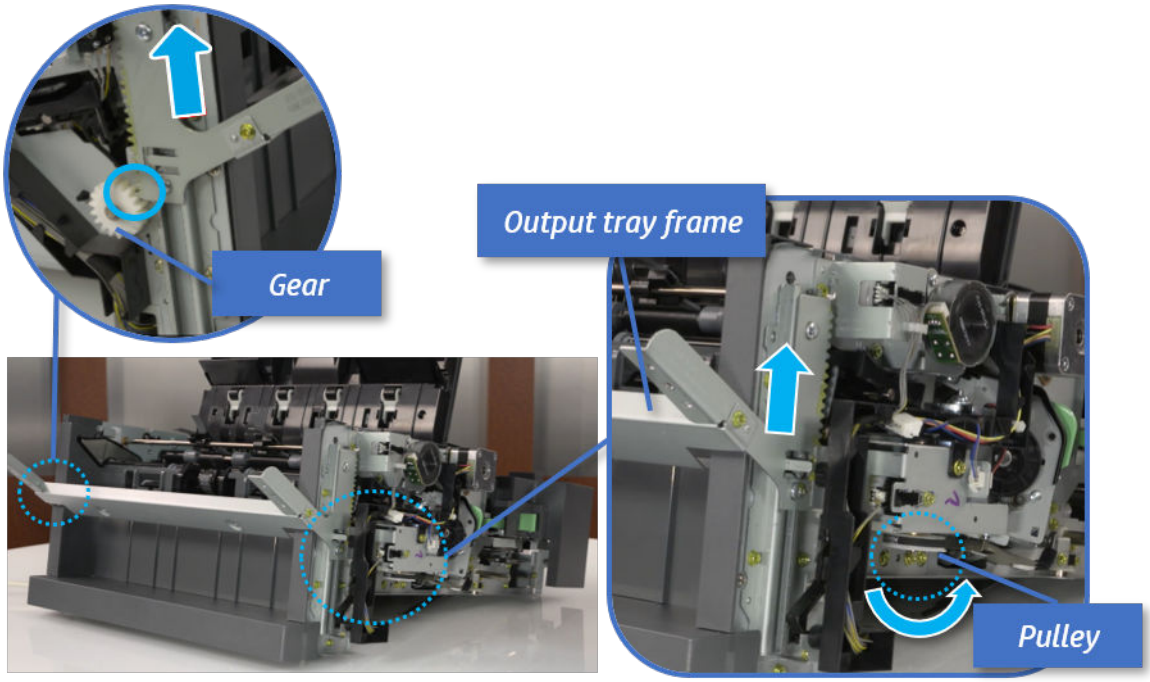
Figure 6-170 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

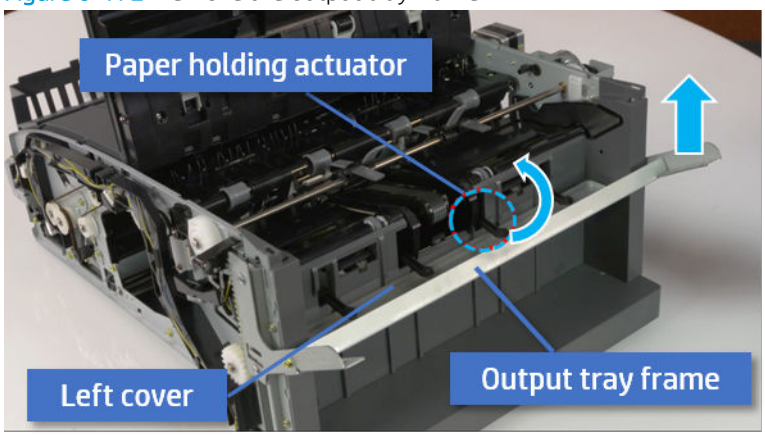
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-171 Remove the pulley



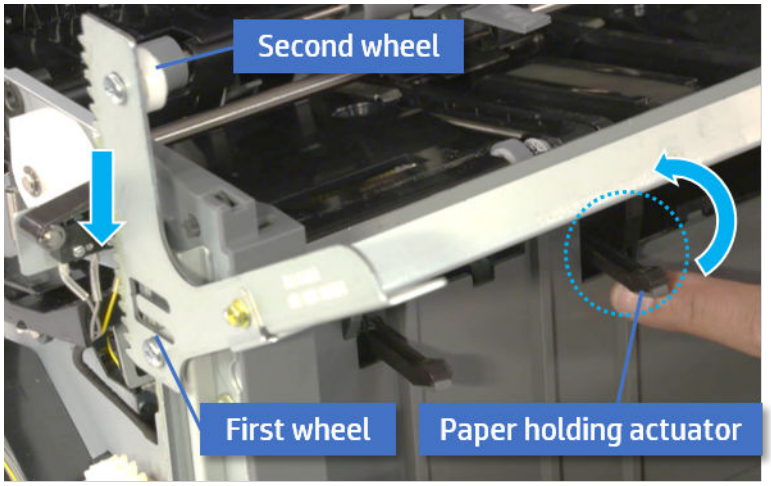
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-172 Remove the output tray frame



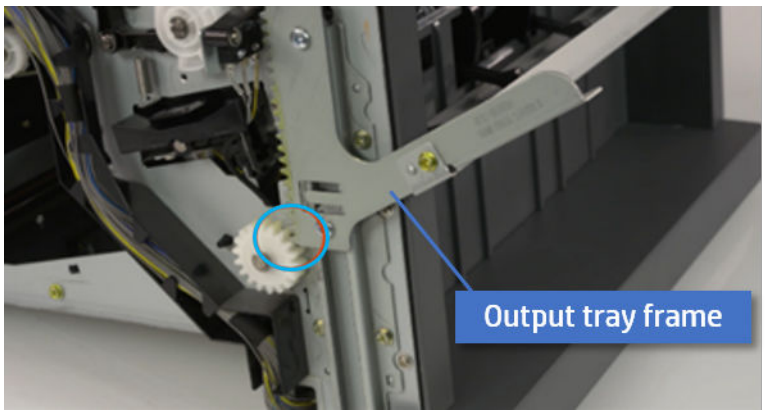
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

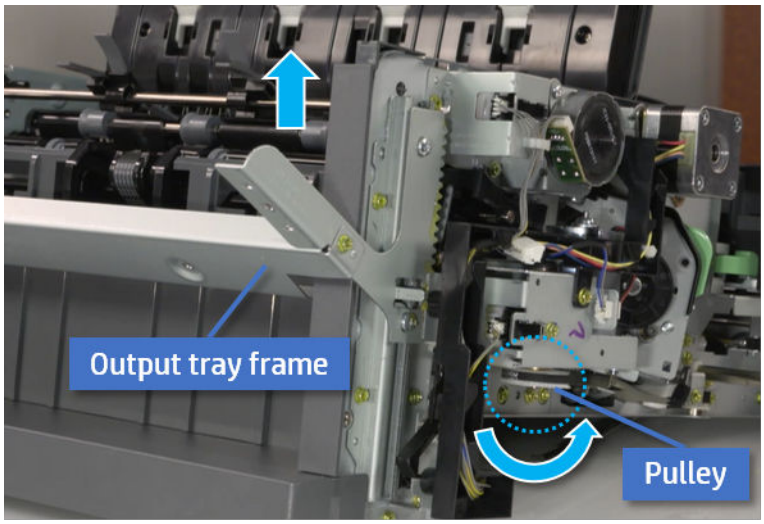


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

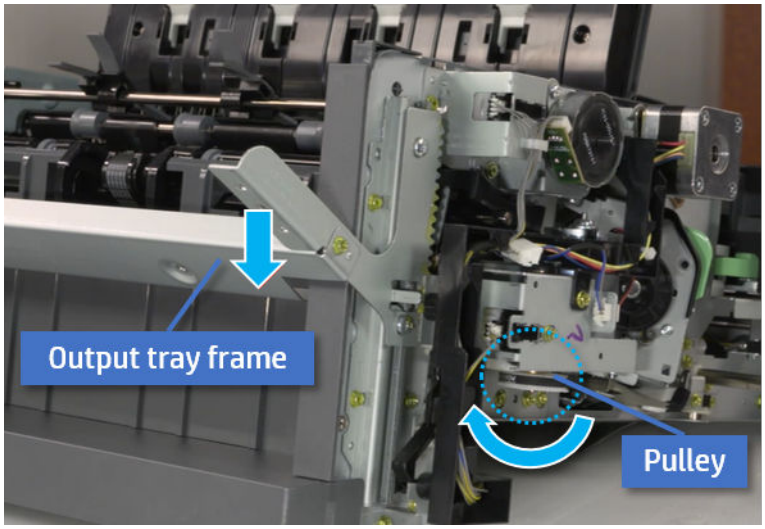
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

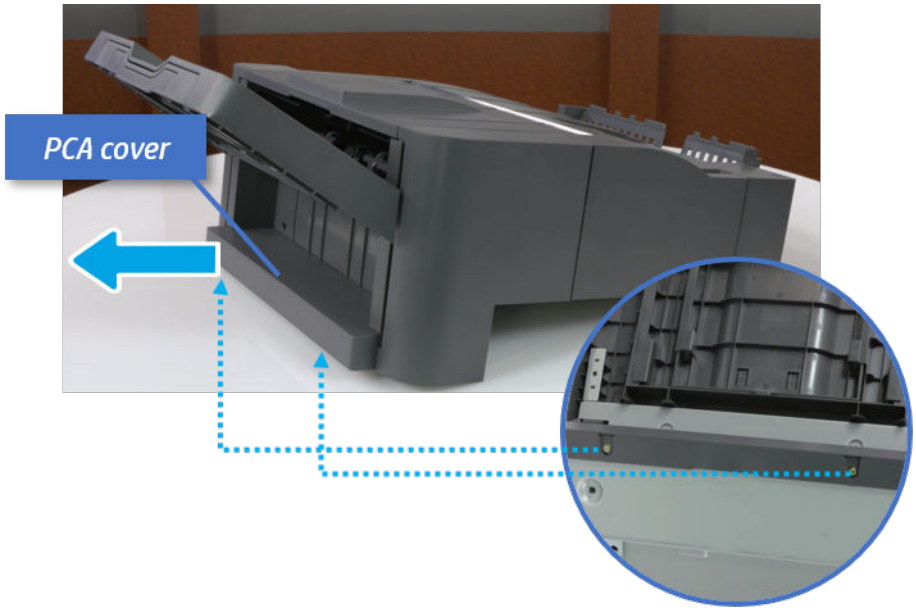


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-173 Remove the PCA cover

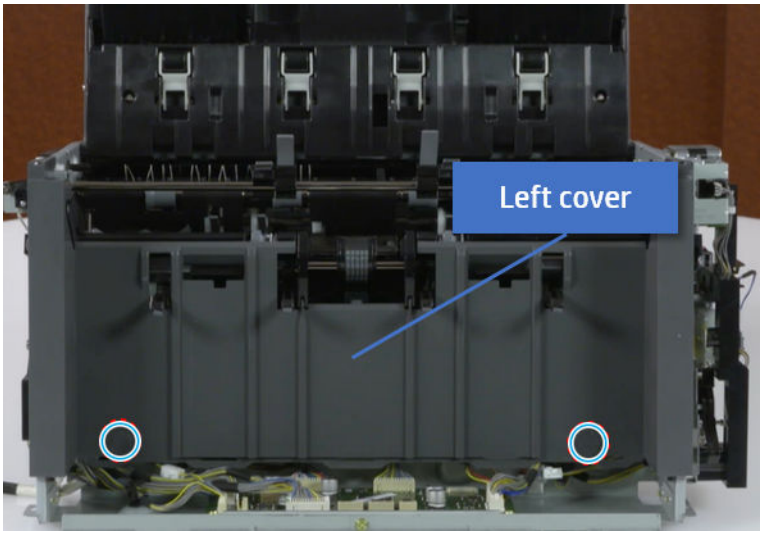


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

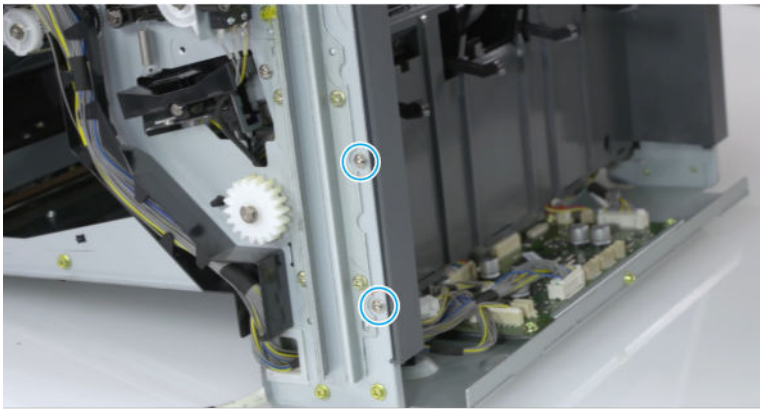
1. Remove two screws.

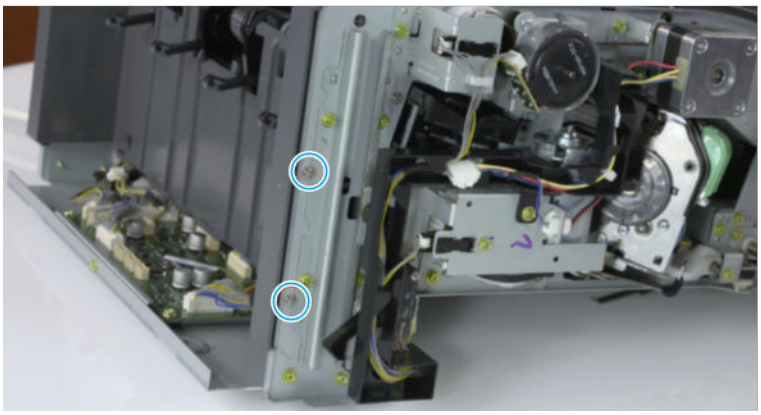
Figure 6-174 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

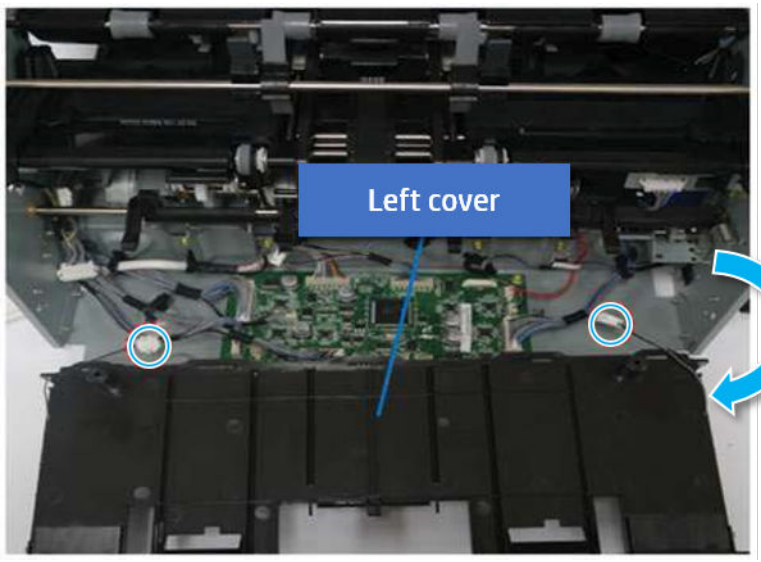
Figure 6-175 Remove four screws



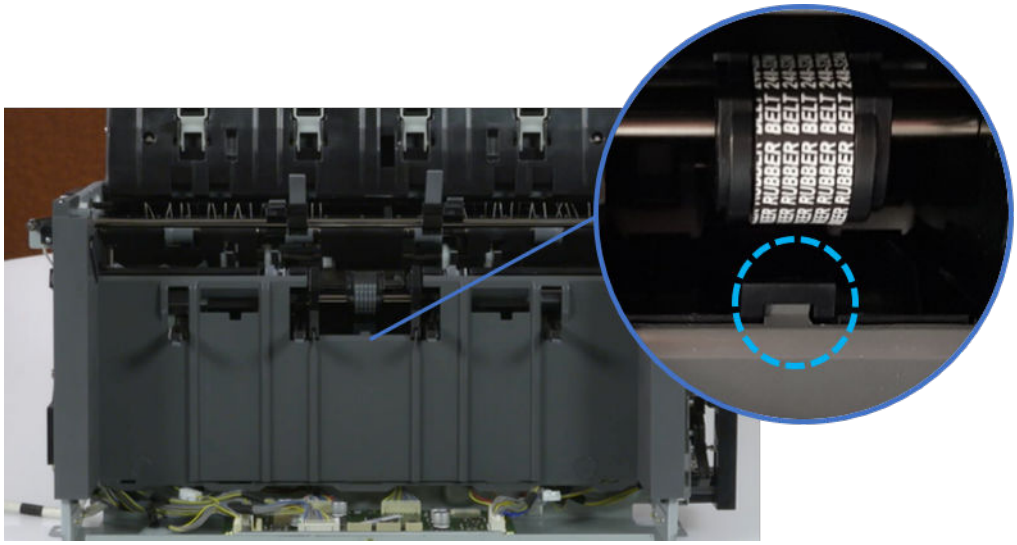


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-176 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



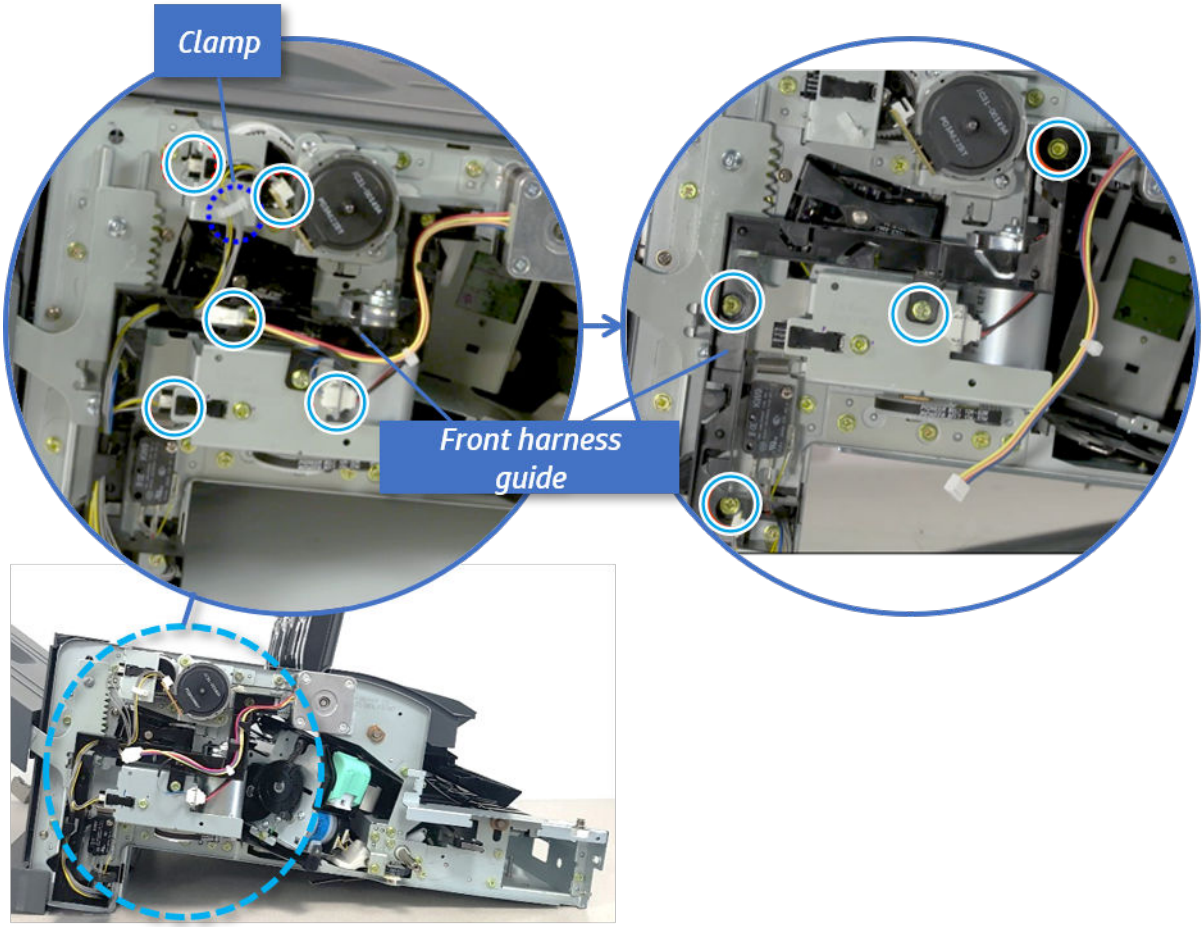
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-177 Remove the front harness guide

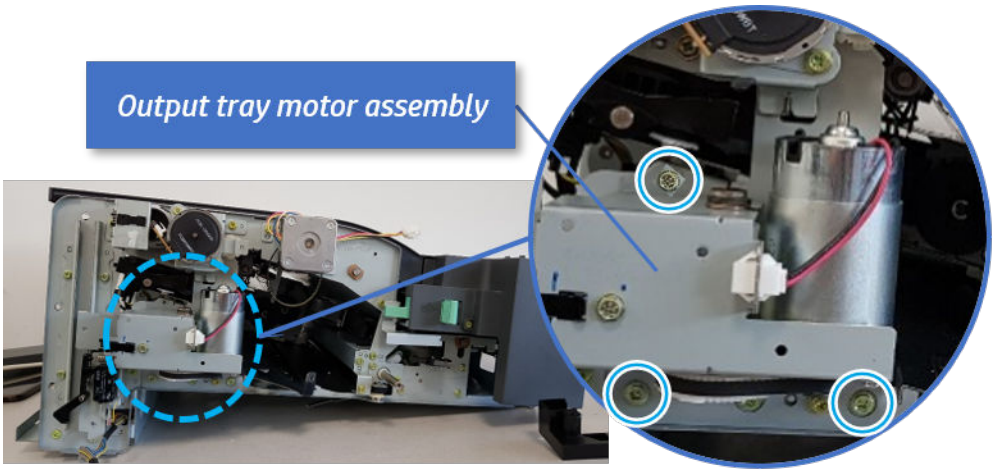


Remove the output tray motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor assembly.

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-178 Remove the output tray motor assembly

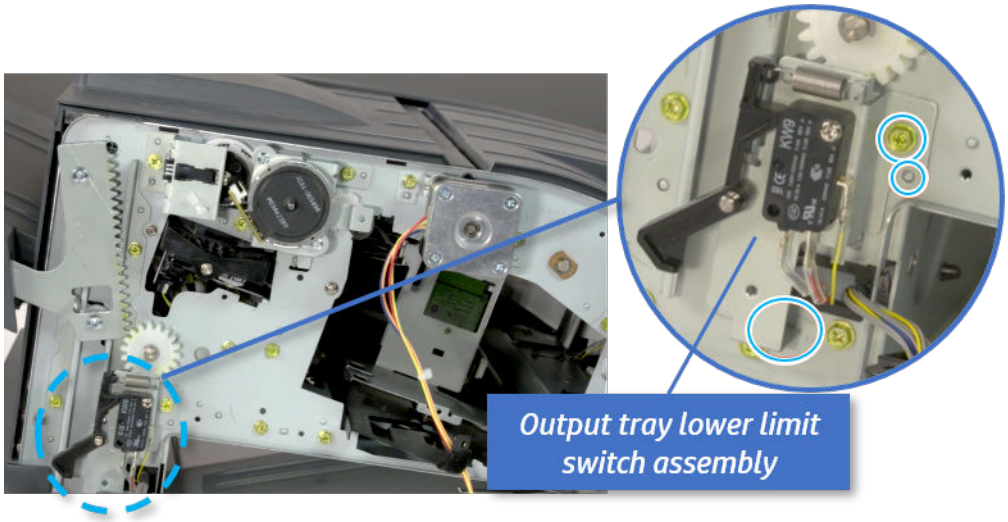


Remove the output tray lower limit switch

Follow these steps to remove the output tray lower limit switch.

▲ Remove one screw, and then remove the output tray lower limit switch.

Figure 6-179 Remove the output tray lower limit switch

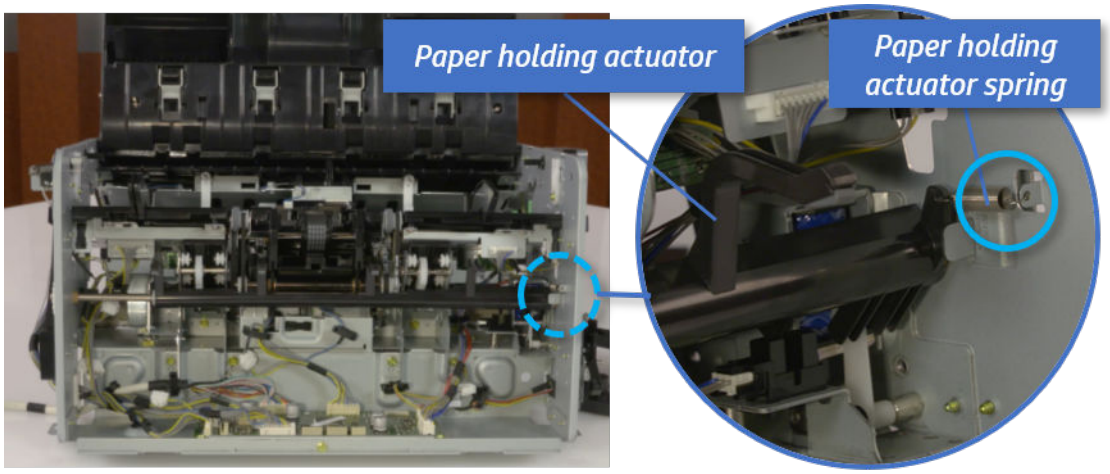


Remove the paper holding

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding.

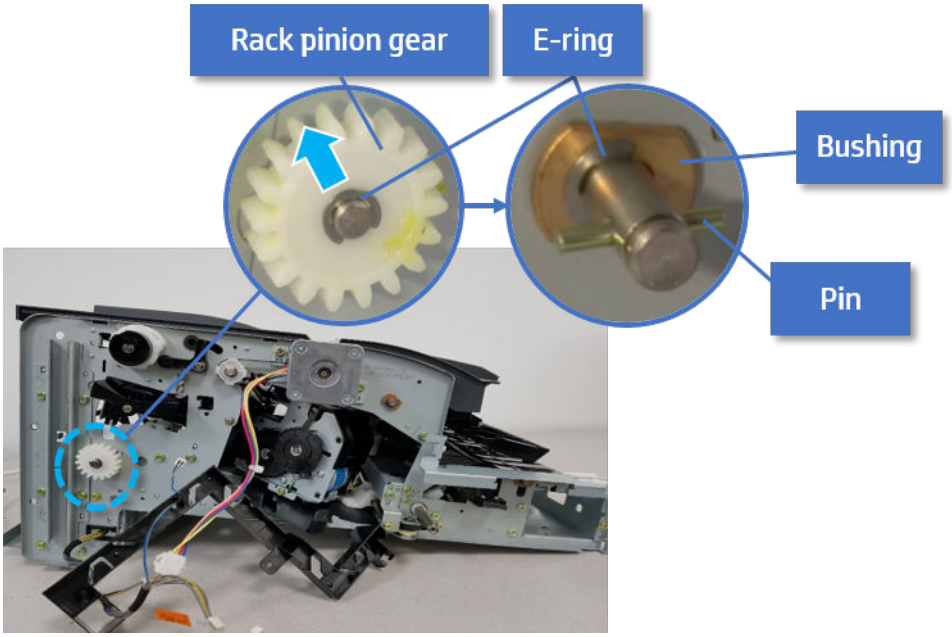
1. Remove the paper holding actuator spring.

Figure 6-180 Remove the paper holding actuator spring



2. Remove the e-ring and the rack pinion gear. And then remove the pin and the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

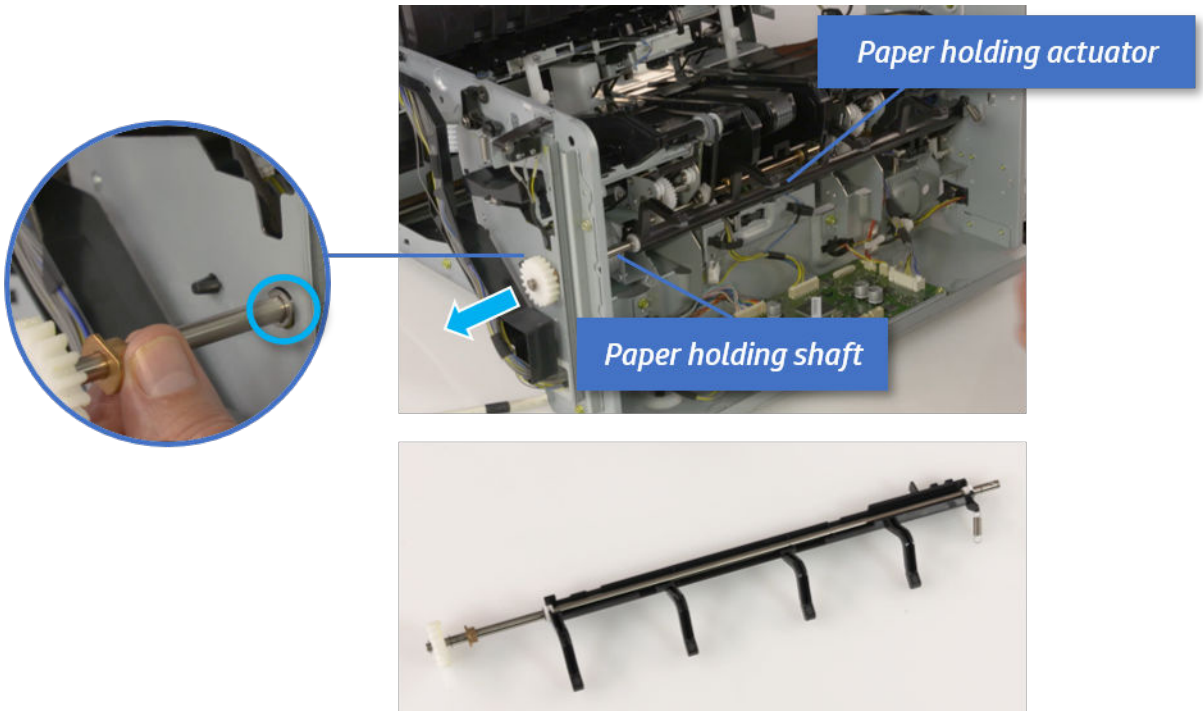
Figure 6-181 Remove e-ring, rack pinion gear, pin, and bushing



NOTE: Be sure not to lose the pin.

3. Carefully remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator.

Figure 6-182 Remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator

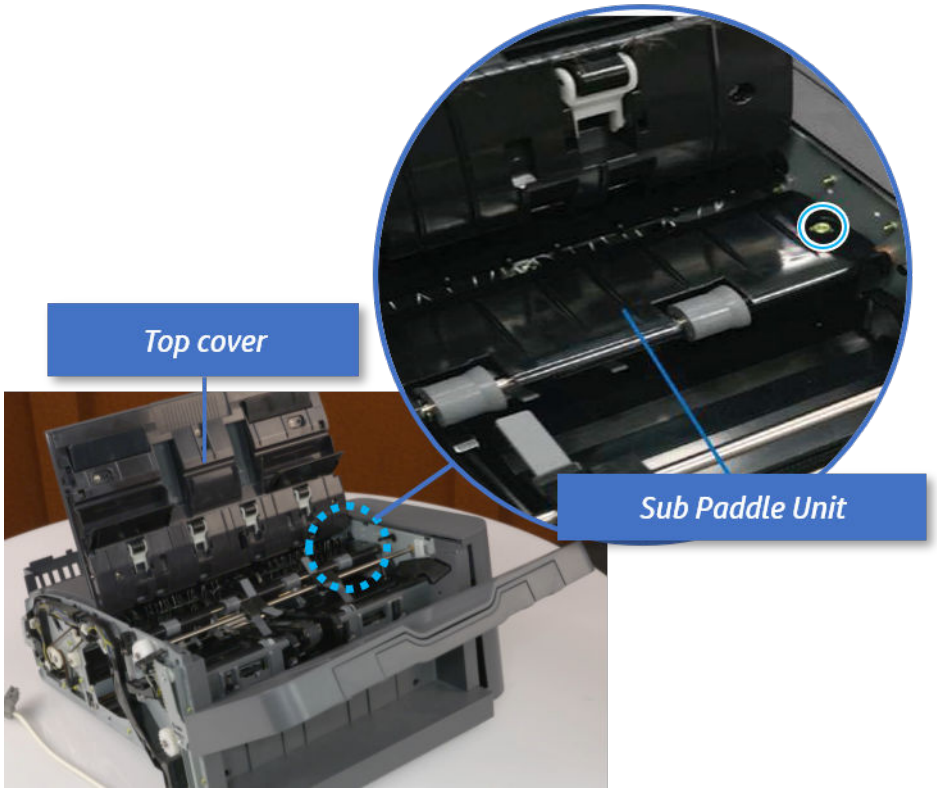


Remove the sub paddle unit

Follow these steps to remove the sub paddle unit.

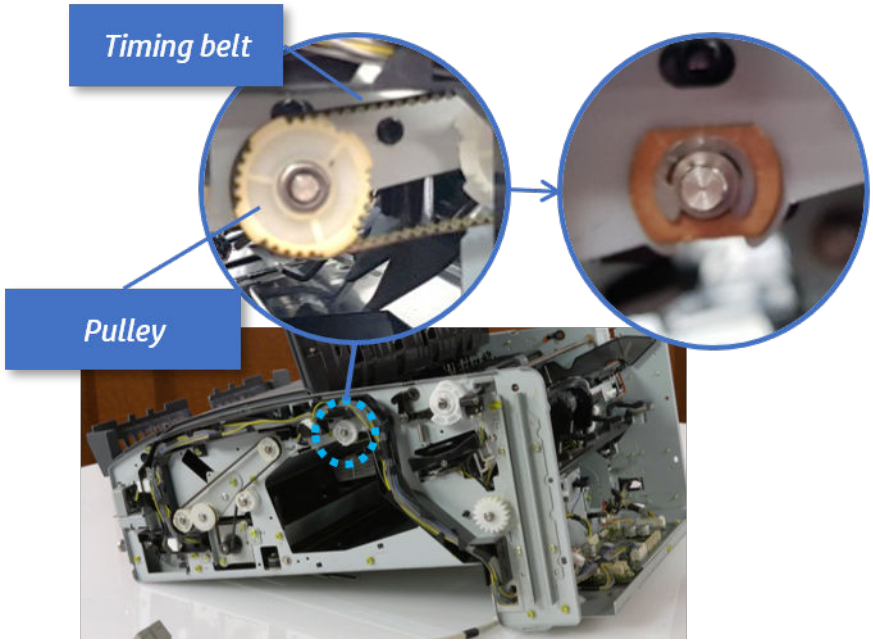
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw securing the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-183 Remove one screw



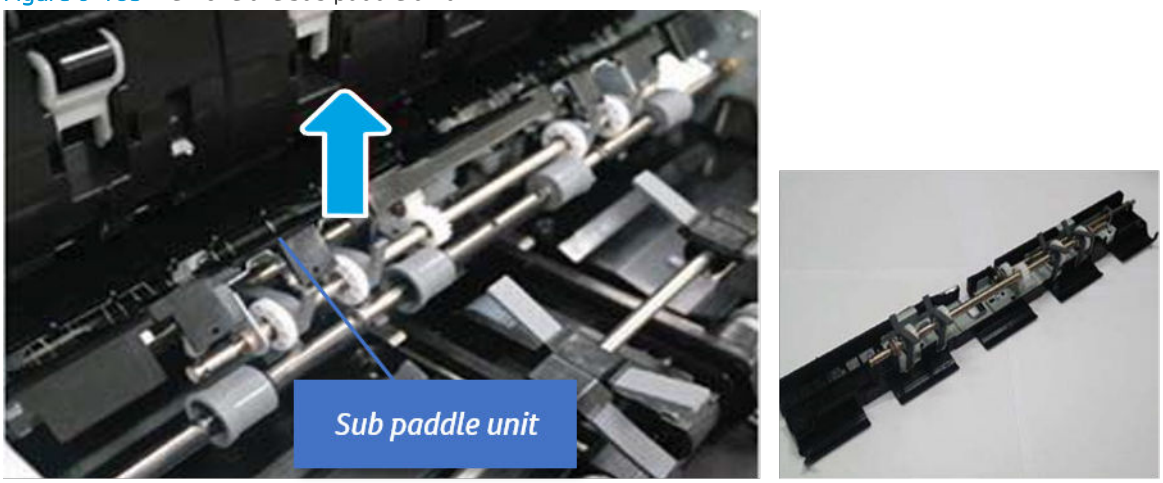
2. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt. And then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-184 Remove the e-ring, pulley, timing belt, and bushing



3. Lift up and remove the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-185 Remove the sub paddle unit

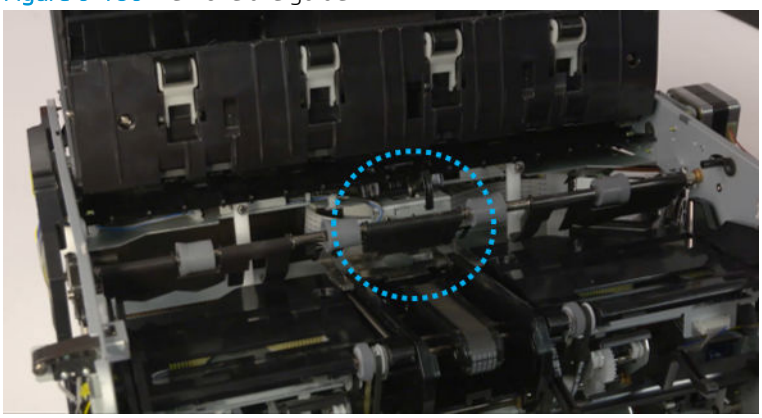


Remove the exit roller

Follow these steps to remove the exit roller.

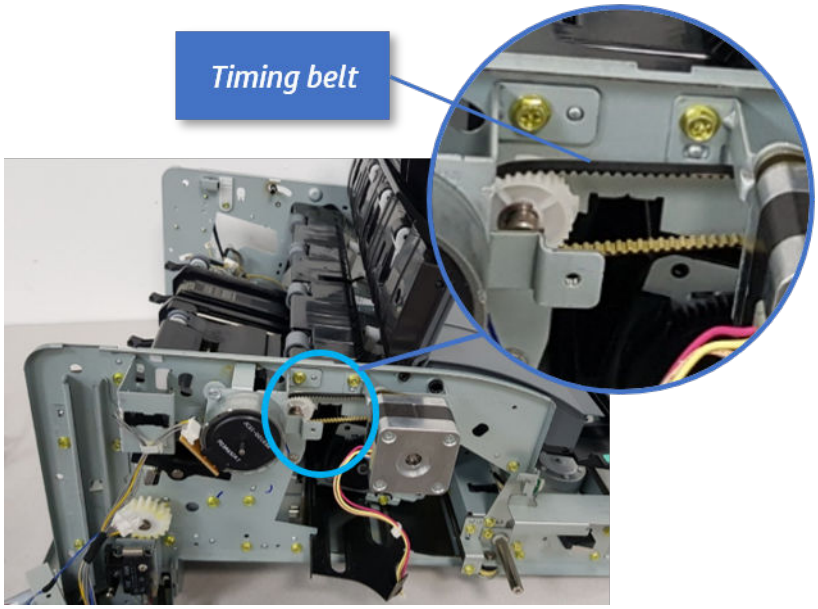
1. Remove the guide on the center of the exit roller.

Figure 6-186 Remove the guide



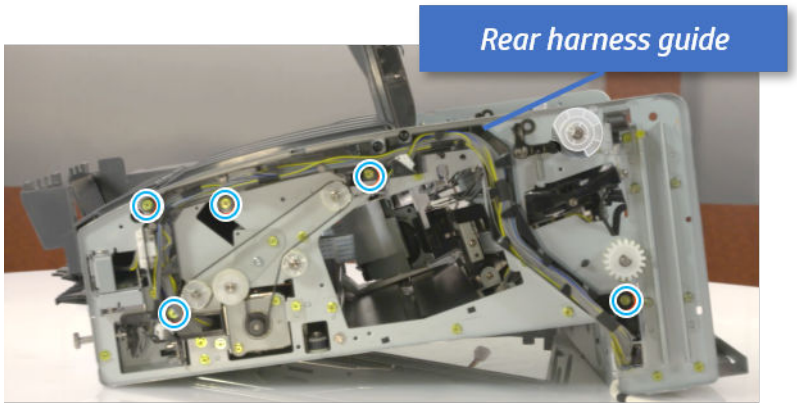
2. On the front of the inner finisher, release the timing belt connected to the exit motor.

Figure 6-187 Release the timing belt



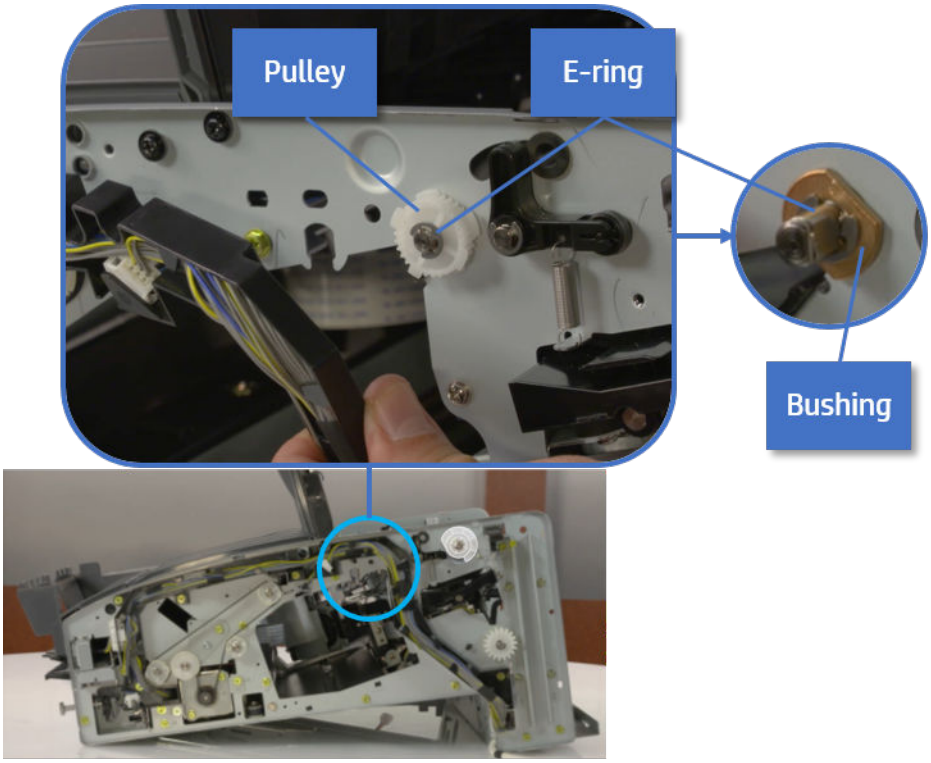
3. Remove five screws securing the rear harness guide.

Figure 6-188 Remove five screws



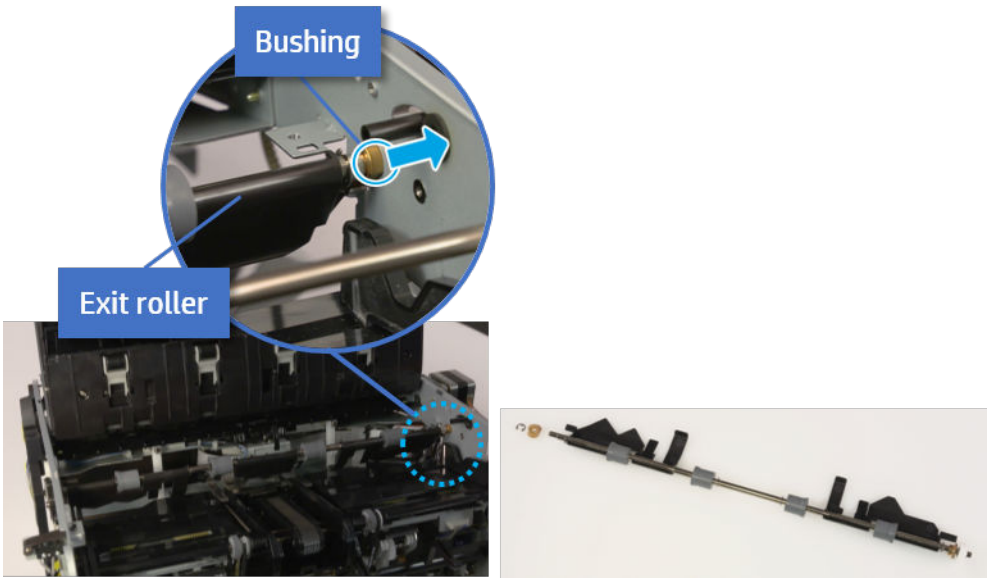
4. On the rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and the pulley and then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-189 Remove e-ring, pulley, and bushing



5. Push the bushing to detach it, and then remove the exit roller.

Figure 6-190 Remove the exit roller

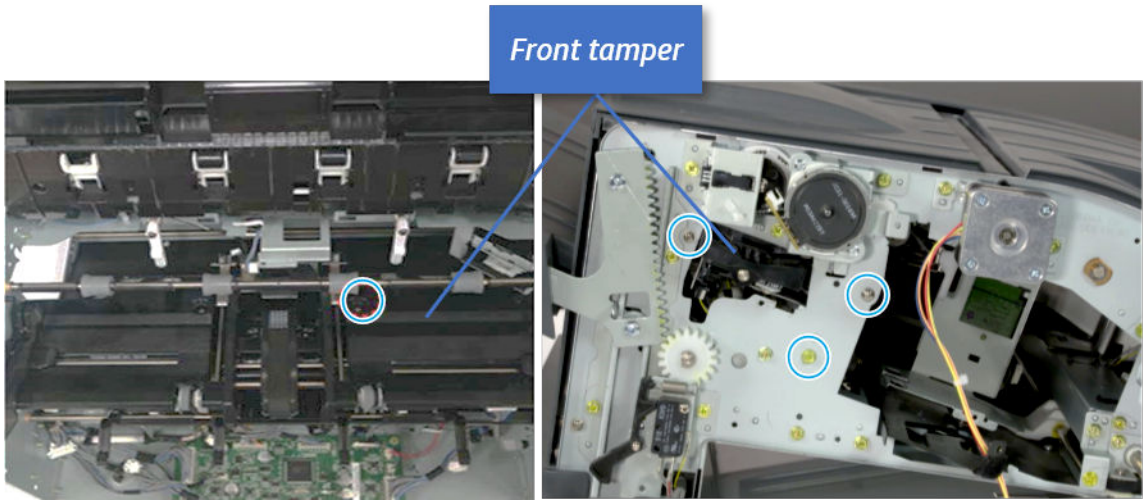


Remove the front tamper

Follow these steps to remove the front tamper.

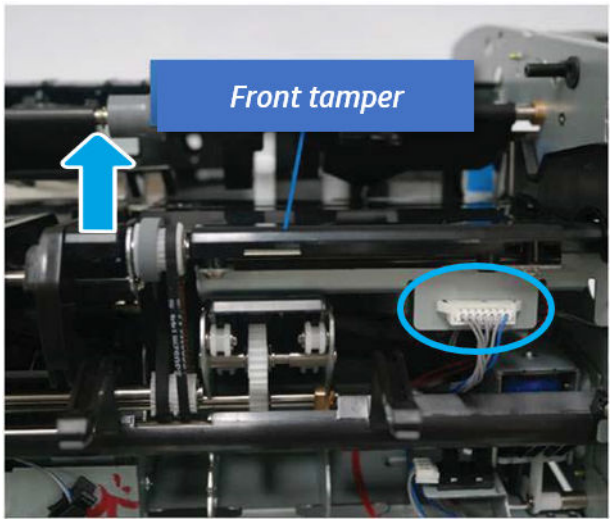
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-191 Remove four screws



2. Unplug the connector and release the hook, and then pull the front tamper up to remove.

Figure 6-192 Remove the front tamper



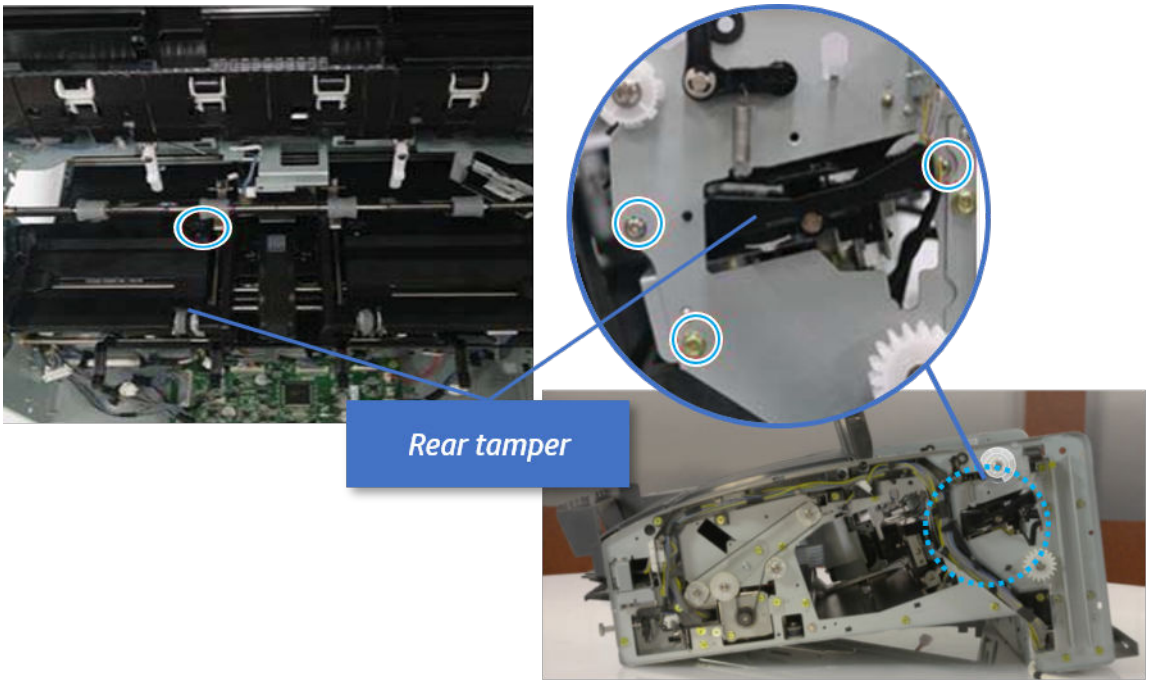
Remove the rear tamper

Follow these steps to remove the rear tamper.

1. Remove four screws.

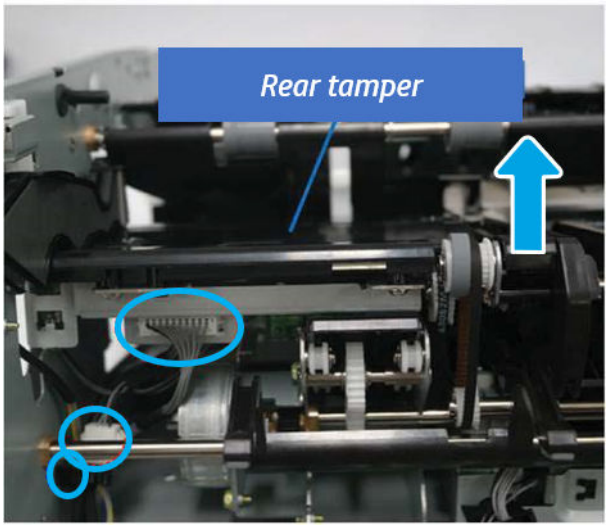
NOTE: Move cable guideout of position to access the screws.

Figure 6-193 Remove four screws



2. Unplug two connectors and release the hook, and then remove the rear tamper.

Figure 6-194 Remove the rear tamper

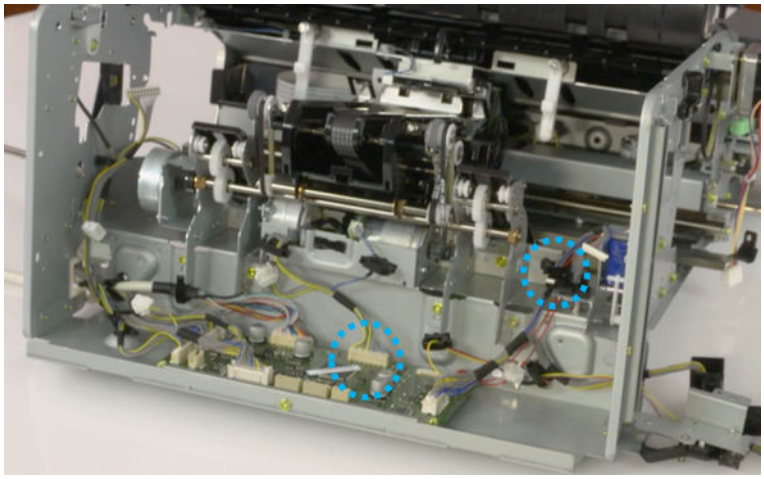


Remove the ejector & paper support assembly

Follow these steps to remove the ejector & paper support assembly.

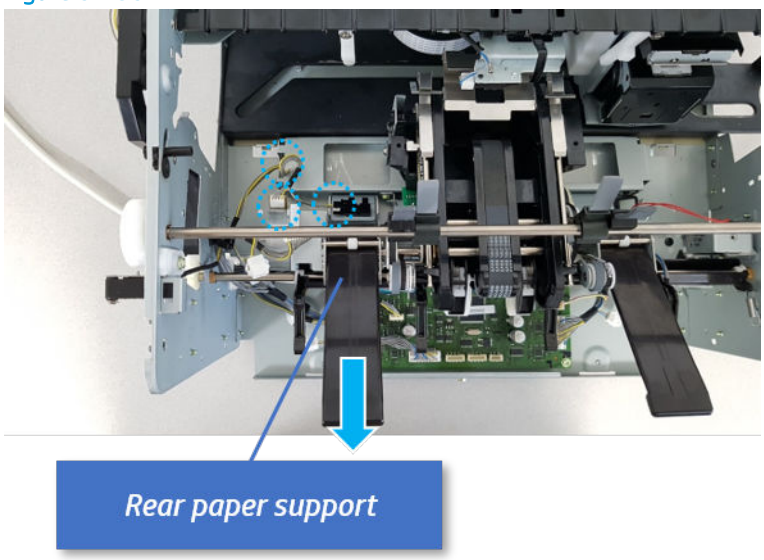
1. Open one clamp, disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-195 Disconnect one connector



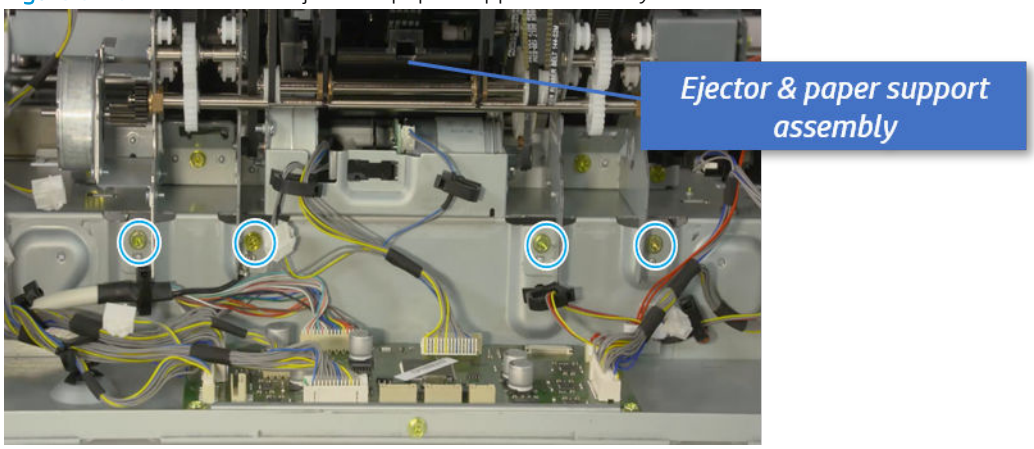
2. Pull the rear paper support up, and then release one clamp and disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-196 Disconnect two connector



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the ejector & paper support assembly.

Figure 6-197 Remove the ejector & paper support assembly

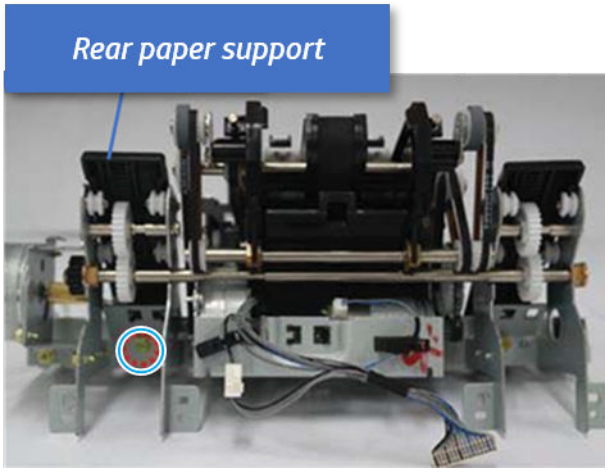


Remove the rear paper support

Follow these steps to remove the rear paper support.

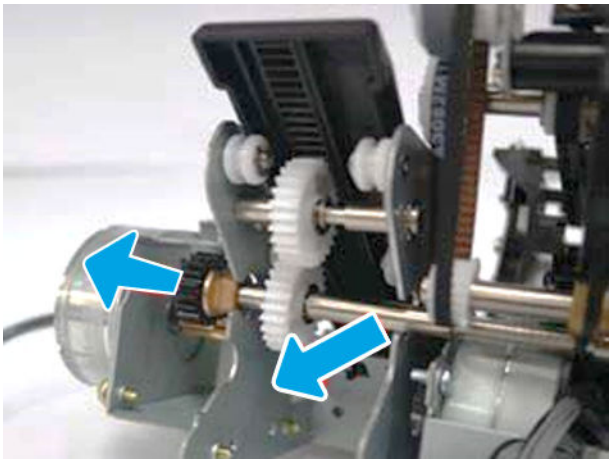
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-198 Remove one screw



2. Remove the shaft while pulling the bushinging in the direction of the arrow.

Figure 6-199 Remove the shaft



3. Remove the rear paper support with attention for pinion.

Figure 6-200 Remove the rear paper support

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper support home sensor (S12)

Learn how to remove and replace the paper support home sensor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-44 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Paper support home sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

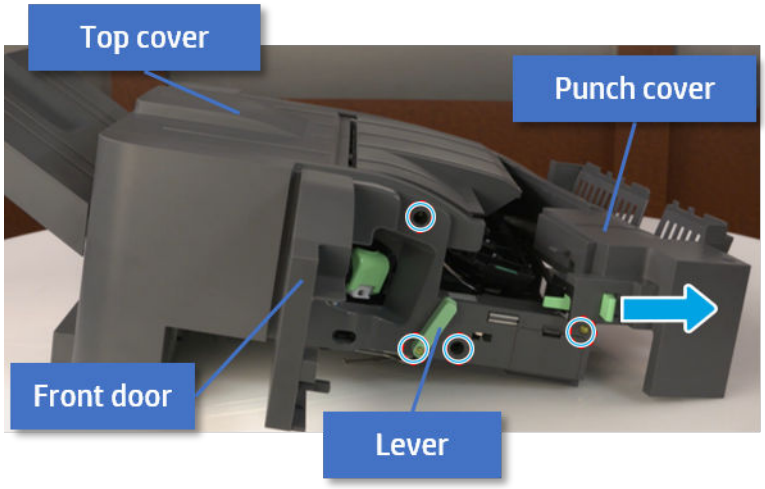
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-201 Remove the front cover

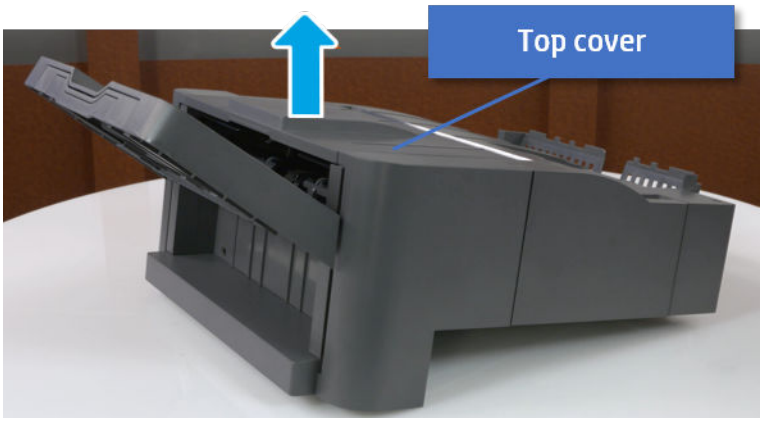


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

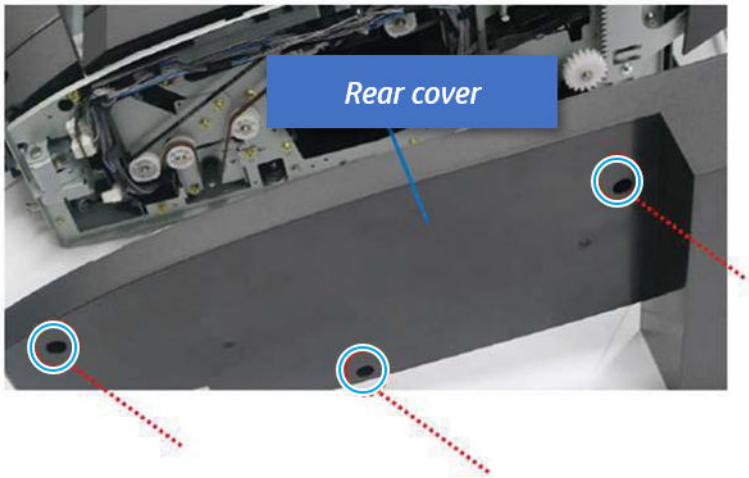
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-202 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-203 Remove the rear cover

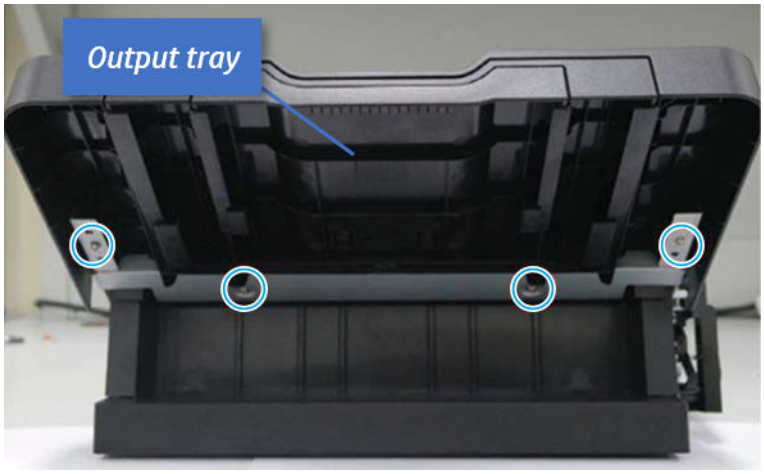


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-204 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

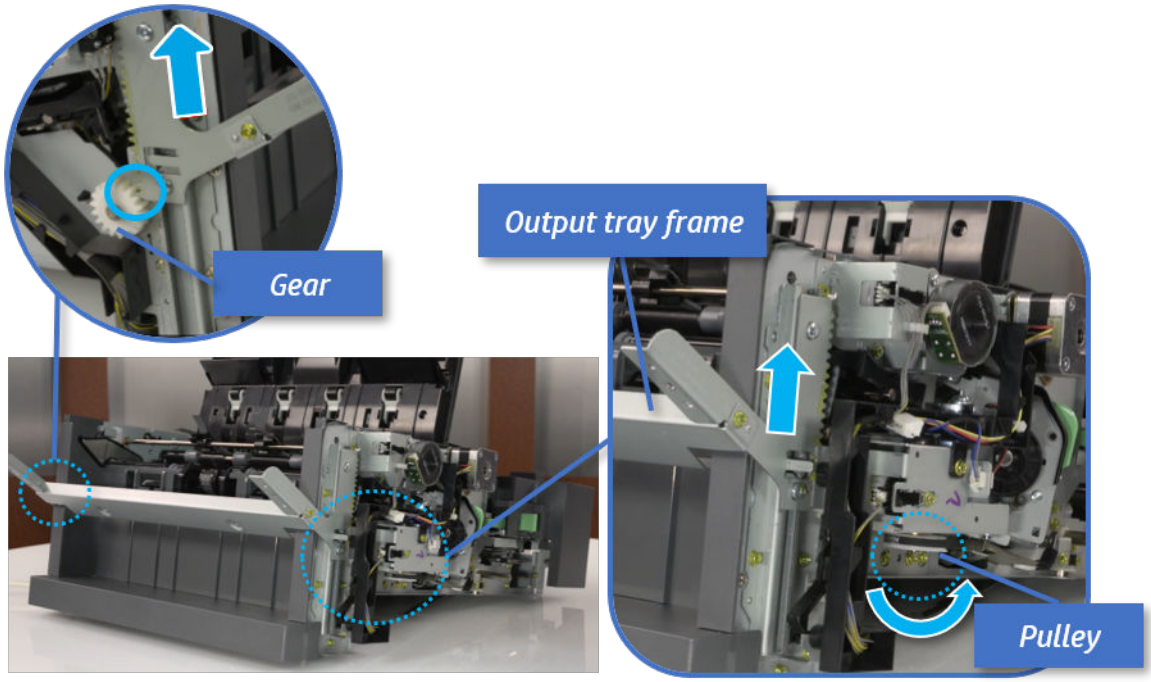
Figure 6-205 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

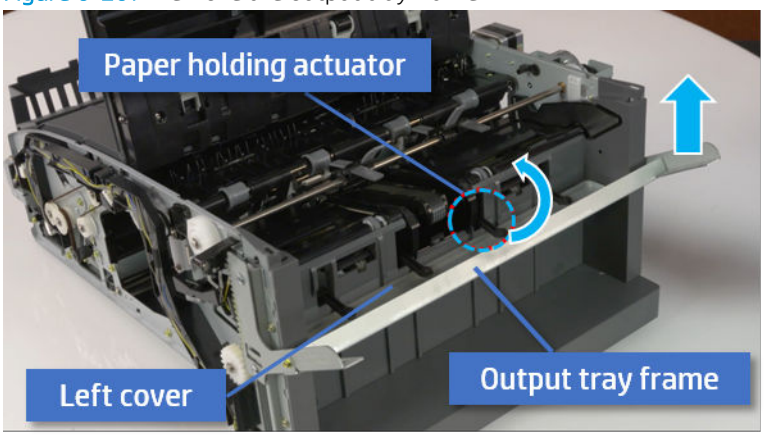
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-206 Remove the pulley



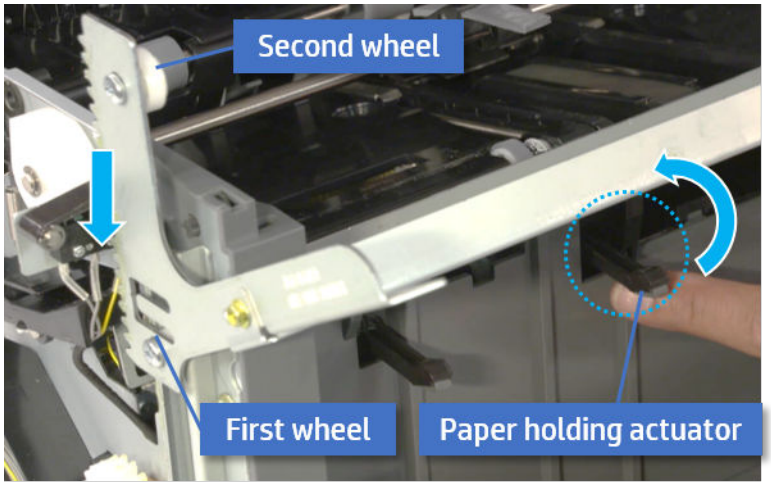
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-207 Remove the output tray frame



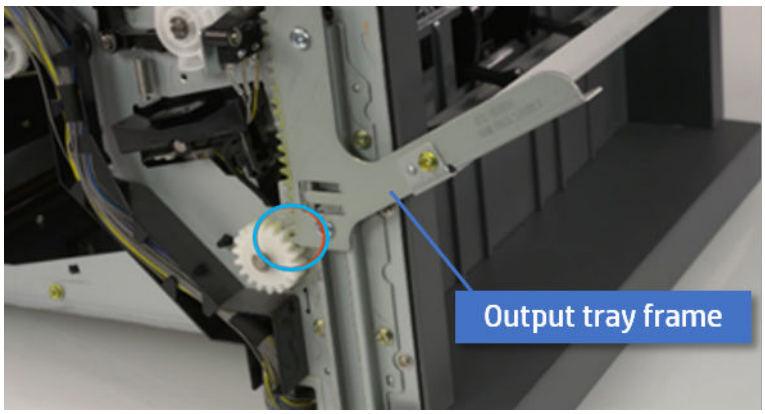
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

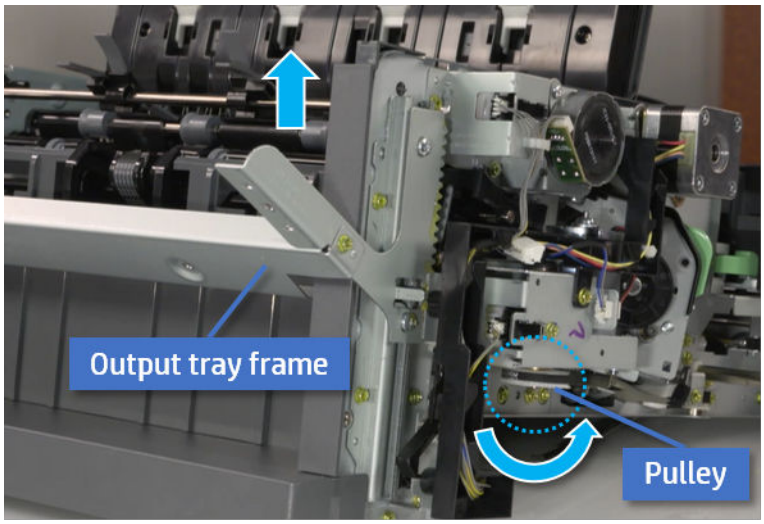


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

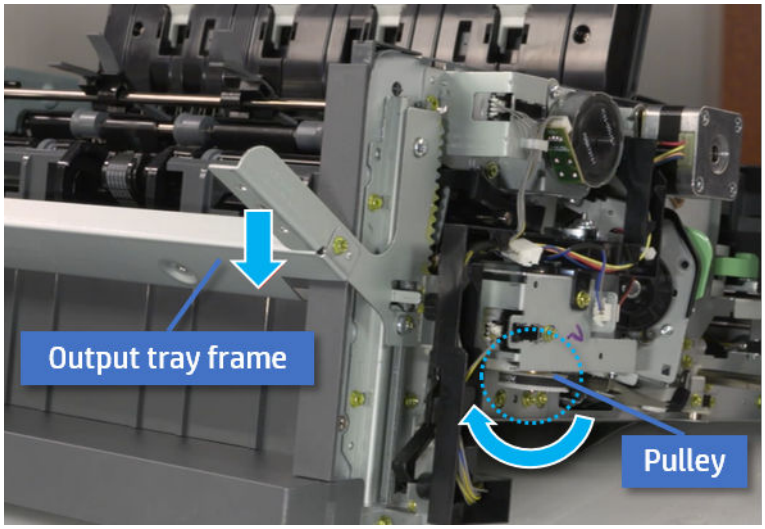
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

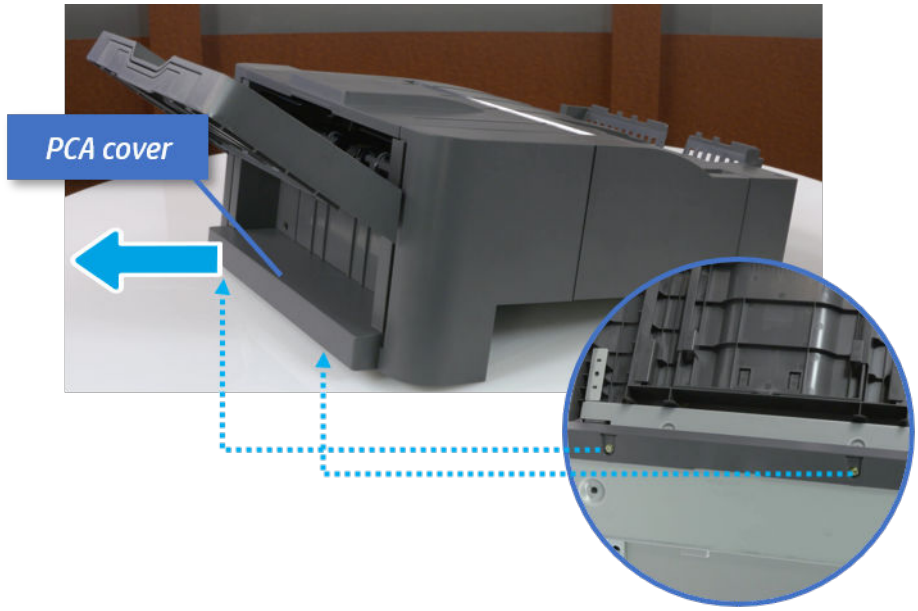


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

- ▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-208 Remove the PCA cover

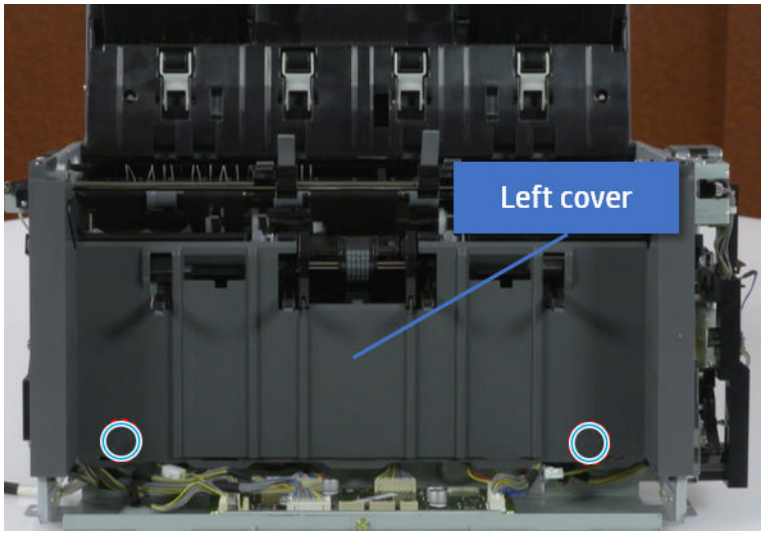


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

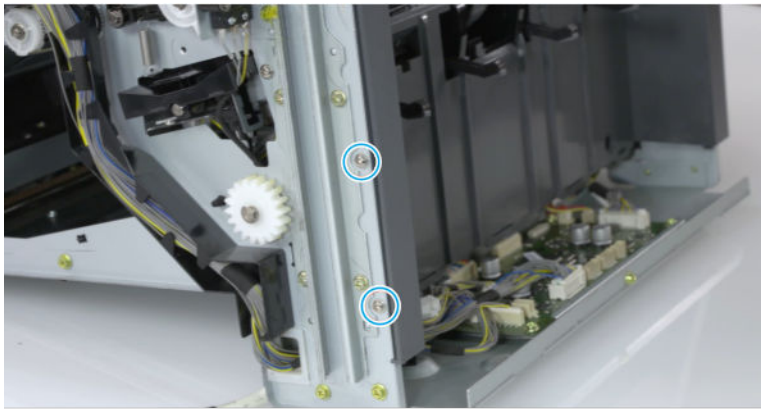
1. Remove two screws.

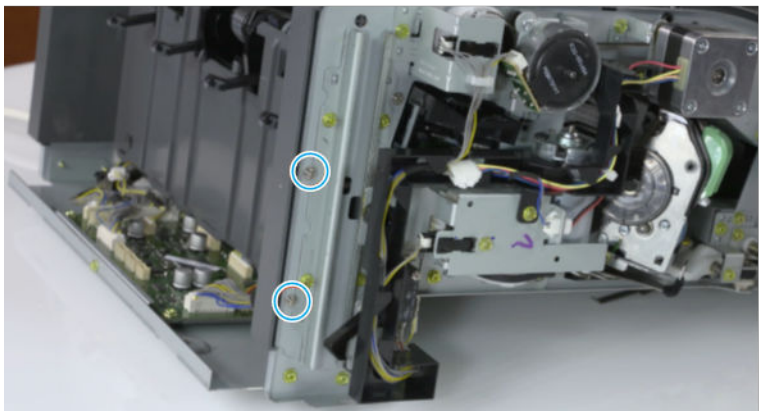
Figure 6-209 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

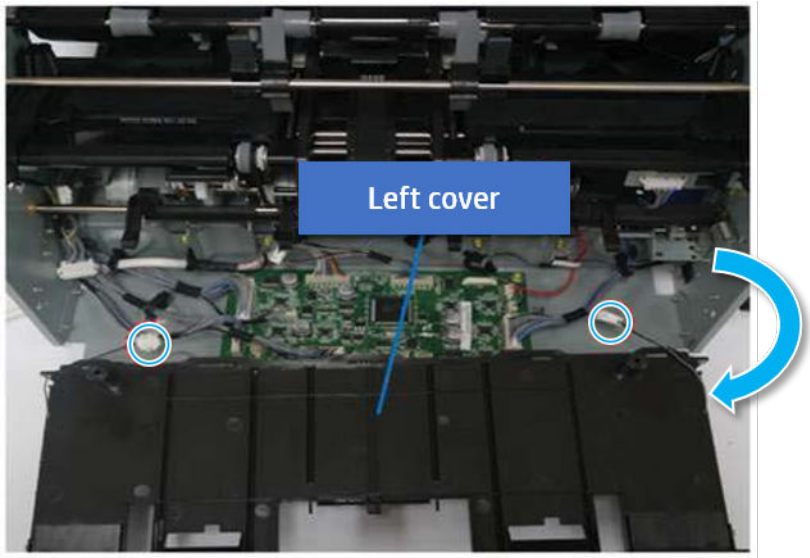
Figure 6-210 Remove four screws



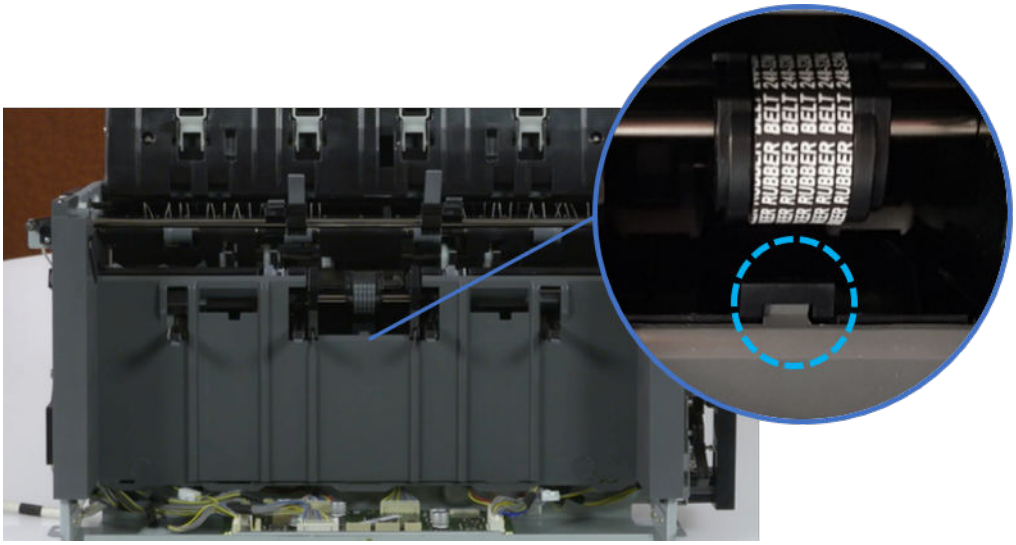


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-211 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



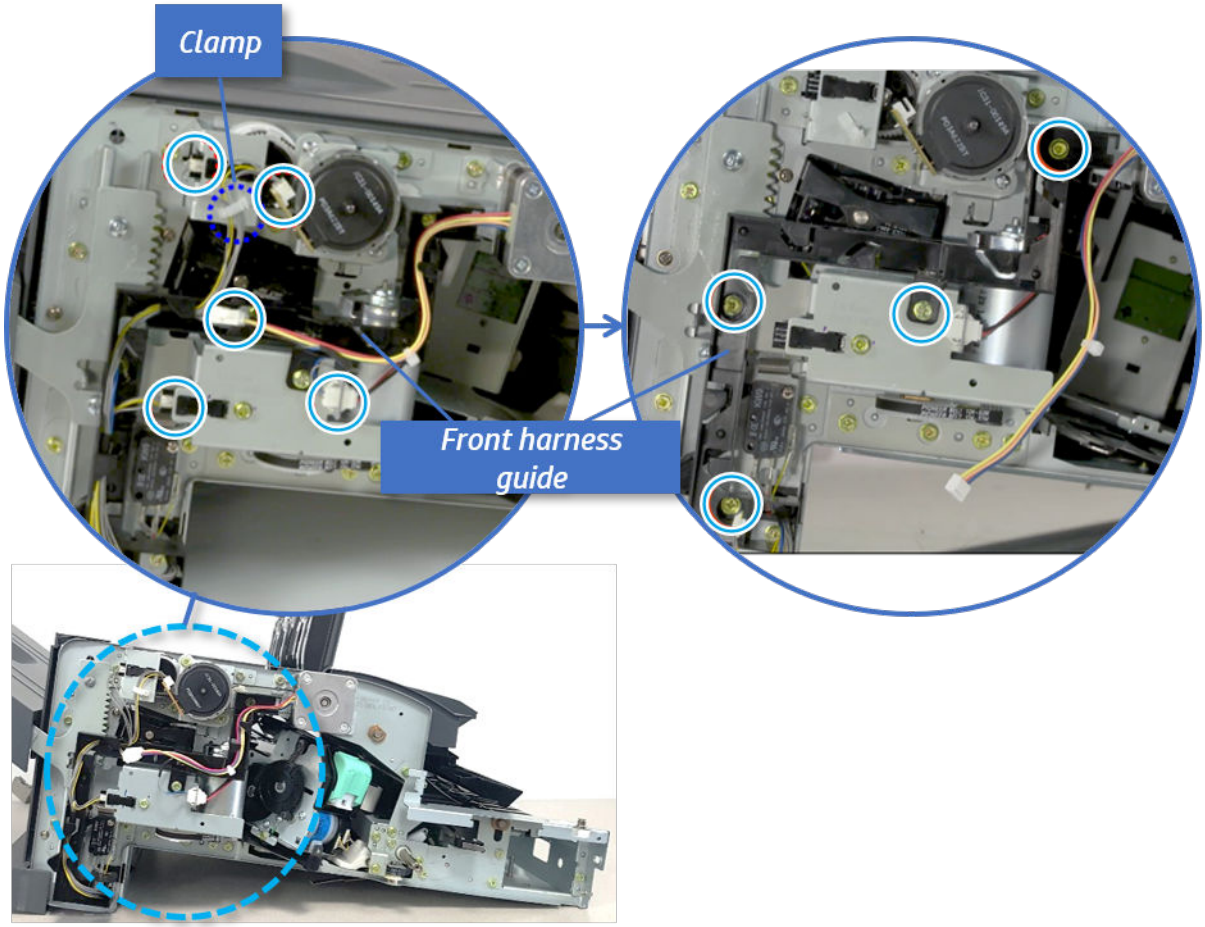
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-212 Remove the front harness guide

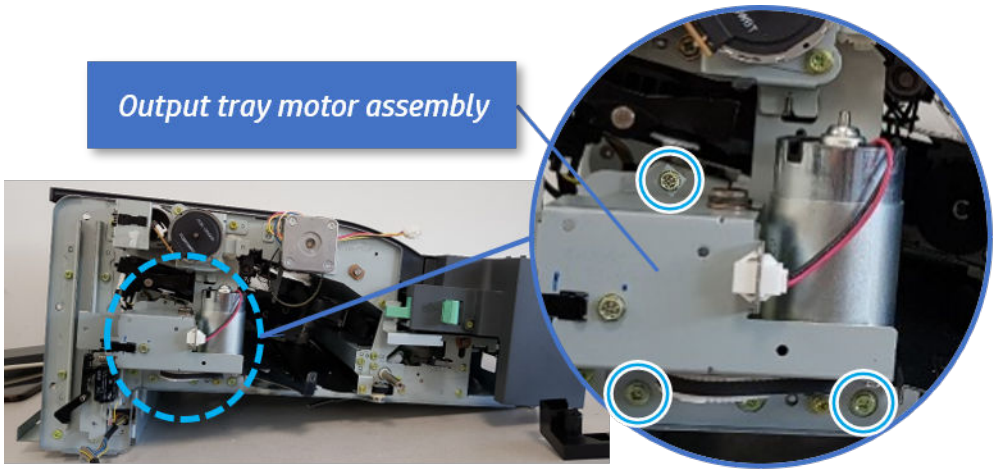


Remove the output tray motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor assembly.

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-213 Remove the output tray motor assembly

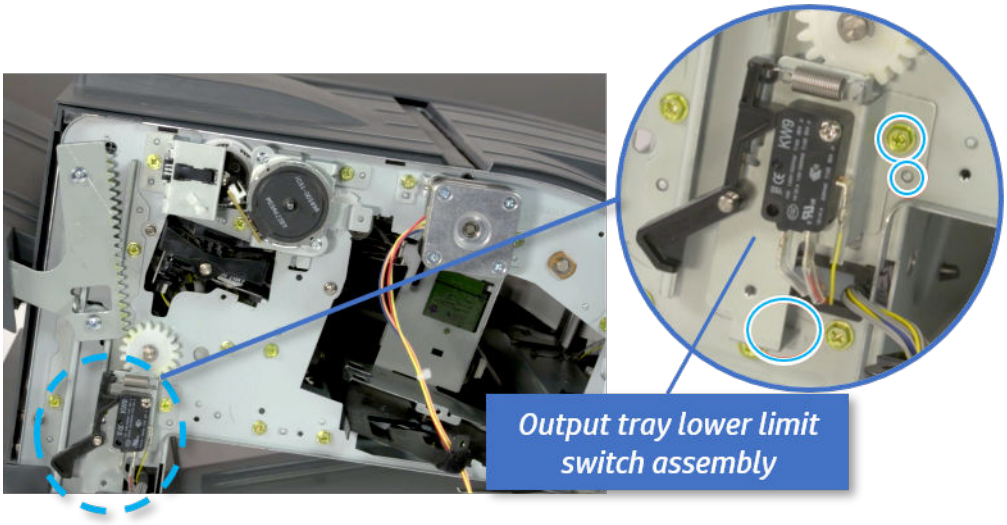


Remove the output tray lower limit switch

Follow these steps to remove the output tray lower limit switch.

▲ Remove one screw, and then remove the output tray lower limit switch.

Figure 6-214 Remove the output tray lower limit switch

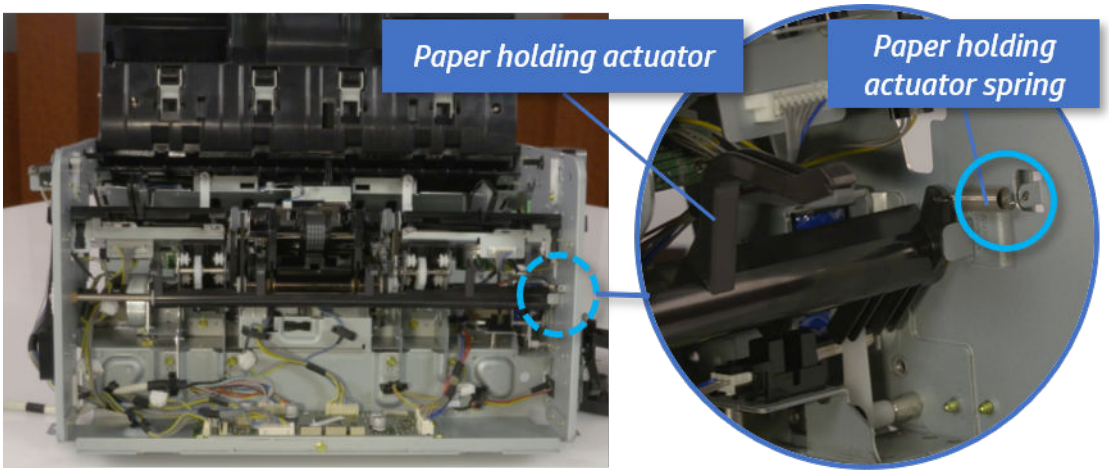


Remove the paper holding

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding.

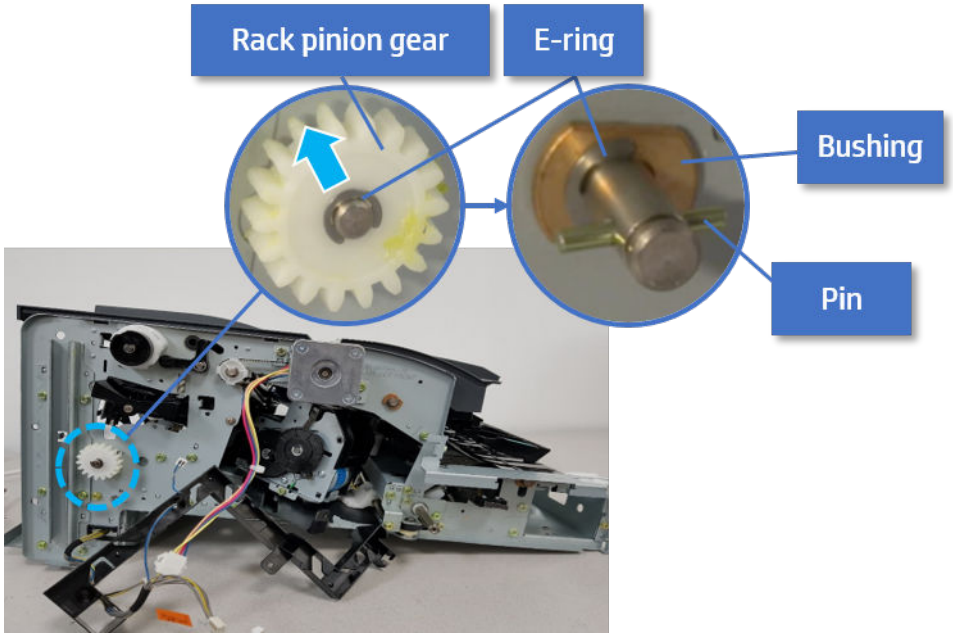
1. Remove the paper holding actuator spring.

Figure 6-215 Remove the paper holding actuator spring



2. Remove the e-ring and the rack pinion gear. And then remove the pin and the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

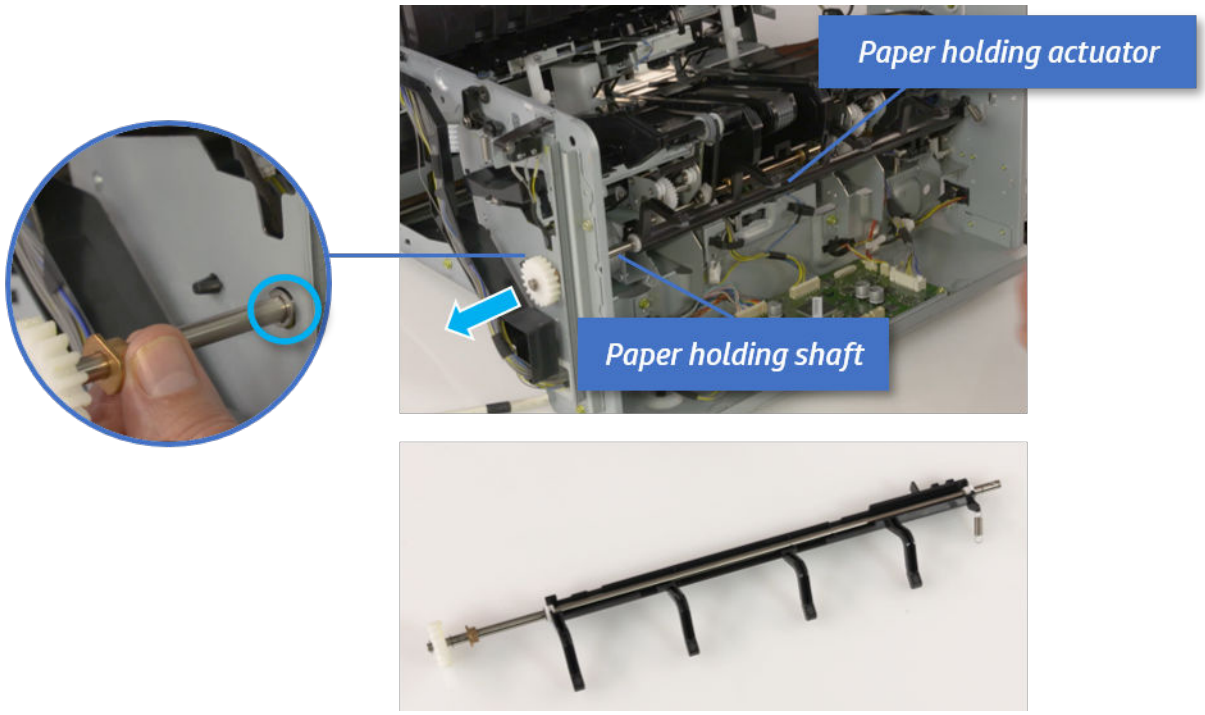
Figure 6-216 Remove e-ring, rack pinion gear, pin, and bushing



NOTE: Be sure not to lose the pin.

3. Carefully remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator.

Figure 6-217 Remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator

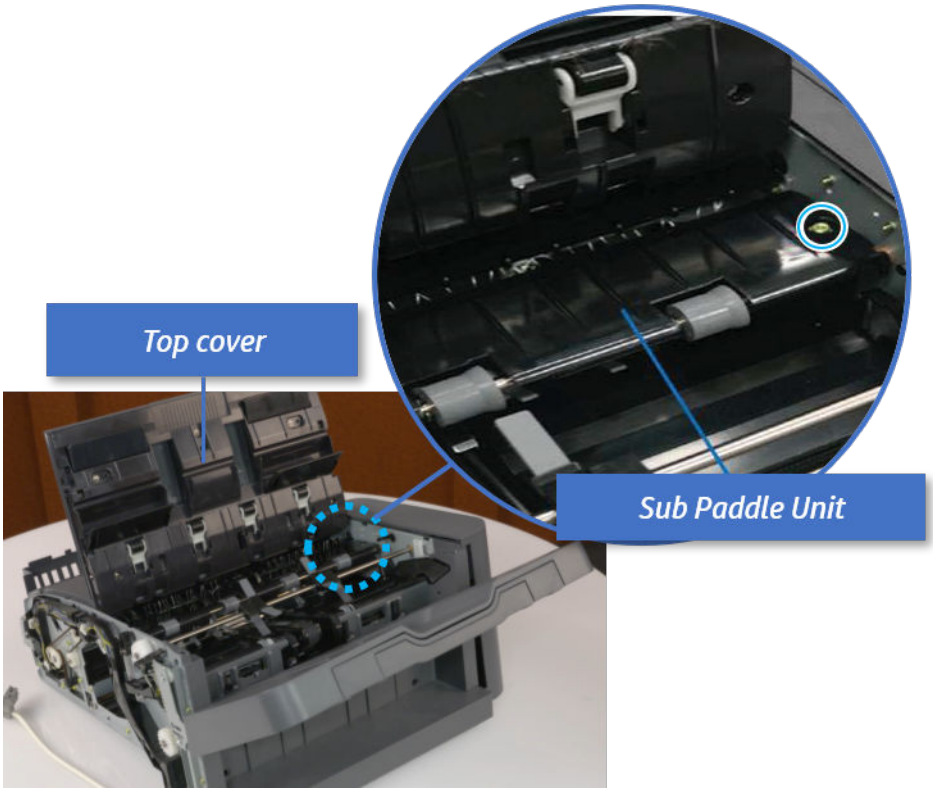


Remove the sub paddle unit

Follow these steps to remove the sub paddle unit.

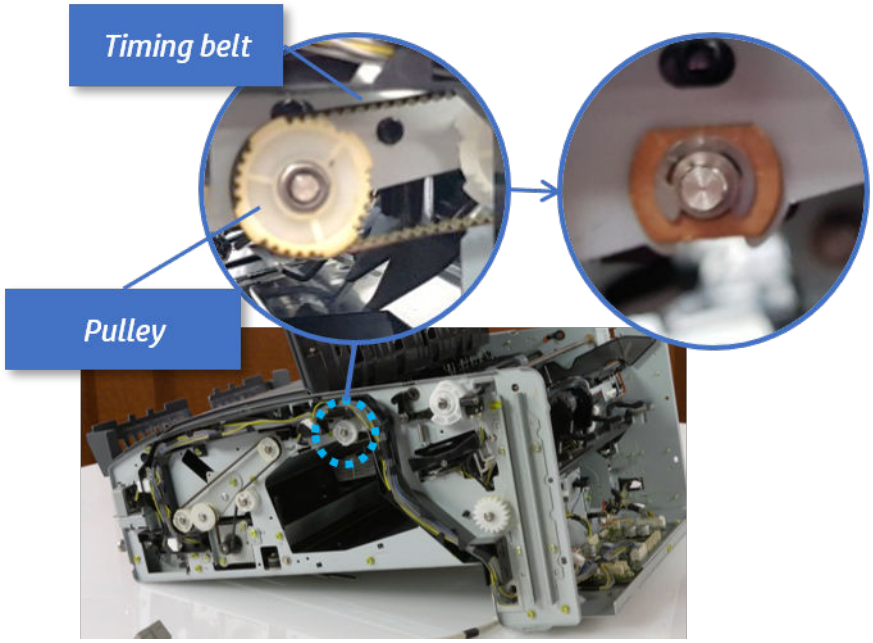
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw securing the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-218 Remove one screw



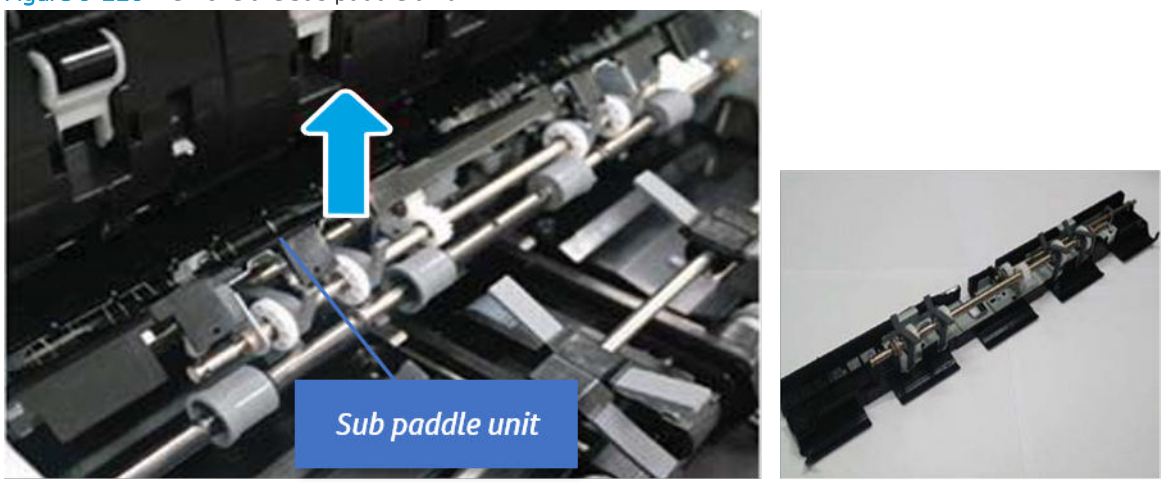
2. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt. And then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-219 Remove the e-ring, pulley, timing belt, and bushing



3. Lift up and remove the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-220 Remove the sub paddle unit

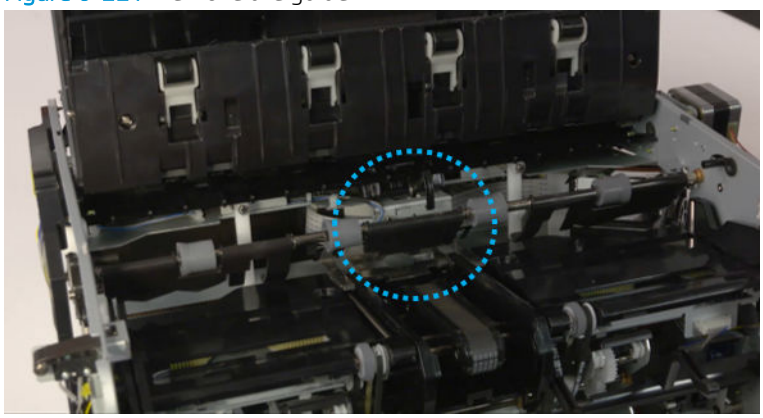


Remove the exit roller

Follow these steps to remove the exit roller.

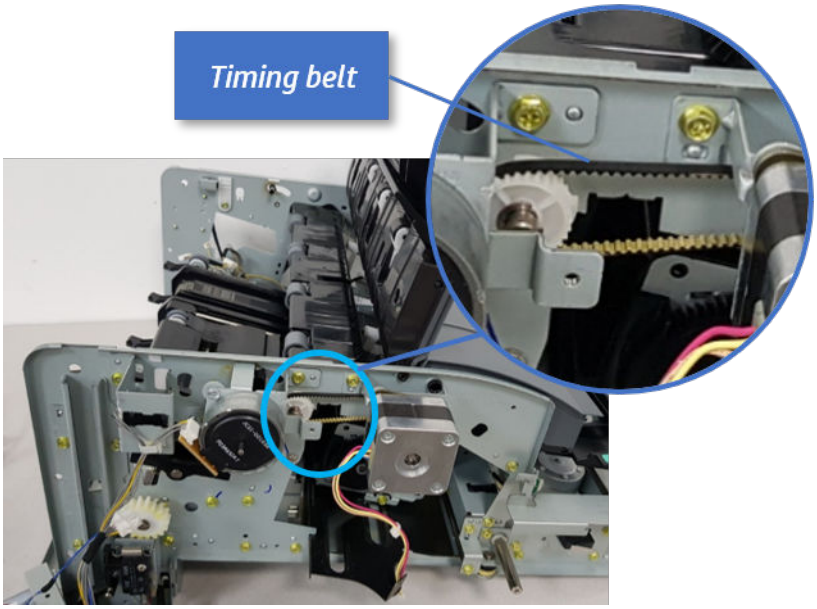
1. Remove the guide on the center of the exit roller.

Figure 6-221 Remove the guide



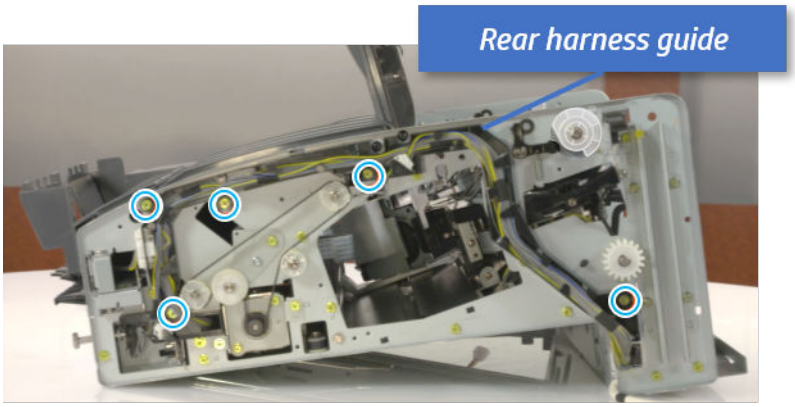
2. On the front of the inner finisher, release the timing belt connected to the exit motor.

Figure 6-222 Release the timing belt



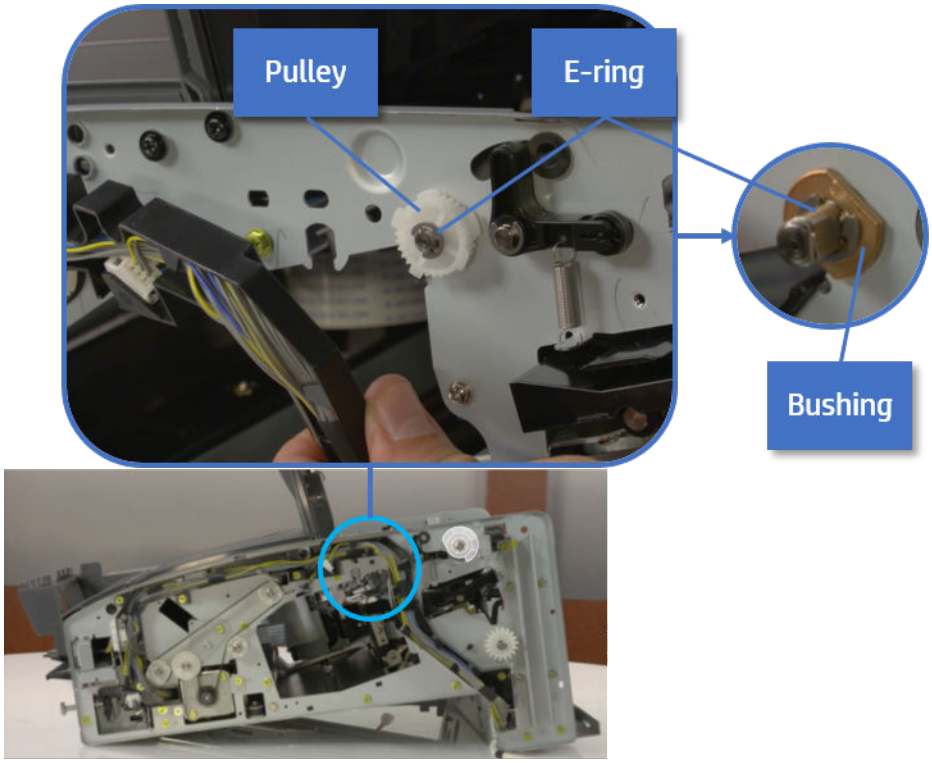
3. Remove five screws securing the rear harness guide.

Figure 6-223 Remove five screws



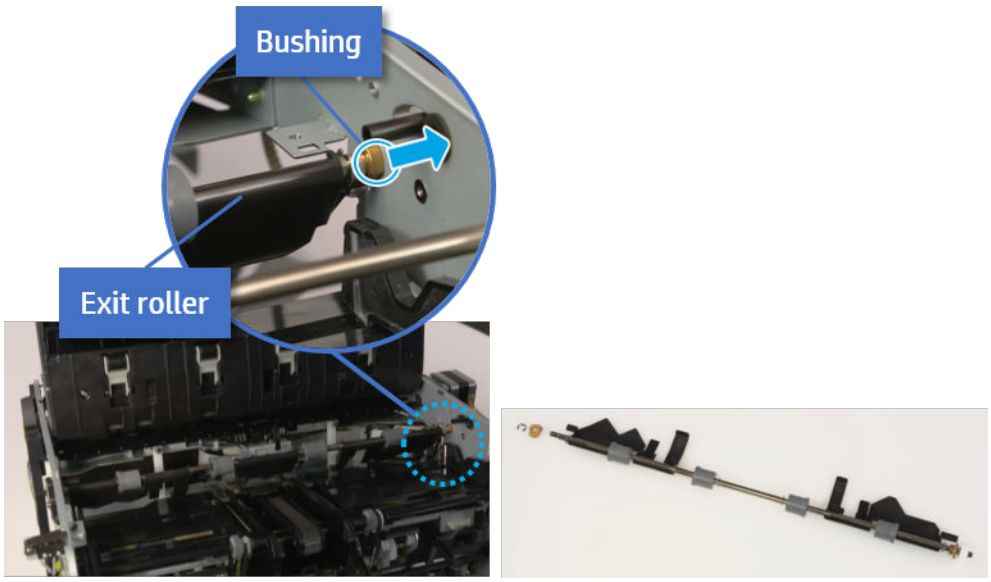
4. On the rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and the pulley and then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-224 Remove e-ring, pulley, and bushing



5. Push the bushing to detach it, and then remove the exit roller.

Figure 6-225 Remove the exit roller

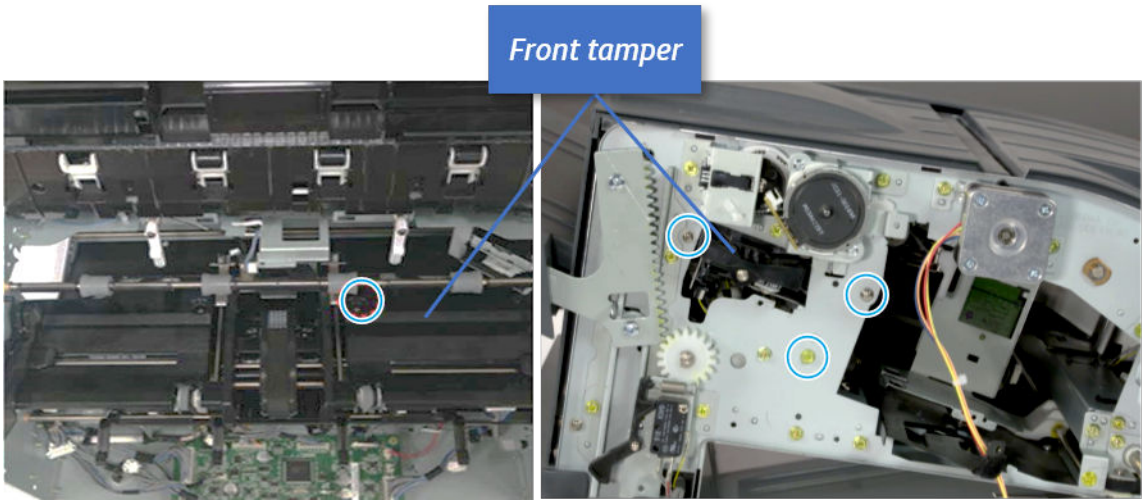


Remove the front tamper

Follow these steps to remove the front tamper.

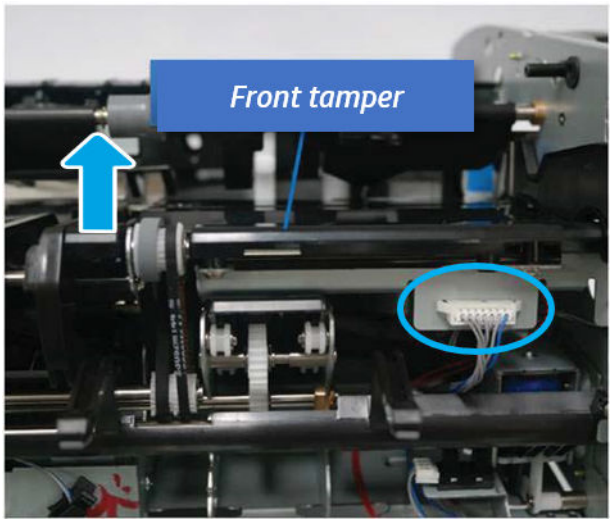
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-226 Remove four screws



2. Unplug the connector and release the hook, and then pull the front tamper up to remove.

Figure 6-227 Remove the front tamper



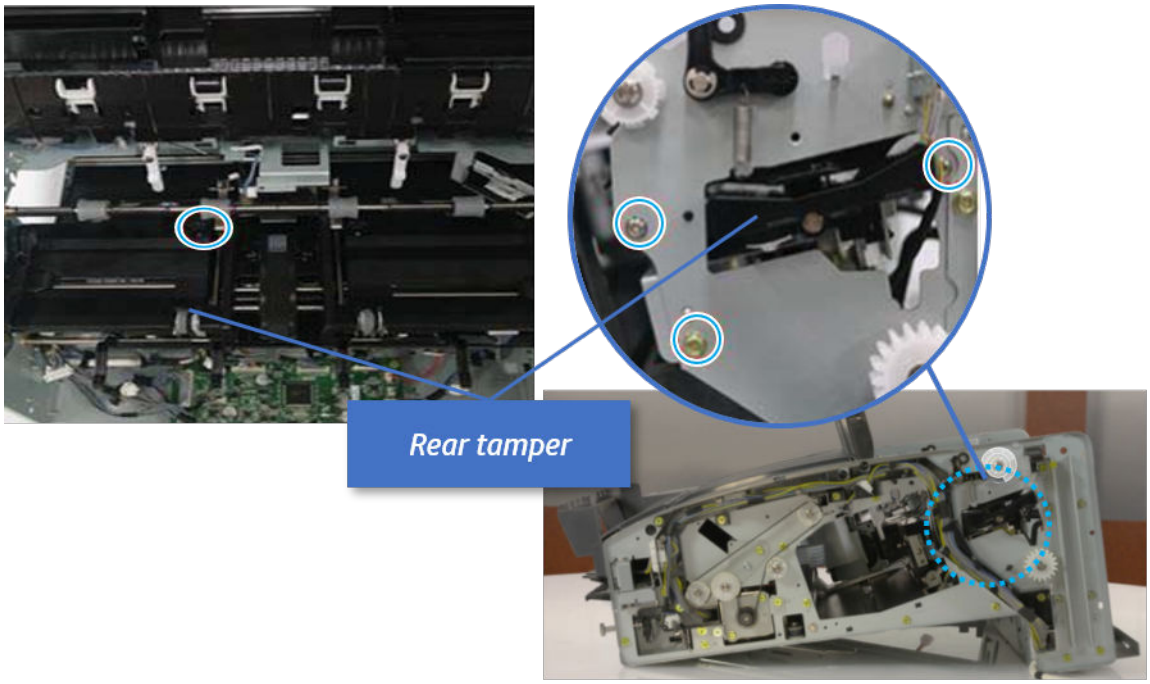
Remove the rear tamper

Follow these steps to remove the rear tamper.

1. Remove four screws.

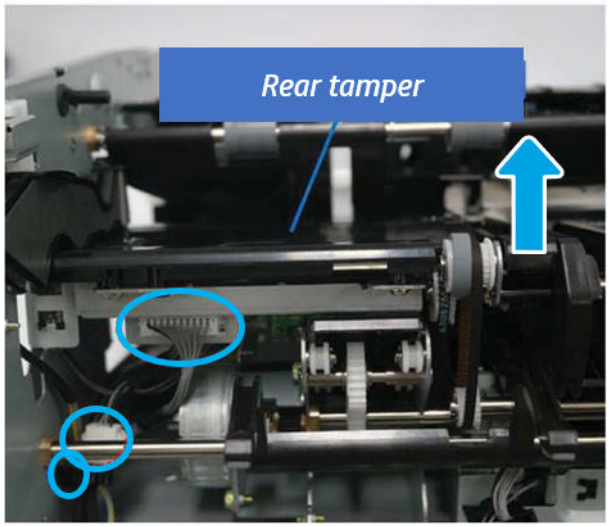
NOTE: Move cable guideout of position to access the screws.

Figure 6-228 Remove four screws



2. Unplug two connectors and release the hook, and then remove the rear tamper.

Figure 6-229 Remove the rear tamper

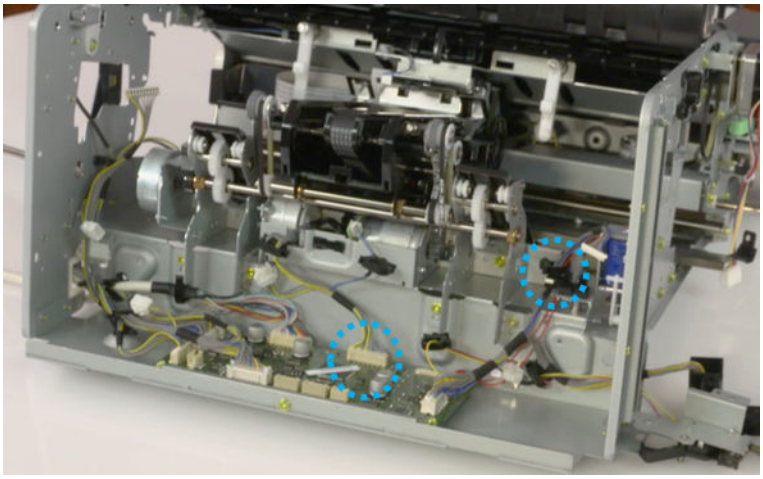


Remove the ejector & paper support assembly

Follow these steps to remove the ejector & paper support assembly.

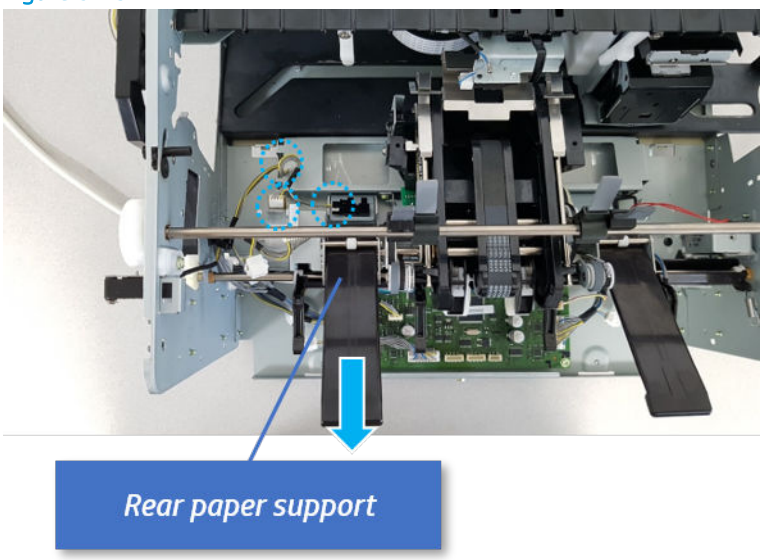
1. Open one clamp, disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-230 Disconnect one connector



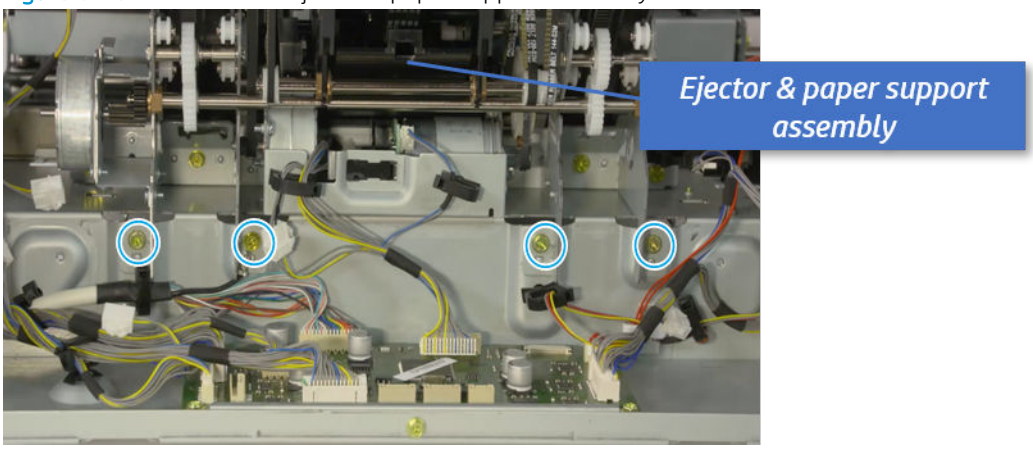
2. Pull the rear paper support up, and then release one clamp and disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-231 Disconnect two connector



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the ejector & paper support assembly.

Figure 6-232 Remove the ejector & paper support assembly

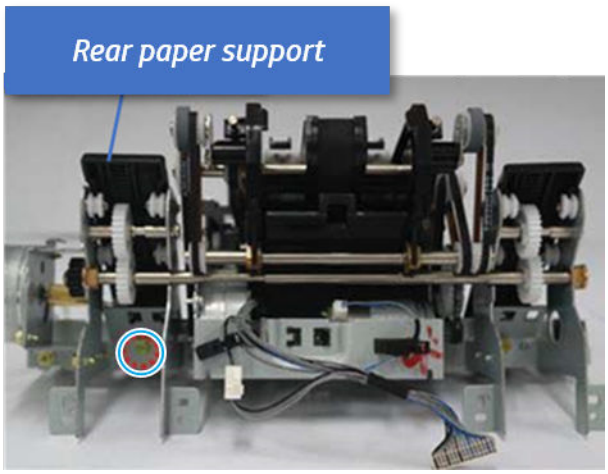


Remove the rear paper support

Follow these steps to remove the rear paper support.

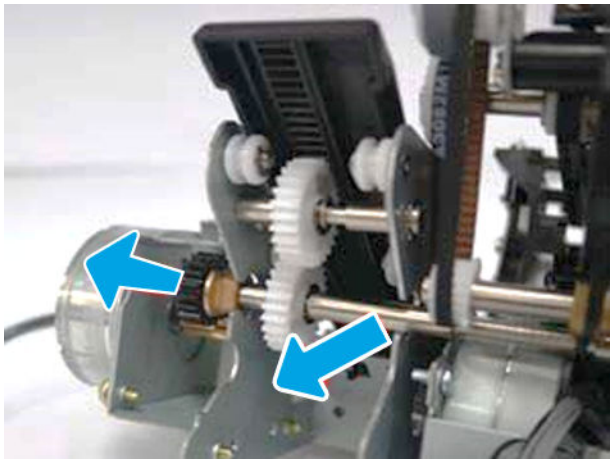
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-233 Remove one screw



2. Remove the shaft while pulling the bushinging in the direction of the arrow.

Figure 6-234 Remove the shaft



3. Remove the rear paper support with attention for pinion.

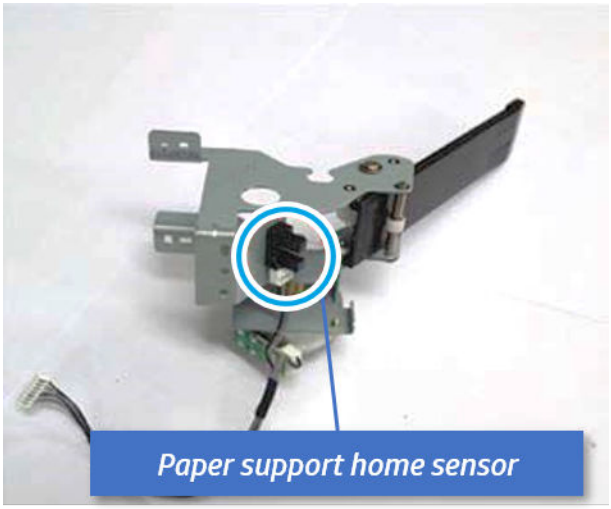
Figure 6-235 Remove the rear paper support

Remove the paper support home sensor

Follow these steps to remove the paper support home sensor.

▲ Remove the sensor from the rear paper support.

Figure 6-236 Remove the paper support home sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper support motor (M8)

Learn how to remove and replace the paper support motor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-45 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00802B (not orderable)	Paper support motor assembly
JC31-00149A (not orderable)	Paper support motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

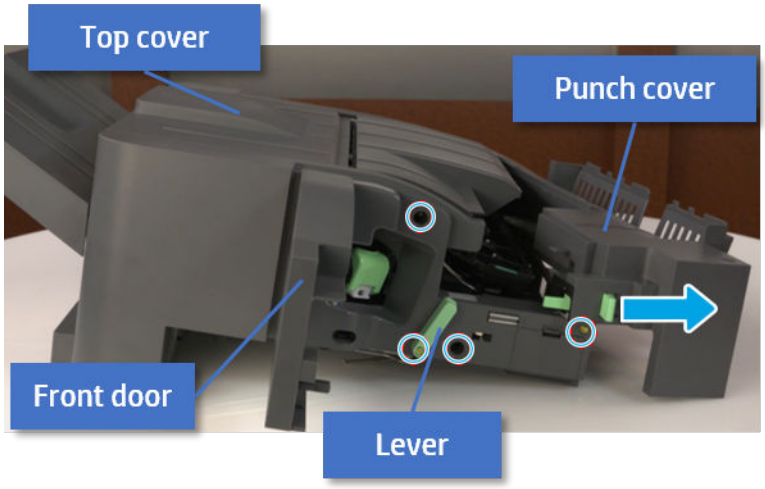
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-237 Remove the front cover

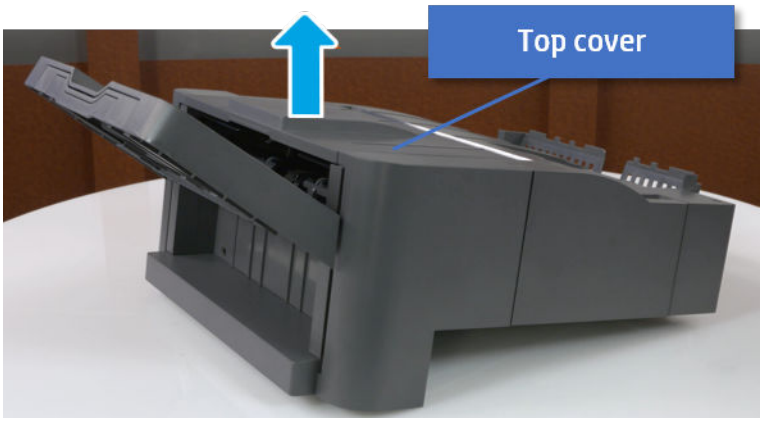


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

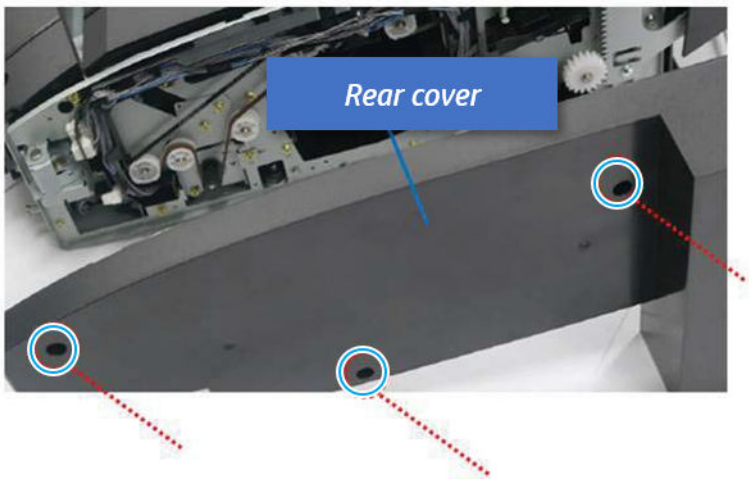
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-238 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-239 Remove the rear cover

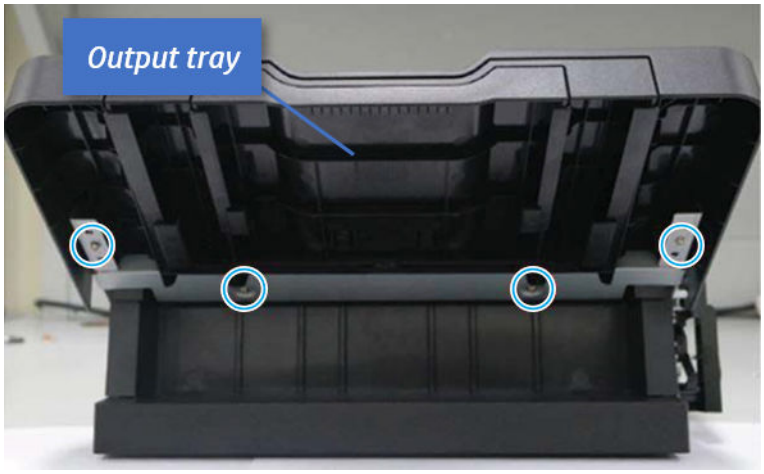


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-240 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

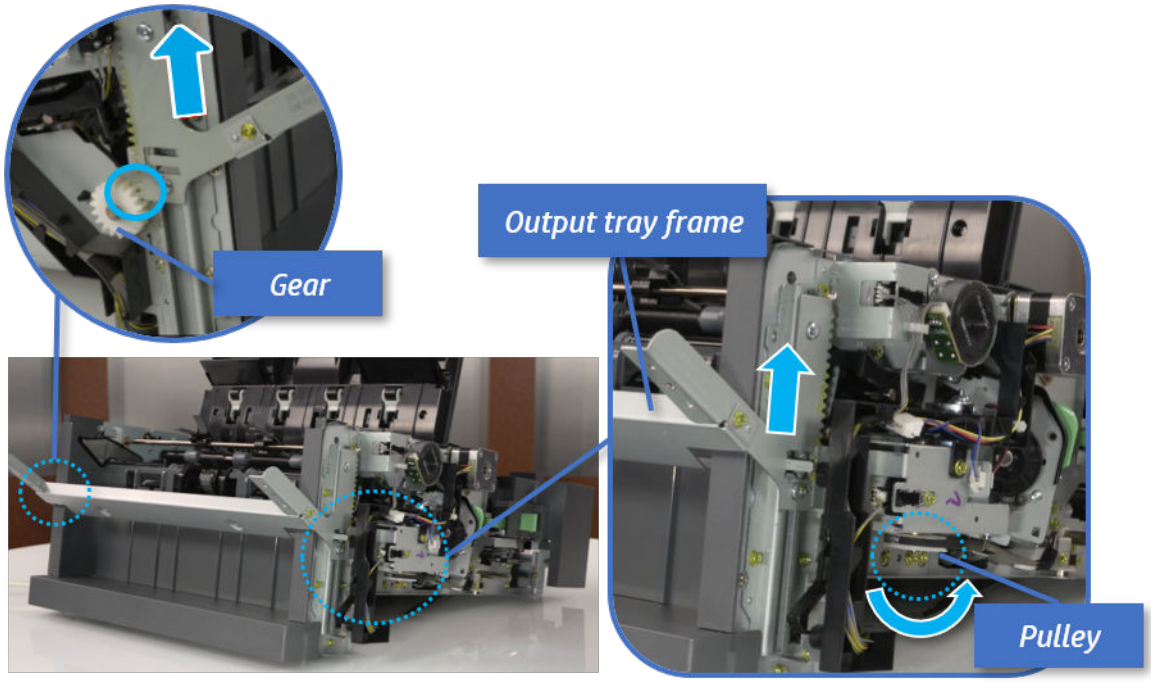
Figure 6-241 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

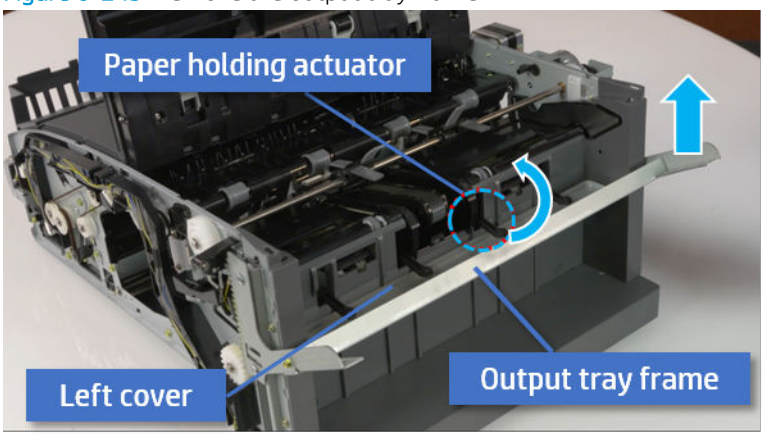
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-242 Remove the pulley



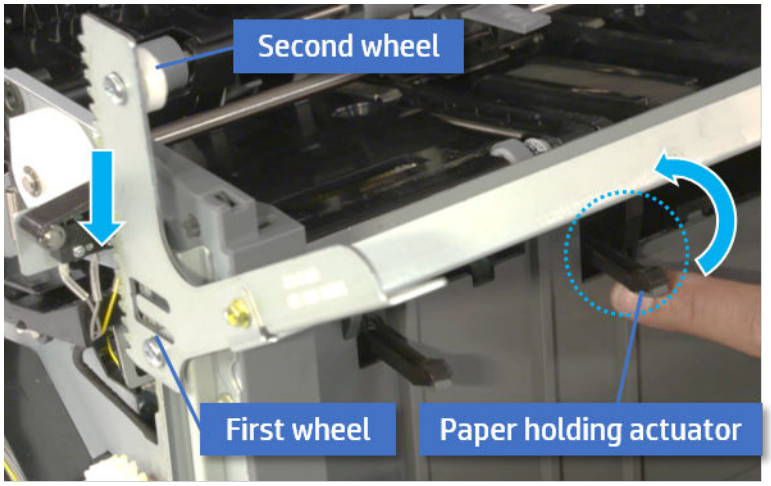
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-243 Remove the output tray frame



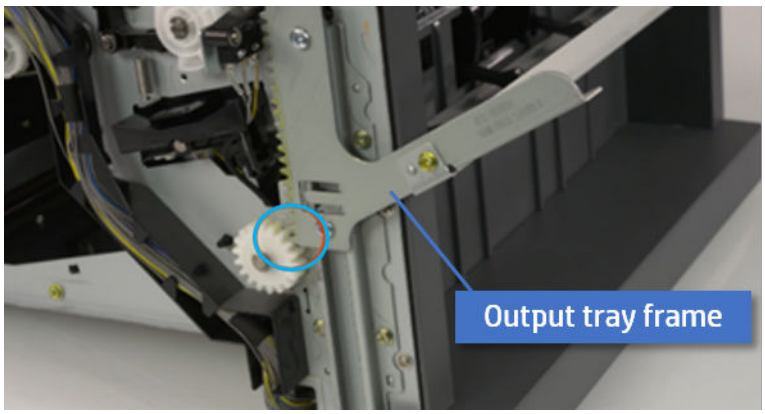
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

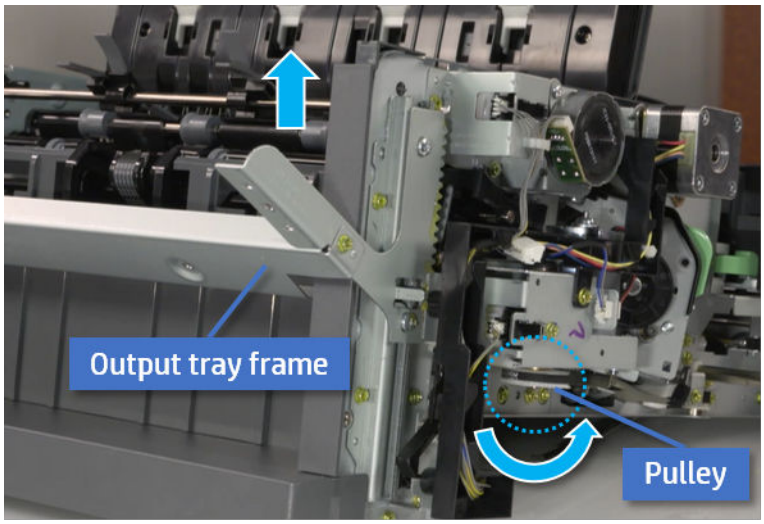


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

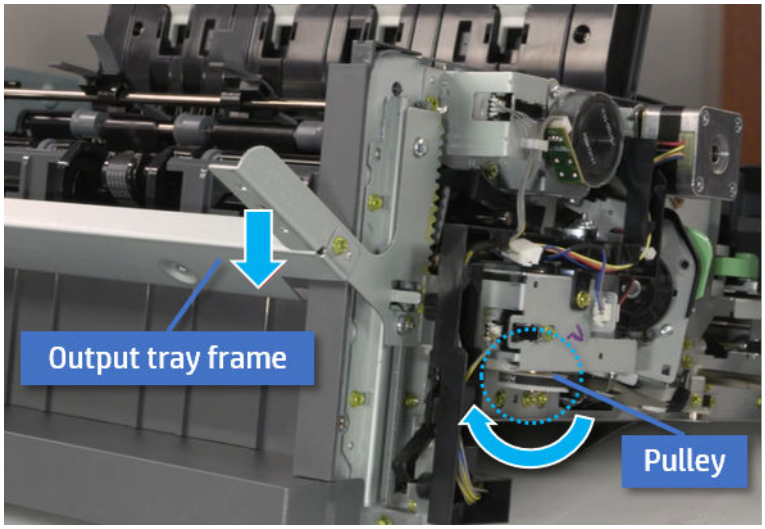
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

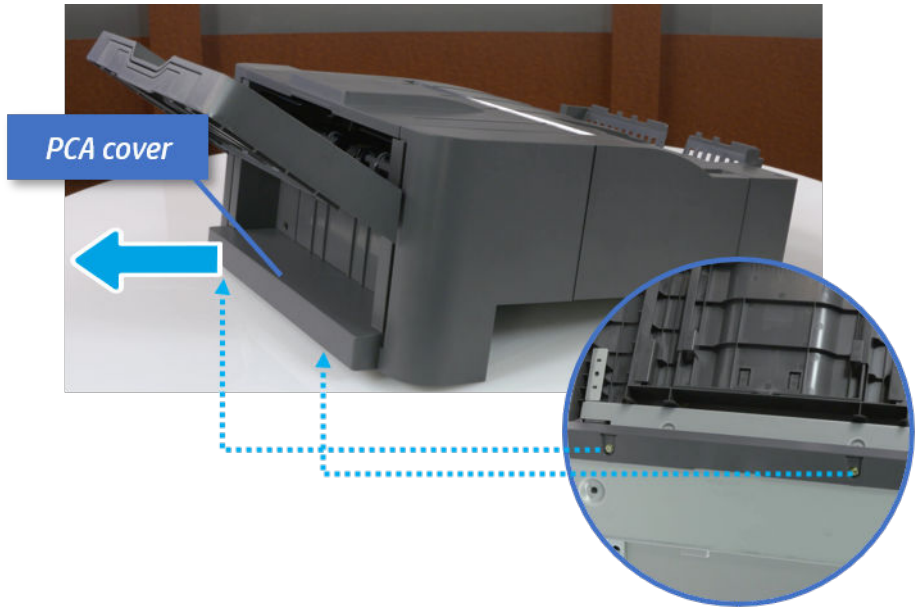


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-244 Remove the PCA cover

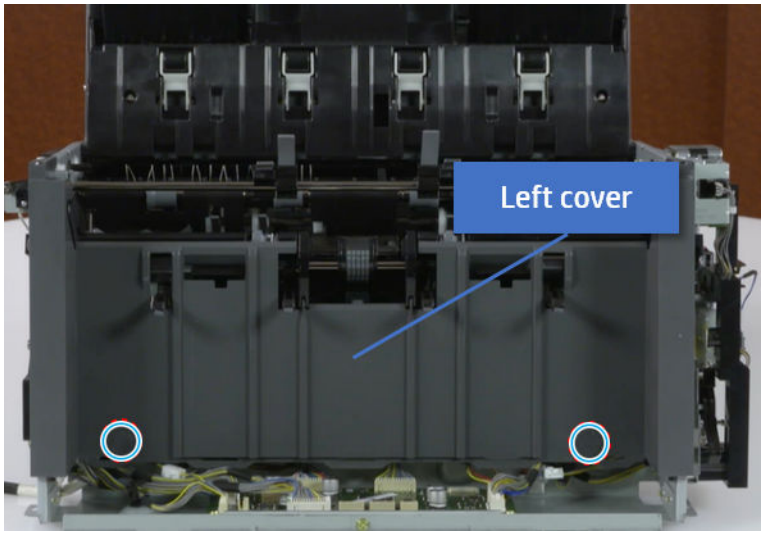


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

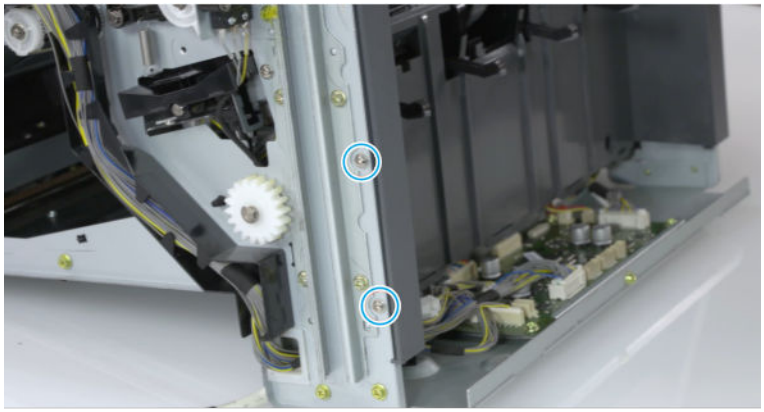
1. Remove two screws.

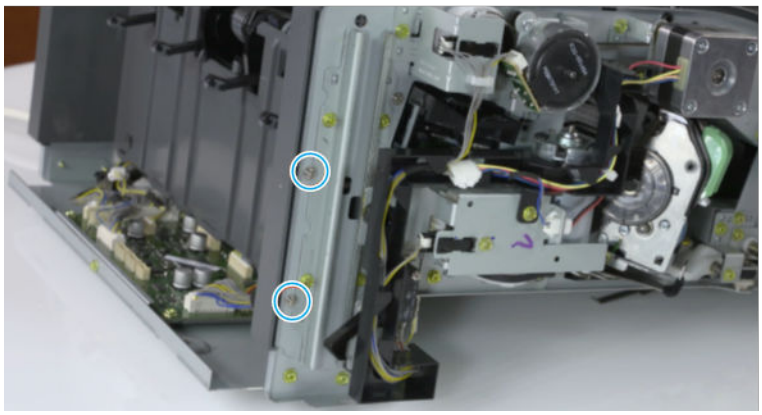
Figure 6-245 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

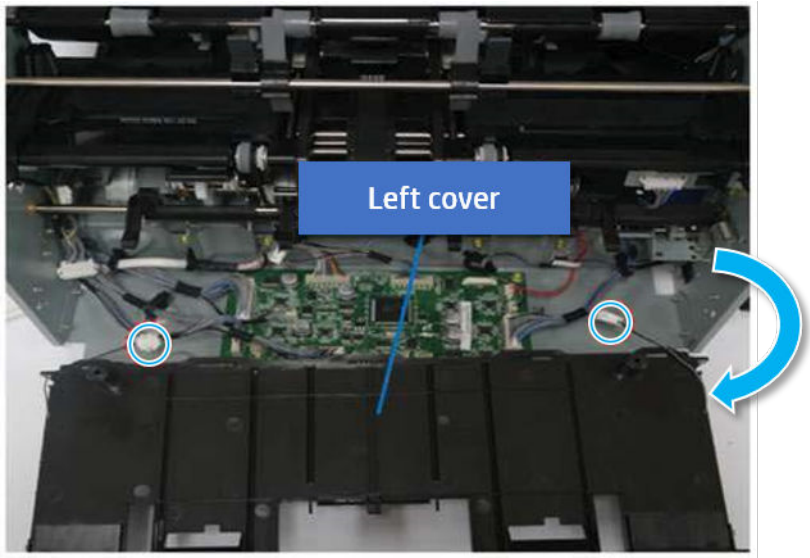
Figure 6-246 Remove four screws



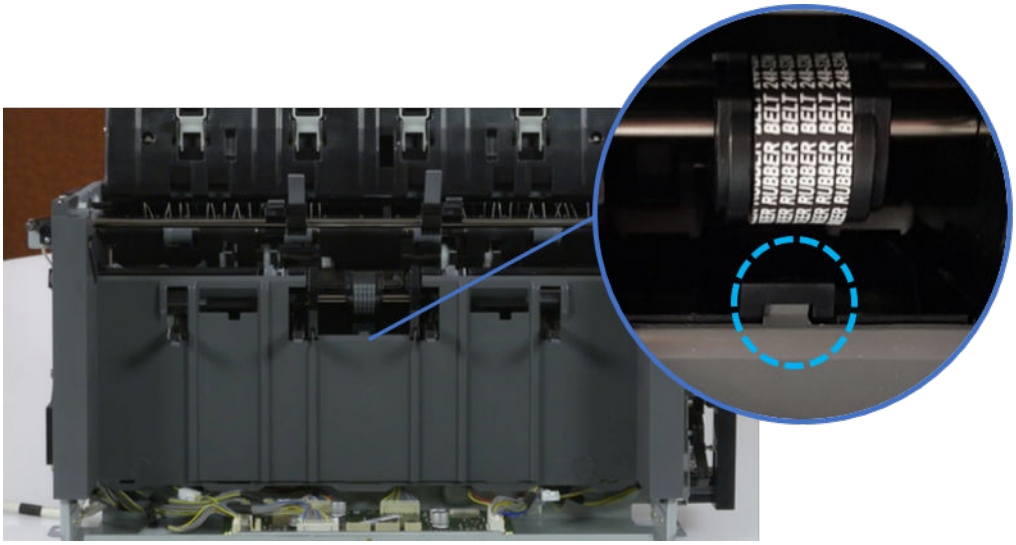


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-247 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



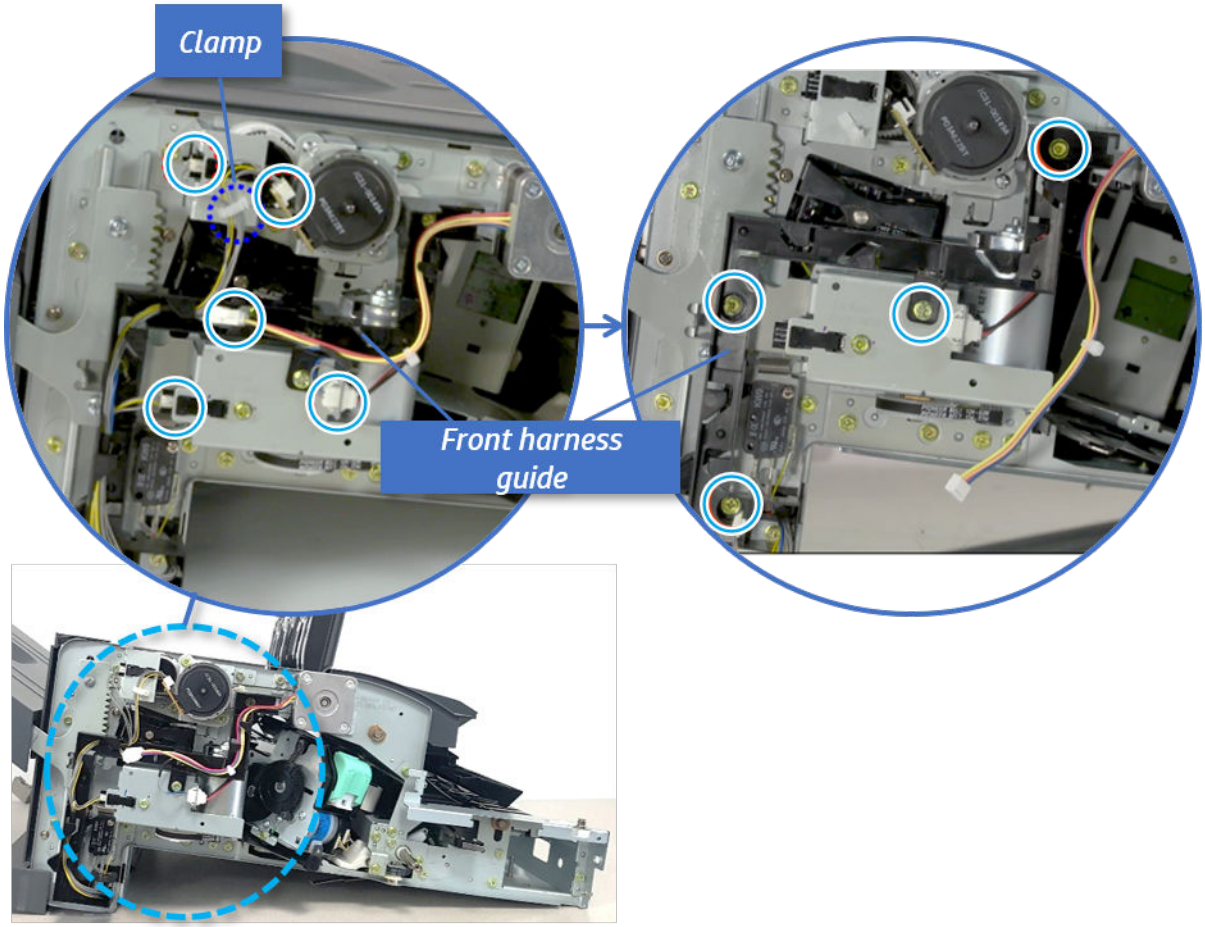
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-248 Remove the front harness guide

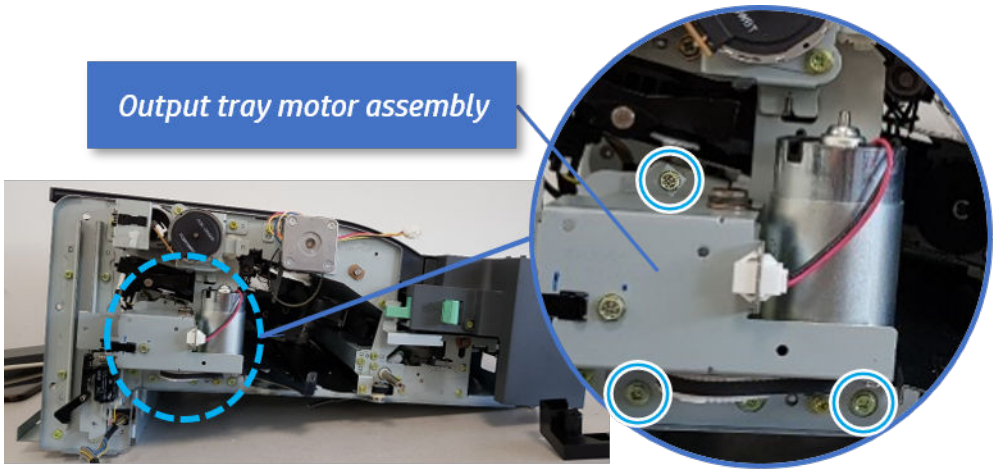


Remove the output tray motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor assembly.

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-249 Remove the output tray motor assembly

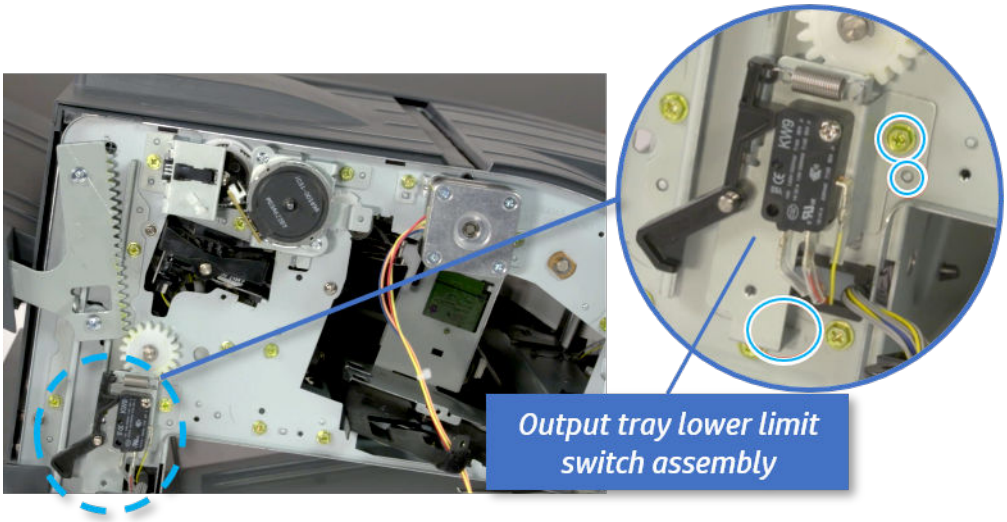


Remove the output tray lower limit switch

Follow these steps to remove the output tray lower limit switch.

- ▲ Remove one screw, and then remove the output tray lower limit switch.

Figure 6-250 Remove the output tray lower limit switch

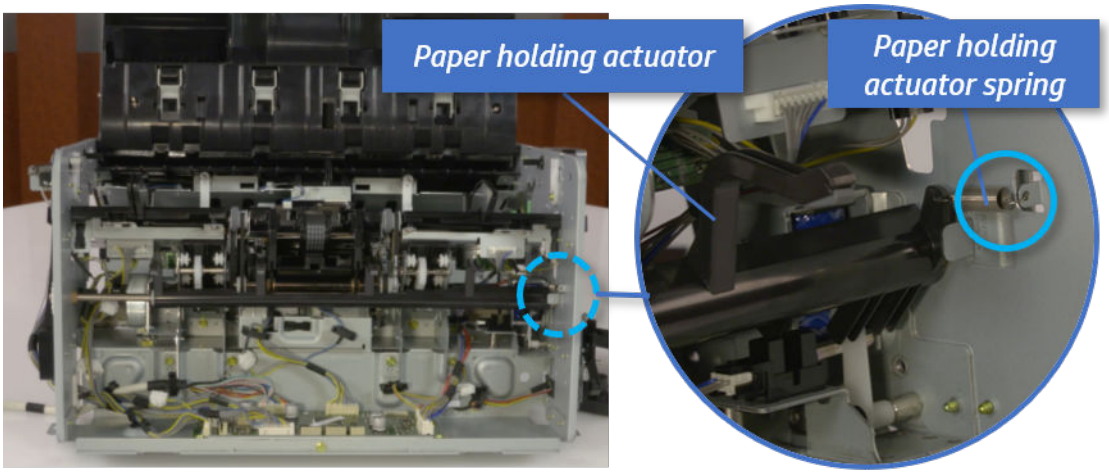


Remove the paper holding

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding.

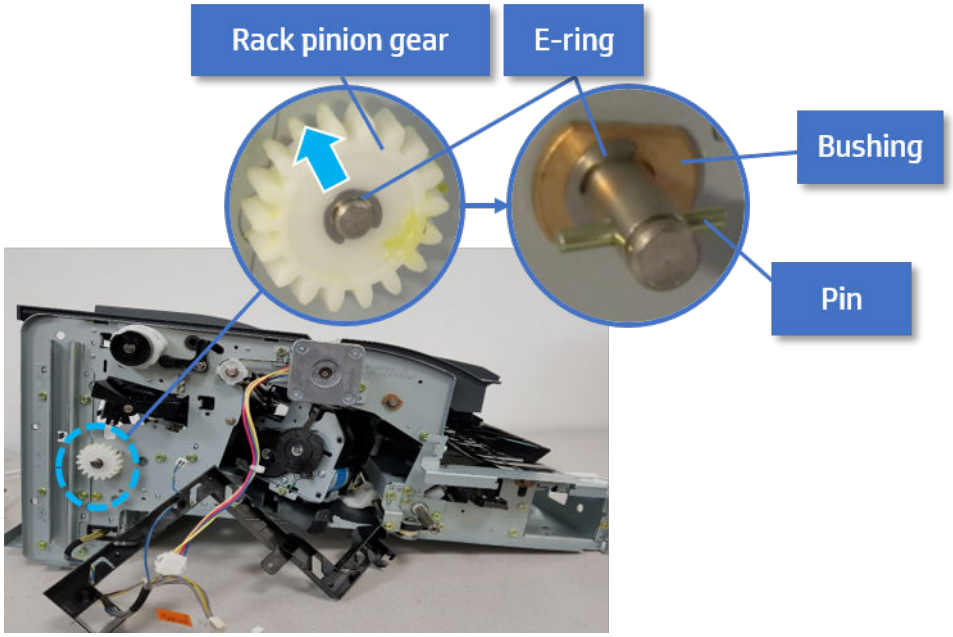
1. Remove the paper holding actuator spring.

Figure 6-251 Remove the paper holding actuator spring



2. Remove the e-ring and the rack pinion gear. And then remove the pin and the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

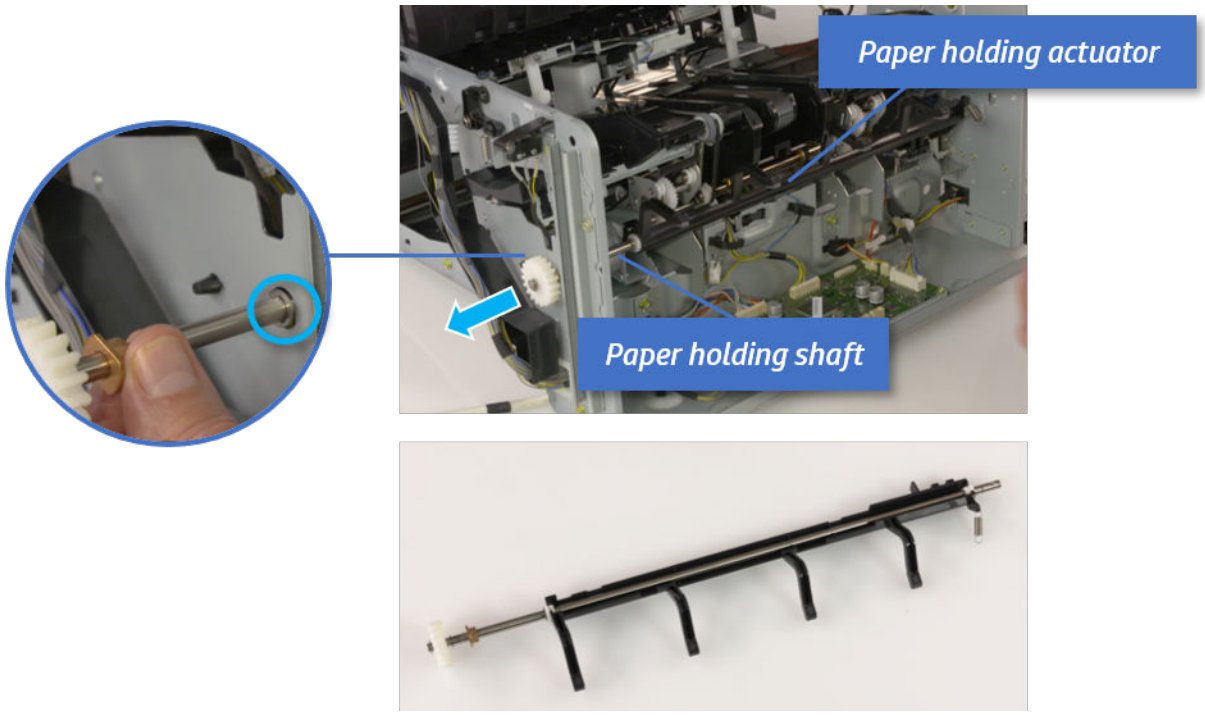
Figure 6-252 Remove e-ring, rack pinion gear, pin, and bushing



NOTE: Be sure not to lose the pin.

3. Carefully remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator.

Figure 6-253 Remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator

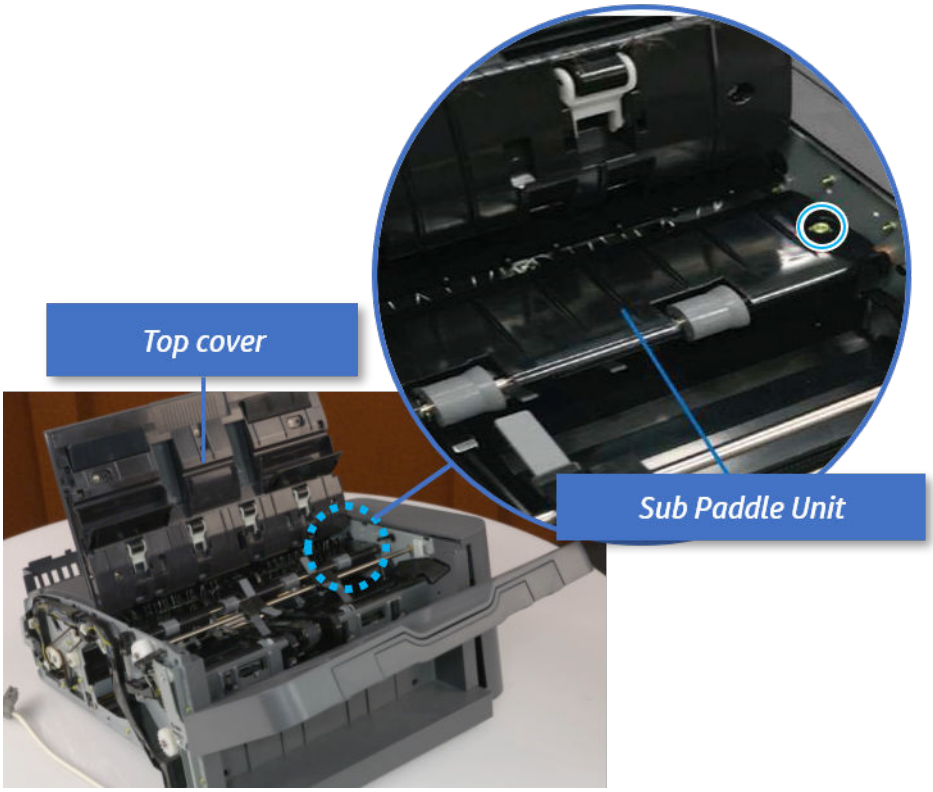


Remove the sub paddle unit

Follow these steps to remove the sub paddle unit.

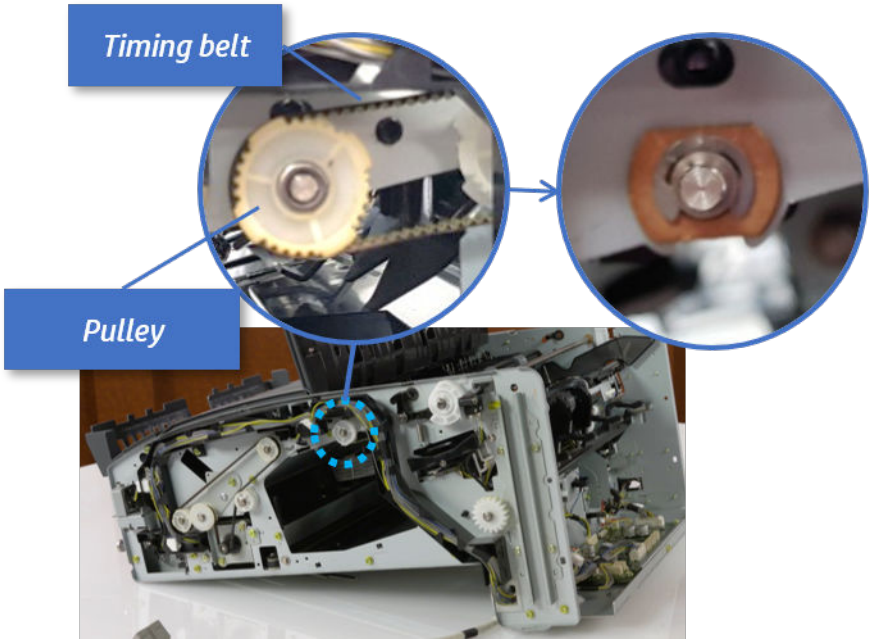
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw securing the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-254 Remove one screw



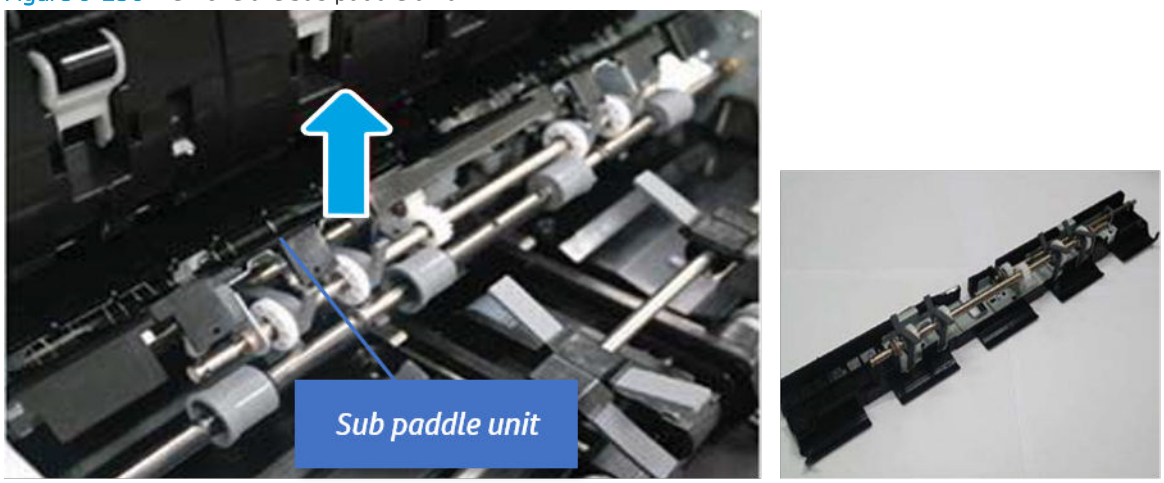
2. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt. And then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-255 Remove the e-ring, pulley, timing belt, and bushing



3. Lift up and remove the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-256 Remove the sub paddle unit

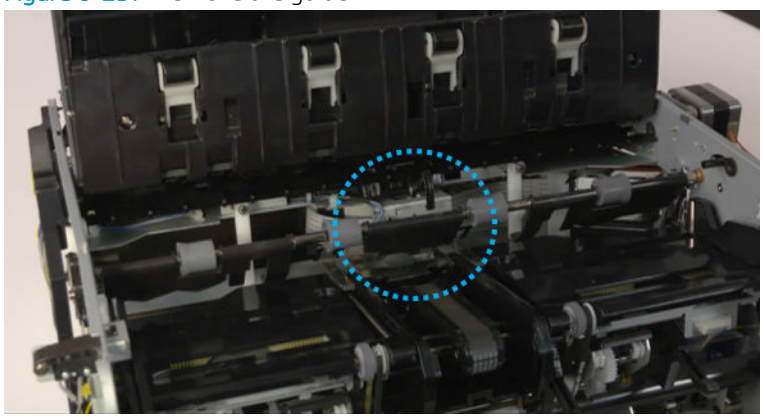


Remove the exit roller

Follow these steps to remove the exit roller.

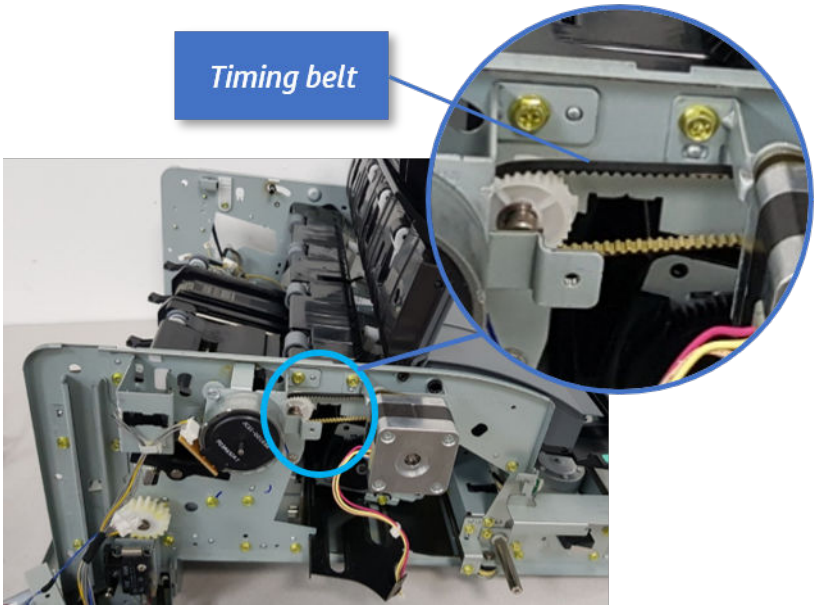
1. Remove the guide on the center of the exit roller.

Figure 6-257 Remove the guide



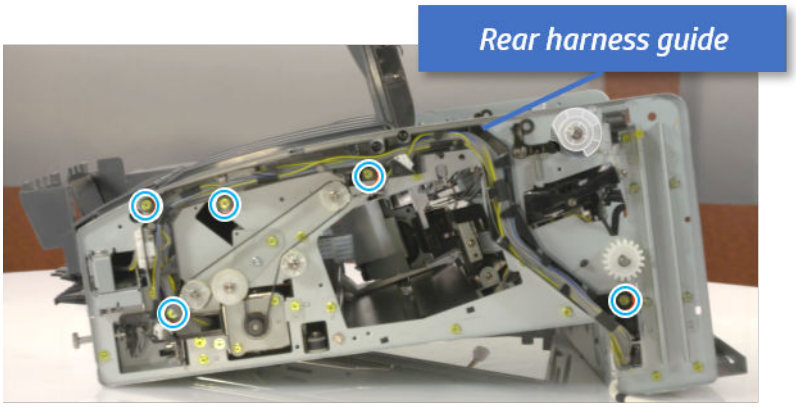
2. On the front of the inner finisher, release the timing belt connected to the exit motor.

Figure 6-258 Release the timing belt



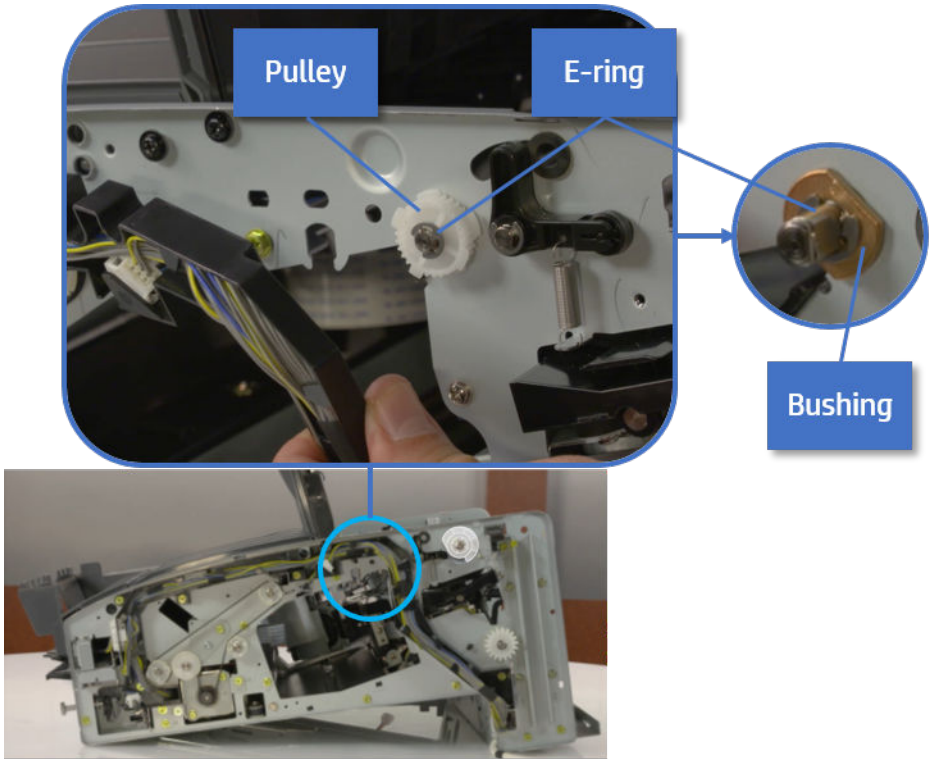
3. Remove five screws securing the rear harness guide.

Figure 6-259 Remove five screws



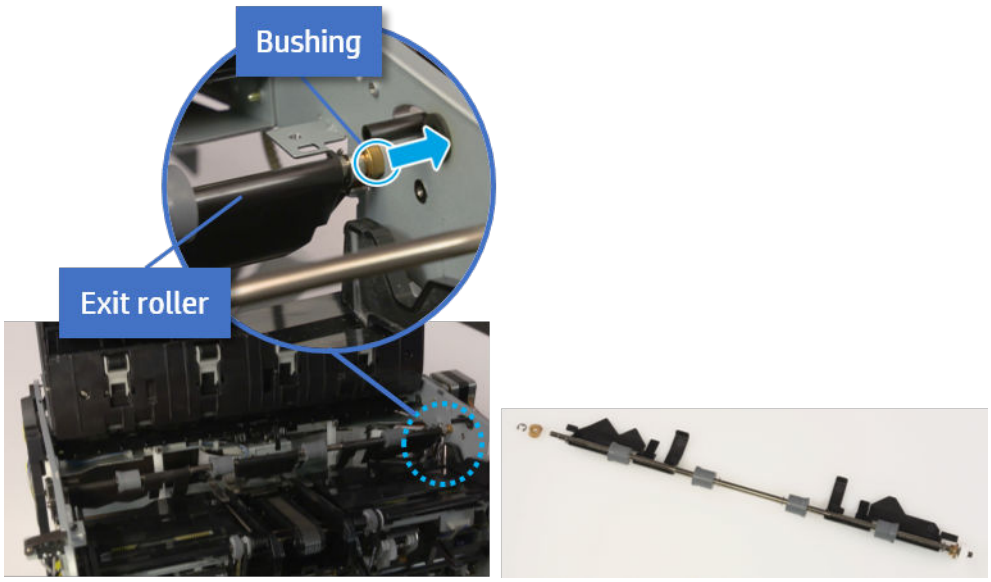
4. On the rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and the pulley and then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-260 Remove e-ring, pulley, and bushing



5. Push the bushing to detach it, and then remove the exit roller.

Figure 6-261 Remove the exit roller

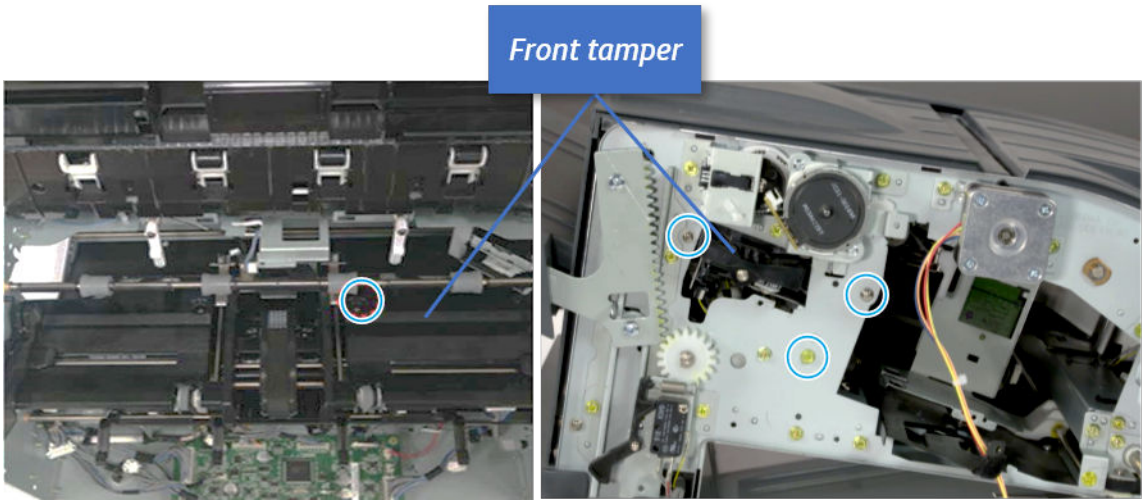


Remove the front tamper

Follow these steps to remove the front tamper.

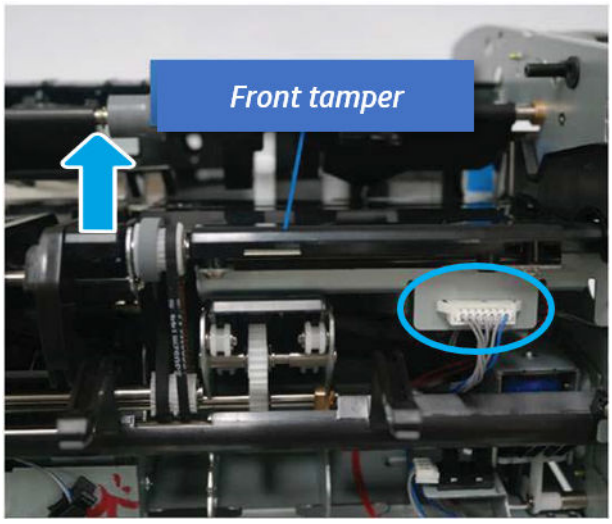
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-262 Remove four screws



2. Unplug the connector and release the hook, and then pull the front tamper up to remove.

Figure 6-263 Remove the front tamper



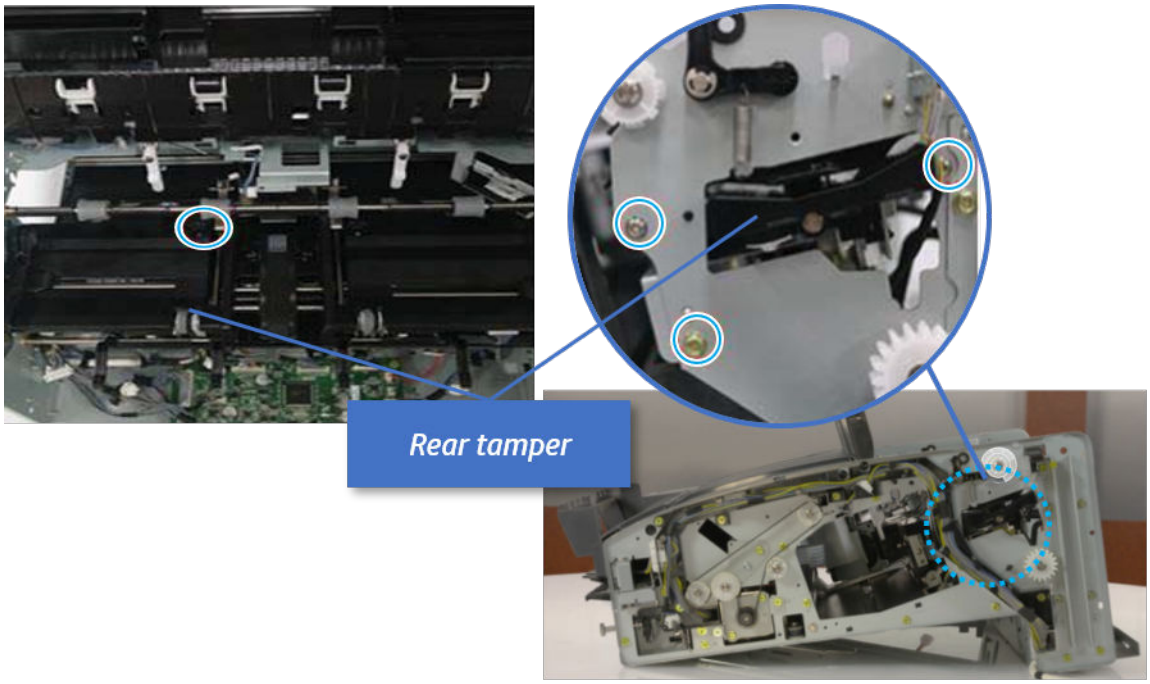
Remove the rear tamper

Follow these steps to remove the rear tamper.

1. Remove four screws.

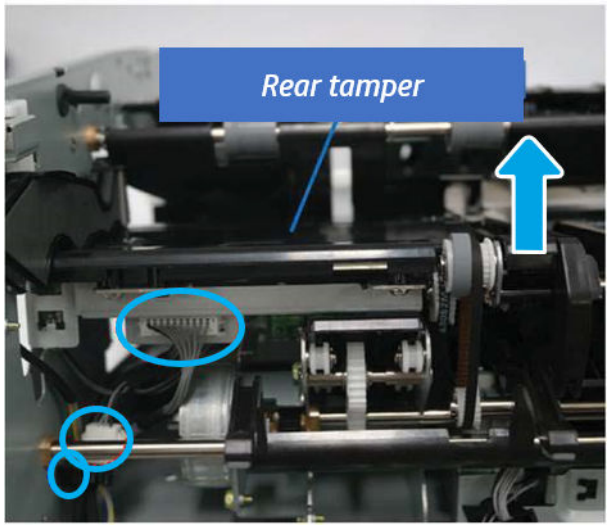
NOTE: Move cable guideout of position to access the screws.

Figure 6-264 Remove four screws



2. Unplug two connectors and release the hook, and then remove the rear tamper.

Figure 6-265 Remove the rear tamper

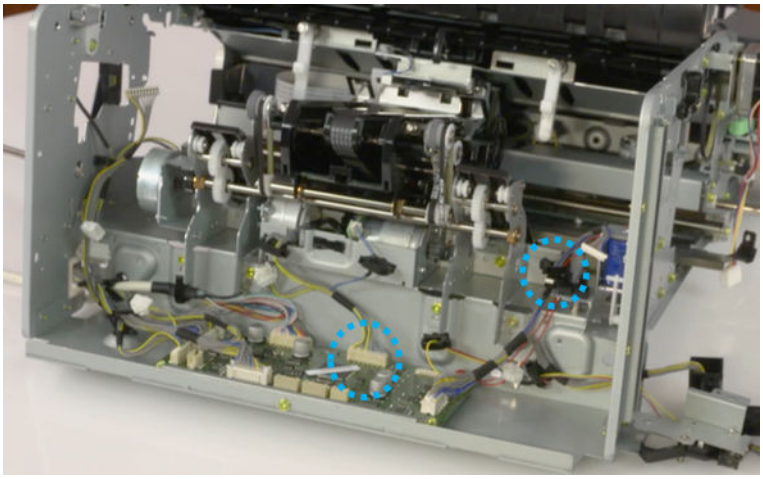


Remove the ejector & paper support assembly

Follow these steps to remove the ejector & paper support assembly.

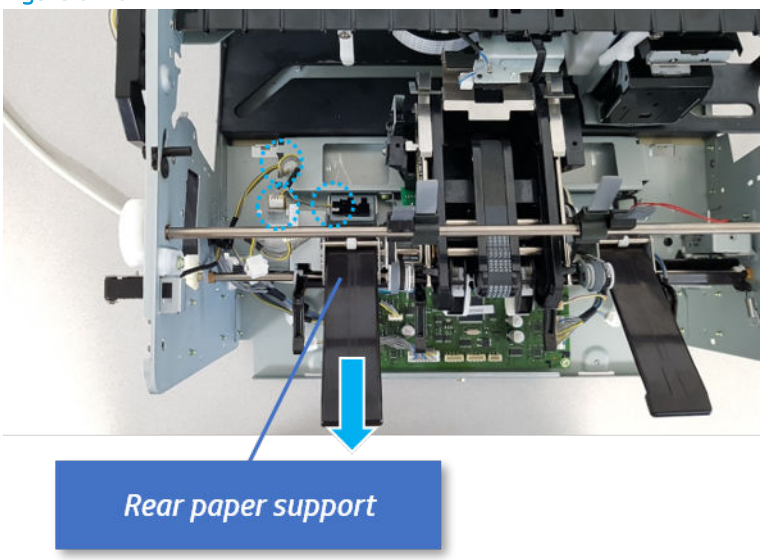
1. Open one clamp, disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-266 Disconnect one connector



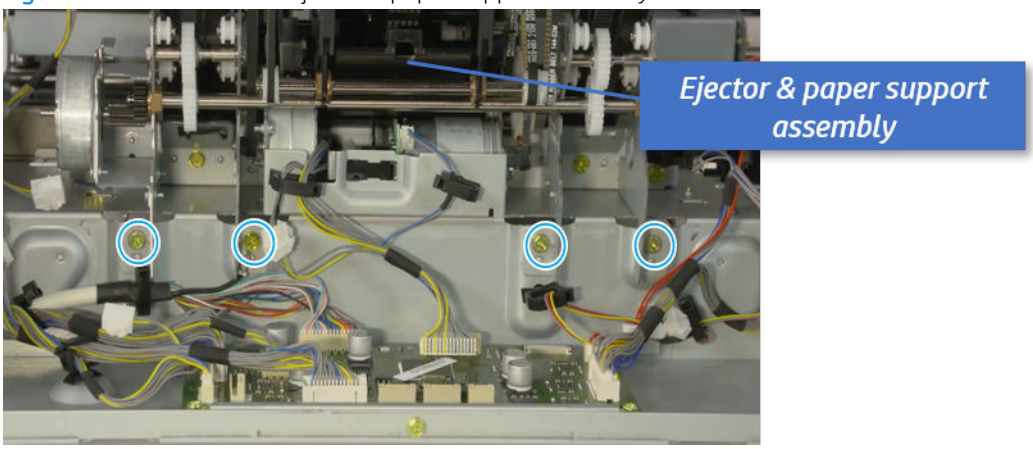
2. Pull the rear paper support up, and then release one clamp and disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-267 Disconnect two connector



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the ejector & paper support assembly.

Figure 6-268 Remove the ejector & paper support assembly

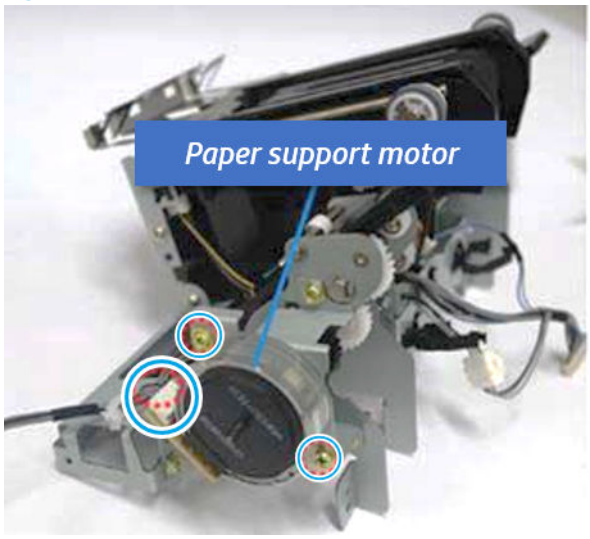


Remove the paper support motor

Follow these steps to remove the paper support motor.

▲ Remove two screws, disconnect one connect, and then remove the paper support motor.

Figure 6-269 Remove the paper support motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Paddle unit

Removal and replacement: Main paddle

Learn how to remove and replace the main paddle.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-46 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01327A	Main paddle
JC82-01038A	Main paddle kit
JC63-04957A	Main paddle A
JC63-04958A	Main paddle B
JC81-07560A	Main paddle holder

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

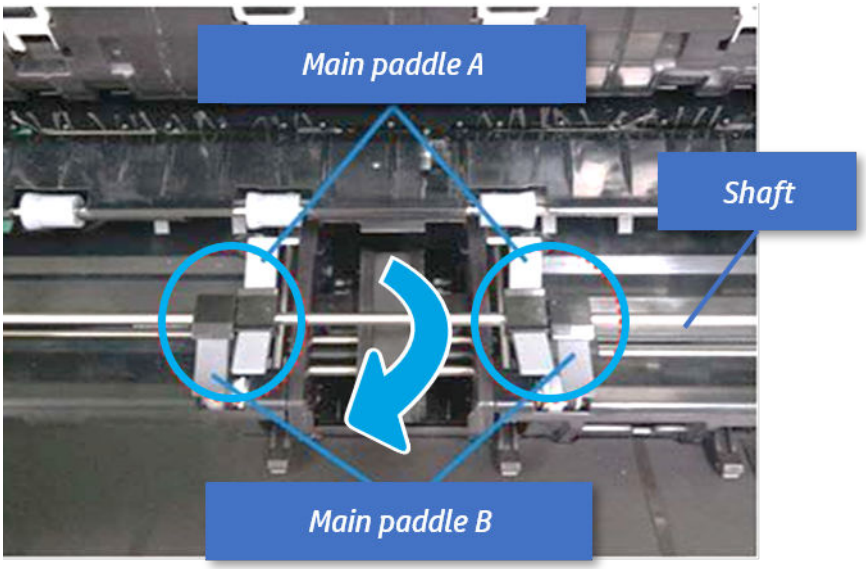
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the main paddle

Follow these steps to remove the main paddle.

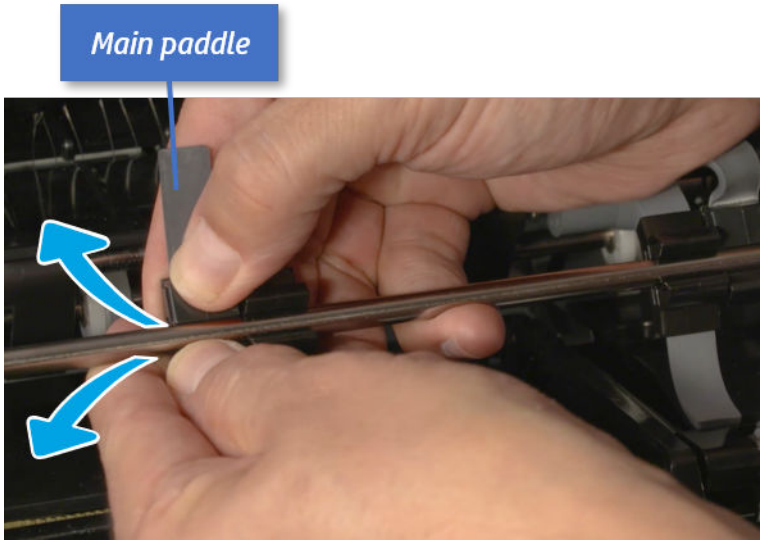
1. Open the top cover.
2. Rotate the main paddle shaft to see the lower side of the main paddle.

Figure 6-270 Rotate the main paddle shaft

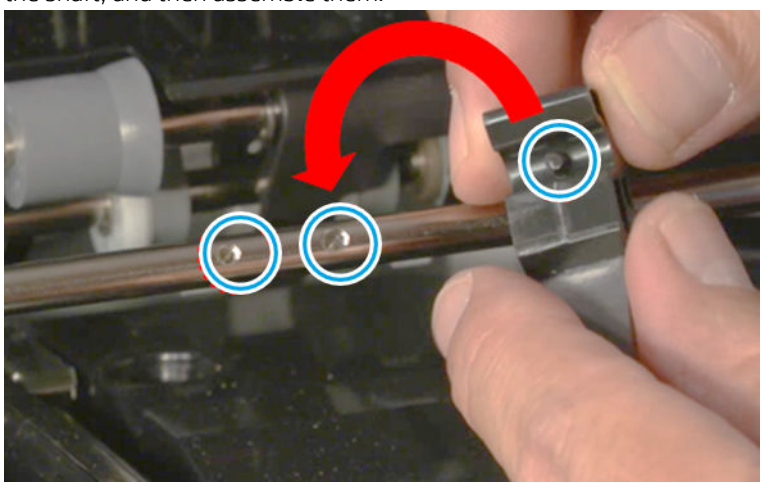


3. Remove the main paddle by pushing both sides.

Figure 6-271 Remove the main paddle



TIP: When reassembling the main paddle, check the pin position of the paddle and the hole position of the shaft, and then assemble them.



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main paddle home sensor (S4)

Learn how to remove and replace the main paddle home sensor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-47 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Main paddle home sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

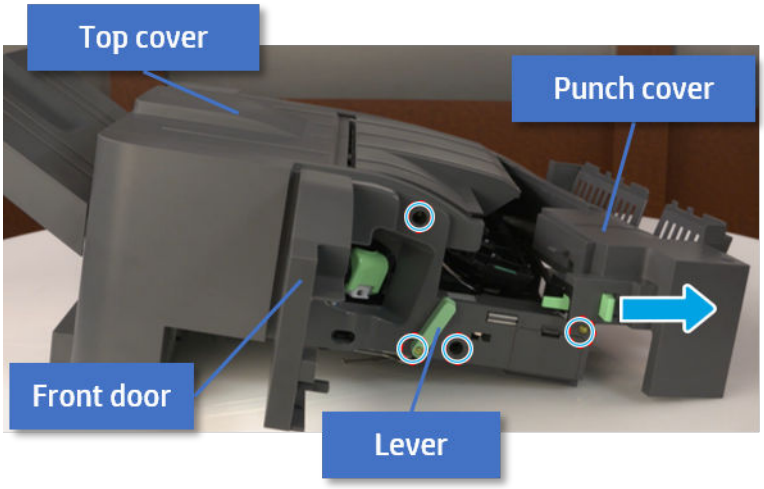
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-272 Remove the front cover

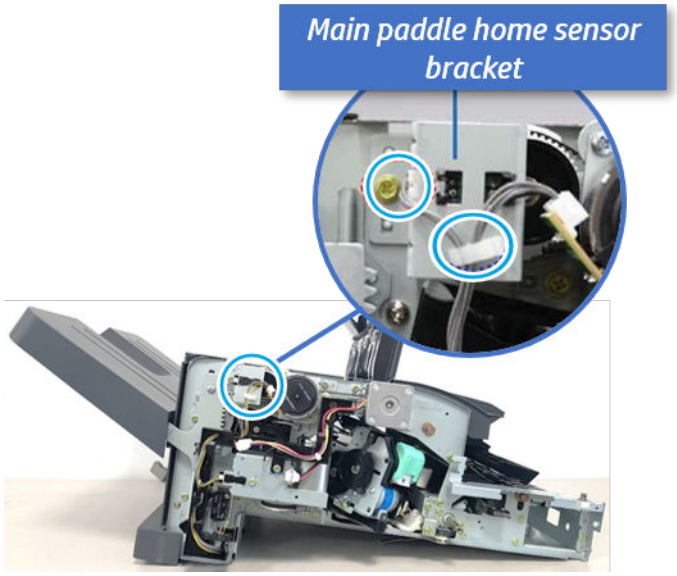


Remove the main paddle home sensor

Follow these steps to remove the main paddle home sensor.

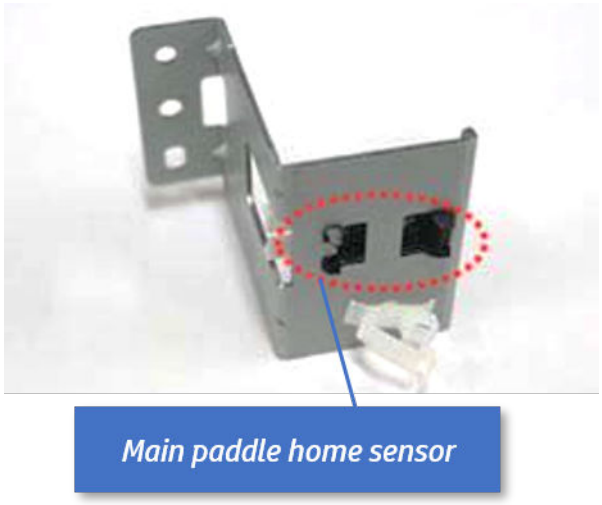
1. Remove one screw. Open the clamp and unplug one connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor bracket.

Figure 6-273 Remove the main paddle home sensor bracket



2. Remove the main paddle home sensor from the bracket.

Figure 6-274 Remove the main paddle home sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main paddle motor (M3)

Learn how to remove and replace the main paddle motor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-48 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Main paddle motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

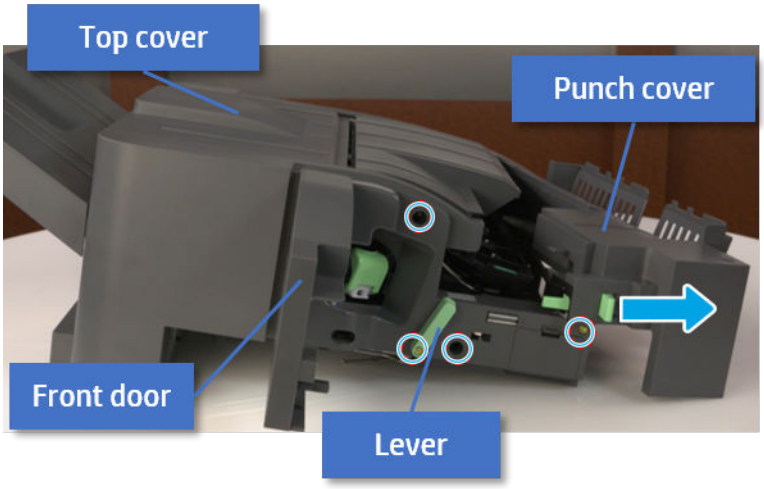
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-275 Remove the front cover

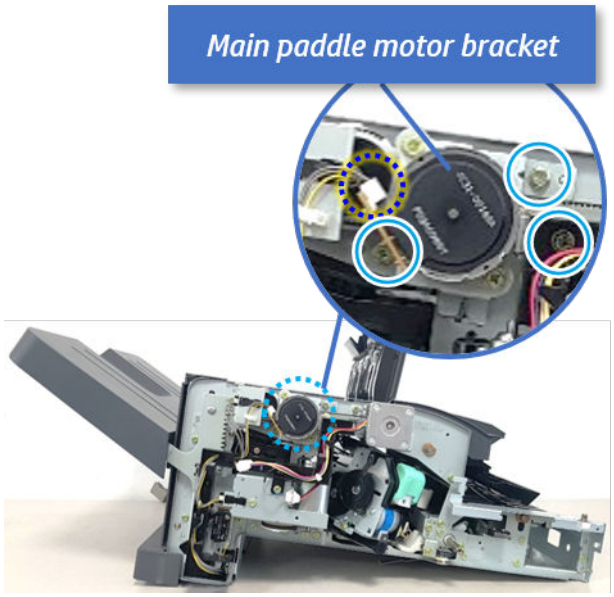


Remove the main paddle motor

Follow these steps to remove the main paddle motor.

1. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle motor bracket.

Figure 6-276 Remove the main paddle motor bracket



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the motor from the bracket.

Figure 6-277 Remove the main paddle motor

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main paddle assembly

Learn how to remove and replace the main paddle assembly.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-49 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01327A (not orderable)	Main paddle assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

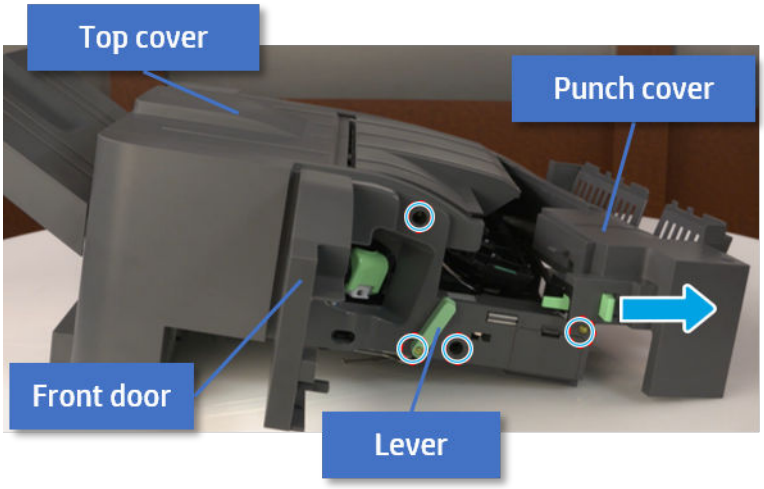
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-278 Remove the front cover

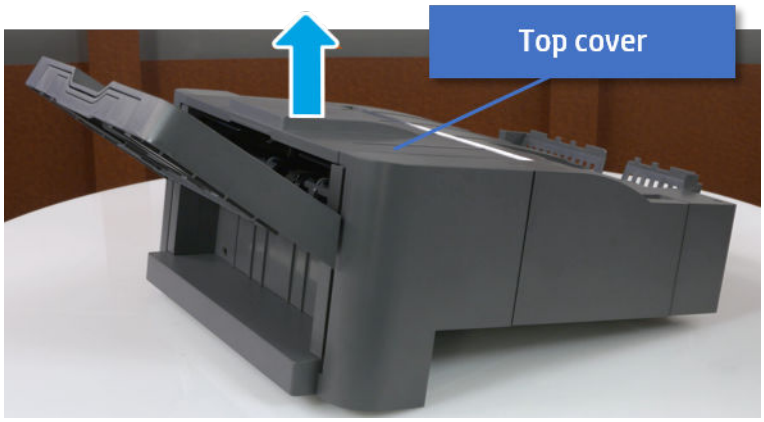


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

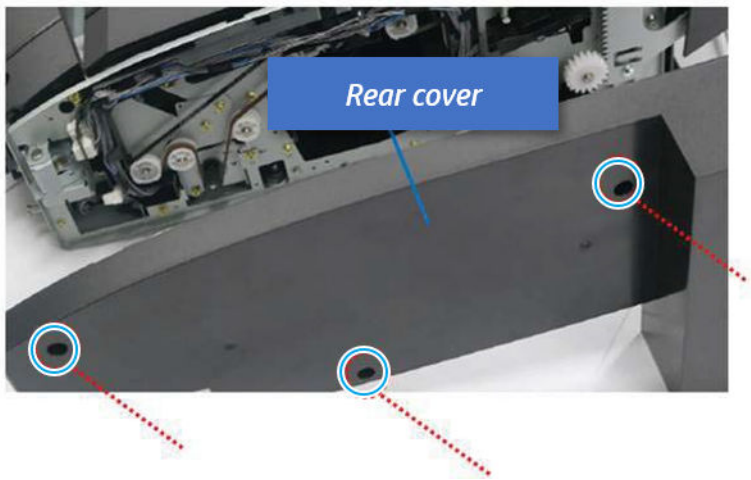
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-279 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-280 Remove the rear cover

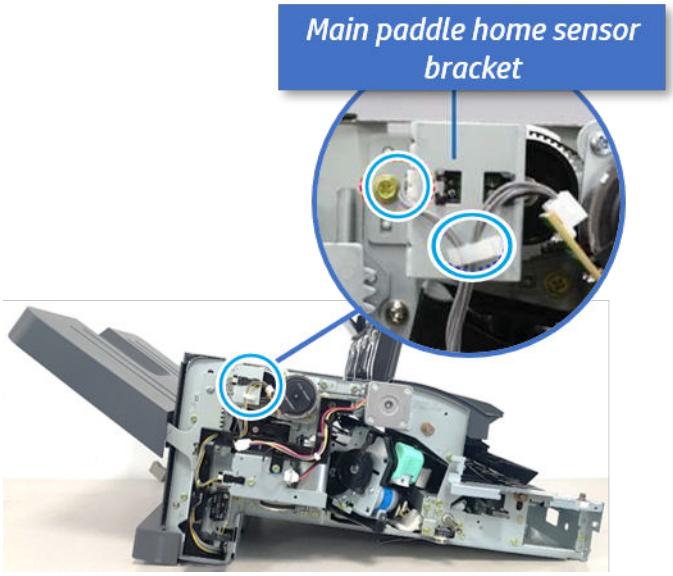


Remove the main paddle home sensor bracket

Follow these steps to remove the main paddle home sensor bracket.

- Remove one screw. Open the clamp and unplug one connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor bracket.

Figure 6-281 Remove the main paddle home sensor bracket

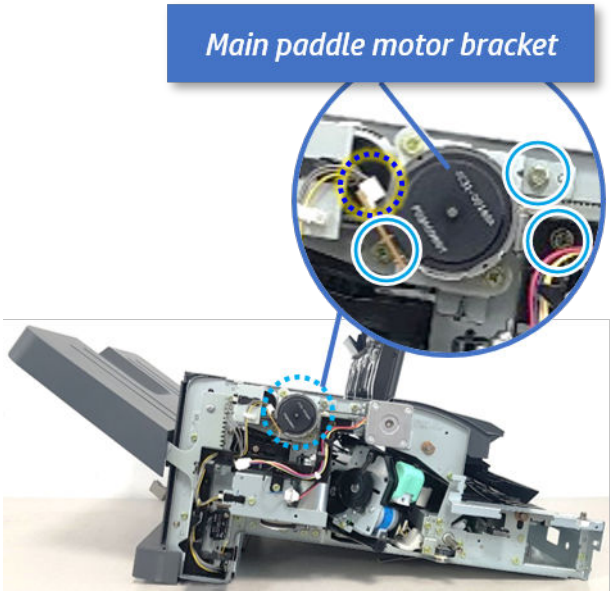


Remove the main paddle motor bracket

Follow these steps to remove the main paddle motor bracket.

▲ Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle motor bracket.

Figure 6-282 Remove the main paddle motor bracket



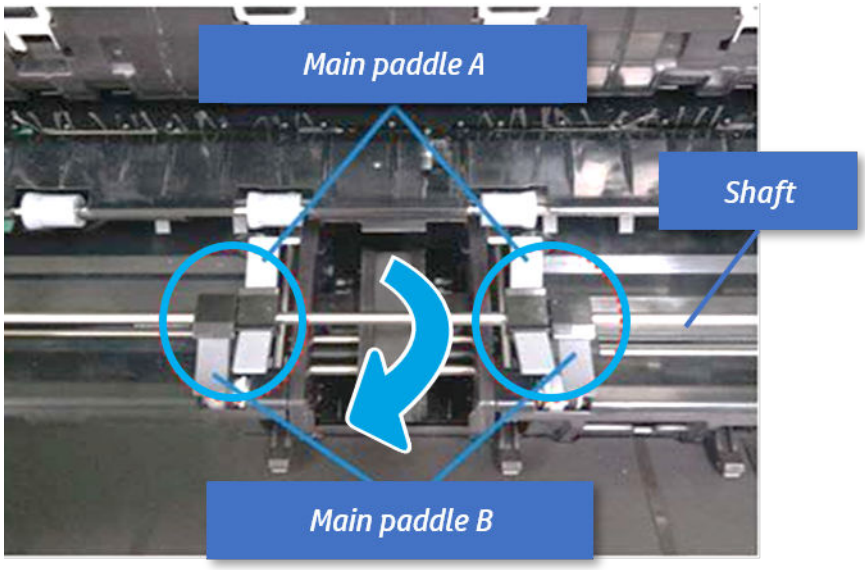
Remove the main paddle

Follow these steps to remove the main paddle.

1. Open the top cover.

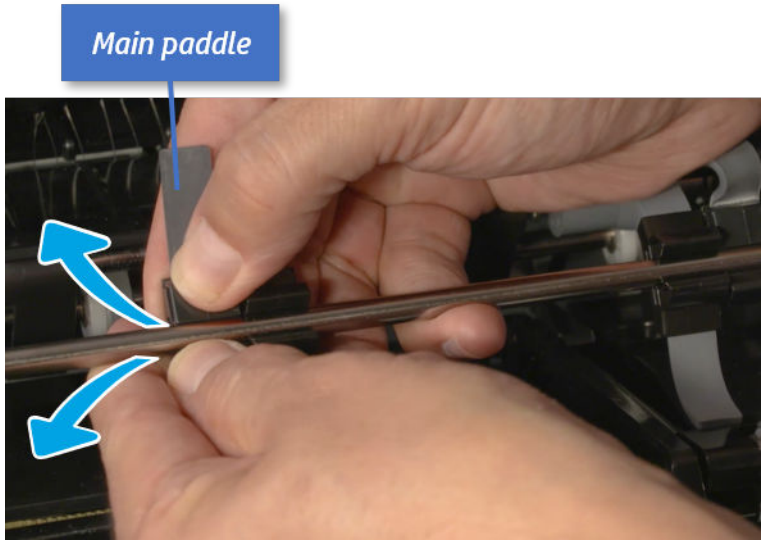
2. Rotate the main paddle shaft to see the lower side of the main paddle.

Figure 6-283 Rotate the main paddle shaft

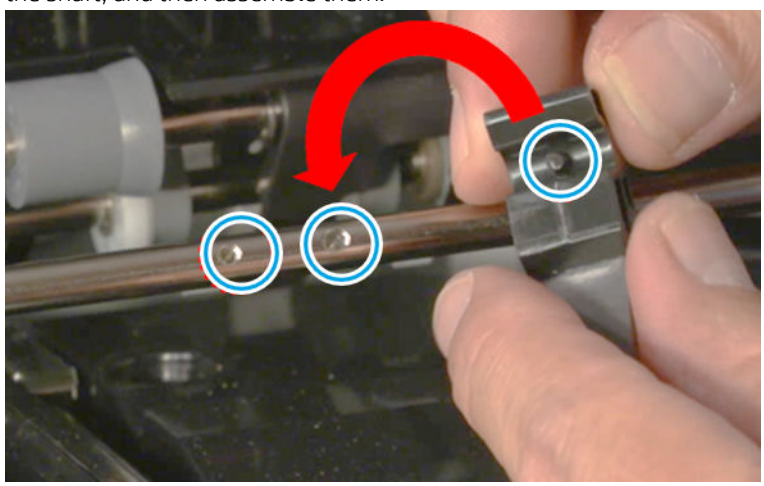


3. Remove the main paddle by pushing both sides.

Figure 6-284 Remove the main paddle



TIP: When reassembling the main paddle, check the pin position of the paddle and the hole position of the shaft, and then assemble them.

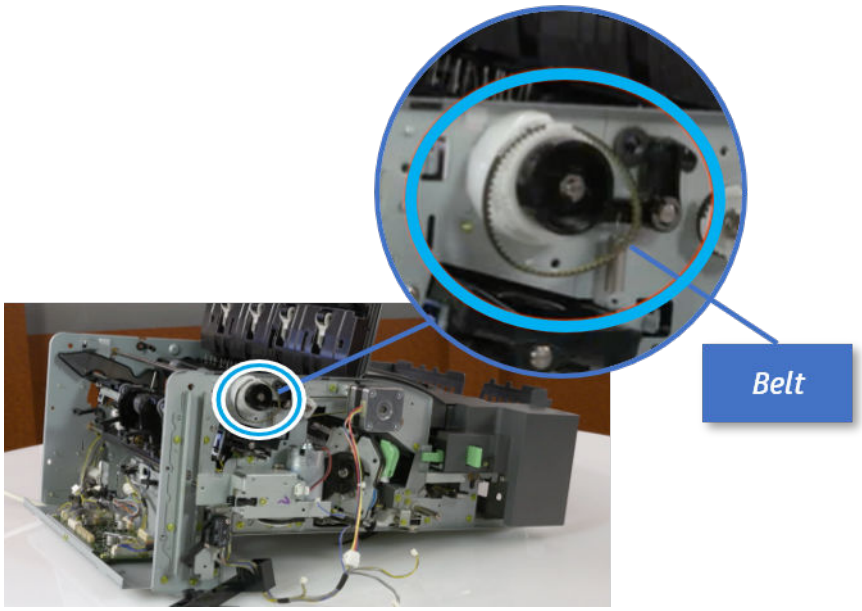


Remove the main paddle assembly

Follow these steps to remove the main paddle assembly.

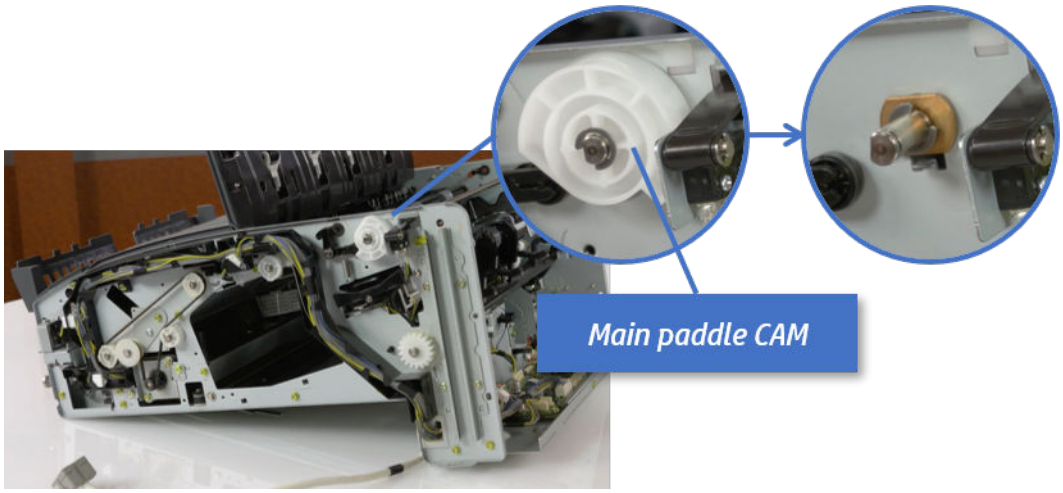
1. Remove the belt in the front.

Figure 6-285 Remove the belt



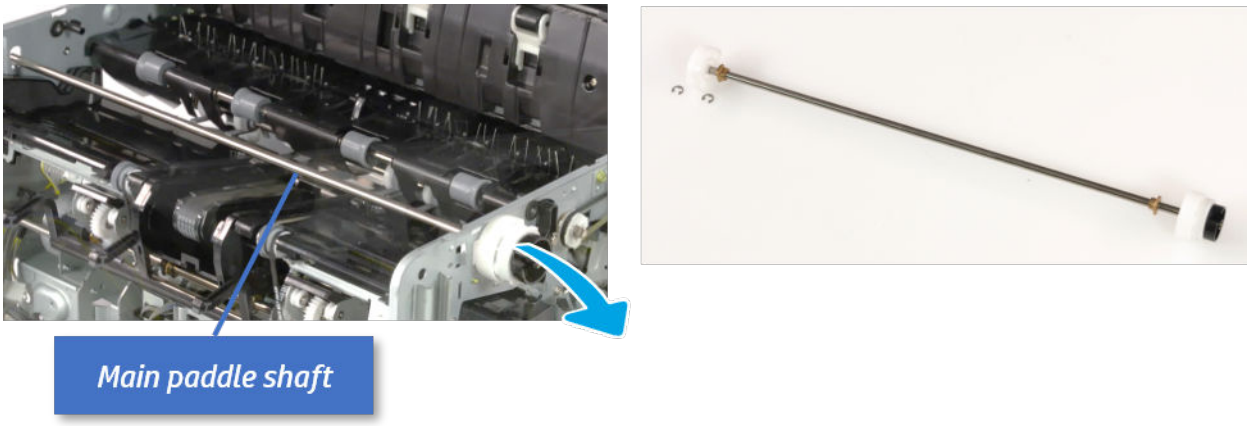
2. Remove the e-ring and the main paddle CAM in the rear. And then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-286 Remove the e-ring, cam, and bushing



3. Push the shaft to remove the main paddle shaft.

Figure 6-287 Remove the main paddle shaft



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Sub paddle unit

Learn how to remove and replace the sub paddle unit.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-50 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01336A	Sub paddle unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

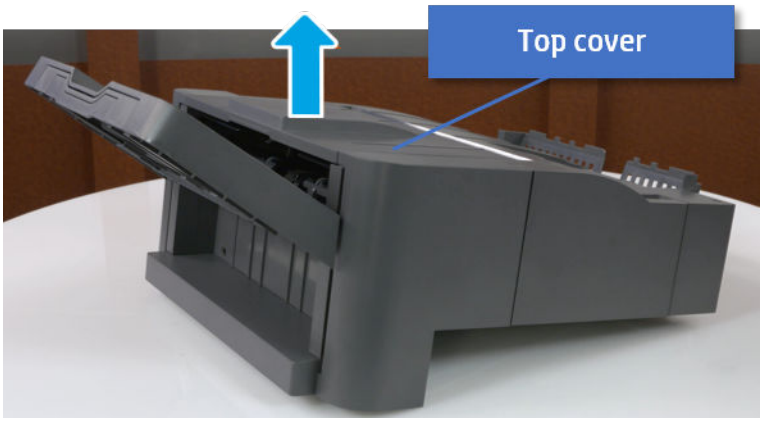
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

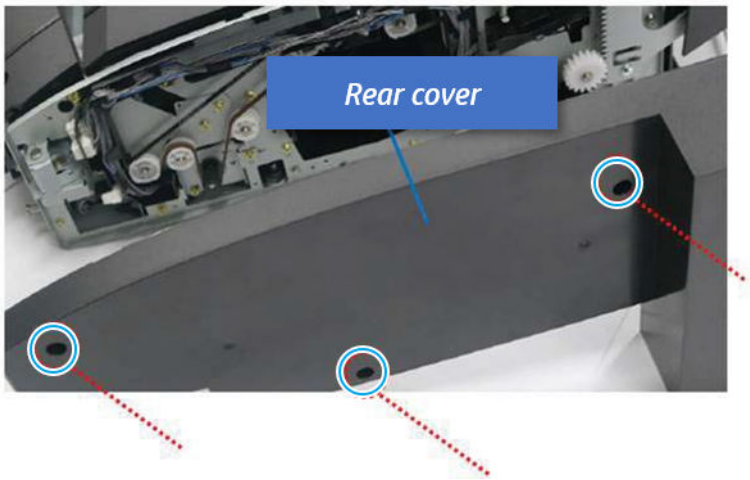
1. Open the top cover.

   Figure 6-288 Open the top cover

2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

   Figure 6-289 Remove the rear cover

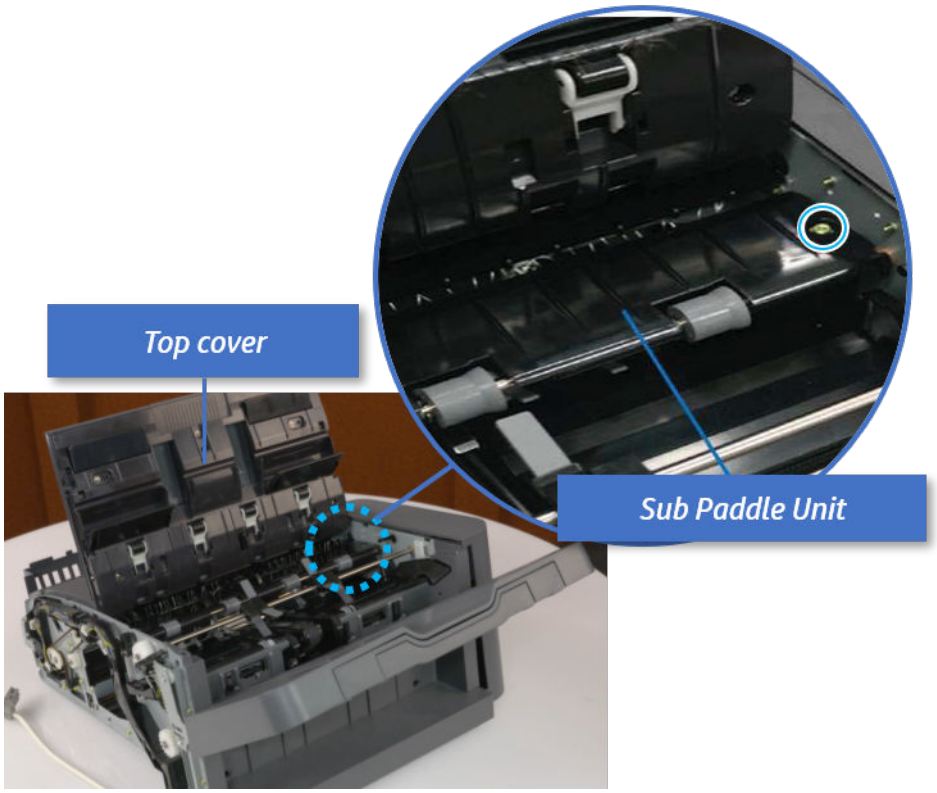
   

Remove the sub paddle unit

Follow these steps to remove the sub paddle unit.

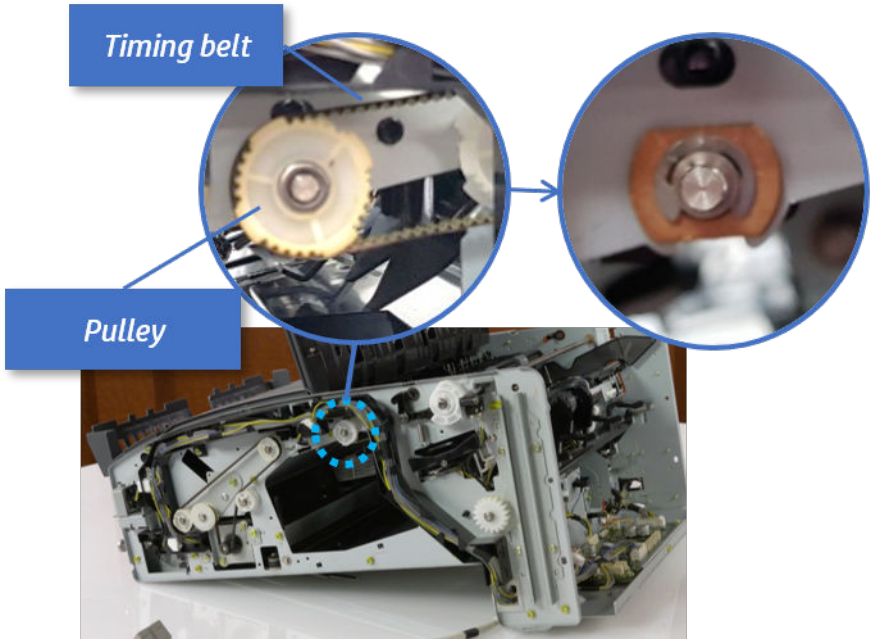
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw securing the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-290 Remove one screw



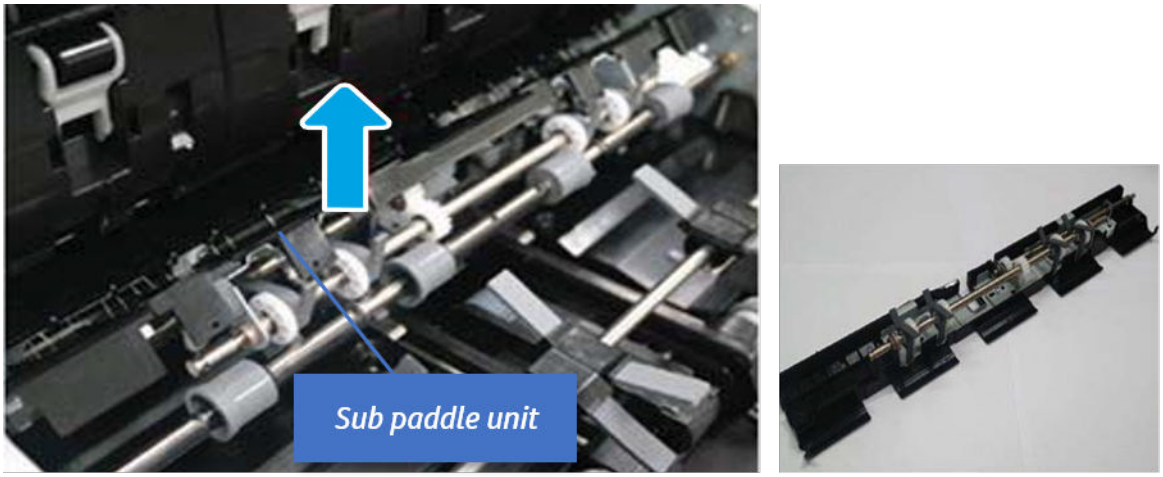
2. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt. And then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-291 Remove the e-ring, pulley, timing belt, and bushing



3. Lift up and remove the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-292 Remove the sub paddle unit



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Tamper unit

Front tamper

HP LaserJet Managed MFP E82540du-E82560du, E87640du-E87660du, E82540-E82560, E87640-E87660, E72525-E72535, E77822-E77830 - Front tamper

Learn how to remove and replace the front tamper.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-51 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00899A	Front tamper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

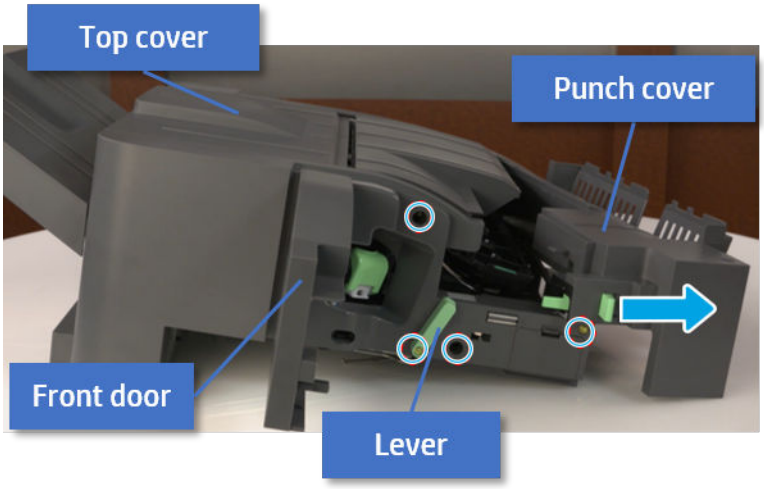
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-293 Remove the front cover

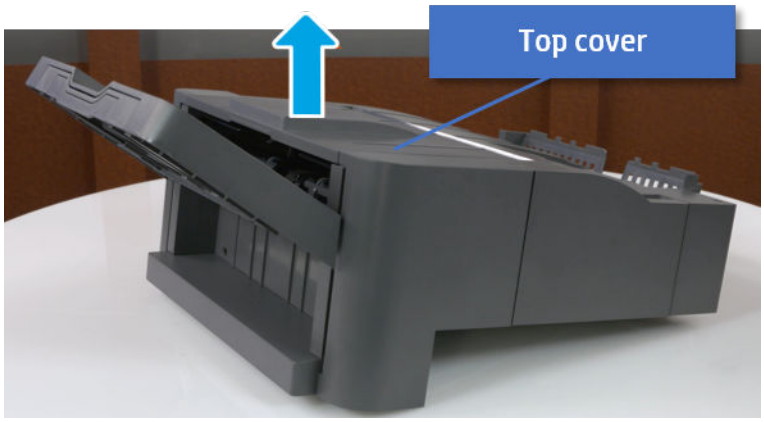


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

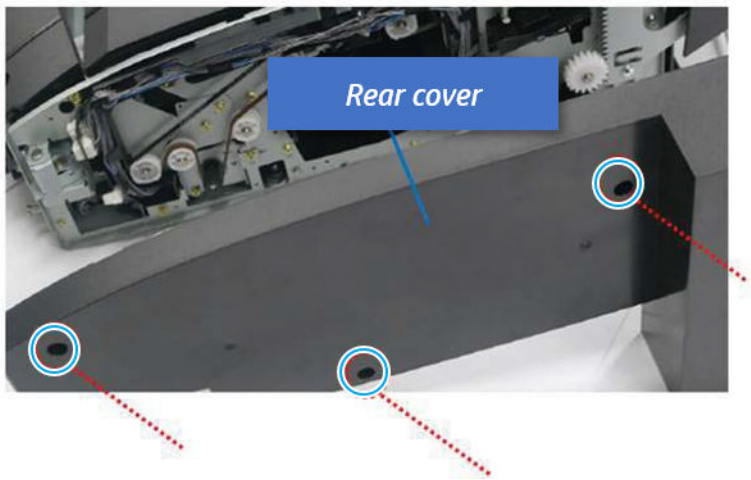
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-294 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-295 Remove the rear cover

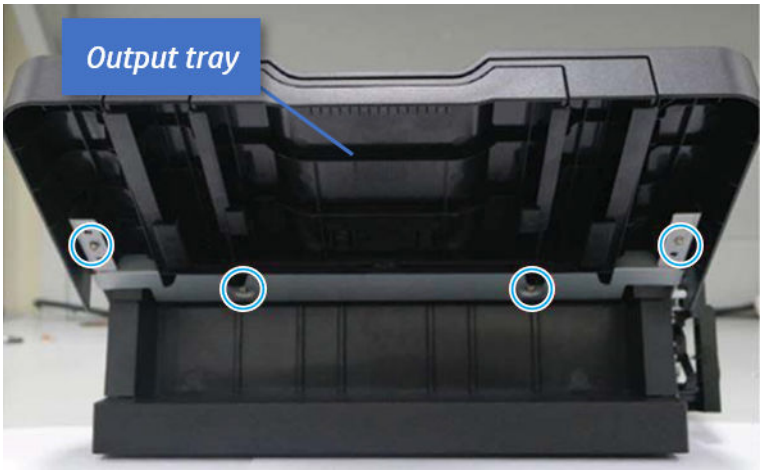


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-296 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

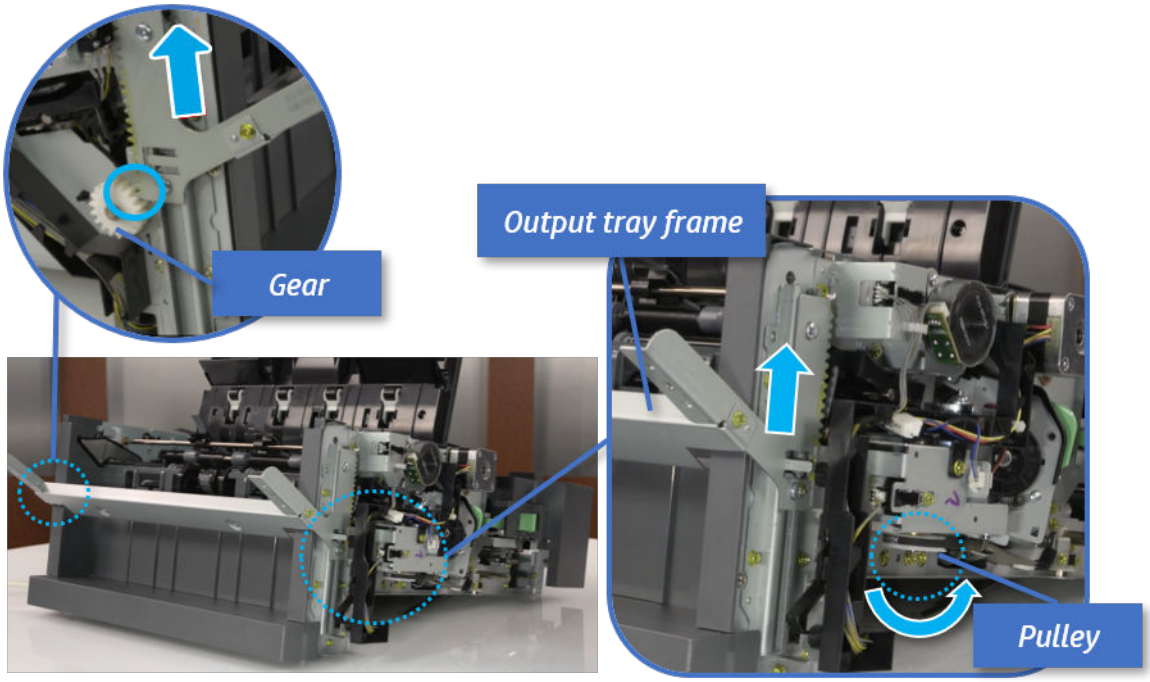
Figure 6-297 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

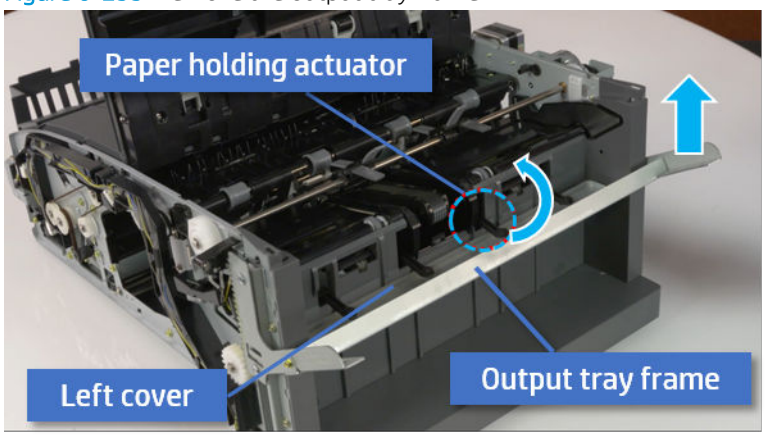
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-298 Remove the pulley



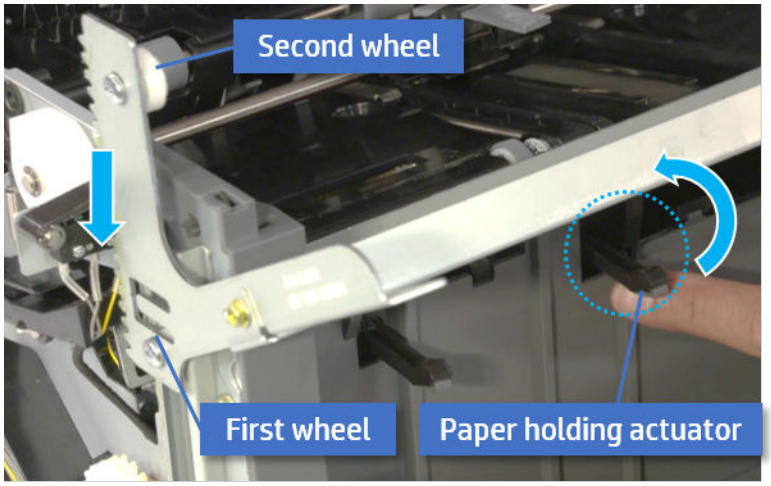
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-299 Remove the output tray frame



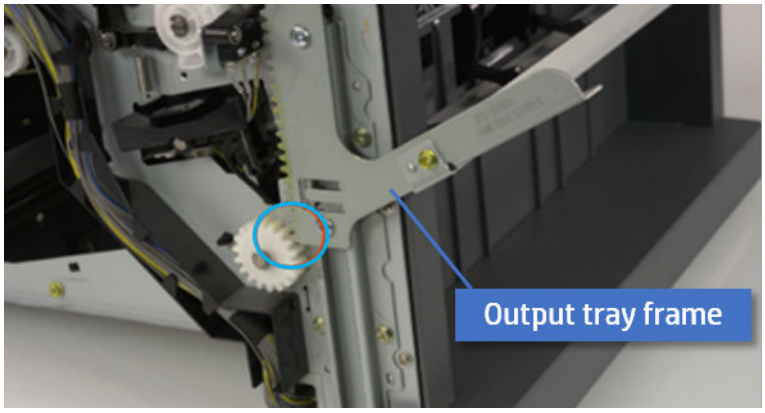
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

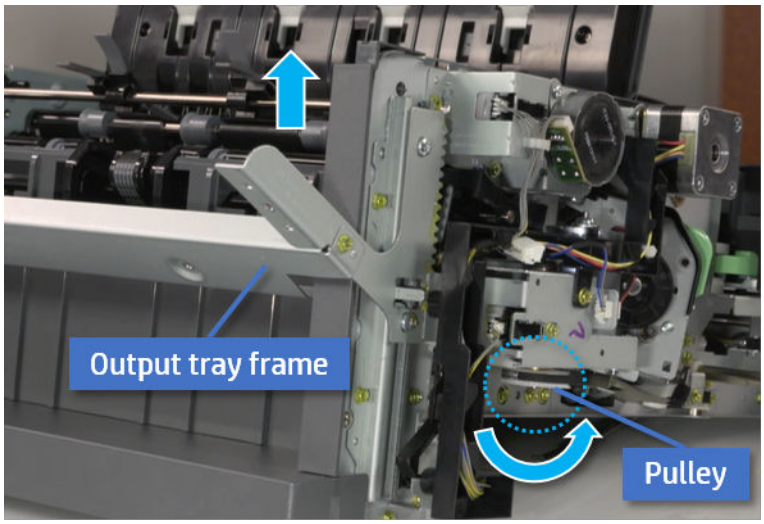


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

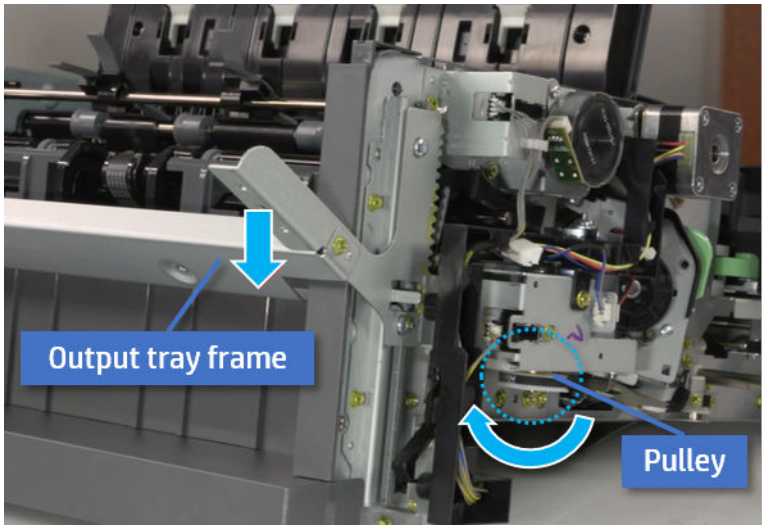
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

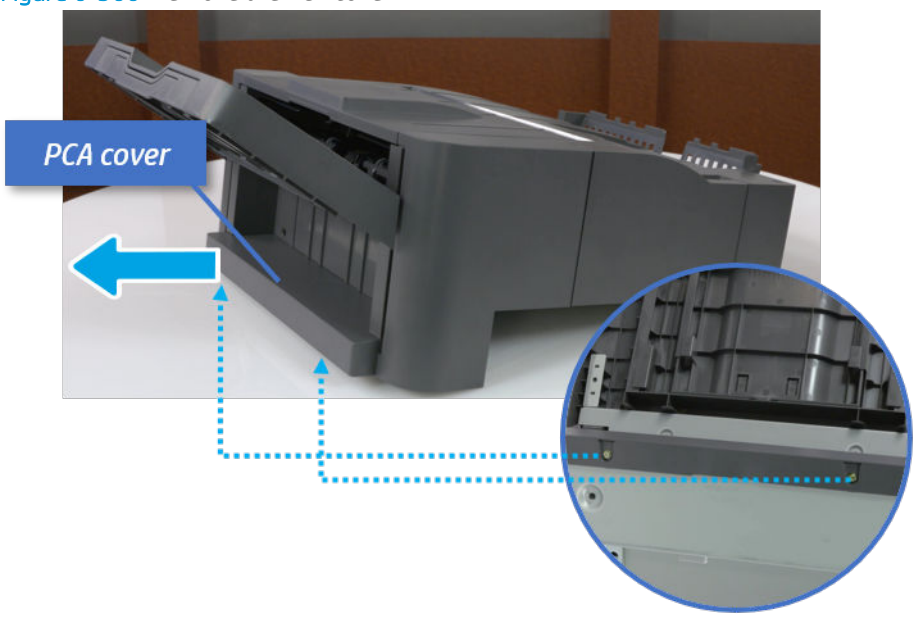


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-300 Remove the PCA cover

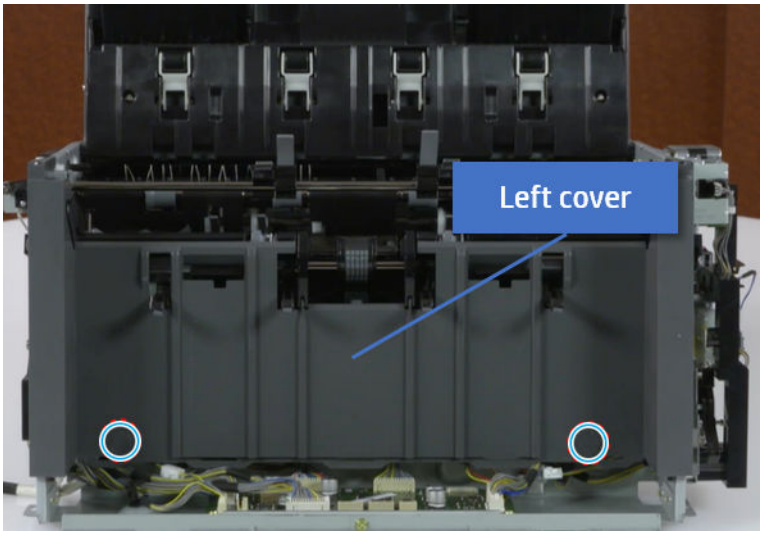


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

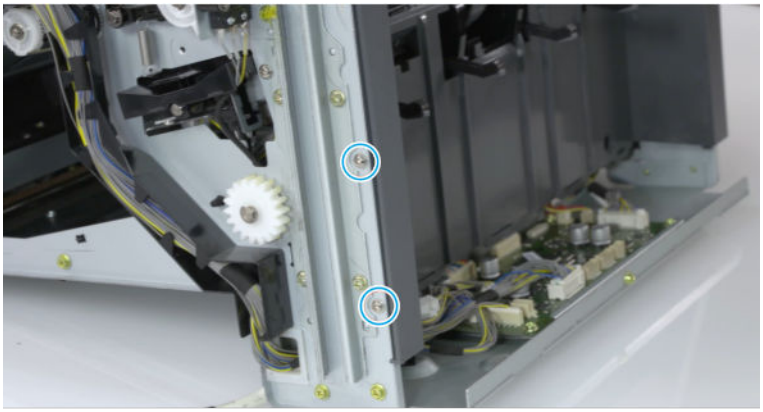
1. Remove two screws.

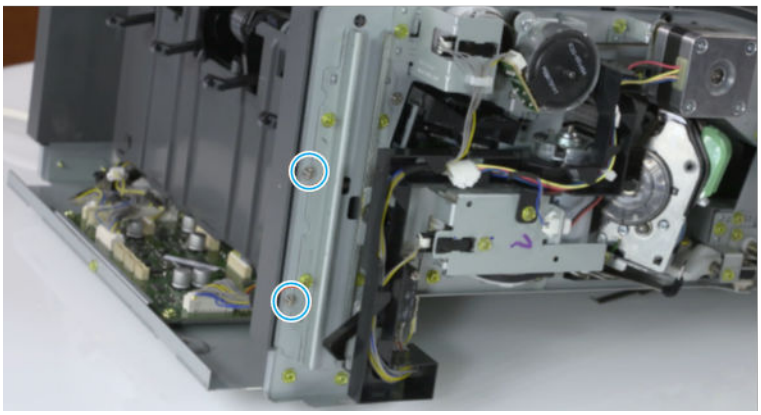
Figure 6-301 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

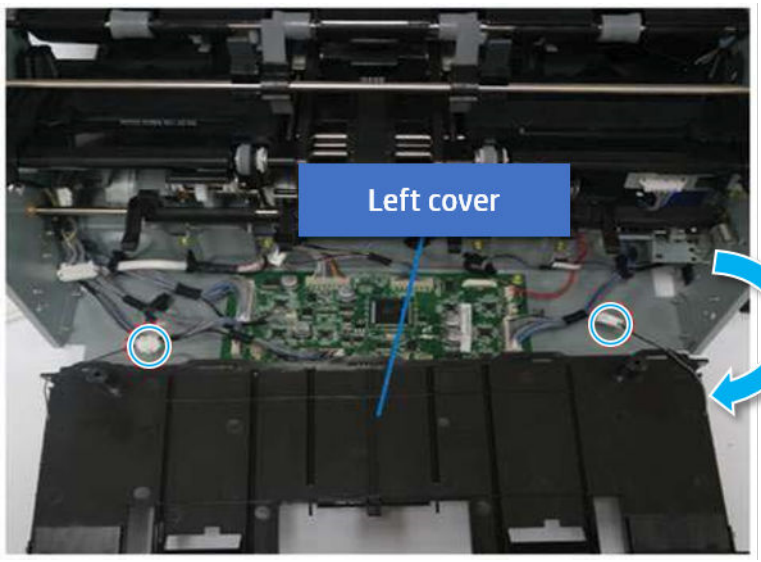
Figure 6-302 Remove four screws



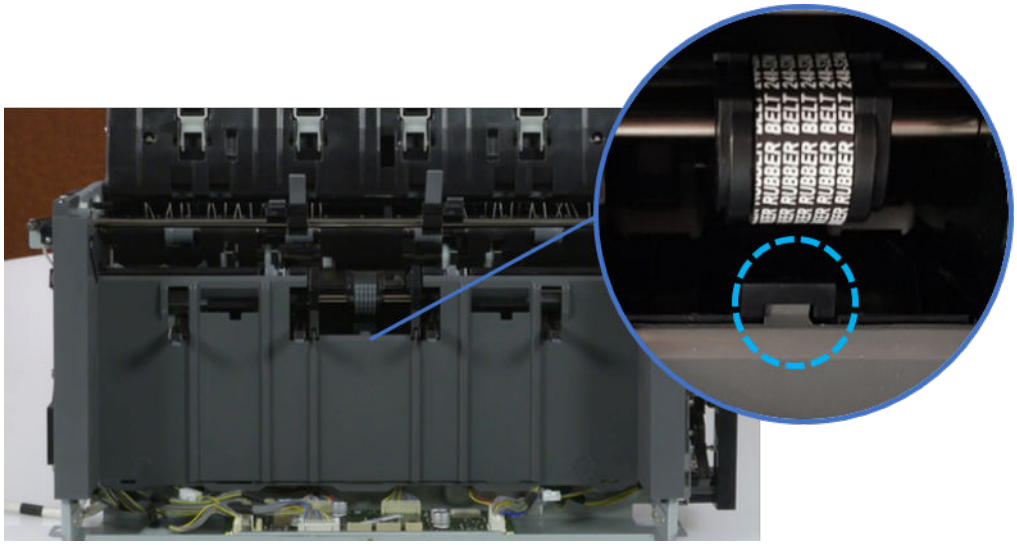


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-303 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



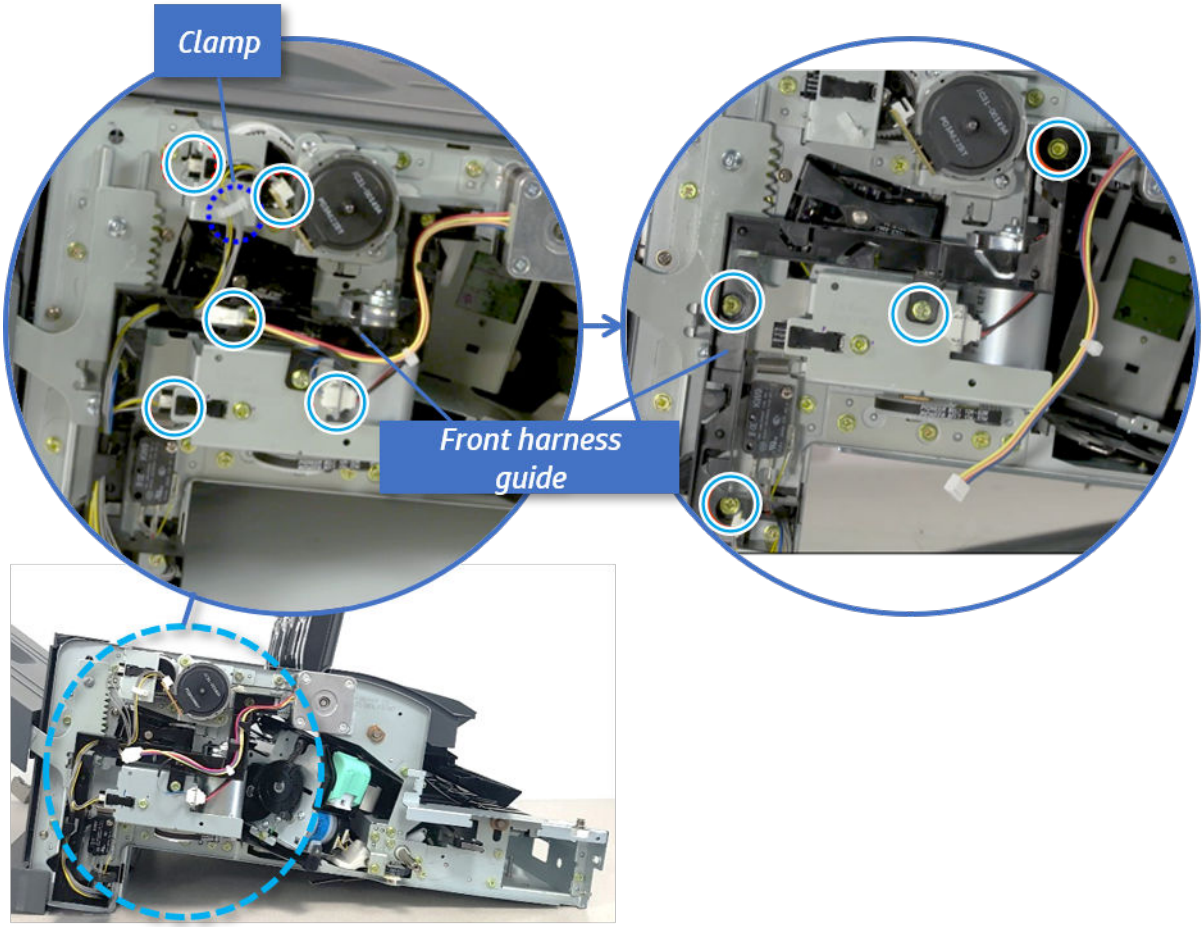
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-304 Remove the front harness guide

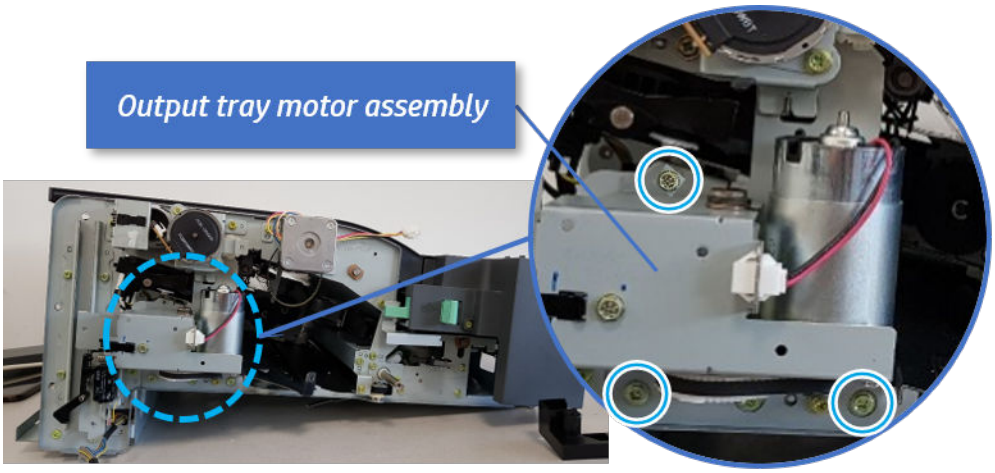


Remove the output tray motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor assembly.

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-305 Remove the output tray motor assembly

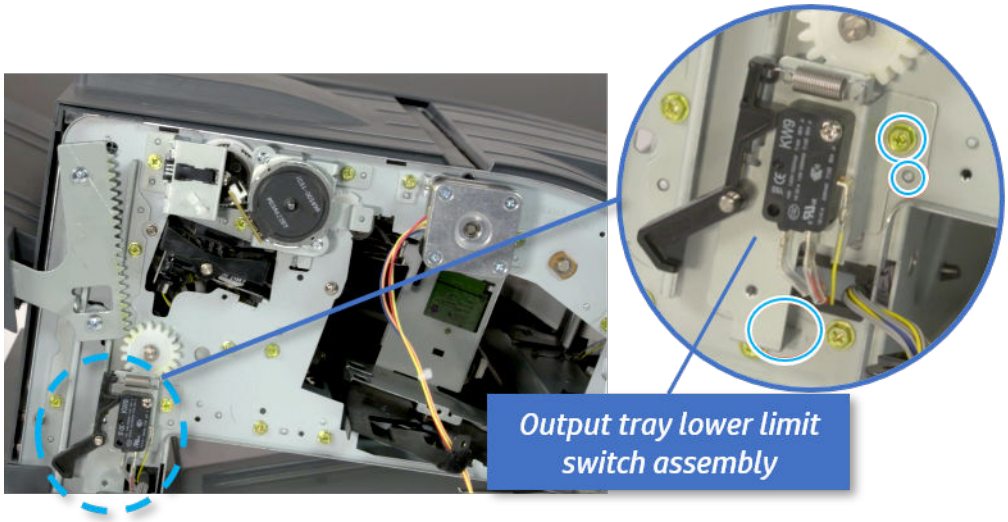


Remove the output tray lower limit switch

Follow these steps to remove the output tray lower limit switch.

- ▲ Remove one screw, and then remove the output tray lower limit switch.

Figure 6-306 Remove the output tray lower limit switch

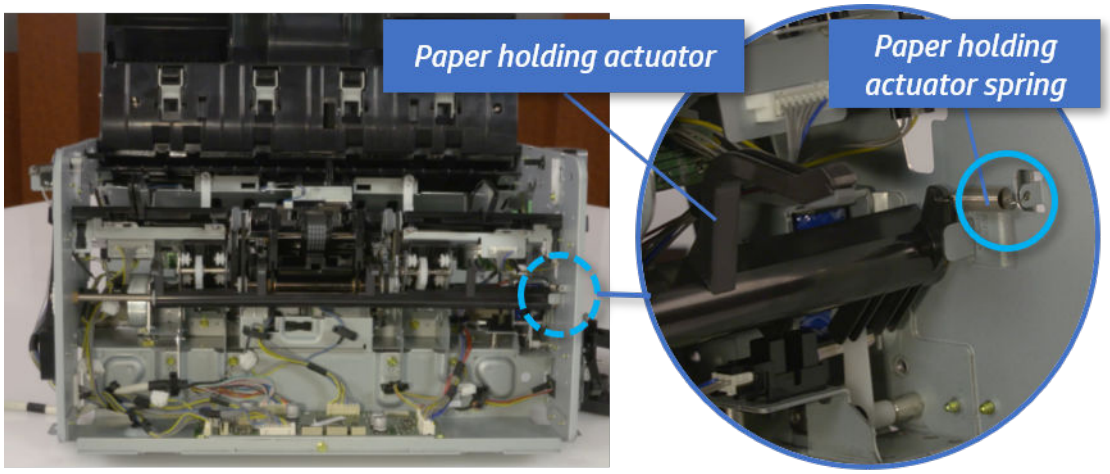


Remove the paper holding

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding.

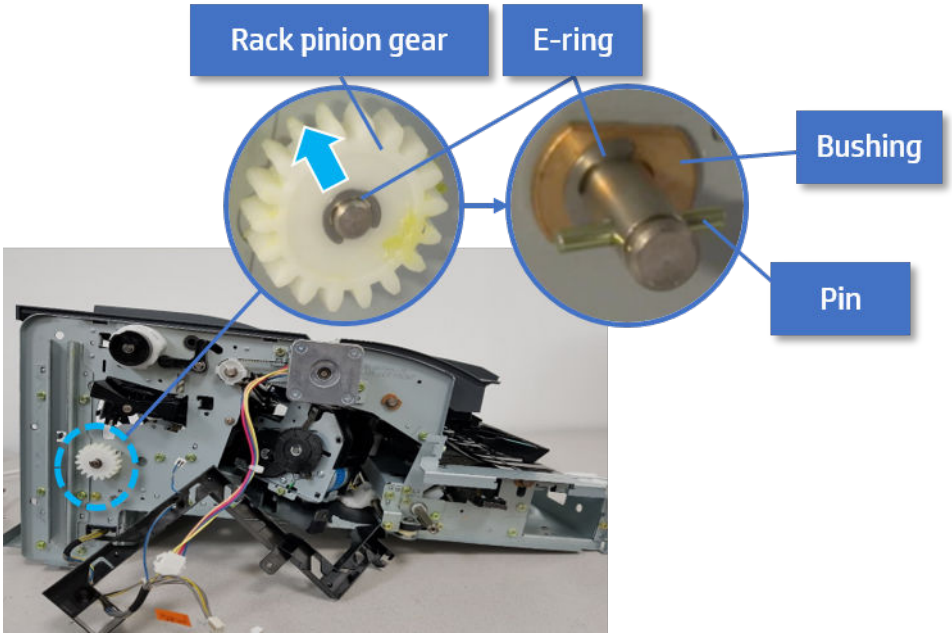
1. Remove the paper holding actuator spring.

Figure 6-307 Remove the paper holding actuator spring



2. Remove the e-ring and the rack pinion gear. And then remove the pin and the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

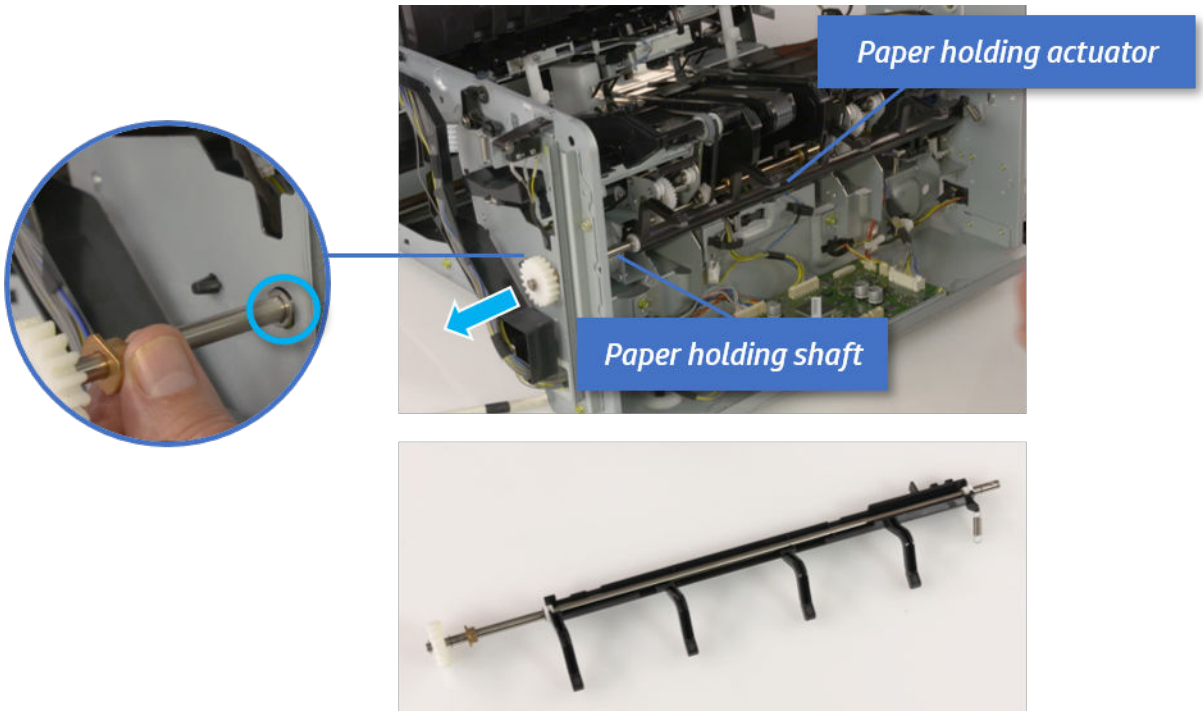
Figure 6-308 Remove e-ring, rack pinion gear, pin, and bushing



NOTE: Be sure not to lose the pin.

3. Carefully remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator.

Figure 6-309 Remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator

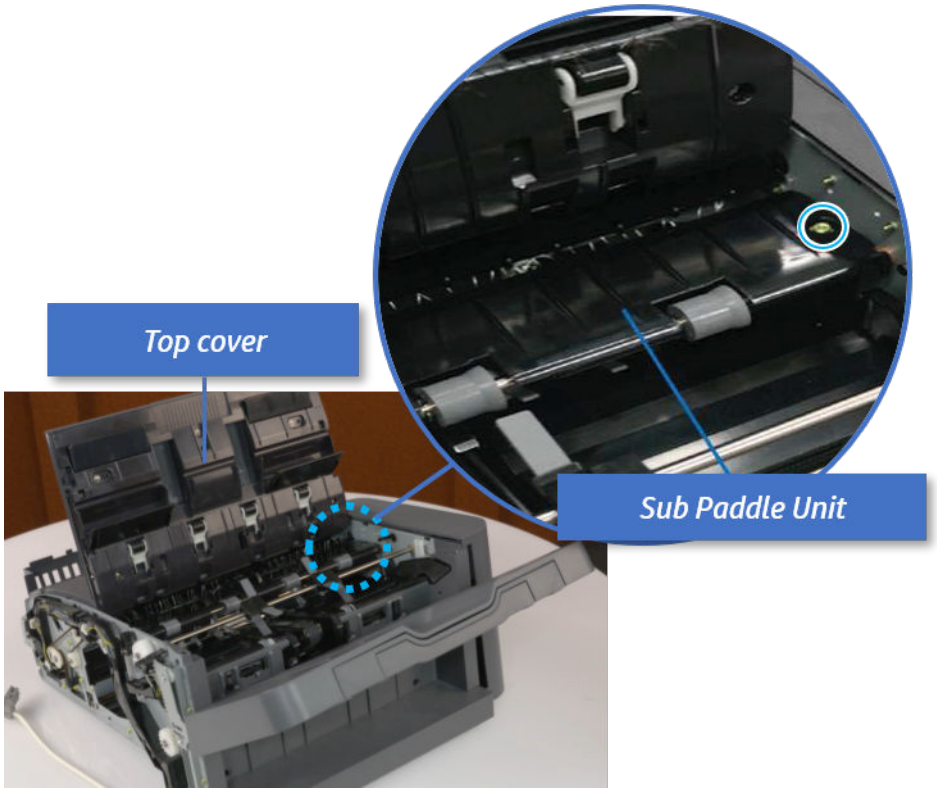


Remove the sub paddle unit

Follow these steps to remove the sub paddle unit.

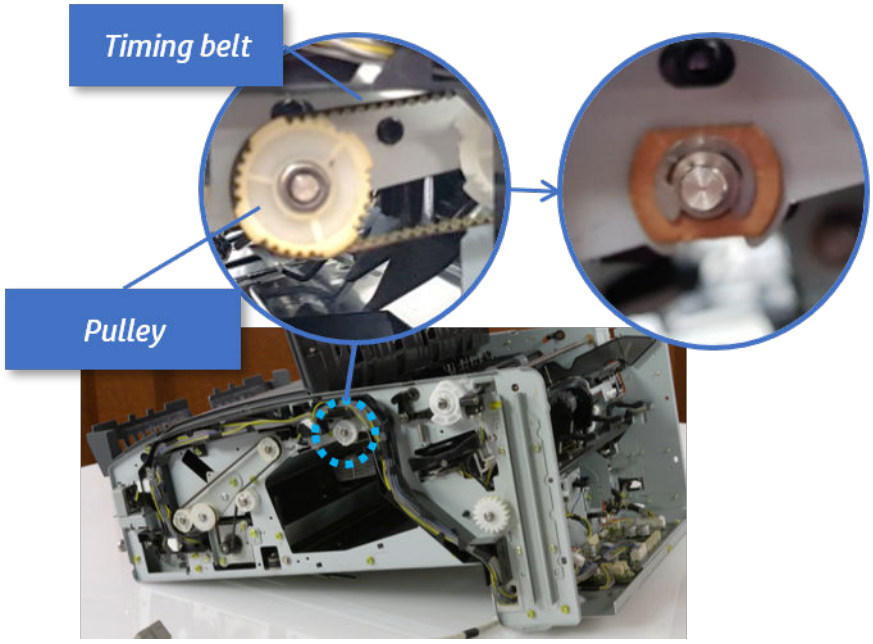
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw securing the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-310 Remove one screw



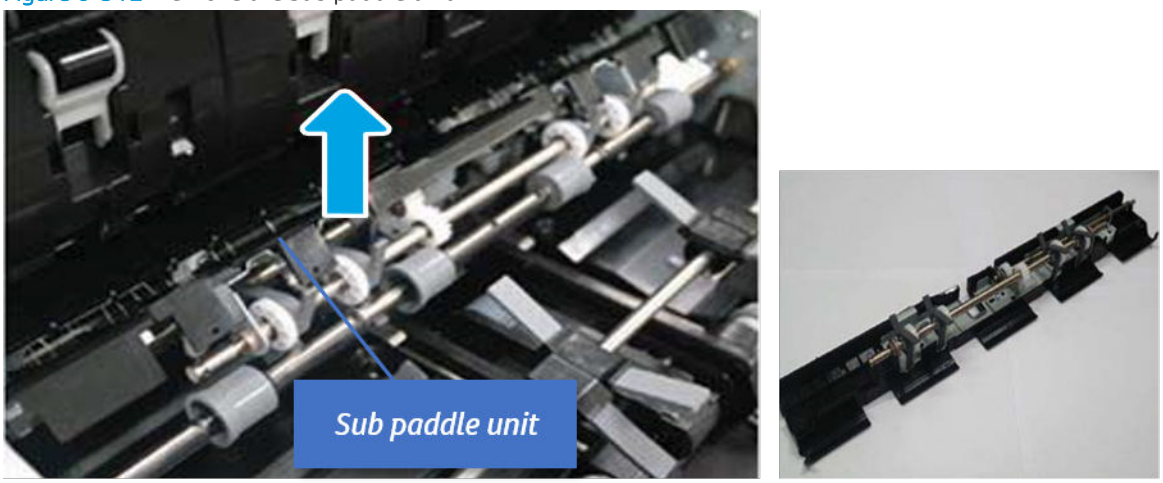
2. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt. And then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-311 Remove the e-ring, pulley, timing belt, and bushing



3. Lift up and remove the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-312 Remove the sub paddle unit

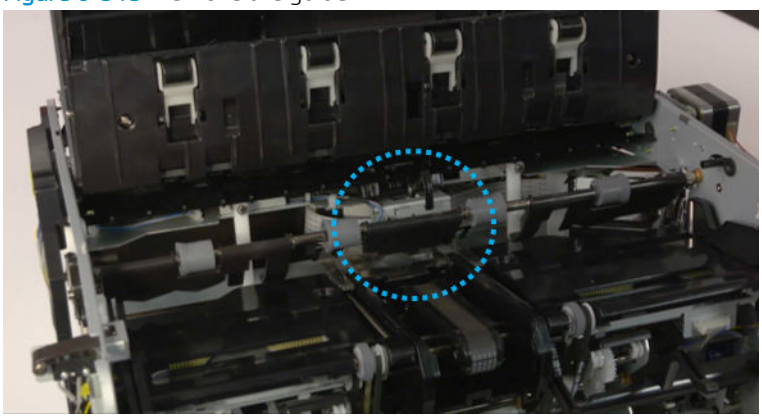


Remove the exit roller

Follow these steps to remove the exit roller.

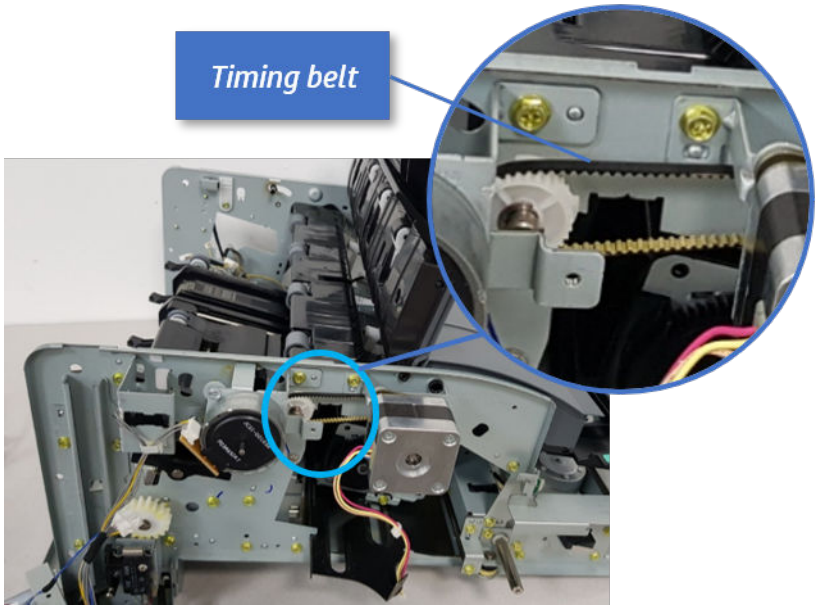
1. Remove the guide on the center of the exit roller.

Figure 6-313 Remove the guide



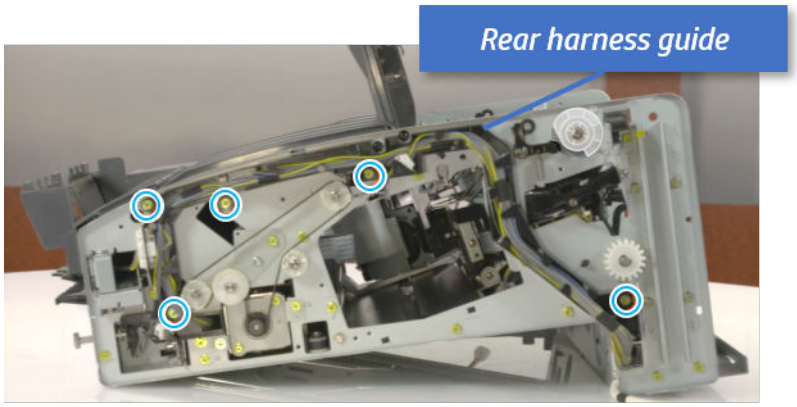
2. On the front of the inner finisher, release the timing belt connected to the exit motor.

Figure 6-314 Release the timing belt



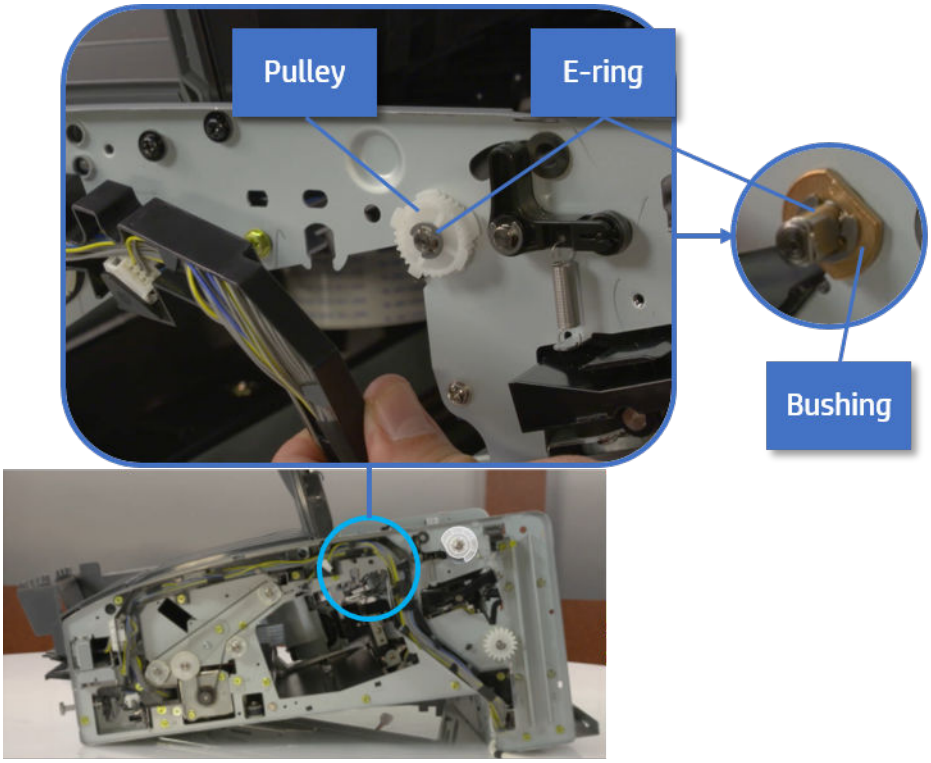
3. Remove five screws securing the rear harness guide.

Figure 6-315 Remove five screws



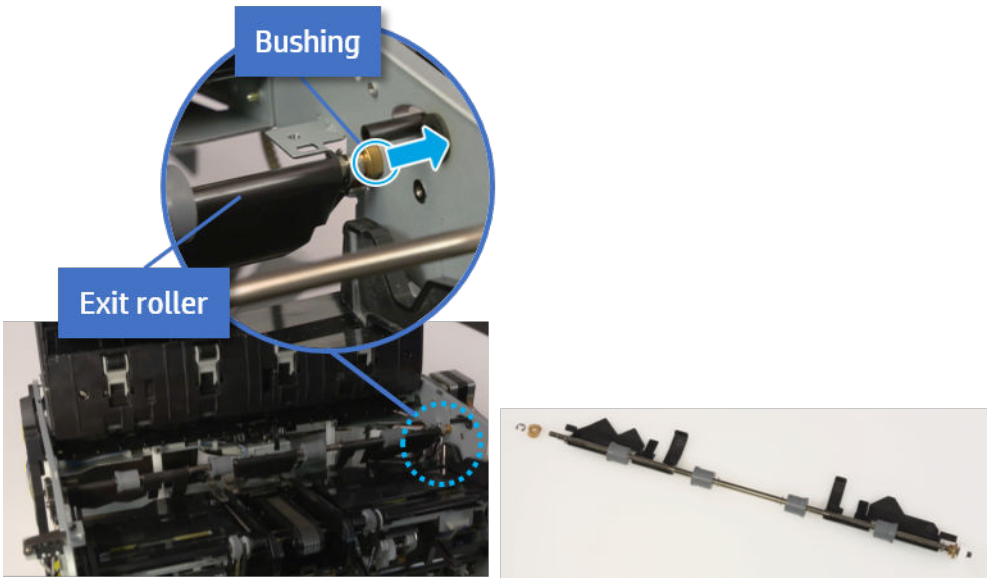
4. On the rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and the pulley and then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-316 Remove e-ring, pulley, and bushing



5. Push the bushing to detach it, and then remove the exit roller.

Figure 6-317 Remove the exit roller

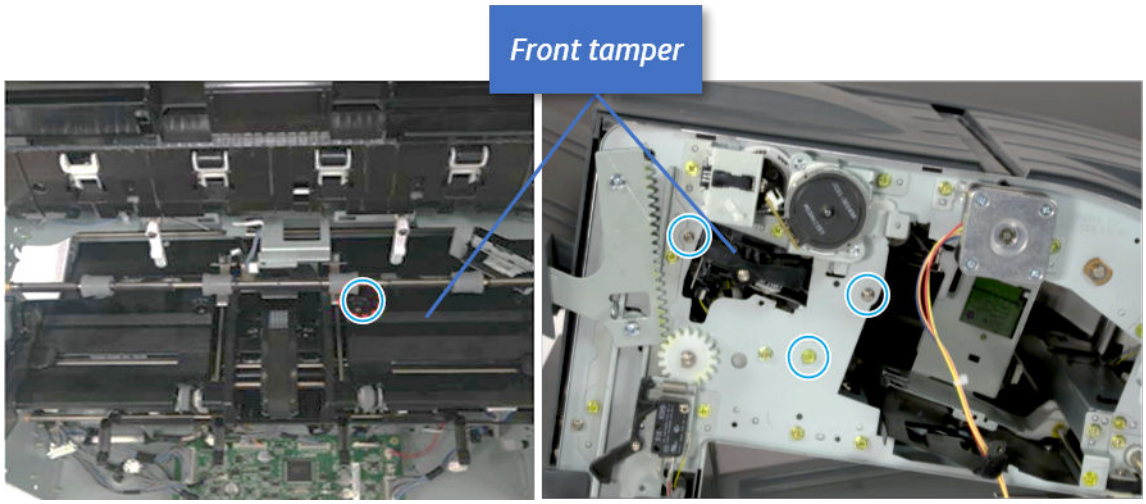


Remove the front tamper

Follow these steps to remove the front tamper.

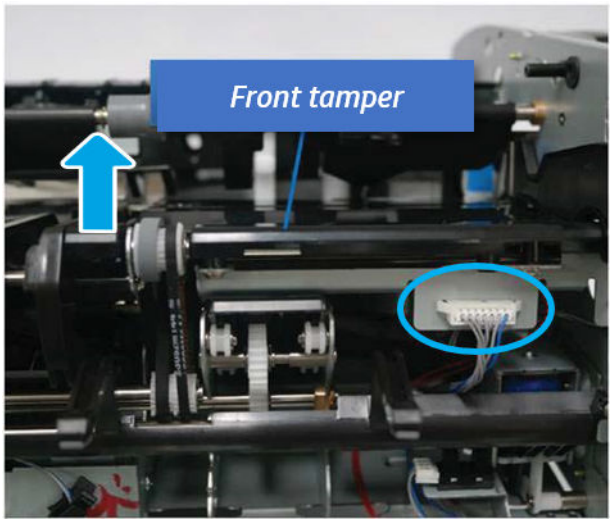
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-318 Remove four screws



2. Unplug the connector and release the hook, and then pull the front tamper up to remove.

Figure 6-319 Remove the front tamper



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front tamper home sensor (S5)

Learn how to remove and replace the front tamper home sensor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-52 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Front tamper home sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

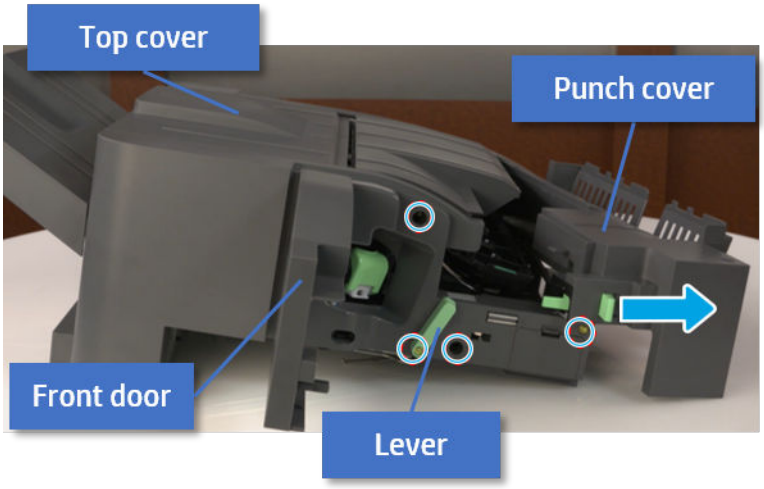
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-320 Remove the front cover

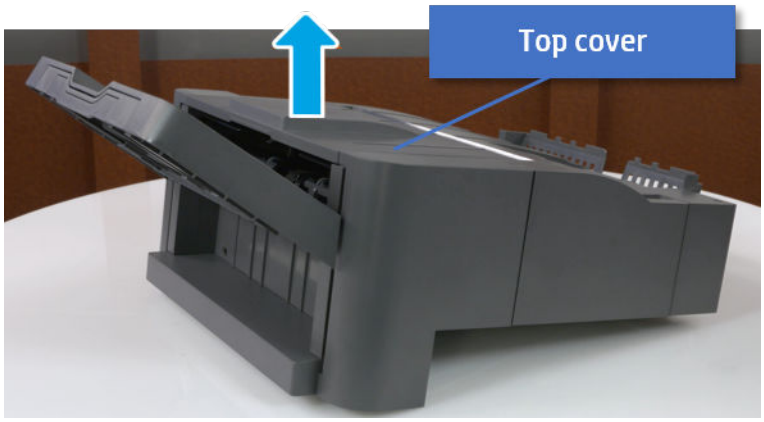


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

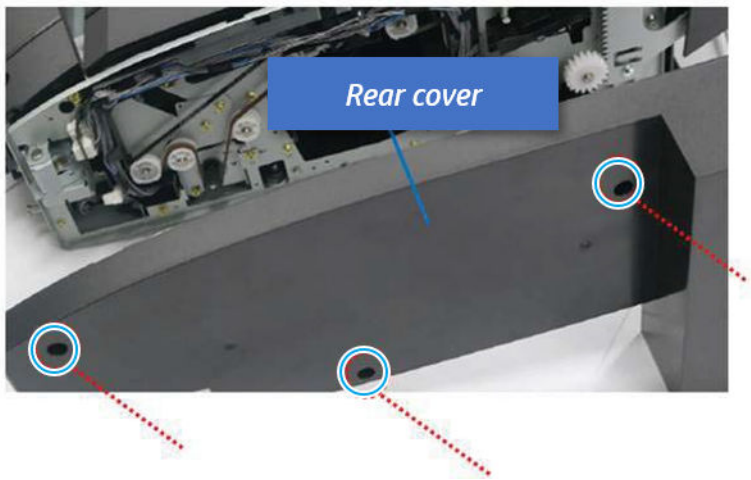
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-321 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-322 Remove the rear cover

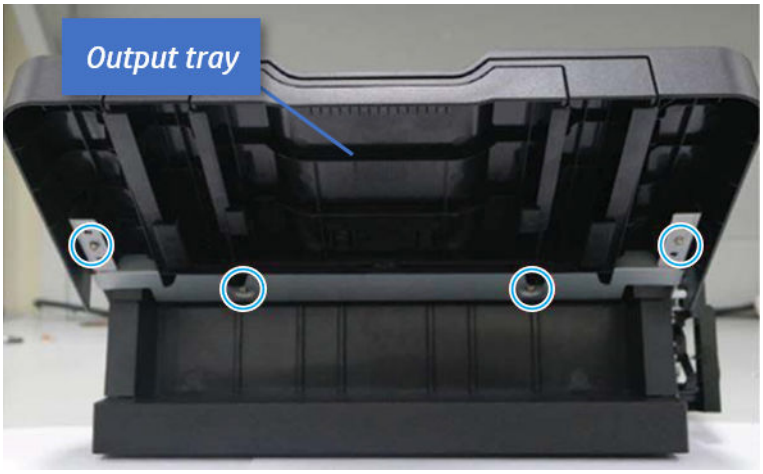


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-323 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

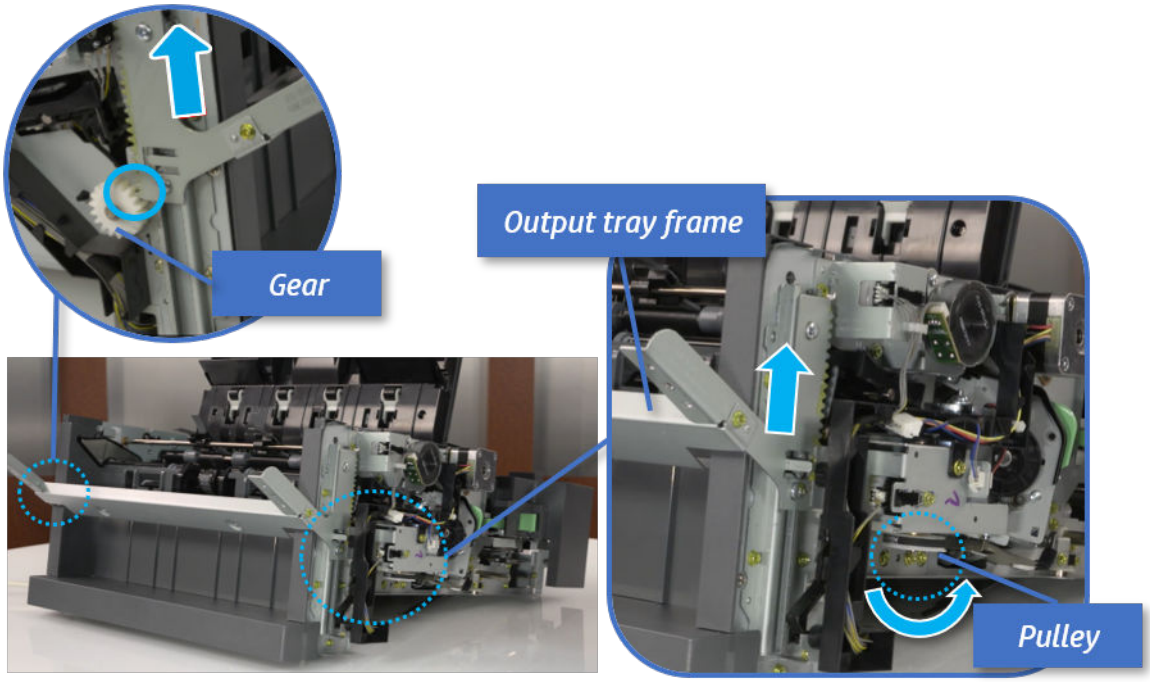
Figure 6-324 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

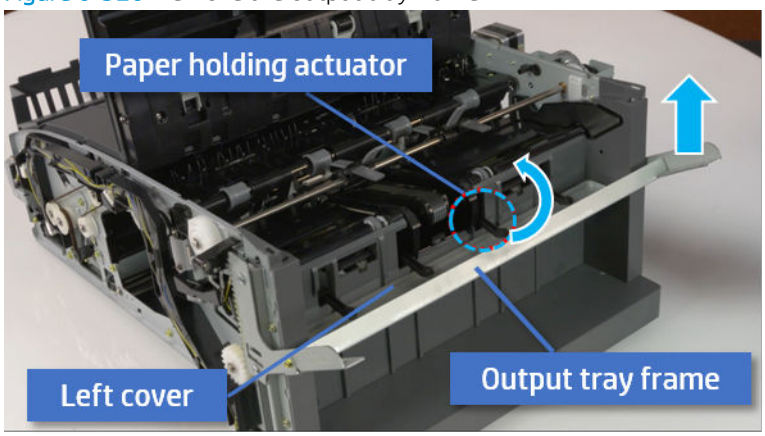
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-325 Remove the pulley



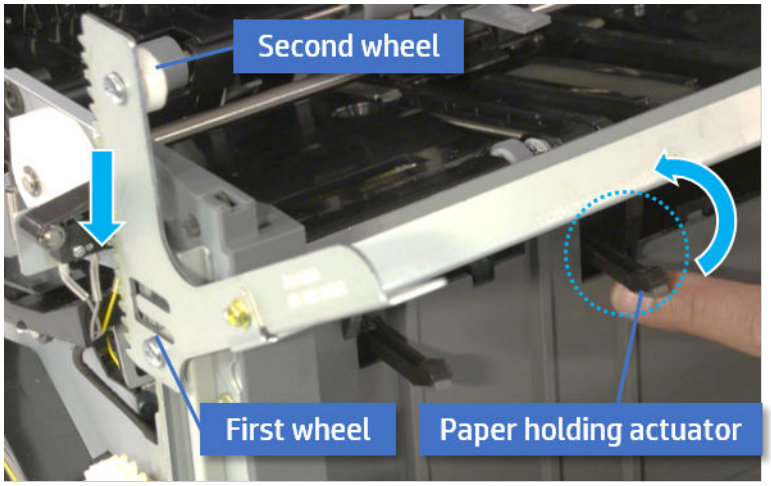
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-326 Remove the output tray frame



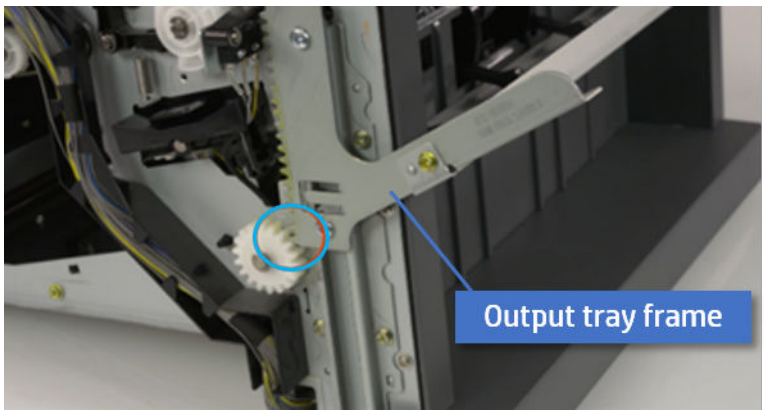
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

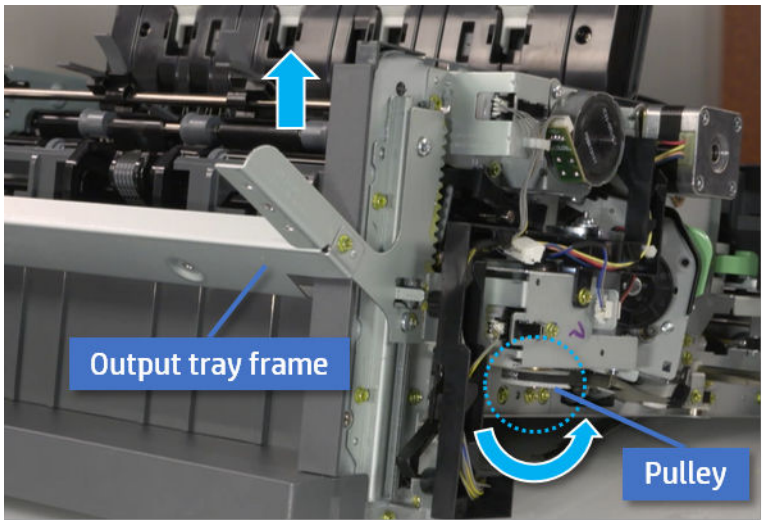


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

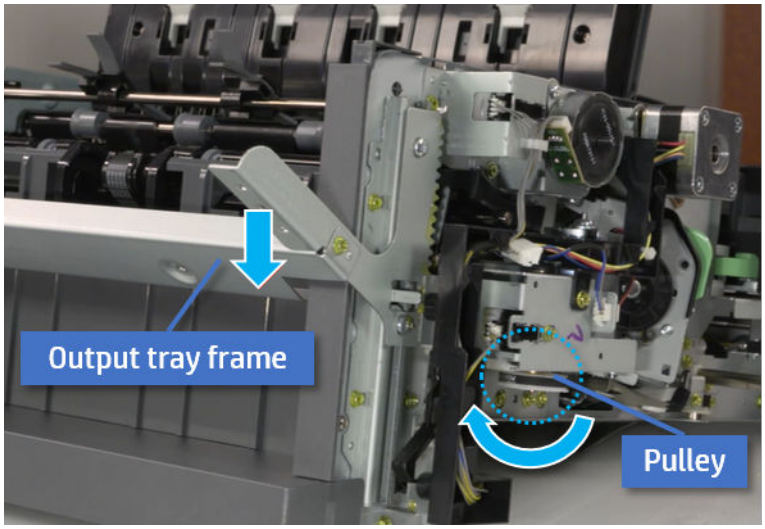
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

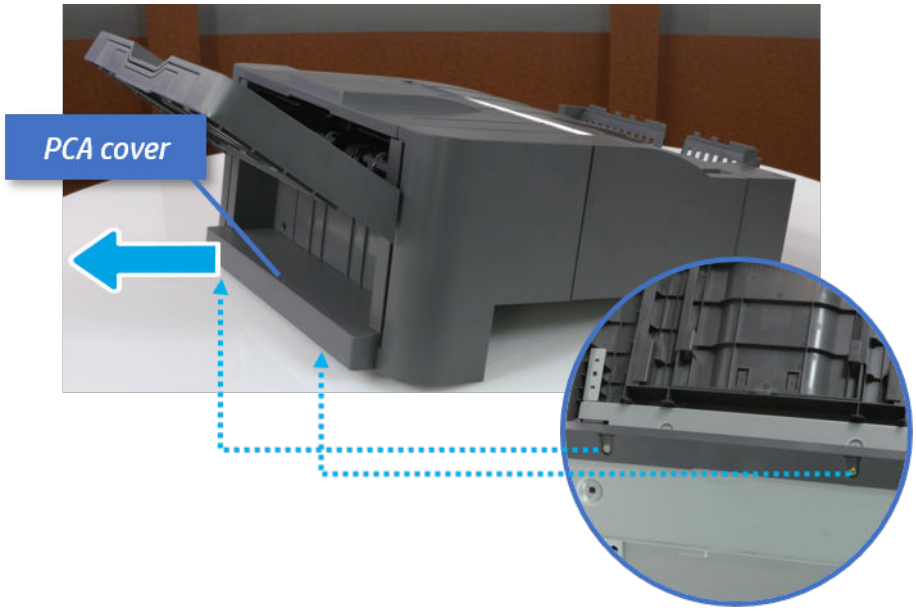


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-327 Remove the PCA cover

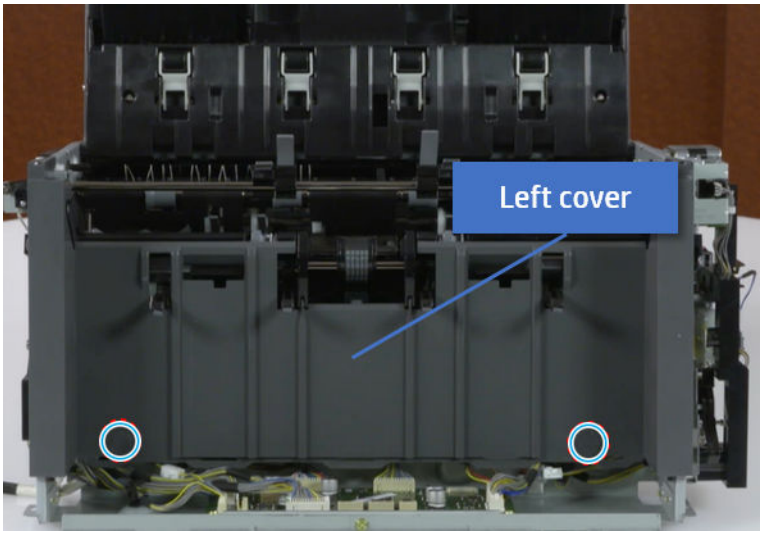


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

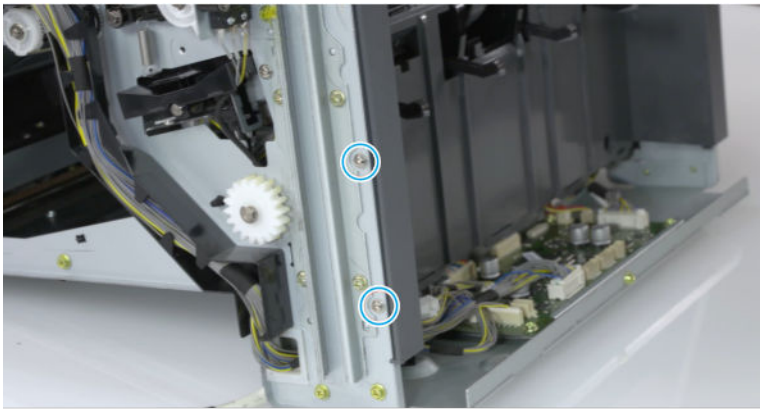
1. Remove two screws.

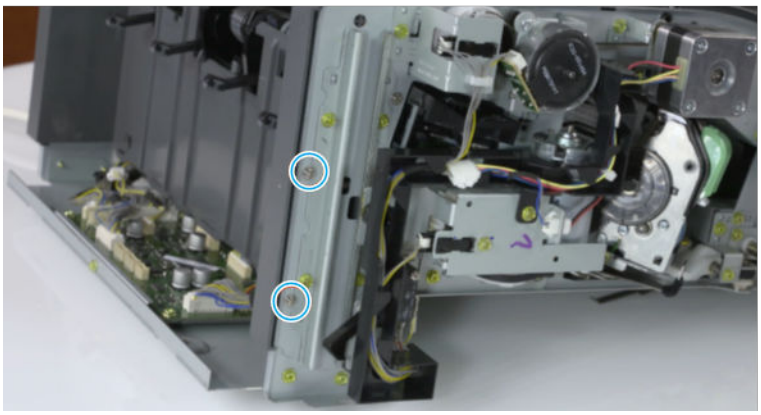
Figure 6-328 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

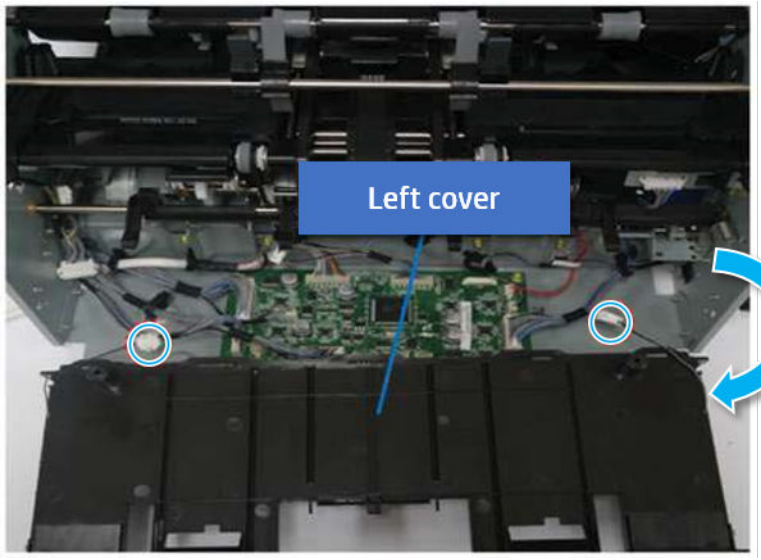
Figure 6-329 Remove four screws



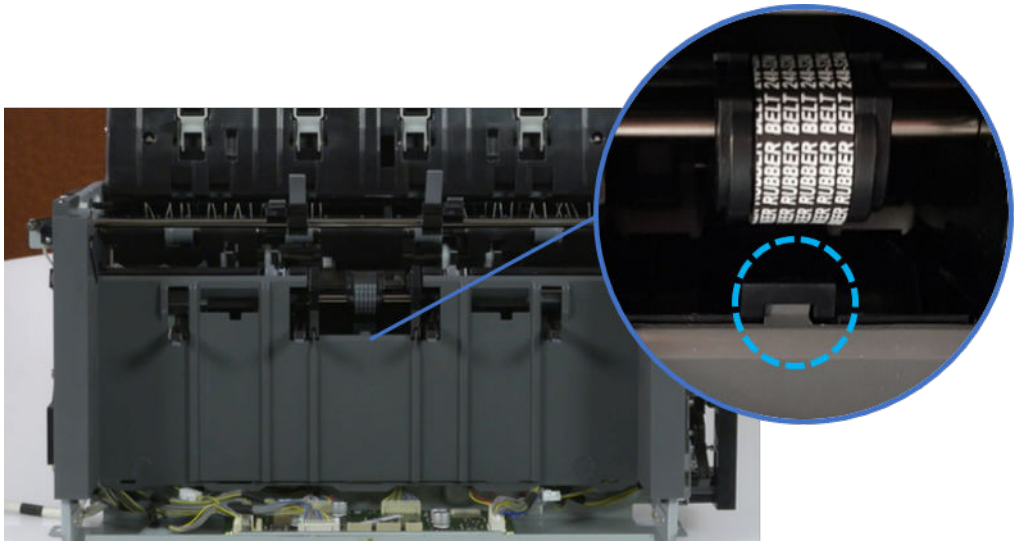


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-330 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



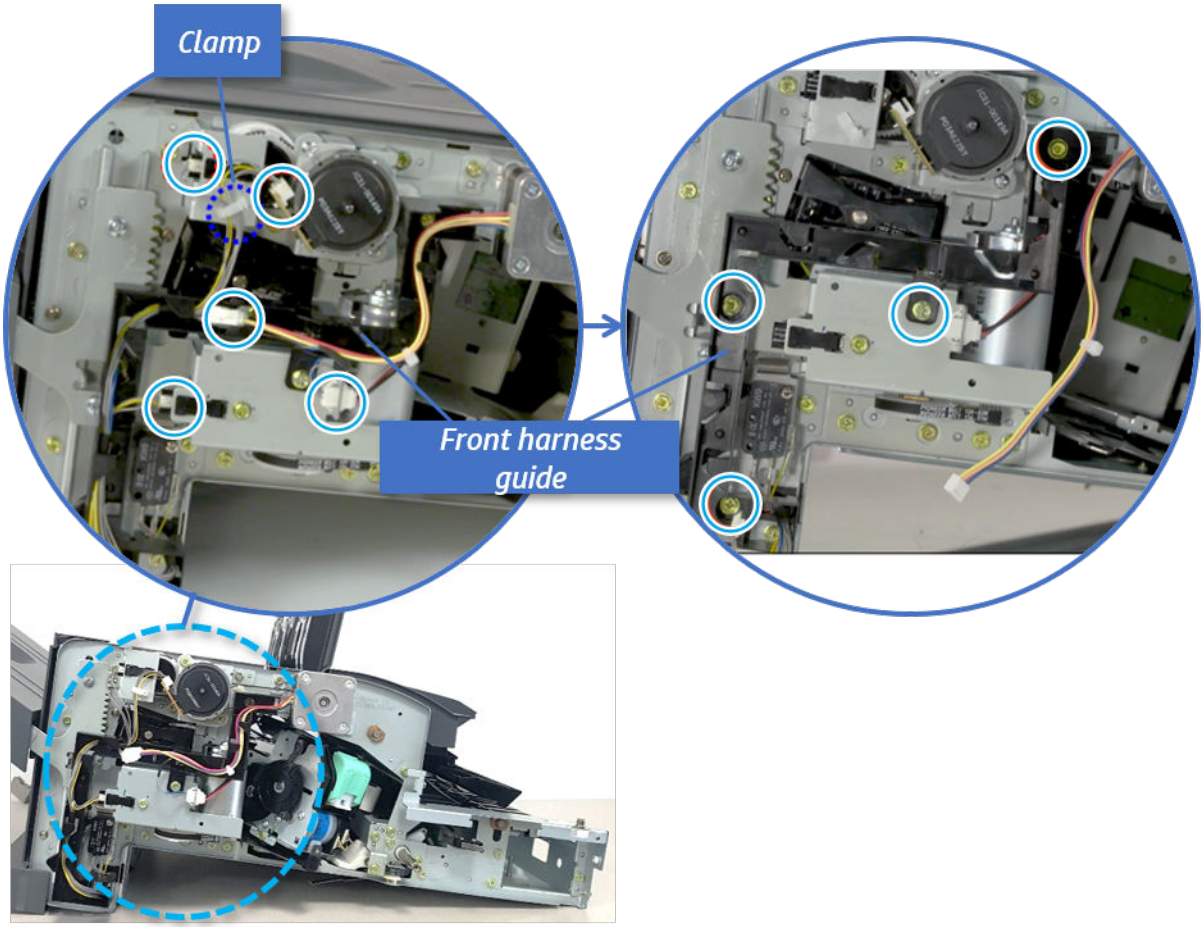
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-331 Remove the front harness guide

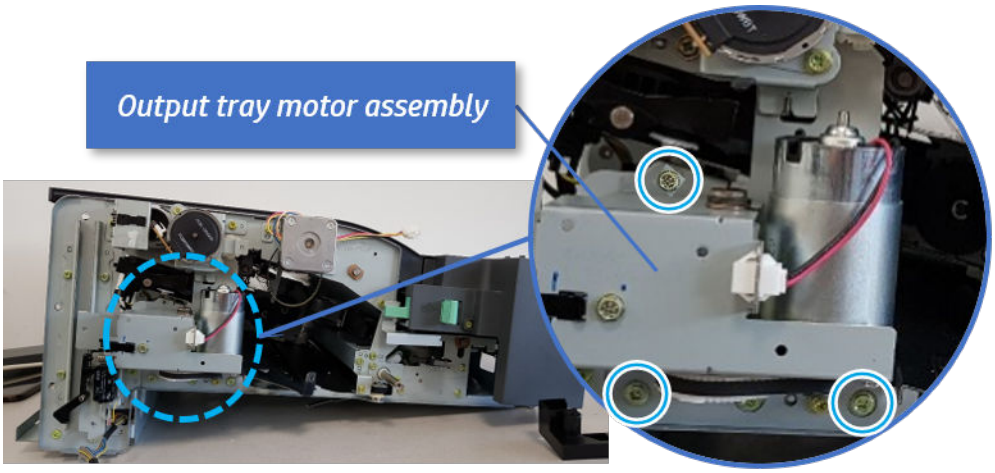


Remove the output tray motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor assembly.

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-332 Remove the output tray motor assembly

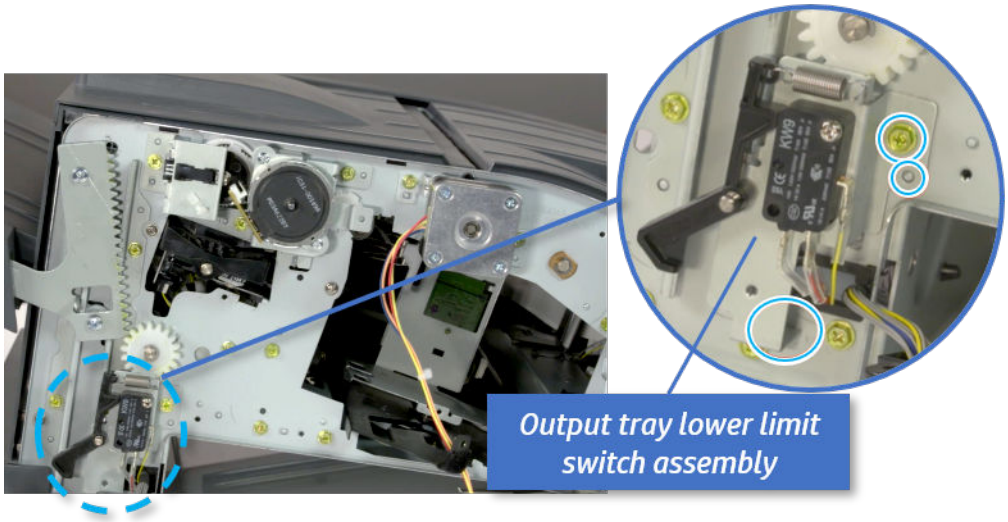


Remove the output tray lower limit switch

Follow these steps to remove the output tray lower limit switch.

- ▲ Remove one screw, and then remove the output tray lower limit switch.

Figure 6-333 Remove the output tray lower limit switch

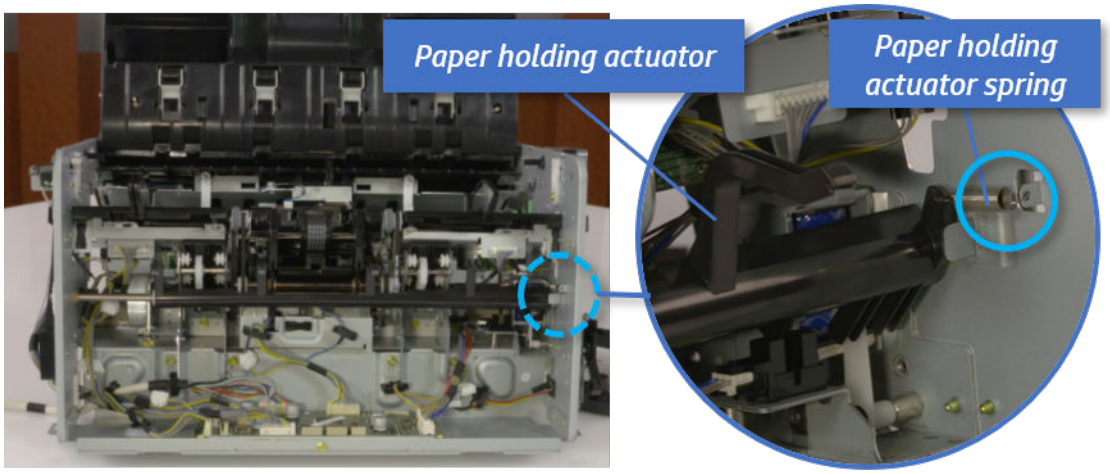


Remove the paper holding

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding.

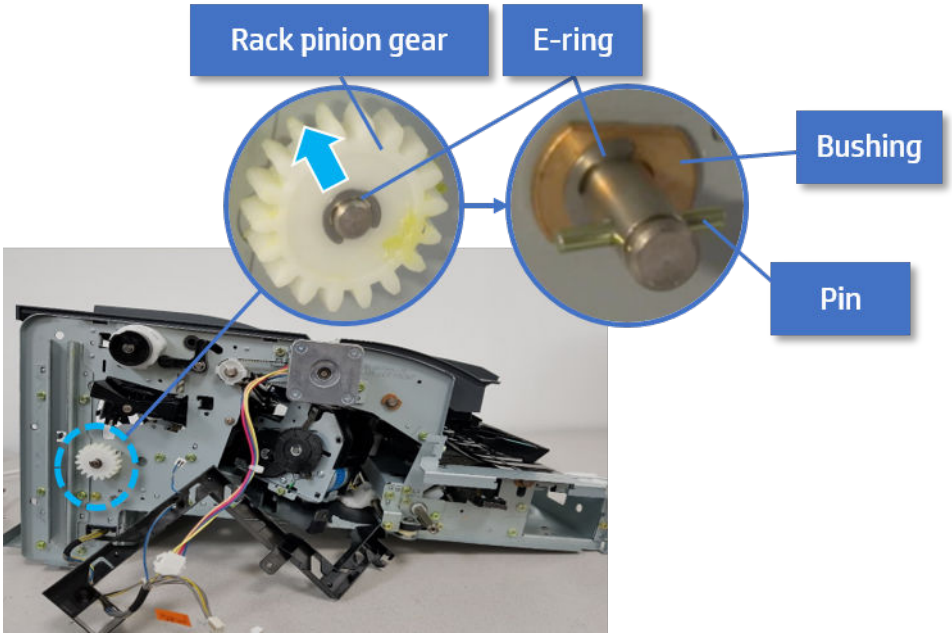
1. Remove the paper holding actuator spring.

Figure 6-334 Remove the paper holding actuator spring



2. Remove the e-ring and the rack pinion gear. And then remove the pin and the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

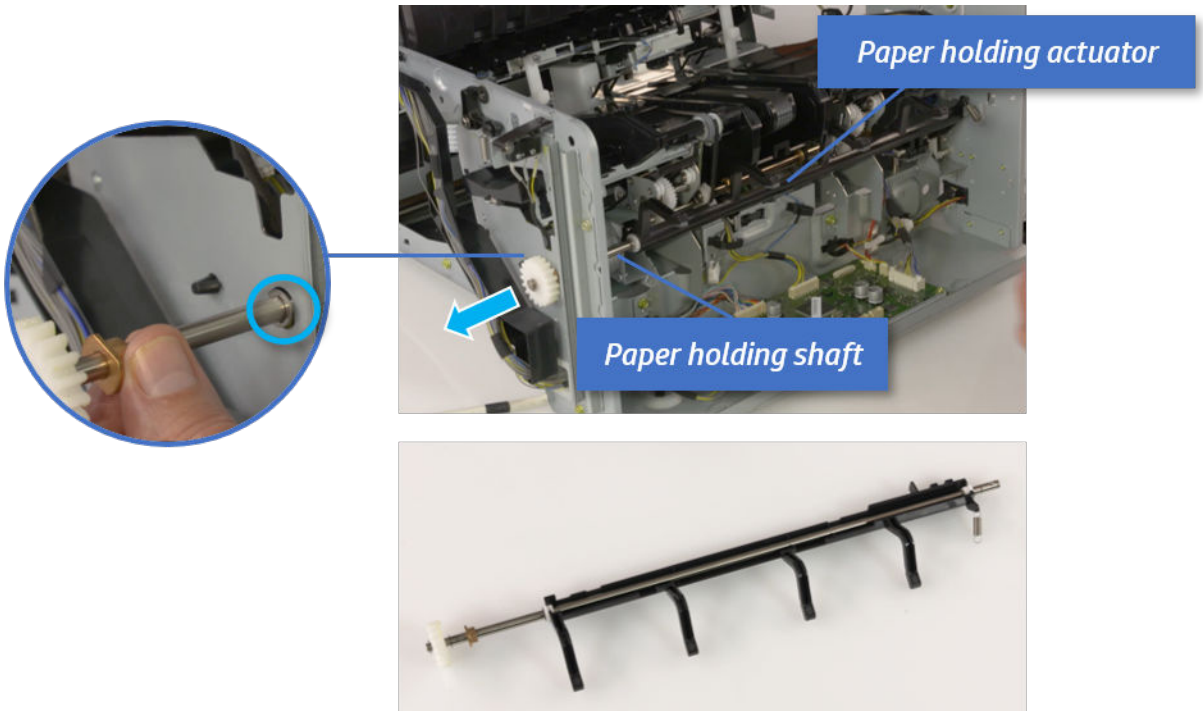
Figure 6-335 Remove e-ring, rack pinion gear, pin, and bushing



NOTE: Be sure not to lose the pin.

3. Carefully remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator.

Figure 6-336 Remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator

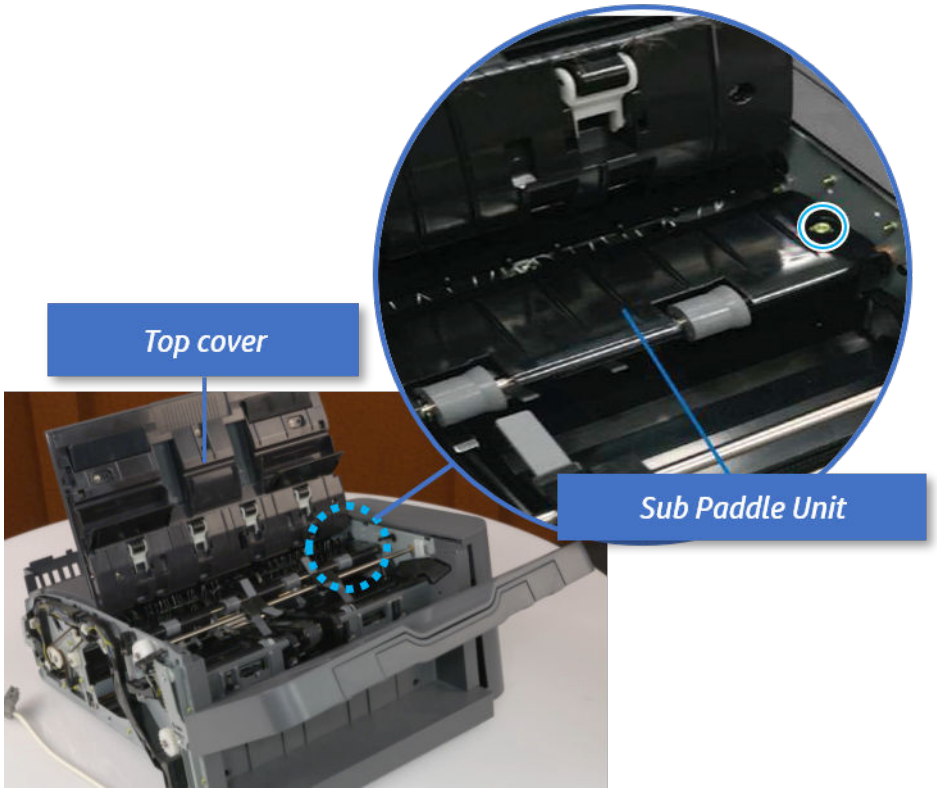


Remove the sub paddle unit

Follow these steps to remove the sub paddle unit.

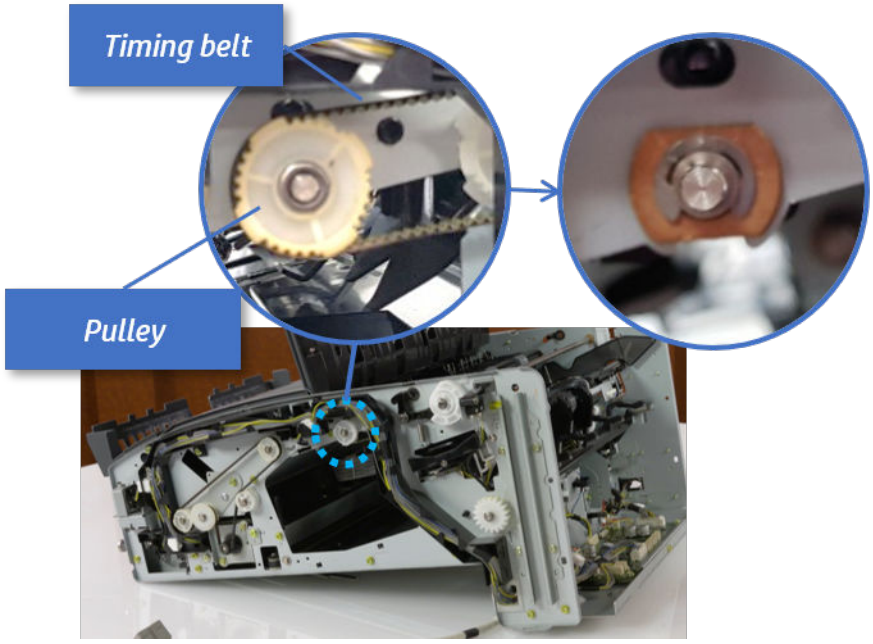
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw securing the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-337 Remove one screw



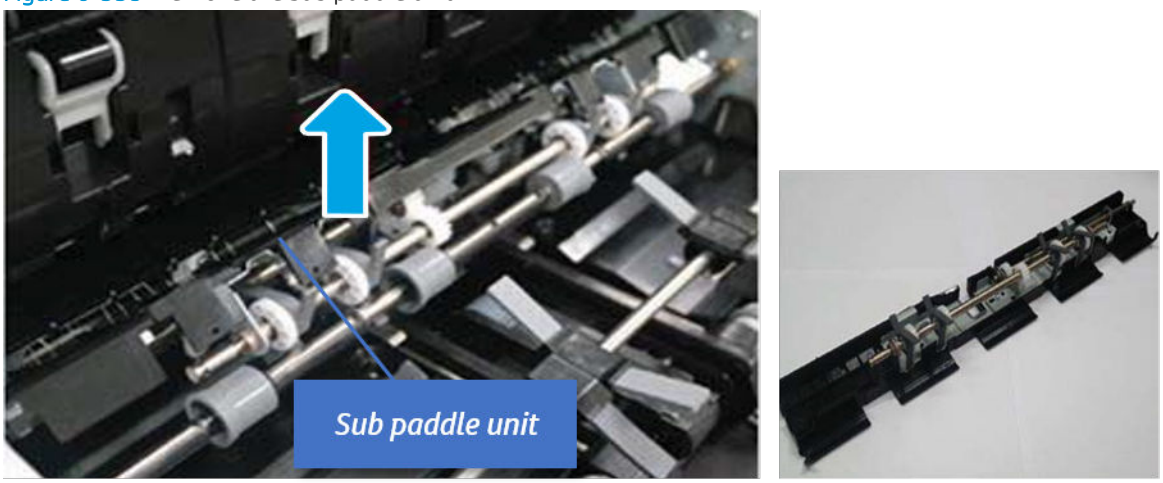
2. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt. And then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-338 Remove the e-ring, pulley, timing belt, and bushing



3. Lift up and remove the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-339 Remove the sub paddle unit

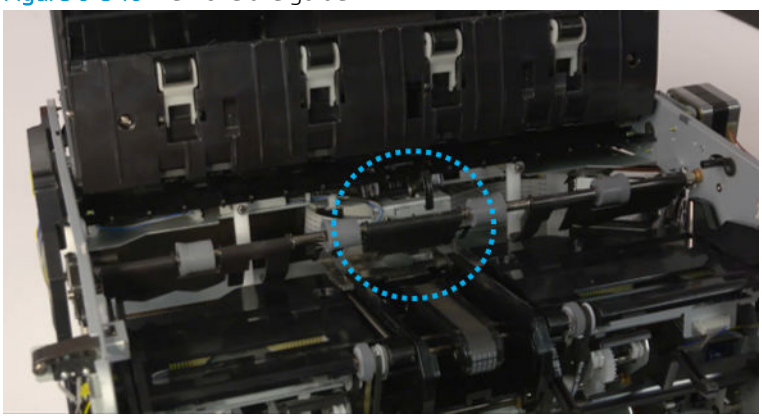


Remove the exit roller

Follow these steps to remove the exit roller.

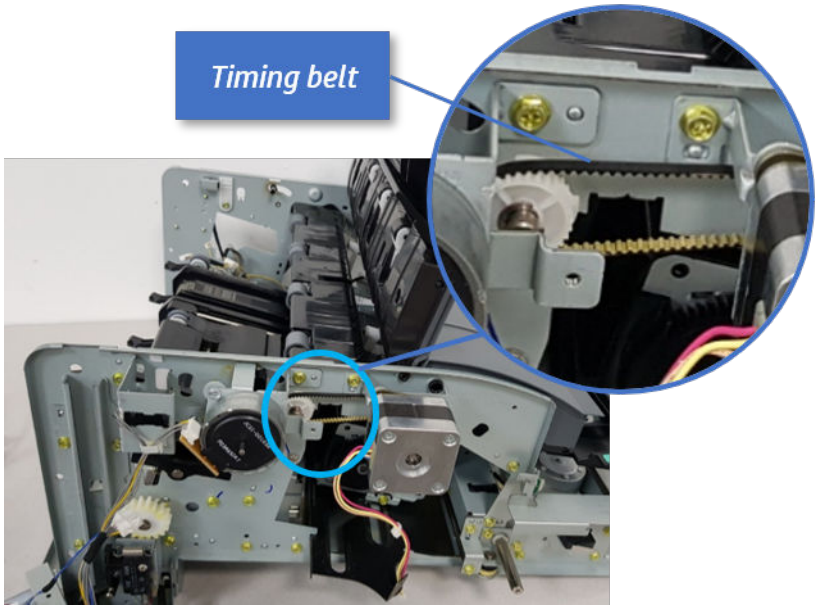
1. Remove the guide on the center of the exit roller.

Figure 6-340 Remove the guide



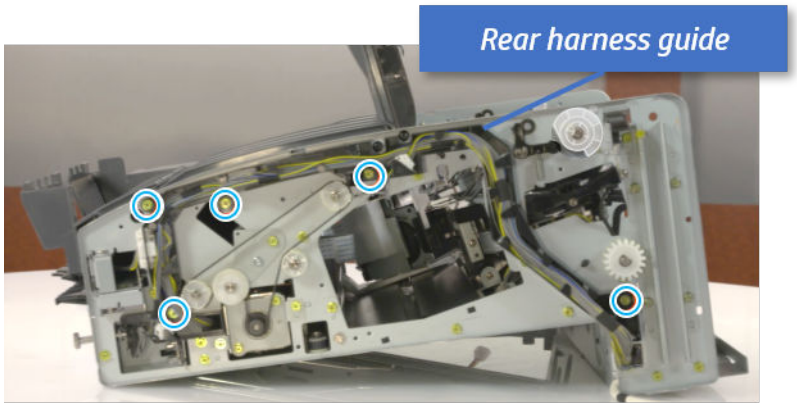
2. On the front of the inner finisher, release the timing belt connected to the exit motor.

Figure 6-341 Release the timing belt



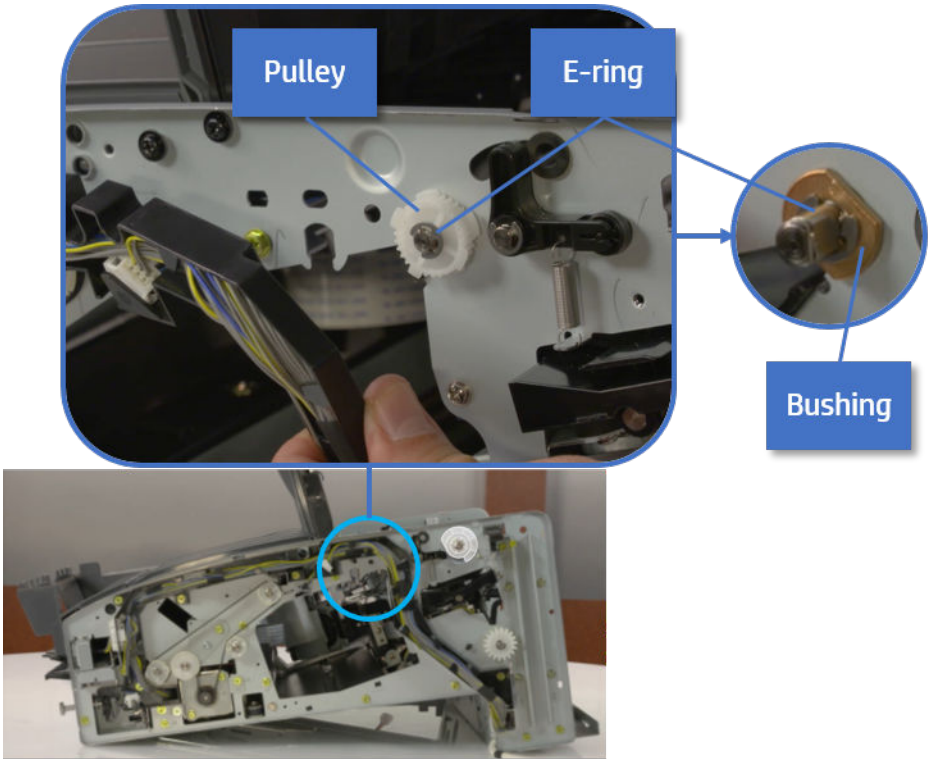
3. Remove five screws securing the rear harness guide.

Figure 6-342 Remove five screws



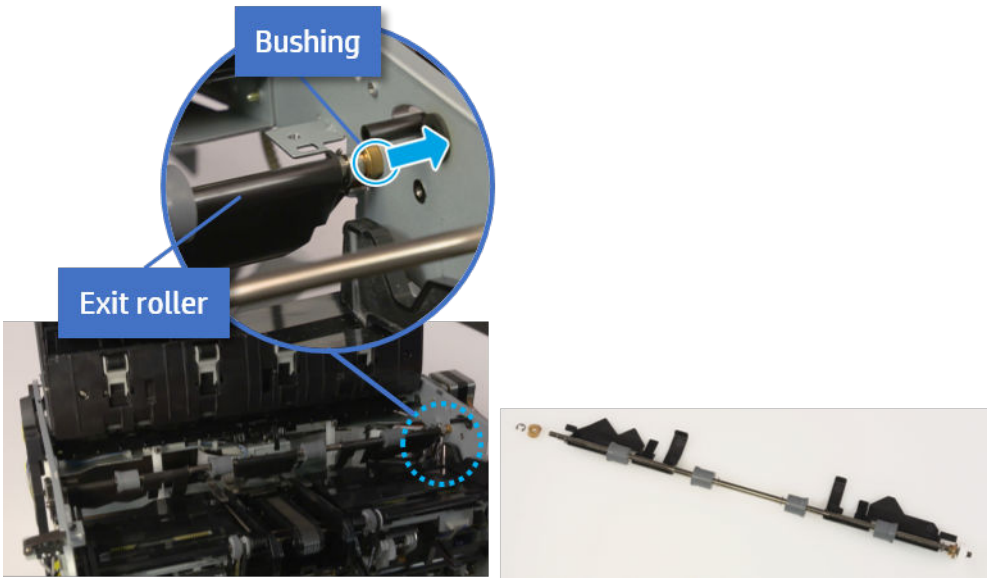
4. On the rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and the pulley and then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-343 Remove e-ring, pulley, and bushing



5. Push the bushing to detach it, and then remove the exit roller.

Figure 6-344 Remove the exit roller

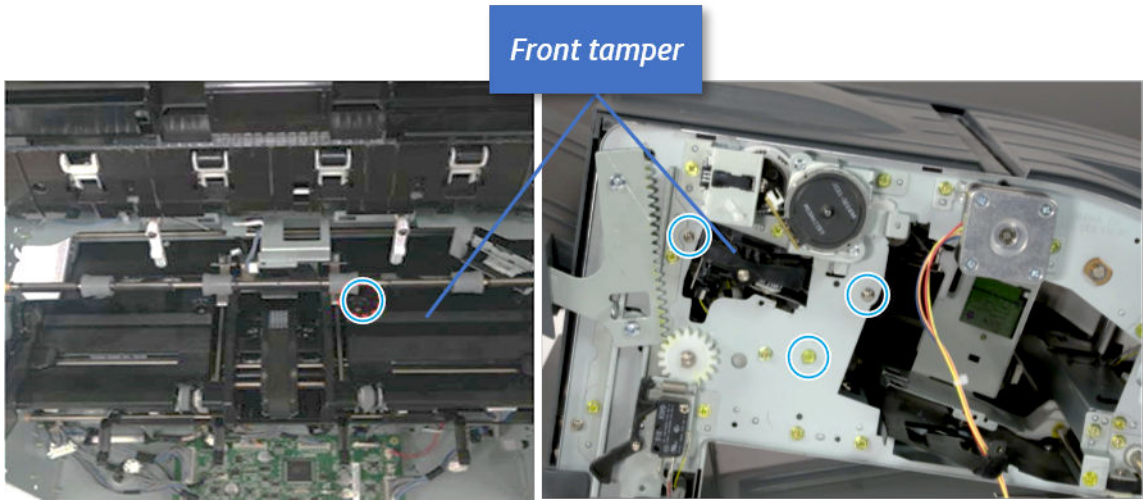


Remove the front tamper

Follow these steps to remove the front tamper.

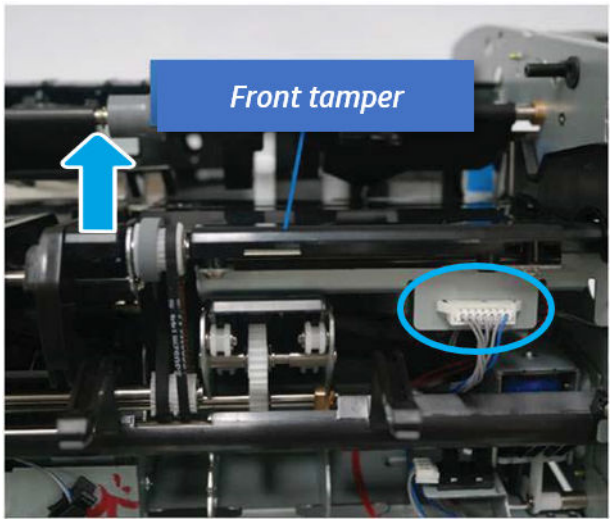
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-345 Remove four screws



2. Unplug the connector and release the hook, and then pull the front tamper up to remove.

Figure 6-346 Remove the front tamper

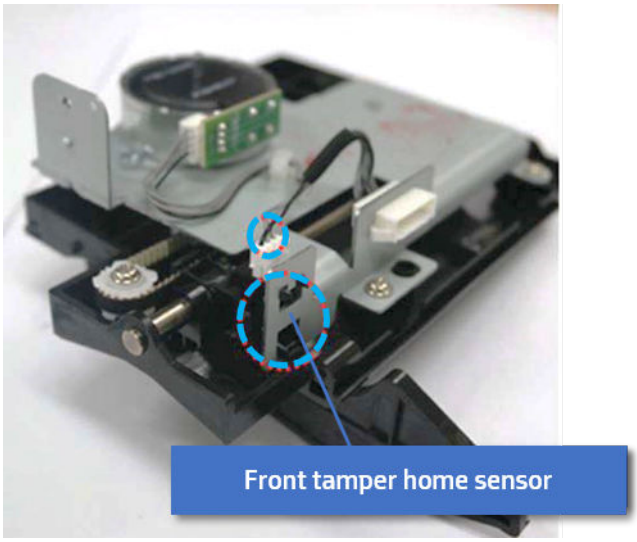


Remove the front tamper home sensor

Follow these steps to remove the front tamper home sensor.

- Unplug the connector, and then remove the front tamper home sensor.

Figure 6-347 Remove the front tamper home sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front tamper motor (M9)

Learn how to remove and replace the front tamper motor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-53 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Front tamper motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

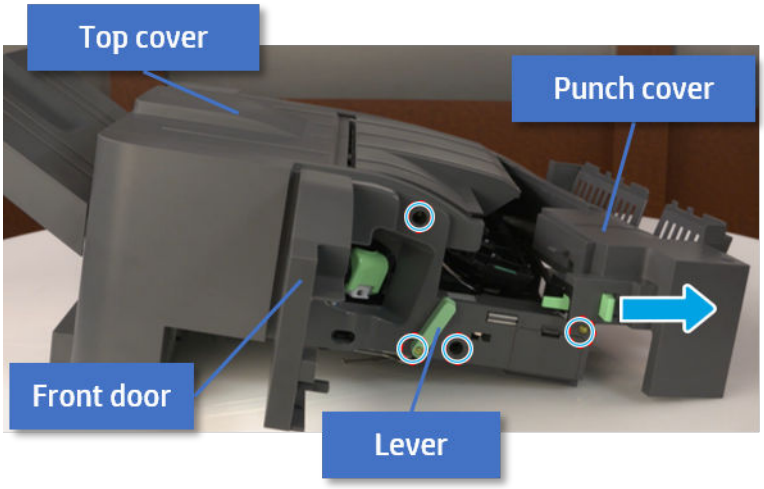
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-348 Remove the front cover

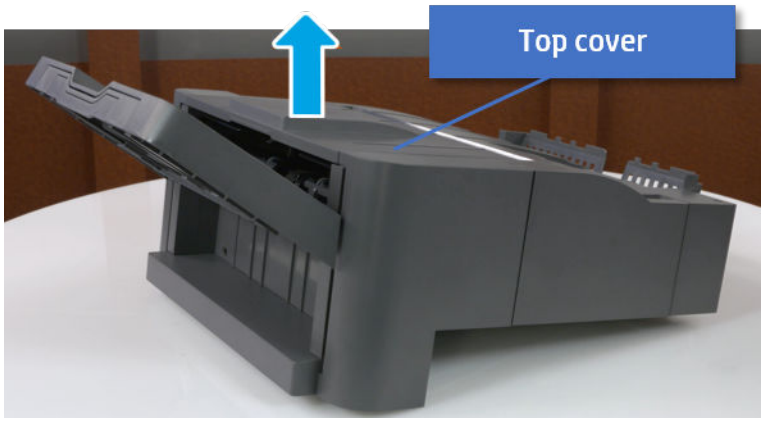


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

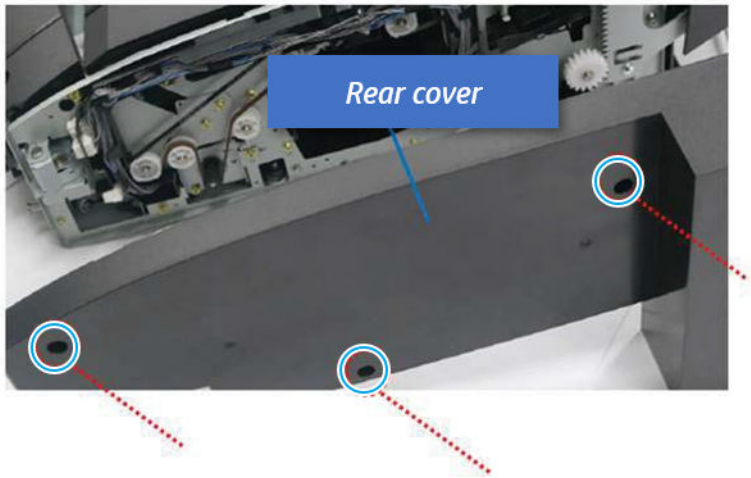
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-349 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-350 Remove the rear cover

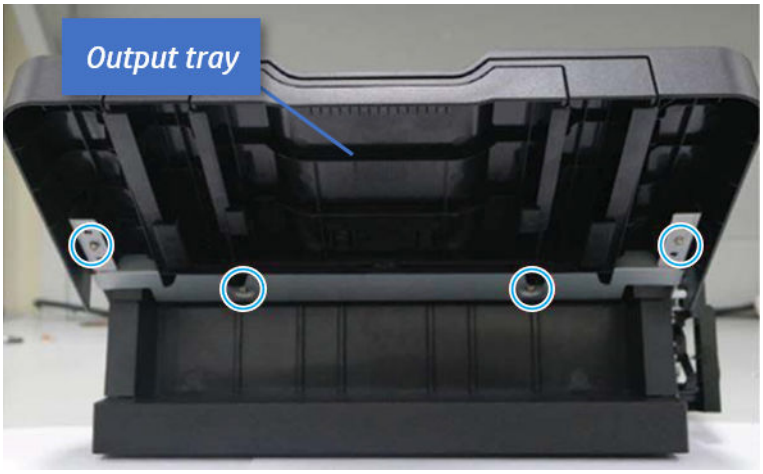


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-351 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

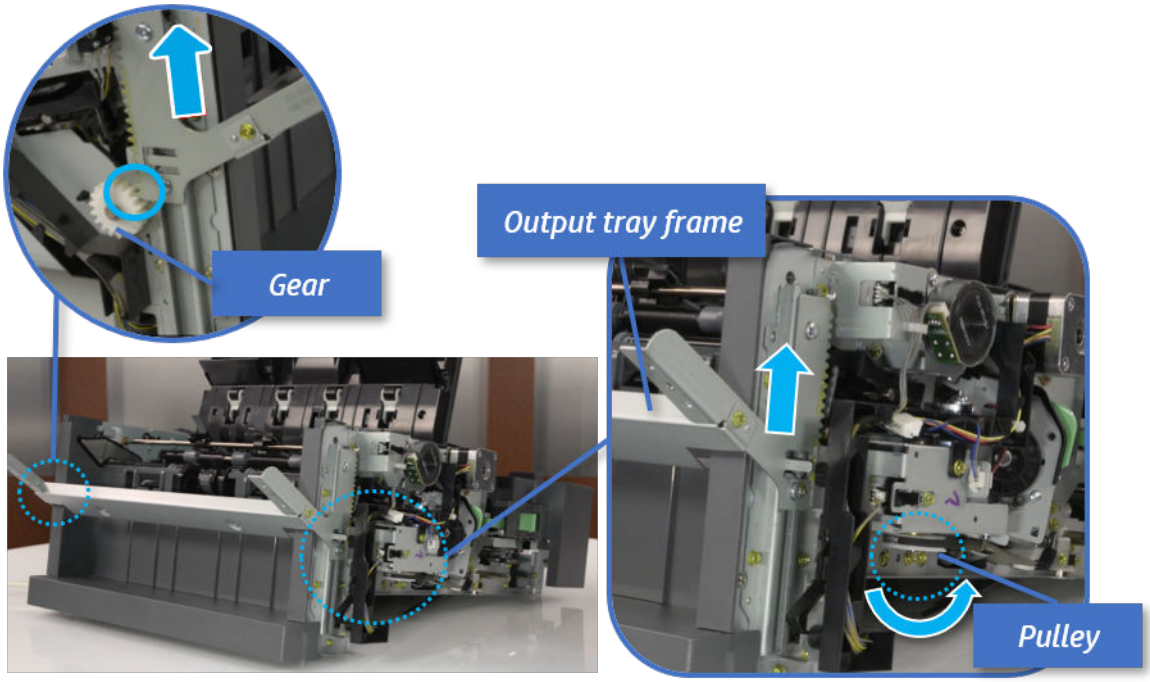
Figure 6-352 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

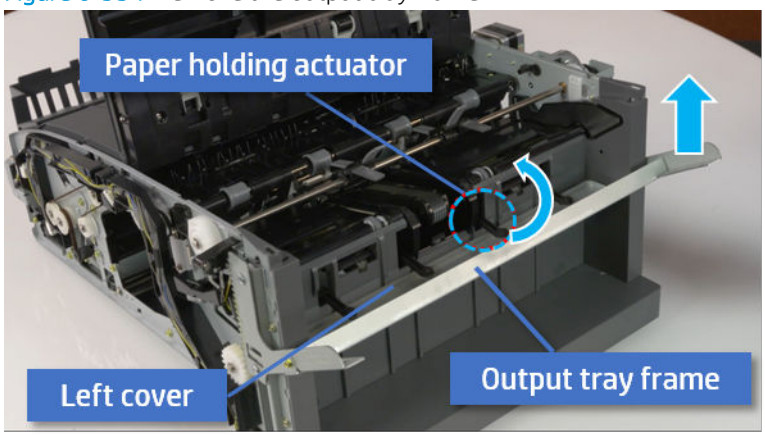
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-353 Remove the pulley



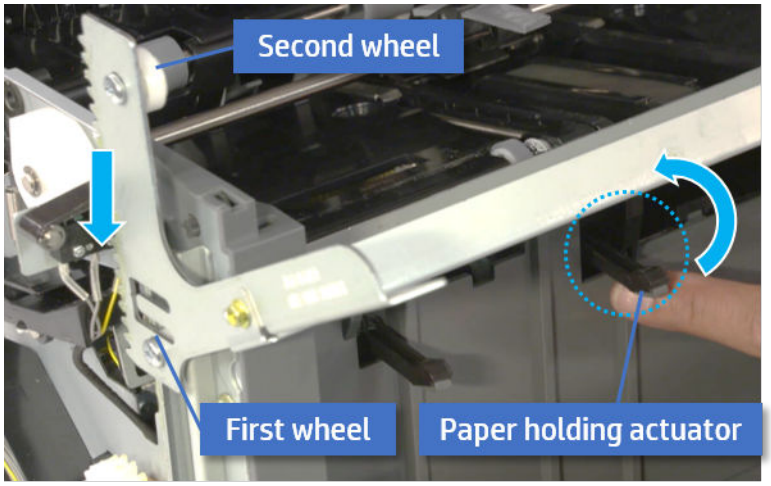
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-354 Remove the output tray frame



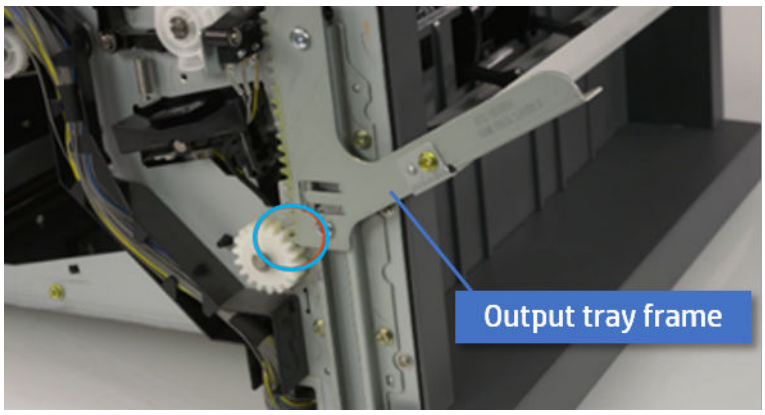
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

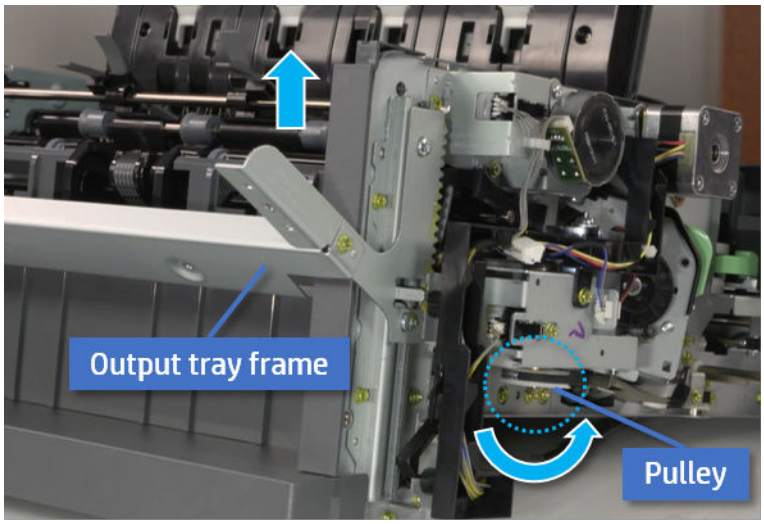


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

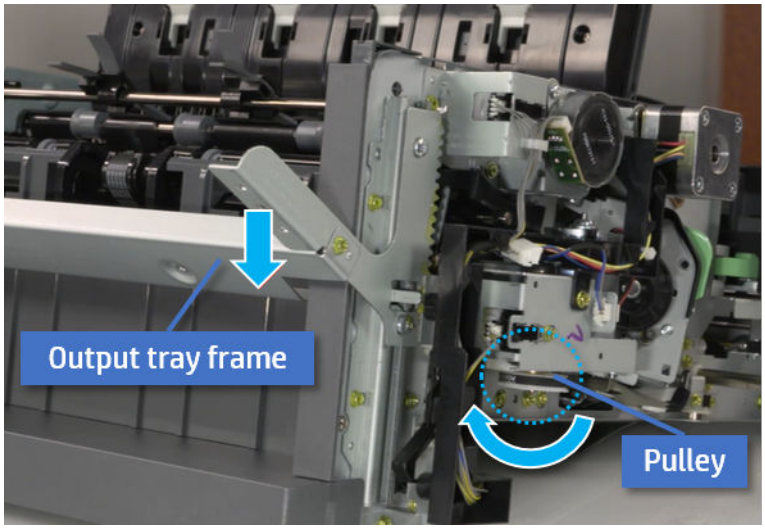
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

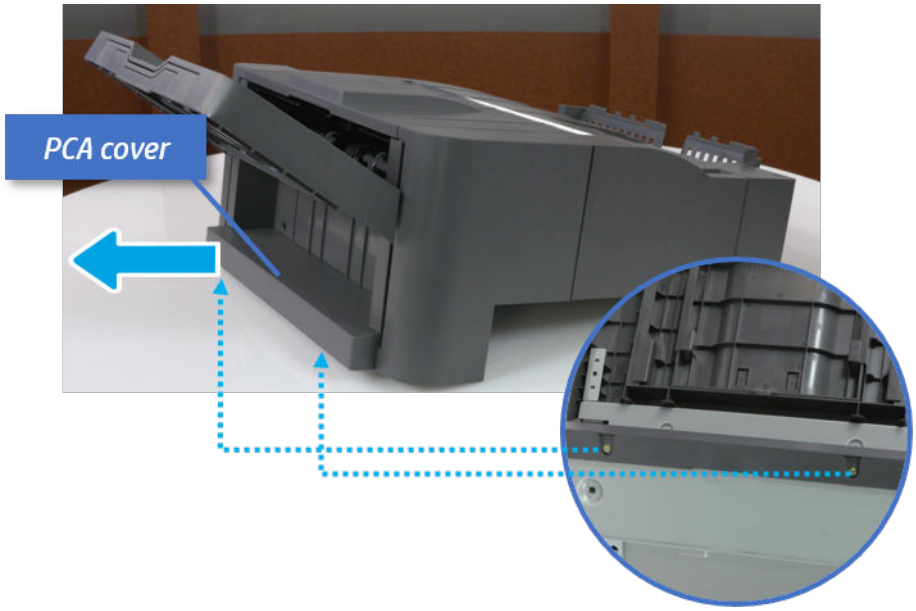


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-355 Remove the PCA cover

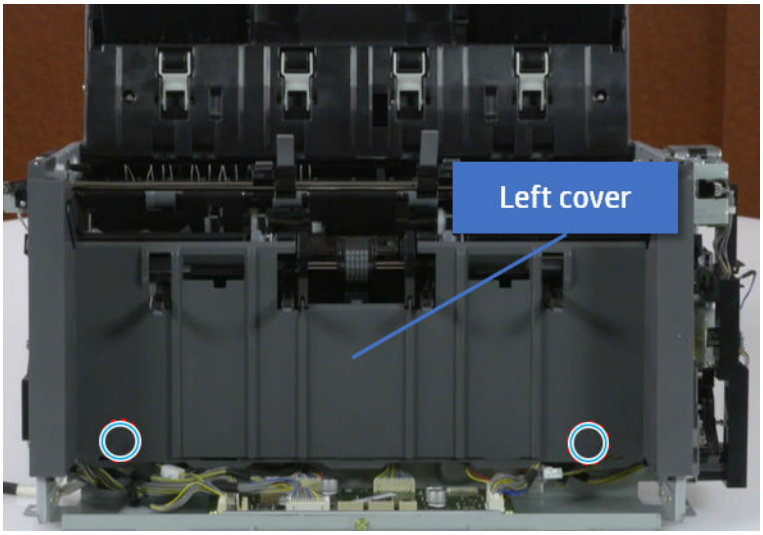


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

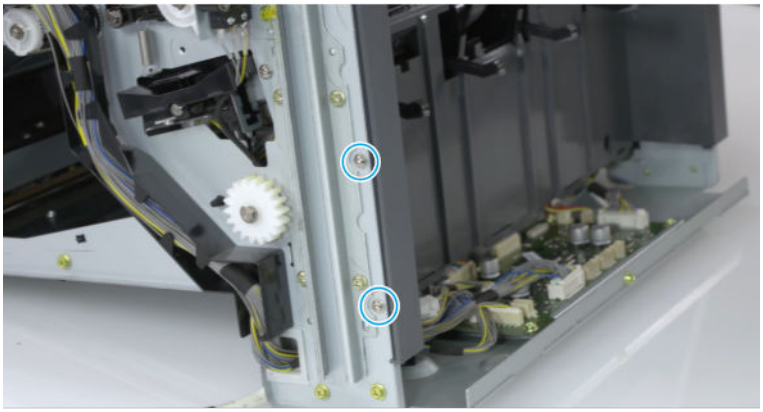
1. Remove two screws.

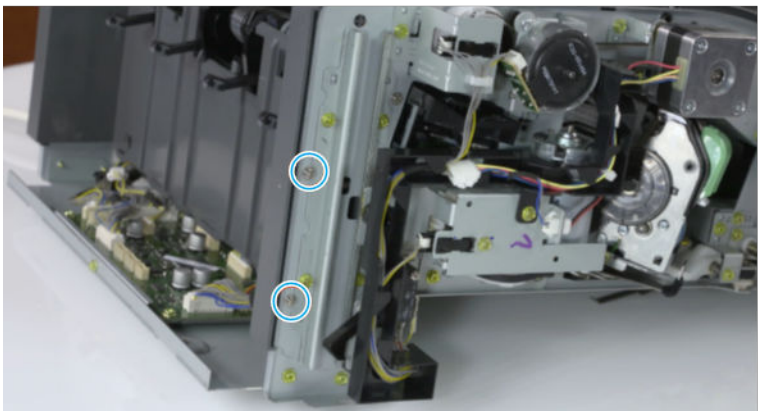
Figure 6-356 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

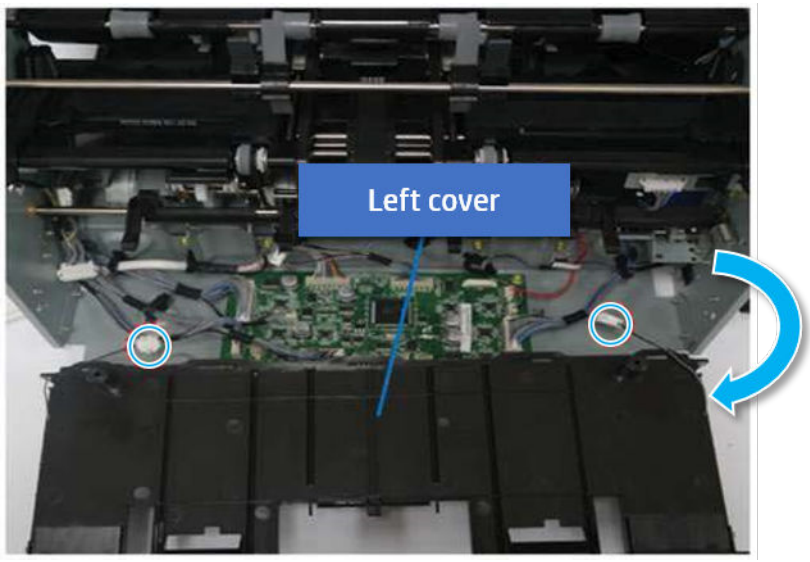
Figure 6-357 Remove four screws



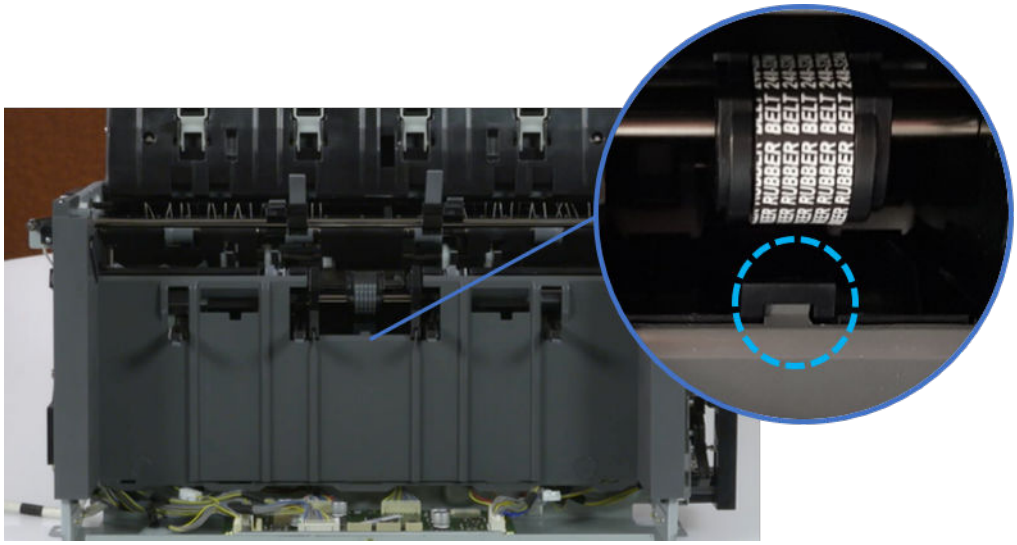


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-358 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



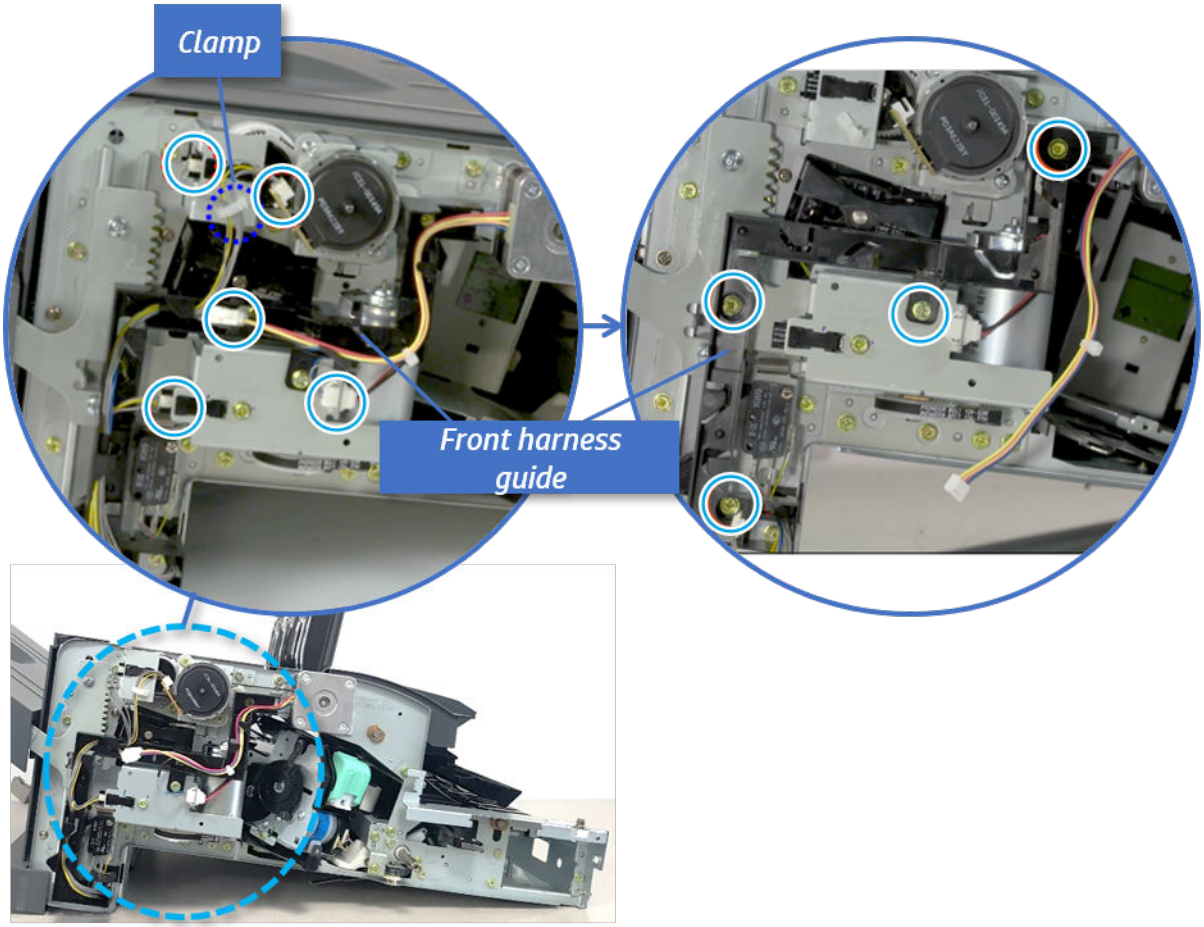
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-359 Remove the front harness guide

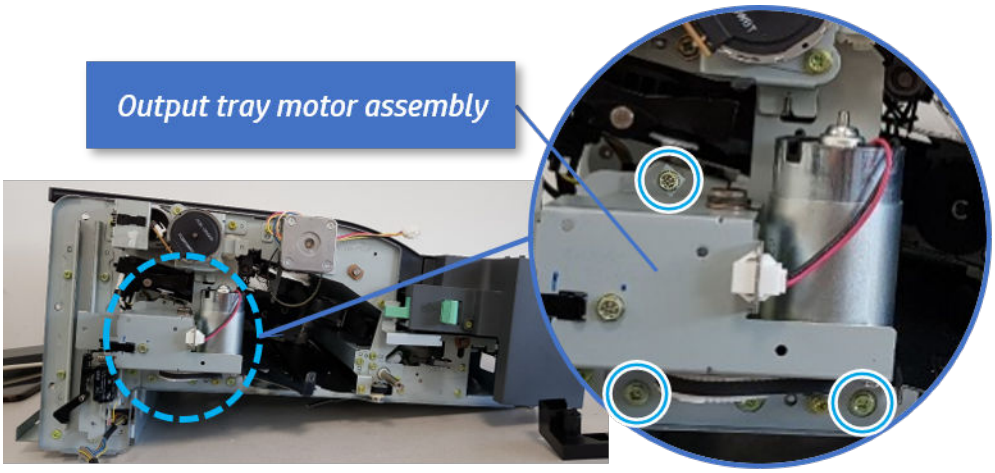


Remove the output tray motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor assembly.

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-360 Remove the output tray motor assembly

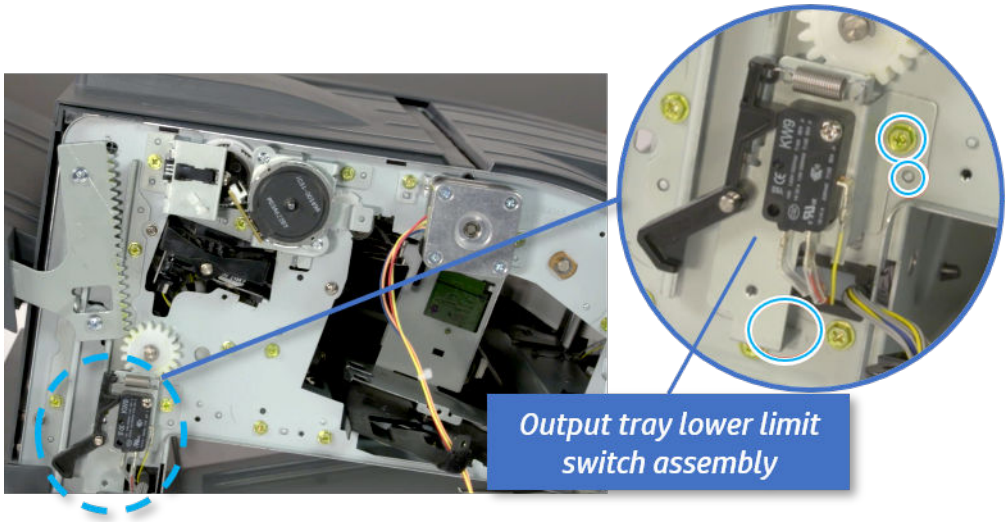


Remove the output tray lower limit switch

Follow these steps to remove the output tray lower limit switch.

- ▲ Remove one screw, and then remove the output tray lower limit switch.

Figure 6-361 Remove the output tray lower limit switch

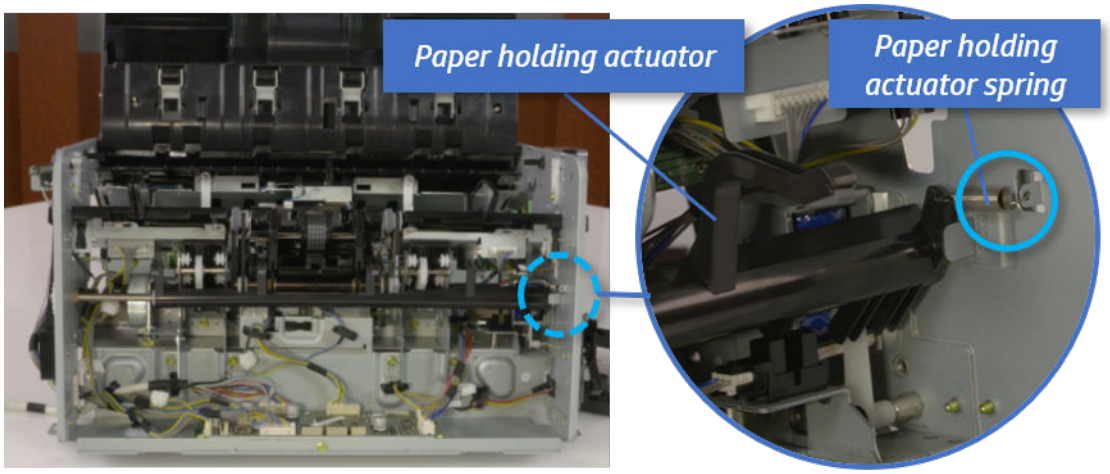


Remove the paper holding

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding.

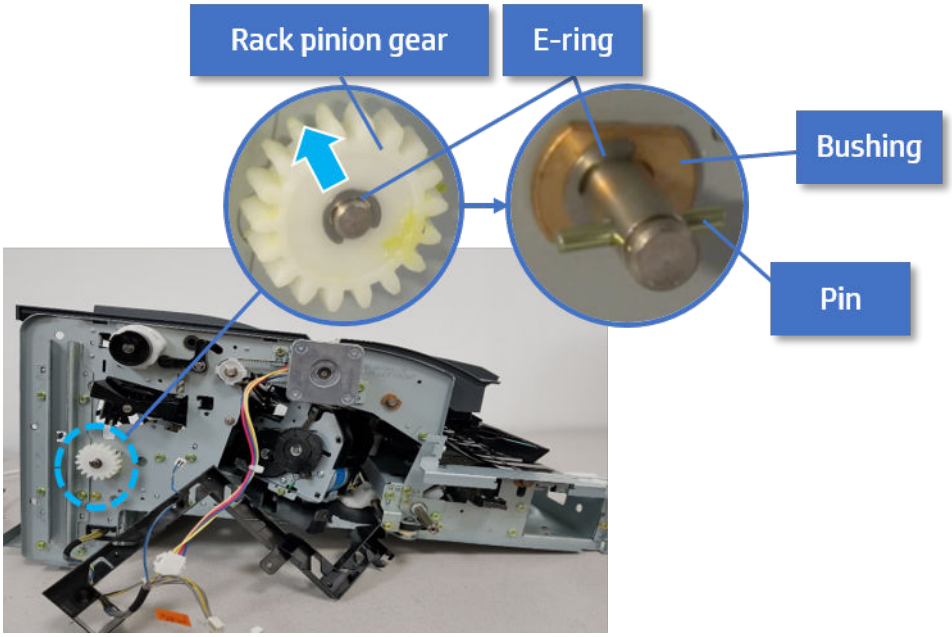
1. Remove the paper holding actuator spring.

Figure 6-362 Remove the paper holding actuator spring



2. Remove the e-ring and the rack pinion gear. And then remove the pin and the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

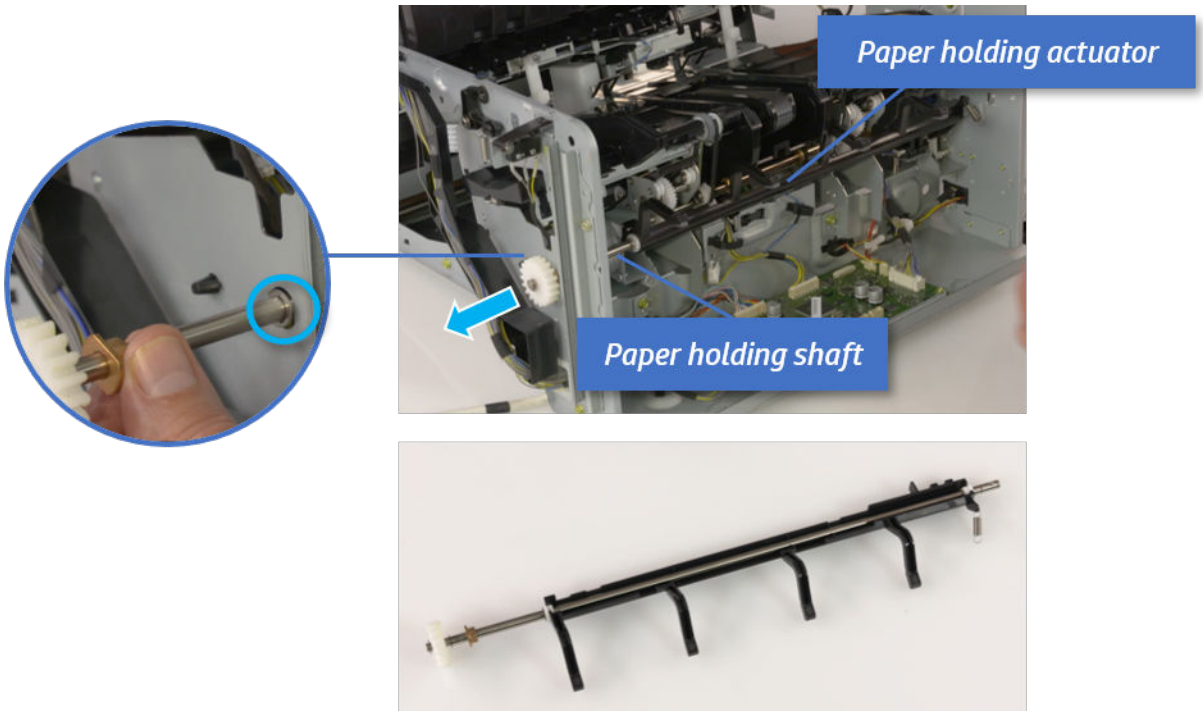
Figure 6-363 Remove e-ring, rack pinion gear, pin, and bushing



NOTE: Be sure not to lose the pin.

3. Carefully remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator.

Figure 6-364 Remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator

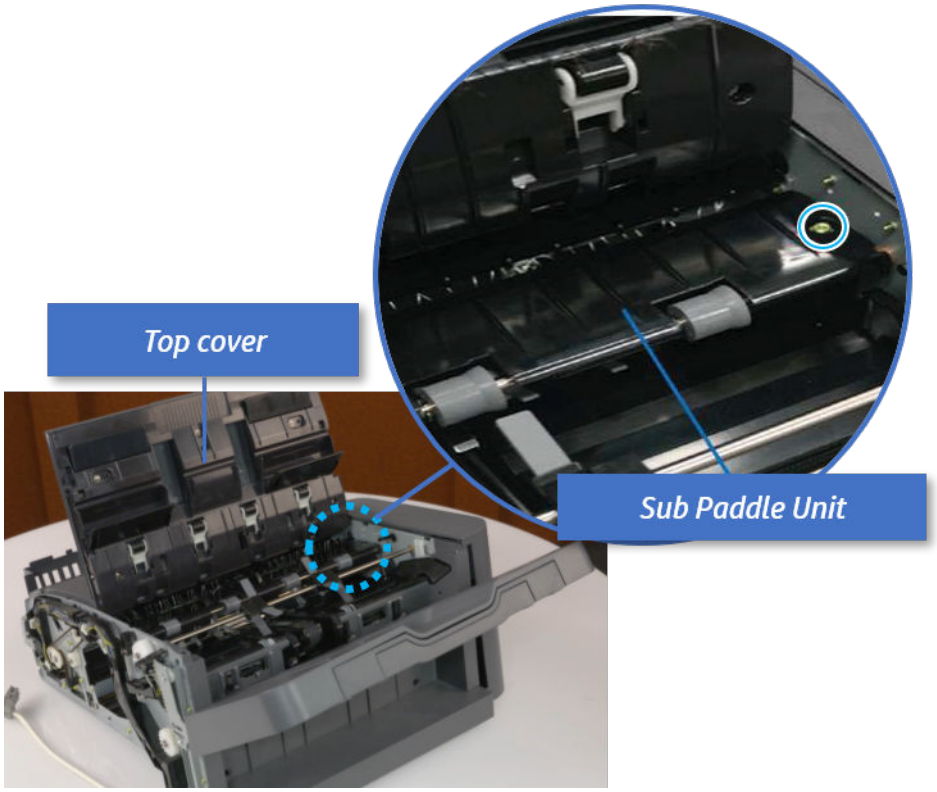


Remove the sub paddle unit

Follow these steps to remove the sub paddle unit.

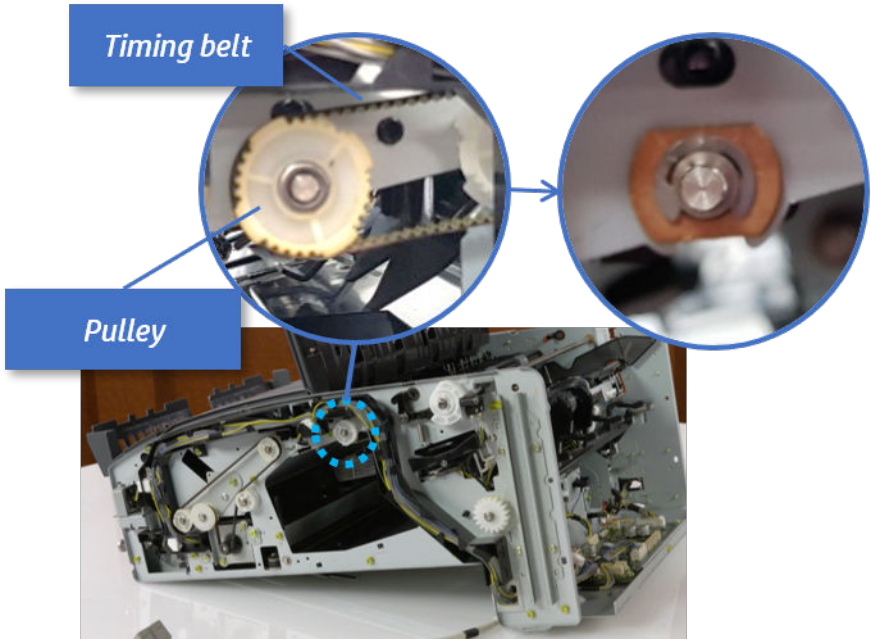
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw securing the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-365 Remove one screw



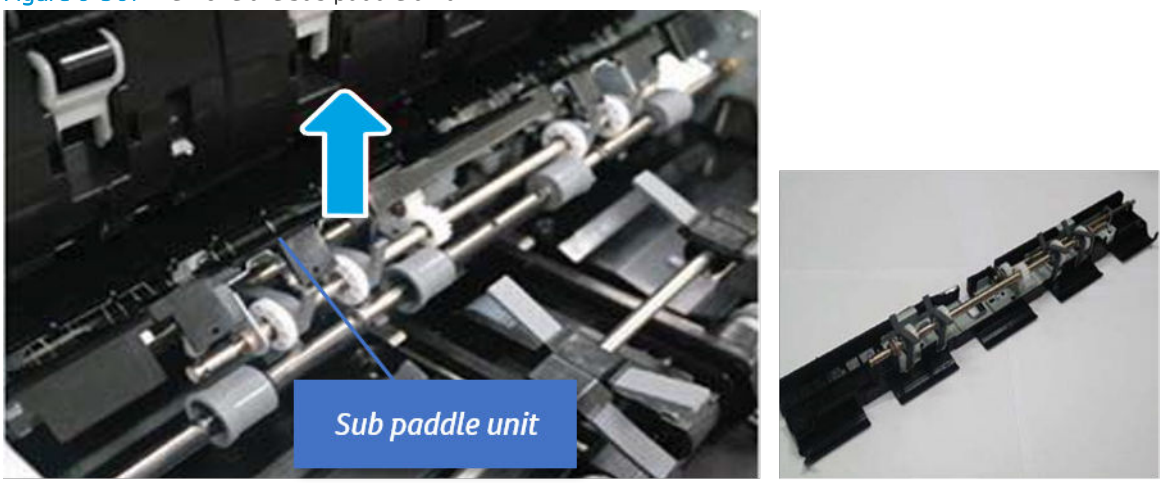
2. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt. And then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-366 Remove the e-ring, pulley, timing belt, and bushing



3. Lift up and remove the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-367 Remove the sub paddle unit

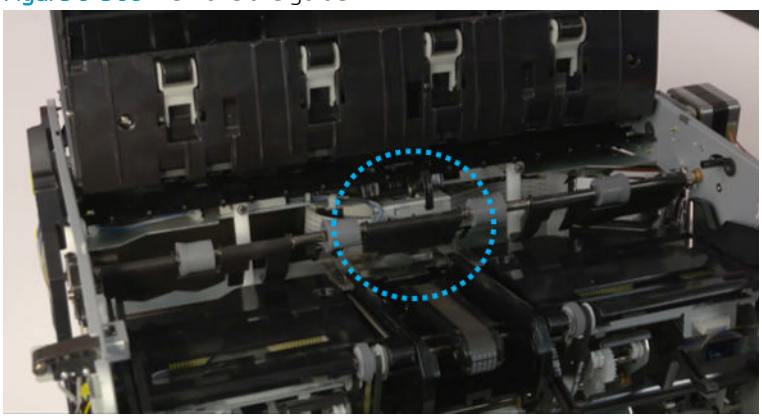


Remove the exit roller

Follow these steps to remove the exit roller.

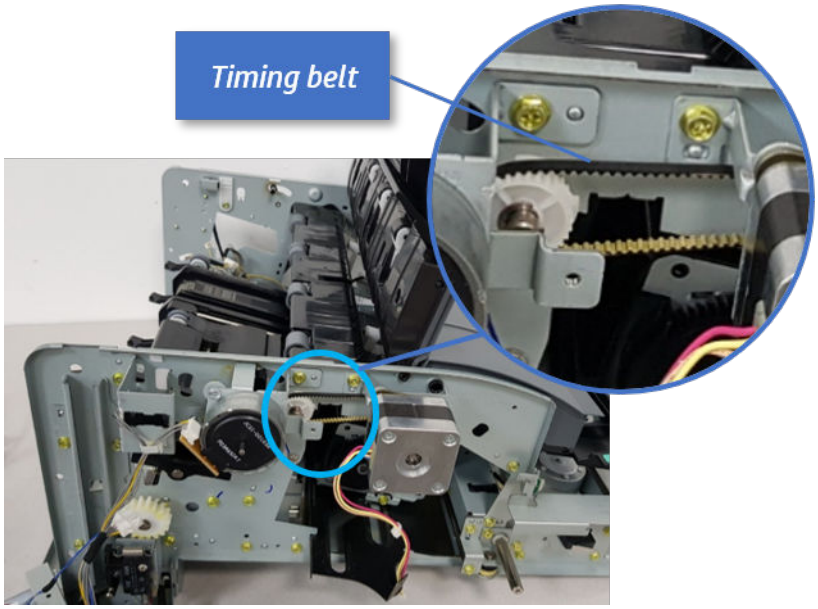
1. Remove the guide on the center of the exit roller.

Figure 6-368 Remove the guide



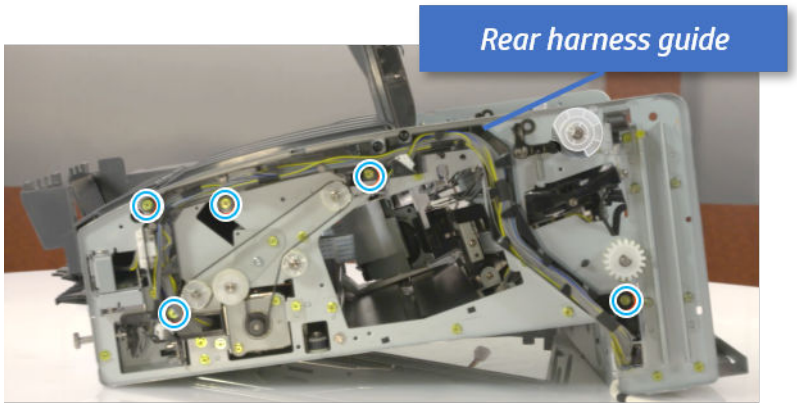
2. On the front of the inner finisher, release the timing belt connected to the exit motor.

Figure 6-369 Release the timing belt



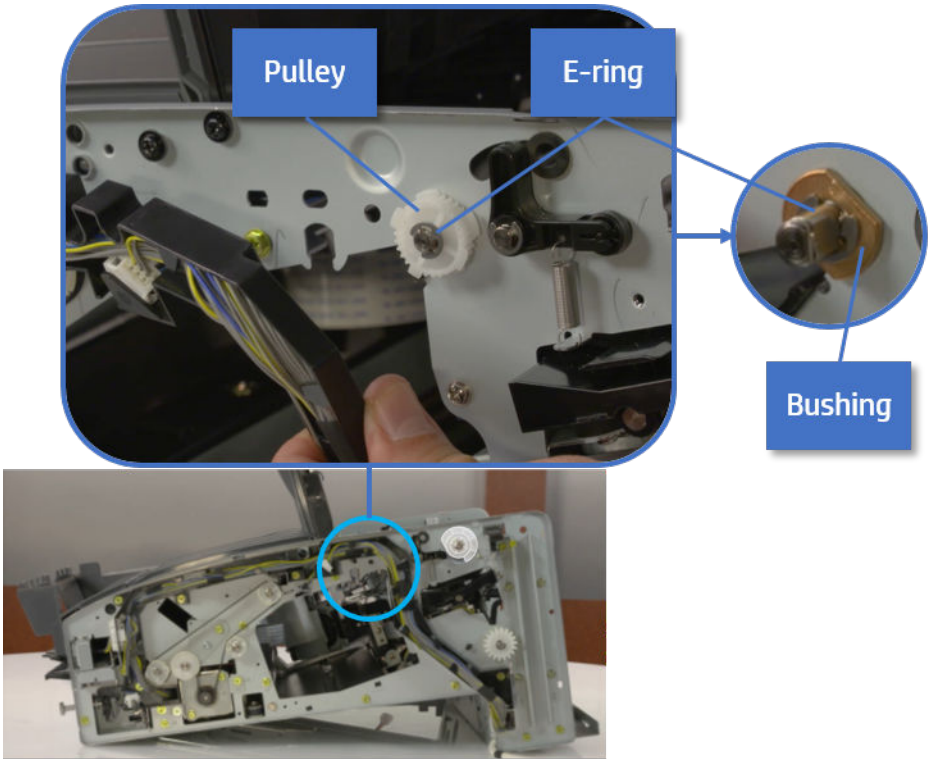
3. Remove five screws securing the rear harness guide.

Figure 6-370 Remove five screws



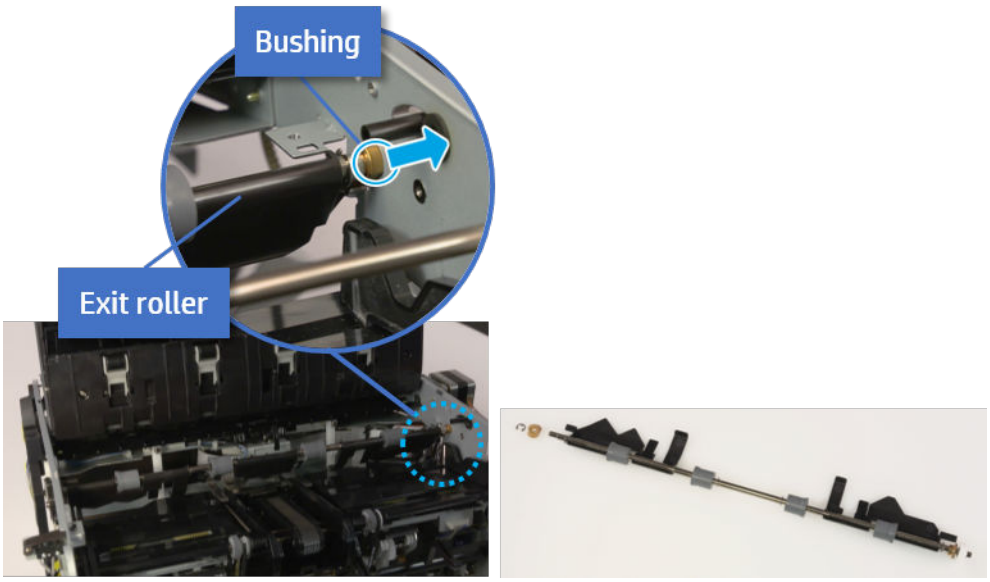
4. On the rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and the pulley and then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-371 Remove e-ring, pulley, and bushing



5. Push the bushing to detach it, and then remove the exit roller.

Figure 6-372 Remove the exit roller

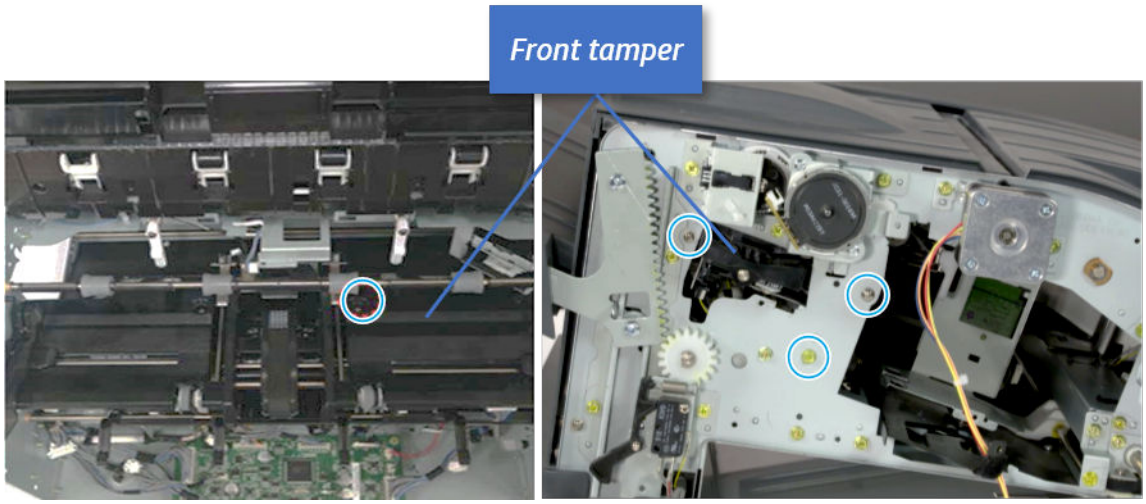


Remove the front tamper

Follow these steps to remove the front tamper.

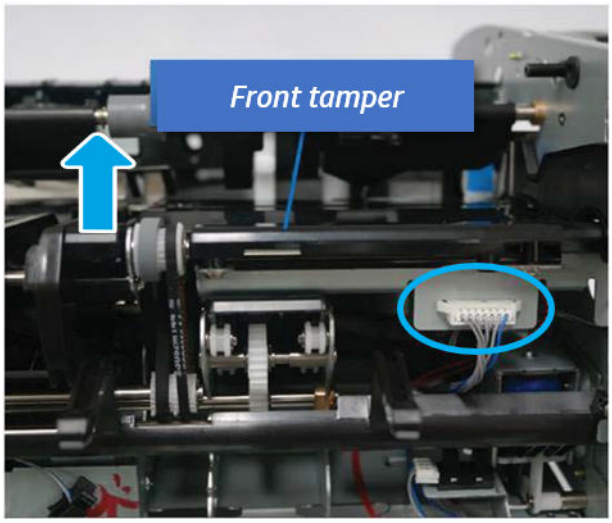
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-373 Remove four screws



2. Unplug the connector and release the hook, and then pull the front tamper up to remove.

Figure 6-374 Remove the front tamper

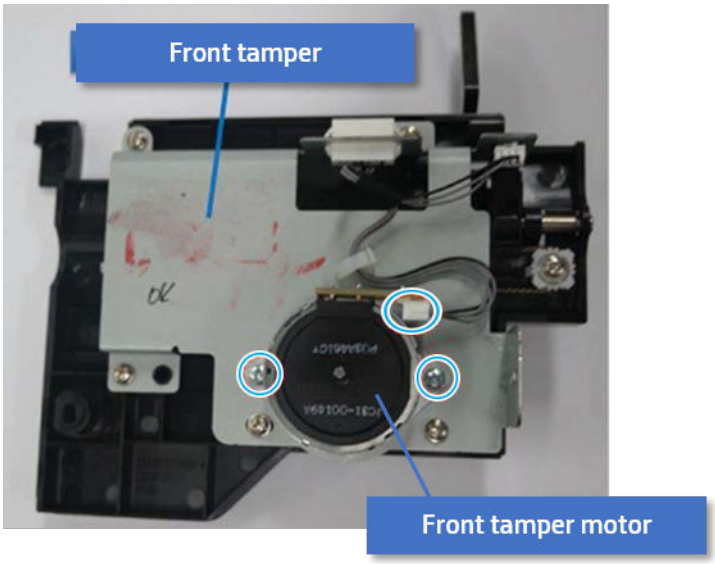


Remove the front tamper motor

Follow these steps to remove the front tamper motor.

- Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor.

Figure 6-375 Remove the front tamper motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Rear tamper

HP LaserJet Managed MFP E82540du-E82560du, E87640du-E87660du, E82540-E82560, E87640-E87660, E72525-E72535, E77822-E77830 - Rear tamper

Learn how to remove and replace the rear tamper.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-54 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00900A	Rear tamper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

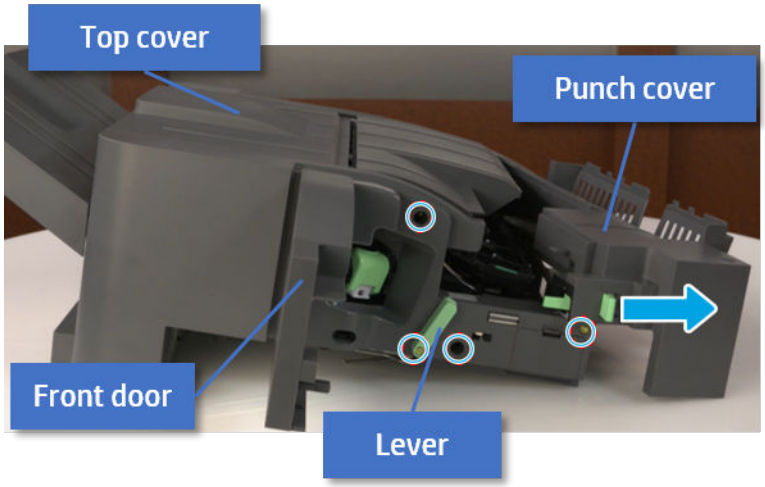
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-376 Remove the front cover

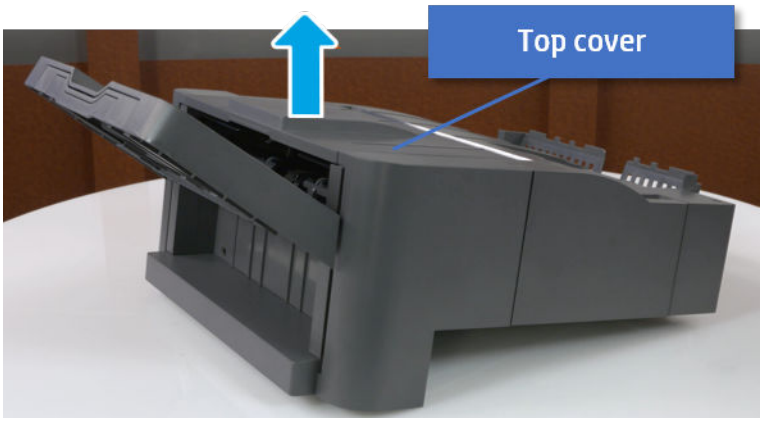


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

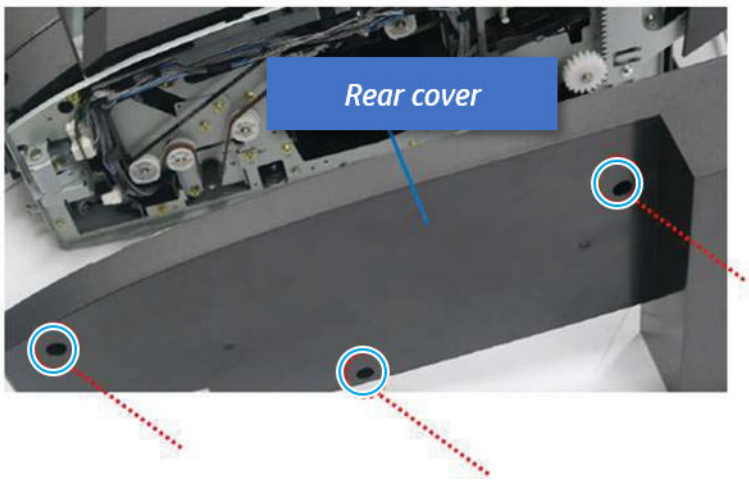
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-377 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-378 Remove the rear cover

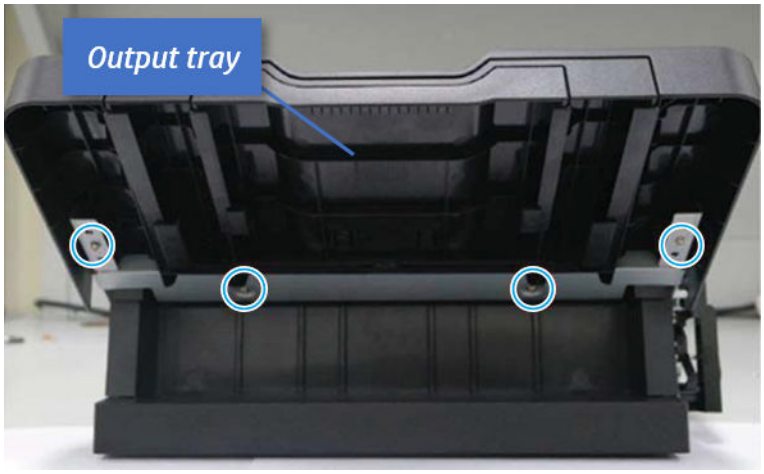


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-379 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

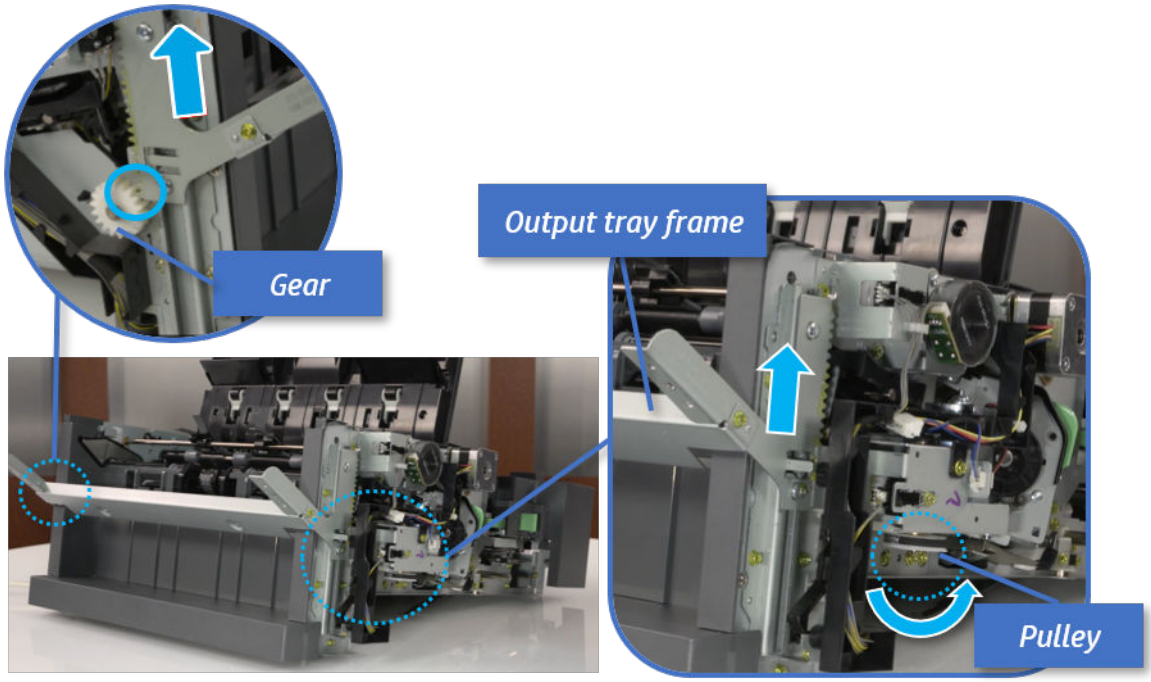
Figure 6-380 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

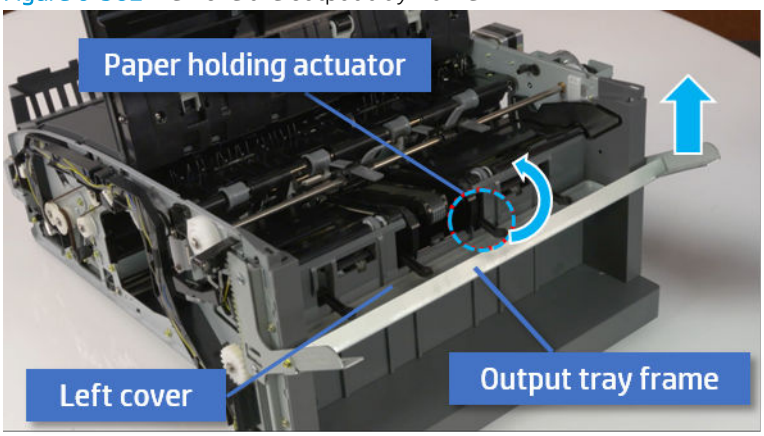
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-381 Remove the pulley



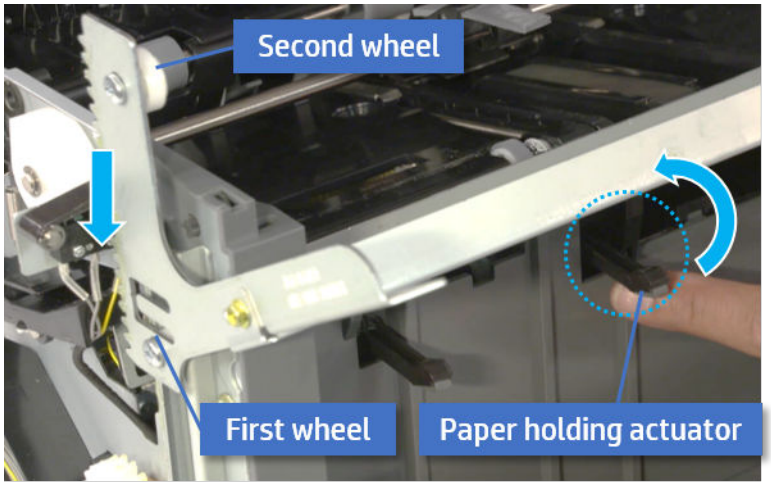
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-382 Remove the output tray frame



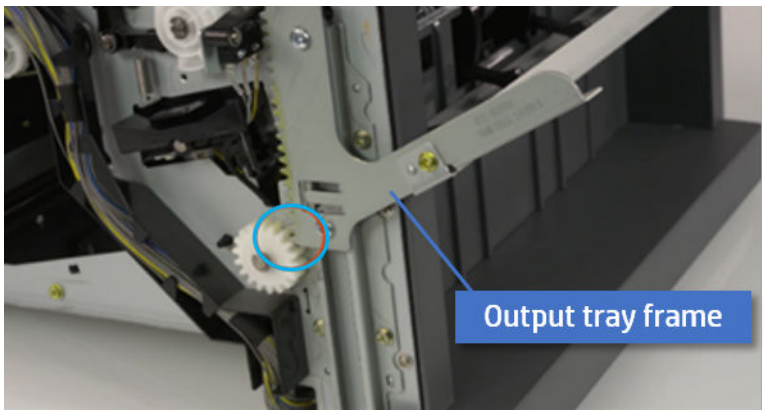
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

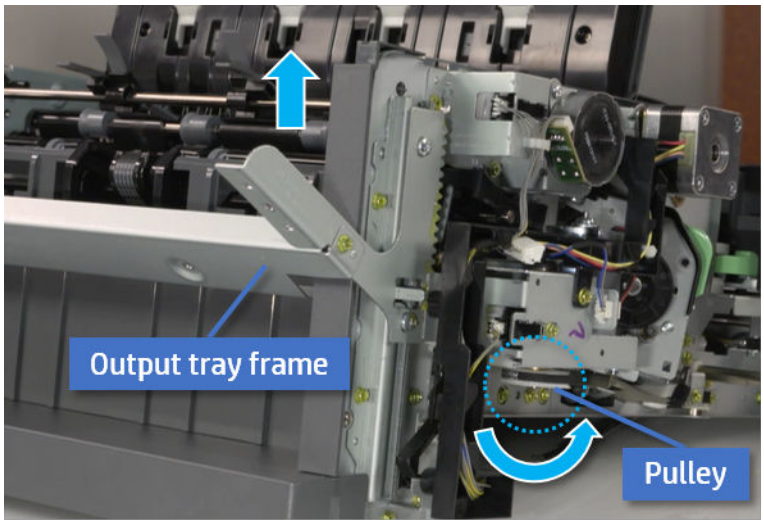


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

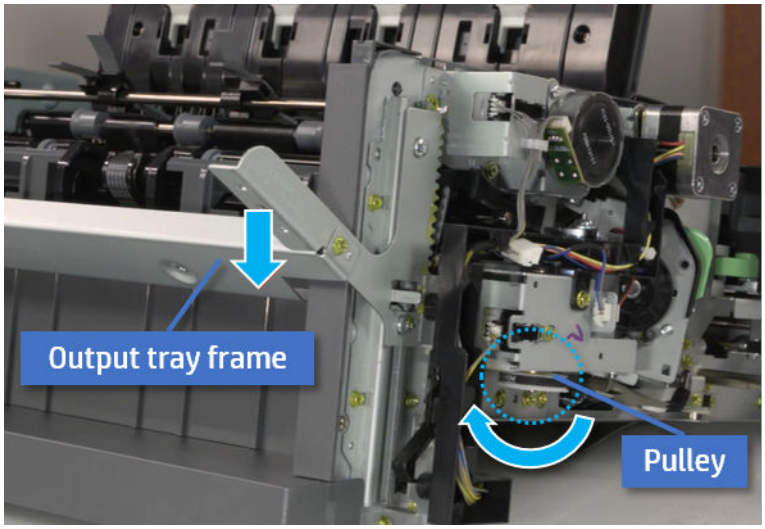
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

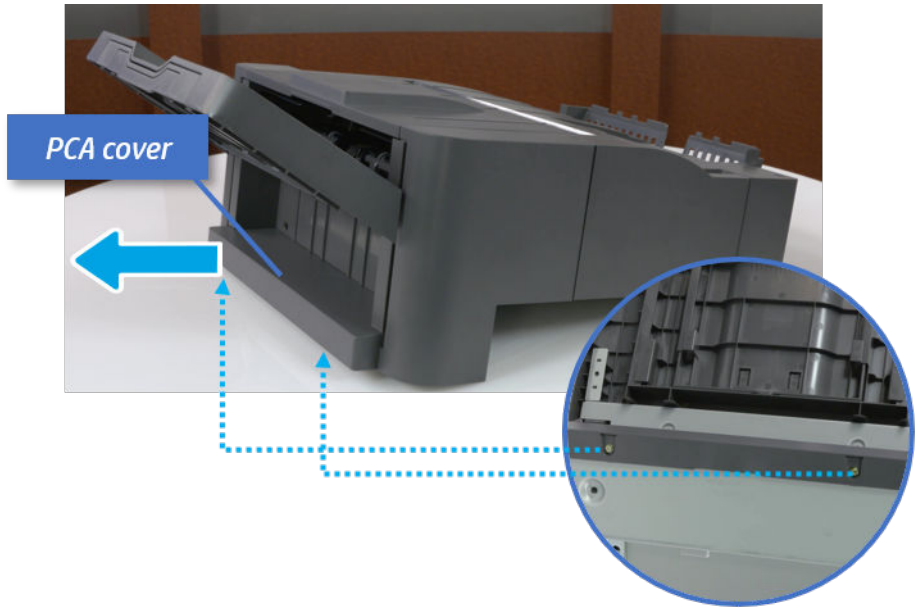


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-383 Remove the PCA cover

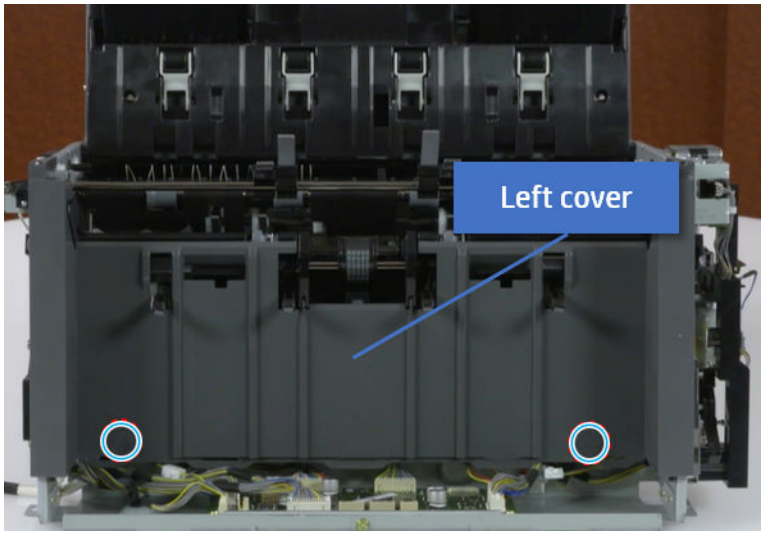


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

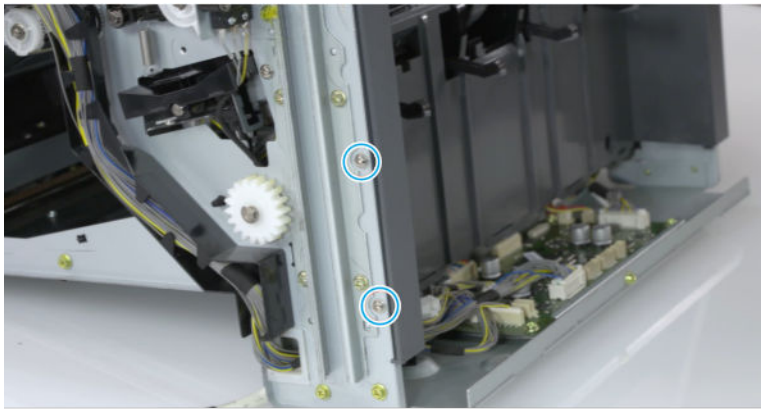
1. Remove two screws.

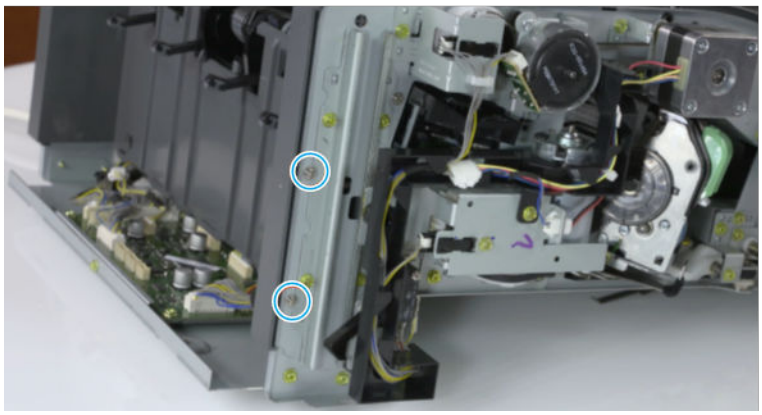
Figure 6-384 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

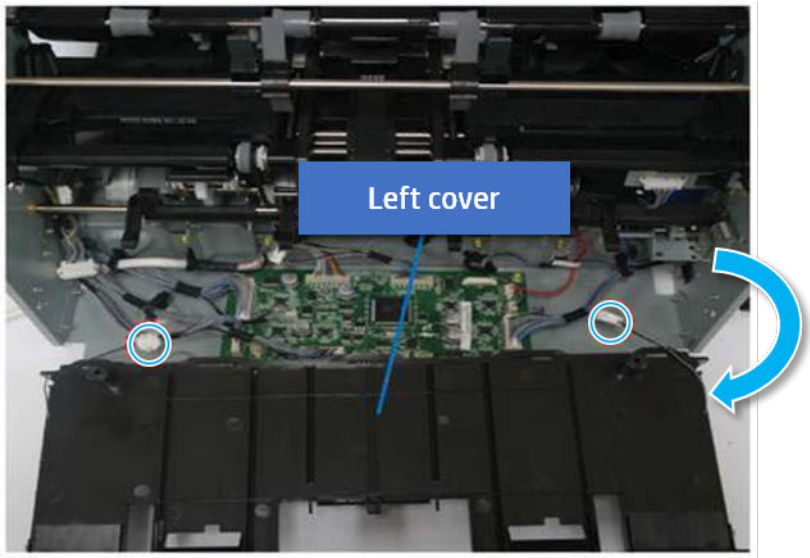
Figure 6-385 Remove four screws



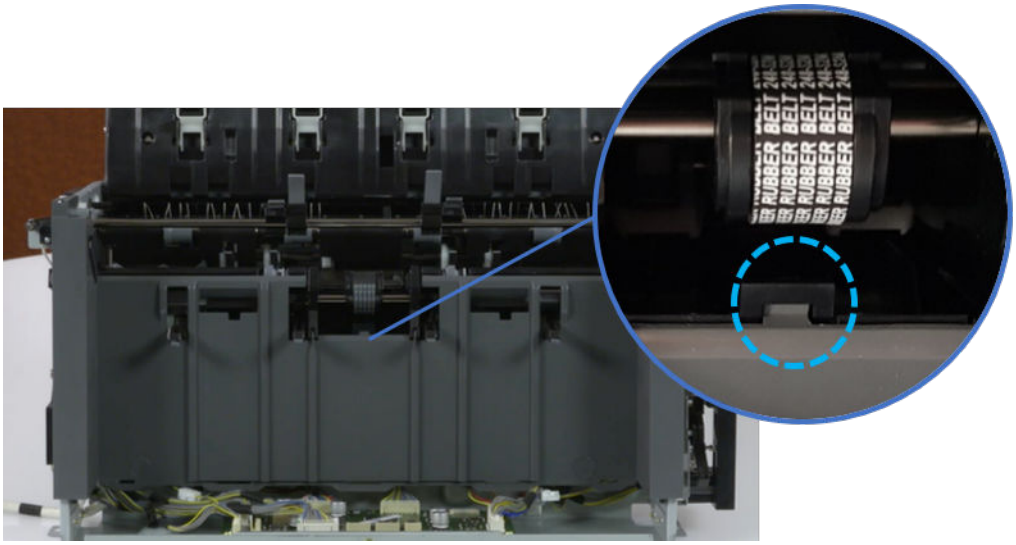


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-386 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



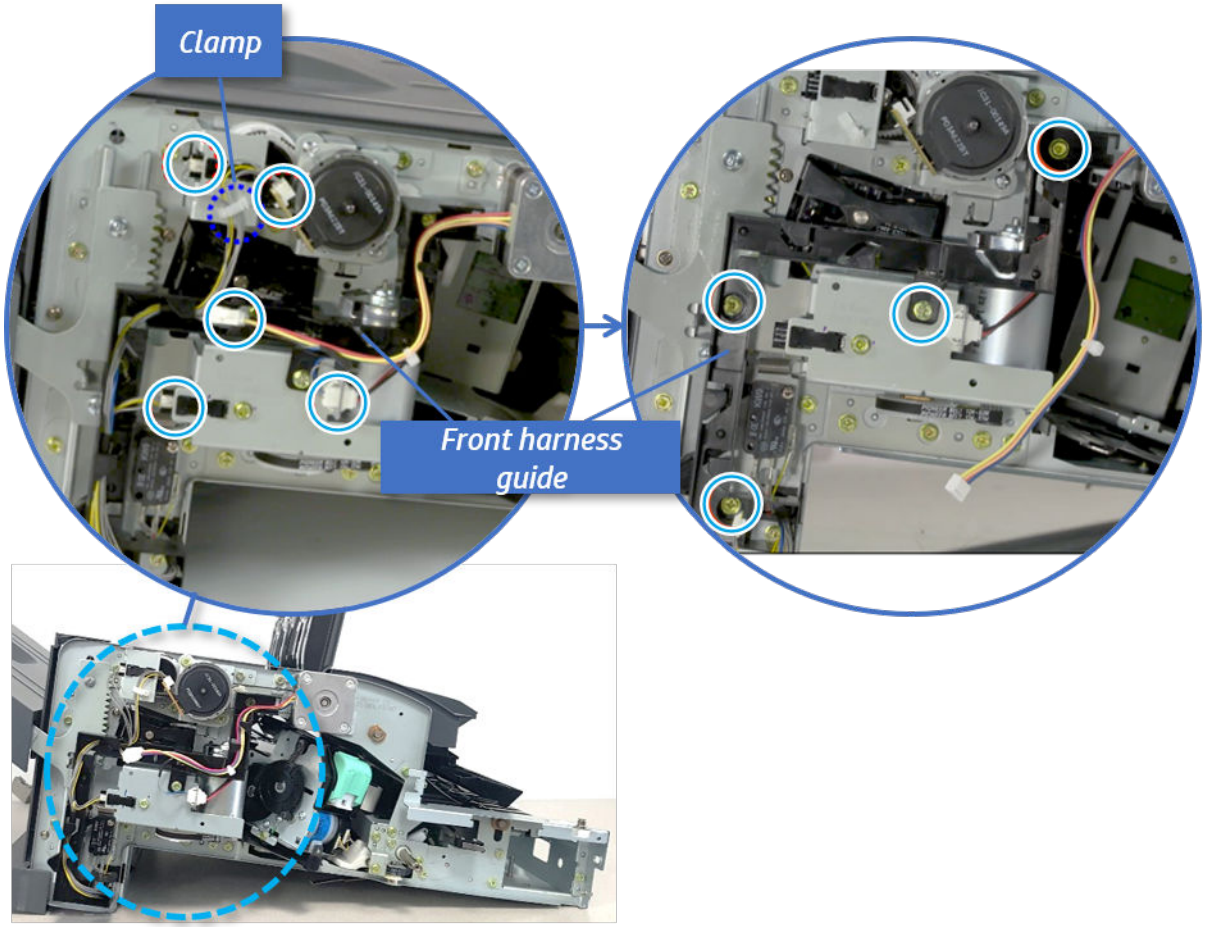
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-387 Remove the front harness guide

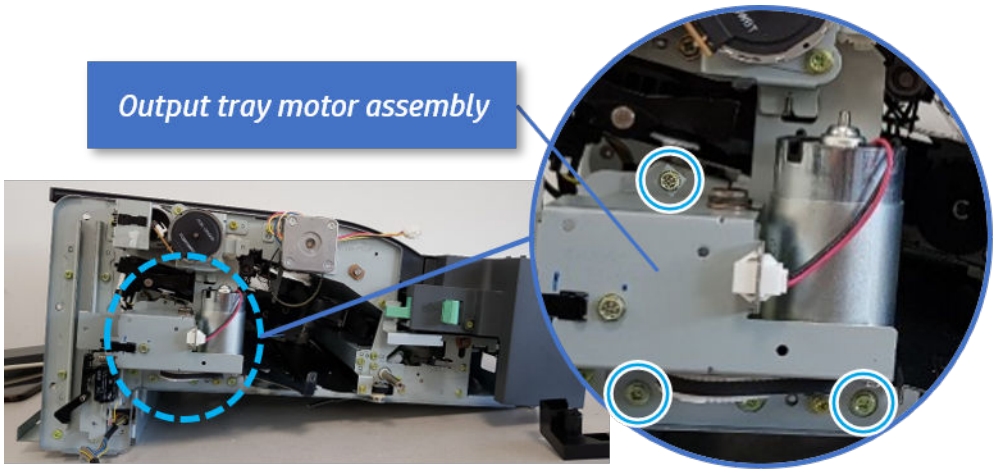


Remove the output tray motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor assembly.

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-388 Remove the output tray motor assembly

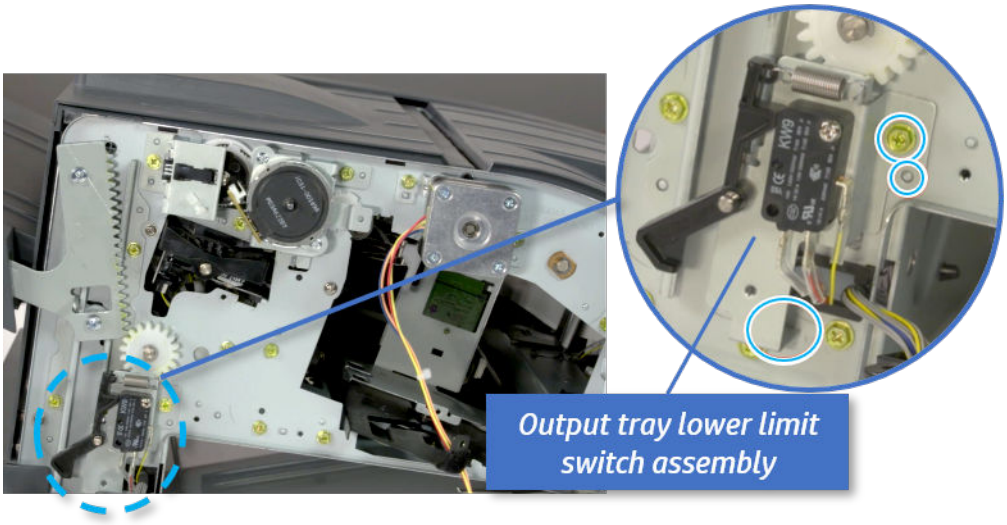


Remove the output tray lower limit switch

Follow these steps to remove the output tray lower limit switch.

▲ Remove one screw, and then remove the output tray lower limit switch.

Figure 6-389 Remove the output tray lower limit switch

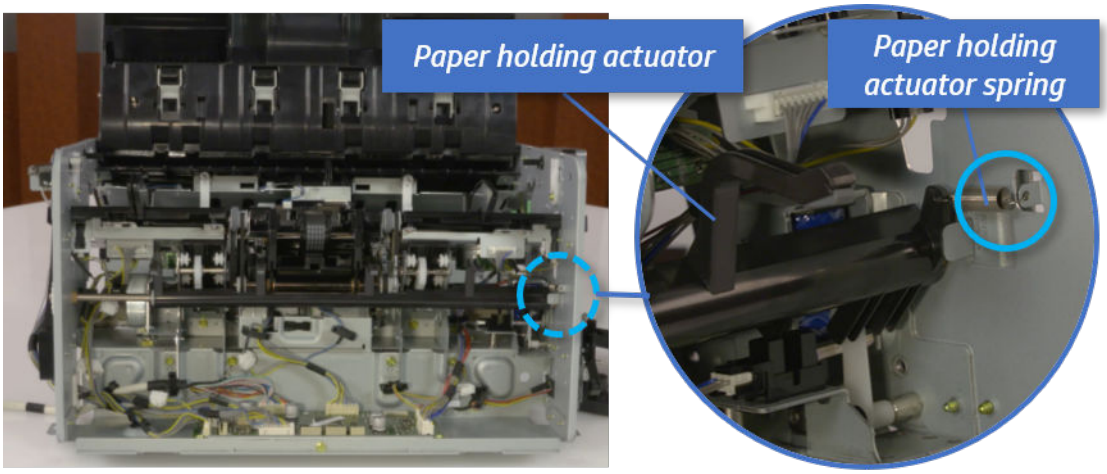


Remove the paper holding

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding.

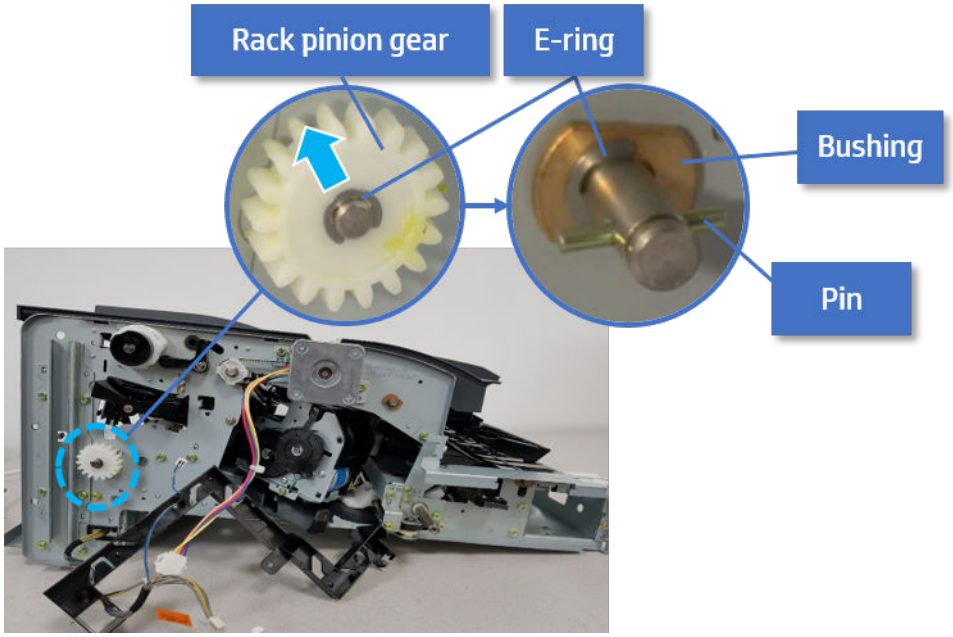
1. Remove the paper holding actuator spring.

Figure 6-390 Remove the paper holding actuator spring



2. Remove the e-ring and the rack pinion gear. And then remove the pin and the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

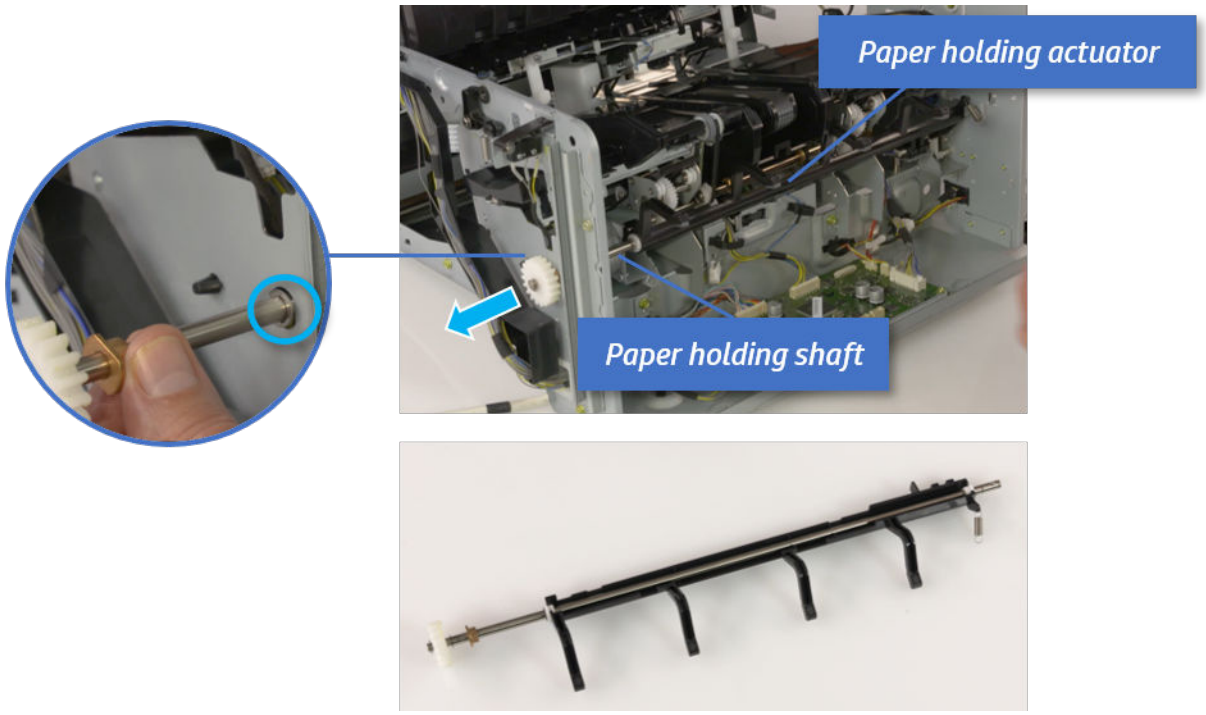
Figure 6-391 Remove e-ring, rack pinion gear, pin, and bushing



NOTE: Be sure not to lose the pin.

3. Carefully remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator.

Figure 6-392 Remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator

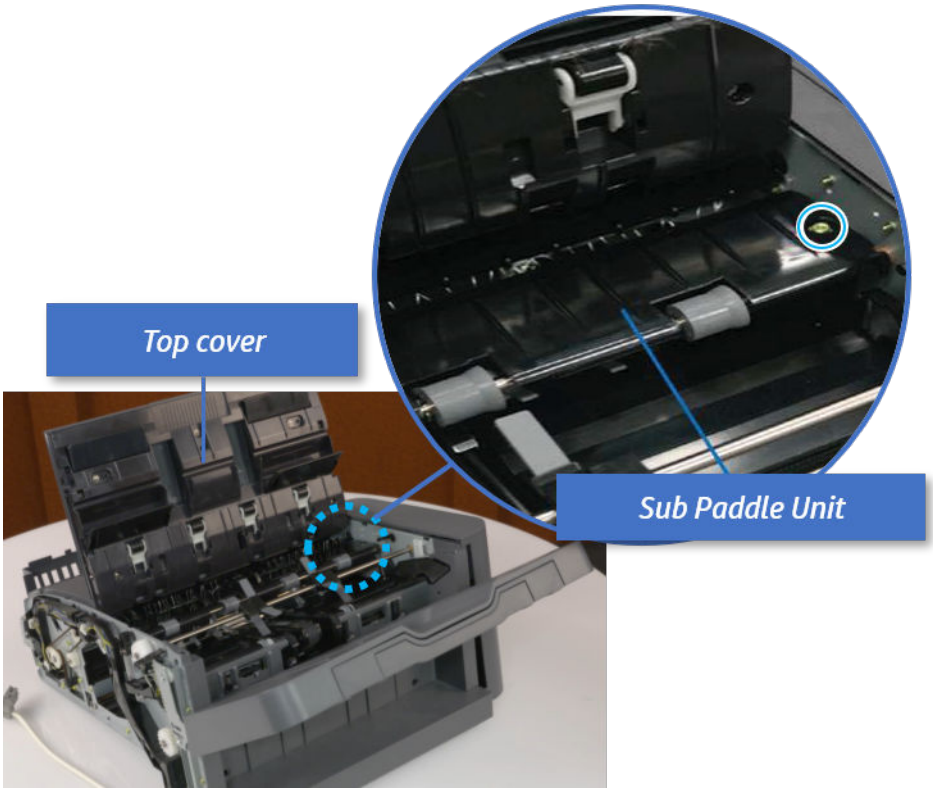


Remove the sub paddle unit

Follow these steps to remove the sub paddle unit.

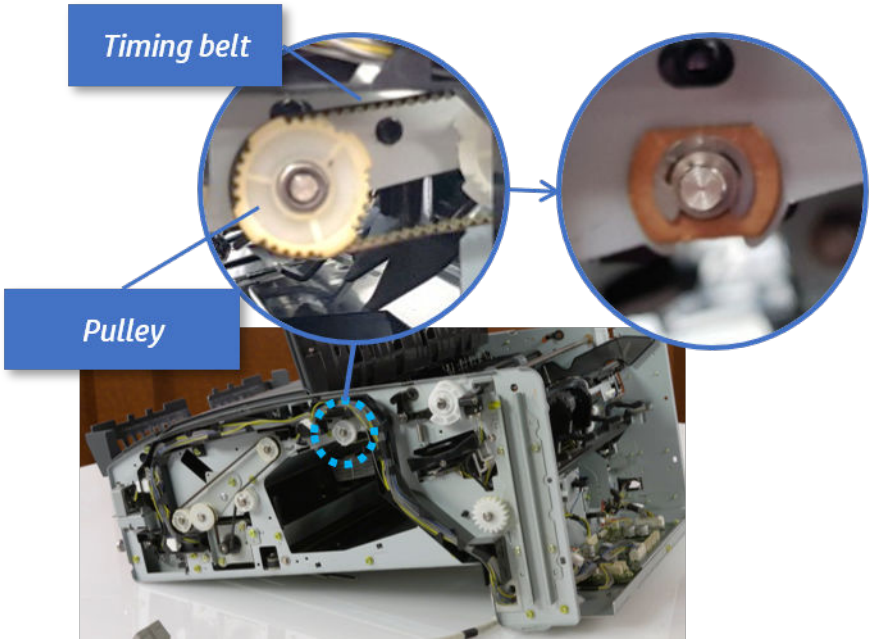
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw securing the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-393 Remove one screw



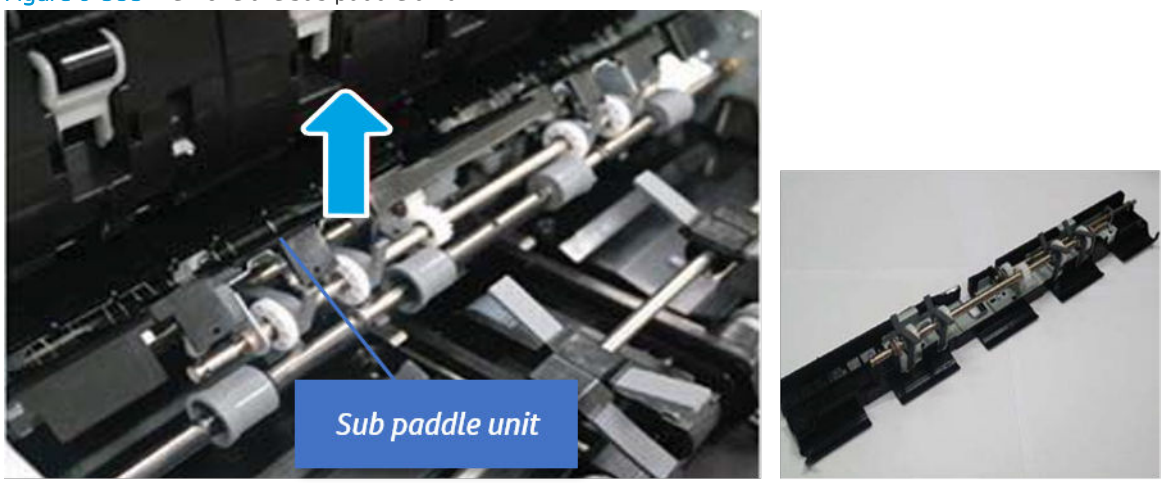
2. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt. And then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-394 Remove the e-ring, pulley, timing belt, and bushing



3. Lift up and remove the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-395 Remove the sub paddle unit

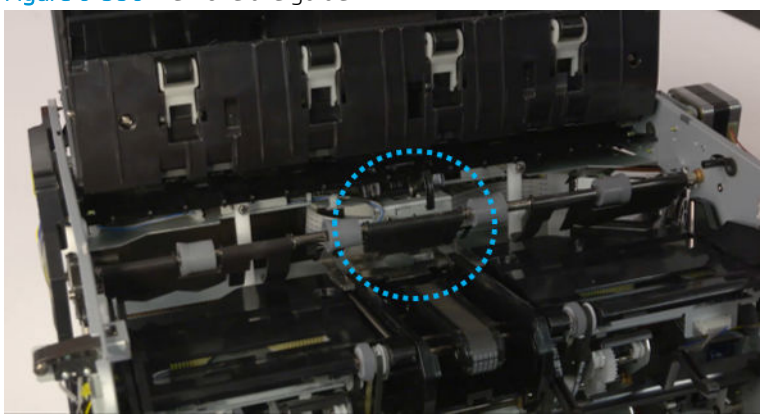


Remove the exit roller

Follow these steps to remove the exit roller.

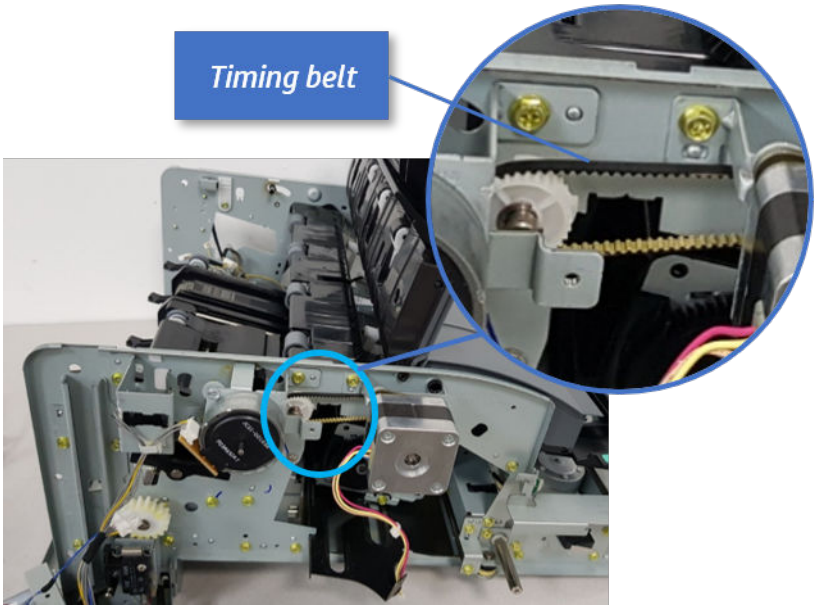
1. Remove the guide on the center of the exit roller.

Figure 6-396 Remove the guide



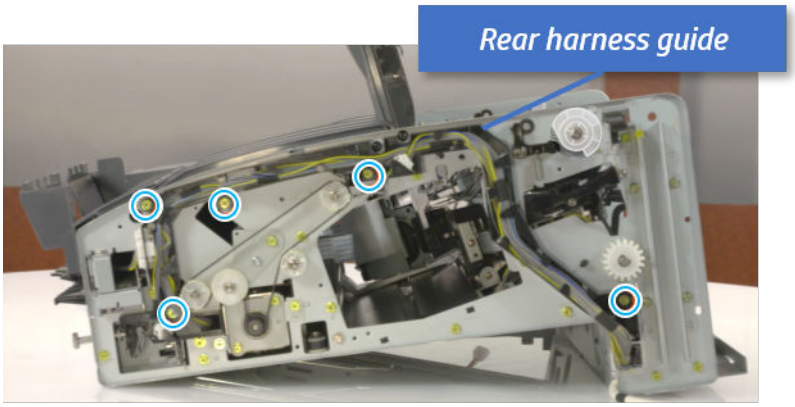
2. On the front of the inner finisher, release the timing belt connected to the exit motor.

Figure 6-397 Release the timing belt



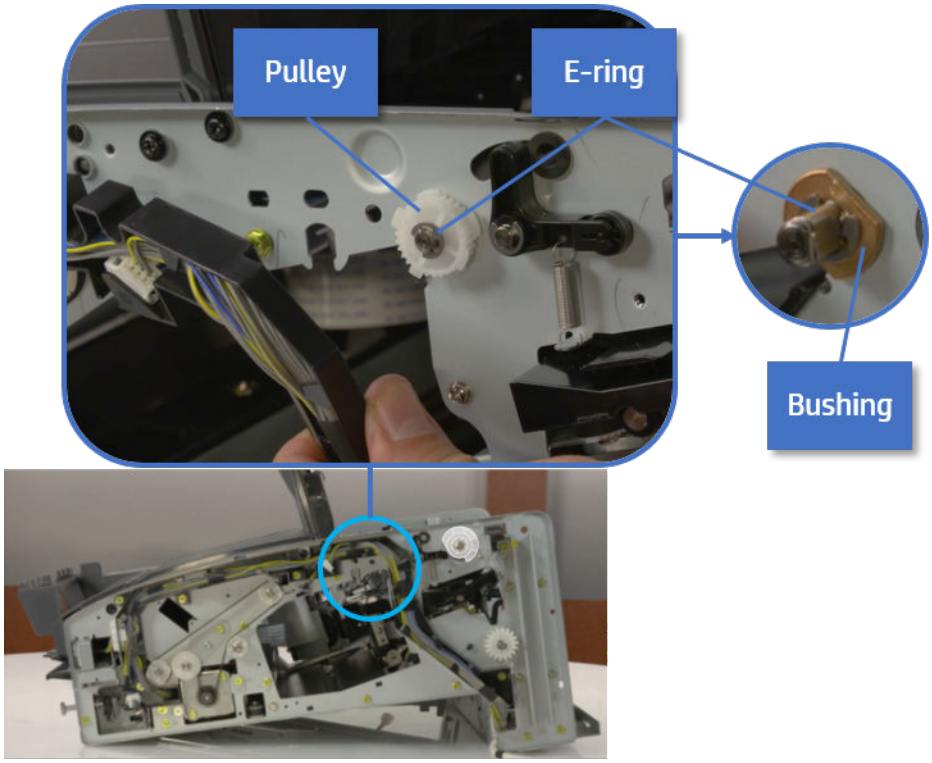
3. Remove five screws securing the rear harness guide.

Figure 6-398 Remove five screws



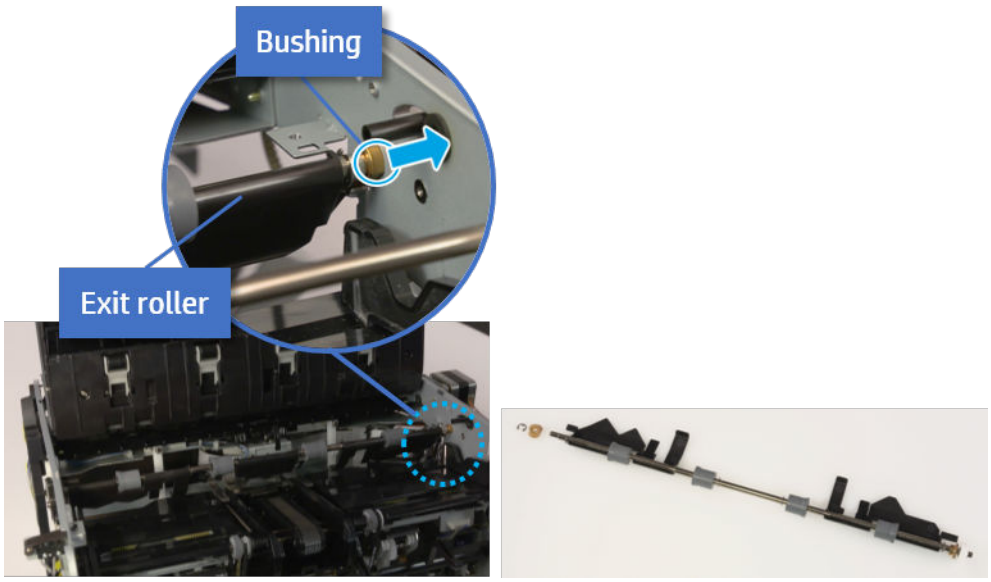
4. On the rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and the pulley and then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-399 Remove e-ring, pulley, and bushing



5. Push the bushing to detach it, and then remove the exit roller.

Figure 6-400 Remove the exit roller



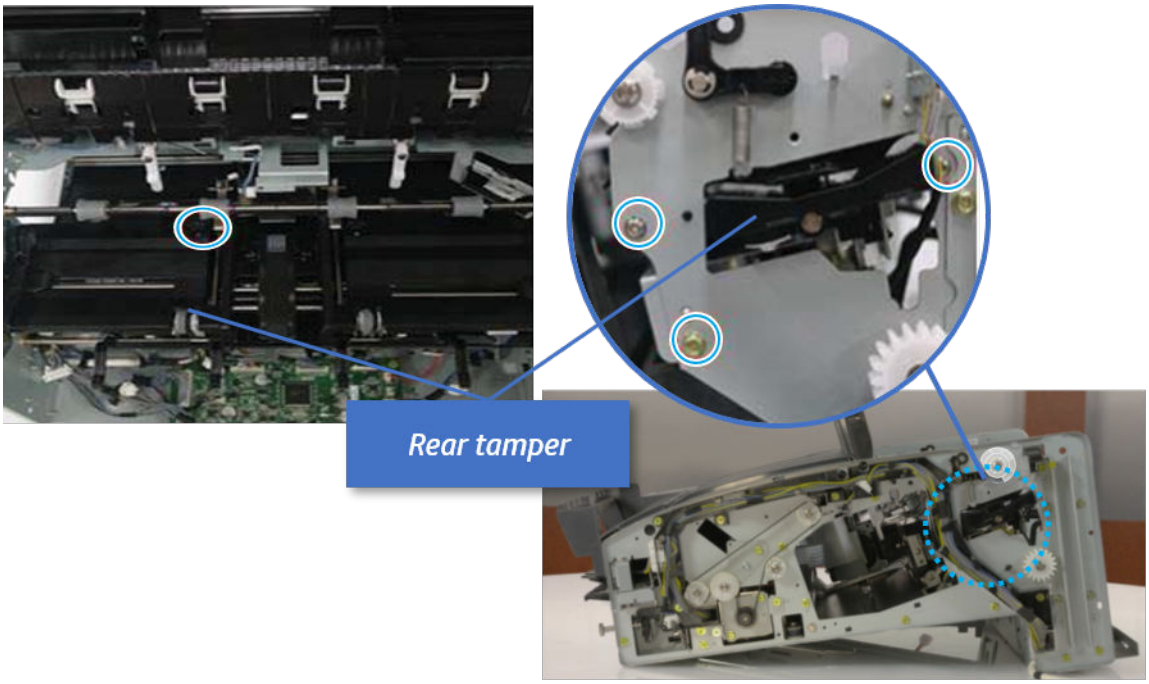
Remove the rear tamper

Follow these steps to remove the rear tamper.

1. Remove four screws.

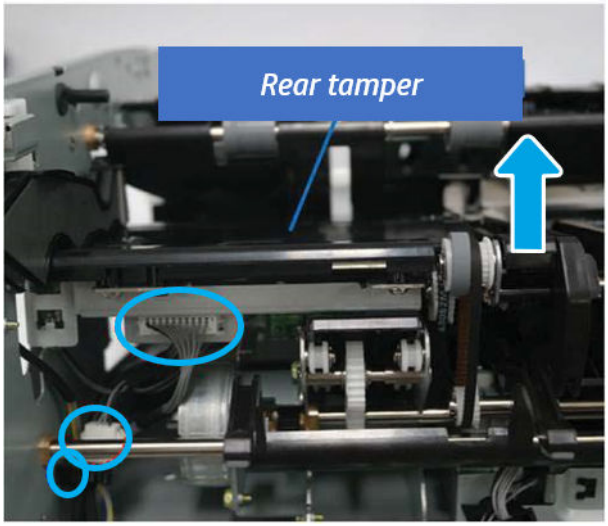
NOTE: Move cable guideout of position to access the screws.

Figure 6-401 Remove four screws



2. Unplug two connectors and release the hook, and then remove the rear tamper.

Figure 6-402 Remove the rear tamper



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear tamper home sensor (S14)

Learn how to remove and replace the rear tamper home sensor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-55 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Rear tamper home sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

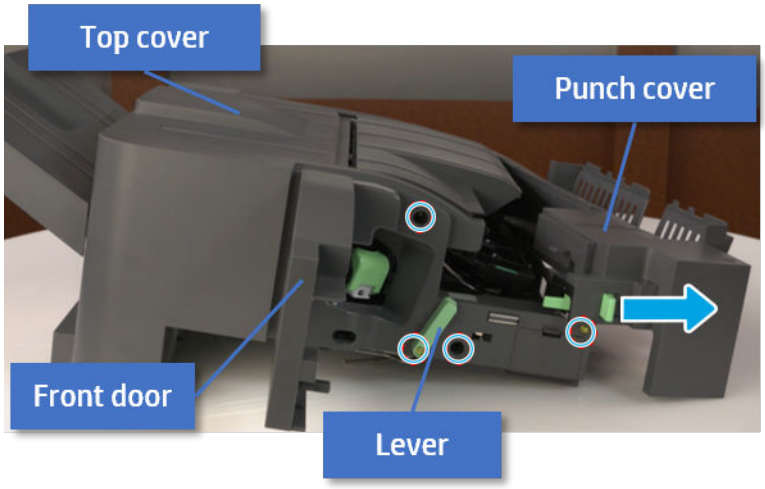
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-403 Remove the front cover

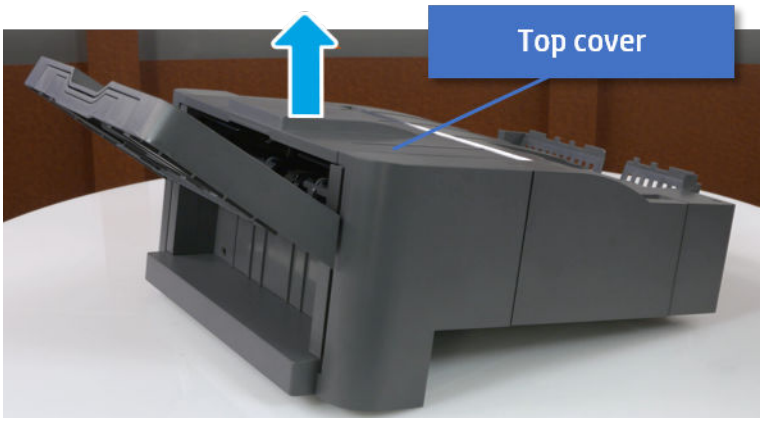


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

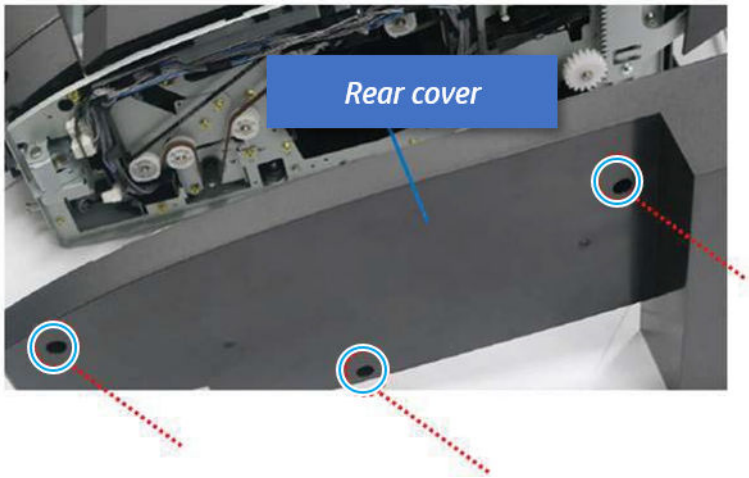
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-404 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-405 Remove the rear cover

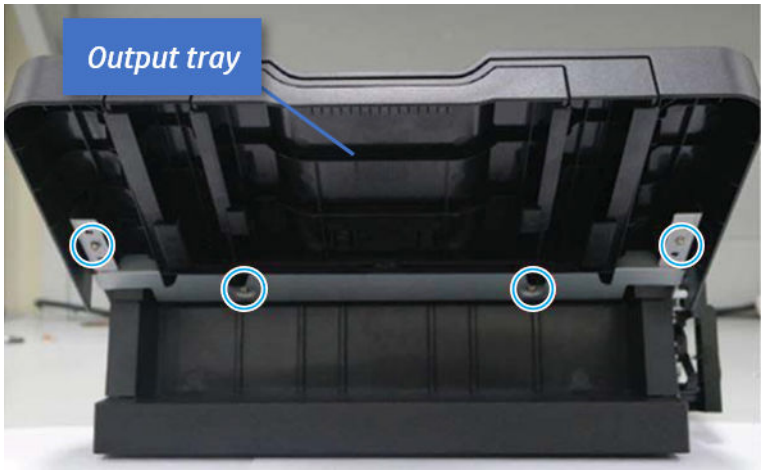


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-406 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

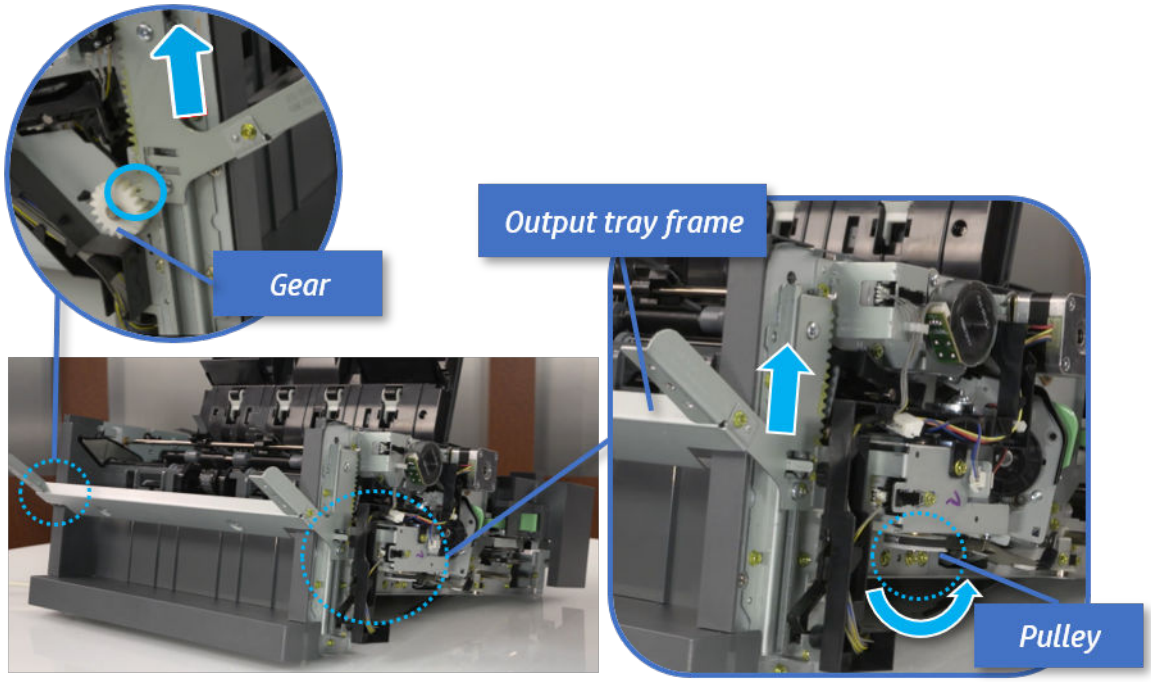
Figure 6-407 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

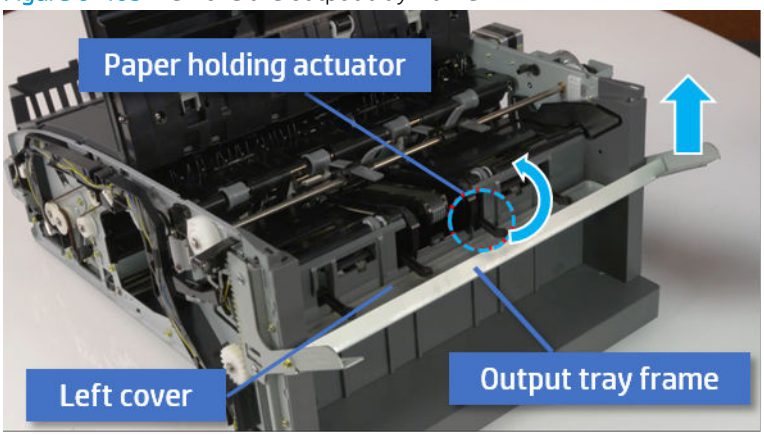
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-408 Remove the pulley



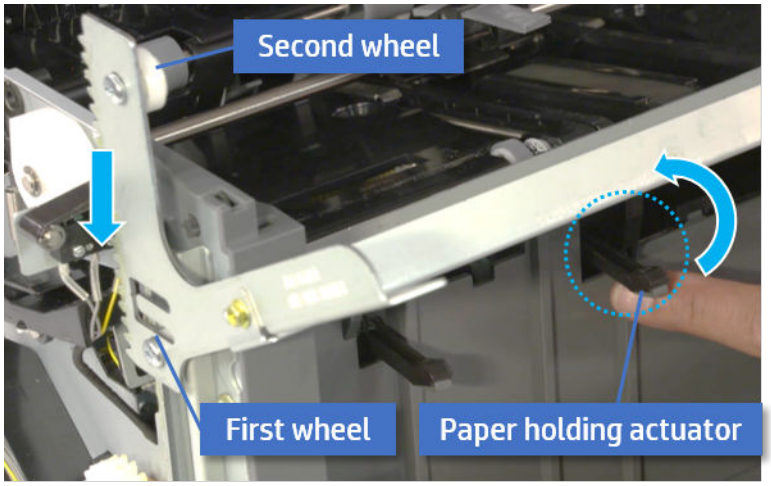
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-409 Remove the output tray frame



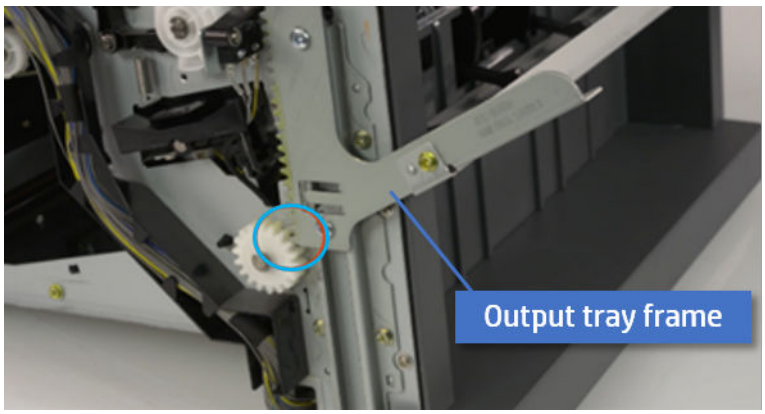
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

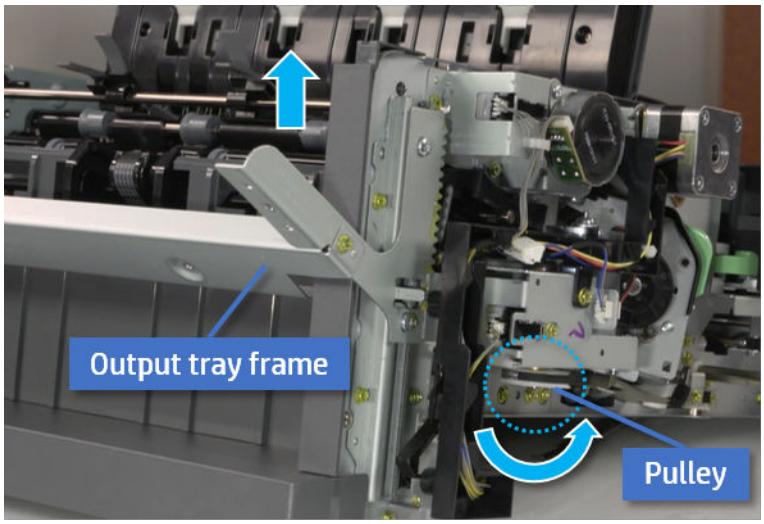


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

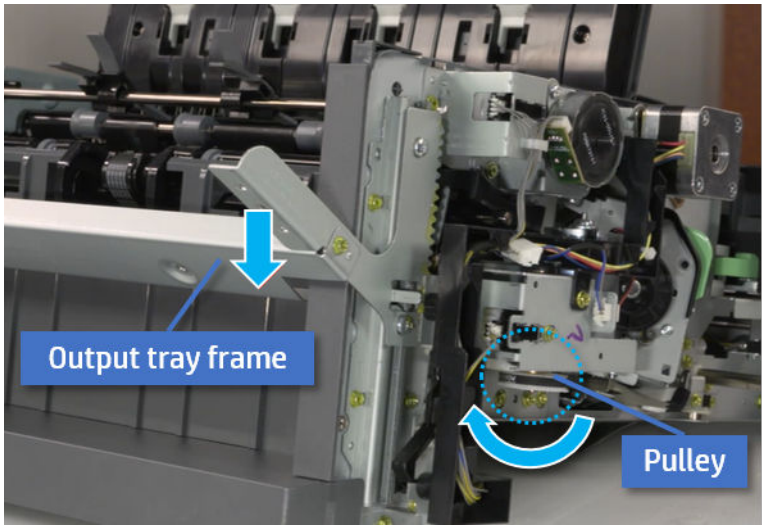
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

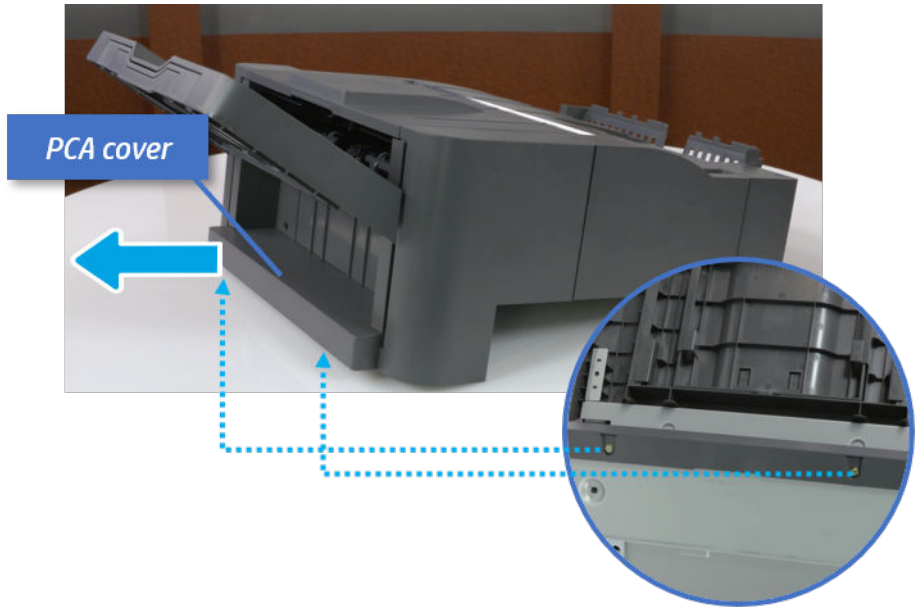


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-410 Remove the PCA cover

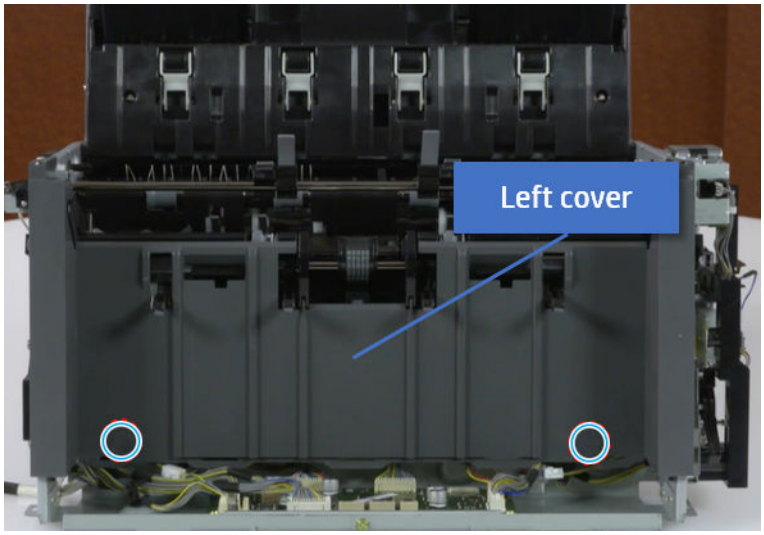


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

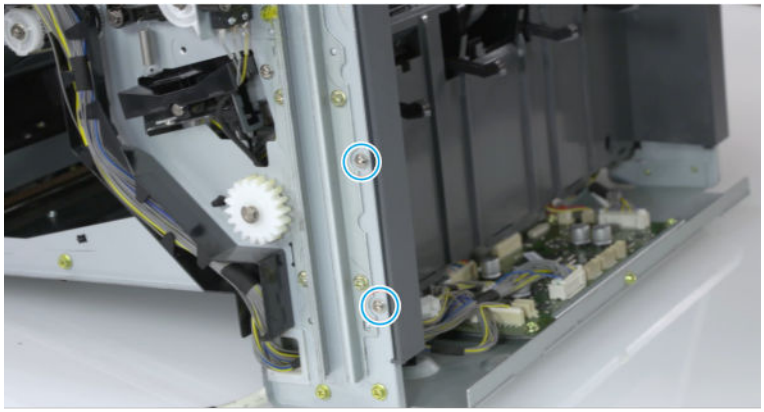
1. Remove two screws.

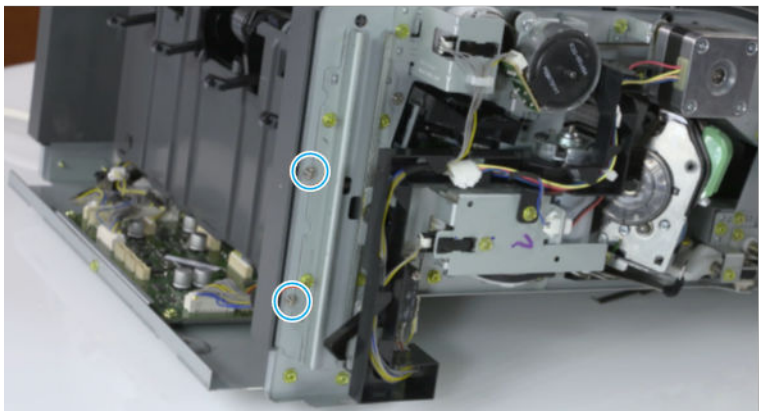
Figure 6-411 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

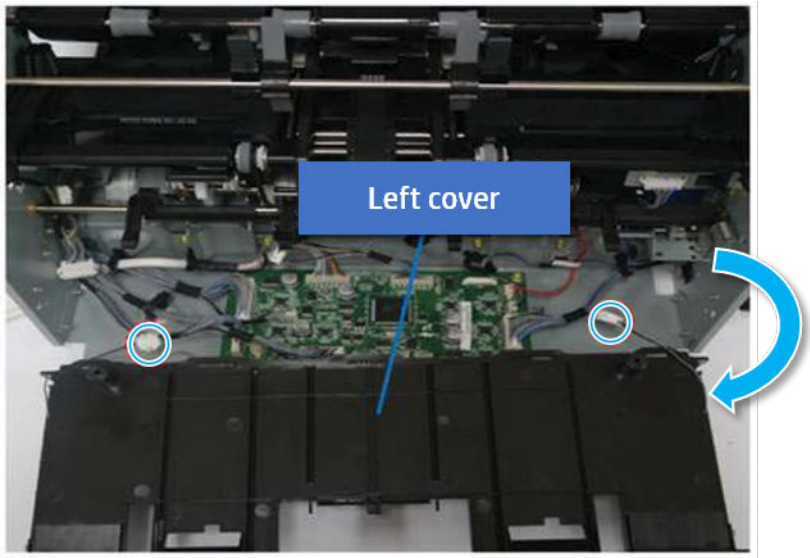
Figure 6-412 Remove four screws



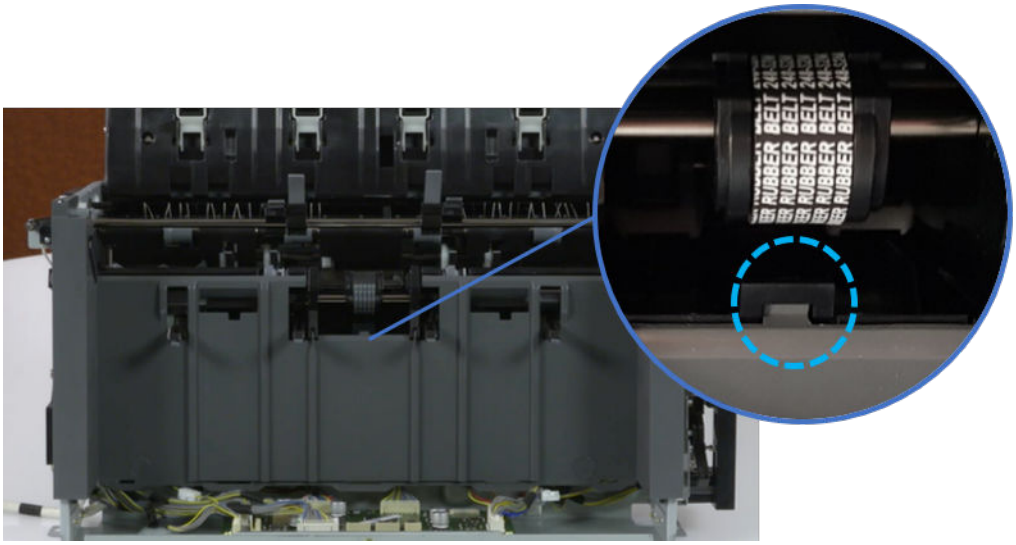


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-413 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



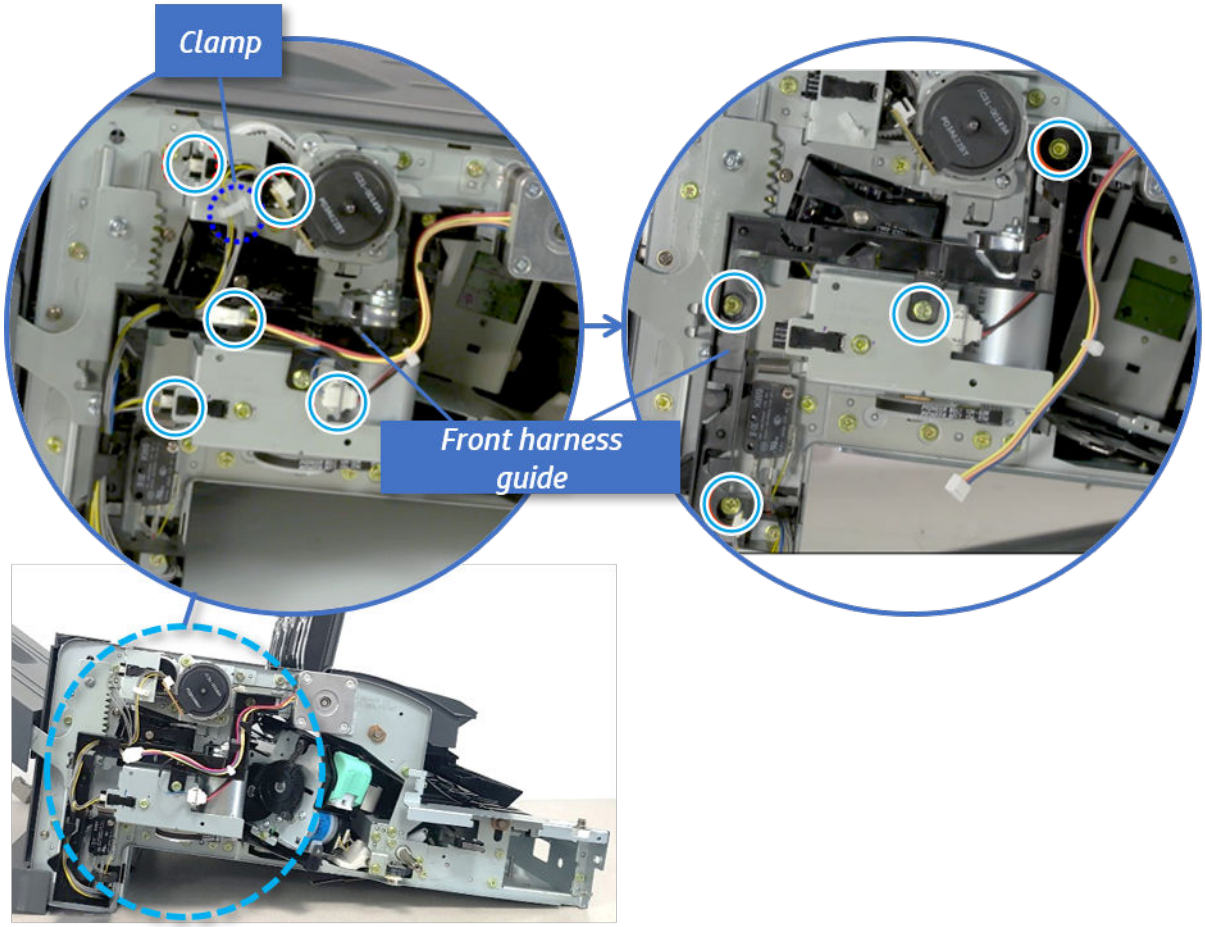
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-414 Remove the front harness guide

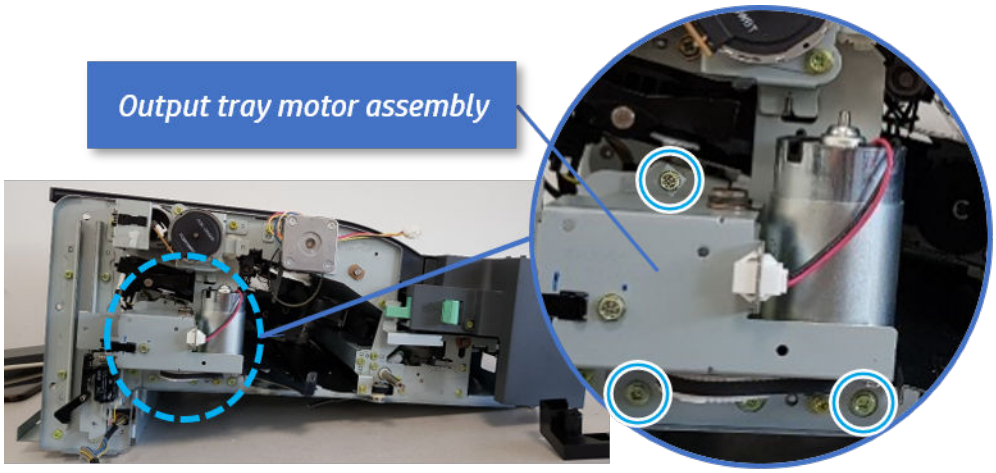


Remove the output tray motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor assembly.

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-415 Remove the output tray motor assembly

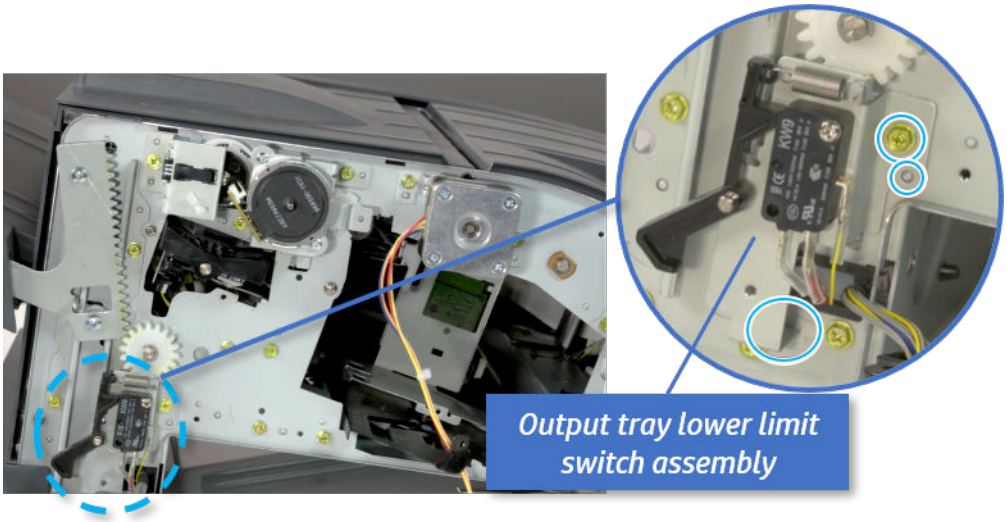


Remove the output tray lower limit switch

Follow these steps to remove the output tray lower limit switch.

▲ Remove one screw, and then remove the output tray lower limit switch.

Figure 6-416 Remove the output tray lower limit switch

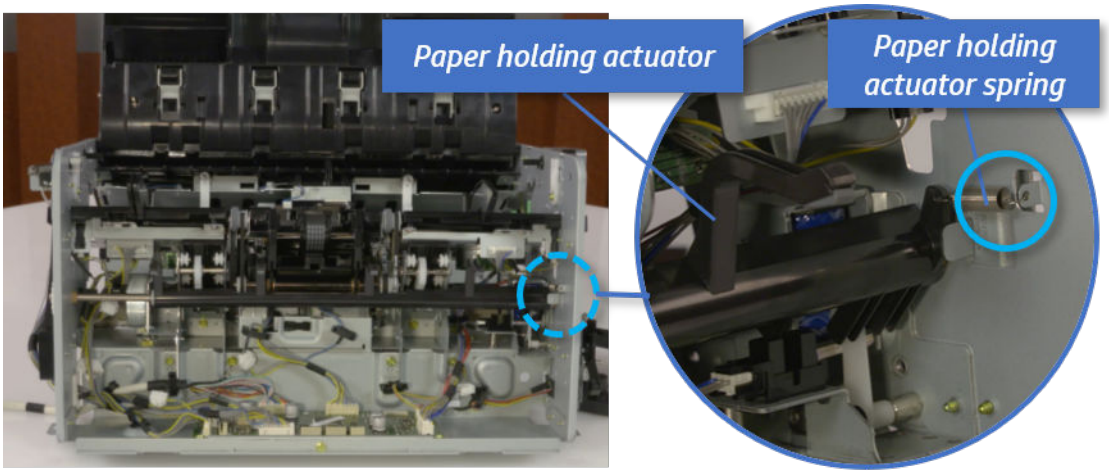


Remove the paper holding

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding.

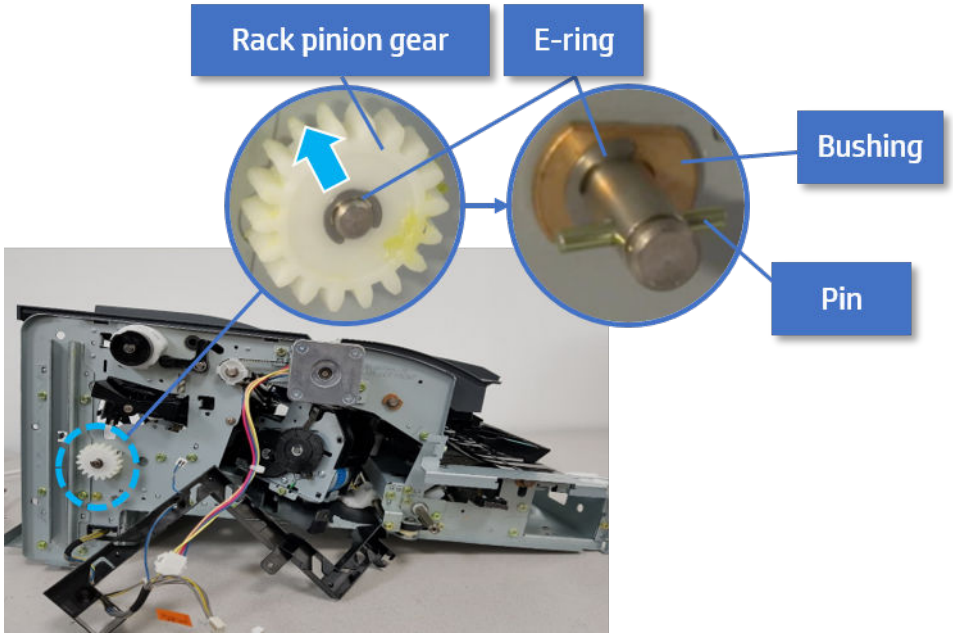
1. Remove the paper holding actuator spring.

Figure 6-417 Remove the paper holding actuator spring



2. Remove the e-ring and the rack pinion gear. And then remove the pin and the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

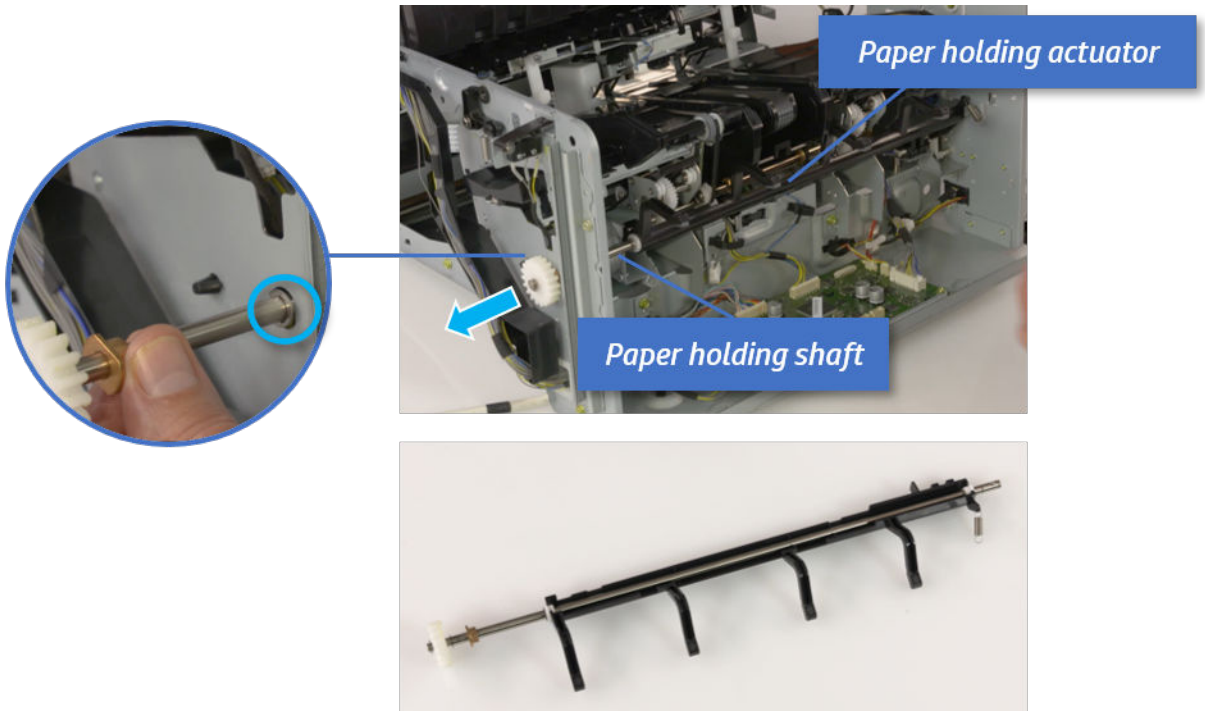
Figure 6-418 Remove e-ring, rack pinion gear, pin, and bushing



NOTE: Be sure not to lose the pin.

3. Carefully remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator.

Figure 6-419 Remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator

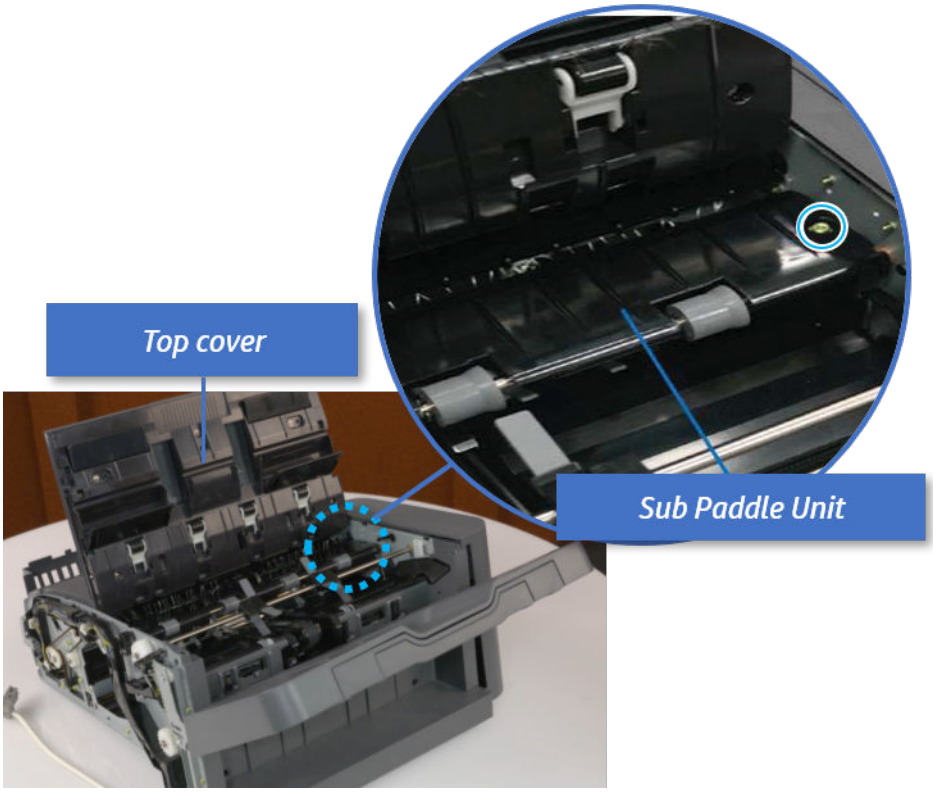


Remove the sub paddle unit

Follow these steps to remove the sub paddle unit.

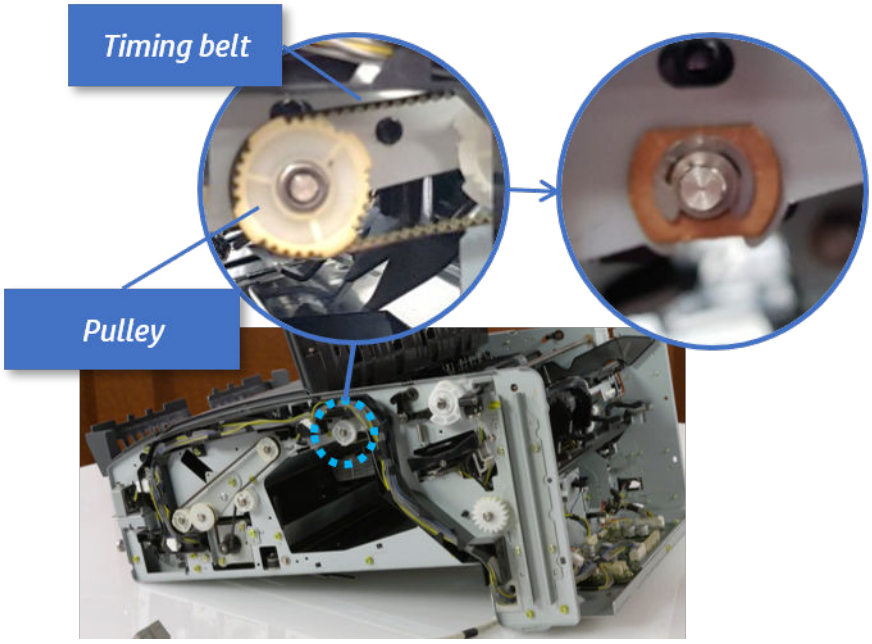
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw securing the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-420 Remove one screw



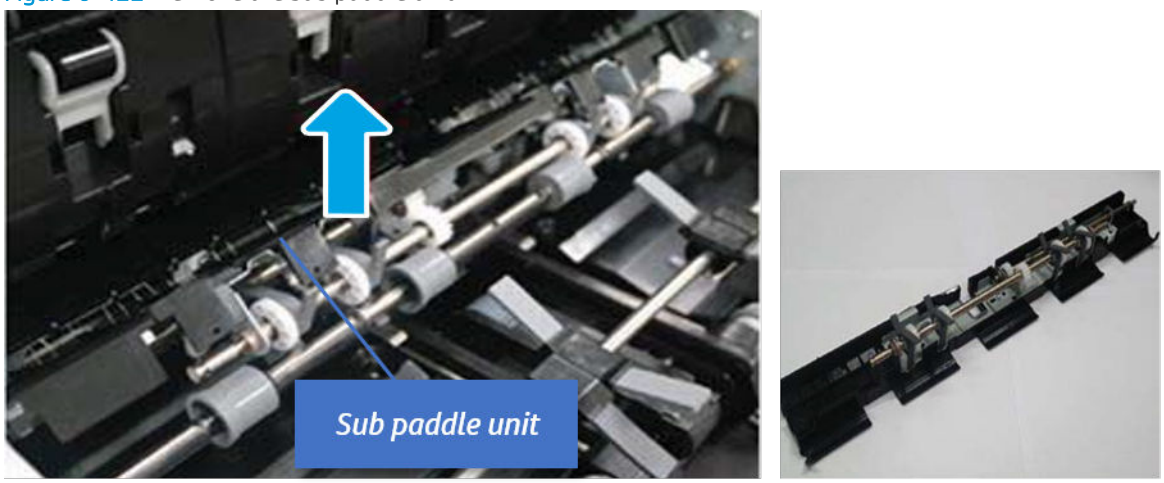
2. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt. And then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-421 Remove the e-ring, pulley, timing belt, and bushing



3. Lift up and remove the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-422 Remove the sub paddle unit

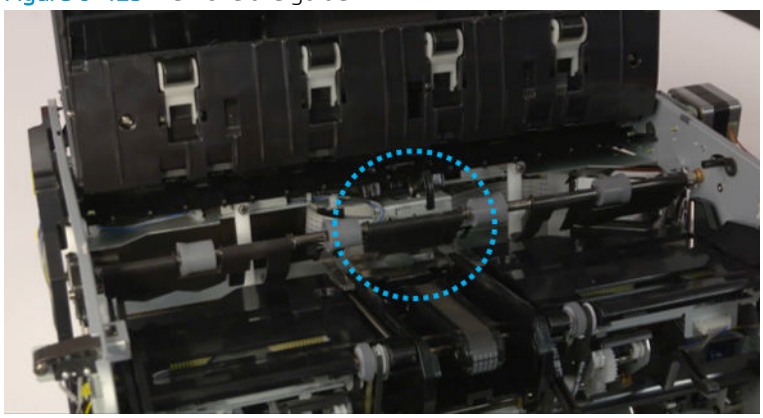


Remove the exit roller

Follow these steps to remove the exit roller.

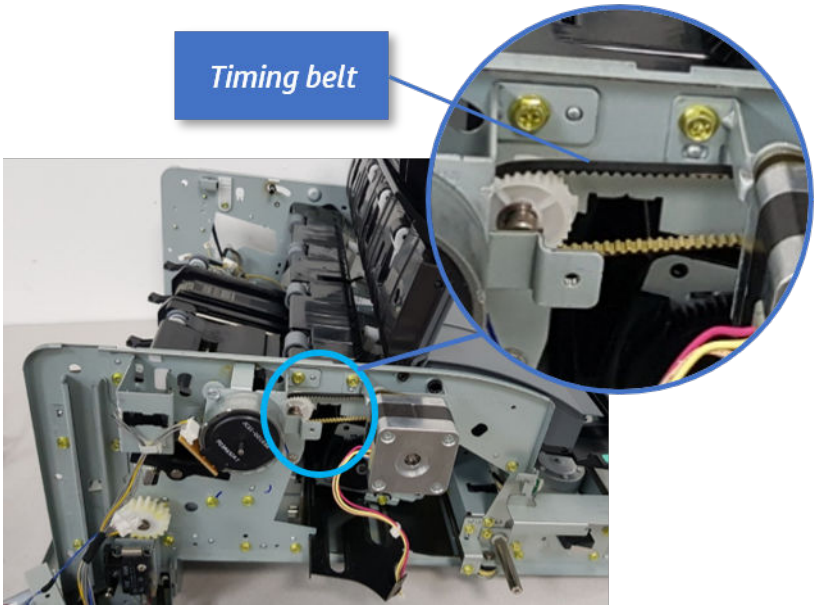
1. Remove the guide on the center of the exit roller.

Figure 6-423 Remove the guide



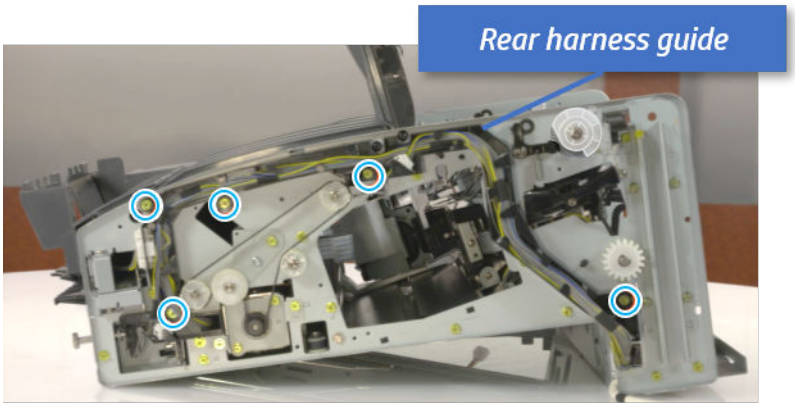
2. On the front of the inner finisher, release the timing belt connected to the exit motor.

Figure 6-424 Release the timing belt



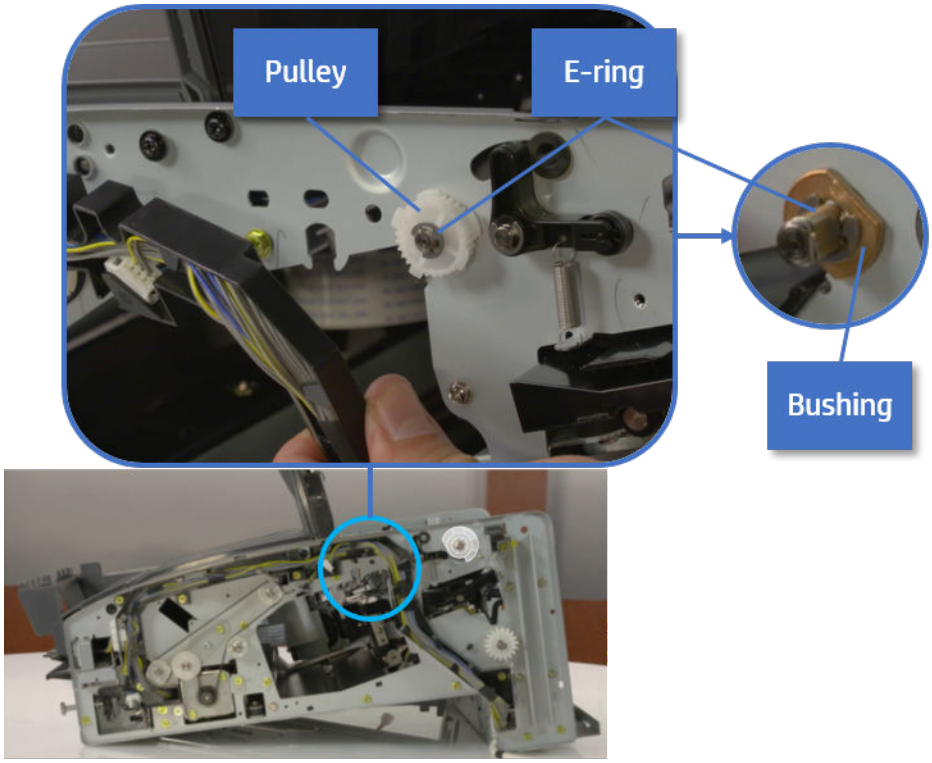
3. Remove five screws securing the rear harness guide.

Figure 6-425 Remove five screws



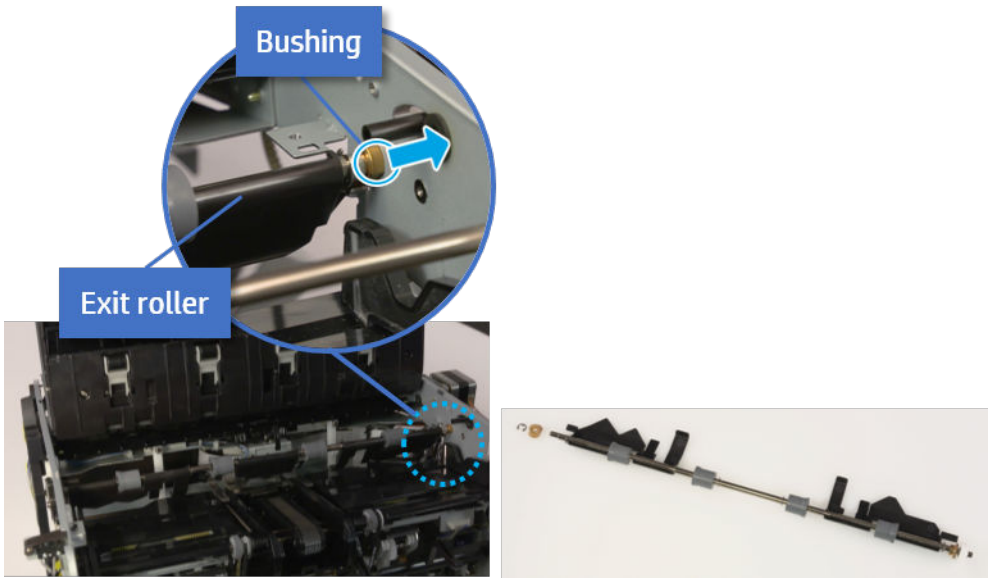
4. On the rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and the pulley and then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-426 Remove e-ring, pulley, and bushing



5. Push the bushing to detach it, and then remove the exit roller.

Figure 6-427 Remove the exit roller



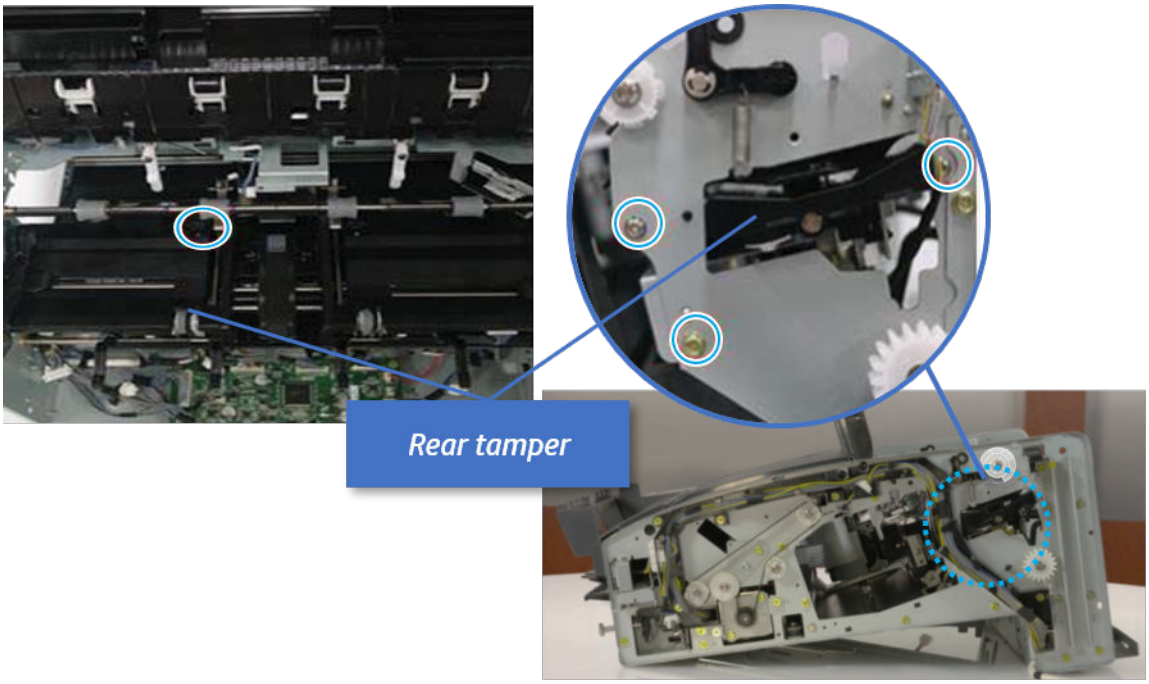
Remove the rear tamper

Follow these steps to remove the rear tamper.

1. Remove four screws.

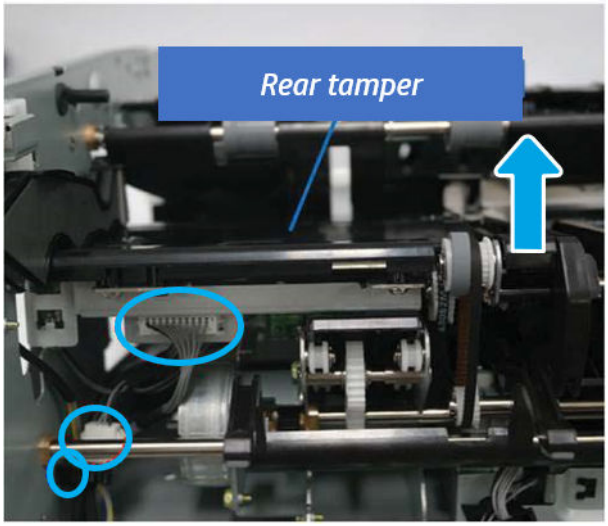
NOTE: Move cable guideout of position to access the screws.

Figure 6-428 Remove four screws



2. Unplug two connectors and release the hook, and then remove the rear tamper.

Figure 6-429 Remove the rear tamper

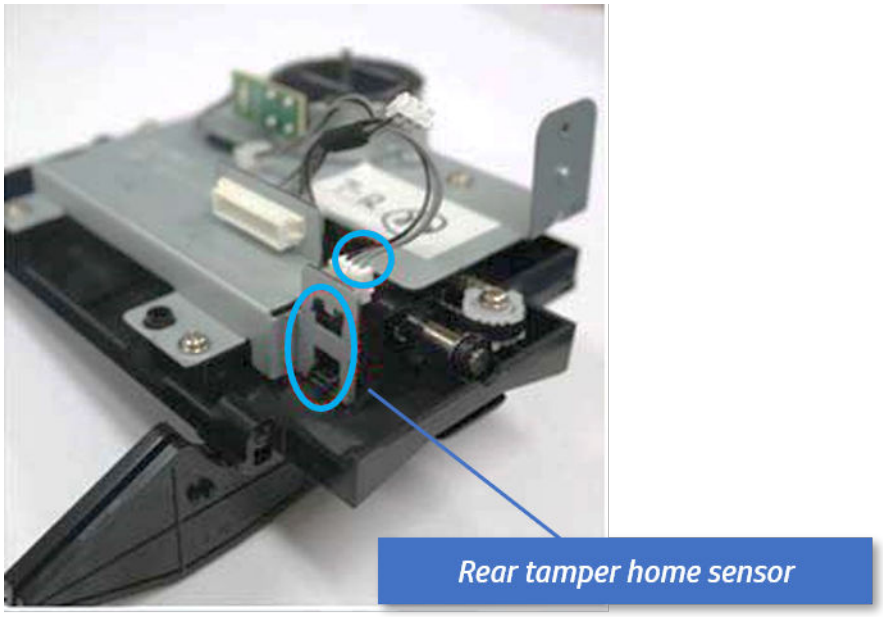


Remove the rear tamper home sensor

Follow these steps to remove the rear tamper home sensor.

- ▲ Unplug the connector, and then remove the rear tamper home sensor.

Figure 6-430 Remove the rear tamper home sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear tamper motor (M5)

Learn how to remove and replace the rear tamper motor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-56 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Rear tamper motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

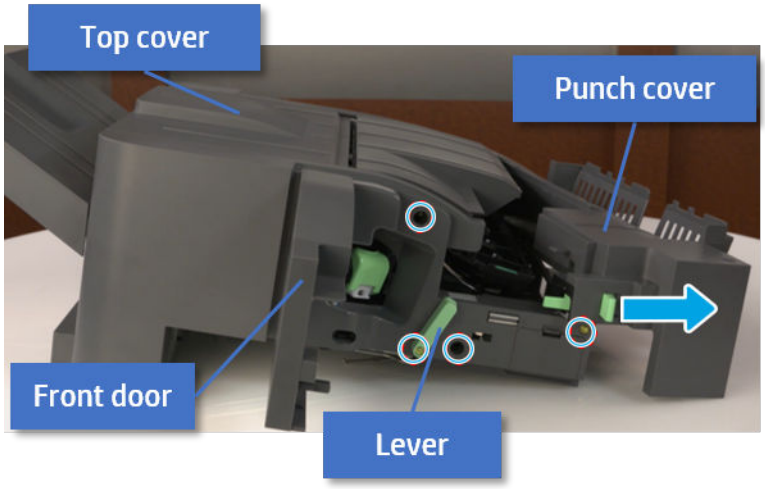
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-431 Remove the front cover

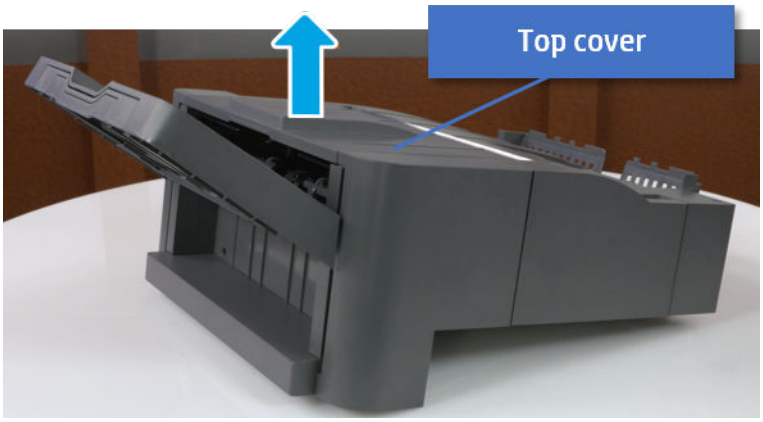


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

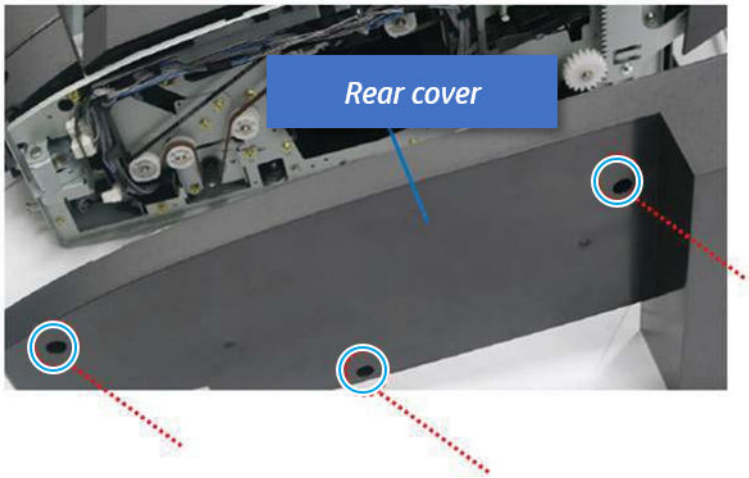
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-432 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-433 Remove the rear cover

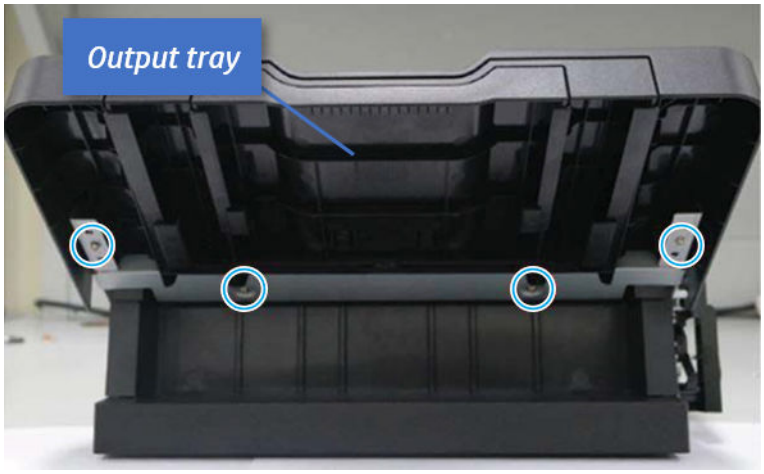


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-434 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

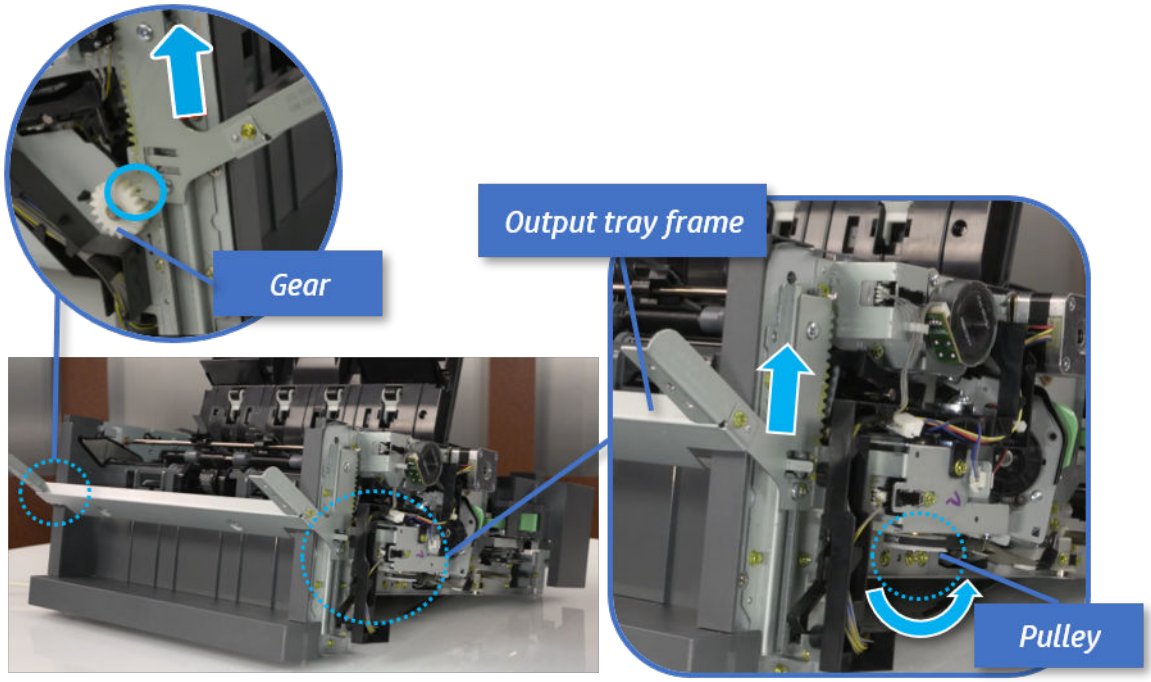
Figure 6-435 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

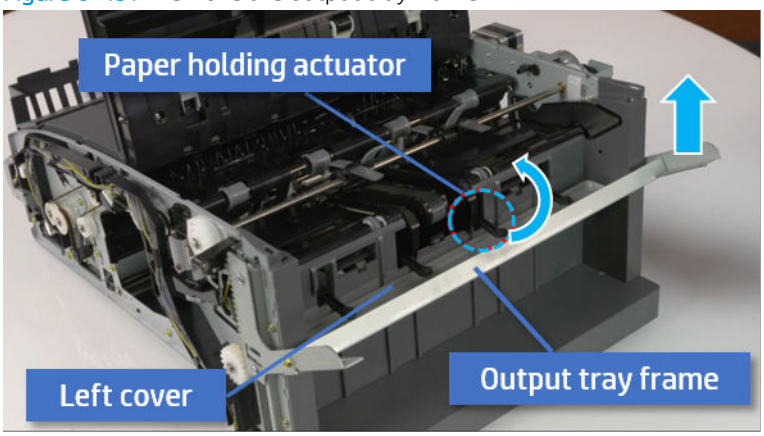
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-436 Remove the pulley



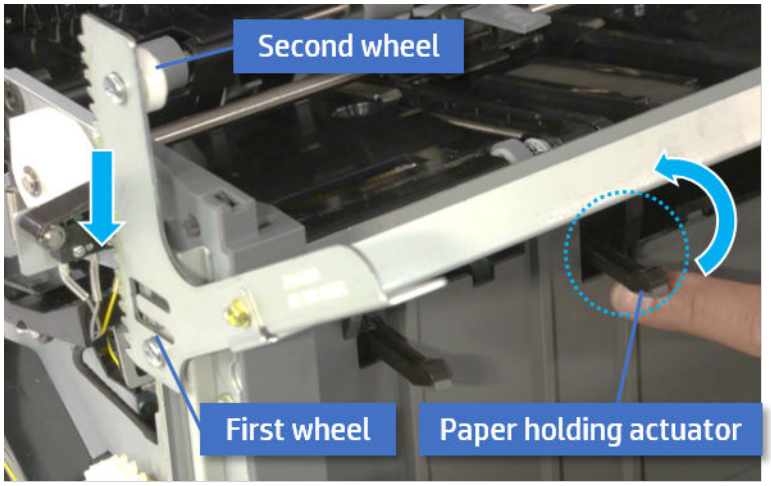
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-437 Remove the output tray frame



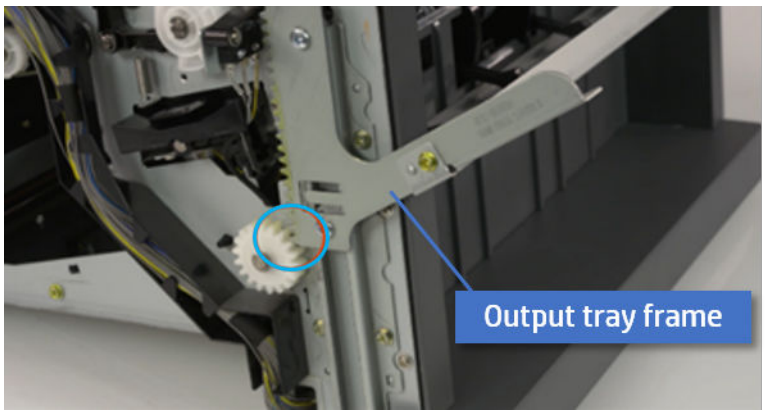
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

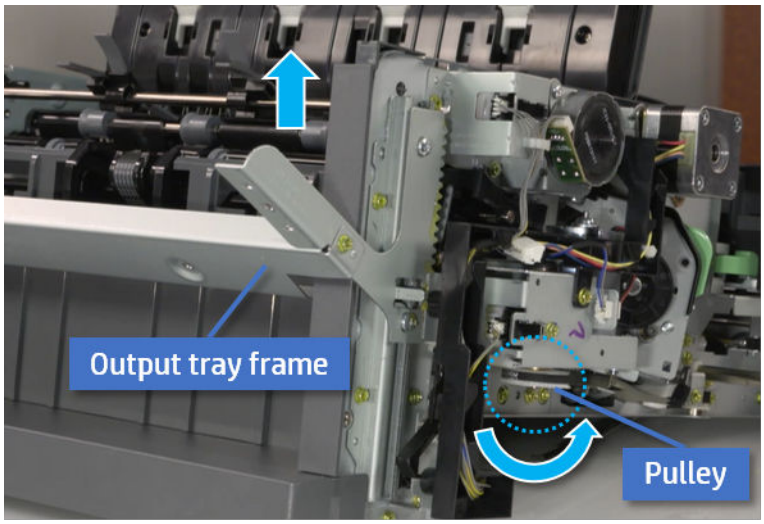


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

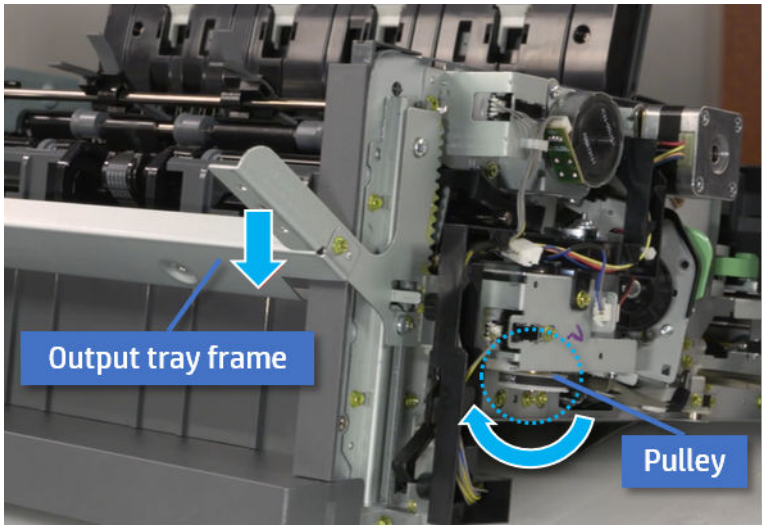
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

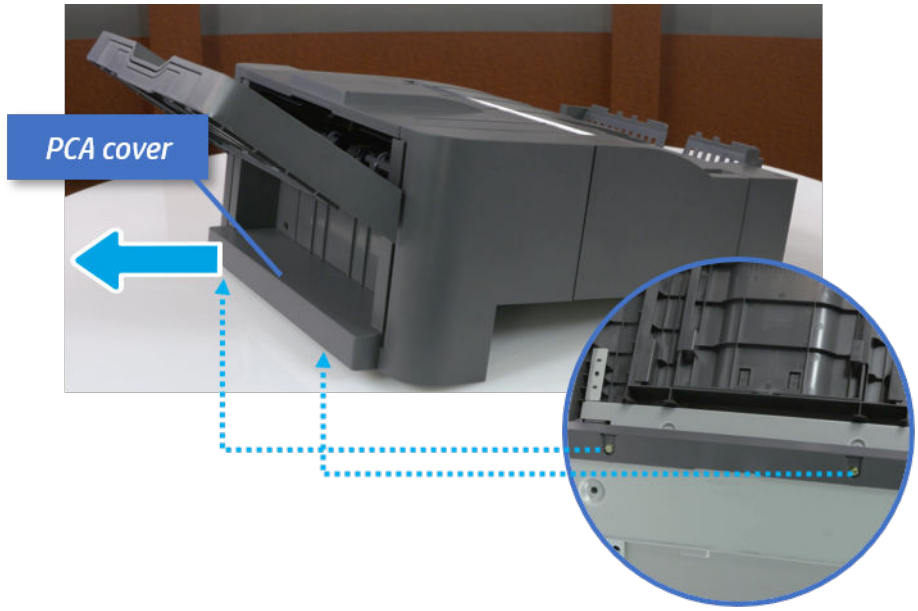


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-438 Remove the PCA cover

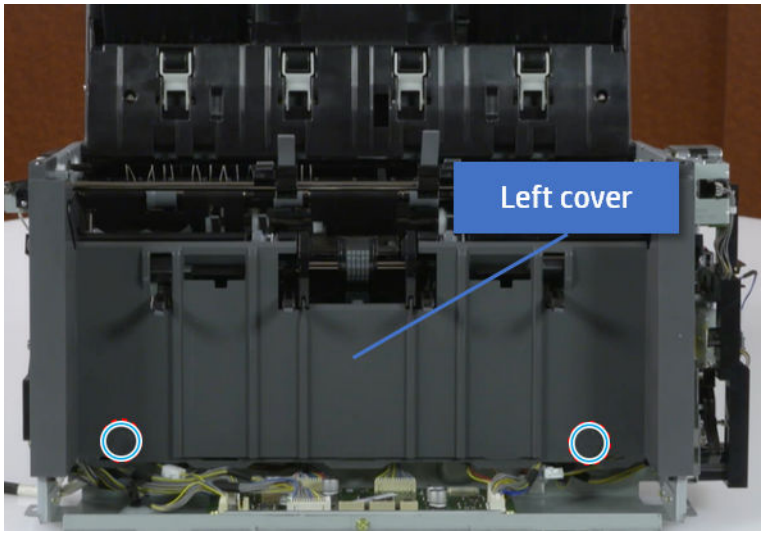


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

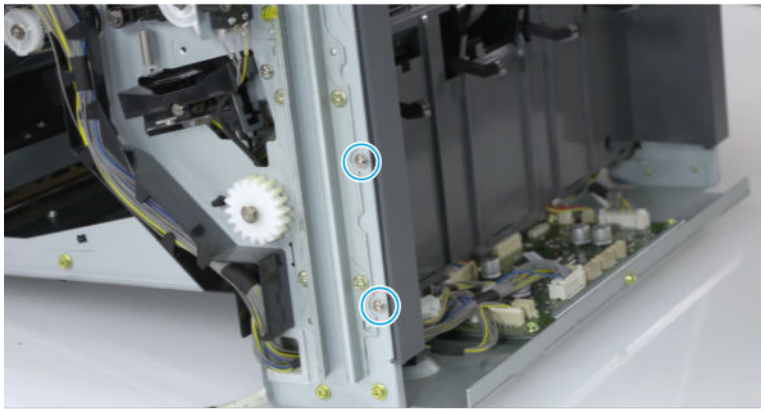
1. Remove two screws.

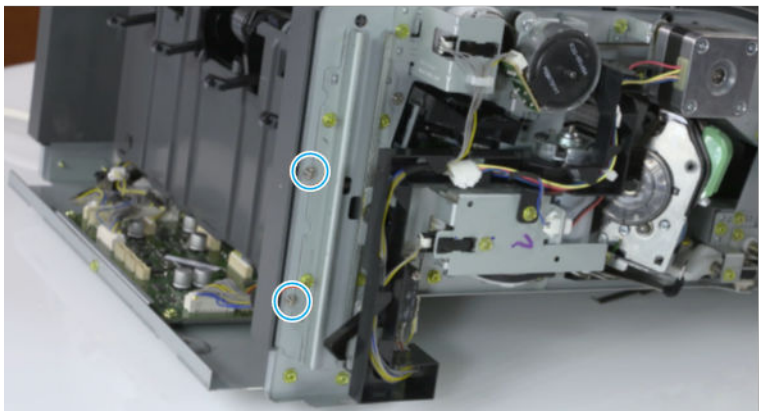
Figure 6-439 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

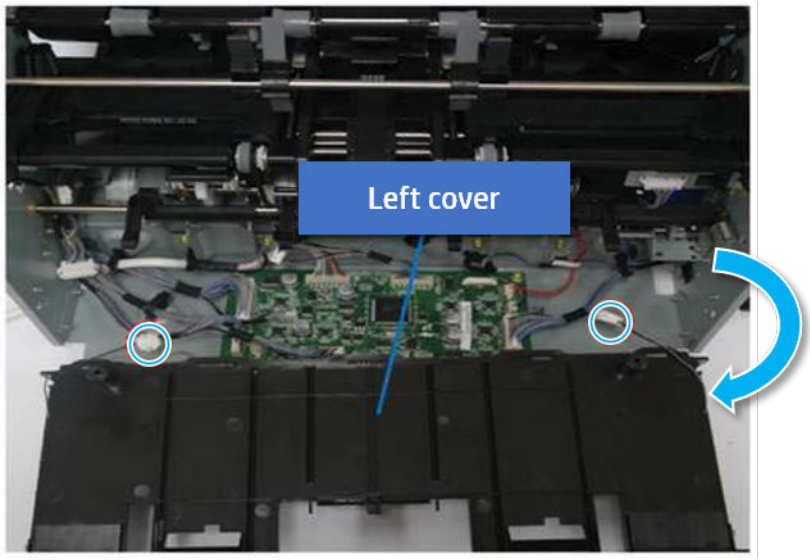
Figure 6-440 Remove four screws



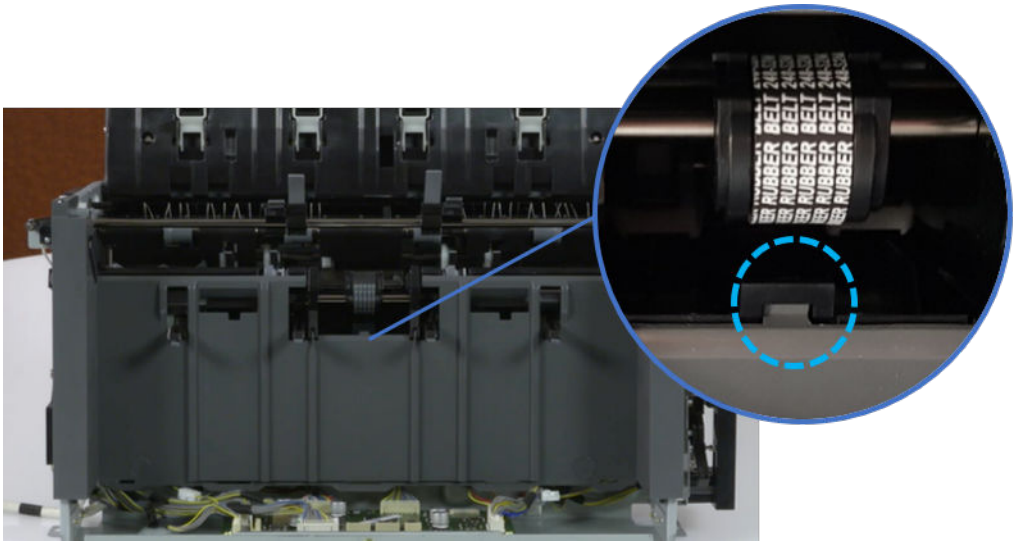


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-441 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



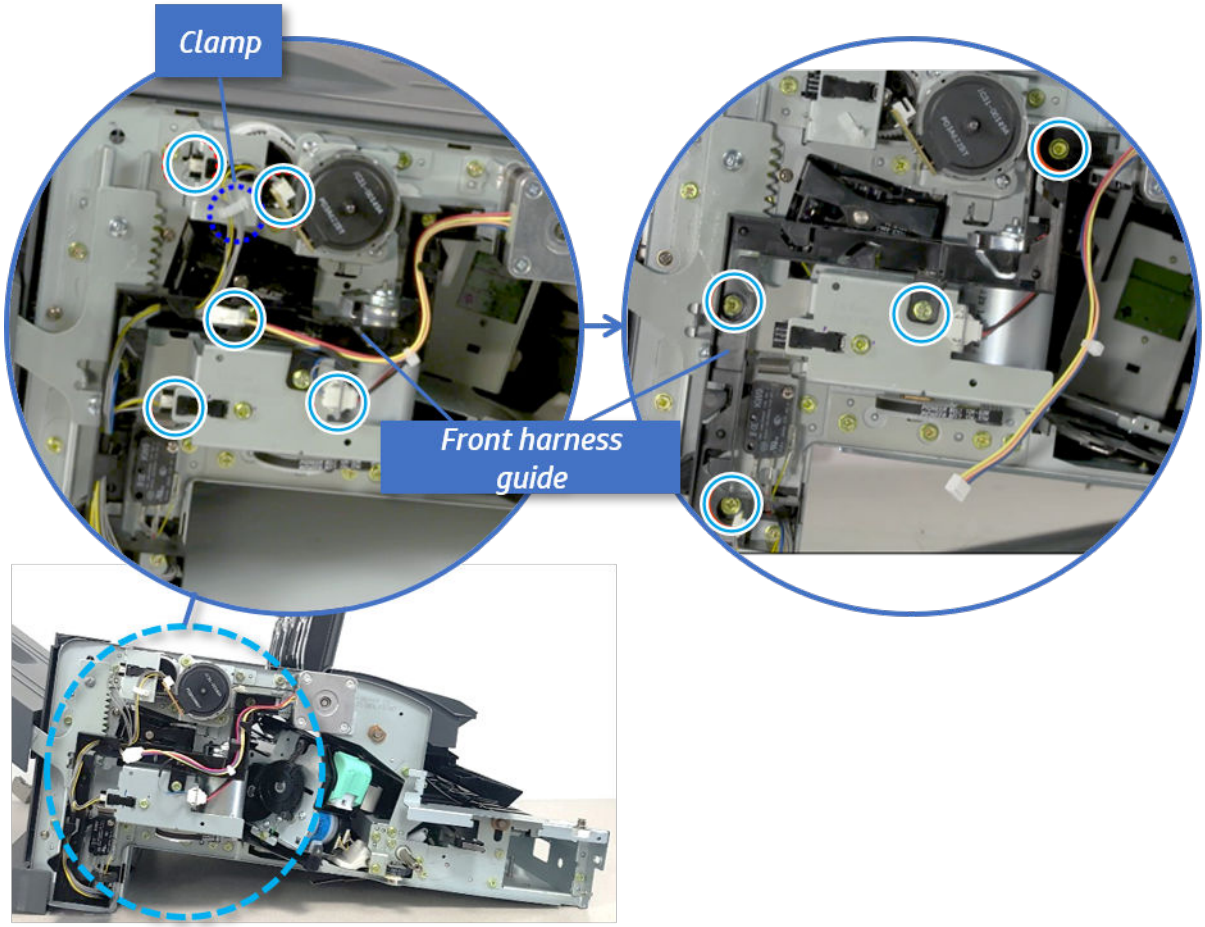
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-442 Remove the front harness guide

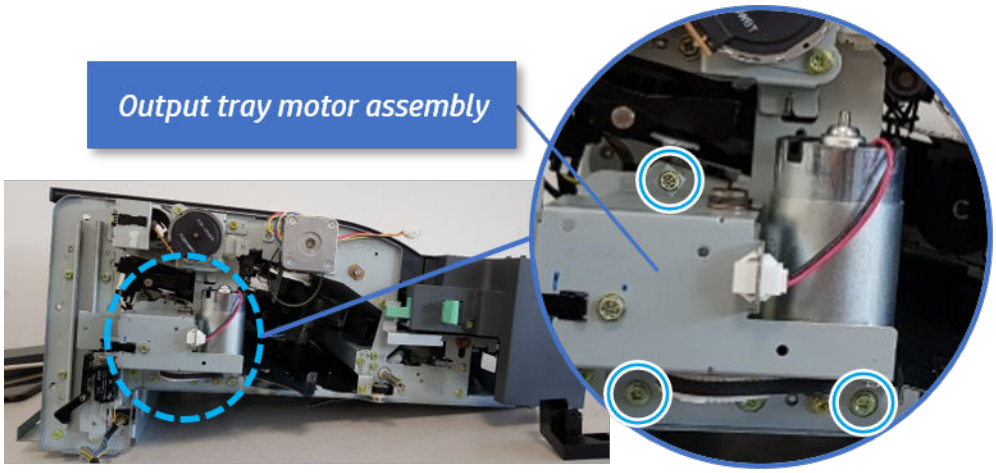


Remove the output tray motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor assembly.

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-443 Remove the output tray motor assembly

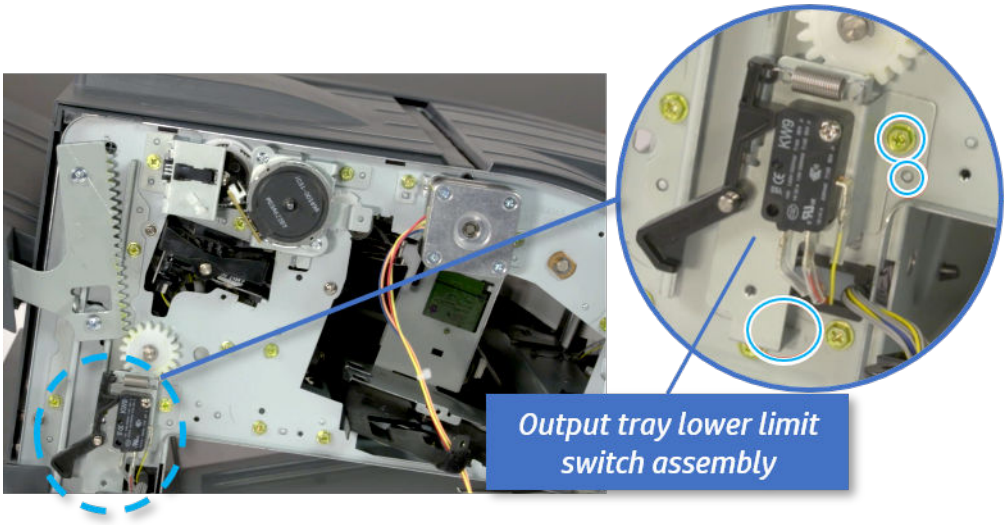


Remove the output tray lower limit switch

Follow these steps to remove the output tray lower limit switch.

- ▲ Remove one screw, and then remove the output tray lower limit switch.

Figure 6-444 Remove the output tray lower limit switch

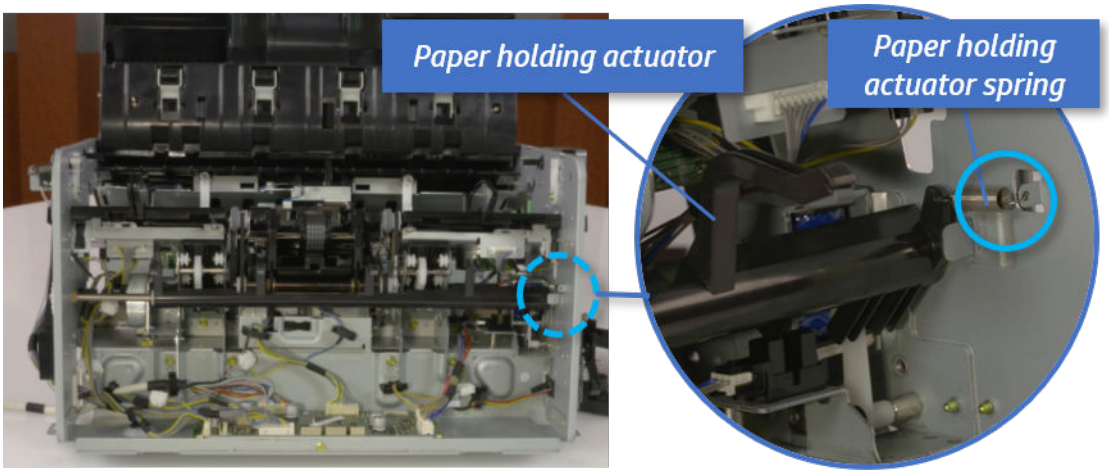


Remove the paper holding

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding.

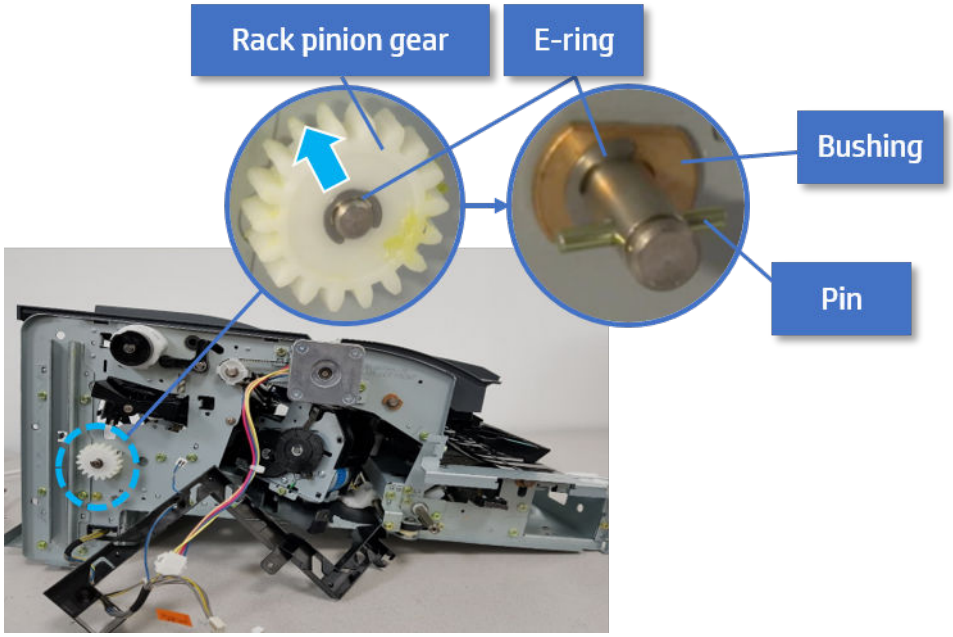
1. Remove the paper holding actuator spring.

Figure 6-445 Remove the paper holding actuator spring



2. Remove the e-ring and the rack pinion gear. And then remove the pin and the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

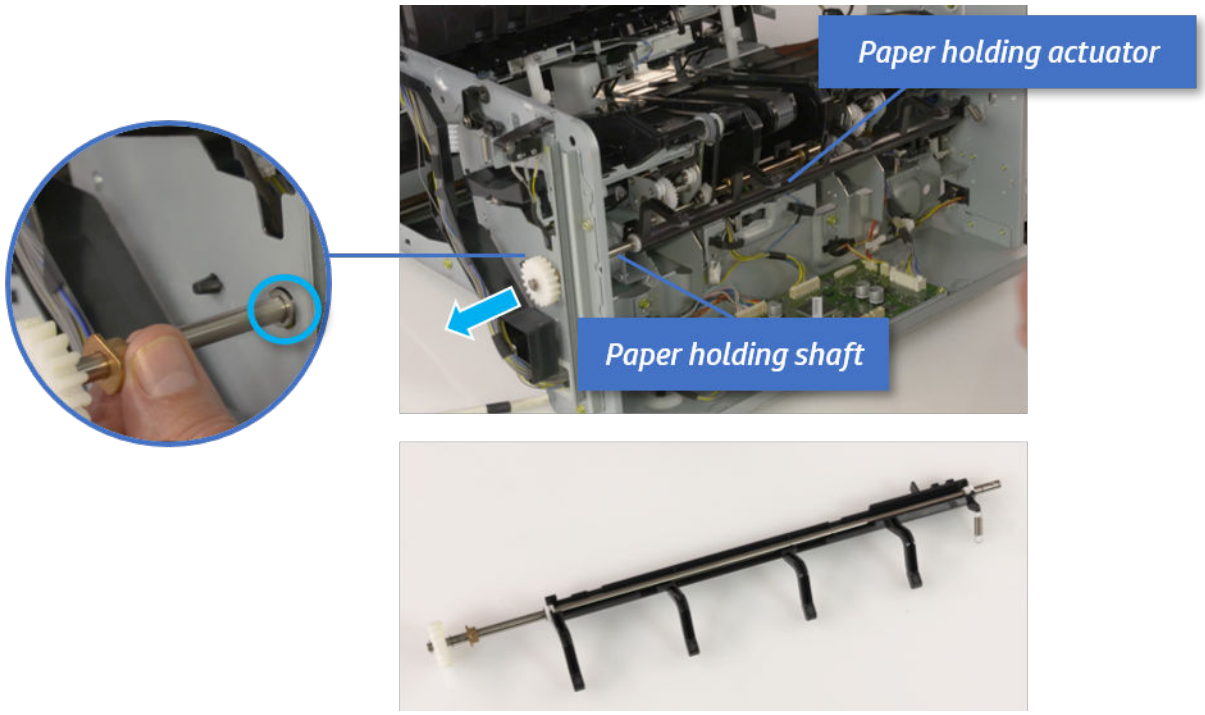
Figure 6-446 Remove e-ring, rack pinion gear, pin, and bushing



NOTE: Be sure not to lose the pin.

3. Carefully remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator.

Figure 6-447 Remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator

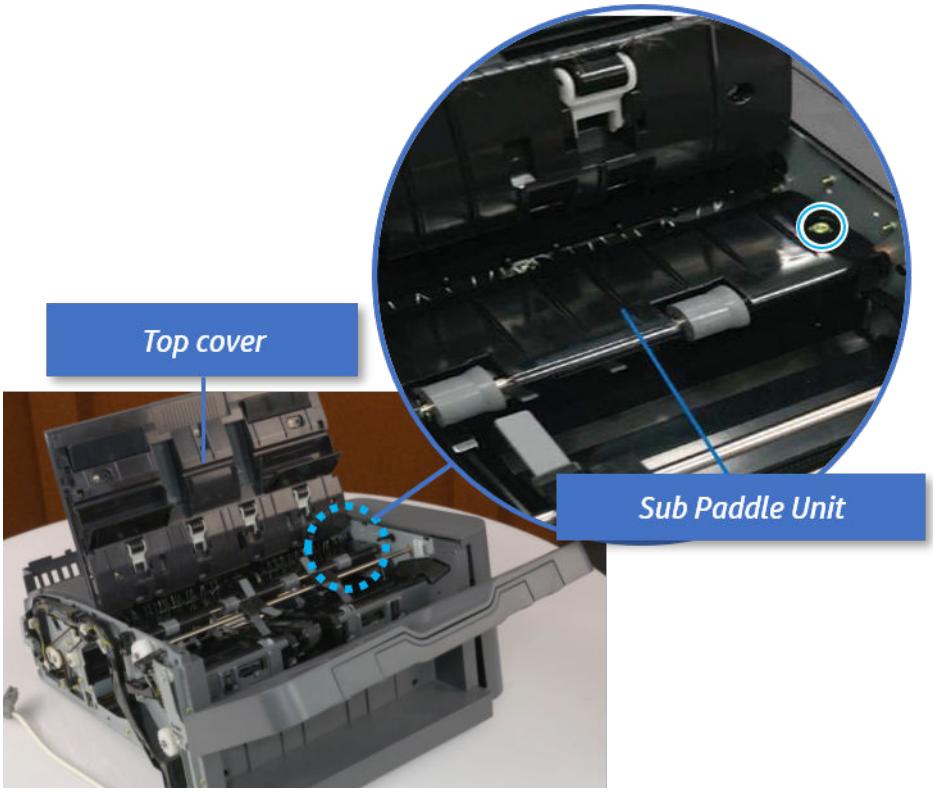


Remove the sub paddle unit

Follow these steps to remove the sub paddle unit.

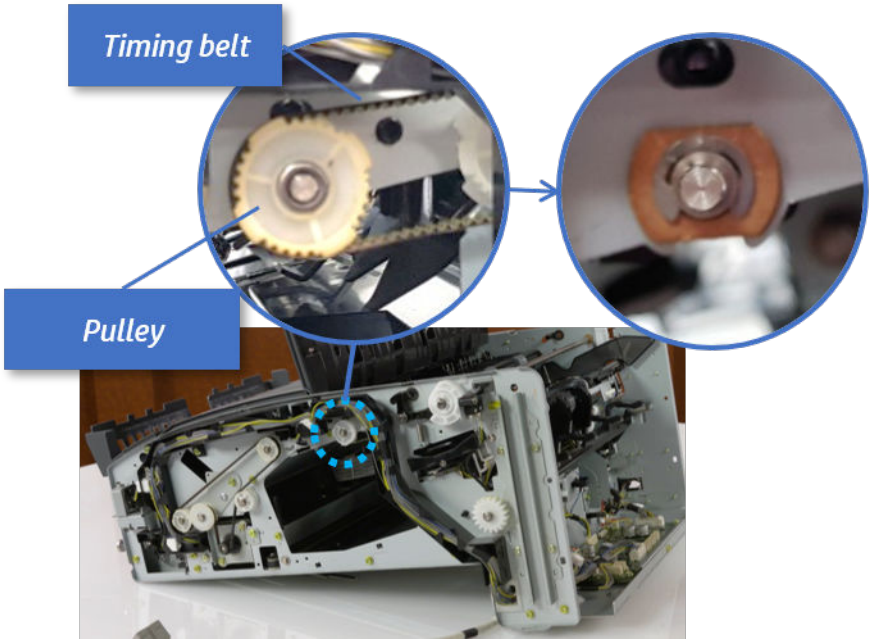
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw securing the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-448 Remove one screw



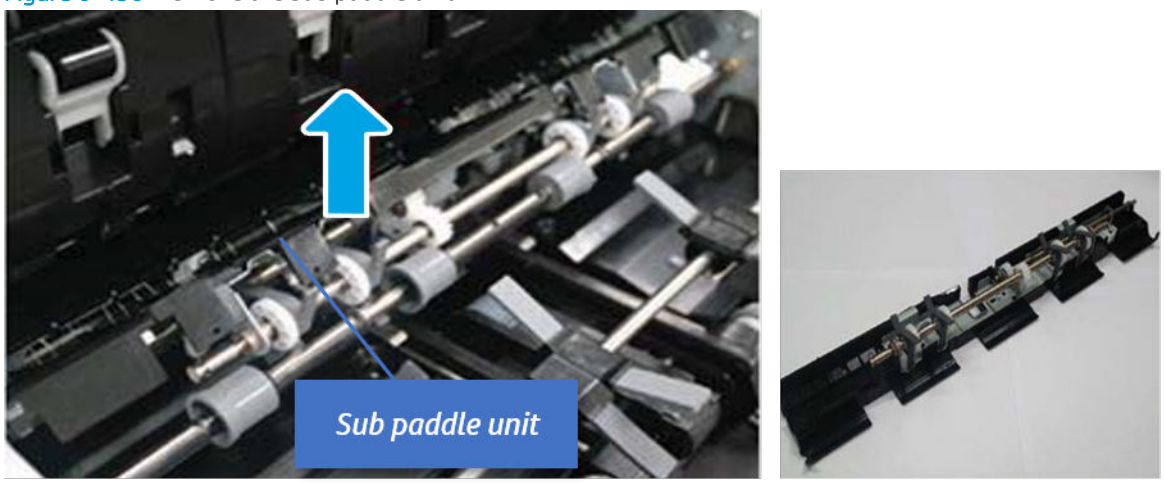
2. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt. And then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-449 Remove the e-ring, pulley, timing belt, and bushing



3. Lift up and remove the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-450 Remove the sub paddle unit

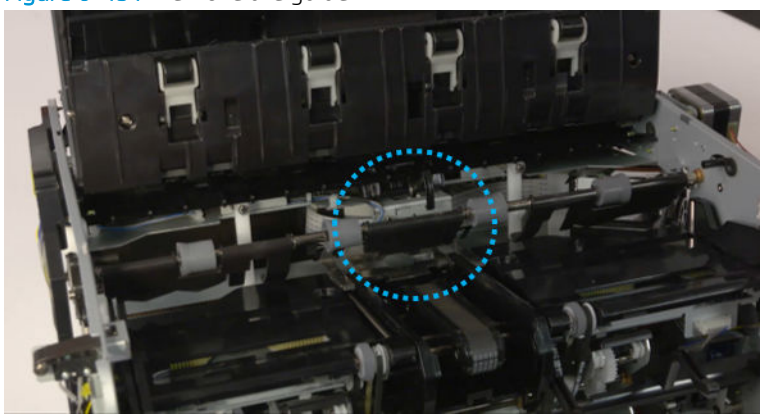


Remove the exit roller

Follow these steps to remove the exit roller.

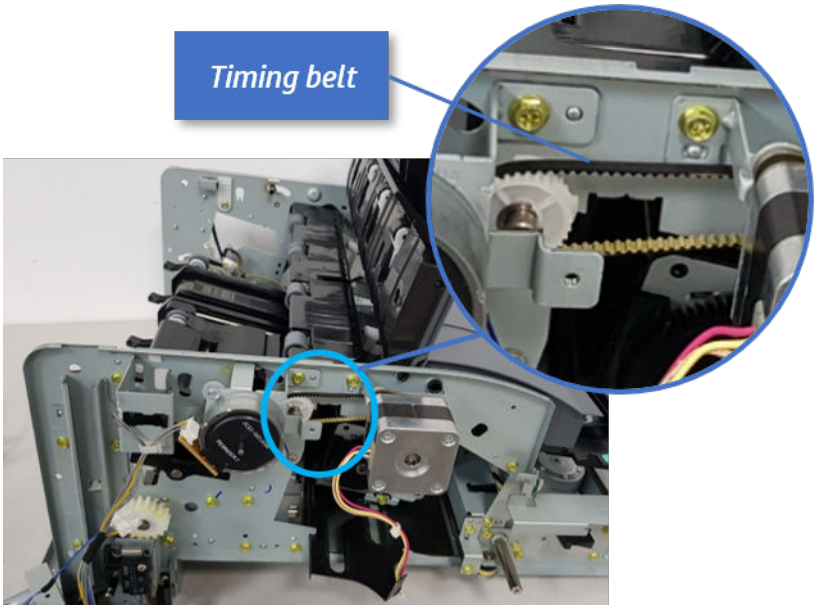
1. Remove the guide on the center of the exit roller.

Figure 6-451 Remove the guide



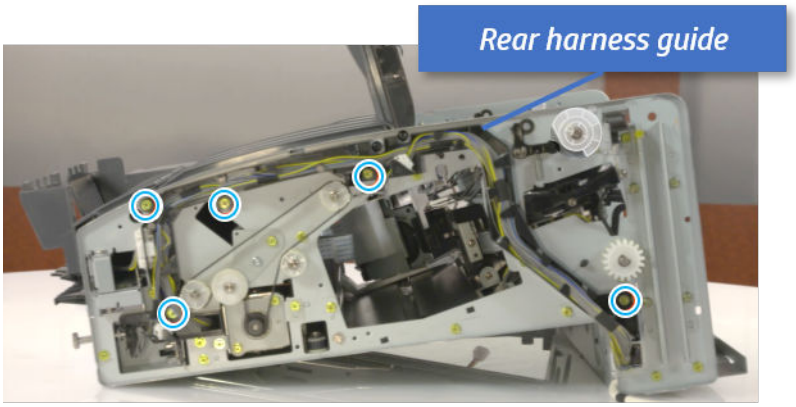
2. On the front of the inner finisher, release the timing belt connected to the exit motor.

Figure 6-452 Release the timing belt



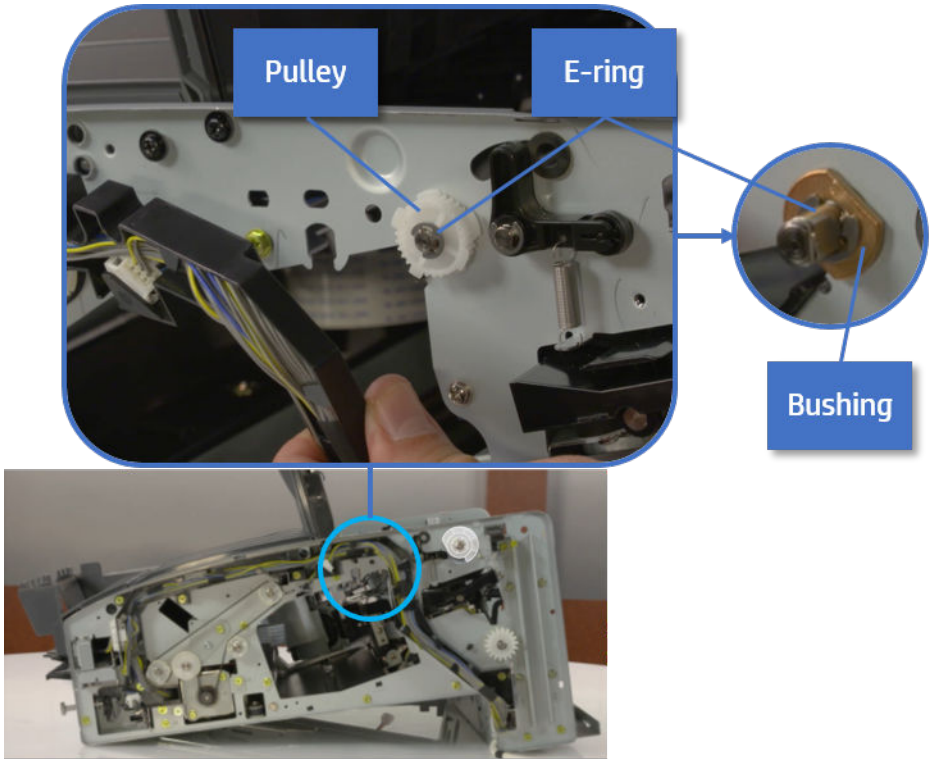
3. Remove five screws securing the rear harness guide.

Figure 6-453 Remove five screws



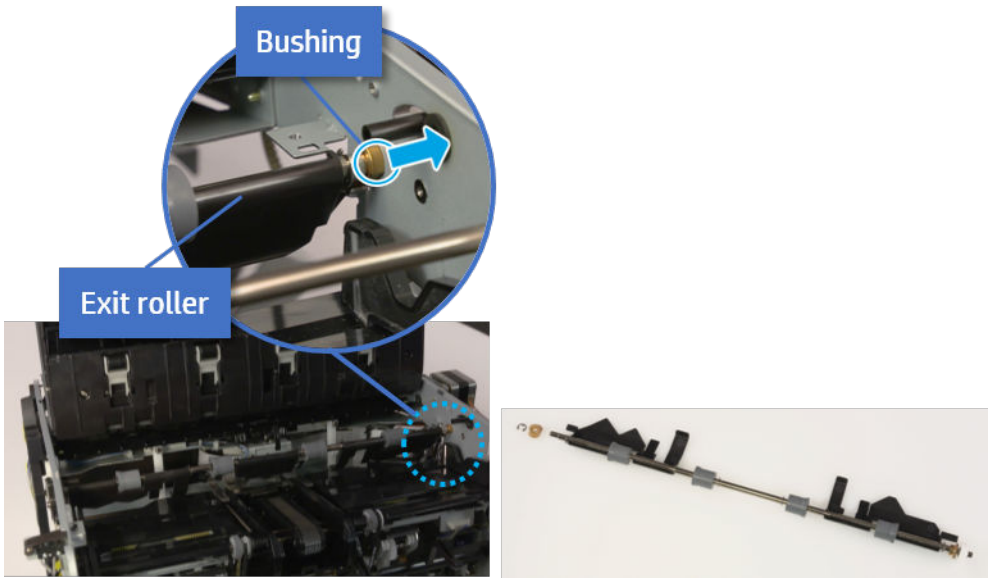
4. On the rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and the pulley and then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-454 Remove e-ring, pulley, and bushing



5. Push the bushing to detach it, and then remove the exit roller.

Figure 6-455 Remove the exit roller



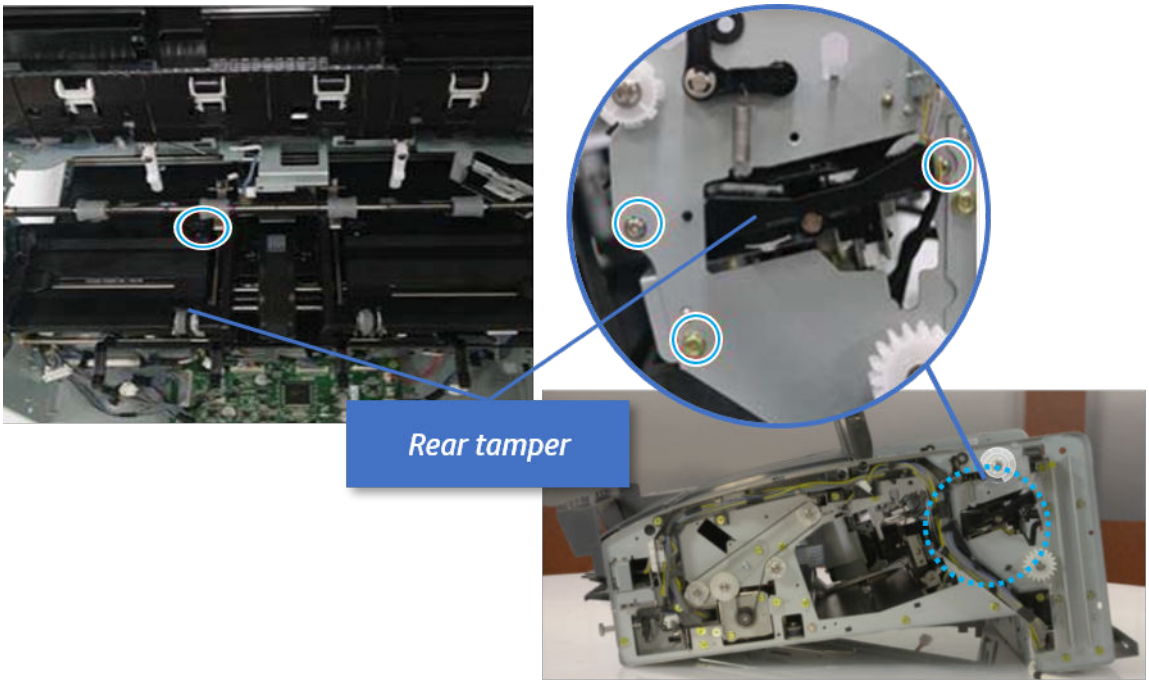
Remove the rear tamper

Follow these steps to remove the rear tamper.

1. Remove four screws.

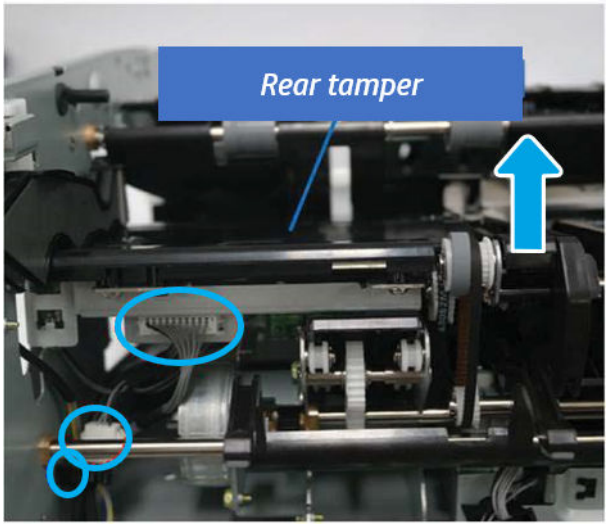
NOTE: Move cable guideout of position to access the screws.

Figure 6-456 Remove four screws



2. Unplug two connectors and release the hook, and then remove the rear tamper.

Figure 6-457 Remove the rear tamper

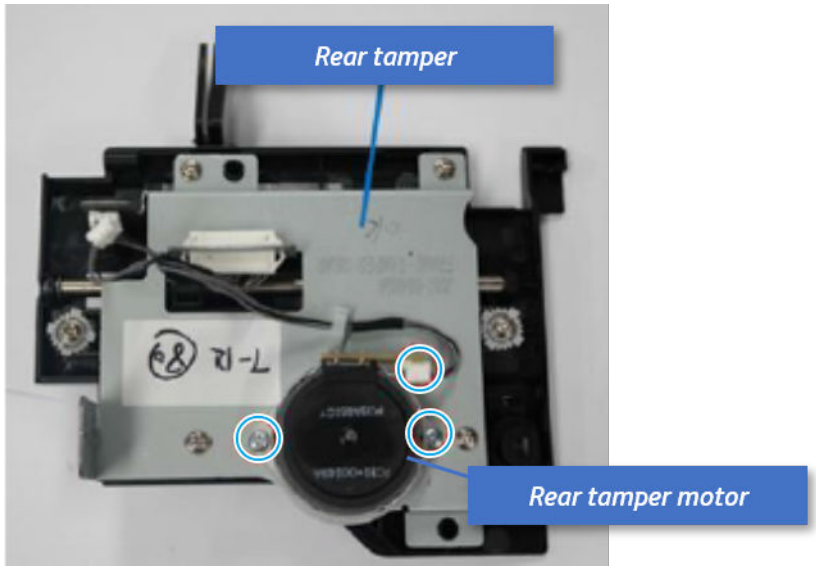


Remove the rear tamper motor

Follow these steps to remove the rear tamper motor.

- ▲ Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor.

Figure 6-458 Remove the rear tamper motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Stapler unit

Removal and replacement: Stapler

Learn how to remove and replace the stapler.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-57 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01342A	Stapler assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

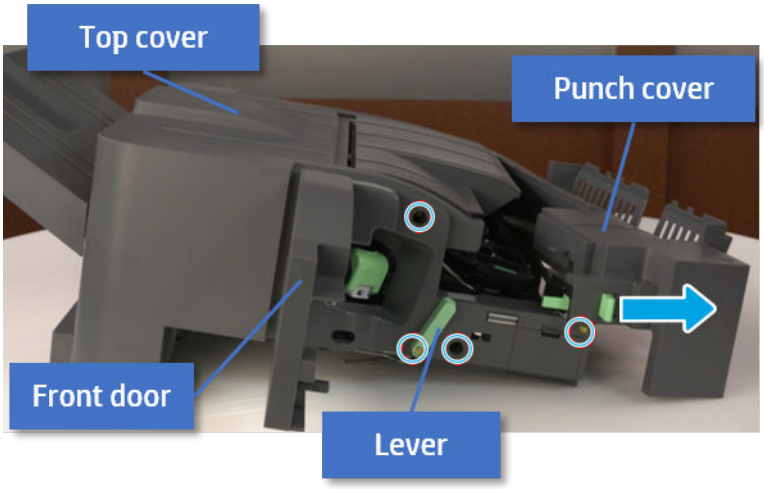
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-459 Remove the front cover

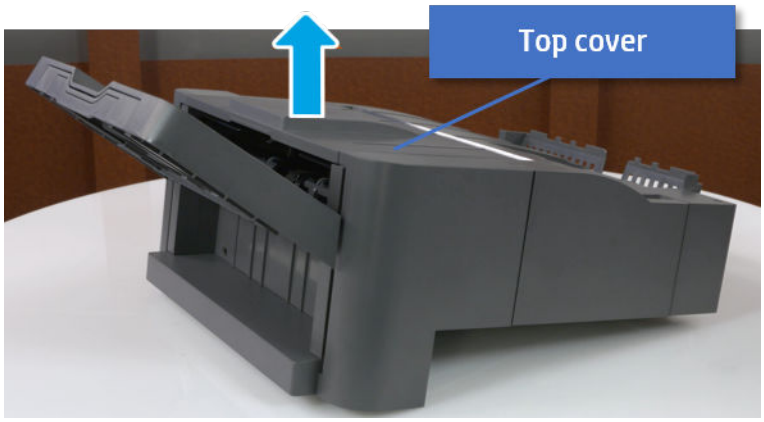


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

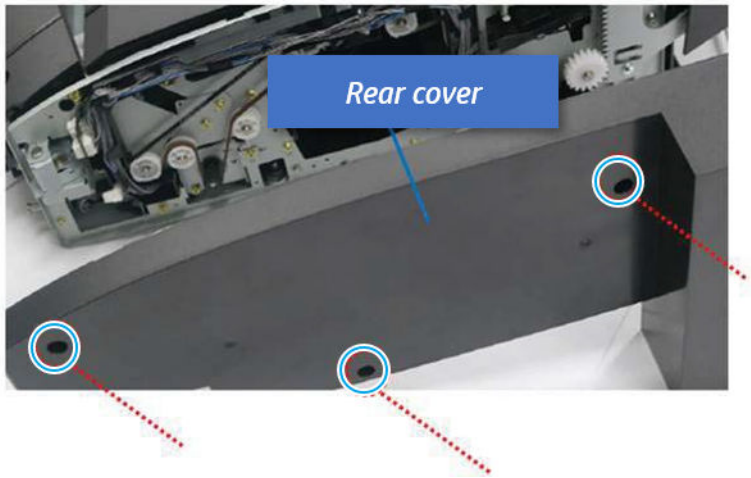
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-460 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-461 Remove the rear cover

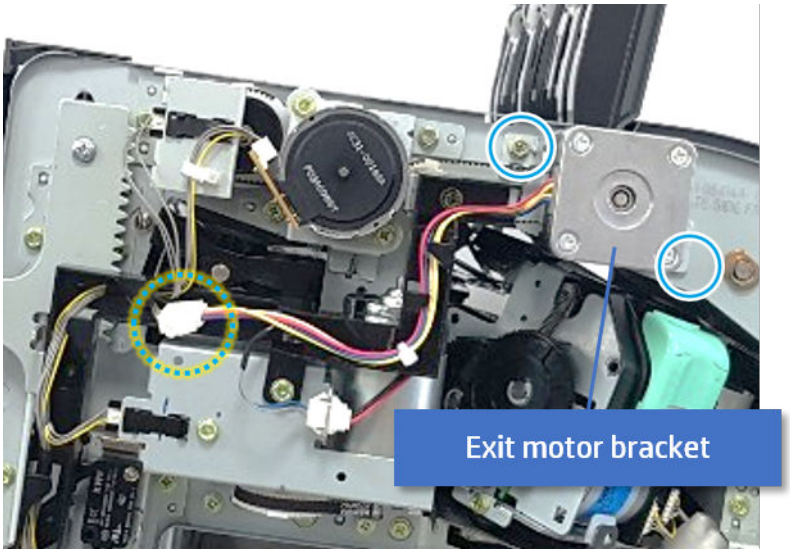


Remove the exit motor bracket

Follow these steps to remove the exit motor bracket.

- Remove two screws, unplug the motor connector. And then remove exit motor bracket.

Figure 6-462 Remove the exit motor bracket

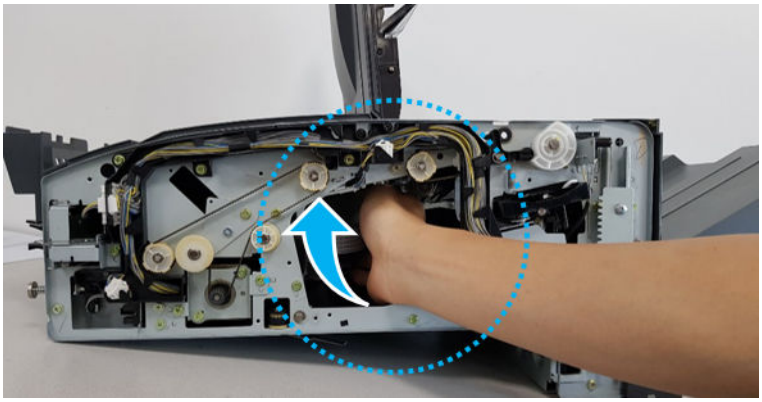


Remove the stapler

Follow these steps to remove the stapler.

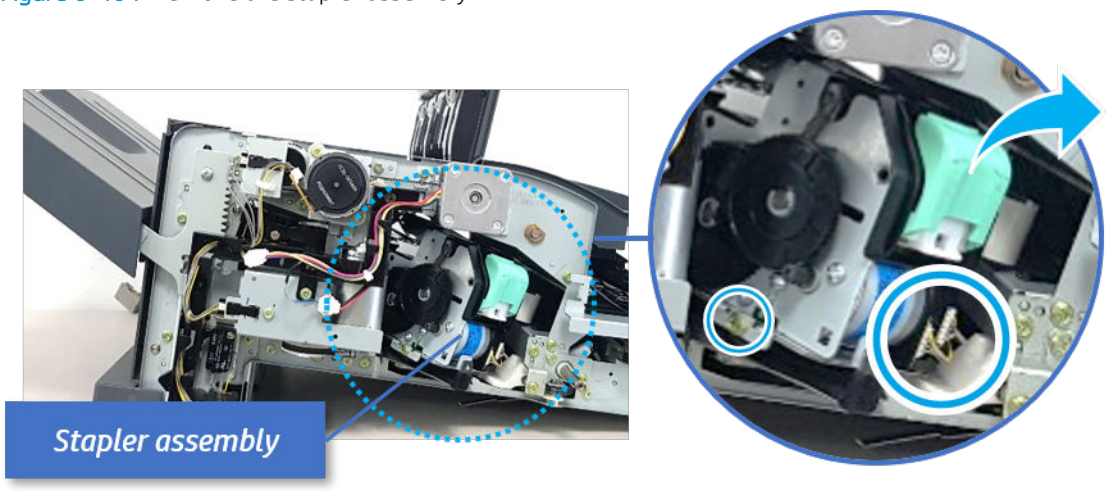
1. Push the stapler from the rear-side to the front-side.

Figure 6-463 Push the stapler



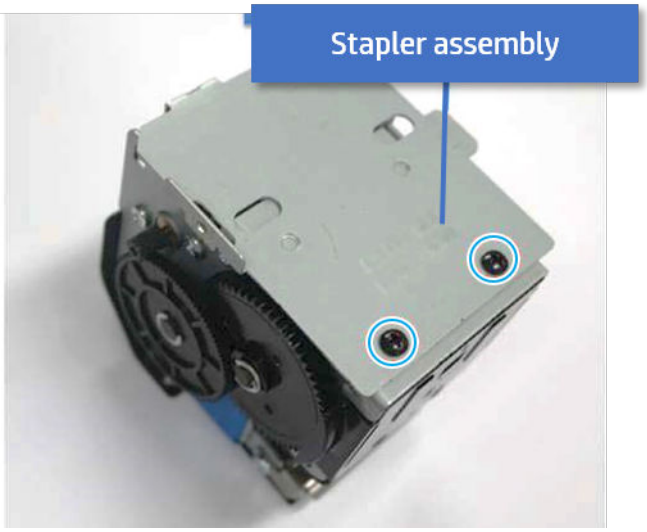
2. Remove one screw, unplug two connectors, and then remove the stapler assembly.

Figure 6-464 Remove the stapler assembly



3. Remove two screws, and then remove the stapler.

Figure 6-465 Remove the stapler



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler position sensor (S2)

Learn how to remove and replace the stapler position sensor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-58 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Stapler position sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

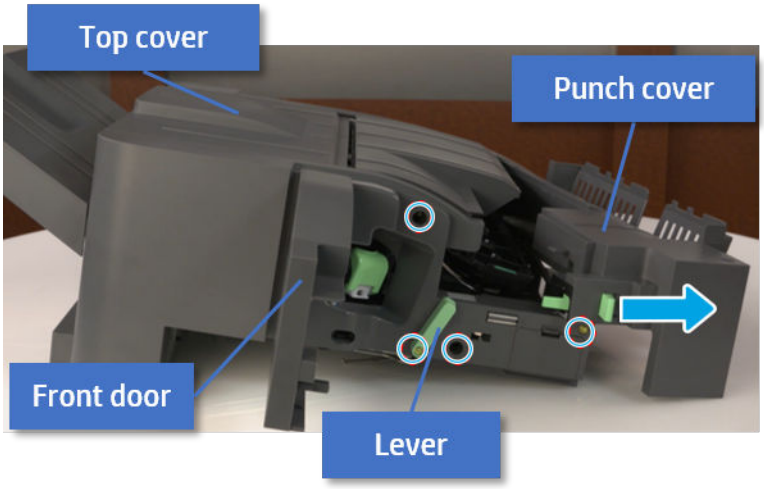
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-466 Remove the front cover

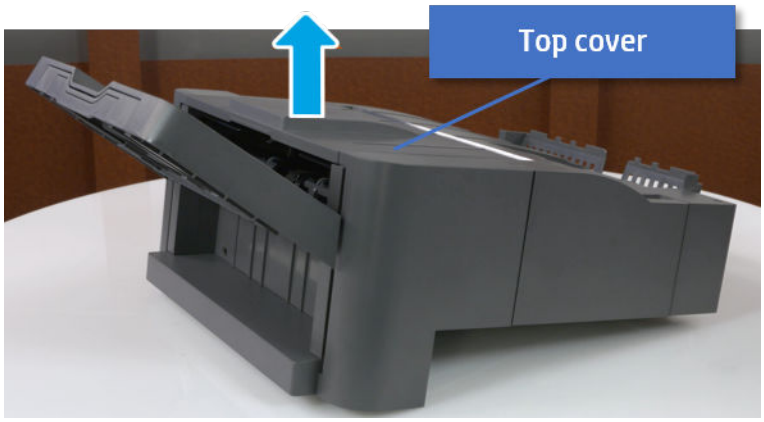


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

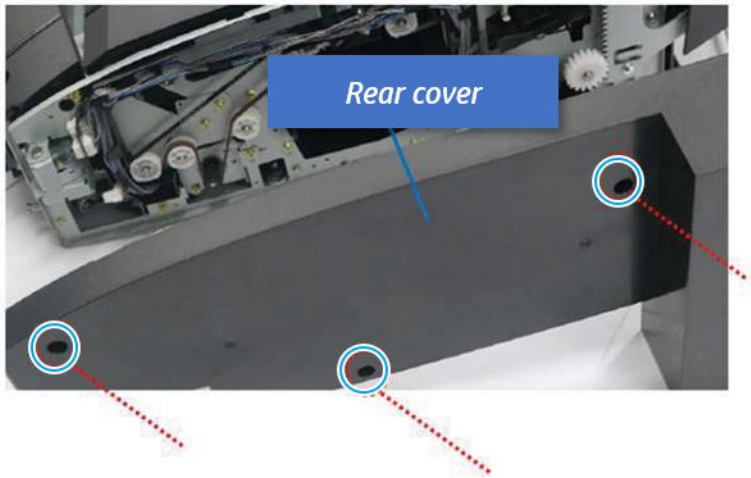
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-467 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-468 Remove the rear cover

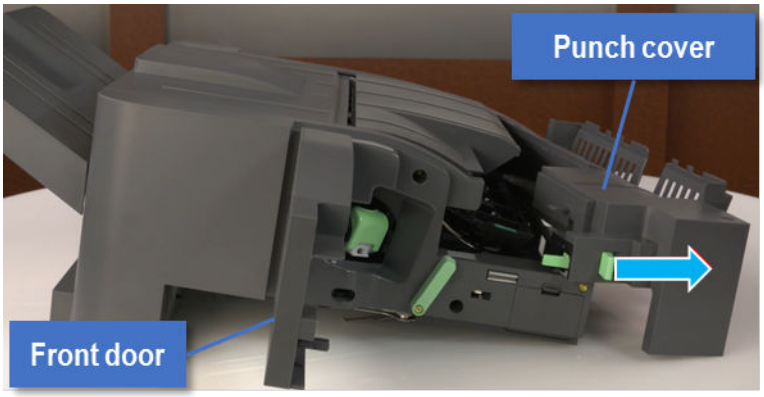


Remove the middle cover

Follow these steps to remove the middle cover.

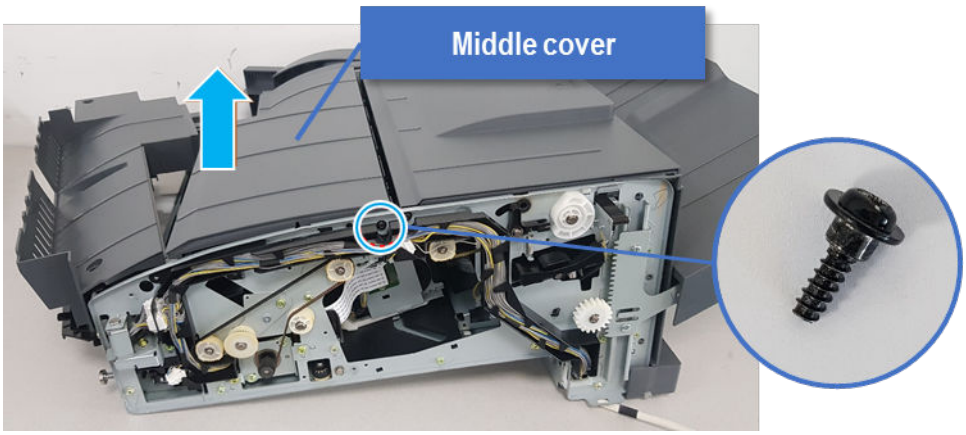
1. Open the front door and then open the punch cover.

Figure 6-469 Open the front door and puch cover.



2. Remove left-side one screw at the rear of the inner finisher, and then remove the middle cover by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

Figure 6-470 Remove the middle cover

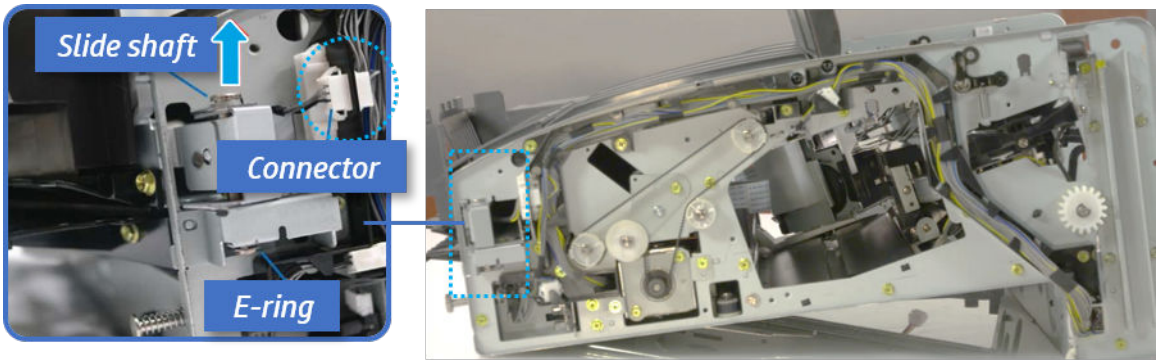


Remove the punch cover

Follow these steps to remove the punch cover.

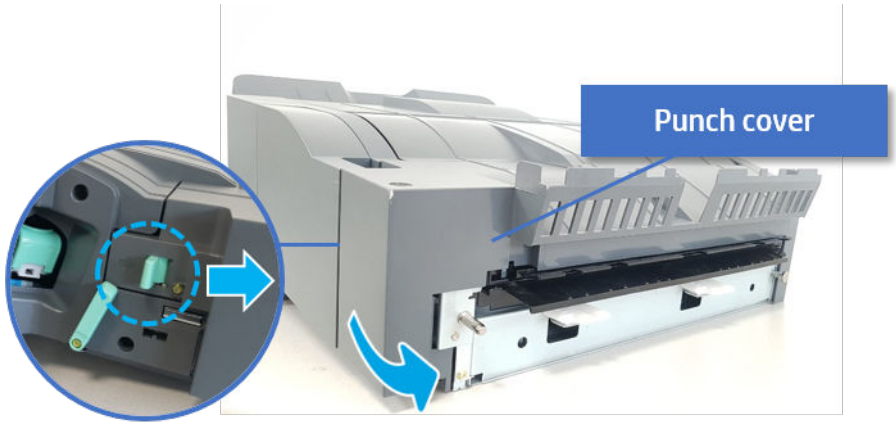
1. Unplug the connector. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the slide shaft at the rear of the inner finisher.

Figure 6-471 Remove the slide shaft



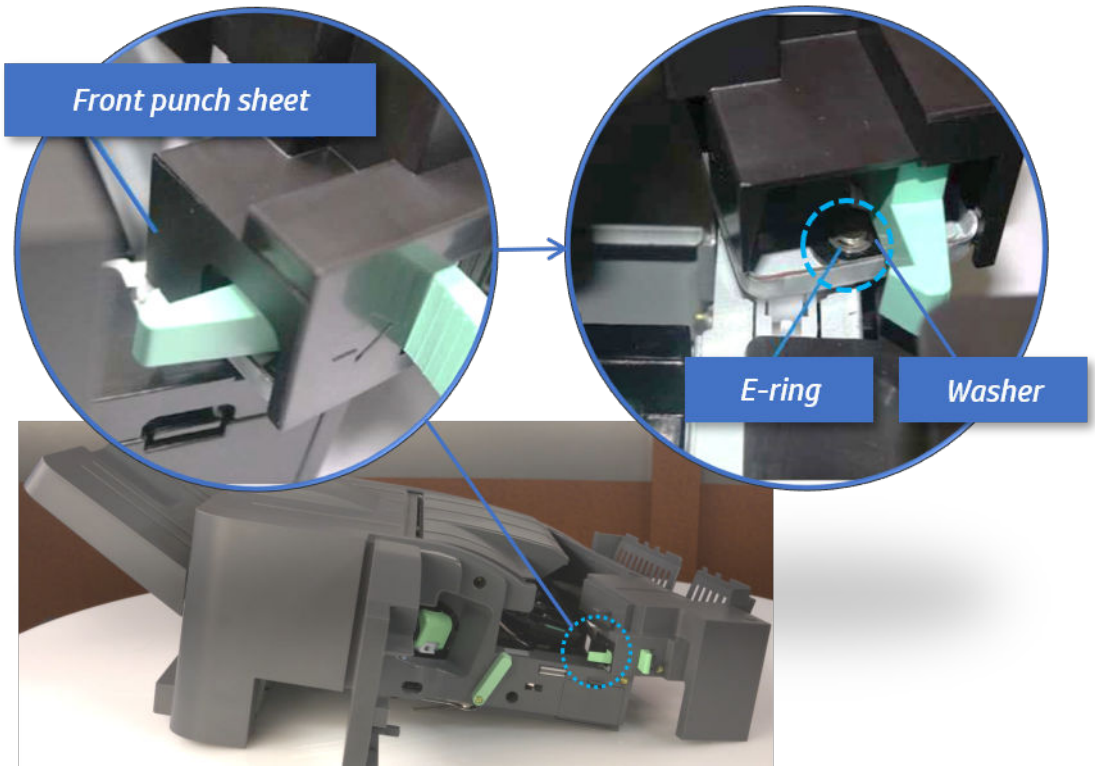
2. Open the punch cover.

Figure 6-472 Open the punch cover



3. Remove the front punch sheet, and then remove the e-ring and the washer. And then remove the punch cover.

Figure 6-473 Remove the punch cover

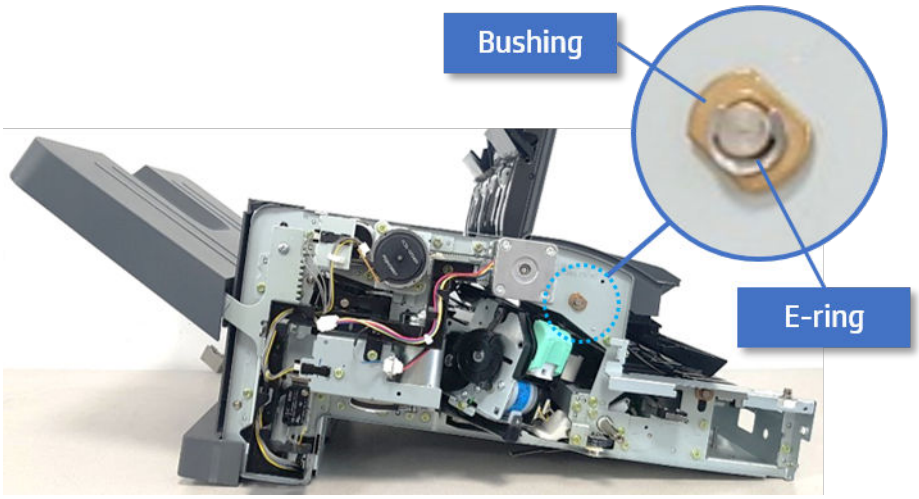


Remove the diverter guide and the middle roller

Follow these steps to remove the diverter guide and the middle roller.

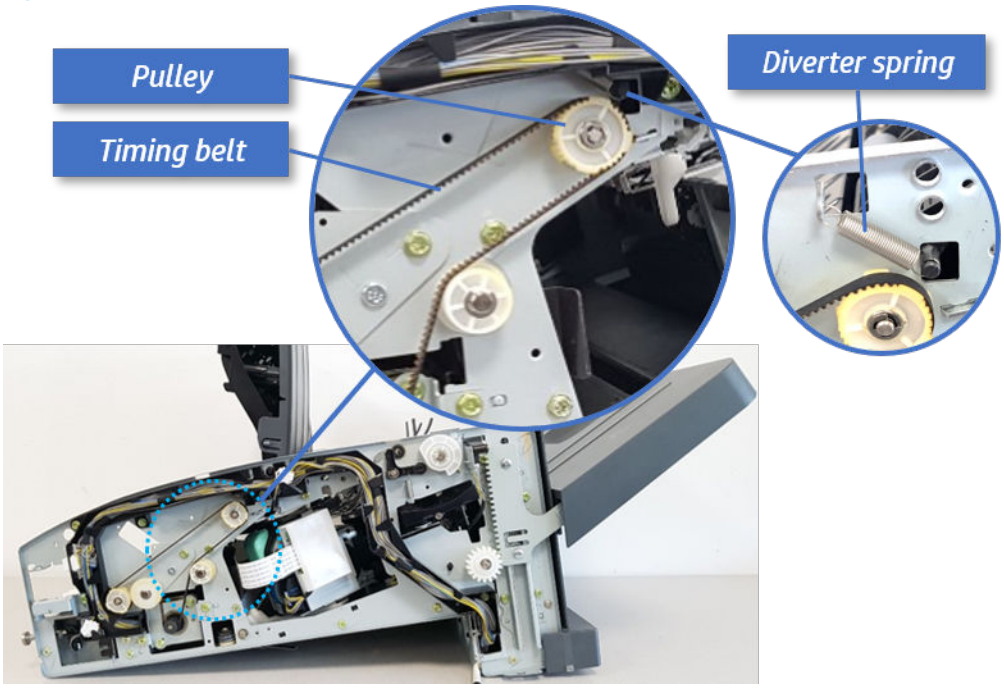
1. On the front of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and bushing.

Figure 6-474 Remove the e-ring and bushing



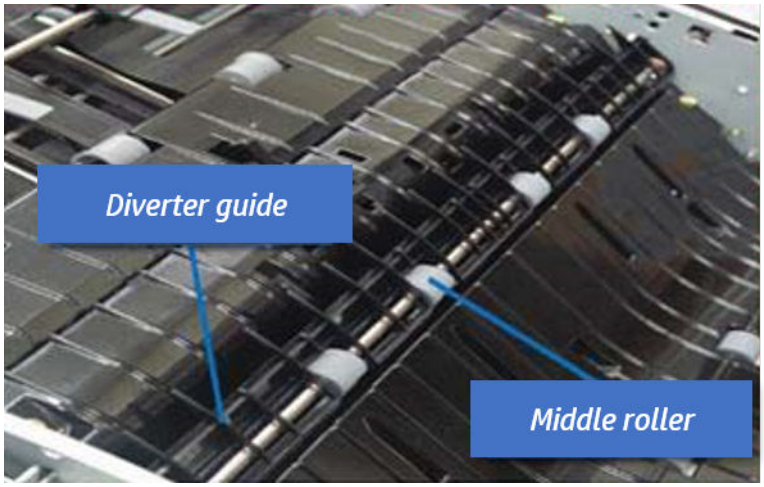
2. Onthe rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, and spring (slightly hiddenfrom view).

Figure 6-475 Remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, and spring



3. Remove the diverter guide and the middler roller.

Figure 6-476 Remove the diverter guide and the middler roller

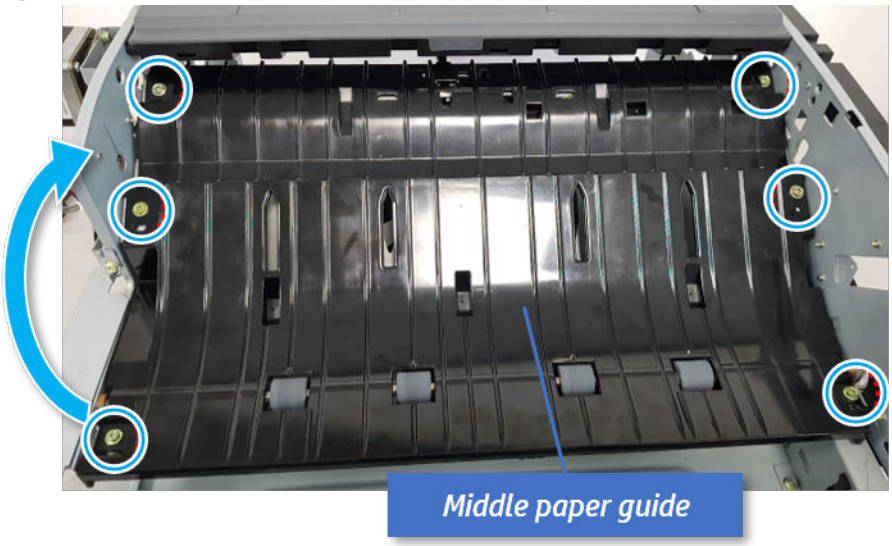


Remove the middle paper guide

Follow these steps to remove the middle paper guide.

1. Remove six screws, and then open the middle paper guide in the direction of the arrow.

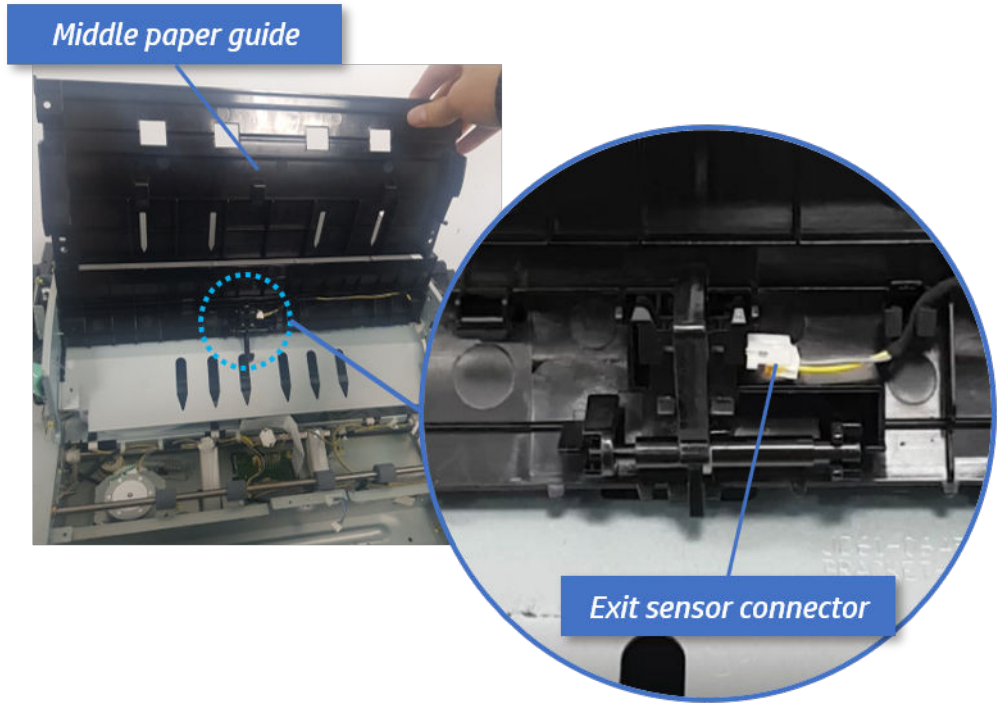
Figure 6-477 Open the middle paper guide



NOTE: Becareful not to damage the sensor connector.

2. Unplug the connector under the middle paper guide. And then, remove the middle paper guide.

Figure 6-478 Remove the middle paper guide

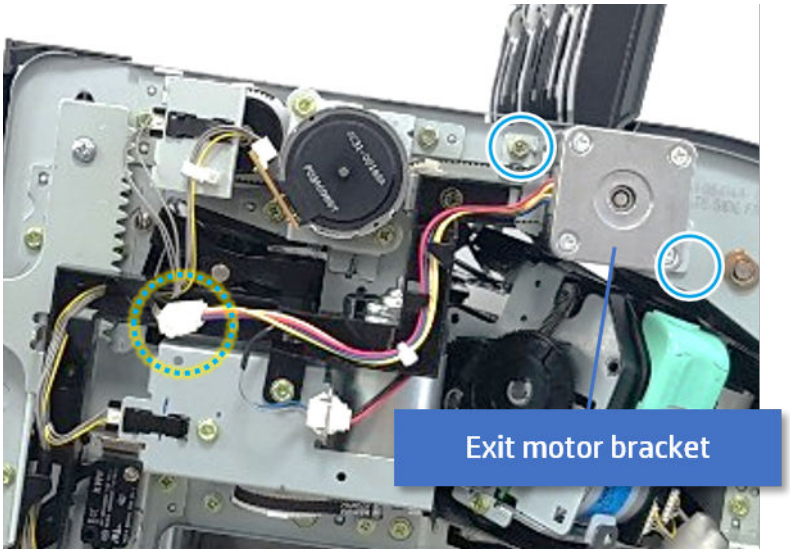


Remove the exit motor bracket

Follow these steps to remove the exit motor bracket.

▲ Remove two screws, unplug the motor connector. And then remove exit motor bracket.

Figure 6-479 Remove the exit motor bracket

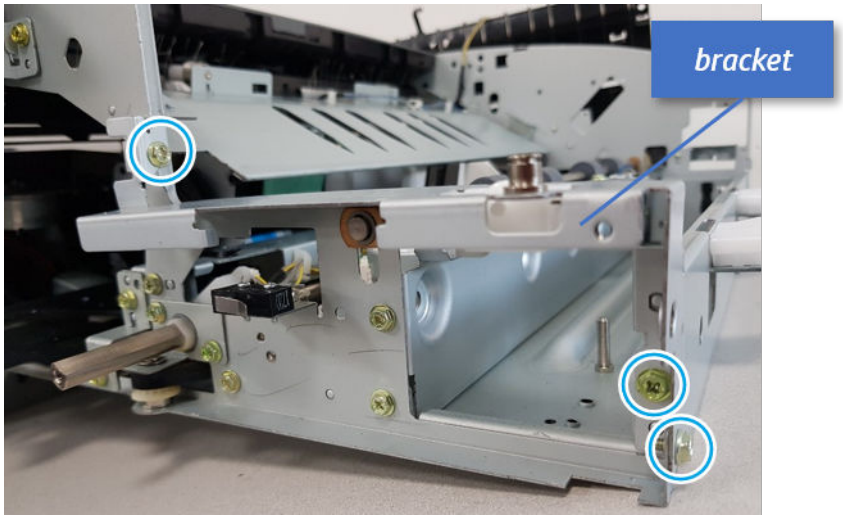


Remove the end fence sensor bracket

Follow these steps to remove the end fence sensor bracket.

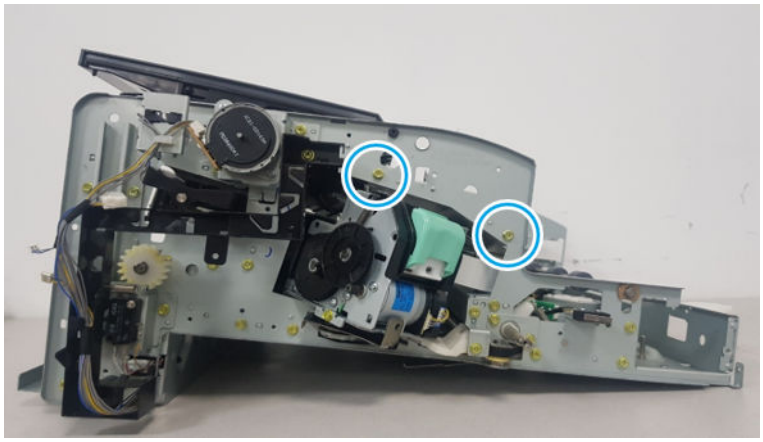
1. Remove three screws at the front of the inner finisher, and then remove the bracket.

Figure 6-480 Remove the bracket



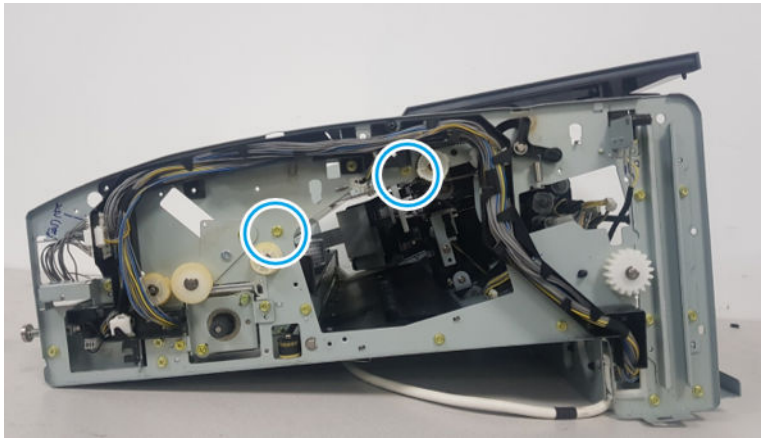
2. Remove two screws at the front of the inner finisher.

Figure 6-481 Remove two screws



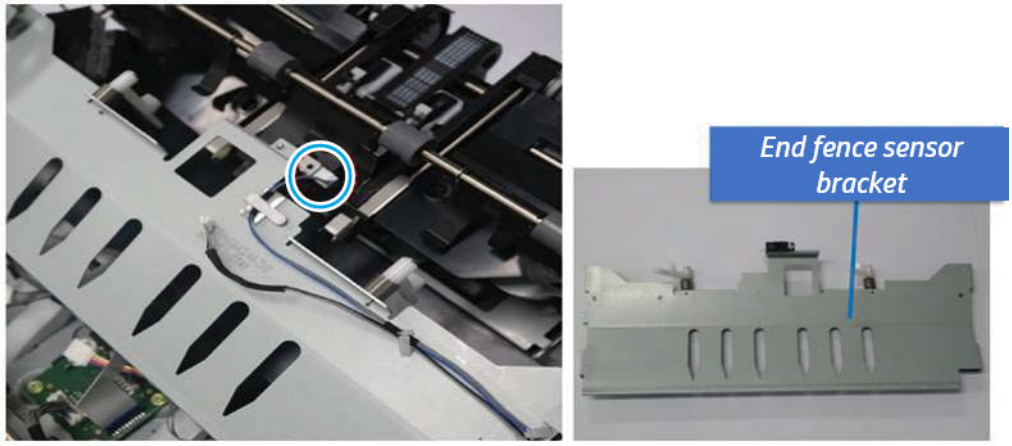
3. Remove two screws at the rear of the inner finisher.

Figure 6-482 Remove two screws



4. Loosen three cable clamps. Unplug the connector at the sensor, and then remove the end fence sensor bracket.

Figure 6-483 Remove the end fence sensor bracket

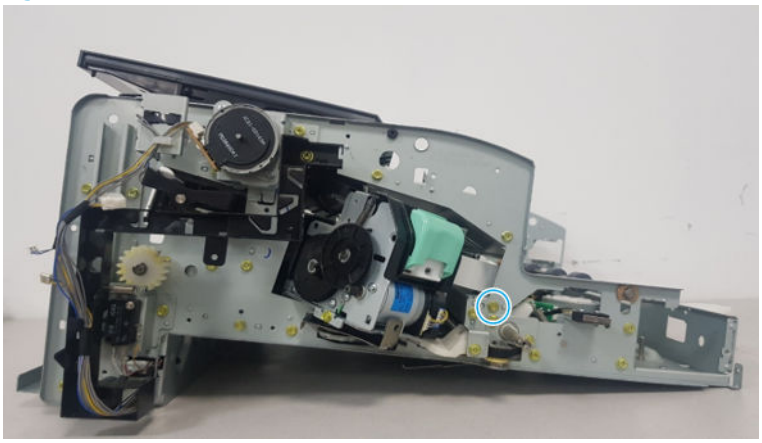


Remove the stapler position sensor

Follow these steps to remove the stapler position sensor.

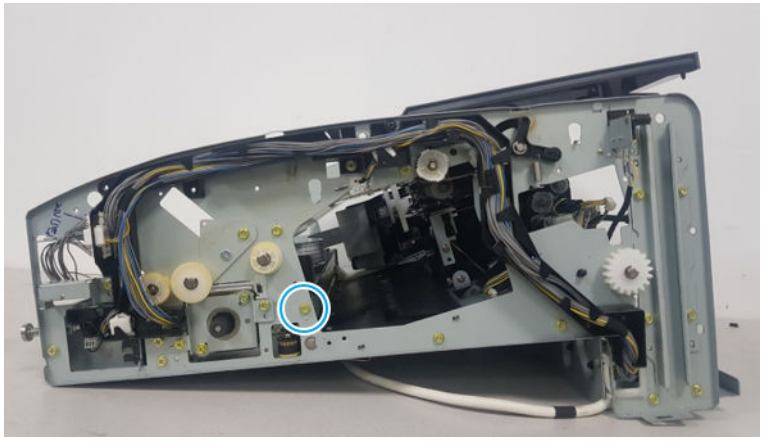
1. Remove one screw from the front of the inner finisher.

Figure 6-484 Remove one screw



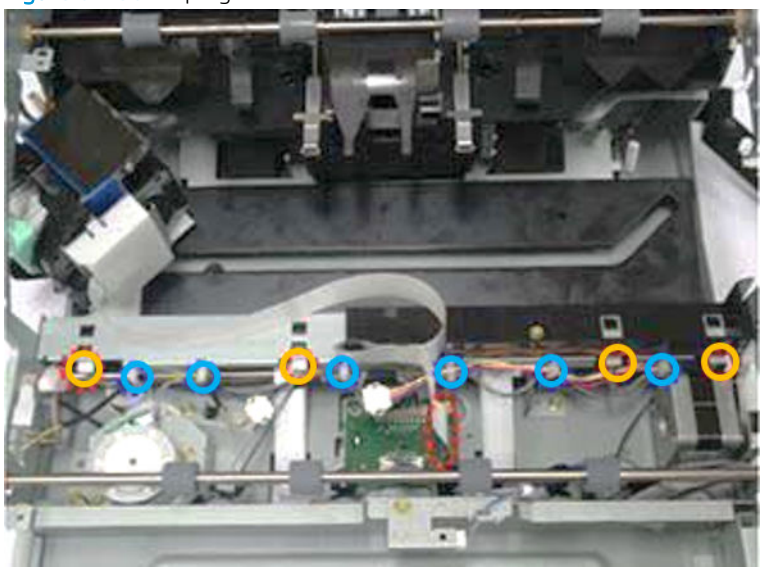
2. Remove one screw from the rear of the inner finisher.

Figure 6-485 Remove one screw



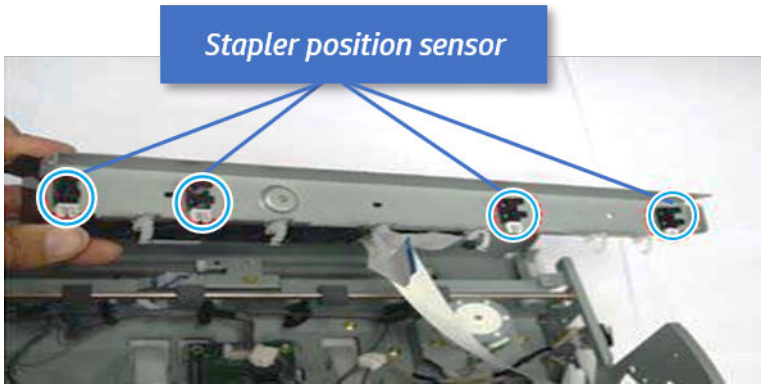
3. Unplug four photo-sensor connectors. Open the six cable clamps.

Figure 6-486 Unplug connectors



4. Remove the assembly, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 6-487 Remove the stapler position sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler position motor (M1)

Learn how to remove and replace the stapler position motor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-59 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00999A	Stapler position motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

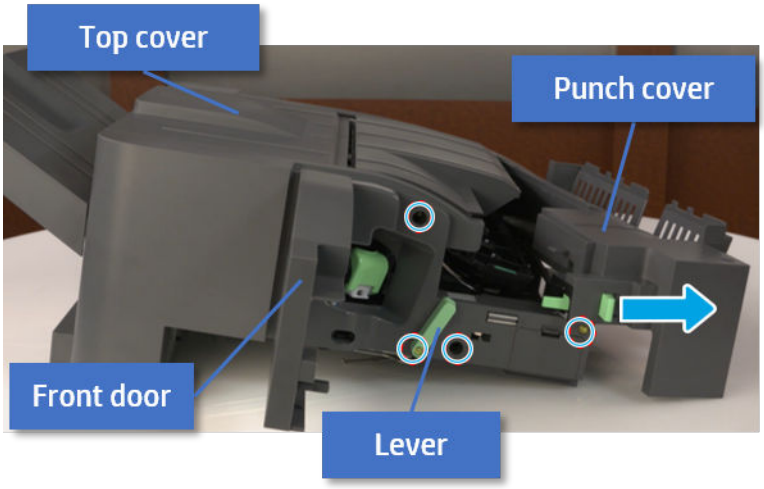
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-488 Remove the front cover

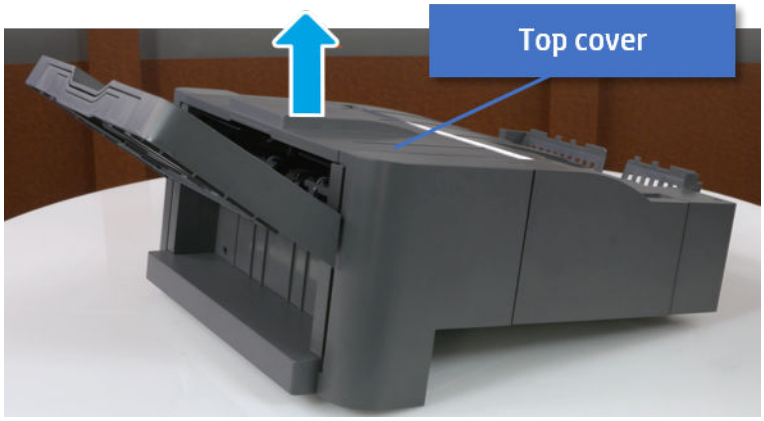


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

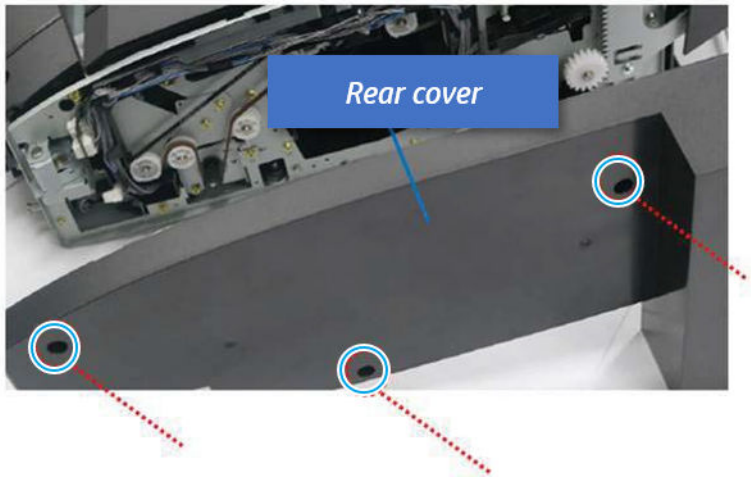
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-489 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-490 Remove the rear cover

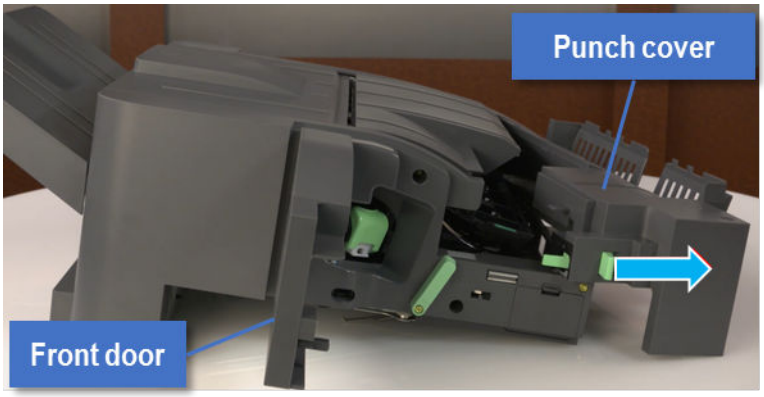


Remove the middle cover

Follow these steps to remove the middle cover.

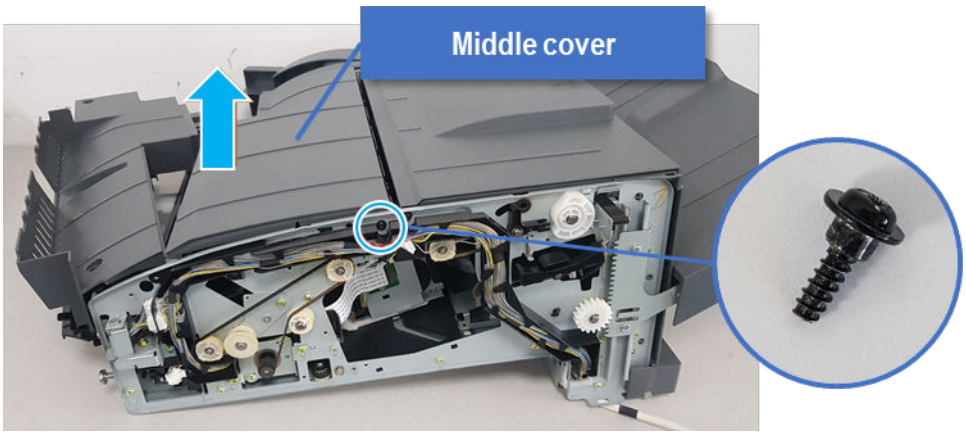
1. Open the front door and then open the punch cover.

Figure 6-491 Open the front door and puch cover.



2. Remove left-side one screw at the rear of the inner finisher, and then remove the middle cover by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

Figure 6-492 Remove the middle cover

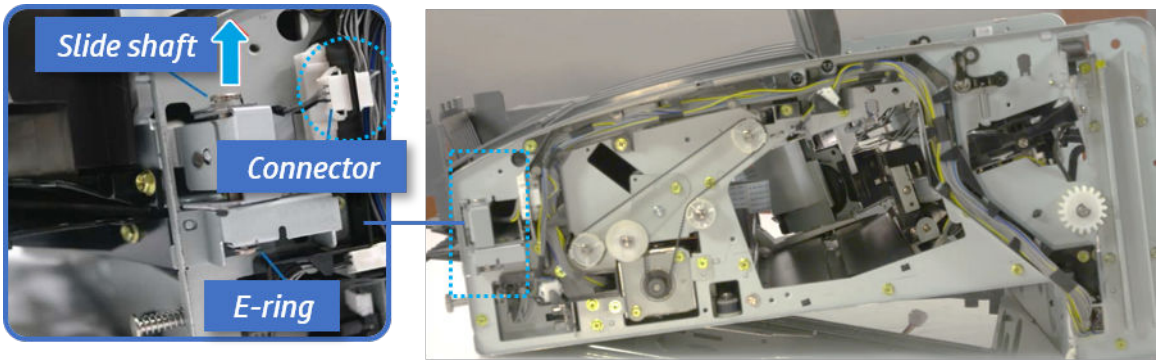


Remove the punch cover

Follow these steps to remove the punch cover.

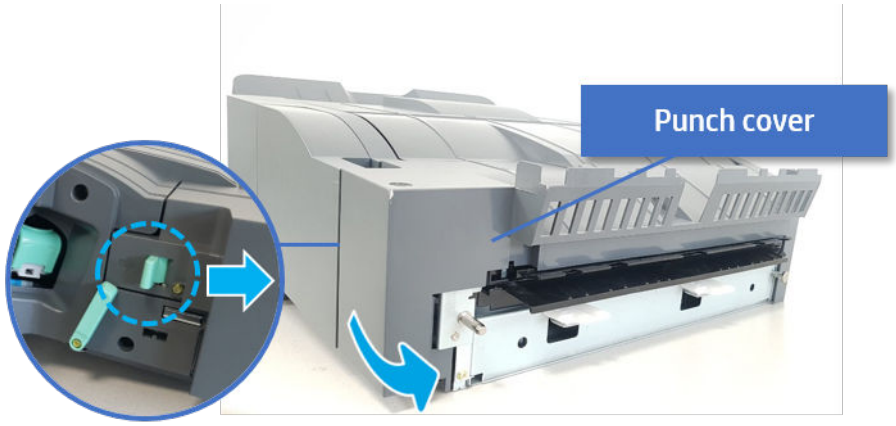
1. Unplug the connector. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the slide shaft at the rear of the inner finisher.

Figure 6-493 Remove the slide shaft



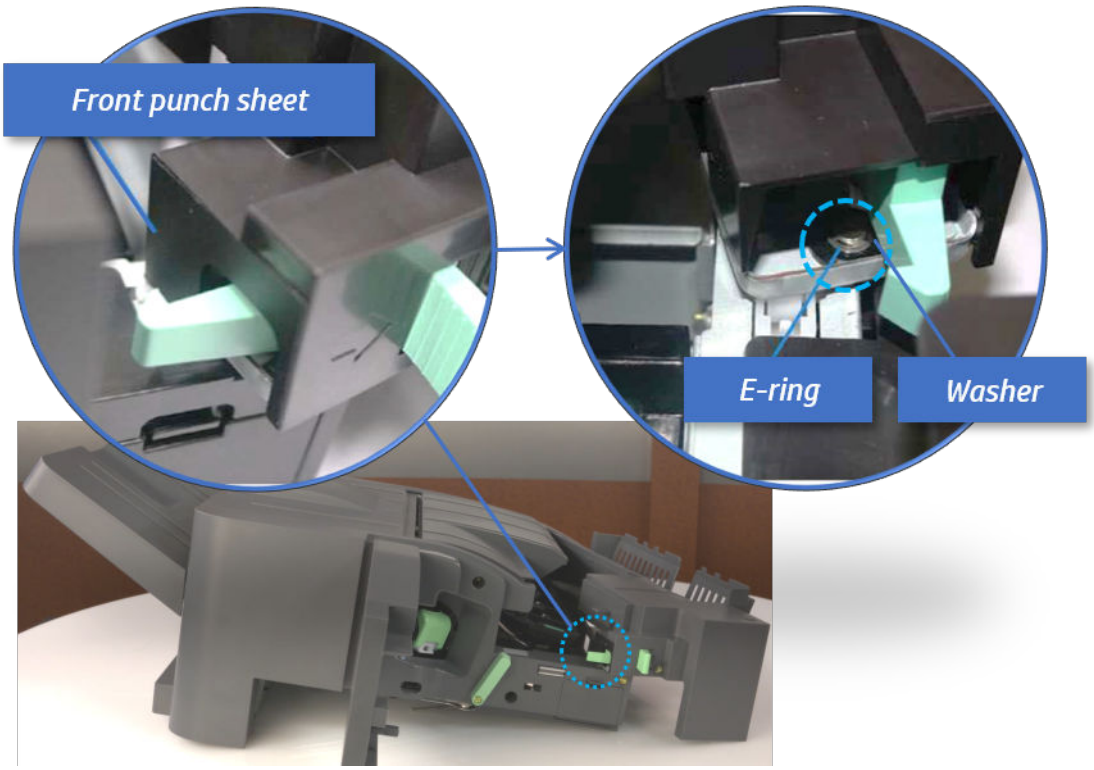
2. Open the punch cover.

Figure 6-494 Open the punch cover



3. Remove the front punch sheet, and then remove the e-ring and the washer. And then remove the punch cover.

Figure 6-495 Remove the punch cover

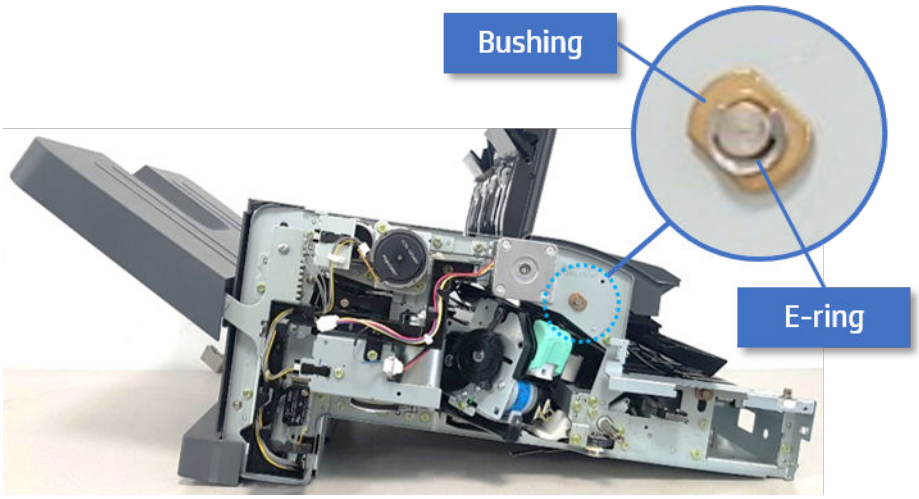


Remove the diverter guide and the middle roller

Follow these steps to remove the diverter guide and the middle roller.

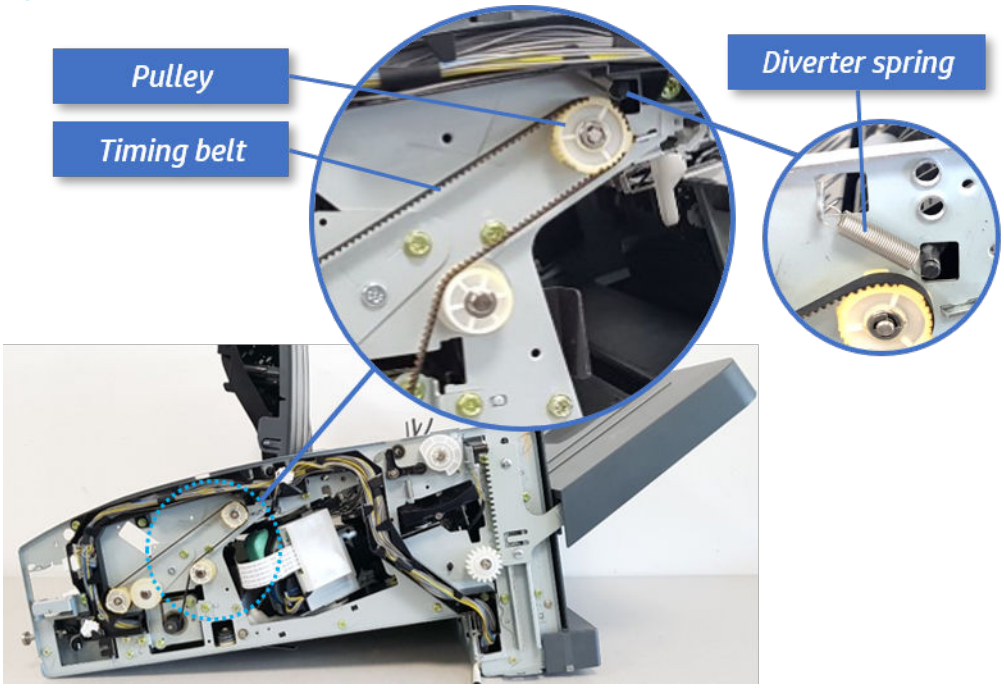
1. On the front of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and bushing.

Figure 6-496 Remove the e-ring and bushing



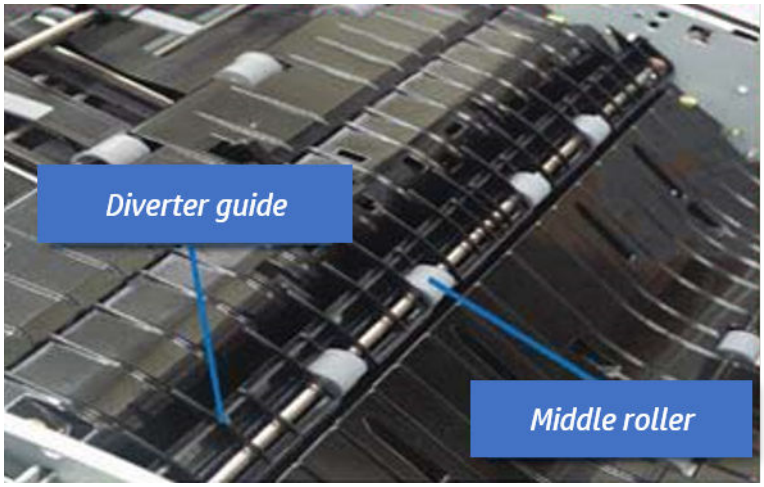
2. Onthe rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, and spring (slightly hiddenfrom view).

Figure 6-497 Remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, and spring



3. Remove the diverter guide and the middler roller.

Figure 6-498 Remove the diverter guide and the middler roller

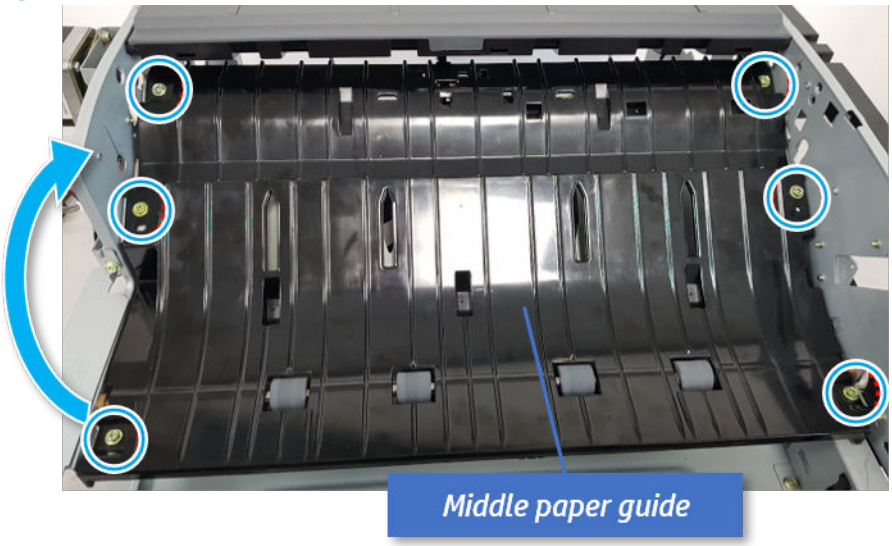


Remove the middle paper guide

Follow these steps to remove the middle paper guide.

1. Remove six screws, and then open the middle paper guide in the direction of the arrow.

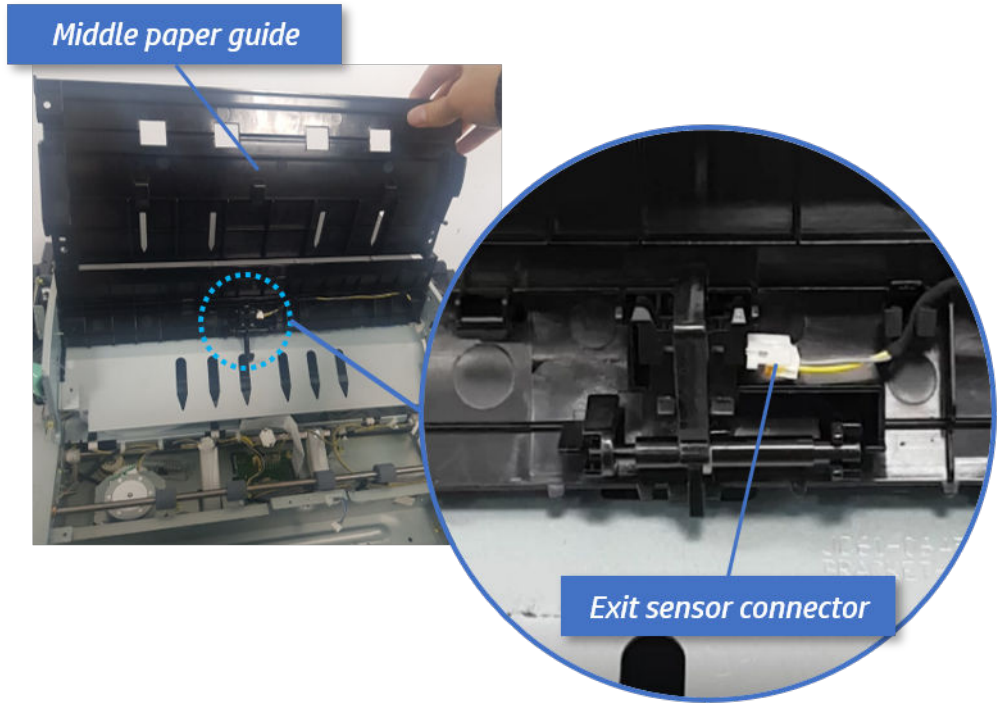
Figure 6-499 Open the middle paper guide



NOTE: Becareful not to damage the sensor connector.

2. Unplug the connector under the middle paper guide. And then, remove the middle paper guide.

Figure 6-500 Remove the middle paper guide

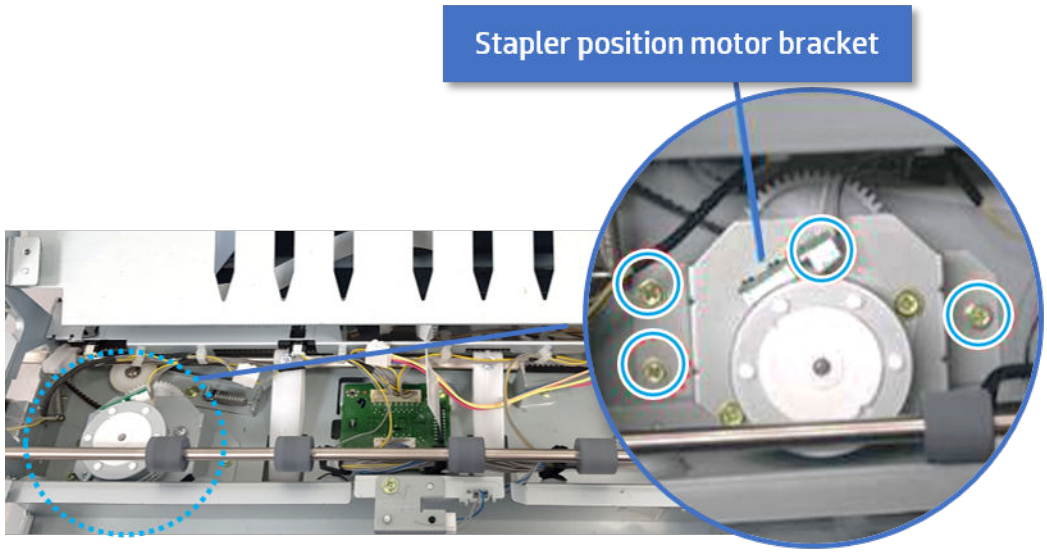


Remove the stapler postion motor

Follow these steps to remove the stapler postion motor.

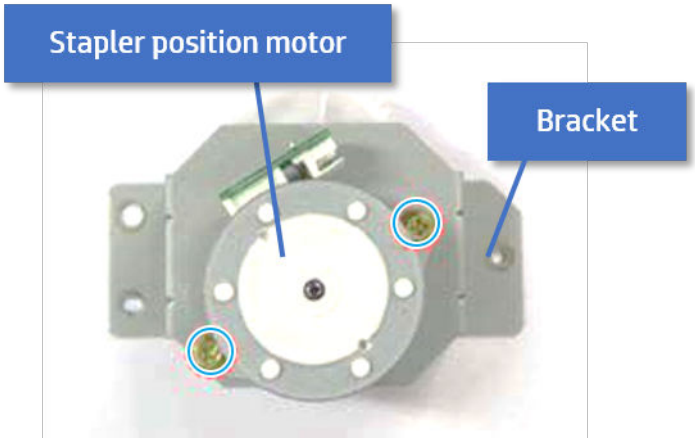
1. Remove three screws, unplug the motor connector, and then remove the stapler position motor bracket.

Figure 6-501 Remove the stapler position motor bracket



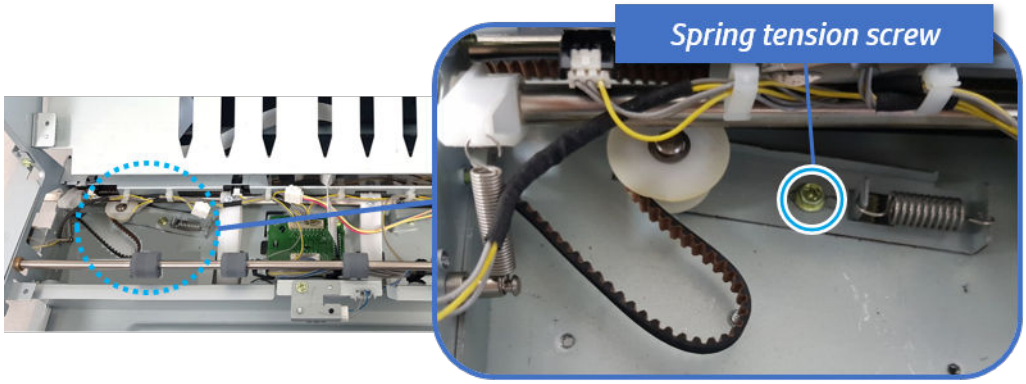
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the motor from the bracket.

Figure 6-502 Remove the stapler postion motor

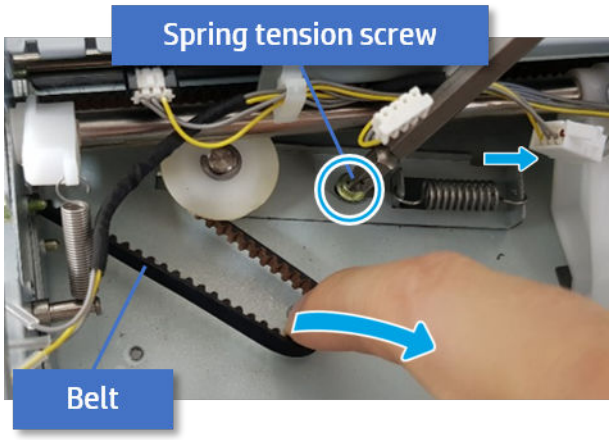


TIP: Use the following steps when reinstalling the stapler position motor.

Release the spring tension screw.



Apply tension to the spring by pulling the belt, and then tighten the spring tension screw. Tightening the screw puts maximum slack in the belt.



Lower the stapler position motor while placing the belt on the motor pulley, and then secure the bracket with three screws.

Release the spring tension screw to allow the spring to apply tension to the belt, and then tighten it again

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Ejector unit

Removal and replacement: Ejector & paper support assembly

Learn how to remove and replace the ejector & paper support assembly.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-60 Part information

Part number	Part description
SS456-61001	Ejector
JC90-01310A	Front paper support
JC90-01311A	Rear paper support

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

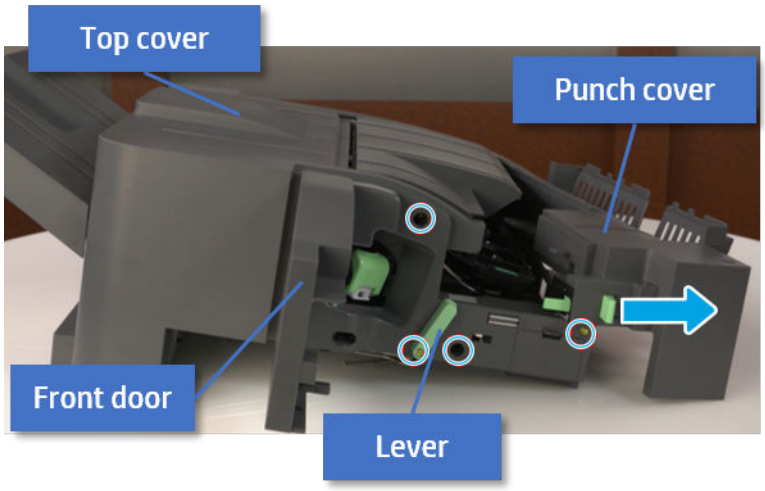
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-503 Remove the front cover

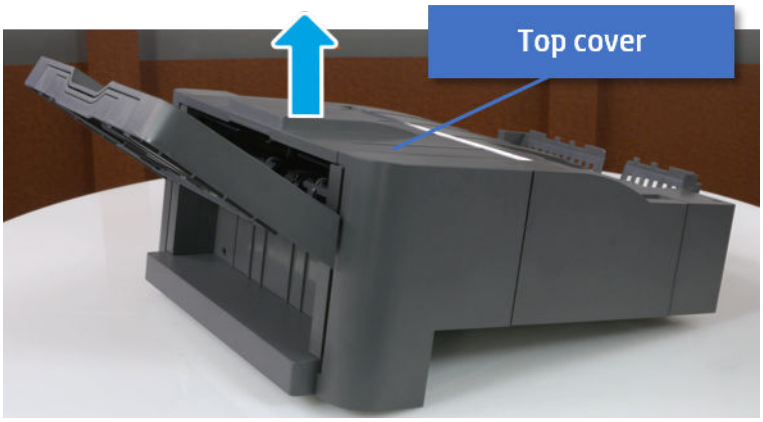


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

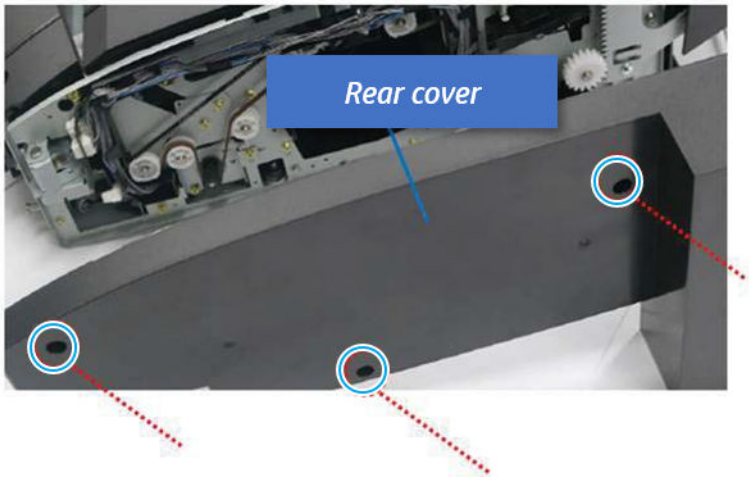
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-504 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-505 Remove the rear cover

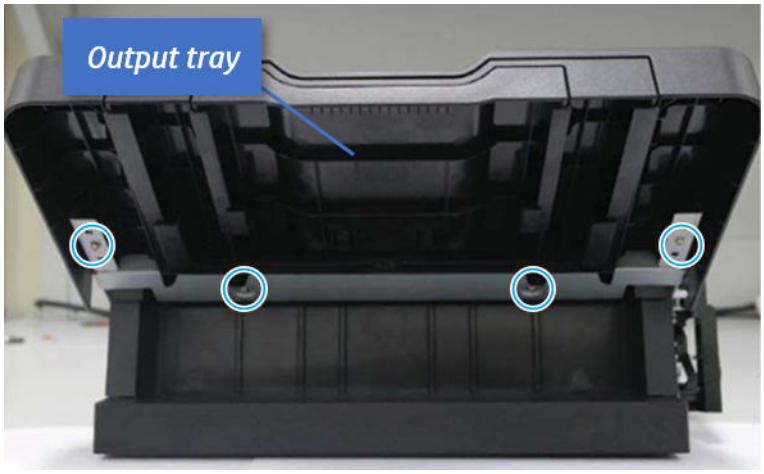


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-506 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

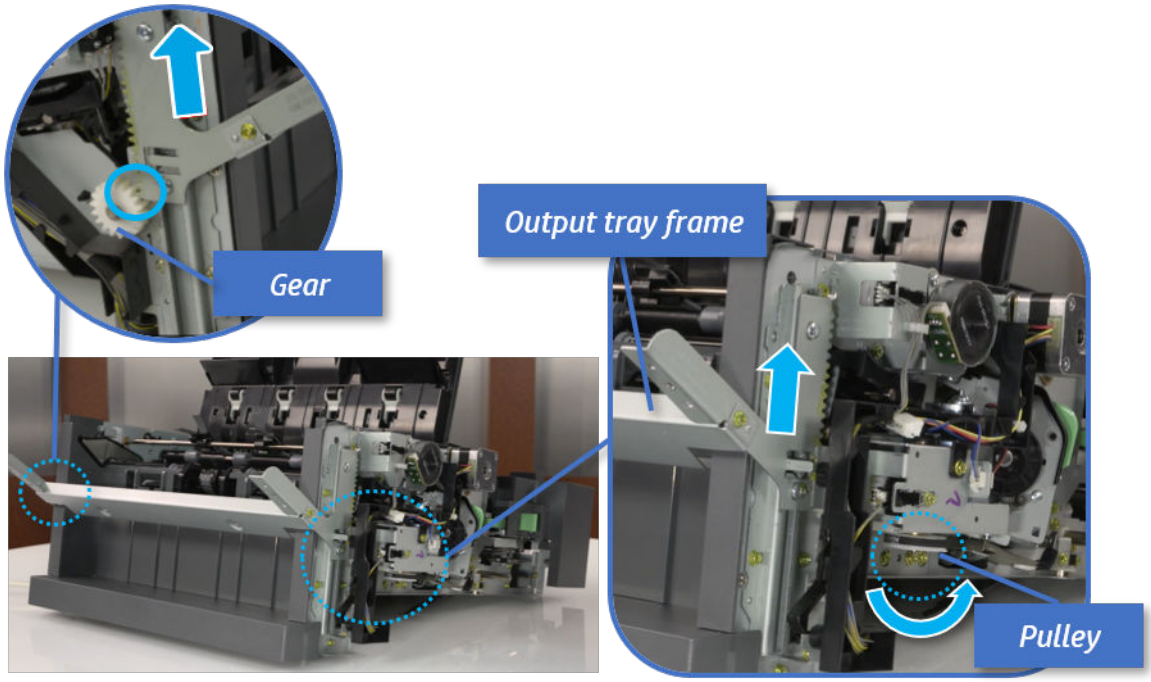
Figure 6-507 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

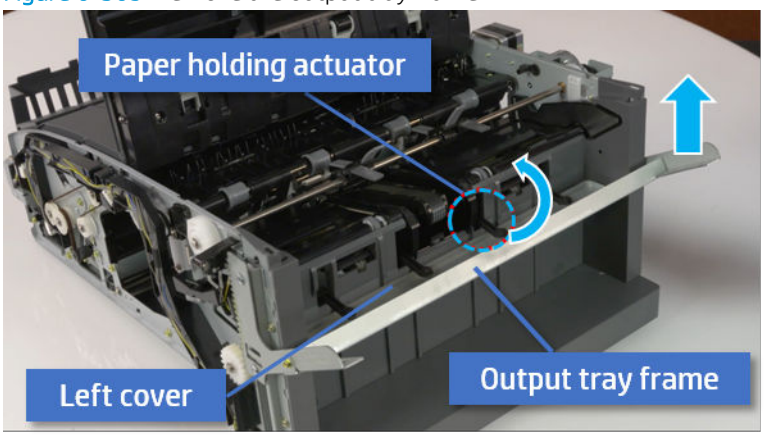
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-508 Remove the pulley



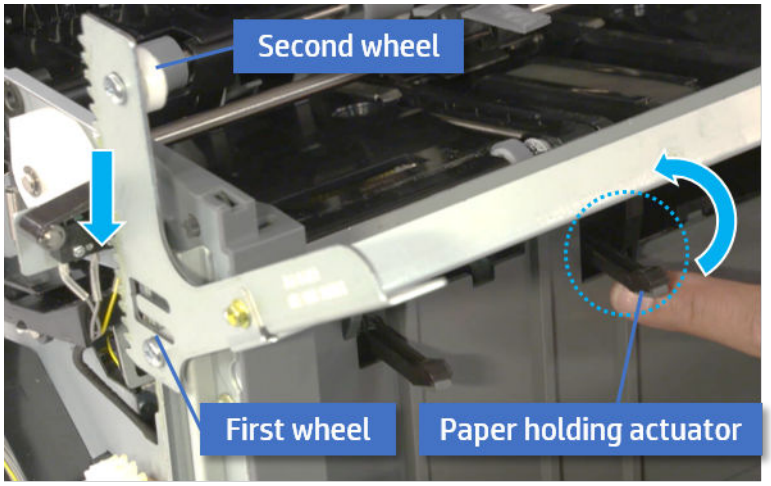
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-509 Remove the output tray frame



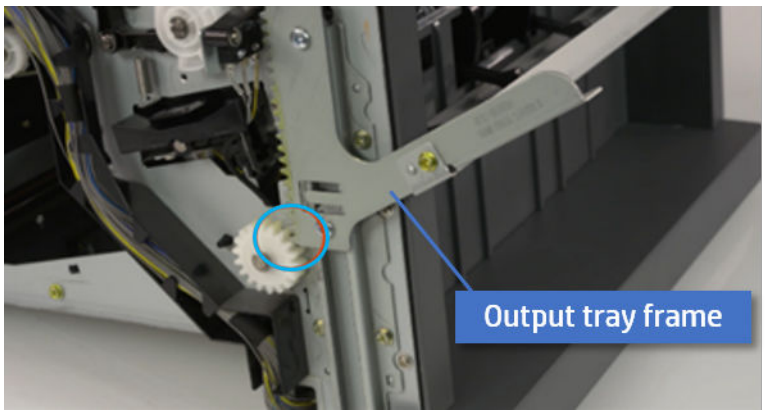
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

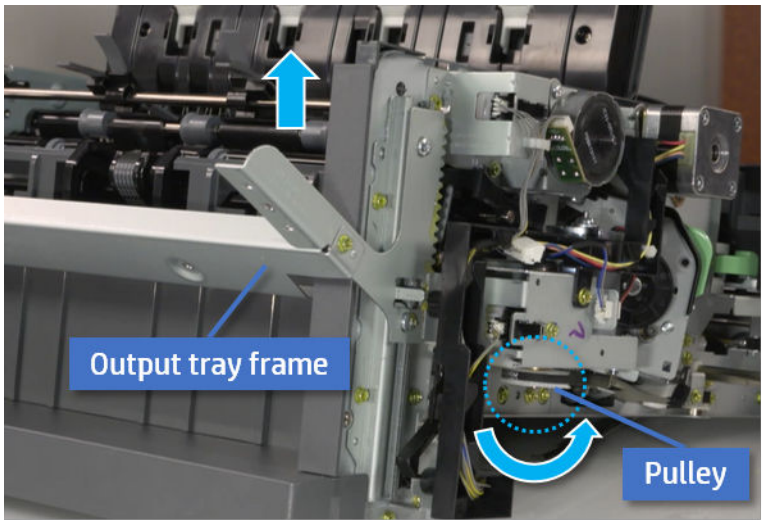


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

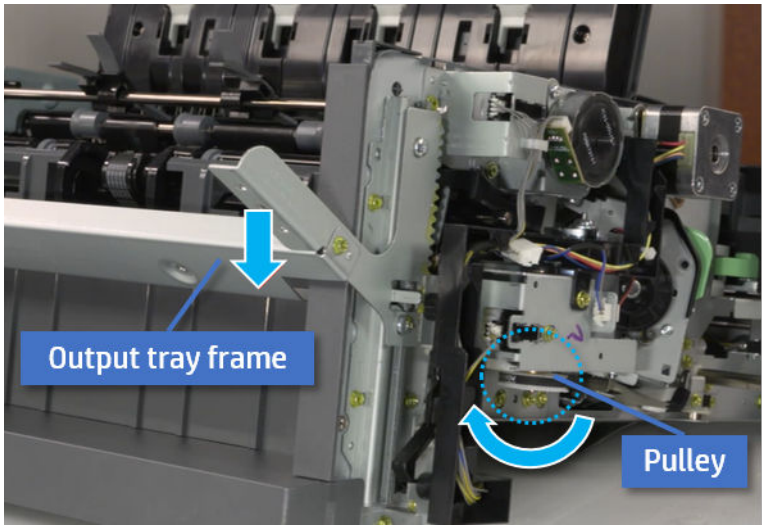
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

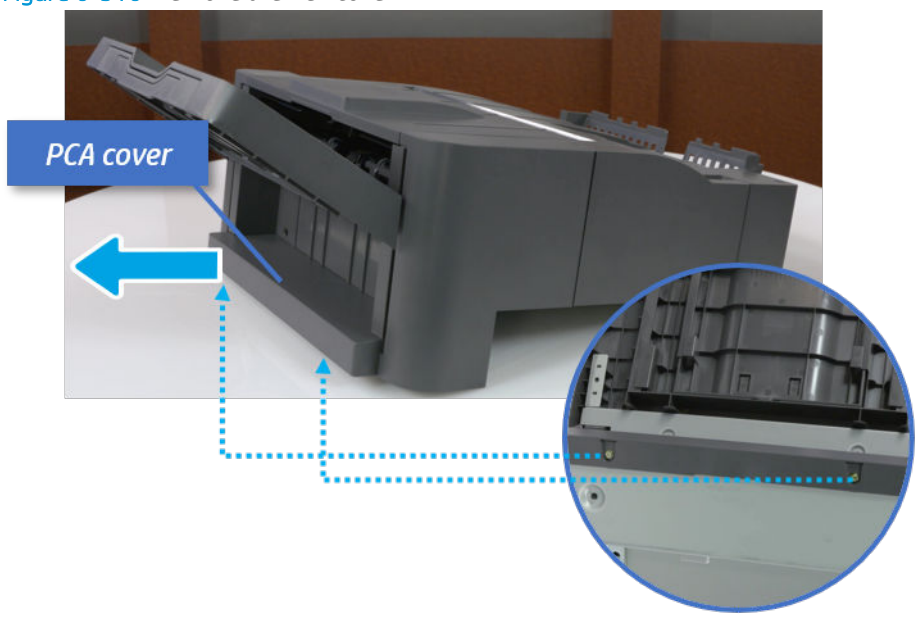


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-510 Remove the PCA cover

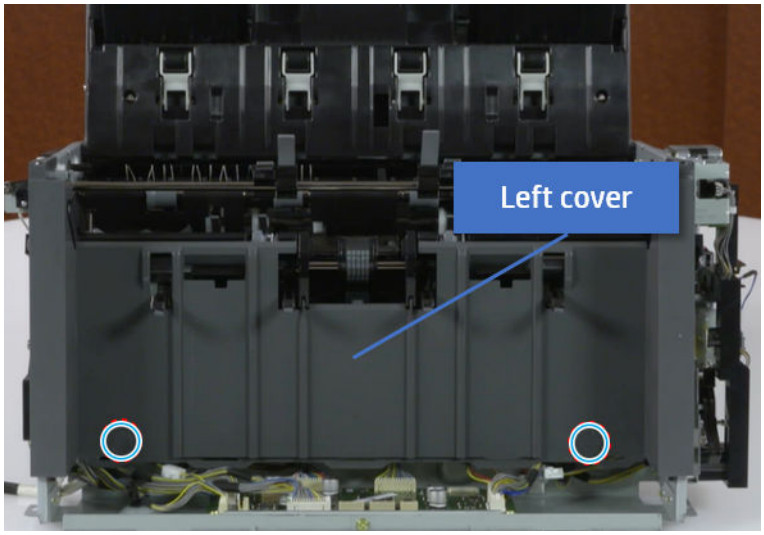


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

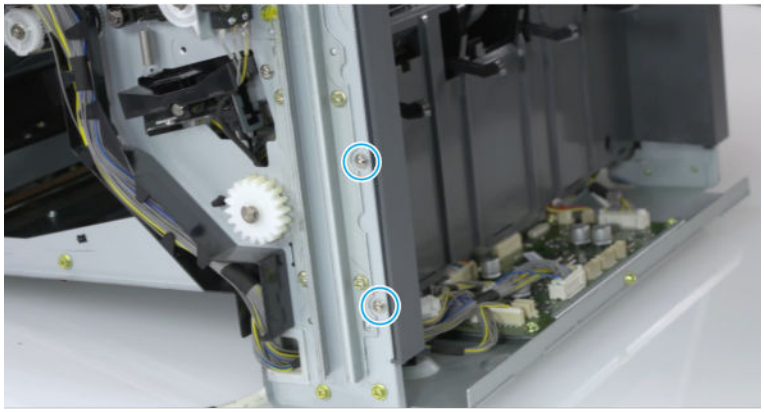
1. Remove two screws.

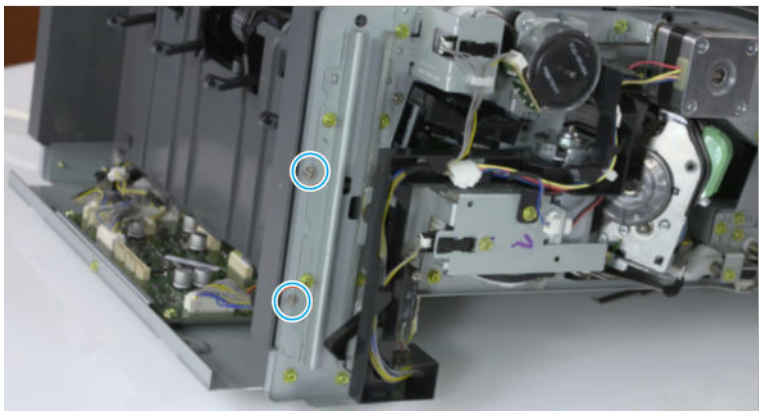
Figure 6-511 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

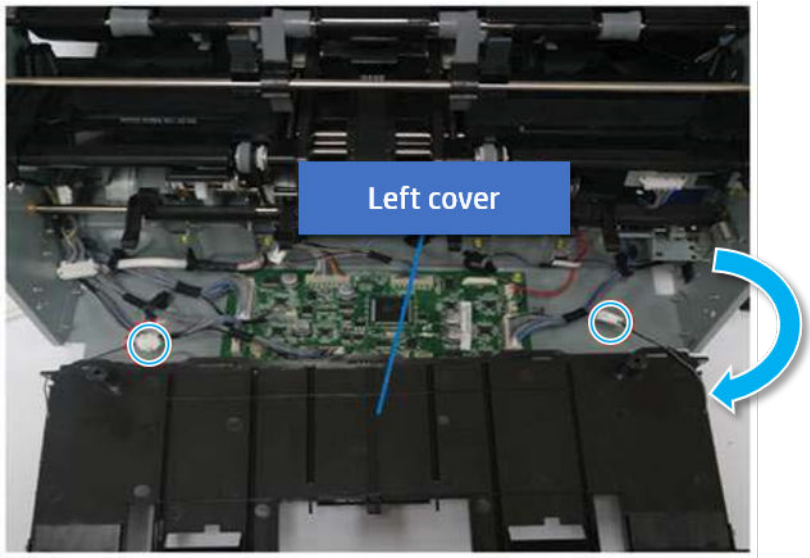
Figure 6-512 Remove four screws



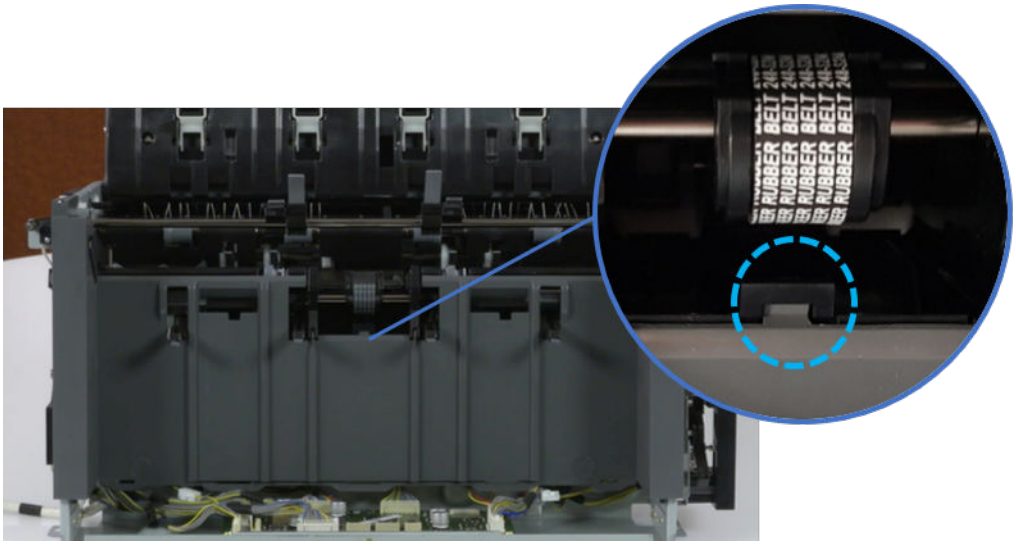


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-513 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



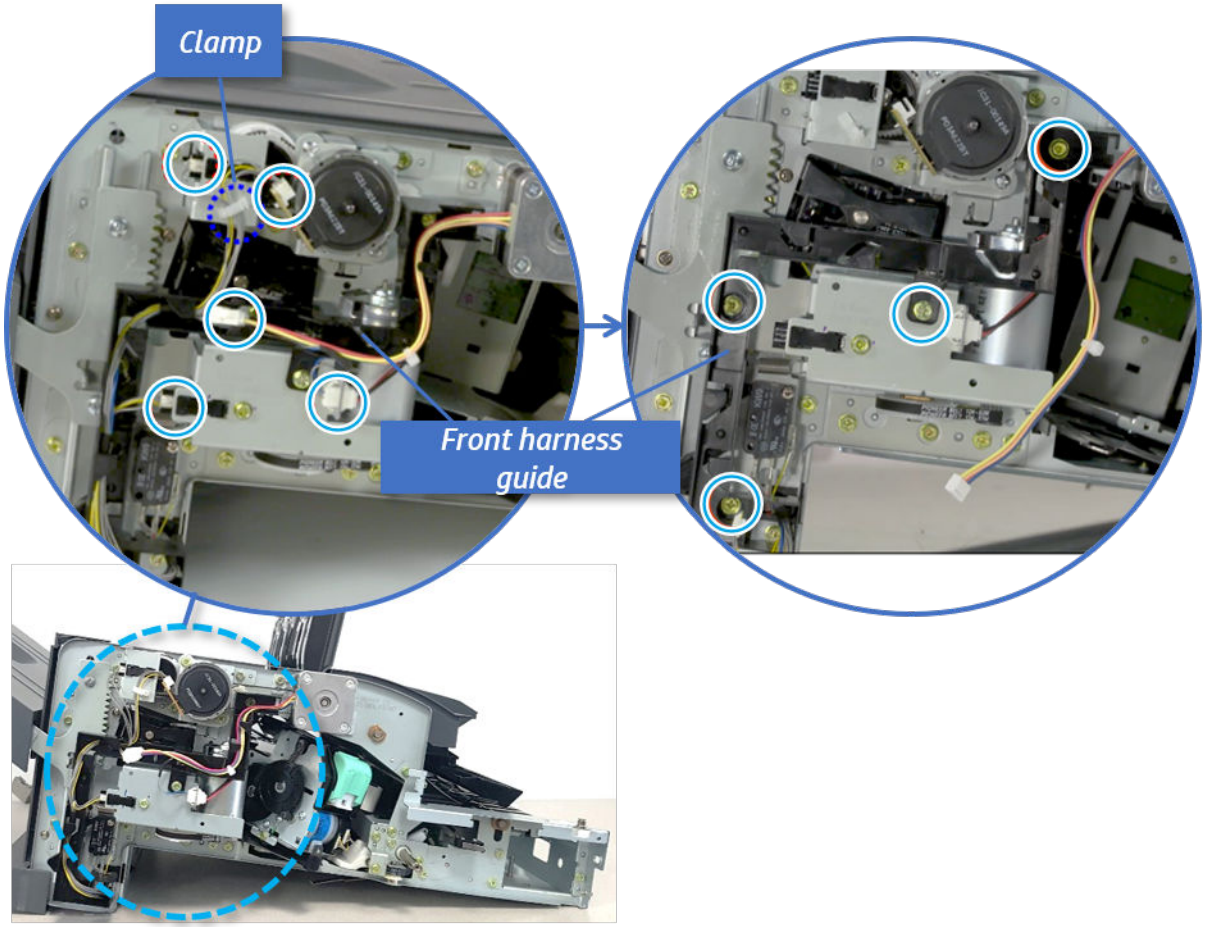
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-514 Remove the front harness guide

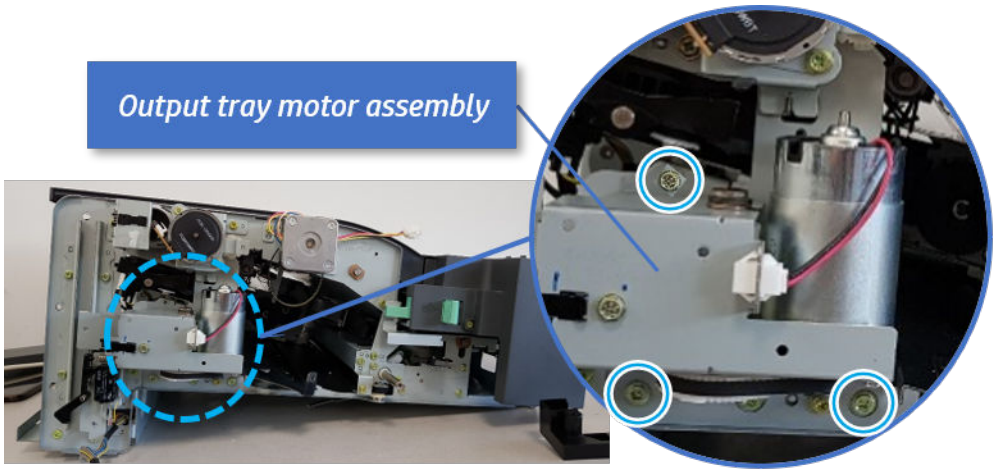


Remove the output tray motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor assembly.

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-515 Remove the output tray motor assembly

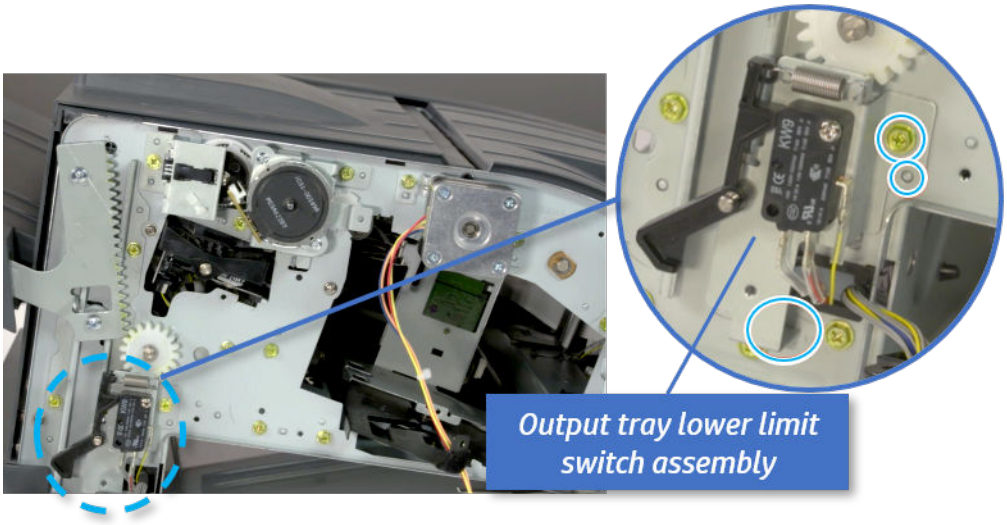


Remove the output tray lower limit switch

Follow these steps to remove the output tray lower limit switch.

▲ Remove one screw, and then remove the output tray lower limit switch.

Figure 6-516 Remove the output tray lower limit switch

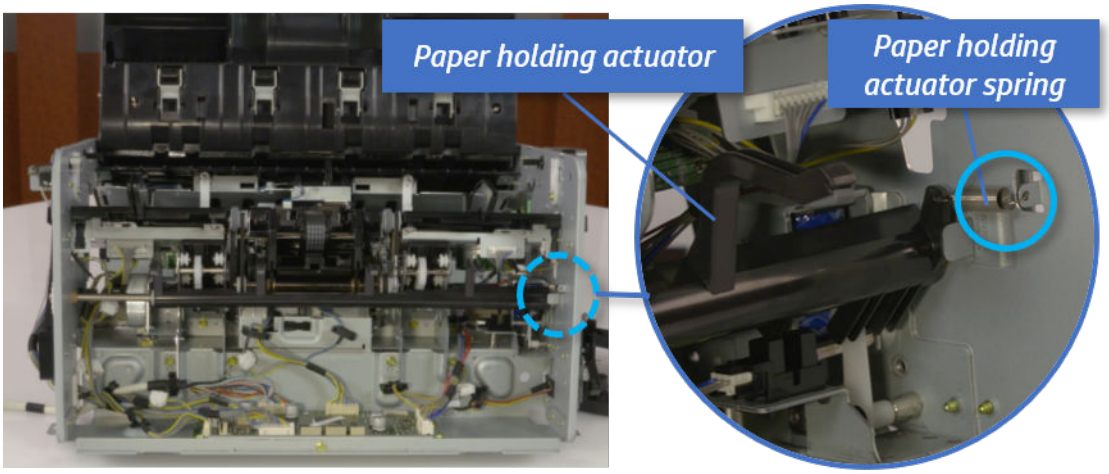


Remove the paper holding

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding.

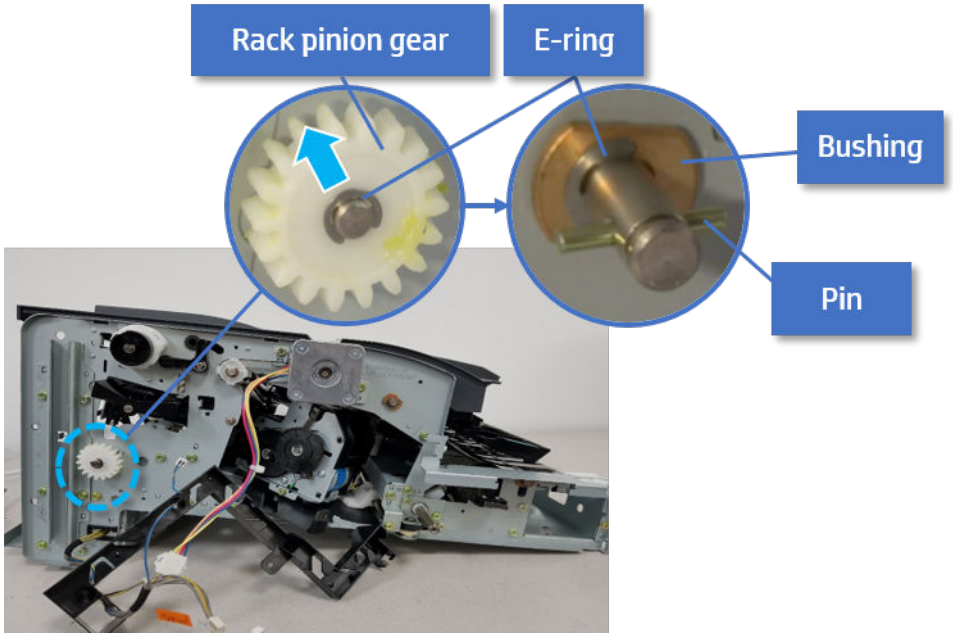
1. Remove the paper holding actuator spring.

Figure 6-517 Remove the paper holding actuator spring



2. Remove the e-ring and the rack pinion gear. And then remove the pin and the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

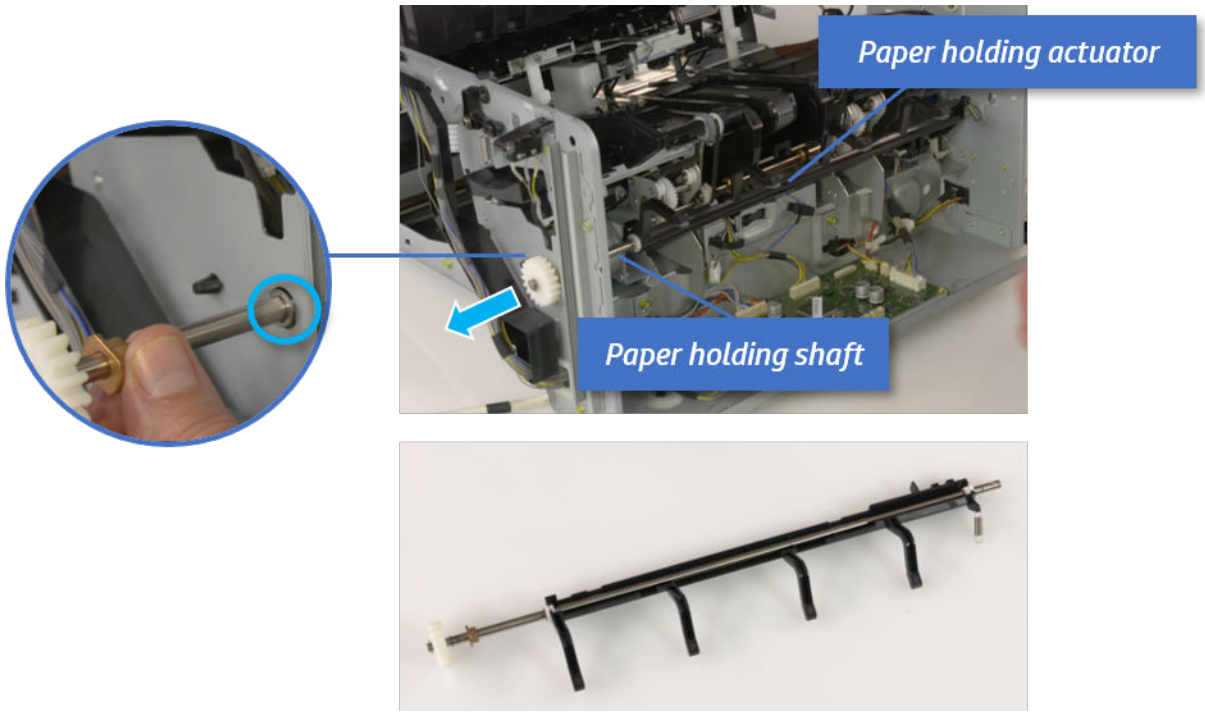
Figure 6-518 Remove e-ring, rack pinion gear, pin, and bushing



NOTE: Be sure not to lose the pin.

3. Carefully remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator.

Figure 6-519 Remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator

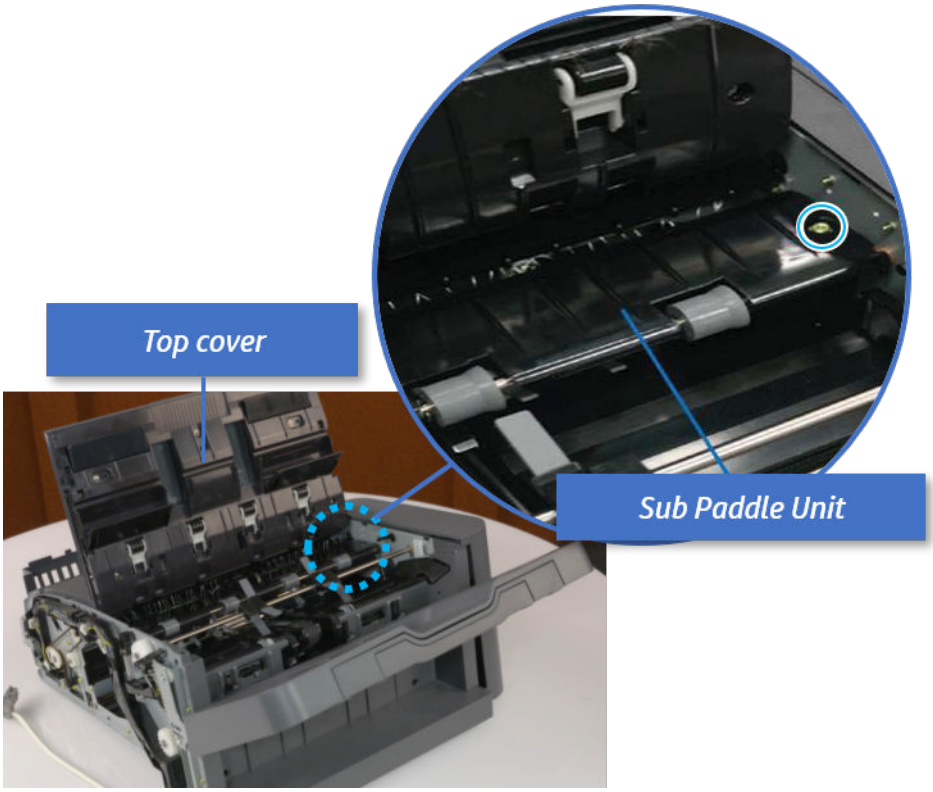


Remove the sub paddle unit

Follow these steps to remove the sub paddle unit.

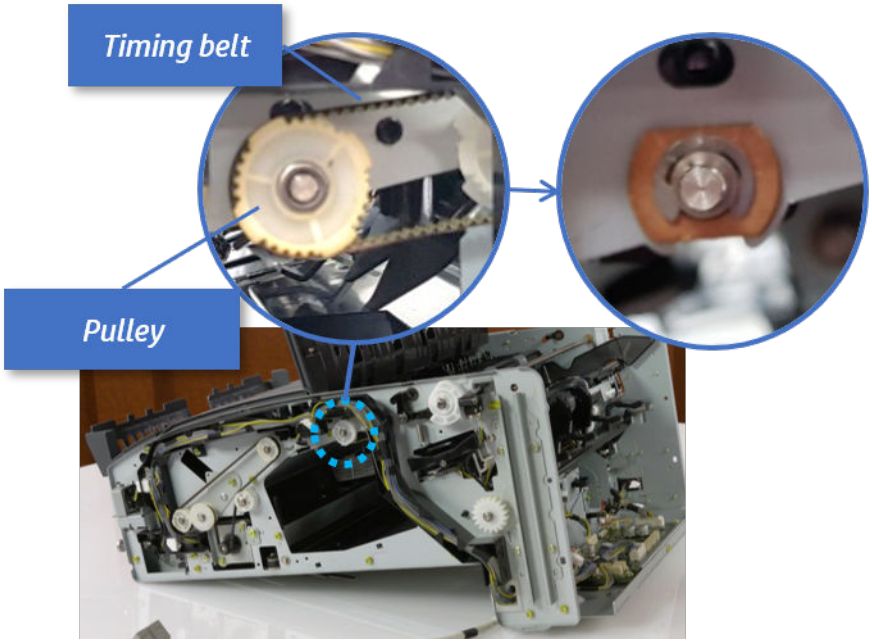
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw securing the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-520 Remove one screw



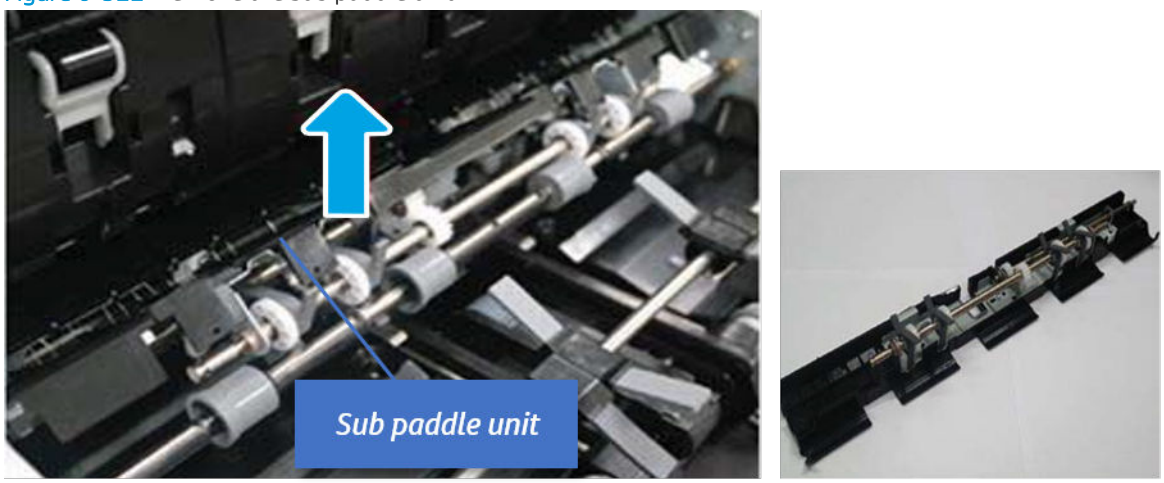
2. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt. And then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-521 Remove the e-ring, pulley, timing belt, and bushing



3. Lift up and remove the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-522 Remove the sub paddle unit

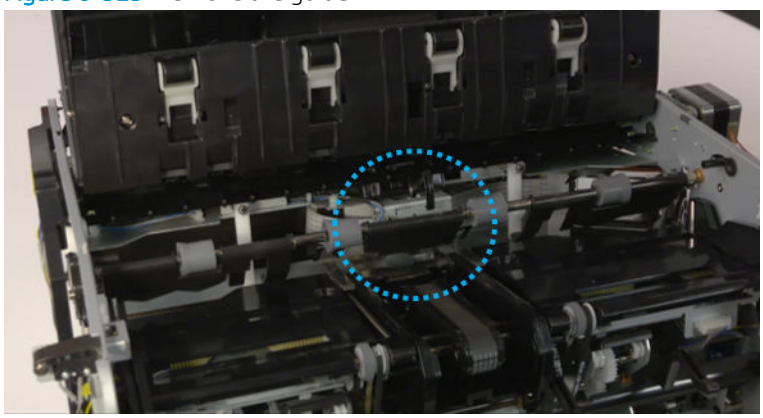


Remove the exit roller

Follow these steps to remove the exit roller.

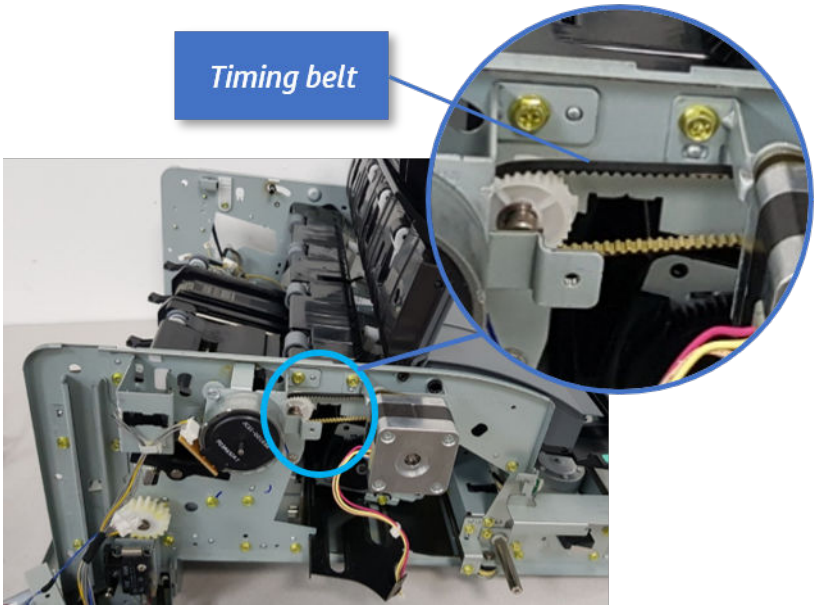
1. Remove the guide on the center of the exit roller.

Figure 6-523 Remove the guide



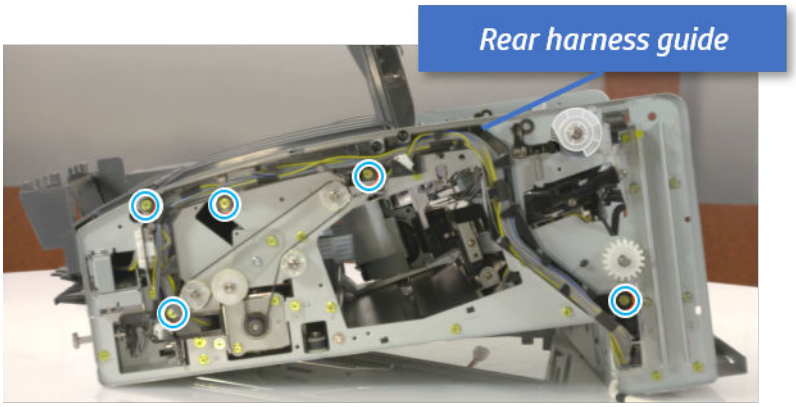
2. On the front of the inner finisher, release the timing belt connected to the exit motor.

Figure 6-524 Release the timing belt



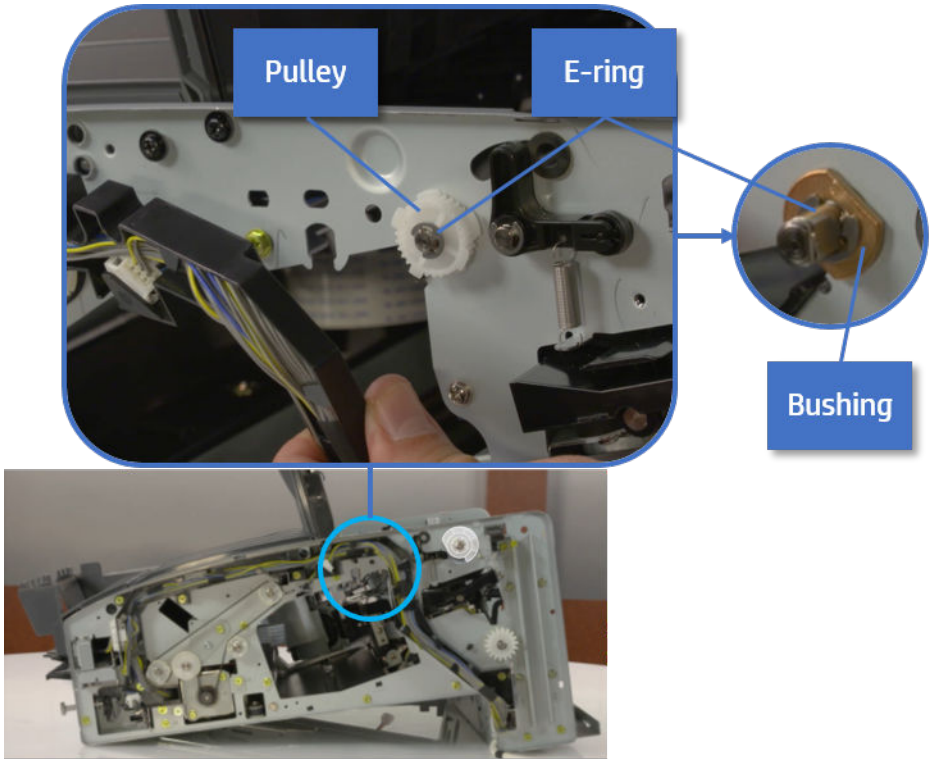
3. Remove five screws securing the rear harness guide.

Figure 6-525 Remove five screws



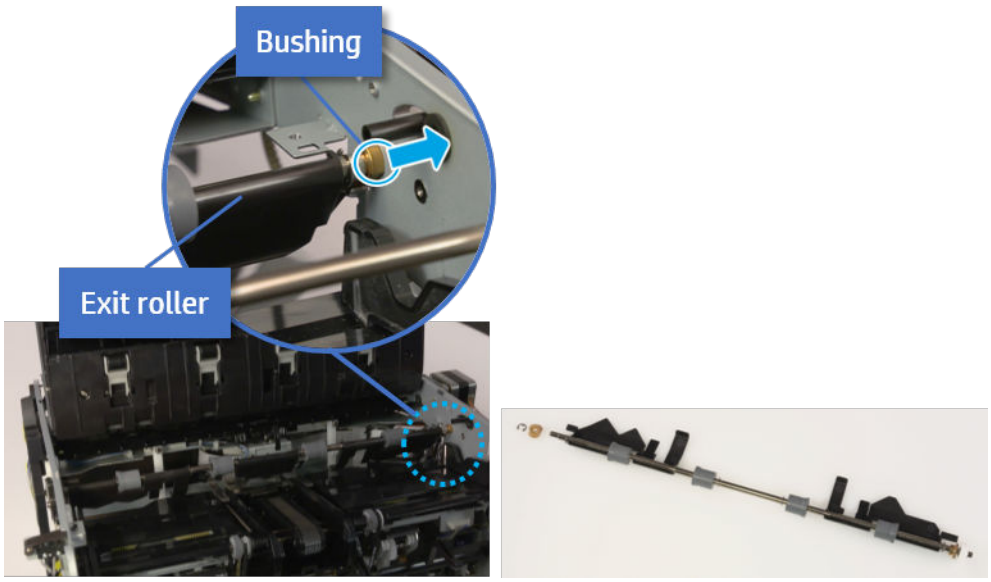
4. On the rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and the pulley and then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-526 Remove e-ring, pulley, and bushing



5. Push the bushing to detach it, and then remove the exit roller.

Figure 6-527 Remove the exit roller

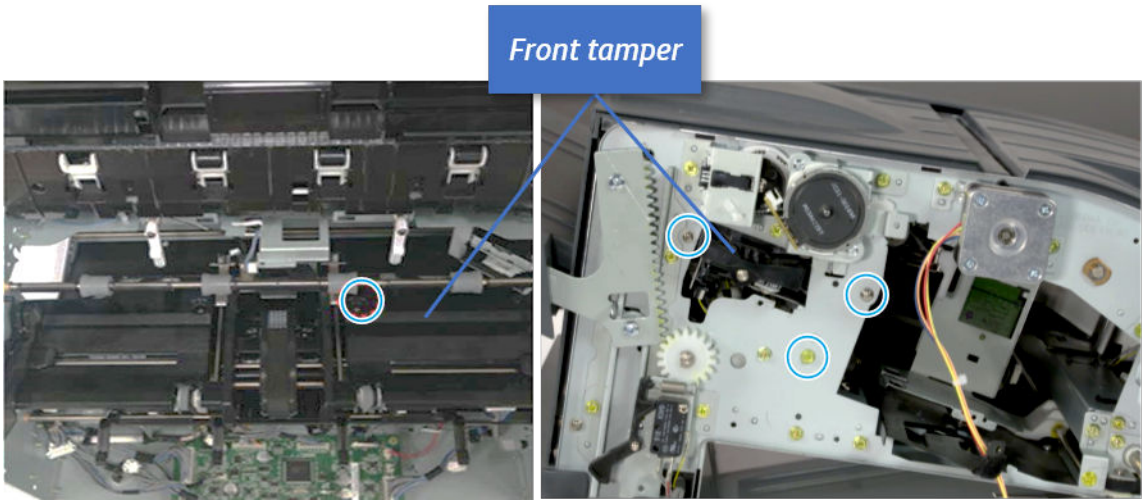


Remove the front tamper

Follow these steps to remove the front tamper.

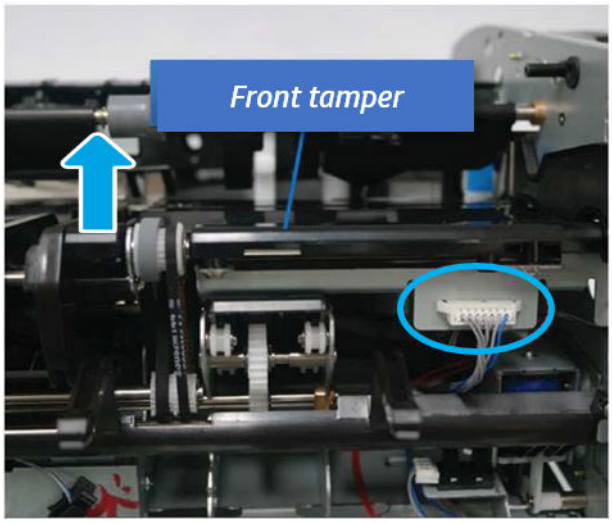
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-528 Remove four screws



2. Unplug the connector and release the hook, and then pull the front tamper up to remove.

Figure 6-529 Remove the front tamper



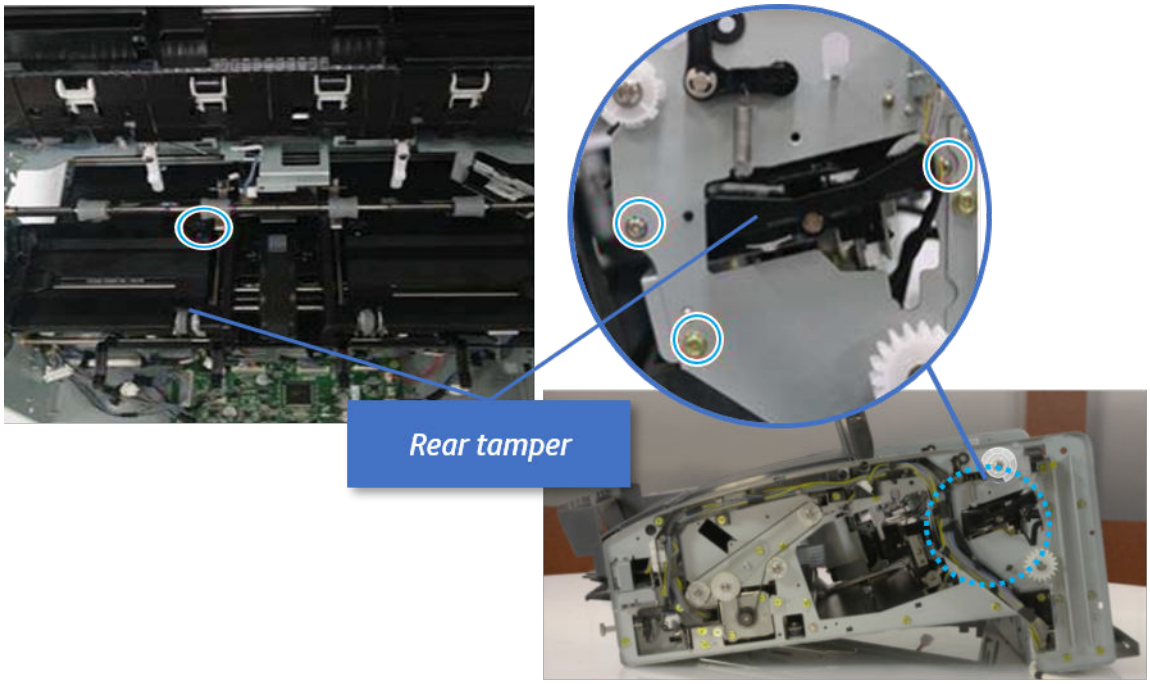
Remove the rear tamper

Follow these steps to remove the rear tamper.

1. Remove four screws.

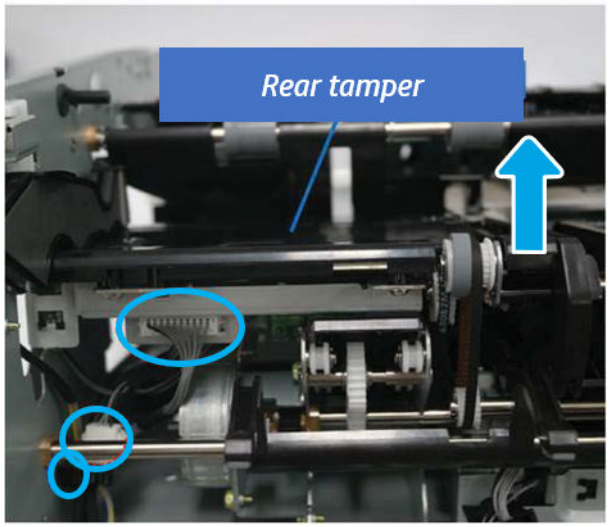
NOTE: Move cable guideout of position to access the screws.

Figure 6-530 Remove four screws



2. Unplug two connectors and release the hook, and then remove the rear tamper.

Figure 6-531 Remove the rear tamper

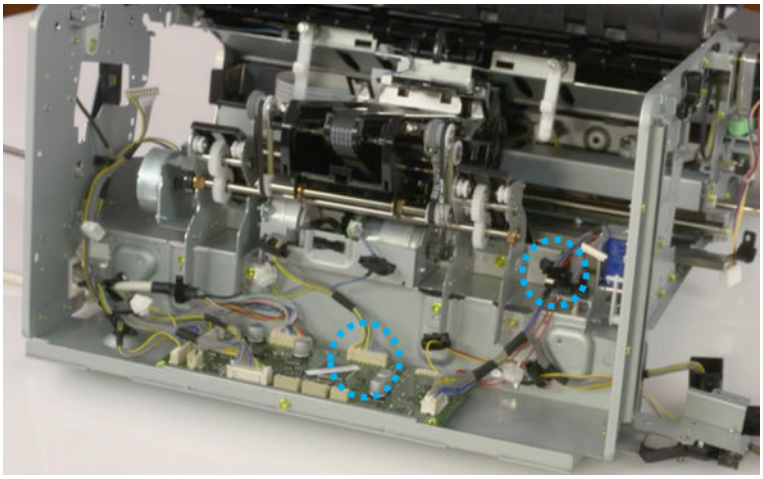


Remove the ejector & paper support assembly

Follow these steps to remove the ejector & paper support assembly.

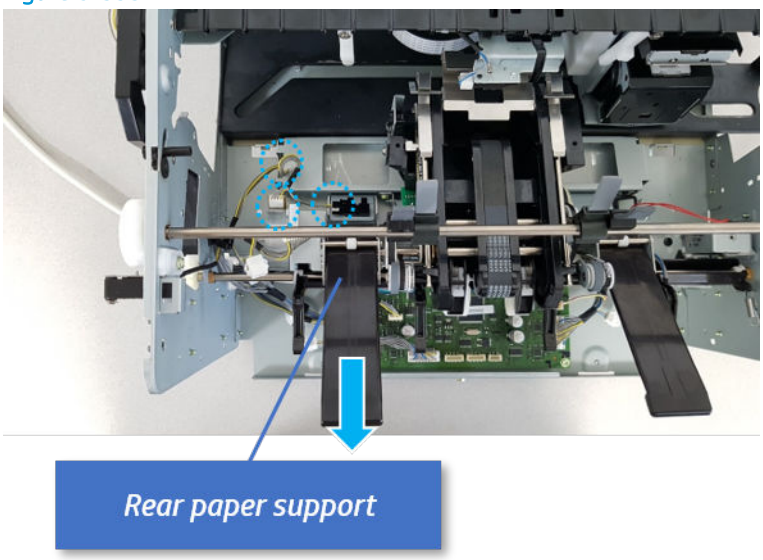
1. Open one clamp, disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-532 Disconnect one connector



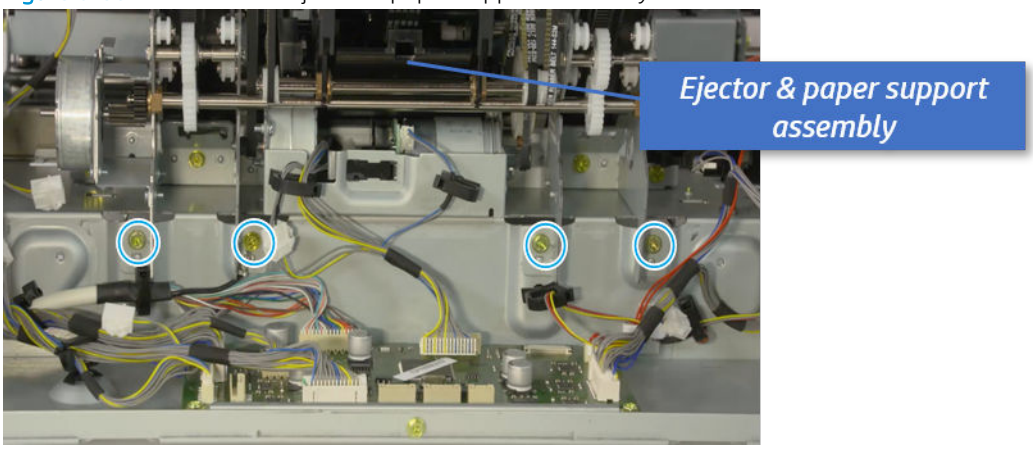
2. Pull the rear paper support up, and then release one clamp and disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-533 Disconnect two connector



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the ejector & paper support assembly.

Figure 6-534 Remove the ejector & paper support assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Ejector motor assembly (S11/ M6/ M7)

Learn how to remove and replace the ejector motor assembly.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-61 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01309A (not orderable)	Ejector motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

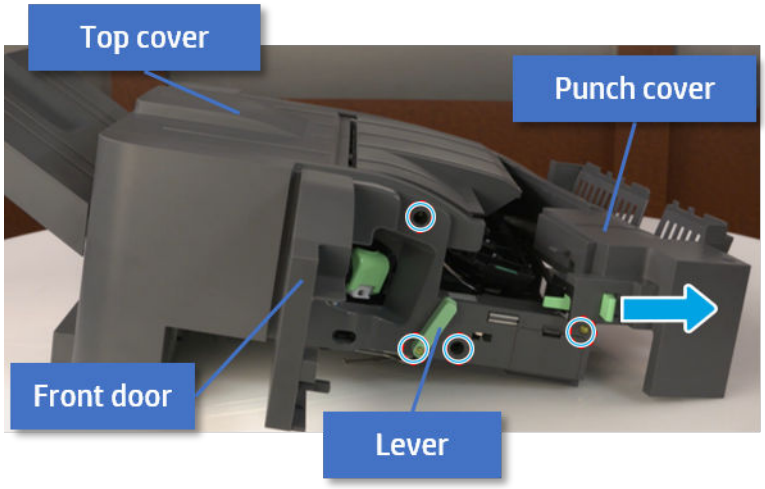
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-535 Remove the front cover

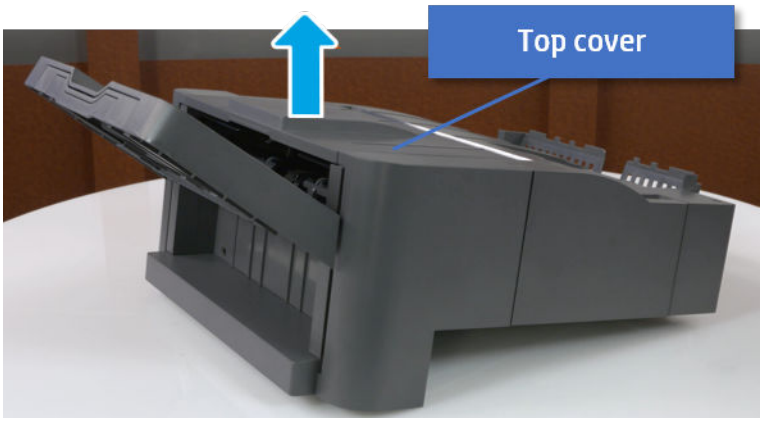


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

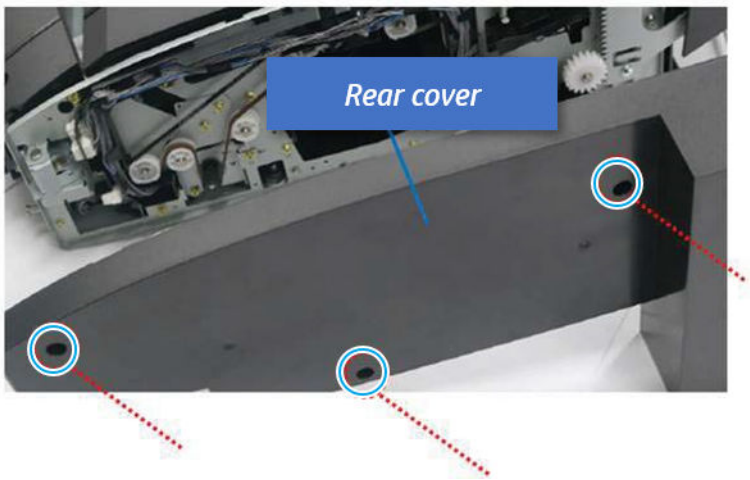
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-536 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-537 Remove the rear cover

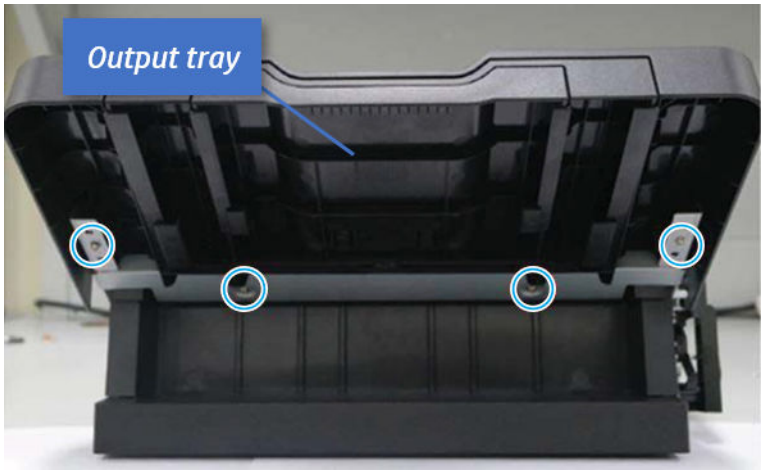


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-538 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

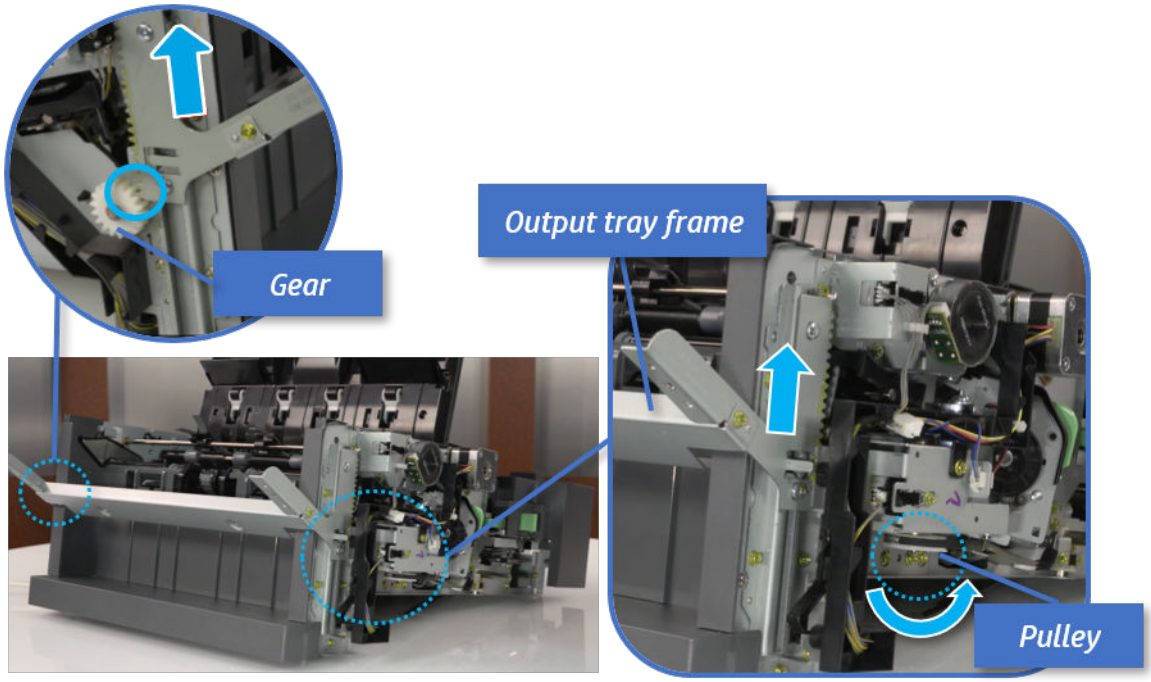
Figure 6-539 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

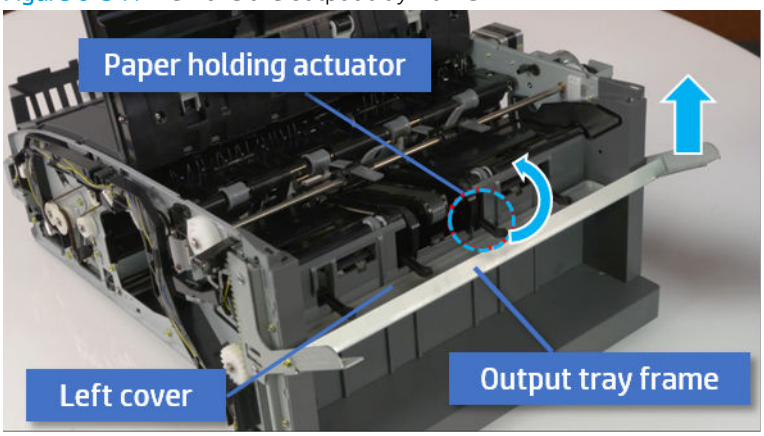
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-540 Remove the pulley



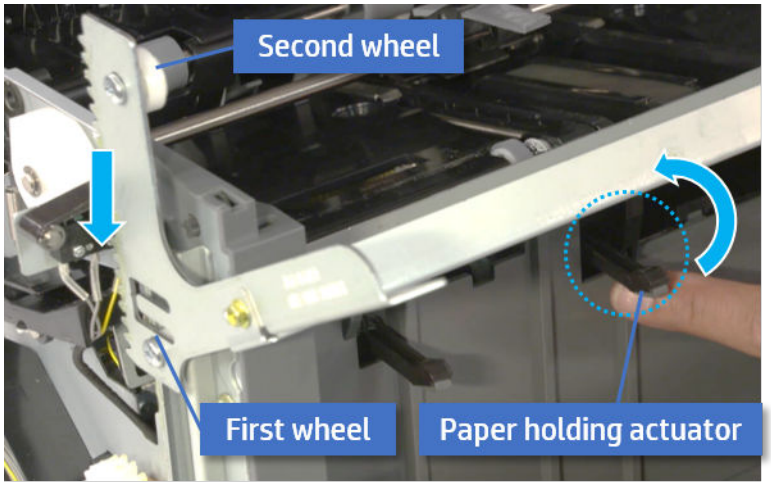
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-541 Remove the output tray frame



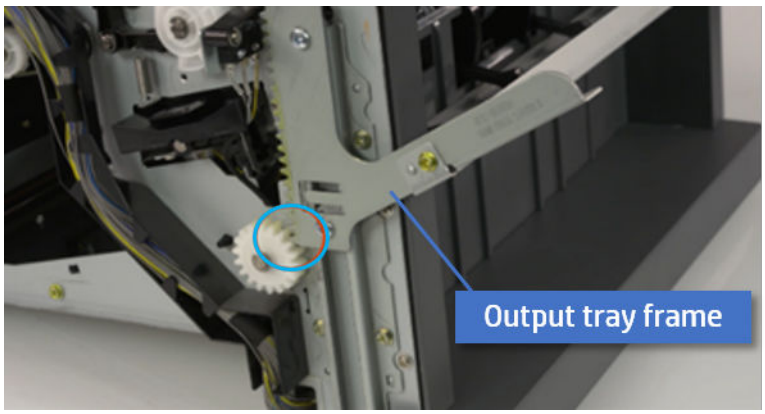
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

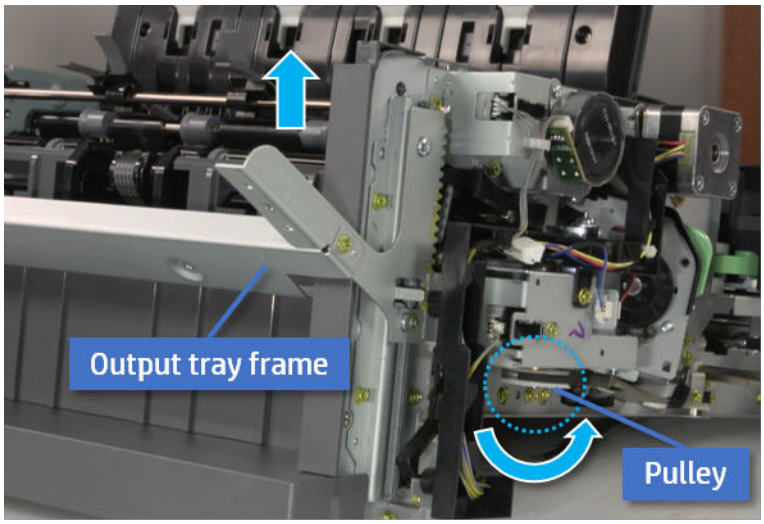


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

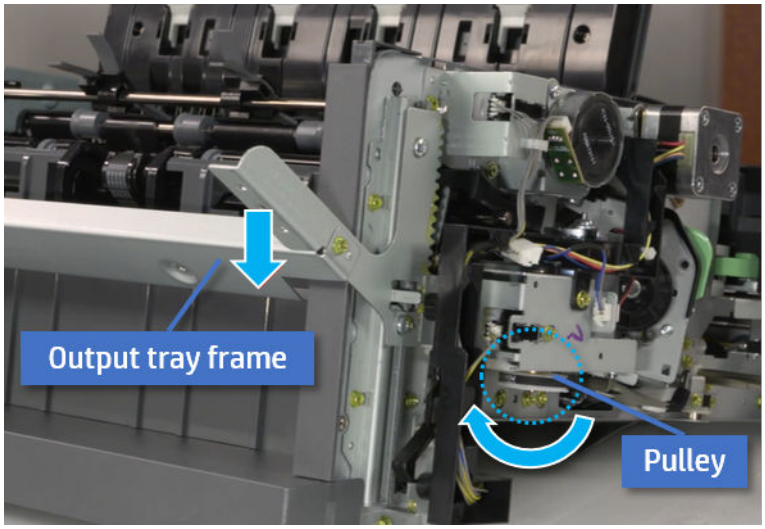
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

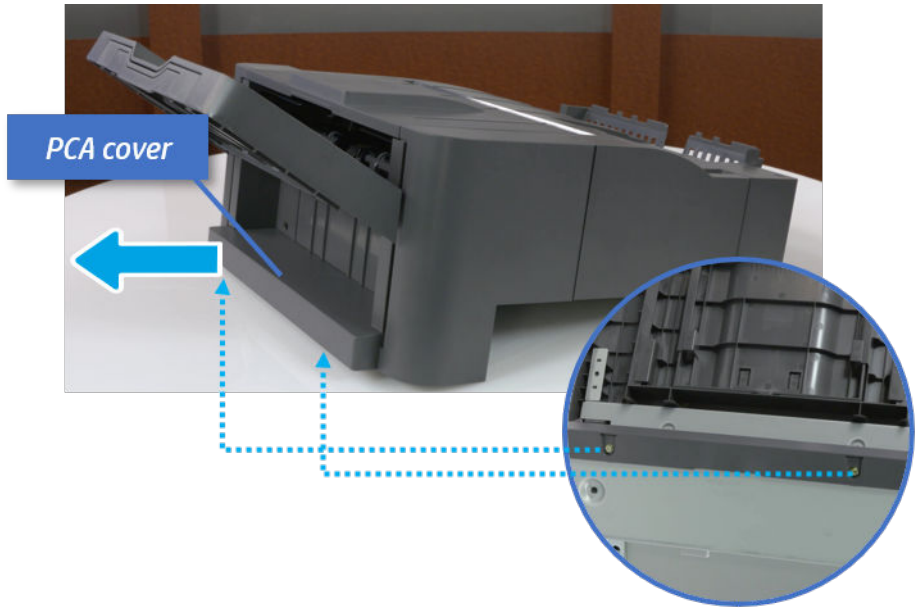


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-542 Remove the PCA cover

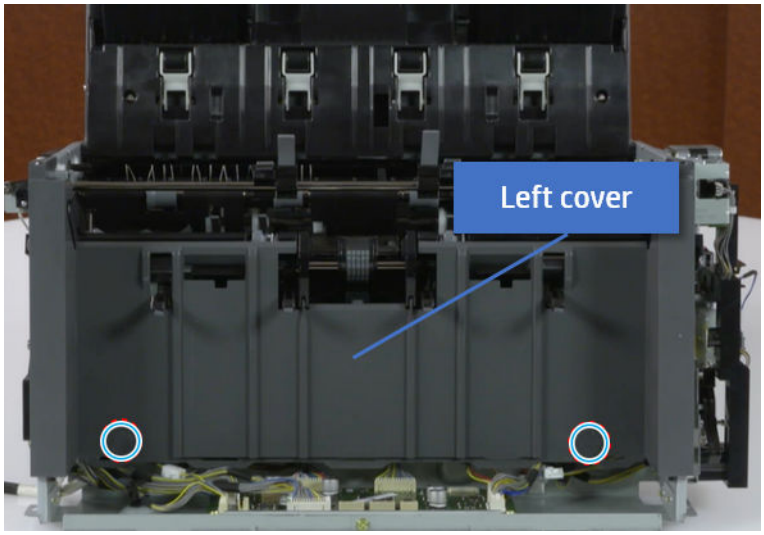


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

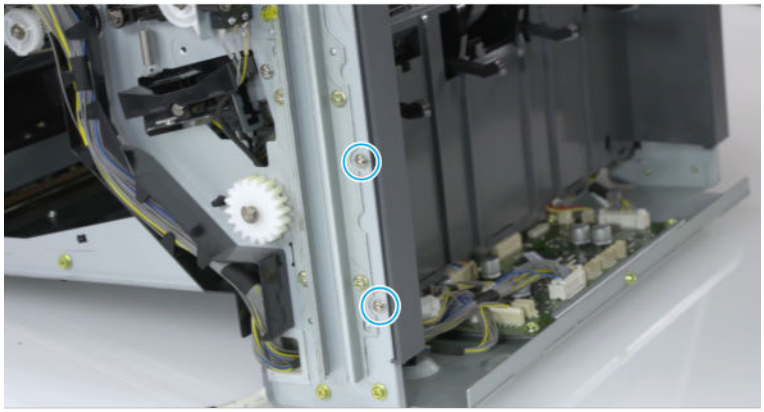
1. Remove two screws.

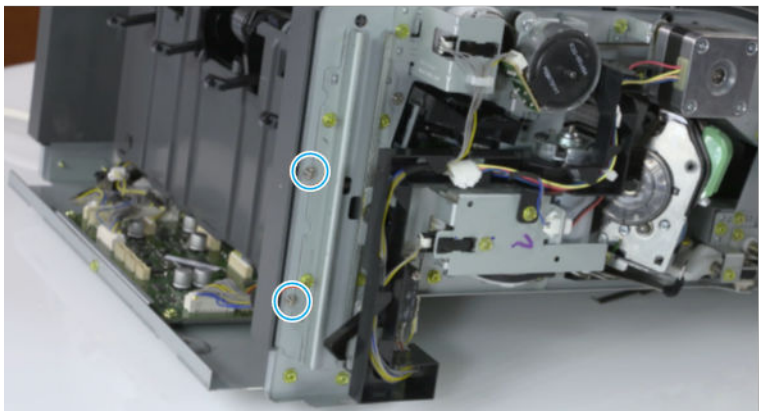
Figure 6-543 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

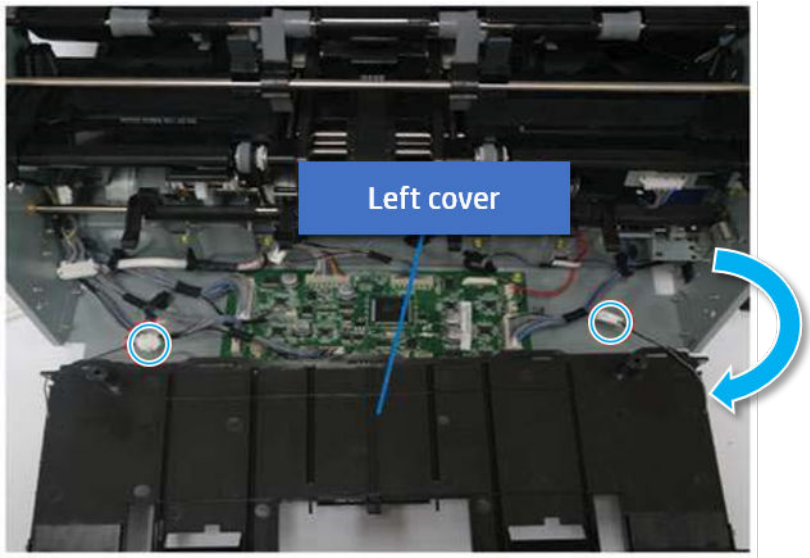
Figure 6-544 Remove four screws



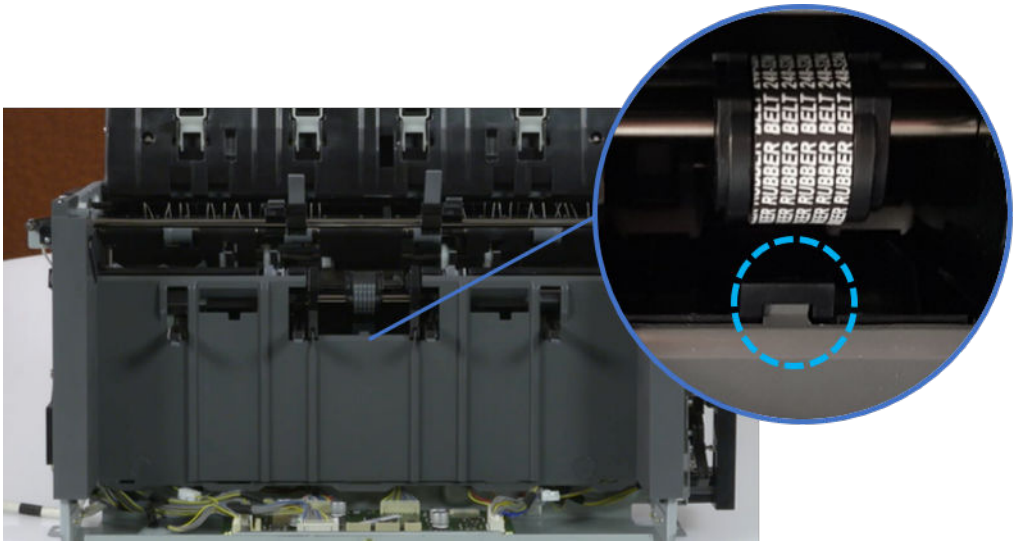


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-545 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



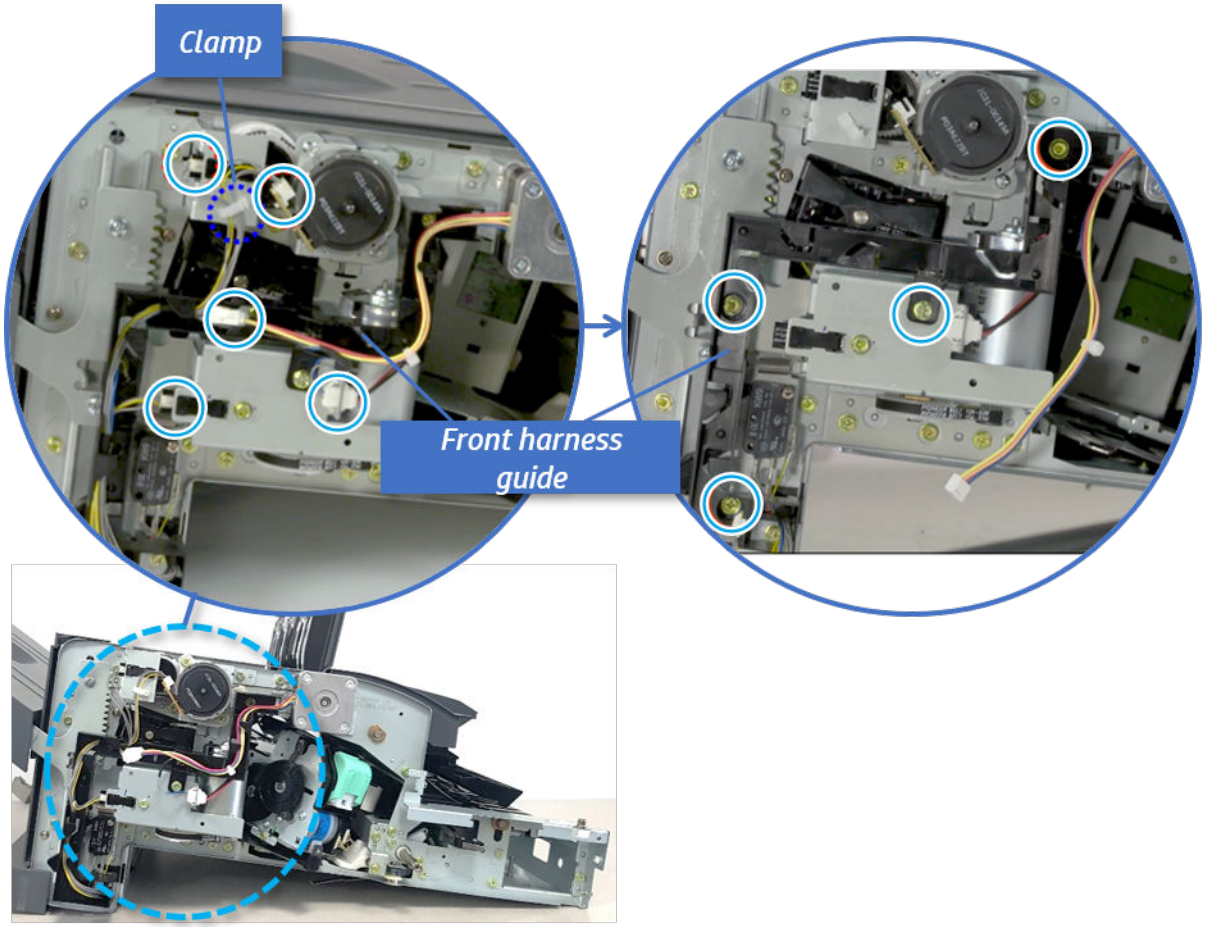
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-546 Remove the front harness guide

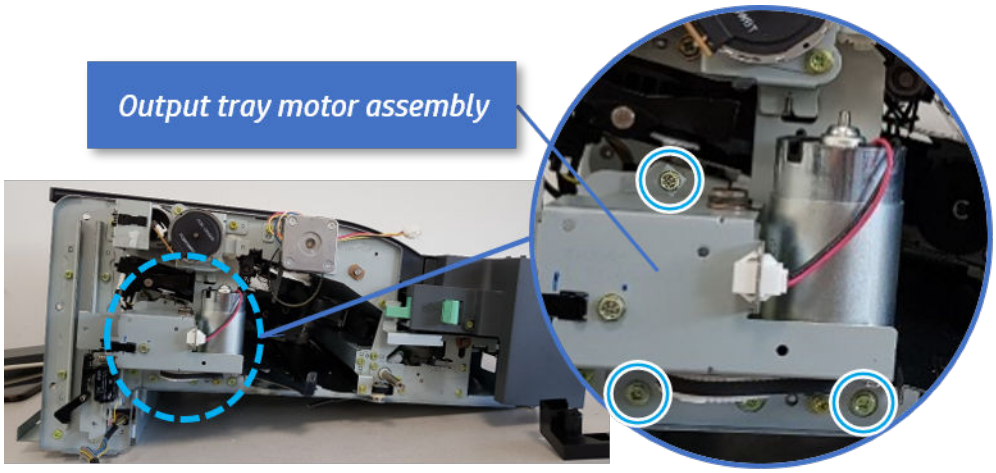


Remove the output tray motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor assembly.

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-547 Remove the output tray motor assembly

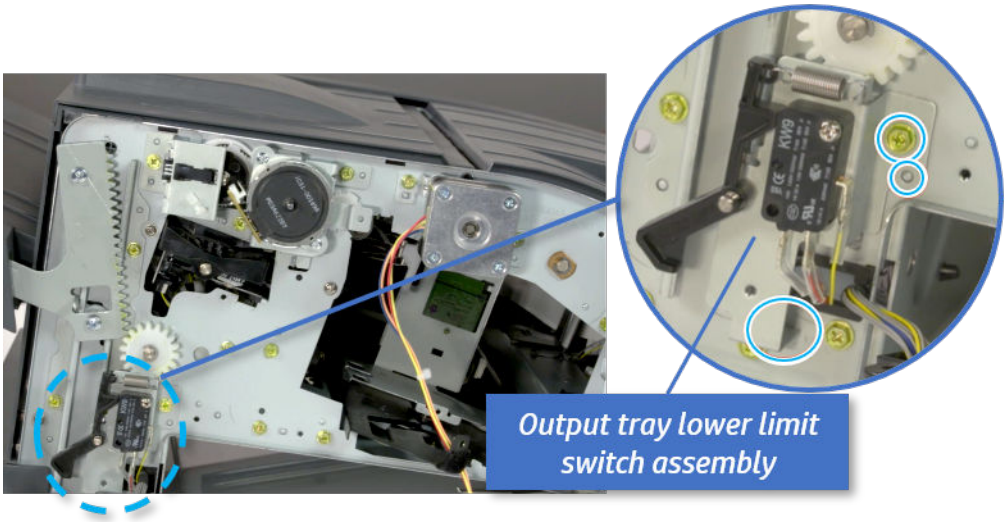


Remove the output tray lower limit switch

Follow these steps to remove the output tray lower limit switch.

▲ Remove one screw, and then remove the output tray lower limit switch.

Figure 6-548 Remove the output tray lower limit switch

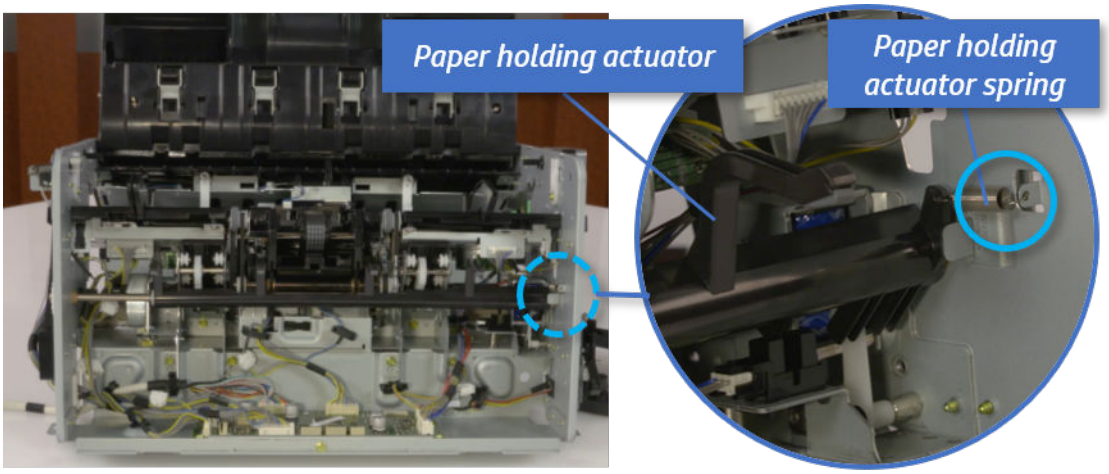


Remove the paper holding

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding.

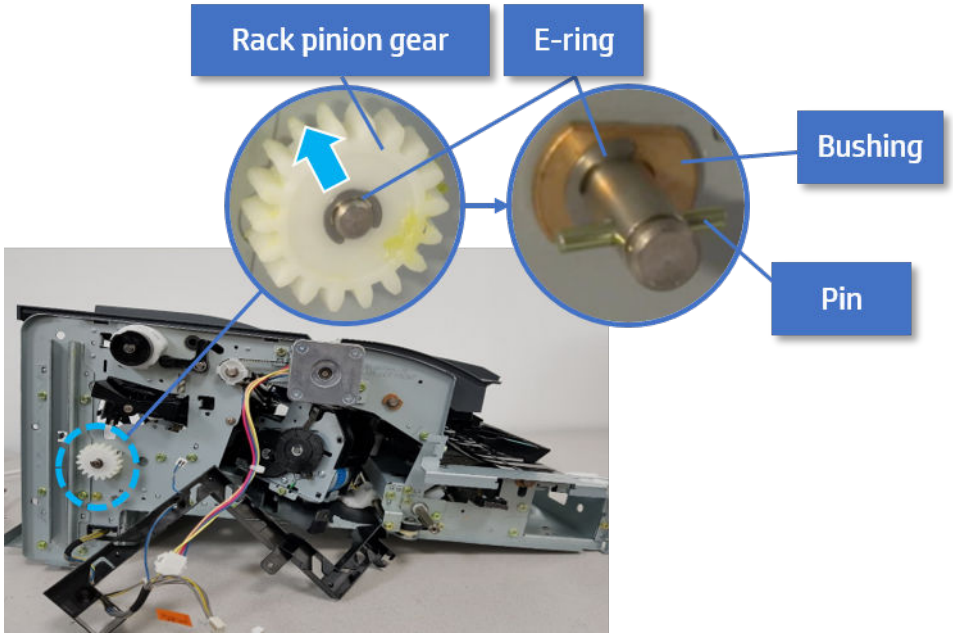
1. Remove the paper holding actuator spring.

Figure 6-549 Remove the paper holding actuator spring



2. Remove the e-ring and the rack pinion gear. And then remove the pin and the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

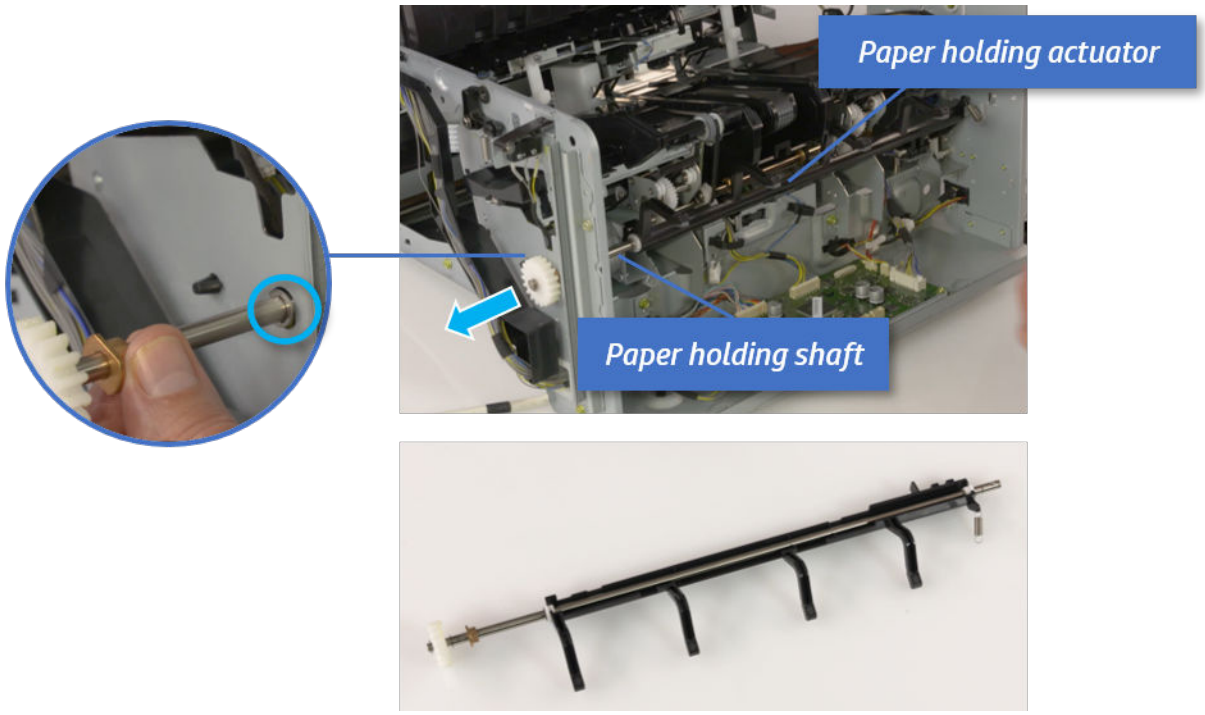
Figure 6-550 Remove e-ring, rack pinion gear, pin, and bushing



NOTE: Be sure not to lose the pin.

3. Carefully remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator.

Figure 6-551 Remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator

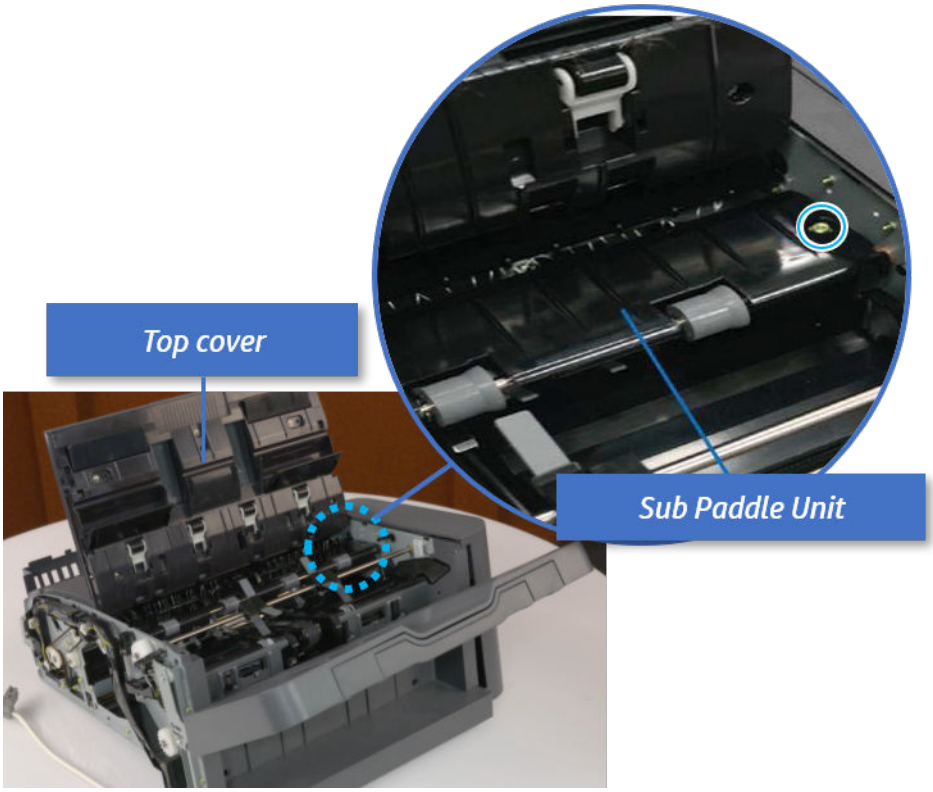


Remove the sub paddle unit

Follow these steps to remove the sub paddle unit.

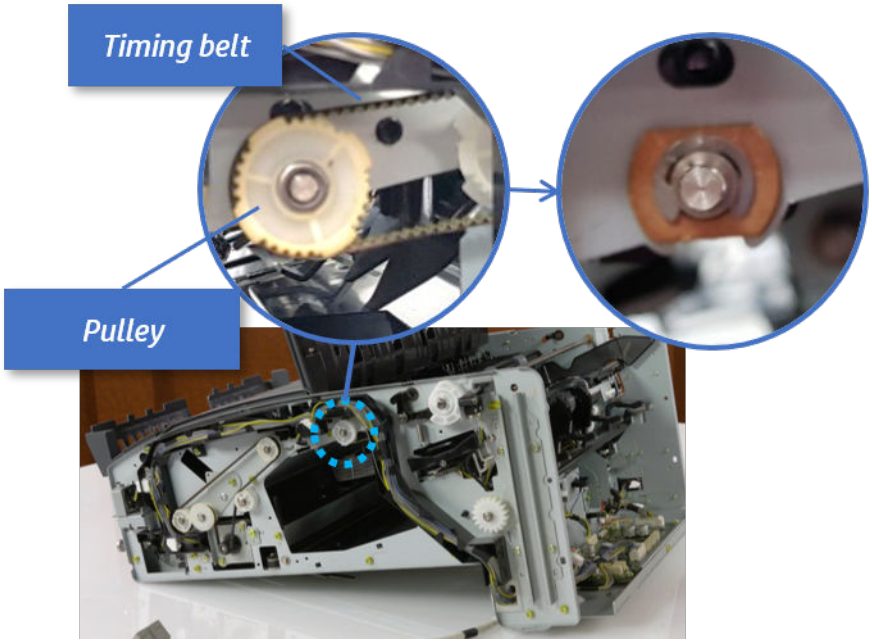
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw securing the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-552 Remove one screw



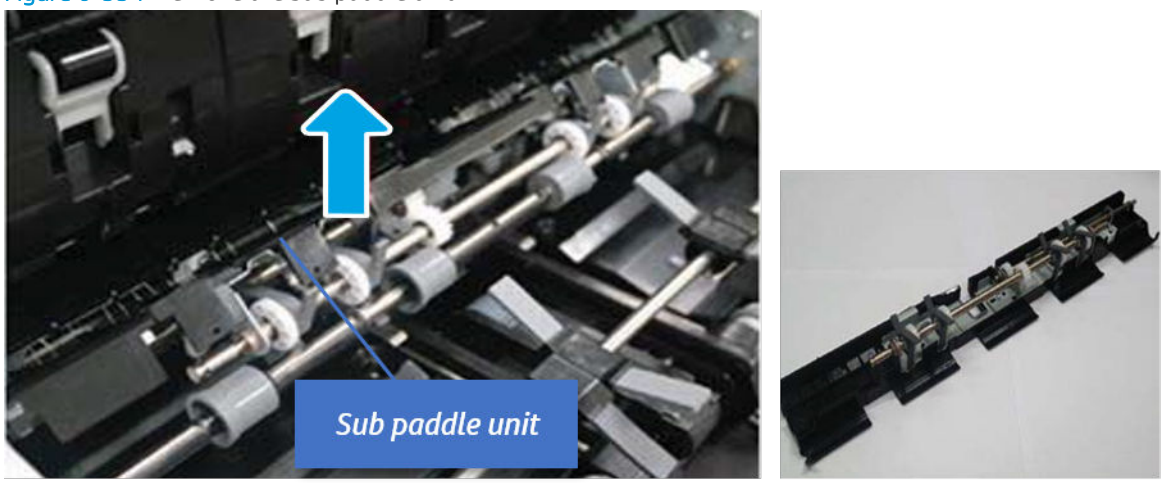
2. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt. And then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-553 Remove the e-ring, pulley, timing belt, and bushing



3. Lift up and remove the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-554 Remove the sub paddle unit

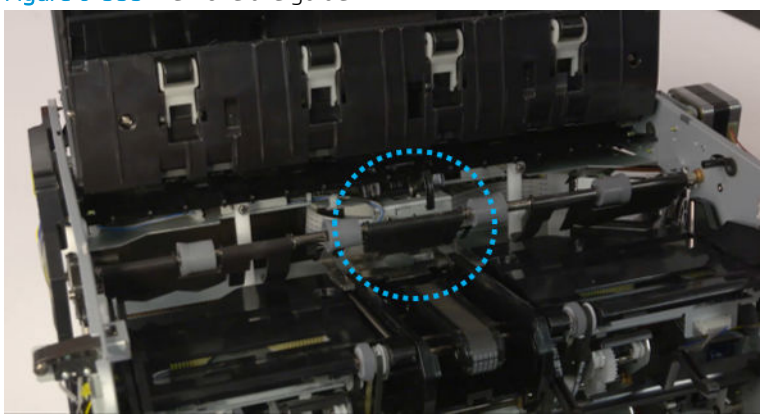


Remove the exit roller

Follow these steps to remove the exit roller.

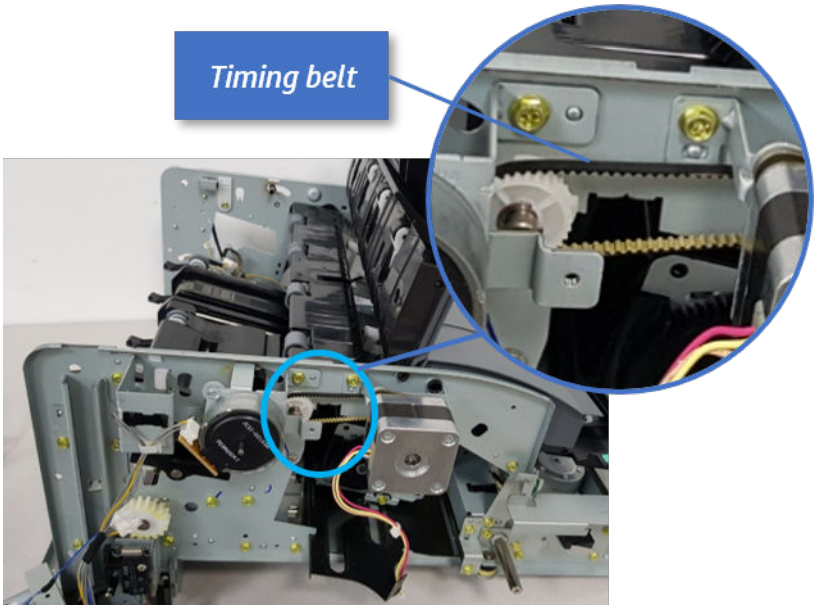
1. Remove the guide on the center of the exit roller.

Figure 6-555 Remove the guide



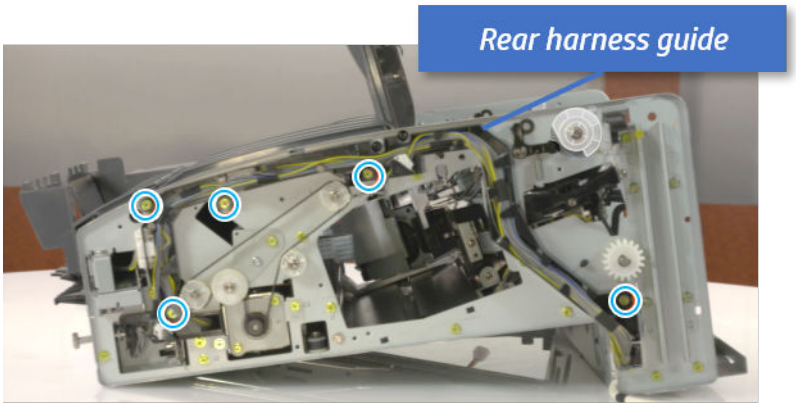
2. On the front of the inner finisher, release the timing belt connected to the exit motor.

Figure 6-556 Release the timing belt



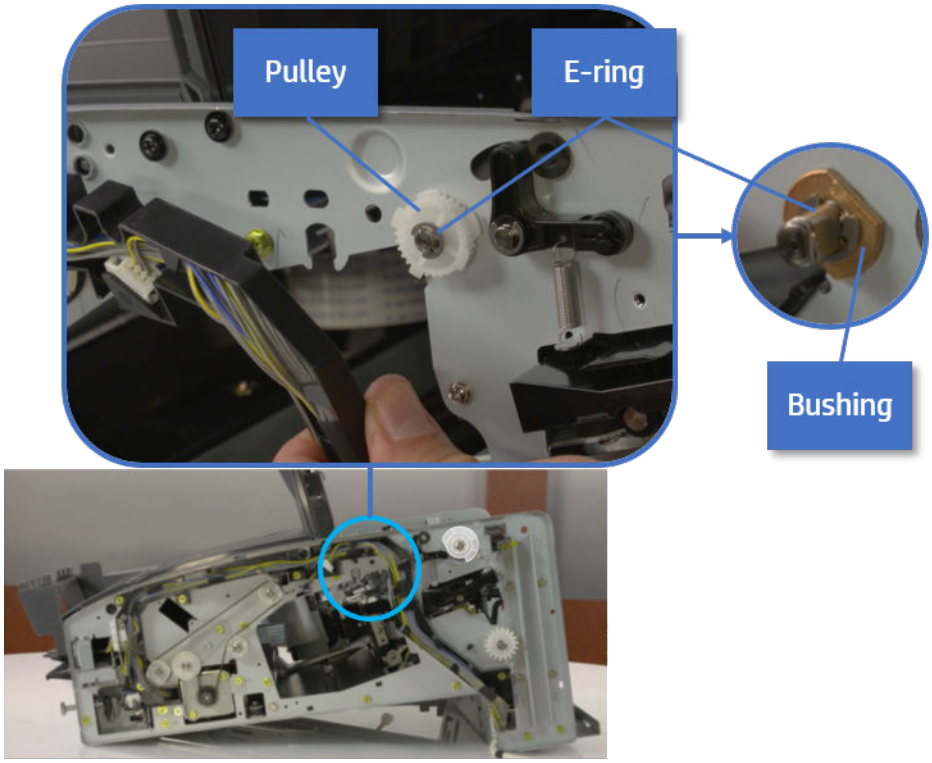
3. Remove five screws securing the rear harness guide.

Figure 6-557 Remove five screws



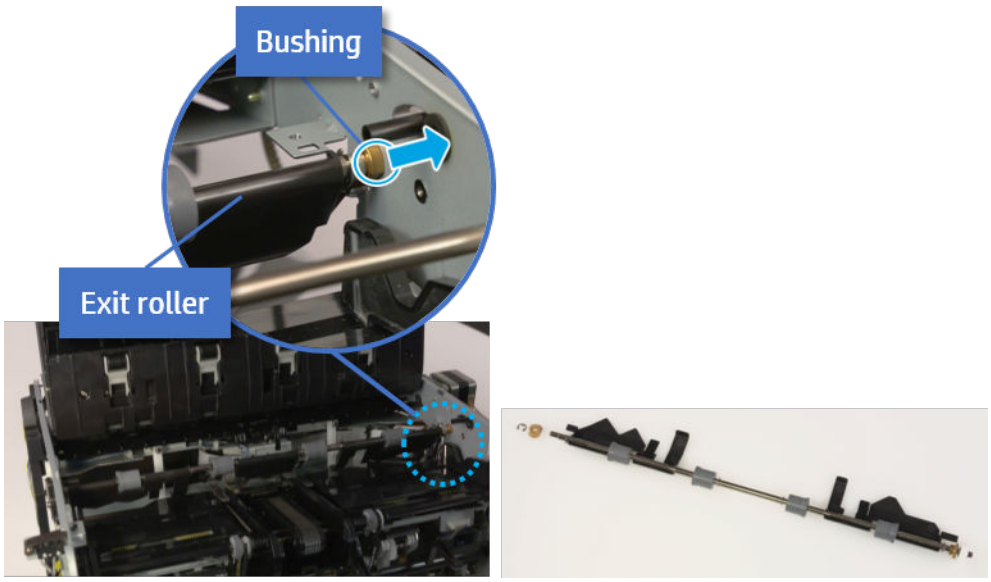
4. On the rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and the pulley and then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-558 Remove e-ring, pulley, and bushing



5. Push the bushing to detach it, and then remove the exit roller.

Figure 6-559 Remove the exit roller

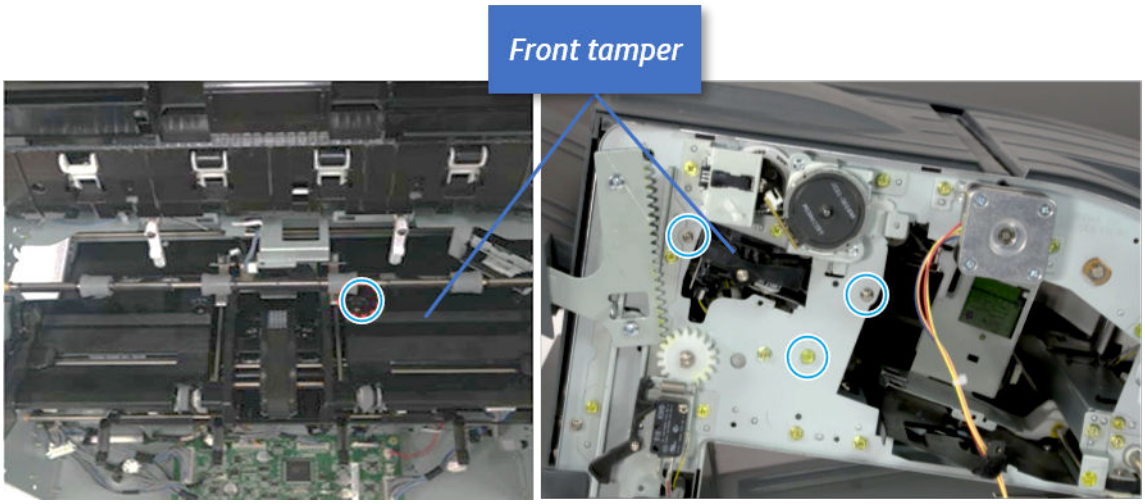


Remove the front tamper

Follow these steps to remove the front tamper.

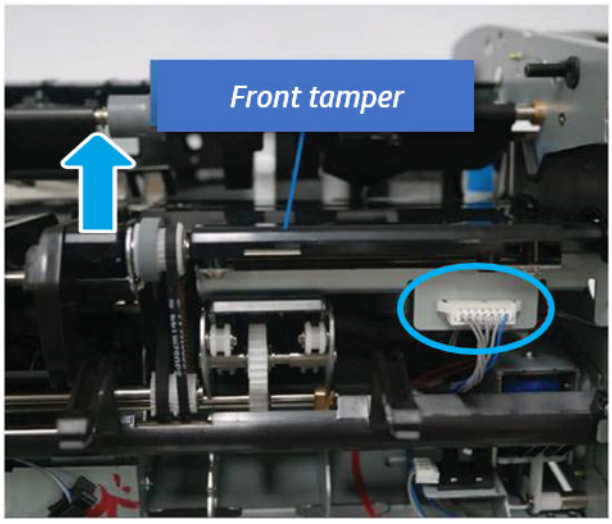
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-560 Remove four screws



2. Unplug the connector and release the hook, and then pull the front tamper up to remove.

Figure 6-561 Remove the front tamper



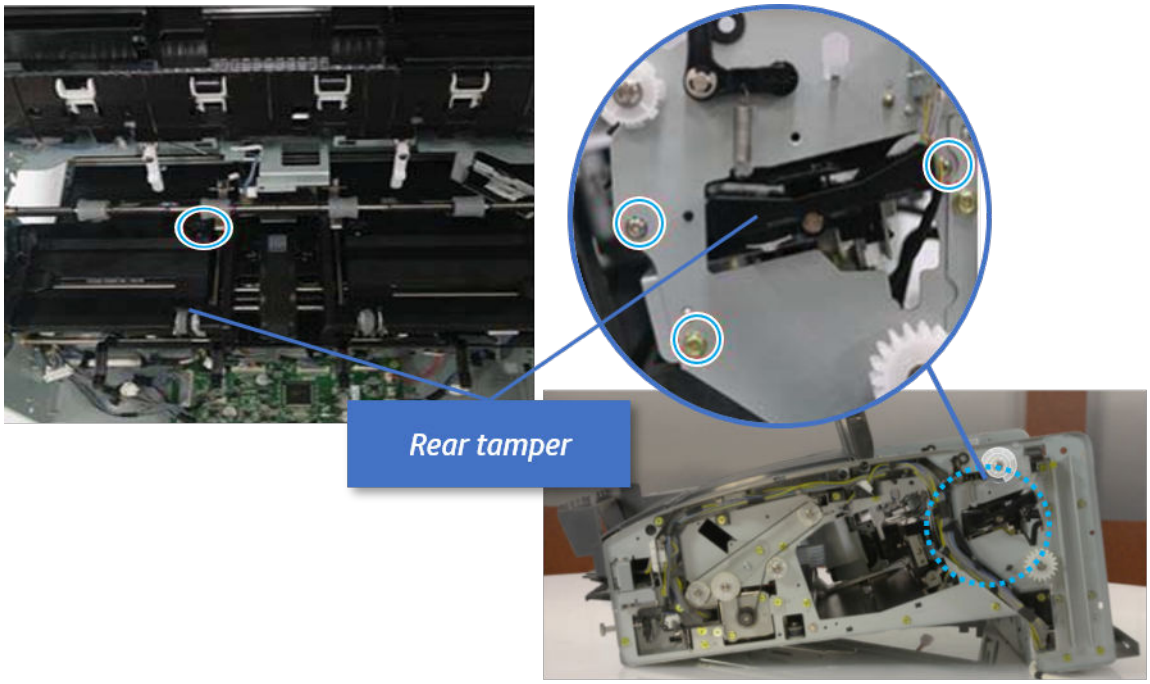
Remove the rear tamper

Follow these steps to remove the rear tamper.

1. Remove four screws.

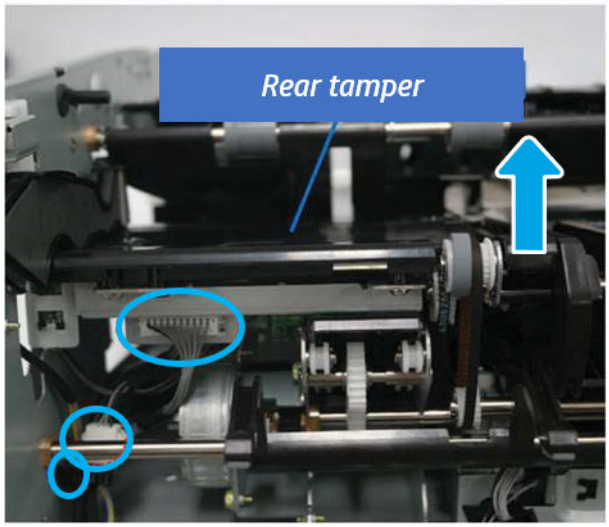
NOTE: Move cable guideout of position to access the screws.

Figure 6-562 Remove four screws



2. Unplug two connectors and release the hook, and then remove the rear tamper.

Figure 6-563 Remove the rear tamper

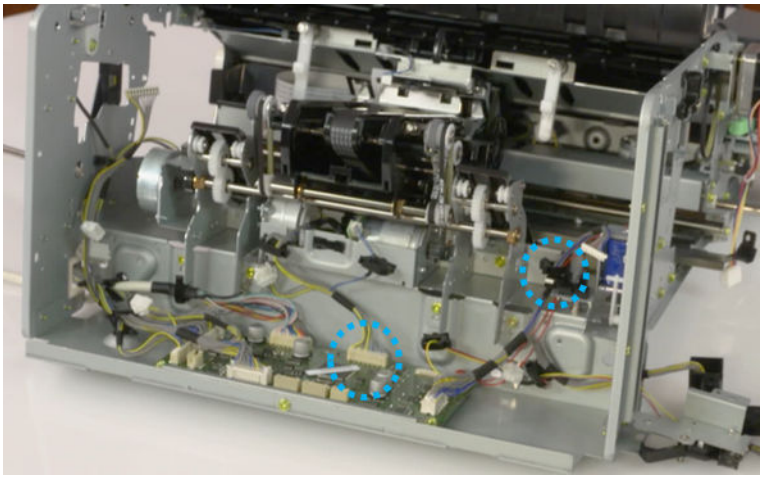


Remove the ejector & paper support assembly

Follow these steps to remove the ejector & paper support assembly.

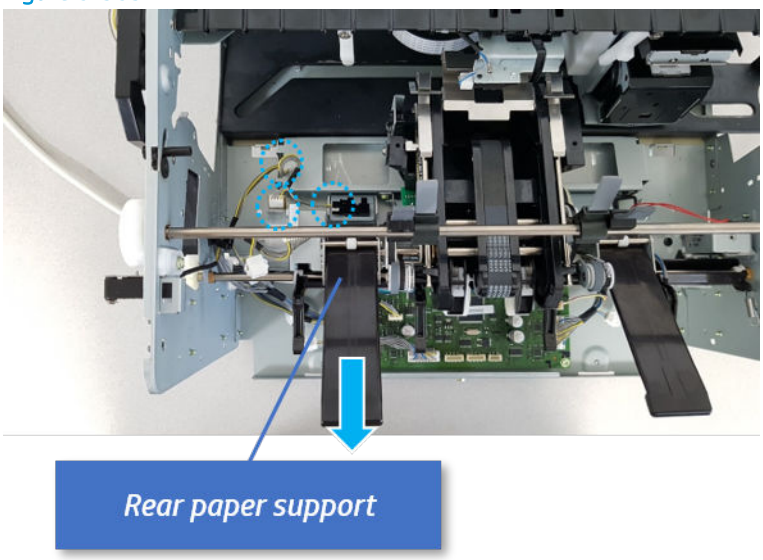
1. Open one clamp, disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-564 Disconnect one connector



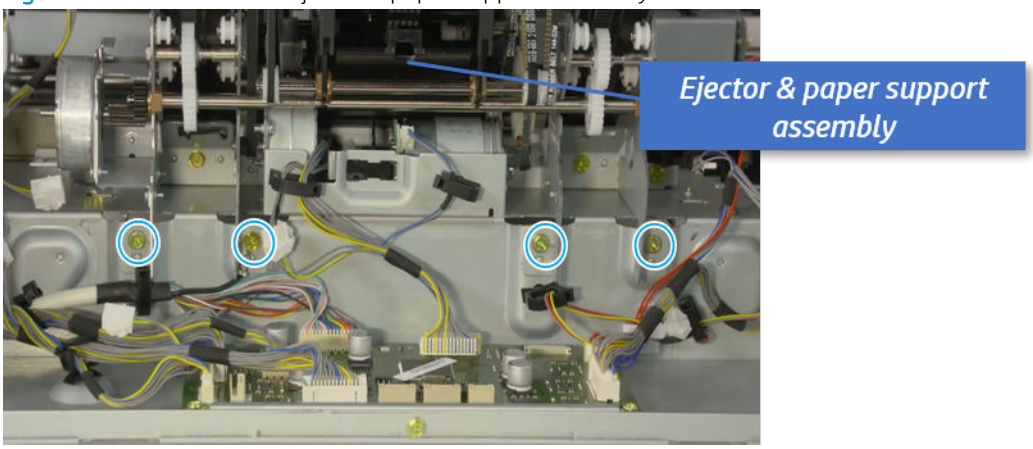
2. Pull the rear paper support up, and then release one clamp and disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-565 Disconnect two connector



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the ejector & paper support assembly.

Figure 6-566 Remove the ejector & paper support assembly

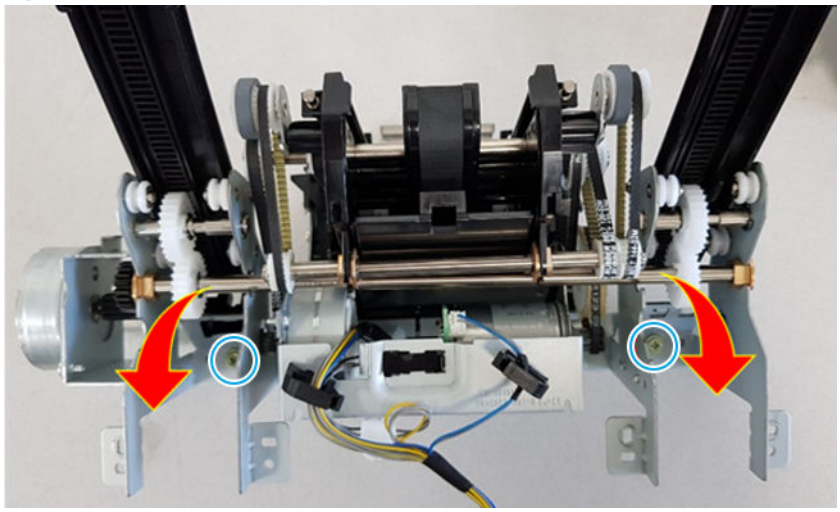


Remove the front paper support and the rear paper support

Follow these steps to remove the front paper support and the rear paper support.

- ▲ Remove two screws, and then pull the paper support assembly out of ejector assembly.

Figure 6-567 Remove paper support assembly

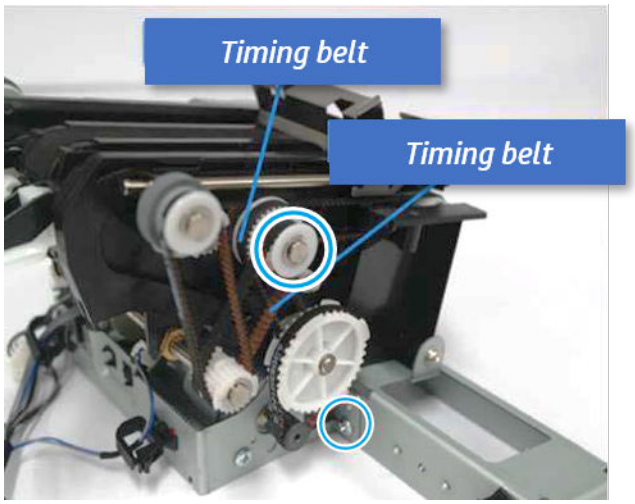


Remove the ejector motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the ejector motor assembly.

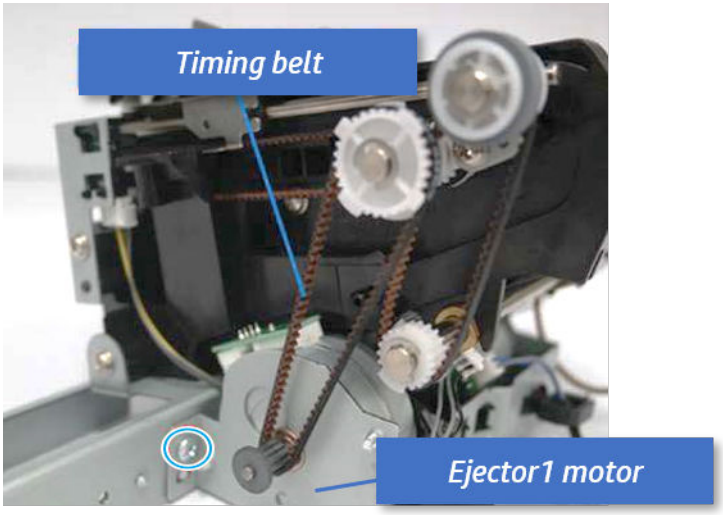
1. Remove the e-ring and washer. Remove two timing belts, and then remove one screw.

Figure 6-568 Remove e-ring, washer, belt, and screw



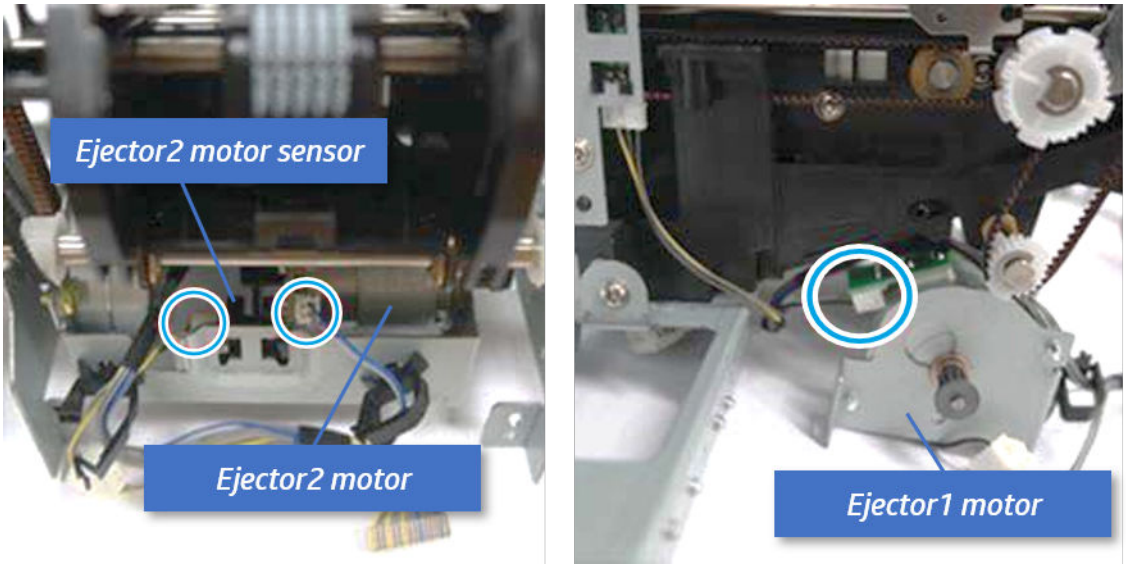
2. Remove the timing belt, and then remove one screw.

Figure 6-569 Remove the belt, screw



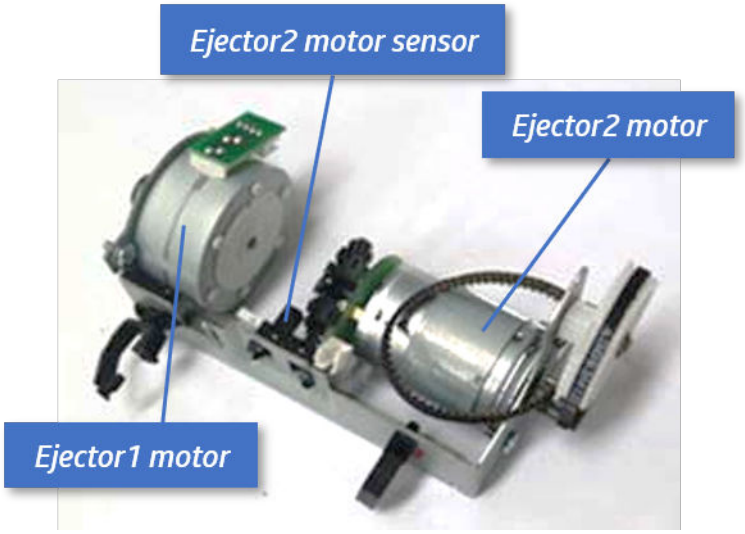
3. Remove the cable from clamp, and then disconnect two motor connectors and the sensor connector.

Figure 6-570 Disconnect the motor and sensor connectors



4. Remove the ejector motor assembly.

Figure 6-571 Remove the ejector motor assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Ejector assembly (include end fence, S10/ S16)

Learn how to remove and replace the ejector assembly.

View videos on how to remove and reassemble the inner finisher below:

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-62 Part information

Part number	Part description
SS456-61001	Ejector

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

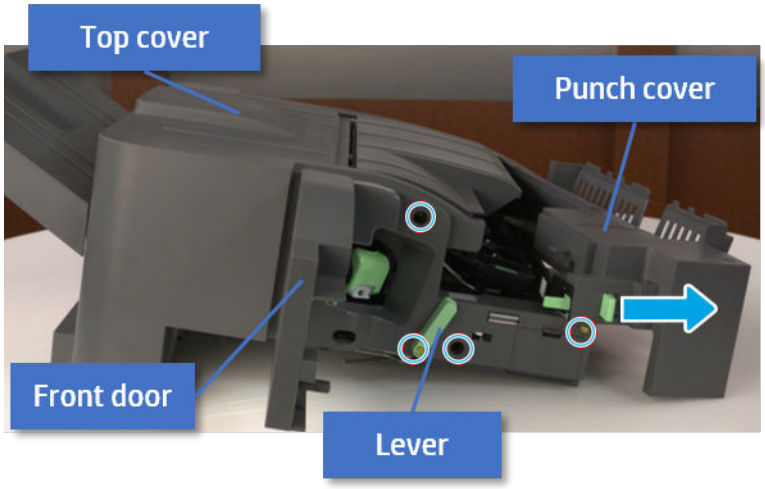
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-572 Remove the front cover

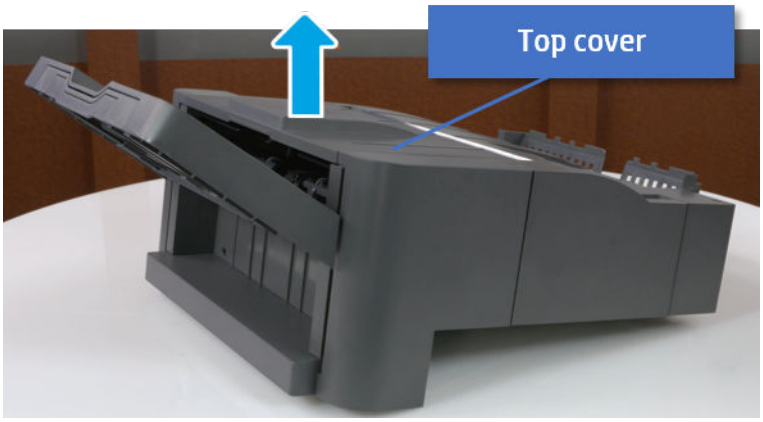


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

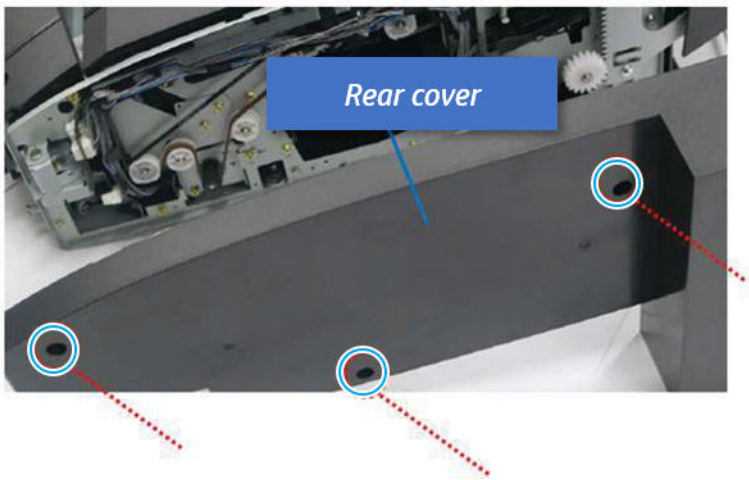
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-573 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-574 Remove the rear cover

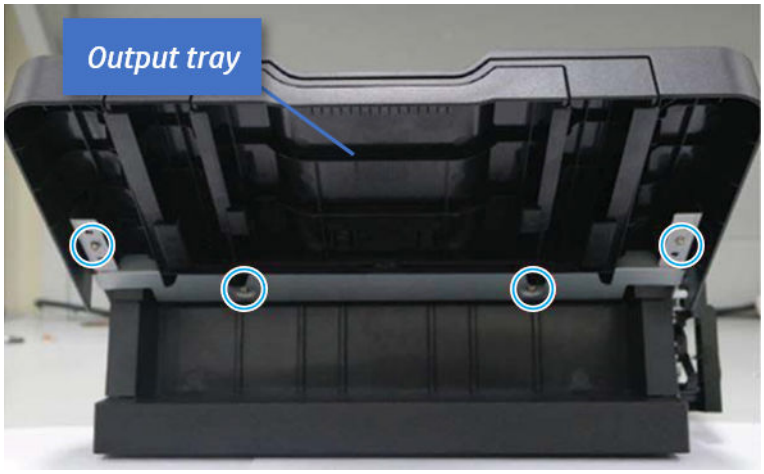


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-575 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

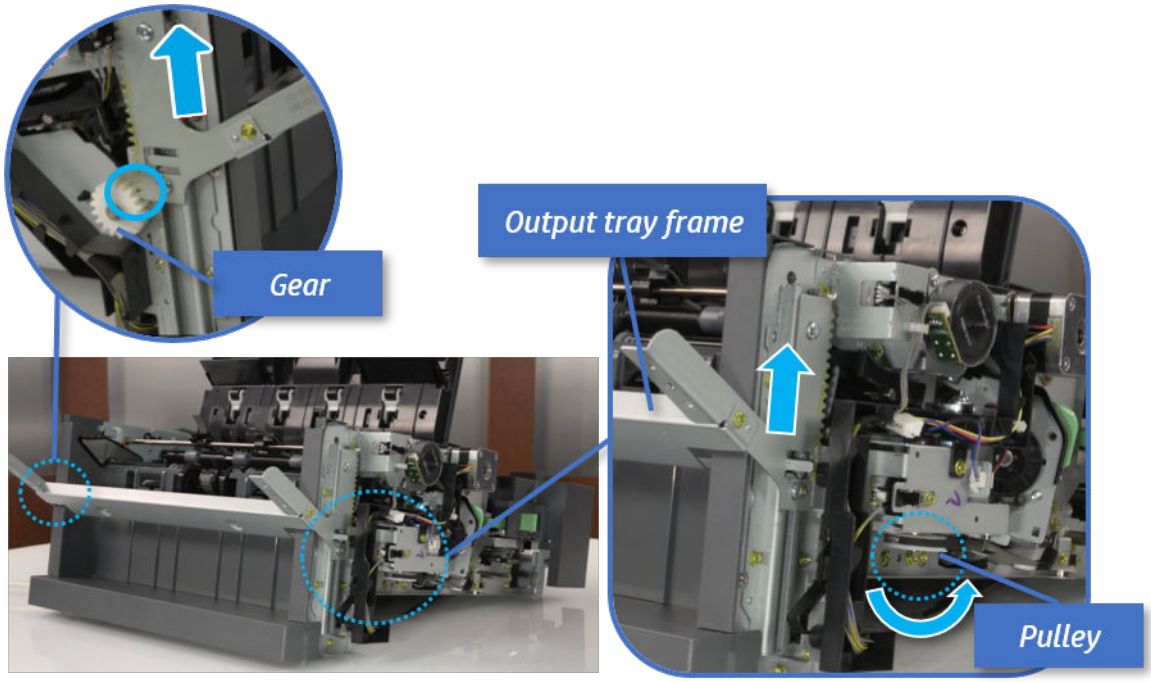
Figure 6-576 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

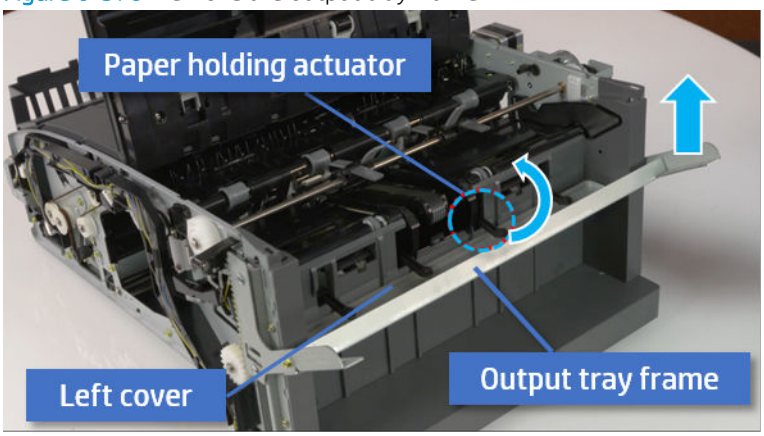
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-577 Remove the pulley



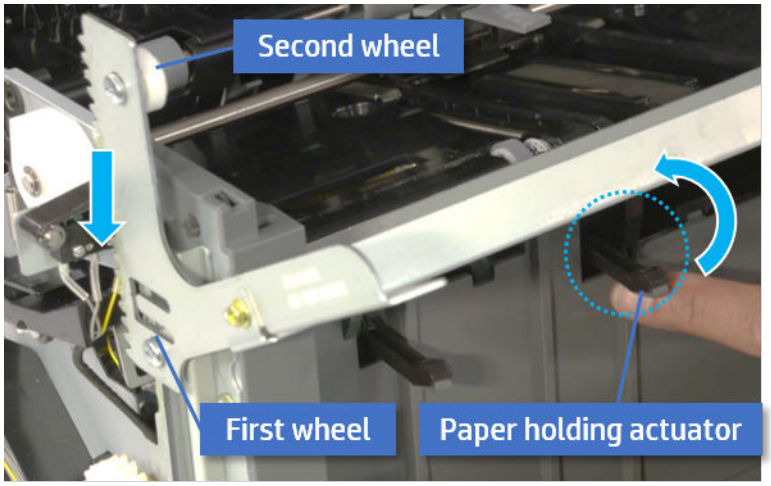
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-578 Remove the output tray frame



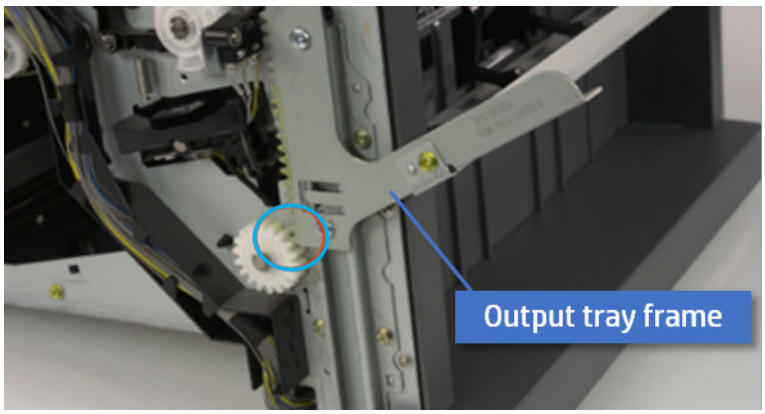
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

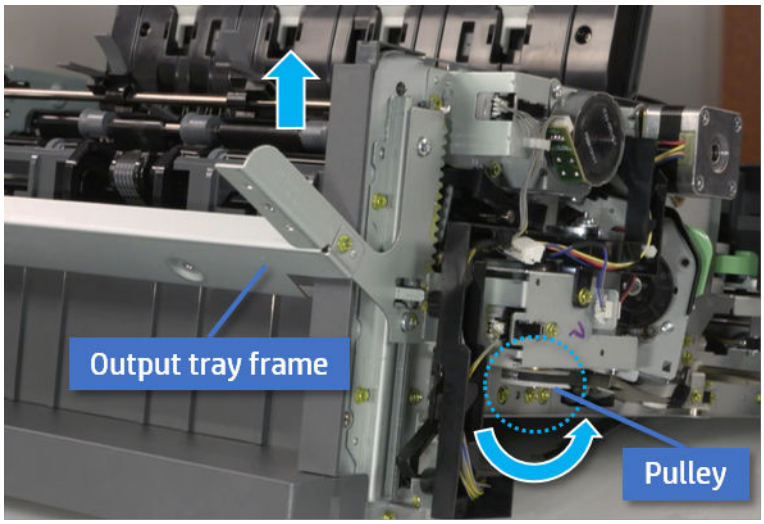


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

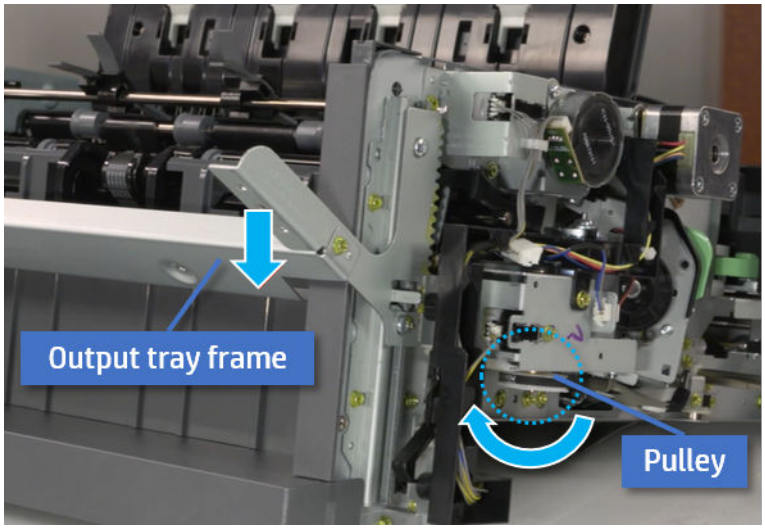
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

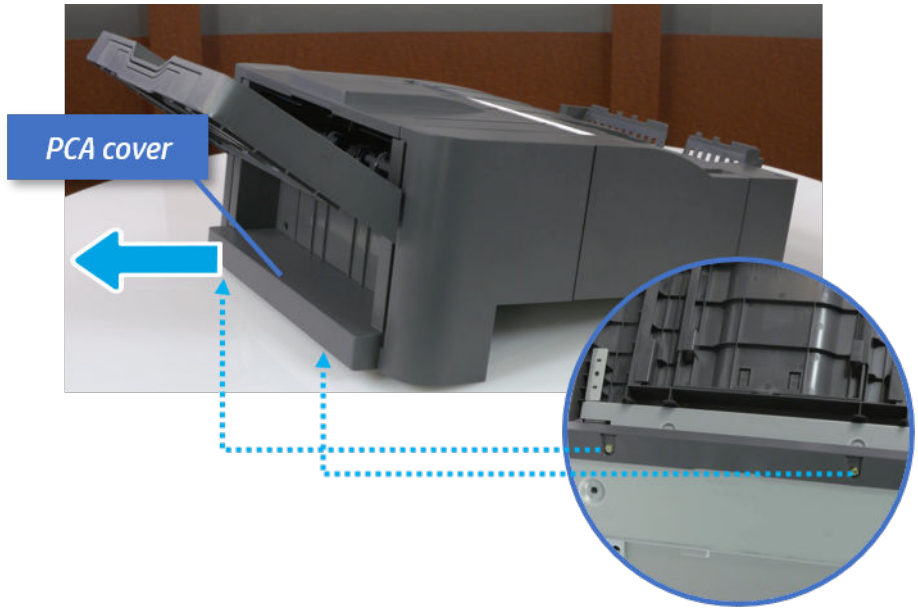


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

- ▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-579 Remove the PCA cover

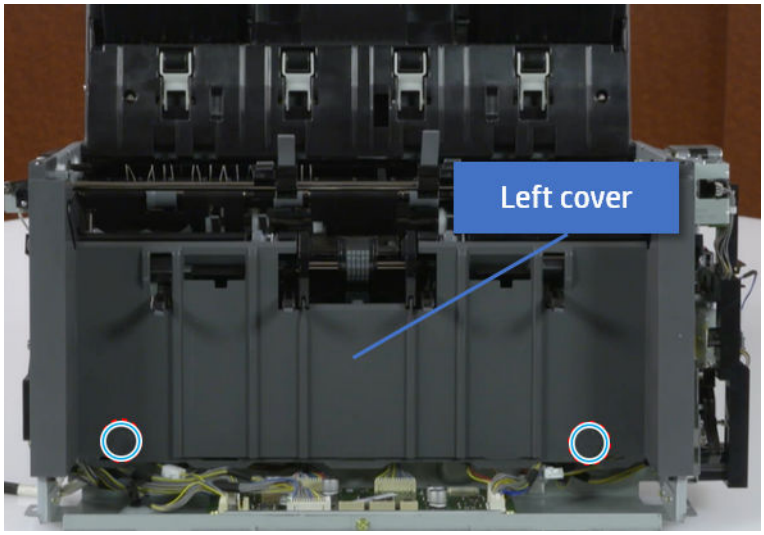


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

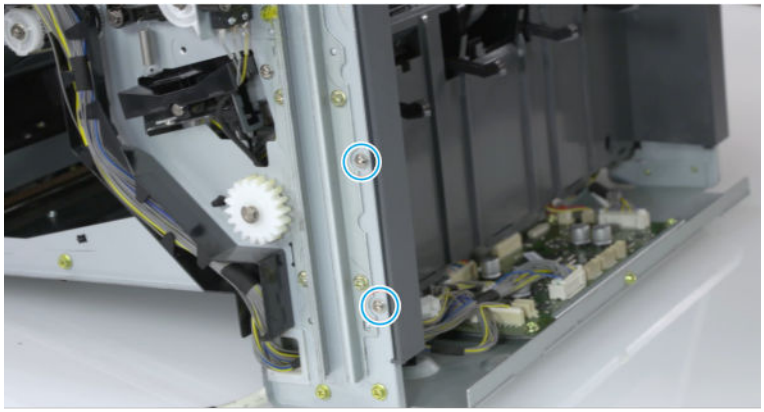
1. Remove two screws.

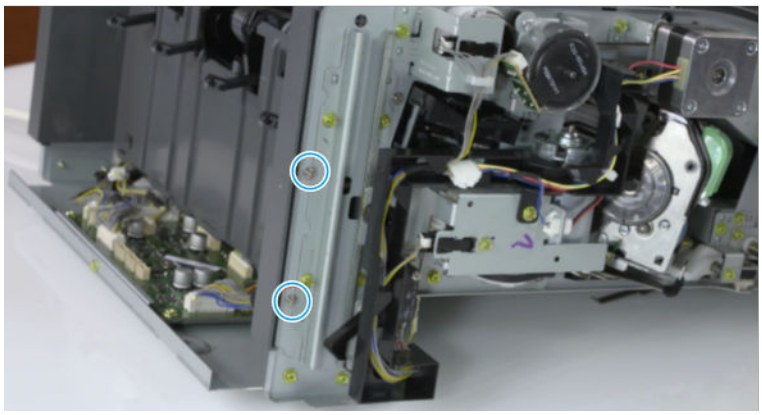
Figure 6-580 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

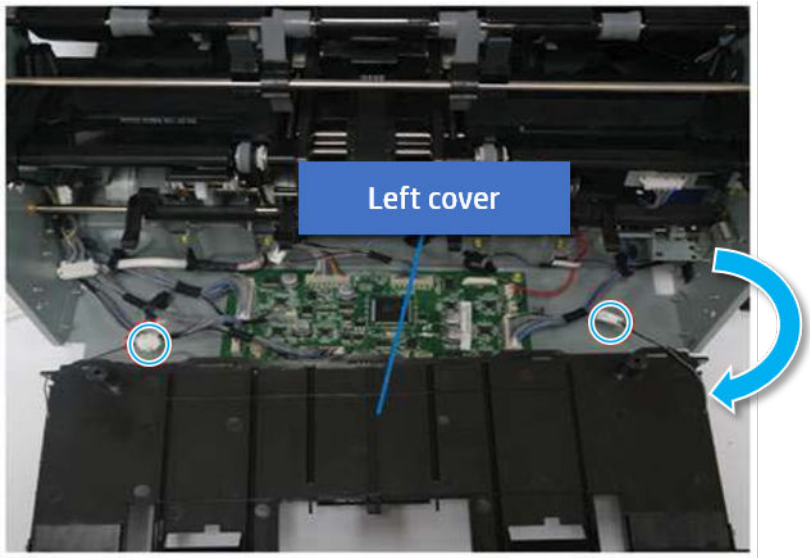
Figure 6-581 Remove four screws



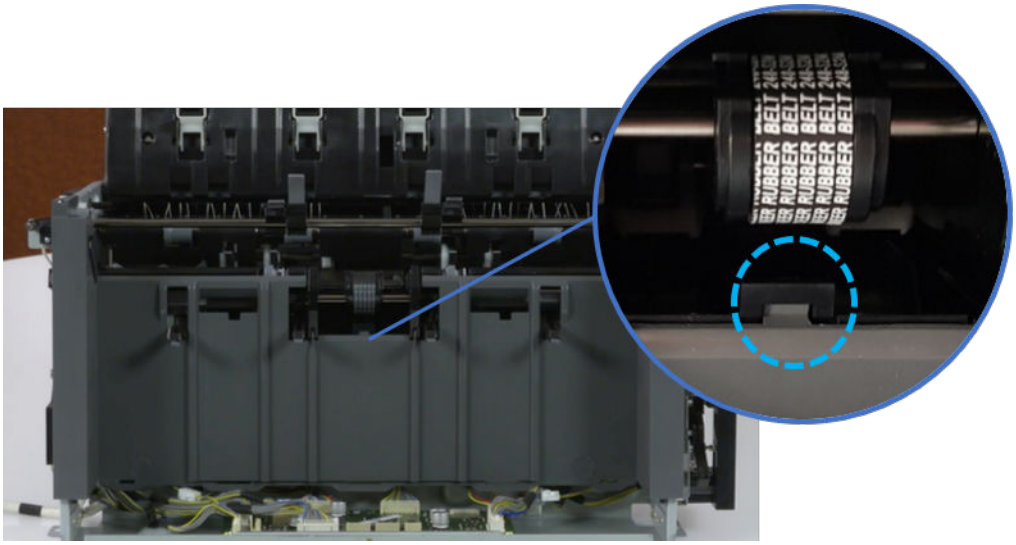


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-582 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



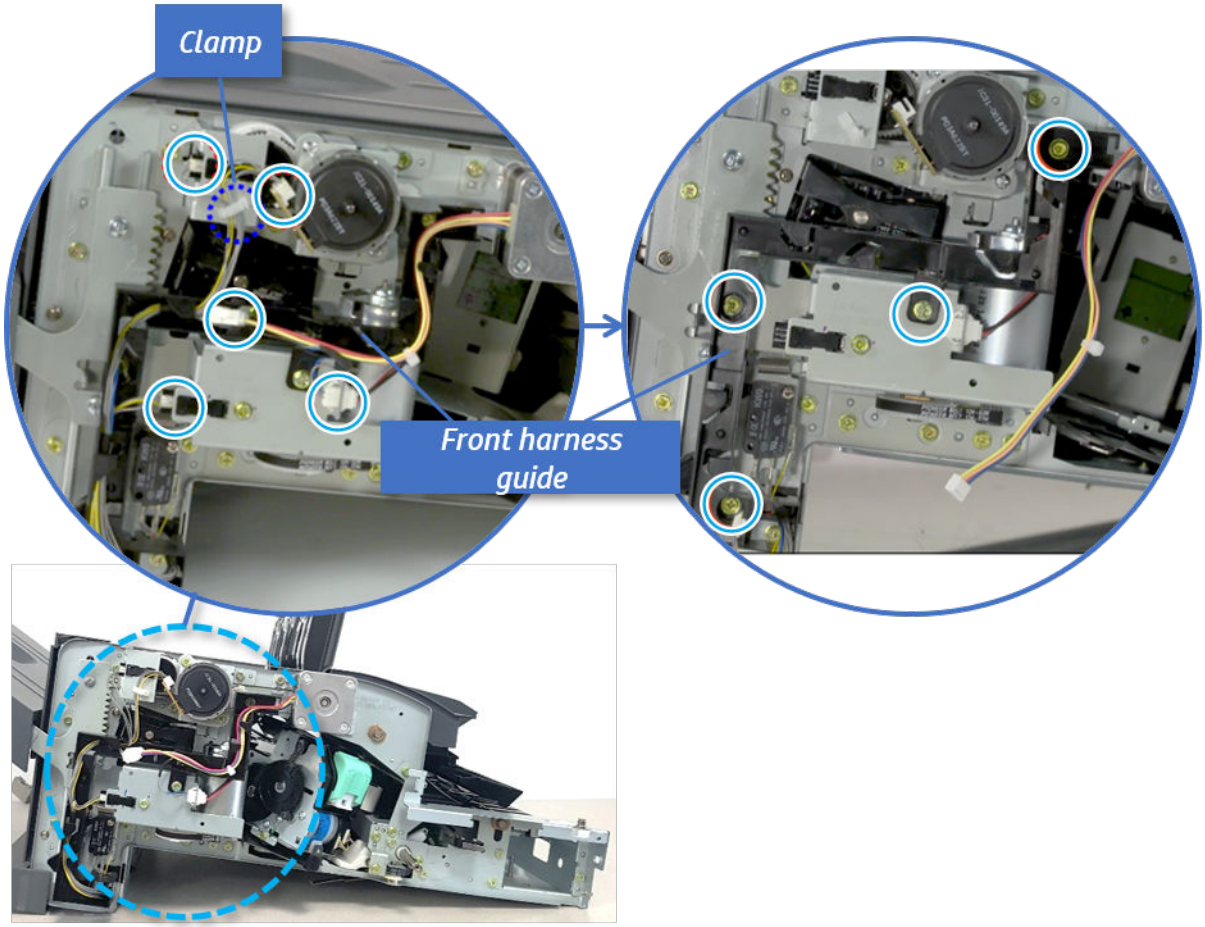
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-583 Remove the front harness guide

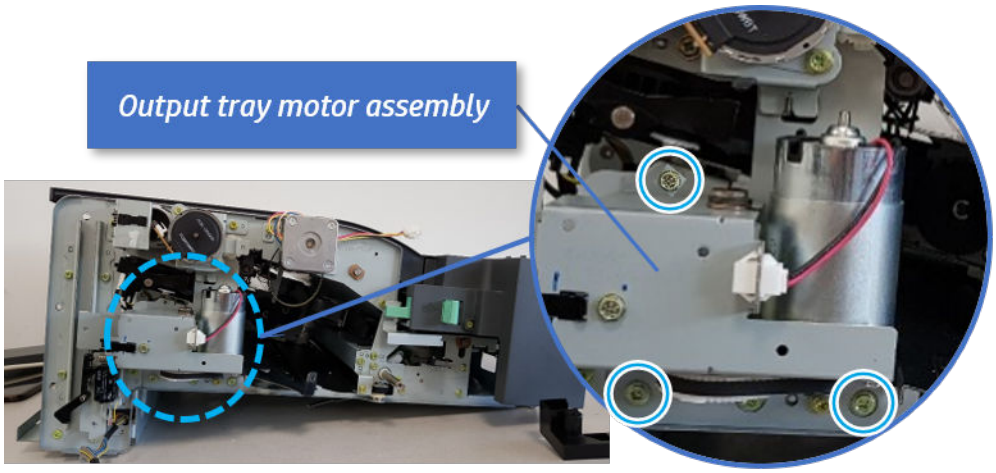


Remove the output tray motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor assembly.

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-584 Remove the output tray motor assembly

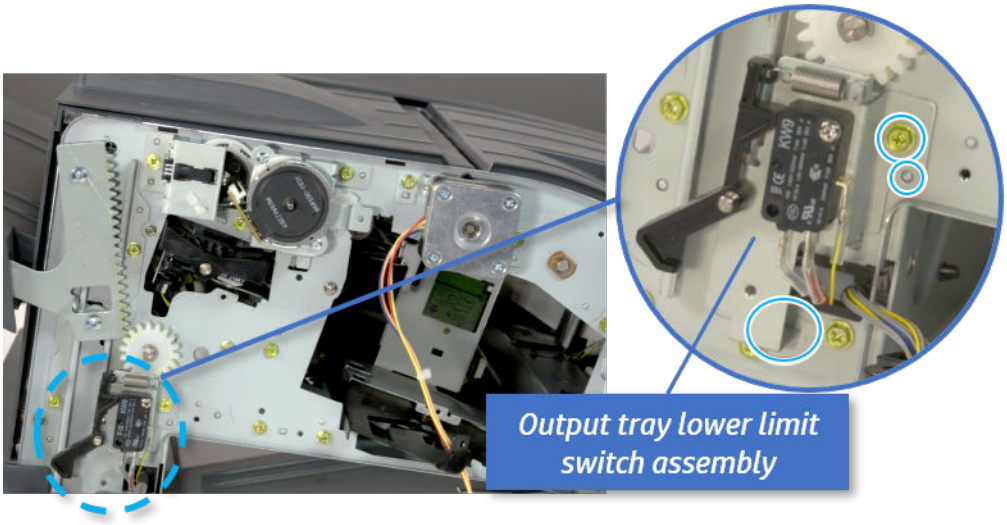


Remove the output tray lower limit switch

Follow these steps to remove the output tray lower limit switch.

▲ Remove one screw, and then remove the output tray lower limit switch.

Figure 6-585 Remove the output tray lower limit switch

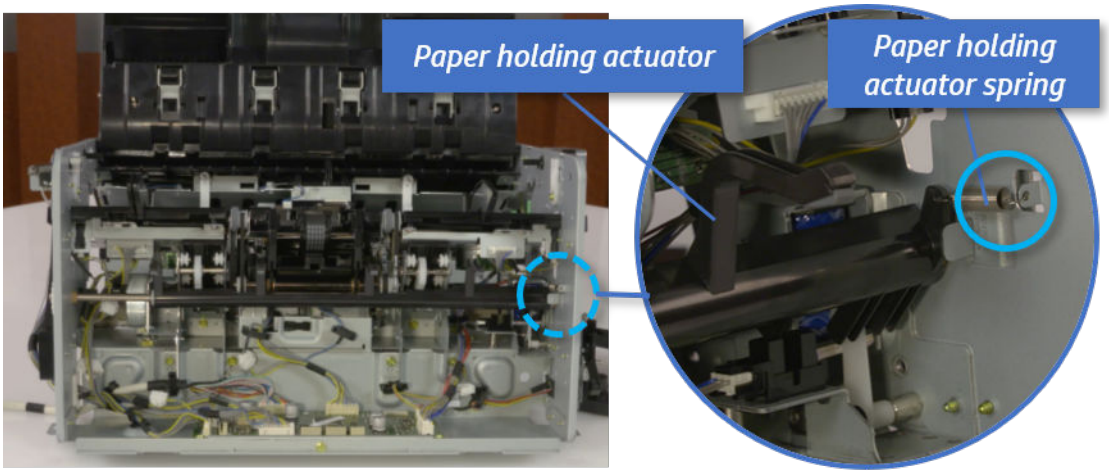


Remove the paper holding

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding.

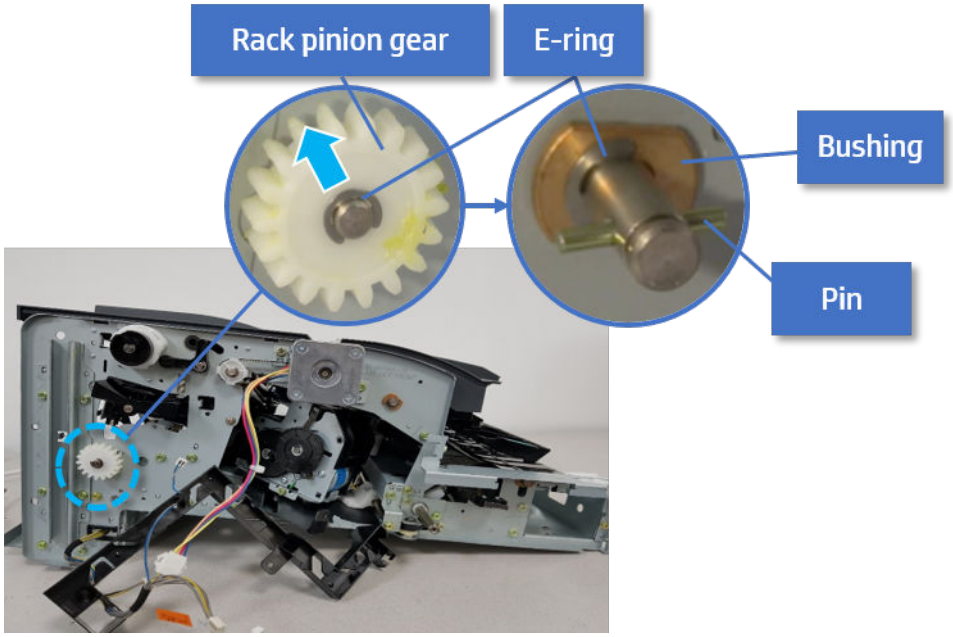
1. Remove the paper holding actuator spring.

Figure 6-586 Remove the paper holding actuator spring



2. Remove the e-ring and the rack pinion gear. And then remove the pin and the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

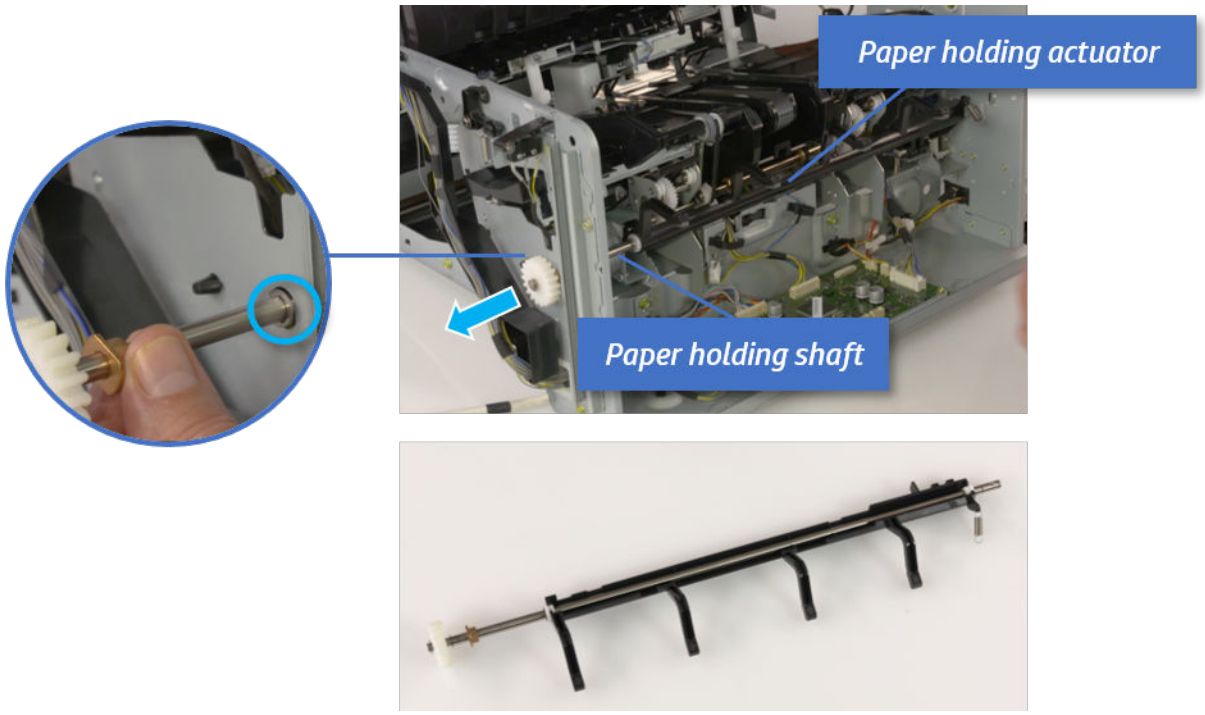
Figure 6-587 Remove e-ring, rack pinion gear, pin, and bushing



NOTE: Be sure not to lose the pin.

3. Carefully remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator.

Figure 6-588 Remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator

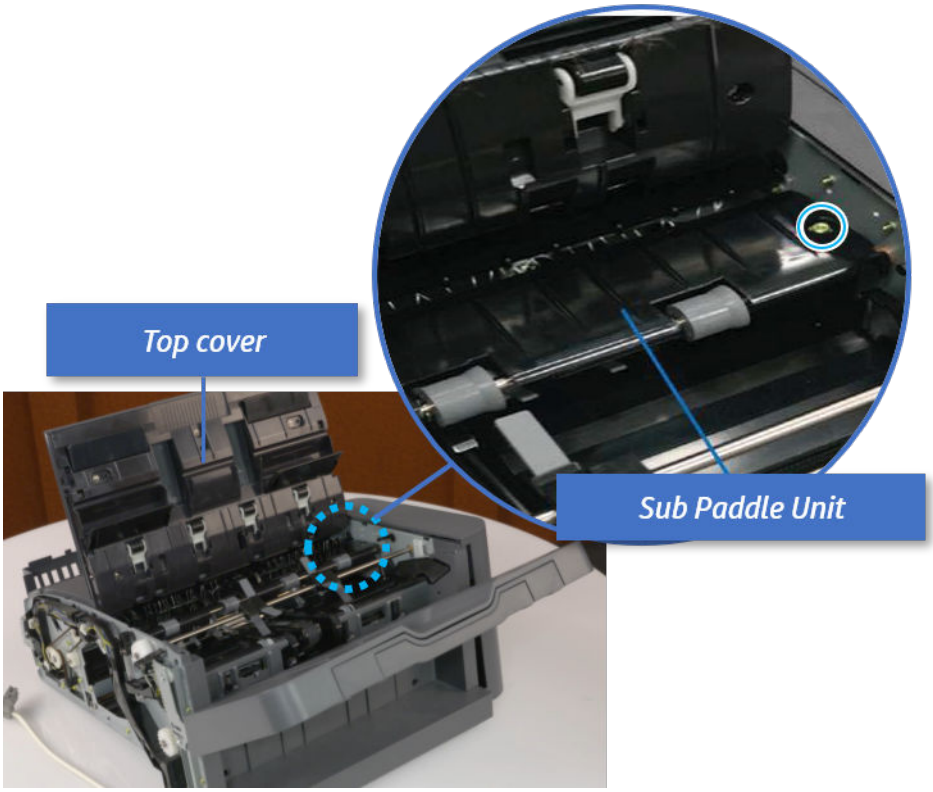


Remove the sub paddle unit

Follow these steps to remove the sub paddle unit.

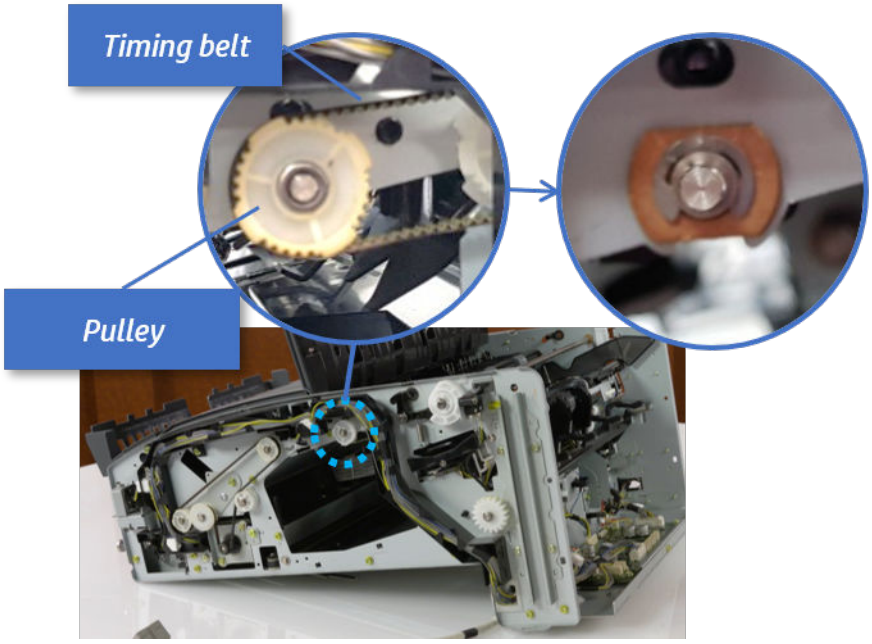
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw securing the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-589 Remove one screw



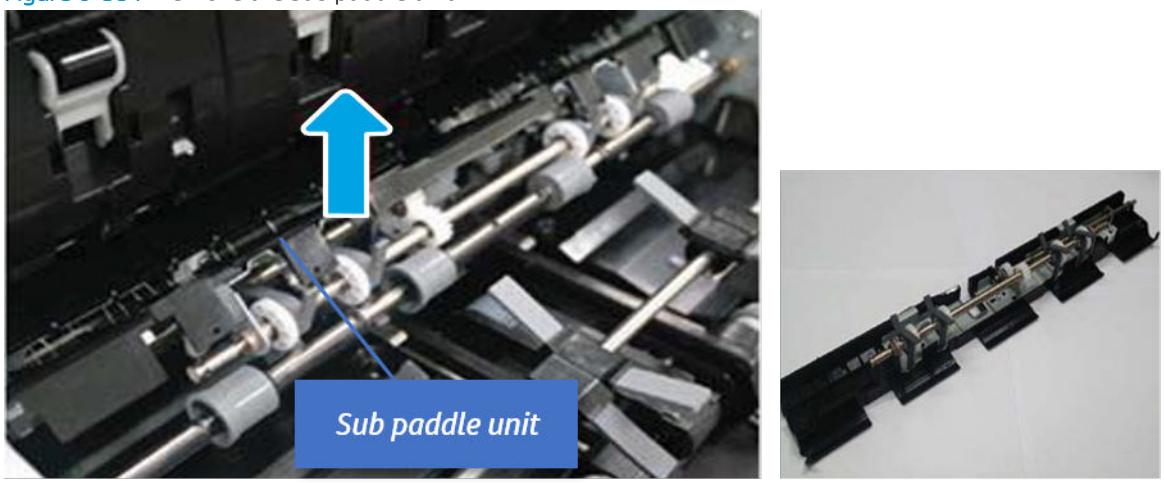
2. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt. And then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-590 Remove the e-ring, pulley, timing belt, and bushing



3. Lift up and remove the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-591 Remove the sub paddle unit

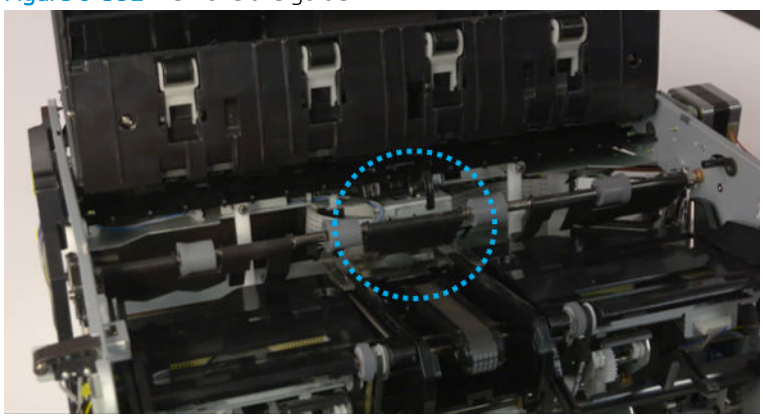


Remove the exit roller

Follow these steps to remove the exit roller.

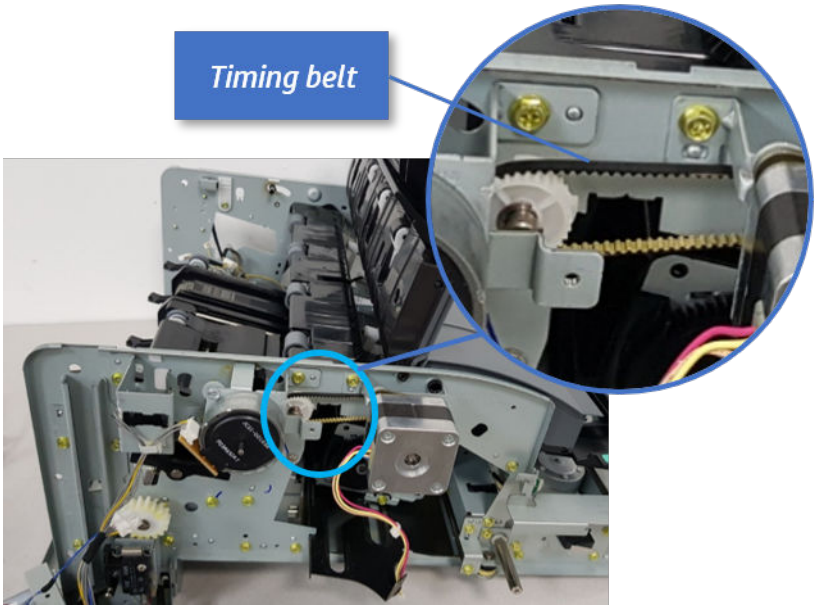
1. Remove the guide on the center of the exit roller.

Figure 6-592 Remove the guide



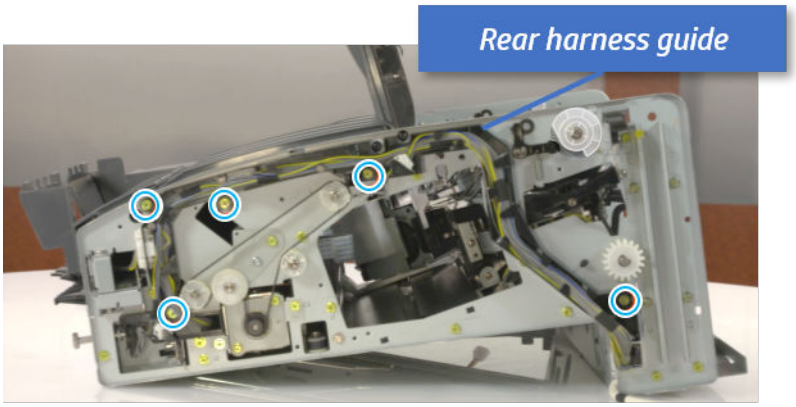
2. On the front of the inner finisher, release the timing belt connected to the exit motor.

Figure 6-593 Release the timing belt



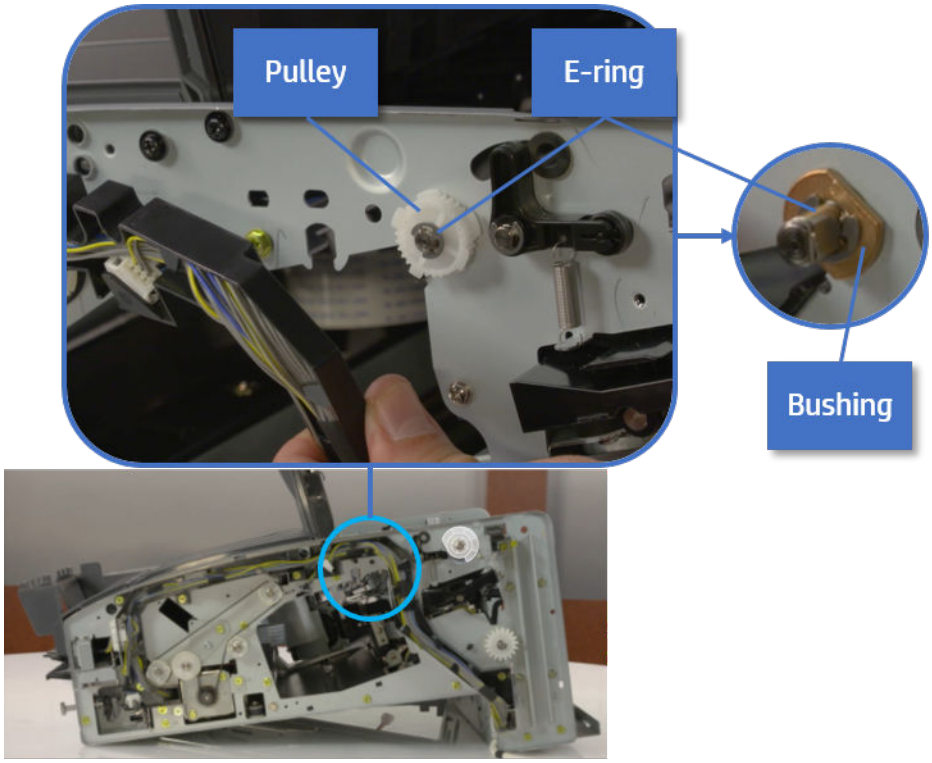
3. Remove five screws securing the rear harness guide.

Figure 6-594 Remove five screws



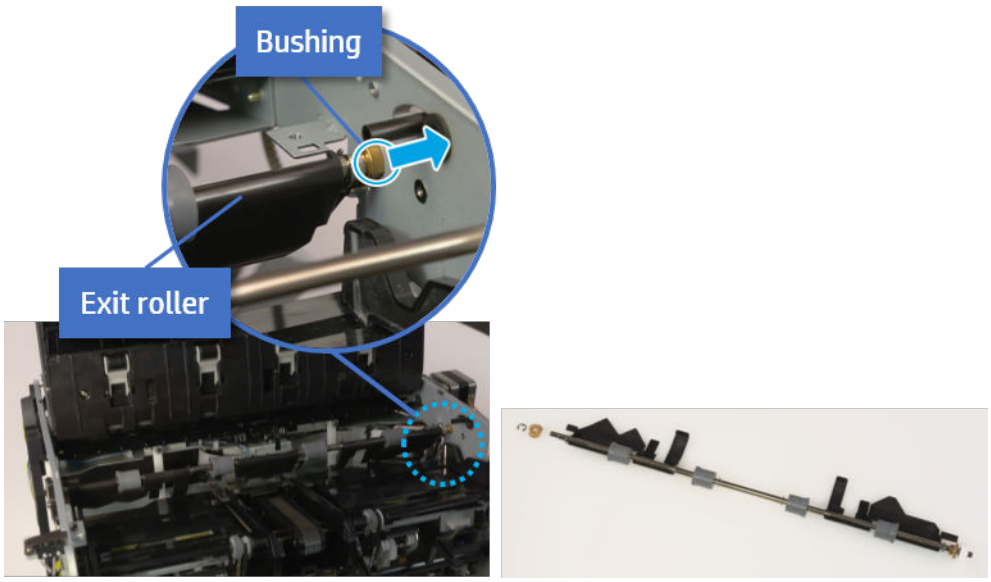
4. On the rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and the pulley and then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-595 Remove e-ring, pulley, and bushing



5. Push the bushing to detach it, and then remove the exit roller.

Figure 6-596 Remove the exit roller

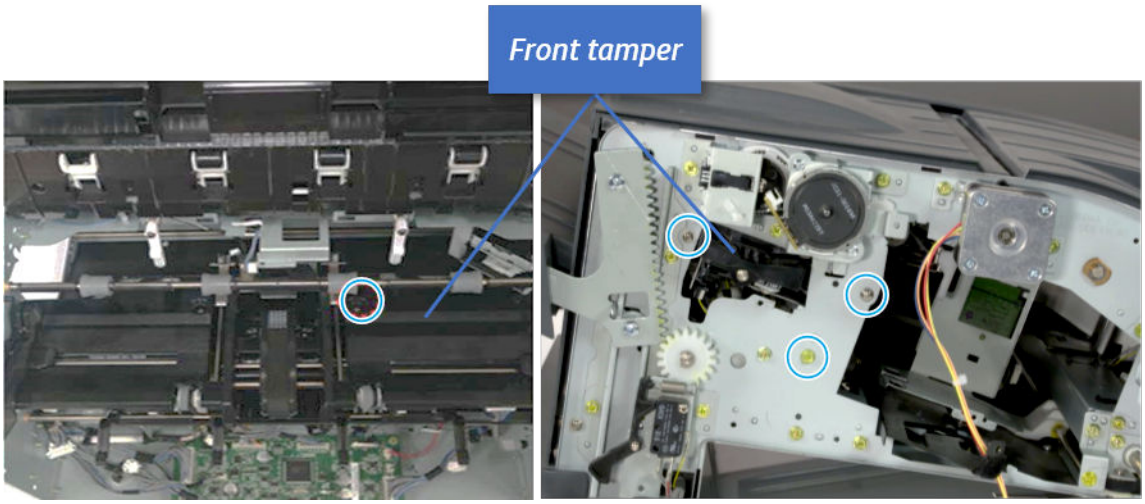


Remove the front tamper

Follow these steps to remove the front tamper.

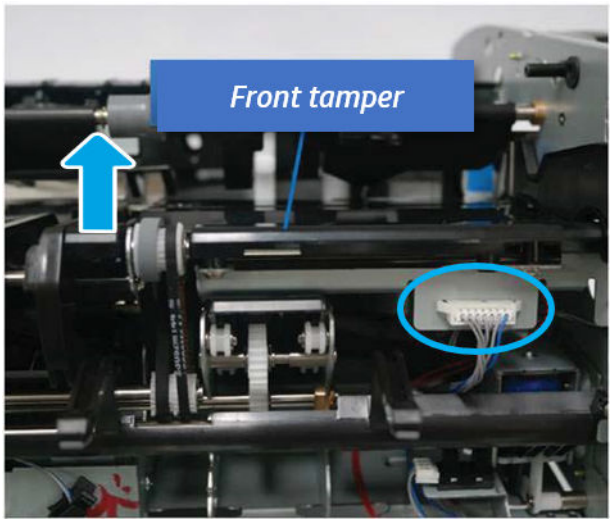
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-597 Remove four screws



2. Unplug the connector and release the hook, and then pull the front tamper up to remove.

Figure 6-598 Remove the front tamper



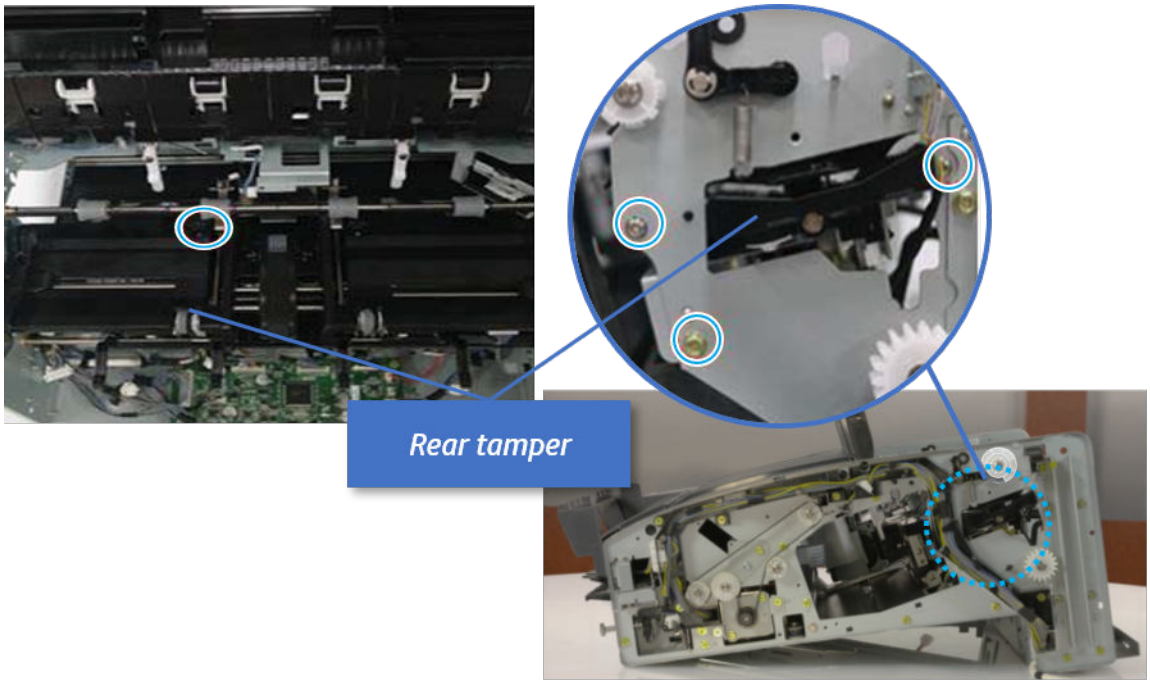
Remove the rear tamper

Follow these steps to remove the rear tamper.

1. Remove four screws.

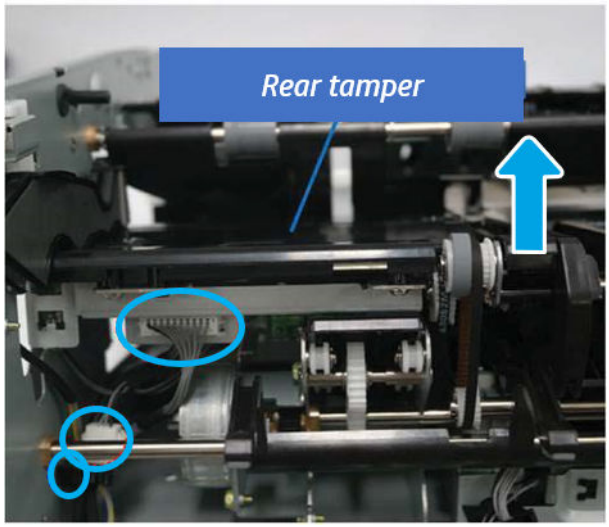
NOTE: Move cable guideout of position to access the screws.

Figure 6-599 Remove four screws



2. Unplug two connectors and release the hook, and then remove the rear tamper.

Figure 6-600 Remove the rear tamper

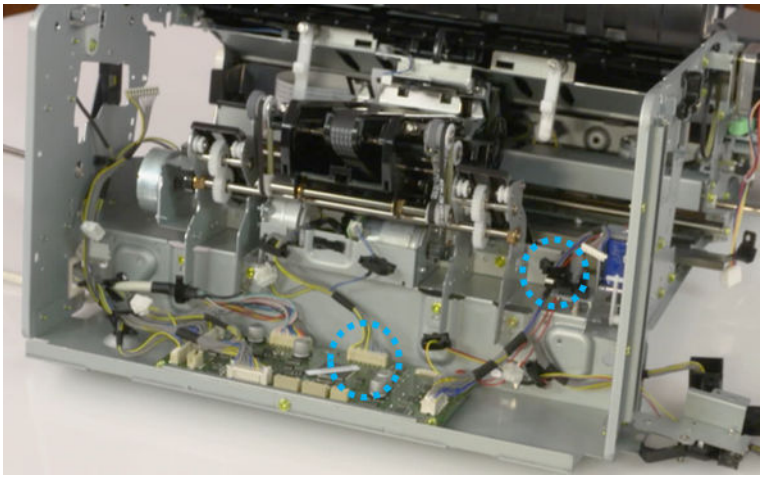


Remove the ejector & paper support assembly

Follow these steps to remove the ejector & paper support assembly.

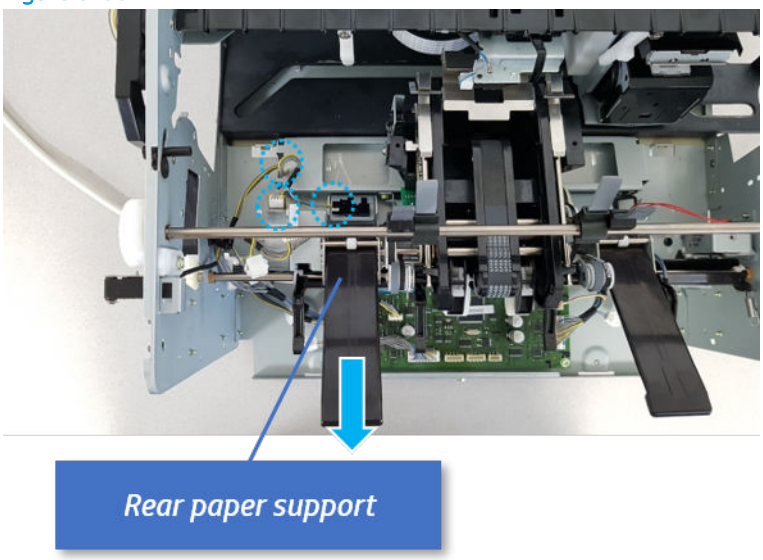
1. Open one clamp, disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-601 Disconnect one connector



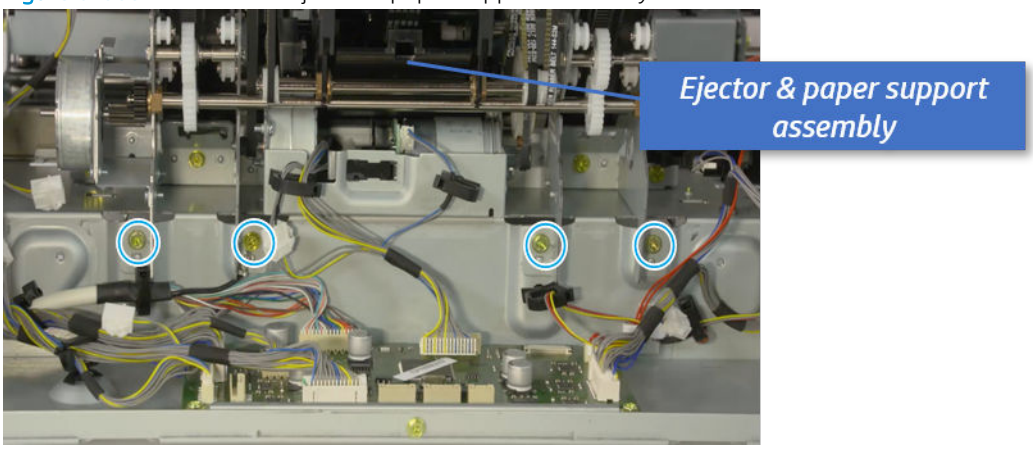
2. Pull the rear paper support up, and then release one clamp and disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-602 Disconnect two connector



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the ejector & paper support assembly.

Figure 6-603 Remove the ejector & paper support assembly

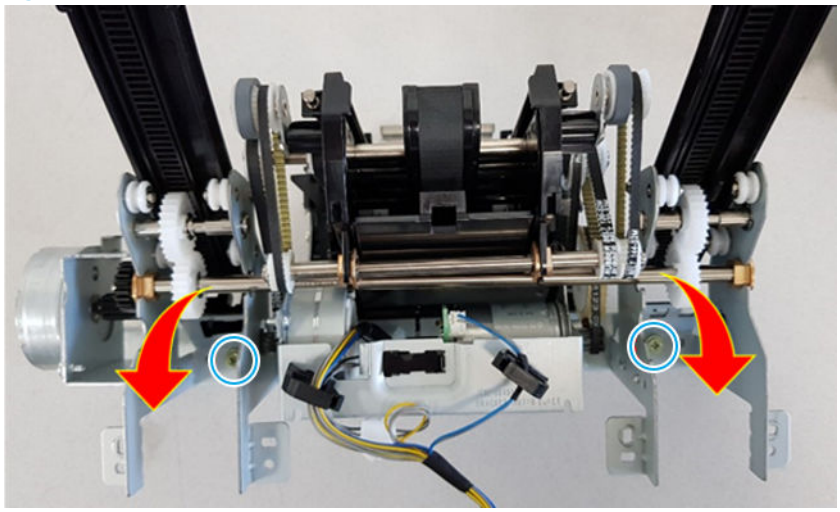


Remove the front paper support and the rear paper support

Follow these steps to remove the front paper support and the rear paper support.

- ▲ Remove two screws, and then pull the paper support assembly out of ejector assembly.

Figure 6-604 Remove paper support assembly

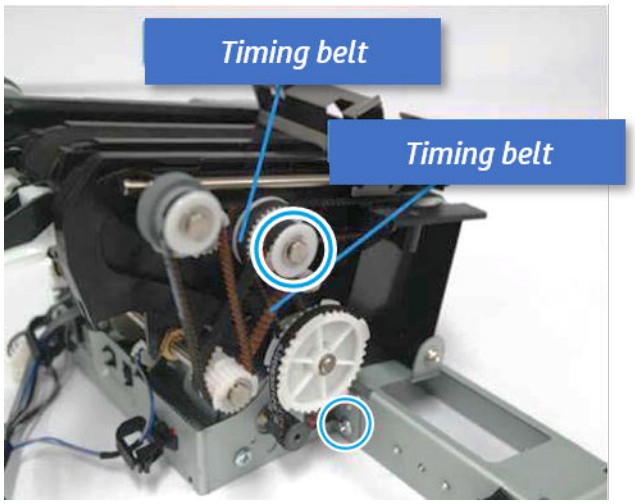


Remove the ejector motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the ejector motor assembly.

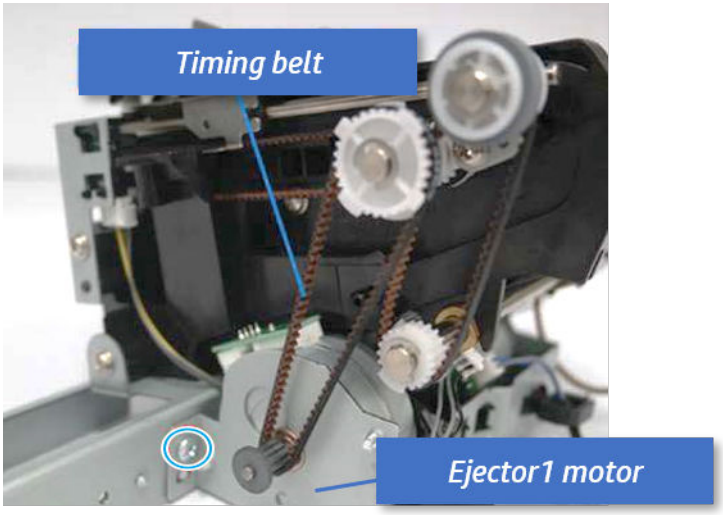
1. Remove the e-ring and washer. Remove two timing belts, and then remove one screw.

Figure 6-605 Remove e-ring, washer, belt, and screw



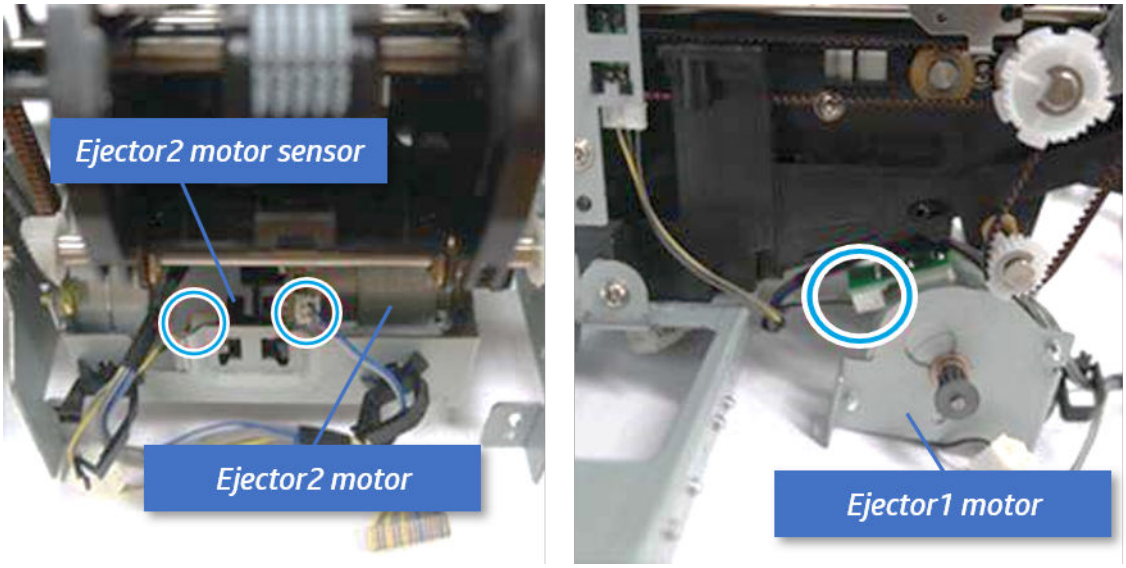
2. Remove the timing belt, and then remove one screw.

Figure 6-606 Remove the belt, screw



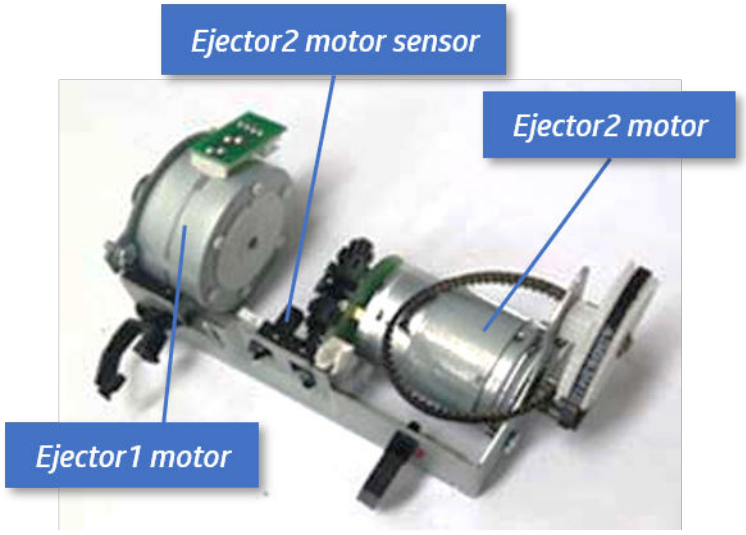
3. Remove the cable from clamp, and then disconnect two motor connectors and the sensor connector.

Figure 6-607 Disconnect the motor and sensor connectors



4. Remove the ejector motor assembly.

Figure 6-608 Remove the ejector motor assembly

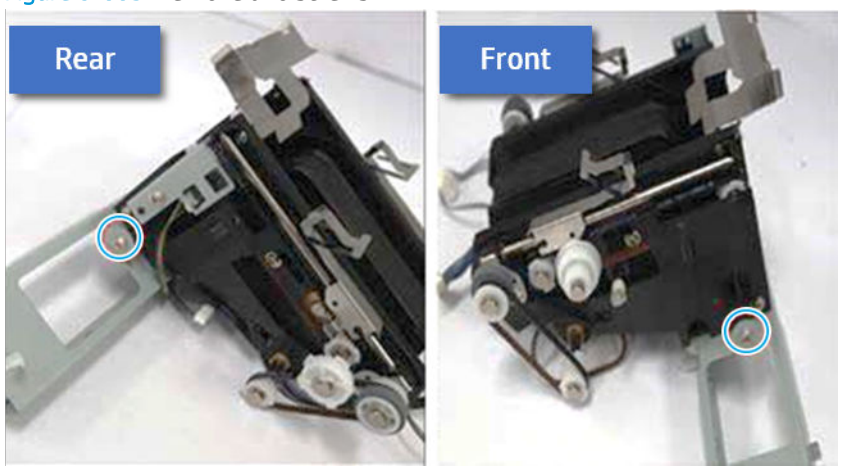


Remove the ejector assembly

Follow these steps to remove the ejector assembly.

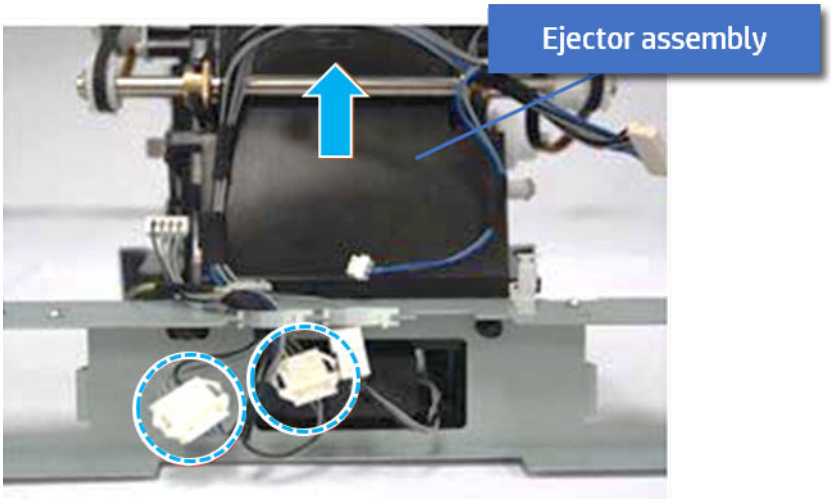
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-609 Remove two screws



2. Unplug two connectors, and then remove the ejector assembly.

Figure 6-610 Remove the ejector assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

End fence unit

Removal and replacement: End fence sensor (S17)

Learn how to remove and replace the end fence sensor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-63 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	End fence sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

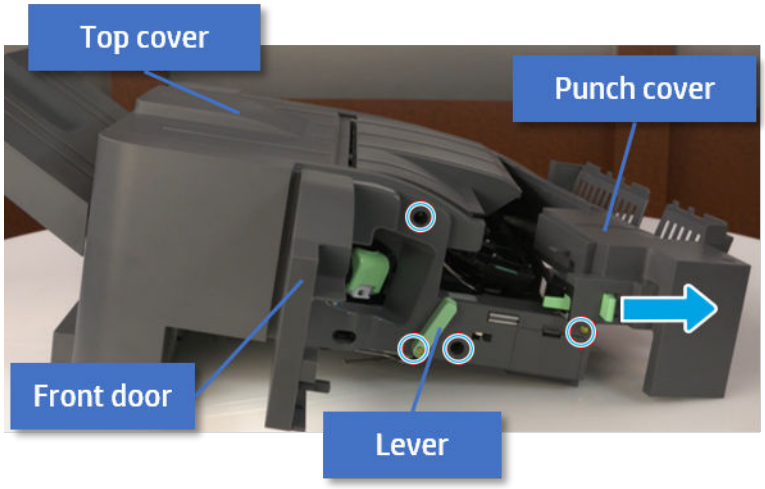
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-611 Remove the front cover

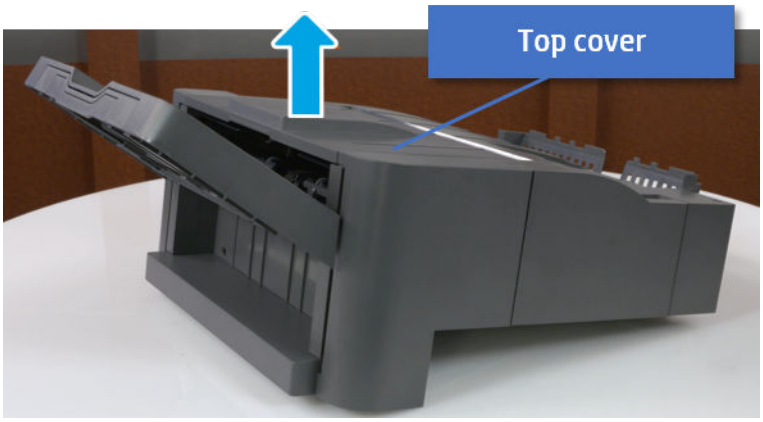


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

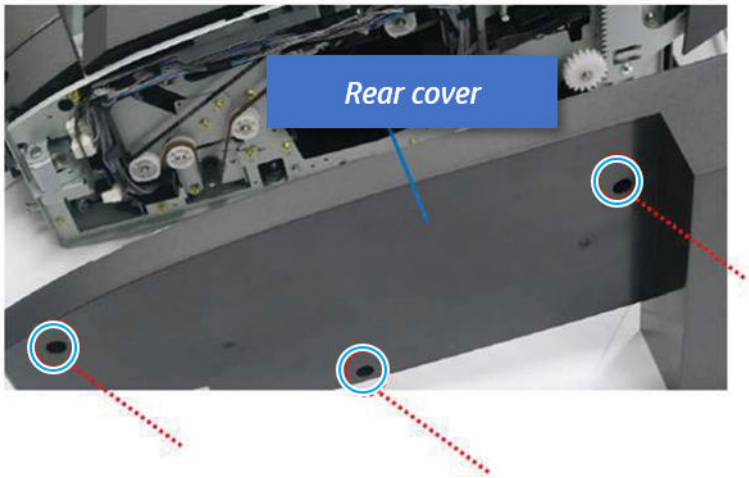
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-612 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-613 Remove the rear cover

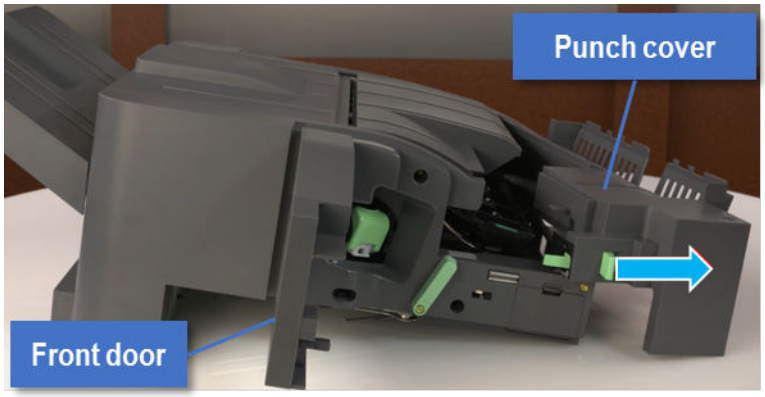


Remove the middle cover

Follow these steps to remove the middle cover.

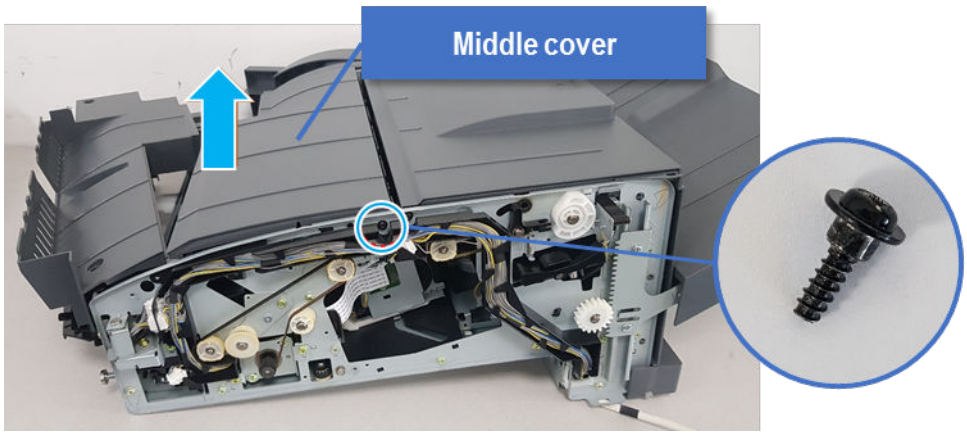
1. Open the front door and then open the punch cover.

Figure 6-614 Open the front door and puch cover.



2. Remove left-side one screw at the rear of the inner finisher, and then remove the middle cover by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

Figure 6-615 Remove the middle cover

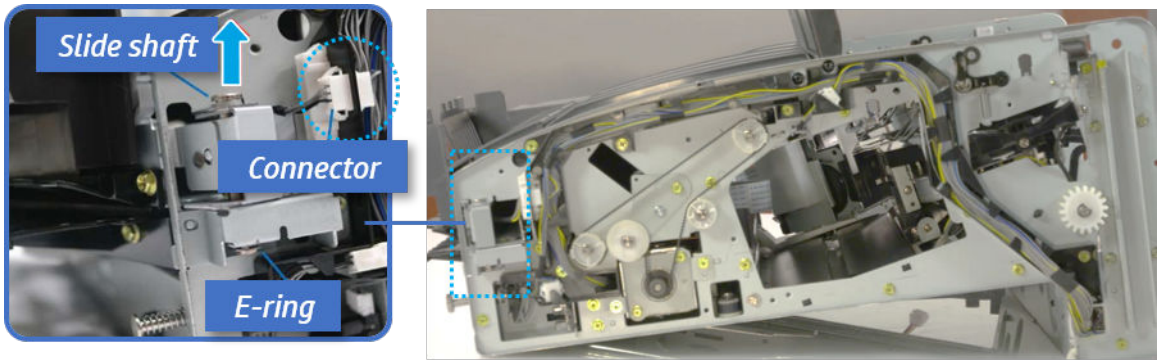


Remove the punch cover

Follow these steps to remove the punch cover.

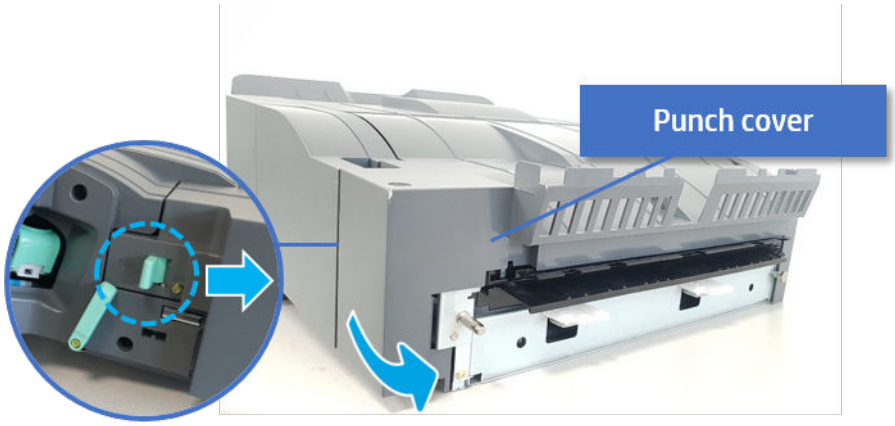
1. Unplug the connector. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the slide shaft at the rear of the inner finisher.

Figure 6-616 Remove the slide shaft



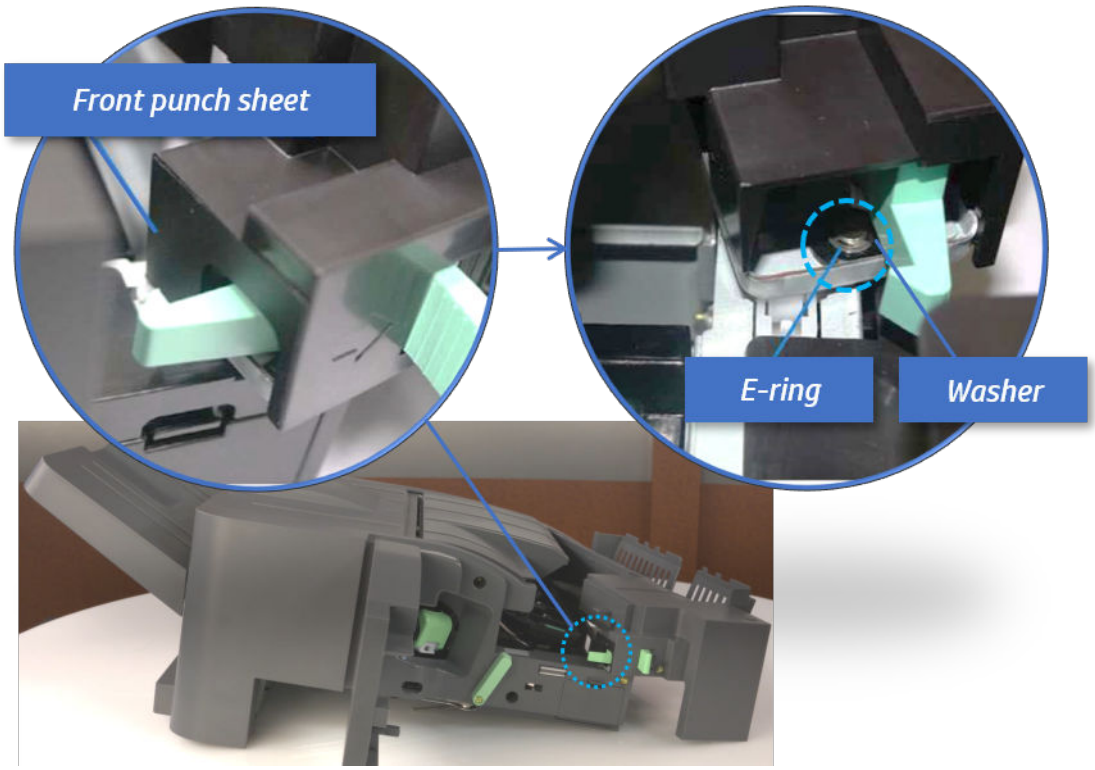
2. Open the punch cover.

Figure 6-617 Open the punch cover



3. Remove the front punch sheet, and then remove the e-ring and the washer. And then remove the punch cover.

Figure 6-618 Remove the punch cover

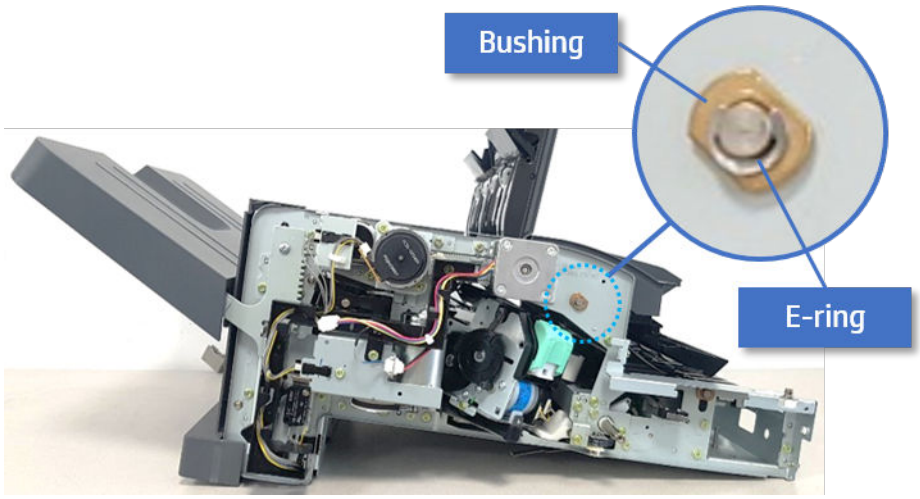


Remove the diverter guide and the middle roller

Follow these steps to remove the diverter guide and the middle roller.

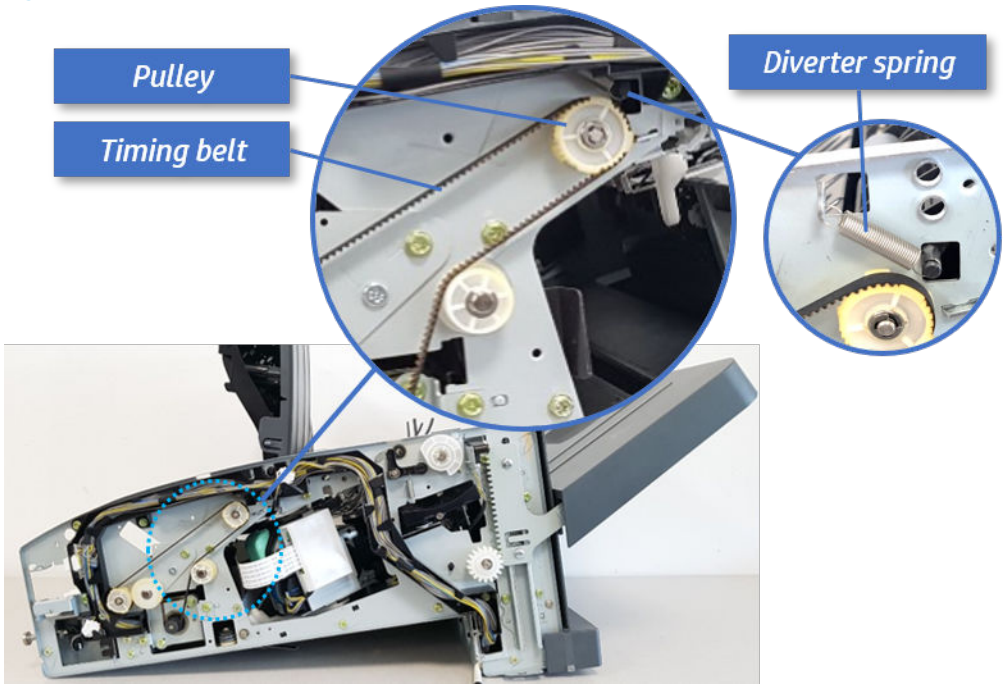
1. On the front of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and bushing.

Figure 6-619 Remove the e-ring and bushing



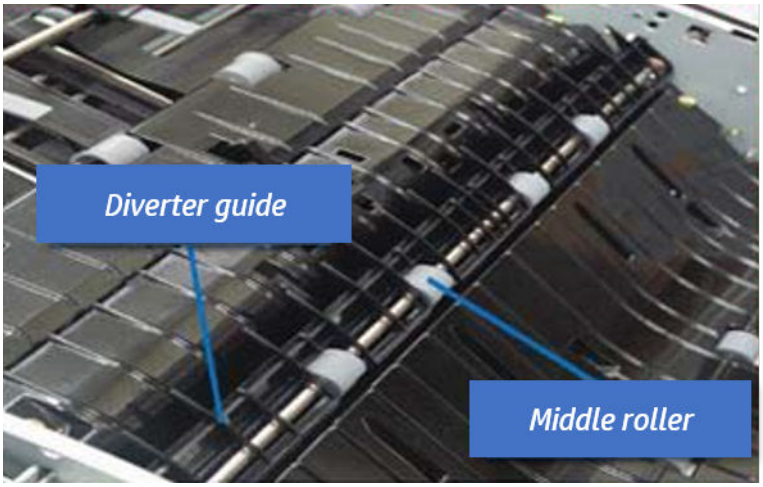
2. Onthe rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, and spring (slightly hiddenfrom view).

Figure 6-620 Remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, and spring



3. Remove the diverter guide and the middler roller.

Figure 6-621 Remove the diverter guide and the middler roller

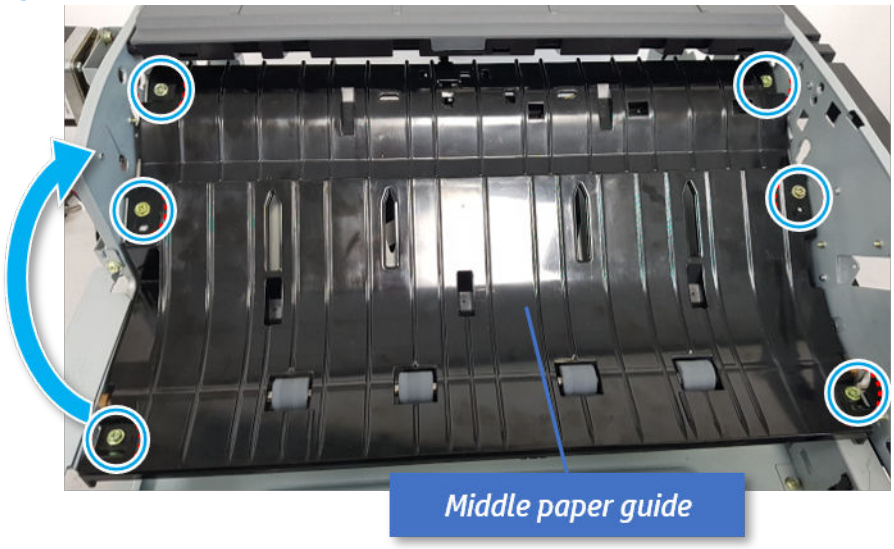


Remove the middle paper guide

Follow these steps to remove the middle paper guide.

1. Remove six screws, and then open the middle paper guide in the direction of the arrow.

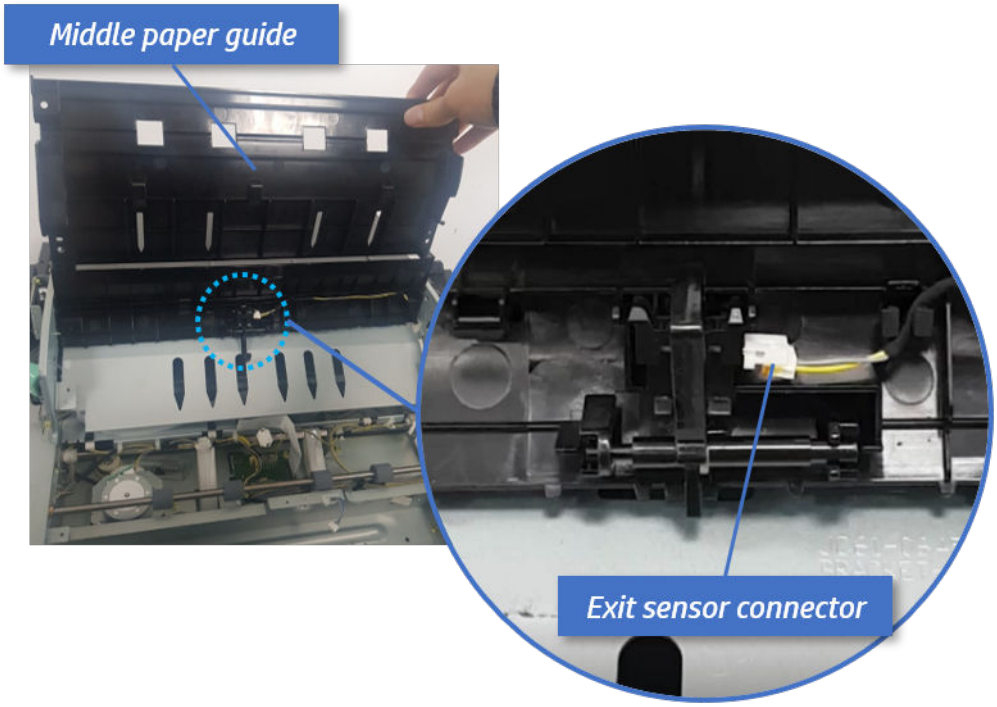
Figure 6-622 Open the middle paper guide



NOTE: Becareful not to damage the sensor connector.

2. Unplug the connector under the middle paper guide. And then, remove the middle paper guide.

Figure 6-623 Remove the middle paper guide

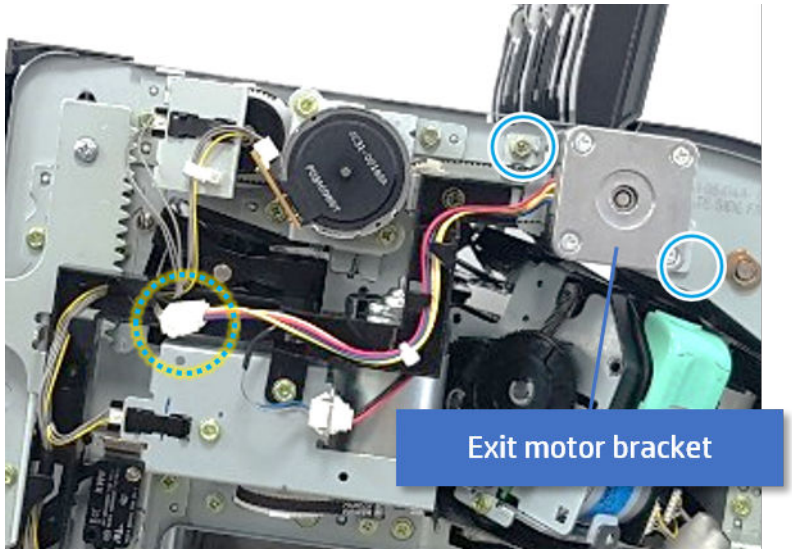


Remove the exit motor bracket

Follow these steps to remove the exit motor bracket.

▲ Remove two screws, unplug the motor connector. And then remove exit motor bracket.

Figure 6-624 Remove the exit motor bracket

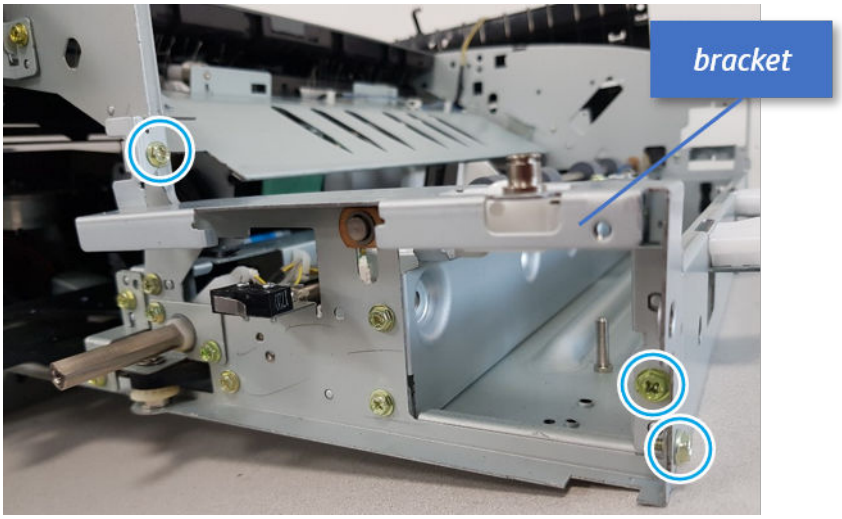


Remove the end fence sensor bracket

Follow these steps to remove the end fence sensor bracket.

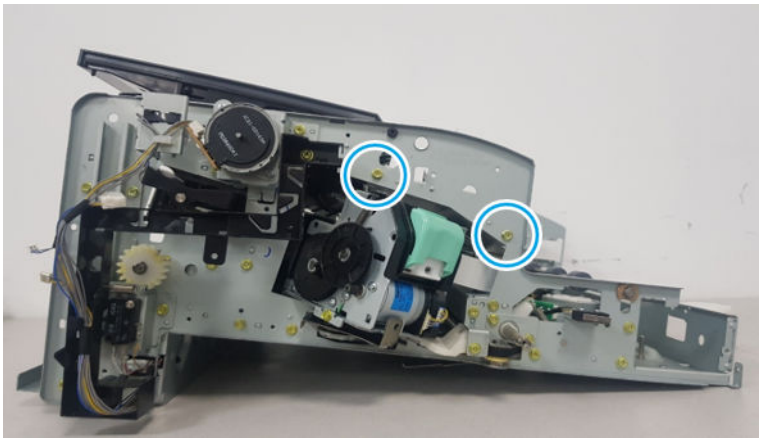
1. Remove three screws at the front of the inner finisher, and then remove the bracket.

Figure 6-625 Remove the bracket



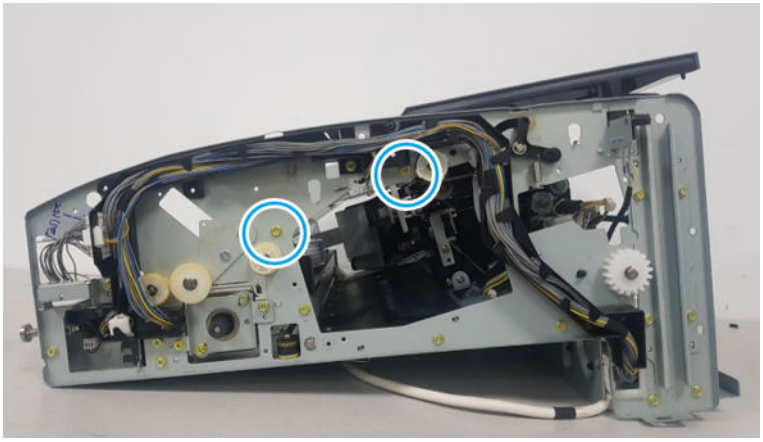
2. Remove two screws at the front of the inner finisher.

Figure 6-626 Remove two screws



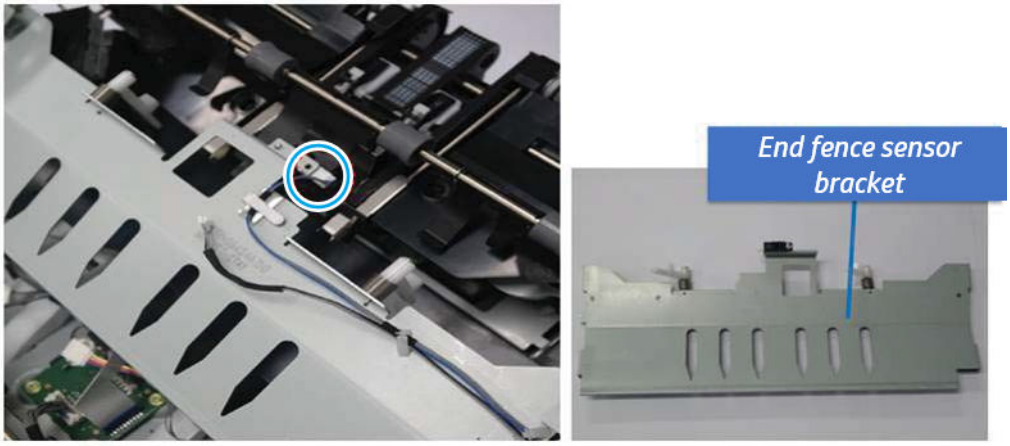
3. Remove two screws at the rear of the inner finisher.

Figure 6-627 Remove two screws



4. Loosen three cable clamps. Unplug the connector at the sensor, and then remove the end fence sensor bracket.

Figure 6-628 Remove the end fence sensor bracket

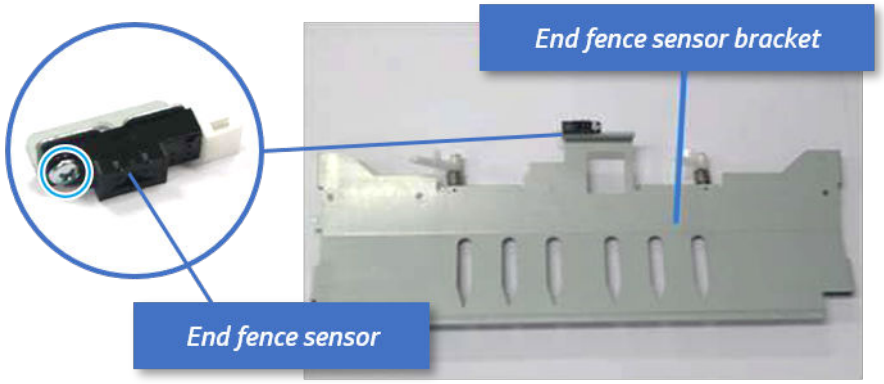


Remove the end fence sensor

Follow these steps to remove the end fence sensor.

▲ Remove one screw, and then remove the end fence sensor.

Figure 6-629 Remove the end fence sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Output tray unit

Removal and replacement: Output tray

Learn how to remove and replace the output tray.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-64 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01337B	Output tray

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

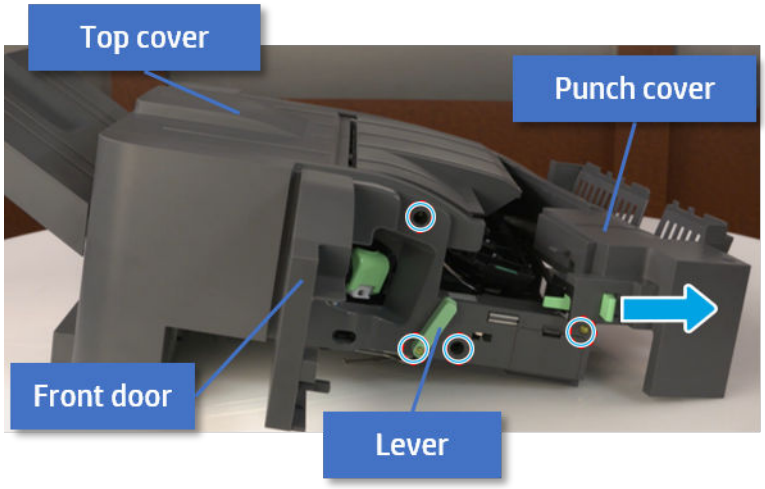
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-630 Remove the front cover

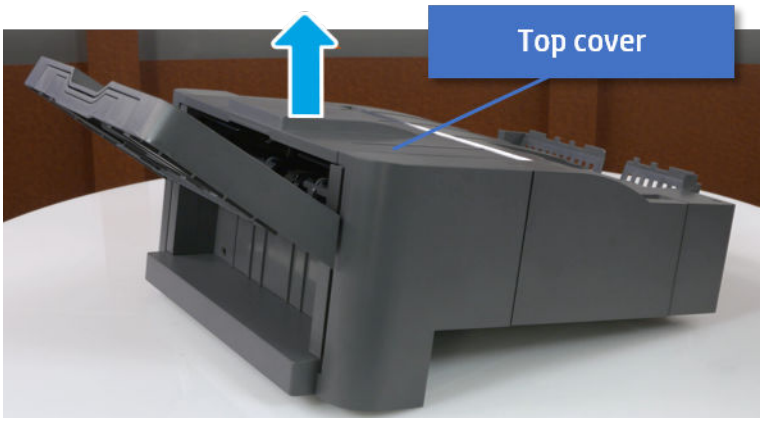


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

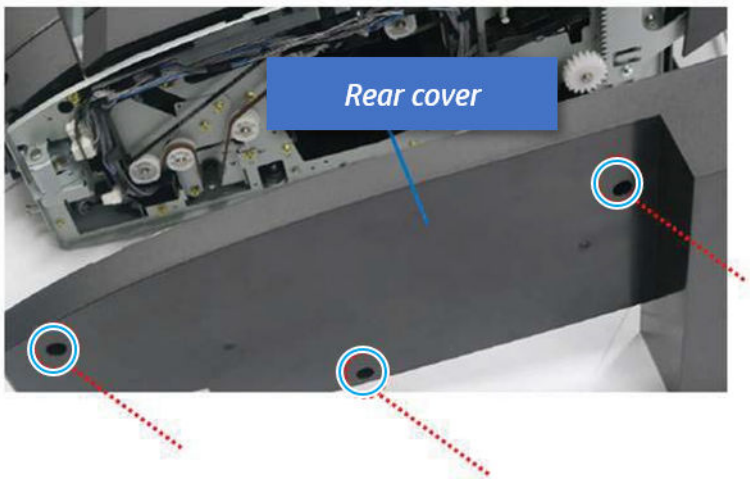
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-631 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-632 Remove the rear cover

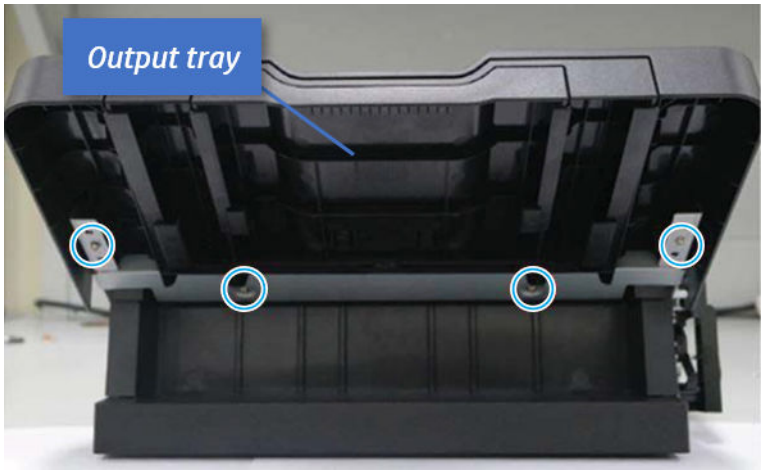


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-633 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

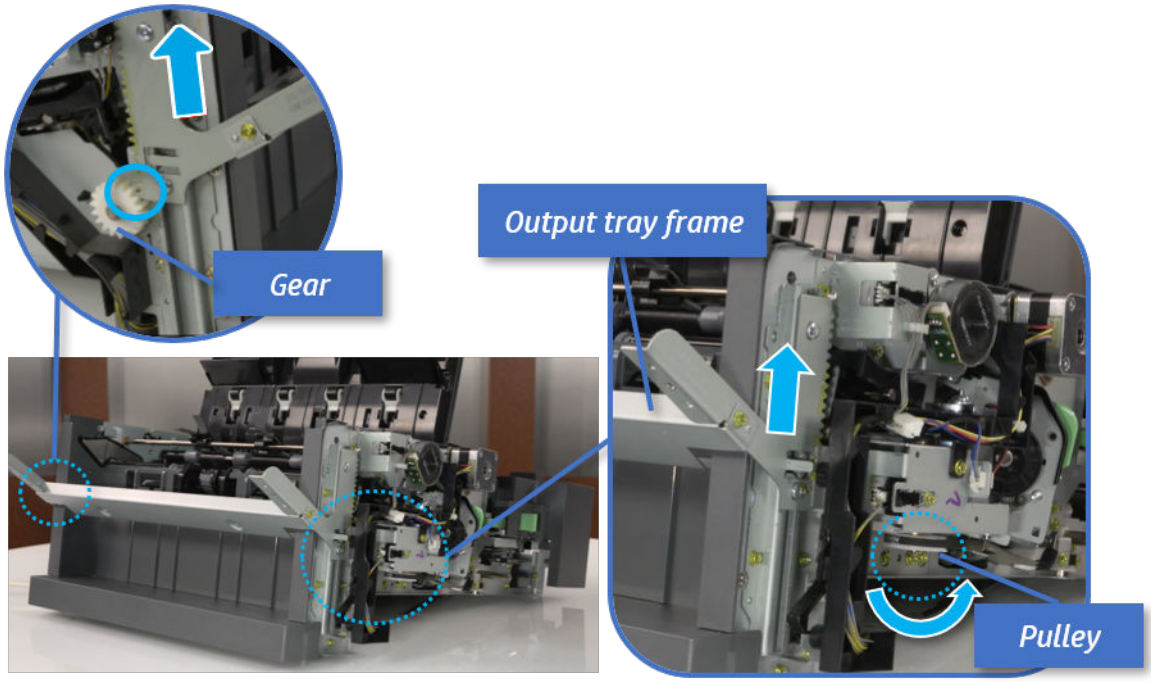
Figure 6-634 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

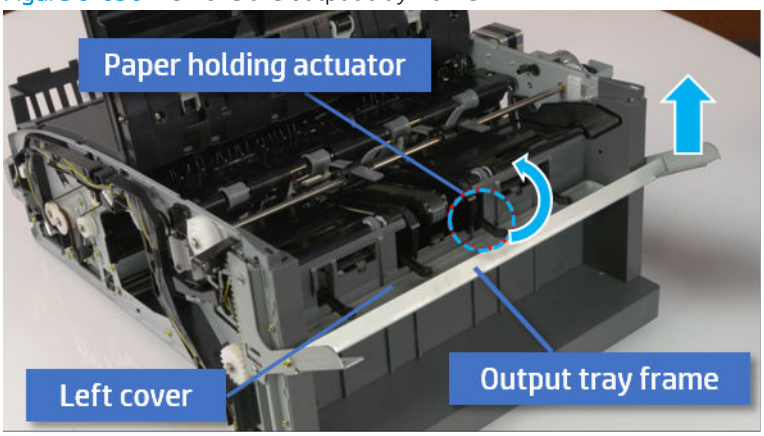
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-635 Remove the pulley



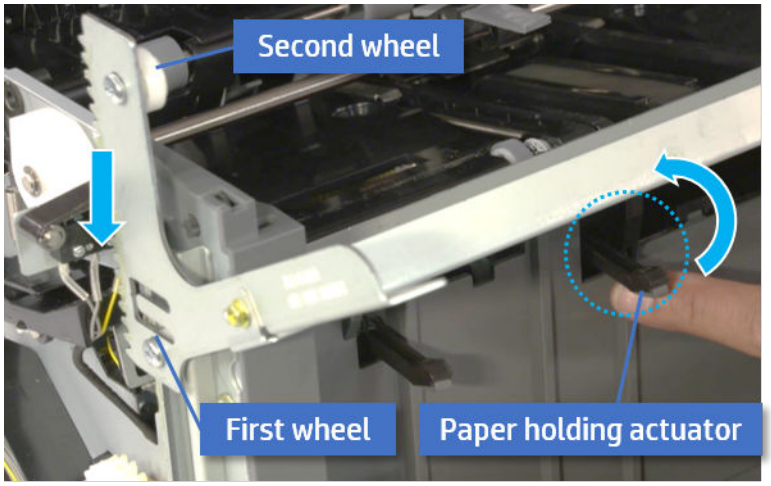
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-636 Remove the output tray frame



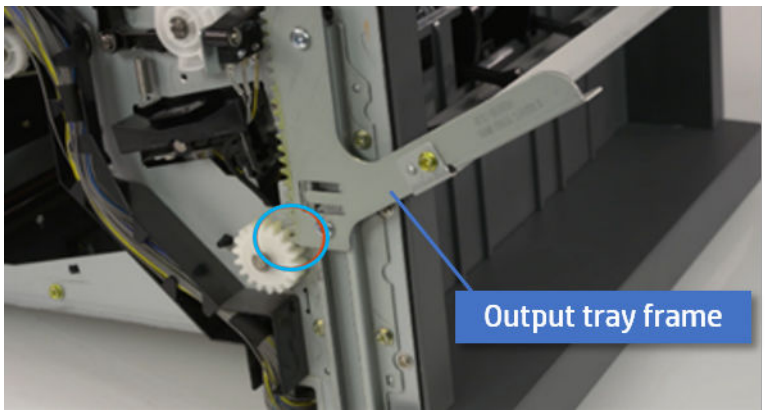
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

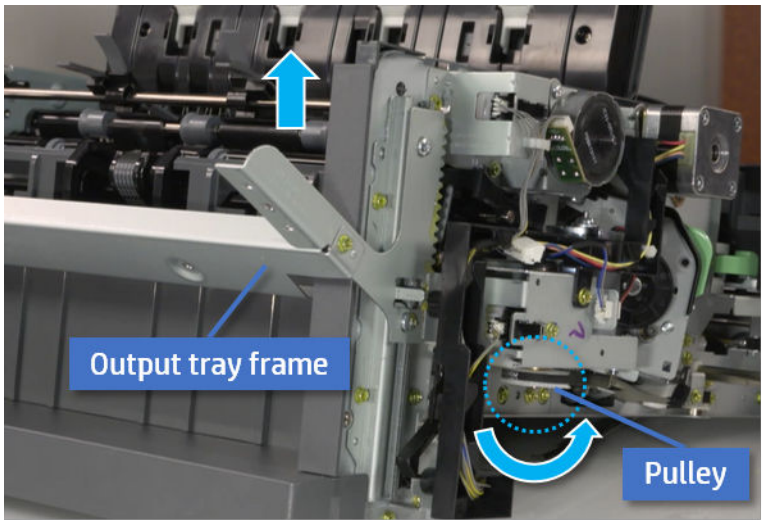


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

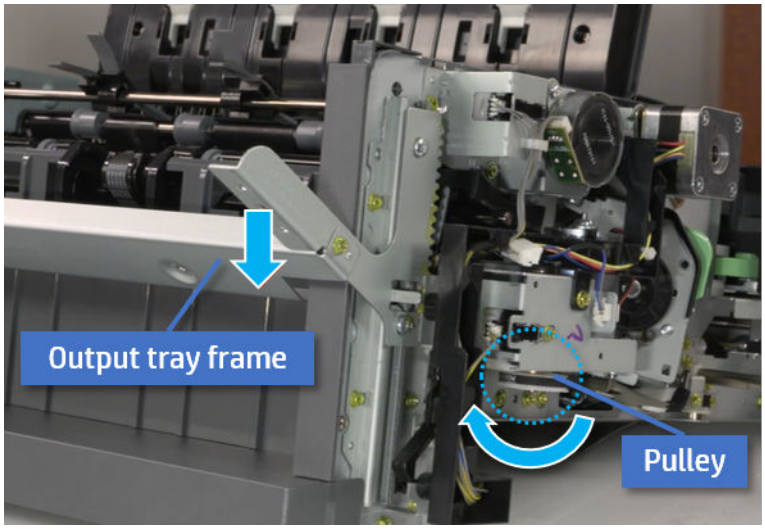
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Output tray top of stack sensor (S8)

Learn how to remove and replace the output tray top of stack sensor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-65 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-01039A	output tray top of stack sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

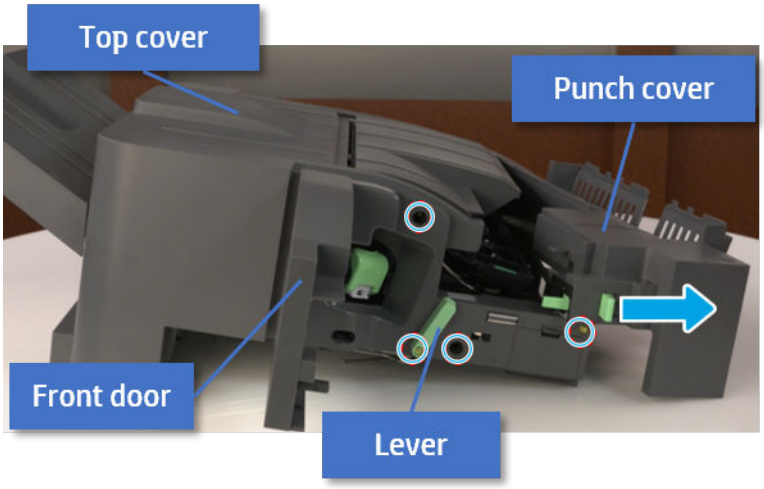
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-637 Remove the front cover

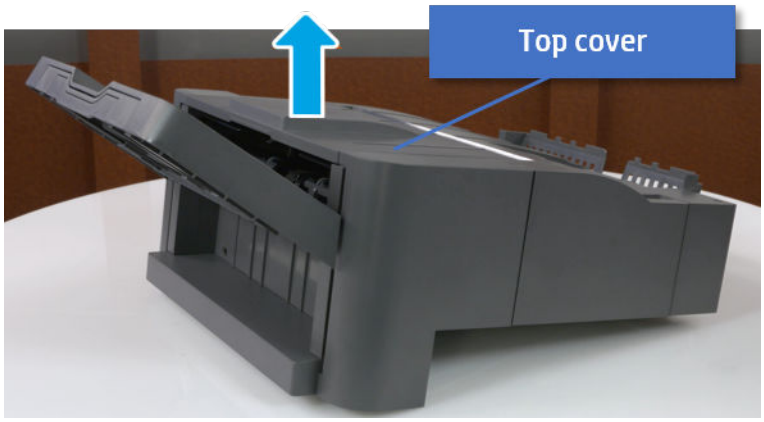


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

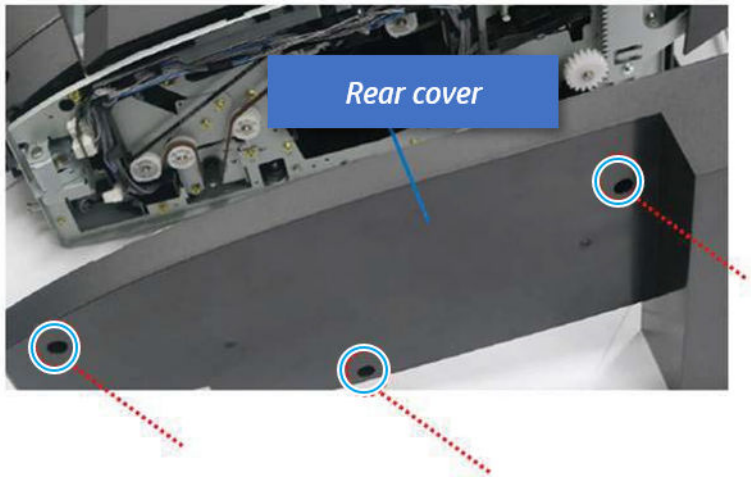
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-638 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-639 Remove the rear cover

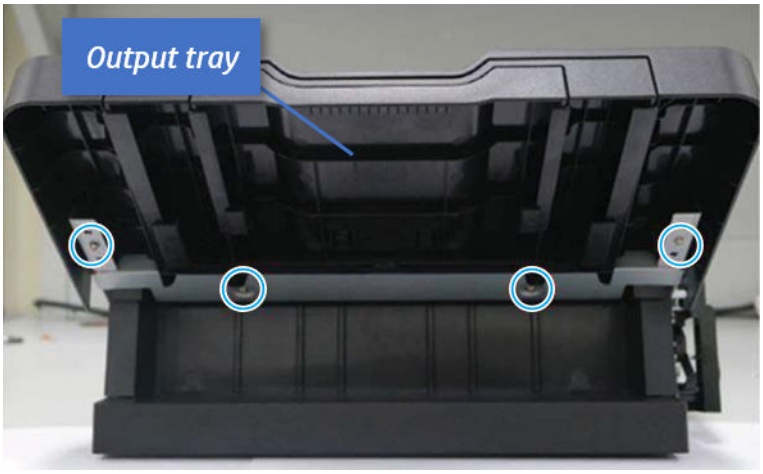


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-640 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

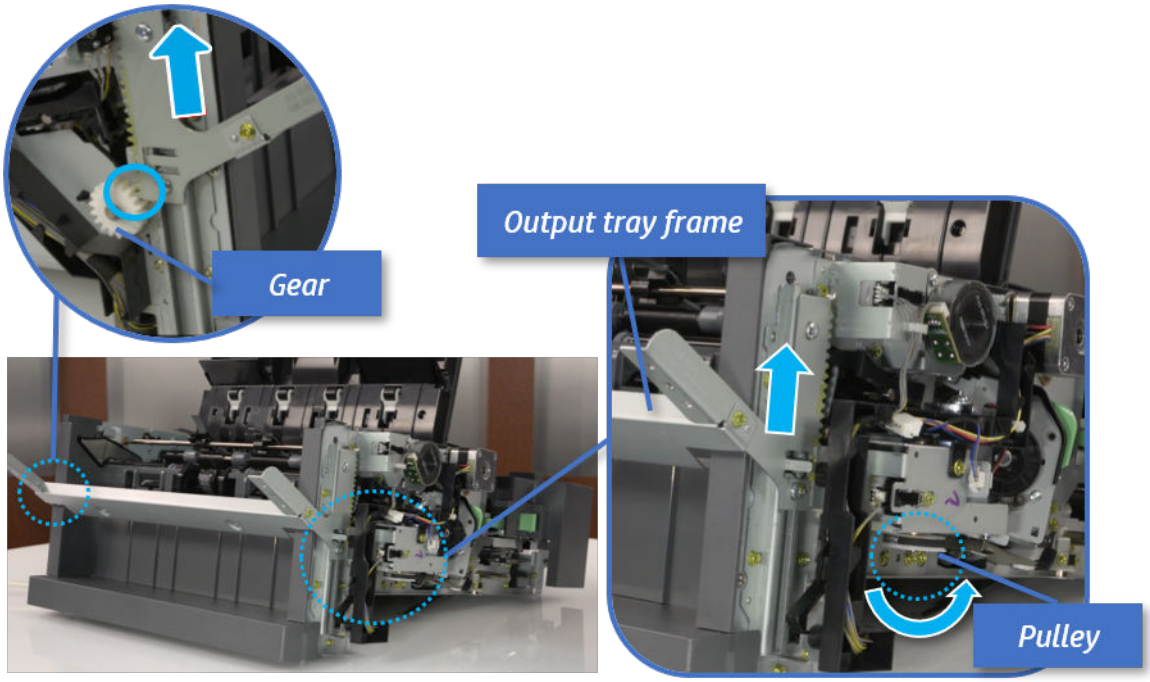
Figure 6-641 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

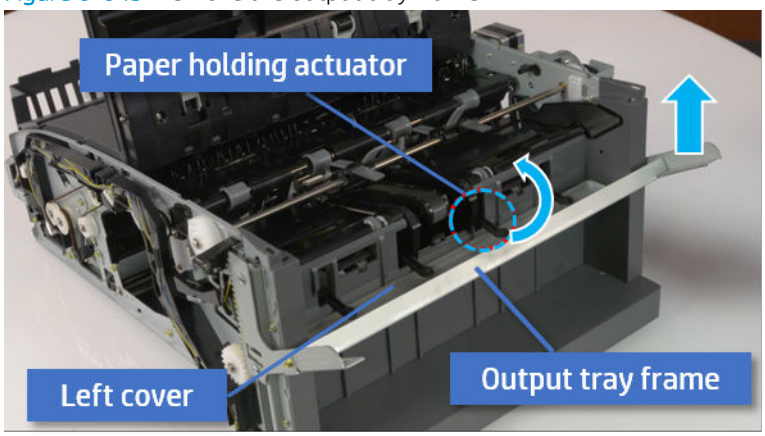
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-642 Remove the pulley



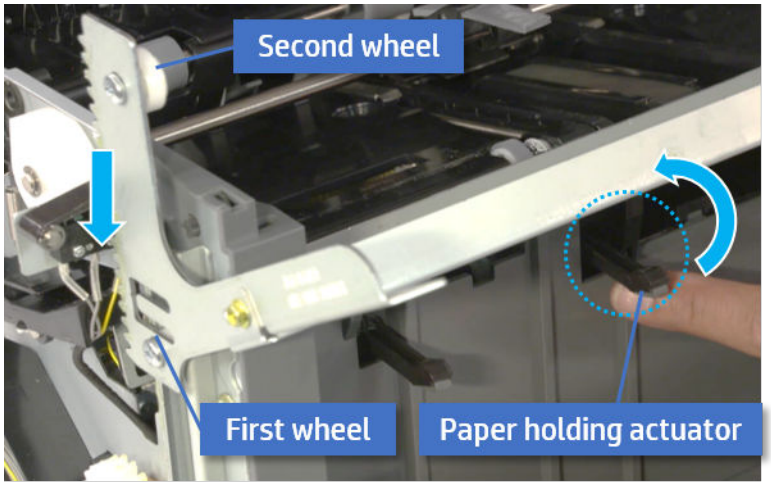
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-643 Remove the output tray frame



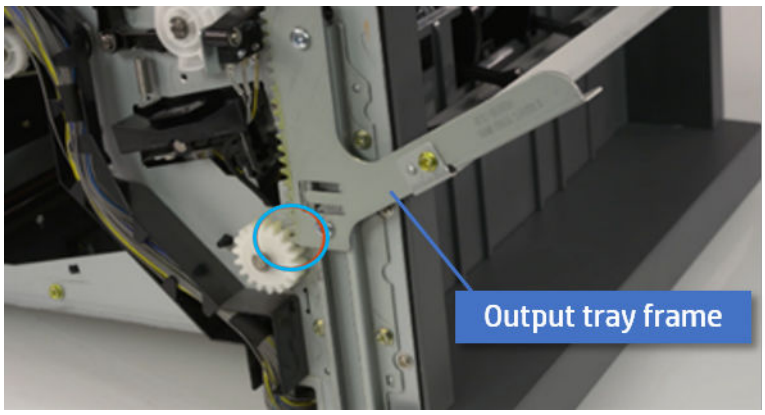
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

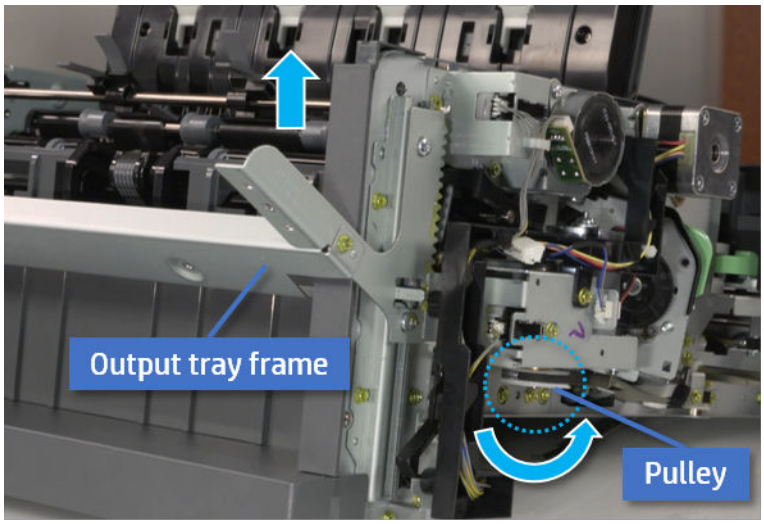


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

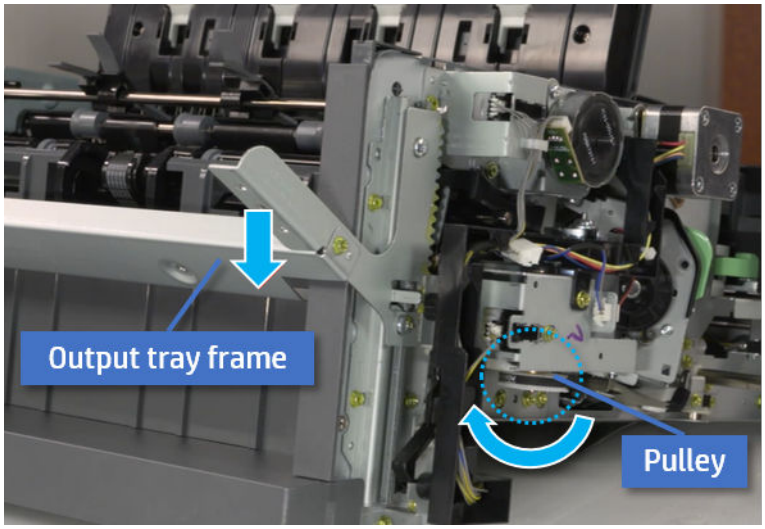
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

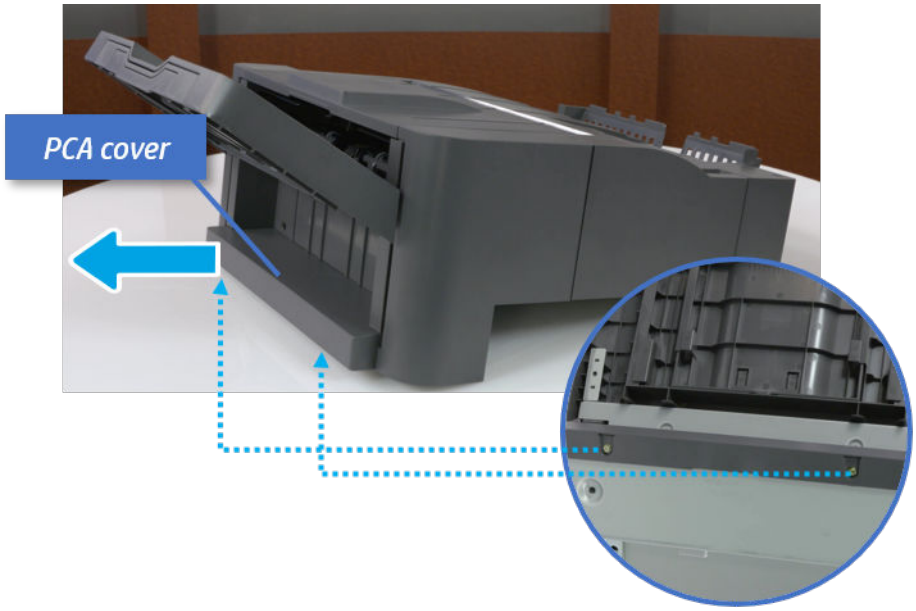


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-644 Remove the PCA cover

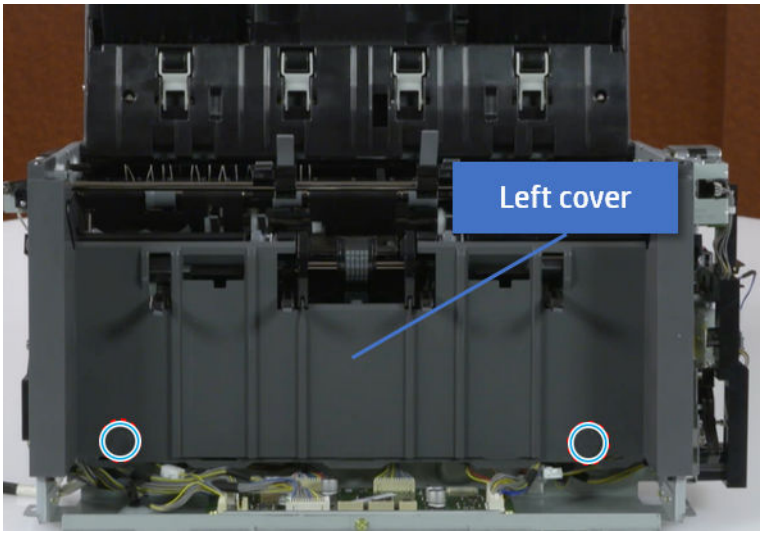


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

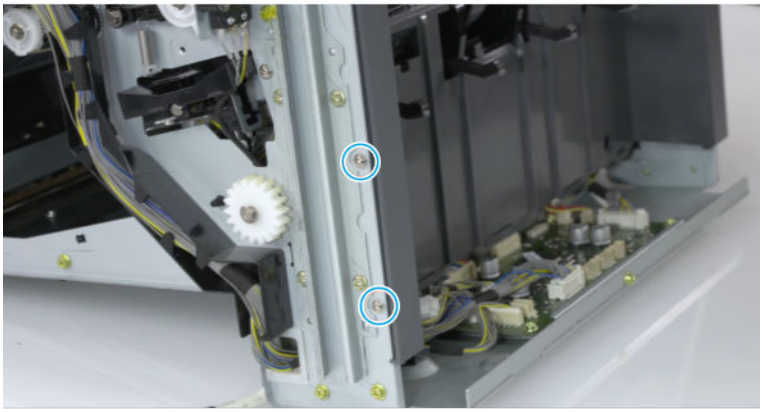
1. Remove two screws.

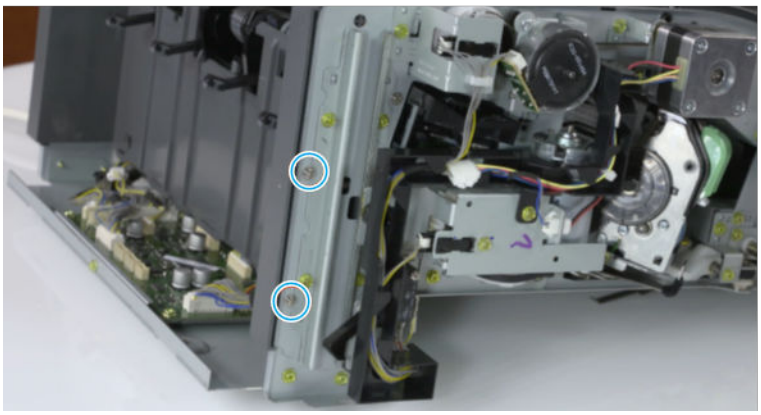
Figure 6-645 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

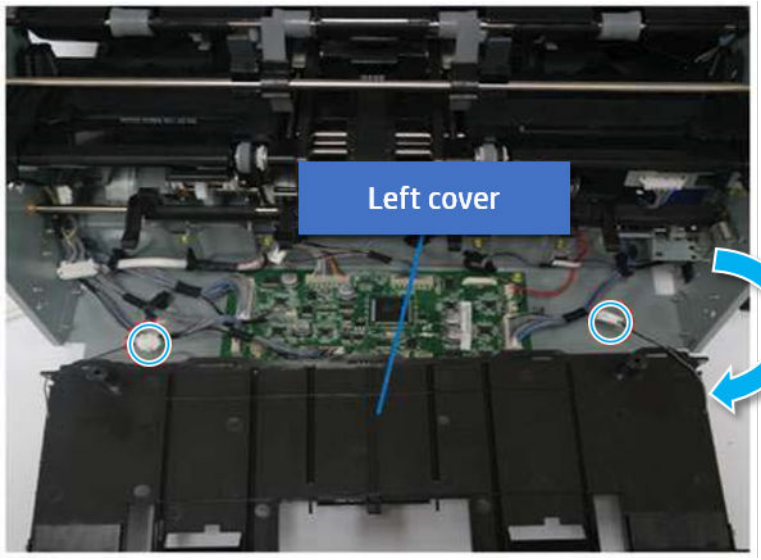
Figure 6-646 Remove four screws



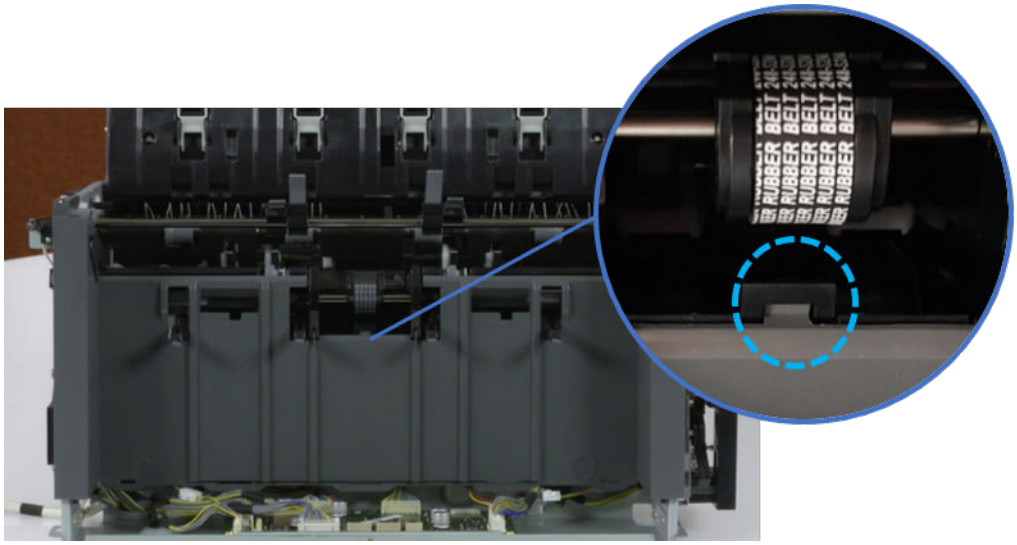


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-647 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.

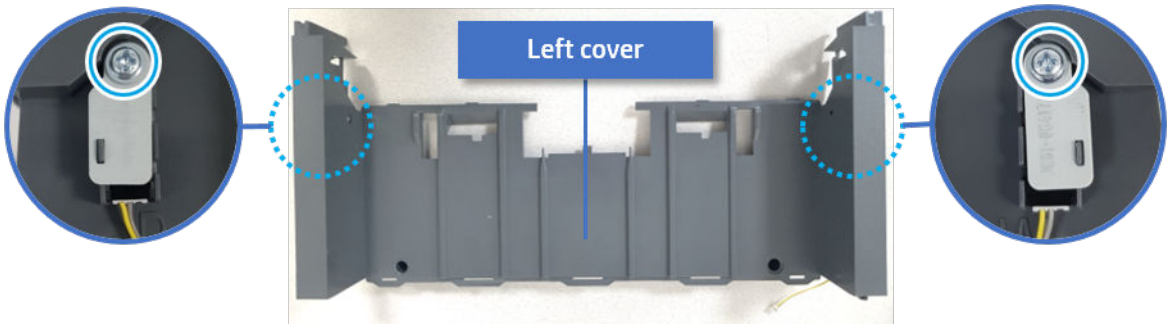


Remove the output tray top of stack sensor

Follow these steps to Remove the output tray top of stack sensor.

- Remove two screws from both sides of the left cover. Remove the bracket, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 6-648 Remove the output tray top of stack sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Output tray lower limit switch (S7)

Learn how to remove and replace the output tray lower limit switch.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-66 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01320A	Output tray lower limit switch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

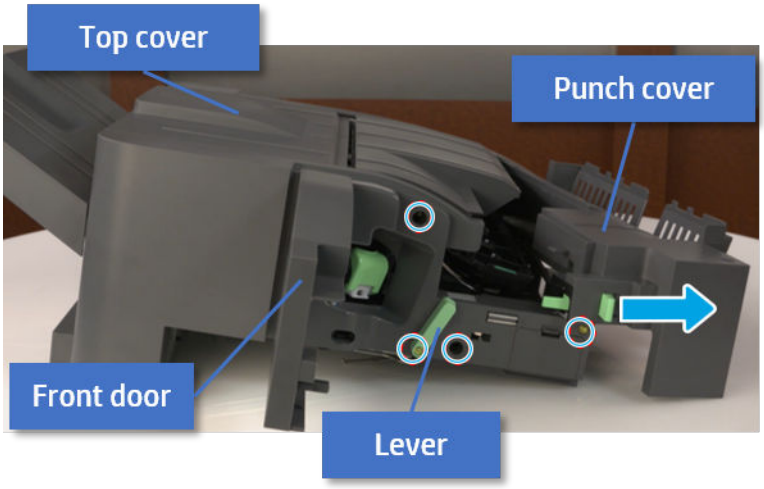
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-649 Remove the front cover

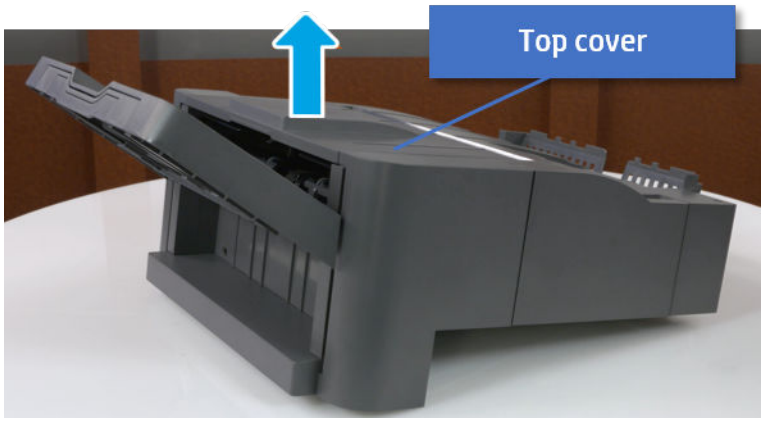


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

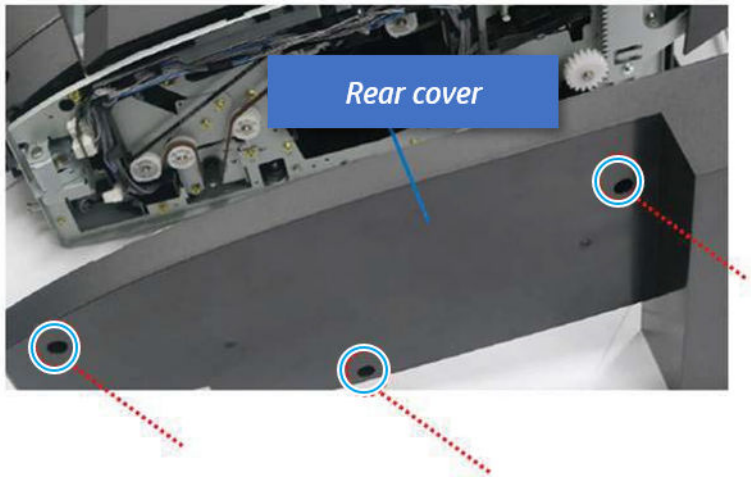
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-650 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-651 Remove the rear cover

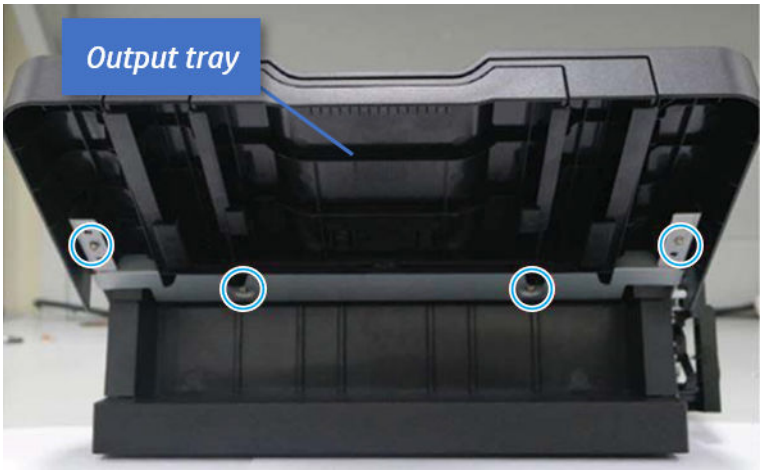


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-652 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

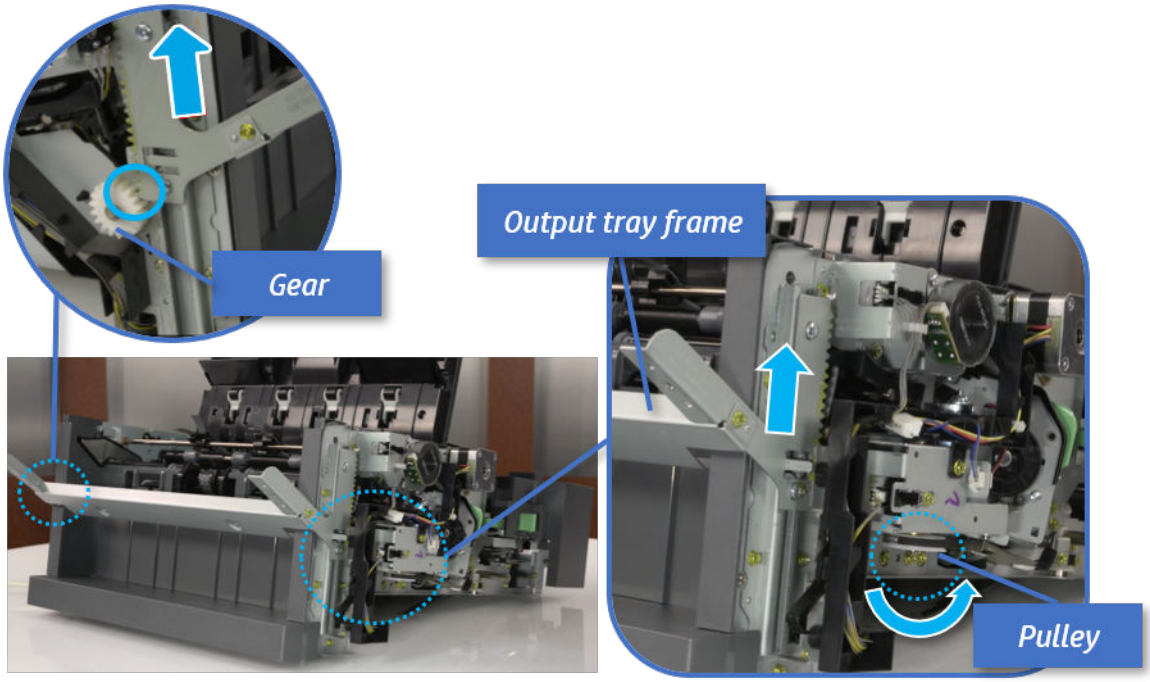
Figure 6-653 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

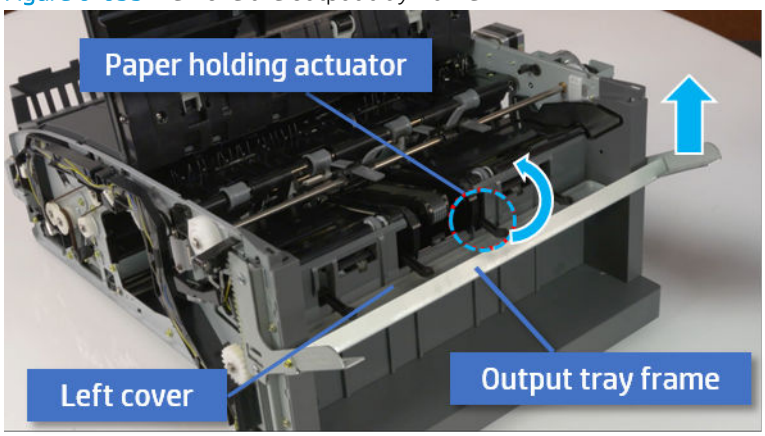
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-654 Remove the pulley



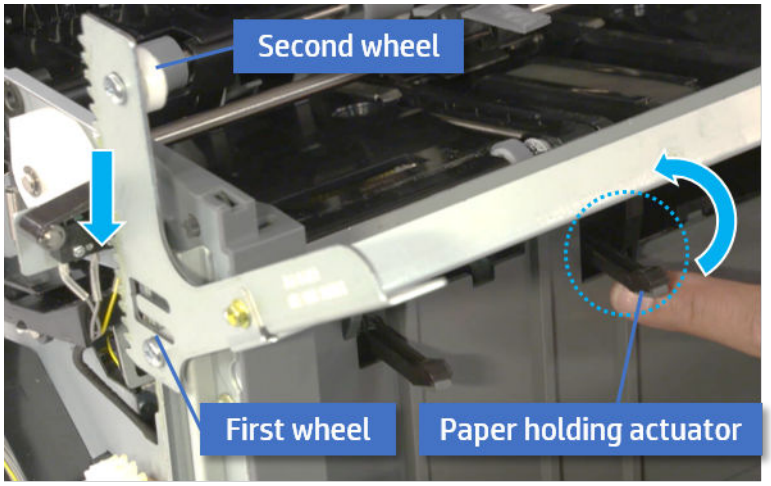
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-655 Remove the output tray frame



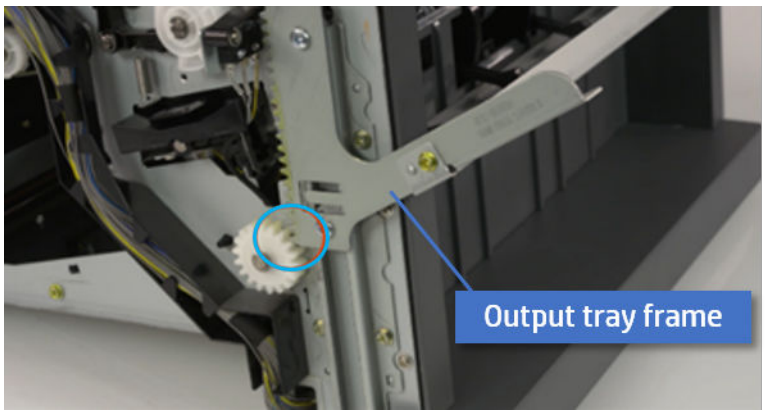
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

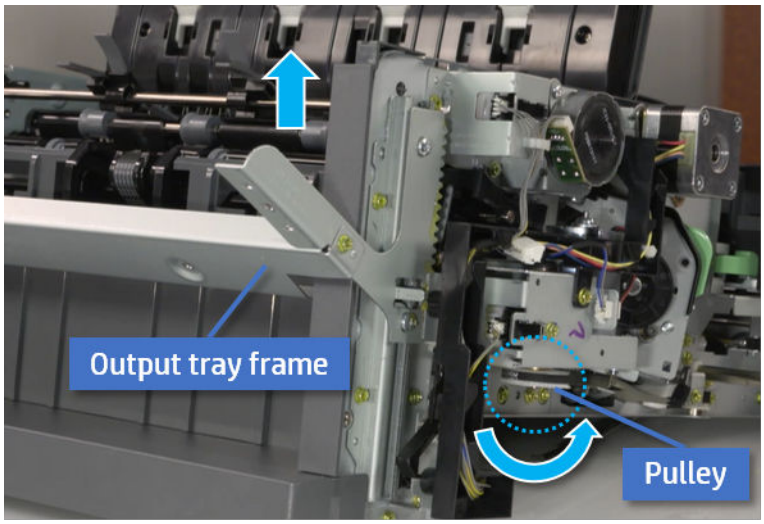


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

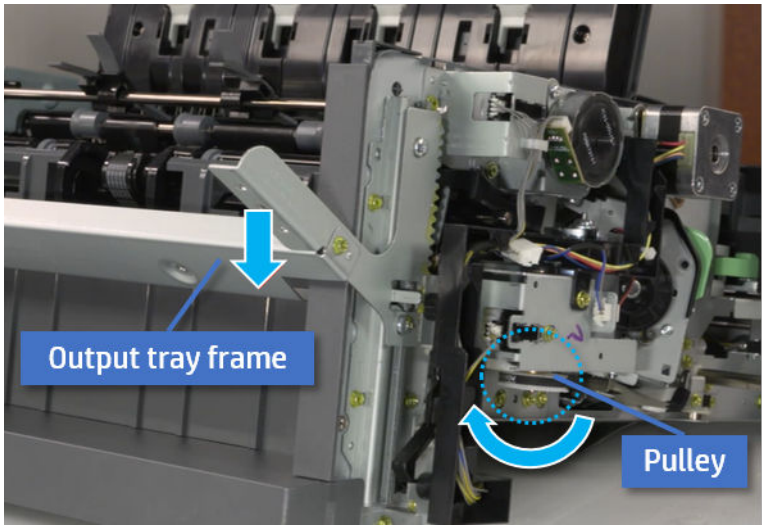
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

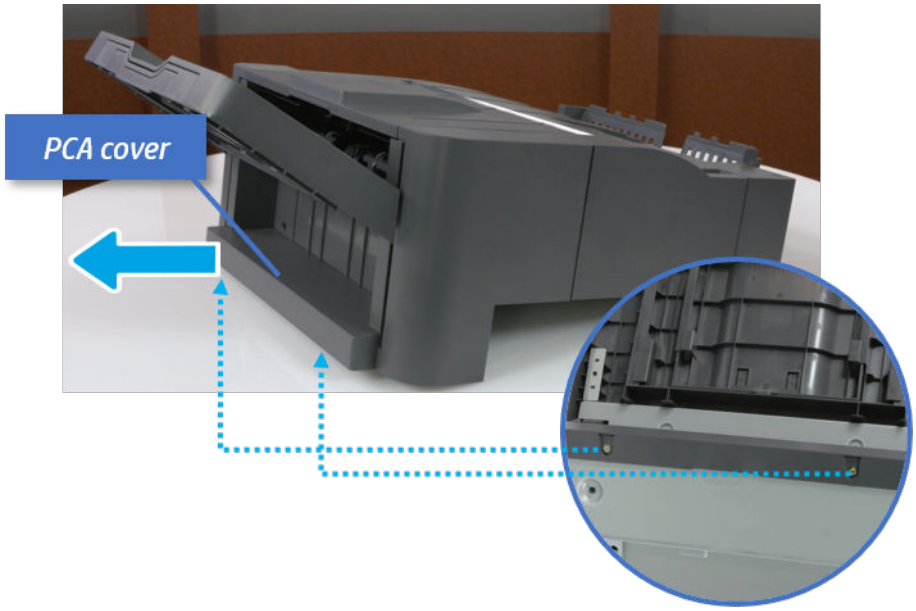


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-656 Remove the PCA cover

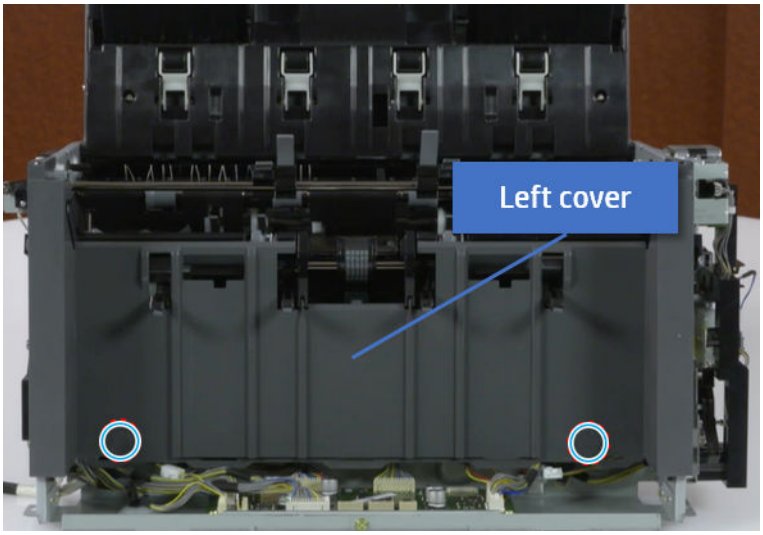


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

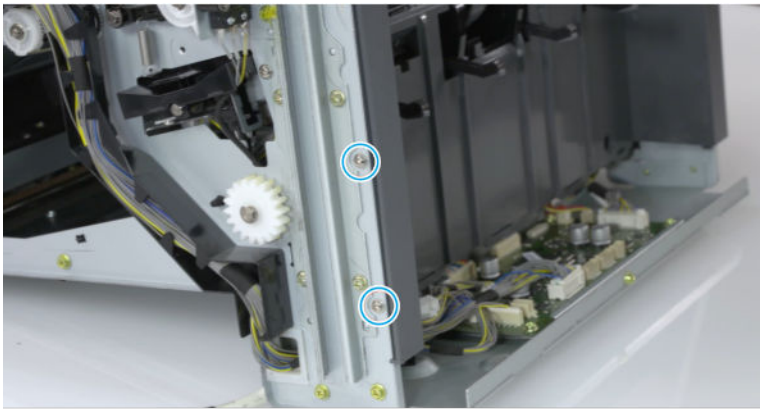
1. Remove two screws.

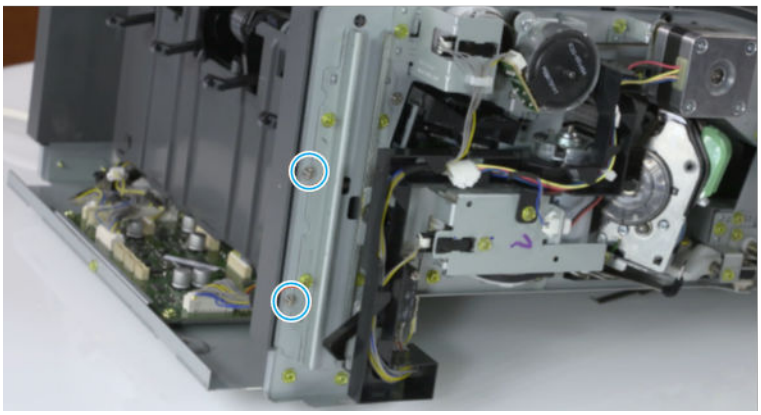
Figure 6-657 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

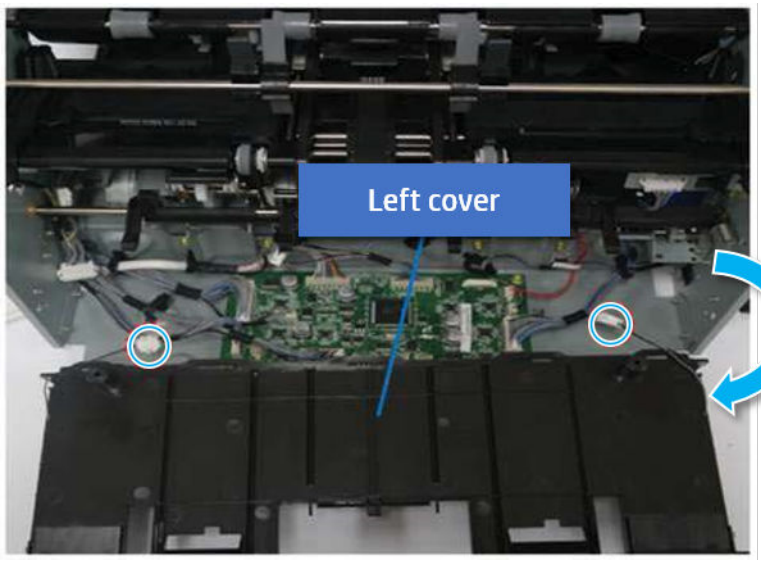
Figure 6-658 Remove four screws



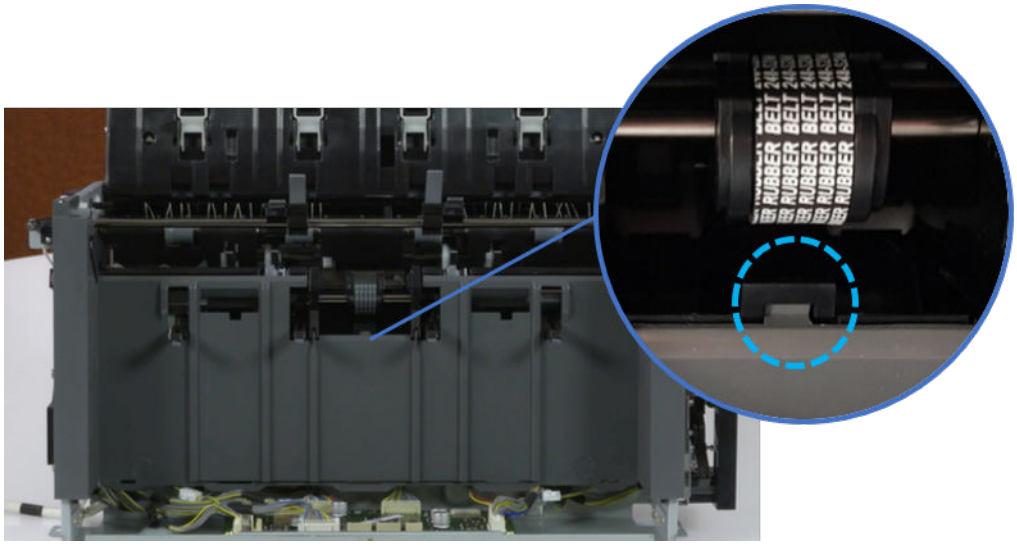


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-659 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



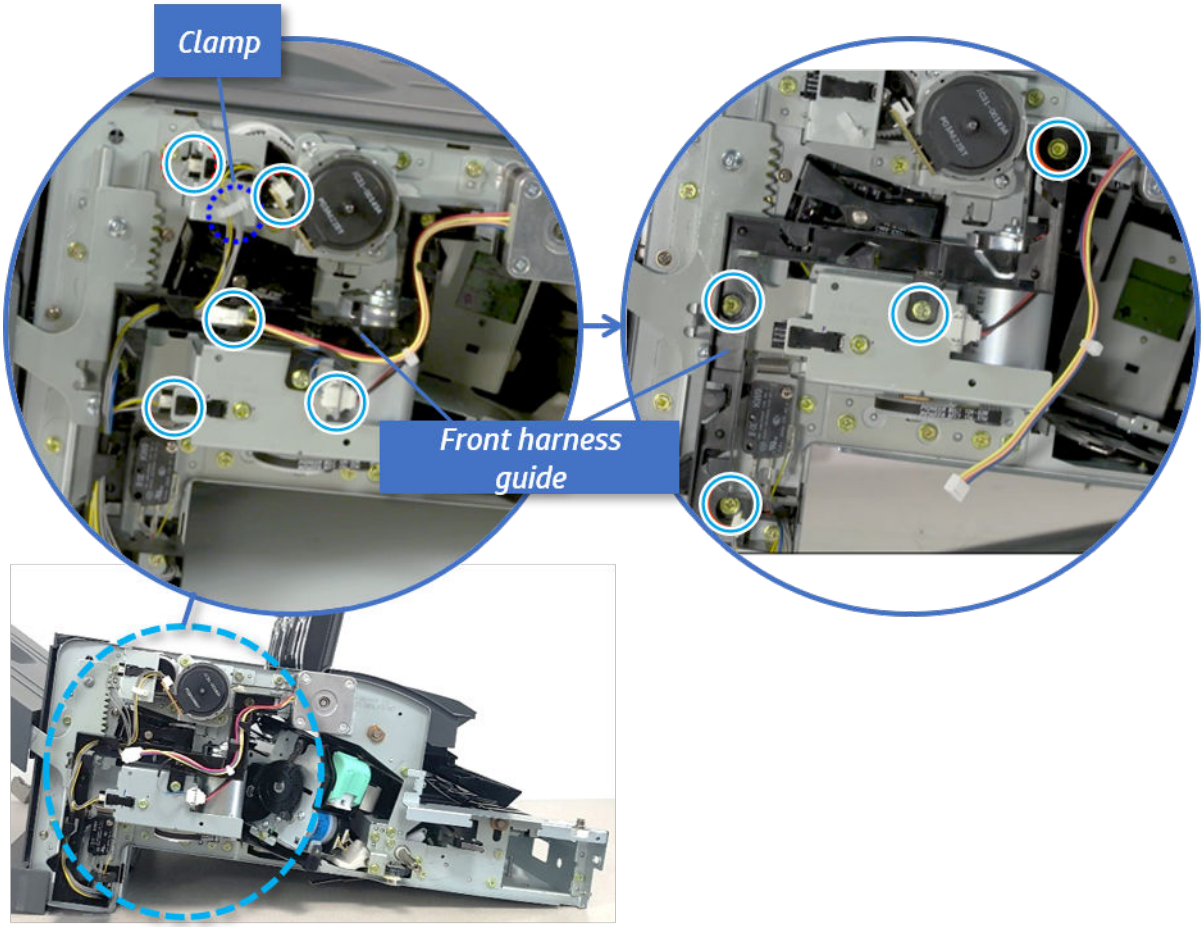
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-660 Remove the front harness guide

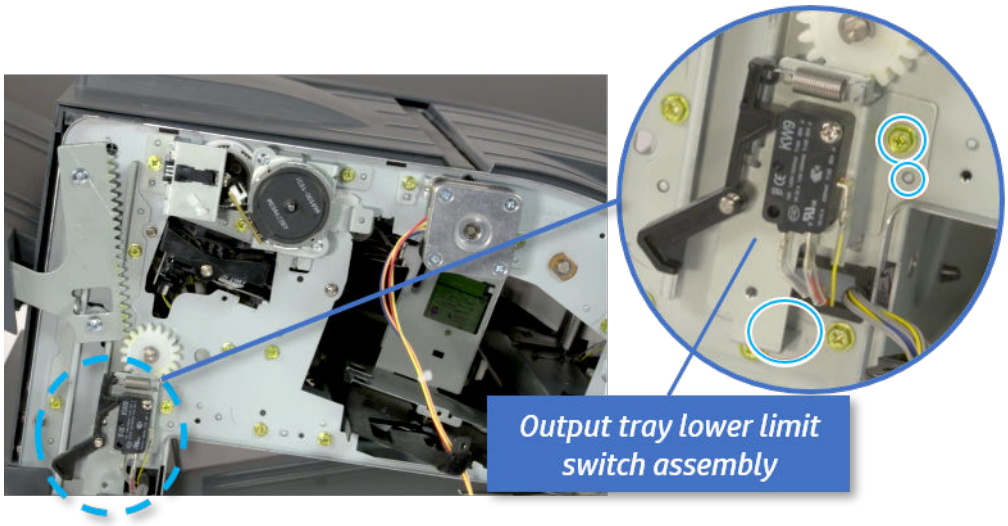


Remove the output tray lower limit switch

Follow these steps to remove the output tray lower limit switch.

▲ Remove one screw, and then remove the output tray lower limit switch.

Figure 6-661 Remove the output tray lower limit switch



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Output tray motor assembly

HP LaserJet Managed MFP E82540du-E82560du, E87640du-E87660du, E82540-E82560, E87640-E87660, E72525-E72535, E77822-E77830 - Output tray motor assembly (M4)

Learn how to remove and replace the output tray motor assembly.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-67 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01334B	Output tray motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

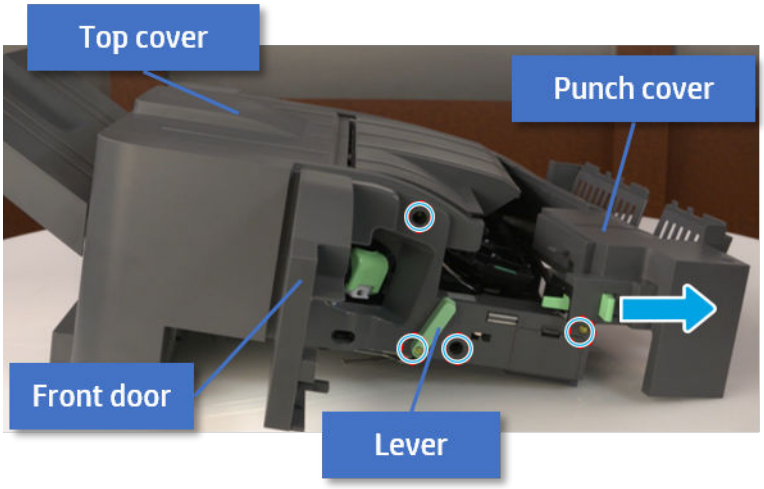
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-662 Remove the front cover

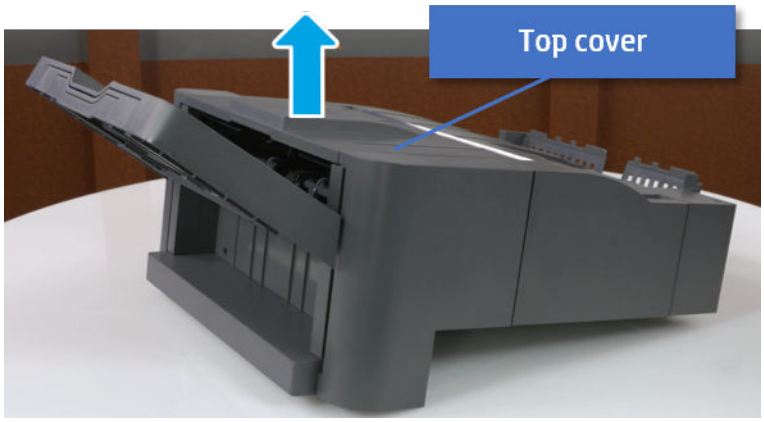


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

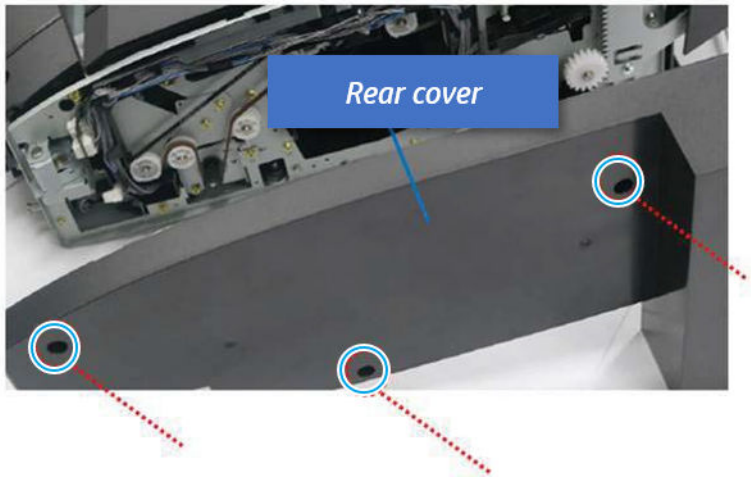
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-663 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-664 Remove the rear cover

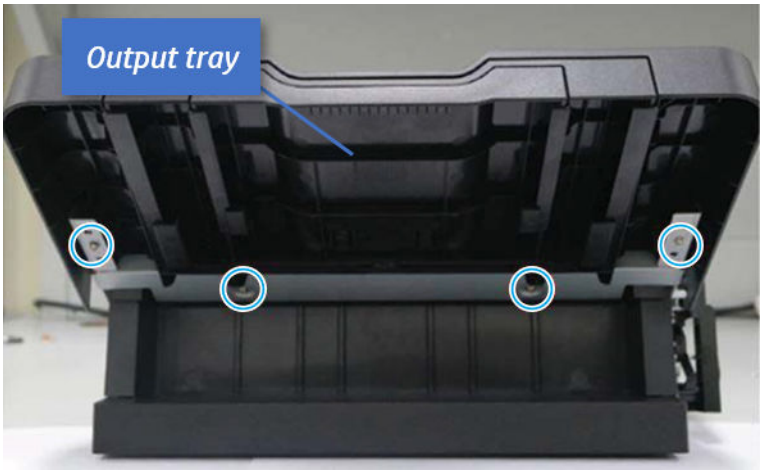


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-665 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

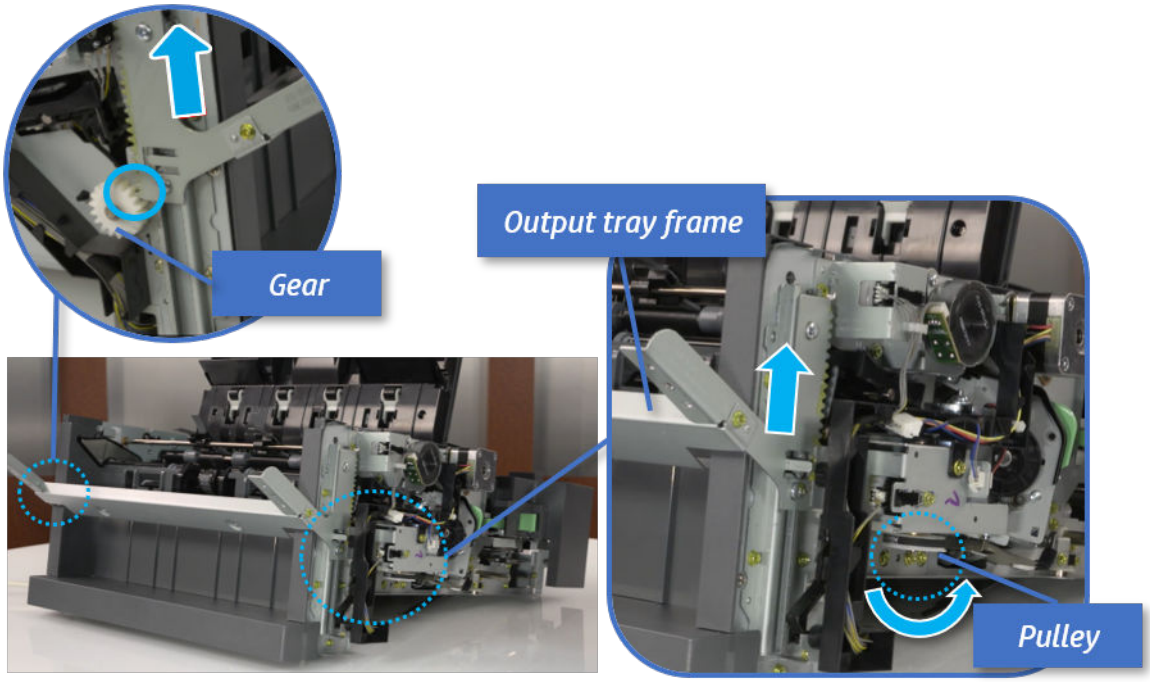
Figure 6-666 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

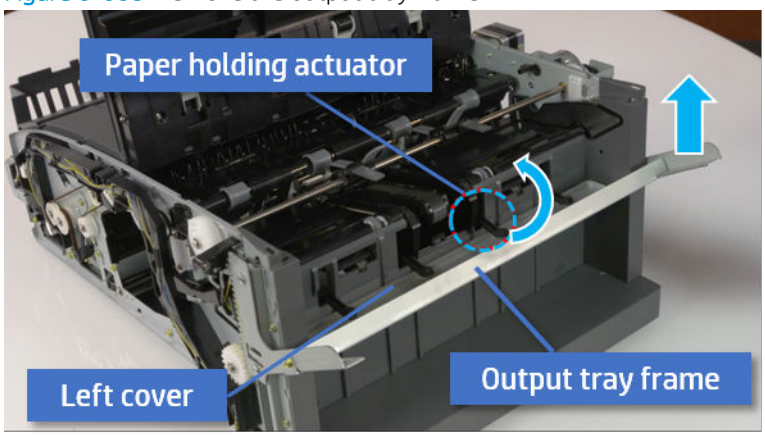
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-667 Remove the pulley



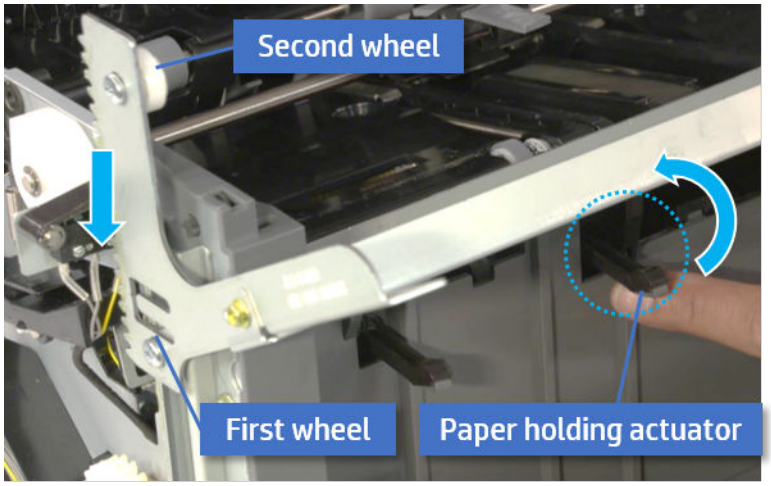
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-668 Remove the output tray frame



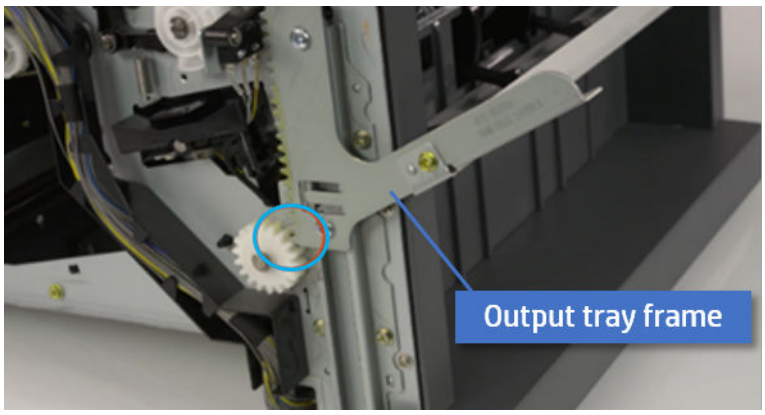
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

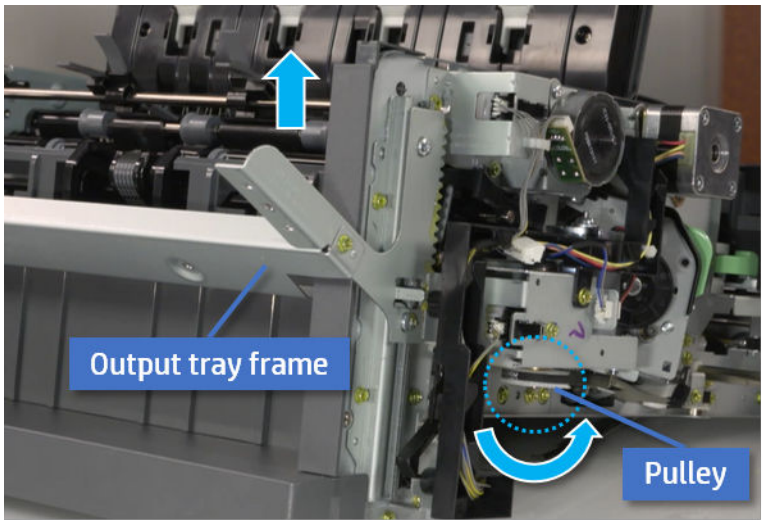


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

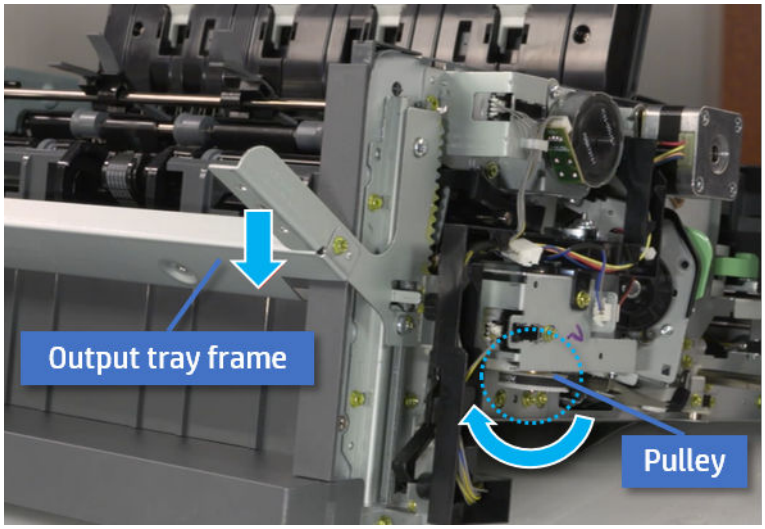
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

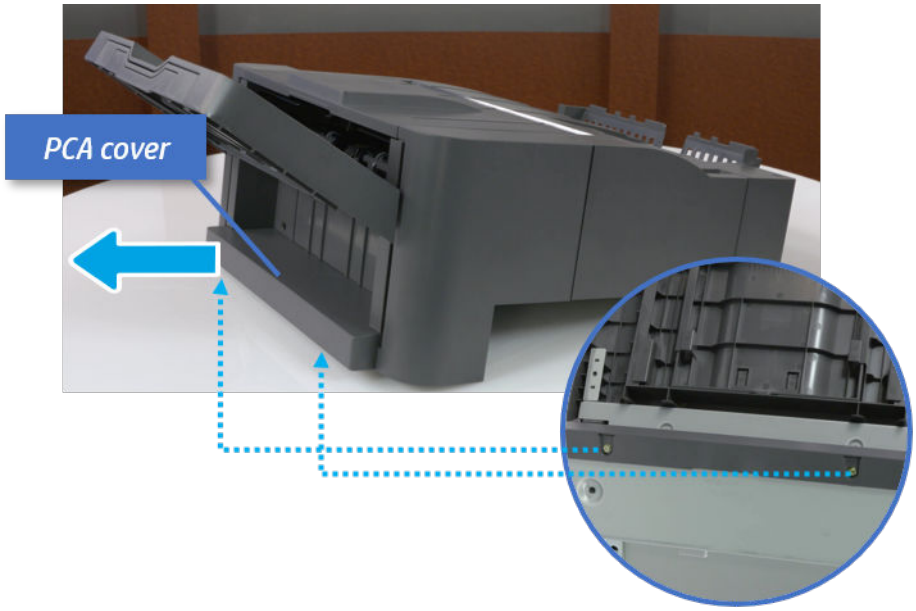


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-669 Remove the PCA cover

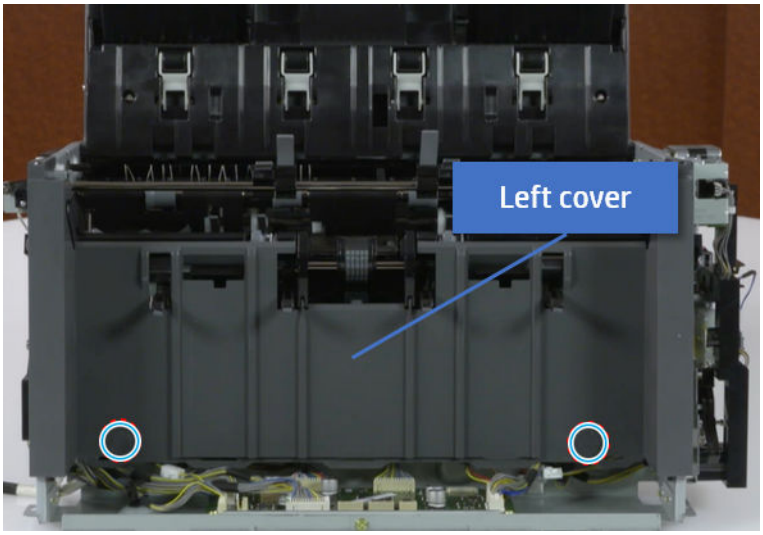


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

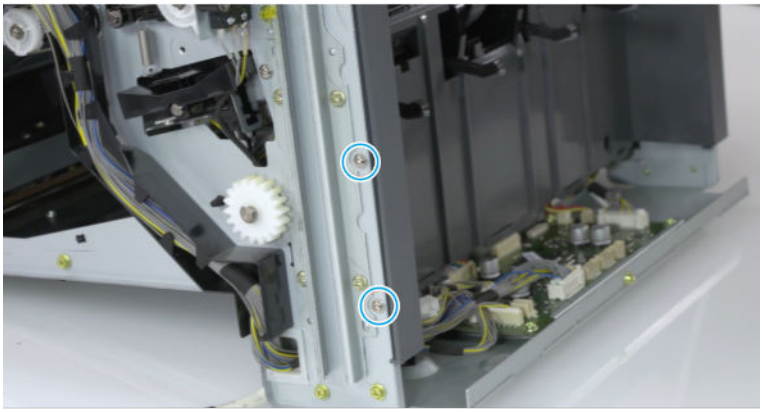
1. Remove two screws.

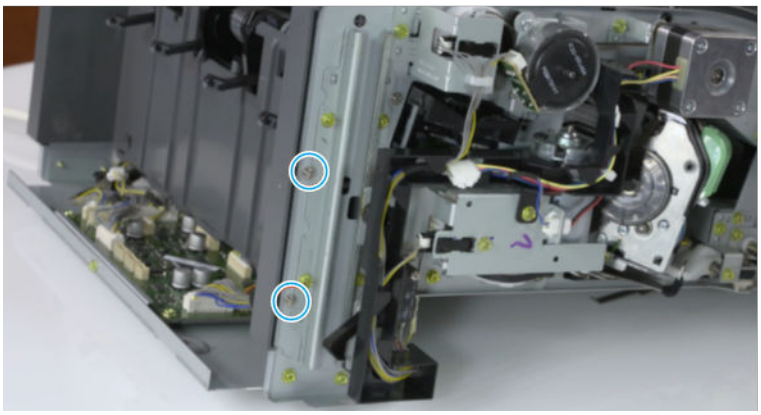
Figure 6-670 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

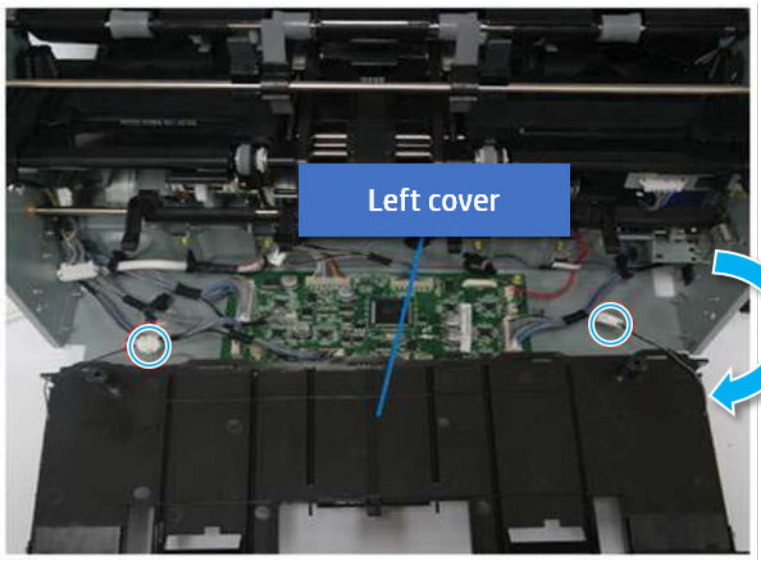
Figure 6-671 Remove four screws



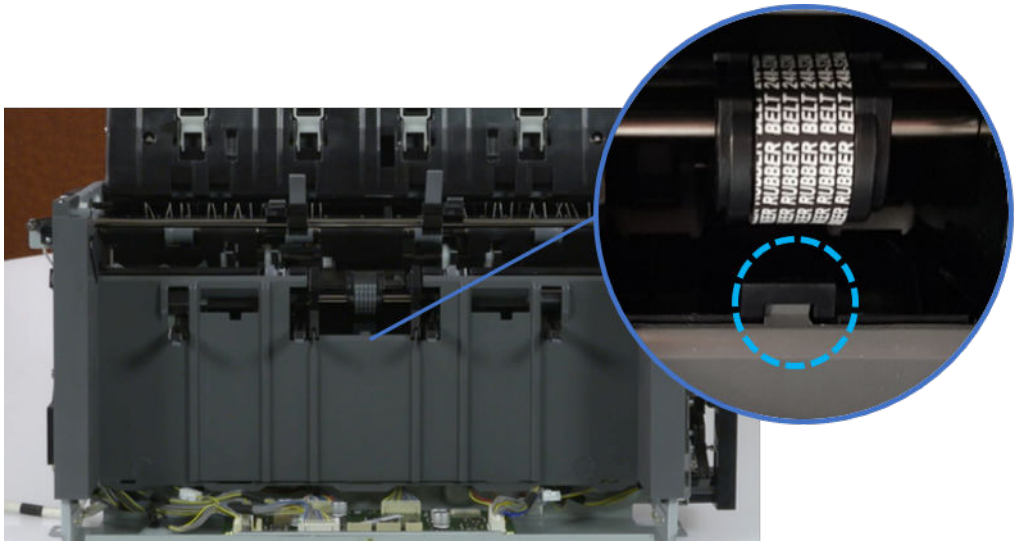


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-672 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



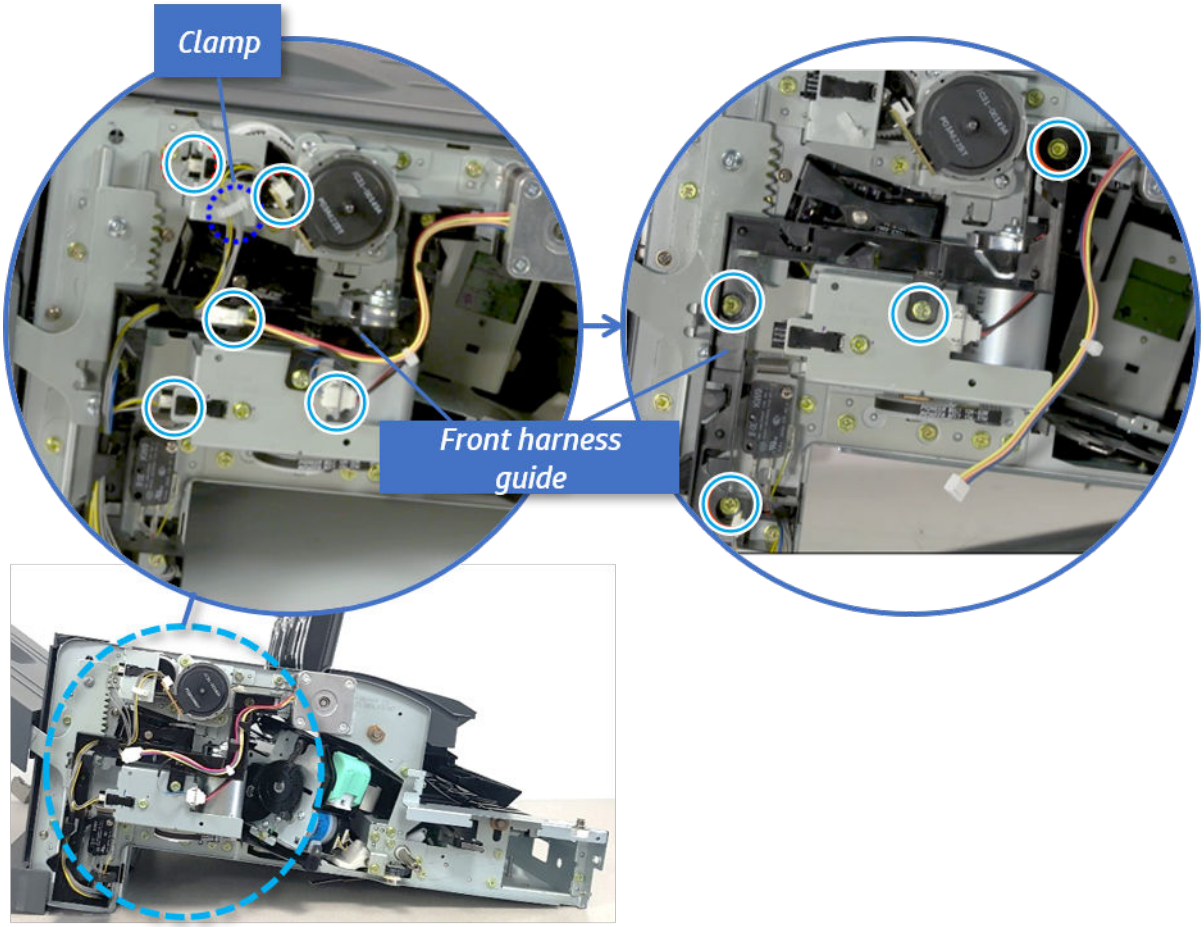
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-673 Remove the front harness guide

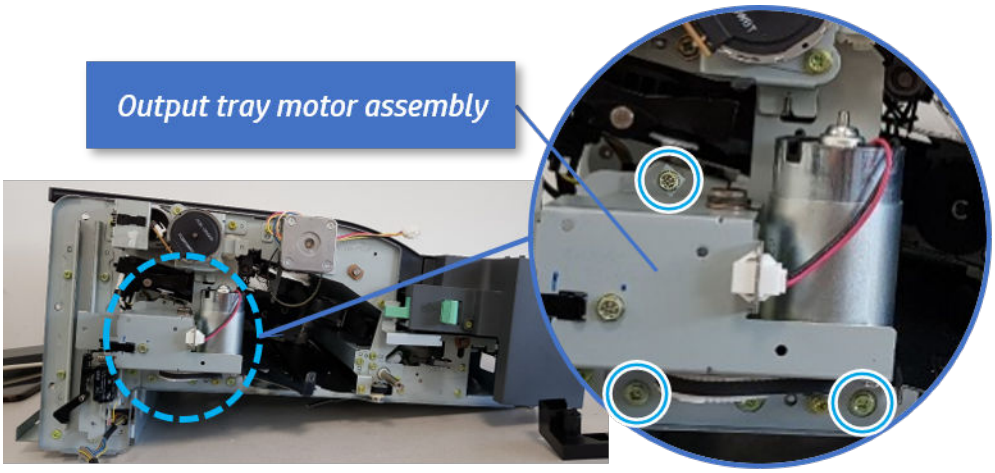


Remove the output tray motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor assembly.

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-674 Remove the output tray motor assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HP LaserJet Managed MFP E82540du-E82560du, E87640du-E87660du, E82540-E82560, E87640-E87660, E72525-E72535, E77822-E77830 - Output tray motor sensor (S6)

Learn how to remove and replace the output tray motor sensor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-68 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Output tray motor sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

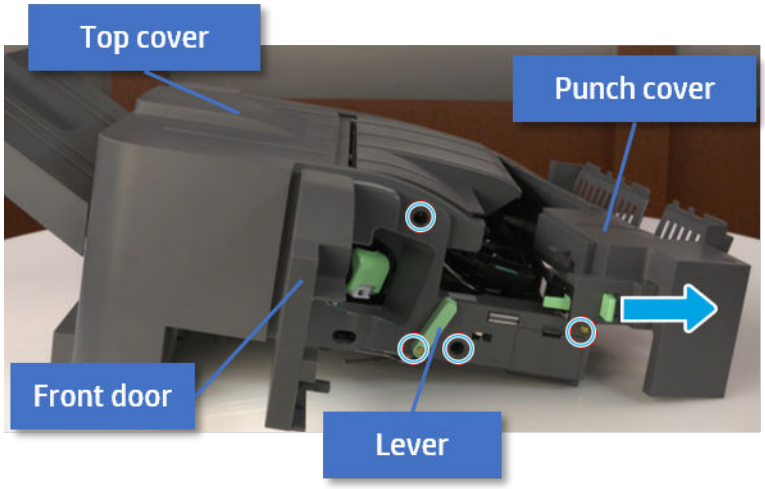
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-675 Remove the front cover

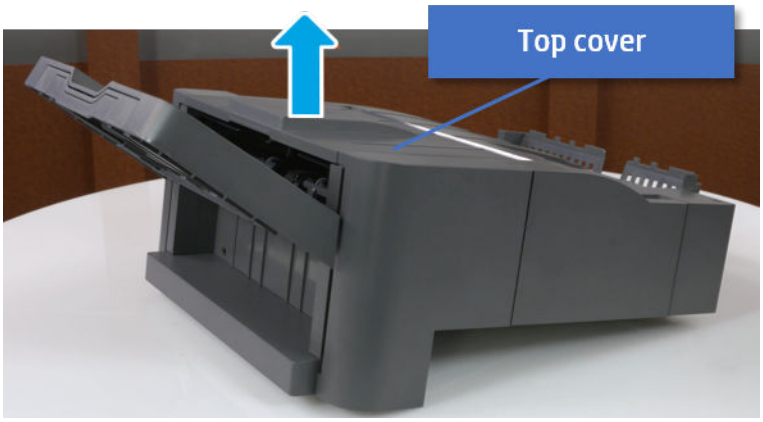


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

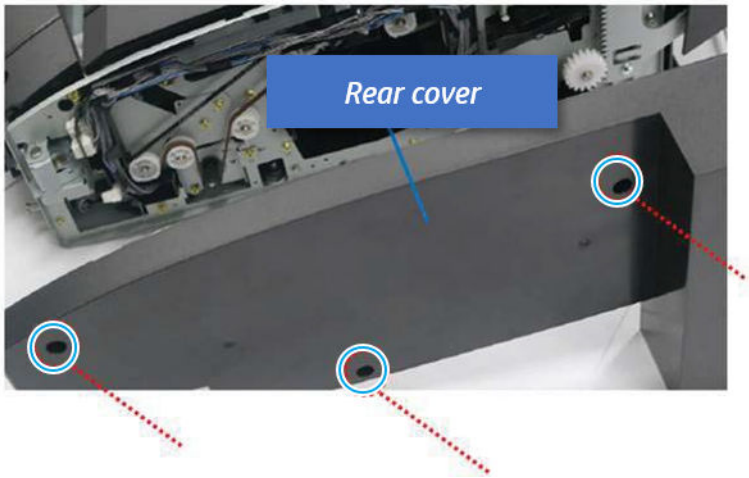
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-676 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-677 Remove the rear cover

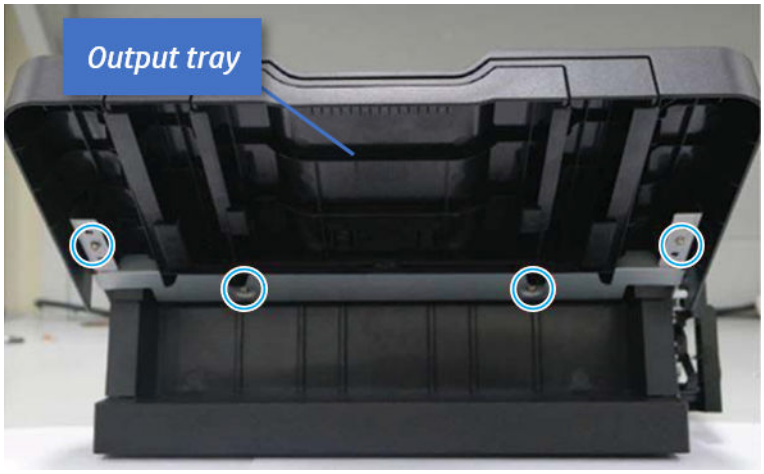


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-678 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

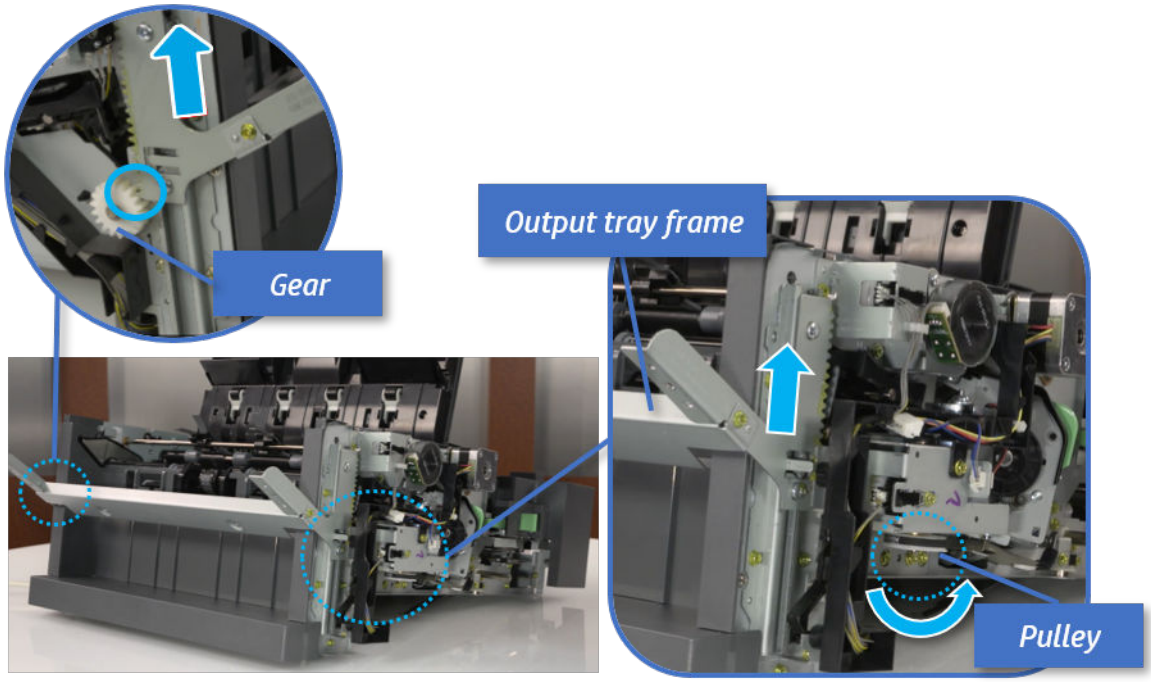
Figure 6-679 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

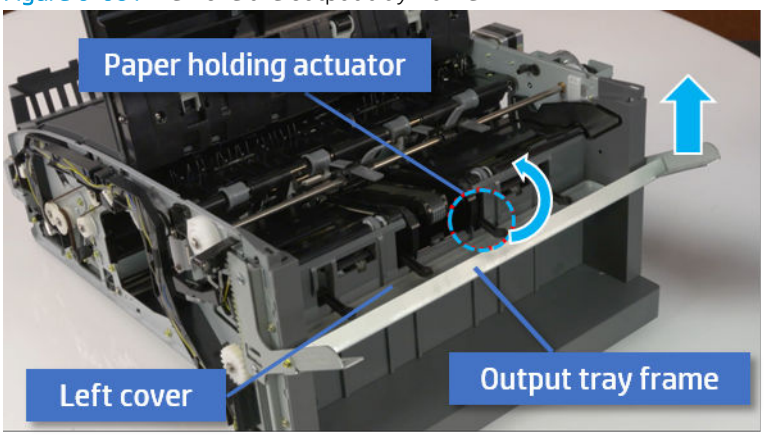
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-680 Remove the pulley



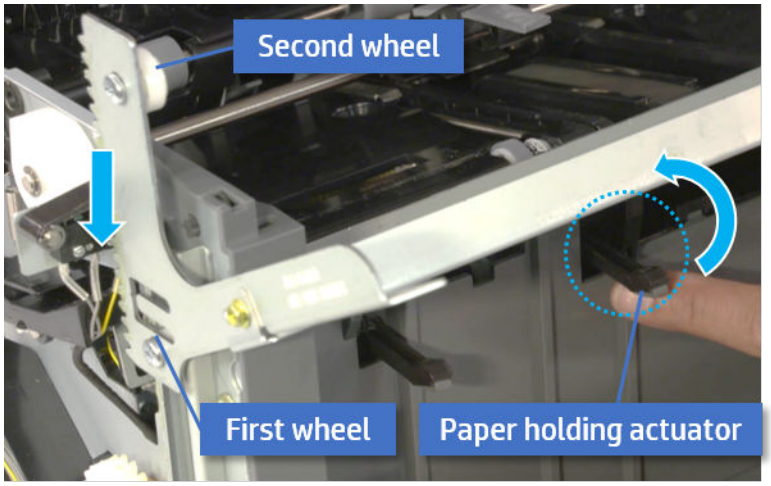
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-681 Remove the output tray frame



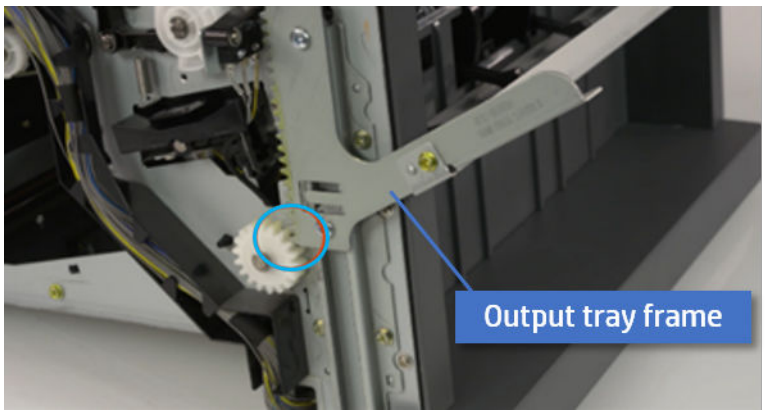
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

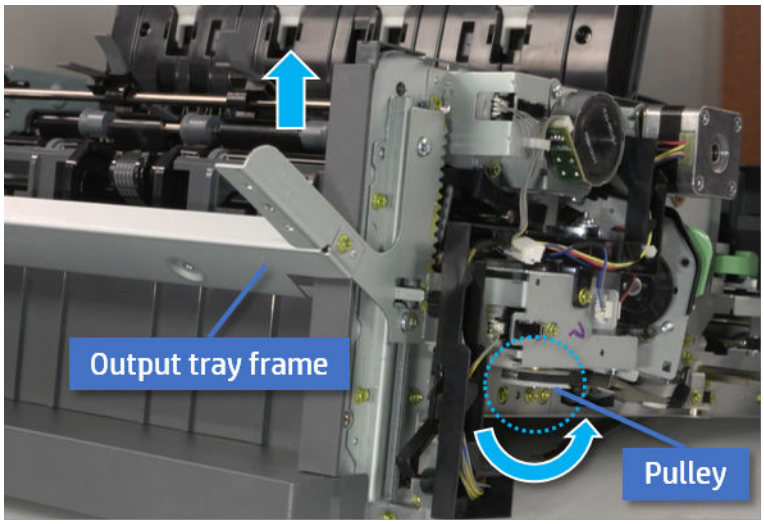


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

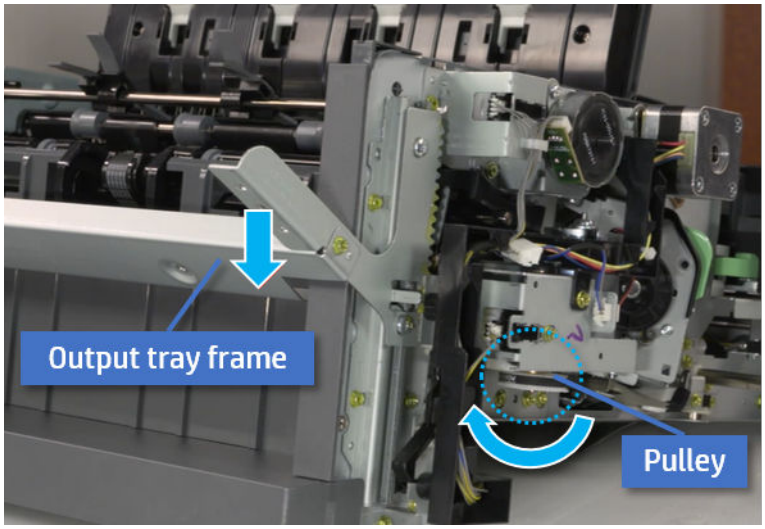
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

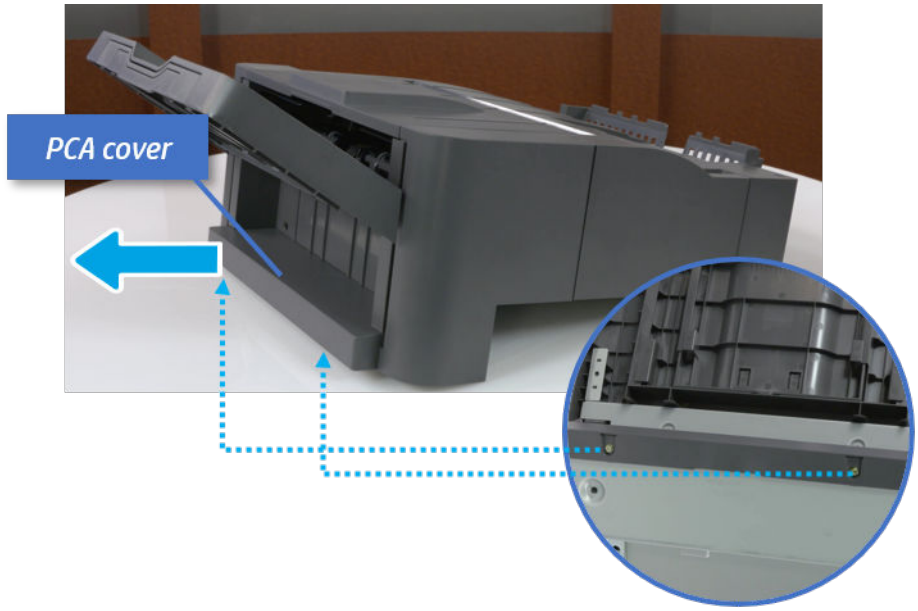


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

- ▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-682 Remove the PCA cover

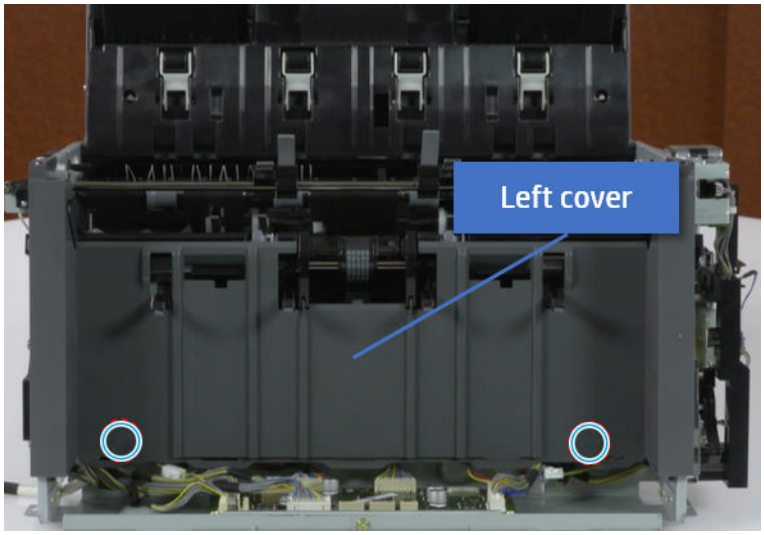


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

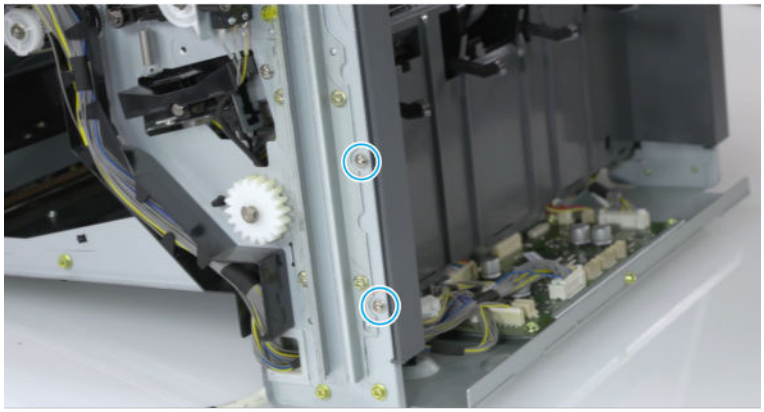
1. Remove two screws.

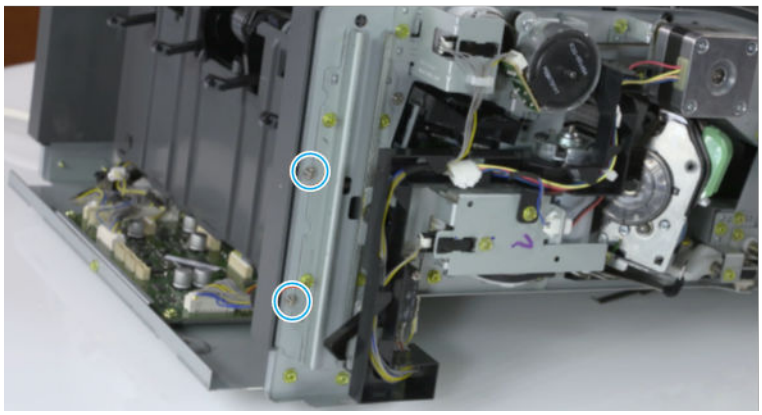
Figure 6-683 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

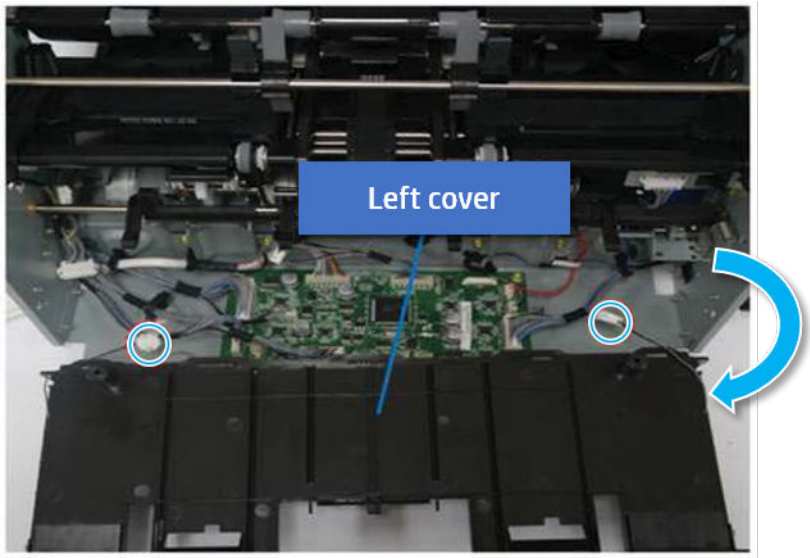
Figure 6-684 Remove four screws



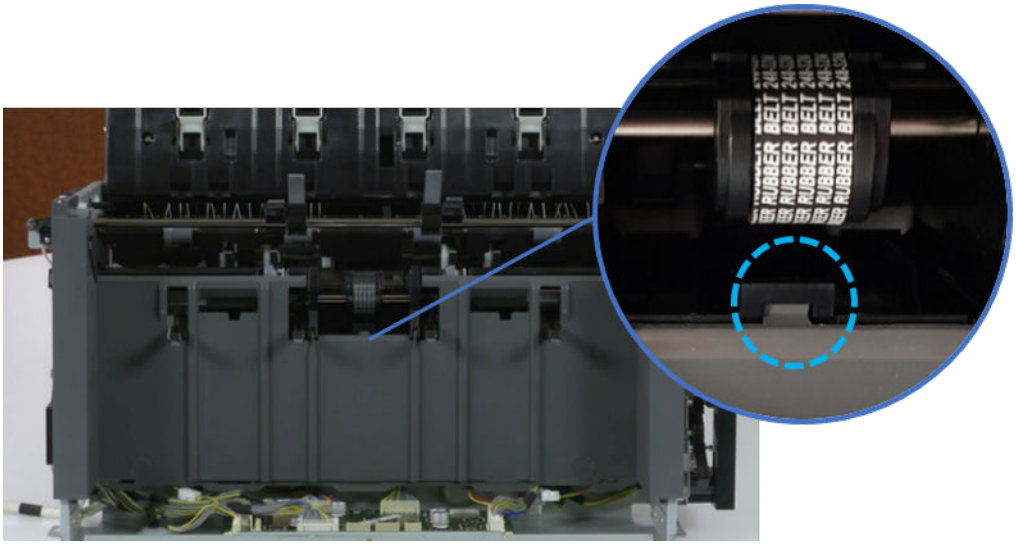


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-685 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



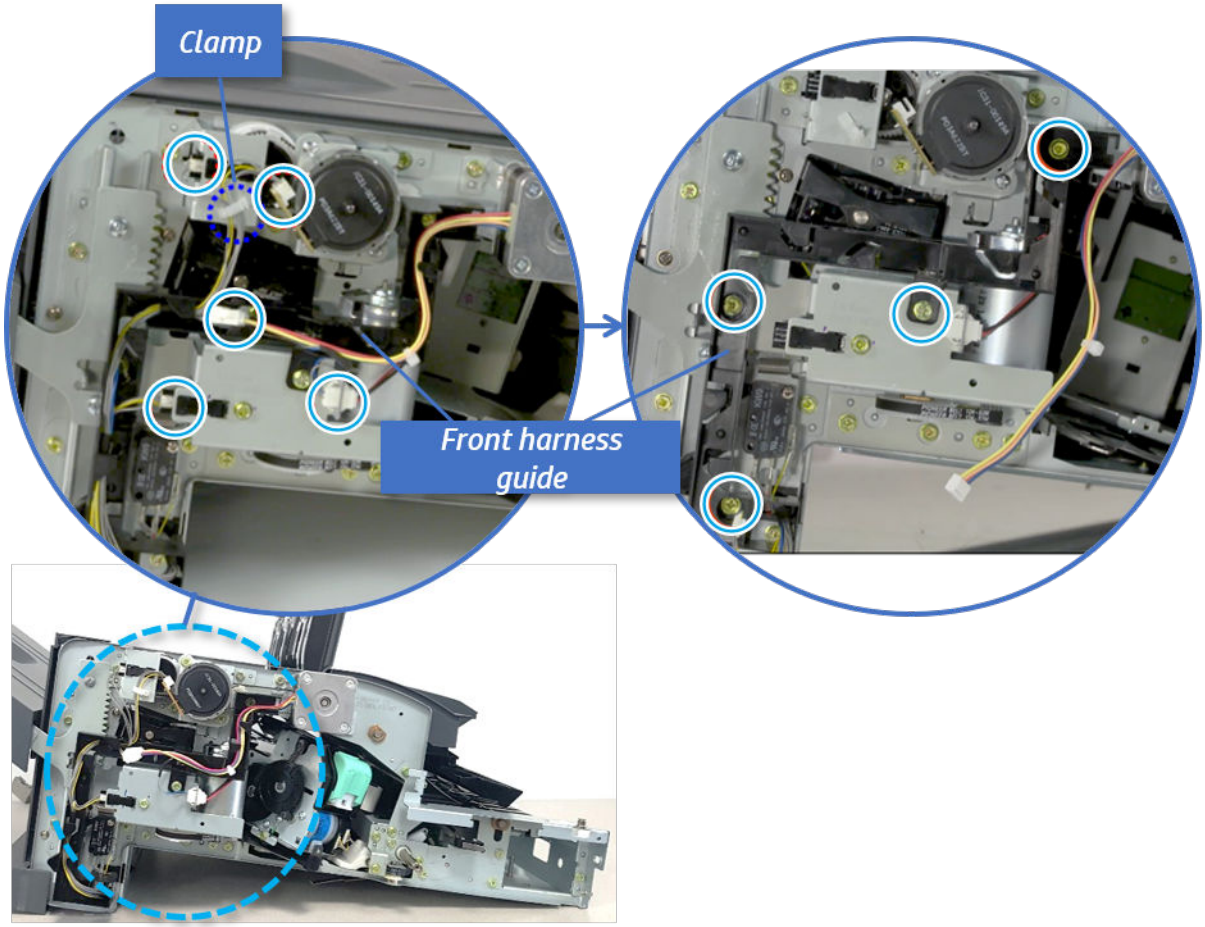
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-686 Remove the front harness guide

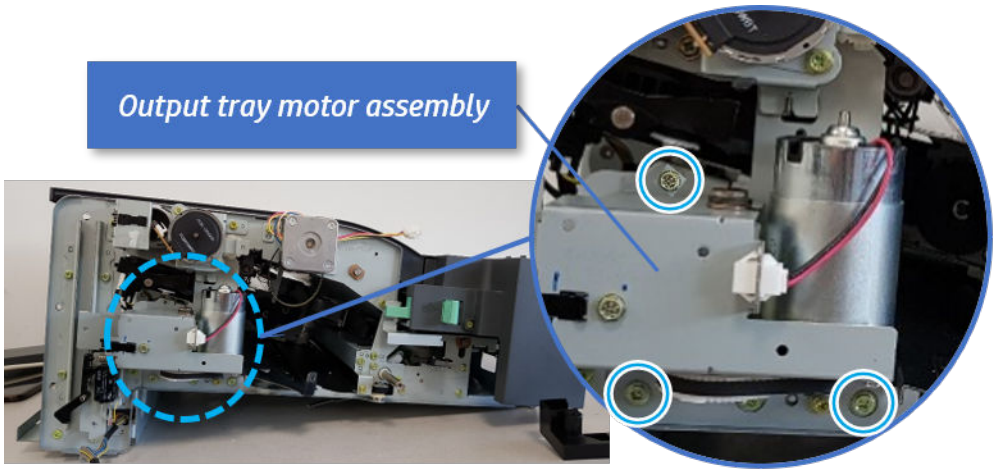


Remove the output tray motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor assembly.

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-687 Remove the output tray motor assembly

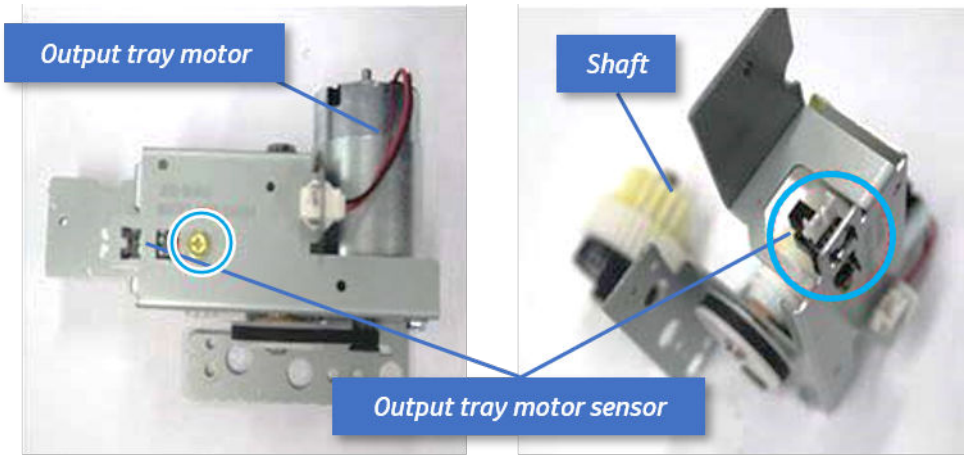


Remove the output tray motor sensor

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor sensor.

▲ Remove one screw, remove the shaft, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 6-688 Remove the output tray motor sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HP LaserJet Managed MFP E82540du-E82560du, E87640du-E87660du, E82540-E82560, E87640-E87660, E72525-E72535, E77822-E77830 - Output tray motor

Learn how to remove and replace the output tray motor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-69 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00178B	Output tray motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

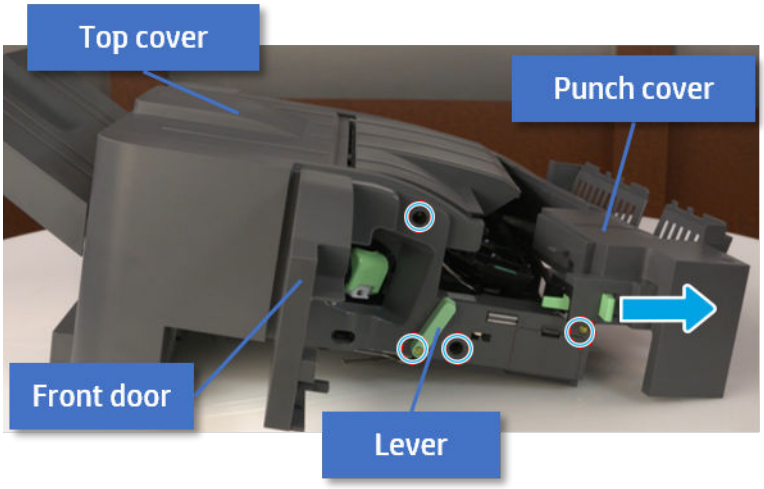
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-689 Remove the front cover

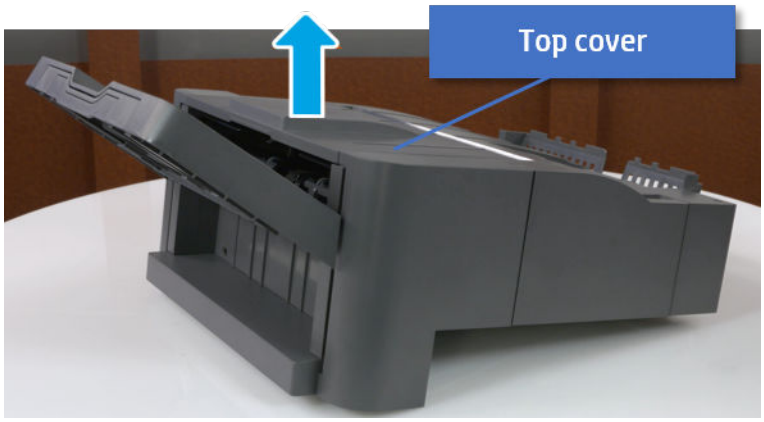


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

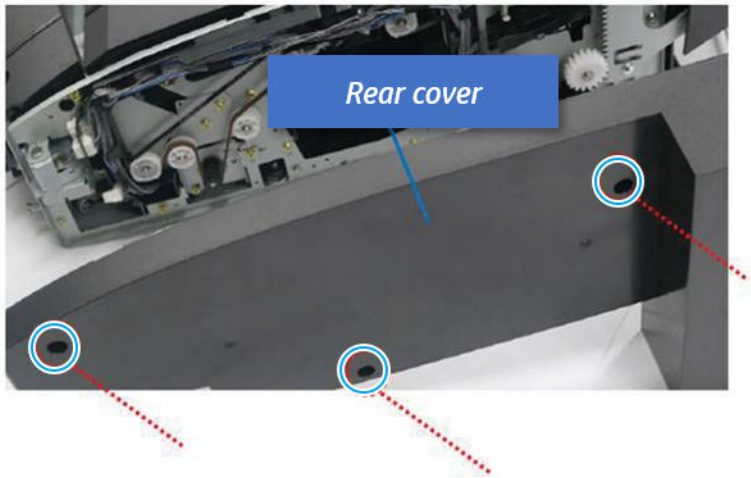
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-690 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-691 Remove the rear cover

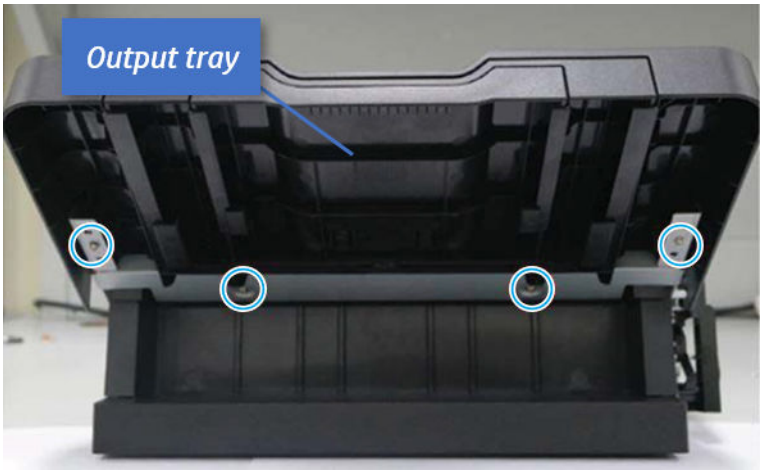


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-692 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

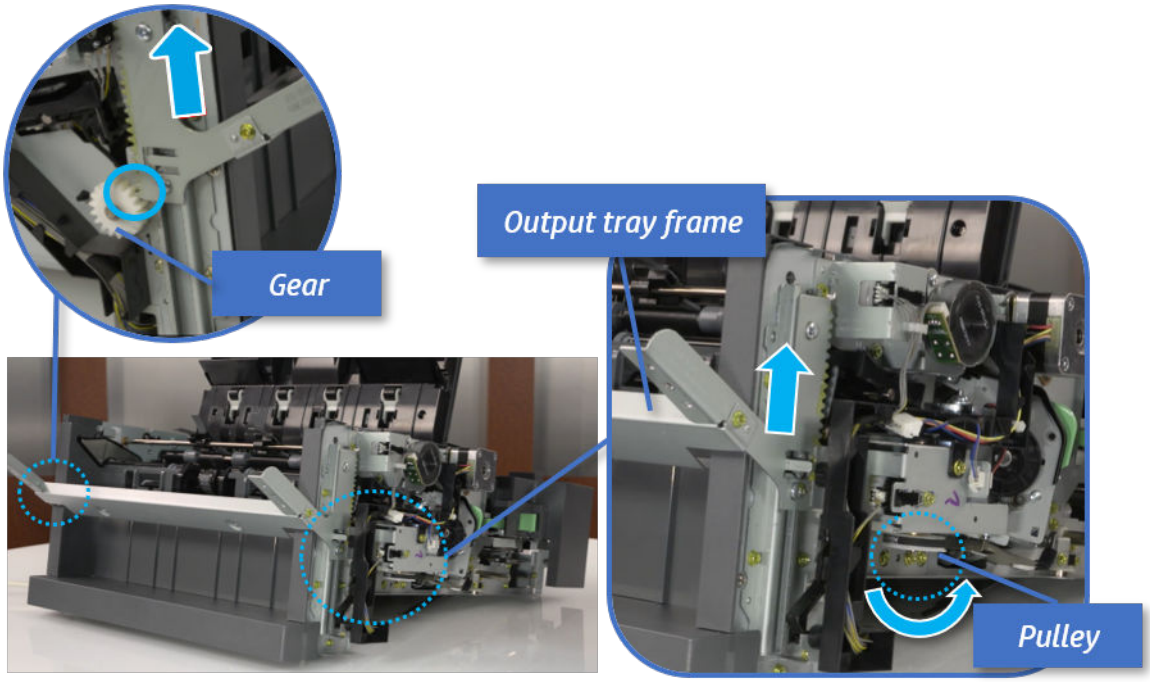
Figure 6-693 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

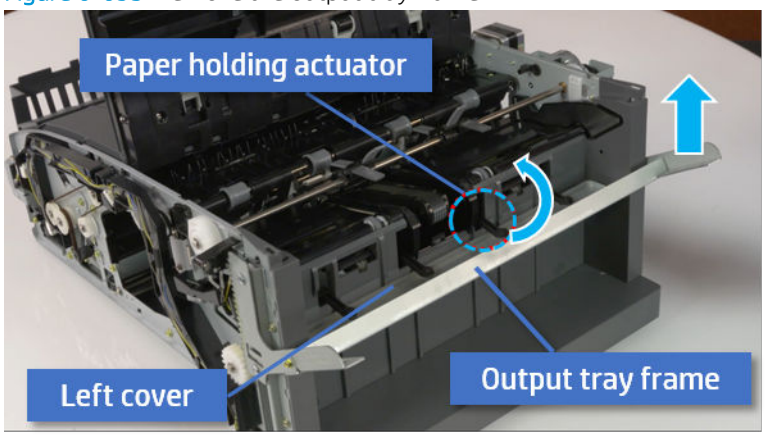
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-694 Remove the pulley



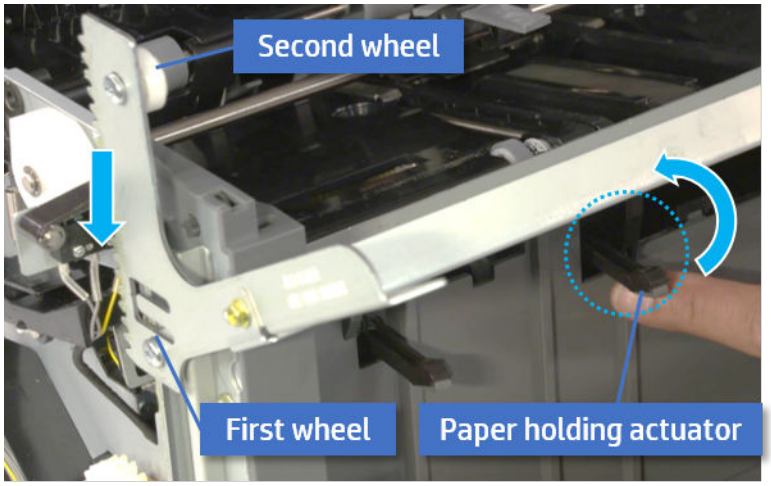
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-695 Remove the output tray frame



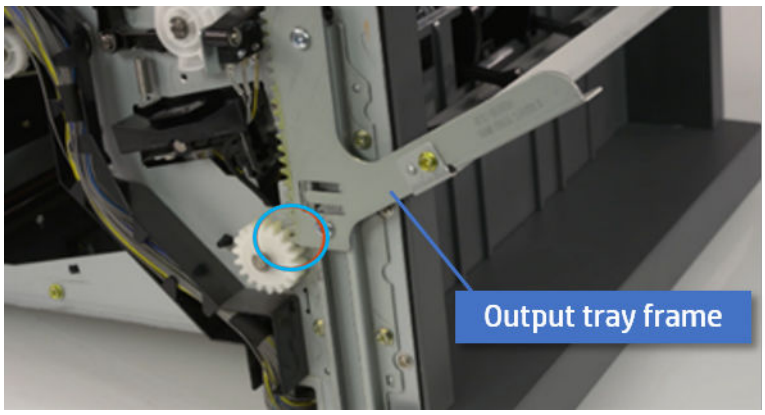
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

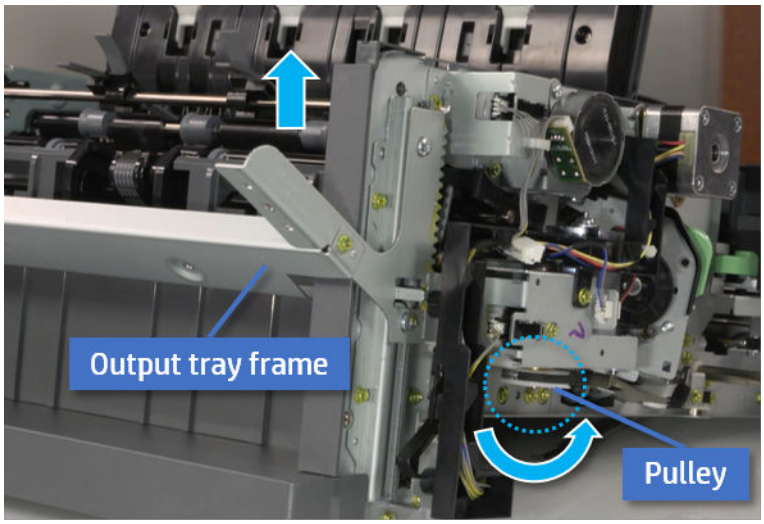


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

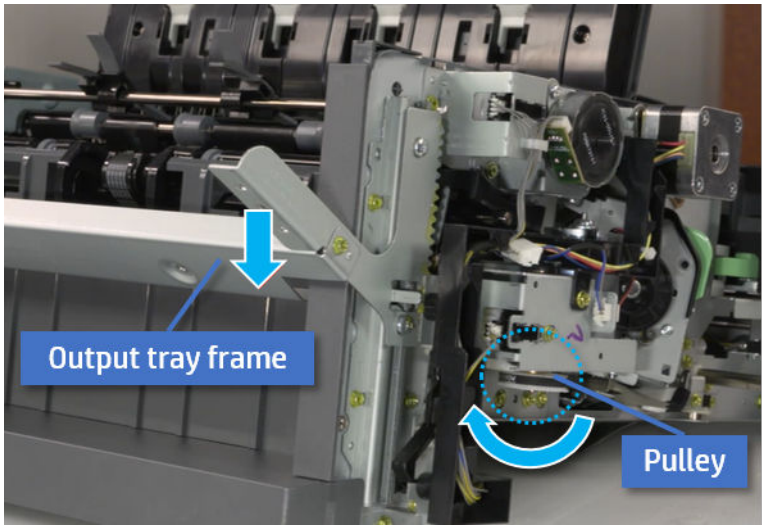
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

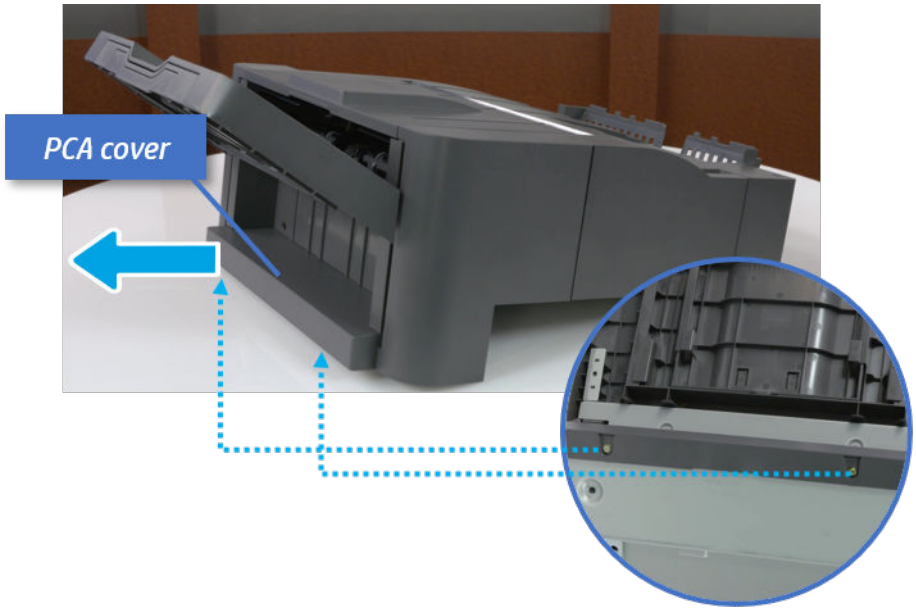


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-696 Remove the PCA cover

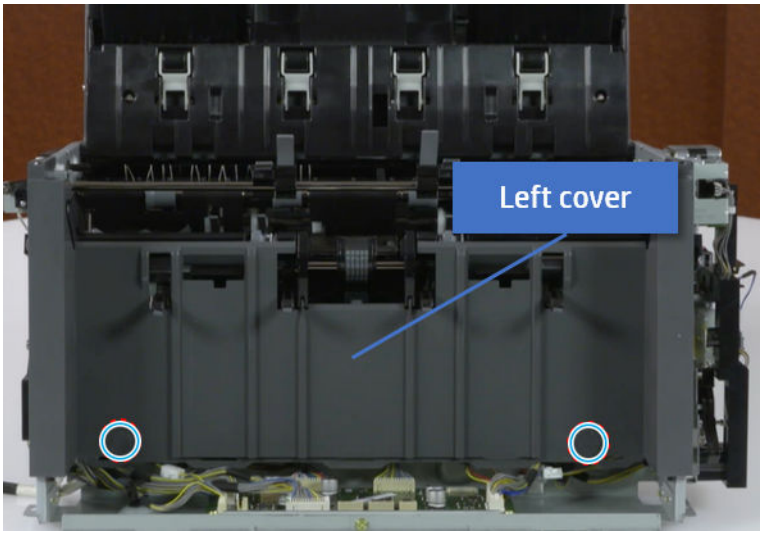


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

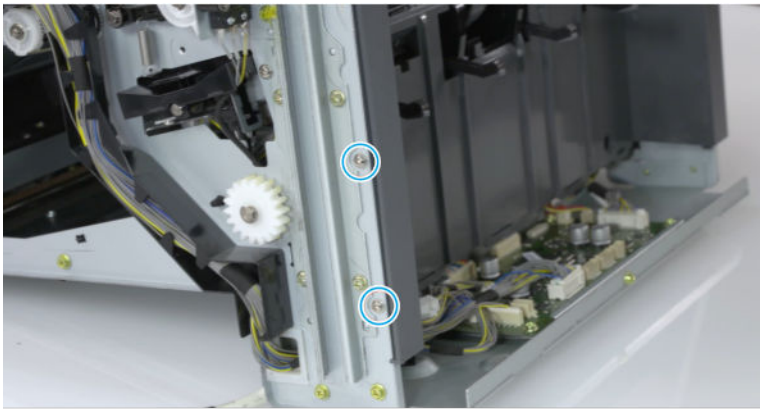
1. Remove two screws.

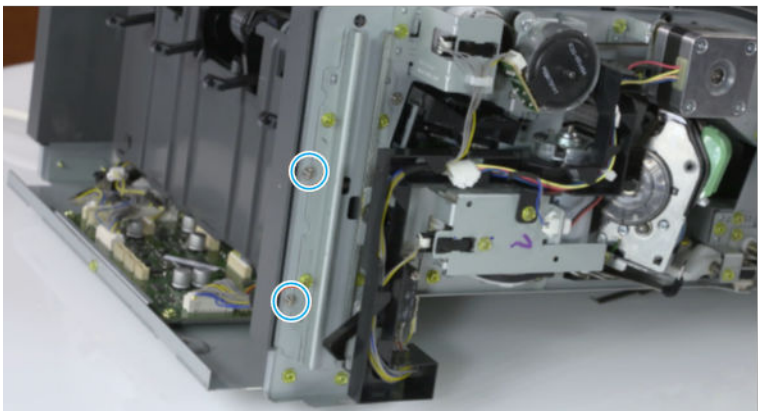
Figure 6-697 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

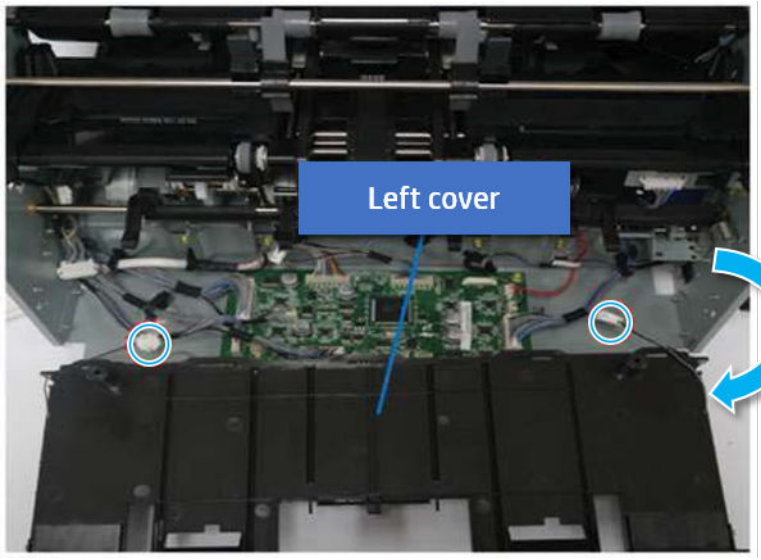
Figure 6-698 Remove four screws



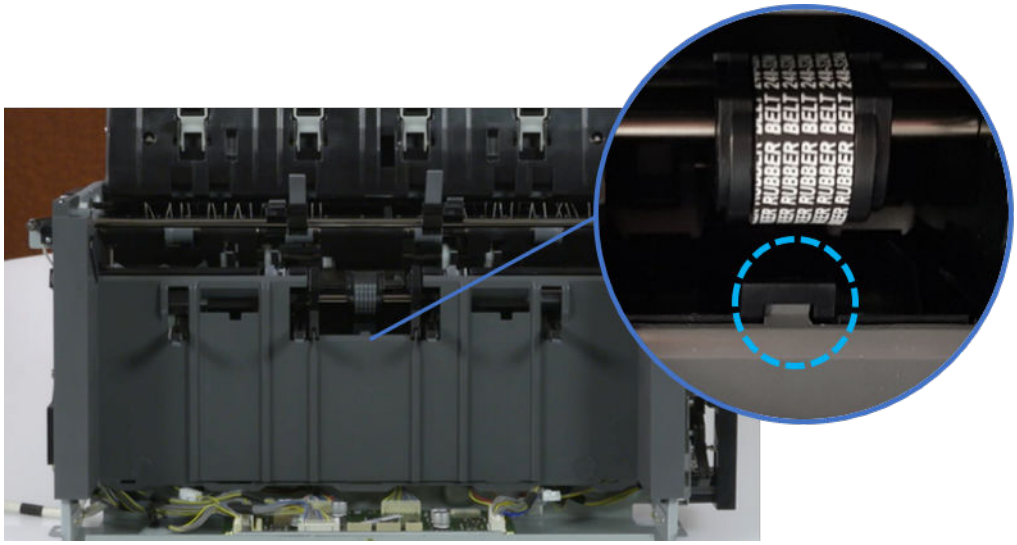


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-699 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



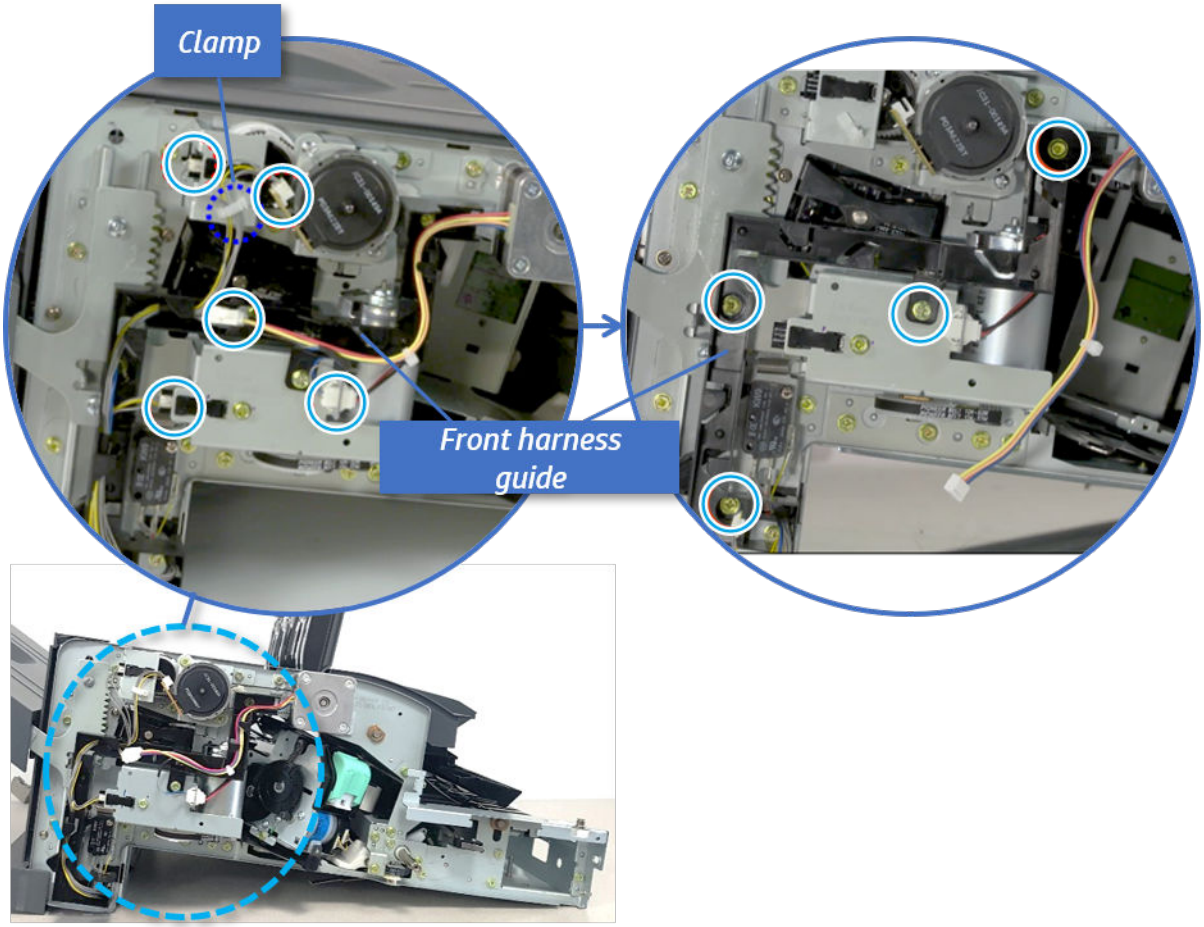
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-700 Remove the front harness guide

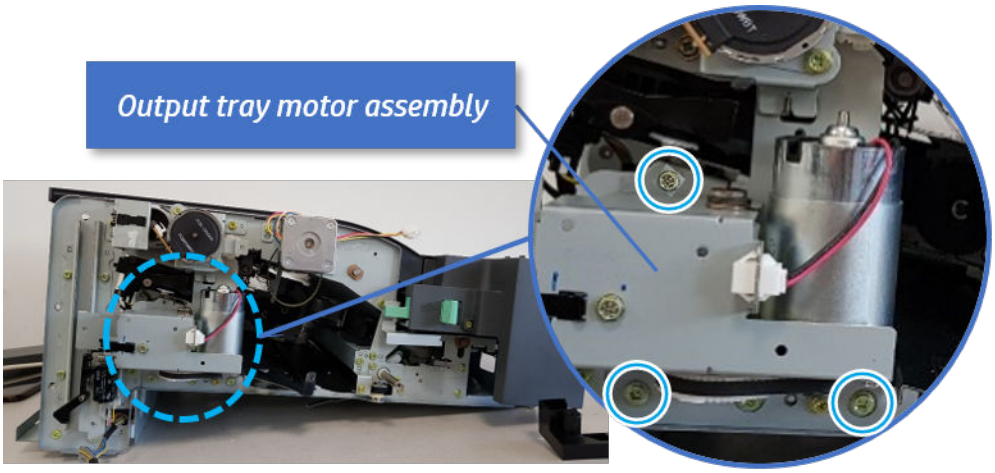


Remove the output tray motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor assembly.

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-701 Remove the output tray motor assembly

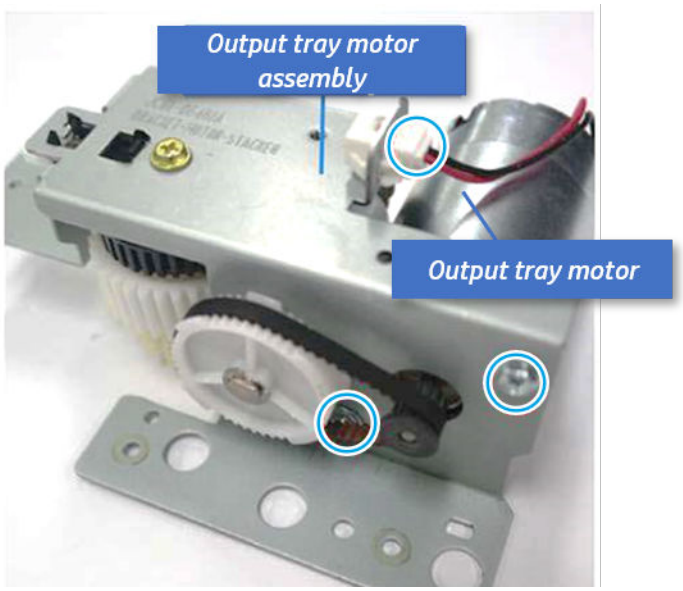


Remove the output tray motor

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor.

▲ Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the output tray motor.

Figure 6-702 Remove the output tray motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Paper holding unit

Removal and replacement: Paper holding

Learn how to remove and replace the paper holding.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-70 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01313A	Paper holding actuator

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

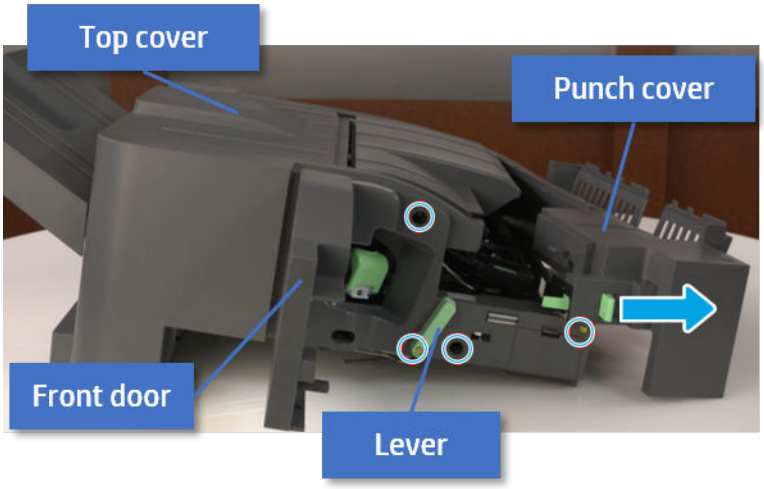
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-703 Remove the front cover

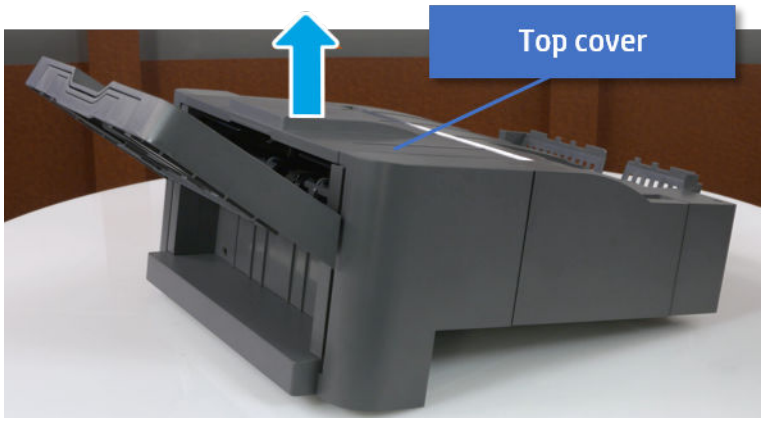


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

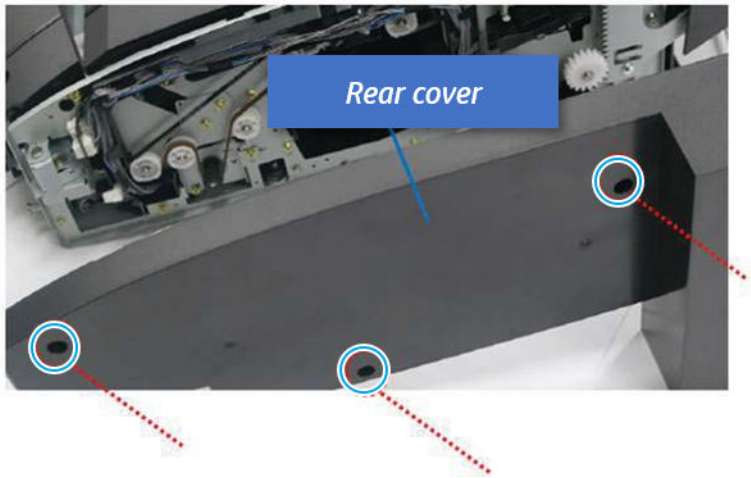
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-704 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-705 Remove the rear cover

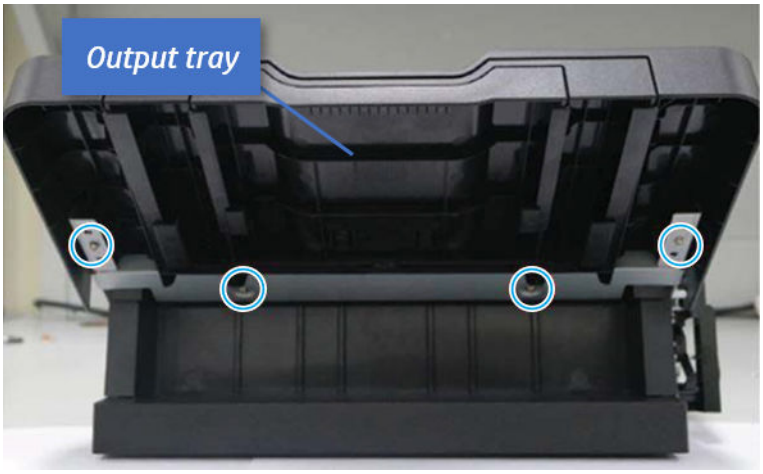


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-706 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

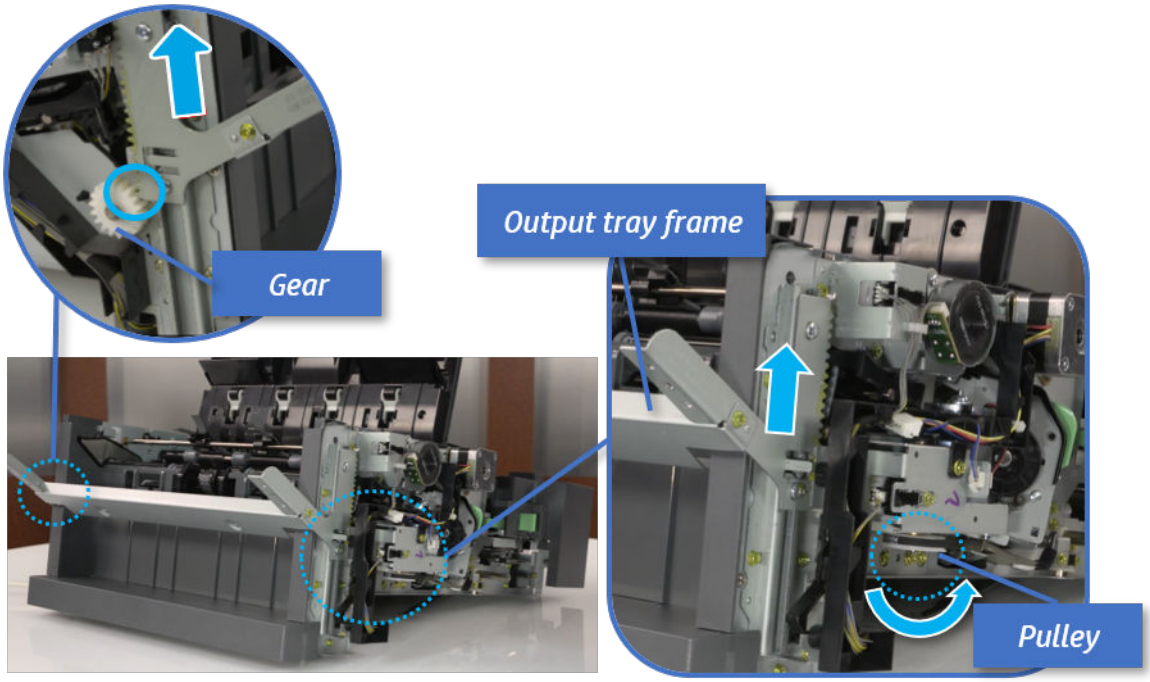
Figure 6-707 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

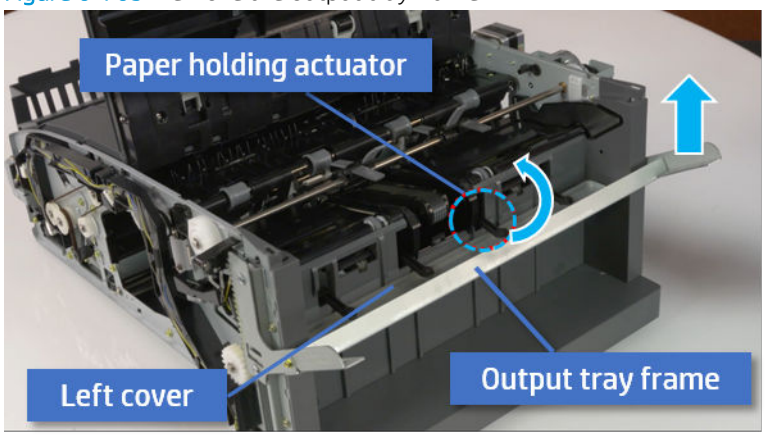
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-708 Remove the pulley



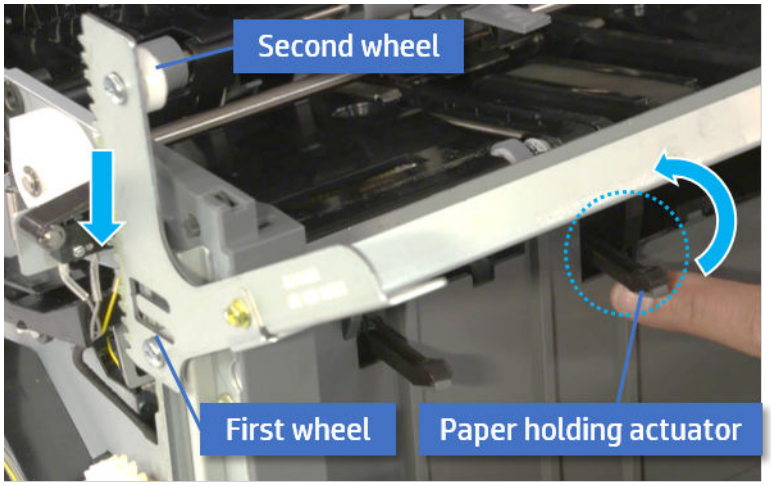
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-709 Remove the output tray frame



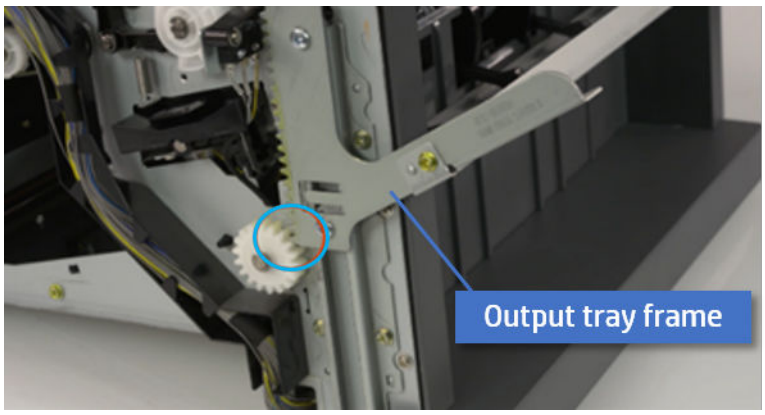
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

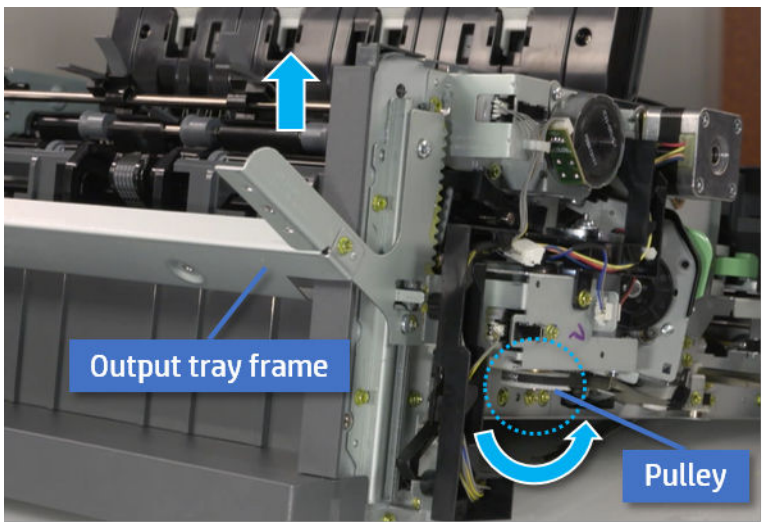


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

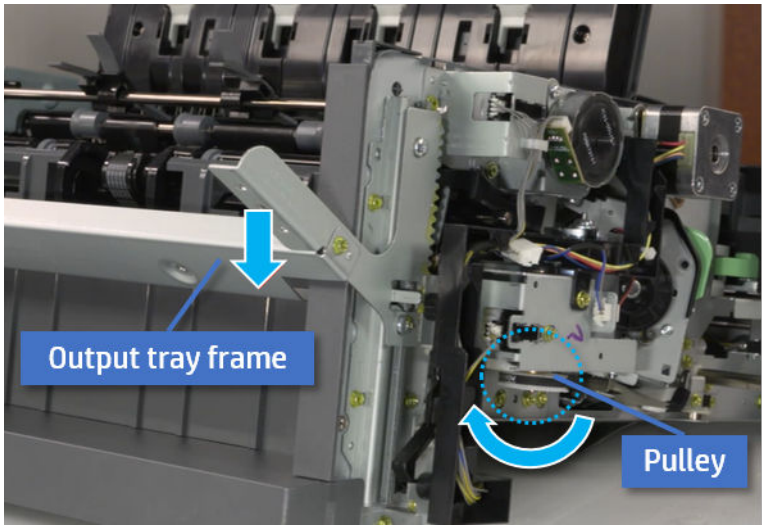
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

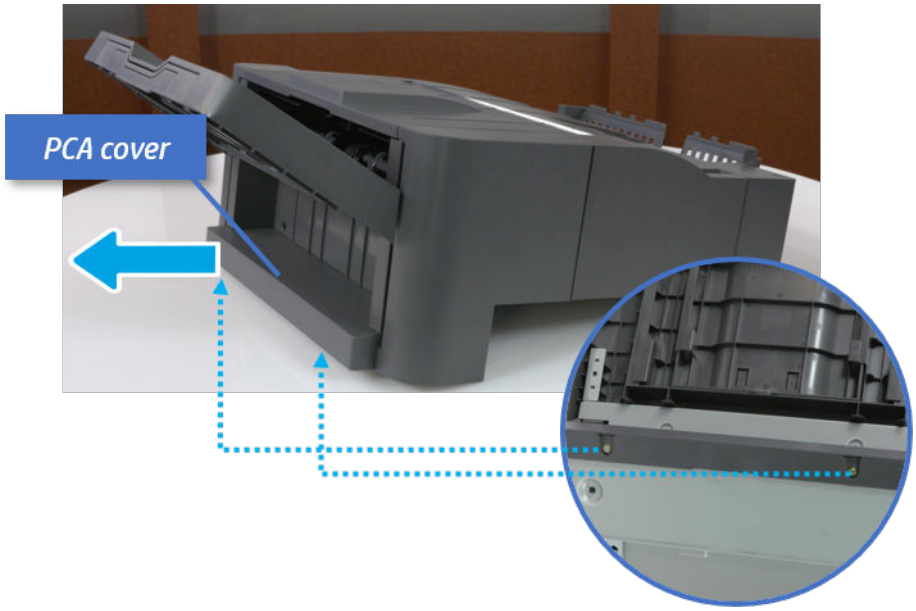


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-710 Remove the PCA cover

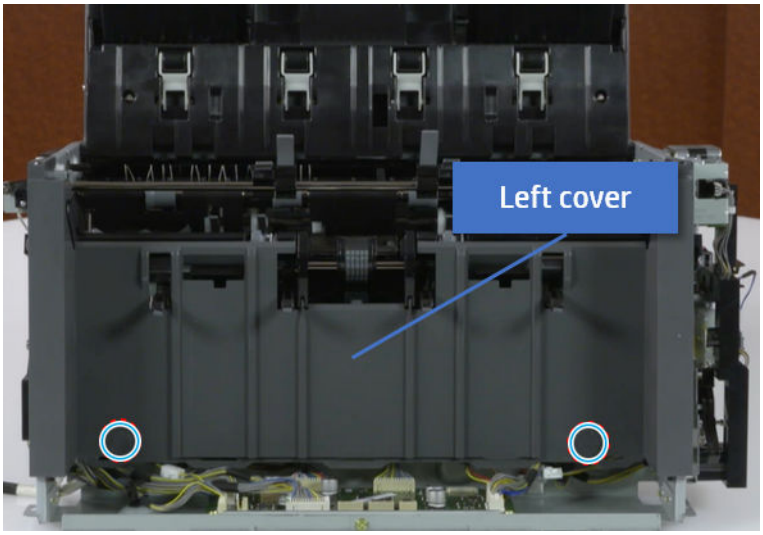


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

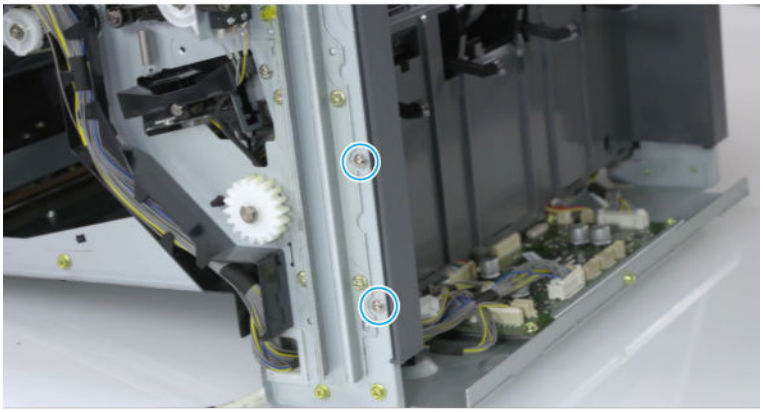
1. Remove two screws.

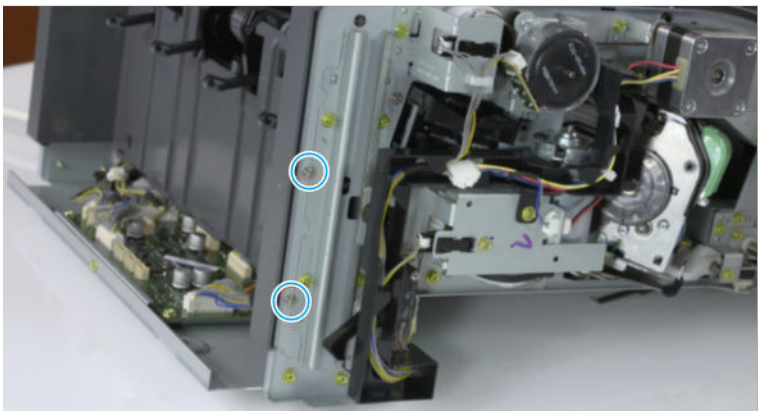
Figure 6-711 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

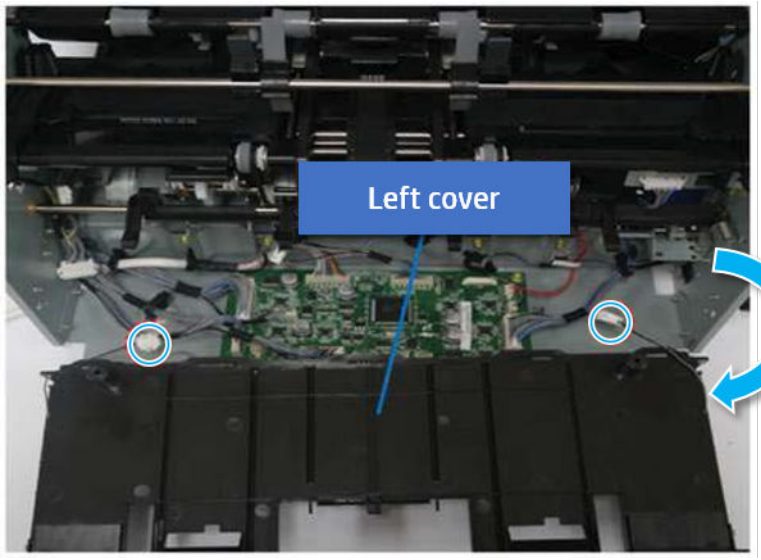
Figure 6-712 Remove four screws



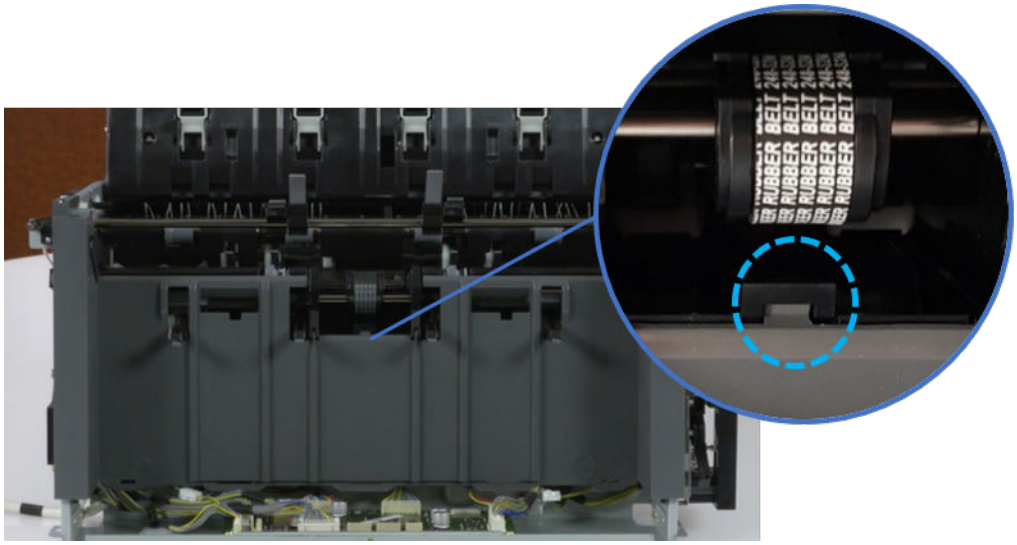


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-713 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



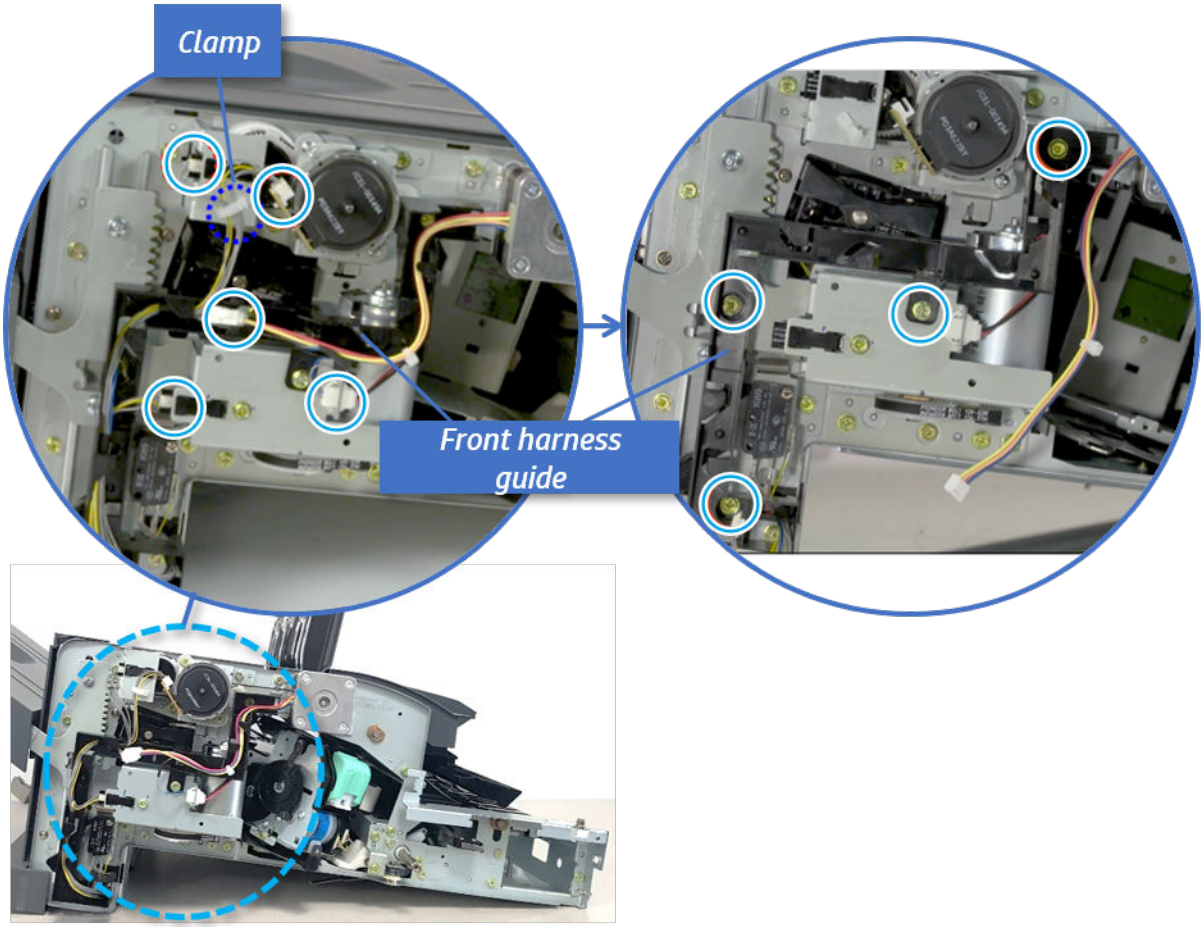
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-714 Remove the front harness guide

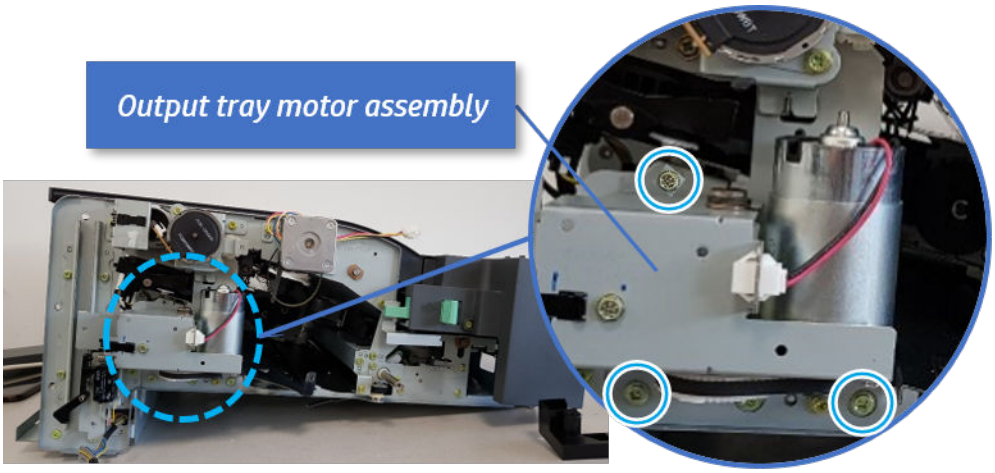


Remove the output tray motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor assembly.

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-715 Remove the output tray motor assembly

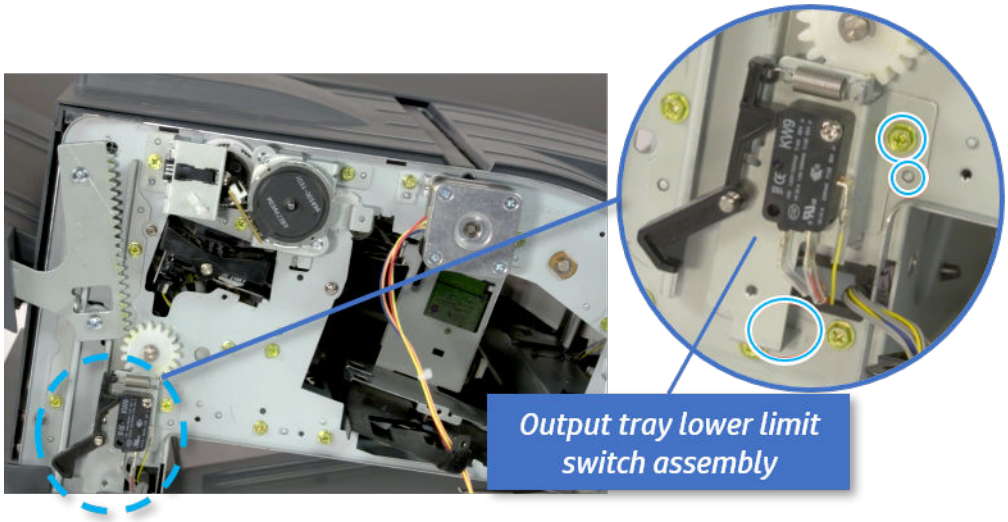


Remove the output tray lower limit switch

Follow these steps to remove the output tray lower limit switch.

- ▲ Remove one screw, and then remove the output tray lower limit switch.

Figure 6-716 Remove the output tray lower limit switch

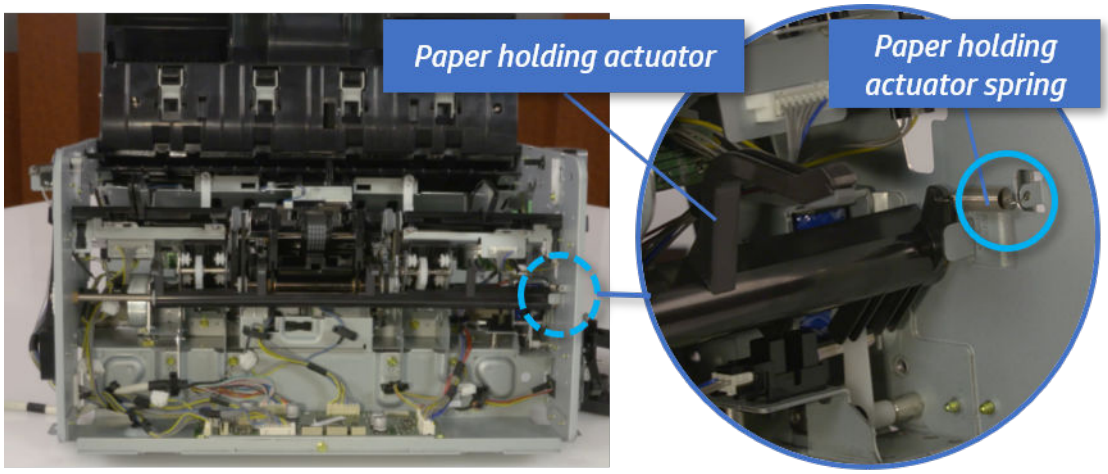


Remove the paper holding

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding.

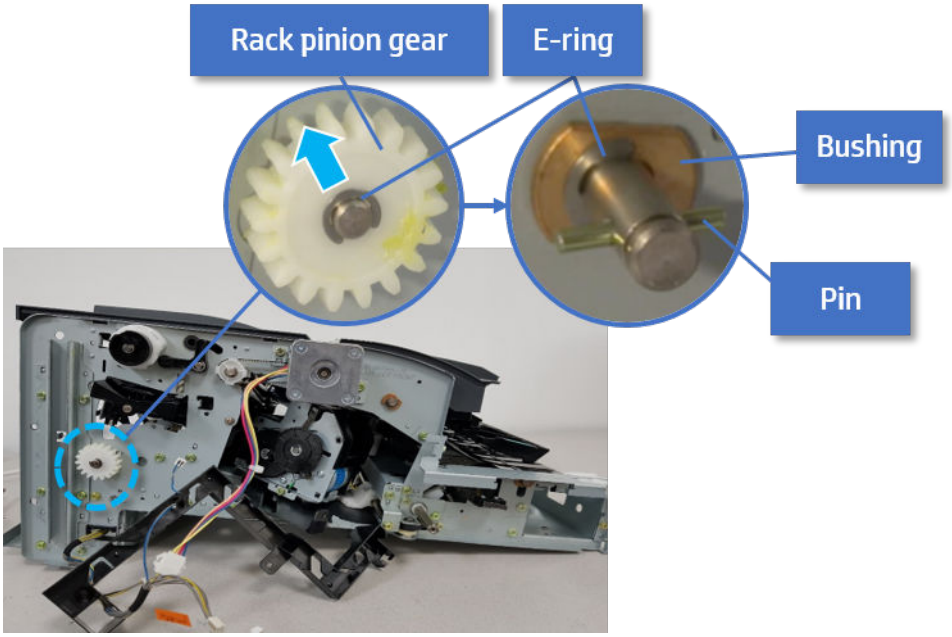
1. Remove the paper holding actuator spring.

Figure 6-717 Remove the paper holding actuator spring



2. Remove the e-ring and the rack pinion gear. And then remove the pin and the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

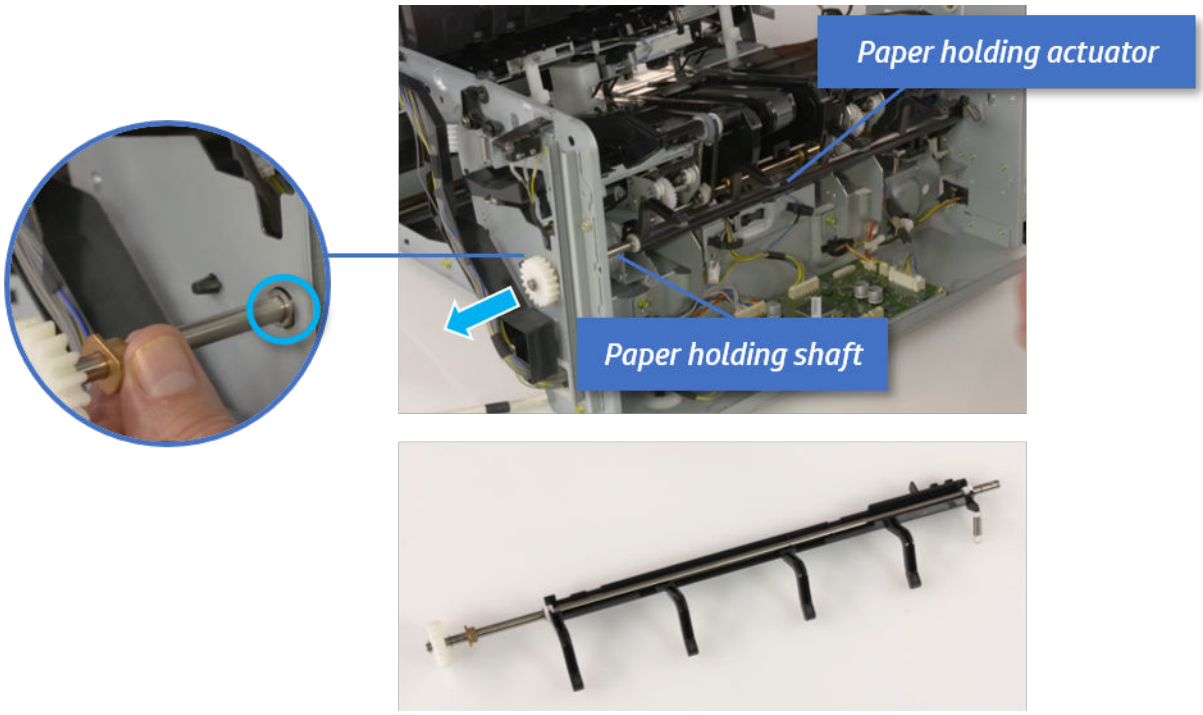
Figure 6-718 Remove e-ring, rack pinion gear, pin, and bushing



NOTE: Be sure not to lose the pin.

3. Carefully remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator.

Figure 6-719 Remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper holding sensor (S9)

Learn how to remove and replace the paper holding sensor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-71 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Paper holding sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

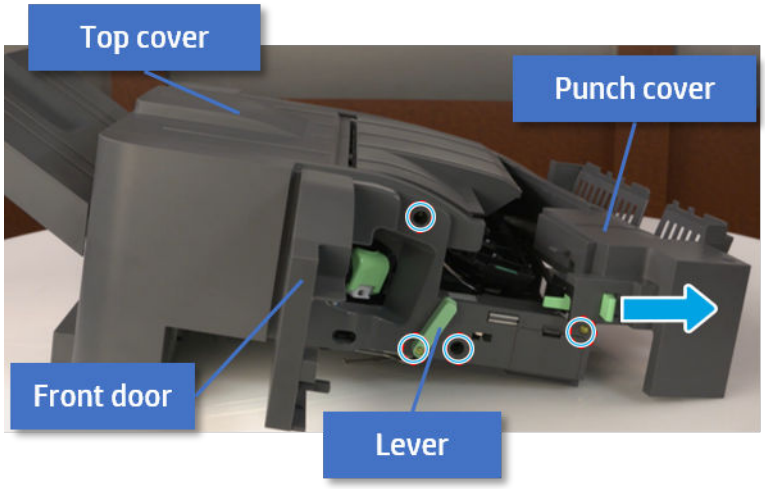
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-720 Remove the front cover

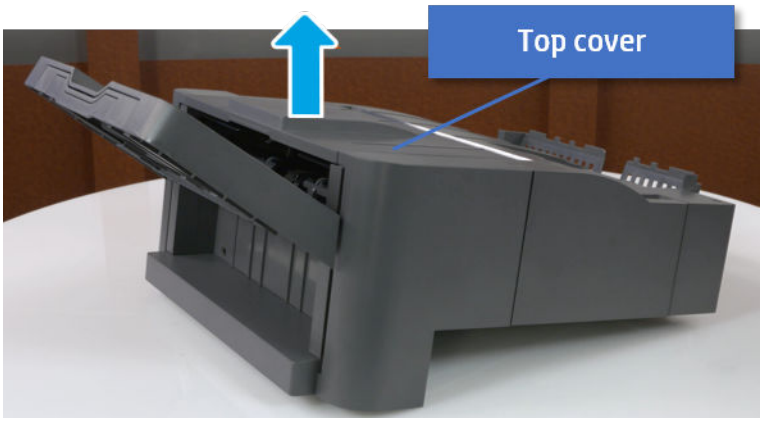


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

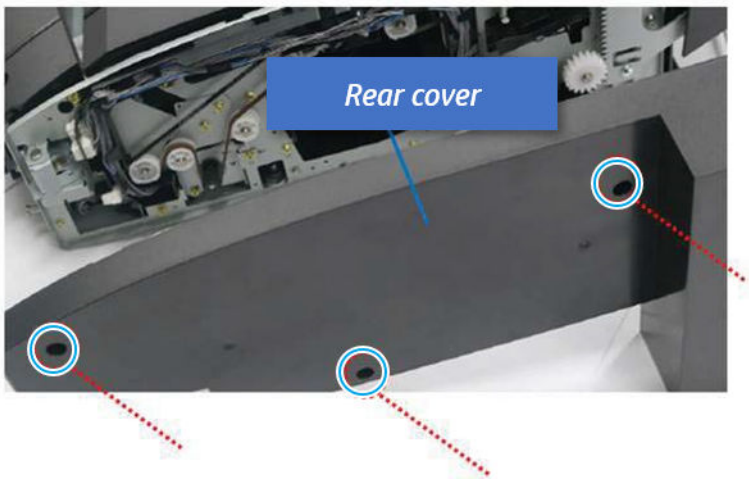
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-721 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-722 Remove the rear cover

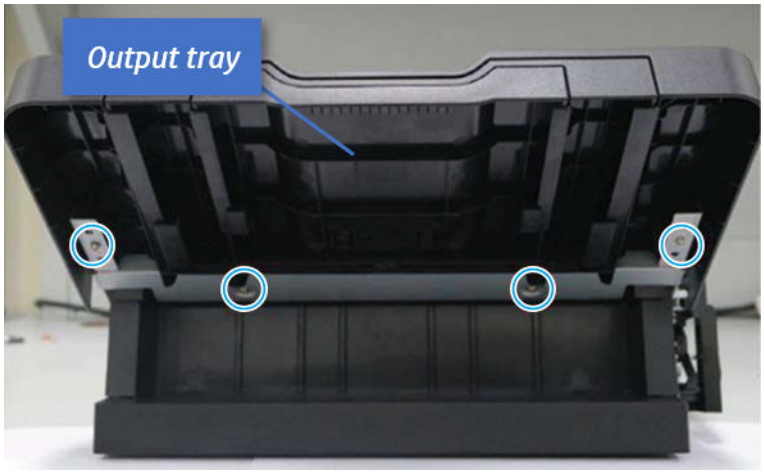


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-723 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

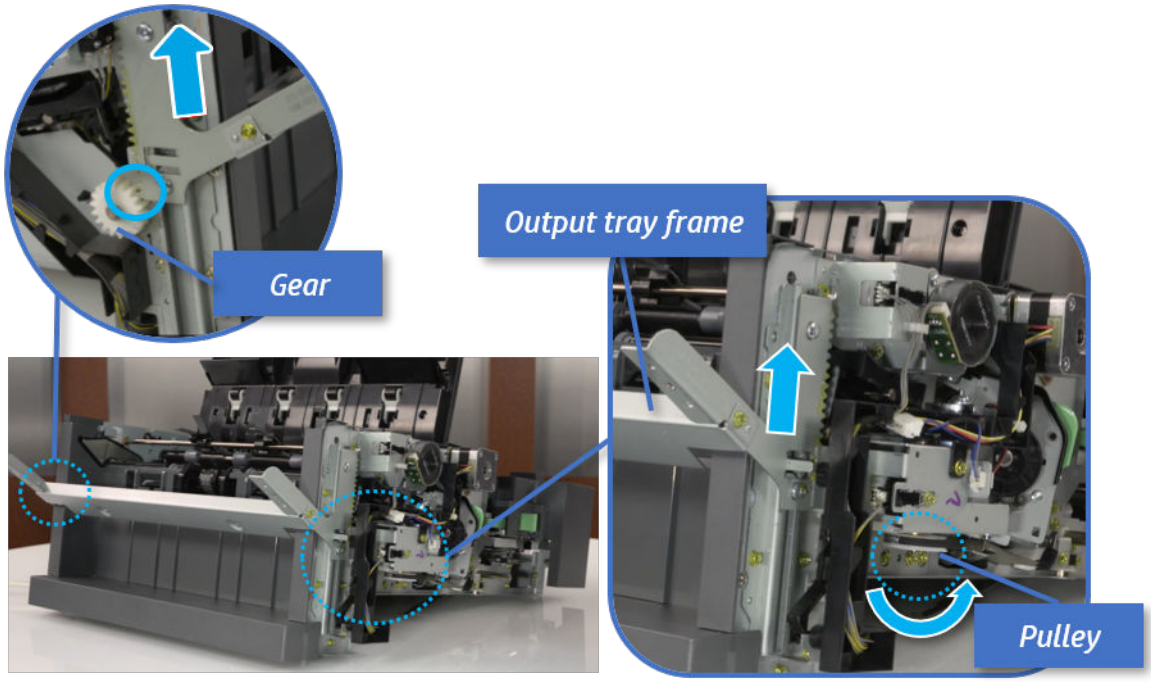
Figure 6-724 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

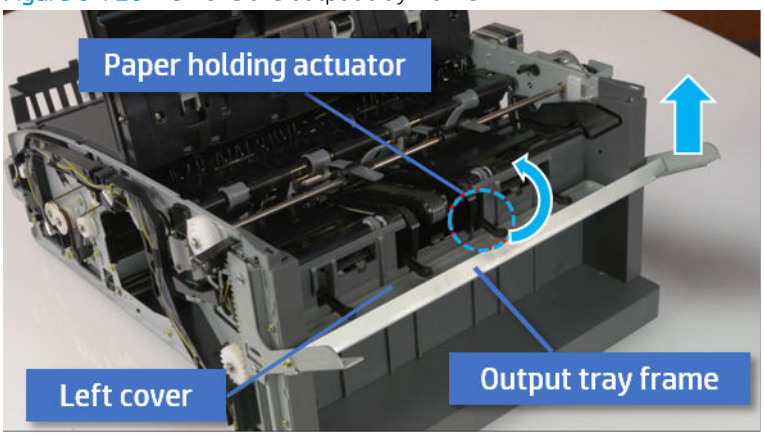
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-725 Remove the pulley



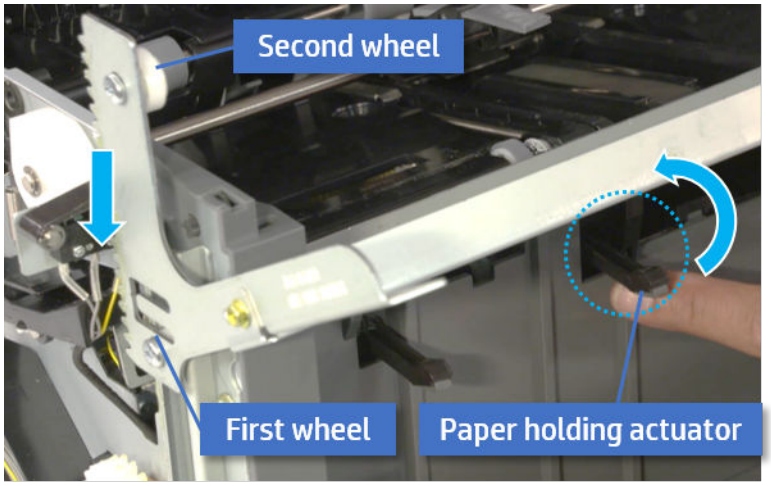
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-726 Remove the output tray frame



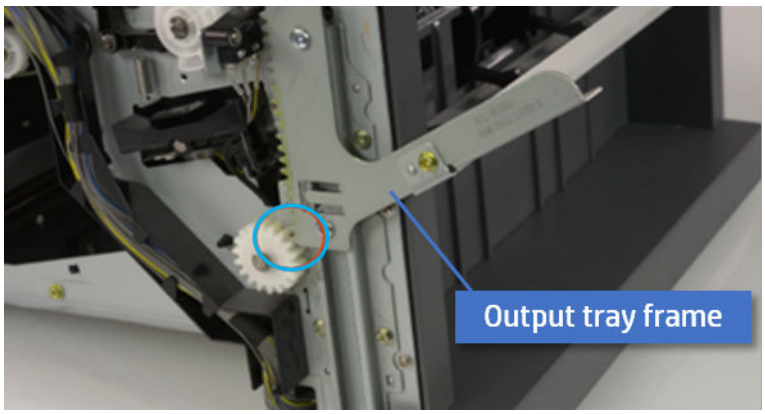
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

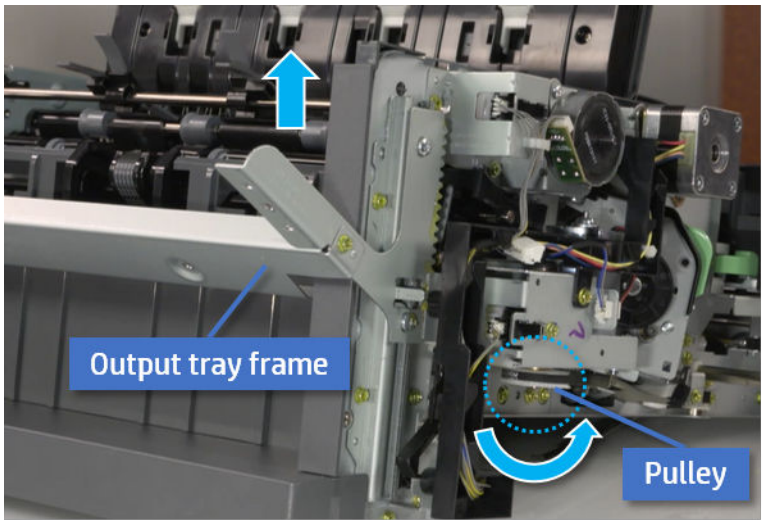


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

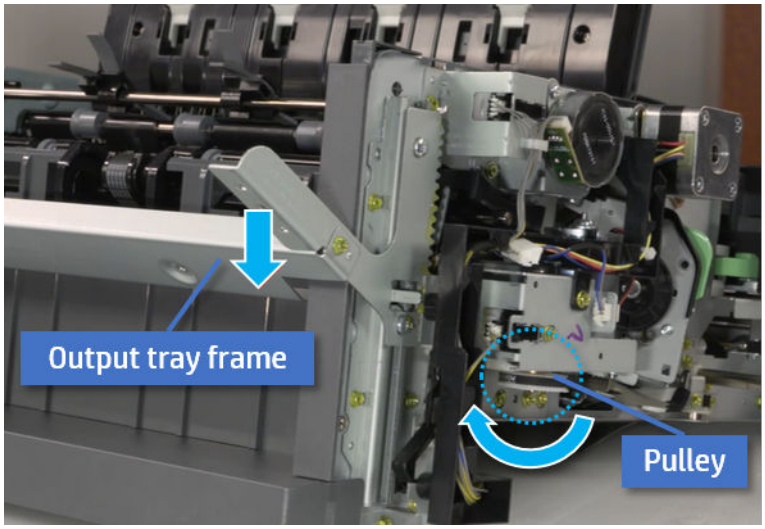
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

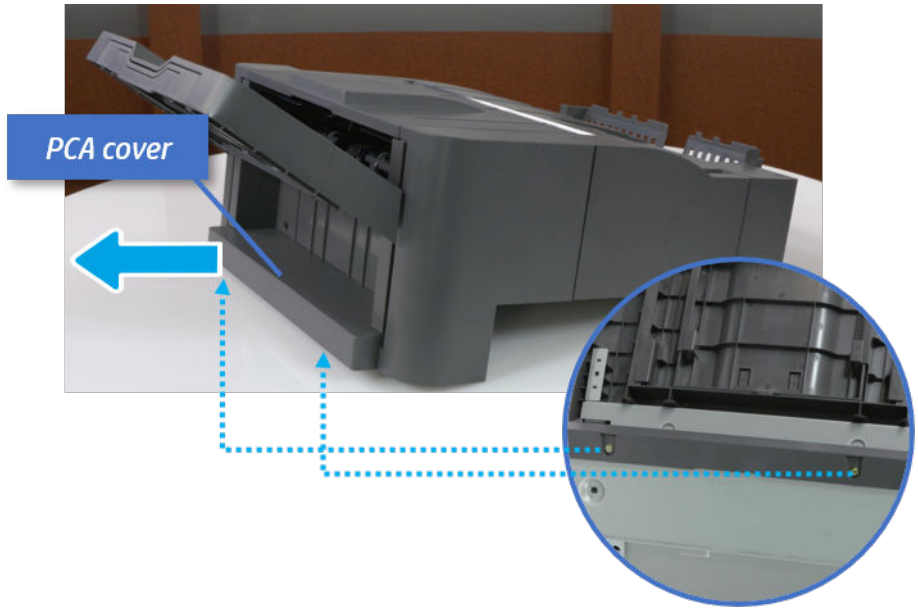


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

- ▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-727 Remove the PCA cover

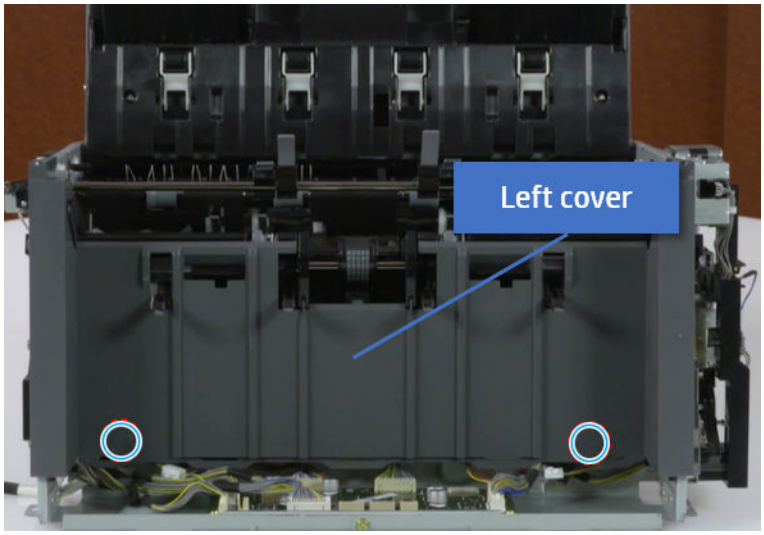


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

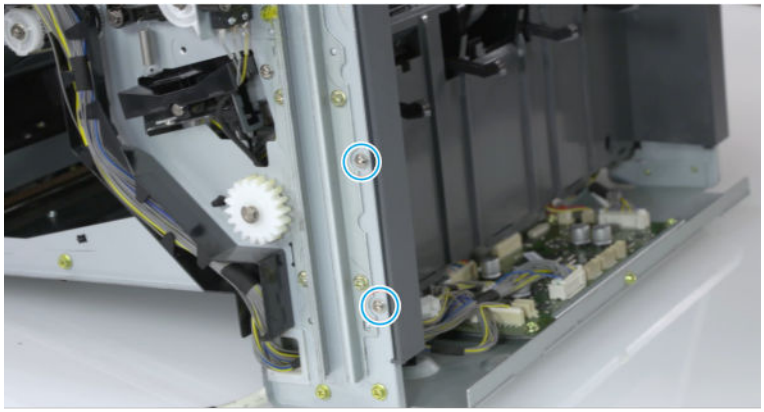
1. Remove two screws.

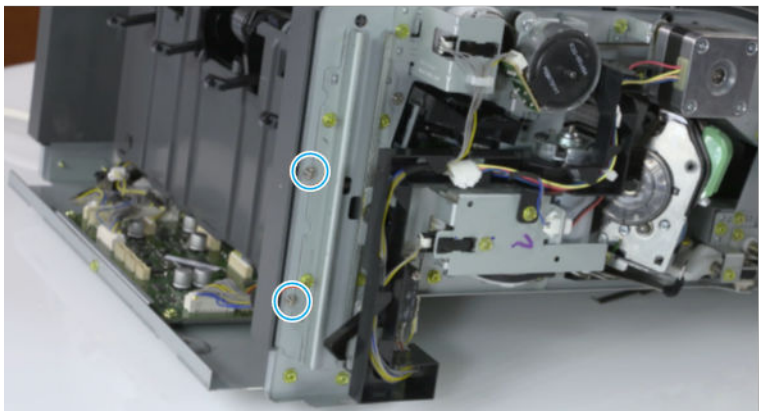
Figure 6-728 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

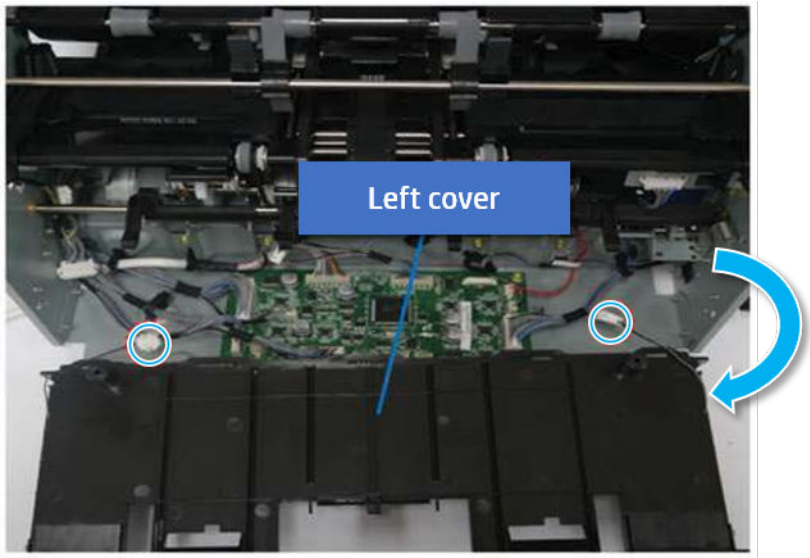
Figure 6-729 Remove four screws



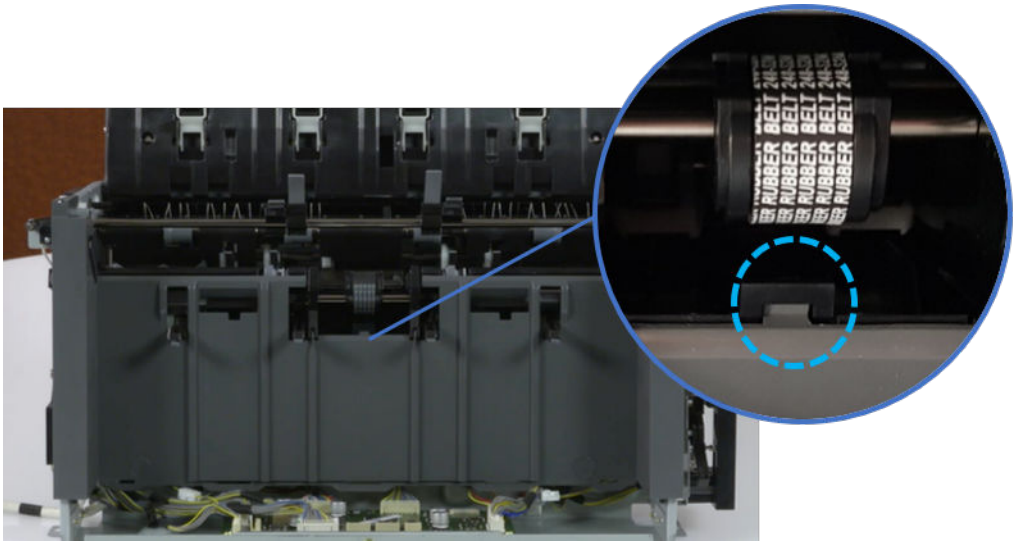


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-730 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



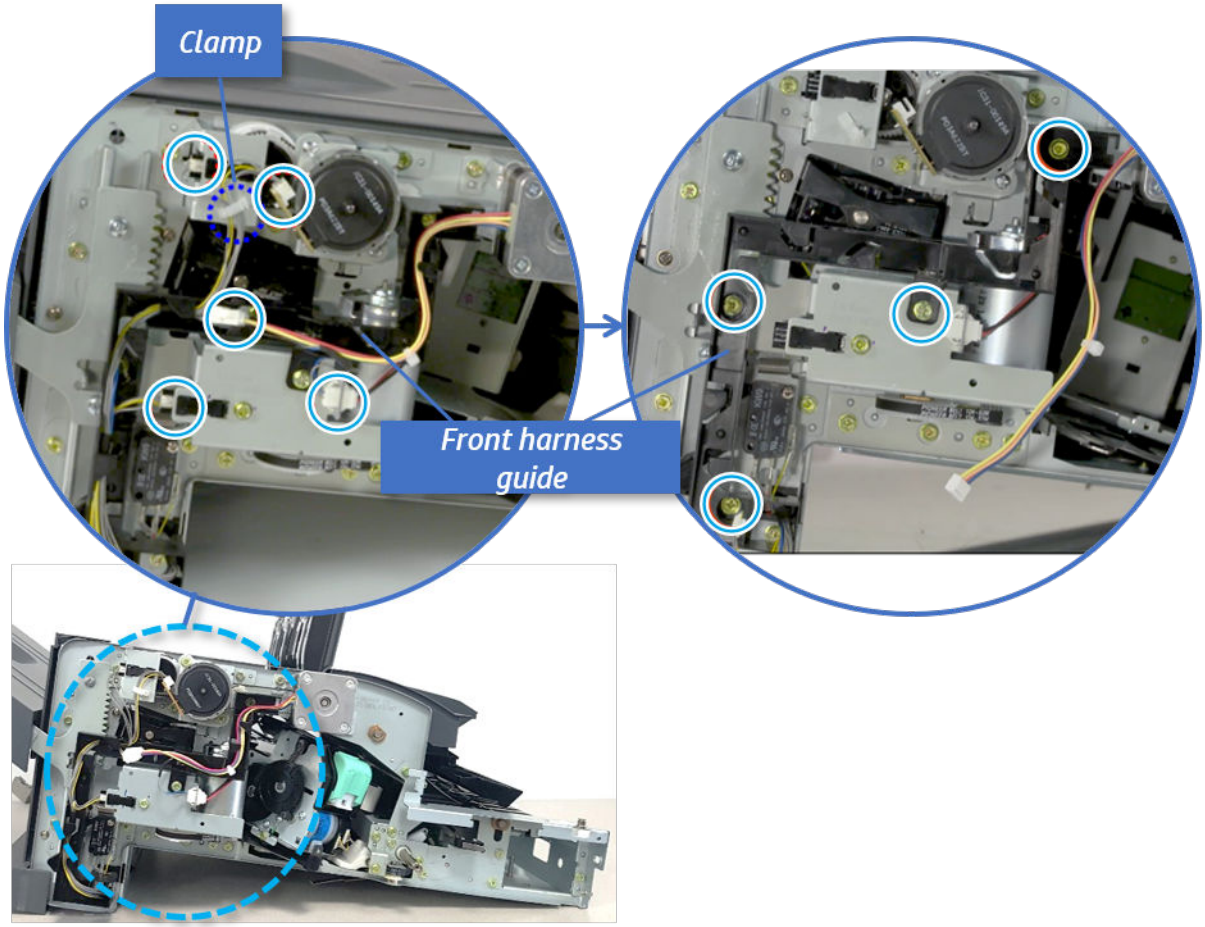
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-731 Remove the front harness guide

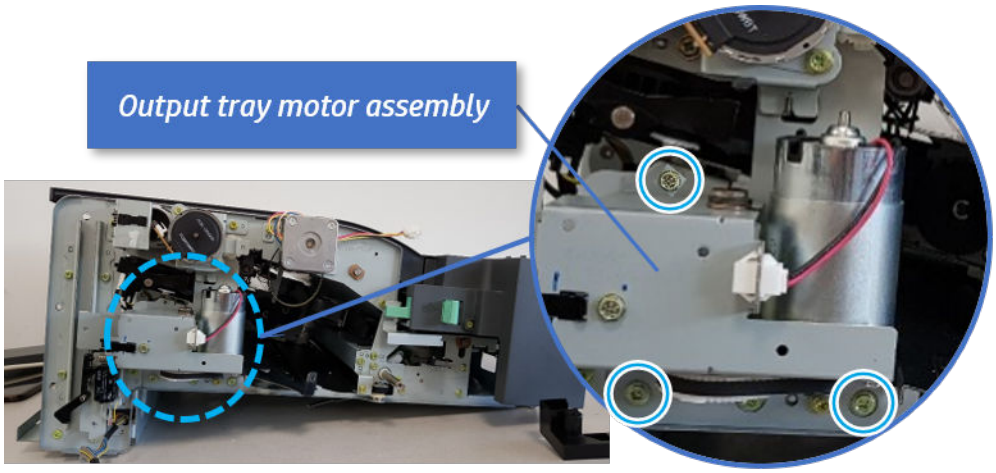


Remove the output tray motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor assembly.

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-732 Remove the output tray motor assembly

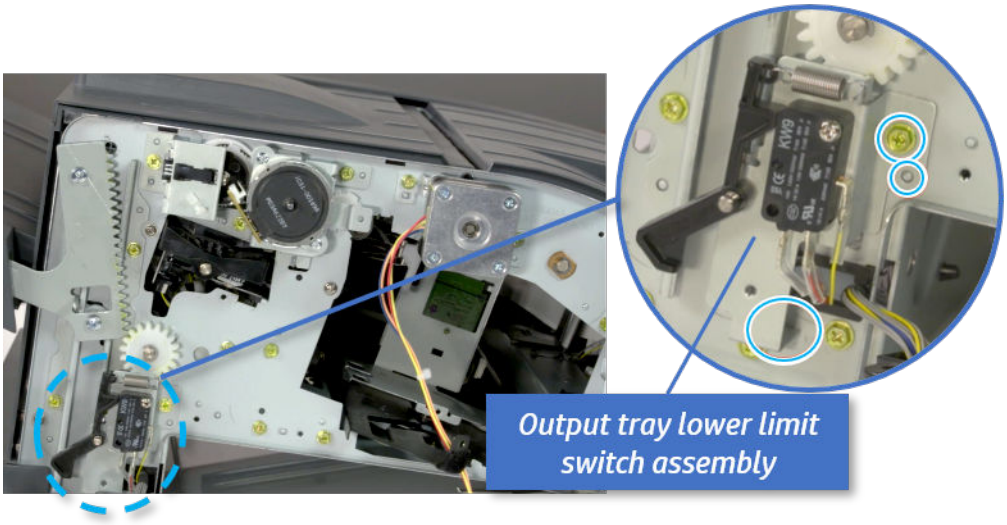


Remove the output tray lower limit switch

Follow these steps to remove the output tray lower limit switch.

▲ Remove one screw, and then remove the output tray lower limit switch.

Figure 6-733 Remove the output tray lower limit switch

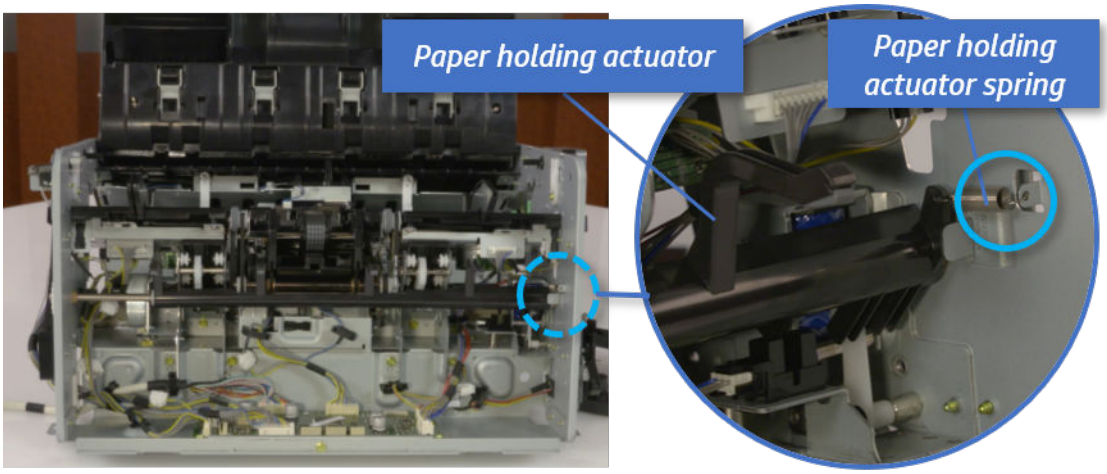


Remove the paper holding

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding.

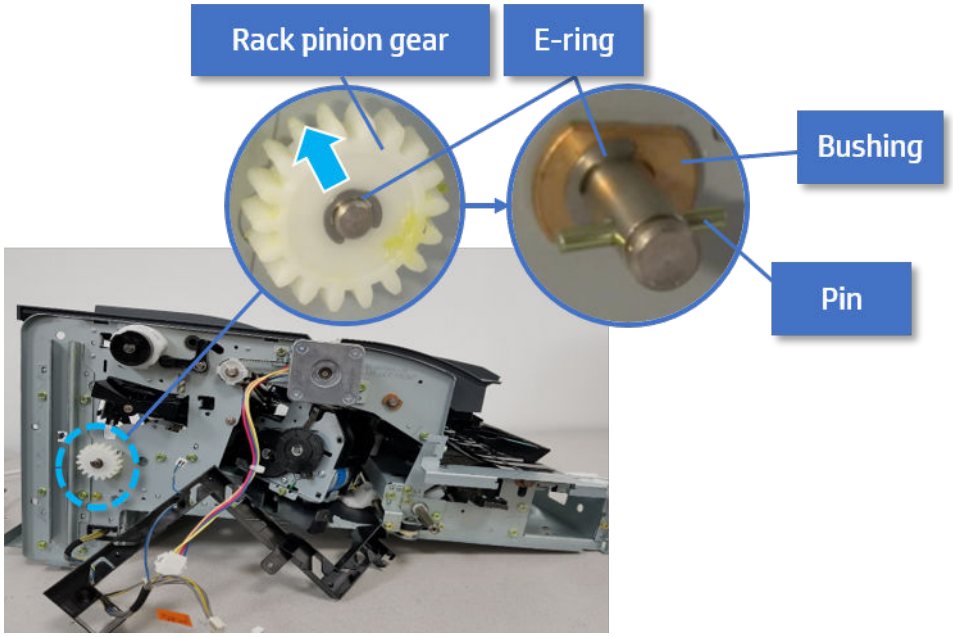
1. Remove the paper holding actuator spring.

Figure 6-734 Remove the paper holding actuator spring



2. Remove the e-ring and the rack pinion gear. And then remove the pin and the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

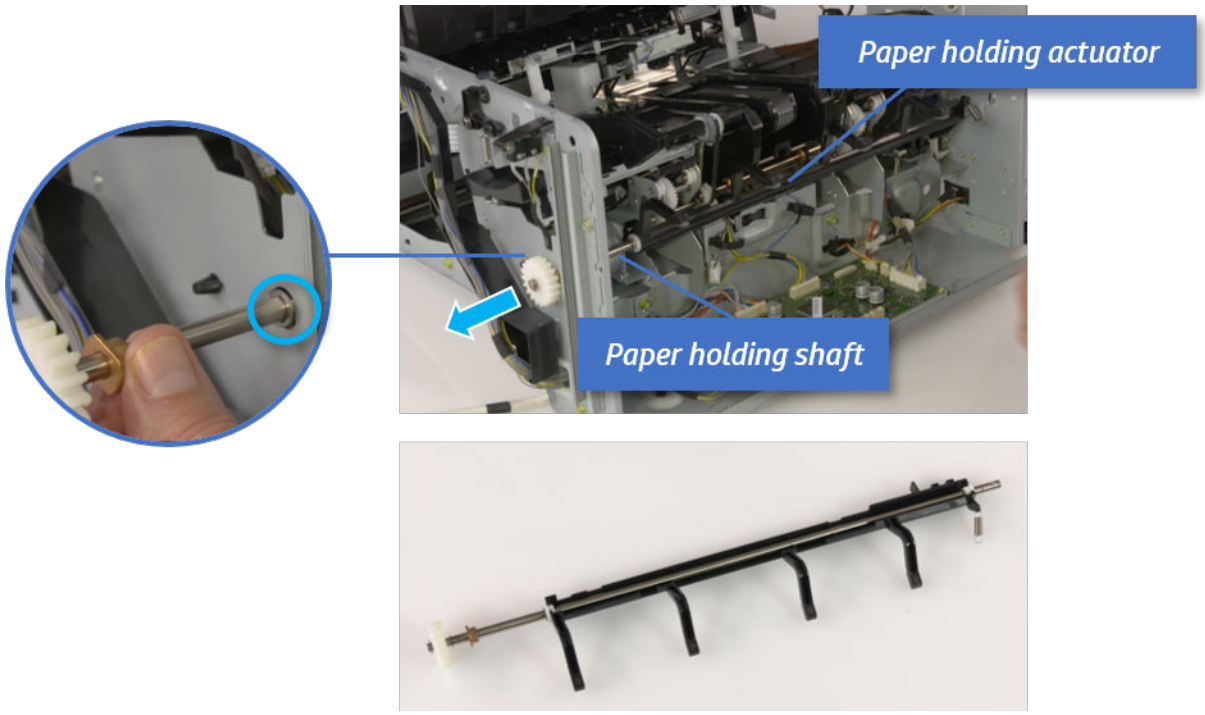
Figure 6-735 Remove e-ring, rack pinion gear, pin, and bushing



NOTE: Be sure not to lose the pin.

3. Carefully remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator.

Figure 6-736 Remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator

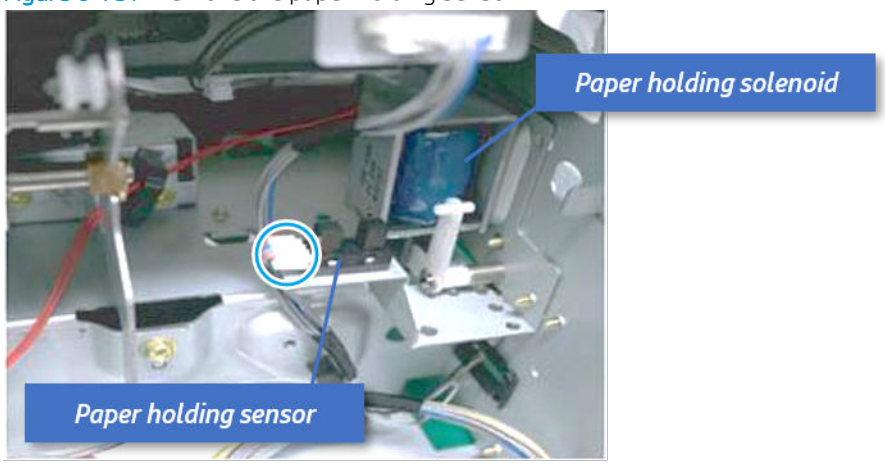


Remove the paper holding sensor

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding sensor.

1. Unplug the connector.
2. Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.
3. Remove the paper holding sensor.

Figure 6-737 Remove the paper holding sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper holding solenoid (SL1)

Learn how to remove and replace the paper holding solenoid.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-72 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC33-00037A	Paper holding solenoid

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

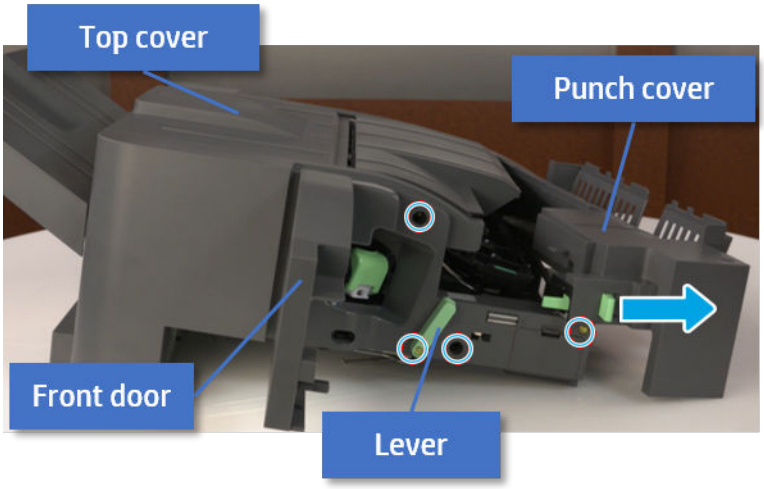
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-738 Remove the front cover

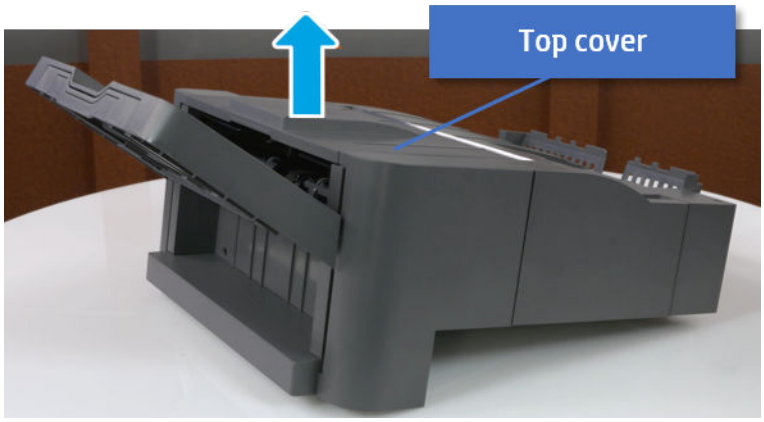


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

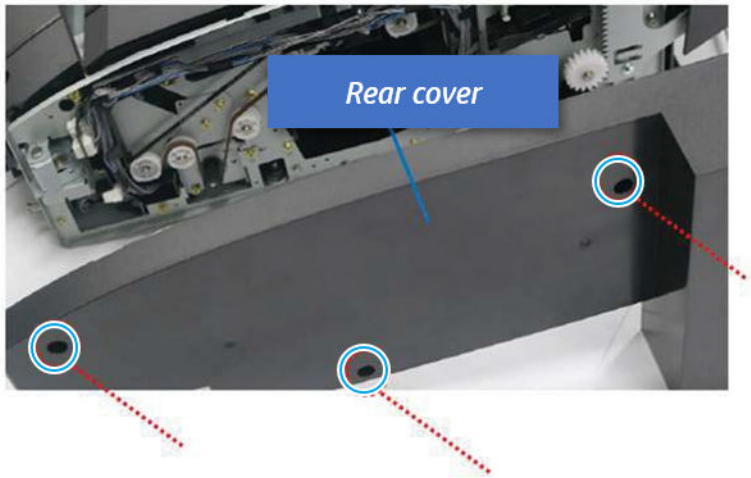
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-739 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-740 Remove the rear cover

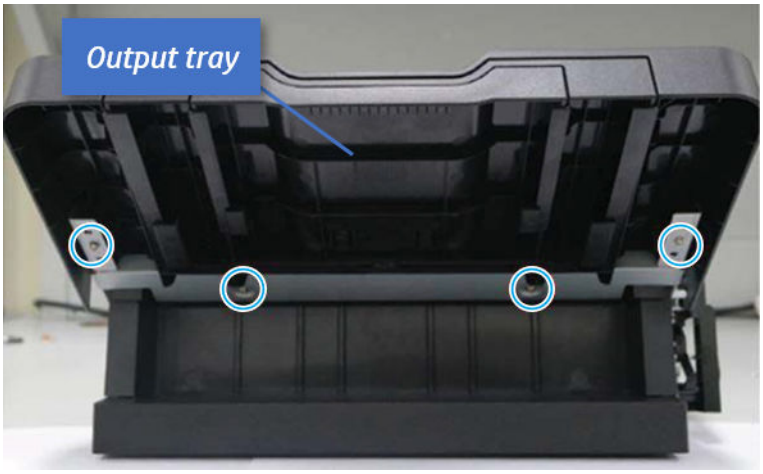


Remove the output tray

Follow these steps to remove the output tray.

1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-741 Remove four screws



2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray.

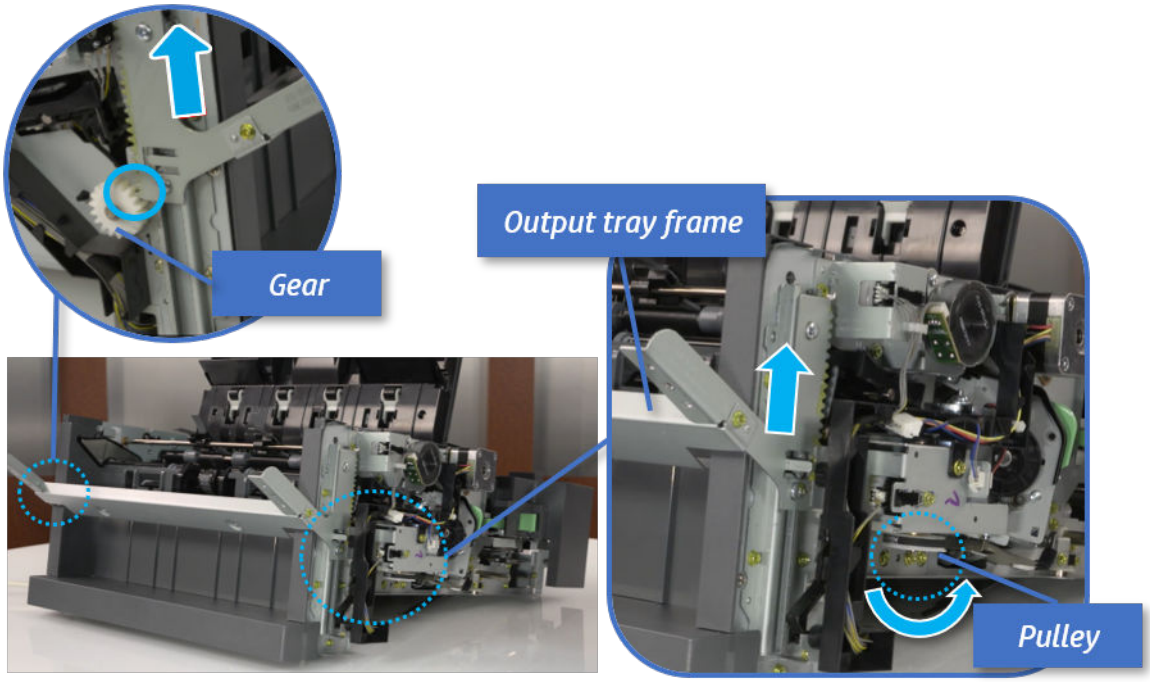
Figure 6-742 Remove the output tray.

Remove the output tray frame

Follow these steps to remove the output tray frame.

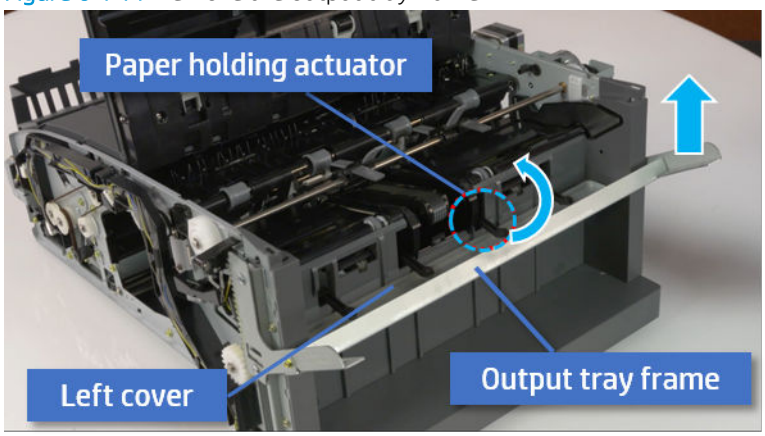
1. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame depart from the gear.

Figure 6-743 Remove the pulley



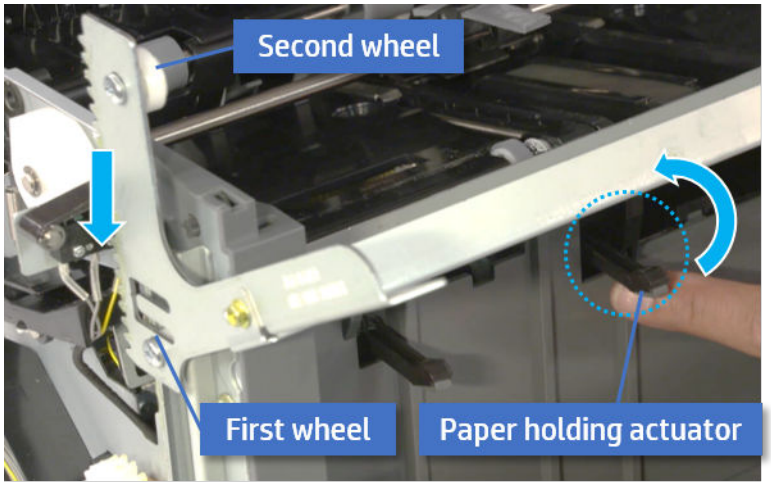
2. Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher, and then remove the output tray frame.

Figure 6-744 Remove the output tray frame



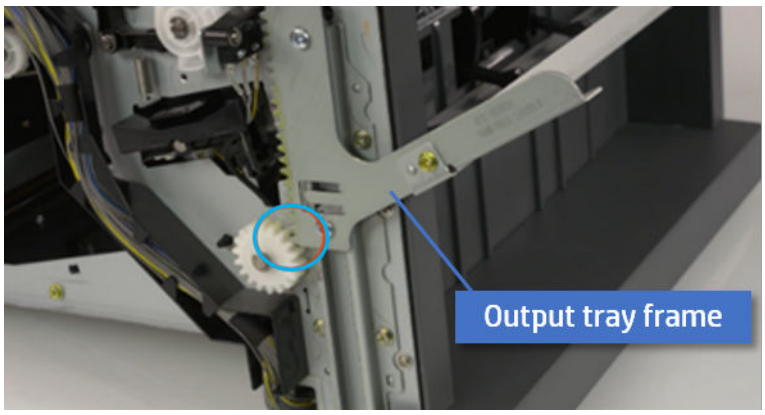
TIP: Push the paper holding actuator into the inner finisher when reassembling. Be sure to level the output tray.

a. Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while pushing the paper holding actuator.

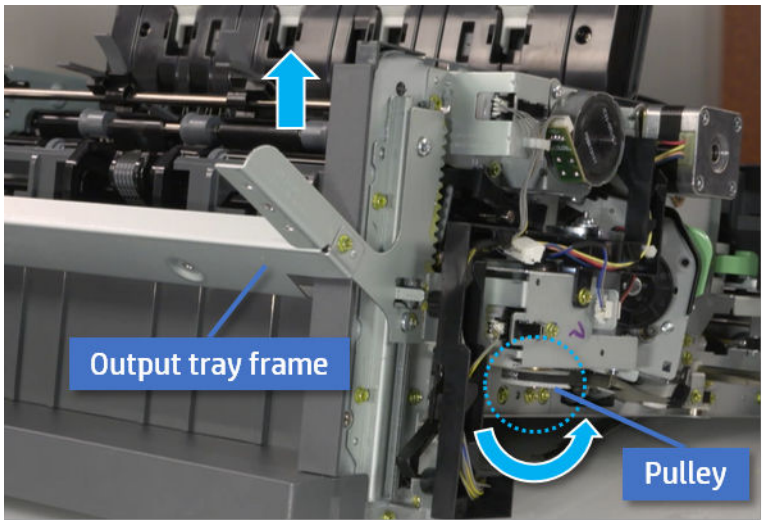


b. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously.

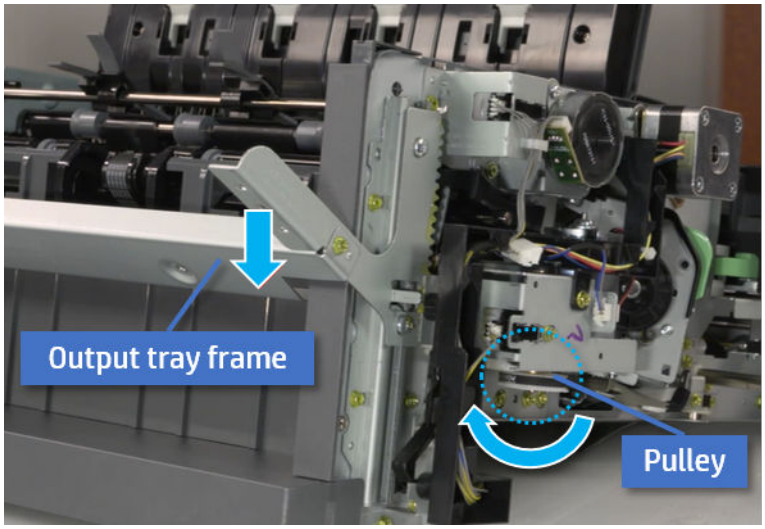
c. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel until the output tray frame meet the gear.



d. Rotate the pulley until the output tray frame is no longer lifted. It can make to level the output tray frame.



e. Rotate the pully in the opposite direction.

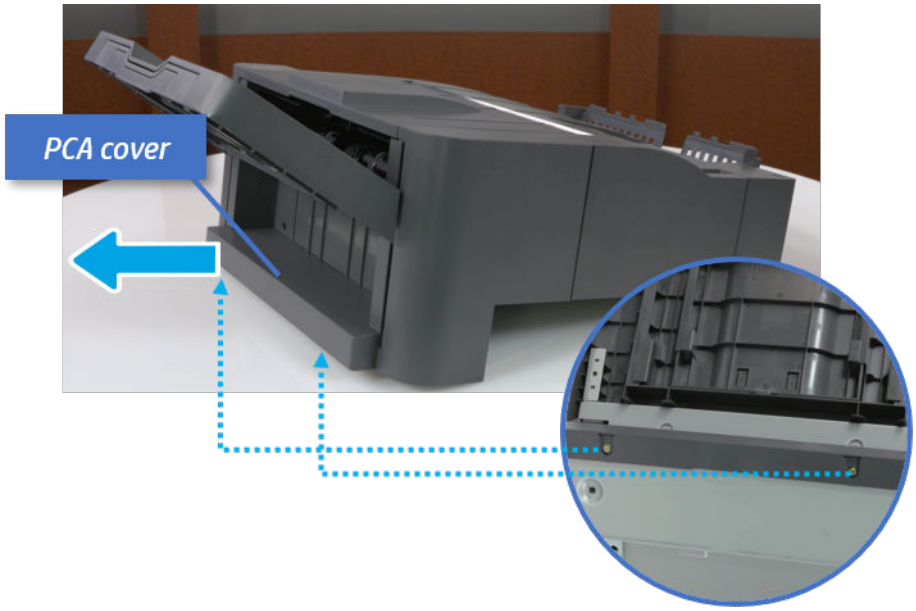


Remove the PCA cover

Follow these steps to remove the PCA cover.

▲ Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA cover.

Figure 6-745 Remove the PCA cover

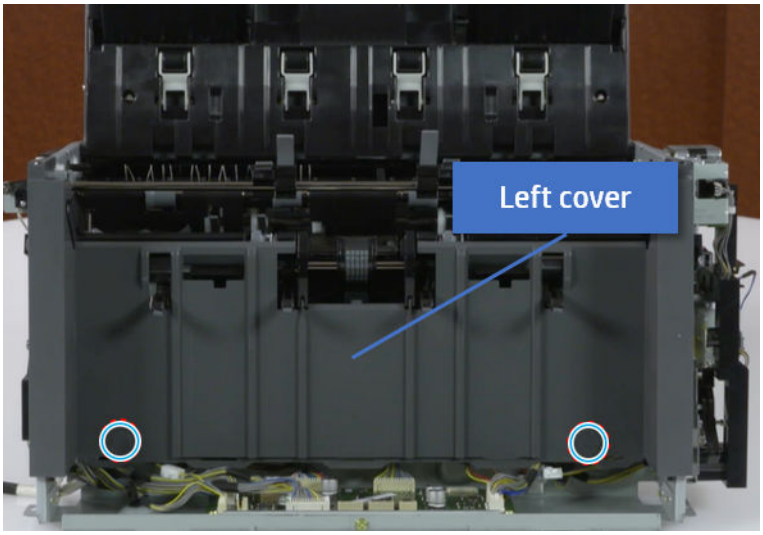


Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

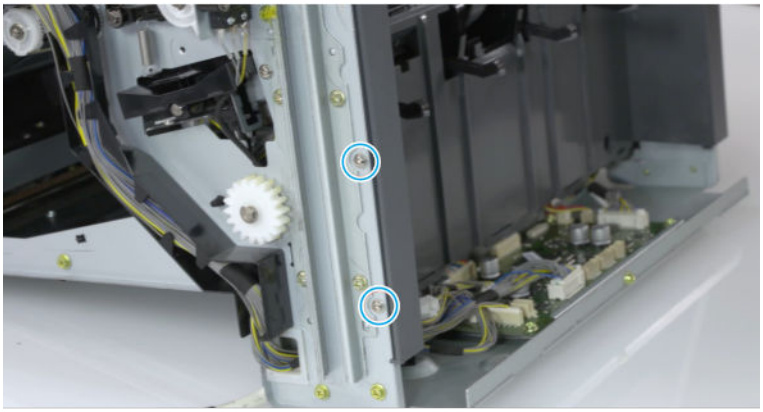
1. Remove two screws.

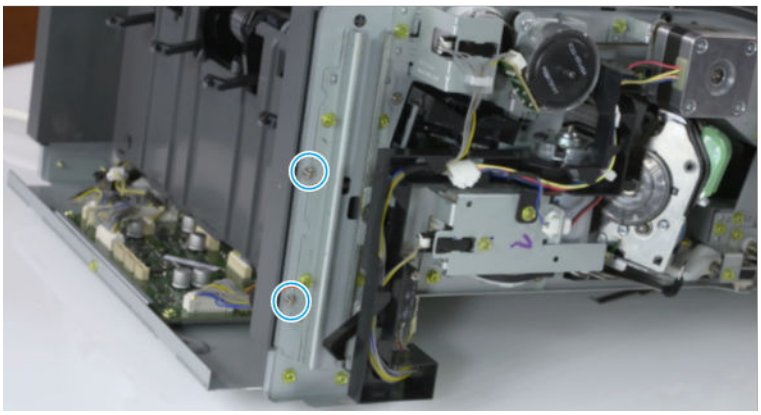
Figure 6-746 Remove two screws



2. Remove four screws from both front and rear sides.

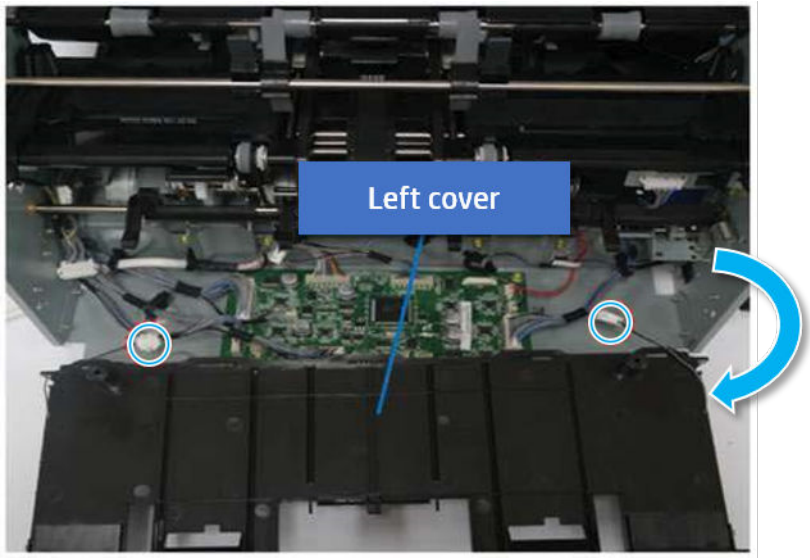
Figure 6-747 Remove four screws



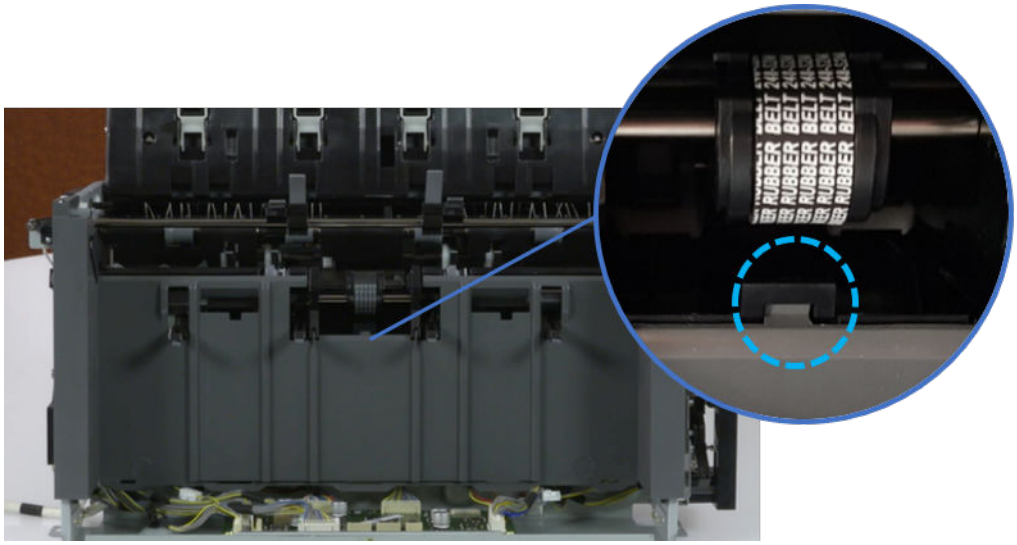


3. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-748 Unplug two connectors



TIP: Be sure to check the hook when reassembling.



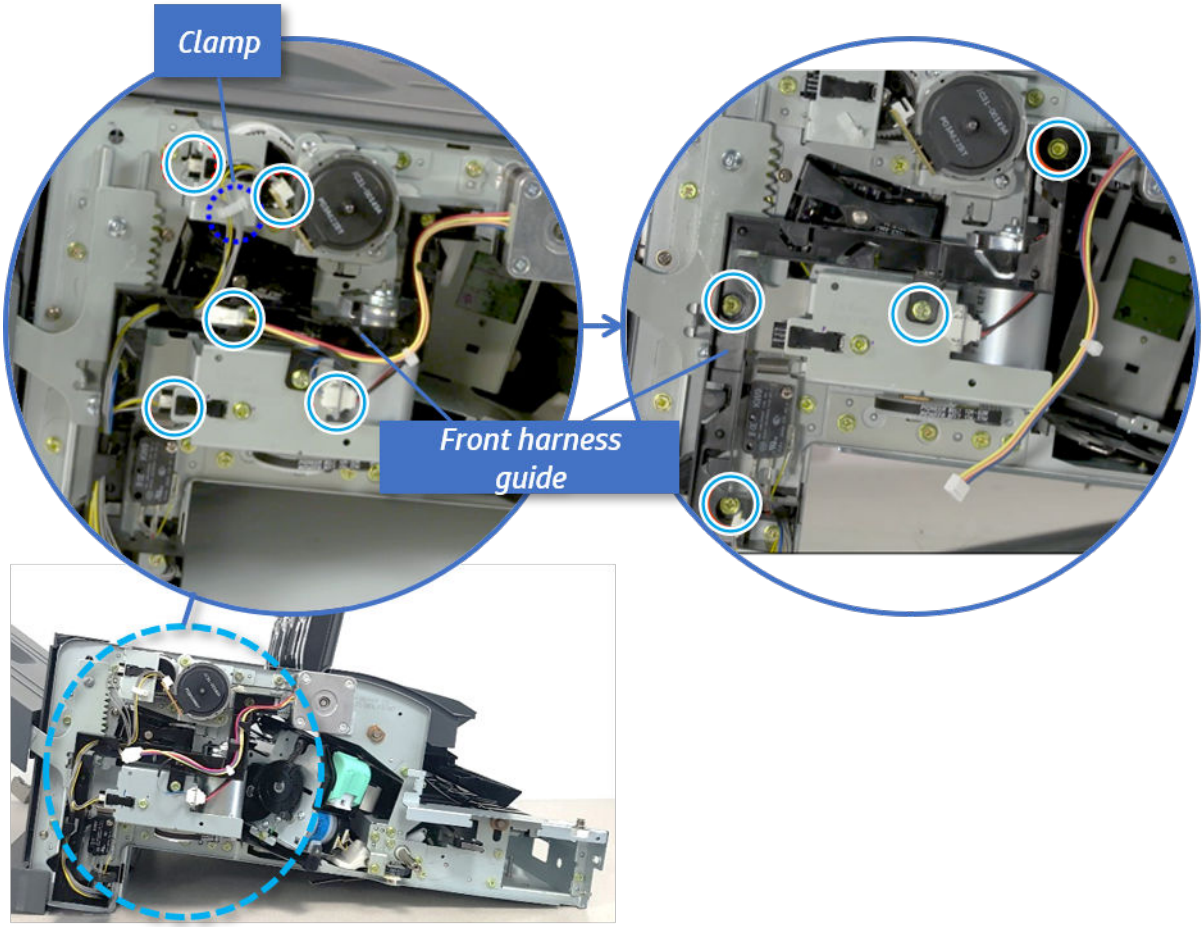
Remove the front harness guide

Follow these steps to remove the front harness guide.

1. Open one clamp and unplug five connectors, and then remove the wire harness from the front harness guide.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the front harness guide.

Figure 6-749 Remove the front harness guide

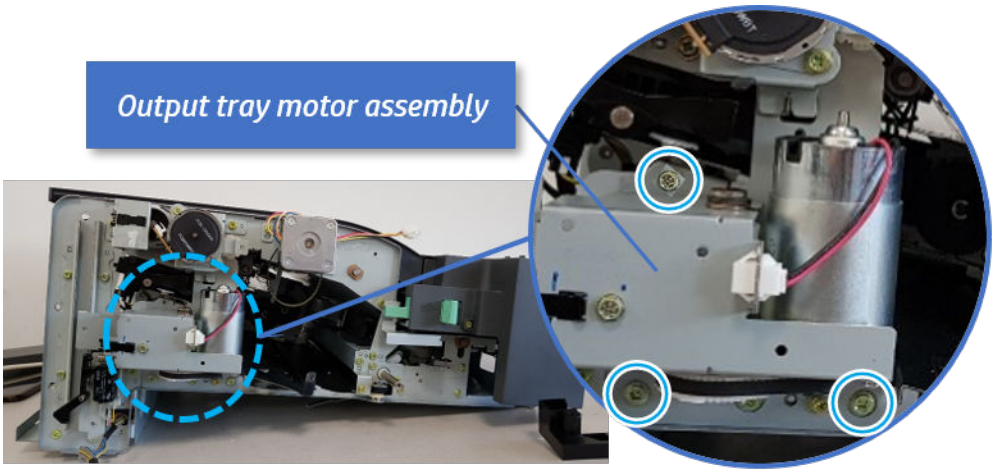


Remove the output tray motor assembly

Follow these steps to remove the output tray motor assembly.

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-750 Remove the output tray motor assembly

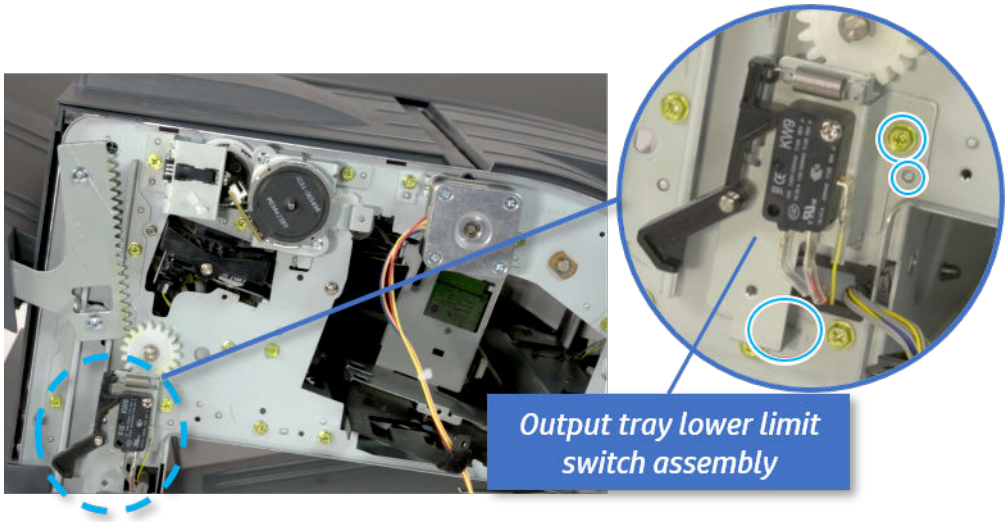


Remove the output tray lower limit switch

Follow these steps to remove the output tray lower limit switch.

▲ Remove one screw, and then remove the output tray lower limit switch.

Figure 6-751 Remove the output tray lower limit switch

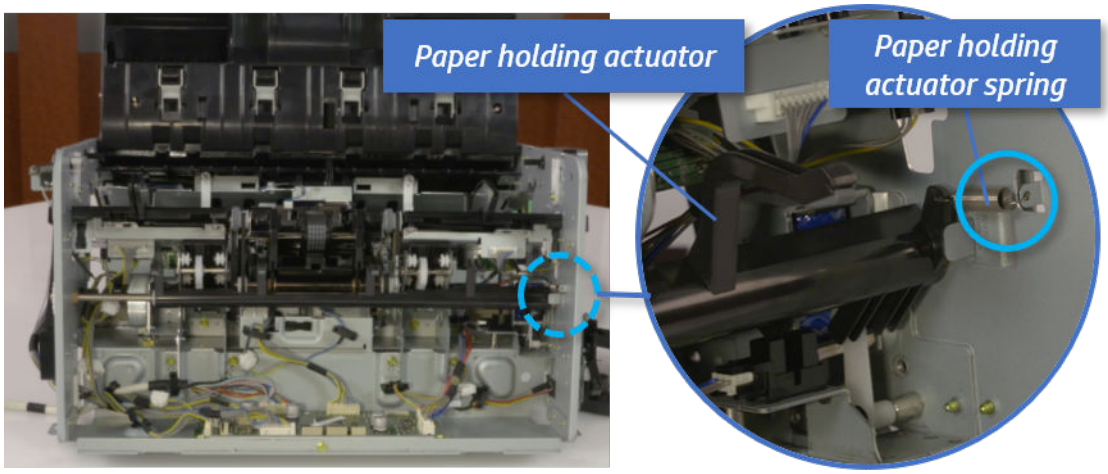


Remove the paper holding

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding.

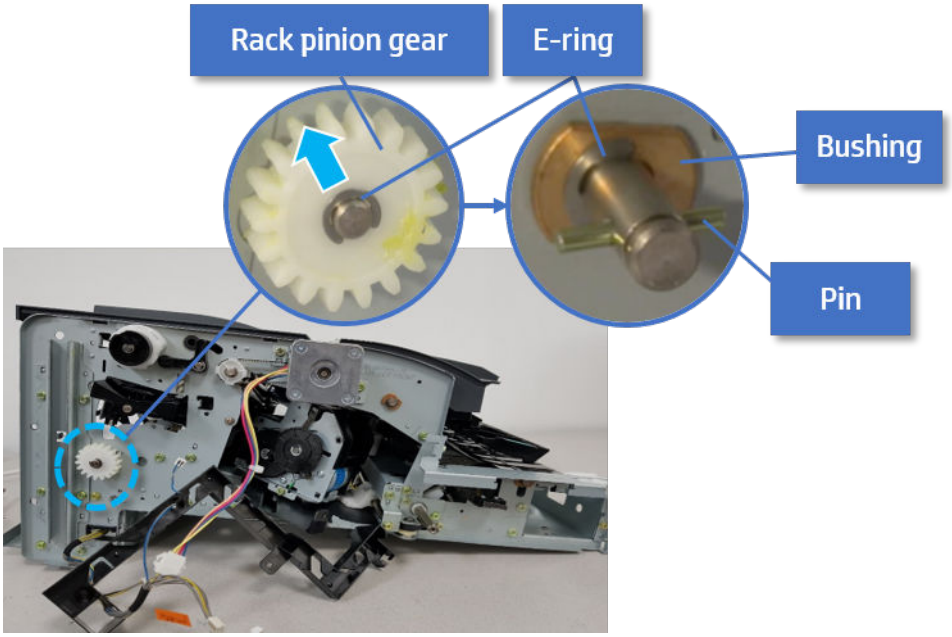
1. Remove the paper holding actuator spring.

Figure 6-752 Remove the paper holding actuator spring



2. Remove the e-ring and the rack pinion gear. And then remove the pin and the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

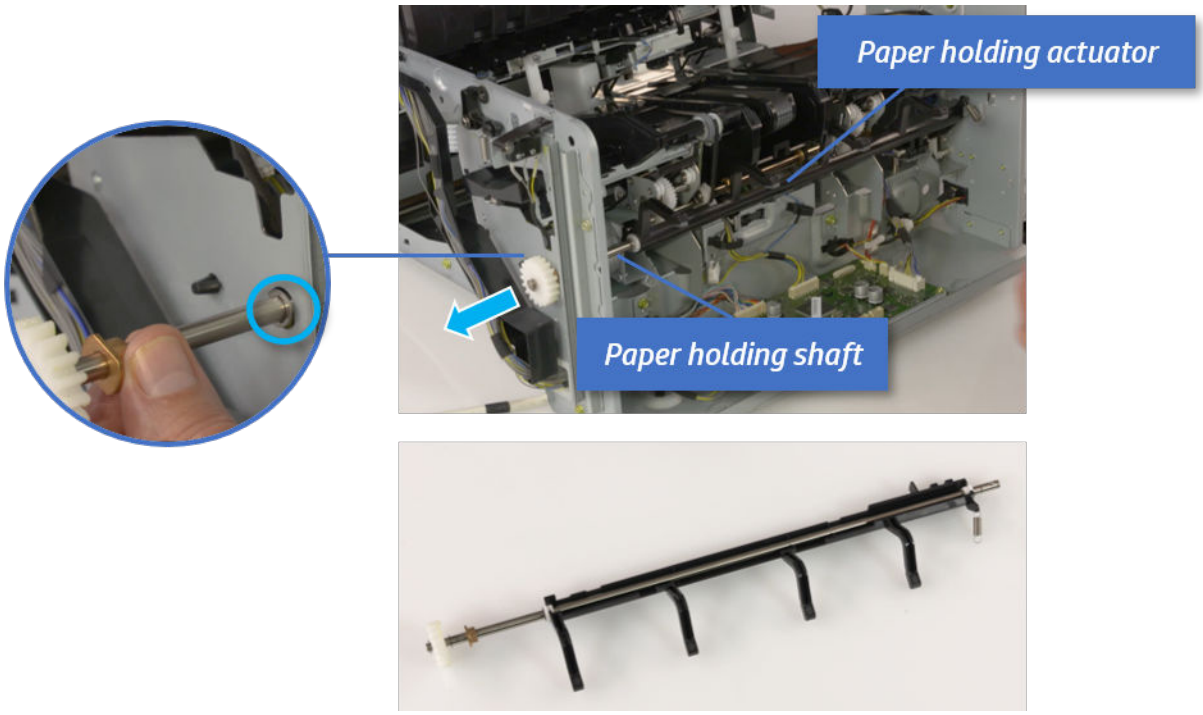
Figure 6-753 Remove e-ring, rack pinion gear, pin, and bushing



NOTE: Be sure not to lose the pin.

3. Carefully remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator.

Figure 6-754 Remove the paper holding shaft and the actuator

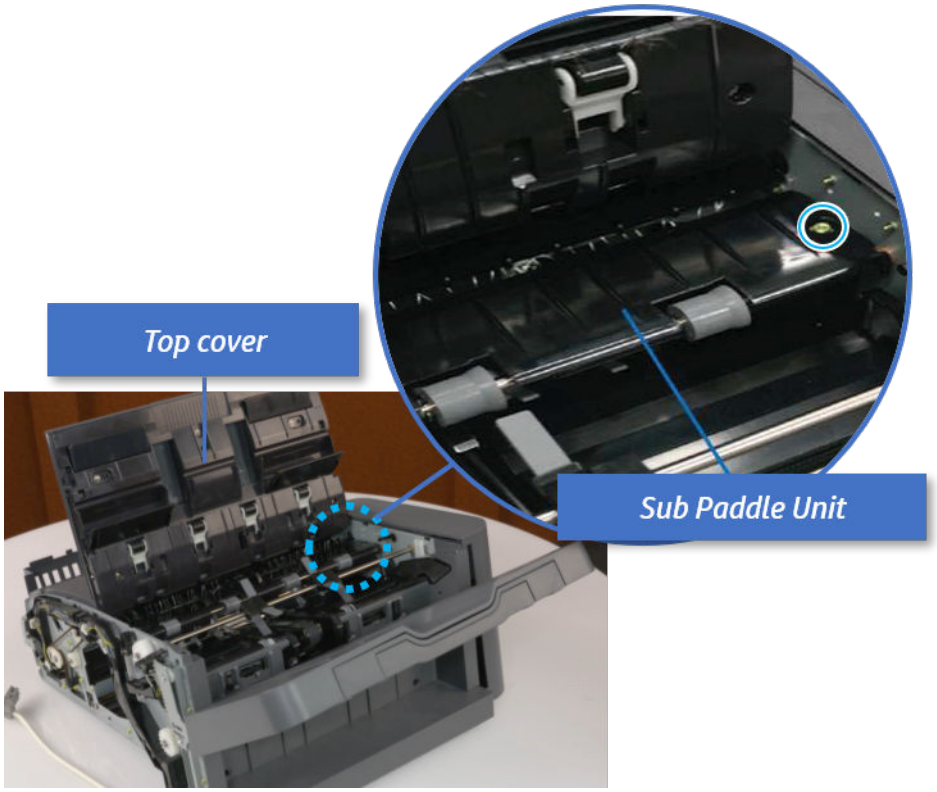


Remove the sub paddle unit

Follow these steps to remove the sub paddle unit.

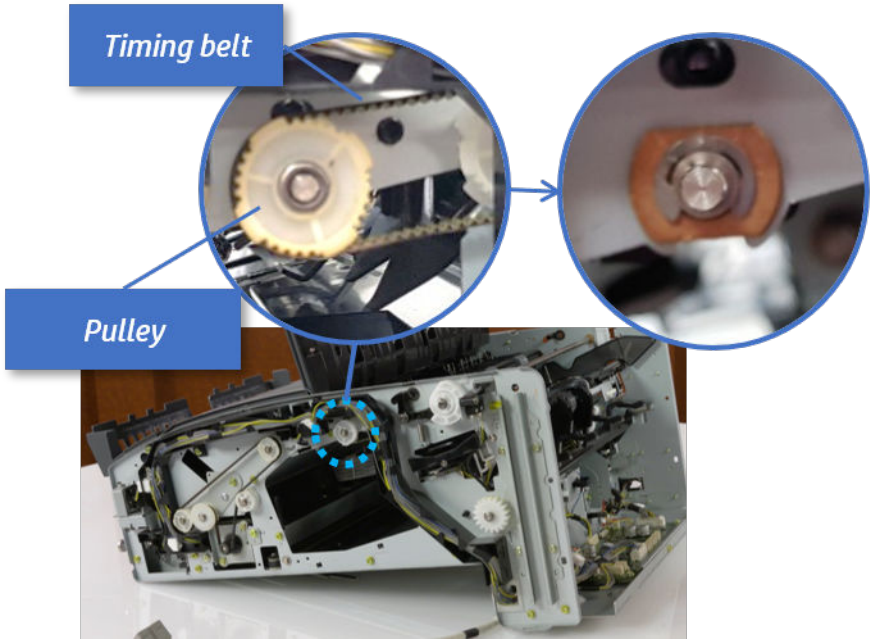
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw securing the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-755 Remove one screw



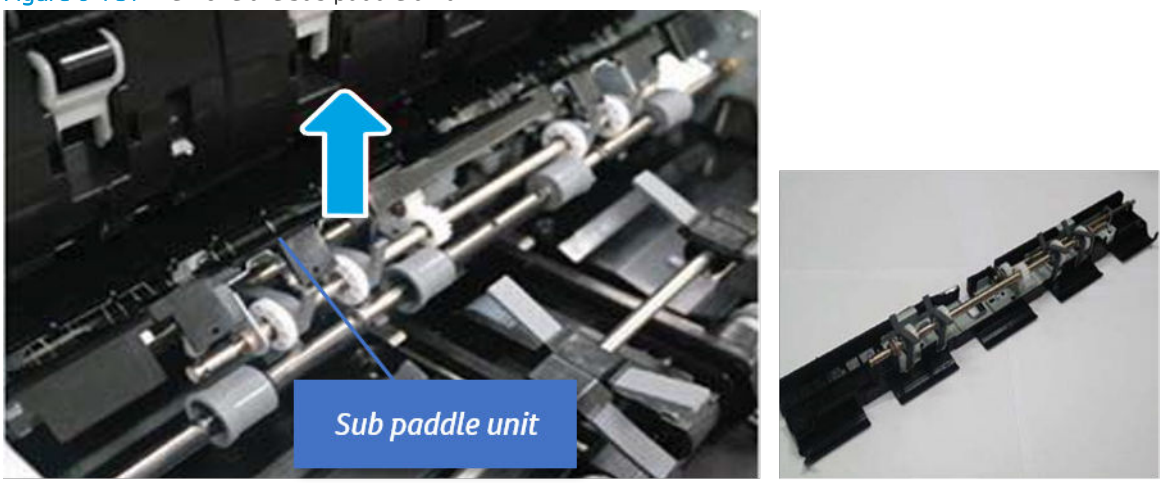
2. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt. And then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-756 Remove the e-ring, pulley, timing belt, and bushing



3. Lift up and remove the sub paddle unit.

Figure 6-757 Remove the sub paddle unit

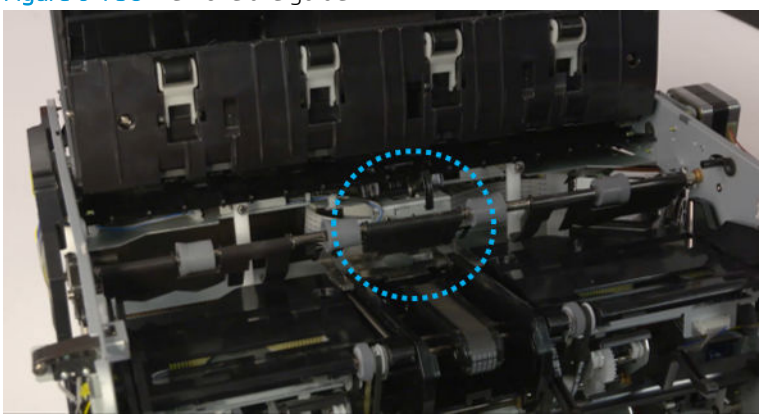


Remove the exit roller

Follow these steps to remove the exit roller.

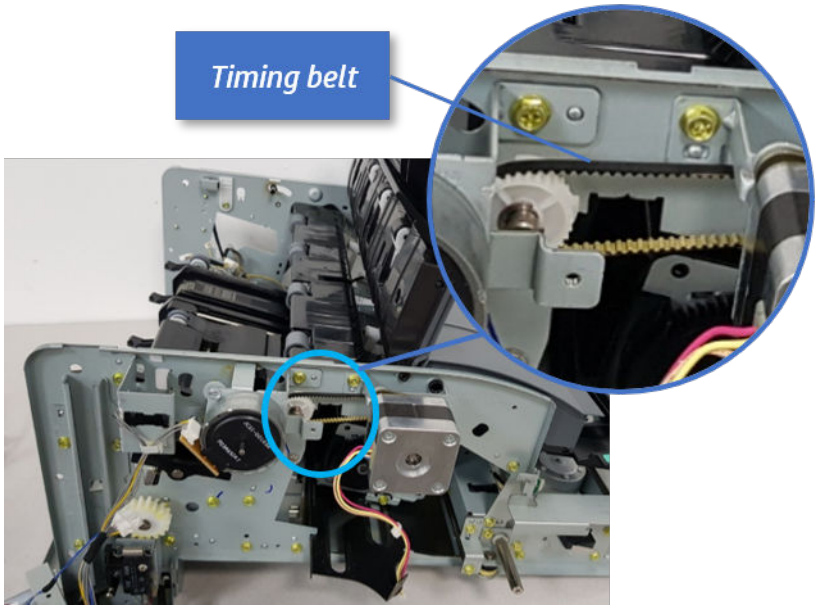
1. Remove the guide on the center of the exit roller.

Figure 6-758 Remove the guide



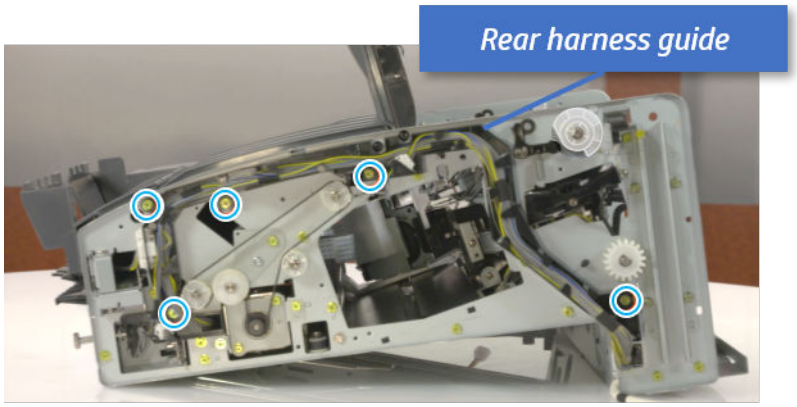
2. On the front of the inner finisher, release the timing belt connected to the exit motor.

Figure 6-759 Release the timing belt



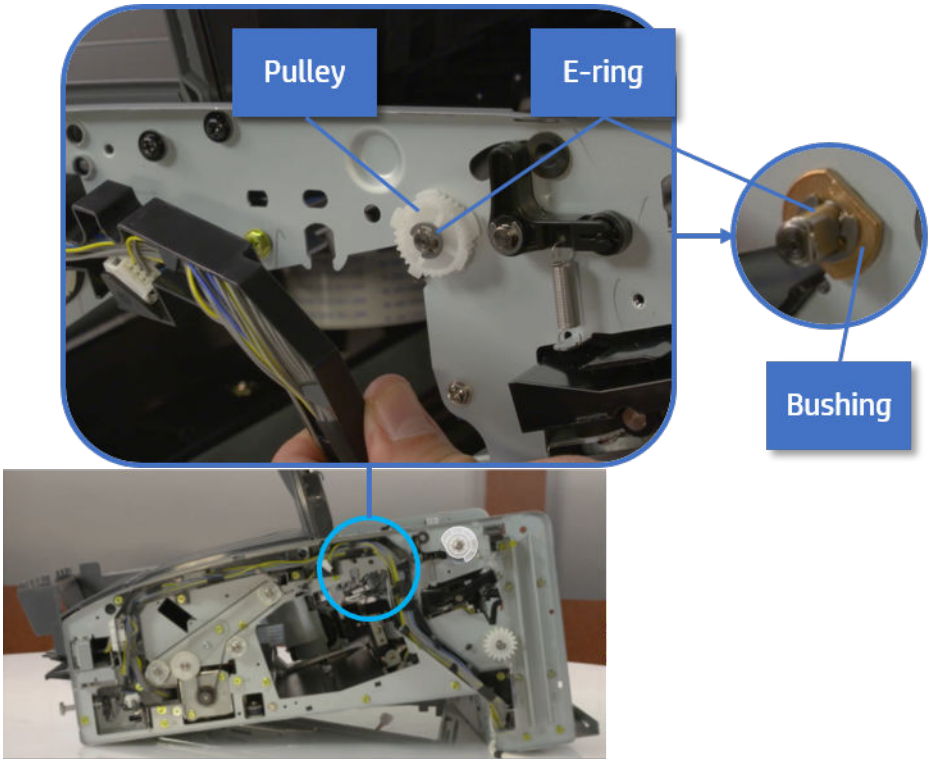
3. Remove five screws securing the rear harness guide.

Figure 6-760 Remove five screws



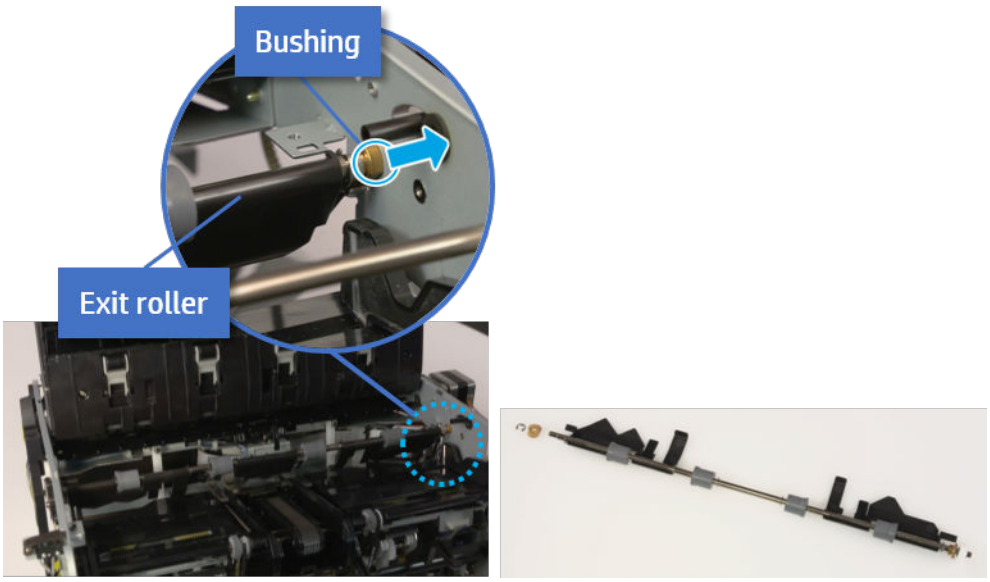
4. On the rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and the pulley and then remove the e-ring and the bushing.

Figure 6-761 Remove e-ring, pulley, and bushing



5. Push the bushing to detach it, and then remove the exit roller.

Figure 6-762 Remove the exit roller

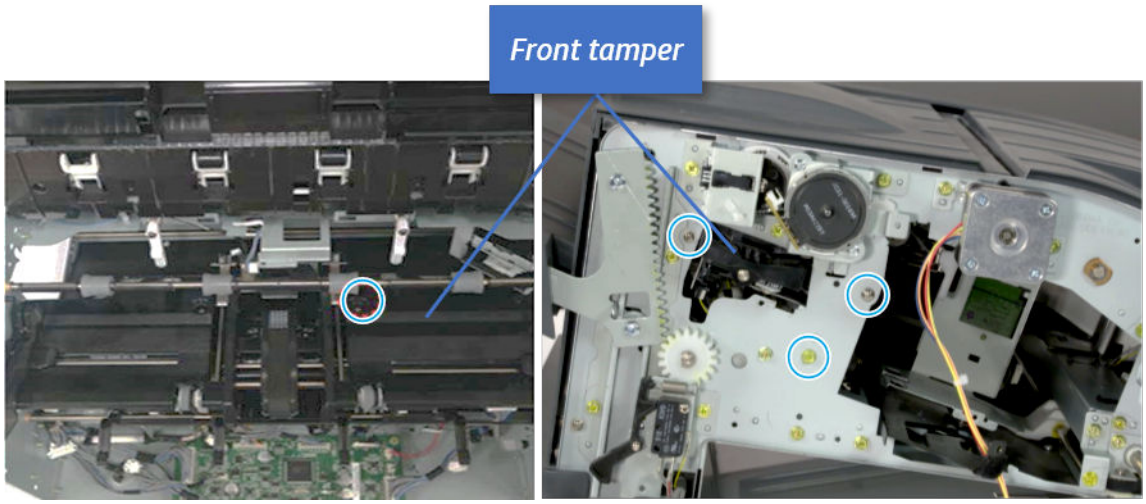


Remove the front tamper

Follow these steps to remove the front tamper.

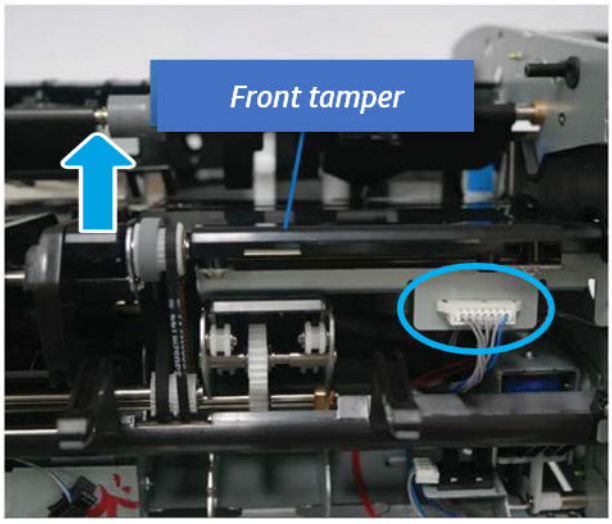
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-763 Remove four screws



2. Unplug the connector and release the hook, and then pull the front tamper up to remove.

Figure 6-764 Remove the front tamper

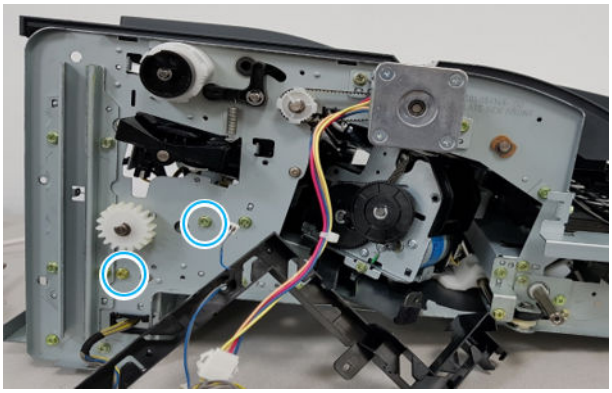


Remove the paper holding solenoid

Follow these steps to remove the paper holding solenoid.

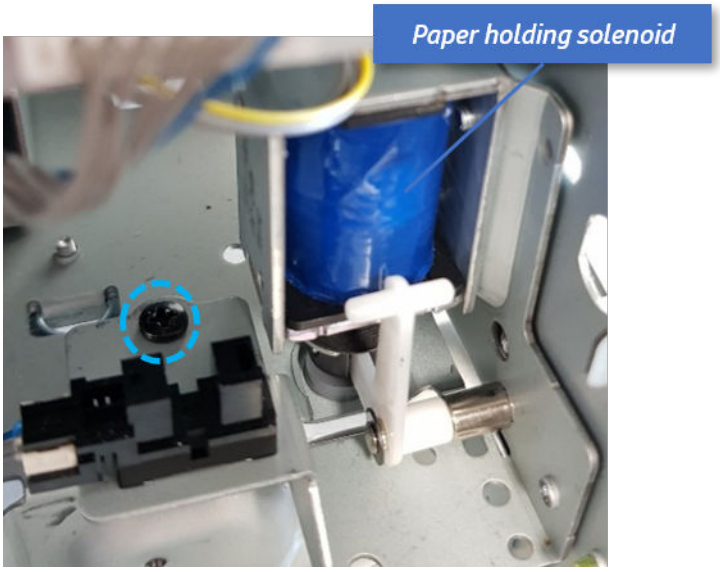
1. Remove two screws at the front of the inner finisher.

Figure 6-765 Remove two screws



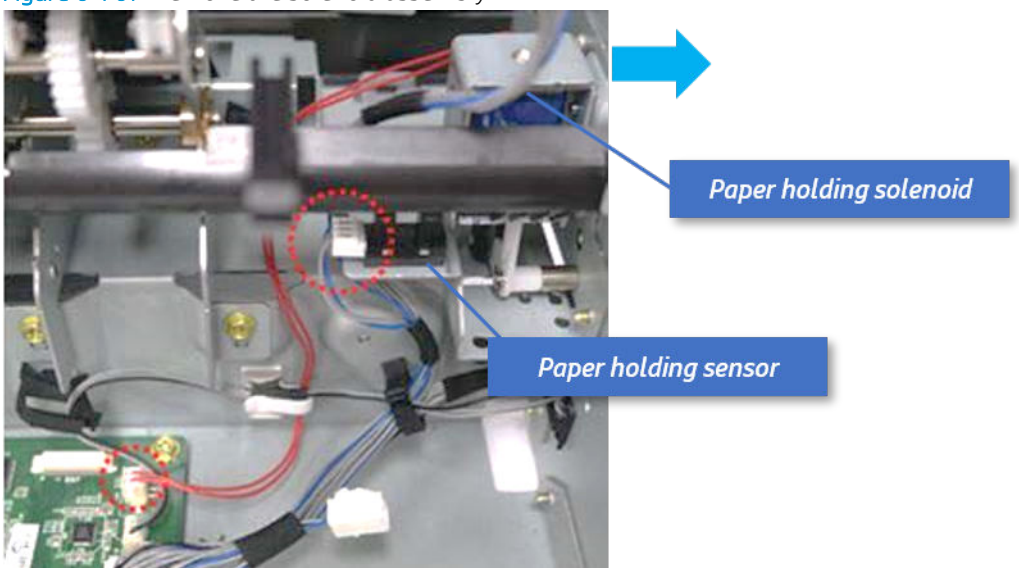
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-766 Remove one screw



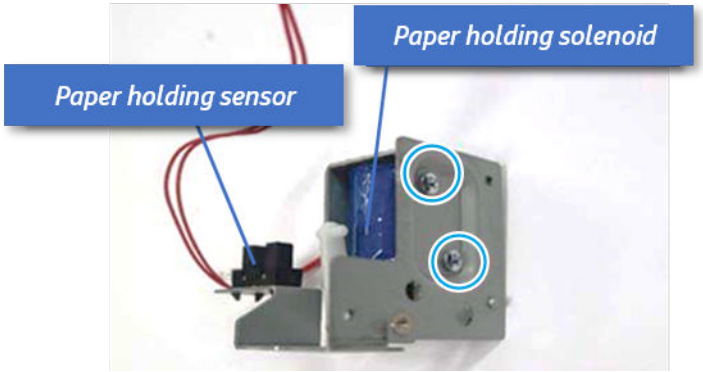
3. Disconnect two connectors and remove the solenoid assembly.

Figure 6-767 Remove the solenoid assembly



4. Remove two screws, and then release the solenoid from the bracket.

Figure 6-768 Remove the paper holding solenoid



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Punch unit

Removal and replacement: Punch cover

Learn how to remove and replace the punch cover.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to http://www.hp.com/buy/parts .

Table 6-73 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01343A	Punch cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

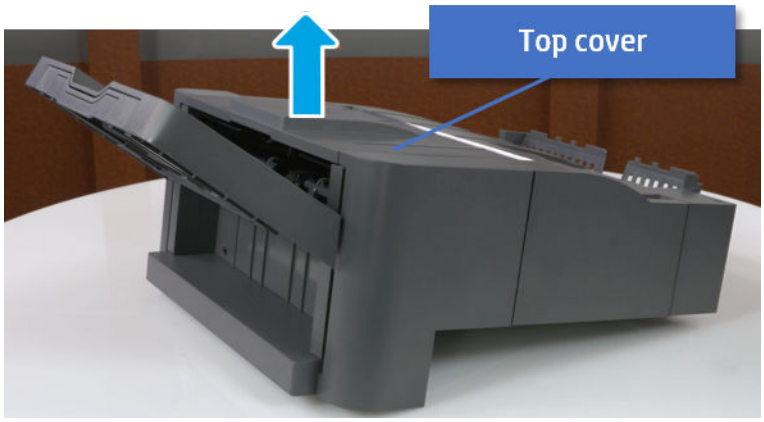
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

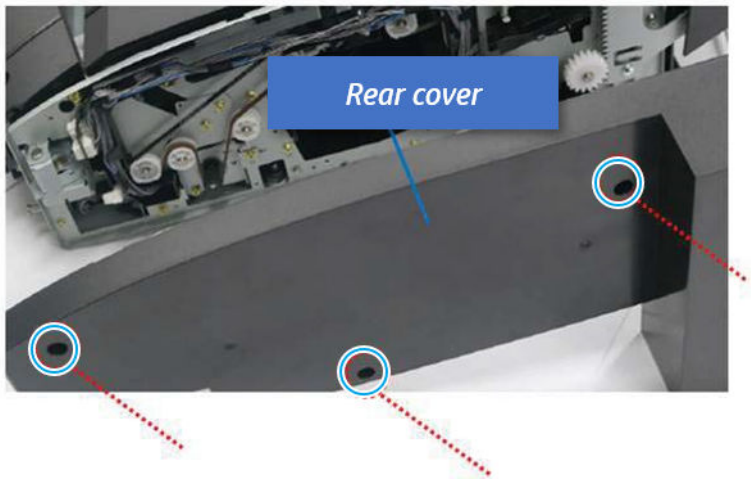
1. Open the top cover.

   Figure 6-769 Open the top cover

2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

   Figure 6-770 Remove the rear cover

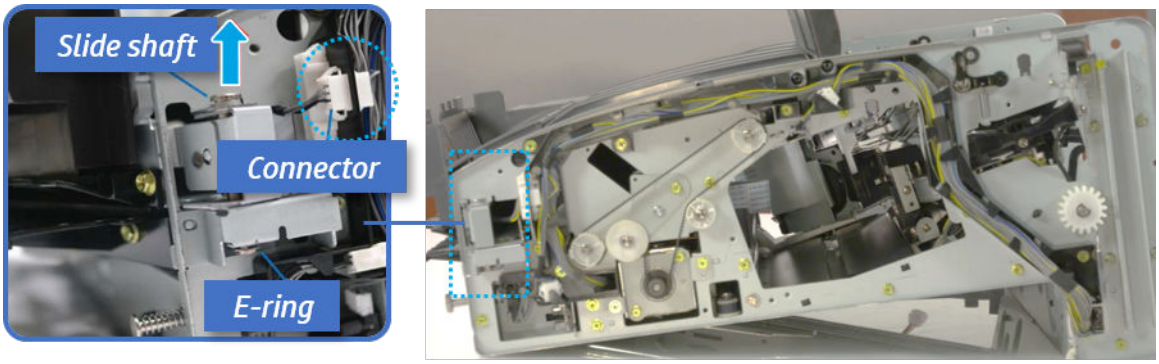
   

Remove the punch cover

Follow these steps to remove the punch cover.

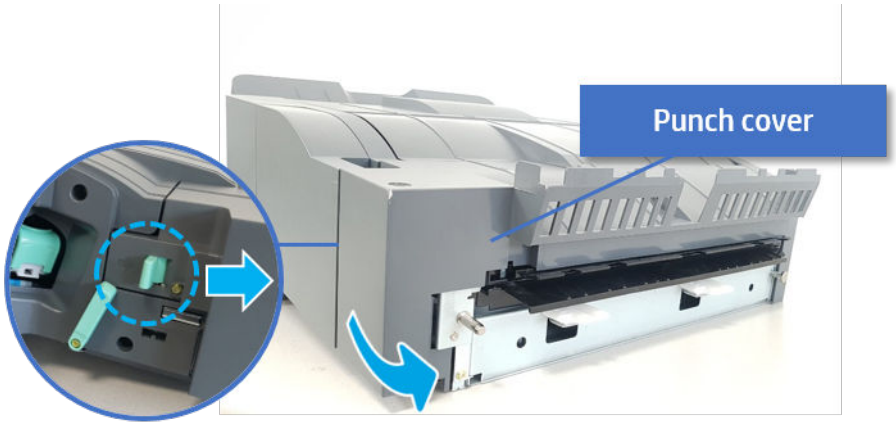
1. Unplug the connector. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the slide shaft at the rear of the inner finisher.

Figure 6-771 Remove the slide shaft



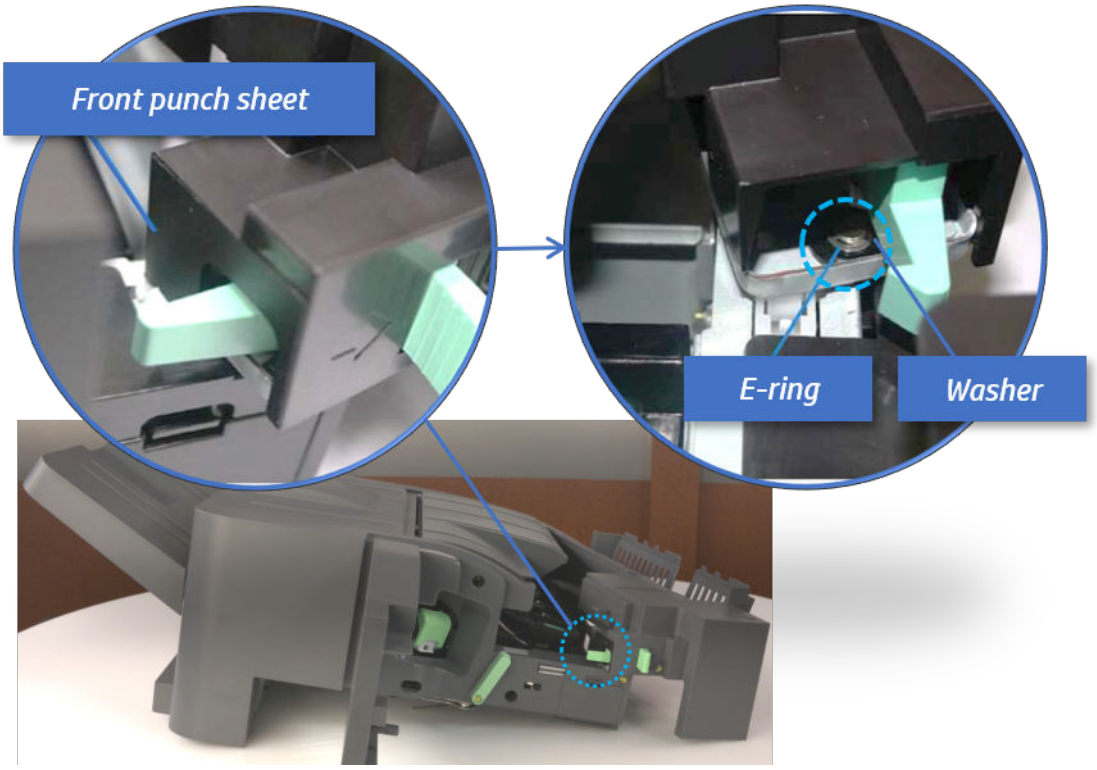
2. Open the punch cover.

Figure 6-772 Open the punch cover



3. Remove the front punch sheet, and then remove the e-ring and the washer. And then remove the punch cover.

Figure 6-773 Remove the punch cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Punch waste full sensor (S19)

Learn how to remove and replace the punch waste full sensor.

To view teardown&reassembling video of the inner finisher, click the link below.

View a teardown video of the inner finisher .

View a reassembling video of the inner finisher .

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Mean time to repair:

Service level:

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-74 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	Punch waste full sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

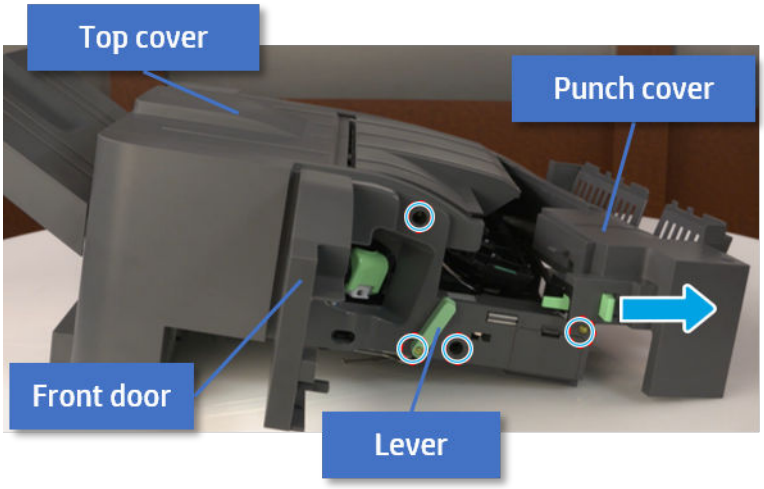
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Remove the front cover

Follow these steps to remove the front cover.

1. Open the front door and open the punch cover.
2. Remove three screws in the front.
3. Remove the lever.
4. Open the top cover.
5. From the right side of the front cover, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the front cover.

Figure 6-774 Remove the front cover

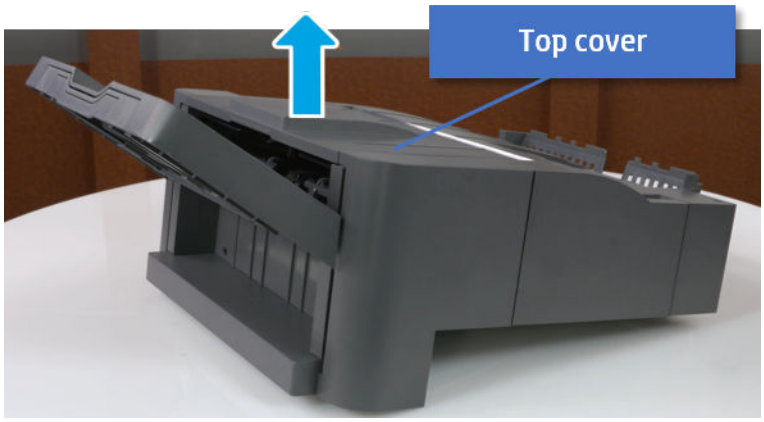


Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

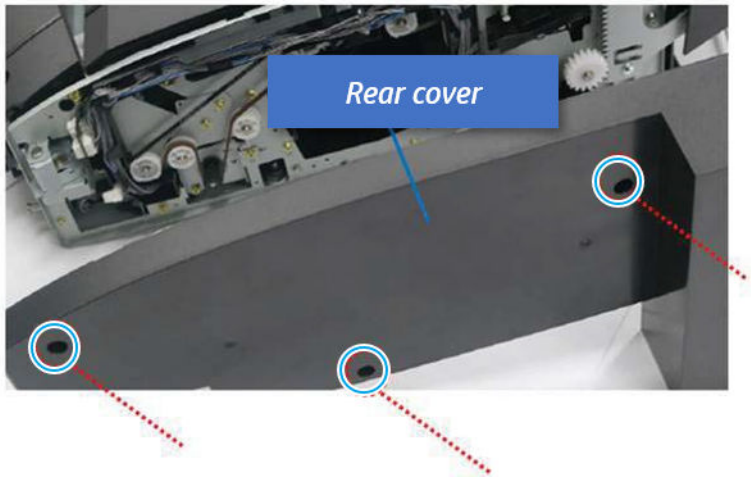
1. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-775 Open the top cover



2. Remove three screws.
3. Release hooks carefully and remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-776 Remove the rear cover

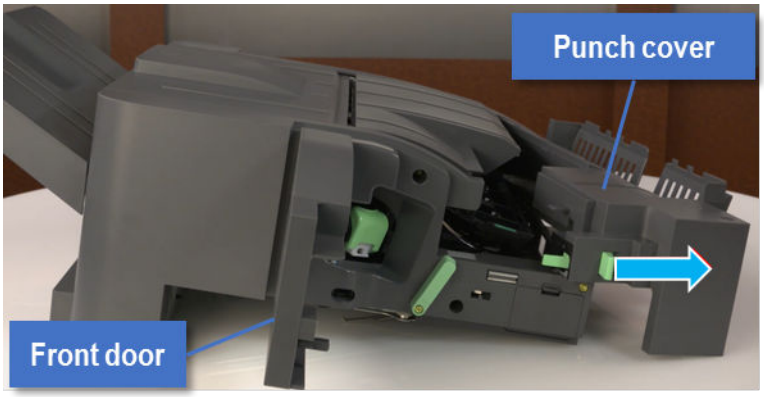


Remove the middle cover

Follow these steps to remove the middle cover.

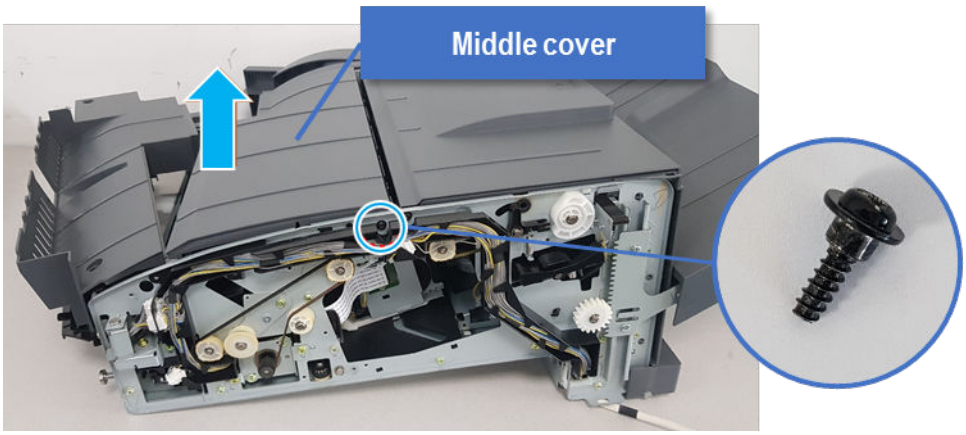
1. Open the front door and then open the punch cover.

Figure 6-777 Open the front door and puch cover.



2. Remove left-side one screw at the rear of the inner finisher, and then remove the middle cover by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

Figure 6-778 Remove the middle cover

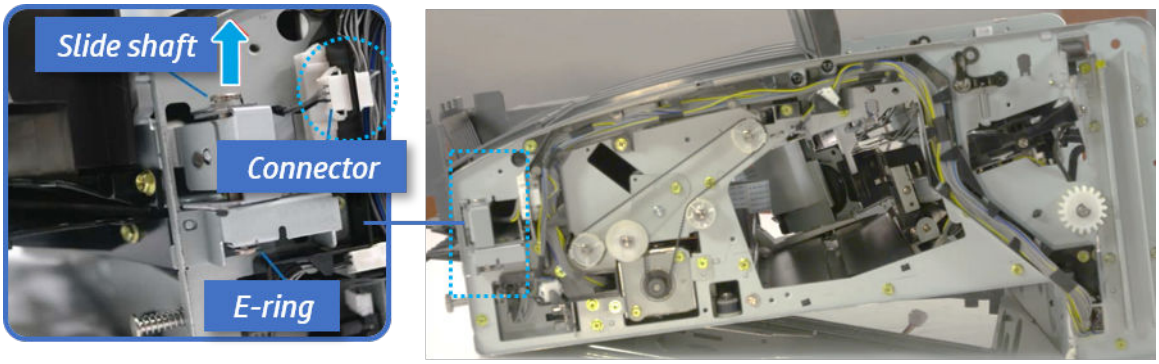


Remove the punch cover

Follow these steps to remove the punch cover.

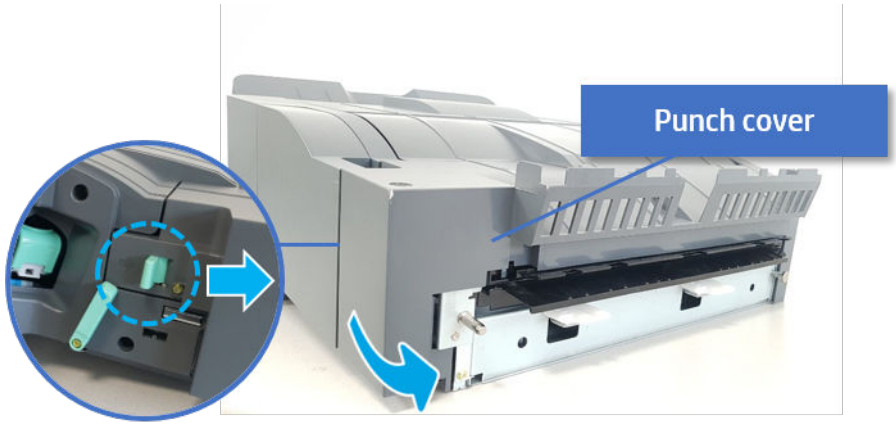
1. Unplug the connector. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the slide shaft at the rear of the inner finisher.

Figure 6-779 Remove the slide shaft



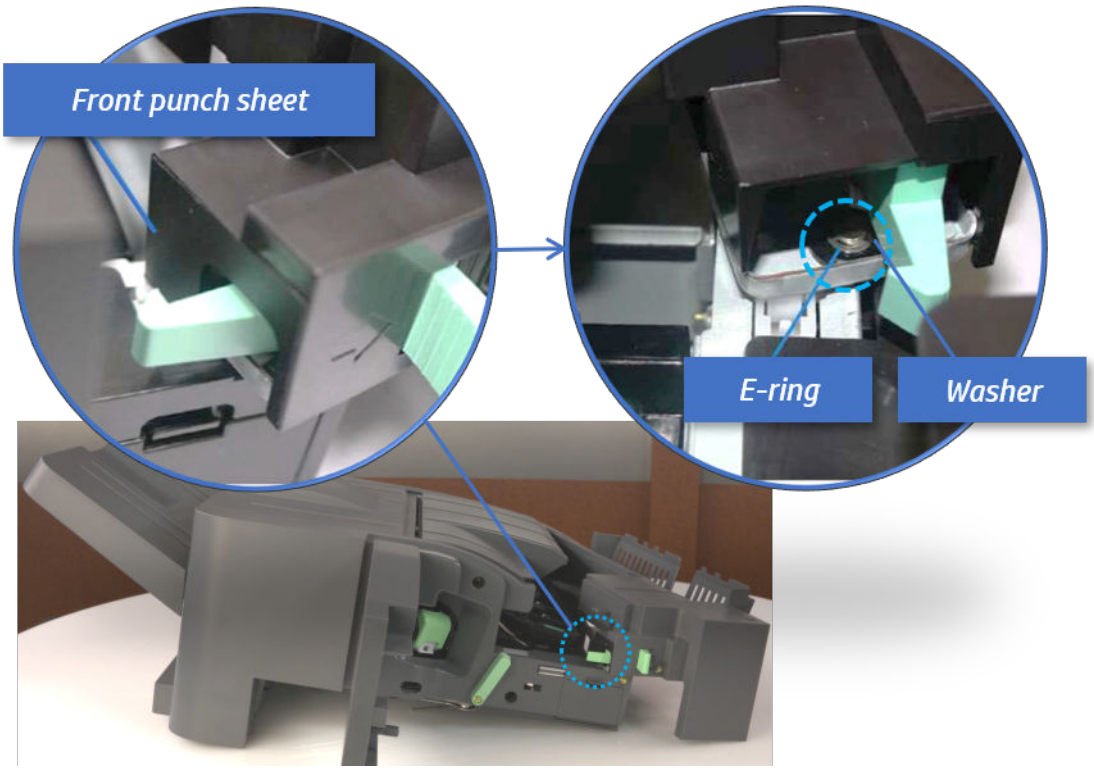
2. Open the punch cover.

Figure 6-780 Open the punch cover



3. Remove the front punch sheet, and then remove the e-ring and the washer. And then remove the punch cover.

Figure 6-781 Remove the punch cover

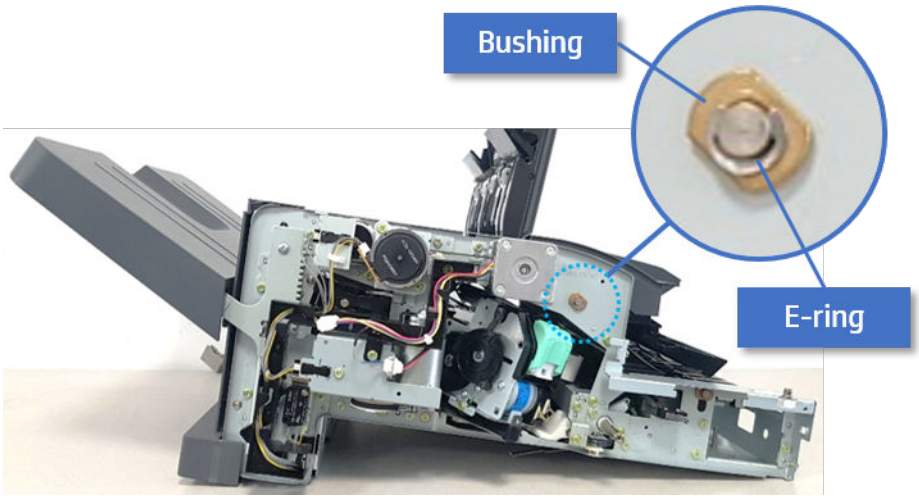


Remove the diverter guide and the middle roller

Follow these steps to remove the diverter guide and the middle roller.

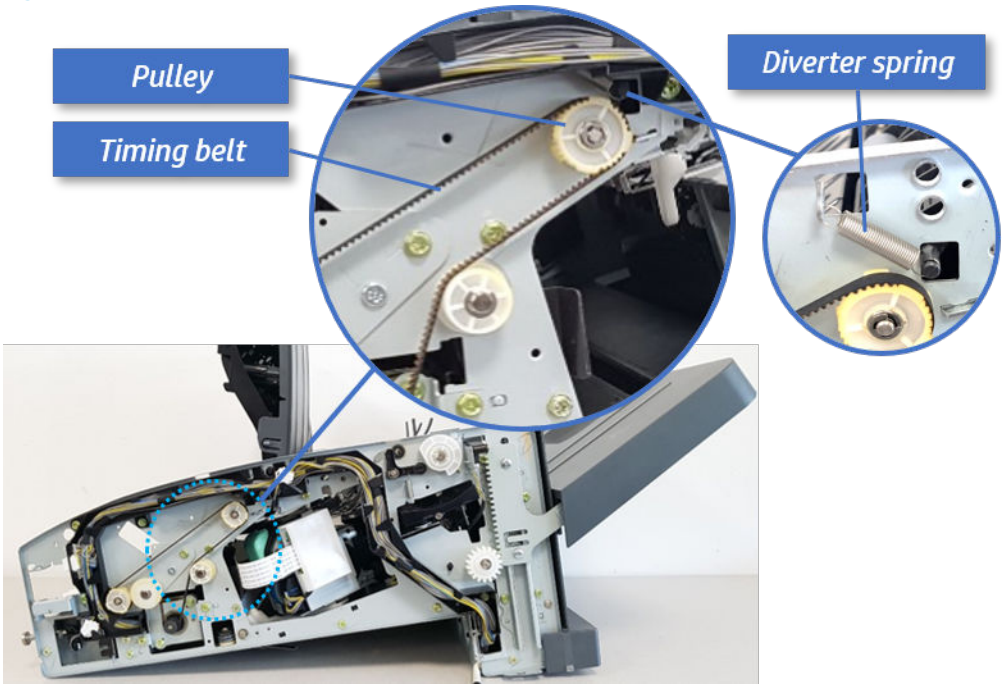
1. On the front of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring and bushing.

Figure 6-782 Remove the e-ring and bushing



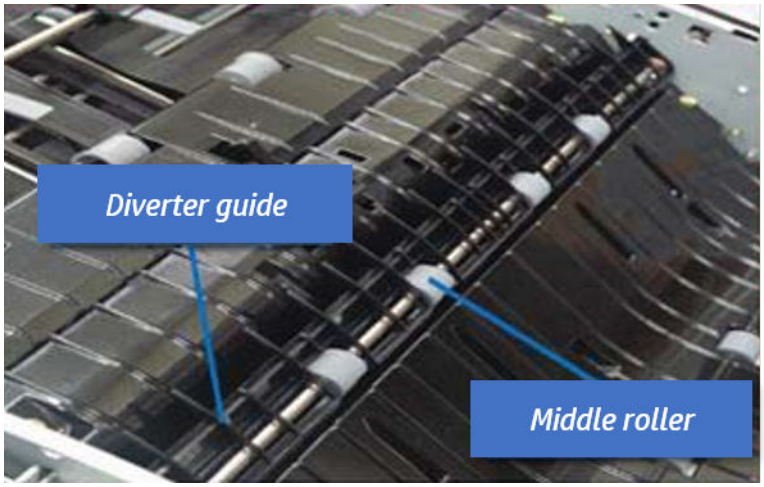
2. Onthe rear of the inner finisher, remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, and spring (slightly hiddenfrom view).

Figure 6-783 Remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, and spring



3. Remove the diverter guide and the middler roller.

Figure 6-784 Remove the diverter guide and the middler roller

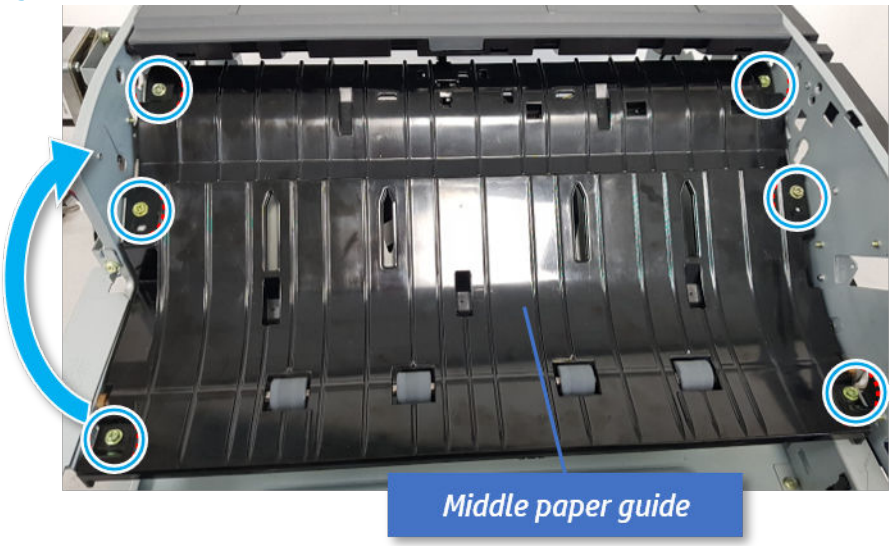


Remove the middle paper guide

Follow these steps to remove the middle paper guide.

1. Remove six screws, and then open the middle paper guide in the direction of the arrow.

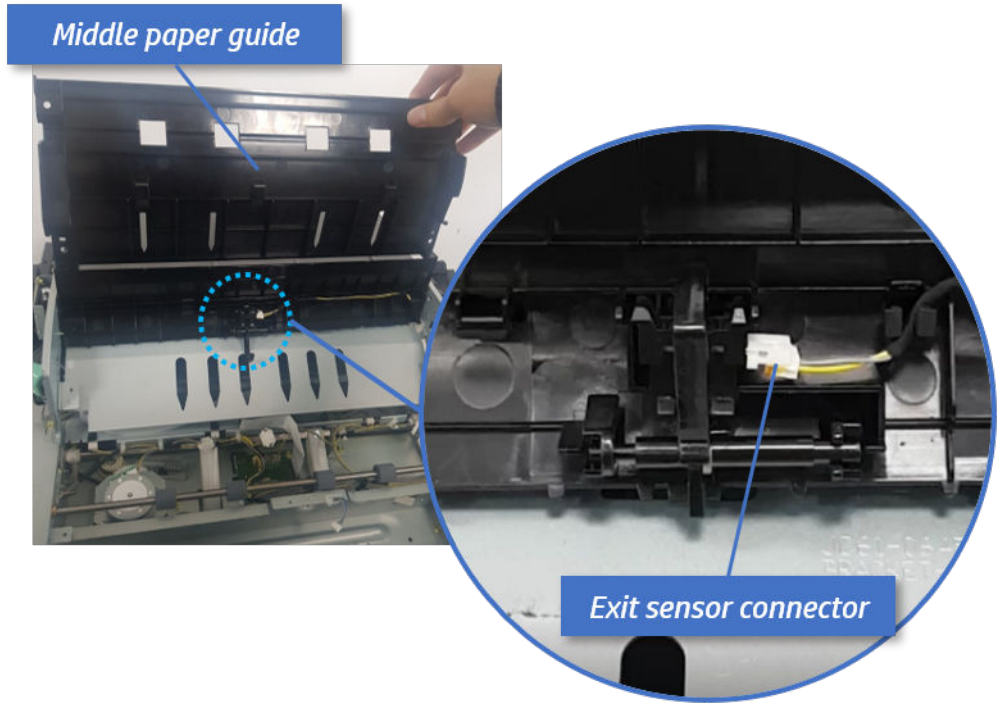
Figure 6-785 Open the middle paper guide



NOTE: Becareful not to damage the sensor connector.

2. Unplug the connector under the middle paper guide. And then, remove the middle paper guide.

Figure 6-786 Remove the middle paper guide

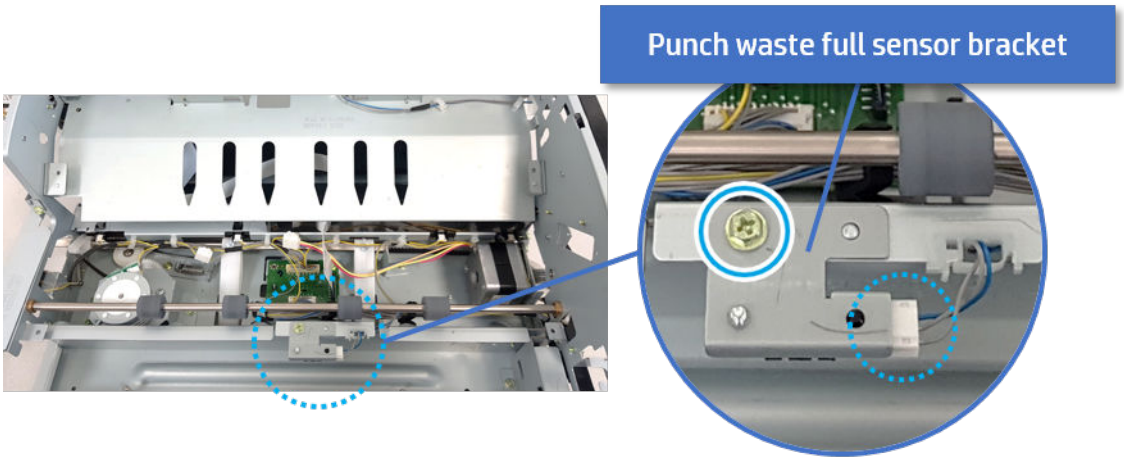


Remove the punch waste full sensor

Follow these steps to remove the punch waste full sensor.

1. Remove one screw, unplug the connector, and then remove the punch waste full sensor bracket.

Figure 6-787 Remove the punch waste full sensor bracket



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the punch waste full sensor from the bracket.

Figure 6-788 Remove the punch waste full sensor

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Problem solving

Learn about problem solving.

Control panel message document (CPMD)

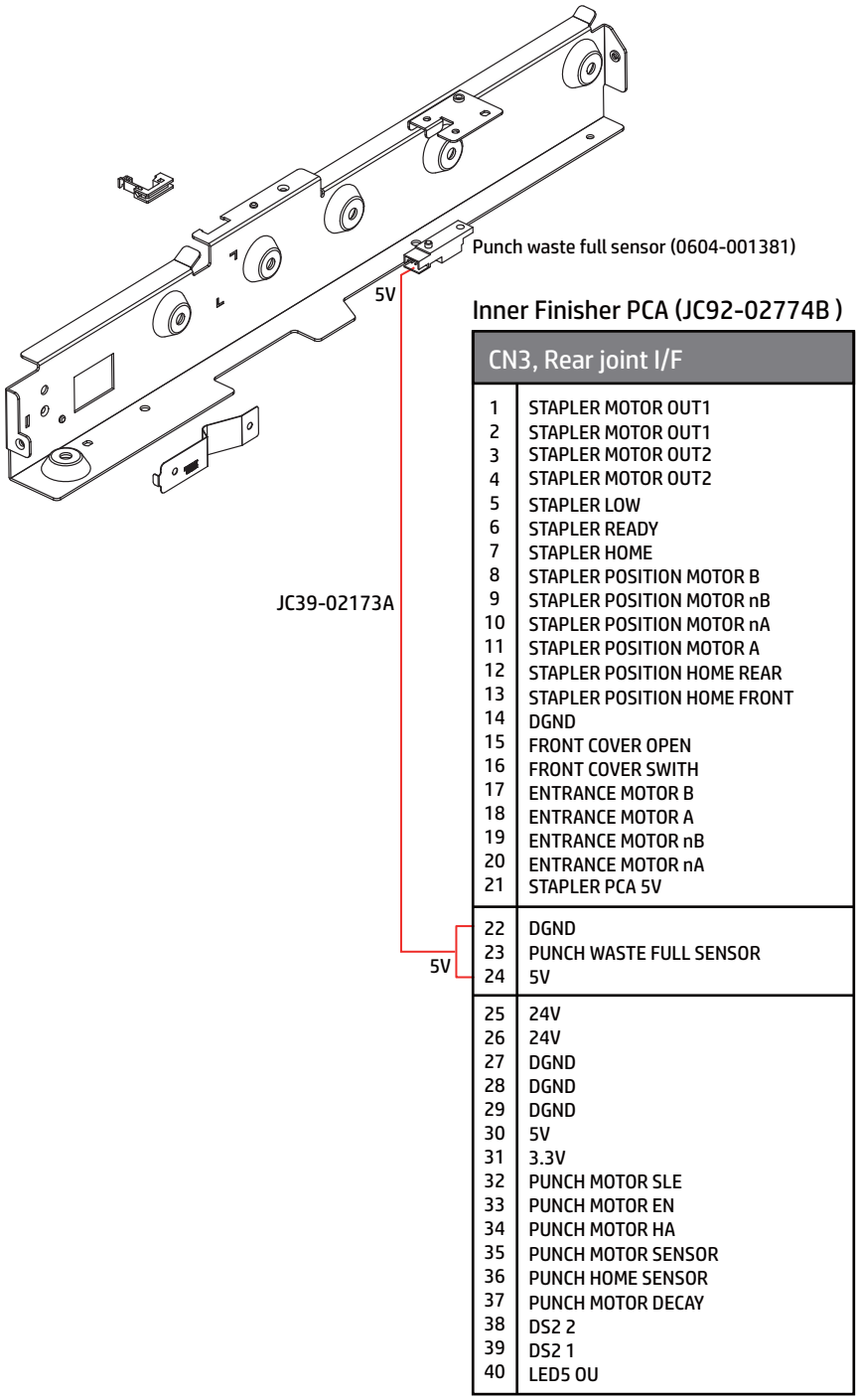
Learn about the control panel message document (CPMD).

Refer to Error codes on page 1008 for more details.

Electrical Mechanical Diagrams (Inner finisher)

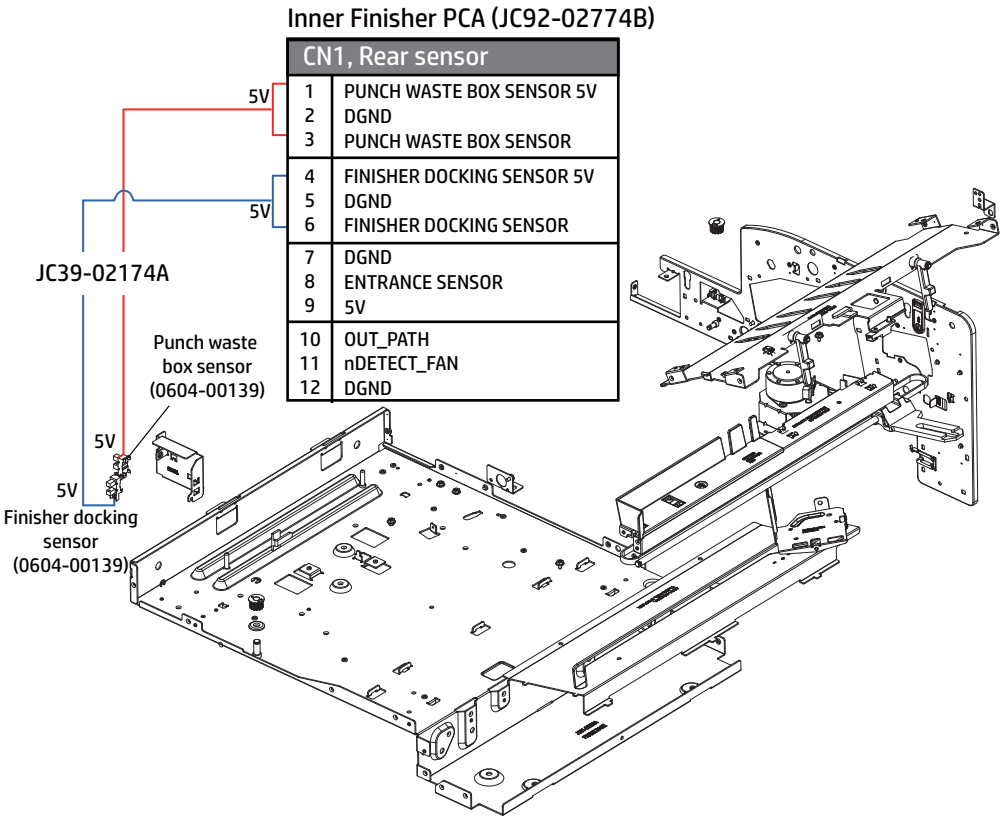
Punch waste full sensor

Figure 6-789 Punch waste full sensor



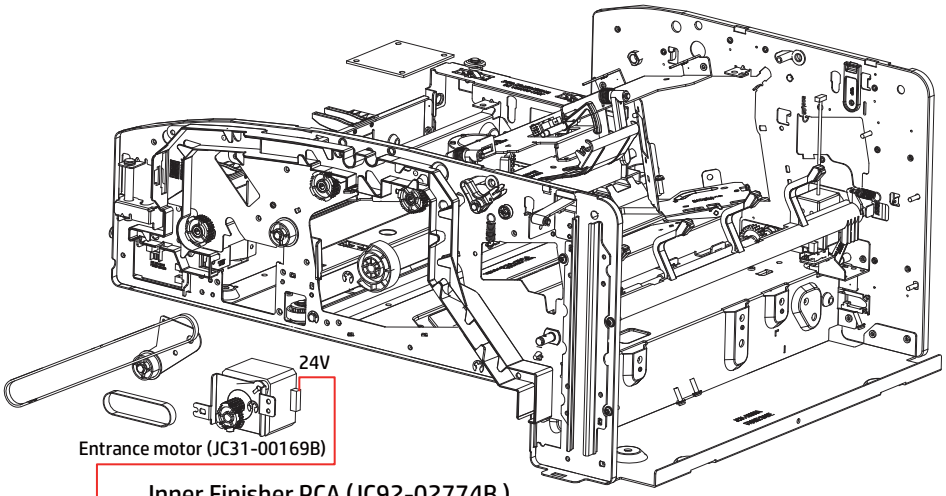
Punch waste box sensor and finisher docking sensor

Figure 6-790 Punch waste box sensor and finisher docking sensor



Entrance motor

Figure 6-791 Entrance motor



Inner Finisher PCA (JC92-02774B)

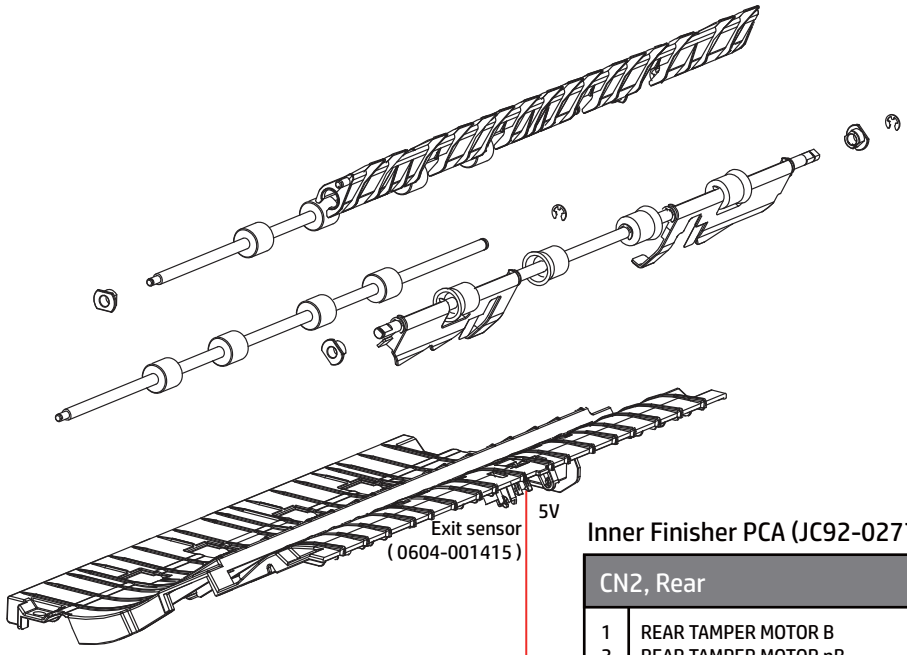
JC39-02173A

CN3, Rear joint I/F	
1	STAPLER MOTOR OUT1
2	STAPLER MOTOR OUT1
3	STAPLER MOTOR OUT2
4	STAPLER MOTOR OUT2
5	STAPLER LOW
6	STAPLER READY
7	STAPLER HOME
8	STAPLER POSITION MOTOR B
9	STAPLER POSITION MOTOR nB
10	STAPLER POSITION MOTOR nA
11	STAPLER POSITION MOTOR A
12	STAPLER POSITION HOME REAR
13	STAPLER POSITION HOME FRONT
14	DGND
15	FRONT COVER OPEN
16	FRONT COVER SWITH
17	ENTRANCE MOTOR B
18	ENTRANCE MOTOR A
19	ENTRANCE MOTOR nB
20	ENTRANCE MOTOR nA
21	STAPLER PCA 5V
22	DGND
23	PUNCH WASTE FULL SENSOR
24	5V
25	24V
26	24V
27	DGND
28	DGND
29	DGND
30	5V
31	3.3V
32	PUNCH MOTOR SLE
33	PUNCH MOTOR EN
34	PUNCH MOTOR HA
35	PUNCH MOTOR SENSOR
36	PUNCH HOME SENSOR
37	PUNCH MOTOR DECAY
38	DS2 2
39	DS2 1
40	LED5 OU

24V

Exit sensor

Figure 6-792 Exit sensor

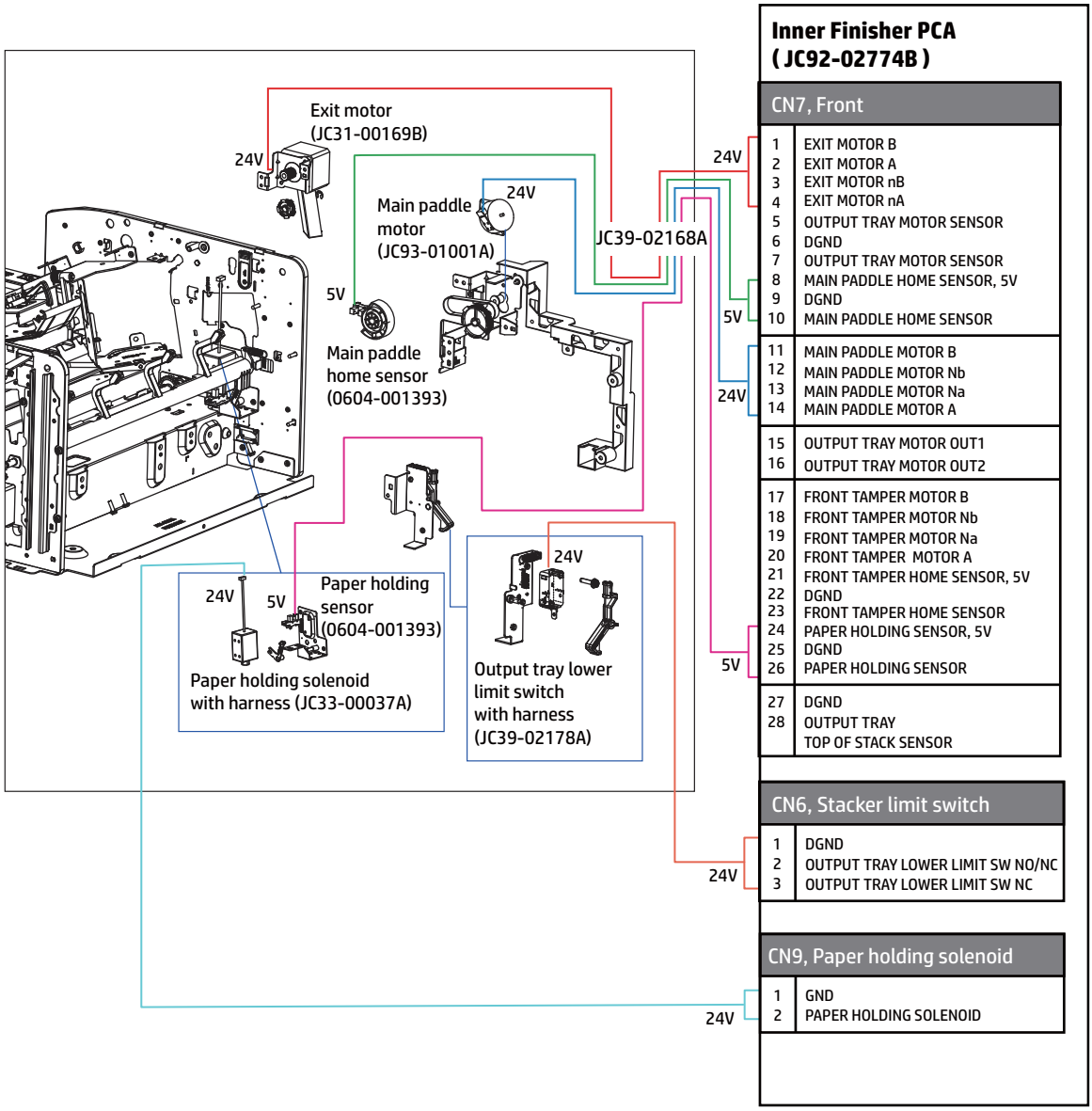


Inner Finisher PCA (JC92-02774B)

CN2, Rear	
1 2 3 4	REAR TAMPER MOTOR B REAR TAMPER MOTOR nB REAR TAMPER MOTOR nA REAR TAMPER MOTOR A
5 6 7	REAR TAMPER HOME SENSOR 5V DGND REAR TAMPER HOME SENSOR
8 9 10	DGND TOP COVER TOP COVER SWITH
11	N.C
12 13	OUTPUT TRAY TOP OF STACK SENSOR LED OUTPUT TRAY TOP OF STACK LED
14 15 16	EXIT SENSOR 5V DGND EXIT SENSOR
17 18 19	DGND END FENCE SENSOR END FENCE SENSOR 5V
20 21 22	PAPR SUPPORT HOME 5V DGND PAPR SUPPORT HOME
23 24 25 26	PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR B PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR nB PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR nA PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR A

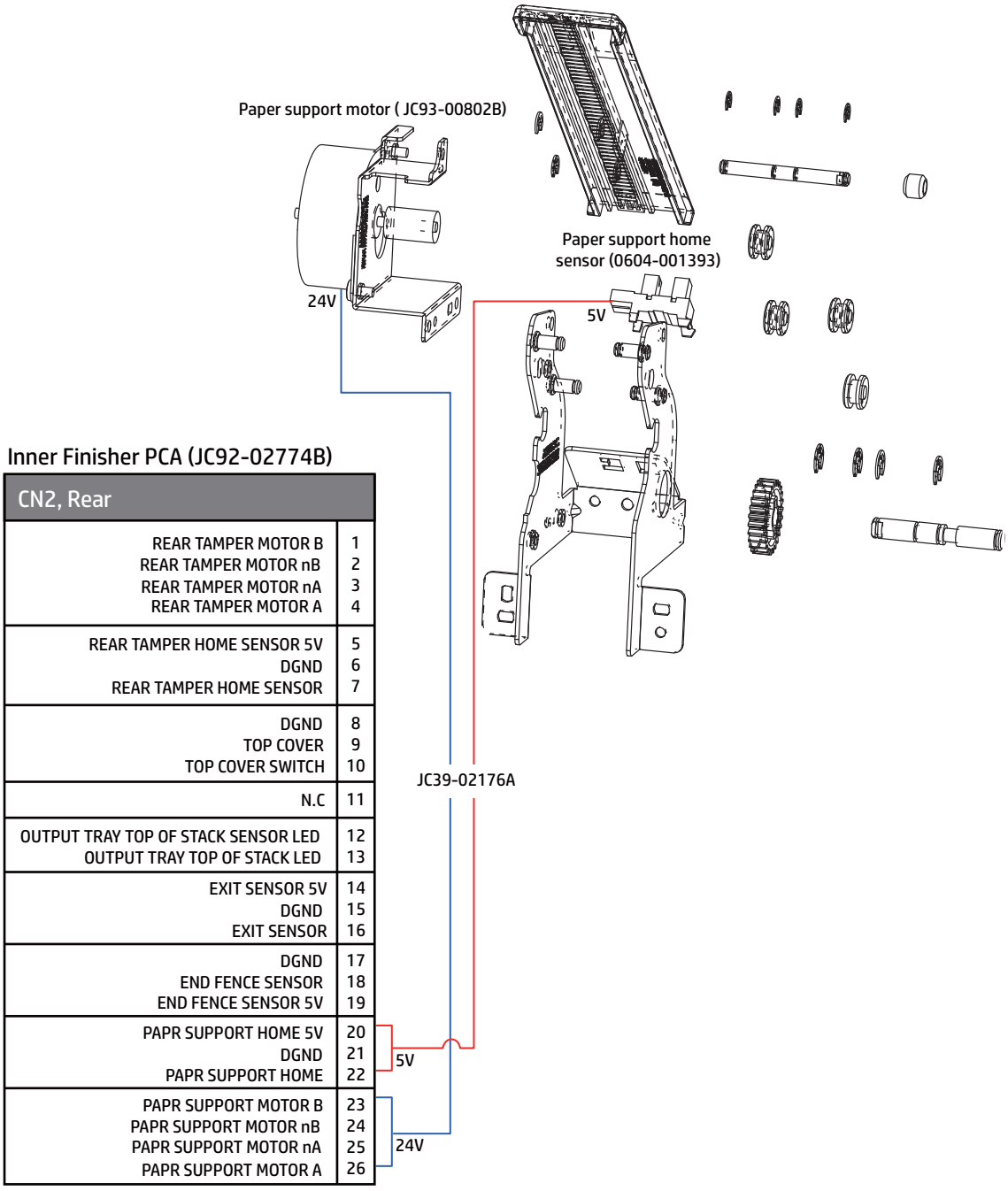
Exit motor, main paddle motor & home sensor, output tray lower limit switch, and paper holding solenoid

Figure 6-793 Exit motor, paddle motor&sensor, output tray lower limit sensor, and paper holding solenoid



Paper support motor & home sensor

Figure 6-794 Paper support sensor and motor

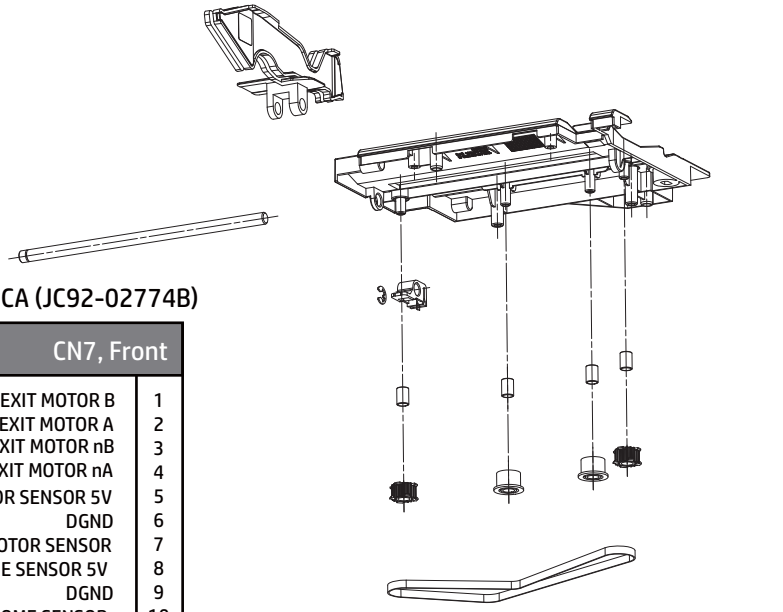


Inner Finisher PCA (JC92-02774B)

CN2, Rear	
REAR TAMPER MOTOR B	1
REAR TAMPER MOTOR nB	2
REAR TAMPER MOTOR nA	3
REAR TAMPER MOTOR A	4
REAR TAMPER HOME SENSOR 5V	5
DGND	6
REAR TAMPER HOME SENSOR	7
DGND	8
TOP COVER	9
TOP COVER SWITCH	10
N.C	11
OUTPUT TRAY TOP OF STACK SENSOR LED	12
OUTPUT TRAY TOP OF STACK LED	13
EXIT SENSOR 5V	14
DGND	15
EXIT SENSOR	16
DGND	17
END FENCE SENSOR	18
END FENCE SENSOR 5V	19
PAPR SUPPORT HOME 5V	20
DGND	21
PAPR SUPPORT HOME	22
PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR B	23
PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR nB	24
PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR nA	25
PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR A	26

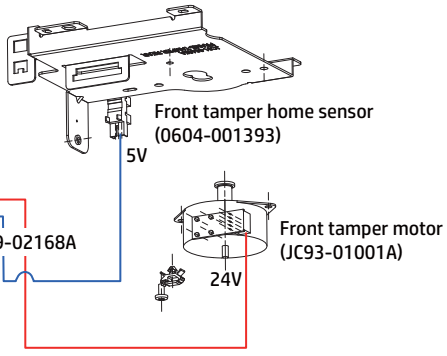
Front tamper motor and home sensor

Figure 6-795 Front tamper sensor and motor



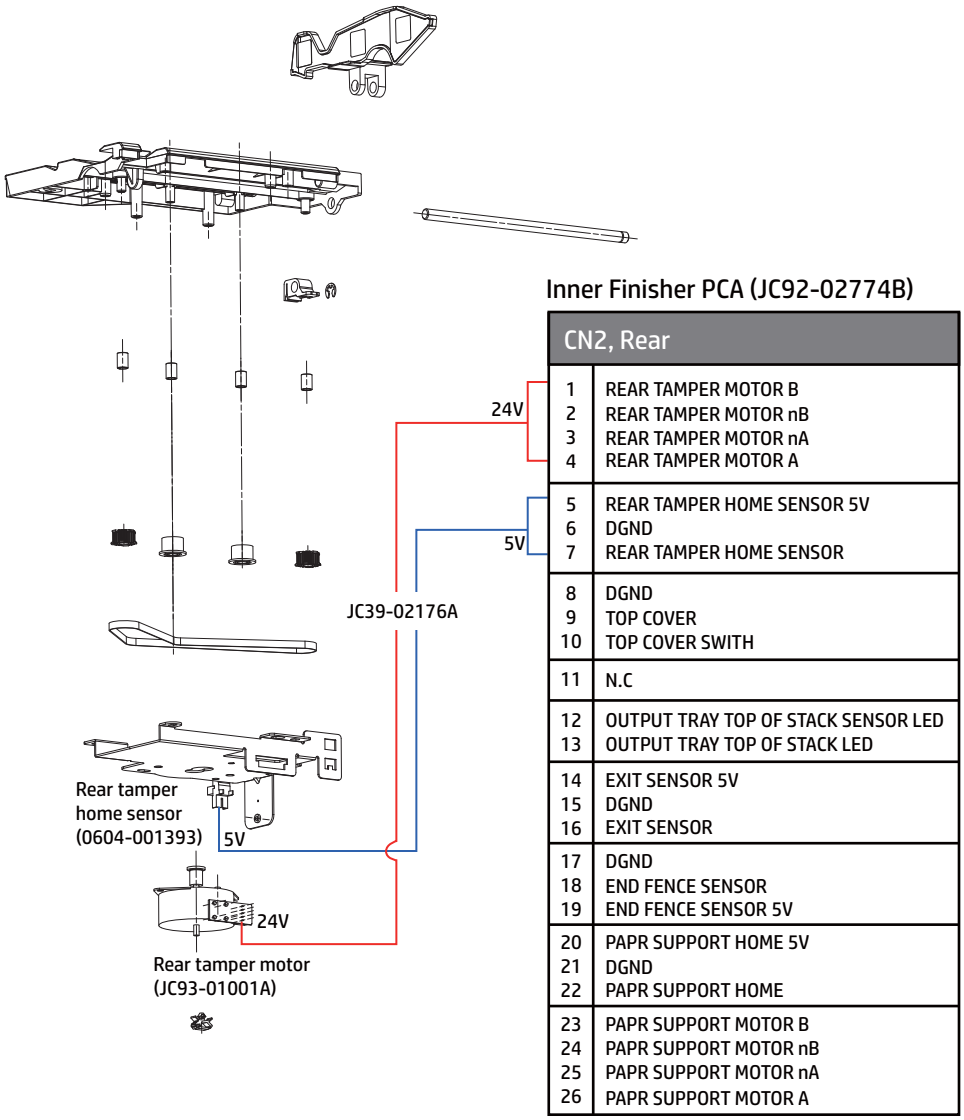
Inner Finisher PCA (JC92-02774B)

CN7, Front	
EXIT MOTOR B	1
EXIT MOTOR A	2
EXIT MOTOR nB	3
EXIT MOTOR nA	4
OUTPUT TRAY MOTOR SENSOR 5V	5
DGND	6
OUTPUT TRAY MOTOR SENSOR	7
MAIN PADDLE HOME SENSOR 5V	8
DGND	9
MAIN PADDLE HOME SENSOR	10
MAIN PADDLE MOTOR B	11
MAIN PADDLE MOTOR nB	12
MAIN PADDLE MOTOR nA	13
MAIN PADDLE MOTOR A	14
OUTPUT TRAY MOTOR OUT1	15
OUTPUT TRAY MOTOR OUT2	16
FRONT TAMPER MOTOR B	17
FRONT TAMPER MOTOR nB	18
FRONT TAMPER MOTOR nA	19
FRONT TAMPER MOTOR A	20
FRONT TAMPER HOME SENSOR 5V	21
DGND	22
FRONT TAMPER HOME SENSOR	23
PAPER HOLDING SENSOR 5V	24
DGND	25
PAPER HOLDING SENSOR	26
DGND	27
OUTPUT TRAY TOP OF STACK SENSOR RECEIVER	28



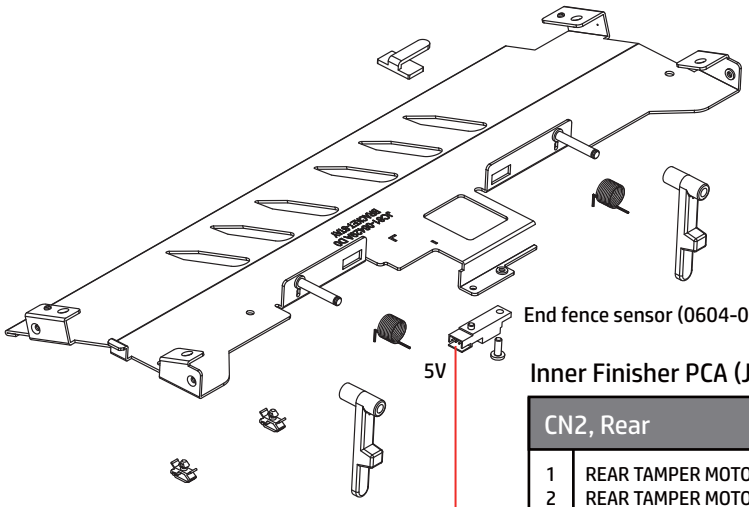
Rear tamper motor and home sensor

Figure 6-796 Rear tamper sensor and motor



End fence sensor

Figure 6-797 End fence sensor

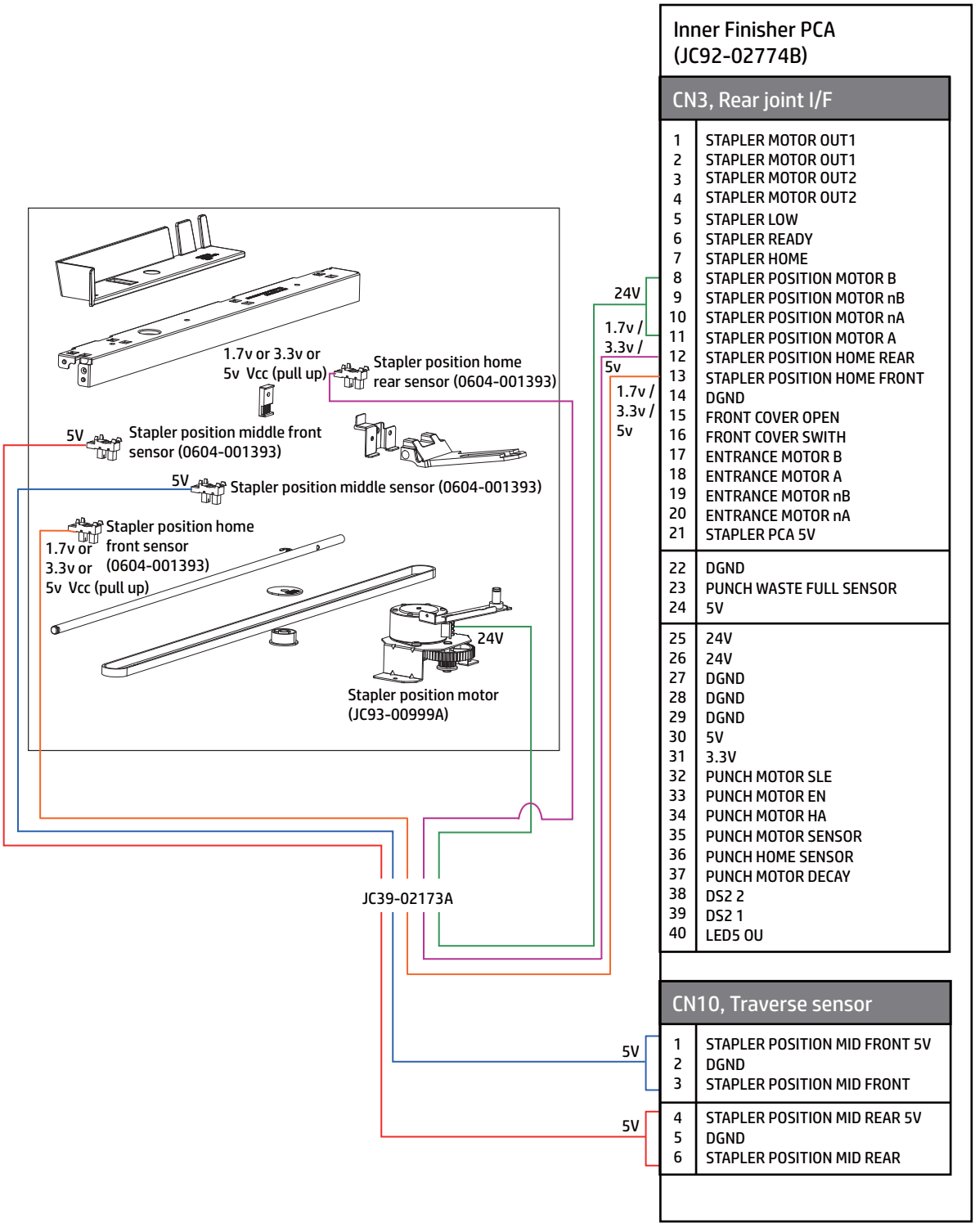


Inner Finisher PCA (JC92-02774B)

CN2, Rear	
1	REAR TAMPER MOTOR B
2	REAR TAMPER MOTOR nB
3	REAR TAMPER MOTOR nA
4	REAR TAMPER MOTOR A
5	REAR TAMPER HOME SENSOR 5V
6	DGND
7	REAR TAMPER HOME SENSOR
8	DGND
9	TOP COVER
10	TOP COVER SWITH
11	N.C
12	OUTPUT TRAY TOP OF STACK SENSOR LED
13	OUTPUT TRAY TOP OF STACK LED
14	EXIT SENSOR 5V
15	DGND
16	EXIT SENSOR
17	DGND
18	END FENCE SENSOR
19	END FENCE SENSOR 5V
20	PAPR SUPPORT HOME 5V
21	DGND
22	PAPR SUPPORT HOME
23	PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR B
24	PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR nB
25	PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR nA
26	PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR A

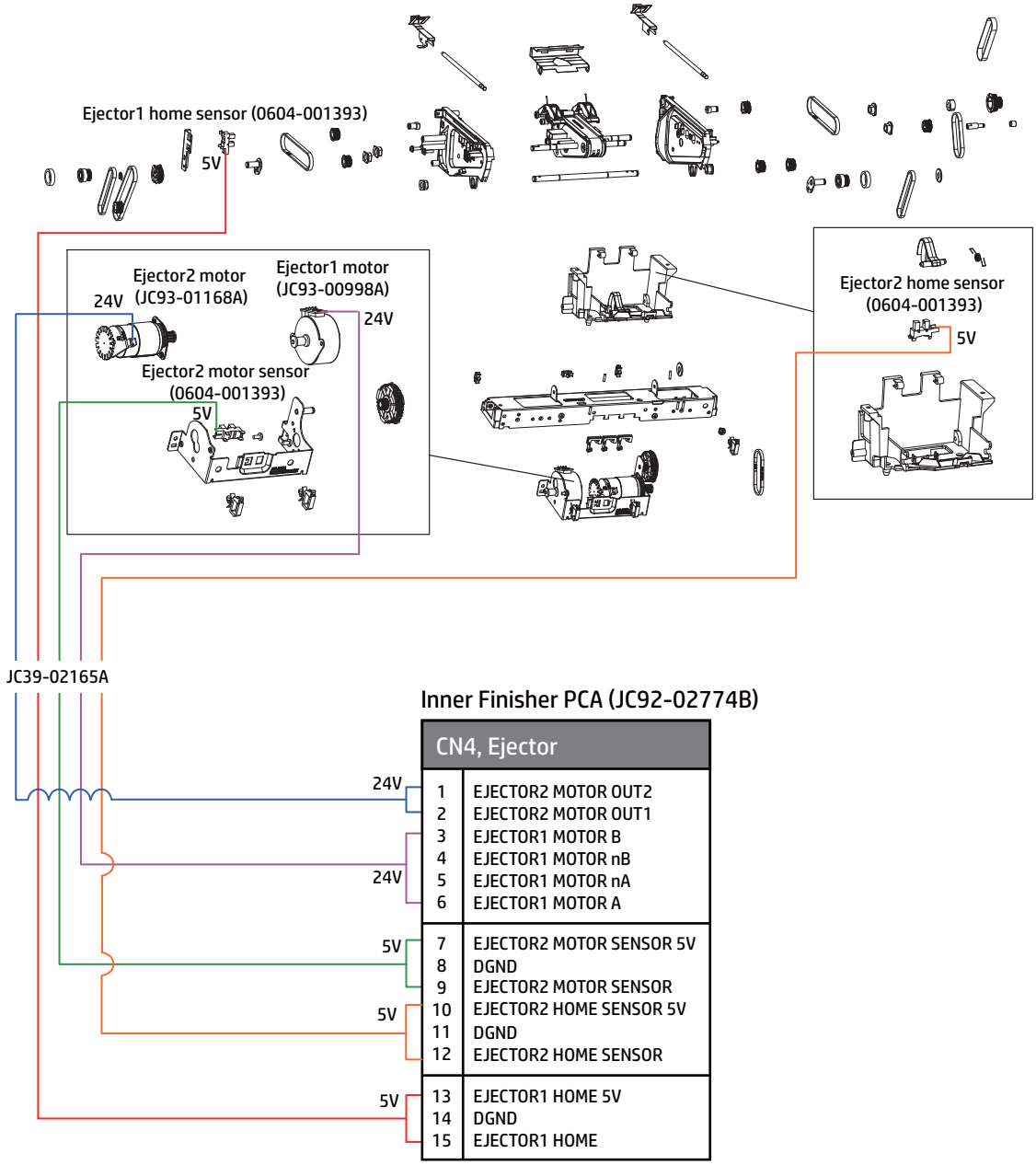
Stapler position motor and sensor

Figure 6-798 Stapler position sensor and motor



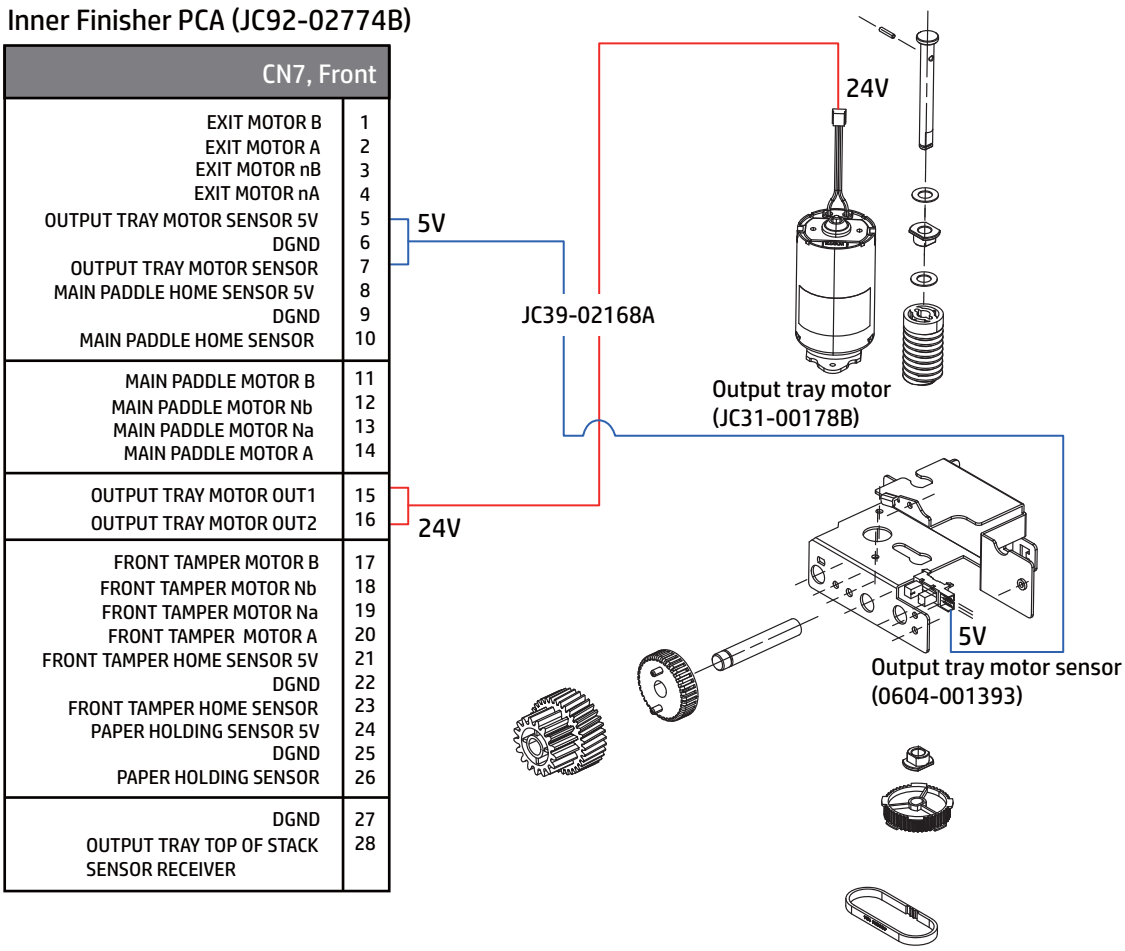
Ejector 1 motor and home sensor, ejector 2 motor, motor sensor, and home sensor

Figure 6-799 Ejector 1 motor and home sensor, ejector 2 motor, motor sensor, and home sensor



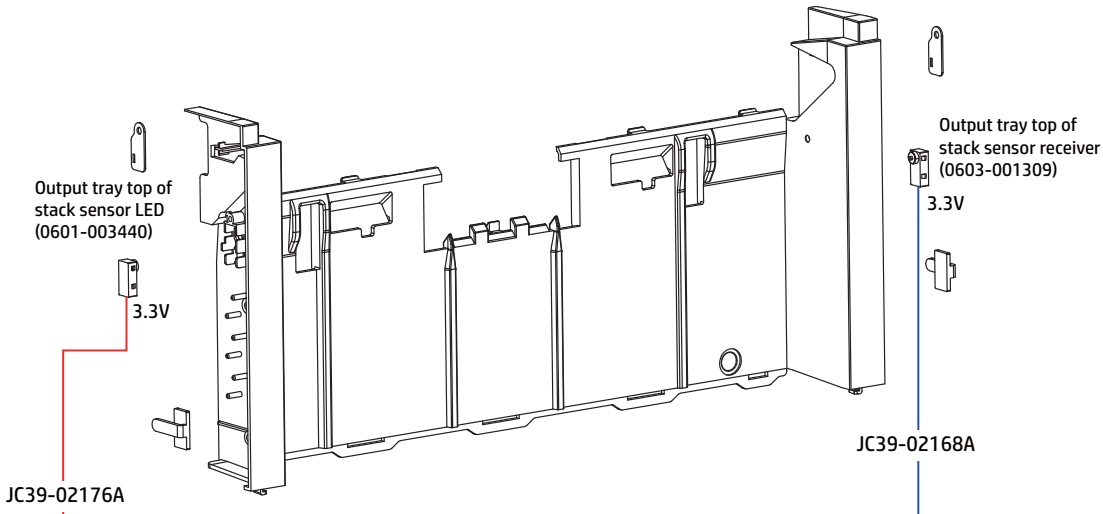
Output tray motor and sensor

Figure 6-800 Output tray motor and sensor



Output tray top of stack sensor

Figure 6-801 Output tray top of stack sensor



Inner Finisher PCA (JC92-02774B)

CN2, Rear	
1	REAR TAMPER MOTOR B
2	REAR TAMPER MOTOR nB
3	REAR TAMPER MOTOR nA
4	REAR TAMPER MOTOR A
5	REAR TAMPER HOME SENSOR 5V
6	DGND
7	REAR TAMPER HOME SENSOR
8	DGND
9	TOP COVER 24V
10	TOP COVER SWITCH
11	N.C
12	OUTPUT TRAY TOP OF STACK SENSOR LED 3.3V
13	OUTPUT TRAY TOP OF STACK LED
14	EXIT SENSOR 5V
15	DGND
16	EXIT SENSOR
17	DGND
18	END FENCE SENSOR
19	END FENCE SENSOR 5V
20	PAPR SUPPORT HOME 5V
21	DGND
22	PAPR SUPPORT HOME
23	PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR B
24	PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR nB
25	PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR nA
26	PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR A

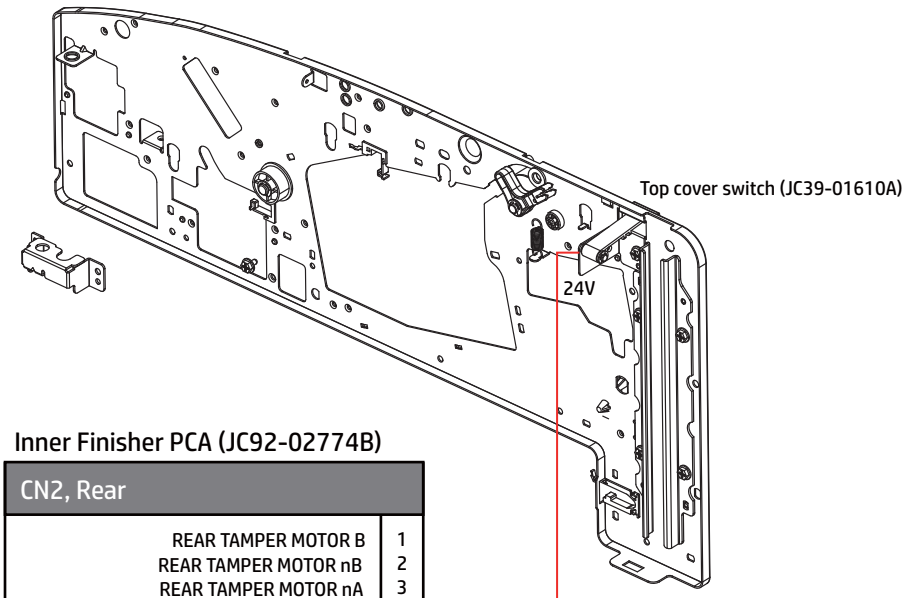
3.3V

CN7, Front	
EXIT MOTOR B	1
EXIT MOTOR A	2
EXIT MOTOR nB	3
EXIT MOTOR nA	4
OUTPUT TRAY MOTOR SENSOR 5V	5
DGND	6
OUTPUT TRAY MOTOR SENSOR	7
MAIN PADDLE HOME SENSOR 5V	8
DGND	9
MAIN PADDLE HOME SENSOR	10
MAIN PADDLE MOTOR B	11
MAIN PADDLE MOTOR nB	12
MAIN PADDLE MOTOR nA	13
MAIN PADDLE MOTOR A	14
OUTPUT TRAY MOTOR OUT1	15
OUTPUT TRAY MOTOR OUT2	16
FRONT TAMPER MOTOR B	17
FRONT TAMPER MOTOR nB	18
FRONT TAMPER MOTOR nA	19
FRONT TAMPER MOTOR A	20
FRONT TAMPER HOME SENSOR 5V	21
DGND	22
FRONT TAMPER HOME SENSOR	23
PAPER HOLDING SENSOR 5V	24
DGND	25
PAPER HOLDING SENSOR	26
DGND	27
OUTPUT TRAY TOP OF STACK SENSOR RECEIVER 3.3V	28

3.3V

Top cover switch

Figure 6-802 Top cover switch



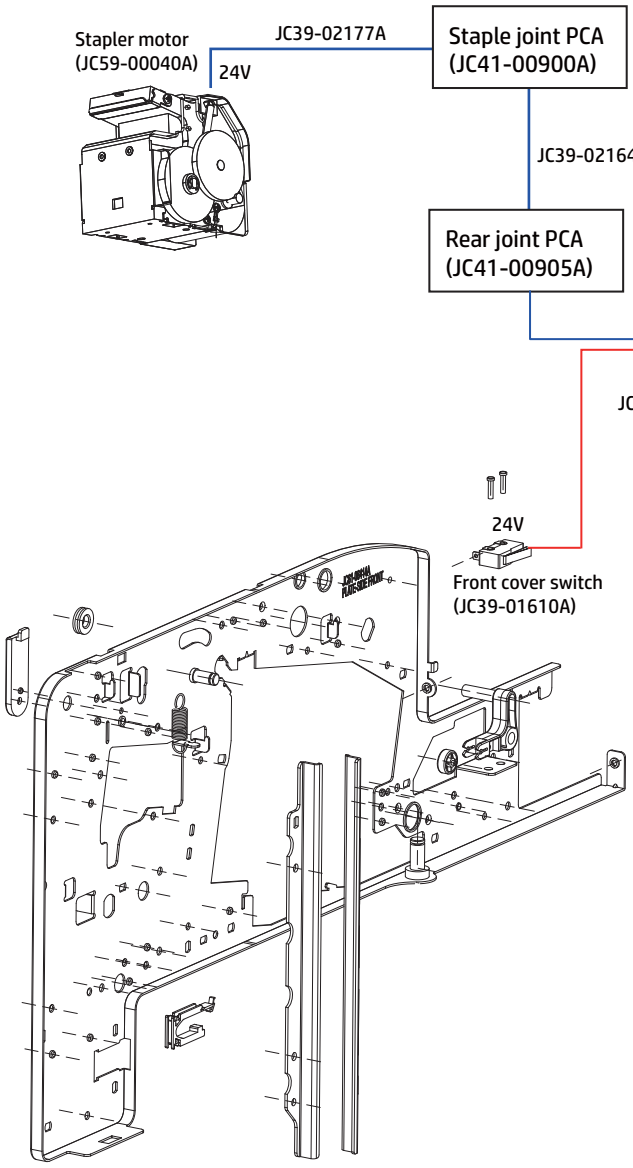
Inner Finisher PCA (JC92-02774B)

CN2, Rear	
REAR TAMPER MOTOR B	1
REAR TAMPER MOTOR nB	2
REAR TAMPER MOTOR nA	3
REAR TAMPER MOTOR A	4
REAR TAMPER HOME SENSOR 5V	5
DGND	6
REAR TAMPER HOME SENSOR	7
DGND	8
TOP COVER 24V	9
TOP COVER SWITCH	10
N.C	11
OUTPUT TRAY TOP OF STACK SENSOR LED	12
OUTPUT TRAY TOP OF STACK LED	13
EXIT SENSOR 5V	14
DGND	15
EXIT SENSOR	16
DGND	17
END FENCE SENSOR	18
END FENCE SENSOR 5V	19
PAPR SUPPORT HOME 5V	20
DGND	21
PAPR SUPPORT HOME	22
PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR B	23
PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR nB	24
PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR nA	25
PAPR SUPPORT MOTOR A	26

24V

Front cover switch

Figure 6-803 Frame front



Inner Finisher PCA (JC92-02774B)

CN3, Rear joint I/F	
1	STAPLER MOTOR OUT1
2	STAPLER MOTOR OUT1
3	STAPLER MOTOR OUT2
4	STAPLER MOTOR OUT2
5	STAPLER LOW
6	STAPLER READY
7	STAPLER HOME
8	STAPLER POSITION MOTOR B
9	STAPLER POSITION MOTOR nB
10	STAPLER POSITION MOTOR nA
11	STAPLER POSITION MOTOR A
12	STAPLER POSITION HOME REAR
13	STAPLER POSITION HOME FRONT
14	DGND
15	FRONT COVER OPEN 24V
16	FRONT COVER SWITH
17	ENTRANCE MOTOR B
18	ENTRANCE MOTOR A
19	ENTRANCE MOTOR nB
20	ENTRANCE MOTOR nA
21	STAPLER PCA 5V
22	DGND
23	PUNCH WASTE FULL SENSOR
24	5V
25	24V
26	24V
27	DGND
28	DGND
29	DGND
30	5V
31	3.3V
32	PUNCH MOTOR SLE
33	PUNCH MOTOR EN
34	PUNCH MOTOR HA
35	PUNCH MOTOR SENSOR
36	PUNCH HOME SENSOR
37	PUNCH MOTOR DECAY
38	DS2 2
39	DS2 1
40	LED5 OU

A Certificate of Volatility

View the product certificates of volatility.

Certificate of Volatility

Learn about the product certificate of volatility.

Figure A-1 Certificate of Volatility (E87640/50/60; 1 of 3)

Hewlett-Packard Certificate of Volatility		
Model: **HP Color LaserJet Managed MFP E876XXdn** **HP Color LaserJet Managed Flow MFP E876XXz** **HP Color LaserJet Managed MFP E876XXdu**	Part Number: **Managed** X3A87A= E87640dn X3A90A= E87650dn X3A93A= E87660dn X3A86A= E87640z X3A89A= E87650z X3A92A= E87660z 5CM64A = E87640du 5CM65A = E87650du 5CM66A = E87660du	Address: Hewlett Packard Company 11311 Chinden Blvd Boise, ID 83714

Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain volatile memory (Memory whose contents are lost when power is removed)? ☒ Yes ☐ No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc.): DDR3 - DRAM	Size: HP Formatter 3GB- Obsidian 1 GB –Accel board 4 GB - Main Formatter	User Modifiable: ☐ Yes ☒ No	Function: Operation system and print/scan buffer	Steps to clear memory: When the printer is powered off the memory is erased.
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc.):	Size:	User Modifiable: ☐ Yes ☐ No	Function:	Steps to clear memory:

Non-Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain non-volatile memory (Memory whose contents are retained when power is removed)? ☒ Yes ☐ No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc.): IOD EEPROM	Size: 32KB	User Modifiable: ☐ Yes ☒ No	Function: Store customer setting data for backup/restore	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc.): HP side: SPI Flash	Size: 4MB	User Modifiable: ☒ Yes ☐No	Function: Contains the boot code and factory product configuration data required for the device to function. User modifications are limited to downloading digitally signed HP firmware images.	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc.): Samsung MSOK : MSOK – TPM NVRAM MSOK – EEProm MSOK – CRUM	Size: 2 KB 32 KB 32 KB	User Modifiable: ☐ Yes ☒ No	Function: TPM NVRAM - stores HP-signed immutable ID certificate and associated RSA key pair in locked memory. EEProm - stores device lifecycle data (e.g. device page counts), copy of device speed license, and SED (self-encrypting drive) drive lock password. CRUM - stores device page counts, consumables information, device speed information, and product serial number.	Steps to clear memory: Drive lock password can be changed through the device embedded web server interface. No other data stored on the MSOK can be cleared.

Figure A-2 Certificate of Volatility (E87640/50/60; 2 of 3)

Mass Storage				
Does the device contain mass storage memory (Hard Disk Drive, Tape Backup)? ☒ Yes ☐ No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (HDD, Tape, etc.): 2 – Hard Drives (1 – HP formatter & 1 – Main board)	Size: 320GB/ea	User Modifiable: ☒ Yes ☐ No	Function: Stores customer data, OS, applications, digitally signed firmware images, persistent data, and temporary data used for processing and system functions.	Steps to clear memory: 1. Secure Storage Erase – Areas temporary files and job data by overwriting information overwriting information one or three times. 2. Secure Disk Erase – Erases files when jobs finish processing by overwriting them one or three times. 3. Secure File Erase – Erases files when jobs finish processing by overwriting them one or three times.

Optional Mass Storage				
Does the device contain mass storage memory (Hard Disk Drive, Tape Backup)? ☒ Yes ☐ No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (HDD, Tape, etc.): Optional Formatter HDD 500 GB FIPS Encrypted HDD	Size: 500GB	User Modifiable: ☒ Yes ☐ No	Function: Stores customer data, OS, applications, digitally signed firmware images, persistent data, and temporary data used for processing and system functions.	Steps to clear memory: 1. Erase and Unlock Encrypted Disk – This changes the Encryption keys rendering all data unreadable. 2. Secure Storage Erase – Areas temporary files and job data by overwriting information overwriting information one or three times. 3. Secure Disk Erase – Erases files when jobs finish processing by overwriting them one or three times. 4. Secure File Erase – Erases files when jobs finish processing by overwriting them one or three times.

USB
Does the item accept USB input and if so, for what purpose (i.e. Print Jobs, device firmware updates, scan upload)? ☒ Yes ☐ No If Yes please describe below
Print jobs, HP digitally signed firmware upgrades, 3rd party application loading. USB ports can be disabled.
Can any data other than scan upload be sent to the USB device)? ☒ Yes ☐ No If Yes please describe below
Diagnostic service logs can be uploaded. Print files can be printed via a USB thumb drive.

RF/RFID	
Does the item use RF or RFID for receive or transmit of any data including remote diagnostics. (e.g. Cellular phone, Bluetooth) ☐ Yes ☒ No If Yes please describe below	
Purpose:	
Frequency:	Bandwidth:
Modulation:	Effective Radiate Power (ERP):
Specifications:	

Other Transmission Capabilities

Figure A-3 Certificate of Volatility (E82540/50/60; 3 of 3)

Does the device employ any other methods of non-wired access to transmit or receive any data whatsoever (e.g. anything other than standard hard wired TCP/IP, direct USB, or parallel connections)? ☒ Yes ☐ No If Yes please describe below:	
Purpose: WiFi Direct Print	
Frequency: 2.4 GHz, 5GHz	Bandwidth: 2401 - 2495 MHz; depending on selected channel in 2.4GHz band. 5180 - 5825 MHz; depending on selected channel in 5GHz band.
Modulation:	Effective Radiate Power (ERP):
Specifications: 802.11 b/g/n	

Other Transmission Capabilities	
Does the device employ any other methods of non-wired access to transmit or receive any data whatsoever (e.g. anything other than standard hard wired TCP/IP, direct USB, or parallel connections)? ☒ Yes ☐ No If Yes please describe below:	
Purpose: Device Beaconing, Secure Print Apps	
Frequency: 2.4 GHz	Bandwidth: 2400-2483.5 MHz; depending on selected channel.
Modulation:	Effective Radiate Power (ERP):
Specifications: BTLE4.0 compliant	

Other Capabilities
Does the device employ any other method of communications such as a Modem to transmit or receive any data whatsoever? ☐ Yes ☒ No If Yes please describe below:
Purpose:
Specifications:

Author Information			
Name	Title	Email	Business Unit
John Mast	Technical Marketing Engineer	Technical.Marketing@hp.com	IPG
Robert Mejia	System Engineer	Technical.Marketing@hp.com	IPG
Date Prepared: 9/14/2018			

Glossary of terms

802.11
802.11 is a set of standards for wireless local area network (WLAN) communication, developed by the IEEE LAN/MAN Standards Committee (IEEE 802).

802.11b/g/n
802.11b/g/n can share the same hardware and use the 2.4 GHz band. 802.11b supports bandwidth up to 11 Mbps, 802.11n supports bandwidth up to 150 Mbps. 802.11b/g/n devices might occasionally suffer interferences from microwave ovens, cordless telephones, and Bluetooth devices.

AC
An electric current that reverses its direction many times a second at regular intervals. For example, the 110V line current found in a typical US electrical wall receptacle.

AC Control Module (PageWide)
The AC Control Module controls the heating elements in the airflow assembly. Function include: voltage monitoring (ensuring correct operation in a low-quality-power environment), isolation (low voltage heater control signals are isolated from the high voltage AC power for safety), AC switching (power is switched on/off to the heater), and heating element configuration (heating element configuration is changed between series and parallel for temperature predictability).

ADF
An Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) is a device that automatically feeds an original sheet (or multiple sheets) of paper into the image scanner. The document feeder is a component of the integrated scanner assembly (ADF and image scanner).

Airflow System (PageWide)
The airflow system conditions the printed pages to avoid page curling due to the ink on the page. The airflow system functionally consists of a fan and heating elements. The pressurized air is blown on the page through the nozzles that are placed on the paper path of the airflow system between print and eject zone.

BOOTP
Bootstrap Protocol. A network protocol used by a network client to obtain its IP address automatically. This is usually done in the bootstrap process of computers or operating systems running on them. The BOOTP servers assigns an IP address from a pool of addresses to each client. BOOTP enables “diskless workstation” computers to obtain an IP address prior to loading any advanced operating system.

CCD
A Charged Coupled Device (CCD) is the scanner module which enables a scan job. A CCD locking mechanism is used to hold the CCD module to prevent any damage when the printer is moved.

CIS
A Contact Image Sensor (CIS) scanner captures an image using the printer's optical path. Red, green, and blue LEDs sequentially illuminate a small strip of the document (often called a raster line), and the optical system captures each color in a single row of Charged Coupled Device (CCD) sensors that cover the entire page width.

Collation
Collation is a process of printing a multiple-copy job in sets. When collation is selected, the device prints an entire set before printing additional copies.

Control Panel
The control panel is a flat, typically vertical panel or screen where the user can control and/or monitor the printer. The control panel is found on the front of the printer.

Coverage
Coverage is the printing term used for a toner usage measurement on printing. For example, 5% coverage means that an A4 sided paper has about 5% image or text on it. If the paper or original has complicated images or a large amount of text, the coverage will be higher and at the same time, a toner usage will be as much as the coverage.

DC
An electric current flowing in one direction only. Typically a low voltage load current supplied to an electrical assembly.

DCC
The DC controller (DCC) controls the operation of the printer sub-systems and electrical components. the DCC sends out various signals to operate motors, solenoids, and other printer components based on the print command and image data that the host computer sends the formatter.

Default
The value or setting that is in effect when a printer is unboxed, reset, or initialized.

DHCP
Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a client-server networking protocol. A DHCP server provides configuration parameters specific to the DHCP client host requesting, generally, information required by the client host to participate on an IP network. The DHCP also provides a mechanism for allocation of IP addresses to client hosts.

Digital Send Software
Digital send software allows a mufti-function printer (MFP) to scan and send information quickly and securely to email, network folders, other printers, and fax services.

DIMM
A Dual Inline Memory Module (DIMM) is a small circuit board that holds memory. The DIMM stores all data within the printer, such as printing data and received fax data.

DPI
Dots Per Inch (DPI) is a measurement of resolution that is used for scanning and printing. Generally, higher DPI results in a higher resolution (more visible detail in the image and a larger file size).

Duplex
A mechanism that automatically turns over a sheet of paper so that the printer can print (or scan) on both sides of the paper. A printer equipped with a duplex unit can print on both sides of the paper during one print cycle.

Duty Cycle
Duty cycle is the page quantity which does not affect printer performance for a month. Generally, the printer has the lifespan limitation such as pages per year. The lifespan means the average capacity of print-outs, usually within the warranty period. For example, if the duty cycle is 48,000 pages per month the printer limit is 2,400 pages a day (assuming 20 working days/month).

Dynamic Security
Dynamic Security is a toner cartridge design and process for authenticating genuine HP supplies. HP printers use toner cartridges that have security chips or electronic circuitry. Cartridges using a non-HP chip or modified or non-HP circuitry might not work (now or in the future).

e-Duplex
Single-pass electronic duplex (e-Duplex) printer use two separate scan modules to scan the front-side and back-side of an e-duplex copy job page in a single pass through the document feeder.

EMC
EMC is a measure of a device's ability to operate as intended in its shared operating environment while, at the same time, not affecting the ability of other equipment within the same environment to operate as intended.

EMI
EMI is the electromagnetic energy which affects the functioning of an electronic device. Electronic devices (like printers) are a source of EMI. Because it is rare for electronics to operate in isolation, products are generally engineered to function in the presence of some amount of EMI.

eMMC
An embedded Multi-Media Card is a compact memory device consisting of NAND flash memory and a simple storage controller.

Emulation
Emulation is a technique of one machine obtaining the same results as another. An emulator duplicates the functions of one system with a different system, so that the second system behaves like the first system. Emulation focuses on exact reproduction of external behavior. This is different from simulation, which concerns an abstract model of the system being simulated, often considering its internal state.

EPS
Encapsulated PostScript (EPS) is a PostScript (PS) code file which is used for storing font and vector graphic image information.

ESD
An electrostatic discharge (ESD) is a sudden flow of electricity between two electrically charged objects caused by contact, an electrical short, or dielectric breakdown. Discharge of built up static electricity.

Ethernet
Ethernet is a frame-based computer networking technology for local area networks (LANs). It defines wiring and signaling for the physical layer, and frame formats and protocols for the media access control (MAC)/data link layer of the OSI model. Ethernet is mostly standardized as IEEE 802.3. Ethernet has become the most widespread LAN technology in use during the 1990s to present.

Ferrite
A ferrite are used to reduce the amount of radio frequency noise (or interference) in a wire or cable. A ferrite enables proper EMC/EMI performance for regulatory purposes.

FFC
Flat Flexible Cables (FFCs) are designed for Printed Circuit Assembly (PCA) to PCA connections (for example, connecting a fax PCA to the formatter).

FIH
A Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) is a port that enables HP multifunction printers (MFPs) to use third-party devices to extend the capabilities of the MFP.

Firmware
The formatter stores the printer firmware. A remote firmware upgrade process is used to overwrite and upgrade the firmware.

Flash memory
Flash memory is non-volatile, meaning it retains stored data even when the power is turned off.

Flow integrated scanner assembly
A printer scanner assembly that includes a slide-out external physical keyboard.

Formatter (LaserJet)
The formatter controls printer functions like receiving and processes print data, developing and coordinating data placement and timing with the DC controller PCA, storing font and customer configuration information, communicating with the host computer, and monitoring control panel functions and relaying printer status information through the control panel.

FTP
FTP stands for File Transfer Protocol. FTP is a protocol designed for transferring files over the Internet. Files stored on an FTP server can be accessed using an FTP client, such as a web browser, FTP software program, or a command line interface.

Fuser Unit
The fuser unit is part of a laser printer that adheres the toner onto the printed page. It consists of a heat roller and a pressure roller. After toner is transferred onto the paper, the fuser unit applies heat and pressure to make sure that the toner stays on the paper permanently (which is why paper is warm when it comes out of a laser printer).

Gateway
A connection between computer networks, or between a computer network and a telephone line. A gateway is used to connect two different computer networks, especially a connection to the Internet.

Grayscale
Shades of gray that represent light and dark portions of a color image printed in monochrome. Colors are represented by a range of gray shades from white to black.

Halftone
Halftone is a way of reproducing a photograph or other image in which the various tones of gray or color are produced by variously sized dots of ink or toner. Halftone simulates grayscale by varying the number of dots. Highly colored areas consist of a large number of dots, while lighter areas consist of a smaller number of dots.

HDD
A Hard-Disk Drive (HDD) (commonly referred to as a hard drive or hard disk) is a non-volatile storage device which stores digitally-encoded data on rapidly rotating platters with magnetic surfaces.

IEEE
The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) is an international non-profit, professional organization for the advancement of technology related to electricity.

Image scanner
The image scanner (or Sub Scanner Assembly) contains the components to digitally scan an original source document. The image scanner is a component of the integrated scanner assembly (ADF and image scanner).

IP address
An Internet Protocol (IP) address is a unique number that a device uses in order to identify and communicate with other devices on a network utilizing the Internet Protocol standard.

IPM
The Images Per Minute (IPM) is a method of measuring the speed of a printer. An IPM rate indicates the number of single-sided sheets a printer can complete in one minute.

IPP
The Internet Printing Protocol (IPP) defines a standard protocol for printing and managing print jobs, media size, resolution, etc. IPP can be used locally, or over the internet to reach hundreds of printers. IPP also supports access control, authentication, and encryption, making it a capable and secure printing solution.

ISA
The Integrated Scanner Assembly (ISA) includes the document feeder and image scanner.

ISO
The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) is an international standard-setting body composed of representatives from national standards bodies. In produces world-wide industrial and commercial standards.

JBIG
Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group (JBIG) is an image compression standard with no loss of accuracy or quality. It was designed for compression of binary images, particularly for faxes, but can also be used for other images.

JPEG
Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG) is a commonly used standard method of loss compression for photographic images. It is the format used for storing and transmitting photographs on the World Wide Web.

LDAP
The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a networking protocol for querying and modifying directory services running over TCP/IP.

LED
A Light-Emitting Diode (LED) is a semiconductor device that can indicate the status of a printer (formatter LEDs) or a component in a contact image sensor (CIS) scanner that helps capture an image.

LEDM
Low end data model (LEDM) provides one consistent data representation method and defines the dynamic and capabilities tickets shared between clients and devices, as well as the access protocol, event, security, and discovery methods.

LPDC
Late point differentiation configuration (LPDC) allows the channel partner to configure the speed to the printer depending on the customer's order. LPDC configuration is stored on the Trusted Platform Module (TPM).

LVPS - SMPS
Low Voltage Power Supplies (LVPS) and Switching Mode Power Supplies (SMPS) supply direct current (DC) voltages to various printer components and assemblies.

MAC address
Media Access Control (MAC) address is a unique identifier associated with a network adapter. MAC address is a unique 48–bit identifier usually written as 12 hexadecimal characters grouped in pairs (for example, 00–00–0c-34–11–4e). This address is usually hard-coded into a Network Interface Card (NIC) by the manufacturer, and used as an aid for routers trying to locate machines on a large network.

MEt
HP Memory Enhancement technology (MEt) effectively doubles the standard memory through a variety of font- and data-compression methods. MEt is available only in Printer Command Language (PCL) mode; it is not functional when printing in PostScript (PS) mode.

MFP
A Multi Function Printer (MFP) is a printer that incorporates multiple functionality in a single physical body. For example, an MFP printer can scan, digitally send, fax, copy, and print.

MHV
Miniature High Voltage (MHV) is designed for high voltage applications of BNC connectors (DC voltage between 500 V and 5 kV).

Modem
A device that modulates a carrier signal to encode digital information, and also demodulates such a carrier signal to decode transmitted information.

MPCA (PageWide)
The MPCA integrates both formatter (LaserJet) and engine control electronics (DC controller) into a single assembly. The Main PCA (MPCA) controls printer functions like receiving and processes print data, developing and coordinating data placement, storing font and customer configuration information, communicating with the host computer, and monitoring control panel functions and relaying printer status information through the control panel.

NAND
NAND is not an acronym (the term is short for **NOT AND** a Boolean operator and logic gate). NAND (flash) memory is non-volatile, meaning it retains stored data even when the power is turned off.

NVRAM
Nonvolatile random access memory (NVRAM) is used to store I/O and information about the print environment configuration (stored data even when the power is turned off).

OPC
Organic Photo Conductor (OPC) is a mechanism that makes a virtual image for print using a laser beam emitted from a laser printer. It is usually green or rust colored and has a cylinder shape. An imaging unit containing a drum slowly wears the drum surface during its usage in the printer, and it should be replaced appropriately due to wear from contact with the cartridge development brush, cleaning mechanism, and paper.

Originals
The first example of something, such as a document, photograph, or text which is copied, reproduced, or translated to produce additional copies. The original itself is not copied or derived from something else.

PCA
Printed Circuit Assembly (PCA). Once the printed circuit board (PCB) is complete, electronic components must be assembled to form a functional printed circuit assembly or PCA.

PCL
Printer Command Language (PCL) is a Page Description Language (PDL) developed by HP as a printer protocol. PCL has become an industry standard. Originally developed for early Inkjet printers, PCL has been released in varying levels for thermal, dot matrix printers and laser printers.

PDF
Portable Document Format (PDF) is a proprietary file format developed by Adobe Systems. A PDF represents two dimension documents in a device independent and resolution independent format.

PJL
Printer job language (PJL) is an integral part of printer configuration, in addition to the standard PCL and PostScript (PS). With standard cabling, the printer can use PJL to perform a variety of functions like dynamic I/O switching, context-sensitive switching, and isolation of print environment settings from one print job to the next.

PML
Printer management language (PML) allows remote configuration of the printer and status read-back from the printer through the I/O ports.

PostScript (PS)
PostScript (PS) is a Page Description Language (PDL) and programming language used primarily in electronic and desktop publishing. PostScript is run in an interpreter to generate an image.

PPM
Pages Per Minute (PPM) is a method of measurement for determining how fast a printer works, meaning the number of pages a printer can produce in one minute.

Print Media
Media like paper, envelopes, labels, and transparencies which can be used in a printer, scanner, fax, or copier.

Printer Driver
A program used to send commands and transfer data from the computer to the printer.

Printhead (PageWide)
The printhead converts the digital firing instructions from the printer electronics into properly formed and timed microscopic drops of the four ink colors.

Printhead Wiper (PageWide)
The printhead wiper system keeps the printhead nozzles firing correctly throughout the life of the printer as it performs the wiping and capping functions. The wiping function cleans the nozzles of ink residue and particulates. The capping function keeps the nozzles moist during storage and when the printer is idle.

Protocol
A convention or standard that controls or enables the connection, communication, and data transfer between two computing endpoints.

RAM
Random Access Memory (RAM) is the printer memory device where the data in current use is kept so it can be quickly retrieved by the device's processor. This memory is an important factor in avoiding errors and printing documents properly. Printer memory is used to store and process print jobs as they are sent to the printer from a computer. After printing, the job is cleared from the memory to make room for more print jobs. Printer memory is directly linked to two print characteristics: speed and print quality. More memory allows you to print faster and print larger, high-quality graphics.

Resolution
The sharpness of an image, measured in Dots Per Inch (DPI). The higher the DPI, the greater the resolution.

SCB
The Scanner Control Board (SCB) controls the functions of the image scanner components in the Sub Scanner Assembly (SSA).

Service fluid and aerosol management systems (PageWide)
There are two types of service fluid, shipping fluid and ink. The service fluid management system is contained entirely within the duplex module. Service fluid is discharged as droplets from the printhead, and then collected in a container inside the duplex module. Some of the droplets are called aerosol because they are lighter than air. Aerosol can float inside the printer and collect on the lens of optical sensors, producing false failures. The aerosol management system transports the aerosol and collects it in a safe place. Aerosol management consists of an aerosol fan, mounted on the rear wall of the air flow assembly, which creates air flow that pulls the aerosol through the holes in the platen and into the aerosol filter inside the duplex module.

SFP
A single-function printer only processes print jobs sent from a host computer or from an USB port on the printer.

SMB
Server Message Block (SMB) is a network protocol mainly applied to share files, printers, serial ports, and miscellaneous communications between nodes on a network. SMB also provides an authenticated inter-process communication mechanism.

SMTP
Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) is the standard for email transmissions across the internet. SMTP is a relatively simple, text-based protocol, where one or more recipient of a message are specified and the message text is transferred. It is a client server protocol where the client transmits an email message to the server.

SODIMM
Small outline dual in-line memory module (SODIMM) is a thin profile memory storage device (a smaller alternative to a standard DIMM device).

SSA
The Sub-Scanner Assembly is the image scanner component of the Integrated Scanner Assembly (ISA; which includes the document feeder and the image scanner).

Subnet Mask
The subnet mask is used in conjunction with the network address to determine which part of the address is the network address and which part is the host address.

TCP/IP
The Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) and the Internet Protocol (IP) are the set of communications protocols that implement the protocol stack on which the internet and most commercial networks run.

TIFF
Tagged Image File Format (TIFF) is a variable-resolution bit mapped image format. TIFF describes image data that typically come from scanners. TIFF images use tags, keywords defining the characteristics of the image that is included in the file. This flexible and platform-independent format can be used for pictures that have been made by various image processing applications.

Toner Cartridge
A bottle or container that holds toner, which is used in a machine like a printer. Toner is a powder used in laser printers and photocopiers. The toner forms the text and images on printed paper. Toner can be fused by a combination of heat/pressure from the fuser, causing it to bind the fibers in the paper.

TPM
The HP Trusted Platform Module (TPM) is a security accessory for printers. The TPM strengthens protection of encrypted credentials and data stored on your printer. Certificate private keys are both generated by and protected by the TPM. Once installed, the printer and the TPM are sealed and the printer owns the TPM. The TPM may not be moved to another device without losing its ownership from the original printer. Installing a TPM accessory might necessitate a firmware upgrade. The TPM prevents the printer from starting if the TPM is missing. If the TPM is removed from the printer, a control-panel error message appears indicating that the TPM is missing.

TWAIN
An industry standard for scanners and software. By using a TWAIN compliant scanner with TWAIN-compliant software, a scan can be initiated from the program. TWAIN is an image capture API for Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh operating systems.

URL
Uniform Resource Locator (URL) is the global address of documents and resources on the internet. The first part of the address indicates what protocol to use. The second part specifies the IP address or the domain name where the resource is located.

USB
Universal Serial Bus (USB) is a standard that was developed by the USB Implementers Forum, Inc., to connect computers and peripherals. Unlike the parallel port, USB is designed to concurrently connect a single computer USB port to multiple peripherals.

Walk-up USB
Some printers support direct printing from a USB flash drive (the walk-up USB port is usually near the control panel).

Watermark
A watermark is a recognizable image or pattern in paper that appears lighter when viewed by transmitted light. Watermarks were first introduced in Bologna, Italy in 1282. Watermarks have been used by paper makers to identify their product, and also on postage stamps, currency, and other government documents to discourage counterfeiting.

XPS
XML Paper Specification (XPS) is a specification for a Page Description Language (PDL) and a new document format developed by Microsoft. This has benefits for portable document and electronic documents. It is an XML-based specification based on a new print path and vector-based, device-independent document format.

ZIF Connector
Zero insertion force (ZIF) connectors use a mechanical locking method to secure Flat Flexible Cables (FFCs) to a Printed Circuit Assembly (PCA).

Index

Symbols/Numerics

2000-sheet HCI
  parts and diagrams - cassette 964
  parts and diagrams - drive 948
  parts and diagrams - frame 966
  parts and diagrams - main 946
  parts and diagrams - pickup 972
3000-sheet sHCI (department; E82540/50/60 and E87640/50/60 only)
  parts and diagrams - frame 1004
  parts and diagrams - main 1 975
  parts and diagrams - main 3 984
  parts and diagrams - main 5 998
  parts and diagrams - main 6 1000
  parts and diagrams - pickup cover unit 1002

A

accelerator board
  remove the accelerator board 269
accelerator board (GX ADF only) 269
accessories
  dimensions 1, 8, 15
  weight 1, 8, 15
acoustic specifications 1, 8, 16
ACR frame assembly
  parts and diagrams 491
ACR unit
  electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1223
ADF
  parts and diagrams - exterior LX 745
  parts and diagrams - lower image scanner 893
  parts and diagrams - LX models 708, 745, 758
  parts and diagrams - main frame assembly LX 758
  parts and diagrams - pickup LX 745
ADF pickup roller 803
ADF reverse roller 820
ADF sGX
  PCA-ADF sGX (dn models only) 869
after-service checklist 151, 155, 156, 1273, 1353, 1356, 2559, 2604, 2607
alienation motor 538
APS sensor 896
authorized service providers, parts 153, 1358, 2609

B

backup error
  32.WX.YZ error 1007, 1008
  reset error 1007, 1008
  restore error 1007, 1008
booklet blade
  parts and diagrams 1424
booklet blade motor
  parts and diagrams 1424
booklet c-fold blade
  parts and diagrams 1418
booklet c-fold motor
  parts and diagrams 1420
booklet diverter
  parts and diagrams 1418
booklet diverter motor
  parts and diagrams 1420
Booklet diverter unit 1344, 2478
booklet diverter unit
  parts and diagrams 1416
Booklet end fence unit 1332, 2273
booklet end fence unit
  parts and diagrams 1428
booklet entrance
  parts and diagrams 1410
Booklet entrance unit 1329, 2242
booklet entrance unit
  parts and diagrams 1408
booklet entrance-presser motor
  parts and diagrams 1410
booklet exit
  parts and diagrams 1418
Booklet exit unit 1346, 2502
booklet exit unit
  parts and diagrams 1416
booklet finisher
  booklet blade 2395
  booklet blade home sensor 2414
  booklet blade motor 2432
  booklet c-fold blade 2441
  booklet c-fold blade home sensor 2456
  booklet c-fold blade motor 2471
  booklet diverter 2479
  booklet diverter home sensor 2496
  booklet diverter motor 2499
  booklet end fence 2274
  booklet end fence home sensor 2290
  booklet end fence motor 2286
  booklet entrance motor 2243
  booklet entrance sensor 2246
  booklet exit sensor 2503
  booklet fold motor 2436
  booklet front cover 1523
  booklet maker 2232
  booklet maker PCA 2531
  booklet output tray 2522

booklet paddle home sensor 2264
booklet paddle motor 2261
booklet presser 2296
booklet presser home sensor 2311
booklet presser motor 2315
booklet stapler unit 2376
booklet tamper home sensor 2337
booklet tamper motor 2356
booklet tamper unit 2319
bridge door sensor 1451
bridge entrance sensor 1433
bridge exit sensor 1446
bridge motor 1440
buffer motor 2218
buffer solenoid 2224
caster cover 1491
dummy feed guide 1533
ejector assembly 1359
ejector motor 1359
ejector unit 1943
ejector1 1994
ejector1 motor sensor 1968
ejector2 home sensor 2021
ejector2 motor 2072
ejector2 motor sensor 2046
end fence home 1359
end fence home sensor 1670
end fence motor 1695
entrance motor 1359
entrance sensor 1359
exir roller 1359
exit motor 1623
exit sensor 1359
feed entrance motor 1527
front cover 1475
front door 1464
front lower cover 1483
front paper holding sensor 2176
front paper support 1359
front tamper home sensor 1731
front tamper motor 1757
front tamper unit 1706
left lower cover 1495
left upper cover 1508
main exit cam motor 1628
main exit sensor 1610
main output tray lower limit sensor 2130
main output tray motor 2150
main output tray motor sensor 2144
main output tray top of stack sensor 2099
main output tray top of stack switch 2115
main paddle 1359
main PCA 2526
manual staple sensor 1921
motor 1359
paddle 1637
paddle home sensor 1651
paddle motor 1660
paper holding home sensor 2160
paper holding Motor 2202
paper holding solenoid 1359
paper support 1359
paper support home sensor 1359
punch waste full 1359
rear cover 1470
rear paper holding sensor 2189
rear paper support 1359
rear tamper home sensor 1809
rear tamper motor 1835
rear tamper unit 1784
right upper cover 1457
sensor 1359
stacker lower limit switch 1359
stacker motor 1359
stapler 1359
stapler front sensor 1873
stapler mid-front sensor 1885
stapler mid-rear sensor 1897
stapler position motor 1930
stapler position sensor 1359
stapler rear sensor 1909
stapler unit 1862
switch 1359
top cover 1460
top exit sensor 1582
top jam cover assembly 1540
top lower feed assembly 1569
top output tray 1596
top output tray paper full sensor 1598
tray diverter 1550
tray diverter home sensor 1558
booklet finisher diagrams 1359, 1406
booklet finisher parts 1359, 1406
booklet finisher remove and replace 1359
booklet finisher specification 1276
booklet finisher view 1274
booklet fold motor
parts and diagrams 1420
booklet fold roller
parts and diagrams 1422
Booklet fold unit 1340, 2394
booklet fold unit
parts and diagrams 1416
Booklet maker 2231
booklet maker
parts and diagrams 1406
booklet maker baset
parts and diagrams 1430
Booklet output tray unit 1347, 2521
Booklet paddle unit 1330, 2260
booklet paddle unit
parts and diagrams 1426
Booklet presser unit 1334, 2295
booklet presser unit
parts and diagrams 1408
Booklet stapler unit 1338
booklet stapler unit
parts and diagrams 1412
Booklet tamper unit 1336, 2318
booklet tamper unit
parts and diagrams 1414
bookletr finisher
exit motor 1359
bottom high-capacity input tray (HCI) unit
bottom high-capacity input tray feed motor 950
bottom high-capacity input tray lift-up motor 957
bottom high-capacity input tray pickup motor 954
bottom high-capacity input tray feed motor 950
bottom high-capacity input tray lift-up motor 957
bottom high-capacity input tray pickup motor 954

bridge entrance path sensor (SSBM)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1270
bridge motor, bridge middle sensor, and bridge guide sensor (SSBM)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1270
Bridge unit 1368, 1432
bridge unit 336
parts and diagrams 1368, 1370
remove the bridge unit 336
buffer diverter
parts and diagrams 1404
Buffer unit 1325, 2217
buffer unit
parts and diagrams 1402

C

Calibrate/Cleaning menu, control panel 1007, 1034, 1057, 1121
card reader 307
cartridge
dynamic security 63
cassette 1, 45, 50
cassette lift drive 1, 75
Cassettes Tray 2/3
parts and diagrams 425
caution vii
caution for moving the scanner 1, 83, 92
CCDM PCA 1, 110, 137
certificate of volatility 3165
CoV E87640/50/60 3165
Channel partners
WISE 151
Channel partners support
HP Channel Services Network (CSN) 151
checklists
after-service 151, 155, 156, 1273, 1353, 1356, 2559, 2604, 2607
preservice 151, 155, 156, 1273, 1353, 1356, 2559, 2604, 2607
cleaning page 1007, 1034, 1057, 1121
cleaning the paper dust stick 151, 158
cleaning the scan glass 151, 158
clear paper jams 1273, 2543, 2544, 3148
component test
special mode test 1007, 1014, 1015, 1027, 1033
components
diagnostic tests 1007, 1014, 1015, 1027, 1033
scanning system 1, 83, 86
connection, electrical-mechanical diagrams 1206
connector error
65.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
control panel 293
Backup/Restore menu 1007, 1034, 1057, 1121
Calibrate/Cleaning menu 1007, 1034, 1057, 1121
Copy menu (MFP only) 1007, 1034, 1057, 1100
CPMD 1007
Fax menu (fax models only) 1007, 1034, 1057, 1113
Print menu 1007, 1034, 1057, 1116
remove the control panel 293
remove the control panel bezel 293
Reports menu 1007, 1034, 1057
Scan menu (MFP only) 1007, 1034, 1057, 1104
Settings menu 1007, 1034, 1057, 1058
Supplies menu 1007, 1034, 1057, 1116
Trays menu 1007, 1034, 1057, 1117
troubleshooting menu 1007, 1034, 1057, 1117
USB Firmware Upgrade menu 1007, 1034, 1057, 1121, 1122
control panel diagnostic flowcharts 1007, 1014, 1015, 1020, 1021
control panel menus 1007, 1034, 1057
control panel messages 1008
conventions used vii
Copy menu (MFP only), control panel 1007, 1034, 1057, 1100
copy specifications 1, 8, 23
CoV
certificate of volatility 3165
cover
parts and diagrams 1362
cover open sensor, cassette installation sensor, feed motor, pickup/lift-1 and lift-2 motors, and shift motor (DCF/HCI)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1245
Covers 1456, 2628
parts and diagrams 605
CPMD 1008
CPMP
WISE 1010
CRUM connector 361
CST lock diagram 1210
curl pawl motor, fold motor, divert home sensor, and guide home sensor (SSBM)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1257
current settings pages 1007, 1034

D

DC controller communication error
55.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
DC controller firmware error
70.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
DCF 1, 138
DCF frame
parts and diagrams - cassette 932
DCF rear frame
parts and diagrams 937
DCF second pickup
parts and diagrams - drive 944
decoding
message 1007
defeating
interlocks 1007, 1014, 1015, 1027, 1030, 1031
definitions and terms
glossary 3169
determine problem source 1007, 1014, 1015
developer fan 331
developer unit 1, 58, 59, 60, 186

diagnostics
adjustment 1007, 1129, 1137, 1166
component 1007, 1014, 1015, 1027, 1033
engine 1007, 1014, 1015, 1027, 1030, 1129, 1137
fax 1007, 1129, 1137, 1157
image management 1007, 1129, 1137, 1172
LED 1007, 1014, 1015, 1027, 1028
print test patterns 1007, 1129, 1137, 1173
scanner 1007, 1129, 1137, 1162
diagram
fuser 1206
HVPS/LVPS/FDB 1212
laser scanner assembly 1208
OPC 1210
scanner 1207
side/MP/feed/registration/pickup 1208
diagram, electrical-mechanical relationships
ACR unit 1223
bridge entrance path sensor (SSBM) 1270
bridge motor, bridge middle sensor, and bridge guide sensor (SSBM) 1270
cover open sensor, cassette installation sensor, feed motor, pickup/lift-1 and lift-2 motors, and shift motor (DCF/HCI) 1245
curl pawl motor, fold motor, divert home sensor, and guide home sensor (SSBM) 1257
entrance motors A/B, end fence motor, buffer motor and sensor, and diverter close sensor (SSBM) 1255
exit cam home sensor, main paddle home sensor, paddle motor, and exit motor (SSBM) 1266
exit unit 1223
feed drive 1226
feed entrance sensor (SSBM) 1258
front unit 1236
front/rear home sensors and tray open sensor (DCF/HCI) 1252
front/rear tamper motors, front/rear tamper home sensors, and end-fence home sensor (SSBM) 1267
fuser exit drive 1225
HCI PCA and HCI sup PCA (HCI) 1244
home-1/2 sensors, end sensor, and empty sensor (DCF/HCI) 1249
knife motor, stopper home sensor, and stopper solenoid and motor (SSBM) 1263
level-1/2 front/rear sensors, solenoid home sensor, and solenoid (DCF/HCI) 1248
limit switch, paper limit-1 sensor, prefeed sensor, and paper empty-1 sensor (DCF/HCI) 1250
limit switch, prefeed sensor, feed sensor, main limit and empty sensors (DCF/HCI) 1247
main drive 1213
main PCAs (SSBM) 1253
MP unit 1228
operational panel button PCA and entrance path sensor (SSBM) 1265
paper detection sensor (SSBM) 1254
paper empty , path, limit-1, and path sensors (DCF/HCI) 1241
paper empty and limit-2 sensors (DCF/HCI) 1240
paper size sensors (DCF/HCI) 1242
pick/lift-1 motor, lift-2 motor, and feed motor (DCF/HCI) 1250
pickup drive 1219, 1227
pickup lift motors, feed motor, and cover open sensor (DCF/HCI) 1238
pickup unit 1221
press home sensor, tamper home sensor, paper detect sensor, tamper motor, press motor, and feed motor (SSBM) 1260
registration drive 1226
registration unit 1221
right door guide 1232
right door output takeaway 1234
side unit 1230
T1 drive 1215
top door sensor, fold motor, and knife home position sensor (SSBM) 1264
top-beam out sensor, stack motor, and SKU motor (SSBM) 1256
top-exit path and compile-exit path sensors (SSBM) 1262
tray upper front/rear sensors, SCU home detect sensor, and stack beam in/out sensors (SSBM) 1269
upper/lower paper low sensors (DCF/HCI) 1251
WTB drive 1217
Diagrams
2000-sheet HCI cassette 964
2000-sheet HCI drive 948
2000-sheet HCI frame 966
2000-sheet HCI main 946
2000-sheet HCI pickup 972
3000-sheet sHCI (department; E82540/50/60 and E87640/50/60 only) frame 1004
3000-sheet sHCI (department; E82540/50/60 and E87640/50/60 only) main 1 975
3000-sheet sHCI (department; E82540/50/60 and E87640/50/60 only) main 3 984
3000-sheet sHCI (department; E82540/50/60 and E87640/50/60 only) main 5 998
3000-sheet sHCI (department; E82540/50/60 and E87640/50/60 only) main 6 1000
3000-sheet sHCI (department; E82540/50/60 and

E87640/50/60 only) pickup cover unit 1002
ACR frame assembly 491
ADF (LX models) 708
ADF exterior and ADF pickup(LX models) 745
ADF lower image scanner 893
ADF main frame assembly (LX models) 758
booklet blade 1424
booklet blade motor 1424
booklet c-fold blade 1418
booklet c-fold motor 1420
booklet diverter 1418
booklet diverter motor 1420
booklet diverter unit 1416
booklet end fence unit 1428
booklet entrance 1410
booklet entrance unit 1408
booklet entrance-presser motor 1410
booklet exit 1418
booklet exit unit 1416
booklet fold motor 1420
booklet fold roller 1422
booklet fold unit 1416
booklet maker 1406
booklet maker base 1430
booklet paddle unit 1426
booklet presser unit 1408
booklet stapler unit 1412
booklet tamper unit 1414
bridge unit 1368, 1370
buffer diverter 1404
buffer unit 1402
cassettes tray 2/3 425
cover 1362
covers 605
DCF frame 932
DCF rear frame 937
DCF second pickup 944
drive system 508
Dual cassette feeder DCF 907
ejector unit 1388, 1392
end fence unit 1384
entrance motor 1374
entrance unit 1372, 1374
exit assemblies 404
exit motor 1382
flow ADF (GX/sGX) 773
flow ADF image scanner (GX/sGX) 878
flow ADF main frame (GX/sGX) 817
flow ADF open cover (GX/sGX) 791
flow ADF stacker (GX/sGX) 807
flow ADF upper pickup (GX/sGX) 801
front door 1366
front jam cover 1404
hanress 1362
left lower cover 1398
left upper cover 1396
lower bridge 1370
main assembly 165
main exit CAM motor 1382
main exit unit 1380, 1384
main frame assembly 427
main frame pickup 599
main frame pickup 1 565
main frame pickup 2 565
main frame registration assembly 475
main output tray motor 1400
main output tray unit 1394
main PCA 1388
opt feed drive 942
paddle 1386
paddle motor 1386
paddle unit 1384
paper holding motor 1400
paper holding unit 1394
rear frame assembly 504
right door 641
right door exit 704
right door guide 702
right door takeaway 704
right upper cover 1366
stapler unit 1388
T2 transfer assembly 706
tamper unit 1388, 1390
toner reservoir (CMYK) 493
top cover 1366
top door 1366
top exit unit 1380
top lower cover 1382
top output tray unit 1380
tray 1 685
Tray diverter CAM 1378
tray diverter unit 1376
tray jam cover 1378
upper bridge 1368
diagrams
connection, electrical-mechanical 1206
covers-inner finisher 2614
ejector unit-inner finisher 2626
electrical-mechanical 1205
finisher system 1273, 2557
inner finisher 2611
paper support unit-inner finisher 2618
relationships, electrical-mechanical 1213
sensor, motor, and roller-inner finisher 2616
stapler unit-inner finisher 2624
tamper unit-inner finisher 2620, 2622
use parts lists and diagrams 153
digital sending error (firmware)
44.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
dimensions
accessories 1, 8, 15
printer 1, 8, 15
diverter unit 2576
document feeder
document feeder input tray (LX) 721
document feeder (LX) reverse roller 760
document feeder error
31.WX.YZ error 1007, 1008
document feeder pick roller (LX 747
document feeder pickup 803
document feeder skew (LX du models) 1007
documentation, printer error codes and messages
WISE 1010
Drive system
parts and diagrams 508
drive system 1, 75
cassette lift drive 1, 75
drive motors 1, 75, 78
engage toner collection unit (TCU) drive 82
engage transfer roller drive 81
exit drive 1, 75, 77

feed drive 1, 75
fuser release drive 1, 75, 77
main drive unit motor 1, 75, 80
pickup drive 1, 75
registration drive 1, 75, 76
toner reservoir drive 1, 75
toner supply drive 1, 75
toner supply/reservoir drive 81
drivers, supported 1, 8
dual cassette feeder 1, 138
dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor 916
dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA 934
dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor 920
dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units 923
dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door 909
dual cassette feeder (DCF) unit
dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor 916, 920
dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA 934
dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units 923
dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door 909
Dual cassette feeder DCF)
parts and diagrams - Dual cassette feeder DCF 907
duplex 1 sensor 368
duplexer error
69.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
dynamic security
toner cartridge 63

E

each unit functions
finisher system 1273, 1274, 2560
ejector home sensor 3159
ejector motor 3159
Ejector unit 1317, 1942, 2945
ejector unit 2592
parts and diagrams 1388, 1392
Ejector1 1967
ejector2 unit 2020
electrical parts layout
finisher system layout 1273, 1274, 2560
electrical specifications 1, 8, 16
electrical-mechanical
diagrams 1205
electrostatic discharge (ESD) 151, 153, 1273, 1353, 1356, 2559, 2604, 2607
Embedded Jetdirect error
80.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
end fence sensor 3157
End fence unit 1309, 1669, 3011
end fence unit 2588
parts and diagrams 1384
engine
diagnostics 1007, 1014, 1015, 1027, 1030
engine error (LaserJet)
46.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
63.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
engine error (PageWide)
61.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
entrance motor 3151
parts and diagrams 1374
entrance motors A/B, end fence motor, buffer motor and sensor, and diverter close sensor (SSBM)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1255
Entrance unit 1372, 1526, 2655
entrance unit 2575
parts and diagrams 1372, 1374
eraser PCA 1, 110, 133
error
fault 1007
ESD electrostatic discharge (ESD) 151, 153, 1273, 1353, 1356, 2559, 2604, 2607
event log 1007, 1034, 1038
clear using touchscreen control panel 1007, 1034, 1038
event log error (firmware)
42.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
exit 1 bin full sensor 377
Exit assemblies
parts and diagrams 404
exit cam home sensor, main paddle home sensor, paddle motor, and exit motor (SSBM)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1266
exit cover 620
exit drive 1, 75, 77
exit drive unit 531
exit gate solenoid/motors/sensor 406
exit motor
parts and diagrams 1382
exit sensor 3152
Exit unit 2672
exit unit 232, 2578
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1223
exit 1 bin full sensor 377
exit gate solenoid/motors/sensor 406
exploded parts views, use parts lists and diagrams 153

F

fan error
58.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
Fax menu (fax models only), control panel 1007, 1034, 1057, 1113
feed 2 sensor 679
feed drive 1, 75
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1226
feed drive unit or motor, Tray 1 545
feed entrance sensor, and guide home sensor (SSBM)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1258
feed roller
multipurpose 687
Tray 1 687
feeding system 1, 45
cassette 1, 45, 50
main components and functions 1, 45, 46
MP feeder assembly 1, 45, 52
overview 1, 45
pickup unit 1, 45, 51
registration unit 1, 45, 51

rollers 1, 45, 46
sensor, motor, and solenoid 1, 45, 46, 48
feeding system information 1, 45
FIH
HP Foreign interface harness (FIH) solution, install 305
finisher docking sensor 3150
finisher sectional view 1273, 1274, 2560
finisher system 1273, 1274, 1283, 2560, 2566
diagrams 1273, 2557
each unit functions 1273, 1274, 2560
electrical parts layout 1273, 1274, 2560
finisher sectional view 1273, 1274, 2560
paper path 1273, 1274, 2560
PCA connection information 1273, 1274, 2560
finisher system diagram 1283, 2566
finisher system electrical parts 1283, 2566
finisher system paper path 1283, 2566
finisher system PBA connection 1283, 2566
finisher system sectional view 1283, 2566
firmware communication error
49.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
firmware install error
99.WX.YZ error 1007, 1010
hard disk error 1007, 1010
remote firmware upgrade error 1007, 1010
flatbed scanner system
overview 1, 83, 84
flow ADF
contact image sensor (CIS) 825
contact image sensor (CIS) fan 856
document feeder PCA fan 844
document feeder white backing 224
front motor 850
input tray 809
jam access cover 793
rear motors 833
scan in lower assembly 861
ultrasonic sensor with PCA 782
Flow ADF (GX/sGX)
parts and diagrams 773
Flow ADF image scanner (GX/sGX)
parts and diagrams 878
Flow ADF main frame (GX/sGX)
parts and diagrams 817
Flow ADF open cover (GX/sGX)
parts and diagrams 791
flow ADF PCA 1, 110
flow ADF skew (LX du models) 1007
Flow ADF stacker (GX/sGX)
parts and diagrams 807
Flow ADF upper pickup (GX/sGX)
parts and diagrams 801
flow document feeder
document feeder whole unit 775
flow document feeder PCA 135
Formatter 288
formatter
locating 1, 2, 3
Formatter (du models) 284
formatter hard disk drive 281
remove the hard disk drive 281
formatter hard disk drive (du models) 278
remove the hard disk drive (du models) 278
formatter lights 1007, 1014, 1015, 1027, 1028, 1029
front cover 607
open sensor 429
front cover open sensor 429
front cover switch 3163
front door
parts and diagrams 1366
front jam cover
parts and diagrams 1404
front power cover 615
front power switch 315
Front tamper 1705, 2806
front tamper motor 3155
front tamper sensor 3155
front top inner cover 618
front unit
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1236
front view 2560
front/rear home sensors and tray open sensor (DCF/HCI)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1252
front/rear tamper motors, front/rear tamper home sensors, and end-fence home sensor (SSBM)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1267
fuser diagram 1206
fuser drive assembly 1, 110, 129
fuser drive board 244
fuser error
41.WX.YZ error 1007, 1008
laser scanner error 1007, 1008
paper path error 1007, 1008
fuser error (LaserJet)
50.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
fuser exit drive
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1225
fuser fan 252
fuser out sensor 673
fuser PCA 1, 110, 134
fuser release drive 1, 75, 77
fuser unit 1, 54, 241
fuser unit drive 1, 54, 55
overview 1, 54
temperature control 1, 54, 55
fuser unit drive 1, 54, 55
fuser unit temperature control 1, 54, 55
fuser/exit drive unit 531

G

General Settings menu, control panel 1007, 1034, 1057, 1058
general specifications 1, 8, 16
glossary
terms and definitions 3169

H

hanress
parts and diagrams 1362
hard disk drive (HDD) 258
hard disk partition error
98.WX.YZ error 1007, 1010
hardware configuration 1, 110
CCDM PCA 1, 110, 137
eraser PCA 1, 110, 133

flow ADF PCA 1, 110
flow document feeder PCA 135
fuser drive assembly 1, 110, 129
fuser PCA 1, 110, 134
high voltage power supply PCA 1, 110, 130
low voltage power supply PCA (Type 3R) 1, 110, 125
low voltage power supply PCA (Type 4) 1, 110, 127
low voltage power supply PCA (Type 5H) 1, 110, 123
LVPS PCA (Type 3R) 1, 110, 125
LVPS PCA (Type 4) 1, 110, 127
LVPS PCA (Type 5H) 1, 110, 123
main controller 1, 110, 113
master system operation key 1, 110, 113, 119
scan joint PCA 1, 110, 136
WLED IF PCA 1, 110, 138
WLED PCA 1, 110, 138
hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning 1007, 1014, 1015, 1020, 1021, 1025
HCI 1, 142
HCI PCA and HCI sup PCA (HCI)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1244
high capacity input tray 1, 142
high voltage power supply (HVPS) board 173
high voltage power supply PCA 1, 110, 130
high-voltage rail assembly 458
home button is unresponsive 1007, 1014, 1015, 1020, 1021, 1024
home-1/2 sensors, end sensor, and empty sensor (DCF/HCI)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1249
HP Channel Services Network (CSN)
Channel partners support 151
HP Foreign interface harness (FIH), install 305
HP internal users
WISE 151
HP Jetdirect print server
lights 1007, 1014, 1015, 1027, 1028, 1029
HVPS PCA 1, 110, 130
HVPS/LVPS/FDB diagram 1212

I

image creation 1, 58
imaging unit 1, 58, 59
intermediate transfer belt unit 64
overview 1, 58
paper transfer belt unit 1, 58, 59
toner cartridge 1, 58, 59, 62
toner reservoir unit 66
image quality
black lines, vertical 1007, 1177, 1178, 1182
blurred image 1007, 1177, 1178, 1188
duplex blur, white spot blur on color print-out 1194
flow ADF or ADF skew (LX du models) 1007
foggy image 1007, 1177, 1178, 1187
incorrect color registration 1189
jitter image 1007, 1177, 1178, 1190
light image 1007, 1177, 1178, 1188
light lines, vertical 1007, 1177, 1178, 1183
periodic black dots, horizontal 1007, 1177, 1178, 1186
periodic black lines, horizontal 1007, 1177, 1178, 1186
periodic light/dark dots, horizontal 1007, 1177, 1178, 1186
periodic light/dark lines, horizontal 1007, 1177, 1178, 1186
poor fusing 1007, 1177, 1178, 1192
red/magenta hue printouts 1196
skewed image 1007, 1177, 1178, 1191
stain on back side 1007, 1177, 1178, 1193
standard tone, setting 1007, 1177, 1178, 1194
uneven pitch 1007, 1177, 1178, 1190
white lines, vertical 1007, 1177, 1178, 1183
image scanner assembly 207
imaging drum unit 302
imaging unit 1, 58, 59
developer unit 1, 58, 59, 60
overview 1, 58, 59
individual component diagnostics 1007, 1014, 1015, 1027
inductor unit 339
information
general 1007, 1129, 1134
print reports 1007, 1129, 1134
software version 1007, 1129, 1134
supply status 1007, 1129, 1134
inner finisher
block diagram 2559
ejector & paper support assembly 2946
ejector assembly 2610, 2988
ejector motor 2610
ejector motor assembly 2966
end fence home 2610
end fence sensor 3012
entrance motor 2610, 2662
entrance sensor 2610, 2656
exir roller 2610
exit motor 2610, 2690
exit roller 2673
exit sensor 2610, 2681
front cover 2629
front paper support 2610, 2695
front tamper 2807
front tamper home sensor 2825
front tamper motor 2843
left cover 2645
main paddle 2610, 2781
main paddle assembly 2793
main paddle home sensor 2785
main paddle motor 2789
middle cover 2635
motor 2610
output tray 3024
output tray lower limit switch 3041
output tray motor 3075

output tray motor assembly 3053
output tray motor sensor 3064
output tray top of stack sensor 3031
paper holding 3087
paper holding sensor 3100
paper holding solenoid 2610, 3113
paper support 2610
paper support home sensor 2610, 2738
paper support motor 2760
parts and diagrams 2611
parts and diagrams - covers 2614
parts and diagrams - ejector unit 2626
parts and diagrams - paper support unit 2618
parts and diagrams - sensor, motor, and roller 2616
parts and diagrams - stapler unit 2624
parts and diagrams - tamper unit 2620, 2622
PCA cover 2642
punch cover 3134
punch waste full 2610
punch waste full sensor 3139
rear cover 2632
rear paper support 2610, 2717
rear tamper 2862, 2880
rear tamper motor 2898
sensor 2610
stacker lower limit switch 2610
stacker motor 2610
stapler 2610, 2917
stapler position motor 2935
stapler position sensor 2610, 2923
sub paddle unit 2801
switch 2610
top cover 2639
inner finisher diagrams 2610
inner finisher parts 2610
inner finisher PCA 2600
inner finisher remove and replace 2610
inner finisher specification 2561
inner front cover 609
input accessory error
67.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
input/output error
40.WX.YZ error 1007, 1008
install
HP Foreign interface harness (FIH) solution 305
interlocks
defeating 1007, 1014, 1015, 1027, 1030, 1031
intermediate transfer belt
overview 64
intermediate transfer belt (ITB) unit 200
intermediate transfer belt unit 64
cleaning blade 64, 65
overview 64
transfer belt drive 64, 65
internal diagnostics error
90.WX.YZ error 1007, 1010
video display error 1007, 1010
interpret control-panel messages and event log entries 1273, 2543, 2559, 3148
Island of data (du bundles) 272
Island of Data (IOD) 275
ITB cleaner blade 196

J

jam error (LaserJet)
13.WX.YZ error 1007, 1008
jam error (PageWide)
13.WX.YZ error 1007, 1008
jams
locations 1007, 1123
Jetdirect print server
lights 1007, 1014, 1015, 1027, 1028, 1029
job accounting error (firmware)
48.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
job management error (firmware) 1007, 1009
job pipeline error (firmware) 1007, 1009
job parser error (firmware)
47.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
printer calibration error 1007, 1009

K

keyboard (z bundles) 297
remove the keyboard 297
knife motor, stopper home sensor, and stopper solenoid and motor (SSBM)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1263

L

laser scanner assembly 1, 68, 177
laser scanning optical path 1, 68, 69
overview 1, 68
laser scanner assembly diagram 1208
laser scanner assembly fan 183
laser scanner error (LaserJet)
51.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
52.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
LED lamp module 883
LEDs. *See* lights
left cover 635
left lower cover
parts and diagrams 1398
left rear corner cover 623
left upper cover
parts and diagrams 1396
level-1/2 front/rear sensors, solenoid home sensor, and solenoid (DCF/HCI)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1248
lights
formatter 1007, 1014, 1015, 1027, 1028, 1029
troubleshooting with 1007, 1014, 1015, 1027, 1028
limit switch, paper limit-1 sensor, prefeed sensor, and paper empty-1 sensor (DCF/HCI)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1250
limit switch, prefeed sensor, feed sensor, main limit and empty sensors (DCF/HCI)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1247
low voltage power supply (LVPS)
type 4 323
Type 5H 248

low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans 319
low voltage power supply PCA (Type 3R) 1, 110, 125
low voltage power supply PCA (Type 4) 1, 110, 127
low voltage power supply PCA (Type 5H) 1, 110, 123
lower bridge
parts and diagrams 1370
lower rear cover 629
lower tray connector 327
LVPS PCA (Type 3R) 1, 110, 125
LVPS PCA (Type 4) 1, 110, 127
LVPS PCA (Type 5H) 1, 110, 123
LVPS type 4 323
LVPS Type 5H 248

M

machine cleaning for maintenance 151, 158
cleaning the flow ADF white bar and CIS (GX ADF) 151, 158
cleaning the flow ADF white bar and CIS (LX/du model) 151, 158
cleaning the paper dust stick 151, 158
cleaning the scan glass 151, 158
main assembly
parts and diagrams 165
main board 262
main controller
hardware configuration 1, 110, 113
new model (IR/UI) 1, 110, 113, 115
previous model 1, 110, 113
main drive
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1213
main drive unit 510
main exit CAM motor
parts and diagrams 1382
Main exit unit 1305, 1609
main exit unit
parts and diagrams 1380, 1384
Main frame assembly
parts and diagrams 427
Main frame pickup
parts and diagrams 599
Main frame pickup 1
parts and diagrams 565
Main frame pickup 2
parts and diagrams 565
Main frame registration assembly
parts and diagrams 475
main output tray motor
parts and diagrams 1400
Main output tray unit 1320, 2098
main output tray unit
parts and diagrams 1394
main parts 164
main PCA
parts and diagrams 1388
main PCAs (SSBM)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1253
maintenance 151, 158
machine cleaning for maintenance 151, 158
maintenance counts
part replacement count 1007, 1129, 1136
maintenance parts 1, 8, 26
master system operation key 1, 110, 113, 119
memory error
82.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
EMMC error 1007, 1009
hard disk error 1007, 1009
menu map 1007, 1034
menus, control panel
Calibrate/Cleaning 1007, 1034, 1057, 1121
Copy (MFP only) 1007, 1034, 1057, 1100
Fax (fax models only) 1007, 1034, 1057, 1113
General Settings 1007, 1034, 1057, 1058
Manage Trays 1007, 1034, 1057, 1117
Print 1007, 1034, 1057, 1116
Reports 1007, 1034, 1057
Scan (MFP only) 1007, 1034, 1057, 1104
Supplies 1007, 1034, 1057, 1116
motor error (LaserJet)
59.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
MP unit
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1228
MSOK 1, 110, 113, 119
multipurpose feeder assembly 1, 45, 52

N

Near Field Communication error
81.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
Bluetooth error 1007, 1009
external I/O card error 1007, 1009
internal EIO error 1007, 1009
wireless error 1007, 1009
network and software specifications 1, 8, 34
network interface 1, 8, 34
NFC kit 307
no control panel sound 1007, 1014, 1015, 1020, 1021, 1023
note vii

O

OPC diagram 1210
OPE diagram 1208
operating systems, supported 1, 8
operating-environment range
printer 16
operational panel button PCA and entrance path sensor (SSBM)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1265
Opt feed drive
parts and diagrams - drive 942
option specifications 1, 8, 37, 40
optional configurations 1, 8, 37
options list 1, 8, 37, 38
orderable parts 153, 1358, 2609
ordering 1273, 1353, 2559, 2604
other errors
drive unit 1007, 1177
electrical circuit 1007, 1177
feeding system 1007, 1177
flow ADF 1007, 1177
fuser 1007, 1177
image system 1007, 1177

laser scanner assembly 1007, 1177
scanner 1007, 1177
output accessory error
66.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
output tray 2596
output tray motor 3160
Output tray motor assembly 3052
output tray motor sensor 3160
Output tray top of stack sensor 3161
Output tray unit 3023
output unit
duplex 1 sensor 368
return sensor 416
OXPd/Web kit error
45.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009

P

paddle
parts and diagrams 1386
paddle motor
parts and diagrams 1386
Paddle unit 1308, 1636, 2780
paddle unit 2582
parts and diagrams 1384
page error
21.WX.YZ error 1007, 1008
paper detection sensor (SSBM)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1254
paper dust brush 192
paper empty , path, limit-1, and path sensors (DCF/HCI)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1241
paper empty and limit-2 sensors (DCF/HCI)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1240
paper handling error (LaserJet)
56.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
paper handling specifications 1, 8, 27
paper holding motor
parts and diagrams 1400
Paper holding unit 1322, 2159, 3086
paper holding unit 2596
parts and diagrams 1394
paper jams
locations 1007, 1123
paper path
finisher system 1273, 1274, 2560
paper size sensor 506, 939
paper size sensors (DCF/HCI)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1242
paper support motor 3154
paper support sensor 3154
Paper support unit 2694
paper support unit 2581
paper transfer belt unit 1, 58, 59
cleaning blade 1, 58, 59
overview 1, 58, 59
transfer belt drive 1, 58, 59
Parts
2000-sheet HCI cassette 964
2000-sheet HCI drive 948
2000-sheet HCI frame 966
2000-sheet HCI main 946
2000-sheet HCI pickup 972
3000-sheet sHCI (department; E82540/50/60 and E87640/50/60 only) frame 1004
3000-sheet sHCI (department; E82540/50/60 and E87640/50/60 only) main 1 975
3000-sheet sHCI (department; E82540/50/60 and E87640/50/60 only) main 3 984
3000-sheet sHCI (department; E82540/50/60 and E87640/50/60 only) main 5 998
3000-sheet sHCI (department; E82540/50/60 and E87640/50/60 only) main 6 1000
3000-sheet sHCI (department; E82540/50/60 and E87640/50/60 only) pickup cover unit 1002
ACR frame assembly 491
ADF (LX models) 708
ADF exterior and ADF pickup(LX models) 745
ADF lower image scanner 893
ADF main frame assembly (LX models) 758
booklet blade 1424
booklet blade motor 1424
booklet c-fold blade 1418
booklet c-fold motor 1420
booklet diverter 1418
booklet diverter motor 1420
booklet diverter unit 1416
booklet end fence unit 1428
booklet entrance 1410
booklet entrance unit 1408
booklet entrance-presser motor 1410
booklet exit 1418
booklet exit unit 1416
booklet fold motor 1420
booklet fold roller 1422
booklet fold unit 1416
booklet maker 1406
booklet maker base 1430
booklet paddle unit 1426
booklet presser unit 1408
booklet stapler unit 1412
booklet tamper unit 1414
bridge unit 1368, 1370
buffer diverter 1404
buffer unit 1402
cassettes tray 2/3 425
cover 1362
covers 605
covers-inner finisher 2614
DCF frame 932
DCF rear frame 937
DCF second pickup 944
drive system 508
Dual cassette feeder DCF 907
ejector unit 1388, 1392
ejector unit-inner finisher 2626
end fence unit 1384
entrance motor 1374
entrance unit 1372, 1374
exit assemblies 404
exit motor 1382
flow ADF (GX/sGX) 773
flow ADF image scanner (GX/sGX) 878

flow ADF main frame (GX/sGX) 817
flow ADF open cover (GX/sGX) 791
flow ADF stacker (GX/sGX) 807
flow ADF upper pickup (GX/sGX) 801
front door 1366
front jam cover 1404
hanress 1362
inner finisher 2611
left lower cover 1398
left upper cover 1396
lower bridge 1370
main assembly 165
main exit CAM motor 1382
main exit unit 1380, 1384
main frame assembly 427
main frame pickup 599
main frame pickup 1 565
main frame pickup 2 565
main frame registration assembly 475
main output tray motor 1400
main output tray unit 1394
main PCA 1388
opt feed drive 942
paddle 1386
paddle motor 1386
paddle unit 1384
paper holding motor 1400
paper holding unit 1394
paper support unit-inner finisher 2618
rear frame assembly 504
right door 641
right door exit 704
right door guide 702
right door takeaway 704
right upper cover 1366
ssensor, motor, and roller-inner finisher 2616
stapler unit 1388
stapler unit-inner finisher 2624
T2 transfer assembly 706
tamper unit 1388, 1390
tamper unit-inner finisher 2620, 2622
toner reservoir (CMYK) 493
top cover 1366
top door 1366
top exit unit 1380
top lower cover 1382
top output tray unit 1380
tray 1 685
Tray diverter CAM 1378
tray diverter unit 1376
tray jam cover 1378
upper bridge 1368
parts 153, 1358, 2609
use parts lists and diagrams 153
parts and accessories 1273, 1353, 2559, 2604
parts and diagrams 151
parts and diagrams, using 153
parts list and diagrams, how to use 153
parts, main 164
parts, order by authorized service providers 153, 1358, 2609
parts, orderable 153, 1358, 2609
parts, ordering 153, 1358, 2609
PCA 2525
PCA connection information 1349
finisher system 1273, 1274, 2560
PCA precautions 1273, 1353, 1354, 1355, 2604, 2605, 2606
PCA-ADF sGX (dn models only) 869
pick roller
document feeder (LX) 747
pick/feed separation roller 601
pick/lift-1 motor, lift-2 motor, and feed motor (DCF/HCI)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1250
pickup drive 1, 75
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1219, 1227
pickup drive (Tray 2) 350
pickup drive Tray 3 or motor 548
pickup lift motors, feed motor, and cover open sensor (DCF/HCI)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1238
pickup lifting and empty sensor 576, 592
pickup roller
ADF 803
multipurpose 687
Tray 1 687
pickup unit 1, 45, 51
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1221
pickup unit 1 567
pickup lifting and empty sensor 576
prefeed sensor 1 395
pickup unit 2 585
pickup lifting and empty sensor 592
prefeed sensor 2 388
plastic latches information 1273, 1353, 1354, 1355, 2604, 2605, 2606
post-service tests 151, 155, 157, 1273, 1353, 1357, 2559, 2604, 2608
power
consumption 1, 8, 16
power subsystem 1007, 1014, 1015, 1016
power supply
troubleshooting 1007, 1014, 1015, 1016, 1017
power-on troubleshooting overview 1007, 1014, 1015, 1016, 1017
pre-boot menu options 1007, 1034, 1039
precations
information 1273, 1353, 1354, 2604, 2605
precautions
replacing parts 155, 1354, 2605
prefeed sensor 1 395
prefeed sensor 2 388
preservice checklist 151, 155, 156, 1273, 1353, 1356, 2559, 2604, 2607
press home sensor, tamper home sensor, paper detect sensor, tamper motor, press motor, and feed motor (SSBM)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1260
print bar error (PageWide)
62.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
print drivers, supported 1, 8

Print menu, control panel 1007, 1034, 1057, 1116
print quality
test 151, 155, 157, 1273, 1353, 1357, 2559, 2604, 2608
print quality troubleshooting 1007, 1177
flow ADF skew adjust 1007
image quality 1007, 1177, 1178
other errors 1007, 1177
print specifications 1, 8, 19
Print Test Page 1007, 1034, 1057, 1058
printer
dimensions 1, 8, 15
operating-environment range 16
weight 1, 8, 15
printer memory error
20.WX.YZ error 1007, 1008
Process Cleaning Page 1007, 1034, 1057, 1121
product number
locating 1, 2, 3
Punch unit 1532, 3133
punch unit 1298, 2572
punch waste box sensor 3150
Punch waste full sensor 3149

R

real-time clock error
11.WX.YZ error 1007, 1008
rear frame assembly
parts and diagrams 504
Rear paper support 2716
Rear tamper 1783, 2861
rear tamper motor 3156
rear tamper sensor 3156
rear view 2560
registration assembly 477
registration drive 1, 75, 76
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1226
registration drive assembly 558
registration pickup diagram 1208
registration sensor assembly 484
registration unit 1, 45, 51
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1221
relationships, electrical-mechanical
diagrams 1213
removal and replacement 151
removal and replacement booklet finisher 1359
removal and replacement inner finisher 2610
removal and replacement precautions 1273, 1353, 1354, 2604, 2605
removal order
removing order 151, 155, 157, 1357, 2608
removing parts
checklists 151, 155, 156, 1273, 1353, 1356, 2559, 2604, 2607
replacement of maintenance parts
developer unit 186
flow ADF pickup roller assembly 803
flow ADF separation roller assembly 820
fuser unit 241
image scanner assembly 207
imaging drum unit 302
intermediate transfer belt (ITB) unit 200
ITB cleaner blade 196
multipurpose (Tray 1 pickup/ reverse/feed roller 687
pick/feed separation roller 601
toner collection unit 170
replacing parts
precautions 155, 1354, 2605
replacing the main
fuser fan 252
replacing the main SVC part 262
alienation motor 538
bridge unit 336
CRUM connector 361
developer fan 331
exit cover 620
exit drive unit 531
exit unit 232
feed 2 sensor 679
feed drive unit or motor, Tray 1 545
Formatter 288
Formatter (du models) 284
front cover 607
front power cover 615
front power switch 315
front top inner cover 618
fuser drive board 244
fuser/exit drive unit 531
hard disk drive (HDD) 258
high voltage power supply (HVPS) board 173
high-voltage rail assembly 458
inductor unit 339
inner front cover 609
Island of data (du bundles) 272
Island of Data (IOD) 275
laser scanner assembly 177
laser scanner assembly fan 183
left cover 635
left rear corner cover 623
low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans 319
lower rear cover 629
lower tray connector 327
main drive unit 510
paper dust brush 192
pickup drive (Tray 2) 350
pickup drive Tray 3 or motor 548
pickup unit 1 567
pickup unit 2 585
registration assembly 477
registration drive assembly 558
registration sensor assembly 484
reservoir unit 495
right door 227
right door dampener 441
right rear cover 626
toner collection unit (TCU) drive 551
toner collection unit (TCU) sensors 354
toner reservoir motors 524
toner supply drive unit 517
toner supply motors 524
top right cover 638
Tray 1 feed drive unit or motor 545
tray closing unit 436
upper rear cover 632
Reports menu, control panel 1007, 1034, 1057
reservoir unit 495
return sensor 416

reverse roller
ADF 820
document feeder (LX) 760
multipurpose 687
Tray 1 687
revision history iii
Right door
parts and diagrams 641
right door 227
fuser out sensor 673
open switch 343
Tray 1 empty sensor 653
Tray 1 paper length sensor 663
Tray 1 solenoid 691
Tray 1 unit 643
right door dampener 441
Right door exit
parts and diagrams 704
Right door guide
parts and diagrams 702
right door guide
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1232
right door open switch 343
right door output takeaway
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1234
Right door takeaway
parts and diagrams 704
right rear cover 626
right upper cover
parts and diagrams 1366

S

scan glass 880
scan joint PCA 1, 110, 136
Scan menu (MFP only), control panel 1007, 1034, 1057, 1104
scan specifications 1, 8, 21
scanner
caution for moving 1, 83, 92
CDD and lens 894
scanner glass 880
scanner assembly - CDD and lens 894
scanner diagram 1207
scanner error
30.WX.YZ error 1007, 1008
scanning system
components 1, 83, 86
scanning system components 1, 83, 86
security error
33.WX.YZ error 1007, 1008
sensor error
54.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
58.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
serial number
locating 1, 2, 3
service and support
WISE 151
service and support information
WISE and CSN 151
service approach 151, 155, 1273, 1353, 2559, 2604
precautions 155, 1354, 2605
service functions
capture log 1007, 1129, 1174
debug log 1007, 1129, 1174
envelope rotate 1007, 1129, 1174, 1175
main memory clear 1007, 1129, 1174
transfer assembly control 1007, 1129, 1174, 1175
service mode 1007, 1129
diagnostics 1007, 1129, 1137
entering service mode 1007, 1129
information 1007, 1129, 1134
maintenance counts 1007, 1129, 1136
mode menu tree 1007, 1129
service functions 1007, 1129, 1174
sHCI 1, 146
side high capacity input (sHCI)
feed motor 990
lift-up motor 994
pickup motor 986
rear cover 977
sHCI PCA 980
side high capacity input tray 1, 146
side unit
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1230
size sensor 939
size sensor, paper 506
software and solutions 1, 8, 34, 35
solve problems
control panel messages 1008
CPMD 1008
specifications 1, 8
copy specifications 1, 8, 23
electrical and acoustic 1, 8, 16
general specifications 1, 8, 16
maintenance parts 1, 8, 26
network interface 1, 8, 34
network specifications 1, 8, 34
options 1, 8, 37
options list 1, 8, 37, 38
paper handling specifications 1, 8, 27
print specifications 1, 8, 19
scan specifications 1, 8, 21
software and solutions 1, 8, 34, 35
software specifications 1, 8, 34
supplies 1, 8, 25
Stacker finisher 1283
stacker finisher 1274
standard (du bundles) document feeder
document feeder white backing 221
standard (LX models) document feeder
document feeder whole unit 710
standard (LX) document feeder
document feeder (ADF) PCA 753
document feeder feed motor 767
standard (LX) document feeder (ADF)
contact image sensor (CIS) 727
document feeder (ADF) jam access cover (LX) 715
standard (LX/du model) document feeder
document feeder main motor 738
Stapler finisher 1283
stapler finisher 1274
stapler position motor 3158
stapler position sensor 3158
Stapler unit 1861, 2916
stapler unit 2590
parts and diagrams 1388
Stapler unit (booklet) 2375
stapler/stacker diagrams 1360

stapler/stacker parts 1360
static, precautions for 151, 153, 1273, 1353, 1356, 2559, 2604, 2607
supplies 1273, 1353, 2559, 2604
supplies error (LaserJet)
10.WX.YZ error 1007, 1008
supplies error (PageWide)
17.WX.YZ error 1007, 1008
Supplies menu, control panel 1007, 1034, 1057, 1116
system error (LaserJet)
62.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
system requirements
minimum 1, 8

T

T1 drive
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1215
T2 transfer assembly
parts and diagrams 706
Tamper unit 1311, 1314, 1704, 2805
tamper unit 2585
parts and diagrams 1388, 1390
terms and definitions
glossary 3169
tests
post-service 151, 155, 157, 1273, 1353, 1357, 2559, 2604, 2608
print-quality 151, 155, 157, 1273, 1353, 1357, 2559, 2604, 2608
tip vii
toner cartridge 1, 58, 59, 62
dynamic security 63
toner collection unit 170
toner collection unit (TCU) drive 551
toner collection unit (TCU) sensors 354
toner reservoir (CMYK)
parts and diagrams 493
toner reservoir motors 524
toner reservoir unit 66
toner supply drive unit 517
toner supply motors 524
top cover
parts and diagrams 1366
top cover switch 3162
top door
parts and diagrams 1366
top door sensor, fold motor, and knife home position sensor (SSBM)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1264
Top exit unit 1303, 1568
top exit unit
parts and diagrams 1380
top lower cover
parts and diagrams 1382
Top output tray unit 1304, 1595
top output tray unitr
parts and diagrams 1380
top right cover 638
top-beam out sensor, stack motor, and SKU motor (SSBM)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1256
top-exit path and compile-exit path sensors (SSBM)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1262
touchscreen blank, white, or dim (no image) 1007, 1014, 1015, 1020, 1021
touchscreen has an unresponsive zone 1007, 1014, 1015, 1020, 1021, 1022
Tray 1
jams, clearing 1007, 1123
parts and diagrams 685
Tray 1 empty sensor 653
Tray 1 feed drive unit or motor 545
Tray 1 paper length sensor 663
Tray 1 solenoid 691
Tray 1 unit 643
Tray 2
jams, clearing 1007, 1123
Tray 3
jams, clearing 1007, 1123
tray closing unit 436
Tray diverter CAM
parts and diagrams 1378
Tray diverter unit 1301, 1376, 1539
tray diverter unit
parts and diagrams 1376
tray jam cover
parts and diagrams 1378
tray motor error (LaserJet)
60.WX.YZ error 1007, 1009
tray selection - use requested tray 1007, 1034, 1057, 1058
tray upper front/rear sensors, SCU home detect sensor, and stack beam in/out sensors (SSBM)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1269
trays
jams, clearing 1007, 1123
Trays menu, control panel 1007, 1034, 1057, 1117
troubleshooting
checklist 1007, 1034, 1035
control panel checks 1007, 1014, 1015, 1020
lights, using 1007, 1014, 1015, 1027, 1028
power 1007, 1014, 1015, 1016, 1017
process 1007, 1014
troubleshooting tools
control panel messages 1008
CPMD 1008

U

understand lights on the formatter
formatter lights 1007, 1014, 1015, 1027, 1028, 1029
understand the lights on the formatter
HP Jetdirect LEDs 1007, 1014, 1015, 1027, 1028, 1029
unit, bridge 336
upper bridge
parts and diagrams 1368
upper rear cover 632
upper/lower paper low sensors (DCF/HCI)
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1251
USB diagram 1208
Use Requested Tray 1007, 1034, 1057, 1058

W

warning vii
Web-based Interactive Search Engine
WISE 151

Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE)
HP internal users and Channel partners 151
weight
accessories 1, 8, 15
printer 1, 8, 15
WISE
CPMD 1010
HP internal users and Channel partners 151
Web-based Interactive Search Engine 151
WLED IF PCA 1, 110, 138
WLED PCA 1, 110, 138
WTB diagram 1210
WTB drive
electrical-mechanical relationships diagram 1217